

# Specification of the **Bluetooth®** System

Specification Volume 0

## Master Table of Contents & Compliance Requirements

Covered Core Package version: 4.1

Publication date: 03 December 2013







## Revision History

The Revision History is shown in the “[Appendix](#)” on page 61[Vol. 0].

## Contributors

The persons who contributed to this specification are listed in the [Appendix](#).

## Web Site

This specification can also be found on the official Bluetooth web site:  
<http://www.bluetooth.com>

## Disclaimer and Copyright Notice

The copyright in these specifications is owned by the Promoter Members of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. (“Bluetooth SIG”). Use of these specifications and any related intellectual property (collectively, the “Specification”), is governed by the Promoters Membership Agreement among the Promoter Members and Bluetooth SIG (the “Promoters Agreement”), certain membership agreements between Bluetooth SIG and its Adopter and Associate Members (the “Membership Agreements”) and the Bluetooth Specification Early Adopters Agreements (“1.2 Early Adopters Agreements”) among Early Adopter members of the unincorporated Bluetooth special interest group and the Promoter Members (the “Early Adopters Agreement”). Certain rights and obligations of the Promoter Members under the Early Adopters Agreements have been assigned to Bluetooth SIG by the Promoter Members.

Use of the Specification by anyone who is not a member of Bluetooth SIG or a party to an Early Adopters Agreement (each such person or party, a “Member”), is prohibited. The legal rights and obligations of each Member are governed by their applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights are granted herein.

Any use of the Specification not in compliance with the terms of the applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement is prohibited and any such prohibited use may result in termination of the applicable Membership Agreement or Early Adopters Agreement and other liability permitted by the applicable agreement or by applicable law to Bluetooth SIG or any of its members for patent, copyright and/or trademark infringement.



THE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR REASONABLE SKILL OR CARE, OR ANY WARRANTY ARISING OUT OF ANY COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, TRADE PRACTICE, PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

Each Member hereby acknowledges that products equipped with the Bluetooth® technology ("Bluetooth® Products") may be subject to various regulatory controls under the laws and regulations of various governments worldwide. Such laws and regulatory controls may govern, among other things, the combination, operation, use, implementation and distribution of Bluetooth® Products. Examples of such laws and regulatory controls include, but are not limited to, airline regulatory controls, telecommunications regulations, technology transfer controls and health and safety regulations. Each Member is solely responsible for the compliance by their Bluetooth® Products with any such laws and regulations and for obtaining any and all required authorizations, permits, or licenses for their Bluetooth® Products related to such regulations within the applicable jurisdictions. Each Member acknowledges that nothing in the Specification provides any information or assistance in connection with securing such compliance, authorizations or licenses. **NOTHING IN THE SPECIFICATION CREATES ANY WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING SUCH LAWS OR REGULATIONS.**

ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR FOR NONCOMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, RELATING TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION IS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. BY USE OF THE SPECIFICATION, EACH MEMBER EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY CLAIM AGAINST BLUETOOTH SIG AND ITS PROMOTER MEMBERS RELATED TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION.

Bluetooth SIG reserves the right to adopt any changes or alterations to the Specification as it deems necessary or appropriate.

Copyright © 1999 - 2013

Ericsson AB,

Lenovo, (Singapore) Pte. Ltd

Intel Corporation,

Microsoft Corporation,

Motorola Mobility, LLC,

Nokia Corporation,

Toshiba Corporation

\*Third-party brands and names are the property of their respective owners.

## Master Table of Contents & Compliance Requirements

### Part A

# MASTER TABLE OF CONTENTS

*This table of contents (TOC) covers the entire Bluetooth Specification.*

*In addition each volume has a TOC and each part of a volume is preceded by a detailed TOC.*

---

*Master Table of Contents*

## THE BLUETOOTH SPECIFICATION MASTER TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

In the following Master Table of Contents:

- The TOC for each Volume starts at the top of a page.
- The Volume number in black is followed by the Volume name in red.

Note: Each Volume is a self contained book and is equipped with a TOC of its own.

- A Volume contains one or more Parts (A, B, etc.); each Part can be viewed independently and has its own TOC.

Red or blue text on the following pages indicates hypertext links that take you directly to the indicated section, on condition that you have access to a complete specification.

---

*Master Table of Contents*



---

**Specification Volume 0**  
**Master Table of Contents & Compliance Requirements**

---

**Part A**

**MASTER TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**Part B**

**BLUETOOTH COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Scope .....</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Definitions.....</b>	<b>49</b>
	3.1    Types of Bluetooth Products .....	49
<b>4</b>	<b>Core Configurations.....</b>	<b>54</b>
	4.1    Basic Rate Core Configuration.....	54
	4.2    Enhanced Data Rate Core Configurations.....	55
	4.3    High Speed Core Configuration .....	56
	4.4    Low Energy Core Configuration .....	57
	4.5    Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined Core Configuration .....	58
	4.6    Host Controller Interface Core Configuration .....	59

**Part C**

**APPENDIX**

<b>1</b>	<b>Revision History .....</b>	<b>65</b>
	1.1    [Vol 0] Master TOC & Compliance Requirements .....	65
	1.2    [Vol 1] Architecture & Terminology Overview .....	65
	1.3    [Vols 2, 3, 5, 6 & 7] Core System Package .....	67
	1.4    [Vol 4] Transport Layers .....	69
<b>2</b>	<b>Contributors.....</b>	<b>70</b>
	2.1    [Vol 0] Master TOC & Compliance Requirements .....	70
	2.2    [Vol 1] Architecture & Terminology Overview .....	71
	2.3    [Vol 2] Core System Package, Controller.....	75
	2.4    [Vol 3] Core System Package, Host.....	101
	2.5    [Vol 4] Host Controller Interface [Transport Layer].....	114
	2.6    [Vol 5] Core System Package [AMP Controller volume] .....	116
	2.7    [Vol 6] Low Energy Specification .....	117
	2.8    [Vol 7] Core System Package [Wireless Coexistence volume]	121



---

**Specification Volume 1**  
**Architecture & Terminology Overview**

---

**Part A**  
**ARCHITECTURE**

<b>1</b>	<b>General Description .....</b>	<b>17</b>
1.1	Overview of BR/EDR Operation .....	18
1.2	Overview of Bluetooth Low Energy Operation .....	20
1.3	Overview of AMP Operation .....	23
1.4	Nomenclature .....	24
<b>2</b>	<b>Core System Architecture .....</b>	<b>30</b>
2.1	Core Architectural Blocks .....	34
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Transport Architecture.....</b>	<b>39</b>
3.1	Core Traffic Bearers.....	40
3.2	Transport Architecture Entities.....	46
3.3	Physical Channels .....	50
3.4	Physical Links .....	60
3.5	Logical Links and Logical Transports .....	64
3.6	L2CAP Channels .....	75
<b>4</b>	<b>Communication Topology and Operation.....</b>	<b>76</b>
4.1	Piconet Topology .....	76
4.2	Operational Procedures and Modes .....	80
<b>5</b>	<b>Security Overview.....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.1	Security Architecture.....	89
5.2	BR/EDR Secure Simple Pairing.....	90
5.3	Secure Connections Only Mode .....	95
5.4	LE Security .....	96
5.5	AMP Security .....	97
<b>6</b>	<b>Bluetooth Application Architecture .....</b>	<b>99</b>
6.1	Bluetooth Profiles.....	99
6.2	Generic Access Profile .....	100
6.3	Profile Hierarchy .....	101
6.4	Generic Attribute Profile.....	101
6.5	GATT-based Profile Hierarchy .....	102



<b>7</b>	<b>Coexistence and Collocation .....</b>	<b>104</b>
7.1	Core Features Supporting Coexistence and Collocation .....	105
7.2	Adaptive Frequency Hopping.....	105
7.3	Coexistence Between Bluetooth Devices and Wireless LAN Devices .....	106
7.4	Mobile Wireless Standards (MWS) Coexistence.....	106
7.5	Synchronizing Bluetooth with an External Timing Source.....	109
7.6	Piconet Clock Adjustment .....	110

**Part B****ACRONYMS & ABBREVIATIONS**

<b>1</b>	<b>List of Acronyms and Abbreviations.....</b>	<b>115</b>
----------	--	------------

**Part C****CORE SPECIFICATION CHANGE HISTORY**

<b>1</b>	<b>Deprecated Features.....</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Changes from V1.1 to V1.2.....</b>	<b>131</b>
2.1	New Features.....	131
2.2	Structure Changes .....	131
2.3	Deprecated Features list.....	131
2.4	Changes in Wording.....	132
2.5	Nomenclature Changes .....	132
<b>3</b>	<b>Changes from V1.2 to V2.0 + EDR .....</b>	<b>133</b>
3.1	New Features.....	133
3.2	Deprecated Features .....	133
<b>4</b>	<b>Changes from V2.0 + EDR to V2.1 + EDR.....</b>	<b>134</b>
4.1	New features .....	134
4.2	Deprecated Features .....	134
<b>5</b>	<b>Changes From V2.1 + EDR To V3.0 + HS .....</b>	<b>135</b>
5.1	New Features.....	135
5.2	Deprecated Features .....	135
<b>6</b>	<b>Changes From V3.0 + HS To v4.0 .....</b>	<b>136</b>
6.1	New Features.....	136
6.2	Deprecated Features .....	136
<b>7</b>	<b>Changes from v4.0 to v4.1 .....</b>	<b>137</b>
7.1	New Features.....	137
7.2	Deprecated Features .....	138

**Part D****MIXING OF SPECIFICATION VERSIONS**

<b>1</b>	<b>Mixing of Specification Versions .....</b>	<b>142</b>
1.1	Features and their Types .....	144
1.2	Core Specification Addenda .....	146

**Part E****IEEE LANGUAGE**

<b>1</b>	<b>Use of IEEE Language .....</b>	<b>153</b>
1.1	Shall .....	154
1.2	Must .....	154
1.3	Will .....	154
1.4	Should .....	154
1.5	May .....	155
1.6	Can .....	155



---

**Specification Volume 2**  
**Core System Package**  
**[BR/EDR Controller volume]**

---

**Part A**

**RADIO SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Scope .....</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequency Bands and Channel Arrangement .....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Transmitter Characteristics.....</b>	<b>38</b>
3.1	Basic Rate.....	40
3.2	Enhanced Data Rate.....	42
<b>4</b>	<b>Receiver Characteristics .....</b>	<b>47</b>
4.1	Basic Rate.....	47
4.2	Enhanced Data Rate.....	49
<b>5</b>	<b>Appendix A .....</b>	<b>52</b>
5.1	Nominal Test Conditions .....	52
5.2	Extreme Test Conditions .....	53
<b>6</b>	<b>Appendix B .....</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Appendix C .....</b>	<b>55</b>
7.1	Enhanced Data Rate Modulation Accuracy .....	55

**Part B**

**BASEBAND SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>General Description .....</b>	<b>66</b>
1.1	Bluetooth Clock.....	67
1.2	Bluetooth Device Addressing.....	69
1.3	Access Codes .....	70
<b>2</b>	<b>Physical Channels.....</b>	<b>71</b>
2.1	Physical Channel Definition .....	72
2.2	Basic Piconet Physical Channel.....	72
2.3	Adapted Piconet Physical Channel.....	79
2.4	Page Scan Physical Channel.....	80
2.5	Inquiry Scan Physical Channel .....	84
2.6	Hop Selection.....	86
2.7	Synchronization Scan Physical Channel.....	99
<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Links .....</b>	<b>102</b>
3.1	Link Supervision for Active and Parked Physical Links.....	102
3.2	Link Supervision for Connectionless Slave Broadcast Physical Links.....	103



3.3	Authenticated Payload Timeout for Active Links .....	103
<b>4</b>	<b>Logical Transports .....</b>	<b>104</b>
4.1	General .....	104
4.2	Logical Transport Address (LT_ADDR) .....	104
4.3	Synchronous Logical Transports .....	105
4.4	Asynchronous Logical Transport .....	105
4.5	Transmit/Receive Routines.....	106
4.6	Active Slave Broadcast Transport.....	111
4.7	Parked Slave Broadcast Transport.....	112
4.8	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Logical Transport .....	112
<b>5</b>	<b>Logical Links .....</b>	<b>113</b>
5.1	Link Control Logical Link (LC).....	113
5.2	ACL Control Logical Link (ACL-C) .....	113
5.3	User Asynchronous/Isochronous Logical Link (ACL-U).....	114
5.4	User Synchronous Data Logical Link (SCO-S).....	114
5.5	User Extended Synchronous Data Logical Link (eSCO-S).....	114
5.6	Logical Link Priorities.....	114
5.7	Profile Broadcast Data Logical Link .....	114
<b>6</b>	<b>Packets.....</b>	<b>115</b>
6.1	General Format.....	115
6.2	Bit Ordering.....	116
6.3	Access Code.....	117
6.4	Packet Header.....	122
6.5	Packet Types .....	124
6.6	Payload Format .....	135
6.7	Packet Summary .....	141
<b>7</b>	<b>Bitstream Processing .....</b>	<b>143</b>
7.1	Error Checking.....	144
7.2	Data Whitening .....	147
7.3	Error Correction .....	148
7.4	FEC Code: Rate 1/3 .....	148
7.5	FEC Code: Rate 2/3 .....	149
7.6	ARQ Scheme .....	150
7.7	Erroneous Synchronous Data Reporting .....	158
7.8	Message Integrity Check .....	158
<b>8</b>	<b>Link Controller Operation .....</b>	<b>159</b>
8.1	Overview of States .....	159
8.2	Standby State.....	160
8.3	Connection Establishment Substates .....	160
8.4	Device Discovery Substates .....	169
8.5	Connection State .....	174



8.6	Active Mode .....	176
8.7	Sniff Mode .....	193
8.8	Hold Mode.....	197
8.9	Park State.....	197
8.10	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Mode .....	205
8.11	Synchronization Establishment Substates .....	207
<b>9</b>	<b>Audio .....</b>	<b>210</b>
9.1	LOG PCM CODEC.....	210
9.2	CVSD CODEC .....	210
9.3	Error Handling .....	213
9.4	General Audio Requirements.....	213
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures.....</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>217</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Appendix .....</b>	<b>218</b>

## Part C

### LINK MANAGER PROTOCOL SPECIFICATION

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>General Rules .....</b>	<b>232</b>
2.1	Message Transport .....	232
2.2	Synchronization .....	232
2.3	Packet Format.....	233
2.4	Transactions.....	234
2.5	Error Handling .....	235
2.6	Procedure Rules .....	236
2.7	General Response Messages.....	237
2.8	LMP Message Constraints .....	237
<b>3</b>	<b>Device Features.....</b>	<b>238</b>
3.1	General Description .....	238
3.2	Feature Definitions .....	238
3.3	Feature Mask Definition .....	246
3.4	Link Manager Interoperability policy.....	249
<b>4</b>	<b>Procedure Rules.....</b>	<b>250</b>
4.1	Connection Control .....	250
4.2	Security .....	275
4.3	Informational Requests .....	310
4.4	Role Switch .....	316
4.5	Modes of Operation .....	320
4.6	Logical Transports.....	334
4.7	Test Mode .....	342



<b>5</b>	<b>Summary.....</b>	<b>348</b>
5.1	PDU Summary .....	348
5.2	Parameter Definitions .....	359
5.3	LMP Encapsulated.....	370
5.4	Default Values.....	371
<b>6</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>372</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>376</b>

## Part D

### ERROR CODES

<b>1</b>	<b>Overview of Error Codes.....</b>	<b>383</b>
1.1	Usage Descriptions.....	383
1.2	HCI Command Errors .....	383
1.3	List of Error Codes.....	384
<b>2</b>	<b>Error Code Descriptions .....</b>	<b>387</b>
2.1	Unknown HCI Command (0x01).....	387
2.2	Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02).....	387
2.3	Hardware Failure (0x03) .....	387
2.4	Page Timeout (0x04) .....	387
2.5	Authentication Failure (0x05).....	387
2.6	PIN or key Missing (0x06).....	387
2.7	Memory Capacity Exceeded (0x07).....	387
2.8	Connection Timeout (0x08).....	388
2.9	Connection Limit Exceeded (0x09).....	388
2.10	Synchronous Connection Limit to a Device Exceeded (0x0A)	388
2.11	ACL Connection Already Exists (0x0B) .....	388
2.12	Command Disallowed (0x0C) .....	388
2.13	Connection Rejected due to Limited Resources (0x0D).....	388
2.14	Connection Rejected due to Security Reasons (0x0E).....	388
2.15	Connection Rejected due to Unacceptable BD_ADDR (0x0F)	389
2.16	Connection Accept Timeout Exceeded (0x10).....	389
2.17	Unsupported Feature or Parameter Value (0x11).....	389
2.18	Invalid HCI Command Parameters (0x12).....	389
2.19	Remote User Terminated Connection (0x13) .....	389
2.20	Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Low Resources (0x14).....	390
2.21	Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Power Off (0x15).....	390
2.22	Connection Terminated by Local Host (0x16) .....	390
2.23	Repeated Attempts (0x17).....	390
2.24	Pairing not Allowed (0x18).....	390
2.25	Unknown LMP PDU (0x19).....	390



2.26	Unsupported Remote Feature / Unsupported LMP Feature (0x1A) .....	390
2.27	SCO Offset Rejected (0x1B).....	390
2.28	SCO Interval Rejected (0x1C).....	391
2.29	SCO Air Mode Rejected (0x1D).....	391
2.30	Invalid LMP Parameters / Invalid LL Parameters (0x1E) .....	391
2.31	Unspecified Error (0X1F) .....	391
2.32	Unsupported LMP Parameter Value / Unsupported LL Parameter Value (0x20).....	391
2.33	Role Change Not Allowed (0x21).....	391
2.34	LMP Response Timeout / LL Response Timeout (0x22) .....	392
2.35	LMP Error Transaction Collision (0x23) .....	392
2.36	LMP PDU Not Allowed (0x24).....	392
2.37	Encryption Mode Not Acceptable (0x25).....	392
2.38	Link Key cannot be Changed (0x26).....	392
2.39	Requested QoS Not Supported (0x27) .....	392
2.40	Instant Passed (0x28) .....	392
2.41	Pairing with Unit Key Not Supported (0x29).....	392
2.42	Different Transaction Collision (0x2A).....	393
2.43	QoS Unacceptable Parameter (0x2C) .....	393
2.44	QoS Rejected (0x2D) .....	393
2.45	Channel Assessment Not Supported (0x2E) .....	393
2.46	Insufficient Security (0x2F).....	393
2.47	Parameter out of Mandatory Range (0x30).....	393
2.48	Role Switch Pending (0x32).....	393
2.49	Reserved Slot Violation (0x34).....	393
2.50	Role Switch Failed (0x35) .....	394
2.51	Extended Inquiry Response Too Large (0x36).....	394
2.52	Simple Pairing Not Supported By Host (0x37) .....	394
2.53	Host Busy—Pairing (0x38) .....	394
2.54	Connection Rejected Due To No Suitable Channel Found (0x39).....	394
2.55	Controller Busy (0x3A) .....	394
2.56	Unacceptable Connection Parameters (0x3B).....	394
2.57	Directed Advertising Timeout (0x3C) .....	395
2.58	Connection Terminated Due To MIC Failure (0x3D) .....	395
2.59	Connection Failed To Be Established (0x3E) .....	395
2.60	MAC Connection Failed (0x3F).....	395
2.61	Coarse Clock Adjustment Rejected but Will Try to Adjust Using Clock Dragging (0x40) .....	395

**Part E****HOST CONTROLLER INTERFACE FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>411</b>
1.1	Lower Layers of the Bluetooth Software Stack .....	412
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview of Host Controller Transport Layer .....</b>	<b>414</b>
2.1	Host Controller Transport Layer and AMPS .....	414
<b>3</b>	<b>Overview of Commands and Events .....</b>	<b>415</b>
3.1	Generic Events .....	416
3.2	Device Setup .....	416
3.3	Controller Flow Control .....	417
3.4	Controller Information .....	418
3.5	Controller Configuration .....	420
3.6	Device Discovery .....	423
3.7	Connection Setup .....	426
3.8	Remote Information .....	431
3.9	Synchronous Connections .....	432
3.10	Connection State .....	434
3.11	Piconet Structure .....	437
3.12	Quality of Service .....	438
3.13	Physical Links .....	440
3.14	Host Flow Control .....	442
3.15	Link Information .....	444
3.16	Authentication and Encryption .....	446
3.17	Testing .....	453
3.18	Alphabetical List of Commands and Events .....	456
3.19	LE Controller Requirements .....	465
3.20	Connectionless Slave Broadcast .....	468
<b>4</b>	<b>HCI Flow Control .....</b>	<b>470</b>
4.1	Host to Controller Data Flow Control .....	470
4.2	Controller to Host Data Flow Control .....	473
4.3	Disconnection Behavior .....	473
4.4	Command Flow Control .....	474
4.5	Command Error Handling .....	474
<b>5</b>	<b>HCI Data Formats .....</b>	<b>476</b>
5.1	Introduction .....	476
5.2	Data and Parameter Formats .....	476
5.3	Handles .....	477
5.4	Exchange of HCI-Specific Information .....	479
<b>6</b>	<b>HCI Configuration Parameters .....</b>	<b>487</b>
6.1	Scan Enable .....	487
6.2	Inquiry Scan Interval .....	487



6.3	Inquiry Scan Window .....	488
6.4	Inquiry Scan Type .....	488
6.5	Inquiry Mode .....	488
6.6	Page Timeout.....	489
6.7	Connection Accept Timeout.....	489
6.8	Page Scan Interval.....	490
6.9	Page Scan Window.....	490
6.10	Page Scan Period Mode (Deprecated).....	490
6.11	Page Scan Type.....	491
6.12	Voice Setting .....	491
6.13	PIN Type .....	492
6.14	Link Key .....	492
6.15	Failed Contact Counter .....	492
6.16	Authentication Enable .....	493
6.17	Hold Mode Activity .....	493
6.18	Link Policy Settings.....	493
6.19	Flush Timeout .....	495
6.20	Num Broadcast Retransmissions.....	495
6.21	Link Supervision Timeout.....	496
6.22	Synchronous Flow Control Enable.....	496
6.23	Local Name .....	497
6.24	Extended Inquiry Response.....	497
6.25	Erroneous Data Reporting .....	497
6.26	Class Of Device .....	498
6.27	Supported Commands .....	498
6.28	Logical Link Accept Timeout .....	507
6.29	Location Domain Aware .....	507
6.30	Location Domain .....	507
6.31	Location Domain Options.....	508
6.32	Location Options .....	508
6.33	Flow Control Mode .....	508
6.34	LE Supported Host.....	509
6.35	Simultaneous LE Host .....	509
6.36	Synchronization Train Interval.....	509
6.37	Synchronization Train Timeout.....	510
6.38	Service Data.....	510
6.39	Secure Connections Host Support.....	510
6.40	Authenticated Payload Timeout .....	511
6.41	Extended Page Timeout.....	511
6.42	Extended Inquiry Length .....	511



<b>7</b>	<b>HCI Commands and Events .....</b>	<b>512</b>
7.1	Link Control Commands .....	512
7.2	Link Policy Commands .....	625
7.3	Controller & Baseband Commands .....	650
7.4	Informational Parameters .....	795
7.5	Status Parameters .....	808
7.6	Testing Commands .....	836
7.7	Events .....	850
7.8	LE Controller Commands .....	958
<b>8</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>1017</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>1018</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Appendix A: Deprecated Commands, Events and Configuration Parameters .....</b>	<b>1019</b>
10.1	Read Page Scan Mode Command .....	1020
10.2	Write Page Scan Mode Command .....	1021
10.3	Read Page Scan Period Mode Command.....	1022
10.4	Write Page Scan Period Mode Command.....	1023
10.5	Add SCO Connection Command.....	1024
10.6	Page Scan Mode Change Event .....	1026
10.7	Read Country Code Command .....	1027
10.8	Read Encryption Mode Command.....	1028
10.9	Write Encryption Mode Command.....	1029
10.10	Deprecated Parameters.....	1030

## Part F

### MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1037</b>
1.1	Notation .....	1037
1.2	Flow of Control.....	1038
1.3	Example MSC.....	1038
<b>2</b>	<b>Services Without Connection Request.....</b>	<b>1039</b>
2.1	Remote Name Request .....	1039
2.2	One-time Inquiry .....	1041
2.3	Periodic Inquiry .....	1043
<b>3</b>	<b>ACL Connection Establishment and Detachment .....</b>	<b>1045</b>
3.1	Connection Setup .....	1046
<b>4</b>	<b>Optional Activities After ACL Connection Establishment.....</b>	<b>1054</b>
4.1	Authentication Requested.....	1054
4.2	Simple Pairing Message Sequence Charts .....	1056
4.3	Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event.....	1078
4.4	Set Connection Encryption .....	1079



4.5	Change Connection Link Key.....	1081
4.6	Change Connection Link Key with Encryption Pause and Resume.....	1082
4.7	Master Link Key .....	1083
4.8	Read Remote Supported Features .....	1085
4.9	Read Remote Extended Features.....	1086
4.10	Read Clock Offset.....	1087
4.11	Role Switch on an Encrypted Link using Encryption Pause and Resume.....	1088
4.12	Refreshing Encryption Keys.....	1089
4.13	Read Remote Version Information.....	1091
4.14	QOS Setup.....	1092
4.15	Switch Role .....	1093
4.16	AMP Physical Link Creation and Disconnect .....	1095
4.17	AMP Test Mode Sequence Charts .....	1103
<b>5</b>	<b>Synchronous Connection Establishment and Detachment .....</b>	<b>1107</b>
5.1	Synchronous Connection Setup.....	1107
5.2	Synchronous Connection Setup with Enhanced Synchronous Commands.....	1115
<b>6</b>	<b>Sniff, Hold and Park .....</b>	<b>1121</b>
6.1	Sniff Mode .....	1121
6.2	Hold Mode.....	1122
6.3	Park State.....	1125
<b>7</b>	<b>Buffer Management, Flow Control.....</b>	<b>1129</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Loopback Mode .....</b>	<b>1131</b>
8.1	Local Loopback Mode .....	1131
8.2	Remote Loopback Mode .....	1134
<b>9</b>	<b>Connectionless Slave Broadcast Services.....</b>	<b>1136</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures.....</b>	<b>1140</b>



## Part G SAMPLE DATA

<b>1</b>	<b>Encryption Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1149</b>
1.1	E0 Encryption Sample Data.....	1149
1.2	AES-CCM ENCRYPTION SAMPLE DATA .....	1184
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequency Hopping Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1213</b>
2.1	First set .....	1214
2.2	Second set.....	1220
2.3	Third set.....	1226
<b>3</b>	<b>Access Code Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1232</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>HEC and Packet Header Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1235</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>CRC Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1236</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Complete Sample Packets .....</b>	<b>1237</b>
6.1	Example of DH1 Packet.....	1237
6.2	Example of DM1 Packet .....	1238
<b>7</b>	<b>Simple Pairing Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1239</b>
7.1	Elliptic Curve Sample Data .....	1239
7.2	Hash Functions Sample Data .....	1242
<b>8</b>	<b>Whitening Sequence Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1254</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>FEC Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1257</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Encryption Key Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1258</b>
10.1	Four Tests of E1.....	1258
10.2	Four Tests of E21 .....	1263
10.3	Three Tests of E22.....	1265
10.4	Tests of E22 With Pin Augmenting.....	1267
10.5	Four Tests of E3.....	1277
<b>11</b>	<b>Connectionless Slave Broadcast Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1282</b>

## Part H SECURITY SPECIFICATION

<b>1</b>	<b>Security Overview.....</b>	<b>1289</b>
1.1	Pausing Encryption and Role Switch.....	1290
1.2	Change Connection Link Keys .....	1291
1.3	Periodically Refreshing Encryption Keys .....	1291
<b>2</b>	<b>Random Number Generation .....</b>	<b>1292</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Key Management .....</b>	<b>1293</b>
3.1	Key Types .....	1293
3.2	Key Generation and Initialization .....	1295



<b>4</b>	<b>Encryption (E0).....</b>	<b>1302</b>
4.1	Encryption Key Size Negotiation.....	1303
4.2	Encryption of Broadcast Messages.....	1303
4.3	Encryption Concept.....	1304
4.4	Encryption Algorithm.....	1305
4.5	LFSR Initialization .....	1308
4.6	Key Stream Sequence .....	1311
<b>5</b>	<b>Authentication .....</b>	<b>1312</b>
5.1	Repeated Attempts .....	1315
<b>6</b>	<b>The Authentication And Key-Generating Functions.....</b>	<b>1316</b>
6.1	The Authentication Function E1 .....	1316
6.2	The Functions Ar and A'r.....	1318
6.3	E2-Key Generation Function for Authentication.....	1320
6.4	E3-Key Generation Function for Encryption.....	1322
<b>7</b>	<b>Secure Simple Pairing .....</b>	<b>1323</b>
7.1	Phase 1: Public Key Exchange .....	1325
7.2	Phase 2: Authentication Stage 1 .....	1325
7.3	Phase 3: Authentication Stage 2 .....	1331
7.4	Phase 4: Link Key Calculation .....	1332
7.5	Phase 5: LMP Authentication and Encryption.....	1332
7.6	Elliptic Curve Definition .....	1332
7.7	Cryptographic Function Definitions .....	1334
<b>8</b>	<b>AMP Security .....</b>	<b>1343</b>
8.1	Creation of the Initial Generic AMP Link Key .....	1343
8.2	Creation of Dedicated AMP Link Keys.....	1343
8.3	Debug Considerations.....	1345
<b>9</b>	<b>AES-CCM Encryption for BR/EDR .....</b>	<b>1346</b>
9.1	Nonce Formats.....	1346
9.2	Counter Mode Blocks.....	1348
9.3	Encryption Blocks.....	1350
9.4	Encryption Key Size Reduction.....	1350
9.5	Repeated MIC Failures .....	1350
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures.....</b>	<b>1351</b>

**Specification Volume 3****Core System Package****[Host volume]****Part A****LOGICAL LINK CONTROL AND ADAPTATION PROTOCOL  
SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>31</b>
1.1	L2CAP Features .....	31
1.2	Assumptions .....	34
1.3	Scope.....	35
1.4	Terminology .....	35
<b>2</b>	<b>General Operation.....</b>	<b>39</b>
2.1	Channel Identifiers.....	39
2.2	Operation Between Devices .....	42
2.3	Operation Between Layers .....	43
2.4	Modes of Operation .....	44
2.5	Mapping Channels to Logical Links .....	46
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Packet Format.....</b>	<b>47</b>
3.1	Connection-oriented Channels in Basic L2CAP Mode .....	47
3.2	Connectionless Data Channel in Basic L2CAP Mode .....	48
3.3	Connection-oriented Channel in Retransmission/Flow Control/ Streaming Modes.....	49
3.4	Connection-Oriented Channels in LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode .....	57
<b>4</b>	<b>Signaling Packet Formats .....</b>	<b>59</b>
4.1	Command Reject (code 0x01) .....	62
4.2	Connection Request (code 0x02) .....	63
4.3	Connection Response (code 0x03) .....	64
4.4	Configuration Request (code 0x04).....	66
4.5	Configuration Response (code 0x05) .....	68
4.6	Disconnection Request (code 0x06).....	70
4.7	Disconnection Response (code 0x07) .....	71
4.8	Echo Request (code 0x08) .....	71
4.9	Echo Response (code 0x09) .....	72
4.10	Information Request (code 0x0A) .....	72
4.11	Information Response (code 0x0B) .....	73
4.12	Extended Feature Mask.....	75
4.13	Fixed Channels Supported .....	76
4.14	Create Channel Request (code 0x0C).....	77
4.15	Create Channel Response (code 0x0D).....	78



4.16	Move Channel Request (code 0x0E) .....	79
4.17	Move Channel Response (code 0x0F).....	80
4.18	Move Channel Confirmation (code 0x10).....	81
4.19	Move Channel Confirmation Response (code 0x11).....	82
4.20	Connection Parameter Update Request (code 0x12) .....	82
4.21	Connection Parameter Update Response (code 0x13) .....	84
4.22	LE Credit Based Connection Request (Code 0x14).....	85
4.23	LE Credit Based Connection Response (Code 0x15).....	86
4.24	LE Flow Control Credit (Code 0x16) .....	88
<b>5</b>	<b>Configuration Parameter Options.....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.1	Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU).....	89
5.2	Flush Timeout Option.....	91
5.3	Quality of Service (QoS) Option.....	92
5.4	Retransmission and Flow Control Option.....	96
5.5	Frame Check Sequence (FCS) Option .....	101
5.6	Extended Flow Specification Option .....	102
5.7	Extended Window Size Option.....	107
<b>6</b>	<b>State Machine .....</b>	<b>109</b>
6.1	General rules for the state machine: .....	109
6.2	Timers events.....	125
<b>7</b>	<b>General Procedures .....</b>	<b>130</b>
7.1	Configuration Process.....	130
7.2	Fragmentation and Recombination.....	137
7.3	Encapsulation of SDUs .....	139
7.4	Delivery of Erroneous L2CAP SDUs.....	141
7.5	Operation with Flushing On ACL-U Logical Links .....	141
7.6	Connectionless Data Channel.....	142
7.7	Operation Collision Resolution.....	144
7.8	Aggregating Best Effort Extended Flow Specifications .....	144
7.9	Prioritizing Data over HCI.....	145
7.10	Supporting Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR and BR/ EDR/LE Controllers.....	146
<b>8</b>	<b>Procedures for Flow Control and Retransmission .....</b>	<b>148</b>
8.1	Information Retrieval.....	148
8.2	Function of PDU Types for Flow Control and Retransmission.	148
8.3	Variables and Sequence Numbers.....	149
8.4	Retransmission Mode .....	153
8.5	Flow Control Mode .....	160
8.6	Enhanced Retransmission Mode .....	164
8.7	Streaming Mode .....	194



<b>9</b>	<b>Procedure for AMP Channel Creation and Handling .....</b>	<b>196</b>
9.1	Create Channel.....	196
9.2	Move Channel.....	199
9.3	Disconnect Channel.....	207
<b>10</b>	<b>Procedures for Credit Based Flow Control .....</b>	<b>208</b>
10.1	LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode .....	208
<b>11</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>211</b>

**Part B****SERVICE DISCOVERY PROTOCOL (SDP) SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>221</b>
1.1	General Description .....	221
1.2	Motivation .....	221
1.3	Requirements.....	221
1.4	Non-requirements and Deferred Requirements.....	222
1.5	Conventions .....	222
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>223</b>
2.1	SDP Client-Server Architecture .....	223
2.2	Service Record .....	224
2.3	Service Attribute .....	226
2.4	Service Class .....	227
2.5	Searching for Services.....	228
2.6	Browsing for Services .....	229
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Representation .....</b>	<b>232</b>
3.1	Data Element .....	232
3.2	Data Element Type Descriptor.....	232
3.3	Data Element Size Descriptor.....	233
3.4	Data Element Examples .....	234
<b>4</b>	<b>Protocol Description.....</b>	<b>235</b>
4.1	Transfer Byte Order .....	235
4.2	Protocol Data Unit Format .....	235
4.3	Partial Responses and Continuation State .....	237
4.4	Error Handling.....	237
4.5	ServiceSearch Transaction.....	239
4.6	ServiceAttribute Transaction.....	242
4.7	ServiceSearchAttribute Transaction .....	245



<b>5</b>	<b>Service Attribute Definitions .....</b>	<b>249</b>
5.1	Universal Attribute Definitions .....	249
5.2	ServiceDiscoveryServer Service Class Attribute Definitions....	259
5.3	BrowseGroupDescriptor Service Class Attribute Definitions....	261
<b>6</b>	<b>Security .....</b>	<b>262</b>

## Part C

### GENERIC ACCESS PROFILE

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>288</b>
1.1	Scope.....	288
1.2	Symbols and Conventions .....	289
<b>2</b>	<b>Profile Overview .....</b>	<b>291</b>
2.1	Profile Stack .....	291
2.2	Profile Roles .....	291
2.3	User Requirements and Scenarios .....	295
2.4	Profile Fundamentals .....	295
2.5	Conformance .....	295
<b>3</b>	<b>User Interface Aspects .....</b>	<b>296</b>
3.1	The User Interface Level.....	296
3.2	Representation of Bluetooth Parameters .....	296
3.3	Pairing .....	300
<b>4</b>	<b>Modes – BR/EDR Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>301</b>
4.1	Discoverability Modes .....	301
4.2	Connectability Modes.....	305
4.3	Bondable Modes .....	307
4.4	Synchronizability Modes .....	308
<b>5</b>	<b>Security Aspects – BR/EDR Physical Transport .....</b>	<b>309</b>
5.1	Authentication .....	309
5.2	Security Modes .....	311
<b>6</b>	<b>Idle Mode Procedures – BR/EDR Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>328</b>
6.1	General Inquiry .....	328
6.2	Limited Inquiry.....	329
6.3	Name Discovery.....	331
6.4	Device Discovery .....	332
6.5	Bonding .....	334



<b>7</b>	<b>Establishment Procedures – BR/EDR Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>337</b>
7.1	Link Establishment.....	337
7.2	Channel Establishment.....	340
7.3	Connection Establishment .....	342
7.4	Establishment of Additional Connection .....	343
7.5	Synchronization Establishment.....	344
<b>8</b>	<b>Extended Inquiry Response Data Format.....</b>	<b>345</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Operational Modes and Procedures – LE Physical Transport....</b>	<b>347</b>
9.1	Broadcast Mode and Observation Procedure.....	347
9.2	Discovery Modes and Procedures .....	348
9.3	Connection Modes and Procedures .....	356
9.4	Bonding Modes and Procedures .....	367
<b>10</b>	<b>Security Aspects – LE Physical Transport .....</b>	<b>370</b>
10.1	Requirements.....	370
10.2	LE Security Modes.....	370
10.3	Authentication Procedure .....	372
10.4	Data Signing .....	379
10.5	Authorization Procedure .....	381
10.6	Encryption Procedure .....	381
10.7	Privacy Feature .....	381
10.8	Random Device Address .....	383
<b>11</b>	<b>Advertising and Scan Response Data Format .....</b>	<b>387</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>GAP Service and Characteristics for GATT Server.....</b>	<b>388</b>
12.1	Device Name Characteristic .....	389
12.2	Appearance Characteristic .....	389
12.3	Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters Characteristic...	390
<b>13</b>	<b>BR/EDR/LE Operation.....</b>	<b>392</b>
13.1	Modes, Procedures and Security Aspects .....	392
13.2	Bonding for BR/EDR/LE Device Type.....	393
13.3	Relationship between Physical Transports .....	393
<b>14</b>	<b>BR/EDR/LE Security Aspects.....</b>	<b>394</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>Bluetooth Device Requirements.....</b>	<b>395</b>
15.1	Bluetooth Device Address .....	395
15.2	GATT Profile Requirements .....	395
15.3	SDP Requirements .....	396
15.4	SDP Service Record Requirement .....	396



<b>16</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>397</b>
16.1	General Definitions	397
16.2	Connection-related Definitions	397
16.3	Device-related Definitions	398
16.4	Procedure-related Definitions	399
16.5	Security-related Definitions	399
<b>17</b>	<b>Appendix A (Normative): Timers and Constants</b>	<b>401</b>
<b>18</b>	<b>Appendix B (Informative): Information Flows of Related Procedures</b>	<b>405</b>
18.1	LMP – Authentication	405
18.2	LMP – Pairing	406
18.3	Service Discovery	407
18.4	Generating a Resolvable Private Address	407
18.5	Resolving a Resolvable Private Address	407
<b>19</b>	<b>References</b>	<b>408</b>

**Part D****TEST SUPPORT**

<b>1</b>	<b>Test Methodology</b>	<b>417</b>
1.1	BR/EDR Test Scenarios	417
1.2	AMP Test Scenarios	427
1.3	References	435
<b>2</b>	<b>Test Control Interface (TCI)</b>	<b>436</b>
2.1	Introduction	436
2.2	TCI Configurations	437
2.3	TCI Configuration and Usage	440



## Part E AMP MANAGER PROTOCOL SPECIFICATION

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>449</b>
1.1	General Description .....	449
<b>2</b>	<b>General Operation.....</b>	<b>450</b>
2.1	Basic Capabilities.....	450
2.2	AMP Manager Channel Over L2CAP .....	451
2.3	Using the AMP Manager Protocol .....	452
2.4	Controller IDs .....	454
2.5	Controller Types.....	454
<b>3</b>	<b>Protocol Description.....</b>	<b>455</b>
3.1	Packet Formats.....	455
3.2	AMP Command Reject (Code 0x01) .....	457
3.3	AMP Discover Request (Code 0x02).....	458
3.4	AMP Discover Response (Code 0x03) .....	459
3.5	AMP Change Notify (Code 0x04) .....	462
3.6	AMP Change Response (Code 0x05) .....	463
3.7	AMP Get Info Request (Code 0x06) .....	463
3.8	AMP Get Info Response (Code 0x07) .....	464
3.9	AMP Get AMP Assoc Request (Code 0x08) .....	466
3.10	AMP Get AMP Assoc Response (Code 0x09).....	466
3.11	AMP Create Physical Link Request (Code 0x0A).....	467
3.12	AMP Create Physical Link Response (Code 0x0B).....	468
3.13	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request (Code 0x0C) .....	471
3.14	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response (Code 0x0D).....	471
3.15	Create Physical Link Collision Resolution .....	473
3.16	Response Timeout.....	473
3.17	Unexpected BR/EDR Physical Link Disconnect .....	473

## Part F ATTRIBUTE PROTOCOL (ATT)

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>481</b>
1.1	Scope.....	481
1.2	Conformance .....	481
<b>2</b>	<b>Protocol Overview .....</b>	<b>482</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Protocol Requirements.....</b>	<b>483</b>
3.1	Introduction .....	483
3.2	Basic Concepts .....	483
3.3	Attribute PDU .....	488
3.4	Attribute Protocol PDUs .....	492
<b>4</b>	<b>Security Considerations.....</b>	<b>525</b>

**Part G****GENERIC ATTRIBUTE PROFILE (GATT)**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>533</b>
1.1	Scope .....	533
1.2	Profile Dependency .....	533
1.3	Conformance .....	533
1.4	Bluetooth Specification Release Compatibility .....	534
1.5	Conventions .....	534
<b>2</b>	<b>Profile Overview .....</b>	<b>535</b>
2.1	Protocol Stack .....	535
2.2	Configurations and Roles .....	535
2.3	User Requirements and Scenarios .....	536
2.4	Profile Fundamentals .....	536
2.5	Attribute Protocol .....	537
2.6	GATT Profile Hierarchy .....	541
2.7	Configured Broadcast .....	543
<b>3</b>	<b>Service Interoperability Requirements.....</b>	<b>544</b>
3.1	Service Definition .....	544
3.2	Include Definition .....	545
3.3	Characteristic Definition .....	545
3.4	Summary of GATT Profile Attribute Types .....	557
<b>4</b>	<b>GATT Feature Requirements .....</b>	<b>558</b>
4.1	Overview .....	558
4.2	Feature Support and Procedure Mapping .....	558
4.3	Server Configuration .....	560
4.4	Primary Service Discovery .....	561
4.5	Relationship Discovery .....	564
4.6	Characteristic Discovery .....	565
4.7	Characteristic Descriptor Discovery .....	568
4.8	Characteristic Value Read .....	570
4.9	Characteristic Value Write .....	573
4.10	Characteristic Value Notification .....	578
4.11	Characteristic Value Indications .....	579
4.12	Characteristic Descriptors .....	580
4.13	GATT Procedure Mapping to ATT Protocol Opcodes .....	583
4.14	Procedure Timeouts .....	585
<b>5</b>	<b>L2CAP Interoperability Requirements.....</b>	<b>586</b>
5.1	BR/EDR L2CAP Interoperability Requirements .....	586
5.2	LE L2CAP Interoperability Requirements .....	587



<b>6</b>	<b>GAP Interoperability Requirements .....</b>	<b>589</b>
6.1	BR/EDR GAP Interoperability Requirements .....	589
6.2	LE GAP Interoperability Requirements .....	589
6.3	Disconnected Events .....	590
<b>7</b>	<b>Defined Generic Attribute Profile Service .....</b>	<b>591</b>
7.1	Service Changed .....	591
<b>8</b>	<b>Security Considerations.....</b>	<b>593</b>
8.1	Authentication Requirements.....	593
8.2	Authorization Requirements.....	594
<b>9</b>	<b>SDP Interoperability Requirements.....</b>	<b>595</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>References.....</b>	<b>596</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Appendix: Example Attribute Server Attributes .....</b>	<b>597</b>

**Part H****SECURITY MANAGER SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>607</b>
1.1	Scope.....	607
1.2	Conventions .....	607
<b>2</b>	<b>Security Manager .....</b>	<b>608</b>
2.1	Introduction .....	608
2.2	Cryptographic Toolbox .....	609
2.3	Pairing Methods .....	613
2.4	Security in Bluetooth low energy .....	622
<b>3</b>	<b>Security Manager Protocol .....</b>	<b>630</b>
3.1	Introduction .....	630
3.2	Security Manager Channel over L2CAP .....	630
3.3	Command Format.....	630
3.4	SMP Timeout .....	631
3.5	Pairing Methods .....	632
3.6	Security in Bluetooth low energy .....	639
<b>4</b>	<b>References.....</b>	<b>645</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Appendices.....</b>	<b>648</b>
5.1	Appendix A – EDIV and Rand Generation.....	648
5.2	Appendix B – Key Management .....	650
5.3	Message Sequence Charts.....	654



---

**Specification Volume 4  
Host Controller Interface  
[Transport Layer]**

---

**Part A**

**UART TRANSPORT LAYER**

<b>1</b>	<b>General</b> .....	<b>13</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Protocol</b> .....	<b>14</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>RS232 Settings</b> .....	<b>15</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Error Recovery</b> .....	<b>16</b>

**Part B**

**USB TRANSPORT LAYER**

<b>1</b>	<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>21</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>USB Endpoint Expectations</b> .....	<b>25</b>
2.1	Descriptor Overview .....	25
2.2	Control Endpoint Expectations .....	32
2.3	Bulk Endpoints Expectations .....	34
2.4	Interrupt Endpoint Expectations .....	34
2.5	Isochronous Endpoints Expectations .....	34
<b>3</b>	<b>Class Code</b> .....	<b>36</b>
3.1	Bluetooth Codes .....	36
<b>4</b>	<b>Device Firmware Upgrade</b> .....	<b>38</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Limitations</b> .....	<b>39</b>
5.1	Power Specific Limitations .....	39
5.2	Other Limitations .....	39
<b>6</b>	<b>Bluetooth Composite Device Implementation</b> .....	<b>40</b>
6.1	Configurations .....	40
6.2	Using USB Interface Association Descriptors for a Primary Controller Function.....	40
6.3	Combined Primary Controller Function and Single AMP Controller Function.....	41
<b>7</b>	<b>References</b> .....	<b>45</b>

**Part C****SECURE DIGITAL (SD)  
TRANSPORT LAYER**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Goals .....</b>	<b>51</b>
2.1	Hardware Goals.....	51
2.2	Software Goals .....	51
2.3	Configuration Goals .....	52
2.4	Configuration for Multiple Controllers .....	52
<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Interface Documents .....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Communication.....</b>	<b>54</b>
4.1	Overview.....	54
<b>5</b>	<b>Appendix A - Acronyms and Abbreviations .....</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Appendix B - Related Documents .....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Appendix C - Tests .....</b>	<b>57</b>
7.1	Test Suite Structure.....	57

**Part D****THREE-WIRE UART TRANSPORT LAYER**

<b>1</b>	<b>General.....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Slip Layer.....</b>	<b>65</b>
3.1	Encoding a Packet.....	65
3.2	Decoding a Packet.....	65
<b>4</b>	<b>Packet Header .....</b>	<b>67</b>
4.1	Sequence Number.....	67
4.2	Acknowledge Number.....	68
4.3	Data Integrity Check Present.....	68
4.4	Reliable Packet.....	68
4.5	Packet Type .....	68
4.6	Payload Length .....	69
4.7	Packet Header Checksum .....	69
<b>5</b>	<b>Data Integrity Check .....</b>	<b>70</b>
5.1	16 Bit CCITT-CRC .....	70



<b>6</b>	<b>Reliable Packets .....</b>	<b>71</b>
6.1	Header Checksum Error .....	71
6.2	Slip Payload Length Error .....	71
6.3	Data Integrity Check Error.....	71
6.4	Out Of Sequence Packet Error .....	71
6.5	Acknowledgement.....	72
6.6	Resending Packets .....	72
6.7	Example Reliable Packet Flow.....	72
<b>7</b>	<b>Unreliable Packets .....</b>	<b>75</b>
7.1	Unreliable Packet Header .....	75
7.2	Unreliable Packet Error .....	75
<b>8</b>	<b>Link Establishment .....</b>	<b>76</b>
8.1	Uninitialized State.....	77
8.2	Initialized State .....	77
8.3	Active State .....	77
8.4	Sync Message .....	78
8.5	Sync Response Message .....	78
8.6	Config Message .....	78
8.7	Config Response Message .....	79
8.8	Configuration Field .....	79
<b>9</b>	<b>Low Power .....</b>	<b>82</b>
9.1	Wakeup Message .....	82
9.2	Woken Message .....	82
9.3	Sleep Message .....	83
<b>10</b>	<b>Out of Frame Control .....</b>	<b>84</b>
10.1	Software Flow Control.....	84
<b>11</b>	<b>Hardware Configuration .....</b>	<b>85</b>
11.1	Wires .....	85
11.2	Hardware Flow .....	85
<b>12</b>	<b>Recommended Parameters .....</b>	<b>86</b>
12.1	Timing Parameters .....	86
<b>13</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>87</b>



---

**Specification Volume 5**  
**Core System Package**  
**[AMP Controller volume]**

---

**Part A**

**802.11 PROTOCOL ADAPTATION LAYER FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>13</b>
1.1	Organization of the 802.11 PAL .....	13
<b>2</b>	<b>AMP Host Controller Interface .....</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1	Read Local Version Information Command .....	15
2.2	Read Local Amp Info Command.....	15
2.3	Reset Command .....	18
2.4	Read Failed Contact Counter Command.....	18
2.5	Read Link Quality Command .....	18
2.6	Read RSSI Command .....	18
2.7	Short Range Mode Command .....	19
2.8	Write Best Effort Flush Timeout Command.....	19
2.9	Read Best Effort Flush Timeout Command .....	20
2.10	Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event.....	20
2.11	Physical Link Recovery Event .....	20
2.12	Channel Selected Event .....	20
2.13	Short Range Mode Change Complete Event .....	20
2.14	Data Structures .....	21
2.15	Connection Accept Timeout Configuration Parameter.....	27
2.16	Enable Device Under Test Mode .....	27
<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Link Manager .....</b>	<b>28</b>
3.1	Physical Link State Machine .....	28
3.2	Channel Selection.....	37
3.3	802.11 Link Creation .....	44
3.4	Physical Link Maintenance .....	46
3.5	Physical Link Security .....	47
3.6	Physical Link Support for QOS .....	49
<b>4</b>	<b>Logical Link Manager .....</b>	<b>50</b>
4.1	Logical Link Creation .....	50
4.2	Logical Link Updates .....	52
4.3	Logical Link Deletion.....	52



<b>5</b>	<b>Data Manager.....</b>	<b>53</b>
5.1	Encapsulation.....	53
5.2	Coexistence and Local Interference.....	54
5.3	Explicit Flush.....	57
5.4	Automatic Flush .....	57
5.5	Quality Of Service Violations.....	57
<b>6</b>	<b>Constants.....</b>	<b>58</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Message Sequence Charts.....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Appendix A: Test Support .....</b>	<b>60</b>
8.1	AMP Test Command .....	60
8.2	AMP Start Test Event .....	64
8.3	AMP Test End Event .....	65
<b>9</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>66</b>



---

**Specification Volume 6****Core System Package [Low Energy Controller volume]**

---

**Part A****PHYSICAL LAYER SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Scope .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequency Bands and Channel Arrangement.....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Transmitter Characteristics .....</b>	<b>17</b>
3.1	Modulation Characteristics .....	17
3.2	Spurious Emissions .....	18
3.3	Radio Frequency Tolerance.....	19
<b>4</b>	<b>Receiver Characteristics .....</b>	<b>20</b>
4.1	Actual Sensitivity Level .....	20
4.2	Interference Performance .....	21
4.3	Out-of-Band Blocking.....	22
4.4	Intermodulation Characteristics .....	22
4.5	Maximum Usable Level .....	23
4.6	Reference Signal Definition .....	23
<b>5</b>	<b>Appendix A .....</b>	<b>24</b>
5.1	Normal Operating Conditions (NOC) .....	24
5.2	Extreme Operating Conditions (EOC) .....	24
<b>6</b>	<b>Appendix B - Operating Conditions .....</b>	<b>25</b>

**Part B****LINK LAYER SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>General Description .....</b>	<b>32</b>
1.1	Link Layer States .....	32
1.2	Bit Ordering.....	34
1.3	Device Address.....	34
1.4	Physical Channel .....	35
<b>2</b>	<b>Air Interface Packets.....</b>	<b>37</b>
2.1	Packet Format .....	37
2.2	Reserved for Future Use (RFU).....	38
2.3	Advertising Channel PDU .....	38
2.4	Data Channel PDU .....	45
<b>3</b>	<b>Bit Stream Processing.....</b>	<b>56</b>
3.1	Error Checking .....	56
3.2	Data Whitening .....	57



<b>4</b>	<b>Air Interface Protocol.....</b>	<b>58</b>
4.1	Inter Frame Space .....	58
4.2	Timing Requirements .....	58
4.3	Link Layer Device Filtering.....	58
4.4	Non-Connected States .....	60
4.5	Connection State.....	71
4.6	Feature Support .....	81
<b>5</b>	<b>Link Layer Control .....</b>	<b>83</b>
5.1	Link Layer Control Procedures.....	83
5.2	Procedure Response Timeout .....	102
5.3	Procedure Collisions .....	103
5.4	LE Authenticated Payload Timeout.....	103

**Part C****SAMPLE DATA**

<b>1</b>	<b>Encryption sample data.....</b>	<b>107</b>
1.1	Encrypt Command .....	109
1.2	Derivation of the MIC and Encrypted Data.....	109

**Part D****MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>116</b>
1.1	Notation.....	116
1.2	Control Flow .....	117
1.3	Example MSC .....	117
<b>2</b>	<b>Standby State.....</b>	<b>118</b>
2.1	Initial Setup .....	118
2.2	Random Device Address .....	119
2.3	White Lists.....	119
<b>3</b>	<b>Advertising State.....</b>	<b>120</b>
3.1	Undirected Advertising .....	120
3.2	Directed Advertising .....	121
<b>4</b>	<b>Scanning State .....</b>	<b>123</b>
4.1	Passive Scanning .....	123
4.2	Active Scanning .....	124
<b>5</b>	<b>Initiating State.....</b>	<b>125</b>
5.1	Initiating a Connection .....	125
5.2	Canceling an Initiation.....	126



<b>6</b>	<b>Connection State.....</b>	<b>127</b>
6.1	Sending Data .....	127
6.2	Connection Update .....	128
6.3	Channel Map Update.....	128
6.4	Features Exchange.....	129
6.5	Version Exchange.....	130
6.6	Start Encryption .....	131
6.7	Start Encryption without Long Term Key .....	132
6.8	Start Encryption with Event Masked .....	133
6.9	Start Encryption Without Slave Supporting Encryption .....	134
6.10	Restart Encryption .....	135
6.11	Disconnect .....	136
6.12	Connection Parameters Request.....	137
6.13	LE Ping .....	141

**Part E****LOW ENERGY LINK LAYER SECURITY**

<b>1</b>	<b>Encryption and Authentication Overview.....</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>CCM.....</b>	<b>148</b>
2.1	CCM Nonce .....	148
2.2	Counter Mode Blocks .....	149
2.3	Encryption Blocks .....	150

**Part F****DIRECT TEST MODE**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>154</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Low Energy Test Scenarios .....</b>	<b>155</b>
2.1	Test Sequences .....	155
2.2	Message Sequence Charts.....	156
<b>3</b>	<b>UART Test Interface .....</b>	<b>157</b>
3.1	UART Interface Characteristics .....	157
3.2	UART Functional Description.....	157
3.3	Commands and Events.....	158
3.4	Events .....	159
3.5	Timing – Command and Event .....	161
<b>4</b>	<b>LE Test Packet Definition .....</b>	<b>162</b>
4.1	LE test packets format .....	162



---

**Specification Volume 7****Core System Package [Wireless Coexistence volume]**

---

**Part A****MWS COEXISTENCE LOGICAL SIGNALING SPECIFICATION**

1	Introduction .....	10
2	Logical Interface.....	11
2.1	Coexistence Signals.....	11
2.2	Tolerances for Offsets and Jitter .....	14

**Part B****WIRELESS COEXISTENCE INTERFACE 1 (WCI-1) TRANSPORT  
SPECIFICATION**

1	Introduction .....	20
2	Physical Layer .....	21
2.1	Physical Signal Specifications (Informative) .....	22
3	Transport Layer .....	24
3.1	Message Types .....	24

**Part C****WIRELESS COEXISTENCE INTERFACE 2 (WCI-2) TRANSPORT  
SPECIFICATION**

1	Introduction .....	32
2	Physical Layer .....	33
3	Transport Layer .....	34
3.1	Message Types .....	34



## Master Table of Contents & Compliance Requirements

Part B

# BLUETOOTH COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS

*This document specifies the requirements for Bluetooth compliance.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Scope .....</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Definitions.....</b>	<b>49</b>
3.1	Types of Bluetooth Products .....	49
3.1.1	Bluetooth End Product .....	50
3.1.2	Bluetooth Subsystem Product.....	50
3.1.2.1	Bluetooth Host Subsystem Product .....	51
3.1.2.2	Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product.....	52
3.1.2.3	Bluetooth Profile Subsystem Product .....	53
3.1.3	Bluetooth Component Product.....	53
3.1.4	Bluetooth Development Tool .....	53
3.1.5	Bluetooth Test Equipment .....	53
<b>4</b>	<b>Core Configurations.....</b>	<b>54</b>
4.1	Basic Rate Core Configuration.....	54
4.2	Enhanced Data Rate Core Configurations.....	55
4.3	High Speed Core Configuration .....	56
4.4	Low Energy Core Configuration .....	57
4.5	Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined Core Configuration .....	58
4.6	Host Controller Interface Core Configuration .....	59



## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

The Bluetooth Qualification Program Reference Document (PRD) is the primary reference document for the Bluetooth Qualification Program and defines its requirements, functions, and policies. The PRD is available on the Bluetooth Web site.

Passing the Bluetooth Qualification Process demonstrates a certain measure of compliance and interoperability, but because products are not tested for every aspect of this Bluetooth Specification, qualification does not guarantee compliance. Passing the Bluetooth Qualification Process only satisfies one condition of the license grant. The Member has the ultimate responsibility to ensure that the qualified product complies with this Bluetooth Specification and interoperates with other products.

## 2 SCOPE

---

This part of the specification defines some fundamental concepts used in the Bluetooth Qualification Program.

## 3 DEFINITIONS

---

**Bluetooth Qualification Process** – The process defined in the Bluetooth Qualification Program Reference Document (PRD) to qualify a design used in implementations of Bluetooth wireless technology.

**Bluetooth Qualification Program** – The Bluetooth Qualification Process together with other related requirements and processes.

### 3.1 TYPES OF BLUETOOTH PRODUCTS

**Bluetooth Product** — Any product containing an implementation of Bluetooth wireless technology. Bluetooth Products as defined herein may require enabling technology external to Bluetooth Scope, as defined by the Patent and Copyright License Agreement, to become functional (e.g. power supply, technology capable of running executable code, etc.). Enabling technology is not part of any of the Bluetooth Product type definitions and is not included in the Bluetooth License grant.

All Bluetooth Products shall be one of the following:

- Bluetooth End Product
- Bluetooth Host Subsystem Product
- Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product
- Bluetooth Profile Subsystem Product
- Bluetooth Component Product
- Bluetooth Development Tool
- Bluetooth Test Equipment.

[Table 3.1](#) defines abbreviations for the different Core Configurations defined in [Section 4 on page 54](#).

Abbreviation	Explanation	Section Reference
BR CC	Bluetooth Basic Rate Core Configuration	<a href="#">Section 4.1</a>
EDR CC	Bluetooth Enhanced Data Rate Core Configuration	<a href="#">Section 4.2</a>
HS CC	High Speed Bluetooth Core Configuration	<a href="#">Section 4.3</a>
LE CC	Bluetooth Low Energy Core Configuration	<a href="#">Section 4.4</a>
BR and LE Combined CC	Bluetooth Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined Core Configuration	<a href="#">Section 4.5</a>
HCI CC	Host Controller Interface Core Configuration	<a href="#">Section 4.6</a>

*Table 3.1: Core Configuration abbreviations*

*Bluetooth Compliance Requirements*

Using the abbreviations in [Table 3.1](#) the following tables define Bluetooth product types in terms of Core Configurations. For the respective Core Configuration, the letter “M” indicates that it is mandatory to claim support, “O” indicates that it is optional to claim support, “P” indicates that it is optionally permitted to claim only partial support of the Core Configuration, “I” indicates that the Core Configuration is inherently included in the combined Core Configuration, “X” indicates that support for the Core Configuration shall not be claimed.

### 3.1.1 Bluetooth End Product

A *Bluetooth End Product* is a Bluetooth product that claims to implement one or more Core Configurations, in compliance with the required parts of the Specification, and in accordance with the mandatory requirements as defined herein. Complementary products for *Bluetooth End Products* are limited to only *Bluetooth Profile Subsystem Products*.

The Bluetooth End Product types are defined in [Table 3.2](#).

	<b>BR CC</b>	<b>EDR CC</b>	<b>HS CC</b>	<b>BR and LE Combined CC</b>	<b>LE CC</b>	<b>HCI CC</b>
BR End Product	M	P	P	X	X	O
EDR End Product	M	M	P	X	X	O
HS End Product	M	M	M	X	X	O
LE End Product	X	X	X	X	M	O
BR and LE End Product	I	P	P	M	I	O
EDR and LE End Product	I	M	P	M	I	O
HS and LE End Product	I	M	M	M	I	O

*Table 3.2: Required configuration per Bluetooth End Product type*

### 3.1.2 Bluetooth Subsystem Product

A Bluetooth Subsystem Product is a Bluetooth product that claims to implement only a portion of the Specification, in compliance with such portion of the Specification, and in accordance with the mandatory requirements as defined herein. Bluetooth Subsystem Products can be qualified solely for distribution; the use of Bluetooth wireless technology in Bluetooth Subsystem Products requires such Bluetooth Subsystem Products to be combined with one or more complementary products such that the resulting combination satisfies the requirements of a Bluetooth End Product. Complementary products used in combinations are limited to those complementary products specified in each of the product definitions.

*Bluetooth Compliance Requirements*

There are three types of Bluetooth Subsystem Products defined:

1. Bluetooth Host Subsystem Product
2. Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product
3. Bluetooth Profile Subsystem Product.

A Bluetooth Subsystem Product shall be one of these types.

### 3.1.2.1 Bluetooth Host Subsystem Product

The required configuration for each *Bluetooth Host Subsystem Product* type is listed in [Table 3.3](#).

	BR CC Host Parts	HS CC Host Parts	BR and LE Combined CC Host Parts	LE CC Host Parts	HCI CC
BR/EDR Host Subsystem Product	M	P	X	X	M
HS Host Subsystem Product	M	M	X	X	M
LE Host Subsystem Product	X	X	X	M	M
BR/EDR and LE Host Subsystem Product	I	P	M	I	M
HS and LE Host Subsystem Product	I	M	M	I	M

*Table 3.3: Required configuration per Bluetooth Host Subsystem Product type*

A *Bluetooth Host Subsystem Product* may contain, in addition to the required Core Configuration Host parts (as defined in [Table 3.3](#)), all the mandatory requirements defined in one or more of the protocols and profiles above HCI. Protocols below HCI required by the Core Configuration Controller parts (as defined in [Table 3.4](#)) shall be excluded from the Host Subsystem Product. Complementary products for *Bluetooth Host Subsystem Products* are limited to:

- a) *Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Products* that implement and use the HCI ([\[Vol. 2\] Part E](#)) for communication between the subsystems; and
- b) *Bluetooth Profile Subsystem Products* when the *Bluetooth Host Subsystem* is combined with a *Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product*.

### 3.1.2.2 Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product

The required configuration for each *Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product* type is listed in [Table 3.4](#).

	BR CC Controller Parts	EDR CC Controller Parts	HS CC Controller Parts	BR and LE Combined CC Controller Parts	LE CC Controller Parts	HCI CC
BR Controller Subsystem Product	M	P	P	X	X	M
EDR Controller Subsystem Product	M	M	P	X	X	M
HS Controller Subsystem Product	M	M	M	X	X	M
HS only Controller Subsystem Product	X	X	M	X	X	M
LE Controller Subsystem Product	X	X	X	X	M	M
BR and LE Controller Subsystem Product	I	P	P	M	I	M
EDR and LE Controller Subsystem Product	I	M	P	M	I	M
HS and LE Controller Subsystem Product	I	M	M	M	I	M

*Table 3.4: Required configuration per Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product type*

A *Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product* shall be limited to the Controller parts of the Core Configurations. Protocols and Profiles above HCI required by the Core Configuration Host parts (as defined in [Table 3.3](#)) shall be excluded from the Controller Subsystem Product. Complementary products for *Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Products* are limited to *Bluetooth Host Subsystem Products* that implement and use the HCI ([\[Vol. 2\] Part E](#)) for communication between the subsystems.

### 3.1.2.3 Bluetooth Profile Subsystem Product

A *Bluetooth Profile Subsystem Product* is a Bluetooth product that claims to implement, at a minimum, all the mandatory requirements defined in one or more of the profile or service specifications. Complementary products for *Bluetooth Profile Subsystem Products* are limited to:

- a) *Bluetooth Host Subsystem Products* when combined with a *Bluetooth Controller Subsystem Product*; and
- b) *Bluetooth End Products*.

### **3.1.3 Bluetooth Component Product**

A *Bluetooth Component Product* is a Bluetooth product that claims to implement, at a minimum, all the mandatory requirements, if any, of either one or more of any of the protocol and profile or service parts of the Specification in compliance with such portion of the Specification. *Bluetooth Component Products* can be qualified solely for distribution and the use of the Bluetooth wireless technology in *Bluetooth Component Products* require such *Bluetooth Component Products* to be incorporated in *Bluetooth End Products* or *Bluetooth Subsystem Products*. A product that meets the requirements of a *Bluetooth End Product* or *Bluetooth Subsystem product* may be qualified as a *Bluetooth Component Product* if a manufacturer determines that further integration is necessary prior to qualifying the product as a *Bluetooth End Product* or *Bluetooth Subsystem Product*.

### **3.1.4 Bluetooth Development Tool**

A *Bluetooth Development Tool* is a Bluetooth product intended to facilitate the development of new Bluetooth designs. *Bluetooth Development Tools* can be qualified solely for distribution and the use of the Bluetooth wireless technology in development of new Bluetooth Products.

### **3.1.5 Bluetooth Test Equipment**

A *Bluetooth Test Equipment* is a Bluetooth product intended to facilitate the testing of new Bluetooth Products. *Bluetooth Test Equipment* can be qualified solely for distribution and the use of the Bluetooth wireless technology in testing of new Bluetooth Products. Where necessary, *Bluetooth Test Equipment* may deviate from the Specification in order to fulfill the test purposes in the *Bluetooth Test Specifications*.

## 4 CORE CONFIGURATIONS

---

This section defines the set of features that are required for a product to be qualified to a specification name. The Core Specification version number is simply the version number of the specification itself.

Specification names differ from Core Specification version numbers in that products are marked based on meeting requirements for a Core Configuration together with the mixing requirements (see [\[Vol. 1\] Part D, Section 1](#)).

Each Core Configuration is defined by a set of parts and individual features of the Core Specification that shall be supported to allow the configuration name to be used. The configuration requirements imposed on a device may depend on the profiles that it supports.

### 4.1 BASIC RATE CORE CONFIGURATION

This section specifies compliance requirements for the “Basic Rate” Core Configuration.

To claim support to the “Basic Rate” Core Configuration, an implementation must support a set of Required Features, according to the details in [Table 4.1](#) and [Table 4.2](#).

Host Part:

Layer	Required Features
L2CAP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part A</a> )	L2CAP Signaling Channel (CID 0x0001) and all mandatory features associated with it
SDP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part B</a> )	All mandatory features
ATT ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part F</a> )	If ATT is supported, all mandatory features
GATT ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part G</a> )	GATT is mandatory when ATT is supported. When supported, all mandatory features
GAP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part C</a> )	All mandatory features in sections 2 through 8 and section 15

*Table 4.1: BR Core Configuration Host requirements*

Controller Part:

Layer	Required Features
RF ( <a href="#">[Vol. 2] Part A</a> )	All mandatory features
BB ( <a href="#">[Vol. 2] Part B</a> )	All mandatory features
LMP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 2] Part C</a> )	All mandatory features

*Table 4.2: BR Core Configuration Controller requirements*

## 4.2 ENHANCED DATA RATE CORE CONFIGURATIONS

This section specifies compliance requirements for the “Enhanced Data Rate” Core Configuration.

**Table 4.3** defines three categories of Transport Requirements that shall be satisfied subject to the following rules:

- A Bluetooth product shall support category 1 whenever it supports asynchronous transports for the profiles it incorporates.
- A Bluetooth product shall support category 2 whenever it supports asynchronous transports with multislot ACL packets for the profiles it incorporates.
- A Bluetooth product shall support category 3 whenever it supports eSCO synchronous transports for the profiles it incorporates.

A multi-profile product shall support all applicable categories in order to claim support for the Enhanced Data Rate Core Configuration.

Category No.	Transport Requirements	Controller Part	Host Part
		LMP Features Supported	L2CAP Feature Bits Required
1	EDR for asynchronous transports (single slot)	Enhanced Data Rate ACL 2 Mbps mode (25) AND Enhanced Data Rate ACL 3 Mbps mode (26)	None
2	EDR for asynchronous transports (multi-slot)	3-slot Enhanced Data Rate ACL packets (39) AND 5-slot Enhanced Data Rate ACL packets (40)	None
3	EDR for synchronous transports	Enhanced Data Rate eSCO 2 Mbps mode (45)	None

Table 4.3: EDR Core Configuration requirements

Note: No additional requirements are stated on the support of 3-EV3, 2-EV5 and 3-EV5 packets.

## 4.3 HIGH SPEED CORE CONFIGURATION

This section specifies compliance requirements for the “High Speed” Core Configuration.

To claim support to the “High Speed” Core Configuration, an implementation must support a set of Required Features, according to the details in [Table 4.4](#) and [Table 4.5](#).

Host Part:

Layer	Required Features
L2CAP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part A</a> )	Enhanced Retransmission Mode (L2CAP extended features mask number 3) Fixed Channels (L2CAP extended features mask number 7) AMP Manager Fixed Channel (CID 0x0003) AMP Channel Creation and Handling ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part A, Section 9</a> )
A2MP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part E</a> )	All mandatory features

*Table 4.4: HS Core Configuration Host requirements*

Controller Part:

Layer	Required Features
802.11 PAL ( <a href="#">[Vol. 5] Part A</a> )	All mandatory features

*Table 4.5: HS Core Configuration Controller requirements*

## 4.4 LOW ENERGY CORE CONFIGURATION

This section specifies compliance requirements for the “Low Energy” Core Configuration.

To claim support to the “Low Energy” Core Configuration, an implementation must support a set of Required Features, according to the details in [Table 4.6](#) and [Table 4.7](#).

Host Part:

Layer	Required Features
L2CAP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part A</a> )	L2CAP LE Signaling Channel (CID 0x0005) and all mandatory features associated with it
GAP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part C</a> )	All mandatory features in sections 9-12 and section 15
ATT ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part F</a> )	All mandatory features
GATT ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part G</a> )	All mandatory features
SM ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part H</a> )	All mandatory features

*Table 4.6: LE Core Configuration Host requirements*

Controller Part:

Layer	Required Features
PHY ( <a href="#">[Vol. 6] Part A</a> )	All mandatory features
LL ( <a href="#">[Vol. 6] Part B</a> )	All mandatory features

*Table 4.7: LE Core Configuration Controller requirements*

## 4.5 BASIC RATE AND LOW ENERGY COMBINED CORE CONFIGURATION

This section specifies compliance requirements for the “Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined” Core Configuration.

To claim support for the “Basic Rate and Low Energy” Core Configuration, an implementation must support a set of Required Features, according to the details in [Table 4.8](#) and [Table 4.9](#).

Host Part:

Layer	Required Features
L2CAP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part A</a> )	All L2CAP requirements in the BR CC and LE CC
SDP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part B</a> )	All mandatory features
GAP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part C</a> )	All GAP requirements in the BR CC and LE CC AND All requirements in sections 13, 14 and 15
ATT ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part F</a> )	All ATT requirements in the LE CC
GATT ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part G</a> )	All GATT requirements in the LE CC
SM ( <a href="#">[Vol. 3] Part H</a> )	All SM requirements in the LE CC

*Table 4.8: BR and LE Combined Core Configuration Host requirements*

Controller Part:

Layer	Required Features
RF ( <a href="#">[Vol. 2] Part A</a> )	All RF requirements in the BR CC
BB ( <a href="#">[Vol. 2] Part B</a> )	All BB requirements in the BR CC
LMP ( <a href="#">[Vol. 2] Part C</a> )	All LMP requirements in the BR CC AND LMP feature bits 38 and 65 shall be set
PHY ( <a href="#">[Vol. 6] Part A</a> )	All mandatory features in the LE CC
LL ( <a href="#">[Vol. 6] Part B</a> )	All mandatory features in the LE CC

*Table 4.9: BR and LE Combined Core Configuration Controller requirements*

## 4.6 HOST CONTROLLER INTERFACE CORE CONFIGURATION

This section specifies compliance requirements for the “Host Controller Interface” Core Configuration.

To claim support for the “Host Controller Interface” Core Configuration, an implementation must support a set of Required Features, according to the details in [Table 4.10](#).

Layer	Required Features
HCI ( <a href="#">[Vol. 2] Part E</a> )	All the supported features in the implementation shall be compliant to the Host Controller Interface.

*Table 4.10: HCI Core Configuration requirements*



**Master Table of Contents & Compliance Requirements**

**Part C**

**APPENDIX**

*Appendix*

## CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>Revision History .....</b>	<b>65</b>
1.1	[Vol 0] Master TOC & Compliance Requirements .....	65
1.1.1	Bluetooth Compliance Requirements .....	65
1.2	[Vol 1] Architecture & Terminology Overview .....	65
1.3	[Vols 2, 3, 5, 6 & 7] Core System Package .....	67
1.4	[Vol 4] Transport Layers .....	69
<b>2</b>	<b>Contributors.....</b>	<b>70</b>
2.1	[Vol 0] Master TOC & Compliance Requirements .....	70
2.1.1	Part B: Bluetooth Compliance Requirements .....	70
2.1.2	Vol 0 Part C: Appendix (Rev History and Contributors) .....	70
2.2	[Vol 1] Architecture & Terminology Overview .....	71
2.2.1	Part A: Architectural Overview .....	71
2.2.2	Part B: Acronyms & Abbreviations .....	73
2.2.3	Part C: Core Specification Change History .....	73
2.2.4	Part D: Mixing of Specification Versions .....	74
2.3	[Vol 2] Core System Package, Controller.....	75
2.3.1	Part A: Radio Specification .....	75
2.3.2	Part B: Baseband Specification .....	77
2.3.3	Part C: Link Manager Protocol .....	82
2.3.4	Part D: Error Codes .....	86
2.3.5	Part E: Bluetooth Host Controller Interface Functional Specification .....	89
2.3.6	Part F: Message Sequence Charts .....	94
2.3.7	Part G: Sample Data .....	97
2.3.8	Part H: Security Specification .....	99
2.4	[Vol 3] Core System Package, Host .....	101
2.4.1	Part A: Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification .....	101
2.4.2	Part B: Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) .....	105
2.4.3	Part C: Generic Access Profile .....	106
2.4.4	Part D: Test Support .....	109
2.4.5	Part E: AMP Manager Protocol .....	110
2.4.6	Part F: Attribute Protocol Specification .....	110
2.4.7	Part G: Generic Attribute Protocol Specification .....	111
2.4.8	Part H: Security Manager Specification .....	113
2.5	[Vol 4] Host Controller Interface [Transport Layer] .....	114
2.6	[Vol 5] Core System Package [AMP Controller volume] .....	116

---

Appendix

2.6.1	Part A: 802.11 PAL.....	116
2.7	[Vol 6] Low Energy Specification.....	117
2.7.1	Part A: Physical Layer Specification .....	117
2.7.2	Part B: Link Layer Specification .....	117
2.7.3	Part C: Sample Data .....	118
2.7.4	Part D: Message Sequence Charts.....	119
2.7.5	Part E: Low Energy Security Specification.....	119
2.7.6	Part F: Direct Test Mode .....	120
2.8	[Vol 7] Core System Package [Wireless Coexistence volume]	121
2.8.1	Part A: MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling Specification .....	121
2.8.2	Part B: Wireless Coexistence Interface 1 (WCI-1) Transport Specification.....	121
2.8.3	Part C: Wireless Coexistence Interface 2 (WCI-2) Transport Specification.....	121

## 1 REVISION HISTORY

Beginning with v1.2 of the Core System Package the core Bluetooth specification documents, protocols and profiles were transferred to a new partitioning comprising volumes and individual profile specifications are each contained in an individual document instead of the two volumes (Core and Profiles) used in v1.1.

For more detailed information about changes between versions published before v1.2, please see the Appendix I “Revision History” in v1.1.

### 1.1 [VOL 0] MASTER TOC & COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### 1.1.1 Bluetooth Compliance Requirements

Rev	Date	Comments
4.1	Dec 03 2013	Clarifications for allowable complementary subsystems.
4.0	June 30 2010	Updated to support Low Energy, ATT, and GATT support for BR/EDR, and to enable High Speed Controller Subsystems.
3.0 + HS	April 21 2009	Updated to include support for the Alternative MAC/PHY feature and High Speed Core Configuration.
v2.1 + EDR	July 26 2007	No content changes. Updates to the Table of Contents.
v2.0 + EDR	Oct 15 2004	This version of the specification is intended to be a separate Bluetooth Specification that has all the functional characteristics of the v1.2 Bluetooth Specification that adds the Enhanced Data Rate (EDR) feature which required changes to Volume 0, Part A, Master Table of Contents.
v1.2	Nov 05 2003	This Part was moved from the Core volume. No content changes have been made to this document since v1.1.

### 1.2 [VOL 1] ARCHITECTURE & TERMINOLOGY OVERVIEW

Rev	Date	Comments
4.1	Dec 03 2013	Updated to include architectural aspects of new features added to CSA2, CSA3, CSA4 and v4.1.
4.0	June 30 2010	Updated to support Low Energy, and ATT and GATT over BR/EDR.
3.0 + HS	April 21 2009	Updated to integrate the Alternate MAC/PHY and Unicast Connectionless Data features.

*Appendix*

Rev	Date	Comments
v2.1 + EDR	July 26 2007	Added definitions for new features: Encryption Pause and Resume, Erroneous Data reporting, Extended Inquiry Response, Link Supervision Timeout Event, Packet Boundary Flag, Secure Simple Pairing, Sniff Subrating.
v2.0 + EDR	Oct 15 2004	This version of the specification is intended to be a separate Bluetooth Specification that has all the functional characteristics of the v1.2 Bluetooth Specification that adds the Enhanced Data Rate (EDR) feature which incorporates changes to Volume 1, Part B, Acronyms and Abbreviations.
v1.2	Nov 05 2003	New volume with informational content. This volume will always be updated in parallel with the Core System volumes.

## Appendix

**1.3 [VOLS 2, 3, 5, 6 & 7] CORE SYSTEM PACKAGE**

Rev	Date	Comments
4.1	Dec 03 2013	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New features added and changes made in 4.1:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- CSA 2 features</li> <li>- CSA 3 features</li> <li>- CSA 4 features</li> <li>- Secure Connections</li> <li>- Train Nudging &amp; Generalized Interlaced Scan</li> <li>- Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising</li> <li>- 32-bit UUID Support in LE</li> <li>- LE Dual Mode Topology</li> <li>- Piconet Clock Adjustment</li> <li>- Removal of At Least One New Feature</li> <li>- LE L2CAP Connection Oriented Channel Support</li> <li>- LE Privacy v1.1</li> <li>- LE Link Layer Topology</li> <li>- LE Ping</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Errata for v2.0 + EDR, v2.1 + EDR, v3.0 + HS + 4.0 (ESR05, ESR06 and ESR07)</li> </ul>
4.0	June 30 2010	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New features added in 4.0:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Low Energy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Errata for v2.0 + EDR, v2.1 + EDR, v3.0 + HS</li> </ul>
3.0 + HS	April 21 2009	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New features added in 3.0 + HS:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-AMP Manager Protocol (A2MP)</li> <li>-Enhancements to L2CAP for AMP</li> <li>-Enhancements to HCI for AMP</li> <li>-Enhancements to Security for AMP</li> <li>-802.11 Protocol Adaptation Layer</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Enhanced Power Control           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Unicast Connectionless Data</li> <li>-HCI Read Encryption Key Size command</li> <li>-Generic Test Methodology for AMP</li> <li>-Enhanced USB and SDIO HCI Transports</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Errata for v 2.0 + EDR and v2.1 + EDR</li> </ul>

## Appendix



Rev	Date	Comments
v2.1 + EDR	July 26 2007	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New features added in 2.1 + EDR:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Encryption Pause and Resume</li> <li>-Erroneous Data Reporting</li> <li>-Extended Inquiry Response</li> <li>-Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event</li> <li>-Non-Flushable Packet Boundary Flag</li> <li>-Secure Simple Pairing</li> <li>-Sniff Subrating</li> <li>-Security Mode 4</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Updates to IEEE language in Volume 2, Part H, Security</li> <li>• Errata for v2.0 + EDR</li> </ul>
v2.0 + EDR	Aug 01 2004	This version of the specification is intended to be a separate Bluetooth Specification. This specification was created by adding EDR and the errata.
v1.2	Nov 05 2003	<p>New features added in v1.2:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Architectural overview</li> <li>- Faster connection</li> <li>- Adaptive frequency hopping</li> <li>- Extended SCO links</li> <li>- Enhanced error detection and flow control</li> <li>- Enhanced synchronization capability</li> <li>- Enhanced flow specification</li> </ul> <p>The Core System Package now comprises two volumes and the text has gone through a radical change both in terms of structure and nomenclature. The language is also more precise and is adapted to meet the IEEE standard.</p> <p>The following parts are moved from the Core System Package to other volumes or were deprecated:</p> <p>RFCOMM [vol 7], Object Exchange (IrDA Interoperability) [vol 8], TCS [vol 9], Interoperability Requirements for Bluetooth as a WAP Bearer [vol 6], HCI USB Transport Layer [vol4], HCI RS232 Transport Layer [vol 4], HCI UART Transport Layer [vol 4], Bluetooth Compliance Requirements [vol 0], Optional Paging Schemes [deprecated]</p>
1.1	Feb 22 2001	The specification was updated with Errata items previously published on the web site. The Bluetooth Assigned Numbers appendix was lifted out from the specification to allow continuous maintenance on the web site.
1.0B	Dec. 1 1999	<p>The specification was updated with Errata items previously published on the web site and was revised from a linguistic point of view.</p> <p>The following parts were added:</p> <p>Interoperability Requirements for Bluetooth as a WAP Bearer, Test Control Interface, Sample Data (appendix), Bluetooth Audio (appendix), Baseband Timers (appendix) and Optional Paging Scheme (appendix)</p>

*Appendix*

<b>Rev</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Comments</b>
1.0a	July 26 1999	The first version of the Bluetooth Specification published on the public web site. Added part: Bluetooth Compliance Requirements.
1.0 draft	July 05 1999	The following parts were added: Service Discovery Protocol (SDP), Telephony Control Specification (TCS), Bluetooth Assigned Numbers (appendix) and Message Sequence Charts (appendix)
0.9	April 30 1999	The following parts were added: IrDA Interoperability, HCI RS232 Transport Layer, HCI UART Transport Layer and Test Mode
0.8	Jan 21 1999	The following parts were added: Radio Specification, L2CAP, RFCOMM, HCI & HCI USB Transport Layer
0.7	Oct 19 1998	This first version only included Baseband and Link Manager Protocol

**1.4 [VOL 4] TRANSPORT LAYERS**

<b>Rev</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Comments</b>
4.1	Dec 03 2013	Incorporated errata.
4.0	June 30 2010	Incorporated errata.
3.0 + HS	April 21 2009	Updated the USB and SDIO HCI Transport protocols for high speed, support composite BR/EDR + AMP devices, and to include errata.
v2.1 + EDR	July 26 2007	Added this volume to the specification

## 2 CONTRIBUTORS

### 2.1 [VOL 0] MASTER TOC & COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### 2.1.1 Part B: Bluetooth Compliance Requirements

BQRB (Editor)	
Kevin Marquess	Broadcom
Wayne Park	3Com Corporation
Lawrence Jones	ComBit, Inc.
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Gary Robinson	IBM Corporation
Georges Seuron	IBM Corporation
Rick Jessop	Intel Corporation
John Webb	Intel Corporation
Bruce Littlefield	Lucent Technologies, Inc.
Ellick Sung	Microsoft
Brian A. Redding	Motorola, Inc.
Waldemar Hontscha	Nokia Corporation
Petri Morko	Nokia Corporation
Joel Linksy	Qualcomm
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Hans Andersson	ST Ericsson
Magnus Hansson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Magnus Sommansson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Göran Svennarp	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Warren Allen	Toshiba Corporation
John Shi	Toshiba Corporation

#### 2.1.2 Vol 0 Part C: Appendix (Rev History and Contributors)

Steve Davies	Nokia
--------------	-------

## 2.2 [VOL 1] ARCHITECTURE & TERMINOLOGY OVERVIEW

### 2.2.1 Part A: Architectural Overview

John Padgett	Accenture
Joakim Linde	Apple
Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Leonid Eidelman	Broadcom
Steven Hall	Broadcom
Farooq Hameed	Broadcom Corporation
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Ash Kapur	Broadcom
Knut Odman	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Erik Rivard	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Jennifer Bray	CSR
Chris Church	CSR
Joe Decuir	CSR
Giriraj Goyal	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Henrik Hedlund	CSR
Tim Howes	CSR
Ian Jones	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Sean Mitchell	CSR
Ross O'Connor	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Dishant Srivastava	CSR
Neil Stewart	CSR
Jonathan Tanner	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Paul Wright	CSR
Martin van der Zee	Ericsson
Leif Wilhelmsson	Ericsson
David Suvak	iAnywhere
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Selim Aissi	Intel
Harish Balasubramaniam	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Oren Haggai	Intel
Chris Hansen	Intel
Marcel Holtmann	Intel

## Appendix



Robert Hughes	Intel
Sharon Yang	Intel
Yao Wang	IVT
Josselin De La Broise	Marvell
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft
Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yacov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
L. C. Ko	MediaTek
Huanchun Ye	MediaTek
Anindya Bakshi	Mindtree
Shwetha Madadik	Mindtree
Krishna Singala	Mindtree
Greg Muchnik	Motorola
Brian Redding	Motorola
Lily Chen	NIST
N Asokan	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Thomas Müller	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Jürgen Schnitzler	Nokia
David Engelien-Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Javier del Prado Pavon	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP
Tsuyoshi Okada	Panasonic Corporation
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Olaf Hirsch	Qualcomm Atheros
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Cameron McDonald	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Leonard Ott	Socket Mobile
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics

## Appendix



Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Kyong-Sok Seo	Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd
Andrew Estrada	Sony Corporation
Masahiko Seki	Sony Corporation
Guido Bertoni	ST-Ericsson
Jorgen van Parijs	ST-Ericsson
Yves Wernaers	ST-Ericsson
Dominique Everaere	ST-NXP Wireless
Tim Howes	Symbian
Michael Hasling	Tality
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Yoshimitsu Shimojo	Toshiba
John Mersh	TTPCom
Jason Hillyard	Wicentric
Rod Kimmell	X6D, Inc.

**2.2.2 Part B: Acronyms & Abbreviations**

Dan Sönnnerstam	Pyramid Communication AB
Steve Koester	Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
Steve Davies	Nokia

**2.2.3 Part C: Core Specification Change History**

Tom Siep	Bluetooth SIG Inc.
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robin Heydon	CSR
Henrik Hedlund	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Paul Wright	CSR
David Suvak	iAnywhere
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Rob Davies	Philips
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Javier del Prado Pavon	NXP
Jorgen van Parijs	ST
Tim Howes	Symbian
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments

*Appendix*

Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Yoshimitsu Shimojo	Toshiba
John Mersh	TTPCom

**2.2.4 Part D: Mixing of Specification Versions**

David Suvak	iAnywhere
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Kevin Marquess	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Elick Sung	Microsoft
Waldemar Hontscha	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Javier del Prado Pavon	NXP
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Brain Redding	Qualcomm
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Leonard Ott	Socket Communications
Jorgen van Parijs	ST
Hans Andersson	ST Ericsson
Tim Howes	Symbian
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

*Appendix*

## 2.3 [VOL 2] CORE SYSTEM PACKAGE, CONTROLLER

### 2.3.1 Part A: Radio Specification

*Version 3.0 + HS*

Phil Hough	Anritsu
Edward Harrison	Anritsu
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Mark Braun	Motorola
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Eran Reuveni	TI

*Version 2.0 + EDR*

Steven Hall	RF Micro Devices
Robert Young	CSR
Robert Kokke	Ericsson
Harald Kafemann	Nokia
Jukka Reunamäki	Nokia
Morton Gade	Digianswer
Mike Fitton	Toshiba
Oren Eliezer	Texas Instruments
Stephane Laurent-Michel	Tality

*Version 1.2*

Tom Siep	Bluetooth SIG Inc.
Jennifer Bray	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Morten Gade	Digianswer/Motorola
Henrik Hedlund	Ericsson
Stefan Agnani	Ericsson
Robert Kokke	Ericsson
Roland Hellfajer	Infineon
Thomas Müller	Nokia
Antonio Salloum	Philips
Joel Linsky	Silicon Wave
Steven Hall	Silicon Wave
Oren Eliezer	Texas Instruments
Mike Fitton	Toshiba

*Previous versions*

Steve Williams	3Com Corporation
Todor V. Cooklov	Aware
Poul Hove Kristensen	Digianswer A/S

---

Appendix

Kurt B. Fischer	Hyper Corporation
Kevin D. Marquess	Hyper Corporation
Troy Beukema	IBM Corporation
Brian Gaucher	IBM Corporation
Jeff Schiffer	Intel Corporation
James P. Gilb	Mobilian
Rich L. Ditch	Motorola, Inc.
Paul Burgess	Nokia Corporation
Olaf Joeressen	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Arto T. Palin	Nokia Corporation
Steven J. Shellhammer	Symbol
Sven Mattisson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Lars Nord (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Anders Svensson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mary A. DuVal	Texas Instruments
Allen Hotari	Toshiba Corporation

### 2.3.2 Part B: Baseband Specification

*Version 4.1*

John Padgett	Accenture
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Steven Hall	Broadcom
Farooq Hameed	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Knut Odman	Broadcom
Erik Rivard	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Joe Decuir	CSR
Ian Jones	CSR
Sean Mitchell	CSR
Ross O'Connor	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Dishant Srivastava	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Leif Wilhelmsson	Ericsson
Oren Haggai	Intel
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Sharon Yang	Intel
Josselin de la Broise	Marvell
L. C. Ko	MediaTek
Huanchun Ye	MediaTek
Lily Chen	NIST
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Tsuyoshi Okada	Panasonic Corporation
Olaf Hirsch	Qualcomm Atheros
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Cameron McDonald	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Kyong-Sok Seo	Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd
Andrew Estrada	Sony Corporation
Masahiko Seki	Sony Corporation
Jorgen van Parijs	ST Ericsson
Yves Wernaers	ST-Ericsson
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Rod Kimmell	X6D, Inc.

## Appendix



## Version 2.1 + EDR

Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robin Heydon	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Paul Wright	CSR
Dave Suvak	iAnywhere
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Selim Aissi	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Oren Haggai	Intel
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft
Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yacov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
Greg Muchnik	Motorola
N Asokan	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Javier del Prado Pavon	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP
Jorgen van Parijs	ST
Guido Bertoni	ST
Tim Howes	Symbian
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Yoshimitsu Shimojo	Toshiba

*Appendix**Version 2.0 + EDR*

Steven Hall	RF Micro Devices
Robert Young	CSR
Robert Kokke	Ericsson
Harald Kafemann	Nokia
Joel Linsky	RF Micro Devices
Terry Bourk	RF Micro Devices
Arto Palin	Nokia

*Version 1.2*

P G Madhavan	Agere
Hongbing Gan	Bandspeed, Inc.
Tod Sizer	Bell Labs
Alexander Thoukydides	CSR
Jennifer Bray	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Kim Schneider	Digianswer/Motorola
Knud Dyring-Olsen	Digianswer/Motorola
Niels Nielsen	Digianswer/Motorola
Henrik Andersen	Digianswer/Motorola
Christian Gehrmann	Ericsson
Henrik Hedlund	Ericsson
Jan Åberg	Ericsson
Martin van der Zee	Ericsson
Rakesh Taori	Ericsson
Jaap Haartsen	Ericsson
Stefan Zürbes	Ericsson
Roland Hellfajer	Infineon
YC Maa	Integrated Programmable Communications, Inc.
HungKun Chen	Integrated Programmable Communications, Inc.
Steve McGowan	Intel
Adrian Stephens	Mobilian Corporation
Jim Lansford	Mobilian Corporation
Eric Meihofer	Motorola
Arto Palin	Nokia
Carmen Kühl	Nokia
Hannu Laine	Nokia
Jürgen Schnitzler	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Thomas Müller	Nokia
Antonio Salloum	Philips
Harmke de Groot	Philips
Marianne van de Casteelee	Philips
Rob Davies	Philips
Roland Matthijssen	Philips

*Appendix*

Joel Linsky (section owner)	Silicon Wave
Terry Bourk	Silicon Wave
Gary Schneider	Symbol Technologies, Inc.
Stephen J. Shellhammer	Symbol Technologies, Inc.
Michael Hasling	Tality
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Dan Michael	Texas Instruments
Eli Dekel	Texas Instruments
Jie Liang	Texas Instruments
Oren Eliezer	Texas Instruments
Tally Shina	Texas Instruments
Yariv Raveh	Texas Instruments
Anuj Batra	Texas Instruments
Katsuhiro Kinoshita	Toshiba
Toshiki Kizu	Toshiba
Yoshimitsu Shimojo	Toshiba
Charles Sturman	TTPCom
John Mersh	TTPCom
Sam Turner	TTPCom
Christoph Scholtz	University of Bonn
Simon Baatz	University of Bonn

*Previous versions*

Kevin D. Marquess	Hyper Corporation
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation
Kris Fleming	Intel Corporation
James P. Gilb	Mobilian
David E. Cypher	NIST
Nada Golmie	NIST
Olaf Joeressen	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Charlie Mellone	Motorola, Inc.
Harmke de Groot	Philips
Terry Bourk	Silicon Wave
Steven J. Shellhammer	Symbol
Jaap Haartsen	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Henrik Hedlund (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Tobias Melin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Joakim Persson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mary A. DuVal	Texas Instruments
Onn Haran	Texas Instruments
Thomas M. Siep	Texas Instruments
Ayse Findikli	Zeevo, Inc.

*Appendix**Previous versions [Encryption Sample Data, appendix]*

Joel Linksy	RFMD
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Sander	Nokia Corporation
Joakim Persson (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson

*Previous versions [Bluetooth Audio, appendix]*

Magnus Hansson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Fisseha Mekuria	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mats Omrin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Joakim Persson (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson

*Previous versions [Baseband Timers, appendix]*

David E. Cyper	NIST
Jaap Haartsen (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Joakim Persson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Ayse Findikli	Zeevo, Inc.

### 2.3.3 Part C: Link Manager Protocol

*Version 4.1*

Joakim Linde	Apple
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Steven Hall	Broadcom
Farooq Hameed	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Knut Odman	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Erik Rivard	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Joe Decuir	CSR
Tim Howes	CSR
Ian Jones	CSR
Sean Mitchell	CSR
Ross O'Connor	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Dishant Srivastava	CSR
Jonathan Tanner	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Leif Wilhelmsson	Ericsson
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Sharon Yang	Intel
Josselin de la Broise	Marvell
L. C. Ko	MediaTek
Huanchun Ye	MediaTek
Krishna Singala	Mindtree
Lily Chen	NIST
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Tsuyoshi Okada	Panasonic Corporation
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Olaf Hirsch	Qualcomm Atheros
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Cameron McDonald	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Kyong-Sok Seo	Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd
Andrew Estrada	Sony Corporation
Masahiko Seki	Sony Corporation
Jorgen van Parijs	ST Ericsson

*Appendix*

Yves Wernaers	ST-Ericsson
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Rod Kimmell	X6D, Inc.

*Version 4.0*

Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Tim Howes	Nokia
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments

*Version 3.0 + HS*

Phil Hough	Anritsu
Edward Harrison	Anritsu
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Mark Braun	Motorola
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Eran Reuveni	TI

*Version 2.1 + EDR*

P G Madhavan	Agere
Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robin Heydon	CSR
Henrik Hedlund	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Paul Wright	CSR
Dave Suvak	iAnywhere
Selim Aissi	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft

## Appendix



Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yacov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Greg Muchnik	Motorola
N Asokan	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Javier del Prado Pavon	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP
Jorgen van Parijs	ST
Guido Bertoni	ST
Tim Howes	Symbian
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

*Version 2.0 + EDR*

John Mersh	TTPCom Ltd.
Joel Linsky	RF Micro Devices
Harald Kafemann	Nokia
Simon Morris	CSR

*Version 1.2*

Jennifer Bray	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Simon Morris	CSR
Alexander Thoukydides	CSR
Kim Schneider	Digianswer/Motorola
Knud Dyring-Olsen	Digianswer/Motorola
Henrik Andersen	Digianswer/Motorola
Jan Åberg	Ericsson
Martin van der Zee	Ericsson
Roland Helffajer	Infineon
YC Maa	Integrated Programmable Communications, Inc.
Steve McGowan	Intel
Tod Sizer	Lucent Technologies
Adrian Stephens	Mobilian

*Appendix*

Jürgen Schnitzler	Nokia
Thomas Müller	Nokia
Carmen Kuhl	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Thomas Müller	Nokia
Roland Matthijssen	Philips
Rob Davies	Philips
Harmke de Groot	Philips
Antonio Salloum	Philips
Joel Linsky	Silicon Wave
Terry Bourk	Silicon Wave
Yariv Raveh	Texas Instruments
Tally Shina	Texas Instruments
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Yoshimitsu Shimojo	Toshiba
Toshiki Kizu	Toshiba
John Mersh (section owner)	TTPCom
Sam Turner	TTPCom

*Previous versions*

Kim Schneider	Digianswer A/S
Toru Aihara	IBM Corporation
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation
Kris Fleming	Intel Corporation
David E. Cypher	NIST
Thomas Busse	Nokia Corporation
Julien Corthial	Nokia Corporation
Olaf Joeressen	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Dong Nguyen	Nokia Corporation
Harmke de Groot	Philips
Terry Bourk	Silicon Wave
Johannes Elg	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Jaap Haartsen	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Tobias Melin (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mary A. DuVal	Texas Instruments
Onn Haran	Texas Instruments
John Mersh	TTPCom

*Appendix***2.3.4 Part D: Error Codes***Version 4.1*

Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Steven Hall	Broadcom
Knut Odman	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Joe Decuir	CSR
Giriraj Goyal	CSR
Neil Stewart	CSR
Leif Wilhelmsson	Ericsson
Harish Balasubramaniam	Intel
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Sharon Yang	Intel
Olaf Hirsch	Qualcomm Atheros
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Jorgen van Parijs	ST Ericsson
Yves Wernaers	ST-Ericsson
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Jason Hillyard	Wicentric

*Version 4.0*

Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Steven Wenham	CSR
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Tim Howes	Nokia
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Geert Sonck	ST Ericsson

*Appendix**Version 3.0 + HS*

Phil Hough	Anritsu
Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Stratos Chatzikyriakos	Artimi
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
David Suvak	iAnywhere
Koen Derom	NXP Semiconductors
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Krishnan Rajamani	Qualcomm
John Hillan	Qualcomm
Mayank Sharma	SiRF
Jason Hillyard	Staccato Communications
William Stoye	Staccato Communications

*Version 2.1 + EDR*

Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robin Heydon	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Selim Aissi	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft
Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yakov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
Greg Muchnik	Motorola
N Asokan	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP

*Appendix*

Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Guido Bertoni	ST
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

*Version 1.2*

Robin Heydon (section owner)	CSR
Roland Hellfajer	Infineon
Joel Linsky	Silicon Wave
John Mersh	TTPCom

This part was earlier included in the LMP and HCI functional Specifications.



## 2.3.5 Part E: Bluetooth Host Controller Interface Functional Specification

### Version 4.1

John Padgett	Accenture
Joakim Linde	Apple
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Steven Hall	Broadcom
Farooq Hameed	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Knut Odman	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Erik Rivard	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Joe Decuir	CSR
Giriraj Goyal	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Tim Howes	CSR
Ian Jones	CSR
Sean Mitchell	CSR
Ross O'Connor	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Dishant Srivastava	CSR
Neil Stewart	CSR
Jonathan Tanner	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Leif Wilhelmsson	Ericsson
Harish Balasubramaniam	Intel
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Oren Haggai	Intel
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Sharon Yang	Intel
Yao Wang	IVT Corporation
Josselin de la Broise	Marvell
L. C. Ko	MediaTek
Huanchun Ye	MediaTek
Rajan S Pallathu	MindTree Ltd.
Krishna Singala	Mindtree
Lily Chen	NIST
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
David Engelien-Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Tsuyoshi Okada	Panasonic Corporation
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Olaf Hirsch	Qualcomm Atheros
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Cameron McDonald	Qualcomm

## Appendix



Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Phillippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Kyong-Sok Seo	Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd
Len Ott	Socket Mobile
Andrew Estrada	Sony Corporation
Masahiko Seki	Sony Corporation
Jorgen van Parijs	ST Ericsson
Yves Wernaers	ST-Ericsson
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Anthony Viscardi	Texas Instruments
Jason Hillyard	Wicentric
Rod Kimmell	X6D, Inc.

## Version 4.0

Edward Harrison	Anritsu
Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Joe Decuir	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Magnus Eriksson	Infineon
James Dent	Nokia
James Steele	Nokia
Jonathan Tanner	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Len Ott	Socket Mobile
Geert Sonck	ST Ericsson
Aaron Atlas	Texas Instruments
Anthony Viscardi	Texas Instruments

## Version 3.0 + HS

Phil Hough	Anritsu
Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Stratos Chatzikyriakos	Artimi
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Victor Zhodzishsky	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
David Suvak	iAnywhere
Dominique Everaere	ST-NXP Wireless

## Appendix



Yao Wang	IVT
Koen Derom	NXP Semiconductors
Ana Donezar Ibanez	Parrot
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
John Hillan	Qualcomm
Krishnan Rajamani	Qualcomm
Mayank Sharma	SiRF
Jason Hillyard	Staccato Communications
William Stoye	Staccato Communications
Doug Clark	Symbian

## Version 2.1 + EDR

Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Henrik Hedlund	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Paul Wright	CSR
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
David Suvak	iAnywhere
Selim Aissi	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft
Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yacov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
Greg Muchnik	Motorola
N Asokan	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Javier del Prado Pavon	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP

*Appendix*

Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Tim Howes	Symbian
Jorgen van Parijs	ST
Guido Bertoni	ST
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

*Version 2.0 + EDR*

Neil Stewart	Tality UK, Ltd.
Joel Linsky	RF Micro Devices
Robin Heydon	CSR

*Version 1.2*

Robin Heydon (section owner)	CSR
Jennifer Bray	CSR
Alexander Thoukydides	CSR
Knud Dyring-Olsen	Digianswer/Motorola
Henrik Andersen	Digianswer/Motorola
Jan Åberg	Ericsson
Martin van der Zee	Ericsson
Don Liechty	Extended Systems
Kevin Marquess	Hyper Corp
Roland Hellfajer	Infineon
YC Maa	Integrated Programmable Communications, Inc.
Steve McGowan	Intel
Tod Sizer	Lucent Technologies
Tsuyoshi Okada	Matsushita Electric Industrial Co. Ltd
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Adrian Stephens	Mobilian
Jürgen Schnitzler	Nokia
Thomas Müller	Nokia
Rene Tischer	Nokia
Rob Davies	Philips
Antonio Salloum	Philips
Joel Linsky	Silicon Wave
Terry Bourk	Silicon Wave
Len Ott	Socket Communications
Randy Erman	Taiyo Yuden
Yoshimitsu Shimojo	Toshiba
Toshiki Kizu	Toshiba
Katsuhiro Kinoshita	Toshiba
Sam Turner	TTPCom
John Mersh	TTPCom

*Appendix**Previous versions*

Todor Cooklev	3Com Corporation
Toru Aihara	IBM Corporation
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation
Nathan Lee	IBM Corporation
Akihiko Mizutani	IBM Corporation
Les Cline	Intel Corporation
Bailey Cross	Intel Corporation
Kris Fleming	Intel Corporation
Robert Hunter	Intel Corporation
Jon Inouye	Intel Corporation
Srikanth Kambhatla	Intel Corporation
Steve Lo	Intel Corporation
Vijay Suthar	Intel Corporation
Bruce P. Kraemer	Intersil
Greg Muchnik	Motorola, Inc.
David E. Cypher	NIST
Thomas Busse	Nokia Corporation
Julien Courthial	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Dong Nguyen	Nokia Corporation
Jürgen Schnitzler	Nokia Corporation
Fujio Watanabe	Nokia Corporation
Christian Zechlin	Nokia Corporation
Johannes Elg	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Christian Johansson (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Patrik Lundin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Tobias Melin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mary A. DuVal	Texas Instruments
Thomas M. Siep	Texas Instruments
Masahiro Tada	Toshiba Corporation
John Mersh	TTPCom

## 2.3.6 Part F: Message Sequence Charts

*Version 4.1*

John Padgett	Accenture
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Farooq Hameed	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Erik Rivard	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Ian Jones	CSR
Sean Mitchell	CSR
Ross O'Connor	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Dishant Srivastava	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Josselin De La Broise	Marvell
Lily Chen	NIST
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Tsuyoshi Okada	Panasonic Corporation
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Cameron McDonald	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Kyong-Sok Seo	Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd
Andrew Estrada	Sony Corporation
Masahiko Seki	Sony Corporation
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Rod Kimmell	X6D, Inc.

*Appendix**Version 3.0 + HS*

Phil Hough	Anritsu
Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Stratos Chatzikyriakos	Artimi
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
David Suvak	iAnywhere
Koen Derom	NXP Semiconductors
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Krishnan Rajamani	Qualcomm
John Hillan	Qualcomm
Mayank Sharma	SiRF
Jason Hillyard	Staccato Communications
William Stoye	Staccato Communications

*Version 2.1 + EDR*

Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Henrik Hedlund	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Selim Aissi	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft
Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yacov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
Greg Muchnik	Motorola
N Asokan	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP

*Appendix*

Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Guido Bertoni	ST
Tim Howes	Symbian
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

*Version 1.2*

Tom Siep	Bluetooth SIG Inc.
Robin Heydon (section owner)	CSR
Simon Morris	CSR
Jan Åberg	Ericsson
Christian Gehrman	Ericsson
Joel Linsky	Silicon Wave
John Mersh	TTPCom

*Previous versions*

Todor Cooklev	3Com Corporation
Toru Aihara	IBM Corporation
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation
Nathan Lee	IBM Corporation
Kris Fleming	Intel Corporation
Greg Muchnik	Motorola, Inc.
David E. Cypher	NIST
Thomas Busse	Nokia Corporation
Dong Nguyen (Section Owner)	Nokia Corporation
Fujio Watanabe	Nokia Corporation
Christian Johansson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Tobias Melin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mary A. DuVal	Texas Instruments

*Appendix***2.3.7 Part G: Sample Data***Version 4.1*

John Padgett	Accenture
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Farooq Hameed	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Erik Rivard	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Ian Jones	CSR
Sean Mitchell	CSR
Ross O'Connor	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Dishant Srivastava	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Josselin De La Broise	Marvell
Lily Chen	NIST
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Tsuyoshi Okada	Panasonic Corporation
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Cameron McDonald	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Kyong-Sok Seo	Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd
Andrew Estrada	Sony Corporation
Masahiko Seki	Sony Corporation
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Rod Kimmell	X6D, Inc.

*Version 3.0 + HS*

Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Yao Wang	IVT
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
John Saad	Qualcomm

*Appendix**Version 2.1 + EDR*

Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robin Heydon	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Selim Aissi	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft
Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yacov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
Greg Muchnik	Microsoft
N Asokan	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP
Guido Bertoni	ST
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

*Version 1.2*

Joel Linsky	Silicon Wave
-------------	--------------

*Previous versions*

Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Sander	Nokia Corporation
Joakim Persson (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson

*Appendix***2.3.8 Part H: Security Specification***Version 4.1*

John Padgett	Accenture
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Erik Rivard	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Ian Jones	CSR
Sean Mitchell	CSR
Ross O'Connor	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Josselin De La Broise	Marvell
Lily Chen	NIST
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Cameron McDonald	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments

*Version 3.0 + HS*

Phil Hough	Anritsu
Edward Harrison	Anritsu
Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Yao Wang	IVT
Mark Braun	Motorola
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
John Saad	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Eran Reuveni	TI

*Version 2.1 + EDR*

Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Henrik Hedlund	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR

## Appendix



Steven Wenham	CSR
Selim Aissi	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft
Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yacov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
Greg Muchnik	Microsoft
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
N Asokan	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP
Joel Linsky	QUALCOMM
Terry Bourk	QUALCOMM
Guido Bertoni	ST
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Eran Reuveni	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

## 2.4 [VOL 3] CORE SYSTEM PACKAGE, HOST

### 2.4.1 Part A: Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification

#### *Version 4.1*

Leonid Eidelman	Broadcom
Ash Kapur	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Chris Church	CSR
Giriraj Goyal	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Tim Howes	CSR
Neil Stewart	CSR
Harish Balasubramaniam	Intel
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Oren Haggai	Intel
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Robert Hughes	Intel
Yao Wang	IVT
Josselin De La Broise	Marvell
Anindya Bakshi	Mindtree
Shwetha Madadik	Mindtree
Krishna Singala	Mindtree
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics
Jason Hillyard	Wicentric

#### *Version 4.0*

Xavier Boniface	Alpwise
Alexandre Gimard	Alpwise
Ash Kapur	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
Laurence Jupp	CSR
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Dave Suvak	iAnywhere
James Dent	Nokia
James Steele	Nokia
Jonathan Tanner	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia

*Appendix*

Miika Laaksonen	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Tim Howes	Nokia
David Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Andy Estrada	Sony
Karl Torvmark	Texas Instruments

*Version 3.0 + HS*

Victor Zhodzishsky	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Ash Kapur	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Ken Steck	CSR
Dave Suvak	iAnywhere
Yao Wang	IVT
Jacques Chassot	Logitech
Nathan Sherman	Microsoft
Sandy Spinrad	Microsoft
Doug Clarke	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Ana Donezar Ibanez	Parrot
Joel Linksy	Qualcomm
Andy Estrada	Sony
Dominique Everaere	ST-NXP Wireless

*Version 2.1 + EDR*

Ayse Findikli	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robin Heydon	CSR
Simon Kingston	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Selim Aissi	Intel
Penny Chen	Intel
Dave Suvak	iAnywhere
Josh Benaloh	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Peter Hauser	Microsoft
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Kristin Lauter	Microsoft
Dan Simon	Microsoft

*Appendix*

Don Stanwyck	Microsoft
Yacov Yacobi	Microsoft
Gideon Yuval	Microsoft
Greg Muchnik	Microsoft
N Asokan	Nokia
Philip Ginzboorg	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
Dominique Everaere	NXP
Javier del Prado Pavon	NXP
Reinhard Meindl	NXP
Joel Linsky	QUALCOMM
Terry Bourk	QUALCOMM
Tim Howes	Symbian
Jorgen van Parijs	ST
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

*Version 1.2*

Tom Siep	Bluetooth SIG Inc.
Carsten Andersen (section owner)	CSR
Jennifer Bray	CSR
Jan Åberg	Ericsson
Martin van der Zee	Ericsson
Sam Ravnborg	Ericsson
Stefan Agnani	Ericsson
Steve McGowan	Intel Corporation
Joby Lafky	Microsoft
Doron Holan	Microsoft
Andy Glass	Microsoft
Brian Redding	Motorola
Jürgen Schnitzler	Nokia
Thomas Müller	Nokia
Rob Davies	Philips
Terry Bourk	Silicon Wave
Michael Hasling	Tality

*Previous versions*

Jon Burgess	3Com Corporation
Paul Moran	3Com Corporation
Doug Kogan	Extended Systems
Kevin D. Marquess	Hyper Corporation
Toru Aihara	IBM Corporation
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation

## Appendix



Kris Fleming	Intel Corporation
Uma Gadamsetty	Intel Corporation
Robert Hunter	Intel Corporation
Jon Inouye	Intel Corporation
Steve C. Lo	Intel Corporation
Chunrong Zhu	Intel Corporation
Sergey Solyanik	Microsoft Corporation
David E. Cypher	NIST
Nada Golmie	NIST
Thomas Busse	Nokia Corporation
Rauno Makinen	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Petri Nykänen	Nokia Corporation
Peter Ollikainen	Nokia Corporation
Petri O. Nurminen	Nokia Corporation
Johannes Elg	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Jaap Haartsen	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Elco Nijboer	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Ingemar Nilsson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Stefan Runesson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Gerrit Slot	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Johan Sørensen	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Goran Svensson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mary A. DuVal	Texas Instruments
Thomas M. Siep	Texas Instruments
Kinoshita Katsuhiro	Toshiba Corporation



## 2.4.2 Part B: Service Discovery Protocol (SDP)

### Version 4.1

Joakim Linde	Apple
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Tim Howes	CSR
Jonathan Tanner	CSR
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Krishna Singala	Mindtree
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics

### Version 2.1 + EDR

Robin Heydon	CSR
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Joel Linsky	QUALCOMM
Terry Bourk	QUALCOMM
Amihai Kidron	Texas Instruments
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

### Previous versions

Ned Plasson	3Com Corporation
John Avery	Convergence
Jason Kronz	Convergence
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation
Parviz Kermani	IBM Corporation
Brent Miller	IBM Corporation
Dick Osterman	IBM Corporation
Bob Pascoe	IBM Corporation
Jon Inouye	Intel Corporation
Srikanth Kambhatla	Intel Corporation
Jay Eaglston	Motorola, Inc.
Dale Farnsworth (Section Owner)	Motorola, Inc.
Jean-Michel Rosso	Motorola, Inc.
Jan Grönholm	Nokia Corporation
Kati Rantala	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Johannes Elg	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Kazuaki Iwamura	Toshiba Corporation

## 2.4.3 Part C: Generic Access Profile

*Version 4.1*

John Padgett	Accenture
Joakim Linde	Apple
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Farooq Hameed	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Erik Rivard	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Joe Decuir	CSR
Giriraj Goyal	CSR
Tim Howes	CSR
Ian Jones	CSR
Sean Mitchell	CSR
Krishnan Nair	CSR
Ross O'Connor	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Dishant Srivastava	CSR
Neil Stewart	CSR
Jonathan Tanner	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Harish Balasubramaniam	Intel
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Oren Haggai	Intel
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Robert D. Hughes	Intel
Josselin De La Broise	Marvell
Huanchun Ye	MediaTek
Alain Michaud	Microsoft
Krishna Singala	Mindtree
Lily Chen	NIST
Steve Davies	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
David Engelien-Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Tsuyoshi Okada	Panasonic Corporation
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Cameron McDonald	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics
Clive D. W. Feather	Samsung Electronics
Kyong-Sok Seo	Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd
Andrew Estrada	Sony Corporation

## Appendix



Masahiko Seki	Sony Corporation
Abelardo Gonzales	ST
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Jason Hillyard	Wicentric
Rod Kimmell	X6D, Inc.

## Version 4.0

Alexandre Gimard	Alpwise
Xavier Boniface	Alpwise
Mike Tsai	Atheros
John Padgett	Booz Allen Hamilton
Ash Kapur	Broadcom
Norbert Grunert	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Burch Seymour	Continental Automotive
Joe Decuir	CSR
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Nick Hunn	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
David Suvak	iAnywhere
Chiu-Mien Chi	ISSC
Anindya Bakshi	MindTree
Ashok Kelur	MindTree
John Barr	Motorola
Michael Russell	Motorola
James Dent	Nokia
James Steele	Nokia
Jonathan Tanner	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Miika Laaksonen	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Tim Howes	Nokia
David Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Harsha Master	Sasken
Len Ott	Socket Mobile
Frédéric Virot	ST Ericsson
Geert Sonck	ST Ericsson
Pär-Gunnar Hjälmdahl	ST Ericsson
Aaron Atlas	Texas Instruments

*Appendix**Version 3.0 + HS*

Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Ken Steck	CSR
Jacques Chassot	Logitech
Nathan Sherman	Microsoft
Sandy Spinrad	Microsoft
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Andy Estrada	Sony

*Version 2.1 + EDR*

Robin Heydon	CSR
Mattias Edlund	Infineon
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Arto Palin	Nokia
Joel Linsky	QUALCOMM
Terry Bourk	QUALCOMM
Shimojo Yoshimitsu	Toshiba

*Version 1.2*

Jennifer Bray	CSR
Alexander Thoukydides	CSR
Christian Gehrman	Ericsson
Henrik Hedlund	Ericsson
Jan Åberg	Ericsson
Stefan Agnani	Ericsson
Thomas Müller	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Silicon Wave
Terry Bourk	Silicon Wave
Katsuhiro Kinoshita	Toshiba

*Previous versions*

Ken Morley	3Com Corporation
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation
Jon Inouye	Intel Corporation
Brian Redding	Motorola, Inc.
David E. Cypher	NIST
Stephane Bouet	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Martin Roter	Nokia Corporation
Johannes Elg	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Patric Lind (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Erik Slotboom	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Johan Sørensen	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson

*Appendix***2.4.4 Part D: Test Support***Version 3.0 + HS*

Phil Hough	Anritsu
Edward Harrison	Anritsu
Angus Robinson	Anritsu
Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Stratos Chatzikyriakos	Artimi
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Yao Wang	IVT
Joe Decuir	CSR
Mark Braun	Motorola
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Eran Reuveni	TI

*Version 1.2*

Emilio Mira Escartis	Cetecom
Robin Heydon	CSR
Jennifer Bray	CSR
Stefan Agnani (section owner)	Ericsson
Terry Bourk	Silicon Wave
Joel Linsky	Silicon Wave
Michael Hasling	Tality

*Previous versions [Test Mode]*

Jeffrey Schiffer	Intel Corporation
David E. Cypher	NIST
Daniel Bencak	Nokia Corporation
Arno Kefenbaum	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller (Section Owner)	Nokia Corporation
Roland Schmale	Nokia Corporation
Fujio Watanabe	Nokia Corporation
Stefan Agnani	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mårten Mattsson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Tobias Melin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Lars Nord	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Fredrik Töorn	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
John Mersh	TTPCom
Ayse Findikli	Zeevo, Inc.

**Appendix*****Previous versions [Test Control Interface]***

Mike Feldman	Motorola, Inc.
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Stefan Agnani (Section Owner)	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Mårten Mattsson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Dan Sönerstam	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson

**2.4.5 Part E: AMP Manager Protocol*****Version 3.0 + HS***

Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Dave Suvak	iAnywhere
Yao Wang	IVT
Doug Clark	Nokia
Kaisa Nyberg	Nokia
James Steele	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
John Saad	Qualcomm

**2.4.6 Part F: Attribute Protocol Specification*****Version 4.1***

Joakim Linde	Apple
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Tim Howes	CSR
Jonathan Tanner	CSR
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Krishna Singala	Mindtree
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics

***Version 4.0***

Alexandre Gimard	Alpwise
Xavier Boniface	Alpwise
Ash Kapur	Broadcom
Norbert Grunert	Broadcom
Srikanth Uppala	Broadcom
Burch Seymour	Continental Automotive
Joe Decuir	CSR

*Appendix*

Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Nick Hunn	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Morgan Lindqvist	Ericsson
Dave Suvak	iAnywhere
Chris Hansen	Intel
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Anindya Bakshi	MindTree
John Barr	Motorola
Daidi Zhong	Nokia
James Dent	Nokia
James Steele	Nokia
Jonathan Tanner	Nokia
Juha Salokannel	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Miika Laaksonen	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Tim Howes	Nokia
David Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Harsha Master	Sasken
Len Ott	Socket Mobile
Pär-Gunnar Hjälmdahl	ST Ericsson
Aaron Atlas	Texas Instruments

**2.4.7 Part G: Generic Attribute Protocol Specification***Version 4.1*

Joakim Linde	Apple
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Angel Polo	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Tim Howes	CSR
Jonathan Tanner	CSR
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Oren Haggai	Intel
Krishna Singala	Mindtree
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Brian Redding	Qualcomm Atheros
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics

*Appendix**Version 4.0*

Alexandre Gimard	Alpwise
Xavier Boniface	Alpwise
Ash Kapur	Broadcom
Norbert Grunert	Broadcom
Srikanth Uppala	Broadcom
Mats Andersson	connectBlue
Burch Seymour	Continental Automotive
Joe Decuir	CSR
Laurence Jupp	CSR
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Nick Hunn	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Dave Suvak	iAnywhere
Marcel Holtmann	Intel
Anindya Bakshi	MindTree
Krishna Shingala	MindTree
Daidi Zhong	Nokia
James Dent	Nokia
James Steele	Nokia
Jonathan Tanner	Nokia
Juha Salokannel	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Miika Laaksonen	Nokia
Päivi Ruuska	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Tim Howes	Nokia
David Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Sebastien Mackiae-Blanchi	Nordic Semiconductor
Niclas Granqvist	Polar
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linksy	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Pär-Gunnar Hjälmdahl	ST Ericsson
Aaron Atlas	Texas Instruments

## 2.4.8 Part H: Security Manager Specification

*Version 4.0*

Alexandre Gimard	Alpwise
Mike Tsai	Atheros
John Padgett	Booz Allen Hamilton
Chaojing Sun	Broadcom
Norbert Grunert	Broadcom
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Hermann Suominen	CSR
Laurence Jupp	CSR
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Patrick Reinelt	Frontline
Chiu-Mien Chi	ISSC
Anindya Bakshi	MindTree
Ashok Kelur	MindTree
Michael Russell	Motorola
James Dent	Nokia
James Steele	Nokia
Jonathan Tanner	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Miika Laaksonen	Nokia
Noel Lobo	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Tim Howes	Nokia
David Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Christian Zechlin	Sasken
Frédéric Virot	ST Ericsson
Geert Sonck	ST Ericsson
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Helge Coward	Texas Instruments

## 2.5 [VOL 4] HOST CONTROLLER INTERFACE [TRANSPORT LAYER]

Toru Aihara	IBM Corporation
Edgar Kerstan	IBM Corporation
Nathan Lee	IBM Corporation
Kris Fleming	Intel Corporation
Robert Hunter	Intel Corporation
Patrick Kane	Motorola, Inc.
Uwe Gondrum	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Christian Zechlin	Nokia Corporation
Johannes Elg	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Sven Jerlhagen	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Christian Johansson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Patrik Lundin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Lars Novak	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Masahiro Tada	Toshiba Corporation
Steve Ross	Digianswer A/S
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation
Les Cline	Intel Corporation
Brad Hosler	Intel Corporation
John Howard	Intel Corporation
Srikanth Kambhatla	Intel Corporation
Kosta Koeman	Intel Corporation
John McGrath	Intel Corporation
Patrik Lundin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Leonard Ott	Socket Communications
Rebecca O'Dell	Signia Technologies
Tsuyoshi Okada	Matsushita Electric
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Toru Aihara	IBM Corporation
Edgar Kerstan	IBM Corporation
Nathan Lee	IBM Corporation
Kris Fleming	Intel Corporation
Robert Hunter	Intel Corporation
Patrick Kane	Motorola, Inc.
Uwe Gondrum	Nokia Corporation
Thomas Müller	Nokia Corporation
Christian Zechlin	Nokia Corporation
Johannes Elg	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson

*Appendix*

Sven Jerlhagen	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Christian Johansson	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Patrik Lundin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Lars Novak	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Masahiro Tada	Toshiba Corporation
Steve Ross	Digianswer A/S
Chatschik Bisdikian	IBM Corporation
Les Cline	Intel Corporation
Brad Hosler	Intel Corporation
John Howard	Intel Corporation
Srikanth Kambhatla	Intel Corporation
Kosta Koeman	Intel Corporation
John McGrath	Intel Corporation
Patrik Lundin	Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson
Leonard Ott	Socket Communications
Rebecca O'Dell	Signia Technologies
Tsuyoshi Okada	Matsushita Electric

## 2.6 [VOL 5] CORE SYSTEM PACKAGE [AMP CONTROLLER VOLUME]

### 2.6.1 Part A: 802.11 PAL

#### *Version 4.1*

Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Raymond Hayes	Broadcom
Francoise Bannister	CSR
Nick Jackson	CSR
Shailendra Govardham	Marvell
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm

#### *Version 3.0 +HS*

Angus Robinson	Anritsu
Edward Harrison	Anritsu
Phil Hough	Anritsu
Stratos Chatzikyriakos	Artimi
Kevin Hayes	Atheros
Prerepa Viswanadham	Atheros
Chris Hansen	Broadcom
Raymond Hayes	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
Nick Jackson	CSR
David Suvak	iAnywhere
Ganesh Venkatesan	Intel
Quinton Yuan	Marvell
Raja Banerjea	Marvell
John Barr	Motorola
Janne Marin	Nokia
Mika Kasslin	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Krishnan Rajamani	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Ignacio Gimeno	ST-NXP Wireless
William Stoye	Staccato Communications
Amir Yassur	TI
Yossi Peery	TI

## 2.7 [VOL 6] LOW ENERGY SPECIFICATION

### 2.7.1 Part A: Physical Layer Specification

*Version 4.0*

Edward Harrison	Anritsu
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Burch Seymour	Continental Automotive
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Wrenham	CSR
Henrik Arfwedson	Infineon
Jukka Reunamaki	Nokia
Mika Kasslin	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Frank Karlsen	Nordic Semiconductor
Øyvind Vedral	Nordic Semiconductor
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Don Sturek	Texas Instruments

### 2.7.2 Part B: Link Layer Specification

*Version 4.1*

Angel Polo	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Joe Decuir	CSR
Giriraj Goyal	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Neil Stewart	CSR
Harish Balasubramaniam	Intel
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Oren Haggai	Intel
Yao Wang	IVT Corporation
Rajan S Pallathu	MindTree Ltd.
David Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics
Anthony Viscardi	Texas Instruments
Jason Hillyard	Wicentric

*Appendix**Version 4.0*

Angel Polo	Broadcom
Prasanna Desai	Broadcom
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Yuan Zhuang	Broadcom
Burch Seymour	Continental Automotive
Joe Decuir	CSR
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Robert Kvacek	EM Microelectronic
Henrik Arfwedson	Infineon
James Dent	Nokia
Jonathan Tanner	Nokia
Kanji Kerai	Nokia
Mika Kasslin	Nokia
Steve Davies	Nokia
Asbjørn Sæbø	Nordic Semiconductor
David Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Frank Karlsen	Nordic Semiconductor
Torstein Nesje	Nordic Semiconductor
Brian Redding	Qualcomm
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Terry Bourk	Qualcomm
Harsha Master	Sasken
Geert Sonck	ST Ericsson
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments
Anthony Viscardi	Texas Instruments
Don Sturek	Texas Instruments
Helge Coward	Texas Instruments

**2.7.3 Part C: Sample Data***Version 4.0*

Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Geert Sonck	ST Ericsson

## 2.7.4 Part D: Message Sequence Charts

### *Version 4.1*

Angel Polo	Broadcom
Mayank Batra	CSR
Joe Decuir	CSR
Giriraj Goyal	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Neil Stewart	CSR
Harish Balasubramaniam	Intel
Magnus Eriksson	Intel
Yao Wang	IVT Corporation
Rajan S Pallathu	MindTree Ltd.
David Lopes	Nordic Semiconductor
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Jean-Philippe Lambert	RivieraWaves
Rasmus Abildgren	Samsung Electronics
Anthony Viscardi	Texas Instruments
Jason Hillyard	Wicentric

### *Version 4.0*

Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Steve Davies	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Geert Sonck	ST Ericsson

## 2.7.5 Part E: Low Energy Security Specification

### *Version 4.0*

Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Singer	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Mika Kasslin	Nokia
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Geert Sonck	ST Ericsson
Alon Paycher	Texas Instruments

## 2.7.6 Part F: Direct Test Mode

*Version 4.0*

Edward Harrison	Anritsu
Robert Hulvey	Broadcom
Magnus Sommansson	CSR
Robin Heydon	CSR
Steven Wenham	CSR
Steve Davies	Nokia
Frank Karlsen	Nordic Semiconductor
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Helge Coward	Texas Instruments

## 2.8 [VOL 7] CORE SYSTEM PACKAGE [WIRELESS COEXISTENCE VOLUME]

### 2.8.1 Part A: MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling Specification

*Version 4.1*

Knut Odman	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Steven Hall	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
Leif Wilhelmsson	Ericsson
Sharon Yang	Intel
Josselin de la Broise	Marvell
Huanchun Ye	MediaTek
L. C. Ko	MediaTek
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Olaf Hirsch	Qualcomm Atheros
Yves Wernaers	ST-Ericsson
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments

### 2.8.2 Part B: Wireless Coexistence Interface 1 (WCI-1) Transport Specification

*Version 4.1*

Steven Hall	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
Clive D.W. Feather	CSR
Sharon Yang	Intel
Huanchun Ye	MediaTek
L. C. Ko	MediaTek
Aaron Hsieh	MediaTek
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm Atheros
Olaf Hirsch	Qualcomm Atheros
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments

### 2.8.3 Part C: Wireless Coexistence Interface 2 (WCI-2) Transport Specification

*Version 4.1*

Knut Odman	Broadcom
Shawn Ding	Broadcom
Steven Hall	Broadcom
Joe Decuir	CSR
Clive D.W. Feather	CSR

*Appendix*

Leif Wilhelmsson	Ericsson
Sharon Yang	Intel
Josselin De La Broise	Marvell
Huanchun Ye	MediaTek
Joel Linsky	Qualcomm
Olaf Hirsch	Qualcomm
Yves Wernaers	ST-Ericsson
Alon Cheifetz	Texas Instruments





# Specification of the **Bluetooth®** System

Specification Volume 1

## Architecture & Terminology Overview

Covered Core Package version: 4.1

Publication date: 03 December 2013







## Revision History

The Revision History is shown in the [\[Vol 0\] Part C Appendix on page 61](#).

## Contributors

The persons who contributed to this specification are listed in the [\[Vol 0\] Part C Appendix on page 61](#).

## Web Site

This specification can also be found on the official Bluetooth web site:  
<http://www.bluetooth.com>

## Disclaimer and Copyright Notice

The copyright in these specifications is owned by the Promoter Members of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. ("Bluetooth SIG"). Use of these specifications and any related intellectual property (collectively, the "Specification"), is governed by the Promoters Membership Agreement among the Promoter Members and Bluetooth SIG (the "Promoters Agreement"), certain membership agreements between Bluetooth SIG and its Adopter and Associate Members (the "Membership Agreements") and the Bluetooth Specification Early Adopters Agreements ("1.2 Early Adopters Agreements") among Early Adopter members of the unincorporated Bluetooth special interest group and the Promoter Members (the "Early Adopters Agreement"). Certain rights and obligations of the Promoter Members under the Early Adopters Agreements have been assigned to Bluetooth SIG by the Promoter Members.

Use of the Specification by anyone who is not a member of Bluetooth SIG or a party to an Early Adopters Agreement (each such person or party, a "Member"), is prohibited. The legal rights and obligations of each Member are governed by their applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights are granted herein.

Any use of the Specification not in compliance with the terms of the applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement is prohibited and any such prohibited use may result in termination of the applicable Membership Agreement or Early Adopters Agreement and other liability permitted by the applicable agreement or by applicable law to Bluetooth SIG or any of its members for patent, copyright and/or trademark infringement.



THE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR REASONABLE SKILL OR CARE, OR ANY WARRANTY ARISING OUT OF ANY COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, TRADE PRACTICE, PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

Each Member hereby acknowledges that products equipped with the Bluetooth® technology ("Bluetooth® Products") may be subject to various regulatory controls under the laws and regulations of various governments worldwide. Such laws and regulatory controls may govern, among other things, the combination, operation, use, implementation and distribution of Bluetooth® Products. Examples of such laws and regulatory controls include, but are not limited to, airline regulatory controls, telecommunications regulations, technology transfer controls and health and safety regulations. Each Member is solely responsible for the compliance by their Bluetooth® Products with any such laws and regulations and for obtaining any and all required authorizations, permits, or licenses for their Bluetooth® Products related to such regulations within the applicable jurisdictions. Each Member acknowledges that nothing in the Specification provides any information or assistance in connection with securing such compliance, authorizations or licenses. **NOTHING IN THE SPECIFICATION CREATES ANY WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING SUCH LAWS OR REGULATIONS.**

ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR FOR NONCOMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, RELATING TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION IS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. BY USE OF THE SPECIFICATION, EACH MEMBER EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY CLAIM AGAINST BLUETOOTH SIG AND ITS PROMOTER MEMBERS RELATED TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION.

Bluetooth SIG reserves the right to adopt any changes or alterations to the Specification as it deems necessary or appropriate.

Copyright © 1999 - 2013

Ericsson AB,

Lenovo, (Singapore) Pte. Ltd

Intel Corporation,

Microsoft Corporation,

Motorola Mobility, LLC,

Nokia Corporation,

Toshiba Corporation

\*Third-party brands and names are the property of their respective owners.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Part A ARCHITECTURE

<b>1</b>	<b>General Description .....</b>	<b>17</b>
1.1	Overview of BR/EDR Operation.....	18
1.2	Overview of Bluetooth Low Energy Operation .....	20
1.3	Overview of AMP Operation.....	23
1.4	Nomenclature.....	24
<b>2</b>	<b>Core System Architecture .....</b>	<b>30</b>
2.1	Core Architectural Blocks.....	34
2.1.1	Host Architectural Blocks .....	34
2.1.1.1	Channel Manager .....	34
2.1.1.2	L2CAP Resource Manager .....	34
2.1.1.3	Security Manager Protocol.....	34
2.1.1.4	Attribute Protocol .....	35
2.1.1.5	AMP Manager Protocol.....	35
2.1.1.6	Generic Attribute Profile.....	35
2.1.1.7	Generic Access Profile.....	35
2.1.2	BR/EDR/LE Controller Architectural Blocks .....	35
2.1.2.1	Device Manager.....	35
2.1.2.2	Link Manager .....	36
2.1.2.3	Baseband Resource Manager .....	36
2.1.2.4	Link Controller.....	37
2.1.2.5	PHY .....	37
2.1.3	AMP Controller architectural blocks .....	37
2.1.3.1	AMP HCI.....	37
2.1.3.2	AMP PAL.....	38
2.1.3.3	AMP MAC .....	38
2.1.3.4	AMP PHY.....	38
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Transport Architecture .....</b>	<b>39</b>
3.1	Core Traffic Bearers .....	40
3.1.1	Framed Data Traffic.....	41
3.1.2	Unframed Data Traffic .....	42
3.1.3	Reliability of traffic bearers .....	43
3.1.3.1	BR/EDR Reliability .....	43
3.1.3.2	LE reliability .....	44
3.1.3.3	AMP Reliability .....	45
3.2	Transport Architecture Entities .....	46
3.2.1	BR/EDR Generic Packet Structure.....	47
3.2.2	LE Generic Packet Structure .....	48



3.3	Physical Channels .....	50
3.3.1	BR/EDR Physical Channels.....	50
3.3.1.1	Basic Piconet Channel .....	51
3.3.1.2	Adapted Piconet Channel.....	52
3.3.1.3	Inquiry scan channel.....	53
3.3.1.4	Page Scan Channel.....	54
3.3.1.5	Synchronization Scan Channel .....	55
3.3.2	LE Physical Channels .....	56
3.3.2.1	LE piconet channel .....	57
3.3.2.2	Advertisement broadcast channel .....	58
3.3.3	AMP physical channel.....	59
3.3.3.1	Overview.....	59
3.3.3.2	Characteristics .....	59
3.3.3.3	Topology .....	59
3.3.3.4	Supported Layers .....	59
3.4	Physical Links .....	60
3.4.1	BR/EDR Links Supported By The Basic And Adapted Piconet Physical Channel .....	60
3.4.1.1	Active Physical Link.....	60
3.4.1.2	Parked Physical Link .....	61
3.4.1.3	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Physical Link..	62
3.4.2	BR/EDR Links Supported by the Scanning Physical Chan- nels .....	63
3.4.3	LE Links Supported by the LE Physical Channels .....	63
3.4.3.1	Active physical link .....	63
3.4.3.2	Advertising physical link .....	63
3.4.4	Links Supported by the AMP Physical Channels .....	63
3.5	Logical Links and Logical Transports.....	64
3.5.1	Casting .....	65
3.5.2	Scheduling and Acknowledgement Scheme.....	66
3.5.3	Class of Data.....	66
3.5.4	Logical Transports.....	67
3.5.4.1	BR/EDR Asynchronous Connection-oriented (ACL) .....	67
3.5.4.2	BR/EDR Synchronous Connection-Oriented (SCO) .....	68
3.5.4.3	BR/EDR Extended Synchronous Connection- Oriented (eSCO).....	68
3.5.4.4	BR/EDR Active Slave Broadcast (ASB) .....	69
3.5.4.5	BR/EDR Parked Slave Broadcast (PSB).....	70
3.5.4.6	LE Asynchronous Connection (LE ACL) .....	71
3.5.4.7	LE Advertising Broadcast (ADV) .....	71
3.5.4.8	Connectionless Slave Broadcast (CSB) .....	72



3.5.5	Logical Links.....	72
3.5.5.1	BR/EDR Logical Links.....	72
3.5.5.2	LE Logical Links.....	73
3.5.5.3	AMP Logical Links .....	74
3.6	L2CAP Channels .....	75
<b>4</b>	<b>Communication Topology and Operation.....</b>	<b>76</b>
4.1	Piconet Topology.....	76
4.1.1	BR/EDR Topology .....	76
4.1.2	LE Topology.....	78
4.2	Operational Procedures and Modes .....	80
4.2.1	BR/EDR Procedures .....	80
4.2.1.1	Inquiry (Discovering) Procedure .....	80
4.2.1.2	Paging (Connecting) Procedure.....	81
4.2.1.3	Connected Mode .....	81
4.2.1.4	Hold Mode .....	82
4.2.1.5	Sniff Mode.....	82
4.2.1.6	Parked State .....	83
4.2.1.7	Role switch procedure .....	83
4.2.1.8	Enhanced Data Rate.....	84
4.2.1.9	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Mode .....	84
4.2.2	LE Procedures.....	84
4.2.2.1	Device Filtering Procedure.....	84
4.2.2.2	Advertising Procedure .....	85
4.2.2.3	Scanning Procedure .....	86
4.2.2.4	Discovering Procedure.....	86
4.2.2.5	Connecting Procedure .....	87
4.2.2.6	Connected Mode .....	87
4.2.3	AMP Procedures .....	88
4.2.3.1	AMP Discovery Procedures .....	88
4.2.3.2	Physical Link Creation Procedure.....	88
4.2.3.3	Logical Link Creation Procedure.....	88
<b>5</b>	<b>Security Overview .....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.1	Security Architecture .....	89
5.2	BR/EDR Secure Simple Pairing .....	90
5.2.1	Security Goals .....	90
5.2.2	Passive Eavesdropping Protection.....	91
5.2.3	Man-In-The-Middle Protection.....	92
5.2.4	Association Models .....	92
5.2.4.1	Numeric Comparison .....	93
5.2.4.2	Just Works .....	93
5.2.4.3	Out of Band.....	94
5.2.4.4	Passkey Entry .....	94
5.2.4.5	Association Model Overview.....	95



5.3	Secure Connections Only Mode .....	95
5.4	LE Security .....	96
5.4.1	Association Models .....	96
5.4.2	Key Generation .....	96
5.4.3	Encryption .....	96
5.4.4	Signed Data .....	97
5.4.5	Privacy Feature .....	97
5.5	AMP Security .....	97
<b>6</b>	<b>Bluetooth Application Architecture .....</b>	<b>99</b>
6.1	Bluetooth Profiles.....	99
6.2	Generic Access Profile .....	100
6.3	Profile Hierarchy .....	101
6.4	Generic Attribute Profile.....	101
6.5	GATT-based Profile Hierarchy .....	102
6.5.1	Service .....	103
6.5.2	Referenced Services.....	103
6.5.3	Characteristic .....	103
<b>7</b>	<b>Coexistence and Collocation .....</b>	<b>104</b>
7.1	Core Features Supporting Coexistence and Collocation .....	105
7.2	Adaptive Frequency Hopping .....	105
7.3	Coexistence Between Bluetooth Devices and Wireless LAN Devices .....	106
7.4	Mobile Wireless Standards (MWS) Coexistence .....	106
7.5	Synchronizing Bluetooth with an External Timing Source .....	109
7.6	Piconet Clock Adjustment.....	110

**Part B****ACRONYMS & ABBREVIATIONS**

<b>1</b>	<b>List of Acronyms and Abbreviations .....</b>	<b>115</b>
----------	---	------------

**Part C****CORE SPECIFICATION CHANGE HISTORY**

<b>1</b>	<b>Deprecated Features .....</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Changes from V1.1 to V1.2.....</b>	<b>131</b>
2.1	New Features .....	131
2.2	Structure Changes .....	131
2.3	Deprecated Features list.....	131
2.4	Changes in Wording .....	132
2.5	Nomenclature Changes .....	132



<b>3</b>	<b>Changes from V1.2 to V2.0 + EDR .....</b>	<b>133</b>
3.1	New Features.....	133
3.2	Deprecated Features .....	133
<b>4</b>	<b>Changes from V2.0 + EDR to V2.1 + EDR.....</b>	<b>134</b>
4.1	New features .....	134
4.2	Deprecated Features .....	134
<b>5</b>	<b>Changes From V2.1 + EDR To V3.0 + HS .....</b>	<b>135</b>
5.1	New Features.....	135
5.2	Deprecated Features .....	135
<b>6</b>	<b>Changes From V3.0 + HS To v4.0 .....</b>	<b>136</b>
6.1	New Features.....	136
6.2	Deprecated Features .....	136
<b>7</b>	<b>Changes from v4.0 to v4.1 .....</b>	<b>137</b>
7.1	New Features.....	137
7.1.1	Features Added in CSA 4 – Integrated in v4.1.....	137
7.1.2	Features Added in CSA 3 – Integrated in v4.1.....	137
7.1.3	Features Added in CSA 2 – Integrated in v4.1.....	138
7.2	Deprecated Features .....	138

## Part D

### MIXING OF SPECIFICATION VERSIONS

<b>1</b>	<b>Mixing of Specification Versions .....</b>	<b>142</b>
1.1	Features and their Types .....	144
1.2	Core Specification Addenda.....	146

## Part E

### IEEE LANGUAGE

<b>1</b>	<b>Use of IEEE Language .....</b>	<b>153</b>
1.1	Shall .....	154
1.2	Must .....	154
1.3	Will .....	154
1.4	Should.....	154
1.5	May .....	155
1.6	Can .....	155



# Architecture & Terminology Overview

## Part A

# ARCHITECTURE



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>General Description .....</b>	<b>17</b>
1.1	Overview of BR/EDR Operation.....	18
1.2	Overview of Bluetooth Low Energy Operation .....	20
1.3	Overview of AMP Operation.....	23
1.4	Nomenclature.....	24
<b>2</b>	<b>Core System Architecture .....</b>	<b>30</b>
2.1	Core Architectural Blocks.....	34
2.1.1	Host Architectural Blocks .....	34
2.1.1.1	Channel Manager .....	34
2.1.1.2	L2CAP Resource Manager .....	34
2.1.1.3	Security Manager Protocol.....	34
2.1.1.4	Attribute Protocol .....	35
2.1.1.5	AMP Manager Protocol.....	35
2.1.1.6	Generic Attribute Profile.....	35
2.1.1.7	Generic Access Profile.....	35
2.1.2	BR/EDR/LE Controller Architectural Blocks .....	35
2.1.2.1	Device Manager.....	35
2.1.2.2	Link Manager .....	36
2.1.2.3	Baseband Resource Manager .....	36
2.1.2.4	Link Controller.....	37
2.1.2.5	PHY .....	37
2.1.3	AMP Controller architectural blocks .....	37
2.1.3.1	AMP HCI .....	37
2.1.3.2	AMP PAL.....	38
2.1.3.3	AMP MAC .....	38
2.1.3.4	AMP PHY .....	38
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Transport Architecture.....</b>	<b>39</b>
3.1	Core Traffic Bearers .....	40
3.1.1	Framed Data Traffic.....	41
3.1.2	Unframed Data Traffic .....	42
3.1.3	Reliability of traffic bearers .....	43
3.1.3.1	BR/EDR Reliability .....	43
3.1.3.2	LE reliability .....	44
3.1.3.3	AMP Reliability .....	45
3.2	Transport Architecture Entities .....	46
3.2.1	BR/EDR Generic Packet Structure .....	47
3.2.2	LE Generic Packet Structure .....	48



3.3	Physical Channels .....	50
3.3.1	BR/EDR Physical Channels.....	50
3.3.1.1	Basic Piconet Channel .....	51
3.3.1.2	Adapted Piconet Channel.....	52
3.3.1.3	Inquiry scan channel.....	53
3.3.1.4	Page Scan Channel.....	54
3.3.1.5	Synchronization Scan Channel .....	55
3.3.2	LE Physical Channels .....	56
3.3.2.1	LE piconet channel .....	57
3.3.2.2	Advertisement broadcast channel .....	58
3.3.3	AMP physical channel.....	59
3.3.3.1	Overview.....	59
3.3.3.2	Characteristics .....	59
3.3.3.3	Topology .....	59
3.3.3.4	Supported Layers .....	59
3.4	Physical Links .....	60
3.4.1	BR/EDR Links Supported By The Basic And Adapted Piconet Physical Channel .....	60
3.4.1.1	Active Physical Link.....	60
3.4.1.2	Parked Physical Link .....	61
3.4.1.3	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Physical Link..	62
3.4.2	BR/EDR Links Supported by the Scanning Physical Chan- nels .....	63
3.4.3	LE Links Supported by the LE Physical Channels .....	63
3.4.3.1	Active physical link .....	63
3.4.3.2	Advertising physical link .....	63
3.4.4	Links Supported by the AMP Physical Channels .....	63
3.5	Logical Links and Logical Transports.....	64
3.5.1	Casting .....	65
3.5.2	Scheduling and Acknowledgement Scheme.....	66
3.5.3	Class of Data.....	66
3.5.4	Logical Transports.....	67
3.5.4.1	BR/EDR Asynchronous Connection-oriented (ACL) .....	67
3.5.4.2	BR/EDR Synchronous Connection-Oriented (SCO) .....	68
3.5.4.3	BR/EDR Extended Synchronous Connection- Oriented (eSCO).....	68
3.5.4.4	BR/EDR Active Slave Broadcast (ASB) .....	69
3.5.4.5	BR/EDR Parked Slave Broadcast (PSB).....	70
3.5.4.6	LE Asynchronous Connection (LE ACL) .....	71
3.5.4.7	LE Advertising Broadcast (ADVB) .....	71
3.5.4.8	Connectionless Slave Broadcast (CSB) .....	72



3.5.5	Logical Links.....	72
3.5.5.1	BR/EDR Logical Links.....	72
3.5.5.2	LE Logical Links.....	73
3.5.5.3	AMP Logical Links .....	74
3.6	L2CAP Channels .....	75
<b>4</b>	<b>Communication Topology and Operation.....</b>	<b>76</b>
4.1	Piconet Topology.....	76
4.1.1	BR/EDR Topology .....	76
4.1.2	LE Topology.....	78
4.2	Operational Procedures and Modes .....	80
4.2.1	BR/EDR Procedures .....	80
4.2.1.1	Inquiry (Discovering) Procedure .....	80
4.2.1.2	Paging (Connecting) Procedure.....	81
4.2.1.3	Connected Mode .....	81
4.2.1.4	Hold Mode .....	82
4.2.1.5	Sniff Mode.....	82
4.2.1.6	Parked State .....	83
4.2.1.7	Role switch procedure .....	83
4.2.1.8	Enhanced Data Rate.....	84
4.2.1.9	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Mode .....	84
4.2.2	LE Procedures.....	84
4.2.2.1	Device Filtering Procedure.....	84
4.2.2.2	Advertising Procedure .....	85
4.2.2.3	Scanning Procedure .....	86
4.2.2.4	Discovering Procedure.....	86
4.2.2.5	Connecting Procedure .....	87
4.2.2.6	Connected Mode .....	87
4.2.3	AMP Procedures .....	88
4.2.3.1	AMP Discovery Procedures .....	88
4.2.3.2	Physical Link Creation Procedure.....	88
4.2.3.3	Logical Link Creation Procedure.....	88
<b>5</b>	<b>Security Overview .....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.1	Security Architecture .....	89
5.2	BR/EDR Secure Simple Pairing .....	90
5.2.1	Security Goals.....	90
5.2.2	Passive Eavesdropping Protection.....	91
5.2.3	Man-In-The-Middle Protection.....	92
5.2.4	Association Models .....	92
5.2.4.1	Numeric Comparison .....	93
5.2.4.2	Just Works .....	93
5.2.4.3	Out of Band.....	94
5.2.4.4	Passkey Entry .....	94
5.2.4.5	Association Model Overview.....	95

*Architecture*

5.3	Secure Connections Only Mode .....	95
5.4	LE Security .....	96
5.4.1	Association Models .....	96
5.4.2	Key Generation .....	96
5.4.3	Encryption .....	96
5.4.4	Signed Data .....	97
5.4.5	Privacy Feature .....	97
5.5	AMP Security .....	97
<b>6</b>	<b>Bluetooth Application Architecture .....</b>	<b>99</b>
6.1	Bluetooth Profiles.....	99
6.2	Generic Access Profile .....	100
6.3	Profile Hierarchy .....	101
6.4	Generic Attribute Profile.....	101
6.5	GATT-based Profile Hierarchy .....	102
6.5.1	Service .....	103
6.5.2	Referenced Services.....	103
6.5.3	Characteristic .....	103
<b>7</b>	<b>Coexistence and Collocation .....</b>	<b>104</b>
7.1	Core Features Supporting Coexistence and Collocation .....	105
7.2	Adaptive Frequency Hopping .....	105
7.3	Coexistence Between Bluetooth Devices and Wireless LAN Devices .....	106
7.4	Mobile Wireless Standards (MWS) Coexistence .....	106
7.5	Synchronizing Bluetooth with an External Timing Source .....	109
7.6	Piconet Clock Adjustment.....	110

## 1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

---

Bluetooth wireless technology is a short-range communications system intended to replace the cable(s) connecting portable and/or fixed electronic devices. The key features of Bluetooth wireless technology are robustness, low power consumption, and low cost. Many features of the core specification are optional, allowing product differentiation.

There are two forms of Bluetooth wireless technology systems: Basic Rate (BR) and Low Energy (LE). Both systems include device discovery, connection establishment and connection mechanisms. The Basic Rate system includes optional Enhanced Data Rate (EDR) Alternate Media Access Control (MAC) and Physical (PHY) layer extensions. The Basic Rate system offers synchronous and asynchronous connections with data rates of 721.2 kbps for Basic Rate, 2.1 Mbps for Enhanced Data Rate and high speed operation up to 54 Mbps with the 802.11 AMP. The LE system includes features designed to enable products that require lower current consumption, lower complexity and lower cost than BR/EDR. The LE system is also designed for use cases and applications with lower data rates and has lower duty cycles. Depending on the use case or application, one system including any optional parts may be more optimal than the other.

Devices implementing both systems can communicate with other devices implementing both systems as well as devices implementing either system. Some profiles and use cases will be supported by only one of the systems. Therefore, devices implementing both systems have the ability to support the most use cases.

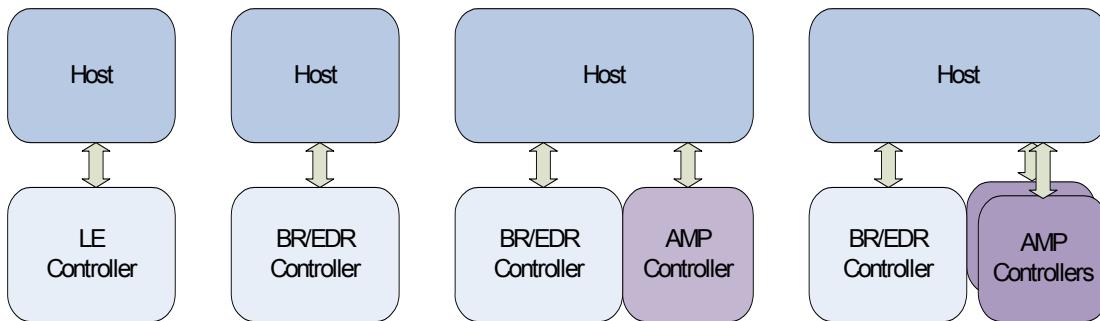
The Bluetooth core system consists of a Host and one or more Controllers. A Host is a logical entity defined as all of the layers below the non-core profiles and above the Host Controller Interface (HCI). A Controller is a logical entity defined as all of the layers below HCI. An implementation of the Host and Controller may contain the respective parts of the HCI. Two types of Controllers are defined in this version of the Core Specification: Primary Controllers and Secondary Controllers.

An implementation of the Bluetooth Core has only one Primary Controller which may be one of the following configurations:

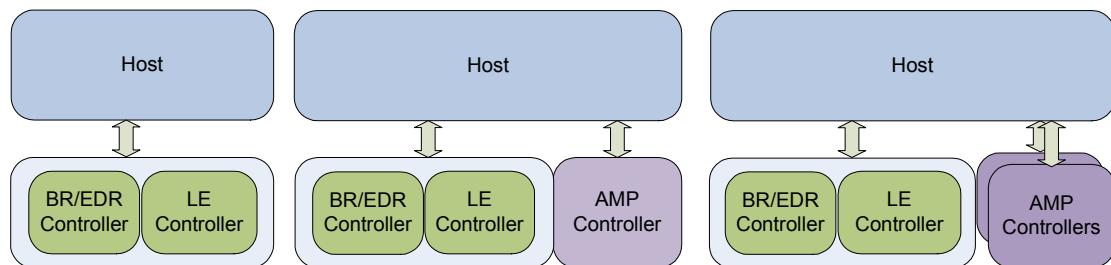
- a BR/EDR Controller including the Radio, Baseband, Link Manager and optionally HCI.
- an LE Controller including the LE PHY, Link Layer and optionally HCI.
- a combined BR/EDR Controller portion and LE controller portion (as identified in the previous two bullets) into a single Controller. This configuration has only one Bluetooth device address shared by the combination in the combined Controller.

A Bluetooth core system may additionally have one or more Secondary Controllers described by the following configuration:

- an Alternate MAC/PHY (AMP) Controller including an 802.11 PAL (Protocol Adaptation Layer), 802.11 MAC and PHY, and optionally HCI.



*Figure 1.1: Bluetooth Host and Controller Combinations: (from left to right): LE Only Primary Controller, BR/EDR only Primary Controller, BR/EDR Primary Controller, with one AMP Secondary Controller, and BR/EDR with multiple AMP Secondary Controllers*



*Figure 1.2: Bluetooth Host and Controller Combinations (from left to right): BR/EDR and LE Primary Controller, BR/EDR and LE Primary Controller with one AMP Secondary Controller, and BR/EDR and LE Primary Controller with multiple AMP Secondary Controllers*

This volume of the specification provides an overview of the Bluetooth system architecture, communication topologies and data transport features. The text in this volume of the specification should be treated as informational and used as a background and for context-setting.

## 1.1 OVERVIEW OF BR/EDR OPERATION

The Basic Rate / Enhanced Data Rate (BR/EDR) radio (physical layer or PHY) operates in the unlicensed ISM band at 2.4 GHz. The system employs a frequency hopping transceiver to combat interference and fading and provides many FHSS carriers. Basic Rate radio operation uses a shaped, binary frequency modulation to minimize transceiver complexity. The symbol rate is 1 Megasymbol per second (Ms/s) supporting the bit rate of 1 Megabit per second (Mb/s) or, with Enhanced Data Rate, a gross air bit rate of 2 or 3 Mb/s. These modes are known as Basic Rate and Enhanced Data Rate respectively.

During typical operation a physical radio channel is shared by a group of devices that are synchronized to a common clock and frequency hopping pat-

tern. One device provides the synchronization reference and is known as the master. All other devices synchronized to a master's clock and frequency hopping pattern are known as slaves. A group of devices synchronized in this fashion form a piconet. This is the fundamental form of communication in the Bluetooth BR/EDR wireless technology.

Devices in a piconet use a specific frequency hopping pattern, which is algorithmically determined by certain fields in the Bluetooth address and clock of the master. The basic hopping pattern is a pseudo-random ordering of the 79 frequencies, separated by 1 MHz, in the ISM band. The hopping pattern can be adapted to exclude a portion of the frequencies that are used by interfering devices. The adaptive hopping technique improves Bluetooth co-existence with static (non-hopping) ISM systems when they are co-located.

The physical channel is sub-divided into time units known as slots. Data is transmitted between Bluetooth devices in packets that are positioned in these slots. When circumstances permit, a number of consecutive slots may be allocated to a single packet. Frequency hopping takes place between the transmission or reception of packets. Bluetooth technology provides the effect of full duplex transmission through the use of a Time-Division Duplex (TDD) scheme.

Above the physical channel there is a layering of links and channels and associated control protocols. The hierarchy of channels and links from the physical channel upwards is physical channel, physical link, logical transport, logical link and L2CAP channel. These are discussed in more detail in [Section 3.3 on page 50](#) to [Section 3.6 on page 75](#) but are introduced here to aid the understanding of the remainder of this section.

Typically within a physical channel, a physical link is formed between a master device and slave devices. Exceptions to this include Inquiry scan and Page scan physical channels, which have no associated physical link. The physical link provides bidirectional packet transport between the master and slave devices, except in the case of a Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link. In that case, the physical link provides a unidirectional packet transport from the master to a potentially unlimited number of slaves. Since a physical channel could include multiple slave devices, there are restrictions on which devices may form a physical link. There is a physical link between each slave and the master. Physical links are not formed directly between the slaves in a piconet.

The physical link is used as a transport for one or more logical links that support unicast synchronous, asynchronous and isochronous traffic, and broadcast traffic. Traffic on logical links is multiplexed onto the physical link by occupying slots assigned by a scheduling function in the resource manager.

A control protocol for the baseband and physical layers is carried over logical links in addition to user data. This is the link manager protocol (LMP). Devices that are active in a piconet have a default asynchronous connection-oriented logical transport that is used to transport the LMP protocol signaling. For historical reasons this is known as the ACL logical transport. With the exception of

Connectionless Slave Broadcast devices, the primary ACL logical transport is the one that is created whenever a device joins a piconet. Connectionless Slave Broadcast devices may join the piconet purely to listen to Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets. In that case, a Connectionless Slave Broadcast logical transport is created (also called a CSB logical transport) and no ACL logical transport is required. For all devices, additional logical transports may be created to transport synchronous data streams when required.

The Link Manager function uses LMP to control the operation of devices in the piconet and provide services to manage the lower architectural layers (radio layer and baseband layer). The LMP protocol is only carried on the primary ACL logical transport and the default broadcast logical transport (LT\_ADDR=0).

Above the baseband layer the L2CAP layer provides a channel-based abstraction to applications and services. It carries out segmentation and reassembly of application data and multiplexing and de-multiplexing of multiple channels over a shared logical link. L2CAP has a protocol control channel that is carried over the default ACL logical transport. Application data submitted to the L2CAP protocol may be carried on any logical link that supports the L2CAP protocol.

## 1.2 OVERVIEW OF BLUETOOTH LOW ENERGY OPERATION

Like the BR/EDR radio, the LE radio operates in the unlicensed 2.4 GHz ISM band. The LE system employs a frequency hopping transceiver to combat interference and fading and provides many FHSS carriers. LE radio operation uses a shaped, binary frequency modulation to minimize transceiver complexity. The symbol rate is 1 Megasymbol per second (Ms/s) supporting the bit rate of 1 Megabit per second (Mb/s).

LE employs two multiple access schemes: Frequency division multiple access (FDMA) and time division multiple access (TDMA). Forty (40) physical channels, separated by 2 MHz, are used in the FDMA scheme. Three (3) are used as advertising channels and 37 are used as data channels. A TDMA based polling scheme is used in which one device transmits a packet at a predetermined time and a corresponding device responds with a packet after a predetermined interval.

The physical channel is sub-divided into time units known as events. Data is transmitted between LE devices in packets that are positioned in these events. There are two types of events: Advertising and Connection events.

Devices that transmit advertising packets on the advertising PHY channels are referred to as **advertisers**. Devices that receive advertising packets on the advertising channels without the intention to connect to the advertising device are referred to as **scanners**. Transmissions on the advertising PHY channels occur in advertising events. At the start of each advertising event, the advertiser sends an advertising packet corresponding to the advertising event type. Depending on the type of advertising packet, the scanner may make a request

to the advertiser on the same advertising PHY channel which may be followed by a response from the advertiser on the same advertising PHY channel. The advertising PHY channel changes on the next advertising packet sent by the advertiser in the same advertising event. The advertiser may end the advertising event at any time during the event. The first advertising PHY channel is used at the start of the next advertising event.

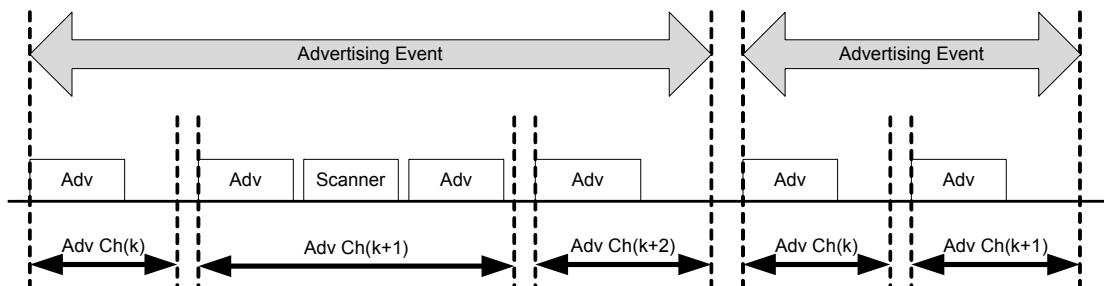


Figure 1.3: Advertising Events

LE devices may fulfill the entire communication in the case of unidirectional or broadcast communication between two or more devices using advertising events. They may also use advertising events to establish pair-wise bi-directional communication between two or more devices using data channels.

Devices that need to form a connection to another device listen for connectable advertising packets. Such devices are referred to as **initiators**. If the advertiser is using a connectable advertising event, an initiator may make a connection request using the same advertising PHY channel on which it received the connectable advertising packet. The advertising event is ended and connection events begin if the advertiser receives and accepts the request for a connection be initiated. Once a connection is established, the initiator becomes the **master** device in what is referred to as a **piconet** and the advertising device becomes the **slave** device. Connection events are used to send data packets between the master and slave devices. In connection events, channel hopping occurs at the start of each connection event. Within a connection event, the master and slave alternate sending data packets using the same data PHY channel. The master initiates the beginning of each connection event and can end each connection event at any time.

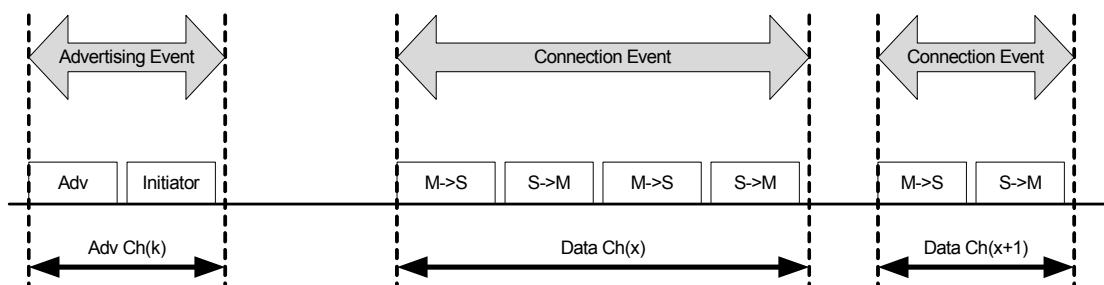


Figure 1.4: Connection Events

Devices in a piconet use a specific frequency hopping pattern, which is algorithmically determined by a field contained in the connection request sent by an initiating device. The initiating device provides the synchronization reference known as a hop interval. The hopping pattern used in LE is a pseudo-random ordering of the 37 frequencies in the ISM band. The hopping pattern can be adapted to exclude a portion of the frequencies that are used by interfering devices. The adaptive hopping technique improves Bluetooth co-existence with static (non-hopping) ISM systems when these are co-located and have access to information about the local radio environment, or detected by other means.

Above the physical channel there are concepts of links, channels and associated control protocols. The hierarchy is physical channel, physical link, logical transport, logical link and L2CAP channel. These are discussed in more detail in [Section 3.3 on page 50](#) to [Section 3.6 on page 75](#) but are introduced here to aid the understanding of the remainder of this section.

Within a physical channel, a physical link is formed between a master and each slave. Direct physical links between slaves in a piconet are not supported. Slaves are permitted to have physical links to more than one master at a time. A device is permitted to be master and slave at the same time. Role changes between a master and slave device are not supported at this time.

The physical link is used as a transport for one or more logical links that support asynchronous traffic. Traffic on logical links is multiplexed onto the physical link assigned by a scheduling function in the resource manager.

A control protocol for the link and physical layers is carried over logical links in addition to user data. This is the link layer protocol (LL). Devices that are active in a piconet have a default LE asynchronous connection logical transport (LE ACL) that is used to transport the LL protocol signaling. The default LE ACL is the one that is created whenever a device joins a piconet.

The Link Layer function uses the LL protocol to control the operation of devices in the piconet and provide services to manage the lower architectural layers (PHY and LL).

Just as in BR/EDR, above the link layer the L2CAP layer provides a channel-based abstraction to applications and services. It carries out fragmentation and de-fragmentation of application data and multiplexing and de-multiplexing of multiple channels over a shared logical link. L2CAP has a protocol control channel that is carried over the primary ACL logical transport.

In addition to L2CAP, LE provides two additional protocol layers that reside on top of L2CAP. The Security Manager protocol (SMP) uses a fixed L2CAP channel to implement the security functions between devices. The other is the Attribute protocol (ATT) that provides a method to communicate small amounts of data over a fixed L2CAP channel. The Attribute protocol is also used by devices to determine the services and capabilities of other devices. The Attribute protocol may also be used over BR/EDR.

### 1.3 OVERVIEW OF AMP OPERATION

Alternate MAC/PHYs (AMP) are secondary Controllers in the Bluetooth core system. The BR/EDR radio, the primary radio, is used to perform discovery, association, connection establishment, and connection maintenance. Once an L2CAP connection has been established between two devices over the BR/EDR radio, the AMP Managers can discover the AMPs that are available on the other device. When an AMP is common between the two devices, the Core system provides mechanisms for moving data traffic from BR/EDR Controller to an AMP Controller.

Each AMP consists of a Protocol Adaptation Layer (PAL) on top of a MAC and PHY. The PAL is responsible for mapping the Bluetooth protocols and behavior (as specified by HCI) to the specific protocols of the underlying MAC and PHY.

L2CAP channels may be created on, or moved to, an AMP. L2CAP channels may also be moved back to the BR/EDR radio when those capabilities are not necessary or when the AMP physical link has a link supervision timeout. A link supervision timeout on an ACL link connecting two BR/EDR devices forces a disconnection of all AMP physical links between those devices.

AMPs may be enabled or disabled as needed in order to minimize power consumption in the system.

## 1.4 NOMENCLATURE

Where the following terms appear in the specification they have the meaning given in [Table 1.1 on page 24](#).

Active Slave Broadcast (ASB)	The Active Slave Broadcast logical transport that is used to transport L2CAP user traffic to all active devices in the piconet over the BR/EDR Controller. See <a href="#">Section 3.5.4.4 on page 69</a>
Ad Hoc Network	A network typically created in a spontaneous manner. An ad hoc network requires no formal infrastructure and is limited in temporal and spatial extent.
Advertiser	A Bluetooth low energy device that broadcasts advertising packets during advertising events on advertising channels
Advertising Event	A series of between one and three advertising packets on different advertising channels sent by an advertiser.
AMP	Alternate Media Access Controller (MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) or Alternate MAC/PHY.
AMP Controller	A term referring to AMP PHY, AMP MAC, Protocol Adaptation Layer, and HCI layers.
BD_ADDR	The Bluetooth device Address, BD_ADDR, is used to identify a Bluetooth device.
Beacon Train	A pattern of reserved slots within a basic or adapted piconet physical channel. Transmissions starting in these slots are used to resynchronize parked devices.
Bluetooth	Bluetooth is a wireless communication link, operating in the unlicensed ISM band at 2.4 GHz using a frequency hopping transceiver. It allows real-time AV and data communications between Bluetooth Hosts. The link protocol is based on time slots.
Bluetooth Baseband	The part of the Bluetooth system that specifies or implements the medium access and physical layer procedures to support the exchange of real-time voice, data information streams, and ad hoc networking between Bluetooth Devices.
Bluetooth Clock	A 28 bit clock internal to a BR/EDR Controller sub-system that ticks every 312.5µs. The value of this clock defines the slot numbering and timing in the various physical channels.
Bluetooth Controller	A generic term referring to a Primary Controller with or without a Secondary Controller.
Bluetooth Device	A device that is capable of short-range wireless communications using the Bluetooth system.

*Table 1.1: Nomenclature*

*Architecture*

Bluetooth Device Address	A 48 bit address used to identify each Bluetooth device.
BR/EDR	Bluetooth basic rate (BR) and enhanced data rate (EDR).
BR/EDR Controller	A term referring to the Bluetooth Radio, Baseband, Link Manager, and HCI layers.
BR/EDR Piconet Physical Channel	A Channel that is divided into time slots in which each slot is related to an RF hop frequency. Consecutive hops normally correspond to different RF hop frequencies and occur at a standard hop rate of 1600 hops/s. These consecutive hops follow a pseudo-random hopping sequence, hopping through a 79 RF channel set, or optionally fewer channels when Adaptive Frequency Hopping (AFH) is in use.
BR/EDR/LE	Bluetooth basic rate (BR), enhanced data rate (EDR) and low energy (LE).
C-plane	Control plane
Channel	Either a physical channel or an L2CAP channel, depending on the context.
Connect (to service)	The establishment of a connection to a service. If not already done, this also includes establishment of a physical link, logical transport, logical link and L2CAP channel.
Connectable device	A BR/EDR device in range that periodically listens on its page scan physical channel and will respond to a page on that channel. An LE device that is advertising using a connectable advertising event.
Connected devices	Two BR/EDR devices and with a physical link between them.
Connecting	A phase in the communication between devices when a connection between the devices is being established. (Connecting phase follows after the link establishment phase is completed.)
Connection	A connection between two peer applications or higher layer protocols mapped onto an L2CAP channel.
Connection establishment	A procedure for creating a connection mapped onto a channel.
Connection Event	A series of one or more pairs of interleaving data packets sent between a master and a slave on the same physical channel.
Connectionless Slave Broadcast (CSB)	A feature that enables a master to broadcast information to an unlimited number of slaves.

Table 1.1: Nomenclature

*Architecture*

Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receiver	A Bluetooth device that receives broadcast information from a Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter. The device is a slave of the piconet.
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter	A Bluetooth device that sends Connectionless Slave Broadcast messages for reception by one or more Connectionless Slave Broadcast receivers. The device is the master of the piconet.
Controller	A collective term referring to all of the layers below HCI.
Coverage area	The area where two Bluetooth devices can exchange messages with acceptable quality and performance.
Creation of a secure connection	A procedure of establishing a connection, including authentication and encryption.
Creation of a trusted relationship	A procedure where the remote device is marked as a trusted device. This includes storing a common link key for future authentication, or pairing, when a link key is not available.
Device discovery	A procedure for retrieving the Bluetooth device address, clock, class-of-device field and used page scan mode from discoverable devices.
Discoverable device	A BR/EDR device in range that periodically listens on an inquiry scan physical channel and will respond to an inquiry on that channel. An LE device in range that is advertising with a connectable or scannable advertising event with a discoverable flag set in the advertising data. This device is in the discoverable mode.
Discoverable Mode	A Bluetooth device that is performing inquiry scans in BR/EDR or advertising with a discoverable or connectable advertising event with a discoverable flag set in LE.
Discovery procedure	A Bluetooth device that is carrying out the inquiry procedure in BR/EDR or scanning for advertisers using a discoverable or connectable advertising event with a discoverable flag set in LE.
HCI	The Host Controller Interface (HCI) provides a command interface to the baseband controller and link manager and access to hardware status and control registers. This interface provides a uniform method of accessing the Bluetooth baseband capabilities.
Host	A logical entity defined as all of the layers below the non-core profiles (e.g. <a href="#">Volume 3</a> ) and above the Host Controller Interface (HCI). A Bluetooth Host attached to a Bluetooth Controller may communicate with other Bluetooth Hosts attached to their Controllers as well.
Initiator	A Bluetooth low energy device that listens on advertising channels for connectable advertising events to form connections.

Table 1.1: Nomenclature

*Architecture*

Inquiring device	A BR/EDR device that is carrying out the inquiry procedure. This device is performing the discovery procedure.
Inquiry	A procedure where a Bluetooth device transmits inquiry messages and listens for responses in order to discover the other Bluetooth devices that are within the coverage area.
Inquiry scan	A procedure where a Bluetooth device listens for inquiry messages received on its inquiry scan physical channel.
Interoperability	The ability of two or more systems or components to exchange information and to use the information that has been exchanged.
Isochronous data	Information in a stream where each information entity in the stream is bound by a time relationship to previous and successive entities.
Known device	A Bluetooth device for which at least the BD_ADDR is stored.
L2CAP	Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol
L2CAP Channel	A logical connection on L2CAP level between two devices serving a single application or higher layer protocol.
L2CAP Channel establishment	A procedure for establishing a logical connection on L2CAP level.
LE	Bluetooth low energy (LE)
Link	Shorthand for a logical link.
Link establishment	A procedure for establishing the default ACL link and hierarchy of links and channels between devices.
Link key	A secret key that is known by two devices and is used to authenticate the link.
LMP authentication	An LMP level procedure for verifying the identity of a remote device.
LMP pairing	A procedure that authenticates two devices and creates a common link key that can be used as a basis for a trusted relationship or a (single) secure connection.
Logical link	The lowest architectural level used to offer independent data transport services to clients of the Bluetooth system.
Logical transport	Shared acknowledgement protocol and link identifiers between different logical links.
Name discovery	A procedure for retrieving the user-friendly name (the Bluetooth device name) of a connectable device.
Packet	Format of aggregated bits that are transmitted on a physical channel.

Table 1.1: Nomenclature

*Architecture*

Page	The initial phase of the connection procedure where a device transmits a train of page messages until a response is received from the target device or a time-out occurs.
Page scan	A procedure where a device listens for page messages received on its page scan physical channel.
Paging device	A Bluetooth device that is carrying out the page procedure.
Paired device	A Bluetooth device for which a link key has been created (either before connection establishment was requested or during connecting phase).
Parked device	A device operating in a basic mode piconet that is synchronized to the master but has given up its default ACL logical transport.
Passkey	A 6-digit number used to authenticate connections when Secure Simple Pairing is used.
Physical Channel	Characterized by synchronized occupancy of a sequence of RF carriers by one or more devices. A number of physical channel types exist with characteristics defined for their different purposes.
Physical Link	A Baseband or Link Layer level connection between two devices.
Piconet	A collection of devices occupying a shared physical channel where one of the devices is the Piconet Master and the remaining devices are connected to it.
Piconet Master	The BR/EDR device in a piconet whose Bluetooth Clock and Bluetooth Device Address are used to define the piconet physical channel characteristics.
Piconet Slave	Any BR/EDR device in a piconet that is not the Piconet Master, but is connected to the Piconet Master.
PIN	A user-friendly number that can be used to authenticate connections to a device before pairing has taken place.
PMP	A Participant in Multiple Piconets. A device that is concurrently a member of more than one piconet, which it achieves using time division multiplexing (TDM) to interleave its activity on each piconet physical channel.
Profile Broadcast Data (PBD)	A logical link that carries data from a Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter to one or more Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receivers.
Scanner	A Bluetooth low energy device that listens for advertising events on the advertising channels.
Scatternet	Two or more piconets that include one or more devices acting as PMPs.

Table 1.1: Nomenclature

*Architecture*

Service discovery	Procedures for querying and browsing for services offered by or through another Bluetooth device.
Service Layer Protocol	A protocol that uses an L2CAP channel for transporting PDUs.
Silent device	A Bluetooth enabled device appears as silent to a remote device if it does not respond to inquiries made by the remote device.
Synchronization Scan Physical Channel	A physical channel that enables a slave device to receive synchronization train packets from a master device.
Synchronization Train	A series of packets transmitted on a set of fixed frequencies that deliver sufficient information for a receiving device to start receiving corresponding Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets or to recover the current piconet clock after missing a Coarse Clock Adjust.
The Parked Slave Broadcast (PSB)	The Parked Slave Broadcast logical transport that is used for communications between the master and parked devices. These communications may also be received by active devices. See <a href="#">Section 3.5.4.5 on page 70</a> .
U-plane	User plane
Unknown device	A Bluetooth device for which no information (Bluetooth Device Address, link key or other) is stored.

Table 1.1: Nomenclature

## 2 CORE SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

---

The Bluetooth Core system consists of a Host, a Primary Controller and zero or more Secondary Controllers. A minimal implementation of the Bluetooth BR/EDR core system covers the four lowest layers and associated protocols defined by the Bluetooth specification as well as one common service layer protocol; the Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) and the overall profile requirements are specified in the Generic Access Profile (GAP). The BR/EDR Core system includes support of Alternate MAC/PHYs (AMPs) including an AMP Manager Protocol and Protocol Adaptation Layers (PALs) supporting externally referenced MAC/PHYs. A minimal implementation of a Bluetooth LE only core system covers the four lowest layers and associated protocols defined by the Bluetooth specification as well as two common service layer protocols; the Security Manager (SM) and Attribute Protocol (ATT) and the overall profile requirements are specified in the Generic Attribute Profile (GATT) and Generic Access Profile (GAP). Implementations combining Bluetooth BR/EDR and LE include both of the minimal implementations described above.

A complete Bluetooth application requires a number of additional service and higher layer protocols that are defined in the Bluetooth specification, but are not described here. The core system architecture is shown in [Figure 2.1 on page 31](#).

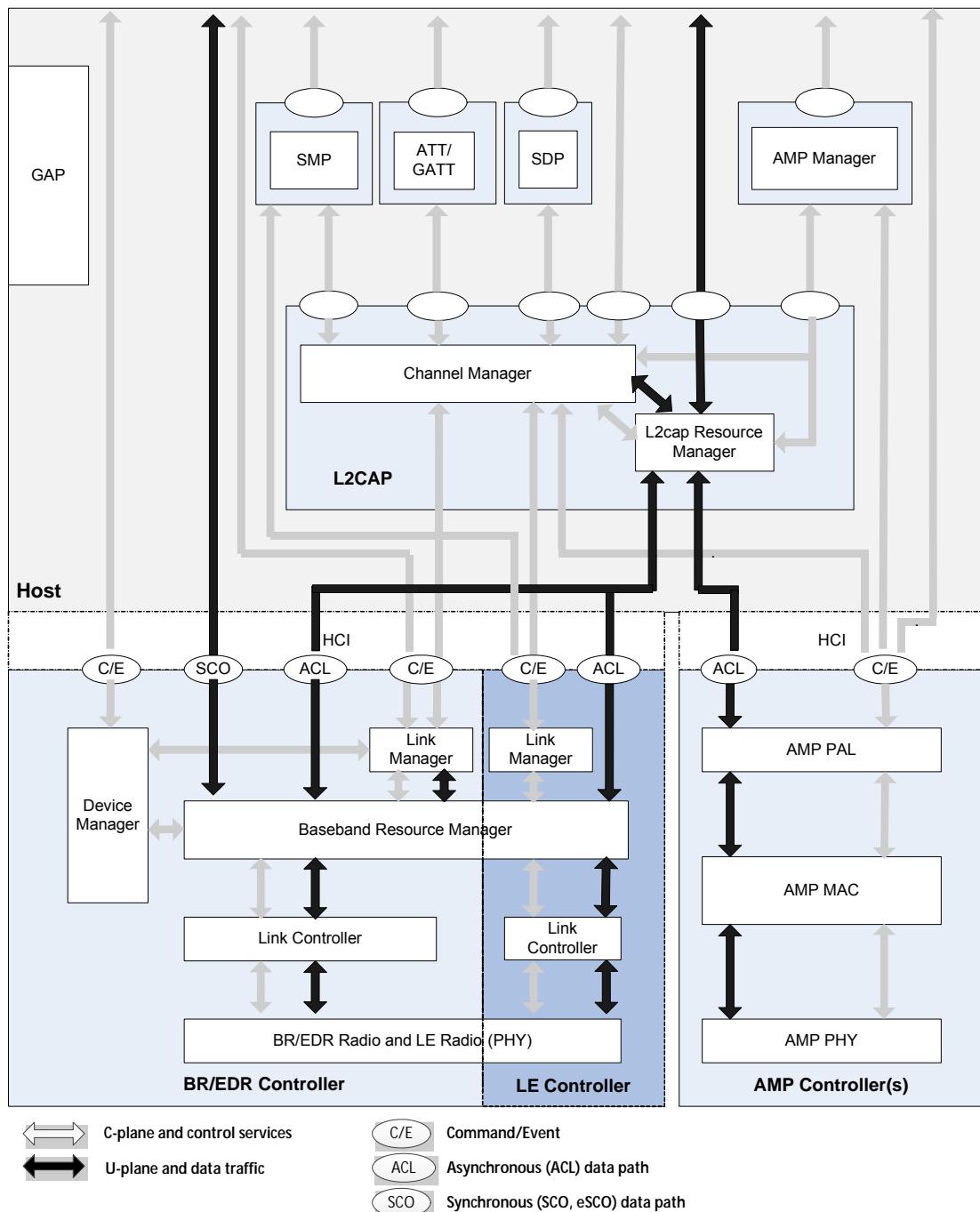
*Architecture*

Figure 2.1: Bluetooth core system architecture

Figure 2.1 on page 31 shows the Core blocks, each with its associated communication protocol. Link Manager, Link Controller and BR/EDR Radio blocks comprise a BR/EDR Controller. An AMP PAL, AMP MAC, and AMP PHY comprise an AMP Controller. Link Manager, Link Controller and LE Radio blocks comprise an LE Controller. L2CAP, SDP and GAP blocks comprise a BR/EDR Host. L2CAP, SMP, Attribute protocol, GAP and Generic Attribute Profile (GATT) blocks comprise an LE Host. A BR/EDR/LE Host combines the set of blocks from each respective Host. This is a common implementation involving

a standard physical communication interface between the Controller and the Host. Although this interface is optional the architecture is designed to allow for its existence and characteristics. The Bluetooth specification enables interoperability between independent Bluetooth systems by defining the protocol messages exchanged between equivalent layers, and also interoperability between independent Bluetooth subsystems by defining a common interface between Bluetooth controllers and Bluetooth hosts.

A number of functional blocks and the path of services and data between them are shown. The functional blocks shown in the diagram are informative; in general the Bluetooth specification does not define the details of implementations except where this is required for interoperability. Thus the functional blocks in [Figure 2.1 on page 31](#) are shown in order to aid description of the system behavior. An implementation may be different from the system shown in [Figure 2.1 on page 31](#).

Standard interactions are defined for all inter-device operation, where Bluetooth devices exchange protocol signaling according to the Bluetooth specification. The Bluetooth core system protocols are the Radio (PHY) protocol, Link Control (LC) and Link Manager (LM) protocol or Link Layer (LL) protocol, AMP PAL, Logical Link Control and Adaptation protocol (L2CAP), and AMP Manager Protocol, all of which are fully defined in subsequent parts of the Bluetooth specification. In addition, the Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) and the Attribute Protocol (ATT) are service layer protocols that may be required by some Bluetooth applications.

The Bluetooth core system offers services through a number of service access points that are shown in the diagram as ellipses. These services consist of the basic primitives that control the Bluetooth core system. The services can be split into three types. There are device control services that modify the behavior and modes of a Bluetooth device, transport control services that create, modify and release traffic bearers (channels and links), and data services that are used to submit data for transmission over traffic bearers. It is common to consider the first two as belonging to the C-plane and the last as belonging to the U-plane.

A service interface to the Bluetooth Controller subsystem is defined such that the Primary Controller may be considered a standard part. In this configuration the Bluetooth Controller operates the lowest four layers. The Bluetooth Host operates the L2CAP layer and other higher layers. The standard interface is called the Host Controller Interface (HCI) and its service access points are represented by the ellipses on the upper edge of the Bluetooth controller subsystem in [Figure 2.1 on page 31](#). Implementation of this standard service interface is optional.

As the Bluetooth architecture is defined with the possibility of separate host and controller(s) communicating through one or more HCI transports, a number of general assumptions are made. Bluetooth controllers are assumed to have limited data buffering capabilities in comparison with the host. Therefore

the L2CAP layer is expected to carry out some simple resource management when submitting L2CAP PDUs to the controller for transport to a peer device. This includes segmentation of L2CAP SDUs into more manageable PDUs and then the fragmentation of PDUs into start and continuation packets of a size suitable for the controller buffers, and management of the use of controller buffers to ensure availability for channels with Quality of Service (QoS) commitments.

The BR/EDR Baseband, LE Link Layer, and AMP MAC layers provides the basic acknowledgement/repeat request (ARQ) protocol in Bluetooth. The L2CAP layer can optionally provide a further error detection and retransmission to the L2CAP PDUs. This feature is recommended for applications with requirements for a low probability of undetected errors in the user data. A further optional feature of L2CAP is a window-based flow control that can be used to manage buffer allocation in the receiving device. Both of these optional features augment the QoS performance in certain scenarios. Not all of the L2CAP capabilities are available when using the LE system.

Although these assumptions may not be required for embedded Bluetooth implementations that combine all layers in a single system, the general architectural and QoS models are defined with these assumptions in mind, in effect a lowest common denominator.

Automated conformance testing of implementations of the Bluetooth core system is required. This is achieved by allowing the tester to control the implementation through the PHY interface, and test interfaces such as Direct Test Mode (DTM), Generic Test Methodology (GTM), Test Control Interface (TCI), and test commands and events over HCI which are only required for conformance testing.

The tester exchanges with the Implementation Under Test (IUT) through the PHY interface to ensure the correct responses to requests from remote devices. The tester controls the IUT through HCI, DTM, GTM, or TCI to cause the IUT to originate exchanges through the PHY interface so that these can also be verified as conformant.

The TCI uses a different command-set (service interface) for the testing of each architectural layer and protocol. A subset of the HCI command-set is used as the TCI service interface for each of the layers and protocols within the BR/EDR Controller subsystem. A separate service interface is used for testing the L2CAP layer and protocol. As an L2CAP service interface is not defined in the Bluetooth core specification it is defined separately in the Test Control Interface specification. Implementation of the L2CAP service interface is only required for conformance testing.

## 2.1 CORE ARCHITECTURAL BLOCKS

This section describes the function and responsibility of each of the blocks shown in [Figure 2.1 on page 31](#). An implementation is not required to follow the architecture described above, though every implementation shall conform to the protocol specifications described in subsequent parts of the Bluetooth specification, and shall implement the behavioral aspects of the system outlined below and specified in subsequent parts of the Bluetooth specification.

### 2.1.1 Host Architectural Blocks

#### 2.1.1.1 Channel Manager

The channel manager is responsible for creating, managing and closing L2CAP channels for the transport of service protocols and application data streams. The channel manager uses the L2CAP protocol to interact with a channel manager on a remote (peer) device to create these L2CAP channels and connect their endpoints to the appropriate entities. The channel manager interacts with its local link manager or an AMP PAL to create new logical links (if necessary) and to configure these links to provide the required quality of service for the type of data being transported.

#### 2.1.1.2 L2CAP Resource Manager

The L2CAP resource manager block is responsible for managing the ordering of submission of PDU fragments to the baseband and some relative scheduling between channels to ensure that L2CAP channels with QoS commitments are not denied access to the physical channel due to Controller resource exhaustion. This is required because the architectural model does not assume that a Controller has limitless buffering, or that the HCI is a pipe of infinite bandwidth.

L2CAP Resource Managers may also carry out traffic conformance policing to ensure that applications are submitting L2CAP SDUs within the bounds of their negotiated QoS settings. The general Bluetooth data transport model assumes well-behaved applications, and does not define how an implementation is expected to deal with this problem.

#### 2.1.1.3 Security Manager Protocol

The Security Manager Protocol (SMP) is the peer-to-peer protocol used to generate encryption keys and identity keys. The protocol operates over a dedicated fixed L2CAP channel. The SMP block also manages storage of the encryption keys and identity keys and is responsible for generating random addresses and resolving random addresses to known device identities. The SMP block interfaces directly with the controller to provide stored keys used for encryption and authentication during the encryption or pairing procedures.

This block is only used in LE systems. Similar functionality in the BR/EDR system is contained in the Link Manager block in the Controller. SMP functionality is in the Host on LE systems to reduce the implementation cost of the LE only controllers.

#### 2.1.1.4 Attribute Protocol

The Attribute Protocol (ATT) block implements the peer-to-peer protocol between an attribute server and an attribute client. The ATT client communicates with an ATT server on a remote device over a dedicated fixed L2CAP channel. The ATT client sends commands, requests, and confirmations to the ATT server. The ATT server sends responses, notifications and indications to the client. These ATT client commands and requests provide a means to read and write values of attributes on a peer device with an ATT server.

#### 2.1.1.5 AMP Manager Protocol

The AMP manager is a layer that uses L2CAP to communicate with a peer AMP Manager on a remote device. It also interfaces directly with the AMP PAL for AMP control purposes. The AMP manager is responsible for discovering remote AMP(s) and determining their availability. It also collects information about remote AMP(s). This information is used to set up and manage AMP physical links. The AMP manager uses a dedicated L2CAP signaling channel to communicate with remote AMP manager(s).

#### 2.1.1.6 Generic Attribute Profile

The Generic Attribute Profile (GATT) block represents the functionality of the attribute server and, optionally, the attribute client. The profile describes the hierarchy of services, characteristics and attributes used in the attribute server. The block provides interfaces for discovering, reading, writing and indicating of service characteristics and attributes. GATT is used on LE devices for LE profile service discovery.

#### 2.1.1.7 Generic Access Profile

The Generic Access Profile (GAP) block represents the base functionality common to all Bluetooth devices such as modes and access procedures used by the transports, protocols and application profiles. GAP services include device discovery, connection modes, security, authentication, association models and service discovery.

### **2.1.2 BR/EDR/LE Controller Architectural Blocks**

In implementations where the BR/EDR and LE systems are combined, the architectural blocks may be shared between systems or each system may have their own instantiation of the block.

#### 2.1.2.1 Device Manager

The device manager is the functional block in the baseband that controls the general behavior of the Bluetooth device. It is responsible for all operations of the Bluetooth system that are not directly related to data transport, such as

inquiring for the presence of nearby Bluetooth devices, connecting to Bluetooth devices, or making the local Bluetooth device discoverable or connectable by other devices.

The device manager requests access to the transport medium from the baseband resource controller in order to carry out its functions.

The device manager also controls local device behavior implied by a number of the HCI commands, such as managing the device local name, any stored link keys, and other functionality.

#### 2.1.2.2 Link Manager

The link manager is responsible for the creation, modification and release of logical links (and, if required, their associated logical transports), as well as the update of parameters related to physical links between devices. The link manager achieves this by communicating with the link manager in remote Bluetooth devices using the Link Manager Protocol (LMP) in BR/EDR and the Link Layer Protocol (LL) in LE.

The LM or LL protocol allows the creation of new logical links and logical transports between devices when required, as well as the general control of link and transport attributes such as the enabling of encryption on the logical transport, the adapting of transmit power in BR/EDR on the physical link, or the adjustment of QoS settings in BR/EDR for a logical link.

#### 2.1.2.3 Baseband Resource Manager

The baseband resource manager is responsible for all access to the radio medium. It has two main functions. At its heart is a scheduler that grants time on the physical channels to all of the entities that have negotiated an access contract. The other main function is to negotiate access contracts with these entities. An access contract is effectively a commitment to deliver a certain QoS that is required in order to provide a user application with an expected performance.

The access contract and scheduling function must take account of any behavior that requires use of the Primary Controller. This includes (for example) the normal exchange of data between connected devices over logical links, and logical transports, as well as the use of the radio medium to carry out inquiries, make connections, be discoverable or connectable, or to take readings from unused carriers during the use of adaptive frequency hopping mode.

In some cases in BR/EDR systems the scheduling of a logical link results in changing a logical link to a different physical channel from the one that was previously used. This may be (for example) due to involvement in scatternet, a periodic inquiry function, or page scanning. When the physical channels are not time slot aligned, then the resource manager also accounts for the realignment time between slots on the original physical channel and slots on the new

physical channel. In some cases the slots will be naturally aligned due to the same device clock being used as a reference for both physical channels.

#### 2.1.2.4 Link Controller

The link controller is responsible for the encoding and decoding of Bluetooth packets from the data payload and parameters related to the physical channel, logical transport and logical link.

The link controller carries out the link control protocol signaling in BR/EDR and link layer protocol in LE (in close conjunction with the scheduling function of the resource manager), which is used to communicate flow control and acknowledgement and retransmission request signals. The interpretation of these signals is a characteristic of the logical transport associated with the baseband packet. Interpretation and control of the link control signaling is normally associated with the resource manager's scheduler.

#### 2.1.2.5 PHY

The PHY block is responsible for transmitting and receiving packets of information on the physical channel. A control path between the baseband and the PHY block allows the baseband block to control the timing and frequency carrier of the PHY block. The PHY block transforms a stream of data to and from the physical channel and the baseband into required formats.

### **2.1.3 AMP Controller architectural blocks**

#### 2.1.3.1 AMP HCI

The AMP HCI is the logical interface between an AMP Controller and Host (L2CAP and AMP manager). HCI is an optional layer used when the Host and AMP Controller(s) are physically separated. Support for AMPs requires additional HCI commands and events. These new commands and events are related to AMP physical and logical link management, QoS, as well as flow control.

There is one logical instantiation of an HCI per AMP Controller, and another logical instantiation for the BR/EDR Controller. The physical HCI transport layer manages the multiplexing of several Controllers over the same physical transport bus in cases where multiple Controllers exist in a single physical unit.

### 2.1.3.2 AMP PAL

The AMP PAL is the AMP layer interfacing the AMP MAC with the Host (L2CAP and AMP Manager). It translates commands from the Host into the specific MAC service primitives and primitives into commands, and it translates primitives from the AMP MAC into understandable event(s) for the Host. The AMP PAL provides support for AMP channel management, data traffic according to specified flow specifications, and power efficiency.

There is not a requirement that the AMP PAL has exclusive access to the AMP itself. Implementers may choose to allow other protocols to be concurrent clients of the AMP. Specific mechanisms for allowing other protocols to share access to the AMP are outside the scope of this specification.

A generic PAL architecture is shown in [Figure 2.2](#).

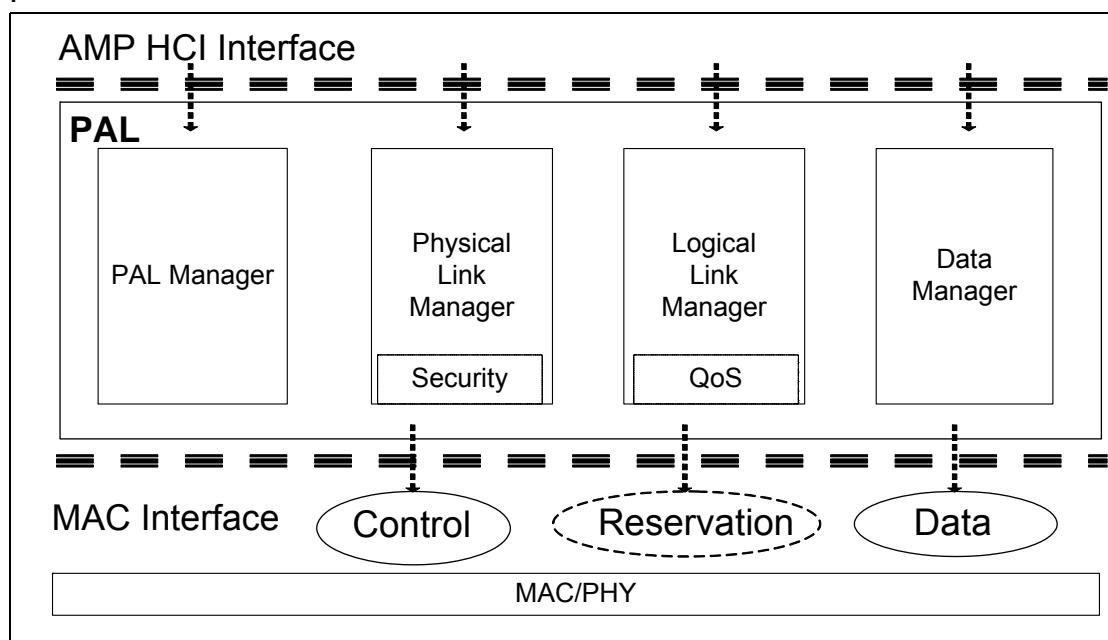


Figure 2.2: Generic PAL architecture

Capabilities of the PAL and the underlying MAC/PHY are exchanged via the **AMP\_Info** and **AMP\_Assoc** structures by the AMP Manager Protocol. The **AMP\_Info** contains generic capabilities of the PAL such as bandwidth availability, maximum PDU size, PAL capabilities, length of the **AMP\_Assoc** and flush timeout information. The contents of the **AMP\_Assoc** are dependent on the PAL and are related to the underlying MAC/PHY.

### 2.1.3.3 AMP MAC

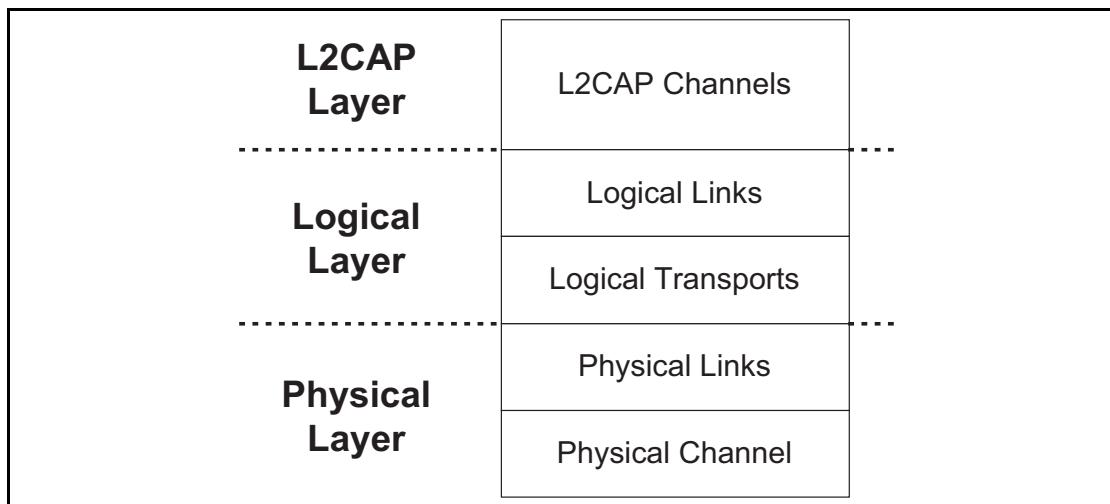
The AMP MAC is the MAC layer as defined in the IEEE 802 reference layer model. It provides services such as addressing and mechanisms to control and access channels. The AMP MAC is in between AMP PHY and AMP PAL layers.

### 2.1.3.4 AMP PHY

The AMP PHY is the AMP physical layer.

### 3 DATA TRANSPORT ARCHITECTURE

The Bluetooth data transport system follows a layered architecture. This description of the Bluetooth system describes the Bluetooth core transport layers up to and including L2CAP channels. All Bluetooth operational modes follow the same generic transport architecture, which is shown in [Figure 3.1 on page 39](#).



*Figure 3.1: Bluetooth generic data transport architecture*

For efficiency and legacy reasons, the Bluetooth transport architecture includes a sub-division of the logical layer, distinguishing between logical links and logical transports. This sub-division provides a general (and commonly understood) concept of a logical link that provides an independent transport between two or more devices. The logical transport sub-layer is required to describe the inter-dependence between some of the logical link types (mainly for reasons of legacy behavior).

Prior to Version 1.2, the Bluetooth Core specification described the ACL and SCO links as physical links. With the addition of Extended SCO (eSCO) and for future expansion it is better to consider these as logical transport types, which more accurately encapsulates their purpose. However, they are not as independent as might be desired, due to their shared use of resources such as the LT\_ADDR and acknowledgement/repeat request (ARQ) scheme. Hence the architecture is incapable of representing these logical transports with a single transport layer. The additional logical transport layer goes some way towards describing this behavior.

### 3.1 CORE TRAFFIC BEARERS

The Bluetooth core system provides a number of standard traffic bearers for the transport of service protocol and application data. These are shown in [Figure 3.2 on page 40](#) below (for ease of representation this is shown with higher layers to the left and lower layers to the right).

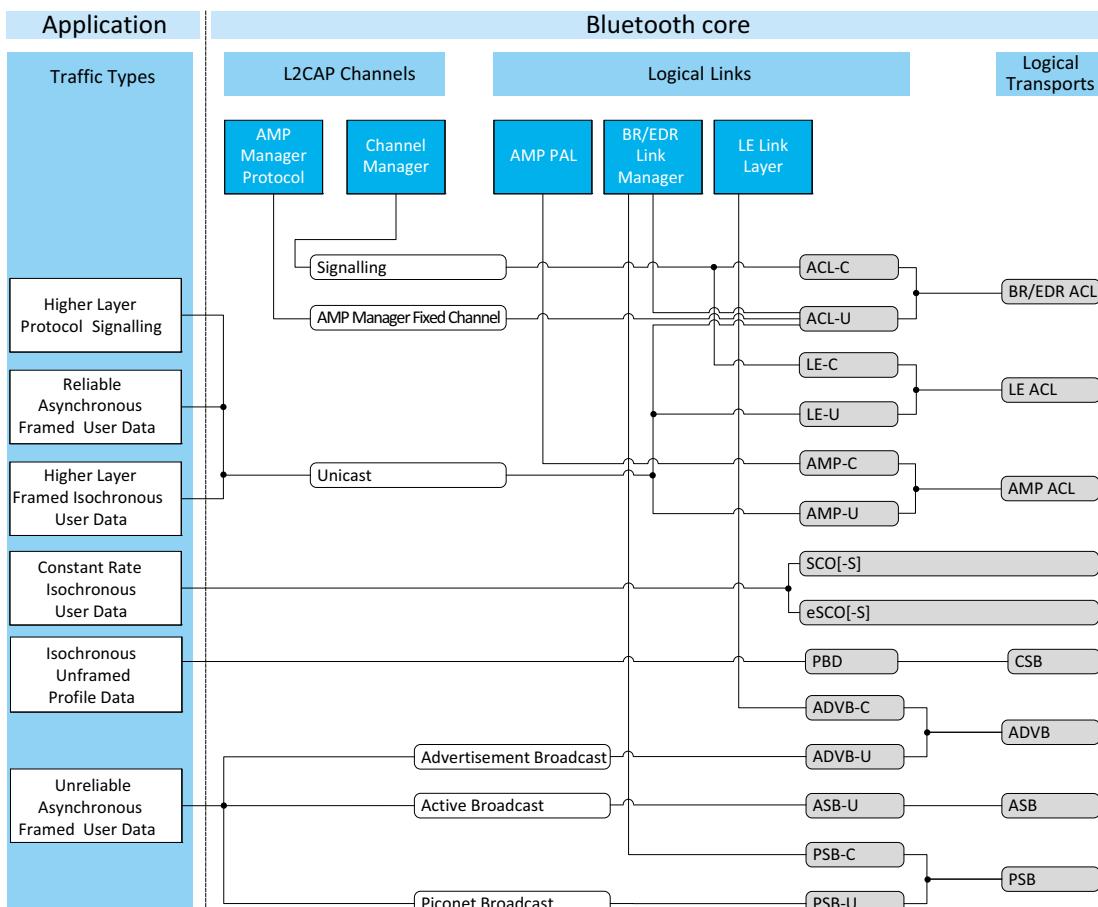


Figure 3.2: Bluetooth traffic bearers

The core traffic bearers that are available to applications are shown in [Figure 3.2 on page 40](#) as the shaded rounded rectangles. The architectural layers that are defined to provide these services are described in [Section 2 on page 30](#). A number of data traffic types are shown on the left of the diagram linked to the traffic bearers that are typically suitable for transporting that type of data traffic.

The logical links are named using the names of the associated logical transport and a suffix that indicates the type of data that is transported. (C for control links carrying LMP or LL messages, U for L2CAP links carrying user data (L2CAP PDUs) and S for stream links carrying unformatted synchronous or isochronous data.) It is common for the suffix to be removed from the logical link without introducing ambiguity, thus a reference to the default ACL logical transport can be resolved to mean the ACL-C logical link in cases where the LMP protocol is being discussed, the LE-C logical link in cases where LL proto-

col is being discussed, the AMP-C logical link in cases where a PAL protocol is being discussed, or the ACL-U,LE-U, or AMP-U logical links when the L2CAP layer is being discussed.

The mapping of application traffic types to Bluetooth core traffic bearers in [Figure 3.2 on page 40](#) is based on matching the traffic characteristics with the bearer characteristics. It is recommended to use these mappings as they provide the most natural and efficient method of transporting the data with its given characteristics.

However, an application (or an implementation of the Bluetooth core system) may choose to use a different traffic bearer, or a different mapping to achieve a similar result. For example, in a BR/EDR piconet with only one slave, the master may choose to transport L2CAP broadcasts over the ACL-U logical link rather than over the ASB-U or PSB-U logical links. This will probably be more efficient in terms of bandwidth (if the physical channel quality is not too degraded). Use of alternative transport paths to those in [Figure 3.2 on page 40](#) is only acceptable if the characteristics of the application traffic type are preserved.

[Figure 3.2 on page 40](#) shows a number of application traffic types. These are used to classify the types of data that may be submitted to the Bluetooth core system. The original data traffic type may not be the same as the type that is submitted to the Bluetooth core system if an intervening process modifies it. For example, video data is generated at a constant rate but an intermediate coding process may alter this to variable rate, e.g. by MPEG4 encoding. For the purposes of the Bluetooth core system, only the characteristic of the submitted data is of interest.

### 3.1.1 Framed Data Traffic

The L2CAP layer services provide a frame-oriented transport for asynchronous and isochronous user data. The application submits data to this service in variable-sized frames (up to a negotiated maximum for the channel) and these frames are delivered in the same form to the corresponding application on the remote device. There is no requirement for the application to insert additional framing information into the data, although it may do so if this is required (such framing is invisible to the Bluetooth core system).

Connection-oriented L2CAP channels may be created for transport of unicast (point-to-point) data between two Bluetooth devices. Connection-oriented channels provide a context within which specific properties may be applied to data transported on the channel. For example, quality of service parameters or flow and error control modes may be applied. Connection-oriented L2CAP channels are created using the L2CAP connection procedure.

A connectionless BR/EDR L2CAP channel exists for broadcasting data or for transport of unicast data. In the case of piconet topologies the master device is always the source of broadcast data and the slave device(s) are the recipients. Broadcast traffic on the connectionless L2CAP channel is uni-directional. Uni-

cast data sent on the connectionless L2CAP channels may be uni-directional or bi-directional. Unicast data sent on the L2CAP connectionless channel provides an alternate mechanism to send data with the same level of reliability as an L2CAP connection-oriented channel operating in Basic mode but without the additional latency incurred by opening an L2CAP connection-oriented channel. LE L2CAP connectionless channels are not supported.

BR/EDR L2CAP channels have an associated QoS setting that defines constraints on the delivery of the frames of data. These QoS settings may be used to indicate (for example) that the data is isochronous, and therefore has a limited lifetime after which it becomes invalid, or that the data should be delivered within a given time period, or that the data is reliable and should be delivered without error, however long this takes.

Some L2CAP channels are fixed channels created when the ACL-U and/or LE-U logical links are established. These fixed channels have fixed channel identifiers and fixed configurations and do not permit negotiation of the configuration after they are created. These fixed channels are used for BR/EDR and LE L2CAP signaling (ACL-U or LE-U), connectionless channel (ACL-U), AMP manager protocol (ACL-U), Security Manager Protocol (LE-U), Attribute Protocol (ACL-U or LE-U) and AMP Test Manager (ACL-U).

The L2CAP channel manager is responsible for arranging to transport the L2CAP channel data frames on an appropriate baseband logical link, possibly multiplexing this onto the baseband logical link with other L2CAP channels with similar characteristics.

### 3.1.2 Unframed Data Traffic

If the application does not require delivery of data in frames, possibly because it includes in-stream framing, or because the data is a pure stream, then it may avoid the use of L2CAP channels and make direct use of a baseband logical link.

The Bluetooth core system supports the direct transport of application data that is isochronous and of a constant rate (either bit-rate, or frame-rate for pre-framed data), using a SCO-S or eSCO-S logical link. These logical links reserve physical channel bandwidth and provide a constant rate transport locked to the piconet clock. Data is transported in fixed size packets at fixed intervals with both of these parameters negotiated during channel establishment. eSCO links provide a greater choice of bit-rates and also provide greater reliability by using limited retransmission in case of error. Enhanced Data Rate operation is supported for eSCO, but not for SCO logical transports. SCO and eSCO logical transports do not support multiplexed logical links or any further layering within the Bluetooth core. An application may choose to layer a number of streams within the submitted SCO/eSCO stream, provided that the submitted stream is, or has the appearance of being, a constant rate stream.

The Bluetooth core system also supports the direct transport of application data using a Profile Broadcast Data (PBD) logical link. This logical link is similar

to SCO-S and eSCO-S since it reserves physical channel bandwidth, provides a constant rate transport locked to the piconet clock, and transports data at fixed intervals. It does not support multiplexed logical links or any further layering within the Bluetooth core but, unlike SCO-S and eSCO-S, it supports broadcasting data from a single transmitter to many receivers.

The application chooses the most appropriate type of logical link from those available at the baseband, and creates and configures it to transport the data stream, and releases it when completed. (The application will normally also use a framed L2CAP unicast channel to transport its C-plane information to the peer application on the remote device.)

If the application data is isochronous and of a variable rate, then this may only be carried by the L2CAP unicast channel, and hence will be treated as framed data.

Unframed data traffic is not supported in the LE system.

### 3.1.3 Reliability of traffic bearers

#### 3.1.3.1 BR/EDR Reliability

Bluetooth is a wireless communications system. In poor RF environments, this system should be considered inherently unreliable. To counteract this the system provides levels of protection at each layer. The baseband packet header uses forward error correcting (FEC) coding to allow error correction by the receiver and a header error check (HEC) to detect errors remaining after correction. Certain Baseband packet types include FEC for the payload. Furthermore, some Baseband packet types include a cyclic redundancy error check (CRC).

On ACL logical transports the results of the error detection algorithm are used to drive a simple ARQ protocol. This provides an enhanced reliability by re-transmitting packets that do not pass the receiver's error checking algorithm. It is possible to modify this scheme to support latency-sensitive packets by discarding an unsuccessfully transmitted packet at the transmitter if the packet's useful life has expired. eSCO links use a modified version of this scheme to improve reliability by allowing a limited number of retransmissions.

The resulting reliability gained by this ARQ scheme is only as dependable as the ability of the HEC and CRC codes to detect errors. In most cases this is sufficient, however it has been shown that for the longer packet types the probability of an undetected error is too high to support typical applications, especially those with a large amount of data being transferred.

The L2CAP layer provides an additional level of error control that is designed to detect the occasional undetected errors in the baseband layer and request retransmission of the affected data. This provides the level of reliability required by typical Bluetooth applications.

Broadcast links have no feedback route, and are unable to use the ARQ scheme (although the receiver is still able to detect errors in received packets). Instead each packet is transmitted several times in the hope that the receiver is able to receive at least one of the copies successfully. Despite this approach there are still no guarantees of successful receipt, and so these links are considered unreliable.

In summary, if a link or channel is characterized as reliable this means that the receiver is capable of detecting errors in received packets and requesting retransmission until the errors are removed. Due to the error detection system used some residual (undetected) errors may still remain in the received data. For L2CAP channels the level of these is comparable to other communication systems, although for logical links the residual error level is somewhat higher.

The transmitter may remove packets from the transmit queue such that the receiver does not receive all the packets in the sequence. If this happens detection of the missing packets is delegated to the L2CAP layer.

On an unreliable link the receiver is capable of detecting errors in received packets but cannot request retransmission. The packets passed on by the receiver may be without error, but there is no guarantee that all packets in the sequence are received. Hence the link is considered fundamentally unreliable. There are limited uses for such links, and these uses are normally dependent on the continuous repetition of data from the higher layers while it is valid.

Stream links have a reliability characteristic somewhere between a reliable and an unreliable link, depending on the current operating conditions.

### 3.1.3.2 LE reliability

Like BR/EDR, in poor RF environments, the LE system should be considered inherently unreliable. To counteract this, the system provides levels of protection at each layer. The LL packet uses a 24-bit cyclic redundancy error check (CRC) to cover the contents of the packet payload. If the CRC verification fails on the packet payload, the packet is not acknowledged by the receiver and the packet gets retransmitted by the sender.

Broadcast links have no feedback route, and are unable to use the acknowledgement scheme (although the receiver is still able to detect errors in received packets). Instead, each packet is transmitted several times to increase the probability that the receiver is able to receive at least one of the copies successfully. Despite this approach there are still no guarantees of successful receipt, and so these links are considered unreliable.

In summary, if a link or channel is characterized as reliable this means that the receiver is capable of detecting errors in received packets and requesting retransmission until the errors are removed.



The transmitter may remove packets from the transmit queue such that the receiver does not receive all the packets in the sequence. If this happens detection of the missing packets is delegated to the L2CAP layer.

On an unreliable link the receiver is capable of detecting errors in received packets but cannot request retransmission. The packets passed on by the receiver may be without error, but there is no guarantee that all packets in the sequence are received. Hence the link is considered fundamentally unreliable. There are limited uses for such links, and these uses are normally dependent on the continuous repetition of data from the higher layers while it is valid.

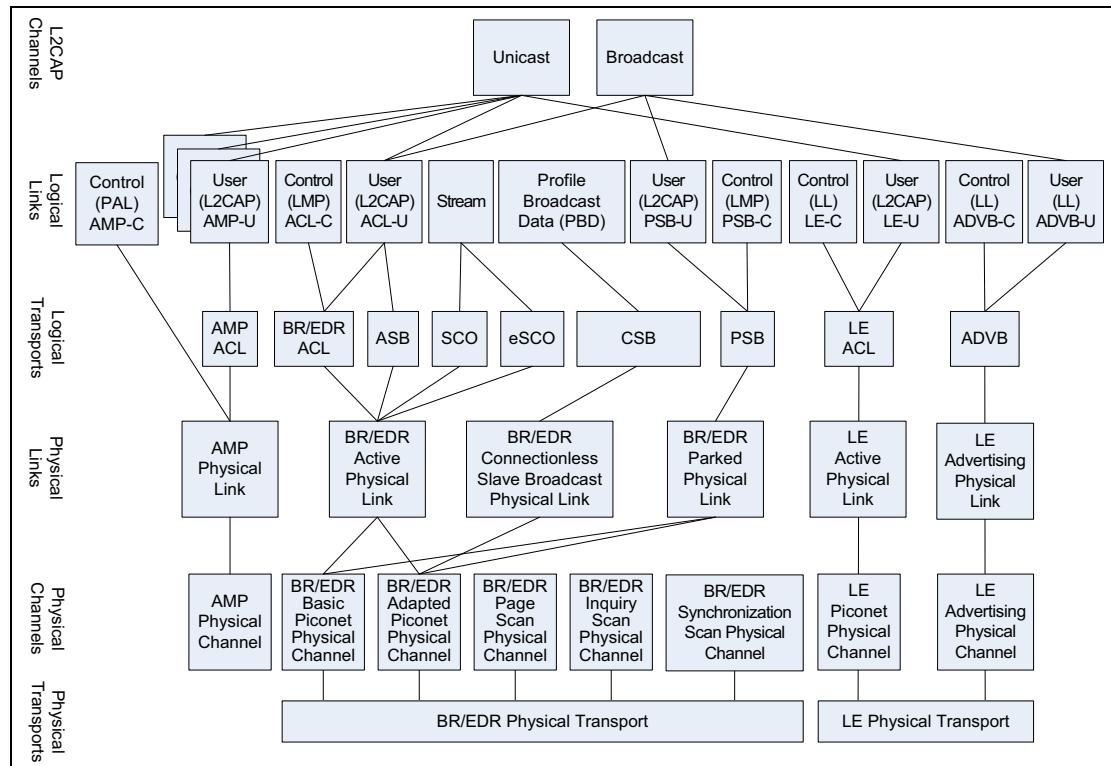
### 3.1.3.3 AMP Reliability

The reliability of each AMP depends on the underlying MAC/PHY technology. Some AMPs only flush user traffic when marked as flushable whereas other AMPs can flush user traffic.

The Bluetooth Core maintains a level of reliability for protocols and profiles above the Core by mandating the use of Enhanced Retransmission Mode or Streaming Mode for any L2CAP channel used over the AMP.

## 3.2 TRANSPORT ARCHITECTURE ENTITIES

The Bluetooth transport architecture entities are shown in [Figure 3.3 on page 46](#) and are described from the lowest layer upwards in the subsequent sections.



*Figure 3.3: Overview of transport architecture entities and hierarchy*

The BR/EDR Physical Transport encapsulates the BR/EDR Physical Channels.  
The LE Physical Transport encapsulates the LE Physical Channels.

### 3.2.1 BR/EDR Generic Packet Structure

The general packet structure nearly reflects the architectural layers found in the Bluetooth BR/EDR system. The BR/EDR packet structure is designed for optimal use in normal operation. It is shown in [Figure 3.4 on page 47](#).

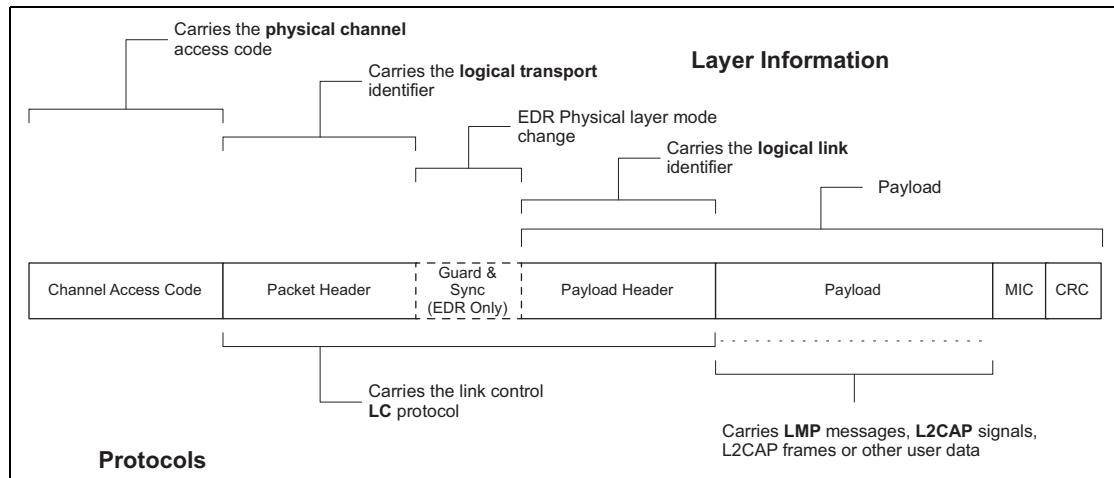


Figure 3.4: BR/EDR packet structure

Packets normally only include the fields that are necessary to represent the layers required by the transaction. Thus a simple inquiry request over an inquiry scan physical channel does not create or require a logical link or higher layer and therefore consists only of the channel access code (associated with the physical channel).

All packets include the channel access code. This is used to identify communications on a particular physical channel, and to exclude or ignore packets on a different physical channel that happens to be using the same RF carrier in physical proximity.

There is no direct field within the BR/EDR packet structure that represents or contains information relating to physical links. This information is implied by the combination of the logical transport address (LT\_ADDR) carried in the packet header and the channel access code (CAC).

Most BR/EDR packets include a packet header. The packet header is always present in packets transmitted on physical channels that support physical links, logical transports and logical links. The packet header carries the LT\_ADDR, which is used by each receiving device to determine if the packet is addressed to the device and is used to route the packet internally.

The BR/EDR packet header also carries part of the link control (LC) protocol that is operated per logical transport (except for ACL and SCO transports that operate a shared LC protocol carried on either logical transport).

The Enhanced Data Rate (EDR) packets have a guard time and synchronization sequence before the payload. This is a field used for physical layer change of modulation scheme.

The payload header is present in all packets on logical transports that support multiple logical links. The payload header includes a logical link identifier field used for routing the payload, and a field indicating the length of the payload body. Some packet types also include a CRC at the end of the packet payload that is used to detect most errors in received packets. When AES-CCM encryption is enabled, ACL packets include a Message Integrity Check (MIC) just prior to the CRC field.

EDR packets have a trailer after the CRC.

The packet payload body is used to transport the user data. The interpretation of this data is dependent on the logical transport and logical link identifiers. For ACL logical transports Link Manager Protocol (LMP) messages and L2CAP signals are transported in the packet payload body, along with general user data from applications.

For SCO, eSCO, and CSB logical transports the payload body contains the user data for the logical link.

### 3.2.2 LE Generic Packet Structure

The general structure of the link layer air interface packet closely reflects the architectural layers found in the LE system. The LE packet structure is designed for optimal use in normal operation. It is shown in [Figure 3.5](#).

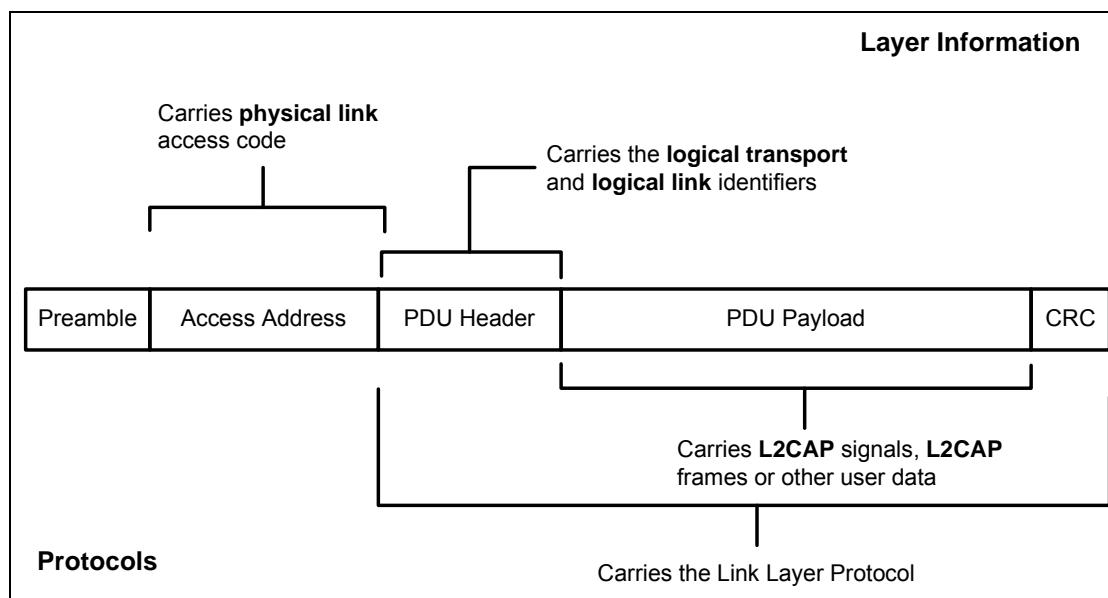


Figure 3.5: LE packet structure

The physical channel identifier is not contained in the link layer air interface packet. The physical channel identifiers are either fixed or are determined at connection setup. All LE packets include the Access Address. This is used to identify communications on a physical link, and to exclude or ignore packets on different physical links that are using the same PHY channels in physical proximity. The Access Address determines whether the packet is directed to the advertising physical link or to an active physical link to a device. All LE advertising physical links use a fixed Access Address. LE active physical links use a randomly generated 32-bit value as their Access Address. This provides an high number of active devices that can be addressed in an LE piconet.

All LE packets include a PDU header. The PDU header determines the type of advertisement broadcast or logical link carried over the physical channel.

For advertising channel PDUs, the PDU header contains the type of advertisement payload, the device address type for addresses contained in the advertisement and advertising channel PDU payload length. Most advertising channel PDU payloads contain the advertiser's address and advertising data. One advertising channel PDU payload only contains the advertiser's device address and the initiator's device address in which the advertisement is directed. Advertising channel PDUs with scan requests payloads contain the scanner's device address and the advertiser's device address. Advertising channel PDUs with scan responses contain advertiser's device address and the scan response data. Advertising channel PDUs with connection request payloads contain the initiator's device address, advertiser's device address and connection setup parameters.

For data channel PDUs, the PDU header contains the Logical Link Identifier (LLID), the Next Expected Sequence Number (NESN), Sequence Number (SN), More Data (MD) and payload length. For data channel PDUs that contain control commands, the data channel PDU payload contains a command opcode and control data that is specific to the command. There is an optional Message Integrity Check (MIC) value that is used to authenticate the data PDU. For data channel PDUs that are data, the data channel PDU payload contains L2CAP data.

### 3.3 PHYSICAL CHANNELS

The lowest architectural layer in the Bluetooth system is the physical channel. A number of types of physical channel are defined. All Bluetooth physical channels are characterized by a PHY frequency combined with temporal parameters and restricted by spatial considerations. For the basic and adapted piconet physical channels frequency hopping is used to change frequency periodically to reduce the effects of interference and for regulatory reasons.

The Bluetooth BR/EDR system and LE system differ slightly in the way they use physical channels.

#### 3.3.1 BR/EDR Physical Channels

In the BR/EDR core system, peer devices use a shared physical channel for communication. To achieve this their transceivers need to be tuned to the same PHY frequency at the same time, and they need to be within a nominal range of each other.

Given that the number of RF carriers is limited and that many Bluetooth devices may be operating independently within the same spatial and temporal area there is a strong likelihood of two independent Bluetooth devices having their transceivers tuned to the same RF carrier, resulting in a physical channel collision. To mitigate the unwanted effects of this collision each transmission on a physical channel starts with an access code that is used as a correlation code by devices tuned to the physical channel. This channel access code is a property of the physical channel. The access code is present at the start of every transmitted packet.

Four BR/EDR channels are defined. Each is optimized and used for a different purpose. Two of these physical channels (the basic piconet channel and adapted piconet channel) are used for communication between connected devices and are associated with a specific piconet. The remaining BR/EDR physical channels are used for discovering Bluetooth devices and for connecting Bluetooth devices. In BR/EDR this is accomplished through the use of inquiry scan and page scan channels respectively.

A Bluetooth device can only use one BR/EDR physical channel at any given time. In order to support multiple concurrent operations the device uses time-division multiplexing between the channels. In this way a Bluetooth device can appear to operate simultaneously in several piconets, as well as being discoverable and connectable.

Whenever a Bluetooth device is synchronized to the timing, frequency and access code of a physical channel it is said to be ‘connected’ to this channel (whether or not it is actively involved in communications over the channel). The Bluetooth specification assumes that a device is only capable of connecting to one physical channel at any time. Advanced devices may be capable of connecting simultaneously to more than one physical channel, but the specification does not assume that this is possible.

### 3.3.1.1 Basic Piconet Channel

#### 3.3.1.1.1 Overview

The basic piconet channel is used for communication between connected devices during normal operation.

#### 3.3.1.1.2 Characteristics

The basic piconet channel is characterized by a pseudo-random sequence hopping through the PHY channels. The hopping sequence is unique for the piconet and is determined by the Bluetooth device address of the master. The phase in the hopping sequence is determined by the Bluetooth clock of the master. All Bluetooth devices participating in the piconet are time- and hop-synchronized to the channel.

The channel is divided into time slots where each slot corresponds to an PHY hop frequency. Consecutive hops correspond to different PHY hop frequencies. The time slots are numbered according to the Bluetooth clock of the piconet master. Packets are transmitted by Bluetooth devices participating in the piconet aligned to start at a slot boundary. Each packet starts with the channel access code, which is derived from the Bluetooth device address of the piconet master.

On the basic piconet channel the master controls access to the channel. The master starts its transmission in even-numbered time slots only. Packets transmitted by the master are aligned with the slot start and define the piconet timing. Packets transmitted by the master may occupy up to five time slots depending on the packet type.

Each master transmission is a packet carrying information on one of the logical transports. Slave devices may transmit on the physical channel in response. The characteristics of the response are defined by the logical transport that is addressed.

For example, on the asynchronous connection-oriented logical transport (ACL), the addressed slave device responds by transmitting a packet containing information for the same logical transport that is nominally aligned with the next (odd-numbered) slot start. Such a packet may occupy up to five time slots, depending on the packet type. On a broadcast logical transport no slaves are allowed to respond.

A special characteristic of the basic piconet physical channel is the use of some reserved slots to transmit a beacon train. The beacon train is only used if the piconet physical channel has parked slaves connected to it. In this situation the master transmits a packet in the reserved beacon train slots (these packets are used by the slave to resynchronize to the piconet physical channel). The master may transmit packets from any logical transport onto these slots, providing there is a transmission starting in each of the slots. In the case where there is information from the parked slave broadcast (PSB) logical transport to

be transmitted then this is transmitted in the beacon train slots and takes priority over any other logical transport.

### 3.3.1.1.3 Topology

A basic piconet channel may be shared by any number of Bluetooth devices, limited only by the resources available on the piconet master device. Only one device is the piconet master, all others being piconet slaves. All communication is between the master and slave devices. There is no direct communication between slave devices on the piconet channel.

There is, however, a limitation on the number of logical transports that can be supported within a piconet. This means that although there is no theoretical limit to the number of Bluetooth devices that share a channel there is a limit to the number of these devices that can be actively involved in exchanging data with the master.

### 3.3.1.1.4 Supported layers

The basic piconet channel supports a number of physical links, logical transports, logical links and L2CAP channels used for general purpose communications.

## 3.3.1.2 Adapted Piconet Channel

### 3.3.1.2.1 Overview

The adapted piconet channel differs from the basic piconet channel in two ways. First, the frequency on which a slave transmits is the same as the frequency used by its master in the preceding transmission. In other words the frequency is not recomputed between master and subsequent slave packets. Second, the adapted piconet channel may be based on fewer than the full 79 frequencies. A number of frequencies may be excluded from the hopping pattern by being marked as “unused”. The remainder of the 79 frequencies are included. The two sequences are the same except that whenever the basic pseudo-random hopping sequence selects an unused frequency, it is replaced with an alternative chosen from the used set.

Because the adapted piconet channel uses the same timing and access code as the basic piconet channel, the two channels are often coincident. This provides a deliberate benefit as it allows slaves in either the basic piconet channel or the adapted piconet channel to adjust their synchronization to the master.

The topology and supported layers of the adapted piconet physical channel are identical to the basic piconet physical channel with one exception: on the adapted piconet physical channel, it is possible for a single master to transmit data to an unlimited number of slaves using a single CSB logical transport. In

this case, however, data is only transferred from master to slave and not from slave to master.

### 3.3.1.3 Inquiry scan channel

#### 3.3.1.3.1 Overview

In order for a device to be discovered, an inquiry scan channel is used. A discoverable device listens for inquiry requests on its inquiry scan channel and then sends a response to that request. In order for a device to discover other devices, it iterates (hops) through all possible inquiry scan channel frequencies in a pseudo-random fashion, sending an inquiry request on each frequency and listening for any response.

#### 3.3.1.3.2 Characteristics

Inquiry scan channels follow a slower hopping pattern and use an access code to distinguish between occasional occupancy of the same radio frequency by two co-located devices using different physical channels.

The access code used on the inquiry scan channel is taken from a reserved set of inquiry access codes that are shared by all Bluetooth devices. One access code is used for general inquiries, and a number of additional access codes are reserved for limited inquiries. Each device has access to a number of different inquiry scan channels. As all of these channels share an identical hopping pattern, a device may concurrently occupy more than one inquiry scan channel if it is capable of concurrently correlating more than one access code.

A device using one of its inquiry scan channels remains passive on that channel until it receives an inquiry message on this channel from another Bluetooth device. This is identified by the appropriate inquiry access code. The inquiry scanning device will then follow the inquiry response procedure to return a response to the inquiring device.

In order for a device to discover other Bluetooth devices it uses the inquiry scan channel to send inquiry requests. As it has no prior knowledge of the devices to discover, it cannot know the exact characteristics of the inquiry scan channel.

The device takes advantage of the fact that inquiry scan channels have a reduced number of hop frequencies and a slower rate of hopping. The inquiring device transmits inquiry requests on each of the inquiry scan hop frequencies and listens for an inquiry response. Transmissions are done at a faster rate, allowing the inquiring device to cover all inquiry scan frequencies in a reasonably short time period.

### 3.3.1.3.3 Topology

Inquiring and discoverable devices use a simple exchange of packets to fulfill the inquiring function. The topology formed during this transaction is a simple and transient point-to-point connection.

### 3.3.1.3.4 Supported Layers

During the exchange of packets between an inquiring and discoverable device it may be considered that a temporary physical link exists between these devices. However, the concept is quite irrelevant as it has no physical representation but is only implied by the brief transaction between the devices. No further architectural layers are considered to be supported.

### 3.3.1.4 Page Scan Channel

#### 3.3.1.4.1 Overview

A connectable device (one that is prepared to accept connections) does so using a page scan channel. A connectable device listens for a page request on its page scan channel and, once received, enters into a sequence of exchanges with this device. In order for a device to connect to another device, it iterates (hops) through all page scan channel frequencies in a pseudo-random fashion, sending a page request on each frequency and listening for a response.

#### 3.3.1.4.2 Characteristics

The page scan channel uses an access code derived from the scanning device's Bluetooth device address to identify communications on the channel. The page scan channel uses a slower hopping rate than the hop rate of the basic and adapted piconet channels. The hop selection algorithm uses the Bluetooth device clock of the scanning device as an input.

A device using its page scan channel remains passive until it receives a page request from another Bluetooth device. This is identified by the page scan channel access code. The two devices will then follow the page procedure to form a connection. Following a successful conclusion of the page procedure both devices switch to the basic piconet channel that is characterized by having the paging device as master.

In order for a device to connect to another Bluetooth device it uses the page scan channel of the target device in order to send page requests. If the paging device does not know the phase of the target device's page scan channel it therefore does not know the current hop frequency of the target device. The paging device transmits page requests on each of the page scan hop frequencies and listens for a page response. This is done at a faster hop rate, allowing

the paging device to cover all page scan frequencies in a reasonably short time period.

The paging device may have some knowledge of the target device's Bluetooth clock (indicated during a previous inquiry transaction between the two devices, or as a result of a previous involvement in a piconet with the device), in this case it is able to predict the phase of the target device's page scan channel. It may use this information to optimize the synchronization of the paging and page scanning process and speed up the formation of the connection.

#### 3.3.1.4.3 *Topology*

Paging and connectable devices use a simple exchange of packets to fulfill the paging function. The topology formed during this transaction is a simple and transient point-to-point connection.

#### 3.3.1.4.4 *Supported Layers*

During the exchange of packets between a paging and connectable device it may be considered that a temporary physical link exists between these devices. However, the concept is quite irrelevant as it has no physical representation but is only implied by the brief transaction between the devices. No further architectural layers are considered to be supported.

### 3.3.1.5 *Synchronization Scan Channel*

#### 3.3.1.5.1 *Overview*

In order to receive packets sent on the CSB logical transport, a device must first obtain information about the timing and frequency channels of those packets. If a device misses a Coarse Clock Adjustment notification, it needs to recover the current piconet clock. The synchronization scan channel is provided for these purposes. A scanning device listens for synchronization train packets on the synchronization scan channel. Once a synchronization train packet is received, the device may stop listening for synchronization train packets because it has the timing and frequency information necessary to start receiving packets sent on the CSB logical transport or to recover the piconet clock.

#### 3.3.1.5.2 *Characteristics*

The synchronization scan channel uses an access code derived from the Bluetooth device address of the synchronization train transmitter to identify synchronization train packets on the channel. Once a synchronization train packet is received, the scanning BR/EDR controller may start receiving packets sent on the CSB logical transport, depending on the needs of the Host and any applicable profile(s).

### 3.3.1.5.3 Topology

The topology formed during this scan is transient and point-to-multipoint. There can be an unlimited number of scanning devices simultaneously receiving synchronization train packets from the same synchronization train transmitter.

### 3.3.1.5.4 Supported Layers

There is a one-way flow of packets from the synchronization train transmitting device to the scanning device(s). This may be considered a temporary physical link that exists only until the scanning device receives the required information. No further architectural layers are considered to be supported.

## 3.3.2 LE Physical Channels

In the LE core system, two Bluetooth devices use a shared physical channel for communication. To achieve this, their transceivers need to be tuned to the same PHY frequency at the same time, and they need to be within a nominal range of each other.

Given that the number of PHY channels is limited, and many Bluetooth devices can be operating independently within the same spatial and temporal area, there is a strong likelihood of two pairs of independent Bluetooth devices having their transceivers tuned to the same PHY channel, resulting in a physical channel collision. Unlike BR/EDR where an access code is used to identify the piconet, LE uses a randomly generated Access Address to identify a physical link between devices. In the event that two devices happen to share the same PHY channel in the same area, the targeted device Access Address is used as a correlator to determine to which device the communication is directed.

Two LE physical channels are defined. Each is optimized and used for a different purpose. The LE piconet channel is used for communication between connected devices and is associated with a specific piconet. The LE advertisement broadcast channel is used for broadcasting advertisements to LE devices. These advertisements can be used to discover, connect or send user data to scanner or initiator devices.

An LE device can only use one of these LE physical channels at any given time. In order to support multiple concurrent operations the device uses time-division multiplexing between the channels. In this way a Bluetooth device can appear to support connected devices while simultaneously sending advertising broadcasts.

Whenever an LE device is synchronized to the timing and frequency of the physical channel it is said to be connected to this channel (whether or not it is actively involved in communications over the channel). The Bluetooth specification assumes that a device is only capable of connecting to one physical channel at a time. Advanced devices may be capable of connecting simultaneously to more than one physical channel, but the specification does not make this assumption.

### 3.3.2.1 LE piconet channel

#### 3.3.2.1.1 Overview

The LE piconet channel is used for communication between connected LE devices during normal operation.

#### 3.3.2.1.2 Characteristics

The LE piconet channel is characterized by a pseudo-random sequence of PHY channels and by three additional parameters provided by the master. The first is the channel map that indicates the set of PHY channels used in the piconet. The second is a pseudo random number used as an index into the complete set of PHY channels. The third is the timing of the first data packet sent by the master after the connection request.

The channel is divided into connection events where each connection event corresponds to a PHY hop channel. Consecutive connection events correspond to different PHY hop channels. The first packet sent by the master after the connection establishment sets an anchor point for the timing of all future connection events. In a connection event the master transmits packets to a slave in the piconet and the slave may or may not respond with a packet of its own.

On the LE piconet channel the master controls access to the channel. The master starts its transmission in a connection event that occurs at regular intervals. Packets transmitted by the master are aligned with the connection event start and define the piconet timing. Packets sent by the master may vary in length from 10 to 47 octets.

Each master transmission contains a packet carrying information on one of the logical transports. Slave devices can transmit on the physical channel in response. The characteristics of the response are defined by the logical transport that is addressed.

The LE piconet channel is similar to the BR/EDR adapted piconet channel in that the set of PHY channels used can be modified to avoid interference. The set of used channels in the channel map is established by the master during connection setup. While in a connection the master can change the channel map when necessary to avoid new interferers.

There are 37 LE piconet channels. The master can reduce this number through the channel map indicating the used channels. When the hopping pattern hits an unused channel the unused channel is replaced with an alternate from the set of used channels.

### 3.3.2.1.3 Topology

An LE piconet channel can be shared by any number of LE devices, limited only by the resources available on the piconet master device. Only one device is the piconet master; all others being piconet slaves. All communication is between the master and slave devices. There is no direct communication between slave devices on the piconet channel.

There is virtually no limit on the number of logical transports that can be supported within a piconet. This means that there is no theoretical limit to the number of Bluetooth devices that share a channel with the master.

An LE device is permitted to belong to one or more piconets at a time, that is, an LE device may be a slave in zero or more piconets and may also be a master of another piconet.

### 3.3.2.1.4 Supported layers

The LE piconet channel supports L2CAP channels used for general purpose communications.

## 3.3.2.2 Advertisement broadcast channel

### 3.3.2.2.1 Overview

The LE advertising channel is used to set up connections between two devices or to communicate broadcast information between unconnected devices.

### 3.3.2.2.2 Characteristics

The LE advertisement broadcast channel is a set of three fixed PHY channels spread evenly across the LE frequency spectrum. The number of advertising PHY channels can be reduced by the advertising device in order to reduce interference. All advertising packets use a fixed Access Address.

The channel is divided into advertising events where each advertising event can hop on all three advertising PHY channels. Consecutive advertising events begin on the first advertising PHY channel. The advertising events occur at regular intervals which are slightly modified with a random delay to aid in interference avoidance.

On the LE advertising broadcast channel the advertising device controls access to the channel. The advertising device starts its transmission in an advertising event and transmits advertising packets on one or more of the three advertising PHY channels. Each advertising packet is sent on a different advertising PHY channel at a fixed interval. Four types of advertising events can be used, with each advertising event type having different sized advertising packets. These advertising packets can vary in length from 8 to 39 octets.

Some advertising events sent by the advertising device permit the listening device to concurrently send scan requests or connection requests packets on the same advertising PHY channel in which the advertising packet was received. The advertising device can send a scan response packet again on the same advertising PHY channel within the same advertising event. The scan response packet can vary in length from 8 to 39 octets.

### 3.3.2.2.3 *Topology*

An LE advertising channel can be shared by any number of LE devices. Any number of LE devices can transmit advertising packets while sharing the same three advertising PHY channels. Any number of scanning devices can listen on the advertising channel. An advertising device can advertise and be connected on an LE piconet channel simultaneously. Scanning devices may also be connected to one or more LE piconet channels simultaneously.

## 3.3.3 AMP physical channel

### 3.3.3.1 Overview

An AMP physical channel is used for communication between connected devices during normal operation. It is used in parallel with an adapted piconet channel between the associated BR/EDR Controllers.

### 3.3.3.2 Characteristics

The AMP physical channel characteristics depend on the referenced MAC and PHY. See [Volume 5](#) for the referenced MAC and PHY for each PAL.

### 3.3.3.3 Topology

An AMP physical channel may be shared by any number of Bluetooth devices, limited only by the resources available on the piconet BR/EDR master device and the number of LT\_ADDRs available. Roles within the AMP physical channel are not used. All communication is between the BR/EDR piconet master and a single BR/EDR piconet slave. There is no direct communication between BR/EDR piconet slave devices over the AMP physical channel.

Although there is no theoretical limit to the number of Bluetooth devices that can share an AMP physical channel, similar to the basic and adapted piconet channels, there is a limit to the number of these devices that can be actively involved in exchanging data with the master.

### 3.3.3.4 Supported Layers

The AMP physical channel supports a number of physical links, logical transports, logical links and L2CAP channels used for general purpose communications.

## 3.4 PHYSICAL LINKS

A physical link represents a baseband connection between Bluetooth devices. A physical link is always associated with exactly one physical channel (although a physical channel may support more than one physical link). Within the Bluetooth system a physical link is a virtual concept that has no direct representation within the structure of a transmitted packet.

In BR/EDR the access code packet field, together with the clock and address of the master Bluetooth device, is used to identify a physical channel. In LE the access address, hop index, and channel map are used to identify a physical channel. For BR/EDR and LE, there is no subsequent part of the packet that directly identifies the physical link. Instead the physical link may be identified by association with the logical transport, as each logical transport is only received on one physical link.

Some physical link types have properties that may be modified. An example of this is the transmit power for the link. Other physical link types have no modifiable properties. In the case of physical links with modifiable properties the LM protocol (BR/EDR) is used to adapt these properties. As the LM protocol (BR/EDR) is supported at a higher layer (by a logical link) the appropriate physical link is identified by implication from the logical link that transports the LM signaling.

In the situation where a transmission is broadcast over a number of different physical links, then the transmission parameters are selected to be suitable for all of the physical links.

### 3.4.1 BR/EDR Links Supported By The Basic And Adapted Piconet Physical Channel

The basic piconet physical channel supports a physical link which may be active or parked. The adapted piconet physical channel may support several physical links, including active, parked, and Connectionless Slave Broadcast. An active or parked physical link is a point-to-point link between the master and a slave. A Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link is a point-to-multipoint link between the master and zero or more slaves. At least one physical link on the piconet physical channel is always present when a slave is synchronized in the piconet.

#### 3.4.1.1 Active Physical Link

The physical link between a master and a slave device is active if a default ACL logical transport exists between the devices. Active physical links have no direct identification of their own, but are identified by association with the default ACL logical transport ID with which there is a one-to-one correspondence.

An active physical link has the associated property of radio transmit power in each direction. Transmissions from slave devices are always directed over the

active physical link to the master, and use the transmit power that is a property of this link in the slave to master direction. Transmissions from the master may be directed over a single active physical link (to a specific slave) or over a number of physical links (to a group of slaves in the piconet). In the case of point-to-point transmissions the master uses the appropriate transmit power for the physical link in question. (In the case of point-to-multipoint transmissions the master uses a transmit power appropriate for the set of devices addressed.)

Active physical links may be placed into Hold or Sniff mode. The effect of these modes is to modify the periods when the physical link is active and may carry traffic. Logical transports that have defined scheduling characteristics are not affected by these modes and continue according to their pre-defined scheduling behavior. The default ACL logical transport and other links with undefined scheduling characteristics are subject to the mode of the active physical link.

#### 3.4.1.2 Parked Physical Link

The physical link between a master and a slave device is parked when the slave remains synchronized in the piconet, but has no default ACL logical transport. Such a slave is also said to be parked. A beacon train is used to provide regular synchronization to all parked slaves connected to the piconet physical channel. A parked slave broadcast (PSB) logical transport is used to allow communication of a subset of LMP signaling and broadcast L2CAP to parked slaves. The PSB logical transport is closely associated with the beacon train.

A slave is parked (its active link is changed to a parked link) using the park procedure. The master is not allowed to park a slave that has any user created logical transport supported by the physical link. These logical transports are first removed, and any L2CAP channels that are built on these logical transports are also removed. The broadcast logical transport and default ACL logical transports are not considered as user created and are not explicitly removed. When the active link is replaced with a parked link the default ACL logical transport is implicitly removed. The supported logical links and L2CAP channels remain in existence, but become suspended. It is not possible to use these links and L2CAP channels to transport signaling or data while the active link is absent.

A parked slave may become active using the unpark procedure. This procedure is requested by the slave at an access window and initiated by the master. Following the unpark procedure the parked physical link is changed to an active physical link and the default ACL logical transport is re-created. L2CAP channels that were suspended during the most recent park procedure are associated with the new default ACL logical transport and become active again.

Parked links do not support radio power control, as there is no feedback path from parked slaves to the piconet master that can be used to provide the received signal strength at the slave or for the master to measure received sig-

nal strength from the slave. Transmissions are carried out at nominal power on parked links.

Parked links use the same physical channel as their associated active link. If a master manages a piconet that contains parked slaves using the basic piconet physical channel and also parked slaves using the adapted piconet physical channel then it must create a parked slave broadcast logical transport (and associated transport) for each of these physical channels.

A parked slave may use the inactive periods of the parked slave broadcast logical transport to save power, or it may carry out activities on other physical channels unrelated to the piconet within which it is parked.

#### 3.4.1.3 Connectionless Slave Broadcast Physical Link

A Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link is present on a slave when the slave is synchronized in the piconet where a CSB logical transport exists. On a master, a Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link is present when a CSB logical transport exists whether or not any slaves are synchronized. The Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link is a point-to-multipoint unidirectional link between a master and zero or more slaves.

Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical links do not support power control because there is no feedback from slaves to the master. Traffic is always directed from a single master to zero or more slaves.

Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets are sent at regular intervals. The BR/EDR Controller selects an interval within a range requested by the Host.

### 3.4.2 BR/EDR Links Supported by the Scanning Physical Channels

In the case of inquiry scan and page scan channels, the physical link exists for a relatively short time and cannot be controlled or modified in any way. These types of physical links are not further elaborated.

### 3.4.3 LE Links Supported by the LE Physical Channels

The LE piconet physical channels support an LE active physical link. The physical link is a point-to-point link between the master and a slave. It is always present when the slave is in a connection with the master.

The LE advertising physical channels support an LE advertising physical link. The physical link is a broadcast between the advertiser device and one or more scanner or initiator devices. It is always present when the advertiser is broadcasting advertisement events.

#### 3.4.3.1 Active physical link

The physical link between a master and a slave device is active if a default LE ACL logical transport exists between the devices. Active physical links are identified by the randomly generated Access Address used in the Link Layer packet. Each Access Address has a one-to-one relationship with the master and the slave of the active physical link.

#### 3.4.3.2 Advertising physical link

An advertising physical link between an advertising device and an initiating device for the purposes of forming a connection (active physical link) can exist for a relatively short period of time. These advertising physical links cannot be controlled or modified in any way and these types of physical links are not further elaborated.

An advertising physical link between an advertising device and a scanning device used for periodic broadcasting of user data can exist for longer periods of time. There is no identification information about the physical link within the protocol. The relationship between the advertising and scanning device shall be established through the use of the Bluetooth device address.

### 3.4.4 Links Supported by the AMP Physical Channels

An AMP physical link is always associated with exactly one AMP physical channel (although an AMP physical channel may support more than one AMP physical link). The AMP physical link is a point-to-point link between two PALs. The characteristics of an AMP physical link depend on the underlying AMP technology.

### 3.5 LOGICAL LINKS AND LOGICAL TRANSPORTS

A variety of logical links are available to support different application data transport requirements. Each logical link is associated with a logical transport, which has a number of characteristics. These characteristics include flow control, acknowledgement/repeat mechanisms, sequence numbering and scheduling behavior. Logical transports are able to carry different types of logical links (depending on the type of the logical transport). In the case of some of the Bluetooth logical links these are multiplexed onto the same logical transport. Logical transports may be carried by active physical links on either the basic or the adapted piconet physical channel.

Logical transport identification and real-time (link control) signaling are carried in the packet header, and for some logical links identification is carried in the payload header. Control signaling that does not require single slot response times is carried out using the LMP protocol.

[Table 3.1 on page 64](#) lists all of the logical transport types, the supported logical link types, which type of physical links and physical channels can support them, and a brief description of the purpose of the logical transport.

Logical transport	Links supported	Supported by	Bearer	Overview
Asynchronous Connection-Oriented (ACL)	Control (LMP) ACL-C or (PAL) AMP-C  User (L2CAP) ACL-U or AMP-U	BR/EDR active physical link, BR/EDR basic or adapted piconet physical channel, AMP physical link, AMP physical channel	BR/EDR, AMP	Reliable or time-bounded, bi-directional, point-to-point
Synchronous Connection-Oriented (SCO)	Stream (unframed) SCO-S	BR/EDR active physical link, BR/EDR basic or adapted piconet physical channel	BR/EDR	Bi-directional, symmetric, point-to-point, AV channels. Used for 64Kb/s constant rate data.
Extended Synchronous Connection-Oriented (eSCO)	Stream (unframed) eSCO-S	BR/EDR active physical link, BR/EDR basic or adapted piconet physical channel	BR/EDR	Bi-directional, symmetric or asymmetric, point-to-point, general regular data, limited retransmission. Used for constant rate data synchronized to the master Bluetooth clock.

*Table 3.1: Logical transport types*

Logical transport	Links supported	Supported by	Bearer	Overview
Active Slave Broadcast (ASB)	User (L2CAP) ASB-U	BR/EDR active physical link, basic or adapted physical channel	BR/EDR	Unreliable, uni-directional broadcast to any devices synchronized with the physical channel. Used for broadcast L2CAP groups.
Parked Slave Broadcast (PSB)	Control (LMP) PSB-C, User (L2CAP) PSB-U	BR/EDR parked physical link, basic or adapted piconet physical channel	BR/EDR	Unreliable, uni-directional broadcast to all piconet devices. Used for LMP and L2CAP traffic to parked devices, and for access requests from parked devices.
Connectionless Slave Broadcast (CSB)	Profile Broadcast Data (PBD)	Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link, BR/EDR adapted piconet physical channel	BR/EDR	Unreliable, unidirectional, point-to-multipoint, periodic transmissions to zero or more devices.
LE asynchronous connection (LE ACL)	Control (LL) LE-C, User (L2CAP) LE-U	LE active physical link, LE piconet physical channel	LE	Reliable or time-bounded, bi-directional, point-to-point.
LE Advertising Broadcast (ADVB)	Control (LL) ADVB-C, User (LL) ADVB-U	LE advertising physical link, LE piconet physical channel	LE	LE advertising physical link, LE piconet physical channel.

Table 3.1: Logical transport types

The classification of each link type follows from a selection procedure within three categories.

### 3.5.1 Casting

The first category is that of casting. This may be either unicast or broadcast.

- *Unicast links.* Unicast links exist between exactly two endpoints. Traffic may be sent in either direction on unicast links.
- *Broadcast links.* Broadcast links exist between one source device and zero or more receiver devices. Traffic is unidirectional, i.e., only sent from the source devices to the receiver devices. Broadcast links are connectionless, meaning there is no procedure to create these links, and data may be sent over them at any time. Broadcast links are unreliable, and there is no guarantee that the data will be received.

### 3.5.2 Scheduling and Acknowledgement Scheme

The second category relates to the scheduling and acknowledgement scheme of the link, and implies the type of traffic that is supported by the link. These are synchronous, isochronous or asynchronous. There are no specific isochronous links defined, though the default ACL link can be configured to operate in this fashion.

- *Synchronous links.* Synchronous links provide a method of associating the transported data with the Bluetooth piconet clock. This is achieved by reserving regular slots on the physical channel, and transmitting fixed size packets at these regular intervals. Such links are suitable for constant rate isochronous data.
- *Asynchronous links.* Asynchronous links provide a method for transporting data that has no time-based characteristics. The data is normally expected to be retransmitted until successfully received, and each data entity can be processed at any time after receipt, without reference to the time of receipt of any previous or successive entity in the stream (providing the ordering of data entities is preserved).
- *Isochronous links.* Isochronous links provide a method for transporting data that has time-based characteristics. The data may be retransmitted until received or expired. The data rate on the link need not be constant (this being the main difference from synchronous links).

### 3.5.3 Class of Data

The final category is related to the class of data that is carried by the link. This is either control (LMP or PAL) data or user data. The user data category is subdivided into L2CAP (or framed) data and stream (or unframed) data.

- *Control links.* Control links are only used for transporting LMP messages between two link managers. These links are invisible above the baseband layer, and cannot be directly instantiated, configured or released by applications, other than by the use of the connection and disconnection services that have this effect implicitly. Control links are always multiplexed with an equivalent L2CAP link onto an ACL logical transport. Subject to the rules defining the ARQ scheme, the control link traffic always takes priority over the L2CAP link traffic.
- *L2CAP links.* L2CAP links are used to transport L2CAP PDUs, which may carry the L2CAP signaling channel (on the default ACL-U logical link only) or framed user data submitted to user-instantiated L2CAP channels. L2CAP frames submitted to the baseband may be larger than the available baseband packets. A link control protocol embedded within the LLID field preserves the frame-start and frame-continuation semantics when the frame is transmitted in a number of fragments to the receiver.
- *Stream links.* Stream links are used to transport user data that has no inherent framing that should be preserved when delivering the data. Lost data may be replaced by padding at the receiver.

### 3.5.4 Logical Transports

#### 3.5.4.1 BR/EDR Asynchronous Connection-oriented (ACL)

The asynchronous connection-oriented (ACL) logical transport is used to carry LMP and L2CAP control signaling and best effort asynchronous user data. The ACL logical transport uses a 1-bit ARQN/SEQN scheme to provide simple channel reliability. Every active slave device within a piconet has one ACL logical transport to the piconet master, known as the default ACL.

The default ACL is created between the master and the slave when a device joins a piconet (connects to the basic piconet physical channel). This default ACL is assigned a logical transport address (LT\_ADDR) by the piconet master. This LT\_ADDR is also used to identify the active physical link when required (or as a piconet active member identifier, effectively for the same purpose).

The LT\_ADDR for the default ACL is reused for synchronous connection-oriented logical transports between the same master and slave. (This is for reasons of compatibility with earlier Bluetooth specifications). Thus the LT\_ADDR is not sufficient on its own to identify the default ACL. However the packet types used on the ACL are different from those used on the synchronous connection-oriented logical transport. Therefore, the ACL logical transport can be identified by the LT\_ADDR field in the packet header in combination with the packet type field.

The default ACL may be used for isochronous data transport by configuring it to automatically flush packets after the packets have expired. Asynchronous traffic can be sent over an ACL logical transport configured for isochronous traffic by marking the asynchronous packets as non-automatic-flushable. This allows both isochronous and asynchronous traffic to be transferred at the same time to a single device.

If the default ACL is removed from the active physical link then all other logical transports that exist between the master and the slave are also removed. In the case of unexpected loss of synchronization to the piconet physical channel the physical link and all logical transports and logical links cease to exist at the time that this synchronization loss is detected.

A device may remove its default ACL (and by implication its active physical link) but remain synchronized to the piconet. This procedure is known as parking, and a device that is synchronized to the piconet, but has no active physical link is parked within that piconet.

When the device transitions to the parked state the default ACL logical links that are transported on the default ACL logical transport remain in existence, but become suspended. No data may be transferred across a suspended logical link. When the device transitions from the parked state back into connection state, a new default ACL logical transport is created (it may have a different LT\_ADDR from the previous one) and the suspended logical links are attached to this default ACL and become active once again.

### 3.5.4.2 BR/EDR Synchronous Connection-Oriented (SCO)

The synchronous connection-oriented (SCO) logical transport is a symmetric, point-to-point transport between the master and a specific slave. The SCO logical transport reserves slots on the physical channel and can therefore be considered as a circuit-switched connection between the master and the slave.

SCO logical transports carry 64 kb/s of information synchronized with the piconet clock. Typically this information is an encoded voice stream. Three different SCO configurations exist, offering a balance between robustness, delay and bandwidth consumption.

Each SCO-S logical link is supported by a single SCO logical transport, which is assigned the same LT\_ADDR as the default ACL logical transport between the devices. Therefore the LT\_ADDR field is not sufficient to identify the destination of a received packet. Because the SCO links use reserved slots, a device uses a combination of the LT\_ADDR, the slot numbers (a property of the physical channel) and the packet type to identify transmissions on the SCO link.

Although slots are reserved for the SCO, it is permissible to use a reserved slot for traffic from another channel that has a higher priority. This may be required as a result of QoS commitments, or to send LMP signaling on the default ACL when the physical channel bandwidth is fully occupied by SCOs. As SCOs carry different packet types to ACLs, the packet type is used to identify SCO traffic (in addition to the slot number and LT\_ADDR).

There are no further architectural layers defined by the Bluetooth core specification that are transported over an SCO link. A number of standard formats are defined for the 64 kb/s stream that is transported, or an unformatted stream is allowed where the application is responsible for interpreting the encoding of the stream.

### 3.5.4.3 BR/EDR Extended Synchronous Connection-Oriented (eSCO)

The extended synchronous connection-oriented (eSCO) logical transport is a symmetric or asymmetric, point-to-point transport between the master and a specific slave. The eSCO reserves slots on the physical channel and can therefore be considered as a circuit-switched connection between the master and the slave. eSCO links offer a number of extensions over the standard SCO links, in that they support a more flexible combination of packet types and selectable data contents in the packets and selectable slot periods, allowing a range of synchronous bit rates to be supported.

eSCO links also can offer limited retransmission of packets (unlike SCO links where there is no retransmission). If these retransmissions are required they take place in the slots that follow the reserved slots, otherwise the slots may be used for other traffic.

Each eSCO-S logical link is supported by a single eSCO logical transport, identified by a LT\_ADDR that is unique within the piconet for the duration of the eSCO. eSCO-S links are created using LM signaling and follow scheduling rules similar to SCO-S links.

There are no further architectural layers defined by the Bluetooth core specification that are transported over an eSCO-S link. Instead applications may use the data stream for whatever purpose they require, subject to the transport characteristics of the stream being suitable for the data being transported.

#### 3.5.4.4 BR/EDR Active Slave Broadcast (ASB)

The active slave broadcast logical transport is used to transport L2CAP user traffic to all devices in the piconet that are currently connected to the physical channel that is used by the ASB. There is no acknowledgement protocol and the traffic is uni-directional from the piconet master to the slaves. The ASB channel may be used for L2CAP group traffic (a legacy of the 1.1 specification), and is never used for L2CAP connection-oriented channels, L2CAP control signaling or LMP control signaling.

The ASB logical transport is inherently unreliable because of the lack of acknowledgement. To improve the reliability, each packet is transmitted a number of times. An identical sequence number is used to assist with filtering retransmissions at the slave device.

The ASB logical transport is identified by a reserved LT\_ADDR. (The reserved LT\_ADDR address is also used by the PSB logical transport.) An active slave will receive traffic on both logical transports, and cannot readily distinguish between them. As the ASB logical transport does not carry LMP traffic an active slave can ignore packets received over the LMP logical link on the ASB logical transport. However L2CAP traffic transmitted over the PSB logical transport is also received by active slaves on the ASB logical transport and cannot be distinguished from L2CAP traffic sent on the ASB transport.

An ASB is implicitly created whenever a piconet exists, and there is always one ASB associated with each of the basic and adapted piconet physical channels that exist within the piconet. Because the basic and adapted piconet physical channels are mostly coincident, a slave device cannot distinguish which of the ASB channels is being used to transmit the packets. This adds to the general unreliability of the ASB channel. (Although it is, perhaps, no more unreliable than general missed packets.)

A master device may decide to use only one of its two possible ASBs (when it has both a basic and adapted piconet physical channel), as with sufficient retransmissions it is possible to address both groups of slaves on the same ASB channel.

The ASB channel is never used to carry LMP or L2CAP control signals.

### 3.5.4.5 BR/EDR Parked Slave Broadcast (PSB)

The parked slave broadcast logical transport is used for communications between the master and slaves that are parked (have given up their default ACL logical transport). The parked slave broadcast link is the only logical transport that exists between the piconet master and parked slaves.

The PSB logical transport is more complex than the other logical transports as it consists of a number of phases, each having a different purpose. These phases are the control information phase (used to carry the LMP logical link), the user information phase (used to carry the L2CAP logical link), and the access phase (carrying baseband signaling). The control information and broadcast information phases are usually mutually exclusive as only one of them can be supported in a single beacon interval. (Even if there is no control or user information phase, the master is still required to transmit a packet in the beacon slots so that the parked slaves can resynchronize.) The access phase is normally present unless cancelled in a control information message.

The control information phase is used for the master to send information to the parked slaves containing modifications to the PSB transport attributes, modifications to the beacon train attributes, or a request for a parked slave to become active in the piconet (known as unparking). This control information is carried in LMP messages on the LMP logical link. (The control information phase is also present in the case of a user information phase where the user information requires more than one baseband packet.)

Packets in the control information phase are always transmitted in the physical channel beacon train slots, and cannot be transmitted on any other slots. The control information occupies a single DM1 packet and is repeated in every beacon train slot within a single beacon interval. (If there is no control information then there may be a user information phase that uses the beacon slots. If neither phase is used then the beacon slots are used for other logical transport traffic or for NULL packets.)

The user information phase is used for the master to send L2CAP packets that are destined for all piconet slaves. User information may occupy one or more baseband packets. If the user information occupies a single packet then the user information packet is repeated in each of the piconet channel beacon train slots.

If the user information occupies more than one baseband packet then it is transmitted in slots after the beacon train (the broadcast scan window) and the beacon slots are used to transmit a control information phase message that contains the timing attributes of this broadcast scan window. This is required so that the parked slaves remain connected to the piconet physical channel to receive the user information.

The access phase is normally present unless temporarily cancelled by a control message carried in the control information broadcast phase. The access window consists of a sequence of slots that follow the beacon train. In order for

a parked slave to become active in the piconet, it may send such an access request to the piconet master during the access window. Each parked slave is allocated an access request address (not necessarily unique) that controls when during the access window the slave requests access.

The PSB logical transport is identified by the reserved LT\_ADDR of 0. This reserved LT\_ADDR address is also used by the ASB logical transport. Parked slaves are not normally confused by the duplicated use of the LT\_ADDR as they are only connected to the piconet physical channel during the time that the PSB transport is being used.

#### 3.5.4.6 LE Asynchronous Connection (LE ACL)

The LE asynchronous connection (LE ACL) logical transport is used to carry LL and L2CAP control signaling and best effort asynchronous user data. The LE ACL logical transport uses a 2-bit NESN/SN scheme to provide simple channel reliability. Every active slave device within an LE piconet has one LE ACL logical transport to the piconet master, known as the default LE ACL.

The default LE ACL is automatically created between the master and the slave when a device joins a piconet (connects to the LE piconet physical channel). This default LE ACL is assigned an access channel number by the piconet master. This access address is also used to identify the active physical link when required.

If the default LE ACL is removed from the LE active physical link then all other LE logical transports that exist between the master and the slave are also removed. In the case of unexpected loss of synchronization to the LE piconet physical channel the LE physical link and all LE logical transports and LE logical links cease to exist at the time that this synchronization loss is detected.

#### 3.5.4.7 LE Advertising Broadcast (ADVB)

The LE advertising broadcast logical transport is used to transport broadcast control and user data to all scanning devices in a given area. There is no acknowledgement protocol and the traffic is predominately unidirectional from the advertising device. A scanning device can send requests over the logical transport to get additional broadcast user data, or to form an LE ACL logical transport connection. The LE Advertising Broadcast logical transport data is carried only over the LE advertising broadcast link.

The ADVB logical transport is inherently unreliable because of the lack of acknowledgement. To improve the reliability, each packet is transmitted a number of times over the LE advertising broadcast link.

An ADVB is created whenever an advertising device begins advertising. The ADVB logical transport is identified by the advertiser's Bluetooth device address.

### 3.5.4.8 Connectionless Slave Broadcast (CSB)

The CSB logical transport is used to transport profile broadcast data to all devices connected to the Connectionless Slave Broadcast logical transport. There is no acknowledgement scheme and the traffic is unidirectional from a master to zero or more slaves. To improve reliability, profile broadcast data may be transmitted multiple times.

The CSB logical transport is created on the transmitter whenever the Connectionless Slave Broadcast is started. The CSB logical transport is created on the receiver whenever Connectionless Slave Broadcast reception is configured. The CSB logical transport is identified by a unique LT\_ADDR within the piconet that is reserved specifically for that purpose by the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter.

## 3.5.5 Logical Links

Some logical transports are capable of supporting different logical links, either concurrently multiplexed, or one of the choice.

### 3.5.5.1 BR/EDR Logical Links

Within BR/EDR logical transports, the logical link is identified by the logical link identifier (LLID) bits in the payload header of baseband packets that carry a data payload. The logical links distinguish between a limited set of core protocols that are able to transmit and receive data on the logical transports. Not all of the logical transports are able to carry all of the logical links (the supported mapping is shown in [Figure 3.2 on page 40](#)). In particular the BR/EDR SCO and eSCO logical transports are only able to carry constant data rate streams, and these are uniquely identified by the LT\_ADDR. Such logical transports only use packets that do not contain a payload header, as their length is known in advance, and no LLID is necessary.

#### 3.5.5.1.1 ACL Control Logical Link (ACL-C)

The ACL Control Logical Link (ACL-C) is used to carry BR/EDR LMP signaling between devices in the piconet. The control link is only carried on the default ACL logical transport and on the PSB logical transport (in the control information phase). The ACL-C link is always given priority over the ACL-U (see below) link when carried on the same logical transport.

#### 3.5.5.1.2 User Asynchronous/Isochronous Logical Link (ACL-U)

The user asynchronous/isochronous logical link (ACL-U) is used to carry all asynchronous and isochronous framed user data. The ACL-U link is carried on all but the synchronous logical transports. Packets on the ACL-U link are identified by one of two reserved LLID values. One value is used to indicate whether the baseband packet contains the start of an L2CAP frame and the

other indicates a continuation of a previous frame. This ensures correct synchronization of the L2CAP reassembler following flushed packets. The use of this technique removes the need for a more complex L2CAP header in every baseband packet (the header is only required in the L2CAP start packets), but adds the requirement that a complete L2CAP frame shall be transmitted before a new one is transmitted. (An exception to this rule being the ability to flush a partially transmitted L2CAP frame in favor of another L2CAP frame.)

### *3.5.5.1.3 User Synchronous/Extended Synchronous Logical Links (SCO-S/eSCO-S)*

Synchronous (SCO-S) and extended synchronous (eSCO-S) logical links are used to support isochronous data delivered in a stream without framing. These links are associated with a single logical transport, where data is delivered in constant sized units at a constant rate. There is no LLID within the packets on these transports, as only a single logical link can be supported, and the packet length and scheduling period are pre-defined and remain fixed during the lifetime of the link.

Variable rate isochronous data cannot be carried by the SCO-S or eSCO-S logical links. In this case the data must be carried on ACL-U logical links, which use packets with a payload header.

### *3.5.5.1.4 Profile Broadcast Data (PBD) Logical Link*

The PBD logical link is used to broadcast isochronous unframed data to multiple receivers and resides on the CSB logical transport.

## 3.5.5.2 LE Logical Links

Within LE logical transports, the logical link is identified by the logical link identifier (LLID) bits in the payload header of baseband packets that carry a data payload. The logical links distinguish between a limited set of core protocols that are able to transmit and receive data on the logical transports. Not all of the logical transports are able to carry all of the logical links (the supported mapping is shown in [Figure 3.2 on page 40](#)).

### *3.5.5.2.1 Control Logical Link (LE-C)*

The LE ACL Control Logical Link (LE-C) is used to carry LE LL signaling between devices in the piconet. The control link is only carried on the default LE ACL logical transport.

### *3.5.5.2.2 User Asynchronous Logical Link (LE-U)*

The user asynchronous logical link (LE-U) is used to carry all asynchronous and framed user data. The LE-U link is carried on the LE logical transport. Packets on the LE-U link are identified by one of two reserved LLID values.



One value is used to indicate whether the baseband packet contains the start of an L2CAP frame and the other indicates a continuation of a previous frame or empty PDU. This ensures correct synchronization of the L2CAP re-assembler. The use of this technique removes the need for a more complex L2CAP header in every baseband packet, but adds the requirement that a complete L2CAP frame shall be transmitted before a new one is transmitted.

### *3.5.5.2.3 Advertising Broadcast Control Logical Link (ADVB-C)*

The LE Advertising Broadcast Control Logical Link (ADVB-C) is used to carry LE LL signaling between unconnected devices in a given area. This signaling is the control commands for gathering additional broadcast user data (scan requests) or connection requests. The control link is only carried on the default LE Advertising Broadcast logical transport.

### *3.5.5.2.4 Advertising Broadcast User Data Logical Link (ADVB-U)*

The LE Advertising Broadcast User Data Logical Link (ADVB-U) is used to carry LE advertisement broadcast user data used between devices without the need for a connection or LE-U between the devices. The user data link is only carried on the default LE Advertising Broadcast logical transport.

## 3.5.5.3 AMP Logical Links

### *3.5.5.3.1 AMP Control Logical Link (AMP-C)*

Each PAL functions differently with respect to a control logical link. When one exists, this logical link is referred to as the AMP-C logical link.

### *3.5.5.3.2 AMP User Asynchronous/Isochronous Logical Link (AMP-U)*

The AMP user asynchronous/isochronous logical link (AMP-U) is used to carry all asynchronous and isochronous framed user data over an AMP. Unlike the ACL-U logical link, the AMP-U supports multiple logical link handles per physical link and each logical link handle may have different quality of service capabilities. The details of how the AMP-U logical link is mapped to the underlying MAC/PHY is described by the PAL.

## 3.6 L2CAP CHANNELS

L2CAP provides a multiplexing role allowing many different applications to share an ACL-U or AMP-U logical link. Applications and service protocols interface with L2CAP using a channel-oriented interface to create connections to equivalent entities on other devices.

L2CAP channel endpoints are identified to their clients by a Channel Identifier (CID). This is assigned by L2CAP, and each L2CAP channel endpoint on any device has a different CID.

L2CAP channels may be configured to provide an appropriate Quality of Service (QoS) to the application. L2CAP maps the channel onto the ACL-U logical link, LE-U, or one of the AMP-U logical links.

L2CAP supports channels that are connection-oriented and others that are group-oriented. Group-oriented channels may be mapped onto the ASB-U logical link, or implemented as iterated transmission to each member in turn over an ACL-U logical link.

Apart from the creation, configuration and dismantling of channels, the main role of L2CAP is to multiplex service data units (SDUs) from the channel clients onto the ACL-U, LE-U, or AMP-U logical links, and to carry out a simple level of scheduling, selecting SDUs according to relative priority.

L2CAP can provide per channel flow control with the peer L2CAP layer. This option is selected by the application when the channel is established. L2CAP can also provide enhanced error detection and retransmission to (a) reduce the probability of undetected errors being passed to the application and (b) recover from loss of portions of the user data when the Baseband layer performs a flush on the ACL-U logical link.

In the case where an HCI is present, the L2CAP is also required to segment L2CAP SDUs into fragments that will fit into the baseband buffers, and also to operate a token based flow control procedure over the HCI, submitting fragments to the baseband only when allowed to do so. This may affect the scheduling algorithm.

## 4 COMMUNICATION TOPOLOGY AND OPERATION

### 4.1 PICONET TOPOLOGY

#### 4.1.1 BR/EDR Topology

Any time a link is created using the BR/EDR Controller it is within the context of a piconet. A piconet consists of two or more devices that occupy the same BR/EDR physical channel.

Connected BR/EDR devices communicate on the same physical channel by synchronizing with a common clock and hopping sequence. The common (piconet) clock is identical to the Bluetooth clock of one of the devices in the piconet, known as the master of the piconet, and the hopping sequence is derived from the master's clock and the master's Bluetooth device address. All other synchronized devices are referred to as slaves in the piconet.

The terms master and slave are only used when describing these roles in a piconet.

A number of independent piconets may exist in close proximity. Each piconet has a different physical channel (that is a different master device and an independent timing and hopping sequence).

A Bluetooth device may participate concurrently in two or more piconets. It does this on a time-division multiplexing basis. A Bluetooth device can never be a master of more than one piconet. (Since in BR/EDR the piconet is defined by synchronization to the master's Bluetooth clock it is impossible to be the master of two or more piconets.) A Bluetooth device may be a slave in many independent piconets.

A Bluetooth device that is a member of two or more piconets is said to be involved in a scatternet. Involvement in a scatternet does not necessarily imply any network routing capability or function in the Bluetooth device. The Bluetooth core protocols do not, and are not intended to offer such functionality, which is the responsibility of higher level protocols and is outside the scope of the Bluetooth core specification.

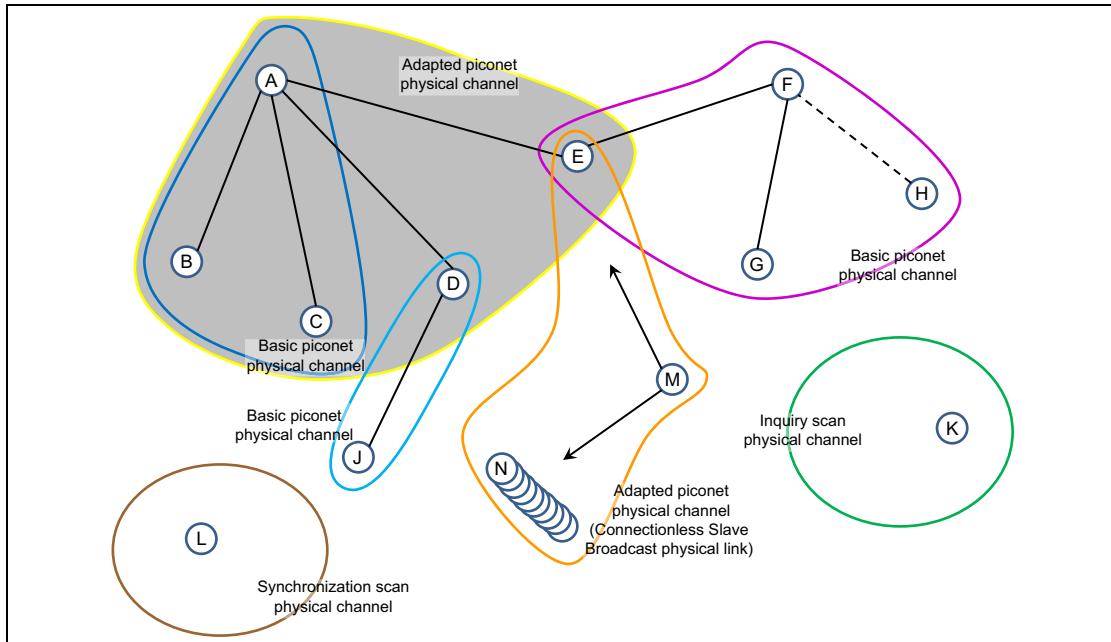


Figure 4.1: Example Bluetooth BR/EDR topology

In Figure 4.1 an example topology is shown that demonstrates a number of the architectural features described below. Device A is a master in a piconet (represented by the shaded area, and known as piconet A) with devices B, C, D and E as slaves. Three other piconets are shown: a) one piconet with device F as master (known as piconet F) and devices E, G and H as slaves, b) one piconet with device D as master (known as piconet D) and device J as slave, and c) one piconet with device M as master (known as piconet M) and device E as a slave and many devices N as slaves.

In piconet A there are two physical channels. Devices B and C are using the basic piconet physical channel (represented by the blue enclosure) as they do not support adaptive frequency hopping. Devices D and E are capable of supporting adaptive frequency hopping, and are using the adapted piconet physical channel (represented by the red enclosure). Device A is capable of adaptive frequency hopping, and operates in a TDM basis on both physical channels according to which slave is being addressed.

Piconet D and piconet F are both using only a basic piconet physical channel (represented by the cyan and magenta enclosures respectively). In the case of piconet D this is because device J does not support the adaptive hopping mode. Although device D supports adaptive hopping it cannot use it in this piconet. In piconet F device F does not support adaptive hopping, and therefore it cannot be used in this piconet.

Piconet M (represented by the orange enclosure) uses a Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link over the adaptive piconet physical channel to send Profile Broadcast Data to many slave devices including E and N.

Device K is shown in the same locality as the other devices. It is not currently a member of a piconet, but has services that it offers to other Bluetooth devices. It is currently listening on its inquiry scan physical channel (represented by the green enclosure), awaiting an inquiry request from another device.

Device L is shown in the same locality as the other devices. It is not currently a member of a piconet, but is currently listening on its Synchronization scan physical channel (represented by the brown enclosure), awaiting a synchronization train from another device.

#### 4.1.2 LE Topology

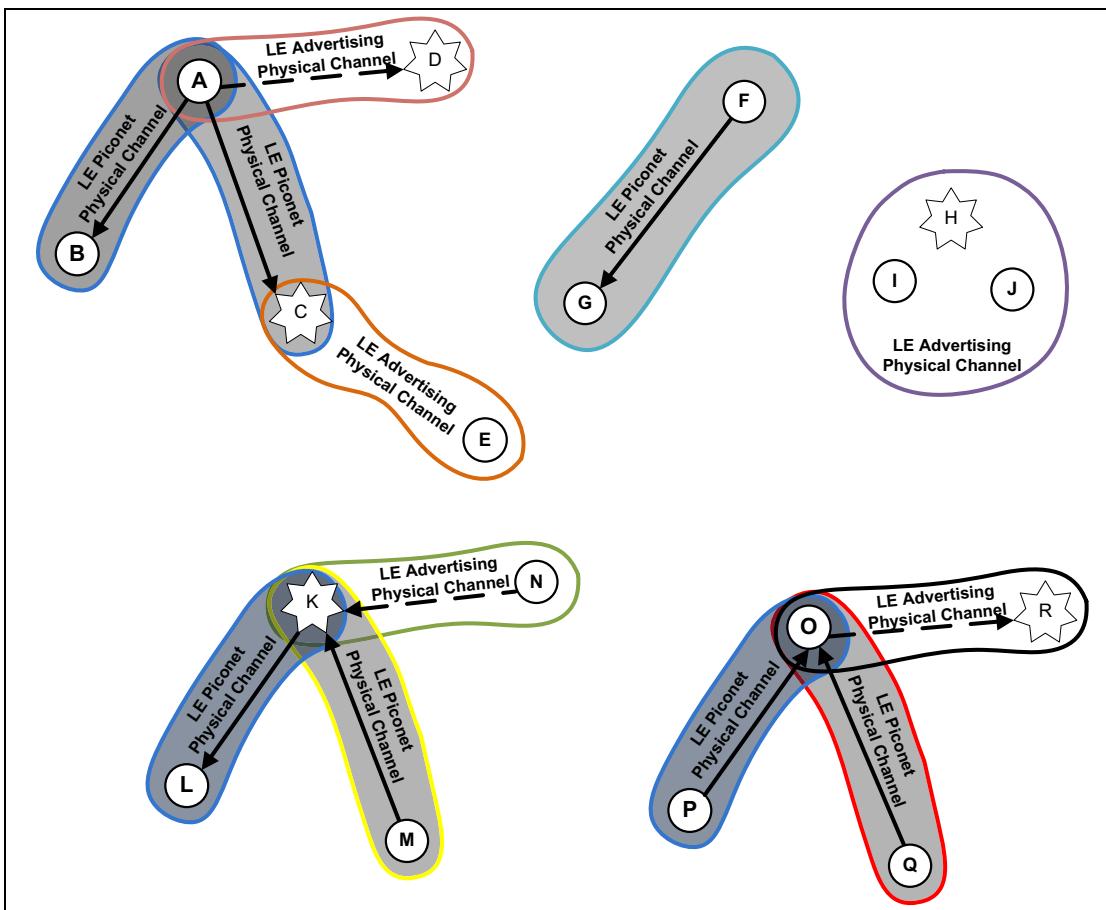


Figure 4.2: Example of Bluetooth LE topology

In [Figure 4.2](#) an example topology is shown that demonstrates a number of the LE architectural features described below. Device A is a master in a piconet (represented by the shaded area, and known as piconet A) with devices B and C as slaves. Unlike BR/EDR slaves, LE slaves do not share a common physical channel with the master. Each slave communicates on a separate physical channel with the master. One other piconet is shown with device F as master (known as piconet F) and device G as a slave. Device K is in a scatternet (known as scatternet K). Device K is master of device L and slave of device M. Device O is also in a scatternet (known as scatternet O). Device O is slave of

device P and slave of device Q. Note: in the figure, solid arrows point from master to slave; dashed arrows, indicating a connection initiation, point from initiator to advertiser using a connectable advertising event; devices that are advertising are indicated using stars.

There are five other groups of devices shown:

1. Device D is an advertiser and device A is also an initiator (known as group D).
2. Device E is a scanner and device C is also an advertiser (known as group C).
3. Device H is an advertiser and devices I and J are scanners (known as group H).
4. Device K is also an advertiser and device N is an initiator (known as group K).
5. Device R is an advertiser and device O is also an initiator (known as group R).

Devices A and B are using one LE piconet physical channel (represented by the blue enclosure and a dark gray background). Devices A and C are using another LE piconet physical channel (represented by the blue enclosure and a lighter gray background). In group D, device D is advertising using a connectable advertising event on the advertising physical channel (represented by the green enclosure) and device A is an initiator. Device A can form a connection with device D and add the device to piconet A. In group C, device C is also advertising on the advertising physical channel (represented by the orange enclosure) using any type of advertising events that are being captured by device E as a scanner. Group D and group C may be using different advertising PHY channels or different timings to avoid collisions.

In piconet F, there is one physical channel. Devices F and G are using an LE piconet physical channel (represented by the aqua enclosure). Device F is the master and device G is the slave.

In group H, there is one physical channel. Devices H, I and J are using an LE advertising physical channel (represented by the purple enclosure). Device H is an advertiser and devices I and J are scanners.

In scatternet K, devices K and L are using one LE piconet physical channel. Devices K and M are using another LE piconet physical channel. In group K, device K is also advertising using a connectable advertising event on the advertising physical channel and device N is an initiator. Device N can form a connection with device K resulting in device K being slave of two devices and master of one device at the same time.

In scatternet O, devices O and P are using one LE piconet physical channel. Devices O and Q are using another LE piconet physical channel. In group R, device R is advertising using a connectable advertising event on the advertising physical channel and device O is an initiator. Device O can form a connection with device R resulting in device O being slave of two devices and master of one device at the same time.

## 4.2 OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES AND MODES

The typical operational mode of a Bluetooth device is to be connected to other Bluetooth devices (in a piconet) and exchanging data with those Bluetooth devices. As Bluetooth is an ad-hoc wireless communications technology, there are a number of operational procedures that enable piconets to be formed so that the subsequent communications can take place. Procedures and modes are applied at different layers in the architecture and therefore a device may be engaged in a number of these procedures and modes concurrently.

### 4.2.1 BR/EDR Procedures

#### 4.2.1.1 Inquiry (Discovering) Procedure

Bluetooth devices use the inquiry procedure to discover nearby devices, or to be discovered by devices in their locality.

The inquiry procedure is asymmetrical. A Bluetooth device that tries to find other nearby devices is known as an inquiring device and actively sends inquiry requests. Bluetooth devices that are available to be found are known as discoverable devices and listen for these inquiry requests and send responses. The inquiry procedure uses a special physical channel for the inquiry requests and responses.

Both inquiring and discoverable devices may already be connected to other Bluetooth devices in a piconet. Any time spent inquiring or occupying the inquiry scan physical channel needs to be balanced with the demands of the QoS commitments on existing logical transports.

The inquiry procedure does not make use of any of the architectural layers above the physical channel, although a transient physical link may be considered to be present during the exchange of inquiry and inquiry response information.

##### *4.2.1.1.1 Extended Inquiry Response*

An Extended Inquiry Response can be used to provide miscellaneous information during the inquiry response procedure. Data types are defined for such things as local name and supported services, information that otherwise would have to be obtained by establishing a connection. A device that receives a local name and a list of supported services in an extended inquiry response does not have to connect to do a remote name request and an SDP service search, thereby shortening the time to useful information. It is recommended that a device includes all supported services and a significant portion of its local name, if that name is too long to be sent in its entirety, in the extended inquiry response.

The extended inquiry response procedure is backwards compatible with the standard inquiry response procedure.

#### 4.2.1.2 Paging (Connecting) Procedure

The procedure for forming connections is asymmetrical and requires that one Bluetooth device carries out the page (connection) procedure while the other Bluetooth device is connectable (page scanning). The procedure is targeted, so that the page procedure is only responded to by one specified Bluetooth device.

The connectable device uses a special physical channel to listen for connection request packets from the paging (connecting) device. This physical channel has attributes that are specific to the connectable device, hence only a paging device with knowledge of the connectable device is able to communicate on this channel.

Both paging and connectable devices may already be connected to other Bluetooth devices. Any time spent paging or occupying the page scan physical channel needs to be balanced with the demands of the QoS commitments on existing logical transports.

#### 4.2.1.3 Connected Mode

After a successful connection procedure over the BR/EDR Controller, there is a piconet physical channel to which both devices are connected, there is a physical link between the devices, and there are default ACL-C and ACL-U logical links. When in the connected mode it is possible to create and release additional logical links, and to change the modes of the physical and logical links while remaining connected to the piconet physical channel. It is also possible for the device to carry out inquiry, paging or scanning procedures or to be connected to other piconets without needing to disconnect from the original piconet physical channel.

Additional logical links are created using the Link Manager that exchanges Link Manager Protocol messages with the remote Bluetooth device to negotiate the creation and settings for these links. One of these links (ACL-C) transports the LMP control protocol and is invisible to the layers above the Link Manager. The other link (ACL-U) transports the L2CAP signaling protocol and any multiplexed L2CAP best-effort channels. It is common to refer to a default ACL logical transport, which can be resolved by context, but typically refers to the default ACL-U logical link. Also note that these two logical links share a logical transport.

AMP physical links may be established in connected mode. Once an AMP physical link is created, one or more AMP-U logical links may be established to transport L2CAP user data.

During the time that a slave device is actively connected to a piconet there is always a default ACL logical transport between the slave and the master device. There are two methods of deleting the default ACL logical transport. The first method is to detach the device from the piconet physical channel, at

which time the entire hierarchy of L2CAP channels, logical links, and logical transports between the devices is deleted.

The second method is to place the physical link to the slave device in the park state, at which time it gives up its default ACL logical transport. This is only allowed if all other logical transports have been deleted (except for the ASB logical transport that cannot be explicitly created or deleted). It is not allowed to park a device while it has any logical transports other than the default ACL and ASB logical transports.

When the slave device physical link is parked, its default ACL logical transport is released and the ASB logical transport is replaced with a PSB logical transport. The ACL-C and ACL-U logical links that are multiplexed onto the default ACL logical transport remain in existence but cannot be used for the transport of data. The Link Manager on the master device restricts itself to the use of LMP messages that are allowed to be transported over the PSB-C logical link. The Channel Manager and L2CAP Resource Manager ensure that no L2CAP unicast data traffic is submitted to the controller while the device is parked. The Channel Manager may decide to manage the parking and unparking of the device as necessary to allow data to be transported.

#### 4.2.1.4 Hold Mode

Hold mode is not a general device mode, but applies to unreserved slots on the physical link. When in this mode, the physical link is only active during slots that are reserved for the operation of the synchronous link types SCO and eSCO. All asynchronous links are inactive. Hold modes operate once for each invocation and are then exited when complete, returning to the previous mode.

#### 4.2.1.5 Sniff Mode

Sniff mode is not a general device mode, but applies to the default ACL logical transports. When in this mode the availability of these logical transports is modified by defining a duty cycle consisting of periods of presence and absence. Devices that have their default ACL logical transports in sniff mode may use the absent periods to engage in activity on another physical channel, or to enter reduced power mode. Sniff mode only affects the default ACL logical transports (i.e. their shared ACL logical transport), and does not apply to any additional SCO or eSCO logical transports that may be active. The periods of presence and absence of the physical link on the piconet physical channel is derived as a union of all logical transports that are built on the physical link.

Sniff subrating provides a mechanism for further reducing the active duty cycle, thereby enhancing the power-saving capability of sniff mode. Sniff subrating allows a Host to create a guaranteed access-like connection by specifying maximum transmit and receive latencies. This allows the basebands to optimize the low power performance without having to exit and re-enter sniff mode using Link Manager commands.

Note that broadcast logical transports have no defined expectations for presence or absence. A master device should aim to schedule broadcasts to coincide with periods of physical link presence within the piconet physical channel, but this may not always be possible or practical. Repetition of broadcasts is defined to improve the possibilities for reaching multiple slaves without overlapping presence periods. However, broadcast logical transports cannot be considered to be reliable.

#### 4.2.1.6 Parked State

A slave device may remain connected to a piconet but have its physical link in the parked state. In this state the device cannot support any logical links to the master with the exception of the PSB-C and PSB-U logical links that are used for all communication between the piconet master and the parked slave.

When the physical link to a slave device is parked this means that there are restrictions on when the master and slave may communicate, defined by the PSB logical transport parameters. During times when the PSB logical transport is inactive (or absent) then the devices may engage in activity on other physical channels, or enter reduced power mode.

#### 4.2.1.7 Role switch procedure

The role switch procedure is a method for swapping the roles of two devices connected in a piconet. The procedure involves moving from the physical channel that is defined by the original master device to the physical channel that is defined by the new master device. In the process of swapping from one physical channel to the next, the hierarchy of physical links and logical transports over the BR/EDR Controller are removed and rebuilt, with the exception of the ASB and PSB logical transports that are implied by the topology and are not preserved. Note that the role switch procedure does not affect AMP physical channels. After the role switch, the original piconet physical channel may cease to exist or may be continued if the original master had other slaves that are still connected to the channel.

The procedure only copies the default ACL logical links and supporting layers to the new physical channel. Any additional logical transports are not copied by this procedure, and if required this must be carried out by higher layers. The LT\_ADDRs of any affected transports may not be preserved as the values may already be in use on the new physical channel.

If there are any QoS commitments on the original logical transports, then these are not preserved after a role switch. These must be renegotiated after the role switch has completed.

#### 4.2.1.8 Enhanced Data Rate

Enhanced Data Rate is a method of extending the capacity and types of Bluetooth packets for the purposes of increasing the maximum throughput, providing better support for multiple connections, and lowering power consumption, while the remainder of the architecture is unchanged.

Enhanced Data Rate may be selected as a mode that operates independently on each logical transport. Once enabled, the packet type bits in the packet header are interpreted differently from their meaning in Basic Rate mode. This different interpretation is clarified in conjunction with the logical transport address field in the header. The result of this interpretation allows the packet payload header and payload to be received and demodulated according to the packet type. Enhanced Data Rate can be enabled only for ACL-U, eSCO-S logical transports and cannot be enabled for ACL-C, SCO-S, and the broadcast logical transports.

#### 4.2.1.9 Connectionless Slave Broadcast Mode

Connectionless slave broadcast mode allows a piconet master to transmit profile broadcast data to any number of connected slave devices using the BR/EDR adapted piconet physical channel. To enter this mode, the master reserves a specific logical transport as the dedicated CSB logical transport and starts broadcasting data using the Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link and the synchronization train procedure. A single Profile Broadcast Data logical link is defined, which carries profile broadcast data using the Connectionless Slave Broadcast logical transport. The profile broadcast data is unframed and bypasses L2CAP.

To receive the Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets, a device must connect with the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter which has already established a CSB logical transport. To connect, a device follows the Synchronization Scan procedure to obtain the time schedule of the physical link and then starts receiving the Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets. Once connected, Connectionless Slave Broadcast receivers can receive profile broadcast data on the dedicated CSB logical transport and PBD logical link.

### **4.2.2 LE Procedures**

#### 4.2.2.1 Device Filtering Procedure

The device filtering procedure is a method for controllers to reduce the number of devices requiring communication responses. Since it is not required to respond to requests from every device, it reduces the number of transmissions an LE Controller is required to make which reduces power consumption. It also reduces the communication the controller would be required to make with the host. This results in additional power savings since the Host does not have to be involved.

An advertising or scanning device may employ device filtering to restrict the devices from which it receives advertising packets, scan requests or connection requests. In LE, some advertising packets received by a scanning device require that the scanning device send a request to the advertising device. This advertisement can be ignored if device filtering is used and the advertising device is being filtered. A similar situation occurs with connection requests. Connection requests must be responded to by advertisers unless a device filter is used to limit the devices to which the advertiser is required to respond. Advertisers can also use device filters to limit the devices in which it will accept a scan request or connection request.

This device filtering is accomplished through the use of a “White List” located in the LL block of the controller. A white list enumerates the remote devices that are allowed to communicate with the local device. When a white list is in effect, transmissions from devices that are not in the white list will be ignored by the LL. Since device filtering occurs in the LL it can have a significant impact on power consumption by filtering (or ignoring) advertising packets, scan requests or connection requests from being sent to the higher layers for handling.

The use of device filtering during certain procedures needs to be evaluated carefully to ensure devices are not unintentionally ignored, which may cause interoperability problems when attempting to establish connections or receive advertising broadcasts.

#### 4.2.2.2 Advertising Procedure

An advertiser uses the advertising procedure to perform unidirectional broadcasts to devices in the area. The unidirectional broadcast occurs without a connection between the advertising device and the listening devices. The advertising procedure can be used to establish connections with nearby initiating devices or used to provide periodic broadcast of user data to scanning devices listening on the advertising channel. The advertising procedure uses the advertising physical channel for all advertising broadcasts.

An LE device connected in an LE piconet may advertise using any type of advertising event. Time spent advertising while connected needs to be balanced with the connection requirements needed to maintain the already established connection(s) (if the device is a slave in the piconet then it needs to maintain its connection with the master and if the device is the master it needs to maintain its connection(s) with the one or more slaves in the piconet).

Advertising devices may receive scan requests from listening devices in order to get additional user data from the advertising device. Scan responses are sent by the advertising device to the device making the scan request over the same advertising physical channel. Whereas the broadcast user data sent as part of the advertising packets is typically dynamic in nature, scan response data is generally static in nature.



An advertising device may receive connection requests from initiator devices on the advertising broadcast physical channel. If the advertising device was using a connectable advertising event and the initiating device is not being filtered by the device filtering procedure, the advertising device ceases advertising and enters the connected mode. The device can begin advertising again after it is in the connected mode.

#### 4.2.2.3 Scanning Procedure

A scanning device uses the scanning procedure to listen for unidirectional broadcasts of user data from advertising devices using the advertising physical channel. A scanning device can request additional user data from an advertising device by making a scan request over the advertising physical channel. The advertising device responds to these requests with additional user data sent to the scanning device over the advertising physical channel.

The scanning procedure can be used while connected to other LE devices in an LE piconet. Time spent scanning while connected needs to be balanced with the connection requirements needed to maintain the already established connection with the other LE devices in the piconet.

If the broadcasts are connectable advertising events and the scanning device is in the initiator mode, it can initiate a connection by sending a connection request on the advertising broadcast physical channel to the advertising device. Once the connection request is sent, the scanning device ceases the initiator mode scanning for additional broadcasts and enters the connected mode. The device can use the scanning procedure after it enters the connected mode. For a master device, using the initiator mode and scanning for connectable advertisements is how additional devices can be added to the master's LE piconet.

#### 4.2.2.4 Discovering Procedure

Bluetooth devices use the advertising procedure and scanning procedure to discover nearby devices, or to be discovered by devices in a given area.

The discovery procedure is asymmetrical. A Bluetooth device that tries to find other nearby devices is known as a discovering device and listens for devices advertising scannable advertising events. Bluetooth devices that are available to be found are known as discoverable devices and actively broadcast scannable advertising events over the advertising broadcast physical channel.

Both discovering and discoverable devices may already be connected to other Bluetooth devices in a piconet. Any time spent inquiring or occupying the advertising broadcast physical channel needs to be balanced with the connection requirements needed to maintain the already established connection with the other LE devices in the piconet.

Using device filtering by the scanning device will prevent the scanning device from discovering all the devices in a given area.

#### 4.2.2.5 Connecting Procedure

The procedure for forming connections is asymmetrical and requires that one Bluetooth device carries out the advertising procedure while the other Bluetooth device carries out the scanning procedure. The advertising procedure can be targeted, so that only one device will respond to the advertising. The scanning device can also target an advertising device by first discovering that the advertising device is present in a connectable manner, and in the given area, and then scanning only connectable advertising events from that device using the device filter. After receiving connectable advertising events from the targeted advertising device, it can initiate a connection by sending the connection request to the targeted advertising device over the advertising broadcast physical channel.

Time spent scanning while connected needs to be balanced with the connection requirements needed to maintain the already established connection with the other LE devices in the piconet.

#### 4.2.2.6 Connected Mode

After a successful connection procedure, the devices are physically connected to each other within a piconet. This means that there is a piconet physical channel to which they are both connected, there is a physical link between the devices, and there are default LE-C and LE-U logical links. When in the connected mode it is possible to change the properties of the physical and logical links while remaining connected to the piconet physical channel. It is also possible for the device to carry out advertising, scanning or discovery procedures without needing to disconnect from the original piconet physical channel.

Additional logical links are created using the Link Manager that exchanges LL Protocol messages with the remote Bluetooth device to negotiate the creation and settings for these links. One of these links (LE-C) transports the LL control protocol and is invisible to the layers above the Link Manager. The other link (LE-U) transports the L2CAP signaling protocol and any multiplexed L2CAP best-effort channels. It is common to refer to a default LE ACL logical transport, which can be resolved by context, but typically refers to the default LE-U logical link. Also note that these two logical links share a logical transport.

During the time that a slave device is actively connected to a piconet there is always a default LE ACL logical transport between the slave and the master device. The method of deleting the default LE ACL logical transport is to detach the device from the piconet physical channel, at which time the entire hierarchy of L2CAP channels, logical links, and logical transports between the devices is deleted.

### 4.2.3 AMP Procedures

#### 4.2.3.1 AMP Discovery Procedures

The AMP Manager is responsible for discovering local AMP Controller(s) and maintaining that list over time as AMPs may be added or removed dynamically from the system. The local AMP Manager may request a list of AMPs from the remote AMP Manager. After the list of AMPs has been requested by the remote device, when an AMP is added or removed from the system, the local AMP Manager will notify that remote AMP Manager of the change.

Each AMP is identified with an ID and a type. Once the list of AMPs has been received, the AMP Manager may request information (AMP\_Info) for each AMP.

#### 4.2.3.2 Physical Link Creation Procedure

To set up an L2CAP channel with a remote device over an AMP physical link (AMP channel), the AMP Manager first discovers the remote AMP(s), collects the necessary information about the remote AMP(s) to set up a physical link in an optimal way and then initiates the physical link creation. This is done over a dedicated L2CAP channel.

The AMP Manager provides the remote AMP information that it collected about the remote AMP to the local AMP PAL. The local AMP PAL then uses this information to create the AMP physical link.

#### 4.2.3.3 Logical Link Creation Procedure

Once a physical link exists, L2CAP creates an AMP logical link with the desired QoS. An L2CAP channel is then created over the logical link, at which point the channel is ready for data communication.

## 5 SECURITY OVERVIEW

### 5.1 SECURITY ARCHITECTURE

The Bluetooth security model includes five distinct security features: pairing, bonding, device authentication, encryption and message integrity.

- Pairing: the process for creating a shared secret key (the “link key”)
- Bonding: the act of storing the link key created during pairing for use in subsequent connections in order to form a trusted device pair
- Device authentication: verification that the two devices have the same link key
- Encryption: message confidentiality
- Message integrity: protects against message forgeries

The Bluetooth Core security architecture has evolved over time. Initially, pairing utilized the E21 or E22 algorithms based on SAFER+. This version of pairing is referred to as “legacy pairing”. Device authentication was initially based on the E1 algorithm, which was also based on SAFER+. Encryption utilizes the E0 algorithm derived from the Massey-Rueppel algorithm. There was also no provision for cryptographic message integrity. Note that while the CRC provides some integrity protection, it is not considered to provide cryptographic integrity as it can be easily forged.

Version 2.1 + EDR of the Core Specification introduced Secure Simple Pairing, which utilizes FIPS-approved algorithms (SHA-256, HMAC-SHA-256 and the P-192 elliptic curve) and introduced four association models: Just Works, Numeric Comparison, Passkey Entry and Out-Of-Band (see [Section 5.2 on page 90](#)). Device authentication and encryption remained the same when Secure Simple Pairing was introduced.

Version 3.0 + HS of the Core Specification added support for AMPs (see [Section 5.5 on page 97](#)).

Version 4.0 added the entire security model for Low Energy (see [Section 5.4 on page 96](#)) but did not change any security functionality for BR/EDR or AMP.

Version 4.1 added the Secure Connections feature, which upgraded Secure Simple Pairing to utilize the P-256 elliptic curve, device authentication to use FIPS-approved algorithms (HMAC-SHA-256 and AES-CTR). Secure Connections also added message integrity (AES-CCM).

The security key hierarchy for BR/EDR and AMP is shown in [Figure 5.1 on page 90](#). The key hierarchy is different depending on whether a physical link is using Secure Connections or legacy security procedures and algorithms.

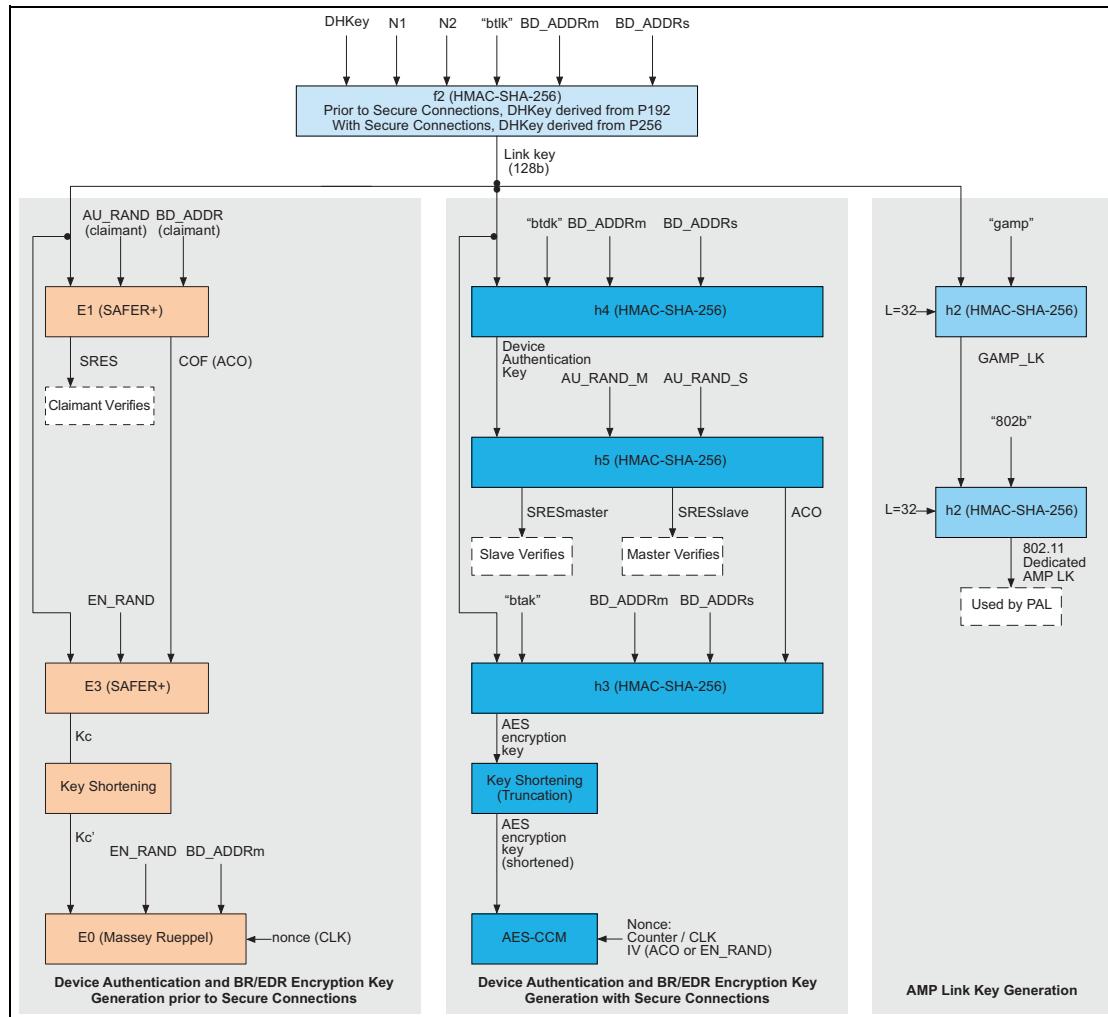


Figure 5.1: BR/EDR and AMP Key Hierarchy

## 5.2 BR/EDR SECURE SIMPLE PAIRING

The primary goal of Secure Simple Pairing is to simplify the pairing procedure for the user. Secondary goals are to maintain or improve the security in Bluetooth wireless technology. Since high levels of security and ease-of-use are often at opposite ends of the spectrum in many technologies and products, much care has been taken to maximize security while minimizing complexity from the end user's point of view.

### 5.2.1 Security Goals

Secure Simple Pairing has two security goals: protection against passive eavesdropping and protection against man-in-the-middle (MITM) attacks (active eavesdropping). It is a goal of Secure Simple Pairing to exceed the maximum security level provided by the use of a 16 alphanumeric PIN with the pairing algorithm used in Bluetooth Core Specification version 2.0 + EDR and earlier versions. Note that many Bluetooth devices compliant with Bluetooth

Core Specification 2.0 + EDR and earlier versions use a 4-digit PIN or a fixed PIN of commonly known values significantly limiting the security on the link.

### 5.2.2 Passive Eavesdropping Protection

A strong link key coupled with a strong encryption algorithm is necessary to give the user protection against passive eavesdropping. The strength of the link key is based on the amount of entropy (or randomness) in its generation process which would not be known by an attacker. Using legacy pairing, the only source of entropy is the PIN which, in many use cases, is typically four digits either selected by the user or fixed for a given product. Therefore, if the pairing procedure and one authentication exchange is recorded one can run an exhaustive search to find the PIN in a very short amount of time on commonly available computing hardware. With Secure Simple Pairing, the recording attack becomes much harder as the attacker must have solved a hard problem in public key cryptography in order to derive the link key from the recorded information. This protection is independent of the length of the passkey or other numeric values that the user must handle. Secure Simple Pairing gives the same resistance against the recording and passive eavesdropping attacks even when the user is not required to do anything.

Secure Simple Pairing uses Elliptic Curve Diffie Hellman (ECDH) public key cryptography as a means to thwart passive eavesdropping attacks. ECDH provides a very high degree of strength against passive eavesdropping attacks but it may be subject to MITM attacks, which however, are much harder to perform in practice than the passive eavesdropping attack (see [Section 5.2.3, “Man-In-The-Middle Protection,” on page 92](#)).

Using the security protocols in the Bluetooth Core Specification version 2.0 + EDR and earlier with a 16 numeric digit PIN achieves about 53 bits of entropy whereas a 16 character alphanumeric, case sensitive PIN yields about 95 bits of entropy when the entire 62 character set is used ([0, ... 9, 'A', ... 'Z', 'a', ... 'z']). For devices that do not support the Secure Connections feature (introduced in Core Specification v4.1), Secure Simple Pairing has approximately 96 bits of entropy using the FIPS approved P-192 elliptic curve which is at least as good as the entropy in Bluetooth Core Specification 2.0 + EDR and earlier using a 16 character, alphanumeric, case sensitive PIN. For devices that do support the Secure Connections feature, Secure Simple Pairing has approximately 128 bits of entropy using the FIPS-approved P-256 elliptic curve. ECDH cryptography was selected over standard Diffie Hellman (often referred to as DH76) since it is computationally less complex and less likely to exceed the low computational capacity in common Bluetooth Controllers.

### 5.2.3 Man-In-The-Middle Protection

A man-in-the-middle (MITM) attack occurs when a user wants to connect two devices but instead of connecting directly with each other they unknowingly connect to a third (attacking) device that plays the role of the device they are attempting to pair with. The third device then relays information between the two devices giving the illusion that they are directly connected. The attacking device may even eavesdrop on communication between the two devices (known as active eavesdropping) and is able to insert and modify information on the connection. In this type of attack, all of the information exchanged between the two devices are compromised and the attacker may inject commands and information into each of the devices thus potentially damaging the function of the devices. Devices falling victim to the attack are capable of communicating only when the attacker is present. If the attacker is not active or out range, the two victim devices will not be able to communicate directly with each other and the user will notice it.

To prevent MITM attacks, Secure Simple Pairing offers two user assisted numeric methods: numerical comparison or passkey entry. If Secure Simple Pairing would use 16 decimal digit numbers, then the usability would be the same as using legacy pairing with 16 decimal digit PIN. The chance for a MITM to succeed inserting its own link keys in this case is a  $1 \text{ in } 10^{16} = 2^{53}$  pairing instances, which is an unnecessarily low probability.

Secure Simple Pairing protects the user from MITM attacks with a goal of offering a 1 in 1,000,000 chance that a MITM could mount a successful attack. The strength of the MITM protections was selected to minimize the user impact by using a six digit number for numerical comparison and Passkey entry. This level of MITM protection was selected since, in most cases, users can be alerted to the potential presence of a MITM attacker when the connection process fails as a result of a failed MITM attack. While most users feel that provided that they have not compromised their passkey, a 4-digit key is sufficient for authentication (i.e. bank card PIN codes), the use of six digits allows Secure Simple Pairing to be FIPS compliant and this was deemed to have little perceivable usability impact.

### 5.2.4 Association Models

Secure Simple Pairing uses four association models referred to as Numeric Comparison, Just Works, Out Of Band, and Passkey Entry. Each of these association models are described in more detail in the following sections.

The association model used is deterministic based on the I/O capabilities of the two devices.

#### 5.2.4.1 Numeric Comparison

The Numeric Comparison association model is designed for scenarios where both devices are capable of displaying a six digit number and both are capable of having the user enter "yes" or "no". A good example of this model is the cell phone / PC scenario.

The user is shown a six digit number (from "000000" to "999999") on both displays and then asked whether the numbers are the same on both devices. If "yes" is entered on both devices, the pairing is successful.

The numeric comparison serves two purposes. First, since many devices do not have unique names, it provides confirmation to the user that the correct devices are connected with each other. Second, the numeric comparison provides protection against MITM attacks (see [Section 5.2.3 on page 92](#)).

Note that there is a significant difference from a cryptographic point of view between Numeric Comparison and the PIN entry model used by Bluetooth Core Specification and earlier versions. In the Numeric Comparison association model, the six digit number is an artifact of the security algorithm and not an input to it, as is the case in the Bluetooth security model. Knowing the displayed number is of no benefit in decrypting the encoded data exchanged between the two devices.

#### 5.2.4.2 Just Works

The Just Works association model is primarily designed for scenarios where at least one of the devices does not have a display capable of displaying a six digit number nor does it have a keyboard capable of entering six decimal digits. A good example of this model is the cell phone/mono headset scenario where most headsets do not have a display.

The Just Works association model uses the Numeric Comparison protocol but the user is never shown a number and the application may simply ask the user to accept the connection (exact implementation is up to the end product manufacturer).

The Just Works association model provides the same protection as the Numeric Comparison association model against passive eavesdropping but offers no protection against the MITM attack.

When compared against today's experience of a headset with a fixed PIN, the security level of the Just Works association model is considerably higher since a high degree of protection against passive eavesdropping is realized.

### 5.2.4.3 Out of Band

The Out of Band (OOB) association model is primarily designed for scenarios where an Out of Band mechanism is used to both discover the devices as well as to exchange or transfer cryptographic numbers used in the pairing process. In order to be effective from a security point of view, the Out of Band channel should provide different properties in terms of security compared to the Bluetooth radio channel. The Out of Band channel should be resistant to MITM attacks. If it is not, security may be compromised during authentication.

The user's experience differs a bit depending on the Out of Band mechanism. As an example, with a Near Field Communication (NFC) solution, the user(s) will initially touch the two devices together, and is given the option to pair the first device with the other device. If "yes" is entered, the pairing is successful. This is a single touch experience where the exchanged information is used in both devices. The information exchanged includes discovery information (such as the Bluetooth Device Address) as well as cryptographic information. One of the devices will use a Bluetooth Device Address to establish a connection with the other device. The rest of the exchanged information is used during authentication.

The OOB mechanism may be implemented as either read only or read/write. If one side is read only, a one-way authentication is performed. If both sides are read/write, a two-way authentication is performed.

The OOB protocol is selected only when the pairing process has been activated by previous OOB exchange of information and one (or both) of the device(s) gives OOB as the IO capabilities. The protocol uses the information which has been exchanged and simply asks the user to confirm connection.

The OOB association model supports any OOB mechanism where cryptographic information and the Bluetooth Device Address can be exchanged. The OOB association model does not support a solution where the user has activated a Bluetooth connection and would like to use OOB for authentication only.

### 5.2.4.4 Passkey Entry

The Passkey Entry association model is primarily designed for the scenario where one device has input capability but does not have the capability to display six digits and the other device has output capabilities. A good example of this model is the PC and keyboard scenario.

The user is shown a six digit number (from "000000" to "999999") on the device with a display, and is then asked to enter the number on the other device. If the value entered on the second device is correct, the pairing is successful. Note that there is a significant difference from a cryptographic point of view between Passkey Entry and the PIN entry model used by Bluetooth Core Specification 2.0 + EDR and earlier versions. In the Passkey Entry association

model, the six digit number is independent of the security algorithm and not an input to it, as is the case in the 2.0 + EDR security model. Knowing the entered number is of no benefit in decrypting the encoded data exchanged between the two devices.

#### 5.2.4.5 Association Model Overview

The following diagram shows Secure Simple Pairing from the point of view of the technology used for discovery and then the different association possibilities.

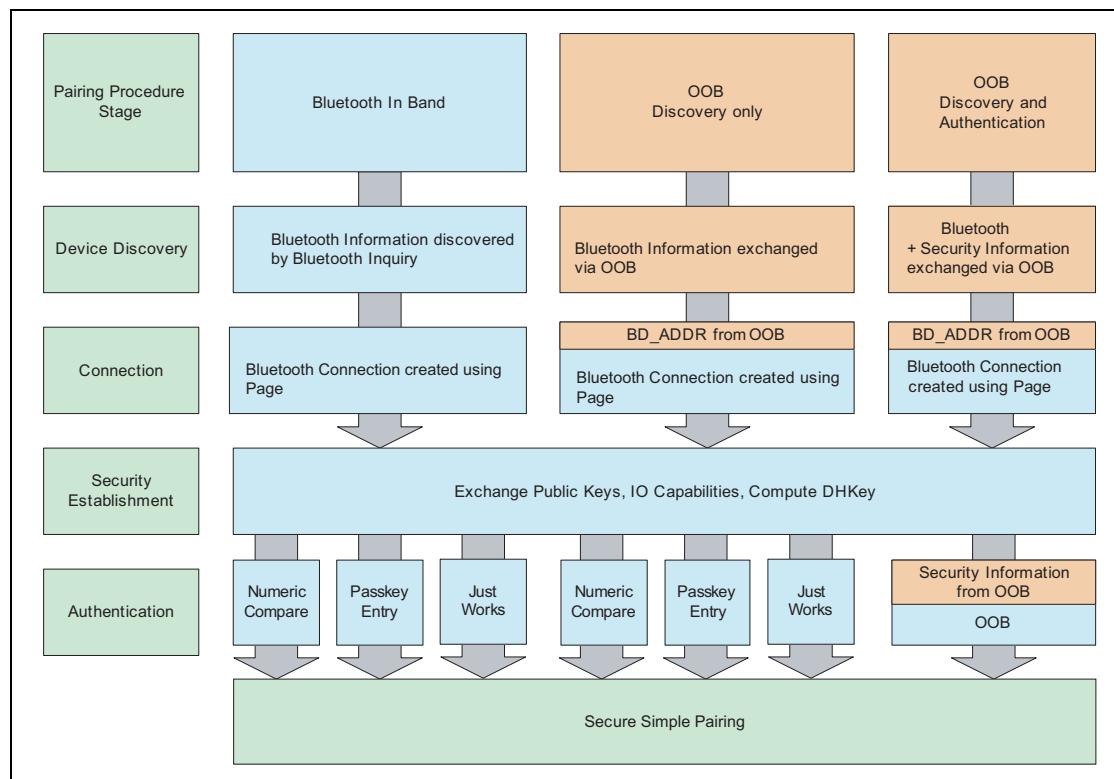


Figure 5.2: Secure Simple Pairing Association Models

### 5.3 SECURE CONNECTIONS ONLY MODE

When a device requires that only FIPS-approved algorithms are used, it should enter Secure Connections Only Mode. This is sometimes called a "FIPS Mode". This mode should be used when it is more important for a device to have high security than it is for it to maintain backwards compatibility with devices that do not support Secure Connections. The Host will enforce that the P-256 elliptic curve is used during pairing, the secure authentication sequences are used, and AES-CCM is used for encryption.

## 5.4 LE SECURITY

Bluetooth LE has some differences in security aspects with respect to BR/EDR security features such as Secure Simple Pairing. The association models are similar to Secure Simple Pairing from the user perspective and have the same names but have differences in the quality of the protection provided.

The overall goal of keeping the cost of the Controller and the complexity of a slave device to a minimum was used in making compromises on security capabilities in LE.

### 5.4.1 Association Models

Bluetooth LE uses three association models referred to as Just Works, Out of Band and Passkey Entry. Bluetooth LE does not have an equivalent of Numeric Comparison. Each of these association models is similar to Secure Simple Pairing with the following exceptions.

- Just Works and Passkey Entry do not provide any passive eavesdropping protection. This is because Secure Simple Pairing uses Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman and LE does not.

The use of each association model is based on the I/O capabilities of the devices in a similar manner as Secure Simple Pairing.

### 5.4.2 Key Generation

Key generation in Bluetooth LE is performed by the Host on each LE device independent of any other LE device. Note: Key generation in BR/EDR is performed in the Controller. By performing key generation in the Host, the key generation algorithms can be upgraded without the need to change the Controller.

Bluetooth LE uses multiple keys, each for a specific purpose, as follows:

- Confidentiality of data and device authentication
- Authentication of unencrypted data
- Device Identity

In LE a single link key is generated by combining contributions from each device into a link key used during pairing. In BR/EDR key generation is performed in the Controller.

### 5.4.3 Encryption

Encryption in Bluetooth LE uses AES-CCM cryptography. Like BR/EDR, in LE encryption is performed in the Controller.

#### 5.4.4 Signed Data

Bluetooth LE supports the ability to send authenticated data over an unencrypted ATT bearer between two devices with a trusted relationship. This is accomplished by signing the data with a Connection Signature Resolving Key (CSRK). The sending device places a signature after the Data PDU. The receiving verifies the signature and if the signature is verified the Data PDU is assumed to come from the trusted source. The signature is composed of a Message Authentication Code generated by the signing algorithm and a counter. The counter is used to protect against a replay attack and is incremented on each signed Data PDU sent.

#### 5.4.5 Privacy Feature

Bluetooth LE supports a feature that reduces the ability to track a LE device over a period of time by changing the Bluetooth device address on a frequent basis. The privacy feature is not used in the GAP discovery mode and procedures but it is used when supported during connection mode and connection procedures.

In order for devices using the privacy feature to reconnect to known devices, the device addresses used when the privacy feature is enabled, private addresses, must be resolvable to the other devices' identities. The private address is generated using the device's identity key exchanged during the bonding procedure. Use of the private address for reconnection is limited to use cases where filtering of devices is disabled. Disabling device filtering may increase the power consumption of the device since the host will need to process all device requests.

### 5.5 AMP SECURITY

AMP security does not change the user experience because it utilizes the same Secure Simple Pairing association models that were introduced in the Bluetooth 2.1 + EDR Core Specification. From the user's point of view, all radios are "paired" in one process.

AMP security starts during the Secure Simple Pairing process. The link key for BR/EDR is generated during Phase 4 of Secure Simple Pairing. A 256-bit Generic AMP Link Key (GAMP\_LK) is generated from the BR/EDR Link Key. The Generic AMP Link Key is stored in the security database alongside the BR/EDR Link Key once pairing has completed.

AMP security does not affect the BR/EDR Link Key so backwards compatibility is maintained for devices that support the Generic AMP feature with devices that do not.

When an AMP is used for the first time, a dedicated AMP key is created by the AMP Manager for that AMP type using the new Secure Simple Pairing function h2 and a KeyID for the AMP type. The length of the Dedicated AMP Link Key



depends on the AMP Type. If the Pair-wise Master key already exists due to a previous connection the AMP link key is not created and the stored key is reused.

The Dedicated AMP Link Key is sent to the PAL during the Physical Link creation process. Each PAL is responsible for using the Dedicated AMP Link Key during the security phase of the physical link establishment process. Note that a Dedicated AMP link key is used for multiple sessions over the same AMP.

Each time a dedicated AMP key is successfully created, the Generic AMP Link Key is updated. This is performed using the h2 function with KeyID "gamp."

## 6 BLUETOOTH APPLICATION ARCHITECTURE

### 6.1 BLUETOOTH PROFILES

Application interoperability in the Bluetooth system is accomplished by Bluetooth profiles. Bluetooth profiles define the required functions and features of each layer in the Bluetooth system from the PHY to L2CAP and any other protocols outside of the Core specification. The profile defines the vertical interactions between the layers as well as the peer-to-peer interactions of specific layers between devices.

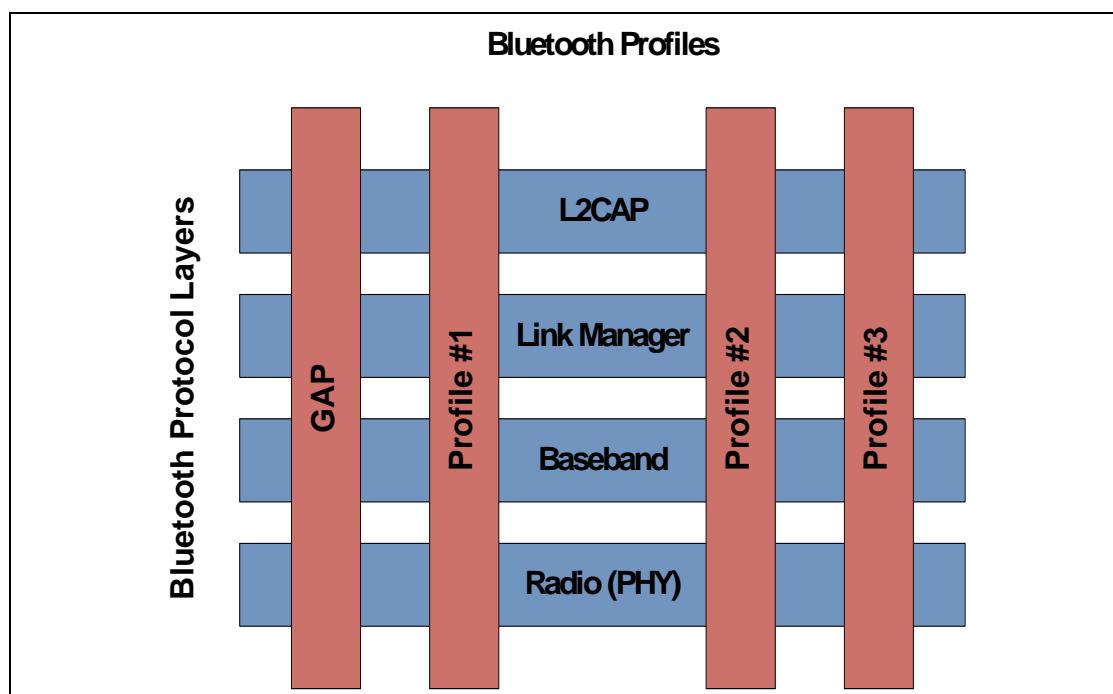


Figure 6.1: Bluetooth Profiles

In addition, application behaviors and data formats are also defined by the profile. When two devices comply with all the requirements of a Bluetooth profile, interoperability of an application is enabled.

All profiles describe service discovery requirements necessary for devices to connect, find available application services and connection information necessary for making application level connections.

## 6.2 GENERIC ACCESS PROFILE

The Bluetooth system defines a base profile which all Bluetooth devices implement. This profile is the Generic Access Profile (GAP), which defines the basic requirements of a Bluetooth device. For instance, for BR/EDR, it defines a Bluetooth device to include the Radio, Baseband, Link Manager, L2CAP, and the service discovery protocol functionality; for LE, it defines the Physical Layer, Link Layer, L2CAP, Security Manager, Attribute Protocol and Generic Attribute Profile. This ties all the various layers together to form the basic requirements for a Bluetooth device. It also describes the behaviors and methods for device discovery, connection establishment, security, authentication, association models and service discovery.

In BR/EDR, GAP defines a single role with functionality that may be present in each device. This functionality includes how devices discover each other, establish connections and describes security association models used for authentication. In BR/EDR this functionality may be present in both devices. It may be necessary for a device to implement both the initiating and accepting functionality if the device wants to discover or establish connections with all devices. A device may only include either the initiating or the accepting functionality but it requires the remote device to support the complimentary functionality to discovery or establish connections with the device. For BR/EDR, the Controller is required to support all the functionality, however the Host may limit this functionality based on the other profiles or use cases supported by the device.

In LE, GAP defines four specific roles: Broadcaster, Observer, Peripheral, and Central. A device may support multiple LE GAP roles provided that the underlying Controller supports those roles or role combinations. However, only one LE GAP role may be supported at a given time. Each role specifies the requirements for the underlying Controller. This allows for Controllers to be optimized for specific use cases.

The **Broadcaster** role is optimized for transmitter only applications. Devices supporting the broadcaster role use advertising to broadcast data. The broadcaster role does not support connections. The **Observer** role is optimized for receiver only applications. Devices supporting the observer role are the complementary device for a broadcaster and receives broadcast data contained in advertisements. The observer role does not support connections. The **Peripheral** role is optimized for devices that support a single connection and are less complex than central devices. Devices supporting the peripheral role only require Controllers that support the Controller's slave role. The **Central** role supports multiple connections and is the initiator for all connections with devices in the peripheral role. Devices supporting the central role require a Controller that support the Controller's master role and generally supports more complex functions compared to the other LE GAP roles.

## 6.3 PROFILE HIERARCHY

Since all Bluetooth devices are required to implement GAP, any additional profiles implemented by a Bluetooth device become supersets of GAP. Depending on the complexity of an application or the ability to reuse common requirements of functionality of the Bluetooth system between many applications, additional generic profiles can be created that are both a superset of GAP as well as being a superset of another profile. A top level profile that describes application interoperability is called an Application Profile.

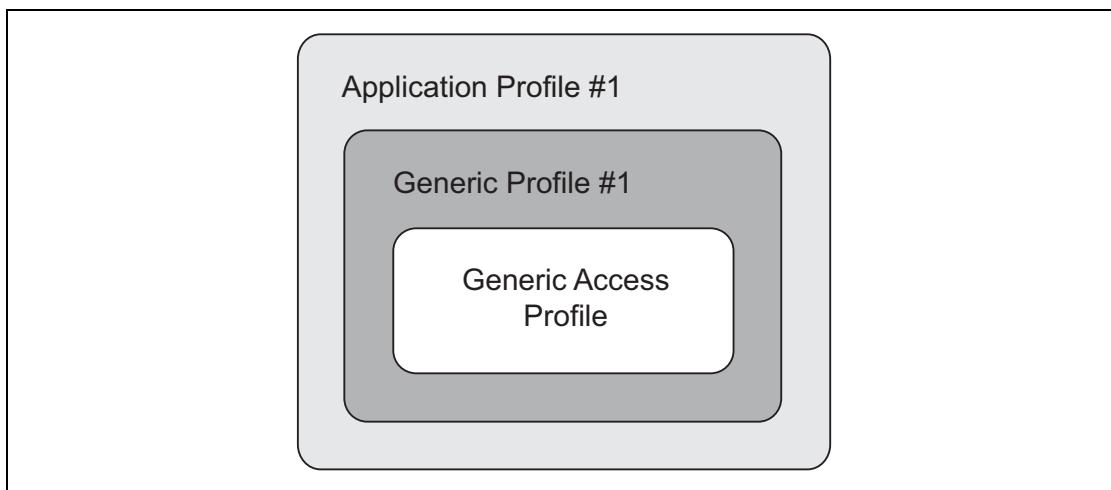


Figure 6.2: Profile Hierarchy

Application profiles contain by reference GAP and any other generic profile that describes a set of common requirements of the Bluetooth system.

## 6.4 GENERIC ATTRIBUTE PROFILE

Generic Attribute Profile (GATT) is built on top of the Attribute Protocol (ATT) and establishes common operations and a framework for the data transported and stored by the Attribute Protocol. GATT defines two roles: Server and Client. The GATT roles are not necessarily tied to specific GAP roles and may be specified by higher layer profiles. GATT and ATT are not transport specific and can be used in both BR/EDR and LE. However, GATT and ATT are mandatory to implement in LE since it is used for discovering services

The GATT server stores the data transported over the Attribute Protocol and accepts Attribute Protocol requests, commands and confirmations from the GATT client. The GATT server sends responses to requests and when configured, sends indication and notifications asynchronously to the GATT client when specified events occur on the GATT server.

GATT also specifies the format of data contained on the GATT server. Attributes, as transported by the Attribute Protocol, are formatted as **Services** and **Characteristics**. Services may contain a collection of characteristics. Charac-

teristics contain a single value and any number of descriptors describing the characteristic value.

With the defined structure of services, characteristics and characteristic descriptors a GATT client that is not specific to a profile can still traverse the GATT server and display characteristic values to the user. The characteristic descriptors can be used to display descriptions of the characteristic values that may make the value understandable by the user.

## 6.5 GATT-BASED PROFILE HIERARCHY

The GATT Profile specifies the structure in which profile data is exchanged. This structure defines basic elements such as services and characteristics, used in a profile.

The top level of the hierarchy is a profile. A profile is composed of one or more services necessary to fulfill a use case. A service is composed of characteristics or references to other services. Each characteristic contains a value and may contain optional information about the value. The service and characteristic and the components of the characteristic (i.e., value and descriptors) contain the profile data and are all stored in Attributes on the server.

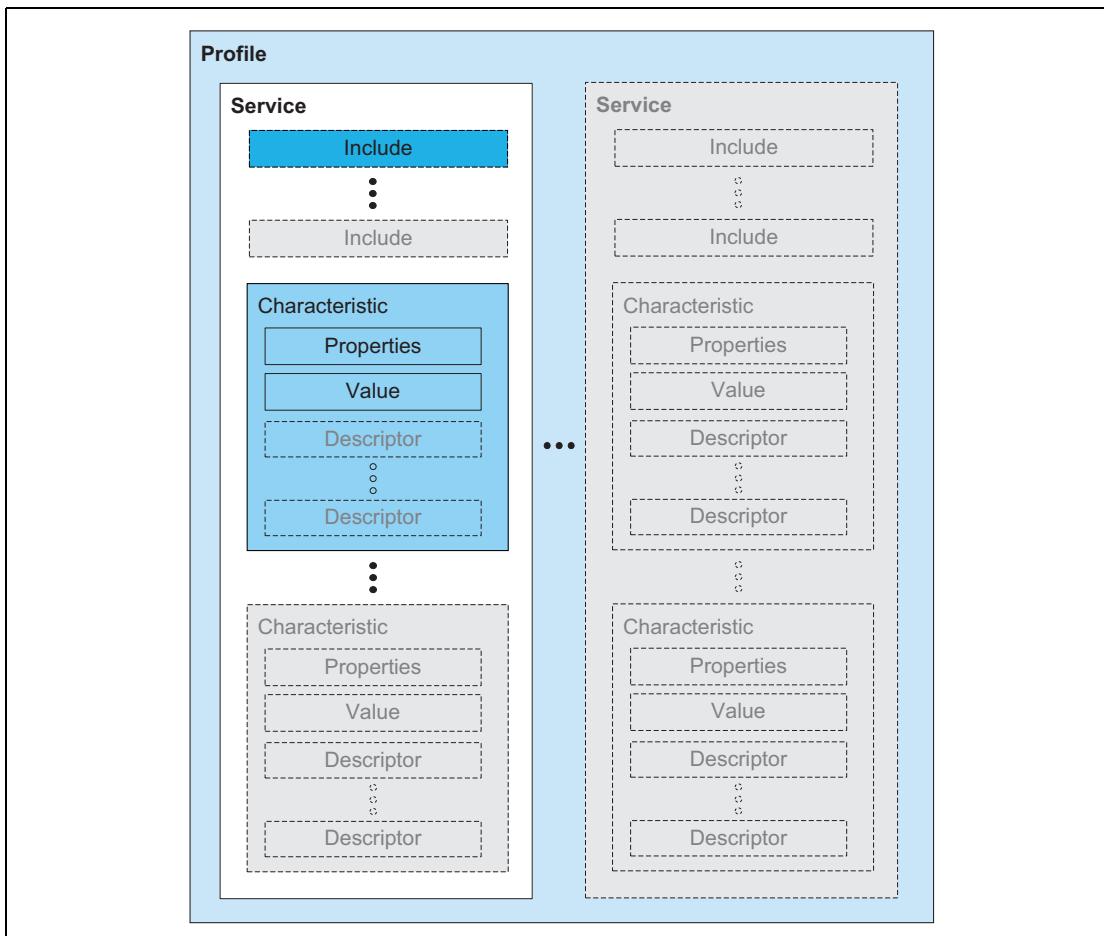


Figure 6.3: GATT-Based Profile Hierarchy

### 6.5.1 Service

A service is a collection of data and associated behaviors to accomplish a particular function or feature of a device or portions of a device. A service may reference other primary or secondary services and/or a set of characteristics that make up the service.

There are two types of services: primary and secondary. A primary service is a service that provides the primary functionality of a device. A secondary service is a service that provides auxiliary functionality of a device and is referenced from at least one primary service on the device.

To maintain backward compatibility with earlier clients, later revisions of a service definition can only add new referenced services or optional characteristics. Later revisions of a service definition are also forbidden from changing behaviors from previous revision of the service definition.

Services may be used in one or more profiles to fulfill a particular use case.

### 6.5.2 Referenced Services

A referenced service is a method to incorporate another service definition on the server as part of the service referencing it. When a service references another service, the entire referenced service becomes part of the new service including any nested referenced services and characteristics. The referenced service still exists as an independent service. There are no limits to the depth of nested references.

### 6.5.3 Characteristic

A characteristic is a value used in a service along with properties and configuration information about how the value is accessed and information about how the value is displayed or represented. A characteristic definition contains a characteristic declaration, characteristic properties, and a value. It may also contain descriptors that describe the value or permit configuration of the server with respect to the characteristic value.

## 7 COEXISTENCE AND COLLOCATION

Bluetooth devices operate in the unlicensed 2.4 GHz Industrial, Scientific and Medical (ISM) band. Many other technologies utilize the ISM band, including wireless LAN, cordless phones, and microwave ovens. The ISM band is also close enough to other frequency bands that Bluetooth devices may be an interferer of or a victim of other technologies.

Radios may be *collocated* or *non-collocated*. The term "collocated" is a loose one - in the Core Specification, collocated radios are assumed to be in the same product (a *Multi-Radio Terminal* or *MRT*) and may or may not have mechanisms to coordinate their activity in order to mitigate interference.

Determining the amount of expected isolation between radios is important for choosing an appropriate coexistence mechanism. With sufficient isolation, frequency division duplexing (FDD) techniques are the most efficient. With insufficient isolation or a shared antenna, time division duplexing (TDD) techniques need to be used. In many cases, a combination of FDD and TDD techniques are required to achieve acceptable levels of performance.

The Bluetooth Core Specification supports a variety of features that help mitigate interference to other devices and to minimize interference from other devices. Broadly, the types of solutions fall into the following categories:

Type	Description
Frequency division	Simultaneous use of multiple radios enabled by filters and/or isolation
Time division	One radio may transmit or receive at a time through scheduling or prioritization
Time alignment	Activities of the collocated radios are aligned in the time domain to optimize performances by avoiding conflicting activities. E.g. Transmissions of multiple radios may occur simultaneously, multiple receptions may occur simultaneously, but it is not possible to transmit and receive simultaneously
Hybrid frequency and time division	Use of frequency division, time alignment, and time division techniques depending on the relative frequencies in use by the radios, filters and isolation

Table 7.1: Interference mitigation types

## 7.1 CORE FEATURES SUPPORTING COEXISTENCE AND COLLOCATION

There are features in the Bluetooth Core Specification to specifically target the reduction of interference from collocated or non-collocated devices.

Feature	Version Introduced	Description
Adaptive Frequency Hopping	1.2	Allows devices to reduce the number of channels used in a piconet in order to avoid interferers
HCI Set Host Channel Classification	1.2	Allows a Host to inform the local Bluetooth controller of the channels that are occupied by a collocated technology
Enhanced SCO (eSCO)	1.2	Added retransmissions to SCO for the purpose of combating interference
MWS Coexistence Signalling	CSA3	Provides a standardized interface between collocated radios for communicating information necessary to enable some coexistence techniques
Piconet Clock Adjust	4.1	Allows a Bluetooth device to align the piconet clock with an external technology, e.g. Long Term Evolution (LTE)
Train Nudging	4.1	Provides a mechanism to improve the success rate of page and inquiry when the slots to receive the respective responses are periodically not available
Generalized Interlaced Scanning	4.1	Provides a mechanism to improve the success rate of page scan and inquiry scan when some slots are periodically not available for scanning

Table 7.2: Interference mitigation features

## 7.2 ADAPTIVE FREQUENCY HOPPING

Adaptive Frequency Hopping (AFH) allows Bluetooth devices to improve their immunity to interference from and avoid causing interference to other devices in the 2.4 GHz ISM band. The basic principle is that Bluetooth channels are classified into two categories, *used* and *unused*, where used channels are part of the hopping sequence and unused channels are replaced in the hopping sequence by used channels in a pseudo-random way. This classification mechanism allows for the Bluetooth device to use either all or fewer than the 79 channels required in the Core Specification v1.1. The minimum number of channels allowed by the Bluetooth specification is 20.

The Core Specification defines the aspects of AFH necessary to ensure interoperability, including the hopping kernel, Baseband behavior, Link Manager Protocol (LMP) commands, and Host Controller Interface (HCI) commands and events required to change and configure hopping sequences. The



Bluetooth Specification also defines a mechanism that allows for a slave to report channel classification information to the master.

Adaptive Frequency Hopping utilizes metrics obtained through many sources. These metrics are analyzed and then the resulting *Channel\_Map* is used by the adaptive frequency hopping kernel. The metrics may come from over-the-air measurements, data supplied by the Host (via the HCI\_set\_AFH\_Channel\_Classification command), or reports by the slave or from other hardware coexistence interfaces.

While AFH is a critical element in coexistence, it is not enough in some circumstances.

### 7.3 COEXISTENCE BETWEEN BLUETOOTH DEVICES AND WIRELESS LAN DEVICES

Coexistence between Bluetooth and Wireless LAN has traditionally been a combination of Adaptive Frequency Hopping (AFH) and proprietary techniques to prioritize traffic between the two protocols. The Bluetooth Core Specification does not specify signalling between the Bluetooth Controller and a Wireless LAN device.

### 7.4 MOBILE WIRELESS STANDARDS (MWS) COEXISTENCE

Significant interference can be present between the Bluetooth radio and a collocated MWS radio operating in frequency bands adjacent to the 2.4 GHz ISM band. This interference can prevent one radio from receiving while the other radio is transmitting.

The “Filter recommendations for Coexistence with LTE and WiMAX” whitepaper<sup>1</sup> describes filter specifications that, in some cases, can reduce collocated interference to an acceptable level. The Bluetooth Core Specification includes complementary solutions to traditional filtering including features for Bluetooth Controllers and Hosts as well as signaling and messaging mechanisms between collocated MWS and Bluetooth radios. [Figure 7.1](#) illustrates the general architecture model for these mechanisms. This architecture assumes separate antennas with limited isolation.

---

1. <https://www.bluetooth.org/en-us/specification/reference-publications/white-papers>

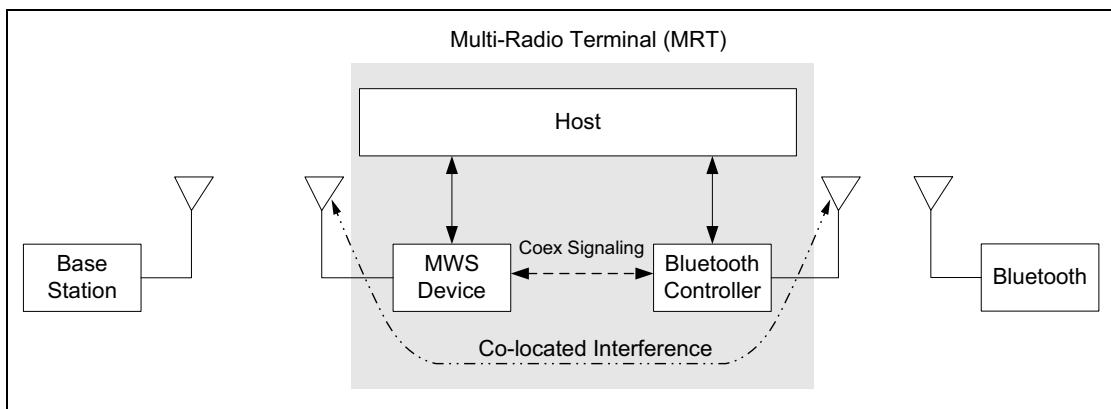


Figure 7.1: MWS Coexistence Architecture

Two types of solutions have been considered. In the first solution, both Bluetooth transmissions (TX) and receptions (RX) are constrained by collocated MWS activities. Solutions of this type are called *Pure TDM (Time Division Multiplexed) Mode*. In the second solution, only Bluetooth receptions are affected by collocated MWS transmissions and Bluetooth transmissions do not impact the operation of the collocated MWS. Solutions of this type are called *Hybrid Mode* and are achieved, for example, by using steep roll-off Band Select Filters (BSFs) for the ISM band in the Bluetooth transceiver. Hybrid Mode applies where the Bluetooth transmission's effect on MWS is sufficiently reduced via filtering that the Bluetooth device can safely transmit during the MWS downlink time. This requires a frequency guard band between the Bluetooth and MWS operational frequency ranges as well as constraints on both the Bluetooth BSF and the MWS BSF. The requirement for a time domain solution still remains, but only to protect Bluetooth reception.

These solutions are facilitated by an MWS coexistence signaling mechanism (see [\[Vol 7\] Part A](#)) and multiple transport layers (see [\[Vol 7\] Part B](#) and [\[Vol 7\] Part C](#)).

MWS technologies operate in licensed bands and use centralized scheduling to support Wide Area Network services. An MWS radio synchronizes both time and frequency with a network Base Station. The Base Station determines which MWS radio will transmit or receive and when. MWS radios have no control over when to transmit or receive. When Bluetooth transmissions interfere with MWS receptions in the MRT, the MWS radio can be rendered unusable if the Bluetooth radio transmits freely. [Figure 7.2](#) shows how Bluetooth activity can interfere with every MWS reception opportunity and similarly how MWS transmissions can interfere with Bluetooth reception. In the example shown in [Figure 7.2](#) the Bluetooth device in the MRT is operating as the master of a piconet. Blocks marked with an "M" are single slot master transmissions and those marked with an "S" are single slot slave transmissions. The times at which reception by the MWS device may be corrupted by Bluetooth transmissions are marked with a red X.

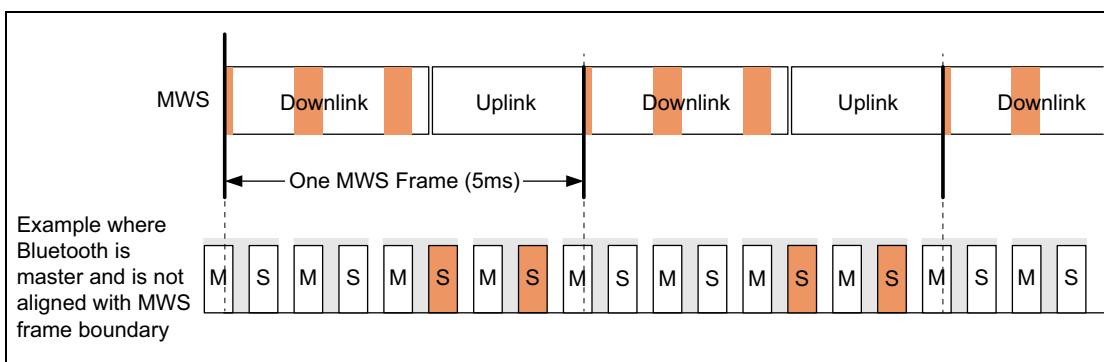


Figure 7.2: MWS receptions interfered with by uncontrolled Bluetooth transmissions

Even with the best relative timing relationship (when the Bluetooth slot boundary is aligned with the MWS frame boundary), the Bluetooth radio in the MRT suffers reduced transmission and reception opportunities due to time multiplexing with the collocated MWS radio. The Bluetooth radio only gets one transmission/reception opportunity every MWS frame, as shown in [Figure 7.3](#).

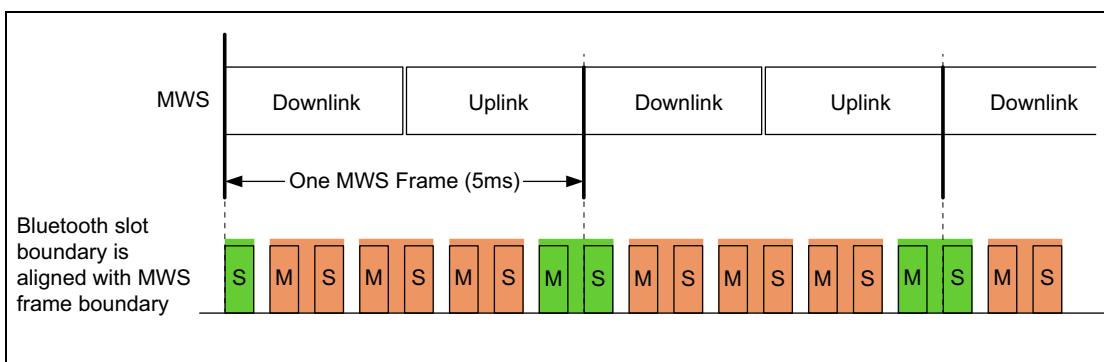


Figure 7.3: Bluetooth radio has reduced transmission/receiving opportunities

Consequently, three out of four (for 5 msec MWS frames) or seven out of eight (for 10 msec MWS frames) slot pairs of Bluetooth can be punctured by MWS activities. Furthermore, since Bluetooth inquiry and paging use a sequence of 16 channels at a time, when the Bluetooth radio in the MRT is performing inquiry or paging the channel sequence will repeat every 5 ms resulting in the same channels being repeatedly punctured by the collocated MWS activities, see [Figure 7.4](#). As a result, there is a high probability that the remote scanning device will not be able to receive the page or inquiry IDs within the current timeout.

When the inquiry or paging channel sequence gets repeatedly punctured, Train Nudging can be used to add an additional offset to the clock bits in order to shift the channel sequence.

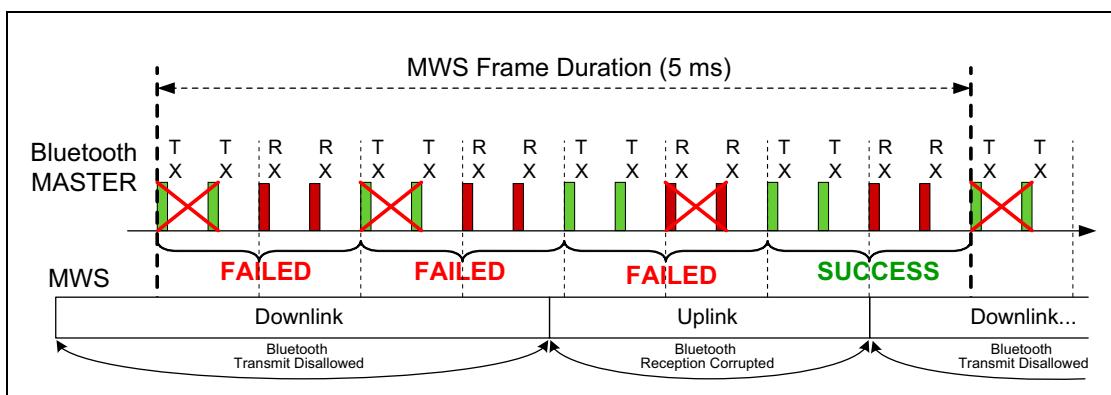


Figure 7.4: Bluetooth radio can suffer Inquiry/Page failures

As MWS transmissions interfere with Bluetooth receptions in the MRT, up to 50% of the transmitted IDs from the remote inquiry/page device will not be received by the Bluetooth radio in the MRT performing scanning, as shown in Figure 7.5.

Based on the pattern of slots that are not available for scanning, Generalized Interlaced Scanning can be used to tune the phase of the second scan during a back-to-back scan.

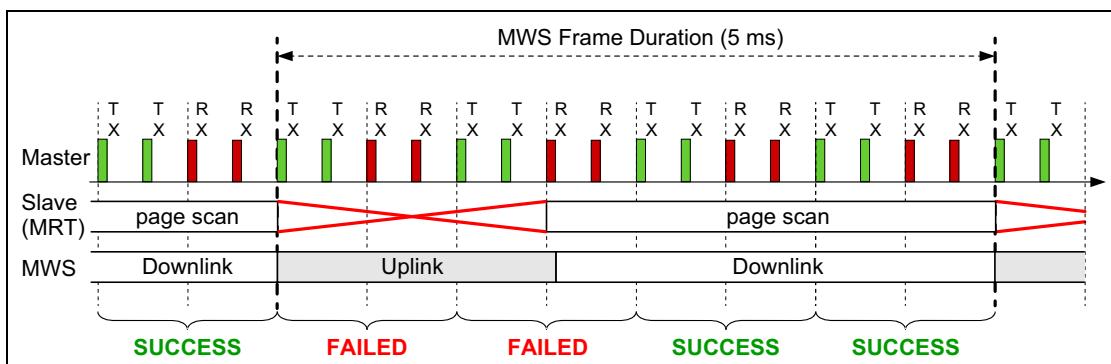


Figure 7.5: Bluetooth radio can suffer inquiry scan/page scan failures

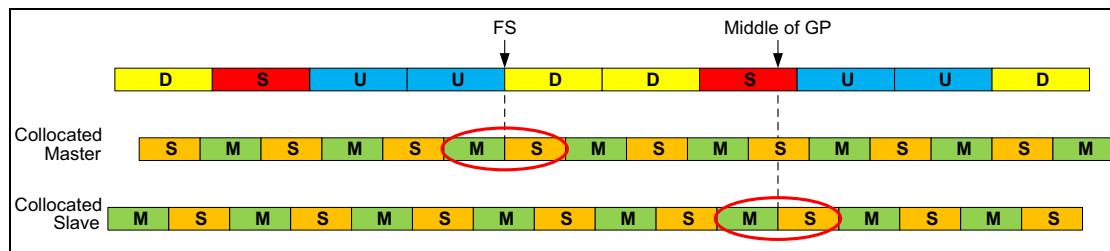
## 7.5 SYNCHRONIZING BLUETOOTH WITH AN EXTERNAL TIMING SOURCE

This section provides an example to illustrate the synchronization of the Bluetooth CLK with an MWS system so that the Bluetooth slots line up with the Downlink and Uplink times of the MWS system. The external frame in this example is LTE TDD Frame Configuration #1 and special subframe configuration #1; however the same mechanisms can be used for any external TDD/TDMA protocol. The example shows a time span of 10 ms.

[Vol 7] Part A defines the timing of the MWS frame as a fixed offset from the FRAME\_SYNC signal in the coexistence signalling. This is shown in Figure 7.6 as FS. FS can be defined by the Host as any specific offset within the MWS

frame. For a piconet master, the most useful position for FS is the boundary between the uplink and the following downlink. This is because the master needs to transmit in a master slot during the uplink and then receive in the following slave slot during the downlink. Putting FS at this boundary allows the master to easily align its Bluetooth clock to put it between these slots. The situation is reversed in a slave: FS is most useful on the boundary between the downlink and the following uplink.

The HCI command Set\_External\_Frame\_Configuration ([\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 7.3.81](#)) is used to describe the MWS frame timing. This knowledge, together with FS, allows the Bluetooth Controller to align the Bluetooth clock with the MWS frame timing so as to minimize the effect of mutual interference. This is illustrated in [Figure 7.6](#). The red ovals show slot pairs where both MWS and Bluetooth transmit and receive simultaneously and so do not interfere with each other. The MWS frame structure includes a downlink portion ("D"), an uplink portion ("U"), and a special portion ("S") that includes a downlink and uplink portion separated by a guard period ("GP").



*Figure 7.6: Alignment of MWS frame timing and Bluetooth clock*

Note: In LTE, if the implementation does not have access to the exact LTE timing it can assume that the downlink-to-uplink boundary is the middle of the GP in a special LTE subframe.

## 7.6 PICONET CLOCK ADJUSTMENT

As discussed in the previous section, aligning the MWS and Bluetooth clocks correctly greatly improves throughput on both technologies. The master has two mechanisms at its disposal to mitigate misalignments.

Coarse Clock Adjustments can be used to move the Bluetooth CLK using the LMP\_clk\_adj PDU. The clk\_adj\_us parameter is used to align the slots with the MWS alignment point indicated by the FRAME\_SYNC signal. The clk\_adj\_slots parameter can be used to move the CLK several slots forward in time. This can be useful to align e.g. eSCO. Coarse Clock Adjustment is expected to be used only rarely, for instance at MWS connection or when the MWS frame timing changes due to roaming. Coarse Clock Adjustment can only be used when all slaves in the piconet support for it.

The other option for the master is to use Clock Dragging. This is a method of slowly adjusting the phase of the clock backward or forward by making the



slots a few  $\mu\text{s}$  shorter or longer, respectively, until the desired CLK phase has been achieved. It should be noted that this is a very slow rate of adjustment, as it is designed to allow a legacy device to track the change, and therefore Clock Dragging must not be done at a faster rate than the maximum natural drift between devices. For this reason its main use is to facilitate small corrections over time if a misalignment with the MWS system is detected. If any device is connected that does not support Coarse Clock Adjustment, slowly moving the slave using Clock Dragging is the only option.

It is recommended to let the collocated device be the master, when possible, as it can react much faster to correct misalignments. If a slave is the collocated device, doing a role switch to make it master may be worth considering. Alternatively a slave can send a Piconet Clock Adjustment Request LMP packet to the master. The master then has the option to perform a Coarse Clock Adjustment, Clock Dragging, or to reject the request.



## Architecture & Terminology Overview

### Part B

## ACRONYMS & ABBREVIATIONS



## CONTENTS

---

1	List of Acronyms and Abbreviations .....	115
---	--	-----

## 1 LIST OF ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Acronym or abbreviation	Writing out in full	Comments
8DPSK	8 phase Differential Phase Shift Keying	3 Mbps modulation type used by Enhanced Data rate
<b>A</b>		
A2MP	AMP Manager Protocol	
AAD	Additional Authentical Data	
AC	Access Category	
ACI	Access Category Index	
ACK	Acknowledge/ACKnowledgement	
ACL	Asynchronous Connection-oriented [logical transport]	Reliable or time-bounded, bi-directional, point-to-point
ACL-C	ACL Control [logical link] (LMP)	
ACL-U	ACL User [logical link] (L2CAP)	
ACO	Authenticated Ciphering Offset	
AD	Advertising Data	
Adv_idx	Advertising channel index	
ADVB	LE Advertising Broadcast	
ADVB-C	LE Advertising Broadcast Control (Logical Link)	
ADVB-U	LE Advertising Broadcast User Data (Logical Link)	
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard	
AES-CCM	Advanced Encryption Standard - Counter with CBC MAC	
AFH	Adaptive Frequency Hopping	
AGC	Automatic Gain Control	
AHS	Adapted Hop Sequence	
AIFSN	Arbitration Interframe Space Number	
AMP	Alternate MAC PHY	
AMP_ASSOC	Alternate MAC PHY association information	

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

<b>Acronym or abbreviation</b>	<b>Writing out in full</b>	<b>Comments</b>
AMP-U	AMP User Asynchronous/Isochronous Logical Link	
AR_ADDR	Access Request Address	
ARQ	Automatic Repeat Request	
ASB	Active Slave Broadcast [logical transport]	Unreliable, uni-directional broadcast to any devices synchronized with the physical channel
ASB-U	ASB User [logical link] (L2CAP)	
ATT	Attribute Protocol	
<b>B</b>		
BB	Baseband	
BCH	Bose, Chaudhuri & Hocquenghem	Type of code The persons who discovered these codes in 1959 (H) and 1960 (B&C)
BD_ADDR	Bluetooth Device Address	
BER	Bit Error Rate	
BT	Bandwidth Time	
<b>C</b>		
CAC	Channel Access Code	
CBC-MAC	Cipher Block Chaining Message Authentication Code	
CCM	Counter with Cipher Block Chaining-Message Authentication Code	
CCMP	CTR with CBC-MAC Protocol	
CLKN	Native Clock	
CL	Connectionless	
CLK	Master Clock	
CLKE	Estimated Clock	
CODEC	COder DECoder	
COF	Ciphering Offset	
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check	
CSA	Core Specification Addendum	(In plural Addenda)

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

<b>Acronym or abbreviation</b>	<b>Writing out in full</b>	<b>Comments</b>
CSB	Connectionless Slave Broadcast	The logical transport enabled by the Connectionless Slave Broadcast feature
CTS	Clear to send	
CVSD	Continuous Variable Slope Delta Modulation	
D		
DA	Destination address	
DAC	Device Access Code	
DCE	Data Communication Equipment	
DCE	Data Circuit-Terminating Equipment	In serial communications, DCE refers to a device between the communication endpoints whose sole task is to facilitate the communications process; typically a modem
DCI	Default Check Initialization	
DEVM	Differential Error Vector Magnitude	Measure of modulation error used for Enhanced Data Rate transmitter testing
DFS	Dynamic Frequency Selection	
DH	Data-High Rate	Data packet type for high rate data
DHK	Diversifier Hiding Key	
DIAC	Dedicated Inquiry Access Code	
DIV	Diversifier	
DM	Data - Medium Rate	Data packet type for medium rate data
DPSK	Differential Phase Shift Keying	Generic description of Enhanced Data Rate modulation
DQPSK	Differential Quaternary Phase Shift Keying	Modulation type used by Enhanced Data Rate
DSAP	Destination Service Access Point	
DTE	Data Terminal Equipment	In serial communications, DTE refers to a device at the endpoint of the communications path; typically a computer or terminal.
DTM	Direct Test Mode	

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

Acronym or abbreviation	Writing out in full	Comments
DUT	Device Under Test	
DV	Data Voice	Data packet type for data and voice
E		
E	Excluded	
ECWmax	Enhanced Contention Window maximum	
ECWmim	Enhanced Contention Window minimum	
ED	Erroneous Data	
EDCA	Enhanced Distributed Channel Access	
EDIV	Encrypted Diversifier	
EDR	Enhanced Data Rate	
EFS	Extended Flow Specification	
EIR	Extended Inquiry Response	Host supplied information transmitted in the inquiry responses substate
EIRP	Effective Isotropic Radiated Power	Equivalent power that an isotropic antenna must transmit to provide the same field power density
EOC	Extreme Operating Conditions	
EPR	Encryption Pause Resume	Mode allowing the device to initiate the pause and resume encryption sequence
ER	Encryption Root	
ERP	Extended Rate PHY conforming to Clause 19	
(e)SCO	Synchronous logical link or Extended Synchronous logical link	SCO or eSCO
eSCO	Extended Synchronous Connection Oriented [logical transport]	Bi-directional, symmetric or asymmetric, point-to-point, general regular data, limited retransmission
eSCO-S	Stream eSCO (unframed)	Used to support isochronous data delivered in a stream without framing
ESS	Extended Service Set	

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

<b>Acronym or abbreviation</b>	<b>Writing out in full</b>	<b>Comments</b>
ETSI	European Telecommunications Standards Institute	
<b>F</b>		
FCC	Federal Communications Commission	
FCS	Frame Check Sequence	
FDMA	Frequency Division Multiple Access	
FEC	Forward Error Correction code	
FH	Frequency Hopping	
FHS	Frequency Hop Synchronization	
FHSS	Frequency Hopping Spread Spectrum	
FIFO	First In First Out	
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standards	
FM	Frequency Modulation	Modulation type
<b>G</b>		
GAP	Generic Access Profile	
GATT	Generic Attribute Protocol	
GFSK	Gaussian Frequency Shift Keying	
GIAC	General Inquiry Access Code	
GTM	Generic Test Methodology	
<b>H</b>		
HCI	Host Controller Interface	
HEC	Header-Error-Check	
HID	Human Interface Device	
HV	High quality Voice	e.g. HV1 packet
HW	Hardware	
<b>I</b>		
IAC	Inquiry Access Code	
IC	Industry Canada	

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

Acronym or abbreviation	Writing out in full	Comments
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission	
IEEE	Institute of Electronic and Electrical Engineers	
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force	
IFS	Inter Frame Space	
IP	Internet Protocol	
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4	
IPv6	Internet Protocol version 6	
IR	Identity Root	
IrDA	Infra-red Data Association	
IRK	Identity Resolving Key	
ISM	Industrial, Scientific, Medical	
ISO	International Organization for Standardization	
ITU	International Telecommunication Union	
IUT	Implementation Under Test	
IV	Initialization Vector	
IVm	Initialization Vector (master)	
IVs	Initialization Vector (slave)	
<b>J</b>		
JRL	Japanese Radio Law	
<b>K</b>		
KCC	Korea Communications Commission	
<b>L</b>		
L2CAP	Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol	
LAP	Lower Address Part	
LC	Link Controller	Link Controller (or baseband) part of the Bluetooth protocol stack. Low level Baseband protocol handler

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

Acronym or abbreviation	Writing out in full	Comments
LC	Link Control [logical link]	The control logical links LC and ACL-C are used at the link control level and link manager level, respectively.
LCP	Link Control Protocol	
LE	Low Energy	
LE-C	Low Energy Control (link)	
LE-U	LE User [logical link]	
LFSR	Linear Feedback Shift Register	
LL	Link Layer	
LLCP	Link Layer Control Protocol	
LLID	Logical Link Identifier	
LM	Link Manager	
LMP	Link Manager Protocol	For LM peer to peer communication
LR	Loudness Rating	
LSB	Least Significant Bit	
LSO	Least Significant Octet	
LSTO	Link Supervision Timeout Event	Controller can send LSTO event to Host
LT_ADDR	Logical Transport ADDReSS	
LTK	Long-Term Key	
<b>M</b>		
M	Master or Mandatory	
MAC	Medium Access Control	
MAC	Message Authentication Code	Usually meaning the Medium Access Control code
Mbps	Million (Mega) bits per second	
MD	More Data	
MIC	Message Integrity Check	
MIIT	Ministry of Industry and Information Technology	
MITM	Man-in-the-middle	
MMI	Man Machine Interface	

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

Acronym or abbreviation	Writing out in full	Comments
MS	Mobile Station	
MSB	Most Significant Bit	
mSBC	modified Sub Band Codec	Hands-Free Profile v1.6 or later
MSC	Message Sequence Chart	
MSO	Most Significant Octet	
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit	
MWS	Mobile Wireless Standards	For example LTE and WiMAX
<b>N</b>		
NAK	Negative Acknowledge	
NAP	Non-significant Address Part	
NCC	National Communications Commission	
NESN	Next Expected Sequence Number	
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology	
NOC	Normal Operating Conditions	
<b>O</b>		
O	Optional	
OBEX	OBject EXchange protocol	
OCF	OpCode Command Field	
OGF	OpCode Group Field	
OOB	Out of Band	
<b>P</b>		
$\pi/4$ DQPSK	$\pi/4$ Rotated Differential Quaternary Phase Shift Keying	2 Mbps modulation type used by Enhanced Data Rate
PBD	Profile Broadcast Data	The name of the logical link enabled by the Connectionless Slave Broadcast feature
PBF	Packet Boundary Flag	The device supports the capability to correctly handle HCI ACL Data Packets
PCM	Pulse Coded Modulation	
PDU	Protocol Data Unit	A message

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

Acronym or abbreviation	Writing out in full	Comments
PHY	Physical Layer	
PIN	Personal Identification Number	
PM_ADDR	Parked Member Address	
PN	Pseudo-random Noise	
PPM	Part Per Million	
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol	
PRBS	Pseudo Random Bit Sequence	
PRNG	Pseudo Random Noise Generation	
PSB	Parked Slave Broadcast [logical transport]	Unreliable, uni-directional broadcast to all piconet devices
PSB-C	PSB Control [logical link] (LMP)	
PSB-U	PSB User [logical link] (L2CAP)	
PSK	Phase Shift Keying	Class of modulation types
PSTN	Public Switched Telephone Network	
ptt	Packet Type Table	The ptt parameter is used to select the logical transport types via LMP.
<b>Q</b>		
QoS	Quality of Service	
<b>R</b>		
RAND	Random number	
RF	Radio Frequency	
RFC	Request For Comments	
RFCMode	Retransmission and Flow Control Mode	
RFCOMM		Serial cable emulation protocol based on ETSI TS 07.10
RFU	Reserved for Future Use	
RMS	Root Mean Square	
RSSI	Received Signal Strength Indication	
RX	Receive	

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

<b>Acronym or abbreviation</b>	<b>Writing out in full</b>	<b>Comments</b>
<b>S</b>		
S	Slave	
SAP	Service Access Points	
SAR	Segmentation and Reassembly	
SCA	Sleep Clock Accuracy	
SCO	Synchronous Connection-Oriented [logical transport]	Bi-directional, symmetric, point-to-point, AV channels
SCO-S	Stream SCO (unframed)	
SCO-S	Synchronous logical link	Used to support isochronous data delivered in a stream without framing
SD	Service Discovery	
SDP	Service Discovery Protocol	
SDU	Service Data Unit	
SEQN	Sequential Numbering scheme	
SK	Session Key	
SKDm	Session Key Diversifier (master)	Master portion of the Session Key Diversifier
SKDs	Session Key Diversifier (slave)	Slave portion of the Session Key Diversifier
SLR	Send Loudness Ring	
SM	Security Manager	
SMP	Security Manager Protocol	
SN	Sequence Number	
SRES	Signed Response	
SRK	Signature Resolving Key	
SS	Supplementary Services	
SSI	Signal Strength Indication	
SSP	Secure Simple Pairing	Simplifies the pairing process and improves Bluetooth security
SSR	Sniff Subrating	A mode that defines the anchor points at which the master transmits to the slave.
STK	Short Term Key	

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations

*Acronyms & Abbreviations*

<b>Acronym or abbreviation</b>	<b>Writing out in full</b>	<b>Comments</b>
STP	Synchronization Train Packet	Packets transmitted using the Synchronization Train feature
SW	Software	
<b>T</b>		
T_IFS	Time Inter Frame Space	Time interval between consecutive packets on same channel index
TC	Test Control	Test Control layer for the test interface
TCI	Test Control Interface	
TCP/IP	Transport Control Protocol/Internet Protocol	
TCS	Telephony Control protocol Specification	
TDD	Time-Division Duplex	
TDMA	Time Division Multiple Access	
TK	Temporary Key	
TX	Transmit	
<b>U</b>		
UAP	Upper Address Part	
UART	Universal Asynchronous receiver Transmitter	
UI	User Interface	
UI	Unnumbered Information	
ULAP	Upper and Lower Address Parts	
USB	Universal Serial Bus	
UTF-8	8-bit UCS/Unicode Transformation Format	
UUID	Universal Unique Identifier	
<b>W</b>		
WAP	Wireless Application Protocol	

Table 1.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations



Architecture & Terminology Overview

Part C

## CORE SPECIFICATION CHANGE HISTORY



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Deprecated Features.....</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Changes from V1.1 to V1.2.....</b>	<b>131</b>
2.1	New Features.....	131
2.2	Structure Changes .....	131
2.3	Deprecated Features list.....	131
2.4	Changes in Wording.....	132
2.5	Nomenclature Changes .....	132
<b>3</b>	<b>Changes from V1.2 to V2.0 + EDR .....</b>	<b>133</b>
3.1	New Features.....	133
3.2	Deprecated Features .....	133
<b>4</b>	<b>Changes from V2.0 + EDR to V2.1 + EDR.....</b>	<b>134</b>
4.1	New features.....	134
4.2	Deprecated Features .....	134
<b>5</b>	<b>Changes From V2.1 + EDR To V3.0 + HS .....</b>	<b>135</b>
5.1	New Features.....	135
5.2	Deprecated Features .....	135
<b>6</b>	<b>Changes From V3.0 + HS To v4.0 .....</b>	<b>136</b>
6.1	New Features.....	136
6.2	Deprecated Features .....	136
<b>7</b>	<b>Changes from v4.0 to v4.1 .....</b>	<b>137</b>
7.1	New Features.....	137
7.1.1	Features Added in CSA 4 – Integrated in v4.1 .....	137
7.1.2	Features Added in CSA 3 – Integrated in v4.1 .....	138
7.1.3	Features Added in CSA 2 – Integrated in v4.1.....	138
7.2	Deprecated Features .....	138

## 1 DEPRECATED FEATURES

---

Some features have been deemed no longer useful and have been deprecated. The term *deprecation* does not mean that they are no longer allowed, but that they are no longer recommended as the best way of performing a given function.

Deprecated features may be implemented using the latest qualifiable version of the Bluetooth core specification that specifies the deprecated features.

## 2 CHANGES FROM V1.1 TO V1.2

---

### 2.1 NEW FEATURES

Several new features were introduced in the Bluetooth Core Specification 1.2. The major areas of improvement are:

- Architectural overview
- Faster connection
- Adaptive frequency hopping
- Extended SCO links
- Enhanced error detection and flow control
- Enhanced synchronization capability
- Enhanced flow specification

The feature descriptions are incorporated into the existing text in different core parts, described in Volumes 2 and 3.

### 2.2 STRUCTURE CHANGES

The Bluetooth Core Specification 1.2 was significantly restructured for better consistency and readability. The most important structure changes have been performed in Baseband, LMP, HCI and L2CAP. The text in these sections has been rearranged to provide:

- Presentation of the information in a more logical progression
- Removal of redundant text and requirements
- Consolidation of baseband related requirements (for example, the *Baseband Timers* and *Bluetooth Audio* sections into the Baseband Specification)
- Alignment of the specification with the new architecture and terminology presented in the Architecture Overview (see “[IEEE Language](#)” on [page 149 \[vol. 1\]](#)).

In addition, new text and requirements were added for the new features as well as many changes throughout the specification to update the text to use IEEE language (see “[IEEE Language](#)” on [page 149 \[vol. 1\]](#)).

### 2.3 DEPRECATED FEATURES LIST

Features deprecated in version 1.2 are:

- The use of Unit Keys for security
- Optional Paging schemes
- 23 channel hopping sequence

- Page scan period mode and associated commands

## 2.4 CHANGES IN WORDING

Two general classes of changes to the wording of the Bluetooth Specification have been done for version 1.2. They are a formalization of the language by using conventions established by the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE), and a regularization of Bluetooth wireless technology-specific terms. Many portions of the version 1.1 specification use imprecise or inaccurate terms to describe attributes of the protocol. A more accurate terminology described in Part E was introduced into the version 1.2 specification and have been applied in future versions.

## 2.5 NOMENCLATURE CHANGES

The nomenclature in Bluetooth 1.2 was also updated due to new concepts that are introduced together with the new features and the new architecture. See “Architecture” on page 11.

## 3 CHANGES FROM V1.2 TO V2.0 + EDR

---

### 3.1 NEW FEATURES

The Bluetooth Core Specification version 2.0 + EDR introduces Enhanced Data Rate (EDR). EDR provides a set of additional packet types that use the new 2 Mbps and 3 Mbps modes.

In addition to EDR a set of errata provided in ESR02 has been incorporated into this version and revised to include changes caused by the addition of EDR.

These additions are incorporated into the existing text in different core parts described in Volumes 2 and 3.

### 3.2 DEPRECATED FEATURES

The only feature deprecated in version 2.0 + EDR is the Page Scan Period Mode and associated commands (based on Erratum 694 which is also included in ESR02).

## 4 CHANGES FROM V2.0 + EDR TO V2.1 + EDR

---

### 4.1 NEW FEATURES

Several new features are introduced in Bluetooth Core Specification 2.1 + EDR. The major areas of improvement are:

- Erroneous Data Reporting
- Encryption Pause and Resume
- Extended Inquiry Response
- Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event
- Non-Automatically-Flushable Packet Boundary Flag
- Secure Simple Pairing
- Sniff Subrating
- Security Mode 4

### 4.2 DEPRECATED FEATURES

No features were deprecated in v2.1 + EDR.

## 5 CHANGES FROM V2.1 + EDR TO V3.0 + HS

---

### 5.1 NEW FEATURES

Several new features are introduced in Bluetooth Core Specification v3.0 + HS. The major areas of improvement are:

- AMP Manager Protocol (A2MP)
- Enhancements to L2CAP including
  - Enhanced Retransmission Mode and Streaming Mode
  - Improvements to the L2CAP state machine for AMP channels
  - Fixed channel support
- Enhancements to HCI for AMP
- Enhancements to Security for AMP
- 802.11 Protocol Adaptation Layer
- Enhanced Power Control
- Unicast Connectionless Data
- HCI Read Encryption Key Size command
- Generic Test Methodology for AMP
- Enhanced USB and SDIO HCI Transports

### 5.2 DEPRECATED FEATURES

No features were deprecated in v3.0 + HS.

## 6 CHANGES FROM V3.0 + HS TO V4.0

---

### 6.1 NEW FEATURES

Several new features are introduced in Bluetooth Core Specification v4.0 Release. The major areas of improvement are:

- Bluetooth Low Energy including
  - Low Energy Physical Layer
  - Low Energy Link Layer
  - Enhancements to HCI for Low Energy
  - Low Energy Direct Test Mode
  - AES Encryption
  - Enhancements to L2CAP for Low Energy
  - Enhancements to GAP for Low Energy
  - Attribute Protocol (ATT)
  - Generic Attribute Profile (GATT)
  - Security Manager (SM)

### 6.2 DEPRECATED FEATURES

No features were deprecated in v4.0.

## 7 CHANGES FROM v4.0 TO v4.1

---

### 7.1 NEW FEATURES

Several new features are introduced in the Bluetooth Core Specification v4.1 Release. The major areas of improvement are:

- BR/EDR Secure Connections
- Train Nudging
- Generalized Interlaced Scan
- Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising
- 32-bit UUID Support in LE
- LE Dual Mode Topology
- Piconet Clock Adjustment
- LE L2CAP Connection Oriented Channel Support
- LE Privacy v1.1
- LE Link Layer Topology
- LE Ping

#### 7.1.1 Features Added in CSA 4 – Integrated in v4.1

- Connectionless Slave Broadcast
- Unencrypted Unicast Connectionless Data Support
- Fast Advertising Interval
- eSCO Reserved Slots Clarification

#### 7.1.2 Features Added in CSA 3 – Integrated in v4.1

- MWS Coexistence HCI Changes
- GAP Connection Parameters Changes
- GAP Authentication and Lost Bond
- Dual Mode Addressing
- Private Address Changes
- Common Profile and Service Error Code Changes
- MWS Coexistence Signaling
- Wireless Coexistence Interface 1 (WCI-1) Transport Specification
- Wireless Coexistence Interface 2 (WCI-2) Transport Specification

### 7.1.3 Features Added in CSA 2 – Integrated in v4.1

- Limited Discovery Time Changes
- EIR and AD Data Types In GAP
- Audio Architecture HCI Changes
- Audio Architecture USB Changes
- 802.11n Enhancements to the 802.11 PAL

## 7.2 DEPRECATED FEATURES

No features were deprecated in v4.1.

Architecture & Terminology Overview  
Part D

## MIXING OF SPECIFICATION VERSIONS

*Mixing of Specification Versions*

## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Mixing of Specification Versions .....</b>	<b>142</b>
1.1	Features and their Types .....	144
1.2	Core Specification Addenda.....	146

## 1 MIXING OF SPECIFICATION VERSIONS

---

This part describes how volumes, and parts within volumes, of different versions and Specification Addenda of the Core Specification may be mixed in Bluetooth implementations. The Core System consists of a BR/EDR Controller Package (see [Volume 2](#)), a Low Energy Controller Package (see [Volume 6](#)), a Host Package (see [Volume 3](#)) and AMP Protocol Adaptation Layers (see [Volume 5](#)).

- All parts within a Primary Controller implementation shall comply with the same version of [Volume 2](#) and [Volume 6](#).
- All parts within a Host implementation of [Volume 3](#) shall comply with the same version.
- An AMP Controller implementation shall contain parts of [Volume 2](#) and [Volume 5](#) from the same version.
- The Primary Controller, AMP Controller, and Host may comply with different versions within a single implementation.

In order to describe how these volumes and parts within volumes can be mixed, one needs to distinguish between four categories of features specified in the different specification versions. The four categories are:

Category	Description
Type 1	Feature that exists below HCI and cannot be configured/enabled via HCI
Type 2	Feature that exists below HCI and can be configured/enabled via HCI
Type 3	Feature that exists below and above HCI and requires HCI command/events to function
Type 4	Feature that exists only above HCI

*Table 1.1: Feature type definitions*

The outcome of mixing different Core System Packages are derived from the feature definitions in the table above:

- If an implementation contains features of type 1 or type 4, these features can function with any combination of Host Package and Controller Package or AMP Protocol Adaptation Layer (PAL) versions with applicable addenda.
- If an implementation contains features of type 2, these features can only be used under a default condition if a Host Package of an older version with applicable addenda is mixed with a Controller Package or AMP PAL of this version with applicable Core Specification Addenda (CSAs).

---

*Mixing of Specification Versions*

- In order to fully use the feature under all conditions, the Host Package, Controller Package, and AMP PAL must comply with the same or later version with applicable CSAs.
- If an implementation contains features of type 3, these features can only function if the Host Package supports this version or a later version with applicable CSAs and if the Controller Package complies with this version or a later version with applicable CSAs.

See the [Bluetooth Brand Book](#) for specification naming requirements.

## 1.1 FEATURES AND THEIR TYPES

The following table lists the features, their types, and the version or addendum where the feature was first introduced.

Feature	Version	Type
Basic AFH operation	1.2	1
Enhanced inquiry	1.2	1
Configuration of AFH (setting channels and enabling/disabling channel assessment)	1.2	2
Enhanced synchronization capability	1.2	2
Interlaced inquiry scan	1.2	2
Interlaced page scan	1.2	2
Broadcast encryption	1.2	2
Enhanced flow specification and flush time-out	1.2	3
Extended SCO links	1.2	3
Inquiry Result with RSSI	1.2	3
L2CAP flow and error control	1.2	4
2 Mbps EDR	2.0 + EDR	2
3 Mbps EDR	2.0 + EDR	2
3 slot packets in EDR	2.0 + EDR	2
5 slot packets in EDR	2.0 + EDR	2
2 Mbps eSCO	2.0 + EDR	2 <sup>1</sup>
3 Mbps eSCO	2.0 + EDR	2 <sup>1</sup>
3 slot packets for EDR eSCO	2.0 + EDR	2 <sup>1</sup>
Erroneous Data Reporting	2.1 + EDR	3
Extended Inquiry Response	2.1 + EDR	3
Encryption Pause and Resume	2.1 + EDR	1
Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event	2.1 + EDR	3
Non-Flushable Packet Boundary Flag	2.1 + EDR	3
Sniff subrating	2.1+ EDR	3
Secure Simple Pairing	2.1.+ EDR	3
L2CAP Enhanced Retransmission Mode	Addendum 1/ 3.0 + HS	4

Table 1.2: Features and their types

*Mixing of Specification Versions*

Feature	Version	Type
L2CAP Streaming Mode	Addendum 1/ 3.0 + HS	4
Enhanced Power Control	3.0 + HS	1
AMP Manager Protocol (A2MP)	3.0 + HS	4
L2CAP Enhancements for AMP	3.0 + HS	4
802.11 PAL	3.0 + HS	3
Generic Test Methodology	3.0 + HS	3
Unicast Connectionless Data	3.0 + HS	4
Low Energy Controller (PHY and LL)	4.0	3
Low Energy Host (L2CAP and Security Manager)	4.0	4
Attribute Protocol and Generic Attribute Profile	4.0	4
Appearance Data Type	Addendum 2	4
802.11n Enhancements to the 802.11 PAL	Addendum 2	3
MWS Coexistence Signaling	Addendum 3	2
Connectionless Slave Broadcast	Addendum 4	3
Unencrypted UCD	Addendum 4	4
Secure Connections	4.1	3
Train Nudging	4.1	2
Generalized Interlaced Scan	4.1	2
Piconet Clock Adjustment	4.1	3
Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising	4.1	2
32-bit UUID Support in LE	4.1	4
LE Dual Mode Topology	4.1	4
LE L2CAP Connection Oriented Channel Support	4.1	4
LE Privacy v1.1	4.1	4
LE Link Layer Topology	4.1	3
LE Ping	4.1	2

Table 1.2: Features and their types

1. The EDR eSCO options are marked as 2\* because eSCO requires profile support, but if a product includes the eSCO option from V1.2, then EDR eSCO will be supported without any new support above HCI.

## 1.2 CORE SPECIFICATION ADDENDA

A Core Specification Addendum (CSA) contains one or more parts of a single volume, one or more parts in multiple volumes, changes on one or more parts, or a combination of parts and changes. Addenda are used to supersede a part in a volume or may be used to add a part to a volume according to the rules in [Table 1.3](#).

Note: Each Change may contain changes and/or additions to one or more parts of the Core Specification.

Addendum	Volume and Part or Change Name	Addition/Changes/Replacement	Allowed Versions & Addendum	Mandatory / Optional / Conditional	Type
1	Volume 3, Part A	Replacement	2.0 + EDR, 2.1 + EDR	O	4
2	Audio Architecture HCI Changes	Change	2.1 + EDR, 3.0 + HS, 4.0	O	2
	Audio Architecture USB Changes	Change	2.1 + EDR, 3.0 + HS, 4.0	O	2
	LE Limited Discovery Time Changes	Change	4.0	C.1	4
	EIR and AD Data Types in GAP Changes	Change	4.0	C.1	4
	EIR and AD Data Types Specification	Addition	4.0	C.1	4
	Volume 5, Part A	Replacement	3.0 + HS, 4.0	O	3

*Table 1.3: Adopted core specification versions to use with addenda.*

*Mixing of Specification Versions*

Addendum	Volume and Part or Change Name	Addition/Changes/Replacement	Allowed Versions & Addendum	Mandatory / Optional / Conditional	Type
3	LE Errata	Change	4.0 with CSA2	C.2	Multiple
	GAP Connection Parameters Changes	Change	4.0 with CSA2	C.1	4
	GAP Authentication and Lost Bond Changes	Change	4.0 with CSA2	C.1	4
	Common Profile and Services Error Code Range Changes	Change	4.0 with CSA2	C.1	4
	Private Addressing Changes	Change	4.0 with CSA2	C.1	4
	Dual Mode Addressing Changes	Change	4.0 with CSA2	C.3	4
	MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling Specification	Addition	2.1 + EDR, 3.0 + HS, 4.0 with CSA2	O	2
	MWS Coexistence HCI	Addition	2.1 + EDR, 3.0 + HS, 4.0 with CSA2	C.4	2
	Wireless Coexistence Interface 1 (WCI-1) Transport Layer Specification	Addition	2.1 + EDR, 3.0 + HS, 4.0 with CSA2	C.4	2
	Wireless Coexistence Interface 2 (WCI-2) Transport Layer Specification	Addition	2.1 + EDR, 3.0 + HS, 4.0 with CSA2	C.4	2

Table 1.3: Adopted core specification versions to use with addenda.

*Mixing of Specification Versions*

Addendum	Volume and Part or Change Name	Addition/Changes/Replacement	Allowed Versions & Addendum	Mandatory / Optional / Conditional	Type
4	Connectionless Slave Broadcast	Change	3.0 + HS, 4.0 with CSA3	O	3
	Unencrypted UCD	Change	3.0 + HS, 4.0 with CSA3	O	4
	Fast Advertising Interval	Change	4.0 with CSA3	C.1	4
	eSCO Reserved Slot Clarification	Change	2.1 + EDR, 3.0 + HS, 4.0 with CSA3	O	1

Table 1.3: Adopted core specification versions to use with addenda.

C.1: Mandatory if either the Host Part of the Low Energy Core Configuration or the Host Part of the Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined Core Configuration is supported, otherwise Excluded.

C.2: Mandatory if either the Host Part of the Low Energy Core Configuration, Controller Part of the Low Energy Core Configuration, Host Part of the Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined Core Configuration, or Controller Part of the Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined Core Configuration is supported, otherwise Excluded.

C.3: Mandatory if the Host Part of the Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined Core Configuration is supported, otherwise Excluded.

C.4: Optional if MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling is supported, otherwise Excluded.

Architecture & Terminology Overview  
Part E

**IEEE LANGUAGE**



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Use of IEEE Language .....</b>	<b>153</b>
1.1	Shall .....	154
1.2	Must .....	154
1.3	Will .....	154
1.4	Should.....	154
1.5	May .....	155
1.6	Can .....	155



## 1 USE OF IEEE LANGUAGE

One of the purposes of this terminology is to make it easy for the reader to identify text that describes requirements as opposed to background information. The general term for text that describes attributes that are required for proper implementation of Bluetooth wireless technology is normative. The general term for language that provides background and context for normative text is informative. These terms are used in various sections to clarify implementation requirements.

Many portions of the Bluetooth Specification use imprecise or inaccurate terms to describe attributes of the protocol. This subsection describes the correct usage of key terms that indicate degree of requirements for processes and data structures. The information here was derived from the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) Style Guide, see <http://standards.ieee.org/guides/style/>.

The following list is a summary of the terms to be discussed in more detail below:

<i>shall</i>	<u>is required to</u> – used to define requirements
<i>must</i>	<u>is a natural consequence of</u> -- used only to describe unavoidable situations
<i>will</i>	<u>it is true that</u> -- only used in statements of fact
<i>should</i>	<u>is recommended that</u> – used to indicate that among several possibilities one is recommended as particularly suitable, but not required
<i>may</i>	<u>is permitted to</u> – used to allow options
<i>can</i>	<u>is able to</u> – used to relate statements in a causal fashion
<i>is</i>	<u>is defined as</u> – used to further explain elements that are previously required or allowed
<i>note</i>	<informational text ONLY>

For clarity of the definition of those terms, the following sections document why and how they are used. For these sections only, the IEEE terms are italicized to indicate their use as a noun. Uses and examples of the use of the terms in this section are underlined.

## 1.1 SHALL

The word *shall* is used to indicate mandatory requirements that shall be followed in order to conform to the specification and from which no deviation is permitted.

There is a strong implication that the presence of the word *shall* indicates a testable requirement. All testable requirements shall be reflected in the Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS). In turn, all PICS indicators should be reflected in the Test Cases (TCs) either directly or indirectly.

A direct reference is a specific test for the attribute cited in the text. For example, a minimum value for a given parameter may be an entry in the TCs. Indirect test coverage may be appropriate if the existence of the attribute is requisite for passing a higher level test.

## 1.2 MUST

The word *must* shall not be used when stating mandatory requirements. *Must* is used only to describe unavoidable situations and is seldom appropriate for the text of a Specification.

An example of an appropriate use of the term *must* is: “the Bluetooth radios must be in range of each other to communicate”.

## 1.3 WILL

The use of the word *will* shall not be used when stating mandatory requirements. The term *will* is only used in statements of fact. As with the term *must*, *will* is not generally applicable to the description of a protocol. An example of appropriate use of *will* is: “when power is removed from the radio, it can be assumed that communications will fail”

## 1.4 SHOULD

*Should* equals *is recommended that*. The word *should* is used to indicate that among several possibilities one is recommended as particularly suitable without mentioning or excluding others. Alternatively it may indicate that a certain course of action is preferred but not necessarily required. Finally, in the negative form, it indicates a certain course of action is deprecated but not prohibited.

In the Bluetooth Specification the term designates an optional attribute that may require an entry in the PICS.

Explicit specification of alternatives should be done when using *should*.

## 1.5 MAY

The word *may* is used to indicate a course of action permissible within the limits of the specification. The term *may* equals *is permitted*. This is generally used when there is a single, optional attribute described, but multiple alternatives may be cited.

The use of *may* implies an optional condition in the PICS and therefore may need to be reflected in the corresponding test cases.

## 1.6 CAN

The word *can* is used for statements of possibility and capability, whether material, physical, or causal. The term *can* equals *is able to*.

The term *can* shall be used only in informative text. It describes capabilities by virtue of the rules established by normative text.







# Specification of the **Bluetooth®** System



Specification Volume 2

## Core System Package

[BR/EDR Controller volume]

Covered Core Package version: 4.1

Publication date: 03 December 2013







## Revision History

The Revision History is shown in the [\[Vol 0\] Part C, “Appendix” on page 61.](#)

## Contributors

The persons who contributed to this specification are listed in the [\[Vol 0\] Part C, “Appendix” on page 61.](#)

## Web Site

This specification can also be found on the official Bluetooth web site:  
<http://www.bluetooth.com>

## Disclaimer and Copyright Notice

The copyright in these specifications is owned by the Promoter Members of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. (“Bluetooth SIG”). Use of these specifications and any related intellectual property (collectively, the “Specification”), is governed by the Promoters Membership Agreement among the Promoter Members and Bluetooth SIG (the “Promoters Agreement”), certain membership agreements between Bluetooth SIG and its Adopter and Associate Members (the “Membership Agreements”) and the Bluetooth Specification Early Adopters Agreements (“1.2 Early Adopters Agreements”) among Early Adopter members of the unincorporated Bluetooth special interest group and the Promoter Members (the “Early Adopters Agreement”). Certain rights and obligations of the Promoter Members under the Early Adopters Agreements have been assigned to Bluetooth SIG by the Promoter Members.

Use of the Specification by anyone who is not a member of Bluetooth SIG or a party to an Early Adopters Agreement (each such person or party, a “Member”), is prohibited. The legal rights and obligations of each Member are governed by their applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights are granted herein.

Any use of the Specification not in compliance with the terms of the applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement is prohibited and any such prohibited use may result in termination of the applicable Membership Agreement or Early Adopters Agreement and other liability permitted by the applicable agreement or by applicable law to Bluetooth SIG or any of its members for patent, copyright and/or trademark infringement.



THE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR REASONABLE SKILL OR CARE, OR ANY WARRANTY ARISING OUT OF ANY COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, TRADE PRACTICE, PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

Each Member hereby acknowledges that products equipped with the Bluetooth® technology ("Bluetooth® Products") may be subject to various regulatory controls under the laws and regulations of various governments worldwide. Such laws and regulatory controls may govern, among other things, the combination, operation, use, implementation and distribution of Bluetooth® Products. Examples of such laws and regulatory controls include, but are not limited to, airline regulatory controls, telecommunications regulations, technology transfer controls and health and safety regulations. Each Member is solely responsible for the compliance by their Bluetooth® Products with any such laws and regulations and for obtaining any and all required authorizations, permits, or licenses for their Bluetooth® Products related to such regulations within the applicable jurisdictions. Each Member acknowledges that nothing in the Specification provides any information or assistance in connection with securing such compliance, authorizations or licenses. **NOTHING IN THE SPECIFICATION CREATES ANY WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING SUCH LAWS OR REGULATIONS.**

ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR FOR NONCOMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, RELATING TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION IS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. BY USE OF THE SPECIFICATION, EACH MEMBER EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY CLAIM AGAINST BLUETOOTH SIG AND ITS PROMOTER MEMBERS RELATED TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION.

Bluetooth SIG reserves the right to adopt any changes or alterations to the Specification as it deems necessary or appropriate.

Copyright © 1999 - 2013

Ericsson AB,

Lenovo, (Singapore) Pte. Ltd

Intel Corporation,

Microsoft Corporation,

Motorola Mobility, LLC,

Nokia Corporation,

Toshiba Corporation

\*Third-party brands and names are the property of their respective owners.



## CONTENTS

### Part A

#### RADIO SPECIFICATION

1	Scope .....	35
2	Frequency Bands and Channel Arrangement .....	37
3	Transmitter Characteristics.....	38
3.1	Basic Rate.....	40
3.1.1	Modulation Characteristics .....	40
3.1.2	Spurious Emissions .....	40
3.1.3	Radio Frequency Tolerance .....	41
3.2	Enhanced Data Rate.....	42
3.2.1	Modulation Characteristics .....	42
3.2.2	Spurious Emissions .....	44
3.2.3	Radio Frequency Tolerance .....	46
3.2.4	Relative Transmit Power .....	46
4	Receiver Characteristics .....	47
4.1	Basic Rate.....	47
4.1.1	Actual Sensitivity Level.....	47
4.1.2	Interference Performance.....	47
4.1.3	Out-of-Band Blocking .....	48
4.1.4	Intermodulation Characteristics .....	48
4.1.5	Maximum Usable Level .....	49
4.1.6	Receiver Signal Strength Indicator .....	49
4.1.7	Reference Signal Definition.....	49
4.2	Enhanced Data Rate.....	49
4.2.1	Actual Sensitivity Level.....	49
4.2.2	BER Floor Performance .....	49
4.2.3	Interference Performance.....	50
4.2.4	Maximum Usable Level .....	51
4.2.5	Out-of-Band and Intermodulation Characteristics .....	51
4.2.6	Reference Signal Definition.....	51
5	Appendix A .....	52
5.1	Nominal Test Conditions .....	52
5.1.1	Nominal temperature.....	52
5.1.2	Nominal power source.....	52



5.2	Extreme Test Conditions .....	53
5.2.1	Extreme temperatures.....	53
5.2.2	Extreme power source voltages .....	53
<b>6</b>	<b>Appendix B .....</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Appendix C .....</b>	<b>55</b>
7.1	Enhanced Data Rate Modulation Accuracy .....	55

## **Part B**

### **BASEBAND SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>General Description .....</b>	<b>66</b>
1.1	Bluetooth Clock .....	67
1.2	Bluetooth Device Addressing .....	69
1.2.1	Reserved Addresses .....	69
1.3	Access Codes .....	70
<b>2</b>	<b>Physical Channels .....</b>	<b>71</b>
2.1	Physical Channel Definition .....	72
2.2	Basic Piconet Physical Channel .....	72
2.2.1	Master-slave Definition .....	72
2.2.2	Hopping Characteristics .....	73
2.2.3	Time Slots .....	73
2.2.4	Piconet Clocks .....	74
2.2.5	Transmit/Receive Timing .....	74
2.3	Adapted Piconet Physical Channel .....	79
2.3.1	Hopping Characteristics .....	79
2.4	Page Scan Physical Channel .....	80
2.4.1	Clock Estimate for Paging .....	80
2.4.2	Hopping Characteristics .....	80
2.4.3	Paging Procedure Timing .....	81
2.4.4	Page Response Timing .....	82
2.5	Inquiry Scan Physical Channel .....	84
2.5.1	Clock for Inquiry .....	84
2.5.2	Hopping Characteristics .....	84
2.5.3	Inquiry Procedure Timing .....	84
2.5.4	Inquiry Response Timing .....	84
2.6	Hop Selection .....	86
2.6.1	General Selection Scheme .....	86
2.6.2	Selection Kernel .....	90
2.6.3	Adapted Hop Selection Kernel .....	93
2.6.4	Control Word .....	94



2.7	Synchronization Scan Physical Channel.....	99
2.7.1	Hopping Characteristics .....	99
2.7.2	Synchronization Train Procedure Timing .....	99
2.7.3	Synchronization Scan Procedure Timing .....	100
<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Links .....</b>	<b>102</b>
3.1	Link Supervision for Active and Parked Physical Links.....	102
3.2	Link Supervision for Connectionless Slave Broadcast Physical Links.....	103
3.3	Authenticated Payload Timeout for Active Links .....	103
<b>4</b>	<b>Logical Transports .....</b>	<b>104</b>
4.1	General .....	104
4.2	Logical Transport Address (LT_ADDR).....	104
4.3	Synchronous Logical Transports.....	105
4.4	Asynchronous Logical Transport.....	105
4.5	Transmit/Receive Routines .....	106
4.5.1	TX Routine .....	106
4.5.2	RX Routine .....	109
4.5.3	Flow Control .....	110
4.6	Active Slave Broadcast Transport.....	111
4.7	Parked Slave Broadcast Transport .....	112
4.7.1	Parked Member Address (PM_ADDR).....	112
4.7.2	Access Request Address (AR_ADDR).....	112
4.8	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Logical Transport.....	112
<b>5</b>	<b>Logical Links .....</b>	<b>113</b>
5.1	Link Control Logical Link (LC).....	113
5.2	ACL Control Logical Link (ACL-C) .....	113
5.3	User Asynchronous/Isochronous Logical Link (ACL-U) .....	114
5.3.1	Pausing the ACL-U logical link .....	114
5.4	User Synchronous Data Logical Link (SCO-S) .....	114
5.5	User Extended Synchronous Data Logical Link (eSCO-S).....	114
5.6	Logical Link Priorities .....	114
5.7	Profile Broadcast Data Logical Link .....	114
<b>6</b>	<b>Packets.....</b>	<b>115</b>
6.1	General Format.....	115
6.1.1	Basic Rate .....	115
6.1.2	Enhanced Data Rate .....	115
6.2	Bit Ordering .....	116
6.3	Access Code .....	117
6.3.1	Access Code Types.....	117
6.3.2	Preamble .....	118



6.3.3	Sync Word.....	118
6.3.4	Trailer .....	121
6.4	Packet Header .....	122
6.4.1	LT_ADDR.....	122
6.4.2	TYPE.....	122
6.4.3	FLOW.....	123
6.4.4	ARQN.....	123
6.4.5	SEQN.....	123
6.4.6	HEC .....	123
6.5	Packet Types .....	124
6.5.1	Common Packet Types .....	126
6.5.2	SCO Packets.....	129
6.5.3	eSCO Packets.....	130
6.5.4	ACL Packets .....	132
6.6	Payload Format .....	135
6.6.1	Synchronous Data Field.....	135
6.6.2	Asynchronous Data Field .....	137
6.7	Packet Summary .....	141
<b>7</b>	<b>Bitstream Processing .....</b>	<b>143</b>
7.1	Error Checking .....	144
7.1.1	HEC Generation.....	144
7.1.2	CRC Generation.....	146
7.2	Data Whitening .....	147
7.3	Error Correction .....	148
7.4	FEC Code: Rate 1/3 .....	148
7.5	FEC Code: Rate 2/3 .....	149
7.6	ARQ Scheme.....	150
7.6.1	Unnumbered ARQ.....	150
7.6.2	Retransmit Filtering .....	153
7.6.3	Flushing Payloads.....	156
7.6.4	Multi-slave Considerations .....	157
7.6.5	Active Slave and Park Slave Broadcast Packets .....	157
7.7	Erroneous Synchronous Data Reporting .....	158
7.8	Message Integrity Check .....	158
<b>8</b>	<b>Link Controller Operation .....</b>	<b>159</b>
8.1	Overview of States .....	159
8.2	Standby State .....	160
8.3	Connection Establishment Substates .....	160
8.3.1	Page Scan Substate .....	160



8.3.2	Page substate .....	162
8.3.3	Page Response Substates.....	165
8.4	Device Discovery Substates .....	169
8.4.1	Inquiry scan substate .....	170
8.4.2	Inquiry Substate .....	171
8.4.3	Inquiry Response Substate .....	172
8.5	Connection State.....	174
8.6	Active Mode .....	176
8.6.1	Polling in the Active Mode .....	177
8.6.2	SCO.....	177
8.6.3	eSCO.....	178
8.6.4	Broadcast Scheme .....	181
8.6.5	Role Switch .....	182
8.6.6	Scatternet.....	184
8.6.7	Hop Sequence Switching .....	185
8.6.8	Channel Classification and Channel Map Selection....	188
8.6.9	Power Management .....	189
8.6.10	Piconet Clock Adjustment .....	190
8.7	Sniff Mode.....	193
8.7.1	Sniff Transition Mode.....	194
8.7.2	Sniff Subrating.....	195
8.8	Hold Mode.....	197
8.9	Park State.....	197
8.9.1	Beacon Train .....	198
8.9.2	Beacon Access Window.....	200
8.9.3	Parked Slave Synchronization .....	201
8.9.4	Parking .....	202
8.9.5	Master-initiated Unparking .....	203
8.9.6	Slave-initiated Unparking .....	203
8.9.7	Broadcast Scan Window .....	204
8.9.8	Polling in the Park State .....	204
8.10	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Mode .....	205
8.10.1	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmit Operation.	205
8.10.2	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Operation..	206
8.10.3	AFH in Connectionless Slave Broadcast.....	207
8.11	Synchronization Establishment Substates .....	207
8.11.1	Synchronization Scan Substate .....	207
8.11.2	Synchronization Train Substate.....	207



<b>9</b>	<b>Audio .....</b>	<b>210</b>
9.1	LOG PCM CODEC .....	210
9.2	CVSD CODEC .....	210
9.3	Error Handling.....	213
9.4	General Audio Requirements.....	213
9.4.1	Signal Levels.....	213
9.4.2	CVSD Audio Quality.....	213
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>217</b>
	<b>Appendix.....</b>	<b>218</b>

**Part C****LINK MANAGER PROTOCOL SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>General Rules .....</b>	<b>232</b>
2.1	Message Transport.....	232
2.2	Synchronization .....	232
2.3	Packet Format .....	233
2.4	Transactions .....	234
2.4.1	LMP Response Timeout.....	235
2.5	Error Handling.....	235
2.5.1	Transaction Collision Resolution.....	236
2.6	Procedure Rules .....	236
2.7	General Response Messages .....	237
2.8	LMP Message Constraints.....	237
<b>3</b>	<b>Device Features .....</b>	<b>238</b>
3.1	General Description .....	238
3.2	Feature Definitions.....	238
3.3	Feature Mask Definition .....	246
3.4	Link Manager Interoperability policy .....	249
<b>4</b>	<b>Procedure Rules .....</b>	<b>250</b>
4.1	Connection Control .....	250
4.1.1	Connection Establishment .....	250
4.1.2	Detach.....	251
4.1.3	Power Control .....	252
4.1.4	Adaptive Frequency Hopping.....	256
4.1.5	Channel Classification.....	259
4.1.6	Link Supervision.....	261



4.1.7	Channel Quality Driven Data Rate Change (CQDDR)	262
4.1.8	Quality of Service (QoS).....	263
4.1.9	Paging Scheme Parameters .....	264
4.1.10	Control of Multi-slot Packets.....	266
4.1.11	Enhanced Data Rate .....	267
4.1.12	Encapsulated LMP PDUs.....	268
4.1.13	Ping .....	270
4.1.14	Piconet Clock Adjustment .....	271
4.2	Security .....	275
4.2.1	Authentication.....	275
4.2.2	Pairing .....	278
4.2.3	Change Link Key .....	281
4.2.4	Change Current Link Key Type .....	283
4.2.5	Encryption .....	285
4.2.6	Request Supported Encryption Key Size .....	294
4.2.7	Secure Simple Pairing .....	294
4.3	Informational Requests .....	310
4.3.1	Timing Accuracy .....	310
4.3.2	Clock Offset.....	311
4.3.3	LMP version .....	312
4.3.4	Supported Features.....	313
4.3.5	Name Request .....	315
4.4	Role Switch .....	316
4.4.1	Slot Offset.....	316
4.4.2	Role Switch .....	317
4.5	Modes of Operation .....	320
4.5.1	Hold Mode .....	320
4.5.2	Park State.....	323
4.5.3	Sniff Mode .....	330
4.6	Logical Transports.....	334
4.6.1	SCO Logical Transport.....	334
4.6.2	eSCO Logical Transport.....	337
4.7	Test Mode .....	342
4.7.1	Activation and Deactivation of Test Mode .....	342
4.7.2	Control of Test Mode .....	343
4.7.3	Summary of Test Mode PDUs.....	345
5	<b>Summary.....</b>	<b>348</b>
5.1	PDU Summary .....	348
5.2	Parameter Definitions .....	359



5.3	LMP Encapsulated.....	370
5.4	Default Values.....	371
6	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>372</b>
7	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>376</b>

## Part D

### ERROR CODES

1	<b>Overview of Error Codes.....</b>	<b>383</b>
1.1	Usage Descriptions.....	383
1.2	HCI Command Errors .....	383
1.3	List of Error Codes.....	384
2	<b>Error Code Descriptions .....</b>	<b>387</b>
2.1	Unknown HCI Command (0x01).....	387
2.2	Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02).....	387
2.3	Hardware Failure (0x03) .....	387
2.4	Page Timeout (0x04) .....	387
2.5	Authentication Failure (0x05).....	387
2.6	PIN or key Missing (0x06).....	387
2.7	Memory Capacity Exceeded (0x07).....	387
2.8	Connection Timeout (0x08).....	388
2.9	Connection Limit Exceeded (0x09).....	388
2.10	Synchronous Connection Limit to a Device Exceeded (0x0A)	388
2.11	ACL Connection Already Exists (0x0B) .....	388
2.12	Command Disallowed (0x0C) .....	388
2.13	Connection Rejected due to Limited Resources (0x0D).....	388
2.14	Connection Rejected due to Security Reasons (0x0E).....	388
2.15	Connection Rejected due to Unacceptable BD_ADDR (0x0F)	389
2.16	Connection Accept Timeout Exceeded (0x10).....	389
2.17	Unsupported Feature or Parameter Value (0x11) .....	389
2.18	Invalid HCI Command Parameters (0x12) .....	389
2.19	Remote User Terminated Connection (0x13) .....	389
2.20	Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Low Resources (0x14).....	390
2.21	Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Power Off (0x15).....	390
2.22	Connection Terminated by Local Host (0x16).....	390
2.23	Repeated Attempts (0x17) .....	390
2.24	Pairing not Allowed (0x18) .....	390
2.25	Unknown LMP PDU (0x19) .....	390
2.26	Unsupported Remote Feature / Unsupported LMP Feature (0x1A) .....	390
2.27	SCO Offset Rejected (0x1B).....	390



2.28	SCO Interval Rejected (0x1C).....	391
2.29	SCO Air Mode Rejected (0x1D).....	391
2.30	Invalid LMP Parameters / Invalid LL Parameters (0x1E) .....	391
2.31	Unspecified Error (0X1F) .....	391
2.32	Unsupported LMP Parameter Value / Unsupported LL Parameter Value (0x20) .....	391
2.33	Role Change Not Allowed (0x21).....	391
2.34	LMP Response Timeout / LL Response Timeout (0x22) .....	392
2.35	LMP Error Transaction Collision (0x23) .....	392
2.36	LMP PDU Not Allowed (0x24).....	392
2.37	Encryption Mode Not Acceptable (0x25).....	392
2.38	Link Key cannot be Changed (0x26).....	392
2.39	Requested QoS Not Supported (0x27) .....	392
2.40	Instant Passed (0x28) .....	392
2.41	Pairing with Unit Key Not Supported (0x29).....	392
2.42	Different Transaction Collision (0x2A).....	393
2.43	QoS Unacceptable Parameter (0x2C) .....	393
2.44	QoS Rejected (0x2D) .....	393
2.45	Channel Assessment Not Supported (0x2E) .....	393
2.46	Insufficient Security (0x2F).....	393
2.47	Parameter out of Mandatory Range (0x30).....	393
2.48	Role Switch Pending (0x32).....	393
2.49	Reserved Slot Violation (0x34).....	393
2.50	Role Switch Failed (0x35) .....	394
2.51	Extended Inquiry Response Too Large (0x36).....	394
2.52	Simple Pairing Not Supported By Host (0x37) .....	394
2.53	Host Busy–Pairing (0x38) .....	394
2.54	Connection Rejected Due To No Suitable Channel Found (0x39).....	394
2.55	Controller Busy (0x3A) .....	394
2.56	Unacceptable Connection Parameters (0x3B).....	394
2.57	Directed Advertising Timeout (0x3C) .....	395
2.58	Connection Terminated Due To MIC Failure (0x3D) .....	395
2.59	Connection Failed To Be Established (0x3E) .....	395
2.60	MAC Connection Failed (0x3F).....	395
2.61	Coarse Clock Adjustment Rejected but Will Try to Adjust Using Clock Dragging (0x40) .....	395

**Part E****HOST CONTROLLER INTERFACE FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>411</b>
1.1	Lower Layers of the Bluetooth Software Stack .....	412
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview of Host Controller Transport Layer .....</b>	<b>414</b>
2.1	Host Controller Transport Layer and AMPS .....	414
<b>3</b>	<b>Overview of Commands and Events .....</b>	<b>415</b>
3.1	Generic Events .....	416
3.2	Device Setup .....	416
3.3	Controller Flow Control .....	417
3.4	Controller Information .....	418
3.5	Controller Configuration .....	420
3.6	Device Discovery .....	423
3.7	Connection Setup .....	426
3.8	Remote Information .....	431
3.9	Synchronous Connections .....	432
3.10	Connection State .....	434
3.11	Piconet Structure .....	437
3.12	Quality of Service .....	438
3.13	Physical Links .....	440
3.14	Host Flow Control .....	442
3.15	Link Information .....	444
3.16	Authentication and Encryption .....	446
3.17	Testing .....	453
3.18	Alphabetical List of Commands and Events .....	456
3.19	LE Controller Requirements .....	465
3.20	Connectionless Slave Broadcast .....	468
<b>4</b>	<b>HCI Flow Control .....</b>	<b>470</b>
4.1	Host to Controller Data Flow Control .....	470
4.1.1	Packet-based Data Flow Control .....	470
4.1.2	Data-Block-Based Data Flow Control .....	472
4.2	Controller to Host Data Flow Control .....	473
4.3	Disconnection Behavior .....	473
4.4	Command Flow Control .....	474
4.5	Command Error Handling .....	474
<b>5</b>	<b>HCI Data Formats .....</b>	<b>476</b>
5.1	Introduction .....	476
5.2	Data and Parameter Formats .....	476
5.3	Handles .....	477
5.3.1	Primary Controller Handles .....	477
5.3.2	AMP Controller Handles .....	478



5.4	Exchange of HCI-Specific Information .....	479
5.4.1	HCI Command Packet.....	479
5.4.2	HCI ACL Data Packets.....	481
5.4.3	HCI Synchronous Data Packets .....	484
5.4.4	HCI Event Packet.....	486
<b>6</b>	<b>HCI Configuration Parameters .....</b>	<b>487</b>
6.1	Scan Enable .....	487
6.2	Inquiry Scan Interval .....	487
6.3	Inquiry Scan Window .....	488
6.4	Inquiry Scan Type .....	488
6.5	Inquiry Mode .....	488
6.6	Page Timeout.....	489
6.7	Connection Accept Timeout .....	489
6.8	Page Scan Interval.....	490
6.9	Page Scan Window.....	490
6.10	Page Scan Period Mode (Deprecated) .....	490
6.11	Page Scan Type.....	491
6.12	Voice Setting .....	491
6.13	PIN Type .....	492
6.14	Link Key .....	492
6.15	Failed Contact Counter .....	492
6.16	Authentication Enable .....	493
6.17	Hold Mode Activity .....	493
6.18	Link Policy Settings .....	493
6.19	Flush Timeout .....	495
6.20	Num Broadcast Retransmissions.....	495
6.21	Link Supervision Timeout.....	496
6.22	Synchronous Flow Control Enable .....	496
6.23	Local Name .....	497
6.24	Extended Inquiry Response .....	497
6.25	Erroneous Data Reporting .....	497
6.26	Class Of Device .....	498
6.27	Supported Commands .....	498
6.28	Logical Link Accept Timeout .....	507
6.29	Location Domain Aware .....	507
6.30	Location Domain .....	507
6.31	Location Domain Options.....	508
6.32	Location Options .....	508
6.33	Flow Control Mode .....	508
6.34	LE Supported Host.....	509
6.35	Simultaneous LE Host .....	509
6.36	Synchronization Train Interval.....	509



6.37	Synchronization Train Timeout .....	510
6.38	Service Data .....	510
6.39	Secure Connections Host Support .....	510
6.40	Authenticated Payload Timeout .....	511
6.41	Extended Page Timeout .....	511
6.42	Extended Inquiry Length.....	511
<b>7</b>	<b>HCI Commands and Events .....</b>	<b>512</b>
7.1	Link Control Commands .....	512
7.1.1	Inquiry Command.....	513
7.1.2	Inquiry Cancel Command.....	515
7.1.3	Periodic Inquiry Mode Command.....	516
7.1.4	Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode Command.....	519
7.1.5	Create Connection Command.....	520
7.1.6	Disconnect Command.....	523
7.1.7	Create Connection Cancel Command .....	524
7.1.8	Accept Connection Request Command .....	526
7.1.9	Reject Connection Request Command.....	528
7.1.10	Link Key Request Reply Command .....	529
7.1.11	Link Key Request Negative Reply Command .....	531
7.1.12	PIN Code Request Reply Command .....	532
7.1.13	PIN Code Request Negative Reply Command .....	534
7.1.14	Change Connection Packet Type Command .....	535
7.1.15	Authentication Requested Command .....	538
7.1.16	Set Connection Encryption Command .....	540
7.1.17	Change Connection Link Key Command .....	542
7.1.18	Master Link Key Command.....	543
7.1.19	Remote Name Request Command .....	545
7.1.20	Remote Name Request Cancel Command.....	547
7.1.21	Read Remote Supported Features Command.....	549
7.1.22	Read Remote Extended Features Command .....	550
7.1.23	Read Remote Version Information Command .....	552
7.1.24	Read Clock Offset Command .....	553
7.1.25	Read LMP Handle Command .....	554
7.1.26	Setup Synchronous Connection Command .....	556
7.1.27	Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command	560
7.1.28	Reject Synchronous Connection Request Command.	564
7.1.29	IO Capability Request Reply Command .....	565
7.1.30	User Confirmation Request Reply Command.....	568



7.1.31	User Confirmation Request Negative Reply Command.....	569
7.1.32	User Passkey Request Reply Command .....	570
7.1.33	User Passkey Request Negative Reply Command....	571
7.1.34	Remote OOB Data Request Reply Command .....	572
7.1.35	Remote OOB Data Request Negative Reply Command.....	574
7.1.36	IO Capability Request Negative Reply Command .....	575
7.1.37	Create Physical Link Command .....	576
7.1.38	Accept Physical Link Command.....	578
7.1.39	Disconnect Physical Link Command .....	580
7.1.40	Create Logical Link Command .....	582
7.1.41	Accept Logical Link Command.....	584
7.1.42	Disconnect Logical Link Command .....	586
7.1.43	Logical Link Cancel Command.....	587
7.1.44	Flow Spec Modify Command.....	589
7.1.45	Enhanced Setup Synchronous Connection Command.....	591
7.1.46	Enhanced Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command.....	601
7.1.47	Truncated Page Command .....	608
7.1.48	Truncated Page Cancel Command .....	610
7.1.49	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Command.....	612
7.1.50	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Command.....	616
7.1.51	Start Synchronization Train Command.....	620
7.1.52	Receive Synchronization Train Command .....	621
7.1.53	Remote OOB Extended Data Request Reply Command.....	623
7.2	Link Policy Commands.....	625
7.2.1	Hold Mode Command .....	626
7.2.2	Sniff Mode Command.....	628
7.2.3	Exit Sniff Mode Command.....	631
7.2.4	Park State Command .....	632
7.2.5	Exit Park State Command .....	634
7.2.6	QoS Setup Command .....	635
7.2.7	Role Discovery Command.....	637
7.2.8	Switch Role Command.....	638
7.2.9	Read Link Policy Settings Command .....	640



7.2.10	Write Link Policy Settings Command .....	642
7.2.11	Read Default Link Policy Settings Command .....	644
7.2.12	Write Default Link Policy Settings Command .....	645
7.2.13	Flow Specification Command.....	646
7.2.14	Sniff Subrating Command .....	648
7.3	Controller & Baseband Commands .....	650
7.3.1	Set Event Mask Command .....	650
7.3.2	Reset Command .....	653
7.3.3	Set Event Filter Command.....	654
7.3.4	Flush Command.....	660
7.3.5	Read PIN Type Command .....	662
7.3.6	Write PIN Type Command .....	663
7.3.7	Create New Unit Key Command .....	664
7.3.8	Read Stored Link Key Command.....	665
7.3.9	Write Stored Link Key Command .....	667
7.3.10	Delete Stored Link Key Command.....	669
7.3.11	Write Local Name Command .....	671
7.3.12	Read Local Name Command.....	672
7.3.13	Read Connection Accept Timeout Command .....	673
7.3.14	Write Connection Accept Timeout Command .....	674
7.3.15	Read Page Timeout Command.....	675
7.3.16	Write Page Timeout Command .....	676
7.3.17	Read Scan Enable Command.....	677
7.3.18	Write Scan Enable Command.....	678
7.3.19	Read Page Scan Activity Command .....	679
7.3.20	Write Page Scan Activity Command .....	681
7.3.21	Read Inquiry Scan Activity Command.....	682
7.3.22	Write Inquiry Scan Activity Command.....	684
7.3.23	Read Authentication Enable Command .....	685
7.3.24	Write Authentication Enable Command .....	686
7.3.25	Read Class of Device Command .....	687
7.3.26	Write Class of Device Command .....	688
7.3.27	Read Voice Setting Command .....	689
7.3.28	Write Voice Setting Command .....	690
7.3.29	Read Automatic Flush Timeout Command .....	691
7.3.30	Write Automatic Flush Timeout Command.....	693
7.3.31	Read Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command....	695
7.3.32	Write Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command....	696



7.3.33	Read Hold Mode Activity Command .....	697
7.3.34	Write Hold Mode Activity Command.....	698
7.3.35	Read Transmit Power Level Command.....	699
7.3.36	Read Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command... 7.3.37	701
7.3.38	Write Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command ... 7.3.39	702
7.3.39	Set Controller To Host Flow Control Command .....	703
7.3.40	Host Buffer Size Command.....	705
7.3.40	Host Number Of Completed Packets Command.....	707
7.3.41	Read Link Supervision Timeout Command .....	709
7.3.42	Write Link Supervision Timeout Command .....	711
7.3.43	Read Number Of Supported IAC Command .....	713
7.3.44	Read Current IAC LAP Command .....	714
7.3.45	Write Current IAC LAP Command.....	715
7.3.46	Set AFH Host Channel Classification Command .....	717
7.3.47	Read Inquiry Scan Type Command .....	718
7.3.48	Write Inquiry Scan Type Command.....	719
7.3.49	Read Inquiry Mode Command .....	720
7.3.50	Write Inquiry Mode Command.....	721
7.3.51	Read Page Scan Type Command.....	722
7.3.52	Write Page Scan Type Command .....	723
7.3.53	Read AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command ....	724
7.3.54	Write AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command ....	725
7.3.55	Read Extended Inquiry Response Command .....	727
7.3.56	Write Extended Inquiry Response Command .....	728
7.3.57	Refresh Encryption Key Command .....	729
7.3.58	Read Simple Pairing Mode Command .....	730
7.3.59	Write Simple Pairing Mode Command .....	731
7.3.60	Read Local OOB Data Command .....	733
7.3.61	Read Inquiry Response Transmit Power Level Command.....	735
7.3.62	Write Inquiry Transmit Power Level Command .....	736
7.3.63	Send Keypress Notification Command.....	737
7.3.64	Read Default Erroneous Data Reporting.....	739
7.3.65	Write Default Erroneous Data Reporting .....	740
7.3.66	Enhanced Flush Command.....	741
7.3.67	Read Logical Link Accept Timeout Command .....	743
7.3.68	Write Logical Link Accept Timeout Command.....	744
7.3.69	Set Event Mask Page 2 Command .....	745



7.3.70	Read Location Data Command .....	747
7.3.71	Write Location Data Command .....	748
7.3.72	Read Flow Control Mode Command.....	749
7.3.73	Write Flow Control Mode Command .....	750
7.3.74	Read Enhanced Transmit Power Level Command .....	751
7.3.75	Read Best Effort Flush Timeout Command.....	753
7.3.76	Write Best Effort Flush Timeout Command.....	754
7.3.77	Short Range Mode Command .....	755
7.3.78	Read LE Host Support Command.....	756
7.3.79	Write LE Host Support Command.....	757
7.3.80	Set MWS Channel Parameters Command .....	758
7.3.81	Set External Frame Configuration Command .....	760
7.3.82	Set MWS Signaling Command.....	763
7.3.83	Set MWS Transport Layer Command .....	768
7.3.84	Set MWS Scan Frequency Table Command.....	769
7.3.85	Set MWS_PATTERN Configuration Command.....	771
7.3.86	Set Reserved LT_ADDR Command.....	773
7.3.87	Delete Reserved LT_ADDR Command.....	775
7.3.88	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Data Command	776
7.3.89	Read Synchronization Train Parameters Command...	778
7.3.90	Write Synchronization Train Parameters Command ...	780
7.3.91	Read Secure Connections Host Support Command...	782
7.3.92	Write Secure Connections Host Support Command...	783
7.3.93	Read Authenticated Payload Timeout Command .....	785
7.3.94	Write Authenticated Payload Timeout Command .....	787
7.3.95	Read Local OOB Extended Data Command.....	789
7.3.96	Read Extended Page Timeout Command .....	791
7.3.97	Write Extended Page Timeout Command.....	792
7.3.98	Read Extended Inquiry Length Command.....	793
7.3.99	Write Extended Inquiry Length Command .....	794
7.4	Informational Parameters .....	795
7.4.1	Read Local Version Information Command .....	795
7.4.2	Read Local Supported Commands Command .....	797
7.4.3	Read Local Supported Features Command.....	798
7.4.4	Read Local Extended Features Command .....	799
7.4.5	Read Buffer Size Command .....	801
7.4.6	Read BD_ADDR Command.....	803
7.4.7	Read Data Block Size Command.....	804



7.4.8	Read Local Supported Codecs Command.....	806
7.5	Status Parameters.....	808
7.5.1	Read Failed Contact Counter Command .....	808
7.5.2	Reset Failed Contact Counter Command .....	810
7.5.3	Read Link Quality Command .....	811
7.5.4	Read RSSI Command.....	813
7.5.5	Read AFH Channel Map Command.....	815
7.5.6	Read Clock Command .....	817
7.5.7	Read Encryption Key Size Command .....	819
7.5.8	Read Local AMP Info Command.....	821
7.5.9	Read Local AMP ASSOC Command .....	826
7.5.10	Write Remote AMP ASSOC Command .....	829
7.5.11	Get MWS Transport Layer Configuration Command...831	
7.5.12	Set Triggered Clock Capture Command .....	833
7.6	Testing Commands .....	836
7.6.1	Read Loopback Mode Command.....	836
7.6.2	Write Loopback Mode Command.....	838
7.6.3	Enable Device Under Test Mode Command .....	841
7.6.4	Write Simple Pairing Debug Mode Command.....	842
7.6.5	Enable AMP Receiver Reports Command .....	844
7.6.6	AMP Test End Command .....	845
7.6.7	AMP Test Command .....	846
7.6.8	Write Secure Connections Test Mode Command .....	847
7.7	Events .....	850
7.7.1	Inquiry Complete Event.....	850
7.7.2	Inquiry Result Event .....	851
7.7.3	Connection Complete Event.....	853
7.7.4	Connection Request Event.....	855
7.7.5	Disconnection Complete Event .....	856
7.7.6	Authentication Complete Event .....	857
7.7.7	Remote Name Request Complete Event .....	858
7.7.8	Encryption Change Event.....	859
7.7.9	Change Connection Link Key Complete Event .....	861
7.7.10	Master Link Key Complete Event .....	862
7.7.11	Read Remote Supported Features Complete Event...863	
7.7.12	Read Remote Version Information Complete Event....864	
7.7.13	QoS Setup Complete Event .....	866
7.7.14	Command Complete Event .....	868



7.7.15	Command Status Event .....	869
7.7.16	Hardware Error Event .....	870
7.7.17	Flush Occurred Event .....	871
7.7.18	Role Change Event.....	872
7.7.19	Number Of Completed Packets Event.....	873
7.7.20	Mode Change Event .....	875
7.7.21	Return Link Keys Event.....	877
7.7.22	PIN Code Request Event.....	878
7.7.23	Link Key Request Event.....	879
7.7.24	Link Key Notification Event .....	880
7.7.25	Loopback Command Event.....	882
7.7.26	Data Buffer Overflow Event.....	883
7.7.27	Max Slots Change Event.....	884
7.7.28	Read Clock Offset Complete Event .....	885
7.7.29	Connection Packet Type Changed Event .....	886
7.7.30	QoS Violation Event.....	888
7.7.31	Page Scan Repetition Mode Change Event.....	889
7.7.32	Flow Specification Complete Event.....	890
7.7.33	Inquiry Result with RSSI Event .....	892
7.7.34	Read Remote Extended Features Complete Event....	894
7.7.35	Synchronous Connection Complete Event .....	896
7.7.36	Synchronous Connection Changed Event.....	898
7.7.37	Sniff Subrating Event .....	900
7.7.38	Extended Inquiry Result Event.....	902
7.7.39	Encryption Key Refresh Complete Event.....	905
7.7.40	IO Capability Request Event.....	906
7.7.41	IO Capability Response Event .....	907
7.7.42	User Confirmation Request Event.....	909
7.7.43	User Passkey Request Event .....	910
7.7.44	Remote OOB Data Request Event .....	911
7.7.45	Simple Pairing Complete Event .....	912
7.7.46	Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event .....	913
7.7.47	Enhanced Flush Complete Event.....	914
7.7.48	User Passkey Notification Event .....	915
7.7.49	Keypress Notification Event .....	916
7.7.50	Remote Host Supported Features Notification Event .	917
7.7.51	Physical Link Complete Event.....	918
7.7.52	Channel Selected Event .....	919



7.7.53	Disconnection Physical Link Complete Event .....	920
7.7.54	Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event .....	921
7.7.55	Physical Link Recovery Event .....	922
7.7.56	Logical Link Complete Event.....	923
7.7.57	Disconnection Logical Link Complete Event .....	924
7.7.58	Flow Spec Modify Complete Event.....	925
7.7.59	Number Of Completed Data Blocks Event.....	926
7.7.60	Short Range Mode Change Complete Event.....	928
7.7.61	AMP Status Change Event.....	929
7.7.62	AMP Start Test Event .....	931
7.7.63	AMP Test End Event .....	932
7.7.64	AMP Receiver Report Event .....	933
7.7.65	LE Meta Event.....	935
7.7.66	Triggered Clock Capture Event .....	946
7.7.67	Synchronization Train Complete Event .....	947
7.7.68	Synchronization Train Received Event .....	948
7.7.69	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Event .....	950
7.7.70	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout Event .....	952
7.7.71	Truncated Page Complete Event .....	953
7.7.72	Slave Page Response Timeout Event.....	954
7.7.73	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change Event .....	955
7.7.74	Inquiry Response Notification Event .....	956
7.7.75	Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired Event .....	957
7.8	LE Controller Commands.....	958
7.8.1	LE Set Event Mask Command .....	958
7.8.2	LE Read Buffer Size Command .....	960
7.8.3	LE Read Local Supported Features Command .....	962
7.8.4	LE Set Random Address Command .....	963
7.8.5	LE Set Advertising Parameters Command.....	964
7.8.6	LE Read Advertising Channel Tx Power Command ...	968
7.8.7	LE Set Advertising Data Command.....	969
7.8.8	LE Set Scan Response Data Command .....	970
7.8.9	LE Set Advertise Enable Command.....	971
7.8.10	LE Set Scan Parameters Command .....	973
7.8.11	LE Set Scan Enable Command.....	976
7.8.12	LE Create Connection Command .....	978
7.8.13	LE Create Connection Cancel Command .....	982



7.8.14	LE Read White List Size Command.....	983
7.8.15	LE Clear White List Command.....	984
7.8.16	LE Add Device To White List Command .....	985
7.8.17	LE Remove Device From White List Command.....	986
7.8.18	LE Connection Update Command .....	987
7.8.19	LE Set Host Channel Classification Command.....	990
7.8.20	LE Read Channel Map Command .....	991
7.8.21	LE Read Remote Used Features Command .....	993
7.8.22	LE Encrypt Command.....	994
7.8.23	LE Rand Command.....	996
7.8.24	LE Start Encryption Command.....	997
7.8.25	LE Long Term Key Request Reply Command .....	999
7.8.26	LE Long Term Key Request Negative Reply Command .....	1000
7.8.27	LE Read Supported States Command .....	1001
7.8.28	LE Receiver Test Command .....	1008
7.8.29	LE Transmitter Test Command .....	1009
7.8.30	LE Test End Command .....	1011
7.8.31	LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply Command .....	1012
7.8.32	LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply Command .....	1015
<b>8</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>1017</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>1018</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Appendix A: Deprecated Commands, Events and Configuration Parameters .....</b>	<b>1019</b>
10.1	Read Page Scan Mode Command .....	1020
10.2	Write Page Scan Mode Command .....	1021
10.3	Read Page Scan Period Mode Command.....	1022
10.4	Write Page Scan Period Mode Command .....	1023
10.5	Add SCO Connection Command.....	1024
10.6	Page Scan Mode Change Event .....	1026
10.7	Read Country Code Command .....	1027
10.8	Read Encryption Mode Command.....	1028
10.9	Write Encryption Mode Command .....	1029
10.10	Deprecated Parameters.....	1030
	10.10.1 Encryption Mode .....	1030
	10.10.2 Page Scan Mode .....	1031

**Part F****MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1037</b>
1.1	Notation.....	1037
1.2	Flow of Control .....	1038
1.3	Example MSC .....	1038
<b>2</b>	<b>Services Without Connection Request .....</b>	<b>1039</b>
2.1	Remote Name Request.....	1039
2.2	One-time Inquiry.....	1041
2.3	Periodic Inquiry .....	1043
<b>3</b>	<b>ACL Connection Establishment and Detachment.....</b>	<b>1045</b>
3.1	Connection Setup .....	1046
<b>4</b>	<b>Optional Activities After ACL Connection Establishment.....</b>	<b>1054</b>
4.1	Authentication Requested .....	1054
4.2	Simple Pairing Message Sequence Charts.....	1056
4.2.1	Optional OOB Information Collection .....	1057
4.2.2	Enable Simple Pairing and Secure Connections.....	1058
4.2.3	Connection Establishment.....	1059
4.2.4	L2CAP Connection Request for a Secure Service....	1060
4.2.5	Optional OOB Information Transfer.....	1060
4.2.6	Start Simple Pairing .....	1061
4.2.7	IO Capability Exchange .....	1062
4.2.8	Public Key Exchange .....	1063
4.2.9	Authentication.....	1063
4.2.10	Numeric Comparison.....	1064
4.2.11	Numeric Comparison Failure on Initiating Side .....	1065
4.2.12	Numeric Comparison Failure on Responding Side ...	1066
4.2.13	Passkey Entry .....	1067
4.2.14	Passkey Entry Failure on Responding Side .....	1068
4.2.15	Passkey Entry Failure on Initiator Side .....	1069
4.2.16	Out of Band .....	1070
4.2.17	OOB Failure on Initiator Side .....	1072
4.2.18	DHKey Checks .....	1073
4.2.19	Calculate Link Key.....	1074
4.2.20	Enable Encryption .....	1075
4.2.21	L2CAP Connection Response.....	1075
4.2.22	LMP Ping.....	1076
4.3	Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event .....	1078
4.4	Set Connection Encryption.....	1079



4.5	Change Connection Link Key .....	1081
4.6	Change Connection Link Key with Encryption Pause and Resume .....	1082
4.7	Master Link Key .....	1083
4.8	Read Remote Supported Features.....	1085
4.9	Read Remote Extended Features .....	1086
4.10	Read Clock Offset.....	1087
4.11	Role Switch on an Encrypted Link using Encryption Pause and Resume .....	1088
4.12	Refreshing Encryption Keys .....	1089
4.13	Read Remote Version Information.....	1091
4.14	QOS Setup .....	1092
4.15	Switch Role.....	1093
4.16	AMP Physical Link Creation and Disconnect.....	1095
	4.16.1 Physical Link Establishment.....	1096
	4.16.2 Logical Link Creation.....	1101
4.17	AMP Test Mode Sequence Charts.....	1103
	4.17.1 Discover the AMP Present and Running Transmitter and Receiver Tests.....	1104
<b>5</b>	<b>Synchronous Connection Establishment and Detachment.....</b>	<b>1107</b>
5.1	Synchronous Connection Setup .....	1107
5.2	Synchronous Connection Setup with Enhanced Synchronous Commands .....	1115
<b>6</b>	<b>Sniff, Hold and Park.....</b>	<b>1121</b>
6.1	Sniff Mode.....	1121
6.2	Hold Mode .....	1122
6.3	Park State .....	1125
<b>7</b>	<b>Buffer Management, Flow Control .....</b>	<b>1129</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Loopback Mode.....</b>	<b>1131</b>
8.1	Local Loopback Mode.....	1131
8.2	Remote Loopback Mode.....	1134
<b>9</b>	<b>Connectionless Slave Broadcast Services .....</b>	<b>1136</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>1140</b>

**Part G  
SAMPLE DATA**

<b>1</b>	<b>Encryption Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1149</b>
1.1	E0 Encryption Sample Data .....	1149
1.1.1	Generating Kc' from Kc .....	1149
1.1.2	First Set of Sample Data .....	1152
1.1.3	Second Set of Sample Data .....	1160
1.1.4	Third Set of Samples.....	1168
1.1.5	Fourth Set of Samples.....	1176
1.2	AES-CCM ENCRYPTION SAMPLE DATA .....	1184
1.2.1	Sample Data 1 (DM1, M --> S).....	1184
1.2.2	Sample Data 2 (DM1, M --> S).....	1185
1.2.3	Sample Data 3 (DM1, S --> M).....	1186
1.2.4	Sample Data 4 (DM1, M --> S).....	1186
1.2.5	Sample Data 5 (DM1, S --> M).....	1187
1.2.6	Sample Data 6 (DH1, M --> S) .....	1188
1.2.7	Sample Data 7 (DH1, S --> M) .....	1189
1.2.8	Sample Data 8 (DH1, M --> S) .....	1190
1.2.9	Sample Data 9 (DH1, S --> M) .....	1191
1.2.10	Sample Data 10 (2-DH3, M --> S).....	1192
1.2.11	Sample Data 11 (2-DH3, S --> M) .....	1195
1.2.12	Sample Data 12 (3-DH5, M --> S).....	1198
1.2.13	Sample Data 13 (3-DH5, S --> M).....	1205
1.2.14	Sample Data 14 (EV3) .....	1212
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequency Hopping Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1213</b>
2.1	First set .....	1214
2.2	Second set .....	1220
2.3	Third set .....	1226
<b>3</b>	<b>Access Code Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1232</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>HEC and Packet Header Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1235</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>CRC Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1236</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Complete Sample Packets.....</b>	<b>1237</b>
6.1	Example of DH1 Packet.....	1237
6.2	Example of DM1 Packet.....	1238
<b>7</b>	<b>Simple Pairing Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1239</b>
7.1	Elliptic Curve Sample Data .....	1239
7.1.1	P-192 Sample Data .....	1239
7.1.2	P-256 Sample Data .....	1241



<b>7.2</b>	<b>Hash Functions Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1242</b>
7.2.1	f1().....	1242
7.2.2	g().....	1244
7.2.3	f2().....	1244
7.2.4	f3().....	1245
7.2.5	h2().....	1252
7.2.6	7.2.6 h4().....	1253
7.2.7	7.2.7 h5().....	1253
7.2.8	7.2.8 h3().....	1253
<b>8</b>	<b>Whitening Sequence Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1254</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>FEC Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1257</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Encryption Key Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1258</b>
10.1	Four Tests of E1.....	1258
10.2	Four Tests of E21 .....	1263
10.3	Three Tests of E22.....	1265
10.4	Tests of E22 With Pin Augmenting.....	1267
10.5	Four Tests of E3.....	1277
<b>11</b>	<b>Connectionless Slave Broadcast Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1282</b>

**Part H****SECURITY SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Security Overview .....</b>	<b>1289</b>
1.1	Pausing Encryption and Role Switch .....	1290
1.2	Change Connection Link Keys .....	1291
1.3	Periodically Refreshing Encryption Keys .....	1291
<b>2</b>	<b>Random Number Generation .....</b>	<b>1292</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Key Management.....</b>	<b>1293</b>
3.1	Key Types .....	1293
3.2	Key Generation and Initialization .....	1295
3.2.1	Generation of initialization key, .....	1296
3.2.2	Authentication.....	1296
3.2.3	Generation of a unit key .....	1297
3.2.4	Generation of a combination key.....	1297
3.2.5	Generating the encryption key .....	1298
3.2.6	Point-to-multipoint configuration.....	1299
3.2.7	Modifying the link keys .....	1300
3.2.8	Generating a master key .....	1300
<b>4</b>	<b>Encryption (E0).....</b>	<b>1302</b>
4.1	Encryption Key Size Negotiation.....	1303
4.2	Encryption of Broadcast Messages.....	1303
4.3	Encryption Concept.....	1304
4.4	Encryption Algorithm.....	1305
4.4.1	The operation of the cipher .....	1307
4.5	LFSR Initialization .....	1308
4.6	Key Stream Sequence .....	1311
<b>5</b>	<b>Authentication .....</b>	<b>1312</b>
5.1	Repeated Attempts .....	1315
<b>6</b>	<b>The Authentication And Key-Generating Functions.....</b>	<b>1316</b>
6.1	The Authentication Function E1 .....	1316
6.2	The Functions Ar and A'r.....	1318
6.2.1	The round computations.....	1318
6.2.2	The substitution boxes "e" and "l".....	1318
6.2.3	Key scheduling .....	1319
6.3	E2-Key Generation Function for Authentication.....	1320
6.4	E3-Key Generation Function for Encryption.....	1322



<b>7</b>	<b>Secure Simple Pairing .....</b>	<b>1323</b>
7.1	Phase 1: Public Key Exchange.....	1325
7.2	Phase 2: Authentication Stage 1.....	1325
7.2.1	Authentication Stage 1: Numeric Comparison Protocol .....	1326
7.2.2	Authentication Stage 1: Out of Band Protocol.....	1327
7.2.3	Authentication Stage 1: Passkey Entry Protocol.....	1329
7.3	Phase 3: Authentication Stage 2.....	1331
7.4	Phase 4: Link Key Calculation .....	1332
7.5	Phase 5: LMP Authentication and Encryption .....	1332
7.6	Elliptic Curve Definition.....	1332
7.7	Cryptographic Function Definitions .....	1334
7.7.1	The Simple Pairing Commitment Function f1.....	1334
7.7.2	The Simple Pairing Numeric Verification Function g ..	1335
7.7.3	The Simple Pairing Key Derivation Function f2.....	1336
7.7.4	The Simple Pairing Check Function f3.....	1337
7.7.5	The Simple Pairing AMP Key Derivation Function h2 .....	1338
7.7.6	The AES Encryption Key Generation Function h3 ....	1340
7.7.7	The Device Authentication Key Generation Function h4 .....	1341
7.7.8	The Device Authentication Confirmation Function h5 .....	1342
<b>8</b>	<b>AMP Security .....</b>	<b>1343</b>
8.1	Creation of the Initial Generic AMP Link Key.....	1343
8.2	Creation of Dedicated AMP Link Keys.....	1343
8.3	Debug Considerations .....	1345
<b>9</b>	<b>AES-CCM Encryption for BR/EDR .....</b>	<b>1346</b>
9.1	Nonce Formats .....	1346
9.2	Counter Mode Blocks .....	1348
9.3	Encryption Blocks .....	1350
9.4	Encryption Key Size Reduction .....	1350
9.5	Repeated MIC Failures.....	1350
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>1351</b>

**Core System Package [BR/EDR Controller volume]**

**Part A**

## **RADIO SPECIFICATION**



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Scope .....</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequency Bands and Channel Arrangement .....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Transmitter Characteristics.....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>3.1</b>	<b>Basic Rate.....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>3.1.1</b>	<b>Modulation Characteristics .....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>3.1.2</b>	<b>Spurious Emissions .....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>3.1.3</b>	<b>Radio Frequency Tolerance .....</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>3.2</b>	<b>Enhanced Data Rate.....</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>3.2.1</b>	<b>Modulation Characteristics .....</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>3.2.2</b>	<b>Spurious Emissions .....</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>3.2.3</b>	<b>Radio Frequency Tolerance .....</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>3.2.4</b>	<b>Relative Transmit Power .....</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Receiver Characteristics .....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>4.1</b>	<b>Basic Rate.....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>4.1.1</b>	<b>Actual Sensitivity Level.....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>4.1.2</b>	<b>Interference Performance.....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>4.1.3</b>	<b>Out-of-Band Blocking .....</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>4.1.4</b>	<b>Intermodulation Characteristics .....</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>4.1.5</b>	<b>Maximum Usable Level .....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>4.1.6</b>	<b>Receiver Signal Strength Indicator .....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>4.1.7</b>	<b>Reference Signal Definition.....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>4.2</b>	<b>Enhanced Data Rate.....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>4.2.1</b>	<b>Actual Sensitivity Level.....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>4.2.2</b>	<b>BER Floor Performance .....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>4.2.3</b>	<b>Interference Performance.....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>4.2.4</b>	<b>Maximum Usable Level .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>4.2.5</b>	<b>Out-of-Band and Intermodulation Characteristics .....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>4.2.6</b>	<b>Reference Signal Definition.....</b>	<b>51</b>

---

<b>5</b>	<b>Appendix A .....</b>	<b>52</b>
5.1	Nominal Test Conditions .....	52
5.1.1	Nominal temperature.....	52
5.1.2	Nominal power source .....	52
5.2	Extreme Test Conditions .....	53
5.2.1	Extreme temperatures.....	53
5.2.2	Extreme power source voltages.....	53
<b>6</b>	<b>Appendix B .....</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Appendix C .....</b>	<b>55</b>
7.1	Enhanced Data Rate Modulation Accuracy .....	55

## 1 SCOPE

---

Bluetooth devices operate in the unlicensed 2.4 GHz ISM (Industrial Scientific Medical) band. A frequency hop transceiver is applied to combat interference and fading.

Two modulation modes are defined. A mandatory mode, called Basic Rate, uses a shaped, binary FM modulation to minimize transceiver complexity. An optional mode, called Enhanced Data Rate, uses PSK modulation and has two variants:  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK and 8DPSK. The symbol rate for all modulation modes is 1 Ms/s. The gross air data rate is 1 Mbps for Basic Rate, 2 Mbps for Enhanced Data Rate using  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK and 3 Mbps for Enhanced Data Rate using 8DPSK.

For full duplex transmission, a Time Division Duplex (TDD) scheme is used in both modes. This specification defines the requirements for a Bluetooth radio for the Basic Rate and Enhanced Data Rate modes.

Requirements are defined for two reasons:

- Provide compatibility between radios used in the system
- Define the quality of the system

The Bluetooth radio shall fulfil the stated requirements under the operating conditions specified in Appendix A and Appendix B. The radio parameters shall be measured according to the methods described in the RF Test Specification.

This specification is based on the established regulations for Europe, Japan and North America. The standard documents listed below are only for information, and are subject to change or revision at any time.

The Bluetooth SIG maintains an online database of regulations that apply to Bluetooth technology in the 2.4 GHz ISM band, posted at <https://www.bluetooth.org/regulatory/newindex.cfm>.

### **Europe:**

Approval Standards: European Telecommunications Standards Institute, ETSI  
Documents: EN 300 328, ETS 300-826

Approval Authority: National Type Approval Authorities

### **Japan:**

Approval Standards: Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, ARIB  
Documents: ARIB STD-T66

Approval Authority: Ministry of Post and Telecommunications, MPT.

**North America:**

Approval Standards: Federal Communications Commission, FCC, USA

Documents: CFR47, Part 15, Sections 15.205, 15.209, 15.247 and 15.249

Approval Standards: Industry Canada, IC, Canada

Documents: RSS-139 and RSS-210

Approval Authority: FCC (USA), Industry Canada (Canada)

## 2 FREQUENCY BANDS AND CHANNEL ARRANGEMENT

The Bluetooth system operates in the 2.4 GHz ISM band. This frequency band is 2400 - 2483.5 MHz.

Regulatory Range	RF Channels
2.400-2.4835 GHz	$f=2402+k$ MHz, $k=0, \dots, 78$

*Table 2.1: Operating frequency bands*

RF channels are spaced 1 MHz and are ordered in channel number k as shown in [Table 2.1](#).

### 3 TRANSMITTER CHARACTERISTICS

The requirements stated in this section are given as power levels at the antenna connector of the Bluetooth device. If the device does not have a connector, a reference antenna with 0 dBi gain is assumed.

Due to difficulty in measurement accuracy in radiated measurements, systems with an integral antenna should provide a temporary antenna connector during type approval.

If transmitting antennas of directional gain greater than 0 dBi are used, the power level delivered to the antenna shall be compensated to comply with the applicable paragraphs in EN 300 328, EN 301 489-17 and FCC part 15.

Bluetooth devices are classified into three power classes based on the modulation mode with the highest output power. That modulation mode shall meet the specification requirements for the power class. The other modulation modes do not need to meet the power class requirements of the applicable device power class, but the maximum output power used for the other modulation modes shall not exceed the maximum power of the modulation mode used for classification.

Power Class	Maximum Output Power (Pmax)	Nominal Output Power	Minimum Output Power <sup>1</sup>	Power Control
1	100 mW (20 dBm)	N/A	1 mW (0 dBm)	Pmin<+4 dBm to Pmax Optional: Pmin <sup>2</sup> to Pmax
2	2.5 mW (4 dBm)	1 mW (0 dBm)	0.25 mW (-6 dBm)	Optional: Pmin <sup>2</sup> to Pmax
3	1 mW (0 dBm)	N/A	N/A	Optional: Pmin <sup>2</sup> to Pmax

Table 3.1: Power classes

1. Minimum output power at maximum power setting.
2. The lower power limit Pmin<-30dBm is suggested but is not mandatory, and may be chosen according to application needs.

A power class 1 device shall support received power control requests. Power control may be used to limit the transmitted power of a remote device to no more than +4 dBm to prevent saturation of the receiver of the local device. Support of received power control requests is optional for class 2 and class 3 devices but may be used to optimize the power consumption and reduce the overall interference level for all devices that use the same spectrum that Bluetooth devices use. The power steps shall form a monotonic sequence, with a maximum step size of 8 dB and a minimum step size of 2 dB.

A class 1 device shall support handling of power control requests and shall be able to adjust its transmit power down to 4 dBm or less. A device that supports changing its transmit power controls the output power in a physical link in response to LMP commands received from a peer device that is capable of sending such requests (see [Link Manager Protocol Specification](#)).

In a connection, the output power shall not exceed the maximum output power of power class 2 for transmitting packets if the receiving device does not support the necessary messaging for sending the power control messages, see [Link Manager Protocol Section 4.1.3 on page 252](#). In this case, the transmitting device shall comply with the rules of a class 2 or class 3 device.

If a class 1 device is paging or inquiring very close to another device, the input power can be larger than the requirement in [Section 4.1.5 on page 49](#). This can cause the receiving device to fail to respond. It may therefore be useful to page at class 2 or 3 power in addition to paging at power class 1.

The transmit power level difference between the packet headers of all supported packet types at any given power step shall not exceed 10dB.

When communicating with a device that does not support enhanced power control, an enhanced power control device shall have an equal number of steps for each supported modulation scheme so that all supported modulation modes shall reach their respective maximum (or minimum) levels at the same time. The power levels may vary per modulation mode.

Devices shall not exceed the maximum allowed transmit power levels set by the regulatory bodies that have jurisdiction over the locales in which the device is to be sold or intended to operate. Implementers should be aware that the maximum transmit power level permitted under a given set of regulations might not be the same for all modulation modes.

## 3.1 BASIC RATE

### 3.1.1 Modulation Characteristics

The Modulation is GFSK (Gaussian Frequency Shift Keying) with a bandwidth-bit period product BT=0.5. The Modulation index shall be between 0.28 and 0.35. A binary one shall be represented by a positive frequency deviation, and a binary zero shall be represented by a negative frequency deviation. The symbol timing shall be less than  $\pm 20$  ppm.

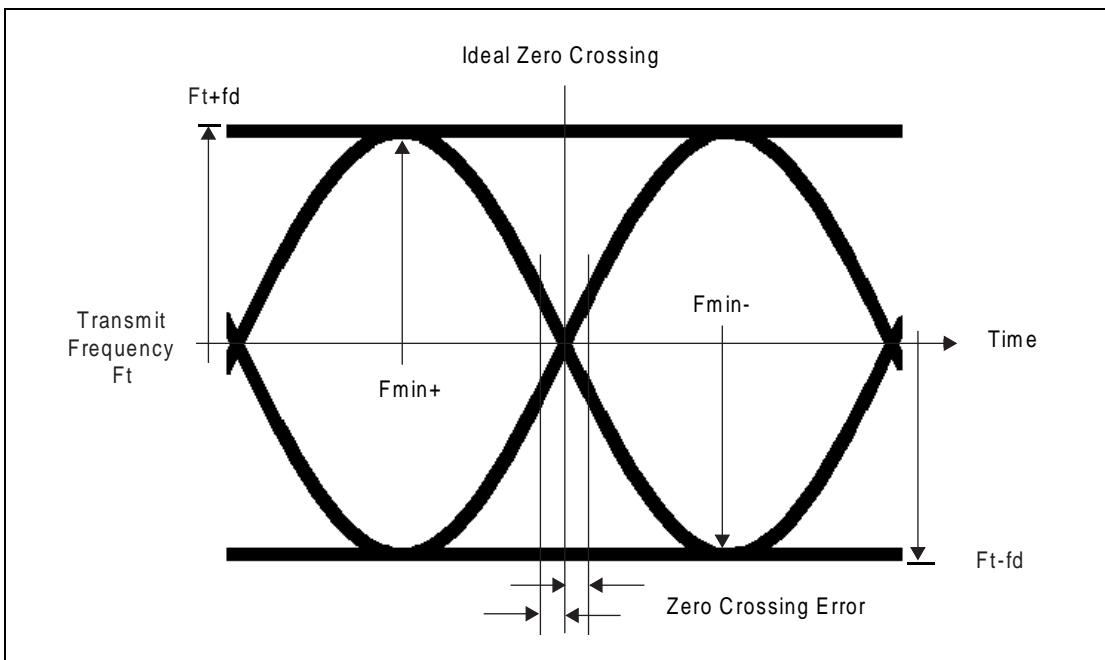


Figure 3.1: GFSK parameters definition.

For each transmission, the minimum frequency deviation,  $F_{min} = \min\{|F_{min+}|, F_{min-}\}$ , which corresponds to 1010 sequence shall be no smaller than  $\pm 80\%$  of the frequency deviation ( $fd$ ) with respect to the transmit frequency  $F_t$ , which corresponds to a 00001111 sequence.

In addition, the minimum frequency deviation shall never be smaller than 115 kHz. The data transmitted has a symbol rate of 1 Ms/s.

The zero crossing error is the time difference between the ideal symbol period and the measured crossing time. This shall be less than  $\pm 1/8$  of a symbol period.

### 3.1.2 Spurious Emissions

In-band spurious emissions shall be measured with a frequency hopping radio transmitting on one RF channel and receiving on a second RF channel; this means that the synthesizer may change RF channels between reception and transmission, but always returns to the same transmit RF channel. The equipment manufacturer is responsible for compliance in the intended country of use.

### 3.1.2.1 In-band spurious emission

Within the ISM band the transmitter shall pass a spectrum mask, given in [Table 3.2](#). The spectrum shall comply with the 20 dB bandwidth definition in FCC part 15.247 and shall be measured accordingly. In addition to the FCC requirement an adjacent channel power on adjacent channels with a difference in RF channel number of two or greater is defined. This adjacent channel power is defined as the sum of the measured power in a 1 MHz bandwidth. The transmitted power shall be measured in a 100 kHz bandwidth using maximum hold. The device shall transmit on RF channel M and the adjacent channel power shall be measured on RF channel number N. The transmitter shall transmit a pseudo random data pattern in the payload throughout the test.

Frequency offset	Transmit Power
± 500 kHz	-20 dBc
2MHz ( $ M-N  = 2$ )	-20 dBm
3MHz or greater ( $ M-N  \geq 3$ )	-40 dBm

*Table 3.2: Transmit Spectrum mask.*

**Note:** If the output power is less than 0dBm then, wherever appropriate, the FCC's 20 dB relative requirement overrules the absolute adjacent channel power requirement stated in the above table.

Exceptions are allowed in up to three bands of 1 MHz width centered on a frequency which is an integer multiple of 1 MHz. They shall comply with an absolute value of –20 dBm.

### **3.1.3 Radio Frequency Tolerance**

The transmitted initial center frequency shall be within  $\pm 75$  kHz from  $F_c$ . The initial frequency accuracy is defined as being the frequency accuracy before any packet information is transmitted. Note that the frequency drift requirement is not included in the  $\pm 75$  kHz.

The limits on the transmitter center frequency drift within a packet are specified in [Table 3.3](#). The different packets are defined in the Baseband Specification.

Duration of Packet	Frequency Drift
Max length one slot packet	$\pm 25$ kHz
Max length three slot packet	$\pm 40$ kHz
Max length five slot packet	$\pm 40$ kHz
Maximum drift rate <sup>1</sup>	400 Hz/ $\mu$ s

*Table 3.3: Maximum allowable frequency drifts in a packet.*

1. The maximum drift rate is allowed anywhere in a packet.

## 3.2 ENHANCED DATA RATE

A key characteristic of the Enhanced Data Rate mode is that the modulation mode is changed within the packet. The access code and packet header, as defined in [Table 6.1](#) in the Baseband Specification, are transmitted with the Basic Rate 1 Mbps GFSK modulation mode, whereas the subsequent synchronization sequence, payload, and trailer sequence are transmitted using the Enhanced Data Rate PSK modulation mode.

### 3.2.1 Modulation Characteristics

During access code and packet header transmission the Basic Rate GFSK modulation mode shall be used. During the transmission of the synchronization sequence, payload, and trailer sequence a PSK type of modulation with a data rate of 2 Mbps or optionally 3 Mbps shall be used. The following subsections specify the PSK modulation for this transmission.

#### 3.2.1.1 Modulation Method Overview

The PSK modulation format defined for the 2 Mbps transmission shall be  $\pi/4$  rotated differential encoded quaternary phase shift keying ( $\pi/4$ -DQPSK).

The PSK modulation format defined for the 3 Mbps transmission shall be differential encoded 8-ary phase shift keying (8DPSK).

The modulation shall employ square-root raised cosine pulse shaping to generate the equivalent lowpass information-bearing signal  $v(t)$ . The output of the transmitter shall be a bandpass signal that can be represented as

$$S(t) = \operatorname{Re} [v(t)e^{j2\pi F_c t}] \quad (\text{EQ } 1)$$

with  $F_c$  denoting the carrier frequency.

#### 3.2.1.2 Differential Phase Encoding

For the M-ary modulation, the binary data stream  $\{b_n\}$ ,  $n=1,2,3, \dots N$ , shall be mapped onto a corresponding sequence  $\{S_k\}$ ,  $k=1,2, \dots N/\log_2(M)$  of complex valued signal points.  $M=4$  applies for 2 Mbps and  $M=8$  applies for 3 Mbps. Gray coding shall be applied as shown in [Table 3.4](#) and [Table 3.5](#). In the event that the length of the binary data stream  $N$  is not an integer multiple of  $\log_2(M)$ , the last symbol of the sequence  $\{S_k\}$  shall be formed by appending data zeros to the appropriate length. The signal points  $S_k$  shall be defined by:

$$S_k = S_{k-1} e^{j\varphi_k} \quad k = 1, 2, \dots N/\log_2(M) \quad (\text{EQ } 2)$$

$$S_0 = e^{j\phi} \quad \text{with } \phi \in [0, 2\pi) \quad (\text{EQ 3})$$

The relationship between the binary input  $b_k$  and the phase  $\phi_k$  shall be as defined in [Table 3.4](#) for the 2 Mbps transmission and in [Table 3.5](#) for the 3 Mbps transmission.

$b_{2k-1}$	$b_{2k}$	$\phi_k$
0	0	$\pi/4$
0	1	$3\pi/4$
1	1	$-3\pi/4$
1	0	$-\pi/4$

Table 3.4:  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK mapping.

$b_{3k-2}$	$b_{3k-1}$	$b_{3k}$	$\phi_k$
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	$\pi/4$
0	1	1	$\pi/2$
0	1	0	$3\pi/4$
1	1	0	$\pi$
1	1	1	$-3\pi/4$
1	0	1	$-\pi/2$
1	0	0	$-\pi/4$

Table 3.5: 8DPSK mapping.

### 3.2.1.3 Pulse Shaping

The lowpass equivalent information-bearing signal  $v(t)$  shall be generated according to

$$v(t) = \sum_k S_k p(t - kT) \quad (\text{EQ 4})$$

in which the symbol period  $T$  shall be  $1\mu\text{s}$ .

The frequency spectrum  $P(f)$ , which corresponds to the square-root raised cosine pulse  $p(t)$  of the pulse shaping filter is:

$$|P(f)| = \begin{cases} 1 & 0 \leq |f| \leq \frac{1-\beta}{2T} \\ \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - \sin\left(\frac{\pi(2|f|T-1)}{2\beta}\right) \right)} & \frac{1-\beta}{2T} \leq |f| \leq \frac{1+\beta}{2T} \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ 5})$$

The roll off factor  $\beta$  shall be 0.4.

### 3.2.1.4 Modulation Accuracy

The measurement of modulation accuracy utilizes differential error vector magnitude (DEVM) with tracking of the carrier frequency drift. The definition of DEVM and the derivation of the RMS and peak measures of DEVM are given in [Appendix C](#).

The DEVM shall be measured over the synchronization sequence and payload portions of the packet, but not the trailer symbols. For each modulation method and each measurement carrier frequency, the DEVM measurement is made over a total of 200 non-overlapping blocks, where each block contains 50 symbols.

The transmitted packets shall be the longest supported packet type for each modulation method, as defined in [Table 6.9](#) and [Table 6.10](#) in the Baseband part.

The DEVM is measured using a square-root raised cosine filter, with a roll-off of 0.4 and a 3 dB bandwidth of  $\pm 500$  kHz.

#### 3.2.1.4.1 RMS DEVM

The RMS DEVM for any of the measured blocks shall not exceed 0.20 for  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK and 0.13 for 8DPSK.

#### 3.2.1.4.2 99% DEVM

The 99% DEVM (defined as the DEVM value for which 99% of measured symbols have a lower DEVM) shall not exceed 0.30 for  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK and 0.20 for 8DPSK.

#### 3.2.1.4.3 Peak DEVM

The Peak DEVM shall not exceed 0.35 for  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK and 0.25 for 8DPSK.

### 3.2.2 Spurious Emissions

In-band spurious emissions shall be measured with a frequency hopping radio transmitting on one RF channel and receiving on a second RF channel; this means that the synthesizer may change RF channels between reception and

transmission, but always returns to the same transmit RF channel. The equipment manufacturer is responsible for compliance in the intended country of use.

### 3.2.2.1 In-band Spurious Emission

Within the ISM band the power spectral density of the transmitter shall comply with the following requirements when sending pseudo random data. All power measurements shall use a 100 kHz bandwidth with maximum hold. The power measurements between 1 MHz and 1.5 MHz from the carrier shall be at least 26 dB below the maximum power measurement up to 500 kHz from the carrier. The adjacent channel power for channels at least 2 MHz from the carrier is defined as the sum of the power measurements over a 1 MHz channel and shall not exceed -20 dBm for the second adjacent channels and -40 dBm for the third and subsequent adjacent channels. These requirements shall apply to the transmitted signal from the start of the guard time to the end of the power down ramp. The spectral mask is illustrated in [Figure 3.2](#).

Exceptions are allowed in up to 3 bands of 1 MHz width centered on a frequency which is an integer multiple of 1 MHz. They shall comply with an absolute value of -20 dBm.

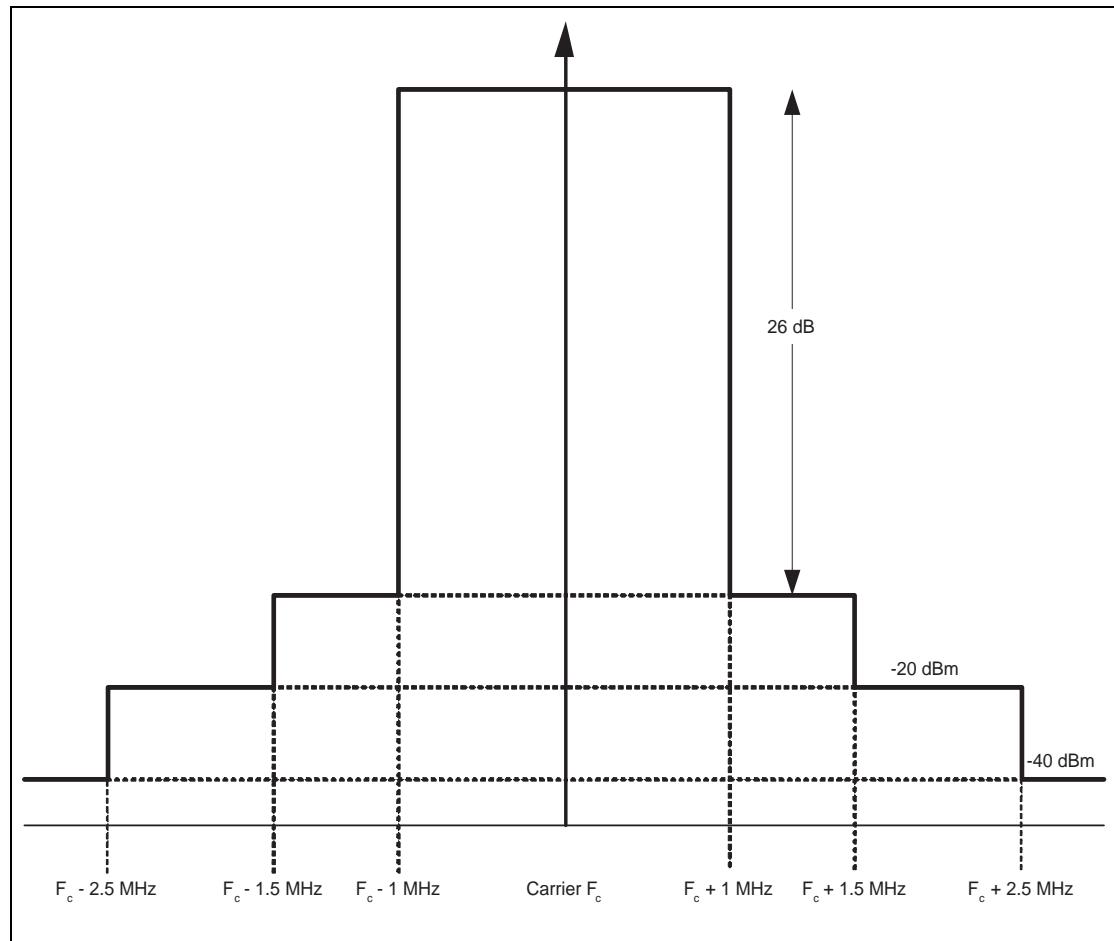


Figure 3.2: Transmitter spectrum mask

### 3.2.3 Radio Frequency Tolerance

The same carrier frequencies  $F_c$  as used for Basic Rate transmissions shall be used for the Enhanced Data Rate transmissions. The transmitted initial center frequency accuracy shall be within  $\pm 75$  kHz from  $F_c$ . The maximum excursion from  $F_c$  (frequency offset plus drift) shall not exceed  $\pm 75$  kHz.

The initial frequency accuracy is defined as being the frequency accuracy before any information is transmitted.

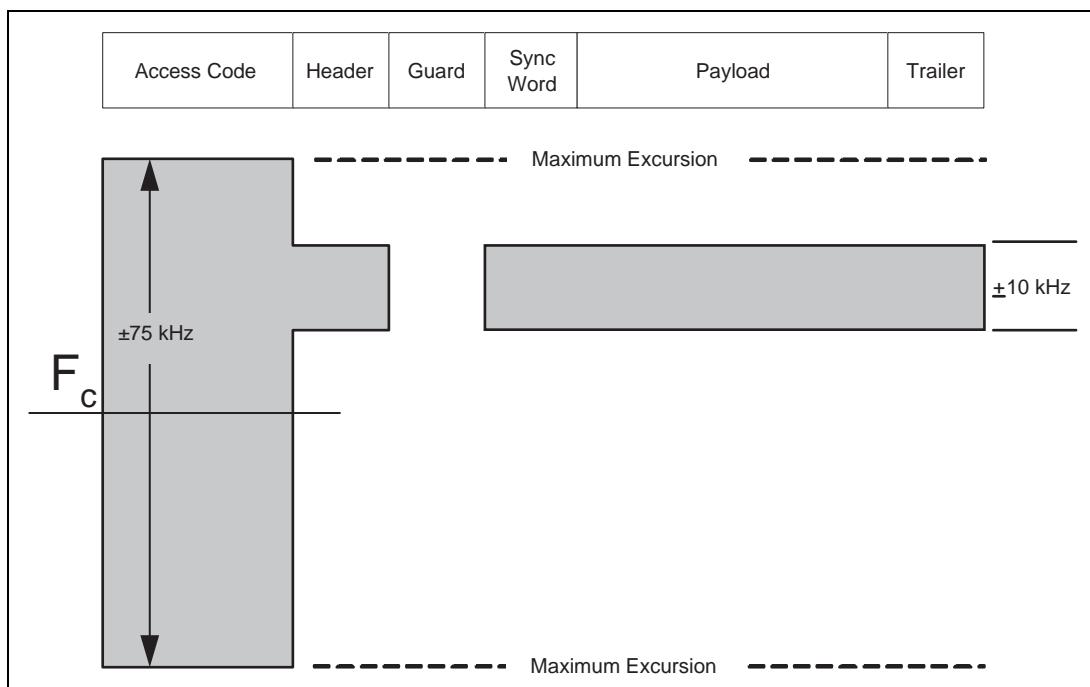


Figure 3.3: Carrier frequency mask

The requirements on accuracy and stability are illustrated by [Figure 3.3](#) for the Enhanced Data Rate packet format defined in Baseband Specification. The higher frequency accuracy requirement shall start at the first symbol of the header. The maximum drift over the header, synchronization sequence and payload shall be  $\pm 10$  kHz.

### 3.2.4 Relative Transmit Power

The requirement on the relative power of the GFSK and DPSK portions of the Enhanced Data Rate packet is defined as follows. The average power level during the transmission of access code and header is denoted as  $P_{GFSK}$  and the average power level during the transmission of the synchronization sequence and the payload is denoted as  $P_{DPSK}$ . The following inequalities shall be satisfied independently for each Enhanced Data Rate packet transmitted:

$$(P_{GFSK} - 4 \text{ dB}) < P_{DPSK} < (P_{GFSK} + 1 \text{ dB})$$

## 4 RECEIVER CHARACTERISTICS

The receiver characteristics shall be measured using loopback as defined in [Test Methodology \[Vol. 3, Part D\] Section 1 on page 417](#).

The reference sensitivity level referred to in this chapter is -70 dBm.

### 4.1 BASIC RATE

#### 4.1.1 Actual Sensitivity Level

The actual sensitivity level is defined as the input level for which a raw bit error rate (BER) of 0.1% is met. The receiver sensitivity shall be below or equal to -70 dBm with any Bluetooth transmitter compliant to the transmitter specification specified in [Section 3 on page 38](#).

#### 4.1.2 Interference Performance

The interference performance on Co-channel and adjacent 1 MHz and 2 MHz shall be measured with the wanted signal 10 dB over the reference sensitivity level. For interference performance on all other RF channels the wanted signal shall be 3 dB over the reference sensitivity level. If the frequency of an interfering signal is outside of the band 2400-2483.5 MHz, the out-of-band blocking specification (see [Section 4.1.3 on page 48](#)) shall apply. The interfering signal shall be Bluetooth-modulated (see [Section 4.1.7 on page 49](#)). The BER shall be  $\leq 0.1\%$  for all the signal-to-interference ratios listed in [Table 4.1](#):

Frequency of Interference	Ratio
Co-Channel interference, $C/I_{co\text{-}channel}$	11 dB
Adjacent (1 MHz) interference <sup>1</sup> , $C/I_{1\text{MHz}}$	0 dB
Adjacent (2 MHz) interference <sup>1</sup> , $C/I_{2\text{MHz}}$	-30 dB
Adjacent ( $\geq 3$ MHz) interference <sup>1</sup> , $C/I_{\geq 3\text{MHz}}$	-40 dB
Image frequency Interference <sup>1 2 3</sup> , $C/I_{\text{Image}}$	-9 dB
Adjacent (1 MHz) interference to in-band image frequency <sup>1</sup> , $C/I_{\text{Image}\pm 1\text{MHz}}$	-20 dB

*Table 4.1: Interference performance*

1. If two adjacent channel specifications from [Table 4.1](#) are applicable to the same channel, the more relaxed specification applies.
2. In-band image frequency
3. If the image frequency  $\neq n \cdot 1$  MHz, then the image reference frequency is defined as the closest  $n \cdot 1$  MHz frequency for integer  $n$ .

These specifications are only to be tested at nominal temperature conditions with a device receiving on one RF channel and transmitting on a second RF channel; this means that the synthesizer may change RF channels between reception and transmission, but always returns to the same receive RF channel.

RF channels where the requirements are not met are called spurious response RF channels. Five spurious response RF channels are allowed at RF channels with a distance of  $\geq 2$  MHz from the wanted signal. On these spurious response RF channels a relaxed interference requirement C/I = -17 dB shall be met.

#### 4.1.3 Out-of-Band Blocking

The out-of-band suppression (or rejection) shall be measured with the wanted signal 3 dB over the reference sensitivity level. The interfering signal shall be a continuous wave signal. The BER shall be  $\leq 0.1\%$ . The out-of-band blocking shall fulfil the following requirements:

Interfering Signal Frequency	Interfering Signal Power Level
30 MHz - 2000 MHz	-10 dBm
2000 - 2399 MHz	-27 dBm
2484 – 3000 MHz	-27 dBm
3000 MHz – 12.75 GHz	-10 dBm

Table 4.2: Out-of-band suppression (or rejection) requirements.

24 exceptions are permitted which are dependent upon the given RF channel and are centered at a frequency which is an integer multiple of 1 MHz. For at least 19 of these spurious response frequencies, a reduced interference level of at least -50dBm is allowed in order to achieve the required BER=0.1% performance, whereas for a maximum of 5 of the spurious frequencies the interference level may be assumed arbitrarily lower.

#### 4.1.4 Intermodulation Characteristics

The reference sensitivity performance, BER = 0.1%, shall be met under the following conditions:

- The wanted signal shall be at frequency  $f_0$  with a power level 6 dB over the reference sensitivity level.
- A static sine wave signal shall be at a frequency  $f_1$  with a power level of -39 dBm.
- A Bluetooth modulated signal (see [Section 4.1.7 on page 49](#)) shall be at  $f_2$  with a power level of -39 dBm.

Frequencies  $f_0$ ,  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  shall be chosen such that  $f_0=2f_1-f_2$  and  $|f_2-f_1|=n*1$  MHz, where n can be 3, 4, or 5. The system shall fulfill at least one of the three alternatives (n=3, 4, or 5).

#### **4.1.5 Maximum Usable Level**

The maximum usable input level that the receiver operates at shall be greater than -20 dBm. The BER shall be less than or equal to 0.1% at -20 dBm input power.

#### **4.1.6 Receiver Signal Strength Indicator**

If a device supports Receive Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) the accuracy shall be +/- 6 dB.

#### **4.1.7 Reference Signal Definition**

A Bluetooth modulated interfering signal shall be defined as:

Modulation = GFSK

Modulation index =  $0.32\pm1\%$

BT =  $0.5\pm1\%$

Bit Rate = 1 Mbps  $\pm1$  ppm

Modulating Data for wanted signal = PRBS9

Modulating Data for interfering signal = PRBS 15

Frequency accuracy better than  $\pm1$  ppm.

### **4.2 ENHANCED DATA RATE**

#### **4.2.1 Actual Sensitivity Level**

The actual sensitivity level shall be defined as the input level for which a raw bit error rate (BER) of 0.01% is met. The requirement for a Bluetooth  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK and 8DPSK Enhanced Data Rate receiver shall be an actual sensitivity level of -70 dBm or better. The receiver shall achieve the -70 dBm sensitivity level with any Bluetooth transmitter compliant to the Enhanced Data Rate transmitter specification as defined in Section 3.2.

#### **4.2.2 BER Floor Performance**

The receiver shall achieve a BER less than 0.001% at 10 dB above the reference sensitivity level.

### 4.2.3 Interference Performance

The interference performance for co-channel and adjacent 1 MHz and 2 MHz channels shall be measured with the wanted signal 10 dB above the reference sensitivity level. On all other frequencies the wanted signal shall be 3 dB above the reference sensitivity level. The requirements in this section shall only apply if the frequency of the interferer is inside of the band 2400-2483.5 MHz.

The interfering signal for co-channel interference shall be similarly modulated as the desired signal. The interfering signal for other channels shall be equivalent to a nominal Bluetooth Basic Rate GFSK transmitter. The interfering signal shall carry random data.

A BER of 0.1% or better shall be achieved for the signal to interference ratios defined in [Table 4.3](#).

Frequency of Interference	$\pi/4$ -DQPSK Ratio	8DPSK Ratio
Co-Channel interference, C/I <sub>co-channel</sub>	13 dB	21 dB
Adjacent (1 MHz) interference <sup>1</sup> , C/I <sub>1MHz</sub>	0 dB	5 dB
Adjacent (2MHz) interference <sup>1</sup> , C/I <sub>2MHz</sub>	-30 dB	-25 dB
Adjacent ( $\geq 3$ MHz) interference <sup>1</sup>	-40 dB	-33 dB
Image frequency interference <sup>1,2,3</sup> , C/I <sub>Image</sub>	-7 dB	0 dB
Adjacent (1 MHz) interference to in-band image frequency <sup>1,2,3</sup> , C/I <sub>Image <math>\pm 1</math>MHz</sub>	-20 dB	-13 dB

*Table 4.3: Interference Performance*

1. If two adjacent channel specifications from Table 4.3 are applicable to the same channel, the more relaxed specification applies.
2. In-band image frequency.
3. If the image frequency is not equal to  $n \times 1$  MHz, then the image reference frequency is defined as the closest  $n \times 1$  MHz frequency for integer n.

These specifications are only to be tested at nominal temperature conditions with a receiver hopping on one frequency; this means that the synthesizer may change frequency between receive slot and transmit slot, but always returns to the same receive frequency.

Frequencies where the requirements are not met are called spurious response frequencies. Five spurious response frequencies are allowed at frequencies with a distance of  $\geq 2$  MHz from the wanted signal. On these spurious response frequencies a relaxed interference requirement C/I = -15 dB for  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK and C/I = -10 dB for 8DPSK shall be met.

#### 4.2.4 Maximum Usable Level

The maximum usable input level that the receiver operates at shall be greater than -20 dBm. The BER shall be less than or equal to 0.1% at -20 dBm input power.

#### 4.2.5 Out-of-Band and Intermodulation Characteristics

Note: The Basic Rate out-of-band blocking and intermodulation requirements ensure adequate Enhanced Data Rate performance, and therefore there are no specific requirements for Enhanced Data Rate.

#### 4.2.6 Reference Signal Definition

A 2 Mbps Bluetooth signal used as "wanted" or "interfering signal" is defined as:

Modulation =  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK

Symbol Rate = 1 Msym/s  $\pm$  1 ppm

Frequency accuracy better than  $\pm 1$  ppm

Modulating Data for wanted signal = PRBS9

Modulating Data for interfering signal = PRBS15

RMS Differential Error Vector Magnitude < 5%

Average power over the GFSK and DPSK portions of the packet shall be equal to within +/- 1 dB

A 3 Mbps Bluetooth signal used as "wanted" or "interfering signal" is defined as:

Modulation = 8DPSK

Symbol Rate = 1 Msym/s  $\pm$  1 ppm

Frequency accuracy better than  $\pm 1$  ppm

Modulating Data for wanted signal = PRBS9

Modulating Data for interfering signal = PRBS15

RMS Differential Error Vector Magnitude < 5%

Average power over the GFSK and DPSK portions of the packet shall be equal to within +/- 1 dB

## 5 APPENDIX A

---

### 5.1 NOMINAL TEST CONDITIONS

#### 5.1.1 Nominal temperature

The nominal temperature conditions for tests shall be +15 to +35 °C. When it is impractical to carry out the test under this condition a note to this effect, stating the ambient temperature, shall be recorded. The actual value during the test shall be recorded in the test report.

#### 5.1.2 Nominal power source

##### 5.1.2.1 Mains voltage

The nominal test voltage for equipment to be connected to the mains shall be the nominal mains voltage. The nominal voltage shall be the declared voltage or any of the declared voltages for which the equipment was designed. The frequency of the test power source corresponding to the AC mains shall be within 2% of the nominal frequency.

##### 5.1.2.2 Lead-acid battery power sources used in vehicles

When radio equipment is intended for operation from the alternator-fed lead-acid battery power sources which are standard in vehicles, then the nominal test voltage shall be 1.1 times the nominal voltage of the battery (6V, 12V, etc.).

##### 5.1.2.3 Other power sources

For operation from other power sources or types of battery (primary or secondary), the nominal test voltage shall be as declared by the equipment manufacturer. This shall be recorded in the test report.

## 5.2 EXTREME TEST CONDITIONS

### 5.2.1 Extreme temperatures

The extreme temperature range shall be the largest temperature range given by the combination of:

- The minimum temperature range 0 °C to +35 °C
- The product operating temperature range declared by the manufacturer.

This extreme temperature range and the declared operating temperature range shall be recorded in the test report.

### 5.2.2 Extreme power source voltages

Tests at extreme power source voltages specified below are not required when the equipment under test is designed for operation as part of and powered by another system or piece of equipment. Where this is the case, the limit values of the host system or host equipment shall apply. The appropriate limit values shall be declared by the manufacturer and recorded in the test report.

#### 5.2.2.1 Mains voltage

The extreme test voltage for equipment to be connected to an AC mains source shall be the nominal mains voltage ±10%.

#### 5.2.2.2 Lead-acid battery power source used on vehicles

When radio equipment is intended for operation from the alternator-fed lead-acid battery power sources which are standard in vehicles, then extreme test voltage shall be 1.3 and 0.9 times the nominal voltage of the battery (6V, 12V etc.).

#### 5.2.2.3 Power sources using other types of batteries

The lower extreme test voltage for equipment with power sources using the following types of battery, shall be

- a) for Leclanché, alkaline, or lithium type battery: 0.85 times the nominal voltage of the battery
- b) for mercury or nickel-cadmium types of battery: 0.9 times the nominal voltage of the battery.

In both cases, the upper extreme test voltage shall be 1.15 times the nominal voltage of the battery.

#### 5.2.2.4 Other power sources

For equipment using other power sources, or capable of being operated from a variety of power sources (primary or secondary), the extreme test voltages shall be those declared by the manufacturer. These shall be recorded in the test report.

## 6 APPENDIX B

The Basic Rate radio parameters shall be tested in the following conditions:

Parameter	Temperature	Power source
Output Power	ETC	ETC
Power control	NTC	NTC
Modulation index	ETC	ETC
Initial Carrier Frequency accuracy	ETC	ETC
Carrier Frequency drift	ETC	ETC
Conducted in-band spurious emissions	ETC	ETC
Radiated in-band emissions	NTC	NTC
Sensitivity	ETC	ETC
Interference Performance	NTC	NTC
Intermodulation Characteristics	NTC	NTC
Out-of-band blocking	NTC	NTC
Maximum Usable Level	NTC	NTC
Receiver Signal Strength Indicator	NTC	NTC

ETC = Extreme Test Conditions

NTC = Nominal Test Conditions

The Enhanced Data Rate radio parameters shall be tested in the following conditions:

Parameter	Temperature	Power source
Modulation accuracy	ETC	ETC
Carrier frequency stability	ETC	ETC
In-band spurious emissions	ETC	ETC
Relative transmit power	ETC	ETC
Sensitivity	ETC	ETC
BER floor sensitivity	NTC	NTC
Interference Performance	NTC	NTC
Maximum usable level	NTC	NTC

ETC = Extreme Test Conditions

NTC = Nominal Test Conditions

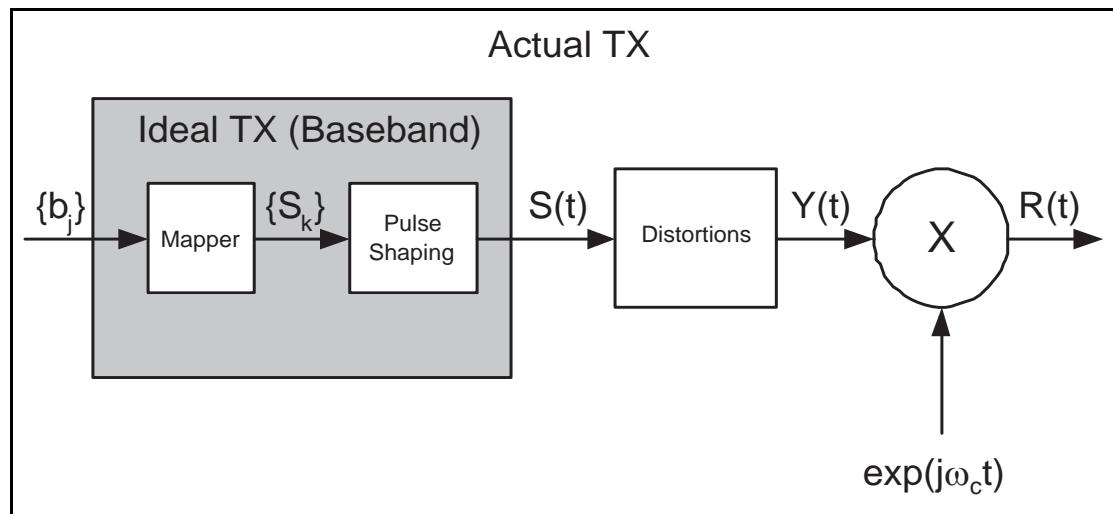
## 7 APPENDIX C

### 7.1 ENHANCED DATA RATE MODULATION ACCURACY

The Enhanced Data Rate modulation accuracy is defined by the differential error vector, being the difference between the vectors representing consecutive symbols of the transmitted signal, after passing the signal through a specified measurement filter, sampling it at the symbol rate with an optimum sampling phase and compensating it for carrier frequency error and for the ideal carrier phase changes. The magnitude of the normalized differential error vector is called the Differential Error Vector Magnitude (DEVM). The objective of the DEVM is to estimate the modulation errors that would be perceived by a differential receiver.

In an ideal transmitter, the input bit sequence  $\{b_j\}$  is mapped onto a complex valued symbol sequence  $\{S_k\}$ . Subsequently, this symbol sequence is transformed into a baseband signal  $S(t)$  by means of a pulse-shaping filter.

In an actual transmitter implementation, the bit sequence  $\{b_j\}$  generates a baseband equivalent transmitted signal  $Y(t)$ . This signal  $Y(t)$  contains, besides the desired component  $S(t)$ , multiple distortion components. This is illustrated in [Figure 7.1](#).



*Figure 7.1: TX model*

Let  $Z(t)$  be the output of the measurement filter after first compensating the received signal for the initial center frequency error,  $\omega_i$ , of the received packet, i.e. the output after down conversion and filtering the transmit signal  $R(t)$  (see [Figure 7.2](#)). The measurement filter is defined by a square-root raised cosine shaping filter with a roll-off factor equal to 0.4 and 3 dB bandwidth of  $\pm 500$  kHz.

Let  $\{Z_k(\varepsilon)\}$  be the sequence of samples obtained by sampling the signal  $Z(t)$  with a sampling period equal to the symbol period  $T$  and a sampling phase equal to  $\varepsilon$  such that  $Z_k(\varepsilon) = Z((k+\varepsilon)T)$ . Note that this sequence  $\{Z_k(\varepsilon)\}$  would coincide with the symbol sequence  $\{S_k\}$  if no distortion is present and the correct timing phase  $\varepsilon$  is chosen.

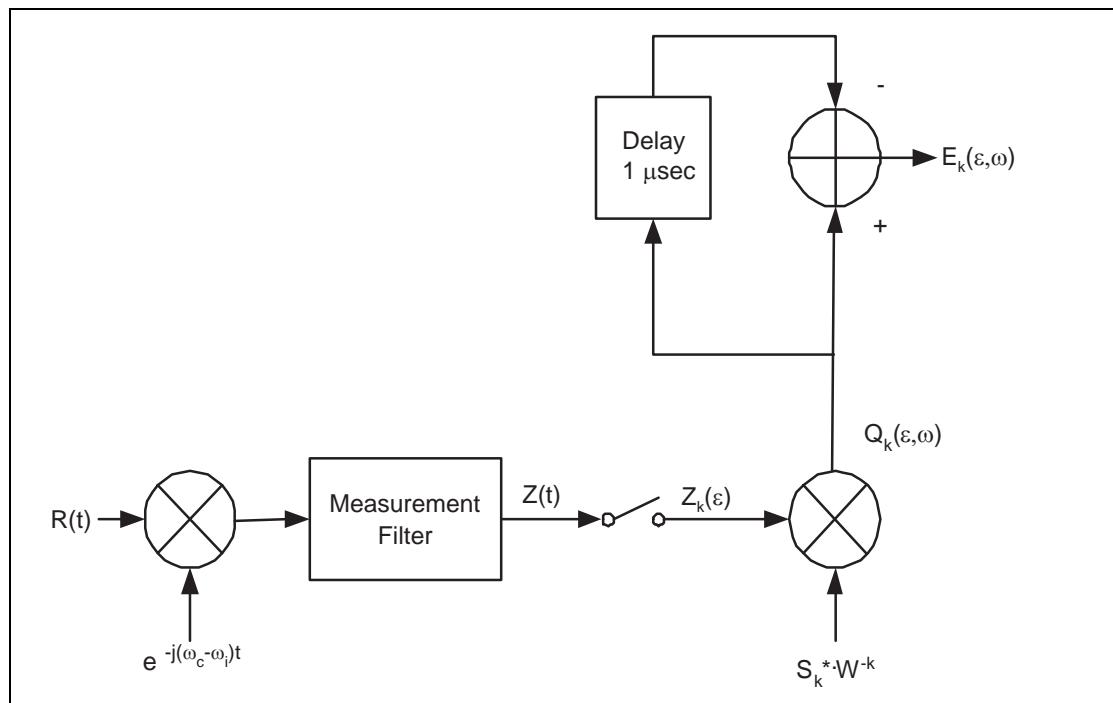
To reflect the behavior of a typical differential receiver, the sample sequence  $\{Z_k(\varepsilon)\}$  should be compensated for carrier frequency drift. Therefore, the sequence  $\{Z_k(\varepsilon)\}$  is multiplied by a factor  $W^{-k}$  in which  $W = e^{j\omega T}$  accounts for the frequency offset  $\omega$ . A constant value of  $\omega$  is used for each DEVM block of  $N = 50$  symbols, but  $\omega$  may vary between DEVM blocks (note that the values of  $\omega$  can be used to measure carrier frequency drift).

In addition,  $\{Z_k(\varepsilon)\}$  is compensated for the ideal phase changes between symbols by multiplying it with the complex conjugate of the symbol sequence  $\{S_k\}$ . However, it is not necessary to compensate  $\{Z_k(\varepsilon)\}$  for initial carrier phase or output power of the transmitter.

Let  $\{Q_k(\varepsilon, \omega)\}$  denote the compensated sequence  $\{Z_k(\varepsilon)\}$ , where the ideal phase changes have been removed and  $\varepsilon$  and  $\omega$  are chosen optimally to minimize the DEVM, (i.e. remove time and frequency uncertainty). For a transmitter with no distortions other than a constant frequency error,  $\{Q_k(\varepsilon, \omega)\}$  is a complex constant that depends on the initial carrier phase and the output power of the transmitter.

The differential error sequence  $\{E_k(\varepsilon, \omega)\}$  is defined as the difference between  $\{Q_k(\varepsilon, \omega)\}$  and  $\{Q_{k-1}(\varepsilon, \omega)\}$ . This reflects the modulation errors that would be perceived by a differential receiver. For a transmitter with no distortions other than a constant frequency error,  $\{E_k(\varepsilon, \omega)\}$  is zero.

The definitions of the DEVM measures are based upon this differential error sequence  $\{E_k(\varepsilon, \omega)\}$ . The generation of the error sequence is depicted in [Figure 7.2](#).



*Figure 7.2: Error sequence generation*

## RMS DEVM

The root mean squared DEVM (RMS DEVM) computed over  $N = 50$  symbols is defined as:

$$RMS\ DEVM = \min_{\varepsilon, \omega} \left\{ \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^N |E_k(\varepsilon, \omega)|^2 / \sum_{k=1}^N |Q_k(\varepsilon, \omega)|^2} \right\}$$

As can be seen from the expression above, the RMS DEVM is the square-root of the normalized power of the error.

## Peak DEVM

The DEVM at symbol k is defined as

$$DEVM(k) = \sqrt{\frac{|E_k(\varepsilon_0, \omega_0)|^2}{\sum_{j=1}^N |Q_j(\varepsilon_0, \omega_0)|^2}} \quad (\text{EQ 6})$$

where  $\varepsilon_0$  and  $\omega_0$  are the values for  $\varepsilon$  and  $\omega$  used to calculate the RMS DEVM.

The peak DEVM is defined as:

$$\text{Peak DEVM} = \max_k \{DEVM(k)\} \quad (\text{EQ 7})$$

Core System Package [BR/EDR Controller volume]

Part B

## BASEBAND SPECIFICATION

***This document describes the specification of the Bluetooth link controller which carries out the baseband protocols and other low-level link routines.***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>General Description .....</b>	<b>66</b>
1.1	Bluetooth Clock .....	67
1.2	Bluetooth Device Addressing .....	69
1.2.1	Reserved Addresses .....	69
1.3	Access Codes .....	70
<b>2</b>	<b>Physical Channels.....</b>	<b>71</b>
2.1	Physical Channel Definition .....	72
2.2	Basic Piconet Physical Channel.....	72
2.2.1	Master-slave Definition.....	72
2.2.2	Hopping Characteristics .....	73
2.2.3	Time Slots.....	73
2.2.4	Piconet Clocks.....	74
2.2.5	Transmit/Receive Timing .....	74
2.3	Adapted Piconet Physical Channel.....	79
2.3.1	Hopping Characteristics .....	79
2.4	Page Scan Physical Channel.....	80
2.4.1	Clock Estimate for Paging .....	80
2.4.2	Hopping Characteristics .....	80
2.4.3	Paging Procedure Timing .....	81
2.4.4	Page Response Timing .....	82
2.5	Inquiry Scan Physical Channel .....	84
2.5.1	Clock for Inquiry .....	84
2.5.2	Hopping Characteristics .....	84
2.5.3	Inquiry Procedure Timing .....	84
2.5.4	Inquiry Response Timing .....	84
2.6	Hop Selection.....	86
2.6.1	General Selection Scheme.....	86
2.6.2	Selection Kernel .....	90
2.6.3	Adapted Hop Selection Kernel .....	93
2.6.4	Control Word .....	94
2.7	Synchronization Scan Physical Channel.....	99
2.7.1	Hopping Characteristics .....	99
2.7.2	Synchronization Train Procedure Timing .....	99
2.7.3	Synchronization Scan Procedure Timing .....	100

<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Links .....</b>	<b>102</b>
3.1	Link Supervision for Active and Parked Physical Links .....	102
3.2	Link Supervision for Connectionless Slave Broadcast Physical Links .....	103
3.3	Authenticated Payload Timeout for Active Links.....	103
<b>4</b>	<b>Logical Transports .....</b>	<b>104</b>
4.1	General .....	104
4.2	Logical Transport Address (LT_ADDR) .....	104
4.3	Synchronous Logical Transports .....	105
4.4	Asynchronous Logical Transport .....	105
4.5	Transmit/Receive Routines.....	106
4.5.1	TX Routine .....	106
4.5.2	RX Routine.....	109
4.5.3	Flow Control.....	110
4.6	Active Slave Broadcast Transport.....	111
4.7	Parked Slave Broadcast Transport.....	112
4.7.1	Parked Member Address (PM_ADDR) .....	112
4.7.2	Access Request Address (AR_ADDR) .....	112
4.8	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Logical Transport .....	112
<b>5</b>	<b>Logical Links .....</b>	<b>113</b>
5.1	Link Control Logical Link (LC).....	113
5.2	ACL Control Logical Link (ACL-C) .....	113
5.3	User Asynchronous/Isochronous Logical Link (ACL-U).....	114
5.3.1	Pausing the ACL-U logical link.....	114
5.4	User Synchronous Data Logical Link (SCO-S).....	114
5.5	User Extended Synchronous Data Logical Link (eSCO-S).....	114
5.6	Logical Link Priorities .....	114
5.7	Profile Broadcast Data Logical Link .....	114
<b>6</b>	<b>Packets.....</b>	<b>115</b>
6.1	General Format.....	115
6.1.1	Basic Rate.....	115
6.1.2	Enhanced Data Rate.....	115
6.2	Bit Ordering.....	116
6.3	Access Code.....	117
6.3.1	Access Code Types .....	117
6.3.2	Preamble.....	118
6.3.3	Sync Word.....	118
6.3.4	Trailer .....	121

6.4	Packet Header .....	122
6.4.1	LT_ADDR .....	122
6.4.2	TYPE .....	122
6.4.3	FLOW .....	123
6.4.4	ARQN .....	123
6.4.5	SEQN .....	123
6.4.6	HEC .....	123
6.5	Packet Types .....	124
6.5.1	Common Packet Types .....	126
6.5.2	SCO Packets .....	129
6.5.3	eSCO Packets .....	130
6.5.4	ACL Packets .....	132
6.6	Payload Format .....	135
6.6.1	Synchronous Data Field .....	135
6.6.2	Asynchronous Data Field .....	137
6.7	Packet Summary .....	141
<b>7</b>	<b>Bitstream Processing .....</b>	<b>143</b>
7.1	Error Checking .....	144
7.1.1	HEC Generation .....	144
7.1.2	CRC Generation .....	146
7.2	Data Whitening .....	147
7.3	Error Correction .....	148
7.4	FEC Code: Rate 1/3 .....	148
7.5	FEC Code: Rate 2/3 .....	149
7.6	ARQ Scheme .....	150
7.6.1	Unnumbered ARQ .....	150
7.6.2	Retransmit Filtering .....	153
7.6.3	Flushing Payloads .....	156
7.6.4	Multi-slave Considerations .....	157
7.6.5	Active Slave and Park Slave Broadcast Packets .....	157
7.7	Erroneous Synchronous Data Reporting .....	158
7.8	Message Integrity Check .....	158
<b>8</b>	<b>Link Controller Operation .....</b>	<b>159</b>
8.1	Overview of States .....	159
8.2	Standby State .....	160
8.3	Connection Establishment Substates .....	160
8.3.1	Page Scan Substate .....	160
8.3.2	Page substate .....	162
8.3.3	Page Response Substates .....	165

8.4	Device Discovery Substates .....	169
8.4.1	Inquiry scan substate .....	170
8.4.2	Inquiry Substate .....	171
8.4.3	Inquiry Response Substate .....	172
8.5	Connection State .....	174
8.6	Active Mode .....	176
8.6.1	Polling in the Active Mode.....	177
8.6.2	SCO .....	177
8.6.3	eSCO .....	178
8.6.4	Broadcast Scheme.....	181
8.6.5	Role Switch .....	182
8.6.6	Scatternet.....	184
8.6.7	Hop Sequence Switching .....	185
8.6.8	Channel Classification and Channel Map Selection ...	188
8.6.9	Power Management.....	189
8.6.10	Piconet Clock Adjustment .....	190
8.7	Sniff Mode.....	193
8.7.1	Sniff Transition Mode .....	194
8.7.2	Sniff Subrating.....	195
8.8	Hold Mode .....	197
8.9	Park State .....	197
8.9.1	Beacon Train.....	198
8.9.2	Beacon Access Window.....	200
8.9.3	Parked Slave Synchronization .....	201
8.9.4	Parking .....	202
8.9.5	Master-initiated Unparking .....	203
8.9.6	Slave-initiated Unparking .....	203
8.9.7	Broadcast Scan Window .....	204
8.9.8	Polling in the Park State .....	204
8.10	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Mode .....	205
8.10.1	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmit Operation.	205
8.10.2	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Operation..	206
8.10.3	AFH in Connectionless Slave Broadcast .....	207
8.11	Synchronization Establishment Substates .....	207
8.11.1	Synchronization Scan Substate .....	207
8.11.2	Synchronization Train Substate .....	207

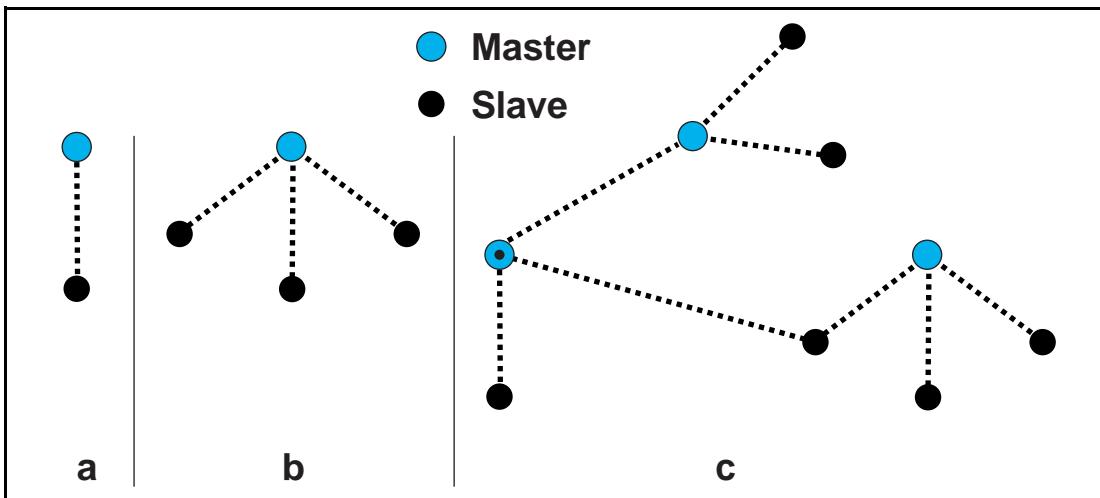
<b>9</b>	<b>Audio .....</b>	<b>210</b>
9.1	LOG PCM CODEC.....	210
9.2	CVSD CODEC .....	210
9.3	Error Handling .....	213
9.4	General Audio Requirements.....	213
9.4.1	Signal Levels .....	213
9.4.2	CVSD Audio Quality .....	213
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures.....</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>217</b>
 <b>Appendix A:</b> <b>General Audio Recommendations .....</b>		<b>218</b>
 <b>Appendix B:</b> <b>Timers .....</b>		<b>221</b>
 <b>Appendix C:</b> <b>Recommendations for AFH Operation in Park, Hold, Sniff, and</b> <b>Connectionless Slave Broadcast .....</b>		<b>223</b>

## 1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

This part specifies the normal operation of a Bluetooth baseband.

The Bluetooth system provides a point-to-point connection or a point-to-multipoint connection, see (a) and (b) in [Figure 1.1 on page 66](#). In a point-to-point connection the physical channel is shared between two Bluetooth devices. In a point-to-multipoint connection, the physical channel is shared among several Bluetooth devices. Two or more devices sharing the same physical channel form a *piconet*. One Bluetooth device acts as the master of the piconet, whereas the other device(s) act as slave(s). Up to seven slaves can be active in the piconet. Many more slaves can remain connected in a parked state. These parked slaves are not active on the channel, but remain synchronized to the master and can become active without using the connection establishment procedure. Both for active and parked slaves, the channel access is controlled by the master. An unlimited number of slaves can receive data on the physical channel carrying the Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link.

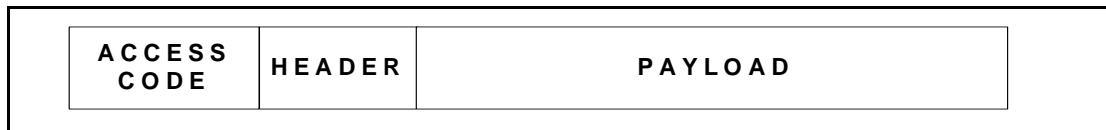
Piconets that have common devices are called a *scatternet*, see (c) in [Figure 1.1 on page 66](#). Each piconet only has a single master, however, slaves can participate in different piconets on a time-division multiplex basis. In addition, a master in one piconet can be a slave in other piconets. Piconets shall not be frequency synchronized and each piconet has its own hopping sequence.



*Figure 1.1: Piconets with a single slave operation (a), a multi-slave operation (b) and a scatternet operation (c)*

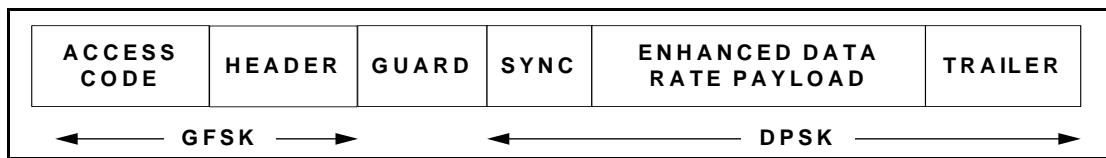
Data is transmitted over the air in packets. Two modes are defined: a mandatory mode called Basic Rate and an optional mode called Enhanced Data Rate. The symbol rate for all modulation modes is 1 Ms/s. The gross air data rate is 1 Mbps for Basic Rate. Enhanced Data Rate has a primary modulation mode that provides a gross air data rate of 2 Mbps, and a secondary modulation mode that provides a gross air data rate of 3 Mbps.

The general Basic Rate packet format is shown in [Figure 1.2](#). Each packet consists of 3 entities: the access code, the header, and the payload.



*Figure 1.2: Standard Basic Rate packet format*

The general Enhanced Data Rate packet format is shown in [Figure 1.3](#). Each packet consists of 6 entities: the access code, the header, the guard period, the synchronization sequence, the Enhanced Data Rate payload and the trailer. The access code and header use the same modulation mode as for Basic Rate packets while the synchronization sequence, the Enhanced Data Rate payload and the trailer use the Enhanced Data Rate modulation mode. The guard time allows for the transition between the modulation modes.



*Figure 1.3: Standard Enhanced Data Rate packet format*

## 1.1 BLUETOOTH CLOCK

Every Bluetooth device shall have a native clock that shall be derived from a free running reference clock. Offsets may be added to the reference clock to synchronize the native clock with other non-Bluetooth systems. For synchronization with other Bluetooth devices, offsets are used that, when added to the native clock, provide temporary Bluetooth clocks that are mutually synchronized. It should be noted that the Bluetooth clock has no relation to the time of day; it may therefore be initialized to any value. The clock has a cycle of about a day. If the clock is implemented with a counter, a 28-bit counter is required that shall wrap around at  $2^{28}-1$ . The least significant bit (LSB) shall tick in units of 312.5 µs (i.e. half a time slot), giving a clock rate of 3.2 kHz.

The clock determines critical periods and triggers the events in the device. Four periods are important in the Bluetooth system: 312.5 µs, 625 µs, 1.25 ms, and 1.28 s; these periods correspond to the timer bits CLK<sub>0</sub>, CLK<sub>1</sub>, CLK<sub>2</sub>, and CLK<sub>12</sub>, respectively, see [Figure 1.4 on page 68](#).

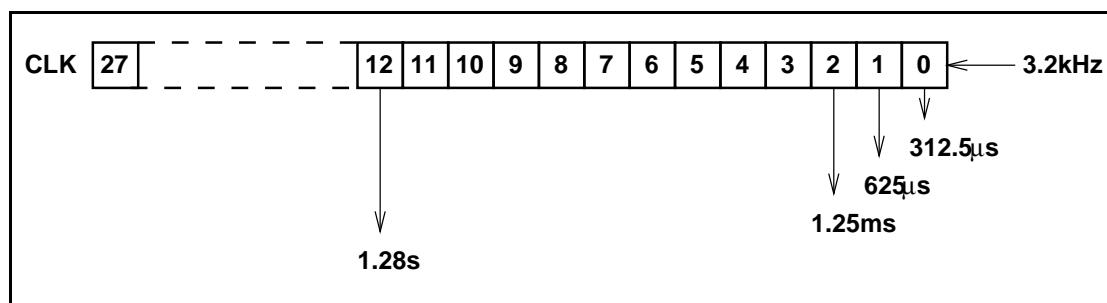


Figure 1.4: Bluetooth clock

In the different modes and states a device can reside in, the clock has different appearances:

- CLKR reference clock
- CLKN native clock
- CLKE estimated clock
- CLK master clock

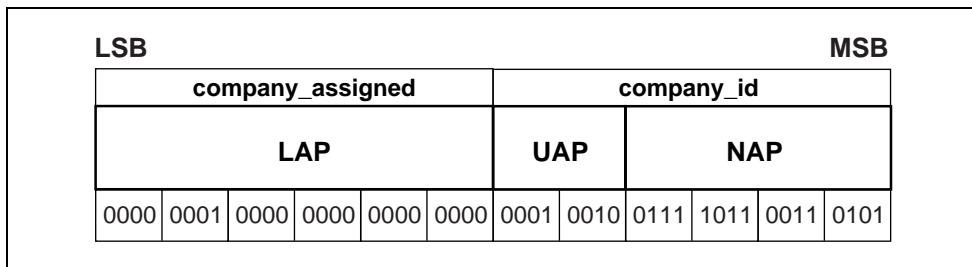
CLKR is the reference clock driven by the free running system clock. CLKN may be offset from the reference clock by a timing offset. In STANDBY and in Park, Hold, Sniff, and Connectionless Slave Broadcast modes the reference clock may be driven by a low power oscillator (LPO) with worst case accuracy (+/-250ppm). Otherwise, the reference clock shall be driven by the reference crystal oscillator with worst case accuracy of +/-20ppm. The master shall use the higher resolution oscillator while performing Piconet Clock Adjustment (see [Section 8.6.10](#)).

See [Section 2.2.4 on page 74](#) for the definition of CLK and [Section 2.4.1 on page 80](#) for the definition of CLKE.

The master may adjust its native clock during the existence of the piconet within certain limits (see [Section 8.6.10.3](#)). The master may also perform a coarse adjustment of the native clock by using the LMP\_clk\_adj sequence.

## 1.2 BLUETOOTH DEVICE ADDRESSING

Each Bluetooth device shall be allocated a unique 48-bit Bluetooth device address (BD\_ADDR). This address shall be obtained from the IEEE Registration Authority. The address shall be created in accordance with section 9.2 ("48-bit universal LAN MAC addresses") of the IEEE 802-2001 standard (<http://standards.ieee.org/getieee802/download/802-2001.pdf>) and using a valid Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) obtained from the IEEE Registration Authority (see <http://standards.ieee.org/regauth/oui/forms/> and sections 9 and 9.1 of the IEEE 802-2001 specification). The LAP and UAP form the significant part of the BD\_ADDR. The bit pattern in [Figure 1.5](#) is an example BD\_ADDR.



*Figure 1.5: Format of BD\_ADDR*

The BD\_ADDR may take any values except the 64 reserved LAP values for general and dedicated inquiries (see [Section 1.2.1 on page 69](#)).

### 1.2.1 Reserved Addresses

A block of 64 contiguous LAPs is reserved for inquiry operations; one LAP common to all devices is reserved for general inquiry, the remaining 63 LAPs are reserved for dedicated inquiry of specific classes of devices (see [Assigned Numbers](#)). The same LAP values are used regardless of the contents of UAP and NAP. Consequently, none of these LAPs can be part of a user BD\_ADDR.

The reserved LAP addresses are 0x9E8B00-0x9E8B3F. The general inquiry LAP is 0x9E8B33. All addresses have the LSB at the rightmost position, hexadecimal notation. The default check initialization (DCI) is used as the UAP whenever one of the reserved LAP addresses is used. The DCI is defined to be 0x00 (hexadecimal).

## 1.3 ACCESS CODES

In the Bluetooth system all transmissions over the physical channel begin with an access code. Three different access codes are defined, see also [Section 6.3.1 on page 117](#):

- device access code (DAC)
- channel access code (CAC)
- inquiry access code (IAC)

All access codes are derived from the LAP of a device address or an inquiry address. The device access code is used during **page**, **page scan** and **page response** substates and shall be derived from the paged device's BD\_ADDR. The channel access code is used in the **CONNECTION** state, **synchronization train** substate, and **synchronization scan** substate, and forms the beginning of all packets exchanged on the piconet physical channel. The channel access code shall be derived from the LAP of the master's BD\_ADDR. Finally, the inquiry access code shall be used in the **inquiry** substate. There is one general IAC (GIAC) for general inquiry operations and there are 63 dedicated IACs (DIACs) for dedicated inquiry operations.

The access code also indicates to the receiver the arrival of a packet. It is used for timing synchronization and offset compensation. The receiver correlates against the entire synchronization word in the access code, providing very robust signaling.

## 2 PHYSICAL CHANNELS

---

The lowest architectural layer in the Bluetooth system is the physical channel. A number of types of physical channels are defined. All Bluetooth physical channels are characterized by the combination of a pseudo-random frequency hopping sequence, the specific slot timing of the transmissions, the access code and packet header encoding. These aspects, together with the range of the transmitters, define the signature of the physical channel. For the basic and adapted piconet physical channels frequency hopping is used to change frequency periodically to reduce the effects of interference and to satisfy local regulatory requirements.

Two devices that wish to communicate use a shared physical channel for this communication. To achieve this, their transceivers must be tuned to the same RF frequency at the same time, and they must be within a nominal range of each other.

Given that the number of RF carriers is limited and that many Bluetooth devices could be operating independently within the same spatial and temporal area there is a strong likelihood of two independent Bluetooth devices having their transceivers tuned to the same RF carrier, resulting in a physical channel collision. To mitigate the unwanted effects of this collision each transmission on a physical channel starts with an access code that is used as a correlation code by devices tuned to the physical channel. This channel access code is a property of the physical channel. The access code is always present at the start of every transmitted packet.

Five Bluetooth physical channels are defined. Each is optimized and used for a different purpose. Two of these physical channels (the basic piconet channel and adapted piconet channel) are used for communication between connected devices and are associated with a specific piconet. Other physical channels are used for discovering (the inquiry scan channel) and connecting (the page scan channel) Bluetooth devices. The synchronization scan physical channel is used by devices to obtain timing and frequency information about the Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link or to recover the current piconet clock.

A Bluetooth device can only use one of these physical channels at any given time. In order to support multiple concurrent operations the device uses time-division multiplexing between the channels. In this way a Bluetooth device can appear to operate simultaneously in several piconets, as well as being discoverable and connectable.

Whenever a Bluetooth device is synchronized to the timing, frequency and access code of a physical channel it is said to be 'connected' to this channel (whether or not it is actively involved in communications over the channel.) At a minimum, a device need only be capable of connection to one physical channel at a time, however, advanced devices may be capable of connecting simultaneously to more than one physical channel, but the specification does not assume that this is possible.

## 2.1 PHYSICAL CHANNEL DEFINITION

Physical channels, apart from the synchronization scan physical channel (which uses a set of fixed RF channels), are defined by a pseudo-random RF channel hopping sequence, the packet (slot) timing and an access code. The hopping sequence is determined by the UAP and LAP of a Bluetooth device address and the selected hopping sequence. The phase in the hopping sequence is determined by the Bluetooth clock. All physical channels are subdivided into time slots whose length is different depending on the physical channel. Within the physical channel, each reception or transmission event is associated with a time slot or time slots. For each reception or transmission event an RF channel is selected by the hop selection kernel (see [Section 2.6 on page 86](#)). The maximum hop rate is 1600 hops/s in the **CONNECTION** state, the **synchronization train** substate, and the **synchronization scan** substate and the maximum is 3200 hops/s in the **inquiry** and **page** substates.

The following physical channels are defined:

- basic piconet physical channel
- adapted piconet physical channel
- page scan physical channel
- inquiry scan physical channel
- synchronization scan physical channel

## 2.2 BASIC PICONET PHYSICAL CHANNEL

During the **CONNECTION** state the basic piconet physical channel is used by default. The adapted piconet physical channel may also be used. The adapted piconet physical channel is identical to the basic piconet physical channel except for the differences listed in [Section 2.3 on page 79](#).

### 2.2.1 Master-slave Definition

The basic piconet physical channel is defined by the master of the piconet. The master controls the traffic on the piconet physical channel by a polling scheme (see [Section 8.5 on page 174](#)).

By definition, the device that initiates a connection by paging is the master. Once a piconet has been established, master-slave roles may be exchanged. This is described in [Section 8.6.5 on page 182](#).

## 2.2.2 Hopping Characteristics

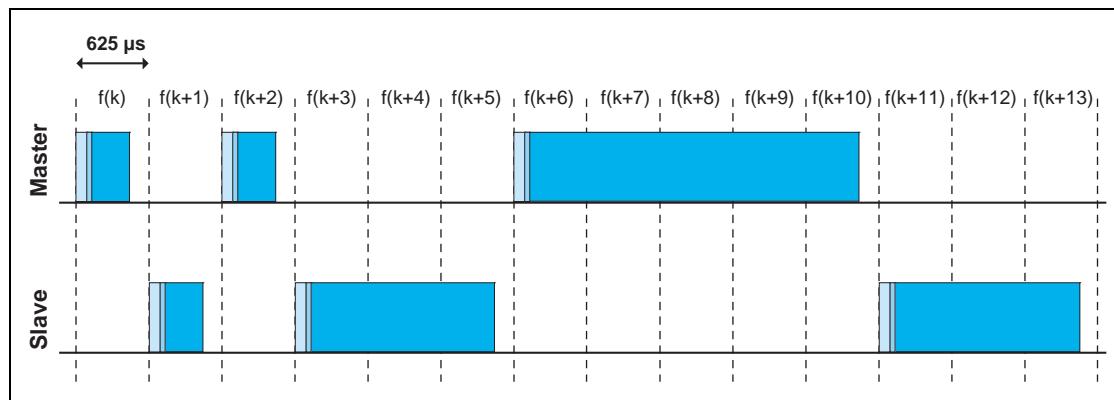
The basic piconet physical channel is characterized by a pseudo-random hopping through all 79 RF channels. The frequency hopping in the piconet physical channel is determined by the Bluetooth clock and BD\_ADDR of the master. When the piconet is established, the master clock is communicated to the slaves. Each slave shall add an offset to its native clock to synchronize with the master clock. Since the clocks are independent, the offsets must be updated regularly. All devices participating in the piconet are time-synchronized and hop-synchronized to the channel.

The basic piconet physical channel uses the basic channel hopping sequence and is described in [Section 2.6 on page 86](#).

## 2.2.3 Time Slots

The basic piconet physical channel is divided into time slots, each 625 µs in length. The time slots are numbered according to the most significant 27 bits of the Bluetooth clock CLK<sub>28-1</sub> of the piconet master. The slot numbering ranges from 0 to 2<sup>27</sup>-1 and is cyclic with a cycle length of 2<sup>27</sup>. The time slot number is denoted as k.

A TDD scheme is used where master and slave alternately transmit, see [Figure 2.1 on page 73](#). The packet start shall be aligned with the slot start. Packets may extend over up to five time slots.



*Figure 2.1: Multi-slot packets*

The term *slot pairs* is used to indicate two adjacent time slots starting with a master-to-slave transmission slot.

## 2.2.4 Piconet Clocks

CLK is the master clock of the piconet. It shall be used for all timing and scheduling activities in the piconet. All devices shall use the CLK to schedule their transmission and reception. The CLK shall be derived from the reference clock CLKR (see [Section 1.1 on page 67](#)) by adding a time\_base\_offset and a slave\_offset, see [Figure 2.2 on page 74](#). The time\_base\_offset is a value that devices may use to store a locally generated offset to CLKN caused by alignment to an external time base. The slave\_offset shall be zero for the master since CLK is identical to its own native clock CLKN. Each slave shall add an appropriate slave\_offset to its CLKN such that the CLK corresponds to the CLKN of the master. Although all CLKNs in the devices run at the same nominal rate, mutual drift causes inaccuracies in CLK. Therefore, the offsets in the slaves must be regularly updated such that CLK is approximately CLKN of the master.

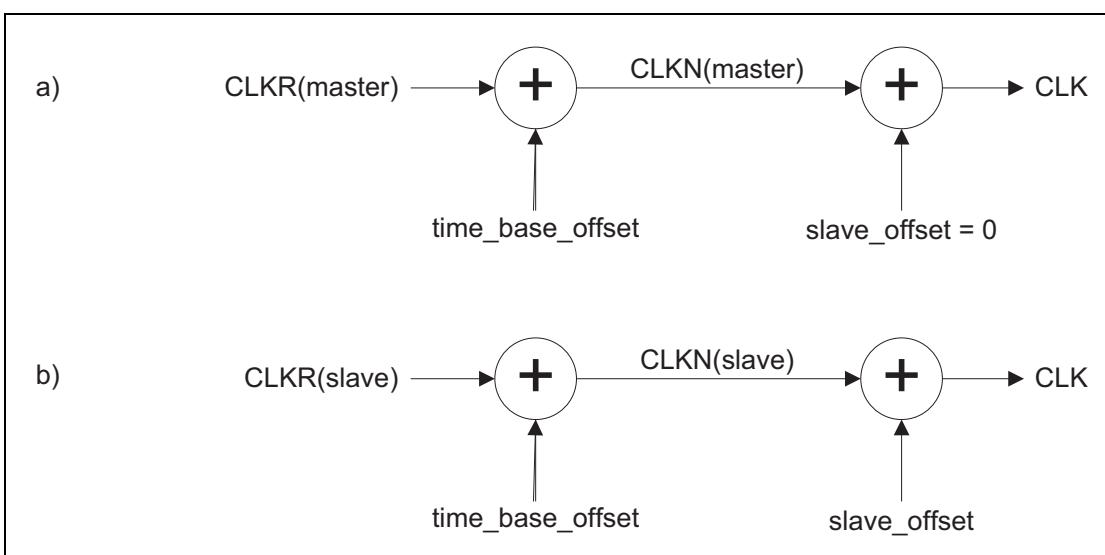


Figure 2.2: Derivation of CLK in master (a) and in slave (b)

Changes in time\_base\_offset are only made by the master of a piconet; a device acting only as a slave has no need to distinguish CLKR and CLKN in normal operation. In a scatternet situation, a Controller may be changing both time\_base\_offset to align its CLKN with an external clock, either collocated or at the request of a slave, and slave\_offset to maintain synchronization with a different piconet clock. In some cases, it may not be possible to determine how much of an observed offset is caused by external frame timing alignment (time\_base\_offset) and how much is caused by the offset between master and slave (slave\_offset).

## 2.2.5 Transmit/Receive Timing

The master transmission shall always start at even numbered time slots ( $CLK_1=0$ ) and the slave transmission shall always start at odd numbered time slots ( $CLK_1=1$ ). Due to packet types that cover more than a single slot, master

transmission may continue in odd numbered slots and slave transmission may continue in even numbered slots, see [Figure 2.1 on page 73](#).

All timing diagrams shown in this chapter are based on the signals as present at the antenna. The term “exact” when used to describe timing refers to an ideal transmission or reception and neglects timing jitter and clock frequency imperfections.

The average timing of packet transmission shall not drift faster than 20 ppm relative to the ideal slot timing of 625 µs. The instantaneous timing shall not deviate more than 1 µs from the average timing. Thus, the absolute packet transmission timing  $t_k$  of slot boundary  $k$  shall fulfill the equation:

$$t_k = \left( \sum_{i=1}^k (1 + d_i) T_N \right) + j_k + \text{offset}, \quad (\text{EQ 1})$$

where  $T_N$  is the nominal slot length (625 µs),  $j_k$  denotes jitter ( $|j_k| \leq 1 \mu\text{s}$ ) at the start of slot  $k$ , and,  $d_k$ , denotes the drift ( $|d_k| \leq 20 \text{ ppm}$ ) within slot  $k$ . The jitter and drift can vary arbitrarily within the given limits for every slot, while *offset* is an arbitrary but fixed constant. For hold, Park, and sniff the drift and jitter parameters specified in Link Manager Protocol [[Part C](#)] Section 4.3.1 on page 310 apply.

#### 2.2.5.1 Piconet physical channel timing

In the figures, only single-slot packets are shown as an example.

The master TX/RX timing is shown in [Figure 2.3 on page 76](#). In [Figure 2.3](#) and [Figure 2.4](#) the channel hopping frequencies are indicated by  $f(k)$  where  $k$  is the time slot number. After transmission, a return packet is expected  $N \times 625 \mu\text{s}$  after the start of the TX packet where  $N$  is an odd, integer larger than 0.  $N$  depends on the type of the transmitted packet.

To allow for some time slipping, an uncertainty window is defined around the exact receive timing. During normal operation, the window length shall be 20 µs, which allows the RX packet to arrive up to 10 µs too early or 10 µs too late. It is recommended that slaves implement variable sized windows or time tracking to accommodate a master's absence of more than 250ms.

During the beginning of the RX cycle, the access correlator shall search for the correct channel access code over the uncertainty window. If an event trigger does not occur the receiver may go to sleep until the next RX event. If in the course of the search, it becomes apparent that the correlation output will never exceed the final threshold, the receiver may go to sleep earlier. If a trigger event occurs, the receiver shall remain open to receive the rest of the packet unless the packet is for another device, a non-recoverable header error is detected, or a non-recoverable payload error is detected.

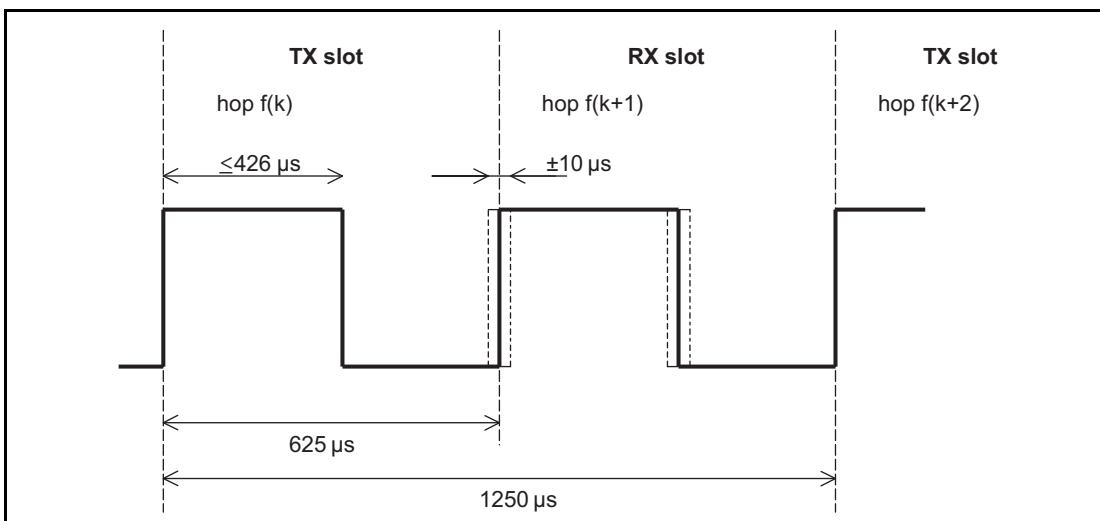


Figure 2.3: RX/TX cycle of master transceiver in normal mode for single-slot packets

Each master transmission shall be derived from bit 2 of the Master's native Bluetooth clock, thus the current transmission will be scheduled  $M \times 1250 \mu s$  after the start of the previous master TX burst where  $M$  depends on the transmitted and received packet type and is an even, integer larger than 0. The master TX timing shall be derived from the master's native Bluetooth clock, and thus it will not be affected by time drifts in the slave(s).

Slaves maintain an estimate of the master's native clock by adding a timing offset to the slave's native clock (see [Section 2.2.4 on page 74](#)). This offset shall be updated each time a packet is received from the master. By comparing the exact RX timing of the received packet with the estimated RX timing, slaves shall correct the offset for any timing misalignments. Since only the channel access code is required to synchronize the slave, slave RX timing can be corrected with any packet sent in the master-to-slave transmission slot.

The slave's TX/RX timing is shown in [Figure 2.4 on page 77](#). The slave's transmission shall be scheduled  $N \times 625 \mu s$  after the start of the slave's RX packet where  $N$  is an odd, positive integer larger than 0. If the slave's RX timing drifts, so will its TX timing. During periods when a slave is in the active mode (see [Section 8.6 on page 176](#)) and is prevented from receiving valid channel access codes from the master due to local RF interference, slave activity in a different piconet, or any other reason, the slave may increase its receive uncertainty window and/or use predicted timing drift to increase the probability of receiving the master's bursts when reception resumes.

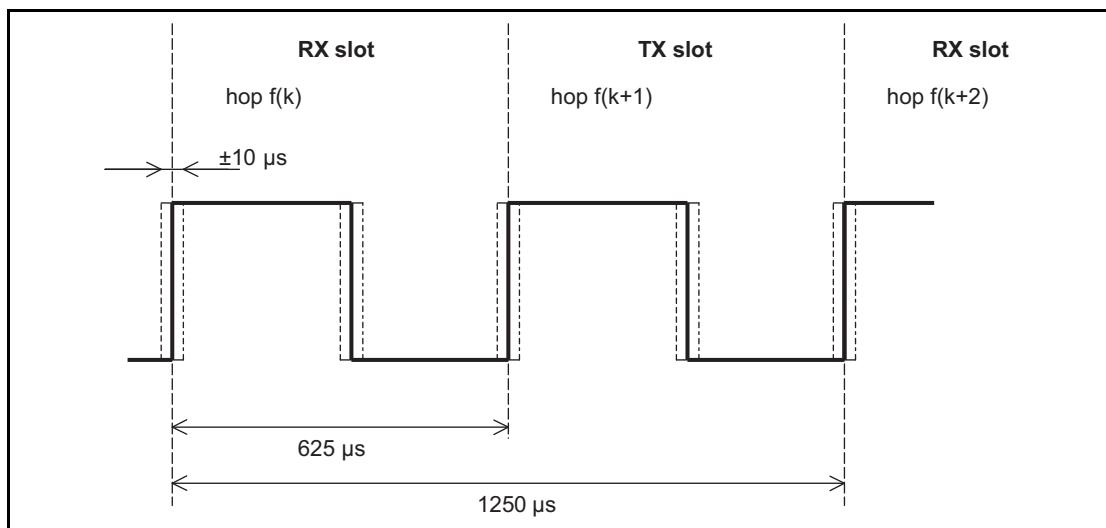


Figure 2.4: RX/TX cycle of slave transceiver in normal mode for single-slot packets

### 2.2.5.2 Piconet physical channel re-synchronization

In the piconet physical channel, a slave can lose synchronization if it does not receive a packet from the master at least every 250ms (or less if the low power clock is used). This can occur in sniff, hold, Park, and Connectionless Slave Broadcast, in a scatternet or due to interference. When re-synchronizing to the piconet physical channel a slave device shall listen for the master before it may send information (except for a Connectionless Slave Broadcast slave device which shall listen for the master but does not send information). In this case, the length of the search window in the slave device may be increased from 20 µs to a larger value X µs as illustrated in [Figure 2.5 on page 78](#). Note that only RX hop frequencies are used. The hop frequency used in the master-to-slave (RX) slot shall also be used in the uncertainty window, even when it is extended into the preceding time interval normally used for the slave-to-master (TX) slot.

If the length of search window, X, exceeds 1250 µs, consecutive windows shall avoid overlapping search windows. Consecutive windows should instead be centered at  $f(k)$ ,  $f(k+4), \dots, f(k+4i)$  (where 'i' is an integer), which gives a maximum value  $X=2500 \mu s$ , or even at  $f(k)$ ,  $f(k+6), \dots, f(k+6i)$  which gives a maximum value  $X=3750 \mu s$ . The RX hop frequencies used shall correspond to the master-to-slave transmission slots.

It is recommended that single slot packets are transmitted by the master during slave re-synchronization.

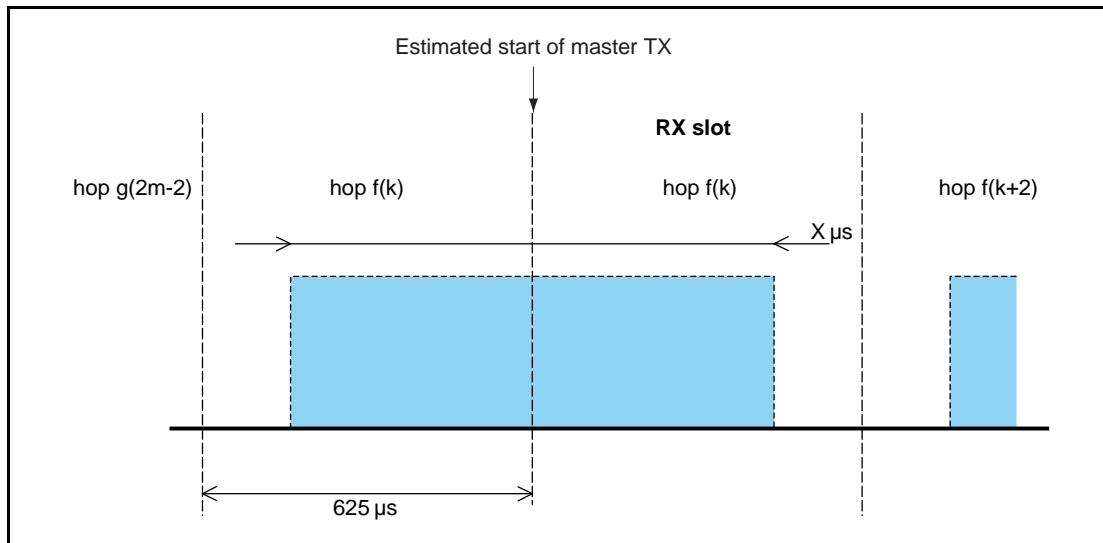


Figure 2.5: RX timing of slave returning from hold mode

## 2.3 ADAPTED PICONET PHYSICAL CHANNEL

For devices that enter connectionless slave broadcast mode, the device that transmits Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets is the master of the piconet and any device that receives Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets is a slave of the piconet.

### 2.3.1 Hopping Characteristics

The adapted piconet physical channel shall use at least  $N_{\min}$  RF channels (where  $N_{\min}$  is 20).

The adapted piconet physical channel uses the adapted channel hopping sequence described in [Section 2.6 on page 86](#).

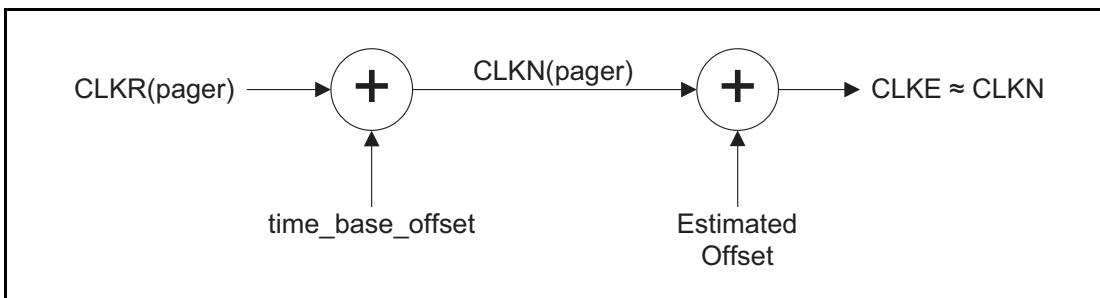
Adapted piconet physical channels can be used for connected devices that have adaptive frequency hopping (AFH) enabled. There are two distinctions between basic and adapted piconet physical channels. The first is the same channel mechanism that makes the slave frequency the same as the preceding master transmission. The second aspect is that the adapted piconet physical channel may be based on less than the full 79 frequencies of the basic piconet physical channel.

## 2.4 PAGE SCAN PHYSICAL CHANNEL

Although master and slave roles are not defined prior to a connection, the term *master* is used for the paging device (that becomes a master in the **CONNECTION** state) and *slave* is used for the page scanning device (that becomes a slave in the **CONNECTION** state).

### 2.4.1 Clock Estimate for Paging

A paging device uses an estimate of the native clock of the page scanning device, CLKE; i.e. an offset shall be added to the CLKN of the pager to approximate the CLKN of the recipient, see [Figure 2.6 on page 80](#). CLKE shall be derived from the native CLKN by adding an offset. By using the CLKN of the recipient, the pager might be able to speed up the connection establishment. Note: CLKR is never used for deriving CLKE or for any other control of the hopping kernel.



*Figure 2.6: Derivation of CLKE*

### 2.4.2 Hopping Characteristics

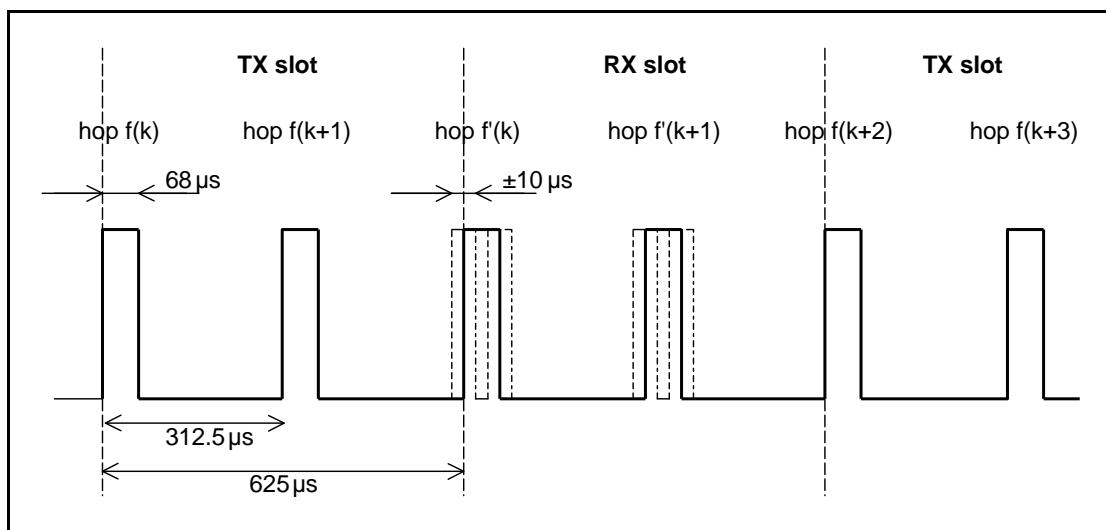
The page scan physical channel follows a slower hopping pattern than the basic piconet physical channel and is a short pseudo-random hopping sequence through the RF channels. The timing of the page scan channel shall be determined by the native Bluetooth clock of the scanning device. The frequency hopping sequence is determined by the Bluetooth address of the scanning device.

The page scan physical channel uses the page, master page response, slave page response, and page scan hopping sequences specified in [Section 2.6 on page 86](#).

### 2.4.3 Paging Procedure Timing

During the paging procedure, the master shall transmit paging messages (see [Table 8.3 on page 165](#)) corresponding to the slave to be connected. Since the paging message is a very short packet, the hop rate is 3200 hops/s. In a single TX slot interval, the paging device shall transmit on two different hop frequencies. In [Figure 2.7 through Figure 2.11](#),  $f(k)$  is used for the frequencies of the page hopping sequence and  $f'(k)$  denotes the corresponding page response sequence frequencies. The first transmission starts where  $CLK_0 = 0$  and the second transmission starts where  $CLK_0 = 1$ .

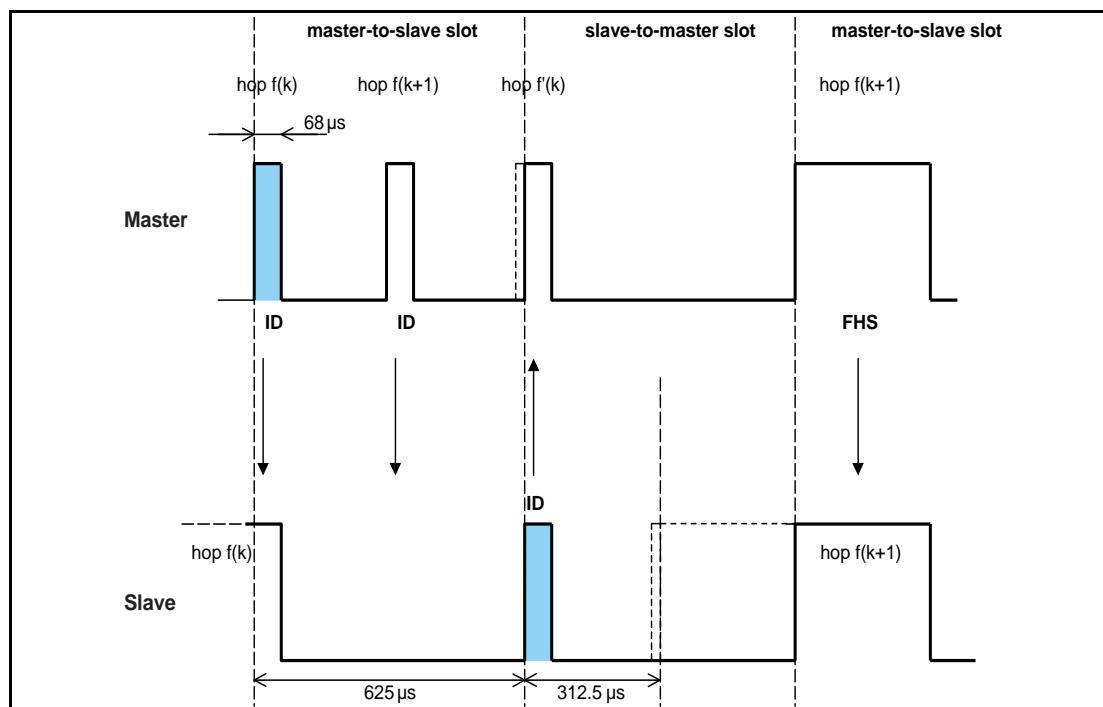
In a single RX slot interval, the paging device shall listen for the slave page response message on two different hop frequencies. Similar to transmission, the nominal reception starts where  $CLK_0 = 0$  and the second reception nominally starts where  $CLK_0 = 1$ ; see [Figure 2.7 on page 81](#). During the TX slot, the paging device shall send the paging message at the TX hop frequencies  $f(k)$  and  $f(k+1)$ . In the RX slot, it shall listen for a response on the corresponding RX hop frequencies  $f'(k)$  and  $f'(k+1)$ . The listening periods shall be exactly timed 625 µs after the corresponding paging packets, and shall include a ±10 µs uncertainty window.



*Figure 2.7: RX/TX cycle of transceiver in PAGE mode*

## 2.4.4 Page Response Timing

At connection setup a master page response packet is transmitted from the master to the slave (see [Table 8.3 on page 165](#)). This packet establishes the timing and frequency synchronization. After the slave device has received the page message, it shall return a response message that consists of the slave page response packet and shall follow 625 µs after the receipt of the page message. The master shall send the master page response packet in the TX slot following the RX slot in which it received the slave response, according to the RX/TX timing of the master. The time difference between the slave page response and master page response message will depend on the timing of the page message the slave received. In [Figure 2.8 on page 82](#), the slave receives the paging message sent **first** in the master-to-slave slot. It then responds with a first slave page response packet in the first half of the slave-to-master slot. The timing of the master page response packet is based on the timing of the page message sent first in the preceding master-to-slave slot: there is an exact 1250 µs delay between the first page message and the master page response packet. The packet is sent at the hop frequency  $f(k+1)$  which is the hop frequency following the hop frequency  $f(k)$  the page message was received in.



*Figure 2.8: Timing of page response packets on successful page in first half slot*

In [Figure 2.9 on page 83](#), the slave receives the paging message sent **second** in the master-to-slave slot. It then responds with a slave page response packet in the second half of the slave-to-master slot exactly 625 µs after the receipt of the page message. The timing of the master page response packet is still based on the timing of the page message sent **first** in the preceding master-to-slave slot: there is an exact 1250 µs delay between the **first** page message and the master page response packet. The packet is sent at the hop frequency  $f(k+2)$  which is the hop frequency following the hop frequency  $f(k+1)$  the page message was received in.

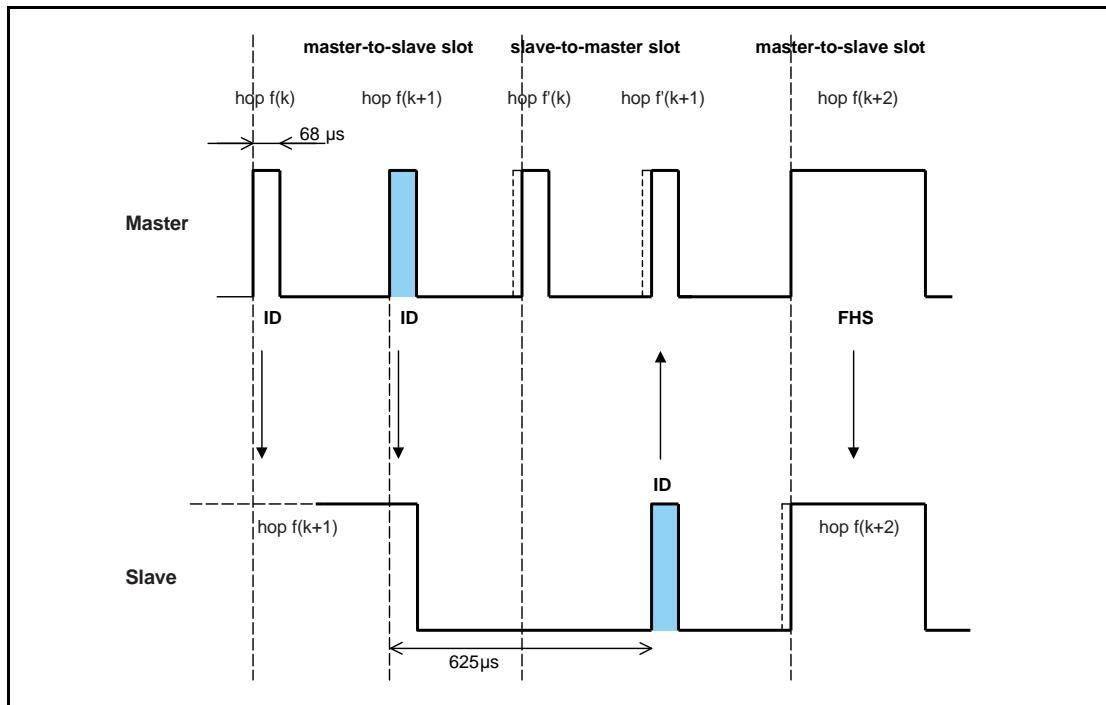


Figure 2.9: Timing of page response packets on successful page in second half slot

The slave shall adjust its RX/TX timing according to the reception of the master page response packet (and not according to the reception of the page message). That is, the second slave page response message that acknowledges the reception of the master page response packet shall be transmitted 625 µs after the start of the master page response packet.

## 2.5 INQUIRY SCAN PHYSICAL CHANNEL

Although master and slave roles are not defined prior to a connection, the term *master* is used for the inquiring device and *slave* is used for the inquiry scanning device.

### 2.5.1 Clock for Inquiry

The clock used for inquiry and inquiry scan shall be the device's native clock.

### 2.5.2 Hopping Characteristics

The inquiry scan channel follows a slower hopping pattern than the piconet physical channel and is a short pseudo-random hopping sequence through the RF channels. The timing of the inquiry scan channel is determined by the native Bluetooth clock of the scanning device while the frequency hopping sequence is determined by the general inquiry access code.

The inquiry scan physical channel uses the inquiry, inquiry response, and inquiry scan hopping sequences described in [Section 2.6 on page 86](#).

### 2.5.3 Inquiry Procedure Timing

During the inquiry procedure, the master shall transmit inquiry messages with the general or dedicated inquiry access code. The timing for inquiry is the same as for paging (see [Section 2.4.3 on page 81](#)).

### 2.5.4 Inquiry Response Timing

An inquiry response packet is transmitted from the slave to the master after the slave has received an inquiry message (see [Table 8.5 on page 174](#)). This packet contains information necessary for the inquiring master to page the slave (see definition of the FHS packet in [Section 6.5.1.4 on page 126](#)) and follows 625 µs after the receipt of the inquiry message. If the slave transmits an extended inquiry response packet, it shall be transmitted 1250 µs after the start of the inquiry response packet.

In [Figure 2.10](#) and [Figure 2.11](#),  $f(k)$  is used for the frequencies of the inquiry hopping sequence and  $f'(k)$  denotes the corresponding inquiry response sequence frequency. The inquiry response packet and the extended inquiry response packet are received by the master at the hop frequency  $f'(k)$  when the inquiry message received by the slave was first in the master-to-slave slot.

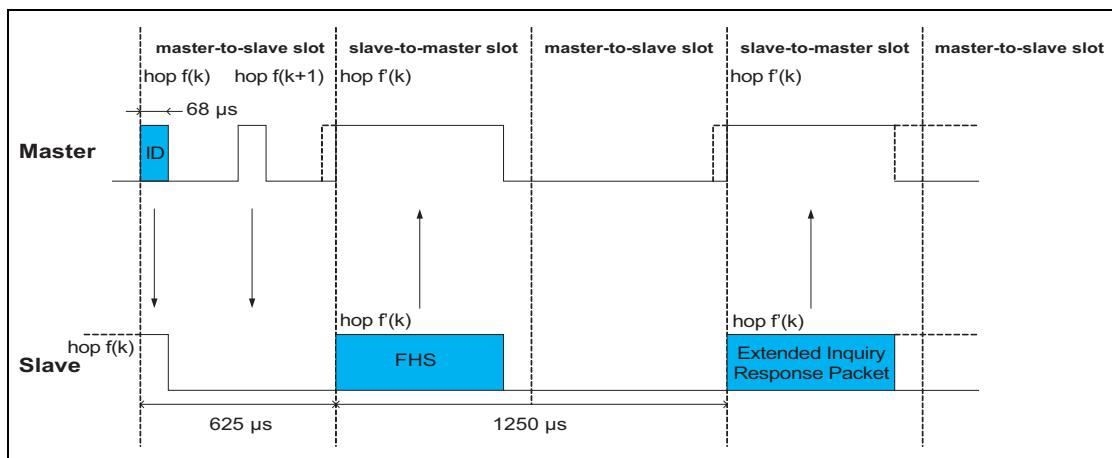


Figure 2.10: Timing of inquiry response packets on successful inquiry in first half slot

When the inquiry message received by the slave was the second in the master-to-slave slot the inquiry response packet and the extended inquiry response packet are received by the master at the hop frequency  $f'(k+1)$ .

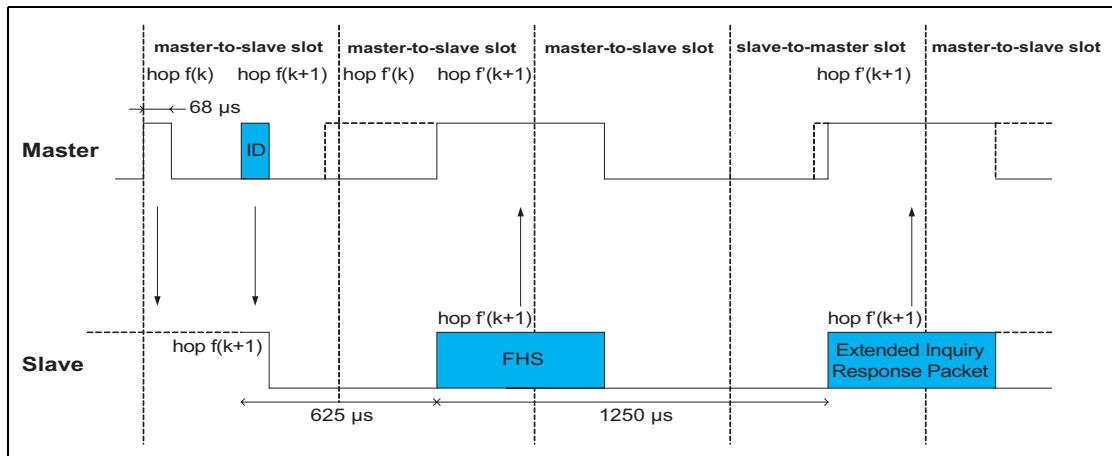


Figure 2.11: Timing of inquiry response packets on successful inquiry in second half slot

## 2.6 HOP SELECTION

Bluetooth devices shall use the hopping kernel as defined in the following sections.

In total, six types of hopping sequence are defined – five for the basic hop system and one for an adapted set of hop locations used by adaptive frequency hopping (AFH). These sequences are:

- A **page hopping sequence** with 32 wake-up frequencies distributed equally over the 79 MHz, with a period length of 32;
- A **page response hopping sequence** covering 32 response frequencies that are in a one-to-one correspondence to the current page hopping sequence. The master and slave use different rules to obtain the same sequence;
- An **inquiry hopping sequence** with 32 wake-up frequencies distributed equally over the 79 MHz, with a period length of 32;
- An **inquiry response hopping sequence** covering 32 response frequencies that are in a one-to-one correspondence to the current inquiry hopping sequence.
- A **basic channel hopping sequence** which has a very long period length, which does not show repetitive patterns over a short time interval, and which distributes the hop frequencies equally over the 79 MHz during a short time interval.
- An **adapted channel hopping sequence** derived from the basic channel hopping sequence which uses the same channel mechanism and may use fewer than 79 frequencies. The adapted channel hopping sequence is only used in place of the basic channel hopping sequence. All other hopping sequences are not affected by hop sequence adaptation.

In addition, a set of **synchronization train** RF channels with 3 fixed frequencies is defined.

### 2.6.1 General Selection Scheme

The selection scheme consists of two parts:

- selecting a sequence;
- mapping this sequence onto the hop frequencies;

The general block diagram of the hop selection scheme is shown in [Figure 2.12 on page 88](#). The mapping from the input to a particular RF channel index is performed in the selection box.

The inputs to the selection box are the selected clock, frozen clock, N,  $k_{\text{offset}}$ , interlace\_offset, address, sequence selection and AFH\_channel\_map. The source of the clock input depends on the hopping sequence selected. Addition-

ally, each hopping sequence uses different bits of the clock (see [Table 2.2 on page 95](#)). N, interlace\_offset, and  $k_{\text{offset}}$  are defined in [Section 2.6.4 on page 94](#).

The *sequence selection* input can be set to the following values:

- page scan
- inquiry scan
- page
- inquiry
- master page response
- slave page response
- inquiry response
- basic channel
- adapted channel

The address input consists of 28 bits including the entire LAP and the 4 LSBs of the UAP. This is designated as the UAP/LAP. When the basic or adapted channel hopping sequence is selected, the Bluetooth device address of the master (BD\_ADDR) shall be used. When the page, master page response, slave page response, or page scan hopping sequences are selected the BD\_ADDR given by the Host of the paged device shall be used (see HCI Create Connection Command [\[Part E\] Section 7.1.5 on page 520](#)). When the inquiry, inquiry response, or inquiry scan hopping sequences are selected, the UAP/LAP corresponding to the GIAC shall be used even if it concerns a DIAC. Whenever one of the reserved BD\_ADDRs (see [Section 1.2.1 on page 69](#)) is used for generating a frequency hop sequence, the UAP shall be replaced by the default check initialization (DCI, see [Section 7.1 on page 144](#)). The hopping sequence is selected by the sequence selection input to the selection box.

When the adapted channel hopping sequence is selected, the *AFH\_channel\_map* is an additional input to the selection box. The *AFH\_channel\_map* indicates which channels shall be *used* and which shall be *unused*. These terms are defined in [Section 2.6.3 on page 93](#).

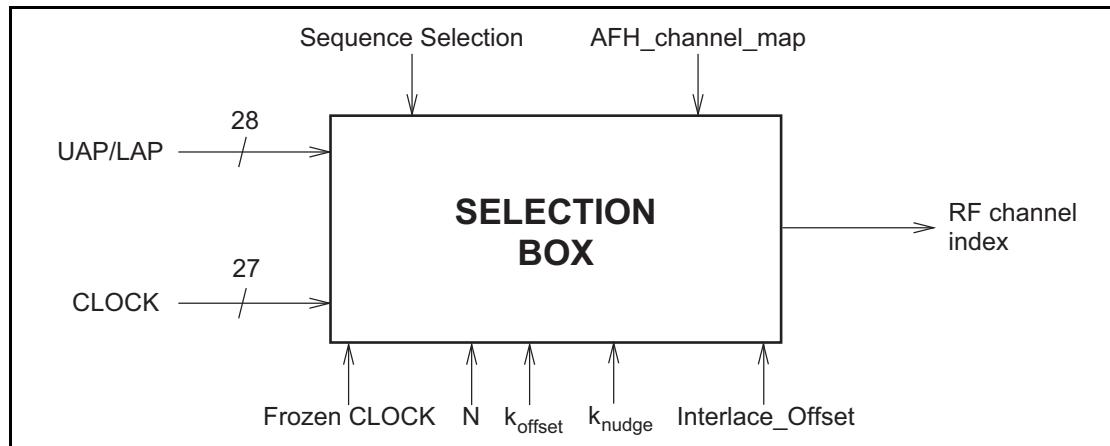


Figure 2.12: General block diagram of hop selection scheme

The output, *RF channel index*, constitutes a pseudo-random sequence. The RF channel index is mapped to RF channel frequencies using the equation in [Table 2.1 on page 37](#) in the Radio Specification.

The selection scheme chooses a segment of 32 hop frequencies spanning about 64 MHz and visits these hops in a pseudo-random order. Next, a different 32-hop segment is chosen, etc. In the page, master page response, slave page response, page scan, inquiry, inquiry response and inquiry scan hopping sequences, the same 32-hop segment is used all the time (the segment is selected by the address; different devices will have different paging segments). When the basic channel hopping sequence is selected, the output constitutes a pseudo-random sequence that slides through the 79 hops. The principle is depicted in [Figure 2.13 on page 88](#).

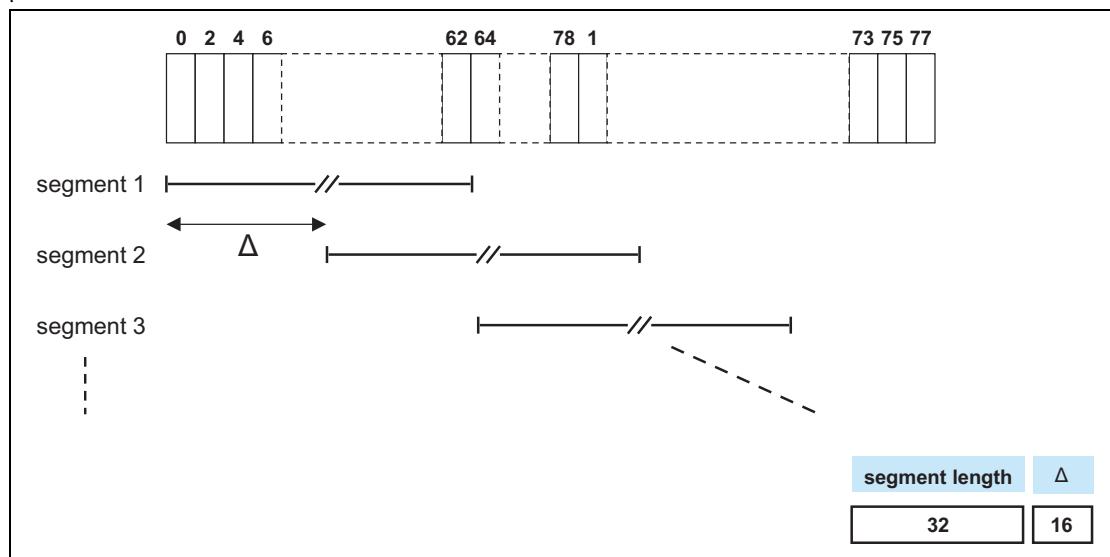
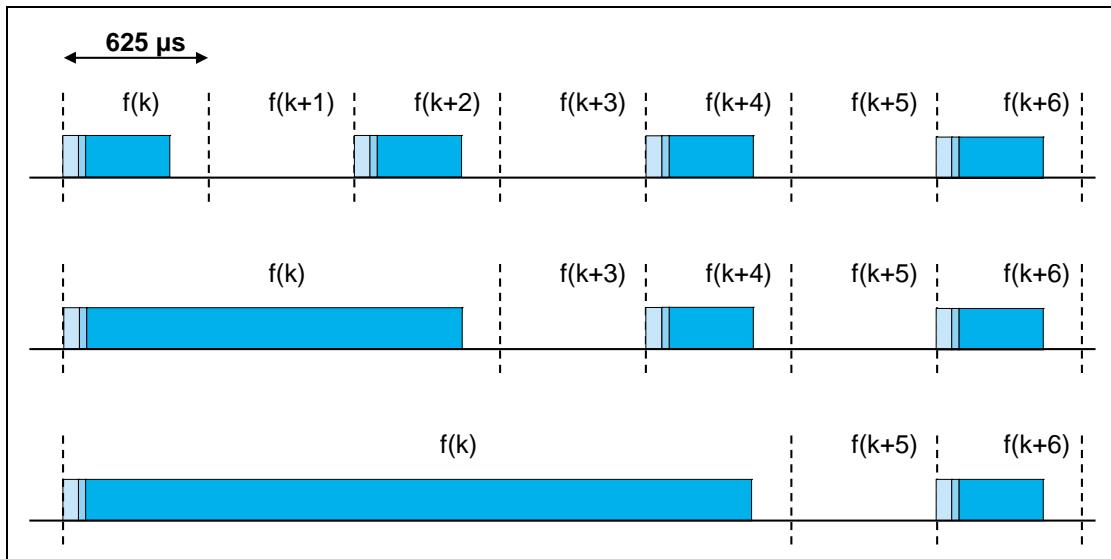


Figure 2.13: Hop selection scheme in CONNECTION state

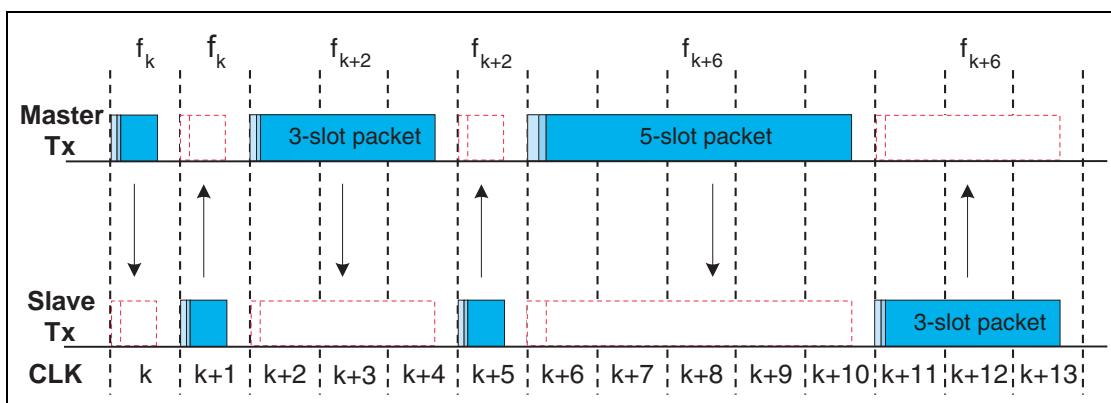
The RF frequency shall remain fixed for the duration of the packet. The RF frequency for the packet shall be derived from the Bluetooth clock value in the first

slot of the packet. The RF frequency in the first slot after a multi-slot packet shall use the frequency as determined by the Bluetooth clock value for that slot. [Figure 2.14 on page 89](#) illustrates the hop definition on single- and multi-slot packets.



*Figure 2.14: Single- and multi-slot packets*

When the adapted channel hopping sequence is used, the pseudo-random sequence contains only frequencies that are in the RF channel set defined by the *AFH\_channel\_map* input. The adapted sequence has similar statistical properties to the non-adapted hop sequence. In addition, the slave responds with its packet on the same RF channel that was used by the master to address that slave (or would have been in the case of a synchronous reserved slot without a validly received master-to-slave transmission). This is called the *same channel mechanism* of AFH. Thus, the RF channel used for the master to slave packet is also used for the immediately following slave to master packet. An example of the same channel mechanism is illustrated in [Figure 2.15 on page 89](#). The same channel mechanism shall be used whenever the adapted channel hopping sequence is selected.



*Figure 2.15: Example of the same channel mechanism*

## 2.6.2 Selection Kernel

The basic hop selection kernel shall be as shown in [Figure 2.16 on page 90](#) and is used for the page, page response, inquiry, inquiry response and basic channel hopping selection kernels. In these substates the AFH\_channel\_map input is unused. The adapted channel hopping selection kernel is described in [Section 2.6.3 on page 93](#). The X input determines the phase in the 32-hop segment, whereas Y1 and Y2 selects between master-to-slave and slave-to-master. The inputs A to D determine the ordering within the segment, the inputs E and F determine the mapping onto the hop frequencies. The kernel addresses a register containing the RF channel indices. This list is ordered so that first all even RF channel indices are listed and then all odd hop frequencies. In this way, a 32-hop segment spans about 64 MHz.

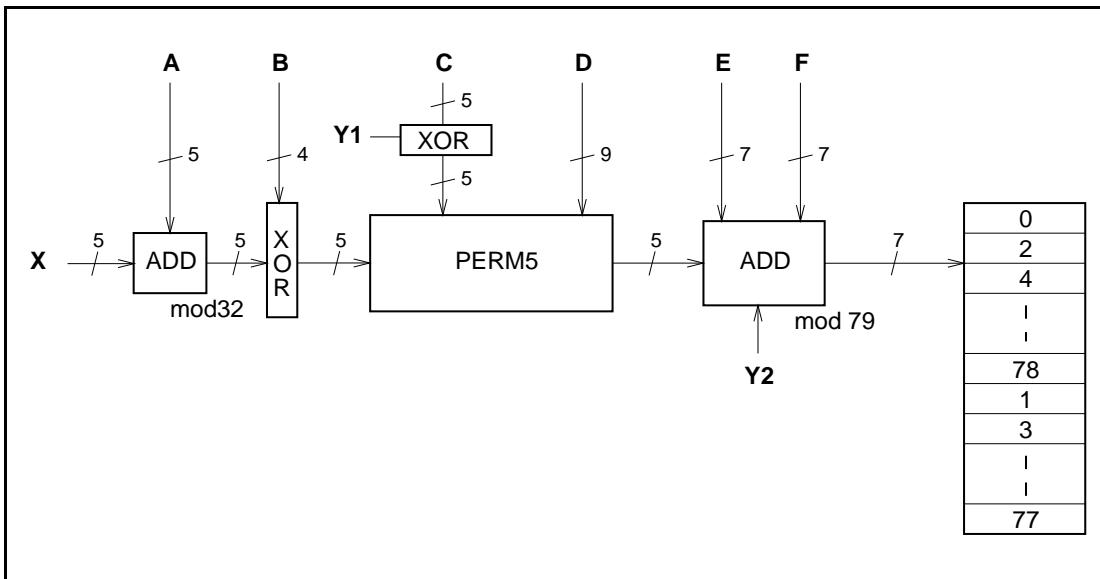


Figure 2.16: Block diagram of the basic hop selection kernel for the hop system

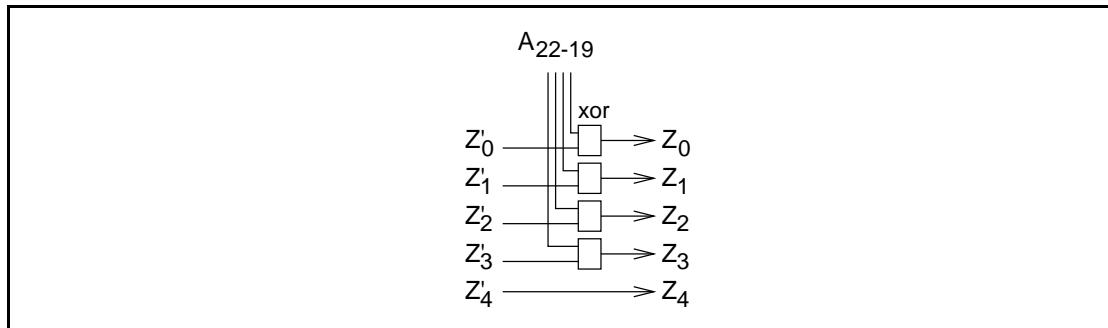
The selection procedure consists of an addition, an XOR operation, a permutation operation, an addition, and finally a register selection. In the remainder of this chapter, the notation  $A_i$  is used for bit  $i$  of the BD\_ADDR.

### 2.6.2.1 First addition operation

The first addition operation only adds a constant to the phase and applies a modulo 32 operation. For the page hopping sequence, the first addition is redundant since it only changes the phase within the segment. However, when different segments are concatenated (as in the basic channel hopping sequence), the first addition operation will have an impact on the resulting sequence.

### 2.6.2.2 XOR operation

Let  $Z'$  denote the output of the first addition. In the XOR operation, the four LSBs of  $Z'$  are modulo-2 added to the address bits  $A_{22-19}$ . The operation is illustrated in [Figure 2.17 on page 91](#).



*Figure 2.17: XOR operation for the hop system*

### 2.6.2.3 Permutation operation

The permutation operation involves the switching from 5 inputs to 5 outputs for the hop system, controlled by the control word. The permutation or switching box shall be as shown in [Figure 2.18 on page 92](#). It consists of 7 stages of butterfly operations. The control of the butterflies by the control signals  $P$  is shown in [Table 2.1](#).  $P_{0-8}$  corresponds to  $D_{0-8}$ , and,  $P_{i+9}$  corresponds to  $C_i \oplus Y1$  for  $i = 0 \dots 4$  in [Figure 2.16](#).

Control signal	Butterfly	Control signal	Butterfly
$P_0$	{Z <sub>0</sub> ,Z <sub>1</sub> }	$P_8$	{Z <sub>1</sub> ,Z <sub>4</sub> }
$P_1$	{Z <sub>2</sub> ,Z <sub>3</sub> }	$P_9$	{Z <sub>0</sub> ,Z <sub>3</sub> }
$P_2$	{Z <sub>1</sub> ,Z <sub>2</sub> }	$P_{10}$	{Z <sub>2</sub> ,Z <sub>4</sub> }
$P_3$	{Z <sub>3</sub> ,Z <sub>4</sub> }	$P_{11}$	{Z <sub>1</sub> ,Z <sub>3</sub> }
$P_4$	{Z <sub>0</sub> ,Z <sub>4</sub> }	$P_{12}$	{Z <sub>0</sub> ,Z <sub>3</sub> }
$P_5$	{Z <sub>1</sub> ,Z <sub>3</sub> }	$P_{13}$	{Z <sub>1</sub> ,Z <sub>2</sub> }
$P_6$	{Z <sub>0</sub> ,Z <sub>2</sub> }		
$P_7$	{Z <sub>3</sub> ,Z <sub>4</sub> }		

*Table 2.1: Control of the butterflies for the hop system*

The  $Z$  input is the output of the XOR operation as described in the previous section. The butterfly operation can be implemented with multiplexers as depicted in [Figure 2.19 on page 92](#).

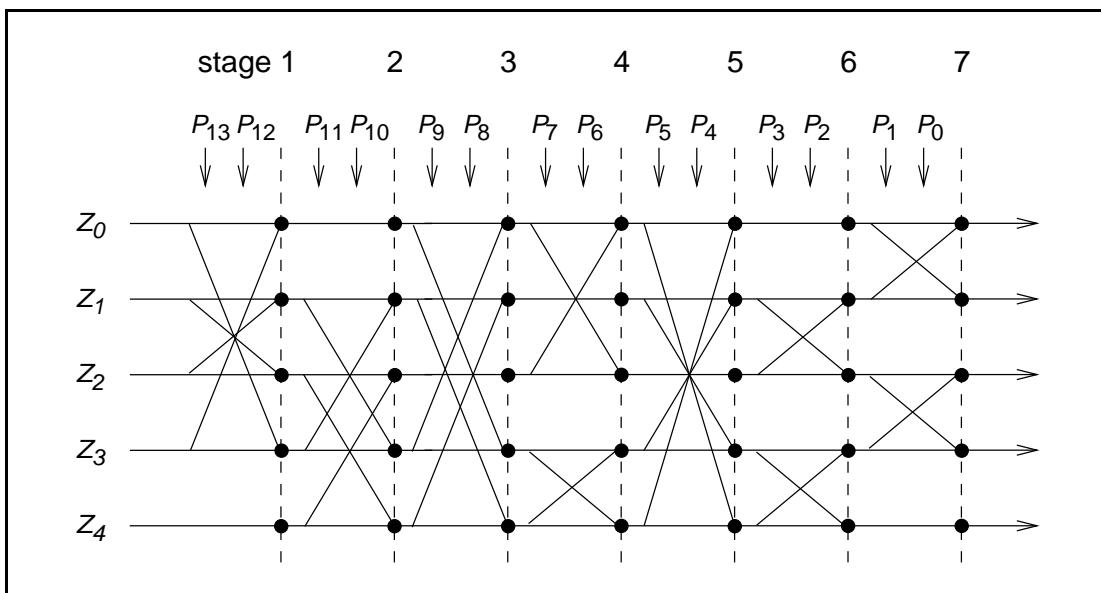


Figure 2.18: Permutation operation for the hop system

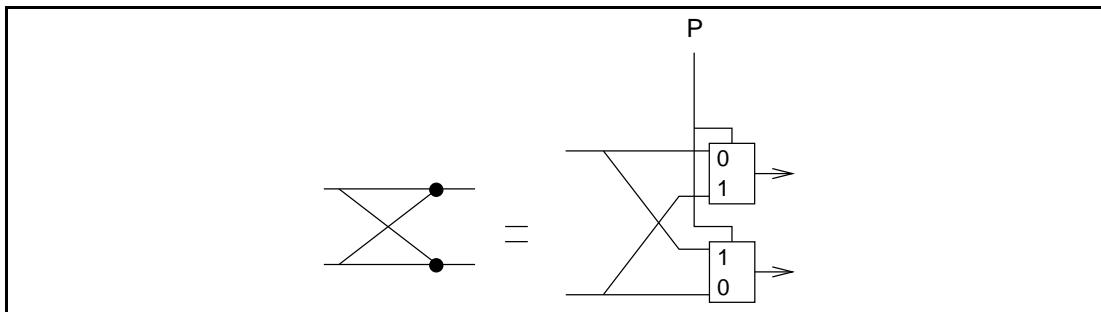


Figure 2.19: Butterfly implementation

#### 2.6.2.4 Second addition operation

The addition operation only adds a constant to the output of the permutation operation. The addition is applied modulo 79.

#### 2.6.2.5 Register bank

The output of the adder addresses a bank of 79 registers. The registers are loaded with the synthesizer code words corresponding to the hop frequencies 0 to 78. Note that the upper half of the bank contains the even hop frequencies, whereas the lower half of the bank contains the odd hop frequencies.

### 2.6.3 Adapted Hop Selection Kernel

The adapted hop selection kernel is based on the basic hop selection kernel defined in the preceding sections.

The inputs to the adapted hop selection kernel are the same as for the basic hop system kernel except that the input AFH\_channel\_map (defined in Link Manager Protocol [Part C] Section 5.2 on page 359) is used. The *AFH\_channel\_map* indicates which RF channels shall be *used* and which shall be *unused*. When hop sequence adaptation is enabled, the number of *used* RF channels may be reduced from 79 to some smaller value N. All devices shall be capable of operating on an adapted hop sequence (AHS) with  $N_{min} \leq N \leq 79$ , with any combination of *used* RF channels within the *AFH\_channel\_map* that meets this constraint.  $N_{min}$  is defined in [Section 2.3.1 on page 79](#).

Adaptation of the hopping sequence is achieved through two additions to the basic channel hopping sequence according to [Figure 2.16 on page 90](#):

- *Unused* RF channels are re-mapped uniformly onto *used* RF channels. That is, if the hop selection kernel of the basic system generates an *unused* RF channel, an alternative RF channel out of the set of *used* RF channels is selected pseudo-randomly.
- The *used* RF channel generated for the master-to-slave packet is also used for the immediately following slave-to-master packet (see [Section 2.6.1 on page 86](#)).

#### 2.6.3.1 Channel re-mapping function

When the adapted hop selection kernel is selected, the basic hop selection kernel according to [Figure 2.16 on page 90](#) is initially used to determine an RF channel. If this RF channel is *unused* according to the *AFH\_channel\_map*, the *unused* RF channel is re-mapped by the re-mapping function to one of the *used* RF channels. If the RF channel determined by the basic hop selection kernel is already in the set of *used* RF channels, no adjustment is made. The hop sequence of the (non-adapted) basic hop equals the sequence of the adapted selection kernel on all locations where *used* RF channels are generated by the basic hop. This property facilitates non-AFH slaves remaining synchronized while other slaves in the piconet are using the adapted hopping sequence.

A block diagram of the re-mapping mechanism is shown in [Figure 2.20 on page 94](#). The re-mapping function is a post-processing step to the selection kernel from [Figure 2.16 on page 90](#), denoted as ‘Hop selection of the basic hop’. The output  $f_k$  of the basic hop selection kernel is an RF channel number that ranges between 0 and 78. This RF channel will either be in the set of *used* RF channels or in the set of *unused* RF channels.

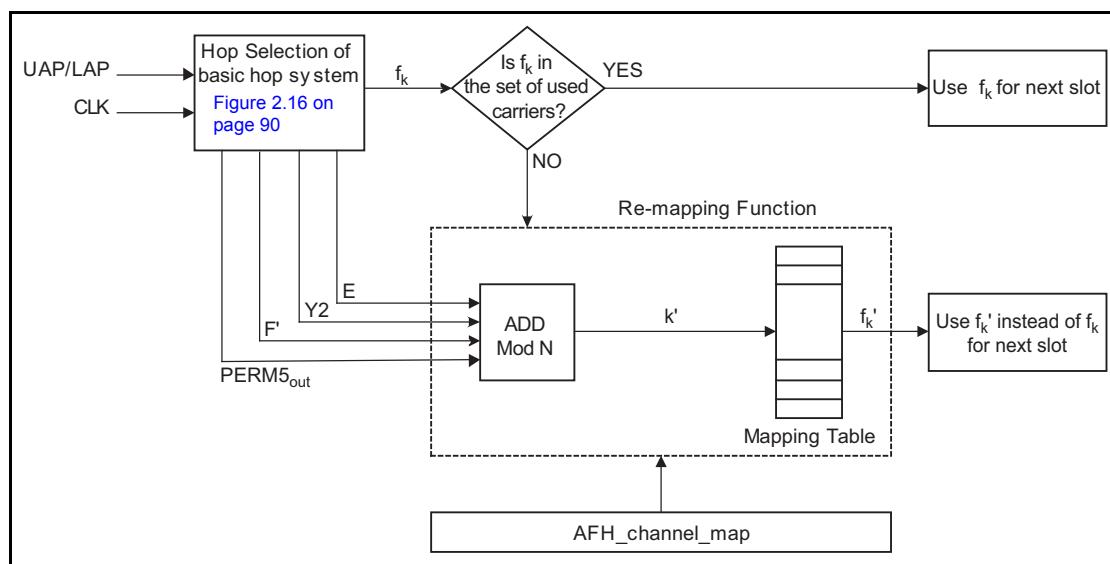


Figure 2.20: Block diagram of adaptive hop selection mechanism

When an unused RF channel is generated by the basic hop selection mechanism, it is re-mapped to the set of *used* RF channels as follows. A new index  $k' \in \{0, 1, \dots, N-1\}$  is calculated using some of the parameters from the basic hop selection kernel:

$$k' = (PERM5_{out} + E + F' + Y2) \bmod N$$

where  $F'$  is defined in [Table 2.2 on page 95](#). The index  $k'$  is then used to select the re-mapped channel from a mapping table that contains all of the even *used* RF channels in ascending order followed by all the odd *used* RF channels in ascending order (i.e., the mapping table of [Figure 2.16 on page 90](#) with all the *unused* RF channels removed).

## 2.6.4 Control Word

In the following section  $X_{j-i}$ ,  $i < j$ , denotes bits  $i, i+1, \dots, j$  of the bit vector X. By convention,  $X_0$  is the least significant bit of the vector X.

The control word of the kernel is controlled by the overall control signals X, Y1, Y2, A to F, and F' as illustrated in [Figure 2.16 on page 90](#) and [Figure 2.20 on page 94](#). During paging and inquiry, the inputs A to E use the address values as given in the corresponding columns of [Table 2.2 on page 95](#). In addition, the inputs X, Y1 and Y2 are used. The F and F' inputs are unused. The clock bits CLK<sub>6-2</sub> (i.e., input X) specify the phase within the length 32 sequence. CLK<sub>1</sub> (i.e., inputs Y1 and Y2) is used to select between TX and RX. The address inputs determine the sequence order within segments. The final mapping onto the hop frequencies is determined by the register contents.

During the **CONNECTION** state (see [Section 8.5 on page 174](#)), the inputs A, C and D shall be derived from the address bits being bit-wise XORed with the

clock bits as shown in the “Connection state” column of [Table 2.2 on page 95](#) (the two most significant bits, MSBs, are XORed together, the two second MSBs are XORed together, etc.).

	<b>Page scan / Generalized Interlaced Page Scan / Inquiry scan / Generalized Interlaced Inquiry Scan</b>	<b>Page/Inquiry</b>	<b>Master/Slave page response and Inquiry response</b>	<b>Connection state</b>
X	CLKN <sub>16-12</sub> / (CLKN <sub>16-12</sub> + interlace offset)mod32  Xir <sub>4-0</sub> / (Xir <sub>4-0</sub> + interlace offset)mod32	Xp <sub>4-0</sub> /Xi <sub>4-0</sub>	Xprm <sub>4-0</sub> / Xprs <sub>4-0</sub> /  Xir <sub>4-0</sub>	CLK <sub>6-2</sub>
Y1	0	CLKE <sub>1</sub> /CLKN <sub>1</sub>	CLKE <sub>1</sub> /CLKN <sub>1</sub> /1	CLK <sub>1</sub>
Y2	0	32 × CLKE <sub>1</sub> / 32 × CLKN <sub>1</sub>	32 × CLKE <sub>1</sub> / 32 × CLKN <sub>1</sub> / 32 × 1	32 × CLK <sub>1</sub>
A	A <sub>27-23</sub>	A <sub>27-23</sub>	A <sub>27-23</sub>	A <sub>27-23</sub> ⊕ CLK <sub>25-21</sub>
B	A <sub>22-19</sub>	A <sub>22-19</sub>	A <sub>22-19</sub>	A <sub>22-19</sub>
C	A <sub>8, 6, 4, 2, 0</sub>	A <sub>8, 6, 4, 2, 0</sub>	A <sub>8, 6, 4, 2, 0</sub>	A <sub>8, 6, 4, 2, 0</sub> ⊕ CLK <sub>20-16</sub>
D	A <sub>18-10</sub>	A <sub>18-10</sub>	A <sub>18-10</sub>	A <sub>18-10</sub> ⊕ CLK <sub>15-7</sub>
E	A <sub>13, 11, 9, 7, 5, 3, 1</sub>	A <sub>13, 11, 9, 7, 5, 3, 1</sub>	A <sub>13, 11, 9, 7, 5, 3, 1</sub>	A <sub>13, 11, 9, 7, 5, 3, 1</sub>
F	0	0	0	16 × CLK <sub>27-7</sub> mod 79
F'	n/a	n/a	n/a	16 × CLK <sub>27-7</sub> mod N

*Table 2.2: Control for hop system*

The five X input bits vary depending on the current state of the device. In the **page scan** and **inquiry scan** substates, the native clock (CLKN) shall be used. In **CONNECTION** state the master clock (CLK) shall be used as input. The situation is somewhat more complicated for the other states.

#### 2.6.4.1 Page scan and inquiry scan hopping sequences

When the sequence selection input is set to page scan, the Bluetooth device address of the scanning device shall be used as address input. When the sequence selection input is set to inquiry scan, the GIAC LAP and the four LSBs of the DCI (as A<sub>27-24</sub>), shall be used as address input for the hopping

sequence. For the transmitted access code and in the receiver correlator, the appropriate GIAC or DIAC shall be used. The application decides which inquiry access code to use depending on the purpose of the inquiry.

#### 2.6.4.2 Page hopping sequence

When the sequence selection input is set to page, the paging device shall start using the **A**-train, i.e.,  $\{f(k - 8), \dots, f(k), \dots, f(k + 7)\}$ , where  $f(k)$  is the source's estimate of the current receiver frequency in the paged device. The index  $k$  is a function of all the inputs in [Figure 2.16](#). There are 32 possible paging frequencies within each 1.28 second interval. Half of these frequencies belong to the **A**-train, the rest (i.e.,  $\{f(k + 8), \dots, f(k + 15), f(k - 16), \dots, f(k - 9)\}$ ) belong to the **B**-train. In order to achieve the -8 offset of the **A**-train, a constant of 24 shall be added to the clock bits (which is equivalent to -8 due to the modulo 32 operation). The **B**-train is obtained by setting the offset to 8. In the case where slots to receive the first slave response are periodically not available, an additional offset ( $k_{\text{nudge}}$ ) is added to the clock bits in order to shift the train by an integer multiple of 1.25 ms duration. A cyclic shift of the order within the trains is also necessary in order to avoid a possible repetitive mismatch between the paging and scanning devices. Thus,

$$X_p = [CLKE_{16-12} + k_{\text{offset}} + k_{\text{nudge}} + (CLKE_{4-2,0} - CLKE_{16-12}) \bmod 16] \bmod 32, \quad (\text{EQ } 2)$$

where

$$k_{\text{offset}} = \begin{cases} 24 & \text{A-train,} \\ 8 & \text{B-train.} \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 3)$$

$$k_{\text{nudge}} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{During 1^{st} } 2 \times N_{\text{page}} \text{ repetitions} \\ \text{Even} & \text{During all other repetitions.} \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 4)$$

Alternatively, each switch between the **A**- and **B**-trains may be accomplished by adding 16 to the current value of  $k_{\text{offset}}$  (originally initialized with 24).

#### 2.6.4.3 Slave page response hopping sequence

When the sequence selection input is set to *slave page response*, in order to eliminate the possibility of losing the link due to discrepancies of the native clock CLKN and the master's clock estimate CLKE, the four bits  $CLKN_{16-12}$  shall be frozen at their current value. The value shall be frozen at the content it has in the slot where the recipient's access code is detected. The native clock shall *not* be stopped; it is merely the values of the bits used for creating the X-input that are kept fixed for a while. A frozen value is denoted by an asterisk (\*) in the discussion below.

For each response slot the paged device shall use an X-input value one larger (modulo 32) than in the preceding response slot. However, the first response shall be made with the X-input kept at the same value as it was when the access code was recognized. Let  $N$  be a counter starting at zero. Then, the X-input in the  $(N + 1)$ -th response slot (the first response slot being the one immediately following the page slot now responding to) of the **slave response** substate is:

$$X_{\text{prs}} = [\text{CLKN}^*_{16-12} + N] \bmod 32, \quad (\text{EQ } 5)$$

The counter  $N$  shall be set to zero in the slot where the slave acknowledges the page (see [Figure 8.3 on page 166](#) and [Figure 8.4 on page 166](#)). Then, the value of  $N$  shall be increased by one each time  $\text{CLKN}_1$  is set to zero, which corresponds to the start of a master TX slot. The X-input shall be constructed this way until the first **FHS** packet is received *and* the immediately following response packet has been transmitted. After this the slave shall enter the **CONNECTION** state using the parameters received in the **FHS** packet.

#### 2.6.4.4 Master page response hopping sequence

When the sequence selection input is set to *master page response*, the master shall freeze its estimated slave clock to the value that triggered a response from the paged device. It is equivalent to using the values of the clock estimate when receiving the slave response (since only  $\text{CLKE}_1$  will differ from the corresponding page transmission). Thus, the values are frozen when the slave **ID** packet is received. In addition to the clock bits used, the current values of  $k_{\text{offset}}$  and  $k_{\text{nudge}}$  shall also be frozen. The master shall adjust its X-input in the same way the paged device does, i.e., by incrementing this value by one for each time  $\text{CLKE}_1$  is set to zero. The first increment shall be done before sending the **FHS** packet to the paged device. Let  $N$  be a counter starting at one. The rule for forming the X-input is:

$$X_{\text{prm}} = [\text{CLKE}^*_{16-12} + k^*_{\text{offset}} + k^*_{\text{nudge}} + \\ (\text{CLKE}^*_{4-2,0} - \text{CLKE}^*_{16-12}) \bmod 16 + N] \bmod 32, \quad (\text{EQ } 6)$$

The value of  $N$  shall be increased each time  $\text{CLKE}_1$  is set to zero, which corresponds to the start of a master TX slot.

#### 2.6.4.5 Inquiry hopping sequence

When the sequence selection input is set to *inquiry*, the X-input is similar to that used in the *page hopping sequence*. Since no particular device is addressed, the native clock  $\text{CLKN}$  of the inquirer shall be used. Moreover, which of the two train offsets to start with is of no real concern in this state. Consequently,

$$X_i = [CLKN_{16-12} + k_{\text{offset}} + k_{\text{nudge}} + \\ (CLKN_{4-2,0} - CLKN_{16-12}) \bmod 16] \bmod 32, \quad (\text{EQ } 7)$$

where  $k_{\text{offset}}$  and  $k_{\text{nudge}}$  are defined by (EQ 3) and (EQ 4) on page 96.

The initial choice of  $k_{\text{offset}}$  is arbitrary.

The GIAC LAP and the four LSBs of the DCI (as  $A_{27-24}$ ) shall be used as address input for the hopping sequence generator.

#### 2.6.4.6 Inquiry response hopping sequence

The *inquiry response* hopping sequence is similar to the *slave page response* hopping sequence with respect to the X-input. The clock input shall not be frozen, thus the following equation apply:

$$X_{ir} = [CLKN_{16-12} + N] \bmod 32, \quad (\text{EQ } 8)$$

Furthermore, the counter  $N$  is increased not on  $CLKN_1$  basis, but rather after each **FHS** packet has been transmitted in response to the inquiry. There is no restriction on the initial value of  $N$  as it is independent of the corresponding value in the inquiring unit.

The  $X_{ir}$  value used for the extended inquiry response packet shall be the same  $X_{ir}$  value as calculated for the immediately preceding FHS packet.

The GIAC LAP and the four LSBs of the DCI (as  $A_{27-24}$ ) shall be used as address input for the hopping sequence generator. The other input bits to the generator shall be the same as for page response.

#### 2.6.4.7 Basic and adapted channel hopping sequence

In the *basic* and *adapted channel hopping sequences*, the clock bits to use in the basic or adapted hopping sequence generation shall always be derived from the master clock, CLK. The address bits shall be derived from the Bluetooth device address of the master.

#### 2.6.4.8 Synchronization train RF channels

The synchronization train and synchronization scan use RF channels from the set of three fixed RF Channels with indices 0, 24, and 78.

## 2.7 SYNCHRONIZATION SCAN PHYSICAL CHANNEL

The synchronization scan physical channel enables devices to receive synchronization train packets.

### 2.7.1 Hopping Characteristics

When a device enters the **synchronization scan** substate, it shall scan the synchronization train RF channels using the timing defined in [Section 2.7.3 on page 100](#). Each individual scan window shall use a different RF channel than the previous two scan windows.

The synchronization scan physical channel shall use all of the synchronization train RF channels defined in [Section 2.6.4.8 on page 98](#).

### 2.7.2 Synchronization Train Procedure Timing

The master shall use the synchronization train procedure only when connectionless slave broadcast mode is enabled or during the Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode ([Section 8.6.10.2 on page 192](#)); these can happen concurrently. During the synchronization train procedure, the master shall attempt to transmit synchronization train packets on all of the RF Channels specified in [Section 2.6.4.8 on page 98](#). The transmission of synchronization train packets on each RF Channel is independent of the transmission on other RF Channels. For each RF Channel, the master shall:

1. Establish synchronization train events that are separated by  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Interval}$  where  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Interval}$  is the smaller of 32 during Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode or the value selected by the Controller from a range provided by the Host ([\[Vol. 2, Part E\] Section 7.3.90 on page 780](#)).
2. Attempt to send a synchronization train packet between each pair of synchronization train events.
3. In the absence of scheduling conflicts, delay the start of the synchronization train packet transmission by  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Delay}$  slots from the synchronization train event, where  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Delay}$  is a pseudorandom number between 0 and  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Delay\_Max}$  inclusive. Each value of  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Delay}$  shall be an even integer.  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Delay\_Max}$  shall equal 4 slots during Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode and 16 slots at all other times. Each synchronization packet transmission shall start at the beginning of a time slot where  $CLK[1:0]=00b$ .
4. If the transmission of the synchronization train packet conflicts with the timing of higher priority packets, the actual delay may be adjusted to avoid the conflict. The actual delay should stay within the range of 0 to  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Delay\_Max}$  inclusive and shall not be greater than or equal to  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Interval}$ . If it is not possible to transmit the complete packet before the next synchronization train event, it shall not be transmitted. Note that increasing the delay beyond the

recommended range (0 to  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Delay\_Max}$ ) increases the chance that the scanning device will miss the packet.

5. There shall be no more than one synchronization train packet transmitted between any two consecutive synchronization train events.
6. The actual delays used shall not all be the same for any three consecutive synchronization train packets (though any two may be).

Note: Subject to the above requirements, synchronization train events on different RF Channels may be managed separately or may be co-ordinated using the same value of  $T_{Sync\_Train\_Delay}$ .

[Figure 2.21](#) shows the timing relationship of consecutive synchronization train packets on a single RF Channel.

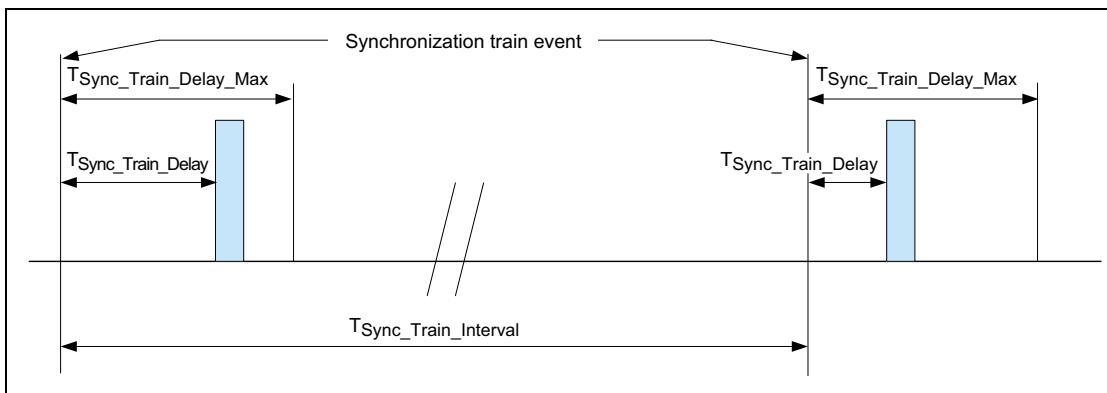


Figure 2.21: Synchronization train packet timing on a single channel

### 2.7.3 Synchronization Scan Procedure Timing

During the Synchronization Scan procedure, a device performs synchronization scans on the synchronization train RF channels. During each scan window, the device listens for the duration of  $T_{Sync\_Scan\_Window}$  (see [\[Vol. 2, Part E\] Section 7.1.52 on page 621](#)). The RF Channel for each scan window shall be selected as specified in [Section 2.7.1](#). Each scan window should be continuous and not interrupted by other activities. The interval between the start of consecutive scan windows shall be  $\leq T_{Sync\_Scan\_Interval}$  (see [\[Vol. 2, Part E\] Section 7.1.52 on page 621](#)). This timing relationship is shown in [Figure 2.22](#).

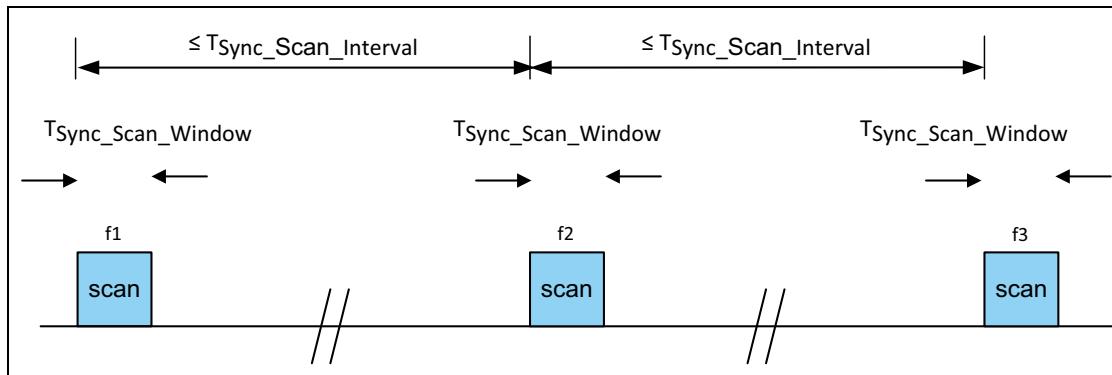


Figure 2.22: Synchronization scan timing

## 3 PHYSICAL LINKS

---

A physical link represents a baseband connection between devices. A physical link is always associated with exactly one physical channel. Physical links have common properties that apply to all logical transports on the physical link.

Other than the Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link, common properties of physical links are:

- Power control (see Link Manager Protocol [Section 4.1.3 on page 252](#))
- Link supervision (see [Section 3.1 on page 102](#) and Link Manager Protocol [Section 4.1.6 on page 261](#))
- Encryption (see Security [\[Part H\] Section 4 on page 1302](#) and Link Manager Protocol [\[Part C\] Section 4.2.5 on page 285](#))
- Channel quality-driven data rate change (see Link Manager Protocol [Section 4.1.7 on page 262](#))
- Multi-slot packet control (see Link Manager Protocol [Section 4.1.10 on page 266](#))

The Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link is associated with the BR/EDR adapted piconet physical channel, a single logical transport (the CSB logical transport), and does not support the Link Manager Protocol. For information on link supervision on Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical links, see [Section 3.2 on page 103](#). Multi-slot packets on Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical links are controlled by the Host and specified at the profile level.

### 3.1 LINK SUPERVISION FOR ACTIVE AND PARKED PHYSICAL LINKS

A connection can break down due to various reasons such as a device moving out of range, encountering severe interference or a power failure condition. Since this can happen without any prior warning, it is important to monitor the link on both the master and the slave side to avoid possible collisions when the logical transport address (see [Section 4.2 on page 104](#)) or parked member address (see [Section 4.7.1 on page 112](#)) is reassigned to another slave.

To be able to detect link loss, both the master and the slave shall use a link supervision timer,  $T_{\text{supervision}}$ . Upon reception of a valid packet header with one of the slave's addresses (see [Section 4.2 on page 104](#)) on the physical link, the timer shall be reset. If at any time in **CONNECTION** state, the timer reaches the  $\text{supervisionTO}$  value, the connection shall be considered disconnected. The same link supervision timer shall be used for SCO, eSCO, and ACL logical transports.

The timeout period,  $\text{supervisionTO}$ , is negotiated by the Link Manager. Its value shall be chosen so that the supervision timeout will be longer than hold

and sniff periods. Link supervision of a parked slave shall be done by unparking and re-parking the slave.

### 3.2 LINK SUPERVISION FOR CONNECTIONLESS SLAVE BROADCAST PHYSICAL LINKS

For Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical links, only the slave side monitors the link. To detect link loss, the slave shall use a link supervision timer,  $T_{CSB\_Supervision}$ . Each Connectionless Slave Broadcast slave shall reset the timer upon reception of a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet with a valid packet header. If at any time in connectionless slave broadcast mode of the **CONNECTION** state, the timer reaches the  $CSB\_supervisionTO$  value, the connection shall be considered disconnected.

For each slave, the timeout period,  $CSB\_supervisionTO$ , shall be provided by the Host.

### 3.3 AUTHENTICATED PAYLOAD TIMEOUT FOR ACTIVE LINKS

For active physical links, when encryption is enabled and AES-CCM is used, a device monitors the time between receiving packets from the remote device containing a MIC. To ensure the integrity of the link, an Authenticated Payload timer,  $T_{Authenticated\_Payload}$ , is used. Each device shall reset the timer upon reception of a packet with a valid MIC. If at any time in the CONNECTION state, the timer reaches the  $authenticatedPayloadTO$  value, the Host shall be notified. The timeout period,  $authenticatedPayloadTO$ , shall be provided by the Host.

The device shall reset the timer each time after the Host is notified. The Controller shall reset the timer when the Host writes the  $authenticatedPayloadTO$  value.

## 4 LOGICAL TRANSPORTS

---

### 4.1 GENERAL

Between master and slave(s), different types of logical transports may be established. Six logical transports have been defined:

- Synchronous Connection-Oriented (SCO) logical transport
- Extended Synchronous Connection-Oriented (eSCO) logical transport
- Asynchronous Connection-Oriented (ACL) logical transport
- Active Slave Broadcast (ASB) logical transport
- Parked Slave Broadcast (PSB) logical transport
- Connectionless Slave Broadcast (CSB) logical transport.

The synchronous logical transports are point-to-point logical transports between a master and a single slave in the piconet. The synchronous logical transports typically support time-bounded information like voice or general synchronous data. The master maintains the synchronous logical transports by using reserved slots at regular intervals. In addition to the reserved slots the eSCO logical transport may have a retransmission window after the reserved slots.

The ACL logical transport is also a point-to-point logical transport between the master and a slave. In the slots not reserved for synchronous logical transport(s), the master can establish an ACL logical transport on a per-slot basis to any slave, including the slave(s) already engaged in a synchronous logical transport.

The ASB logical transport is used by a master to communicate with active slaves. The PSB logical transport is used by a master to communicate with parked slaves.

The CSB logical transport is used by a master to send profile broadcast data to zero or more slaves.

### 4.2 LOGICAL TRANSPORT ADDRESS (LT\_ADDR)

Each slave active in a piconet is assigned a primary 3-bit logical transport address (LT\_ADDR). The all-zero LT\_ADDR is reserved for ASB and PSB broadcast messages. The CSB logical transport uses a single non-zero LT\_ADDR. The master does not have an LT\_ADDR. A master's timing relative to the slaves distinguishes it from the slaves. A secondary LT\_ADDR is assigned to the slave for each eSCO logical transport in use in the piconet. Only eSCO traffic (i.e. NULL, POLL, and one of the EV packet types as negotiated at eSCO logical transport setup) may be sent on these LT\_ADDRs. ACL traffic (including LMP) shall always be sent on the primary LT\_ADDR. A slave shall only accept packets with matching primary or secondary LT\_ADDR and broadcast packets. The LT\_ADDR is carried in the packet header (see [Section 6.4 on page 122](#)). The

LT\_ADDR shall only be valid for as long as a slave is in the active mode. As soon as it is disconnected or parked, the slave shall lose all of its LT\_ADDRs.

The primary LT\_ADDR shall be assigned by the master to the slave when the slave is activated. This is either at connection establishment, or role switch, or when the slave is unparked. At connection establishment and at role switch, the primary LT\_ADDR is carried in the **FHS** payload. When unparking, the primary LT\_ADDR is carried in the unpark message.

At any given time an LT\_ADDR (other than the special case of the all-zero LT\_ADDR) is either unused or is used for exactly one of the three purposes of the primary address for a slave, a secondary address for eSCO traffic, or for a CSB logical transport. Therefore allocating a secondary LT\_ADDR for an eSCO logical transport, or reserving an LT\_ADDR for the CSB logical transport, reduces the maximum number of active slaves possible in the piconet.

## 4.3 SYNCHRONOUS LOGICAL TRANSPORTS

The first type of synchronous logical transport, the SCO logical transport, is a symmetric, point-to-point transport between the master and a specific slave. The SCO logical transport reserves slots and can therefore be considered as a circuit-switched connection between the master and the slave. The master may support up to three SCO links to the same slave or to different slaves. A slave may support up to three SCO links from the same master, or two SCO links if the links originate from different masters. SCO packets are never retransmitted.

The second type of synchronous logical transport, the eSCO logical transport, is a point-to-point logical transport between the master and a specific slave. eSCO logical transports may be symmetric or asymmetric. Similar to SCO, eSCO reserves slots and can therefore be considered a circuit-switched connection between the master and the slave. In addition to the reserved slots, eSCO supports a retransmission window immediately following the reserved slots. Together, the reserved slots and the retransmission window form the complete eSCO window.

## 4.4 ASYNCHRONOUS LOGICAL TRANSPORT

In the slots not reserved for synchronous logical transports, the master may exchange packets with any slave on a per-slot basis. The ACL logical transport provides a packet-switched connection between the master and all active slaves participating in the piconet. Both asynchronous and isochronous services are supported. Between a master and a slave only a single ACL logical transport shall exist. For most ACL packets, packet retransmission is applied to assure data integrity.

ACL packets not addressed to a specific slave (LT\_ADDR=0) are considered as broadcast packets and should be received by every slave except slaves with only a CSB logical transport. If there is no data to be sent on the ACL logical transport and no polling is required, no transmission is required.

## 4.5 TRANSMIT/RECEIVE ROUTINES

This section describes the way to use the packets as defined in [Section 6](#) in order to support the traffic on the ACL, SCO and eSCO logical transports. Both single-slave and multi-slave configurations are considered. In addition, the use of buffers for the TX and RX routines are described.

*The TX and RX routines described in sections 4.5.1 and 4.5.2 are informative only.*

### 4.5.1 TX Routine

The TX routine is carried out separately for each asynchronous and synchronous logical transport. [Figure 4.1 on page 106](#) shows the asynchronous and synchronous buffers as used in the TX routine. In this figure, only a single TX asynchronous buffer and a single TX synchronous buffer are shown. In the master, there is a separate TX asynchronous buffer for each slave. In addition there can be one or more TX synchronous buffers for each synchronous slave (different SCO or eSCO logical transports could either reuse the same TX synchronous buffer, or each have their own TX synchronous buffer). Each TX buffer consists of two FIFO registers: one **current** register which can be accessed and read by the Link Controller in order to compose the packets, and one **next** register that can be accessed by the Baseband Resource Manager to load new information. The positions of the switches S1 and S2 determine which register is current and which register is next; the switches are controlled by the Link Controller. The switches at the input and the output of the FIFO registers can never be connected to the same register simultaneously.

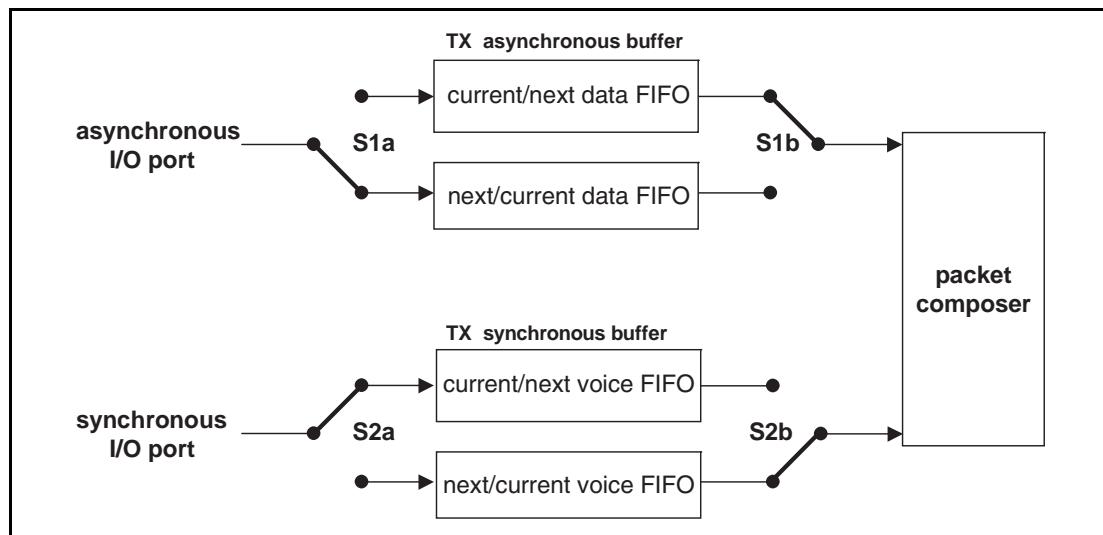


Figure 4.1: Functional diagram of TX buffering

Of the packets common on the ACL and SCO logical transports (**NULL**, **POLL** and **DM1**) only the **DM1** packet carries a payload that is exchanged between the Link Controller and the Link Manager; this common packet makes use of the asynchronous buffer. All ACL packets make use of the asynchronous buf-

fer. All SCO and eSCO packets make use of the synchronous buffer except for the **DV** packet where the synchronous data part is handled by the synchronous buffer and the data part is handled by the asynchronous buffer. In the next sections, the operation for ACL traffic, SCO traffic, eSCO traffic, and combined data-voice traffic on the SCO logical transport are described.

#### 4.5.1.1 ACL traffic

In the case of asynchronous data only the TX ACL buffer in [Figure 4.1 on page 106](#) has to be considered. In this case, only packet types **DM** or **DH** are used, and these can have different lengths. The length is indicated in the payload header. The selection of **DM** or **DH** packets should depend on the quality of the link. See [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.7 on page 262](#).

The default packet type in pure data traffic is **NULL** (see [Section 6.5.1.2 on page 126](#)). This means that, if there is no data to be sent (the data traffic is asynchronous, and therefore pauses occur in which no data is available) or no slaves need to be polled, **NULL** packets are sent instead – in order to send link control information to the other device (e.g. ACK/STOP information for received data). When no link control information is available (either no need to acknowledge and/or no need to stop the RX flow) no packet is sent at all.

The TX routine works as follows. The Baseband Resource Manager loads new data information in the register to which the switch S1a points. Next, it gives a command to the Link Controller, which forces the switch S1 to change (both S1a and S1b switch synchronously). When the payload needs to be sent, the packet composer reads the current register and, depending on the packet type, builds a payload which is appended to the channel access code and the header and is subsequently transmitted. In the response packet (which arrives in the following RX slot if it concerned a master transmission, or may be postponed until some later RX slot if it concerned a slave transmission), the result of the transmission is reported back. In case of an ACK, the switch S1 changes position; if a NAK (explicit or implicit) is received instead, the switch S1 will not change position. In that case, the same payload is retransmitted at the next TX occasion.

As long as the Baseband Resource Manager keeps loading the registers with new information, the Link Controller will automatically transmit the payload; in addition, retransmissions are performed automatically in case of errors. The Link Controller will send **NULL** or nothing when no new data is loaded. If no new data has been loaded in the **next** register, during the last transmission, the packet composer will be pointing to an empty register after the last transmission has been acknowledged and the **next** register becomes the **current** register. If new data is loaded in the **next** register, a **flush** command is required to switch the S1 switch to the proper register. As long as the Baseband Resource Manager keeps loading the data and type registers before each TX slot, the data is automatically processed by the Link Controller since the S1 switch is controlled by the ACK information received in response. However, if the traffic from the Baseband Resource Manager is interrupted once and a default packet is sent instead, a **flush** command is necessary to continue the flow in the Link Controller.

The **flush** command may also be used in case of time-bounded (isochronous) data. In case of a bad link, many retransmissions are necessary. In certain applications, the data is time-bounded: if a payload is retransmitted all the time because of link errors, it may become outdated, and the system might decide to continue with more recent data instead and skip the payload that does not come through. This is accomplished by the **flush** command as well. With the **flush**, the switch S1 is forced to change and the Link Controller is forced to consider the next data payload and overrules the ACK control. Any ACL type of packet can be used to send data or link control information to any other ACL slave.

#### 4.5.1.2 SCO traffic

On the SCO logical transport only **HV** and **DV** packet types are used, See [Section 6.5.2 on page 129](#). The synchronous port may continuously load the **next** register in the synchronous buffer. The S2 switches are changed according to the  $T_{SCO}$  interval. This  $T_{SCO}$  interval is negotiated between the master and the slave at the time the SCO logical transport is established.

For each new SCO slot, the packet composer reads the **current** register after which the S2 switch is changed. If the SCO slot has to be used to send control information with high priority concerning a control packet between the master and the SCO slave, or a control packet between the master and any other slave, the packet composer will discard the SCO information and use the control information instead. This control information shall be sent in a DM1 packet. Data or link control information may also be exchanged between the master and the SCO slave by using the **DV** or **DM1** packets.

#### 4.5.1.3 Mixed data/voice traffic

In [Section 6.5.2 on page 129](#), a **DV** packet has been defined that can support both data and voice simultaneously on a single SCO logical transport. When the TYPE is **DV**, the Link Controller reads the data register to fill the data field and the voice register to fill the voice field. Thereafter, the switch S2 is changed. However, the position of S1 depends on the result of the transmission as on the ACL logical transport: only if an ACK has been received will the S1 switch change its position. In each **DV** packet, the voice information is new, but the data information might be retransmitted if the previous transmission failed. If there is no data to be sent, the SCO logical transport will automatically change from **DV** packet type to the current **HV** packet type used before the mixed data/voice transmission. Note that a **flush** command is necessary when the data stream has been interrupted and new data has arrived.

Combined data-voice transmission can also be accomplished by using a separate ACL logical transport in addition to the SCO logical transport(s) if channel capacity permits this.

#### 4.5.1.4 eSCO Traffic

On the eSCO logical transport only **EV**, **POLL** and **NONE** packet types are used, see [Section 6.5.3 on page 130](#). The synchronous port may continuously load the next register in the synchronous buffer. The S2 switches are changed according to the  $T_{eSCO}$  interval. This  $T_{eSCO}$  interval is negotiated between the master and the slave at the time the eSCO logical transport is established.

For each new eSCO slot, the packet composer reads the current register after which the S2 switch is changed. If the eSCO slot has to be used to send control information with high priority concerning a control packet between the master and the eSCO slave, or an ACL packet between the master and any other slave, the packet composer will discard the eSCO information and use the control information instead. Control information to the eSCO slave is sent in a DM1 packet on the primary LT\_ADDR.

#### 4.5.1.5 Default packet types

On the ACL links, the default type is always **NONE** both for the master and the slave. This means that if no user information needs to be sent, either a **NONE** packet is sent if there is **ACK** or **STOP** information, or no packet is sent at all. The **NONE** packet can be used by the master to allocate the next slave-to-master slot to a certain slave (namely the one addressed). However, the slave is not forced to respond to the **NONE** packet from the master. If the master requires a response, it sends a **POLL** packet.

The SCO and eSCO packet types are negotiated at the LM level when the SCO or eSCO logical transport is established. The agreed packet type is also the default packet type for the reserved SCO or eSCO slots.

### 4.5.2 RX Routine

The RX routine is carried out separately for the ACL logical transport and the synchronous logical transports. However, in contrast to the master TX asynchronous buffer, a single RX buffer is shared among all slaves. For the synchronous buffer, how the different synchronous logical transports are distinguished depends on whether extra synchronous buffers are required or not. [Figure 4.2 on page 110](#) shows the asynchronous and synchronous buffers as used in the RX routine. The RX asynchronous buffer consists of two FIFO registers: one register that can be accessed and loaded by the Link Controller with the payload of the latest RX packet, and one register that can be accessed by the Baseband Resource Manager to read the previous payload. The RX synchronous buffer also consists of two FIFO registers: one register which is filled with newly arrived voice information, and one register which can be read by the voice processing unit.

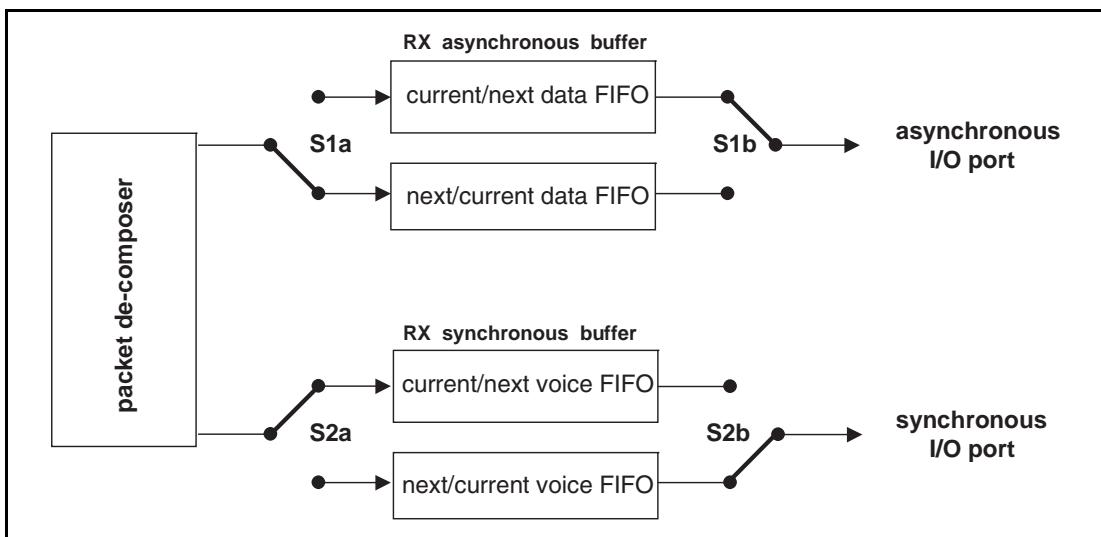


Figure 4.2: Functional diagram of RX buffering

Since the TYPE indication in the header (see [Section 6.4.2 on page 122](#)) of the received packet indicates whether the payload contains data and/or voice, the packet de-composer can automatically direct the traffic to the proper buffers. The switch S1 changes every time the Baseband Resource Manager reads the old register. If the next payload arrives before the RX register is emptied, a STOP indication is included in the packet header of the next TX packet that is returned. The STOP indication is removed again as soon as the RX register is emptied. The SEQN field is checked before a new ACL payload is stored into the asynchronous register (flush indication in LLID and broadcast messages influence the interpretation of the SEQN field see [Section 7.6 on page 150](#)).

The S2 switch is changed every  $T_{SCO}$  or  $T_{eSCO}$  for SCO and eSCO respectively. If, due to errors in the header, no new synchronous payload arrives, the switch still changes. The synchronous data processing unit then processes the synchronous data to account for the missing parts.

#### 4.5.3 Flow Control

Since the RX ACL buffer can be full while a new payload arrives, flow control is required. The header field FLOW in the return TX packet may use STOP or GO in order to control the transmission of new data.

#### 4.5.3.1 Destination control

As long as data cannot be received, a STOP indication shall be transmitted which is automatically inserted by the Link Controller into the header of the return packet. STOP shall be returned as long as the RX ACL buffer is not emptied by the Baseband Resource Manager. When new data can be accepted again, the GO indication shall be returned. GO shall be the default value. All packet types not including data can still be received. Voice communication for example is not affected by the flow control. Although a device cannot receive new information, it may still continue to transmit information: the flow control shall be separate for each direction.

#### 4.5.3.2 Source control

On the reception of a STOP signal, the Link Controller shall automatically switch to the default packet type. The ACL packet transmitted just before the reception of the STOP indication shall be kept until a GO signal is received. It may be retransmitted as soon as a GO indication is received. Only default packets shall be sent as long as the STOP indication is received. When no packet is received, GO shall be assumed implicitly. Note that the default packets contain link control information (in the header) for the receive direction (which may still be open) and may contain synchronous data (**HV** or **EV** packets). When a GO indication is received, the Link Controller may resume transmitting the data that is present in the TX ACL buffers.

In a multi-slave configuration, only the transmission to the slave that issued the STOP signal shall be stalled. This means that the master shall only stop transmission from the TX ACL buffer corresponding to the slave that momentarily cannot accept data.

## 4.6 ACTIVE SLAVE BROADCAST TRANSPORT

The active slave broadcast logical transport is used to transport L2CAP user traffic to all devices in the piconet that are currently connected to the piconet physical channel that is used by the ASB. There is no acknowledgement protocol and the traffic is uni-directional from the piconet master to the slaves. The ASB logical transport may only be used for L2CAP group traffic and shall never be used for L2CAP connection-oriented channels, L2CAP control signaling or LMP control signaling.

The ASB logical transport is unreliable. To improve reliability somewhat each packet is transmitted a number of times. An identical sequence number is used to assist with filtering retransmissions at the slave device.

The ASB logical transport is identified by the reserved, all-zero, LT\_ADDR. Packets on the ASB logical transport may be sent by the master at any time.

## 4.7 PARKED SLAVE BROADCAST TRANSPORT

The parked slave broadcast logical transport is used for communication from the master to the slaves that are parked. The PSB logical transport is more complex than the other logical transports as it consists of a number of phases, each having a different purpose. These phases are the control information phase (used to carry the LMP logical link), the user information phase (used to carry the L2CAP logical link), and the access phase (carrying baseband signaling).

The PSB logical transport is identified by the reserved, all-zero, LT\_ADDR.

### 4.7.1 Parked Member Address (PM\_ADDR)

A slave in the **PARK** state can be identified by its BD\_ADDR or by a dedicated parked member address (PM\_ADDR). This latter address is an 8-bit member address that separates the parked slaves. The PM\_ADDR shall only be valid as long as the slave is parked. When the slave is activated it shall be assigned an LT\_ADDR but shall lose the PM\_ADDR. The PM\_ADDR is assigned to the slave by the master during the parking procedure (see [\[Part C\] Section 4.5.2 on page 323](#)).

The all-zero PM\_ADDR shall be reserved for parked slaves that only use their BD\_ADDR to be unparked.

### 4.7.2 Access Request Address (AR\_ADDR)

The access request address (AR\_ADDR) is used by the parked slave to determine the slave-to-master half slot in the access window where it is allowed to send access request messages, see also [Section 8.9.6 on page 203](#). The AR\_ADDR shall be assigned to the slave when it enters the **PARK** state and shall only be valid as long as the slave is parked. The AR\_ADDR is not necessarily unique; i.e. different parked slaves may have the same AR\_ADDR.

## 4.8 CONNECTIONLESS SLAVE BROADCAST LOGICAL TRANSPORT

The CSB logical transport is used to transport profile broadcast data from a master to multiple slaves. There is no acknowledgement scheme and the traffic is unidirectional. Note: The CSB logical transport is not used for L2CAP connection-oriented channels, L2CAP control signaling, or LMP control signaling.

The CSB logical transport is unreliable. To improve reliability each packet payload may be transmitted a number of times.

## 5 LOGICAL LINKS

---

Six logical links are defined:

- Link Control (LC)
- ACL Control (ACL-C)
- User Asynchronous/Isochronous (ACL-U)
- User Synchronous (SCO-S)
- User Extended Synchronous (eSCO-S)
- Profile Broadcast Data (PBD)

The control logical links LC and ACL-C are used at the link control level and link manager level, respectively. The ACL-U logical link is used to carry either asynchronous or isochronous user information. The SCO-S, and eSCO-S logical links are used to carry synchronous user information. The PBD logical link is used to carry profile broadcast data. The LC logical link is carried in the packet header, all other logical links are carried in the packet payload. The ACL-C and ACL-U logical links are indicated in the logical link ID, LLID, field in the payload header. The SCO-S and eSCO-S logical links are carried by the synchronous logical transports only; the ACL-U link is normally carried by the ACL logical transport; however, it may also be carried by the data in the DV packet on the SCO logical transport. The ACL-C link may be carried either by the SCO or the ACL logical transport. The PBD logical link is carried by the CSB logical transport.

### 5.1 LINK CONTROL LOGICAL LINK (LC)

The LC control logical link shall be mapped onto the packet header. This logical link carries low level link control information like ARQ, flow control, and payload characterization. The LC logical link is carried in every packet except in the **ID** packet which does not have packet header.

### 5.2 ACL CONTROL LOGICAL LINK (ACL-C)

The ACL-C logical link shall carry control information exchanged between the link managers of the master and the slave(s). The ACL-C logical link shall use DM1 or DV packets. DV packets shall only be used on the ACL-C link if the ACL-C message is less than or equal to 9 bytes and an HV1 synchronous logical transport is in use. The ACL-C logical link is indicated by the LLID code 11b in the payload header.

## 5.3 USER ASYNCHRONOUS/ISOCHRONOUS LOGICAL LINK (ACL-U)

The ACL-U logical link shall carry L2CAP asynchronous and isochronous user data. These messages may be transmitted in one or more baseband packets. For fragmented messages, the start packet shall use an LLID code of 10b in the payload header. Remaining continuation packets shall use LLID code 01b. If there is no fragmentation, all packets shall use the LLID start code 10b.

### 5.3.1 Pausing the ACL-U logical link

When paused by LM, the Link Controller transmits the current packet with ACL-U information, if any, until an ACK is received or, optionally, until an explicit NAK is received. While the ACL-U logical link is paused, the Link Controller shall not transmit any packets with ACL-U logical link information.

If the ACL-U was paused after an ACK, the next sequence number shall be used on the next packet. If the ACL-U was paused after a NAK, the same sequence number shall be used on the next packet and the un-acknowledged packet shall be transmitted once the ACL-U logical link is un-paused.

When the ACL-U logical link is un-paused by LM, the Link Controller may resume transmitting packets with ACL-U information.

## 5.4 USER SYNCHRONOUS DATA LOGICAL LINK (SCO-S)

The SCO-S logical link carries transparent synchronous user data. This logical link is carried over the synchronous logical transport SCO.

## 5.5 USER EXTENDED SYNCHRONOUS DATA LOGICAL LINK (eSCO-S)

The eSCO-S logical link also carries transparent synchronous user data. This logical link is carried over the extended synchronous logical transport eSCO.

## 5.6 LOGICAL LINK PRIORITIES

The ACL-C logical link shall have a higher priority than the ACL-U logical link when scheduling traffic on the shared ACL logical transport, except in the case when retransmissions of unacknowledged ACL packets shall be given priority over traffic on the ACL-C logical link. The ACL-C logical link should also have priority over traffic on the SCO-S and eSCO-S logical links but opportunities for interleaving the logical links should be taken. The ACL-C, SCO-S, and eSCO-S logical links should have priority over traffic on the PBD logical link.

## 5.7 PROFILE BROADCAST DATA LOGICAL LINK

The PBD logical link carries profile broadcast data. Messages shall not be fragmented and shall always use LLID start code 10b.

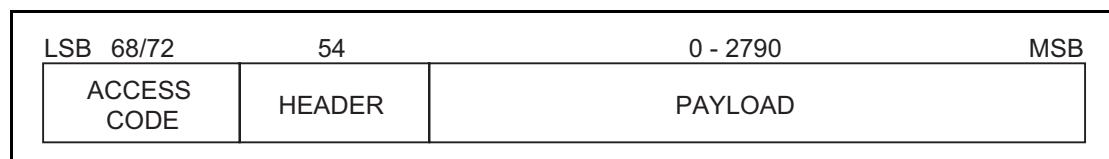
## 6 PACKETS

Bluetooth devices shall use the packets as defined in the following sections.

### 6.1 GENERAL FORMAT

#### 6.1.1 Basic Rate

The general packet format of Basic Rate packets is shown in [Figure 6.1 on page 115](#). Each packet consists of 3 entities: the access code, the header, and the payload. In the figure, the number of bits per entity is indicated.



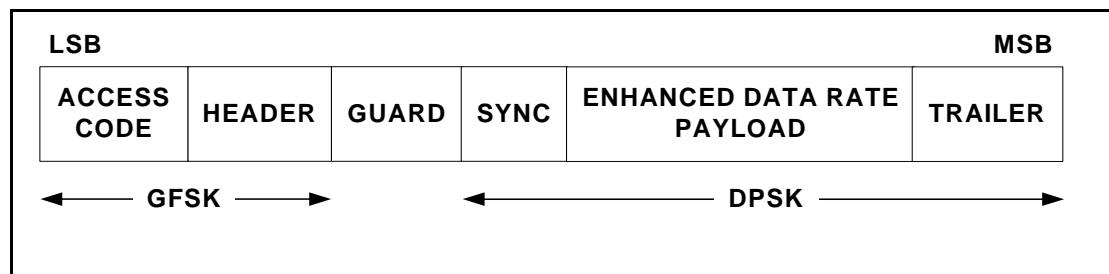
*Figure 6.1: General Basic Rate packet format*

The access code is 72 or 68 bits and the header is 54 bits. The payload ranges from zero to a maximum of 2790 bits. Different packet types have been defined. A packet may consist of:

- the shortened access code only (see ID packet on page 116)
- the access code and the packet header
- the access code, the packet header and the payload.

#### 6.1.2 Enhanced Data Rate

The general format of Enhanced Data Rate packets is shown in [Figure 6.2 on page 115](#). The access code and packet header are identical in format and modulation to Basic Rate packets. Enhanced Data Rate packets have a guard time and synchronization sequence following the packet header. Following the payload are two trailer symbols. The guard time, synchronization sequence and trailer are defined in section 6.6.



*Figure 6.2: General enhanced data rate packet format*

## 6.2 BIT ORDERING

The bit ordering when defining packets and messages in the *Baseband Specification*, follows the *LittleEndian* format. The following rules apply:

- The *least significant bit* (LSB) corresponds to  $b_0$ ;
- The LSB is the first bit sent over the air;
- In illustrations, the LSB is shown on the left side;

Furthermore, data fields generated internally at baseband level, such as the packet header fields and payload header length, shall be transmitted with the LSB first. For instance, a 3-bit parameter X=3 is sent as:

$$b_0 b_1 b_2 = 110$$

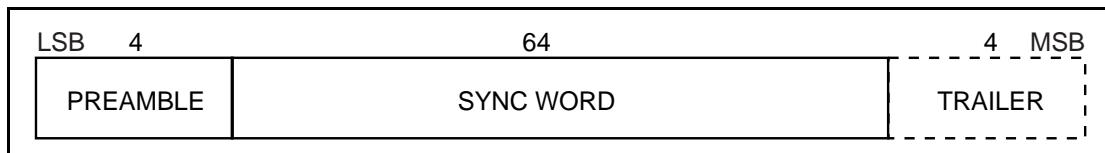
over the air where 1 is sent first and 0 is sent last.

## 6.3 ACCESS CODE

Every packet starts with an access code. If a packet header follows, the access code is 72 bits long, otherwise the access code is 68 bits long and is known as a shortened access code. The shortened access code does not contain a trailer. This access code is used for synchronization, DC offset compensation and identification. The access code identifies all packets exchanged on a physical channel: all packets sent in the same physical channel are preceded by the same access code. In the receiver of the device, a sliding correlator correlates against the access code and triggers when a threshold is exceeded. This trigger signal is used to determine the receive timing.

The shortened access code is used in paging, inquiry, and park. In this case, the access code itself is used as a signaling message and neither a header nor a payload is present.

The access code consists of a preamble, a sync word, and possibly a trailer, see [Figure 6.3 on page 117](#). For details see [Section 6.3.1 on page 117](#).



*Figure 6.3: Access code format*

### 6.3.1 Access Code Types

The different access code types use different Lower Address Parts (LAPs) to construct the sync word. The LAP field of the BD\_ADDR is explained in [Section 1.2 on page 69](#). A summary of the different access code types is in [Table 6.1 on page 117](#).

Code type	LAP	Code length	Comments
CAC	Master	72	
DAC	Paged device	68/72 <sup>1</sup>	See also <a href="#">Section 1.3 on page 70</a>
GIAC	Reserved	68/72 <sup>1</sup>	
DIAC	Dedicated	68/72 <sup>1</sup>	

*Table 6.1: Summary of access code types*

1. length 72 is only used in combination with FHS packets

The CAC consists of a **preamble**, **sync word**, and **trailer** and its total length is 72 bits. When used as self-contained messages without a header, the DAC and IAC do not include the trailer bits and are of length 68 bits.

### 6.3.2 Preamble

The preamble is a fixed zero-one pattern of 4 symbols used to facilitate DC compensation. The sequence is either 1010 or 0101, depending on whether the LSB of the following sync word is 1 or 0, respectively. The preamble is shown in [Figure 6.4 on page 118](#).



*Figure 6.4: Preamble*

### 6.3.3 Sync Word

The sync word is a 64-bit code word derived from a 24 bit address (LAP); for the CAC the master's LAP is used; for the GIAC and the DIAC, reserved, dedicated LAPs are used; for the DAC, the slave LAP is used. The construction guarantees large Hamming distance between sync words based on different LAPs. In addition, the good auto correlation properties of the sync word improve timing acquisition.

#### 6.3.3.1 Synchronization word definition

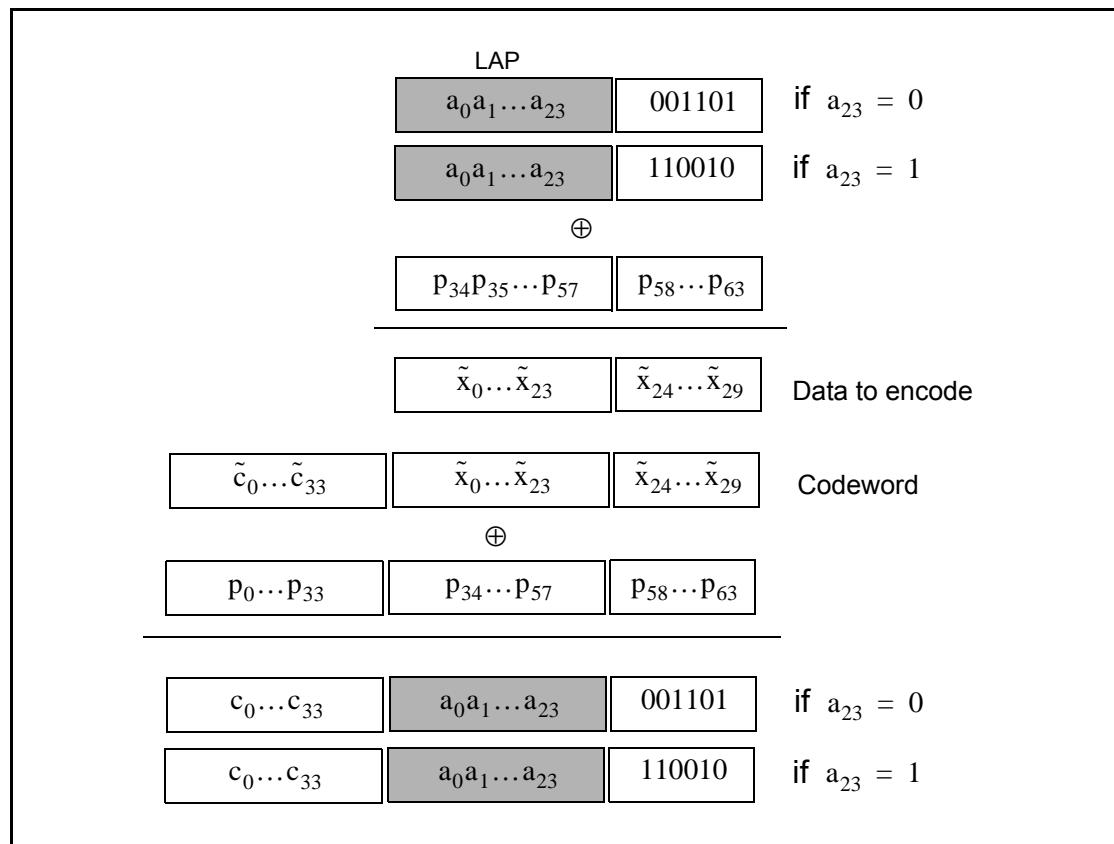
The sync words are based on a (64,30) expurgated block code with an overlay (bit-wise XOR) of a 64 bit full length pseudo-random noise (PN) sequence. The expurgated code guarantees large Hamming distance ( $d_{min} = 14$ ) between sync words based on different addresses. The PN sequence improves the auto correlation properties of the access code. The following steps describe how the sync word shall be generated:

1. Generate information sequence;
2. XOR this with the “information covering” part of the PN overlay sequence;
3. Generate the codeword;
4. XOR the codeword with all 64 bits of the PN overlay sequence;

The information sequence is generated by appending 6 bits to the 24 bit LAP (step 1). The appended bits are 001101 if the MSB of the LAP equals 0. If the MSB of the LAP is 1 the appended bits are 110010. The LAP MSB together with the appended bits constitute a length-seven Barker sequence. The purpose of including a Barker sequence is to further improve the auto correlation properties. In step 2 the information is pre-scrambled by XORing it with the bits  $p_{34} \dots p_{63}$  of the PN sequence (defined in [Section 6.3.3.2 on page 121](#)). After generating the codeword (step 3), the complete PN sequence is XORed to the

codeword (step 4). This step de-scrambles the information part of the codeword. At the same time the parity bits of the codeword are scrambled. Consequently, the original LAP and Barker sequence are ensured a role as a part of the access code sync word, and the cyclic properties of the underlying code is removed. The principle is depicted in [Figure 6.5 on page 119](#).

In the following discussion, binary sequences will be denoted by their corresponding D-transform (in which  $D^i$  represents a delay of  $i$  time units). Let  $p'(D) = p'_0 + p'_1D + \dots + p'_{62}D^{62}$  be the 63 bit PN sequence, where  $p'_0$  is the first bit (LSB) leaving the PRNG (see [Figure 6.6 on page 121](#)), and,  $p'_{62}$  is the last bit (MSB). To obtain 64 bits, an extra zero is appended at the *end* of this sequence (thus,  $p'(D)$  is unchanged). For notational convenience, the reciprocal of this extended polynomial,  $p(D) = D^{63}p'(1/D)$ , will be used in the following discussion. This is the sequence  $p'(D)$  in reverse order. We denote the 24 bit lower address part (LAP) of the Bluetooth device address by  $a(D) = a_0 + a_1D + \dots + a_{23}D^{23}$  ( $a_0$  is the LSB of the Bluetooth device address).



*Figure 6.5: Construction of the sync word*

The (64,30) block code generator polynomial is denoted  $g(D) = (1 + D)g'(D)$ , where  $g'(D)$  is the generator polynomial 157464165547 (octal notation) of a primitive binary (63,30) BCH code. Thus, in octal notation  $g(D)$  is

$$g(D) = 260534236651, \quad (\text{EQ } 9)$$

the left-most bit corresponds to the high-order ( $g_{34}$ ) coefficient. The DC-free four bit sequences 0101 and 1010 can be written

$$\begin{cases} F_0(D) = D + D^3, \\ F_1(D) = 1 + D^2, \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 10)$$

respectively. Furthermore,

$$\begin{cases} B_0(D) = D^2 + D^3 + D^5, \\ B_1(D) = 1 + D + D^4, \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 11)$$

which are used to create the length seven Barker sequences. Then, the access code shall be generated by the following procedure:

1. Format the 30 information bits to encode:

$$x(D) = a(D) + D^{24}B_{a_{23}}(D).$$

2. Add the information covering part of the PN overlay sequence:

$$\tilde{x}(D) = x(D) + p_{34} + p_{35}D + \dots + p_{63}D^{29}.$$

3. Generate parity bits of the (64,30) expurgated block code:<sup>1</sup>

$$\tilde{c}(D) = D^{34}\tilde{x}(D) \bmod g(D).$$

4. Create the codeword:

$$\tilde{s}(D) = D^{34}\tilde{x}(D) + \tilde{c}(D).$$

5. Add the PN sequence:

$$s(D) = \tilde{s}(D) + p(D).$$

6. Append the (DC-free) preamble and trailer:

$$y(D) = F_{c_0}(D) + D^4s(D) + D^{68}F_{a_{23}}(D).$$

---

1.  $x(D) \bmod y(D)$  denotes the remainder when  $x(D)$  is divided by  $y(D)$ .

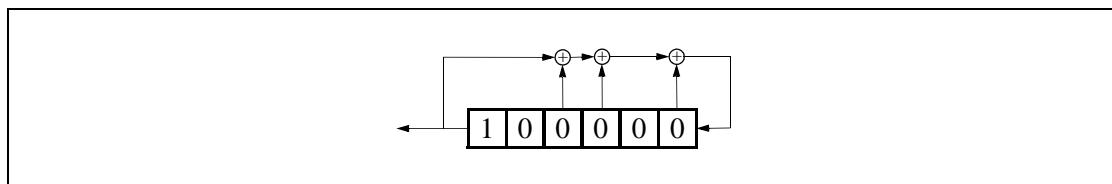
### 6.3.3.2 Pseudo-random noise sequence generation

To generate the PN sequence the primitive polynomial

$h(D) = 1 + D + D^3 + D^4 + D^6$  shall be used. The LFSR and its starting state are shown in [Figure 6.6 on page 121](#). The PN sequence generated (including the extra terminating zero) becomes (hexadecimal notation) 83848D96BBCC54FC. The LFSR output starts with the left-most bit of this PN sequence. This corresponds to  $p'(D)$  of the previous section. Thus, using the reciprocal  $p(D)$  as overlay gives the 64 bit sequence:

$$\mathbf{p} = 3F2A33DD69B121C1, \quad (\text{EQ 12})$$

where the left-most bit is  $p_0 = 0$  (there are two initial zeros in the binary representation of the hexadecimal digit 3), and  $p_{63} = 1$  is the right-most bit.



*Figure 6.6: LFSR and the starting state to generate  $p'(D)$*

### 6.3.4 Trailer

The trailer is appended to the sync word as soon as the packet header follows the access code. This is typically the case with the CAC, but the trailer is also used in the DAC and IAC when these codes are used in FHS packets exchanged during page response and inquiry response.

The trailer is a fixed zero-one pattern of four symbols. The trailer together with the three MSBs of the syncword form a 7-bit pattern of alternating ones and zeroes which can be used for extended DC compensation. The trailer sequence is either 1010 or 0101 depending on whether the MSB of the sync word is 0 or 1, respectively. The choice of trailer is illustrated in [Figure 6.7 on page 121](#).



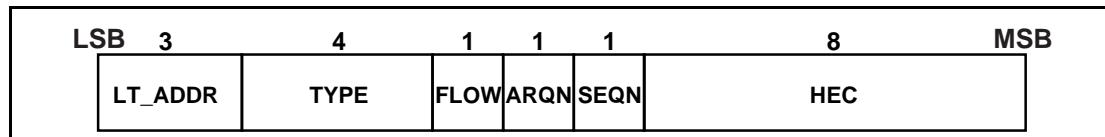
*Figure 6.7: Trailer in CAC when MSB of sync word is 0 (a), and when MSB of sync word is 1 (b)*

## 6.4 PACKET HEADER

The header contains link control (LC) information and consists of 6 fields:

- LT\_ADDR: 3-bit logical transport address
- TYPE: 4-bit type code
- FLOW: 1-bit flow control
- ARQN: 1-bit acknowledge indication
- SEQN: 1-bit sequence number
- HEC: 8-bit header error check

The total header, including the HEC, consists of 18 bits, see [Figure 6.8 on page 122](#), and is encoded with a rate 1/3 FEC (not shown but described in [Section 7.4 on page 148](#)) resulting in a 54-bit header. The LT\_ADDR and TYPE fields shall be sent LSB first.



*Figure 6.8: Header format*

### 6.4.1 LT\_ADDR

The 3-bit LT\_ADDR field contains the logical transport address for the packet (see [Section 4.2 on page 104](#)). This field indicates the destination slave (or slaves in the case of a broadcast) for a packet in a master-to-slave transmission slot and indicates the source slave for a slave-to-master transmission slot.

### 6.4.2 TYPE

Sixteen different types of packets can be distinguished. The 4-bit TYPE code specifies which packet type is used. The interpretation of the TYPE code depends on the logical transport address in the packet. First, it shall be determined whether the packet is sent on an SCO logical transport, an eSCO logical transport, an ACL logical transport, or a CSB logical transport. Second, it shall be determined whether Enhanced Data Rate has been enabled for the logical transport (ACL or eSCO) indicated by LT\_ADDR. It can then be determined which type of SCO packet, eSCO packet, or ACL packet has been received. The TYPE code determines how many slots the current packet will occupy (see the slot occupancy column in [Table 6.2 on page 125](#)). This allows the non-addressed receivers to refrain from listening to the channel for the duration of the remaining slots. In [Section 6.5 on page 124](#), each packet type is described in more detail.

### 6.4.3 FLOW

The FLOW bit is used for flow control of packets over the ACL logical transport. When the RX buffer for the ACL logical transport in the recipient is full, a STOP indication (FLOW=0) shall be returned to stop the other device from transmitting data temporarily. The STOP signal only affects ACL packets. Packets including only link control information (ID, POLL, and NULL packets), SCO packets or eSCO packets can still be received. When the RX buffer can accept data, a GO indication (FLOW=1) shall be returned. When no packet is received, or the received header is in error, a GO shall be assumed implicitly. In this case, the slave can receive a new packet with CRC although its RX buffer is still not emptied. The slave shall then return a NAK in response to this packet even if the packet passed the CRC check.

The FLOW bit is not used on the eSCO logical transport and shall be set to one on transmission and ignored upon receipt. The FLOW bit is not used on the CSB logical transport and shall be set to zero on transmission and ignored upon receipt.

### 6.4.4 ARQN

The 1-bit acknowledgment indication ARQN is used to inform the source of a successful transfer of payload data with CRC, and can be positive acknowledge ACK or negative acknowledge NAK. See [Section 7.6 on page 150](#) for initialization and usage of this bit.

The ARQN bit is not used on the CSB logical transport and shall be set to zero on transmission and ignored upon receipt.

### 6.4.5 SEQN

The SEQN bit provides a sequential numbering scheme to order the data packet stream. See [Section 7.6.2 on page 153](#) for initialization and usage of the SEQN bit. For active and parked slave broadcast packets, a modified sequencing method is used, see [Section 7.6.5 on page 157](#).

The SEQN bit is not used on the CSB logical transport and shall be set to zero on transmission and ignored upon receipt.

### 6.4.6 HEC

Each header has a header-error-check to check the header integrity. The HEC is an 8-bit word (generation of the HEC is specified in [Section 7.1.1 on page 144](#)). Before generating the HEC, the HEC generator is initialized with an 8-bit value. For FHS packets sent in **master response** substate, the slave upper address part (UAP) shall be used. For FHS packets and extended inquiry response packets sent in **inquiry response**, the default check initialization (DCI, see [Section 1.2.1 on page 69](#)) shall be used. In all other cases, the UAP of the master device shall be used.

After the initialization, a HEC shall be calculated for the 10 header bits. Before checking the HEC, the receiver shall initialize the HEC check circuitry with the proper 8-bit UAP (or DCI). If the HEC does not check, the entire packet shall be discarded. More information can be found in [Section 7.1 on page 144](#).

## 6.5 PACKET TYPES

The packets used on the piconet are related to the logical transports on which they are used. Four logical transports with distinct packet types are defined (see [Section 4 on page 104](#)):

- SCO logical transport
- eSCO logical transport
- ACL logical transport
- CSB logical transport.

To indicate the different packets on a logical transport, the 4-bit TYPE code is used. The packet types are divided into four segments. The first segment is reserved for control packets. All control packets occupy a single time slot. The second segment is reserved for packets occupying a single time slot. The third segment is reserved for packets occupying three time slots. The fourth segment is reserved for packets occupying five time slots. The slot occupancy is reflected in the segmentation and can directly be derived from the type code. [Table 6.2 on page 125](#) summarizes the packets defined for the SCO, eSCO, ACL, and CSB logical transport types.

All packet types with a payload shall use GFSK modulation unless specified otherwise in the following sections.

ACL logical transports Enhanced Data Rate packet types are explicitly selected via LMP using the *packet\_type\_table* (ptt) parameter. eSCO Enhanced Data Rate packet types are selected when the eSCO logical transport is established. Enhanced Data Rate packet types for the CSB logical transport are selected when the CSB logical transport is established.

Segment	TYPE code $b_3b_2b_1b_0$	Slot occupancy	SCO logical transport (1 Mbps)	eSCO logical transport (2-3 Mbps)	ACL logical transport (1 Mbps) ptt=0	ACL logical transport (2-3 Mbps) ptt=1	CSB logical transport (1 Mbps)	CSB logical transport (2-3 Mbps)
1	0000	1	NULL	NULL	NULL	NULL	NULL	NULL
	0001	1	POLL	POLL	POLL	POLL	reserved	reserved
	0010	1	FHS	reserved	FHS	FHS	reserved	reserved
	0011	1	DM1	reserved	DM1	DM1	DM1	DM1
2	0100	1	undefined	undefined	DH1	2-DH1	DH1	2-DH1
	0101	1	HV1	undefined	undefined	undefined	undefined	undefined
	0110	1	HV2	undefined	2-EV3	undefined	undefined	undefined
	0111	1	HV3	EV3	3-EV3	undefined	undefined	undefined
3	1000	1	DV	undefined	undefined	3-DH1	undefined	3-DH1
	1001	1	undefined	undefined	AUX1	AUX1	undefined	undefined
	1010	3	undefined	undefined	DM3	2-DH3	DM3	2-DH3
	1011	3	undefined	undefined	DH3	3-DH3	DH3	3-DH3
4	1100	3	undefined	EV4	2-EV5	undefined	undefined	undefined
	1101	3	undefined	EV5	3-EV5	undefined	undefined	undefined
	1110	5	undefined	undefined	DM5	2-DH5	DM5	2-DH5
	1111	5	undefined	undefined	DH5	3-DH5	DH5	3-DH5

Table 6.2: Packets defined for synchronous, asynchronous, and CSB logical transport types

## 6.5.1 Common Packet Types

There are five common kinds of packets. In addition to the types listed in segment 1 of the previous table, the ID packet is also a common packet type but is not listed in segment 1 because it does not have a packet header.

### 6.5.1.1 ID Packet

The identity or ID packet consists of the device access code (DAC) or inquiry access code (IAC). It has a fixed length of 68 bits. It is a very robust packet since the receiver uses a bit correlator to match the received packet to the known bit sequence of the ID packet.

### 6.5.1.2 NULL Packet

The NULL packet has no payload and consists of the channel access code and packet header only. Its total (fixed) length is 126 bits. The NULL packet may be used to return link information to the source regarding the success of the previous transmission (ARQN), or the status of the RX buffer (FLOW). The NULL packet may not have to be acknowledged.

### 6.5.1.3 POLL Packet

The POLL packet is very similar to the NULL packet. It does not have a payload. In contrast to the NULL packet, it requires a confirmation from the recipient. It is not a part of the ARQ scheme. The POLL packet does not affect the ARQN and SEQN fields. Upon reception of a POLL packet the slave shall respond with a packet even when the slave does not have any information to send unless the slave has scatternet commitments in that timeslot. This return packet is an implicit acknowledgement of the POLL packet. This packet can be used by the master in a piconet to poll the slaves. Slaves shall not transmit the POLL packet. POLL packets shall not be sent on a Connectionless Slave Broadcast logical transport.

### 6.5.1.4 FHS Packet

The FHS packet is a special control packet containing, among other things, the Bluetooth device address and the clock of the sender. The payload contains 144 information bits plus a 16-bit CRC code. The payload is coded with a rate 2/3 FEC with a gross payload length of 240 bits.

[Figure 6.9 on page 127](#) illustrates the format and contents of the FHS payload. The FHS packet is used in page master response, inquiry response and in role switch.

The FHS packet is not encrypted. No payload header or MIC is present.

The FHS packet contains real-time clock information. This clock information shall be updated before each retransmission. The retransmission of the FHS payload is different than retransmissions of ordinary data payloads where the same payload is used for each retransmission. The FHS packet is used for frequency hop synchronization before the piconet channel has been established, or when an existing piconet changes to a new piconet. However, the FHS

packet is not used by Connectionless Slave Broadcast slaves for frequency hop synchronization with Connectionless Slave Broadcast masters.

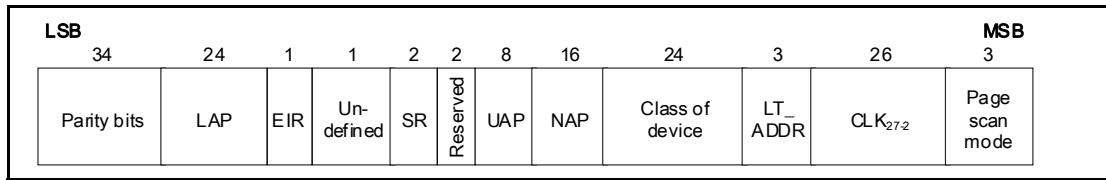


Figure 6.9: Format of the FHS payload

Each field is described in more detail below:

<b>Parity bits</b>	This 34-bit field contains the parity bits that form the first part of the sync word of the access code of the device that sends the FHS packet. These bits are derived from the LAP as described in <a href="#">Section 1.2 on page 69</a> .
<b>LAP</b>	This 24-bit field shall contain the lower address part of the device that sends the FHS packet.
<b>EIR</b>	This bit shall indicate that an extended inquiry response packet may follow. See <a href="#">Section 8.4.3 on page 172</a> .
<b>Undefined</b>	This 1-bit field is reserved for future use and shall be set to zero.
<b>SR</b>	This 2-bit field is the scan repetition field and indicates the interval between two consecutive page scan windows, see also <a href="#">Table 6.4</a> and <a href="#">Table 8.1 on page 162</a>
<b>Reserved</b>	This 2-bit field shall be set to 10.
<b>UAP</b>	This 8-bit field shall contain the upper address part of the device that sends the FHS packet.
<b>NAP</b>	This 16-bit field shall contain the non-significant address part of the device that sends the FHS packet (see also <a href="#">Section 1.2 on page 69</a> for LAP, UAP, and NAP).
<b>Class of device</b>	This 24-bit field shall contain the class of device of the device that sends the FHS packet. The field is defined in Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> .
<b>LT_ADDR</b>	This 3-bit field shall contain the logical transport address the recipient shall use if the FHS packet is used at connection setup or role switch. A slave responding to a master or a device responding to an inquiry request message shall include an all-zero LT_ADDR field if it sends the FHS packet.
<b>CLK<sub>27-2</sub></b>	This 26-bit field shall contain the value of the native clock of the device that sends the FHS packet, sampled at the beginning of the transmission of the access code of this FHS packet. This clock value has a resolution of 1.25ms (two-slot interval). For each new transmission, this field is updated so that it accurately reflects the real-time clock value.
<b>Page scan mode</b>	This 3-bit field shall indicate which scan mode is used by default by the sender of the FHS packet. The interpretation of the page scan mode is illustrated in <a href="#">Table 6.5</a> .

Table 6.3: Description of the FHS payload

The device sending the FHS shall set the SR bits according to [Table 6.4](#).

SR bit format $b_1b_0$	SR mode
00	R0
01	R1
10	R2
11	reserved

*Table 6.4: Contents of SR field*

The device sending the FHS shall set the page scan mode bits according to [Table 6.5](#).

Bit format $b_2b_1b_0$	Page scan mode
000	Mandatory scan mode
001	Reserved for future use
010	Reserved for future use
011	Reserved for future use
100	Reserved for future use
101	Reserved for future use
110	Reserved for future use
111	Reserved for future use

*Table 6.5: Contents of page scan mode field*

The LAP, UAP, and NAP together form the 48-bit Bluetooth Device Address of the device that sends the FHS packet. Using the parity bits and the LAP, the recipient can directly construct the channel access code of the sender of the FHS packet.

When initializing the HEC and CRC for the FHS packet of inquiry response, the UAP shall be the DCI.

#### 6.5.1.5 DM1 Packet

DM1 is part of segment 1 in order to support control messages in any logical transport that allows the DM1 packet (see [Table 6.2 on page 125](#)). However, it may also carry regular user data. Since the DM1 packet can be regarded as an ACL packet, it will be discussed in [Section 6.5.4 on page 132](#).

## 6.5.2 SCO Packets

HV and DV packets are used on the synchronous SCO logical transport. The HV packets do not include a MIC or CRC and shall not be retransmitted. DV packets include a CRC on the data section, but not on the synchronous data section. DV packets do not include a MIC. The data section of DV packets shall be retransmitted. SCO packets may be routed to the synchronous I/O port. Four packets are allowed on the SCO logical transport: HV1, HV2, HV3 and DV. These packets are typically used for 64kb/s speech transmission but may be used for transparent synchronous data.

SCO packets shall only be encrypted with E0 when E0 is enabled. SCO packets shall not be sent when AES-CCM Encryption is enabled.

### 6.5.2.1 HV1 Packet

The **HV1** packet has 10 information bytes. The bytes are protected with a rate 1/3 FEC. No MIC is present. No CRC is present. The payload length is fixed at 240 bits. There is no payload header present.

### 6.5.2.2 HV2 Packet

The **HV2** packet has 20 information bytes. The bytes are protected with a rate 2/3 FEC. No MIC is present. No CRC is present. The payload length is fixed at 240 bits. There is no payload header present.

### 6.5.2.3 HV3 Packet

The **HV3** packet has 30 information bytes. The bytes are not protected by FEC. No MIC is present. No CRC is present. The payload length is fixed at 240 bits. There is no payload header present.

### 6.5.2.4 DV Packet

The DV packet is a combined data - voice packet. The DV packet shall only be used in place of an HV1 packet. The payload is divided into a voice field of 80 bits and a data field containing up to 150 bits, see [Figure 6.10](#). The voice field is not protected by FEC. The data field has between 1 and 10 information bytes (including the 1-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. No MIC is present. The data field (including the CRC) is encoded with a rate 2/3 FEC. Since the DV packet has to be sent at regular intervals due to its synchronous contents, it is listed under the SCO packet types. The voice and data fields shall be treated separately. The voice field shall be handled in the same way as normal SCO data and shall never be retransmitted; that is, the voice field is always new. The data field is checked for errors and shall be retransmitted if necessary. When the asynchronous data field in the DV packet has not been acknowledged before the SCO logical transport is terminated, the asynchronous data field shall be retransmitted in a DM1 packet.

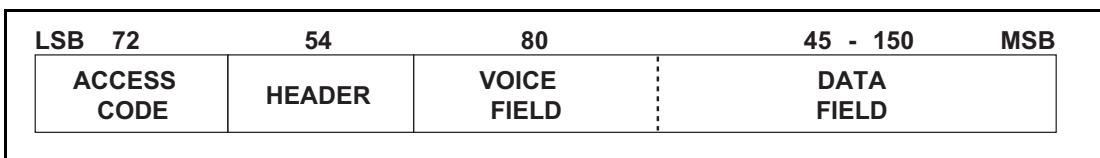


Figure 6.10: DV packet format

### 6.5.3 eSCO Packets

EV packets are used on the synchronous eSCO logical transport. The packets include a CRC and retransmission may be applied if no acknowledgement of proper reception is received within the retransmission window. No MIC is present. eSCO packets may be routed to the synchronous I/O port. Three eSCO packet types (EV3, EV4, EV5) are defined for Basic Rate operation and four additional eSCO packet types (2-EV3, 3-EV3, 2-EV5, 3-EV5) for Enhanced Data Rate operation. The eSCO packets may be used for 64kb/s speech transmission as well as transparent data at 64kb/s and other rates.

#### 6.5.3.1 EV3 Packet

The **EV3** packet has between 1 and 30 information bytes plus a 16-bit CRC code. No MIC is present. The bytes are not protected by FEC. The EV3 packet may cover up to a single time slot. There is no payload header present. The payload length is set during the LMP eSCO setup and remains fixed until the link is removed or re-negotiated.

#### 6.5.3.2 EV4 Packet

The **EV4** packet has between 1 and 120 information bytes plus a 16-bit CRC code. No MIC is present. The EV4 packet may cover up to three time slots. The information plus CRC bits are coded with a rate 2/3 FEC. There is no payload header present. The payload length is set during the LMP eSCO setup and remains fixed until the link is removed or re-negotiated.

#### 6.5.3.3 EV5 Packet

The **EV5** packet has between 1 and 180 information bytes plus a 16-bit CRC code. No MIC is present. The bytes are not protected by FEC. The EV5 packet may cover up to three time slots. There is no payload header present. The payload length is set during the LMP eSCO setup and remains fixed until the link is removed or re-negotiated.

#### 6.5.3.4 2-EV3 Packet

The **2-EV3** packet is similar to the EV3 packet except that the payload is modulated using  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK. It has between 1 and 60 information bytes plus a 16-bit CRC code. No MIC is present. The bytes are not protected by FEC. The 2-EV3 packet covers a single time slot. There is no payload header present. The payload length is set during the LMP eSCO setup and remains fixed until the link is removed or re-negotiated.

#### 6.5.3.5 2-EV5 Packet

The **2-EV5** packet is similar to the EV5 packet except that the payload is modulated using  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK. It has between 1 and 360 information bytes plus a 16-bit CRC code. No MIC is present. The bytes are not protected by FEC. The 2-EV5 packet may cover up to three time slots. There is no payload header present. The payload length is set during the LMP eSCO setup and remains fixed until the link is removed or re-negotiated.

#### 6.5.3.6 3-EV3 Packet

The **3-EV3** packet is similar to the EV3 packet except that the payload is modulated using 8DPSK. It has between 1 and 90 information bytes plus a 16-bit CRC code. No MIC is present. The bytes are not protected by FEC. The 3-EV3 packet covers a single time slot. There is no payload header present. The payload length is set during the LMP eSCO setup and remains fixed until the link is removed or re-negotiated.

#### 6.5.3.7 3-EV5 Packet

The **3-EV5** packet is similar to the EV5 packet except that the payload is modulated using 8DPSK. It has between 1 and 540 information bytes plus a 16-bit CRC code. No MIC is present. The bytes are not protected by FEC. The 3-EV5 packet may cover up to three time slots. There is no payload header present. The payload length is set during the LMP eSCO setup and remains fixed until the link is removed or re-negotiated.

## 6.5.4 ACL Packets

ACL packets are used on the asynchronous logical transport and the CSB logical transport. The information carried may be user data for either logical transport or control data for the asynchronous logical transport.

Seven packet types are defined for Basic Rate operation: DM1, DH1, DM3, DH3, DM5, DH5 and AUX1. Six additional packets are defined for Enhanced Data Rate operation: 2-DH1, 3-DH1, 2-DH3, 3-DH3, 2-DH5 and 3-DH5.

The length indicator in the payload header specifies the number of user bytes (excluding payload header, MIC and the CRC code).

### 6.5.4.1 DM1 Packet

The DM1 packet carries data information only. The payload has between 1 and 18 information bytes (including the 1-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The DM1 packet occupies a single time slot. The information bits, MIC bits (when present), plus CRC bits are coded with a rate 2/3 FEC. The payload header in the DM1 packet is 1 byte long, see [Figure 6.12 on page 137](#).

### 6.5.4.2 DH1 Packet

This packet is similar to the DM1 packet, except that the information in the payload is not FEC encoded. As a result, the DH1 packet has between 1 and 28 information bytes (including the 1-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The DH1 packet occupies a single time slot.

### 6.5.4.3 DM3 Packet

The DM3 packet may occupy up to three time slots. The payload has between 2 and 123 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The information bits, MIC bits (when present), plus CRC bits are coded with a rate 2/3 FEC. The payload header in the DM3 packet is 2 bytes long, see [Figure 6.13 on page 137](#).

### 6.5.4.4 DH3 Packet

This packet is similar to the DM3 packet, except that the information in the payload is not FEC encoded. As a result, the DH3 packet has between 2 and 185 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The DH3 packet may occupy up to three time slots.

#### 6.5.4.5 DM5 Packet

The DM5 packet may occupy up to five time slots. The payload has between 2 and 226 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The payload header in the DM5 packet is 2 bytes long. The information bits, MIC bits (when present), plus CRC bits are coded with a rate 2/3 FEC.

#### 6.5.4.6 DH5 Packet

This packet is similar to the DM5 packet, except that the information in the payload is not FEC encoded. As a result, the DH5 packet has between 2 and 341 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The DH5 packet may occupy up to five time slots.

#### 6.5.4.7 AUX1 Packet

This packet resembles a DH1 packet but has no MIC or CRC code. The AUX1 packet has between 1 and 30 information bytes (including the 1-byte payload header). The AUX1 packet occupies a single time slot. The AUX1 packet shall not be used for the ACL-U, ACL-C or PBD logical links. An AUX1 packet may be discarded. The AUX1 packet shall only be encrypted when E0 encryption is enabled. The AUX1 packet shall not be used when AES-CCM encryption is enabled.

#### 6.5.4.8 2-DH1 packet

This packet is similar to the DH1 packet except that the payload is modulated using  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK. The 2-DH1 packet has between 2 and 56 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The 2-DH1 packet occupies a single time slot.

#### 6.5.4.9 2-DH3 packet

This packet is similar to the DH3 packet except that the payload is modulated using  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK. The 2-DH3 packet has between 2 and 369 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The 2-DH3 packet may occupy up to three time slots.

#### 6.5.4.10 2-DH5 packet

This packet is similar to the DH5 packet except that the payload is modulated using  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK. The 2-DH5 packet has between 2 and 681 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The 2-DH5 packet may occupy up to five time slots.

#### 6.5.4.11 3-DH1 packet

This packet is similar to the DH1 packet except that the payload is modulated using 8DPSK. The 3-DH1 packet has between 2 and 85 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The 3-DH1 packet occupies a single time slot.

#### 6.5.4.12 3-DH3 packet

This packet is similar to the DH3 packet except that the payload is modulated using 8DPSK. The 3-DH3 packet has between 2 and 554 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The 3-DH3 packet may occupy up to three time slots.

#### 6.5.4.13 3-DH5 packet

This packet is similar to the DH5 packet except that the payload is modulated using 8DPSK. The 3-DH5 packet has between 2 and 1023 information bytes (including the 2-byte payload header) plus a 16-bit CRC code. A 32-bit MIC is present only when encryption with AES-CCM is enabled. The 3-DH5 packet may occupy up to five time slots.

## 6.6 PAYLOAD FORMAT

In the payload, two fields are distinguished: the synchronous data field and the asynchronous data field. The ACL packets only have the asynchronous data field and the SCO and eSCO packets only have the synchronous data field – with the exception of the DV packets which have both.

### 6.6.1 Synchronous Data Field

In SCO, which is only supported in Basic Rate mode, the synchronous data field has a fixed length and consists only of the synchronous data body portion. No payload header is present.

In Basic Rate eSCO, the synchronous data field consists of two segments: a synchronous data body and a CRC code. No payload header is present.

In Enhanced Data Rate eSCO, the synchronous data field consists of five segments: a guard time, a synchronization sequence, a synchronous data body, a CRC code and a trailer. No payload header is present.

#### 1. Enhanced Data Rate Guard Time

For Enhanced Data Rate packets the guard time is defined as the period starting at the end of the last GFSK symbol of the header and ending at the start of the reference symbol of the synchronization sequence. The length of the guard time shall be between 4.75  $\mu$ sec and 5.25  $\mu$ sec.

## 2. Enhanced Data Rate Synchronization Sequence

For Enhanced Data Rate packets the symbol timing at the start of the synchronization sequence shall be within  $\pm\frac{1}{4}$   $\mu$ sec of the symbol timing of the last GFSK symbol of the packet header. The length of the synchronization sequence is 11  $\mu$ sec (11 DPSK symbols) and consists of a reference symbol (with arbitrary phase) followed by ten DPSK symbols.

The phase changes between the DPSK symbols (shown in Synchronization sequence) shall be

$$\{\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4, \varphi_5, \varphi_6, \varphi_7, \varphi_8, \varphi_9, \varphi_{10}\} = \{3\pi/4, -3\pi/4, 3\pi/4, -3\pi/4, 3\pi/4, -3\pi/4, 3\pi/4, 3\pi/4, 3\pi/4, 3\pi/4\} \quad (\text{EQ 13})$$

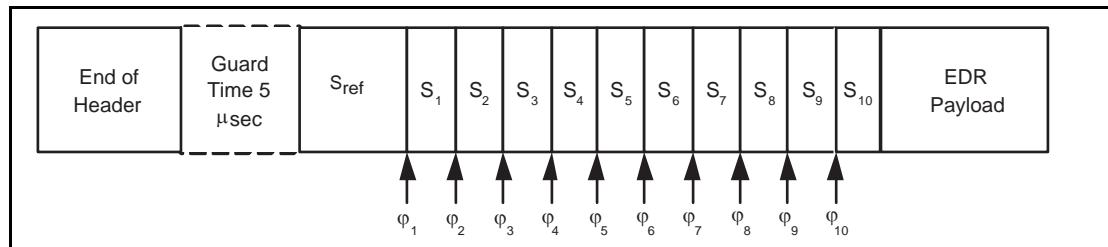


Figure 6.11: Synchronization sequence

$S_{ref}$  is the reference symbol.  $\varphi_1$  is the phase change between the reference symbol and the first DPSK symbol  $S_1$ .  $\varphi_k$  is the phase change between the  $k-1^{\text{th}}$  symbol  $S_{k-1}$  and the  $k^{\text{th}}$  symbol  $S_k$

Note: the synchronization sequence may be generated using the modulator by pre-pending the data with bits that generate the synchronization sequence.

For  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK, the bit sequence used to generate the synchronization sequence is 0,1,1,1,0,1,1,1,0,1,1,1,1,0,1,0,1,0,1.

For 8DPSK, the bit sequence used to generate the synchronization sequence is 0,1,0,1,1,1,0,1,0,1,1,1,0,1,0,1,1,1,1,0,1,0,0,1,0,1,0.

## 3. Synchronous data body

For HV and DV packets, the synchronous data body length is fixed. For EV packets, the synchronous data body length is negotiated during the LMP eSCO setup. Once negotiated, the synchronous data body length remains constant unless re-negotiated. The synchronous data body length may be different for each direction of the eSCO logical transport.

## 4. CRC code

The 16-bit CRC in the payload is generated as specified in [Section 7.1 on page 144](#). The 8-bit UAP of the master is used to initialize the CRC generator.

Only the Synchronous data body segment is used to generate the CRC code.

## **5. Enhanced Data Rate Trailer**

For Enhanced Data Rate packets, two trailer symbols shall be added to the end of the payload. The trailer bits shall be all zero, i.e. {00, 00} for the  $\pi/4$ -DQPSK and {000, 000} for the 8DPSK.

### 6.6.2 Asynchronous Data Field

Basic rate ACL packets have an asynchronous data field consisting of two, three or four segments: a payload header, a payload body, possibly a MIC, and possibly a CRC code.

Enhanced Data Rate ACL packets have an asynchronous data field consisting of six or seven segments: a guard time, a synchronization sequence, a payload header, a payload body, possibly a MIC, a CRC and a trailer.

## 1. Enhanced Data Rate Guard time

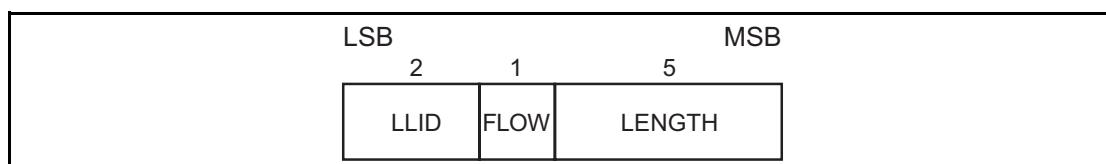
This is the same as defined for the Synchronous data field in [Section 6.6.1](#).

## 2. Enhanced Data Rate Synchronization sequence

This is the same as defined for the Synchronous data field in [Section 6.6.1](#).

### 3. Payload header

The payload header is one or two bytes long. Basic rate packets in segments one and two have a 1-byte payload header; Basic Rate packets in segments three and four and all Enhanced Data Rate packets have a 2-byte payload header. The payload header specifies the logical link (2-bit LLID indication), controls the flow on the logical channels (1-bit FLOW indication), and has a payload length indicator (5 bits and 10 bits for 1-byte and 2-byte payload headers, respectively). In the case of a 2-byte payload header, the length indicator is extended by five bits into the next byte. The remaining three bits of the second byte are reserved for future use and shall be set to zero. The formats of the 1-byte and 2-byte payload headers are shown in Figure 6.12 on page 137 and Figure 6.13 on page 137.



*Figure 6.12: Payload header format for Basic Rate single-slot ACL packets*

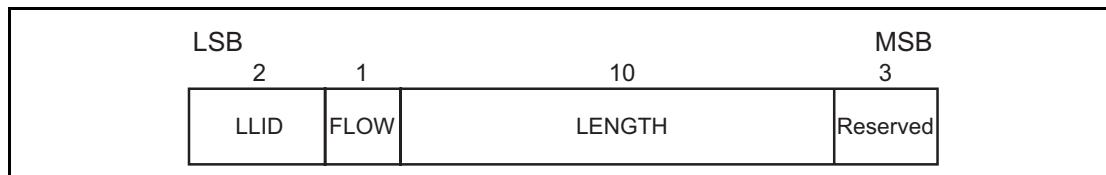


Figure 6.13: Payload header format for multi-slot ACL packets and all EDR ACL packets

The LLID field shall be transmitted first, the length field last. In [Table 6.6 on page 138](#), more details about the contents of the LLID field are listed.

LLID code $b_1b_0$	Logical Link	Information
00	NA	undefined
01	ACL-U	Continuation fragment of an L2CAP message
10	ACL-U	Start of an L2CAP message or no fragmentation
	PBD	Profile broadcast data, no fragmentation
11	ACL-C	LMP message

*Table 6.6: Logical link LLID field contents*

An L2CAP message may be fragmented into several packets. Code 10b shall be used for an ACL-U packet carrying the first fragment of such a message; code 01b shall be used for continuing fragments. The first fragment of an L2CAP message sent over HCI is identified by having a *Packet\_Boundary\_Flag* value of 00b or 10b both of which are mapped to LLID code 10b. If there is no fragmentation, code 10b shall be used for every packet. ACL packets used over the PBD logical link do not use fragmentation. For ACL packets used over the PBD logical link, LLID code 10b shall be used by the transmitter. Any ACL packet used over the PBD logical link with LLID not equal to 10b shall be ignored by the receiver. Code 11b shall be used for LMP messages. Code 00b is reserved for future use.

The flow indicator in the payload is used to control the flow at the L2CAP level. It is used to control the flow per logical link. FLOW=1 means flow-on (GO) and FLOW=0 means flow-off (STOP). After a new connection has been established the flow indicator shall be set to GO. When a device receives a payload header with the flow bit set to STOP, it shall stop the transmission of ACL-U packets before an additional amount of payload data is sent. This amount is defined as the flow control lag, expressed as a number of bytes. The shorter the flow control lag, the less buffering the other device must dedicate to this function. The flow control lag shall not exceed 1792 bytes ( $7 \times 256$  bytes). In order to allow devices to optimize the selection of packet length and buffer space, the flow control lag of a given implementation shall be provided in the *LMP\_features\_res* message.

If a packet containing the payload flow bit of STOP is received, with a valid packet header but bad payload, the payload flow control bit shall be ignored. The baseband ACK contained in the packet header will be received and a further ACL packet may be transmitted. Each occurrence of this situation allows a further ACL packet to be sent in spite of the flow control request being sent via the payload header flow control bit. It is recommended that devices that use the payload header flow bit should ensure that no further ACL packets are sent until the payload flow bit has been correctly received. This can be accomplished by simultaneously turning on the flow bit in the

packet header and keeping it on until an ACK is received back (ARQN=1). This will typically be only one round trip time. Since they lack a payload CRC, AUX1 packets should not be used with a payload flow bit of STOP.

The Baseband Resource Manager is responsible for setting and processing the flow bit in the payload header. Real-time flow control shall be carried out at the packet level by the link controller via the flow bit in the packet header (see [Section 6.4.3 on page 123](#)). With the payload flow bit, traffic from the remote end can be controlled. It is allowed to generate and send an ACL packet with payload length zero irrespective of flow status. L2CAP start-fragment and continue-fragment indications (LLID=10 and LLID=01) also retain their meaning when the payload length is equal to zero (i.e. an empty start-fragment shall not be sent in the middle of an on-going ACL-U packet transmission). It is always safe to send an ACL packet with length=0 and LLID=01. The payload flow bit has its own meaning for each logical link (ACL-U or ACL-C), see [Table 6.7 on page 139](#). On the ACL-C logical link, no flow control is applied and the payload FLOW bit shall always be set to one. On the PBD logical link, no flow control is applied and the payload FLOW bit shall always be set to zero.

LLID code $b_1b_0$	Usage and semantics of the ACL payload header FLOW bit
00	Not defined, reserved for future use.
01	Flow control of the ACL-U channel (L2CAP messages).
10	For the ACL-U logical link, flow control of the ACL-U channel (L2CAP messages). For the PBD logical link, always set FLOW=0 on transmission and ignore the bit on reception.
11	Always set FLOW=1 on transmission and ignore the bit on reception.

*Table 6.7: Use of payload header flow bit on the logical links*

The length indicator shall be set to the number of bytes (i.e. 8-bit words) in the payload excluding the payload header, MIC, and the CRC code; i.e. the payload body only. With reference to [Figure 6.12](#) and [Figure 6.13](#), the MSB of the length field in a 1-byte header is the last (right-most) bit in the payload header; the MSB of the length field in a 2-byte header is the fourth bit to the left from the right-most end of the second byte in the payload header.

#### 4. Payload body

The payload body includes the user information and determines the effective user throughput. The length of the payload body is indicated in the length field of the payload header.

#### 5. Message Integrity Check

The 32-bit Message Integrity Check (MIC) in the payload is generated as specified in [\[Vol. 2, Part H\] Section 9.2 on page 1348](#).

## 6. CRC code generation

The 16-bit cyclic redundancy check code in the payload is generated as specified in [Section 7.1 on page 144](#). Before determining the CRC code, an 8-bit value is used to initialize the CRC generator. For the CRC code in the FHS packets sent in **master response** substate, the UAP of the slave is used. For the FHS packet and the extended inquiry response packet sent in **inquiry response** substate, the DCI (see [Section 1.2.1 on page 69](#)) is used. For all other packets, the UAP of the master is used.

Only the Payload header, Payload body, and MIC segments (if present) are used to generate the CRC code.

## 7. Enhanced Data Rate Trailer

This is the same as defined for the Synchronous data field in [Section 6.6.1](#).

## 6.7 PACKET SUMMARY

A summary of the packets and their characteristics is shown in [Table 6.8](#), [Table 6.9](#) and [Table 6.10](#). The payload represents the packet payload excluding FEC, CRC, and payload header.

Type	Payload (bytes)	FEC	MIC	CRC	Symmetric Max. Rate	Asymmetric Max. Rate
ID	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
NULL	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
POLL	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
FHS	18	2/3	N/A	Yes	N/A	N/A

*Table 6.8: Link control packets*

Type	Payload Header (bytes)	User Payload (bytes)	FEC	MIC	CRC	Symmetric Max. Rate (kb/s)	Asymmetric Max. Rate (kb/s)	
							Forward	Reverse
DM1	1	0-17	2/3	C.1	Yes	108.8	108.8	108.8
DH1	1	0-27	No	C.1	Yes	172.8	172.8	172.8
DM3	2	0-121	2/3	C.1	Yes	258.1	387.2	54.4
DH3	2	0-183	No	C.1	Yes	390.4	585.6	86.4
DM5	2	0-224	2/3	C.1	Yes	286.7	477.8	36.3
DH5	2	0-339	No	C.1	Yes	433.9	723.2	57.6
AUX1	1	0-29	No	No	No	185.6	185.6	185.6
2-DH1	2	0-54	No	C.1	Yes	345.6	345.6	345.6
2-DH3	2	0-367	No	C.1	Yes	782.9	1174.4	172.8
2-DH5	2	0-679	No	C.1	Yes	869.1	1448.5	115.2
3-DH1	2	0-83	No	C.1	Yes	531.2	531.2	531.2
3-DH3	2	0-552	No	C.1	Yes	1177.6	1766.4	235.6
3-DH5	2	0-1021	No	C.1	Yes	1306.9	2178.1	177.1

C.1: Mandatory when encryption with AES-CCM enabled, else excluded.

*Table 6.9: ACL packets*

Type	Payload Header (bytes)	User Payload (bytes)	FEC	MIC	CRC	Symmetric Max. Rate (kb/s)
HV1	N/A	10	1/3	No	No	64.0
HV2	N/A	20	2/3	No	No	64.0
HV3	N/A	30	no	No	No	64.0
DV <sup>1</sup>	1 D	10+(0-9) D	2/3 D	No	Yes D	64.0+57.6 D
EV3	N/A	1-30	No	No	Yes	96
EV4	N/A	1-120	2/3	No	Yes	192
EV5	N/A	1-180	No	No	Yes	288
2-EV3	N/A	1-60	No	No	Yes	192
2-EV5	N/A	1-360	No	No	Yes	576
3-EV3	N/A	1-90	No	No	Yes	288
3-EV5	N/A	1-540	No	No	Yes	864

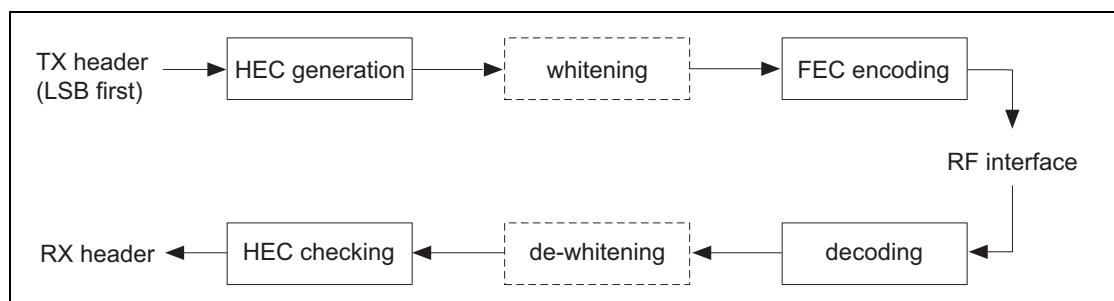
Table 6.10: Synchronous packets

1. Items followed by 'D' relate to data field only.

## 7 BITSTREAM PROCESSING

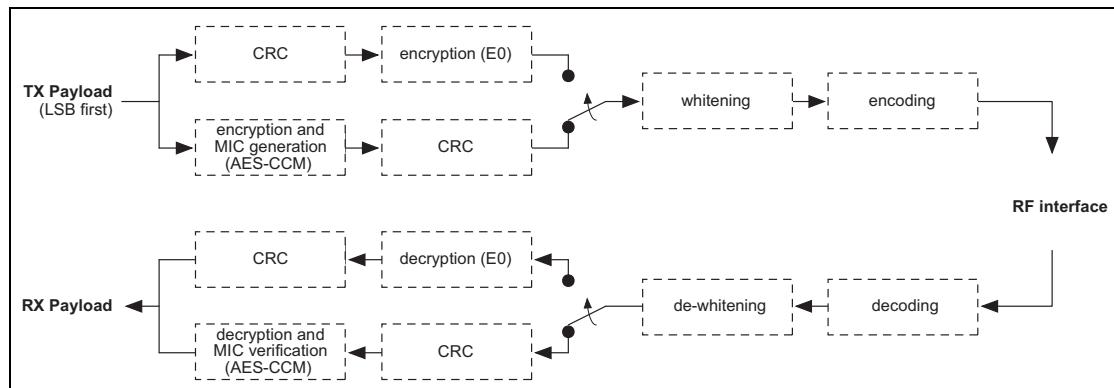
Bluetooth devices shall use the bitstream processing schemes as defined in the following sections.

Before the payload is sent over the air interface, several bit manipulations are performed in the transmitter to increase reliability and security. An HEC is added to the packet header, the header bits are scrambled with a whitening word, and FEC coding is applied. In the receiver, the inverse processes are carried out. [Figure 7.1 on page 143](#) shows the processes carried out for the packet header both at the transmit and the receive side. All header bit processes are mandatory except that whitening and de-whitening shall not be performed on synchronization train packets. In [Figure 7.1 on page 143](#) processes not performed on all packet types are indicated by dashed blocks.



*Figure 7.1: Header bit processes*

[Figure 7.2 on page 143](#) shows the processes that may be carried out on the payload. In addition to the processes defined for the packet header, encryption can be applied on the payload. Whitening and de-whitening, as explained in [Section 7.2 on page 147](#), are mandatory for every payload except synchronization train payloads, where they are forbidden. All other processes are optional and depend on the packet type (see [Section 6.6 on page 135](#)) and whether encryption is enabled. In [Figure 7.2 on page 143](#), optional processes are indicated by dashed blocks. When E0 encryption is used, the entire payload shall be encrypted. When AES-CCM encryption is used, only the payload body and MIC shall be encrypted; the payload header and CRC shall not be encrypted.



*Figure 7.2: Payload bit processes*

## 7.1 ERROR CHECKING

The packet can be checked for errors or wrong delivery using the channel access code, the HEC in the header, and the CRC in the payload. At packet reception, the access code is checked first. Since the 64-bit sync word in the channel access code is derived from the 24-bit master LAP, this checks if the LAP is correct, and prevents the receiver from accepting a packet of another piconet (provided the LAP field of the master's BD\_ADDR is different).

The HEC and CRC computations are normally initialized with the UAP of the master. Even though the access code may be the same for two piconets the different UAP values will typically cause the HEC and CRC to fail. However, there is an exception where no common UAP is available in the transmitter and receiver. This is the case when the HEC and CRC are generated for the FHS packet and the extended inquiry response packet in inquiry response substate. In this case the DCI value shall be used.

The generation and check of the HEC and CRC are summarized in [Figure 7.5 on page 145](#) and [Figure 7.8 on page 146](#). Before calculating the HEC or CRC, the shift registers in the HEC/CRC generators shall be initialized with the 8-bit UAP (or DCI) value. Then the header and payload information shall be shifted into the HEC and CRC generators, respectively (with the LSB first).

### 7.1.1 HEC Generation

The HEC generating LFSR is depicted in [Figure 7.3 on page 144](#). The generator polynomial is

$g(D) = (D + 1)(D^7 + D^4 + D^3 + D^2 + 1) = D^8 + D^7 + D^5 + D^2 + D + 1$ . Initially this circuit shall be pre-loaded with the 8-bit UAP such that the LSB of the UAP (denoted  $UAP_0$ ) goes to the left-most shift register element, and,  $UAP_7$  goes to the right-most element. The initial state of the HEC LFSR is depicted in [Figure 7.4 on page 145](#). Then the data shall be shifted in with the switch S set in position 1. When the last data bit has been clocked into the LFSR, the switch S shall be set in position 2, and, the HEC can be read out from the register. The LFSR bits shall be read out from right to left (i.e., the bit in position 7 is the first to be transmitted, followed by the bit in position 6, etc.).

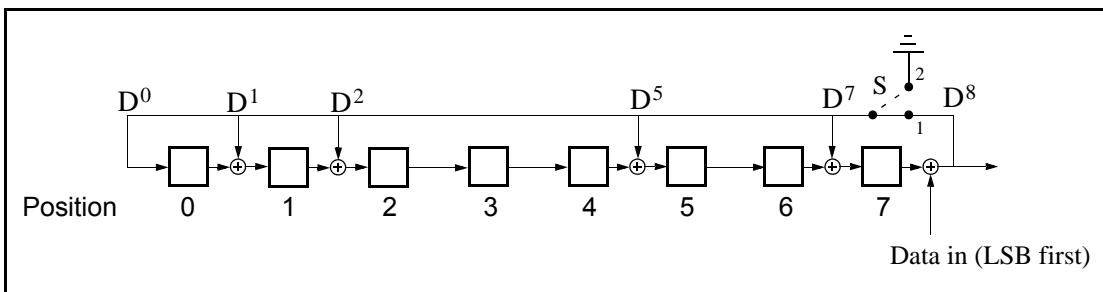


Figure 7.3: The LFSR circuit generating the HEC

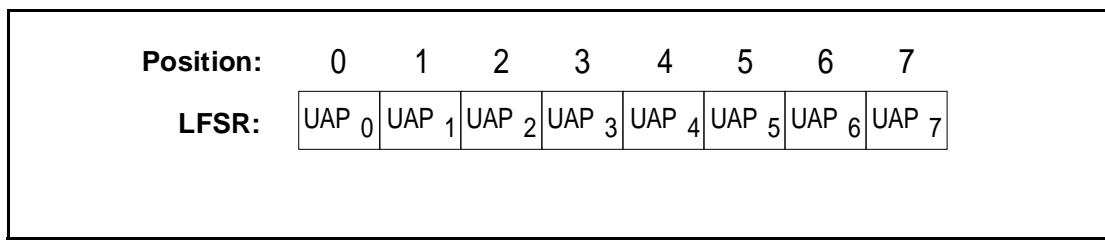


Figure 7.4: Initial state of the HEC generating circuit

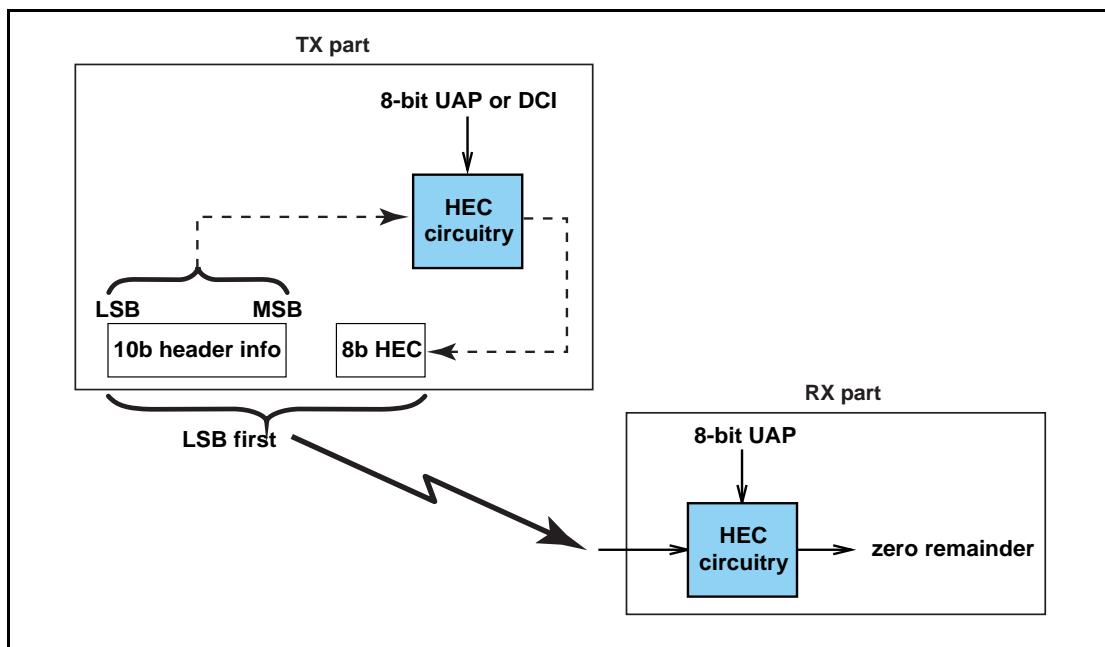


Figure 7.5: HEC generation and checking

### 7.1.2 CRC Generation

The 16 bit LFSR for the CRC is constructed similarly to the HEC using the CRC-CCITT generator polynomial  $g(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1$  (i.e. 210041 in octal representation) (see [Figure 7.6 on page 146](#)). For this case, the 8 left-most bits shall be initially loaded with the 8-bit UAP (UAP<sub>0</sub> to the left and UAP<sub>7</sub> to the right) while the 8 right-most bits shall be reset to zero. The initial state of the 16 bit LFSR is specified in [Figure 7.7 on page 146](#). The switch S shall be set in position 1 while the data is shifted in. After the last bit has entered the LFSR, the switch shall be set in position 2, and, the register's contents shall be transmitted, from right to left (i.e., starting with position 15, then position 14, etc.).

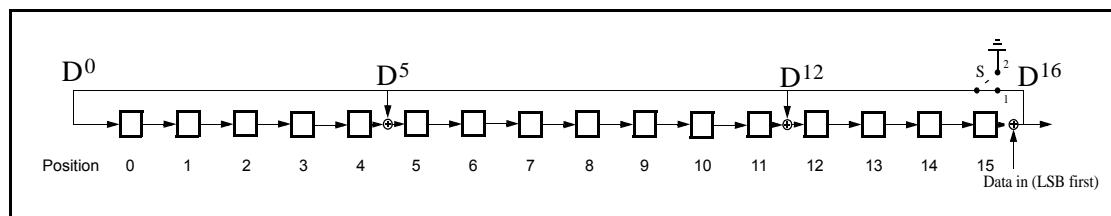


Figure 7.6: The LFSR circuit generating the CRC

Position:	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
LFSR:	UAP <sub>0</sub>	UAP <sub>1</sub>	UAP <sub>2</sub>	UAP <sub>3</sub>	UAP <sub>4</sub>	UAP <sub>5</sub>	UAP <sub>6</sub>	UAP <sub>7</sub>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 7.7: Initial state of the CRC generating circuit

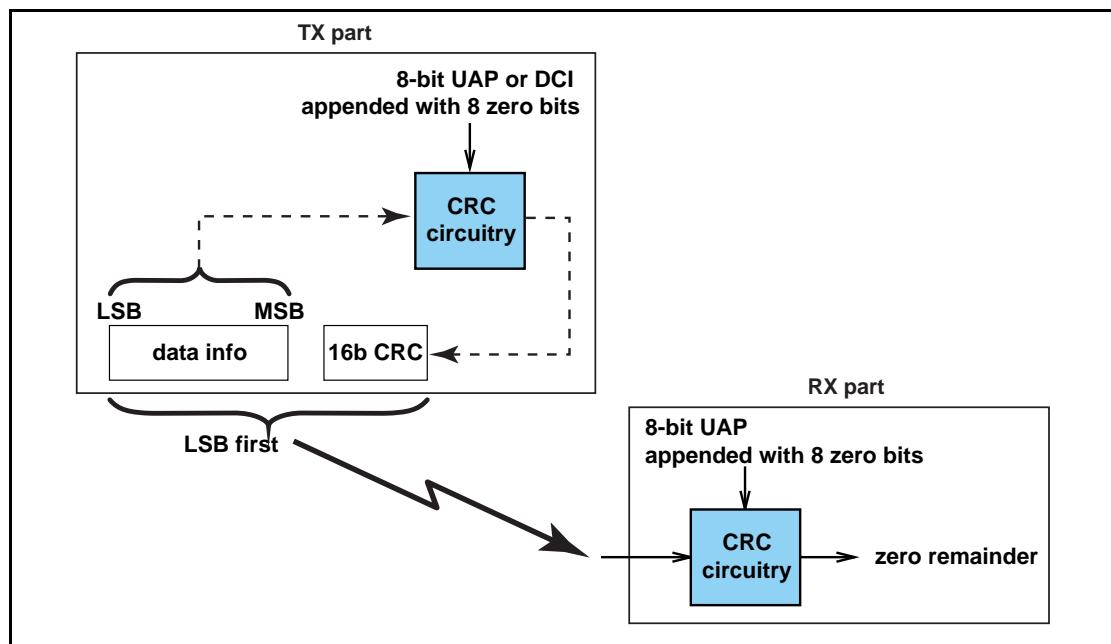


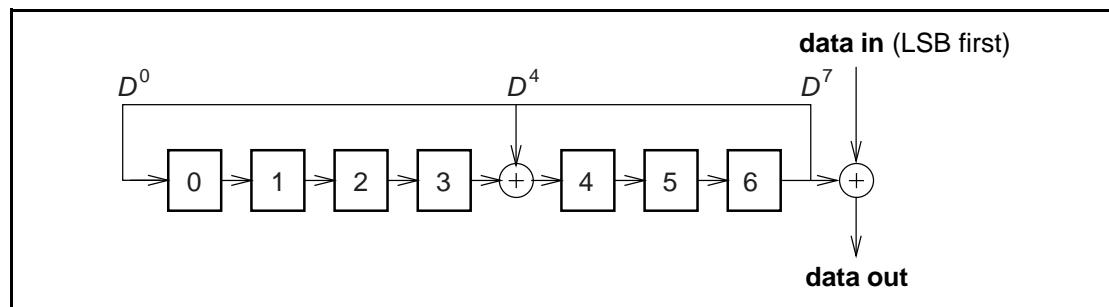
Figure 7.8: CRC generation and checking

## 7.2 DATA WHITENING

Synchronization train packets shall not be scrambled with a data whitening word. Before transmission of all other packets, both the header and the payload shall be scrambled with a data whitening word in order to randomize the data from highly redundant patterns and to minimize DC bias in the packet. The scrambling shall be performed prior to the FEC encoding.

At the receiver, the received data of scrambled packets shall be descrambled using the same whitening word generated in the recipient. The descrambling shall be performed after FEC decoding.

The whitening word is generated with the polynomial  $g(D) = D^7 + D^4 + 1$  (i.e., 221 in octal representation) and shall be subsequently XORed with the header and the payload. The whitening word is generated with the linear feedback shift register shown in [Figure 7.9 on page 147](#). Before each transmission, the shift register shall be initialized with a portion of the master Bluetooth clock, CLK6-1, extended with an MSB of value one. This initialization shall be carried out with CLK1 written to position 0, CLK2 written to position 1, etc. Exceptions are the FHS packet sent during inquiry response or page response, and the extended inquiry response packet sent during inquiry response, where initialization of the whitening register shall be carried out differently. Instead of the master clock, the X-input used in the inquiry or page response (depending on current state) routine shall be used, see [Table 2.2](#). The 5-bit value shall be extended with two MSBs of value 1. During register initialization, the LSB of X (i.e., X0) shall be written to position 0, X1 shall be written to position 1, etc.



*Figure 7.9: Data whitening LFSR*

After initialization, the packet header and the payload (including the CRC) are whitened. The payload whitening shall continue from the state the whitening LFSR had at the end of HEC. There shall be no re-initialization of the shift register between packet header and payload. The first bit of the “data in” sequence shall be the LSB of the packet header.

For Enhanced Data Rate packets, whitening shall not be applied to the guard, synchronization and trailer portions of the Enhanced Data Rate packets. During the periods where whitening is not applied the LFSR shall be paused.

## 7.3 ERROR CORRECTION

There are three error correction schemes defined for Bluetooth:

- 1/3 rate FEC
- 2/3 rate FEC
- ARQ scheme for the data

The purpose of the FEC scheme on the data payload is to reduce the number of retransmissions. However, in a reasonably error-free environment, FEC gives unnecessary overhead that reduces the throughput. Therefore, the packet definitions given in [Section 6](#) have been kept flexible to use FEC in the payload or not, resulting in the **DM** and **DH** packets for the ACL logical transport, **HV** packets for the SCO logical transport, and **EV** packets for the eSCO logical transport. The packet header is always protected by a 1/3 rate FEC since it contains valuable link information and is designed to withstand more bit errors.

Correction measures to mask errors in the voice decoder are not included in this section. This matter is discussed in [Section 9.3 on page 213](#).

## 7.4 FEC CODE: RATE 1/3

A simple 3-times repetition FEC code is used for the header. The repetition code is implemented by repeating each bit three times, see the illustration in [Figure 7.10 on page 148](#). The 3-times repetition code is used for the entire header, as well as for the synchronous data field in the **HV1** packet.

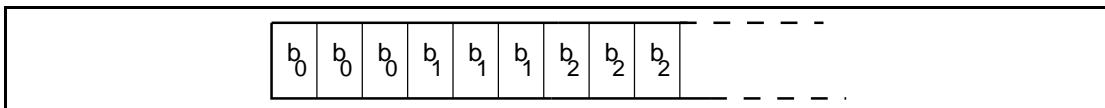


Figure 7.10: Bit-repetition encoding scheme

## **7.5 FEC CODE: RATE 2/3**

The other FEC scheme is a (15,10) shortened Hamming code. The generator polynomial is  $g(D) = (D + 1)(D^4 + D + 1)$ . This corresponds to 65 in octal notation. The LFSR generating this code is depicted in [Figure 7.11 on page 149](#). Initially all register elements are set to zero. The 10 information bits are sequentially fed into the LFSR with the switches S1 and S2 set in position 1. Then, after the final input bit, the switches S1 and S2 are set in position 2, and the five parity bits are shifted out. The parity bits are appended to the information bits. Subsequently, each block of 10 information bits is encoded into a 15 bit codeword. This code can correct all single errors and detect all double errors in each codeword. This 2/3 rate FEC is used in the **DM** packets, in the data field of the **DV** packet, in the **FHS** packet, in the **HV2** packet, and in the **EV4** packet. Since the encoder operates with information segments of length 10, tail bits with value zero shall be appended after the CRC bits to bring the total number of bits equal to a multiple of 10. The number of tail bits to append shall be the least possible that achieves this (i.e., in the interval 0...9). These tail bits are not included in the payload length indicator for ACL packets or in the payload length field of the eSCO setup LMP command.

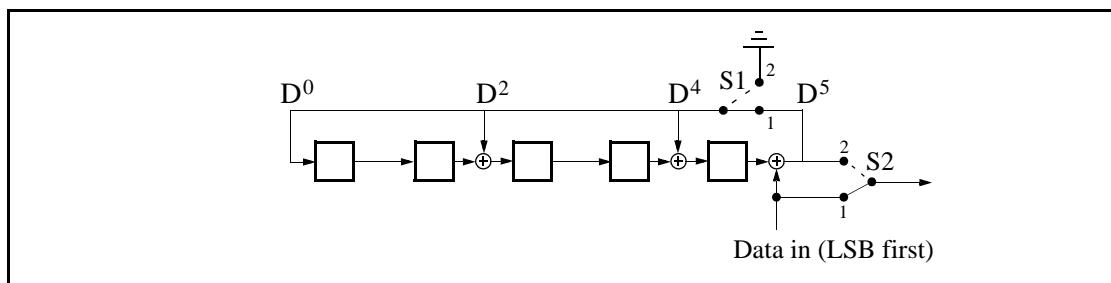


Figure 7.11: LFSR generating the (15,10) shortened Hamming code

## 7.6 ARQ SCHEME

With an automatic repeat request scheme, DM packets, DH packets, the data field of DV packets, and EV packets shall be transmitted until acknowledgement of a successful reception is returned by the destination (or timeout is exceeded). The acknowledgement information shall be included in the header of the return packet. The ARQ scheme is only used on the payload in the packet and only on packets that have a CRC. The packet header and the synchronous data payload of HV and DV packets are not protected by the ARQ scheme.

### 7.6.1 Unnumbered ARQ

Bluetooth uses a fast, unnumbered acknowledgment scheme. An ACK (ARQN=1) or a NAK (ARQN=0) is returned in response to the receipt of a previously received packet. The slave shall respond in the slave-to-master slot directly following the master-to-slave slot unless the slave has scatternet commitments in that timeslot; the master shall respond at the next event addressing the same slave (the master may have addressed other slaves between the last received packet from the considered slave and the master response to this packet). For a packet reception to be successful, at least the HEC must pass. In addition, the MIC and CRC must pass when present.

In the first POLL packet at the start of a new connection (as a result of a page, page scan, role switch, or unpark) the master shall initialize the ARQN bit to NAK. The response packet sent by the slave shall also have the ARQN bit set to NAK. The subsequent packets shall use the following rules. The initial value of the master's eSCO ARQN at link set-up shall be NAK.

The ARQN bit shall only be affected by data packets containing CRC and empty slots. As shown in [Figure 7.12 on page 151](#), upon successful reception of a CRC packet, the ARQN bit shall be set to ACK. If, in any receive slot in the slave, or, in a receive slot in the master following transmission of a packet, one of these events applies:

1. no access code is detected
2. the HEC fails
3. the CRC fails
4. the MIC fails.

then the ARQN bit shall be set to NAK. In eSCO the ARQN bit may be set to ACK even when the CRC on an EV packet has failed thus enabling delivery of erroneous packets.

Packets that have correct HEC but that are addressed to other slaves, or packets other than DH, DM, DV or EV packets, shall not affect the ARQN bit, except as noted in [Section 7.6.2.2 on page 154](#). In these cases the ARQN bit shall be left as it was prior to reception of the packet. For ACL packets, if a CRC packet with a correct header has the same SEQN as the previously received CRC packet, the ARQN bit shall be set to ACK and the payload shall be ignored

without checking the CRC. For eSCO packets, the SEQN shall not be used when determining the ARQN. If an eSCO packet has been received successfully within the eSCO window subsequent receptions within the eSCO window shall be ignored. At the end of the eSCO window, the master's ARQN shall be retained for the first master-to-slave transmission in the next eSCO window.

The ARQN bit in the FHS packet is not meaningful. Contents of the ARQN bit in the FHS packet shall not be checked.

The ARQN bit in the extended inquiry response packet is not used. The bit shall be set to zero and ignored upon receipt.

Broadcast packets shall be checked on errors using the CRC, but no ARQ scheme shall be applied. Broadcast packets shall never be acknowledged.

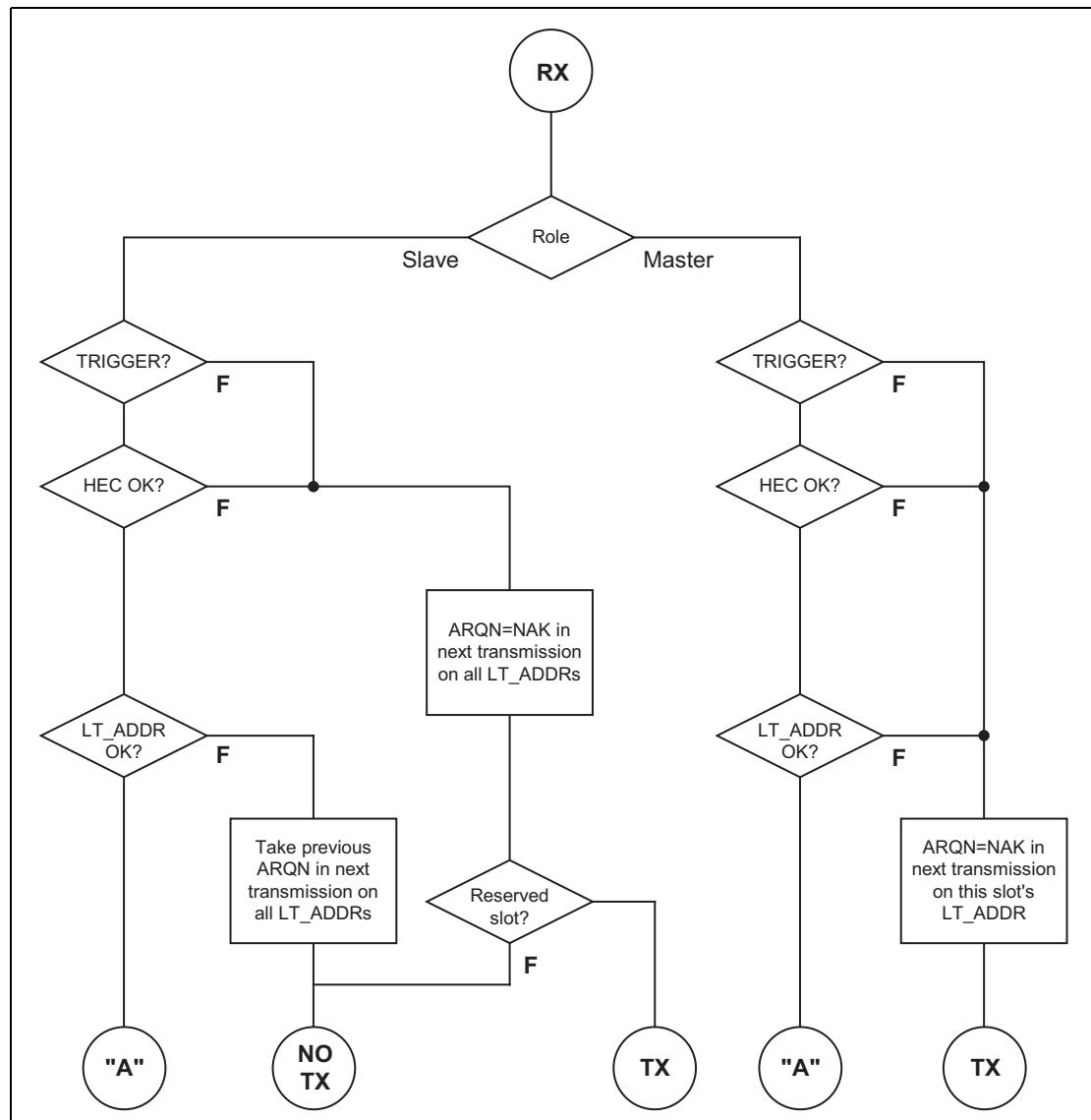


Figure 7.12: Stage 1 of the receive protocol for determining the ARQN bit

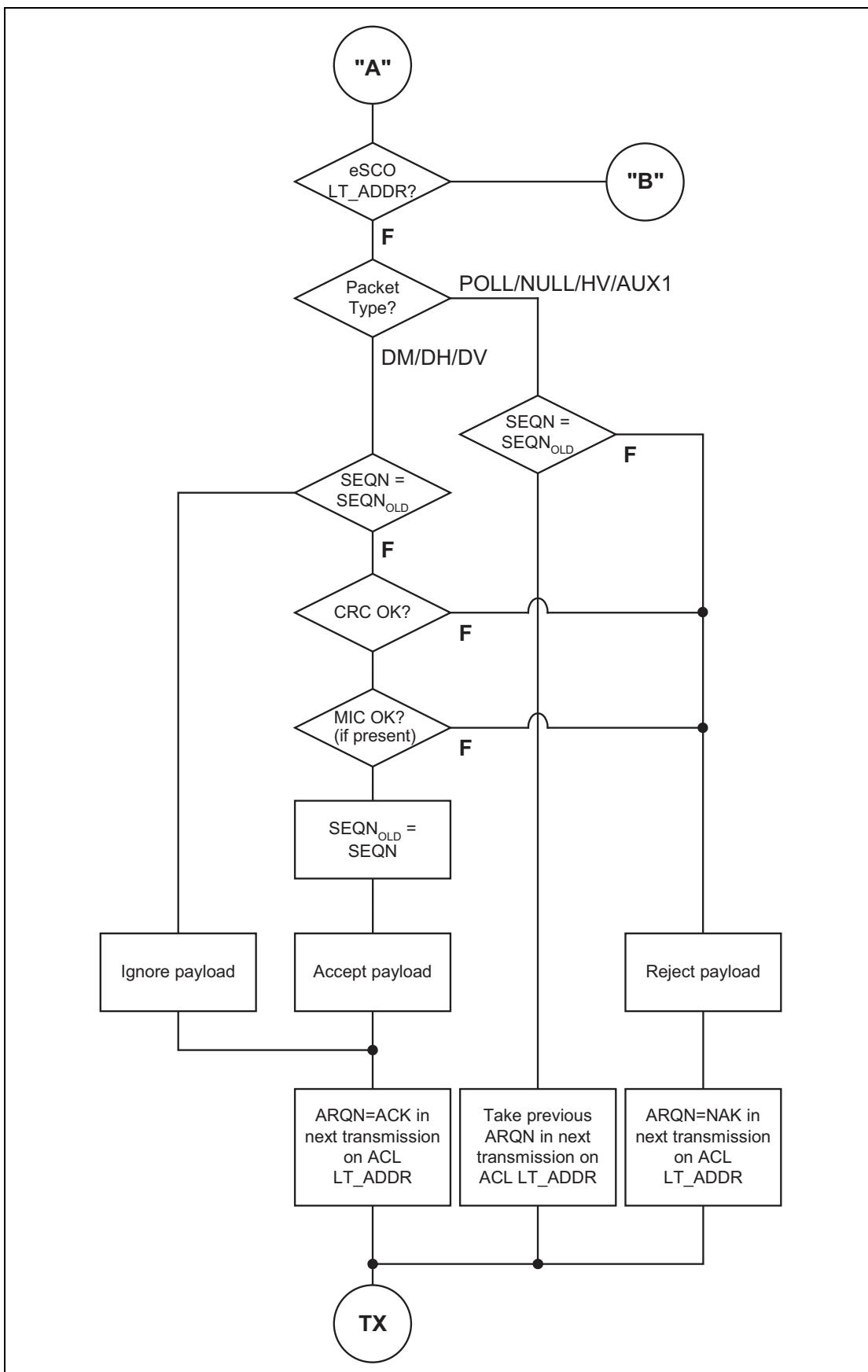


Figure 7.13: Stage 2 (ACL) of the receive protocol for determining the ARQN bit

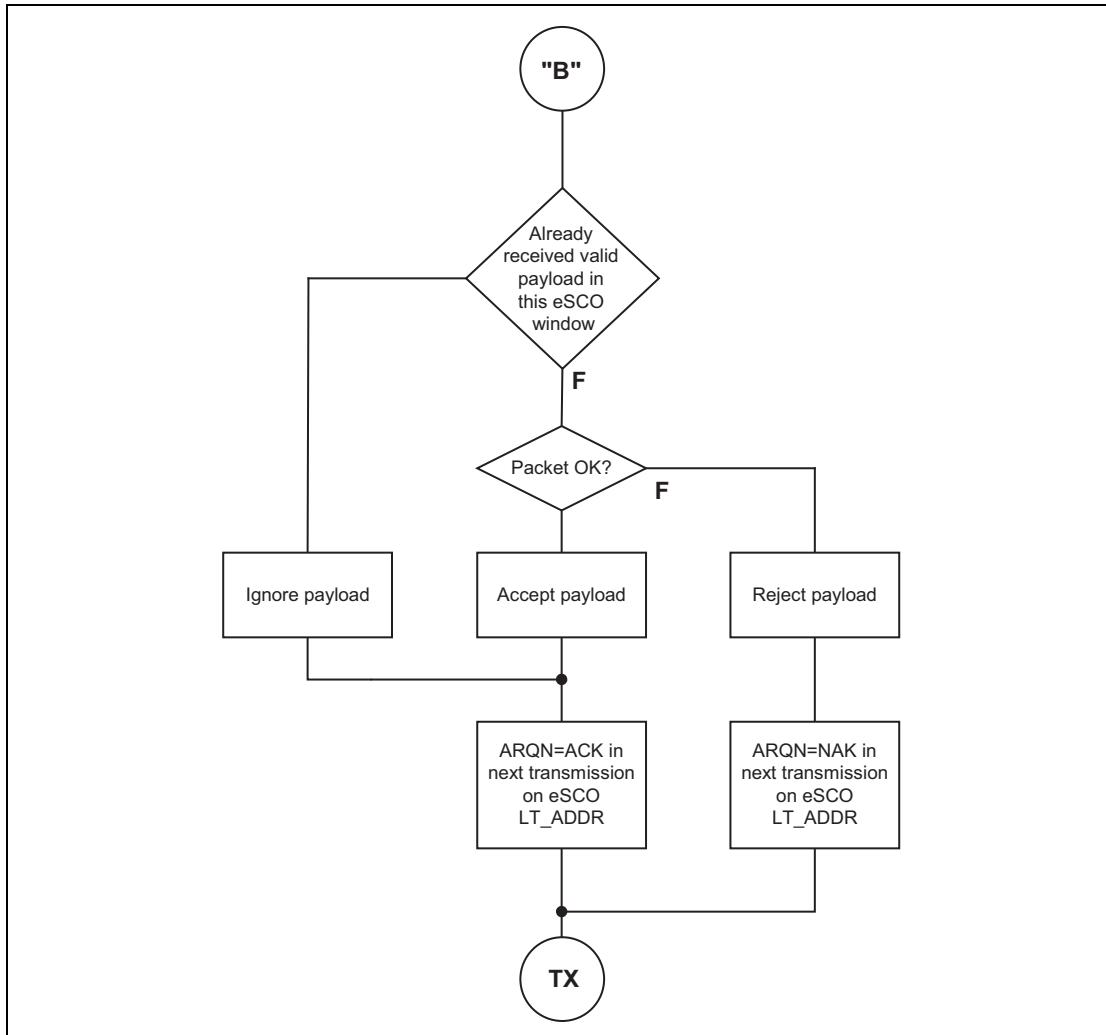


Figure 7.14: Stage 2 (eSCO) of the receive protocol for determining the ARQN bit

### 7.6.2 Retransmit Filtering

The data payload shall be transmitted until a positive acknowledgment is received or a timeout is exceeded. A retransmission shall be carried out either because the packet transmission itself failed, or because the acknowledgment transmitted in the return packet failed (note that the latter has a lower failure probability since the header is more heavily coded). In the latter case, the destination keeps receiving the same payload over and over again. In order to filter out the retransmissions in the destination, the SEQN bit is present in the header. Normally, this bit is alternated for every new CRC data payload transmission. In case of a retransmission, this bit shall not be changed so the destination can compare the SEQN bit with the previous SEQN value. If different, a new data payload has arrived; otherwise it is the same data payload and may be ignored. Only new data payloads shall be transferred to the Baseband Resource Manager. Note that CRC data payloads can be carried only by **DM**, **DH**, **DV** or **EV** packets.

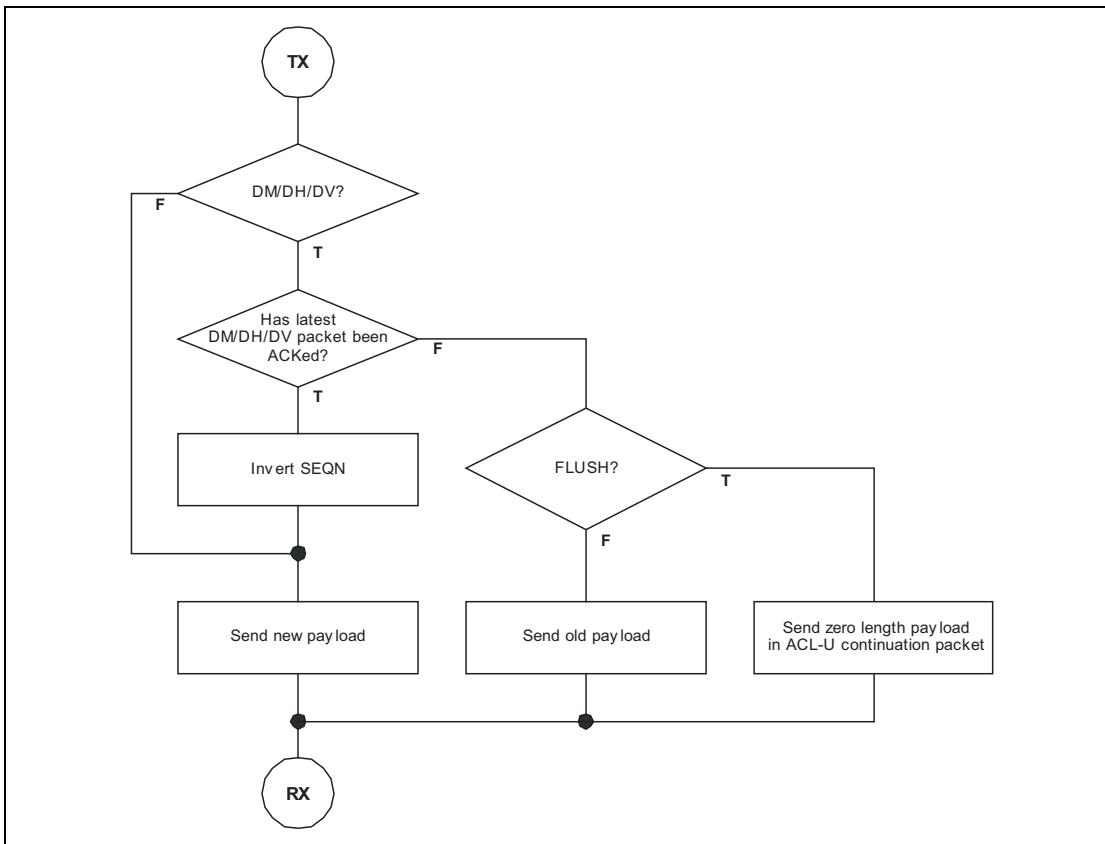
### 7.6.2.1 Initialization of SEQN at start of new connection

The SEQN bit of the first CRC data packet at the start of a connection (as a result of page, page scan, or role switch or unpark) on both the master and the slave sides shall be set to 1. The subsequent packets shall use the rules in the following sections.

### 7.6.2.2 ACL and SCO retransmit filtering

The SEQN bit shall only be affected by the CRC data packets as shown in [Figure 7.15](#). It shall be inverted every time a new CRC data packet is sent. The CRC data packet shall be retransmitted with the same SEQN number until an ACK is received or the packet is flushed. When an ACK is received, a new payload may be sent and on that transmission the SEQN bit shall be inverted. If a device decides to flush (see [Section 7.6.3 on page 156](#)), and it has not received an acknowledgement for the current packet, it shall replace the current packet with an ACL-U continuation packet with the same sequence number as the current packet and length zero. If it replaces the current packet in this way it shall not move on to transmit the next packet until it has received an ACK.

If the slave receives a packet other than DH, DM, DV or EV with the SEQN bit inverted from that in the last header successfully received on the same LT\_ADDR, it shall set the ARQN bit to NAK until a DH, DM, DV or EV packet is successfully received.



*Figure 7.15: Transmit filtering for packets with CRC*

#### 7.6.2.3 eSCO retransmit filtering

In eSCO, the SEQN bit shall be toggled every eSCO window. The value shall be constant for the duration of the eSCO window. The initial value of SEQN shall be zero.

For a given eSCO window the SEQN value shall be constant.

#### 7.6.2.4 FHS retransmit filtering

The SEQN bit in the FHS packet is not meaningful. This bit may be set to any value. Contents of the SEQN bit in the FHS packet shall not be checked.

#### 7.6.2.5 Extended Inquiry Response retransmit filtering

The SEQN bit in the extended inquiry response packet is not used. The bit shall be set to zero and ignored upon receipt.

#### 7.6.2.6 Packets without CRC retransmit filtering

During transmission of packets without a CRC the SEQN bit shall remain the same as it was in the previous packet.

### 7.6.3 Flushing Payloads

On ACL logical transports, the ARQ scheme can cause variable delay in the traffic flow since retransmissions are inserted to assure error-free data transfer. For certain communication links, only a limited amount of delay is allowed: retransmissions are allowed up to a certain limit at which the current payload shall be ignored. This data transfer is indicated as **isochronous traffic**. This means that the retransmit process must be overruled in order to continue with the next data payload. Aborting the retransmit scheme is accomplished by *flushing* the old data and forcing the link controller to take the next data instead.

Flushing results in loss of remaining portions of an L2CAP message. Therefore, the packet following the flush shall have a start packet indication of LLID = 10 in the payload header for the next L2CAP message. This informs the destination of the flush (see [Section 6.6](#)). Flushing will not necessarily result in a change in the SEQN bit value, see the previous section.

The Flush Timeout defines a maximum period after which all segments of the ACL-U packet with a Packet\_Boundary\_Flag value of 10 are flushed from the Controller buffer. The Flush Timeout shall start when the First segment of the ACL-U packet is stored in the Controller buffer. If the First segment of an ACL-U packet has a Packet\_Boundary\_Flag value of 00, it is non-automatically-flushable and shall not cause the Flush Timeout to start. After the Flush timeout has expired the Link Controller may continue transmissions according to the procedure described in [Section 7.6.2.2 on page 154](#), however the Baseband Resource Manager shall not continue the transmission of the ACL-U packet to the Link Controller. If the Baseband Resource Manager has further segments of the packet queued for transmission to the Link Controller it shall delete the remaining segments of the ACL-U packet from the queue. In case the complete ACL-U packet was not stored in the Controller buffer yet, any Continuation segments, received for the ACL logical transport, shall be flushed, until a First segment is received. When the complete ACL-U packet has been flushed, the Link Manager shall continue transmission of the next ACL-U packet for the ACL logical transport. The default Flush Timeout shall be infinite, i.e. re-transmissions are carried out until physical link loss occurs. This is also referred to as a 'reliable channel.' All devices shall support the default Flush Timeout. Reliable data shall be sent over a channel with a finite flush timeout by marking reliable packets as non-automatically-flushable.

On eSCO logical transports, packets shall be automatically flushed at the end of the eSCO window.

Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets are transmitted at each scheduled Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant. If no new data is available, the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter shall transmit a packet with the last available data in the payload.

#### 7.6.4 Multi-slave Considerations

In a piconet with multiple logical transports, the master shall carry out the ARQ protocol independently on each logical transport.

#### 7.6.5 Active Slave and Park Slave Broadcast Packets

ASB and PSB broadcast packets are packets transmitted by the master to all the slaves simultaneously (see [Section 8.6.4](#)) If multiple hop sequences are being used each transmission may only be received by some of the slaves. In this case the master shall repeat the transmission on each hop sequence. An ASB or PSB broadcast packet shall be indicated by the all-zero LT\_ADDR (note; the FHS packet and the extended inquiry response packet are the only packets which may have an all-zero LT\_ADDR but are not broadcast packets). Broadcast packets shall not be acknowledged (at least not at the LC level).

Since broadcast messages are not acknowledged, each broadcast packet is transmitted at least a fixed number of times. An ASB or PSB broadcast packet should be transmitted  $N_{BC}$  times before the next broadcast packet of the same broadcast message is transmitted, see [Figure 7.16 on page 158](#). Optionally, an ASB or PSB broadcast packet may be transmitted  $N_{BC} + 1$  times. Note:  $N_{BC}=1$  means that each broadcast packet should be sent only once, but optionally may be sent twice. However, time-critical broadcast information may abort the ongoing broadcast train. For instance, unpark messages sent at beacon instances may do this, see [Section 8.9.5](#).

If multiple hop sequences are being used then the master may transmit on the different hop sequences in any order, providing that transmission of a new broadcast packet shall not be started until all transmissions of any previous broadcast packet have completed on all hop sequences. The transmission of a single broadcast packet may be interleaved among the hop sequences to minimize the total time to broadcast a packet. The master has the option of transmitting only  $N_{BC}$  times on channels common to all hop sequences.

ASB and PSB broadcast packets with a CRC shall have their own sequence number. The SEQN of the first broadcast packet with a CRC shall be set to SEQN = 1 by the master and shall be inverted for each new broadcast packet with CRC thereafter. ASB and PSB broadcast packets without a CRC have no influence on the sequence number. The slave shall accept the SEQN of the first broadcast packet it receives in a connection and shall check for change in SEQN for subsequent broadcast packets. Since there is no acknowledgement of broadcast messages and there is no end packet indication, it is important to receive the start packets correctly. To ensure this, repetitions of the broadcast packets that are L2CAP start packets and LMP packets shall not be filtered out. These packets shall be indicated by LLID=1X in the payload header as explained in [Table 6.6 on page 138](#). Only repetitions of the L2CAP continuation packets shall be filtered out.

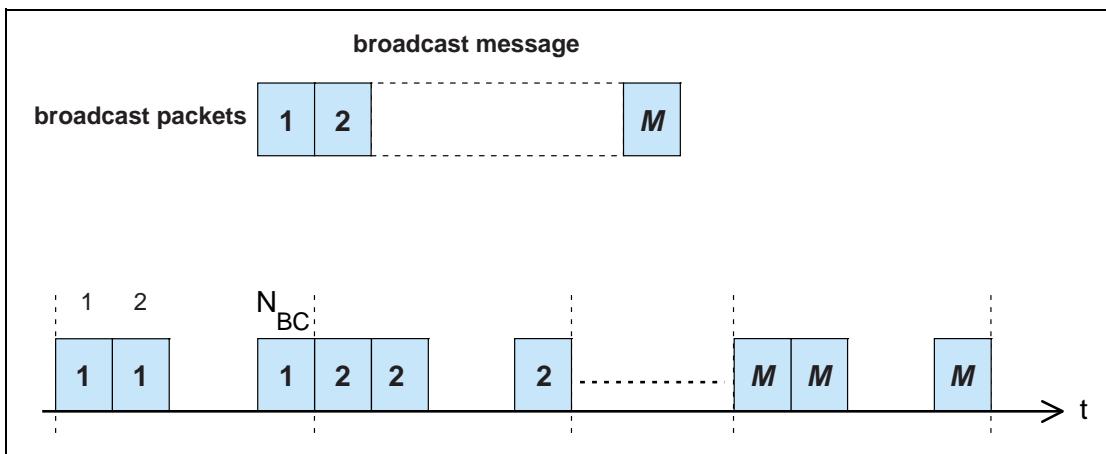


Figure 7.16: Broadcast repetition scheme

## 7.7 ERRONEOUS SYNCHRONOUS DATA REPORTING

Erroneous data reporting may be enabled for synchronous links. When enabled, synchronous data shall be processed as follows:

- If, during an (e)SCO interval, an eSCO packet was received with valid HEC and valid CRC or a SCO packet was received with valid HEC, the received payload data shall be sent to the upper-edge of the Controller with a "good data" indication.
- If, during an eSCO interval, eSCO packets with valid HEC were received, but none of them had a valid CRC, the best known data available (e.g. data derived from the received data or the actual payload data that was received with a CRC error) shall be sent to the upper-edge of the Controller with a "data with possible errors" indication.
- If, during an (e)SCO interval, no SCO or eSCO packet with valid HEC has been received, a "lost data" indication shall be sent to the upper-edge of the Controller.

## 7.8 MESSAGE INTEGRITY CHECK

When encryption with AES-CCM is enabled, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) is added to the payload before the CRC for packets that are defined to include the MIC. The MIC is sent Most Significant Octet (MSO) first.

## 8 LINK CONTROLLER OPERATION

This section describes how a piconet is established and how devices can be added to and released from the piconet. Several states of operation of the devices are defined to support these functions. In addition, the operation of several piconets with one or more common members, the scatternet, is discussed.

### 8.1 OVERVIEW OF STATES

Figure 8.1 on page 159 shows a state diagram illustrating the different states used in the link controller. There are three major states: **STANDBY**, **CONNECTION**, and **PARK**; in addition, there are nine substates, **page**, **page scan**, **inquiry**, **inquiry scan**, **synchronization train**, **synchronization scan**, **master response**, **slave response**, and **inquiry response**. Note that the **master response**, **slave response**, and **inquiry response** substates are not shown in the simplified figure below. The substates are interim states that are used to establish connections and enable device discovery. To move from one state or substate to another, either commands from the link manager are used, or internal signals in the link controller are used (such as the trigger signal from the correlator and the timeout signals).

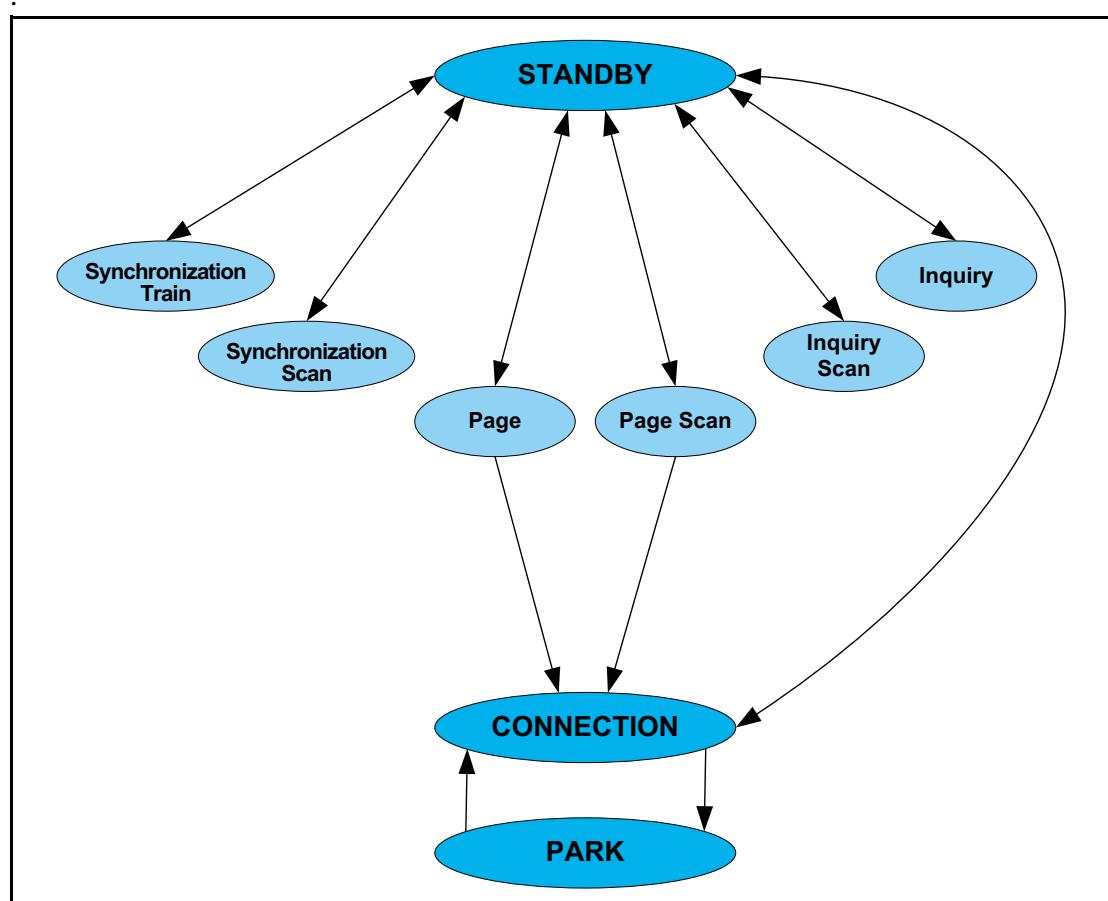


Figure 8.1: State diagram of link controller

## 8.2 STANDBY STATE

The **STANDBY** state is the default state in the device. In this state, the device may be in a low-power mode. Only the native clock is running at the accuracy of the LPO (or better).

The controller may leave the **STANDBY** state to scan for page or inquiry messages, or to page or inquiry itself.

## 8.3 CONNECTION ESTABLISHMENT SUBSTATES

In order to establish new connections the paging procedure or the synchronization scan procedure is used. Only the Bluetooth device address is required to set up a connection using the paging procedure. Knowledge about the clock, obtained from the inquiry procedure (see [Section 8.4 on page 169](#)) or from a previous connection with this device, and the page scanning mode of the other device will accelerate the paging procedure. A device that establishes a connection using a page procedure will automatically become the master of the connection. A device that establishes a connection using a synchronization scan procedure does so in two steps. First, from within the **synchronization scan** substate, the BR/EDR Controller follows the synchronization scan procedure to collect clock, packet timing, and AFH channel map information from the master and then transitions to the **STANDBY** state. Second, as commanded by the Host, the BR/EDR Controller transitions from the **STANDBY** state to the connectionless slave broadcast mode of the **CONNECTION** state.

The truncated page procedure is a modification of the paging procedure and is used to deliberately generate a page response timeout on the slave device.

### 8.3.1 Page Scan Substate

In the **page scan** substate, a device may be configured to use either the standard or generalized interlaced scanning procedure. During a standard scan, a device listens for the duration of the scan window  $T_{w\_page\_scan}$  (11.25ms default, see HCI [\[Part E\] Section 7.3.20 on page 681](#)), while the generalized interlaced scan is performed as two back to back scans of  $T_{w\_page\_scan}$ . If the scan interval is not at least twice the scan window, then generalized interlaced scan shall not be used. During each scan window, the device shall listen at a single hop frequency, its correlator matched to its device access code (DAC). The scan window shall be long enough to completely scan 16 page frequencies.

When a device enters the **page scan** substate, it shall select the scan frequency according to the page hopping sequence determined by the device's Bluetooth device address, see [Section 2.6.4.1 on page 95](#). The phase in the sequence shall be determined by  $CLKN_{16-12}$  of the device's native clock; that is, every 1.28s a different frequency is selected.

In the case of a standard scan, if the correlator exceeds the trigger threshold during the **page scan**, the device shall enter the **slave response** substate described in [Section 8.3.3.1 on page 167](#). The scanning device may also use generalized interlaced scan. In this case, if the correlator does not exceed the trigger threshold during the first scan it shall scan a second time using the phase in the sequence determined by  $[CLKN_{16-12} + \text{interlace\_offset}] \bmod 32$ . If on this second scan the correlator exceeds the trigger threshold the device shall enter the **slave response** substate using  $[CLKN_{16-12} + \text{interlace\_offset}] \bmod 32$  as the frozen  $CLKN^*$  in the calculation for  $X_{\text{PRS}}^{(79)}$  (see [Section 2.6.4.3 on page 96](#) for details). If the correlator does not exceed the trigger threshold during a scan in normal mode or during the second scan in interlaced scan mode it shall return to either the **STANDBY** or **CONNECTION** state.

The  $\text{interlace\_offset}$  value ranges from 0 to 31. The value 16 should be used unless the pattern of slots that are not available for scanning implies a different value should be used.

The **page scan** substate can be entered from the **STANDBY** state or the **CONNECTION** state. In the **STANDBY** state, no connection has been established and the device can use all the capacity to carry out the **page scan**. Before entering the **page scan** substate from the **CONNECTION** state, the device should reserve as much capacity as possible for scanning. If desired, the device may place ACL connections in Hold, Park, or Sniff (see [Section 8.8 on page 197](#) and [Section 8.9 on page 197](#)). Synchronous connections should not be interrupted by the **page scan**, although eSCO retransmissions should be paused during the scan. The **page scan** may be interrupted by the reserved synchronous slots which should have higher priority than the **page scan**. SCO packets should be used requiring the least amount of capacity (**HV3** packets). The scan window shall be increased to minimize the setup delay. If one SCO logical transport is present using **HV3** packets and  $T_{\text{SCO}}=6$  slots or one eSCO logical transport is present using **EV3** packets and  $T_{\text{ESCO}}=6$  slots, a total scan window  $T_w$  **page scan** of at least 36 slots (22.5ms) is recommended; if two SCO links are present using **HV3** packets and  $T_{\text{SCO}}=6$  slots or two eSCO links are present using **EV3** packets and  $T_{\text{ESCO}}=6$  slots, a total scan window of at least 54 slots (33.75ms) is recommended.

The scan interval  $T_{\text{page scan}}$  is defined as the interval between the beginnings of two consecutive **page scans**. A distinction is made between the case where the scan interval is equal to the scan window  $T_w$  **page scan** (continuous scan), the scan interval is maximal 1.28s, or the scan interval is maximal 2.56s. These three cases shall determine the behavior of the paging device; that is, whether the paging device shall use R0, R1 or R2, see also [Section 8.3.2 on page 162](#). [Table 8.1](#) illustrates the relationship between  $T_{\text{page scan}}$  and modes R0, R1 and R2. Although scanning in the R0 mode is continuous, the scanning may be interrupted for example by reserved synchronous slots. The scan interval information is included in the SR field in the FHS packet.

SR mode	$T_{\text{page scan}}$
R0	$\leq 1.28\text{s}$ and $= T_w \text{ page scan}$
R1	$\leq 1.28\text{s}$
R2	$\leq 2.56\text{s}$
Reserved	-

Table 8.1: Relationship between scan interval, and paging modes R0, R1, and R2

### 8.3.2 Page substate

The **page** substate is used by the master (source) to activate and connect to a slave (destination) in the **page scan** substate. The master tries to coincide with the slave's scan activity by repeatedly transmitting the paging message consisting of the slave's device access code (DAC) in different hop channels. Since the Bluetooth clocks of the master and the slave are not synchronized, the master does not know exactly when the slave wakes up and on which hop frequency. Therefore, it transmits a train of identical page scan messages at different hop frequencies and listens in between the transmit intervals until it receives a response from the slave.

The page procedure in the master consists of a number of steps. First, the Host communicates the BD\_ADDR of the slave to the Controller. This BD\_ADDR shall be used by the master to determine the page hopping sequence; see [Section 2.6.4.2 on page 96](#). For the phase in the sequence, the master shall use an estimate of the slave's clock. For example, this estimate can be derived from timing information that was exchanged during the last encounter with this particular device (which could have acted as a master at that time), or from an inquiry procedure. With this estimate CLKE of the slave's Bluetooth clock, the master can predict on which hop channel the slave starts page scanning.

The estimate of the Bluetooth clock in the slave can be completely wrong. Although the master and the slave use the same hopping sequence, they use different phases in the sequence and might never select the same frequency. To compensate for the clock drifts, the master shall send its page message during a short time interval on a number of wake-up frequencies. It shall transmit also on hop frequencies just before and after the current, predicted hop frequency. During each TX slot, the master shall sequentially transmit on two different hop frequencies. In the following RX slot, the receiver shall listen sequentially to two corresponding RX hops for an ID packet. The RX hops shall be selected according to the page response hopping sequence. The page response hopping sequence is strictly related to the page hopping sequence: for each page hop there is a corresponding page response hop. The RX/TX timing in the **page** substate is described in [Section 2.2.5](#), see also [Figure 2.7 on page 81](#). In the next TX slot, the master shall transmit on two hop frequen-

cies different from the former ones. Note: The hop rate is increased to 3200 hops/s.

With the increased hopping rate as described above, the transmitter can cover 16 different hop frequencies in 16 slots or 10 ms. The page hopping sequence is divided over two paging trains **A** and **B** of 16 frequencies. Train **A** includes the 16 hop frequencies surrounding the current, predicted hop frequency  $f(k)$ , where  $k$  is determined by the clock estimate  $CLKE_{16-12}$ . The first train consists of hops

$$f(k-8), f(k-7), \dots, f(k), \dots, f(k+7)$$

When the difference between the Bluetooth clocks of the master and the slave is between  $-8 \times 1.28$  s and  $+7 \times 1.28$  s, one of the frequencies used by the master will be the hop frequency the slave will listen to. Since the master does not know when the slave will enter the **page scan** substate, the master has to repeat this train **A**  $N_{page}$  times or until a response is obtained, whichever is shorter. If the slave scan interval corresponds to  $R1$ , the repetition number is at least 128; if the slave scan interval corresponds to  $R2$  or if the master has not previously read the slave's SR mode, the repetition number is at least 256. If the master has not previously read the slave's SR mode it shall use  $N_{page} \geq 256$ . Note that  $CLKE_{16-12}$  changes every 1.28 s; therefore, every 1.28 s, the trains will include different frequencies of the page hopping set.

When the difference between the Bluetooth clocks of the master and the slave is less than  $-8 \times 1.28$  s or larger than  $+7 \times 1.28$  s, the remaining 16 hops are used to form the new 10 ms train **B**. The second train consists of hops

$$f(k-16), f(k-15), \dots, f(k-9), f(k+8), \dots, f(k+15)$$

Train **B** shall be repeated for  $N_{page}$  times. If no response is obtained,  $k_{nudge}$  may be updated in the case where slots to receive are periodically not available and train **A** shall be tried again  $N_{page}$  times. Alternate use of train **A** and train **B** and updates of  $k_{nudge}$  shall be continued until a response is received or the timeout  $pageTO$  is exceeded. When  $extended\_pageTO$  is greater than zero, the timeout may be extended to  $(pageTO + extended\_page\_TO)$ . If a response is returned by the slave, the master device enters the **master response** substate.

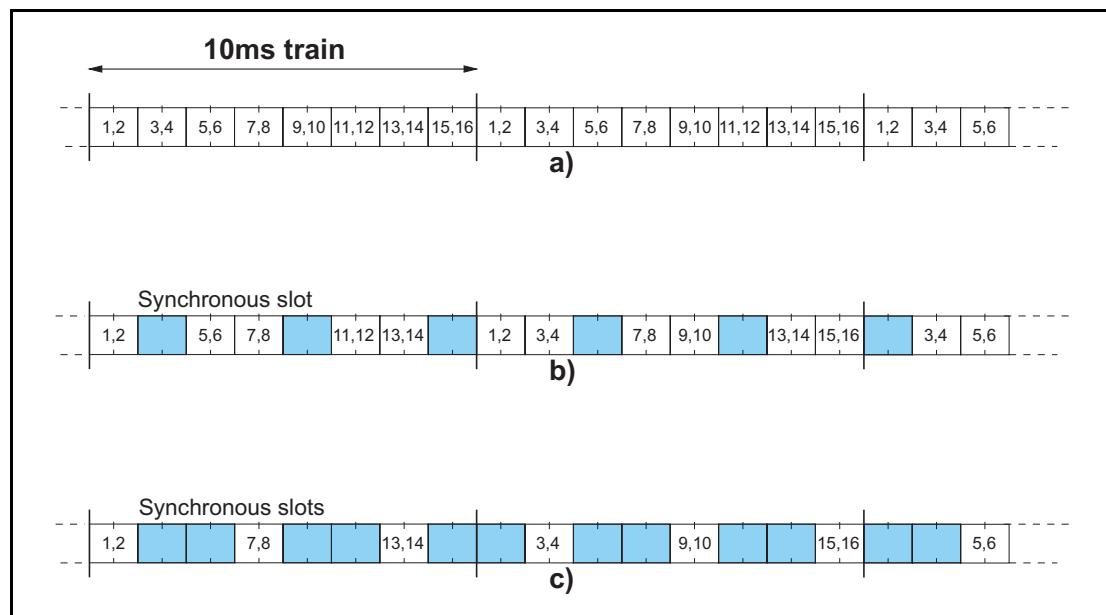
The **page** substate may be entered from the **STANDBY** state or the **CONNECTION** state. In the **STANDBY** state, no connection has been established and the device can use all the capacity to carry out the page. Before entering the **page** substate from the **CONNECTION** state, the device should free as much capacity as possible for paging. To ensure this, it is recommended that the ACL connections are put on hold or park. However, the synchronous connections shall not be disturbed by the page. This means that the page will be interrupted by the reserved SCO and eSCO slots which have higher priority than the page. In order to obtain as much capacity for paging, it is recommended to use the SCO packets which use the least amount of capacity (**HV3** packets). If SCO or

eSCO links are present, the repetition number  $N_{\text{page}}$  of a single train shall be increased, see [Table 8.2](#). Here it has been assumed that the **HV3** packet are used with an interval  $T_{\text{SCO}}=6$  slots or **EV3** packets are used with an interval of  $T_{\text{ESCO}}=6$  slots, which would correspond to a 64 kb/s synchronous link.

SR mode	no synchronous link	one synchronous link (HV3)	two synchronous links (HV3)
R0	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 1$	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 2$	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 3$
R1	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 128$	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 256$	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 384$
R2	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 256$	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 512$	$N_{\text{page}} \geq 768$

*Table 8.2: Relationship between train repetition, and paging modes R0, R1 and R2 when synchronous links are present*

The construction of the page train shall be independent of the presence of synchronous links; that is, synchronous packets are sent on the reserved slots but shall not affect the hop frequencies used in the unreserved slots, see [Figure 8.2 on page 164](#).



*Figure 8.2: Conventional page (a), page while one synchronous link present (b), page while two synchronous links present (c)*

### 8.3.3 Page Response Substates

When a page message is successfully received by the slave, there is a coarse FH synchronization between the master and the slave. Both the master and the slave enter a response substate to exchange vital information to continue the connection setup. It is important for the piconet connection that both devices shall use the same channel access code, use the same channel hopping sequence, and their clocks are synchronized. These parameters shall be derived from the master device. The device that initializes the connection (starts paging) is defined as the master device (which is thus only valid during the time the piconet exists). The channel access code and channel hopping sequence shall be derived from the Bluetooth device address (BD\_ADDR) of the master. The timing shall be determined by the master clock. An offset shall be added to the slave's native clock to temporarily synchronize the slave clock to the master clock. At start-up, the master parameters are transmitted from the master to the slave. The messaging between the master and the slave at start-up is specified in this section.

The initial messaging between master and slave is shown in [Table 8.3 on page 165](#) and in [Figure 8.3 on page 166](#) and [Figure 8.4 on page 166](#). In those two figures frequencies  $f(k)$ ,  $f(k+1)$ , etc. are the frequencies of the page hopping sequence determined by the slave's BD\_ADDR. The frequencies  $f'(k)$ ,  $f'(k+1)$ , etc. are the corresponding page\_response frequencies (slave-to-master). The frequencies  $g(m)$  belong to the basic channel hopping sequence.

Step	Message	Packet Type	Direction	Hopping Sequence	Access Code and Clock
1	Page	ID	Master to slave	Page	Slave
2	First slave page response	ID	Slave to master	Page response	Slave
3	Master page response	FHS	Master to slave	Page	Slave
4	Second slave page response	ID	Slave to master	Page response	Slave
5	1st packet master	POLL	Master to slave	Channel	Master
6	1st packet slave	Any type	Slave to master	Channel	Master

Table 8.3: Initial messaging during start-up

In step 1 (see [Table 8.3 on page 165](#)), the master device is in **page** substate and the slave device in the **page scan** substate. Assume in this step that the page message sent by the master reaches the slave. On receiving the page message, the slave enters the **slave response** in step 2. The master waits for a reply from the slave and when this arrives in step 2, it shall enter the **master response** in step 3. Note that during the initial message exchange, all param-

ters are derived from the slave's device address, and that only the page hopping and page response hopping sequences are used (are also derived from the slave's device address). Note that when the master and slave enter the response states, their clock input to the page and page response hop selection is frozen as is described in [Section 2.6.4.3 on page 96](#).

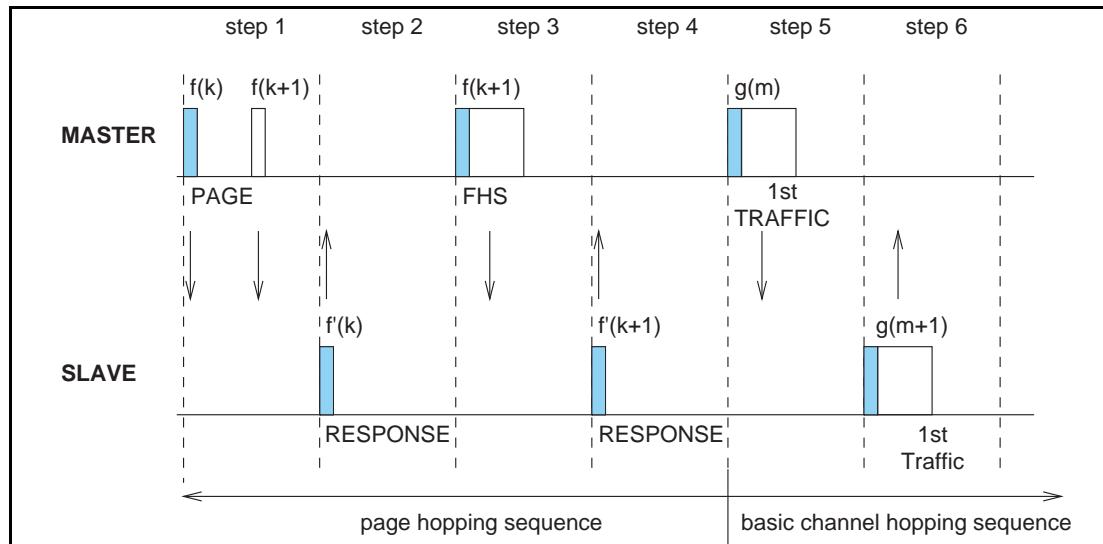


Figure 8.3: Messaging at initial connection when slave responds to first page message

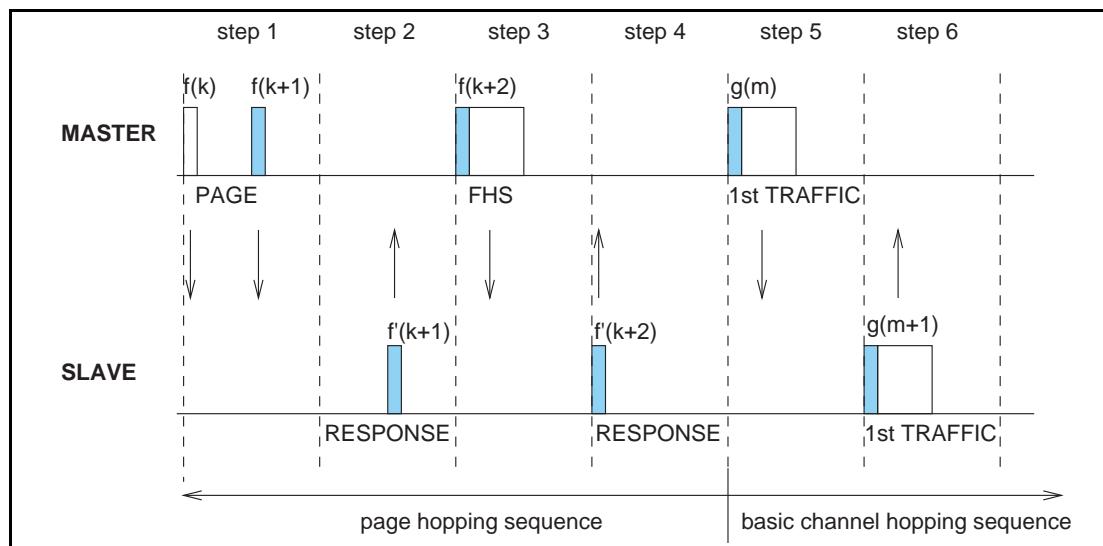


Figure 8.4: Messaging at initial connection when slave responds to second page message

In the case of the truncated page procedure, the messaging stops after step 2 in the sequence shown in [Table 8.3 on page 165](#). This procedure is illustrated in [Figure 8.5](#) and [Figure 8.6](#).

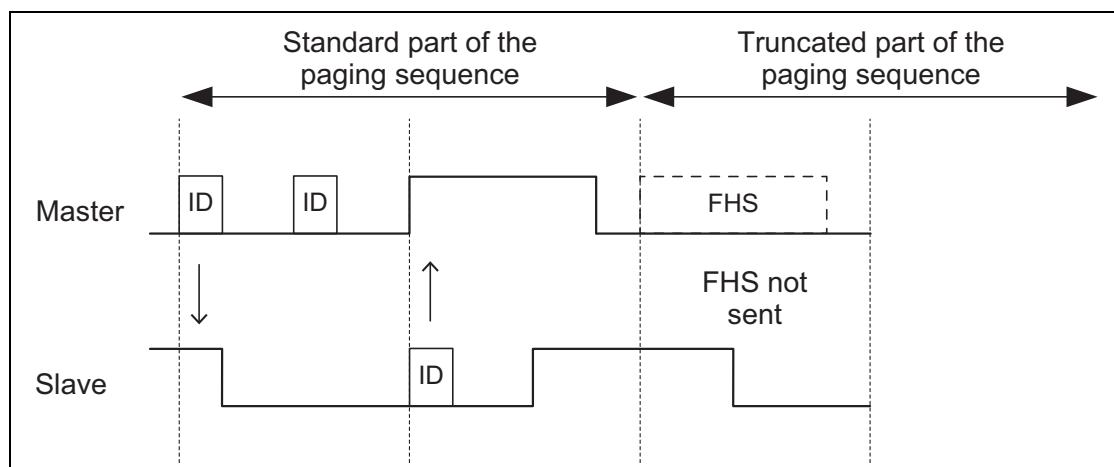


Figure 8.5: First half slot truncated page

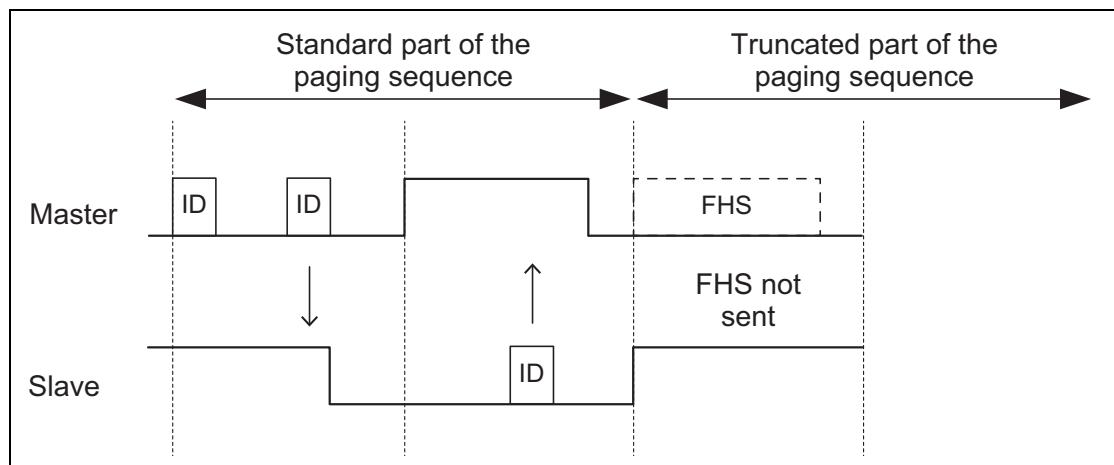


Figure 8.6: Second half slot truncated page

### 8.3.3.1 Slave response substate

After having received the page message in step 1, the slave device shall transmit a slave page response message (the slave's device access code) in step 2. This response message shall be the slave's device access code. The slave shall transmit this response 625 µs after the beginning of the received page message and at the response hop frequency that corresponds to the hop frequency in which the page message was received. The slave transmission is therefore time aligned to the master transmission. During initial messaging, the slave shall still use the page response hopping sequence to return information to the master. The clock input  $CLKN_{16-12}$  shall be frozen at the value it had at the time the page message was received.

After having sent the response message, the slave's receiver shall be activated 312.5 µs after the start of the response message and shall await the arrival of an **FHS** packet. Note that an **FHS** packet can arrive 312.5 µs after the arrival of the page message as shown in [Figure 8.4 on page 166](#), and not after 625 µs as

is usually the case in the piconet physical channel RX/TX timing. More details about the timing can be found in [Section 2.4.4 on page 82](#).

If the setup fails before the **CONNECTION** state has been reached, the following procedure shall be carried out. The slave shall listen as long as no **FHS** packet is received until *pagerespTO* is exceeded. Every 1.25 ms, however, it shall select the next master-to-slave hop frequency according to the page hop sequence. If nothing is received after *pagerespTO*, the slave shall return back to the **page scan** substate for one scan period. Length of the scan period depends on the synchronous reserved slots present. If no page message is received during this additional scan period, the slave shall resume scanning at its regular scan interval and return to the state it was in prior to the first page scan state.

If an **FHS** packet is received by the slave in the **slave response** substate, the slave shall return a slave page response message in step 4 to acknowledge reception of the **FHS** packet. This response shall use the page response hopping sequence. The transmission of the slave page response packet is based on the reception of the **FHS** packet. Then the slave shall change to the master's channel access code and clock as received from the **FHS** packet. Only the 26 MSBs of the master clock are transferred: the timing shall be such that  $\text{CLK}_1$  and  $\text{CLK}_0$  are both zero at the time the **FHS** packet was received as the master transmits in even slots only. The offset between the master's clock and the slave's clock shall be determined from the master's clock in the **FHS** packet and reported to the slave's Baseband Resource Manager.

Finally, the slave enters the **CONNECTION** state in step 5. From then on, the slave shall use the master's clock and the master's BD\_ADDR to determine the basic channel hopping sequence and the channel access code. The slave shall use the LT\_ADDR in the **FHS** payload as the primary LT\_ADDR in the **CONNECTION** state. The connection mode shall start with a POLL packet transmitted by the master. The slave may respond with any type of packet. If the POLL packet is not received by the slave, or the response packet is not received by the master, within *newconnectionTO* number of slots after FHS packet acknowledgement, the master and the slave shall return to **page** and **page scan** substates, respectively. See [Section 8.5 on page 174](#)

### 8.3.3.2 Master response substate

When the master has received a slave page response message in step 2, and the master is not executing the truncated page procedure, it shall enter the **master response** routine. It shall freeze the current clock input to the page hop selection scheme. The master shall then transmit an **FHS** packet in step 3 containing the master's real-time Bluetooth clock, the master's BD\_ADDR, the BCH parity bits, and the class of device. The **FHS** packet contains all information to construct the channel access code without requiring a mathematical derivation from the master's Bluetooth device address. The LT\_ADDR field in the packet header of FHS packets in the master response substate shall be set to all-zeros. The **FHS** packet

shall be transmitted at the beginning of the master-to-slave slot following the slot in which the slave responded. The FHS packet shall carry the all-zero LT\_ADDR. The TX timing of the **FHS** is not based on the reception of the response packet from the slave. The **FHS** packet may therefore be sent 312.5 µs after the reception of the response packet like shown in [Figure 8.4 on page 166](#) and not 625 µs after the received packet as is usual in the piconet physical channel RX/TX timing, see also [Section 2.4.4 on page 82](#).

After the master has sent its **FHS** packet, it shall wait for a second slave page response message in step 4 acknowledging the reception of the **FHS** packet. This response shall be the slave's device access code. If no response is received, the master shall retransmit the **FHS** packet with an updated clock and still using the slave's parameters. It shall retransmit the FHS packet with the clock updated each time until a second slave page response message is received, or the timeout of *pagerespTO* is exceeded. In the latter case, the master shall return to the **page** substate and send an error message to the Baseband Resource Manager. During the retransmissions of the **FHS** packet, the master shall use the page hopping sequence.

If the slave's response is received, the master shall change to using the master parameters, so it shall use the channel access code and the master clock. The lower clock bits CLK<sub>0</sub> and CLK<sub>1</sub> shall be reset to zero at the start of the **FHS** packet transmission and are not included in the **FHS** packet. Finally, the master enters the **CONNECTION** state in step 5. The master BD\_ADDR shall be used to change to a new hopping sequence, the *basic channel hopping sequence*. The basic channel hopping sequence uses all 79 hop channels in a pseudo-random fashion, see also [Section 2.6.4.7 on page 98](#). The master shall now send its first traffic packet in a hop determined with the new (master) parameters. This first packet shall be a POLL packet. See [Section 8.5 on page 174](#). This packet shall be sent within *newconnectionTO* number of slots after reception of the FHS packet acknowledgement. The slave may respond with any type of packet. If the POLL packet is not received by the slave or the POLL packet response is not received by the master within *newconnectionTO* number of slots, the master and the slave shall return to **page** and **page scan** substates, respectively.

## 8.4 DEVICE DISCOVERY SUBSTATES

In order to discover other devices a device shall enter **inquiry** substate. In this substate, it shall repeatedly transmit the inquiry message (ID packet, see [Section 6.5.1.1 on page 126](#)) at different hop frequencies. The **inquiry** hop sequence is derived from the LAP of the GIAC. Thus, even when DIACs are used, the applied hopping sequence is generated from the GIAC LAP. A device that allows itself to be discovered, shall regularly enter the **inquiry scan** substate to respond to inquiry messages. The following sections describe the message exchange and contention resolution during inquiry response. The inquiry response is optional: a device is not forced to respond to an inquiry message.

During the **inquiry** substate, the discovering device collects the Bluetooth device addresses and clocks of all devices that respond to the inquiry message. In addition, the discovering device also collects extended information (e.g. local name and supported services) from devices that respond with an extended inquiry response packet. It can then, if desired, make a connection to any one of the discovered devices by means of the previously described page procedure.

The inquiry message broadcast by the source does not contain any information about the source. However, it may indicate which class of devices should respond. There is one general inquiry access code (GIAC) to inquire for any device, and a number of dedicated inquiry access codes (DIAC) that only inquire for a certain type of device. The inquiry access codes are derived from reserved Bluetooth device addresses and are further described in [Section 6.3.1](#).

#### 8.4.1 Inquiry scan substate

The **inquiry scan** substate is very similar to the **page scan** substate. However, instead of scanning for the device's device access code, the receiver shall scan for the inquiry access code long enough to completely scan for 16 inquiry frequencies. Two types of scans are defined: standard and generalized interlaced. In the case of a standard scan the length of this scan period is denoted  $T_{w\_inquiry\_scan}$  (11.25ms default, see HCI [\[Part E\] Section 7.3.22 on page 684](#)). The standard scan is performed at a single hop frequency as defined by  $Xir_{4..0}$  (see [Section 2.6.4.6 on page 98](#)). The generalized interlaced scan is performed as two back to back scans of  $T_{w\_inquiry\_scan}$  where the first scan is on the normal hop frequency and the second scan is defined by  $[Xir_{4..0} + interlace\_offset] \bmod 32$ . If the scan interval is not at least twice the scan window then generalized interlaced scan shall not be used. The inquiry procedure uses 32 dedicated inquiry hop frequencies according to the inquiry hopping sequence. These frequencies are determined by the general inquiry address. The phase is determined by the native clock of the device carrying out the **inquiry scan**; the phase changes every 1.28s.

The `interlace_offset` value ranges from 0 to 31. The value 16 should be used unless the pattern of slots that are not available for scanning implies a different value should be used.

Instead of, or in addition to, the general inquiry access code, the device may scan for one or more dedicated inquiry access codes. However, the scanning shall follow the inquiry scan hopping sequence determined by the general inquiry address. If an inquiry message is received during an inquiry wake-up period, the device shall enter the **inquiry response** substate.

The **inquiry scan** substate can be entered from the **STANDBY** state or the **CONNECTION** state. In the **STANDBY** state, no connection has been established and the device can use all the capacity to carry out the **inquiry scan**.

Before entering the **inquiry scan** substate from the **CONNECTION** state, the device should reserve as much capacity as possible for scanning. If desired, the device may place ACL logical transports in Sniff, Hold, or Park. Synchronous logical transports are preferably not interrupted by the **inquiry scan**, although eSCO retransmissions should be paused during the scan. In this case, the **inquiry scan** may be interrupted by the reserved synchronous slots. SCO packets should be used requiring the least amount of capacity (**HV3** packets). The scan window,  $T_w$  inquiry scan, shall be increased to increase the probability to respond to an inquiry message. If one SCO logical transport is present using HV3 packets and  $T_{SCO}=6$  slots or one eSCO logical transport is present using EV3 packets and  $T_{ESCO}=6$  slots, a total scan window of at least 36 slots (22.5ms) is recommended; if two SCO links are present using HV3 packets and  $T_{SCO}=6$  slots or two eSCO links are present using EV3 packets and  $T_{ESCO}=6$  slots, a total scan window of at least 54 slots (33.75ms) is recommended.

The scan interval  $T_{inquiry\ scan}$  is defined as the interval between two consecutive inquiry scans. The **inquiry scan** interval shall be less than or equal to 2.56 s.

#### 8.4.2 Inquiry Substate

The **inquiry** substate is used to discover new devices. This substate is very similar to the **page** substate; the TX/RX timing shall be the same as in paging, see [Section 2.4.4 on page 82](#) and [Figure 2.7 on page 81](#). The TX and RX frequencies shall follow the inquiry hopping sequence and the inquiry response hopping sequence, and are determined by the general inquiry access code and the native clock of the discovering device. In between inquiry transmissions, the receiver shall scan for inquiry response messages. When a response is received, the entire packet (an FHS packet) shall be read. If the EIR bit in the FHS packet is set to one, the device should try to receive the extended inquiry response packet 1250µs after the start of the FHS packet. After this, the device shall continue with inquiry transmissions. The device in an **inquiry** substate shall not acknowledge the inquiry response messages. If enabled by the Host (see [HCI \[Part E\] Section 7.3.50 on page 721](#)), the RSSI value of the inquiry response message shall be measured. It shall keep probing at different hop channels and in between listening for response packets. As in the **page** substate, two 10 ms trains **A** and **B** are defined, splitting the 32 frequencies of the inquiry hopping sequence into two 16-hop parts. A single train shall be repeated for at least  $N_{inquiry}=256$  times before a new train is used. In order to collect all responses in an error-free environment, at least three train switches must have taken place. As a result, the **inquiry** substate may have to last for 10.24 s unless the inquirer collects enough responses and aborts the **inquiry** substate earlier. If desired, the inquirer may also prolong the **inquiry** substate to increase the probability of receiving all responses in an error-prone environment. When some receive slots are periodically not available, it may require up to 31 train switches to collect all responses in an error-free environment, depending on the pattern of the available receive slots. Before each switch to

train A,  $k_{\text{nudge}}$  may be updated. As a result, the **inquiry** substate may have to last for 40.96s. If an inquiry procedure is automatically initiated periodically (say a 10 s period every minute), then the interval between two inquiry instances shall be determined randomly. This is done to avoid two devices synchronizing their inquiry procedures.

The **inquiry** substate is continued until stopped by the Baseband Resource Manager (when it decides that it has sufficient number of responses), when a timeout has been reached (*Inquiry\_Length*), or by a command from the host to cancel the inquiry procedure. In case *Extended\_Inquiry\_Length* is different from zero, the timeout may be extended to (*Inquiry\_Length* + *Extended\_Inquiry\_Length*).

The **inquiry** substate can be entered from the **STANDBY** state or the **CONNECTION** state. In the **STANDBY** state, no connection has been established and the device can use all the capacity to carry out the inquiry. Before entering the **inquiry** substate from the **CONNECTION** state, the device should free as much capacity as possible for inquiry. To ensure this, it is recommended that the ACL logical transports are placed in Sniff, Hold, or Park. However, the reserved slots of synchronous logical transports shall not be disturbed by the inquiry. This means that the inquiry will be interrupted by the reserved SCO and eSCO slots which have higher priority than the inquiry. In order to obtain as much capacity as possible for inquiry, it is recommended to use the SCO packets which use the least amount of capacity (**HV3** packets). If SCO or eSCO links are present, the repetition number  $N_{\text{inquiry}}$  shall be increased, see [Table 8.4 on page 172](#).

Here it has been assumed that **HV3** packets are used with an interval  $T_{\text{SCO}}=6$  slots or **EV3** packets are used with an interval of  $T_{\text{ESCO}}=6$  slots, which would correspond to a 64 kb/s synchronous link.

	No synchronous links	One synchronous link (HV3)	Two synchronous links (HV3)
$N_{\text{inquiry}}$	$\geq 256$	$\geq 512$	$\geq 768$

*Table 8.4: Increase of train repetition when synchronous links are present*

If an extended inquiry response packet could not be received because of higher priority traffic, the reception failed due to HEC or CRC failure, or because the packet type is not supported by the device, the inquiry response shall be reported to higher layers as an extended inquiry response with all-zero data.

### 8.4.3 Inquiry Response Substate

The slave response substate for inquiries differs completely from the slave response substate applied for pages. When the inquiry message is received in the inquiry scan substate, the recipient shall return an inquiry response (FHS) packet containing the recipient's device address (BD\_ADDR) and other parameters. If the

recipient has non-zero extended inquiry response data to send it shall return an extended inquiry response packet after the FHS packet.

The following protocol in the slave's **inquiry response** shall be used. On the first inquiry message received in the inquiry scan substate the slave shall enter the inquiry response substate. If the slave has non-zero extended inquiry response data to send it shall return an FHS packet with the EIR bit set to one to the master 625 $\mu$ s after the inquiry message was received. It shall then return an extended inquiry response packet 1250 $\mu$ s after the start of the FHS packet. If the slave's extended inquiry response data is all zeroes the slave shall only return an FHS packet with the EIR bit set to zero. A contention problem could arise when several devices are in close proximity to the inquiring device and all respond to an inquiry message at the same time. However, because every device has a free running clock it is highly unlikely that they all use the same phase of the inquiry hopping sequence. In order to avoid repeated collisions between devices that wake up in the same inquiry hop channel simultaneously, a device shall back-off for a random period of time. Thus, if the device receives an inquiry message and returns an FHS packet, it shall generate a random number, RAND, between 0 and MAX\_RAND. For scanning intervals  $\geq$  1.28s MAX\_RAND shall be 1023, however, for scanning intervals  $<$  1.28s MAX\_RAND may be as small as 127. A profile that uses a special DIAC may choose to use a smaller MAX\_RAND than 1023 even when the scanning interval is  $\geq$  1.28s. The slave shall return to the **CONNECTION** or **STANDBY** state for the duration of at least RAND time slots. Before returning to the **CONNECTION** and **STANDBY** state, the device may go through the **page scan** substate. After at least RAND slots, the device shall add an offset of 1 to the phase in the inquiry hop sequence (the phase has a 1.28 s resolution) and return to the **inquiry scan** substate again. If the slave is triggered again, it shall repeat the procedure using a new RAND. The offset to the clock accumulates each time an **FHS** packet is returned. During a probing window, a slave may respond multiple times, but on different frequencies and at different times. Reserved synchronous slots should have priority over response packets; that is, if a response packet overlaps with a reserved synchronous slot, it shall not be sent but the next inquiry message is awaited. If a device has extended inquiry response data to send but the extended inquiry response packet overlaps with a reserved synchronous slot the FHS packet may be sent with the EIR bit set to zero.

The messaging during the inquiry routines is summarized in [Table 8.5 on page 174](#). In step 1, the master transmits an inquiry message using the inquiry access code and its own clock. The slave responds with the **FHS** packet containing the slave's Bluetooth device address, native clock and other slave information. This **FHS** packet is returned at times that tend to be random. The **FHS** packet is not acknowledged in the inquiry routine, but it is retransmitted at other times and frequencies as long as the master is probing with inquiry messages. If the slave has non-zero extended inquiry response data it sends an extended inquiry response packet to the master in step 3.

The extended inquiry response packet is an ACL packet with type DM1, DM3, DM5, DH1, DH3 or DH5. To minimize interference it is recommended to use the shortest packet that fits the data. The packet shall be sent on the same frequency as the FHS packet, 1250 µs after the start of the FHS packet. In the packet header, LT\_ADDR shall be set to zero. TYPE shall be one of DM1, DM3, DM5, DH1, DH3 or DH5. FLOW, ARQN and SEQN shall all be set to zero and ignored during receipt. The HEC LFSR shall be initialized with the same DCI (default check initialization) as for the FHS packet. In the payload header, LLID shall contain the value 10 (start of an L2CAP message or no fragmentation). FLOW shall be set to zero and ignored upon receipt. The length of the payload body (LENGTH) shall be smaller than or equal to 240 bytes. The CRC LFSR shall be initialized with the same DCI as for the FHS packet. The data whitening LFSR shall be initialized with the same value as for the FHS packet.

The payload data has two parts, a significant part followed by a non-significant part. The significant part contains a sequence of data structures as defined in [\[Vol. 3, Part C\] Section 8 on page 345](#). The non-significant part contains all-zero octets.

The baseband shall not change any octets in the significant part. When transmitting data, the non-significant part octets may be omitted from the payload.

A device shall store a single extended inquiry response packet. This packet shall be used with all IACs.

Step	Message	Packet Type	Direction	Hopping Sequence	Access Code and Clock
1	Inquiry	ID	master to slave	inquiry	inquiry
2	Inquiry response	FHS	slave to master	inquiry response	inquiry
3	Extended Inquiry Response	DM1, DM3, DM5, DH1, DH3, DH5	slave to master	inquiry response *	inquiry

*Table 8.5: Messaging during inquiry routines*

\* The extended inquiry response packet is sent on the same frequency as the inquiry response (FHS) packet.

## 8.5 CONNECTION STATE

In the **CONNECTION** state, the connection has been established and packets can be sent back and forth, with the exception of connectionless slave broadcast mode, in which case packets are only sent from the master. In both devices, the channel (master) access code, the master's Bluetooth clock, and

the AFH\_channel\_map are used. **CONNECTION** state uses the *basic* or *adapted channel hopping sequence*.

There are two ways to enter the **CONNECTION** state. A device can transition from the page/page scan substates to the **CONNECTION** state or directly from the STANDBY state to the connectionless slave broadcast mode of the **CONNECTION** state.

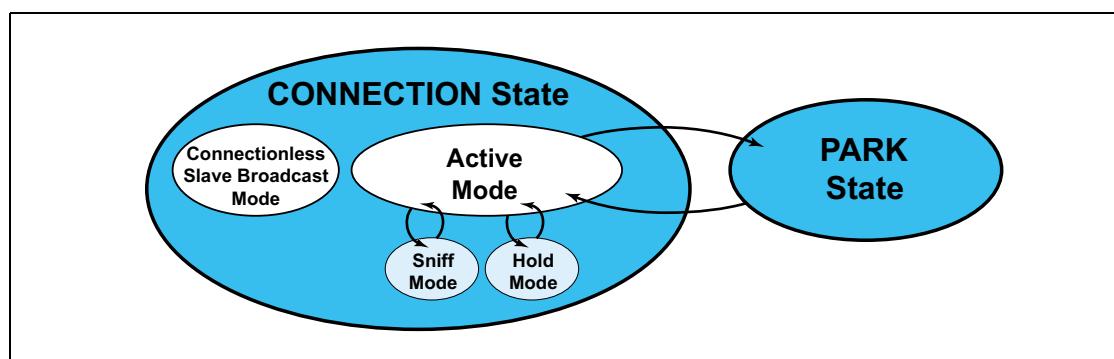
If a device enters from the page/page scan substates, the **CONNECTION** state starts with a POLL packet sent by the master to verify the switch to the master's timing and channel frequency hopping. The slave may respond with any type of packet. If the slave does not receive the POLL packet or the master does not receive the response packet for *newconnectionTO* number of slots, both devices shall return to **page/page scan** substates.

The first information packets in the **CONNECTION** state contain control messages that characterize the link and give more details regarding the devices. These messages are exchanged between the link managers of the devices. For example, they may define the SCO logical transport and the sniff parameters. Then the transfer of user information can start by alternately transmitting and receiving packets.

The **CONNECTION** state is left through a **detach** or **reset** command. The **detach** command is used if the link has been disconnected in the normal way; all configuration data in the link controller shall remain valid. The **reset** command is a soft reset of the link controller. The functionality of the soft reset is described in [\[Part E\] Section 7.3.2 on page 653](#).

In the **CONNECTION** state, if a device is not going to be nominally present on the channel at all times it may describe its unavailability by using sniff mode or hold mode (see [Figure 8.7 on page 175](#)).

If a device enters the connectionless slave broadcast mode of the **CONNECTION** state, the master starts by sending packets on the CSB logical transport and the slave starts by receiving packets sent on the CSB logical transport.



*Figure 8.7: Connection state*

## 8.6 ACTIVE MODE

In the active mode, both master and slave actively participate on the channel. Up to seven slaves may be in the active mode at any given time in a piconet. The master schedules the transmission based on traffic demands to and from the different slaves. In addition, it supports regular transmissions to keep slaves synchronized to the channel. Slaves in the active mode listen in the master-to-slave slots for packets. These devices are known as *active slaves*. If an active slave is not addressed, it may sleep until the next new master transmission. Slaves can derive the number of slots the master has reserved for transmission from the TYPE field in the packet header; during this time, the non-addressed slaves do not have to listen on the master-to-slave slots. When a device is participating in multiple piconets it should listen in the master-to-slave slot for the current piconet. It is recommended that a device not be away from each piconet in which it is participating for more than  $T_{poll}$  slots. A periodic master transmission is required to keep the slaves synchronized to the channel. Since the slaves only need the channel access code to synchronize, any packet type can be used for this purpose.

Only the slave that is addressed by one of its LT\_ADDRs (primary or secondary) may return a packet in the next slave-to-master slot. If no valid packet header is received, the slave may only respond in its reserved SCO or eSCO slave-to-master slot. In the case of a broadcast message, no slave shall return a packet (an exception is the access window for access requests in the **PARK** state, see [Section 8.9 on page 197](#)).

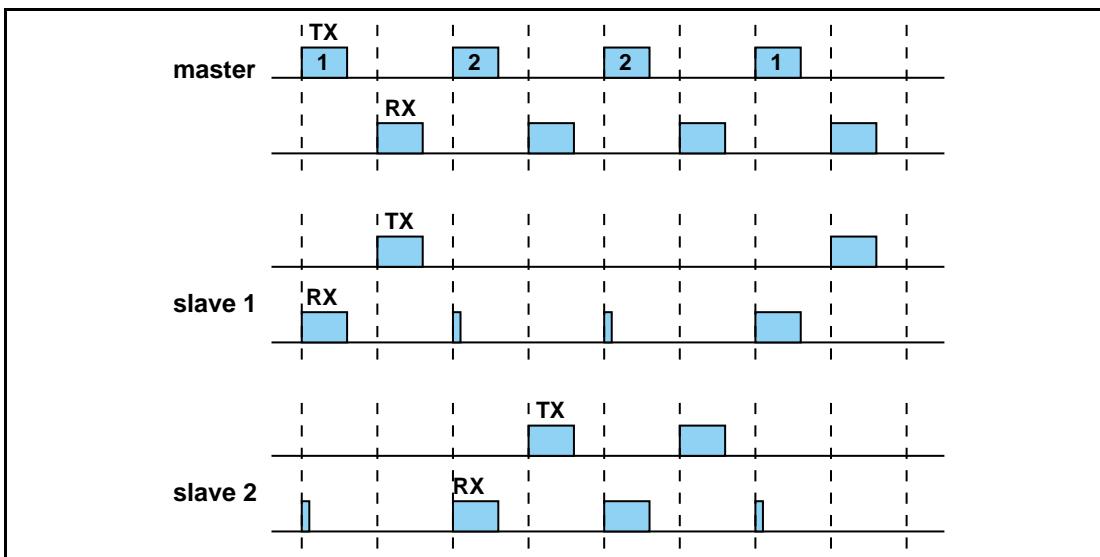


Figure 8.8: RX/TX timing in multi-slave configuration

For ACL logical transports the mode selection may be left to real time packet type selections. The packet type table (ptt) in section 6.5 allows the selection of Basic Rate or Enhanced Data Rate for each of the packet type codes, however; the DM1 packet is available in all packet type tables. ACL traffic over this given physical or logical link shall utilize the packet types in the given column of [Table 6.2 on page 125](#).

### 8.6.1 Polling in the Active Mode

The master always has full control over the piconet. Due to the TDD scheme, slaves can only communicate with the master and not other slaves. In order to avoid collisions on the ACL logical transport, a slave is only allowed to transmit in the slave-to-master slot when addressed by the LT\_ADDR in the packet header in the preceding master-to-slave slot. If the LT\_ADDR in the preceding slot does not match, or a valid packet header was not received, the slave shall not transmit.

The master normally attempts to poll a slave's ACL logical transport no less often than once every  $T_{\text{poll}}$  slots.  $T_{\text{poll}}$  is set by the Link Manager (see [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.8 on page 263](#)).

The slave's ACL logical transport may be polled with any packet type except for FHS and ID. For example, polling during SCO may use HV packets, since the slave may respond to an HV packet with a DM1 packet (see [Section 8.6.2 on page 177](#)).

### 8.6.2 SCO

The SCO logical transport shall be established by the master sending a SCO setup message via the LM protocol. This message contains timing parameters including the SCO interval  $T_{\text{SCO}}$  and the offset  $D_{\text{SCO}}$  to specify the reserved slots.

In order to prevent clock wrap-around problems, an initialization flag in the LMP setup message indicates whether initialization procedure 1 or 2 is being used. The slave shall apply the initialization method as indicated by the initialization flag. The master shall use initialization 1 when the MSB of the current master clock ( $\text{CLK}_{27}$ ) is 0; it shall use initialization 2 when the MSB of the current master clock ( $\text{CLK}_{27}$ ) is 1. The master-to-slave SCO slots reserved by the master and the slave shall be initialized on the slots for which the clock satisfies the applicable equation:

$$\text{CLK}_{27-1} \bmod T_{\text{SCO}} = D_{\text{SCO}} \quad \text{for initialization 1}$$

$$(\overline{\text{CLK}}_{27}, \text{CLK}_{26-1}) \bmod T_{\text{SCO}} = D_{\text{SCO}} \quad \text{for initialization 2}$$

The slave-to-master SCO slots shall directly follow the reserved master-to-slave SCO slots. After initialization, the clock value  $\text{CLK}(k+1)$  for the next master-to-slave SCO slot shall be derived by adding the fixed interval  $T_{\text{SCO}}$  to the clock value of the current master-to-slave SCO slot:

$$\text{CLK}(k+1) = \text{CLK}(k) + T_{\text{SCO}}$$

The master will send SCO packets to the slave at regular intervals (the SCO interval  $T_{\text{SCO}}$  counted in slots) in the reserved master-to-slave slots. An HV1

packet can carry 1.25ms of speech at a 64 kb/s rate. An HV1 packet shall therefore be sent every two time slots ( $T_{SCO}=2$ ). An HV2 packet can carry 2.5ms of speech at a 64 kb/s rate. An HV2 packet shall therefore be sent every four time slots ( $T_{SCO}=4$ ). An HV3 packet can carry 3.75ms of speech at a 64 kb/s rate. An HV3 packet shall therefore be sent every six time slots ( $T_{SCO}=6$ ).

The slave is allowed to transmit in the slot reserved for its SCO logical transport unless the (valid) LT\_ADDR in the preceding slot indicates a different slave. If no valid LT\_ADDR can be derived in the preceding slot, the slave may still transmit in the reserved SCO slot.

Since the DM1 packet is recognized on the SCO logical transport, it may be sent during the SCO reserved slots if a valid packet header with the primary LT\_ADDR is received in the preceding slot. DM1 packets sent during SCO reserved slots shall only be used to send ACL-C data.

The slave shall not transmit anything other than an HV packet in a reserved SCO slot unless it decodes its own slave address in the packet header of the packet in the preceding master-to-slave transmission slot.

### 8.6.3 eSCO

The eSCO logical transport is established by the master sending an eSCO setup message via the LM protocol. This message contains timing parameters including the eSCO interval  $T_{ESCO}$  and the offset  $D_{ESCO}$  to specify the reserved slots.

To enter eSCO, the master or slave shall send an eSCO setup command via the LM protocol. This message shall contain the eSCO interval  $T_{ESCO}$  and an offset  $D_{ESCO}$ . In order to prevent clock wrap-around problems, an initialization flag in the LMP setup message indicates whether initialization procedure 1 or 2 shall be used. The initiating device shall use initialization 1 when the MSB of the current master clock ( $CLK_{27}$ ) is 0; it shall use initialization 2 when the MSB of the current master clock ( $CLK_{27}$ ) is 1. The responding device shall apply the initialization method as indicated by the initialization flag. The master-to-slave eSCO slots reserved by the master and the slave shall be initialized on the slots for which the clock satisfies the applicable equation:

$$CLK_{27-1} \bmod T_{ESCO} = D_{ESCO} \quad \text{for initialization 1}$$

$$(\overline{CLK}_{27}, CLK_{26-1}) \bmod T_{ESCO} = D_{ESCO} \quad \text{for initialization 2}$$

The slave-to-master eSCO slots shall directly follow the reserved master-to-slave eSCO slots. After initialization, the clock value  $CLK(k+1)$  for the next master-to-slave eSCO slot shall be found by adding the fixed interval  $T_{ESCO}$  to the clock value of the current master-to-slave eSCO slot:

$$CLK(k+1) = CLK(k) + T_{ESCO}$$

When an eSCO logical transport is established, the master shall assign an additional LT\_ADDR to the slave. This provides the eSCO logical transport with an ARQ scheme that is separate from that of the ACL logical transport. All traffic on a particular eSCO logical transport, and only that eSCO traffic, is carried on the eSCO LT\_ADDR. The eSCO ARQ scheme uses the ARQN bit in the packet header, and operates similarly to the ARQ scheme on ACL links.

There are two different polling rules in eSCO. In the eSCO reserved slots, the polling rule is the same as to the SCO reserved slots. The master may send a packet in the master slot. The slave may transmit on the eSCO LT\_ADDR in the following slot either if it received a packet on the eSCO LT\_ADDR in the previous slot, or if it did not receive a valid packet header in the previous slot. When the master-to-slave packet type is a three-slot packet, the slave's transmit slot is the fourth slot of the eSCO reserved slots. A master shall transmit in an eSCO retransmission window on a given eSCO LT\_ADDR only if it addressed that eSCO LT\_ADDR or did not transmit any packet in the immediately preceding eSCO reserved slots. A slave may transmit on an eSCO LT\_ADDR in the eSCO reserved slots only if the slave did not receive a valid packet header with a different LT\_ADDR in the eSCO reserved slots. Inside retransmission windows, the same polling rule as for ACL traffic is used: the slave shall transmit on the eSCO channel only if it received a valid packet header and correct LT\_ADDR on the eSCO channel in the previous master-to-slave transmission slot. The master may transmit on any non-eSCO LT\_ADDR in any master-to-slave transmission slot inside the eSCO retransmission window. The master shall only transmit on an eSCO LT\_ADDR in the retransmission window if there are enough slots left for both the master and slave packets to complete in the retransmission window. The master may refrain from transmitting in any slot during the eSCO retransmission window. When there is no data to transmit from master to slave, either due to the traffic being unidirectional or due to the master-to-slave packet having been ACK'ed, the master shall use the POLL packet. When the master-to-slave packet has been ACK'ed, and the slave-to-master packet has been correctly received, the master shall not address the slave on the eSCO LT\_ADDR until the next eSCO reserved slot, with the exception that the master may transmit a NULL packet with ARQN=ACK on the eSCO LT\_ADDR. When there is no data to transmit from slave to master, either due to the traffic being unidirectional or due to the slave-to-master packet having been ACK'ed, the slave shall use NULL packets. eSCO traffic should be given priority over ACL traffic in the retransmission window.

[Figure 8.9 on page 180](#) shows the eSCO window when single slot packets are used.

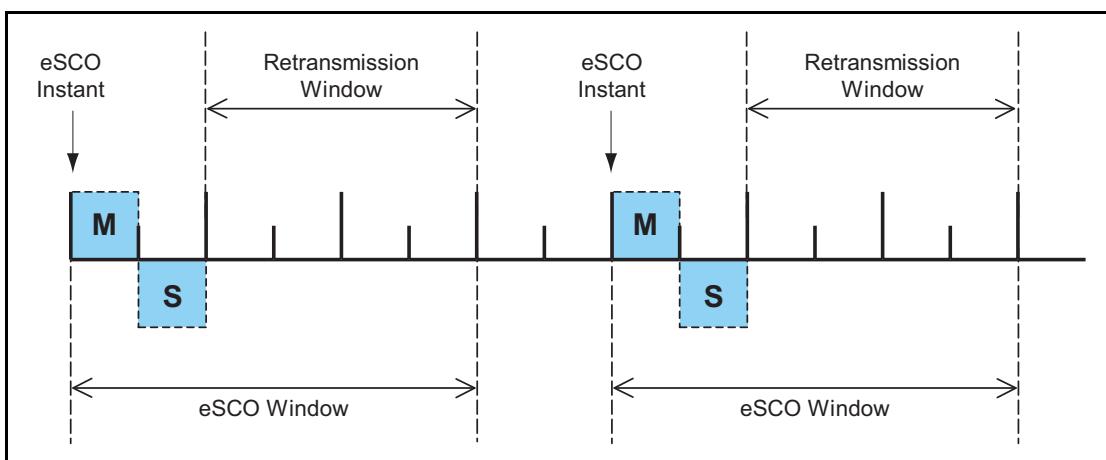


Figure 8.9: eSCO Window Details for Single-Slot Packets

When multi-slot packets are used in either direction of the eSCO logical transport, the first transmission continues into the following slots. The retransmission window in this case starts the slot after the end of the slave-to-master packet, i.e. two, four or six slots immediately following the eSCO instant are reserved and should not be used for other traffic. [Figure 8.10 on page 180](#) shows the eSCO window when multi-slot packets are used in one direction and single-slot packets are used in the other direction.

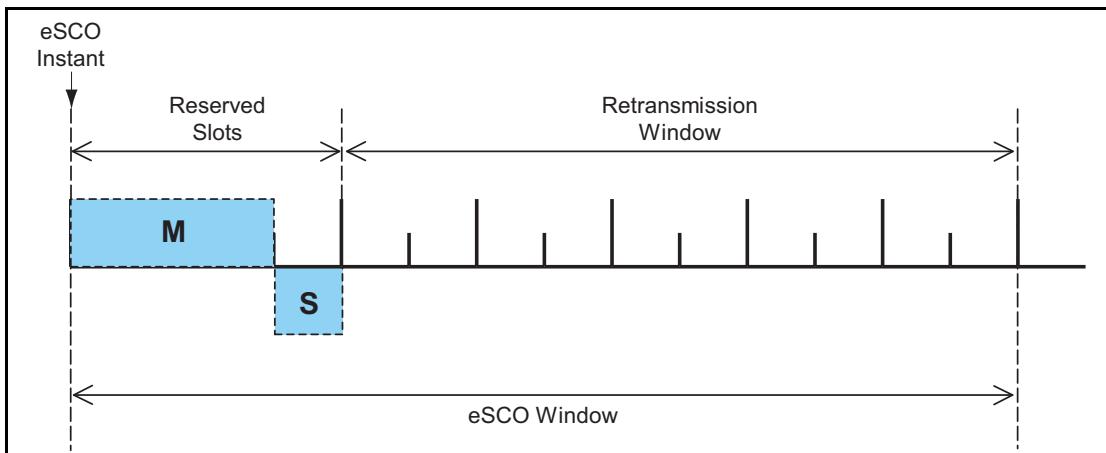


Figure 8.10: eSCO Window Details for Asymmetric Traffic

eSCO windows may overlap on the master, but shall not overlap on an individual slave.

In the reserved slots both master and slave shall only listen and transmit at their allocated slots at the first transmission time of each eSCO window. Intermittent lapses due to, for instance, time-critical signaling during connection establishment are allowed. Both master and slave may refrain from sending data and may use instead POLL and NULL packets respectively. When the master transmits a POLL packet instead of an EV4 or EV5 packet the slave shall transmit starting in the same slot as if the master transmitted an EV4 or

EV5 packet. If the slave does not receive anything in the reserved master-to-slave transmission slot it shall transmit in the same slot as if the master had transmitted the negotiated packet type. For example, if the master had negotiated an EV5 packet the slave would transmit three slots later. If the master does not receive a slave transmission in response to an eSCO packet it causes an implicit NAK of the packet in question. The listening requirements for the slave during the retransmission window are the same as for an active ACL logical transport.

#### 8.6.4 Broadcast Scheme

The master of the piconet can broadcast messages to all slaves on the ASB-U, PSB-C, and PSB-U logical transports. An ASB or PSB broadcast packet shall have an LT\_ADDR set to all zero. Each new broadcast message (which may be carried by a number of packets) shall start with the start of L2CAP message indication (LLID=10).

The Broadcast LT\_ADDR shall use a ptt=0.

A broadcast packet shall never be acknowledged. In an error-prone environment, the master may carry out a number of retransmissions to increase the probability for error-free delivery, see also [Section 7.6.5 on page 157](#).

In order to support the **PARK** state (as described in [Section 8.9 on page 197](#)), a master transmission shall take place at fixed intervals. This master transmission will act as a beacon to which slaves can synchronize. If no traffic takes place at the beacon event, broadcast packets shall be sent. More information is given in [Section 8.9 on page 197](#).

### 8.6.5 Role Switch

There are several occasions when a role switch is used.

- a role switch is necessary when joining an existing piconet by paging, since by definition, the paging device is initially master of a "small" piconet only involving the pager (master) and the paged (slave) device.
- a role switch is necessary in order for a slave in an existing piconet to set up a new piconet with itself as master and the original piconet master as slave. If the original piconet had more than one slave, then this implies a double role for the original piconet master; it becomes a slave in the new piconet while still maintaining the original piconet as master.

Prior to the role switch, encryption if present, shall be paused or disabled in the old piconet. A role switch shall not be performed if the physical link is in Sniff or Hold mode, in the **PARK** state, or has any synchronous logical transports.

For the master and slave involved in the role switch, the switch results in a reversal of their TX and RX timing: a TDD switch. Additionally, since the piconet parameters are derived from the Bluetooth device address and clock of the master, a role switch inherently involves a redefinition of the piconet as well: a piconet switch. The new piconet's parameters shall be derived from the former slave's device address and clock.

Assume device A is to become master; device B was the former master. Then there are two alternatives: either the slave initiates the role switch or the master initiates the role switch. These alternatives are described in Link Manager Protocol, [\[Part C\] Section 4.4.2 on page 317](#). The baseband procedure is the same regardless of which alternative is used.

In step 1, the slave A and master B shall perform a TDD switch using the former hopping scheme (still using the Bluetooth device address and clock of device B), so there is no piconet switch yet. The slot offset information sent by slave A shall not be used yet but shall be used in step 3. Device A now becomes the master, device B the slave. The LT\_ADDR formerly used by device A in its slave role, shall now be used by slave B.

At the moment of the TDD switch, both devices A and B shall start a timer with a time out of *newconnectionTO*. The timer shall be stopped in slave B as soon as it receives an FHS packet from master A on the TDD-switched channel. The timer shall be stopped in master A as soon as it receives an ID packet from slave B. If the *newconnectionTO* expires, the master and slave shall return to the old piconet timing and AFH state, taking their old roles of master and slave. The FHS packet shall be sent by master A using the "old" piconet parameters. The LT\_ADDR in the FHS packet header shall be the former LT\_ADDR used by device A. The LT\_ADDR carried in the FHS payload shall be the new LT\_ADDR intended for device B when operating on the new piconet. After the FHS acknowledgment, which is the ID packet and shall be sent by the slave on the old hopping sequence, both master A and slave B shall use the new channel parameters of the new piconet as indicated by the FHS with the sequence selection set to *basic channel hopping sequence*. If the new master has physi-

cal links that are *AFH enabled*, following the piconet switch the new master is responsible for controlling the AFH operational mode of its new slave.

Since the old and new masters' clocks are synchronized, the clock information sent in the FHS payload shall indicate the new master's clock at the beginning of the FHS packet transmission. Furthermore, the 1.25 ms resolution of the clock information given in the FHS packet is not sufficient for aligning the slot boundaries of the two piconets. The slot-offset information in the LMP message previously sent by device A shall be used to provide more accurate timing information. The slot offset indicates the delay between the start of the master-to-slave slots of the old and new piconet channels. This timing information ranges from 0 to 1249  $\mu$ s with a resolution of 1 $\mu$ s. It shall be used together with the clock information in the FHS packet to accurately position the correlation window when switching to the new master's timing after acknowledgment of the FHS packet.

After reception of the FHS packet acknowledgment, the new master A shall switch to its own timing with the sequence selection set to the *basic channel hopping sequence* and shall send a POLL packet to verify the switch. Both the master and the slave shall start a new timer with a time out of *newconnectionTO* on FHS packet acknowledgment. The start of this timer shall be aligned with the beginning of the first master TX slot boundary of the new piconet, following the FHS packet acknowledgment. The slave shall stop the timer when the POLL packet is received; the master shall stop the timer when the POLL packet is acknowledged. The slave shall respond with any type of packet to acknowledge the POLL. Any pending AFH\_Instant shall be cancelled once the POLL packet has been received by the slave. If no response is received, the master shall re-send the POLL packet until *newconnectionTO* is reached. If this timer expires, both the slave and the master shall return to the old piconet timing with the old master and slave roles. Expiry of the timer shall also restore the state associated with AFH (including any pending AFH\_Instant), Channel Quality Driven Data Rate (CQDDR, Link Manager Protocol [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.7 on page 262](#)) and power control (Link Manager Protocol [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.3 on page 252](#)). The procedure may then start again beginning at step 1. Aligning the timer with TX boundaries of the new piconet ensures that no device returns to the old piconet timing in the middle of a master RX slot.

After the role switch the ACL logical transport is reinitialized as if it were a new connection. For example, the SEQN of the first data packet containing a CRC on the new piconet channel shall be set according to the rules in [Section 7.6.2 on page 153](#).

A parked slave shall be unparked before it can participate in a role switch.

## 8.6.6 Scatternet

Multiple piconets can cover the same area. Since each piconet has a different master, the piconets hop independently, each with their own hopping sequence and phase as determined by the respective master. In addition, the packets carried on the channels are preceded by different channel access codes as determined by the master device addresses. As more piconets are added, the probability of collisions increases; a graceful degradation of performance results as is common in frequency-hopping spread spectrum systems.

If multiple piconets cover the same area, a device can participate in two or more overlaying piconets by applying time multiplexing. To participate on the proper channel, it shall use the associated master device address and proper clock offset to obtain the correct phase. A device can act as a slave in several piconets, but only as a master in a single piconet: since two piconets with the same master are synchronized and use the same hopping sequence, they are one and the same piconet. A group of piconets in which connections exist between different piconets is called a *scatternet*.

A master or slave can become a slave in another piconet by being paged by the master of this other piconet. On the other hand, a device participating in one piconet can page the master or slave of another piconet. Since the paging device always starts out as master, a master-slave role switch is required if a slave role is desired. This is described in [Section 8.6.5 on page 182](#).

### 8.6.6.1 Inter-piconet communications

Time multiplexing must be used to switch between piconets. Devices may achieve the time multiplexing necessary to implement scatternet by using sniff mode or by remaining in an active ACL connection. For an ACL connection in piconets where the device is a slave in the **CONNECTION** state, it may choose not to listen in every master slot. In this case it should be recognized that the quality of service on this link can degrade abruptly if the slave is not present enough to match up with the master polling that slave. Similarly, in piconets where the device is master it may choose not to transmit in every master slot. In this case it is important to honor  $T_{poll}$  as much as possible. Devices in sniff mode could have sufficient time to visit another piconet in between sniff slots. When the device is a slave using sniff mode and there are not sufficient idle slots, the device may choose to not listen to all master transmission slots in the `sniff_attempts` period or during the `subsequent_sniff_timeout` period. A master is not required to transmit during sniff slots and therefore has flexibility for scatternet. If SCO or eSCO links are established, other piconets shall only be visited in the non-reserved slots in between reserved slots. This is only possible if there is a single SCO logical transport using HV3 packets or eSCO links where at least four slots remain in between the reserved slots. Since the multiple piconets are not synchronized, guard time must be left to account for misalignment. This means that only 2 slots can effectively be used to visit another piconet in between the HV3 packets.

Since the clocks of two masters of different piconets are not synchronized, a slave device participating in two piconets shall maintain two offsets that, added to its own native clock, create the two master clocks. Since the two master clocks drift independently, the slave must regularly update the offsets in order to keep synchronization to both masters.

### 8.6.7 Hop Sequence Switching

Hop sequence adaptation is controlled by the master and can be set to either *enabled* or *disabled*. Once enabled, hop sequence adaptation shall apply to all logical transports on a physical link. Once enabled, the master may periodically update the set of *used* and *unused* channels as well as disable hop sequence adaptation on a physical link. When a master has multiple physical links the state of each link is independent of all other physical links.

When hop sequence adaptation is enabled, the *sequence selection* hop selection kernel input is set to *adapted channel hopping sequence* and the *AFH\_channel\_map* input is set to the appropriate set of *used* and *unused* channels. Additionally, the *same channel* mechanism shall be used. When hop sequence adaptation is enabled with all channels *used* this is known as AHS(79).

When hop sequence adaptation is disabled, the *sequence selection* input of the hop selection kernel is set to *basic channel hopping sequence* (the *AFH\_channel\_map* input is unused in this case) and the *same channel* mechanism shall not be used.

The hop sequence adaptation state shall be changed when the master sends the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU and a baseband acknowledgement is received. When the baseband acknowledgement is received prior to the hop sequence switch instant, *AFH\_Instant*, (See Link Manager Protocol [Part C] Section 4.1.4 on page 256) the hop sequence proceeds as shown in Figure 8.11 on page 185.

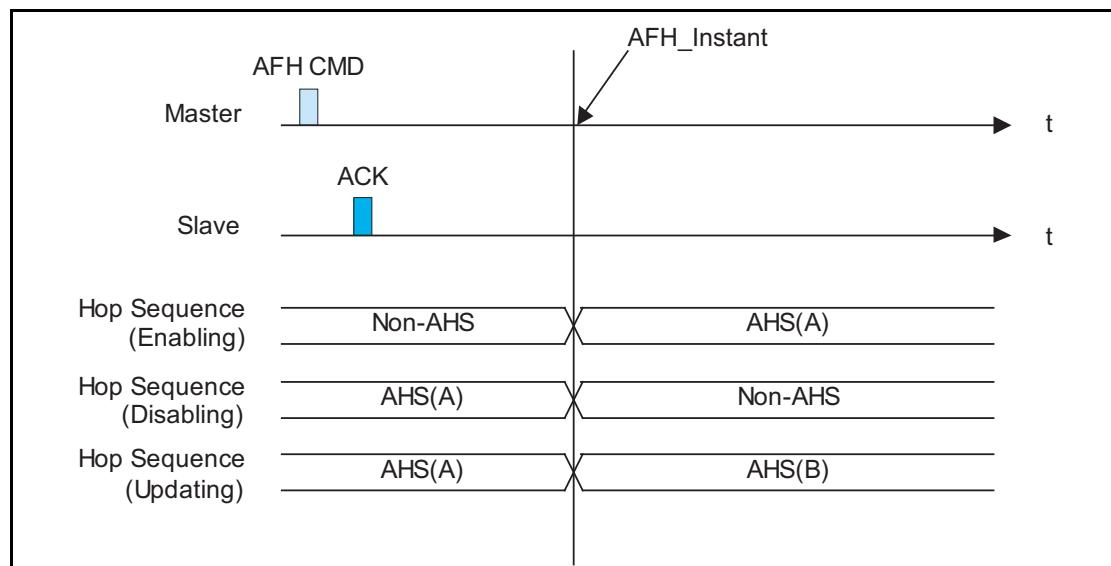


Figure 8.11: Successful hop sequence switching

When the baseband acknowledgement is not received prior to the *AFH\_Instant* the master shall use a recovery hop sequence for the slave(s) that did not respond with an acknowledgement (this may be because the slave did not hear the master's transmission or the master did not hear the slave's transmission). When hop sequence adaptation is being enabled or disabled the recovery sequence shall be the *AFH\_channel\_map* specified in the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU. When the *AFH\_channel\_map* is being updated the master shall choose a recovery sequence that includes all of the RF channels marked as *used* in either the old or new *AFH\_channel\_map*, e.g. AHS(79). Once the baseband acknowledgement is received the master shall use the *AFH\_channel\_map* in the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU starting with the next transmission to the slave. See [Figure 8.12 on page 186](#).

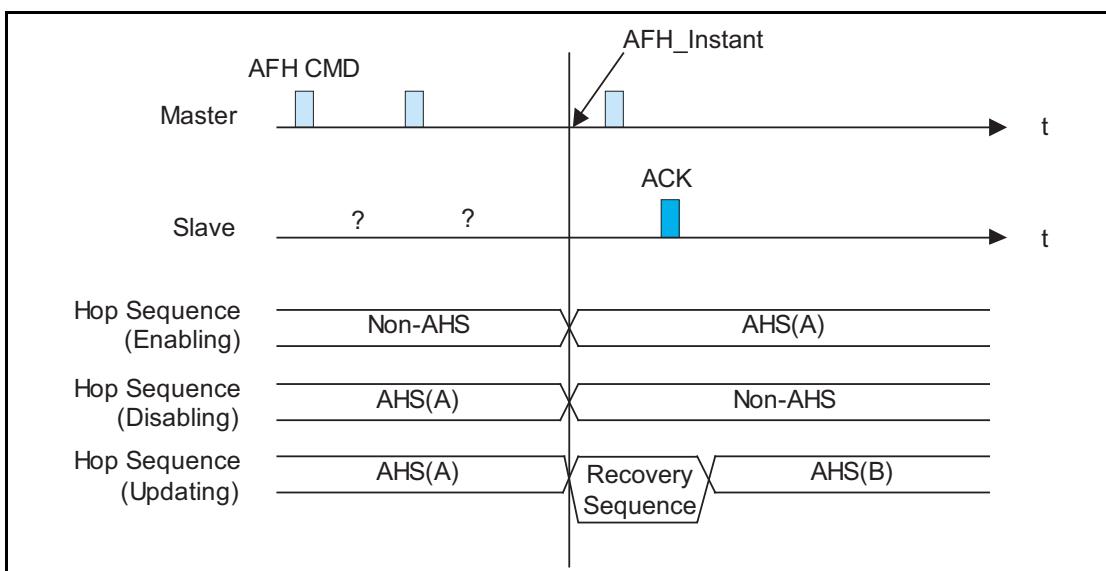


Figure 8.12: Recovery hop sequences

When the *AFH\_Instant* occurs during a multi-slot packet transmitted by the master, the slave shall use the same hopping sequence parameters as the master used at the start of the multi-slot packet. An example of this is shown in [Figure 8.13 on page 187](#). In this figure the *basic channel hopping sequence* is designated f. The first *adapted channel hopping sequence* is designated with f', and the second *adapted channel hopping sequence* is designated f".

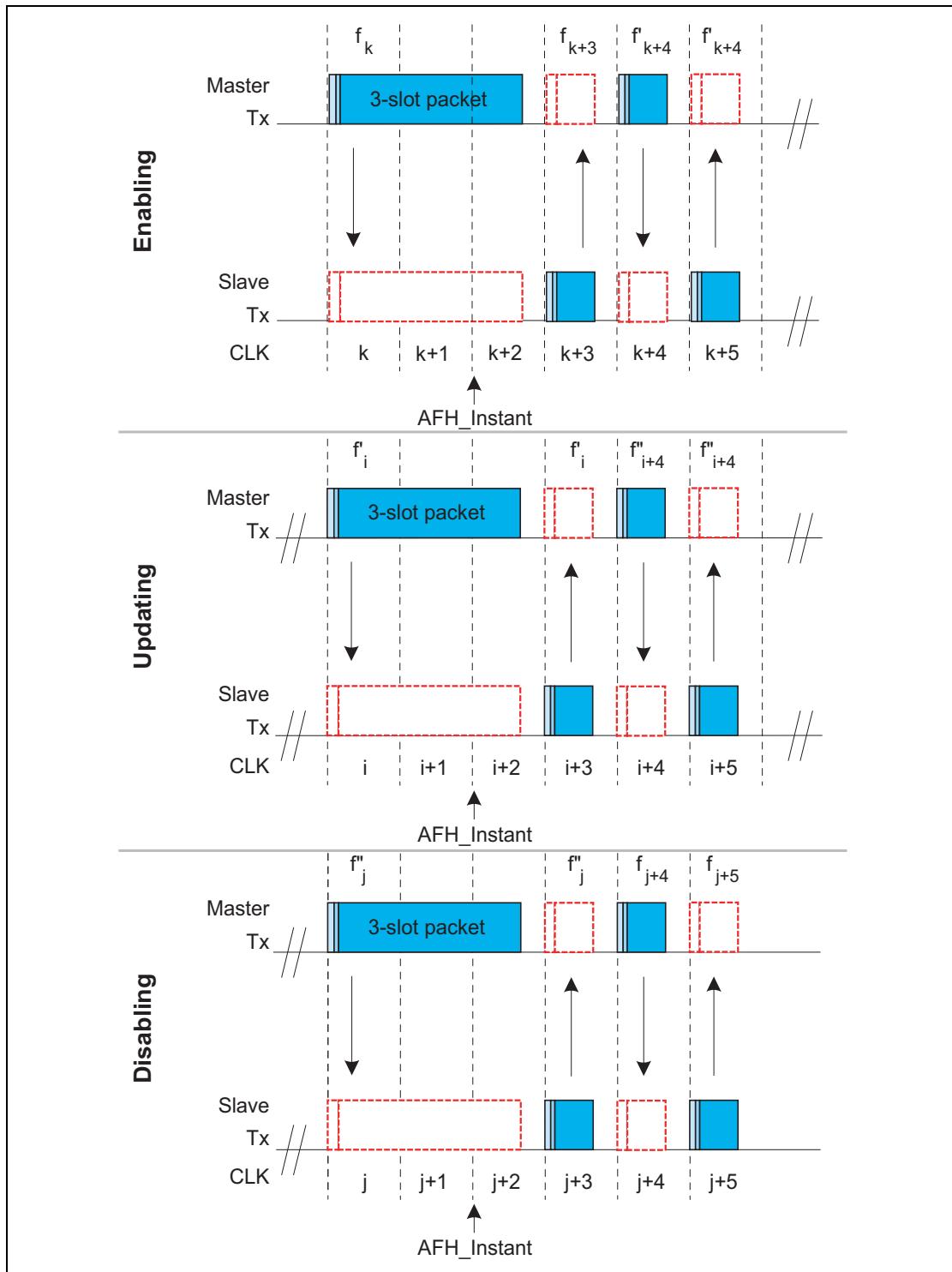


Figure 8.13: AFH\_Instant changes during multi-slot packets transmitted by the master

### 8.6.8 Channel Classification and Channel Map Selection

RF channels are classified as being *unknown*, *bad* or *good*. These classifications are determined individually by the master and slaves based on local information (e.g. active or passive channel assessment methods or from the Host via HCI). Information received from other devices via LMP (for example, an *AFH\_channel\_map* from a master or a channel classification report from a slave) shall not be included in a device's channel classification.

The three possible channel classifications shall be as defined in [Table 8.6 on page 188](#).

Classification	Definition
<i>unknown</i>	A channel shall be classified as <i>unknown</i> if the channel assessment measurements are insufficient to reliably classify the channel, and the channel is not marked as <i>bad</i> in the most recent HCI <i>Set_AFH_Channel_Classification</i> .
<i>bad</i>	<p>A channel may be classified as <i>bad</i> if an ACL or synchronous throughput failure measure associated with it has exceeded a threshold (defined by the particular channel assessment algorithm employed).</p> <p>A channel may also be classified as <i>bad</i> if an interference-level measure associated with it, determining the interference level that the link poses upon other systems in the vicinity, has exceeded a threshold (defined by the particular channel assessment algorithm employed).</p> <p>A channel shall be classified as <i>bad</i> when it is marked as <i>bad</i> in the most recent HCI <i>Set_AFH_Channel_Classification</i></p>
<i>good</i>	A channel shall be classified as <i>good</i> if it is not either <i>unknown</i> or <i>bad</i> .

*Table 8.6: Channel classification descriptions*

A master with AFH enabled physical links shall determine an *AFH\_channel\_map* based on any combination of the following information:

- Channel classification from local measurements (e.g. active or passive channel assessment in the Controller), if supported and enabled. The Host may enable or disable local measurements using the HCI *Write\_AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode* command, defined in the HCI Functional Specification [\[Part E\] Section 7.3.54 on page 725](#) if HCI is present.
- Channel classification information from the Host using the HCI *Set\_AFH\_channel\_classification* command, defined in the HCI Functional Specification [\[Part E\] Section 7.3.46 on page 717](#) if HCI is present. Channels classified as *bad* in the most recent *AFH\_Host\_Channel\_Classification* shall be marked as *unused* in the *AFH\_channel\_map*.
- Channel classification reports received from slaves in *LMP\_channel\_classification* PDUs, defined in the LMP Specification [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.5 on page 259](#).

The algorithm used by the master to combine these information sources and generate the *AFH\_channel\_map* is not defined in the specification and will be implementation specific. At no time shall the number of channels used be less than  $N_{min}$ , defined in [Section 2.3.1 on page 79](#).

If a master determines that all channels should be *used*, it may keep AFH operation enabled using an *AFH\_channel\_map* of 79 *used* channels, i.e. AHS(79).

For all devices that support Synchronizable mode, the RF channel indices used for the Synchronization Train (see [Section 2.6.4.8 on page 98](#)) shall be marked as *unused* in the *AFH\_channel\_map* for all logical links.

## 8.6.9 Power Management

Features are provided to allow low-power operation. These features are both at the microscopic level when handling the packets, and at the macroscopic level when using certain operation modes.

### 8.6.9.1 Packet handling

In order to minimize power consumption, packet handling is minimized both at TX and RX sides. At the TX side, power is minimized by only sending useful data. This means that if only link control information needs to be exchanged, **NULL** packets may be used. No transmission is required if there is no link control information to be sent, or if the transmission would only involve a NAK (NAK is implicit on no reply). If there is data to be sent, the payload length shall be adapted in order to send only the valid data bytes. At the RX side, packet processing takes place in different steps. If no valid access code is found in the search window, the transceiver may return to sleep. If an access code is found, the receiver device shall start to process the packet header. If the HEC fails, the device may return to sleep after the packet header. A valid header indicates if a payload will follow and how many slots are involved.

### 8.6.9.2 Slot occupancy

As was described in [Section 6.5 on page 124](#), the packet type indicates how many slots a packet may occupy. A slave not addressed in the packet header may go to sleep for the remaining slots the packet occupies. This can be read from the TYPE code.

### 8.6.9.3 Recommendations for low-power operation

The most common and flexible methods for reducing power consumption are the use of sniff and park. Hold can also be used by repeated negotiation of hold periods.

#### 8.6.9.4 Enhanced Data Rate

Enhanced Data Rate provides power saving because of the ability to send a given amount of data in either fewer packets or with the same (or similar) number of packets but with shorter payloads.

### 8.6.10 Piconet Clock Adjustment

A master may adjust the piconet clock during the existence of a piconet using two mechanisms: Coarse Clock Adjustment and Clock Dragging. Both mechanisms may be used within the same piconet.

#### 8.6.10.1 Coarse Clock Adjustment

The master carries out a coarse clock adjustment by selecting an adjustment instant (`clk_adj_instant`), which shall be a master to slave slot, and the amount of the adjustment, and then broadcasting these parameters to all slaves by sending LMP<sub>clk</sub>\_adj (see [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.14.1 on page 271](#)). The amount of the adjustment is specified as two values: `clk_adj_slots`, which is the change in the value of CLK[27:1] at the `clk_adj_instant`, and `clk_adj_us`, which is the number of microseconds between the start of a master slot in the old clock (CLK<sub>old</sub>) and in the new clock (CLK<sub>new</sub>) domains.

The master shall provide the opportunity for each slave to acknowledge the adjustment with LMP<sub>clk</sub>\_adj\_ack (see [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.14.1 on page 271](#)). If the master receives any other packet than LMP<sub>clk</sub>\_adj\_ack with the current `clk_adj_id`, it should poll the slave more times until the expected acknowledgement is received or the slave responds with a NULL packet. If any slave does not acknowledge the adjustment, the master shall start the Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode (see [Section 8.6.10.2](#)).

When the `clk_adj_instant` occurs, the master will add (`clk_adj_slots * 625 + clk_adj_us`)  $\mu$ s to `time_base_offset` and the slave(s) will add the same amount to `slave_offset`. If the `clk_adj_instant` occurs during a multi-slot packet the adjustment is delayed until the start of the following master-to-slave slot. If a role switch is successful prior to the `clk_adj_instant`, the pending coarse clock adjustment shall be discarded. The effect of the adjustment is that devices will use the new clock domain starting at `clk_adj_instant`.

[Figure 8.14](#) shows an example of a positive clock adjustment. In this example the `clk_adj_instant` is set to slot 12 (which is in the old clock domain), `clk_adj_slots` is set to 6 and `clk_adj_us` is set to 400. Time is moved forward  $clk\_adj\_slots * 625 + clk\_adj\_us = 6 * 625 + 400 = 4150 \mu$ s. The initial slot in the new clock domain is at  $CLK_{new}[27:1] = clk\_adj\_instant + clk\_adj\_slots = 12 + 6 = 18$ . This is an even value so the first slot is a master slot. A positive `clk_adj_us` means that the first slot is assumed to have started `clk_adj_us` before the `clk_adj_instant`, and hence only  $625 - clk\_adj\_us = 225 \mu$ s remains after the instant. Since transmissions cannot be started part way through a slot,

this partial slot is unusable. The first complete slot after the `clk_adj_instant` is a slave slot which can be used, for example, for eSCO. If `clk_adj_slots` had been an odd number, the first complete slot would have been a master slot. The first complete master slot in this example happens at  $\text{CLK}_{\text{new}}[27:1] = 20$ .

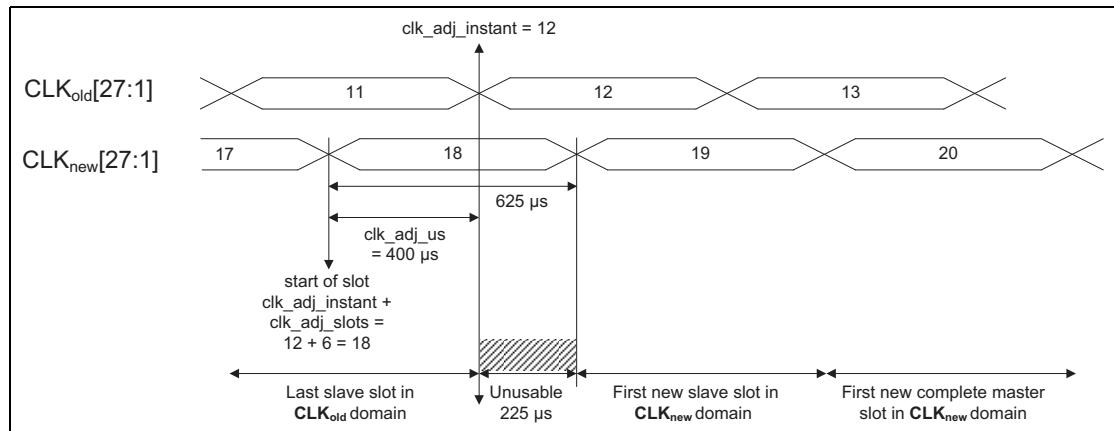


Figure 8.14: Positive Coarse Clock Adjustment

[Figure 8.15](#) shows an example of a negative clock adjustment. In this example the `clk_adj_instant` is again set to slot 12, `clk_adj_slots` is set to 0 and `clk_adj_us` is set to -400. Time is moved by  $\text{clk\_adj\_slots} * 625 + \text{clk\_adj\_us} = 0 * 625 + (-400) = -400 \mu\text{s}$ , which is 400  $\mu\text{s}$  backwards. The initial slot in the  $\text{CLK}_{\text{new}}$  domain is at  $\text{CLK}_{\text{new}}[27:1] = \text{clk\_adj\_instant} + \text{clk\_adj\_slots} = 12 + 0 = 12$ . This is an even value so the first slot is a master slot. A negative `clk_adj_us` means that the first slot in the  $\text{CLK}_{\text{new}}$  domain starts `clk_adj_us` after `clk_adj_instant`. The time between the first slot in the  $\text{CLK}_{\text{new}}$  domain and `clk_adj_instant` (in this case 400  $\mu\text{s}$ ) is effectively a continuation of the previous slot, even if its number changes, and hence is unusable. (This is the case whenever `clk_adj_us` is negative, even when `clk_adj_slots` is non-zero.)

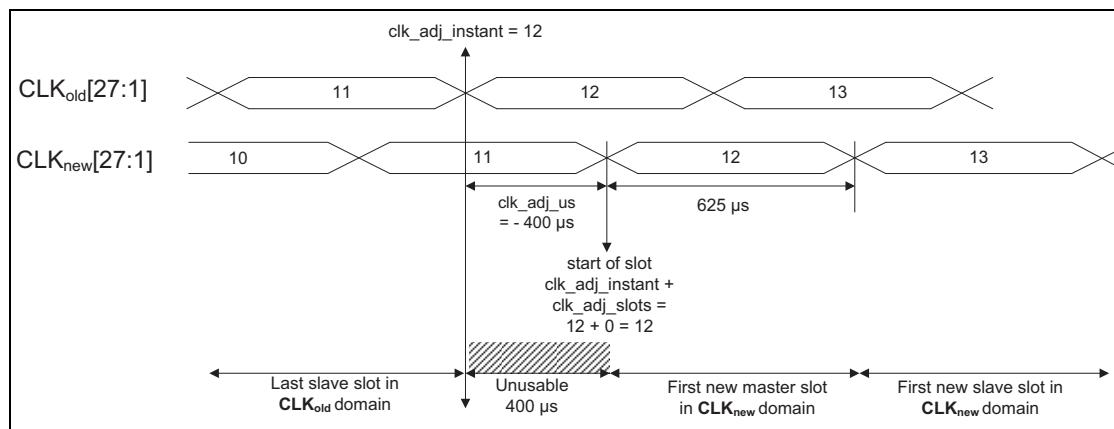


Figure 8.15: Negative Coarse Clock Adjustment

If `clk_adj_us` is zero then the adjustment alters the slot numbering but not the actual times at which slots start. Therefore all slots remain available for use, though if `clk_adj_slots` is odd then there will be two consecutive slave slots.

### 8.6.10.2 Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode

In Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode, the master enters the Synchronization Train Substate (see [Section 8.11.2](#)). The master should remain in this substate and transmit synchronization train packets until all slaves have acknowledged the adjustment with the LMP\_clk\_adj\_ack PDU, or link supervision timeout has expired for the last unresponsive slave. The master may cancel Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode to initiate another coarse clock adjustment or for any other reason. During Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode the master shall continue broadcasting LMP\_clk\_adj PDUs (see [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.14.1 on page 271](#)).

When a slave does not detect any transmissions from its master it may enter the Synchronization Scan Substate (see [Section 8.11.1](#)) and scan for synchronization train packets as defined in [Section 2.7](#).  $T_{Sync\_Scan\_Window}$  should be set large enough to enable reception of at least one synchronization train packet. A slave that could have lost its connection to the master due to coarse clock adjustment should prioritize synchronization scan.

A slave that receives a Synchronization Train packet with the BD\_ADDR of its master shall change the value of slave\_offset to make CLK correspond to the contents of the packet and then exit the Synchronization Scan Substate. If the new clock is in the range  $CLK_{OLD}-LSTO$  to  $CLK_{OLD}$  inclusive (where LSTO is the link supervision timeout period), then this shall be treated as a negative change. In this case, the slave shall not transmit any packet and shall ignore all received directed packets until the value of CLK, after being changed, is strictly greater than the value of CLK the last time it transmitted or received (as appropriate) a packet. If the new clock is outside this range then this shall be treated as a positive change (and thus might involve a clock wrap).

### 8.6.10.3 Clock Dragging

Clock Dragging means that the master periodically adjusts its time\_base\_offset (see [Section 2.2.4](#)) until a desired time adjustment has been accomplished.

Each single adjustment shall be performed by a directed packet from the master to each slave and a response (e.g. baseband acknowledgement) from each slave. If a slave does not respond, the master shall suspend its updating of time\_base\_offset (but should continue to poll that slave) at least until each slave has either responded or has failed to respond for at least  $CLK_{adj\_drag\_TO}$ . In case several slaves fail to respond, the master should ensure that each of the failing slaves gets at least one  $CLK_{adj\_drag\_TO}$  to respond (these may be concurrent for multiple slaves). The master need not allow more than one suspension of  $CLK_{adj\_drag\_TO}$  for any given slave during a link supervision timeout for that slave.

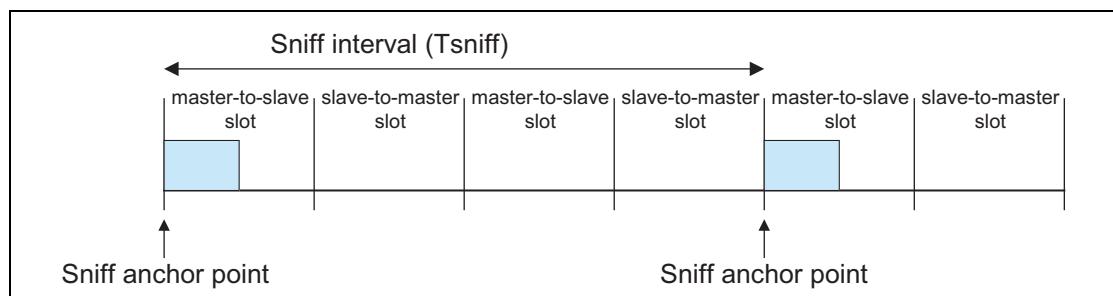
A single adjustment shall be less than or equal to 3  $\mu$ s. Within any period of 125 ms, the total adjustment in a single direction shall be less than or equal to

5  $\mu$ s. Note: these requirements apply to the changes to time\_base\_offset and are applied irrespective of the accuracy of the master's reference clock (see [Section 1.1](#)). This means that slaves may observe a change in CLK greater than 20ppm.

If a master is performing Clock Dragging when it initiates a Coarse Clock Adjustment, a new Clock Dragging, or a sequence containing an instant or timing control flags, or receives a request from a slave to initiate such a sequence, it shall abort the current Clock Dragging before processing the new request or carrying out the sequence. If the master has suspended clock dragging during CLK\_adj\_drag\_TO, it shall reject new requests until the timeout is cancelled due to slave response or the timeout period expires.

## 8.7 SNIFF MODE

In Sniff mode, the duty cycle of the slave's activity in the piconet may be reduced. If a slave is in active mode on an ACL logical transport, it shall listen in every ACL slot to the master traffic, unless that link is being treated as a scatternet link or is absent due to hold mode. With sniff mode, the time slots when a slave is listening are reduced, so the master shall only transmit to a slave in specified time slots. The sniff anchor points are spaced regularly with an interval of  $T_{\text{sniff}}$ .



*Figure 8.16: Sniff anchor points*

The slave listens in master-to-slave transmission slots starting at the sniff anchor point. It shall use the following rules to determine whether to continue listening:

- If fewer than  $N_{\text{sniff attempt}}$  master-to-slave transmission slots have elapsed since the sniff anchor point then the slave shall continue listening.
- If the slave has received a packet with a matching LT\_ADDR that contains ACL data (DM, DH, DV, or AUX1 packets) in the preceding  $N_{\text{sniff}}$  timeout master-to-slave transmission slots then it shall continue listening.
- If the slave has transmitted a packet containing ACL data (DM, DH, DV, or AUX1 packets) in the preceding  $N_{\text{sniff}}$  timeout slave-to-master transmission slots then it shall continue listening.

- If the slave has received any packet with a matching LT\_ADDR in the preceding  $N_{\text{sniff timeout}}$  master-to-slave transmission slots then it may continue listening.
- A device may override the rules above and stop listening prior to  $N_{\text{sniff timeout}}$  or the remaining  $N_{\text{sniff attempt}}$  slots if it has activity in another piconet.

It is possible that activity from one sniff timeout may extend to the next sniff anchor point. Any activity from a previous sniff timeout shall not affect activity after the next sniff anchor point. So in the above rules, only the slots since the last sniff anchor point are considered.

Note that  $N_{\text{sniff attempt}} = 1$  and  $N_{\text{sniff timeout}} = 0$  cause the slave to listen only at the slot beginning at the sniff anchor point, irrespective of packets received from the master.

$N_{\text{sniff attempt}} = 0$  shall not be used.

Sniff mode only applies to asynchronous logical transports and their associated LT\_ADDR. Sniff mode shall not apply to synchronous logical transports, therefore, both masters and slaves shall still respect the reserved slots and retransmission windows of synchronous links.

To enter sniff mode, the master or slave shall issue a sniff command via the LM protocol. This message includes the sniff interval  $T_{\text{sniff}}$  and an offset  $D_{\text{sniff}}$ . In addition, an initialization flag indicates whether initialization procedure 1 or 2 shall be used. The device shall use initialization 1 when the MSB of the current master clock ( $\text{CLK}_{27}$ ) is 0; it shall use initialization 2 when the MSB of the current master clock ( $\text{CLK}_{27}$ ) is 1. The slave shall apply the initialization method as indicated by the initialization flag irrespective of its clock bit value  $\text{CLK}_{27}$ . The sniff anchor point determined by the master and the slave shall be initialized on the slots for which the clock satisfies the applicable equation:

$$\text{CLK}_{27-1} \bmod T_{\text{sniff}} = D_{\text{sniff}} \quad \text{for initialization 1}$$

$$(\overline{\text{CLK}}_{27}, \text{CLK}_{26-1}) \bmod T_{\text{sniff}} = D_{\text{sniff}} \quad \text{for initialization 2}$$

this implies that  $D_{\text{sniff}}$  must be even

After initialization, the clock value  $\text{CLK}(k+1)$  for the next sniff anchor point shall be derived by adding the fixed interval  $T_{\text{sniff}}$  to the clock value of the current sniff anchor point:

$$\text{CLK}(k+1) = \text{CLK}(k) + T_{\text{sniff}}$$

### 8.7.1 Sniff Transition Mode

Sniff transition mode is a special mode which is used during the transition between sniff and active mode. It is required because during this transition it is

unclear which mode (Sniff or Active) the slave is in and it is necessary to ensure that the slave is polled correctly regardless of which mode it is in.

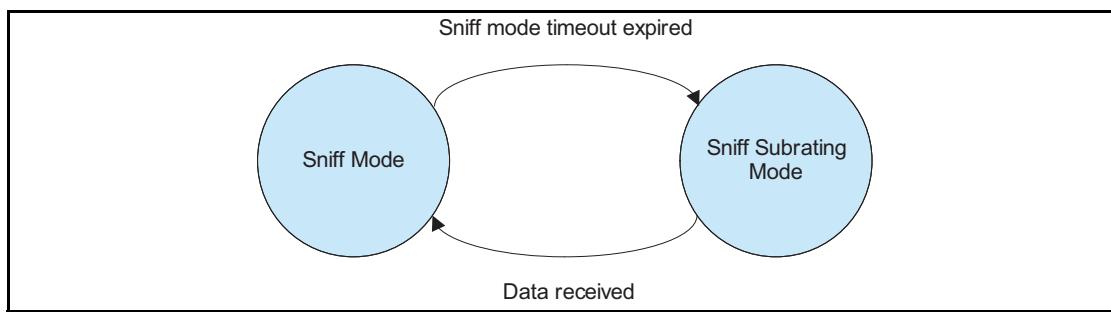
In sniff transition mode the master shall maintain the active mode poll interval in case the slave is in active mode. In addition the master shall poll the slave at least once in the sniff attempt transmit slots starting at each sniff anchor point. Note that this transmission counts for the active mode polling as well. The master shall use its high power accurate clock when in Sniff Transition Mode.

The precise circumstances under which the master enters Sniff Transition Mode are defined in [\[Part C\] Section 4.5.3.1 on page 331](#).

Only LMP data shall ever be transferred in sniff transition mode. The ACL-C logical link shall carry control information exchanged between the link managers of the master and the slave(s). The ACL-C logical link shall use DM1 packets. The ACL-C logical link is indicated by the LLID code 11 in the payload header.

### 8.7.2 Sniff Subrating

When sniff subrating is enabled by the Link Manager a device alternates between sniff mode and sniff subrating mode. Sniff subrating mode allows a device to use a reduced number of sniff anchor points. A device shall transition from sniff mode to sniff subrating mode based on the sniff mode timeout value (see [Section 8.7.2.1 on page 196](#)). A device shall transition from sniff subrating mode to sniff mode whenever ACL-U or ACL-C data is received from the remote device.



*Figure 8.17: Sniff subrating*

A slave device in sniff subrating mode shall also temporarily enter sniff mode after transmitting a packet requiring acknowledgement until the baseband acknowledgement is received.

Note: Once sniff subrating is enabled the master and slave devices may be in sniff mode or sniff subrating mode at different times. The rules defined in [Section 8.7.2.2 on page 196](#) describe how the two devices maintain synchronization and can reliably exchange data.

### 8.7.2.1 Sniff Mode Timeout

Whenever a packet containing ACL-C or ACL-U data is received by a device in sniff subrating mode it shall transition to sniff mode, re-start the sniff mode timeout and all sniff anchor points shall be used until a minimum number of slots equal to the received min\_sniff\_mode\_timeout have expired. If ACL-C or ACL-U data is received before min\_sniff\_mode\_timeout slots have passed since the last ACL-C or ACL-U data was received, the timeout shall be restarted. NULL and POLL packets do not contain ACL data and shall not restart the sniff mode timeout.

Note that there are two sniff mode timeout values: one for the local device and one for the remote device.

### 8.7.2.2 Sniff Subrating Mode

When the sniff mode timeout has expired a device shall enter sniff subrating mode. In sniff subrating mode the mandatory sniff substrate anchor points at which the master shall transmit to the slave and the slave shall listen for the master, are defined as follows (where M is the max substrate received by the master, N is the max substrate received by the slave, A is the sniff subrating instant, and k is any positive integer):

	Master	Slave
<b>M=N</b>	$CLK_{M(k)} = A + [ T_{sniff} \cdot M \cdot k ]$	$CLK_{N(k)} = A + [ T_{sniff} \cdot N \cdot k ]$
<b>M&gt;N</b>	At least once every j anchor points satisfying $CLK_{N(k)} = A + [ T_{sniff} \cdot N \cdot k ]$ , where $j = \lfloor M / N \rfloor$	$CLK_{N(k)} = A + [ T_{sniff} \cdot N \cdot k ]$
<b>M&lt;N</b>	$CLK_{M(k)} = A + [ T_{sniff} \cdot M \cdot k ]$	At least once every j anchor points satisfying $CLK_{M(k)} = A + [ T_{sniff} \cdot M \cdot k ]$ , where $j = \lfloor N / M \rfloor$

Table 8.7: Sniff substrate anchor points

1 Note:  $\lfloor X \rfloor$  denotes the mathematical “floor” function, equivalent to rounding down to the nearest integer. Hence,  $\lfloor X / Y \rfloor$  yields the highest integer j for which  $Y \cdot j \leq X$ .

2 Note: When sniff subrating is enabled, the rules specified in Section 8.7 for  $N_{sniff}$  attempt and  $N_{sniff}$  Timeout shall apply to sniff subrating anchor points.

## 8.8 HOLD MODE

During the **CONNECTION** state, the ACL logical transport to a slave can be put in a **hold** mode. In **hold** mode the slave temporarily shall not support ACL packets on the channel. Any synchronous packet during reserved synchronous slots (from SCO and eSCO links) shall be supported. With the **hold** mode, capacity can be made free to do other things like scanning, paging, inquiring, or attending another piconet. The device in **hold** mode can also enter a low-power sleep mode. During **hold** mode, the slave device keeps its logical transport address(es) (LT\_ADDR).

Prior to entering hold mode, master and slave agree on the time duration the slave remains in hold mode. A timer shall be initialized with the *holdTO* value. When the timer is expired, the slave shall wake up, synchronize to the traffic on the channel and will wait for further master transmissions.

## 8.9 PARK STATE

When a slave does not need to participate on the piconet channel, but still needs to remain synchronized to the channel, it can enter **PARK** state. **PARK** state is a state with very little activity in the slave. In the **PARK** state, the slave shall give up its logical transport address LT\_ADDR. Instead, it shall receive two new addresses to be used in the **PARK** state

- PM\_ADDR: 8-bit Parked Member Address
- AR\_ADDR: 8-bit Access Request Address

The PM\_ADDR distinguishes a parked slave from the other parked slaves. This address may be used in the master-initiated unpark procedure. In addition to the PM\_ADDR, a parked slave may also be unparked by its 48-bit BD\_ADDR. The all-zero PM\_ADDR is a reserved address: if a parked device has the all-zero PM\_ADDR it can only be unparked by the BD\_ADDR. In that case, the PM\_ADDR has no meaning. The AR\_ADDR shall be used by the slave in the slave-initiated unpark procedure. All messages sent to the parked slaves are carried by broadcast packets.

The parked slave wakes up at regular intervals to listen to the channel in order to re-synchronize and to check for broadcast messages. To support the synchronization and channel access of the parked slaves, the master supports a beacon train described in the next section. The beacon structure is communicated to the slave when it is parked. When the beacon structure changes, the parked slaves are updated through broadcast messages.

The master shall maintain separate non-overlapping park beacon structures for each hop sequence. The beacon structures shall not overlap either their beacon slots or access windows.

In addition for using it for low power consumption, park is used to connect more than seven slaves to a single master. At any one time, only seven slaves can be in the **CONNECTION** state. However, by swapping active and parked slaves out respectively in the piconet, the number of slaves can be much larger (255 if the PM\_ADDR is used, and an arbitrarily large number if the BD\_ADDR is used).

### 8.9.1 Beacon Train

To support parked slaves, the master establishes a beacon train when one or more slaves are parked. The beacon train consists of one beacon slot or a train of equidistant beacon slots which is transmitted periodically with a constant time interval. The beacon train is illustrated in [Figure 8.18 on page 199](#). A train of  $N_B$  ( $N_B \geq 1$ ) beacon slots is defined with an interval of  $T_B$  slots. The beacon slots in the train are separated by  $\Delta_B$ . The start of the first beacon slot is referred to as the **beacon instant** and serves as the beacon timing reference. The beacon parameters  $N_B$  and  $T_B$  are chosen such that there are sufficient beacon slots for a parked slave to synchronize to during a certain time window in an error-prone environment.

When parked, the slave shall receive the beacon parameters through an LMP command. In addition, the timing of the beacon instant is indicated through the offset  $D_B$ . As with the SCO logical transport (see [Section 8.6.2 on page 177](#)), two initialization procedures 1 or 2 are used. The master shall use initialization 1 when the MSB of the current master clock ( $CLK_{27}$ ) is 0; it shall use initialization 2 when the MSB of the current master clock ( $CLK_{27}$ ) is 1. The chosen initialization procedure shall also be carried by an initialization flag in the LMP command. The slave shall apply the initialization method as indicated by the initialization flag irrespective of its clock bit  $CLK_{27}$ . The master-to-slave slot positioned at the beacon instant shall be initialized on the slots for which the clock satisfies the applicable equation:

$$CLK_{27-1} \bmod T_B = D_B \quad \text{for initialization 1}$$

$$(\overline{CLK}_{27}, CLK_{26-1}) \bmod T_B = D_B \quad \text{for initialization 2}$$

this implies that  $D_B$  will be even.

After initialization, the clock value  $CLK(k+1)$  for the next beacon instant shall be derived by adding the fixed interval  $T_B$  to the clock value of the current beacon instant:

$$CLK(k+1) = CLK(k) + T_B$$

The beacon train serves four purposes:

1. Transmission of master-to-slave packets which the parked slaves can use for re-synchronization
2. Carrying messages to the parked slaves to change the beacon parameters
3. Carrying general broadcast messages to the parked slaves
4. Unparking of one or more parked slaves

Since a slave can synchronize to any packet which is preceded by the proper channel access code, the packets carried on the beacon slots do not have to contain specific broadcast packets for parked slaves to be able to synchronize; any packet may be used. The only requirement placed on the beacon slots is that there is a master-to-slave transmission present on the hopping sequence associated with the park structure. If there is no information to be sent, **NULL** packets may be transmitted by the master. If there is indeed broadcast information to be sent to the parked slaves, the first packet of the broadcast message shall be repeated in every beacon slot of the beacon train. However, synchronous traffic in the synchronous reserved slots may interrupt the beacon transmission if it is on the same hopping sequence as the parked slaves. The master shall configure its park beacon structure so that reserved slots of synchronous logical transports do not cause slaves to miss synchronization on a beacon slot. For example, a master that has active slaves using AHS, and parked slaves using Non-AHS shall ensure that the Park beacons cannot be interrupted by AHS synchronous reserved slots.

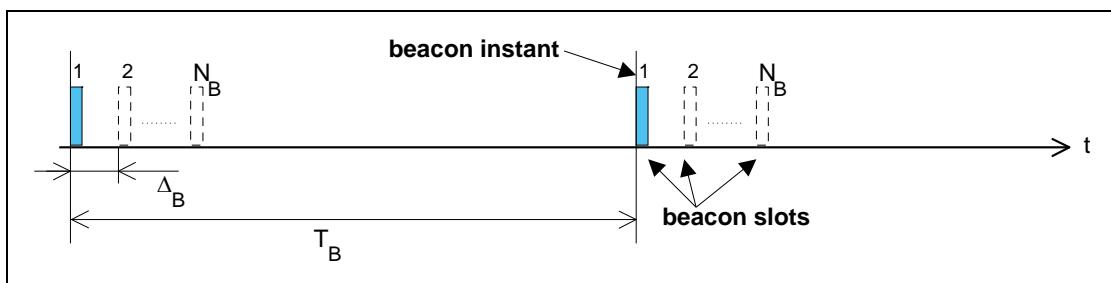


Figure 8.18: General beacon train format

The master can place parked slaves in any of the AFH operating modes, but shall ensure that all parked slaves use the same hop sequence. Masters should use AHS(79) or AHS when all the slaves in the Piconet are AFH capable.

A master that switches a slave between AFH enabled, AFH disabled or AHS(79) operation shall ensure that the AFH\_Instant occurs before transmission of the beacon train using this hop sequence.

The master communicates with parked slaves using broadcast messages. Since these messages can be time-critical, an ongoing repetition train of broadcast message may be prematurely aborted by broadcast information destined to parked slaves in beacon slots and in access windows (see [Section 8.9.2](#)).

### 8.9.2 Beacon Access Window

In addition to the beacon slots, an access window is defined where the parked slaves can send requests to be unparked. To increase reliability, the access window may be repeated  $M_{\text{access}}$  times ( $M_{\text{access}} \geq 1$ ), see [Figure 8.19 on page 200](#). The access window starts a fixed delay  $D_{\text{access}}$  after the beacon instant. The width of the access window is  $T_{\text{access}}$ .

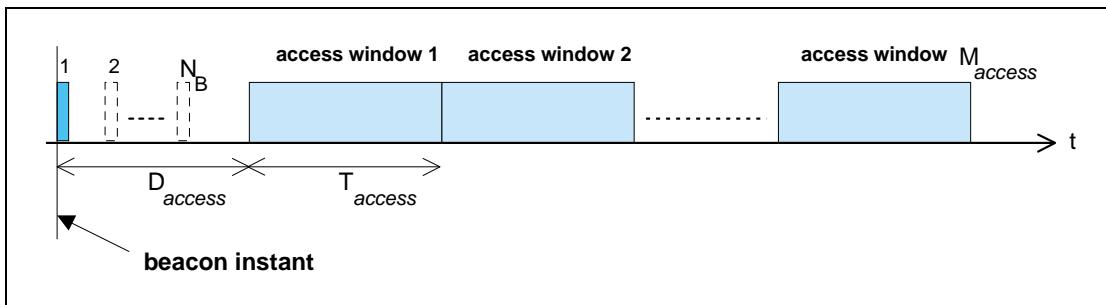


Figure 8.19: Definition of access window

The access window supports a polling slave access technique. The format of the polling technique is shown in [Figure 8.20 on page 200](#). The same TDD structure is used as on the piconet channel, i.e. master-to-slave transmission is alternated with slave-to-master transmission. The slave-to-master slot is divided into two half slots of 312.5 µs each. The half slot a parked slave is allowed to respond in corresponds to its access request address (AR\_ADDR), see also [Section 8.9.6 on page 203](#). For counting the half slots to determine the access request slot, the start of the access window is used, see [Figure 8.20 on page 200](#). The slave shall only send an access request in the proper slave-to-master half slot if a broadcast packet has been received in the preceding master-to-slave slot. In this way, the master polls the parked slaves.

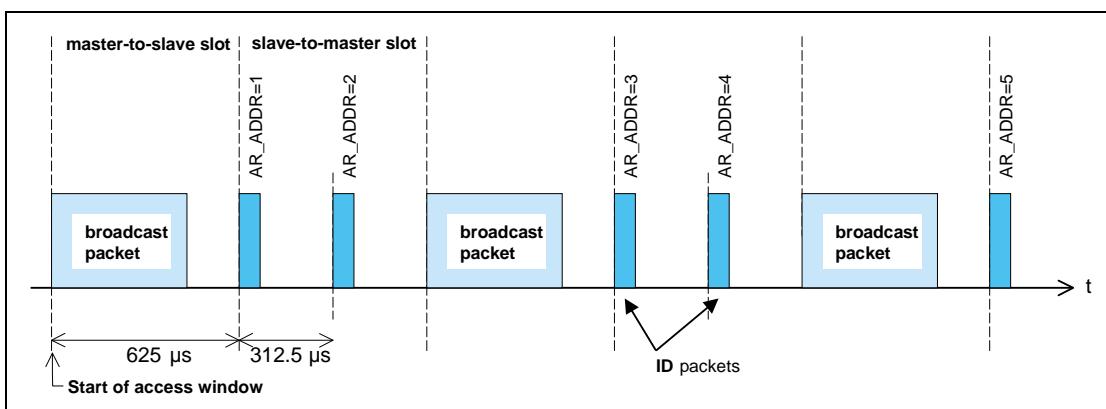
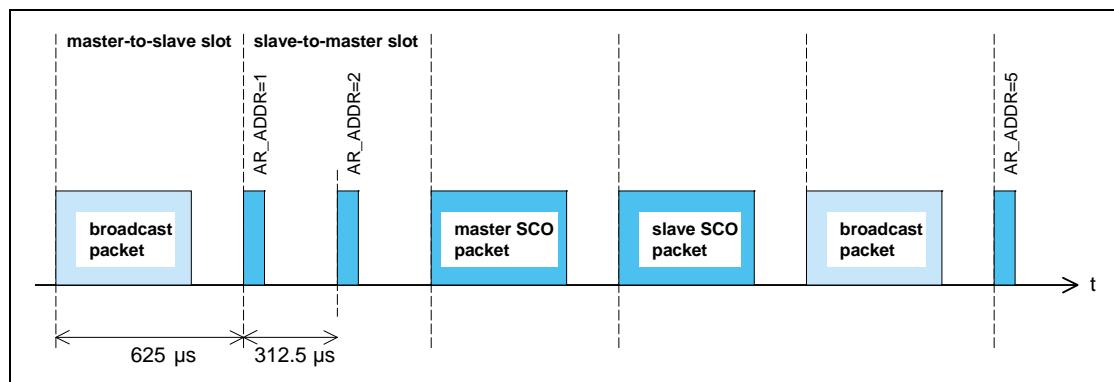


Figure 8.20: Access procedure applying the polling technique

The slots of the access window may also be used for traffic on the piconet if required. For example, if a synchronous connection has to be supported, the slots reserved for the synchronous link may carry synchronous information

instead of being used for access requests, i.e. if the master-to-slave slot in the access window contains a packet different from a broadcast packet, the following slave-to-master slot shall not be used for slave access requests. If the master transmits a broadcast packet in the access window then it shall use the hop sequence associated with the park structure. Slots in the access window not affected by piconet traffic may still be used according to the defined access structure (an example is shown in [Figure 8.21 on page 201](#)). The access procedure shall be continued as if no interruption had taken place.

When the slave is parked, the master shall indicate what type of access scheme will be used. For the polling scheme, the number of slave-to-master access slots  $N_{acc\_slot}$  is indicated.



*Figure 8.21: Disturbance of access window by SCO traffic*

By default, the access window is always present. However, its activation depends on the master sending broadcast messages to the slave at the appropriate slots in the access window. A flag in a broadcast LMP message within the beacon slots may indicate that the access window(s) belonging to this instant will not be activated. This prevents unnecessary scanning of parked slaves that want to request access.

### 8.9.3 Parked Slave Synchronization

Parked slaves wake up periodically to re-synchronize to the channel. Any packet exchanged on the channel can be used for synchronization. Since master transmission is mandatory on the beacon slots, parked slaves will use the beacon train to re-synchronize. A parked slave may wake-up at the beacon instant to read the packet sent on the first beacon slot. If this fails, it may retry on the next beacon slot in the beacon train; in total, there are  $N_B$  opportunities per beacon instant to re-synchronize. During the search, the slave may increase its search window, see also [Section 2.2.5.2 on page 77](#). The separation between the beacon slots in the beacon train  $\Delta_B$  shall be chosen such that consecutive search windows will not overlap.

The parked slave may not wake up at every beacon instant. Instead, a sleep interval may be applied which is longer than the beacon interval  $T_B$ , see [Figure 8.22 on page 202](#). The slave sleep window shall be a multiple  $N_{B\_sleep}$  of  $T_B$ .

The precise beacon instant the slave may wake up on shall be indicated by the master with  $D_{B\_sleep}$  which indicates the offset (in multiples of  $T_B$ ) with respect to the beacon instant ( $0 < D_{B\_sleep} < N_{B\_sleep}-1$ ). To initialize the wake-up period, the applicable equation shall be used:

$$\text{CLK}_{27-1} \bmod (N_{B\_sleep} \cdot T_B) = D_B + D_{B\_sleep} \cdot T_B \quad \text{for initialization 1}$$

$$(\overline{\text{CLK}}_{27}, \text{CLK}_{26-1}) \bmod (N_{B\_sleep} \cdot T_B) = D_B + D_{B\_sleep} \cdot T_B \quad \text{for initialization 2}$$

where initialization 1 shall be chosen by the master if the MSB in the current master clock is 0 and initialization 2 shall be chosen by the master if the MSB in the current master clock is 1.

When the master needs to send broadcast messages to the parked slaves, it may use the beacon slots for these broadcast messages. However, if  $N_B < N_{BC}$ , the slots following the last beacon slot in the beacon train shall be used for the remaining  $N_{BC} - N_B$  broadcast packets. If  $N_B > N_{BC}$ , the broadcast message shall be repeated on all  $N_B$  beacon slots.

A parked slave shall read the broadcast messages sent in the beacon slot(s) it wakes up in. If the parked slave wakes up, the minimum wake-up activity shall be to read the channel access code for re-synchronization and the packet header to check for broadcast messages.

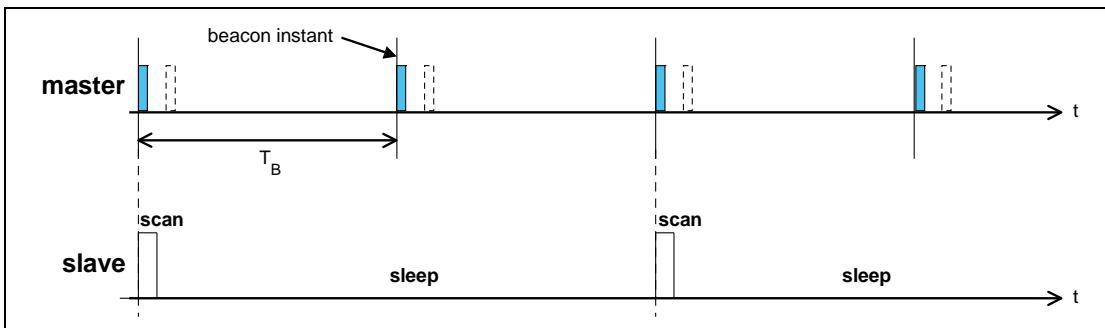


Figure 8.22: Extended sleep interval of parked slaves

#### 8.9.4 Parking

A master can park an active slave through the exchange of LMP commands. Before being put into park, the slave shall be assigned a PM\_ADDR and an AR\_ADDR. Every parked slave shall have a unique PM\_ADDR or a PM\_ADDR of 0. The AR\_ADDR is not necessarily unique. The beacon parameters shall be given by the master when the slave is parked. The slave shall then give up its LT\_ADDR and shall enter **PARK** state. A master can park only a single slave at a time. The park message is carried with a normal data packet and addresses the slave through its LT\_ADDR.

### 8.9.5 Master-initiated Unparking

The master can unpark a parked slave by sending a dedicated LMP unpark command including the parked slave's address. This message shall be sent in a broadcast packet on the beacon slots. The master shall use either the slave's PM\_ADDR, or its BD\_ADDR. The message also includes the logical transport address LT\_ADDR the slave shall use after it has re-entered the piconet. The unpark message may include a number of slave addresses so that multiple slaves may be unparked simultaneously. For each slave, a different LT\_ADDR shall be assigned.

After having received the unpark message, the parked slave matching the PM\_ADDR or BD\_ADDR shall leave the **PARK** state and enter the **CONNECTION** state. It shall keep listening to the master until it is addressed by the master through its LT\_ADDR. The first packet sent by the master shall be a POLL packet. The return packet in response to the POLL packet confirms that the slave has been unparked. If no response packet from the slave is received for *newconnectionTO* number of slots after the end of beacon repetition period, the master shall unpark the slave again. The master shall use the same LT\_ADDR on each unpark attempt until it has received a link supervision timeout for that slave or the unpark has completed successfully. If the slave does not receive the POLL packet for *newconnectionTO* number of slots after the end of beacon repetition period, it shall return to park, with the same beacon parameters. After confirming that the slave is in the **CONNECTION** state, the master decides in which mode the slave will continue.

When a device is unparked, the SEQN bit for the link shall be reset to 1 on both the master and the slave (see [Section 7.6.2.1 on page 154](#)).

### 8.9.6 Slave-initiated Unparking

A slave can request access to the channel through the access window defined in [Section 8.9.2 on page 200](#). As shown in [Figure 8.20 on page 200](#), the access window includes several slave-to-master half slots where the slave may send an access request message. The specific half slot the slave is allowed to respond in, corresponds to its access request address (AR\_ADDR) which it received when it was parked. The order of the half slots (in [Figure 8.20](#) the AR\_ADDR numbers linearly increase from 1 to 5) is not fixed: an LMP command sent in the beacon slots may reconfigure the access window. When a slave desires access to the channel, it shall send an access request message in the proper slave-to-master half slot. The access request message of the slave is the **ID** packet containing the device access code (DAC) of the master (which is the channel access code without the trailer). The parked slave shall only transmit an access request message in the half slot, when in the preceding master-to-slave slot a broadcast packet has been received. This broadcast message may contain any kind of broadcast information not necessarily related to the parked slave(s). If no broadcast information is available, a broadcast **NULL** or broadcast **POLL** packet shall be sent.

After having sent an access request, the parked slave shall listen for an unpark message from the master. As long as no unpark message is received, the slave shall repeat the access requests in the subsequent access windows.

After the last access window (there are  $M_{\text{access}}$  windows in total, see [Section 8.9.2 on page 200](#)), the parked slave shall listen for an additional  $N_{\text{poll}}$  time slots for an unpark message. If no unpark message is received within  $N_{\text{poll}}$  slots after the end of the last access window, the slave may return to sleep and retry an access attempt after the next beacon instant.

After having received the unpark message, the parked slave matching the PM\_ADDR or BD\_ADDR shall leave the **PARK** state and enter the **CONNECTION** state. It shall keep listening to the master until it is addressed by the master through its LT\_ADDR. The first packet sent by the master shall be a POLL packet. The return packet in response to the POLL packet confirms that the slave has been unparked. After confirming that the slave is in the **CONNECTION** state, the master decides in which mode the slave will continue. If no response packet from the slave is received for  $\text{newconnectionTO}$  number of slots after  $N_{\text{poll}}$  slots after the end of the last access window, the master shall send the unpark message to the slave again. If the slave does not receive the POLL packet for  $\text{newconnectionTO}$  number of slots after  $N_{\text{poll}}$  slots after the end of the last access window, it shall return to park, with the same beacon parameters.

When a device is unparked, the SEQN bit for the link shall be reset to 1 on both the master and the slave (see [Section 7.6.2.1 on page 154](#)).

### 8.9.7 Broadcast Scan Window

In the beacon train, the master can support broadcast messages to the parked slaves. However, it may extend its broadcast capacity by indicating to the parked slaves that more broadcast information is following after the beacon train. This is achieved by an LMP command ordering the parked slaves (as well as the active slaves) to listen to the channel for broadcast messages during a limited time window. This time window starts at the beacon instant and continues for the period indicated in the LMP command sent in the beacon train.

### 8.9.8 Polling in the Park State

In the **PARK** state, parked slaves may send access requests in the access window provided a broadcast packet is received in the preceding master-to-slave slot. Slaves in the **CONNECTION** state shall not send in the slave-to-master slots following the broadcast packet, since they are only allowed to send if addressed specifically.

## 8.10 CONNECTIONLESS SLAVE BROADCAST MODE

In connectionless slave broadcast mode, the master broadcasts packets to zero or more slaves.

The master can broadcast messages to multiple slaves in connectionless slave broadcast mode. For this purpose, the master shall reserve an LT\_ADDR for use only by Connectionless Slave Broadcast traffic. In connectionless slave broadcast mode, the master transmits packets at specified intervals.

### 8.10.1 Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmit Operation

In connectionless slave broadcast mode, the master transmits packets on the CSB logical transport at intervals requested by the Host in master-to-slave transmission slots.

If the Host has not yet provided the BR/EDR Controller with any data packets to transmit since enabling the broadcast, or if the length of the data is zero, the BR/EDR Controller shall transmit NULL packets. This is different than the case where the Host has provided data since enabling the broadcast but has not provided new data since the previous broadcast packet. In that case, the BR/EDR Controller resends the most recent data.

The Host may provide Connectionless Slave Broadcast data through HCI commands. Because HCI commands are limited to 255 bytes, a single command cannot carry the maximum payloads allowed by larger packets, such as DH5. Therefore, HCI commands for Connectionless Slave Broadcast allow fragmentation of large payloads at the HCI level. The BR/EDR Controller shall assemble all HCI fragments of a packet before transmission and shall not transmit incomplete packets. Until such assembly is complete, the controller shall continue to transmit the previous data (if any).

[Figure 8.23](#) shows the timing of Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets.

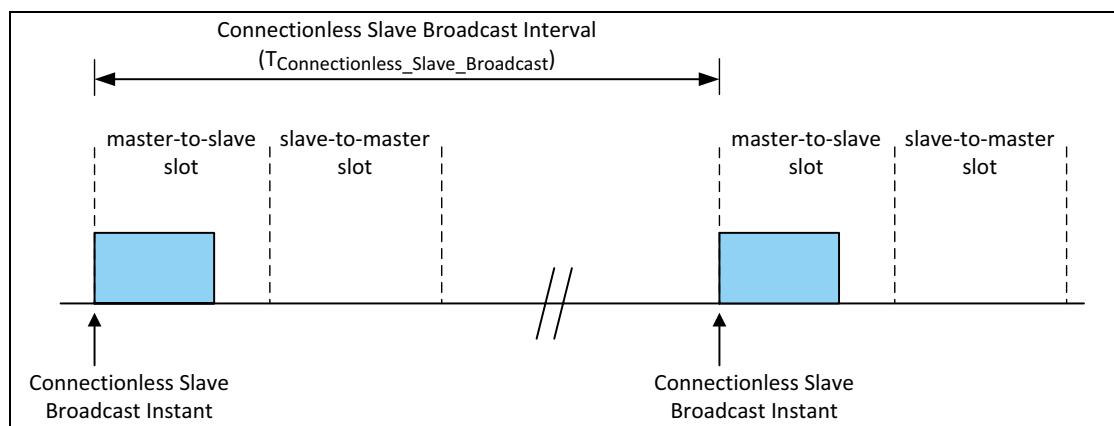


Figure 8.23: Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timing

Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instants are separated by the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Interval ( $T_{Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast}$ ). The Connectionless

Slave Broadcast interval can be any even value from 0x0002 to 0xFFFF slots and is negotiated between the BR/EDR Controller and the Host during CSB setup. At the start of each Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant, the Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet is transmitted using the adapted piconet physical channel. Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets shall not be encrypted.

The master shall stop transmitting Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets after *CSB\_supervisionTO* slots have passed without transmission of a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet. *CSB\_supervisionTO* may be any even value from 0x0002 to 0xFFFF slots. Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets can fail to transmit for a certain continuous period of time due to scheduling conflicts from higher priority traffic.

### 8.10.2 Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Operation

In connectionless slave broadcast mode, the slave is synchronized to a Connectionless Slave Broadcast transmitter and is receiving profile broadcast data on the LT\_ADDR reserved by the master for the CSB logical transport.

When requesting synchronization establishment, the Host provides the Controller with the master's clock offset and the next Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant received from the synchronization train. Because of delays in the Host, it is possible that the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant occurs in the past. The BR/EDR Controller shall support Connectionless Slave Broadcast instants at least 1 second in the past. The slave should determine whether the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant is in the past or the future by using the master's clock offset and its own clock to estimate the current master clock and start listening from the next broadcast instant.

The Skip parameter is set by the Host and specifies the number of consecutive Connectionless Slave Broadcast instants which the receiver may skip after successfully receiving a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet. If the Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet is received successfully, the payload data shall be forwarded to the Host. If no Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet is received by a slave during a Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant, the slave shall ignore Skip and instead listen at every scheduled Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant until it is able to successfully receive a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet or until *CSB\_supervisionTO* number of slots have passed.

The BR/EDR Controller shall stop listening for Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets after *CSB\_supervisionTO* slots have passed without receiving a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet.

The BR/EDR Controller may transfer Connectionless Slave Broadcast data to the Host through HCI events. Because HCI events are limited to 255 bytes a received packet may not fit into a single HCI event. The BR/EDR Controller shall fragment and transfer such packets using multiple HCI events.

### 8.10.3 AFH in Connectionless Slave Broadcast

Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets shall be transmitted on the adapted piconet channel and the synchronization train shall always contain the current AFH channel map for the PBD logical link.

## 8.11 SYNCHRONIZATION ESTABLISHMENT SUBSTATES

### 8.11.1 Synchronization Scan Substate

The **synchronization scan** substate is used by slaves to receive synchronization train packets from the piconet master. The **synchronization scan** substate can be entered from the **STANDBY** or **CONNECTED** states. In the **synchronization scan** substate, a device uses the Synchronization Scan procedure (see [Section 2.7.3 on page 100](#)). During each synchronization scan window, the device shall listen on a single frequency with its correlator matched to the master's channel access code (CAC).

If the correlator exceeds the trigger threshold during the Synchronization Scan procedure, the scanning device shall receive the synchronization train packet, whose contents are defined in [Table 8.8 on page 208](#). Upon reception of the synchronization train packet the device shall exit the **synchronization scan** substate and return to the **STANDBY** or **CONNECTED** state as appropriate. If the packet is not received the device should stay in the **synchronization scan substate**. If the **synchronization\_scanTO** expires before reception of a Synchronization Train packet, the device shall return to the **STANDBY** state. A device attempting to synchronize to a Connectionless Slave Broadcast transport shall ignore any synchronization train packet whose Connectionless Slave Broadcast LT\_ADDR field in the payload is set to zero.

The synchronization scan may be interrupted by higher priority traffic. In particular, the reserved synchronous slots should have higher priority than the synchronization scan.

### 8.11.2 Synchronization Train Substate

The **synchronization train** substate is used by the master of the piconet to transmit synchronization train packets. The **synchronization train** substate can be entered from the **STANDBY** or **CONNECTED** states. In the **synchronization train** substate, a device uses the Synchronization Train procedure (see [Section 2.7.2 on page 99](#)). During the Synchronization Train procedure, the master repeatedly transmits synchronization train packets on the channels specified in [Section 2.6.4.8 on page 98](#). While in the **synchronization train** substate:

- if Connectionless Slave Broadcast mode is enabled, the master shall continue to transmit Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets in addition to synchronization train packets;

- if the master is in Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode, it shall continue transmitting and receiving on all active logical transports to all slaves that have acknowledged the Coarse Clock Adjustment (see [\[Part C\] Section 4.1.14.1 on page 271](#)).

Reserved SCO and eSCO slots should have higher priority than the synchronization train. Once the master enters the **synchronization train** substate, it shall remain in the **synchronization train** substate until *synchronization\_trainTO* expires or the Host directs otherwise. The master shall transition to the **STANDBY** or **CONNECTED** state when exiting the **synchronization train** substate.

The synchronization train packet is a basic rate ACL packet with type DM3 and LT\_ADDR of zero. FLOW, ARQN and SEQN shall all be set to zero upon transmission and ignored upon receipt. The HEC LFSR shall be initialized with the master UAP. In the payload header, the LLID shall contain the value 10b (start of an L2CAP message or no fragmentation). FLOW in the payload header shall be set to zero upon transmission and ignored upon reception. The length of the payload body (LENGTH) shall be 28 bytes. The CRC LFSR shall be initialized with the master UAP. Data whitening is not used. Encryption is not used.

There are two possible formats. Format 1 shall be used when the synchronization train is being transmitted by a device which is the master of a piconet where Connectionless Slave Broadcast mode is enabled, and format 2 shall be used otherwise. The format of the payload portion of the DM3 packet used in the synchronization train is shown in [Table 8.8](#).

Bytes	Field	Length	Format 1 Description	Format 2 Description
0-3	CLK	4 Bytes	Current piconet clock (CLK)	Current piconet clock (CLK)
4-7	Future Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant	4 Bytes	CLK[27:1] corresponding to the start of a future Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant.	CLK[27:1] + 1600 slots
8-17	AFH Channel Map	10 Bytes	The current AFH_Channel_Map used for the PBD logical link. The format is the same as the Link Manager AFH_Channel_Map parameter, see <a href="#">[Vol. 2, Part C] Table 5.2: on page 359</a> .	Unspecified
18-23	Master BD_ADDR	6 Bytes	Master BD_ADDR	Master BD_ADDR

*Table 8.8: Synchronization Train Packet Payload Body*

Bytes	Field	Length	Format 1 Description	Format 2 Description
24-25	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Interval	2 Bytes	Time duration in slots from the start of a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet to the start of the next Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet. Must be even.	Unspecified
26	Connectionless Slave Broadcast LT_ADDR	1 Byte	The LT_ADDR reserved for the CSB logical transport.	0x00
27	Service Data	1 Byte	Defined by the service using the Connectionless Slave Broadcast feature.	0x00

Table 8.8: Synchronization Train Packet Payload Body (Continued)

The Host provides the Service Data for the synchronization train packet payload body when format 1 is used. The BR/EDR Controller provides the data for all other fields.

All devices in the **synchronization scan** substate shall accept payloads of any length from 28 to 121 bytes inclusive and shall ignore bytes 28 (counting from 0) and beyond.

When format 1 is used the Future Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant in the synchronization train packet payload shall correspond to one of the next 4 broadcast instants. [Figure 8.24](#) shows an example of valid and invalid values for this field.

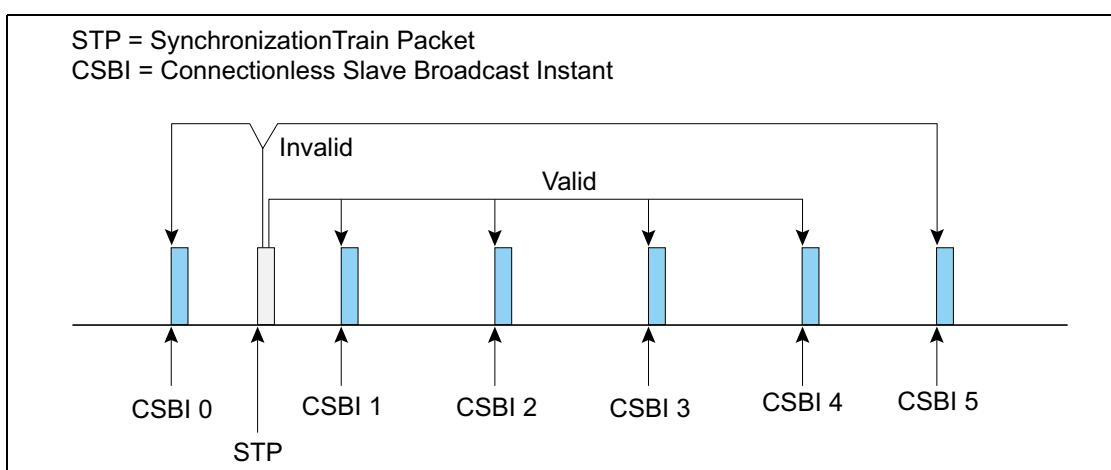


Figure 8.24: Examples of Synchronization Train Pointing to Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant

The master shall not transmit synchronization train packets in a Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant.

## 9 AUDIO

On the air-interface, either a 64 kb/s log PCM (Pulse Code Modulation) format (A-law or  $\mu$ -law) may be used, or a 64 kb/s CVSD (Continuous Variable Slope Delta Modulation) may be used. The latter format applies an adaptive delta modulation algorithm with syllabic companding.

The voice coding on the line interface is designed to have a quality equal to or better than the quality of 64 kb/s log PCM.

[Table 9.1 on page 210](#) summarizes the voice coding schemes supported on the air interface. The appropriate voice coding scheme is selected after negotiations between the Link Managers.

Voice Codecs	
linear	CVSD
8-bit logarithmic	A-law $\mu$ -law

*Table 9.1: Voice coding schemes supported on the air interface*

### 9.1 LOG PCM CODEC

Since the synchronous logical transports on the air-interface can support a 64 kb/s information stream, a 64 kb/s log PCM traffic can be used for transmission. Either A-law or  $\mu$ -law compression may be applied. In the event that the line interface uses A-law and the air interface uses  $\mu$ -law or vice versa, a conversion from A-law to  $\mu$ -law shall be performed. The compression method shall follow ITU-T recommendations G. 711.

### 9.2 CVSD CODEC

A more robust format for voice over the air interface is delta modulation. This modulation scheme follows the waveform where the output bits indicate whether the prediction value is smaller or larger than the input waveform. To reduce slope overload effects, syllabic companding is applied: the step size is adapted according to the average signal slope. The input to the CVSD encoder shall be 64 ksamples/s linear PCM (typically 16 bits, but actual value is implementation specific). Block diagrams of the CVSD encoder and CVSD decoder are shown in [Figure 9.1 on page 211](#), [Figure 9.2 on page 211](#) and [Figure 9.3 on page 211](#). The system shall be clocked at 64 kHz.

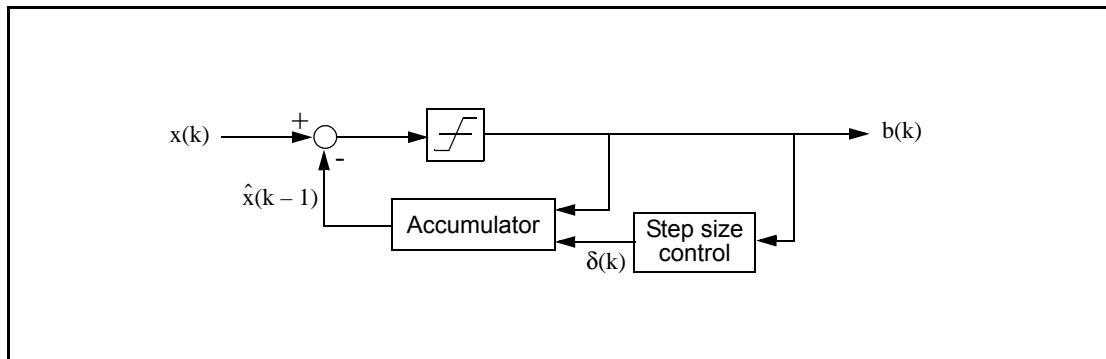


Figure 9.1: Block diagram of CVSD encoder with syllabic companding

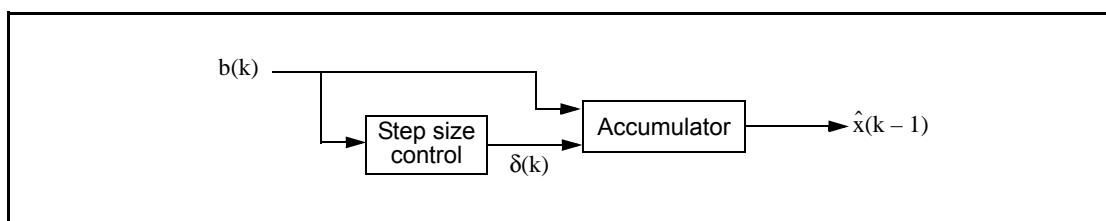


Figure 9.2: Block diagram of CVSD decoder with syllabic companding

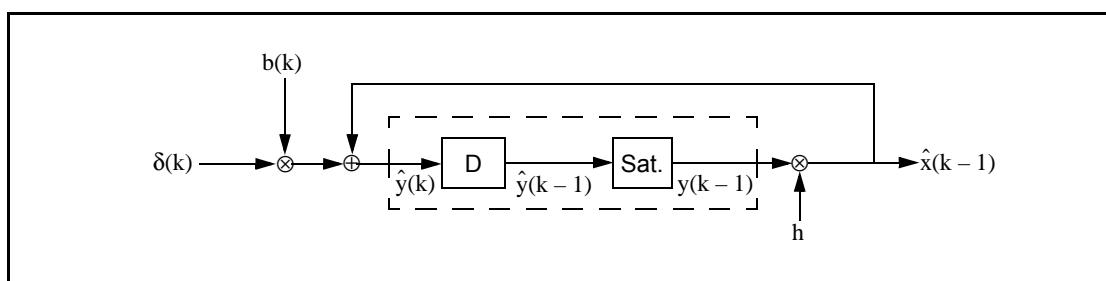


Figure 9.3: Accumulator procedure

Let  $\text{sgn}(x) = 1$  for  $x \geq 0$ , otherwise  $\text{sgn}(x) = -1$ . On air these numbers shall be represented by the sign bit; i.e. negative numbers are mapped on "1" and positive numbers are mapped on "0".

Denote the CVSD encoder output bit  $b(k)$ , the encoder input  $x(k)$ , the accumulator contents  $y(k)$ , and the step size  $\delta(k)$ . Furthermore, let  $h$  be the decay factor for the accumulator, let  $\beta$  denote the decay factor for the step size, and, let  $\alpha$  be the syllabic companding parameter. The latter parameter monitors the slope by considering the  $K$  most recent output bits

Let

$$\hat{x}(k) = hy(k). \quad (\text{EQ } 14)$$

Then, the CVSD encoder internal state shall be updated according to the following set of equations:

$$b(k) = \text{sgn}\{x(k) - \hat{x}(k-1)\}, \quad (\text{EQ } 15)$$

$$\alpha = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } J \text{ bits in the last } K \text{ output bits are equal,} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 16)$$

$$\delta(k) = \begin{cases} \min\{\delta(k-1) + \delta_{\min}, \delta_{\max}\}, & \alpha = 1, \\ \max\{\beta\delta(k-1), \delta_{\min}\}, & \alpha = 0, \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 17)$$

$$y(k) = \begin{cases} \min\{\hat{y}(k), y_{\max}\}, & \hat{y}(k) \geq 0. \\ \max\{\hat{y}(k), y_{\min}\}, & \hat{y}(k) < 0. \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 18)$$

where

$$\hat{y}(k) = \hat{x}(k-1) + b(k)\delta(k). \quad (\text{EQ } 19)$$

In these equations,  $\delta_{\min}$  and  $\delta_{\max}$  are the minimum and maximum step sizes, and,  $y_{\min}$  and  $y_{\max}$  are the accumulator's negative and positive saturation values, respectively. Over air, the bits shall be sent in the same order they are generated by the CVSD encoder.

For a 64 kb/s CVSD, the parameters as shown in [Table 9.2](#) shall be used. The numbers are based on a 16 bit signed number output from the accumulator. These values result in a time constant of 0.5 ms for the accumulator decay, and a time constant of 16 ms for the step size decay

Parameter	Value
$h$	$1 - \frac{1}{32}$
$\beta$	$1 - \frac{1}{1024}$
$J$	4
$K$	4
$\delta_{\min}$	10
$\delta_{\max}$	1280
$y_{\min}$	$-2^{15}$ or $-2^{15} + 1$
$y_{\max}$	$2^{15} - 1$

*Table 9.2: CVSD parameter values. The values are based on a 16 bit signed number output from the accumulator*

## 9.3 ERROR HANDLING

In the DV, HV3, EV3, EV5, 2-EV3, 3-EV3, 2-EV5 and 3-EV5 packets, the voice is not protected by FEC. The quality of the voice in an error-prone environment then depends on the robustness of the voice coding scheme and, in the case of eSCO, the retransmission scheme. CVSD, in particular, is rather insensitive to random bit errors, which are experienced as white background noise. However, when a packet is rejected because either the channel access code, the HEC test was unsuccessful, or the CRC has failed, measures have to be taken to “fill” in the lost speech segment.

The voice payload in the **HV2** and **EV4** packets are protected by a 2/3 rate FEC. For errors that are detected but cannot be corrected, the receiver should try to minimize the audible effects. For instance, from the 15-bit FEC segment with uncorrected errors, the 10-bit information part as found before the FEC decoder should be used. The **HV1** packet is protected by a 3 bit repetition FEC. For this code, the decoding scheme will always assume zero or one-bit errors. Thus, there exist no detectable but uncorrectable error events for **HV1** packets.

## 9.4 GENERAL AUDIO REQUIREMENTS

### 9.4.1 Signal Levels

For A-law and  $\mu$ -law log-PCM encoded signals the requirements on signal levels shall follow the ITU-T recommendation G.711.

Full swing at the 16 bit linear PCM interface to the CVSD encoder is defined to be 3 dBm0.

### 9.4.2 CVSD Audio Quality

For Bluetooth audio quality the requirements are put on the transmitter side. The 64 ksamples/s linear PCM input signal should have negligible spectral power density above 4 kHz. The power spectral density in the 4-32 kHz band of the decoded signal at the 64 ksamples/s linear PCM output, should be more than 20 dB below the maximum in the 0-4 kHz range.

## 10 LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 1.1:	Piconets with a single slave operation (a), a multi-slave operation (b) and a scatternet operation (c) .....	66
Figure 1.2:	Standard Basic Rate packet format .....	67
Figure 1.3:	Standard Enhanced Data Rate packet format .....	67
Figure 1.4:	Bluetooth clock .....	68
Figure 1.5:	Format of BD_ADDR .....	69
Figure 2.1:	Multi-slot packets .....	73
Figure 2.2:	Derivation of CLK in master (a) and in slave (b) .....	74
Figure 2.3:	RX/TX cycle of master transceiver in normal mode for single-slot packets .....	76
Figure 2.4:	RX/TX cycle of slave transceiver in normal mode for single-slot packets .....	77
Figure 2.5:	RX timing of slave returning from hold mode .....	78
Figure 2.6:	Derivation of CLKE .....	80
Figure 2.7:	RX/TX cycle of transceiver in PAGE mode .....	81
Figure 2.8:	Timing of page response packets on successful page in first half slot .....	82
Figure 2.9:	Timing of page response packets on successful page in second half slot .....	83
Figure 2.10:	Timing of inquiry response packets on successful inquiry in first half slot .....	85
Figure 2.11:	Timing of inquiry response packets on successful inquiry in second half slot .....	85
Figure 2.12:	General block diagram of hop selection scheme .....	88
Figure 2.13:	Hop selection scheme in CONNECTION state .....	88
Figure 2.14:	Single- and multi-slot packets .....	89
Figure 2.15:	Example of the same channel mechanism .....	89
Figure 2.16:	Block diagram of the basic hop selection kernel for the hop system .....	90
Figure 2.17:	XOR operation for the hop system .....	91
Figure 2.18:	Permutation operation for the hop system .....	92
Figure 2.19:	Butterfly implementation .....	92
Figure 2.20:	Block diagram of adaptive hop selection mechanism .....	94
Figure 2.21:	Synchronization train packet timing on a single channel .....	100
Figure 2.22:	Synchronization scan timing .....	101
Figure 4.1:	Functional diagram of TX buffering .....	106
Figure 4.2:	Functional diagram of RX buffering .....	110
Figure 6.1:	General Basic Rate packet format .....	115
Figure 6.2:	General enhanced data rate packet format .....	115
Figure 6.3:	Access code format .....	117
Figure 6.4:	Preamble .....	118

Figure 6.5:	Construction of the sync word .....	119
Figure 6.6:	LFSR and the starting state to generate .....	121
Figure 6.7:	Trailer in CAC when MSB of sync word is 0 (a), and when MSB of sync word is 1 (b) .....	121
Figure 6.8:	Header format .....	122
Figure 6.9:	Format of the FHS payload .....	127
Figure 6.10:	DV packet format .....	130
Figure 6.11:	Synchronization sequence .....	136
Figure 6.12:	Payload header format for Basic Rate single-slot ACL packets .....	137
Figure 6.13:	Payload header format for multi-slot ACL packets and all EDR ACL packets .....	137
Figure 7.1:	Header bit processes .....	143
Figure 7.2:	Payload bit processes .....	143
Figure 7.3:	The LFSR circuit generating the HEC .....	144
Figure 7.4:	Initial state of the HEC generating circuit .....	145
Figure 7.5:	HEC generation and checking .....	145
Figure 7.6:	The LFSR circuit generating the CRC .....	146
Figure 7.7:	Initial state of the CRC generating circuit .....	146
Figure 7.8:	CRC generation and checking .....	146
Figure 7.9:	Data whitening LFSR .....	147
Figure 7.10:	Bit-repetition encoding scheme .....	148
Figure 7.11:	LFSR generating the (15,10) shortened Hamming code .....	149
Figure 7.12:	Stage 1 of the receive protocol for determining the ARQN bit .....	151
Figure 7.13:	Stage 2 (ACL) of the receive protocol for determining the ARQN bit .....	152
Figure 7.14:	Stage 2 (eSCO) of the receive protocol for determining the ARQN bit .....	153
Figure 7.15:	Transmit filtering for packets with CRC .....	154
Figure 7.16:	Broadcast repetition scheme .....	158
Figure 8.1:	State diagram of link controller .....	159
Figure 8.2:	Conventional page (a), page while one synchronous link present (b), page while two synchronous links present (c) .....	164
Figure 8.3:	Messaging at initial connection when slave responds to first page message .....	166
Figure 8.4:	Messaging at initial connection when slave responds to second page message .....	166
Figure 8.5:	First half slot truncated page .....	167
Figure 8.6:	Second half slot truncated page .....	167
Figure 8.7:	Connection state .....	175
Figure 8.8:	RX/TX timing in multi-slave configuration .....	176
Figure 8.9:	eSCO Window Details for Single-Slot Packets .....	180
Figure 8.10:	eSCO Window Details for Asymmetric Traffic .....	180

Figure 8.11: Successful hop sequence switching .....	185
Figure 8.12: Recovery hop sequences .....	186
Figure 8.13: AFH_Instant changes during multi-slot packets transmitted by the master .....	187
Figure 8.14: Positive Coarse Clock Adjustment .....	191
Figure 8.15: Negative Coarse Clock Adjustment .....	191
Figure 8.16: Sniff anchor points .....	193
Figure 8.17: Sniff subrating .....	195
Figure 8.18: General beacon train format .....	199
Figure 8.19: Definition of access window .....	200
Figure 8.20: Access procedure applying the polling technique. ....	200
Figure 8.21: Disturbance of access window by SCO traffic .....	201
Figure 8.22: Extended sleep interval of parked slaves .....	202
Figure 8.23: Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timing .....	205
Figure 8.24: Examples of Synchronization Train Pointing to Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant .....	209
Figure 9.1: Block diagram of CVSD encoder with syllabic companding ...	211
Figure 9.2: Block diagram of CVSD decoder with syllabic companding ...	211
Figure 9.3: Accumulator procedure .....	211
Figure 11.1: SLR measurement set-up .....	219
Figure 11.2: RLR measurement set-up .....	219
Figure 11.3: Plot of recommended frequency mask for Bluetooth. The GSM send frequency mask is given for comparison (dotted line) ...	220
Figure 11.4: Timing constraint on AFH_Instant with slaves in park, hold and sniff .....	224
Figure 11.5: AFH Map Change – Connectionless Slave Broadcast master	225

## 11 LIST OF TABLES

Table 2.1:	Control of the butterflies for the hop system .....	91
Table 2.2:	Control for hop system .....	95
Table 6.1:	Summary of access code types .....	117
Table 6.2:	Packets defined for synchronous, asynchronous, and CSB logical transport types .....	125
Table 6.3:	Description of the FHS payload .....	127
Table 6.4:	Contents of SR field .....	128
Table 6.5:	Contents of page scan mode field.....	128
Table 6.6:	Logical link LLID field contents.....	138
Table 6.7:	Use of payload header flow bit on the logical links .....	139
Table 6.8:	Link control packets .....	141
Table 6.9:	ACL packets.....	141
Table 6.10:	Synchronous packets.....	142
Table 8.1:	Relationship between scan interval, and paging modes R0, R1, and R2 .....	162
Table 8.2:	Relationship between train repetition, and paging modes R0, R1 and R2 when synchronous links are present .....	164
Table 8.3:	Initial messaging during start-up .....	165
Table 8.4:	Increase of train repetition when synchronous links are present .....	172
Table 8.5:	Messaging during inquiry routines .....	174
Table 8.6:	Channel classification descriptions .....	188
Table 8.7:	Sniff subrate anchor points .....	196
Table 8.8:	Synchronization Train Packet Payload Body .....	208
Table 9.1:	Voice coding schemes supported on the air interface .....	210
Table 9.2:	CVSD parameter values. The values are based on a 16 bit signed number output from the accumulator.....	212
Table 11.1:	Recommended Frequency Mask for Bluetooth.....	220

## APPENDIX A: GENERAL AUDIO RECOMMENDATIONS

### MAXIMUM SOUND PRESSURE

It is the sole responsibility of each manufacturer to design their audio products in a safe way with regards to injury to the human ear. The Bluetooth Specification doesn't specify maximum sound pressure from an audio device.

### OTHER TELEPHONY NETWORK REQUIREMENTS

It is the sole responsibility of each manufacturer to design the Bluetooth audio product so that it meets the regulatory requirements of all telephony networks that it may be connected to.

### AUDIO LEVELS FOR BLUETOOTH

Audio levels shall be calculated as Send Loudness Rating, SLR, and Receive Loudness Rating, RLR. The calculation methods are specified in ITU-T Recommendation P.79.

The physical test set-up for Handsets and Headsets is described in ITU-T Recommendation P.51 and P.57

The physical test set-up for speakerphones and "Vehicle hands-free systems" is specified in ITU-T Recommendation P.34.

A general equation for computation of loudness rating (LR) for telephone sets is given by ITU-T recommendations P.79 and is given by

$$LR = -\frac{10}{m} \log_{10} \left( \sum_{i=N_1}^{N_2} 10^{m(s_i - w_i)/10} \right), \quad (\text{EQ 20})$$

where

$m$  is a constant ( $\sim 0.2$ ).

$w_i$  = weighting coefficient (different for the various LRs).

$S_i$  = the sensitivity at frequency  $F_i$ , of the electro-acoustic path

$N_1, N_2$ , consecutive filter bank numbers (Art. Index: 200-4000 Hz)

(EQ 20) on page 218 is used for calculating the (SLR) according to Figure 11.1 on page 219, and (RLR) according to Figure 11.2 on page 219. When calculating LRs one must only include those parts of the frequency band where an actual signal transmission can occur in order to ensure that the additive property of LRs is retained. Therefore ITU-T P.79 uses only the frequency band 200-4000 Hz in LR computations.

## MICROPHONE PATH

### SLR measurement model

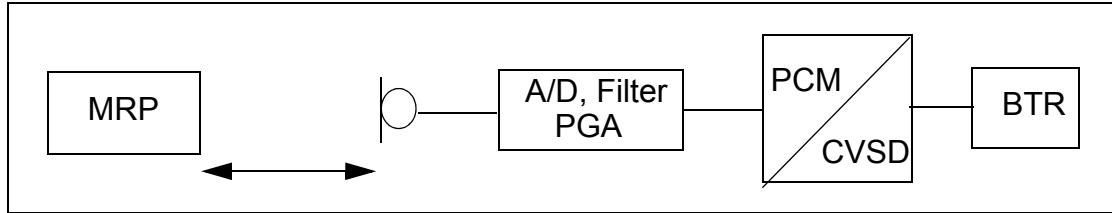


Figure 11.1: SLR measurement set-up

## LOUDSPEAKER PATH

### RLR measurement model

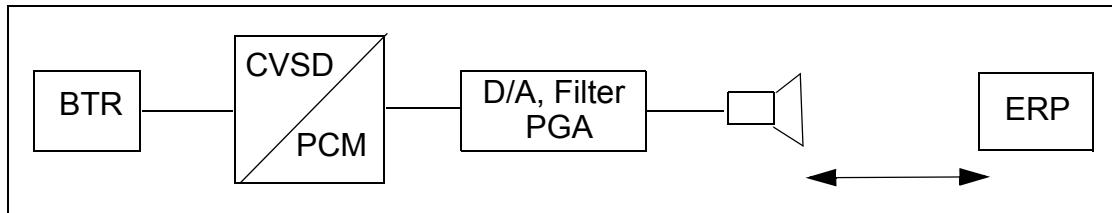


Figure 11.2: RLR measurement set-up

## BLUETOOTH VOICE INTERFACE

The specification for the Bluetooth voice interface should follow in the first place the *ITU-T Recommendations P.79*, which specifies the loudness ratings for telephone sets. These recommendations give general guidelines and specific algorithms used for calculating the loudness ratings of the audio signal with respect to Ear Reference Point (ERP).

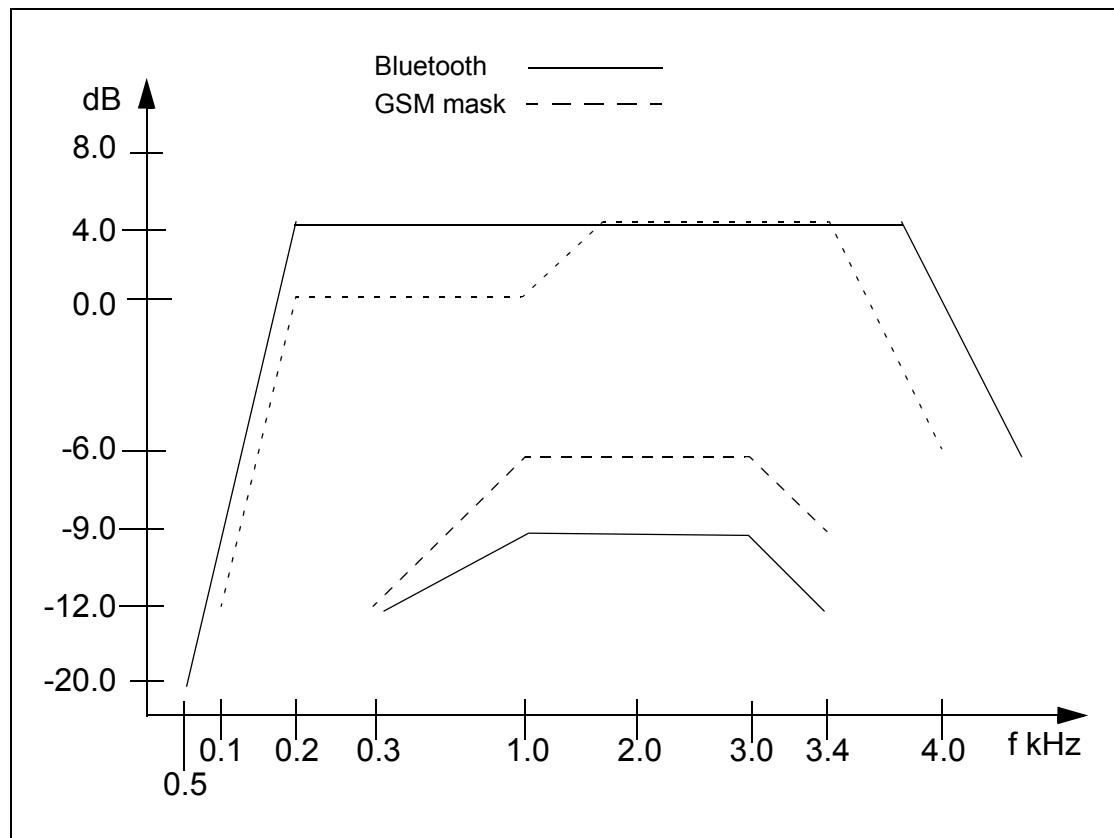
For Bluetooth voice interface to the different cellular system terminals, loudness and frequency recommendations based on the cellular standards should be used. For example, GSM 03.50 gives recommendation for both the loudness ratings and frequency mask for a GSM terminal interconnection with Bluetooth.

1- The output of the CVSD decoder are 16-bit linear PCM digital samples, at a sampling frequency of 8 ksample/s. Bluetooth also supports 8-bit log PCM samples of A-law and  $\mu$ -law type. The sound pressure at the ear reference point for a given 16-bit CVSD sample, should follow the sound pressure level given in the cellular standard specification.

2- A maximum sound pressure which can be represented by a 16-bit linear PCM sample at the output of the CVSD decoder should be specified according to the loudness rating, in ITU P.79 and at PGA value of 0 dB. Programmable Gain Amplifiers (PGAs) are used to control the audio level at the terminals by the user. For conversion between various PCM representations: A-law,  $\mu$ -law and linear PCM, ITU-T G.711, G.712, G.714 give guidelines and PCM value relationships. Zero-code suppression based on ITU-T G.711 is also recommended to avoid network mismatches.

## FREQUENCY MASK

For interfacing a Bluetooth terminal to a digital cellular mobile terminal, a compliance of the CVSD decoder signal to the frequency mask given in the cellular standard, is recommended to guarantee correct function of the speech coders. A recommendation for a frequency mask is given in the Table 11.1 below. The [Figure 11.3](#) below shows a plot of the frequency mask for Bluetooth (solid line). The GSM frequency mask (dotted line) is shown in [Figure 11.3](#) for comparison.



*Figure 11.3: Plot of recommended frequency mask for Bluetooth. The GSM send frequency mask is given for comparison (dotted line)*

Frequency (Hz)	Upper Limit (dB)	Lower Limit (dB)
50	-20	-
300	4	-12
1000	4	-9
2000	4	-9
3000	4	--9
3400	4	-12
4000	0	-

*Table 11.1: Recommended Frequency Mask for Bluetooth*

## APPENDIX B: TIMERS

---

This appendix contains a list of Baseband timers related to inactivity timeout defined in this specification. Definitions and default values of the timers are listed below

All timer values are given in slots.

### LIST OF TIMERS

#### **inquiryTO**

The *inquiryTO* defines the number of slots the **inquiry** substate shall last. The timer value may be changed by the host. HCI provides a command to change the timer value.

#### **pageTO**

The *pageTO* defines the number of slots the **page** substate can last before a response is received when the *extended\_pageTO* is zero. The timer value may be changed by the host. HCI provides a command to change the timer value.

#### **extended\_pageTO**

The *extended\_pageTO* defines the number of additional slots the **page** substate can last beyond *pageTO* before a response is received. The timer value may be changed by the Host. HCI provides a command to change the timer value.

#### **pagerespTO**

In the slave, it defines the number of slots the slave shall await the master's response, FHS packet, after sending the page acknowledgment ID packet. In the master, *pagerespTO* defines the number of slots the master should wait for the FHS packet acknowledgment before returning to **page** substate. Both master and slave units should use the same value for this timeout, to ensure common page/scan intervals after reaching *pagerespTO*.

The *pagerespTO* value is 8 slots.

#### **newconnectionTO**

Every time a new connection is started through paging, scanning, role switch or unparking, the master sends a POLL packet as the first packet in the new connection. Transmission and acknowledgment of this POLL packet is used to confirm the new connection. If the POLL packet is not received by the slave or the response packet is not received by the master for *newconnectionTO* number of slots, both the master and the slave should return to the previous substate.

*newconnectionTO* value is 32 slots.

## **supervisionTO**

The *supervisionTO* is used by both the master and slave to monitor link loss. If a device does not receive any packets that pass the HEC check and have the proper LT\_ADDR for a period of *supervisionTO*, it should reset the link. The supervision timer keeps running in Hold mode, Sniff mode and Park state.

The *supervisionTO* value may be changed by the host. HCI provides a command to change the timer value. At the baseband level a default value equivalent to 20 seconds should be used.

## **CSB\_supervisionTO**

The *CSB\_supervisionTO* is used by the slave to monitor connection loss and by the master to monitor scheduling conflicts and has a range of 0x0002 to 0xFFFF with only even values valid. At the baseband level a default value equivalent to 5.12 seconds should be used. The Host can change the value of *CSB\_supervisionTO*.

## **synchronization\_trainTO**

The *synchronization\_trainTO* is used by the master to determine how long to continue broadcasting Synchronization Train packets and has a range of 0x00000002 to 0x07FFFFFF with only even values valid. At the baseband level a default value equivalent to 120 seconds should be used. The Host can change the value of *synchronization\_trainTO*.

## **synchronization\_scanTO**

The *synchronization\_scanTO* is used by the slave to determine when to stop scanning for synchronization train packets. It has a range of 0x0022 to 0xFFFF with only even values valid. At the baseband level a default value equivalent to 5.12 seconds should be used. The Host can change the value of *synchronization\_scanTO*.

## **authenticatedPayloadTO**

The *authenticatedPayloadTO* is the maximum amount of time in seconds allowed between receiving packets containing a MIC. The Host can change the value of *authenticatedPayloadTO*.

The default value for *authenticatedPayloadTO* is 30 seconds.

## **CLK\_adj\_dragTO**

The *CLK\_adj\_dragTO* is the minimum amount of time in seconds the drag shall be suspended when a slave has not responded after the master has dragged the clock.

The *CLK\_adj\_dragTO* value shall be 1 second.

## APPENDIX C: RECOMMENDATIONS FOR AFH OPERATION IN PARK, HOLD, SNIFF, AND CONNECTIONLESS SLAVE BROADCAST

The three possible AFH operation modes for an AFH capable slave in Park state, Hold mode, and Sniff mode are the same three AFH operation modes used during **CONNECTION** state:

- *Enabled* (using the same AHS as slaves in the **CONNECTION** state)
- *Enabled* (using AHS(79))
- *Disabled*

The master may place an AFH capable slave in any of the three AFH operating modes.

### Operation at the Master

A master that has one or more slaves in park, hold, or sniff and decides to update them simultaneously shall schedule an *AFH\_Instant* for a time that allows it to update all these slaves (as well as its active slaves) with the new adaptation.

A master that has multiple slaves with non-overlapping “wake” times (e.g. slaves in sniff mode with different timing parameters) may keep them *enabled* on the same adaptation provided that its scheduling of the *AFH\_Instant* allows enough time to update them all.

This timing is summarized in the figure below. In this example the master decides that a hop sequence adaptation is required. However it cannot schedule an *AFH\_Instant* until it has informed its active slave, its slave in hold, its slave in sniff, and had time to un-park its parked slaves.

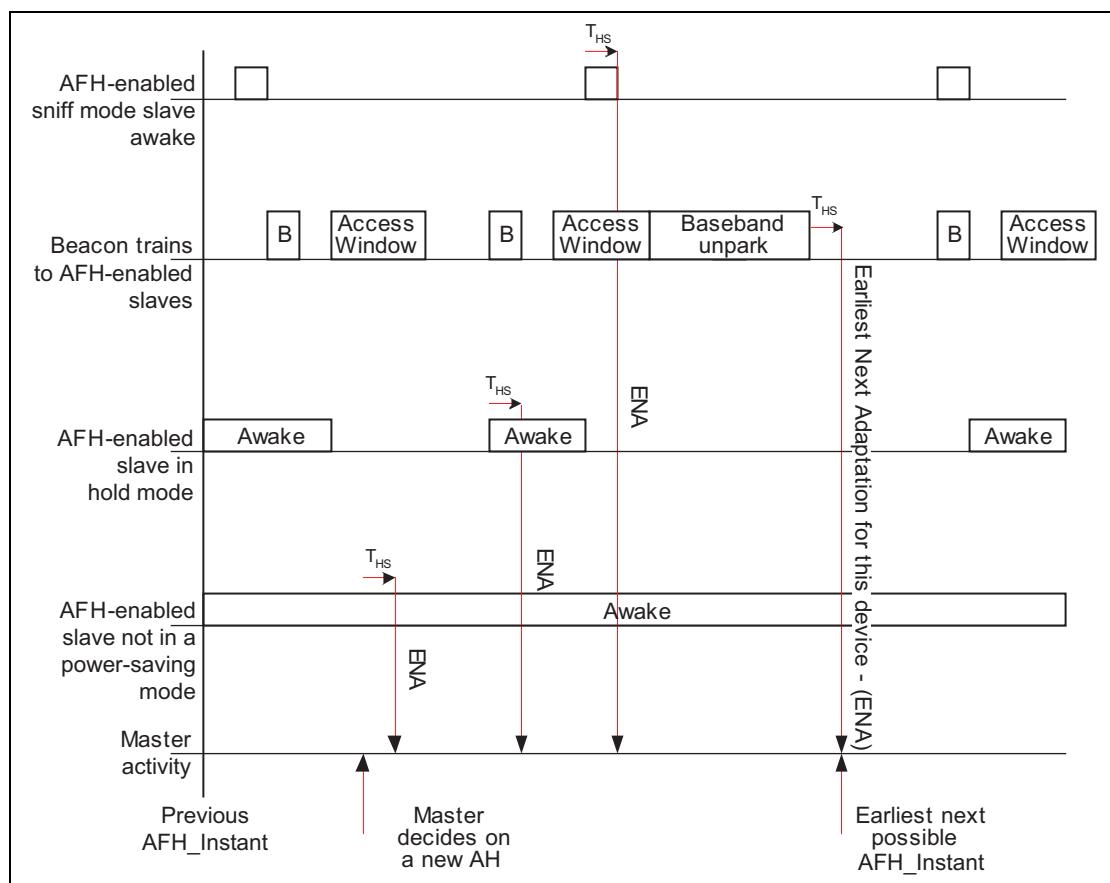


Figure 11.4: Timing constraint on AFH\_Instant with slaves in park, hold and sniff

## Operation in park

A slave that is in the Park state cannot send or receive any AFH LMP messages. Once the slave has left the Park state the master may subsequently update the slave's adaptation.

## AFH Operation in Sniff

Once a slave has been placed in sniff mode, the master may periodically change its AHS without taking the slave out of sniff mode.

## AFH Operation in Hold

A slave that is in hold mode cannot send or receive any LMP messages. Once the slave has left hold mode the master may subsequently update the slave's adaptation.

## AFH Operation in Connectionless Slave Broadcast

After the master's BR/EDR Controller notifies the master's Host that the AFH channel map has changed for the PBD logical link, the master's Host may restart the synchronization train to allow slaves to obtain the updated AFH channel map. This is shown in the following MSC.

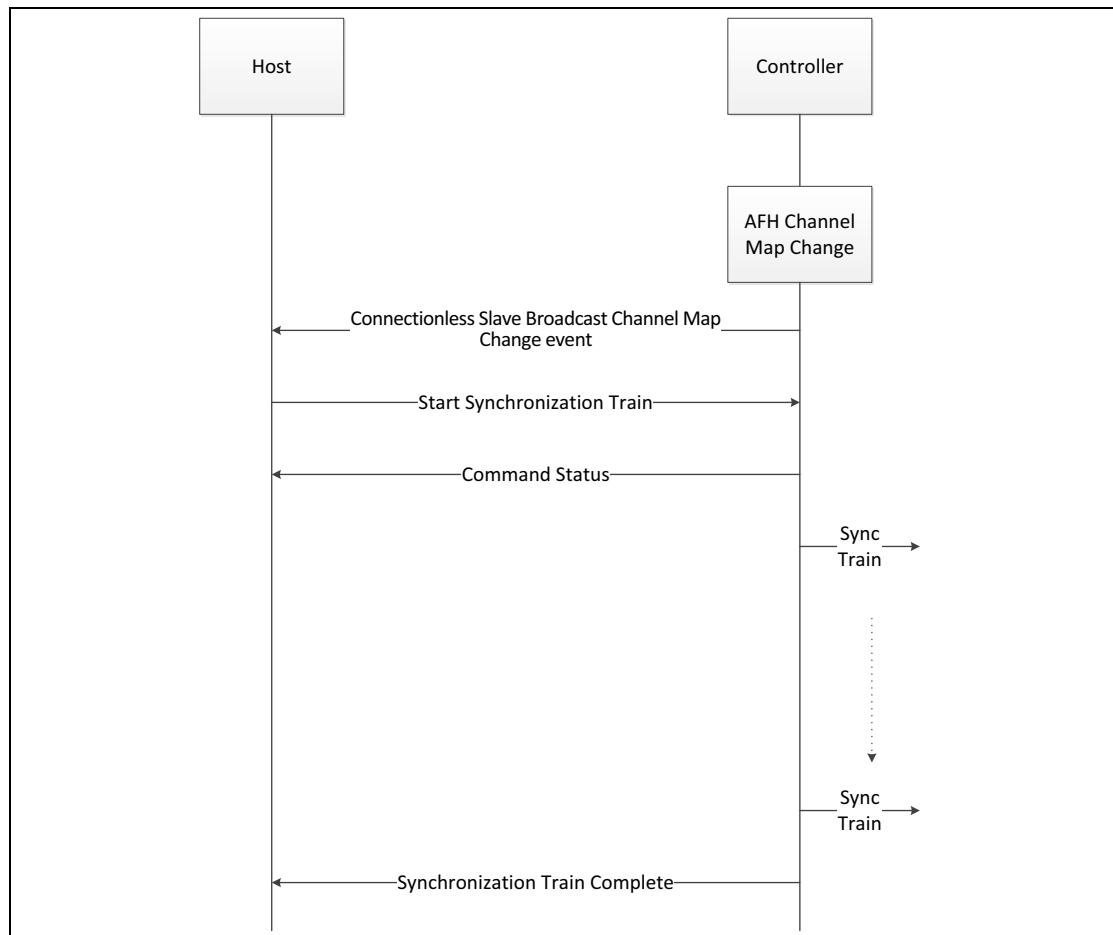


Figure 11.5: AFH Map Change – Connectionless Slave Broadcast master

Modification of the AFH channel map will affect slaves using a different AFH channel map. Depending on the overlap between a slave's current AFH channel map and the current AFH channel map of the master, the slave may miss some Connectionless Slave Broadcast instants and, in the case of disjoint or nearly disjoint AFH channel maps, the slave may lose synchronization. Slaves should monitor the Connectionless Slave Broadcast reception rate and obtain the current AFH channel map of the master (via the synchronization train) if degradation exceeds desired thresholds.



## LINK MANAGER PROTOCOL SPECIFICATION

***This specification describes the Link Manager Protocol (LMP) which is used for link set-up and control. The signals are interpreted and filtered out by the Link Manager on the receiving side and are not propagated to higher layers.***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>General Rules .....</b>	<b>232</b>
2.1	Message Transport .....	232
2.2	Synchronization .....	232
2.3	Packet Format.....	233
2.4	Transactions.....	234
2.4.1	LMP Response Timeout.....	235
2.5	Error Handling .....	235
2.5.1	Transaction Collision Resolution .....	236
2.6	Procedure Rules .....	236
2.7	General Response Messages.....	237
2.8	LMP Message Constraints .....	237
<b>3</b>	<b>Device Features.....</b>	<b>238</b>
3.1	General Description .....	238
3.2	Feature Definitions.....	238
3.3	Feature Mask Definition .....	246
3.4	Link Manager Interoperability policy.....	249
<b>4</b>	<b>Procedure Rules.....</b>	<b>250</b>
4.1	Connection Control .....	250
4.1.1	Connection Establishment.....	250
4.1.2	Detach .....	251
4.1.3	Power Control.....	252
4.1.4	Adaptive Frequency Hopping .....	256
4.1.5	Channel Classification.....	259
4.1.6	Link Supervision .....	261
4.1.7	Channel Quality Driven Data Rate Change (CQDDR)	262
4.1.8	Quality of Service (QoS).....	263
4.1.9	Paging Scheme Parameters .....	264
4.1.10	Control of Multi-slot Packets.....	266
4.1.11	Enhanced Data Rate .....	267
4.1.12	Encapsulated LMP PDUs.....	268
4.1.13	Ping .....	270
4.1.14	Piconet Clock Adjustment .....	271

4.2	Security .....	275
4.2.1	Authentication .....	275
4.2.2	Pairing .....	278
4.2.3	Change Link Key .....	281
4.2.4	Change Current Link Key Type .....	283
4.2.5	Encryption .....	285
4.2.6	Request Supported Encryption Key Size .....	294
4.2.7	Secure Simple Pairing.....	294
4.3	Informational Requests .....	310
4.3.1	Timing Accuracy.....	310
4.3.2	Clock Offset.....	311
4.3.3	LMP version .....	312
4.3.4	Supported Features .....	313
4.3.5	Name Request .....	315
4.4	Role Switch.....	316
4.4.1	Slot Offset .....	316
4.4.2	Role Switch .....	317
4.5	Modes of Operation .....	320
4.5.1	Hold Mode.....	320
4.5.2	Park State.....	323
4.5.3	Sniff Mode .....	330
4.6	Logical Transports .....	334
4.6.1	SCO Logical Transport.....	334
4.6.2	eSCO Logical Transport.....	337
4.7	Test Mode .....	342
4.7.1	Activation and Deactivation of Test Mode .....	342
4.7.2	Control of Test Mode .....	343
4.7.3	Summary of Test Mode PDUs.....	345
5	<b>Summary.....</b>	<b>348</b>
5.1	PDU Summary .....	348
5.2	Parameter Definitions .....	359
5.3	LMP Encapsulated.....	370
5.4	Default Values.....	371
6	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>372</b>
7	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>376</b>

## 1 INTRODUCTION

The Link Manager Protocol (LMP) is used to control and negotiate all aspects of the operation of the Bluetooth connection between two devices. This includes the set-up and control of logical transports and logical links, and for control of physical links.

The Link Manager Protocol is used to communicate between the Link Managers (LM) on the two devices which are connected by the ACL logical transport. All LMP messages shall apply solely to the physical link and associated logical links and logical transports between the sending and receiving devices.

The protocol is made up of a series of messages which shall be transferred over the ACL-C logical link on the default ACL logical transport between two devices. LMP messages shall be interpreted and acted-upon by the LM and shall not be directly propagated to higher protocol layers.

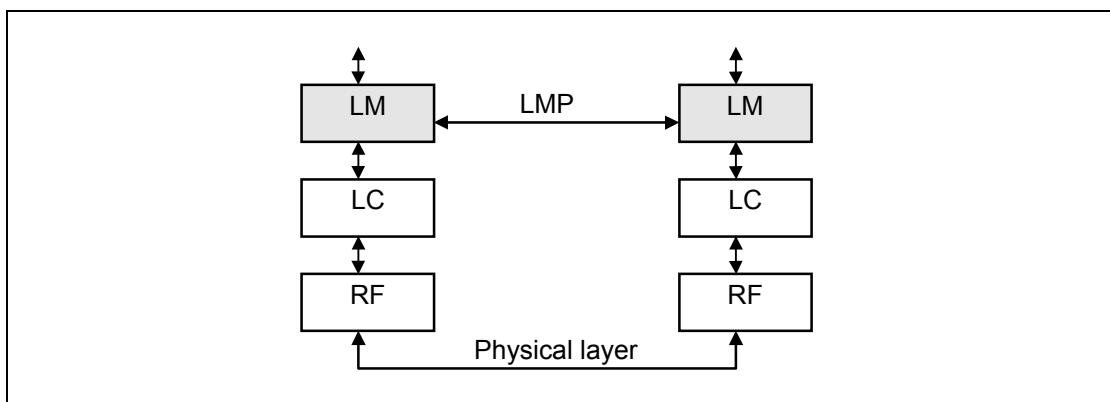


Figure 1.1: Link Manager Protocol signaling layer

## 2 GENERAL RULES

---

### 2.1 MESSAGE TRANSPORT

LMP messages shall be exchanged over the ACL-C logical link that is carried on the default ACL logical transport ([Baseband Specification, Section 4.4, on page 105](#)). The ACL-C logical link is distinguished from the ACL-U (which carries L2CAP and user data) by the Logical Link Identifier (LLID) field carried in the payload header of variable-length packets ([Baseband Specification, Section 6.6.2, on page 137](#)).

The ACL-C has a higher priority than other traffic - see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.6, on page 114](#).

The error detection and correction capabilities of the baseband ACL logical transport are generally sufficient for the requirements of the LMP. Therefore LMP messages do not contain any additional error detection information beyond what can be realized by means of sanity checks performed on the contents of LMP messages. Any such checks and protections to overcome undetected errors in LMP messages is an implementation matter.

### 2.2 SYNCHRONIZATION

This section is informative and explains why many of the LMP message sequences are defined as they are.

LMP messages are carried on the ACL-C logical link, which does not guarantee a time to deliver or acknowledge packets. LMP procedures take account of this when synchronizing state changes in the two devices. For example, criteria are defined that specify when a logical transport address (LT\_ADDR) may be re-used after it becomes available due to a device leaving the piconet or entering the park state. Other LMP procedures, such as hold or role switch include the Bluetooth clock as a parameter in order to define a fixed synchronization point. The transitions into and out of sniff mode are protected with a transition mode.

The LC normally attempts to communicate with each slave no less often than every  $T_{poll}$  slots (see [Section 4.1.8 on page 263](#)) based on the  $T_{poll}$  for that slave.

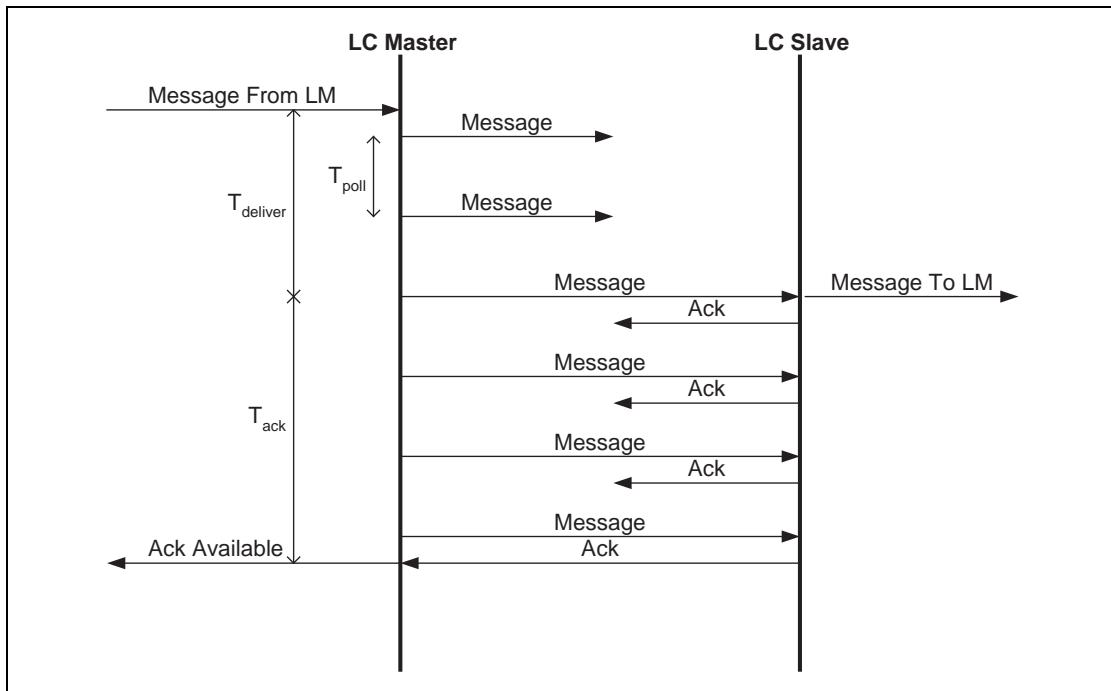


Figure 2.1: Transmission of a message from master to slave<sup>1</sup>

[Figure 2.1 on page 233](#) illustrates the fundamental problem. It shows the transmission of a packet from the master to the slave in conditions of heavy interference for illustrative purposes. It is obvious that neither side can determine the value of either  $T_{deliver}$  or  $T_{ack}$ . It is therefore not possible to use simple messages to identify uniquely the instant at which a state change occurs in the other device.

## 2.3 PACKET FORMAT

Each PDU is assigned either a 7 or a 15 bit opcode used to uniquely identify different types of PDUs, see [Table 5.1 on page 348](#). The first 7 bits of the opcode and a transaction ID are located in the first byte of the payload body. If the initial 7 bits of the opcode have one of the special escape values 124-127 then an additional byte of opcode is located in the second byte of the payload and the combination uniquely identifies the PDU.

The FLOW bit in the packet header is always 1 and is ignored on reception.

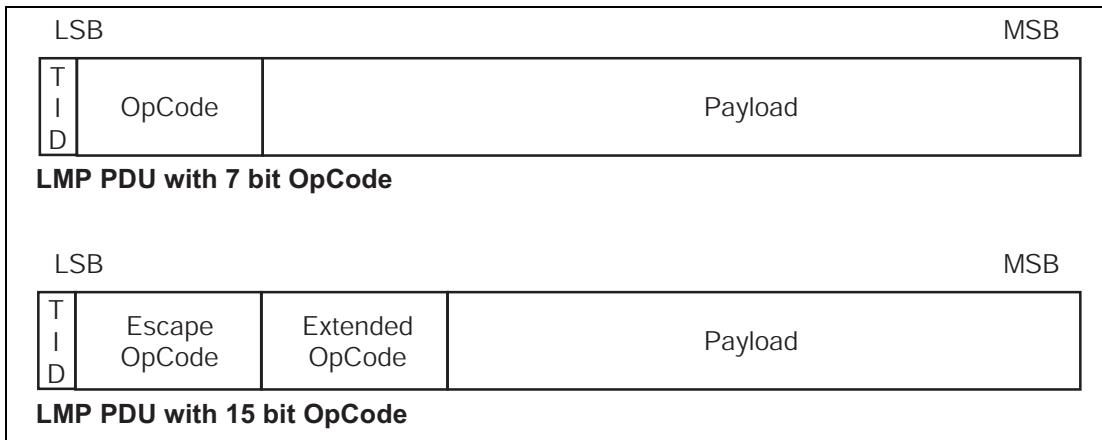
If the PDU contains one or more parameters these are placed in the payload starting immediately after the opcode, i.e. at byte 2 if the PDU has a 7 bit opcode or byte 3 if the PDU has a 15 bit opcode. The number of bytes used

---

1. Note the diagram shows the limiting case where the master transmits the message at intervals of  $T_{poll}$ . In the case of heavy interference improved performance is gained by transmitting more often.

depends on the length of the parameters. All parameters have a little-endian format, i.e. the least significant byte is transferred first.

LMP messages shall be transmitted using DM1 packets, however if an HV1 SCO link is in use and the length of the payload is less than 9 bytes then DV packets may be used.



*Figure 2.2: Payload body when LMP PDUs are sent*

## 2.4 TRANSACTIONS

The LMP operates in terms of transactions. A transaction is a connected set of message exchanges which achieve a particular purpose. All PDUs which form part of the same transaction shall have the same value for the transaction ID which is stored as part of the first byte of the OpCode (see [Section 2.3 on page 233](#)).

The transaction ID is in the least significant bit. It shall be 0 if the PDU forms part of a transaction that was initiated by the master and 1 if the transaction was initiated by the slave.

Each sequence described in [Section 4 on page 250](#) shall be defined as a transaction. For pairing, see [Section 4.2.2 on page 278](#), and encryption, see [Section 4.2.5 on page 285](#), all sequences belonging to each section shall be counted as one transaction and shall use the same transaction ID. For connection establishment, see [Section 4.1.1 on page 250](#), LMP\_host\_connection\_req and the response with LMP\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted shall form one transaction and have the transaction ID of 0. LMP\_setup\_complete is a stand-alone PDU, which forms a transaction by itself.

For error handling, see [Section 2.5 on page 235](#), the PDU to be rejected and LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext shall form a single transaction.

### 2.4.1 LMP Response Timeout

The time between receiving a baseband packet carrying an LMP PDU and sending a baseband packet carrying a valid response PDU, according to the procedure rules in [Section 4 on page 250](#), shall be less than the LMP Response Timeout. The value of this timeout is 30 seconds. Note that the LMP Response Timeout is applied not only to sequences described in [Section 4 on page 250](#), but also to the series of the sequences defined as the transactions in [Section 4 on page 250](#). It shall also be applied to the series of LMP transactions that take place during a period when traffic on the ACL-U logical link is disabled for the duration of the series of LMP transactions, for example during the enabling of encryption.

The LMP Response Timeout shall restart each time an LMP PDU which requires a reply is queued for transmission by the baseband.

## 2.5 ERROR HANDLING

If the LM receives a PDU with unrecognized opcode, it shall respond with LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext with the error code Unknown LMP PDU (0x19). The opcode parameter that is echoed back is the unrecognized opcode.

If the LM receives a PDU with invalid parameters, it shall respond with LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext with the error code Invalid LMP Parameters (0x1E).

If the maximum response time, see [Section 2.4 on page 234](#), is exceeded or if a link loss is detected (see [Baseband Specification, Section 3.1, on page 102](#)), the party that waits for the response shall conclude that the procedure has terminated unsuccessfully.

Erroneous LMP messages can be caused by errors on the channel or systematic errors at the transmit side. To detect the latter case, the LM should monitor the number of erroneous messages and disconnect if it exceeds a threshold, which is implementation-dependent.

When the LM receives a PDU that is not allowed, and the PDU normally expects a PDU reply, for example LMP\_host\_connection\_req or LMP\_unit\_key, the LM shall return PDU LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext with the error code LMP PDU Not Allowed (0x24). If the PDU normally doesn't expect a reply, for example LMP\_sres or LMP\_temp\_key, the PDU will be ignored.

The reception of an optional PDU which is not supported shall be handled in one of two ways: if the LM simply does not know the opcode (e.g. it was added at a later version of the specification) it shall respond with LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext with the error code Unknown LMP PDU (0x19). If the LM recognizes the PDU as optional but unsupported then it shall reply with LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext with the error code Unsupported LMP Feature (0x1A) if the PDU would normally generate a reply otherwise no reply is generated.

## 2.5.1 Transaction Collision Resolution

Since LMP PDUs are not interpreted in real time, collision situations can occur where both LMs initiate the same procedure and both cannot be completed. In this situation, the master shall reject the slave-initiated procedure by sending LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext with the error code *LMP Error Transaction Collision* (0x23). The master-initiated procedure shall then be completed.

Collision situations can also occur where both LMs initiate different procedures and both cannot be completed. In this situation, the master shall reject the slave-initiated procedure by sending LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext with the error code *Different Transaction Collision* (0x2A). The master-initiated procedure shall then be completed.

## 2.6 PROCEDURE RULES

Each procedure is described and depicted with a sequence diagram. The following symbols are used in the sequence diagrams:

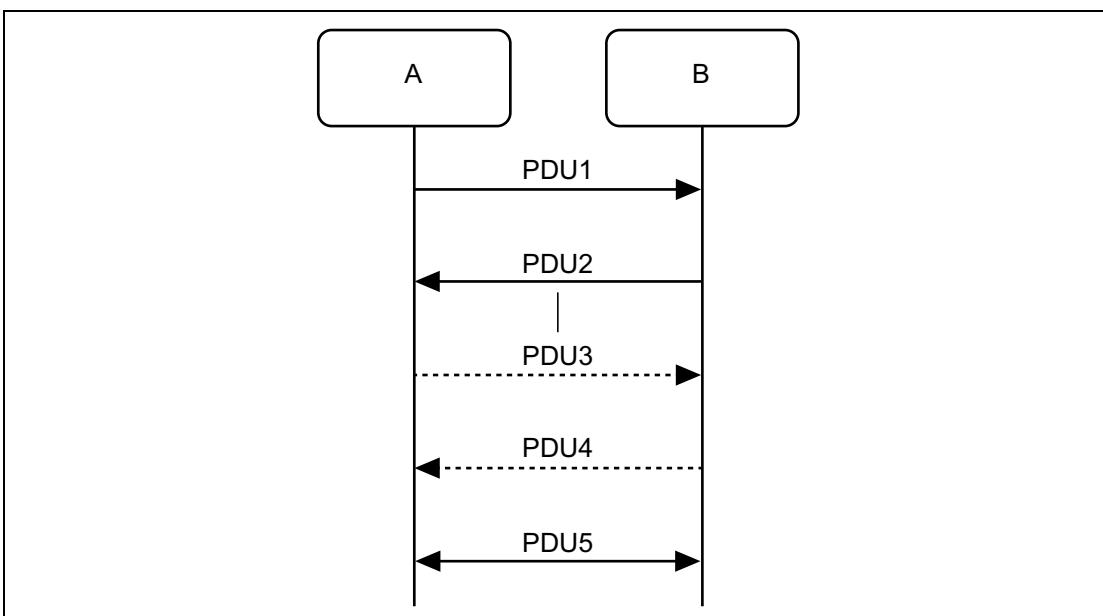


Figure 2.3: Symbols used in sequence diagrams

PDU1 is a PDU sent from A to B. PDU2 is a PDU sent from B to A. PDU3 is a PDU that is optionally sent from A to B. PDU4 is a PDU that is optionally sent from B to A. PDU5 is a PDU sent from either A or B. A vertical line indicates that more PDUs can optionally be sent.

## 2.7 GENERAL RESPONSE MESSAGES

The PDUs LMP\_accepted, LMP\_accepted\_ext, LMP\_not\_accepted and LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext are used as response messages to other PDUs in a number of different procedures. LMP\_accepted or LMP\_accepted\_ext includes the opcode of the message which is accepted. LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext includes the opcode of the message which is not accepted and the error code why it is not accepted.

LMP\_accepted\_ext and LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext shall be used when the opcode is 15 bits in length. LMP\_accepted and LMP\_not\_accepted shall be used when the opcode is 7 bits in length.

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_accepted	op code
M	LMP_not_accepted	op code error code
O	LMP_accepted_ext	escape op code extended op code
O	LMP_not_accepted_ext	escape op code extended op code error code

Table 2.1: General response messages.

## 2.8 LMP MESSAGE CONSTRAINTS

This section is informative.

- No LMP message shall exceed the maximum payload length of a single DM1 packet i.e. 17 bytes in length ([Baseband Specification, Section 6.5.4.1, on page 132](#)).
- All LM messages are of fixed length apart from those sent using broadcast in park state.
- The LMP version number shall not be used to indicate the presence or absence of functionality.

## 3 DEVICE FEATURES

---

### 3.1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Each PDU is either Mandatory or Optional as defined by the M/O field in the tables of [Section 4 on page 250](#). An M in this field shall indicate that support for the feature is mandatory. An O in this field shall indicate that support for the PDU is optional and it shall be followed by the number(s) of the feature(s) involved in brackets.

All features added after the 1.1 specification have associated LMP feature bits. Support of these features may be made “mandatory” by the qualification process but the LM still considers them to be optional since it must interoperate with older devices which do not support them.

The LM does not need to be able to transmit a PDU which is optional. Support of optional PDUs is indicated by a device's features mask. The features mask can be read (see [Section 4.3.4 on page 313](#)). An LM shall not send or be sent any PDU which is incompatible with the features signalled in its or its peer's features mask, as detailed in [Section 3.2](#).

### 3.2 FEATURE DEFINITIONS

Feature	Definition
Extended features	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support the extended features mask using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.3.4 on page 313</a> .
Timing accuracy	This feature indicates whether the LM supports requests for timing accuracy using the sequence defined in <a href="#">Section 4.3.1 on page 310</a> .
Enhanced inquiry scan	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting the enhanced inquiry scan mechanism as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 8.4.1, on page 170</a> . The presence of this feature has only local meaning and does not imply support for any additional LMP PDUs or sequences.
Interlaced inquiry scan	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting the interlaced inquiry scan mechanism as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 8.4.1, on page 170</a> . The presence of this feature has only local meaning and does not imply support for any additional LMP PDUs or sequences.
Interlaced page scan	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting the interlaced page scan mechanism as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 8.3.1, on page 160</a> . The presence of this feature has only local meaning and does not imply support for any additional LMP PDUs or sequences.

*Table 3.1: Feature Definitions (Sheet 1 of 8)*

Feature	Definition
RSSI with inquiry results	This feature bit shall be set if the "Extended Inquiry Response" feature bit is set. This feature indicates whether the device is capable of reporting the RSSI with inquiry results as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 8.4.2, on page 171</a> . The presence of this feature has only local meaning and does not imply support for any additional LMP PDUs or sequences.
Extended Inquiry Response	This feature indicates whether the device supports extended inquiry response as defined in the Baseband specification. If this bit is set, the "RSSI with inquiry results" feature bit shall also be set.
Paging parameter negotiation	This feature indicates whether the LM is capable of supporting the signaling of changes in the paging scheme as defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.9 on page 264</a> .
3 slot packets	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of both DM3 and DH3 packets for the transport of traffic on the ACL-U logical link.
5 slot packets	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of both DM5 and DH5 packets for the transport of traffic on the ACL-U logical link.
Flow control lag	This is defined as the total amount of ACL-U data that can be sent following the receipt of a valid payload header with the payload header flow bit set to 0 and is in units of 256 bytes. See further in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 6.6.2, on page 137</a> .
AFH capable slave	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support the Adaptive Frequency Hopping mechanism as a slave as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 2.3, on page 79</a> using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.4 on page 256</a> .
AFH classification slave	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support the AFH classification mechanism as a slave as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 8.6.8, on page 188</a> using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.5 on page 259</a> .
AFH capable master	This indicates whether the device is able to support the Adaptive Frequency Hopping mechanism as a master as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 2.3, on page 79</a> using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.4 on page 256</a> .
AFH classification master	This feature indicate whether the device is able to support the AFH classification mechanism as a master as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 8.6.8, on page 188</a> using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.5 on page 259</a> .
Power control	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of adjusting its transmission power. This feature indicates the ability to receive the LMP_incr_power and LMP_decr_power PDUs and transmit the LMP_max_power and LMP_min_power PDUs, using the sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.3 on page 252</a> . These sequences may be used even if the remote device does not support the power control feature, as long as it supports the Power control requests feature.

Table 3.1: Feature Definitions (Sheet 2 of 8)

Feature	Definition
Power control requests	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of determining if the transmit power level of the other device should be adjusted and will send the LMP_incr_power and LMP_decr_power PDUs to request the adjustments. It indicates the ability to receive the LMP_max_power and LMP_min_power PDUs, using the sequences in <a href="#">Section 4.1.3 on page 252</a> . These sequences may be used even if the remote device does not support the RSSI feature, as long as it supports the power control feature.
Enhanced power control	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support enhanced power control using the LMP sequences as defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.3.1 on page 254</a> . This feature bit shall only be set if the "power control" feature bit (bit 18) is set and if the "power control requests" feature bit (bit 9) is set.
Channel Quality Driven Data Rate	This feature indicates whether the LM is capable of recommending a packet type (or types) depending on the channel quality using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.7 on page 262</a> .
Broadcast encryption	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting broadcast encryption as defined in <a href="#">[Part H] Section 4.2 on page 1303</a> and also the sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.2.6 on page 294</a> and <a href="#">Section 4.2.4 on page 283</a> . Note: Devices compliant to versions of this specification 1.1 and earlier may support broadcast encryption even though this feature bit is not set. This feature bit shall not be set if the "coarse clock adjustment" feature bit (bit 134) is set.
Encryption	This feature shall be supported. This feature indicates whether the device supports the encryption of packet contents using the sequence defined in <a href="#">Section 4.2.5 on page 285</a> .
Pause Encryption	When this feature bit is enabled on both sides, then the encryption pause/resume sequences shall be used. If either side does not support the Pause Encryption feature bit, then the encryption pause/resume sequences shall not be used. This feature bit shall be set if the "Secure Connections (Controller Support)" feature bit is set.
Slot offset	This feature indicates whether the LM supports the transfer of the slot offset using the sequence defined in <a href="#">Section 4.4.1 on page 316</a> .
Role switch	This feature indicates whether the device supports the change of master and slave roles as defined by baseband <a href="#">Section 8.6.5 on page 182</a> using the sequence defined in <a href="#">Section 4.4.2 on page 317</a> .
Hold mode	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support Hold mode as defined in baseband <a href="#">Section 8.8 on page 197</a> using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.5.1 on page 320</a> .
Sniff mode	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support sniff mode as defined in baseband <a href="#">Section 8.7 on page 193</a> using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.5.3 on page 330</a> .

Table 3.1: Feature Definitions (Sheet 3 of 8)

Feature	Definition
Sniff subrating	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support sniff subrating as defined in [PART B] <a href="#">Sniff Subrating on page 195</a> using the LMP sequences as defined in <a href="#">Sniff Subrating on page 332</a> . This feature bit shall be set if the "Sniff mode" feature bit is set.
Park state	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support Park state as defined in baseband <a href="#">Section 8.9 on page 197</a> using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.5.2 on page 323</a> .
SCO link	This feature shall indicate whether the device is able to support the SCO logical transport as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 4.3, on page 105</a> , the HV1 packet defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 6.5.2.1, on page 129</a> and receiving the DV packet defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 6.5.2.4, on page 129</a> using the LMP sequence in <a href="#">Section 4.6.1 on page 334</a> .
HV2 packets	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting the HV2 packet type as defined in baseband <a href="#">Section 6.5.2.2 on page 129</a> on the SCO logical transport.
HV3 packets	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting the HV3 packet type as defined in baseband <a href="#">Section 6.5.2.3 on page 129</a> on the SCO logical transport.
μ-law log synchronous data	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting μ-Law Log format data as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 9.1, on page 210</a> on the SCO and eSCO logical transports.
A-law log synchronous data	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting A-Law Log format data as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 9.1, on page 210</a> on the SCO and eSCO logical transports.
CVSD synchronous data	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting CVSD format data as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 9.2, on page 210</a> on the SCO and eSCO logical transports.
Transparent synchronous data	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting transparent synchronous data as defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 6.4.3, on page 123</a> on the SCO and eSCO logical transports.
Extended SCO link	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support the eSCO logical transport as defined <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 5.5, on page 114</a> and the EV3 packet defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 6.5.3.1, on page 130</a> using the LMP sequences defined in <a href="#">Section 4.6.2 on page 337</a> .
EV4 packets	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting the EV4 packet type defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 6.5.3.2, on page 130</a> on the eSCO logical transport.
EV5 packets	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting the EV5 packet type defined in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 6.5.3.3, on page 130</a> on the eSCO logical transport.

Table 3.1: Feature Definitions (Sheet 4 of 8)

Feature	Definition
Enhanced Data Rate ACL 2 Mbps mode	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of 2-DH1 packets for the transport of traffic on the ACL-U logical link.
Enhanced Data Rate ACL 3 Mbps mode	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of 3-DH1 packets for the transport of traffic on the ACL-U logical link. This feature bit shall only be set if the "Enhanced Data Rate ACL 2 Mbps mode" feature bit is set.
3-slot Enhanced Data Rate ACL packets	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of three-slot Enhanced Data Rate packets on the ACL-U logical link. This feature bit shall only be set if the "Enhanced Data Rate ACL 2 Mbps mode" feature bit is set.
5-slot Enhanced Data Rate ACL packets	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of 5-slot Enhanced Data Rate packets for the transport of traffic on the ACL-U logical link. This feature bit shall only be set if the "Enhanced Data Rate ACL 2 Mbps mode" feature bit is set.
Enhanced Data Rate eSCO 2 Mbps mode	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of 2-EV3 packets for the transport of traffic on the eSCO logical transport.
Enhanced Data Rate eSCO 3 Mbps mode	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of 3-EV3 packets for the transport of traffic on the eSCO logical transport. This feature bit shall only be set if the "Enhanced Data Rate eSCO 2 Mbps mode" feature bit is set.
3-slot Enhanced Data Rate eSCO packets	This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of 3-slot Enhanced Data Rate packets for the transport of traffic on the eSCO logical transport. This feature bit shall only be set if the "Enhanced Data Rate eSCO 2 Mbps mode" feature bit is set.
Erroneous Data Reporting	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support the Packet_Status_Flag and the HCI commands "Write Default Erroneous Data Reporting" and "Read Default Erroneous Data Reporting". This feature bit may be set if at least one of the "SCO link" or "Extended SCO link" feature bits are set.
Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event	This feature bit indicates whether the device supports the sending the HCI Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event to the Host.
Non-flushable Packet Boundary Flag	This feature indicates that the device supports the capability to correctly handle HCI ACL Data Packets with a Packet_Boundary_Flag value of 00 (Non-Automatically-Flushable packet).

Table 3.1: Feature Definitions (Sheet 5 of 8)

Feature	Definition
Secure Simple Pairing (Controller Support)	This feature indicates whether the Link Manager is capable of supporting the Secure Simple Pairing, <a href="#">Section 4.2.7, “Secure Simple Pairing,” on page 294</a> .
Secure Simple Pairing (Host Support)	<p>This feature indicates whether the Host is capable of supporting Secure Simple Pairing <a href="#">Section 4.2.7, “Secure Simple Pairing,” on page 294</a>.</p> <p>If HCI is supported, this bit shall be set if Write Simple Pairing Mode has been issued to enable the Secure Simple Pairing feature. When HCI is not supported, this bit may be set using a vendor specific mechanism,</p> <p>This bit shall only be set if the Secure Simple Pairing (Controller Support) bit is set.</p>
Encapsulated PDU	<p>This feature indicates whether the device is capable of supporting the Encapsulated PDU mechanism as defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.12.1, “Sending an Encapsulated PDU,” on page 268</a>.</p> <p>This feature shall be set if Secure Simple Pairing is supported.</p>
Variable Inquiry TX Power Level	This feature indicates whether the device is capable of setting the TX power level for Inquiry.
BR/EDR Not Supported	This feature indicates whether the device does not support BR/EDR. If this feature bit is set, then all other LMP feature bits shall be set to zero except the LE Supported (Controller) feature bit that shall be set to one.
LE Supported (Controller)	<p>This feature indicates whether the Controller supports LE.</p> <p>The local Host uses this feature bit to determine whether the Controller supports LE.</p> <p>A remote device does not use this feature bit.</p>
Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller)	<p>This feature indicates that the Controller supports simultaneous LE and BR/EDR links to the same remote device.</p> <p>This bit shall only be set if the LE Supported (Controller) bit is set.</p> <p>The local Host uses this feature bit to determine whether the Controller is capable of supporting simultaneous LE and BR/EDR connections to a remote device.</p> <p>A remote device does not use this feature bit.</p>
LE Supported (Host)	<p>This feature indicates that the Host supports LE.</p> <p>This bit shall only be set if the LE Supported (Controller) bit is set on the local Controller.</p> <p>The local Host sets this feature bit to indicate to a remote device that the local device is capable of supporting LE.</p> <p>A remote Host uses this feature bit to determine whether an LE connection to the peer device is possible.</p>

Table 3.1: Feature Definitions (Sheet 6 of 8)

Feature	Definition
Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host)	<p>This feature indicates that the Host supports simultaneous LE and BR/EDR links to the same remote device.</p> <p>The local Host shall set this feature bit to zero.</p> <p>A remote Host shall ignore this feature bit.</p>
Connectionless Slave Broadcast - Master Operation	This feature indicates whether the device supports Connectionless Slave Broadcast as master.
Connectionless Slave Broadcast - Slave Operation	This feature indicates whether the device supports Connectionless Slave Broadcast as slave.
Synchronization Train	This feature indicates whether the device supports Synchronization Train as master.
Synchronization Scan	This feature indicates whether the device supports Synchronization Scan as slave.
Inquiry Response Notification Event	This feature bit indicates whether the device supports sending the HCI Inquiry Response Notification Event to the Host.
Secure Connections (Controller Support)	<p>This feature indicates whether the Controller is able to support AES-CCM, the P-256 Elliptic Curve for Secure Simple Pairing, and enhanced authentication using the LMP sequences as defined in <a href="#">Section 4.2.7 on page 294</a>.</p> <p>This feature bit shall only be set if the “Secure Simple Pairing (Controller Support)” feature bit is set.</p>
Secure Connections (Host Support)	<p>This feature indicates whether the Host is capable of supporting Secure Connections.</p> <p>If HCI is supported, this bit shall be set if the Write Secure Connections Host Support command has been issued by the Host. When HCI is not supported, this bit may be set using a vendor specific mechanism.</p>
Ping	<p>This bit shall only be set if the Secure Connections (Controller Support) bit is set and the Secure Simple Pairing (Host Support) bit is set.</p>
	<p>This feature indicates whether the device supports the transmission and reception of ping messages.</p> <p>This feature bit shall be set if the “Secure Connections (Controller Support) feature bit is set.</p>
Train nudging	<p>This feature indicates whether the device is able to support the train nudging mechanism described in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 8.3.2, on page 162</a> and <a href="#">Section 8.4.2 on page 171</a>.</p> <p>The presence of this feature has only local meaning and does not imply support for any additional LMP PDUs or sequences.</p>

Table 3.1: Feature Definitions (Sheet 7 of 8)

Feature	Definition
Generalized interlaced scan	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support the generalized interlaced scan mechanism described in <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 8.3.1, on page 160</a> and <a href="#">Section 8.4.1 on page 170</a> . The presence of this feature has only local meaning and does not imply support for any additional LMP PDUs or sequences.
Coarse Clock Adjustment	This feature indicates whether the device is able to support coarse clock adjustments using the LMP sequences as defined in <a href="#">Section 4.1.14 on page 271</a> . This feature bit shall only be set if the “AFH capable master” (bit 43) and “AFH capable slave” (bit 35) feature bits are set.

Table 3.1: Feature Definitions (Sheet 8 of 8)

### 3.3 FEATURE MASK DEFINITION

The features are represented as a bit mask when they are transferred in LMP messages. For each feature a single bit is specified which shall be set to 1 if the feature is supported and set to 0 otherwise. The single exception is the flow control lag which is coded as a 3 bit field with the least significant bit in byte 2 bit 4 and the most significant bit in byte 2 bit 6. All removed, unknown or unassigned feature bits shall be set to 0 and ignored upon receipt.

No.	Supported feature	Byte	Bit
0	3 slot packets	0	0
1	5 slot packets	0	1
2	Encryption	0	2
3	Slot offset	0	3
4	Timing accuracy	0	4
5	Role switch	0	5
6	Hold mode	0	6
7	Sniff mode	0	7
8	Park state	1	0
9	Power control requests	1	1
10	Channel quality driven data rate (CQDDR)	1	2
11	SCO link	1	3
12	HV2 packets	1	4
13	HV3 packets	1	5
14	$\mu$ -law log synchronous data	1	6
15	A-law log synchronous data	1	7
16	CVSD synchronous data	2	0
17	Paging parameter negotiation	2	1
18	Power control	2	2
19	Transparent synchronous data	2	3
20	Flow control lag (least significant bit)	2	4
21	Flow control lag (middle bit)	2	5
22	Flow control lag (most significant bit)	2	6
23	Broadcast Encryption	2	7
24	Reserved	3	0
25	Enhanced Data Rate ACL 2 Mbps mode	3	1

Table 3.2: Feature mask definitions (page 0)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

No.	Supported feature	Byte	Bit
26	Enhanced Data Rate ACL 3 Mbps mode	3	2
27	Enhanced inquiry scan	3	3
28	Interlaced inquiry scan	3	4
29	Interlaced page scan	3	5
30	RSSI with inquiry results	3	6
31	Extended SCO link (EV3 packets)	3	7
32	EV4 packets	4	0
33	EV5 packets	4	1
34	Reserved	4	2
35	AFH capable slave	4	3
36	AFH classification slave	4	4
37	BR/EDR Not Supported	4	5
38	LE Supported (Controller)	4	6
39	3-slot Enhanced Data Rate ACL packets	4	7
40	5-slot Enhanced Data Rate ACL packets	5	0
41	Sniff subrating	5	1
42	Pause encryption	5	2
43	AFH capable master	5	3
44	AFH classification master	5	4
45	Enhanced Data Rate eSCO 2 Mbps mode	5	5
46	Enhanced Data Rate eSCO 3 Mbps mode	5	6
47	3-slot Enhanced Data Rate eSCO packets	5	7
48	Extended Inquiry Response	6	0
49	Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller)	6	1
50	Reserved	6	2
51	Secure Simple Pairing	6	3
52	Encapsulated PDU	6	4
53	Erroneous Data Reporting	6	5
54	Non-flushable Packet Boundary Flag	6	6
55	Reserved	6	7
56	Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event	7	0

Table 3.2: Feature mask definitions (page 0)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

No.	Supported feature	Byte	Bit
57	Inquiry TX Power Level	7	1
58	Enhanced Power Control	7	2
59	Reserved	7	3
60	Reserved	7	4
61	Reserved	7	5
62	Reserved	7	6
63	Extended features	7	7

Table 3.2: Feature mask definitions (page 0)

No.	Supported Feature	Byte	Bit
64	Secure Simple Pairing (Host Support)	0	0
65	LE Supported (Host)	0	1
66	Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host)	0	2
67	Secure Connections (Host Support)	0	3

Table 3.3: Extended feature mask definition (page 1)

No.	Supported Feature	Byte	Bit
128	Connectionless Slave Broadcast – Master Operation	0	0
129	Connectionless Slave Broadcast – Slave Operation	0	1
130	Synchronization Train	0	2
131	Synchronization Scan	0	3
132	Inquiry Response Notification Event	0	4
133	Generalized interlaced scan	0	5
134	Coarse Clock Adjustment	0	6
135	Reserved	0	7
136	Secure Connections (Controller Support)	1	0
137	Ping	1	1
138	Reserved	1	2
139	Train nudging	1	3

Table 3.4: Extended feature mask definition (page 2)

### 3.4 LINK MANAGER INTEROPERABILITY POLICY

Link managers of any version shall interpret using the lowest common subset of functionality by reading the LMP features mask (defined in [Table 3.2 on page 246](#)).

An optional LMP PDU shall only be sent to a device if the corresponding feature bit is set in its feature mask. The exception to this are certain PDUs (see [Section 4.1.1 on page 250](#)) which can be sent before the features mask is requested. Note: a later version device with a restricted feature set is indistinguishable from an earlier version device with the same features.

## 4 PROCEDURE RULES

### 4.1 CONNECTION CONTROL

#### 4.1.1 Connection Establishment

After the paging procedure, LMP procedures for clock offset request, LMP version, supported features, name request and detach may then be initiated.

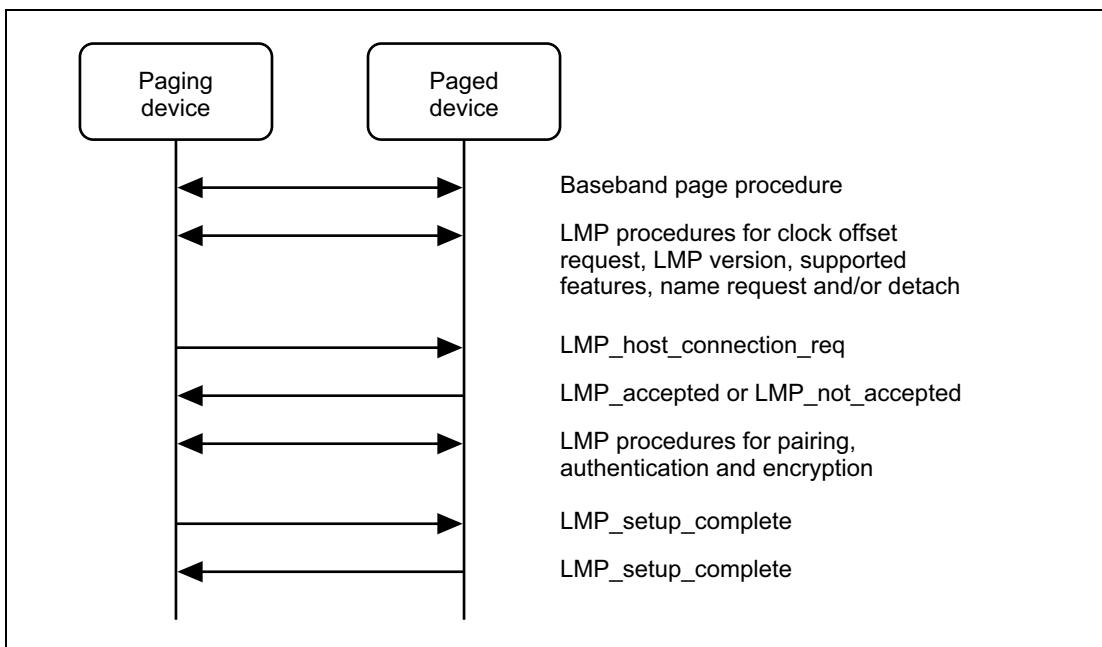


Figure 4.1: Connection establishment

When the paging device wishes to create a connection involving layers above LM, it sends an LMP\_host\_connection\_req PDU. When the other side receives this message, the host is informed about the incoming connection. The remote device can accept or reject the connection request by sending an LMP\_accepted PDU or an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU. Alternatively, if the slave needs a role switch, see [Section 4.4.2 on page 317](#), it sends an LMP\_slot\_offset PDU and LMP\_switch\_req PDU after it has received an LMP\_host\_connection\_req PDU. If the role switch fails the LM shall continue with the creation of the connection unless this cannot be supported due to limited resources in which case the connection shall be terminated with an LMP\_detach PDU with error code *Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Low Resources (0x14)*. When the role switch has been successfully completed, the old slave will reply with an LMP\_accepted PDU or an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU to the LMP\_host\_connection\_req PDU (with the transaction ID set to 0).

If the paging device receives an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU in response to LMP\_host\_connection\_req it shall immediately disconnect the link using the mechanism described in [Section 4.1.2 on page 251](#).

If the LMP\_host\_connection\_req PDU is accepted, LMP security procedures (pairing, authentication and encryption) may be invoked. When a device is not going to initiate any more security procedures during connection establishment it sends an LMP\_setup\_complete PDU. When both devices have sent LMP\_setup\_complete PDUs the traffic can be transferred on the ACL-U logical transport.

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_host_connection_req	-
M	LMP_setup_complete	-

Table 4.1: Connection establishment PDU

#### 4.1.2 Detach

The connection between two Bluetooth devices may be detached anytime by the master or the slave. An error code parameter is included in the message to inform the other party of why the connection is detached.

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_detach	error code

Table 4.2: Detach PDU

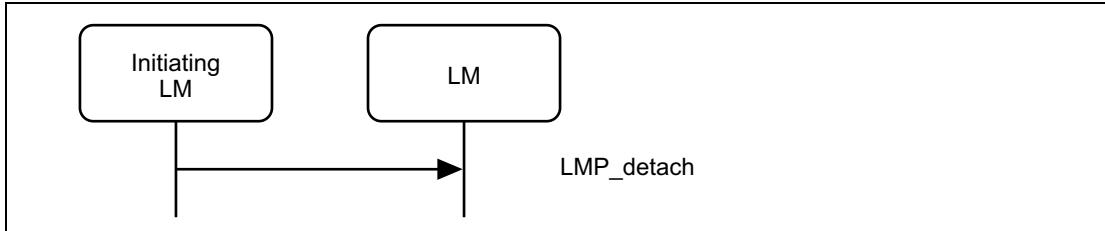
The initiating LM shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). The initiating LM then queues the LMP\_detach for transmission and it shall start a timer for  $6 \cdot T_{poll}$  slots where  $T_{poll}$  is the poll interval for the connection. If the initiating LM receives the baseband acknowledgement before the timer expires it starts a timer for  $3 \cdot T_{poll}$  slots. When this timer expires, and if the initiating LM is the master, the LT\_ADDR(s) may be re-used immediately. If the initial timer expires then the initiating LM drops the link and starts a timer for  $T_{linksupervisiontimeout}$  slots after which the LT\_ADDR(s) may be re-used if the initiating LM is the master.

When the receiving LM receives the LMP\_detach, it shall start a timer for  $6 \cdot T_{poll}$  slots if it is the master and  $3 \cdot T_{poll}$  if it is the slave. On timer expiration, the link shall be detached and, if the receiving LM is the master, the LT\_ADDR(s) may be re-used immediately. If the receiver never receives the LMP\_detach then a link supervision timeout will occur, the link will be detached, and the LT\_ADDR may be re-used immediately.

If at any time during this or any other LMP sequence the Link supervision timeout expires then the link shall be terminated immediately and the LT\_ADDR(S) may be re-used immediately.

If the connection is in hold mode, the initiating LM shall wait for hold mode to end before initiating the procedure defined above. If the connection is in sniff

mode or park state, the initiating LM shall perform the procedure to exit sniff mode or park state before initiating the procedure defined above. If the procedure to exit sniff mode or park state does not complete within the LMP response timeout (30 seconds) the procedure defined above shall be initiated anyway.



*Sequence 1: Connection closed by sending LMP\_detach*

#### 4.1.3 Power Control

If the received signal characteristics differ too much from the preferred value of a Bluetooth device, it may request an increase or a decrease of the other device's transmit power level. A device's transmit power level is a property of the physical link, and affects all logical transports carried over the physical link. Power control requests carried over the default ACL-C logical link shall only affect the physical link associated with the requesting device's default ACL-C logical link; they shall not affect the power level used on the physical links to other slaves.

Two power control mechanisms are specified: legacy power control (see [Table 4.3](#)) and enhanced power control (see [Table 4.4](#) and [Section 4.1.3.1](#)). A device that supports enhanced power control shall also support legacy power control.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(9)	LMP_incr_power_req	for future use (1 Byte)
O(9)	LMP_decr_power_req	for future use (1 Byte)
O(18)	LMP_max_power	-
O(18)	LMP_min_power	-

*Table 4.3: Legacy Power control PDU*

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(58)	LMP_power_control_req	power_adjustment_request
O(58)	LMP_power_control_res	power_adjustment_response

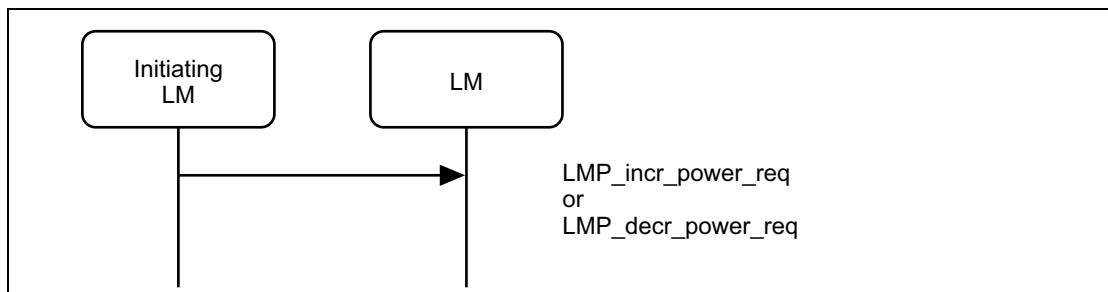
*Table 4.4: Enhanced Power control PDU*

The power adjustment requests may be made at any time using the legacy power control mechanism following a successful baseband paging procedure

and before the Link Manager supported features responses have been processed. After the Link Manager supported features responses have been processed, if both devices support enhanced power control (see [Section 4.1.3.1](#)) then only enhanced power control shall be used. Otherwise, if either device supports only the legacy power control mechanism then only legacy power control shall be used.

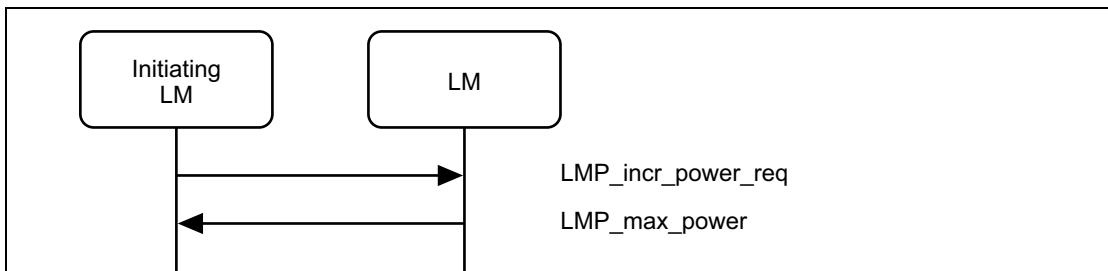
If a device does not support power control requests this is indicated in the supported features list and thus no power control requests shall be sent after the supported features response has been processed. Prior to this time, a power control adjustment might be sent and if the recipient does not support power control it is allowed to send LMP\_max\_power in response to LMP\_incr\_power\_req and LMP\_min\_power in response to LMP\_decr\_power\_req. Another possibility is to send LMP\_not\_accepted with the error code *Unsupported LMP Feature (0x1A)*.

Upon receipt of an LMP\_incr\_power\_req PDU or LMP\_decr\_power\_req PDU the output power shall be increased or decreased one step. See [Radio Specification Section 3 on page 38](#) for the definition of the step size.

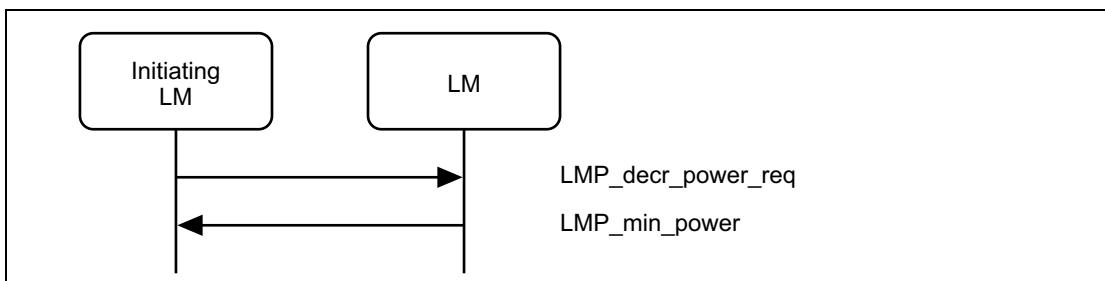


*Sequence 2: A device requests a change of the other device's TX power*

If the receiver of LMP\_incr\_power\_req is at maximum power LMP\_max\_power shall be returned. The device shall only request an increase again after having requested a decrease at least once. If the receiver of LMP\_decr\_power\_req is at minimum power then LMP\_min\_power shall be returned and the device shall only request a decrease after having requested an increase at least once.



*Sequence 3: The TX power cannot be increased*



*Sequence 4: The TX power cannot be decreased*

One byte is reserved in LMP\_incr/decr\_power\_req for future use. The parameter value shall be 0x00 and ignored upon receipt.

#### 4.1.3.1 Enhanced Power Control

Enhanced power control shall only be used when both devices support the enhanced power control LMP feature. Legacy power control shall not be used when both devices support the enhanced power control LMP feature.

##### 4.1.3.1.1 Sending Enhanced Power Control Requests

To adjust the remote device's output power, a device shall send the LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU with the power\_adjustment\_request parameter.

The power\_adjustment\_request parameter may be set to: one step up, one step down, or all the way to the max power level. The remote device shall respond with an LMP\_power\_control\_res PDU. The responder shall transmit the LMP\_power\_control\_res PDU at the new power level. Upon reception of the LMP\_power\_control\_res PDU, the initiating device should restart any processes used to determine whether additional power level changes are required.

If the receiver of the LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU has indicated that the output power levels for all of the supported modulation modes are at maximum the requesting device shall only request an increase again after having requested a decrease at least once. If the receiver of the LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU has indicated that the output power levels for all of the supported modulation modes are at minimum the requesting device shall only request a decrease after having requested an increase at least once.

A new LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU shall not be sent until an LMP\_power\_control\_res PDU has been received.

#### 4.1.3.1.2 Responding to Enhanced Power Control Requests

When a device receives an LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU with the power\_control\_adjust parameter set to "increment one step," at least one modulation shall be increased one step unless all supported modulations are at the maximum level. Modulations that would violate the relative power level between modulations (see [\[Vol. 2, Part A\] Section 3 on page 38](#)) shall also increment one step.

When a device receives an LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU with the power\_control\_adjust parameter set to "decrement one step", at least one modulation shall be decreased one step unless all supported modulations are at the minimum level. Modulations that would violate the relative power level between modulations (see [\[Vol. 2, Part A\] Section 3 on page 38](#)) shall also decrement one step.

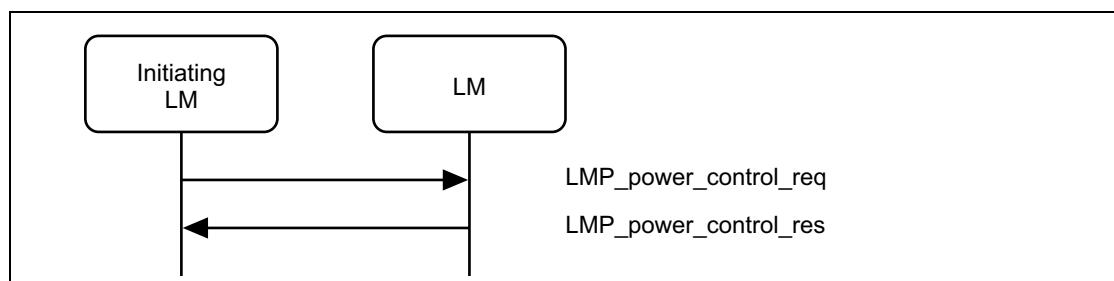
When a device receives an LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU with the power\_control\_adjust parameter set to "increment power to maximum value", each supported modulation mode shall be set to its maximum power level.

Note: See [\[Vol. 2, Part A\] Section 3 on page 38](#) for requirements on the relative power levels of different modulation modes.

The responding LM shall send the LMP\_power\_control\_res PDU to indicate the status for every modulation. The power\_adjustment\_response parameter has three 2-bit fields indicating the status for each modulation mode: GFSK, DQPSK and 8DPSK. Each 2-bit field shall be set to one of the following values: *not supported*, *changed one step*, *max power*, or *min power*. The changed one step value shall only be used when the power level for that modulation mode has not reached the minimum or maximum level.

The *not supported* value shall be used for each unsupported modulation type.

The responder shall transmit the LMP\_power\_control\_res PDU at the new transmit power level and shall not change its power level until requested by the remote device by a subsequent LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU.



Sequence 5: A device responds to a power control request

#### 4.1.4 Adaptive Frequency Hopping

AFH is used to improve the performance of physical links in the presence of interference as well as reducing the interference caused by physical links on other devices in the ISM band. AFH shall only be used during the connection state.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(35) Rx O(43) Tx	LMP_set_AFH	AFH_Instant, AFH_Mode, AFH_Channel_Map

Table 4.5: AFH PDU

The LMP\_set\_AFH PDU contains three parameters: AFH\_Instant, AFH\_Mode, and AFH\_Channel\_Map. The parameter, AFH\_Instant, specifies the instant at which the hopset switch shall become effective. This is specified as a Bluetooth Clock value of the master's clock, that is available to both devices. The AFH instant is chosen by the master and shall be an even value at least  $6*T_{poll}$  or 96 slots (whichever is greater) in the future, where  $T_{poll}$  is at least the longest poll interval for all AFH enabled physical links. The AFH\_instant shall be within 12 hours of the current clock value. The parameter AFH\_Mode, specifies whether AFH shall be enabled or disabled. The parameter AFH\_Channel\_Map, specifies the set of channels that shall be used if AFH is enabled.

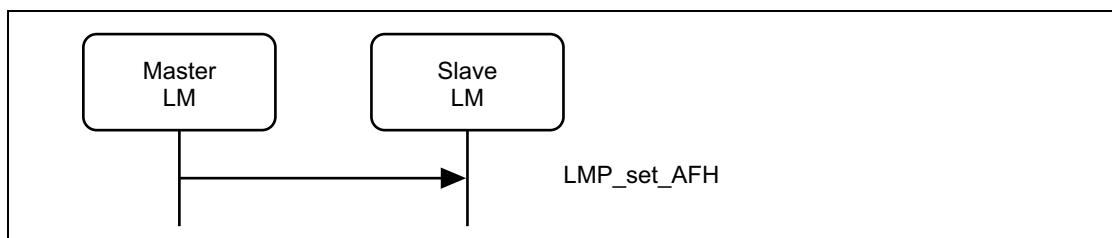
When the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU is received the AFH instant shall be compared with the current Bluetooth clock value. If it is in the past then the AFH\_instant has passed and the slave shall immediately configure the hop selection kernel (see [Baseband Specification, Section 2.6.3, on page 93](#)) with the new AFH\_mode and AFH\_channel\_map specified in the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU. If it is in the future then a timer shall be started to expire at the AFH instant. When this timer expires it shall configure the hop selection kernel with the new AFH\_mode and AFH\_channel\_map.

The master shall not send a new LMP\_set\_AFH PDU to a slave until it has received the baseband acknowledgement for any previous LMP\_set\_AFH addressed to that slave and the instant has passed.

Role switch while AFH is enabled shall follow the procedures define by [Baseband Specification, Section 8.6.5, on page 182](#).

#### 4.1.4.1 Master enables AFH

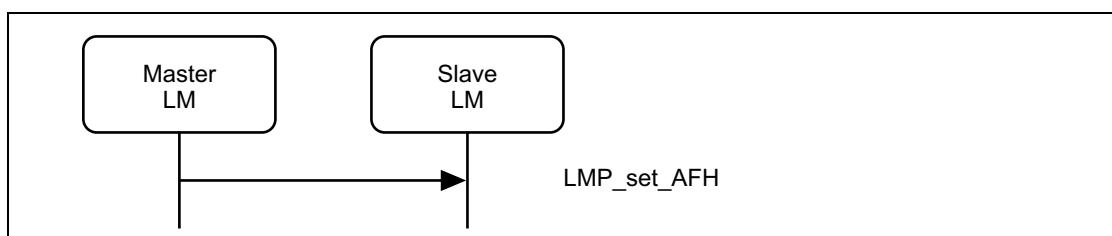
Prior to enabling AFH the master LM shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). The master shall then enable AFH on a physical link by sending the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU with AFH\_mode set to AFH\_enabled, the AFH\_channel\_map parameter containing the set of used and unused channels, and an AFH\_instant. The LM shall not calculate the AFH instant until after traffic on the ACL-U logical link has been stopped. The master considers the physical link to be AFH\_enabled once the baseband acknowledgement has been received and the AFH\_instant has passed. Once the baseband acknowledgement has been received the master shall restart transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



*Sequence 6: Master Enables AFH*

#### 4.1.4.2 Master Disables AFH

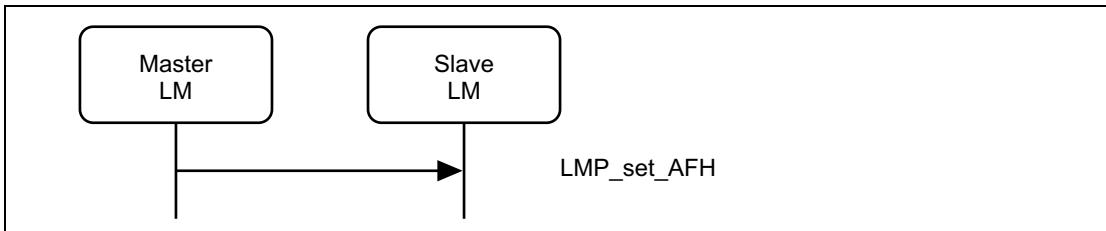
Prior to disabling AFH the master LM shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link ([Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). The master shall then disable AFH operation on a physical link by sending the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU with AFH\_mode set to AFH\_disabled and an AFH\_instant. The AFH\_channel\_map parameter is not valid when AFH\_mode is AFH\_disabled. The LM shall not calculate the AFH instant until after traffic on the ACL-U logical link has been stopped. The master considers the physical link to have entered AFH\_disabled operation once the baseband acknowledgement has been received and the AFH\_instant has passed. Once the baseband acknowledgement has been received the master shall restart transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



*Sequence 7: Master disables AFH*

#### 4.1.4.3 Master updates AFH

A master shall update the AFH parameters on a physical link by sending the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU with AFH\_mode set to AFH\_enabled, an AFH\_instant and a new AFH\_channel\_map. The master shall consider the slave to have the updated AFH parameters once the baseband acknowledgement has been received and the AFH\_instant has passed.



*Sequence 8: Master Updates AFH*

#### 4.1.4.4 AFH operation in Park, Hold, and Sniff modes

A slave in Park, Hold or Sniff shall retain the AFH\_mode and AFH\_channel\_map prior to entering those modes. A master may change the AFH\_mode while a slave is in sniff.

A master that receives a request from an AFH\_enabled slave to enter Park, Hold, or Sniff and decides to operate the slave using a different hop sequence shall respond with an LMP\_set\_AFH PDU specifying the new hop sequence.

The master continues with the LMP signaling, for Park, Hold or Sniff initiation, once the baseband acknowledgement for the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU has been received. Optionally, the master may delay the continuation of this LMP signaling until after the instant. An AFH\_capable\_slave device shall support both of these cases.

A master that receives a request from an AFH\_enabled slave to enter Park, Hold or Sniff and decides not to change the slave's hop sequence shall respond exactly as it would do without AFH. In this case, AFH operation has no effect on the LMP signaling.

#### 4.1.5 Channel Classification

A master may request channel classification information from a slave that is AFH\_enabled.

A slave that supports the AFH\_classification\_slave feature shall perform channel classification and reporting according to its AFH\_reporting\_mode. The master shall control the AFH\_reporting\_mode using the LMP\_channel\_classification\_req PDU. The slave shall report its channel classification using the LMP\_channel\_classification PDU.

The slave shall report pairs of channels as *good*, *bad* or *unknown*. See [Table 5.2 on page 359](#) for the detailed format of the AFH\_Channel\_Classification parameter. When one channel in the  $n^{\text{th}}$  channel pair is good and the other channel is unknown the  $n^{\text{th}}$  channel pair shall be reported as good. When one channel in the  $n^{\text{th}}$  channel pair is bad and the other is unknown the  $n^{\text{th}}$  channel pair shall be reported as bad. It is implementation dependent what to report when one channel in a channel pair is good and the other is bad.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(36) Rx O(44) Tx	LMP_channel_classification_req	AFH_Reported_Mode, AFH_Min_Interval, AFH_Max_Interval
O(36) Tx O(44) Rx	LMP_channel_classification	AFH_Channel_Classification

The LMP\_channel\_classification\_req PDU contains three parameters: AFH\_Reported\_Mode, AFH\_Min\_Interval, and AFH\_Max\_Interval. In the AFH\_reporting\_disabled state, the slave shall not generate any channel classification reports. The parameter AFH\_min\_interval, defines the minimum amount of time from the last LMP\_channel\_classification command that was sent before the next LMP\_channel\_classification PDU may be sent. The parameter AFH\_max\_interval, defines the maximum amount of time between the change in the radio environment being detected by a slave and its generation of an LMP\_channel\_classification PDU. The AFH\_max\_interval shall be equal to or larger than AFH\_min\_interval.

The AFH\_reporting\_mode parameter shall determine if the slave is in the AFH\_reporting\_enabled or AFH\_reporting\_disabled state. The default state, prior to receipt of any LMP\_channel\_classification\_req PDUs, shall be AFH\_reporting\_disabled.

AFH\_reporting\_mode is implicitly set to the AFH\_reporting\_disabled state when any of the following occur:

- Establishment of a connection at the baseband level
- Master-slave role switch
- Entry to park state operation
- Entry to hold mode operation

AFH\_reporting\_mode is implicitly restored to its former value when any of the following occur:

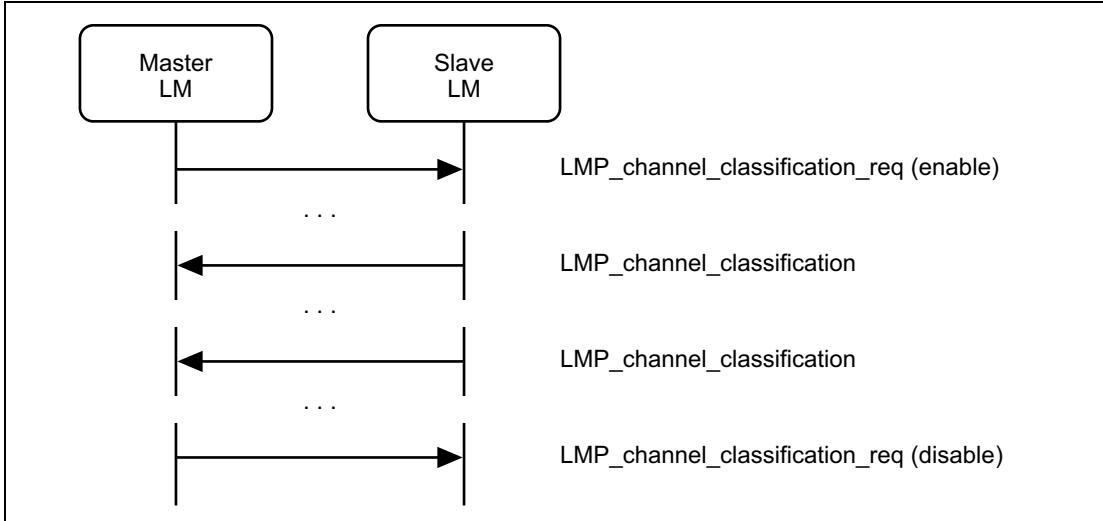
- Exit from park state operation
- Exit from hold mode
- Failure of Master-slave role switch

#### 4.1.5.1 Channel classification reporting enabling and disabling

A master enables slave channel classification reporting by sending the LMP\_channel\_classification\_req PDU with the AFH\_reporting\_mode parameter set to AFH\_reporting\_enabled.

When a slave has had classification reporting enabled by the master it shall send the LMP\_channel\_classification PDU according to the information in the latest LMP\_channel\_classification\_req PDU. The LMP\_channel\_classification PDU shall not be sent if there has been no change in the slave's channel classification.

A master disables slave channel classification reporting by sending the LMP\_channel\_classification\_req PDU with the AFH\_reporting\_mode parameter set to AFH\_reporting\_disabled.



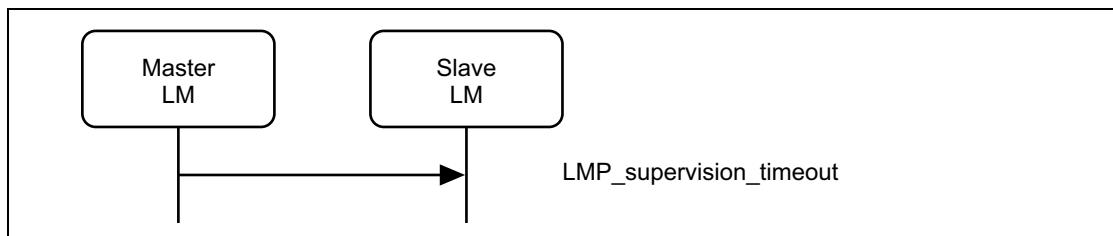
Sequence 9: Channel classification reporting

#### 4.1.6 Link Supervision

Each physical link has a timer that is used for link supervision. This timer is used to detect physical link loss caused by devices moving out of range, or being blocked by interference, a device's power-down, or other similar failure cases. Link supervision is specified in [Baseband Specification, Section 3.1, on page 102](#).

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_supervision_timeout	supervision timeout

Table 4.6: Set supervision timeout PDU



Sequence 10: Setting the link supervision timeout

#### 4.1.7 Channel Quality Driven Data Rate Change (CQDDR)

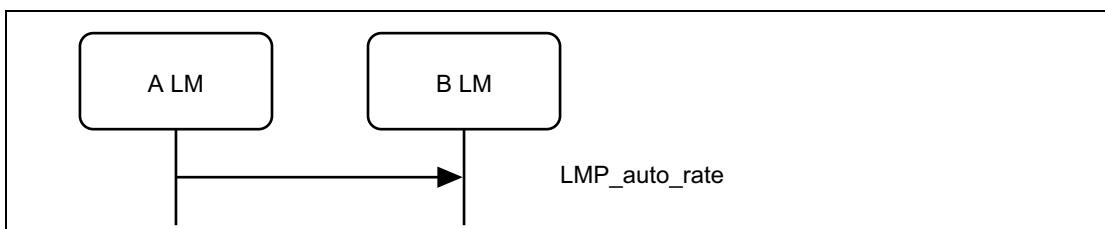
The data throughput for a given packet type depends on the quality of the RF channel. Quality measurements in the receiver of one device can be used to dynamically control the packet type transmitted from the remote device for optimization of the data throughput. Device A sends the LMP\_auto\_rate PDU once to notify device B to enable this feature. Once enabled, device B may request packet type(s) that A should transmit by sending the LMP\_preferred\_rate PDU. This PDU has a parameter which determines the preferred error coding (with or without 2/3 FEC) and optionally the preferred size in slots of the packets. Device A is not required to change to the packet type specified by this parameter. Device A shall not send a packet that is larger than max slots (see [Section 4.1.10 on page 266](#)) even if the preferred size is greater than this value.

The data rate parameter includes the preferred rate for Basic Rate and Enhanced Data Rate modes. When operating in Basic Rate mode, the device shall use bits 0-2 to determine the preferred data rate. When operating in Enhanced Data Rate mode, the device shall use bits 3-6 to determine the preferred data rate. For devices that support Enhanced Data Rate, the preferred rates for both Basic Rate and Enhanced Data Rate modes shall be valid at all times.

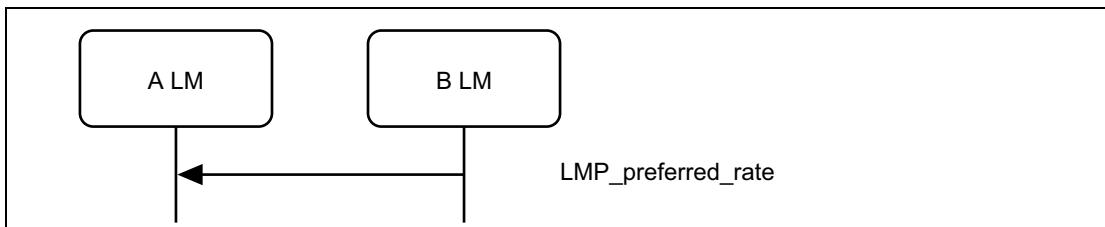
These PDUs may be sent at any time after connection setup is completed.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(10)	LMP_auto_rate	-
O(10)	LMP_preferred_rate	data rate

Table 4.7: Quality-driven change of the data rate PDU



Sequence 11: A notifies B to enable CQDDR



Sequence 12: B sends A a preferred packet type

#### 4.1.8 Quality of Service (QoS)

The LM provides QoS capabilities. A poll interval,  $T_{\text{poll}}$ , that is defined as the maximum time between transmissions from the master to a particular slave on the ACL logical transport, is used to support bandwidth allocation and latency control - see [Baseband Specification, Section 8.6.1, on page 177](#) for details. The poll interval is guaranteed in the active and sniff modes except when there are collisions with page, page scan, inquiry and inquiry scan, during time critical LMP sequences in the current piconet and any other piconets in which the Bluetooth device is a member, and during critical baseband sequences (such as the page response, initial connection state until the first POLL, and master slave switch). These PDUs may be sent at any time after connection setup is completed.

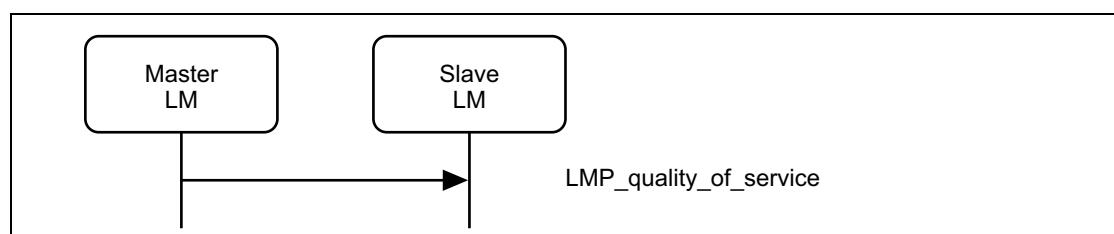
Master and slave negotiate the number of repetitions for broadcast packets ( $N_{\text{BC}}$ ), see [Baseband Specification, Section 7.6.5, on page 157](#).

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_quality_of_service	poll interval $N_{\text{BC}}$
M	LMP_quality_of_service_req	poll interval $N_{\text{BC}}$

Table 4.8: Quality of Service PDU

##### 4.1.8.1 Master Notifies Slave of the Quality of Service

The master notifies the slave of the new poll interval and  $N_{\text{BC}}$  by sending the LMP\_quality\_of\_service PDU. The slave cannot reject the notification.

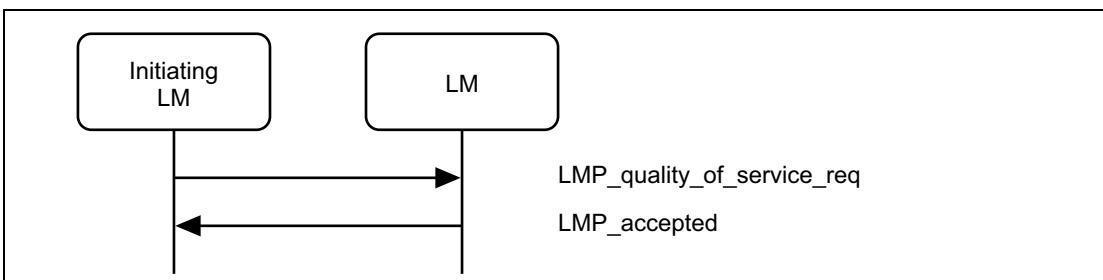


Sequence 13: Master notifies slave of quality of service

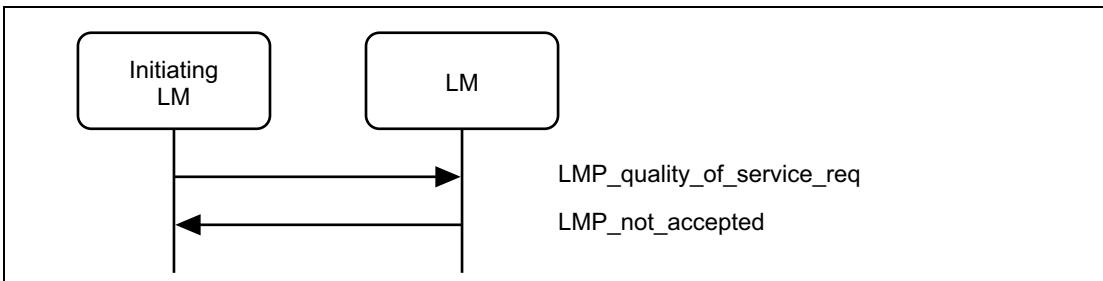
#### 4.1.8.2 Device requests new quality of service

Either the master or the slave may request a new poll interval and  $N_{BC}$  by sending an LMP\_quality\_of\_service\_req PDU. The parameter  $N_{BC}$  is meaningful only when it is sent by a master to a slave. For transmission of LMP\_quality\_of\_service\_req PDUs from a slave, this parameter shall be ignored by the master. The request can be accepted or rejected. This allows the master and slave to dynamically negotiate the quality of service as needed.

The selected poll interval by the slave shall be less than or equal to the specified Access Latency for the outgoing traffic of the ACL link (see L2CAP Quality of Service (QoS) Option [Vol. 3, Part A] Section 5.3 on page 92).



Sequence 14: Device accepts new quality of service



Sequence 15: Device rejects new quality of service

#### 4.1.9 Paging Scheme Parameters

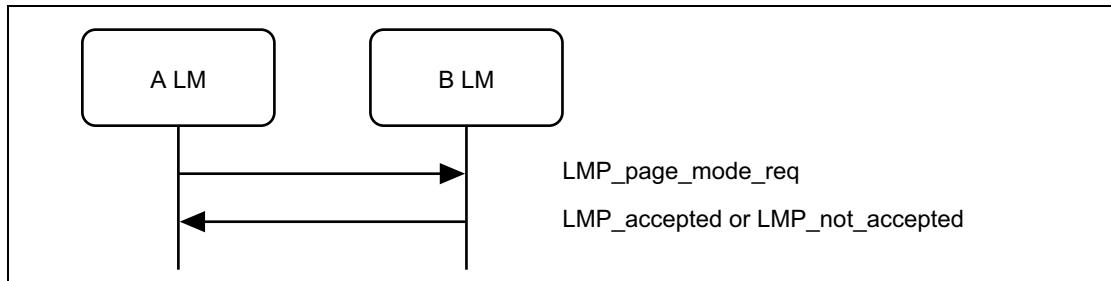
LMP provides a means to negotiate the paging scheme parameters that are used the next time a device is paged.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(17)	LMP_page_mode_req	paging scheme paging scheme settings
O(17)	LMP_page_scan_mode_req	paging scheme paging scheme settings

Table 4.9: Paging scheme request PDU

#### 4.1.9.1 Page Mode

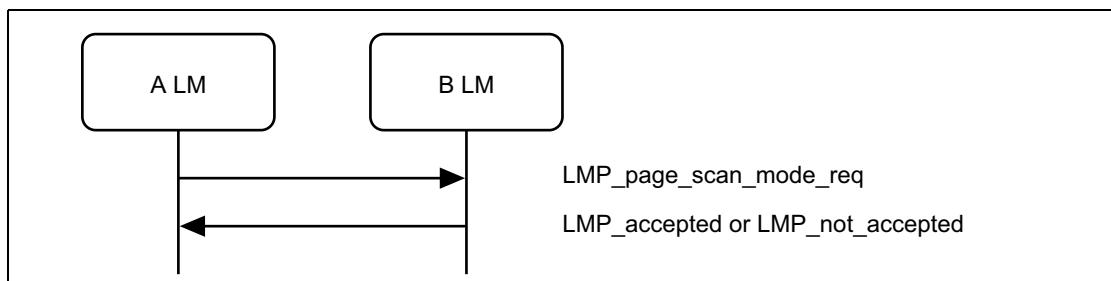
This procedure is initiated from device A and negotiates the paging scheme used when device A pages device B. Device A proposes a paging scheme including the parameters for this scheme and device B can accept or reject. On rejection the old setting shall not be changed. A request to switch to a reserved paging scheme shall be rejected.



Sequence 16: Negotiation for page mode

#### 4.1.9.2 Page Scan Mode

This procedure is initiated from device A and negotiates the paging scheme and paging scheme settings used when device B pages device A. Device A proposes a paging scheme and paging scheme settings and device B may accept or reject. On reject the old setting is not changed. A request specifying the mandatory scheme shall be accepted. A request specifying a non-mandatory scheme shall be rejected. This procedure should be used when device A changes its paging scheme settings. A slave should also send this message to the master after connection establishment, to inform the master of the slave's current paging scheme and paging scheme settings.



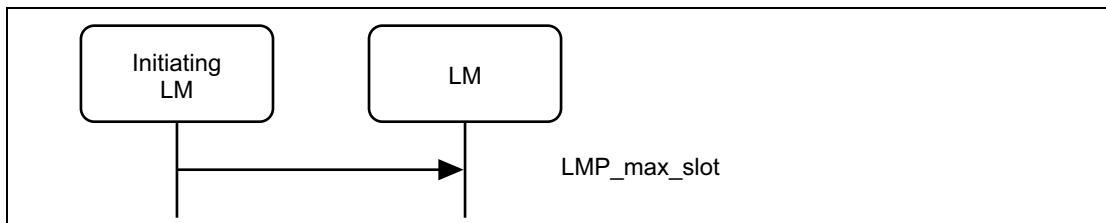
Sequence 17: Negotiation for page scan mode

#### 4.1.10 Control of Multi-slot Packets

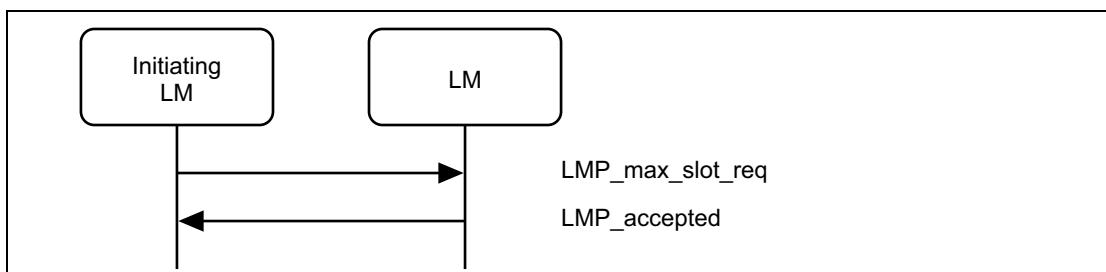
The number of consecutive slots used by a device on an ACL-U logical link can be limited. It does not affect traffic on the eSCO links where the packet sizes are defined as part of link setup. A device allows the remote device to use a maximum number of slots by sending the PDU LMP\_max\_slot providing max slots as parameter. Each device can request to use a maximal number of slots by sending the PDU LMP\_max\_slot\_req providing max slots as parameter. After a new connection, as a result of page, page scan role switch or unpark, the default value is 1 slot. These PDUs can be sent at any time after connection setup is completed.

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_max_slot	max slots
M	LMP_max_slot_req	max slots

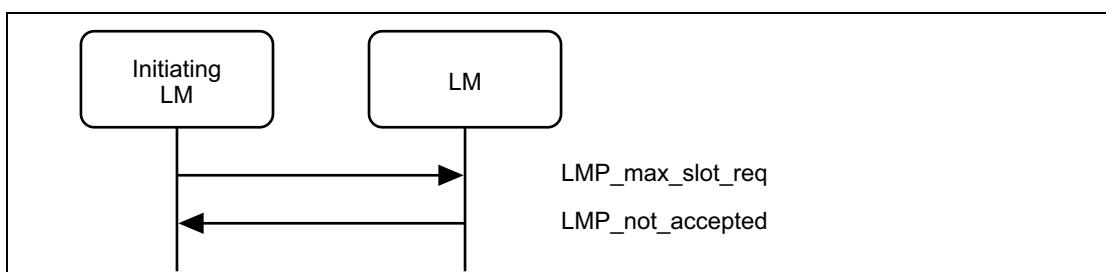
Table 4.10: Multi-slot packet control PDU



Sequence 18: Device allows Remote Device to use a maximum number of slots



Sequence 19: Device requests a maximum number of slots. Remote Device accepts



Sequence 20: Device requests a maximum number of slots. Remote Device rejects

#### 4.1.11 Enhanced Data Rate

A device may change the packet type table, ptt, to select which if any of the packets and optional modulation modes are to be used on an ACL logical transport.

Either the master or the slave may request a new packet type table and therefore the packets and modulation mode to be used on this ACL link. After a new baseband connection, as a result of page or page scan, the default value for ptt shall be 0.

The change of the modulation mode for an ACL logical transport shall not affect the packet and packet types used for an associated SCO logical transport on the same LT\_ADDR.

Note: Enhanced Data Rate eSCO links are negotiated using the LMP eSCO link\_req as described in [section 4.6.2](#).

Before changing the packet type table, the initiator shall finalize the transmission of the current ACL packet with ACL-U information and shall stop ACL-U transmissions. It shall then send the LMP\_packet\_type\_table\_req PDU.

If the receiver rejects the change, then it shall respond with an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU.

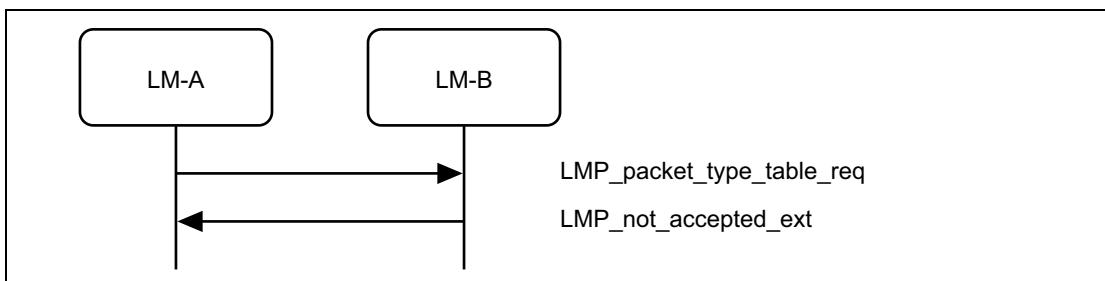
If the receiver accepts the change, then it shall finalize the transmission of the current ACL packet with ACL-U information and shall stop ACL-U transmissions, it shall change to the new packet type table and shall respond with an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU. When it receives the baseband level acknowledgement for the LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU it shall restart ACL-U transmissions.

When the initiator receives an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU the initiator shall restart ACL-U transmissions.

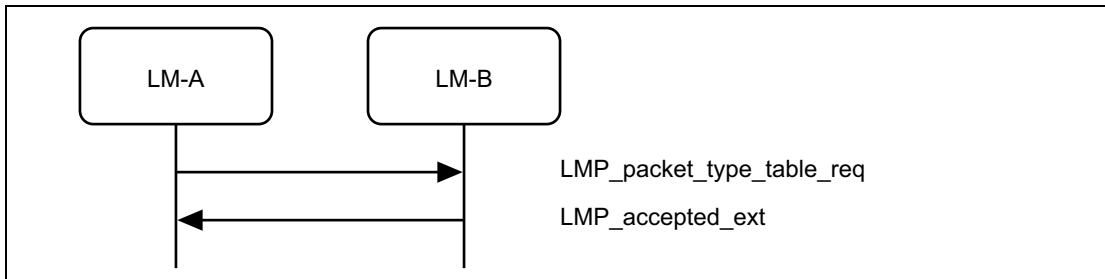
When the initiator receives an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU it shall change the packet type table and restart ACL-U transmissions.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(25)	LMP_packet_type_table_req	packet type table

*Table 4.11: Enhanced Data Rate PDUs*



Sequence 21: Packet type table change is rejected



Sequence 22: Packet type table change is accepted

#### 4.1.12 Encapsulated LMP PDUs

Some transactions require sending LMP payload data that is longer than 16 octets. To enable a link manager to send a large PDU, an encapsulated LMP PDU is defined. An encapsulated LMP PDU is composed of a minimum of two LMP messages, a header PDU and one or more payload PDUs.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(52)	LMP_encapsulated_header	encapsulated major type encapsulated minor type encapsulated payload length
O(52)	LMP_encapsulated_payload	encapsulated data

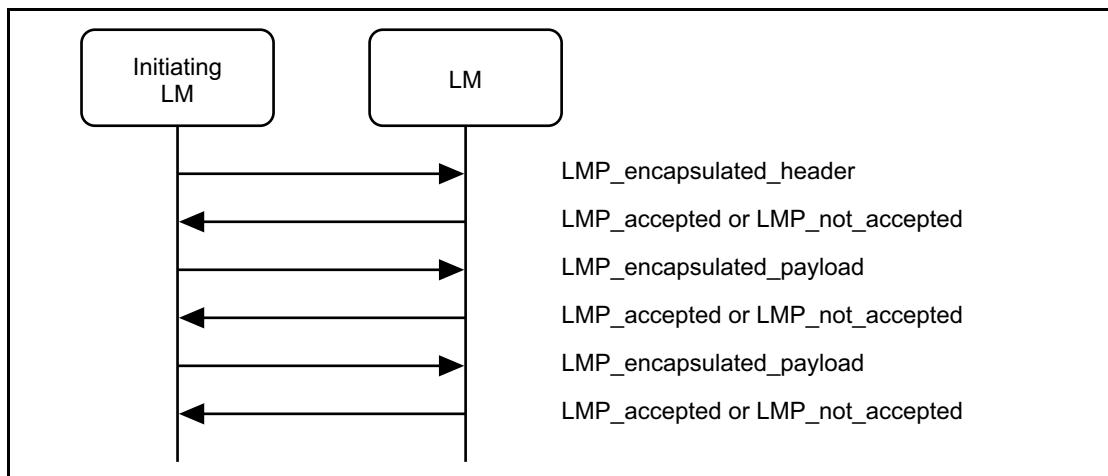
Table 4.12: Encapsulated LMP PDUs

##### 4.1.12.1 Sending an Encapsulated PDU

The LMP\_encapsulated\_header PDU shall be sent by the initiating device when it needs to send an encapsulated PDU. This PDU shall be either accepted or rejected using the LMP\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted PDUs. If the major and minor types are not supported the PDU shall be rejected with error code *Unsupported LMP Parameter Value (0x20)*. If the LMP\_encapsulated\_header PDU is accepted, then one or more LMP\_encapsulated\_payload PDUs will be sent with the encapsulated data sent in sequence, 16 octets at a time, or if this is last packet, the correct number of octets and then zero padded.

Each LMP\_ encapsulated\_ payload PDU shall be accepted or rejected. If the LMP\_ encapsulated\_ header PDU is rejected, then the opcode in the LMP\_ not\_ accepted PDU shall be the opcode for the LMP\_ encapsulated\_ header and not the encapsulated major type or encapsulated minor type. If the LMP\_ encapsulated\_ payload PDU is rejected, then the opcode in the LMP\_ not\_ accepted PDU shall be the opcode for the LMP\_ encapsulated\_ payload.

A responding device may reject the final LMP\_ encapsulated\_ payload PDU after accepting the LMP\_ encapsulated\_ header PDU. This is so that the link manager can still reject an encapsulated message after all the data has been received.



Sequence 23: Sending an encapsulated PDU

Between sending an LMP\_ encapsulated\_ header PDU and an LMP\_ encapsulated\_ payload PDU, or between each of the LMP\_ encapsulated\_ payload PDU, either device shall be able to send the following LMP PDUs without causing a "different transaction collision" error.

- LMP\_ channel\_ classification
- LMP\_ decr\_ power\_ req
- LMP\_ detach
- LMP\_ incr\_ power\_ req
- LMP\_ max\_ power
- LMP\_ max\_ slot
- LMP\_ min\_ power
- LMP\_ preferred\_ rate
- LMP\_ set\_ AFH

### 4.1.13 Ping

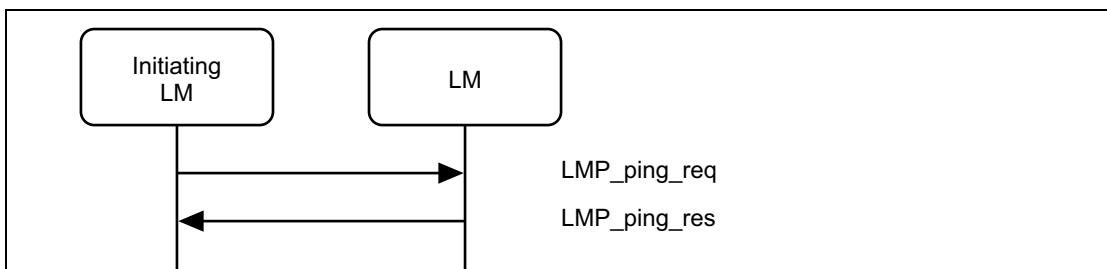
When both devices support the Ping feature, a Link Manager may verify the presence of the remote Link Manager by using the LMP ping mechanism. The LMP ping mechanism may also be used to verify message integrity on the ACL logical transport by forcing the remote device to send an ACL packet that contains a MIC.

Note: Since the LMP\_ping\_res PDU contains a MIC and will update the packet counter, the sender of the LMP\_ping\_req PDU can verify that packets with earlier packet counter values have not been deliberately suppressed by an attacker.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(137)	LMP_ping_req	
O(137)	LMP_ping_res	

Table 4.13: Ping PDUs

The initiating link manager sends the LMP\_ping\_req PDU. The responding link manager responds with the LMP\_ping\_res PDU. The initiating link manager may be a master or slave.



Sequence 24: Ping PDUs

The Link Manager shall send an LMP\_ping\_req PDU when the remote device has not sent a packet containing a payload protected by a MIC within an authenticated payload timeout set by the Host (see [\[Part E\] Section 7.3.94 on page 787](#)). The Link Manager should send an LMP\_ping\_req PDU in advance enough of the expiration of the authenticated payload timeout to allow the remote device reasonable time to respond with an LMP\_ping\_res PDU before the timeout expires.

#### 4.1.14 Piconet Clock Adjustment

The master may adjust the piconet clock (e.g. to align with an external time base) by initiating the Coarse Clock Adjustment or Clock Dragging procedures. A slave may request that the master adjust the piconet clock.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(134)	LMP_clk_adj	clk_adj_id clk_adj_instant clk_adj_us clk_adj_slots clk_adj_mode clk_adj_clk
O(134)	LMP_clk_adj_ack	clk_adj_id
O(134)	LMP_clk_adj_req	clk_adj_us clk_adj_slots clk_adj_period

Table 4.14: Piconet clock adjustment PDUs

Piconet clock adjustment requests may be made at any time after the Link Manager supported features responses have been processed.

The master's LM shall not initiate another sequence containing an instant or timing control flags before an outstanding clock adjustment instant has been reached, while waiting for CLK\_adj\_drag\_TO to expire (see “[Appendix B: Timers](#)” on page 221 [Part B]), or while in Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode (see [\[Part B\] Section 8.6.10.2 on page 192](#)); however the latter may be terminated by the master in order to initiate the request. If a request to initiate such a sequence is received before an outstanding clock adjustment instant is reached or CLK\_adj\_drag\_TO has been cancelled or has expired, the request shall be rejected with the error code *Different Transaction Collision* (0x2A).

The master is free to reject any request for an adjustment; an implementation may, for instance, accept coarse clock adjustment requests from one slave but reject all requests from any other slave.

Note: Broadcast encryption cannot be enabled when the Coarse Clock Adjustment feature is supported.

##### 4.1.14.1 Master Coarse Adjustment of Piconet Clock

The coarse clock adjustment procedure shall only be used if all connected slaves declare support for the Coarse Clock Adjustment feature.

For all devices that may use Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode (see [\[Part B\] Section 8.6.10.2 on page 192](#)), the RF channel indices used for the Synchronization Train (see [\[Part B\] Section 2.6.4.8 on page 98](#)) shall be marked as unused in the AFH\_channel\_map for all logical links.

The master may use the clk\_adj\_period parameter from one or more slaves, in addition to other scheduling considerations, to select an optimal value of clk\_adj\_slots.

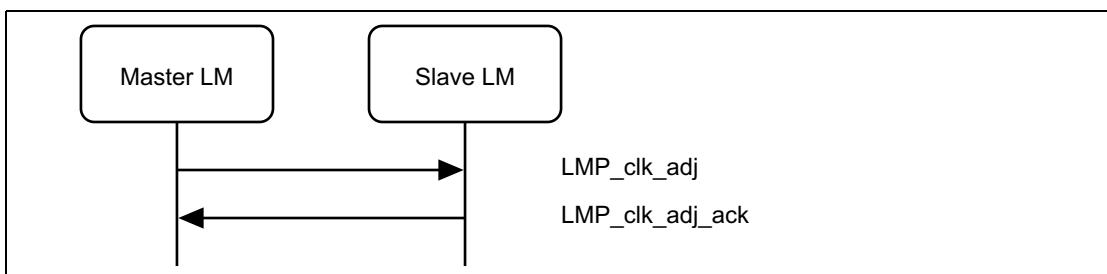
The master selects the parameters of the coarse clock adjustment. Some parameters shall remain the same for every LMP\_clk\_adj PDU associated with a given adjustment. These are the number of slots (clk\_adj\_slots) between 0 and 255, an offset within a slot (clk\_adj\_us) between  $-624\text{ }\mu\text{s}$  and  $624\text{ }\mu\text{s}$ , a coarse clock adjustment instant (clk\_adj\_instant), which is specified in the old time domain before the instant, and an identifier for the instant (clk\_adj\_id). The clk\_adj\_instant shall be at least 12 slots in the future and no more than 12 hours away. The clk\_adj\_id shall be different for any two adjacent adjustments and for any two adjustments whose instants are closer together in time than the longest Link Supervision Timeout period for any slave. Each LMP\_clk\_adj PDU also contains the value of CLK when it is transmitted (clk\_adj\_clk) and a flag clk\_adj\_mode, which shall be set to Before Instant if the LMP\_clk\_adj PDU is sent before the instant or to After Instant if the LMP\_clk\_adj\_PDU is sent on or after the instant.

To initiate the coarse adjustment, the master starts broadcasting the LMP\_clk\_adj PDU and, unless all slaves have acknowledged, it should broadcast the LMP\_clk\_adj PDU at least 6 times before the adjustment instant. The master shall continue to broadcast the LMP\_clk\_adj PDU until all slaves have acknowledged the adjustment with an LMP\_clk\_adj\_ack PDU or the master has left Coarse Clock Adjustment Recovery Mode.

A master shall not initiate a coarse clock adjustment if there are any transactions outstanding that involve LMP PDUs containing an instant or timing control flags including, but not limited to: role switch, adaptive frequency hopping, SCO, eSCO, sniff, sniff subrating, hold, park, and encryption pause resume.

A slave shall discard and not acknowledge an LMP\_clk\_adj PDU with a value of clk\_adj\_id that is the same as that in the most recently received LMP\_clk\_adj PDU, if any, and any LMP\_clk\_adj PDU with any parameters outside the valid range (see [Section 5.2](#)).

On receipt of an LMP\_clk\_adj PDU that passes these checks, the slave shall reply with an LMP\_clk\_adj\_ack PDU containing the same value of clk\_adj\_id as in the LMP\_clk\_adj PDU and shall change the value of slave\_offset, if not already performed, as described in [\[Part B\] Section 8.6.10.1 on page 190](#), either at the adjustment instant or, if that has passed, immediately.



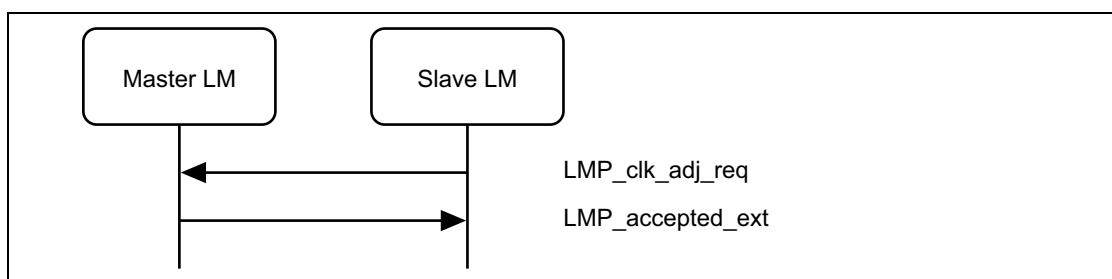
Sequence 25: Master initiates a coarse clock adjustment

#### 4.1.14.2 Slave Request for Coarse Adjustment of Piconet Clock

The slave may request a coarse adjustment of the piconet clock by sending the LMP\_clk\_adj\_req PDU to the master. The LMP\_clk\_adj\_req PDU contains three parameters: clk\_adj\_us, clk\_adj\_slots, and clk\_adj\_period. The parameters clk\_adj\_us and clk\_adj\_slots have the same meaning as in the LMP\_clk\_adj PDU and clk\_adj\_slots or clk\_adj\_us shall be non-zero. If non-zero, the parameter clk\_adj\_period is an indication to the master that the request is for any of a set of possible adjustments, all of which are equally acceptable to the slave. These adjustments are those where the number of slots is equal to clk\_adj\_slots + N \* clk\_adj\_period, where N is zero or a positive integer, and the offset within a slot equals clk\_adj\_us. For example, if clk\_adj\_slots is 18 and clk\_adj\_period is 48, then the acceptable adjustments are 18, 66, 114, 162, and 210 slots. A value of zero for clk\_adj\_period indicates that an adjustment of any number of slots is equally acceptable to the slave (that is, the master may ignore the value of clk\_adj\_slots). A request for a coarse adjustment shall also update the master's local record of clk\_adj\_period for the slave.

The slave may indicate its preferred clk\_adj\_period to the master without requesting a clock adjustment. In this case it shall set clk\_adj\_slots and clk\_adj\_us to zero. Upon receiving an LMP\_clk\_adj\_req PDU with clk\_adj\_slots and clk\_adj\_us set to zero, the master shall respond with LMP\_accepted PDU and update its local record of clk\_adj\_period for the slave, but shall not initialize any clock adjustment. The master is not required to honor a slave's preferred clk\_adj\_period when making coarse clock adjustments.

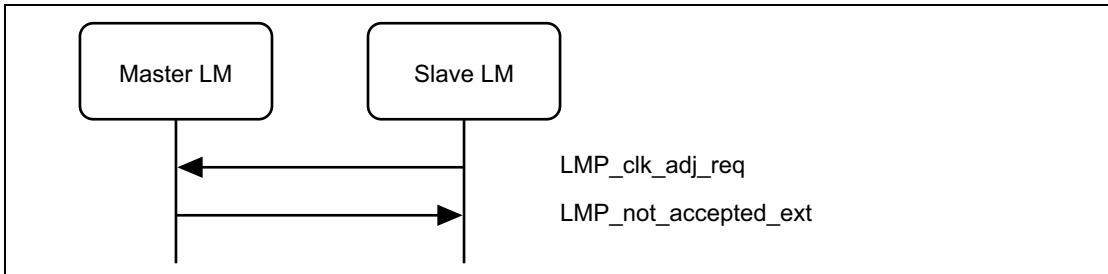
The master may accept the coarse clock adjustment request from the slave by sending an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU. This indicates that the master intends to carry out a coarse clock adjustment with the requested value of clk\_adj\_us; however, the value of clk\_adj\_slots may be different to that requested and might not follow the clk\_adj\_period parameter.



Sequence 26: Master accepts slave request for a coarse clock adjustment

The master may reject the coarse clock adjustment request from the slave by sending an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU with the error code *Command Disallowed* (0x0C) (see [\[Part D\] Section 2.12 on page 388](#)). The master's decision not to follow the clk\_adj\_slots or clk\_adj\_period parameters does not constitute a rejection.

The master may implement the coarse clock adjustment request from the slave by carrying out clock dragging (see [\[Part B\] Section 8.6.10.3 on page 192](#)) to achieve the requested clock adjustment. If so, it shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU with the error code *Coarse Clock Adjustment Rejected but Will Try to Adjust Using Clock Dragging (0x40)* (see [\[Part D\] Section 2.61 on page 395](#)).



Sequence 27: Master rejects a slave request for coarse clock adjustment

## 4.2 SECURITY

### 4.2.1 Authentication

Two authentication procedures are defined: legacy and secure authentication. Legacy authentication shall be performed when at least one device does not support both the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and Secure Connections (Host Support) features and the local device allows legacy authentication to be used. Secure authentication shall be performed when both devices support the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and Secure Connections (Host Support) features.

The legacy authentication procedure is based on a challenge-response scheme as described in [\[Part H\] Section 3.2.2 on page 1296](#). The verifier sends an LMP\_au\_rand PDU that contains a random number (the challenge) to the claimant. The claimant calculates a response, that is a function of this challenge, the claimant's BD\_ADDR and a secret key. The response is sent back to the verifier, which checks if the response was correct or not. The response shall be calculated as described in [\[Part H\] Section 6.1 on page 1316](#). A successful calculation of the authentication response requires that two devices share a secret key. This key is created as described in [Section 4.2.2 on page 278](#). Both the master and the slave can be verifiers. The sequences for legacy authentication are described in [Section 4.2.1.1](#) and [Section 4.2.1.2](#).

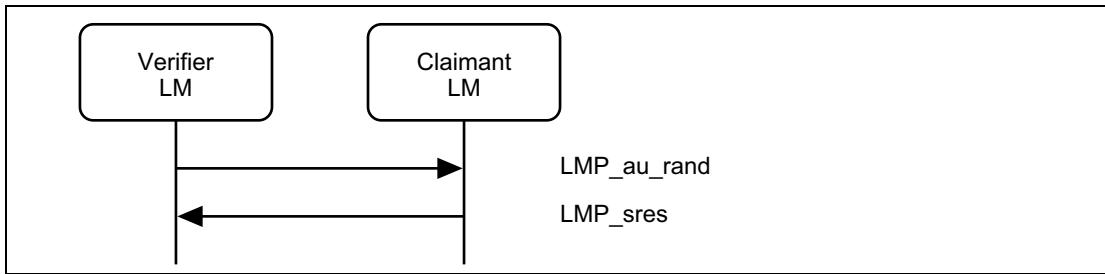
The secure authentication procedure is a challenge-response scheme as described in [\[Part H\] Section 5 on page 1312](#). The verifier sends an LMP\_au\_rand PDU that contains a random number (the challenge) to the claimant. The claimant responds with another LMP\_au\_rand PDU also containing a random number. Both Link Managers calculate the Device Authentication Key using the h4 function (see [\[Part H\] Section 7.7.7 on page 1341](#)) and then calculate the SRES\_master, SRES\_slave and ACO values using the h5 function (see [\[Part H\] Section 7.7.8 on page 1342](#)). The slave (regardless of whether it was the verifier or claimant) sends its response (SRES\_slave) to the master. The master sends its response (SRES\_master) to the slave. A successful calculation of the authentication response requires that two devices share a secret key. The sequences for secure authentication are described in [Section 4.2.1.2](#) and [Section 4.2.1.4](#).

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_au_rand	random number
M	LMP_sres	authentication response

Table 4.15: Authentication PDUs

#### 4.2.1.1 Claimant has Link Key (Legacy Authentication)

If the claimant has a link key associated with the verifier, it shall calculate the response and sends it to the verifier with LMP\_sres. The verifier checks the response. If the response is not correct, the verifier can end the connection by sending an LMP\_detach PDU with the error code *Authentication Failure* (0x05), see [Section 4.1.2 on page 251](#).



Sequence 28: Authentication. Claimant has link key

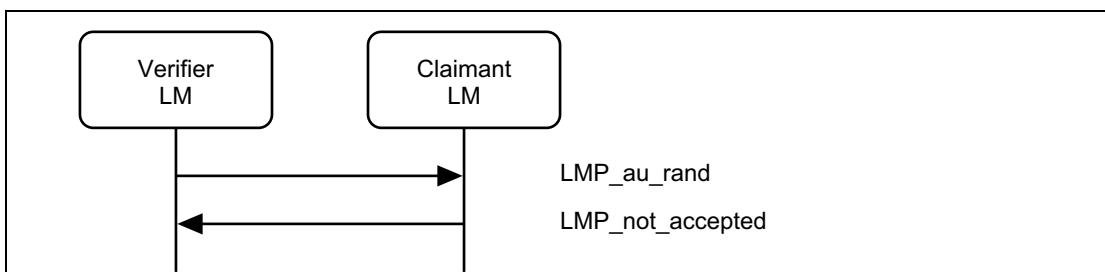
Upon reception of an LMP\_au\_rand, an LM shall reply with LMP\_sres before initiating its own authentication.

Note: There can be concurrent requests caused by the master and slave simultaneously initiating an authentication. The procedures in [Section 2.5.1 on page 236](#) assures that devices will not have different Authenticated Ciphering Offset (ACO, see [\[Part H\] Section 6.1 on page 1316](#)) when they calculate the encryption key.

#### 4.2.1.2 Claimant has no Link Key (Legacy Authentication and Secure Authentication)

If the claimant does not have a link key associated with the verifier it shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with the error code *PIN or Key Missing* (0x06) after receiving an LMP\_au\_rand PDU ([\[Part D\] Section 2.6](#) ).

Note: This sequence is identical for legacy authentication and secure authentication.



Sequence 29: Authentication fails. Claimant has no link key

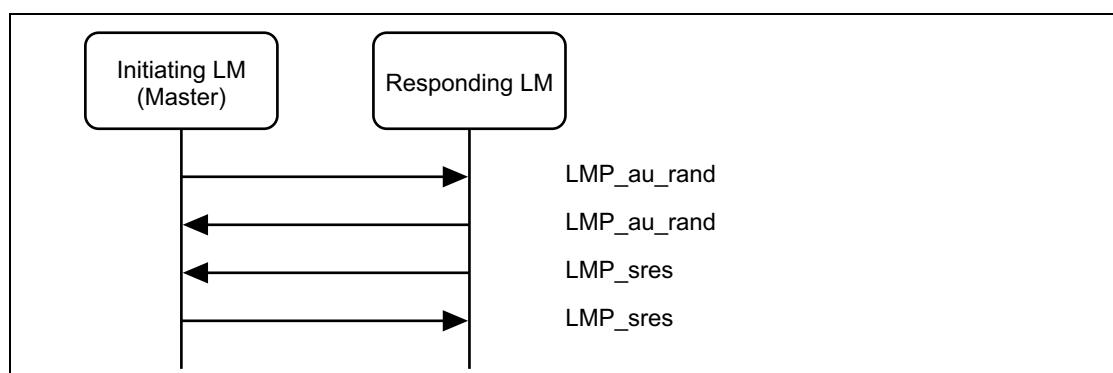
#### 4.2.1.3 Repeated Attempts

The scheme described in [Part H] Section 5.1 on page 1315 shall be applied when an authentication fails. This will prevent an intruder from trying a large number of keys in a relatively short time.

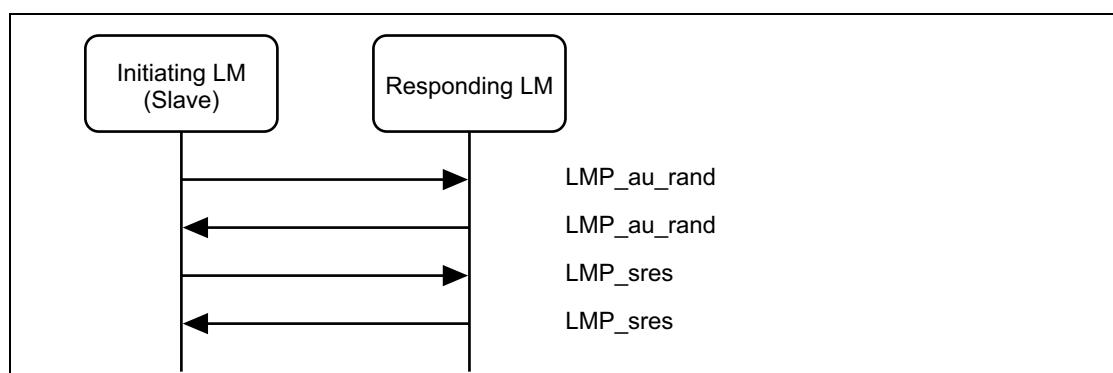
#### 4.2.1.4 Responder has Link Key (Secure Authentication)

Both the master and slave LM act as verifier and claimant. The initiator is the device that sends the LMP\_au\_rand PDU first.

The initiator sends an LMP\_au\_rand PDU to the responder. If the responder has a link key associated with the initiator, it shall respond with an LMP\_au\_rand PDU. The initiator and responder shall calculate the response. The slave responds first with an LMP\_sres PDU containing SRES\_slave. The master shall then respond with an LMP\_sres PDU containing SRES\_master. The master shall verify that the SRES\_slave sent by the slave matches the SRES\_slave calculated by the master. The slave shall verify that the SRES\_master sent by the master matches the SRES\_master calculated by the slave. If the response is not correct, then either device can end the connection by sending an LMP\_detach PDU with the error code *Authentication Failure* (0x05) (see [Section 4.1.2 on page 251](#)).



Sequence 30: Secure Authentication. Responder has link key. Initiator is master



Sequence 31: Secure Authentication. Responder has link key. Initiator is slave

In the case where the master and slave both initiate the secure authentication sequence, the master shall reject the slave's LMP\_au\_rand PDU with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with the error code *LMP Error Transaction Collision* (0x23). The slave shall send another LMP\_au\_rand PDU with transaction ID set to 0 (master).

Note: Secure Authentication is a mutual authentication.

#### 4.2.2 Pairing

When two devices do not have a common link key an initialization key ( $K_{init}$ ) shall be created using either the pairing or Secure Simple Pairing procedures. When pairing is used,  $K_{init}$  shall be created based on a PIN, and a random number and a BD\_ADDR.  $K_{init}$  shall be created as specified in [\[Part H\] Section 6.3 on page 1320](#). When both devices have calculated  $K_{init}$  the link key shall be created, and a mutual authentication is performed. The pairing procedure starts with a device sending an LMP\_in\_rand PDU; this device is referred to as the "initiating LM" or "initiator" in [Section 4.2.2.1 on page 278 - Section 4.2.2.5 on page 281](#). The other device is referred to as the "responding LM" or "responder". The PDUs used in the pairing procedure are:

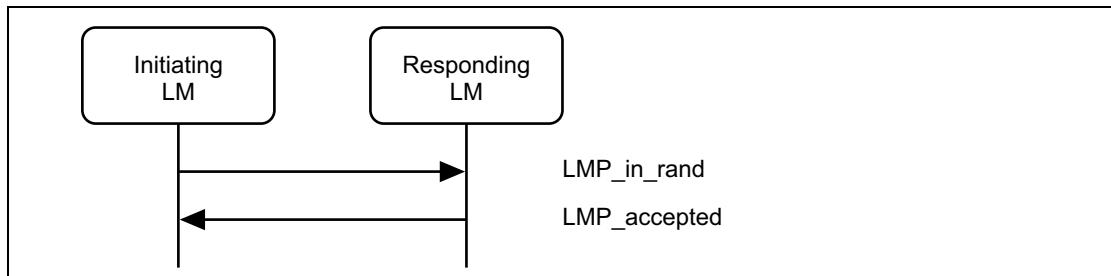
M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_in_rand	random number
M	LMP_au_rand	random number
M	LMP_sres	authentication response
M	LMP_comb_key	random number
M	LMP_unit_key	key

*Table 4.16: Pairing PDUs*

All sequences described in [Section 4 on page 250](#), including the mutual authentication after the link key has been created, shall form a single transaction. The transaction ID from the first LMP\_in\_rand shall be used for all subsequent sequences.

##### 4.2.2.1 Responder Accepts Pairing

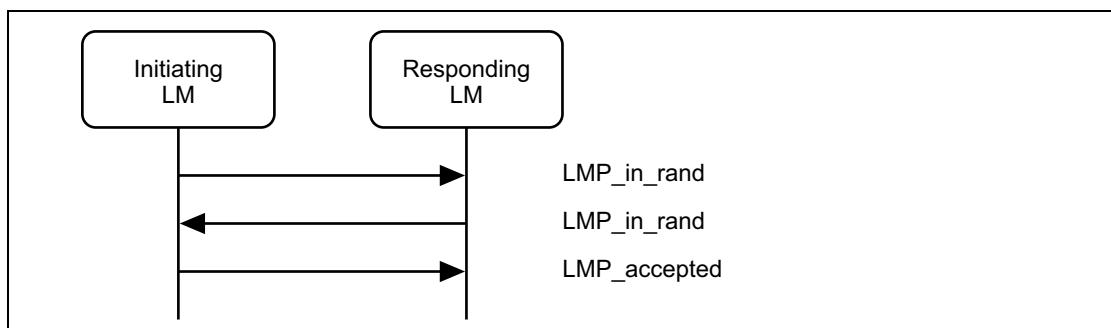
When the initiator sends an LMP\_in\_rand PDU and the responder shall reply with an LMP\_accepted PDU. Both devices shall then calculate  $K_{init}$  based on the BD\_ADDR of the responder and the procedure continues with creation of the link key; see [Section 4.2.2.4 on page 280](#).



Sequence 32: *Pairing accepted. Responder has a variable PIN. Initiator has a variable or fixed PIN*

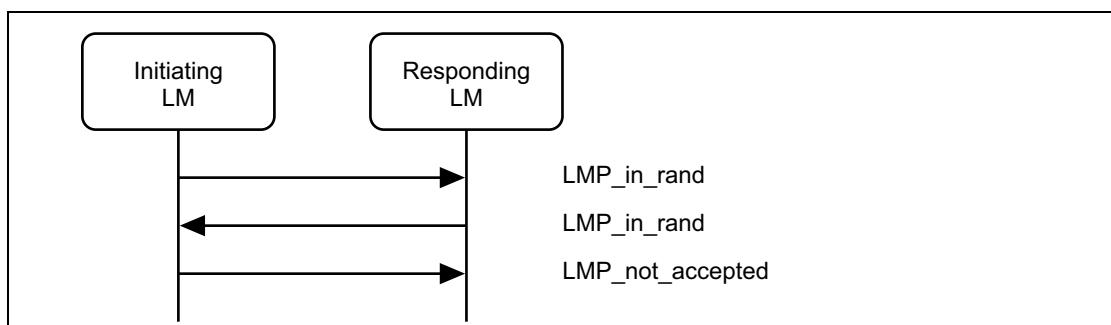
#### 4.2.2.2 Responder has a Fixed PIN

If the responder has a fixed PIN it shall generate a new random number and send it back in an LMP\_in\_rand PDU. If the initiator has a variable PIN it shall accept the LMP\_in\_rand PDU and shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU. Both sides shall then calculate  $K_{init}$  based on the last IN\_RAND and the BD\_ADDR of the initiator. The procedure continues with creation of the link key; see [Section 4.2.2.4 on page 280](#).



Sequence 33: *Responder has a fixed PIN and initiator has a variable PIN*

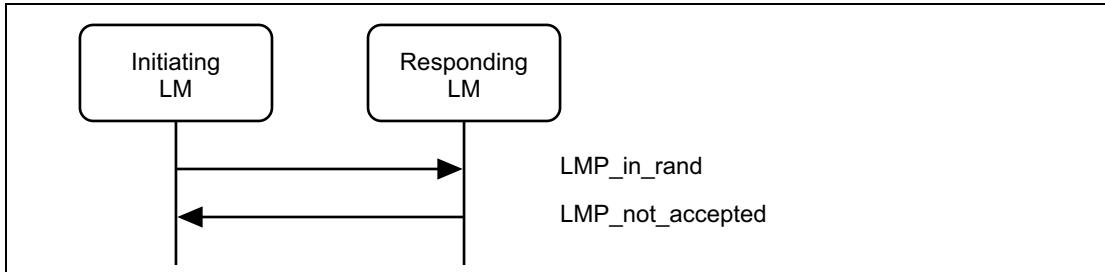
If the responder has a fixed PIN and the initiator also has a fixed PIN, the second LMP\_in\_rand shall be rejected by the initiator sending an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with the error code *Pairing not Allowed (0x18)*.



Sequence 34: *Both devices have a fixed PIN*

#### 4.2.2.3 Responder Rejects Pairing

If the responder rejects pairing it shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with the error code *Pairing not Allowed* (0x18) after receiving an LMP\_in\_rand PDU.



Sequence 35: Responder rejects pairing

#### 4.2.2.4 Creation of the Link Key

When  $K_{init}$  is calculated in both devices the link key shall be created. This link key will be used in the authentication between the two devices for all subsequent connections until it is changed; see [Section 4.2.3 on page 281](#) and [Section 4.2.4 on page 283](#). The link key created in the pairing procedure will either be a combination key or one of the device's unit keys. The following rules shall apply to the selection of the link key:

- if one device sends an LMP\_unit\_key PDU and the other device sends LMP\_comb\_key, the unit key will be the link key.
- if both devices send an LMP\_unit\_key PDU, the master's unit key will be the link key.
- if both devices send an LMP\_comb\_key PDU, the link key shall be calculated as described in [\[Part H\] Section 3.2 on page 1295](#).

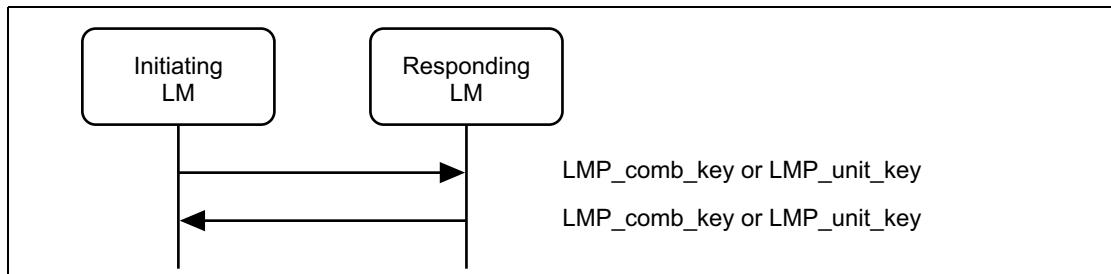
The content of the LMP\_unit\_key PDU is the unit key bitwise XORed with  $K_{init}$ . The content of the LMP\_comb\_key PDU is LK\_RAND bitwise XORed with  $K_{init}$ . Any device configured to use a combination key shall store the link key.

The use of unit keys is deprecated since it is implicitly insecure.

When the new link key has been created mutual authentication shall be performed to confirm that the same link key has been created in both devices. After mutual authentication, the initiating device shall pause and immediately resume encryption to produce a new encryption key. Note that this will cause a new encryption key to be generated from the ACO created during the mutual authentication process, and when E0 encryption is used, the random number sent in the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU which occurs in response to the resumption of encryption.

After mutual authentication, if encryption is enabled, the initiating device shall pause and immediately resume encryption to produce a new encryption key.

Note that this will cause a new encryption key to be generated from the ACO created during the mutual authentication process, and when E0 encryption is used, the random number sent in the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU which occurs in response to the resumption of encryption.



*Sequence 36: Creation of the link key*

#### 4.2.2.5 Repeated Attempts

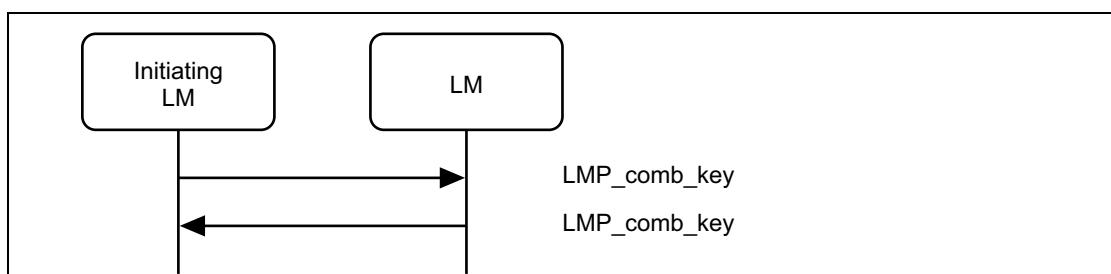
When the authentication after creation of the link key fails because of an incorrect authentication response, the same scheme as in [Section 4.2.1.3 on page 277](#) shall be used. This prevents an intruder from trying a large number of different PINs in a relatively short time.

### 4.2.3 Change Link Key

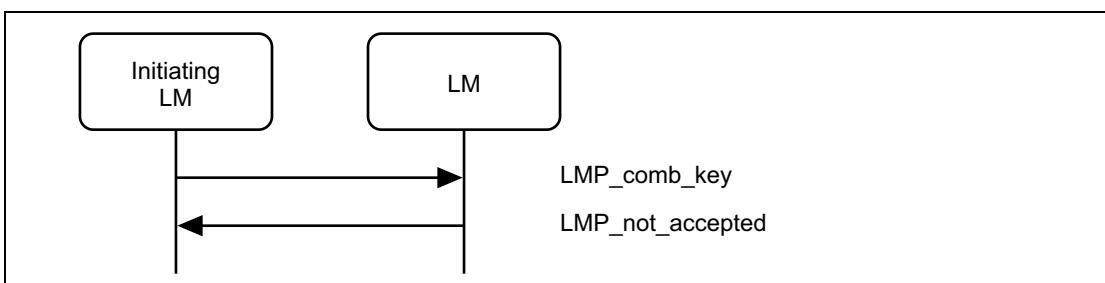
If the link key is derived from combination keys and the current link is the semi-permanent link key, the link key can be changed. If the link key is a unit key, the devices shall go through the pairing procedure in order to change the link key. The contents of the LMP\_comb\_key PDU is protected by a bitwise XOR with the current link key.

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_comb_key	random number

*Table 4.17: Change link key PDU*



*Sequence 37: Successful change of the link key*



*Sequence 38: Change of the link key not possible since the other device uses a unit key*

If the change of link key is successful the new link key shall be stored and the old link key shall be discarded. The new link key shall be used as link key for all the following connections between the two devices until the link key is changed again. The new link key also becomes the current link key. It will remain the current link key until the link key is changed again, or until a temporary link key is created, see [Section 4.2.4 on page 283](#).

When the new link key has been created, mutual or secure authentication shall be performed to confirm that the same link key has been created in both devices.

If both devices support the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and Secure Connections (Host Support) features, the device that initiated the change link key shall initiate the Secure Authentication procedure. Otherwise, the first authentication in the mutual authentication is performed with the device that initiated the change link key as verifier. When finalized an authentication in the reverse direction is performed.

After mutual or secure authentication, if encryption is enabled, the initiating device shall pause and immediately resume encryption to produce a new encryption key. Note that this will cause a new encryption key to be generated from the ACO created during the mutual authentication process, and when E0 encryption is used, the random number sent in the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU which occurs in response to the resumption of encryption.

#### 4.2.4 Change Current Link Key Type

The current link key can be a semi-permanent link key or a temporary link key. It may be changed temporarily, but the change shall only be valid for the current connection, see [\[Part H\] Section 3.1 on page 1293](#). Changing to a temporary link key is necessary if the piconet is to support encrypted broadcast. The current link key may not be changed before the connection establishment procedure has completed. This feature is only supported if broadcast encryption is supported as indicated by the LMP features mask.

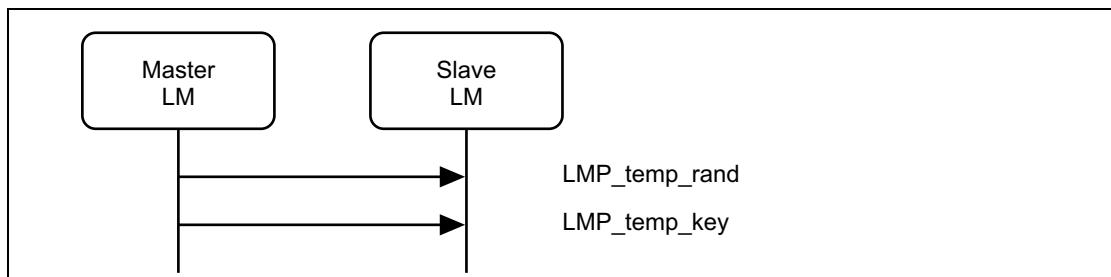
M/O	PDU	Contents
O(23)	LMP_temp_rand	random number
O(23)	LMP_temp_key	key
O(23)	LMP_use_semi_permanent_key	-

Table 4.18: Change current link key PDU

##### 4.2.4.1 Change to a Temporary Link Key

The master starts by creating the master key  $K_{\text{master}}$  as specified in [Security Specification \(EQ 4\), on page 1300](#). Then the master shall generate a random number, RAND, and shall send it to the slave in an LMP\_temp\_rand PDU. Both sides then calculate an overlay denoted OVL as  $\text{OVL} = E_{22}(\text{current link key}, \text{RAND}, 16)$ . The master shall then send  $K_{\text{master}}$  protected by a modulo-2 addition with OVL to the slave in an LMP\_temp\_key PDU. The slave calculates  $K_{\text{master}}$  based on OVL, that becomes the current link key. It shall be the current link key until the devices fall back to the semi-permanent link key, see [Semi-permanent Link Key Becomes Current Link Key on page 284](#).

Note: the terminology in this section is the same as used in [\[Part H\] Section 3.2.8 on page 1300](#).



Sequence 39: Change to a temporary link key

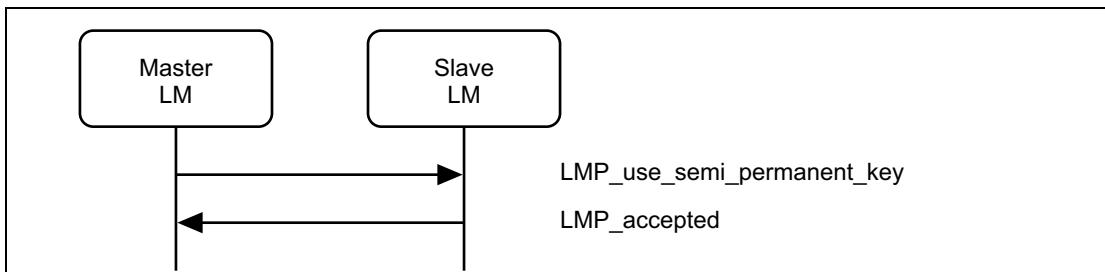
All sequences described in [Section 4.2.4.1 on page 283](#), including the mutual authentication after  $K_{\text{master}}$  has been created, shall form a single transaction. The transaction ID shall be set to 0.

When the devices have changed to the temporary key, a mutual authentication shall be made to confirm that the same link key has been created in both devices. The first authentication in the mutual authentication shall be performed with the master as verifier. When finalized an authentication in the reverse direction is performed.

Should the mutual authentication fail at either side, the LM of the verifier should start the detach procedure. This will allow the procedure to succeed even though one of the devices may be erroneous.

#### 4.2.4.2 Semi-permanent Link Key Becomes Current Link Key

After the current link key has been changed to  $K_{\text{master}}$ , this change can be undone and the semi-permanent link key becomes the current link key again. If encryption is used on the link, the procedure to go back to the semi-permanent link key shall be immediately followed by the master stopping encryption using the procedure described in [Section 4.2.5.4 on page 288](#). Encryption may be restarted by the master according to the procedures in [Encryption Mode on page 285](#) subsection 3. This is to assure that encryption with encryption parameters known by other devices in the piconet is not used when the semi-permanent link key is the current link key.



Sequence 40: Link key changed to the semi-permanent link key

## 4.2.5 Encryption

If at least one authentication has been performed encryption may be used. Two encryption mechanisms are defined: E0 encryption (legacy) and AES-CCM encryption. If both devices support the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and Secure Connections (Host Support) features, then AES-CCM shall be used when encryption is enabled. If at least one device does not support both the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and Secure Connections (Host Support) features, then E0 shall be used when encryption is enabled.

In order for the master to use the same encryption parameters for all slaves in the piconet where E0 encryption would be used it shall issue a temporary key,  $K_{\text{master}}$ . The master shall make this key the current link key for all slaves in the piconet where E0 encryption would be used before encryption is started, see [Section 4.2.4 on page 283](#). This is required if broadcast packets are to be encrypted.

Note: Packets encrypted with broadcast encryption can not be received by slaves that have AES-CCM encryption enabled. When the local Controller supports Secure Connections and there are not any slaves in the piconet that do not support Secure Connections, broadcast packets will not be encrypted and may be received by slaves that support Secure Connections.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O	LMP_encryption_mode_req	encryption mode
O	LMP_encryption_key_size_req	key size
O	LMP_start_encryption_req	random number
O	LMP_stop_encryption_req	-
O (42)	LMP_pause_encryption_req	
O (42)	LMP_resume_encryption_req	
O (136)	LMP_pause_encryption_aes_req	random number

Table 4.19: *Encryption handling PDU*

All sequences described in [Section 4.2.5](#) shall form a single transaction. The transaction ID from the LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req PDU shall be used for all start encryption and stop encryption sequences.

### 4.2.5.1 Encryption Mode

The master and the slave must agree upon whether to use encryption (encryption mode=1 in LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req) or not (encryption mode=0). If the semi-permanent key is used (Key\_Flag=0x00) encryption shall only apply to point-to-point packets. If the master link key is used (Key\_Flag=0x01) encryption shall apply to both point-to-point packets and broadcast packets. If master

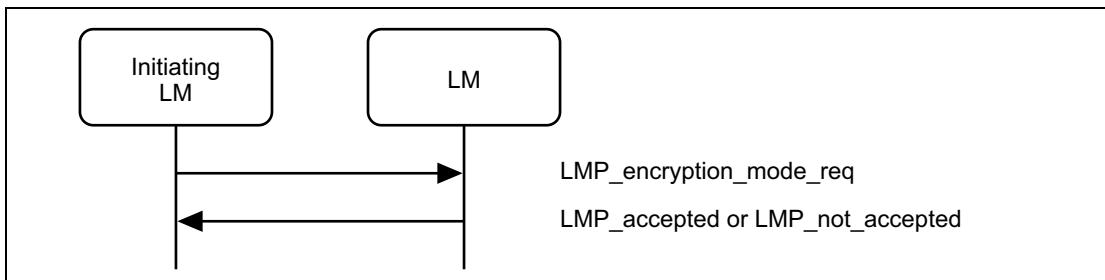
and slave agree on the encryption mode, the master continues to give more detailed information about the encryption.

Devices should never send LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req with an encryption mode value of 2 however for backwards compatibility if the LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req is received with an encryption mode value of 2 then it should be treated the same as an encryption mode value of 1.

If both devices support both the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and Secure Connections (Host Support) features, setting the encryption mode to 0 shall not be allowed. If a device receives an LMP\_encryption\_mode PDU with encryption mode set to 0, it shall respond with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with error code *Encryption Mode Not Allowed* (0x25).

The initiating LM shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). The initiating device shall then send the LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req PDU. If the responding device accepts the change in encryption mode then it shall complete the transmission of the current packet on the ACL logical transport and shall then suspend transmission on the ACL-U logical link. The responding device shall then send the LMP\_accepted PDU.

ACL-U logical link traffic shall only be resumed after the attempt to encrypt or decrypt the logical transport is completed, i.e. at the end of [Sequence 39](#) (on failure), [40](#), [41](#) or [42](#).

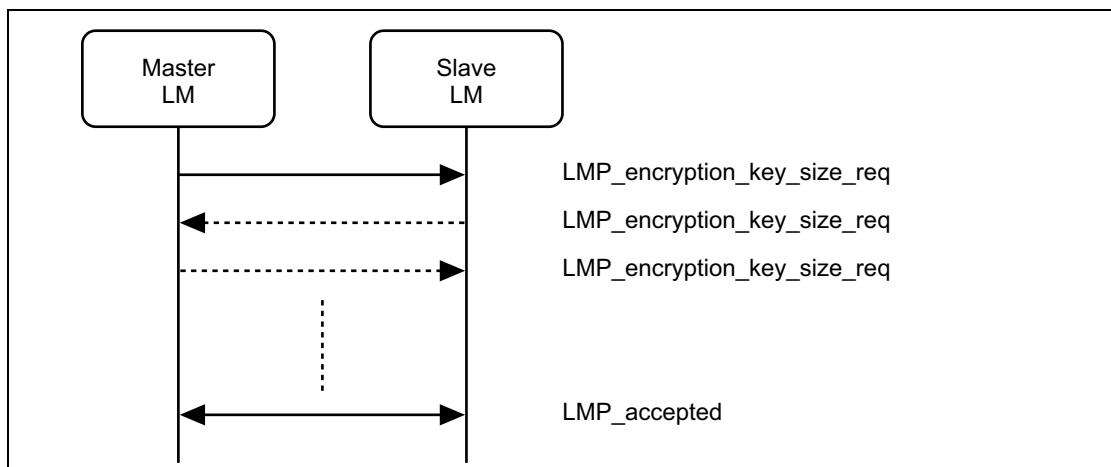


*Sequence 41: Negotiation for encryption mode*

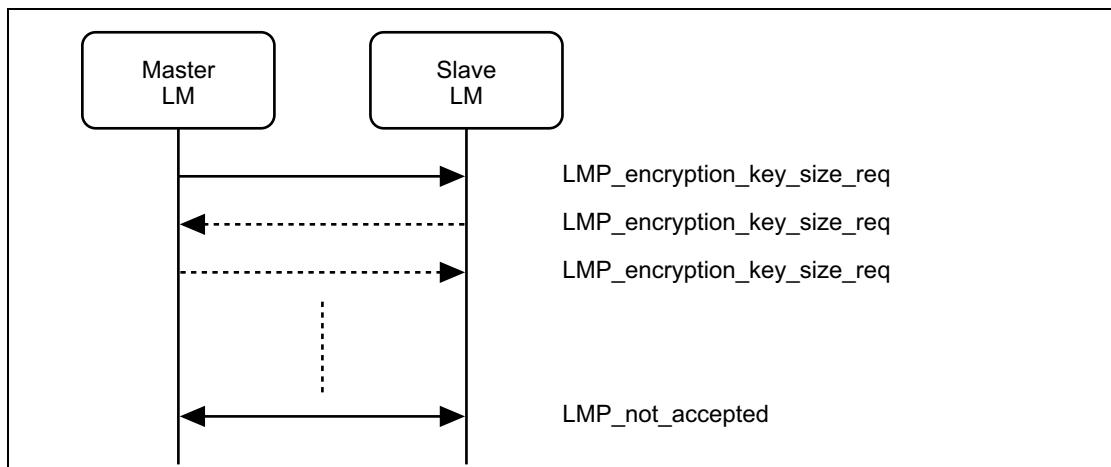
After a device has sent an LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req PDU it shall not send an LMP\_au\_rand PDU before encryption is started. After a device has received an LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req PDU and sent an LMP\_accepted PDU it shall not send an LMP\_au\_rand PDU before encryption is started. If an LMP\_au\_rand PDU is sent violating these rules, the claimant shall respond with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with the error code *LMP PDU Not Allowed* (0x24). This assures that devices will not have different ACOs when they calculate the encryption key. If the encryption mode is not accepted or the encryption key size negotiation results in disagreement the devices may send an LMP\_au\_rand PDU again.

#### 4.2.5.2 Encryption Key Size

Note: this section uses the same terms as in [\[Part H\] Section 4.1 on page 1303](#). The master sends an LMP\_encryption\_key\_size\_req PDU including the suggested key size  $L_{sug}, m$ , that is initially equal to  $L_{max}, m$ . If  $L_{min}, s \leq L_{sug}, m$  and the slave supports  $L_{sug}, m$  it shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU and  $L_{sug}, m$  shall be used as the key size. If both conditions are not fulfilled the slave sends back an LMP\_encryption\_key\_size\_req PDU including the slave's suggested key size  $L_{sug}, s$ . This value shall be the slave's largest supported key size that is less than  $L_{sug}, m$ . Then the master performs the corresponding test on the slave's suggestion. This procedure is repeated until a key size agreement is reached or it becomes clear that no such agreement can be reached. If an agreement is reached a device sends an LMP\_accepted PDU and the key size in the last LMP\_encryption\_key\_size\_req PDU shall be used. After this, encryption is started; see [Section 4.2.5.3 on page 288](#). If an agreement is not reached a device sends an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with the error code *Unsupported LMP Parameter Value (0x20)* and the devices shall not communicate using encryption.



Sequence 42: Encryption key size negotiation successful



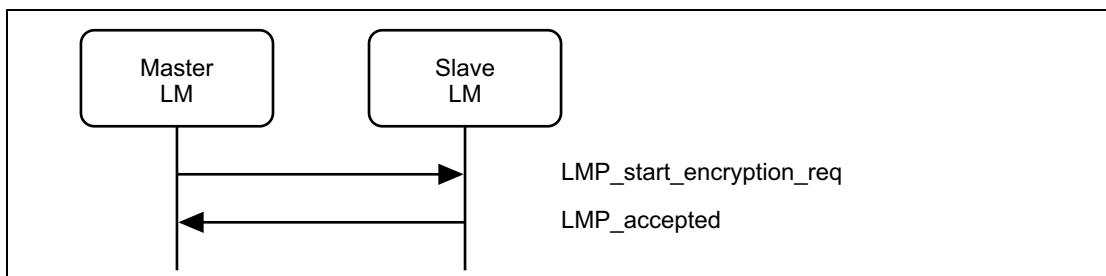
Sequence 43: Encryption key size negotiation failed

#### 4.2.5.3 Start Encryption

To start encryption, the master issues the random number EN\_RAND and calculates the encryption key. See [\[Part H\] Section 3.2.5 on page 1298](#). The random number shall be the same for all slaves in the piconet when broadcast encryption is used. The master then sends an LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU, that includes EN\_RAND.

The slave shall calculate the encryption key when this message is received and shall acknowledge with an LMP\_accepted PDU. For E0, the encryption key shall be calculated using the E3 algorithm (see [\[Part H\] Section 6.4 on page 1322](#)). For AES-CCM, the encryption key shall be calculated using the h3 algorithm (see [\[Part H\] Section 7.7.6 on page 1340](#)). Note: for AES-CCM, the EN\_RAND is not used when creating the encryption key.

If encryption has been paused, then this sequence shall not be used.



*Sequence 44: Start of encryption*

Starting encryption shall be performed in three steps:

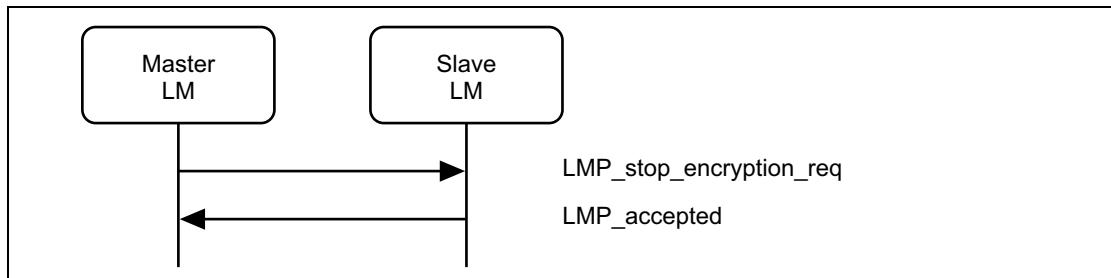
1. Master is configured to transmit unencrypted packets and to receive encrypted packets.
2. Slave is configured to transmit and receive encrypted packets.
3. Master is configured to transmit and receive encrypted packets.

Between step 1 and step 2, master-to-slave transmission is possible. This is when an LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU is transmitted. Step 2 is triggered when the slave receives this message. Between step 2 and step 3, slave-to-master transmission is possible. This is when an LMP\_accepted PDU is transmitted. Step 3 is triggered when the master receives this message.

#### 4.2.5.4 Stop Encryption

To stop encryption a device shall send an LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req PDU with the parameter encryption mode equal to 0 (no encryption). The other device responds with an LMP\_accepted PDU or an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU (the procedure is described in [Sequence 41 in Encryption Mode on page 285](#)). If accepted, encryption shall be stopped by the master sending an LMP\_stop\_encryption\_req PDU and the slave shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU according to [Sequence 45](#).

If encryption has been paused, then this sequence shall not be used.



*Sequence 45: Stop of encryption*

Stopping encryption shall be performed in three steps, similar to the procedure for starting encryption.

1. Master is configured to transmit encrypted packets and to receive unencrypted packets.
2. Slave is configured to transmit and receive unencrypted packets.
3. Master is configured to transmit and receive unencrypted packets.

Between step 1 and step 2 master to slave transmission is possible. This is when an LMP\_stop\_encryption\_req PDU is transmitted. Step 2 is triggered when the slave receives this message. Between step 2 and step 3 slave to master transmission is possible. This is when an LMP\_accepted PDU is transmitted. Step 3 is triggered when the master receives this message.

#### 4.2.5.5 Pause Encryption

For E0 encryption:

- To pause encryption without disabling encryption, a device shall finalize the transmission of the current ACL-U data packet and then send an LMP\_pause\_encryption\_req PDU (with the transaction ID set to the role of the device at the time the LMP\_pause\_encryption\_req PDU is sent).

For AES-CCM encryption:

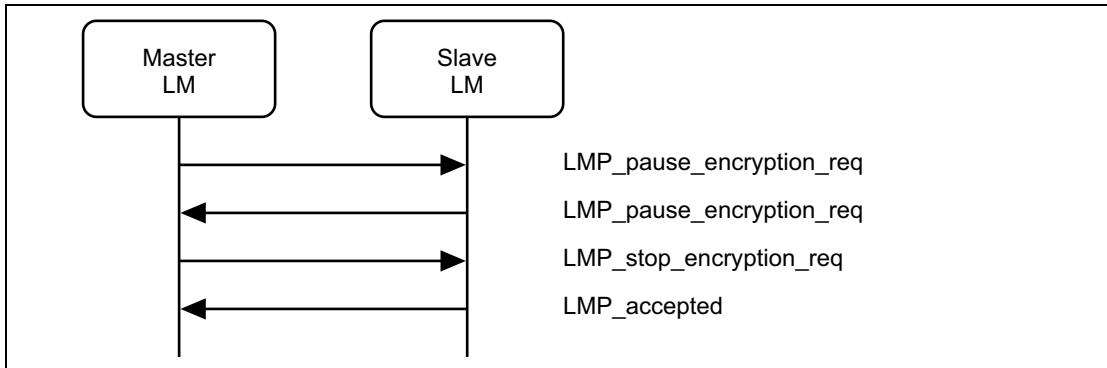
- To pause encryption without disabling encryption, a device shall finalize the transmission of the current ACL-U data packet and then send an LMP\_pause\_encryption\_aes\_req PDU (with the transaction ID set to the role of the device at the time the LMP\_pause\_encryption\_aes\_req PDU is sent). The LMP\_pause\_encryption\_aes\_req PDU includes a random number EN\_RAND.

If the responding device is a master, then the master device shall finalize the transmission of the current ACL-U data packet and then respond with an LMP\_stop\_encryption\_req PDU to the slave.

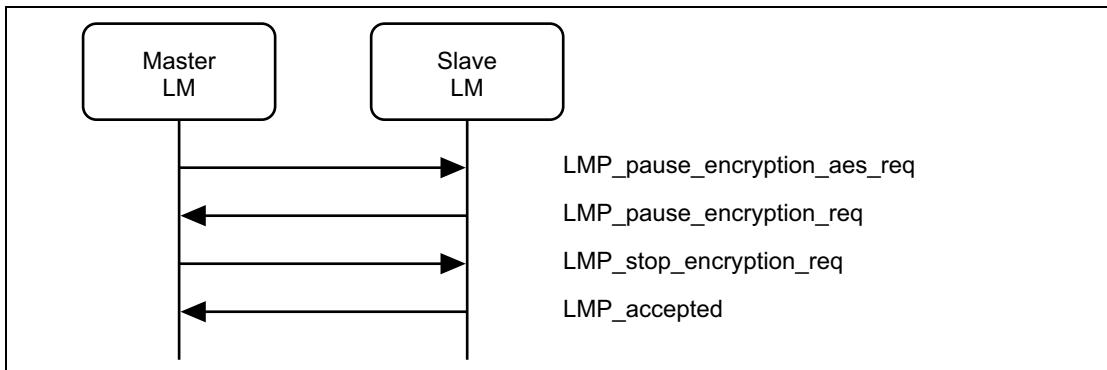
If the responding device is a slave, then the slave device shall finalize the transmission of the current ACL-U data packet and then respond with an

LMP\_pause\_encryption\_req PDU. The master device shall respond to the LMP\_pause\_encryption\_req PDU with an LMP\_stop\_encryption\_req PDU to the slave.

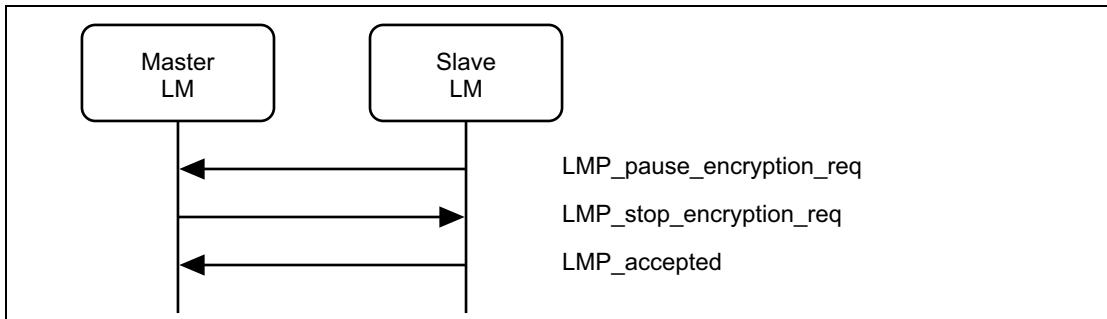
When the slave receives the LMP\_stop\_encryption\_req PDU it shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.



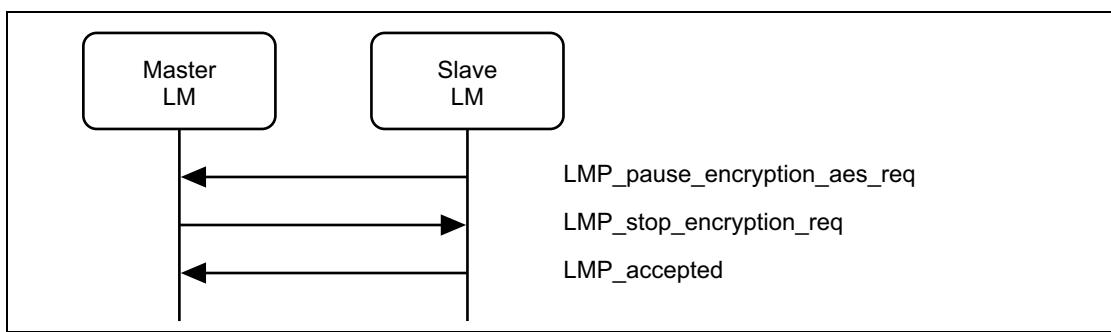
*Sequence 46: Master-initiated pausing of encryption (E0)*



*Sequence 47: Master-initiated pausing of encryption (AES-CCM)*



*Sequence 48: Slave-initiated pausing of encryption (E0)*



*Sequence 49: Slave-initiated pausing of encryption (AES-CCM)*

For E0 encryption:

- The LMP\_pause\_encryption\_req PDU and LMP\_stop\_encryption\_req PDU shall only be rejected when a transaction collision needs to be resolved.

For AES-CCM encryption:

- The LMP\_pause\_encryption\_aes\_req PDU and LMP\_stop\_encryption\_req PDU shall only be rejected when a transaction collision needs to be resolved.

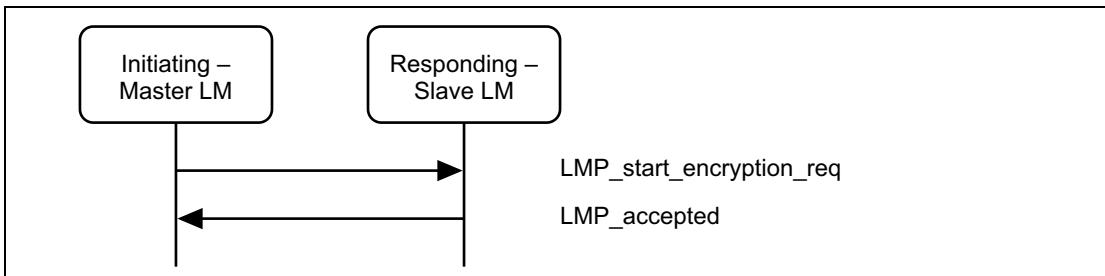
Pausing encryption shall be performed in three steps, similar to the procedure for stopping encryption.

1. Master is configured to transmit encrypted packets and to receive unencrypted packets.
2. Slave is configured to transmit and receive unencrypted packets.
3. Master is configured to transmit and receive unencrypted packets.

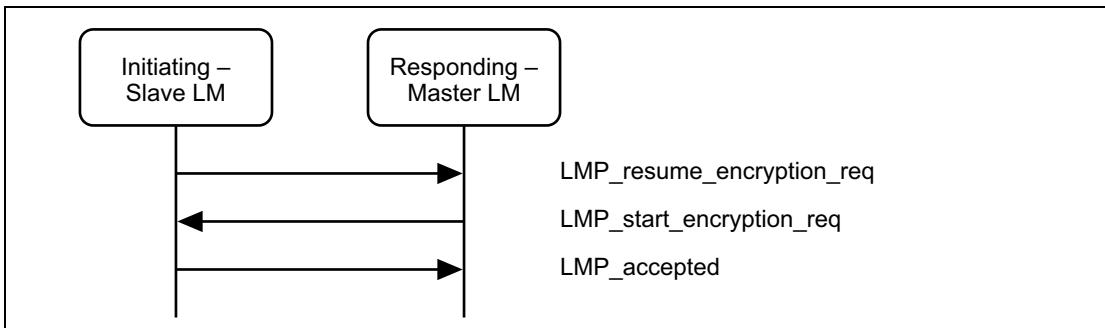
Between step 1 and step 2 master-to-slave transmission is possible. This is when the LMP\_stop\_encryption\_req PDU is transmitted from the master to the slave. Step 2 is triggered when the slave receives this message. Between step 2 and step 3 slave-to-master transmission is possible. This is when an LMP\_accepted PDU is transmitted. Step 3 is triggered when the master receives this message.

Note: A device can only restart ACL-U data traffic by resuming encryption using the procedures in [Section 4.2.5.6](#).

#### 4.2.5.6 Resume Encryption



Sequence 50: Initiating Master LM resumes encryption



Sequence 51: Initiating Slave LM resumes encryption

For E0 encryption:

- If the responding device is a slave, then the slave shall calculate the encryption key and respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.
- If the responding device is a master, then the master shall respond with an LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU. The slave, upon receiving the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU from the master, shall calculate the encryption key and respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.

For AES-CCM encryption:

If the resume encryption was the result of a Change Connection Link Key procedure, the LMs shall calculate a new encryption key using the h3 algorithm (see [\[Part H\] Section 7.7.6 on page 1340](#)).

Note: When AES-CCM is used, the EN\_RAND value in the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU is not used.

- If the responding device is a slave, then the slave shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.
- If the responding device is a master, then the master shall respond with an LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU. The slave, upon receiving the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU from the master, shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.

The LMP\_resume\_encryption\_req PDU and the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU shall not be rejected.

Resuming encryption shall be performed in three steps, similar to the procedure for starting encryption:

1. Master is configured to transmit unencrypted packets and to receive encrypted packets.
2. Slave is configured to transmit and receive encrypted packets.
3. Master is configured to transmit and receive encrypted packets.

Between step 1 and step 2, master-to-slave transmission is possible. This is when the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU is transmitted from the master. Step 2 is triggered when the slave receives this message. Between step 2 and step 3, slave-to-master transmission is possible. This is when an LMP\_accepted PDU is transmitted. Step 3 is triggered when the master receives this message.

Note: For a slave initiated starting of encryption, step 1 is not started when the master has received the LMP\_resume\_encryption\_req PDU from the slave, but when the master sends the LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDU.

#### 4.2.5.7 Change Encryption Mode, Key or Random Number

If the encryption key or encryption random number need to be changed or if the current link key needs to be changed according to the procedures in [Section 4.2.4 on page 283](#), encryption shall be paused and resumed after completion, using the procedures in [Section 4.2.5 on page 285](#), [Section 4.2.5.1](#) and [Section 4.2.5.2](#), and [Section 4.2.3 on page 281](#) for the new parameters to be valid. If the Pause Encryption feature is not supported by both devices, encryption shall be stopped and re-started after completion, using the procedures in [Section 4.2.5 on page 285](#), subsections 3-4 for the new parameters to be valid.

#### 4.2.5.8 Encryption Key Refresh

When E0 encryption is used, the Link Manager shall refresh the encryption key within  $2^{28}$  ticks of the Bluetooth clock from the previous start or resume of encryption. When AES-CCM encryption is used, the Link Manager shall refresh the encryption key before the PayloadCounter or dayCounter roll over (at least  $2^{36}$  ticks of the Bluetooth clock from the previous start of encryption). To refresh the encryption key, the Link Manager shall Pause encryption using the procedure in [Section 4.2.5.5 on page 289](#) and immediately Resume encryption using the procedure in [Section 4.2.5.6 on page 292](#).

If the encryption key has not been refreshed before the rollover event, the link shall be terminated immediately.

#### 4.2.6 Request Supported Encryption Key Size

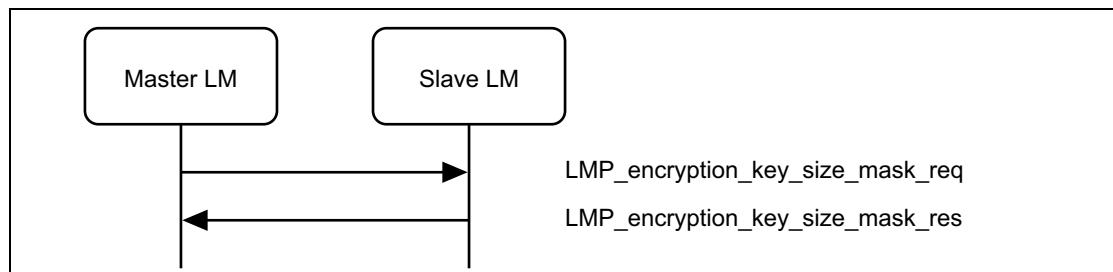
When broadcast encryption is supported via the LMP features mask, it is possible for the master to request a slave's supported encryption key sizes.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(23)	LMP_encryption_key_size_mask_req	
O(23)	LMP_encryption_key_size_mask_res	key size mask

Table 4.20: Encryption key size request PDU

The master shall send an LMP\_encryption\_key\_size\_mask\_req PDU to the slave to obtain the slaves supported encryption key sizes.

The slave shall return a bit mask indicating all broadcast encryption key sizes supported. The least significant bit shall indicate support for a key size of 1, the next most significant bit shall indicate support for a key size of 2 and so on up to a key size of 16. In all cases a bit set to 1 shall indicate support for a key size; a bit set to 0 shall indicate that the key size is not supported.



Sequence 52: Request for supported encryption key sizes

#### 4.2.7 Secure Simple Pairing

There are four stages defined in the Secure Simple Pairing LM process:

- IO capabilities exchange
- Public key exchange
- Authentication stage 1
- Authentication stage 2

The devices shall first exchange the IO capabilities to determine the proper algorithm to be used. Three algorithms have been specified: Numeric comparison, Passkey entry, Out of band.

In following sections, the device requesting the IO capabilities is referred to as the "Initiating LM" or "Initiator". The other device is referred to as the "LM" or "Responder". This designation remains throughout the entire Secure Simple Pairing procedure.

Note that the host shall enable Secure Simple Pairing before the LMP Secure Simple Pairing procedures start.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(51)	LMP_io_capability_req	IO_capabilities, OOB_Authentication_Data, Authentication_Requirements
O(51)	LMP_io_capability_res	IO_capabilities, OOB_Authentication_Data, Authentication_Requirements
O(51)	LMP_Simple_Pairing_Confirm	Commitment Value
O(51)	LMP_Simple_Pairing_Number	Nonce Value
O(51)	LMP_Dhkey_check	Confirmation value
O(51)	LMP_Numeric_Comparison_Failed	-
O(51)	LMP_OOB_Failed	-
O(51)	LMP_keypress_notification	Notification Type
O(51)	LMP_Passkey_Entry_Failed	-

#### 4.2.7.1 IO Capability Exchange

The Link Managers shall use the local and remote IO capabilities to determine which authentication method shall be used.

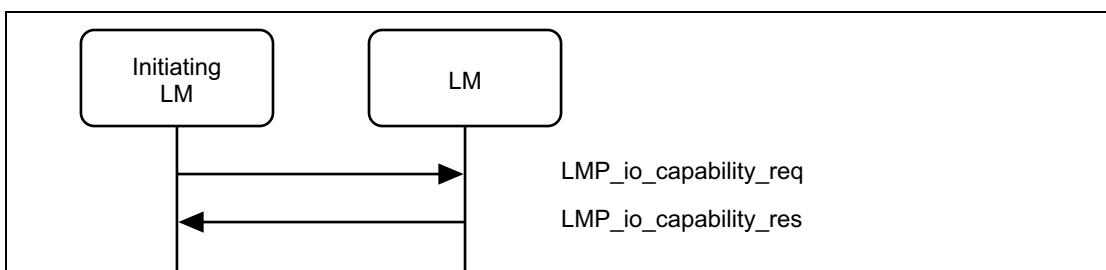
If Simple\_Pairing\_Mode is set to enabled, the Initiator shall request the IO capabilities from the Host. The initiator shall send an LMP\_io\_capability\_req PDU to the Responder. If Simple\_Pairing\_Mode is set to enabled on the responding device, it shall reply with an LMP\_io\_capability\_res PDU containing its IO capabilities description.

The OOB\_Authentication\_Data parameter shall be set as shown in [Table 4.21](#).

		Local Device	
		Does not support Secure Connections	Supports Secure Connections
Remote Device	Does not have OOB Data	No OOB Data Received	No OOB Data Received
	Does not support Secure Connections. P-192 OOB Data Available	OOB Data Received	OOB Data Received
	Only P-192 OOB Data Available	OOB Data Received	No OOB Data Received
	P-192 OOB Data and P-256 OOB Data Available	OOB Data Received <sup>1</sup>	OOB Data Received
	Only P-256 OOB Data Available	No OOB Data Received <sup>1</sup>	OOB Data Received

*Table 4.21: Setting the OOB\_Authentication\_Data parameter*

1. A device that does not support Secure Connections cannot generate P-256 OOB data.

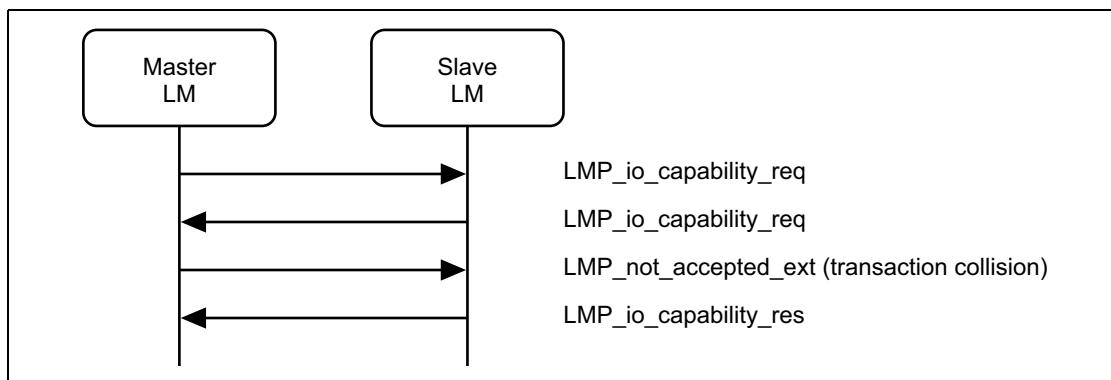


*Sequence 53: IO Capability Exchange*

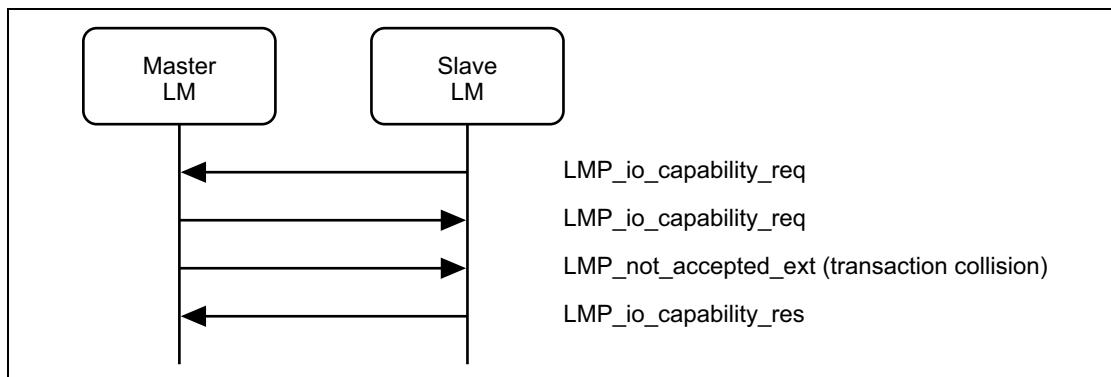
#### 4.2.7.1.1 IO Capability Exchange Transaction Collision and Resolution

If both Link Managers attempt to become the initiator of the IO capability exchange, the master Link Manager shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU with error code *LMP Error Transaction Collision* (0x23). The slave Link Manager shall respond with the LMP\_io\_capability\_res PDU.

The master LM shall remain the initiating LM for the remainder of the Secure Simple Pairing sequences.



Sequence 54: IO Capability exchange with transaction Collision (master transmitting LMP<sub>io</sub>\_capability<sub>req</sub> first) and resolution



Sequence 55: IO Capability exchange with transaction Collision (slave transmitting LMP<sub>io</sub>\_capability<sub>req</sub> first) and resolution

#### 4.2.7.2 Public Key Exchange

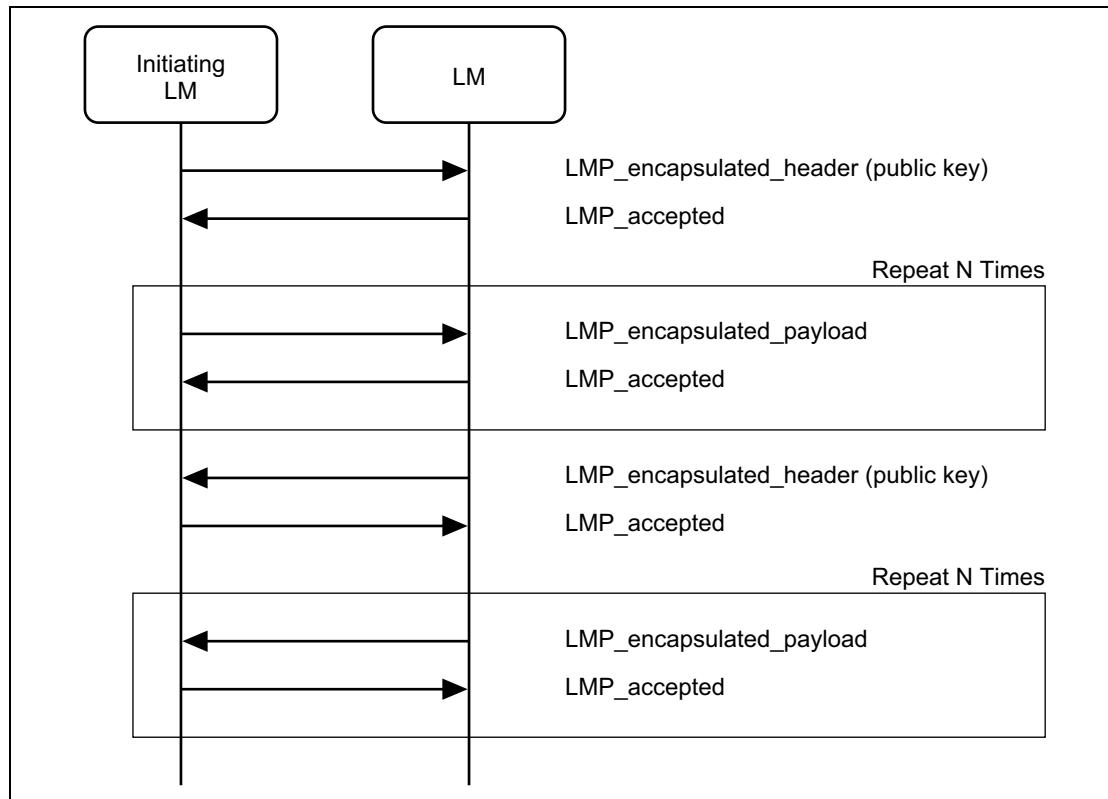
Once the IO capabilities are exchanged, public keys shall be exchanged between the two devices.

Since the public key size is longer than the payload body length of a DM1 packet, the exchange shall be done using the LMP LMP\_encapsulated\_header and LMP\_encapsulated\_payload PDUs as defined in [Section 4.1.12](#).

When at least one device does not support Secure Connections, the P-192 curve shall be used for calculating the public and private keys. When both

devices support Secure Connections, the P-256 curve shall be used for calculating the public and private keys.

The Initiator shall first send its public key, and the Responder shall reply with its public key.



*Sequence 56: Public key exchange*

A public key shall be considered as received when the last LMP\_encapsulated\_payload has been received and the associated LMP\_accepted PDU has been sent.

The device can then start computing its Diffie Hellman Key.

#### 4.2.7.3 Authentication Stage 1

One of the following procedures shall be used in Authentication Stage 1:

- If one or both devices have the OOB Authentication Data parameter set to Received, the Out-of-Band procedure shall be used.
- If both devices have the Authentication\_Requirements parameter set to one of the man-in-the middle (MITM) Protection Not Required options, the Numeric Comparison procedure shall be used.
- If one or both devices have the Authentication\_Requirements parameter set to one of the MITM Protection Required options, the Passkey Entry procedure shall be used if the either the local or remote IO Capability is set to KeyboardOnly and the other IO capability is not set to NoInputNoOutput. Otherwise, the Numeric Comparison authentication procedure shall be used.

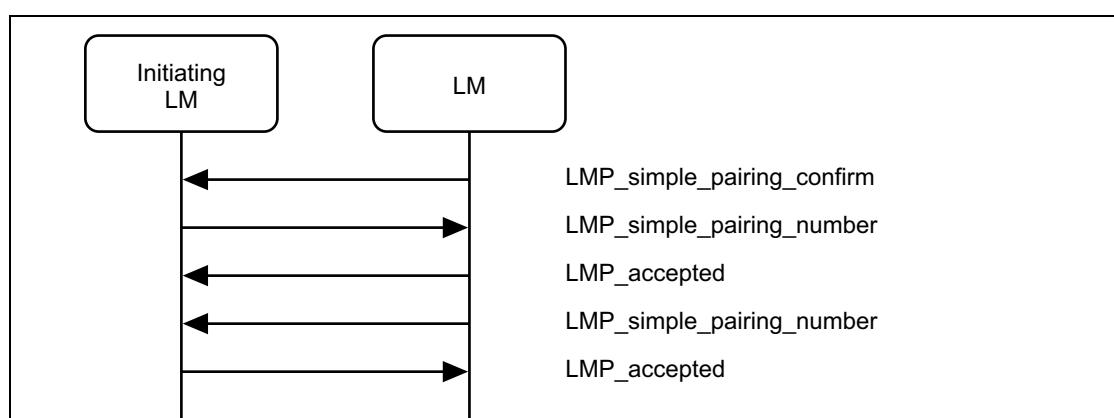
##### 4.2.7.3.1 Authentication Stage 1: Numeric Comparison

Once public keys have been exchanged, both devices shall generate a random number.

The Responder shall compute its commitment as defined in [Section 7.7.1 on page 1334](#), and shall send this value to the Initiator by using LMP\_simple\_pairing\_confirm PDU.

The Initiator shall then send an LMP\_simple\_pairing\_number PDU with its generated random number. The Responder shall acknowledge by sending an LMP\_accepted PDU.

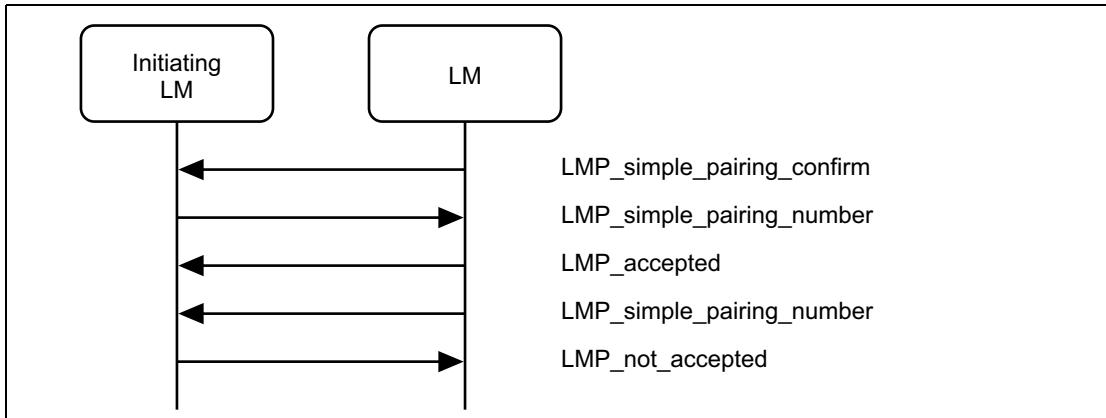
The Responder shall then send an LMP\_simple\_pairing\_number containing its own generated random number. Upon reception, the Initiator shall calculate the commitment as defined in [Section 7.7.1 on page 1334](#) and compare it to the one received previously with the LMP\_simple\_pairing\_confirm PDU. If both values are equal, the Initiator shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.



Sequence 57: Numeric Comparison Authentication: Commitment check success

#### 4.2.7.3.1.1 Commitment Check Failure

If the calculated commitment by the Initiator is not equal to the received commitment, the Initiator shall abort the Secure Simple Pairing process by sending an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with reason "Authentication Failure."

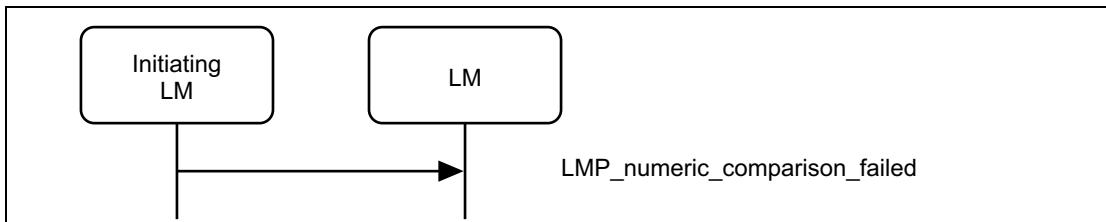


Sequence 58: Numeric Comparison Authentication: Commitment check failure

#### 4.2.7.3.1.2 Numeric Comparison Failure on Initiator Side

If the user on the initiating side indicates that the confirm values do not match (as indicated by the HCI\_User\_Confirmation\_Negative\_Reply command) the initiating LM shall send an LMP\_numeric\_comparison\_failure PDU.

Secure Simple Pairing process shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.

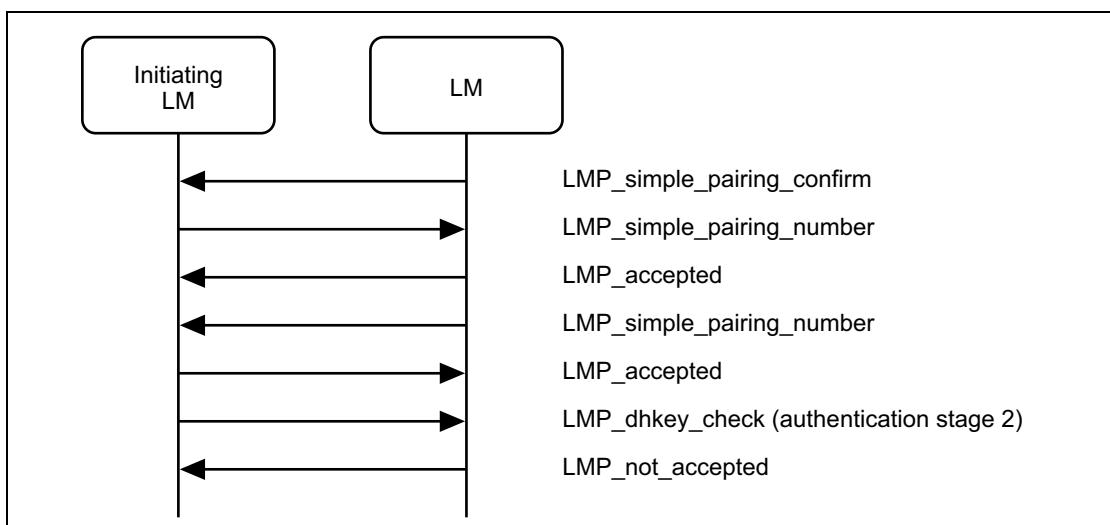


Sequence 59: Authentication stage 1 Numeric Comparison Failure on Initiator Side

#### 4.2.7.3.1.3 Numeric Comparison failure on Responder Side

If the user on the responding side indicates that the confirm values do not match (as indicated by the HCI\_User\_Confirmation\_Negative\_Reply command) the responding LM shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU in response to the LMP\_dhkey\_check PDU.

Simple Pairing process shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.



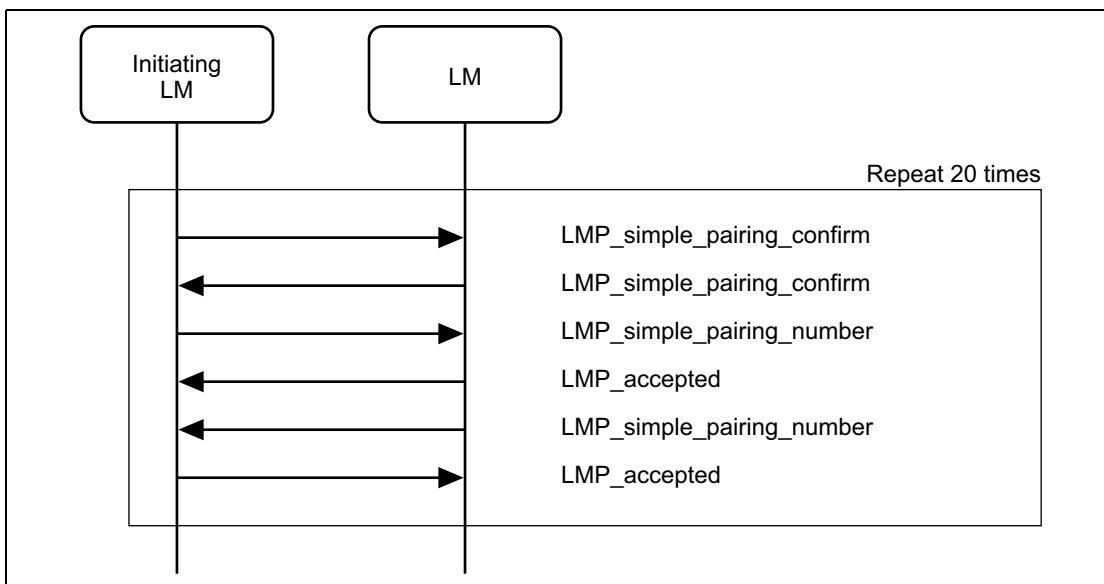
Sequence 60: Authentication stage 1: Numeric Comparison Failure on Responder Side

#### 4.2.7.3.2 Authentication Stage 1: Passkey Entry Authentication

The initiating LM shall start the following procedure after receiving the Passkey Reply from the host. This procedure shall be repeated 20 times:

1. The Initiator and the Responder shall generate a new random number.
2. The Initiator and the Responder shall calculate the local commitment value using the exchanged public keys, the local random number, and the passkey from the local Host, according to [Section 7.7.1 on page 1334](#).
3. The Initiator shall send an LMP\_simple\_pairing\_confirm PDU with the commitment it calculated in step 2.
4. The Responder shall respond with an LMP\_simple\_pairing\_confirm PDU with the commitment it calculated in step 2.
5. The Initiator shall then send an LMP\_simple\_pairing\_number PDU with the random number it generated in step 1.

6. The Responder shall then calculate commitment from the exchanged public keys, the random number it received and the passkey from the local Host, according to [Section 7.7.1 on page 1334](#). If the calculated commitment and the received commitment are equal, the Responder shall reply with an LMP\_accepted PDU.
7. The Responder shall then send an LMP\_simple\_pairing\_number PDU with the random value it generated in step 1.
8. The Initiator shall calculate the commitment using exchanged public keys, the received the random number it received and the passkey from the local Host, according to [Section 7.7.1 on page 1334](#). If the calculated commitment is equal to the received commitment, the Initiator shall reply with an LMP\_accepted PDU.



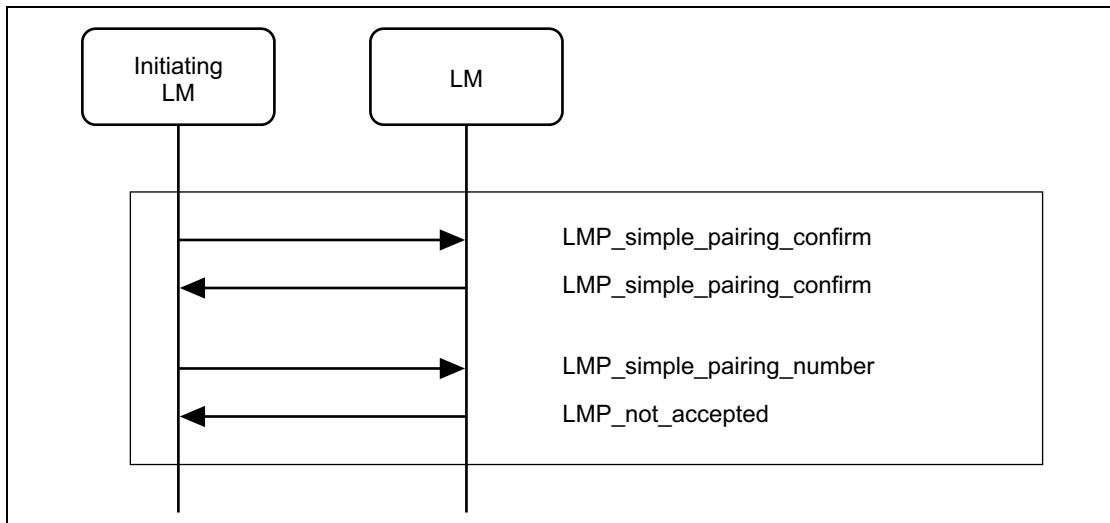
*Sequence 61: Authentication Passkey entry*

When this procedure has successfully passed 20 times, the Secure Simple Pairing process continues with the Authentication step 2 as described in [Authentication stage 2: DHKey Check on page 307](#).

#### 4.2.7.3.2.1 Commitment Check Failure on the Responder side

If during one of the 20 repetitions, the commitment calculated by the Responder is not equal to the one received from the Initiator (step 6), the Responder shall abort the Secure Simple Pairing process by sending an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with reason "Authentication Failure."

Secure Simple Pairing procedures shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.

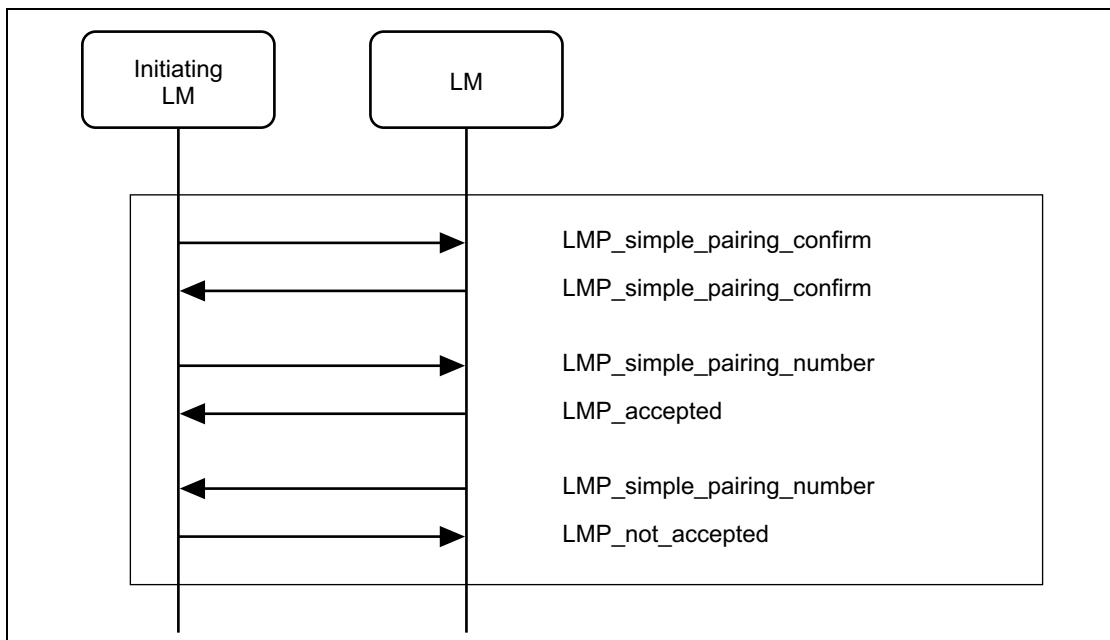


*Sequence 62: Authentication Passkey Entry: Commitment check failure on the Responder side*

#### 4.2.7.3.2.2 Commitment check failure on the Initiator side

If during one of the 20 repetitions, the commitment calculated by the Initiator is not equal to the one received from the Responder (step 8), the Initiator shall abort the Secure Simple Pairing process by sending an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with reason "Authentication Failure".

Secure Simple Pairing procedures shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.

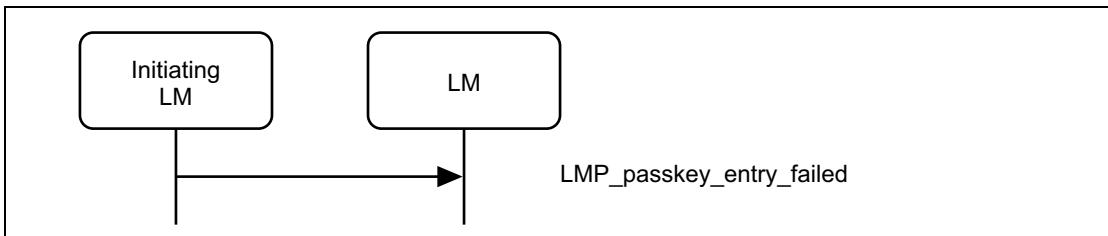


*Sequence 63: Authentication Passkey Entry: Commitment check failure on the Initiator side*

#### 4.2.7.3.2.3 Passkey Entry Failure on Initiator Side

If the initiating side indicates that the passkey was not entered or canceled (as indicated by the HCI\_Passkey\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command) the initiating LM shall send an LMP\_passkey\_entry\_failed PDU.

Secure Simple Pairing process shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.

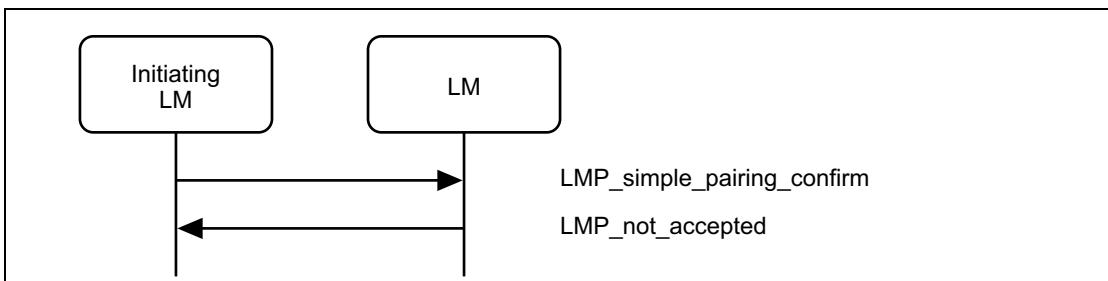


Sequence 64: Authentication stage 1 Passkey Entry Failure on Initiator Side

#### 4.2.7.3.3 Passkey Entry Failure on Responding side

If the responding side indicates that the passkey was not entered or canceled (as indicated by the HCI\_Passkey\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command), the responding LM shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU in response to the LMP\_simple\_pairing\_config PDU.

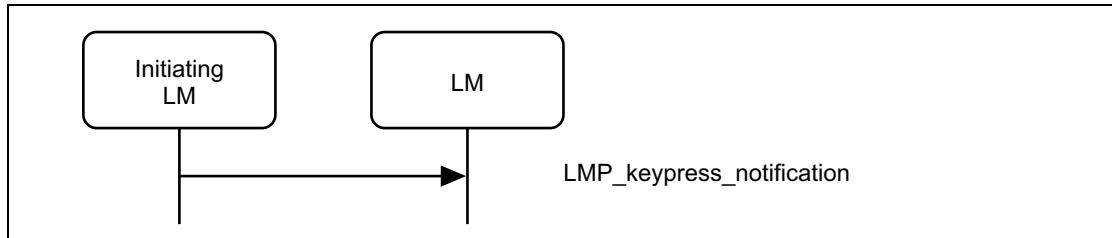
Simple Pairing process shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.



Sequence 65: Authentication Stage 1 Passkey Entry Failure on Responding Side

#### 4.2.7.3.4 Keypress Notifications

A Controller that allows the Host to change its IO capabilities shall send notifications on key presses to the remote side using the LMP\_keypress\_notification PDU when the Host sets the IO capabilities to KeyboardOnly IO and when Secure Simple Pairing is supported on the Host and Controller.



Sequence 66: Keypress Notifications

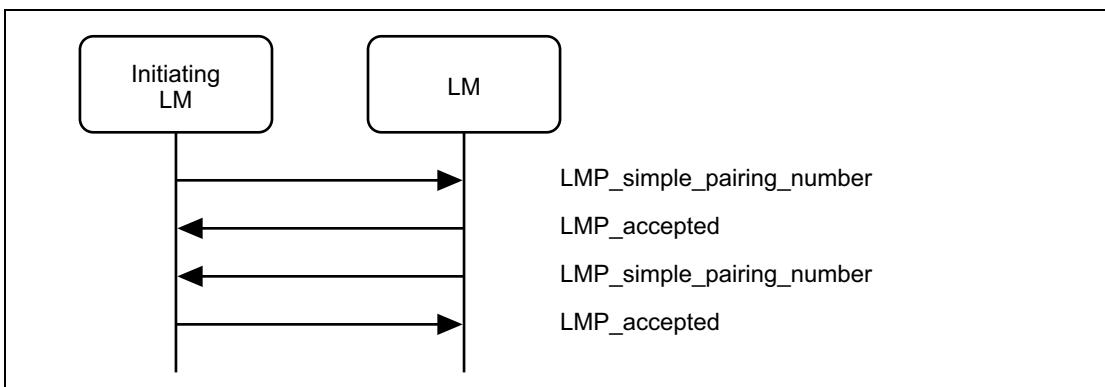
#### 4.2.7.3.5 Authentication Stage 1: OOB

Upon reception of the OOB information (as defined in “[Authentication Stage 1: Out of Band Protocol](#)” on page 1327 in Vol. 2) from the host, the devices shall compare the received commitment from its host, with the one calculated using the secret number received from the Host and the public key received from the remote device. If the local Host has not set the OOB Authentication Data Present, the LM shall set the remote secret number to zero and base the subsequent calculations on this value.

If the commitment check on the initiator is valid, the Initiator shall then generate a random number (nonce) and send it to the Responder using an LMP\_simple\_pairing\_number PDU. If the commitment succeeds, the Responder shall acknowledge by sending an LMP\_accepted PDU otherwise it shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU. The Responder shall then generate a random number (nonce) and send it to the Initiator using an LMP\_simple\_pairing\_number PDU. If the commitment succeeds, the Initiator shall acknowledge by sending an LMP\_accepted PDU otherwise it shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU.

If the commitment values don't match in the Initiator, the procedure in [Section 4.2.7.3.5.2, “Commitment Check Failure on the Initiator Side,”](#) on page 306 shall apply.

If the commitment values don't match in the Responder, the procedure in [Section 4.2.7.3.5.1, “Commitment Check Failure on the Responder Side,”](#) on page 306 shall apply.



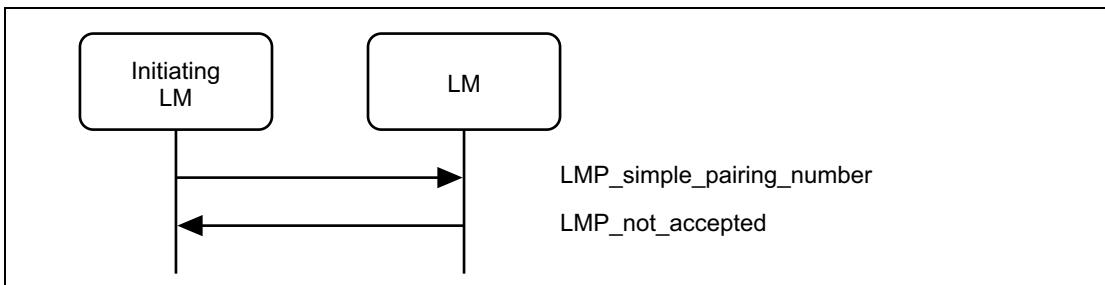
*Sequence 67: Authentication OOB: Only one device is OOB-r capable*

When these operations have been passed successfully, Secure Simple Pairing procedures continue with Authentication step 2 as described in [Authentication stage 2: DHKey Check on page 307](#).

#### 4.2.7.3.5.1 Commitment Check Failure on the Responder Side

If the commitment received OOB from the host is not equal to the calculated commitment, the Responder shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with reason "Authentication Failure" in response to LMP\_simple\_pairing\_number PDU.

Secure Simple Pairing process shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.

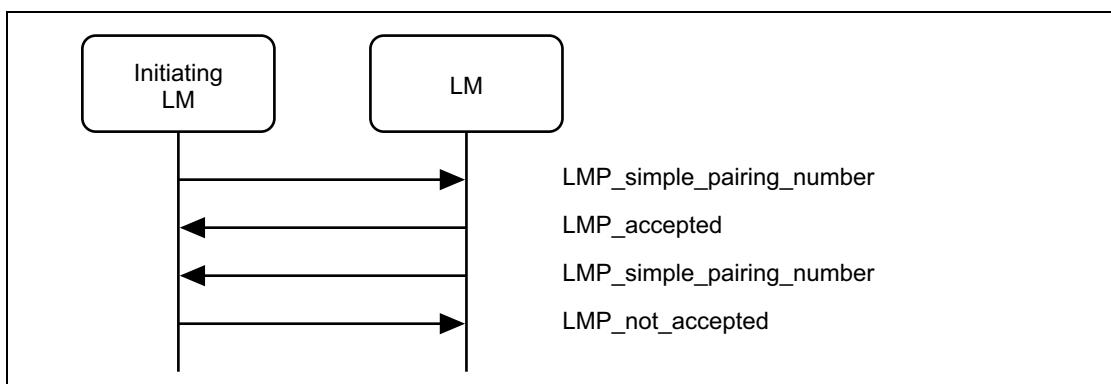


*Sequence 68: Authentication stage 1 OOB: Commitment check failure on the Responder side*

#### 4.2.7.3.5.2 Commitment Check Failure on the Initiator Side

If the commitment received OOB from the host is not equal to the calculated commitment, the Initiator shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with reason "Authentication Failure" in response to LMP\_simple\_pairing\_number PDU.

Secure Simple Pairing process shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.

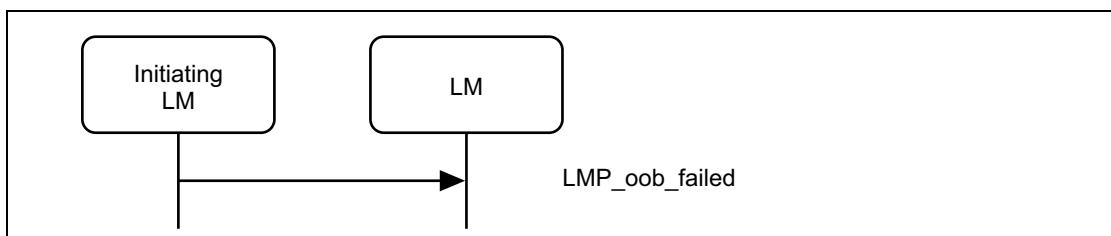


Sequence 69: Authentication stage 1 OOB: Commitment check failure on the Initiator side

#### 4.2.7.3.6 Out-of-Band Information not Available on the Initiator Side

If the Host on the initiating side does not have out-of-band information the Initiator shall send an LMP\_oob\_failed PDU.

Simple Pairing process shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.



Sequence 70: Authentication stage 1 OOB: OOB information not available on the Initiator side

#### 4.2.7.4 Authentication stage 2: DHKey Check

At this stage, both devices compute new confirmation values based on Diffie-Hellman key and previously exchanged information according to [Section 7.7.4, “The Simple Pairing Check Function f3,” on page 1337](#).

The Initiator shall send an LMP\_DHKey\_check PDU to the Responder including the confirmation value it has computed. Upon reception, the Responder shall reply with an LMP\_accepted PDU if the received value is equal to the one it has calculated according to [Section 7.7.4 on page 1337](#). If it fails, refer to [Section 4.2.7.3.5.1 on page 306](#).

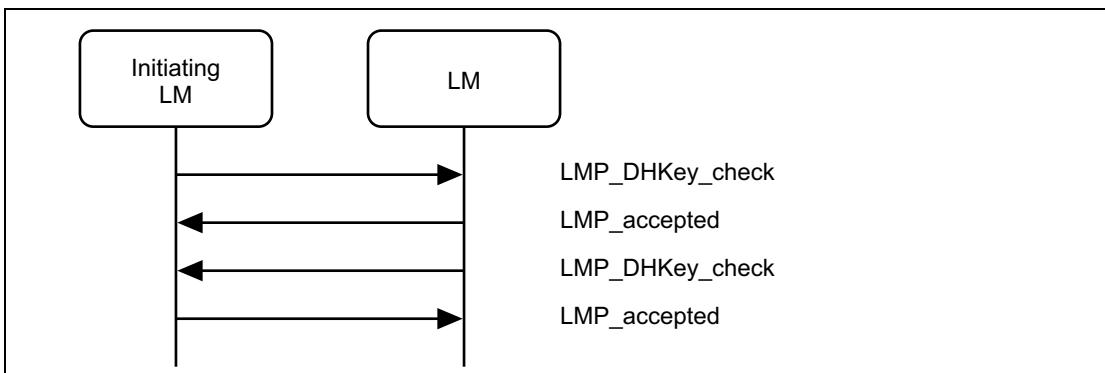
The Responder shall then send an LMP\_DHKey\_check PDU to the Initiator including its confirmation value it has computed. Upon reception, the Initiator shall reply with an LMP\_accepted PDU if the received value is equal to the one it has calculated according to [Section 7.7.4 on page 1337](#). If it fails, refer to [Section 4.2.7.4.1.1, “Check Failure on the Initiator Side,” on page 309](#).

At this point, both devices shall compute the link key according to [Section 7.7.3, “The Simple Pairing Key Derivation Function f2,” on page 1336](#).

If at least one device does not support both the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and the Secure Connections (Host Support) features, the Initiator shall then start standard mutual authentication as described in [Section 4.2.1.1](#)

If both devices support both the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and the Secure Connections (Host Support) features, the Initiator shall then start secure authentication as described in [Section 4.2.1.4](#).

After secure authentication, if encryption is enabled, the initiating device shall pause and immediately resume encryption to produce a new encryption key. Note: This will cause a new encryption key to be generated using the h3 function including the ACO created during the secure authentication process.

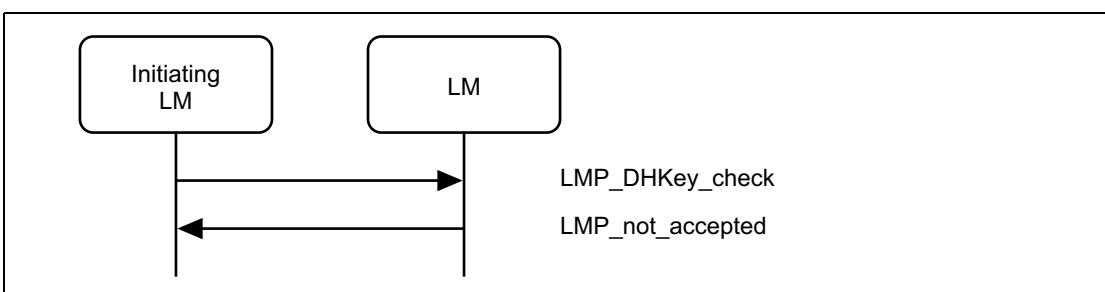


*Sequence 71: DHKey check*

#### 4.2.7.4.1 Check Failure on the Responder Side

If the confirmation value received via LMP by the Responder is not equal to the one it has calculated according to [Section 7.7.4 on page 1337](#), the Responder shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with reason "Authentication Failure".

Secure Simple Pairing procedures shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.

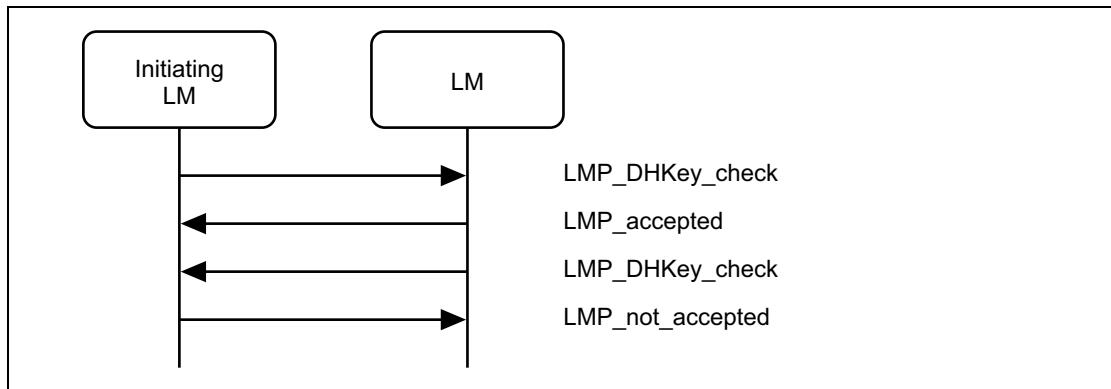


*Sequence 72: DHKey check: Check failure on the Responder side*

#### 4.2.7.4.1.1 Check Failure on the Initiator Side

If the confirmation value received via LMP by the Initiator is not equal to the one it has calculated according to [Section 7.7.4 on page 1337](#), the Initiator shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with reason "Authentication Failure".

Secure Simple Pairing procedures shall then be aborted. The Link Managers shall not disconnect the connection.



Sequence 73: DHKey check: check failure on the Initiator side

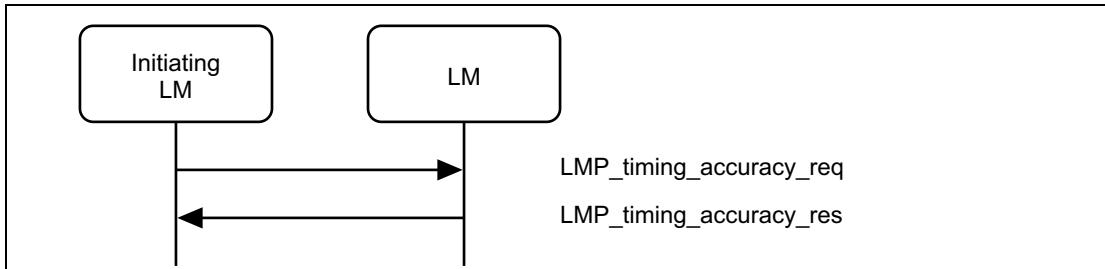
## 4.3 INFORMATIONAL REQUESTS

### 4.3.1 Timing Accuracy

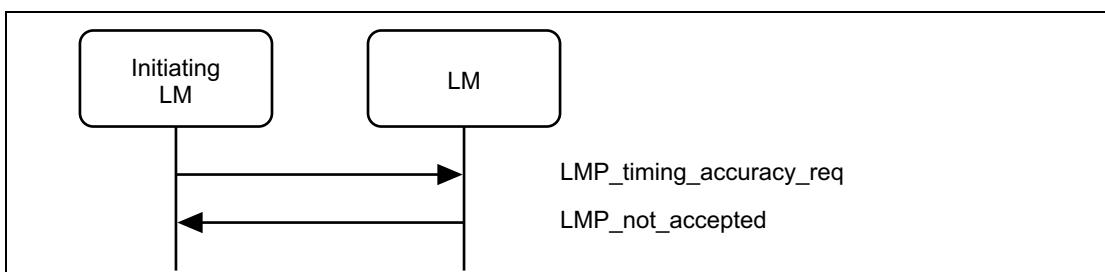
LMP supports requests for the timing accuracy. This information can be used to minimize the scan window during piconet physical channel re-synchronization (see [Baseband Specification, Section 2.2.5.2, on page 77](#)). The timing accuracy parameters returned are the long term drift measured in ppm and the long term jitter measured in  $\mu\text{s}$  of the worst case clock used. These parameters are fixed for a certain device and shall be identical when requested several times. Reported time accuracy shall not include changes caused by performing Piconet Clock Adjustment. If timing accuracy information has not been received from the remote device, the worst-case values (drift=250ppm and jitter=10 $\mu\text{s}$ ) shall be used.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(4)	LMP_timing_accuracy_req	-
O(4)	LMP_timing_accuracy_res	drift jitter

Table 4.22: Request limited timing PDU



Sequence 74: The requested device supports timing accuracy information



Sequence 75: The requested device does not support timing accuracy information

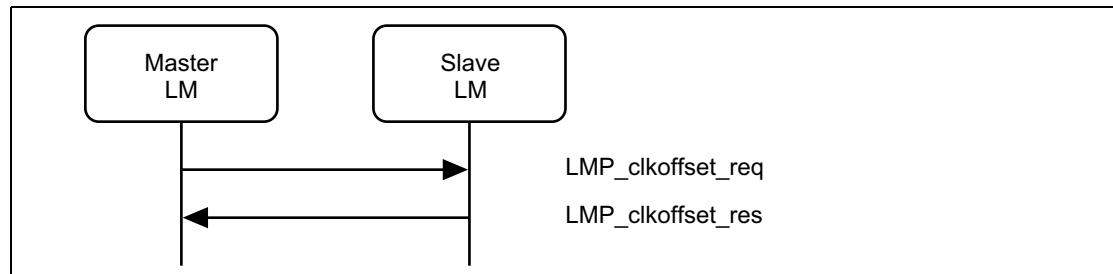
### 4.3.2 Clock Offset

The clock offset can be used to speed up the paging time the next time the same device is paged. The master can request the clock offset at anytime following a successful baseband paging procedure (i.e., before, during or after connection setup). The clock offset shall be defined by the following equation:

$$(\text{CLKN}_{16-2} \text{ slave} - \text{CLKN}_{16-2} \text{ master}) \bmod 2^{15}.$$

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_clkoffset_req	-
M	LMP_clkoffset_res	clock offset

Table 4.23: PDUs used for clock offset request.



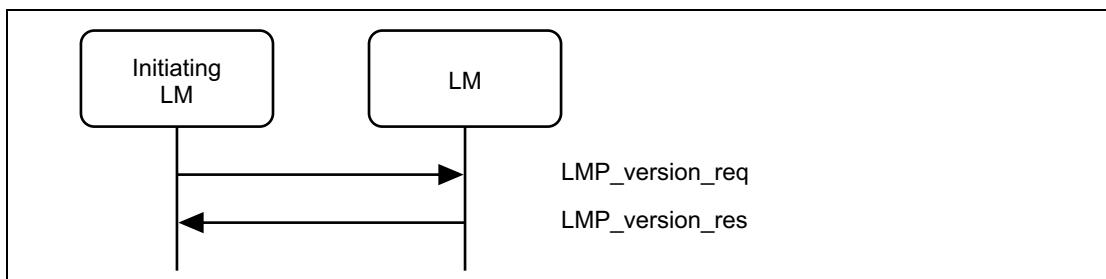
Sequence 76: Clock offset requested

### 4.3.3 LMP version

LMP supports requests for the version of the LM protocol. The LMP\_version\_req and LMP\_version\_res PDUs contain three parameters: VersNr, Compld and SubVersNr. VersNr specifies the version of the Bluetooth LMP specification that the device supports. Compld is used to track possible problems with the lower Bluetooth layers. All companies that create a unique implementation of the LM shall have their own Compld. The same company is also responsible for the administration and maintenance of the SubVersNr. It is recommended that each company has a unique SubVersNr for each RF/BB/LM implementation. For a given VersNr and Compld, the values of the SubVersNr shall increase each time a new implementation is released. For both Compld and SubVersNr the value 0xFFFF means that no valid number applies. There is no ability to negotiate the version of the LMP. The sequence below is only used to exchange the parameters. LMP version can be requested at anytime following a successful baseband paging procedure.

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_version_req	VersNr Compld SubVersNr
M	LMP_version_res	VersNr Compld SubVersNr

Table 4.24: PDUs used for LMP version request



Sequence 77: Request for LMP version

#### 4.3.4 Supported Features

The supported features may be requested at anytime following a successful baseband paging procedure by sending the LMP\_features\_req PDU. Upon reception of an LMP\_features\_req PDU, the receiving device shall return an LMP\_features\_res PDU.

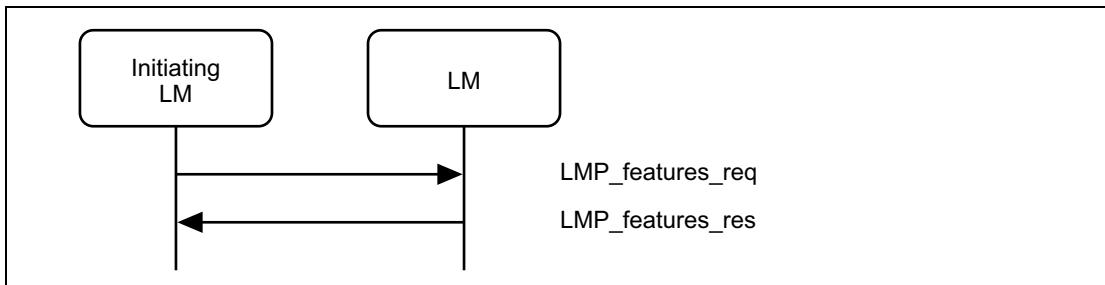
The number of features bits required will in the future exceed the size of a single page of features. An extended features mask is therefore provided to allow support for more than 64 features. Support for the extended features mask is indicated by the presence of the appropriate bit in the LMP features mask. The LMP\_features\_req\_ext and LMP\_features\_res\_ext PDUs operate in precisely the same way as the LMP\_features\_req and LMP\_features\_res PDUs except that they allow the various pages of the extended features mask to be requested. The LMP\_features\_req\_ext may be sent at any time following the exchange of the LMP\_features\_req and LMP\_features\_rsp PDUs.

The LMP\_features\_req\_ext PDU contains a feature page index that specifies which page is requested and the contents of that page for the requesting device. Pages are numbered from 0-255 with page 0 corresponding to the normal features mask. Each page consists of 64 bits. If a device does not support any page number it shall return a mask with every bit set to 0. It also contains the maximum features page number containing any non-zero bit for this device. The recipient of an LMP\_features\_req\_ext PDU shall respond with an LMP\_features\_res\_ext PDU containing the same page number and the appropriate features page along with its own maximum features page number.

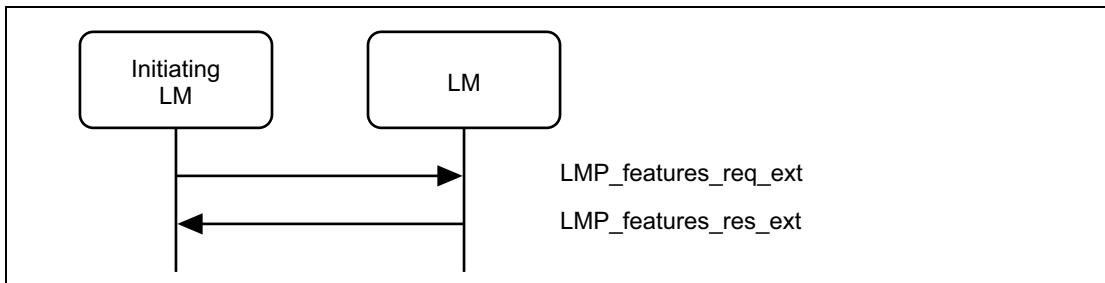
If the extended features request is not supported then all bits in all extended features pages for that device shall be assumed to be zero.

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_features_req	features
M	LMP_features_res	features
O(63)	LMP_features_req_ext	features page max supported page extended features
O(63)	LMP_features_res_ext	features page max supported page extended features

Table 4.25: PDUs used for features request



Sequence 78: Request for supported features



Sequence 79: Request for extended features

### 4.3.5 Name Request

LMP supports name request to another device. The name is a user-friendly name associated with the device and consists of a maximum of 248 bytes coded according to the UTF-8 standard. The name is fragmented over one or more DM1 packets. When an LMP\_name\_req PDU is sent, a name offset indicates which fragment is expected. The corresponding LMP\_name\_res PDU carries the same name offset, the name length indicating the total number of bytes in the name of the device and the name fragment, where:

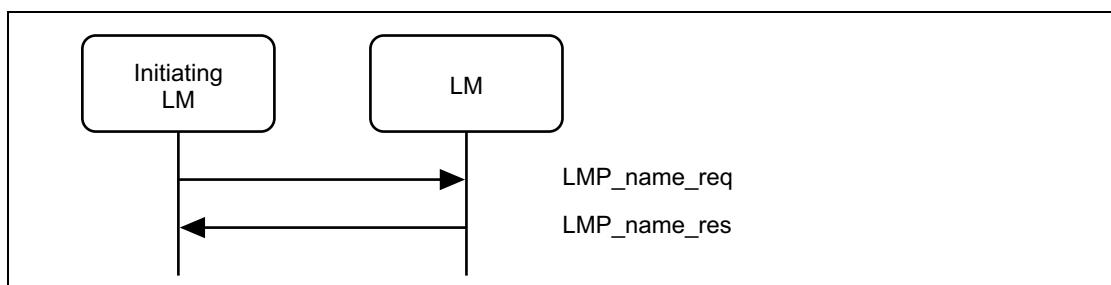
- name fragment( $N$ ) = name( $N + \text{name offset}$ ), if  $(N + \text{name offset}) < \text{name length}$
- name fragment( $N$ ) = 0, otherwise.

Here  $0 \leq N \leq 13$ . In the first sent LMP\_name\_req PDU, name offset=0.

[Sequence 80](#) is then repeated until the initiator has collected all fragments of the name. The name request may be made at any time following a successful baseband paging procedure.

M/O	PDU	Contents
M	LMP_name_req	name offset
M	LMP_name_res	name offset name length name fragment

Table 4.26: Name request PDUs



Sequence 80: Device's name requested and it responses

## 4.4 ROLE SWITCH

### 4.4.1 Slot Offset

With LMP\_slot\_offset the information about the difference between the slot boundaries in different piconets is transmitted. The LMP\_slot\_offset PDU may be sent anytime after the baseband paging procedure has completed. This PDU carries the parameters slot offset and BD\_ADDR. The slot offset shall be the time in microseconds between the start of a master transmission in the current piconet to the start of the next following master transmission in the piconet where the BD\_ADDR device (normally the slave) is master at the time that the request is interpreted by the BD\_ADDR device.

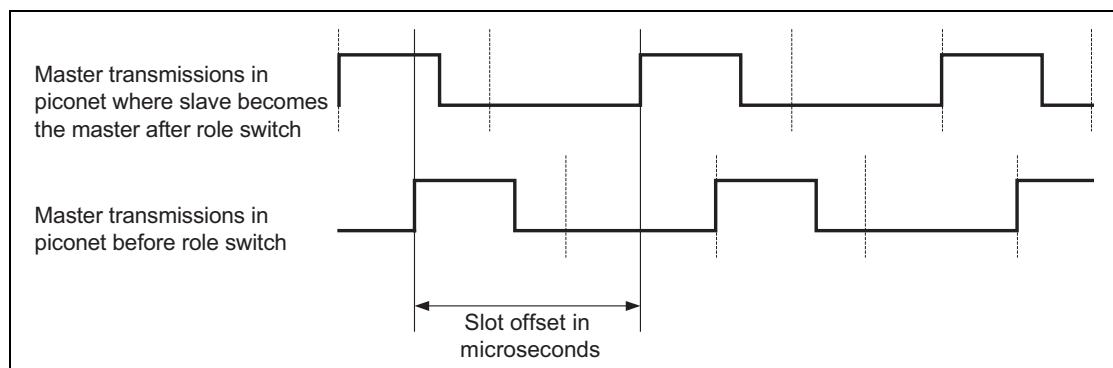
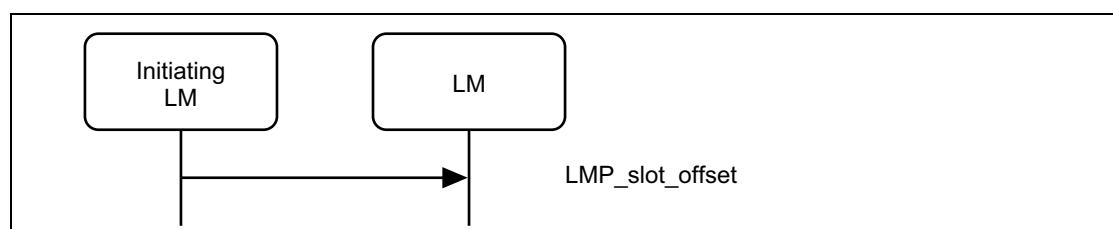


Figure 4.2: Slot offset for role switch

See [Section 4.4 on page 316](#) for the use of LMP\_slot\_offset in the context of the role switch. In the case of role switch the BD\_ADDR is that of the slave device.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(3)	LMP_slot_offset	slot offset BD_ADDR

Table 4.27: Role switch PDU



Sequence 81: Slot offset information is sent

#### 4.4.2 Role Switch

Since the paging device always becomes the master of the piconet, a switch of the master slave role is sometimes needed, see [Baseband Specification, Section 8.6.5, on page 182](#). A role switch may be performed anytime after the baseband paging procedure has completed.

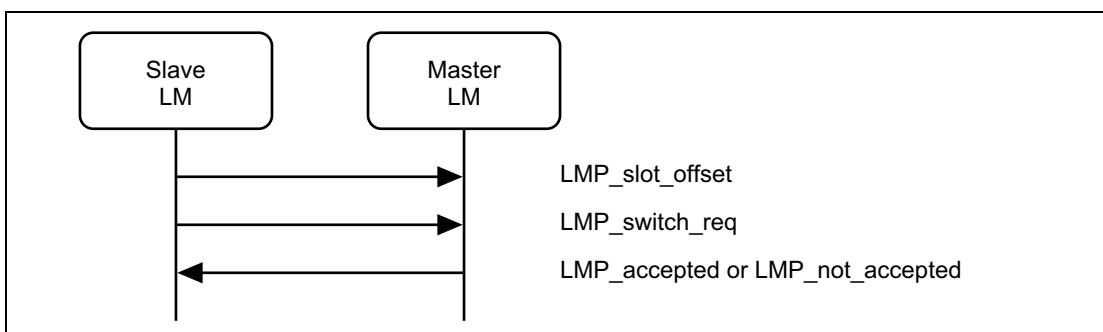
Support for LMP\_slot\_offset is mandatory if LMP\_switch\_req is supported.

The LMP\_slot\_offset shall be sent only if the ACL logical transport is in active mode. The LMP\_switch\_req shall be sent only if the ACL logical transport is in active mode, when encryption is disabled or paused, and all synchronous logical transports on the same physical link are disabled. Additionally, LMP\_slot\_offset or LMP\_switch\_req shall not be initiated or accepted while a synchronous logical transport is being negotiated by LM.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(5)	LMP_switch_req	switch instant
O(5)	LMP_slot_offset	slot offset BD_ADDR

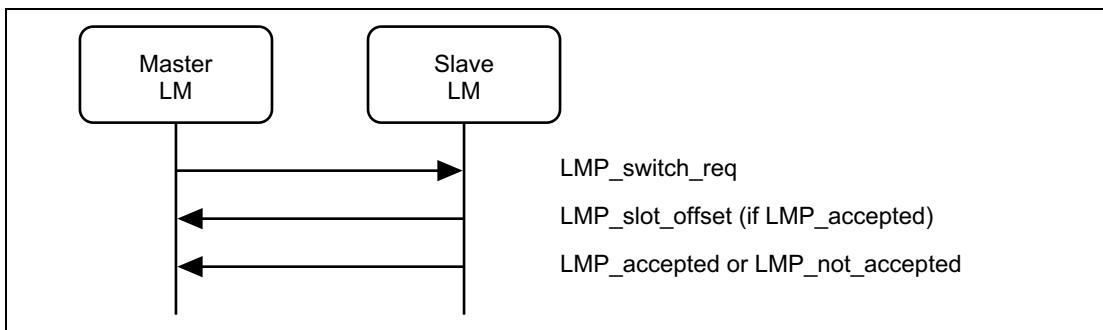
Table 4.28: Role switch PDU

The initiating LM shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). If the encryption mode is set to "encryption" and both devices support pausing encryption, then the initiating device shall initiate the pause encryption sequence (see [Section 4.2.5.5, "Pause Encryption," on page 289](#).) It shall then send an LMP\_slot\_offset PDU immediately followed by an LMP\_switch\_req PDU. If the master accepts the role switch and encryption is not already paused, it shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)) and respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU. When the role switch has been completed at the baseband level (successfully or not) if encryption was paused, the device that paused encryption shall initiate the resume encryption sequence (see [Section 4.2.5.6, "Resume Encryption," on page 292](#)). If encryption was not paused, both devices shall re-enable transmission on the ACL-U logical link. If the master rejects the role switch it responds with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU and the slave re-enables transmission on the ACL-U logical link. The transaction ID for the role switch PDUs in the sequence (LMP\_slot\_offset and LMP\_switch\_req along with the associated LMP\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted) shall be set to 1.



Sequence 82: Role switch (slave initiated)

If the master initiates the role switch and if the encryption mode is set to "encryption" and both devices support pausing encryption, the master device shall initiate the pause encryption sequence (See [\[Part C\] Section 4.2.5.5 on page 289](#)), otherwise it shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)) and send an LMP\_switch\_req PDU. If the slave accepts the role switch and encryption is not already paused, it shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)) and responds with an LMP\_slot\_offset PDU immediately followed by an LMP\_accepted PDU. When the role switch has been completed at the baseband (successfully or not) if encryption was paused, the device that paused encryption shall initiate the resume encryption sequence (see [Section 4.2.5.6, "Resume Encryption," on page 292](#)). When AES-CCM encryption is used, the LMs shall calculate a new encryption key using the h3 algorithm (see [\[Part H\] Section 7.7.6 on page 1340](#)) with the BD\_ADDRs for the new master and slave prior to resuming encryption. If encryption was not paused, both devices re-enable transmission on the ACL-U logical link. If the slave rejects the role switch it responds with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU and the master re-enables transmission on the ACL-U logical link. The transaction ID for the role switch PDUs in the sequence (LMP\_slot\_offset and LMP\_switch\_req along with the associated LMP\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted) shall be set to 0.



Sequence 83: Role switch (master initiated)

The LMP\_switch\_req PDU contains a parameter, switch instant, which specifies the instant at which the TDD switch is performed. This is specified as a Bluetooth clock value of the master's clock, that is available to both devices. This instant is chosen by the sender of the message and shall be at least

$2*T_{\text{poll}}$  or 32 (whichever is greater) slots in the future. The switch instant shall be within 12 hours of the current clock value to avoid clock wrap.

The sender of the LMP\_switch\_req PDU selects the switch instant and queues the LMP\_switch\_req PDU to LC for transmission and starts a timer to expire at the switch instant. When the timer expires it initiates the mode switch. In the case of a master initiated switch if the LMP\_slot\_offset PDU has not been received by the switch instant the role switch is carried out without an estimate of the slave's slot offset. If an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU is received before the timer expires then the timer is stopped and the role switch shall not be initiated.

When the LMP\_switch\_req is received the switch instant is compared with the current master clock value. If it is in the past then the instant has been passed and an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with the error code *Instant Passed* (0x28) shall be returned. If it is in the future then an LMP\_accepted PDU shall be returned assuming the role switch is allowed and a timer is started to expire at the switch instant. When this timer expires the role switch shall be initiated.

After a successful role switch the supervision timeout and poll interval ( $T_{\text{poll}}$ ) shall be set to their default values. The authentication state and the ACO shall remain unchanged. Adaptive Frequency Hopping shall follow the procedures described in [Baseband Specification, Section 8.6.5, on page 182](#). The default value for max\_slots shall be used.

## 4.5 MODES OF OPERATION

### 4.5.1 Hold Mode

The ACL logical transport of a connection between two Bluetooth devices can be placed in hold mode for a specified hold time. See [Baseband Specification, Section 8.8, on page 197](#) for details.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(6)	LMP_hold	hold time, hold instant
O(6)	LMP_hold_req	hold time, hold instant

Table 4.29: Hold mode PDUs

The LMP\_hold and LMP\_hold\_req PDUs both contain a parameter, hold instant, that specifies the instant at which the hold becomes effective. This is specified as a Bluetooth clock value of the master's clock, that is available to both devices. The hold instant is chosen by the sender of the message and should be at least  $6 \cdot T_{\text{poll}}$  slots in the future. The hold instant shall be within 12 hours of the current clock value to avoid clock wrap.

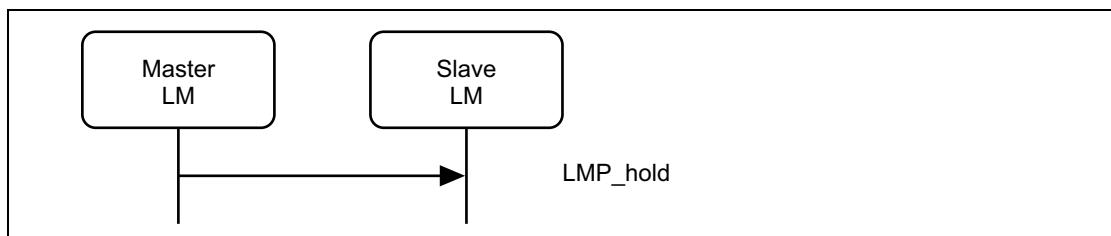
#### 4.5.1.1 Master Forces Hold Mode

The master may force hold mode if there has previously been a request for hold mode that has been accepted by the slave. The hold time included in the PDU when the master forces hold mode shall not be longer than any hold time the slave has previously accepted when there was a request for hold mode.

The master LM shall first pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). It shall select the hold instant and queue the LMP\_hold PDU to its LC for transmission. It shall then start a timer to wait until the hold instant occurs. When this timer expires then the connection shall enter hold mode. If the baseband acknowledgement for the LMP\_hold PDU is not received then the master may enter hold mode, but it shall not use its low accuracy clock during the hold.

When the slave LM receives an LMP\_hold PDU it compares the hold instant with the current master clock value. If it is in the future then it starts a timer to expire at this instant and enters hold mode when it expires.

When the master LM exits from Hold mode it re-enables transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



*Sequence 84: Master forces slave into hold mode*

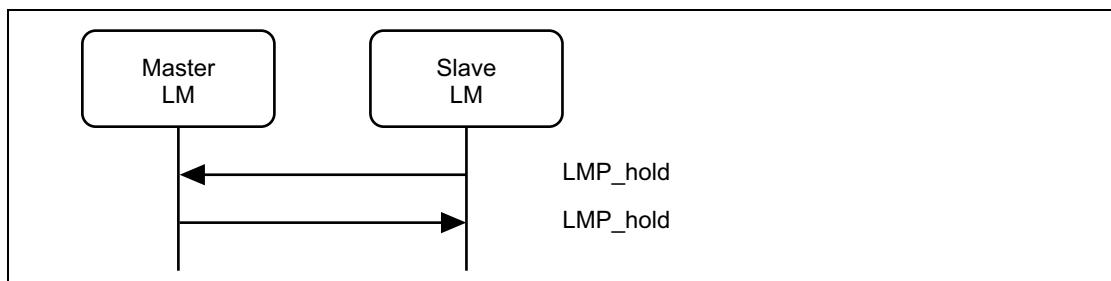
#### 4.5.1.2 Slave Forces Hold Mode

The slave may force hold mode if there has previously been a request for hold mode that has been accepted by the master. The hold time included in the PDU when the slave forces hold mode shall not be longer than any hold time the master has previously accepted when there was a request for hold mode.

The slave LM shall first complete the transmission of the current packet on the ACL logical transport and then shall suspend transmission on the ACL-U logical link. It shall select the hold instant and queue the LMP\_hold PDU to its LC for transmission. It shall then wait for an LMP\_hold PDU from the master acting according to the procedure described in [Section 4.5.1.1](#).

When the master LM receives an LMP\_hold PDU it shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). It shall then inspect the hold instant. If this is less than  $6 \cdot T_{poll}$  slots in the future it shall modify the instant so that it is at least  $6 \cdot T_{poll}$  slots in the future. It shall then send an LMP\_hold PDU using the mechanism described in [Section 4.5.1.1](#).

When the master and slave LMs exit from Hold mode they shall re-enable transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



*Sequence 85: Slave forces master into hold mode*

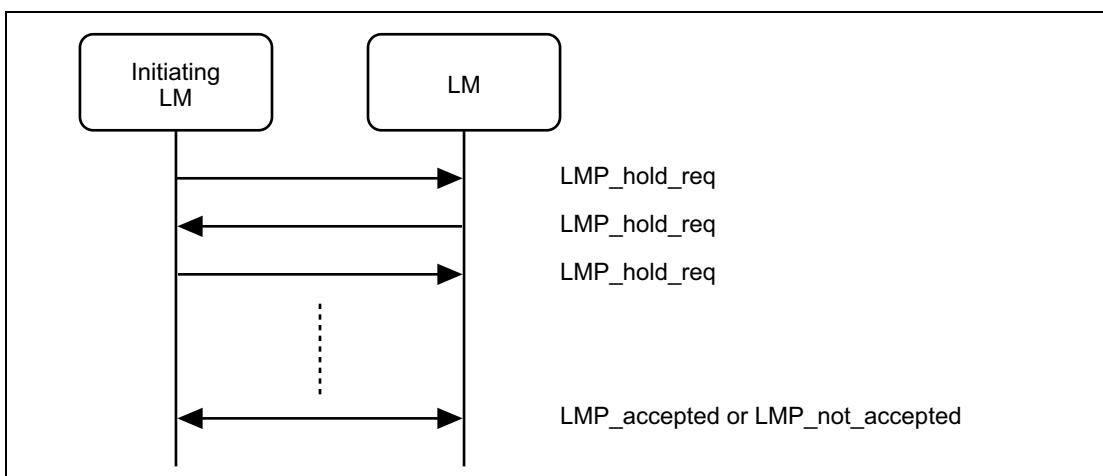
#### 4.5.1.3 Master or Slave requests Hold Mode

The master or the slave may request to enter hold mode. Upon receipt of the request, the same request with modified parameters may be returned or the negotiation may be terminated. If an agreement is seen an LMP\_accepted PDU terminates the negotiation and the ACL link is placed in hold mode. If no agreement is seen, an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU with the error code *Unsupported LMP Parameter Value* (0x20) terminates the negotiation and hold mode is not entered.

The initiating LM shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). On receiving an LMP\_hold\_req PDU the receiving LM shall complete the transmission of the current packet on the ACL logical transport and then shall suspend transmission on the ACL-U logical link.

The LM sending the LMP\_hold\_req PDU selects the hold instant, that shall be at least  $9*T_{poll}$  slots in the future. If this is a response to a previous LMP\_hold\_req PDU and the contained hold instant is at least  $9*T_{poll}$  slots in the future then this shall be used. The LMP\_hold\_req PDU shall then be queued to its LC for transmission and a timer shall be started to expire at this instant and the connection enters hold mode when it expires unless an LMP\_not\_accepted or LMP\_hold\_req PDU is received by its LM before that point. If the LM receiving LMP\_hold\_req PDU agrees to enter hold mode it shall return an LMP\_accepted PDU and shall start a timer to expire at the hold instant. When this timer expires it enters hold mode.

When each LM exits from Hold mode it shall re-enable transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



Sequence 86: Negotiation for hold mode

#### 4.5.2 Park State

If a slave does not need to participate in the channel, but should still remain synchronized to the master, it may be placed in park state. See [Baseband Specification, Section 8.9, on page 197](#) for details.

Note: To keep a parked slave connected the master shall periodically unpark and repark the slave if the supervision timeout is not set to zero (see [Baseband Specification, Section 3.1, on page 102](#)).

All PDUs sent from the master to parked slaves are carried on the PSB-C logical link (LMP link of parked slave broadcast logical transport). These PDUs, LMP\_set\_broadcast\_scan\_window, LMP\_modify\_beacon, LMP\_unpark\_BD\_addr\_req and LMP\_unpark\_PM\_addr\_req, are the only PDUs that shall be sent to a slave in park state and the only PDUs that shall be broadcast. To increase reliability for broadcast, the packets are as short as possible. Therefore the format for these LMP PDUs are somewhat different. The parameters are not always byte-aligned and the length of the PDUs is variable.

The messages for controlling park state include parameters, defined in [Baseband Specification, Section 8.9, on page 197](#). When a slave is placed in park state it is assigned a unique PM\_ADDR, that can be used by the master to unpark that slave. The all-zero PM\_ADDR has a special meaning; it is not a valid PM\_ADDR. If a device is assigned this PM\_ADDR, it shall be identified with its BD\_ADDR when it is unparked by the master.

#### 4.5.2.1 Master requests slave to enter park state

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(8)	LMP_park_req	timing control flags $D_B$ $T_B$ $N_B$ $\Delta_B$ PM_ADDR AR_ADDR $N_{B\text{sleep}}$ $D_{B\text{sleep}}$ $D_{\text{access}}$ $T_{\text{access}}$ $N_{\text{acc-slots}}$ $N_{\text{poll}}$ $M_{\text{access}}$ access scheme
O(8)	LMP_set_broadcast_scan_window	timing control flags $D_B$ (optional) broadcast scan window
O(8)	LMP_modify_beacon	timing control flags $D_B$ (optional) $T_B$ $N_B$ $\Delta_B$ $D_{\text{access}}$ $T_{\text{access}}$ $N_{\text{acc-slots}}$ $N_{\text{poll}}$ $M_{\text{access}}$ access scheme

Table 4.30: PDUs used for park state

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(8)	LMP_unpark_PM_ADDR_req	timing control flags $D_B$ (optional) LT_ADDR 1 <sup>st</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 2 <sup>nd</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 1 <sup>st</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 2 <sup>nd</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 3 <sup>rd</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 4 <sup>th</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 3 <sup>rd</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 4 <sup>th</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 5 <sup>th</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 6 <sup>th</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 5 <sup>th</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 6 <sup>th</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 7 <sup>th</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 7 <sup>th</sup> unpark
O(8)	LMP_unpark_BD_ADDR_req	timing control flags $D_B$ (optional) LT_ADDR LT_ADDR (optional) BD_ADDR BD_ADDR (optional)

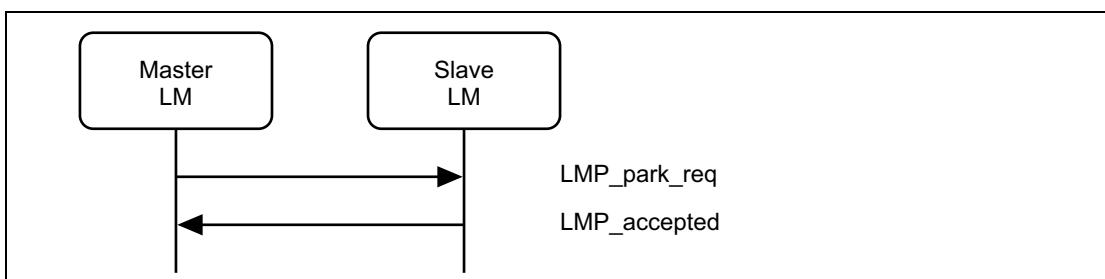
Table 4.30: PDUs used for park state

The master can request park state. The master LM shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)) and then send an LMP\_park\_req PDU. If the slave agrees to enter park state it shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)). and then respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.

When the slave queues an LMP\_accepted PDU it shall start a timer for  $6^*T_{poll}$  slots. If the baseband acknowledgement is received before this timer expires it shall enter park state immediately otherwise it shall enter park state when the timer expires.

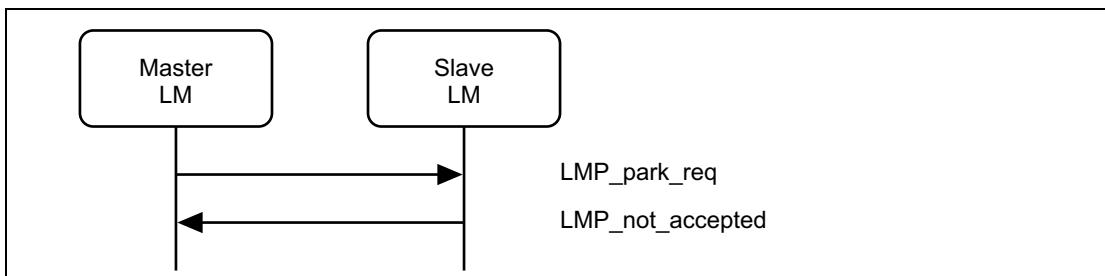
When the master receives an LMP\_accepted PDU it shall start a timer for  $6^*T_{poll}$  slots. When this timer expires the slave is in park state and the LT\_ADDR may be re-used.

If the master never receives an LMP\_accepted PDU then a link supervision timeout will occur.



Sequence 87: Slave accepts to enter park state

If the slave rejects the attempt to enter park state it shall respond with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU and the master shall re-enable transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



Sequence 88: Slave rejects to enter into park state

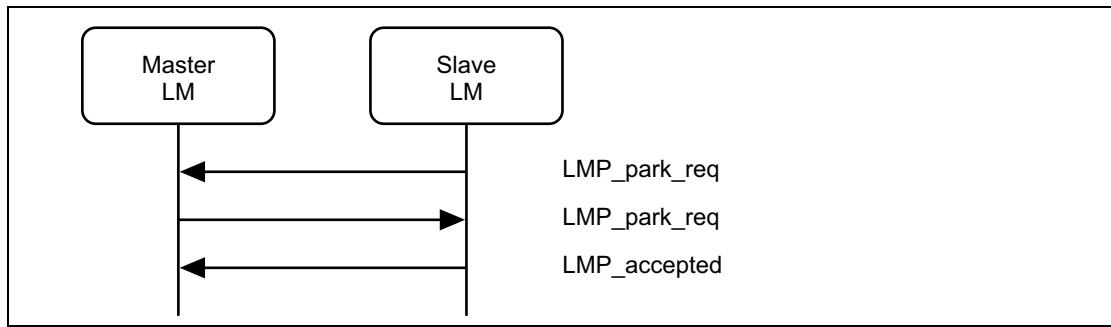
#### 4.5.2.2 Slave requests to enter Park State

The slave can request park state. The slave LM shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)) and then send an LMP\_park\_req PDU. When sent by the slave, the parameters PM\_ADDR and AR\_ADDR are not valid and the other parameters represent suggested values. If the master accepts the slave's request to enter park state it shall pause traffic on the ACL-U logical link (see [Baseband Specification, Section 5.3.1, on page 114](#)) and then send an LMP\_park\_req PDU, where the parameter values may be different from the values in the PDU sent from the slave. If the slave can accept these parameter it shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.

When the slave queues an LMP\_accepted PDU for transmission it shall start a timer for  $6 \cdot T_{poll}$  slots. If the baseband acknowledgement is received before this timer expires it shall enter park state immediately otherwise it shall enter park state when the timer expires.

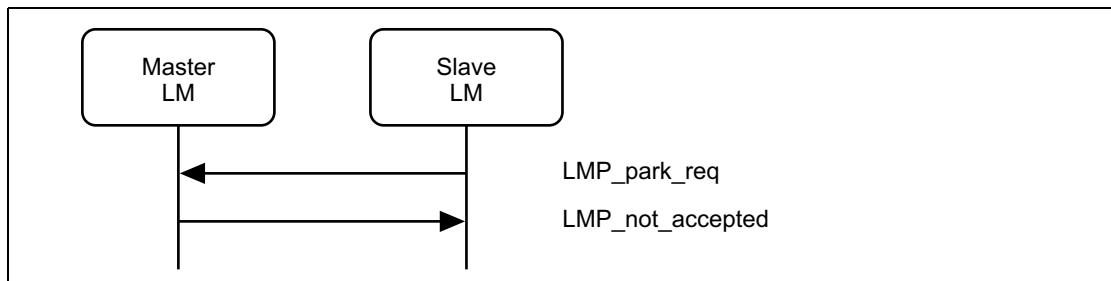
When the master receives an LMP\_accepted PDU it shall start a timer for  $6 \cdot T_{poll}$  slots. When this timer expires the slave is in park state and the LT\_ADDR may be re-used.

If the master never receives the LMP\_accepted PDU then a link supervision timeout will occur.



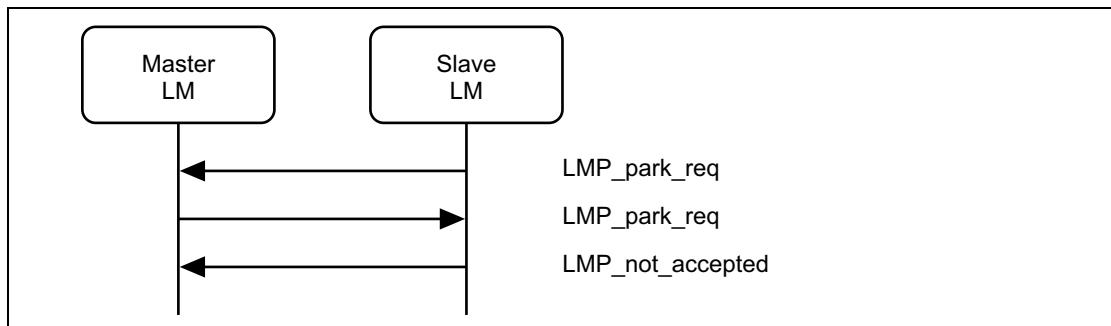
*Sequence 89: Slave requests to enter park state and accepts master's beacon parameters*

If the master does not agree that the slave enters park state it shall send an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU. The slave shall then re-enable transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



*Sequence 90: Master rejects slave's request to enter park state*

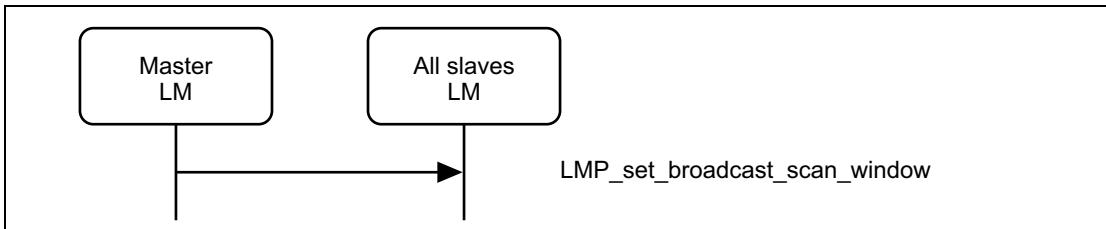
If the slave does not accept the parameters in the LMP\_park\_req PDU sent from the master it shall respond with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU and both devices shall re-enable transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



*Sequence 91: Slave requests to enter park state, but rejects master's beacon parameters*

#### 4.5.2.3 Master sets up Broadcast Scan Window

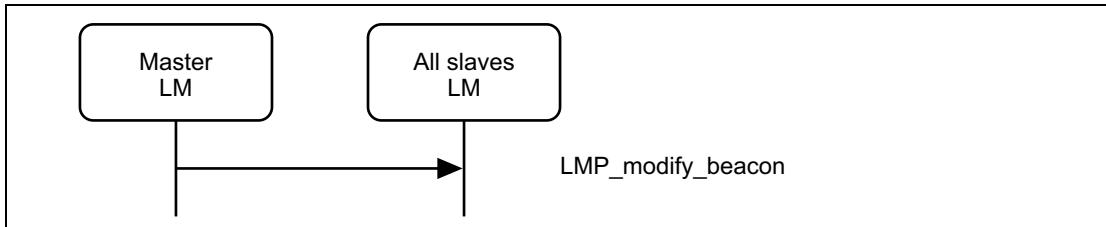
If more broadcast capacity is needed than the beacon train, the master may indicate to the slaves that more broadcast information will follow the beacon train by sending an LMP\_set\_broadcast\_scan\_window PDU. This message shall be sent in a broadcast packet at the beacon slot(s). The scan window shall start in the beacon instant and shall only be valid for the current beacon.



Sequence 92: Master notifies all slaves of increase in broadcast capacity

#### 4.5.2.4 Master Modifies Beacon Parameters

When the beacon parameters change the master notifies the parked slaves of this by sending an LMP\_modify\_beacon PDU. This PDU shall be sent in a broadcast packet.



Sequence 93: Master modifies beacon parameters

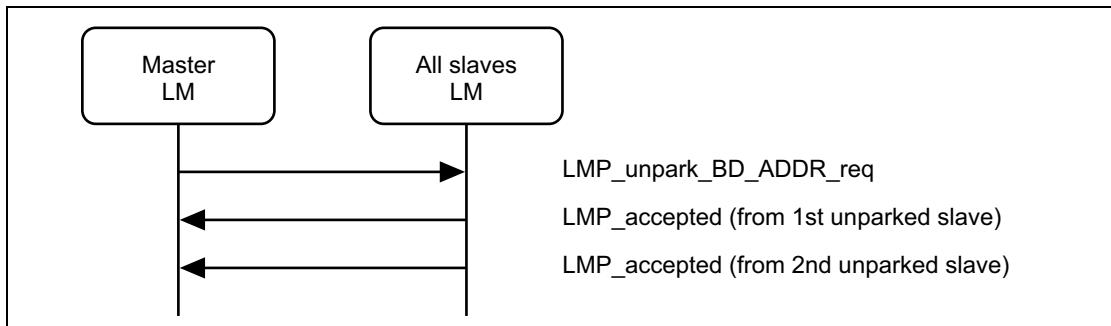
#### 4.5.2.5 Unparking Slaves

The master can unpark one or many slaves by sending a broadcast LMP message including the PM\_ADDR or the BD\_ADDR of the device(s) to be unparked. Broadcast LMP messages are carried on the PSB-C logical link. See [Baseband Specification, Section 8.9.5, on page 203](#) for further details. This message also includes the LT\_ADDR that the master assigns to the slave(s). After sending this message, the master shall check the success of the unpark by polling each unparked slave by sending POLL packets, so that the slave is granted access to the channel. The unparked slave shall then send a response with an LMP\_accepted PDU. If this message is not received from the slave within a certain time after the master sent the unpark message, the unpark failed and the master shall consider the slave as still being in park state.

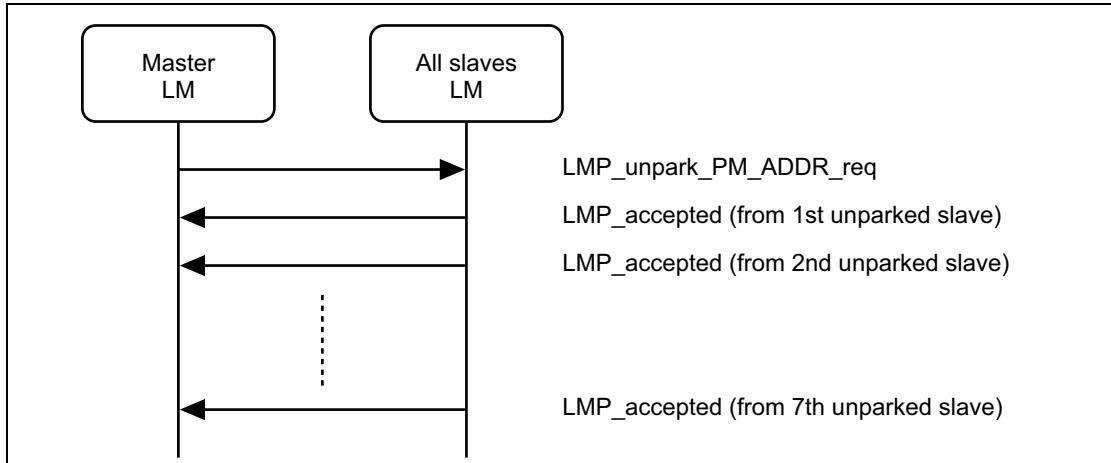
One PDU is used where the parked device is identified with the PM\_ADDR, and another PDU is used where it is identified with the BD\_ADDR. Both messages have variable length depending on the number of slaves the master

unparks. For each slave the master wishes to unpark an LT\_ADDR followed by the PM\_ADDR or BD\_ADDR of the device that is assigned this LT\_ADDR is included in the payload. If the slaves are identified with the PM\_ADDR a maximum of 7 slaves can be unparked with the same message. If they are identified with the BD\_ADDR a maximum of 2 slaves can be unparked with the same message.

After a successful unparking, both devices re-enable transmission on the ACL-U logical link.



Sequence 94: Master unparks slaves addressed with their BD\_ADDR



Sequence 95: Master unparks slaves addressed with their PM\_ADDR

### 4.5.3 Sniff Mode

To enter sniff mode, master and slave negotiate a sniff interval  $T_{\text{sniff}}$  and a sniff offset,  $D_{\text{sniff}}$ , that specifies the timing of the sniff slots. The offset determines the time of the first sniff slot; after that the sniff slots follow periodically with the sniff interval  $T_{\text{sniff}}$ . To avoid clock wrap-around during the initialization, one of two options is chosen for the calculation of the first sniff slot. A timing control flag in the message from the master indicates this. Only bit1 of the timing control flag is valid.

When the ACL logical transport is in sniff mode the master shall only start a transmission in the sniff slots. Two parameters control the listening activity in the slave: the sniff attempt and the sniff timeout. The sniff attempt parameter determines for how many slots the slave shall listen when the slave is not treating this as a scatternet link, beginning at the sniff slot, even if it does not receive a packet with its own LT\_ADDR. The sniff timeout parameter determines for how many additional slots the slave shall listen when the slave is not treating this as a scatternet link if it continues to receive only packets with its own LT\_ADDR. It is not possible to modify the sniff parameters while the device is in sniff mode.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(7)	LMP_sniff_req	timing control flags $D_{\text{sniff}}$ $T_{\text{sniff}}$ sniff attempt sniff timeout
O(7)	LMP_unsniff_req	-

Table 4.31: Sniff mode PDUs

#### 4.5.3.1 Master or Slave requests Sniff Mode

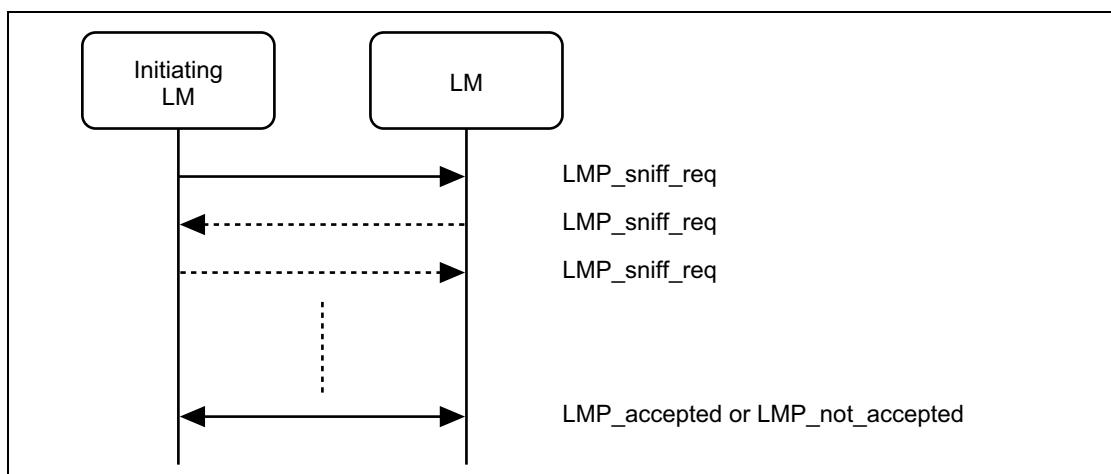
Either the master or the slave may request entry to sniff mode. The process is initiated by sending an LMP\_sniff\_req PDU containing a set of parameters. The receiving LM shall then decide whether to reject the attempt by sending an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU, to suggest different parameters by replying with an LMP\_sniff\_req PDU or to accept the request.

Before the first time that the master sends LMP\_sniff\_req it shall enter sniff transition mode. If the master receives or sends an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU it shall exit from sniff transition mode. If the master receives an LMP\_sniff\_req PDU it shall enter sniff transition mode.

If the master decides to accept the request it shall send an LMP\_accepted PDU. When the master receives the baseband acknowledgement for this PDU it shall exit sniff transition mode and enter sniff mode.

If the master receives an LMP\_accepted PDU the master shall exit from sniff transition mode and enter sniff mode.

If the slave receives an LMP\_sniff\_req PDU it must decide whether to accept the request. If the slave does not wish to enter sniff mode then it replies with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU. If it is happy to enter sniff mode but requires a different set of parameters it shall respond with an LMP\_sniff\_req PDU containing the new parameters. If the slave decides that the parameters are acceptable then it shall send an LMP\_accepted PDU and enter sniff mode. If the slave receives an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU it shall terminate the attempt to enter sniff mode.



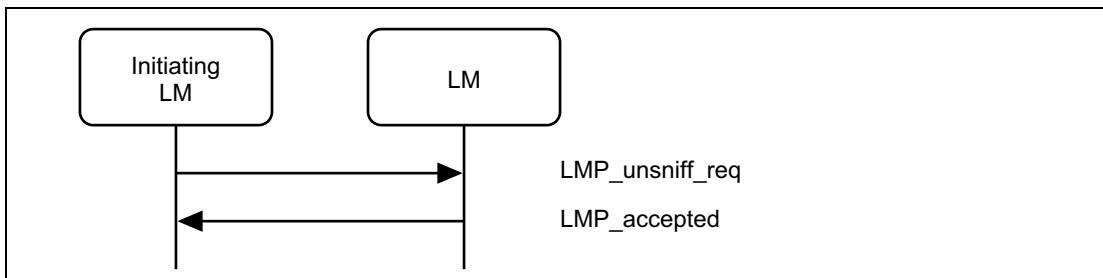
Sequence 96: Negotiation for sniff mode

#### 4.5.3.2 Moving a Slave From Sniff Mode to Active Mode

Sniff mode may be exited by either the master or the slave sending an LMP\_unsniff\_req PDU. The requested device shall reply with an LMP\_accepted PDU.

If the master requests an exit from sniff mode it shall enter sniff transition mode and then send an LMP\_unsniff\_req PDU. When the slave receives the LMP\_unsniff\_req it shall exit from sniff mode and reply with an LMP\_accepted PDU. When the master receives the LMP\_accepted PDU it shall exit from sniff transition mode and enter active mode.

If the slave requests an exit from sniff mode it shall send an LMP\_unsniff\_req PDU. When the master receives the LMP\_unsniff\_req PDU it shall enter sniff transition mode and then send an LMP\_accepted PDU. When the slave receives the LMP\_accepted PDU it shall exit from sniff mode and enter active mode. When the master receives the baseband acknowledgement for the LMP\_accepted PDU it shall leave sniff transition mode and enter active mode.



Sequence 97: Slave moved from sniff mode to active mode

#### 4.5.3.3 Sniff Subrating

Once sniff mode has been started, sniff subrating may be initiated by either Link Manager.

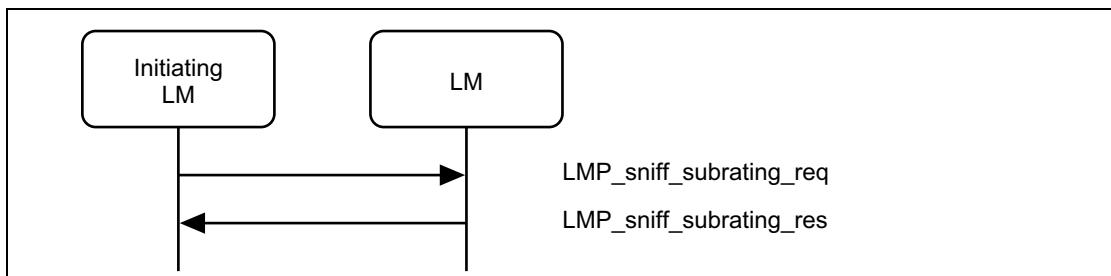
The LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_req and LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_res PDUs specify parameters that the peer and initiating device shall use respectively for sniff subrating.

The sniff subrating instant value shall be used to calculate the first sniff subrating anchor point. The sniff subrating instant value shall be a maximum of  $2^{16}$  time slots (40.9 seconds) from the current master clock and shall be a sniff anchor point. The sniff subrating instant value should indicate a clock value in the future with respect to the clock value when the LMP message is first sent.

If the LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_req PDU is sent by the master, the sniff subrating instant value shall be used. The slave device shall reply with an LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_res PDU using the same sniff subrating instant value given by the master.

When the LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_req PDU is sent by the slave, the sniff subrating instant value shall be ignored. The master device shall reply with an LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_res PDU with the sniff subrating instant value that shall be used for sniff subrating.

The initiating device shall not transition to the new sniff subrating parameters until the sniff subrating instant has passed and the LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_res PDU has been received. The non-initiating device shall remain in sniff mode and shall not transition to the new sniff subrating parameters until after the sniff subrating instant has passed and the baseband acknowledgement of the LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_res PDU has been received.



*Sequence 98: LM accepts sniff subrating request*

A device shall not send a new LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_req PDU until the previous sniff subrating transaction has completed and the sniff subrating instant has passed.

The maximum clock interval between two sniff subrating anchor points shall be less than the link supervision timeout. If the link supervision timeout needs to be updated to a shorter value than the clock interval between two sniff subrating anchor points, the master shall disable sniff subrating, shall send the LMP\_Supervision\_Timeout PDU with the new supervision timeout value, and shall start using the new supervision timeout value after receiving a baseband ACK for the LMP\_Supervision\_Timeout PDU. Upon reception of the LMP\_Supervision\_Timeout PDU the slave shall disable sniff subrating and shall start using the new supervision timeout value.

The master shall initiate sniff subrating with the max\_sniff\_subrate parameter less than the new supervision timeout. The slave shall respond with the LMP\_sniff\_subrating\_res PDU with the max\_sniff\_subrate parameter less than the new supervision timeout.

Note: When changing the link supervision timeout while sniff subrating is enabled, refer to [Section 4.5.3.3 on page 332](#).

## 4.6 LOGICAL TRANSPORTS

When a connection is first established between two devices the connection consists of the default ACL logical links: ACL-C (for LMP messages) and ACL-U (for L2CAP data.) One or more synchronous logical transports (SCO or eSCO) may then be added. A new logical transport shall not be created if it would cause all slots to be allocated to reserved slots on secondary LT\_AD-DRs.

### 4.6.1 SCO Logical Transport

The SCO logical transport reserves slots separated by the SCO interval,  $T_{sco}$ . The first slot reserved for the SCO logical transport is defined by  $T_{sco}$  and the SCO offset,  $D_{sco}$ . See [Baseband Specification, Section 8.6.2, on page 177](#) for details. A device shall initiate a request for HV2 or HV3 packet type only if the other device supports it (bits 12, 13) in its features mask. A device shall initiate CVSD,  $\mu$ -law or A-law coding or uncoded (transparent) data only if the other device supports the corresponding feature. To avoid problems with a wrap-around of the clock during initialization of the SCO logical transport, the timing control flags parameter is used to indicate how the first SCO slot shall be calculated. Only bit1 of the timing control flags parameter is valid. The SCO link is distinguished from all other SCO links by an SCO handle. The SCO handle zero shall not be used.

M/O	PDU	Contents
O(11)	LMP_SCO_link_req	SCO handle timing control flags $D_{sco}$ $T_{sco}$ SCO packet air mode
O(11)	LMP_remove_SCO_link_req	SCO handle error

Table 4.32: SCO link management PDUs

#### 4.6.1.1 Master Initiates an SCO Link

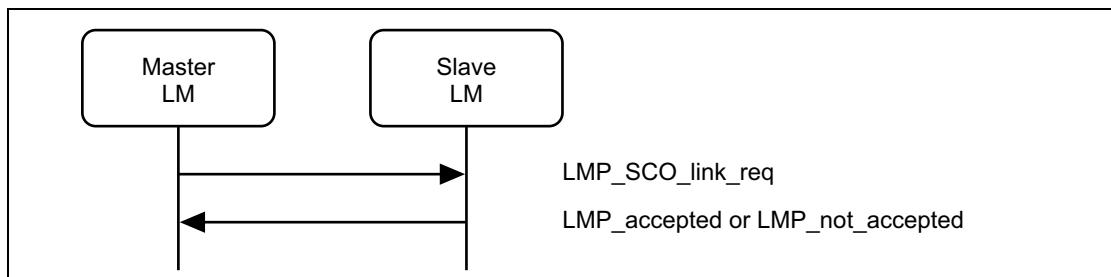
When establishing an SCO link the master sends a request, a LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU, with parameters that specify the timing, packet type and coding that will be used on the SCO link. Each of the SCO packet types supports three different voice coding formats on the air-interface:  $\mu$ -law log PCM, A-law log PCM and CVSD. The air coding by log PCM or CVSD may be deactivated to achieve a transparent synchronous data link at 64 kbits/s.

The slots used for the SCO links are determined by three parameters controlled by the master:  $T_{SCO}$ ,  $D_{SCO}$  and a flag indicating how the first SCO slot is calculated. After the first slot, the SCO slots follow periodically at an interval of  $T_{SCO}$ .

If the slave does not accept the SCO link, but is willing to consider another possible set of SCO parameters, it can indicate what it does not accept in the error code field of LMP\_not\_accepted PDU. The master may then issue a new request with modified parameters.

The SCO handle in the message shall be different from existing SCO link(s).

If the SCO packet type is HV1 the LMP\_accepted shall be sent using the DM1 packet.

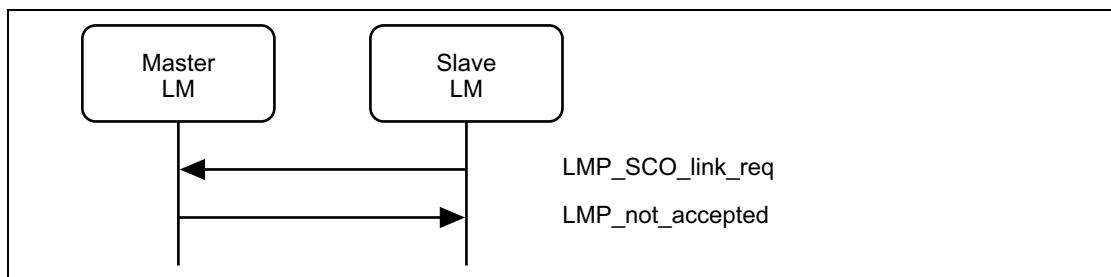


Sequence 99: Master requests an SCO link

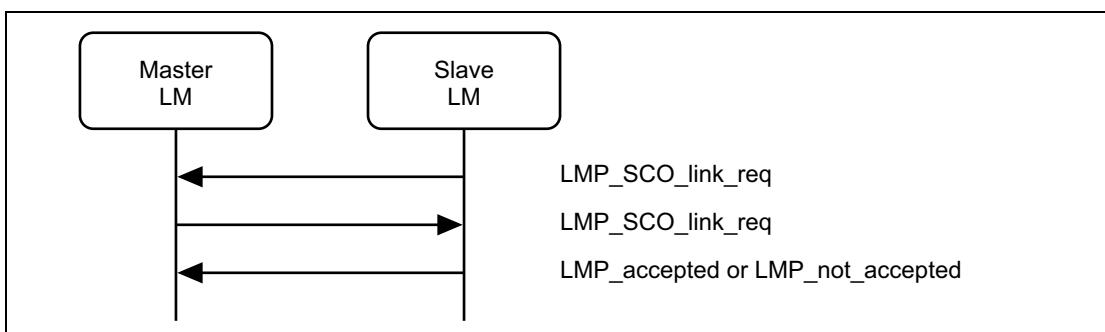
#### 4.6.1.2 Slave Initiates an SCO Link

The slave may initiate the establishment of an SCO link. The slave sends an LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU, but the parameters timing control flags and  $D_{SCO}$  are invalid as well as the SCO handle, that shall be zero. If the master is not capable of establishing an SCO link, it replies with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU. Otherwise it sends back an LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU. This message includes the assigned SCO handle,  $D_{SCO}$  and the timing control flags. The master should try to use the same parameters as in the slave request; if the master cannot meet that request, it is allowed to use other values. The slave shall then reply with LMP\_accepted or LMP\_not\_accepted PDU.

If the SCO packet type is HV1 the LMP\_accepted shall be sent using the DM1 packet.



Sequence 100: Master rejects slave's request for an SCO link



*Sequence 101: Master accepts slave's request for an SCO link*

#### 4.6.1.3 Master Requests Change of SCO Parameters

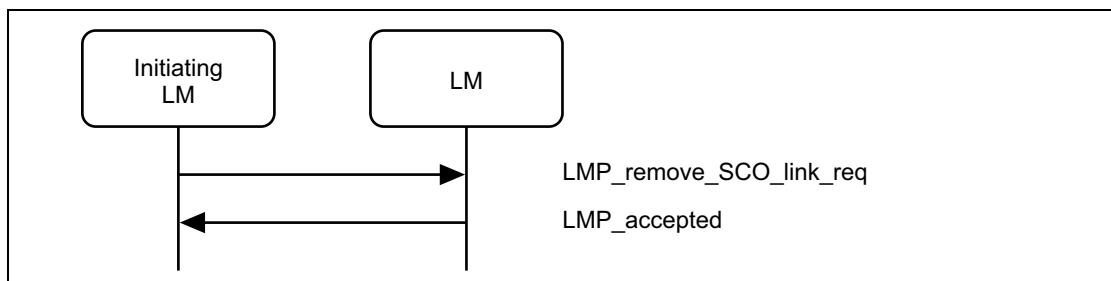
The master sends an LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU, where the SCO handle is the handle of the SCO link the master wishes to change parameters for. If the slave accepts the new parameters, it replies with an LMP\_accepted PDU and the SCO link will change to the new parameters. If the slave does not accept the new parameters, it shall reply with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU and the SCO link is left unchanged. When the slave replies with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU it shall indicate in the error code parameter what it does not accept. The master may then try to change the SCO link again with modified parameters. The sequence is the same as in [Section 4.6.1.1 on page 334](#).

#### 4.6.1.4 Slave Requests Change of SCO Parameters

The slave sends an LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU, where the SCO handle is the handle of the SCO link to be changed. The parameters timing control flags and  $D_{SCO}$  are not valid in this PDU. If the master does not accept the new parameters it shall reply with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU and the SCO link is left unchanged. If the master accepts the new parameters it shall reply with an LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU containing the same parameters as in the slave request. When receiving this message the slave replies with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU if it does not accept the new parameters. The SCO link is then left unchanged. If the slave accepts the new parameters it replies with an LMP\_accepted PDU and the SCO link will change to the new parameters. The sequence is the same as in [Section 4.6.1.2 on page 335](#).

#### 4.6.1.5 Remove a SCO link

Master or slave may remove the SCO link by sending a request including the SCO handle of the SCO link to be removed and an error code indicating why the SCO link is removed. The receiving side shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU.



Sequence 102: SCO link removed

Note that the slave shall use the initialization flag appropriate to the master's Bluetooth clock. See [section 8.6.3, "eSCO," on page 178](#).

#### 4.6.2 eSCO Logical Transport

After an ACL link has been established, one or more extended SCO (eSCO) links can be set up to the remote device. The eSCO links are similar to SCO links using timing control flags, an interval  $T_{eSCO}$  and an offset  $D_{eSCO}$ . Only bit1 of the timing control flags parameter is valid. As opposed to SCO links, eSCO links have a configurable data rate that may be asymmetric, and can be set up to provide limited retransmissions of lost or damaged packets inside a retransmission window of size  $W_{eSCO}$ . The  $D_{eSCO}$  shall be based on CLK.

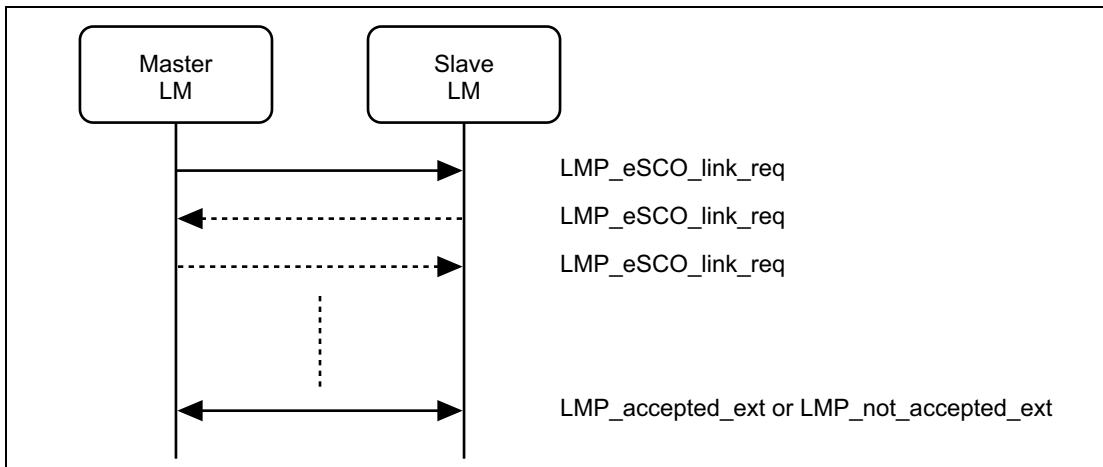
M/O	PDU	Contents
O(31)	LMP_eSCO_link_req	eSCO handle eSCO LT_ADDR timing control flags $D_{eSCO}$ $T_{eSCO}$ $W_{eSCO}$ eSCO packet type M->S eSCO packet type S->M packet length M->S packet length S->M air mode negotiation state
O(31)	LMP_remove_eSCO_link_req	eSCO handle error

Table 4.33: PDUs used for managing the eSCO links

The parameters  $D_{eSCO}$ ,  $T_{eSCO}$ ,  $W_{eSCO}$ , eSCO packet type M->S, eSCO packet type S->M, packet length M->S, packet length S->M are henceforth referred to as the negotiable parameters.

#### 4.6.2.1 Master initiates an eSCO link

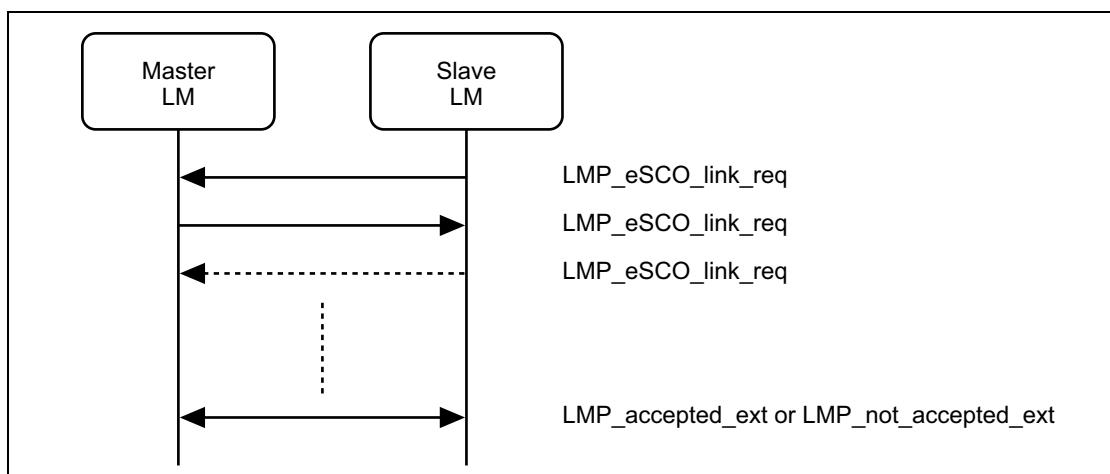
When establishing an eSCO link the master sends an LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req PDU specifying all parameters. The slave may accept this with an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU, reject it with an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU, or respond with its own LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req specifying alternatives for some or all parameters. The slave shall not negotiate the eSCO handle or eSCO LT\_ADDR parameters. The negotiation of parameters continues until the master or slave either accepts the latest parameters with an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU, or terminates the negotiation with an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU. The negotiation shall use the procedures defined in [Section 4.6.2.5 on page 340](#).



Sequence 103: Master requests an eSCO link

#### 4.6.2.2 Slave Initiates an eSCO Link

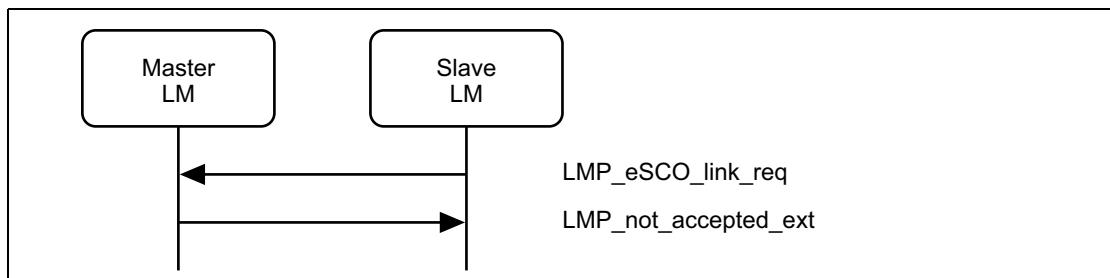
When attempting to establish an eSCO link the slave shall send an LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req PDU specifying all parameters, with the exception of eSCO LT\_ADDR and eSCO handle, which are invalid. The latter shall be set to zero. The master may respond to this with an LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req PDU, filling in these missing parameters, and potentially changing the other requested parameters. The slave can accept this with an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU, or respond with a further LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req PDU specifying alternatives for some or all of the parameters. The negotiation of parameters continues until the master or slave either accepts the latest parameters with an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU, or terminates the negotiation with an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU.



*Sequence 104: Slave requests an eSCO link*

Note that the slave should use the initialization flag appropriate to the master's Bluetooth clock. See Baseband Specification [Section 8.6.3](#).

The master may reject the request immediately with an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU. The negotiation shall use the procedures defined in [Section 4.6.2.5 on page 340](#).



*Sequence 105: Master rejects slave's request for an eSCO link*

#### 4.6.2.3 Master or slave requests change of eSCO parameters

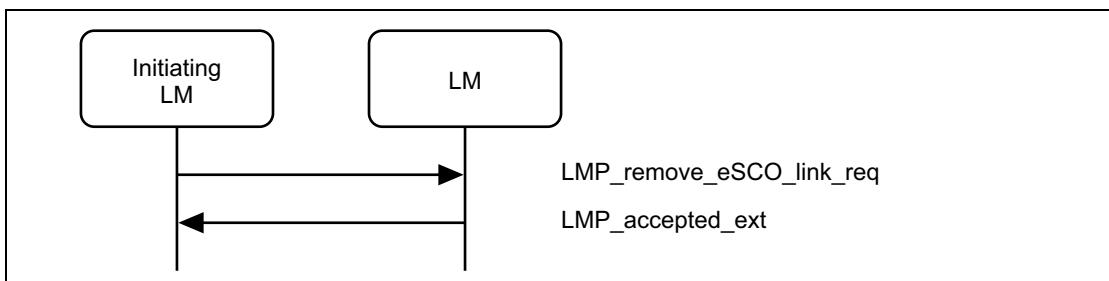
The master or slave may request a renegotiation of the eSCO parameters. The master or slave shall send an LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req PDU with the eSCO handle of the eSCO link the device wishes to renegotiate. The remote device may accept the changed parameters immediately with LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU, or the negotiation may be continued with further LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req PDUs until the master or slave accepts the latest parameters with an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU or terminates the negotiation with an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU. In the case of termination with an LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext PDU, the eSCO link continues on the previously negotiated parameters.

The sequence is the same as in [Section 4.6.2.2 on page 338](#).

During re-negotiation, the eSCO LT\_ADDR and eSCO handle shall not be re-negotiated and shall be set to the originally negotiated values. The negotiation shall use the procedures defined in [Section 4.6.2.5 on page 340](#).

#### 4.6.2.4 Remove an eSCO Link

Either the master or slave may remove the eSCO link by sending a request including the eSCO handle of the eSCO link to be removed and an error code indicating why the eSCO link is removed. The receiving side shall respond with an LMP\_accepted\_ext PDU. The slave shall shut down its eSCO logical transport before sending its PDU (LMP\_remove\_eSCO\_link\_req for slave initiated removal, LMP\_accepted\_ext for master initiated). The master shall not reassign the eSCO LT\_ADDR until the end of the removal procedure. If, for some reason, such as the slave being out of range, the procedure cannot be completed, the master shall not reassign the eSCO LT\_ADDR until the primary LT\_ADDR is available for reuse (supervision timeout).



Sequence 106: eSCO link removed

#### 4.6.2.5 Rules for the LMP negotiation and renegotiation

**Rule 1:** the negotiation\_state shall be set to 0 by the initiating LM. After the initial LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req is sent the negotiation\_state shall not be set to 0.

**Rule 2:** if the bandwidth (defined as 1600 times the packet length in bytes divided by  $T_{eSCO}$  in slots) for either RX or TX or the air\_mode cannot be accepted the device shall send LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext with the appropriate error code.

**Rule 3:** Bandwidth and air\_mode are not negotiable and shall not be changed for the duration of the negotiation. Once one side has rejected the negotiation (with LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext) a new negotiation may be started with different bandwidth and air\_mode parameters.

**Rule 4:** if the parameters will cause a latency violation ( $T_{eSCO} + W_{eSCO} + \text{reserved synchronous slots} > \text{allowed local latency}$ ) the device should propose new parameters that shall not cause a reserved slot violation or latency violation for the device that is sending the parameters. In this case the negotiation\_state shall be set to 3. Otherwise the device shall send LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext.

**Rule 5:** once a device has received an LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req with the negotiation\_state set to 3 (latency violation), the device shall not propose any combination of packet type,  $T_{eSCO}$ , and  $W_{eSCO}$  that will give an equal or larger latency than the combination that caused the latency violation for the other device.

**Rule 6:** if the parameters cause both a reserved slot violation and a latency violation or if the parameters are not supported and a latency violation occurs, then the device shall set the negotiation\_state to 3 (latency violation).

**Rule 7:** if the parameters will cause a reserved slot violation the device should propose new parameters that shall not cause a reserved slot violation. In this case the negotiation\_state shall be set to 2. Otherwise the device shall send LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext.

**Rule 8:** If the requested parameters are not supported the device should propose a setting that is supported, and set the negotiation\_state to 4. If it is not possible to find such a parameter set, the device shall send LMP\_not\_accepted\_ext.

**Rule 9:** when proposing new parameters for reasons other than a latency violation, reserved slot violation, or configuration not supported, the negotiation\_state shall be set to 1.

#### 4.6.2.6 Negotiation State Definitions

Reserved Slot Violation: a reserved slot violation is when the receiving LM cannot setup the requested eSCO logical transport because the eSCO reserved slots would overlap with other regularly scheduled slots (e.g. other synchronous reserved slots, sniff anchor points, or park beacons).

Latency Violation: a latency violation is when the receiving LM cannot setup the requested eSCO logical transport because the latency ( $W_{eSCO} + T_{eSCO} +$  reserved synchronous slots) is greater than the maximum allowed latency.

Configuration not supported: The combination of parameters requested is not inside the supported range for the device.

## 4.7 TEST MODE

LMP has PDUs to support different test modes used for certification and compliance testing of the Bluetooth radio and baseband. See [Test Methodology\[Vol. 3, Part D\] Section 1 on page 417](#) for a detailed description of these test modes.

### 4.7.1 Activation and Deactivation of Test Mode

The activation may be carried out locally (via a HW or SW interface), or using the air interface.

- For activation over the air interface, entering the test mode shall be locally enabled for security and type approval reasons. The implementation of this local enabling is not subject to standardization.

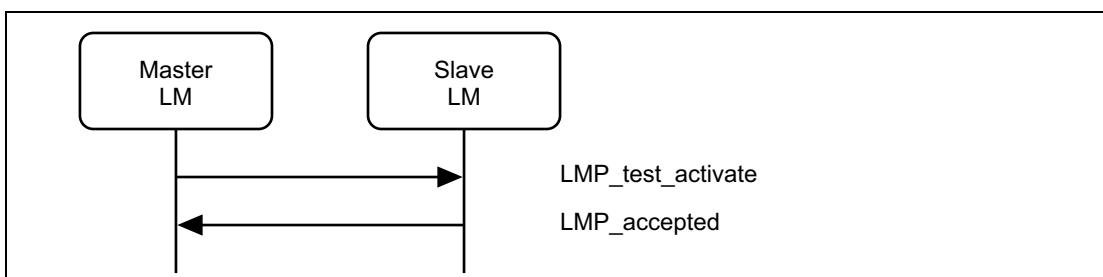
The tester sends an LMP command that shall force the DUT to enter test mode. The DUT shall terminate all normal operation before entering the test mode.

The DUT shall return an LMP\_Accepted PDU on reception of an activation command. An LMP\_Not\_Accepted PDU shall be returned if the DUT is not locally enabled.

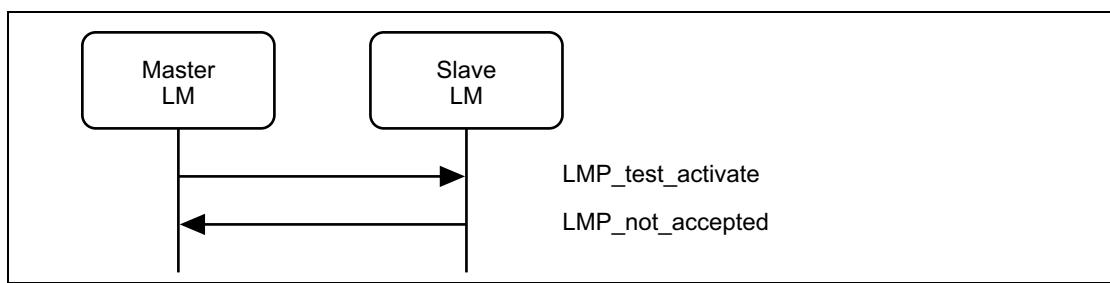
- If the activation is performed locally using a HW or SW interface, the DUT shall terminate all normal operation before entering the test mode.

Until a connection to the tester exists, the device shall perform page scan and inquiry scan. Extended scan activity is recommended.

The test mode is activated by sending an LMP\_test\_activate PDU to the device under test (DUT). The DUT is always the slave. The lm shall be able to receive this message anytime. If entering test mode is locally enabled in the DUT it shall respond with an LMP\_accepted PDU and test mode is entered. Otherwise the DUT responds with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU and the DUT remains in normal operation. The error code in the LMP\_not\_accepted PDU shall be *LMP PDU Not Allowed (0x24)*.



Sequence 107: Activation of test mode successful



Sequence 108: Activation of test mode fails. Slave is not allowed to enter test mode

The test mode can be deactivated in two ways. Sending an LMP\_test\_control PDU with the test scenario set to "exit test mode" exits the test mode and the slave returns to normal operation still connected to the master. Sending an LMP\_detach PDU to the DUT ends the test mode and the connection.

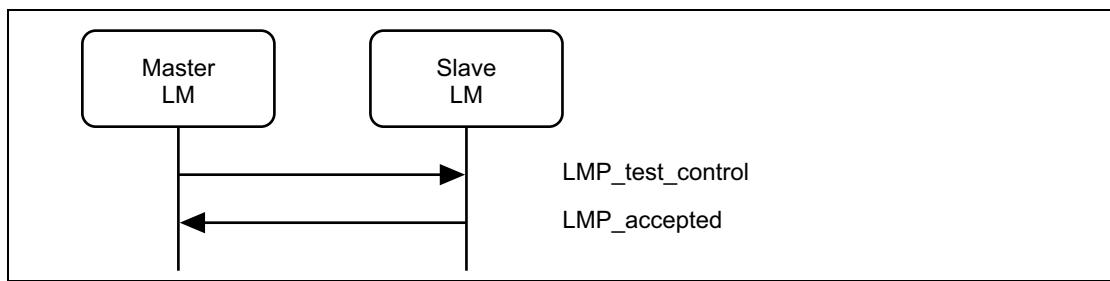
#### 4.7.2 Control of Test Mode

Control and configuration is performed using special LMP commands (see [Section 4.7.3 on page 345](#)). These commands shall be rejected if the Bluetooth device is not in test mode. In this case, an LMP\_not\_accepted shall be returned. The DUT shall return an LMP\_accepted on reception of a control command when in test mode.

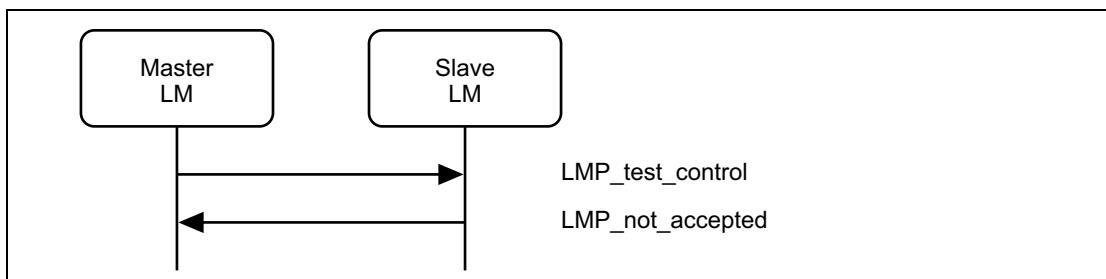
A Bluetooth device in test mode shall ignore all LMP commands not related to control of the test mode. LMP commands dealing with power control and the request for LMP features (LMP\_features\_req), and adaptive frequency hopping (LMP\_set\_AFH, LMP\_channel\_classification\_req and LMP\_channel\_classification) are allowed in test mode; the normal procedures are also used to test the adaptive power control.

The DUT shall leave the test mode when an LMP\_Detach command is received or an LMP\_test\_control command is received with test scenario set to 'exit test mode'.

When the DUT has entered test mode, the PDU LMP\_test\_control PDU can be sent to the DUT to start a specific test. This PDU is acknowledged with an LMP\_accepted PDU. If a device that is not in test mode receives an LMP\_test\_control PDU it responds with an LMP\_not\_accepted PDU, where the error code shall be *LMP PDU Not Allowed (0x24)*.



Sequence 109: Control of test mode successful



Sequence 110: Control of test mode rejected since slave is not in test mode

### 4.7.3 Summary of Test Mode PDUs

**Table 4.15** lists all LMP messages used for test mode. To ensure that the contents of LMP\_test\_control PDU are suitably whitened (important when sent in transmitter mode), all parameters listed in [Table 4.34 on page 345](#) are XORed with 0x55 before being sent.

LMP PDU	PDU number	Possible Direction	Contents	Position in Payload
LMP_test_activate	56	m → s		
LMP_test_control	57	m → s	test scenario hopping mode TX frequency RX frequency power control mode poll period packet type length of test data	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9-10
LMP_detach	7	m → s		
LMP_accepted	3	m ← s		
LMP_not_accepted	4	m ← s		

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed
Test scenario	1	u_int8		0 Pause Test Mode 1 Transmitter test – 0 pattern 2 Transmitter test – 1 pattern 3 Transmitter test – 1010 pattern 4 Pseudorandom bit sequence 5 Closed Loop Back – ACL packets 6 Closed Loop Back – Synchronous packets 7 ACL Packets without whitening 8 Synchronous Packets without whitening 9 Transmitter test – 1111 0000 pattern 10–254 reserved 255 Exit Test Mode The value is XORed with 0x55.

*Table 4.34: Parameters used in LMP\_Test\_Control PDU*

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed
Hopping mode	1	u_int8		0 RX/TX on single frequency 1 Normal hopping 2 Reserved 3 Reserved 4 Reserved 5–255 reserved The value is XORed with 0x55.
TX frequency (for DUT)	1	u_int8		$f = [2402 + k]$ MHz The value is XORed with 0x55.
RX frequency (for DUT)	1	u_int8		$f = [2402 + k]$ MHz The value is XORed with 0x55.
Power control mode	1	u_int8		0 fixed TX output power 1 adaptive power control The value is XORed with 0x55.
Poll period	1	u_int8	1.25 ms	The value is XORed with 0x55.
Packet type	1	u_int8		Bits 3-0 numbering as in packet header, see <a href="#">Baseband Specification</a> Bits 7-4 0: ACL/SCO 1: eSCO 2: Enhanced Data Rate ACL 3: Enhanced Data Rate eSCO 4-15: reserved Other values are reserved The value is XORed with 0x55.
length of test sequence (=length of user data in <a href="#">Baseband Specification</a> )	2	u_int16	1 byte	unsigned binary number The value is XORed with 0x5555.

Table 4.34: Parameters used in LMP\_Test\_Control PDU

The control PDU is used for both transmitter and loop back tests. The following restrictions apply for the parameter settings:

Parameter	Restrictions Transmitter Test	Restrictions Loopback Test
TX frequency	$0 \leq k \leq 78$	$0 \leq k \leq 78$
RX frequency	same as TX frequency	$0 \leq k \leq 78$
Poll period		not applicable (set to 0)
Length of test sequence	Depends on packet type. See <a href="#">Table 6.9</a> and <a href="#">Table 6.10</a> in the Baseband specification	For ACL and SCO packets: not applicable (set to 0)  For eSCO packets: [see <a href="#">Table 6.10</a> in the Baseband specification]

## 5 SUMMARY

### 5.1 PDU SUMMARY

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
Escape 1	variable	124	DM1	m ↔ s	extended op code variable	2 3-?
Escape 2	variable	125	DM1	m ↔ s	extended op code variable	2 3-?
Escape 3	variable	126	DM1	m ↔ s	extended op code variable	2 3-?
Escape 4	variable	127	DM1	m ↔ s	extended op code variable	2 3-?
LMP_accepted	2	3	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	op code	2
LMP_accepted_ext	4	127/01	DM1	m ↔ s	escape op code extended op code	3 4
LMP_au_rand	17	11	DM1	m ↔ s	random number	2-17
LMP_auto_rate	1	35	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	-	
LMP_channel_classification	12	127/17	DM1	m ← s	AFH_channel_classification	3 – 12
LMP_channel_classification_req	7	127/16	DM1	m → s	AFH_reporting_mode AFH_min_interval AFH_max_interval	3 4-5 6-7
LMP_clk_adj	15	127/5	DM1	m → s	clk_adj_id clk_adj_instant clk_adj_us clk_adj_slots clk_adj_mode clk_adj_clk	3 4-7 8-9 10 11 12-15
LMP_clk_adj_ack	3	127/6	DM1	s → m	clk_adj_id	3

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 1 of 10)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_clk_adj_req	6	127/7	DM1	m ← s	clk_adj_us	3-4
					clk_adj_slots	5
					clk_adj_period	6
LMP_clkoffset_req	1	5	DM1/DV	m → s	—	
LMP_clkoffset_res	3	6	DM1/DV	m ← s	clock offset	2-3
LMP_comb_key	17	9	DM1	m ↔ s	random number	2-17
LMP_decr_power_req	2	32	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	for future use	2
LMP_detach	2	7	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	error code	2
LMP_DHkey_Check	17	65	DM1	m ↔ s	Confirmation Value	2-17
LMP_encapsulated_header	4	61	DM1	m ↔ s	encapsulated major type	2
					encapsulated minor type	3
					encapsulated payload length	4
LMP_encapsulated_payload	17	62	DM1	m ↔ s	encapsulated data	2-17
LMP_encryption_key_size_mask_req	1	58	DM1	m → s		
LMP_encryption_key_size_mask_res	3	59	DM1	m ← s	key size mask	2-3
LMP_encryption_key_size_req	2	16	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	key size	2
LMP_encryption_mode_req	2	15	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	encryption mode	2

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 2 of 10)

## Link Manager Protocol Specification



LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_eSCO_link_req	16	127/12	DM1	m↔s	eSCO handle eSCO LT_ADDR timing control flags $D_{eSCO}$ $T_{eSCO}$ $W_{eSCO}$ eSCO packet type M->S eSCO packet type S->M packet length M->S packet length S->M air mode negotiation state	3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11-12 13-14 15 16
LMP_features_req	9	39	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	features	2-9
LMP_features_req_ext	12	127/03	DM1	m ↔ s	features page max supported page extended features	3 4 5-12
LMP_features_res	9	40	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	features	2-9
LMP_features_res_ext	12	127/04	DM1	m ↔ s	features page max supported page extended features	3 4 5-12
LMP_hold	7	20	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	hold time hold instant	2-3 4-7
LMP_hold_req	7	21	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	hold time hold instant	2-3 4-7
LMP_host_connection_req	1	51	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	-	
LMP_in_rand	17	8	DM1	m ↔ s	random number	2-17
LMP_incr_power_req	2	31	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	for future use	2

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 3 of 10)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_IO_Capability_req	5	127/25	DM1	m ↔ s	IO_capabilities	3
					OOB Authentication Data	4
					Authentication_Requirement	5
LMP_IO_Capability_res	5	127/26	DM1	m ↔ s	IO_capabilities	3
					OOB Authentication Data	4
					Authentication_Requirement	5
LMP_keypress_notification	3	127/30	DM1	m ↔ s	Notification Type	2
LMP_max_power	1	33	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	—	
LMP_max_slot	2	45	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	max slots	2
LMP_max_slot_req	2	46	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	max slots	2
LMP_min_power	1	34	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	—	
LMP_modify_beacon	11 or 13	28	DM1	m → s	timing control flags	2
					D <sub>B</sub>	3-4
					T <sub>B</sub>	5-6
					N <sub>B</sub>	7
					Δ <sub>B</sub>	8
					D <sub>access</sub>	9
					T <sub>access</sub>	10
					N <sub>acc-slots</sub>	11
					N <sub>poll</sub>	12
					M <sub>access</sub>	13:0-3
					access scheme	13:4-7
LMP_name_req	2	1	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	name offset	2
LMP_name_res	17	2	DM1	m ↔ s	name offset	2
					name length	3
					name fragment	4-17

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 4 of 10)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_not_accepted	3	4	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	op code error code	2 3
LMP_not_accepted_ext	5	127/02	DM1	m ↔ s	escape op code extended op code error code	3 4 5
LMP_numeric_comparison_failed	2	127/27	DM1	m ↔ s	–	
LMP_oob_failed	2	127/29	DM1	m ↔ s		
LMP_packet_type_table_req	3	127/11	DM1	m ↔ s	packet type table	3
LMP_page_mode_req	3	53	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	paging scheme paging scheme settings	2 3
LMP_page_scan_mode_req	3	54	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	paging scheme paging scheme settings	2 3
LMP_park_req	17	25	DM1	m ↔ s	timing control flags $D_B$ $T_B$ $N_B$ $\Delta_B$ PM_ADDR AR_ADDR $N_{B\text{sleep}}$ $D_{B\text{sleep}}$ $D_{\text{access}}$ $T_{\text{access}}$ $N_{\text{acc-slots}}$ $N_{\text{poll}}$ $M_{\text{access}}$ access scheme	2 3-4 5-6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17:0-3 17:4-7

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 5 of 10)

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_passkey_failed	2	127/28	DM1	m ↔ s	–	
LMP_pause_encryption_aes_req	17	66	DM1	m ↔ s	random number	2-17
LMP_pause_encryption_req	2	127/23	DM1	m ↔ s	–	
LMP_ping_req	2	127/33	DM1	m ↔ s	–	
LMP_ping_res	2	127/34	DM1	m ↔ s	–	
LMP_power_control_req	3	127/31	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	power_adjustment_request	3
LMP_power_control_res	3	127/32	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	power_adjustment_response	3
LMP_preferred_rate	2	36	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	data rate	2
LMP_quality_of_service	4	41	DM1/DV	m → s	poll interval $N_{BC}$	2-3 4
LMP_quality_of_service_req	4	42	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	poll interval $N_{BC}$	2-3 4
LMP_remove_eSCO_link_req see Note 4 on page 357	4	127/13	DM1	m↔s	eSCO handle error code	3 4
LMP_remove_SCO_link_req	3	44	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	SCO handle error code	2 3
LMP_resume_encryption_req	2	127/24	DM1	m ← s	–	
LMP_SCO_link_req	7	43	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	SCO handle timing control flags $D_{SCO}$ $T_{SCO}$ SCO packet air mode	2 3 4 5 6 7
LMP_set_AFH	16	60	DM1	m → s	AFH_instant AFH_mode AFH_channel_map	2-5 6 7-16

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 6 of 10)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_set_broadcast_scan_window	4 or 6	27	DM1	m → s	timing control flags	2
					D <sub>B</sub>	3-4
					broadcast scan window	5-6
LMP_setup_complete	1	49	DM1	m ↔ s	-	
LMP_Simple_Pairing_Confirm	17	63	DM1	m ↔ s	Commitment Value	2-17
LMP_Simple_Pairing_Number	17	64	DM1	m ↔ s	Nonce Value	2-17
LMP_slot_offset	9	52	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	slot offset	2-3
					BD_ADDR	4-9
LMP_sniff_req	10	23	DM1	m ↔ s	timing control flags	2
					D <sub>sniff</sub>	3-4
					T <sub>sniff</sub>	5-6
					sniff attempt	7-8
					sniff timeout	9-10
LMP_sniff_subrating_req	9	127/21	DM1	m ↔ s	max_sniff_subrate	3
					min_sniff_mode_timeout	4-5
					sniff_subrating_instant	6-9
LMP_sniff_subrating_res	9	127/22	DM1	m ↔ s	max_sniff_subrate	3
					min_sniff_mode_timeout	4-5
					sniff_subrating_instant	6-9
LMP_sres	5	12	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	authentication response	2-5
LMP_start_encryption_req	17	17	DM1	m → s	random number	2-17
LMP_stop_encryption_req	1	18	DM1/DV	m → s	-	
LMP_supervision_timeout	3	55	DM1/DV	m → s	supervision timeout	2-3

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 7 of 10)

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_switch_req	5	19	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	switch instant	2-5
LMP_temp_key	17	14	DM1	m → s	key	2-17
LMP_temp_rand	17	13	DM1	m → s	random number	2-17
LMP_test_activate	1	56	DM1/DV	m → s	—	
LMP_test_control	10	57	DM1	m → s	test scenario	2
					hopping mode	3
					TX frequency	4
					RX frequency	5
					power control mode	6
					poll period	7
					packet type	8
					length of test data	9-10
LMP_timing_accuracy_req	1	47	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	—	
LMP_timing_accuracy_res	3	48	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	drift	2
					jitter	3
LMP_unit_key	17	10	DM1	m ↔ s	key	2-17
LMP_unpark_BD_ADDR_req	variable	29	DM1	m → s	timing control flags	2
					D <sub>B</sub>	3-4
					LT_ADDR 1 <sup>st</sup> unpark	5:0-2
					LT_ADDR 2 <sup>nd</sup> unpark	5:4-6
					BD_ADDR 1 <sup>st</sup> unpark	6-11
					BD_ADDR 2 <sup>nd</sup> unpark	12-17

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 8 of 10)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_unpark_PM_ADDR_req	variable	30	DM1	m → s	timing control flags D_B LT_ADDR 1 <sup>st</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 2 <sup>nd</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 1 <sup>st</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 2 <sup>nd</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 3 <sup>rd</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 4 <sup>th</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 3 <sup>rd</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 4 <sup>th</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 5 <sup>th</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 6 <sup>th</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 6 <sup>th</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 6 <sup>th</sup> unpark LT_ADDR 7 <sup>th</sup> unpark PM_ADDR 7 <sup>th</sup> unpark	2 3-4 5:0-3 5:4-7 6 7 8:0-3 8:4-7 9 10 11:0-3 11:4-7 12 13 14:0-3 15
LMP_unsniff_req	1	24	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	-	
LMP_use_semi_permanent_key	1	50	DM1/DV	m → s	-	

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 9 of 10)

LMP PDU	Length (bytes)	op code	Packet type	Possible direction	Contents	Position in payload
LMP_version_req	6	37	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	VersNr	2
					Compld	3-4
					SubVersNr	5-6
LMP_version_res	6	38	DM1/DV	m ↔ s	VersNr	2
					Compld	3-4
					SubVersNr	5-6

Table 5.1: Coding of the different LM PDUs (Sheet 10 of 10)

**Note1:** For LMP\_set\_broadcast\_scan\_window, LMP\_modify\_beacon, LMP\_unpark\_BD\_ADDR\_req and LMP\_unpark\_PM\_ADDR\_req the parameter  $D_B$  is optional. This parameter is only present if bit0 of *timing control flags* is 1. If the parameter is not included, the position in payload for all parameters following  $D_B$  are decreased by 2.

**Note2:** For LMP\_unpark\_BD\_ADDR the LT\_ADDR and the BD\_ADDR of the 2<sup>nd</sup> unparked slave are optional. If only one slave is unparked *LT\_ADDR 2<sup>nd</sup> unpark* shall be zero and *BD\_ADDR 2<sup>nd</sup> unpark* is left out.

**Note3:** For LMP\_unpark\_PM\_ADDR the LT\_ADDR and the PM\_ADDR of the 2<sup>nd</sup> – 7<sup>th</sup> unparked slaves are optional. If N slaves are unparked, the fields up to and including the N<sup>th</sup> unparked slave are present. If N is odd, the *LT\_ADDR (N+1)<sup>th</sup> unpark* shall be zero. The length of the message is  $x + 3N/2$  if N is even and  $x + 3(N+1)/2 - 1$  if N is odd, where  $x = 2$  or  $4$  depending on if the  $D_B$  is included or Not (See Note1).

**Note4:** Parameters coincide with their namesakes in LMP\_<remove>\_SCO\_link\_req apart from the following:

1. eSCO\_LT\_ADDR - the eSCO connection will be active on an additional LT\_ADDR that needs to be defined. The master is allowed to re-assign an active eSCO link to a different LT\_ADDR.
2. D<sub>eSCO</sub>, T<sub>eSCO</sub> - as per LMP\_SCO\_link\_req but with a greater flexibility in values (e.g. no longer fixed with respect to HV1, HV2, and HV3 packet choice).
3. W<sub>eSCO</sub> - the eSCO retransmission window size (in slots)
4. packet type and packet length may be prescribed differently in Master-to-Slave or Slave-to-Master directions for asynchronous eSCO links
5. packet length (in bytes) - eSCO packet types no longer have fixed length

6. negotiation state – this is used to better enable the negotiation of the negotiable parameters:  $D_{eSCO}$ ,  $T_{eSCO}$ ,  $W_{eSCO}$ , eSCO packet type M->S, eSCO packet type S->M, packet length M->S, packet length S->M. When responding to an eSCO link request with a new suggestion for these parameters, this flag may be set to 1 to indicate that the last received negotiable parameters are possible, but the new parameters specified in the response eSCO link request would be preferable, to 2 to indicate that the last received negotiable parameters are not possible as they cause a reserved slot violation or to 3 to indicate that the last received negotiable parameters would cause a latency violation. The flag shall be set to zero in the initiating LMP\_eSCO\_link\_req.

## 5.2 PARAMETER DEFINITIONS

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
access scheme	1	u_int4		0: polling technique 1-15: Reserved	
AFH_channel_classification	10	multiple bytes	-	This parameter contains 40 2-bit fields.  The $n^{th}$ (numbering from 0) such field defines the classification of channels $2n$ and $2n+1$ , other than the 39 <sup>th</sup> field which just contains the classification of channel 78.  Each field interpreted as an integer whose values indicate: 0 = unknown 1 = good 2 = reserved 3 = bad	
AFH_channel_map	10	multiple bytes	-	If $AFH\_mode$ is $AFH\_enabled$ , this parameter contains 79 1-bit fields, otherwise the contents are reserved.  The $n^{th}$ (numbering from 0) such field (in the range 0 to 78) contains the value for channel $n$ .  Bit 79 is reserved (set to 0 when transmitted and ignored when received)  The 1-bit field is interpreted as follows: 0: channel $n$ is unused 1: channel $n$ is used	
AFH_instant	4	u_int32	slots	Bits 27:1 of the Bluetooth master clock value at the time of switching hop sequences. Shall be even.	
AFH_max_interval	2	u_int16	slots	Range is 0x0640 to 0xBB80 slots (1 to 30s)	
AFH_min_interval	2	u_int16	slots	Range is 0x0640 to 0xBB80 slots (1 to 30s)	

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 1 of 11)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
AFH_mode	1	u_int8	-	0: AFH_disabled 1: AFH_enabled 2-255: Reserved	
AFH_reporting_mode	1	u_int8	-	0: AFH_reporting_disabled 1: AFH_reporting_enabled 2-255: reserved	
air mode	1	u_int8		0: µ-law log 1: A-law log 2: CVSD 3: transparent data 4-255: Reserved	See <a href="#">Table 5.3 on page 370</a>
AR_ADDR	1	u_int8			
authentication response	4	multiple bytes			
Authentication_ Requirements	1	u_int8		0x00:MITM Protection Not Required – No Bonding 0x01: MITM Protection Required – No Bonding 0x02: MITM Protection Not Required – Dedicated Bonding 0x03: MITM Protection Required – Dedicated Bonding 0x04: MITM Protection Not Required – General Bonding 0x05: MITM Protection Required – General Bonding 0x06 to 0xFF– Reserved	
BD_ADDR	6	multiple bytes		BD_ADDR of the sending device	
broadcast scan window	2	u_int16	slots		
clk_adj_clk	4	u_int32	slot pairs	CLK[27:2] for the moment that the PDU is transmitted.	

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 2 of 11)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
clk_adj_id	1	u_int8		clk_adj_id is chosen by the master as a handle to identify a Coarse Clock Adjustment event.	
clk_adj_instant	4	u_int32	slots	CLK <sub>old</sub> [27:1] at the time of the coarse clock adjustment, based on the value of time_base_offset before the adjustment is made. Only even values are valid <sup>1</sup> .	
clk_adj_mode	1	u_int8		0: Before Instant 1: After Instant 2-255: RESERVED	
clk_adj_period	1	u_int8	slots	Indicates to the master that adding an integer multiple of this value to clk_adj_slots gives an equally acceptable adjustment. The value of clk_adj_period shall be zero or an even number greater than clk_adj_slots. Only even values are valid <sup>1</sup> .	0 to 255
clk_adj_slots	1	u_int8	slots	The difference between the clocks at the adjustment instant (i.e. CLK <sub>new</sub> [27:1] – CLK <sub>old</sub> [27:1]).	0 to 255
clk_adj_us	2	int16	μs	The offset between the old and new slot boundaries. Valid range is –624 to +624.	–624 to +624
clock offset	2	u_int16	1.25ms	(CLKN <sub>16-2</sub> slave – CLKN <sub>16-2</sub> master) mod 2 <sup>15</sup> MSbit of second byte not used.	
Commitment value	16	Multiple bytes		Little Endian format	
Compld	2	u_int16		see Bluetooth Assigned Numbers)	

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 3 of 11)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
Confirmation value	16	Multiple bytes		Little Endian format	
$D_{access}$	1	u_int8	slots		
data rate	1	u_int8		When in Basic Rate mode: bit0 = 0: use FEC bit0 = 1: do not use FEC bit1-2=0: No packet-size preference available bit1-2=1: use 1-slot packets bit1-2=2: use 3-slot packets bit1-2=3: use 5-slot packets	
				When in Enhanced Data Rate mode: bit3-4=0: use DM1 packets bit3-4=1: use 2 Mbps packets bit3-4=2: use 3 Mbps packets bit3-4=3: reserved bit5-6=0: No packet-size preference available bit5-6=1: use 1-slot packets bit5-6=2: use 3-slot packets bit5-6=3: use 5-slot packets  bit7: Reserved - shall be zero	
$D_B$	2	u_int16	slots		
$\Delta_B$	1	u_int8	slots		
$D_{Bsleep}$	1	u_int8			
$D_{esco}$	1	u_int8	slots	Valid range is 0 - 254 slots	See Table 5.3 on page 370
drift	1	u_int8	ppm		

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 4 of 11)

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
D <sub>sco</sub>	1	u_int8	slots	Only even values are valid <sup>1</sup>	0 to T <sub>sco</sub> -2
D <sub>sniff</sub>	2	u_int16	slots	Only even values are valid <sup>1</sup>	0 to (T <sub>sniff</sub> - 2)
encapsulated data	16	Multiple bytes		MSBs zero padded when data is less than 16 bytes. Little Endian format	
encapsulated major type	1	u_int8		See <a href="#">Table 5.3, “LMP encapsulated,” on page 370</a>	
encapsulated minor type	1	u_int8		See <a href="#">Table 5.3, “LMP encapsulated,” on page 370</a>	
encapsulated payload length	1	u_int8		See <a href="#">Table 5.3, “LMP encapsulated,” on page 370</a>	
encryption mode	1	u_int8		0: no encryption 1: encryption 2: encryption 3 -255: Reserved	
error code	1	u_int8		See <a href="#">Section Part D on page 379</a>	
escape op code	1	u_int8		Identifies which escape op code is being acknowledged: range 124-127	
eSCO handle	1	u_int8			
eSCO LT_ADDR	1	u_int8		Logical transport address for the eSCO logical transport. The range is extended to 8 bits compared with the normal LT_ADDR field: range 0-7.	0 - 7

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 5 of 11)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
eSCO packet type	1	u_int8		0x00: NULL/POLL 0x07: EV3 0x0C: EV4 0x0D: EV5 0x26: 2-EV3 0x2C: 2-EV5 0x37: 3-EV3 0x3D: 3-EV5 Other values are reserved	If the value is 0x00 the POLL packet shall be used by the master, the NULL packet shall be used by the slave. See <a href="#">Table 5.3 on page 370</a>
extended features	8	multiple bytes		One page of extended features	
extended op code	1	u_int8		Which extended op code is being acknowledged	
features	8	multiple bytes		See <a href="#">Table 3.2 on page 246</a>	
features page	1	u_int8		Identifies which page of extended features is being requested. 0 means standard features 1-255 other feature pages	
hold instant	4	u_int32	slots	Bits 27:1 of the master Bluetooth clock value	
hold time	2	u_int16	slots	Only even values are valid <sup>1</sup>	0x0014 to 0x8000; shall not exceed (supervisionTO * 0.999)
IO_Capabilities	1	u_int8		0: Display only 1: Display YesNo 2: KeyboardOnly 3: NoInputNoOutput 4-255: reserved	
jitter	1	u_int8	μs		
key	16	multiple bytes			
key size	1	u_int8	byte		

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 6 of 11)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
key size mask	2	u_int16		Bit mask of supported broadcast encryption key sizes: least significant bit is support for length 1, and so on. The bit shall be one if the key size is supported.	
LT_ADDR	1	u_int4			
Maccess	1	u_int4		number of access windows	
max slots	1	u_int8	slots		
max supported page	1	u_int8		Highest page of extended features which contains a non-zero bit for the originating device. Range 0-255	
max_sniff_sub-rate	1	u_int8	sub-rate		1-255
min_sniff_mode_timeout	2	u_int16	slots		0x0000 to 0xFFFF (even)
N <sub>acc-slots</sub>	1	u_int8	slots		
name fragment	14	multiple bytes		UTF-8 characters.	
name length	1	u_int8	bytes		
name offset	1	u_int8	bytes		
N <sub>B</sub>	1	u_int8			
N <sub>BC</sub>	1	u_int8			
N <sub>Bsleep</sub>	1	u_int8			

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 7 of 11)

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
negotiation state	1	u_int8		0: Initiate negotiation 1: the latest received set of negotiable parameters were possible but these parameters are preferred. 2: the latest received set of negotiable parameters would cause a reserved slot violation. 3: the latest received set of negotiable parameters would cause a latency violation. 4: the latest received set of negotiable parameters are not supported. Other values are reserved	
Nonce Value	16	Multiple bytes		Little Endian Format	
Notification Value	1	U_int8		0=passkey entry started 1=passkey digit entered 2=passkey digit erased 3=passkey cleared 4=passkey entry completed 5-255: reserved	
N <sub>poll</sub>	1	u_int8			
OOB Authentication Data	1	u_int8		0: No OOB Authentication Data received 1: OOB Authentication Data received 2-255: reserved	
op code	1	u_int8			

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 8 of 11)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
packet length	2	uint16	bytes	Length of the eSCO payload 0 for POLL/NULL 1-30 for EV3 1-120 for EV4 1-180 for EV5 1-60 for 2-EV3 1-360 for 2-EV5 1-90 for 3-EV3 1-540 for 3-EV5 Other values are invalid	See <a href="#">Table 5.3 on page 370</a>
packet type table	1	u_int8		0: 1Mbps only 1: 2/3 Mbps 2-255: reserved	0-1
paging scheme	1	u_int8		0: mandatory scheme 1-255: Reserved	
paging scheme settings	1	u_int8		For mandatory scheme: 0: R0 1: R1 2: R2 3-255: Reserved	
PM_ADDR	1	u_int8			
poll interval	2	u_int16	slots	Only even values are valid <sup>1</sup>	0x0006 to 0x1000
power_adjustment_request	1	u_int8		0: decrement power one step 1: increment power one step 2: increase to maximum power 3-255: reserved for future use	
power_adjustment_response	1	u_int8		bit0-1: GFSK bit2-3: DQPSK bit4-5: 8DPSK bit6-7: reserved Each 2-bit value is defined as follows 0: not supported 1: changed one step, (not min or max) 2: max power 3: min power	

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 9 of 11)

*Link Manager Protocol Specification*

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
random number	16	multiple bytes			
reserved(n)	n	u_int8		Reserved for future use – shall be 0 when transmitted, ignore value when received	
SCO handle	1	u_int8			
SCO packet	1	u_int8		0: HV1 1: HV2 2: HV3 3-255: Reserved	
slot offset	2	u_int16	μs	0 ≤ slot offset < 1250	
sniff attempt	2	u_int16	received slots	Number of receive slots	1 to $T_{\text{sniff}}/2$
sniff timeout	2	u_int16	received slots	Number of receive slots	0 to 0x0028
sniff_subrating_instant	4	u_int32	slots	Bits 27:1 of the master Bluetooth clock value	
SubVersNr	2	u_int16		Defined by each company	
supervision timeout	2	u_int16	slots	0 means an infinite timeout	0 and 0x0190 to 0xFFFF
switch instant	4	u_int32	slots	Bits 27:1 of the master Bluetooth clock value	
$T_{\text{access}}$	1	u_int8	slots		
$T_B$	2	u_int16	slots		
$T_{\text{esco}}$	1	u_int8	slots	Valid range is 4 – 254 slots	See Table 5.3 on page 370
timing control flags	1	u_int8		bit0 = 0: o timing change bit0 = 1: timing change bit1 = 0: use initialization 1 bit1 = 1: use initialization 2 bit2 = 0: access window bit2 = 1: no access window bit3-7: Reserved	
$T_{\text{sco}}$	1	u_int8	slots	Only even values are valid <sup>1</sup>	2 and 6

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 10 of 11)

Name	Length (bytes)	Type	Unit	Detailed	Mandatory range
T <sub>sniff</sub>	2	u_int16	slots	Only even values are valid <sup>1</sup>	0x0006 to 0x0540; shall not exceed (supervisionTO * 0.999)
VersNr	1	u_int8		See Bluetooth Assigned Numbers	
Wesco	1	u_int8	slots	Number of slots in the retransmission window Valid range is 0 – 254 slots	See Table 5.3 on page 370

Table 5.2: Parameters in LM PDUs. (Sheet 11 of 11)

1. If a device receives an LMP PDU with an odd value in this parameter field the PDU should be rejected with an error code of *invalid LMP parameters*.

Note:

Where a parameter is described as bits N:M of some other value V, the parameter value in the PDU shall be V shifted right by M bits. Where the space available for the parameter is greater than that needed (N-M+1 bits), the parameter value still occupies the entire space and the remaining bits shall be zero.

For example, if a 16 bit parameter is equal to 0xDEAD and bits 10:6 are stored in a u\_int8, the resulting parameter will be 0x1A.

## 5.3 LMP ENCAPSULATED

Name	Major Type	Minor Type	Payload Length	Detailed
P-192 Public Key	1	1	48	X, Y format Bytes 23-0: X co-ordinate Bytes 47-24: Y co-ordinate Little Endian Format
P-256 Public Key	1	2	64	X, Y format Bytes 31-0: X co-ordinate Bytes 63-32: Y co-ordinate Little Endian Format

Table 5.3: LMP encapsulated

	Single Slot Packets	3-Slot Packets
D <sub>esco</sub>	0 to T <sub>eSCO</sub> -2 (even)	0 to T <sub>eSCO</sub> -2 (even)
T <sub>esco</sub>	EV3: 6 2-EV3: 6-12 (even) 3-EV3: 6-18 (even)	EV4: 16 EV5: 16 2-EV5: 16 3-EV5: 16
W <sub>eSCO</sub>	0, 2, and 4	0 and 6
packet length M → S	10*T <sub>eSCO</sub> /2	10*T <sub>eSCO</sub> /2
packet length S → M	10*T <sub>eSCO</sub> /2	10*T <sub>eSCO</sub> /2
air mode	At least one of A-law, mu-law, CVSD, transparent	transparent

Table 5.4: Mandatory parameter ranges for eSCO packet types

## 5.4 DEFAULT VALUES

Devices shall use these values before anything else has been negotiated:

Parameter	Value
AFH_mode	AFH_disabled
AFH_reporting_mode	AFH_reporting_disabled
drift	250
jitter	10
max slots	1
poll interval	40

Table 5.5: Device default values

## 6 LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 1.1:	Link Manager Protocol signaling layer .....	231
Figure 2.1:	Transmission of a message from master to slave .....	233
Figure 2.2:	Payload body when LMP PDUs are sent .....	234
Figure 2.3:	Symbols used in sequence diagrams .....	236
Figure 4.1:	Connection establishment .....	250
Sequence 1:	Connection closed by sending LMP_detach .....	252
Sequence 2:	A device requests a change of the other device's TX power .....	253
Sequence 3:	The TX power cannot be increased .....	253
Sequence 4:	The TX power cannot be decreased .....	254
Sequence 5:	A device responds to a power control request .....	255
Sequence 6:	Master Enables AFH .....	257
Sequence 7:	Master disables AFH .....	257
Sequence 8:	Master Updates AFH .....	258
Sequence 9:	Channel classification reporting .....	260
Sequence 10:	Setting the link supervision timeout .....	261
Sequence 11:	A notifies B to enable CQDDR .....	262
Sequence 12:	B sends A a preferred packet type .....	262
Sequence 13:	Master notifies slave of quality of service .....	263
Sequence 14:	Device accepts new quality of service .....	264
Sequence 15:	Device rejects new quality of service .....	264
Sequence 16:	Negotiation for page mode .....	265
Sequence 17:	Negotiation for page scan mode .....	265
Sequence 18:	Device allows Remote Device to use a maximum number of slots .....	266
Sequence 19:	Device requests a maximum number of slots. Remote Device accepts .....	266
Sequence 20:	Device requests a maximum number of slots. Remote Device rejects .....	266
Sequence 21:	Packet type table change is rejected .....	268
Sequence 22:	Packet type table change is accepted .....	268
Sequence 23:	Sending an encapsulated PDU .....	269
Sequence 24:	Ping PDUs .....	270
Sequence 25:	Master initiates a coarse clock adjustment .....	272
Sequence 26:	Master accepts slave request for a coarse clock adjustment .....	273
Sequence 27:	Master rejects a slave request for coarse clock adjustment .....	274
Sequence 28:	Authentication. Claimant has link key .....	276
Sequence 29:	Authentication fails. Claimant has no link key .....	276

Sequence 30:	Secure Authentication. Responder has link key. Initiator is master .....	277
Sequence 31:	Secure Authentication. Responder has link key. Initiator is slave .....	277
Sequence 32:	Pairing accepted. Responder has a variable PIN. Initiator has a variable or fixed PIN .....	279
Sequence 33:	Responder has a fixed PIN and initiator has a variable PIN .....	279
Sequence 34:	Both devices have a fixed PIN .....	279
Sequence 35:	Responder rejects pairing .....	280
Sequence 36:	Creation of the link key .....	281
Sequence 37:	Successful change of the link key .....	281
Sequence 38:	Change of the link key not possible since the other device uses a unit key .....	282
Sequence 39:	Change to a temporary link key .....	283
Sequence 40:	Link key changed to the semi-permanent link key .....	284
Sequence 41:	Negotiation for encryption mode .....	286
Sequence 42:	Encryption key size negotiation successful .....	287
Sequence 43:	Encryption key size negotiation failed .....	287
Sequence 44:	Start of encryption .....	288
Sequence 45:	Stop of encryption .....	289
Sequence 46:	Master-initiated pausing of encryption (E0) .....	290
Sequence 47:	Master-initiated pausing of encryption (AES-CCM) .....	290
Sequence 48:	Slave-initiated pausing of encryption (E0) .....	290
Sequence 49:	Slave-initiated pausing of encryption (AES-CCM) .....	291
Sequence 50:	Initiating Master LM resumes encryption .....	292
Sequence 51:	Initiating Slave LM resumes encryption .....	292
Sequence 52:	Request for supported encryption key sizes .....	294
Sequence 53:	IO Capability Exchange .....	296
Sequence 54:	IO Capability exchange with transaction Collision (master transmitting LMP_io_capability_req first) and resolution ....	297
Sequence 55:	IO Capability exchange with transaction Collision (slave transmitting LMP_io_capability_req first) and resolution ....	297
Sequence 56:	Public key exchange .....	298
Sequence 57:	Numeric Comparison Authentication: Commitment check success .....	299
Sequence 58:	Numeric Comparison Authentication: Commitment check failure .....	300
Sequence 59:	Authentication stage 1 Numeric Comparison Failure on Initiator Side .....	300
Sequence 60:	Authentication stage 1: Numeric Comparison Failure on Responder Side .....	301
Sequence 61:	Authentication Passkey entry .....	302
Sequence 62:	Authentication Passkey Entry: Commitment check failure on	

the Responder side .....	303
Sequence 63: Authentication Passkey Entry: Commitment check failure on the Initiator side .....	303
Sequence 64: Authentication stage 1 Passkey Entry Failure on Initiator Side .....	304
Sequence 65: Authentication Stage 1 Passkey Entry Failure on Responding Side .....	304
Sequence 66: Keypress Notifications .....	305
Sequence 67: Authentication OOB: Only one device is OOB-r capable ...	306
Sequence 68: Authentication stage 1 OOB: Commitment check failure on the Responder side .....	306
Sequence 69: Authentication stage 1 OOB: Commitment check failure on the Initiator side .....	307
Sequence 70: Authentication stage 1 OOB: OOB information not available on the Initiator side .....	307
Sequence 71: DHKey check .....	308
Sequence 72: DHKey check: Check failure on the Responder side .....	308
Sequence 73: DHKey check: check failure on the Initiator side .....	309
Sequence 74: The requested device supports timing accuracy information .....	310
Sequence 75: The requested device does not support timing accuracy information .....	310
Sequence 76: Clock offset requested .....	311
Sequence 77: Request for LMP version .....	312
Sequence 78: Request for supported features .....	314
Sequence 79: Request for extended features .....	314
Sequence 80: Device's name requested and it responses .....	315
Figure 4.2: Slot offset for role switch .....	316
Sequence 81: Slot offset information is sent .....	316
Sequence 82: Role switch (slave initiated) .....	318
Sequence 83: Role switch (master initiated) .....	318
Sequence 84: Master forces slave into hold mode .....	321
Sequence 85: Slave forces master into hold mode .....	321
Sequence 86: Negotiation for hold mode .....	322
Sequence 87: Slave accepts to enter park state .....	326
Sequence 88: Slave rejects to enter into park state .....	326
Sequence 89: Slave requests to enter park state and accepts master's beacon parameters .....	327
Sequence 90: Master rejects slave's request to enter park state .....	327
Sequence 91: Slave requests to enter park state, but rejects master's beacon parameters .....	327
Sequence 92: Master notifies all slaves of increase in broadcast capacity .....	328
Sequence 93: Master modifies beacon parameters .....	328

Sequence 94: Master unparks slaves addressed with their BD_ADDR ....	329
Sequence 95: Master unparks slaves addressed with their PM_ADDR ....	329
Sequence 96: Negotiation for sniff mode .....	331
Sequence 97: Slave moved from sniff mode to active mode .....	332
Sequence 98: LM accepts sniff subrating request .....	333
Sequence 99: Master requests an SCO link .....	335
Sequence 100: Master rejects slave's request for an SCO link .....	335
Sequence 101: Master accepts slave's request for an SCO link .....	336
Sequence 102: SCO link removed .....	337
Sequence 103: Master requests an eSCO link .....	338
Sequence 104: Slave requests an eSCO link .....	339
Sequence 105: Master rejects slave's request for an eSCO link .....	339
Sequence 106: eSCO link removed .....	340
Sequence 107: Activation of test mode successful .....	342
Sequence 108: Activation of test mode fails. Slave is not allowed to enter test mode .....	343
Sequence 109: Control of test mode successful .....	343
Sequence 110: Control of test mode rejected since slave is not in test mode .....	344

## 7 LIST OF TABLES

---

Table 2.1:	General response messages .....	237
Table 3.1:	Feature Definitions.....	238
Table 3.2:	Feature mask definitions (page 0) .....	246
Table 3.3:	Extended feature mask definition (page 1) .....	248
Table 3.4:	Extended feature mask definition (page 2). ....	248
Table 4.1:	Connection establishment PDU .....	251
Table 4.2:	Detach PDU .....	251
Table 4.3:	Legacy Power control PDU.....	252
Table 4.4:	Enhanced Power control PDU .....	252
Table 4.5:	AFH PDU .....	256
Table 4.6:	Set supervision timeout PDU .....	261
Table 4.7:	Quality-driven change of the data rate PDU .....	262
Table 4.8:	Quality of Service PDU .....	263
Table 4.9:	Paging scheme request PDU .....	264
Table 4.10:	Multi-slot packet control PDU.....	266
Table 4.11:	Enhanced Data Rate PDUs .....	267
Table 4.12:	Encapsulated LMP PDUs .....	268
Table 4.13:	Ping PDUs .....	270
Table 4.14:	Piconet clock adjustment PDUs.....	271
Table 4.15:	Authentication PDUs.....	275
Table 4.16:	Pairing PDUs .....	278
Table 4.17:	Change link key PDU .....	281
Table 4.18:	Change current link key PDU .....	283
Table 4.19:	Encryption handling PDU.....	285
Table 4.20:	Encryption key size request PDU .....	294
Table 4.21:	Setting the OOB_Authentication_Data parameter .....	296
Table 4.22:	Request limited timing PDU .....	310
Table 4.23:	PDUs used for clock offset request.....	311
Table 4.24:	PDUs used for LMP version request .....	312
Table 4.25:	PDUs used for features request .....	313
Table 4.26:	Name request PDUs .....	315
Table 4.27:	Role switch PDU .....	316
Table 4.28:	Role switch PDU .....	317
Table 4.29:	Hold mode PDUs .....	320
Table 4.30:	PDUs used for park state.....	324
Table 4.31:	Sniff mode PDUs .....	330
Table 4.32:	SCO link management PDUs .....	334
Table 4.33:	PDUs used for managing the eSCO links.....	337
Table 4.34:	Parameters used in LMP_Test_Control PDU .....	345

Table 5.1:	Coding of the different LM PDUs .....	348
Table 5.2:	Parameters in LM PDUs. ....	359
Table 5.3:	LMP encapsulated .....	370
Table 5.4:	Mandatory parameter ranges for eSCO packet types.....	370
Table 5.5:	Device default values .....	371



**Core System Package [BR/EDR Controller volume]**

**Part D**

## **ERROR CODES**



## CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>Overview of Error Codes .....</b>	<b>383</b>
1.1	Usage Descriptions .....	383
1.2	HCI Command Errors.....	383
1.3	List of Error Codes .....	384
<b>2</b>	<b>Error Code Descriptions.....</b>	<b>387</b>
2.1	Unknown HCI Command (0x01) .....	387
2.2	Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02).....	387
2.3	Hardware Failure (0x03) .....	387
2.4	Page Timeout (0x04).....	387
2.5	Authentication Failure (0x05) .....	387
2.6	PIN or key Missing (0x06).....	387
2.7	Memory Capacity Exceeded (0x07).....	387
2.8	Connection Timeout (0x08).....	388
2.9	Connection Limit Exceeded (0x09) .....	388
2.10	Synchronous Connection Limit to a Device Exceeded (0x0A).388	388
2.11	ACL Connection Already Exists (0x0B).....	388
2.12	Command Disallowed (0x0C) .....	388
2.13	Connection Rejected due to Limited Resources (0x0D) .....	388
2.14	Connection Rejected due to Security Reasons (0x0E) .....	388
2.15	Connection Rejected due to Unacceptable BD_ADDR (0x0F) 389	389
2.16	Connection Accept Timeout Exceeded (0x10).....	389
2.17	Unsupported Feature or Parameter Value (0x11) .....	389
2.18	Invalid HCI Command Parameters (0x12) .....	389
2.19	Remote User Terminated Connection (0x13).....	389
2.20	Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Low Resources (0x14).....	390
2.21	Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Power Off (0x15).....	390
2.22	Connection Terminated by Local Host (0x16) .....	390
2.23	Repeated Attempts (0x17) .....	390
2.24	Pairing not Allowed (0x18) .....	390
2.25	Unknown LMP PDU (0x19) .....	390
2.26	Unsupported Remote Feature / Unsupported LMP Feature (0x1A) .....	390
2.27	SCO Offset Rejected (0x1B).....	390
2.28	SCO Interval Rejected (0x1C).....	391
2.29	SCO Air Mode Rejected (0x1D).....	391
2.30	Invalid LMP Parameters / Invalid LL Parameters (0x1E) .....	391
2.31	Unspecified Error (0X1F) .....	391

---

Error Codes

2.32	Unsupported LMP Parameter Value / Unsupported LL Parameter Value (0x20).....	391
2.33	Role Change Not Allowed (0x21) .....	391
2.34	LMP Response Timeout / LL Response Timeout (0x22) .....	392
2.35	LMP Error Transaction Collision (0x23) .....	392
2.36	LMP PDU Not Allowed (0x24) .....	392
2.37	Encryption Mode Not Acceptable (0x25) .....	392
2.38	Link Key cannot be Changed (0x26) .....	392
2.39	Requested QoS Not Supported (0x27).....	392
2.40	Instant Passed (0x28).....	392
2.41	Pairing with Unit Key Not Supported (0x29) .....	392
2.42	Different Transaction Collision (0x2A) .....	393
2.43	QoS Unacceptable Parameter (0x2C) .....	393
2.44	QoS Rejected (0x2D).....	393
2.45	Channel Assessment Not Supported (0x2E).....	393
2.46	Insufficient Security (0x2F) .....	393
2.47	Parameter out of Mandatory Range (0x30) .....	393
2.48	Role Switch Pending (0x32) .....	393
2.49	Reserved Slot Violation (0x34) .....	393
2.50	Role Switch Failed (0x35).....	394
2.51	Extended Inquiry Response Too Large (0x36) .....	394
2.52	Simple Pairing Not Supported By Host (0x37).....	394
2.53	Host Busy—Pairing (0x38) .....	394
2.54	Connection Rejected Due To No Suitable Channel Found (0x39).....	394
2.55	Controller Busy (0x3A).....	394
2.56	Unacceptable Connection Parameters (0x3B).....	394
2.57	Directed Advertising Timeout (0x3C) .....	395
2.58	Connection Terminated Due To MIC Failure (0x3D) .....	395
2.59	Connection Failed To Be Established (0x3E).....	395
2.60	MAC Connection Failed (0x3F) .....	395
2.61	Coarse Clock Adjustment Rejected but Will Try to Adjust Using Clock Dragging (0x40) .....	395

# 1 OVERVIEW OF ERROR CODES

This document lists the various possible error codes. When a command fails, or an LMP, LL, or AMP message needs to indicate a failure, error codes are used to indicate the reason for the error. Error codes have a size of one octet.

## 1.1 USAGE DESCRIPTIONS

The purpose of this section is to give descriptions of how the error codes should be used. It is beyond the scope of this document to give detailed descriptions of all situations where error codes can be used, especially as this is implementation dependent.

## 1.2 HCI COMMAND ERRORS

If an HCI Command that should generate a Command Complete event generates an error then this error shall be reported in the Command Complete event.

If an HCI Command that sent a Command Status with the error code ‘Success’ to the Host before processing may find an error during execution then the error may be reported in the normal completion command for the original command or in a Command Status event.

Some HCI Commands may generate errors that need to be reported to the Host, but there is insufficient information to determine how the command would normally be processed. In this case, two events can be used to indicate this to the Host, the Command Complete event and Command Status events. Which of the two events is used is implementation-dependent.

## 1.3 LIST OF ERROR CODES

The error code of 0x00 means Success. The possible range of failure error codes is 0x01-0xFF. [Section 2](#) provides an error code usage description for each failure error code.

Values marked as “Reserved for Future Use”, can be used in future versions of the specification. A Host shall consider any error code that it does not explicitly understand equivalent to the “Unspecified Error (0x1F).”

Error Code	Name
0x00	Success
0x01	Unknown HCI Command
0x02	Unknown Connection Identifier
0x03	Hardware Failure
0x04	Page Timeout
0x05	Authentication Failure
0x06	PIN or Key Missing
0x07	Memory Capacity Exceeded
0x08	Connection Timeout
0x09	Connection Limit Exceeded
0x0A	Synchronous Connection Limit To A Device Exceeded
0x0B	ACL Connection Already Exists
0x0C	Command Disallowed
0x0D	Connection Rejected due to Limited Resources
0x0E	Connection Rejected Due To Security Reasons
0x0F	Connection Rejected due to Unacceptable BD_ADDR
0x10	Connection Accept Timeout Exceeded
0x11	Unsupported Feature or Parameter Value
0x12	Invalid HCI Command Parameters
0x13	Remote User Terminated Connection
0x14	Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Low Resources
0x15	Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Power Off
0x16	Connection Terminated By Local Host
0x17	Repeated Attempts
0x18	Pairing Not Allowed
0x19	Unknown LMP PDU
0x1A	Unsupported Remote Feature / Unsupported LMP Feature
0x1B	SCO Offset Rejected

Table 1.1: List of Possible Error Codes

## Error Codes



Error Code	Name
0x1C	SCO Interval Rejected
0x1D	SCO Air Mode Rejected
0x1E	Invalid LMP Parameters / Invalid LL Parameters
0x1F	Unspecified Error
0x20	Unsupported LMP Parameter Value / Unsupported LL Parameter Value
0x21	Role Change Not Allowed
0x22	LMP Response Timeout / LL Response Timeout
0x23	LMP Error Transaction Collision
0x24	LMP PDU Not Allowed
0x25	Encryption Mode Not Acceptable
0x26	Link Key cannot be Changed
0x27	Requested QoS Not Supported
0x28	Instant Passed
0x29	Pairing With Unit Key Not Supported
0x2A	Different Transaction Collision
0x2B	Reserved
0x2C	QoS Unacceptable Parameter
0x2D	QoS Rejected
0x2E	Channel Classification Not Supported
0x2F	Insufficient Security
0x30	Parameter Out Of Mandatory Range
0x31	Reserved
0x32	Role Switch Pending
0x33	Reserved
0x34	Reserved Slot Violation
0x35	Role Switch Failed
0x36	Extended Inquiry Response Too Large
0x37	Secure Simple Pairing Not Supported By Host
0x38	Host Busy - Pairing
0x39	Connection Rejected due to No Suitable Channel Found
0x3A	Controller Busy
0x3B	Unacceptable Connection Parameters
0x3C	Directed Advertising Timeout
0x3D	Connection Terminated due to MIC Failure
0x3E	Connection Failed to be Established

Table 1.1: List of Possible Error Codes

*Error Codes*

Error Code	Name
0x3F	MAC Connection Failed
0x40	Coarse Clock Adjustment Rejected but Will Try to Adjust Using Clock Dragging

Table 1.1: List of Possible Error Codes

## 2 ERROR CODE DESCRIPTIONS

---

### 2.1 UNKNOWN HCI COMMAND (0x01)

The Unknown HCI Command error code indicates that the Controller does not understand the HCI Command Packet OpCode that the Host sent. The OpCode given might not correspond to any of the OpCodes specified in this document, or any vendor-specific OpCodes, or the command may not have been implemented.

### 2.2 UNKNOWN CONNECTION IDENTIFIER (0x02)

The Unknown Connection Identifier error code indicates that a command was sent from the Host that should identify a connection, but that connection does not exist.

### 2.3 HARDWARE FAILURE (0x03)

The Hardware Failure error code indicates to the Host that something in the Controller has failed in a manner that cannot be described with any other error code. The meaning implied with this error code is implementation dependent.

### 2.4 PAGE TIMEOUT (0x04)

The Page Timeout error code indicates that a page timed out because of the Page Timeout configuration parameter. This error code may occur only with the Remote\_Name\_Request and Create\_Connection commands.

### 2.5 AUTHENTICATION FAILURE (0x05)

The Authentication Failure error code indicates that pairing or authentication failed due to incorrect results in the pairing or authentication procedure. This could be due to an incorrect PIN or Link Key.

### 2.6 PIN OR KEY MISSING (0x06)

The PIN or Key Missing error code is used when pairing failed because of a missing PIN, or authentication failed because of a missing Key.

### 2.7 MEMORY CAPACITY EXCEEDED (0x07)

The Memory Capacity Exceeded error code indicates to the Host that the Controller has run out of memory to store new parameters.

## 2.8 CONNECTION TIMEOUT (0x08)

The Connection Timeout error code indicates that the link supervision timeout has expired for a given connection.

## 2.9 CONNECTION LIMIT EXCEEDED (0x09)

The Connection Limit Exceeded error code indicates that an attempt to create another connection failed because the Controller is already at its limit of the number of connections it can support. The number of connections a device can support is implementation dependent.

## 2.10 SYNCHRONOUS CONNECTION LIMIT TO A DEVICE EXCEEDED (0x0A)

The Synchronous Connection Limit to a Device Exceeded error code indicates that the Controller has reached the limit to the number of synchronous connections that can be achieved to a device. The number of synchronous connections a device can support is implementation dependent.

## 2.11 ACL CONNECTION ALREADY EXISTS (0x0B)

The ACL Connection Already Exists error code indicates that an attempt to create a new ACL Connection to a device when there is already a connection to this device.

## 2.12 COMMAND DISALLOWED (0x0C)

The Command Disallowed error code indicates that the command requested cannot be executed because the Controller is in a state where it cannot process this command at this time. This error shall not be used for command OpCodes where the error code Unknown HCI Command is valid.

## 2.13 CONNECTION REJECTED DUE TO LIMITED RESOURCES (0x0D)

The Connection Rejected Due To Limited Resources error code indicates that an incoming connection was rejected due to limited resources.

## 2.14 CONNECTION REJECTED DUE TO SECURITY REASONS (0x0E)

The Connection Rejected Due To Security Reasons error code indicates that a connection was rejected due to security requirements not being fulfilled, like authentication or pairing.

## 2.15 CONNECTION REJECTED DUE TO UNACCEPTABLE BD\_ADDR (0x0F)

The Connection Rejected due to Unacceptable BD\_ADDR error code indicates that a connection was rejected because this device does not accept the BD\_ADDR. This may be because the device will only accept connections from specific BD\_ADDRs.

## 2.16 CONNECTION ACCEPT TIMEOUT EXCEEDED (0x10)

The Connection Accept Timeout Exceeded error code indicates that the Connection Accept Timeout has been exceeded for this connection attempt.

## 2.17 UNSUPPORTED FEATURE OR PARAMETER VALUE (0x11)

The Unsupported Feature Or Parameter Value error code indicates that a feature or parameter value in the HCI command is not supported. This error code shall not be used in an LMP PDU.

## 2.18 INVALID HCI COMMAND PARAMETERS (0x12)

The Invalid HCI Command Parameters error code indicates that at least one of the HCI command parameters is invalid.

This shall be used when:

- the parameter total length is invalid.
- a command parameter is an invalid type.
- a connection identifier does not match the corresponding event.
- a parameter value shall be even.
- a parameter is outside of the specified range.
- two or more parameter values have inconsistent values.

Note: An invalid type can be, for example, when an SCO connection handle is used where an ACL connection handle is required.

## 2.19 REMOTE USER TERMINATED CONNECTION (0x13)

The Remote User Terminated Connection error code indicates that the user on the remote device terminated the connection.

## 2.20 REMOTE DEVICE TERMINATED CONNECTION DUE TO LOW RESOURCES (0x14)

The Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Low Resources error code indicates that the remote device terminated the connection because of low resources.

## 2.21 REMOTE DEVICE TERMINATED CONNECTION DUE TO POWER OFF (0x15)

The Remote Device Terminated Connection due to Power Off error code indicates that the remote device terminated the connection because the device is about to power off.

## 2.22 CONNECTION TERMINATED BY LOCAL HOST (0x16)

The Connection Terminated By Local Host error code indicates that the local device terminated the connection.

## 2.23 REPEATED ATTEMPTS (0x17)

The Repeated Attempts error code indicates that the Controller is disallowing an authentication or pairing procedure because too little time has elapsed since the last authentication or pairing attempt failed.

## 2.24 PAIRING NOT ALLOWED (0x18)

The Pairing Not Allowed error code indicates that the device does not allow pairing. For example, when a device only allows pairing during a certain time window after some user input allows pairing.

## 2.25 UNKNOWN LMP PDU (0x19)

The Unknown LMP PDU error code indicates that the Controller has received an unknown LMP OpCode.

## 2.26 UNSUPPORTED REMOTE FEATURE / UNSUPPORTED LMP FEATURE (0x1A)

The Unsupported Remote Feature error code indicates that the remote device does not support the feature associated with the issued command or LMP PDU.

## 2.27 SCO OFFSET REJECTED (0x1B)

The SCO Offset Rejected error code indicates that the offset requested in the LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU has been rejected.

## 2.28 SCO INTERVAL REJECTED (0x1C)

The SCO Interval Rejected error code indicates that the interval requested in the LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU has been rejected.

## 2.29 SCO AIR MODE REJECTED (0x1D)

The SCO Air Mode Rejected error code indicates that the air mode requested in the LMP\_SCO\_link\_req PDU has been rejected.

## 2.30 INVALID LMP PARAMETERS / INVALID LL PARAMETERS (0x1E)

The Invalid LMP Parameters / Invalid LL Parameters error code indicates that some LMP PDU / LL Control PDU parameters were invalid. This shall be used when:

- the PDU length is invalid.
- a parameter value is expected to be even.
- a parameter is outside of the specified range.
- two or more parameters have inconsistent values.

## 2.31 UNSPECIFIED ERROR (0X1F)

The Unspecified Error error code indicates that no other error code specified is appropriate to use.

## 2.32 UNSUPPORTED LMP PARAMETER VALUE / UNSUPPORTED LL PARAMETER VALUE (0x20)

The Unsupported LMP Parameter Value / Unsupported LL Parameter Value error code indicates that an LMP PDU or an LL Control PDU contains at least one parameter value that is not supported by the Controller at this time. This is normally used after a long negotiation procedure, for example during an LMP\_hold\_req, LMP\_sniff\_req and LMP\_encryption\_key\_size\_req PDU exchanges. This may be used by the Link Layer, for example during the Connection Parameters Request Link Layer Control procedure.

## 2.33 ROLE CHANGE NOT ALLOWED (0x21)

The Role Change Not Allowed error code indicates that a Controller will not allow a role change at this time.

## 2.34 LMP RESPONSE TIMEOUT / LL RESPONSE TIMEOUT (0x22)

The LMP Response Timeout / LL Response Timeout error code indicates that an LMP transaction failed to respond within the LMP response timeout or an LL transaction failed to respond within the LL response timeout.

## 2.35 LMP ERROR TRANSACTION COLLISION (0x23)

The LMP Error Transaction Collision error code indicates that an LMP transaction has collided with the same transaction that is already in progress.

## 2.36 LMP PDU NOT ALLOWED (0x24)

The LMP PDU Not Allowed error code indicates that a Controller sent an LMP PDU with an OpCode that was not allowed.

## 2.37 ENCRYPTION MODE NOT ACCEPTABLE (0x25)

The Encryption Mode Not Acceptable error code indicates that the requested encryption mode is not acceptable at this time.

## 2.38 LINK KEY CANNOT BE CHANGED (0x26)

The Link Key cannot be Changed error code indicates that a link key cannot be changed because a fixed unit key is being used.

## 2.39 REQUESTED QoS NOT SUPPORTED (0x27)

The Requested QoS Not Supported error code indicates that the requested Quality of Service is not supported.

## 2.40 INSTANT PASSED (0x28)

The Instant Passed error code indicates that an LMP PDU or LL PDU that includes an instant cannot be performed because the instant when this would have occurred has passed.

## 2.41 PAIRING WITH UNIT KEY NOT SUPPORTED (0x29)

The Pairing With Unit Key Not Supported error code indicates that it was not possible to pair as a unit key was requested and it is not supported.

## 2.42 DIFFERENT TRANSACTION COLLISION (0x2A)

The Different Transaction Collision error code indicates that an LMP transaction was started that collides with an ongoing transaction.

## 2.43 QoS UNACCEPTABLE PARAMETER (0x2C)

The QoS Unacceptable Parameter error code indicates that the specified quality of service parameters could not be accepted at this time, but other parameters may be acceptable.

## 2.44 QoS REJECTED (0x2D)

The QoS Rejected error code indicates that the specified quality of service parameters cannot be accepted and QoS negotiation should be terminated.

## 2.45 CHANNEL ASSESSMENT NOT SUPPORTED (0x2E)

The Channel Assessment Not Supported error code indicates that the Controller cannot perform channel assessment because it is not supported.

## 2.46 INSUFFICIENT SECURITY (0x2F)

The Insufficient Security error code indicates that the HCI command or LMP PDU sent is only possible on an encrypted link.

## 2.47 PARAMETER OUT OF MANDATORY RANGE (0x30)

The Parameter Out Of Mandatory Range error code indicates that a parameter value requested is outside the mandatory range of parameters for the given HCI command or LMP PDU.

## 2.48 ROLE SWITCH PENDING (0x32)

The Role Switch Pending error code indicates that a Role Switch is pending. This can be used when an HCI command or LMP PDU cannot be accepted because of a pending role switch. This can also be used to notify a peer device about a pending role switch.

## 2.49 RESERVED SLOT VIOLATION (0x34)

The Reserved Slot Violation error code indicates that the current Synchronous negotiation was terminated with the negotiation state set to Reserved Slot Violation.

## 2.50 ROLE SWITCH FAILED (0x35)

The Role Switch Failed error code indicates that a role switch was attempted but it failed and the original piconet structure is restored. The switch may have failed because the TDD switch or piconet switch failed.

## 2.51 EXTENDED INQUIRY RESPONSE TOO LARGE (0x36)

The Extended Inquiry Response Too Large error code indicates that the extended inquiry response, with the requested requirements for FEC, is too large to fit in any of the packet types supported by the Controller.

## 2.52 SIMPLE PAIRING NOT SUPPORTED BY HOST (0x37)

The Secure Simple Pairing Not Supported by Host error code indicates that the IO capabilities request or response was rejected because the sending Host does not support Secure Simple Pairing even though the receiving Link Manager does.

## 2.53 HOST BUSY-PAIRING (0x38)

The Host Busy - Pairing error code indicates that the Host is busy with another pairing operation and unable to support the requested pairing. The receiving device should retry pairing again later.

## 2.54 CONNECTION REJECTED DUE TO NO SUITABLE CHANNEL FOUND (0x39)

The Connection Rejected due to No Suitable Channel Found error code indicates that the Controller could not calculate an appropriate value for the Channel selection operation.

## 2.55 CONTROLLER BUSY (0x3A)

The Controller Busy error code indicates that the operation was rejected because the Controller was busy and unable to process the request.

## 2.56 UNACCEPTABLE CONNECTION PARAMETERS (0x3B)

The Unacceptable Connection IntervalParameters error code indicates that the remote device either terminated the connection or rejected a request because of one or more unacceptable connection parameters.

## 2.57 DIRECTED ADVERTISING TIMEOUT (0x3C)

The Directed Advertising Timeout error code indicates that directed advertising completed without a connection being created.

## 2.58 CONNECTION TERMINATED DUE TO MIC FAILURE (0x3D)

The Connection Terminated Due to MIC Failure error code indicates that the connection was terminated because the Message Integrity Check (MIC) failed on a received packet.

## 2.59 CONNECTION FAILED TO BE ESTABLISHED (0x3E)

The Connection Failed to be Established error code indicates that the LL initiated a connection but the connection has failed to be established.

## 2.60 MAC CONNECTION FAILED (0X3F)

The MAC of the 802.11 AMP was requested to connect to a peer, but the connection failed.

## 2.61 COARSE CLOCK ADJUSTMENT REJECTED BUT WILL TRY TO ADJUST USING CLOCK DRAGGING (0x40)

The Coarse Clock Adjustment Rejected but Will Try to Adjust Using Clock Dragging error code indicates that the master, at this time, is unable to make a coarse adjustment to the piconet clock, using the supplied parameters. Instead the master will attempt to move the clock using clock dragging.



Core System Package [BR/EDR Controller volume]

Part E

# HOST CONTROLLER INTERFACE FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION

***This document describes the functional specification for the Host Controller Interface (HCI). The HCI provides a uniform command interface to a Controller.***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>411</b>
1.1	Lower Layers of the Bluetooth Software Stack .....	412
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview of Host Controller Transport Layer.....</b>	<b>414</b>
2.1	Host Controller Transport Layer and AMPS.....	414
<b>3</b>	<b>Overview of Commands and Events .....</b>	<b>415</b>
3.1	Generic Events.....	416
3.2	Device Setup.....	416
3.3	Controller Flow Control .....	417
3.4	Controller Information.....	418
3.5	Controller Configuration .....	420
3.6	Device Discovery .....	423
3.7	Connection Setup .....	426
3.8	Remote Information.....	431
3.9	Synchronous Connections .....	432
3.10	Connection State.....	434
3.11	Piconet Structure.....	437
3.12	Quality of Service .....	438
3.13	Physical Links .....	440
3.14	Host Flow Control.....	442
3.15	Link Information .....	444
3.16	Authentication and Encryption .....	446
3.17	Testing.....	453
3.18	Alphabetical List of Commands and Events.....	456
3.19	LE Controller Requirements.....	465
3.20	Connectionless Slave Broadcast .....	468
<b>4</b>	<b>HCI Flow Control .....</b>	<b>470</b>
4.1	Host to Controller Data Flow Control .....	470
4.1.1	Packet-based Data Flow Control.....	470
4.1.2	Data-Block-Based Data Flow Control.....	472
4.2	Controller to Host Data Flow Control .....	473
4.3	Disconnection Behavior .....	473
4.4	Command Flow Control .....	474
4.5	Command Error Handling .....	474
<b>5</b>	<b>HCI Data Formats .....</b>	<b>476</b>
5.1	Introduction .....	476
5.2	Data and Parameter Formats.....	476
5.3	Handles .....	477
5.3.1	Primary Controller Handles .....	477

5.3.1.1	Broadcast Connection Handles .....	477
5.3.2	AMP Controller Handles.....	478
5.4	Exchange of HCI-Specific Information .....	479
5.4.1	HCI Command Packet .....	479
5.4.2	HCI ACL Data Packets.....	481
5.4.3	HCI Synchronous Data Packets.....	484
5.4.4	HCI Event Packet.....	486
<b>6</b>	<b>HCI Configuration Parameters.....</b>	<b>487</b>
6.1	Scan Enable .....	487
6.2	Inquiry Scan Interval .....	487
6.3	Inquiry Scan Window .....	488
6.4	Inquiry Scan Type .....	488
6.5	Inquiry Mode .....	488
6.6	Page Timeout.....	489
6.7	Connection Accept Timeout.....	489
6.8	Page Scan Interval .....	490
6.9	Page Scan Window .....	490
6.10	Page Scan Period Mode (Deprecated) .....	490
6.11	Page Scan Type .....	491
6.12	Voice Setting.....	491
6.13	PIN Type .....	492
6.14	Link Key .....	492
6.15	Failed Contact Counter.....	492
6.16	Authentication Enable.....	493
6.17	Hold Mode Activity .....	493
6.18	Link Policy Settings.....	493
6.19	Flush Timeout .....	495
6.20	Num Broadcast Retransmissions .....	495
6.21	Link Supervision Timeout.....	496
6.22	Synchronous Flow Control Enable .....	496
6.23	Local Name.....	497
6.24	Extended Inquiry Response.....	497
6.25	Erroneous Data Reporting .....	497
6.26	Class Of Device .....	498
6.27	Supported Commands .....	498
6.28	Logical Link Accept Timeout.....	507
6.29	Location Domain Aware .....	507
6.30	Location Domain .....	507
6.31	Location Domain Options .....	508
6.32	Location Options .....	508
6.33	Flow Control Mode.....	508
6.34	LE Supported Host .....	509

6.35	Simultaneous LE Host .....	509
6.36	Synchronization Train Interval.....	509
6.37	Synchronization Train Timeout.....	510
6.38	Service Data.....	510
6.39	Secure Connections Host Support.....	510
6.40	Authenticated Payload Timeout .....	511
6.41	Extended Page Timeout.....	511
6.42	Extended Inquiry Length .....	511
<b>7</b>	<b>HCI Commands and Events .....</b>	<b>512</b>
7.1	Link Control Commands.....	512
7.1.1	Inquiry Command .....	513
7.1.2	Inquiry Cancel Command.....	515
7.1.3	Periodic Inquiry Mode Command .....	516
7.1.4	Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode Command .....	519
7.1.5	Create Connection Command.....	520
7.1.6	Disconnect Command .....	523
7.1.7	Create Connection Cancel Command.....	524
7.1.8	Accept Connection Request Command .....	526
7.1.9	Reject Connection Request Command .....	528
7.1.10	Link Key Request Reply Command .....	529
7.1.11	Link Key Request Negative Reply Command .....	531
7.1.12	PIN Code Request Reply Command.....	532
7.1.13	PIN Code Request Negative Reply Command .....	534
7.1.14	Change Connection Packet Type Command .....	535
7.1.15	Authentication Requested Command.....	538
7.1.16	Set Connection Encryption Command .....	540
7.1.17	Change Connection Link Key Command .....	542
7.1.18	Master Link Key Command .....	543
7.1.19	Remote Name Request Command .....	545
7.1.20	Remote Name Request Cancel Command .....	547
7.1.21	Read Remote Supported Features Command.....	549
7.1.22	Read Remote Extended Features Command .....	550
7.1.23	Read Remote Version Information Command.....	552
7.1.24	Read Clock Offset Command.....	553
7.1.25	Read LMP Handle Command .....	554
7.1.26	Setup Synchronous Connection Command .....	556
7.1.27	Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command	560
7.1.28	Reject Synchronous Connection Request Command	.564
7.1.29	IO Capability Request Reply Command.....	565

7.1.30	User Confirmation Request Reply Command .....	568
7.1.31	User Confirmation Request Negative Reply Command .....	569
7.1.32	User Passkey Request Reply Command.....	570
7.1.33	User Passkey Request Negative Reply Command....	571
7.1.34	Remote OOB Data Request Reply Command.....	572
7.1.35	Remote OOB Data Request Negative Reply Command .....	574
7.1.36	IO Capability Request Negative Reply Command .....	575
7.1.37	Create Physical Link Command.....	576
7.1.38	Accept Physical Link Command.....	578
7.1.39	Disconnect Physical Link Command.....	580
7.1.40	Create Logical Link Command.....	582
7.1.41	Accept Logical Link Command.....	584
7.1.42	Disconnect Logical Link Command.....	586
7.1.43	Logical Link Cancel Command .....	587
7.1.44	Flow Spec Modify Command .....	589
7.1.45	Enhanced Setup Synchronous Connection Command .....	591
7.1.46	Enhanced Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command .....	601
7.1.47	Truncated Page Command .....	608
7.1.48	Truncated Page Cancel Command .....	610
7.1.49	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Command .....	612
7.1.50	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Command .....	616
7.1.51	Start Synchronization Train Command .....	620
7.1.52	Receive Synchronization Train Command .....	621
7.1.53	Remote OOB Extended Data Request Reply Command .....	623
7.2	Link Policy Commands .....	625
7.2.1	Hold Mode Command .....	626
7.2.2	Sniff Mode Command .....	628
7.2.3	Exit Sniff Mode Command .....	631
7.2.4	Park State Command .....	632
7.2.5	Exit Park State Command .....	634
7.2.6	QoS Setup Command .....	635
7.2.7	Role Discovery Command .....	637
7.2.8	Switch Role Command.....	638

7.2.9	Read Link Policy Settings Command .....	640
7.2.10	Write Link Policy Settings Command .....	642
7.2.11	Read Default Link Policy Settings Command.....	644
7.2.12	Write Default Link Policy Settings Command .....	645
7.2.13	Flow Specification Command.....	646
7.2.14	Sniff Subrating Command .....	648
7.3	Controller & Baseband Commands.....	650
7.3.1	Set Event Mask Command.....	650
7.3.2	Reset Command .....	653
7.3.3	Set Event Filter Command .....	654
7.3.4	Flush Command .....	660
7.3.5	Read PIN Type Command .....	662
7.3.6	Write PIN Type Command.....	663
7.3.7	Create New Unit Key Command .....	664
7.3.8	Read Stored Link Key Command .....	665
7.3.9	Write Stored Link Key Command .....	667
7.3.10	Delete Stored Link Key Command .....	669
7.3.11	Write Local Name Command .....	671
7.3.12	Read Local Name Command .....	672
7.3.13	Read Connection Accept Timeout Command .....	673
7.3.14	Write Connection Accept Timeout Command .....	674
7.3.15	Read Page Timeout Command .....	675
7.3.16	Write Page Timeout Command .....	676
7.3.17	Read Scan Enable Command.....	677
7.3.18	Write Scan Enable Command .....	678
7.3.19	Read Page Scan Activity Command .....	679
7.3.20	Write Page Scan Activity Command .....	681
7.3.21	Read Inquiry Scan Activity Command.....	682
7.3.22	Write Inquiry Scan Activity Command .....	684
7.3.23	Read Authentication Enable Command .....	685
7.3.24	Write Authentication Enable Command .....	686
7.3.25	Read Class of Device Command .....	687
7.3.26	Write Class of Device Command .....	688
7.3.27	Read Voice Setting Command .....	689
7.3.28	Write Voice Setting Command .....	690
7.3.29	Read Automatic Flush Timeout Command.....	691
7.3.30	Write Automatic Flush Timeout Command.....	693
7.3.31	Read Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command....	695

7.3.32	Write Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command .....	696
7.3.33	Read Hold Mode Activity Command .....	697
7.3.34	Write Hold Mode Activity Command .....	698
7.3.35	Read Transmit Power Level Command .....	699
7.3.36	Read Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command ...	701
7.3.37	Write Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command ...	702
7.3.38	Set Controller To Host Flow Control Command .....	703
7.3.39	Host Buffer Size Command.....	705
7.3.40	Host Number Of Completed Packets Command .....	707
7.3.41	Read Link Supervision Timeout Command.....	709
7.3.42	Write Link Supervision Timeout Command .....	711
7.3.43	Read Number Of Supported IAC Command.....	713
7.3.44	Read Current IAC LAP Command .....	714
7.3.45	Write Current IAC LAP Command .....	715
7.3.46	Set AFH Host Channel Classification Command .....	717
7.3.47	Read Inquiry Scan Type Command .....	718
7.3.48	Write Inquiry Scan Type Command .....	719
7.3.49	Read Inquiry Mode Command .....	720
7.3.50	Write Inquiry Mode Command .....	721
7.3.51	Read Page Scan Type Command.....	722
7.3.52	Write Page Scan Type Command.....	723
7.3.53	Read AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command....	724
7.3.54	Write AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command ....	725
7.3.55	Read Extended Inquiry Response Command.....	727
7.3.56	Write Extended Inquiry Response Command .....	728
7.3.57	Refresh Encryption Key Command.....	729
7.3.58	Read Simple Pairing Mode Command.....	730
7.3.59	Write Simple Pairing Mode Command .....	731
7.3.60	Read Local OOB Data Command.....	733
7.3.61	Read Inquiry Response Transmit Power Level Command .....	735
7.3.62	Write Inquiry Transmit Power Level Command .....	736
7.3.63	Send Keypress Notification Command .....	737
7.3.64	Read Default Erroneous Data Reporting .....	739
7.3.65	Write Default Erroneous Data Reporting.....	740
7.3.66	Enhanced Flush Command.....	741
7.3.67	Read Logical Link Accept Timeout Command .....	743
7.3.68	Write Logical Link Accept Timeout Command .....	744

7.3.69	Set Event Mask Page 2 Command .....	745
7.3.70	Read Location Data Command .....	747
7.3.71	Write Location Data Command .....	748
7.3.72	Read Flow Control Mode Command .....	749
7.3.73	Write Flow Control Mode Command .....	750
7.3.74	Read Enhanced Transmit Power Level Command .....	751
7.3.75	Read Best Effort Flush Timeout Command.....	753
7.3.76	Write Best Effort Flush Timeout Command .....	754
7.3.77	Short Range Mode Command.....	755
7.3.78	Read LE Host Support Command.....	756
7.3.79	Write LE Host Support Command .....	757
7.3.80	Set MWS Channel Parameters Command.....	758
7.3.81	Set External Frame Configuration Command .....	760
7.3.82	Set MWS Signaling Command.....	763
7.3.83	Set MWS Transport Layer Command .....	768
7.3.84	Set MWS Scan Frequency Table Command.....	769
7.3.85	Set MWS_PATTERN Configuration Command .....	771
7.3.86	Set Reserved LT_ADDR Command.....	773
7.3.87	Delete Reserved LT_ADDR Command.....	775
7.3.88	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Data Command	776
7.3.89	Read Synchronization Train Parameters Command ...	778
7.3.90	Write Synchronization Train Parameters Command ...	780
7.3.91	Read Secure Connections Host Support Command...	782
7.3.92	Write Secure Connections Host Support Command ...	783
7.3.93	Read Authenticated Payload Timeout Command .....	785
7.3.94	Write Authenticated Payload Timeout Command.....	787
7.3.95	Read Local OOB Extended Data Command .....	789
7.3.96	Read Extended Page Timeout Command.....	791
7.3.97	Write Extended Page Timeout Command .....	792
7.3.98	Read Extended Inquiry Length Command .....	793
7.3.99	Write Extended Inquiry Length Command .....	794
7.4	Informational Parameters.....	795
7.4.1	Read Local Version Information Command.....	795
7.4.2	Read Local Supported Commands Command.....	797
7.4.3	Read Local Supported Features Command.....	798
7.4.4	Read Local Extended Features Command .....	799
7.4.5	Read Buffer Size Command.....	801
7.4.6	Read BD_ADDR Command .....	803

7.4.7	Read Data Block Size Command.....	804
7.4.8	Read Local Supported Codecs Command.....	806
7.5	Status Parameters .....	808
7.5.1	Read Failed Contact Counter Command .....	808
7.5.2	Reset Failed Contact Counter Command .....	810
7.5.3	Read Link Quality Command .....	811
7.5.4	Read RSSI Command.....	813
7.5.5	Read AFH Channel Map Command .....	815
7.5.6	Read Clock Command .....	817
7.5.7	Read Encryption Key Size Command.....	819
7.5.8	Read Local AMP Info Command.....	821
7.5.9	Read Local AMP ASSOC Command .....	826
7.5.10	Write Remote AMP ASSOC Command .....	829
7.5.11	Get MWS Transport Layer Configuration Command ..	831
7.5.12	Set Triggered Clock Capture Command .....	833
7.6	Testing Commands .....	836
7.6.1	Read Loopback Mode Command .....	836
7.6.2	Write Loopback Mode Command.....	838
7.6.3	Enable Device Under Test Mode Command .....	841
7.6.4	Write Simple Pairing Debug Mode Command .....	842
7.6.5	Enable AMP Receiver Reports Command.....	844
7.6.6	AMP Test End Command.....	845
7.6.7	AMP Test Command .....	846
7.6.8	Write Secure Connections Test Mode Command .....	847
7.7	Events .....	850
7.7.1	Inquiry Complete Event.....	850
7.7.2	Inquiry Result Event.....	851
7.7.3	Connection Complete Event .....	853
7.7.4	Connection Request Event .....	855
7.7.5	Disconnection Complete Event.....	856
7.7.6	Authentication Complete Event.....	857
7.7.7	Remote Name Request Complete Event.....	858
7.7.8	Encryption Change Event .....	859
7.7.9	Change Connection Link Key Complete Event .....	861
7.7.10	Master Link Key Complete Event.....	862
7.7.11	Read Remote Supported Features Complete Event...	863
7.7.12	Read Remote Version Information Complete Event ...	864
7.7.13	QoS Setup Complete Event.....	866

7.7.14	Command Complete Event .....	868
7.7.15	Command Status Event.....	869
7.7.16	Hardware Error Event.....	870
7.7.17	Flush Occurred Event.....	871
7.7.18	Role Change Event .....	872
7.7.19	Number Of Completed Packets Event .....	873
7.7.20	Mode Change Event.....	875
7.7.21	Return Link Keys Event.....	877
7.7.22	PIN Code Request Event .....	878
7.7.23	Link Key Request Event.....	879
7.7.24	Link Key Notification Event.....	880
7.7.25	Loopback Command Event.....	882
7.7.26	Data Buffer Overflow Event.....	883
7.7.27	Max Slots Change Event.....	884
7.7.28	Read Clock Offset Complete Event.....	885
7.7.29	Connection Packet Type Changed Event.....	886
7.7.30	QoS Violation Event .....	888
7.7.31	Page Scan Repetition Mode Change Event.....	889
7.7.32	Flow Specification Complete Event.....	890
7.7.33	Inquiry Result with RSSI Event .....	892
7.7.34	Read Remote Extended Features Complete Event .....	894
7.7.35	Synchronous Connection Complete Event.....	896
7.7.36	Synchronous Connection Changed Event .....	898
7.7.37	Sniff Subrating Event.....	900
7.7.38	Extended Inquiry Result Event .....	902
7.7.39	Encryption Key Refresh Complete Event.....	905
7.7.40	IO Capability Request Event .....	906
7.7.41	IO Capability Response Event .....	907
7.7.42	User Confirmation Request Event.....	909
7.7.43	User Passkey Request Event.....	910
7.7.44	Remote OOB Data Request Event.....	911
7.7.45	Simple Pairing Complete Event.....	912
7.7.46	Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event .....	913
7.7.47	Enhanced Flush Complete Event.....	914
7.7.48	User Passkey Notification Event .....	915
7.7.49	Keypress Notification Event .....	916
7.7.50	Remote Host Supported Features Notification Event..	917
7.7.51	Physical Link Complete Event.....	918

7.7.52	Channel Selected Event .....	919
7.7.53	Disconnection Physical Link Complete Event.....	920
7.7.54	Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event.....	921
7.7.55	Physical Link Recovery Event.....	922
7.7.56	Logical Link Complete Event.....	923
7.7.57	Disconnection Logical Link Complete Event.....	924
7.7.58	Flow Spec Modify Complete Event .....	925
7.7.59	Number Of Completed Data Blocks Event.....	926
7.7.60	Short Range Mode Change Complete Event.....	928
7.7.61	AMP Status Change Event.....	929
7.7.62	AMP Start Test Event .....	931
7.7.63	AMP Test End Event .....	932
7.7.64	AMP Receiver Report Event .....	933
7.7.65	LE Meta Event.....	935
7.7.65.1	LE Connection Complete Event .....	935
7.7.65.2	LE Advertising Report Event .....	938
7.7.65.3	LE Connection Update Complete Event.....	940
7.7.65.4	LE Read Remote Used Features Complete Event .....	942
7.7.65.5	LE Long Term Key Request Event .....	943
7.7.65.6	LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Event .....	944
7.7.66	Triggered Clock Capture Event.....	946
7.7.67	Synchronization Train Complete Event.....	947
7.7.68	Synchronization Train Received Event .....	948
7.7.69	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Event .....	950
7.7.70	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout Event .....	952
7.7.71	Truncated Page Complete Event .....	953
7.7.72	Slave Page Response Timeout Event .....	954
7.7.73	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change Event.....	955
7.7.74	Inquiry Response Notification Event .....	956
7.7.75	Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired Event .....	957
7.8	LE Controller Commands .....	958
7.8.1	LE Set Event Mask Command .....	958
7.8.2	LE Read Buffer Size Command .....	960
7.8.3	LE Read Local Supported Features Command .....	962
7.8.4	LE Set Random Address Command .....	963
7.8.5	LE Set Advertising Parameters Command .....	964
7.8.6	LE Read Advertising Channel Tx Power Command ...	968

7.8.7	LE Set Advertising Data Command.....	969
7.8.8	LE Set Scan Response Data Command .....	970
7.8.9	LE Set Advertise Enable Command.....	971
7.8.10	LE Set Scan Parameters Command .....	973
7.8.11	LE Set Scan Enable Command.....	976
7.8.12	LE Create Connection Command .....	978
7.8.13	LE Create Connection Cancel Command .....	982
7.8.14	LE Read White List Size Command.....	983
7.8.15	LE Clear White List Command .....	984
7.8.16	LE Add Device To White List Command .....	985
7.8.17	LE Remove Device From White List Command.....	986
7.8.18	LE Connection Update Command.....	987
7.8.19	LE Set Host Channel Classification Command .....	990
7.8.20	LE Read Channel Map Command .....	991
7.8.21	LE Read Remote Used Features Command.....	993
7.8.22	LE Encrypt Command .....	994
7.8.23	LE Rand Command.....	996
7.8.24	LE Start Encryption Command .....	997
7.8.25	LE Long Term Key Request Reply Command.....	999
7.8.26	LE Long Term Key Request Negative Reply Command.....	1000
7.8.27	LE Read Supported States Command .....	1001
7.8.28	LE Receiver Test Command.....	1008
7.8.29	LE Transmitter Test Command.....	1009
7.8.30	LE Test End Command .....	1011
7.8.31	LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply Command.....	1012
7.8.32	LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply Command.....	1015
<b>8</b>	<b>List of Figures.....</b>	<b>1017</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>1018</b>

<b>10 Appendix A: Deprecated Commands, Events and Configuration</b>	
<b>Parameters .....</b>	<b>1019</b>
10.1 Read Page Scan Mode Command .....	1020
10.2 Write Page Scan Mode Command .....	1021
10.3 Read Page Scan Period Mode Command.....	1022
10.4 Write Page Scan Period Mode Command.....	1023
10.5 Add SCO Connection Command.....	1024
10.6 Page Scan Mode Change Event .....	1026
10.7 Read Country Code Command .....	1027
10.8 Read Encryption Mode Command.....	1028
10.9 Write Encryption Mode Command.....	1029
10.10 Deprecated Parameters.....	1030
10.10.1 Encryption Mode .....	1030
10.10.2 Page Scan Mode .....	1031

## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

This Part of the Bluetooth Core Specification describes the functional specifications for the Host Controller Interface (HCI). The HCI provides a uniform interface method of accessing a Bluetooth Controller's capabilities. The next three sections provide a brief overview of the lower layers of the Bluetooth software stack and of the Bluetooth hardware. [Section 2](#) provides an overview of the Lower HCI Device Driver Interface on the host device. [Section 4](#) describes the flow control used between the Host and the Controller. [Section 7](#) describes each of the HCI Commands in detail, identifies parameters for each of the commands, and lists events associated with each command.

This specification is applicable to the following types of Controllers:

- BR/EDR Controller
- BR/EDR/LE Controller
- LE Controller
- AMP Controller

A Host may drive a Primary Controller and zero or more AMP Controllers. A Primary Controller shall support one of the following sets of functionality:

- BR/EDR only
- LE only
- BR/EDR/LE

In the following sections, the term "BR/EDR Controller" is used to describe the BR/EDR functionality of a Primary Controller which may be either a BR/EDR only Controller or a BR/EDR/LE Controller. Similarly, the term "LE Controller" is used to describe the LE functionality of a Primary Controller which may be either an LE only Controller or a BR/EDR/LE Controller.

A BR/EDR Controller supports BR/EDR functionality only. A BR/EDR/LE Controller supports BR/EDR functionality and LE functionality. An LE Controller supports LE functionality only. An AMP Controller supports an AMP PAL. A Primary Controller is either a BR/EDR Controller, a BR/EDR/LE Controller, or an LE Controller.

## 1.1 LOWER LAYERS OF THE BLUETOOTH SOFTWARE STACK

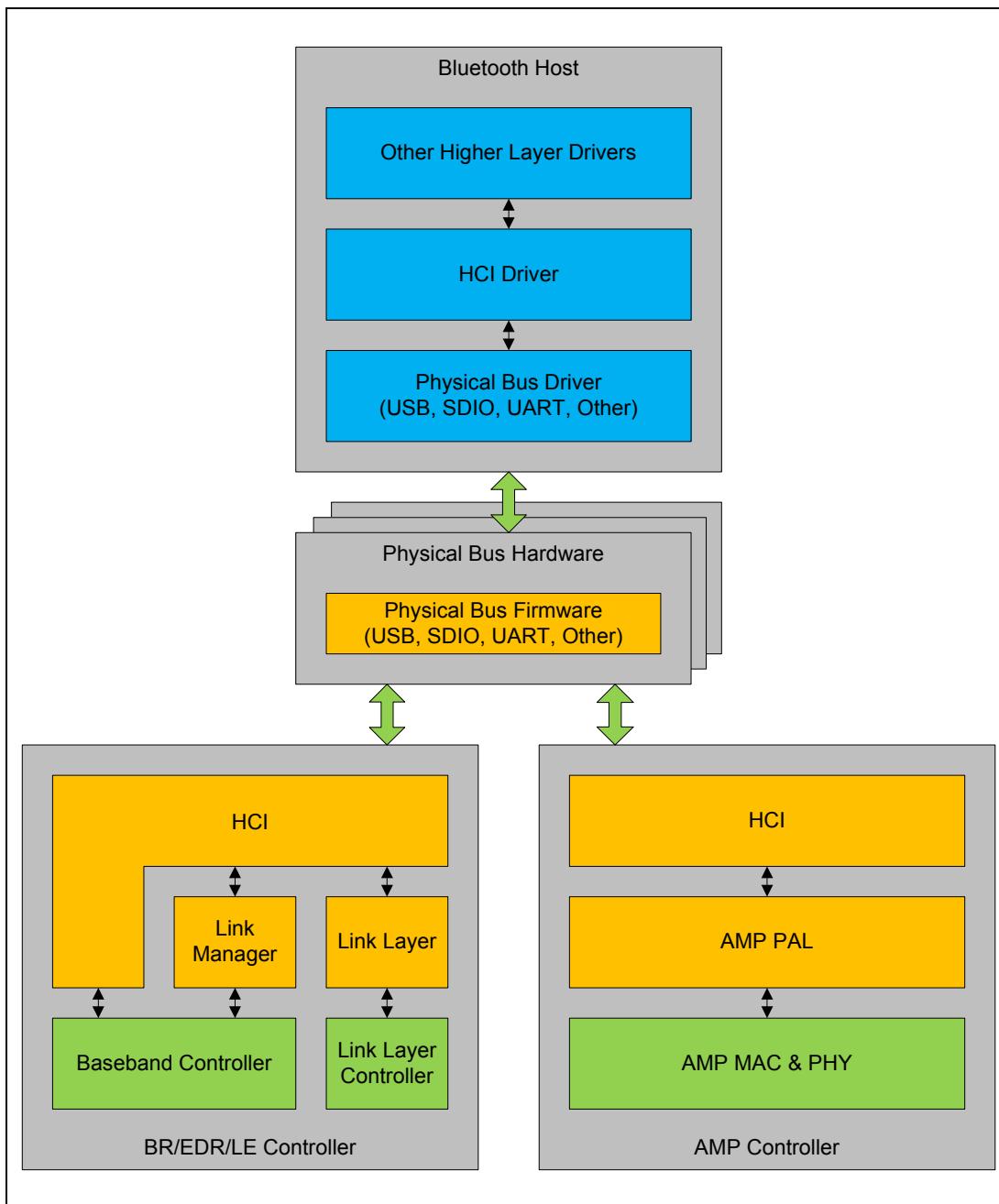


Figure 1.1: Overview of the Lower Software Layers

Figure 1.1 provides an overview of the lower software layers.

Several layers may exist between the HCI driver on the Host system and the HCI layer in the Controller(s). These intermediate layers, the Host Controller Transport Layer, provide the ability to transfer data without intimate knowledge of the data.

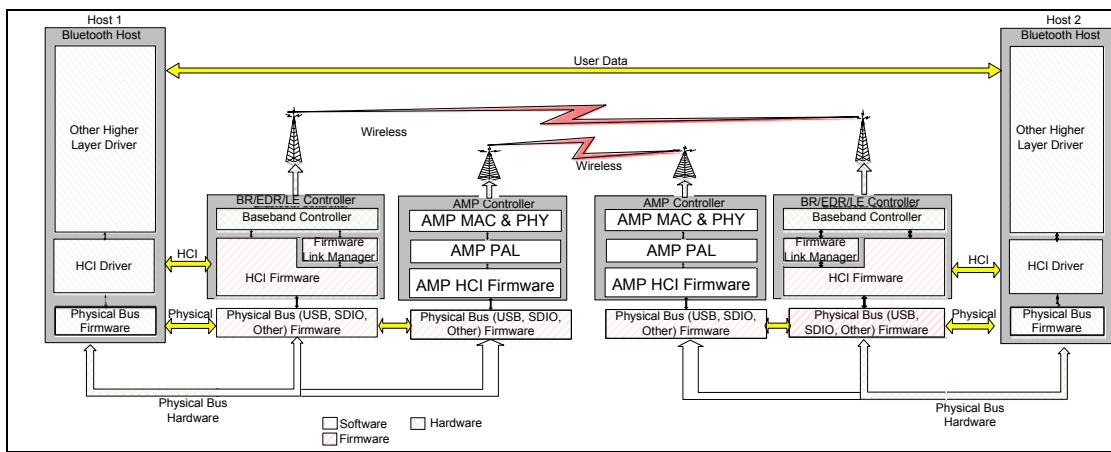


Figure 1.2: End to End Overview of Lower Software Layers to Transfer Data

**Figure 1.2** illustrates the path of a data transfer from one device to another. The HCI driver on the Host exchanges data and commands with the HCI firmware on the Bluetooth hardware. The Host Control Transport Layer (i.e. physical bus) driver provides both HCI layers with the ability to exchange information with each other.

The Host will receive asynchronous notifications of HCI events independent of which Host Controller Transport Layer is used. HCI events are used for notifying the Host when something occurs. When the Host discovers that an event has occurred it will then parse the received event packet to determine which event occurred.

A BR/EDR/LE Controller uses one shared command buffer and flow control for BR/EDR and LE. Data buffers can be either shared between BR/EDR and LE or there may be separate data buffers for BR/EDR and LE. The configuration of a Controller is determined through HCI.

LE Controllers use a reduced set of HCI commands and events. Some commands and events are re-used for multiple Controller types.

## 2 OVERVIEW OF HOST CONTROLLER TRANSPORT LAYER

---

The Host driver stack has a transport layer between the Host Controller Interface driver and the Host.

The main goal of this transport layer is transparency. The Host Controller driver (which interfaces to the Controller) should be independent of the underlying transport technology. In addition, the transport should not require any understanding of the data that the Host Controller driver passes to the Controller. This allows the logical interface (HCI) or the Controller to be upgraded without affecting the transport layer.

The specified Host Controller Transport Layers are described in [Volume 4, Host Controller Interface \[Transport Layer\]](#).

### 2.1 HOST CONTROLLER TRANSPORT LAYER AND AMPS

The logical Host Controller Interface does not consider multiplexing/routing over the Host Controller Transport Layer(s). The Host designer must consider this in deciding which of the multiple controller configurations it will support. Each logical AMP HCI instantiation is particular to a single AMP Controller. The Host shall direct each HCI Command to a specific AMP, and be aware of the source of each HCI Event, and manage flow control separately for each HCI. The Host's Controller\_ID concept used for AMP enumeration may assist with this.

The logical HCI definition does not consider the initial discovery of what AMPs are present in the system.

The upper layers discover the AMP capabilities (see [Section 3.3](#)). As seen by the AMP Manager, each local AMP has a Controller\_ID that is used to route the data and commands to the correct AMP Controller. This identifier is not used in AMP HCI.

The separate logical HCIs within a system may be on the same physical HCI transport, on separate physical HCI transports, or any combination. This may require a layer of multiplexing, which is not defined within this AMP HCI logical specification.

The logical HCI is not affected by this topology. The logical HCI definition describes commands and events as seen by a single AMP.

### 3 OVERVIEW OF COMMANDS AND EVENTS

The commands and events are sent between the Host and the Controller(s). These are grouped into logical groups by function.

<b>Generic Events</b>	The generic events can occur due to multiple commands, or events that can occur at any time.
<b>Device Setup</b>	The device setup commands are used to place the Controller into a known state.
<b>Controller Flow Control</b>	The Controller flow control commands and events are used to control data flow from the Host to the Controller.
<b>Controller Information</b>	The Controller information commands allow the Host to discover local information about the device.
<b>Controller Configuration</b>	The Controller configuration commands and events allow the global configuration parameters to be configured.
<b>Device Discovery</b>	The device discovery commands and events allow a device to discover other devices in the surrounding area.
<b>Connection Setup</b>	The connection setup commands and events allow a device to make a connection to another device.
<b>Remote Information</b>	The remote information commands and events allow information about a remote device's configuration to be discovered.
<b>Synchronous Connections</b>	The synchronous connection commands and events allow synchronous connections to be created
<b>Connection State</b>	The connection state commands and events allow the configuration of a link, especially for low power operation.
<b>Piconet Structure</b>	The piconet structure commands and events allow the discovery and reconfiguration of piconet.
<b>Quality of Service</b>	The quality of service commands and events allow quality of service parameters to be specified.
<b>Physical Links</b>	The physical link commands and events allow the configuration of a physical link.
<b>Host Flow Control</b>	The Host flow control commands and events allow flow control to be used towards the Host.
<b>Link Information</b>	The link information commands and events allow information about a link to be read.
<b>Authentication and Encryption</b>	The authentication and encryption commands and events allow authentication of a remote device and then encryption of the link.
<b>Testing</b>	The testing commands and events allow a device to be placed into test mode.
<b>Connectionless Slave Broadcast</b>	The Connectionless Slave Broadcast commands and events allow setup and teardown of a Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link.

Table 3.1: Overview of commands and events

The version information in this section denotes the version number of the specification in which this command or event is first specified. The Supported Controllers column denotes the Controller types that support the command: All, BR/EDR, LE, or AMP, or a comma-separated list of Controller types (e.g. "BR/EDR, LE").

### 3.1 GENERIC EVENTS

The generic events occur due to multiple commands, or events that can occur at any time.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Command Complete Event	1.1	The Command Complete event is used by the Controller to pass the return status of a command and the other event parameters for each HCI Command.	All
Command Status Event	1.1	The Command Status event is used to indicate that the command described by the Command_Opcode parameter has been received and the Controller is currently performing the task for this command.	All
Hardware Error Event	1.1	The Hardware Error event is used to indicate some type of hardware failure for the Controller.	All

Table 3.2: Generic events

### 3.2 DEVICE SETUP

The device setup group of commands are used to place the Controller into a known state.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Reset Command	1.1	For a BR/EDR Controller, the Reset command resets HCI, the Link Manager, and the Bluetooth radio. For an AMP Controller, the Reset command resets HCI and the AMP PAL. For an LE Controller, the Reset command resets HCI, the Link Layer, and LE PHY.	All

Table 3.3: Device setup

### 3.3 CONTROLLER FLOW CONTROL

The controller flow control group of commands and events are used to control data flow from the Host to the Controller.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Buffer Size Command	1.1	The Read_Buffer_Size command returns the size of the HCI buffers. These buffers are used by the Controller to buffer data that is to be transmitted.	All
Number Of Completed Packets Event	1.1	The Number Of Completed Packets event is used by the Controller to indicate to the Host how many HCI Data Packets have been completed for each Connection_Handle since the previous Number Of Completed Packets event was sent.	All
Read Data Block Size Command	3.0 + HS	The Read Data Block Size command returns the maximum size of the HCI buffers. These buffers are used by the Controller to buffer data that is to be transmitted.	BR/EDR, AMP
Number Of Completed Data Blocks Event	3.0 + HS	The Number Of Completed Data Blocks event is used by the Controller to indicate to the Host how many HCI ACL Data Packets have been completed and how many data block buffers have been freed for each Handle since the previous Number of Completed Data Blocks event was sent.	BR/EDR, AMP
Read Flow Control Mode Command	3.0 + HS	The Read Flow Control Mode command returns the value of the Flow_Control_Mode configuration parameter supported by this Controller.	BR/EDR, AMP
Write Flow Control Mode Command	3.0 + HS	The Write Flow Control Mode command sets the value of the Flow_Control_Mode configuration parameter for this Controller.	BR/EDR, AMP
LE Read Buffer Size Command	4.0	The LE Read Buffer Size command returns the size of the HCI buffers. These buffers are used by the LE Controller to buffer data that is to be transmitted.	LE

Table 3.4: Controller flow control

### 3.4 CONTROLLER INFORMATION

The controller information group of commands allows the Host to discover local information about the device.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Local Version Information Command	1.1	The Read Local Version Information command will read the version information for the local Controller.	All
Read Local Supported Commands Command	1.2	The Read Local Supported Commands command requests a list of the supported HCI commands for the local device.	All
Read Local Supported Features Command	1.1	The Read Local Supported Features command requests a list of the supported features for the local device.	All
Read Local Extended Features Command	1.2	The Read Local Extended Features command requests a list of the supported extended features for the local device	BR/EDR
Read BD_ADDR Command	1.1	The Read BD_ADDR command will read the value for the BD_ADDR parameter.	BR/EDR, LE
Remote Host Supported Features Notification Event	2.1 + EDR	The Remote Host Supported Features Notification event is used to return the LMP extended features page containing the Host features.	BR/EDR
LE Read Local Supported Features Command	4.0	The LE Read Local Supported Features command will read the version information for the local LE Controller.	LE
LE Read Supported States Command	4.0	The LE Read Supported States Command will read the current supported state and role combinations for the local LE Controllers.	LE
Set MWS Channel Parameters Command	CSA3	The Set MWS Channel Parameters command enables an MWS device to inform the Controller about the MWS channel configuration.	BR/EDR, LE and AMP

Table 3.5: Controller information

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Set External Frame Configuration Command	CSA3	The Set External Frame Configuration command enables an external device to describe a frame structure to the Controller.	BR/EDR, LE and AMP
Set MWS Signaling Command	CSA3	The Set MWS Signaling command enables a MWS device to inform the Controller about the timing parameters for the MWS coexistence interface.	BR/EDR, LE and AMP
Set Transport Layer Command	CSA3	The Set Transport Layer command selects the MWS coexistence signaling transport layer in the Controller.	BR/EDR, LE and AMP
Get Transport Layer Configuration Command	CSA3	The Get Transport Layer Configuration command reads the supported baud rates from the Controller.	BR/EDR, LE and AMP
Set MWS Scan Frequency Table Command	CSA3	The Set MWS Scan Frequency Table Command specifies the frequencies represented by the frequency index supplied by the MWS_SCAN_FREQUENCY signal.	BR/EDR, LE and AMP
Set MWS PATTERN Configuration Command	CSA3	The Set MWS PATTERN Command specifies the configuration of the pattern indicated over the MWS Coexistence Transport Layer.	BR/EDR, LE and AMP

Table 3.5: Controller information

### 3.5 CONTROLLER CONFIGURATION

The controller configuration group of commands and events allows the global configuration parameters to be configured.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Local Name Command	1.1	The Read Local Name command provides the ability to read the stored user-friendly name for the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Write Local Name Command	1.1	The Write Local Name command provides the ability to modify the user-friendly name for the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Read Class of Device Command	1.1	The Read Class of Device command will read the value for the Class of Device configuration parameter, which is used to indicate its capabilities to other devices.	BR/EDR
Write Class of Device Command	1.1	The Write Class of Device command will write the value for the Class_of_Device configuration parameter, which is used to indicate its capabilities to other devices.	BR/EDR
Read Number Of Supported IAC Command	1.1	The Read Number of Supported IAC command will read the value for the number of Inquiry Access Codes (IAC) that the local BR/EDR Controller can simultaneously listen for during an Inquiry Scan.	BR/EDR
Read Current IAC LAP Command	1.1	The Read Current IAC LAP command will read the LAP(s) used to create the Inquiry Access Codes (IAC) that the local BR/EDR Controller is simultaneously scanning for during Inquiry Scans.	BR/EDR
Write Current IAC LAP Command	1.1	The Write Current IAC LAP command will write the LAP(s) used to create the Inquiry Access Codes (IAC) that the local BR/EDR Controller is simultaneously scanning for during Inquiry Scans.	BR/EDR

Table 3.6: Controller configuration (Sheet 1 of 4)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Scan Enable Command	1.1	The Read Scan Enable command will read the value for the Scan Enable configuration parameter, which controls whether or not the BR/EDR Controller will periodically scan for page attempts and/or inquiry requests from other BR/EDR Controllers.	BR/EDR
Write Scan Enable Command	1.1	The Write Scan Enable command will write the value for the Scan Enable configuration parameter, which controls whether or not the BR/EDR Controller will periodically scan for page attempts and/or inquiry requests from other BR/EDR Controllers.	BR/EDR
Write Extended Inquiry Response Command	2.1 + EDR	The Write Extended Inquiry Response command will write the data that the BR/EDR Controller sends in the extended inquiry response packet during inquiry response.	BR/EDR
Read Extended Inquiry Response Command	2.1 + EDR	The Read Extended Inquiry Response command will read the data that the BR/EDR Controller sends in the extended inquiry response packet during inquiry response.	BR/EDR
Write Default Erroneous Data Reporting Command	2.1 + EDR	The Write Default Erroneous Data Reporting command will write the value for the Erroneous Data Reporting configuration parameter, which controls whether the Bluetooth controller will provide data for every (e)SCO interval, with the Packet_Status_Flag in HCI Synchronous Data Packets set according to HCI Synchronous Data Packets.	BR/EDR

Table 3.6: Controller configuration (Sheet 2 of 4)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Default Erroneous Data Reporting Command	2.1 + EDR	The Read Default Erroneous Data Reporting command will read the value for the Erroneous Data Reporting configuration parameter, which controls whether the BR/EDR Controller will provide data for every (e)SCO interval, with the Packet_Status_Flag in HCI Synchronous Data Packets set according to HCI Synchronous Data Packets.	BR/EDR
Read Location Data Command	3.0 + HS	The Read Location Data command provides the ability to read the Location Data parameters from any stored knowledge of environment or regulations or currently in use in the AMP Controller	AMP
Write Location Data Command	3.0 + HS	The Write Location Data command is used to tell the Controller any knowledge of environment or regulations currently in force, which may affect the operation of the Controller.	AMP
LE Set Advertise Enable Command	4.0	The LE Set Advertise Enable Command will enable or disable advertising.	LE
LE Set Advertising Data Command	4.0	The LE Set Advertising Data Command will set the data transmitted when advertising.	LE
LE Set Advertising Parameters Command	4.0	The LE Set Advertising Parameters Command will set the parameters used for advertising.	LE
LE Set Random Address Command	4.0	The LE Set Random Address Command will set the Random Device Address that may be used in an advertising packet.	LE
LE Set Scan Response Data Command	4.0	The LE Set Scan Response Data Command will set the data transmitted in a scan response.	LE
Read LE Host Support Command	4.0	This command reads the LE Supported Host and Simultaneous LE Host settings from the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR

Table 3.6: Controller configuration (Sheet 3 of 4)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Write LE Host Support Command	4.0	This command writes the LE Supported Host and Simultaneous LE Host settings to the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR

Table 3.6: Controller configuration (Sheet 4 of 4)

## 3.6 DEVICE DISCOVERY

The device discovery group of commands and events allow a device to discover other devices in the surrounding area.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Inquiry Command	1.1	The Inquiry command will cause the BR/EDR Controller to enter Inquiry Mode. Inquiry Mode is used to discover other nearby BR/EDR Controllers.	BR/EDR
Inquiry Result Event	1.1	The Inquiry Result event indicates that a BR/EDR Controller or multiple BR/EDR Controllers have responded so far during the current Inquiry process.	BR/EDR
Inquiry Result with RSSI Event	1.2	The Inquiry Result with RSSI event indicates that a BR/EDR Controller or multiple BR/EDR Controllers have responded so far during the current Inquiry process.	BR/EDR
Extended Inquiry Result Event	2.1 + EDR	The Extended Inquiry Result event indicates that a BR/EDR Controller has responded with an extended inquiry response during the current Inquiry process.	BR/EDR
Inquiry Cancel Command	1.1	The Inquiry Cancel command will cause the BR/EDR Controller to stop the current Inquiry if the BR/EDR Controller is in Inquiry Mode.	BR/EDR
Inquiry Complete Event	1.1	The Inquiry Complete event indicates that the Inquiry is finished.	BR/EDR
Periodic Inquiry Mode Command	1.1	The Periodic Inquiry Mode command is used to configure the BR/EDR Controller to perform an automatic Inquiry based on a specified period range.	BR/EDR

Table 3.7: Device discovery (Sheet 1 of 3)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode Command	1.1	The Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode command is used to end the Periodic Inquiry mode when the local device is in Periodic Inquiry Mode.	BR/EDR
Read Inquiry Scan Activity Command	1.1	The Read Inquiry Scan Activity command will read the value for Inquiry Scan Interval and Inquiry Scan Window configuration parameters. Inquiry Scan Interval defines the amount of time between consecutive inquiry scans. Inquiry Scan Window defines the amount of time for the duration of the inquiry scan.	BR/EDR
Write Inquiry Scan Activity Command	1.1	The Write Inquiry Scan Activity command will write the value for Inquiry Scan Interval and Inquiry Scan Window configuration parameters. Inquiry Scan Interval defines the amount of time between consecutive inquiry scans. Inquiry Scan Window defines the amount of time for the duration of the inquiry scan.	BR/EDR
Read Inquiry Scan Type Command	1.2	The Read Inquiry Scan Type command is used to read the Inquiry Scan Type configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. The Inquiry Scan Type configuration parameter can set the inquiry scan to either normal or interlaced scan.	BR/EDR
Write Inquiry Scan Type Command	1.2	The Write Inquiry Scan Type command is used to write the Inquiry Scan Type configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. The Inquiry Scan Type configuration parameter can set the inquiry scan to either normal or interlaced scan.	BR/EDR
Read Inquiry Mode Command	1.2	The Read Inquiry Mode command is used to read the Inquiry Mode configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Write Inquiry Mode Command	1.2	The Write Inquiry Mode command is used to write the Inquiry Mode configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR

Table 3.7: Device discovery (Sheet 2 of 3)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Inquiry Response Transmit Power Level Command	2.1 + EDR	This command will read the inquiry response Transmit Power level used to transmit the FHS and EIR data packets. This can be used directly in the Tx Power Level EIR data type.	BR/EDR
Write Inquiry Transmit Power Level Command	2.1 + EDR	This command is used to write the transmit power level used to transmit the inquiry (ID) data packets.	BR/EDR
LE Advertising Report Event	4.0	The LE Advertising Report event indicates that an advertising or scan response packet has been received.	LE
LE Set Scan Enable Command	4.0	The LE Set Scan Enable Command will enable or disable scanning.	LE
LE Set Scan Parameters Command	4.0	The LE Set Scan Parameters Command will set the parameters used for scanning.	LE
Inquiry Response Notification Event	CSA 4	The Inquiry Response Notification event indicates to the Host that the BR/EDR Controller responded to an inquiry message.	BR/EDR
Read Extended Inquiry Length	4.1	The Read Extended Inquiry Length command is used to read the Extended Inquiry Length parameter from the Controller.	BR/EDR
Write Extended Inquiry Length	4.1	The Write Extended Inquiry Length command is used to write the Extended Inquiry Length parameter to the Controller.	BR/EDR

Table 3.7: Device discovery (Sheet 3 of 3)

## 3.7 CONNECTION SETUP

The connection setup group of commands and events are used to allow a device to make a connection to another device.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Create Connection Command	1.1	The Create Connection command will cause the BR/EDR Link Manager to create an ACL connection to the BR/EDR Controller with the BD_ADDR specified by the command parameters.	BR/EDR
Connection Request Event	1.1	The Connection Request event is used to indicate that a new incoming BR/EDR connection is trying to be established.	BR/EDR
Accept Connection Request Command	1.1	The Accept Connection Request command is used to accept a new incoming BR/EDR connection request.	BR/EDR
Reject Connection Request Command	1.1	The Reject Connection Request command is used to decline a new incoming BR/EDR connection request.	BR/EDR
Create Connection Cancel Command	1.2	The Create Connection Cancel command is used to cancel an ongoing Create Connection.	BR/EDR
Connection Complete Event	1.1	The Connection Complete event indicates to both of the Hosts forming the connection that a new BR/EDR connection has been established.	BR/EDR
Disconnect Command	1.1	The Disconnect command is used to terminate an existing BR/EDR or LE connection.	BR/EDR, LE
Disconnection Complete Event	1.1	The Disconnection Complete event occurs when a connection has been terminated.	BR/EDR, LE
Read Page Timeout Command	1.1	The Read Page Timeout command will read the value for the Page Reply Timeout configuration parameter, which determines the time the BR/EDR Controller will wait for the remote device to respond to a connection request before the local device returns a connection failure.	BR/EDR

Table 3.8: Connection setup (Sheet 1 of 6)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Write Page Timeout Command	1.1	The Write Page Timeout command will write the value for the Page Reply Timeout configuration parameter, which allows the BR/EDR Controller to define the amount of time a connection request will wait for the remote device to respond before the local device returns a connection failure.	BR/EDR
Read Page Scan Activity Command	1.1	The Read Page Scan Activity command will read the values for the Page Scan Interval and Page Scan Window configuration parameters. Page Scan Interval defines the amount of time between consecutive page scans. Page Scan Window defines the duration of the page scan.	BR/EDR
Write Page Scan Activity Command	1.1	The Write Page Scan Activity command will write the value for Page Scan Interval and Page Scan Window configuration parameters. Page Scan Interval defines the amount of time between consecutive page scans. Page Scan Window defines the duration of the page scan.	BR/EDR
Page Scan Repetition Mode Change Event	1.1	The Page Scan Repetition Mode Change event indicates that the connected remote BR/EDR Controller with the specified Connection_Handle has successfully changed the Page_Scan_Repetition_Mode (SR)."	BR/EDR
Read Page Scan Type Command	1.2	The Read Page Scan Type command is used to read the page scan type of the local BR/EDR Controller. The Page Scan Type configuration parameter can set the page scan to either normal or interlaced scan.	BR/EDR
Write Page Scan Type Command	1.2	The Write Page Scan Type command is used to write the page scan type of the local BR/EDR Controller. The Page Scan Type configuration parameter can set the page scan to either normal or interlaced scan.	BR/EDR

Table 3.8: Connection setup (Sheet 2 of 6)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Connection Accept Timeout Command	1.1	The Read Connection Accept Timeout command will read the value for the Connection Accept Timeout configuration parameter, which allows the Controller to automatically deny a connection request after a specified period has occurred, and to refuse a new connection.	BR/EDR, AMP
Read Hold Mode Activity	1.1	The Read Hold Mode Activity command is used to read which activities should be suspended when the BR/EDR Controller is in Hold Mode.	BR/EDR
Write Hold Mode Activity	1.1	The Write Hold Mode Activity command is used to write which activities should be suspended when the BR/EDR Controller is in Hold Mode.	BR/EDR
Write Connection Accept Timeout Command	1.1	The Write Connection Accept Timeout command will write the value for the Connection Accept Timeout configuration parameter, which allows the Controller to automatically deny a connection request after a specified period has occurred, and to refuse a new connection.	BR/EDR, AMP
Accept Logical Link Command	3.0 + HS	The Accept Logical Command will cause the AMP Controller to create a logical link to the remote AMP Controller identified by the physical link handle.	AMP
Accept Physical Link Command	3.0 + HS	The Accept Physical Link command will cause the AMP Controller to accept a Physical Link request from the initiating BR/EDR Controller's AMP Controller specified by the command parameters.	AMP
Create Logical Link Command	3.0 + HS	The Create Logical Command will cause the AMP Controller to create a logical link to the remote AMP Controller identified by the physical link handle.	AMP
Create Physical Link Command	3.0 + HS	The Create Physical Link command will cause the AMP Controller to initiate a Physical Link creation to the remote BR/EDR Controller's AMP Controller specified by the command parameters.	AMP

Table 3.8: Connection setup (Sheet 3 of 6)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Disconnect Logical Link Command	3.0 + HS	The Disconnect Logical Link command is used to terminate the designated logical link.	AMP
Disconnection Logical Link Complete Event	3.0 + HS	The Disconnection Logical Link Complete event occurs when an AMP Logical Link has been terminated.	AMP
Disconnect Physical Link Command	3.0 + HS	The Disconnect Physical Link command is used to terminate the designated physical link (during or after creation).	AMP
Disconnection Physical Link Complete Event	3.0 + HS	The Disconnection Physical Link Complete event occurs when an AMP Physical Link has been terminated.	AMP
Logical Link Cancel Command	3.0 + HS	The Logical Link Cancel command is used to request cancellation of the ongoing logical link creation process identified by the Physical_Link_Handle and the Tx_Flow_Spec_ID	AMP
Logical Link Complete Event	3.0 + HS	The Logical Link Complete event indicates to both of the Hosts forming the connection that a new AMP Logical Link has been established.	AMP
Physical Link Complete Event	3.0 + HS	The Physical Link Complete event indicates to both of the Hosts forming the connection that a new AMP Physical Link has been established.	AMP
Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event	3.0 + HS	The Physical Link Loss Early Warning event occurs when a physical link has indication that the link may be disrupted.	AMP
Physical Link Recovery Event	3.0 + HS	The Physical Link Recovery event indicates that whatever interruption caused an earlier Physical Link Loss Early Warning event has now been cleared.	AMP
Read Logical Link Accept Timeout Command	3.0 + HS	The Read Logical Link Accept Timeout command will read the value for the Logical Link Accept Timeout configuration parameter, which allows the AMP Controller to automatically deny a Logical Link request after a specified period has occurred, and to refuse a new connection.	AMP

Table 3.8: Connection setup (Sheet 4 of 6)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Write Logical Link Accept Timeout Command	3.0 + HS	The Write Logical Link Accept Timeout command will write the value for the Logical Link Accept Timeout configuration parameter, which allows the AMP Controller to automatically deny a connection request after a specified period has occurred, and to refuse a new connection.	AMP
Channel Selected Event	3.0 + HS	The Channel Selected event indicates to the Host originating the physical link that the link information data is available to be read using the Read Local AMP Assoc command.	AMP
LE Connection Complete Event	4.0	The LE Connection Complete event indicates to the Host that a new connection has been created.	LE
LE Create Connection Cancel Command	4.0	The LE Create Connection Cancel Command is used to cancel an ongoing LE Create Connection Command.	LE
LE Create Connection Command	4.0	The LE Create Connection Command is used to create a new connection.	LE
Slave Page Response Timeout Event	CSA 4	The Slave Page Response Timeout event indicates to the Host that the <i>pagerespTO</i> has been exceeded on the BR/EDR Controller after the Controller responded to an ID packet.	BR/EDR
Truncated Page Command	CSA 4	The Truncated Page command will cause the BR/EDR Controller to page the BR/EDR Controller with the BD_ADDR specified by the command parameters and abort the page sequence after receiving the ID response packet.	BR/EDR
Truncated Page Cancel Command	CSA 4	The Truncated Page Cancel Command is used to cancel an ongoing Truncated Page.	BR/EDR
Truncated Page Complete Event	CSA 4	The Truncated Page Complete event indicates to the Host that a Truncated Page has completed.	BR/EDR
Read Extended Page Timeout	4.1	The Read Extended Page Timeout command is used to read the Extended Page Timeout parameter from the Controller.	BR/EDR

Table 3.8: Connection setup (Sheet 5 of 6)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Write Extended Page Timeout	4.1	The Write Extended Page Timeout command is used to write the Extended Page Timeout parameter to the Controller.	BR/EDR

Table 3.8: Connection setup (Sheet 6 of 6)

### 3.8 REMOTE INFORMATION

The remote information group of commands and events allows information about a remote devices configuration to be discovered.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Remote Name Request Command	1.1	The Remote Name Request command is used to obtain the user-friendly name of another BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Remote Name Request Cancel Command	1.2	The Remote Name Request Cancel command is used to cancel an ongoing Remote Name Request.	BR/EDR
Remote Name Request Complete Event	1.1	The Remote Name Request complete event is used to indicate a remote name request has been completed.	BR/EDR
Read Remote Supported Features Command	1.1	The Read Remote Supported Features command requests a list of the supported features of a remote device.	BR/EDR
Read Remote Supported Features Complete Event	1.1	The Read Remote Supported Features Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Link Manager obtaining the supported features of the remote BR/EDR Controller specified by the Connection_Handle event parameter.	BR/EDR
Read Remote Extended Features Command	1.2	The Read Remote Extended Features command requests a list of the supported extended features of a remote device	BR/EDR
Read Remote Extended Features Complete Event	1.2	The Read Remote Extended Features Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Link Manager obtaining the supported Extended features of the remote BR/EDR Controller specified by the Connection_Handle event parameter.	BR/EDR

Table 3.9: Remote information

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Remote Version Information Command	1.1	The Read Remote Version Information command will read the values for the version information for the remote device associated with the Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR, LE
Read Remote Version Information Complete Event	1.1	The Read Remote Version Information Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Link Manager obtaining the version information of the remote device associated with the Connection_Handle event parameter.	BR/EDR, LE
LE Read Remote Used Features Command	4.0	The LE Read Remote Used Features Command is used to read the used features of a LE remote device.	LE
LE Read Remote Used Features Complete Event	4.0	The LE Read Remote Used Features Complete event indicates the completion of the process to read the remote used features on a remote LE device.	LE

Table 3.9: Remote information

### 3.9 SYNCHRONOUS CONNECTIONS

The synchronous connections group of commands and events allows synchronous connections to be created.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Setup Synchronous Connection Command	1.2	The Setup Synchronous Connection command adds a new or modifies an existing synchronous logical transport (SCO or eSCO) on a physical link depending on the Connection_Handle parameter specified.	BR/EDR
Synchronous Connection Complete Event	1.2	The Synchronous Connection Complete event indicates to both the Hosts that a new Synchronous connection has been established.	BR/EDR
Synchronous Connection Changed Event	1.2	The Synchronous Connection Changed event indicates to the Host that an existing Synchronous connection has been reconfigured.	BR/EDR

Table 3.10: Synchronous connections

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command	1.2	The Accept Synchronous Connection Request command is used to accept an incoming request for a synchronous connection and to inform the local Link Manager about the acceptable parameter values for the synchronous connection.	BR/EDR
Reject Synchronous Connection Request Command	1.2	The Reject Synchronous Connection Request command is used to decline an incoming request for a synchronous link.	BR/EDR
Read Voice Setting Command	1.1	The Read Voice Setting command will read the values for the Voice Setting configuration parameter, which controls all the various settings for the voice connections.	BR/EDR
Write Voice Setting Command	1.1	The Write Voice Setting command will write the values for the Voice Setting configuration parameter, which controls all the various settings for the voice connections.	BR/EDR
Enhanced Setup Synchronous Connection Command	CSA 2	The Enhanced Setup Synchronous Connection command adds a new or modifies an existing synchronous logical transport (SCO or eSCO) on a physical link depending on the Connection_Handle parameter specified.	BR/EDR
Enhanced Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command	CSA 2	The Enhanced Accept Synchronous Connection Request command is used to accept an incoming request for a synchronous connection and to inform the local Link Manager about the acceptable parameter values for the synchronous connection.	BR/EDR
Read Local Supported Codecs Command	CSA 2	The Read Local Supported Codecs command is used for a host to query a controller's supported codecs.	BR/EDR

Table 3.10: Synchronous connections

## 3.10 CONNECTION STATE

The connection state group of commands and events allows the configuration of a link, especially for low power operation.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Mode Change Event	1.1	The Mode Change event is used to indicate that the current mode has changed.	BR/EDR
Max Slots Change Event	1.1	The Max Slots Change event is used to indicate a change in the max slots by the LM.	BR/EDR
Hold Mode Command	1.1	The Hold Mode command is used to initiate Hold Mode.	BR/EDR
Sniff Mode Command	1.1	The Sniff Mode command is used to alter the behavior of the LM and have the LM place the local or remote device into the sniff mode.	BR/EDR
Sniff Subrating Command	2.1 + EDR	The Sniff Subrating command is used to configure the sniff subrating parameters in the local device	BR/EDR
Sniff Subrating Event	2.1 + EDR	The Sniff Subrating event is used to inform the Host of the local and remote transmit and receive latencies	BR/EDR
Exit Sniff Mode Command	1.1	The Exit Sniff Mode command is used to end the sniff mode for a Connection_Handle which is currently in sniff mode.	BR/EDR
Park State Command	1.1	The Park State command is used to alter the behavior of the Link Manager and have the Link Manager place the local or remote device into the park state.	BR/EDR
Exit Park State Command	1.1	The Exit Park State command is used to switch the BR/EDR Controller from park state back to active mode.	BR/EDR

Table 3.11: Connection state

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Link Policy Settings Command	1.1	The Read Link Policy Settings command will read the Link Policy configuration parameter for the specified Connection_Handle. The Link Policy settings allow the Host to specify which Link Modes the Link Manager can use for the specified Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
Write Link Policy Settings Command	1.1	The Write Link Policy Settings command will write the Link Policy configuration parameter for the specified Connection_Handle. The Link Policy settings allow the Host to specify which Link Modes the Link Manager can use for the specified Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
Read Default Link Policy Settings Command	1.2	The Read Default Link Policy Settings command will read the Default Link Policy configuration parameter for all new connections.	BR/EDR
Write Default Link Policy Settings Command	1.2	The Write Default Link Policy Settings command will write the Default Link Policy configuration parameter for all new connections.	BR/EDR
LE Connection Update Command	4.0	The LE Connection Update Command will be used to change the connection parameters of an existing connection.	LE
LE Connection Update Complete Event	4.0	The LE Connection Update Complete event indicates the completion of the process to change the connection parameters.	LE
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply Command	4.1	The LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply Command is used to accept the remote device's request to change the connection parameters of the LE connection.	LE

Table 3.11: Connection state

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply Command	4.1	The LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply Command is used to reject the remote device's request to change the connection parameters of the LE connection.	LE
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Event	4.1	The LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Event is used to indicate to the Host that the remote device is requesting a change in the connection parameters.	LE

Table 3.11: *Connection state*

### 3.11 PICONET STRUCTURE

The piconet structure group of commands and events allows the discovery and reconfiguration of a piconet.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Role Discovery Command	1.1	The Role Discovery command is used for a BR/EDR Controller to determine which role the device is performing for a particular Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
Switch Role Command	1.1	The Switch Role command is used to switch master and slave roles of the devices on either side of a connection.	BR/EDR
Role Change Event	1.1	The Role Change event is used to indicate that the current BR/EDR Controller role related to the particular connection has been changed.	BR/EDR

Table 3.12: Piconet structure

## 3.12 QUALITY OF SERVICE

The quality of service group of commands and events allows the configuration of links to allow for quality of service parameters to be specified.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Flow Specification Command	1.2	The Flow Specification command is used to specify the flow parameters for the traffic carried over the ACL connection identified by the Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
Flow Specification Complete Event	1.2	The Flow Specification Complete event is used to inform the Host about the Quality of Service for the ACL connection the Controller is able to support.	BR/EDR
QoS Setup Command	1.1	The QoS Setup command is used to specify Quality of Service parameters for a Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
QoS Setup Complete Event	1.1	The QoS Setup Complete event is used to indicate that QoS is setup.	BR/EDR
QoS Violation Event	1.1	The QoS Violation event is used to indicate the Controller's Link Manager or PAL is unable to provide the current QoS requirement for the Handle.	BR/EDR, AMP
Flush Command	1.1	The Flush command is used to discard all data that is currently pending for transmission in the Controller for the specified Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
Flush Occurred Event	1.1	The Flush Occurred event is used to indicate that, for the specified Handle, the data to be transmitted has been discarded.	BR/EDR, AMP
Enhanced Flush Command	2.1 + EDR	The Enhanced Flush command is used to discard specific packets currently pending for transmission in the Controller for the specified Handle. This command takes a parameter specifying the type of packets to be flushed.	BR/EDR, AMP
Enhanced Flush Complete Event	2.1 + EDR	The Enhanced Flush Complete event is used to indicate that an Enhanced Flush is complete.	BR/EDR, AMP

Table 3.13: Quality of service

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Automatic Flush Timeout Command	1.1	The Read Automatic Flush Timeout command will read the value for the Flush Timeout configuration parameter for the specified Connection_Handle. The Flush Timeout parameter is only used for ACL connections.	BR/EDR
Write Automatic Flush Timeout Command	1.1	The Write Automatic Flush Timeout command will write the value for the Flush Timeout configuration parameter for the specified Connection_Handle. The Flush Timeout parameter is only used for ACL connections.	BR/EDR
Read Failed Contact Counter Command	1.1	The Read Failed Contact Counter-command will read the value for the Failed Contact Counter configuration parameter for a particular connection to another device.	BR/EDR, AMP
Reset Failed Contact Counter Command	1.1	The Reset Failed Contact Counter-command will reset the value for the Failed Contact Counter configuration parameter for a particular connection to another device.	BR/EDR, AMP
Read Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command	1.1	The Read Num Broadcast Retransmissions command will read the parameter value for the Number of Broadcast Retransmissions for the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Write Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command	1.1	The Write Num Broadcast Retransmissions command will write the parameter value for the Number of Broadcast Retransmissions for the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Flow Spec Modify Command	3.0 + HS	The Flow Spec Modify command modifies certain parameters of an existing Logical Link's Flow Spec on this AMP Controller	AMP
Flow Spec Modify Complete Event	3.0 + HS	The Flow Spec Modify Complete event indicates to the Host that a Flow Spec Modify command has been completed.	AMP
Read Best Effort Flush Timeout Command	3.0 + HS	The Read Best Effort Flush Timeout command returns the last value written with the Write Best Effort Flush Timeout command.	AMP

Table 3.13: Quality of service

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Write Best Effort Flush Timeout Command	3.0 + HS	The Write Best Effort Flush Timeout command configures the AMP device with a maximum time to attempt to transmit any given frame on the Best Effort logical link.	802.11 PAL only

Table 3.13: Quality of service

### 3.13 PHYSICAL LINKS

The physical links commands and events allows configuration of the physical link.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Link Supervision Timeout Command	1.1	The Read Link Supervision Timeout command will read the value for the Link Supervision Timeout configuration parameter for the device. This parameter is used by the Controller to determine link loss.	BR/EDR, AMP
Write Link Supervision Timeout Command	1.1	The Write Link Supervision Timeout command will write the value for the Link Supervision Timeout configuration parameter for the device. This parameter is used by the Controller to determine link loss.	BR/EDR, AMP
Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event	2.1 + EDR	The Link Supervision Timeout event indicates that the remote device changed the Link Supervision Timeout.	BR/EDR
Read AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command	1.2	The Read AFH Channel Assessment Mode command will read the value for the AFH Channel Classification Mode parameter. This value is used to enable or disable the Controller's channel assessment scheme.	BR/EDR

Table 3.14: Physical links

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Write AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command	1.2	The Write AFH Channel Assessment Mode command will write the value for the Channel Classification Mode configuration parameter. This value is used to enable or disable the Controller's channel assessment scheme.	BR/EDR
Set AFH Host Channel Classification Command	1.2	The Set AFH Host Channel Classification command allows the Host to specify a channel classification based on its "local information".	BR/EDR
Change Connection Packet Type Command	1.1	The Change Connection Packet Type command is used to change which packet types can be used for a connection that is currently established.	BR/EDR
Connection Packet Type Changed Event	1.1	The Connection Packet Type Changed event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Link Manager changing the packet type mask used for the specified Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
Read Local AMP_ASSOC Command	3.0 + HS	The Read Local AMP_ASSOC command will return a fragment of the AMP_ASSOC structure, which contains AMP specific information for this AMP Controller.	AMP
Write Remote AMP_ASSOC Command	3.0 + HS	The Write Remote AMP_ASSOC command allows the Host to write a fragment of the AMP_ASSOC structure, which contains AMP specific information for the AMP Controller.	AMP
Short Range Mode Command	3.0 + HS	The Short Range Mode command is used to notify the AMP that the peer may be at close enough range to require modification of AMP transmission power level.	802.11 PAL only
Short Range Mode Change Complete Event	3.0 + HS	The Short Range Mode Change Complete event is used to indicate completion of any tasks relating to establishment of short range mode.	802.11 PAL only

Table 3.14: Physical links

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
LE Set Host Channel Classification Command	4.0	The LE Set Host Channel Classification Command allows the Host to specify a channel classification based on its “local information”.	LE

Table 3.14: Physical links

## 3.14 HOST FLOW CONTROL

The Host flow control group of commands and events allows flow control to be used towards the Host.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Host Buffer Size Command	1.1	The Host Buffer Size command is used by the Host to notify the Controller about its buffer sizes for ACL and synchronous data. The Controller will segment the data to be transmitted from the Controller to the Host, so that data contained in HCI Data Packets will not exceed these sizes.	BR/EDR, LE
Set Event Mask Command	1.1	The Set Event Mask command is used to control which events are generated by the HCI for the Host.	All
Set Event Filter Command	1.1	The Set Event Filter command is used by the Host to specify different event filters. The Host may issue this command multiple times to request various conditions for the same type of event filter and for different types of event filters.	BR/EDR, AMP
Set Controller To Host Flow Control Command	1.1	The Set Controller To Host Flow Control command is used by the Host to turn flow control on or off in the direction from the Controller to the Host.	BR/EDR, LE
Host Number Of Completed Packets Command	1.1	The Host Number Of Completed Packets command is used by the Host to indicate to the Controller when the Host is ready to receive more HCI packets for any Connection_Handle.	All

Table 3.15: Host flow control

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Data Buffer Overflow Event	1.1	The Data Buffer Overflow event is used to indicate that the Controller's data buffers have overflowed, because the Host has sent more packets than allowed.	All
Read Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command	1.1	The Read Synchronous Flow Control Enable command provides the ability to read the Synchronous Flow Control Enable setting. By using this setting, the Host can decide if the Controller will send Number Of Completed Packets events for Synchronous Connection_Handles.	BR/EDR
Write Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command	1.1	The Write Synchronous Flow Control Enable command provides the ability to write the Synchronous Flow Control Enable setting. By using this setting, the Host can decide if the Controller will send Number Of Completed Packets events for Synchronous Connection_Handles.	BR/EDR
Set Event Mask Page 2 Command	3.0 + HS	The Set Event Mask Page 2 command is used to control which events are generated by the HCI for the Host.	All
LE Add Device To White List Command	4.0	The LE Add Device To White List Command will add a device to the white list.	LE
LE Clear White List Command	4.0	The LE Clear White List Command will clear the white list.	LE
LE Read White List Size Command	4.0	The LE Read White List Size Command will read the maximum number of white list entries that this Controller supports.	LE
LE Remove Device From White List Command	4.0	The LE Remove Device From White List Command will remove a single device from the white list.	LE
LE Set Event Mask Command	4.0	The LE Set Event Mask Command is used to control which events are generated by the HCI for the Host.	LE

Table 3.15: Host flow control

### 3.15 LINK INFORMATION

The link information group of commands and events allows information about a link to be read.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read LMP Handle Command	1.2	The Read LMP Handle command will read the current LMP Handle associated with the Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
Read Transmit Power Level Command	1.1	The Read Transmit Power Level command will read the values for the Transmit Power Level parameter for the specified Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR, LE
Read Link Quality Command	1.1	The Read Link Quality command will read the value for the Link Quality for the specified Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR, AMP
Read RSSI Command	1.1	The Read RSSI command will read the value for the Received Signal Strength Indication (RSSI) for a Connection_Handle to another Controller.	All
Read Clock Offset Command	1.1	The Read Clock Offset command allows the Host to read the clock offset of remote BR/EDR Controllers.	BR/EDR
Read Clock Offset Complete Event	1.1	The Read Clock Offset Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the LM obtaining the Clock offset information.	BR/EDR
Read Clock Command	1.2	The Read Clock command will read an estimate of a piconet or the local Bluetooth Clock.	BR/EDR
Set Triggered Clock Capture Command	CSA4	The Set Triggered Clock Capture command is used to configure the Controller to return events containing an estimate of a piconet or the local Bluetooth clock.	BR/EDR
Triggered Clock Capture Event	CSA4	The Triggered Clock Capture event reports the Bluetooth clock when an external trigger occurred.	BR/EDR

Table 3.16: Link information

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read AFH Channel Map Command	1.2	The Read AFH Channel Map command will read the current state of the channel map for a connection.	BR/EDR
Simple Pairing Complete Event	2.1 + EDR	The Simple Pairing Complete event is used to indicate that the simple pairing process has completed.	BR/EDR
Keypress Notification Event	2.1 + EDR	The Keypress Notification event is sent to the Host after a passkey notification has been received by the Link Manager on the given BD_ADDR.	BR/EDR
Read Local AMP Info Command	3.0 + HS	The Read Local AMP Info command returns information about this AMP Controller.	AMP
AMP Status Change Event	3.0 + HS	The AMP Status Change event can occur at any time, after initial Read Local AMP_Info request, the Controller detects a change has occurred regarding status.	AMP
Read Enhanced Transmit Power Level Command	3.0 + HS	The Read Enhanced Transmit Power Level command will read the values for the GFSK, DQPSK and 8DPSK Transmit Power Level parameters for the specified Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
LE Read Advertising Channel TX Power Command	4.0	The LE Read Advertising Channel TX Power Command will read the transmit power level that will be used for advertising.	LE
LE Read Channel Map Command	4.0	The LE Read Channel Map Command will read the current state of the channel map for a connection.	LE

Table 3.16: Link information

### 3.16 AUTHENTICATION AND ENCRYPTION

The authentication and encryption group of commands and events allows authentication of a remote device and then encryption of the link to one or more remote devices.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Authentication Enable Command	1.1	The Read Authentication Enable command will read the value for the Authentication Enable parameter, which controls whether the Bluetooth device will require authentication for each connection with other Bluetooth devices.	BR/EDR
Write Authentication Enable Command	1.1	The Write Authentication Enable command will write the value for the Authentication Enable parameter, which controls whether the Bluetooth device will require authentication for each connection with other Bluetooth devices.	BR/EDR
Read Encryption Mode Command	1.1	The Read Encryption Mode command will read the value for the Encryption Mode parameter, which controls whether the Bluetooth device will require encryption for each connection with other Bluetooth devices.	BR/EDR
Write Encryption Mode Command	1.1	The Write Encryption Mode command will write the value for the Encryption Mode parameter, which controls whether the Bluetooth device will require encryption for each connection with other Bluetooth devices.	BR/EDR
Link Key Request Event	1.1	The Link Key Request event is used to indicate that a Link Key is required for the connection with the device specified in BD_ADDR.	BR/EDR
Link Key Request Reply Command	1.1	The Link Key Request Reply command is used to reply to a Link Key Request event from the BR/EDR Controller, and specifies the Link Key stored on the Host to be used as the link key for the connection with the other BR/EDR Controller specified by BD_ADDR.	BR/EDR

Table 3.17: Authentication and encryption (Sheet 1 of 8)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Link Key Request Negative Reply Command	1.1	The Link Key Request Negative Reply command is used to reply to a Link Key Request event from the BR/EDR Controller if the Host does not have a stored Link Key for the connection with the other BR/EDR Controller specified by BD_ADDR.	BR/EDR
PIN Code Request Event	1.1	The PIN Code Request event is used to indicate that a PIN code is required to create a new link key for a connection.	BR/EDR
PIN Code Request Reply Command	1.1	The PIN Code Request Reply command is used to reply to a PIN Code Request event from the Controller and specifies the PIN code to use for a connection.	BR/EDR
PIN Code Request Negative Reply Command	1.1	The PIN Code Request Negative Reply command is used to reply to a PIN Code Request event from the Controller when the Host cannot specify a PIN code to use for a connection.	BR/EDR
Link Key Notification Event	1.1	The Link Key Notification event is used to indicate to the Host that a new Link Key has been created for the connection with the BR/EDR Controller specified in BD_ADDR.	BR/EDR
Authentication Requested Command	1.1	The Authentication Requested command is used to establish authentication between the two devices associated with the specified Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
Authentication Complete Event	1.1	The Authentication Complete event occurs when authentication has been completed for the specified connection.	BR/EDR
Set Connection Encryption Command	1.1	The Set Connection Encryption command is used to enable and disable the link level encryption.	BR/EDR
Encryption Change Event	1.1	The Encryption Change event is used to indicate that the change in the encryption has been completed for the Connection_Handle specified by the Connection_Handle event parameter.	BR/EDR, LE

Table 3.17: Authentication and encryption (Sheet 2 of 8)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Change Connection Link Key Command	1.1	The Change Connection Link Key command is used to force both devices of a connection associated to the Connection_Handle, to generate a new link key.	BR/EDR
Change Connection Link Key Complete Event	1.1	The Change Connection Link Key Complete event is used to indicate that the change in the Link Key for the Connection_Handle specified by the Connection_Handle event parameter had been completed.	BR/EDR
Master Link Key Command	1.1	The Master Link Key command is used to force both BR/EDR Controllers of a connection associated to the Connection_Handle to use the temporary link key of the Master device or the regular link keys.	BR/EDR
Master Link Key Complete Event	1.1	The Master Link Key Complete event is used to indicate that the change in the temporary Link Key or in the semi-permanent link keys on the Bluetooth master side has been completed.	BR/EDR
Read PIN Type Command	1.1	The Read PIN Type command is used for the Host to read the value that is specified to indicate whether the Host supports variable PIN or only fixed PINs.	BR/EDR
Write PIN Type Command	1.1	The Write PIN Type command is used for the Host to specify whether the Host supports variable PIN or only fixed PINs.	BR/EDR
Read Stored Link Key Command	1.1	The Read Stored Link Key command provides the ability to read whether one or more link keys are stored in the Controller.	BR/EDR
Return Link Keys Event	1.1	The Return Link Keys event is used to return stored link keys after a Read Stored Link Key command is used.	BR/EDR
Write Stored Link Key Command	1.1	The Write Stored Link Key command provides the ability to write one or more link keys to be stored in the Controller.	BR/EDR

Table 3.17: Authentication and encryption (Sheet 3 of 8)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Delete Stored Link Key Command	1.1	The Delete Stored Link Key command provides the ability to remove one or more of the link keys stored in the Controller.	BR/EDR
Create New Unit Key Command	1.1	The Create New Unit Key command is used to create a new unit key.	BR/EDR
Refresh Encryption Key Command	2.1 + EDR	The Refresh Encryption Key command is used by the Host to cause the Controller to refresh the encryption key by pausing and resuming encryption	BR/EDR
Encryption Key Refresh Complete Event	2.1 + EDR	The Encryption Key Refresh Complete event is used to indicate to the Host that the encryption key was refreshed on the given Connection_Handle any time encryption is paused and then resumed.	BR/EDR, LE
IO Capability Request Reply Command	2.1 + EDR	The IO Capability_Request_Reply command is used to reply to an IO Capability Request event from the controller, and specifies the current I/O capabilities of the Host.	BR/EDR
IO Capability Request Event	2.1 + EDR	The IO Capability Request event is used to indicate that the IO capabilities of the Host are required for a simple pairing process.	BR/EDR
IO Capability Response Event	2.1 + EDR	The IO Capability Response event is used to indicate to the host that IO capabilities from a remote device specified by BD_ADDR have been received during a simple pairing process.	BR/EDR
User Confirmation Request Reply Command	2.1 + EDR	The User Confirmation Request Reply command is used to reply to a User Confirmation Request event and indicates that the user selected "yes". It is also used when the Host has no input and no output capabilities.	BR/EDR

Table 3.17: Authentication and encryption (Sheet 4 of 8)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
User Confirmation Request Negative Reply Command	2.1 + EDR	The User Confirmation Request Negative Reply command is used to reply to a User Confirmation Request event and indicates that the user selected “no”. This command will terminate Secure Simple Pairing.	BR/EDR
User Confirmation Request Event	2.1 + EDR	The User Confirmation Request event is used to indicate that user confirmation of a numeric value is required.	BR/EDR
User Passkey Request Reply Command	2.1 + EDR	The User Passkey Request Reply command is used to reply to a User Passkey Request event and specifies the Numeric_Value (passkey) entered by the user to be used in the Secure Simple Pairing process.	BR/EDR
User Passkey Request Negative Reply Command	2.1 + EDR	The User Passkey Request Negative Reply command is used to reply to a User Passkey Request event and indicates the host could not provide a passkey. This command will terminate Simple Pairing.	BR/EDR
User Passkey Request Event	2.1 + EDR	The User Passkey Request event is used to indicate that a passkey is required as part of a Simple Pairing process.	BR/EDR
User Passkey Notification Event	2.1 + EDR	The User Passkey Notification event is used to provide a passkey for the Host to display to the user as required as part of a Simple Pairing process.	BR/EDR
Remote OOB Data Request Reply Command	2.1 + EDR	The Remote OOB Data Request Reply command is used to reply to a Remote OOB Data Request event with the C and R values received via an OOB transfer from a remote BR/EDR Controller identified by BD ADDR.	BR/EDR
Remote OOB Data Request Negative Reply Command	2.1 + EDR	The Remote OOB Data Request Negative Reply command is used to reply to a Remote OOB Data Request event that the Host does not have the C and R	BR/EDR

Table 3.17: Authentication and encryption (Sheet 5 of 8)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Remote OOB Data Request Event	2.1 + EDR	The Remote OOB Data Request event is used to indicate that the Simple Pairing Hash C and the Simple Pairing Randomizer R is required for the Secure Simple Pairing process involving the device identified by BD_ADDR.	BR/EDR
Read Simple Pairing Mode Command	2.1 + EDR	This command reads the Simple Pairing mode setting in the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Write Simple Pairing Mode Command	2.1 + EDR	This command writes the Simple Pairing mode setting in the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Read Local OOB Data Command	2.1 + EDR	This command is used to obtain a Simple Pairing Hash C and Simple Pairing Randomizer R which are intended to be transferred to a remote device using an OOB mechanism.	BR/EDR
Send Keypress Notification Command	2.1 + EDR	This command is used during the Passkey Entry protocol by a device with KeyboardOnly IO capabilities. It is used by a Host to inform the remote device when keys have been entered or erased.	BR/EDR
Read Encryption Key Size Command	v3.0 + HS	The Read Encryption Key Size command is used to read the encryption key size on a given Connection_Handle.	BR/EDR
IO Capability Request Negative Reply Command	v3.0 + HS	The IO_Capability_Request_Negative_Reply command is used to reject a pairing attempt after an HCI IO Capability Request event has been received by the Host.	BR/EDR
LE Encrypt Command	4.0	The LE Encrypt Command will encrypt a block of unencrypted data against a key and generate a block of encrypted data.	LE
LE Long Term Key Requested Event	4.0	The LE Long Term Key Requested event indicates that a Long Term Key is required for a connection.	LE

Table 3.17: Authentication and encryption (Sheet 6 of 8)

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
LE Long Term Key Requested Reply Command	4.0	The LE Long Term Key Requested Reply Command is used to reply to an LE Long Term Key Requested event and includes the Long Term Key stored in the Host for that connection.	LE
LE Long Term Key Requested Negative Reply Command	4.0	The LE Long Term Key Requested Negative Reply Command is used to reply to an LE Long Term Key Requested event and indicates that the Host does not have a Long Term Key for that connection.	LE
LE Rand Command	4.0	The LE Rand Command will generate a random number.	LE
LE Start Encryption Command	4.0	The LE Start Encryption Command is used to enable link level encryption.	LE
Write Secure Connections Host Support Command	4.1	The Write Secure Connections Host Support command is used to write the Secure Connections Host Supports parameter to the Controller.	BR/EDR
Read Secure Connections Host Support Command	4.1	The Read Secure Connections Host Support command is used to read the Secure Connections Host Supports parameter from the Controller.	BR/EDR
Remote OOB Extended Data Request Reply Command	4.1	The Remote OOB Extended Data Request Reply command is used to reply to a Remote OOB Data Request event with the C and R values received via an OOB transfer from a remote BR/EDR Controller identified by the BD_ADDR.	BR/EDR
Read Local OOB Extended Data Command	4.1	This command is used to obtain Simple Pairing Hash C and Randomizer R associated with both P-192 and P-256 public keys, which are intended to be transferred to a remote device using an OOB mechanism.	BR/EDR

Table 3.17: Authentication and encryption (Sheet 7 of 8)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Write Authenticated Payload Timeout Command	4.1	This command is used to write the Authenticated Payload Timeout parameter, which is used to set the maximum time between packets being received from the remote device without a valid MIC.	BR/EDR, LE
Read Authenticated Payload Timeout Command	4.1	This command is used to read the Authenticated Payload Timeout parameter, which is used to set the maximum time between packets being received from the remote device without a valid MIC.	BR/EDR, LE
Write Secure Connections Test Mode Command	4.1	This command is used to put the Controller in a test mode where DM1 packets are not allowed to be used for ACL-U traffic and/or the contents of eSCO payloads can be looped back.	BR/EDR
Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired Event	4.1	This event is used to indicate that a packet containing a valid MIC on the Handle was not received within the authenticatedPayloadTO.	BR/EDR, LE

Table 3.17: Authentication and encryption (Sheet 8 of 8)

### 3.17 TESTING

The testing group of commands and events allows a device to be placed into a special testing mode to allow for testing to be performed.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Read Loopback Mode Command	1.1	The Read Loopback Mode command will read the value for the setting of the BR/EDR Controller's Loopback Mode. The setting of the Loopback Mode will determine the path of information.	BR/EDR
Write Loopback Mode Command	1.1	The Write Loopback Mode command will write the value for the setting of the BR/EDR Controllers Loopback Mode. The setting of the Loopback Mode will determine the path of information.	BR/EDR

Table 3.18: Testing (Sheet 1 of 3)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Loopback Command Event	1.1	The Loopback Command event is used to loop back all commands that the Host sends to the BR/EDR Controller with some exceptions.	BR/EDR
Enable Device Under Test Mode Command	1.1	The Enable Device Under Test Mode command will allow the local Controller to enter test mode via LMP test commands. The Host issues this command when it wants the local device to be the DUT for the Testing scenarios as described in the Bluetooth Test Mode document.	BR/EDR, AMP
Write Simple Pairing Debug Mode Command	2.1 + EDR	This command configures the BR/EDR Controller to use a predefined Diffie Hellman private key for Simple Pairing to enable debug equipment to monitor the encrypted connection.	BR/EDR
AMP Receiver Report Event	3.0 + HS	The AMP Receiver Report event shall be sent from the AMP to the tester via the AMP Test Manager at the interval configured by the EnableAMPReceiverReports command.	AMP
AMP Start Test Event	3.0 + HS	The AMP Start Test event shall be generated when the AMP Test command has completed and the first data is ready to be sent or received .	AMP
AMP Test Command	3.0 + HS	The AMP Test command is used to configure and start a test. This command shall be only valid in AMP Test Mode.	AMP
AMP Test End Command	3.0 + HS	The AMP Test End command is used to stop any test scenario which is in progress. This command shall only be used in AMP Test Mode when a test is in progress	AMP

Table 3.18: Testing (Sheet 2 of 3)

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
AMP Test End Event	3.0 + HS	The AMP Test End event shall be generated to indicate that the AMP has transmitted or received the number of frames/bursts configured.	AMP
Enable AMP Receiver Reports Command	4.0	The Enable AMP Receiver Reports command is used to enable and disable the reporting of frames received.	AMP
LE Receiver Test Command	4.0	The LE Receiver Test Command will run the LE receiver test.	LE
LE Transmitter Test Command	4.0	The LE Transmitter Test Command will run the LE transmitter test.	LE
LE Test End Command	4.0	The LE Test End Command will end the current the receiver or transmitter test.	LE

Table 3.18: Testing (Sheet 3 of 3)

## 3.18 ALPHABETICAL LIST OF COMMANDS AND EVENTS

Commands/Events	Group
Accept Connection Request Command	Connection Setup
Accept Logical Link Command	Connection Setup
Accept Physical Link Command	Connection Setup
Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command	Connection Setup
AMP Receiver Report Event	Testing
AMP Start Test Event	Testing
AMP Status Change Event	Link Information
AMP Test Command	Testing
AMP Test End Command	Testing
AMP Test End Event	Testing
Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired Event	Authentication and Encryption
Authentication Complete Event	Authentication and Encryption
Authentication Requested Command	Authentication and Encryption
Change Connection Link Key Command	Authentication and Encryption
Change Connection Link Key Complete Event	Authentication and Encryption
Change Connection Packet Type Command	Physical Links
Channel Selected Event	Connection Setup
Command Complete Event	Generic Events
Command Status Event	Generic Events
Connection Complete Event	Connection Setup
Connection Packet Type Changed Event	Physical Links
Connection Request Event	Connection Setup
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change Event	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Event	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout Event	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Create Connection Cancel Command	Connection Setup
Create Connection Command	Connection Setup
Create Logical Link Command	Connection Setup
Create New Unit Key Command	Authentication and Encryption
Create Physical Link Command	Connection Setup

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 1 of 10)

Commands/Events	Group
Data Buffer Overflow Event	Host Flow Control
Delete Reserved LT_ADDR Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Delete Stored Link Key Command	Authentication and Encryption
Disconnect Command	Connection Setup
Disconnect Logical Link Command	Connection Setup
Disconnect Physical Link Command	Connection Setup
Disconnection Complete Event	Connection Setup
Disconnection Logical Link Complete Event	Connection Setup
Disconnection Physical Link Complete Event	Connection Setup
Enable AMP Receiver Reports Command	Testing
Enable Device Under Test Mode Command	Testing
Encryption Change Event	Authentication and Encryption
Encryption Key Refresh Complete Event	Authentication and Encryption
Enhanced Flush Command	Quality of Service
Enhanced Flush Complete Event	Quality of Service
Enhanced Setup Synchronous Connection Command	Synchronous Connections
Exit Park State Command	Connection State
Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode Command	Device Discovery
Exit Sniff Mode Command	Connection State
Extended Inquiry Result Event	Device Discovery
Flow Spec Modify Command	Quality of Service
Flow Spec Modify Complete Event	Quality of Service
Flow Specification Command	Quality of Service
Flow Specification Complete Event	Quality of Service
Flush Command	Quality of Service
Flush Occurred Event	Quality of Service
Get Transport Layer Configuration Command	Controller Configuration
Hardware Error Event	Generic Events
Enhanced Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command	Synchronous Connections
Hold Mode Command	Connection State
Host Buffer Size Command	Host Flow Control

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 2 of 10)

Commands/Events	Group
Host Number Of Completed Packets Command	Host Flow Control
Inquiry Cancel Command	Device Discovery
Inquiry Command	Device Discovery
Inquiry Complete Event	Device Discovery
Inquiry Response Notification Event	Device Discovery
Inquiry Result Event	Device Discovery
Inquiry Result with RSSI Event	Device Discovery
IO Capability Request Event	Authentication and Encryption
IO Capability Response Event	Authentication and Encryption
Keypress Notification Event	Link Information
LE Add Device To White List Command	Host Flow Control
LE Advertising Report Event	Device Discovery
LE Clear White List Command	Host Flow Control
LE Connection Complete Event	Connection Setup
LE Connection Update Command	Connection State
LE Connection Update Complete Event	Connection State
LE Create Connection Cancel Command	Connection Setup
LE Create Connection Command	Connection Setup
LE Encrypt Command	Authentication and Encryption
LE Long Term Key Requested Event	Authentication and Encryption
LE Long Term Key Requested Negative Reply Command	Authentication and Encryption
LE Long Term Key Requested Reply Command	Authentication and Encryption
LE Rand Command	Authentication and Encryption
LE Read Advertising Channel TX Power Command	Link Information
LE Read Buffer Size Command	Controller Flow Control
LE Read Channel Map Command	Link Information
LE Read Local Supported Features Command	Controller Information
LE Read Remote Used Features Command	Remote Information
LE Read Remote Used Features Complete Event	Remote Information
LE Read Supported States Command	Controller Information
LE Read White List Size Command	Host Flow Control

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 3 of 10)

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

Commands/Events	Group
LE Receiver Test Command	Testing
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Event	Connection State
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply Command	Connection State
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply Command	Connection State
LE Remove Device From White List Command	Host Flow Control
LE Set Advertise Enable Command	Controller Configuration
LE Set Advertising Data Command	Controller Configuration
LE Set Advertising Parameters Command	Controller Configuration
LE Set Event Mask Command	Host Flow Control
LE Set Host Channel Classification Command	Physical Links
LE Set Random Address Command	Controller Configuration
LE Set Scan Enable Command	Device Discovery
LE Set Scan Parameters Command	Device Discovery
LE Set Scan Response Data Command	Controller Configuration
LE Start Encryption Command	Authentication and Encryption
LE Test End Command	Authentication and Encryption
LE Transmitter Test Command	Authentication and Encryption
Link Key Notification Event	Authentication and Encryption
Link Key Request Event	Authentication and Encryption
Link Key Request Negative Reply Command	Authentication and Encryption
Link Key Request Reply Command	Authentication and Encryption
Logical Link Cancel Command	Connection State
Logical Link Complete Event	Connection State
Loopback Command Event	Testing
Master Link Key Command	Authentication and Encryption
Master Link Key Complete Event	Authentication and Encryption
Max Slots Change Event	Connection State
Mode Change Event	Connection State
Number Of Completed Data Blocks Event	Controller Flow Control
Number Of Completed Packets Event	Controller Flow Control

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 4 of 10)

Commands/Events	Group
Page Scan Repetition Mode Change Event	Connection Setup
Park State Command	Connection State
Periodic Inquiry Mode Command	Device Discovery
Physical Link Complete Event	Connection State
Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event	Connection State
Physical Link Recovery Event	Connection State
PIN Code Request Event	Authentication and Encryption
PIN Code Request Negative Reply Command	Authentication and Encryption
PIN Code Request Reply Command	Authentication and Encryption
QoS Setup Command	Quality of Service
QoS Setup Complete Event	Quality of Service
QoS Violation Event	Quality of Service
Read AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command	Physical Links
Read AFH Channel Map Command	Link Information
Read Authenticated Payload Timeout	Authentication and Encryption
Read Authentication Enable Command	Authentication and Encryption
Read Automatic Flush Timeout Command	Quality of Service
Read BD_ADDR Command	Controller Information
Read Best Effort Flush Timeout Command	Quality of Service
Read Buffer Size Command	Controller Flow Control
Read Class of Device Command	Controller Information
Read Clock Command	Link Information
Read Clock Offset Command	Link Information
Read Clock Offset Complete Event	Link Information
Read Connection Accept Timeout Command	Connection Setup
Read Current IAC LAP Command	Controller Information
Read Data Block Size Command	Controller Flow Control
Read Default Erroneous Data Reporting	Controller Configuration
Read Default Link Policy Settings Command	Connection State
Read Encryption Key Size Command	Authentication and Encryption
Read Encryption Mode Command	Authentication and Encryption
Read Enhanced Transmit Power Level Command	Link Information

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 5 of 10)

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

Commands/Events	Group
Read Extended Inquiry Length	Device Discovery
Read Extended Inquiry Response Command	Controller Configuration
Read Extended Page Timeout	Connection Setup
Read Failed Contact Counter Command	Quality of Service
Read Flow Control Mode Command	Controller Flow Control
Read Hold Mode Activity Command	Connection State
Read Inquiry Mode Command	Device Discovery
Read Inquiry Scan Activity Command	Device Discovery
Read Inquiry Scan Type Command	Device Discovery
Read Link Policy Settings Command	Connection State
Read Link Quality Command	Link Information
Read Link Supervision Timeout Command	Physical Links
Read LMP Handle Command	Link Information
Read Local AMP ASSOC Command	Physical Links
Read Local AMP Info Command	Link Information
Read Local Extended Features Command	Controller Information
Read Local Name Command	Controller Configuration
Read Local OOB Extended Data Command	Authentication and Encryption
Read Local Supported Codecs Command	Synchronous Connections
Read Local Supported Commands Command	Controller Information
Read Local Supported Features Command	Controller Information
Read Local Version Information Command	Controller Information
Read Location Data Command	Controller Information
Read Logical Link Accept Timeout Command	Connection Setup
Read Loopback Mode Command	Testing
Read Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command	Quality of Service
Read Number Of Supported IAC Command	Controller Information
Read Page Scan Activity Command	Connection Setup
Read Page Scan Type Command	Connection Setup
Read Page Timeout Command	Connection Setup
Read PIN Type Command	Authentication and Encryption
Read Remote Extended Features Command	Remote Information

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 6 of 10)

Commands/Events	Group
Read Remote Extended Features Complete Event	Remote Information
Read Remote Supported Features Command	Remote Information
Read Remote Supported Features Complete Event	Remote Information
Read Remote Version Information Command	Remote Information
Read Remote Version Information Complete Event	Remote Information
Read RSSI Command	Link Information
Read Scan Enable Command	Controller Information
Read Secure Connections Host Support	Authentication and Encryption
Read Stored Link Key Command	Authentication and Encryption
Read Synchronization Train Parameters Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Read Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command	Host Flow Control
Read Transmit Power Level Command	Link Information
Read Voice Setting Command	Synchronous Connections
Receive Synchronization Train Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Refresh Encryption Key Command	Authentication and Encryption
Reject Connection Request Command	Connection Setup
Reject Synchronous Connection Request Command	Connection Setup
Remote Host Supported Features Notification Event	Controller Information
Remote Name Request Cancel Command	Remote Information
Remote Name Request Command	Remote Information
Remote Name Request Complete Event	Remote Information
Remote OOB Data Request Event	Authentication and Encryption
Remote OOB Extended Data Request Reply Command	Authentication and Encryption
Reset Command	Device Setup
Reset Failed Contact Counter Command	Quality of Service
Return Link Keys Event	Authentication and Encryption
Role Change Event	Piconet Structure
Role Discovery Command	Piconet Structure
Set AFH Host Channel Classification Command	Physical Links
Set Connection Encryption Command	Authentication and Encryption
Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Data Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 7 of 10)

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

Commands/Events	Group
Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Set Controller To Host Flow Control Command	Host Flow Control
Set Event Filter Command	Host Flow Control
Set Event Mask Command	Host Flow Control
Set Event Mask Page 2 Command	Host Flow Control
Set External Frame Configuration Command	Controller Configuration
Set MWS Channel Parameters Command	Controller Configuration
Set MWS PATTERN Command	Controller Configuration
Set MWS Scan Frequency Table Command	Controller Configuration
Set MWS Signaling Command	Controller Configuration
Set Reserved LT_ADDR Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Set Transport Layer Command	Controller Configuration
Set Triggered Clock Capture Command	Link Information
Setup Synchronous Connection Command	Synchronous Connections
Short Range Mode Change Complete Event	Connection Setup
Short Range Mode Command	Connection Setup
Simple Pairing Complete Event	Link Information
Slave Page Response Timeout Event	Connection Setup
Sniff Mode Command	Connection State
Sniff Subrating Command	Connection State
Sniff Subrating Event	Connection State
Start Synchronization Train Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Switch Role Command	Piconet Structure
Synchronization Train Complete Event	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Synchronization Train Received Event	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Synchronous Connection Changed Event	Synchronous Connections
Synchronous Connection Complete Event	Synchronous Connections
Triggered Clock Capture Event	Link Information
Truncated Page Cancel Command	Connection Setup
Truncated Page Command	Connection Setup
Truncated Page Complete Event	Connection Setup

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 8 of 10)

Commands/Events	Group
User Confirmation Request Event	Authentication and Encryption
User Passkey Notification Event	Authentication and Encryption
User Passkey Request Event	Authentication and Encryption
Write AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command	Physical Links
Write Authenticated Payload Timeout	Authentication and Encryption
Write Authentication Enable Command	Authentication and Encryption
Write Automatic Flush Timeout Command	Quality of Service
Write Best Effort Flush Timeout Command	Quality of Service
Write Class of Device Command	Controller Information
Write Connection Accept Timeout Command	Connection Setup
Write Current IAC LAP Command	Controller Information
Write Default Erroneous Data Reporting	Controller Configuration
Write Default Link Policy Settings Command	Connection State
Write Extended Inquiry Length	Device Discovery
Write Extended Inquiry Response Command	Controller Configuration
Write Extended Page Timeout	Connection Setup
Write Flow Control Mode Command	Controller Flow Control
Write Hold Mode Activity Command	Connection State
Write Inquiry Mode Command	Device Discovery
Write Inquiry Scan Activity Command	Device Discovery
Write Inquiry Scan Type Command	Device Discovery
Write Link Policy Settings Command	Connection State
Write Link Supervision Timeout Command	Physical Links
Write Local Name Command	Controller Information
Write Location Data Command	Controller Information
Write Logical Link Accept Timeout Command	Connection Setup
Write Loopback Mode Command	Testing
Write Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command	Quality of Service
Write Page Scan Activity Command	Connection Setup
Write Page Scan Type Command	Connection Setup
Write Page Timeout Command	Connection Setup
Write PIN Type Command	Authentication and Encryption

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 9 of 10)

Commands/Events	Group
Write Remote AMP ASSOC Command	Physical Links
Write Scan Enable Command	Controller Configuration
Write Secure Connections Host Support	Authentication and Encryption
Write Secure Connections Test Mode	Authentication and Encryption
Write Stored Link Key Command	Authentication and Encryption
Write Synchronization Train Parameters Command	Connectionless Slave Broadcast
Write Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command	Host Flow Control
Write Voice Setting Command	Synchronous Connections

Table 3.19: Alphabetical list of commands and events. (Sheet 10 of 10)

### 3.19 LE CONTROLLER REQUIREMENTS

Table 3.20 lists the commands and events that a Controller supporting LE shall implement if HCI is claimed. The Link Layer Features are defined in [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 4.6, Feature Support](#).

Name	LE Feature Requirements
Command Complete Event	Mandatory
Command Status Event	Mandatory
LE Add Device To White List Command	Mandatory
LE Clear White List Command	Mandatory
LE Read Buffer Size Command	Mandatory
LE Read Local Supported Features Command	Mandatory
LE Read Supported States Command	Mandatory
LE Read White List Size Command	Mandatory
LE Remove Device From White List Command	Mandatory
LE Set Event Mask Command	Mandatory
LE Test End Command	Mandatory
Read BD_ADDR Command	Mandatory
Read Local Supported Features Command	Mandatory
Read Local Version Information Command	Mandatory
Reset Command	Mandatory
Read Local Supported Commands Command	Mandatory
Set Event Mask Command	Mandatory

Table 3.20: Bluetooth Controller supporting LE requirements

Name	LE Feature Requirements
LE Read Advertising Channel TX Power Command	C1
LE Transmitter Test Command	C1
LE Set Advertise Enable Command	C1
LE Set Advertising Data Command	C1
LE Set Advertising Parameters Command	C1
LE Set Random Address Command	C1
LE Advertising Report Event	C2
LE Receiver Test Command	C2
LE Set Scan Enable Command	C2
LE Set Scan Parameters Command	C2
Disconnect Command	C3
Disconnection Complete Event	C3
LE Connection Complete Event	C3
LE Connection Update Command	C3
LE Connection Update Complete Event	C3
LE Create Connection Cancel Command	C3
LE Create Connection Command	C3
LE Read Channel Map Command	C3
LE Read Remote Used Features Command	C3
LE Read Remote Used Features Complete Event	C3
LE Set Host Channel Classification Command	C3
LE Set Scan Response Data Command	C3
Number Of Completed Packets Event	C3
Read Transmit Power Level Command	C3
Read Remote Version Information Command	C3
Read Remote Version Information Complete Event	C3
Read RSSI Command	C3
Encryption Change Event	C4
Encryption Key Refresh Complete Event	C4
LE Encrypt Command	C4
LE Long Term Key Request Event	C4
LE Long Term Key Request Reply Command	C4

Table 3.20: Bluetooth Controller supporting LE requirements

Name	LE Feature Requirements
LE Long Term Key Request Negative Reply Command	C4
LE Rand Command	C4
LE Start Encryption Command	C4
Read Buffer Size Command	C5
Read LE Host Support	C5
Write LE Host Support	C5
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply Command	C6
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply Command	C6
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Event	C6
Write Authenticated Payload Timeout Command	C7
Read Authenticated Payload Timeout Command	C7
Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired Event	C7
Set Event Mask Page 2 Command	C7
Data Buffer Overflow Event	Optional
Hardware Error Event	Optional
Host Buffer Size Command	Optional
Host Number Of Completed Packets Command	Optional
Set Controller To Host Flow Control Command	Optional

Table 3.20: Bluetooth Controller supporting LE requirements

- C1: Mandatory if Controller supports transmitting packets, otherwise optional.
- C2: Mandatory if Controller supports receiving packets, otherwise optional.
- C3: Mandatory if Controller supports transmitting and receiving packets, otherwise optional.
- C4: Mandatory if LE Feature (LL Encryption) is supported otherwise optional.
- C5: Mandatory if BR/EDR is supported otherwise optional.
- C6: Mandatory if LE Feature (Connection Parameters Request procedure) is supported, otherwise optional.
- C7: Mandatory if LE Ping is supported otherwise excluded.

## 3.20 CONNECTIONLESS SLAVE BROADCAST

The Connectionless Slave Broadcast Group of commands and events allows setup and teardown of a Connectionless Slave Broadcast physical link.

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Set Reserved LT_ADDR Command	CSA4	The Set_Reserved_LT_ADDR command requests that the BR/EDR Controller reserve a specific LT_ADDR for the purposes of Connectionless Slave Broadcast.	BR/EDR
Delete Reserved LT_ADDR Command	CSA4	The Delete Reserved LT_ADDR command requests that the BR/EDR Controller cancel the reservation of a specific LT_ADDR reserved for the purposes of Connectionless Slave Broadcast.	BR/EDR
Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Data Command	CSA4	The Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Data command is used by the Host to set Connectionless Slave Broadcast data in the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Command	CSA4	The Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast command controls Connectionless Slave Broadcast functionality (for transmission) in the BR/EDR Controller including enabling and disabling the broadcast.	BR/EDR
Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Command	CSA4	The Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive command enables and disables Connectionless Slave Broadcast reception in the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Write Synchronization Train Parameters Command	CSA4	The Write Synchronization Train Parameters command configures the Synchronization Train functionality in the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Read Synchronization Train Parameters Command	CSA4	The Read Synchronization Train Parameters command returns the currently configured values for the Synchronization Train functionality in the BR/EDR Controller.	BR/EDR
Start Synchronization Train Command	CSA4	The Start Synchronization Train command enables the Synchronization Train on the BR/EDR Controller using the currently configured Synchronization Train parameters.	BR/EDR

Table 3.21: Connectionless Slave Broadcast

Name	Vers.	Summary description	Supported Controllers
Receive Synchronization Train Command	CSA4	The Receive_Synchronization_Train command requests synchronization with the specified Connectionless Slave Broadcast transmitter.	BR/EDR
Synchronization Train Complete Event	CSA4	The Synchronization Train Complete event indicates that the Synchronization Train has completed.	BR/EDR
Synchronization Train Received Event	CSA4	The Synchronization Train Received event provides the status of Synchronization Train packets received from the device with the given BD_ADDR.	BR/EDR
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Event	CSA4	The Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive event provides the Host with the data received from a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet.	BR/EDR
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout Event	CSA4	On the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receiver, the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout event indicates to the Host that the BR/EDR Controller has lost synchronization with the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter.	BR/EDR
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change Event	CSA4	On the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter, the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout event indicates to the Host that the BR/EDR Controller has been unable to transmit a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet for the timeout interval specified in the Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast command.	BR/EDR
		The Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change event indicates to the Host that the BR/EDR Controller has moved to a new AFH channel map for the PBD logical link.	BR/EDR

Table 3.21: Connectionless Slave Broadcast

## 4 HCI FLOW CONTROL

---

Flow control for data shall be used in the direction from the Host to the Controller to avoid overflowing the Controller data buffers with ACL data destined for a remote device (using a Connection\_Handle) that is not responding. The Host manages the data buffers of the Controller. For Primary Controller, packet based flow control is the default. For AMP Controllers, data block based data flow control is the default for ACL traffic. Flow control for data moving from the Controller to the Host may be used in the Primary Controller in accordance with [Section 4.2](#).

Command flow control is covered in [Section 4.4](#) and [Section 4.5](#).

### 4.1 HOST TO CONTROLLER DATA FLOW CONTROL

Two methods of data flow control are defined: 'packet-based' flow control and 'data-block-based' flow control, known as buffer management. Selection of the data flow control mechanism is performed with the Write Flow Control Mode command (see [Section 7.3.73](#)).

If a BR/EDR/LE Controller implements separate buffers for ACL Data:

1. The Host shall use the LE Read Buffer Size command to determine the buffers that are used for ACL Data on an LE-U logical link.
2. The Host shall use separate packet based flow control for each set of buffers.
3. The Connection\_Handle contained in the ACL Data packet shall be used by the Controller to determine which set of buffers to use and the logical link (ACL-U or LE-U) over which the data is to be sent.

If a BR/EDR/LE Controller does not implement separate buffers, then all ACL Data shall use the BR/EDR buffer management as described below, and only the logical link (ACL-U or LE-U) shall be determined by the Connection\_Handle.

#### 4.1.1 Packet-based Data Flow Control

When the packet based flow control mechanism is enabled, on initialization, a Host that supports LE shall issue the LE Read Buffer Size command. Two of the return parameters of this command determine the maximum size of HCI ACL (excluding header) Data Packets that can be used to transmit ACL data for an LE transport sent from the Host to the Controller. There is an additional return parameter that specifies the total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that the Controller may have waiting for transmission in those buffers. A Primary Controller may return zero for the total number of HCI ACL Packets used to transmit ACL data for an LE transport. In this case the Host shall then send all

BR/EDR and LE data using the HCI ACL Data Packets into the buffers identified using the Read Buffer Size command.

In a BR/EDR Controller, when the packet based flow control mechanism is enabled, on initialization, the Host shall issue the Read Buffer Size command. Two of the return parameters of this command determine the maximum size of HCI ACL and synchronous Data Packets (excluding header) sent from the Host to the Controller. There are also two additional return parameters that specify the total number of HCI ACL and synchronous Data Packets that the Controller may have waiting for transmission in its buffers.

When there is at least one connection to another device, or when in local loop-back mode on a BR/EDR Controller, the Controller shall use the Number Of Completed Packets event to control the flow of data from the Host. This event contains a list of Connection\_Handles and a corresponding number of HCI Data Packets that have been completed (transmitted, flushed, or looped back to the Host) since the previous time the event was returned (or since the connection was established, if the event has not been returned before for a particular Connection\_Handle).

The Host chooses the Connection Handles for the following HCI Data Packets based on the information returned in this event, and/or the LE Read Buffer Size commands.

Every time it has sent an HCI Data Packet, the Host shall assume that the free buffer space for the corresponding link type (ACL, SCO or eSCO) in the Controller has decreased by one HCI Data Packet.

Each Number Of Completed Packets event received by the Host provides information about how many HCI Data Packets have been completed (transmitted or flushed) for each Connection\_Handle since the previous Number Of Completed Packets event was sent to the Host. It can then calculate the actual current buffer usage.

When the Controller has completed one or more HCI Data Packet(s) it shall send a Number Of Completed Packets event to the Host, until it finally reports that all the pending HCI Data Packets have been completed. The frequency at which this event is sent is manufacturer specific.

Note: The Number Of Completed Packets events will not report on synchronous Connection\_Handles if Synchronous Flow Control is disabled. (See [Read Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command](#), and [Write Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command](#).)

For each individual Handle, the data shall be sent to the Controller in HCI Data Packets in the order in which it was created in the Host. The Controller shall also transmit data on the air that is received from the Host for a given Handle in the same order as it is received from the Host.

Data that is received on the air from another device shall, for the corresponding Connection\_Handle, be sent in HCI Data Packets to the Host in the same order as it is received. This means the scheduling shall be decided separately for each Handle basis. For each individual Handle, the order of the data shall not be changed from the order in which the data has been created.

HCI ACL Data Packets on an LE-U logical link shall be 27 octets or larger. A Host shall not fragment HCI ACL Data Packets on an LE-U logical link that are 27 octets or less in length.

#### 4.1.2 Data-Block-Based Data Flow Control

When the data-block-based flow control mechanism is enabled, on initialization the Host shall issue the [Read Data Block Size Command](#). Two of the return parameters of this command determine the maximum size of HCI ACL Data Packets (excluding header) sent from the Host to the Controller. Two additional return parameters specify the total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that the Controller may have waiting for transmission in its buffers.

When there is at least one Logical Link to another AMP the Controller shall use the Number Of Completed Data Blocks event to control the flow of data from the Host. This event contains a list of Handles and a corresponding number of HCI Data Packets that have been completed (transmitted or flushed) since the previous time the event was returned (or since the link was established, if the event has not been returned before for a particular Handle).

Based on the information returned in this event, and the return parameters of the Read Data Block Size command that specify the total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that can be stored in the Controller, the Host decides for which Handles the following HCI Data Packets should be sent.

Every time it has sent an HCI Data Packet, the Host shall assume that the free buffer space for the corresponding ACL link type in the Controller has decreased by one HCI Data Packet.

Each Number Of Completed Data Blocks event received by the Host provides information about how many HCI Data Packets have been completed (transmitted or flushed) for each Handle since the previous Number Of Completed Data Blocks event was sent to the Host. It can then calculate the actual current buffer usage.

When the Controller has completed one or more HCI Data Packet(s) it shall send a Number Of Completed Data Blocks event to the Host until it finally reports that all the pending HCI Data Packets have been completed. The frequency at which this event is sent is manufacturer specific.

For each individual Handle, the data must be sent to the Controller in HCI Data Packets in the order in which it was created in the Host. The Controller shall

also transmit data for a given Handle in the same order as it is received from the Host.

Data that is received shall be sent in HCI Data Packets to the Host in the same order as it is received. This means the scheduling shall be decided separately for each Handle basis.

## 4.2 CONTROLLER TO HOST DATA FLOW CONTROL

In some implementations, flow control may also be necessary in the direction from the Controller to the Host. The Set Host Controller To Host Flow Control command can be used to turn flow control on or off in that direction. For AMP Controllers, Controller to Host data flow control is provided by the HCI physical transport or software equivalent.

On initialization, the Host uses the Host Buffer Size command to notify the Controller about the maximum size of HCI ACL and synchronous Data Packets sent from the Controller to the Host. The command also contains two additional command parameters to notify the Primary Controller about the total number of ACL and synchronous Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Host.

The Host uses the Host Number Of Completed Packets command in exactly the same way as the Primary Controller uses the Number Of Completed Packets event as was previously described in this section.

The Host Number Of Completed Packets command is a special command for which no command flow control is used, and which can be sent anytime there is a connection or when in local loopback mode. The command also has no event after the command has completed. This makes it possible for the flow control to work in exactly the same way in both directions, and the flow of normal commands will not be disturbed.

## 4.3 DISCONNECTION BEHAVIOR

When the Host receives a Disconnection Complete, Disconnection Physical Link Complete or Disconnection Logical Link Complete event, the Host shall assume that all unacknowledged HCI Data Packets that have been sent to the Controller for the returned Handle have been flushed, and that the corresponding data buffers have been freed. A Primary Controller does not have to notify the Host about this in a Number Of Completed Packets event, nor does the AMP Controller have to notify the Host about this in a Number Of Completed Data Blocks event.

If flow control is also enabled in the direction from the Controller to the Host, the Controller may, after it has sent a Disconnection Complete event, assume that the Host will flush its data buffers for the sent Handle when it receives the Disconnection Complete event. The Host does not have to notify the Primary Controller about this in a Host Number Of Completed Packets command.

## 4.4 COMMAND FLOW CONTROL

On initial power-on, and after a reset, the Host shall send a maximum of one outstanding HCI Command Packet until a Command Complete or Command Status event has been received.

The Command Complete and Command Status events contain a parameter called Num HCI Command Packets, which indicates the number of HCI Command Packets the Host is currently allowed to send to the Controller. The Controller may buffer one or more HCI command packets, but the Controller shall start performing the commands in the order in which they are received. The Controller can start performing a command before it completes previous commands. Therefore, the commands do not always complete in the order they are started.

To indicate to the Host that the Controller is ready to receive HCI command packets, the Controller may generate a Command Complete event with the Command Opcode 0x0000, and the Num HCI Command Packets event parameter is set to 1 or more. Command Opcode 0x0000 is a NOP (No OPeration), and can be used to change the number of outstanding HCI command packets that the Host can send. The Controller may generate a Command Complete event with the Num HCI Command Packets event parameter set to zero to inform Host it must stop sending commands.

For most commands, a Command Complete event shall be sent to the Host when the Controller completes the command. Some commands are executed in the background and do not return a Command Complete event when they have been completed. Instead, the Controller shall send a Command Status event back to the Host when it has begun to execute the command. When the actions associated with the command have finished, an event that is associated with the command shall be sent by the Controller to the Host.

If the command does not begin to execute (for example, if there was a parameter error or the command is currently not allowed), the Command Status event shall be returned with the appropriate error code in the Status parameter, and the event associated with the sent command shall not be returned.

## 4.5 COMMAND ERROR HANDLING

If an error occurs for a command for which a Command Complete event is returned, the Return Parameters field may not contain all the return parameters specified for the command. The Status parameter, which explains the error reason and which is the first return parameter, shall always be returned. If there is a Handle parameter or a BD\_ADDR parameter right after the Status parameter, this parameter shall also be returned so that the Host can identify to which instance of a command the Command Complete event belongs. In this case, the Handle or BD\_ADDR parameter shall have exactly the same value as that in the corresponding command parameter. It is implementation specific whether more parameters will be returned in case of an error.

The above also applies to commands that have associated command specific completion events with a status parameter in their completion event, with four exceptions. The first two exceptions are the Connection Complete and the Synchronous Connection Complete events. On failure, for these two events only, the second parameter, Connection\_Handle, is not valid and the third parameter, BD\_ADDR, is valid for identification purposes. The third exception is the LE Connection Complete event. On failure, the Status parameter is valid, all other parameters are not valid. The fourth exception is the Logical Link completion event. On failure, for this event, the second parameter (Logical\_Link\_Handle) is not valid but the third parameter (Physical\_Link\_Handle) is valid for identification purposes. The validity of other parameters is likewise implementation specific for failed commands in this group, but they shall be sent in any case.

Note: The BD\_ADDR return parameter of the command Read BD\_ADDR is not used to identify to which instance of the Read BD ADDR command the Command Complete event belongs. It is optional for the Controller to return this parameter in case of an error.

## 5 HCI DATA FORMATS

---

### 5.1 INTRODUCTION

The HCI provides a uniform command method of accessing Controller capabilities. The HCI Link commands provide the Host with the ability to control connections to other BR/EDR Controllers. For the BR/EDR Controller, these commands typically involve the Link Manager (LM) to exchange LMP commands or the Link Layer (LL) to exchange LL Control packets with remote Bluetooth devices. For details see “[Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification](#)” and see [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Link Layer Specification](#). For AMP Controllers, these commands typically involve the AMP PAL. For details see the appropriate PAL specification (see [\[Vol 5\] Part A, 802.11 Protocol Adaptation Layer Functional Specification](#)).

The HCI Policy commands are used to affect the behavior of the local and remote LM or LL. These Policy commands provide the Host with methods of influencing how the LM or LL manages the piconet. The Controller & Baseband, Informational, and Status commands provide the Host access to various registers in the Controller.

HCI commands may take different amounts of time to be completed. Therefore, the results of commands will be reported back to the Host in the form of an event. For example, for most HCI commands the Controller will generate the Command Complete event when a command is completed. This event contains the return parameters for the completed HCI command. For enabling the Host to detect errors on the HCI-Transport Layer, there needs to be a timeout between the transmission of the Host's command and the reception of the Controller's response (e.g. a Command Complete or Command Status event). Since the maximum response timeout is strongly dependent on the HCI-Transport Layer used, it is recommended to use a default value of one second for this timer. This amount of time is also dependent on the number of commands unprocessed in the command queue.

### 5.2 DATA AND PARAMETER FORMATS

- All values are in Binary and Hexadecimal Little Endian formats unless otherwise noted
- In addition, all parameters which can have negative values must use 2's complement when specifying values
- Arrayed parameters are specified using the following notation: ParameterA[i]. If more than one set of arrayed parameters are specified (e.g. ParameterA[i], ParameterB[i]), then the order of the parameters are as follows: ParameterA[0], ParameterB[0], ParameterA[1], ParameterB[1], ParameterA[2], ParameterB[2], ... ParameterA[n], ParameterB[n]

- Unless noted otherwise, all parameter values are sent and received in Little Endian format (i.e. for multi-octet parameters the rightmost (Least Significant Octet) is transmitted first)
- All command and event parameters that are not-arrayed and all elements in an arrayed parameter have fixed sizes (an integer number of octets). The parameters and the size of each not arrayed parameter (or of each element in an arrayed parameter) contained in a command or an event is specified for each command or event. The number of elements in an arrayed parameter is not fixed.
- Where bit strings are specified, the low order bit is the right hand bit, e.g. 0 is the low order bit in '10'.
- Values or parameters marked as Reserved for Future Use, shall be set to 0 unless explicitly stated otherwise on transmission, and shall be ignored on reception. Parameter values or opcodes that an implementation does not know how to interpret shall be ignored, and the operation that is being attempted shall be completed with the correct signaling. The host or controller shall not stop functioning because of receiving a reserved value.

## 5.3 HANDLES

Three types of handles are used to identify logical channels between the Host and a Controller: Connection Handles, Logical Link Handles, and Physical Link Handles.

### 5.3.1 Primary Controller Handles

Connection Handles are used to identify logical channels between the Host and the Primary Controller. Connection Handles are assigned by the Primary Controller when a new logical link is created, using the Connection Complete, Synchronous Connection Complete, or LE Connection Complete events. Broadcast Connection Handles are handled differently, and are described in [Section 5.3.1.1](#).

Note: There are no Broadcast or Synchronous Connection Handles in a Controller that only supports LE.

#### 5.3.1.1 Broadcast Connection Handles

The first time the Host sends an HCI Data Packet with Broadcast\_Flag set to 01b (active slave broadcast) or 10b (parked slave broadcast) after a power-on or a reset, the value of the Connection Handle parameter must be a value which is not currently assigned by the Host Controller. The Host must use different Connection Handles for active broadcast and piconet broadcast.

The BR/EDR Controller must then continue to use the same connection Handles for each type of broadcast until a reset is made. Note: The Host Controller

must not send a Connection Complete event containing a new Connection\_Handle that it knows is used for broadcast.

Note: In some situations, it may happen that the Host Controller sends a Connection Complete event before having interpreted a Broadcast packet received from the Host, and that the Connection\_Handles of both Connection Complete event and HCI Data packet are the same. This conflict has to be avoided as follows:

If a Connection Complete event is received containing one of the Connection Handles used for broadcast, the Host has to wait before sending any packets for the new connection until it receives a Number Of Completed Packets event indicating that there are no pending broadcast packets belonging to the Connection Handle. In addition, the Host must change the Connection\_Handle used for the corresponding type of broadcast to a Connection\_Handle which is currently not assigned by the Host Controller.

This Connection\_Handle must then be used for all the following broadcasts of that type until a reset is performed or the same conflict situation happens again. However, this will occur very rarely.

The Host Controller must, in the above conflict case, be able to distinguish between the Broadcast message sent by the Host and the new connection made (this could be even a new synchronous link) even though the Connection Handles are the same.

For an HCI Data Packet sent from the Host Controller to the Host where the Broadcast\_Flag is 01 or 10, the Connection\_Handle parameter should contain the Connection Handle for the ACL connection to the master that sent the broadcast.

For Connectionless Slave Broadcast, no Connection Handle is assigned.

### **5.3.2 AMP Controller Handles**

AMP Controllers have two types of handles: Physical Link Handles and Logical Link Handles. For data, command and event operations between the Host and an AMP Controller, a Logical Link Handle is used where a Connection Handle is specified, unless a Physical Link Handle is explicitly specified.

A Physical Link is an association between the local Controller and a remote Controller. For any AMP Controller, there can be at most one Physical Link. The Host is responsible for allocating Physical Link Handles. A value of 0 shall not be used for a Physical Link Handle. Physical Links are created and removed explicitly, and encryption keys are established on a per Physical Link basis. The AMP may support one or more Physical Links (representing different remote devices) at any one time.

For each Physical Link, an AMP Controller provides zero or more Logical Links.

A Logical Link is an allocation of bandwidth or other resources for application level data transfer between the local AMP Controller and a remote AMP Controller. A Logical Link exists with respect to a specific Physical Link and the Controller ensures this Handle's uniqueness. The AMP shall support one or more Logical Links (representing distinct resource allocations) over any one Physical Link.

## 5.4 EXCHANGE OF HCI-SPECIFIC INFORMATION

The Host Controller Transport Layer provides transparent exchange of HCI specific information. These transporting mechanisms provide the ability for the Host to send HCI commands, ACL data and synchronous data to the BR/EDR Controller, and HCI commands and ACL data to the LE Controller or AMP Controller. These transport mechanisms also provide the ability for the Host to receive HCI events, ACL data and synchronous data from the BR/EDR Controller, and HCI events and ACL data from the LE Controller or AMP Controller. Since the Host Controller Transport Layer provides transparent exchange of HCI-specific information, the HCI specification specifies the format of the commands, events, and data exchange between the Host and the Controller(s). The next sections specify the HCI packet formats.

### 5.4.1 HCI Command Packet

The HCI Command Packet is used to send commands to the Controller from the Host. The format of the HCI Command Packet is shown in [Figure 5.1](#), and the definition of each field is explained below.

Controllers shall be able to accept HCI Command Packets with up to 255 bytes of data excluding the HCI Command Packet header.

Each command is assigned a 2 byte Opcode used to uniquely identify different types of commands. The Opcode parameter is divided into two fields, called the OpCode Group Field (OGF) and OpCode Command Field (OCF). The OGF occupies the upper 6 bits of the Opcode, while the OCF occupies the remaining 10 bits. The OGF of 0x3F is reserved for vendor-specific debug commands. The organization of the opcodes allows additional information to be inferred without fully decoding the entire Opcode.

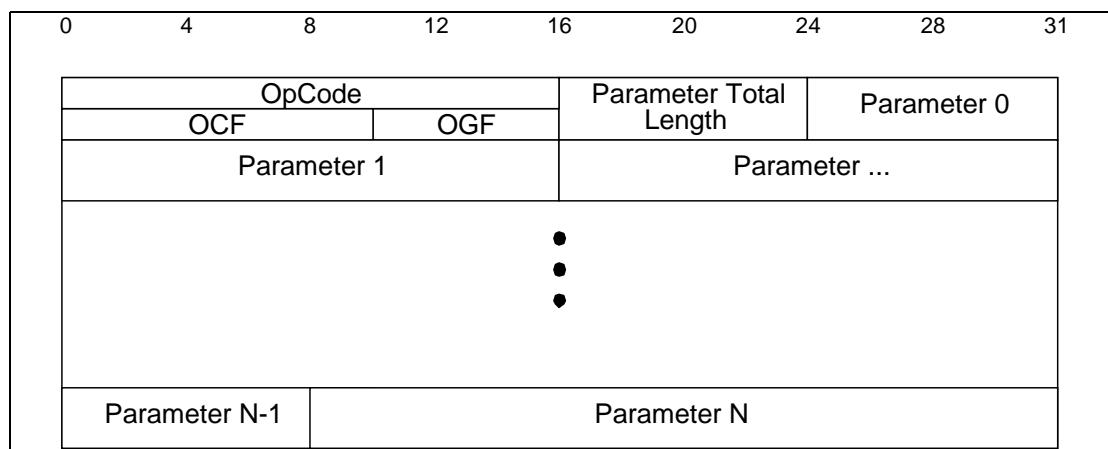
Note: The OGF composed of all 'ones' has been reserved for vendor-specific debug commands. These commands are vendor-specific and are used during manufacturing, for a possible method for updating firmware, and for debugging.

On receipt of a Vendor Specific Debug command the controller should respond with either:

1. A Command Status Event. If the status indicates success ([Section 7.7.15](#)) then this event shall be followed by an HCI Event with Event Code field of 0xFF ([Section 5.4.4](#)).
2. A Command Complete Event specifying the corresponding Vendor Specific Debug command opcode.

The host shall assume that sending of a Vendor Specific Debug command will consume an HCI Command credit.

Note: The OGF composed of all ‘zeros’ and an OCF or all ‘zeros’ is the NOP command. This command Opcode may be used in Command Flow Control. (See [Section 4.4 on page 474](#).)



*Figure 5.1: HCI Command Packet*

*Op\_Code:*

*Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	OGF Range (6 bits): 0x00-0x3F (0x3F reserved for vendor-specific debug commands) OCF Range (10 bits): 0x0000-0x03FF

*Parameter\_Total\_Length:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Lengths of all of the parameters contained in this packet measured in octets. (N.B.: total length of parameters, not number of parameters)

*Parameter 0 - N:*

*Size: Parameter Total Length*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Each command has a specific number of parameters associated with it. These parameters and the size of each of the parameters are defined for each command. Each parameter is an integer number of octets in size.

### 5.4.2 HCI ACL Data Packets

HCI ACL Data Packets are used to exchange data between the Host and Controller. There are two types of HCI ACL Data Packets:

- Automatically-Flushable
- Non-Automatically-Flushable

Automatically-Flushable HCI Data Packets are flushed based on the setting of an automatic flush timer (see [Read Automatic Flush Timeout Command](#)). Non-Automatically-Flushable HCI Data Packets are not controlled by the automatic flush timeout and shall not be automatically flushed. The format of the HCI ACL Data Packet is shown in [Figure 5.2](#). The definition for each of the fields in the data packets is explained below.

Note: HCI ACL Data Packets with a Connection\_Handle associated with an LE-U logical link will not be affected by the automatic flush timer because only non-flushable packet boundary flags are allowed.

All packets on an AMP logical link are affected by the automatic flush timer.

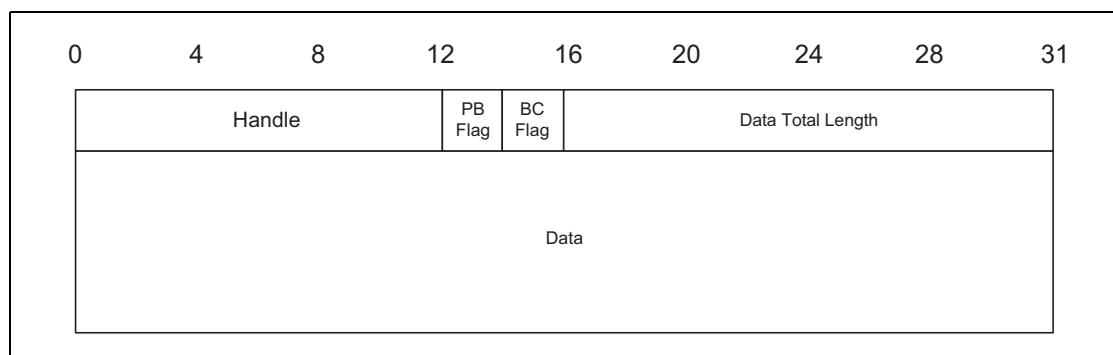


Figure 5.2: HCI ACL Data Packet

**Handle:**

**Size: 12 Bits**

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXX	<p>Connection_Handle to be used for transmitting a data packet or segment over a Primary Controller.</p> <p>Logical_Link_Handle to be used for transmitting a data packet over an AMP Controller.</p> <p>On the receiving side (AMP Controller to Host), the least significant 8 bits of the Handle is the Physical_Link_Handle and the most significant 4 bits are reserved. (This is because certain AMP Controllers might not be able to provide the logical link context on the receiving side, and the Host does not require it.)</p> <p>Range: 0x000-0xEFF (0xF00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)</p>

The Flag Bits consist of the Packet\_Boundary\_Flag and Broadcast\_Flag. The Packet\_Boundary\_Flag is located in bit 4 and bit 5, and the Broadcast\_Flag is located in bit 6 and bit 7 in the second octet of the HCI ACL Data packet.

*Packet\_Boundary\_Flag:*

*Size: 2 Bits*

Value	Parameter Description		ACL-U	AMP-U	LE-U
00	First non-automatically-flushable packet of Higher Layer Message (start of a non-automatically-flushable L2CAP PDU) from Host to Controller. Shall not be used on a BR/EDR Controller from Controller to Host.	Host to Controller	Allowed	Not allowed	Allowed
		Controller to Host	Not allowed (except during loop-back)	Not allowed	Not allowed
01	Continuing fragment of Higher Layer Message	Host to Controller	Allowed	Not allowed	Allowed
		Controller to Host	Allowed	Not allowed	Allowed
10	First automatically flushable packet of Higher Layer Message (start of an automatically-flushable L2CAP PDU).	Host to Controller	Allowed	Not allowed	Not Allowed
		Controller to Host	Allowed	Not allowed	Allowed
11	A complete L2CAP PDU. Automatically flushable.	Host to Controller	Allowed	Allowed	Not Allowed
		Controller to Host	Not Allowed	Allowed	Not Allowed

The start of a non-flushable packet of a Higher Layer Message (start of a non-automatically-flushable L2CAP PDU) with the PBF of 00 shall be transmitted with an LLID of 10. All continuing fragment packets of a Higher Layer Message shall be transmitted with an LLID of 01.

*Broadcast\_Flag (in packet from Host to Controller):**Size: 2 Bits*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
00	No broadcast. Only point-to-point (this is the only valid option for AMPs).
01	Active Slave Broadcast: packet is sent to all active slaves (i.e. packet is usually not sent during park beacon slots), and it may be received by slaves in sniff mode or park state.
10	Parked Slave Broadcast: packet is sent to all slaves and all slaves in park state (i.e. packet is sent during park beacon slots if there are parked slaves), and it may be received by slaves in sniff mode.
11	Reserved for future use.

*Broadcast\_Flag (in packet from Controller to Host):**Size: 2 Bits*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
00	Point-to-point
01	BR/EDR Packet received as a slave not in park state (either Active Slave Broadcast or Parked Slave Broadcast)
10	BR/EDR Packet received as a slave in park state (Parked Slave Broadcast)
11	Reserved for future use.

Note: Active slave broadcast packets may be sent in park beacon slots.

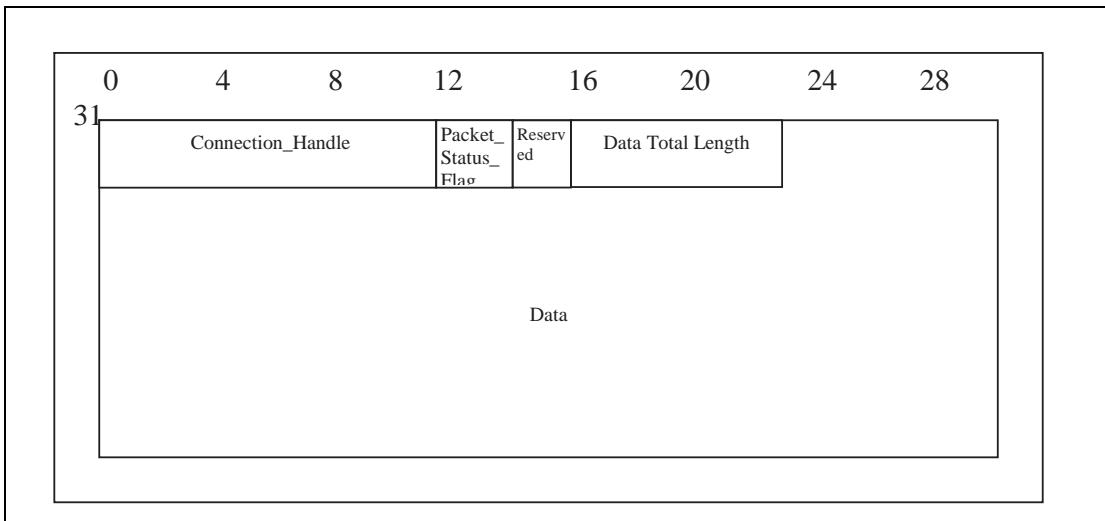
Note: Slaves in sniff mode may or may not receive a broadcast packet depending on whether they happen to be listening at sniff slots, when the packet is sent.

*Data\_Total\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Length of data measured in octets.

### 5.4.3 HCI Synchronous Data Packets

HCI synchronous (SCO and eSCO) Data Packets are used to exchange synchronous data between the Host and Controller. The format of the synchronous Data Packet is shown in [Figure 5.3](#). The definition for each of the fields in the data packets is explained below.



*Figure 5.3: HCI Synchronous Data Packet*

*Connection\_Handle:*

*Size: 12 Bits*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to for transmitting a synchronous data packet or segment. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00- 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

The Packet\_Status\_Flag bits consist of two bits, which are located from bit 4 to 5 in the second octet of the HCI Synchronous Data packet.

The Host shall set the Packet\_Status\_Flag bits to 00.

If the Erroneous\_Data\_Report parameter was set to disabled when the synchronous connection was created, the Controller shall set the Packet\_Status\_Flag bits to 00 and whether or not data is provided for cases when a valid (e)SCO packet was not received is unspecified.

If the Erroneous\_Data\_Report parameter was set to enabled when the synchronous connection was created, the controller shall set the Packet\_Status\_Flag according to the following table.

*Packet\_Status\_Flag (in packets sent by the Controller)*

Size: 2 Bits

Value	Parameter Description
00	Correctly received data. The payload data belongs to received eSCO or SCO packets that the baseband marked as "good data".
01	Possibly invalid data. At least one eSCO packet has been marked by the baseband as "data with possible errors" and all others have been marked as "good data" in the eSCO interval(s) corresponding to the HCI Synchronous Data Packet.
10	No data received. All data from the baseband received during the (e)SCO interval(s) corresponding to the HCI Synchronous Data Packet have been marked as "lost data" by the baseband. The Payload data octets shall be set to 0.
11	Data partially lost. Not all, but at least one (e)SCO packet has been marked as "lost data" by the baseband in the (e)SCO intervals corresponding to the HCI Synchronous Data Packet. The payload data octets corresponding to the missing (e)SCO packets shall be set to 0.

Note: Some HCI transports and/or controller implementations will align the HCI Synchronous Data Packets with the (e)SCO baseband packets such that data integrity can be explicitly marked in the *Packet\_Status\_Flag*. For HCI transports or Controller implementations that do not preserve this alignment, information in the *Packet\_Status\_Flag* may be ambiguous.

The Reserved Bits consist of two bits which are located from bit 6 to bit 7 in the second octet of the HCI Synchronous Data packet.

*Reserved:*

Size: 2 Bits

Value	Parameter Description
XXXX	Reserved for future use.

*Data\_Total\_Length:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Length of synchronous data measured in octets

#### 5.4.4 HCI Event Packet

The HCI Event Packet is used by the Controller to notify the Host when events occur. The Host must be able to accept HCI Event Packets with up to 255 octets of data excluding the HCI Event Packet header. The format of the HCI Event Packet is shown in [Figure 5.4](#), and the definition of each field is explained [below](#).

An LE Controller uses sub-event codes to transmit LE specific events from the Controller to the Host. Note: The sub-event code will always be the first Event Parameter (See [Section 7.7.65](#)).

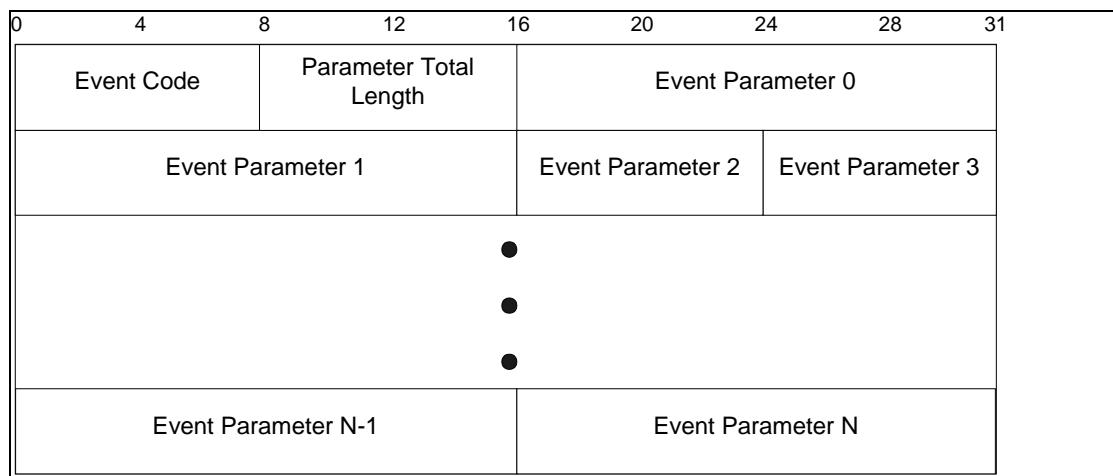


Figure 5.4: HCI Event Packet

##### Event\_Code:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Each event is assigned a 1-Octet event code used to uniquely identify different types of events. Range: 0x00-0xFF (The event code 0xFF is reserved for the event code used for vendor-specific debug events.)

##### Parameter\_Total\_Length:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Length of all of the parameters contained in this packet, measured in octets

##### Event\_Parameter\_0 - N:

Size: Parameter Total Length

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Each event has a specific number of parameters associated with it. These parameters and the size of each of the parameters are defined for each event. Each parameter is an integer number of octets in size.

## 6 HCI CONFIGURATION PARAMETERS

### 6.1 SCAN ENABLE

The Scan\_Enable parameter controls whether or not the BR/EDR Controller will periodically scan for page attempts and/or inquiry requests from other BR/EDR Controllers. If Page\_Scan is enabled, then the device will enter page scan mode based on the value of the Page\_Scan\_Interval and Page\_Scan\_Window parameters. If Inquiry\_Scan is enabled, then the BR/EDR Controller will enter Inquiry Scan mode based on the value of the Inquiry\_Scan\_Interval and Inquiry\_Scan\_Window parameters.

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No Scans enabled.
0x01	Inquiry Scan enabled. Page Scan always disabled.
0x02	Inquiry Scan disabled. Page Scan enabled.
0x03	Inquiry Scan enabled. Page Scan enabled.
0x04-0xFF	Reserved [0x04 limited page scan removed]

### 6.2 INQUIRY SCAN INTERVAL

The Inquiry\_Scan\_Interval configuration parameter defines the amount of time between consecutive inquiry scans. This is defined as the time interval from when the BR/EDR Controller started its last inquiry scan until it begins the next inquiry scan.

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0012 to 0x1000; only even values are valid Default: 0x1000 Mandatory Range: 0x0012 to 0x1000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 11.25 to 2560 msec Time Default: 2.56 sec

## 6.3 INQUIRY SCAN WINDOW

The Inquiry\_Scan\_Window configuration parameter defines the amount of time for the duration of the inquiry scan. The Inquiry\_Scan\_Window can only be less than or equal to the Inquiry\_Scan\_Interval.

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0011 to 0x1000 Default: 0x0012 Mandatory Range: 0x0011 to Inquiry Scan Interval $\text{Time} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ Time Range: 10.625 msec to 2560 msec Time Default: 11.25 msec

## 6.4 INQUIRY SCAN TYPE

The Inquiry\_Scan\_Type configuration parameter indicates whether inquiry scanning will be done using non-interlaced scan or interlaced scan. Currently, one mandatory inquiry scan type and one optional inquiry scan type are defined. For details, see the Baseband Specification, [Part B, Section 8.4.1, Inquiry scan substate](#).

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Mandatory: Standard Scan (default)
0x01	Optional: Interlaced Scan
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

## 6.5 INQUIRY MODE

The Inquiry\_Mode configuration parameter indicates whether inquiry returns Inquiry Result events in the standard format, with RSSI, or with RSSI and extended inquiry response information.

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Standard Inquiry Result event format
0x01	Inquiry Result format with RSSI
0x02	Inquiry Result with RSSI format or Extended Inquiry Result format
0x03-0xFF	Reserved

## 6.6 PAGE TIMEOUT

The Page\_Timeout configuration parameter defines the maximum time the local Link Manager will wait for a baseband page response from the remote device at a locally initiated connection attempt. If this time expires and the remote BR/EDR Controller has not responded to the page at baseband level, the connection attempt will be considered to have failed.

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0001 to 0xFFFF Default: 0x2000 Mandatory Range: 0x0016 to 0xFFFF $\text{Time} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ Time Range: 0.625 msec to 40.9 sec Time Default: 5.12 sec

## 6.7 CONNECTION ACCEPT TIMEOUT

The Connection\_Accept\_Timeout configuration parameter allows the BR/EDR Controller to automatically deny a connection request after a specified time period has occurred and the new connection is not accepted. The parameter defines the time duration from when the BR/EDR Controller sends a Connection Request event until the BR/EDR Controller will automatically reject an incoming connection.

The Connection\_Accept\_Timeout configuration parameter allows each AMP Controller to limit the duration of the Create\_Physical\_Link command or Accept\_Physical\_Link command it is locally serving. The parameter defines the maximum time duration for all physical connection setup activities that occur between the Create\_Physical\_Link command or Accept\_Physical\_Link command and the corresponding Physical Link Compete event (including all authentication activity) before the AMP Controller will automatically reject the physical link setup.

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0001 to 0xB540 Default: 0x1F40 Mandatory Range: 0x00A0 to 0xB540 $\text{Time} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ Time Range: 0.625 msec to 29 sec Time Default: BR/EDR 5 sec AMP type dependent

## 6.8 PAGE SCAN INTERVAL

The Page\_Scan\_Interval configuration parameter defines the amount of time between consecutive page scans. This time interval is defined from when the Controller started its last page scan until it begins the next page scan.

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0012 to 0x1000; only even values are valid Default: 0x0800 Mandatory Range: 0x0012 to 0x1000 $\text{Time} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ Time Range: 11.25 msec to 2560 msec Time Default: 1.28 sec

## 6.9 PAGE SCAN WINDOW

The Page\_Scan\_Window configuration parameter defines the amount of time for the duration of the page scan. The Page\_Scan\_Window can only be less than or equal to the Page\_Scan\_Interval.

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0011 to 0x1000 Default: 0x0012 Mandatory Range: 0x0011 to Page Scan Interval $\text{Time} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ Time Range: 10.625 msec to Page Scan Interval Time Default: 11.25 msec

## 6.10 PAGE SCAN PERIOD MODE (DEPRECATED)

Every time an inquiry response message is sent, the BR/EDR Controller will start a timer ( $T_{\text{mandatory\_pscan}}$ ), the value of which is dependent on the Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode. As long as this timer has not expired, the BR/EDR Controller will use the mandatory page scan mode for all following page scans.

Note: The timer  $T_{\text{mandatory\_pscan}}$  will be reset at each new inquiry response. For details see [Part B, Baseband Specification](#).

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	P0
0x01	P1
0x02	P2
0x03-0xFF	Reserved.

## 6.11 PAGE SCAN TYPE

The Page\_Scan\_Type parameter indicates whether page scanning will be done using non-interlaced scan or interlaced scan. For details, see the Baseband Specification, [Part B, Section 8.3.1, Page Scan Substate](#).

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Mandatory: Standard Scan (default)
0x01	Optional: Interlaced Scan
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

## 6.12 VOICE SETTING

The Voice\_Setting parameter controls all the various settings for voice connections. The input settings apply to all voice connections, and **cannot** be set for individual voice connections. The Voice\_Setting parameter controls the configuration for voice connections: Input Coding, Air coding format, input data format, Input sample size, and linear PCM parameter. The air coding format bits in the Voice\_Setting command parameter specify which air coding format the local device requests. The air coding format bits do not specify which air coding format(s) the local device accepts when a remote device requests an air coding format. This is determined by the hardware capabilities of the local BR/EDR Controller.

Value	Parameter Description
00XXXXXXXX	Input Coding: Linear
01XXXXXXXX	Input Coding: µ-law Input Coding
10XXXXXXXX	Input Coding: A-law Input Coding
11XXXXXXXX	Reserved for future use
XX00XXXXXX	Input Data Format: 1's complement
XX01XXXXXX	Input Data Format: 2's complement
XX10XXXXXX	Input Data Format: Sign-Magnitude
XX11XXXXXX	Input Data Format: Unsigned
XXXX0XXXXX	Input Sample Size: 8-bit (only for linear PCM)
XXXX1XXXXX	Input Sample Size: 16-bit (only for linear PCM)
XXXXXXnnnXX	Linear_PCM_Bit_Pos: # bit positions that MSB of sample is away from starting at MSB (only for Linear PCM).
XXXXXXXX00	Air Coding Format: CVSD
XXXXXXXX01	Air Coding Format: µ-law
XXXXXXXX10	Air Coding Format: A-law
XXXXXXXX11	Air Coding Format: Transparent Data

## 6.13 PIN TYPE

The PIN Type configuration parameter determines whether the Link Manager assumes that the Host supports variable PIN codes or a fixed PIN code. The host controller uses the PIN-type information during pairing.

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Variable PIN.
0x01	Fixed PIN.

## 6.14 LINK KEY

The Controller can store a limited number of link keys for other BR/EDR Controllers. Link keys are shared between two BR/EDR Controllers, and are used for all security transactions between the two BR/EDR Controllers. A Host device may have additional storage capabilities, which can be used to save additional link keys to be reloaded to the BR/EDR Controller when needed. A Link Key is associated with a BD\_ADDR.

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXX	Link Key for an associated BD_ADDR.

## 6.15 FAILED CONTACT COUNTER

The Failed\_Contact\_Counter records the number of consecutive incidents in which either the local or remote device did not respond after the flush timeout had expired, and the L2CAP PDU that was currently being transmitted was automatically ‘flushed’. When this occurs, the Failed\_Contact\_Counter is incremented by 1.

The Failed Contact Counter is maintained for each Connection\_Handle and Logical\_Link\_Handle.

The Failed\_Contact\_Counter for a connection is reset to zero on the following conditions:

1. When a new connection is established
2. When the Failed\_Contact\_Counter is > zero and an L2CAP PDU is acknowledged for that connection
3. When the Reset\_Failed\_Contact\_Counter command has been issued

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxx	Number of consecutive failed contacts for a connection corresponding to the Connection or Logical Link Handle.

## 6.16 AUTHENTICATION ENABLE

The Authentication\_Enable parameter controls if the local device requires to authenticate the remote device at connection setup (between the Create\_Connection command or acceptance of an incoming ACL connection and the corresponding Connection Complete event). At connection setup, only the device(s) with the Authentication\_Enable parameter enabled will try to authenticate the other device.

Note: Changing this parameter does not affect existing connections.

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Authentication not required.
0x01	Authentication required for all connections.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

## 6.17 HOLD MODE ACTIVITY

The Hold\_Mode\_Activity value is used to determine what activities should be suspended when the BR/EDR Controller is in hold mode. After the hold period has expired, the device will return to the previous mode of operation. Multiple hold mode activities may be specified for the Hold\_Mode\_Activity parameter by performing a bitwise OR operation of the different activity types. If no activities are suspended, then all of the current Periodic Inquiry, Inquiry Scan, and Page Scan settings remain valid during the Hold Mode. If the Hold\_Mode\_Activity parameter is set to Suspend Page Scan, Suspend Inquiry Scan, and Suspend Periodic Inquiries, then the device can enter a low-power state during the Hold Mode period, and all activities are suspended. Suspending multiple activities can be specified for the Hold\_Mode\_Activity parameter by performing a bitwise OR operation of the different activity types. The Hold Mode Activity is only valid if all connections are in Hold Mode.

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Maintain current Power State.
0x01	Suspend Page Scan.
0x02	Suspend Inquiry Scan.
0x04	Suspend Periodic Inquiries.
0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

## 6.18 LINK POLICY SETTINGS

The Link\_Policy\_Settings parameter determines the behavior of the local Link Manager when it receives a request from a remote Link Manager or it determines itself to change the master-slave role or to enter park state, hold, or sniff

mode. The local Link Manager will automatically accept or reject such a request from the remote device, and may even autonomously request itself, depending on the value of the `Link_Policy_Settings` parameter for the corresponding `Connection_Handle`. When the value of the `Link_Policy_Settings` parameter is changed for a certain `Connection_Handle`, the new value will only be used for requests from a remote device or from the local Link Manager itself made after this command has been completed. By enabling each mode individually, the Host can choose any combination needed to support various modes of operation. Multiple LM policies may be specified for the `Link_Policy_Settings` parameter by performing a bitwise OR operation of the different activity types.

Note: The local BR/EDR Controller may be forced into hold mode (regardless of whether the local device is master or slave) by the remote device regardless of the value of the `Link_Policy_Settings` parameter. The forcing of hold mode can however only be done once the connection has already been placed into hold mode through an LMP request (the `Link_Policy_Settings` determine if requests from a remote device should be accepted or rejected). The forcing of hold mode can after that be done as long as the connection lasts regardless of the setting for hold mode in the `Link_Policy_Settings` parameter.

Note that the previous description implies that if the implementation in the remote device is a “polite” implementation that does not force another device into hold mode via LMP PDUs, then the `Link_Policy_Settings` will never be overruled.

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	Disable All LM Modes Default
0x0001	Enable Role switch.
0x0002	Enable Hold Mode.
0x0004	Enable Sniff Mode.
0x0008	Enable Park State.
0x0010 – 0x8000	Reserved for future use.

## 6.19 FLUSH TIMEOUT

The Flush\_Timeout configuration parameter is used for ACL connections on a BR/EDR Controller only. The Flush Timeout is defined in the Baseband specification [Baseband Specification, Section 7.6.3, on page 156](#). This parameter allows automatically-flushable ACL packets to be automatically flushed without the Host device issuing a Flush command. This provides support for isochronous data, such as audio. Non-automatically-flushable ACL packets shall not be affected by this parameter (see [HCI ACL Data Packets](#)) providing support for both asynchronous and isochronous data on the same ACL connection. When the L2CAP packet that is currently being transmitted is automatically ‘flushed’, the Failed Contact Counter is incremented by one.

Note: Since for AMP Controllers a Flush Timeout value is maintained as part of the Extended Flow Specification for each logical link, the separate Flush Timeout configuration parameter is not used.

Value	Parameter Description
0	Timeout = $\infty$ ; No Automatic Flush
N = 0xFFFF	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0001 to 0x07FF Mandatory Range: 0x0002 to 0x07FF Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 0.625 msec to 1279.375 msec

## 6.20 NUM BROADCAST RETRANSMISSIONS

Broadcast packets are not acknowledged and are unreliable. The Number of Broadcast Retransmissions parameter, N, is used to increase the reliability of a broadcast message by retransmitting the broadcast message multiple times. This sets the value  $N_{BC}$  in the baseband to one greater than the Num Broadcast Retransmissions value. (See [Baseband Specification, Section 7.6.5, on page 157](#)) This parameter should be adjusted as the link quality measurement changes.

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFF	$N_{BC} = N + 1$ Range 0x00-0xFE

## 6.21 LINK SUPERVISION TIMEOUT

The Link\_Supervision\_Timeout parameter is used by the Controller to monitor link loss. If, for any reason, no packets are received from that Handle (a Connection\_Handle for the BR/EDR Controller or the Physical\_Link\_Handle for an AMP Controller) for a duration longer than the Link\_Supervision\_Timeout, the connection is disconnected. For the BR/EDR Controller, the same timeout value is used for both synchronous and ACL connections for the device specified by the Connection\_Handle. For an AMP Controller, the timeout value is maintained for each physical link. Note: Some AMP Controllers may also have an early notification event (See [Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event](#)).

Note: Setting the Link\_Supervision\_Timeout to No Link\_Supervision\_Timeout (0x0000) on a BR/EDR Controller will disable the Link\_Supervision\_Timeout check for the specified Connection\_Handle. This makes it unnecessary for the master of the piconet to unpark and then park each BR/EDR Controller every ~40 seconds. By using the No Link\_Supervision\_Timeout setting, the scalability of the Park state is not limited.

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	No Link_Supervision_Timeout. Shall not be used with AMP Controllers.
N = 0xXXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0001 to 0xFFFF Default: 0x7D00 Mandatory Range: 0x0190 to 0xFFFF Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 0.625 msec to 40.9 sec Time Default: BR/EDR 20 sec AMP 10 sec

## 6.22 SYNCHRONOUS FLOW CONTROL ENABLE

The Synchronous Flow Control Enable configuration parameter allows the Host to decide if the BR/EDR Controller will send Number Of Completed Packets events for synchronous Connection\_Handles. This setting allows the Host to enable and disable synchronous flow control.

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Synchronous Flow Control is disabled. No Number of Completed Packets events will be sent from the BR/EDR Controller for synchronous Connection_Handles.
0x01	Synchronous Flow Control is enabled. Number of Completed Packets events will be sent from the BR/EDR Controller for synchronous Connection_Handles.

## 6.23 LOCAL NAME

The user-friendly Local Name provides the user the ability to distinguish one BR/EDR Controller from another. The Local Name configuration parameter is a UTF-8 encoded string with up to 248 octets in length. The Local Name configuration parameter will be null terminated (0x00) if the UTF-8 encoded string is less than 248 octets.

Note: The Local Name configuration parameter is a string parameter. Endianness does therefore not apply to the Local Name configuration parameter. The first octet of the name is received first.

Value	Parameter Description
	A UTF-8 encoded User Friendly Descriptive Name for the device. If the name contained in the parameter is shorter than 248 octets, the end of the name is indicated by a NULL octet (0x00), and the following octets (to fill up 248 octets, which is the length of the parameter) do not have valid values.

## 6.24 EXTENDED INQUIRY RESPONSE

The Extended Inquiry Response provides information about the local device in response to inquiry from remote devices. The configuration parameter has two parts, a significant part followed by a non-significant part. The non-significant part contains only zero octets. The length of the extended inquiry response configuration parameter is 240 octets. The data format of the significant part is defined in [\[Vol 3\] Part C, Section 8, Extended Inquiry Response Data Format](#).

Value	Parameter Description
	Information about the local device that will be sent in an extended inquiry response packet to remote devices during inquiry response.

## 6.25 ERRONEOUS DATA REPORTING

The Erroneous\_Data\_Report configuration parameter shall be used for SCO and eSCO connections only. This parameter determines if the BR/EDR Controller is required to provide data to the Host for every (e)SCO interval, with the Packet\_Status\_Flag in HCI Synchronous Data Packets set according to [section 5.4.3, “HCI Synchronous Data Packets,” on page 484](#).

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Erroneous data reporting disabled
0x01	Erroneous data reporting enabled.
0x02 - 0xFF	Reserved

## 6.26 CLASS OF DEVICE

The Class\_of\_Device parameter is used to indicate the capabilities of the local device to other devices.

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXX	Class of Device for the device.

## 6.27 SUPPORTED COMMANDS

The Supported Commands configuration parameter lists which HCI commands the local controller supports. It is implied that if a command is listed as supported, the feature underlying that command is also supported.

The Supported Commands is a 64 octet bit field. If a bit is set to 1, then this command is supported.

Octet	Bit	Command Supported
0	0	Inquiry
	1	Inquiry Cancel
	2	Periodic Inquiry Mode
	3	Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode
	4	Create Connection
	5	Disconnect
	6	Add SCO Connection (deprecated)
	7	Create Connection Cancel
1	0	Accept Connection Request
	1	Reject Connection Request
	2	Link Key Request Reply
	3	Link Key Request Negative Reply
	4	PIN Code Request Reply
	5	PIN Code Request Negative Reply
	6	Change Connection Packet Type
	7	Authentication Requested

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

<b>Octet</b>	<b>Bit</b>	<b>Command Supported</b>
<b>2</b>	0	Set Connection Encryption
	1	Change Connection Link Key
	2	Master Link Key
	3	Remote Name Request
	4	Remote Name Request Cancel
	5	Read Remote Supported Features
	6	Read Remote Extended Features
	7	Read Remote Version Information
<b>3</b>	0	Read Clock Offset
	1	Read LMP Handle
	2	Reserved
	3	Reserved
	4	Reserved
	5	Reserved
	6	Reserved
	7	Reserved
<b>4</b>	0	Reserved
	1	Hold Mode
	2	Sniff Mode
	3	Exit Sniff Mode
	4	Park State
	5	Exit Park State
	6	QoS Setup
	7	Role Discovery
<b>5</b>	0	Switch Role
	1	Read Link Policy Settings
	2	Write Link Policy Settings
	3	Read Default Link Policy Settings
	4	Write Default Link Policy Settings
	5	Flow Specification
	6	Set Event Mask
	7	Reset

Octet	Bit	Command Supported
6	0	Set Event Filter
	1	Flush
	2	Read PIN Type
	3	Write PIN Type
	4	Create New Unit Key
	5	Read Stored Link Key
	6	Write Stored Link Key
	7	Delete Stored Link Key
7	0	Write Local Name
	1	Read Local Name
	2	Read Connection Accept Timeout
	3	Write Connection Accept Timeout
	4	Read Page Timeout
	5	Write Page Timeout
	6	Read Scan Enable
	7	Write Scan Enable
8	0	Read Page Scan Activity
	1	Write Page Scan Activity
	2	Read Inquiry Scan Activity
	3	Write Inquiry Scan Activity
	4	Read Authentication Enable
	5	Write Authentication Enable
	6	Read Encryption Mode (deprecated)
	7	Write Encryption Mode (deprecated)
9	0	Read Class Of Device
	1	Write Class Of Device
	2	Read Voice Setting
	3	Write Voice Setting
	4	Read Automatic Flush Timeout
	5	Write Automatic Flush Timeout
	6	Read Num Broadcast Retransmissions
	7	Write Num Broadcast Retransmissions

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

<b>Octet</b>	<b>Bit</b>	<b>Command Supported</b>
10	0	Read Hold Mode Activity
	1	Write Hold Mode Activity
	2	Read Transmit Power Level
	3	Read Synchronous Flow Control Enable
	4	Write Synchronous Flow Control Enable
	5	Set Controller To Host Flow Control
	6	Host Buffer Size
	7	Host Number Of Completed Packets
11	0	Read Link Supervision Timeout
	1	Write Link Supervision Timeout
	2	Read Number of Supported IAC
	3	Read Current IAC LAP
	4	Write Current IAC LAP
	5	Read Page Scan Mode Period (deprecated)
	6	Write Page Scan Mode Period (deprecated)
	7	Read Page Scan Mode (deprecated)
12	0	Write Page Scan Mode (deprecated)
	1	Set AFH Host Channel Classification
	2	Reserved
	3	Reserved
	4	Read Inquiry Scan Type
	5	Write Inquiry Scan Type
	6	Read Inquiry Mode
	7	Write Inquiry Mode
13	0	Read Page Scan Type
	1	Write Page Scan Type
	2	Read AFH Channel Assessment Mode
	3	Write AFH Channel Assessment Mode
	4	Reserved
	5	Reserved
	6	Reserved
	7	Reserved

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

<b>Octet</b>	<b>Bit</b>	<b>Command Supported</b>
14	0	Reserved
	1	Reserved
	2	Reserved
	3	Read Local Version Information
	4	Reserved
	5	Read Local Supported Features
	6	Read Local Extended Features
	7	Read Buffer Size
15	0	Read Country Code [Deprecated]
	1	Read BD ADDR
	2	Read Failed Contact Counter
	3	Reset Failed Contact Counter
	4	Read Link Quality
	5	Read RSSI
	6	Read AFH Channel Map
	7	Read Clock
16	0	Read Loopback Mode
	1	Write Loopback Mode
	2	Enable Device Under Test Mode
	3	Setup Synchronous Connection Request
	4	Accept Synchronous Connection Request
	5	Reject Synchronous Connection Request
	6	Reserved
	7	Reserved
17	0	Read Extended Inquiry Response
	1	Write Extended Inquiry Response
	2	Refresh Encryption Key
	3	Reserved
	4	Sniff Subrating
	5	Read Simple Pairing Mode
	6	Write Simple Pairing Mode
	7	Read Local OOB Data

<b>Octet</b>	<b>Bit</b>	<b>Command Supported</b>
18	0	Read Inquiry Response Transmit Power Level
	1	Write Inquiry Transmit Power Level
	2	Read Default Erroneous Data Reporting
	3	Write Default Erroneous Data Reporting
	4	Reserved
	5	Reserved
	6	Reserved
	7	IO Capability Request Reply
19	0	User Confirmation Request Reply
	1	User Confirmation Request Negative Reply
	2	User Passkey Request Reply
	3	User Passkey Request Negative Reply
	4	Remote OOB Data Request Reply
	5	Write Simple Pairing Debug Mode
	6	Enhanced Flush
	7	Remote OOB Data Request Negative Reply
20	0	Reserved
	1	Reserved
	2	Send Keypress Notification
	3	IO Capability Request Negative Reply
	4	Read Encryption Key Size
	5	Reserved
	6	Reserved
	7	Reserved
21	0	Create Physical Link
	1	Accept Physical Link
	2	Disconnect Physical Link
	3	Create Logical Link
	4	Accept Logical Link
	5	Disconnect Logical Link
	6	Logical Link Cancel
	7	Flow Spec Modify

Octet	Bit	Command Supported
22	0	Read Logical Link Accept Timeout
	1	Write Logical Link Accept Timeout
	2	Set Event Mask Page 2
	3	Read Location Data
	4	Write Location Data
	5	Read Local AMP Info
	6	Read Local AMP_ASSOC
	7	Write Remote AMP_ASSOC
23	0	Read Flow Control Mode
	1	Write Flow Control Mode
	2	Read Data Block Size
	3	Reserved
	4	Reserved
	5	Enable AMP Receiver Reports
	6	AMP Test End
	7	AMP Test
24	0	Read Enhanced Transmit Power Level
	1	Reserved
	2	Read Best Effort Flush Timeout
	3	Write Best Effort Flush Timeout
	4	Short Range Mode
	5	Read LE Host Support
	6	Write LE Host Support
	7	Reserved
25	0	LE Set Event Mask
	1	LE Read Buffer Size
	2	LE Read Local Supported Features
	3	Reserved
	4	LE Set Random Address
	5	LE Set Advertising Parameters
	6	LE Read Advertising Channel TX Power
	7	LE Set Advertising Data

<b>Octet</b>	<b>Bit</b>	<b>Command Supported</b>
26	0	LE Set Scan Response Data
	1	LE Set Advertise Enable
	2	LE Set Scan Parameters
	3	LE Set Scan Enable
	4	LE Create Connection
	5	LE Create Connection Cancel
	6	LE Read White List Size
	7	LE Clear White List
27	0	LE Add Device To White List
	1	LE Remove Device From White List
	2	LE Connection Update
	3	LE Set Host Channel Classification
	4	LE Read Channel Map
	5	LE Read Remote Used Features
	6	LE Encrypt
	7	LE Rand
28	0	LE Start Encryption
	1	LE Long Term Key Request Reply
	2	LE Long Term Key Request Negative Reply
	3	LE Read Supported States
	4	LE Receiver Test
	5	LE Transmitter Test
	6	LE Test End
	7	Reserved
29	0	Reserved
	1	Reserved
	2	Reserved
	3	Enhanced Setup Synchronous Connection
	4	Enhanced Accept Synchronous Connection
	5	Read Local Supported Codecs
	6	Set MWS Channel Parameters Command
	7	Set External Frame Configuration Command

Octet	Bit	Command Supported
30	0	Set MWS Signaling Command
	1	Set Transport Layer Command
	2	Set MWS Scan Frequency Table Command
	3	Get Transport Layer Configuration Command
	4	Set MWS PATTERN Configuration Command
	5	Set Triggered Clock Capture
	6	Truncated Page
	7	Truncated Page Cancel
31	0	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast
	1	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive
	2	Start Synchronization Train
	3	Receive Synchronization Train
	4	Set Reserved LT_ADDR
	5	Delete Reserved LT_ADDR
	6	Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Data
	7	Read Synchronization Train Parameters
32	0	Write Synchronization Train Parameters
	1	Remote OOB Extended Data Request Reply
	2	Read Secure Connections Host Support
	3	Write Secure Connections Host Support
	4	Read Authenticated Payload Timeout
	5	Write Authenticated Payload Timeout
	6	Read Local OOB Extended Data
	7	Write Secure Connections Test Mode
33	0	Read Extended Page Timeout
	1	Write Extended Page Timeout
	2	Read Extended Inquiry Length
	3	Write Extended Inquiry Length
	4	LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply Command
	5	LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply Command
	6	Reserved
	7	Reserved

## 6.28 LOGICAL LINK ACCEPT TIMEOUT

The Logical\_Link\_Accept\_Timeout configuration parameter allows the AMP Controller to automatically deny a logical link request after a specified time period has elapsed and the new logical link has not completed. The parameter defines the timeout duration, which includes all logical link setup activities that occur between the Create\_Logical\_Link or Accept\_Logical\_Link commands and the Logical Link Compete event. If these activities are not completed within the specified time, the AMP Controller will automatically reject the logical link set up.

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0001 to 0xB540 Default: 0x1F40 Mandatory Range: 0x00A0 to 0xB540 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 0.625 msec to 29 sec Time Default: AMP Type dependent

## 6.29 LOCATION DOMAIN AWARE

The Location\_Domain\_Aware parameter indicates if the transmitter has information about the current regulatory domain.

Location\_Domain\_Aware

Size 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Regulatory domain unknown
0x01	Regulatory domain known
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

## 6.30 LOCATION DOMAIN

The Location\_Domain parameter specifies the country or other location code if known.

Location\_Domain

Size 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Shall be set to the character string "XX" (0x5858) for a non-country entity or when Location_Domain_Aware is set to regulatory domain unknown. When the regulatory domain is known, it shall be set according to the two Octet country code as defined in ISO 3166-1. <sup>1</sup>

1. ISO 3166-1-alpha-2 code elements (English),  
[http://www.iso.org/iso/country\\_names\\_and\\_code\\_elements](http://www.iso.org/iso/country_names_and_code_elements)

## 6.31 LOCATION DOMAIN OPTIONS

The Location\_Domain\_Options parameter may specify additional information specific to that country, or that the location is not a single country.

*Location\_Domain\_Options*

Size: 1 Octet

Values	Parameter Descriptions
0x20	Single octet suffix: "space" indicates that the code applies to the entire country
0x4F	"O" indicates for use outdoors only
0x49	"I" indicates for use indoors only
0x58	"X" indicates a non-country entity
Other values	Reserved for future use

The format of the Location\_Domain\_Options parameter is derived from IEEE 802.11-2007 Annex D "ASN.1 encoding of the MAC and PHY MIB."

## 6.32 LOCATION OPTIONS

The Location\_Options parameter indicates if the transmitter has information about any options that may affect operation in different locations.

*Location\_Options:*

Size: 1 Octet

Bit	Value	Parameter Description
0	0	Not mains-powered
0	1	Mains powered
1-7		Reserved for future use

## 6.33 FLOW CONTROL MODE

The Flow\_Control\_Mode configuration parameter allows the Host to select the HCI Data flow control mode used by the Controller for ACL Data traffic.

*Flow\_Control\_Mode:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Packet based data flow control mode ( <b>default</b> for a Primary Controller)
0x01	Data block based data flow control mode ( <b>default</b> for an AMP Controller)
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

## 6.34 LE SUPPORTED HOST

The LE\_Supported\_Host parameter allows the Host to read and set the Link Manager Protocol feature bit LE Supported (Host). See [Part C, Section 3.2, Feature Definitions](#).

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE Supported (Host) disabled ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	LE Supported (Host) enabled
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved

## 6.35 SIMULTANEOUS LE HOST

The Simultaneous\_LE\_Host parameter allows the Host to read and set the Link Manager Protocol feature bit Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host). See [Part C, Section 3.2, Feature Definitions](#).

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host) disabled ( <b>default</b> ). This value shall be ignored.
0x01 – 0xFF	Reserved

## 6.36 SYNCHRONIZATION TRAIN INTERVAL

The Sync\_Train\_Interval configuration parameter defines the time between Synchronization Train transmit events on a single transmit RF channel.

*Sync\_Train\_Interval* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Range: 0x0006 to 0xFFFF; only even values are valid Default: 0x0080 Mandatory Range: 0x0012 to 0x1000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 1.25 msec to 40.9 sec Time Default: 80 msec

## 6.37 SYNCHRONIZATION TRAIN TIMEOUT

The synchronization\_trainTO configuration parameter is used by the controller to terminate the Synchronization Train after it has been started via the HC\_Start\_Synchronization\_Train command.

*synchronization\_trainTO* Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXXXXXXX	Range: 0x00000002 to 0x07FFFFFF; only even values are valid Default: 0x0002EE00 Mandatory Range: 0x00000002 to 0x07FFFFFF Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 1.25 msec to 23.3 hours Time Default: 120 msec

## 6.38 SERVICE DATA

The Service\_Data configuration parameter defines the value of the service data field in the Synchronization Train.

*Sync\_Train\_Interval* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	Range: 0x00 to 0xFF Default: 0x00

## 6.39 SECURE CONNECTIONS HOST SUPPORT

The Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support configuration parameter allows the Host to indicate whether it supports Secure Connections or not. When Secure Connections Host Support is set to 'enabled' the Controller shall use the enhanced reporting mechanisms for the Encryption\_Enabled parameter in the Encryption Change event (see [Section 7.7.8](#)) and the Key\_Type parameter in the Link Key Notification event (see [Section 7.7.24](#)).

*Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Secure_Connections_Host_Support is 'disabled'. Host does not support Secure Connections (default)
0x01	Secure_Connections_Host_Support is 'enabled'. Host supports Secure Connections
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

## 6.40 AUTHENTICATED PAYLOAD TIMEOUT

The Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout configuration parameter allows the Host to configure the maximum interval between packets containing a MIC received from the remote device when AES-CCM encryption is enabled.

*Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Maximum amount of time specified between packets authenticated by a MIC. Range: 0x0001 to 0xFFFF $\text{Time} = N * 10 \text{ msec}$ Time Range: 10 msec to 655,350 msec

## 6.41 EXTENDED PAGE TIMEOUT

The Extended\_Page\_Timeout configuration parameter together with Page\_Timeout defines the maximum time the local Link Manager will wait for a baseband page response from the remote device at a locally initiated connection attempt. If this time expires and the remote device has not responded to the page at baseband level, the connection attempt will be considered to have failed.

*Extended\_Page\_Timeout:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Range: 0x0000 to 0xFFFF Default: 0x0000 Mandatory Range: 0x0000 to 0xFFFF $\text{Time} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ Time Range: 0 to 40.9 sec Time Default: 0 sec

## 6.42 EXTENDED INQUIRY LENGTH

The Extended\_Inquiry\_Length configuration parameter together with Inquiry\_Length defines the maximum time the local Link Manager will wait for a baseband inquiry response messages from the remote device at a locally initiated inquiry or periodic inquiry.

*Extended\_Inquiry\_Length:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Range: 0x0000 to 0xFFFF Default: 0x0000 Mandatory Range: 0x0000 to 0xFFFF Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 0 to 40.9 sec Time Default: 0 sec

## 7 HCI COMMANDS AND EVENTS

---

### 7.1 LINK CONTROL COMMANDS

The Link Control commands allow a Controller to control connections to other BR/EDR Controllers. Some Link Control commands are used only with a BR/EDR Controller whereas other Link Control commands are used only with an AMP Controller.

In the BR/EDR Controller, when the Link Control commands are used, the Link Manager (LM) controls how the Bluetooth piconets and scatternets are established and maintained. These commands instruct the LM to create and modify link layer connections with Bluetooth remote devices, perform Inquiries of other BR/EDR Controllers in range, and other LMP commands.

In the AMP Controller, Link Control commands are used to create, modify and disconnect physical and logical links.

In the LE Controller, Link Control commands are used to disconnect physical links.

For the Link Control commands, the OGF is defined as 0x01.

### 7.1.1 Inquiry Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Inquiry	0x0001	LAP, Inquiry_Length, Num_Responses	

#### Description:

This command causes the BR/EDR Controller to enter Inquiry Mode. Inquiry Mode is used to discover other nearby BR/EDR Controllers. The LAP input parameter contains the LAP from which the inquiry access code shall be derived when the inquiry procedure is made. The Inquiry\_Length parameter specifies the total duration of the Inquiry Mode and, when this time expires, Inquiry will be halted. When Extended\_Inquiry\_Length is greater than zero, the duration of the Inquiry Mode may be changed to (Inquiry\_Length + Extended\_Inquiry\_Length). The Num\_Responses parameter specifies the number of responses that can be received before the Inquiry is halted. Inquiry Result events will be sent to report the details of nearby BR/EDR Controllers that have responded to this inquiry. The Inquiry Complete event is sent to report that Inquiry Mode has ended.

A device which responds during an inquiry or inquiry period should always be reported to the Host in an Inquiry Result event if the device has not been reported earlier during the current inquiry or inquiry period and the device has not been filtered out using the command Set\_Event\_Filter. If the device has been reported earlier during the current inquiry or inquiry period, it may or may not be reported depending on the implementation (depending on if earlier results have been saved in the BR/EDR Controller and in that case how many responses that have been saved). It is recommended that the BR/EDR Controller tries to report a particular device only once during an inquiry or inquiry period.

#### Command Parameters:

LAP:

Size: 3 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x9E8B00– 0X9E8B3F	This is the LAP from which the inquiry access code should be derived when the inquiry procedure is made; see Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> .

*Inquiry\_Length:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	Maximum amount of time specified before the Inquiry is halted. Size: 1 octet Range: 0x01 – 0x30 $\text{Time} = N * 1.28 \text{ sec}$ Range: 1.28 – 61.44 Sec

*Num\_Responses:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Unlimited number of responses.
0xXX	Maximum number of responses from the Inquiry before the Inquiry is halted. Range: 0x01 – 0xFF

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

A Command Status event shall be sent from the BR/EDR Controller to the Host when the BR/EDR Controller has started the Inquiry process. Unless filtered, an Inquiry Result event shall be created for each BR/EDR Controller which responds to the Inquiry message. In addition, multiple BR/EDR Controllers which respond to the Inquiry message may be combined into the same event. An Inquiry Complete event shall be generated when the Inquiry process has completed.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Inquiry Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed. No Inquiry Complete event will be generated for the canceled Inquiry process.

### 7.1.2 Inquiry Cancel Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Inquiry_Cancel	0x0002		Status

#### Description:

This command shall cause the BR/EDR Controller to stop the current Inquiry if the BR/EDR Controller is in Inquiry Mode. This command allows the Host to interrupt the BR/EDR Controller and request the BR/EDR Controller to perform a different task. The command should only be issued after the Inquiry command has been issued, a Command Status event has been received for the Inquiry command, and before the Inquiry Complete event occurs.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Inquiry_Cancel command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Inquiry_Cancel command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Inquiry\_Cancel command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated. No Inquiry Complete event will be generated for the canceled Inquiry process.

### 7.1.3 Periodic Inquiry Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Periodic_Inquiry_Mode	0x0003	Max_Period_Length, Min_Period_Length, LAP, Inquiry_Length, Num_Responses	Status

#### Description:

The Periodic\_Inquiry\_Mode command is used to configure the BR/EDR Controller to enter the Periodic Inquiry Mode that performs an automatic Inquiry. Max\_Period\_Length and Min\_Period\_Length define the time range between two consecutive inquiries, from the beginning of an inquiry until the start of the next inquiry. The BR/EDR Controller shall use this range to determine a new random time between two consecutive inquiries for each Inquiry. The LAP input parameter contains the LAP from which the inquiry access code shall be derived when the inquiry procedure is made. The Inquiry\_Length parameter specifies the total duration of the Inquiry Mode and, when time expires, Inquiry will be halted. When Extended\_Inquiry\_Length is greater than zero, the duration of the Inquiry Mode may be changed to (Inquiry\_Length + Extended\_Inquiry\_Length). The Num\_Responses parameter specifies the number of responses that can be received before the Inquiry is halted. This command is completed when the Inquiry process has been started by the BR/EDR Controller, and a Command Complete event is sent from the Controller to the Host. When each of the periodic Inquiry processes are completed, the Controller will send an Inquiry Complete event to the Host indicating that the latest periodic Inquiry process has finished. When a BR/EDR Controller responds to the Inquiry message an Inquiry Result event will occur to notify the Host of the discovery.

Note: Max\_Period\_Length > Min\_Period\_Length > (Inquiry\_Length + Extended\_Inquiry\_Length)

A device which responds during an inquiry or inquiry period should always be reported to the Host in an Inquiry Result event if the device has not been reported earlier during the current inquiry or inquiry period and the device has not been filtered out using the command Set\_Event\_Filter. If the device has been reported earlier during the current inquiry or inquiry period, it may or may not be reported depending on the implementation (depending on if earlier results have been saved in the BR/EDR Controller and in that case how many responses that have been saved). It is recommended that the BR/EDR Controller tries to report a particular device only once during an inquiry or inquiry period.

**Command Parameters:***Max\_Period\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Maximum amount of time specified between consecutive inquiries. Size: 2 octets Range: 0x03 – 0xFFFF Time = N * 1.28 sec Range: 3.84 – 83884.8 Sec 0.0 – 23.3 hours

*Min\_Period\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Minimum amount of time specified between consecutive inquiries. Size: 2 octets Range: 0x02 – 0xFFFFE Time = N * 1.28 sec Range: 2.56 – 83883.52 Sec 0.0 – 23.3 hours

*LAP:**Size: 3 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0x9E8B00 – 0X9E8B3F	This is the LAP from which the inquiry access code should be derived when the inquiry procedure is made; see “Bluetooth Assigned Numbers”

*Inquiry\_Length:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	Maximum amount of time specified before the Inquiry is halted. Size: 1 octet Range: 0x01 – 0x30 Time = N * 1.28 sec Range: 1.28 – 61.44 Sec

*Num\_Responses:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Unlimited number of responses.
0xXX	Maximum number of responses from the Inquiry before the Inquiry is halted. Range: 0x01 – 0xFF

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Periodic Inquiry Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Periodic Inquiry Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

The Periodic Inquiry Mode begins when the BR/EDR Controller sends the Command Complete event for this command to the Host. Unless filtered, an Inquiry Result event shall be created for each remote device that have responded to the Inquiry message. In addition, multiple BR/EDR Controllers which response to the Inquiry message may be combined into the same event. An Inquiry Complete event shall be generated when each of the periodic Inquiry processes has completed. No Inquiry Complete event will be generated for the canceled Inquiry process.

### 7.1.4 Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Exit_Periodic_Inquiry_Mode	0x0004		Status

#### Description:

The Exit\_Periodic\_Inquiry\_Mode command is used to end the Periodic Inquiry mode when the local device is in Periodic Inquiry Mode. If the BR/EDR Controller is currently in an Inquiry process, the Inquiry process shall be stopped directly and the BR/EDR Controller shall no longer perform periodic inquiries until the Periodic Inquiry Mode command is reissued.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Exit Periodic Inquiry Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

A Command Complete event for this command shall occur when the local device is no longer in Periodic Inquiry Mode. No Inquiry Complete event will be generated for the canceled Inquiry process.

### 7.1.5 Create Connection Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Create_Connection	0x0005	BD_ADDR, Packet_Type, Page_Scan_Repetition_Mode, Reserved, Clock_Offset, Allow_Role_Switch	

#### Description:

This command causes the Link Manager to create a connection to the remote device with the BD\_ADDR specified by the command parameters. This command causes the local BR/EDR Controller to begin the Page process to create a link level connection. The Link Manager will determine how the new ACL connection is established. This ACL connection is determined by the current state of the device, its piconet, and the state of the device to be connected. The Packet\_Type command parameter specifies which packet types the Link Manager shall use for the ACL connection. When sending HCI ACL Data Packets the Link Manager shall only use the packet type(s) specified by the Packet\_Type command parameter or the always-allowed DM1 packet type. Multiple packet types may be specified for the Packet Type parameter by performing a bit-wise OR operation of the different packet types. The Link Manager may choose which packet type to be used from the list of acceptable packet types. The Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode parameter specifies the page scan repetition mode supported by the remote device with the BD\_ADDR. This is the information that was acquired during the inquiry process. The Clock\_Offset parameter is the difference between its own clock and the clock of the remote device with BD\_ADDR. Only bits 2 through 16 of the difference are used, and they are mapped to this parameter as bits 0 through 14 respectively. A Clock\_Offset\_Valid\_Flag, located in bit 15 of the Clock\_Offset parameter, is used to indicate if the Clock Offset is valid or not. A Connection\_Handle for this connection is returned in the Connection Complete event (see below). The Allow\_Role\_Switch parameter specifies if the local device accepts or rejects the request of a master-slave role switch when the remote device requests it at the connection setup (in the Role parameter of the Accept\_Connection\_Request command) (before the local Controller returns a Connection Complete event). For a definition of the different packet types see the [Part B, Baseband Specification on page 59](#).

Note: The Host should enable as many packet types as possible for the Link Manager to perform efficiently. However, the Host must not enable packet types that the local device does not support.

**Command Parameters:***BD\_ADDR*:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device to be connected.

*Packet\_Type*:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0001	Reserved for future use.
0x0002	2-DH1 may not be used.
0x0004	3-DH1 may not be used.
0x0008 <sup>1</sup>	DM1 may be used.
0x0010	DH1 may be used.
0x0020	Reserved for future use.
0x0040	Reserved for future use.
0x0080	Reserved for future use.
0x0100	2-DH3 may not be used.
0x0200	3-DH3 may not be used.
0x0400	DM3 may be used.
0x0800	DH3 may be used.
0x1000	2-DH5 may not be used.
0x2000	3-DH5 may not be used.
0x4000	DM5 may be used.
0x8000	DH5 may be used.

1. This bit will be interpreted as set to 1 by Bluetooth V1.2 or later controllers.

*Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	R0
0x01	R1
0x02	R2
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved.

**Reserved:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Reserved, must be set to 0x00. See <a href="#">Page Scan Mode on page 1031</a> .

**Clock\_Offset:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Bit format</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
Bits 14-0	Bits 16-2 of CLKNslave-CLK
Bit 15	Clock_Offset_Valid_Flag Invalid Clock Offset = 0 Valid Clock Offset = 1

**Allow\_Role\_Switch:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	The local device will be a master, and will not accept a role switch requested by the remote device at the connection setup.
0x01	The local device may be a master, or may become a slave after accepting a role switch requested by the remote device at the connection setup.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Create\_Connection command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the Link Manager determines the connection is established, the BR/EDR Controller, on both BR/EDR Controllers that form the connection, shall send a Connection Complete event to each Host. The Connection Complete event contains the Connection\_Handle if this command is successful.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Connection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.6 Disconnect Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Disconnect	0x0006	Connection_Handle, Reason	

#### Description:

The Disconnection command is used to terminate an existing connection. The Connection\_Handle command parameter indicates which connection is to be disconnected. The Reason command parameter indicates the reason for ending the connection. The remote Controller will receive the Reason command parameter in the Disconnection Complete event. All synchronous connections on a physical link should be disconnected before the ACL connection on the same physical connection is disconnected.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle for the connection being disconnected. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Reason:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x05, 0x13-0x15, 0x1A, 0x29, 0x3B	Authentication Failure error code (0x05), Other End Terminated Connection error codes (0x13-0x15), Unsupported Remote Feature error code (0x1A), Pairing with Unit Key Not Supported error code (0x29) and Unacceptable Connection Interval error code (0x3B), see <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Controller receives the Disconnect command, it shall send the Command Status event to the Host. The Disconnection Complete event will occur at each Host when the termination of the connection has completed, and indicates that this command has been completed.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Disconnection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.7 Create Connection Cancel Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Create_Connection_Cancel	0x0008	BD_ADDR	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

This command is used to request cancellation of the ongoing connection creation process, which was started by a Create\_Connection command of the local BR/EDR Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Create Connection command request that was issued before and is subject of this cancellation request

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Create Connection Cancel command succeeded
0x01-0xff	Create Connection Cancel command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for list of error codes

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Create Connection command that was issued before and is the subject of this cancellation request.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Create\_Connection\_Cancel command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

If the connection is already established by the baseband, but the BR/EDR Controller has not yet sent the Connection Complete event, then the local device shall detach the link and return a Command Complete event with the status “Success”.

If the connection is already established, and the Connection Complete event has been sent, then the Controller shall return a Command Complete event with the error code *ACL Connection already exists* (0x0B).

If the Create\_Connection\_Cancel command is sent to the Controller without a preceding Create Connection command to the same device, the BR/EDR Controller shall return a Command Complete event with the error code *Unknown Connection Identifier* (0x02).

The Connection Complete event for the corresponding Create\_Connection command shall always be sent. The Connection Complete event shall be sent after the Command Complete event for the Create\_Connection\_Cancel command. If the cancellation was successful, the Connection Complete event will be generated with the error code *Unknown Connection Identifier* (0x02).

### 7.1.8 Accept Connection Request Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Accept_Connection_Request	0x0009	BD_ADDR, Role	

#### Description:

The Accept\_Connection\_Request command is used to accept a new incoming connection request. The Accept\_Connection\_Request command shall only be issued after a Connection Request event has occurred. The Connection Request event will return the BD\_ADDR of the device which is requesting the connection. This command will cause the Link Manager to create a connection to the BR/EDR Controller, with the BD\_ADDR specified by the command parameters. The Link Manager will determine how the new connection will be established. This will be determined by the current state of the device, its piconet, and the state of the device to be connected. The Role command parameter allows the Host to specify if the Link Manager shall request a role switch and become the Master for this connection. This is a preference and not a requirement. If the Role Switch fails then the connection will still be accepted, and the Role Discovery Command will reflect the current role.

Note: The Link Manager may terminate the connection if it would be low on resources if the role switch fails. The decision to accept a connection must be completed before the connection accept timeout expires on the local Bluetooth Module.

Note: When accepting synchronous connection request, the Role parameter is not used and will be ignored by the BR/EDR Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Device to be connected

*Role:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Become the Master for this connection. The LM will perform the role switch.
0x01	Remain the Slave for this connection. The LM will <b>NOT</b> perform the role switch.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

The Accept\_Connection\_Request command shall cause the Command Status event to be sent from the BR/EDR Controller when the BR/EDR Controller begins setting up the connection. In addition, when the Link Manager determines the connection is established, the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Connection Complete event to its Host, and the remote Controller will send a Connection Complete event or a Synchronous Connection Complete event to the Host. The Connection Complete event contains the Connection\_Handle if this command is successful.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Connection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.9 Reject Connection Request Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Reject_Connection_Request	0x000A	BD_ADDR, Reason	

#### Description:

The Reject\_Connection\_Request command is used to decline a new incoming connection request. The Reject\_Connection\_Request command shall only be called after a Connection Request event has occurred. The Connection Request event will return the BD\_ADDR of the device that is requesting the connection. The Reason command parameter will be returned to the connecting device in the Status parameter of the Connection Complete event returned to the Host of the connection device, to indicate why the connection was declined.

#### Command Parameters:

**BD\_ADDR:** Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Device to reject the connection from.

**Reason:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xD-0xF	Host Reject Error Code. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for list of Error Codes and descriptions.

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Controller receives the Reject\_Connection\_Request command, the Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. Then, the local BR/EDR Controller will send a Connection Complete event to its host, and the remote device shall send a Connection Complete event or a Synchronous Connection Complete event to the host. The Status parameter of the Connection Complete event, which is sent to the Host of the device attempting to make the connection, will contain the Reason command parameter from this command.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Connection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.10 Link Key Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Link_Key_Request_Reply	0x000B	BD_ADDR, Link_Key	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Link\_Key\_Request\_Reply command is used to reply to a Link Key Request event from the Controller, and specifies the Link Key stored on the Host to be used as the link key for the connection with the other BR/EDR Controller specified by BD\_ADDR. The Link Key Request event will be generated when the BR/EDR Controller needs a Link Key for a connection.

When the BR/EDR Controller generates a Link Key Request event in order for the local Link Manager to respond to the request from the remote Link Manager (as a result of a Create\_Connection or Authentication\_Requested command from the remote Host), the local Host must respond with either a Link\_Key\_Request\_Reply or Link\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command before the remote Link Manager detects LMP response timeout. (See [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).)

When the BR/EDR Controller supports the Secure Connections (Controller Support) feature, it shall discard the Link Key once the connection has been disconnected.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Device of which the Link Key is for.

*Link\_Key:* Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxx	Link Key for the associated BD_ADDR.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Link_Key_Request_Reply command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Link_Key_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

**BD\_ADDR:****Size: 6 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXX XXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device of which the Link Key request reply has completed.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Link\_Key\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.11 Link Key Request Negative Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Link_Key_Request_Negative_Reply	0x000C	BD_ADDR	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Link\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command is used to reply to a Link Key Request event from the BR/EDR Controller if the Host does not have a stored Link Key for the connection with the other BR/EDR Controller specified by BD\_ADDR. The Link Key Request event will be generated when the BR/EDR Controller needs a Link Key for a connection.

When the Controller generates a Link Key Request event in order for the local Link Manager to respond to the request from the remote Link Manager (as a result of a Create\_Connection or Authentication\_Requested command from the remote Host), the local Host must respond with either a Link\_Key\_Request\_Reply or Link\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command before the remote Link Manager detects LMP response timeout. (See [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).)

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxx XX	BD_ADDR of the Device which the Link Key is for.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Link_Key_Request_Negative_Reply command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Link_Key_Request_Negative_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxx XXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device which the Link Key request negative reply has completed.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Link\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.12 PIN Code Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_PIN_Code_Request_Reply	0x000D	BD_ADDR, PIN_Code_Length, PIN_Code	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The PIN\_Code\_Request\_Reply command is used to reply to a PIN Code request event from the BR/EDR Controller, and specifies the PIN code to use for a connection. The PIN Code Request event will be generated when a connection with remote initiating device has requested pairing.

When the BR/EDR Controller generates a PIN Code Request event in order for the local Link Manager to respond to the request from the remote Link Manager (as a result of a Create\_Connection or Authentication\_Requested command from the remote Host), the local Host must respond with either a PIN\_Code\_Request\_Reply or PIN\_Code\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command before the remote Link Manager detects LMP response timeout. (See [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).)

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXX XX	BD_ADDR of the Device which the PIN code is for.

##### PIN\_Code\_Length:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	The PIN code length specifies the length, in octets, of the PIN code to be used. Range: 0x01-0x10

##### PIN\_Code:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXX	PIN code for the device that is to be connected. The Host should ensure that strong PIN Codes are used. PIN Codes can be up to a maximum of 128 bits. Note: The PIN_Code Parameter is a string parameter. Endianess does therefore not apply to the PIN_Code Parameter. The first octet of the PIN code should be transmitted first.

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	PIN_Code_Request_Reply command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	PIN_Code_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR:**Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device which the PIN Code request reply has completed.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the PIN\_Code\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.13 PIN Code Request Negative Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_PIN_Code_Request_Negative_Reply	0x000E	BD_ADDR	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The PIN\_Code\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command is used to reply to a PIN Code request event from the BR/EDR Controller when the Host cannot specify a PIN code to use for a connection. This command will cause the pair request with remote device to fail.

When the BR/EDR Controller generates a PIN Code Request event in order for the local Link Manager to respond to the request from the remote Link Manager (as a result of a Create\_Connection or Authentication\_Requested command from the remote Host), the local Host must respond with either a PIN\_Code\_Request\_Reply or PIN\_Code\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command before the remote Link Manager detects LMP response timeout. (See [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).)

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device which this command is responding to.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	PIN_Code_Request_Negative_Reply command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	PIN_Code_Request_Negative_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device which the PIN Code request negative reply has completed.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the PIN\_Code\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.14 Change Connection Packet Type Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Change_Connection_Packet_Type	0x000F	Connection_Handle, Packet_Type	

#### Description:

The Change\_Connection\_Packet\_Type command is used to change which packet types can be used for a connection that is currently established. This allows current connections to be dynamically modified to support different types of user data. The Packet\_Type command parameter specifies which packet types the Link Manager can use for the connection. When sending HCI ACL Data Packets the Link Manager shall only use the packet type(s) specified by the Packet\_Type command parameter or the always-allowed DM1 packet type. The interpretation of the value for the Packet\_Type command parameter will depend on the Link\_Type command parameter returned in the Connection Complete event at the connection setup. Multiple packet types may be specified for the Packet\_Type command parameter by bitwise OR operation of the different packet types. For a definition of the different packet types see the [Part B, Baseband Specification on page 59](#).

Note: The Host should enable as many packet types as possible for the Link Manager to perform efficiently. However, the Host must not enable packet types that the local device does not support.

Note: To change an eSCO connection, use the Setup Synchronous Connection command.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to for transmitting and receiving voice or data. Returned from creating a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification**Packet\_Type:**Size: 2 Octets**For ACL Link\_Type*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	Reserved for future use.
0x0002	2-DH1 may not be used.
0x0004	3-DH1 may not be used.
0x0008 <sup>1</sup>	DM1 may be used.
0x0010	DH1 may be used.
0x0020	Reserved for future use.
0x0040	Reserved for future use.
0x0080	Reserved for future use.
0x0100	2-DH3 may not be used.
0x0200	3-DH3 may not be used.
0x0400	DM3 may be used.
0x0800	DH3 may be used.
0x1000	2-DH5 may not be used.
0x2000	3-DH5 may not be used.
0x4000	DM5 may be used.
0x8000	DH5 may be used.

1. This bit will be set to 1 by Bluetooth V1.2 or later controllers.

*For SCO Link Type*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	Reserved for future use.
0x0002	Reserved for future use.
0x0004	Reserved for future use.
0x0008	Reserved for future use.
0x0010	Reserved for future use.
0x0020	HV1
0x0040	HV2
0x0080	HV3
0x0100	Reserved for future use.
0x0200	Reserved for future use.
0x0400	Reserved for future use.

Value	Parameter Description
0x0800	Reserved for future use.
0x1000	Reserved for future use.
0x2000	Reserved for future use.
0x4000	Reserved for future use.
0x8000	Reserved for future use.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Change Connection Packet Type command, BR/EDR the Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the Link Manager determines the packet type has been changed for the connection, the Controller on the local device will send a Connection Packet Type Changed event to the Host. This will be done at the local side only.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Connection Packet Type Changed event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.15 Authentication Requested Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Authentication_Requested	0x0011	Connection_Handle	

#### Description:

The Authentication\_Requested command is used to try to authenticate the remote device associated with the specified Connection\_Handle. On an authentication failure, the BR/EDR Controller or Link Manager shall not automatically detach the link. The Host is responsible for issuing a Disconnect command to terminate the link if the action is appropriate.

Note: The Connection\_Handle command parameter is used to identify the other BR/EDR Controller, which forms the connection. The Connection\_Handle should be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to set up authentication for all Connection Handles with the same BR/EDR Controller end-point as the specified Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Controller receives the Authentication\_Requested command, it shall send the Command Status event to the Host. The Link Key Request event shall be generated when Simple Pairing Mode is enabled. If authentication fails and Simple Pairing Mode is not enabled, the PIN Code Request event may be generated. The Authentication Complete event will occur when the authentication has been completed for the connection and is indication that this command has been completed.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Authentication Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

On receipt of an Authentication Requested Command, a local BR/EDR Controller that is not in Simple Pairing Mode may use an existing stored link key and respond immediately to the Host with an Authentication Complete event.

This behavior is not recommended for controllers as it offers the Host no method for enhancing the security of an existing link (e.g., in the case where a profile mandating a minimum passkey length is started over a link that is already authenticated with shorter passkey than the new service requires).

### 7.1.16 Set Connection Encryption Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Connection_Encryption	0x0013	Connection_Handle, Encryption_Enable	

#### Description:

The Set\_Connection\_Encryption command is used to enable and disable the link level encryption. Note: the Connection\_Handle command parameter is used to identify the other BR/EDR Controller which forms the connection. The Connection\_Handle should be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. While the encryption is being changed, all ACL traffic must be turned off for all Connection\_Handles associated with the remote device.

If both devices support both the Secure Connections (Controller Support) and Secure Connections (Host Support) features, and Encryption\_Enable is set to Turn Link Level Encryption OFF when encryption is currently enabled on the specified Connection\_Handle, the Controller shall return the error code *Encryption Mode Not Acceptable* (0x25).

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to enable/disable the link layer encryption for all Connection_Handles with the same BR/EDR Controller end-point as the specified Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Encryption\_Enable:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Turn Link Level Encryption OFF.
0x01	Turn Link Level Encryption ON.

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Set\_Connection\_Encryption command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the Link Manager has completed enabling/disabling encryption for the connection, the local BR/EDR Controller shall send an Encryption Change

event to the Host, and the BR/EDR Controller on the remote device will also generate an Encryption Change event.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Encryption Change event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.17 Change Connection Link Key Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Change_Connection_Link_Key	0x0015	Connection_Handle	

#### Description:

The Change\_Connection\_Link command is used to force both devices of a connection associated with the Connection\_Handle to generate a new link key. The link key is used for authentication and encryption of connections.

Note: The Connection\_Handle command parameter is used to identify the other BR/EDR Controller forming the connection. The Connection\_Handle should be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

Note: The resulting link key, generated as a result of Change\_Connection\_Link\_Key command, will be of equal link key strength to the previously used link key.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Controller receives the Change\_Connection\_Link command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host.

When the Link Manager has changed the Link Key for the connection, the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Link Key Notification event and a Change Connection Link Key Complete event to the Host, and the remote BR/EDR Controller will also generate a Link Key Notification event. The Link Key Notification event indicates that a new connection link key is valid for the connection.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Change Connection Link Key Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.18 Master Link Key Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Master_Link_Key	0x0017	Key_Flag	

#### Description:

The Master\_Link\_Key command is used to force the device that is master of the piconet to use the temporary link key of the master device, or the semi-permanent link keys. The temporary link key is used for encryption of broadcast messages within a piconet, and the semi-permanent link keys are used for private encrypted point-to-point communication. The Key\_Flag command parameter is used to indicate which Link Key (temporary link key of the Master, or the semi-permanent link keys) shall be used.

The HCI Master Link Key Command shall be rejected with error code *Command Disallowed* (0x0C) when all slaves in the piconet support AES-CCM encryption and Key\_Flag is set to “Use Temporary Link Key”.

Note: When at least one slave in the piconet cannot support AES-CCM encryption, encrypted broadcast packets will not be received by slave devices where both the Controller and Host support Secure Connections. When all slaves in the piconet support AES-CCM encryption, broadcast packets will not be encrypted and may be received by slaves that have AES-CCM encryption enabled.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Key\_Flag:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Use semi-permanent Link Keys.
0x01	Use Temporary Link Key.

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Master\_Link\_Key command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the Link Manager has changed link key, the BR/EDR Controller on both the local and the remote device shall send a Master Link Key Complete event to the Host. The Connection\_Handle on the master side shall be a Connection\_Handle for one of the existing connections to a slave. On the slave side, the Connection\_Handle shall be a Connection\_Handle to the initiating master.

The Master Link Key Complete event contains the status of this command.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Master Link Key Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.19 Remote Name Request Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Remote_Name_Request	0x0019	BD_ADDR, Page_Scan_Repetition_Mode, Reserved, Clock_Offset	

#### Description:

The Remote\_Name\_Request command is used to obtain the user-friendly name of another BR/EDR Controller. The user-friendly name is used to enable the user to distinguish one BR/EDR Controller from another. The BD\_ADDR command parameter is used to identify the device for which the user-friendly name is to be obtained. The Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode parameter specifies the page scan repetition mode supported by the remote device with the BD\_ADDR. This is the information that was acquired during the inquiry process. The Clock\_Offset parameter is the difference between its own clock and the clock of the remote device with BD\_ADDR. Only bits 2 through 16 of the difference are used and they are mapped to this parameter as bits 0 through 14 respectively. A Clock\_Offset\_Valid\_Flag, located in bit 15 of the Clock\_Offset command parameter, is used to indicate if the Clock Offset is valid or not.

When the Remote Supported Host Features Notification event is unmasked and when the Remote\_Name\_Request command initiates a connection, the Link Manager shall read the remote LMP features mask pages 0 and 1.

Note: If no connection exists between the local device and the device corresponding to the BD\_ADDR, a temporary link layer connection will be established to obtain the LMP features and name of the remote device.

#### Command Parameters:

**BD\_ADDR:**

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXX XX	BD_ADDR for the device whose name is requested.

***Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode:*****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	R0
0x01	R1
0x02	R2
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved.

***Reserved:*****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Reserved, must be set to 0x00. See <a href="#">Page Scan Mode on page 1031</a> .

***Clock\_Offset:*****Size: 2 Octets**

Bit format	Parameter Description
Bits 14-0	Bits 16-2 of CLKNslave-CLK
Bit 15	Clock_Offset_Valid_Flag Invalid Clock Offset = 0 Valid Clock Offset = 1

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Remote\_Name\_Request command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host.

When the Link Manager has completed the LMP messages to obtain the remote host supported features, if present, the BR/EDR Controller on the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Remote Host Supported Features Notification event. When the Link Manager has completed the LMP messages to obtain the remote name, the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Remote Name Request Complete event to the Host. If the remote host supported features page is present, the Remote Host Supported Features Notification event shall be sent before the Remote Name Request Complete event. If not, only the Remote Name Request Complete event shall be sent.

Note: No Command Complete event shall be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, only the Remote Name Request Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.20 Remote Name Request Cancel Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Remote_Name_Request_Cancel	0x001A	BD_ADDR	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

This command is used to request cancellation of the ongoing remote name request process, which was started by the Remote Name Request command.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Remote Name Request command that was issued before and that is subject of this cancellation request

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Remote Name Request Cancel command succeeded
0x01-0xff	Remote Name Request Cancel command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for list of error codes

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Remote Name Request Cancel command that was issued before and that was subject of this cancellation request

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Remote Name Request Cancel command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

If the Remote Name Request Cancel command is sent to the BR/EDR Controller without a preceding Remote Name Request command to the same device, the Controller shall return a Command Complete event with the error code Invalid HCI Command Parameters (0x12).

The Remote Name Request Complete event for the corresponding Remote Name Request Command shall always be sent. The Remote Name Request Complete event shall be sent after the Command Complete event for the

Remote Name Request Cancel command. If the cancellation was successful, the Remote Name Request Complete event shall be generated with the error code Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02).

### 7.1.21 Read Remote Supported Features Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Remote_Supported_Features	0x001B	Connection_Handle	

#### Description:

This command requests a list of the supported features for the remote device identified by the Connection\_Handle parameter. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The Read Remote Supported Features Complete event will return a list of the LMP features. For details see [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection_Handle's LMP-supported features list to get. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Read\_Remote\_Supported\_Features command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the Link Manager has completed the LMP messages to determine the remote features, the BR/EDR Controller on the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Read Remote Supported Features Complete event to the Host. The Read Remote Supported Features Complete event contains the status of this command, and parameters describing the supported features of the remote device.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Read Remote Supported Features Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.22 Read Remote Extended Features Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Remote_Extended_Features	0x001C	Connection_Handle, Page Number	

#### Description:

The Read\_Remote\_Extended\_Features command returns the requested page of the extended LMP features for the remote device identified by the specified Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle must be the Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. This command is only available if the extended features feature is implemented by the remote device. The Read Remote Extended Features Complete event will return the requested information. For details see [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Connection_Handle identifying the remote device for which extended feature information is required. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00-0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Page Number:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Requests the normal LMP features as returned by the Read_Remote_Supported_Features command
0x01-0xFF	Return the corresponding page of features

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Read\_Remote\_Extended\_Features command the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the Link Manager has completed the LMP sequence to determine the remote extended features the controller on the local device shall generate a Read Remote Extended Features Complete event to the host. The Read Remote Extended Features Complete event contains the page number and the remote features returned by the remote device.

Note: No Command Complete event will ever be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead the Read Remote Extended Features Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.23 Read Remote Version Information Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Remote_Version_Information	0x001D	Connection_Handle	

#### Description:

This command will obtain the values for the version information for the remote device identified by the Connection\_Handle parameter. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL or LE connection.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle*: *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection_Handle's version information to get. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Controller receives the Read\_Remote\_Version\_Information command, the Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the Link Manager or Link Layer has completed the sequence to determine the remote version information, the local Controller shall send a Read Remote Version Information Complete event to the Host. The Read Remote Version Information Complete event contains the status of this command, and parameters describing the version and subversion of the LMP or Link Layer used by the remote device.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Read Remote Version Information Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.24 Read Clock Offset Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Clock_Offset	0x001F	Connection_Handle	

#### Description:

Both the System Clock and the clock offset to a remote device are used to determine what hopping frequency is used by a remote device for page scan. This command allows the Host to read the clock offset of remote devices. The clock offset can be used to speed up the paging procedure when the local device tries to establish a connection to a remote device, for example, when the local Host has issued Create\_Connection or Remote\_Name\_Request. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection_Handle's Clock Offset parameter is returned. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Read\_Clock\_Offset command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. If this command was requested at the master and the Link Manager has completed the LMP messages to obtain the Clock Offset information, the BR/EDR Controller on the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Read Clock Offset Complete event to the Host.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, only the Read Clock Offset Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed. If the command is requested at the slave, the LM will immediately send a Command Status event and a Read Clock Offset Complete event to the Host, without an exchange of LMP PDU.

### 7.1.25 Read LMP Handle Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_LMP_Handle	0x0020	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle, LMP_Handle, Reserved

#### Description:

This command reads the current LMP Handle associated with the Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle shall be a SCO or eSCO Handle. If the Connection\_Handle is a SCO Connection\_Handle, then this command shall read the LMP SCO Handle for this connection. If the Connection\_Handle is an eSCO Connection\_Handle, then this command shall read the LMP eSCO Handle for this connection.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify which connection to be used for reading the LMP Handle. This must be a synchronous handle. Range: 0x0000-0xEFFF (0x0F00 – 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_LMP_Handle command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	Read_LMP_Handle command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Connection_Handle for the Connection for which the LMP_Handle has been read. Range: 0x0000-0xEFFF (0x0F00 – 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*LMP\_Handle:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	The LMP Handle is the LMP Handle that is associated with this Connection_Handle. For a synchronous handle, this would be the LMP Synchronous Handle used when negotiating the synchronous connection in the link manager.

*Reserved:**Size: 4 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XXXXXXXXX	This parameter is reserved, must be set to zero.

**Events(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_LMP\_Handle command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.26 Setup Synchronous Connection Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Setup_Synchronous_Connection	0x0028	Connection_Handle Transmit_Bandwidth Receive_Bandwidth Max_Latency Voice_Setting Retransmission_Effort Packet Type	

#### Description:

The `Setup_Synchronous_Connection` command adds a new or modifies an existing synchronous logical transport (SCO or eSCO) on a physical link depending on the `Connection_Handle` parameter specified. If the `Connection_Handle` refers to an ACL link a new synchronous logical transport will be added. If the ACL link has encryption enabled using AES-CCM and the Controller cannot establish an eSCO transport (e.g. the Host parameters restricting the packet types to only SCO packet types), Error code 0x0E (*Connection Rejected Due to Security Reasons*) shall be returned and a SCO transport will not be established. If the `Connection_Handle` refers to an already existing synchronous logical transport (eSCO only) this link will be modified. The parameters are specified per connection. This synchronous connection can be used to transfer synchronous voice at 64kbps or transparent synchronous data.

When used to setup a new synchronous logical transport, the `Connection_Handle` parameter shall specify an ACL connection with which the new synchronous connection will be associated. The other parameters relate to the negotiation of the link, and may be reconfigured during the lifetime of the link. The transmit and receive bandwidth specify how much bandwidth shall be available for transmitting and for receiving data. While in many cases the receive and transmit bandwidth parameters may be equal, they may be different. The latency specifies an upper limit to the time in milliseconds between the eSCO (or SCO) instants, plus the size of the retransmission window, plus the length of the reserved synchronous slots for this logical transport. The content format specifies the settings for voice or transparent data on this connection. The retransmission effort specifies the extra resources that are allocated to this connection if a packet may need to be retransmitted. The `Retransmission_Effort` parameter shall be set to indicate the required behavior, or to don't care.

When used to modify an existing synchronous logical transport, the `Transmit_Bandwidth`, `Receive_Bandwidth` and `Voice_Setting` shall be set to the same values as were used during the initial setup. The `Packet_Type`, `Retransmission_Effort` and `Max_Latency` parameters may be modified.

The `Packet_Type` field is a bitmap specifying which packet types the LM shall accept in the negotiation of the link parameters. Multiple packet types are specified by bitwise OR of the packet type codes in the table. At least one packet

type must be specified for each negotiation. It is recommended to enable as many packet types as possible. Note that it is allowed to enable packet types that are not supported by the local device.

A Connection\_Handle for the new synchronous connection will be returned in the synchronous connection complete event.

Note: The link manager may choose any combination of packet types, timing, and retransmission window sizes that satisfy the parameters given. This may be achieved by using more frequent transmissions of smaller packets. The link manager may choose to set up either a SCO or an eSCO connection, if the parameters allow, using the corresponding LMP sequences.

Note: To modify a SCO connection, use the Change Connection Packet Type command.

Note: If the lower layers cannot achieve the exact transmit and receive bandwidth requested subject to the other parameters, then the link shall be rejected.

A synchronous connection may only be created when an ACL connection already exists and when it is not in Park state.

### **Command Parameters:**

*Connection\_Handle:* 2 octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle for the ACL connection being used to create a synchronous Connection or for the existing Connection that shall be modified. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Transmit\_Bandwidth:* 4 octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Transmit bandwidth in octets per second.

*Receive\_Bandwidth:* 4 octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Receive bandwidth in octets per second.

***Max\_Latency:******2 octets***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0000-0x0003	Reserved
0x0004-0xFFFFE	This is a value in milliseconds representing the upper limit of the sum of the synchronous interval, and the size of the eSCO window, where the eSCO window is the reserved slots plus the retransmission window. (See Figure 8.7 in the Baseband specification)
0xFFFF	Don't care.

***Voice\_Setting:******2 octets (10 bits meaningful)***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
See <a href="#">Section 6.12 on page 491</a> .	

***Retransmission\_Effort:******1 octet***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	No retransmissions
0x01	At least one retransmission, optimize for power consumption.
0x02	At least one retransmission, optimize for link quality
0xFF	Don't care
0x03 – 0xFE	Reserved

***Packet\_Type:******2 octets***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	HV1 may be used.
0x0002	HV2 may be used.
0x0004	HV3 may be used.
0x0008	EV3 may be used.
0x0010	EV4 may be used.
0x0020	EV5 may be used.
0x0040	2-EV3 may not be used.
0x0080	3-EV3 may not be used.
0x0100	2-EV5 may not be used.
0x0200	3-EV5 may not be used.
0x0400	Reserved for future use
0x0800	Reserved for future use
0x1000	Reserved for future use

Value	Parameter Description
0x2000	Reserved for future use
0x4000	Reserved for future use
0x8000	Reserved for future use

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away)**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command, it shall send the Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the LM determines the connection is established, the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Synchronous Connection Complete event to the local Host, and the remote Controller will send a Synchronous Connection Complete event or a Connection Complete event to the remote Host. The synchronous Connection Complete event contains the Connection\_Handle if this command is successful.

If this command is used to change the parameters of an existing eSCO link, the Synchronous Connection Changed Event is sent to both hosts. In this case no Connection Setup Complete Event or Connection Request Event will be sent to either host. This command cannot be used to change the parameters of an SCO link.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Synchronous Connection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.27 Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Accept_Synchronous_Connection_Request	0x0029	BD_ADDR Transmit_Bandwidth Receive_Bandwidth Max_Latency Voice_Setting Retransmission_Effort Packet_Type	

#### Description:

The Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request command is used to accept an incoming request for a synchronous connection and to inform the local Link Manager about the acceptable parameter values for the synchronous connection.

The Command shall only be issued after a Connection\_Request event with link type SCO or eSCO has occurred. Connection\_Request event contains the BD\_ADDR of the device requesting the connection. The decision to accept a connection must be taken before the connection accept timeout expires on the local device.

If the ACL link has encryption enabled using AES-CCM and the Controller cannot establish an eSCO transport (e.g. the Host parameters restricting the packet types to only SCO packet types), error code 0x0E (*Connection Rejected Due to Security Reasons*) shall be returned and a SCO transport will not be established.

The parameter set of the Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request command is the same as for the Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command. The Transmit\_Bandwidth and Receive\_Bandwidth values are required values for the new link and shall be met. The Max\_Latency is an upper bound to the acceptable latency for the Link, as defined in [Section 7.1.26 on page 556](#) Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection and shall not be exceeded. Voice\_Setting specifies the encoding in the same way as in the Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command and shall be met. The Retransmission\_Effort parameter shall be set to indicate the required behavior, or to don't care. The Packet\_Type parameter is a bit mask specifying the synchronous packet types that are allowed on the link and shall be met. The reserved bits in the Packet\_Type field shall be set to one. If all bits are set in the packet type field then all packets types shall be allowed.

If the Link Type of the incoming request is SCO, then only the Transmit\_Bandwidth, Max\_Latency, Voice\_Settings, and Packet\_Type fields are valid.

If the Connection\_Request event is masked away, and the BR/EDR Controller is not set to auto-accept this connection attempt, the BR/EDR Controller will automatically reject it. If the controller is set to automatically accept the connection attempt, the LM should assume default parameters. In that case the Synchronous Connection Complete Event shall be generated, unless masked away.

### **Command Parameters:**

*BD\_ADDR:* 6 octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the device requesting the connection

*Transmit\_Bandwidth:* 4 octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000-0xFFFFFFF	Maximum possible transmit bandwidth in octets per second.
0xFFFFFFFF	Don't care

Default: Don't care

*Receive\_Bandwidth:* 4 octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000-0xFFFFFFF	Maximum possible receive bandwidth in octets per second.
0xFFFFFFFF	Don't care

Default: Don't care

*Max\_Latency:* 2 octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000-0x0003	Reserved
0x0004-0xFFFFE	This is a value in milliseconds representing the upper limit of the sum of the synchronous interval and the size of the eSCO window, where the eSCO window is the reserved slots plus the retransmission window.
0xFFFF	Don't care.

Default: Don't care

**Voice\_Settings:***2 octets (10 bits meaningful)*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
See <a href="#">Section 6.12 on page 491</a> .	

Default: When links are auto-accepted, the values written by the Write\_Voice\_Settings command are used.

**Retransmission\_Effort:***1 octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	No retransmissions
0x01	At least one retransmission, optimize for power consumption.
0x02	At least one retransmission, optimize for link quality.
0x03-0xFE	Reserved
0xFF	Don't care

Default: Don't care

**Packet\_Type:***2 octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	HV1 may be used.
0x0002	HV2 may be used.
0x0004	HV3 may be used.
0x0008	EV3 may be used.
0x0010	EV4 may be used.
0x0020	EV5 may be used.
0x0040	2-EV3 may not be used.
0x0080	3-EV3 may not be used
0x0100	2-EV5 may not be used.
0x0200	3-EV5 may not be used.
0x0400	Reserved for future use
0x0800	Reserved for future use
0x1000	Reserved for future use
0x2000	Reserved for future use
0x4000	Reserved for future use
0x8000	Reserved for future use

Default: 0x003F - means all defined packet types may be used.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

The Accept\_Synchronous\_Request command shall cause the Command Status event to be sent from the BR/EDR Controller when the BR/EDR Controller starts setting up the connection. When the link setup is complete, the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Synchronous Connection Complete event to its Host, and the remote BR/EDR Controller will send a Connection Complete event or a Synchronous Connection Complete event to the Host. The Synchronous Connection Complete will contain the Connection\_Handle and the link parameters if the setup is successful.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the host controller as the result of this command. Instead, the Synchronous Connection Complete or Connection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.28 Reject Synchronous Connection Request Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Reject_Synchronous_Connection_Request	0x002A	BD_ADDR Reason	

#### Description:

The Reject\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request command is used to decline an incoming request for a synchronous link. It shall only be issued after a Connection Request Event with Link Type equal to SCO or eSCO has occurred. The Connection Request Event contains the BD\_ADDR of the device requesting the connection. The Reason parameter will be returned to the initiating Host in the Status parameter of the Synchronous connection complete event on the remote side.

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

6 octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the device requesting the connection

##### Reason:

1 octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x0D-0x0F	Host Reject Error Code. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the Host Controller receives the Reject\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request, it shall send a Command Status event to the Host. When the setup is terminated, the local Controller shall send a Synchronous Connection Complete event to its Host, and the remote Controller will send a Connection Complete event or a Synchronous Connection Complete event to the Host with the Reason code from this command.

Note: No Command complete event will be sent by the Host Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Synchronous Connection Complete or Connection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.29 IO Capability Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_IO_Capability_Request_Reply	0x002B	BD_ADDR, IO_Capability, OOB_Data_Present, Authentication_Requirements	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The IO\_Capability\_Request\_Reply command is used to reply to an IO Capability Request event from the controller, and specifies the current I/O capabilities of the host. This includes the Host input, output and out-of-band (OOB) capabilities.

The Authentication\_Requirements parameter shall be set to man-in-the-middle (MITM) Protection Required Single Profile, MITM Protection Required – General Bonding, or MITM Protection Required – Dedicated Bonding if an authenticated link key is required by the Host. The Authentication\_Requirements parameter may be set to MITM Protection Not Required – Single Profile, MITM Protection Not Required – General Bonding, or MITM Protection Not Required – Dedicated Bonding if an authenticated link key is not required. If one or both Hosts set the Authentication\_Requirements parameter to MITM Protection Required – Single Profile, MITM Protection Required – General Bonding, or MITM Protection Required – Dedicated Bonding, the Link Managers shall use the IO\_Capability parameter to determine the authentication procedure. A Host that sets the Authentication\_Requirements parameter to MITM Protection Required – Single Profile, MITM Protection Required – General Bonding, or MITM Protection Required – All Profiles shall verify that the resulting Link Key type meets the security requirements.

If both Hosts set the Authentication\_Requirements parameter to MITM Protection Not Required – Single Profile, MITM Protection Not Required – General Bonding, or MITM Protection Not Required – Dedicated Bonding, the Link Managers shall use the numeric comparison authentication procedure and the Hosts shall use the Just Works Association Model.

If the Host has received OOB authentication data from a device with the same BD\_ADDR sent in the IO Capability Request event, then the OOB\_Data\_Present parameter shall be set to:

- "P-192 OOB authentication data from remote device present" when the host has received only P-192 OOB data,
- "P-256 OOB authentication data from remote device present" when the host has received only P-256 OOB data, or
- "P-192 and P-256 OOB authentication data from remote device present" when the host has received both P-192 and P-256 OOB data.

Otherwise OOB\_Data\_Present shall be set to "OOB authentication data not present".

**Command Parameters:*****BD\_ADDR:*****Size: 6 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXX XX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

***IO\_Capability:*****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	DisplayOnly
0x01	DisplayYesNo
0x02	KeyboardOnly
0x03	NoInputNoOutput
0x04 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use

***OOB\_Data\_Present:*****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	OOB authentication data not present
0x01	P-192 OOB authentication data from remote device present
0x02	P-256 OOB authentication data from remote device present
0x03	P-192 and P-256 OOB authentication data from remote device present
0x04 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use

***Authentication\_Requirements:*****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	MITM Protection Not Required – No Bonding. Numeric comparison with automatic accept allowed.
0x01	MITM Protection Required – No Bonding. Use IO Capabilities to determine authentication procedure
0x02	MITM Protection Not Required – Dedicated Bonding. Numeric comparison with automatic accept allowed.
0x03	MITM Protection Required – Dedicated Bonding. Use IO Capabilities to determine authentication procedure
0x04	MITM Protection Not Required – General Bonding. Numeric Comparison with automatic accept allowed.
0x05	MITM Protection Required – General Bonding. Use IO capabilities to determine authentication procedure.
0x06 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	IO_Capability_Request_Reply command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	IO_Capability_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR:**Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXX XX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the IO\_Capability\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated. When the device is the initiator of Secure Simple Pairing, an IO Capability Response event shall be generated. Additionally, when the OOB\_Data\_Present parameter indicates that OOB authentication data from the remote device is present, the Remote OOB Data Request event shall be generated.

### 7.1.30 User Confirmation Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_User_Confirmation_Request_Reply	0x002C	BD_ADDR	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Reply command is used to reply to a User Confirmation Request event and indicates that the user selected "yes". It is also used when the host has no input and no output capabilities.

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	User_Confirmation_Request_Reply command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	User_Confirmation_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.31 User Confirmation Request Negative Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_User_Confirmation_Request_Negative_Reply	0x002D	BD_ADDR	Status BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command is used to reply to a User Confirmation Request event and indicates that the user selected "no". This command shall cause the initiating Link Manager to transmit an LMP\_Numeric\_Comparison\_Failed PDU and terminate Secure Simple Pairing.

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx X	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	User_Confirmation_Request_Negative_Reply command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	User_Confirmation_Request_Negative_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx X	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.32 User Passkey Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_User_Passkey_Request_Reply	0x002E	BD_ADDR, Numeric_Value	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The User\_Passkey\_Request\_Reply command is used to reply to a User Passkey Request event and specifies the Numeric\_Value (passkey) entered by the user to be used in the Secure Simple Pairing process.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

*Numeric\_Value*: Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000 - 0x000F423F	Numeric value (passkey) entered by user. Valid values are decimal 000000 - 999999.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	User_Passkey_Request_Reply command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	User_Passkey_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the User\_Passkey\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.33 User Passkey Request Negative Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_User_Passkey_Request_Negative_Reply	0x002F	BD_ADDR	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The User\_Passkey\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command is used to reply to a User Passkey Request event and indicates the host could not provide a passkey. This command shall cause the initiating Link Manager to transmit an LMP\_Passkey\_Entry\_Failed PDU and terminate Simple Pairing.

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx X	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	User_Passkey_Request_Negative_Reply command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	User_Passkey_Request_Negative_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx X	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the User\_Passkey\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.34 Remote OOB Data Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Remote_OOB_Data_Request_Reply	0x0030	BD_ADDR, C, R	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Remote\_OOB\_Data\_Request\_Reply command is used to reply to a Remote OOB Data Request event with the C and R values received via an OOB transfer from a remote device identified by BD\_ADDR. If the R value is not present in the received OOB data from the remote device, the Host shall set R to zeros.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx X	BD_ADDR of remote device from which the C and R values were received

*C:* Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxx	Simple Pairing Hash C

*R:* Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxx	Simple Pairing Randomizer R

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Remote_OOB_Data_Request_Reply command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	Remote_OOB_Data_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**BD\_ADDR:****Size: 6 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxx X	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Remote\_OOB\_Data\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.35 Remote OOB Data Request Negative Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Remote_OOB_Data_Request_Negative_Reply	0x0033	BD_ADDR	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Remote\_OOB\_Data\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command is used to reply to a Remote OOB Data Request event that the Host does not have the C and R values associated with the remote device identified by BD\_ADDR.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Remote_OOB_Data_Request_Negative_Reply command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	Remote_OOB_Data_Request_Negative_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Remote\_OOB\_Data\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.36 IO Capability Request Negative Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_IO_Capability_Request_Negative_Reply	0x0034	BD_ADDR, Reason	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The IO\_Capability\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command shall be used to reject a pairing attempt after an HCI IO Capability Request event has been received by the Host. The reason for the rejection is given in the Reason parameter. Error code 0x37 (Simple Pairing not Supported by Host) shall not be used in the Reason parameter.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in the Simple Pairing process

*Reason*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Reason that Simple Pairing rejected. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	IO_Capability_Request_Negative_Reply command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	IO_Capability_Request_Negative_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in Simple Pairing process

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the IO\_Capability\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.1.37 Create Physical Link Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Create_Physical_Link	0x0035	Physical_Link_Handle, Dedicated_AMP_Key_Length, Dedicated_AMP_Key_Type, Dedicated_AMP_Key	

#### Description:

When this command is received by an AMP Controller, the AMP Controller shall initiate a connection to another AMP Controller. The AMP\_ASSOC used to create the physical link shall be written to the AMP Controller using the Write Remote AMP\_ASSOC command following the Create Physical Link command.

The Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Length parameter is used by the Host to indicate the number of valid octets of the Dedicated\_AMP\_Key. The AMP shall use the supplied key to generate a session key in order to encrypt all data on the indicated physical link. The method by which to do this is AMP type specific. The Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Type parameter indicates whether the key is an authenticated combination key, an unauthenticated combination key, or a debug combination key.

#### Command Parameters:

##### *Physical\_Link\_Handle*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical Link Handle identifying the physical link to be created (see <a href="#">Section 5.3.2</a> ).
0x00	Reserved

##### *Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Length*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0	Reserved
0xXX	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> .
33-255	Reserved

**Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Type:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Reserved
0x01	Reserved
0x02	Reserved
0x03	Debug combination keys
0x04	Unauthenticated combination key
0x05	Authenticated combination key
0x06	Reserved
0x07-0xFF	Reserved

**Dedicated\_AMP\_Key:****Size: AMP\_Key\_Length Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX...XX	Dedicated AMP Key for the associated AMP. The Dedicated AMP Key is a multi-octet integer.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the AMP Controller receives the Create Physical Link command, the AMP Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the AMP Controller has determined underlying connection details to populate the AMP\_ASSOC the AMP Controller shall generate a Channel Selected event to the Host. After the Channel Selected event is received the Host uses the Read Local AMP\_ASSOC command to obtain the capabilities and status of the local AMP. The AMP\_ASSOC is sent to the remote AMP to be used to perform a matching Accept Physical Link command. When the connection has been completed the AMP Controller on both devices that form the connection shall send a Physical Link Complete event to its Host. The Physical Link Complete event indicates to the Host whether the physical link creation was successful. This sequence must be completed before any Logical Links using this Controller can be created.

If the AMP physical link security establishment process fails (for instance, if the two AMP Controllers do not have matching keys) then the physical link shall be disconnected and the Physical Link Complete event shall be sent to the Host with the Authentication Failure error code see [Part D, Error Codes on page 379](#).

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the AMP Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Physical Link Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.38 Accept Physical Link Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Accept_Physical_Link	0x0036	Physical_Link_Handle, Dedicated_AMP_Key_Length, Dedicated_AMP_Key_Type, Dedicated_AMP_Key	

#### Description:

When this command is received by an AMP Controller, the AMP Controller shall attempt to accept a connection request from the initiating BR/EDR Controller's AMP Controller. The AMP\_ASSOC used to create the physical link shall be written to the AMP Controller using the Write\_Remote\_AMP\_ASSOC command after issuing the Accept\_Physical\_Link command.

The Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Length parameter is used by the Host to indicate the number of valid octets of the Dedicated\_AMP\_Key. The AMP shall use the Dedicated\_AMP\_Key for AMP type-specific security functions. The Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Type parameter indicates whether the key is an authenticated combination key, an unauthenticated combination key, or a debug combination key.

#### Command Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical Link Handle identifying the physical link to be created.

*Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Length*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Reserved
0xXX	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> .
33-255	Reserved

**Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Type**

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Reserved
0x01	Reserved
0x02	Reserved
0x03	Debug combination key
0x04	Authenticated combination key
0x05	Unauthenticated combination key
0x06	Reserved
0x07-0xFF	Reserved

**Dedicated\_AMP\_Key**

Size: Dedicated\_AMP\_Key\_Length Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX..XX	Dedicated AMP Key for the associated AMP. The Dedicated AMP Key is a multi-octet integer.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the AMP Controller receives the Accept Physical Link command, the AMP Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the connection has been completed, the AMP Controller shall send a Physical Link Complete event to the Host. The Physical Link Complete event indicates to the Host whether the link creation was successful. This sequence must be completed before any Logical Links can be created.

If communication is not established within the Connection Accept Timeout then a Physical Link Complete event shall be returned with a Status value of Connection Accept Timeout Exceeded (0X10).

If the AMP-specific security establishment process fails (for instance, if the two AMP Controllers do not have matching keys) then the physical link shall be deleted and the Physical Link Complete event sent to the Host with the Authentication Failure error code.

No Physical Link Complete event shall be sent before the security is established.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the AMP Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Physical Link Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.39 Disconnect Physical Link Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Disconnect_Physical_Link	0x0037	Physical_Link_Handle, Reason	

#### Description:

When the Disconnect\_Physical\_Link command is received by an AMP Controller, the AMP Controller shall terminate the AMP physical link indicated by the Physical\_Link\_Handle parameter. The Reason parameter indicates the reason for ending the connection. The remote AMP Controller will receive the Reason parameter in the Disconnection Physical Link Complete event.

All logical links on a physical link should be disconnected before the physical link is disconnected.

The Disconnect\_Physical\_Link command may be used to cancel the creation of a physical link, before the Physical Link Complete event for this link has been generated.

#### Command Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle identifying the physical link which has been created.

*Reason:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x05, 0x13-0x16, 0x1A	Authentication Failure error code (0x05), Other End Terminated Connection error codes (0x13-0x16), Unsupported Remote Feature error code (0x1A), see <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the AMP Controller receives the Disconnect Physical Link command, a Command Status event shall be sent to the Host. The Disconnection Physical Link Complete event occurs at both Hosts when the termination of the connection has completed, and indicates that this command has been completed.

The Disconnect Physical Link command may be used to cancel the creation of a physical link. In such a case, the Physical Link Complete event for the corresponding Create Physical Link or Accept Physical Link command shall always be sent. The Physical Link Complete event shall be sent after the Disconnection Physical Link Complete event, in the case the Controller has already issued a Command Status event for the Disconnect Physical Link command, thus treating it as a creation cancel. If the cancellation was successful, the Physical Link Complete event shall be generated with the error code Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02).

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the AMP Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Disconnection Physical Link Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.40 Create Logical Link Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Create_Logical_Link	0x0038	Physical_Link_Handle, Tx_Flow_Spec, Rx_Flow_Spec	

#### Description:

When the Create\_Logical\_Link command is received by an AMP Controller, the AMP Controller shall create a logical connection to the remote AMP Controller identified by the physical link handle.

The Flow\_Spec structures define the traffic requirements of the link. The Flow Spec ID values in the Tx/Rx parameters identify the logical link. Note: The Tx\_Flow\_Spec and Rx\_Flow\_Spec parameter only use 16 out of the 18 octets of the L2CAP Extended Flow Spec. The Type and Length fields from the L2CAP format are not included in the Tx\_Flow\_Spec and Rx\_Flow\_Spec parameters. A logical link can be created between two devices that are already joined by a physical link. In order to create a logical link the Create Logical Link command is called on one device (the initiating device) and the Accept Logical Link command is called on the other device (the responding device). The Flow\_Spec information must match for the two calls (see [\[Vol 3\] Part A, Section 5.6](#) and [Section 9.1](#)).

The AMP Controller may refuse to create the logical link if it has insufficient resources. If the AMP Controller is already in the process of creating one or more logical links, it may reject a Create Logical Link command with the error code "Busy" (see [Part D, Section 2.55, Controller Busy \(0X3A\)](#)). When the Host receives this error code, it shall wait until a previous logical link creation completes before requesting another logical link.

The logical link must be completed before the Logical Link Accept Timeout expires on the local AMP.

#### Command Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xFF	Physical Link Handle over which the logical link is to be established.

*Tx\_Flow\_Spec:* Size: 16 Octets

Parameter Description
Extended Flow Specification value defining transmitted traffic. See <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.6</a> .

**Rx\_Flow\_Spec:****Size: 16 Octets**

Parameter Description
Extended Flow Specification value defining received traffic. (See <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.6</a> ).

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the AMP Controller receives the Create Logical Link command, the AMP Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the AMP Controller determines the logical link is established, the AMP Controller shall send a Logical Link Complete event to each Host. The Logical Link Complete event contains the Logical Link Handle, Physical Link Handle, and the corresponding flow spec ID if this command is successful.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the AMP Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Logical Link Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.41 Accept Logical Link Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Accept_Logical_Link	0x0039	Physical_Link_Handle, Tx_Flow_Spec, Rx_Flow_Spec	

#### Description:

When the Accept\_Logical\_Link command is received by an AMP Controller, the AMP Controller shall attempt to accept a logical link with the remote AMP Controller identified by the Physical\_Link\_Handle.

The Flow\_Spec structures define the traffic requirements of the link. The Flow Spec ID in the Tx/Rx parameter values identify the logical link.

A logical link may be created between two devices which are already joined by a physical link. In order to create a logical link the Create Logical Link command is called on one device (the initiating device) and the Accept Logical Link command is called on the other device (the responding device). The Flow\_Spec information must match for the two calls. See [\[Vol 3\] Part A, Section 5.6](#) and [Section 9.1](#) for how this is achieved.

The AMP Controller may refuse to create the logical link if it has insufficient resources.

The logical link must be completed before the Logical Link Accept Timeout expires on the local AMP.

#### Command Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xFF	Physical Link Handle over which the logical link is to be established.

*Tx\_Flow\_Spec:* Size: 16 Octets

Parameter Description
Extended Flow Specification value defining transmitted traffic (see <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.6, Extended Flow Specification Option</a> ).

*Rx\_Flow\_Spec:* Size: 16 Octets

Parameter Description
Extended Flow Specification value defining received traffic (see <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.6, Extended Flow Specification Option</a> ).

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the AMP Controller receives the Accept Logical Link command, the AMP Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the AMP Controller determines the logical link is established, it shall send a Logical Link Complete event to each Host. This action shall occur on both controllers that form the connection. The Logical Link Complete event contains the Logical Link Handle if this command is successful.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the AMP Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Logical Link Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.42 Disconnect Logical Link Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Disconnect_Logical_Link	0x003A	Logical_Link_Handle	

#### Description:

When the Disconnect\_Logical\_Link command is received by an AMP Controller it shall terminate the designated logical link on the local Controller. The Logical\_Link\_Handle command parameter indicates which logical link is to be disconnected.

#### Command Parameters:

*Logical\_Link\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Logical_Link_Handle for the logical link being disconnected. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the AMP Controller receives the Disconnect Logical Link command it shall send the Command Status event to the Host. The Disconnection Logical Link Complete event shall be sent to the Host when the termination of the logical link has completed, and indicates that this command has been completed.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the AMP Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Disconnection Logical Link Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.43 Logical Link Cancel Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Logical_Link_Cancel	0x003B	Physical_Link_Handle, Tx_Flow_Spec_ID	Status, Physical_Link_Handle, Tx_Flow_Spec_ID

#### Description:

When the Logical\_Link\_Cancel command is received by an AMP Controller, the AMP Controller shall cancel the ongoing logical link creation process identified by the Physical\_Link\_Handle and the Tx\_Flow\_Spec\_ID.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Physical\_Link\_Handle:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle over which the logical link is to be established.

##### Tx\_Flow\_Spec\_ID:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Flow Spec ID identifying the logical link whose creation is being cancelled. This matches the ID field of the Tx_Flow_Spec in the matching Create or Accept Logical Link command.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Logical Link Cancel command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Logical Link Cancel command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for list of error codes.

##### Physical\_Link\_Handle:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical Link Handle identifying the logical link creation being cancelled.

**Tx\_Flow\_Spec\_ID:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Flow Spec ID identifying the logical link creation being cancelled. This matches the ID field of the Tx_Flow_Spec in the matching Create or Accept Logical Link command.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Logical Link Cancel command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

If the logical link is already established by the Controller, but the AMP Controller has not yet sent the Logical Link Complete event, then the local Controller shall detach the logical link and return a Command Complete event with the status "Success".

If the logical link is already established, and the Logical Link Complete event has been sent, then the AMP Controller shall return a Command Complete event with the error code ACL Connection already exists (0x0B).

If the Logical Link Cancel command is sent to the AMP Controller without a preceding Create or Accept Logical Link command to the same device, the Controller shall return a Command Complete event with the error code Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02).

The Logical Link Complete event for the corresponding Create Logical Link Command shall always be sent. The Logical Link Complete event shall be sent after the Command Complete event for the Logical Link Cancel command. If the cancellation was successful, the Logical Link Complete event shall be generated with the error code Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02).

### 7.1.44 Flow Spec Modify Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Flow_Spec_Modify	0x003C	Handle, Tx_Flow_Spec, Rx_Flow_Spec	

#### Description:

When the Flow\_Spec\_Modify command is received by an AMP Controller, the AMP Controller shall modify the Flow Spec of the logical connection identified by the Handle.

Matching commands will be issued on both devices. This ensures that both Controllers have full knowledge of the traffic requirements on this logical link, in both directions. Each Controller is responsible for meeting its own Tx Flow specification.

The Flow\_Spec\_Modify command cannot be used to change the Identifier or the Service Type fields of an existing Handle's Flow Spec.

#### Command Parameters:

*Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle if the receiving Controller is a BR/EDR Controller. Logical_Link_Handle, if the receiving Controller is an AMP Controller, identifying the logical link to be changed. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Tx\_Flow\_Spec:* Size: 16 Octets

Parameter Description
Extended Flow Specification value defining transmitted traffic (see <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.6, Extended Flow Specification Option</a> ).

*Rx\_Flow\_Spec:* Size: 16 Octets

Parameter Description
Extended Flow Specification value defining received traffic (see <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.6</a> ).

#### Return Parameters:

*None.*

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the AMP Controller receives the Flow Spec Modify command, the AMP Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When each AMP Controller has completed the change a Flow Spec Modify Complete event shall be sent to the Host. If the modify fails, the controllers shall revert to previously specified values.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the AMP Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Flow Spec Modify Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.45 Enhanced Setup Synchronous Connection Command

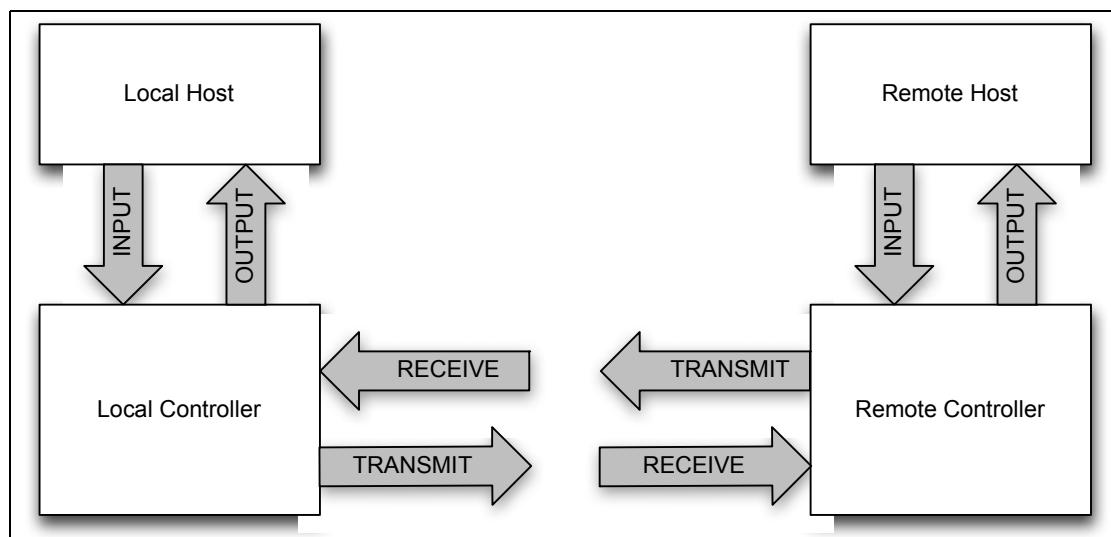
Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Enhanced_Setup_Synchronous_Connection	0x003D	Connection_Handle, Transmit_Bandwidth, Receive_Bandwidth, Transmit_Coding_Format, Receive_Coding_Format, Transmit_Codec_Frame_Size, Receive_Codec_Frame_Size, Input_Bandwidth, Output_Bandwidth, Input_Coding_Format, Output_Coding_Format, Input_Coded_Data_Size, Output_Coded_Data_Size, Input_PCM_Data_Format, Output_PCM_Data_Format, Input_PCM_Sample_Payload_MSB_Position, Output_PCM_Sample_Payload_MSB_Position, Input_Data_Path, Output_Data_Path, Input_Transport_Unit_Size, Output_Transport_Unit_Size, Max_Latency, Packet_Type, Retransmission_Effort	

#### Description:

The Enhanced\_Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command adds a new, or modifies an existing, synchronous logical transport (SCO or eSCO) on a physical link depending on the Connection\_Handle parameter specified. If the Connection\_Handle refers to an ACL link, then a new synchronous logical transport shall be added. If the Connection\_Handle refers to an existing synchronous logical transport (eSCO only), then this link shall be modified. The parameters are specified per connection. This synchronous connection can be used to transfer synchronous voice data or transparent synchronous data. If the ACL link has encryption enabled using AES-CCM and the Controller cannot establish an eSCO transport (e.g. the Host parameters restricting the packet types to SCO packet types), Error code 0x0E (*Connection Rejected Due to Security Reasons*) shall be returned and a SCO transport will not be established.

When used to setup a new synchronous logical transport, the Connection\_Handle parameter shall specify an ACL connection with which the new synchronous connection shall be associated. The other parameters relate to the negotiation of the link, and may be reconfigured during the lifetime of the link.

The following terms are used to describe the four different audio paths: Transmit, Receive, Input and Output. The Transmit and Receive paths are from the perspective of the local Controller's radio. The Input and Output paths are from the perspective of the Controller.



The following parameters are used to describe the transmit and receive paths over the air:

- The Transmit\_Bandwidth and Receive\_Bandwidth parameters specify how much bandwidth shall be available for transmitting and for receiving data. The Host shall set the Transmit\_Bandwidth and Receive\_Bandwidth parameters to be equal or shall set one of them to be zero and the other non-zero.
- The Transmit\_Coding\_Format and Receive\_Coding\_Format parameters specify the coding format used for transmitted or received data. The Host shall set the Transmit\_Coding\_Format and Receive\_Coding\_Formats to be equal. Note: When the Transmit\_Coding\_Format and Receive\_Coding\_Format parameters are not equal to CVSD, A-law or u-law, the Link Manager shall map these to Transparent air mode.
- The Transmit\_Codec\_Frame\_Size and Receive\_Codec\_Frame\_Size parameters specify the frame size produced by the codecs in the context of over-the-air coding. The over-the-air packet size should have the following relationship with the codec frame size:

$$\text{Packet\_Size} = \text{Frame\_Size} * N, \text{ or}$$

$$\text{Packet\_Size} = \text{Frame\_Size} / N$$

where N is an integer.

The following parameters are used to describe the coding format used prior to encapsulating over the audio data transport path:

- The Input\_Bandwidth and Output\_Bandwidth specify the nominal rate at which the Host or Controller transfers data. Note: For HCI transports this excludes the HCI header. The Host shall either set the Input\_Data\_Rate and Output\_Data\_Rate to be equal, or shall set one of them to be zero and the other non-zero.
- The Input\_Coding\_Format and Output\_Coding\_Format parameters specify the coding format used over the transport. The Host shall set the Input\_Coding\_Format and Output\_Coding\_Format to be equal.
- The Input\_Coded\_Data\_Size and Output\_Coded\_Data\_Size specify the number of bits in each sample or frame of data. For CVSD, a frame of data shall be 8 bits.
- The Input\_PCM\_Data\_Format and Output\_PCM\_Data\_Format parameters specify the data format over the transport for linear samples. It is ignored when the data is encoded in any other way.
- The Input\_PCM\_Sample\_Payload\_MSB\_Position and Output\_PCM\_Sample\_Payload\_MSB\_Position parameters indicate, for linear samples, how many bit positions that the MSB of the sample is away from starting at the MSB of the data. It is ignored when the data is encoded in any other way. For example, if Input\_Coded\_Data\_Size =16 and Input\_PCM\_Sample\_Payload\_MSB\_Position = 3, then each sample is actually only 13 bits, the MSB (which is the sign bit for signed formats) is bit 12 (counting from the LSB at bit 0), and the contents of bits 13, 14, and 15 of each sample are ignored.

The following parameters describe the audio data transport path characteristics:

- The Input\_Data\_Path and Output\_Data\_Path parameters specify the audio data transport path. When set to 0x00, the audio data path shall be over the HCI transport. When set to 0xFF, audio test mode (see [Vol 2, Part E, Section 7.6.2](#)) is selected. Note: This is only applicable during test mode. When set to 0x01-0xFE, the audio data path shall use non-HCI transport data paths (e.g. PCM interface) with logical transport channel numbers. The meanings of these logical transport channel numbers are vendor specific.
- The Input\_Transport\_Unit\_Size and Output\_Transport\_Unit\_Size indicate how many bits are in each unit of data delivered by the audio data transport. Except for HCI, the meaning of “unit” depends on the host transport used and, therefore, is vendor specific (for example, on a PCM transport this should indicate the number of bits transported per sync pulse, and would normally be 8 or 16). The Host shall set the Input\_Transport\_Unit\_Size and Output\_Transport\_Unit\_Size to be equal. For HCI host transport the Host shall set them to 0.

The following parameters are used by the Link Manager to negotiate the synchronous transport:

- The Max\_Latency parameter specifies an upper limit to the time in milliseconds between the eSCO (or SCO) instants, plus the size of the retransmission window, plus the length of the reserved synchronous slots for this logical transport.
- The Packet\_Type parameter is a bitmap specifying which synchronous packet types may be used by the Link Manager in the negotiation of the link parameters. Multiple packet types are specified by bitwise OR of the packet type codes in the table. At least one packet type shall be specified for each negotiation. It is recommended to enable as many packet types as possible. Note: It is allowed to enable packet types that are not supported by the local device.
- The Retransmission\_Effort parameter specifies the extra resources that are allocated to this connection if a packet may need to be retransmitted. The Retransmission\_Effort parameter shall be set to indicate the required behavior, or to “Don’t care”.

The following restrictions shall apply:

- Either both the Transmit\_Coding\_Format and Input\_Coding\_Format shall be “transparent” or neither shall be. If both are “transparent”, the Transmit\_Bandwidth and the Input\_Bandwidth shall be the same and the controller shall not modify the data sent to the remote device.
- Either both the Receive\_Coding\_Format and Output\_Coding\_Format shall be “transparent” or neither shall be. If both are “transparent”, the Receive\_Bandwidth and the Output\_Bandwidth shall be the same and the Controller shall not modify the data sent to the Host.

A Connection\_Handle for the new synchronous connection will be returned in the Synchronous Connection Complete event if the command is used to set up a new synchronous connection.

When used to modify an existing synchronous logical transport, only the Packet\_Type, Retransmission\_Effort and Max\_Latency parameters may be modified.

Note: The Link Manager may choose any combination of packet types, timing, and retransmission window sizes that satisfy the parameters given. This may be achieved by using more frequent transmissions of smaller packets. The link manager may choose to set up either a SCO or an eSCO connection, if the parameters allow, using the corresponding LMP sequences.

Note: To modify a SCO connection, use the Change\_Connection\_Packet\_Type command.

Note: If the lower layers cannot achieve the exact transmit and receive bandwidth requested subject to the other parameters, or cannot achieve the transcoding or resampling implied by the parameters, then the link creation or

link modification shall be rejected. A synchronous connection may only be created when an ACL connection already exists and when it is not in Park state.

The data at the audio data transport interface shall be treated as a stream of bits. The bits in each unit of data delivered by the transport shall be taken LSB first, and the units shall be taken in the order of delivery. The samples, encoded samples, frames, or other entity to be transcoded for transmission, or that has been transcoded after reception, shall be taken in the order of transmission or reception, with each entity taken LSB first.

For example, if the audio data transport uses 16 bit units and the Input or Output coding format is A-law, each unit represents two samples with the first in the 8 least significant bits and the second in the 8 most significant bits. Similarly, if the audio data transport uses 8 bit units and the Input or Output coding format is linear PCM with a size of 16 bits, the 8 least significant bits of each sample are transmitted first.

### **Command Parameters:**

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Connection Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000 – 0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Transmit\_Bandwidth:* *Size: 4 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00000000 – 0xFFFFFFFF	Transmit bandwidth in octets per second.
0xFFFFFFFF	Don't care

*Receive\_Bandwidth:* *Size: 4 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00000000 – 0xFFFFFFFF	Receive bandwidth in octets per second.
0xFFFFFFFF	Don't care

*Transmit\_Coding\_Format:* *Size: 5 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
Octet 0	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Coding_Format
Octets 1-4	Octet 1-2: Company ID, see Assigned Numbers for Company Identifier Octet 3-4: Vendor specific codec ID.  Shall be ignored if octet 0 of Transmit_Coding_Format is not 0xFF.

*Receive\_Coding\_Format:*

Size: 5 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Octet 0	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Coding_Format
Octets 1-4	Octet 1-2: Company ID, see <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Company Identifier. Octet 3-4: Vendor specific codec ID. Shall be ignored if octet 0 of Receive_Coding_Format is not 0xFF.

*Transmit\_Codec\_Frame\_Size:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Range: 0x0001-0xFFFF, the actual size of the over-the-air encoded frame in octets.
0x0000	Reserved

*Receive\_Codec\_Frame\_Size:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Range: 0x0001-0xFFFF, the actual size of the over-the-air encoded frame in octets.
0x0000	Reserved

*Input\_Bandwidth:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Host to Controller nominal data rate in octets per second.

*Output\_Bandwidth:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Controller to Host nominal data rate in octets per second.

*Input\_Coding\_Format:*

Size: 5 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Octet 0	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Coding_Format
Octets 1-4	Octet 1-2: Company ID, see <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Company Identifier. Octet 3-4: Vendor specific codec ID. Shall be ignored if octet 0 of Input_Coding_Format is not 0xFF.

*Output\_Coding\_Format:*

Size: 5 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
Octet 0	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Coding_Format
Octets 1-4	Octet 1-2: Company ID, see <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Company Identifier. Octet 3-4: Vendor specific codec ID. Shall be ignored if octet 0 of Output_Coding_Format is not 0xFF.

*Input\_Coded\_Data\_Size:*

Size: 2 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Size, in bits, of the sample or framed data

*Output\_Coded\_Data\_Size:*

Size: 2 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Size, in bits, of the sample or framed data

*Input\_PCM\_Data\_Format:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for PCM_Data_Format

*Output\_PCM\_Data\_Format:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for PCM_Data_Format

*Input\_PCM\_Sample\_Payload\_MSB\_Position:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	The number of bit positions within an audio sample that the MSB of the sample is away from starting at the MSB of the data.

*Output\_PCM\_Sample\_Payload\_MSB\_Position:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	The number of bit positions within an audio sample that the MSB of the sample is away from starting at the MSB of the data.

*Input\_Data\_Path:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	HCI
0x01-0xFE	Logical_Channel_Number. The meaning of the logical channels will be vendor specific.
0xFF	Audio test mode

*Output\_Data\_Path:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	HCI
0x01-0xFE	Logical_Channel_Number. The meaning of the logical channels will be vendor specific.
0xFF	Audio test mode

*Input\_Transport\_Unit\_Size:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
1 to 255	The number of bits in each unit of data received from the Host over the audio data transport.
0	Not applicable (implied by the choice of audio data transport)

*Output\_Transport\_Unit\_Size:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
1 to 255	The number of bits in each unit of data sent to the Host over the audio data transport.
0	Not applicable (implied by the choice of audio data transport)

*Max\_Latency:*

Size: 2 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0000 – 0x0003	Reserved
0x0004 – 0xFFFF	The value in milliseconds representing the upper limit of the sum of the synchronous interval, and the size of the eSCO window, where the eSCO window is the reserved slots plus the retransmission window. (See <a href="#">Figure 8.9 in Part B, Baseband Specification</a> )
0xFFFF	Don't care.

**Packet\_Type:**

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0001	HV1 may be used
0x0002	HV2 may be used
0x0004	HV3 may be used
0x0008	EV3 may be used
0x0010	EV4 may be used
0x0020	EV5 may be used
0x0040	2-EV3 shall not be used
0x0080	3-EV3 shall not be used
0x0100	2-EV5 shall not be used
0x0200	3-EV5 shall not be used
0x0400	Reserved for future use
0x0800	Reserved for future use
0x1000	Reserved for future use
0x2000	Reserved for future use
0x4000	Reserved for future use
0x8000	Reserved for future use

Note: 0x003F means all packet types may be used.

**Retransmission\_Effort:**

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No retransmission
0x01	At least one retransmission, optimize for power consumption
0x02	At least one retransmission, optimize for link quality
0x03-0xFE	Reserved
0xFF	Don't care

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Enhanced\_Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command, it shall send the Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the LM determines that the connection is established, the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Synchronous Connection Complete event to the local Host, and the remote Controller will send a Synchronous Connection Complete event or a Connection Complete event to the remote Host. The Synchronous Connection Complete event contains the Connection\_Handle if this command is successful.

This command cannot be used to change the parameters of an SCO link.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the local BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Synchronous Connection Complete event (for a new connection setup) or Synchronous Connection Changed event (for modifying an existing synchronous link) will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.46 Enhanced Accept Synchronous Connection Request Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Enhanced_Accept_Synchronous_Connection_Request	0x003E	BD_ADDR, Transmit_Bandwidth, Receive_Bandwidth, Transmit_Coding_Format, Receive_Coding_Format, Transmit_Codec_Frame_Size, Receive_Codec_Frame_Size, Input_Bandwidth, Output_Bandwidth, Input_Coding_Format, Output_Coding_Format, Input_Coded_Data_Size, Output_Coded_Data_Size, Input_PCM_Data_Format, Output_PCM_Data_Format, Input_PCM_Sample_Payload_MSB_Position, Output_PCM_Sample_Payload_MSB_Position, Input_Data_Path, Output_Data_Path, Input_Transport_Unit_Size, Output_Transport_Unit_Size, Max_Latency, Packet_Type, Retransmission_Effort	

#### Description:

The Enhanced\_Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request command is used to accept an incoming request for a synchronous connection and to present the local Link Manager with the acceptable parameter values for the synchronous connection. This command shall only be issued after a Connection\_Request event, with link type SCO or eSCO, has occurred. A Connection\_Request event contains the BD\_ADDR of the device requesting the connection. The command to accept a connection must be received by the Controller before the connection accept timeout expires on the local device.

The parameter set of the Enhanced\_Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request command is the same as for the Enhanced\_Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command except for the Connection\_Handle in the Enhanced\_Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command, which is replaced by

the BD\_ADDR in the Enhanced\_Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request command. Please refer to [Section 7.1.45](#) for their descriptions.

If the Link Type of the incoming request is SCO, then the Retransmission Effort parameter shall be ignored.

If the Connection\_Request event is masked away, the BR/EDR Controller will automatically reject it. A Controller shall not be configured to auto accept a synchronous connection.

If the ACL link has encryption enabled using AES-CCM and the Controller cannot establish an eSCO transport (e.g. the Host parameters restricting the packet types to SCO packet types), Error code 0x0E (*Connection Rejected Due to Security Reasons*) shall be returned and a SCO transport will not be established.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the device requesting the connection

*Transmit\_Bandwidth:* Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000 – 0xFFFFFFF	Transmit bandwidth in octets per second.
0xFFFFFFFF	Don't care

*Receive\_Bandwidth:* Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000 – 0xFFFFFFF	Receive bandwidth in octets per second.
0xFFFFFFFF	Don't care

*Transmit\_Coding\_Format:* Size: 5 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Octet 0	See Assigned Numbers for Coding_Format
Octets 1-4	Octet 1-2: Company ID, see <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Company Identifier. Octet 3-4: Vendor specific codec ID.  Shall be ignored if octet 0 of Transmit_Coding_Format is not 0xFF.

*Receive\_Coding\_Format:*

Size: 5 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Octet 0	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Coding_Format
Octets 1-4	Octet 1-2: Company ID, see <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Company Identifier. Octet 3-4: Vendor specific codec ID.  Shall be ignored if octet 0 of Receive_Coding_Format is not 0xFF.

*Transmit\_Codec\_Frame\_Size:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Range: 0x0001-0xFFFF, the actual size of the over-the-air encoded frame in octets.
0x0000	Reserved

*Receive\_Codec\_Frame\_Size:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Range: 0x0001-0xFFFF, the actual size of the over-the-air encoded frame in octets.
0x0000	Reserved

*Input\_Bandwidth:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX	Host to Controller nominal data rate in octets per second.

*Output\_Bandwidth:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX	Controller to Host nominal data rate in octets per second.

*Input\_Coding\_Format:*

Size: 5 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Octet 0	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Coding_Format
Octets 1-4	Octet 1-2: Company ID, see <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Company Identifier. Octet 3-4: Vendor specific codec ID.  Shall be ignored if octet 0 of Input_Coding_Format is not 0xFF.

*Output\_Coding\_Format:*

Size: 5 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Octet 0	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Coding_Format
Octets 1-4	Octet 1-2: Company ID, see <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Company Identifier. Octet 3-4: Vendor specific codec ID. Shall be ignored if octet 0 of Output_Coding_Format is not 0xFF.

*Input\_Coded\_Data\_Size:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Size, in bits, of the sample or framed data

*Output\_Coded\_Data\_Size:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Size, in bits, of the sample or framed data

*Input\_PCM\_Data\_Format:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for PCM_Data_Format

*Output\_PCM\_Data\_Format:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	See <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for PCM_Data_Format

*Input\_PCM\_Sample\_Payload\_MSB\_Position:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	The number of bit positions within an audio sample that the MSB of the sample is away from starting at the MSB of the data.

*Output\_PCM\_Sample\_Payload\_MSB\_Position:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	The number of bit positions within an audio sample that the MSB of the sample is away from starting at the MSB of the data.

*InputData\_Path:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	HCI
0x01-0xFE	Logical_Channel_Number. The meaning of the logical channels will be vendor specific.
0xFF	Audio test mode

*Output\_Data\_Path:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	HCI
0x01-0xFE	Logical_Channel_Number. The meaning of the logical channels will be vendor specific.
0xFF	Audio test mode

*Input\_Transport\_Unit\_Size:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
1 to 255	The number of bits in each unit of data received from the Host over the audio data transport.
0	Not applicable (implied by the choice of audio data transport)

*Output\_Transport\_Unit\_Size:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
1 to 255	The number of bits in each unit of data sent to the Host over the audio data transport.
0	Not applicable (implied by the choice of audio data transport)

*Max\_Latency:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000 – 0x0003	Reserved
0x0004 – 0xFFFF	The value in milliseconds representing the upper limit of the sum of the synchronous interval, and the size of the eSCO window, where the eSCO window is the reserved slots plus the retransmission window. (See Baseband Specification <a href="#">Figure 8.9 on page 180</a> )
0xFFFF	Don't care.

**Packet\_Type:**

Size: 2 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	HV1 may be used
0x0002	HV2 may be used
0x0004	HV3 may be used
0x0008	EV3 may be used
0x0010	EV4 may be used
0x0020	EV5 may be used
0x0040	2-EV3 shall not be used
0x0080	3-EV3 shall not be used
0x0100	2-EV5 shall not be used
0x0200	3-EV5 shall not be used
0x0400	Reserved for future use
0x0800	Reserved for future use
0x1000	Reserved for future use
0x2000	Reserved for future use
0x4000	Reserved for future use
0x8000	Reserved for future use

Note: 0x003F means all packet types may be used.

**Retransmission\_Effort:**

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	No retransmission
0x01	At least one retransmission, optimize for power consumption
0x02	At least one retransmission, optimize for link quality
0x03-0xFE	Reserved
0xFF	Don't care

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

The Enhanced\_Accept\_Synchronous\_Request command requests the local BR/EDR Controller to start setting up the connection. When this action commences, the Command Status event shall be sent by the BR/EDR Controller. When the link setup is complete, the BR/EDR Controller shall send a Synchronous Connection Complete event to its Host, and the remote BR/EDR Controller will send a Connection Complete event, or a Synchronous Connection Complete event, to its Host. The Synchronous Connection Complete will contain the Connection\_Handle and the link parameters if the setup is successful.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the local Controller as the result of this command. Instead, the Synchronous Connection Complete or Connection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.47 Truncated Page Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Truncated_Page	0x003F	BD_ADDR, Page_Scan_Repetition_Mode, Clock_Offset	

#### Description:

The Truncated\_Page command is used to page the BR/EDR Controller with the specified BD\_ADDR and then abort the paging sequence after an ID response has been received. See [Vol 2] Part B, Section 8.3.3 for additional information.

The Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode parameter specifies the page scan repetition mode supported by the remote BR/EDR Controller with the BD\_ADDR. This is the information that was acquired during the inquiry process.

The Clock\_Offset parameter is the difference between the local BR/EDR Controller's own clock and the clock of the remote BR/EDR Controller with BD\_ADDR. Only bits 2 through 16 of the difference are used, and they are mapped to this parameter as bits 0 through 14 respectively. A Clock\_Offset\_Valid\_Flag, located in bit 15 of the Clock\_Offset parameter, indicates if the Clock Offset is valid or not.

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device to page

##### Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	R0
0x01	R1
0x02	R2
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved.

***Clock\_Offset:*****Size: 2 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
Bits 14-0	Bits 16-2 of CLKNslave-CLK
Bit 15	0 = Clock_Offset is invalid 1 = Clock_Offset is valid

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Truncated\_Page command the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the Truncated Page procedure has completed, the BR/EDR Controller shall send a Truncated Page Complete event to the Host.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Truncated Page Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.48 Truncated Page Cancel Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Truncated_Page_Cancel	0x0040	BD_ADDR	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Truncated\_Page\_Cancel command is used to request cancellation of an ongoing Truncated\_Page process previously started by a Truncated\_Page command.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the device to which the Truncated Page command was previously issued and that is the subject of the cancellation request.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Truncated_Page_Cancel command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Truncated_Page_Cancel command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the device to which the Truncated Page command was previously issued before and that is the subject of the cancellation request.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Truncated\_Page\_Cancel command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

If the truncated page procedure has already completed, but the BR/EDR Controller has not yet sent the Truncated Page Complete event, then the local device shall return a Command Complete event with status “Success”.

If the Truncated Page Cancel command is sent to the BR/EDR Controller without an outstanding Truncated Page Command to the same device, the BR/EDR Controller shall return a Command Complete event with the error code Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02). Note that from the BR/EDR Controller perspective this is identical to the situation where the Truncated Page Command has already completed and the Truncated Page Complete event already sent.

### 7.1.49 Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast	0x0041	Enable, LT_ADDR, LPO_Allowed, Packet_Type, Interval_Min, Interval_Max, CSB_supervisionTO	Status, LT_ADDR, Interval

#### Description:

The Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast command controls the Connectionless Slave Broadcast functionality in the BR/EDR Controller. Connectionless slave broadcast mode may be enabled or disabled by the Enable parameter. If this command is issued with Enable = 0, and the **synchronization train** substate is active, then the Controller shall also exit the **synchronization train** substate.

The LT\_ADDR indicated in the Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast shall be pre-allocated using the HCI\_Set\_Reserved\_LT\_ADDR command. If the LT\_ADDR has not been reserved, the *Unknown Connection Identifier* (0x02) error code shall be returned. If the controller is unable to reserve sufficient bandwidth for the requested activity, the *Connection Rejected Due to Limited Resources* (0x0D) error code shall be returned.

The LPO\_Allowed parameter informs the BR/EDR Controller whether it is allowed to sleep.

The Packet\_Type parameter specifies which packet types are allowed. The Host shall either enable BR packet types only, or shall enable EDR and DM1 packet types only.

The Interval\_Min and Interval\_Max parameters specify the range from which the BR/EDR Controller must select the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Interval. The selected Interval is returned.

#### Command Parameters:

*Enable:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Disabled
0x01	Enabled
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*LT\_ADDR:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR used for Connectionless Slave Broadcast
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*LPO\_Allowed:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	BR/EDR Controller shall not sleep (that is, clock accuracy shall be equal to or better than ± 20 ppm)
0x01	BR/EDR Controller may sleep (that is, clock accuracy shall be equal to or better than ± 250 ppm)
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Packet\_Type:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	Reserved for future use
0x0002	2-DH1 may not be used
0x0004	3-DH1 may not be used
0x0008	DM1 may be used
0x0010	DH1 may be used
0x0020	Reserved for future use
0x0040	Reserved for future use
0x0080	Reserved for future use
0x0100	2-DH3 may not be used
0x0200	3-DH3 may not be used
0x0400	DM3 may be used
0x0800	DH3 may be used
0x1000	2-DH5 may not be used
0x2000	3-DH5 may not be used
0x4000	DM5 may be used
0x8000	DH5 may be used

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification**Interval\_Min:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Minimum interval between Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets in slots. Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

*Interval\_Max:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Maximum interval between Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets in slots. Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

*CSB\_supervisionTO:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Duration in slots after which the BR/EDR Controller reports a Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout event if it is unable to transmit a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet. Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

**Return Parameters:***Status:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions.

*LT\_ADDR:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR used for Connectionless Slave Broadcast
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Interval:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Actual interval between Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets in slots. Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

If the BR/EDR Controller is unable to transmit a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet for *CSB\_supervisionTO slots*, it shall generate a Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout event.

### 7.1.50 Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast_Receive	0x0042	Enable, BD_ADDR, LT_ADDR, Interval, Clock_Offset, Next_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast_Clock, CSB_supervisionTO, Remote_Timing_Accuracy, Skip, Packet_Type, AFH_Channel_Map	Status, BD_ADDR, LT_ADDR

#### Description:

The Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast\_Receive command controls the reception of Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets in the BR/EDR Controller of a Connectionless Slave Broadcast slave. If the Enable parameter is set to Disabled, the BR/EDR Controller does not attempt to receive Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets. If the Enable parameter is set to Enabled, the BR/EDR Controller starts attempting to receive Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets on the specified LT\_ADDR.

The Interval parameter specifies the interval of the Connectionless Slave Broadcast to be used by the BR/EDR Controller.

The Skip parameter specifies the number of consecutive Connectionless Slave Broadcast instants which the receiver may skip after successfully receiving a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet.

The Packet\_Type parameter specifies which packet types are allowed. The Host shall either enable BR packet types only or shall enable EDR and DM1 packet types only.

The AFH\_Channel\_Map parameter is the AFH channel map used by the master for the PBD logical link, and is obtained by the slave's Host from the Synchronization Train Received event.

**Command Parameters:***Enable:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Disabled
0x01	Enabled
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*BD\_ADDR:*

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Connectionless Slave Broadcast transmitter

*LT\_ADDR:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR to use for receiving Connectionless Slave Broadcast messages
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Interval:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXXX	Interval between Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets instants in slots. Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

*Clock\_Offset:*

Size: 4 Octets (28 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXX	(CLK <sub>N</sub> slave – CLK) modulo 2 <sup>28</sup>

*Next\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast\_Clock:* Size: 4 Octets (28 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXX	CLK for next Connectionless Slave Broadcast instant

*CSB\_supervisionTO:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXXX	Duration in slots to continue listening for Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets after the last successfully received Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet. Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification**Remote\_Timing\_Accuracy:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXX	Timing accuracy of the master in ppm. Typical values are 20ppm and 250ppm.

*Skip:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXX	Number of Connectionless Slave Broadcast instants to skip after successfully receiving a Broadcast packet.

*Packet\_Type:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	Reserved for future use
0x0002	2-DH1 may not be used
0x0004	3-DH1 may not be used
0x0008	DM1 may be used
0x0010	DH1 may be used
0x0020	Reserved for future use
0x0040	Reserved for future use
0x0080	Reserved for future use
0x0100	2-DH3 may not be used
0x0200	3-DH3 may not be used
0x0400	DM3 may be used
0x0800	DH3 may be used
0x1000	2-DH5 may not be used
0x2000	3-DH5 may not be used
0x4000	DM5 may be used
0x8000	DH5 may be used

*AFH\_Channel\_Map:**Size: 10 Octets (79 Bits Meaningful)*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XXXXXXXXX XXXXXX XX	This parameter contains 80 1-bit fields.  The $n^{th}$ such field (in the range 0 to 78) contains the value for channel $n$ :  Channel $n$ is bad = 0 Channel $n$ is unknown = 1  The most significant bit (bit 79) is reserved and shall be set to 0

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast_Receive command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast_Receive command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR:**Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Connectionless Slave Broadcast transmitter

*LT\_ADDR:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR used for receiving Connectionless Slave Broadcast messages
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast\_Receive command has been received, a Command Complete event shall be generated. Completion of the Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast\_Receive command does not require reception of a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet. If the BR/EDR Controller does not receive a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet for CSB\_supervisionTO slots, it shall generate a Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout event.

### 7.1.51 Start Synchronization Train Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Start_Synchronization_Train	0x0043	None	

#### Description:

The Start\_Synchronization\_Train command controls the Synchronization Train functionality in the BR/EDR Controller. Connectionless slave broadcast mode must be enabled on the BR/EDR Controller before this command may be used. If connectionless slave broadcast mode is not enabled, the Command Disallowed (0x0C) error code shall be returned. After receiving this command and returning a Command Status event, the Baseband starts attempting to send synchronization train packets containing information related to the enabled Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet timing.

Note: The AFH\_Channel\_Map used in the synchronization train packets is configured by the Set\_AFH\_Channel\_Classification command and the local channel classification in the BR/EDR Controller.

The synchronization train packets will be sent using the parameters specified by the latest Write\_Synchronization\_Train\_Parameters command. The Synchronization Train will continue until *synchronization\_trainTO* slots (as specified in the last Write\_Synchronization\_Train command) have passed or until the Host disables the Connectionless Slave Broadcast logical transport.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

None

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Start\_Synchronization\_Train command, it shall send a Command Status event to the Host.

Note: No Command Complete event shall be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead the Synchronization Train Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.52 Receive Synchronization Train Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Receive_Synchronization_Train	0x0044	BD_ADDR, synchronization_scanTO, Sync_Scan_Window, Sync_Scan_Interval	

#### Description:

The Receive\_Synchronization\_Train command requests synchronization with the specified Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter. The Sync\_Scan\_Window parameter specifies the duration of each scan and the Sync\_Scan\_Interval parameter specifies the interval between the start of consecutive scan windows. A Synchronization\_Train\_Received event shall be sent if a synchronization train packet is received with a non-zero Connectionless Slave Broadcast LT\_ADDR or if the BR/EDR Controller fails to receive a synchronization train packet for *synchronization\_scanTO slots*.

#### Command Parameters:

##### *BD\_ADDR*:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Connectionless Slave Broadcast transmitter

##### *synchronization\_scanTO*:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Duration in slots to search for the synchronization train Range: 0x0022-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

##### *Sync\_Scan\_Window*:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Duration in slots to listen for a synchronization train packet on a single frequency Range: 0x0022-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

##### *Sync\_Scan\_Interval*:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Duration in slots between the start of consecutive scan windows Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Receive\_Synchronization\_Train command, it shall send a Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the BR/EDR Controller receives, or fails to receive within the duration specified by *synchronization\_scanTO*, the synchronization train from the Connectionless Slave Broadcast transmitter, it shall send a Synchronization Train Received event to the Host.

Note: No Command Complete event shall be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead the Synchronization Train Received event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.1.53 Remote OOB Extended Data Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Remote_OOB_Extended_Data_Request_Reply	0x0045	BD_ADDR, C_192, R_192, C_256, R_256	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Remote\_OOB\_Extended\_Data\_Request\_Reply command is used to reply to a Remote OOB Data Request event with the C and R values derived with the P-192 public key and the C and R values associated with the P-256 public key received via an OOB transfer from a remote device identified by BD\_ADDR. If the C\_192 and R\_192 values are not present in the received OOB data from the remote device, the Host shall set C\_192 and R\_192 to zeros. If the C\_256 and R\_256 values are not present in the received OOB data from the remote device, the Host shall set C\_256 and R\_256 to zeros.

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxx X	BD_ADDR of remote device from which the C and R values were received

##### C\_192:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxx XXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXX	Simple Pairing Hash C derived from the P-192 public key.

##### R\_192:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxx XXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXX	Simple Pairing Randomizer associated with the P-192 public key.

**C\_256:***Size: 16 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX	Simple Pairing Hash C derived from the P-256 public key.

**R\_256:***Size: 16 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX	Simple Pairing Randomizer associated with the P-256 public key.

**Return Parameters:****Status:***Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Remote_OOB_Extended_Data_Request_Reply command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Remote_OOB_Extended_Data_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**BD\_ADDR:***Size: 6 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX X	BD_ADDR of remote device from which the C and R values were received

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Remote\_OOB\_Extended\_Data\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

## 7.2 LINK POLICY COMMANDS

The Link Policy Commands provide methods for the Host to affect how the Link Manager manages the piconet. When Link Policy Commands are used, the LM still controls how Bluetooth piconets and scatternets are established and maintained, depending on adjustable policy parameters. These policy commands modify the Link Manager behavior that can result in changes to the link layer connections with Bluetooth remote devices.

Note: Only one ACL connection can exist between two BR/EDR Controllers, and therefore there can only be one ACL HCI Connection\_Handle for each physical link layer Connection. The BR/EDR Controller provides policy adjustment mechanisms to provide support for a number of different policies. This capability allows one Bluetooth module to be used to support many different usage models, and the same Bluetooth module can be incorporated in many different types of BR/EDR Controllers.

For the Link Policy Commands, the OGF is defined as 0x02.

### 7.2.1 Hold Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Hold_Mode	0x0001	Connection_Handle, Hold_Mode_Max_Interval, Hold_Mode_Min_Interval	

#### Description:

The Hold\_Mode command is used to alter the behavior of the Link Manager, and have it place the ACL baseband connection associated by the specified Connection\_Handle into the hold mode. The Hold\_Mode\_Max\_Interval and Hold\_Mode\_Min\_Interval command parameters specify the length of time the Host wants to put the connection into the hold mode. The local and remote devices will negotiate the length in the hold mode. The Hold\_Mode\_Max\_Interval parameter is used to specify the maximum length of the Hold interval for which the Host may actually enter into the hold mode after negotiation with the remote device. The Hold interval defines the amount of time between when the Hold Mode begins and when the Hold Mode is completed. The Hold\_Mode\_Min\_Interval parameter is used to specify the minimum length of the Hold interval for which the Host may actually enter into the hold mode after the negotiation with the remote device. Therefore the Hold\_Mode\_Min\_Interval cannot be greater than the Hold\_Mode\_Max\_Interval. The BR/EDR Controller will return the actual Hold interval in the Interval parameter of the Mode Change event, if the command is successful. This command enables the Host to support a low-power policy for itself or several other BR/EDR Controllers, and allows the devices to enter Inquiry Scan, Page Scan, and a number of other possible actions.

Note: The Connection\_Handle cannot be of the SCO or eSCO link type. If the Host sends data to the BR/EDR Controller with a Connection\_Handle corresponding to a connection in hold mode, the BR/EDR Controller will keep the data in its buffers until either the data can be transmitted (the hold mode has ended) or a flush, a flush timeout or a disconnection occurs. This is valid even if the Host has not yet been notified of the hold mode through a Mode Change event when it sends the data.

Note: The above is not valid for an HCI Data Packet sent from the Host to the BR/EDR Controller on the master side where the Connection\_Handle is a Connection\_Handle used for broadcast and the Broadcast\_Flag is set to Active Broadcast or Piconet Broadcast. The broadcast data will then never be received by slaves in hold mode.

The Hold\_Mode\_Max\_Interval shall be less than the Link Supervision Timeout configuration parameter.

**Command Parameters:**

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Hold\_Mode\_Max\_Interval:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Maximum acceptable number of Baseband slots to wait in Hold Mode. Time Length of the Hold = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid. Time Range: 1.25ms - 40.9 sec Mandatory Range: 0x0014 to 0x8000

*Hold\_Mode\_Min\_Interval:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Minimum acceptable number of Baseband slots to wait in Hold Mode. Time Length of the Hold = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0002-0xFF00; only even values are valid Time Range: 1.25 msec - 40.9 sec Mandatory Range: 0x0014 to 0x8000

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Hold\_Mode command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. The Mode Change event shall occur when the Hold Mode has started and the Mode Change event shall occur again when the Hold Mode has completed for the specified Connection\_Handle. The Mode Change event signaling the end of the Hold Mode is an estimation of the hold mode ending if the event is for a remote BR/EDR Controller.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, only the Mode Change event will indicate that this command has been completed. If an error occurs after the Command Status event has occurred, then the status in the Mode Change event shall indicate the error.

## 7.2.2 Sniff Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Sniff_Mode	0x0003	Connection_Handle, Sniff_Max_Interval, Sniff_Min_Interval, Sniff_Attempt, Sniff_Timeout	

### Description:

The Sniff\_Mode command is used to alter the behavior of the Link Manager and have it place the ACL baseband connection associated with the specified Connection\_Handle into the sniff mode. The Connection\_Handle command parameter is used to identify which ACL link connection is to be placed in sniff mode. The Sniff\_Max\_Interval and Sniff\_Min\_Interval command parameters are used to specify the requested acceptable maximum and minimum periods in the Sniff Mode. The Sniff\_Min\_Interval shall not be greater than the Sniff\_Max\_Interval. The sniff interval defines the amount of time between each consecutive sniff period. The BR/EDR Controller will return the actual sniff interval in the Interval parameter of the Mode Change event, if the command is successful. For a description of the meaning of the Sniff\_Attempt and Sniff\_Timeout parameters, see [Baseband Specification, Section 8.7, on page 193](#).

Sniff\_Attempt is there called  $N_{\text{sniff attempt}}$  and Sniff\_Timeout is called  $N_{\text{sniff timeout}}$ . This command enables the Host to support a low-power policy for itself or several other BR/EDR Controllers, and allows the devices to enter Inquiry Scan, Page Scan, and a number of other possible actions.

Note: In addition, the Connection\_Handle cannot be one of the synchronous link types. If the Host sends data to the BR/EDR Controller with a Connection\_Handle corresponding to a connection in sniff mode, the BR/EDR Controller will keep the data in its buffers until either the data can be transmitted or a flush, a flush timeout or a disconnection occurs. This is valid even if the Host has not yet been notified of the sniff mode through a Mode Change event when it sends the data. Note that it is possible for the master to transmit data to a slave without exiting sniff mode (see description in [Baseband Specification, Section 8.7, on page 193](#)).

Note: The above is not valid for an HCI Data Packet sent from the Host to the BR/EDR Controller on the master side where the Connection\_Handle is a Connection\_Handle used for broadcast and the Broadcast\_Flag is set to Active Broadcast or Piconet Broadcast. In that case, the broadcast data will only be received by a slave in sniff mode if that slave happens to listen to the master when the broadcast is made.

The Sniff\_Max\_Interval shall be less than the Link Supervision Timeout configuration parameter.

**Command Parameters:**

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Sniff\_Max\_Interval*: Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Range: 0x0002 to 0xFFFF; only even values are valid Mandatory Range: 0x0006 to 0x0540 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 1.25 msec to 40.9 sec

*Sniff\_Min\_Interval*: Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Range: 0x0002 to 0xFFFF; only even values are valid Mandatory Range: 0x0006 to 0x0540 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 1.25 msec to 40.9 sec

*Sniff\_Attempt*: Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Number of Baseband receive slots for sniff attempt. Length = N * 1.25 msec Range for N: 0x0001 – 0x7FFF Time Range: 1.25msec - 40.9 sec Mandatory Range for Controller: 1 to T <sub>sniff</sub> /2

*Sniff\_Timeout*: Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Number of Baseband receive slots for sniff timeout. Length = N * 1.25 msec Range for N: 0x0000 – 0x7FFF Time Range: 0 msec - 40.9 sec Mandatory Range for Controller: 0 to 0x0028

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Sniff\_Mode command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. The Mode Change event shall occur when the Sniff Mode has started for the specified Connection\_Handle.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead only the Mode Change event will indicate that this command has been completed. If an error occurs after the Command Status event has occurred, then the status in the Mode Change event shall indicate the error.

### 7.2.3 Exit Sniff Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Exit_Sniff_Mode	0x0004	Connection_Handle	

#### Description:

The Exit\_Sniff\_Mode command is used to end the sniff mode for a Connection\_Handle, which is currently in sniff mode. The Link Manager will determine and issue the appropriate LMP commands to remove the sniff mode for the associated Connection\_Handle.

Note: The Connection\_Handle cannot be one of the synchronous link types.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When BR/EDR Controller receives the Exit\_Sniff\_Mode command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. The Mode Change event shall occur when the Sniff Mode has ended for the specified Connection\_Handle.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, only the Mode Change event will indicate that this command has been completed.

## 7.2.4 Park State Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Park_State	0x0005	Connection_Handle, Beacon_Max_Interval, Beacon_Min_Interval	

### Description:

The Park\_State command is used to alter the behavior of the Link Manager, and have the LM place the baseband connection associated by the specified Connection\_Handle into Park state. The Connection\_Handle command parameter is used to identify which connection is to be placed in Park state. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The Beacon Interval command parameters specify the acceptable length of the interval between beacons. However, the remote device may request shorter interval. The Beacon\_Max\_Interval parameter specifies the acceptable longest length of the interval between beacons. The Beacon\_Min\_Interval parameter specifies the acceptable shortest length of the interval between beacons. Therefore, the Beacon Min Interval cannot be greater than the Beacon Max Interval. The BR/EDR Controller will return the actual Beacon interval in the Interval parameter of the Mode Change event, if the command is successful. This command enables the Host to support a low-power policy for itself or several other BR/EDR Controllers, allows the devices to enter Inquiry Scan, Page Scan, provides support for large number of BR/EDR Controllers in a single piconet, and a number of other possible activities.

Note: When the Host issues the Park State command, no Connection\_Handles for synchronous connections are allowed to exist to the remote device that is identified by the Connection\_Handle parameter. If one or more Connection\_Handles for synchronous connections exist to that device, depending on the implementation, a Command Status event or a Mode Change event (following a Command Status event where Status=0x00) will be returned with the error code 0x0C *Command Disallowed*.

If the Host sends data to the BR/EDR Controller with a Connection\_Handle corresponding to a parked connection, the BR/EDR Controller will keep the data in its buffers until either the data can be transmitted (after unpark) or a flush, a flush timeout or a disconnection occurs. This is valid even if the Host has not yet been notified of park state through a Mode Change event when it sends the data.

Note: The above is not valid for an HCI Data Packet sent from the Host to the BR/EDR Controller on the master side where the Connection\_Handle is a Connection\_Handle used for Piconet Broadcast and the Broadcast\_Flag is set to Piconet Broadcast. In that case, slaves in park state will also receive the broadcast data. (If the Broadcast\_Flag is set to Active Broadcast, the broadcast data will usually not be received by slaves in park state.)

It is possible for the Controller to do an automatic unpark to transmit data and then park the connection again depending on the value of the Link\_Policy\_Settings

parameter (see Write\_Link\_Policy\_Settings) and depending on whether the implementation supports this or not (optional feature). The optional feature of automatic unpark/park can also be used for link supervision. Whether Mode Change events are returned or not at automatic unpark/park if this is implemented, is vendor specific. This could be controlled by a vendor specific HCI command.

### **Command Parameters:**

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Beacon\_Max\_Interval:* *Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Range: 0x000E to 0xFFFF; only even values are valid Mandatory Range: 0x000E to 0x1000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 8.75 msec to 40.9 sec

*Beacon\_Min\_Interval* *Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Range: 0x000E to 0xFFFF; only even values are valid Mandatory Range: 0x000E to 0x1000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 8.75 msec to 40.9 sec

### **Return Parameters:**

None.

### **Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Park\_State command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host . The Mode Change event shall occur when the Park State has started for the specified Connection\_Handle.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, only the Mode Change event will indicate that this command has been completed. If an error occurs after the Command Status event has occurred, then the status in the Mode Change event shall indicate the error.

## 7.2.5 Exit Park State Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Exit_Park_State	0x0006	Connection_Handle	

### Description:

The Exit\_Park\_State command is used to switch the BR/EDR Controller from park state back to the active mode. This command may only be issued when the device associated with the specified Connection\_Handle is in park state. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. This function does not complete immediately.

### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

### Return Parameters:

None.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Exit\_Park\_State command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. The Mode Change event shall occur when park state has ended for the specified Connection\_Handle.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, only the Mode Change event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.2.6 QoS Setup Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_QoS_Setup	0x0007	Connection_Handle, Flags, Service_Type, Token_Rate, Peak_Bandwidth, Latency, Delay_Variation	

#### Description:

The QoS\_Setup command is used to specify Quality of Service parameters for a Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. These QoS parameter are the same parameters as L2CAP QoS. For more detail see [\[Vol 3\] Part A, Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification](#). This allows the Link Manager to have all of the information about what the Host is requesting for each connection. The LM will determine if the QoS parameters can be met. BR/EDR Controllers that are both slaves and masters can use this command. When a device is a slave, this command will trigger an LMP request to the master to provide the slave with the specified QoS as determined by the LM. When a device is a master, this command is used to request a slave device to accept the specified QoS as determined by the LM of the master. The Connection\_Handle command parameter is used to identify for which connection the QoS request is requested.

#### Command Parameters:

##### *Connection\_Handle:*

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify which connection for the QoS Setup. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

##### *Flags:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Service\_Type:**

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No Traffic.
0x01	Best Effort.
0x02	Guaranteed.
0x03-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Token\_Rate:**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Token Rate in octets per second.

**Peak\_Bandwidth:**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Peak Bandwidth in octets per second.

**Latency:**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Latency in microseconds.

**Delay\_Variation:**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Delay Variation in microseconds.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the QoS\_Setup command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the Link Manager has completed the LMP messages to establish the requested QoS parameters, the BR/EDR Controller shall send a QoS Setup Complete event to the Host, and the event may also be generated on the remote side if there was LMP negotiation. The values of the parameters of the QoS Setup Complete event may, however, be different on the initiating and the remote side. The QoS Setup Complete event returned by the BR/EDR Controller on the local side contains the status of this command, and returned QoS parameters describing the supported QoS for the connection.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the QoS Setup Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.2.7 Role Discovery Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Role_Discovery	0x0009	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle, Current_Role

#### Description:

The Role\_Discovery command is used for a Host to determine which role the device is performing for a particular Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Role_Discovery command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Role_Discovery command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify which connection the Role_Discovery command was issued on. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Current\_Role:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Current Role is Master for this Connection_Handle.
0x01	Current Role is Slave for this Connection_Handle.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Role\_Discovery command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.2.8 Switch Role Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Switch_Role	0x000B	BD_ADDR, Role	

#### Description:

The Switch\_Role command is used to switch the current BR/EDR role the device is performing for a particular connection with another specified BR/EDR Controller. The BD\_ADDR command parameter indicates for which connection the role switch is to be performed. The Role parameter indicates the requested new role that the local device performs.

Note: The BD\_ADDR command parameter must specify a BR/EDR Controller for which a connection already exists.

Note: If there is an (e)SCO connection between the local device and the device identified by the BD\_ADDR parameter, an attempt to perform a role switch shall be rejected by the local device.

Note: If the connection between the local device and the device identified by the BD\_ADDR parameter is placed in Sniff Mode, an attempt to perform a role switch will be rejected by the local device.

#### Command Parameters:

**BD\_ADDR:** Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxx XX	BD_ADDR for the connected device with which a role switch is to be performed.

**Role:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Change own Role to Master for this BD_ADDR.
0x01	Change own Role to Slave for this BD_ADDR.

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Switch\_Role command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the role switch is performed, a Role Change event shall occur to indicate that the roles have been changed, and will be communicated to both Hosts.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, only the Role Change event will indicate that this command has been completed.

## 7.2.9 Read Link Policy Settings Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Link_Policy_Settings	0x000C	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle, Link_Policy_Settings

### Description:

This command will read the Link Policy setting for the specified Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle shall be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. [Section 6.18 on page 493](#).

### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Link_Policy_Settings command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Link_Policy_Settings command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Link\_Policy\_Settings*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	Disable All LM Modes Default.
0x0001	Enable Role Switch.
0x0002	Enable Hold Mode.
0x0004	Enable Sniff Mode.
0x0008	Enable Park State.
0x0010 – 0x8000	Reserved for future use.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Link\_Policy\_Settings command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.2.10 Write Link Policy Settings Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Link_Policy_Settings	0x000D	Connection_Handle, Link_Policy_Settings	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

This command writes the Link Policy setting for the specified Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle shall be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. See [Section 6.18 on page 493](#).

The default value is the value set by the Write Default Link Policy Settings Command.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0xEFF (0xF00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Link\_Policy\_Settings* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	Disable All LM Modes.
0x0001	Enable Role Switch.
0x0002	Enable Hold Mode.
0x0004	Enable Sniff Mode.
0x0008	Enable Park State.
0x0010 – 0x8000	Reserved for future use.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Link_Policy_Settings command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Link_Policy_Settings command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:****Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)**

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Link\_Policy\_Settings command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.2.11 Read Default Link Policy Settings Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Default_Link_Policy_Settings	0x000E		Status, Default_Link_Policy_Settings

#### Description:

This command reads the Default Link Policy setting for all new BR/EDR connections.

Note: See the Link Policy Settings configuration parameter for more information. See [Section 6.18 on page 493](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Link_Policy_Settings command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Read_Link_Policy_Settings command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Default\_Link\_Policy\_Settings* *Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	Disable All LM Modes Default
0x0001	Enable Role Switch
0x0002	Enable Hold Mode
0x0004	Enable Sniff Mode
0x0008	Enable Park State
0x0010 – 0x8000	Reserved for future use.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Default\_Link\_Policy\_Settings command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.2.12 Write Default Link Policy Settings Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Default_Link_Policy_Settings	0x000F	Default_Link_Policy_Settings	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the Default Link Policy configuration value. The Default\_Link\_Policy\_Settings parameter determines the initial value of the Link\_Policy\_Settings for all new BR/EDR connections.

Note: See the Link Policy Settings configuration parameter for more information. See [Section 6.18 on page 493](#).

#### Command Parameters:

##### *Default\_Link\_Policy\_Settings*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	Disable All LM Modes Default
0x0001	Enable Role Switch
0x0002	Enable Hold Mode
0x0004	Enable Sniff Mode
0x0008	Enable Park State
0x0010 – 0x8000	Reserved for future use.

#### Return Parameters:

##### *Status*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Link_Policy_Settings command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Write_Link_Policy_Settings command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Default\_Link\_Policy\_Settings command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

### 7.2.13 Flow Specification Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Flow_Specification	0x0010	Connection_Handle, Flags, Flow_direction, Service_Type, Token_Rate, Token_Bucket_Size, Peak_Bandwidth, Access Latency	

#### Description:

The Flow\_Specification command is used to specify the flow parameters for the traffic carried over the ACL connection identified by the Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The Connection\_Handle command parameter is used to identify for which connection the Flow Specification is requested. The flow parameters refer to the outgoing or incoming traffic of the ACL link, as indicated by the Flow\_direction field. The Flow Specification command allows the Link Manager to have the parameters of the outgoing as well as the incoming flow for the ACL connection. The flow parameters are defined in the L2CAP specification [\[Vol 3\] Part A, Section 5.3, Quality of Service \(QoS\) Option](#). The Link Manager will determine if the flow parameters can be supported. BR/EDR Controllers that are both master and slave can use this command.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle used to identify for which ACL connection the Flow is specified. Range: 0x0000 - 0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Flags:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Flow\_direction:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Outgoing Flow i.e. traffic send over the ACL connection
0x01	Incoming Flow i.e. traffic received over the ACL connection
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Service\_Type:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	No Traffic
0x01	Best Effort
0x02	Guaranteed
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Token Rate:****Size: 4 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Token Rate in octets per second

**Token Bucket Size:****Size: 4 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Token Bucket Size in octets

**Peak\_Bandwidth:****Size: 4 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Peak Bandwidth in octets per second

**Access Latency:****Size: 4 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Latency in microseconds

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Controller receives the Flow\_Specification command, the BR/EDR Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the Link Manager has determined if the Flow specification can be supported, the BR/EDR Controller on the local BR/EDR Controller shall send a Flow Specification Complete event to the Host. The Flow Specification Complete event returned by the Controller on the local side contains the status of this command, and returned Flow parameters describing the supported QoS for the ACL connection.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the BR/EDR Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Flow Specification Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.2.14 Sniff Subrating Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Sniff_Subrating	0x0011	Connection_Handle, Maximum_Latency, Minimum_Remote_Timeout, Minimum_Local_Timeout	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

The Sniff\_Subrating command specifies the parameters for sniff subrating for a given link. The interval shall be determined from the sniff interval and the maximum subrate latency parameters from the command. The link may have smaller subrates and therefore lower latencies and longer timeouts than those specified. When the sniff subrate has been exchanged a Sniff Subrating event shall be generated. If this command is used on a link in sniff mode this shall cause sniff subrating to be negotiated at the Link Manager, otherwise sniff subrating shall be negotiated only after the device has entered the sniff mode.

The Connection\_Handle shall be the primary Connection\_Handle between the two devices.

The Maximum Latency parameter shall define the maximum allowed sniff subrate of the remote device.

Note: If the Host does not write the sniff subrating parameters prior to sniff subrating being initiated by the Link Manager the default values shall be used.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000 – 0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Maximum\_Latency:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	The Maximum Latency parameter shall be used to calculate the maximum_sniff subrate that the remote device may use. Default: T_sniff Latency = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0002 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 1.25msec – 40.9 sec

**Minimum\_Remote\_Timeout:**

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Minimum base sniff subrate timeout that the remote device may use Default: 0x0000 $\text{Latency} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0 sec - 40.9 sec

**Minimum\_Local\_Timeout:**

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Minimum base sniff subrate timeout that the local device may use. Default: 0x0000 $\text{Latency} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0 sec - 40.9 sec

**Return Parameters:****Status:**

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	The Sniff Subrating command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Sniff Subrating command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:**

Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000 - 0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away)**

When the Sniff\_Subrating command has been received by the BR/EDR Controller, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

A Sniff\_Subrating event shall occur when the sniff subrating has been negotiated for the specified Connection\_Handle.

## 7.3 CONTROLLER & BASEBAND COMMANDS

The Controller & Baseband Commands provide access and control to various capabilities of the Bluetooth hardware. These parameters provide control of BR/EDR Controllers and of the capabilities of the Link Manager and Baseband in the BR/EDR Controller, the PAL in an AMP Controller, and the Link Layer in an LE Controller. The Host can use these commands to modify the behavior of the local Controller.

For the HCI Control and Baseband Commands, the OGF is defined as 0x03.

### 7.3.1 Set Event Mask Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Event_Mask	0x0001	Event_Mask	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_Event\_Mask command is used to control which events are generated by the HCI for the Host. If the bit in the Event\_Mask is set to a one, then the event associated with that bit will be enabled. For an LE Controller, the “LE Meta Event” bit in the Event\_Mask shall enable or disable all LE events in the LE Meta Event (see [Section 7.7.65](#)). The Host has to deal with each event that occurs. The event mask allows the Host to control how much it is interrupted.

#### Command Parameters:

*Event\_Mask:* Size: 8 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000000000000000	No events specified
0x0000000000000001	Inquiry Complete Event
0x0000000000000002	Inquiry Result Event
0x0000000000000004	Connection Complete Event
0x0000000000000008	Connection Request Event
0x0000000000000010	Disconnection Complete Event
0x0000000000000020	Authentication Complete Event
0x0000000000000040	Remote Name Request Complete Event
0x0000000000000080	Encryption Change Event
0x0000000000000100	Change Connection Link Key Complete Event
0x0000000000000200	Master Link Key Complete Event
0x0000000000000400	Read Remote Supported Features Complete Event

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0000000000000000800	Read Remote Version Information Complete Event
0x0000000000000001000	QoS Setup Complete Event
0x0000000000000002000	Reserved
0x0000000000000004000	Reserved
0x0000000000000008000	Hardware Error Event
0x00000000000000010000	Flush Occurred Event
0x00000000000000020000	Role Change Event
0x00000000000000040000	Reserved
0x00000000000000080000	Mode Change Event
0x000000000000000100000	Return Link Keys Event
0x000000000000000200000	PIN Code Request Event
0x000000000000000400000	Link Key Request Event
0x000000000000000800000	Link Key Notification Event
0x0000000000000001000000	Loopback Command Event
0x0000000000000002000000	Data Buffer Overflow Event
0x0000000000000004000000	Max Slots Change Event
0x0000000000000008000000	Read Clock Offset Complete Event
0x00000000000000010000000	Connection Packet Type Changed Event
0x00000000000000020000000	QoS Violation Event
0x00000000000000040000000	Page Scan Mode Change Event [deprecated]
0x00000000000000080000000	Page Scan Repetition Mode Change Event
0x000000000000000100000000	Flow Specification Complete Event
0x000000000000000200000000	Inquiry Result with RSSI Event
0x000000000000000400000000	Read Remote Extended Features Complete Event
0x000000000000000800000000	Reserved
0x0000000000000001000000000	Reserved
0x0000000000000002000000000	Reserved
0x0000000000000004000000000	Reserved
0x0000000000000008000000000	Reserved
0x00000000000000010000000000	Reserved
0x00000000000000020000000000	Reserved
0x00000000000000040000000000	Reserved

Value	Parameter Description
0x000008000000000000	Synchronous Connection Complete Event
0x000010000000000000	Synchronous Connection Changed Event
0x000020000000000000	Sniff Subrating Event
0x000040000000000000	Extended Inquiry Result Event
0x000080000000000000	Encryption Key Refresh Complete Event
0x000100000000000000	IO Capability Request Event
0x000200000000000000	IO Capability Request Reply Event
0x000400000000000000	User Confirmation Request Event
0x000800000000000000	User Passkey Request Event
0x001000000000000000	Remote OOB Data Request Event
0x002000000000000000	Simple Pairing Complete Event
0x004000000000000000	Reserved
0x008000000000000000	Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event
0x010000000000000000	Enhanced Flush Complete Event
0x020000000000000000	Reserved
0x040000000000000000	User Passkey Notification Event
0x080000000000000000	Keypress Notification Event
0x100000000000000000	Remote Host Supported Features Notification Event
0x200000000000000000	LE Meta-Event
0xC00000000000000000	Reserved for future use
0x00 00 1F FF FF FF FF FF	Default

### Return Parameters:

Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_Event_Mask command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Event_Mask command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for error codes and descriptions.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Set\_Event\_Mask command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.2 Reset Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Reset	0x0003		Status

#### Description:

The Reset command will reset the Controller and the Link Manager on the BR/EDR Controller, the PAL on an AMP Controller, or the Link Layer on an LE Controller. If the Controller supports both BR/EDR and LE then the Reset command shall reset the Link Manager, Baseband and Link Layer. The Reset command shall not affect the used HCI transport layer since the HCI transport layers may have reset mechanisms of their own. After the reset is completed, the current operational state will be lost, the Controller will enter standby mode and the Controller will automatically revert to the default values for the parameters for which default values are defined in the specification.

Note: The Reset command will not necessarily perform a hardware reset. This is implementation defined. On an AMP Controller, the Reset command shall reset the service provided at the logical HCI to its initial state , but beyond this the exact effect on the Controller device is implementation defined and should not interrupt the service provided to other protocol stacks.

The Host shall not send additional HCI commands before the Command Complete event related to the Reset command has been received.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Reset command succeeded, was received and will be executed.
0x01-0xFF	Reset command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the reset has been performed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.3 Set Event Filter Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Event_Filter	0x0005	Filter_Type, Filter_Condition_Type, Condition	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_Event\_Filter command is used by the Host to specify different event filters. The Host may issue this command multiple times to request various conditions for the same type of event filter and for different types of event filters. The event filters are used by the Host to specify items of interest, which allow the BR/EDR Controller to send only events which interest the Host. Only some of the events have event filters. By default (before this command has been issued after power-on or Reset) no filters are set, and the Auto\_Accept\_Flag is off (incoming connections are not automatically accepted). An event filter is added each time this command is sent from the Host and the Filter\_Condition\_Type is not equal to 0x00. (The old event filters will not be overwritten). To clear all event filters, the Filter\_Type = 0x00 is used. The Auto\_Accept\_Flag will then be set to off. To clear event filters for only a certain Filter\_Type, the Filter\_Condition\_Type = 0x00 is used.

The Inquiry Result filter allows the BR/EDR Controller to filter out Inquiry Result events. The Inquiry Result filter allows the Host to specify that the BR/EDR Controller only sends Inquiry Results to the Host if the Inquiry Result event meets one of the specified conditions set by the Host. For the Inquiry Result filter, the Host can specify one or more of the following Filter Condition Types:

1. Return responses from all devices during the Inquiry process
2. A device with a specific Class of Device responded to the Inquiry process
3. A device with a specific BD\_ADDR responded to the Inquiry process

The Inquiry Result filter is used in conjunction with the Inquiry and Periodic Inquiry command.

The Connection Setup filter allows the Host to specify that the Controller only sends a Connection Complete or Connection Request event to the Host if the event meets one of the specified conditions set by the Host. For the Connection Setup filter, the Host can specify one or more of the following Filter Condition Types:

1. Allow Connections from all devices
2. Allow Connections from a device with a specific Class of Device
3. Allow Connections from a device with a specific BD\_ADDR

For each of these conditions, an Auto\_Accept\_Flag parameter allows the Host to specify what action should be done when the condition is met. The Auto\_Accept\_Flag allows the Host to specify if the incoming connection should be auto accepted (in which case the BR/EDR Controller will send the Connection Complete event to the Host when the connection is completed) or if the Host should make the decision (in which case the BR/EDR Controller will send the Connection Request event to the Host, to elicit a decision on the connection).

The Connection Setup filter is used in conjunction with the Read/Write\_Scan\_Enable commands. If the local device is in the process of a page scan, and is paged by another device which meets one on the conditions set by the Host, and the Auto\_Accept\_Flag is off for this device, then a Connection Request event will be sent to the Host by the BR/EDR Controller. A Connection Complete event will be sent later on after the Host has responded to the incoming connection attempt. In this same example, if the Auto\_Accept\_Flag is on, then a Connection Complete event will be sent to the Host by the Controller. (No Connection Request event will be sent in that case.)

The BR/EDR Controller will store these filters in volatile memory until the Host clears the event filters using the Set\_Event\_Filter command or until the Reset command is issued. The number of event filters the BR/EDR Controller can store is implementation dependent. If the Host tries to set more filters than the BR/EDR Controller can store, the BR/EDR Controller will return the *Memory Full* error code and the filter will not be installed.

Note: The Clear All Filters has no Filter Condition Types or Conditions.

Note: In the condition that a connection is auto accepted, a Link Key Request event and possibly also a PIN Code Request event and a Link Key Notification event could be sent to the Host by the Controller before the Connection Complete event is sent.

If there is a contradiction between event filters, the latest set event filter will override older ones. An example is an incoming connection attempt where more than one Connection Setup filter matches the incoming connection attempt, but the Auto-Accept\_Flag has different values in the different filters.

### Command Parameters:

*Filter\_Type*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Clear All Filters (Note: In this case, the Filter_Condition_Type and Condition parameters should not be given, they should have a length of 0 octets. Filter_Type should be the only parameter.)
0x01	Inquiry Result.
0x02	Connection Setup.
0x03-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Filter Condition Types:* For each Filter Type one or more Filter Condition types exists.

*Inquiry\_Result\_Filter\_Condition\_Type:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Return responses from all devices during the Inquiry process. (Note: A device may be reported to the Host in an Inquiry Result event more than once during an inquiry or inquiry period depending on the implementation, see description in <a href="#">Section 7.1.1 on page 513</a> and <a href="#">Section 7.1.3 on page 516</a> )
0x01	A device with a specific Class of Device responded to the Inquiry process.
0x02	A device with a specific BD_ADDR responded to the Inquiry process.
0x03-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Connection\_Setup\_Filter\_Condition\_Type:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Allow Connections from all devices.
0x01	Allow Connections from a device with a specific Class of Device.
0x02	Allow Connections from a device with a specific BD_ADDR.
0x03-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Condition:* For each Filter Condition Type defined for the Inquiry Result Filter and the Connection Setup Filter, zero or more Condition parameters are required – depending on the filter condition type and filter type.

*Condition for Inquiry\_Result\_Filter\_Condition\_Type = 0x00*

*Condition:* Size: 0 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
	The Condition parameter is not used.

*Condition for Inquiry\_Result\_Filter\_Condition\_Type = 0x01*

**Condition:**

Size: 6 Octets

*Class\_of\_Device:*

*Size: 3 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000000	Default, Return All Devices.
0xXXXXXX	<i>Class of Device</i> of Interest.

*Class\_of\_Device\_Mask:*

*Size: 3 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXX	Bit Mask used to determine which bits of the Class of Device parameter are 'don't care'. Zero-value bits in the mask indicate the 'don't care' bits of the Class of Device.

*Condition for Inquiry\_Result\_Filter\_Condition\_Type = 0x02*

**Condition:**

Size: 6 Octets

*BD\_ADDR:*

*Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XX	BD_ADDR of the Device of Interest

*Condition for Connection\_Setup\_Filter\_Condition\_Type = 0x00*

**Condition:**

Size: 1 Octet

*Auto\_Accept\_Flag:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	Do NOT Auto accept the connection. (Auto accept is off)
0x02	Do Auto accept the connection with role switch disabled. (Auto accept is on).
0x03	Do Auto accept the connection with role switch enabled. (Auto accept is on).  Note: When auto accepting an incoming synchronous connection, no role switch will be performed. The value 0x03 of the Auto_Accept_Flag will then get the same effect as if the value had been 0x02.
0x04 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Condition for Connection\_Setup\_Filter\_Condition\_Type = 0x01*

**Condition:**

Size: 7 Octets

*Class\_of\_Device:*

*Size: 3 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000000	Default, Return All Devices.
0xXXXXXX	<i>Class of Device</i> of Interest.

*Class\_of\_Device\_Mask:*

*Size: 3 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXX	<p>Bit Mask used to determine which bits of the Class of Device parameter are 'don't care'. Zero-value bits in the mask indicate the 'don't care' bits of the Class of Device.</p> <p>Note: For an incoming SCO connection, if the class of device is unknown then the connection will be accepted.</p>

*Auto\_Accept\_Flag:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	Do NOT Auto accept the connection. (Auto accept is off)
0x02	Do Auto accept the connection with role switch disabled. (Auto accept is on).
0x03	<p>Do Auto accept the connection with role switch enabled. (Auto accept is on).</p> <p>Note: When auto accepting an incoming synchronous connection, no role switch will be performed. The value 0x03 of the Auto_Accept_Flag will then get the same effect as if the value had been 0x02.</p>
0x04 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Condition for Connection\_Setup\_Filter\_Condition\_Type = 0x02*

**Condition:**

Size: 7 Octets

*BD\_ADDR:*

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxx XX	BD_ADDR of the Device of Interest.

*Auto\_Accept\_Flag:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	Do NOT Auto accept the connection. (Auto accept is off)
0x02	Do Auto accept the connection with role switch disabled. (Auto accept is on).
0x03	Do Auto accept the connection with role switch enabled. (Auto accept is on). Note: When auto accepting an incoming synchronous connection, no role switch will be performed. The value 0x03 of the Auto_Accept_Flag will then get the same effect as if the value had been 0x02.
0x04 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_Event_Filter command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Event_Filter command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

A Command Complete event for this command shall occur when the Controller has enabled the filtering of events. When one of the conditions are met, a specific event shall occur.

### 7.3.4 Flush Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Flush	0x0008	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

The Flush command is used to discard all data that is currently pending for transmission in the Controller for the specified Connection\_Handle, even if there currently are chunks of data that belong to more than one L2CAP packet in the Controller. Both automatically-flushable and non-automatically-flushable packets shall be discarded (see [Section 5.4.2 on page 481](#)). After this, all data that is sent to the Controller for the same Connection\_Handle will be discarded by the Controller until an HCI Data Packet with one of the start Packet\_Boundary\_Flag values (0x00 or 0x02) is received. When this happens, a new transmission attempt can be made.

This command, when used on a BR/EDR Controller or an AMP Controller, will allow higher-level software to control how long the baseband should try to retransmit a baseband packet for a Connection\_Handle before all data that is currently pending for transmission in the Controller should be flushed.

Note: The Flush command is used for ACL connections only. In addition to the Flush command, the automatic flush timers (see [Section 7.3.29 on page 691](#)) can be used to automatically flush an automatically-flushable L2CAP packet that is currently being transmitted after the specified flush timer has expired.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify which connection to flush. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Flush command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Flush command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:****Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)**

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify which connection the flush command was issued on. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

The Flush Occurred event shall occur once the flush is completed. A Flush Occurred event could be from an automatic Flush or could be caused by the Host issuing the Flush command. When the Flush command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated, to indicate that the Host caused the Flush.

### 7.3.5 Read PIN Type Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_PIN_Type	0x0009		Status, PIN_Type

#### Description:

The Read\_PIN\_Type command is used to read the PIN\_Type configuration parameter. See [Section 6.13 on page 492](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_PIN_Type command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_PIN_Type command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*PIN\_Type:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Variable PIN.
0x01	Fixed PIN.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_PIN\_Type command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

### 7.3.6 Write PIN Type Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_PIN_Type	0x000A	PIN_Type	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_PIN\_Type command is used to write the PIN Type configuration parameter. See [Section 6.13 on page 492](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*PIN\_Type*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Variable PIN.
0x01	Fixed PIN.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_PIN_Type command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_PIN_Type command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_PIN\_Type command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.7 Create New Unit Key Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Create_New_Unit_Key	0x000B		Status

#### Description:

The Create\_New\_Unit\_Key command is used to create a new unit key. The Controller shall generate a random seed that shall be used to generate the new unit key. All new connection shall use the new unit key, but the old unit key shall still be used for all current connections.

Note: This command will not have any effect for a device which doesn't use unit keys (i.e. a device which uses only combination keys).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Create_New_Unit_Key command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Create_New_Unit_Key command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Create\_New\_Unit\_Key command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.8 Read Stored Link Key Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Stored_Link_Key	0x000D	BD_ADDR, Read_All_Flag	Status, Max_Num_Keys, Num_Keys_Read

#### Description:

The Read\_Stored\_Link\_Key command provides the ability to read whether one or more link keys are stored in the BR/EDR Controller. The BR/EDR Controller can store a limited number of link keys for other BR/EDR Controllers. Link keys are shared between two BR/EDR Controllers, and are used for all security transactions between the two devices. The read link key command shall not return the link keys value. A Host device may have additional storage capabilities, which can be used to save additional link keys to be reloaded to the BR/EDR Controller when needed. The Read\_All\_Flag parameter is used to indicate if all of the stored Link Keys should be returned. If Read\_All\_Flag indicates that all Link Keys are to be returned, then the BD\_ADDR command parameter must be ignored. The BD\_ADDR command parameter is used to identify which link key to read. The stored Link Keys are returned by one or more Return Link Keys events. See [Section 6.14 on page 492](#).

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR for the stored link key to be read.

##### Read\_All\_Flag:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Return Link Key for specified BD_ADDR.
0x01	Return all stored Link Keys.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Stored_Link_Key command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Stored_Link_Key command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for error codes and descriptions.

**Max\_Num\_Keys:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Total Number of Link Keys that the Controller can store. Range: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF

**Num\_Keys\_Read:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Number of Link Keys Read. Range: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

Zero or more instances of the Return Link Keys event shall occur after the command is issued. When there are no link keys stored, no Return Link Keys events will be returned. When there are link keys stored, the number of link keys returned in each Return Link Keys event is implementation specific. When the Read\_Stored\_Link\_Key command has completed a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.9 Write Stored Link Key Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Stored_Link_Key	0x0011	Num_Keys_To_Write, BD_ADDR[i], Link_Key[i]	Status, Num_Keys_Written

#### Description:

The Write\_Stored\_Link\_Key command provides the ability to write one or more link keys to be stored in the BR/EDR Controller. The BR/EDR Controller can store a limited number of link keys for other BR/EDR Controllers. If no additional space is available in the BR/EDR Controller then no additional link keys will be stored. If space is limited and if all the link keys to be stored will not fit in the limited space, then the order of the list of link keys without any error will determine which link keys are stored. Link keys at the beginning of the list will be stored first. The Num\_Keys\_Written parameter will return the number of link keys that were successfully stored. If no additional space is available, then the Host must delete one or more stored link keys before any additional link keys are stored. The link key replacement algorithm is implemented by the Host and not the BR/EDR Controller. Link keys are shared between two BR/EDR Controllers and are used for all security transactions between the two devices. A Host device may have additional storage capabilities, which can be used to save additional link keys to be reloaded to the BR/EDR Controller when needed. See [Section 6.14 on page 492](#).

Note: Link Keys are only stored by issuing this command.

A Host in Secure Connections Only Mode should not store link keys in the Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Num\_Keys\_To\_Write:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Number of Link Keys to Write. Range: 0x01 - 0x0B

##### BD\_ADDR [i]:

Size: 6 Octets \* Num\_Keys\_To\_Write

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR for the associated Link Key.

**Link\_Key[i]:****Size: 16 Octets\* Num\_Keys\_To\_Write**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFFXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXX	Link Key for an associated BD_ADDR.

**Return Parameters:****Status:** **Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Write_Stored_Link_Key command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Stored_Link_Key command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Num\_Keys\_Written:** **Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Number of Link Keys successfully written. Range: 0x00 – 0x0B

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Stored\_Link\_Key command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.10 Delete Stored Link Key Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Delete_Stored_Link_Key	0x0012	BD_ADDR, Delete_All_Flag	Status, Num_Keys_Deleted

#### Description:

The Delete\_Stored\_Link\_Key command provides the ability to remove one or more of the link keys stored in the BR/EDR Controller. The BR/EDR Controller can store a limited number of link keys for other BR/EDR devices. Link keys are shared between two BR/EDR devices and are used for all security transactions between the two devices. The Delete\_All\_Flag parameter is used to indicate if all of the stored Link Keys should be deleted. If the Delete\_All\_Flag indicates that all Link Keys are to be deleted, then the BD\_ADDR command parameter must be ignored. This command provides the ability to negate all security agreements between two devices. The BD\_ADDR command parameter is used to identify which link key to delete. If a link key is currently in use for a connection, then the link key will be deleted when all of the connections are disconnected. See [Section 6.14 on page 492](#).

#### Command Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR for the link key to be deleted.

##### Delete\_All\_Flag:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Delete only the Link Key for specified BD_ADDR.
0x01	Delete all stored Link Keys.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Delete_Stored_Link_Key command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Delete_Stored_Link_Key command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for error codes and descriptions.

*Num\_Keys\_Deleted:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Number of Link Keys Deleted

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Delete\_Stored\_Link\_Key command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.11 Write Local Name Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Local_Name	0x0013	Local Name	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_Local\_Name command provides the ability to modify the user-friendly name for the BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.23 on page 497](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Local Name:* Size: 248 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	A UTF-8 encoded User-Friendly Descriptive Name for the device. If the name contained in the parameter is shorter than 248 octets, the end of the name is indicated by a NULL octet (0x00), and the following octets (to fill up 248 octets, which is the length of the parameter) do not have valid values.
	Null terminated Zero length String. <b>Default.</b>

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Local_Name command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Local_Name command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Local\_Name command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.12 Read Local Name Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_Name	0x0014		Status, Local_Name

#### Description:

The Read\_Local\_Name command provides the ability to read the stored user-friendly name for the BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.23 on page 497](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_Name command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Read_Local_Name command failed (see <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for list of Error Codes).

*Local\_Name:* *Size: 248 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
	A UTF-8 encoded User Friendly Descriptive Name for the device. If the name contained in the parameter is shorter than 248 octets, the end of the name is indicated by a NULL octet (0x00), and the following octets (to fill up 248 octets, which is the length of the parameter) do not have valid values.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Local\_Name command has completed a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.13 Read Connection Accept Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Connection_Accept_Timeout	0x0015		Status, Conn_Accept_Timeout

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Connection\_Accept\_Timeout configuration parameter. See [Section 6.7 on page 489](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Connection_Accept_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Connection_Accept_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Conn\_Accept\_Timeout:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Connection Accept Timeout measured in Number of BR/EDR Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 – 0xB540 Time Range: 0.625 msec -29 seconds

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Connection\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.14 Write Connection Accept Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Connection_Accept_Timeout	0x0016	Conn_Accept_Timeout	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Connection\_Accept\_Timeout configuration parameter. See [Section 6.7 on page 489](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Conn\_Accept\_Timeout*: Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Connection Accept Timeout measured in Number of BR/EDR Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 – 0xB540 Time Range: 0.625 msec - 29 seconds Default: N = 0x1FA0 Time = 5.06 Sec Mandatory Range for Controller: 0x00A0 to 0xB540

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Connection_Accept_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Connection_Accept_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Connection\_Accept\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.15 Read Page Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Page_Timeout	0x0017		Status, Page_Timeout

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Page\_Timeout configuration parameter. See [Section 6.6 on page 489](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Page_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Page_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Page\_Timeout:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Page Timeout measured in Number of Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0.625 msec -40.9 Seconds

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Page\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.16 Write Page Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Page_Timeout	0x0018	Page_Timeout	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Page\_Timeout configuration parameter. The Page\_Timeout configuration parameter defines the maximum time the local Link Manager shall wait for a baseband page response from the remote device at a locally initiated connection attempt. If this time expires and the remote device has not responded to the page at baseband level, the connection attempt will be considered to have failed.

#### Command Parameters:

*Page\_Timeout:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0	Illegal Page Timeout. Must be larger than 0.
N = 0xFFFF	Page Timeout measured in Number of Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0.625 msec -40.9 Seconds Default: N = 0x2000 Time = 5.12 Sec Mandatory Range for Controller: 0x0016 to 0xFFFF

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Page_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Page_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Page\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.17 Read Scan Enable Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Scan_Enable	0x0019		Status, Scan_Enable

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Scan\_Enable parameter configuration parameter. See [Section 6.1 on page 487](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

Status:	Size: 1 Octet
0x00	Read_Scan_Enable command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Scan_Enable command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

Scan_Enable:	Size: 1 Octet
Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No Scans enabled.
0x01	Inquiry Scan enabled. Page Scan disabled.
0x02	Inquiry Scan disabled. Page Scan enabled.
0x03	Inquiry Scan enabled. Page Scan enabled.
0x04-0xFF	Reserved

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Scan\_Enable command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.18 Write Scan Enable Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Scan_Enable	0x001A	Scan_Enable	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Scan\_Enable configuration parameter. See [Section 6.1 on page 487](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Scan\_Enable*:

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No Scans enabled. <b>Default.</b>
0x01	Inquiry Scan enabled. Page Scan disabled.
0x02	Inquiry Scan disabled. Page Scan enabled.
0x03	Inquiry Scan enabled. Page Scan enabled.
0x04-0xFF	Reserved

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*:

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Scan_Enable command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Scan_Enable command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Scan\_Enable command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.19 Read Page Scan Activity Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Page_Scan_Activity	0x001B		Status, Page_Scan_Interval, Page_Scan_Window

#### Description:

This command reads the value for Page\_Scan\_Interval and Page\_Scan\_Window configuration parameters. See [Section 6.8 on page 490](#) and [Section 6.9 on page 490](#).

Note: Page Scan is only performed when Page\_Scan is enabled (see [6.1](#), [7.3.17](#) and [7.3.18](#)). A changed Page\_Scan\_Interval could change the local Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode (see [Part B, Baseband Specification](#)).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Page_Scan_Activity command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Page_Scan_Activity command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Page\_Scan\_Interval:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0012 – 0x1000 $\text{Time} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ Range: 11.25 msec - 2560 msec; only even values are valid

**Page\_Scan\_Window:****Size: 2 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0011 - 0x1000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Range: 10.625 msec - 2560 msec

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Page\_Scan\_Activity command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.20 Write Page Scan Activity Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Page_Scan_Activity	0x001C	Page_Scan_Interval, Page_Scan_Window	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the values for the Page\_Scan\_Interval and Page\_Scan\_Window configuration parameters. The Page\_Scan\_Window shall be less than or equal to the Page\_Scan\_Interval. See [Section 6.8 on page 490](#) and [Section 6.9 on page 490](#).

Note: Page Scan is only performed when Page\_Scan is enabled (see [6.1](#), [7.3.17](#) and [7.3.18](#)). A changed Page\_Scan\_Interval could change the local Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode (see [Part B, Baseband Specification](#)).

#### Command Parameters:

##### Page\_Scan\_Interval:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 6.8 on page 490</a>	

##### Page\_Scan\_Window:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 6.9 on page 490</a>	

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Page_Scan_Activity command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Page_Scan_Activity command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Page\_Scan\_Activity command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.21 Read Inquiry Scan Activity Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Inquiry_Scan_Activity	0x001D		Status, Inquiry_Scan_Interval, Inquiry_Scan_Window

#### Description:

This command reads the value for Inquiry\_Scan\_Interval and Inquiry\_Scan\_Window configuration parameter. See [Section 6.2 on page 487](#) and [Section 6.3 on page 488](#).

Note: Inquiry Scan is only performed when Inquiry\_Scan is enabled see [6.1](#), [7.3.17](#) and [7.3.18](#)).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Inquiry_Scan_Activity command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Inquiry_Scan_Activity command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Inquiry\_Scan\_Interval:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0012 – 0x1000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Range: 11.25 - 2560 msec; only even values are valid

*Inquiry\_Scan\_Window:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXXX	Size: 2 Octets Range: 0x0011 - 0x1000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Range: 10.625 msec - 2560 msec

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Inquiry\_Scan\_Activity command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.22 Write Inquiry Scan Activity Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Inquiry_Scan_Activity	0x001E	Inquiry_Scan_Interval, Inquiry_Scan_Window	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the values for the Inquiry\_Scan\_Interval and Inquiry\_Scan\_Window configuration parameters. The Inquiry\_Scan\_Window shall be less than or equal to the Inquiry\_Scan\_Interval. See [Section 6.2 on page 487](#) and [Section 6.3 on page 488](#).

Note: Inquiry Scan is only performed when Inquiry\_Scan is enabled (see [6.1](#), [7.3.17](#) and [7.3.18](#)).

#### Command Parameters:

*Inquiry\_Scan\_Interval:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 6.2 on page 487</a> .	

*Inquiry\_Scan\_Window:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 6.3 on page 488</a> .	

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Inquiry_Scan_Activity command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Inquiry_Scan_Activity command failed. See Part D, Error Codes for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Inquiry\_Scan\_Activity command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.23 Read Authentication Enable Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Authentication_Enable	0x001F		Status, Authentication_Enable

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Authentication\_Enable configuration parameter. See [Section 6.16, “Authentication Enable,” on page 493](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Authentication_Enable command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Authentication_Enable command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Authentication\_Enable:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Authentication not required.
0x01	Authentication required for all connections.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Authentication\_Enable command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.24 Write Authentication Enable Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Authentication_Enable	0x0020	Authentication_Enable	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Authentication\_Enable configuration parameter. See [Section 6.16, “Authentication Enable,” on page 493](#).

The Authentication\_Enable configuration parameter shall only apply to connections (e.g. send an LMP\_in\_rand or LMP\_au\_rand) when the remote device’s Host or BR/EDR Controller does not support Secure Simple Pairing or when the local Host does not support Secure Simple Pairing.

Note: Requires LM to read host features during connection setup.

#### Command Parameters:

*Authentication\_Enable*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Authentication not required. <b>Default</b> .
0x01	Authentication required for all connections.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Authentication_Enable command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Authentication_Enable command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Authentication\_Enable command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.25 Read Class of Device Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Class_of_Device	0x0023		Status, Class_of_Device

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Class\_of\_Device parameter. See [Section 6.26 on page 498](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Class_of_Device command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Class_of_Device command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Class\_of\_Device:* Size: 3 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXX	Class of Device for the device.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Class\_of\_Device command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.26 Write Class of Device Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Class_of_Device	0x0024	Class_of_Device	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Class\_of\_Device parameter.

See [Section 6.26 on page 498](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Class\_of\_Device*: Size: 3 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXX	Class of Device for the device.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Class_of_Device command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Class_of_Device command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Class\_of\_Device command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.27 Read Voice Setting Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Voice_Setting	0x0025		Status, Voice_Setting

#### Description:

This command reads the values for the Voice\_Setting configuration parameter. See [Section 6.12 on page 491](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Voice_Setting command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Voice_Setting command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Voice\_Setting:** Size: 2 Octets (10 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 6.12 on page 491</a> .	

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Voice\_Setting command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.28 Write Voice Setting Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Voice_Setting	0x0026	Voice_Setting	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the values for the Voice\_Setting configuration parameter. See [Section 6.12 on page 491](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Voice\_Setting*: *Size: 2 Octets (10 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 6.12 on page 491</a> .	

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Voice_Setting command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Voice_Setting command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Voice\_Setting command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.29 Read Automatic Flush Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Automatic_Flush_Timeout	0x0027	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle, Flush_Timeout

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Flush\_Timeout parameter for the specified Connection\_Handle. See [Section 6.19 on page 495](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection_Handle's Flush Timeout to read. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Automatic_Flush_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Automatic_Flush_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection_Handle's Flush Timeout has been read. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Flush\_Timeout*: Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0	Timeout = ∞; No Automatic Flush
N = 0xFFFF	Flush Timeout = N * 0.625 msec Size: 11 bits Range: 0x0001 – 0x07FF

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Automatic\_Flush\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.30 Write Automatic Flush Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Automatic_Flush_Timeout	0x0028	Connection_Handle, Flush_Timeout	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Flush\_Timeout parameter for the specified Connection\_Handle. See [Section 6.19 on page 495](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection_Handle's Flush Timeout to write to. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Flush\_Timeout*: Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0	Timeout = $\infty$ ; No Automatic Flush. <b>Default</b> .
N = 0xFFFF	Flush Timeout = N * 0.625 msec Size: 11 bits Range: 0x0001 – 0x07FF Mandatory Range for Controller: 0x0002 to 0x07FF

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Automatic_Flush_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Automatic_Flush_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection_Handle's Flush Timeout has been written. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Automatic\_Flush\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.31 Read Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions	0x0029		Status, Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions

#### Description:

This command reads the device's parameter value for the Number of Broadcast Retransmissions. See [Section 6.20 on page 495](#)

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

Status:	Size: 1 Octet
0x00	Read_Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions:	Size: 1 Octet
See <a href="#">Section 6.20 on page 495</a> .	

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Num\_Broadcast\_Retransmission command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.32 Write Num Broadcast Retransmissions Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions	0x002A	Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the device's parameter value for the Number of Broadcast Retransmissions. See [Section 6.20 on page 495](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Num\_Broadcast\_Retransmissions*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 6.20 on page 495</a> .	

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Num_Broadcast_Retransmissions command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Num\_Broadcast\_Retransmissions command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.33 Read Hold Mode Activity Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Hold_Mode_Activity	0x002B		Status, Hold_Mode_Activity

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Hold\_Mode\_Activity parameter. See [Section 6.16 on page 493](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Hold_Mode_Activity command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Hold_Mode_Activity command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Hold\_Mode\_Activity:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Maintain current Power State.
0x01	Suspend Page Scan.
0x02	Suspend Inquiry Scan.
0x04	Suspend Periodic Inquiries.
0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Hold\_Mode\_Activity command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.34 Write Hold Mode Activity Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Hold_Mode_Activity	0x002C	Hold_Mode_Activity	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Hold\_Mode\_Activity parameter. See [Section 6.16 on page 493](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Hold\_Mode\_Activity*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Maintain current Power State. <b>Default</b> .
0x01	Suspend Page Scan.
0x02	Suspend Inquiry Scan.
0x04	Suspend Periodic Inquiries.
0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Hold_Mode_Activity command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Hold_Mode_Activity command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Hold\_Mode\_Activity command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.35 Read Transmit Power Level Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Transmit_Power_Level	0x002D	Connection_Handle, Type	Status, Connection_Handle, Transmit_Power_Level

#### Description:

This command reads the values for the `Transmit_Power_Level` parameter for the specified `Connection_Handle`. The `Connection_Handle` shall be a `Connection_Handle` for an ACL connection.

#### Command Parameters:

`Connection_Handle`: *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXX	Specifies which <code>Connection_Handle</code> 's Transmit Power Level setting to read. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

`Type`: *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read Current Transmit Power Level.
0x01	Read Maximum Transmit Power Level.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

#### Return Parameters:

`Status`: *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Transmit_Power_Level command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Transmit_Power_Level command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

`Connection_Handle`: *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXX	Specifies which <code>Connection_Handle</code> 's Transmit Power Level setting is returned. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification**Transmit\_Power\_Level:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: -30 ≤ N ≤ 20 Units: dBm

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Transmit\_Power\_Level command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.36 Read Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Synchronous_Flow_Control_Enable	0x002E		Status, Synchronous_Flow_Control_Enable

#### Description:

The Read\_Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable command provides the ability to read the Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable parameter. See [Section 6.22 on page 496](#).

The Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable parameter shall only be changed if no connection exists.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Synchronous_Flow_Control_Enable command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Read_Synchronous_Flow_Control_Enable command failed (see <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for list of Error Codes).

##### Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Synchronous Flow Control is disabled. No Number of Completed Packets events will be sent from the Controller for Synchronous Connection_Handles.
0x01	Synchronous Flow Control is enabled. Number of Completed Packets events will be sent from the Controller for Synchronous Connection_Handles.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable command has completed a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.37 Write Synchronous Flow Control Enable Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Synchronous_Flow_Control_Enable	0x002F	Synchronous_Flow_Control_Enable	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable command provides the ability to write the Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable parameter. See [Section 6.22 on page 496](#).

The Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable parameter can only be changed if no connections exist.

#### Command Parameters:

*Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Synchronous Flow Control is disabled. No Number of Completed Packets events shall be sent from the Controller for synchronous Connection Handles. <b>Default</b>
0x01	Synchronous Flow Control is enabled. Number of Completed Packets events shall be sent from the Controller for synchronous Connection Handles.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Synchronous_Flow_Control_Enable command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Write_Synchronous_Flow_Control_Enable command failed (see <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for list of Error Codes.)

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable command has completed a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.38 Set Controller To Host Flow Control Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Controller_To_Host_Flow_Control	0x0031	Flow_Control_Enable	Status

#### Description:

This command is used by the Host to turn flow control on or off for data and/or voice sent in the direction from the Controller to the Host. If flow control is turned off, the Host should not send the Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command. That command will be ignored by the Controller if it is sent by the Host and flow control is off. If flow control is turned on for HCI ACL Data Packets and off for HCI synchronous Data Packets, Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets commands sent by the Host should only contain Connection Handles for ACL connections. If flow control is turned off for HCI ACL Data Packets and on for HCI synchronous Data Packets, Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets commands sent by the Host should only contain Connection Handles for synchronous connections. If flow control is turned on for HCI ACL Data Packets and HCI synchronous Data Packets, the Host will send Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets commands both for ACL connections and synchronous connections.

The Flow\_Control\_Enable parameter shall only be changed if no connections exist.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Flow\_Control\_Enable:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Flow control <b>off</b> in direction from Controller to Host. <b>Default</b> .
0x01	Flow control <b>on</b> for HCI ACL Data Packets and <b>off</b> for HCI synchronous Data Packets in direction from Controller to Host.
0x02	Flow control <b>off</b> for HCI ACL Data Packets and <b>on</b> for HCI synchronous Data Packets in direction from Controller to Host.
0x03	Flow control <b>on</b> both for HCI ACL Data Packets and HCI synchronous Data Packets in direction from Controller to Host.
0x04-0xFF	Reserved

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_Controller_To_Host_Flow_Control command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Controller_To_Host_Flow_Control command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_Controller\_To\_Host\_Flow\_Control command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.39 Host Buffer Size Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Host_Buffer_Size	0x0033	Host_ACL_Data_Packet_Length, Host_Synchronous_Data_Packet_Length, Host_Total_Num_ACL_Data_Packets, Host_Total_Num_Synchronous_Data_Packets	Status

#### Description:

The Host\_Buffer\_Size command is used by the Host to notify the Controller about the maximum size of the data portion of HCI ACL and synchronous Data Packets sent from the Controller to the Host. The Controller shall segment the data to be transmitted from the Controller to the Host according to these sizes, so that the HCI Data Packets will contain data with up to these sizes. The Host\_Buffer\_Size command also notifies the Controller about the total number of HCI ACL and synchronous Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Host. If flow control from the Controller to the Host is turned off, and the Host\_Buffer\_Size command has not been issued by the Host, this means that the Controller will send HCI Data Packets to the Host with any lengths the Controller wants to use, and it is assumed that the data buffer sizes of the Host are unlimited. If flow control from the Controller to the Host is turned on, the Host\_Buffer\_Size command shall after a power-on or a reset always be sent by the Host before the first Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command is sent.

The [Set Controller To Host Flow Control Command](#) is used to turn flow control on or off. The Host\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length command parameter will be used to determine the size of the L2CAP segments contained in ACL Data Packets, which are transferred from the Controller to the Host. The Host\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packet\_Length command parameter is used to determine the maximum size of HCI synchronous Data Packets. Both the Host and the Controller shall support command and event packets, where the data portion (excluding header) contained in the packets is 255 octets in size.

The Host\_Total\_Num\_ACL\_Data\_Packets command parameter contains the total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Host. The Controller will determine how the buffers are to be divided between different Connection Handles. The Host\_Total\_Num\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packets command parameter gives the same information for HCI synchronous Data Packets.

Note: The Host\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length and Host\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packet\_Length command parameters do not include the length of the HCI Data Packet header.

**Command Parameters:**

*Host\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Maximum length (in octets) of the data portion of each HCI ACL Data Packet that the Host is able to accept.

*Host\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packet\_Length:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xFF	Maximum length (in octets) of the data portion of each HCI synchronous Data Packet that the Host is able to accept.

*Host\_Total\_Num\_ACL\_Data\_Packets:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Host.

*Host\_Total\_Num\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packets:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Total number of HCI synchronous Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Host.

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Host_Buffer_Size command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Host_Buffer_Size command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Host\_Buffer\_Size command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.40 Host Number Of Completed Packets Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Host_Number_Of_Completed_Packets	0x0035	Number_Of_Handles, Connection_Handle[i], Host_Num_Of_Completed_Packets [i]	

#### Description:

The Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command is used by the Host to indicate to the Controller the number of HCI Data Packets that have been completed for each Connection Handle since the previous Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command was sent to the Controller. This means that the corresponding buffer space has been freed in the Host. Based on this information, and the Host\_Total\_Num\_ACL\_Data\_Packets and Host\_Total\_Num\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packets command parameters of the Host\_Buffer\_Size command, the Controller can determine for which Connection Handles the following HCI Data Packets should be sent to the Host. The command should only be issued by the Host if flow control in the direction from the Controller to the Host is on and there is at least one connection, or if the Controller is in local loopback mode. Otherwise, the command will be ignored by the Controller. When the Host has completed one or more HCI Data Packet(s) it shall send a Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command to the Controller, until it finally reports that all pending HCI Data Packets have been completed. The frequency at which this command is sent is manufacturer specific.

The [Set Controller To Host Flow Control Command](#) is used to turn flow control on or off. If flow control from the Controller to the Host is turned on, the Host\_Buffer\_Size command shall always be sent by the Host after a power-on or a reset before the first Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command is sent.

Note: The Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command is a special command in the sense that no event is normally generated after the command has completed. The command may be sent at any time by the Host when there is at least one connection, or if the Controller is in local loopback mode independent of other commands. The normal flow control for commands is not used for the Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command.

#### Command Parameters:

*Number\_Of\_Handles:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	The number of Connection Handles and Host_Num_Of_Completed_Packets parameters pairs contained in this command. Range: 0-255

*Connection\_Handle[i]: Size: Number\_Of\_Handles\*2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection Handle Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Host\_Num\_Of\_Completed\_Packets [i]: Size: Number\_Of\_Handles \* 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	The number of HCI Data Packets that have been completed for the associated Connection Handle since the previous time the event was returned. Range for N: 0x0000-0xFFFF

### Return Parameters:

None.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

Normally, no event is generated after the Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command has completed. However, if the Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command contains one or more invalid parameters, the Controller shall return a Command Complete event with a failure status indicating the *Invalid HCI Command Parameters* error code. The Host may send the Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets command at any time when there is at least one connection, or if the Controller is in local loopback mode. The normal flow control for commands is not used for this command.

### 7.3.41 Read Link Supervision Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Link_Supervision_Timeout	0x0036	Handle	Status, Handle, Link_Supervision_Timeout

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Link\_Supervision\_Timeout parameter for the Controller.

The Handle used for this command shall be the ACL connection to the appropriate device. See [Section 6.21 on page 496](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection Handle's Link Supervision Timeout value is to be read.  On an AMP, a Physical Link Handle is used as the lower 8 bits of the Handle. The upper 4 bits are reserved and shall be set to 0.  Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Link_Supervision_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Link_Supervision_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Connection Handle's Link Supervision Timeout value was read.  The Handle is a Connection Handle for a BR/EDR Controller. On an AMP a Physical Link Handle is used as the lower 8 bits of the Handle. The upper 4 bits are reserved and shall be set to 0.  Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Link\_Supervision\_Timeout:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0000	No Link_Supervision_Timeout. Measured in Number of BR/EDR Baseband slots $\text{Link\_Supervision\_Timeout} = N * 0.625 \text{ msec}$ (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0.625ms - 40.9 sec
N = 0xFFFF	

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Link\_Supervision\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.42 Write Link Supervision Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Link_Supervision_Timeout	0x0037	Handle, Link_Supervision_Timeout	Status, Handle

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Link\_Supervision\_Timeout parameter for a BR/EDR or AMP Controller. For BR/EDR Controllers, this command shall only be issued on the master for the given Connection Handle. If this command is issued on a slave, the command shall be rejected by the BR/EDR controller with the error code Command Disallowed. The command may be issued to any AMP Controller without restriction to role.

The Handle used for this command shall be the ACL connection to the appropriate device. This command will set the Link\_Supervision\_Timeout values for other Synchronous Handles to that device.  
See [Section 6.21 on page 496](#).

#### Command Parameters:

**Handle:** Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Handle's Link Supervision Timeout value is to be written. The Handle is a Connection Handle for a BR/EDR Controller. On an AMP a Physical Link Handle is used as the lower 8 bits of the Handle. The upper 4 bits are reserved and shall be set to 0. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Link\_Supervision\_Timeout:** Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	No Link_Supervision_Timeout.
N = 0xFFFF	Measured in Number of BR/EDR Baseband slots Link_Supervision_Timeout = N*0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0.625ms – 40.9 sec <b>Default:</b> N = 0x7D00 Link_Supervision_Timeout = 20 sec Mandatory Range for Controller: 0x0190 to 0xFFFF; plus 0 for infinite timeout

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Link_Supervision_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Link_Supervision_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Specifies which Handle's Link Supervision Timeout value was written. The Handle is a Connection Handle for a BR/EDR Controller. On an AMP a Physical Link Handle is used as the lower 8 bits of the Handle. The upper 4 bits (of the 12 meaningful bits) are reserved and shall be set to 0. Range: 0x0000-0xEFF (0xF00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Link\_Supervision\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.43 Read Number Of Supported IAC Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Number_Of_Supported_IAC	0x0038		Status, Num_Support_IAC

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the number of Inquiry Access Codes (IAC) that the local BR/EDR Controller can simultaneous listen for during an Inquiry Scan. All BR/EDR Controllers are required to support at least one IAC, the General Inquiry Access Code (the GIAC). Some BR/EDR Controllers support additional IACs.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

Status:	Size: 1 Octet
0x00	Read_Number_Of_Supported_IAC command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Number_Of_Supported_IAC command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

Num_Support_IAC	Size: 1 Octet
0xXX	Specifies the number of Supported IAC that the local BR/EDR Controller can simultaneous listen for during an Inquiry Scan. Range: 0x01-0x40

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Number\_Of\_Supported\_IAC command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.44 Read Current IAC LAP Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Current_IAC_LAP	0x0039		Status, Num_Current_IAC, IAC_LAP[i]

#### Description:

This command reads the LAP(s) used to create the Inquiry Access Codes (IAC) that the local BR/EDR Controller is simultaneously scanning for during Inquiry Scans. All BR/EDR Controllers shall support at least one IAC, the General Inquiry Access Code (the GIAC). Some BR/EDR Controllers support additional IACs.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Current_IAC_LAP command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Current_IAC_LAP command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Num\_Current\_IAC* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Specifies the number of IACs which are currently in use by the local BR/EDR Controller to simultaneously listen for during an Inquiry Scan. Range: 0x01-0x40

*IAC\_LAP[i]* *Size: 3 Octets \* Num\_Current\_IAC*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXX	LAPs used to create the IAC which is currently in use by the local BR/EDR Controller to simultaneously listen for during an Inquiry Scan. Range: 0x9E8B00-0x9E8B3F

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Current\_IAC\_LAP command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.45 Write Current IAC LAP Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Current_IAC_LAP	0x003A	Num_Current_IAC, IAC_LAP[i]	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the LAP(s) used to create the Inquiry Access Codes (IAC) that the local BR/EDR Controller is simultaneously scanning for during Inquiry Scans. All BR/EDR Controller shall support at least one IAC, the General Inquiry Access Code (the GIAC). Some BR/EDR Controllers support additional IACs.

This command shall clear any existing IACs and stores Num\_Current\_IAC and the IAC\_LAPs in to the controller. If Num\_Current\_IAC is greater than Num\_Support\_IAC then only the first Num\_Support\_IAC shall be stored in the controller, and a Command Complete event with error code Success (0x00) shall be generated.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Num\_Current\_IAC

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Specifies the number of IACs which are currently in use by the local BR/EDR Controller to simultaneously listen for during an Inquiry Scan. Range: 0x01-0x40

##### IAC\_LAP[i]

Size: 3 Octets \* Num\_Current\_IAC

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXX	LAP(s) used to create IAC which is currently in use by the local BR/EDR Controller to simultaneously listen for during an Inquiry Scan. Range: 0x9E8B00-0x9E8B3F. The GIAC is the default IAC to be used. If additional IACs are supported, additional default IAC will be determined by the manufacturer.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Current_IAC_LAP command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Current_IAC_LAP command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Current\_IAC\_LAP command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.46 Set AFH Host Channel Classification Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
Set_AFH_Host_Channel_Classification	0x003F	AFH_Host_Channel_Classification	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_AFH\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command allows the Host to specify a channel classification based on its “local information”. This classification persists until overwritten with a subsequent Set\_AFH\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command or until the BR/EDR Controller is reset.

This command shall be supported by a device that declares support for any of the AFH\_capable\_master, AFH\_classification\_slave or AFH\_classification\_master features.

If this command is used, updates should be sent within 10 seconds, of the Host knowing that the channel classification has changed. The interval between two successive commands sent shall be at least 1 second.

#### Command Parameters:

*AFH\_Host\_Channel\_Classification:* Size: 10 Octets (79 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXX XX	This parameter contains 79 1-bit field. The $n^{th}$ such field (in the range 0 to 78) contains the value for channel $n$ : Channel $n$ is bad = 0 Channel $n$ is unknown = 1 The most significant bit is reserved and shall be set to 0 At least $N_{min}$ channels shall be marked as unknown. (See <a href="#">Baseband Specification, Section 2.3.1, on page 79</a> )

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_AFH_Host_Channel_Classification command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_AFH_Host_Channel_Classification command failed. <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Set\_AFH\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.47 Read Inquiry Scan Type Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Inquiry_Scan_Type	0x0042		Status, Inquiry_Scan_Type

#### Description:

This command reads the Inquiry\_Scan\_Type configuration parameter from the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.4 on page 488](#). For details, see the Baseband Specification, [\[Vol 2\] Part B, Section 8.4.1, Inquiry scan substate](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Inquiry_Scan_Type command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Read_Inquiry_Scan_Type command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Inquiry\_Scan\_Type:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Standard Scan ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Interlaced Scan
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Inquiry\_Scan\_Type command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.48 Write Inquiry Scan Type Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Inquiry_Scan_Type	0x0043	Scan_Type	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the Inquiry Scan Type configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.4 on page 488](#). For details, see the Baseband Specification, Part B, Inquiry scan substate.

#### Command Parameters:

*Scan\_Type*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Standard Scan ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Interlaced Scan
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Inquiry_Scan_Type command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Write_Inquiry_Scan_Type command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Inquiry\_Scan\_Type command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.49 Read Inquiry Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Inquiry_Mode	0x0044		Status, Inquiry_Mode

#### Description:

This command reads the Inquiry\_Mode configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.5 on page 488](#).

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Inquiry_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Inquiry_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for list of Error Codes.

*Inquiry\_Mode:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Standard Inquiry Result event format
0x01	Inquiry Result format with RSSI
0x02	Inquiry Result with RSSI format or Extended Inquiry Result format
0x03-0xFF	Reserved

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Inquiry\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.50 Write Inquiry Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Inquiry_Mode	0x0045	Inquiry_Mode	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the Inquiry\_Mode configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.5 on page 488](#).

#### Command Parameters:

##### *Inquiry\_Mode*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Standard Inquiry Result event format (default)
0x01	Inquiry Result format with RSSI
0x02	Inquiry Result with RSSI format or Extended Inquiry Result format
0x03-0xFF	Reserved

#### Return Parameters:

##### *Status*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Inquiry_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Inquiry_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Inquiry\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.51 Read Page Scan Type Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Page_Scan_Type	0x0046		Status, Page_Scan_Type

#### Description:

This command reads the Page Scan Type configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.11 on page 491](#). For details, see the Baseband Specification, “[Part B, Page Scan Substate](#)”.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Page_Scan_Type command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Page_Scan_Type command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Page\_Scan\_Type:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Mandatory: Standard Scan (default)
0x01	Optional: Interlaced Scan
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Page\_Scan\_Type command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.52 Write Page Scan Type Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Page_Scan_Type	0x0047	Page_Scan_Type	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the Page Scan Type configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.11 on page 491](#). For details, see the Baseband Specification, Part B, Section 8.3.1, Page Scan Substate.

#### Command Parameters:

##### *Page\_Scan\_Type*:

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Mandatory: Standard Scan (default)
0x01	Optional: Interlaced Scan
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

#### Return Parameters:

##### *Status*:

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Page_Scan_Type command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Page_Scan_Type command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Page\_Scan\_Type command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.53 Read AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
Read_AFH_Channel_Assessment_Mode	0x0048		Status, AFH_Channel_Assessment_Mode

#### Description:

The Read\_AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode command reads the value for the AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode parameter. The AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode parameter controls whether the controller's channel assessment scheme is enabled or disabled.

This command shall be supported by a device that declares support for any of the AFH\_capable\_master, AFH\_classification\_slave or AFH\_classification\_master features.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_AFH_Channel_Assessment_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_AFH_Channel_Assessment_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Controller channel assessment disabled.
0x01	Controller channel assessment enabled.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.54 Write AFH Channel Assessment Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
Write_AFH_Channel_Assessment_Mode	0x0049	AFH_Channel_Assessment_Mode	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode command writes the value for the AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode parameter. The AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode parameter controls whether the Controller's channel assessment scheme is enabled or disabled.

Disabling channel assessment forces all channels to be unknown in the local classification, but does not affect the AFH\_reporting\_mode or support for the Set\_AFH\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command. A slave in the AFH\_reporting\_enabled state shall continue to send LMP channel classification messages for any changes to the channel classification caused by either this command (altering the AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode) or HCI Set\_AFH\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command (providing a new channel classification from the Host).

This command shall be supported by a device that declares support for any of the AFH\_capable\_master, AFH\_classification\_slave or AFH\_classification\_master features.

If the AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode parameter is enabled and the BR/EDR Controller does not support a channel assessment scheme, other than via the Set\_AFH\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command, then a Status parameter of 'Channel Assessment Not Supported' should be returned. See "[Part D, Error Codes](#)" for a list of error codes and descriptions.

If the BR/EDR Controller supports a channel assessment scheme then the default AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode is enabled, otherwise the default is disabled.

#### Command Parameters:

##### AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Controller channel assessment disabled.
0x01	Controller channel assessment enabled.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Return Parameters:****Status:****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_AFH_Channel_Assessment_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_AFH_Channel_Assessment_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_AFH\_Channel\_Assessment\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.55 Read Extended Inquiry Response Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Extended_Inquiry_Response	0x0051		Status, FEC_Required, Extended_Inquiry_Response

#### Description:

The Read\_Extended\_Inquiry\_Response command reads the extended inquiry response to be sent during the extended inquiry response procedure. The FEC\_Required parameter states if FEC encoding is required.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Extended_Inquiry_Response command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Read_Extended_Inquiry_Response command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### FEC\_Required:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	FEC is not required
0x01	FEC is required
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

##### Extended\_Inquiry\_Response:

Size: 240 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	Extended inquiry response data as defined in <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part C, Section 8, Extended Inquiry Response Data Format</a> .

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Extended\_Inquiry\_Response command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.56 Write Extended Inquiry Response Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Extended_Inquiry_Response	0x0052	FEC_Required, Extended_Inquiry_Response	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_Extended\_Inquiry\_Response command writes the extended inquiry response to be sent during the extended inquiry response procedure. The FEC\_Required command parameter states if FEC encoding is required. The extended inquiry response data is not preserved over a reset. The initial value of the inquiry response data is all zero octets. The controller shall not interpret the extended inquiry response data.

#### Command Parameters:

##### FEC\_Required:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	FEC is not required
0x01	FEC is required
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

##### Extended Inquiry Response:

Size: 240 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	Extended inquiry response data as defined in <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part C, Section 8, Extended Inquiry Response Data Format</a> .
	All octets zero ( <b>default</b> ).

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Extended_Inquiry_Response command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Write_Extended_Inquiry_Response command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Extended\_Inquiry\_Response command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.57 Refresh Encryption Key Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Refresh_Encryption_Key	0x0053	Connection_Handle	

**Description:**

This command is used by the Host to cause the BR/EDR Controller to refresh the encryption key by pausing and resuming encryption.

**Command Parameters:**

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection Handle for the ACL connection to have the encryption key refreshed on.

Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

A Command\_Status event is sent from the BR/EDR Controller to the Host when the Controller has started the Refresh Encryption Key procedure. An Encryption Key Refresh Complete event shall be generated when the Refresh Encryption Key procedure has completed.

### 7.3.58 Read Simple Pairing Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Simple_Pairing_Mode	0x0055		Status, Simple_Pairing_Mode

#### Description:

This command reads the Simple\_Pairing\_Mode parameter in the BR/EDR Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Simple_Pairing_Mode command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Read_Simple_Pairing_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Simple\_Pairing\_Mode* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Simple Pairing not set (default)
0x01	Simple pairing enabled
0x02 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Simple\_Pairing\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.59 Write Simple Pairing Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Simple_Pairing_Mode	0x0056	Simple_Pairing_Mode	Status

#### Description:

This command enables Simple Pairing mode in the BR/EDR Controller. When Simple Pairing Mode is set to 'enabled' the Link Manager shall respond to an LMP\_io\_capability\_req PDU with an LMP\_io\_capability\_res PDU and continue with the subsequent pairing procedure. When Simple Pairing mode is set to 'disabled', the Link Manager shall reject an IO capability request. A Host shall not set the Simple Pairing Mode to 'disabled.'

Until Write\_Simple\_Pairing\_Mode is received by the BR/EDR Controller, it shall not support any Simple Pairing sequences, and shall respond with the error code Simple Pairing not Supported by Host. This command shall be written before initiating page scan or paging procedures.

The Link Manager Secure Simple Pairing (Host Support) feature bit shall be set to the Simple\_Pairing\_Mode parameter. The default value for Simple\_Pairing\_Mode shall be 'disabled.' When Simple\_Pairing\_Mode is set to 'enabled,' the bit in the LMP features mask indicating support for Secure Simple Pairing (Host Support) shall be set to enabled in subsequent responses to an LMP\_feature\_req from a remote device.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Simple\_Pairing\_Mode:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Simple Pairing disabled ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Simple pairing enabled
0x02 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Simple_Pairing_Mode command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Write_Simple_Pairing_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Simple\_Pairing\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.60 Read Local OOB Data Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_OOB_Data	0x0057		Status, C, R

#### Description:

This command obtains a Simple Pairing Hash C and Simple Pairing Randomizer R which are intended to be transferred to a remote device using an OOB mechanism. The BR/EDR Controller shall create new values for C and R for each invocation of this command.

**Note:** Each OOB transfer will have unique C and R values so after each OOB transfer this command shall be used to obtain a new set of values for the next OOB transfer.

**Note:** The controller keeps information used to generate these values for later use in the simple pairing process. If the BR/EDR Controller is powered off or reset then this information is lost and the values obtained before the power off or reset are invalid.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_OOB_Data command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Read_Local_OOB_Data command failed. See Part D, Error Codes for a list of error codes and descriptions.

C:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxx	Simple Pairing Hash C

R:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxx	Simple Pairing Randomizer R

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Local\_OOB\_Data command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.61 Read Inquiry Response Transmit Power Level Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Inquiry_Response_Transmit_Power_Level	0x0058		Status, TX_Power

#### Description:

This command reads the power level used to transmit the FHS and EIR data packets. This can be used directly in the Tx Power Level EIR data type.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Inquiry_Response_Transmit_Power_Level command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Read_Inquiry_Response_Transmit_Power_Level command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*TX\_Power:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: $-70 \leq N \leq 20$ Units: dBm

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Inquiry\_Response\_Transmit\_Power\_Level command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.62 Write Inquiry Transmit Power Level Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Inquiry_Transmit_Power_Level	0x0059	TX_Power	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the inquiry transmit power level used to transmit the inquiry (ID) data packets. The Controller should use the supported TX power level closest to the Tx\_Power parameter.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

TX Power: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: $-70 \leq N \leq 20$ Units: dBm

When the Write\_Inquiry\_Transmit\_Power\_Level command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

#### Return Parameters:

Status: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Inquiry_Transmit_Power_Level command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	Write_Inquiry_Transmit_Power_Level command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Inquiry\_Transmit\_Power\_Level command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.63 Send Keypress Notification Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Send_Key- press_Notification	0x0060	BD_ADDR, Notification_- Type	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

This command is used during the Passkey Entry protocol by a device with KeyboardOnly IO capabilities. It is used by a Host to inform the remote device when keys have been entered or erased.

#### Command Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

*Notification\_Type*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0	Passkey entry started
1	Passkey digit entered
2	Passkey digit erased
3	Passkey cleared
4	Passkey entry completed
5-255	Reserved for future use

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Send_Keypress_Notification command succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	Send_Keypress_Notification command failed

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Send\_Keypress\_Notification command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.64 Read Default Erroneous Data Reporting

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Default_Erroneous_Data_Report	0x005A		Status, Erroneous_Data_Report

#### Description:

This command reads the Erroneous\_Data\_Report parameter.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Default_Erroneous_Data_Report command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Read_Default_Erroneous_Data_Report command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Erroneous\_Data\_Report:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Erroneous data reporting disabled.
0x01	Erroneous data reporting enabled.
0x02 - 0xFF	Reserved.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Default\_Erroneous\_Data\_Report command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.65 Write Default Erroneous Data Reporting

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Default_Erroneous_Data_Report	0x005B	Erroneous_Data_Report	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the Erroneous\_Data\_Report parameter. The BR/EDR Controller shall set the Packet\_Status\_Flag as defined in [Section 5.4.3, “HCI Synchronous Data Packets,” on page 484](#), depending on the value of this parameter. The new value for the Erroneous\_Data\_Report parameter shall not apply to existing synchronous connections.

#### Command Parameters:

*Erroneous\_Data\_Report*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Erroneous Data reporting disabled ( <b>default</b> ).
0x01	Erroneous data reporting enabled.
0x02 - 0xFF	Reserved.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Default_Erroneous_Data_Report command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Write_Default_Erroneous_Data_Report command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Default\_Erroneous\_Data\_Report command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.66 Enhanced Flush Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Enhanced_Flush	0x005F	Handle, Packet_Type	

#### Description:

The Enhanced\_Flush command is used to discard all L2CAP packets identified by Packet\_Type that are currently pending for transmission in the Controller for the specified Handle, even if there currently are chunks of data that belong to more than one L2CAP packet of the same type in the Controller. The only packet type defined is automatically-flushable. Packets not identified by Packet\_Type will not be flushed and will be processed normally by the Controller.

After flushing the packets, all data that is sent to the BR/EDR Controller for the same Handle and packet type shall be discarded by the Controller until an HCI Data Packet with the start Packet\_Boundary\_Flag (0x00 or 0x02) is received. This command allows higher-level software to control how long the baseband should try to retransmit a baseband packet of a specific type for a Handle before all data of that type currently pending for transmission in the Controller should be flushed. Note that the Enhanced Flush command is used for ACL-U connections only. On the BR/EDR Controller, the Flush command can be used to flush all packets (see [Section 7.3.4 on page 660](#)). In addition to the Enhanced Flush and Flush commands, the automatic flush timers (see [Section 7.3.29 on page 691](#)) can be used to automatically flush an automatically-flushable L2CAP packet that is currently being transmitted after the specified flush timer has expired.

This command shall be supported by a device that declares support for the Non-Flushable Packet Boundary Flag feature.

On an AMP Controller, in addition to the Enhanced\_Flush command, the automatic flush timer specified in the Flow Specification for this logical link may be used to automatically flush packets on this logical link.

#### Command Parameters:

Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Handle to be used to identify a connection. The Handle is a Connection Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Logical Link Handle for an AMP Controller. Range: 0x0000 - 0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Packet\_Type:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Automatically flushable only.
0x01 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Controller receives the Enhanced\_Flush command, the Controller shall send the Command Status event to the host. In addition, when all the packets identified by Packet\_Type have been flushed for the specified Handle, the Controller shall send an Enhanced Flush Complete event to the host. The controller may send the Enhanced Flush Complete event immediately after flushing all the packets of type Packet\_Type for the specified Handle, or it may wait until all packets for the specified Handle, independent of Packet\_Type, buffered in the controller at the time of the receipt of the Enhanced Flush Command, have been either flushed or transmitted.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Enhanced Flush Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.3.67 Read Logical Link Accept Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Logical_Link_Accept_Timeout	0x0061		Status, Logical_Link_Accept_Timeout

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Logical\_Link\_Accept\_Timeout configuration parameter.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Logical_Link_Accept_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Logical_Link_Accept_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Logical\_Link\_Accept\_Timeout:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXXX	Logical_Link Accept Timeout measured in Number of BR/EDR Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 BR/EDR Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 - 0xB540 Time Range: 0.625 msec -29 seconds

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Logical\_Link\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.68 Write Logical Link Accept Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Logical_Link_Accept_Timeout	0x0062	Logical_Link_Accept_Timeout	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Logical\_Link\_Accept\_Timeout configuration parameter. See Logical Link Accept Timeout.

#### Command Parameters:

*Logical\_Link\_Accept\_Timeout:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Logical_Link Accept Timeout measured in Number of BR/EDR Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 BR/EDR Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 - 0xB540 Time Range: 0.625 msec - 29 seconds Default: N = 0x1FA0 Time = 5.06 Sec Mandatory Range for Controller: 0x00A0 to 0xB540

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Logical_Link_Accept_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Logical_Link_Accept_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> or a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Logical\_Link\_Accept\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.69 Set Event Mask Page 2 Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Event_Mask_Page_2	0x0063	Event_Mask_Page_2	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_Event\_Mask\_Page\_2 command is used to control which events are generated by the HCI for the Host. The Event\_Mask\_Page\_2 is a logical extension to the Event\_Mask parameter of the Set\_Event\_Mask command. If the bit in the Event\_Mask\_Page\_2 is set to a one, then the event associated with that bit shall be enabled. The Host has to deal with each event that occurs by the Controllers. The event mask allows the Host to control how much it is interrupted.

#### Command Parameters:

*Event\_Mask\_Page\_2*:

Size: 8 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000000000000000	No events specified ( <b>default</b> )
0x0000000000000001	Physical Link Complete Event
0x0000000000000002	Channel Selected Event
0x0000000000000004	Disconnection Physical Link Event
0x0000000000000008	Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event
0x0000000000000010	Physical Link Recovery Event
0x0000000000000020	Logical Link Complete Event
0x0000000000000040	Disconnection Logical Link Complete Event
0x0000000000000080	Flow Spec Modify Complete Event
0x0000000000000100	Number of Completed Data Blocks Event
0x0000000000000200	AMP Start Test Event
0x0000000000000400	AMP Test End Event
0x0000000000000800	AMP Receiver Report Event
0x0000000000001000	Short Range Mode Change Complete Event
0x0000000000002000	AMP Status Change Event
0x0000000000004000	Triggered Clock Capture Event
0x0000000000008000	Synchronization Train Complete Event
0x00000000000010000	Synchronization Train Received Event

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000000020000	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Event
0x00000000000040000	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout Event
0x00000000000080000	Truncated Page Complete Event
0x000000000000100000	Slave Page Response Timeout Event
0x000000000000200000	Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change Event
0x000000000000400000	Inquiry Response Notification Event
0x000000000000800000	Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired Event
0xFFFFFFFFFF000000	Reserved for future use

**Return Parameters:****Status:****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_Event_Mask_Page_2 command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Event_Mask_Page_2 command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_Event\_Mask\_Page\_2 command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.70 Read Location Data Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Location_Data	0x0064		Status, Location_Domain_Aware, Location_Domain, Location_Domain Options, Location_Options

#### Description:

The Read\_Location\_Data command provides the ability to read any stored knowledge of environment or regulations or currently in use in the AMP Controller. See [Section 6.29](#) to [Section 6.32](#) on page 507.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Location_Data command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Location_Data command failed. See " <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for error codes and descriptions.

See [Section 6.29](#) to [Section 6.32](#) for Location\_Domain\_Aware, Location\_Domain, Location\_Domain\_Options and Location\_Options respectively.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Location\_Data command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.71 Write Location Data Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Location_Data	0x0065	Location_Domain_Aware, Location_Domain, Location_Domain_Options, Location_Options	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_Location\_Data command writes information about the environment or regulations currently in force, which may affect the operation of the Controller. The Controller may use this information to optimize its operation and to ensure its conformance to currently applicable regulations. The exact way in which this affects AMP operation is AMP type specific.

#### Command Parameters:

See [Section 6.29](#) to [Section 6.32](#) for Location\_Domain\_Aware, Location\_Domain, Location\_Domain\_Options, Location\_Options.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Location_Data command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Location_Data command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Location\_Data command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.72 Read Flow Control Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Flow_Control_Mode	0x0066		Status, Flow_Control_Mode

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Flow\_Control\_Mode configuration parameter. See [Section 6.33 on page 508](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Flow_Control_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Flow_Control_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Flow\_Control\_Mode:* See [Section 6.33 on page 508](#).

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Flow\_Control\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.73 Write Flow Control Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Flow_Control_Mode	0x0067	Flow_Control_Mode	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value for the Flow\_Control\_Mode configuration parameter. See [Section 6.33 on page 508](#).

#### Command Parameters:

##### Flow\_Control\_Mode:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Packet based data flow control mode ( <b>default for a BR/EDR Controller</b> )
0x01	Data block based data flow control mode ( <b>default for an AMP Controller</b> )
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Flow_Control_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Flow_Control_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Flow\_Control\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated. If the set fails then the Controller continues using its current mode.

### 7.3.74 Read Enhanced Transmit Power Level Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Enhance_Transmit_Power_Level	0x0068	Connection_Handle, Type	Status, Connection_Handle, Transmit_Power_Level_GFSK, Transmit_Power_Level_DQPSK, Transmit_Power_Level_8DPSK

#### Description:

This command reads the values for the Enhanced\_Transmit\_Power\_Level parameters for the specified Connection Handle. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000 - 0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use).

*Type:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read Current Transmit Power Level
0x01	Read Maximum Transmit Power Level
0x01-0xFF	Reserved.

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Enhanced_Transmit_Power_Level command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Enhanced_Transmit_Power_Level command failed. See Part D, Error Codes for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000 - 0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Transmit\_Power\_Level\_GFSK:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: -100 ≤ N ≤ 20 Units: dBm

*Transmit\_Power\_Level\_DQPSK:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: -100 ≤ N ≤ 20 Units: dBm

*Transmit\_Power\_Level\_8DPSK:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: -100 ≤ N ≤ 20 Units: dBm

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Enhanced\_Transmit\_Power\_Level command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.75 Read Best Effort Flush Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout	0x0069	Logical_Link_Handle	Status, Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout

#### Description:

This command reads the value of the Best Effort Flush Timeout from the AMP Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

*Logical\_Link\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Logical_Link_Handle to which the Write_Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout command applies. Range: 0x0000-0xFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout*: Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF - 0x00000000	Best Effort Flush Timeout value in microseconds 0xFFFFFFFF: No Best Effort Flush Timeout used (default)

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.76 Write Best Effort Flush Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout	0x006A	Logical_Link_Handle, Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the value of the Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout into the AMP Controller. The Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout shall be associated with the given logical link, and that Logical\_Link\_Handle must specify a Best Effort logical link.

#### Command Parameters:

*Logical\_Link\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Logica_Link_Handle to which the Write_Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout command applies. Range: 0x0000-0xFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FF Reserved for future use)

*Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout:* Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	0x00000000 - 0xFFFFFFFF: Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout value in microseconds 0xFFFFFFFF: No Best Effort Flush Timeout used (default)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout command failed. See " <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.77 Short Range Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Short_Range_Mode	0x006B	Physical_Link_Handle, Short_Range_Mode	

#### Description:

This command will configure the value of Short\_Range\_Mode to the AMP Controller and is AMP type specific (see [Volume 5, Core System Package \[AMP Controller volume\]](#)).

#### Command Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle to which the Short Range Mode command applies.

*Short\_Range\_Mode*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Configuration setting of Short Range Mode 0x00 - Short Range Mode disabled ( <b>default</b> ) 0x01 - Short Range Mode enabled 0x02 - 0xFF - Reserved

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

A Command Status event is sent from the AMP Controller to the Host when the AMP Controller has received the Short\_Range\_Mode command. When the Short\_Range\_Mode command has completed, a Short Range Mode Change Complete event shall be generated.

Note: No Command Complete event will be sent by the AMP Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Short Range Mode Change Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.3.78 Read LE Host Support Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_LE_Host_Support	0x006C		Status, LE_Supported_Host, Simultaneous_LE_Host

#### Description:

The Read\_LE\_Host\_Support command is used to read the LE Supported (Host) and Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host) Link Manager Protocol feature bits. These Link Manager Protocol feature bits are used by the local host and a remote device (Controller and Host). See [Part C, Section 3.2, Feature Definitions](#).

The Simultaneous\_LE\_Host parameter shall be ignored upon receipt.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_LE_Host_Support command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Read_LE_Host_Support command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**LE\_Supported\_Host:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	LE_Supported_Host parameter, see <a href="#">Section 6.34</a> .

**Simultaneous\_LE\_Host:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Simultaneous_LE_Host parameter, see <a href="#">Section 6.35</a> .

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_LE\_Host\_Support command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.79 Write LE Host Support Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_LE_Host_Support	0x006D	LE_Supported_Host, Simultaneous_LE_Host	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_LE\_Host\_Support command is used to set the LE Supported (Host) and Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host) Link Manager Protocol feature bits. These Link Manager Protocol feature bits are used by a remote Host. See [Part C, Section 3.2, Feature Definitions](#).

The default value for these feature bits shall be disabled. When LE\_Supported\_Host is set to enabled the bit in LMP features mask indicating support for LE Support (Host) shall be set. The Simultaneous\_LE\_Host parameter shall be set to disabled.

#### Command Parameters:

*LE\_Supported\_Host:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	LE_Supported_Host parameter. See <a href="#">Section 6.34</a>

*Simultaneous\_LE\_Host:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Simultaneous_LE_Host parameter. See <a href="#">Section 6.35</a>

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_LE_Host_Support command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Write_LE_Host_Support command failed. See " <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_LE\_Host\_Support command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.80 Set MWS Channel Parameters Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_MWS_Channel_Parameters	0x006E	MWS_Channel_Enable MWS_RX_Center_Frequency, MWS_TX_Center_Frequency, MWS_RX_Channel_Bandwidth, MWS_TX_Channel_Bandwidth, MWS_Channel_Type	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_MWS\_Channel\_Parameters command is used to inform the Controller of the MWS channel parameters.

The MWS\_Channel\_Enable parameter is used to enable or disable the MWS channel.

The MWS\_RX\_Center\_Frequency and MWS\_TX\_Center\_Frequency parameters are used to indicate the center frequency of the MWS device's uplink (TX) and downlink (RX) channels. Note that the uplink and downlink channel centers may be the same value or different values.

The MWS\_RX\_Channel\_Bandwidth and MWS\_TX\_Channel\_Bandwidth parameters are used to indicate the bandwidth, in kHz, of the MWS device's uplink and downlink channels.

The MWS\_Channel\_Type parameter describes the type of channel. The types are defined in the [Bluetooth Assigned Numbers](#).

#### Command Parameters:

##### MWS\_Channel\_Enable:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	MWS channel is disabled.
0x01	MWS channel is enabled.
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved.

##### MWS\_RX\_Center\_Frequency:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXX	MWS RX center frequency in MHz.

**MWS\_TX\_Center\_Frequency:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS TX center frequency in MHz

**MWS\_RX\_Channel\_Bandwidth:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS RX channel bandwidth in kHz.

**MWS\_TX\_Channel\_Bandwidth:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS TX channel bandwidth in kHz.

**MWS\_Channel\_Type:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	See <a href="#">Bluetooth Assigned numbers</a> .

**Return Parameters:****Status:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Set_MWS_Channel_Parameters command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_MWS_Channel_Parameters command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> , for error codes and descriptions

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_MWS\_Channel\_Parameters command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.81 Set External Frame Configuration Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_External_Frame_Configuration	0x006F	Ext_Frame_Duration, Ext_Frame_Sync Assert_Offset, Ext_Frame_Sync Assert_Jitter, Ext_Num_Periods, Period_Duration[i], Period_Type[i]	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_External\_Frame\_Configuration command allows the Host to specify a frame configuration for an external collocated MWS system. This frame configuration persists until overwritten with a subsequent Set\_External\_Frame\_Configuration or until the Primary Controller is reset.

This command may be supported by a device that declares support for the Coarse Clock Adjustment feature. It may be used to allow the Controller to align the piconet clock with an external frame structure.

When the external frame structure is a multiple of 1.25 ms, it can be aligned in a stable manner with the piconet clock.

The start of the external frame structure is defined as an offset from an external frame synchronization signal. This offset is defined by the Ext\_Frame\_Sync Assert\_Offset parameter. The offset is represented as the time (in microseconds) from the start of the next MWS frame to the FRAME\_SYNC signal.

An external frame consists of downlink periods, uplink periods and guard periods. Downlink means the collocated MWS system is receiving, thus may be interfered with by Bluetooth transmissions. Uplink means the collocated MWS system is transmitting, thus may cause interference to Bluetooth receptions. A guard period may be used by the MWS system to compensate for propagation delays; in this case it should be regarded as split equally between downlink and uplink durations.

The number of specified periods is given by Ext\_Num\_Periods.

The duration in microseconds of each period is defined by the Period\_Duration[i] parameters.

The Period\_Type[i] parameter indicates if the specified period is an uplink, downlink, bi-directional or guard period.

The sum of all Period\_Duration[i] parameters shall be equal to the Ext\_Frame\_Duration parameter.

**Command Parameters:***Ext\_Frame\_Duration:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	External frame duration in microseconds (unsigned integer)

*Ext\_Frame\_Sync Assert\_Offset:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	External frame offset in microseconds (signed integer)

*Ext\_Frame\_Sync Assert\_Jitter:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	External frame sync jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer)

*Ext\_Num\_Periods:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N	Number of specified periods in an external frame. Valid range: 1 to 32 (unsigned integer)

*Period\_Duration[i]:*Size: *Ext\_Num\_Periods* \* 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Duration of the [i] period in microseconds (unsigned integer)

*Period\_Type[i]:*Size: *Ext\_Num\_Periods* \* 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Downlink
0x01	Uplink
0x02	Bi-Directional
0x03	Guard Period
0x04-0xFF	Reserved

**Return Parameters:****Status:****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_External_Frame_Configuration command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_External_Frame_Configuration command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> , for error codes and descriptions

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_External\_Frame\_Configuration command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.82 Set MWS Signaling Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_MWS_Signaling	0x0070	MWS_RX Assert Offset, MWS_RX Assert Jitter, MWS_RX Deassert Offset, MWS_RX Deassert Jitter, MWS_TX Assert Offset, MWS_TX Assert Jitter, MWS_TX Deassert Offset, MWS_TX Deassert Jitter, MWS_Pattern Assert Offset, MWS_Pattern Assert Jitter, MWS_Inactivity_Duration Assert Offset, MWS_Inactivity_Duration Assert Jitter, MWS_Scan_Frequency Assert Offset, MWS_Scan_Frequency Assert Jitter, MWS_Priority Assert Offset Request	Status, Bluetooth_Rx_Priority Assert_Offset, Bluetooth_Rx_Priority Assert_Jitter, Bluetooth_Rx_Priority Deassert_Offset, Bluetooth_Rx_Priority Deassert_Jitter, 802_Rx_Priority Assert_Offset, 802_Rx_Priority Assert_Jitter, 802_Rx_Priority Deassert_Offset, 802_Rx_Priority Deassert_Jitter, Bluetooth_Tx_On Assert_Offset, Bluetooth_Tx_On Assert_Jitter, Bluetooth_Tx_On Deassert_Offset, Bluetooth_Tx_On Deassert_Jitter, 802_Tx_On Assert_Offset, 802_Tx_On Assert_Jitter, 802_Tx_On Deassert_Offset, 802_Tx_On Deassert_Jitter

#### Description:

The Set\_MWS\_Signaling command is used to inform the Bluetooth Controller of the MWS signaling interface logical layer parameters.

All signals are defined in [\[Vol 7\] Part A](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*MWS\_RX Assert Offset:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	MWS_RX signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

**MWS\_RX Assert Jitter:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_RX signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

**MWS\_RX Deassert Offset:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_RX signal de-assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

**MWS\_RX Deassert Jitter:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_RX signal de-assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

**MWS\_TX Assert Offset:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_TX signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

**MWS\_TX Assert Jitter:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_TX signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

**MWS\_TX Deassert Offset:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_TX signal de-assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

**MWS\_TX Deassert Jitter:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_TX signal de-assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

**MWS\_Pattern Assert Offset:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_PATTERN signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

**MWS\_Pattern Assert Jitter:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_PATTERN signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification***MWS\_Inactivity\_Duration Assert\_Offset:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_INACTIVITY_DURATION signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

**MWS\_Inactivity\_Duration Assert\_Jitter:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_INACTIVITY_DURATION signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

**MWS\_Scan\_Frequency Assert\_Offset:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_SCAN_FREQUENCY signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

**MWS\_Scan\_Frequency Assert\_Jitter:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	MWS_SCAN_FREQUENCY signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

**MWS\_Priority Assert\_Offset\_Request:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Minimum advance notification from the beginning of an MWS Uplink period in microseconds (unsigned integer) before which the BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI or 802_RX_PRI signal shall be asserted to be recognized by the MWS.

**Return Parameters:****Status:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Set_MWS_Signaling command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_MWS_Signaling command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> , for error codes and descriptions

**Bluetooth\_RX\_Priority Assert\_Offset:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

*Bluetooth\_RX\_Priority Assert Jitter:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

*Bluetooth\_RX\_Priority Deassert Offset:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI signal de-assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

*802\_RX\_Bluetooth\_RX\_Priority\_Deassert\_Jitter:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI signal de-assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

*Priority Assert Offset:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	802_RX_PRI signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

*802\_RX\_Priority Assert Jitter:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	802_RX_PRI signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

*802\_RX\_Priority Deassert Offset:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	802_RX_PRI signal de-assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

*802\_RX\_Priority Deassert Jitter:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	802_RX_PRI signal de-assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

*Bluetooth\_TX\_On Assert Offset:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	BLUETOOTH_TX_ON signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

***Bluetooth\_TX\_On Assert Jitter:***

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	BLUETOOTH_TX_ON signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

***Bluetooth\_TX\_On Deassert Offset:***

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	BLUETOOTH_TX_ON signal de-assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

***Bluetooth\_TX\_On Deassert Jitter:***

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	BLUETOOTH_TX_ON signal de-assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

***802\_TX\_On Assert Offset:***

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	802_TX_ON signal assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

***802\_TX\_On Assert Jitter:***

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	802_TX_ON signal assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

***802\_TX\_On Deassert Offset:***

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	802_TX_ON signal de-assert offset in microseconds (signed integer).

***802\_TX\_On Deassert Jitter:***

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	802_TX_ON signal de-assert jitter in microseconds (unsigned integer).

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_MWS\_Signaling command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.83 Set MWS Transport Layer Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_MWS_Transport_Layer	0x0071	Transport_Layer, To_MWS_Baud_Rate, From_MWS_Baud_Rate	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_MWS\_Transport\_Layer command configures the transport layer between the Bluetooth Controller and MWS device.

#### Command Parameters:

*Transport\_Layer:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	See <a href="#">Bluetooth Assigned numbers</a> .

*To\_MWS\_Baud\_Rate:* Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX	Baud rate in the Bluetooth to MWS direction in Baud.

*From\_MWS\_Baud\_Rate:* Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX	Baud rate in the MWS to Bluetooth direction in Baud.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_MWS_Transport_Layer command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_MWS_Transport_Layer command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> , for error codes and descriptions

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Set\_MWS\_Transport\_Layer command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.84 Set MWS Scan Frequency Table Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_MWS_Scan_Frequency_Table	0x0072	Num_Scan_Frequencies, Scan_Frequency_Low[i], Scan_Frequency_High[i]	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_MWS\_Scan\_Frequency\_Table command configures the MWS scan frequency table in the Controller.

The Num\_Scan\_Frequencies parameter indicates the number of MWS scan frequencies to be set. A Controller shall support at least 8 table entries.

The Scan\_Frequency\_Low[i] and Scan\_Frequency\_High[i] parameters indicate the lower and upper edges for each scan frequency.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Num\_Scan\_Frequencies:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N	Number of MWS scan frequencies to be set in the table.

##### Scan\_Frequency\_Low[i]:

Size: Num\_Scan\_Frequencies \* 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Lower edge of the MWS scan frequency in MHz (unsigned integer).

##### Scan\_Frequency\_High[i]:

Size: Num\_Scan\_Frequencies \* 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Upper edge of the MWS scan frequency in MHz (unsigned integer).

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_MWS_Scan_Frequency_Table command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_MWS_Scan_Frequency_Table command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> , for error codes and descriptions

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_MWS\_Scan\_Frequency\_Table command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.85 Set MWS\_PATTERN Configuration Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_MWS_PATTERN_Configuration	0x0073	MWS_PATTERN_Index, MWS_PATTERN_NumIntervals, MWS_PATTERN_IntervalDuration[i], MWS_PATTERN_IntervalType[i]	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_MWS\_PATTERN\_Configuration command is used by the Host to specify, in conjunction with the Set\_External\_Frame\_Configuration command, local MWS\_PATTERN parameters for an external collocated system.

An MWS\_PATTERN configuration shall persist until overwritten by a subsequent Set\_MWS\_PATTERN\_Configuration or Set\_External\_Frame\_Configuration command, or until the Primary Controller is reset.

#### Command Parameters:

*MWS\_PATTERN\_Index*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Index of the MWS_PATTERN instance to be configured. Range is 0-2.

*MWS\_PATTERN\_NumIntervals*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	The number of intervals in the following array.

*MWS\_PATTERN\_IntervalDuration[i]*:

Size: *MWS\_PATTERN\_NumInterval* \* 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXX	An array specifying the duration of Bluetooth activity intervals in microseconds.

**MWS\_PATTERN\_IntervalType[i]:**

Size: MWS\_PATTERN\_NumInterval \* 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	An array specifying the types of permitted Bluetooth activities in each interval: 0. Neither transmission nor reception is allowed. 1. Transmission is allowed. 2. Reception is allowed. 3. Both transmission and reception are allowed. 4. Interval for the MWS frame as defined by the Set_Exter- nal_Frame_Configuration command.

**Return Parameters:****Status:**

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_MWS_PATTERN_Configuration command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Set_MWS_PATTERN_Configuration command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_MWS\_PATTERN\_Configuration command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.86 Set Reserved LT\_ADDR Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Reserved_LT_ADDR	0x0074	LT_ADDR	Status, LT_ADDR

#### Description:

The Set\_Reserved\_LT\_ADDR command allows the Host to request that the BR/EDR Controller reserve a specific LT\_ADDR for Connectionless Slave Broadcast.

If the LT\_ADDR indicated in the LT\_ADDR parameter is already in use by the BR/EDR Controller, it shall return the ACL Connection Already Exists (0x0B) error code. If the LT\_ADDR indicated in the LT\_ADDR parameter is out of range, the controller shall return the Invalid HCI Command Parameters (0x12) error code. If the command succeeds, then the reserved LT\_ADDR shall be used when issuing subsequent Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Data and Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast commands.

To ensure that the reserved LT\_ADDR is not already allocated, it is recommended that this command be issued at some point after HCI\_Reset is issued but before page scanning is enabled or paging is initiated.

#### Command Parameters:

##### LT\_ADDR:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR to reserve for Connectionless Slave Broadcast
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_Reserved_LT_ADDR command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Reserved_LT_ADDR command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions.

**LT\_ADDR:****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR reserved for Connectionless Slave Broadcast. This parameter shall have the same value as the Command Parameter LT_ADDR.
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_Reserved\_LT\_ADDR command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.87 Delete Reserved LT\_ADDR Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Delete_Reserve_LT_ADDR	0x0075	LT_ADDR	Status, LT_ADDR

#### Description:

The Delete\_Reserve\_LT\_ADDR command requests that the BR/EDR Controller cancel the reservation for a specific LT\_ADDR reserved for the purposes of Connectionless Slave Broadcast.

If the LT\_ADDR indicated in the LT\_ADDR parameter is not reserved by the BR/EDR Controller, it shall return the Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02) error code.

If connectionless slave broadcast mode is still active, then the Controller shall return the Command Disallowed (0x0C) error code.

#### Command Parameters:

##### LT\_ADDR:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR currently reserved for Connectionless Slave Broadcast and for which reservation is to be cancelled
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Set_Reserve_LT_ADDR command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Reserve_LT_ADDR command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions.

##### LT\_ADDR:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR whose reservation the Host has requested to cancel.
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Delete\_Reserve\_LT\_ADDR command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.88 Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Data Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast_Data	0x0076	LT_ADDR, Fragment, Data_Length, Data	Status, LT_ADDR

#### Description:

The Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast\_Data command provides the ability for the Host to set Connectionless Slave Broadcast data in the BR/EDR Controller. This command may be issued at any time after an LT\_ADDR has been reserved regardless of whether connectionless slave broadcast mode has been enabled or disabled by the Enable parameter in the Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast command. If the command is issued without the LT\_ADDR reserved, the Unknown Connection Identifier (0X02) error code shall be returned.

If connectionless slave broadcast mode is disabled, this data shall be kept by the BR/EDR Controller and used once connectionless slave broadcast mode is enabled. If connectionless slave broadcast mode is enabled, and this command is successful, this data will be sent starting with the next Connectionless Slave Broadcast instant.

The Data\_Length field may be zero, in which case no data needs to be provided.

The Host may fragment the data using the Fragment field in the command. If the combined length of the fragments exceeds the capacity of the largest allowed packet size specified in the Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast command, all fragments associated with the data being assembled shall be discarded and the Invalid HCI Command Parameters error (0x12) shall be returned.

#### Command Parameters:

##### LT\_ADDR:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR on which to send Connectionless Slave Broadcast data
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Fragment:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Continuation fragment
0x01	Starting fragment
0x02	Ending fragment
0x03	No fragmentation (single fragment)
0x04-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Data\_Length:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Length of the Data field

*Data:**Size: Data\_Length Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
Variable	Data to send in future Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets. This data will be repeated in future Connectionless Slave Broadcast instants until new data is provided

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast_Data command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast_Data command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions

*LT\_ADDR:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR on which Connectionless Slave Broadcast data will be sent
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast\_Data command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.89 Read Synchronization Train Parameters Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Synchronization_Train_Parameters	0x0077	None	Status, Sync_Train_Interval, synchronization_trainTO, Service_Data

#### Description:

The Read\_Synchronization\_Train\_Parameters command returns the currently configured values for the Synchronization Train functionality in the master's BR/EDR Controller. This command may be issued at any time.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Synchronization_Train_Parameters command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Synchronization_Train_Parameters command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions.

*Sync\_Train\_Interval:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXXXX	Interval in slots between consecutive Synchronization Train events on the same channel. Range: 0x0020-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

*synchronization\_trainTO:* Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXXXXXX	Duration in slots to continue sending the synchronization train Range: 0x00000002 - 0x07FFFFFF; only even values are valid

*Service\_Data:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Host provided value included in Synchronization Train packet, octet 27; see <a href="#">Table 8.8 ([Vol. 2], Part B, Section 8.11.2 on page 207)</a>

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Read\_Synchronization\_Train\_Parameters command, it shall send a Command Complete event to the Host.

### 7.3.90 Write Synchronization Train Parameters Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Synchronization_Train_Parameters	0x0078	Interval_Min, Interval_Max, synchronization_trainTO, Service_Data	Status, Sync_Train_Interval

#### Description:

The Write\_Synchronization\_Train\_Parameters command configures the Synchronization Train functionality in the BR/EDR Controller. This command may be issued at any time.

Note: The AFH\_Channel\_Map used in the Synchronization Train packets is configured by the Set\_AFH\_Channel\_Classification command and the local channel classification in the BR/EDR Controller.

Interval\_Min and Interval\_Max specify the allowed range of Sync\_Train\_Interval. Refer to [\[Vol. 2\], Part B, Section 2.7.2 on page 99](#) for a detailed description of Sync\_Train\_Interval. The BR/EDR Controller shall select an interval from this range and return it in Sync\_Train\_Interval. If the Controller is unable to select a value from this range, it shall return the Invalid HCI Command Parameters (0x12) error code.

Once started (via the Start\_Synchronization\_Train Command) the Synchronization Train will continue until synchronization\_trainTO slots have passed or Connectionless Slave Broadcast has been disabled.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Interval\_Min:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Minimum value allowed for the interval Sync_Train_Interval in slots. Range: 0x0020-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

##### Interval\_Max:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Maximum value allowed for the interval Sync_Train_Interval in slots. Range: 0x0020-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification**synchronization\_trainTO :**Size: 4 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0XXXXXXXXX	Duration in slots to continue sending the synchronization train Range: 0x0000 0002-0x07FF FFFE; only even values are valid

*Service\_Data:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Host provided value to be included in octet 27 of the Synchronization Train packet payload body; see <a href="#">Table 8.8 ([Vol. 2], Part B, Section 8.11.2 on page 207)</a> .

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Write_Synchronization_Train_Parameters command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Synchronization_Train_Parameters command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions.

*Sync\_Train\_Interval:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0XXXXX	Interval in slots between consecutive Synchronization Train packets on the same channel. Range: 0x0020-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the BR/EDR Controller receives the Write\_Synchronization\_Train\_Parameters command, it shall send a Command Complete event to the Host.

### 7.3.91 Read Secure Connections Host Support Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Secure_Connections_Host_Support	0x0079		Status, Secure_Connections_Host_Support

#### Description:

This command reads the Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support parameter in the BR/EDR Controller. When Secure Connections Host Support is set to 'enabled' the Controller uses the enhanced reporting mechanisms for the Encryption\_Enabled parameter in the Encryption Change event (see [Section 7.7.8](#)) and the Key\_Type parameter in the Link Key Notification event (see [Section 7.7.24](#)).

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Secure_Connections_Host_Command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Secure_Connections_Host_Command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Secure_Connections_Host_Support is 'disabled'. Host does not support Secure Connections (default)
0x01	Secure_Connections_Host_Support is 'enabled'. Host supports Secure Connections
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.92 Write Secure Connections Host Support Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Secure_Connections_Host_Support	0x007A	Secure_Connections_Host_Support	Status

#### Description:

This command writes the Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support parameter in the BR/EDR Controller. When Secure Connections Host Support is set to 'enabled' the Controller shall use the enhanced reporting mechanisms for the Encryption\_Enabled parameter in the Encryption Change event (see [Section 7.7.8](#)) and the Key\_Type parameter in the Link Key Notification event (see [Section 7.7.24](#)). This parameter shall be written before initiating page scan or paging procedures otherwise this command shall be rejected with error code *Command Disallowed* (0x0C).

The Link Manager Secure Connections (Host Support) feature bit shall be set to the Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support parameter. The default value for Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support shall be 'disabled.' When Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support is set to 'enabled,' the bit in the LMP features mask indicating support for Secure Connections (Host Support) shall be set to enabled in subsequent responses to an LMP\_feature\_req from a remote device.

#### Command Parameters:

*Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Secure_Connections_Host_Support is 'disabled'. Host does not support Secure Connections (default)
0x01	Secure_Connections_Host_Support is 'enabled'. Host supports Secure Connections
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Secure_Connections_Host_Support command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Secure_Connections_Host_Support command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.93 Read Authenticated Payload Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Authenticated_Payload_Timeout	0x007B	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle, Authenticated_Payload_Timeout

#### Description:

This command reads the Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout (authenticatedPayloadTO, see [\[Vol 2\] Part B, Section , Appendix B: Timers and](#) [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.4, LE Authenticated Payload Timeout](#) for the LE connection) parameter in the BR/EDR Controller on the specified Connection\_Handle.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Authenticated_Payload_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Authenticated_Payload_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout:****Size: 2 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXX	Maximum amount of time specified between packets authenticated by a MIC. Default = 0x0BB8 (30 seconds) Range: 0x0001 to 0xFFFF Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 10 msec to 655,350 msec

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.94 Write Authenticated Payload Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Authenticated_Payload_Timeout	0x007C	Connection_Handle, Authenticated_Payload_Timeout	Status, Connection_Handle

**Description:**

This command writes the Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout (authenticatedPayloadTO, see [\[Vol 2\] Part B, Section , Appendix B: Timers and](#) [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.4, LE Authenticated Payload Timeout](#) for the LE connection) parameter in the Primary Controller for the specified Connection\_Handle.

When the Connection\_Handle identifies a BR/EDR ACL connection:

- If the connection is in sniff mode, the Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout shall be equal to or greater than  $T_{sniff}$ .
- If the connection is in sniff subrating mode, the Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout shall be equal to or greater than  $(max\ subrate)xT_{sniff}$ .
- If the connection is in hold mode, the Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout shall be equal to or greater than the *holdTO* value.
- If the connection is in Park mode, this command shall be rejected with the error code *Command Disallowed* (0x0C).

When the Connection\_Handle identifies a BR/EDR synchronous connection, this command shall be rejected with the error code *Command Disallowed* (0x0C).

When the Connection\_Handle identifies an LE connection, the Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout shall be equal to or greater than  $connInterval * (1 + connSlaveLatency)$ .

When the Connection\_Handle is associated with an ACL connection, the Link Manager will use this parameter to determine when to use the LMP ping sequence.

When the Connection\_Handle is associated with an LE connection, the Link Layer will use this parameter to determine when to use the LE ping sequence.

**Command Parameters:**

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout*: Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Maximum amount of time specified between packets authenticated by a valid MIC. Range: 0x0001 to 0xFFFF Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 10 msec to 655,350 msec

**Return Parameters:**

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Authenticated_Payload_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Authenticated_Payload_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.95 Read Local OOB Extended Data Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_OOB_Extended_Data	0x007D		Status, C_192, R_192, C_256, R_256

#### Description:

This command obtains Simple Pairing Hash C\_192, Simple Pairing Randomizer R\_192, Simple Pairing Hash C\_256, and Simple Pairing Randomizer R\_256, which are intended to be transferred to a remote device using an OOB mechanism. The BR/EDR Controller shall create new values for C\_192, R\_192, C\_256, and R\_256 for each invocation of this command. Each random number (R\_192 and R\_256) shall be created according to [\[Vol 2\] Part H, Section 2, Random Number Generation](#).

Note: Each OOB transfer will have unique C\_192, R\_192, C\_256, and R\_256 values so after each OOB transfer this command shall be used to obtain a new set of values for the next OOB transfer.

Note: The Controller keeps information used to generate these values for later use in the simple pairing process. If the BR/EDR Controller is powered off or reset then this information is lost and the values obtained before the power off or reset are invalid.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_OOB_Extended_Data command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Local_OOB_Extended_Data command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

C\_192:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX	Simple Pairing Hash C derived from the P-192 public key.

R\_192:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX	Simple Pairing Randomizer associated with the P-192 public key.

C\_256:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX	Simple Pairing Hash C derived from the P-256 public key.

R\_256:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX	Simple Pairing Randomizer associated with the P-256 public key.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Local\_OOB\_Extended\_Data command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.96 Read Extended Page Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Extended_Page_Timeout	0x007E		Status, Extended_Page_Timeout

#### Description:

The Read\_Extended\_Page\_Timeout command will read the value for the Extended\_Page\_Timeout configuration parameter. See [Section 6.41](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Extended_Page_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0x0F	Read_Extended_Page_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Extended\_Page\_Timeout:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Extended Page Timeout measured in Number of Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0000 ( <b>default</b> ) – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0 - 40.9 Seconds

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Extended\_Page\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.97 Write Extended Page Timeout Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Extended_Page_Timeout	0x007F	Extended_Page_Timeout	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_Extended\_Page\_Timeout command will write the value for the Extended\_Page\_Timeout configuration parameter.

The Extended\_Page\_Timeout configuration parameter defines the maximum time after the Page\_Timeout expires that the local Link Manager may wait for a baseband page response from the remote device at a locally initiated connection attempt. If this time expires and the remote device has not responded to the page at baseband level, the connection attempt will be considered to have failed.

#### Command Parameters:

*Extended\_Page\_Timeout:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0	Default
N = 0xFFFF	Extended Page Timeout measured in Number of Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0 - 40.9 Seconds Mandatory Range for Controller: 0x0000 to 0xFFFF

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Extended_Page_Timeout command succeeded.
0x01-0x0F	Write_Extended_Page_Timeout command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Extended\_Page\_Timeout command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.98 Read Extended Inquiry Length Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Extended_Inquiry_Length	0x0080		Status, Extended_Inquiry_Length

#### Description:

The Read\_Extended\_Inquiry\_Length command will read the value for the Extended\_Inquiry\_Length configuration parameter. See [Section 6.42](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

Status:	Size: 1 Octet
0x00	Read_Extended_Inquiry_Length command succeeded.
0x01-0x0F	Read_Extended_Inquiry_Length command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Extended\_Inquiry\_Length:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Extended_Inquiry_Length measured in Number of Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0000 ( <b>default</b> ) – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0 - 40.9 Seconds

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Extended\_Inquiry\_Length command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.3.99 Write Extended Inquiry Length Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Extended_Inquiry_Length	0x0081	Extended_Inquiry_Length	Status

#### Description:

The Write\_Extended\_Inquiry\_Length command will write the value for the Extended\_Inquiry\_Length configuration parameter.

The Extended\_Inquiry\_Length configuration parameter defines the maximum time after the Inquiry\_Length expires that the local Link Manager may wait for a baseband inquiry response from the remote device at a locally initiated connection attempt. If this time expires and the remote device has not responded to the inquiry at baseband level, the inquiry will be considered to have failed.

#### Command Parameters:

*Extended\_Inquiry\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0	Default
0xFFFF	Extended_Inquiry_Length measured in Number of Baseband slots. Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0 - 40.9 Seconds

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Extended_Inquiry_Length command succeeded.
0x01-0x0F	Write_Extended_Inquiry_Length command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Extended\_Inquiry\_Length command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

## 7.4 INFORMATIONAL PARAMETERS

The Informational Parameters are fixed by the manufacturer of the Bluetooth hardware. These parameters provide information about the BR/EDR Controller and the capabilities of the Link Manager and Baseband in the BR/EDR Controller and PAL in the AMP Controller. The host device cannot modify any of these parameters.

For Informational Parameters Commands, the OGF is defined as 0x04.

### 7.4.1 Read Local Version Information Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_Version_Information	0x0001		Status, HCI Version, HCI Revision, LMP Version, Manufacturer_Name, LMP Subversion

#### Description:

This command reads the values for the version information for the local Controller.

The HCI Version information defines the version information of the HCI layer. The LMP/PAL Version information defines the version of the LMP or PAL. The Manufacturer\_Name information indicates the manufacturer of the local device.

The HCI Revision and LMP/PAL Subversion are implementation dependent.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_Version_Information command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Local_Version_Information command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*HCI\_Version:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
See Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a>	

*HCI\_Revision:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Revision of the Current HCI in the BR/EDR Controller.

*LMP/PAL\_Version:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFF	Version of the Current LMP or PAL in the Controller. See Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a>

*Manufacturer\_Name:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Manufacturer Name of the BR/EDR Controller. See Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a>

*LMP/PAL\_Subversion:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Subversion of the Current LMP or PAL in the Controller. This value is implementation dependent.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Local\_Version\_Information command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.4.2 Read Local Supported Commands Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_Supported_Commands	0x0002		Status, Supported_Commands

#### Description:

This command reads the list of HCI commands supported for the local Controller.

This command shall return the Supported\_Commands configuration parameter. It is implied that if a command is listed as supported, the feature underlying that command is also supported.

See [Section 6.27 on page 498](#) for more information.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0	Read_Local_Supported_Commands command succeeded
0x01-0xff	Read_Local_Supported_Commands command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Supported Commands:** Size: 64 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	Bit mask for each HCI Command. If a bit is 1, the Controller supports the corresponding command and the features required for the command. Unsupported or undefined commands shall be set to 0. See <a href="#">section 6.27, “Supported Commands,” on page 498</a> .

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Local\_Supported\_Commands command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.4.3 Read Local Supported Features Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_Supported_Features	0x0003		Status, LMP_Features

#### Description:

This command requests a list of the supported features for the local BR/EDR Controller. This command will return a list of the LMP features. For details see [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_Supported_Features command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Local_Supported_Features command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> .

*LMP\_Features:* *Size: 8 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX	Bit Mask List of LMP features. For details see <a href="#">Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227</a> .

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Local\_Supported\_Features command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

#### 7.4.4 Read Local Extended Features Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_Extended_Features	0x0004	Page number	Status, Page number, Maximum Page Number, Extended_LMP_Features

##### Description:

The Read\_Local\_Extended\_Features command returns the requested page of the extended LMP features.

##### Command Parameters:

*Page Number:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Requests the normal LMP features as returned by Read_Local_Supported_Features.
0x01-0xFF	Return the corresponding page of features.

##### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_Extended_Features command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Read_Local_Extended_Features command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for list of error codes.

*Page Number:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	The normal LMP features as returned by Read_Local_Supported_Features.
0x01-0xFF	The page number of the features returned.

*Maximum Page Number:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00-0xFF	The highest features page number which contains non-zero bits for the local device.

*Extended\_LMP\_Features:*

Size: 8 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF	Bit map of requested page of LMP features. See LMP specification for details.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Local\_Extended\_Features command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.4.5 Read Buffer Size Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Buffer_Size	0x0005		Status, HC_ACL_Data_Packet_Length, HC_Synchronous_Data_Packet_Length, HC_Total_Num_ACL_Data_Packets, HC_Total_Num_Synchronous_Data_Packets

#### Description:

The Read\_Buffer\_Size command is used to read the maximum size of the data portion of HCI ACL and synchronous Data Packets sent from the Host to the Controller. The Host will segment the data to be transmitted from the Host to the Controller according to these sizes, so that the HCI Data Packets will contain data with up to these sizes. The Read\_Buffer\_Size command also returns the total number of HCI ACL and synchronous Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Controller. The Read\_Buffer\_Size command must be issued by the Host before it sends any data to the Controller.

For a device supporting BR/EDR and LE, if the LE\_Read\_Buffer\_Size command returned zero for the number of buffers, then buffers returned by Read\_Buffer\_Size are shared between BR/EDR and LE.

On an Primary Controller that supports LE only, the Read\_Buffer\_Size command shall not be supported (the LE\_Read\_Buffer\_Size command is to be used in this case).

The HC\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length return parameter will be used to determine the size of the L2CAP segments contained in ACL Data Packets, which are transferred from the Host to the Controller to be broken up into baseband packets by the Link Manager. The HC\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packet\_Length return parameter is used to determine the maximum size of HCI synchronous Data Packets. Both the Host and the Controller must support command and event packets, where the data portion (excluding header) contained in the packets is 255 octets in size. The HC\_Total\_Num\_ACL\_Data\_Packets return parameter contains the total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Controller. The Host will determine how the buffers are to be divided between different Connection Handles. The HC\_Total\_Num\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packets return parameter gives the same information but for HCI synchronous Data Packets.

Note: The HC\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length and HC\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packet\_Length return parameters do not include the length of the HCI Data Packet header.

**Command Parameters:**

None.

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Buffer_Size command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Buffer_Size command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*HC\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Maximum length (in octets) of the data portion of each HCI ACL Data Packet that the Controller is able to accept.

*HC\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packet\_Length:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Maximum length (in octets) of the data portion of each HCI Synchronous Data Packet that the Controller is able to accept.

*HC\_Total\_Num\_ACL\_Data\_Packets:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Controller.

*HC\_Total\_Num\_Synchronous\_Data\_Packets:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Total number of HCI Synchronous Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Controller.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Buffer\_Size command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.4.6 Read BD\_ADDR Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_BD_ADDR	0x0009		Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

On a BR/EDR Controller, this command reads the Bluetooth Controller address (BD\_ADDR). See the [Part B, Baseband Specification on page 59](#) for details of how BD\_ADDR is used (see [\[Vol 3\] Part C, Section 3.2.1](#)).

On an LE Controller, this command shall read the Public Device Address as defined in [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 1.3, Device Address](#). If this Controller does not have a Public Device Address, the value 0x000000000000 shall be returned.

On a BR/EDR/LE Controller, the public address shall be the same as the BD\_ADDR.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_BD_ADDR command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_BD_ADDR command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**BD\_ADDR:** Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Device

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_BD\_ADDR command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.4.7 Read Data Block Size Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Data_Block_Size	0x000A		Status, Max_ACL_Data_Packet_Length, Data_Block_Length, Total_Num_Data_Blocks

#### Description:

The Read\_Data\_Block\_Size command is used to read values regarding the maximum permitted data transfers over the Controller and the data buffering available in the Controller.

The Host uses this information when fragmenting data for transmission, and when performing block-based flow control, based on the Number Of Completed Data Blocks event. The Read\_Data\_Block\_Size command shall be issued by the Host before it sends any data to the Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Data_Block_Size command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Data_Block_Size command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Max\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Maximum length (in octets) of the data portion of an HCI ACL Data Packet that the Controller is able to accept for transmission. For AMP Controllers this always equals to Max_PDU_Size.

*Data\_Block\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Maximum length (in octets) of the data portion of each HCI ACL Data Packet that the Controller is able to hold in each of its data block buffers.

**Total\_Num\_Data\_Blocks:****Size: 2 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Total number of data block buffers available in the Controller for the storage of data packets scheduled for transmission.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Data\_Block\_Size command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.4.8 Read Local Supported Codecs Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_Supported_Codecs	0x000B		Status, Number_of_Supported_Codecs, Supported_Codecs[i], Number_of_Supported_Vendor_Specific_Codecs, Vendor_Specific_Codecs[i]

#### Description:

This command reads a list of the Bluetooth SIG approved codecs supported by the Controller, as well as vendor specific codecs, which are defined by an individual manufacturer.

#### Command Parameters:

None

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_Supported_Codecs command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	Read_Local_Supported_Codecs command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Number\_of\_Supported\_Codecs:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Total number of codecs supported

**Supported\_Codecs[i]:** Size: 1 \* Number\_of\_Supported\_Codecs Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX, 0xXX, ...	An array of codec identifiers. <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Codec_Type

**Number\_of\_Supported\_Vendor\_Specific\_Codecs:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Total number of vendor specific codecs supported

*Vendor\_Specific\_Codecs[i]:*

*Size: 4 \* Number\_of\_Supported\_Vendor\_Specific\_Codecs*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXX	Octets 0 and 1: Company ID, see <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> for Company Identifier Octets 2 and 3: Vendor defined codec ID

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Local\_Supported\_Codecs command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

## 7.5 STATUS PARAMETERS

The Controller modifies all status parameters. These parameters provide information about the current state of the Link Manager and Baseband in the BR/EDR Controller and the PAL in an AMP Controller. The host device cannot modify any of these parameters other than to reset certain specific parameters.

For the Status Parameters Commands, the OGF is defined as 0x05.

### 7.5.1 Read Failed Contact Counter Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Failed_Contact_Counter	0x0001	Handle	Status, Handle, Failed_Contact_Counter

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the Failed\_Contact\_Counter parameter for a particular connection to another device. The Handle shall be a Handle for an ACL connection. See [Section 6.15 on page 492](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Handle for the Connection for which the Failed Contact Counter should be read. The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Logical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Failed_Contact_Counter command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Failed_Contact_Counter command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Handle:****Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	The Handle for the connection for which the Failed Contact Counter has been read. The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Logical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Failed\_Contact\_Counter:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Number of consecutive failed contacts for a connection corresponding to the Handle.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Failed\_Contact\_Counter command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.2 Reset Failed Contact Counter Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Reset_Failed_Contact_Counter	0x0002	Handle	Status, Handle

#### Description:

This command resets the value for the Failed\_Contact\_Counter parameter for a particular connection to another device. The Handle shall be a Handle for an ACL connection. See [Section 6.15 on page 492](#).

#### Command Parameters:

**Handle:** *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Handle for the connection for which the Failed Contact Counter should be reset.  The Handle is a Connection Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Logical Link Handle for an AMP Controller.  Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Reset_Failed_Contact_Counter command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Reset_Failed_Contact_Counter command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Handle:** *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Handle for the connection for which the Failed Contact Counter has been reset.  The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Logical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller.  Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Reset\_Failed\_Contact\_Counter command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.3 Read Link Quality Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Link_Quality	0x0003	Handle	Status, Handle, Link_Quality

#### Description:

This command returns the value for the Link\_Quality for the specified Handle. The Handle shall be a Handle for an ACL connection. This command shall return a Link\_Quality value from 0-255, which represents the quality of the link between two BR/EDR Controllers. The higher the value, the better the link quality is. Each Bluetooth module vendor will determine how to measure the link quality.

The Read\_Link\_Quality command is provided by AMPs. The meaning of the link quality metric is AMP type specific and defined in the AMP PALS (see [Volume 5, Core System Package \[AMP Controller volume\]](#)).

#### Command Parameters:

*Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Handle for the connection for which link quality parameters are to be read.  The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Physical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller.  Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Link_Quality command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Link_Quality command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Handle:****Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	<p>The Handle for the connection for which the link quality parameter has been read.</p> <p>The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Physical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller.</p> <p>Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)</p>

**Link\_Quality:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	<p>The current quality of the Link connection between the local device and the remote device specified by the Handle.</p> <p>Range: 0x00 – 0xFF</p> <p>The higher the value, the better the link quality is.</p>

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Link\_Quality command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.4 Read RSSI Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_RSSI	0x0005	Handle	Status, Handle, RSSI

**Description:**

This command reads the Received Signal Strength Indication (RSSI) value from a Controller.

For a BR/EDR Controller, a Connection\_Handle is used as the Handle command parameter and return parameter. The RSSI parameter returns the difference between the measured Received Signal Strength Indication (RSSI) and the limits of the Golden Receive Power Range for a Connection Handle to another BR/EDR Controller. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. Any positive RSSI value returned by the Controller indicates how many dB the RSSI is above the upper limit, any negative value indicates how many dB the RSSI is below the lower limit. The value zero indicates that the RSSI is inside the Golden Receive Power Range.

Note: How accurate the dB values will be depends on the Bluetooth hardware. The only requirements for the hardware are that the BR/EDR Controller is able to tell whether the RSSI is inside, above or below the Golden Device Power Range.

The RSSI measurement compares the received signal power with two threshold levels, which define the Golden Receive Power Range. The lower threshold level corresponds to a received power between -56 dBm and 6 dB above the actual sensitivity of the receiver. The upper threshold level is 20 dB above the lower threshold level to an accuracy of +/- 6 dB.

For an AMP Controller, a Physical\_Link\_Handle is used for the Handle command parameter and return parameter. The meaning of the RSSI metric is AMP type specific and defined in the AMP PALs (see [Volume 5, Core System Package \[AMP Controller volume\]](#)).

For an LE transport, a Connection\_Handle is used as the Handle command parameter and return parameter. The meaning of the RSSI metric is an absolute receiver signal strength value in dBm to ± 6 dB accuracy. If the RSSI cannot be read, the RSSI metric shall be set to 127.

**Command Parameters:**

*Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Handle for the connection for which the RSSI is to be read. The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Physical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_RSSI command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_RSSI command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Handle for the connection for which the RSSI has been read. The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Physical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*RSSI:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
	BR/EDR Range: $-128 \leq N \leq 127$ (signed integer) Units: dB AMP: Range: AMP type specific (signed integer) Units: dBm LE: Range: -127 to 20, 127 (signed integer) Units: dBm

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_RSSI command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.5 Read AFH Channel Map Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_AFH_Channel_Map	0x0006	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle, AFH_Mode, AFH_Channel_Map

#### Description:

This command returns the values for the AFH\_Mode and AFH\_Channel\_Map for the specified Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle shall be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

The returned values indicate the state of the hop sequence specified by the most recent LMP\_Set\_AFH message for the specified Connection\_Handle, regardless of whether the master has received the baseband ACK or whether the AFH\_Instant has passed.

This command shall be supported by a device that declares support for either the AFH\_capable\_slave or AFH\_capable\_master feature.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Connection_Handle for the connection for which the Channel Map is to be read. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00-0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_AFH_Channel_Map command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_AFH_Channel_Map command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Connection_Handle for the connection for which the Channel Map is to be read. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00-0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**AFH\_Mode:**

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	AFH disabled.
0x01	AFH enabled.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**AFH\_Channel\_Map:**

Size: 10 Octets (79 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXX XXX	If AFH_Mode is AFH enabled then this parameter contains 79 1-bit fields, otherwise the contents are reserved.  The $n^{th}$ such field (in the range 0 to 78) contains the value for channel $n$ : Channel $n$ is unused = 0 Channel $n$ is used = 1  Range: 0x00000000000000000000000000000000-0x7FFFFFFFFFFFFFFF (0x80000000000000000000000000000000-0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_AFH\_Channel\_Map command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.6 Read Clock Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Clock	0x0007	Connection_Handle Which_Clock	Status, Connection_Handle, Clock, Accuracy

#### Description:

This command reads the estimate of the value of the Bluetooth Clock from the BR/EDR Controller.

If the Which\_Clock value is 0, then the Connection\_Handle shall be ignored, the local Bluetooth Clock value shall be returned and the accuracy parameter shall be set to 0.

If the Which\_Clock value is 1, then the Connection\_Handle shall be a valid ACL Connection\_Handle. If the current role of this ACL connection is Master, then the Bluetooth Clock of this device shall be returned. If the current role is Slave, then an estimate of the Bluetooth Clock of the remote master and the accuracy of this value shall be returned.

The accuracy reflects the clock drift that might have occurred since the slave last received a valid transmission from the master.

Note: The Bluetooth Clock has a minimum accuracy of 250ppm, or about 22 seconds drift in one day.

Note: See [Part B, Section 1.1, Bluetooth Clock](#) for more information about the Bluetooth Clock.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify which connection to be used for reading the masters Bluetooth Clock. Range: 0x0000-0xEFF (0xF00 – 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Which\_Clock:* *Size 1 Octet)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	0x00 = Local Clock (Connection_Handle does not have to be valid) 0x01 = Piconet Clock (Connection_Handle shall be valid) 0x02 to 0xFF = Reserved

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_BD_CLOCK command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	Read_BD_CLOCK command failed. See Part D, Error Codes on page 379 for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:**Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Connection_Handle for the connection for which the master clock has been read. If the Which_Clock was 0, then the Connection_Handle shall be set to 0 and ignored upon receipt. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Clock:**Size: 4 Octets (28 bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Bluetooth Clock of the device requested.

*Accuracy:**Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	+/- maximum Bluetooth Clock error. Value of 0xFFFF means Unknown. Accuracy = +/- N * 0.3125 msec (1 Bluetooth Clock) Range for N: 0x0000 - 0xFFFF Time Range for N: 0 - 20479.375 msec

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Clock command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.7 Read Encryption Key Size Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Encryption_Key_Size	0x0008	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle, Key_Size

#### Description:

This command reads the current encryption key size associated with the Connection\_Handle. The Connection\_Handle shall be a Connection\_Handle for an active ACL connection.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle for the encryption key size to be read from. Range: 0x0000-0xEFF (0xF00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use).

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Encryption_Key_Size succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	Read_Encryption_Key_Size failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle for the encryption key size. Range: 0x0000-0xEFF (0xF00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use).

*Key\_Size:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXX	Encryption key size. See <a href="#">Part C, Section 5.2, Parameter Definitions</a> .

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Encryption\_Key\_Size command has completed, a Command\_Complete event shall be generated.

If the ACL connection associated with the Connection\_Handle is not encrypted, the Controller shall return a Command Complete event with the error code Insufficient Security (0x2F).

### 7.5.8 Read Local AMP Info Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_AMP_Info	0x0009		Status, AMP_Status, Total_Bandwidth, Max_Guaranteed_Bandwidth, Min_Latency, Max_PDU_Size, Controller_Type, PAL_Capabilities, Max_AMP_ASSOC_Length, Max_Flush_Timeout, Best_Effort_Flush_Timeout

#### Description:

This command returns information about the AMP Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_AMP_Info command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Read_Local_AMP_Info command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a>

**AMP\_Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	<p>The Controller is available but is currently physically powered down.</p> <p>This value shall be used if the AMP Controller is present and can be powered up by the AMP Manager.</p> <p>This value indicates that there may be a cost of time and power to use this AMP Controller (i.e., the time taken and power required to power up the AMP Controller). These costs are AMP type and AMP implementation dependent.</p>

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	<p>This value indicates that the AMP Controller is only used by Bluetooth technology and will not be shared with other non-Bluetooth technologies.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much bandwidth is currently free on the AMP Controller.</p>
0x02	<p>The AMP Controller has no capacity available for Bluetooth operation</p> <p>This value indicates that all of the AMP Controller's bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing a non Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>A device is permitted to create a Physical Link to an AMP Controller that has this status.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x03	<p>The AMP Controller has low capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that the majority of the AMP Controller's bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing a non Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>An AMP Controller with capacity in the approximate range of 0% to 30% should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently available.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x04	<p>The AMP Controller has medium capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>An AMP Controller with capacity in the approximate range of 30% to 70% should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently available.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x05	<p>The AMP Controller has high capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that the majority of the AMP Controller's bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing the Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>An AMP Controller with capacity in the approximate range of 70% to 100% should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently available.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>

Value	Parameter Description
0x06	<p>The AMP Controller has full capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that while currently the AMP is only being used by Bluetooth the device allows a different technology to share the radio.</p> <p>This value shall be used by devices that are not capable of determining the current available capacity of an AMP that is shared by a different technology.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently available.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x07 - 0xFF	Reserved

The AMP Controller to generate AMP\_Status\_Change event if this parameter changes after initial Read\_Local\_AMP\_Info request. See [AMP Manager Protocol Specification, Part E Section 3.4](#).

Total\_Bandwidth:

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	<p>An upper bound on the total data rate that can be achieved by the AMP over HCI. It accounts for the total bandwidth provided by the HCI transport. No sustained combination of transmit and receive operations shall exceed this value. This can be used to help in AMP selection and admission control. Expressed in kbps.</p>

Max\_Guaranteed\_Bandwidth:

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	<p>An upper bound on the maximum data the AMP can guarantee for a single logical link over HCI. Any request made by an application above this threshold would be rejected. It accounts for any bandwidth limitations of the HCI transport. No sustained combination of transmit and receive operations shall exceed this value. This can be used to help in AMP selection and admission control. Expressed in kbps.</p>

Min\_Latency:

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	<p>A lower bound on the latency in microseconds that the AMP can guarantee for a logical channel. It accounts for the minimum latency of the HCI transport. This can be used to help in AMP selection and admission control.</p>

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification***Max\_PDU\_Size:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
	An upper bound on the size of L2CAP PDU which may be provided for transmission or reception on this AMP. The Host shall not require the AMP to transport L2CAP PDUs larger than this value. Expressed in octets. The Maximum PDU Size parameter described in <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.4</a> for any connection over this AMP should not exceed this value.

**Controller\_Type:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
See Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> .	

**PAL\_Capabilities:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Bit 0: "Service Type = Guaranteed" is supported by PAL = 1 Bits 15-1: Reserved (shall be set to 0) (See <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.6, Extended Flow Specification Option</a> .)

**Max\_AMP\_ASSOC\_Length:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	AMP_ASSOC maximum length for this local AMP Controller. For use with Read and Write AMP_ASSOC commands <a href="#">[Section 7.5.8]</a> and <a href="#">[Section 7.5.9]</a> . This value is sent to the remote AMP Manager in the AMP Get Info Response (see " <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part E, Section 3.8, AMP Get Info Response (Code 0x07)</a> ").

**Max\_Flush\_Timeout:****Size: 4 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Maximum time period, in microseconds, which the AMP device uses to attempt to transmit a frame on a Guaranteed Logical Link. If the Controller is configured to retry frames for an unbounded time (i.e. there is no flushing at all), then it shall set this value to 0xFFFFFFFF.

**Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXX	<p>The typical time period, in microseconds, which the AMP device may use to attempt to transmit a frame on a Best Effort Logical Link. The value shall not exceed the value given in Max_Flush_Timeout.</p> <p>If the Controller is configured to retry frames for an unbounded time (i.e. there is no flushing at all), then it shall set this value to 0xFFFFFFFF.</p>

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Local\_AMP\_Info command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.9 Read Local AMP ASSOC Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Local_AMP_ASSOC	0x000A	Physical_Link_Handle, Length_So_Far, Max_Remote_AMP_ASSOC_Length	Status, Physical_Link_Handle, AMP_ASSOC_Remaining_Length, AMP_ASSOC_fragment

#### Description:

This command returns a fragment of the AMP\_ASSOC structure. The AMP\_ASSOC contains information in an AMP type specific format and is defined in the AMP PALS (see [Volume 5, Core System Package \[AMP Controller volume\]](#)). This may include a combination of address, capabilities and status information. This command can be used when creating an AMP physical link as given by the Physical\_Link\_Handle parameter, see the Create Physical Link command for more details. If the command is being executed outside of the context of any physical link creation, then the Physical\_Link\_Handle shall be 0x00.

The Controller shall limit the returned AMP\_ASSOC to Max\_AMPA-Ssoc\_Length octets. The Host shall set this parameter to the "AMP\_ASSOC\_Size" value returned from the remote device in the AMP Get Info Response (see [AMP Manager Protocol Specification, \[Vol 3\] Part E, Section 3.8](#)).

The AMP\_ASSOC length may be larger than can fit in a single HCI event. Each time the Read\_Local\_AMP\_ASSOC command is called, the remaining length of the AMP\_ASSOC (including the data returned in the Command Complete event) is included in the AMP\_ASSOC\_Remaining\_Length parameter and data from the AMP\_ASSOC is contained in the AMP\_ASSOC\_fragment parameter. In order to obtain the entire AMP\_ASSOC, a Host shall continue calling Read\_Local\_AMP\_ASSOC until the AMP\_ASSOC\_Remaining\_Length parameter returned is equal to the size of the AMP\_ASSOC\_fragment in that event.

The Length\_So\_Far parameter shall be set to 0 to obtain the first AMP\_AMPA-Ssoc\_fragment. Subsequent fragments are obtained by incrementing the Length\_So\_Far parameter by the length of the previous fragment.

Once the Host begins reading an AMP\_ASSOC, all fragments returned in a sequence of Read\_Local\_AMP\_ASSOC commands shall be from one, static AMP\_ASSOC.

**Command Parameters:***Physical\_Link\_Handle*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Used to indicate invalid Physical_Link_Handle
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle which describes the link to which the AMP_ASSOC belongs.

*Length\_So\_Far*:

Size: 2 Octets

Value
Set Length_So_Far to 0 for the first fragment. Increment parameter by the length of the previous fragment, for each subsequent call

*AMP\_ASSOC\_Length*:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The maximum length, in octets, allowed by the Host for the AMP_ASSOC maximum length for the remote returned by the AMP Controller. For use with Read command to prevent interoperability issues.

**Return Parameters:***Status*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Local_AMP_ASSOC command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Read_Local_AMP_ASSOC command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for list of Error Codes.

*Physical\_Link\_Handle*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle identifying the physical link to be created with the associated AMP_ASSOC.

*AMP\_ASSOC\_Remaining\_Length*:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
1-size of variable	Length, in octets, of the remainder of the AMP_ASSOC including this fragment.
0	Reserved

**AMP\_ASSOC\_fragment:****Size: 1 to 248 Octets****Value**

A fragment of the local AMP\_ASSOC structure created by a remote AMP of the same Controller type. A fragment, other than the final one, may not be less than 248 bytes in length.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Local\_AMP\_ASSOC command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.10 Write Remote AMP ASSOC Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Remote_AMP_ASSOC	0x000B	Physical_Link_Handle, Length_So_Far, AMP_ASSOC_Remaining_Length, AMP_ASSOC_fragment	Status, Physical_Link_Handle

#### Description:

This command writes an AMP\_ASSOC fragment to the AMP Controller. The AMP\_ASSOC contains information in an AMP type specific format and is defined in the AMP PALS (see [Volume 5, Core System Package \[AMP Controller volume\]](#)). This may include a combination of address, capabilities and status information. This command may be used when creating an AMP physical link. See the Create\_Physical\_Link command for more details. See [Section 7.1.37](#).

The AMP\_ASSOC length may be larger than can fit in a single HCI command. Each time the Write\_Remote\_AMP\_ASSOC command is called, the remaining length of the AMP\_ASSOC (including the data provided in the command) is included in the AMP\_ASSOC\_Remaining\_Length parameter and data from the AMP\_ASSOC is contained in the AMP\_ASSOC\_fragment parameter. In order to write the entire AMP\_ASSOC to the Controller, a Host shall continue calling Write\_Remote\_AMP\_ASSOC until the AMP\_ASSOC\_Remaining\_Length parameter returned is equal to the size of the AMP\_ASSOC\_fragment in that command.

The Write\_Local\_AMP\_ASSOC command shall be called immediately after the Command Status event (with result of success) for either the Create\_Physical\_Link or Accept\_Physical\_Link commands.

The Length\_So\_Far parameter shall be set to 0 to write the first AMP\_AS-SOC\_fragment. Subsequent fragments are written by incrementing the Length\_So\_Far parameter by the length of the previous fragment.

#### Command Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle identifying the physical link to be created with the associated AMP_ASSOC.

*Length\_So\_Far:**Size: 2 Octets*

Value
Set Length_So_Far to 0 for the first fragment. Increment it by the length of the previous fragment, for each subsequent call.

*AMP\_ASSOC\_Remaining\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0x0001- Max_AMP_AS-SOC_Length	Length, in octets, of the remainder of the AMP_ASSOC, including this fragment. Max_AMP_ASSOC_Length as reported in Read_Local_AMP_Info command.
0x0000	Reserved

*AMP\_ASSOC\_fragment:**Size: 1 to 248 Octets*

Value
A fragment of the AMP_ASSOC structure created by a remote AMP of the same Controller type.
The fragment length shall be 248 bytes for all but the last fragment.

**Return Parameters:***Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Remote_AMP_ASSOC command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Write_Remote_AMP_ASSOC command failed. See "Part D, Error Codes on page 379 for list of Error Codes.

*Physical\_Link\_Handle:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle identifying the physical link to be created with the associated AMP_ASSOC.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Remote\_AMP\_ASSOC command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.11 Get MWS Transport Layer Configuration Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Get_MWS_Transport_Layer_Configuration	0x000C		Status, Num_Transports, Transport_Layer[i], Num_Baud_Rates[i], To_MWS_Baud_Rate[k], From_MWS_Baud_Rate[k]

#### Description:

The Get\_MWS\_Transport\_Layer\_Configuration command is used to inform the Host of the Baud rates supported by the Controller for the transport layer.

The Num\_Transports parameter is used to indicate the number of MWS coexistence transport interfaces supported by the Controller.

The Num\_Baud\_Rates parameter indicates the number of supported baud rates for each transport.

The To\_MWS\_Baud\_Rate parameters indicate the supported baud rates in the direction from Bluetooth to MWS for each transport.

The From\_MWS\_Baud\_Rate parameters indicate the supported baud rates in the direction from MWS to Bluetooth for each transport.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Get_Transport_Layer_Configuration command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Get_Transport_Layer_Configuration command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> , for error codes and descriptions

##### Num\_Transports:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Number of supported MWS coexistence transport layers.

*Transport\_Layer[i]:**Size: Num\_Transports \* 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	See <a href="#">Bluetooth Assigned numbers</a> .

*Num\_Baud\_Rates[i]:**Size: Num\_Transports \* 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Number of different baud rates supported for one transport.

*To\_MWS\_Baud\_Rate[k]:**Size: SUM(Num\_Baud\_Rates [i]) \* 4 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXXXXXX	List of supported Baud rates in the Bluetooth Controller to MWS Device direction in Baud. Each element of the list shall have the format 0xXXXXXXXXX. The list shall start with the first baud rate for the first transport, followed by the remaining baud rates for the first transport, followed by the baud rates for the second transport (if any), followed by baud rates for subsequent transports (if any).

*From\_MWS\_Baud\_Rate[k]:**Size: SUM (Num\_Baud\_Rates[i]) \* 4 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXXXXXX	List of supported Baud rates in the Bluetooth Controller for signals in the MWS to Bluetooth Controller Device direction in Baud. Each element of the list shall have the format 0xXXXXXXXXX. The list shall start with the first baud rate for the first transport, followed by the remaining baud rates for the first transport, followed by the baud rates for the second transport (if any), followed by baud rates for subsequent transports (if any).

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Get\_MWS\_Transport\_Layer\_Configuration command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.5.12 Set Triggered Clock Capture Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Set_triggered_Clock_Capture	0x000D	Connection_Handle, Enable, Which_Clock, LPO_Allowed, Num_Clock_ Captures_To_Filter	Status

#### Description:

The Set\_triggered\_Clock\_Capture command configures the BR/EDR Controller for triggered clock capturing.

Triggered clock capturing is enabled or disabled by the Enable parameter.

If the Which\_Clock value is 0, then the Connection\_Handle shall be ignored. If the Which\_Clock value is 1, then the Connection\_Handle shall be a valid ACL Connection\_Handle.

The LPO\_Allowed parameter informs the BR/EDR Controller whether the low power oscillator is allowed to be used, or not.

The Num\_Clock\_Captures\_To\_Filter parameter is used to filter triggered clock captures between sending Triggered Clock Capture events to the Host. When set to zero, all triggered clock captures shall result in a Triggered Clock Capture event sent to the Host. When set to a non-zero value, after every Triggered Clock Capture event, Num\_Clock\_Captures\_To\_Filter triggered clock captures in a row shall not trigger an event to be sent to the Host.

Note: An implementation should ensure that the rate of triggered clock captures does not overwhelm the HCI event queue and processing.

Note: See [\[Vol 2\] Part B, Section 1.1, Bluetooth Clock](#) for more information about the Bluetooth Clock.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle*:

*Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000 – 0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Enable:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Disable triggered clock capturing on the specified Connection Handle (Default)
0x01	Enable triggered clock capturing on the specified Connection Handle
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Which\_Clock:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	0x00 = Local Clock (Connection_Handle does not have to be valid) 0x01 = Piconet Clock (Connection_Handle shall be valid) 0x02-0xFF = Reserved

**LPO\_Allowed:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Controller shall not sleep (that is, clock accuracy shall be equal to or better than $\pm 20$ ppm)
0x01	Controller may sleep (that is, clock accuracy shall be equal to or better than $\pm 250$ ppm)
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Num\_Clock\_Captures\_To\_Filter:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	All triggered clock captures result in a Triggered Clock Capture event sent to the Host
0x01-0xFF	Number of triggered clock captures filtered between sending a Triggered Clock Capture event to the Host.

**Return Parameters:****Status:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Set_triggered_clock_capture command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Set_triggered_clock_capture command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Set\_Triggered\_Clock\_Capture command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be sent to the Host.

When Triggered Clock Capturing is enabled, Triggered Clock Capture events are returned until Triggered Clock Capturing is disabled.

## 7.6 TESTING COMMANDS

The Testing commands are used to provide the ability to test various functional capabilities of the Bluetooth hardware. These commands provide the ability to arrange various conditions for testing.

For the Testing Commands, the OGF is defined as 0x06.

### 7.6.1 Read Loopback Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Loopback_Mode	0x0001		Status, Loopback_Mode

#### Description:

This command reads the value for the setting of the Controller's Loopback\_Mode. The setting of the Loopback\_Mode parameter shall determine the path of information. In Non-testing Mode operation, the Loopback\_Mode parameter is set to Non-testing Mode and the path of the information is as specified by the Bluetooth specifications. In Local Loopback Mode, every Data Packet (ACL, SCO and eSCO) and Command Packet that is sent from the Host to the Controller is sent back with no modifications by the Controller, as shown in [Figure 7.1 on page 839](#). For details of loopback modes see [Section 7.6.2 on page 838](#).

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Loopback_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Loopback_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Loopback\_Mode:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No Loopback mode enabled ( <b>default</b> ).
0x01	Enable Local Loopback.
0x02	Enable Remote Loopback. (Not supported by AMPs)
0x03-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Loopback\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

## 7.6.2 Write Loopback Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Loopback_Mode	0x0002	Loopback_Mode	Status

### Description:

This command writes the value for the setting of the BR/EDR Controller's Loopback Mode. The setting of the Loopback\_Mode parameter shall determine the path of information. In Non-testing Mode operation, the Loopback\_Mode parameter is set to Non-testing Mode and the path of the information as specified by the Bluetooth specifications. In Local Loopback Mode, every Data Packet (ACL, SCO and eSCO) and Command Packet that is sent from the Host to the BR/EDR Controller is sent back with no modifications by the BR/EDR Controller, as shown in [Figure 7.1 on page 839](#).

When the BR/EDR Controller enters Local Loopback Mode, it shall respond with one to four Connection\_Handles, one for an ACL connection and zero to three for synchronous connections. The Host should use these Connection\_Handles when sending data in Local Loopback Mode. The number of Connection\_Handles returned for synchronous connections (between zero and three) is implementation specific. When in Local Loopback Mode, the BR/EDR Controller loops back commands and data to the Host. The Loopback Command event is used to loop back commands that the Host sends to the Controller.

When an AMP enters Local Loopback Mode, all data transmission will be looped back with the received Logical\_Link\_Handle value, without checking the validity of the Logical Link Handle. This allows local loopback of data without any link creation, and without any data transmission over the air.

There are some commands that are not looped back in Local Loopback Mode: Reset, Set\_Controller\_To\_Host\_Flow\_Control, Host\_Buffer\_Size, Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets, Read\_Buffer\_Size, Read\_Loopback\_Mode and Write\_Loopback\_Mode. These commands should be executed in the way they are normally executed. The commands Reset and Write\_Loopback\_Mode can be used to exit local loopback mode.

If Write\_Loopback\_Mode is used to exit Local Loopback Mode on a BR/EDR Controller, Disconnection Complete events corresponding to the Connection Complete events that were sent when entering Local Loopback Mode should be sent to the Host. Furthermore, no connections are allowed in Local Loopback mode. If there is a connection, and there is an attempt to set the device to Local Loopback Mode, the attempt will be refused. When the device is in Local Loopback Mode, the Controller will refuse incoming connection attempts. This allows the Host BR/EDR Controller Transport Layer to be tested without any other variables.

If a BR/EDR Controller is set to Remote Loopback Mode, it will send back all data (ACL, SCO and eSCO) that comes over the air. It will only allow a maximum of one ACL connection and three synchronous connections, and these shall all be to the same remote device. If there are existing connections to a remote device and there is an attempt to set the local device to Remote Loopback Mode, the attempt shall be refused.

If a Host sets Loopback Mode to “Remote Loopback” on an AMP controller, the Controller shall reject the command with the error code Invalid HCI command parameter (0x12).

See [Figure 7.2 on page 840](#), where the rightmost device is set to Remote Loopback Mode and the leftmost device is set to Non-testing Mode. This allows the BR/EDR Air link to be tested without any other variables.

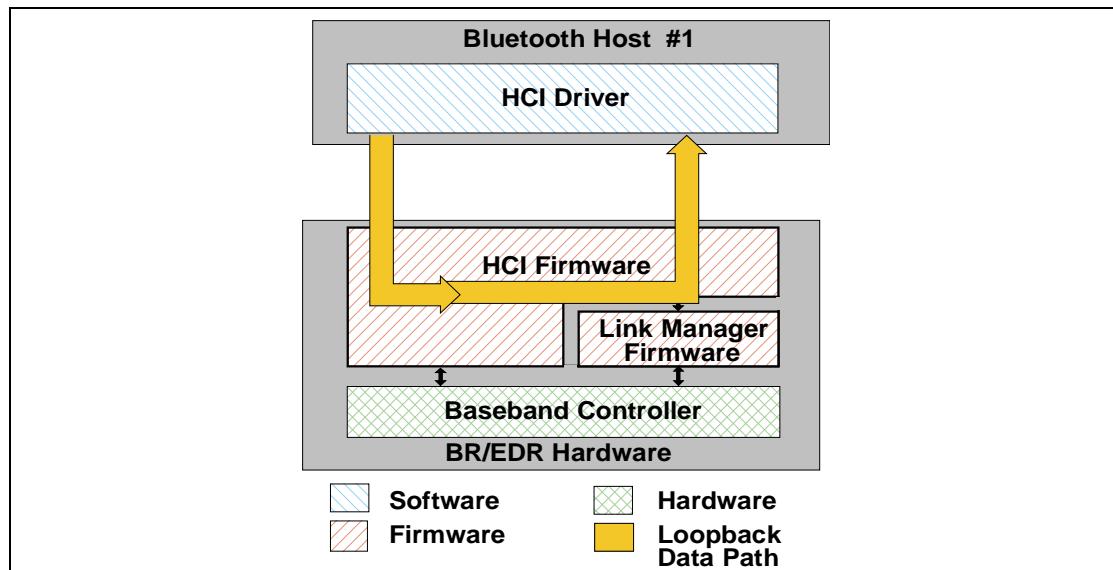


Figure 7.1: Local Loopback Mode

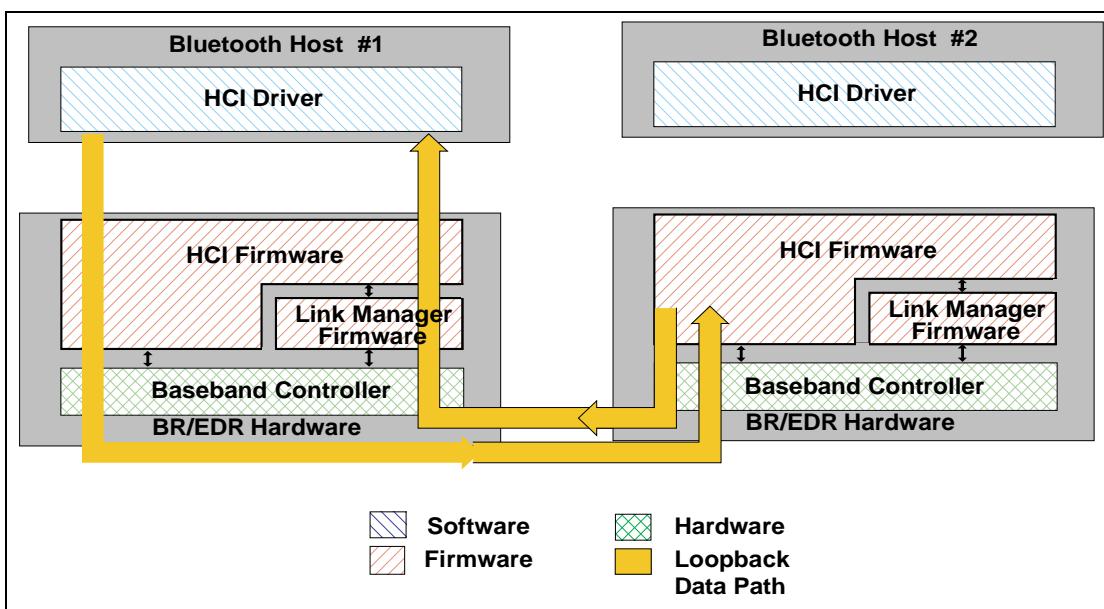


Figure 7.2: Remote Loopback Mode

### Command Parameters:

Loopback\_Mode:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No Loopback mode enabled ( <b>default</b> ).
0x01	Enable Local Loopback.
0x02	Enable Remote Loopback. (Not Supported by AMPs)
0x03-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

### Return Parameters:

Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Loopback_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Loopback_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Loopback\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.6.3 Enable Device Under Test Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Enable_Device_Under_Test_Mode	0x0003		Status

#### Description:

The Enable\_Device\_Under\_Test\_Mode command allows the local BR/EDR Controller to enter test mode via LMP test commands for BR/EDR Controllers or via the AMP Test Command for AMP Controllers. For details see [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#) for BR/EDR Controllers or [Section 7.6.7](#) for AMP controllers. The Host issues this command when it wants the local device to be the DUT for the Testing scenarios as described in the [\[Vol 3\] Part D, Section 1, Test Methodology](#). When the BR/EDR Controller receives this command, it shall complete the command with a Command Complete event. The BR/EDR Controller functions as normal until the remote tester issues the LMP test command or for AMPs the AMP Test Command to place the local device into Device Under Test mode. To disable and exit the Device Under Test Mode, the Host may issue the Reset command. This command prevents remote BR/EDR Controllers from causing the local BR/EDR Controller to enter test mode without first issuing this command.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Enter_Device_Under_Test_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Enter_Device_Under_Test_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Enter\_Device\_Under\_Test\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.6.4 Write Simple Pairing Debug Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Simple_Pairing_Debug_Mode	0x0004	Simple_Pairing_Debug_Mode	Status

#### Description:

This command configures the BR/EDR Controller to use a predefined Diffie Hellman private key for Simple Pairing to enable debug equipment to monitor the encrypted connection.

Note: Only one side (initiator or responder) needs to set simple pairing debug mode in order for debug equipment to be able to determine the link key and, therefore, be able to monitor the encrypted connection.

When the Simple\_Pairing\_Debug\_Mode parameter is set to enabled the BR/EDR Controller shall use the predefined Diffie Hellman private key. The BR/EDR Controller shall also set the resulting Link\_Key type to "Debug Combination Key."

When in Simple Pairing debug mode, the Link Manager shall use the following Diffie Hellman private / public key pairs:

#### For P-192:

Private key: 07915f86918ddc27005df1d6cf0c142b625ed2eff4a518ff

Public key (X): 15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed

Public key (Y): b09d42b81bc5bd009f79e4b59dbbaa857fca856fb9f7ea25

#### For P-256:

Private key: 3f49f6d4 a3c55f38 74c9b3e3 d2103f50 4aff607b eb40b799 5899b8a6 cd3c1abd

Public key (X): 20b003d2 f297be2c 5e2c83a7 e9f9a5b9 eff49111 acf4fddb cc030148 0e359de6

Public key (Y): dc809c49 652aeb6d 63329abf 5a52155c 766345c2 8fed3024 741c8ed0 1589d28b

#### Command Parameters:

*Simple\_Pairing\_Debug\_Mode:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Simple Pairing debug mode disabled ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Simple pairing debug mode enabled
0x02 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Simple_Pairing_Mode command succeeded.
0x01 - 0xFF	Write_Simple_Pairing_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Simple\_Pairing\_Debug\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.6.5 Enable AMP Receiver Reports Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Enable_AMP_Receiver_Reports	0x0007	Enable, Interval	Status

#### Description:

This command enables and disables the reporting of frames received. This command shall only be valid in AMP Test Mode. After multiples of the specified Interval, a report of frames that have been received/not received by the DUT shall be sent to the tester. Optionally, the sums of bits in error are also reported. The values returned are the cumulative totals since the mode was last initiated or reset. The totals are reset by sending the Enable\_AMP\_Receiver\_Reports, the HCI\_AMP\_Test command or the AMP\_Test\_End command. This event is also generated after an AMP Test End event.

#### Command Parameters:

*Enable:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Disable
0x01	Enable
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

*Interval:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Reserved
0x01-0xFF	Number of seconds between event reporting

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Enable_AMP_Receiver_Reports command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Enable_AMP_Receiver_Reports command failed. <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the Enable\_AMP\_Receiver\_Reports command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.6.6 AMP Test End Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_AMP_Test_End	0x0008		Status

**Description:**

This command is used to stop any test scenario in progress. This command shall only be used in AMP Test Mode when a test is in progress. This command shall not exit an AMP Controller from AMP Test mode.

**Command Parameters:**

None.

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	AMP_Test_End command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	AMP_Test_End command failed. <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the AMP\_Test\_End command has completed an AMP Test End event shall be generated and the AMP Receiver Report event shall be generated if the AMP receiver reports are enabled.

### 7.6.7 AMP Test Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_AMP_Test	0x0009	Test_Parameters	Status

#### Description:

This command is used to configure and start a test. This command shall be only valid in AMP Test Mode.

When a test scenario has completed or on receiving a AMP\_Test\_End command the AMP shall send a AMP Test End event and the AMP returns to an idle state with the RX and TX off.

The details of the Test\_Parameters for each Controller Type are detailed in the AMP PAL specification.

#### Command Parameters:

*Test\_Parameters:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Controller Type. See Assigned Numbers

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	AMP_Test command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	AMP_Test command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a>

#### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the AMP Controller receives the AMP\_Test command, the AMP Controller shall send the Command Status event to the AMP Test Manager which shall be routed to the tester.

The AMP Start Test event shall be generated when the AMP\_Test command has completed and the first data is ready to be sent or received.

Command Complete event shall not be sent by the AMP to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the AMP Start Test event shall indicate that this command has been completed.

When in a transmitter test scenario and the frames/bursts count have been transmitted the AMP Test End event shall be sent.

### 7.6.8 Write Secure Connections Test Mode Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Secure_Connections_Test_Mode	0x000A	Connection_Handle, DM1_ACL-U_Mode, eSCO_Loopback_Mode	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

This command configures the BR/EDR Controller to enable and disable the two test modes used for verifying the Secure Connections feature during qualification. The DM1\_ACL-U\_Mode parameter enables and disables the use of DM1 packets for transmitting ACL-U data. When DM1 ACL-U Mode is disabled, ACL-U traffic may use DM1 packets. When DM1 ACL-U Mode is enabled, ACL-U traffic shall not use DM1 packets unless the Packet\_Type parameter only allows DM1 packets (e.g. set to 0x3306 or 0x330E).

The command is used during testing to help make transmit ACL packet selection predictable.

The eSCO\_Loopback\_Mode parameter enables and disables the loopback of received eSCO payloads. When the eSCO\_Loopback\_Mode parameter is set to Enabled, the BR/EDR Controller will send back all eSCO data that comes over the air irrespective of whether the CRC check in the received eSCO packet passes or fails. It will only allow one synchronous connection. If there is more than one synchronous connection and there is an attempt to set the local device to eSCO\_Loopback\_Mode, the attempt shall be refused.

See [Figure 7.3](#), where the rightmost device has the eSCO\_Loopback\_Mode parameter set to enabled and the leftmost device is in a normal mode of operation. This allows the encryption and decryption of eSCO packets to be tested without any other variables.

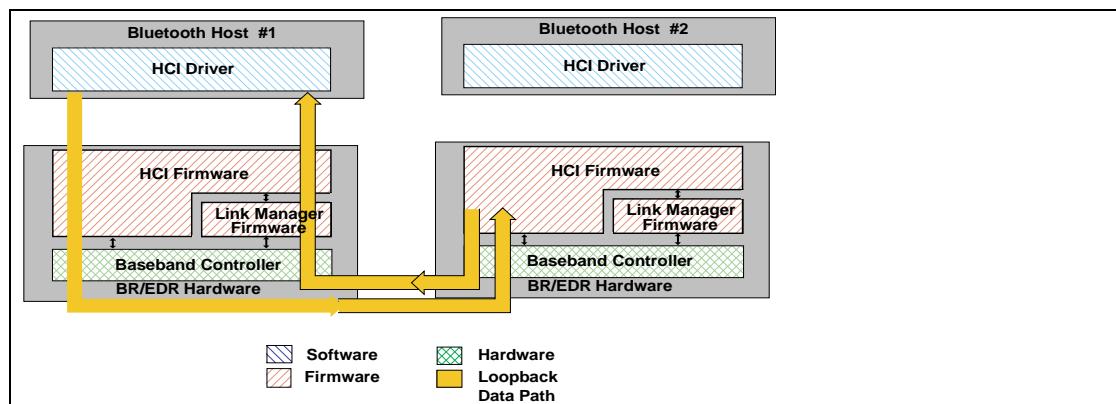


Figure 7.3: Secure Connections eSCO Loopback

The Connection\_Handle shall be for an ACL connection.

When the eSCO\_Loopback\_Mode parameter is set to enabled, received eSCO payloads are looped back as subsequent transmitted eSCO payloads. There may be a delay of 0 or more eSCO intervals before the Controller loops back the payload. This is illustrated in the following three figures.

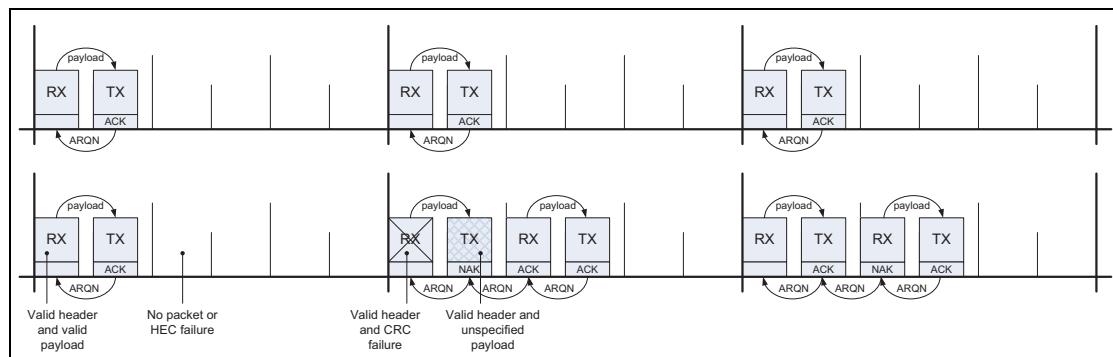


Figure 7.4: Secure Connections eSCO loopback immediate

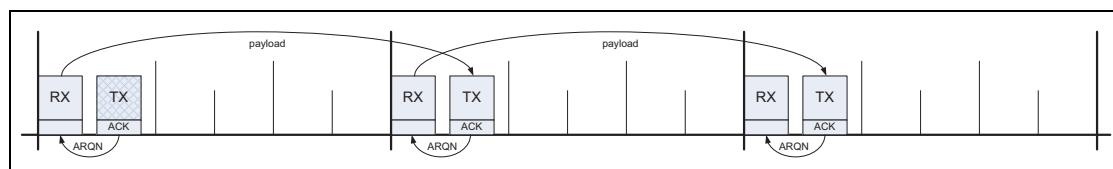


Figure 7.5: Secure Connections eSCO loopback delayed

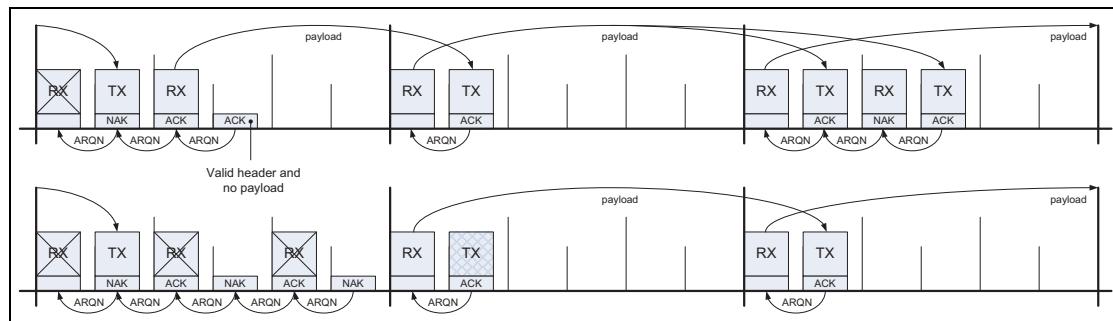


Figure 7.6: Secure Connections eSCO loopback delayed with retransmissions

**Command Parameters:**

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle for which the test modes have been enabled/disabled. Range: 0x0000-0xEFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*DM1\_ACL-U\_Mode*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	DM1 ACL-U mode disabled (default)
0x01	DM1 ACL-U mode enabled
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*eSCO\_Loopback\_Mode*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	eSCO loopback mode disabled (default)
0x01	eSCO loopback mode enabled
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Return Parameters:**

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Secure_Connections_Test_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Secure_Connections_Test_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle*: Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle for which the test modes have been enabled/disabled. Range: 0x0000-0xEFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Events(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Write\_Secure\_Connections\_Test\_Mode command has completed, a Command\_Complete event shall be generated.

## 7.7 EVENTS

### 7.7.1 Inquiry Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Inquiry Complete	0x01	Status

#### Description:

The Inquiry Complete event indicates that the Inquiry is finished. This event contains a Status parameter, which is used to indicate if the Inquiry completed successfully or if the Inquiry was not completed.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Inquiry command completed successfully.
0x01-0xFF	Inquiry command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

## 7.7.2 Inquiry Result Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Inquiry Result	0x02	Num_Responses, BD_ADDR[i], Page_Scan_Repetition_Mode[i], Reserved[i], Reserved[i], Class_of_Device[i] Clock_Offset[i]

### Description:

The Inquiry Result event indicates that a BR/EDR Controller or multiple BR/EDR Controllers have responded so far during the current Inquiry process. This event will be sent from the BR/EDR Controller to the Host as soon as an Inquiry Response from a remote device is received if the remote device supports only mandatory paging scheme. The BR/EDR Controller may queue these Inquiry Responses and send multiple BR/EDR Controllers information in one Inquiry Result event. The event can be used to return one or more Inquiry responses in one event.

### Event Parameters:

#### Num\_Responses:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Number of responses from the Inquiry.

#### BD\_ADDR[i]:

Size: 6 Octets \* Num\_Responses

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXXXXX XX	BD_ADDR for each device which responded.

#### Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode[i]:

Size: 1 Octet \* Num\_Responses

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	R0
0x01	R1
0x02	R2
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved

*Reserved[i]:*<sup>1</sup>*Size: 1 Octet \* Num\_Responses*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Reserved.

*Reserved[iJ]:*<sup>2</sup>*Size: 1 Octet \* Num\_Responses*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Reserved, shall be set to 0x00.

*Class\_of\_Device[i]:**Size: 3 Octets \* Num\_Responses*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXX	Class of Device for the device

*Clock\_Offset[i]:**Size: 2 Octets \* Num\_Responses*

Bit format	Parameter Description
Bits 14-0	Bits 16-2 of CLKNslave-CLK
Bit 15	Reserved

- 
1. This was the Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode parameter in the v1.1 specification. This parameter has no meaning in v1.2 or later and no default value.
  2. This was the Page\_Scan\_Mode parameter in the v1.1 specification.

### 7.7.3 Connection Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Connection Complete	0x03	Status, Connection_Handle, BD_ADDR, Link_Type, Encryption_Enabled

#### Description:

The Connection Complete event indicates to both of the Hosts forming the connection that a new connection has been established. This event also indicates to the Host, which issued the Create\_Connection, or Accept\_Connection\_Request or Reject\_Connection\_Request command and then received a Command Status event, if the issued command failed or was successful.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connection successfully completed.
0x01-0xFF	Connection failed to Complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Connection\_Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two BR/EDR Controllers. The Connection_Handle is used as an identifier for transmitting and receiving voice or data. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the other connected Device forming the connection.

##### Link\_Type:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	SCO connection.
0x01	ACL connection (Data Channels).
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification**Encryption\_Enabled:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Link level encryption disabled.
0x01	Link level encryption enabled.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

### 7.7.4 Connection Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Connection Request	0x04	BD_ADDR, Class_of_Device, Link_Type

#### Description:

The Connection Request event is used to indicate that a new incoming connection is trying to be established. The connection may either be accepted or rejected. If this event is masked away and there is an incoming connection attempt and the BR/EDR Controller is not set to auto-accept this connection attempt, the BR/EDR Controller shall automatically refuse the connection attempt. When the Host receives this event and the link type parameter is ACL, it should respond with either an Accept\_Connection\_Request or Reject\_Connection\_Request command before the timer Conn\_Accept\_Timeout expires. If the link type is SCO or eSCO, the Host should reply with the Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request or the Reject\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request command. If the link type is SCO, the Host may respond with Accept\_Connection\_Request command. If the event is responded to with Accept\_Connection\_Request command, then the default parameter settings of the Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request command (see [Section 7.1.27 on page 560](#)) should be used by the local Link Manager when negotiating the SCO link parameters. In that case, the Connection Complete event and not the Synchronous Connection Complete event, shall be returned on completion of the connection.

#### Event Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the device that requests the connection.

##### Class\_of\_Device:

Size: 3 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxx	Class of Device for the device, which requests the connection.
0x000000	Unknown Class of Device

##### Link\_Type:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	SCO Connection requested
0x01	ACL Connection requested
0x02	eSCO Connection requested
0x03-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

### 7.7.5 Disconnection Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Disconnection Complete	0x05	Status, Connection_Handle, Reason

#### Description:

The Disconnection Complete event occurs when a connection is terminated. The status parameter indicates if the disconnection was successful or not. The reason parameter indicates the reason for the disconnection if the disconnection was successful. If the disconnection was not successful, the value of the reason parameter can be ignored by the Host. For example, this can be the case if the Host has issued the Disconnect command and there was a parameter error, or the command was not presently allowed, or a Connection\_Handle that didn't correspond to a connection was given.

Note: When a physical link fails, one Disconnection Complete event will be returned for each logical channel on the physical link with the corresponding Connection\_Handle as a parameter.

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Disconnection has occurred.
0x01-0xFF	Disconnection failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:** Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle which was disconnected. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Reason:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0XX	Reason for disconnection. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

### 7.7.6 Authentication Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Authentication Complete	0x06	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

The Authentication Complete event occurs when authentication has been completed for the specified connection. The Connection\_Handle must be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

#### Event Parameters:

##### *Status:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Authentication Request successfully completed.
0x01-0xFF	Authentication Request failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### *Connection\_Handle:*

*Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle for which Authentication has been performed. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

### 7.7.7 Remote Name Request Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Remote Name Request Complete	0x07	Status, BD_ADDR, Remote_Name

#### Description:

The Remote Name Request Complete event is used to indicate that a remote name request has been completed. The Remote\_Name event parameter is a UTF-8 encoded string with up to 248 octets in length. The Remote\_Name event parameter will be null-terminated (0x00) if the UTF-8 encoded string is less than 248 octets. The BD\_ADDR event parameter is used to identify which device the user-friendly name was obtained from.

Note: The Remote\_Name parameter is a string parameter. Endian-ness does therefore not apply to the Remote\_Name parameter. The first octet of the name is received first.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Remote_Name_Request command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Remote_Name_Request command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR for the device whose name was requested.

*Remote\_Name:* Size: 248 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Name[248]	A UTF-8 encoded user-friendly descriptive name for the remote device. If the name contained in the parameter is shorter than 248 octets, the end of the name is indicated by a NULL octet (0x00), and the following octets (to fill up 248 octets, which is the length of the parameter) do not have valid values.

### 7.7.8 Encryption Change Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Encryption Change	0x08	Status, Connection_Handle, Encryption_Enabled

#### Description:

The Encryption Change event is used to indicate that the change of the encryption mode has been completed. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The Encryption\_Enabled event parameter specifies the new Encryption\_Enabled parameter for the Connection\_Handle specified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter. This event will occur on both devices to notify the Hosts when Encryption has changed for the specified Connection\_Handle between two devices. Note: This event shall not be generated if encryption is paused or resumed; during a role switch, for example.

The meaning of the Encryption\_Enabled parameter depends on whether the Host has indicated support for Secure Connections in the Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support parameter. When Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support is ‘disabled’ or the Connection\_Handle refers to an LE link, the Controller shall only use Encryption\_Enabled values 0x00 (OFF) and 0x01 (ON). When Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support is ‘enabled’ and the Connection\_Handle refers to a BR/EDR link, the Controller shall set Encryption\_Enabled to 0x00 when encryption is off, to 0x01 when encryption is on and using E0 and to 0x02 when encryption is on and using AES-CCM.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Encryption Change has occurred.
0x01-0xFF	Encryption Change failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Connection\_Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle for which the link layer encryption has been enabled/disabled for all Connection_Handles with the same BR/EDR Controller endpoint as the specified Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Encryption\_Enabled:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Link Level Encryption is OFF.
0x01	Link Level Encryption is ON with E0 for BR/EDR. Link Level Encryption is ON with AES-CCM for LE.
0x02	Link Level Encryption is ON with AES-CCM for BR/EDR.
0x03-0xFF	Reserved.

### 7.7.9 Change Connection Link Key Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Change Connection Link Key Complete	0x09	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

The Change Connection Link Key Complete event is used to indicate that the change in the Link Key for the Connection\_Handle specified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter has been completed.

The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The Change Connection Link Key Complete event is sent only to the Host which issued the Change\_Connection\_Link\_Key command.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Change_Connection_Link_Key command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Change_Connection_Link_Key command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Connection\_Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle which the Link Key has been changed for all Connection_Handles with the same BR/EDR Controller end point as the specified Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

### 7.7.10 Master Link Key Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Master Link Key Complete	0x0A	Status, Connection_Handle, Key_Flag

#### Description:

The Master Link Key Complete event is used to indicate that the Link Key managed by the master of the piconet has been changed. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The link key used for the connection will be the temporary link key of the master device or the semi-permanent link key indicated by the Key\_Flag. The Key\_Flag event parameter is used to indicate which Link Key (temporary link key of the Master, or the semi-permanent link keys) is now being used in the piconet.

Note: For a master, the change from a semi-permanent Link Key to temporary Link Key will affect all Connection\_Handles related to the piconet. For a slave, this change affects only this particular Connection\_Handle. A temporary link key must be used when both broadcast and point-to-point traffic shall be encrypted.

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Master_Link_Key command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Master_Link_Key command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:** Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle for which the Link Key has been changed for all devices in the same piconet. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Key\_Flag:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Using Semi-permanent Link Key.
0x01	Using Temporary Link Key.

### 7.7.11 Read Remote Supported Features Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Read Remote Supported Features Complete	0x0B	Status, Connection_Handle, LMP_Features

#### Description:

The Read Remote Supported Features Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Link Manager obtaining the supported features of the remote BR/EDR Controller specified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The event parameters include a list of LMP features. For details see [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Remote_Supported_Features command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Remote_Supported_Features command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle which is used for the Read_Remote_Supported_Features command. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*LMP\_Features:* *Size: 8 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX	Bit Mask List of LMP features. See <a href="#">Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227</a> .

### 7.7.12 Read Remote Version Information Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Read Remote Version Information Complete	0x0C	Status, Connection_Handle, Version, Manufacturer_Name, Subversion

#### Description:

The Read Remote Version Information Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process obtaining the version information of the remote Controller specified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter. The Connection\_Handle shall be for an ACL connection.

The Version event parameter defines the specification version of the BR/EDR or LE Controller. The Manufacturer\_Name event parameter indicates the manufacturer of the remote Controller. The Subversion event parameter is controlled by the manufacturer and is implementation dependent. The Subversion event parameter defines the various revisions that each version of the Bluetooth hardware will go through as design processes change and errors are fixed. This allows the software to determine what Bluetooth hardware is being used and, if necessary, to work around various bugs in the hardware.

When the Connection\_Handle is associated with a BR/EDR ACL-U logical link, the Version event parameter shall be LMP VersNr parameter, the Manufacturer\_Name event parameter shall be the Compld parameter, and the Subversion event parameter shall be the LMP SubVersNr parameter.

When the Connection\_Handle is associated with an LE-U logical link, the Version event parameter shall be Link Layer VersNr parameter, the Manufacturer\_Name event parameter shall be the Compld parameter, and the Subversion event parameter shall be the SubVersNr parameter.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Remote_Version_Information command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Remote_Version_Information command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Connection Handle which is used for the Read_Remote_Version_Information command. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Version:* *Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XX	Version of the Current LMP in the remote Controller. See LMP VersNr and Link LayerVersNr in the Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> .

*Manufacturer\_Name:* *Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Manufacturer Name of the remote Controller. See Compld in the Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> .

*Subversion:* *Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Subversion of the LMP in the remote Controller. See <a href="#">Part C, Table 5.2, page 359</a> and <a href="#">[Vol 6] Part B, Section 2.4.2.13(SubVersNr)</a> .

### 7.7.13 QoS Setup Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
QoS Setup Complete	0x0D	Status, Connection_Handle, Flags, Service_Type, Token_Rate, Peak_Bandwidth, Latency, Delay_Variation

#### Description:

The QoS Setup Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Link Manager setting up QoS with the remote BR/EDR Controller specified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. For more detail see

[\[Vol 3\] Part A, Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification.](#)

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	QoS_Setup command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	QoS_Setup command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:** Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle which is used for the QoS_Setup command. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Flags:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Service\_Type:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No Traffic Available.
0x01	Best Effort Available.
0x02	Guaranteed Available.
0x03-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Token\_Rate:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXX	Available Token Rate, in octets per second.

*Peak\_Bandwidth:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXX	Available Peak Bandwidth, in octets per second.

*Latency:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXX	Available Latency, in microseconds.

*Delay\_Variation:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXX	Available Delay Variation, in microseconds.

### 7.7.14 Command Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Command Complete	0x0E	Num_HCI_Command_Packets, Command_Opcode, Return_Parameters

#### Description:

The Command Complete event is used by the Controller for most commands to transmit return status of a command and the other event parameters that are specified for the issued HCI command.

The Num\_HCI\_Command\_Packets event parameter allows the Controller to indicate the number of HCI command packets the Host can send to the Controller. If the Controller requires the Host to stop sending commands, the Num\_HCI\_Command\_Packets event parameter will be set to zero. To indicate to the Host that the Controller is ready to receive HCI command packets, the Controller generates a Command Complete event with the Command\_Opcode 0x0000, and the Num\_HCI\_Command\_Packets event parameter is set to 1 or more. Command\_Opcode, 0x0000 is a NOP (No OPeration), and can be used to change the number of outstanding HCI command packets that the Host can send before waiting. See each command for the parameters that are returned by this event.

#### Event Parameters:

*Num\_HCI\_Command\_Packets:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	The Number of HCI command packets which are allowed to be sent to the Controller from the Host. Range for N: 0 – 255

*Command\_Opcode:* *Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Opcode of the command which caused this event.

*Return\_Parameter(s):* *Size: Depends on Command*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	This is the return parameter(s) for the command specified in the Command_Opcode event parameter. See each command's definition for the list of return parameters associated with that command.

### 7.7.15 Command Status Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Command Status	0x0F	Status, Num_HCI_Command_Packets, Command_Opcode

#### Description:

The Command Status event is used to indicate that the command described by the Command\_Opcode parameter has been received, and that the Controller is currently performing the task for this command. This event is needed to provide mechanisms for asynchronous operation, which makes it possible to prevent the Host from waiting for a command to finish. If the command cannot begin to execute (a parameter error may have occurred, or the command may currently not be allowed), the Status event parameter will contain the corresponding error code, and no complete event will follow since the command was not started. The Num\_HCI\_Command\_Packets event parameter allows the Controller to indicate the number of HCI command packets the Host can send to the Controller. If the Controller requires the Host to stop sending commands, the Num\_HCI\_Command\_Packets event parameter will be set to zero. To indicate to the Host that the Controller is ready to receive HCI command packets, the Controller generates a Command Status event with Status 0x00 and Command\_Opcode 0x0000, and the Num\_HCI\_Command\_Packets event parameter is set to 1 or more. Command\_Opcode, 0x0000 is a NOP (No OPeration) and can be used to change the number of outstanding HCI command packets that the Host can send before waiting.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Command currently in pending.
0x01-0xFF	Command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Num\_HCI\_Command\_Packets:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	The Number of HCI command packets which are allowed to be sent to the Controller from the Host. Range for N: 0 – 255

##### Command\_Opcode:

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Opcode of the command which caused this event and is pending completion.

### 7.7.16 Hardware Error Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Hardware Error	0x10	Hardware_Code

#### Description:

The Hardware Error event is used to indicate some type of hardware failure for the BR/EDR Controller. This event is used to notify the Host that a hardware failure has occurred in the Controller.

#### Event Parameters:

##### *Hardware\_Code*:

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00-0xFF	These Hardware_Codes will be implementation-specific, and can be assigned to indicate various hardware problems.

### 7.7.17 Flush Occurred Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Flush Occurred	0x11	Handle

#### Description:

The Flush Occurred event is used to indicate that, for the specified Handle, the current user data to be transmitted has been removed. The Handle shall be a Connection\_Handle for a BR/EDR LE ACL connection or a Logical\_Link\_Handle for an AMP ACL connection. This could result from the Flush command, or be due to the automatic flush. Multiple blocks of an L2CAP packet could have been pending in the Controller. If one baseband packet part of an L2CAP PDU is flushed, then the rest of the HCI data packets for the L2CAP PDU must also be flushed.

#### Event Parameters:

*Handle:*

*Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Handle that was flushed. The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a Primary Controller or a Logical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

### 7.7.18 Role Change Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Role Change	0x12	Status, BD_ADDR, New_Role

#### Description:

The Role Change event is used to indicate that the current role of the BR/EDR Controller related to the particular connection has changed. This event only occurs when both the remote and local BR/EDR Controllers have completed their role change for the BR/EDR Controller associated with the BD\_ADDR event parameter. This event allows both affected Hosts to be notified when the Role has been changed.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Role change has occurred.
0x01-0xFF	Role change failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*BD\_ADDR:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device for which a role change has completed.

*New\_Role:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Currently the Master for specified BD_ADDR.
0x01	Currently the Slave for specified BD_ADDR.

### 7.7.19 Number Of Completed Packets Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Number Of Completed Packets	0x13	Number_of_Handles, Connection_Handle[i], HC_Num_Of_Completed_Packets[i]

#### Description:

The Number Of Completed Packets event is used by the Controller to indicate to the Host how many HCI Data Packets have been completed (transmitted or flushed) for each Connection\_Handle since the previous Number Of Completed Packets event was sent to the Host. This means that the corresponding buffer space has been freed in the Controller. Based on this information, and the HC\_Total\_Num\_ACL\_Data\_Packets and HC\_Total\_Num\_Synchronous\_-Data\_Packets return parameter of the Read\_Buffer\_Size command, the Host can determine for which Connection\_Handles the following HCI Data Packets should be sent to the Controller. The Number Of Completed Packets event must not be sent before the corresponding Connection Complete event. While the Controller has HCI data packets in its buffer, it must keep sending the Number Of Completed Packets event to the Host at least periodically, until it finally reports that all the pending ACL Data Packets have been transmitted or flushed. The rate with which this event is sent is manufacturer specific.

Note: Number Of Completed Packets events will not report on synchronous Connection Handles if synchronous Flow Control is disabled. (See Read/Write\_Synchronous\_Flow\_Control\_Enable on [page 701](#) and [page 702](#).)

#### Event Parameters:

##### Number\_of\_Handles:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	The number of Connection_Handles and Num_HCI_Data_Packets parameters pairs contained in this event. Range: 0-255

Connection\_Handle[i]: Size: Number\_of\_Handles \* 2 Octets(12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

*HC\_Num\_Of\_Completed\_Packets [i]: Size: Number\_of\_Handles \* 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	The number of HCI Data Packets that have been completed (transmitted or flushed) for the associated Connection_Handle since the previous time the event was returned. Range for N: 0x0000-0xFFFF

### 7.7.20 Mode Change Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Mode Change	0x14	Status, Connection_Handle, Current_Mode, Interval

#### Description:

The Mode Change event is used to indicate when the device associated with the Connection\_Handle changes between Active mode, Hold mode, and Sniff mode, and Park state. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The Connection\_Handle event parameter is used to indicate which connection the Mode Change event is for. The Current\_Mode event parameter is used to indicate which state the connection is currently in. The Interval parameter is used to specify a time amount specific to each state. Each Controller that is associated with the Connection\_Handle which has changed Modes shall send the Mode Change event to its Host.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	A Mode Change has occurred.
0x01-0xFF	Hold_Mode, Sniff_Mode, Exit_Sniff_Mode, Park_State, or Exit_Park_State command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Connection\_Handle:

Size: 2 Octets(12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

##### Current\_Mode:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Active Mode.
0x01	Hold Mode.
0x02	Sniff Mode.
0x03	Park State.
0x04-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Interval:**Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	<p>Hold:  Number of Baseband slots to wait in Hold Mode.  Hold Interval = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot)  Range for N: 0x0002-0xFFFF  Time Range: 1.25 msec-40.9 sec</p> <p>Sniff:  Number of Baseband slots between sniff anchor points. Time between sniff anchor points = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot)Range for N: 0x0002-0xFFFF  Time Range: 1.25 msec-40.9 sec</p> <p>Park:  Number of Baseband slots between consecutive beacons.  Interval Length = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot)  Range for N: 0x0002-0xFFFF  Time Range: 1.25 msec-40.9 Seconds</p>

### 7.7.21 Return Link Keys Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Return Link Keys	0x15	Num_Keys, BD_ADDR [i], Link_Key[i]

#### Description:

The Return Link Keys event is used by the BR/EDR Controller to send the Host the BD\_ADDRs associated with one or more stored Link Keys. Zero or more instances of this event will occur after the Read\_Stored\_Link\_Key command. When there are no link keys stored, no Return Link Keys events shall be returned. When there are link keys stored, the number of link keys returned in each Return Link Keys event is implementation specific. This event shall never return the value of the link keys. The link keys value parameter shall always contain the value of zero.

#### Event Parameters:

*Num\_Keys:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Number of Link Keys contained in this event. Range: 0x01 – 0x0B

*BD\_ADDR [i]:* Size: 6 Octets \* Num\_Keys

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR for the associated Link Key.

*Link\_Key[i]:* Size: 16 Octets \* Num\_Keys

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000000000 00000000000000 000000	Shall be zero.

### 7.7.22 PIN Code Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
PIN Code Request	0x16	BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The PIN Code Request event is used to indicate that a PIN code is required to create a new link key. The Host shall respond using either the PIN\_Code\_Request\_Reply or the PIN\_Code\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command, depending on whether the Host can provide the Controller with a PIN code or not.

Note: If the PIN Code Request event is masked away, then the BR/EDR Controller will assume that the Host has no PIN Code.

When the BR/EDR Controller generates a PIN Code Request event in order for the local Link Manager to respond to the request from the remote Link Manager (as a result of a Create\_Connection or Authentication\_Requested command from the remote Host), the local Host must respond with either a PIN\_Code\_Request\_Reply or PIN\_Code\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command before the remote Link Manager detects LMP response timeout. (See [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).)

#### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*:

*Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device which a new link key is being created for.

### 7.7.23 Link Key Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Link Key Request	0x17	BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Link Key Request event is used to indicate that a Link Key is required for the connection with the device specified in BD\_ADDR. If the Host has the requested stored Link Key, then the Host shall pass the requested Key to the Controller using the Link\_Key\_Request\_Reply command. If the Host does not have the requested stored Link Key, or the stored Link Key does not meet the security requirements for the requested service, then the Host shall use the Link\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command to indicate to the Controller that the Host does not have the requested key.

Note: If the Link Key Request event is masked away, then the BR/EDR Controller will assume that the Host has no additional link keys.

If the Host uses the Link\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command when the requested service requires an authenticated Link Key and the current Link Key is unauthenticated, the Host should set the Authentication\_Requirements parameter one of the MITM Protection Required options.

When the Controller generates a Link Key Request event in order for the local Link Manager to respond to the request from the remote Link Manager (as a result of a Create\_Connection or Authentication\_Requested command from the remote Host), the local Host must respond with either a Link\_Key\_Request\_Reply or Link\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command before the remote Link Manager detects LMP response timeout. (See [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).)

#### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*:

*Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Device which a stored link key is being requested.

### 7.7.24 Link Key Notification Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Link Key Notification	0x18	BD_ADDR, Link_Key, Key_Type

#### Description:

The Link Key Notification event is used to indicate to the Host that a new Link Key has been created for the connection with the device specified in BD\_ADDR. The Host can save this new Link Key in its own storage for future use. Also, the Host can decide to store the Link Key in the BR/EDR Controller's Link Key Storage by using the Write\_Stored\_Link\_Key command. The Key\_Type event parameter informs the Host about which key type (combination key, local unit key, or remote unit key, debug combination key, unauthenticated combination key, authenticated combination key or changed combination key) that was used during pairing. If pairing with unit key is not supported, the Host can for instance discard the key or disconnect the link.

The combination key Key\_Type is used when standard pairing was used. The debug combination key Key\_Type is used when Simple Pairing was used and the debug public key is sent or received. The unauthenticated combination key Key\_Type is used when the Just Works Simple Pairing association model was used. The authenticated combination key Key\_Type is used when Simple Pairing was used and the Just Works association mode was not used. The changed combination key Key\_Type is used when the link key has been changed using the Change Connection Link Key procedure and Simple Pairing Mode is set to enabled. Note: It is the responsibility of the Host to remember the Key\_Type (combination, debug combination, unauthenticated combination, or authenticated combination) prior to changing the link key.

The meaning of the Key\_Type parameter depends on whether the Host has indicated support for Secure Connections in the Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support parameter. When Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support is 'disabled', the Controller shall only use Key\_Type values 0x00 through 0x06. When Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support is 'enabled', the values 0x07 and 0x08 may be used. The Controller shall use values 0x03 through 0x05 to indicate keys created with the P-192 elliptic curve, values 0x07 through 0x08 to indicate keys created with the P-256 elliptic curve. 0x04 is used to indicate a debug combination key created with either the P-192 or P-256 elliptic curve. 0x06 is used whenever the Change Connection Link Key procedure is used.

**Event Parameters:***BD\_ADDR*:*Size: 6 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the Device for which the new link key has been generated.

*Link\_Key*:*Size: 16 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Link Key for the associated BD_ADDR.

*Key\_Type*:*Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Combination Key
0x01	Local Unit Key
0x02	Remote Unit Key
0x03	Debug Combination Key
0x04	Unauthenticated Combination Key generated from P-192
0x05	Authenticated Combination Key generated from P-192
0x06	Changed Combination Key
0x07	Unauthenticated Combination Key generated from P-256
0x08	Authenticated Combination Key generated from P-256
0x09-0xFF	Reserved

### 7.7.25 Loopback Command Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Loopback Command	0x19	HCI_Command_Packet

#### Description:

When in Local Loopback mode, the BR/EDR Controller loops back commands and data to the Host. The Loopback Command event is used to loop back all commands that the Host sends to the Controller with some exceptions. See [section 7.6.1, “Read Loopback Mode Command,” on page 836](#) for a description of which commands that are not looped back. The HCI\_Command\_Packet event parameter contains the entire HCI Command Packet including the header.

Note: The event packet is limited to a maximum of 255 octets in the payload; since an HCI Command Packet has 3 octets of header data, only the first 252 octets of the command parameters will be returned.

#### Event Parameters:

*HCI\_Command\_Packet:* *Size: Depends on Command*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXX	HCI Command Packet, including header.

### 7.7.26 Data Buffer Overflow Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Data Buffer Overflow	0x1A	Link_Type

#### Description:

This event is used to indicate that the Controller's data buffers have been overflowed. This can occur if the Host has sent more packets than allowed. The Link\_Type parameter is used to indicate that the overflow was caused by ACL or synchronous data.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Link\_Type:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Synchronous Buffer Overflow (Voice Channels).
0x01	ACL Buffer Overflow (Data Channels).
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

### 7.7.27 Max Slots Change Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Max Slots Change	0x1B	Connection_Handle, LMP_Max_Slots

#### Description:

This event is used to notify the Host about the LMP\_Max\_Slots parameter when the value of this parameter changes. It shall be sent each time the maximum allowed length, in number of slots, for baseband packets transmitted by the local device, changes. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

#### Event Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*LMP\_Max\_Slots:* *Size: 1 octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x01, 0x03, 0x05	Maximum number of slots allowed to use for baseband packets, see <a href="#">Link Manager Protocol Specification, Section 4.1.10, on page 266</a> and <a href="#">Section 5.2 on page 359</a> .

### 7.7.28 Read Clock Offset Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Read Clock Offset Complete	0x1C	Status, Connection_Handle, Clock_Offset

#### Description:

The Read Clock Offset Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Link Manager obtaining the Clock Offset information of the BR/EDR Controller specified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Clock_Offset command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Clock_Offset command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Specifies which Connection_Handle's Clock Offset parameter is returned. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Clock\_Offset:* Size: 2 Octets

Bit format	Parameter Description
Bits 14-0	Bits 16-2 of CLKNslave-CLK
Bit 15	Reserved.

### 7.7.29 Connection Packet Type Changed Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Connection Packet Type Changed	0x1D	Status, Connection_Handle, Packet_Type

#### Description:

The Connection Packet Type Changed event is used to indicate that the process has completed of the Link Manager changing which packet types can be used for the connection. This allows current connections to be dynamically modified to support different types of user data. The Packet\_Type event parameter specifies which packet types the Link Manager can use for the connection identified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter for sending L2CAP data or voice. The Packet\_Type event parameter does not decide which packet types the LM is allowed to use for sending LMP PDUs.

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connection Packet Type changed successfully.
0x01-0xFF	Connection Packet Type Changed failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:** Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Packet\_Type:** Size: 2 Octets

#### For ACL\_Link\_Type

Value	Parameter Description
0x0001	Reserved for future use.
0x0002	2-DH1 may not be used.
0x0004	3-DH1 may not be used.
0x0008 <sup>1</sup>	DM1 may be used.
0x0010	DH1 may be used.
0x0020	Reserved for future use.
0x0040	Reserved for future use.
0x0080	Reserved for future use.

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0100	2-DH3 may not be used.
0x0200	3-DH3 may not be used.
0x0400	DM3 may be used.
0x0800	DH3 may be used.
0x1000	2-DH5 may not be used.
0x2000	3-DH5 may not be used.
0x4000	DM5 may be used.
0x8000	DH5 may be used.

1. This bit will be interpreted as set to 1 by Bluetooth V1.2 or later controllers.

#### *For SCO\_Link\_Type*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	Reserved for future use.
0x0002	Reserved for future use.
0x0004	Reserved for future use.
0x0008	Reserved for future use.
0x0010	Reserved for future use.
0x0020	HV1
0x0040	HV2
0x0080	HV3
0x0100	Reserved for future use.
0x0200	Reserved for future use.
0x0400	Reserved for future use.
0x0800	Reserved for future use.
0x1000	Reserved for future use.
0x2000	Reserved for future use.
0x4000	Reserved for future use.
0x8000	Reserved for future use.

### 7.7.30 QoS Violation Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
QoS Violation	0x1E	Handle

#### Description:

The QoS Violation event is used to indicate the Controller is unable to provide the current QoS requirement for the Connection or Logical Link Handle. This event indicates that the Controller is unable to provide one or more of the agreed QoS parameters.

The Host chooses what action should be done. With a BR/EDR Controller the Host can reissue the QoS\_Setup command to renegotiate the QoS setting for Connection\_Handle. With an AMP Controller the Host can reissue the Flow\_Spec\_Modify command.

#### Event Parameters:

*Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Handle for the link that the Controller cannot provide the current QoS requested. The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Logical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

### 7.7.31 Page Scan Repetition Mode Change Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Page Scan Repetition Mode Change	0x20	BD_ADDR, Page_Scan_Repetition_Mode

#### Description:

The Page Scan Repetition Mode Change event indicates that the remote BR/EDR Controller with the specified BD\_ADDR has successfully changed the Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode (SR).

#### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXX XXXX	BD_ADDR of the remote device.

*Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	R0
0x01	R1
0x02	R2
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved.

### 7.7.32 Flow Specification Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Flow Specification Complete	0x21	Status, Connection_Handle, Flags, Flow_direction, Service_Type, Token_Rate, Token_Bucket_Size, Peak_Bandwidth, Access Latency

#### Description:

The Flow Specification Complete event is used to inform the Host about the Quality of Service for the ACL connection the Controller is able to support. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The flow parameters refer to the outgoing or incoming traffic of the ACL link, as indicated by the Flow\_direction field. The flow parameters are defined in the L2CAP specification [\[Vol 3\] Part A, Section 5.3, Quality of Service \(QoS\)](#)

**Option.** When the Status parameter indicates a successful completion, the flow parameters specify the agreed values by the Controller. When the Status parameter indicates a failed completion with the Error Code *QoS Unacceptable Parameters* (0x2C), the flow parameters specify the acceptable values of the Controller. This enables the Host to continue the 'QoS negotiation' with a new HCI Flow\_Specification command with flow parameter values that are acceptable for the Controller. When the Status parameter indicates a failed completion with the Error Code *QoS Rejected* (0x2D), this indicates a request of the Controller to discontinue the 'QoS negotiation'. When the Status parameter indicates a failed completion, the flow parameter values of the most recently successful completion must be assumed (or the default values when there was no success completion).

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Flow_Specification command succeeded
0x01 – 0xFF	Flow_Specification command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for list of Error Codes

##### Connection\_Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXX	Connection_Handle used to identify for which ACL connection the Flow is specified. Range: 0x0000 - 0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Flags:*

Size: 1 Octet)

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Flow\_direction:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Outgoing Flow i.e. traffic send over the ACL connection
0x01	Incoming Flow i.e. traffic received over the ACL connection
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Service\_Type:*

Size: 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	No Traffic
0x01	Best Effort
0x02	Guaranteed
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Token Rate:*

Size: 4 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Token Rate in octets per second

*Token Bucket Size 4 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Token Bucket Size in octets

*Peak\_Bandwidth:*

Size: 4 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Peak Bandwidth in octets per second

*Access Latency:*

Size: 4 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	Access Latency in microseconds

### 7.7.33 Inquiry Result with RSSI Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Inquiry Result with RSSI	0x22	Num_responses, BD_ADDR[i], Page_Scan_Repetition_Mode[i], Reserved[i], Class_of_Device[i], Clock_Offset[i], RSSI[i]

#### Description:

The Inquiry Result with RSSI event indicates that a BR/EDR Controller or multiple BR/EDR Controllers have responded so far during the current Inquiry process. This event will be sent from the BR/EDR Controller to the Host as soon as an Inquiry Response from a remote device is received if the remote device supports only mandatory paging scheme. This BR/EDR Controller may queue these Inquiry Responses and send multiple BR/EDR Controllers information in one Inquiry Result event. The event can be used to return one or more Inquiry responses in one event. The RSSI parameter is measured during the FHS packet returned by each responding slave.

This event shall only be generated if the Inquiry Mode parameter of the last Write\_Inquiry\_Mode command was set to 0x01 (Inquiry Result format with RSSI).

#### Event Parameters:

##### Num\_Responses:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Number of responses from the Inquiry.

##### BD\_ADDR[i]:

Size: 6 Octets \* Num\_Responses

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXX XX	BD_ADDR for each device which responded.

##### Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode[i]:

Size: 1 Octet \* Num\_Responses

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	R0
0x01	R1
0x02	R2
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved

*Reserved[i]:*<sup>1</sup>*Size: 1 Octet\* Num\_Responses*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Reserved.

*Class\_of\_Device[i]:**Size: 3 Octets \* Num\_Responses*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXX	Class of Device for the device

*Clock\_Offset[i]:**Size: 2 Octets \* Num\_Responses*

Bit format	Parameter Description
Bits 14-0	Bits 16-2 of CLK_NSlave-CLK
Bit 15	Reserved

*RSSI[i]:**Size: 1 Octet \* Num\_Responses*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Range: -127 to +20 Units: dBm

1. This was the Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode parameter in the v1.1 specification. This parameter has no meaning in v1.2 or later and no default value.

### 7.7.34 Read Remote Extended Features Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Read Remote Extended Features Complete	0x23	Status, Connection_Handle, Page_Number, Maximum page number, Extended_LMP_Features

#### Description:

The Read Remote Extended Features Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Link Manager obtaining the remote extended LMP features of the remote device specified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The event parameters include a page of the remote devices extended LMP features. For details see [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227](#).

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Request for remote extended features succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Request for remote extended features failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes.

**Connection\_Handle:** Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	The Connection_Handle identifying the device to which the remote features apply. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00-0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Page Number:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	The normal LMP features as returned by Read_Remote_Supported_Features command
0x01-0xFF	The page number of the features returned

**Maximum Page Number:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00-0xFF	The highest features page number which contains non-zero bits for the local device

Extended\_LMP\_Features:

Size: 8 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF	Bit map of requested page of LMP features. See LMP <a href="#">Part C, Section 3.3, Feature Mask Definition</a> for details.

### 7.7.35 Synchronous Connection Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Synchronous Connection Complete	0x2C	Status, Connection_Handle, BD_ADDR, Link Type, Transmission_Interval, Retransmission Window, Rx_Packet_Length, Tx_Packet_Length Air Mode

#### Description:

The Synchronous Connection Complete event is sent to indicate completion of any of the following commands:

- Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection
- Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request
- Reject\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request
- Enhanced\_Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection
- Enhanced\_Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request

This event returns the completion status for the command.

When the Synchronous Connection Complete event was triggered by the Enhanced\_Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection or Enhanced\_Accept\_Synchronous\_Connection\_Request commands, the Controller shall set the Air Mode parameter to the Transmit Air Coding Format parameter of the original command.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connection successfully completed.
0x01 –0xFF	Connection failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

##### Connection\_Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two BR/EDR Controllers. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*BD\_ADDR:**Size: 6 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the other connected device forming the connection.

*Link\_Type:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	SCO Connection
0x01	Reserved
0x02	eSCO Connection
0x03 – 0xFF	Reserved

*Transmission\_Interval:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Time between two consecutive eSCO instants measured in slots. Must be zero for SCO links.

*Retransmission window:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	The size of the retransmission window measured in slots. Must be zero for SCO links.

*Rx\_Packet\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Length in bytes of the eSCO payload in the receive direction. Must be zero for SCO links.

*Tx\_Packet\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Length in bytes of the eSCO payload in the transmit direction. Must be zero for SCO links.

*Air Mode:**Size: 1 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	$\mu$ -law log
0x01	A-law log
0x02	CVSD
0x03	Transparent Data
0x04 – 0xFF	Reserved

### 7.7.36 Synchronous Connection Changed Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Synchronous Connection Changed	0x2D	Status, Connection_Handle, Transmission_Interval, Retransmission Window, Rx_Packet_Length, Tx_Packet_Length

#### Description:

The Synchronous Connection Changed event indicates to the Host that an existing synchronous connection has been reconfigured. This event also indicates to the initiating Host (if the change was host initiated) if the issued command failed or was successful.

#### Command Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connection successfully reconfigured.
0x01 –0xFF	Reconfiguration failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two BR/EDR Controllers. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Transmission\_Interval:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0XX	Time between two consecutive SCO/eSCO instants measured in slots.

*Retransmission window:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0XX	The size of the retransmission window measured in slots. Must be zero for SCO links.

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification**Rx\_Packet\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Length in bytes of the SCO/eSCO payload in the receive direction.

*Tx\_Packet\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Length in bytes of the SCO/eSCO payload in the transmit direction.

### 7.7.37 Sniff Subrating Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Sniff Subrating	0x2E	Status Connection_Handle Maximum_Transmit_Latency Maximum_Receive_Latency Minimum_Remote_Timeout Minimum_Local_Timeout

#### Description:

The Sniff Subrating event indicates that the device associated with the Connection\_Handle has either enabled sniff subrating or the sniff subrating parameters have been renegotiated by the link manager. The Connection\_Handle will be a Connection\_Handle for an ACL connection. The Connection\_Handle event parameter indicates which connection the Sniff Subrating event is for.

Each BR/EDR Controller that is associated with the Connection\_Handle that has changed its subrating parameters will send the Sniff Subrating event to its host.

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Sniff_Subrating command succeeded
0x01 – 0xFF	Subrating command failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:** Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle. Range: 0x0000 – 0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Maximum\_Transmit\_Latency:** Size: 2 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Maximum latency for data being transmitted from the local device to the remote device. Latency = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time Range: 0 sec - 40.9 sec

*Maximum\_Receive\_Latency:**Size: 2 Octet*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	<p>Maximum latency for data being received by the local device from the remote device.</p> <p>Latency = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot)</p> <p>Range for N: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF</p> <p>Time Range: 0 sec - 40.9 sec</p>

*Minimum\_Remote\_Timeout:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	<p>The base sniff subrate timeout in baseband slots that the remote device shall use.</p> <p>Timeout = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot)</p> <p>Range for N: 0x0000 – 0x8000</p> <p>Time Range: 0 sec – 40.9 sec</p>

*Minimum\_Local\_Timeout:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	<p>The base sniff subrate timeout in baseband slots that the local device will use.</p> <p>Timeout = N * 0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot)</p> <p>Range for N: 0x0000 – 0x8000</p> <p>Time Range: 0 sec – 40.9 sec</p>

### 7.7.38 Extended Inquiry Result Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Extended Inquiry Result	0x2F	Num_Responses, BD_ADDR, Page_Scan_Repetition_Mode, Reserved, Class_of_Device, Clock_Offset, RSSI, Extended_Inquiry_Response

#### Description:

The Extended Inquiry Result event indicates that a BR/EDR Controller has responded during the current inquiry process with extended inquiry response data. This event will be sent from the BR/EDR Controller to the Host upon reception of an Extended Inquiry Response from a remote device. One single Extended Inquiry Response is returned per event. This event contains RSSI and inquiry response data for the BR/EDR Controller that responded to the latest inquiry. The RSSI parameter is measured during the FHS packet returned by each responding slave. The Num\_Responses parameter shall be set to one.

This event is only generated if the Inquiry\_Mode parameter of the last Write\_Inquiry\_Mode command was set to 0x02 (Inquiry Result with RSSI format or Extended Inquiry Result format).

Note: This ensures that a Host that does not support Extended Inquiry Results will never receive the Extended Inquiry Result event.

If an inquiry response packet with the EIR field set to zero is received, the Inquiry Result with RSSI event format shall be used. If the EIR bit is set to one the Extended Inquiry Result event format shall be used. If the EIR bit is set to one but the Controller failed to receive the extended inquiry response packet, the Extended\_Inquiry\_Response parameter is set to zeros. If an extended inquiry response packet from the same device is correctly received in a later response, another event shall be generated.

Note: The only difference between the Extended Inquiry Result event and the Inquiry Result with RSSI event is the additional Extended\_Inquiry\_Response parameter.

Note: The Extended\_Inquiry\_Response parameter is not interpreted by the Controller. The tagged data set by the other Host should be passed unaltered if it has been correctly received.

**Event Parameters:***Num\_Responses:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	Number of responses from the inquiry. The Extended Inquiry Result event always contains a single response.

*BD\_ADDR:*

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR for the device that responded.

*Page\_Scan\_Repetition\_Mode:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	R0
0x01	R1
0x02	R2
0x03 - 0xFF	Reserved

*Reserved:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Reserved.

*Class\_of\_Device:*

Size: 3 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXX	Class of Device for the device that responded.

*Clock\_Offset*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Bits 14-0	Bits 16-2 of CLKNslave-CLK
Bit 15	Reserved.

*RSSI:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Range: -127 to +20
	Units: dBm

*Extended\_Inquiry\_Response:**Size: 240 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
	Extended Inquiry Response data as defined in <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part C, Section 8</a>

### 7.7.39 Encryption Key Refresh Complete Event

Command	Event Code	Event Parameters
Encryption Key Refresh Complete	0x30	Status Connection_Handle

#### Description:

The Encryption Key Refresh Complete event is used to indicate to the Host that the encryption key was refreshed on the given Connection\_Handle any time encryption is paused and then resumed. The BR/EDR Controller shall send this event when the encryption key has been refreshed due to encryption being started or resumed.

If the Encryption Key Refresh Complete event was generated due to an encryption pause and resume operation embedded within a change connection link key procedure, the Encryption Key Refresh Complete event shall be sent prior to the Change Connection Link Key Complete event.

If the Encryption Key Refresh Complete event was generated due to an encryption pause and resume operation embedded within a role switch procedure, the Encryption Key Refresh Complete event shall be sent prior to the Role Change event.

#### Event parameters:

##### *Status:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Encryption Key Refresh completed successfully
0x01 - 0xFF	Encryption Key Refresh failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for list of Error Codes

##### *Connection\_Handle:*

Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXX	Connection Handle for the ACL connection to have the encryption key refreshed on. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use).

### 7.7.40 IO Capability Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
IO Capability Request	0x31	BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The IO Capability Request event is used to indicate that the IO capabilities of the Host are required for a simple pairing process. The Host shall respond with an IO\_Capability\_Request\_Reply command. This event shall only be generated if simple pairing has been enabled with the Write\_Simple\_Pairing\_Mode command.

#### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR:* *Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

### 7.7.41 IO Capability Response Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
IO Capability Response	0x32	BD_ADDR, IO_Capability, OOB_Data_Present, Authentication_Requirements

#### Description:

The IO Capability Response event is used to indicate to the host that IO capabilities from a remote device specified by BD\_ADDR have been received during a simple pairing process. This event will only be generated if simple pairing has been enabled with the Write\_Simple\_Pairing\_Mode command.

#### Event Parameters:

##### *BD\_ADDR*:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR identifying the device to which the IO capabilities apply.

##### *IO\_Capability*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	DisplayOnly
0x01	DisplayYesNo
0x02	KeyboardOnly
0x03	NoInputNoOutput
0x04 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

##### *OOB\_Data\_Present*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	OOB authentication data not present
0x01	OOB authentication data from remote device present
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

##### *Authentication\_Requirements*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	MITM Protection Not Required – No Bonding. Numeric comparison with automatic accept allowed.

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification*

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	MITM Protection Required – No Bonding. Use IO Capabilities to determine authentication procedure
0x02	MITM Protection Not Required – Dedicated Bonding. Numeric comparison with automatic accept allowed.
0x03	MITM Protection Required – Dedicated Bonding. Use IO Capabilities to determine authentication procedure
0x04	MITM Protection Not Required – General Bonding. Numeric Comparison with automatic accept allowed.
0x05	MITM Protection Required – General Bonding. Use IO capabilities to determine authentication procedure.
0x06 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use

### 7.7.42 User Confirmation Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
User Confirmation Request	0x33	BD_ADDR, Numeric_Value

#### Description:

The User Confirmation Request event is used to indicate that user confirmation of a numeric value is required. The Host shall reply with either the User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Reply or the User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command. If the Host has output capability (DisplayYesNo or KeyboardOnly), it shall display the Numeric\_Value until the Simple Pairing Complete event is received. It shall reply based on the yes/no response from the user. If the Host has no input and no output it shall reply with the User Confirmation Request Reply command. When the Controller generates a User Confirmation Request event, in order for the local Link Manager to respond to the request from the remote Link Manager, the local Host must respond with either a User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Reply or a User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command before the remote Link Manager detects LMP response timeout. (See [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227.](#))

#### Event Parameters:

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of device involved in Simple Pairing process.

##### Numeric\_Value:

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000 – 0x000F423F	Numeric value to be displayed. Valid values are decimal 000000 – 999999.

### 7.7.43 User Passkey Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
User Passkey Request	0x34	BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The User Passkey Request event is used to indicate that a passkey is required as part of a Simple Pairing process. The Host shall respond with either a User\_Passkey\_Request\_Reply or User\_Passkey\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command. This event will only be generated if simple pairing has been enabled with the Write\_Simple\_Pairing\_Mode command. When the Controller generates a User Passkey Request event, in order for the local Link Manager to respond to the request from the remote Link Manager, the local Host must respond with either a User\_Passkey\_Request\_Reply or User\_Passkey\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command before the remote Link Manager detects LMP response timeout. (See [Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification on page 227.](#))

#### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the device involved in simple pairing process.

### 7.7.44 Remote OOB Data Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Remote OOB Data Request	0x35	BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Remote OOB Data Request event is used to indicate that the Simple Pairing Hash C and the Simple Pairing Randomizer R is required for the Secure Simple Pairing process involving the device identified by BD\_ADDR. The C and R values were transferred to the Host from the remote device via an OOB mechanism. This event is sent by the Controller because the Host previously set the OOB Data Present parameter to "OOB authentication data from remote device present" in an IO Capability Request Reply command. If both the Host and Controller support Secure Connections the Host shall respond with the Remote OOB Extended Data Request Reply command. Otherwise, the Host shall respond with the Remote OOB Data Request Reply command.

#### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*:

*Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the device from which the C and R values were received.

### 7.7.45 Simple Pairing Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Simple Pairing Complete	0x36	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Simple Pairing Complete event is used to indicate that the simple pairing process has completed. A Host that is displaying a numeric value can use this event to change its UI.

When the LMP simple pairing sequences fail for any reason, the Simple Pairing Complete event shall be sent to the Host. When Simple Pairing Complete event is sent in response to the IO capability exchange failing, the Status parameter shall be set to the error code received from the remote device. Otherwise, the Status shall be set to the error code “Authentication Failure.”

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Simple Pairing succeeded
0x01 - 0xFF	Simple Pairing failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of Error Codes.

*BD\_ADDR:* *Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the device involved in simple pairing process.

### 7.7.46 Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Link Supervision Timeout Changed	0x38	Connection_Handle, Link_Supervision_Timeout

#### Description:

The Link Supervision Timeout Changed event is used to notify the slave's Host when the Link\_Supervision\_Timeout parameter is changed in the slave Controller. This event shall only be sent to the Host by the slave controller upon receiving an LMP\_supervision\_timeout PDU from the master.

Note: The Connection\_Handle used for this command shall be the ACL connection of the appropriate device.

#### Event Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection Handle Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Link\_Supervision\_Timeout:* *Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Measured in Number of Baseband slots Link_Supervision_Timeout = N*0.625 msec (1 Baseband slot) Range for N: 0x0001 - 0xFFFF Time Range: 0.625ms - 40.9 sec (0 means infinite timeout)

### 7.7.47 Enhanced Flush Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event parameter
Enhanced Flush Complete	0x39	Handle

#### Description:

The Enhanced Flush Complete event is used to indicate that an Enhanced Flush is complete for the specified Handle.

#### Event Parameters:

*Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Handle of the link for which Controller cannot provide the requested QoS. The Handle is a Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller and a Logical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller. Range: 0x0000 - 0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

### 7.7.48 User Passkey Notification Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
User Passkey Notification	0x3B	BD_ADDR, Passkey

#### Description:

The User Passkey Notification event is used to provide a passkey for the Host to display to the user as required as part of a Simple Pairing process. The Passkey parameter shall be a randomly generated number (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part H, Section 2 on page 1292](#)) generated by the Controller modulo 1,000,000.

This event will be generated if the IO capabilities of the local device are DisplayOnly or DisplayYesNo and the IO capabilities of the remote device are KeyboardOnly.

This event shall only be generated if simple pairing has been enabled with the Write\_Simple\_Pairing\_Mode command.

#### Event Parameters:

##### *BD\_ADDR*:

*Size: 6 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the device involved in simple pairing process.

##### *Passkey*:

*Size: 4 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00000000 - 0x000F423F	Passkey to be displayed. Valid values are decimal 000000 - 999999.

### 7.7.49 Keypress Notification Event

Command	Event Code	Event Parameters
Keypress Notification	0x3C	BD_ADDR, Notification_Type

#### Description:

The Keypress Notification event is sent to the Host after a passkey notification has been received by the Link Manager on the given BD\_ADDR. The Notification\_Type parameter may be used by the Host's user interface.

#### Event parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxx X	BD_ADDR of remote device involved in simple pairing process

*Notification\_Type*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0	Passkey entry started
1	Passkey digit entered
2	Passkey digit erased
3	Passkey cleared
4	Passkey entry completed
5-255	Reserved for future use

### 7.7.50 Remote Host Supported Features Notification Event

Command	Event Code	Event Parameters
Remote Host Supported Features Notification	0x3D	BD_ADDR Host_Supported_Features

#### Description:

The Remote Host Supported Features Notification event is used to return the LMP extended features page containing the Host features. The BD\_ADDR shall be the address of the remote device.

This event shall only be generated after the LMP extended features are read from the remote device during a connection initiated by a Remote Name Request command.

Note: This event is not generated during a connection initiated by the Create\_Connection command.

#### Event parameters:

##### *BD\_ADDR*:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of remote device.

##### *Host\_Supported\_Features*:

Size: 8 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF FF	Bit map of Host Supported Features page of LMP extended features.  For more information, see “ <a href="#">Part C, Link Manager Protocol Specification</a> ” .

### 7.7.51 Physical Link Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Physical Link Complete	0x40	Status, Physical_Link_Handle

#### Description:

The Physical Link Complete event indicates to the Host that a new AMP physical link has been established. This event is used as a response for either Create\_Physical\_Link or Accept\_Physical\_Link commands and is preceded by a Command Status event.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connection successfully completed.
0x01-0xFF	Connection failed to Complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Physical\_Link\_Handle:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle identifying the physical link which has been created.

### 7.7.52 Channel Selected Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Channel Selected	0x41	Physical_Link_Handle

#### Description:

The Channel Selected event indicates to the Host originating the physical link that the link information data is available to be read using the Read Local AMP Assoc command. This allows the originating device to determine link implementation parameters such as an underlying physical channel choice. This structure shall be sent in the AMP Create Physical Link Request (see [\[Vol 3\] Part E, Section 3.11](#)) and be used at the remote end in the Accept\_Physical\_Link command.

#### Event Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle to the established physical link.

### 7.7.53 Disconnection Physical Link Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Disconnection Physical Link Complete	0x42	Status, Physical_Link_Handle, Reason

#### Description:

The Disconnection Physical Link Complete event occurs when a physical link is terminated. The status parameter indicates if the disconnection was successful or not.

When a physical link fails, one Disconnection Logical Link Complete event will be returned for each logical channel on the physical link with the corresponding Logical\_Link\_Handle as a parameter.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Disconnection has occurred.
0x01-0xFF	Disconnection failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Physical\_Link\_Handle:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle which was disconnected.

*Reason:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Reason for disconnection. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

### 7.7.54 Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Physical Link Loss Early Warning	0x43	Physical_Link_Handle, Link_Loss_Reason

#### Description:

The Physical Link Loss Early Warning event occurs when a physical link has early indication that the link may be disrupted. Data transmission and reception may suffer impairment on this link. The Host may use this to indicate to the user that traffic may be disrupted.

The exact low level meaning is dependent on the AMP type. Some AMP types may never generate this event.

#### Event Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle to which the warning refers.

*Link\_Loss\_Reason*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0	Unknown
1	Range related
2	Bandwidth related
3	Resolving conflict
4	Interference
5-255	Reserved

### 7.7.55 Physical Link Recovery Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Physical Link Recovery	0x44	Physical_Link_Handle

#### Description:

The Physical Link Recovery event indicates that whatever interruption caused an earlier Physical Link Loss Early Warning event has now been cleared. The normal data transmission and reception service can be expected. The exact low level meaning is dependent on the AMP type. The Host may use this event to cancel any indication to the user caused by the Physical Link Loss Early Warning event.

#### Event Parameters:

*Physical\_Link\_Handle*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle to which the warning referred.

### 7.7.56 Logical Link Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Logical Link Complete	0x45	Status, Logical_Link_Handle, Physical_Link_Handle, TX_Flow_Spec_ID

#### Description:

The Logical Link Complete event indicates to both of the Hosts forming the connection whether a new connection has been established successfully.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connection successfully completed.
0x01-0xFF	Connection failed to Complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Logical\_Link\_Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Logical_Link_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two BR/EDR Controllers with communicating AMPs. The Logical_Link_Handle is used as an identifier for transmitting and receiving data. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

##### Physical\_Link\_Handle:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0XX	Physical_Link identifying the physical link over which the logical link has been created.

##### TX\_Flow\_Spec\_ID:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0XX	Flow Spec ID identifying the logical link creation that completed. This matches the ID field of the TX_Flow_Spec

### 7.7.57 Disconnection Logical Link Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Disconnection Logical Link Complete	0x46	Status, Logical_Link_Handle, Reason

#### Description:

The Disconnection Logical Link Complete event occurs when a logical link is terminated on the local Controller. The status parameter indicates if the disconnection was successful or not.

Note: When the local Controller disconnects a logical link, the remote Controller will not be notified.

Note: When a physical link fails, one Disconnection Logical Link Complete event will be returned for each logical channel on the physical link with the corresponding Logical\_Link\_Handle as a parameter.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Disconnection has occurred.
0x01-0xFF	Disconnection failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Logical\_Link\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Logical_Link_Handle which was disconnected. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Reason:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0XX	Reason for disconnection. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

### 7.7.58 Flow Spec Modify Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Flow Spec Modify Complete	0x47	Status, Handle

#### Description:

The Flow Spec Modify Complete event indicates to the Host that a Flow Spec Modify command has been completed. This event also indicates to the Host which issued the Flow\_Spec\_Modify command and then received a Command Status event if the issued command failed or was successful.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Flow_Spec_Modify command successfully completed.
0x01-0xFF	Flow_Spec_Modify command failed to Complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle if the receiving Controller is a BR/EDR Controller. Logical_Link_Handle, if the receiving Controller is an AMP Controller, identifying the logical link to be changed. Logical_Link_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two BR/EDR Controllers with communicating AMPs. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

### 7.7.59 Number Of Completed Data Blocks Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Number Of Completed Data Blocks	0x48	Total_Num_Data_Blocks, Number_of_Handles, Handle[i], Num_Of_Completed_Packets[i], Num_Of_Completed_Blocks[i]

#### Description:

The Number Of Completed Data Blocks event is used by the Controller to indicate to the Host how many HCI ACL Data Packets have been completed (transmitted or flushed), and how many data block buffers have been freed, for each Handle (a Connection\_Handle if the Controller is a BR/EDR Controller or a Logical\_Link\_Handle if the Controller is an AMP Controller) since the previous Number Of Completed Data Blocks event was sent to the Host. This means that the corresponding buffer space has been freed in the Controller. Based on this information, and the Total\_Num\_Data\_Blocks parameter, the Host can determine for which Handles the following HCI ACL Data Packets should be sent to the Controller.

The Host should determine the number of blocks occupied by each ACL data packet by dividing the ACL data packet size by the Data\_Block\_Length parameter of the Read\_Data\_Block\_Size command.

The Total\_Num\_Data\_Blocks parameter indicates the total number of buffer blocks available in the Controller. Before any Number of Complete Data Blocks event is received, the value of Total\_Num\_Data\_Blocks from the Read\_Data\_Block\_Size command is used. This allows the value to be updated at any time, which provides the Controller with some flexibility on its buffer allocation.

If the Controller were permitted to reduce its buffer pool in an arbitrary way then there is a potential race condition, in the case where the Host has just started to transmit a new packet. In order to prevent this race condition, the Total\_Num\_Data\_Blocks parameter shall not indicate a reduction in the pool of blocks greater than the sum of the Num\_Of\_Completed\_Blocks values in this event. If a greater reduction in the block pool is required then the value 0 shall be indicated here. The value 0 has a special meaning and indicates that the Host shall re-issue the Read Data Block Size command in order to find the new buffer pool size. The Host shall wait for any outstanding TX to complete and shall defer further TX until the Read\_Data\_Block\_Size command has been issued and completed. The Controller shall reduce its allocation only after the Read\_Data\_Block\_Size command has been issued and completed. This ensures that the race condition described above is avoided.

**Event Parameters:***Total\_Num\_Data\_Blocks:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	The size of the buffer pool may have changed. The Host is requested to issue a Read Data Block Size command in order to determine the new value of Total_Num_Data_Blocks.
0xFFFF	Total number of data block buffers available in the Controller for the storage of data packets scheduled for transmission. This indicates the existing value is unchanged, or increased, or reduced by up to the sum of the Num_Of_Completed_Blocks values in this command.

*Number\_of\_Handles:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	The number of Handles and Num_Of_Completed_Packets and Num_Of_Completed_Blocks parameter triples contained in this event.
Range: 0-255	

*Handle[i]:*

Size: Number\_of\_Handles \* 2 Octets(12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Handle (Connection_Handle for a BR/EDR Controller or a Logical_Link_Handle for an AMP Controller). Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Num\_Of\_Completed\_Packets [i]:*

Size: Number\_of\_Handles \* 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	The number of HCI ACL Data Packets that have been completed (transmitted or flushed) for the associated Handle since the previous time that a Number Of Completed Data Blocks event provided information about this Handle. Range for N: 0x0000-0xFFFF

*Num\_Of\_Completed\_Blocks [i]:*

Size: Number\_of\_Handles \* 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	The number of data blocks that have been freed for the associated Handle since the previous time that a Number Of Completed Data Blocks event provided information about this Handle. Range for N: 0x0000-0xFFFF

### 7.7.60 Short Range Mode Change Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Short_Range_Mode_Change_-Complete	0x4C	Status, Physical_Link_Handle, Short_Range_Mode_State

#### Description:

The Short Range Mode Change Complete event occurs after the AMP Controller has been notified to enable or disable Short Range Mode for a given physical link. The status parameter indicates if the configuration change was successful or not.

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Short Range Mode configuration has occurred.
0x01-0xFF	Short Range Mode configuration failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Physical\_Link\_Handle:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Physical_Link_Handle to which the configuration applies.

**Short\_Range\_Mode\_State:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	State of Short Range Mode in controller. 0 - Short Range Mode disabled 1 - Short Range Mode enabled 0x02 - 0xFF - reserved

### 7.7.61 AMP Status Change Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
AMP_Status_Change	0x4D	Status, AMP_Status

#### Description:

The AMP Status Change event can occur at any time, after initial Read\_Local\_AMP\_Info\_Request command, and when the AMP Controller detects a change has occurred regarding status and is based on availability thresholds.

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	AMP_Status_Change has occurred.
0x01-0xFF	AMP_Status_Change failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**AMP\_Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	<p>The Controller radio is available but is currently physically powered down.</p> <p>This value should be used if the AMP Controller is present and can be powered up by the AMP Manager.</p> <p>This value indicates that there may be a cost of time and power to use this AMP Controller (i.e., the time taken and power required to power up the AMP Controller). These costs are AMP type and AMP implementation dependent.</p>
0x01	<p>This value indicates that the AMP Controller is only used by Bluetooth technology and will not be shared with other non-Bluetooth technologies.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much bandwidth is currently free on the AMP Controller.</p>
0x02	<p>The AMP Controller has no capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that all of the AMP Controllers bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing a non Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>A device is permitted to create a Physical Link to an AMP Controller that has this status.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>

Value	Parameter Description
0x03	<p>The AMP Controller has low capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that the majority of the AMP Controllers bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing a non Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>An AMP Controller that with capacity in the approximate range of <math>0 &lt; \text{capacity} &lt; 30\%</math> should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently available.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x04	<p>The AMP Controller has medium capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>An AMP Controller that with capacity in the approximate range of <math>30\% &lt; \text{capacity} &lt; 70\%</math> should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently available.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up</p>
0x05	<p>The AMP Controller has high capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that the majority of the AMP Controllers bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing the Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>An AMP Controller that with capacity in the approximate range of <math>70\% &lt; \text{capacity} &lt; 100\%</math> should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently available.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up</p>
0x06	<p>The AMP Controller has full capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that while currently the AMP is only being used by Bluetooth the device allows a different technology to share the radio.</p> <p>This value shall be used by devices that are not capable of determining the current available capacity of an AMP that is shared by a different technology.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently available.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x07 - 0xFF	Reserved

### 7.7.62 AMP Start Test Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
AMP Start Test	0x49	Status, Test Scenario

**Description:**

The AMP Start Test event shall be generated when the AMP\_Test command has completed and the first data is ready to be sent or received .

**Event Parameters:**

*Status:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Test command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Test command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a>

*Test Scenario:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	See the Test Commands section of the Protocol Adaptation Layer Functional Specification for the Controller type

### 7.7.63 AMP Test End Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
AMP Test End	0x4A	Status, Test Scenario

#### Description:

The AMP Test End event shall be generated to indicate that the AMP has transmitted or received the number of frames/bursts configured.

If the Receiver reports are enabled an AMP Receiver Report Event shall be generated.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	AMP_Test_End command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	AMP_Test_End command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a>

*Test Scenario:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	See the Test Commands section of the Protocol Adaptation Layer Functional Specification for the Controller type

### 7.7.64 AMP Receiver Report Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
AMP Receiver Report	0x4B	Controller_Type, Reason, Event_Type, Number_Of_Frames, Number_Of_Error_Frames, Number_Of_Bits, Number_Of_Error_Bits

#### Description:

The AMP Receiver Report event shall be sent from the AMP to the tester via the AMP Test Manager at the interval configured by the Enable\_AMP\_Receiver\_Reports command.

The AMP Receiver Report event is generated to indicate the number of frames received and optionally the number of bits in error detected.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Controller\_Type:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	See Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a>

##### Reason:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	0x00 Configured Interval report 0x01 Test Ended report 0x02 – 0xFF Reserved

##### Event\_type:

Size: 4 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	0x00 Frames received report 0x01 Frames received and bits in error report (optional) 0x02 – 0xFF Reserved

##### Number\_Of\_Frames:

Size: 2 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Number of frames received so far

*Number\_Of\_Error\_Frames:**Size: 2 Bytes*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Number of frames with errors received so far

*Number\_Of\_Bits:**Size: 4 Bytes*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XXXXXXXXX	Number of bits received so far. Shall be set to 0x00000000 if the Event_type is not equal to 0x01.

*Number\_Of\_Error\_Bits:**Size: 4 Bytes*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XXXXXXXXX	Number of bit errors received so far. Shall be set to 0x00000000 if the Event_type is not equal to 0x01.

## 7.7.65 LE Meta Event

### Description:

The LE Meta Event is used to encapsulate all LE Controller specific events. The Event Code of all LE Meta Events shall be 0x3E. The Subevent\_Code is the first octet of the event parameters. The Subevent\_Code shall be set to one of the valid Subevent\_Codes from an LE specific event. All other Subevent\_Parameters are defined in the LE Controller specific events.

### 7.7.65.1 LE Connection Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event parameters
LE Connection Complete	0x3E	Subevent_Code, Status, Connection_Handle, Role, Peer_Address_Type, Peer_Address, Conn_Interval, Conn_Latency, Supervision_Timeout, Master_Clock_Accuracy

### Description:

The LE Connection Complete event indicates to both of the Hosts forming the connection that a new connection has been created. Upon the creation of the connection a Connection\_Handle shall be assigned by the Controller, and passed to the Host in this event. If the connection establishment fails this event shall be provided to the Host that had issued the LE\_Create\_Connection command.

This event indicates to the Host which issued a LE\_Create\_Connection command and received a Command Status event if the connection establishment failed or was successful.

The Master\_Clock\_Accuracy parameter is only valid for a slave. On a master, this parameter shall be set to 0x00.

### Event Parameters:

#### Subevent\_Code:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	Subevent code for LE Connection Complete event

**Status:****Size:** 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Connection successfully completed.
0x01 – 0xFF	Connection failed to complete. <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Connection\_Handle:** **Size:** 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two Bluetooth devices. The Connection_Handle is used as an identifier for transmitting and receiving data. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Role:****Size:** 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Connection is master
0x01	Connection is slave
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Peer\_Address\_Type:** **Size:** 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Peer is using a Public Device Address
0x01	Peer is using a Random Device Address
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Peer\_Address:** **Size:** 6 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	Public Device Address or Random Device Address of the peer device

**Conn\_Interval:** **Size:** 2 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Connection interval used on this connection. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 msec Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4000 msec.

*Conn\_Latency:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Slave latency for the connection in number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3

*Supervision\_Timeout:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection supervision timeout. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80 Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 100 msec to 32 seconds

*Master\_Clock\_Accuracy:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	500 ppm
0x01	250 ppm
0x02	150 ppm
0x03	100 ppm
0x04	75 ppm
0x05	50 ppm
0x06	30 ppm
0x07	20 ppm
0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

### 7.7.65.2 LE Advertising Report Event

Event	Event Code	Event parameters
LE Advertising Report	0x3E	Subevent_Code, Num_Reports, Event_Type[i], Address_Type[i], Address[i], Length[i], Data[i], RSSI[i]

#### Description:

The LE Advertising Report event indicates that a Bluetooth device or multiple Bluetooth devices have responded to an active scan or received some information during a passive scan. The Controller may queue these advertising reports and send information from multiple devices in one LE Advertising Report event.

#### Event Parameters:

*Subevent\_Code:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x02	Subevent code for LE Advertising Report event

*Num\_Reports:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01 - 0x19	Number of responses in event.

*Event\_Type[i]:* Size: 1 Octet \* Num\_Reports

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connectable undirected advertising (ADV_IND).
0x01	Connectable directed advertising (ADV_DIRECT_IND)
0x02	Scannable undirected advertising (ADV_SCAN_IND)
0x03	Non connectable undirected advertising (ADV_NONCONN_IND)
0x04	Scan Response (SCAN_RSP)
0x05-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Address\_Type[i]:**Size: 1 Octet \* Num\_Reports*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Public Device Address
0x01	Random Device Address
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Address[i]:**Size: 6 Octets \* Num\_Reports*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Public Device Address or Random Device Address for each device which responded.

*Length\_Data[i]:**Size: 1 Octets \* Num\_Reports*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00 - 0x1F	Length of the Data[i] field for each device which responded.
0x20 - 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Data[i]:**Size: Length\_Data[i] Octets \* Num\_Reports*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
	Length_Data[i] octets of advertising or scan response data formatted as defined in <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part C, Section 11</a> .

*RSSI[i]:**Size: 1 Octet \* Num\_Reports*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: $-127 \leq N \leq +20$ Units: dBm
127	RSSI is not available
21 to 126	Reserved for future use

### 7.7.65.3 LE Connection Update Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event parameters
LE Connection Update Complete	0x3E	Subevent_Code, Status, Connection_Handle, Conn_Interval, Conn_Latency, Supervision_Timeout

#### Description:

The LE Connection Update Complete event is used to indicate that the Controller process to update the connection has completed.

On a slave, if no connection parameters are updated, then this event shall not be issued.

On a master, this event shall be issued if the Connection\_Update command was sent.

Note: This event can be issued autonomously by the Master's Controller if it decides to change the connection interval based on the range of allowable connection intervals for that connection.

Note: The parameter values returned in this event may be different from the parameter values provided by the Host through the LE Connection Update command ([Section 7.8.18](#)) or the LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply command ([Section 7.8.31](#)).

#### Event Parameters:

**Subevent\_Code:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x03	Subevent code for LE Connection Update Complete event

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connection_Update command successfully completed.
0x01 – 0xFF	Connection_Update command failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two Bluetooth devices. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Conn\_Interval:* *Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Connection interval used on this connection. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 msec Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4000 msec.

*Conn\_Latency:* *Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Slave latency for the connection in number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3

*Supervision\_Timeout:* *Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Supervision timeout for this connection. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80 Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 100 msec to 32000 msec

#### 7.7.65.4 LE Read Remote Used Features Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event parameters
LE Read Remote Used Features Complete	0x3E	Subevent_Code, Status, Connection_Handle, LE_Features

##### Description:

The LE Read Remote Used Features Complete event is used to indicate the completion of the process of the Controller obtaining the used features of the remote Bluetooth device specified by the Connection\_Handle event parameter.

##### Event Parameters:

*Subevent\_Code:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x04	Subevent code for LE Read Remote Used Features Complete event

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Read_Remote_Used_Features command successfully completed.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Read_Remote_Used_Features command failed to complete. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two Bluetooth devices. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*LE\_Features:* Size: 8 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXX	Bit Mask List of used LE features. For details see LE Link Layer specification.

### 7.7.65.5 LE Long Term Key Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event parameters
LE Long Term Key Request	0x3E	Subevent_Code, Connection_Handle, Random_Number, Encryption_Diversifier

#### Description:

The LE Long Term Key Request event indicates that the master device is attempting to encrypt or re-encrypt the link and is requesting the Long Term Key from the Host. (See [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.1.3](#)).

#### Event Parameters:

*Subevent\_Code:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x05	Subevent code for LE Long Term Key Request event

*Connection Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection between two Bluetooth devices. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Random\_Number:* *Size: 8 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXX	64-bit random number.

*Encrypted\_Diversifier:* *Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	16-bit encrypted diversifier.

### 7.7.65.6 LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Event

Event	Event Code	Event parameters
LE Remote Connection Parameter Request	0x3E	Subevent_Code, Connection_Handle, Interval_Min, Interval_Max, Latency, Timeout

#### Description:

This event indicates to the master's Host or the slave's Host that the remote device is requesting a change in the connection parameters. The Host replies either with the HCI LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply command or the HCI LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply command.

#### Event Parameters:

*Subevent\_Code:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x06	Subevent code for LE Remote Connection Parameter Request event.

*Connection Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0xF00 – 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

*Interval\_Min:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Minimum value of the connection interval requested by the remote device. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 ms Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4 seconds

*Host Controller Interface Functional Specification**Interval\_Max:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	Maximum value of the connection interval requested by the remote device. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 ms Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4 seconds

*Latency:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Maximum allowed slave latency for the connection specified as the number of connection events requested by the remote device. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3 (499)

*Timeout:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	Supervision timeout for the connection requested by the remote device. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80 Time = N * 10 ms Time Range: 100 ms to 32 seconds

### 7.7.66 Triggered Clock Capture Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Triggered Clock Capture	0x4E	Connection_Handle, Which_Clock, Clock, Slot_Offset

#### Description:

The Triggered Clock Capture event is sent to indicate that a triggering event has occurred at the specified clock and offset value. The Which\_Clock parameter indicates whether the clock is local or a piconet clock. The Connection\_Handle parameter is used when the clock is a piconet clock to indicate which piconet's clock was reported.

The Clock parameter indicates the value of the selected clock at the instant of the triggering event, with bits 1 and 0 set to 0b.

The Slot\_Offset parameter indicates the number of microseconds (from 0 to 1249) from the instant at which the selected clock took the value Clock until the triggering event.

#### Event Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range: 0x0000 – 0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Which\_Clock:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	0x00 = Local Clock (Connection_Handle does not have to be valid) 0x01 = Piconet Clock (Connection_Handle shall be valid) 0x02-0xFF = Reserved

*Clock:* Size: 4 Octets (28 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX	Bluetooth clock of the device requested with bits 1 and 0 set to 0b.

*Slot\_Offset:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XXXX	Number of microseconds from the selected clock attaining the value Clock until the triggering event. Range: 0 to 1249.

### 7.7.67 Synchronization Train Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Synchronization Train Complete	0x4F	Status

#### Description:

The Synchronization Train Complete event indicates that the Start Synchronization Train command has completed.

#### Event Parameters:

*Status:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Start Synchronization Train command completed successfully.
0x01-0xFF	Start Synchronization Train command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> , for error codes and descriptions.

### 7.7.68 Synchronization Train Received Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Synchronization Train Received	0x50	Status, BD_ADDR, Clock_Offset, AFH_Channel_Map, LT_ADDR, Next_Broadcast_Instant, Connectionless_Slave_Broadcast_Interval, Service_Data

#### Description:

The Synchronization Train Received event provides information received from a synchronization train packet transmitted by a Connectionless Slave Broadcast transmitter with the given BD\_ADDR. If synchronization was successful, it provides the clock offset, AFH channel map, LT\_ADDR, next broadcast instant, broadcast interval, and service data as received from the synchronization train payload. If the command returns a status of 0x01-0xFF, then all other parameters are undefined and shall be ignored.

A packet with the Connectionless Slave Broadcast LT\_ADDR field in the payload set to zero shall be ignored for the purposes of this event.

#### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Received Synchronization Train command completed successfully.
0x01-0xFF	Received Synchronization Train command failed. See Part D, Error Codes, for error codes and descriptions.

**BD\_ADDR:** Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the Connectionless Slave Broadcast transmitter.

**Clock\_Offset:** Size: 4 Octets(28 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXX	(CLKNSlave - CLK) modulo $2^{28}$

***AFH\_Channel\_Map:******Size: 10 Octets (79 Bits Meaningful)***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFFXX	This parameter contains 80 1-bit fields.
XXXXXXXXXX	The $n^{th}$ such field (in the range 0 to 78) contains the value for channel $n$ :
XX	Channel $n$ is bad = 0 Channel $n$ is unknown = 1
	The most significant bit (bit 79) is reserved and shall be set to 0
	At least $N_{min}$ channels shall be marked as unknown. (See Baseband Specification <a href="#">Section 2.3.1 on page 79</a> )

***LT\_ADDR:******Size: 1 Octet***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR of Connectionless Slave Broadcast channel.
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

***Next\_Broadcast\_Instant:******Size: 4 Octets (28 bits meaningful)***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFFFFFF	CLK of a future broadcast on this channel

***Connectionless\_Slave\_Broadcast\_Interval:******Size: 2 Octets***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xFFFF	Interval between Connectionless Slave Broadcast instants in slots. Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF; only even values are valid

***Service\_Data:******Size: 1 Octet***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0XX	Value from octet 27 of the Synchronization Train packet; see <a href="#">Table 8.8 ([Vol. 2], Part B, Section 8.11.2 on page 207)</a>

### 7.7.69 Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive	0x51	BD_ADDR, LT_ADDR, CLK, Offset, Receive_Status, Fragment, Data_Length, Data

#### Description:

The Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive event shall be sent by the BR/EDR Controller every Connectionless Slave Broadcast Instant on which the BR/EDR Controller is scheduled to receive a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet. If the packet is not received successfully, the event returns a Receive\_Status of 0x01. Otherwise, the event returns the payload Data along with the Piconet Clock and the offset from the local CLKN when the packet was received.

The BR/EDR Controller shall send multiple Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive events if the length of the received data exceeds the capacity of a single Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive event. The fragments shall be marked as starting, continuation, or ending to allow the Host to reassemble the received packet. Only a single event shall be generated for a Connectionless Slave Broadcast instant on which a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet was scheduled for reception but the BR/EDR Controller failed to successfully receive it.

#### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the broadcasting master device

*LT\_ADDR:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR of the Connectionless Slave Broadcast
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*CLK:* Size: 4 Octets (28 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXX	CLK when Connectionless Slave Broadcast data was received

**Offset:** **Size:** 4 Octets (28 bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXX	(CLKNSlave – CLK) modulo $2^{28}$

**Receive Status:** **Size:** 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Packet received successfully
0x01	Packet not received successfully (Fragment, Data_Length, and Data fields invalid)
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Fragment:** **Size:** 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Continuation fragment
0x01	Starting fragment
0x02	Ending fragment
0x03	No fragmentation (single fragment)
0x04-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Data\_Length:** **Size:** 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Length of Data field

**Data:** **Size:** Data\_Length Octets

Value	Parameter Description
Variable	Data received from a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet.

### 7.7.70 Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout	0x52	BD_ADDR, LT_ADDR

#### Description:

On the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receiver, the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout event indicates to the Host that the BR/EDR Controller has lost synchronization with the Connectionless Slave Broadcast because no Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets have been received for the timeout interval, *CSB\_supervisionTO*, specified in the Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receive command.

On the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter, the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Timeout event indicates to the Host that the BR/EDR Controller has been unable to transmit a Connectionless Slave Broadcast packet for the timeout interval, *CSB\_supervisionTO*, specified in the Set Connectionless Slave Broadcast command.

#### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	BD_ADDR of the broadcasting master device

*LT\_ADDR*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01-0x07	LT_ADDR of the Connectionless Slave Broadcast
0x00, 0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

### 7.7.71 Truncated Page Complete Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Truncated Page Complete	0x53	Status, BD_ADDR

#### Description:

The Truncated Page Complete event indicates to the Host that a Truncated Page command completed. Truncated Paging is considered to be successful when a slave page response ID packet has been received by the local BR/EDR Controller. See [\[Vol 2\] Part B, Section 8.3.3](#) for more information.

A Truncated Page Complete event shall always be sent for each Truncated Page Command. If the Host issues a Truncated Page Cancel command before the Controller returns the Truncated Page Complete event, then the Truncated Page Complete event shall be sent after the Command Complete event for the Truncated Page Cancel command. If the cancellation was successful, the Truncated Page Complete event shall be generated with the error code Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02).

#### Event Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Truncated_Page command completed successfully.
0x01-0xFF	Truncated_Page command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### BD\_ADDR:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXX	BD_ADDR of the paged (slave) device

### 7.7.72 Slave Page Response Timeout Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Slave Page Response Timeout	0x54	

#### Description:

The Slave Page Response Timeout event indicates to the Host that a slave page response timeout has occurred in the BR/EDR Controller. Note: this event will be generated if the slave BR/EDR Controller responds to a page but does not receive the master FHS packet (see [\[Vol 2\] Part B, Section 8.3.3](#)) within *pagerespTO*.

#### Event Parameters:

None

### 7.7.73 Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change	0x55	Channel_Map

#### Description:

The Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map Change event is sent by the master's BR/EDR Controller to the master's Host to indicate that the master's BR/EDR Controller has moved to a new AFH channel map for the PBD logical link.

After an AFH channel map change takes effect for the PBD logical link, the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter BR/EDR Controller shall send this event to the Host. Upon reception of this event, the Host may restart the synchronization train to allow receivers to obtain the updated AFH channel map.

This event shall also be sent if the Host issues a Set\_AFH\_Channel\_Classification command which causes the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Channel Map to change.

#### Event Parameters:

##### Channel\_Map:

Size: 10 Octets (79 Bits Meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXX XX	<p>This parameter contains 80 1-bit fields.</p> <p>The <math>n^{th}</math> (starting from 0) such field (in the range 0 to 78) contains the value for channel <math>n</math>. Bit 79 is reserved (set to 0 when transmitted and ignored when received)</p> <p>The 1-bit field is interpreted as follows:            0: channel <math>n</math> is unused            1: channel <math>n</math> is used</p>

### 7.7.74 Inquiry Response Notification Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Inquiry Response Notification	0x56	LAP, RSSI

#### Description:

The Inquiry Response Notification event indicates to the Host that the BR/EDR Controller responded to an Inquiry message. The LAP parameter in the event indicates the LAP used to create the access code received. The parameter may be used by the Host to determine which access code was used in cases where the BR/EDR Controller is performing inquiry scan on multiple inquiry access codes using parallel scanning or sequential scanning. See [\[Vol 3\] Part C, Section 4.1.2.1](#) for details on sequential and parallel scanning.

The LAP parameter returned by the BR/EDR Controller shall be one of the LAPs currently enabled. LAPs are enabled via the Write\_Current\_IAC\_LAP command.

The RSSI parameter indicates the signal strength of the received ID packet.

#### Event Parameters:

##### LAP:

Size: 3 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x9E8B00– 0x9E8B3F	LAP from which the IAC was derived; see <a href="#">Bluetooth Assigned Numbers</a> .

##### RSSI:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0XX Signed Integer	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: -100 ≤ N ≤ 20, +127 indicates unknown RSSI Units: dBm

### 7.7.75 Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired Event

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired	0x57	Connection_Handle

#### Description:

The Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired event is used to indicate that a packet containing a valid MIC on the Connection\_Handle was not received within the authenticatedPayloadTO (see [\[Vol 2\] Part B, Section , Appendix B: Timers](#) for the BR/EDR and [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.4, LE Authenticated Payload Timeout](#) for the LE connection). Note: A Host may choose to disconnect the link when this occurs.

#### Event Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octet (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle of the connection where the packet with a valid MIC was not received within the timeout. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

## 7.8 LE CONTROLLER COMMANDS

The LE Controller Commands provide access and control to various capabilities of the Bluetooth hardware, as well as methods for the Host to affect how the Link Layer manages the piconet, and controls connections.

For the LE Controller Commands, the OGF code is defined as 0x08.

### 7.8.1 LE Set Event Mask Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Event_Mask	0x0001	LE_Event_Mask	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Set\_Event\_Mask command is used to control which LE events are generated by the HCI for the Host. If the bit in the LE\_Event\_Mask is set to a one, then the event associated with that bit will be enabled. The Host has to deal with each event that is generated by an LE Controller. The event mask allows the Host to control which events will interrupt it.

For LE events to be generated, the LE Meta-Event bit in the Event\_Mask shall also be set. If that bit is not set, then LE events shall not be generated, regardless of how the LE\_Event\_Mask is set.

#### Command Parameters:

*LE\_Event\_Mask:* Size: 8 Octets

Value	LE Subevent Types
0x0000000000000000	No LE events specified
0x0000000000000001	LE Connection Complete Event
0x0000000000000002	LE Advertising Report Event
0x0000000000000004	LE Connection Update Complete Event
0x0000000000000008	LE Read Remote Used Features Complete Event
0x0000000000000010	LE Long Term Key Request Event
0x0000000000000020	LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Event
0x000000000000001F	Default
0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFC0	Reserved for future use

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Set_Event_Mask command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Set_Event_Mask command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Set\_Event\_Mask command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.2 LE Read Buffer Size Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Read_Buffer_Size	0x0002		Status, HC_LE_ACL_Data_Packet_Length, HC_Total_Num_LE_ACL_Data_Packets

#### Description:

The LE\_Read\_Buffer\_Size command is used to read the maximum size of the data portion of HCI LE ACL Data Packets sent from the Host to the Controller. The Host will segment the data transmitted to the Controller according to these values, so that the HCI Data Packets will contain data with up to this size. The LE\_Read\_Buffer\_Size command also returns the total number of HCI LE ACL Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Controller. The LE\_Read\_Buffer\_Size command must be issued by the Host before it sends any data to an LE Controller (see [Section 4.1.1](#)).

If the Controller returns a length value of zero, the Host shall use the Read\_Buffer\_Size command to determine the size of the data buffers (shared between BR/EDR and LE transports).

Note: Both the Read\_Buffer\_Size and LE\_Read\_Buffer\_Size commands may return buffer length and number of packets parameter values that are non-zero. This allows a Controller to offer different buffers and number of buffers for BR/EDR data packets and LE data packets.

The HC\_LE\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length return parameter shall be used to determine the size of the L2CAP PDU segments contained in ACL Data Packets, which are transferred from the Host to the Controller to be broken up into packets by the Link Layer. Both the Host and the Controller shall support command and event packets, where the data portion (excluding header) contained in the packets is 255 octets in size. The HC\_Total\_Num\_LE\_ACL\_Data\_Packets return parameter contains the total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Controller. The Host determines how the buffers are to be divided between different Connection Handles.

Note: The HC\_LE\_ACL\_Data\_Packet\_Length return parameter does not include the length of the HCI Data Packet header.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

**Return Parameters:***Status*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Read_Buffer_Size command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Read_Buffer_Size command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*HC\_LE\_Data\_Packet\_Length:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0000	No dedicated LE Buffer – use Read_Buffer_Size command.
0x0001 – 0xFFFF	Maximum length (in octets) of the data portion of each HCI ACL Data Packet that the Controller is able to accept.

*HC\_Total\_Num\_LE\_Data\_Packets:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	No dedicated LE Buffer – use Read_Buffer_Size command.
0x01 – 0xFF	Total number of HCI ACL Data Packets that can be stored in the data buffers of the Controller.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Read\_Buffer\_Size command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.3 LE Read Local Supported Features Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Read_Local_Supported_Features	0x0003		Status, LE_Features

#### Description:

This command requests the list of the supported LE features for the Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Read_Local_Supported_Features command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Read_Local_Supported_Features command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*LE\_Features:* Size: 8 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Bit Mask List of LE features. See <a href="#">[Vol 6] Part B, Section 4.6</a>

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Read\_Local\_Supported\_Features command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.4 LE Set Random Address Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Random_Address	0x0005	Random_Address	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Set\_Random\_Address command is used by the Host to set the LE Random Device Address in the Controller (see [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 1.3](#)).

#### Command Parameters:

*Random\_Address*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Random Device Address as defined by <a href="#">[Vol 6] Part B, Section 1.3</a> .

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Set_Random_Address command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Set_Random_Address command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Set\_Random\_Address command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.5 LE Set Advertising Parameters Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Advertising_Parameters	0x0006	Advertising_Interval_Min, Advertising_Interval_Max, Advertising_Type, Own_Address_Type, Direct_Address_Type, Direct_Address, Advertising_Channel_Map, Advertising_Filter_Policy	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Set\_Advertising\_Parameters command is used by the Host to set the advertising parameters.

The Advertising\_Interval\_Min shall be less than or equal to the Advertising\_Interval\_Max. The Advertising\_Interval\_Min and Advertising\_Interval\_Max should not be the same value to enable the Controller to determine the best advertising interval given other activities.

For high duty cycle directed advertising, i.e. when Advertising\_Type is 0x01 (ADV\_DIRECT\_IND, high duty cycle), the Advertising\_Interval\_Min and Advertising\_Interval\_Max parameters are not used and shall be ignored.

The Advertising\_Type is used to determine the packet type that is used for advertising when advertising is enabled.

The Advertising\_Interval\_Min and Advertising\_Interval\_Max shall not be set to less than 0x00A0 (100 ms) if the Advertising\_Type is set to 0x02 (ADV\_S-CAN\_IND) or 0x03 (ADV\_NONCONN\_IND). The Own\_Address\_Type determines if the advertising packets are identified with the Public Device Address of the device, or a Random Device Address as written by the LE\_Set\_Random\_Address command.

If directed advertising is performed, i.e. when Advertising\_Type is set to 0x01 (ADV\_DIRECT\_IND, high duty cycle) or 0x04 (ADV\_DIRECT\_IND, low duty cycle mode), then the Direct\_Address\_Type and Direct\_Address shall be valid, otherwise they shall be ignored by the Controller and not used.

The Advertising\_Channel\_Map is a bit field that indicates the advertising channels that shall be used when transmitting advertising packets. At least one channel bit shall be set in the Advertising\_Channel\_Map parameter.

The Advertising\_Filter\_Policy parameter shall be ignored when directed advertising is enabled.

The Host shall not issue this command when advertising is enabled in the Controller; if it is the Command Disallowed error code shall be used.

### **Command Parameters:**

#### *Advertising\_Interval\_Min*

**Size:** 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	<p>Minimum advertising interval for undirected and low duty cycle directed advertising.</p> <p>Range: 0x0020 to 0x4000</p> <p>Default: N = 0x0800 (1.28 second)</p> <p>Time = N * 0.625 msec</p> <p>Time Range: 20 ms to 10.24 sec</p>

#### *Advertising\_Interval\_Max:*

**Size:** 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	<p>Maximum advertising interval for undirected and low duty cycle directed advertising.</p> <p>Range: 0x0020 to 0x4000</p> <p>Default: N = 0x0800 (1.28 seconds)</p> <p>Time = N * 0.625 msec</p> <p>Time Range: 20 ms to 10.24 sec</p>

#### *Advertising\_Type:*

**Size:** 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Connectable undirected advertising (ADV_IND) ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Connectable high duty cycle directed advertising (ADV_DIRECT_IND, high duty cycle)
0x02	Scannable undirected advertising (ADV_SCAN_IND)
0x03	Non connectable undirected advertising (ADV_NONCONN_IND)
0x04	Connectable low duty cycle directed advertising (ADV_DIRECT_IND, low duty cycle)
0x05 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### *Own\_Address\_Type:*

**Size:** 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Public Device Address ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Random Device Address
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Direct\_Address\_Type:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Public Device Address ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Random Device Address
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Direct\_Address:*

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Public Device Address or Random Device Address of the device to be connected

*Advertising\_Channel\_Map:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
00000000b	Reserved for future use
xxxxxx1b	Enable channel 37 use
xxxxx1xb	Enable channel 38 use
xxxx1xxb	Enable channel 39 use
00000111b	Default (all channels enabled)

*Advertising\_Filter\_Policy:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Process scan and connection requests from all devices (i.e., the White List is not in use) ( <b>default</b> ).
0x01	Process connection requests from all devices and only scan requests from devices that are in the White List.
0x02	Process scan requests from all devices and only connection requests from devices that are in the White List..
0x03	Process scan and connection requests only from devices in the White List.
0x04 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Set_Advertising_Parameters command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Set_Advertising_Parameters command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Set\_Advertising\_Parameters command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.6 LE Read Advertising Channel Tx Power Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Read_Advertising_Channel_Tx_Power	0x0007		Status, Transmit_Power_Level

#### Description:

The LE\_Read\_Advertising\_Channel\_Tx\_Power command is used by the Host to read the transmit power level used for LE advertising channel packets.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Read_Advertising_Channel_Tx_Power command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Read_Advertising_Channel_Tx_Power failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Transmit\_Power\_Level:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	Size: 1 Octet (signed integer) Range: -20 ≤ N ≤ 10 Units: dBm Accuracy: +/- 4 dB

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Read\_Advertising\_Channel\_Tx\_Power command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.7 LE Set Advertising Data Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Advertising_Data	0x0008	Advertising_Data_Length, Advertising_Data	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Set\_Advertising\_Data command is used to set the data used in advertising packets that have a data field.

Only the significant part of the Advertising\_Data is transmitted in the advertising packets, as defined in [\[Vol 3\] Part C, Section 11](#).

#### Command Parameters:

##### Advertising\_Data\_Length:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00 – 0x1F	The number of significant octets in the Advertising_Data.

##### Advertising\_Data:

Size: 31 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	31 octets of advertising data formatted as defined in <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part C, Section 11</a> .
	All octets zero ( <b>default</b> ).

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Set_Advertising_Data command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Set_Advertising_Data command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Set\_Advertising\_Data command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.8 LE Set Scan Response Data Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Scan_Response_Data	0x0009	Scan_Response_Data_Length, Scan_Response_Data	Status

#### Description:

This command is used to provide data used in Scanning Packets that have a data field.

Only the significant part of the Scan\_Response\_Data is transmitted in the Scanning Packets, as defined in [\[Vol 3\] Part C, Section 11](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Scan\_Response\_Data\_Length:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00 – 0x1F	The number of significant octets in the Scan_Response_Data.

*Scan\_Response\_Data:* Size: 31 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	31 octets of Scan_Response_Data formatted as defined in <a href="#">[Vol 3] Part C, Section 11</a> .
	All octets zero ( <b>default</b> ).

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Set_Scan_Response_Data command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Set_Scan_Response_Data command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Set\_Scan\_Response\_Data command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.9 LE Set Advertise Enable Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Advertise_Enable	0x000A	Advertising_Enable	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Set\_Advertise\_Enable command is used to request the Controller to start or stop advertising. The Controller manages the timing of advertisements as per the advertising parameters given in the LE\_Set\_Advertising\_Parameters command.

The Controller shall continue advertising until the Host issues an LE\_Set\_Advertise\_Enable command with Advertising\_Enable set to 0x00 (Advertising is disabled) or until a connection is created or until the Advertising is timed out due to high duty cycle Directed Advertising. In these cases, advertising is then disabled.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Advertising\_Enable:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Advertising is disabled ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Advertising is enabled.
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Set_Advertise_Enable command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Set_Advertise_Enable command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Set\_Advertise\_Enable command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

If the Advertising\_Type parameter is 0x01 (ADV\_DIRECT\_IND, high duty cycle) and the directed advertising fails to create a connection, an LE Connection Complete event shall be generated with the Status code set to Directed Advertising Timeout (0x3C).



If the Advertising\_Type parameter is 0x00 (ADV\_IND), 0x01 (ADV\_DIRECT\_IND, high duty cycle), or 0x04 (ADV\_DIRECT\_IND, low duty cycle) and a connection is established, an LE Connection Complete event shall be generated.

Note: There is a possible race condition if the Advertising\_Enable parameter is set to 0x00 (Disable) and the Advertising\_Type parameter is 0x00, 0x01, or 0x04. The advertisements might not be stopped before a connection is created, and therefore both the Command Complete event and an LE Connection Complete event could be generated. This can also occur when high duty cycle directed advertising is timed out and this command disables advertising.

### 7.8.10 LE Set Scan Parameters Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Scan_Parameters	0x000B	LE_Scan_Type, LE_Scan_Interval, LE_Scan_Window, Own_Address_Type, Scanning_Filter_Policy	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Set\_Scan\_Parameters command is used to set the scan parameters.

The LE\_Scan\_Type parameter controls the type of scan to perform.

The LE\_Scan\_Interval and LE\_Scan\_Window parameters are recommendations from the Host on how long (LE\_Scan\_Window) and how frequently (LE\_Scan\_Interval) the Controller should scan (See [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 4.5.3](#)). The LE\_Scan\_Window parameter shall always be set to a value smaller or equal to the value set for the LE\_Scan\_Interval parameter. If they are set to the same value scanning should be run continuously.

The Own\_Address\_Type parameter determines the address used (Public or Random Device Address) when performing active scan.

The Host shall not issue this command when scanning is enabled in the Controller; if it is the Command Disallowed error code shall be used.

#### Command Parameters:

##### LE\_Scan\_Type:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Passive Scanning. No SCAN_REQ packets shall be sent. <b>(default)</b>
0x01	Active scanning. SCAN_REQ packets may be sent.
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

*LE\_Scan\_Interval:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	This is defined as the time interval from when the Controller started its last LE scan until it begins the subsequent LE scan. Range: 0x0004 to 0x4000 Default: 0x0010 (10 ms) Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 2.5 msec to 10.24 seconds

*LE\_Scan\_Window:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	The duration of the LE scan. LE_Scan_Window shall be less than or equal to LE_Scan_Interval Range: 0x0004 to 0x4000 Default: 0x0010 (10 ms) Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 2.5 msec to 10240 msec

*Own\_Address\_Type:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Public Device Address ( <b>default</b> )
0x01	Random Device Address
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Scanning\_Filter\_Policy:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Accept all advertisement packets ( <b>default</b> ). Directed advertising packets which are not addressed for this device shall be ignored.
0x01	Ignore advertisement packets from devices not in the White List Only. Directed advertising packets which are not addressed for this device shall be ignored.
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Scan_Activity command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Scan_Activity command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Set\_Scan\_Parameters command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.11 LE Set Scan Enable Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Scan_Enable	0x000C	LE_Scan_Enabled Filter_Duplicates	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Set\_Scan\_Enable command is used to start scanning. Scanning is used to discover advertising devices nearby.

The Filter\_Duplicates parameter controls whether the Link Layer shall filter duplicate advertising reports to the Host, or if the Link Layer should generate advertising reports for each packet received.

#### Command Parameters:

*LE\_Scan\_Enabled*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Scanning disabled.
0x01	Scanning enabled.
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Filter\_Duplicates*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Duplicate filtering disabled.
0x01	Duplicate filtering enabled.
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Set_Scan_Enable command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Set_Scan_Enable command failed. See Part D, Error Codes on page 379 for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Set\_Scan\_Enable command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

Zero or more LE Advertising Reports are generated by the Controller based on advertising packets received and the duplicate filtering. More than one advertising packet may be reported in each LE Advertising Report event.

### 7.8.12 LE Create Connection Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Create_Connection	0x000D	LE_Scan_Interval, LE_Scan_Window, Initiator_Filter_Policy, Peer_Address_Type, Peer_Address, Own_Address_Type, Conn_Interval_Min, Conn_Interval_Max, Conn_Latency, Supervision_Timeout, Minimum_CE_Length, Maximum_CE_Length	

#### Description:

The LE\_Create\_Connection command is used to create a Link Layer connection to a connectable advertiser.

The LE\_Scan\_Interval and LE\_Scan\_Window parameters are recommendations from the Host on how long (LE\_Scan\_Window) and how frequently (LE\_Scan\_Interval) the Controller should scan. The LE\_Scan\_Window parameter shall be set to a value smaller or equal to the value set for the LE\_Scan\_Interval parameter. If both are set to the same value, scanning should run continuously.

The Initiator\_Filter\_Policy is used to determine whether the White List is used. If the White List is not used, the Peer\_Address\_Type and the Peer\_Address parameters specify the address type and address of the advertising device to connect to.

The Link Layer shall set the address in the CONNECT\_REQ packets to either the Public Device Address or the Random Device Address based on the Own\_Address\_Type parameter.

The Conn\_Interval\_Min and Conn\_Interval\_Max parameters define the minimum and maximum allowed connection interval. The Conn\_Interval\_Min parameter shall not be greater than the Conn\_Interval\_Max parameter.

The Conn\_Latency parameter defines the maximum allowed connection latency (see [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 4.5.1](#)).

The Supervision\_Timeout parameter defines the link supervision timeout for the connection. The Supervision\_Timeout in milliseconds shall be larger than  $(1 + \text{Conn\_Latency}) * \text{Conn\_Interval\_Max} * 2$ , where Conn\_Interval\_Max is given in milliseconds. (See [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 4.5.2](#)).

The Minimum\_CE\_Length and Maximum\_CE\_Length parameters are informative parameters providing the Controller with the expected minimum and maximum length of the connection events. The Minimum\_CE\_Length parameter shall be less than or equal to the Maximum\_CE\_Length parameter.

The Host shall not issue this command when another LE\_Create\_Connection is pending in the Controller; if this does occur the Controller shall return the Command Disallowed error code shall be used.

### **Command Parameters:**

#### *LE\_Scan\_Interval:*

**Size:** 2 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	This is defined as the time interval from when the Controller started its last LE scan until it begins the subsequent LE scan. Range: 0x0004 to 0x4000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 2.5 msec to 10240 msec

#### *LE\_Scan\_Window:*

**Size:** 2 Octets

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	Amount of time for the duration of the LE scan. LE_Scan_Window shall be less than or equal to LE_Scan_Interval Range: 0x0004 to 0x4000 Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 2.5 msec to 10.24 seconds

#### *Initiator\_Filter\_Policy:*

**Size:** 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	White list is not used to determine which advertiser to connect to. Peer_Address_Type and Peer_Address shall be used.
0x01	White list is used to determine which advertiser to connect to. Peer_Address_Type and Peer_Address shall be ignored.
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use.

#### *Peer\_Address\_Type:*

**Size:** 1 Octet

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Public Device Address
0x01	Random Device Address
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Peer\_Address:****Size: 6 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Public Device Address or Random Device Address of the device to be connected

**Own\_Address\_Type:****Size: 1 Octet**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x00	Public Device Address
0x01	Random Device Address
0x02 – 0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Conn\_Interval\_Min:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xFFFF	Minimum value for the connection event interval. This shall be less than or equal to Conn_Interval_Max. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 msec Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4 seconds.
0x0000 – 0x0005 and 0x0C81 – 0xFFFF	Reserved for future use

**Conn\_Interval\_Max:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xFFFF	Maximum value for the connection event interval. This shall be greater than or equal to Conn_Interval_Min. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 msec Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4 seconds.
0x0000 – 0x0005 and 0x0C81 – 0xFFFF	Reserved for future use

**Conn\_Latency:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xFFFF	Slave latency for the connection in number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3

*Supervision\_Timeout:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Supervision timeout for the LE Link. (See <a href="#">[Vol 6] Part B, Section 4.5.2</a> ) Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80 Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 100 msec to 32 seconds
0x0000 - 0x0009 and 0x0C81 - 0xFFFF	Reserved for future use

*Minimum\_CE\_Length:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Information parameter about the minimum length of connection event needed for this LE connection. Range: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time = N * 0.625 msec.

*Maximum\_CE\_Length:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Information parameter about the maximum length of connection event needed for this LE connection. Range: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time = N * 0.625 msec.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the Controller receives the LE\_Create\_Connection command, the Controller sends the Command Status event to the Host. An LE Connection Complete event shall be generated when a connection is created or the connection creation procedure is cancelled.

Note: No Command Complete event is sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the LE Connection Complete event indicates that this command has been completed.

### 7.8.13 LE Create Connection Cancel Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Create_Connection_Cancel	0x000E		Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Create\_Connection\_Cancel command is used to cancel the LE\_Create\_Connection command. This command shall only be issued after the LE\_Create\_Connection command has been issued, a Command Status event has been received for the LE Create Connection command and before the LE Connection Complete event.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Create_Connection_Cancel command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Create_Connection_Cancel command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Create\_Connection\_Cancel command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

If the LE\_Create\_Connection\_Cancel command is sent to the Controller without a preceding LE\_Create\_Connection command, the Controller shall return a Command Complete event with the error code Command Disallowed (0x0C).

The LE Connection Complete event with the error code Unknown Connection Identifier (0x02) shall be sent after the Command Complete event for the LE\_Create\_Connection\_Cancel command if the cancellation was successful.

### 7.8.14 LE Read White List Size Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Read_White_List_Size	0x000F		Status, White_List_Size

#### Description:

The LE\_Read\_White\_List\_Size command is used to read the total number of white list entries that can be stored in the Controller.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Read_White_List_Size command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Read_White_List_Size command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*White\_List\_Size:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01 – 0xFF	Total number of white list entries that can be stored in the Controller.
0x00	Reserved for future use

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Read\_White\_List\_Size command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.15 LE Clear White List Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Clear_White_List	0x0010		Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Clear\_White\_List command is used to clear the white list stored in the Controller.

This command can be used at any time except when:

- the advertising filter policy uses the white list and advertising is enabled.
- the scanning filter policy uses the white list and scanning is enabled.
- the initiator filter policy uses the white list and an LE\_Create\_Connection command is outstanding.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Clear_White_List command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Clear_White_List command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE Clear White List command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.16 LE Add Device To White List Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Add_Device_To_White_List	0x0011	Address_Type, Address	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Add\_Device\_To\_White\_List command is used to add a single device to the white list stored in the Controller.

This command can be used at any time except when:

- the advertising filter policy uses the white list and advertising is enabled.
- the scanning filter policy uses the white list and scanning is enabled.
- the initiator filter policy uses the white list and a create connection command is outstanding.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Address\_Type:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Public Device Address
0x01	Random Device Address
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

##### Address:

Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Public Device Address or Random Device Address of the device to be added to the white list.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Add_Device_To_White_List command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Add_Device_To_White_List command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away)::

When the LE\_Add\_Device\_To\_White\_List command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.17 LE Remove Device From White List Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Remove_Device_From_White_List	0x0012	Address_Type, Address	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Remove\_Device\_From\_White\_List command is used to remove a single device from the white list stored in the Controller.

This command can be used at any time except when:

- the advertising filter policy uses the white list and advertising is enabled.
- the scanning filter policy uses the white list and scanning is enabled.
- the initiator filter policy uses the white list and a create connection command is outstanding.

#### Command Parameters:

*Address\_Type:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Public Device Address
0x01	Random Device Address
0x02-0xFF	Reserved for future use.

*Address:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Public Device Address or Random Device Address of the device to be removed from the white list.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Remove_Device_From_White_List command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Remove_Device_From_White_List command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Remove\_Device\_From\_White\_List command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.18 LE Connection Update Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Connection_Update	0x0013	Connection_Handle, Conn_Interval_Min, Conn_Interval_Max, Conn_Latency, Supervision_Timeout, Minimum_CE_Length, Maximum_CE_Length	

#### Description:

The LE\_Connection\_Update command is used to change the Link Layer connection parameters of a connection. This command may be issued on both the master and slave.

The Conn\_Interval\_Min and Conn\_Interval\_Max parameters are used to define the minimum and maximum allowed connection interval. The Conn\_Interval\_Min parameter shall not be greater than the Conn\_Interval\_Max parameter.

The Conn\_Latency parameter shall define the maximum allowed connection latency.

The Supervision\_Timeout parameter shall define the link supervision timeout for the LE link. The Supervision\_Timeout in milliseconds shall be larger than  $(1 + Conn\_Latency) * Conn\_Interval\_Max * 2$ , where Conn\_Interval\_Max is given in milliseconds.

The Minimum\_CE\_Length and Maximum\_CE\_Length are information parameters providing the Controller with a hint about the expected minimum and maximum length of the connection events. The Minimum\_CE\_Length shall be less than or equal to the Maximum\_CE\_Length.

The actual parameter values selected by the Link Layer may be different from the parameter values provided by the Host through this command.

#### Command Parameters:

##### Connection\_Handle:

Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Conn\_Interval\_Min:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Minimum value for the connection event interval. This shall be less than or equal to Conn_Interval_Max. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 msec Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4 seconds.
0x0000-0x0005 and 0x0C81-0xFFFF	Reserved for future use

*Conn\_Interval\_Max:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Maximum value for the connection event interval. This shall be greater than or equal to Conn_Interval_Min. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 msec Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4 seconds.
0x0000-0x0005 and 0x0C81-0xFFFF	Reserved for future use

*Conn\_Latency:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Slave latency for the connection in number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3
0x01F4 – 0xFFFF	Reserved for future use.

*Supervision\_Timeout:*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Supervision timeout for the LE Link. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80 Mandatory Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80 Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 100 msec to 32 seconds
0x0001-0x0009 and 0x0C81-0xFFFF	Reserved for future use

*Minimum\_CE\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	Information parameter about the minimum length of connection event needed for this LE connection. How this value is used is outside the scope of this specification. Range: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time = N * 0.625 msec.

*Maximum\_CE\_Length:**Size: 2 Octets*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N = 0xXXXX	Information parameter about the maximum length of connection event needed for this LE connection. How this value is used is outside the scope of this specification. Range: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF Time = N * 0.625 msec.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the Controller receives the LE\_Connection\_Update command, the Controller sends the Command Status event to the Host. The LE Connection Update Complete event shall be generated after the connection parameters have been applied by the Controller.

Note: a Command Complete event is not sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the LE Connection Update Complete event indicates that this command has been completed.

### 7.8.19 LE Set Host Channel Classification Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Set_Host_Channel_Classification	0x0014	Channel_Map	Status

#### Description:

The LE\_Set\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command allows the Host to specify a channel classification for data channels based on its “local information”. This classification persists until overwritten with a subsequent LE\_Set\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command or until the Controller is reset using the Reset command (see [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 4.5.8.1](#)).

If this command is used, the Host should send it within 10 seconds of knowing that the channel classification has changed. The interval between two successive commands sent shall be at least one second.

This command shall only be used when the local device supports the Master role.

#### Command Parameters:

*Channel\_Map:* Size: 5 Octet (37 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXXXX	<p>This parameter contains 37 1-bit fields.</p> <p>The <math>n^{\text{th}}</math> such field (in the range 0 to 36) contains the value for the link layer channel index <math>n</math>.</p> <p>Channel <math>n</math> is bad = 0.</p> <p>Channel <math>n</math> is unknown = 1.</p> <p>The most significant bits are reserved and shall be set to 0.</p> <p>At least one channel shall be marked as unknown.</p>

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Set_Host_Channel_Classification command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Set_Host_Channel_Classification command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Set\_Host\_Channel\_Classification command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.20 LE Read Channel Map Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Read_Channel_Map	0x0015	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle, Channel_Map

#### Description:

The LE\_Read\_Channel\_Map command returns the current Channel\_Map for the specified Connection\_Handle. The returned value indicates the state of the Channel\_Map specified by the last transmitted or received Channel\_Map (in a CONNECT\_REQ or LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ message) for the specified Connection\_Handle, regardless of whether the Master has received an acknowledgement.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	The Connection_Handle for the Connection for which the Channel_Map is to be read. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Read_Channel_Map command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Read_Channel_Map command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

***Channel\_Map:*****Size: 5 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXXXX	<p>This parameter contains 37 1-bit fields.</p> <p>The <math>n^{\text{th}}</math> such field (in the range 0 to 36) contains the value for the link layer channel index <math>n</math>.</p> <p>Channel <math>n</math> is unused = 0.</p> <p>Channel <math>n</math> is used = 1.</p> <p>The most significant bits are reserved and shall be set to 0.</p>

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Read\_Channel\_Map command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.21 LE Read Remote Used Features Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Read_Remote_Used_Features	0x0016	Connection_Handle	

#### Description:

This command requests a list of the used LE features from the remote device. This command shall return a list of the used LE features. For details see [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 4.6](#).

This command may be issued on both the master and slave.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

None.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the Controller receives the LE\_Read\_Remote\_Used\_Features command, the Controller shall send the Command Status event to the Host. When the Controller has completed the procedure to determine the remote features, the Controller shall send a LE Read Remote Used Features Complete event to the Host.

The LE Read Remote Used Features Complete event contains the status of this command, and the parameter describing the used features of the remote device.

Note: A Command Complete event is not sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the LE Read Remote Used Features Complete event indicates that this command has been completed.

### 7.8.22 LE Encrypt Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Encrypt	0x0017	Key, Plaintext_Data	Status, Encrypted_Data

#### Description:

The LE\_Encrypt command is used to request the Controller to encrypt the Plaintext\_Data in the command using the Key given in the command and returns the Encrypted\_Data to the Host. The AES-128 bit block cypher is defined in NIST Publication FIPS-197 (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips197/fips-197.pdf>).

#### Command Parameters:

##### Key:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx XXXXXXXXXXXXXX XX	128 bit key for the encryption of the data given in the command. The most significant octet of the key corresponds to key[0] using the notation specified in FIPS 197.

##### Plaintext\_Data:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx XXXXXXXXXXXXXX XX	128 bit data block that is requested to be encrypted. The most significant octet of the PlainText_Data corresponds to in[0] using the notation specified in FIPS 197.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Encrypt command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Encrypt command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

##### Encrypted\_Data:

Size: 16 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx XXXXXXXXXXXXXX XX	128 bit encrypted data block. The most significant octet of the Encrypted_Data corresponds to out[0] using the notation specified in FIPS 197.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Encrypt command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.23 LE Rand Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Rand	0x0018		Status, Random_Number

#### Description:

The LE\_Rand command is used to request the Controller to generate 8 octets of random data to be sent to the Host. The Random\_Number shall be generated according to [Vol 2] Part H, Section 2 if the LE Feature (LL Encryption) is supported.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Rand command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Rand command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Random\_Number:* *Size: 8 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXXXXXXX XXXX	Random Number

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Rand command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.24 LE Start Encryption Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Start_Encryption	0x0019	Connection_Handle, Random_Number, Encrypted_Diversifier, Long_Term_Key	

#### Description:

The LE\_Start\_Encryption command is used to authenticate the given encryption key associated with the remote device specified by the connection handle, and once authenticated will encrypt the connection. The parameters are as defined in [\[Vol 3\] Part H, Section 2.4.4](#).

If the connection is already encrypted then the Controller shall pause connection encryption before attempting to authenticate the given encryption key, and then re-encrypt the connection. While encryption is paused no user data shall be transmitted.

On an authentication failure, the connection shall be automatically disconnected by the Link Layer. If this command succeeds, then the connection shall be encrypted.

This command shall only be used when the local device's role is Master.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Random\_Number:* Size: 8 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XX	64 bit random number.

*Encrypted\_Diversifier:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	16 bit encrypted diversifier.

***Long\_Term\_Key:******Size: 16 Octets***

Value	Parameter Description
0xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx XXXXXXXXXXXXXX XX	128 bit long term key.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the Controller receives the LE\_Start\_Encryption command it shall send the Command Status event to the Host. If the connection is not encrypted when this command is issued, an Encryption Change event shall occur when encryption has been started for the connection. If the connection is encrypted when this command is issued, an Encryption Key Refresh Complete event shall occur when encryption has been resumed.

Note: A Command Complete event is not sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Encryption Change or Encryption Key Refresh Complete events indicate that this command has been completed.

### 7.8.25 LE Long Term Key Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Long_Term_Key_Request_Reply	0x001A	Connection_Handle, Long_Term_Key	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

The LE\_Long\_Term\_Key\_Request Reply command is used to reply to an LE Long Term Key Request event from the Controller, and specifies the Long\_Term\_Key parameter that shall be used for this Connection\_Handle. The Long\_Term\_Key is used as defined in [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.1.3](#).

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Long Term Key:* *Size: 16 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XX	128 bit long term key for the given connection.

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Long_Term_Key_Request_Reply command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Long_Term_Key_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* *Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Long\_Term\_Key\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.26 LE Long Term Key Request Negative Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Long_Term_Key_Request_Negative_Reply	0x001B	Connection_Handle	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

The LE\_Long\_Term\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command is used to reply to an LE Long Term Key Request event from the Controller if the Host cannot provide a Long Term Key for this Connection\_Handle.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Long_Term_Key_Request_Negative_Reply command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Long_Term_Key_Request_Negative_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Connection\_Handle:* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Long\_Term\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.27 LE Read Supported States Command

Command	OCF	Command parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Read_Supported_States	0x001C		Status, LE_States

#### Description:

The LE\_Read\_Supported\_States command reads the states and state combinations that the link layer supports. See [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 1.1.1](#).

LE\_States is an 8-octet bit field. If a bit is set to 1 then this state or state combination is supported by the Controller. Multiple bits in LE\_States may be set to 1 to indicate support for multiple state and state combinations.

All the Advertising type with the Initiate State combinations shall be set only if the corresponding Advertising types and Master Role combination are set.

All the Scanning types and the Initiate State combinations shall be set only if the corresponding Scanning types and Master Role combination are set.

#### Command Parameters:

None.

#### Return Parameters:

##### Status:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Read_Supported_States command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Read_Supported_States command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

## LE\_States: (sheet 1 of 5)

Size: 8 Octets

		Supported States & Roles										
		Other Combinations										
Reserved for future use		X										
Supported States & Roles		Master Role & Slave Role										
		Slave Role & Slave Role										
		Master Role & Master Role										
		Connection State (Slave Role)							X			
		Connection State (Master Role)						X				
		Initiating State						X				
		Passive Scanning State					X					
		Active Scanning State						X				
		Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State										
		High Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State					X					
		Non-connectable Advertising State		X								
		Connectable Advertising State			X							
		Scannable Advertising State			X							
		Value		0x00000000 00000000	0x00000000 00000001	0x00000000 00000002	0x00000000 00000004	0x00000000 00000008	0x00000000 00000010	0x00000000 00000020	0x00000000 00000040	0x00000000 00000080

Note: "Master Role & Master Role" means being master to more than one slave at the same time.

## LE\_States: (sheet 2 of 5)

Size: 8 Octets

		Reserved for future use									
Other combinations	Master Role & Slave Role										
	Slave Role & Slave Role										
	Master Role & Master Role										
SUPPORTED STATES & ROLES	Connection State (Slave Role)										
	Connection State (Master Role)										
	Initiating State									✗	
	Passive Scanning State	✗	✗	✗	✗						
	Active Scanning State					✗	✗	✗	✗		
	Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State										
	High Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State				✗					✗	
	Non-connectable Advertising State	✗				✗				✗	
	Connectable Advertising State			✗				✗			
		Value	0x00000000 00000100	0x00000000 00000200	0x00000000 00000400	0x00000000 00000800	0x00000000 00001000	0x00000000 00002000	0x00000000 00004000	0x00000000 00008000	0x00000000 00010000

Note: "Master Role & Master Role" means being master to more than one slave at the same time.

## LE\_States: (sheet 3 of 5)

Size: 8 Octets

		Value							
		Value							
SUPPORTED STATES & ROLES	Other combinations	Reserved for future use							
	Master Role & Slave Role								
	Slave Role & Slave Role								
	Master Role & Master Role								
	Connection State (Slave Role)			X	X				
	Connection State (Master Role)		X	X			X	X	
	Initiating State	X				X	X		
	Passive Scanning State					X		X	
	Active Scanning State						X		X
	Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State								
	High Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State								
	Non-connectable Advertising State		X		X				
	Connectable Advertising State								
	Scannable Advertising State	X		X		X			

Note: "Master Role & Master Role" means being master to more than one slave at the same time.

## LE\_States: (sheet 4 of 5)

Size: 8 Octets

		Reserved for future use									
SUPPORTED STATES & ROLES	Other combinations	Master Role & Slave Role						×	×	×	
	Slave Role & Slave Role										
	Master Role & Master Role			×							
	Connection State (Slave Role)	×	×								
	Connection State (Master Role)			×							
	Initiating State			×				×	×	×	
	Passive Scanning State	×				×					
	Active Scanning State		×				×				
	Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State				×	×	×			×	
	High Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State								×		
		Value	0x00000000 04000000	0x00000000 08000000	0x00000000 10000000	0x00000000 20000000	0x00000000 40000000	0x00000000 80000000	0x00000001 00000000	0x00000002 00000000	0x00000004 00000000

Note: "Master Role & Master Role" means being master to more than one slave at the same time.

## LE\_States: (sheet 5 of 5)

Size: 8 Octets

		Supported States & Roles							
		Other Combinations							
Value		0x00000008 00000000	0x00000010 00000000	0x00000020 00000000	0x00000040 00000000	0x00000080 00000000	0x00000100 00000000	0x00000200 00000000	0xFFFFFC00 00000000
Supported States & Roles	Reserved for future use								×
	Master Role & Slave Role	×	×	×				×	
	Slave Role & Slave Role				×	×	×		
	Master Role & Master Role								
	Connection State (Slave Role)				×	×	×	×	×
	Connection State (Master Role)	×	×	×					
	Initiating State							×	
	Passive Scanning State								
	Active Scanning State								
Supported States & Roles	Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State			×				×	
	High Duty Cycle Directed Advertising State		×			×			
	Non-connectable Advertising State								
	Connectable Advertising State	×			×				
	Scannable Advertising State								

Note: "Master Role & Master Role" means being master to more than one slave at the same time.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Read\_Supported\_States command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

### 7.8.28 LE Receiver Test Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Receiver_Test	0x001D	RX_Channel	Status

#### Description:

This command is used to start a test where the DUT receives test reference packets at a fixed interval. The tester generates the test reference packets.

#### Command Parameters:

*RX\_Channel*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	N = (F – 2402) / 2  Range: 0x00 – 0x27. Frequency Range : 2402 MHz to 2480 MHz

#### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Receiver_Test command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Receiver_Test command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):

When the LE\_Receiver\_Test command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.29 LE Transmitter Test Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Transmitter_Test	0x001E	TX_Channel, Length_Of_Test_Data, Packet_Payload	Status

#### Description:

This command is used to start a test where the DUT generates test reference packets at a fixed interval. The Controller shall transmit at maximum power.

An LE Controller supporting the LE\_Transmitter\_Test command shall support Packet\_Payload values 0x00, 0x01 and 0x02. An LE Controller may support other values of Packet\_Payload.

#### Command Parameters:

*TX\_Channel:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXX	N = (F – 2402) / 2
	Range: 0x00 – 0x27. Frequency Range : 2402 MHz to 2480 MHz

*Length\_Of\_Test\_Data:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00-0x25	Length in bytes of payload data in each packet
0x26-0xFF	Reserved for future use

*Packet\_Payload:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Pseudo-Random bit sequence 9
0x01	Pattern of alternating bits ‘11110000’
0x02	Pattern of alternating bits ‘10101010’
0x03	Pseudo-Random bit sequence 15
0x04	Pattern of All ‘1’ bits
0x05	Pattern of All ‘0’ bits
0x06	Pattern of alternating bits ‘00001111’
0x07	Pattern of alternating bits ‘0101’
0x08-0xFF	Reserved for future use

**Return Parameters:***Status:**Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Transmitter_Test command succeeded.
0x01 – 0xFF	LE_Transmitter_Test command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

When the LE\_Transmitter\_Test command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.30 LE Test End Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_LE_Test_End	0x001F		Status, Number_Of_Packets

**Description:**

This command is used to stop any test which is in progress. The Number\_Of\_Packets for a transmitter test shall be reported as 0x0000. The Number\_Of\_Packets is an unsigned number and contains the number of received packets.

**Command Parameters:**

None.

**Return Parameters:**

**Status:**

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	LE_Test_End command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	LE_Test_End command failed See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

**Number\_Of\_Packets:**

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Number of packets received

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Test\_End command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.31 LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
LE_Remote_Connection_Parameter_Request_Reply	0x20	Connection_Handle, Interval_Min, Interval_Max, Latency, Timeout, Minimum_CE_Length, Maximum_CE_Length	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

Both the master Host and the slave Host use this command to reply to the HCI LE Remote Connection Parameter Request event. This indicates that the Host has accepted the remote device's request to change connection parameters.

The Interval\_Min and Interval\_Max parameters define the minimum and maximum allowed connection interval. The Interval\_Min parameter shall not be greater than the Interval\_Max parameter.

The Latency parameter shall define the maximum allowed slave latency for the connection in number of connection events.

The Timeout parameter shall define the link supervision timeout for the LE link. The Timeout in milliseconds shall be larger than  $(1 + \text{Latency}) * \text{Interval\_Max} * 2$ , where Interval\_Max is given in milliseconds.

The Minimum\_CE\_Length and Maximum\_CE\_Length are information parameters providing the Controller with a hint about the expected minimum and maximum length of the connection events. The Minimum\_CE\_Length shall be less than or equal to the Maximum\_CE\_Length.

The actual parameter values selected by the Link Layer may be different from the parameter values provided by the Host through this command.

#### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle* Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

*Interval\_Min*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Minimum value of the connection interval. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 ms Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4 seconds

*Interval\_Max*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Maximum value of the connection interval. Range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Time = N * 1.25 ms Time Range: 7.5 msec to 4 seconds

*Latency*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Maximum allowed slave latency for the connection specified as the number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3 (499)

*Timeout*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Supervision timeout for the connection. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80 Time = N * 10 ms Time Range: 100 ms to 32 seconds

*Minimum\_CE\_Length*

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xFFFF	Information parameter about the minimum length of connection event needed for this LE connection. Range: 0x0000 to 0xFFFF Time = N * 0.625 ms Time Range: 0 ms to 40.9 seconds

**Maximum\_CE\_Length**

Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
N = 0xXXXX	Information parameter about the maximum length of connection event needed for this LE connection. Range: 0x0000 to 0xFFFF Time = N * 0.625 ms Time Range: 0 ms to 40.9 seconds

**Return Parameters:**

Status	Size: 1 Octet
0x00	LE_Remote_Connection_Parameter_Request_Reply command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	LE_Remote_Connection_Parameter_Request_Reply command failed. See <a href="#">[Vol 2] Part D, Error Codes</a> for a list of error codes and description.

**Connection\_Handle** Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0xFFFF Reserved for future use)

**Events(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Remote\_Connection\_Parameter\_Request\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

### 7.8.32 LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Negative Reply Command

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
LE_Remote_Connection_Parameter_Request_Negative_Reply	0x21	Connection_Handle, Reason	Status, Connection_Handle

#### Description:

Both the master Host and the slave Host use this command to reply to the HCI LE Remote Connection Parameter Request event. This indicates that the Host has rejected the remote device's request to change connection parameters. The reason for the rejection is given in the Reason parameter.

Instead of issuing this command, the Host should try to provide alternative connection parameters to the Link Layer via the HCI LE Remote Connection Parameter Request Reply command ([Section 7.8.31](#)).

#### Command Parameters:

Connection_Handle	Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)
Value	Parameter Description

0xFFFF Connection\_Handle to be used to identify a connection.  
Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

Reason	Size: 1 Octet
Value	Parameter Description

0XX Reason that the connection parameter request was rejected. See [\[Vol 2\] Part D, Error Codes](#) for a list of error codes and descriptions.

#### Return Parameters:

Status	Size: 1 Octet
Value	Parameter Description

0x00 LE\_Remote\_Connection\_Parameter\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command succeeded.  
0x01-0xFF LE\_Remote\_Connection\_Parameter\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command failed. See [\[Vol 2\] Part D, Error Codes](#) for a list of error codes and description.

***Connection\_Handle******Size: 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)***

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXXXX	Connection_Handle to be used to identify a connection. Range 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 – 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Events(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the LE\_Remote\_Connection\_Parameter\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command has completed, a Command Complete event shall be generated.

## 8 LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 1.1:	Overview of the Lower Software Layers .....	412
Figure 1.2:	End to End Overview of Lower Software Layers to Transfer Data .....	413
Figure 5.1:	HCI Command Packet .....	480
Figure 5.2:	HCI ACL Data Packet .....	481
Figure 5.3:	HCI Synchronous Data Packet .....	484
Figure 5.4:	HCI Event Packet .....	486
Figure 7.1:	Local Loopback Mode .....	839
Figure 7.2:	Remote Loopback Mode .....	840
Figure 7.3:	Secure Connections eSCO Loopback .....	847
Figure 7.4:	Secure Connections eSCO loopback immediate .....	848
Figure 7.5:	Secure Connections eSCO loopback delayed .....	848
Figure 7.6:	Secure Connections eSCO loopback delayed with retransmissions .....	848

## 9 LIST OF TABLES

---

Table 3.1:	Overview of commands and events.....	415
Table 3.2:	Generic events.....	416
Table 3.3:	Device setup .....	416
Table 3.4:	Controller flow control .....	417
Table 3.5:	Controller information .....	418
Table 3.6:	Controller configuration.....	420
Table 3.7:	Device discovery.....	423
Table 3.8:	Connection setup .....	426
Table 3.9:	Remote information .....	431
Table 3.10:	Synchronous connections.....	432
Table 3.11:	Connection state .....	434
Table 3.12:	Piconet structure .....	437
Table 3.13:	Quality of service .....	438
Table 3.14:	Physical links .....	440
Table 3.15:	Host flow control .....	442
Table 3.16:	Link information .....	444
Table 3.17:	Authentication and encryption .....	446
Table 3.18:	Testing .....	453
Table 3.19:	Alphabetical list of commands and events.....	456
Table 3.20:	Bluetooth Controller supporting LE requirements .....	465
Table 3.21:	Connectionless Slave Broadcast.....	468

## 10 APPENDIX A: DEPRECATED COMMANDS, EVENTS AND CONFIGURATION PARAMETERS

Commands, events and configuration parameters in this section were in prior versions of the specification, but have been determined not to be required.

They may be implemented by a controller to allow for backwards compatibility with a host utilizing a prior version of the specification.

A Host should not use these commands.

10.1	Read Page Scan Mode Command .....	page 1020
10.2	Write Page Scan Mode Command.....	page 1021
10.3	Read Page Scan Period Mode Command.....	page 1022
10.4	Write Page Scan Period Mode Command .....	page 1023
10.5	Add SCO Connection Command .....	page 1024
10.6	Page Scan Mode Change Event.....	page 1026
10.7	Read Country Code Command.....	page 1027
10.8	Read Encryption Mode Command .....	page 1028
10.9	Write Encryption Mode Command .....	page 1029
10.10	Deprecated Parameters .....	page 1030
10.10.1	Encryption Mode .....	page 1030
10.10.2	Page Scan Mode.....	page 1031

## 10.1 READ PAGE SCAN MODE COMMAND

Command	OGF	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Page_Scan_Mode	0x03	0x003D		Status, Page_Scan_Mode

### Description:

This command is used to read the default Page Scan Mode configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See “Page Scan Mode” on page 1031.

### Command Parameters:

None.

### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Page_Scan_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Page_Scan_Mode command failed. See Part D, Error Codes on page 379 for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Page\_Scan\_Mode:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
See Appendix A, <a href="#">Page Scan Mode</a> on page 1031.	

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Page\_Scan\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

## 10.2 WRITE PAGE SCAN MODE COMMAND

OGF: 0x03 (Controller and baseband commands)

Command	OGF	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Page_Scan_Mode	0x03	0x003E	Page_Scan_Mode	Status

### Description:

This command is used to write the default Page Scan Mode configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Page Scan Mode on page 1031](#)

### Command Parameters:

*Page\_Scan\_Mode*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
See Appendix A, <a href="#">See “Page Scan Mode” on page 1031.</a>	

### Return Parameters:

*Status*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Page_Scan_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Page_Scan_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Page\_Scan\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

## 10.3 READ PAGE SCAN PERIOD MODE COMMAND

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Page_Scan_Period_Mode	0x003B		Status, Page_Scan_Period_Mode

### Description:

This command is used to read the mandatory Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.10 on page 490](#).

### Command Parameters:

None.

### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Page_Scan_Period_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Page_Scan_Period_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	P0
0x01	P1
0x02	P2
0x03-0xFF	Reserved.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

## 10.4 WRITE PAGE SCAN PERIOD MODE COMMAND

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Page_Scan_Period_Mode	0x003C	Page_Scan_Period_Mode	Status

### Description:

This command is used to write the mandatory Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode configuration parameter of the local BR/EDR Controller. See [Section 6.10 on page 490](#).

### Command Parameters:

*Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	P0
0x01	P1
0x02	P2. Default.
0x03-0xFF	Reserved.

### Return Parameters:

*Status*:

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Page_Scan_Period_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Page_Scan_Period_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Page\_Scan\_Period\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

## 10.5 ADD SCO CONNECTION COMMAND

Command	OGF	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Add SCO_Connection	0x01	0x0007	Connection_Handle, Packet_Type	

### Description:

This command will cause the Link Manager to create a SCO connection using the ACL connection specified by the Connection\_Handle command parameter. This command causes the local BR/EDR Controller to create a SCO connection. The Link Manager will determine how the new connection is established. This connection is determined by the current state of the device, its piconet, and the state of the device to be connected. The Packet\_Type command parameter specifies which packet types the Link Manager should use for the connection. The Link Manager must only use the packet type(s) specified by the Packet\_Type command parameter for sending HCI SCO Data Packets. Multiple packet types may be specified for the Packet\_Type command parameter by performing a bitwise OR operation of the different packet types. The Link Manager may choose which packet type is to be used from the list of acceptable packet types. A Connection Handle for this connection is returned in the Connection Complete event (see below).

Note: An SCO connection can only be created when an ACL connection already exists and when it is not put in park. For a definition of the different packet types, see the [Part B, Baseband Specification on page 59](#).

Note: At least one packet type must be specified. The Host should enable as many packet types as possible for the Link Manager to perform efficiently. However, the Host must not enable packet types that the local device does not support.

### Command Parameters:

*Connection\_Handle* *Size 2 Octets (12 Bits meaningful)*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Connection Handle for the ACL connection being used to create an SCO connection. Range: 0x0000-0x0EFF (0x0F00 - 0x0FFF Reserved for future use)

**Packet\_Type:****Size: 2 Octets**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0x0001	Reserved for future use.
0x0002	Reserved for future use.
0x0004	Reserved for future use.
0x0008	Reserved for future use.
0x0010	Reserved for future use.
0x0020	HV1
0x0040	HV2
0x0080	HV3
0x0100	Reserved for future use.
0x0200	Reserved for future use.
0x0400	Reserved for future use.
0x0800	Reserved for future use.
0x1000	Reserved for future use.
0x2000	Reserved for future use.
0x4000	Reserved for future use.
0x8000	Reserved for future use.

**Return Parameters:**

None.

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Controller receives the Add\_SCO\_Connection command, it sends the Command Status event to the Host. In addition, when the LM determines the connection is established, the local Controller will send a Connection Complete event to its Host, and the remote Controller will send a Connection Complete event or a Synchronous Connection Complete event to the Host. The Connection Complete event contains the Connection Handle if this command is successful.

Note: no Command Complete event will be sent by the Controller to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead, the Connection Complete event will indicate that this command has been completed.

## 10.6 PAGE SCAN MODE CHANGE EVENT

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
Page Scan Mode Change	0x1F	BD_ADDR, Page_Scan_Mode

### Description:

The Page Scan Mode Change event indicates that the connected remote BR/EDR Controller with the specified BD\_ADDR has successfully changed the Page\_Scan\_Mode.

### Event Parameters:

*BD\_ADDR*: Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXXXXX XXXX	BD_ADDR of the remote device.

*Page\_Scan\_Mode*: Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Mandatory Page Scan Mode.
0x01	Optional Page Scan Mode I.
0x02	Optional Page Scan Mode II.
0x03	Optional Page Scan Mode III.
0x04 – 0xFF	Reserved.

## 10.7 READ COUNTRY CODE COMMAND

Command	OGF	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Country_Code	0x04	0x0007		Status, Country_Code

### Description:

This command will read the value for the Country\_Code return parameter. The Country\_Code defines which range of frequency band of the ISM 2.4 GHz band will be used by the device. Each country has local regulatory bodies regulating which ISM 2.4 GHz frequency ranges can be used.

### Command Parameters:

None.

### Return Parameters:

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Country_Code command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Country_Code command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for error codes and descriptions.

*Country\_Code:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	North America & Europe* and Japan
0x01	France
0x04-FF	Reserved for future use.

\*. Except France

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Read\_Country\_Code command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

## 10.8 READ ENCRYPTION MODE COMMAND

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Read_Encryption_Mode	0x0021		Status, Encryption_Mode

**Description:**

This command will read the value for the Encryption\_Mode configuration parameter. See [Section 10.10.1 on page 1030](#).

**Command Parameters:**

None.

**Return Parameters:**

*Status:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Read_Encryption_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Read_Encryption_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

*Encryption\_Mode:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 10.10.1 on page 1030</a>	

**Event(s) generated (unless masked away):**

When the Read\_Encryption\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

## 10.9 WRITE ENCRYPTION MODE COMMAND

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_Write_Encryption_Mode	0x0022	Encryption_Mode	Status

### Description:

This command will write the value for the Encryption\_Mode configuration parameter. See [Section 10.10.1 on page 1030](#).

### Command Parameters:

#### *Encryption\_Mode*:

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
See <a href="#">Section 10.10.1 on page 1030</a> .	

### Return Parameters:

#### *Status*:

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Write_Encryption_Mode command succeeded.
0x01-0xFF	Write_Encryption_Mode command failed. See <a href="#">Part D, Error Codes on page 379</a> for a list of error codes and descriptions.

### Event(s) generated (unless masked away):

When the Write\_Encryption\_Mode command has completed, a Command Complete event will be generated.

## 10.10 DEPRECATED PARAMETERS

### 10.10.1 Encryption Mode

The Encryption\_Mode parameter controls if the local device requires encryption to the remote device at connection setup (between the Create\_Connection command or acceptance of an incoming ACL connection and the corresponding Connection Complete event). At connection setup, only devices with the Authentication\_Enabled configuration parameter set to required and the Encryption\_Mode configuration parameter set to required will try to encrypt the physical link to the other device.

Note: Changing this parameter does not affect existing connections.

A temporary link key is used when both broadcast and point-to-point traffic are encrypted.

The Host must not specify the Encryption\_Mode parameter with more encryption capability than its local device currently supports, although the parameter is used to request the encryption capability to the remote device. Note that the Host must not request the command with the Encryption\_Mode parameter set to 0x01, when the local device does not support encryption.

Note: for encryption to be used, both devices must support and enable encryption.

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Encryption not required.
0x01	Encryption required for all connections.
0x02-0xFF	Reserved.

4. Note: in the Connection Complete event the Encryption\_Mode parameter will show whether encryption was successfully turned on. The remote device may not support encryption or may have set Encryption\_Mode to 0x01 when the local device has not, so the encryption mode returned in the Connection Complete event may not equal the encryption mode set in the Write\_Encryption\_Mode command.

### 10.10.2 Page Scan Mode

The Page\_Scan\_Mode parameter indicates the page scan mode that is used for default page scan. Currently one mandatory page scan mode and three optional page scan modes are defined. Following an inquiry response, if the Baseband timer T\_mandatory\_pscan has not expired, the mandatory page scan mode must be applied. For details see the [Part B, Baseband Specification on page 59](#) (Keyword: Page Scan Mode, FHS Packet, T\_mandatory\_pscan)

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Mandatory Page Scan Mode
0x01	Optional Page Scan Mode I
0x02	Optional Page Scan Mode II
0x03	Optional Page Scan Mode III
0x04-0xFF	Reserved



# Core System Package [BR/EDR Controller volume]

## Part F

### MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS

*Examples of interactions between Host Controller Interface Commands and Events and Link Manager Protocol Data Units are represented in the form of message sequence charts. The message sequence charts also present interaction examples of HCI with AMP (Alternate MAC and PHY) Controllers. These charts show typical interactions and do not indicate all possible protocol behavior.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1037</b>
1.1	Notation.....	1037
1.2	Flow of Control.....	1038
1.3	Example MSC .....	1038
<b>2</b>	<b>Services Without Connection Request .....</b>	<b>1039</b>
2.1	Remote Name Request.....	1039
2.2	One-time Inquiry.....	1041
2.3	Periodic Inquiry .....	1043
<b>3</b>	<b>ACL Connection Establishment and Detachment.....</b>	<b>1045</b>
3.1	Connection Setup .....	1046
<b>4</b>	<b>Optional Activities After ACL Connection Establishment.....</b>	<b>1054</b>
4.1	Authentication Requested .....	1054
4.2	Simple Pairing Message Sequence Charts.....	1056
4.2.1	Optional OOB Information Collection .....	1057
4.2.2	Enable Simple Pairing and Secure Connections.....	1058
4.2.3	Connection Establishment.....	1059
4.2.4	L2CAP Connection Request for a Secure Service ....	1060
4.2.5	Optional OOB Information Transfer.....	1060
4.2.6	Start Simple Pairing .....	1061
4.2.7	IO Capability Exchange .....	1062
4.2.8	Public Key Exchange .....	1063
4.2.9	Authentication.....	1063
4.2.10	Numeric Comparison.....	1064
4.2.11	Numeric Comparison Failure on Initiating Side .....	1065
4.2.12	Numeric Comparison Failure on Responding Side ...	1066
4.2.13	Passkey Entry .....	1067
4.2.14	Passkey Entry Failure on Responding Side .....	1068
4.2.15	Passkey Entry Failure on Initiator Side .....	1069
4.2.16	Out of Band .....	1070
4.2.17	OOB Failure on Initiator Side .....	1072
4.2.18	DHKey Checks .....	1073
4.2.19	Calculate Link Key.....	1074
4.2.20	Enable Encryption .....	1075
4.2.21	L2CAP Connection Response.....	1075
4.2.22	LMP Ping .....	1076
4.3	Link Supervision Timeout Changed Event .....	1078

*Message Sequence Charts*

4.4	Set Connection Encryption .....	1079
4.5	Change Connection Link Key .....	1081
4.6	Change Connection Link Key with Encryption Pause and Resume .....	1082
4.7	Master Link Key .....	1083
4.8	Read Remote Supported Features .....	1085
4.9	Read Remote Extended Features .....	1086
4.10	Read Clock Offset.....	1087
4.11	Role Switch on an Encrypted Link using Encryption Pause and Resume .....	1088
4.12	Refreshing Encryption Keys .....	1089
4.13	Read Remote Version Information.....	1091
4.14	QOS Setup .....	1092
4.15	Switch Role.....	1093
4.16	AMP Physical Link Creation and Disconnect.....	1095
	4.16.1 Physical Link Establishment.....	1096
	4.16.2 Logical Link Creation.....	1101
4.17	AMP Test Mode Sequence Charts.....	1103
	4.17.1 Discover the AMP Present and Running Transmitter and Receiver Tests.....	1104
<b>5</b>	<b>Synchronous Connection Establishment and Detachment.....</b>	<b>1107</b>
5.1	Synchronous Connection Setup .....	1107
5.2	Synchronous Connection Setup with Enhanced Synchronous Commands .....	1115
<b>6</b>	<b>Sniff, Hold and Park.....</b>	<b>1121</b>
6.1	Sniff Mode.....	1121
6.2	Hold Mode .....	1122
6.3	Park State .....	1125
<b>7</b>	<b>Buffer Management, Flow Control .....</b>	<b>1129</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Loopback Mode.....</b>	<b>1131</b>
8.1	Local Loopback Mode.....	1131
8.2	Remote Loopback Mode.....	1134
<b>9</b>	<b>Connectionless Slave Broadcast Services .....</b>	<b>1136</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>1140</b>

# 1 INTRODUCTION

---

This section shows typical interactions between Host Controller Interface (HCI) Commands and Events and Link Manager (LM) Protocol Data Units (PDU) on the BR/EDR Controller. It focuses on the message sequence charts (MSCs) for the procedures specified in [3] “Host Controller Interface Functional Specification” with regard to LM Procedures from [2] “Link Manager Protocol” and PALs found in Volume 5.

This section illustrates only the most useful scenarios, it does not cover all possible alternatives. Furthermore, the message sequence charts do not consider errors over the air interface or host interface. In all message sequence charts it is assumed that all events are not masked, so the Host Controller will not filter out any events.

The sequence of messages in these message sequence charts is for illustrative purposes. The messages may be sent in a different order where allowed by the Link Manager, PAL, or HCI sections. If any of these charts differ with text in the Baseband, Link Manager, PAL, or HCI sections, the text in those sections shall be considered normative. This section is informative.

## 1.1 NOTATION

The notation used in the message sequence charts (MSCs) consists of ovals, elongated hexagons, boxes, lines, and arrows. The vertical lines terminated on the top by a shadow box and at the bottom by solid oval indicate a protocol entity that resides in a device. MSCs describe interactions between these entities and states those entities may be in.

The following symbols represent interactions and states:

<b>Oval</b>	Defines the context for the message sequence chart.
<b>Hexagon</b>	Indicates a condition needed to start the transactions below this hexagon. The location and width of the Hexagon indicates which entity or entities make this decision.
<b>Box</b>	Replaces a group of transactions. May indicate a user action, or a procedure in the baseband.
<b>Dashed Box</b>	Optional group of transactions.
<b>Solid Arrow</b>	Represents a message, signal or transaction. Can be used to show LMP and HCI traffic. Some baseband packet traffic is also shown. These are prefixed by BB followed by either the type of packet, or an indication that there is an ACK signal in a packet.
<b>Dashed Arrow</b>	Represents an optional message, signal or transaction. Can be used to show LMP and HCI traffic.

## 1.2 FLOW OF CONTROL

Some message sequences are split into several charts. These charts are marked in sequence with different step numbers with multiple paths through with optional letters after the step numbers. Numbers indicate normal or required ordering. The letters represent alternative paths. For example, Step 4 is after Step 3, and Step 5a could be executed instead of Step 5b.

## 1.3 EXAMPLE MSC

The protocol entities represented in the example shown in [Figure 1.1](#) illustrate the interactions of two devices named A and B. Note that each device includes a Host and a LM entity in this example. Other MSCs in this section may show the interactions of more than two devices.

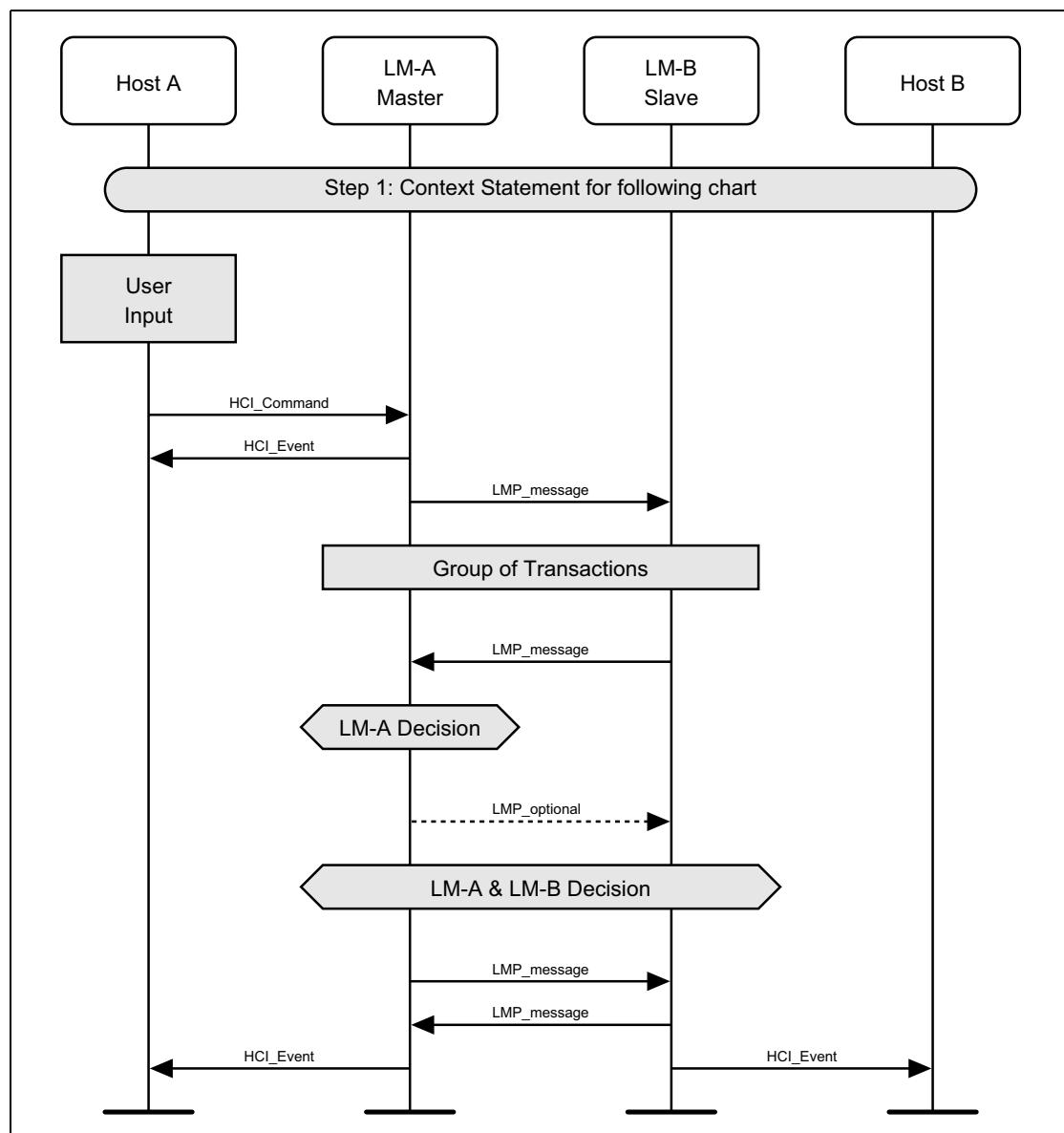


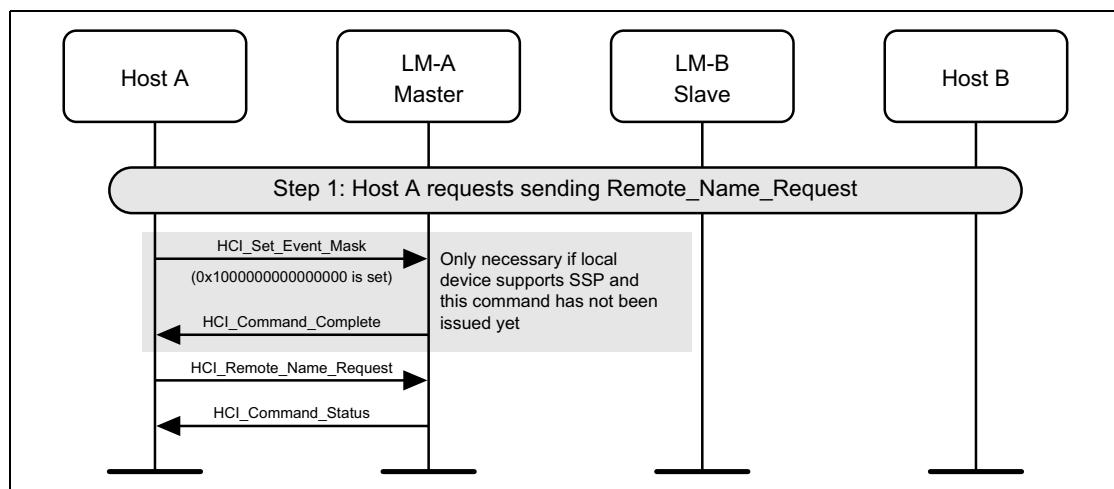
Figure 1.1: Example MSC.

## 2 SERVICES WITHOUT CONNECTION REQUEST

### 2.1 REMOTE NAME REQUEST

The service Remote Name Request is used to find out the name of the remote device without requiring an explicit ACL Connection.

**Step 1:** The host sends an HCI\_Set\_Event\_Mask with the bit of Remote Host Supported Features Notification Event (0x1000000000000000) set and an HCI\_Remote\_Name\_Request command expecting that its local device will automatically try to connect to the remote device. (See [Figure 2.1](#).)



*Figure 2.1: Remote name request.*

**Step 2a:** If an ACL Connection does not exist device A pages device B. After the Baseband paging procedure, the local device attempts to get the remote device's extended features, send an HCI\_Remote\_Device\_Supported\_Features\_Notification event, get the remote name, disconnect, and return the name of the remote device to the Host. (See [Figure 2.2 on page 1040](#).)

## Message Sequence Charts

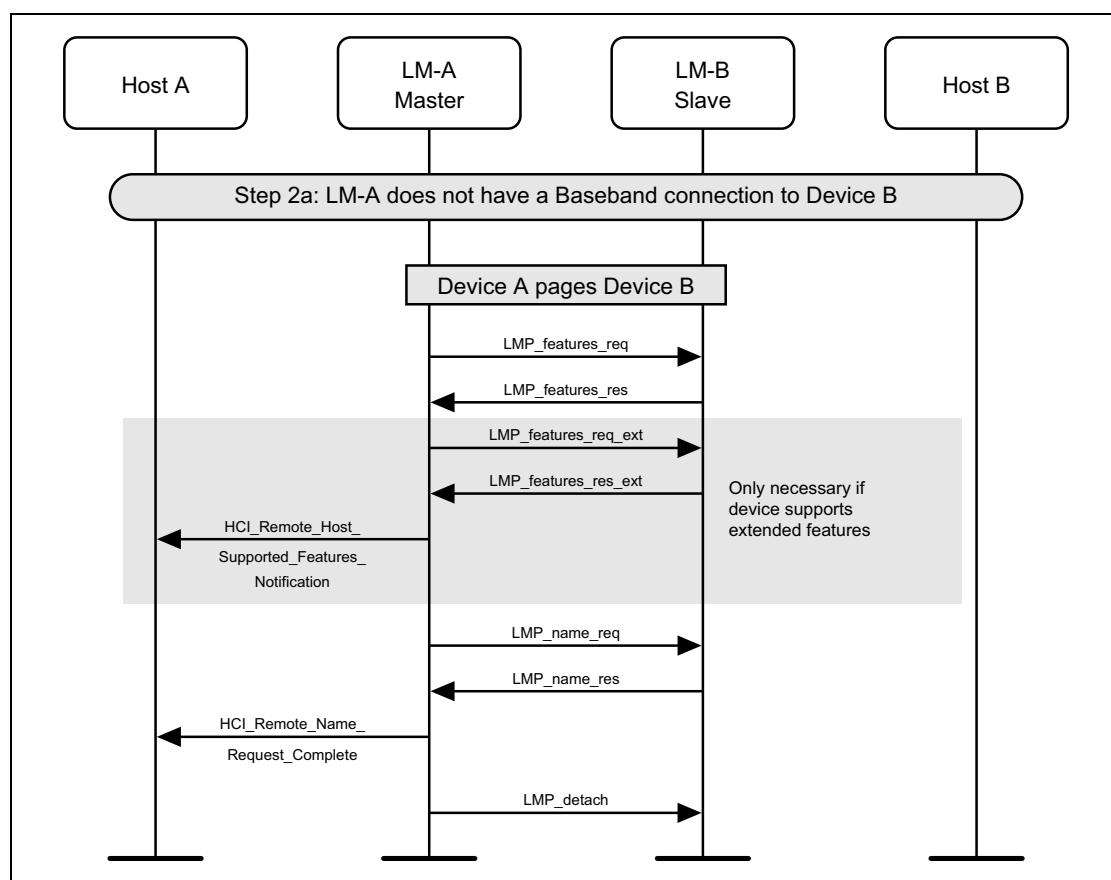


Figure 2.2: Remote name request if no current baseband connection.

**Step 2b:** If an ACL Connection exists when the request is made, then the Remote Name Request procedure will be executed like an optional service. No Paging and no ACL disconnect is done. (See [Figure 2.3.](#))

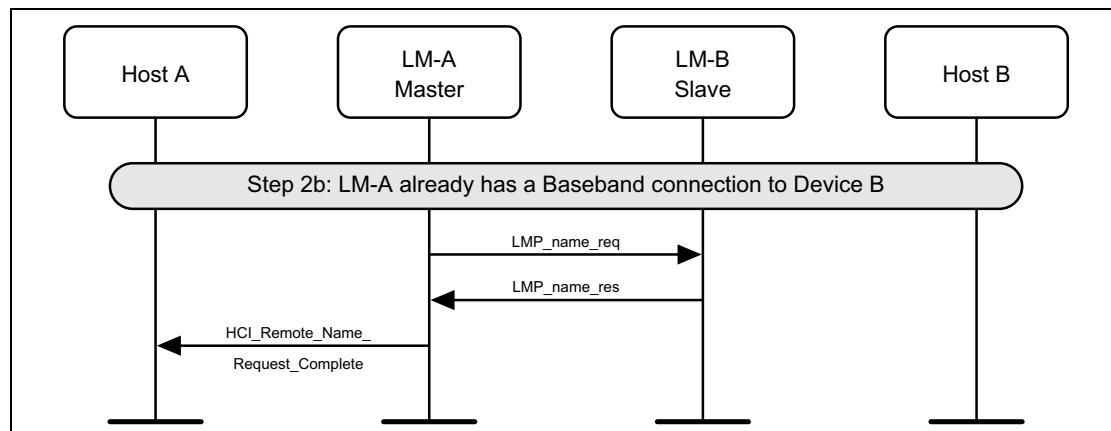
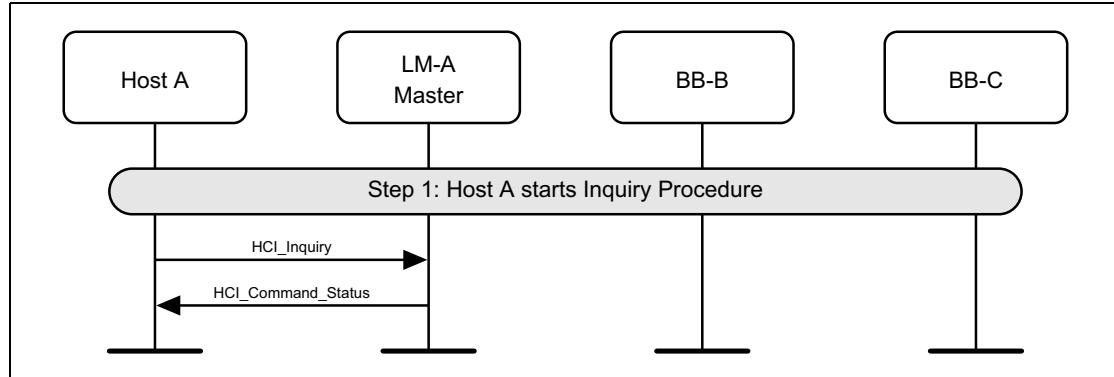


Figure 2.3: Remote name request with baseband connection.

## 2.2 ONE-TIME INQUIRY

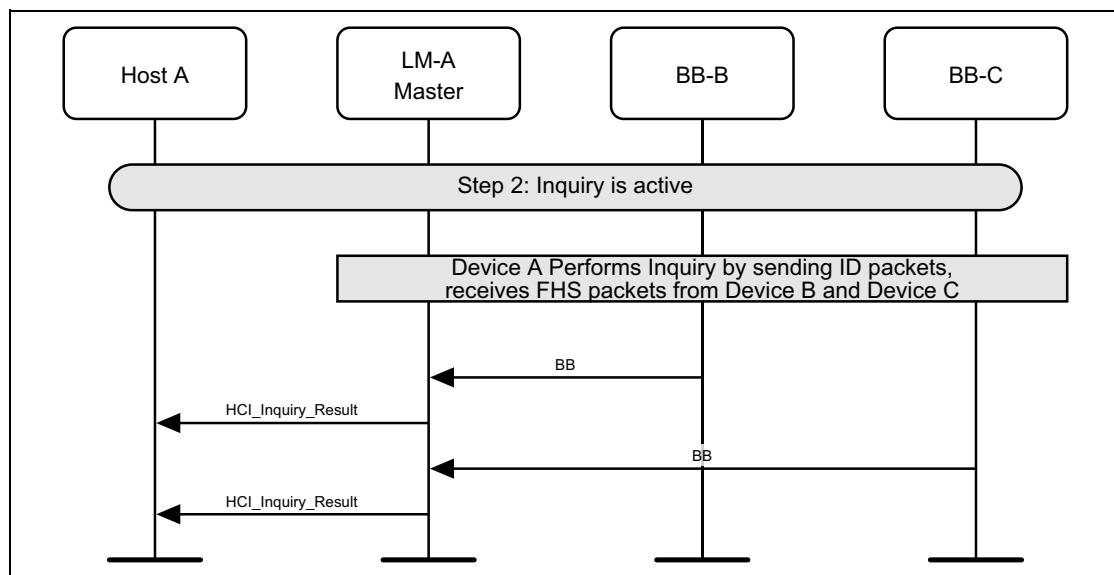
Inquiry is used to detect and collect nearby devices.

**Step 1:** The host sends an HCI\_Inquiry command. (See [Figure 2.4](#).)



*Figure 2.4: Host A starts inquiry procedure.*

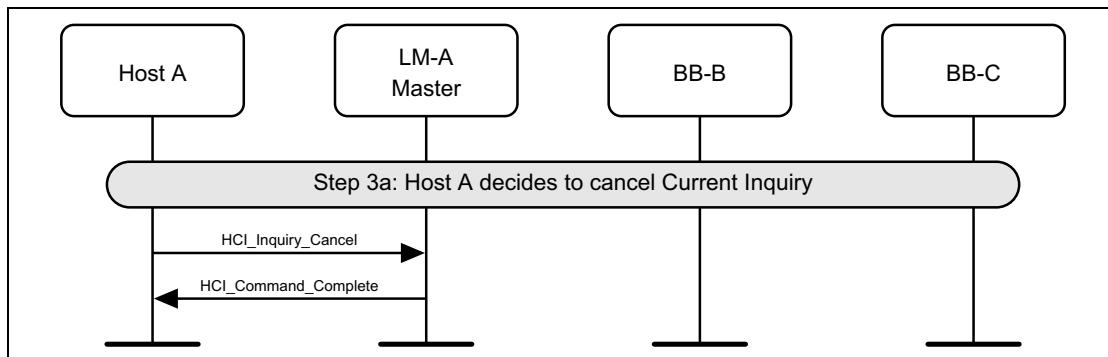
**Step 2:** The Controller will start the Baseband inquiry procedure with the specified Inquiry Access Code and Inquiry Length. When Inquiry Responses are received, the Controller extracts the required information and returns the information related to the found devices using one or more Inquiry Result events to the Host. (See [Figure 2.5](#).)



*Figure 2.5: LM-A performs inquiry and reports result.*

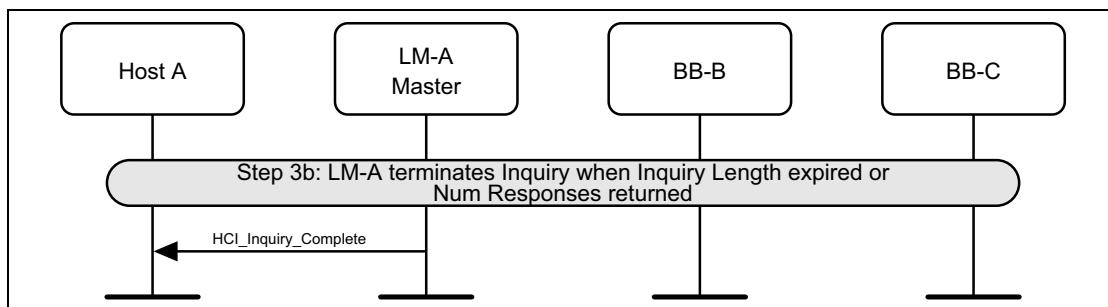
*Message Sequence Charts*

**Step 3a:** If the host wishes to terminate an Inquiry, the HCI\_Inquiry\_Cancel command is used to immediately stop the inquiry procedure.  
 (See [Figure 2.6.](#))



*Figure 2.6: Host A cancels inquiry.*

**Step 3b:** If the Inquiry procedure is completed due to the number of results obtained, or the Inquiry Length has expired, an Inquiry Complete event is returned to the Host. (See [Figure 2.7.](#))

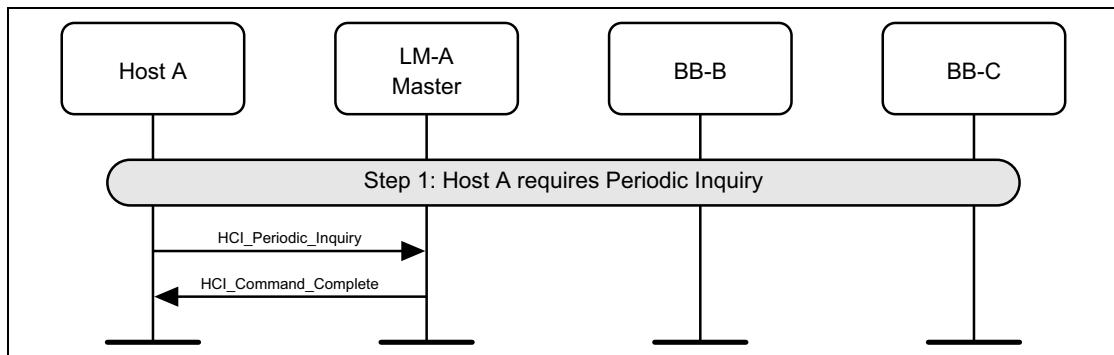


*Figure 2.7: LM-A terminates current inquiry.*

## 2.3 PERIODIC INQUIRY

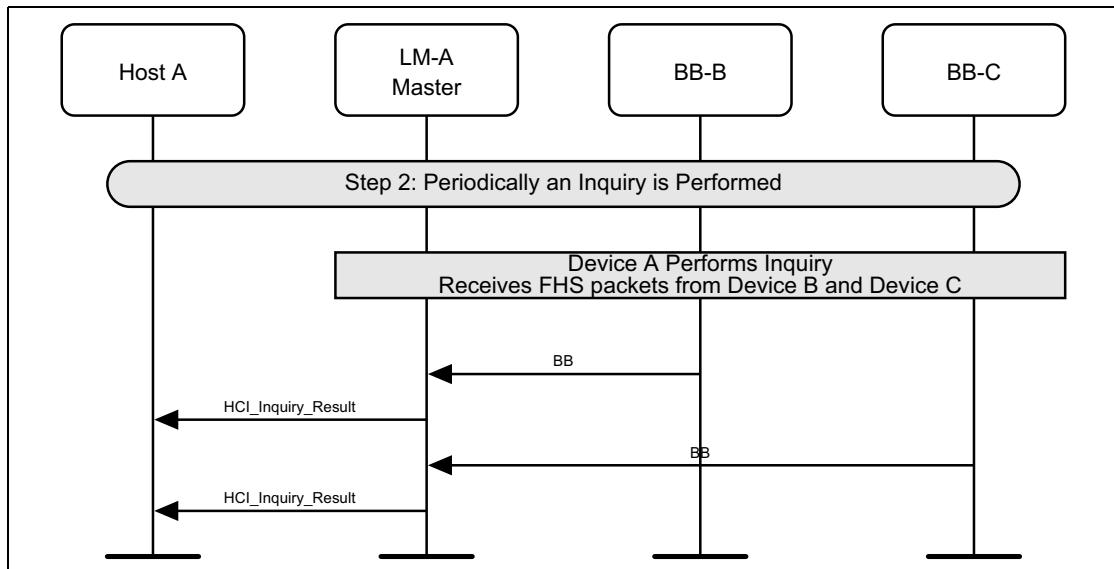
Periodic inquiry is used when the inquiry procedure is to be repeated periodically.

**Step 1:** The hosts sends an HCI\_Periodic\_Inquiry\_Mode command.  
(See [Figure 2.8](#).)



*Figure 2.8: Host A starts periodic inquiry.*

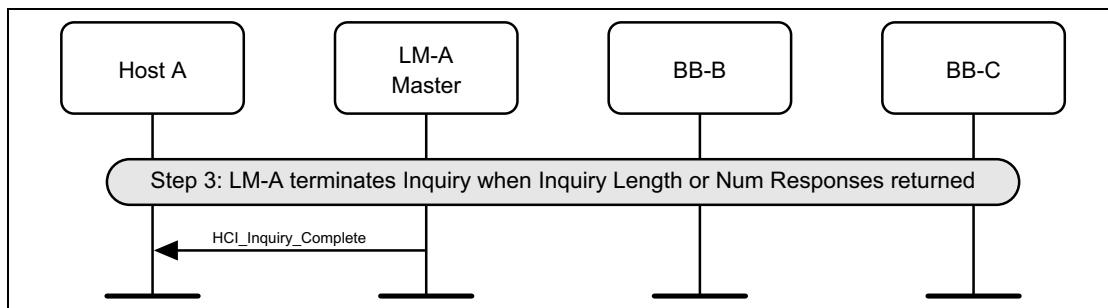
**Step 2:** The Controller will start a periodic Inquiry. In the inquiry cycle, one or several Inquiry Result events will be returned. (See [Figure 2.9](#).)



*Figure 2.9: LM-A periodically performs an inquiry and reports result.*

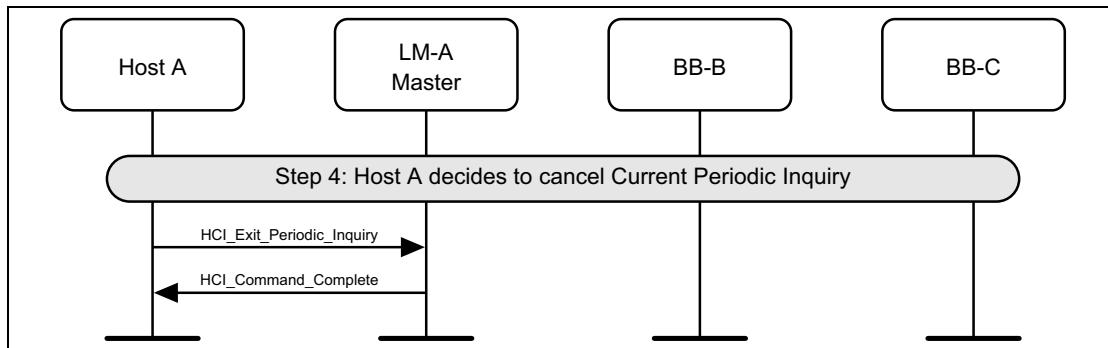
*Message Sequence Charts*

**Step 3:** An Inquiry Complete event will be returned to the Host when the current periodic inquiry has finished. (See [Figure 2.10](#).)



*Figure 2.10: LM-A terminates current inquiry.*

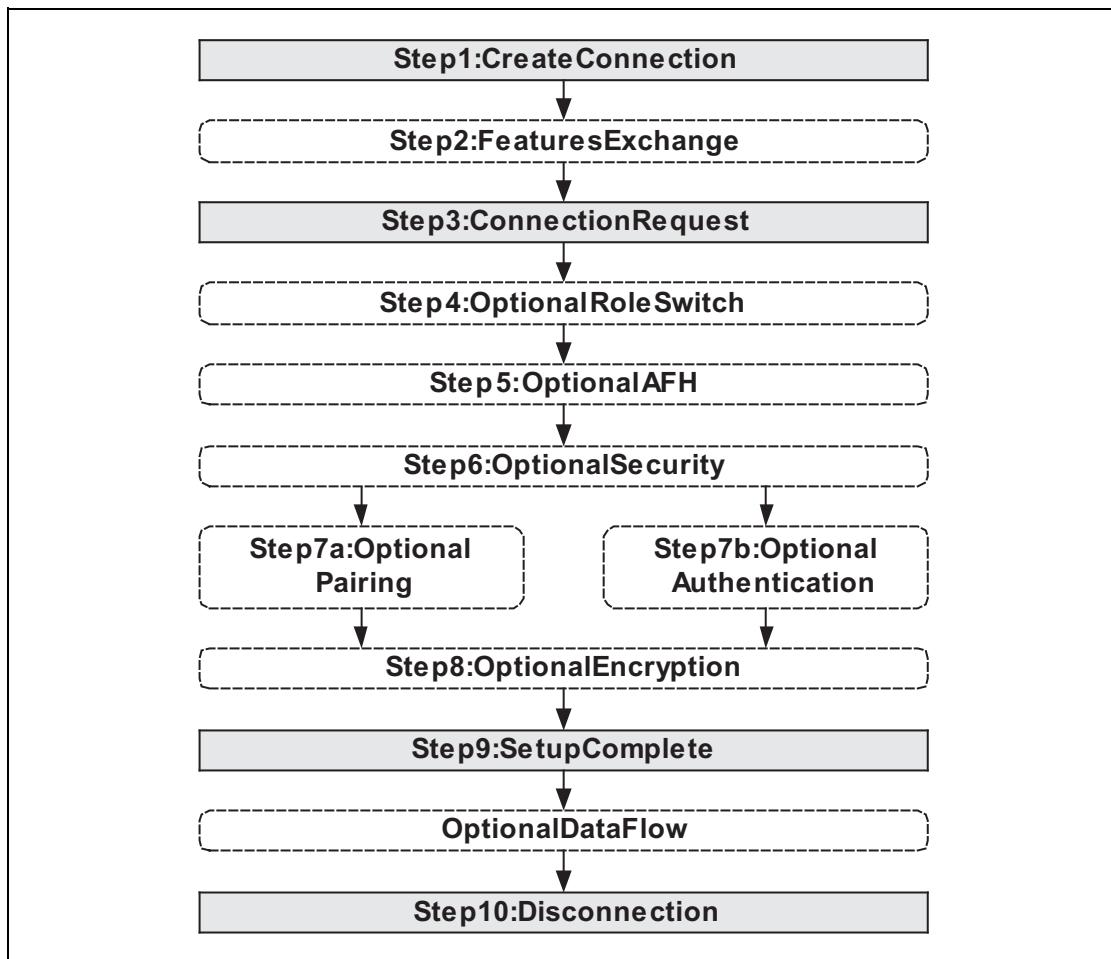
**Step 4:** The periodic Inquiry can be stopped using the `HCI_Exit_Periodic_Inquiry_Mode` command. (See [Figure 2.11](#).)



*Figure 2.11: Host A decides to exit periodic inquiry.*

### 3 ACL CONNECTION ESTABLISHMENT AND DETACHMENT

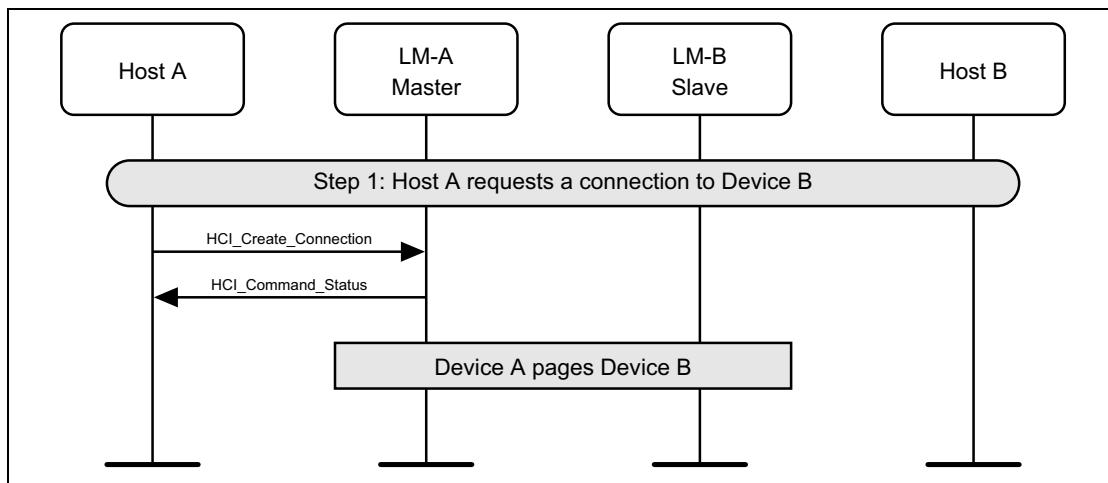
A flow diagram of the establishment and detachment of a connection between two devices is shown in [Figure 3.1](#). The process is illustrated in 9 distinct steps. A number of these steps may be optionally performed, such as authentication and encryption. Some steps are required, such as the Connection Request and Setup Complete steps. The steps in the overview diagram directly relate to the steps in the following message sequence charts.



*Figure 3.1: Overview diagram for connection setup.*

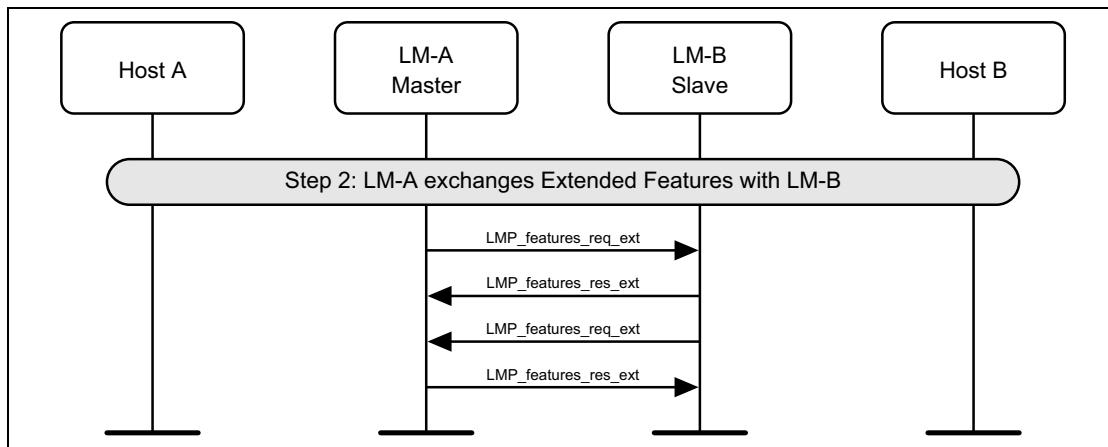
### 3.1 CONNECTION SETUP

**Step 1:** The host sends an HCI\_Create\_Connection command to the Controller. The Controller then performs a Baseband paging procedure with the specified BD\_ADDR. (See [Figure 3.2.](#))



*Figure 3.2: Host A requests connection with device B.*

**Step 2:** Optionally, the LM may decide to exchange features. (See [Figure 3.3.](#))

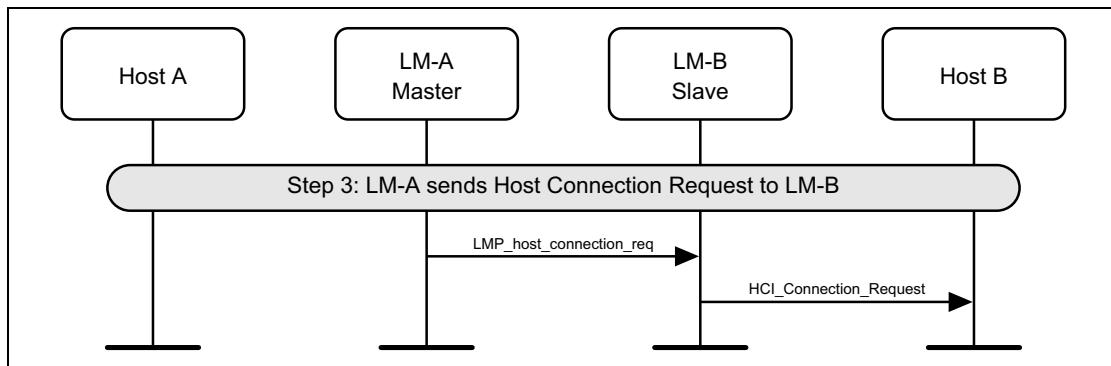


*Figure 3.3: LM-A and LM-B exchange features.*

## Message Sequence Charts

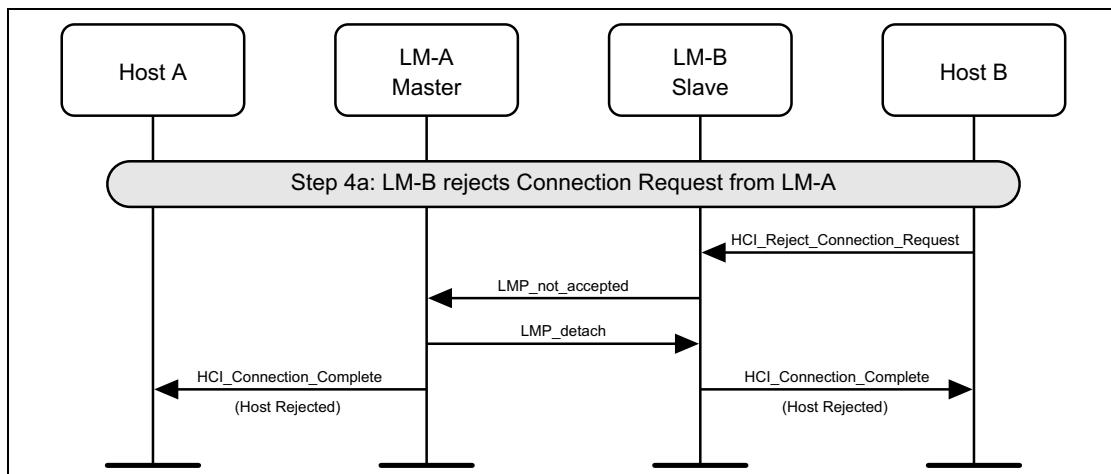


**Step 3:** The LM on the master will request an LMP\_host\_connection\_req PDU. The LM on the slave will then confirm that a connection is OK, and if so, what role is preferred. (See [Figure 3.4](#).)



*Figure 3.4: LM-A requests host connection.*

**Step 4a:** The remote host rejects this connection, and the link is terminated. (See [Figure 3.5](#).)

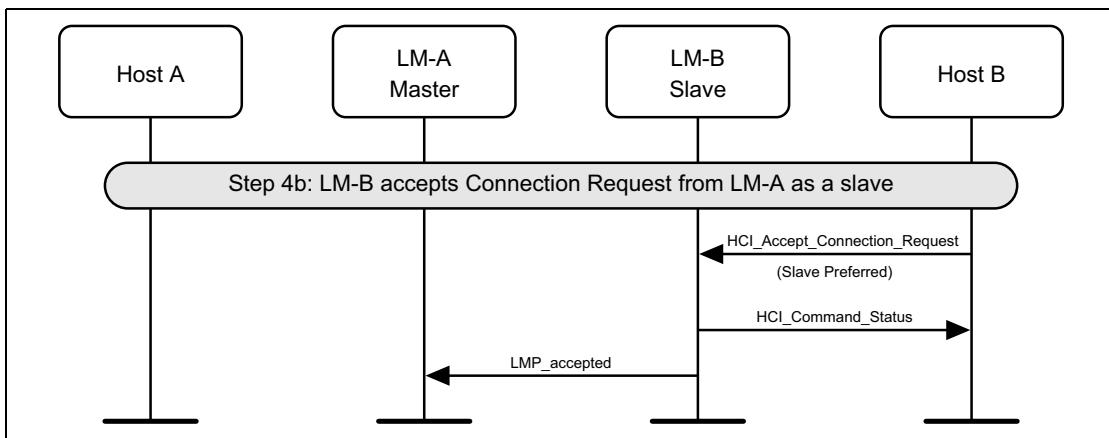


*Figure 3.5: Device B rejects connection request.*

## Message Sequence Charts

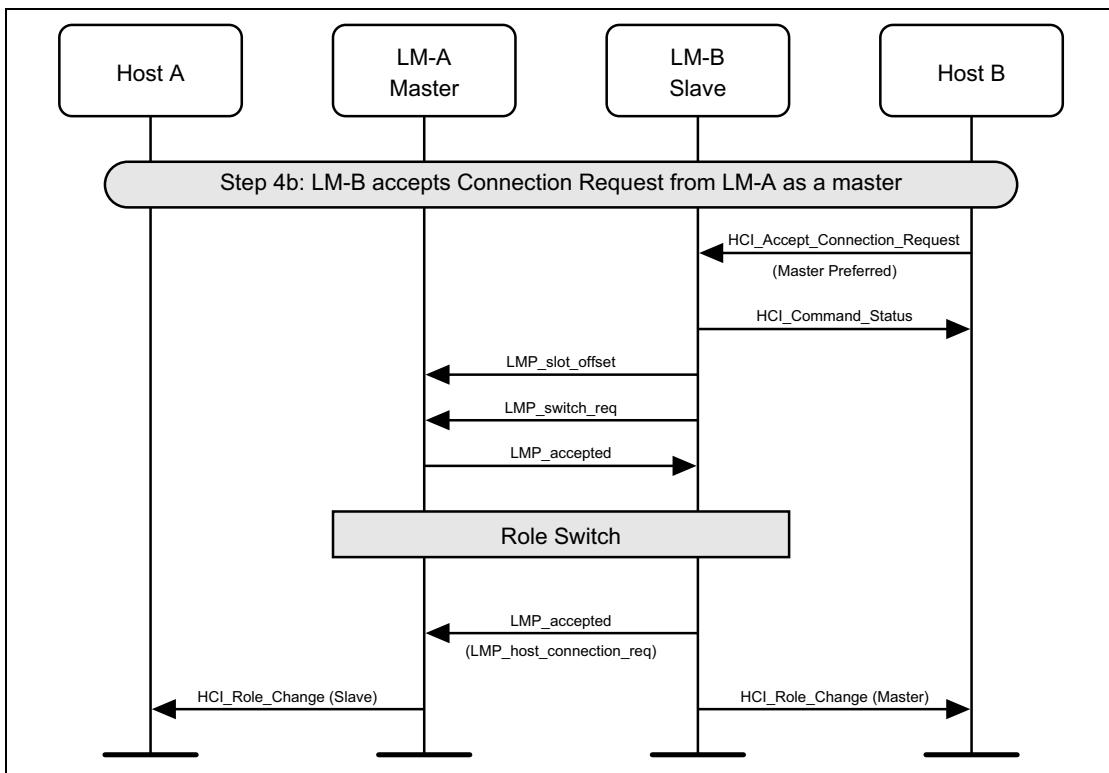


**Step 4b:** The remote host accepts this connection. (See [Figure 3.6.](#))



*Figure 3.6: Device B accepts connection request.*

**Step 4c:** The remote host accepts this connection but with the preference of being a master. This will cause a role switch to occur before the LMP\_accepted for the LMP\_host\_connection\_req PDU is sent. (See [Figure 3.7.](#))

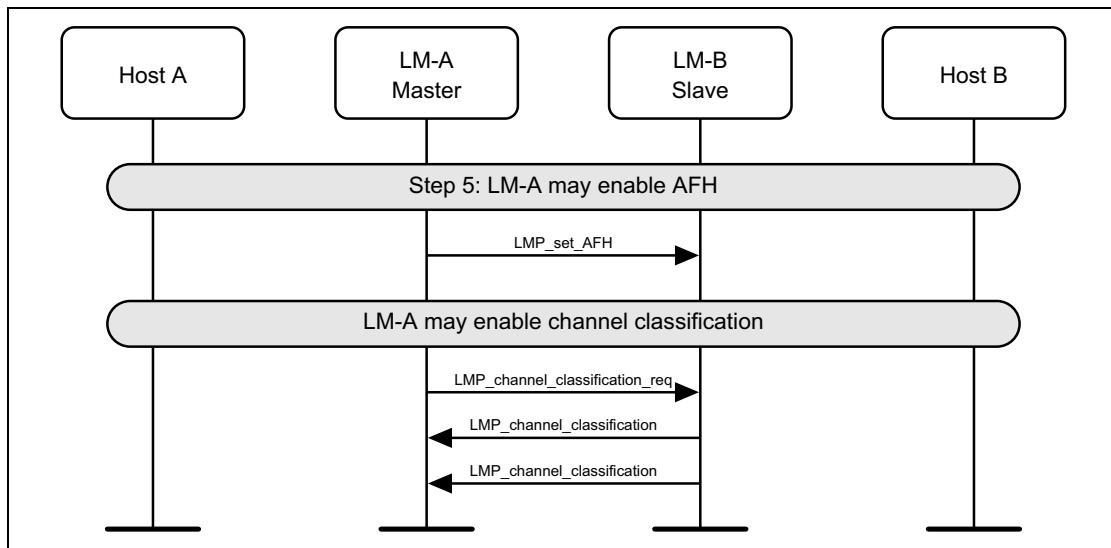


*Figure 3.7: Device B accepts connection requests as master.*

## Message Sequence Charts

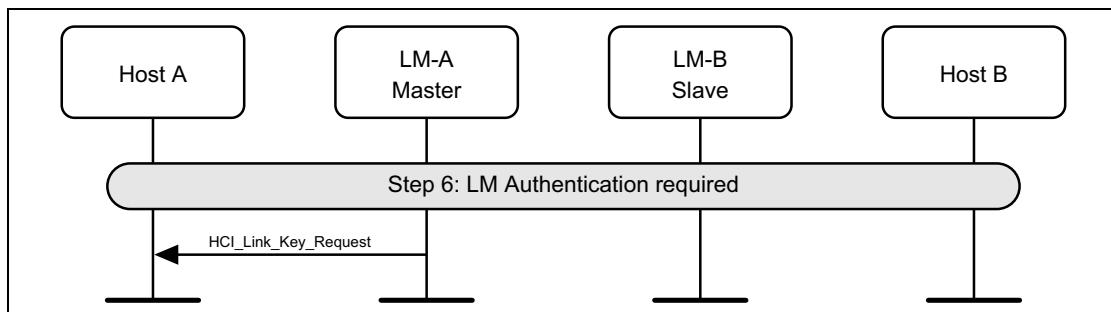


**Step 5:** After the features have been exchanged and AFH support is determined to be available, the master may at any time send an LMP\_set\_AFH and LMP\_channel\_classification\_req PDU. (See [Figure 3.8](#).)



*Figure 3.8: LM-A starts adaptive frequency hopping.*

**Step 6:** The LM will request if authentication is required. It does this by requesting the Link Key for this connection from the Host. (See [Figure 3.9](#).)



*Figure 3.9: Authentication initiated.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 7a:** If authentication is required by the higher layers and the devices to be connected do not have a common link key, a pairing procedure will be used. The LM will have requested a link key from the host for this connection. If there is a negative reply, then a PIN code will be requested. This PIN code will be requested on both sides of the connection, and authentication performed based on this PIN code. The last step is for the new link key for this connection to be passed to the host so that it may store it for future connections.

(See [Figure 3.10.](#))

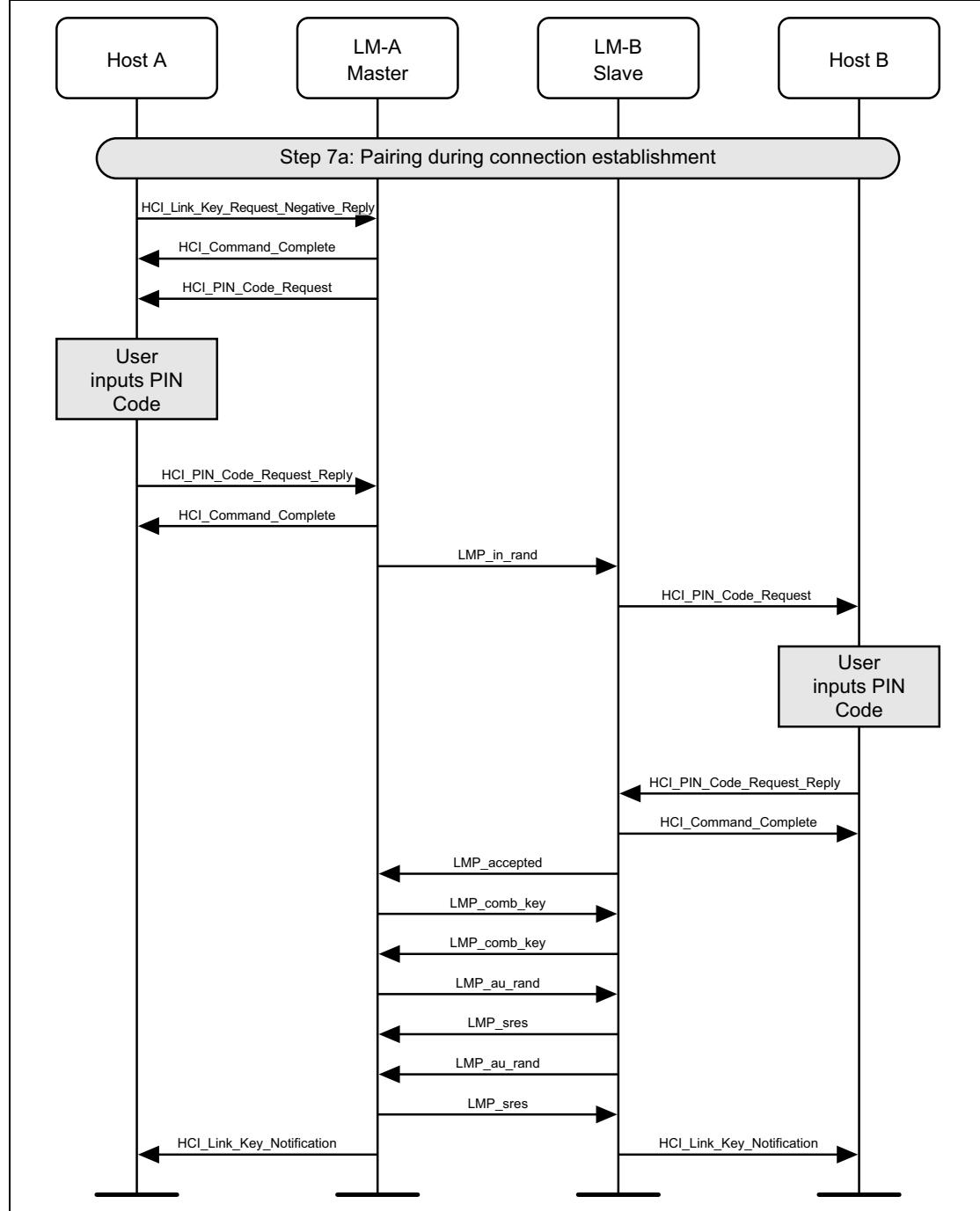


Figure 3.10: Pairing during connection setup.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 7b:** If a common link key exists between the devices, then pairing is not needed. The LM will have asked for a link key from the host for this connection. If this is a positive reply, then the link key is used for authentication. If the configuration parameter Authentication\_Enable is set, then the authentication procedure must be executed. This MSC only shows the case when Authentication\_Enable is set on both sides. (See [Figure 3.11](#).)

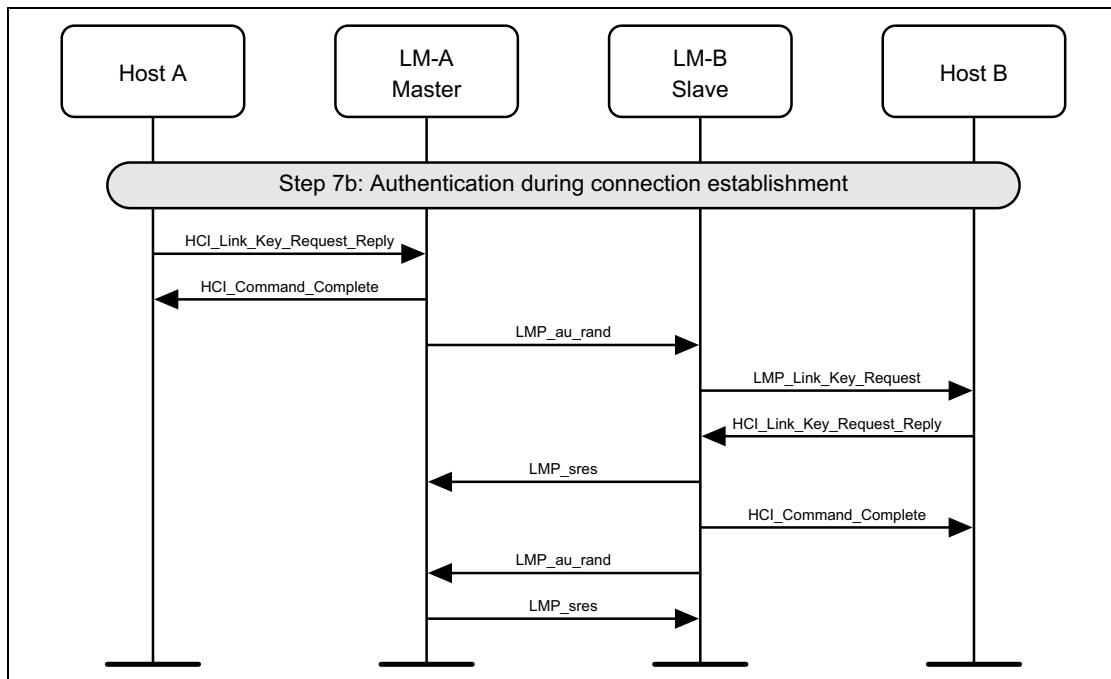
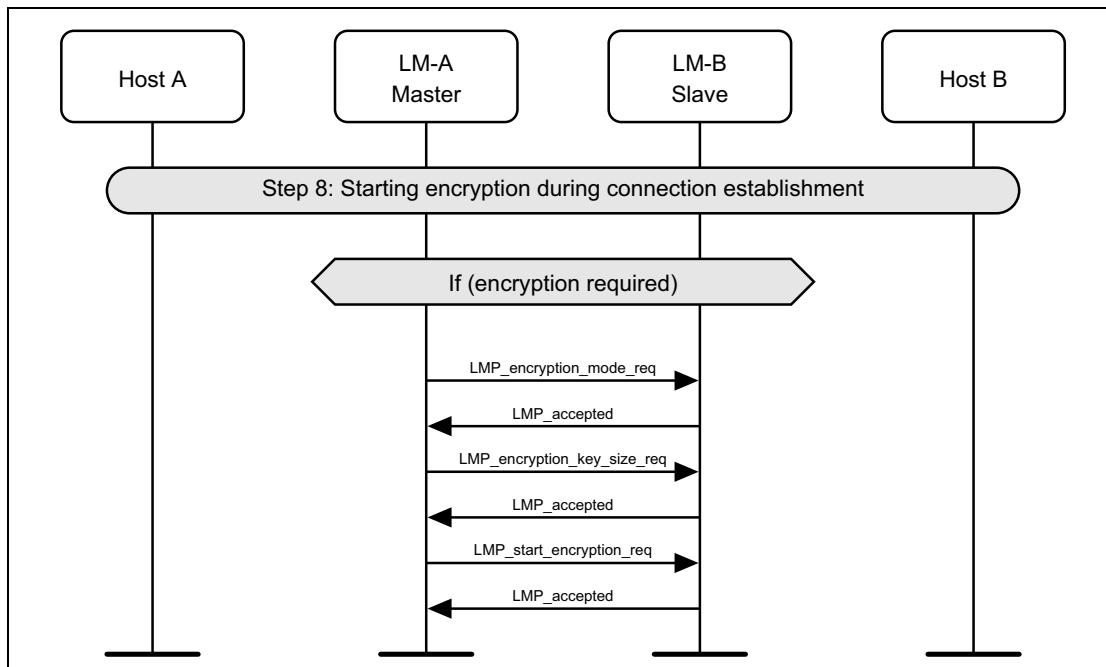


Figure 3.11: Authentication during connection setup.

## Message Sequence Charts

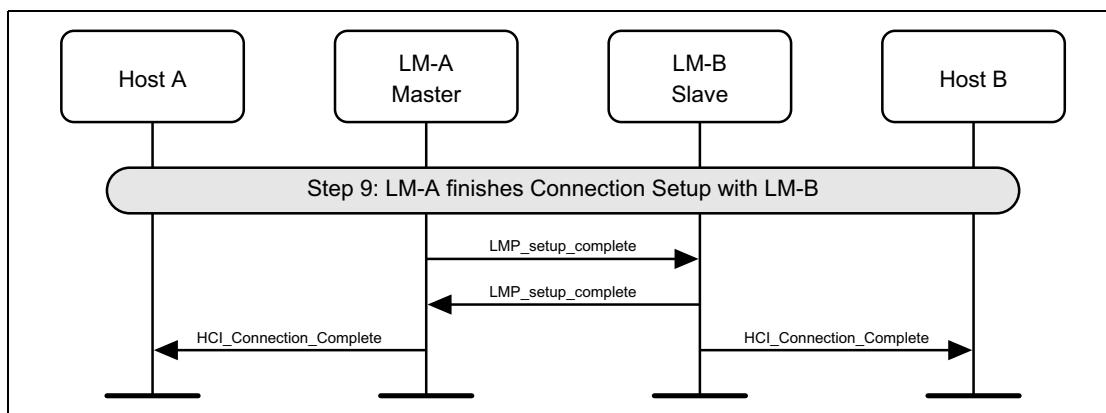


**Step 8:** Once the pairing or authentication procedure is successful, the encryption procedure may be started. This MSC only shows the set up of an encrypted point-to-point connection. (See [Figure 3.12](#).)



*Figure 3.12: Starting encryption during connection setup.*

**Step 9:** The LMs indicate that the connection is setup by sending LMP\_set-up\_complete PDU. This will cause the Host to be notified of the new connection handle, and this connection may be used to send higher layer data such as L2CAP information. (See [Figure 3.13](#).)



*Figure 3.13: LM-A and LM-B finishes connection setup.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 10:** Once the connection is no longer needed, either device may terminate the connection using the HCI\_Disconnect command and LMP\_detach message PDU. The disconnection procedure is one-sided and does not need an explicit acknowledgment from the remote LM. The use of ARQ Acknowledgment from the Baseband is needed to ensure that the remote LM has received the LMP\_detach PDU. (See [Figure 3.14](#).)

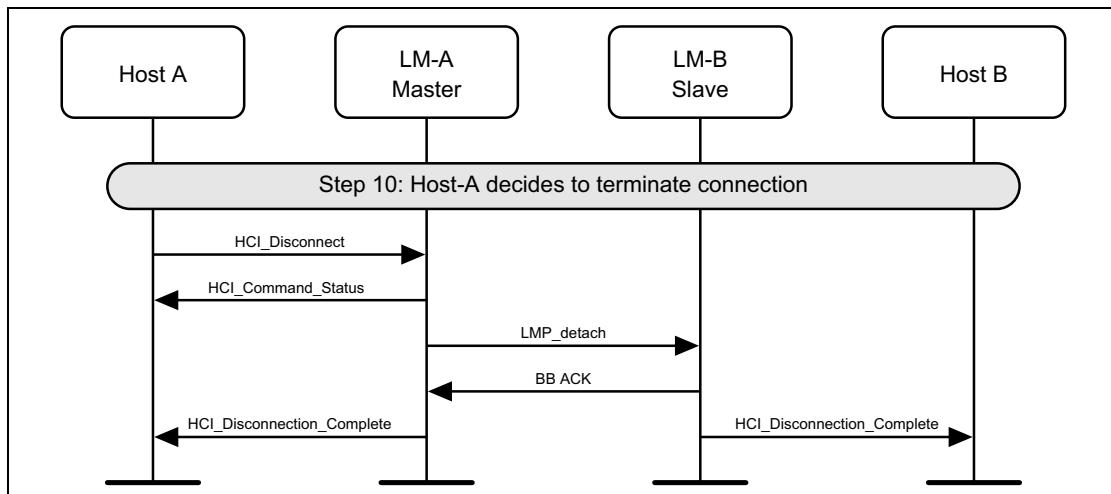


Figure 3.14: Host A decides to disconnect.

## 4 OPTIONAL ACTIVITIES AFTER ACL CONNECTION ESTABLISHMENT

### 4.1 AUTHENTICATION REQUESTED

**Step 1:** Authentication can be explicitly executed at any time after a connection has been established. If no Link Key is available then the Link Key is required from the Host. (See [Figure 4.1.](#))

Note: If the Controller or LM and the Host do not have the Link Key a PIN Code Request event will be sent to the Host to request a PIN Code for pairing. A procedure identical to that used during Connection Setup (Section 3.1, Step 7a:) will be used. (See [Figure 3.10 on page 1050.](#))

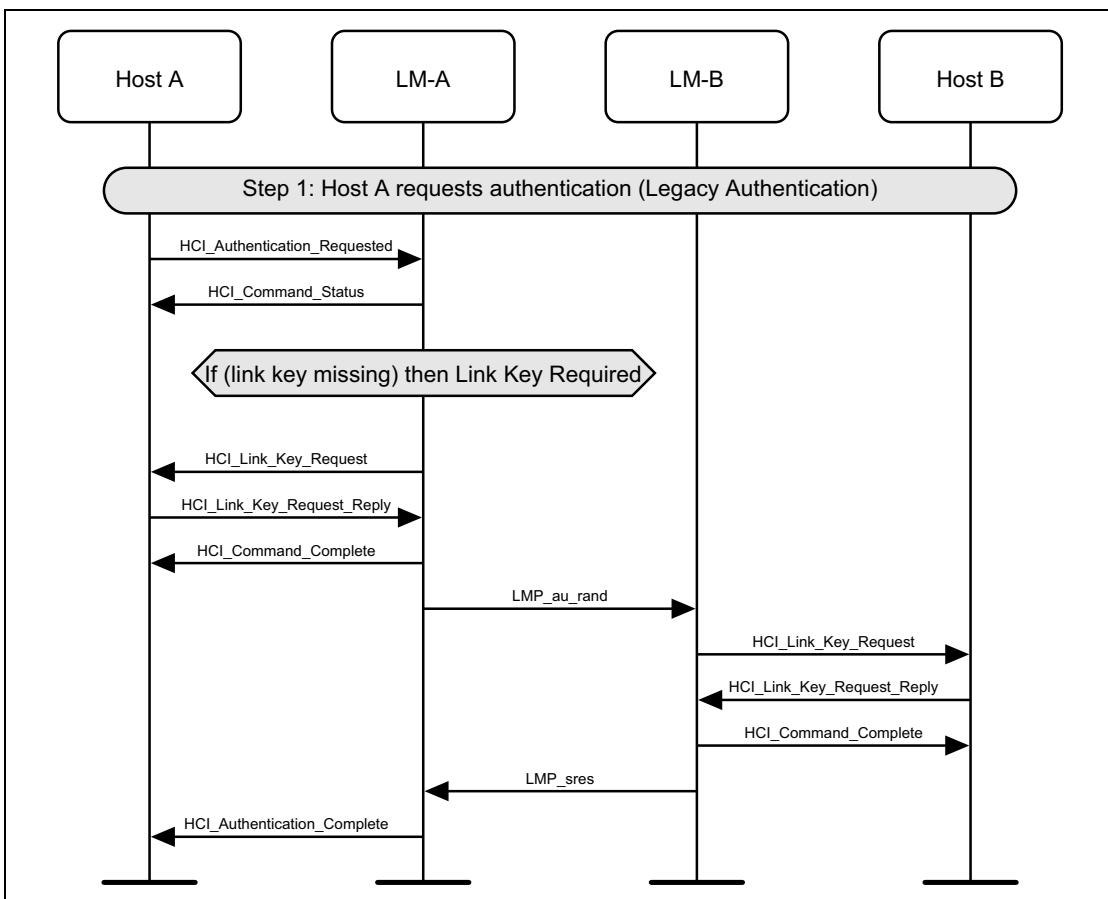


Figure 4.1: Authentication requested (Legacy Authentication).

## Message Sequence Charts



When both devices support Secure Connections, Secure Authentication is used.

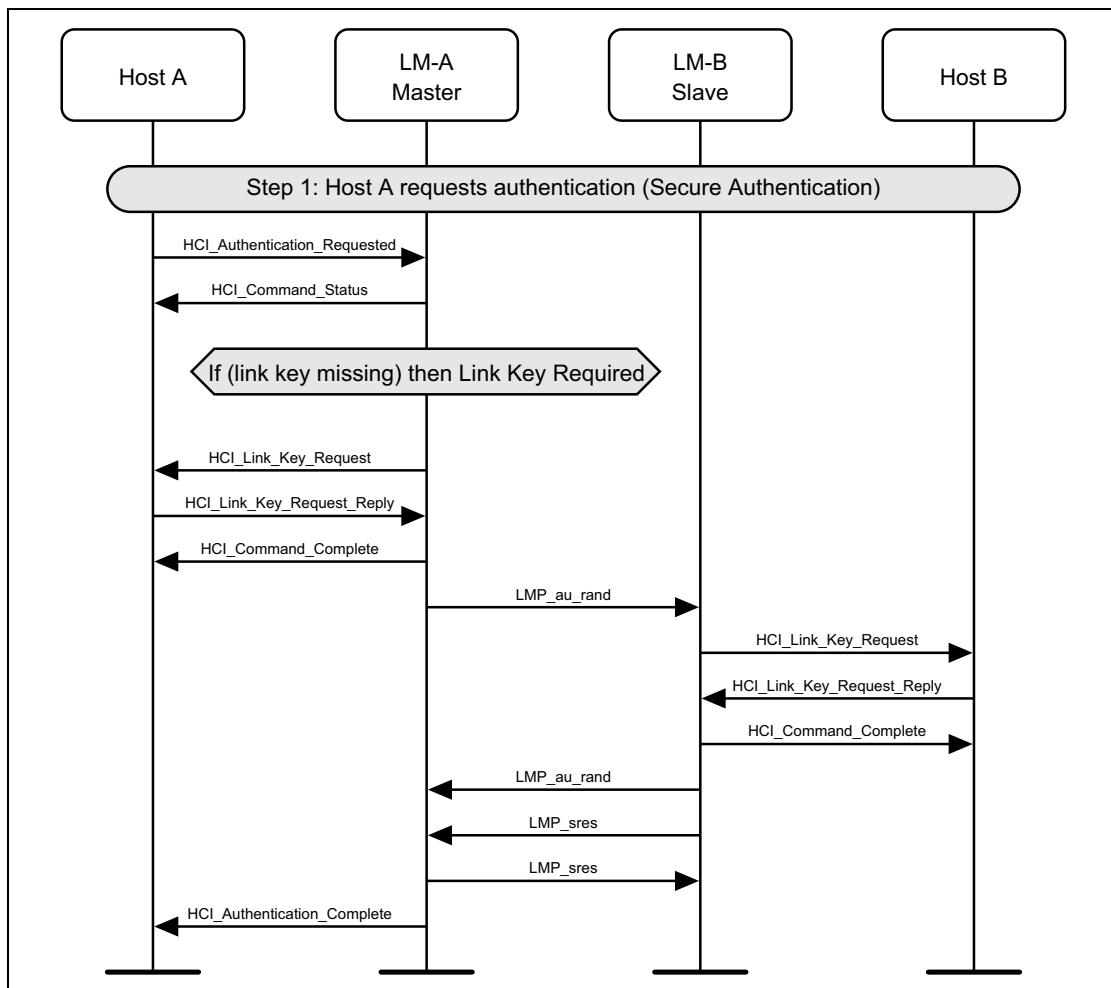
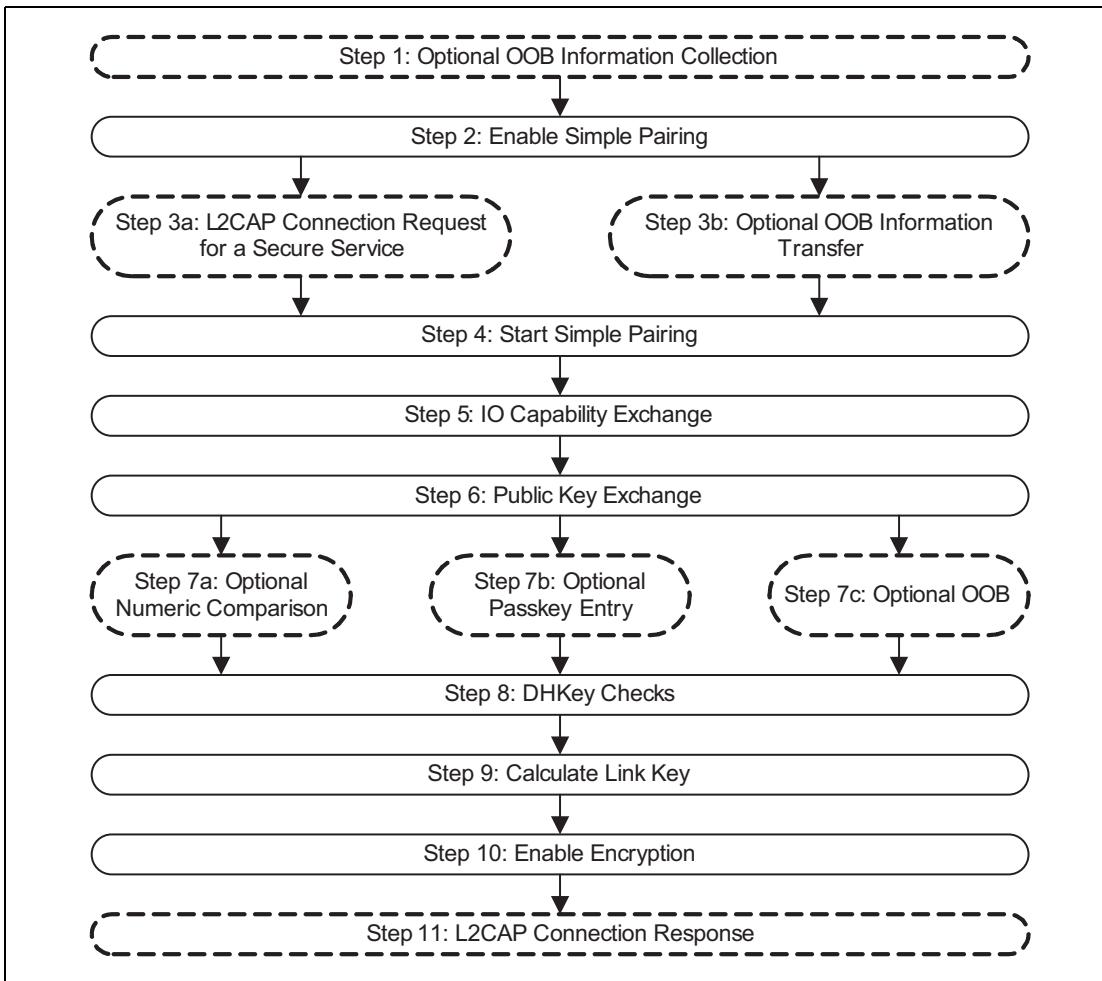


Figure 4.2: Authentication requested (Secure Authentication).

## 4.2 SIMPLE PAIRING MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS

A flow diagram of simple pairing between two devices is shown in [Figure 4.3](#). The process is illustrated in 11 distinct steps. A number of these steps have a number of different options.



*Figure 4.3: Simple pairing, flow diagram.*

#### 4.2.1 Optional OOB Information Collection

If a device supports OOB information exchange, then the Host should request the C and R values from the controller that need to be sent by OOB. It is then assumed that the host transfers this information to the OOB system. Note: This could occur a long time before, for example at the factory for a passive tag.

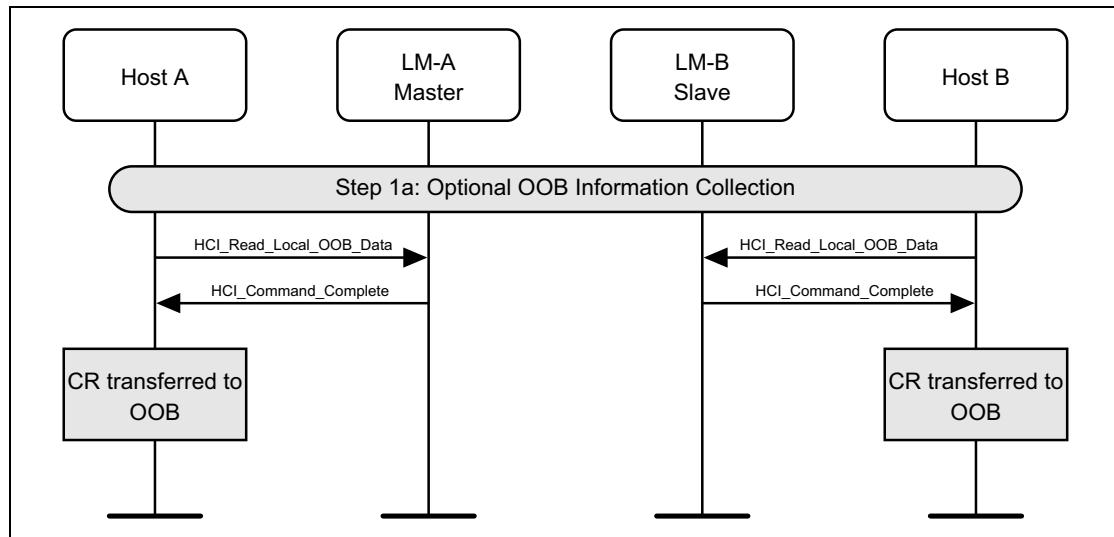


Figure 4.4: Optional OOB information collection (P-192 only).

When the Controller and Host support Secure Connections, the `HCI_Read_Local_OOB_Extended_Data` command is used instead of `HCI_Read_Local_OOB_Data`.

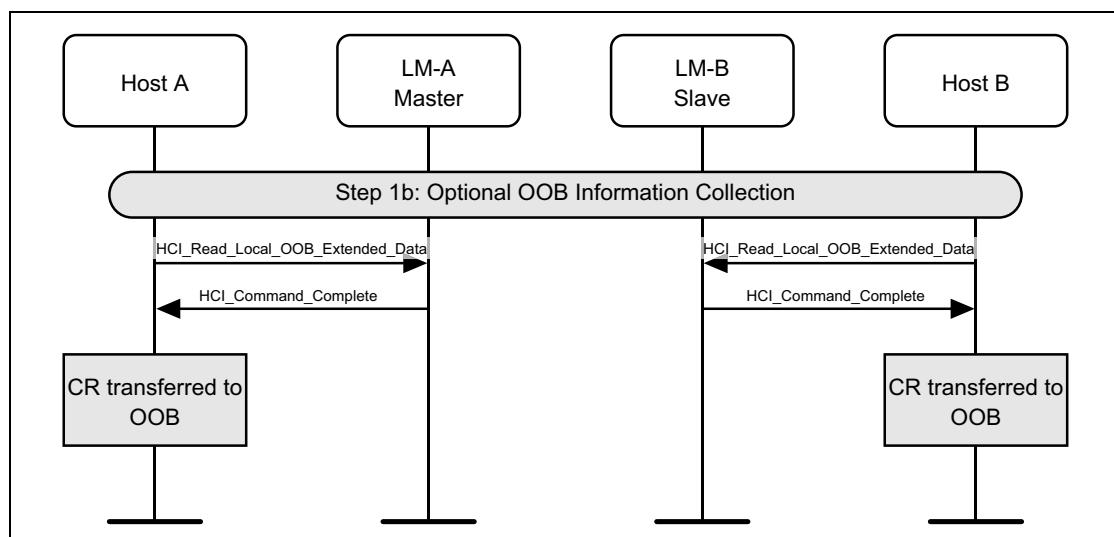
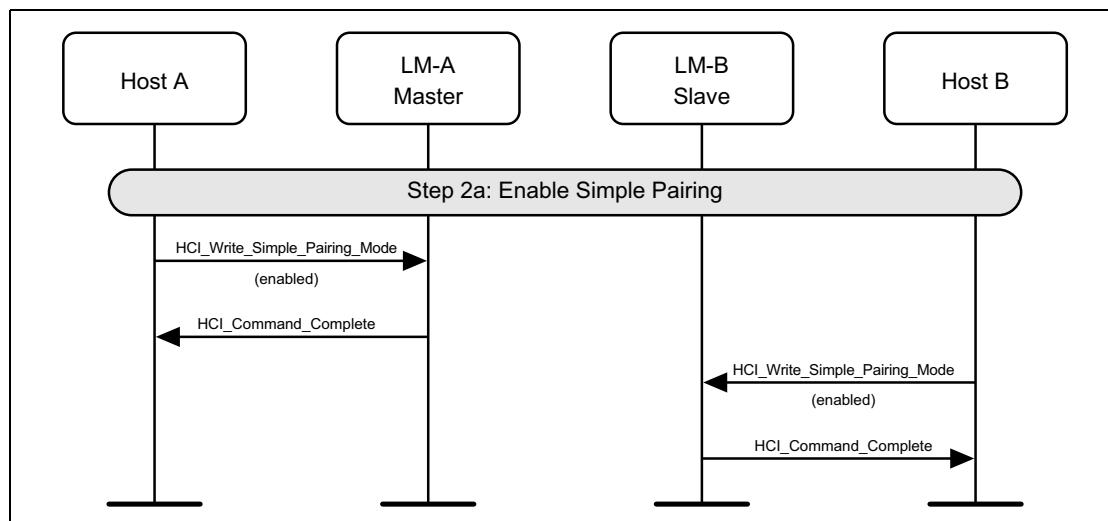


Figure 4.5: Optional OOB information collection (P-192 and P-256).

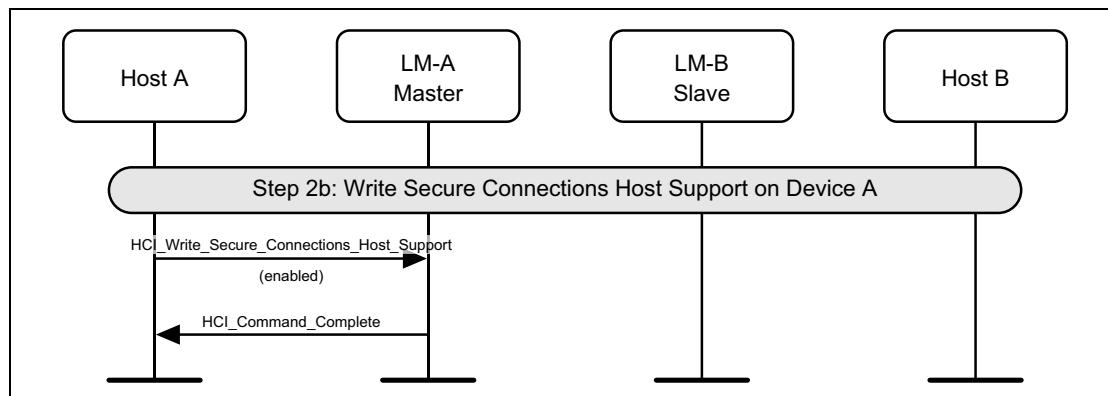
*Message Sequence Charts***4.2.2 Enable Simple Pairing and Secure Connections**

To enable simple pairing, a device must use the Write Simple Pairing Mode command. This should be done before any other connections that may use simple pairing are created.



*Figure 4.6: Enable simple pairing.*

To configure the Controller to use Secure Connections HCI commands and events, a device must use the HCI\_Write\_Secure\_Connections\_Host\_Support command. This should be done before any connections are created.



*Figure 4.7: Enable Secure Connections host support.*

*Message Sequence Charts*

To configure the Controller to enforce a maximum interval between packets containing a MIC (when AES-CCM encryption is used), a device must use the HCI\_Write\_Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout command.

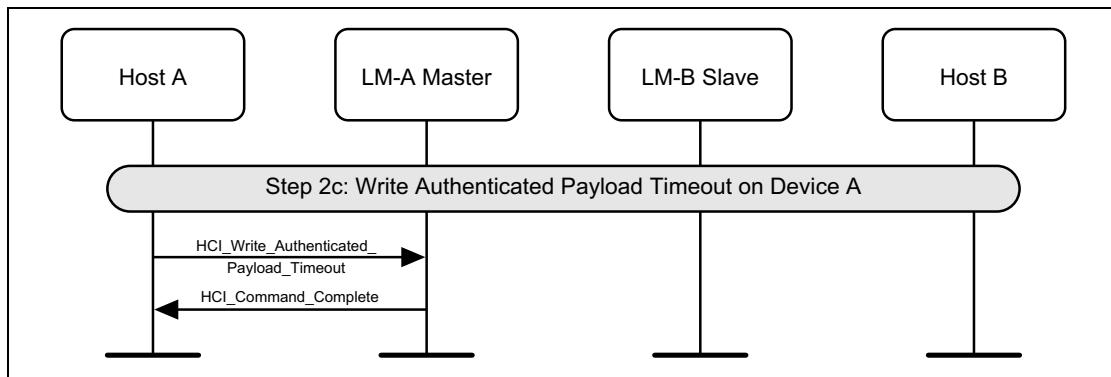


Figure 4.8: Set Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout.

#### 4.2.3 Connection Establishment

Simple pairing, once it is enabled, is triggered by one of two possible actions. It could be triggered by an L2CAP connection request to a service that requires security, or it could be triggered by an OOB transfer of information.

#### 4.2.4 L2CAP Connection Request for a Secure Service

Once a connection has been established between two devices, if a device requests an L2CAP connection to a service that requires authentication and encryption, then the device will start simple pairing.

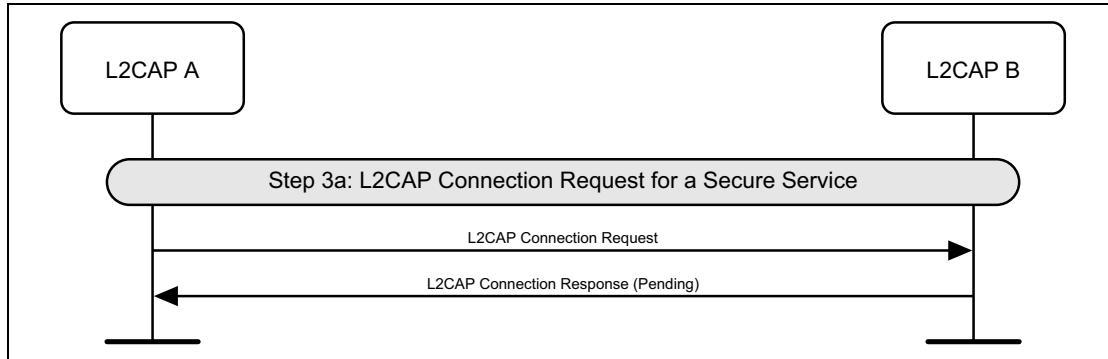


Figure 4.9: L2CAP connection request for a secure service.

#### 4.2.5 Optional OOB Information Transfer

Even if a Bluetooth connection has not been established between two devices, an OOB transfer can occur that transfers the Bluetooth Device Address of the device, and other OOB information for authentication. If an OOB transfer occurs, then the host can start simple pairing.

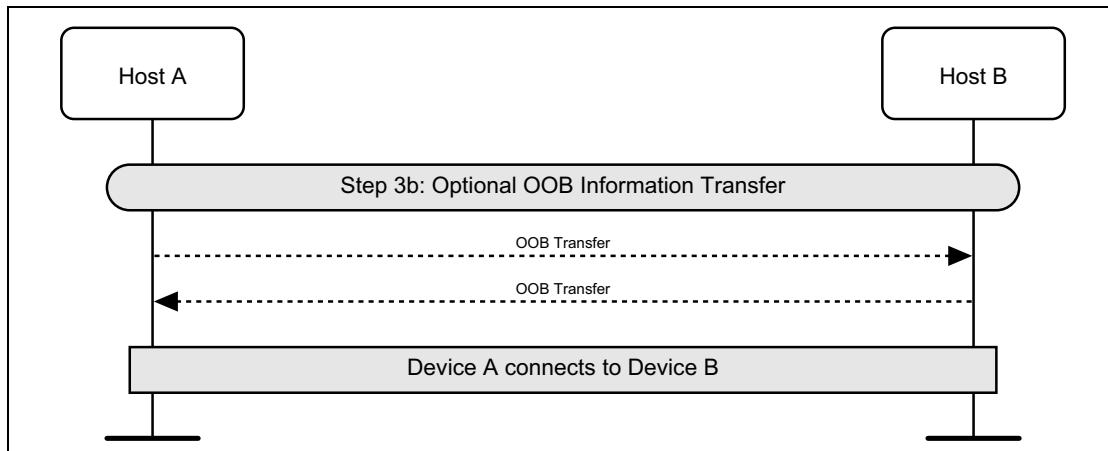


Figure 4.10: Optional OOB information transfer.

#### 4.2.6 Start Simple Pairing

Once the host has determined that simple pairing should start, it issues an Authentication Requested command to the controller. This will cause the controller to generate a request for a link key. If the host has a link key for this connection, then pairing is not required, and the link key can be used immediately once it has been authenticated. Simple Pairing will only be used if a Link\_Key\_Request\_Negative\_Reply Command is sent from the Host to the Controller on the initiating side.

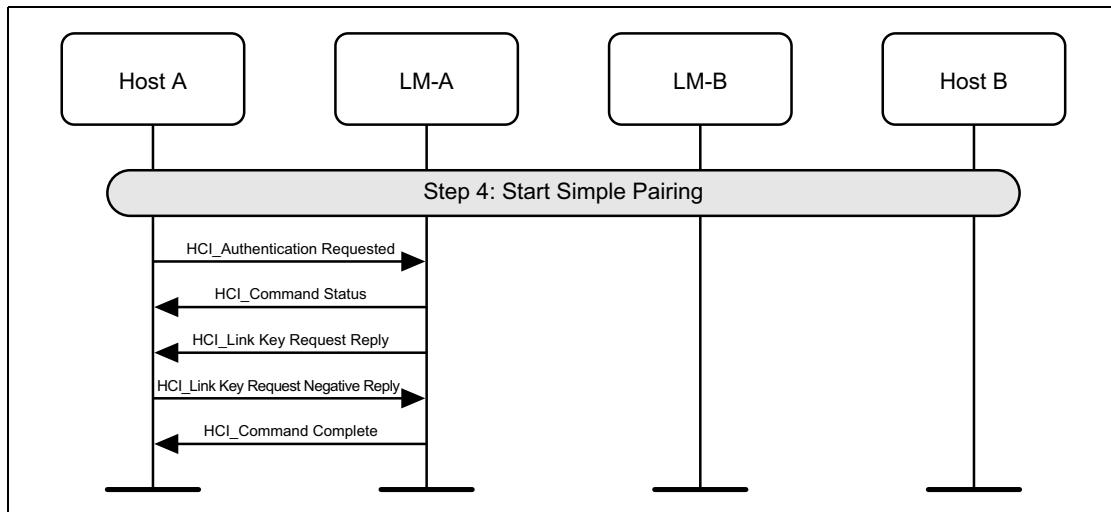


Figure 4.11: Start simple pairing.

#### 4.2.7 IO Capability Exchange

To be able to determine the correct authentication algorithm to use, the input / output capabilities of the two devices are exchanged.

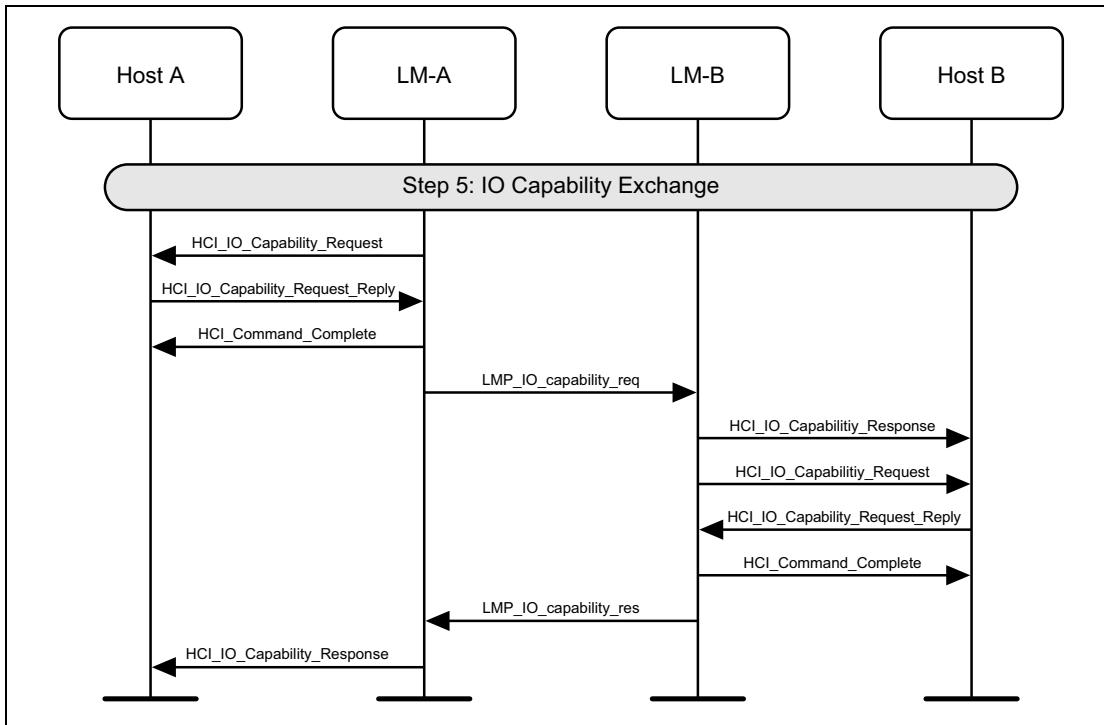


Figure 4.12: IO capability exchange.

#### 4.2.8 Public Key Exchange

Next the public keys are exchanged between the two devices. Once a device has received the public key of the peer device, it can start to calculate the Diffie Hellman Key (DHKey). This may take a long time, and should be started early, so that user interaction can hide the calculation time. The DHKey is not required until step 8.

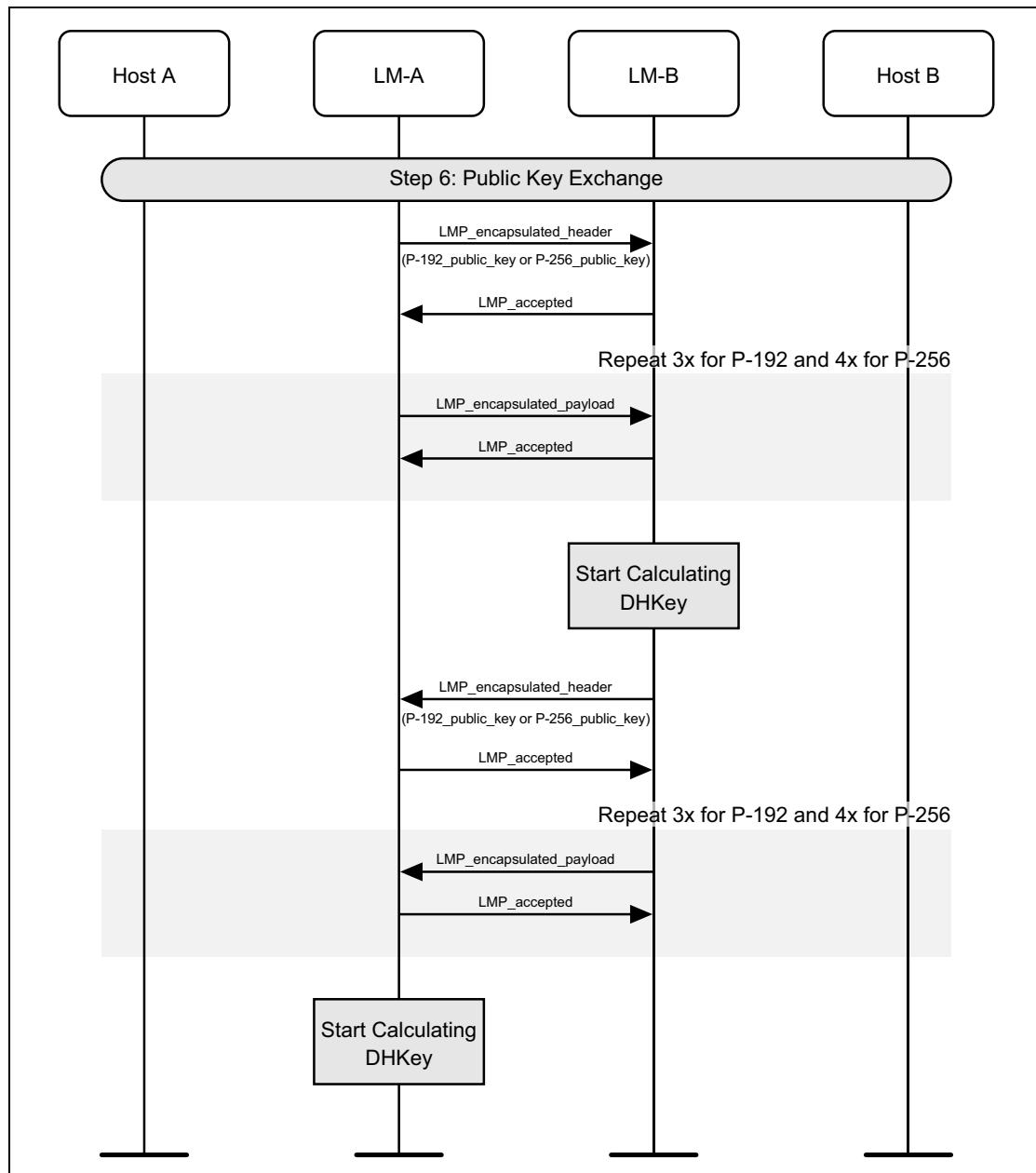


Figure 4.13: Public key exchange.

#### 4.2.9 Authentication

A device can be authenticated by using one of three algorithms. The choice of algorithm is determined by the combination of the IO capabilities of the two devices.

#### 4.2.10 Numeric Comparison

The numeric comparison step will be done when both devices have output capabilities, or if one of the devices has no input or output capabilities. If both devices have output capabilities, this step requires the displaying of a user confirmation value. This value should be displayed until the end of step 8. If one or both devices do not have output capabilities, the same protocol is used but the Hosts will skip the step asking for the user confirmation.

Note: The sequence for Just Works is identical to that of Numeric Comparison with the exception that the Host will not show the numbers to the user.

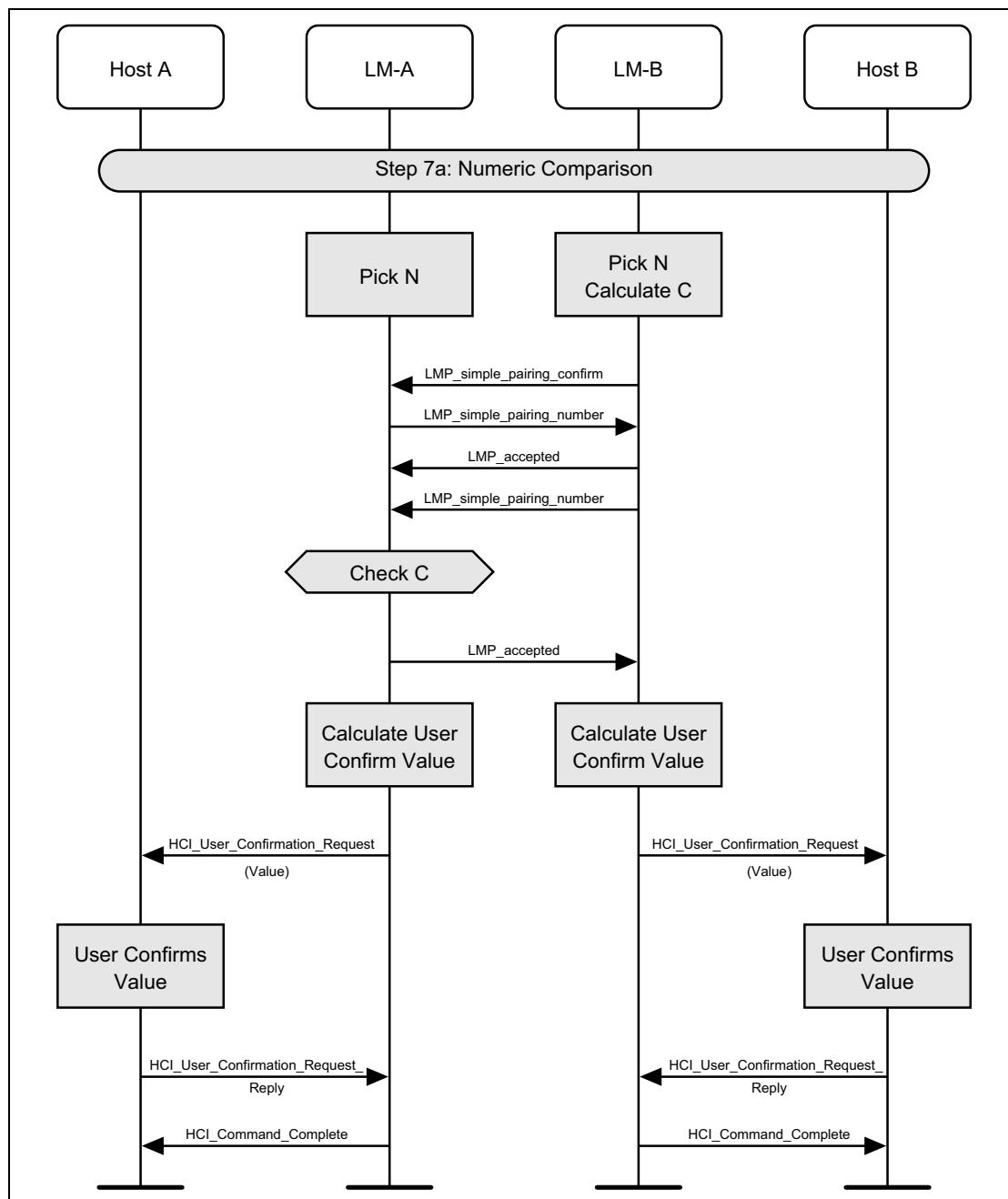


Figure 4.14: Numeric comparison authentication.

#### 4.2.11 Numeric Comparison Failure on Initiating Side

If the numeric comparison fails on the initiating side due to the user indicating that the confirmation values do not match, Simple Pairing is terminated.

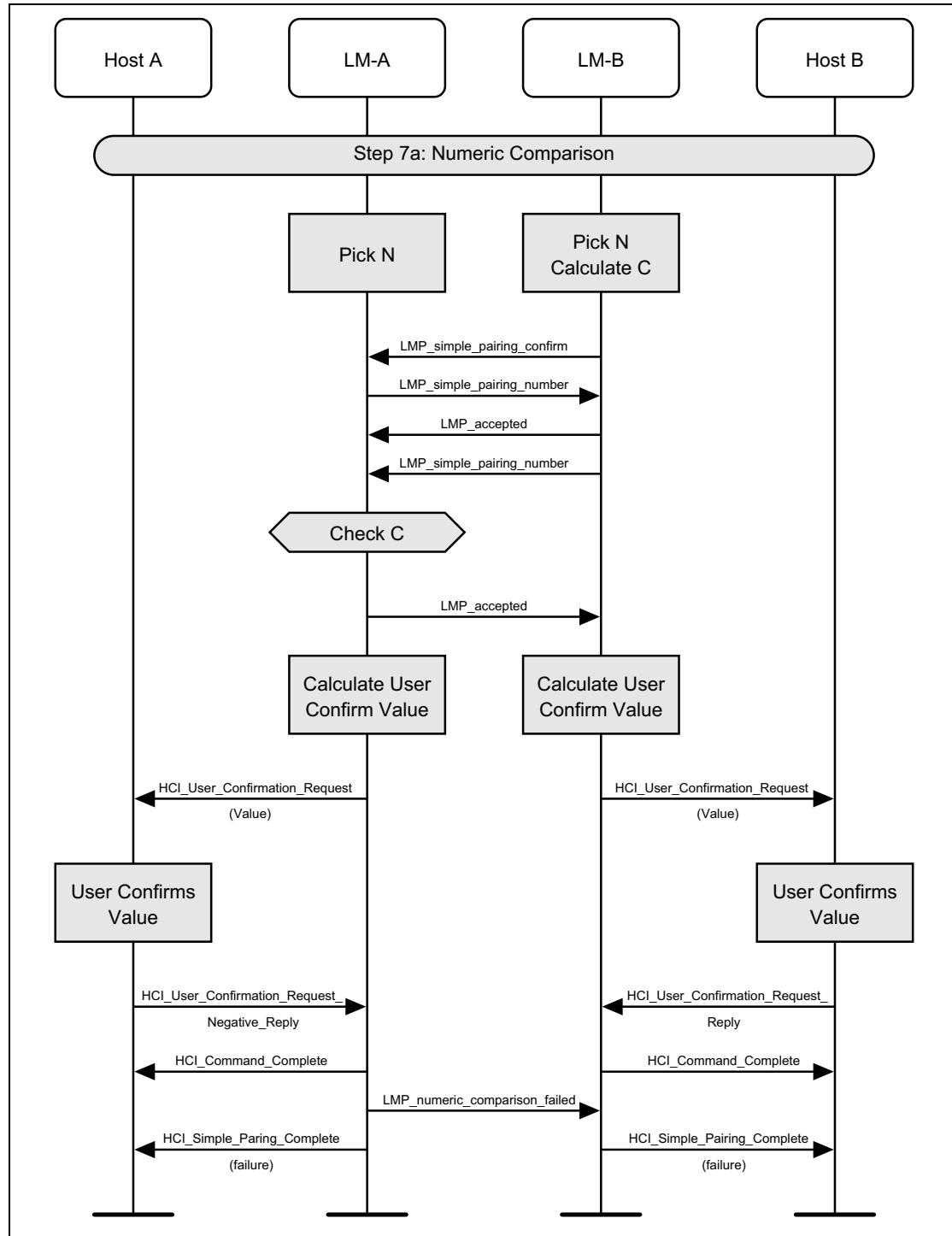


Figure 4.15: Numeric comparison authentication (failure on initiating side).

#### 4.2.12 Numeric Comparison Failure on Responding Side

If the numeric comparison fails on the responding side due to the user indicating that the confirmation values do not match, Simple Pairing is terminated.

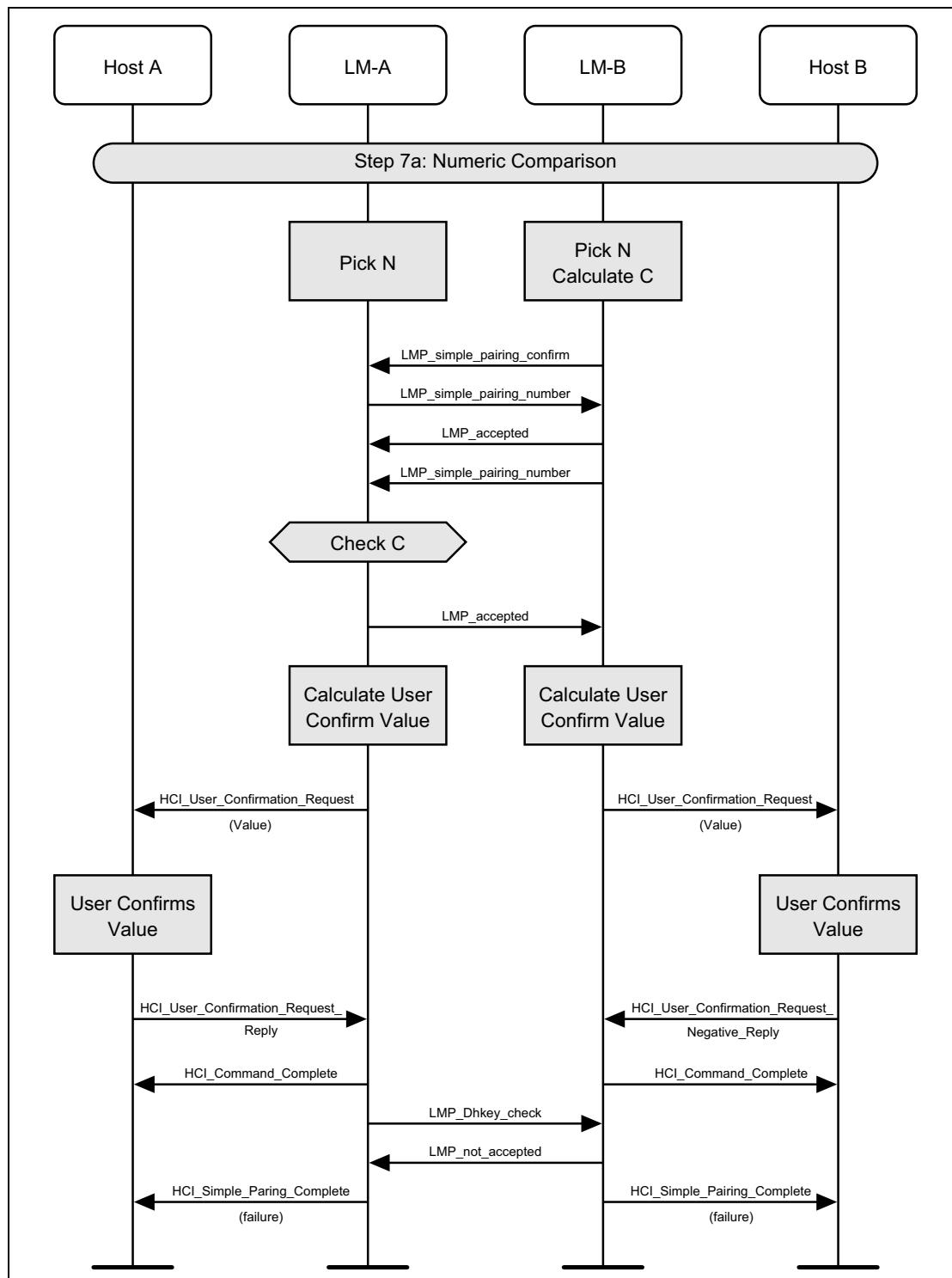


Figure 4.16: Numeric comparison failure on responding side.

### 4.2.13 Passkey Entry

The Passkey entry step is used in two cases: when one device has numeric input only and the other device has either a display or numeric input capability or when both devices only have numeric input capability. In this step, one device display a number to be entered by the other device or the user enters a number on both devices. This number should be displayed until the end of step 8. Key press notification messages are shown during the user input phase.

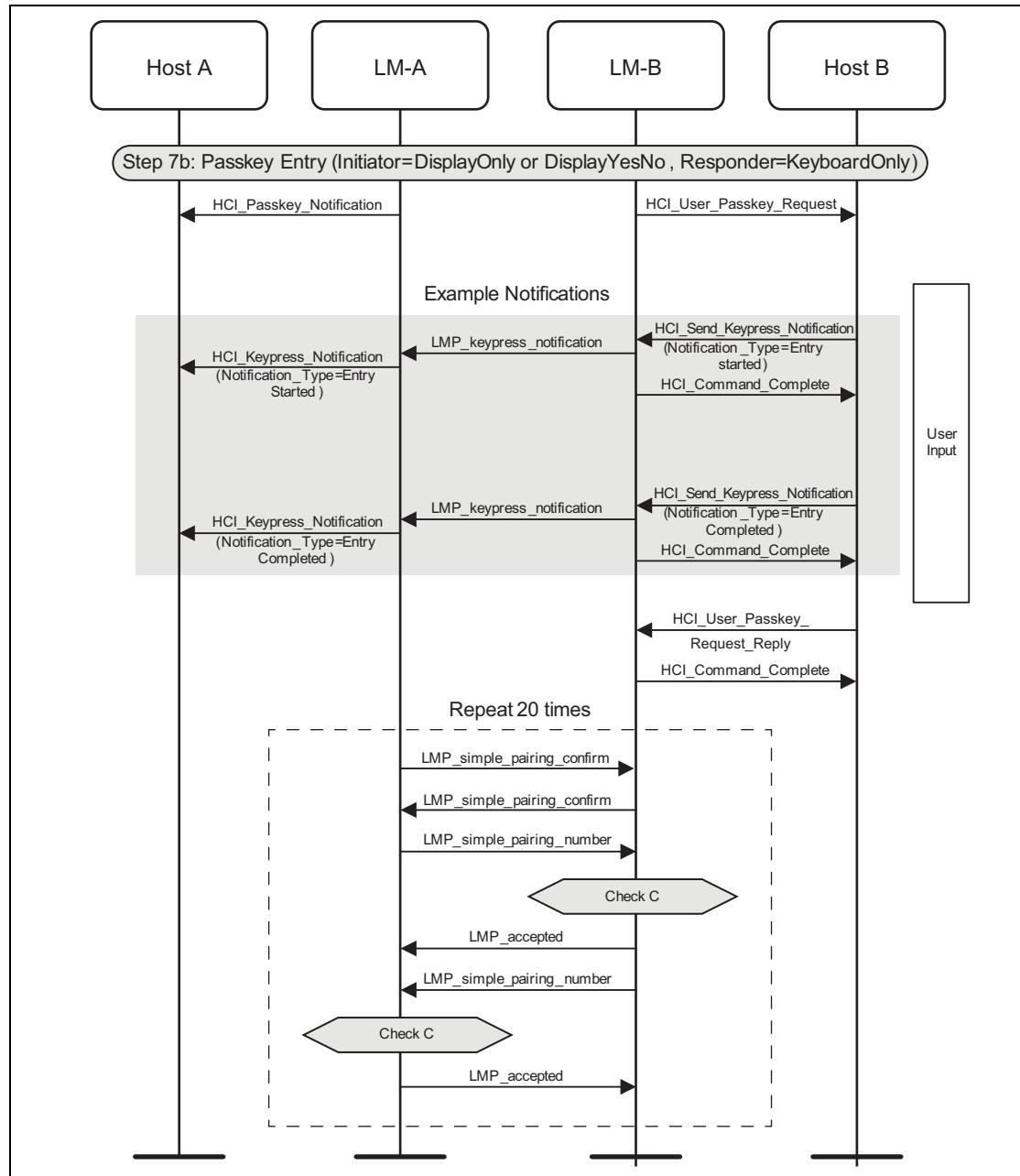


Figure 4.17: Passkey entry authentication.

#### 4.2.14 Passkey Entry Failure on Responding Side

If the passkey entry fails on the responding side, Simple Pairing is terminated.

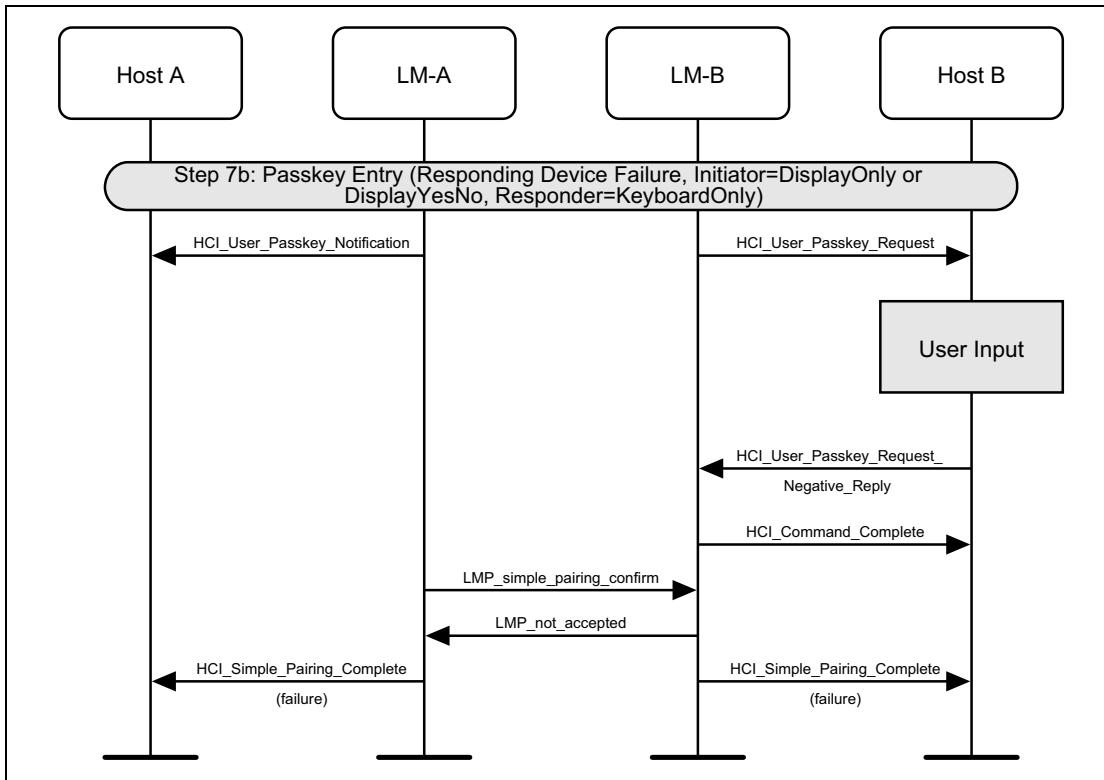


Figure 4.18: Passkey entry failure on responding side.

#### 4.2.15 Passkey Entry Failure on Initiator Side

If the passkey entry fails on the initiating side, Simple Pairing is terminated. Note that this is only possible if the initiating LM side sends an HCI User Passkey Request event.

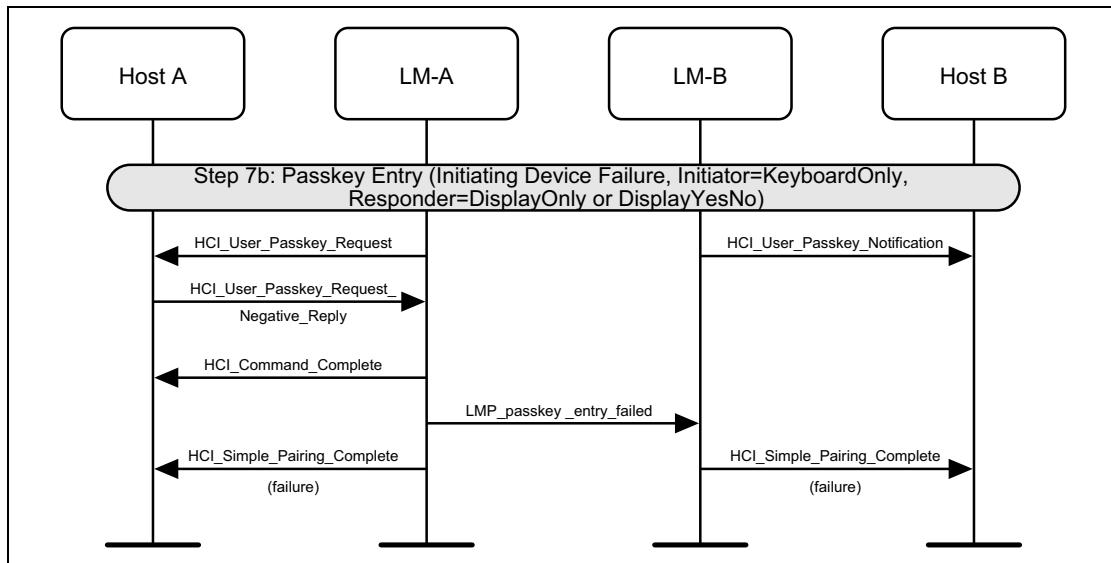


Figure 4.19: Passkey entry failure on initiating side.

#### 4.2.16 Out of Band

The OOB authentication will only be done when both devices have some OOB information to use. This step requires no user interaction.

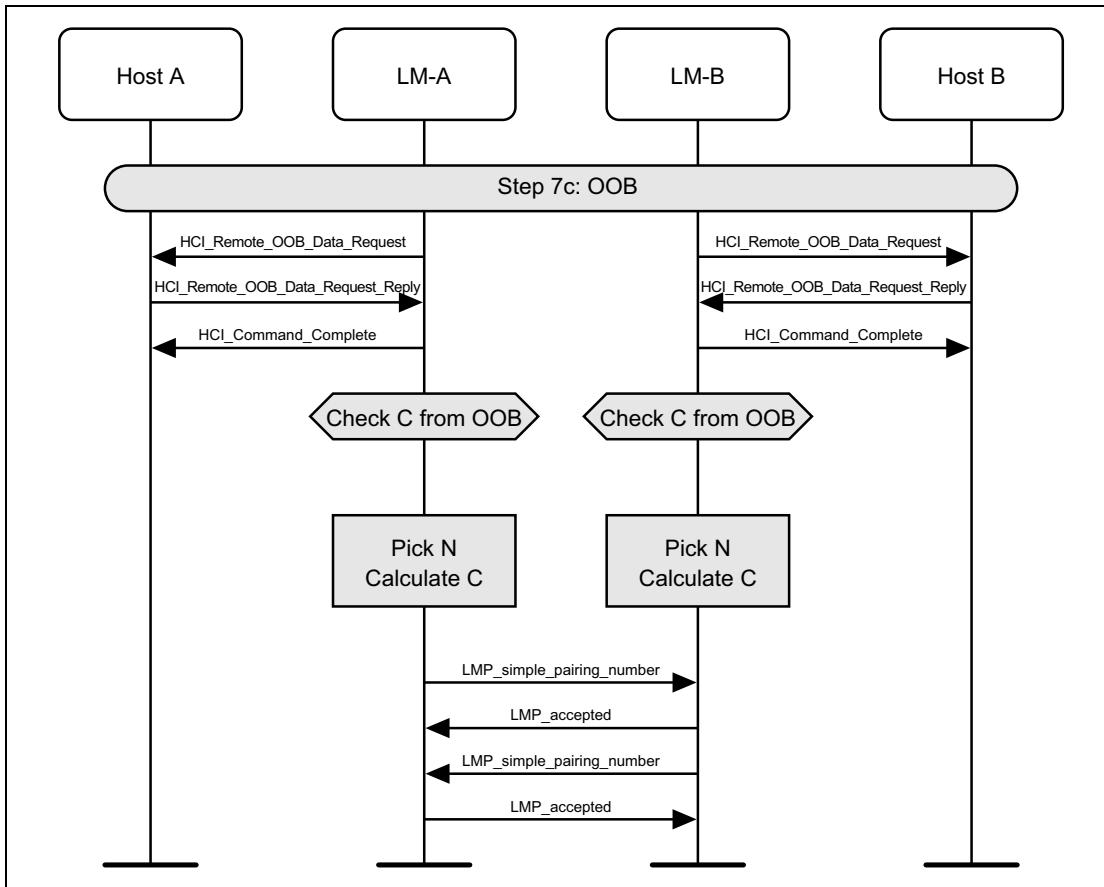


Figure 4.20: OOB authentication (P-192).

## Message Sequence Charts

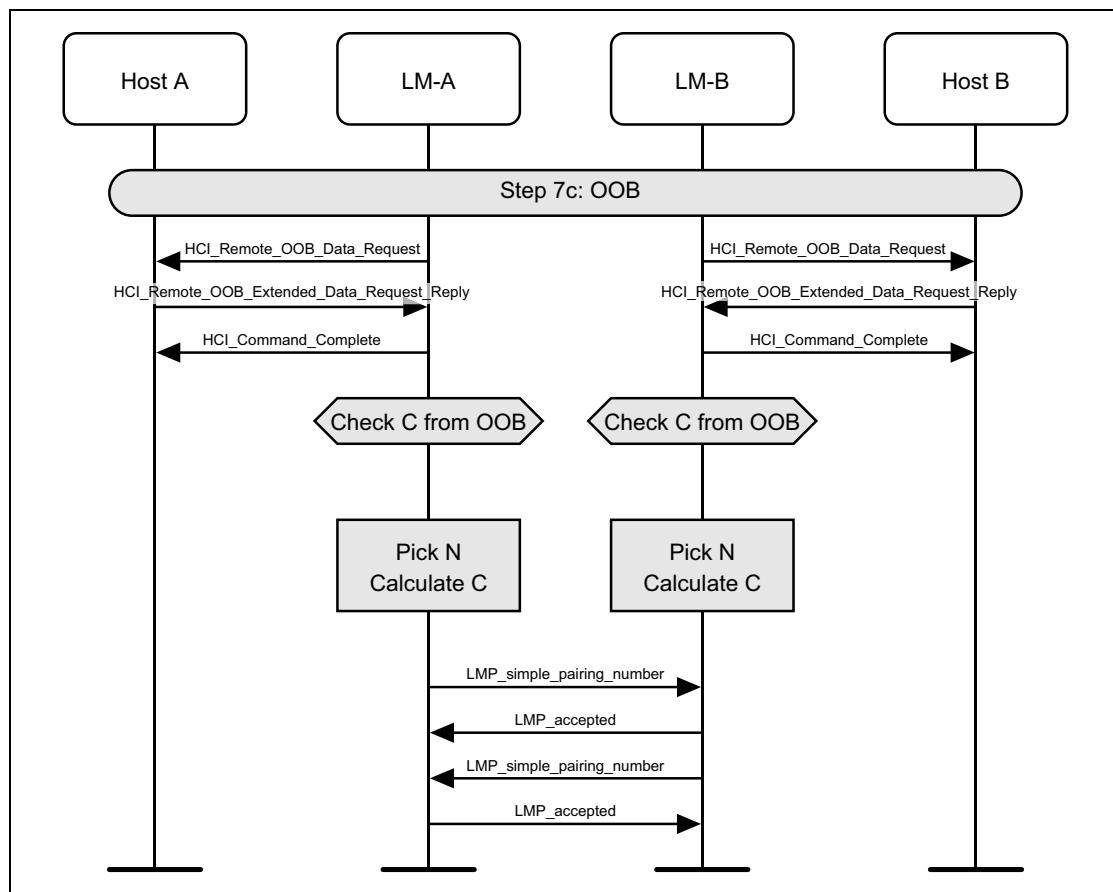


Figure 4.21: OOB authentication (P-256).

#### 4.2.17 OOB Failure on Initiator Side

If the initiating side does not have OOB information, Simple Pairing is terminated.

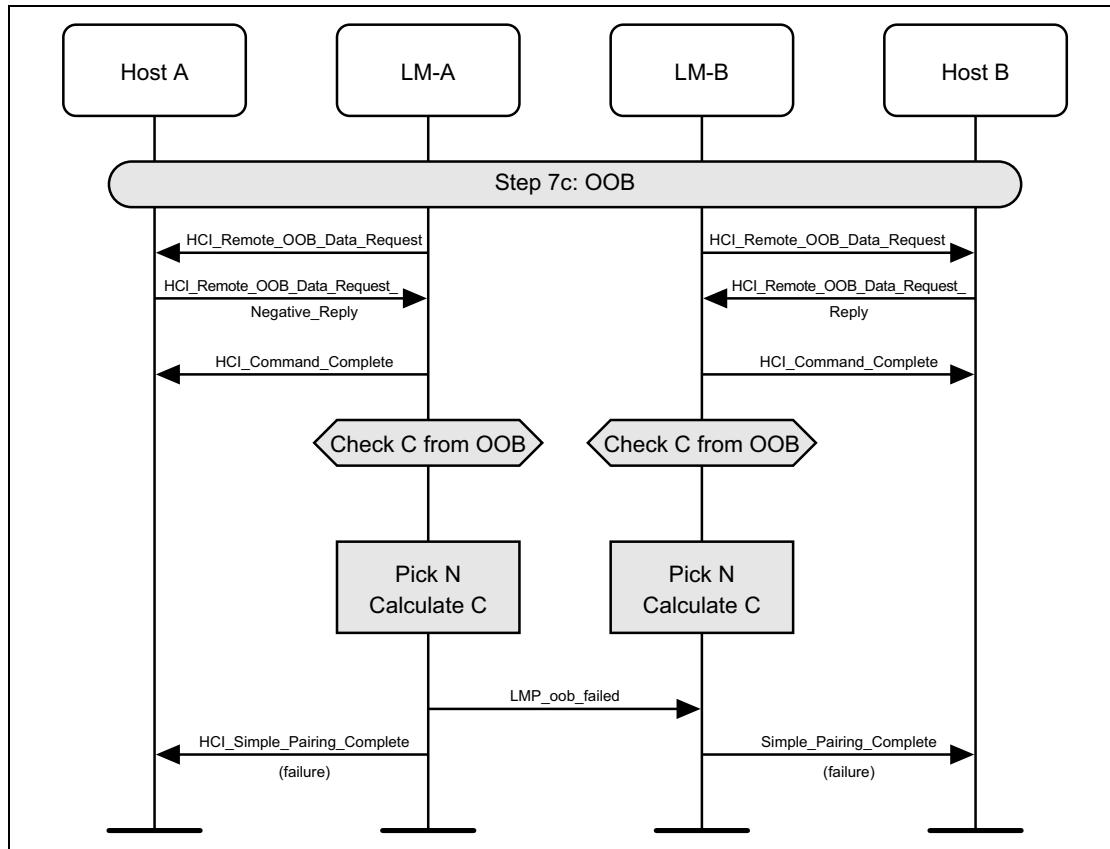


Figure 4.22: OOB authentication failure on initiating side.

#### 4.2.18 DHKey Checks

Once the devices have been authenticated, and the DHKey calculation has completed, the DHKey value generated is checked. If this succeeds, then both devices would have finished displaying information to the user about the process, and therefore a message is sent from the controller to the host to notify it to stop displaying this information.

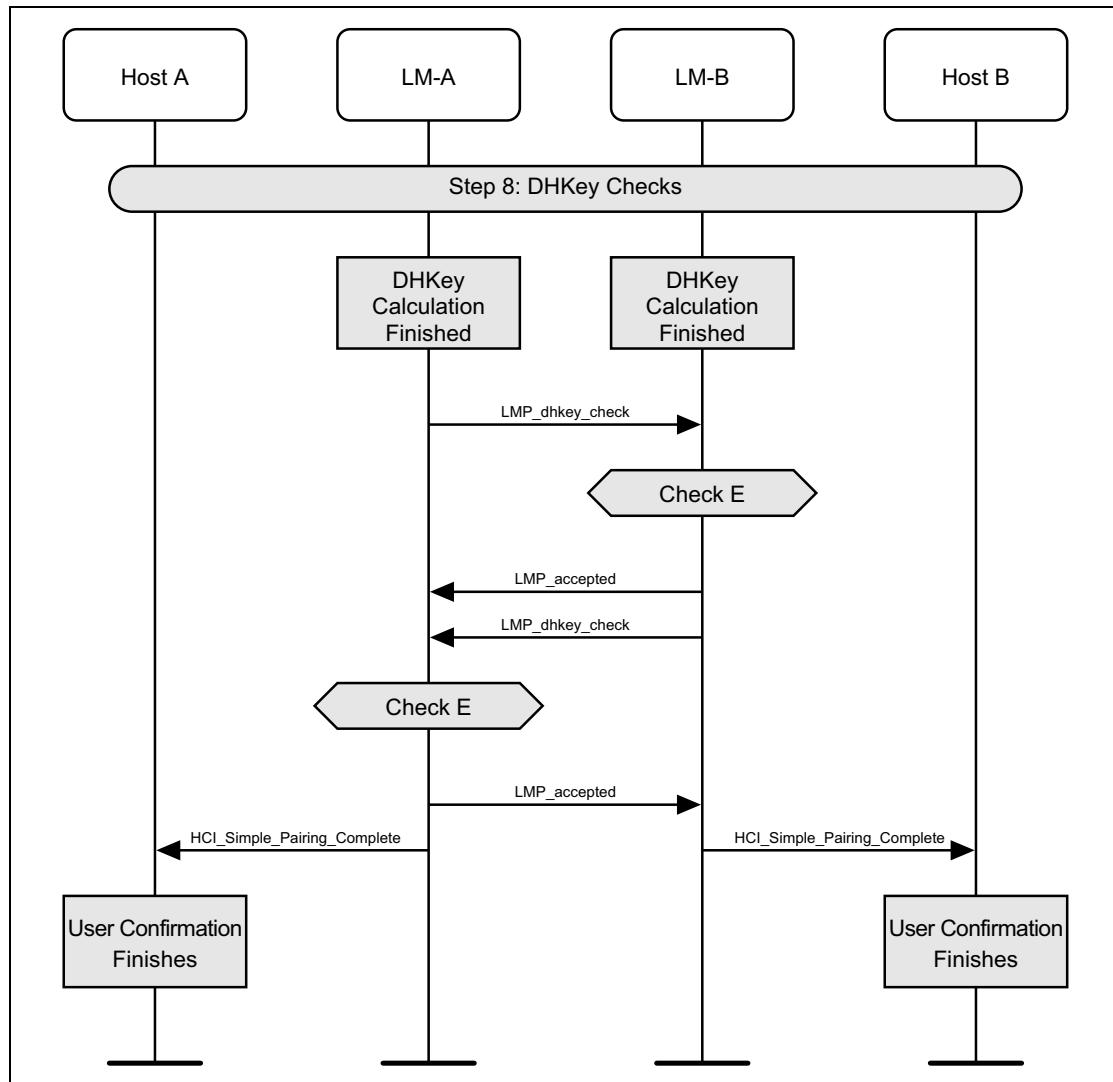


Figure 4.23: DHKey checks.

#### 4.2.19 Calculate Link Key

Once simple pairing is complete, the link key can be calculated from the DHKey, and this should be used as input to a standard mutual authentication. Once this is complete, a Link Key Notification event will be generated.

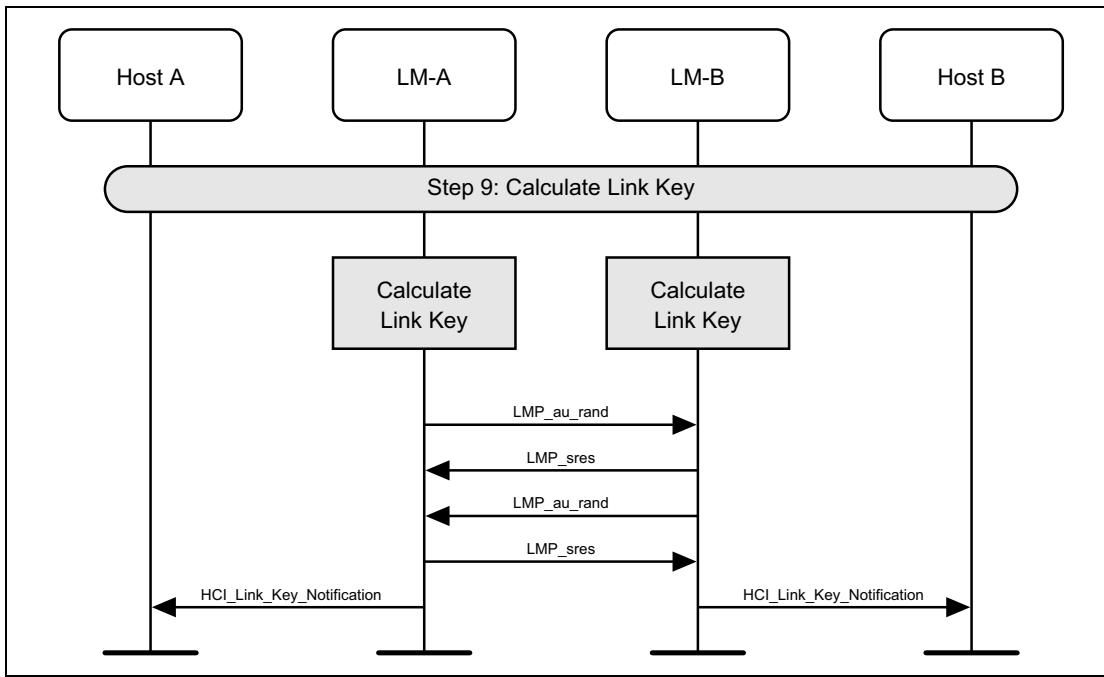


Figure 4.24: Calculate link key.

## Message Sequence Charts

**4.2.20 Enable Encryption**

Once the link key has been notified to the host, the Authentication Requested command will complete with an Authentication Complete event. The host can then turn on encryption using the standard methods.

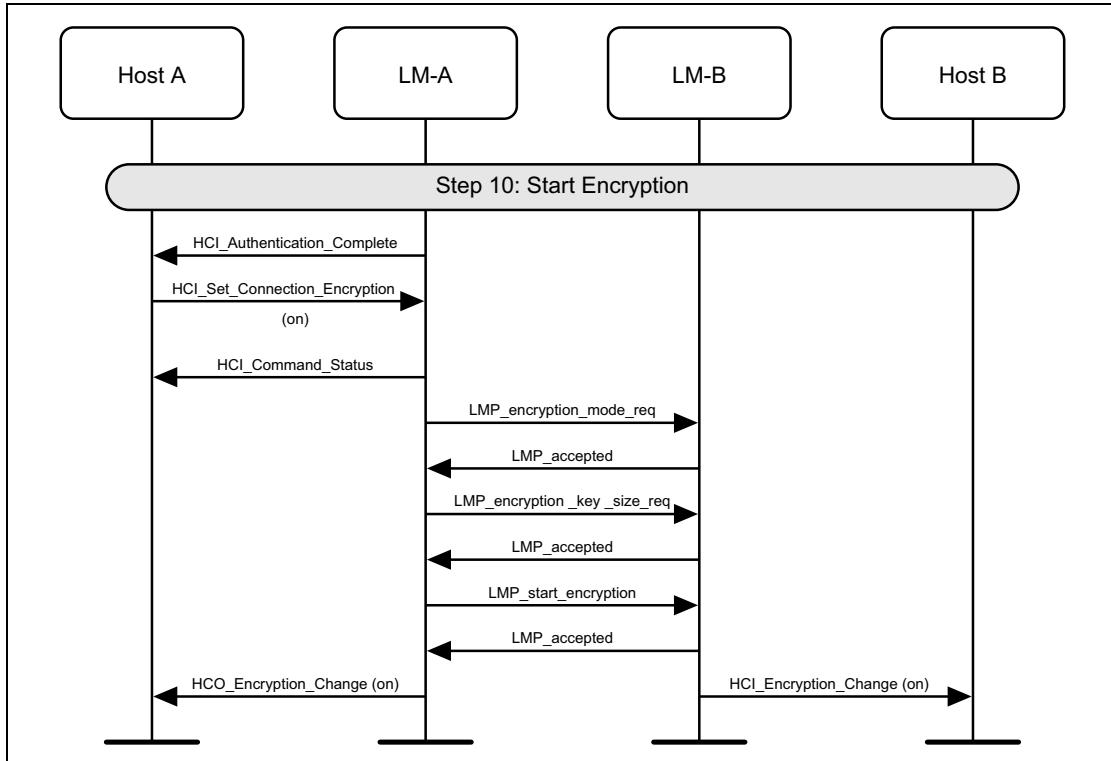


Figure 4.25: Start encryption.

**4.2.21 L2CAP Connection Response**

If this simple pairing was triggered by an L2CAP Connection Request, then only after all of the above steps have completed can the L2CAP Connection Response message be sent.

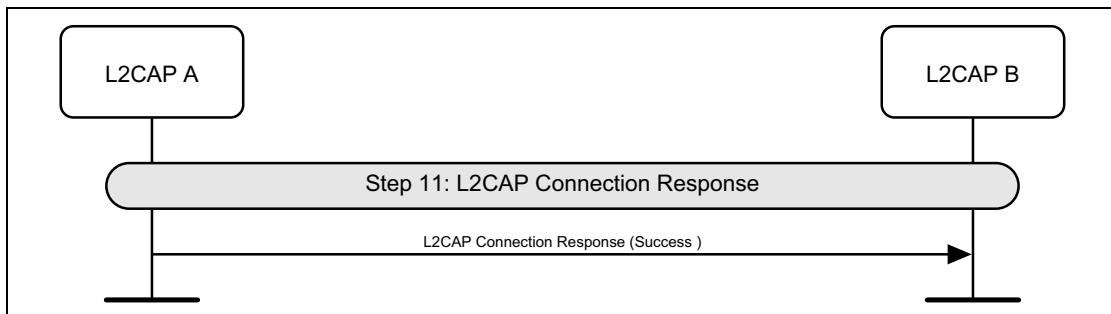


Figure 4.26: L2CAP connection response.

#### 4.2.22 LMP Ping

When the Authenticated Payload Timeout has nearly expired, the Link Manager will force the remote device to send a packet containing a MIC by sending the LMP\_ping\_req PDU.

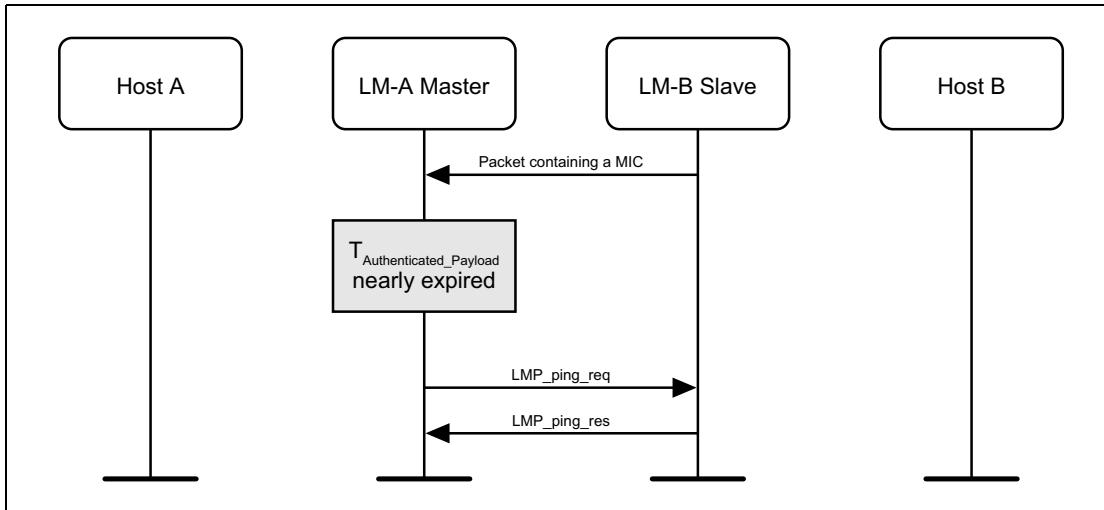


Figure 4.27: Successful Ping.

## Message Sequence Charts



When a packet with a MIC has not been received within the Authenticated Payload Timeout, the Host is notified that the timer has expired.

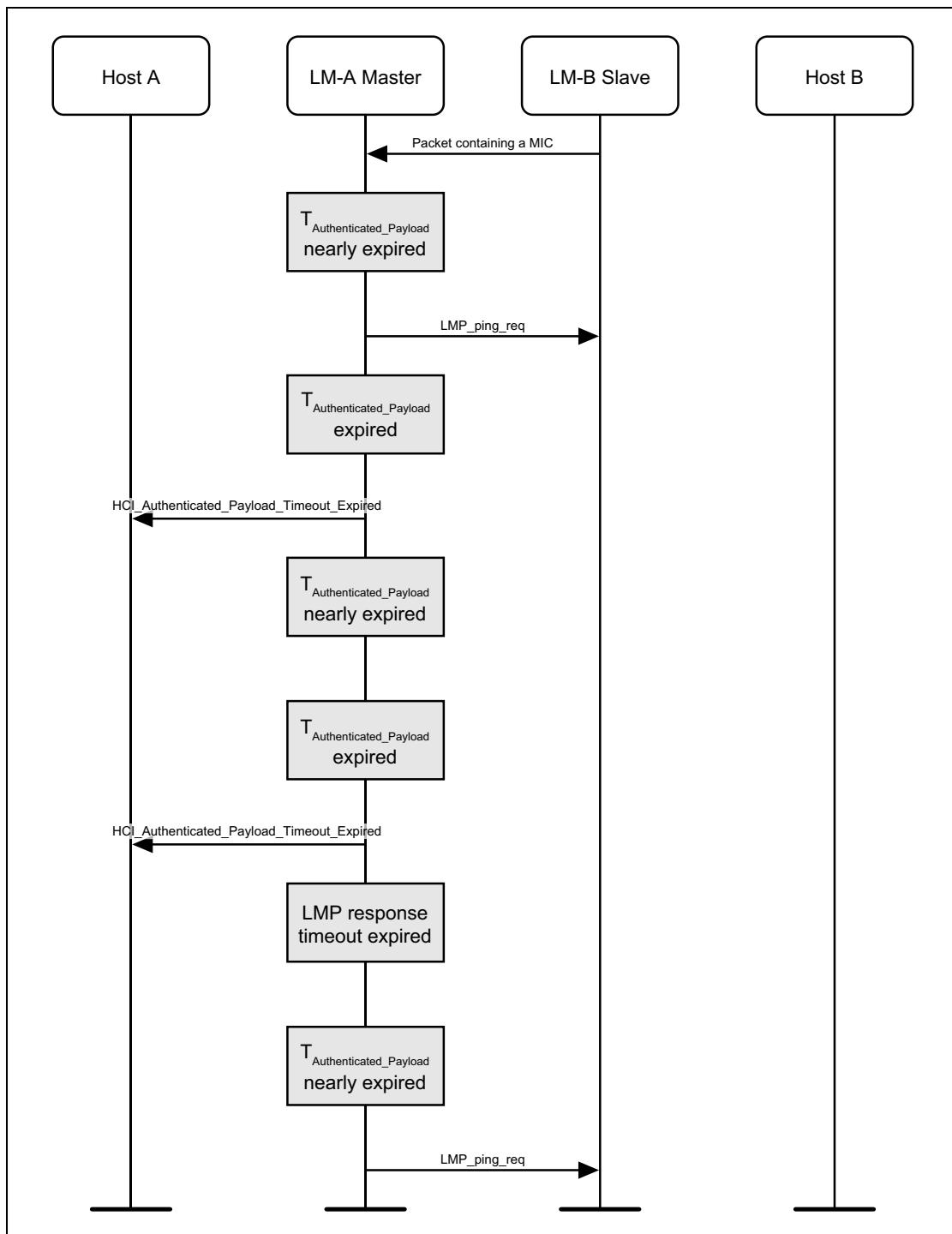


Figure 4.28: Unsuccessful Ping.

### 4.3 LINK SUPERVISION TIMEOUT CHANGED EVENT

When enabled by the Host, the slave generates an HCI\_Link\_Supervision\_Timeout\_Changed event after the LMP\_supervision\_timeout PDU is received.

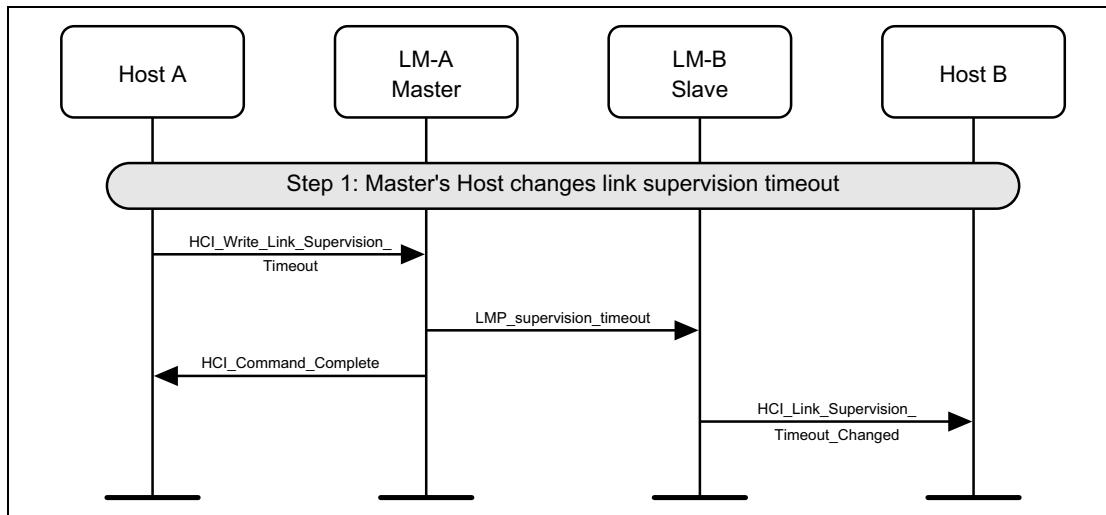


Figure 4.29: Link supervision timeout event.

## 4.4 SET CONNECTION ENCRYPTION

**Step 1:** The host may at any time turn on encryption using the HCI\_Set\_Connection\_Encryption command. This command can be originated from either the master or slave sides. Only the master side is shown in Figure 4.30. If this command is sent from a slave, the only difference is that the LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req PDU will be sent from the slave. The LMP\_encryption\_key\_size\_req and LMP\_start\_encryption\_req PDUs will always be requested from the master. (See Figure 4.30.)

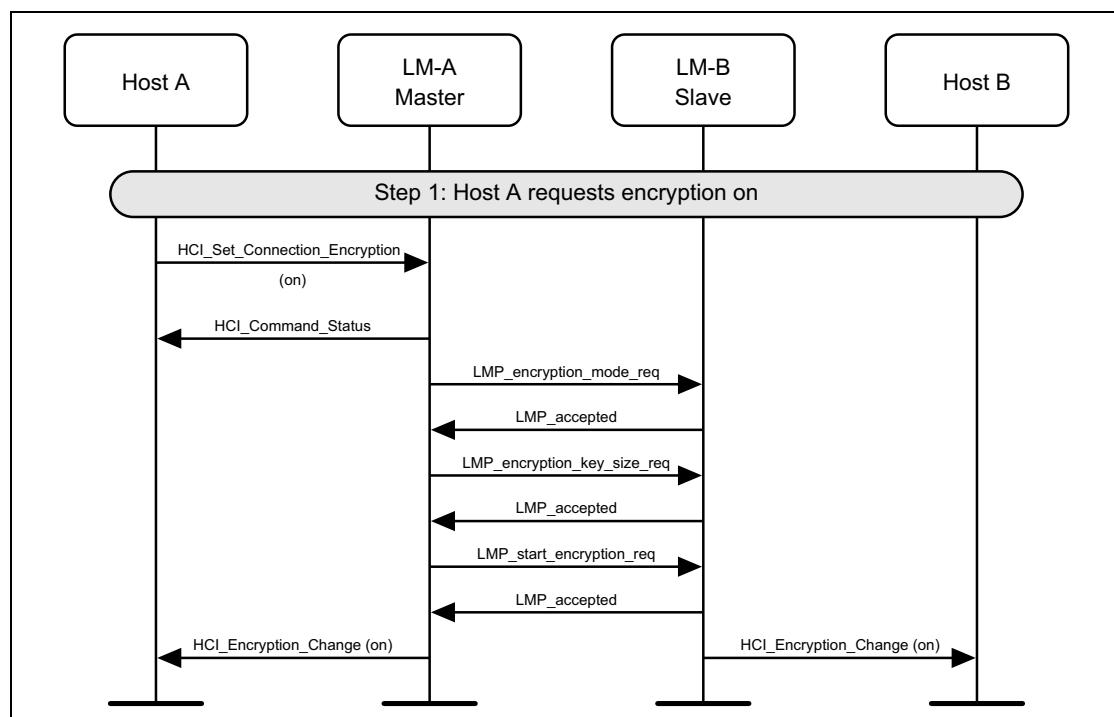
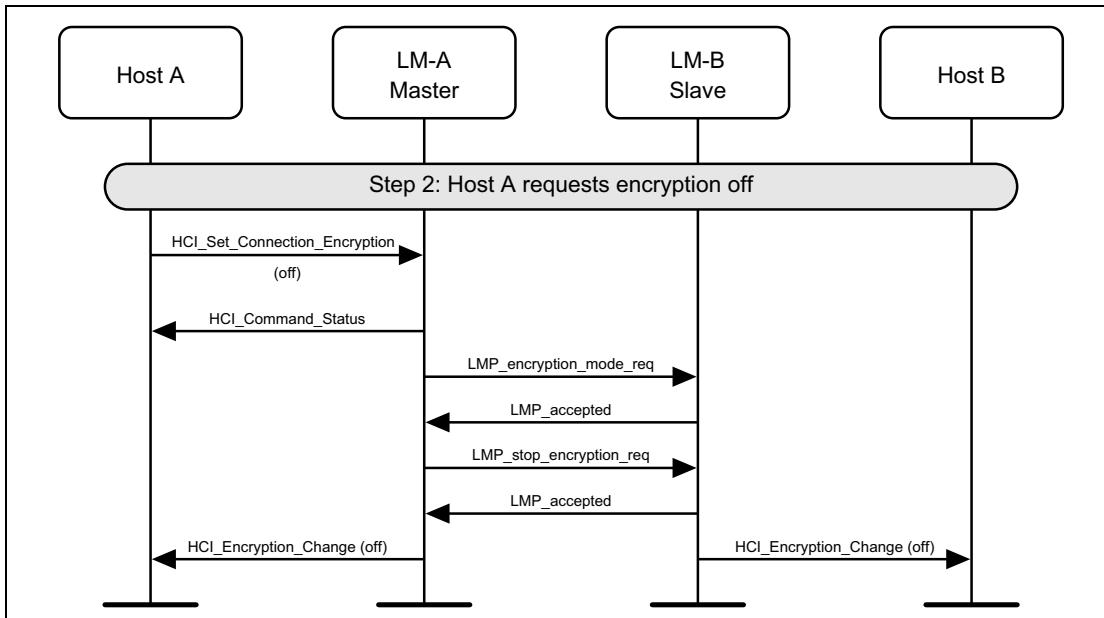


Figure 4.30: Encryption requested.

*Message Sequence Charts*

**Step 2:** To terminate the use of encryption, The HCI\_Set\_Connection\_Encryption command is used.

(See [Figure 4.31.](#))



*Figure 4.31: Encryption off requested.*

## 4.5 CHANGE CONNECTION LINK KEY

**Step 1:** The master host (Host A) may change the connection link key using the HCI\_Change\_Connection\_Link\_Key command. A new link key will be generated and the hosts will be notified of this new link key. (See [Figure 4.32](#).)

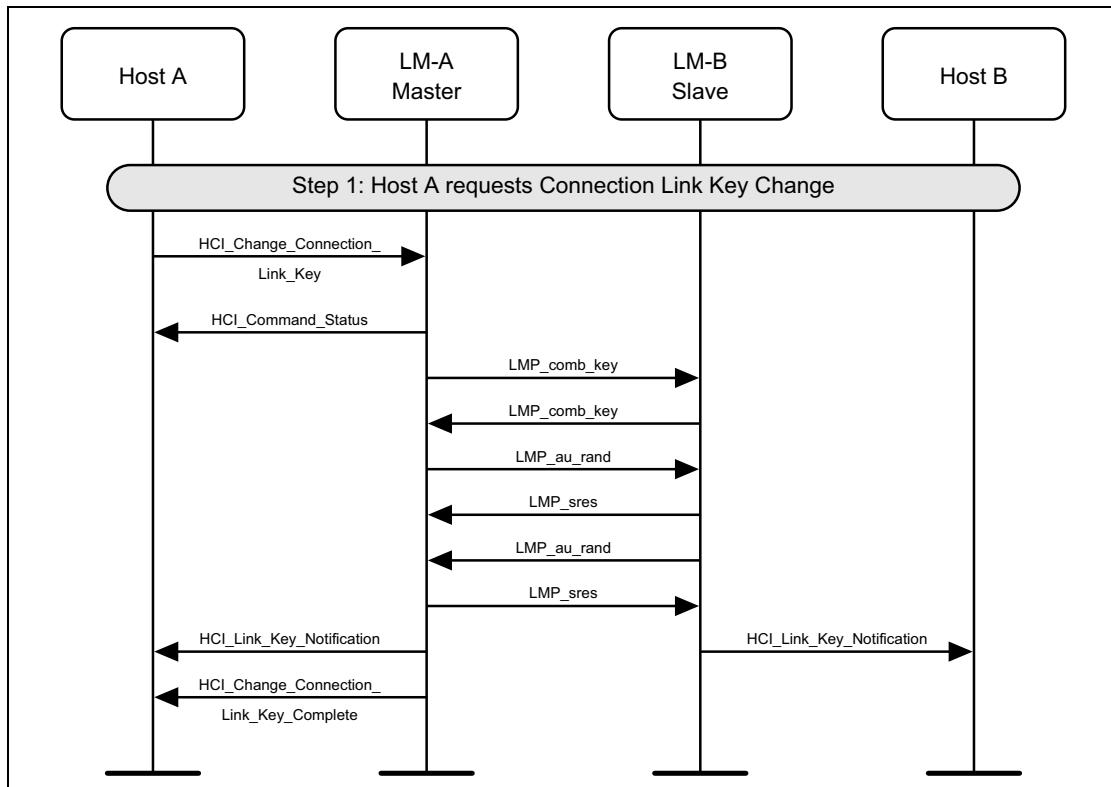


Figure 4.32: Change connection link key.

## 4.6 CHANGE CONNECTION LINK KEY WITH ENCRYPTION PAUSE AND RESUME

**Step 1:** The master host (Host A) may change the connection link key using the HCI\_Change\_Connection\_Link\_Key command. A new link key will be generated and the hosts will be notified of this new link key. Encryption will then be paused and resumed, immediately using this new link key to generate a new encryption key. (See [Figure 4.33.](#).)

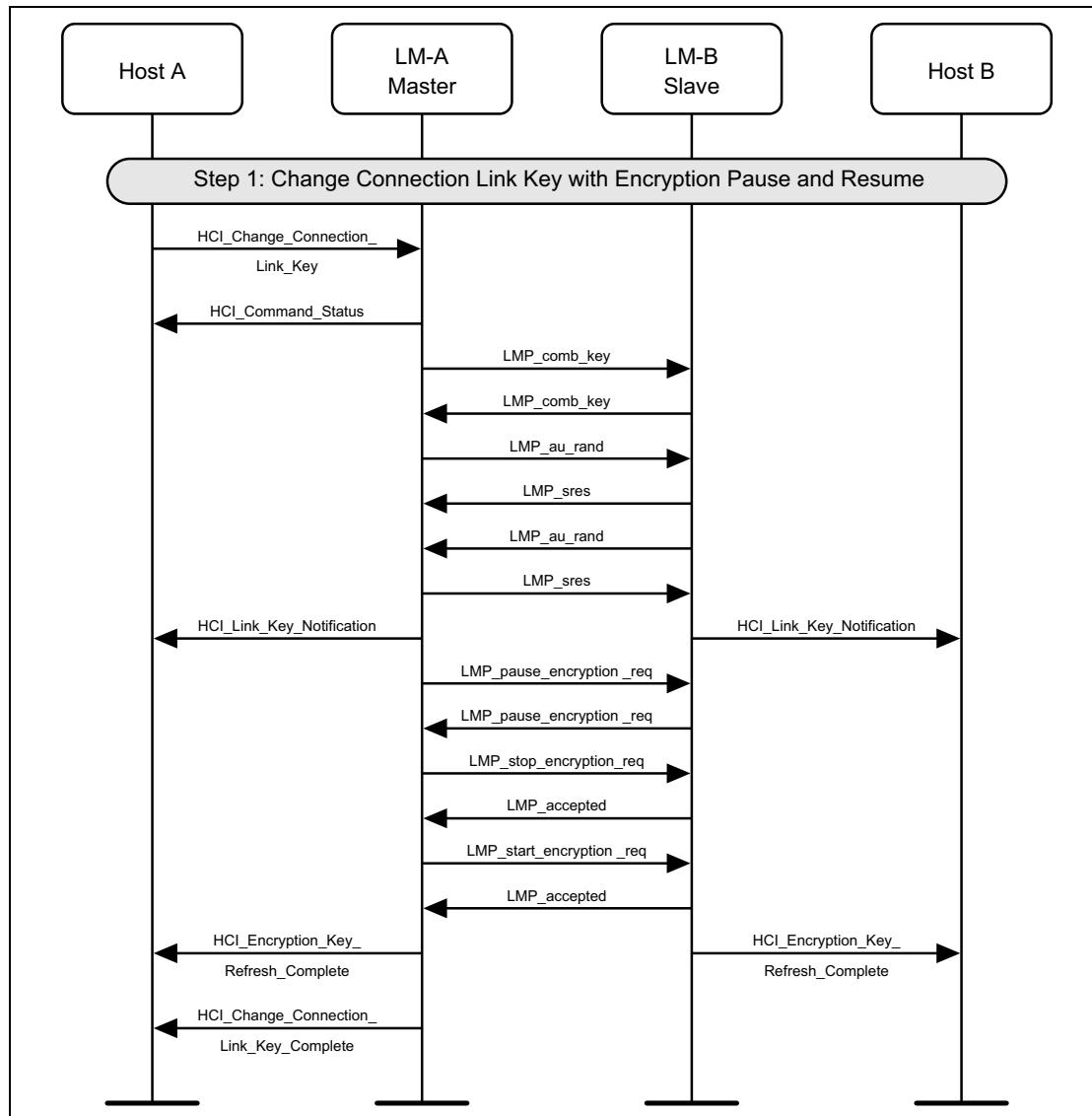
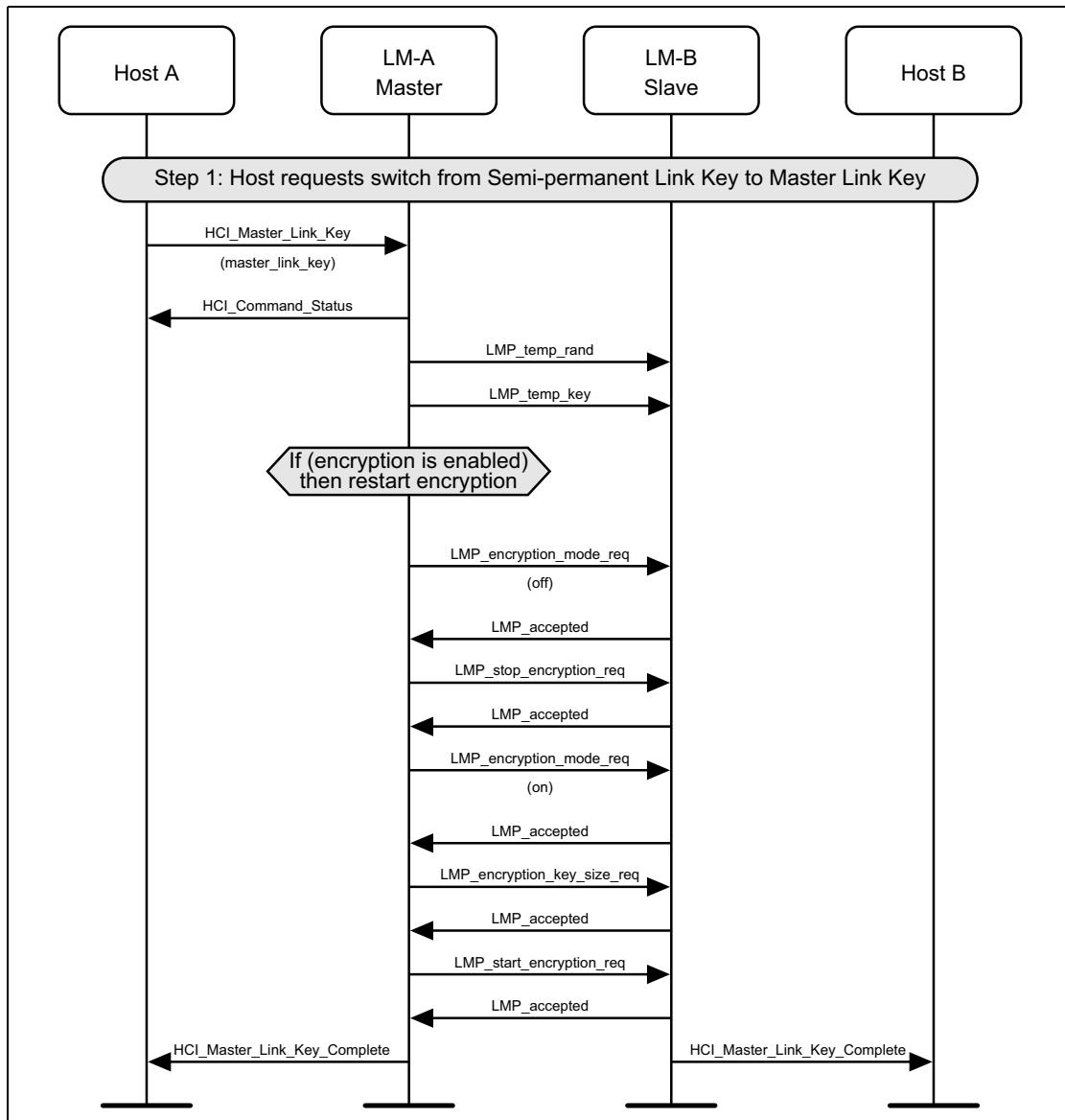


Figure 4.33: Change connection link key with encryption pause resume.

## 4.7 MASTER LINK KEY

**Step 1:** The host changes to a Master Link Key from a Semi-permanent Link Key using the HCI\_Master\_Link\_Key command. (See [Figure 4.34](#).)

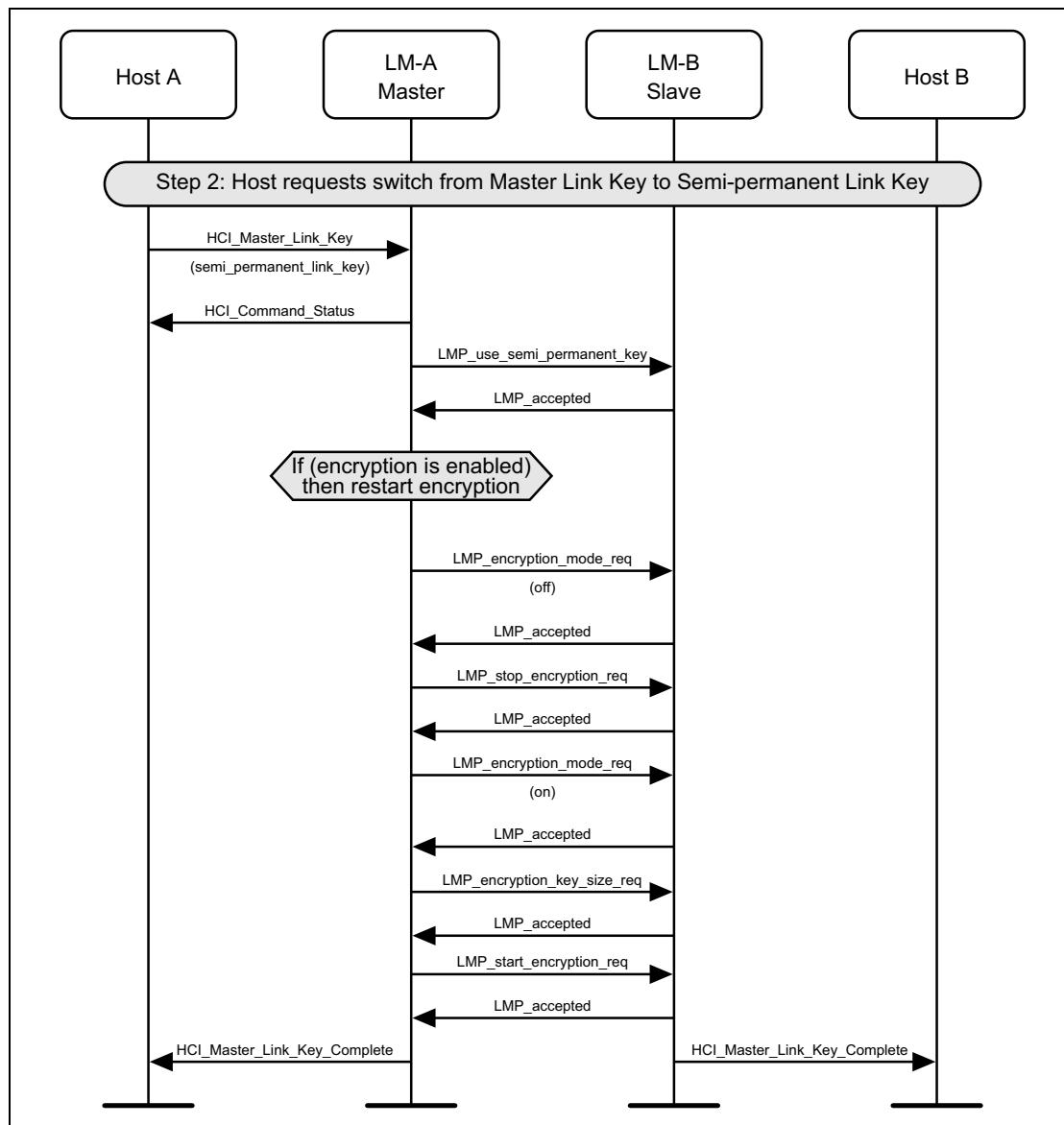


*Figure 4.34: Change to master link key.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2:** The host changes to a Semi-permanent Link Key from a Master Link Key using the HCI\_Master\_Link\_Key command. (See [Figure 4.35](#).)



*Figure 4.35: Change to semi permanent link key.*

## 4.8 READ REMOTE SUPPORTED FEATURES

Using the HCI\_Read\_Remote\_Supported\_Features command the supported LMP Features of a remote device can be read. (See [Figure 4.36](#).)

If the remote supported features have been obtained previously then the Controller may return them without sending any LMP PDUs.

**Step 1:** The host requests the supported features of a remote device.

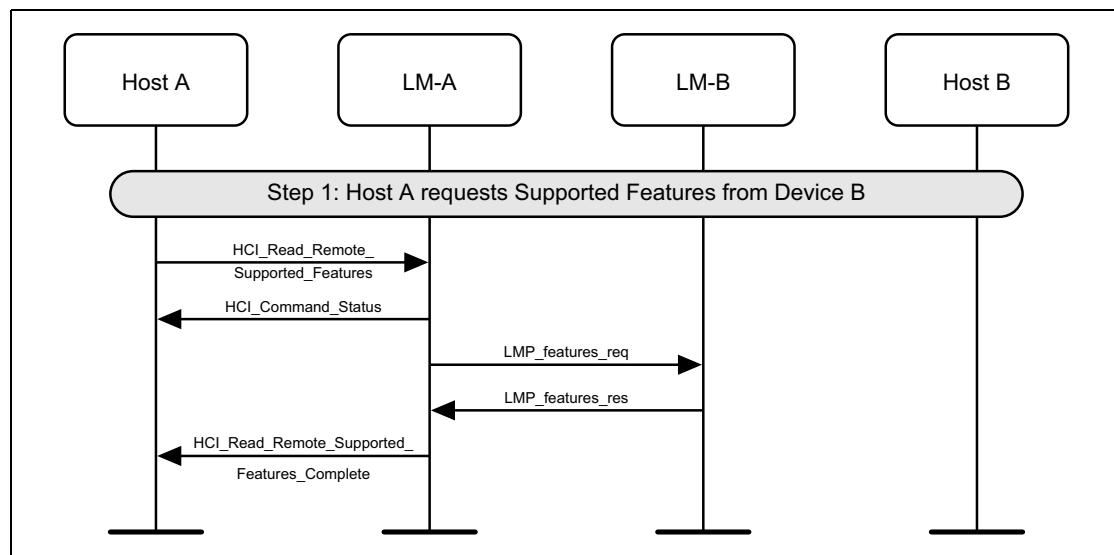


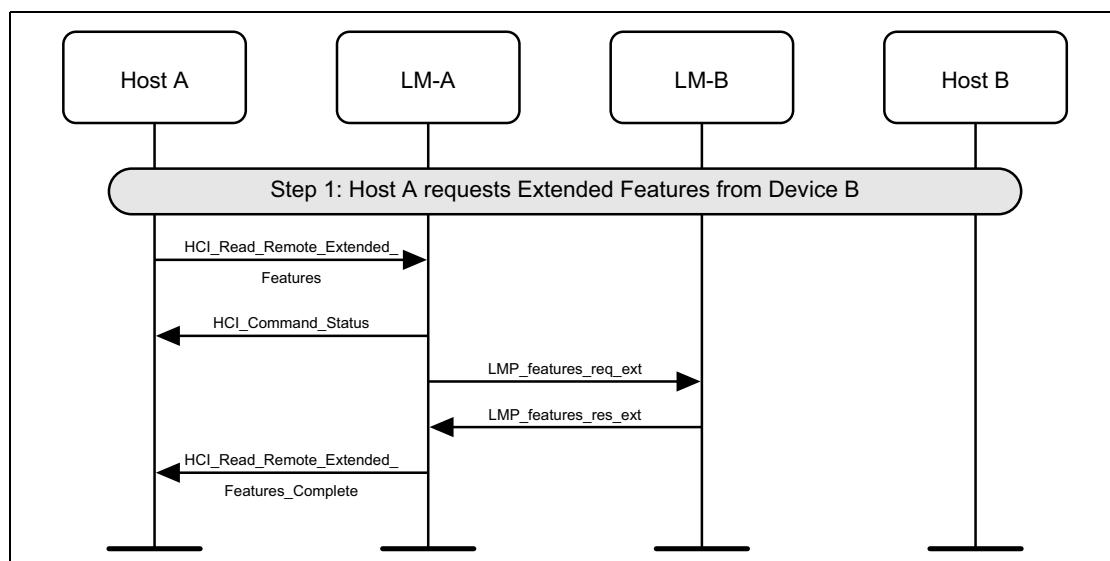
Figure 4.36: Read remote supported features.

## 4.9 READ REMOTE EXTENDED FEATURES

Using the HCI\_Read\_Remote\_Extended\_Features command the extended LMP features of a remote device can be read. (See [Figure 4.37](#).)

If the remote extended features have been obtained previously then the Controller may return them without sending any LMP PDUs.

**Step 1:** The host requests the extended features of a remote device.

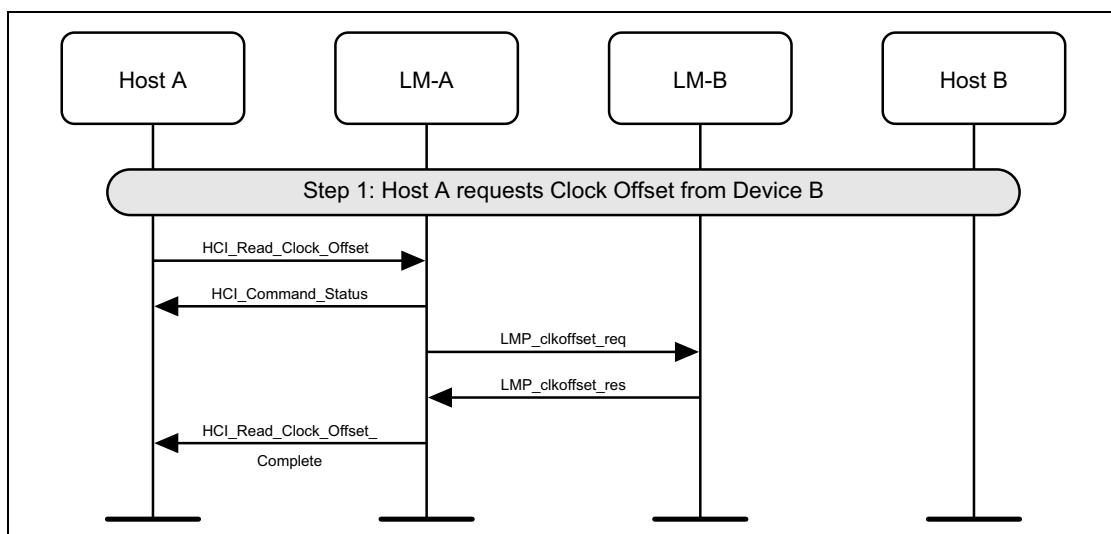


*Figure 4.37: Read remote extended features.*

## 4.10 READ CLOCK OFFSET

Using the HCI\_Read\_Clock\_Offset command the device acting as the master can read the Clock Offset of a slave. The Clock Offset can be used to speed up the paging procedure in a later connection attempt. If the command is requested from the slave device, the Controller will directly return a Command Status event and a Read Clock Offset Complete event without sending any LMP PDUs. (See [Figure 4.38](#).)

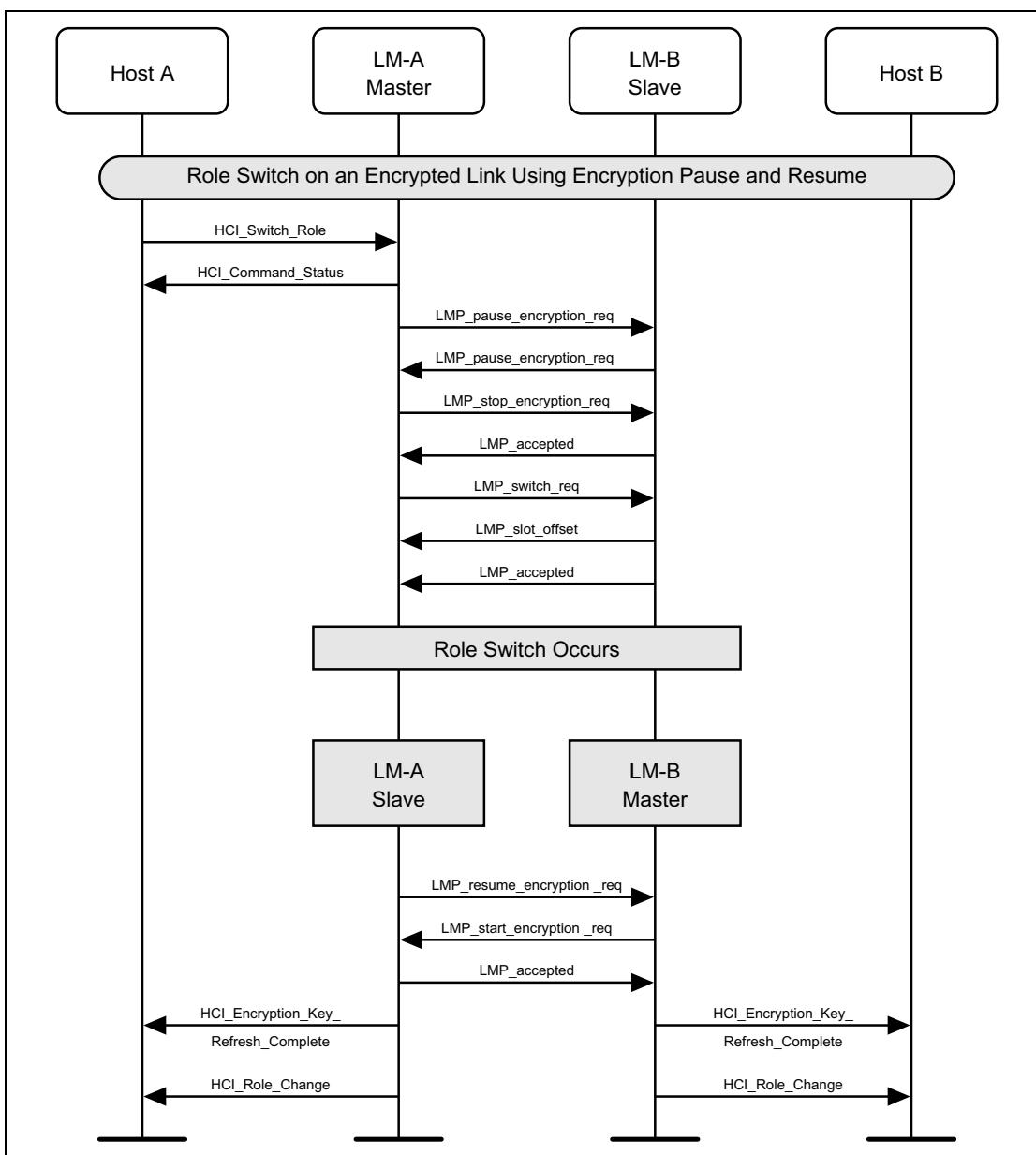
**Step 1:** The host requests the clock offset of a remote device.



*Figure 4.38: Read clock offset.*

## 4.11 ROLE SWITCH ON AN ENCRYPTED LINK USING ENCRYPTION PAUSE AND RESUME

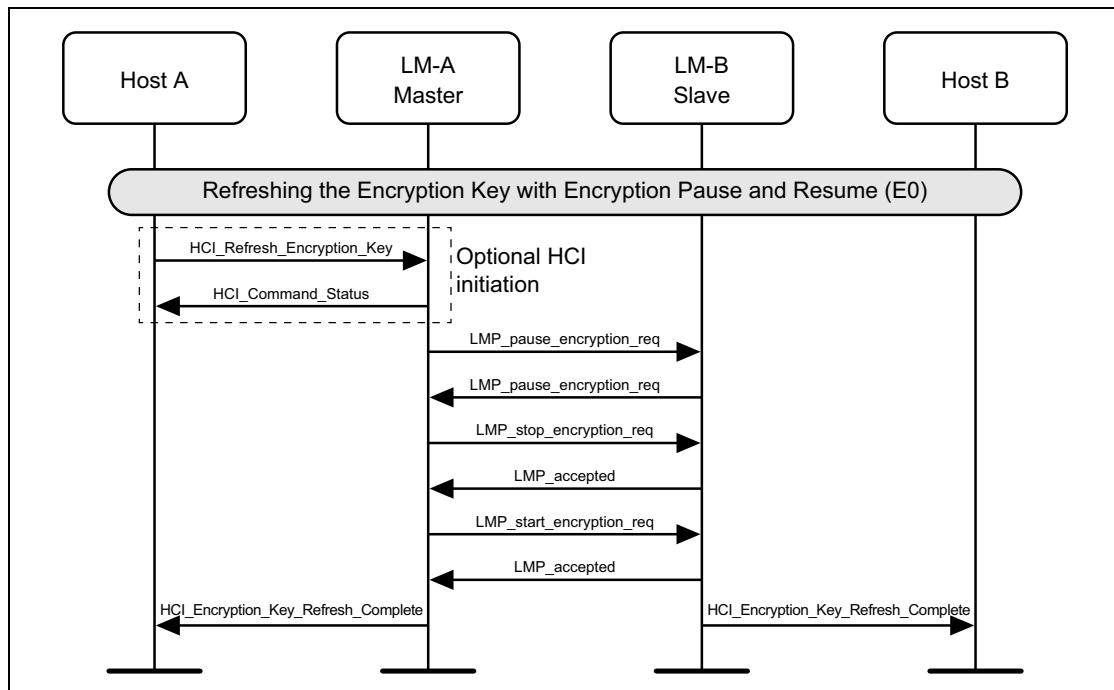
The HCI\_Switch\_Role command can be used to explicitly switch the current master / slave role of the local device with the specified device. The master host (A) requests a role switch with a slave. This will first pause encryption, and then send the switch request, and the slave will respond with the slot offset and accepted. The role switch is performed by doing the TDD switch and piconet switch. Encryption is resumed, and finally an HCI\_Role\_Change event is sent on both sides. ([Figure 4.39](#))



*Figure 4.39: Role switch on an encrypted link using encryption pause and resume.*

## 4.12 REFRESHING ENCRYPTION KEYS

The HCI\_Refesh\_Encryption\_Key command may be used by the master's Host to explicitly pause and resuming encryption to refresh the encryption key. After encryption is resumed an HCI\_Encryption\_Key\_Freshness event is sent on both sides. ([Figure 4.40](#)).



*Figure 4.40: Refreshing encryption keys (E0).*

## Message Sequence Charts



When both devices support Secure Connections, the encryption key refresh sequence is performed as follows.

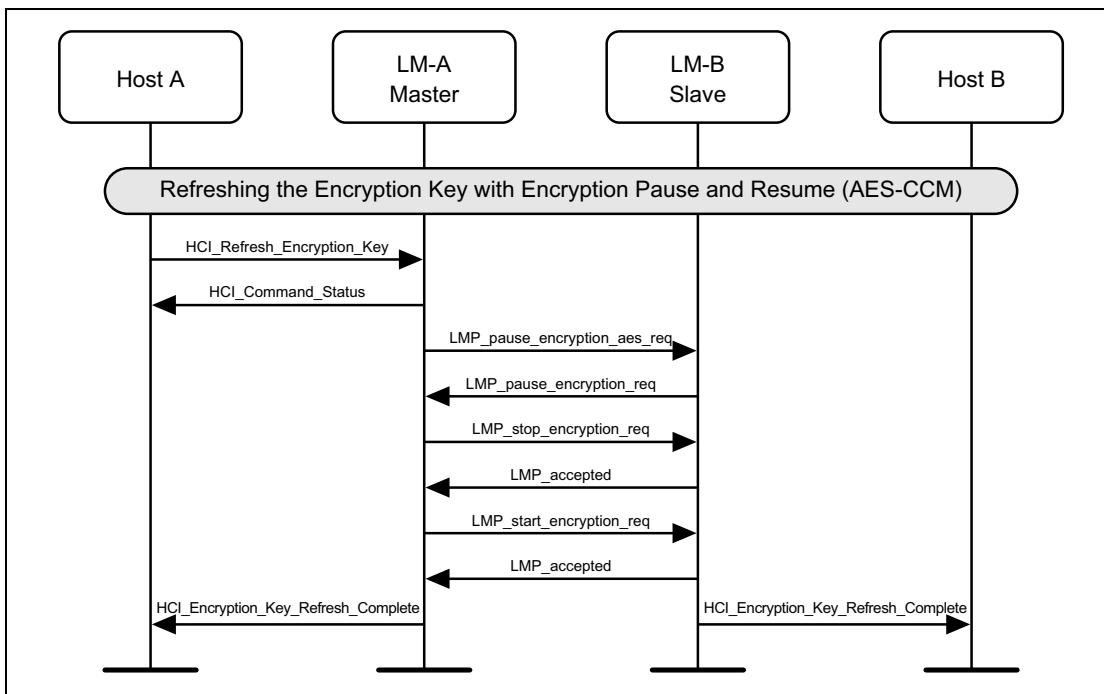


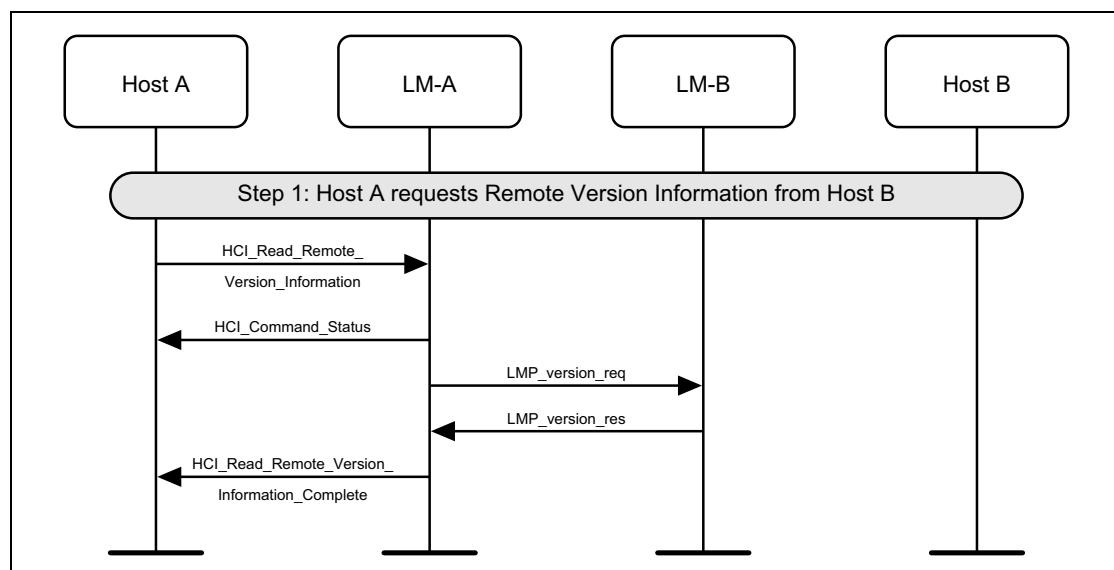
Figure 4.41: Refreshing encryption keys (AES-CCM).

## 4.13 READ REMOTE VERSION INFORMATION

Using the HCI\_Read\_Remote\_Version\_Information command the version information of a remote device can be read. (See [Figure 4.42](#).)

If the remote version information has been obtained previously then the Controller may return them without sending any LMP PDUs.

**Step 1:** The host requests the version information of a remote device.



*Figure 4.42: Read remote version information.*

## 4.14 QOS SETUP

Using the HCI\_Flow\_Specification command the Quality of Service (QoS) and Flow Specification requirements of a connection can be notified to a Controller. The Controller may then change the quality of service parameters with a remote device. (See [Figure 4.43](#).)

**Step 1:** The host sends QoS parameters to a remote device.

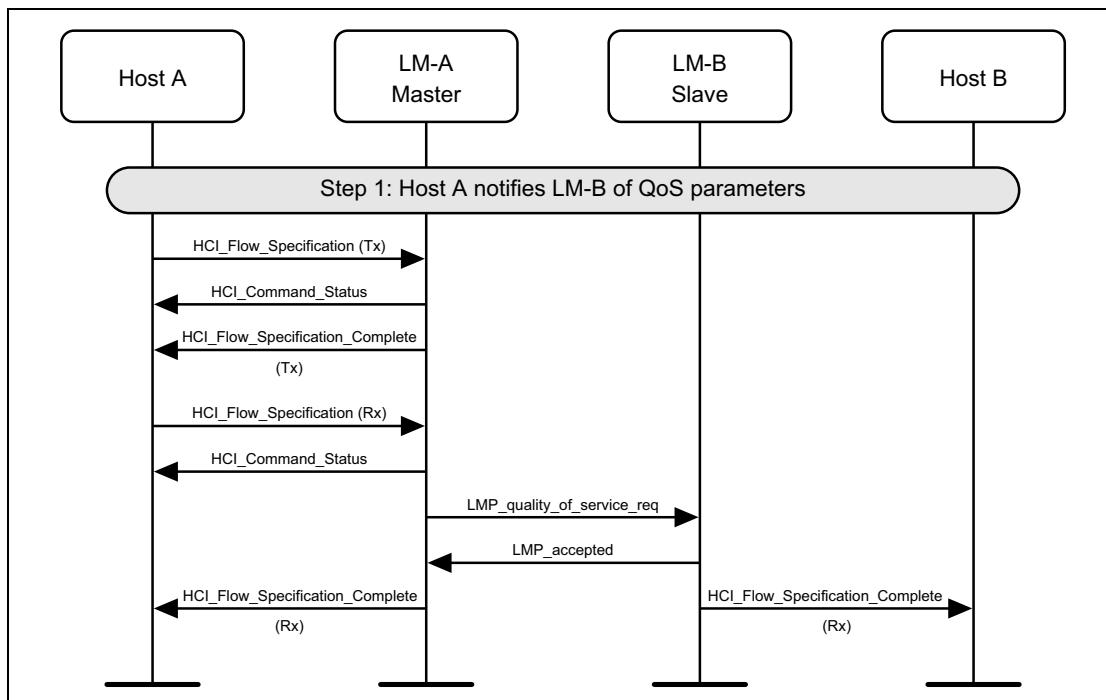
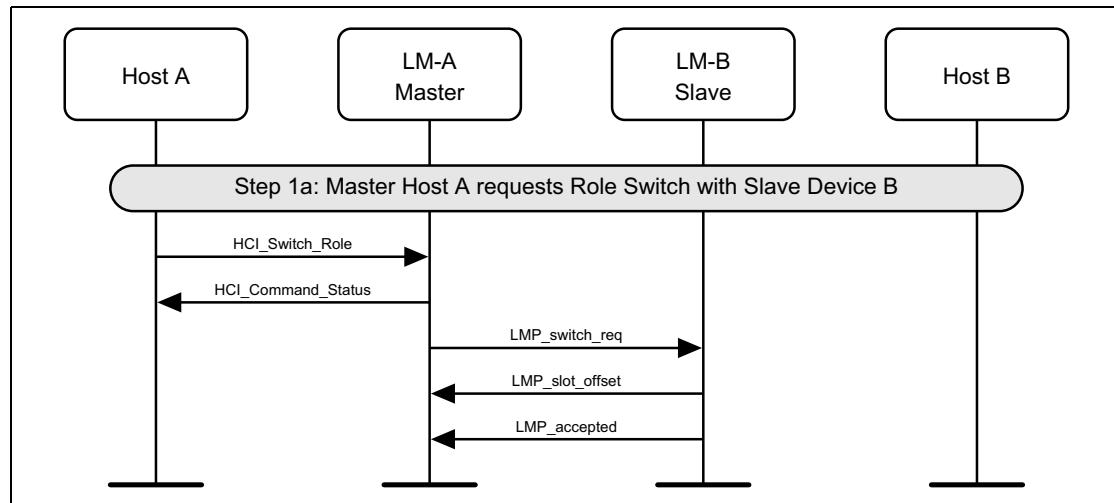


Figure 4.43: QoS flow specification.

## 4.15 SWITCH ROLE

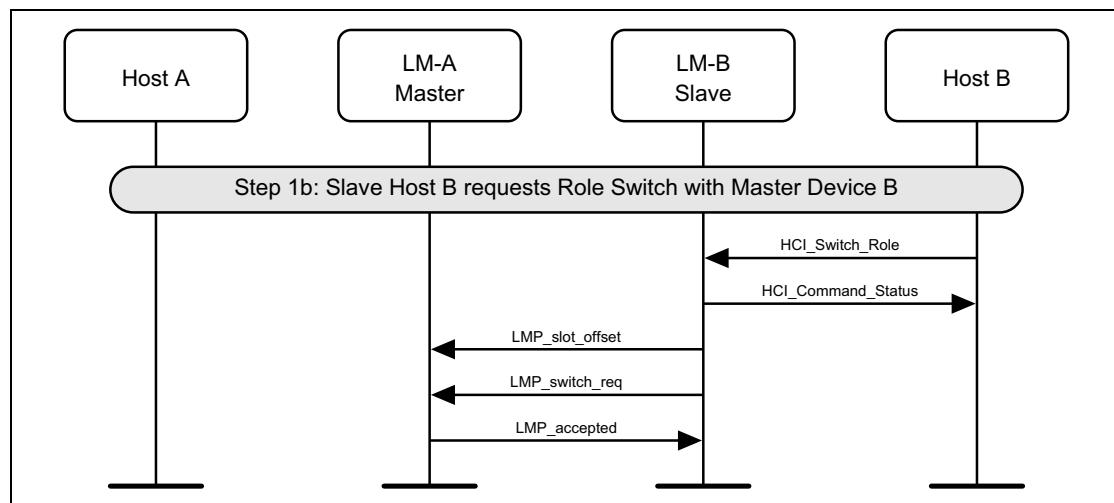
The HCI\_Switch\_Role command can be used to explicitly switch the current master / slave role of the local device with the specified device.

**Step 1a:** The master host (A) requests a role switch with a slave. This will send the switch request, and the slave will respond with the slot offset and accepted. (See [Figure 4.44](#).)



*Figure 4.44: Master requests role switch.*

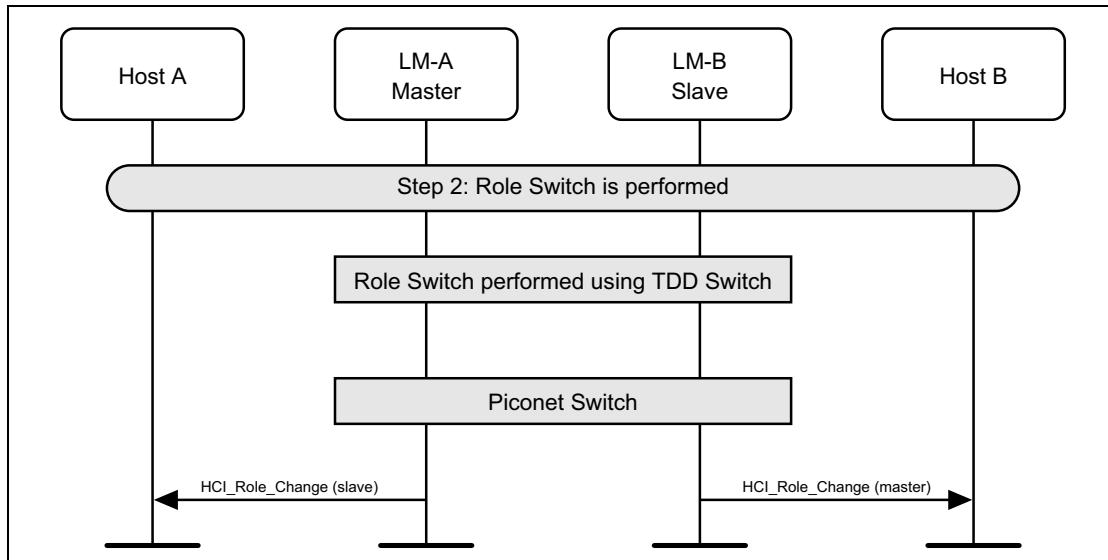
**Step 1b:** The slave host (B) requests a role switch with a master. This will send the slot offset and the switch request, and the master will respond with a LMP\_accepted PDU. (See [Figure 4.45](#).)



*Figure 4.45: Slave requests role switch.*

*Message Sequence Charts*

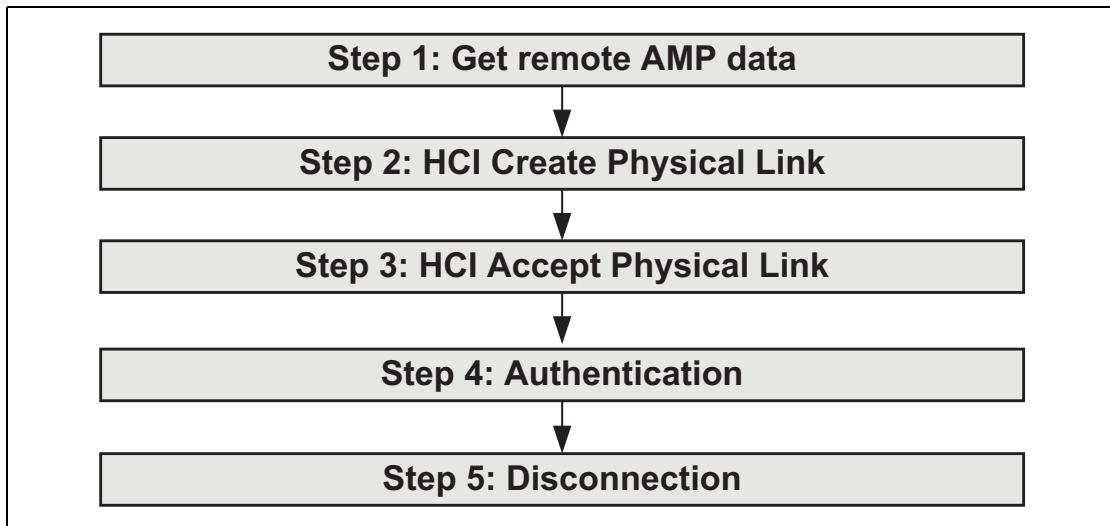
**Step 2:** The role switch is performed by doing the TDD switch and piconet switch. Finally an HCI\_Role\_Change event is sent on both sides.  
(See [Figure 4.46.](#).)



*Figure 4.46: Role switch is performed.*

## 4.16 AMP PHYSICAL LINK CREATION AND DISCONNECT

A flow diagram of the AMP link establishment and detachment of a connection between two devices is shown in [Figure 4.47](#).



*Figure 4.47: Overview diagram for physical link creation and disconnection.*

#### 4.16.1 Physical Link Establishment

The process of establishing a Physical Link consists of 4 steps.

**Step 1:** Host A uses the BR/EDR Controller to request AMP\_Info data from Host B in order to create an AMP connection. Host B gets this information from PAL B using HCI Read Local AMP Info. Host B returns the information to Host A over the BR/EDR radio.

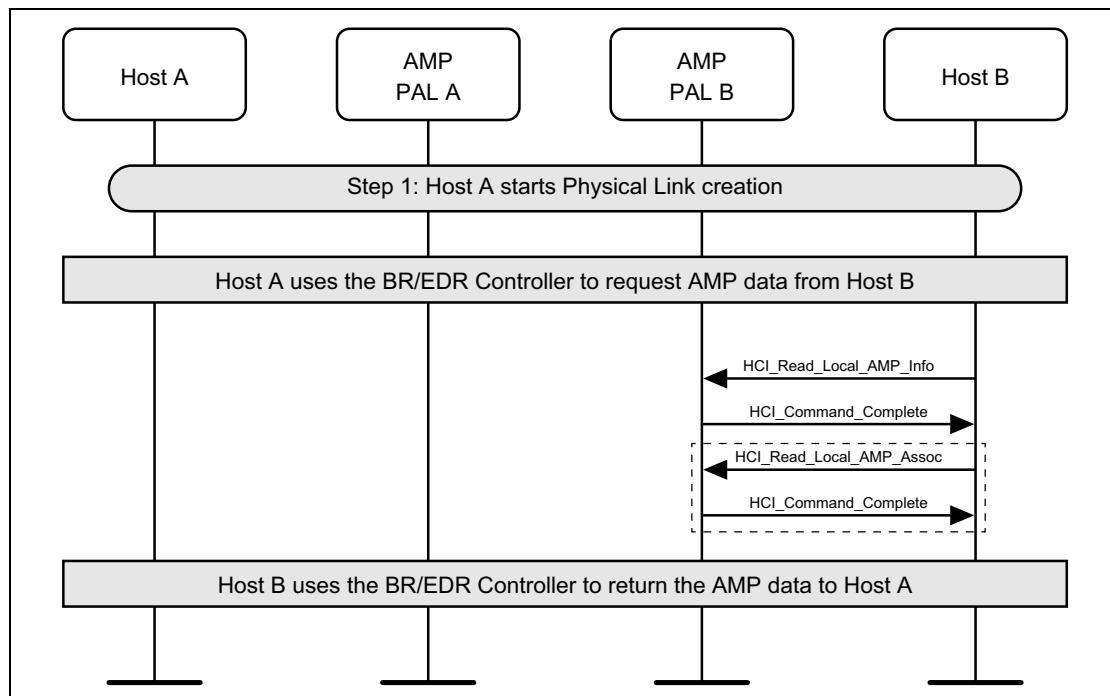


Figure 4.48: Get remote AMP data.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2:** Host A sends an HCI Create Physical Link command to its AMP Controller. AMP Controller A determines which channel will be used, and provides channel information to its Host. AMP Controller A joins or creates that channel. Note use of dotted rectangles for zero or multiple uses of read or write AMP\_Assoc.

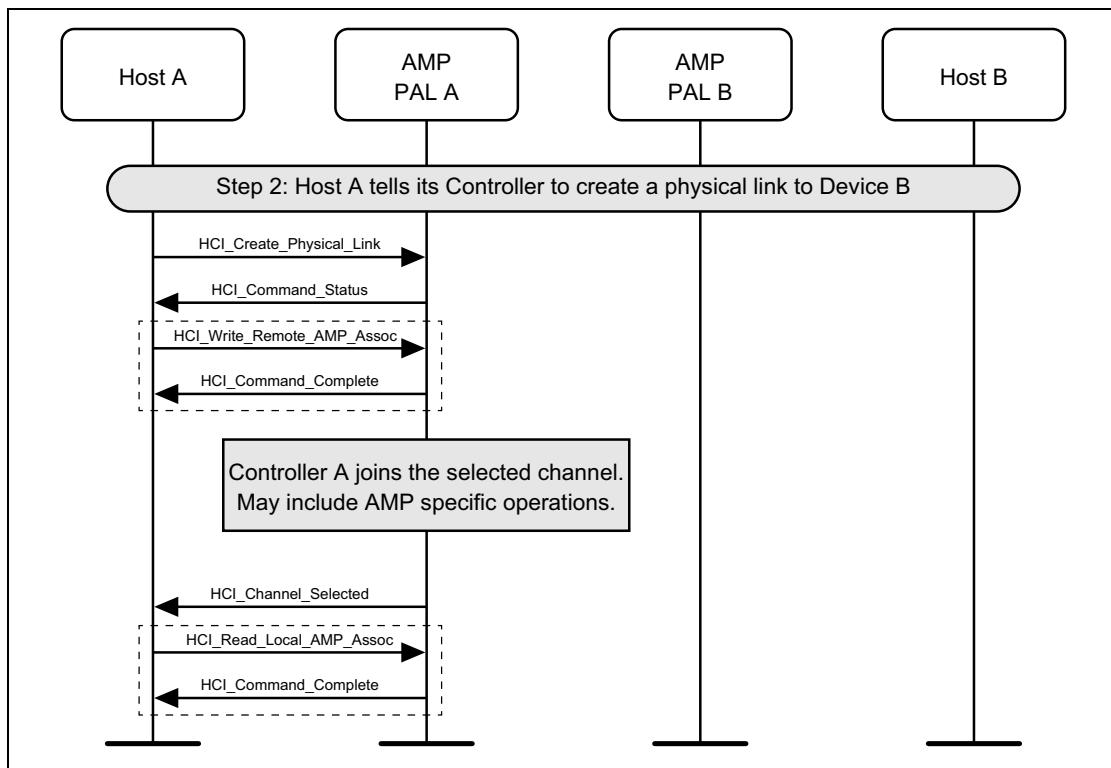


Figure 4.49: Host A tells its controller to create the physical link.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 3:** Host A uses the BR/EDR radio to request a physical link to B. Host B tells its AMP Controller to accept a physical link from Device A.

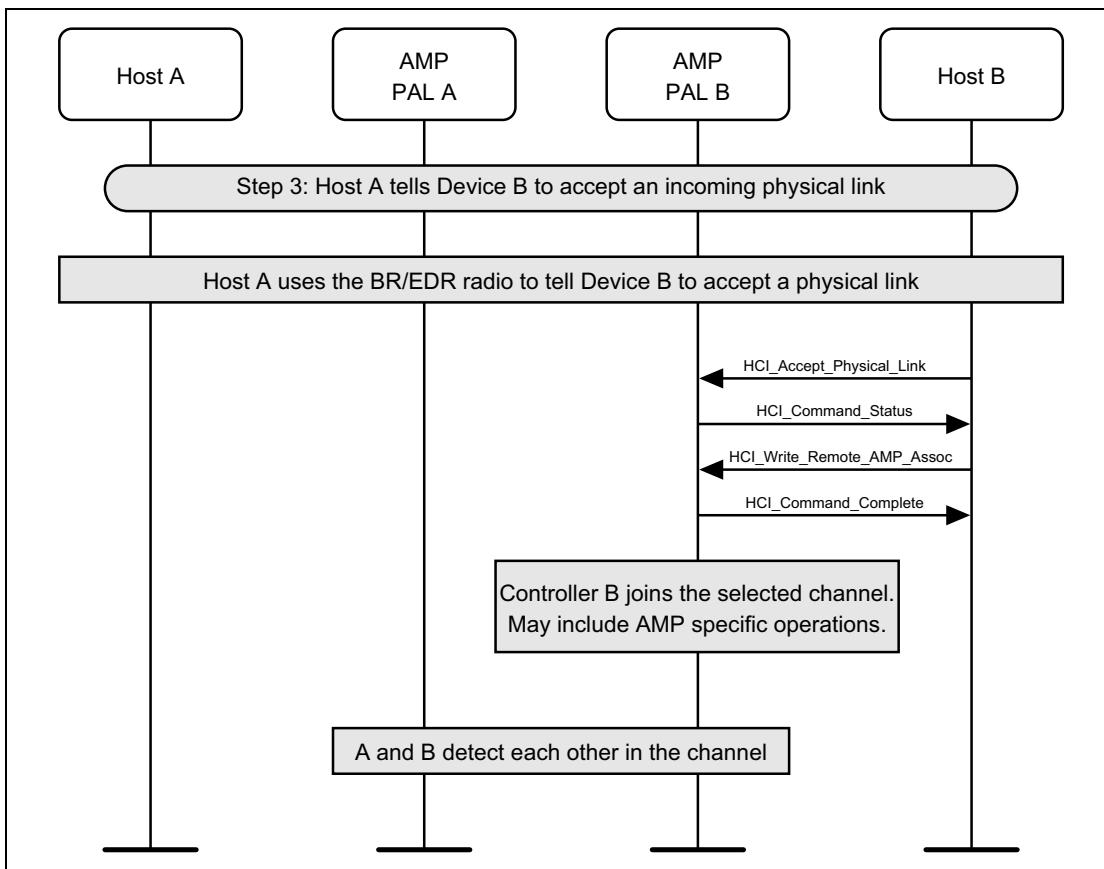


Figure 4.50: Host A tells Host B to accept an incoming physical link.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 4:** The AMP Controllers perform security operations. When the handshake is complete, both devices inform their Hosts that the link is ready for use. Note that the mechanism used to transport the authentication messages is defined by each PAL.

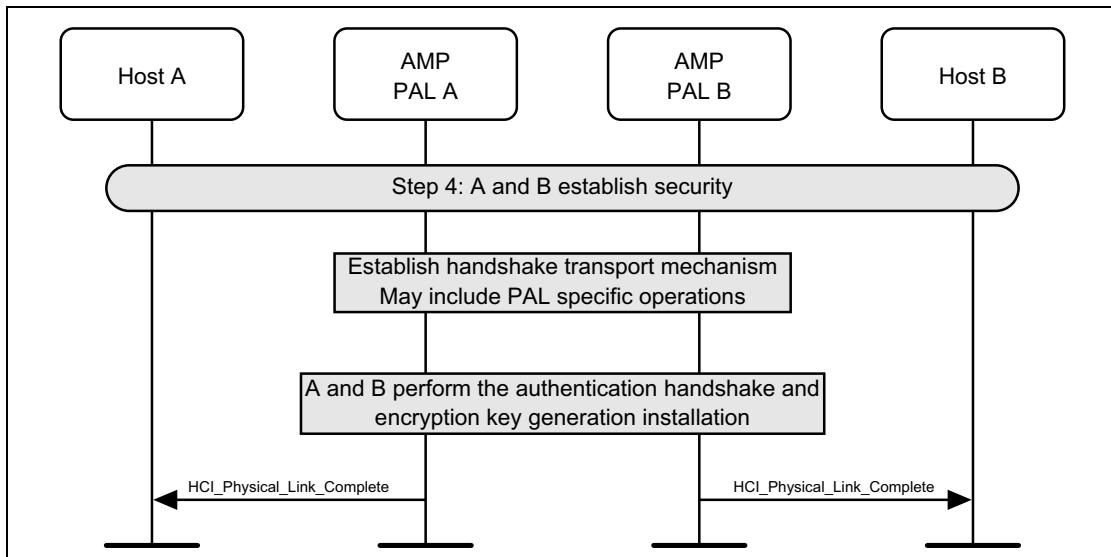


Figure 4.51: A and B establish AMP physical link security.

**Step 5:** Host A sends a Physical Link Disconnect command to its AMP Controller. AMP Controllers A and B do whatever AMP specific action is required to meet the request. Each AMP Controller sends the Physical Link Disconnect Complete event to its host. Both devices can now leave the AMP channel. Note that disconnection of any active Logical Links is not shown in [Figure 4.52](#).

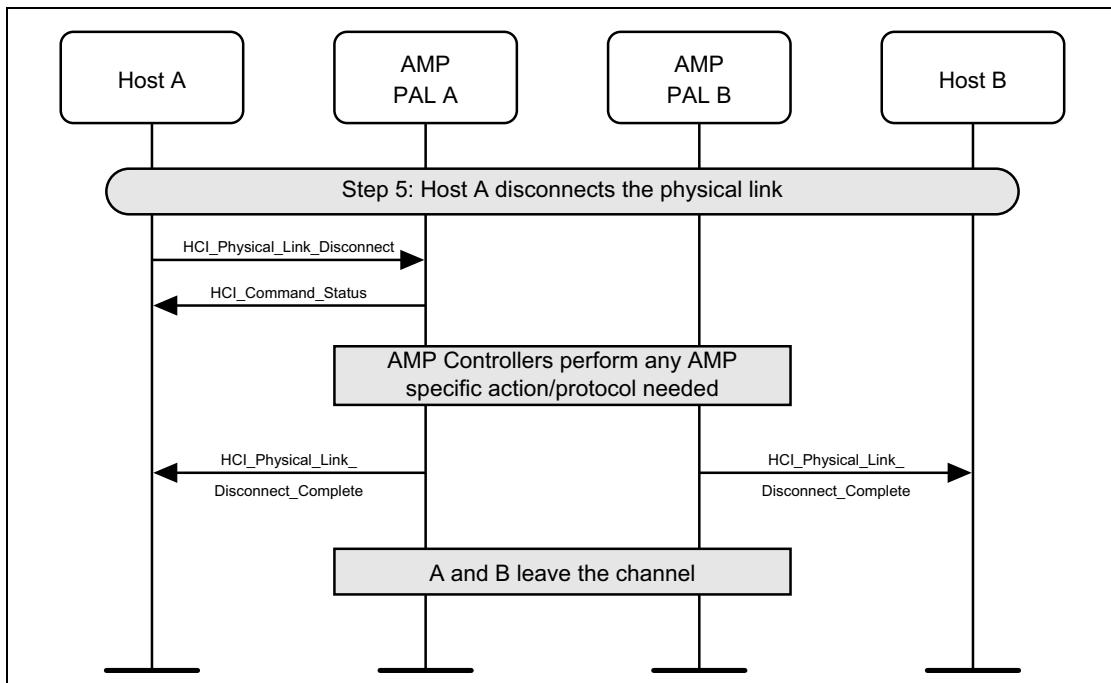


Figure 4.52: Host A disconnects the physical link

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 6:** During normal operation the AMP Controller may alert its Host to issues on the link.

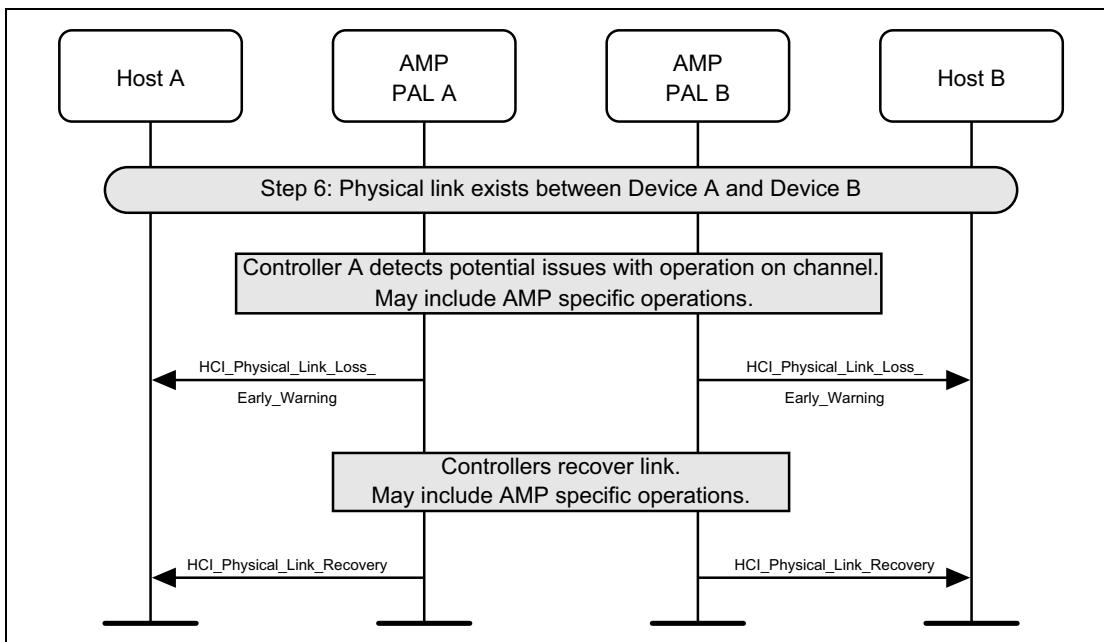


Figure 4.53: Controller reports link loss to its Host.

### 4.16.2 Logical Link Creation

**Step 1:** Host A sends a Logical Link Create command to its AMP Controller. AMP Controllers A and B do whatever AMP specific action is required to meet the bandwidth request. Each AMP Controller sends the Logical Link Creation Complete event to its host. Both devices can now pass data traffic over the AMP channel.

A flow diagram of the establishment of a Guaranteed logical connection between two devices is shown in [Figure 4.54](#).

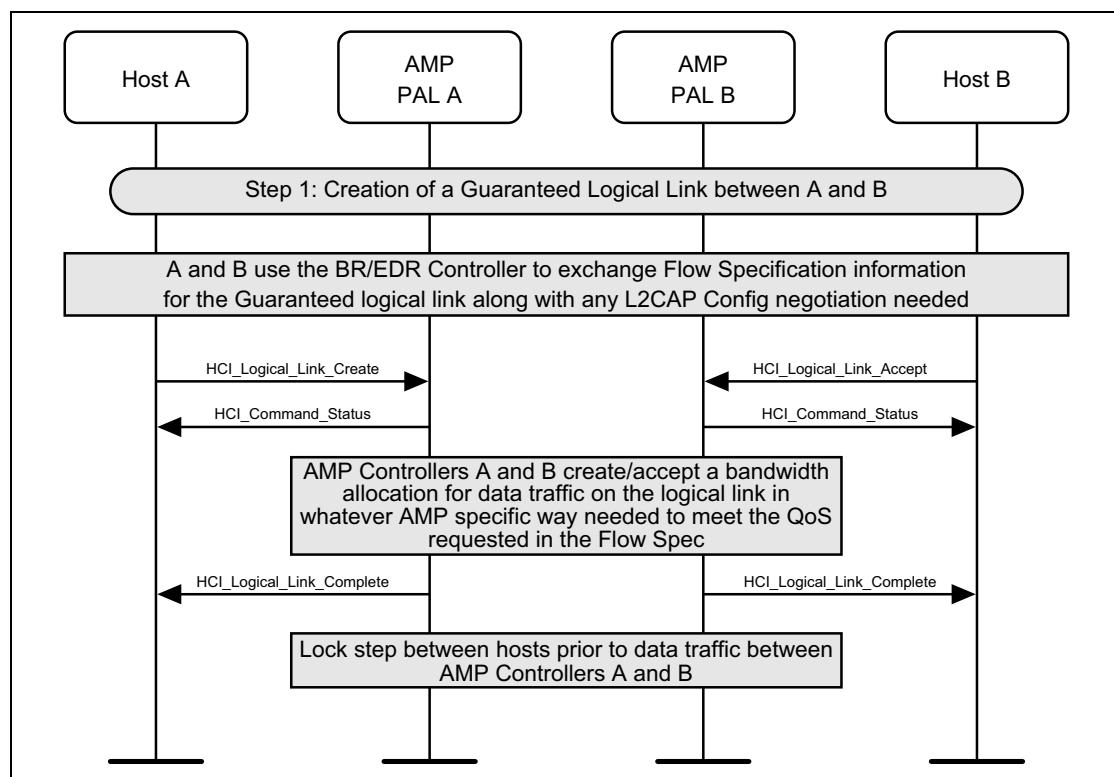


Figure 4.54: Guaranteed logical link creation.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2:** Host A sends a Logical Link Disconnect command to its AMP Controller. AMP Controllers A and B do whatever AMP specific action is required to meet the request. Each AMP Controller sends the Logical Link Disconnect Complete event to its host.

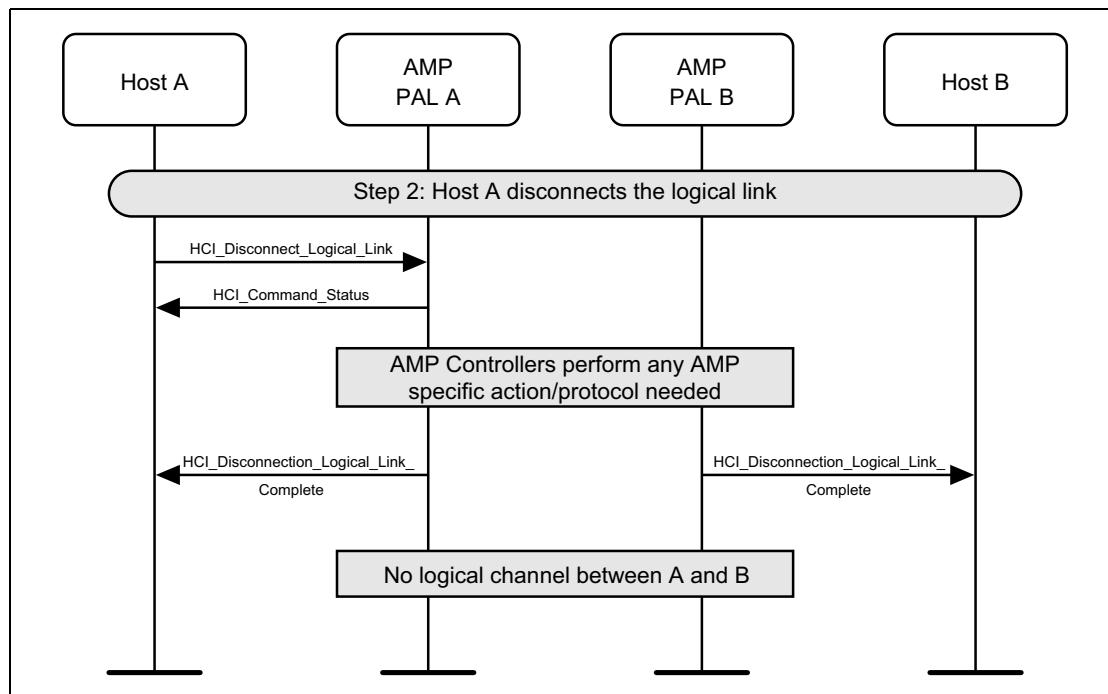


Figure 4.55: Host A disconnects the logical link.

**Step 3:** During normal operation the Host may modify logical link characteristics.

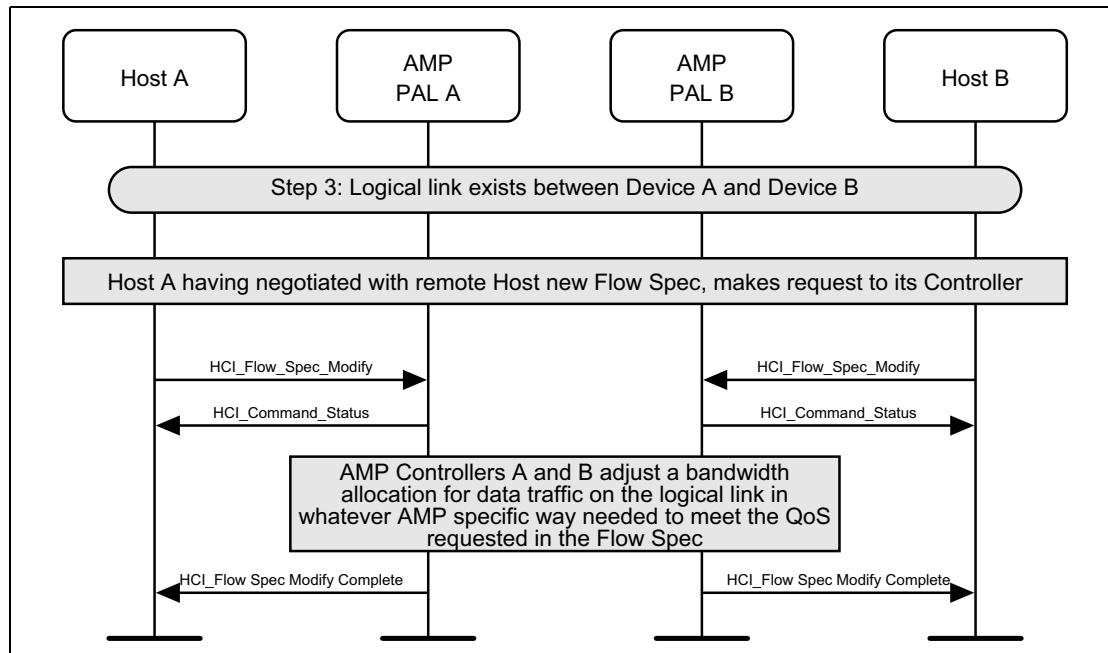


Figure 4.56: Host A modifies Flow\_Spec on an existing logical link.

## 4.17 AMP TEST MODE SEQUENCE CHARTS

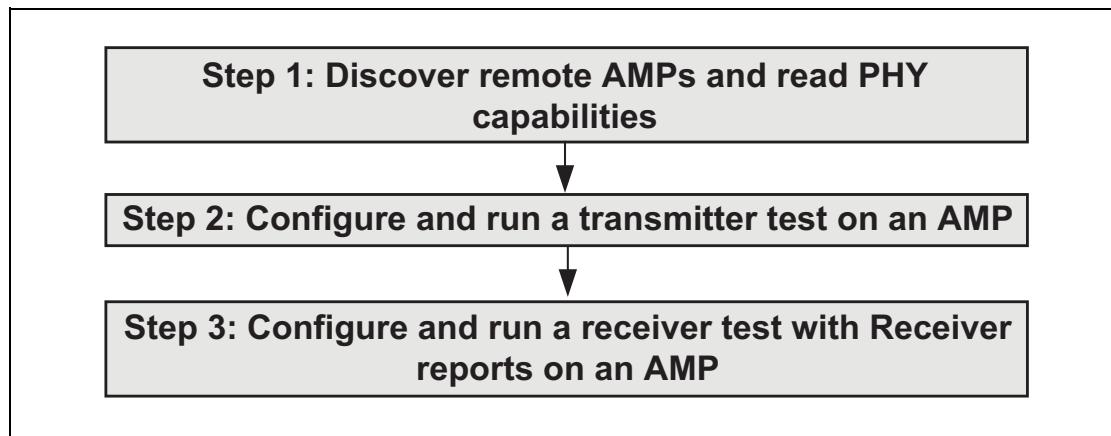


Figure 4.57: Overview diagram for AMP test mode.

#### 4.17.1 Discover the AMP Present and Running Transmitter and Receiver Tests

The process of discovering the number of AMPs and running transmitter and receiver tests is detailed in the following three steps.

**Step 1:** The tester sends an AMP Discovery Request to the AMP Test Manager of the DUT over the BR/EDR ACL connection. The AMP Test Manager will reply with the AMP Discover Response to the tester with a list of available AMP and type over the BR/EDR ACL connection. The tester then requests the PHY capabilities for each of the AMP it may test.

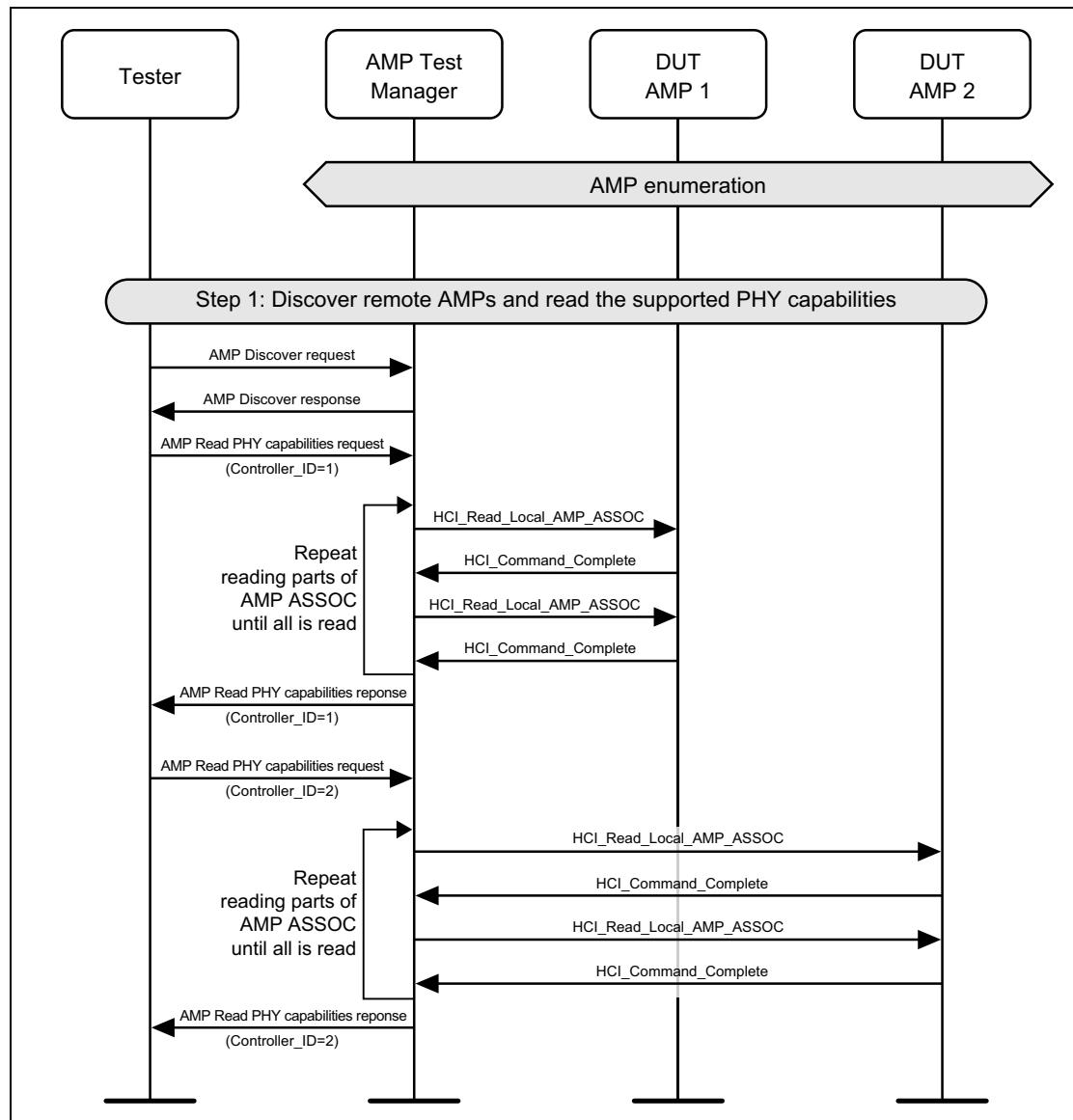


Figure 4.58: Discover remote AMPs and their PHY capabilities.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2:** In order to configure a transmitter test, the Tester sends an HCI\_AMP\_Test\_Command to the AMP Test Manager of the DUT using the L2CAP AMP Test Message for the AMP Controller indicated by the Controller\_ID. The AMP Test Manager sends on the HCI\_AMP\_Test\_Command on to the AMP indicated by the Controller\_ID. When the HCI\_AMP\_Start\_Test\_Event is returned from the AMP controller, the event will be sent via the AMP Test Manager back to the Tester within an L2CAP AMP Test message.

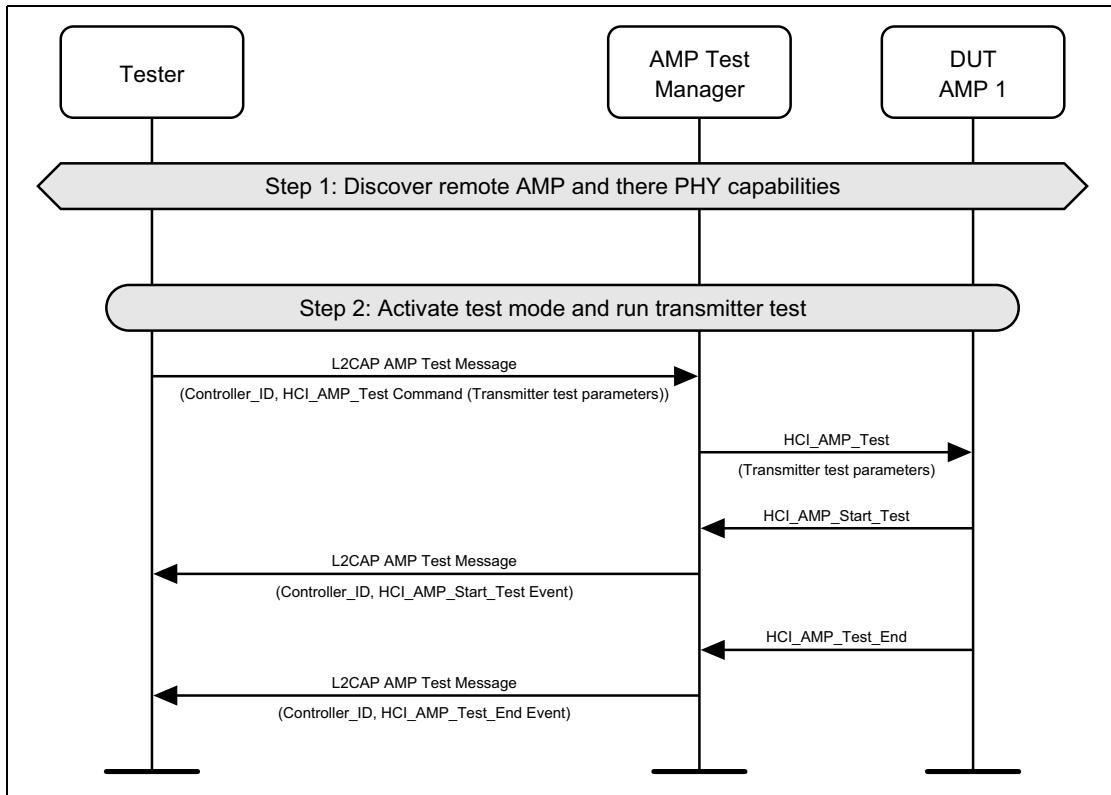


Figure 4.59: Activate test mode and run a transmitter test.

**Step 3:** In order to Enable AMP Receiver Reports, the Tester sends an AMP test command to the AMP Test Manager of the DUT using the L2CAP AMP Test message for the AMP Controller indicated by the Controller\_ID. The Command\_Complete\_Event is returned to the Tester via the AMP Test Manager in an L2CAP AMP Test Message.

In order to configure a receiver test, the Tester sends an HCI\_AMP\_Test\_Command to the AMP Test Manager of the DUT using the L2CAP AMP Test Message for the AMP controller indicated by the Controller\_ID. The AMP Test Manager sends on the HCI\_AMP\_Test\_Command on to the AMP indicated by the Controller\_ID. The HCI\_AMP\_Start\_Event is returned to the Tester via the AMP Test Manager in an L2CAP AMP Test Message.

AMP\_Receiver\_Reports and the HCI\_Test\_End\_Event are sent back to the Tester via the AMP Test Manager from the controller and then the Receiver reports is disabled by the Tester using the HCI\_Enable\_AMP\_Receiver\_Reports command.

## Message Sequence Charts

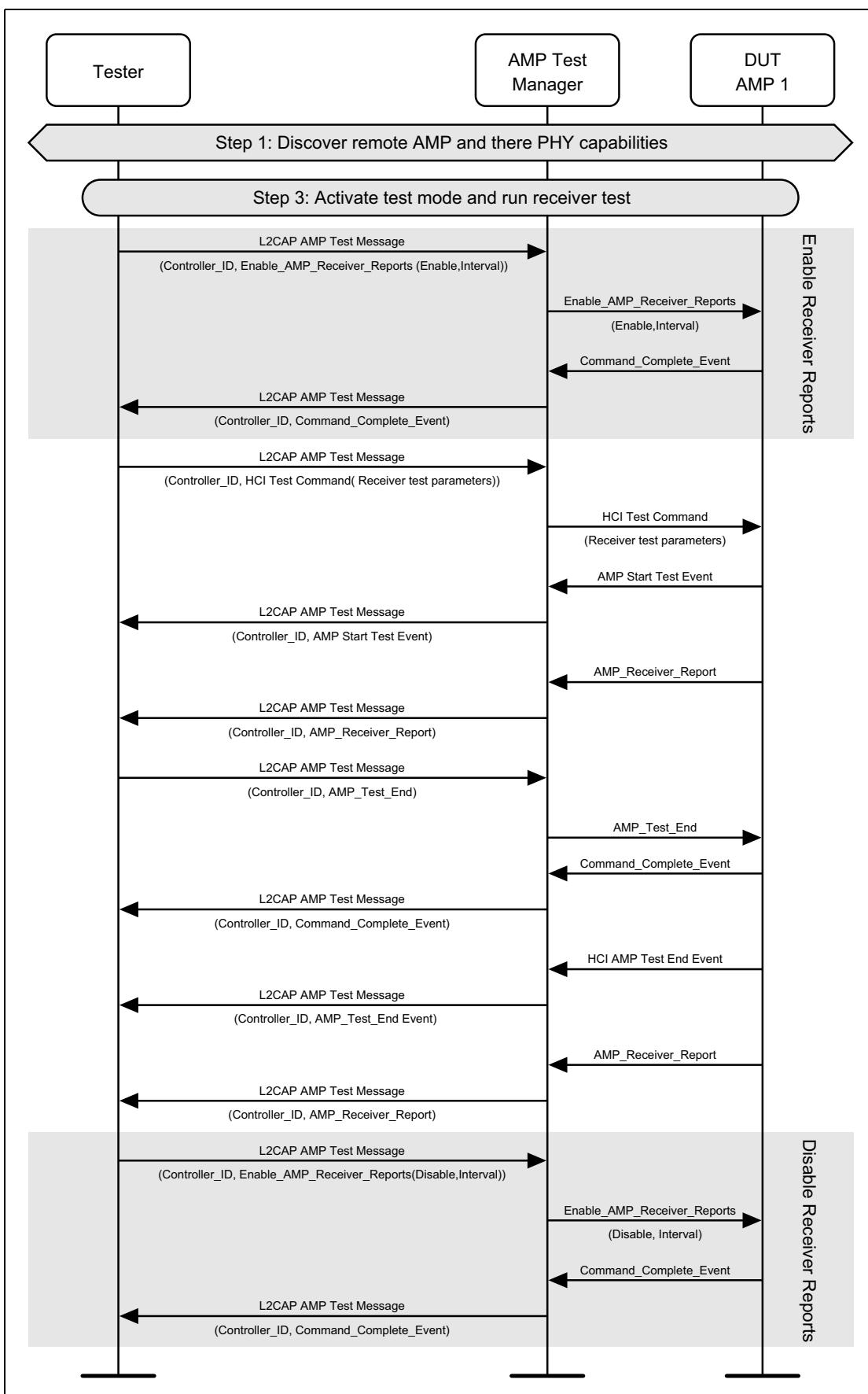


Figure 4.60: Configure and run a receiver test with receiver reports on an AMP.

## 5 SYNCHRONOUS CONNECTION ESTABLISHMENT AND DETACHMENT

### 5.1 SYNCHRONOUS CONNECTION SETUP

Using the HCI\_Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command, a host can add a synchronous logical channel to the link. A synchronous logical link can be provided by creating a SCO or an eSCO logical transport.

Note: An ACL Connection must be established before a synchronous connection can be created.

**Step 1a:** Master device requests a synchronous connection with a device. (See [Figure 5.1](#).)

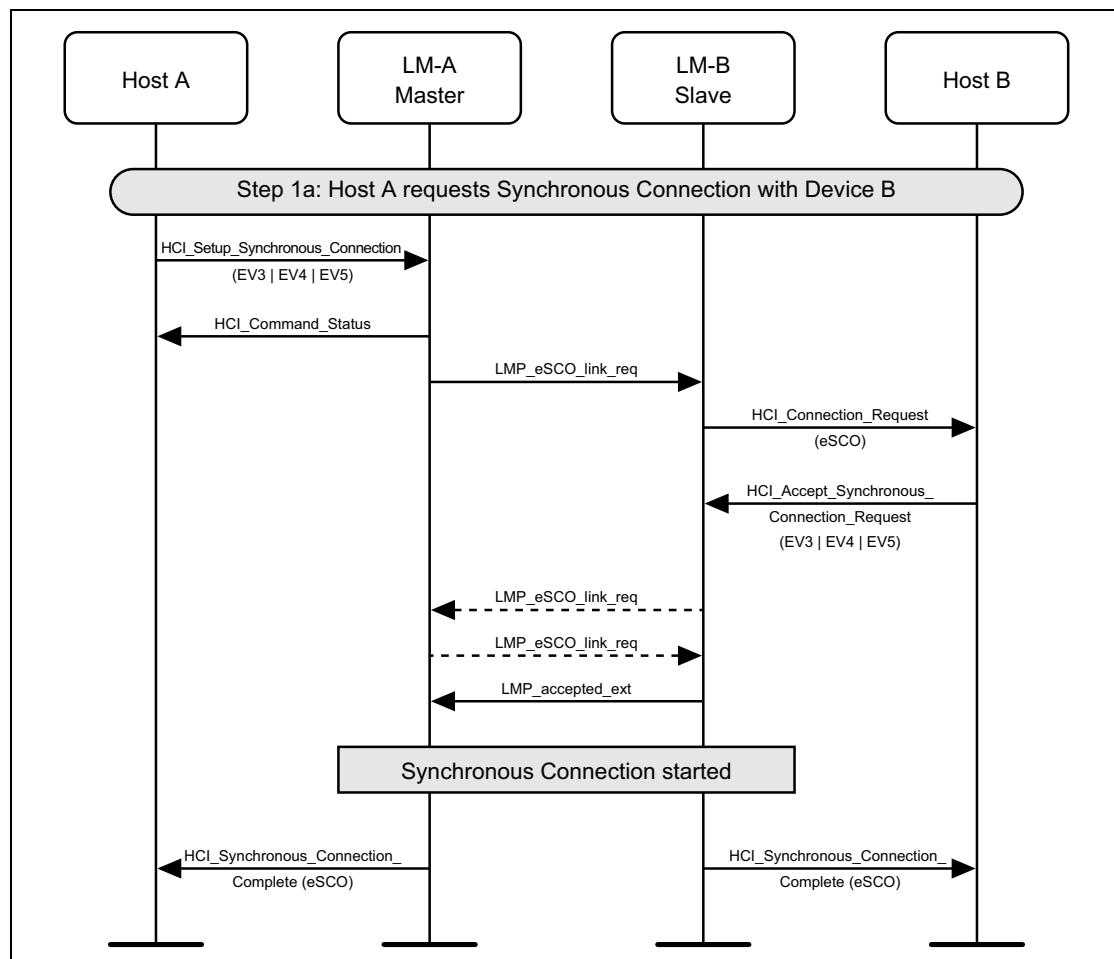
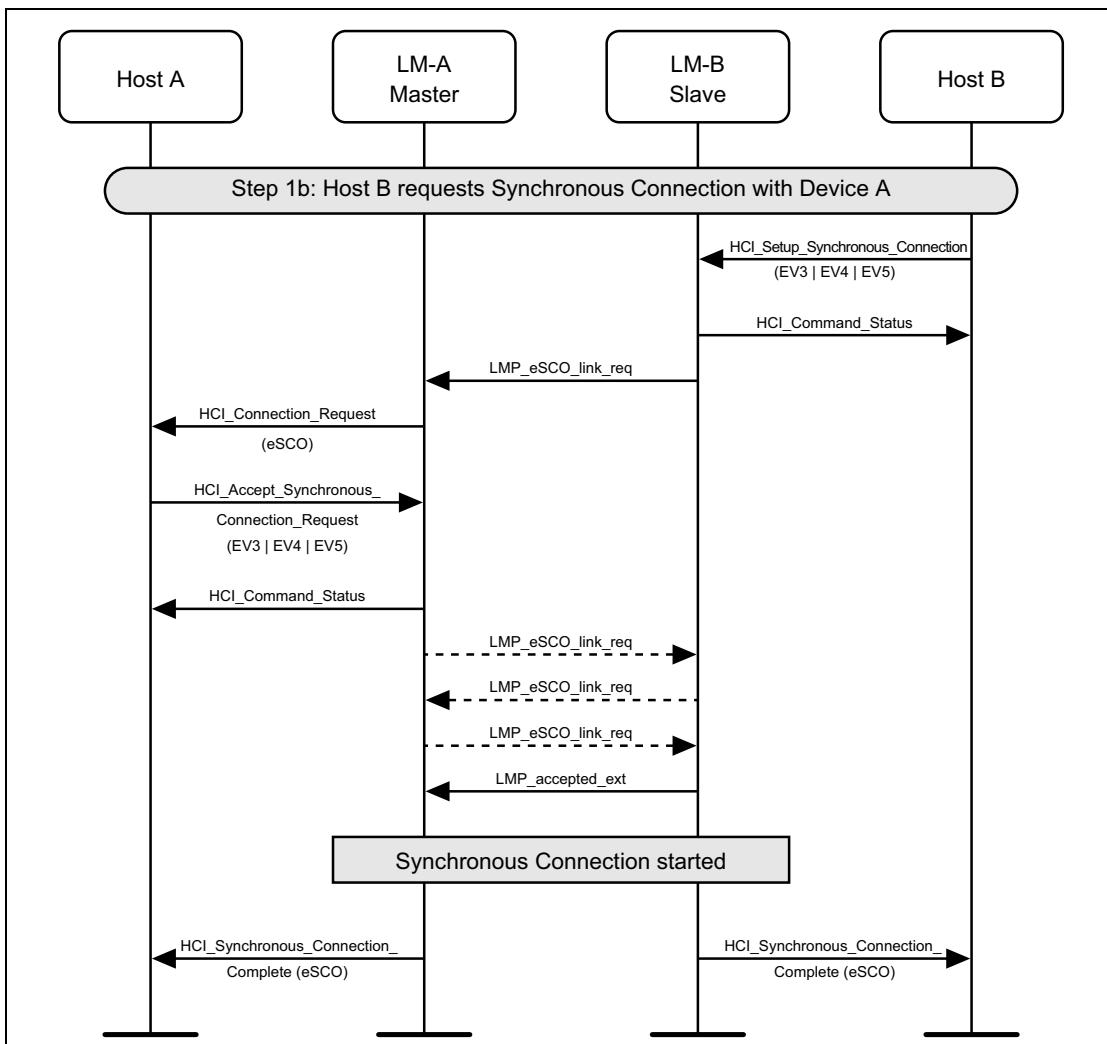


Figure 5.1: Master requests synchronous EV3, EV4 or EV5 connection.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 1b:** Slave device requests a synchronous connection with a device.  
 (See [Figure 5.2.](#))



*Figure 5.2: Slave requests synchronous EV3, EV4 or EV5 connection.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 1c:** Master device requests a SCO connection with a device.  
 (See [Figure 5.3.](#))

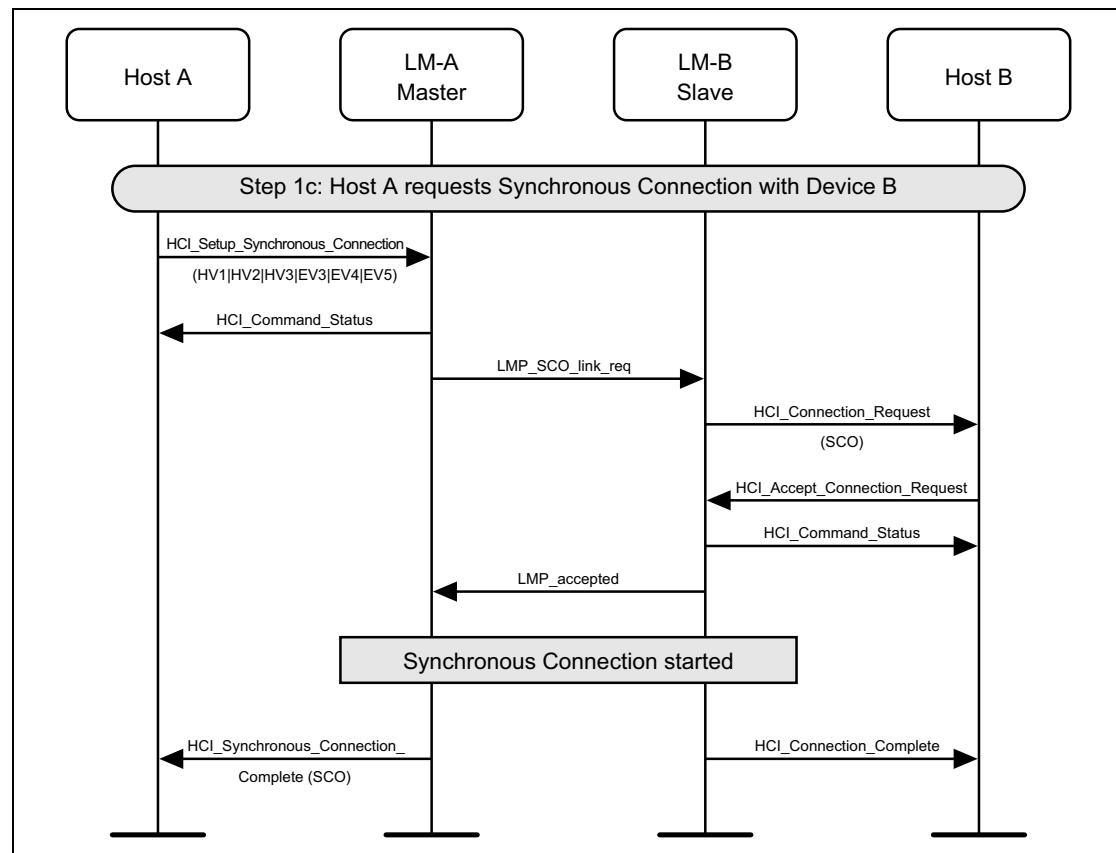
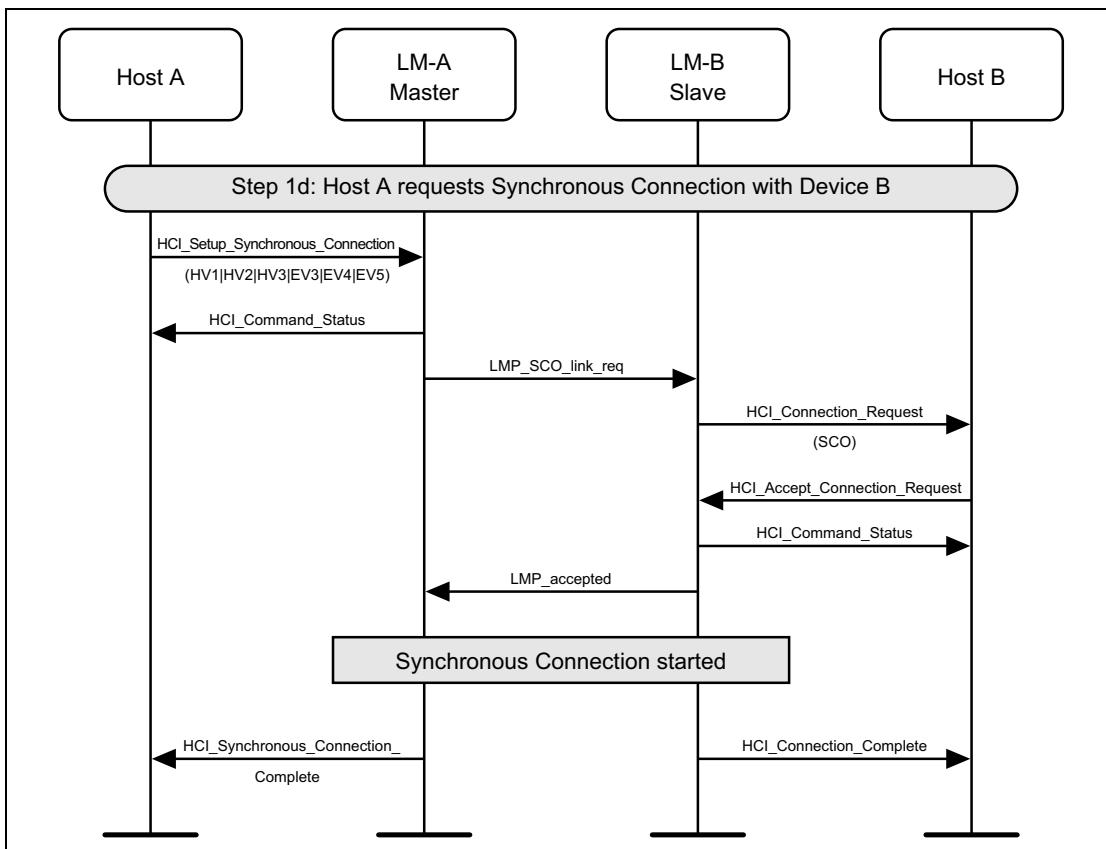


Figure 5.3: Master requests synchronous connection using SCO.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 1d:** Master device requests a SCO connection with a device.  
 (See [Figure 5.4.](#))

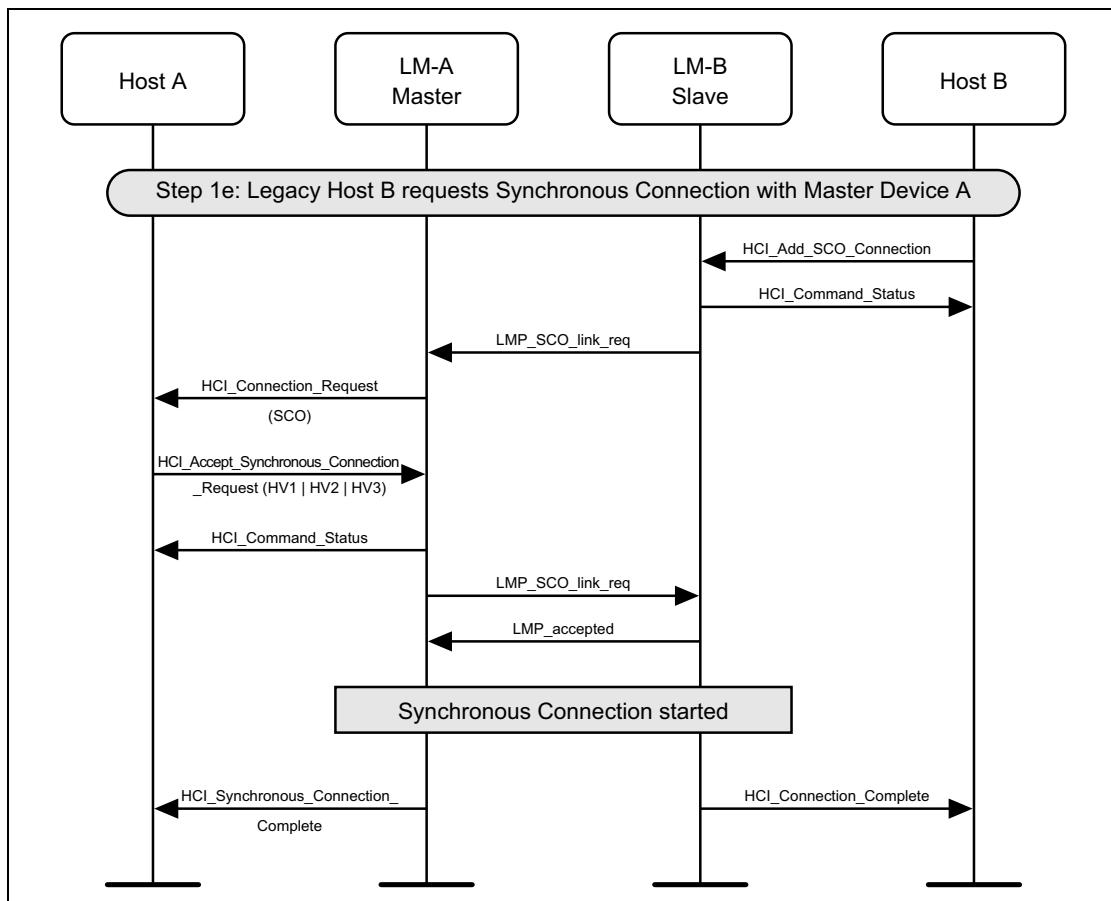


*Figure 5.4: Master requests synchronous connection with legacy slave.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 1e:** Host device requests a SCO connection with a device.  
 (See [Figure 5.5.](#))

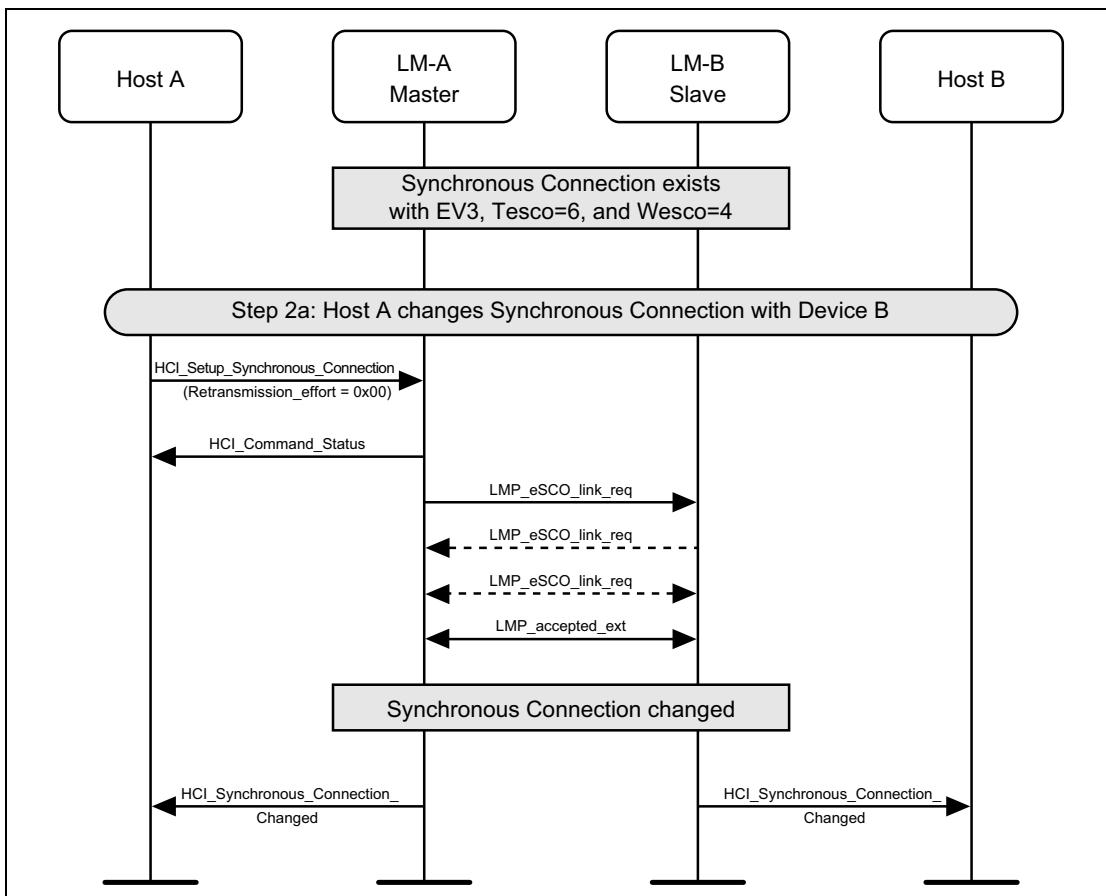


*Figure 5.5: Any device that supports only SCO connections requests a synchronous connection with a device.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2a:** Master renegotiates eSCO connection (See [Figure 5.6.](#))

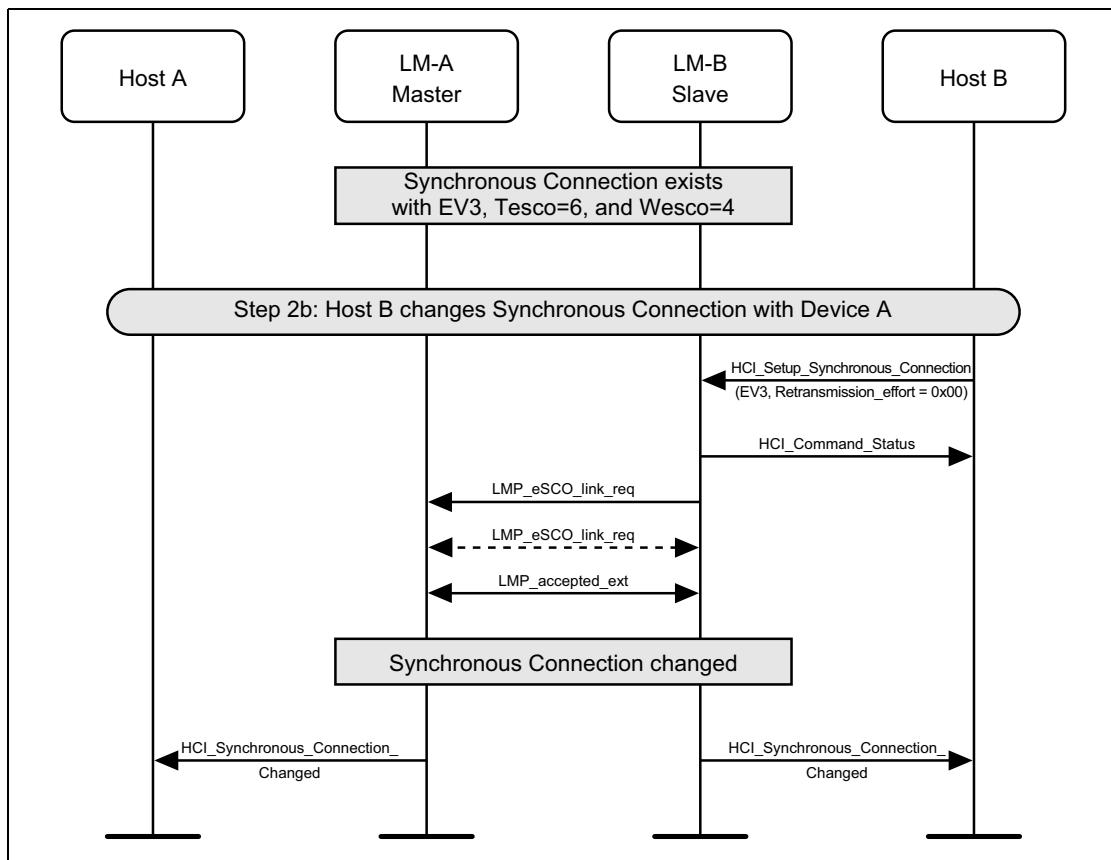


*Figure 5.6: Master renegotiates eSCO connection.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2b:** Slave renegotiates eSCO connection (See [Figure 5.7.](#))



*Figure 5.7: Slave renegotiates eSCO connection.*

## Message Sequence Charts

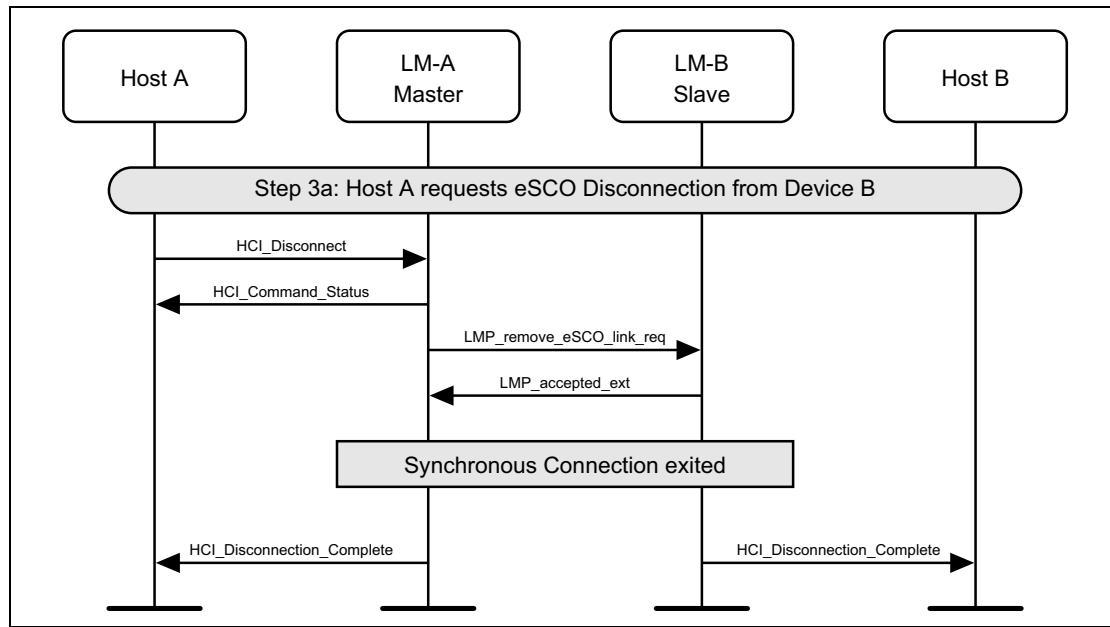
**Step 3a:** eSCO Disconnection. (See [Figure 5.8.](#))

Figure 5.8: Synchronous disconnection of eSCO connection.

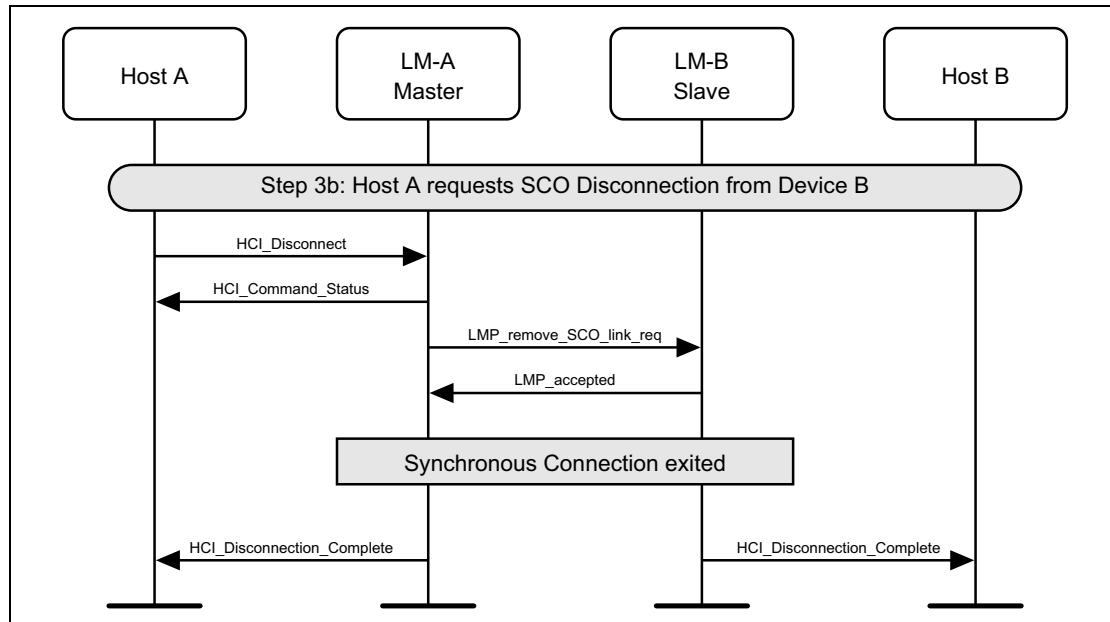
**Step 3b:** SCO Disconnection. (See [Figure 5.9.](#))

Figure 5.9: Synchronous disconnection of SCO connection.

## 5.2 SYNCHRONOUS CONNECTION SETUP WITH ENHANCED SYNCHRONOUS COMMANDS

Using the HCI\_Enhanced\_Setup\_Synchronous\_Connection command, a Host can add a synchronous logical channel to the link. A synchronous logical link can be provided by creating a SCO or an eSCO logical transport.

Note: An ACL Connection must be established before a synchronous connection can be created.

**Step 1a:** Master device requests a synchronous connection with a slave device.

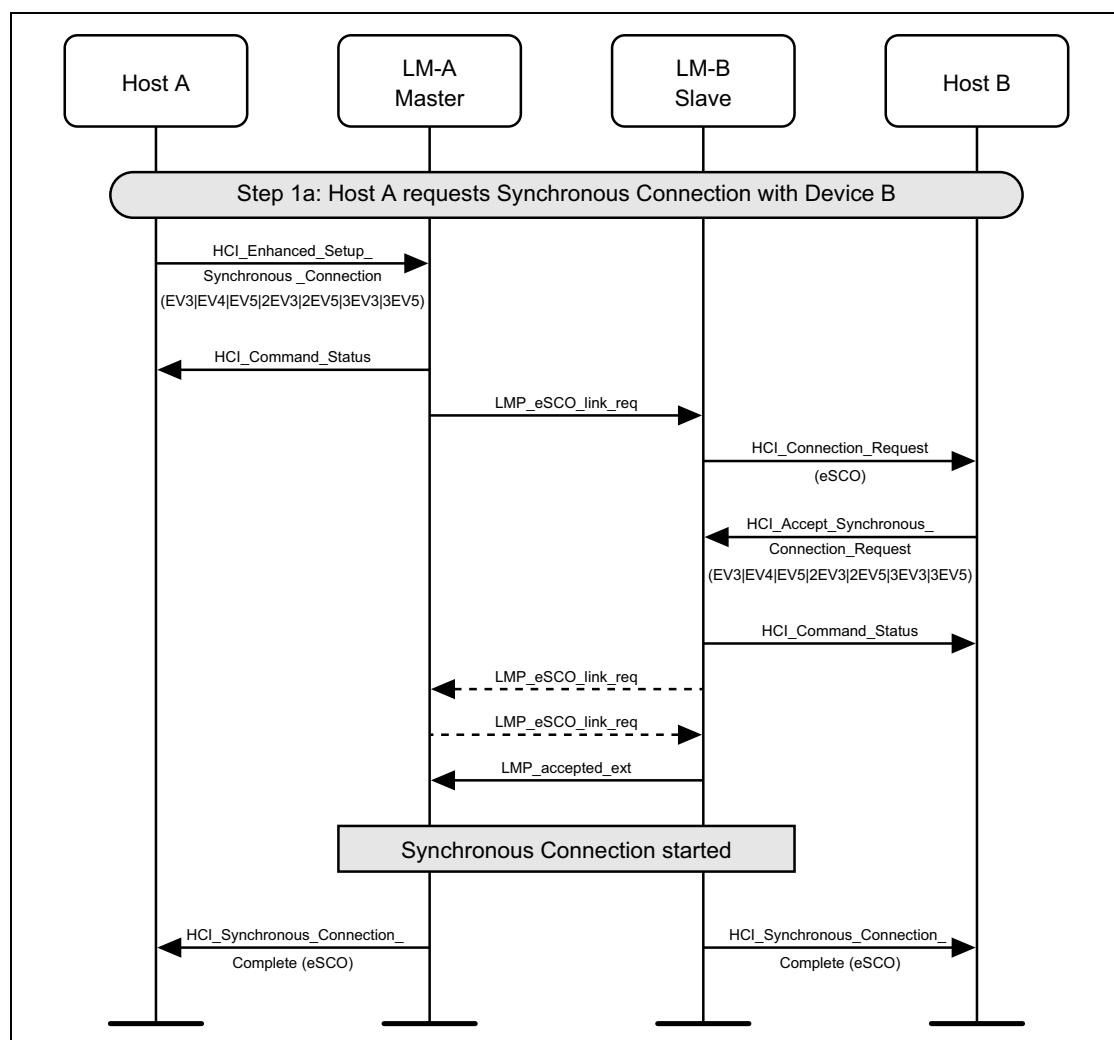


Figure 5.10: Master requests synchronous connection.  
 (EV3, EV4, EV5, 2-EV3, 2-EV5, 3-EV3, or 3-EV5)

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 1b:** Slave device requests a synchronous connection with a master device.

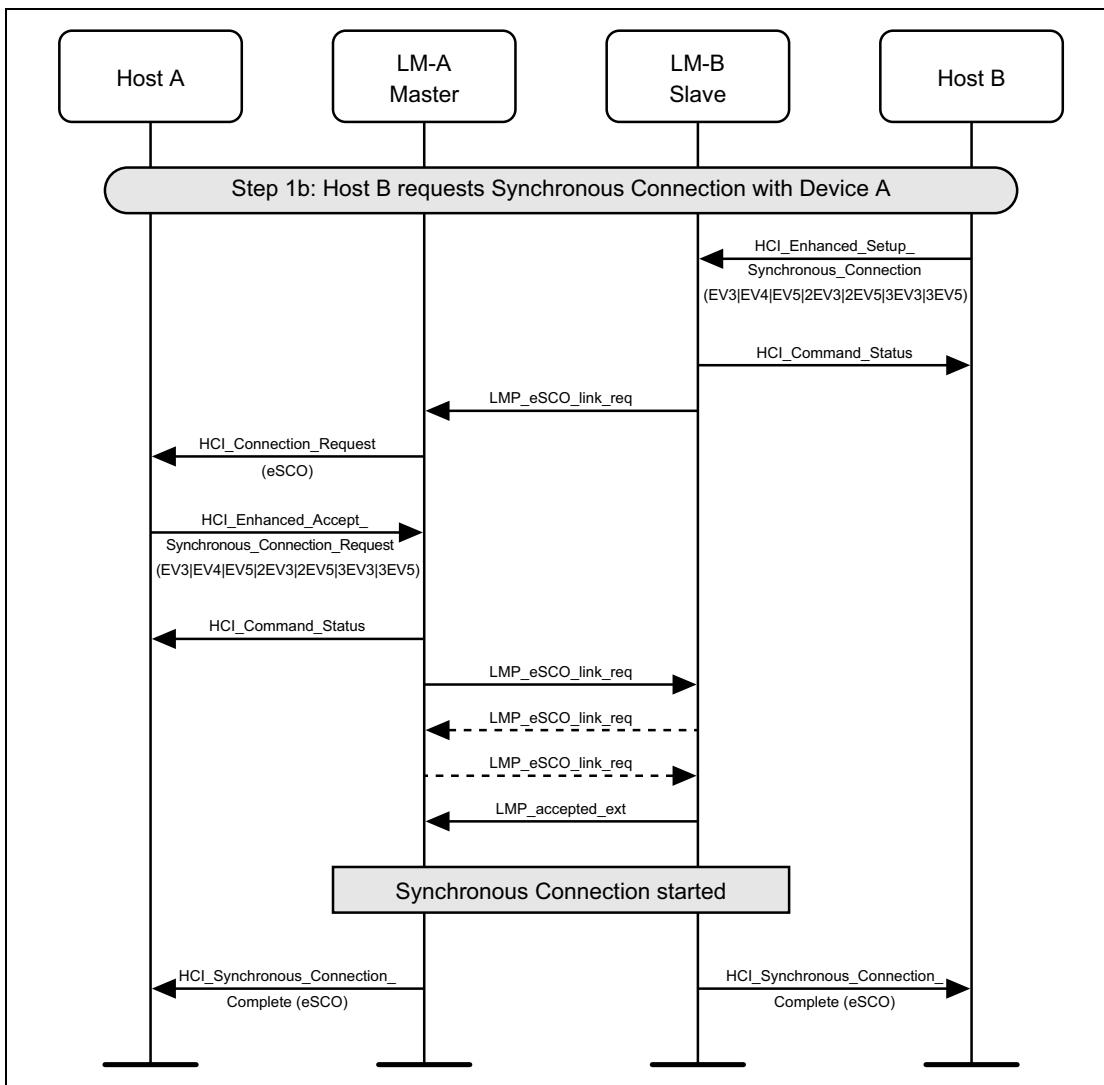


Figure 5.11: Slave requests synchronous connection.  
(EV3, EV4, EV5, 2-EV3, 2-EV5, 3-EV3, or 3-EV5)

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 1c:** Master device requests a SCO connection with a slave device.

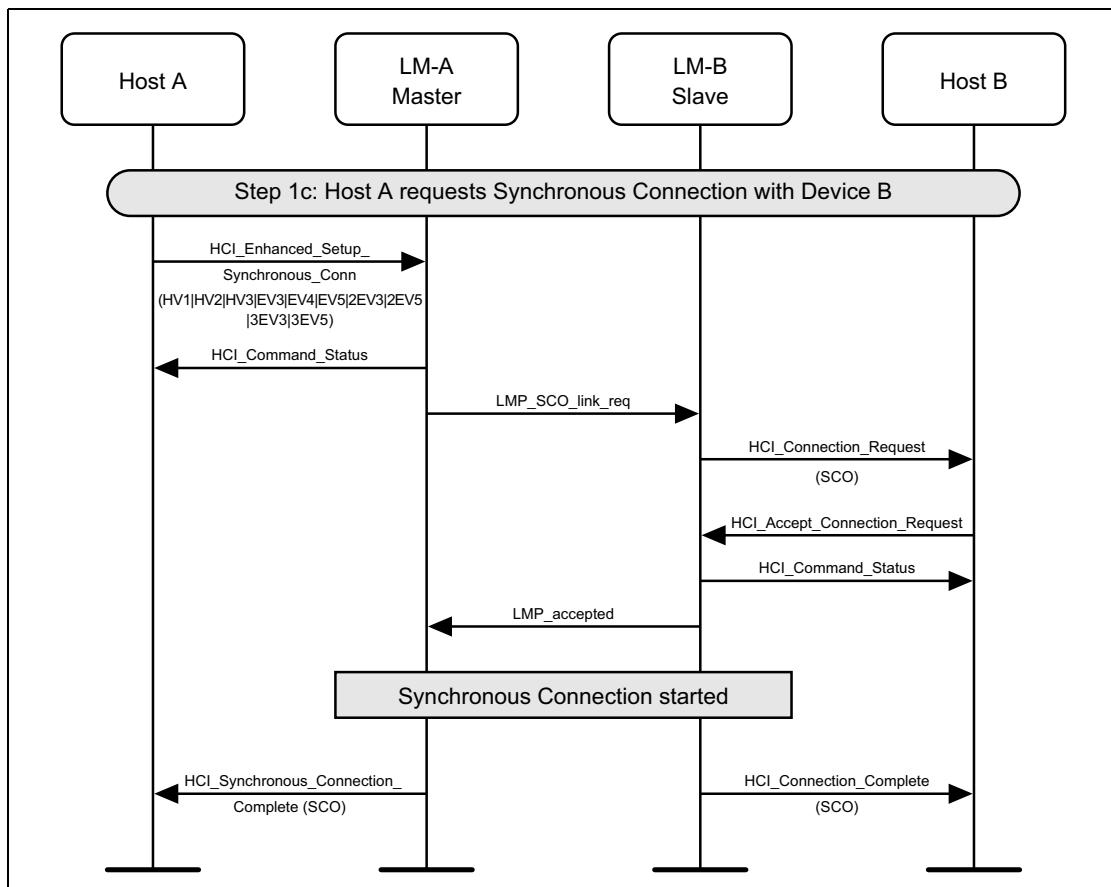


Figure 5.12: Master requests synchronous connection.  
(HV1, HV2, HV3, EV3, EV4, EV5, 2EV3, 2EV5, 3EV3 or 3EV5)

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 1d:** Slave device requests a SCO connection with a master device.

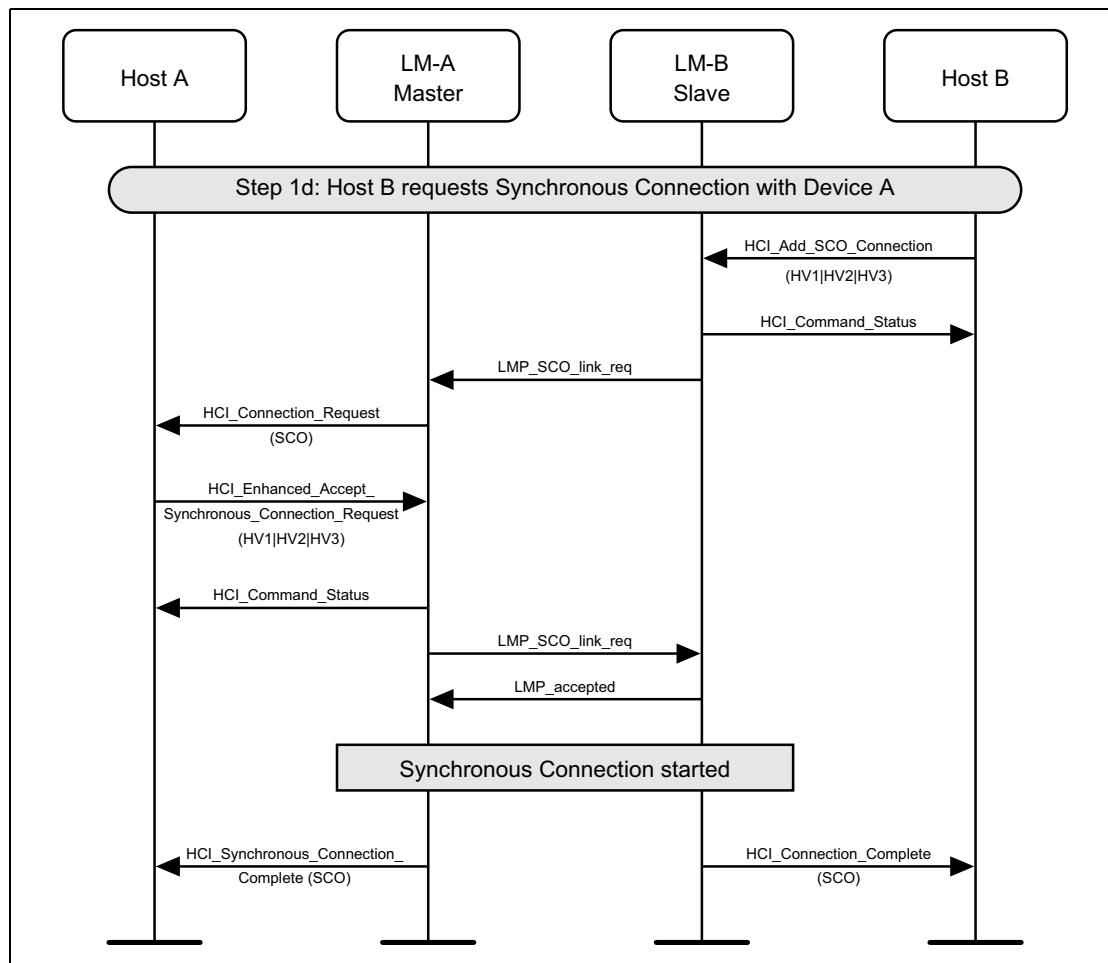


Figure 5.13: Slave requests synchronous connection. (HV1, HV2, or HV3).

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2a:** Master renegotiates eSCO connection.

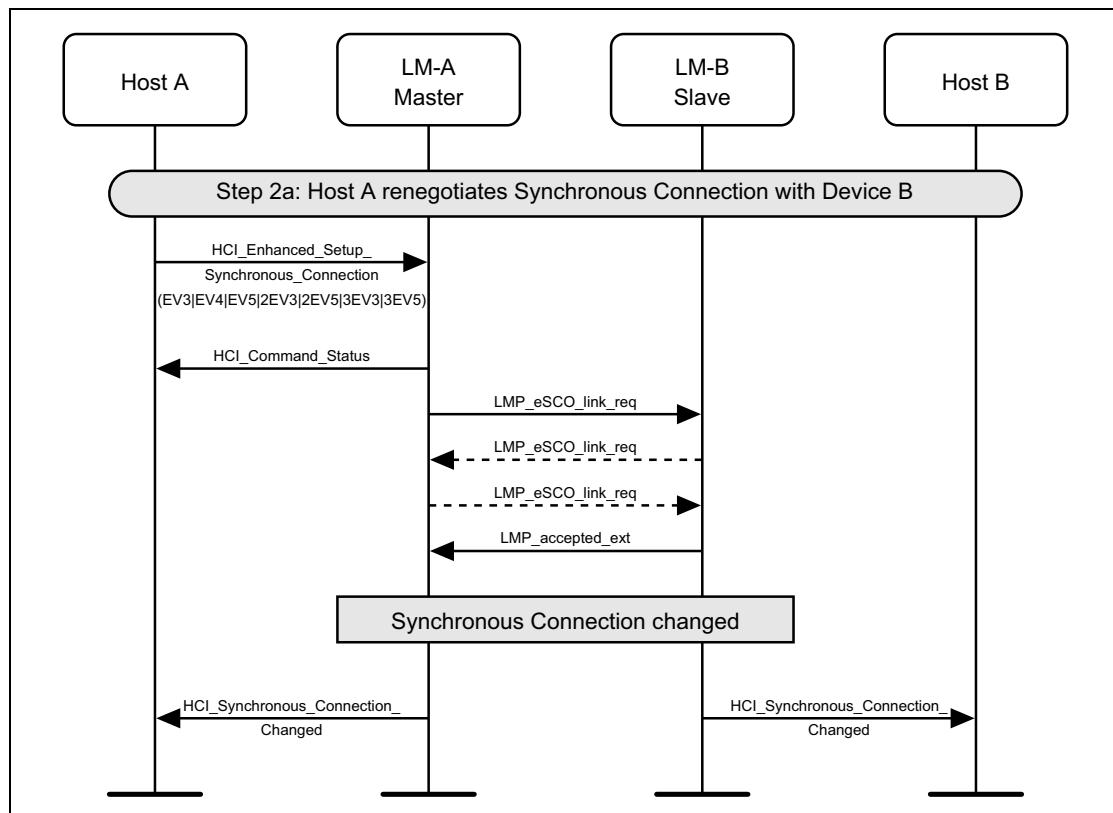


Figure 5.14: Master renegotiates synchronous connection parameter change.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2b:** Slave renegotiates eSCO connection.

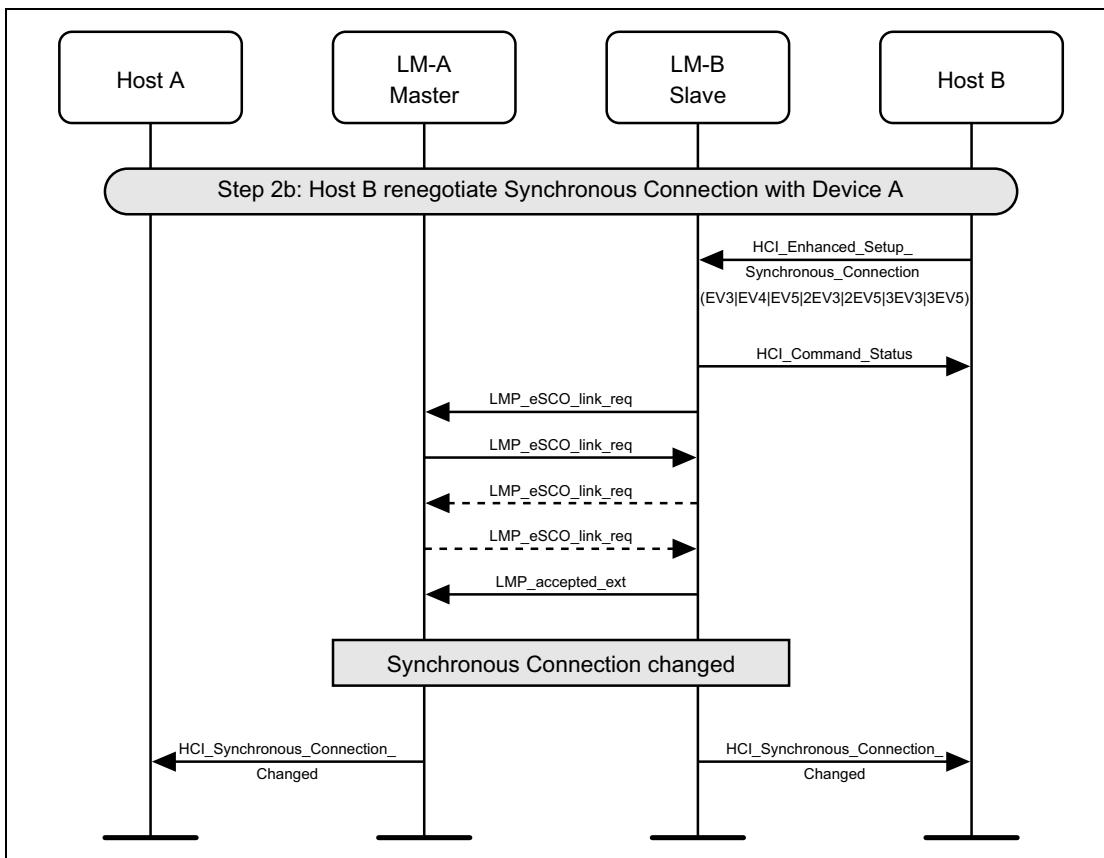


Figure 5.15: Slave renegotiates synchronous connection parameter change.

## 6 SNIFF, HOLD AND PARK

Entry into Sniff mode, Hold mode or Park state requires an established ACL Connection.

### 6.1 SNIFF MODE

The HCI\_Sniff\_Mode command is used to enter sniff mode.

The HCI\_Exit\_Sniff\_Mode command is used to exit sniff mode.

**Step 1:** Host requests to enter sniff mode. Multiple LMP\_sniff\_req PDUs may be sent as the parameters for sniff mode are negotiated. (See [Figure 6.1](#).)

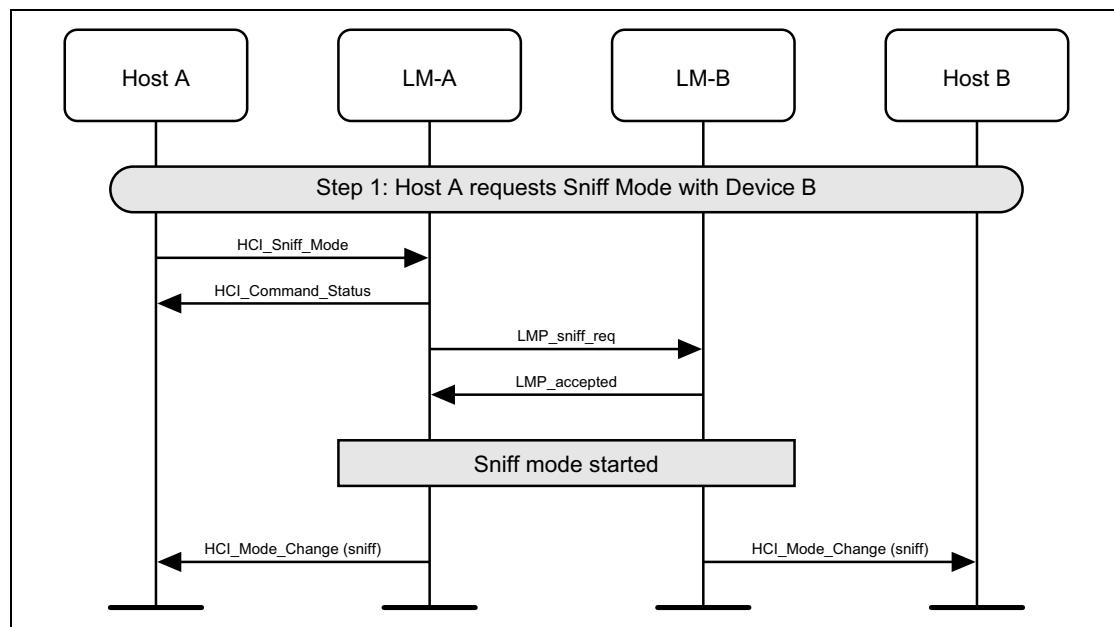
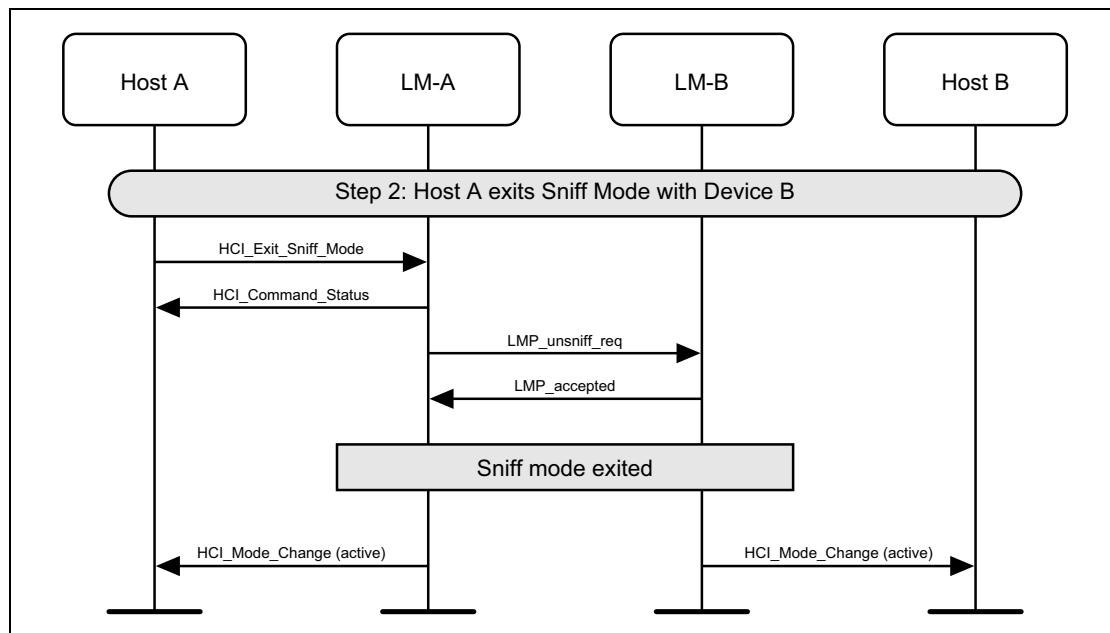


Figure 6.1: Sniff mode request.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2:** Host requests to exit sniff mode. (See [Figure 6.2](#).)

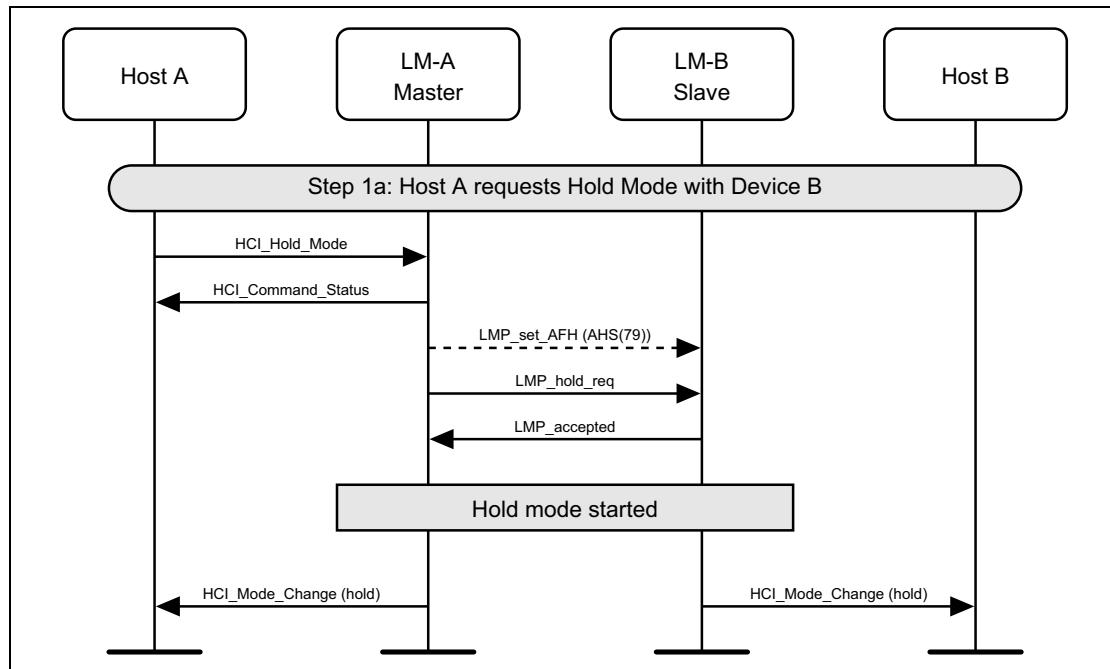


*Figure 6.2: Exit sniff mode request.*

## 6.2 HOLD MODE

The `HCI_Hold_Mode` command can be used to place a device into hold mode. The Controller may do this by either negotiating the hold mode parameters or forcing hold mode. Hold mode will automatically end after the negotiated length of time.

**Step 1a:** A host requests hold mode. (See [Figure 6.3](#).)



*Figure 6.3: Hold request.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 1b:** A host may force hold mode. (See [Figure 6.4.](#))

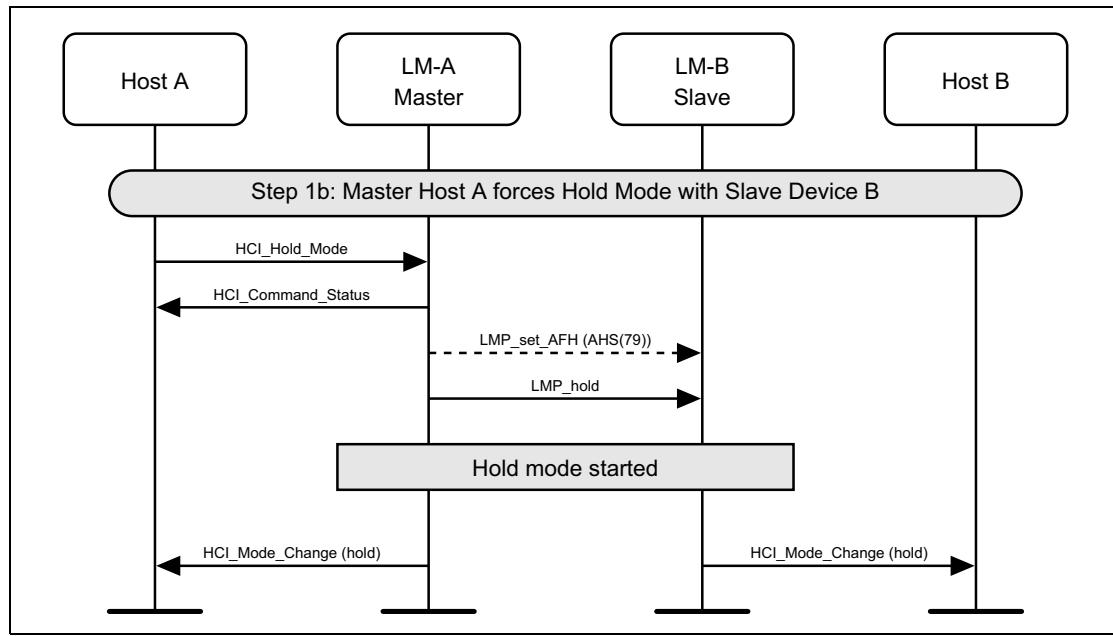
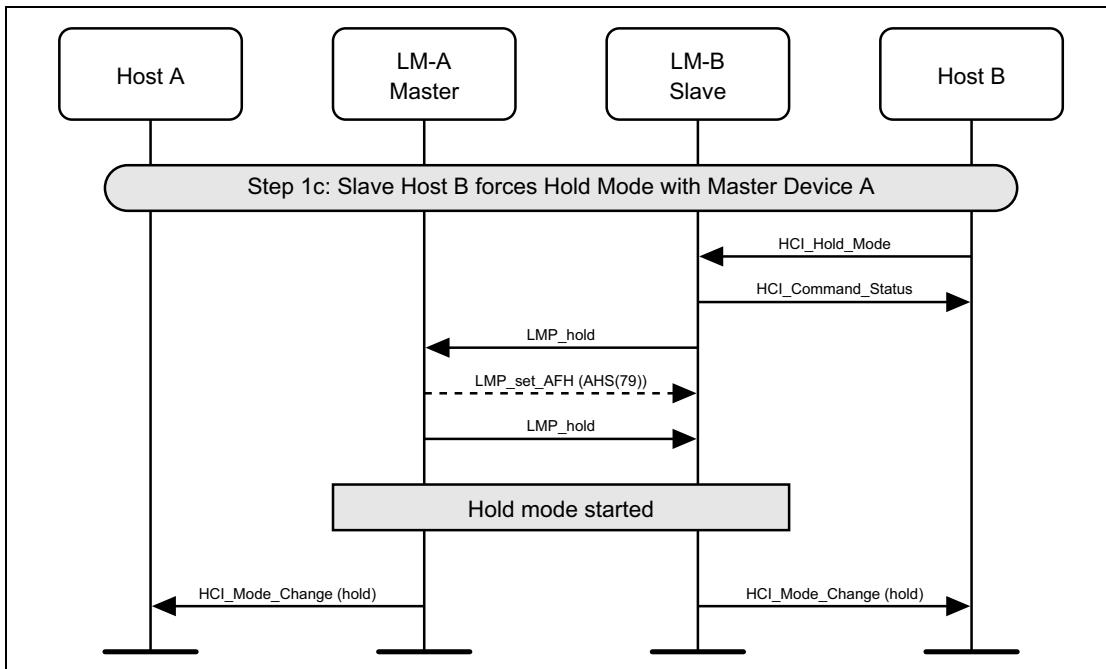


Figure 6.4: Master forces hold mode.

## Message Sequence Charts

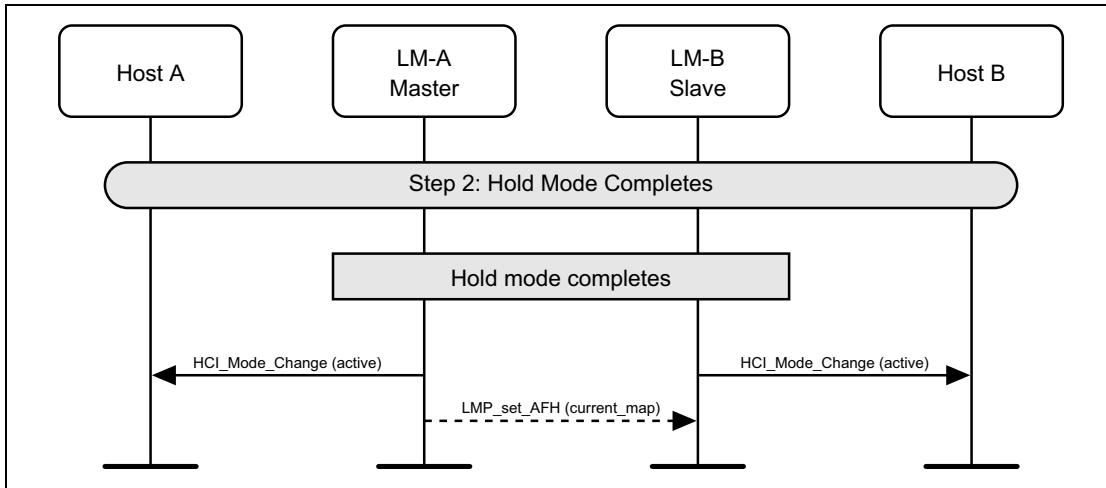


**Step 1c:** A slave device requests hold mode. (See [Figure 6.5.](#))



*Figure 6.5: Slave forces hold mode.*

**Step 2:** When hold mode completes the hosts are notified using the HCI\_Mode\_Change event. (See [Figure 6.6.](#))

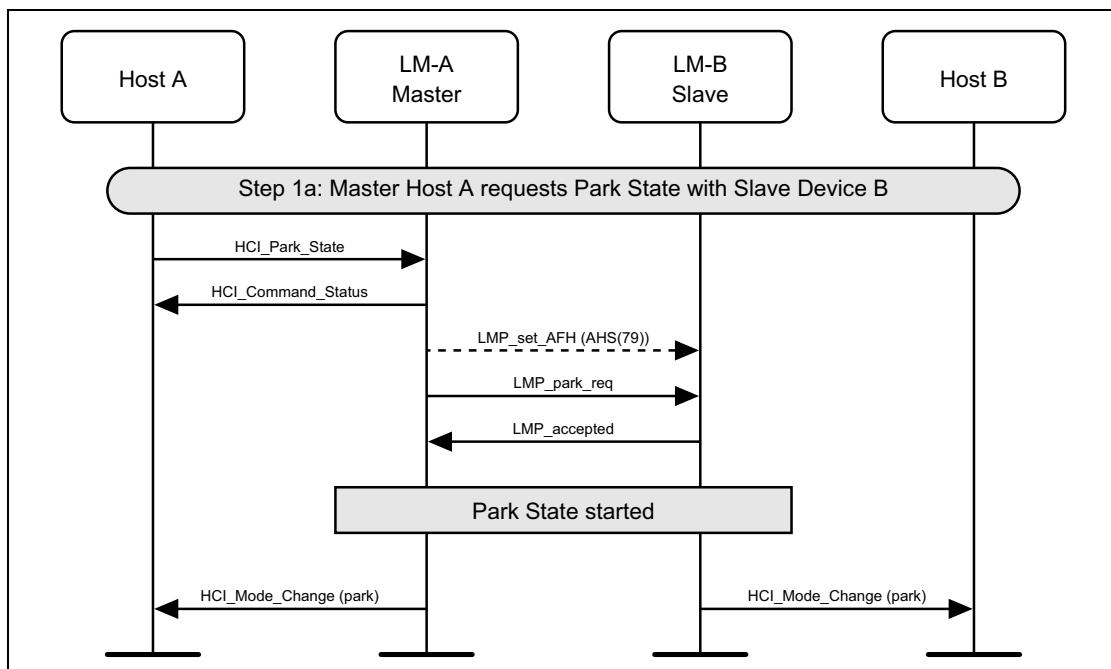


*Figure 6.6: Hold mode completes.*

## 6.3 PARK STATE

Park state can be entered by using the HCI\_Park\_State command.

**Step 1a:** The master requests to place the slave in the park state. Before sending the LMP\_park\_req PDU, the master may disable AFH by setting the connection into AHS(79). (See [Figure 6.7](#).)



*Figure 6.7: Park state request from master.*

**Step 1b:** The slave requests to be placed in the park state. Before sending the LMP\_park\_req PDU back to the slave, the master may disable AFH by setting the connection into AHS(79). (See [Figure 6.8](#) on page 1126.)

## Message Sequence Charts

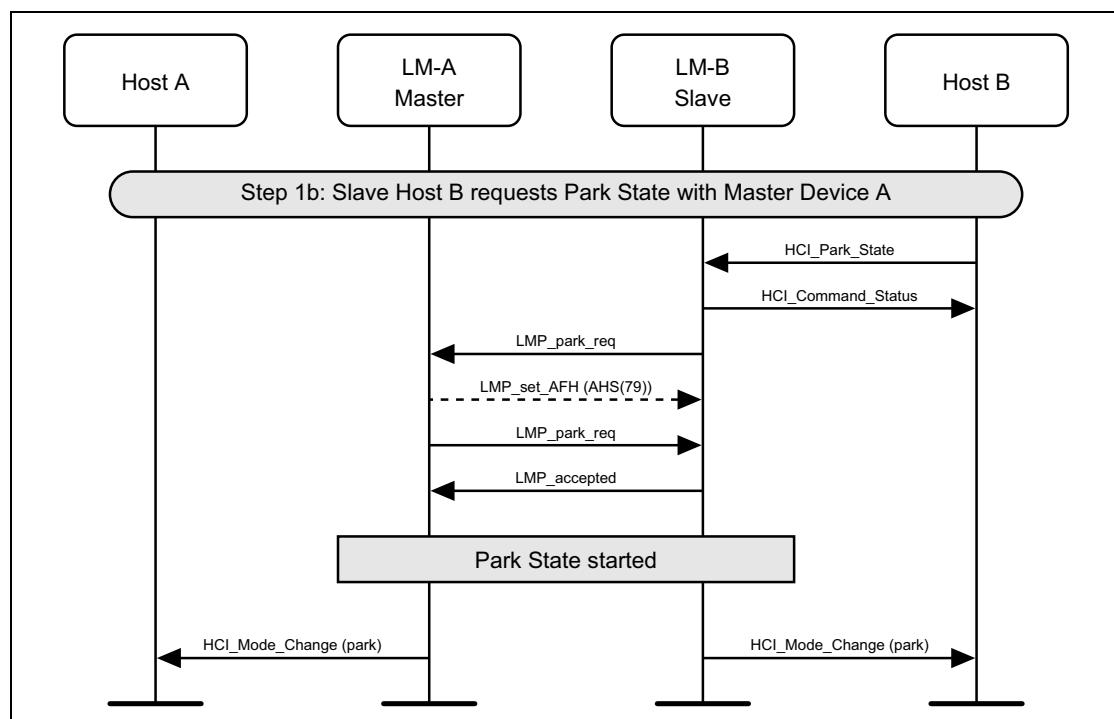


Figure 6.8: Park state request from slave.

**Step 2:** When in the park state, a slave still needs to unparked for link supervision purposes. The master sends an LMP\_unpark\_PM\_ADDR\_req PDU or an LMP\_unpark\_BD\_ADDR\_req PDU to the slave during the beacon. Only the PM\_ADDR version is illustrated in the figure. (See [Figure 6.9.](#))

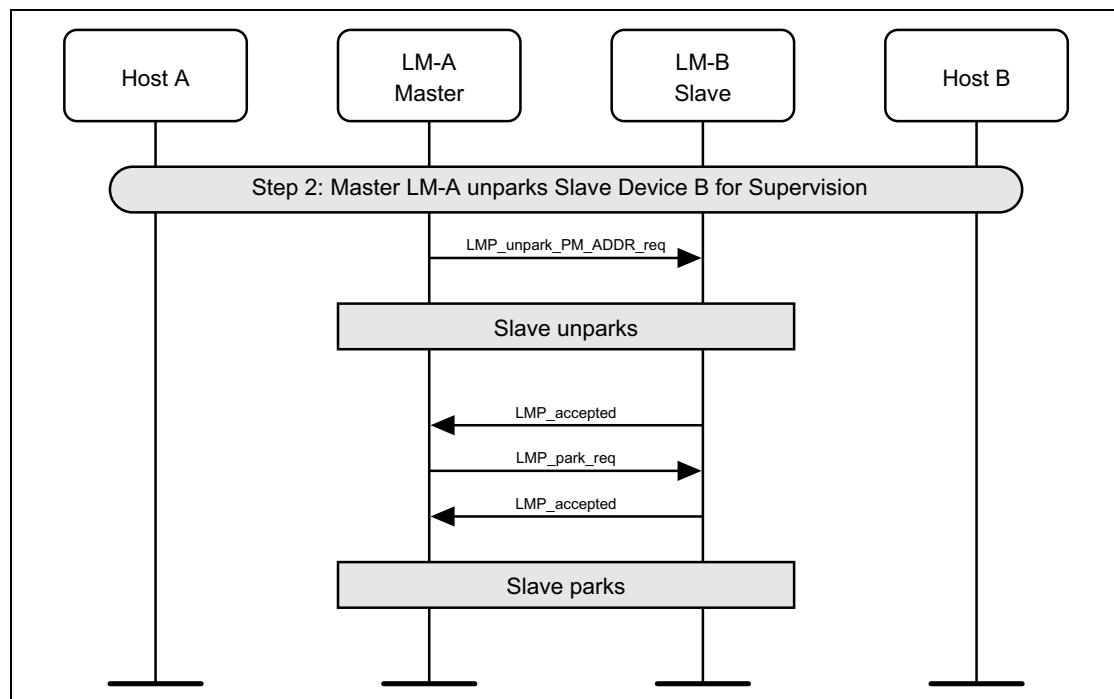
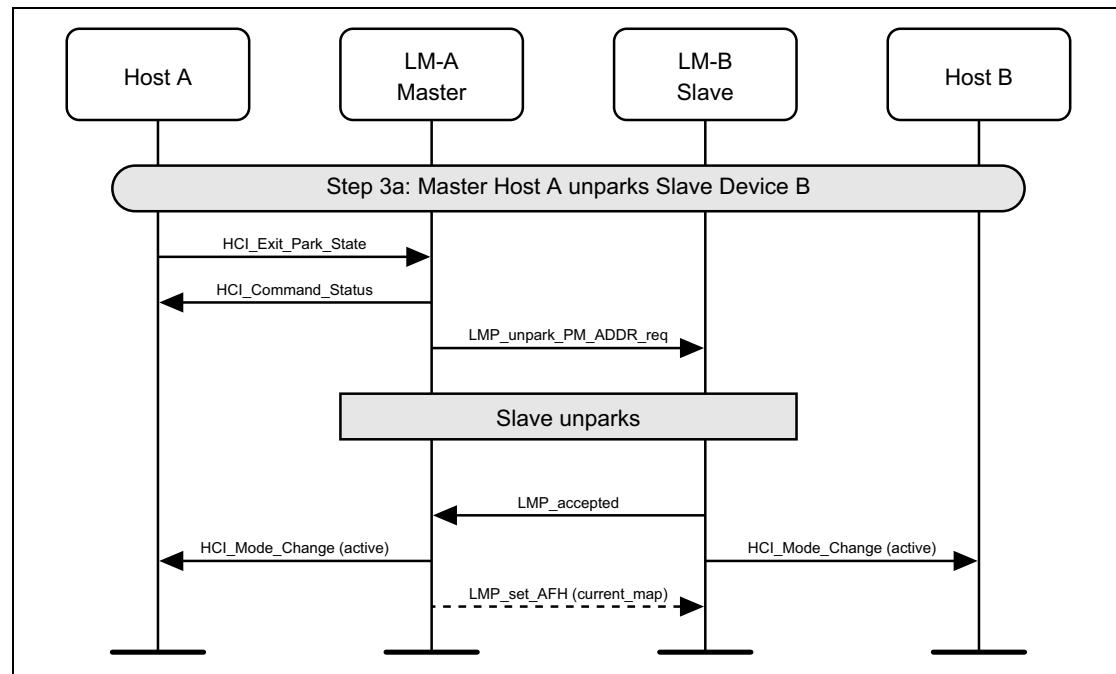


Figure 6.9: Master unparks slave for supervision.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 3a:** A master may unpark a slave to exit park state. The master should re-enable AFH by setting the current AFH channel map to the unparked slave. (See [Figure 6.10.](#).)



*Figure 6.10: Master exits park state with slave.*

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 3b:** A slave may request to be unparked by sending a message in an access window. It will then receive instructions from the master to unpark. The master should re-enable AFH by setting the current AFH channel map to the unparked slave. (See [Figure 6.11](#).)

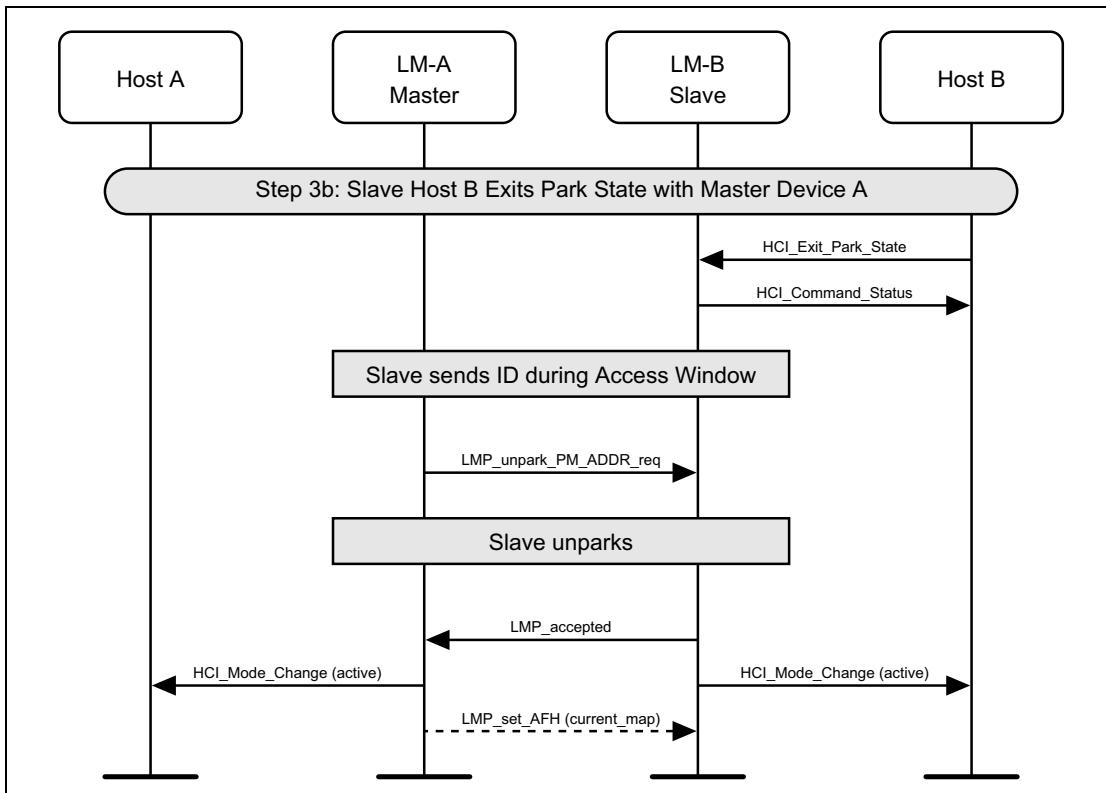


Figure 6.11: Slave exits park state with master.

## 7 BUFFER MANAGEMENT, FLOW CONTROL

Buffer management is very important for resource limited devices. This can be achieved on the Host Controller Interface using the HCI\_Read\_Buffer\_Size command, and the HCI\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets event, and the HCI\_Set\_Host\_Controller\_To\_Host\_Flow\_Control, HCI\_Host\_Buffer\_Size and HCI\_Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets commands.

**Step 1:** During initialization, the host reads the buffer sizes available in the Controller. When an HCI Data Packet has been transferred to the remote device, and a Baseband acknowledgement has been received for this data, then an HCI\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets event will be generated. (See [Figure 7.1](#).)

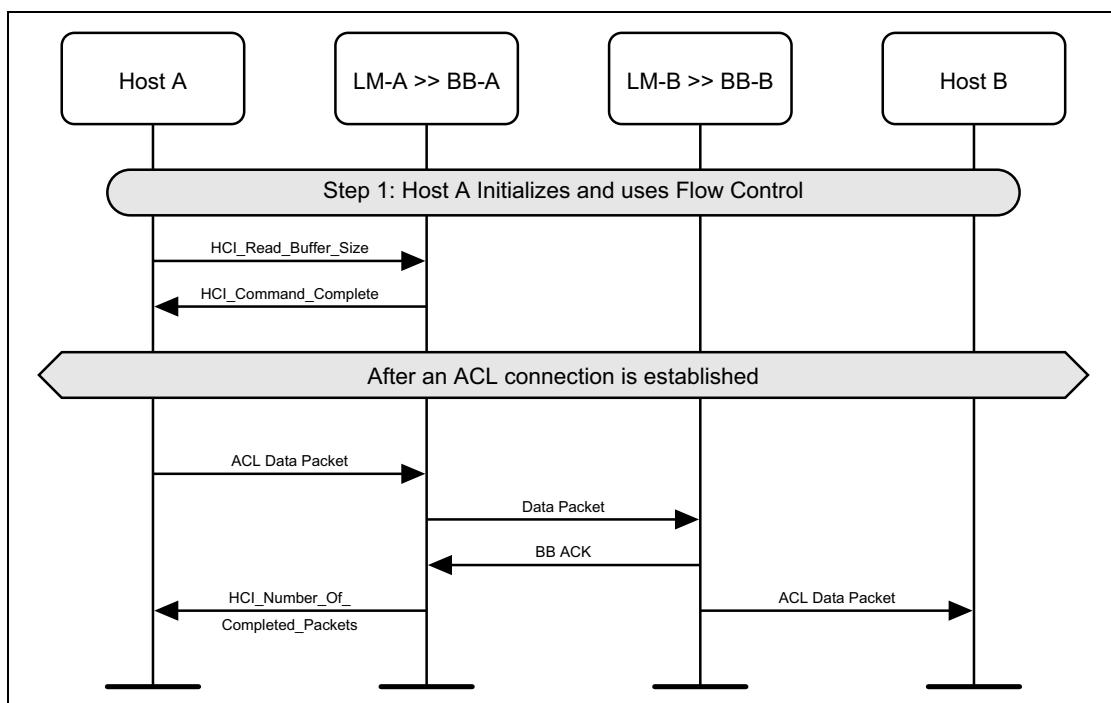


Figure 7.1: Host to Controller flow control.

## Message Sequence Charts



**Step 2:** During initialization, the host notifies the Controller that host flow control shall be used, and then the host buffer sizes available. When a data packet has been received from a remote device, an HCI Data Packet is sent to the host from the Controller, and the host shall acknowledge its receipt by sending HCI\_Host\_Number\_Of\_Completed\_Packets. (See [Figure 7.2.](#))

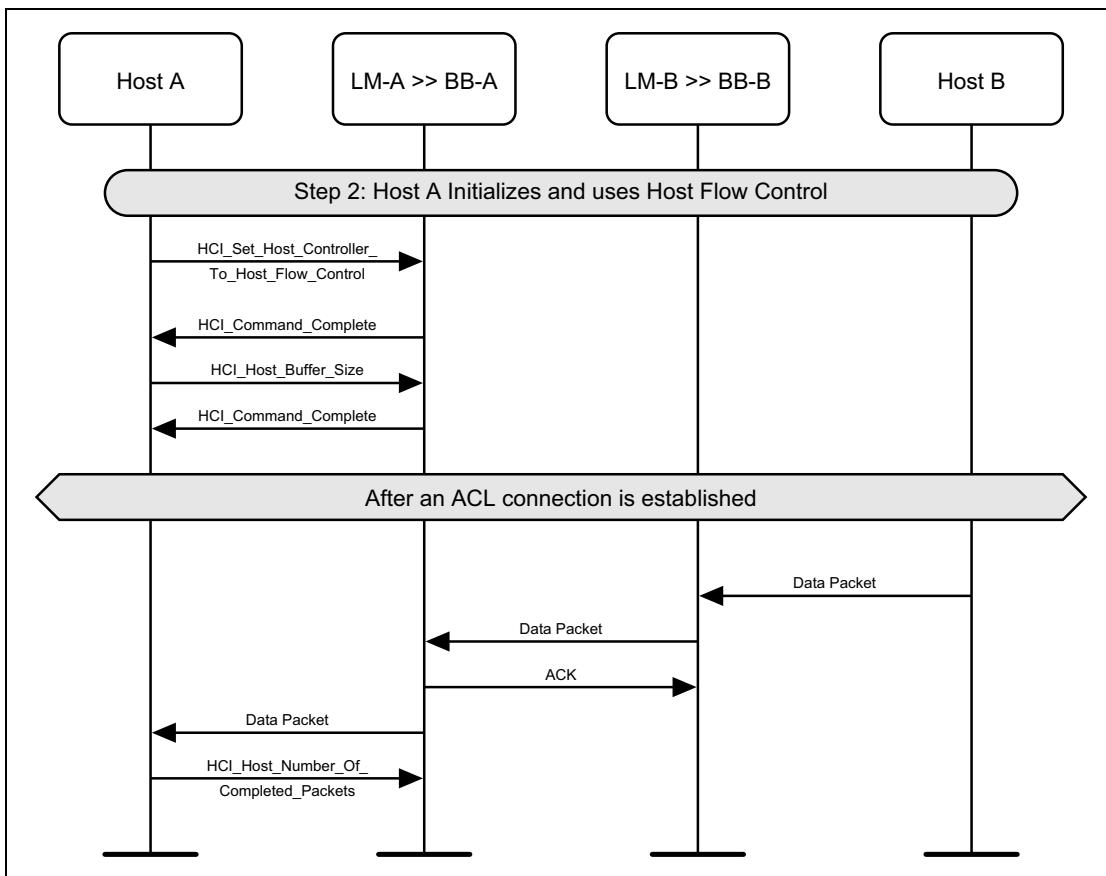


Figure 7.2: Controller to Host flow control.

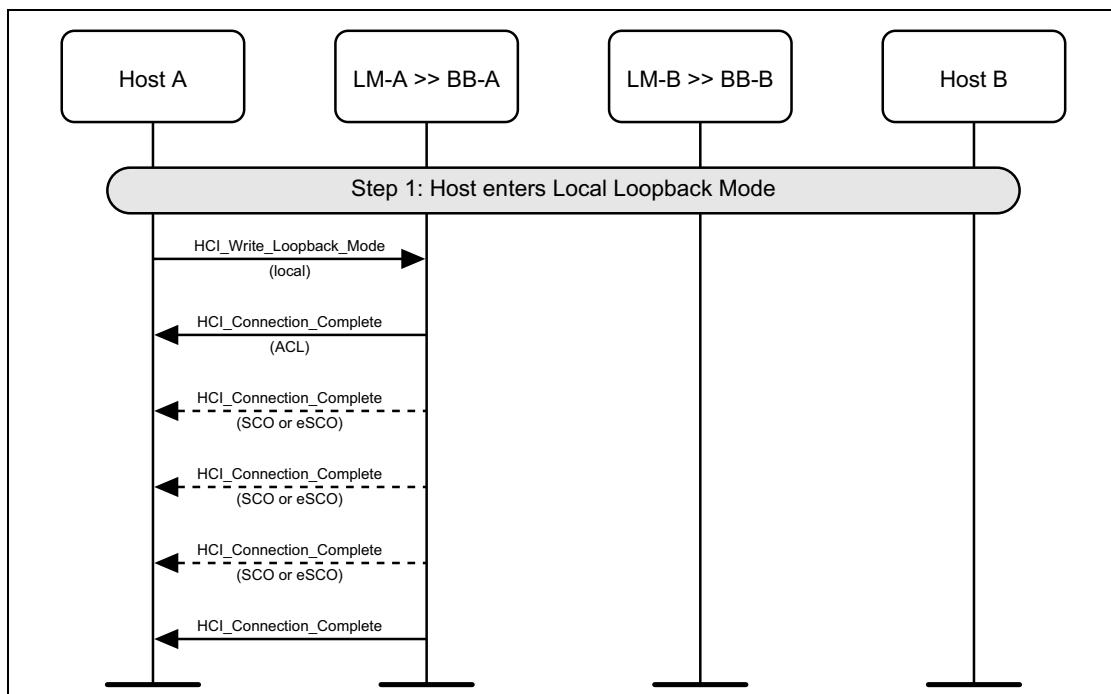
## 8 LOOPBACK MODE

The loopback modes are used for testing of a device only.

### 8.1 LOCAL LOOPBACK MODE

The local loopback mode is used to loopback received HCI Commands, and HCI ACL and HCI Synchronous packets sent from the Host to the Controller.

**Step 1:** The host enters local loopback mode. Four connection complete events are generated and then a command complete event.  
 (See [Figure 8.1.](#).)

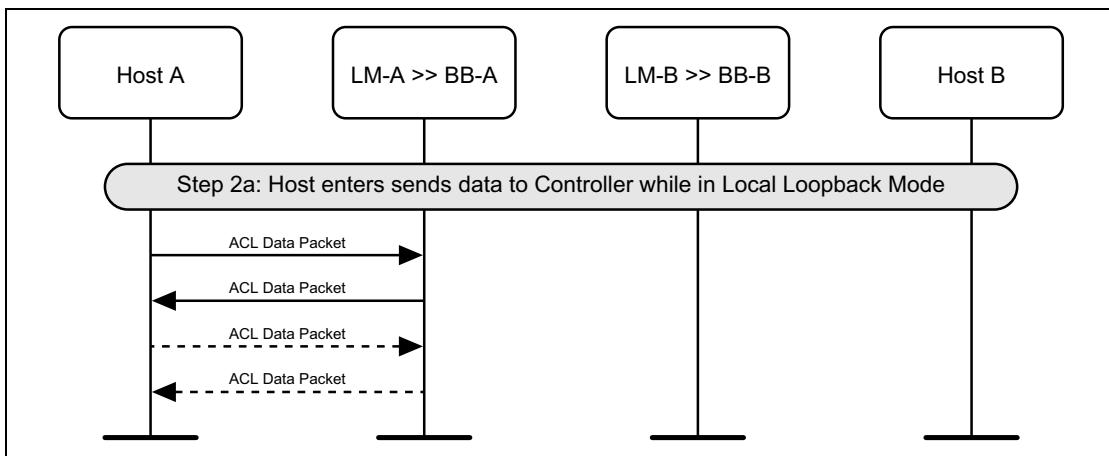


*Figure 8.1: Entering local loopback mode.*

## Message Sequence Charts

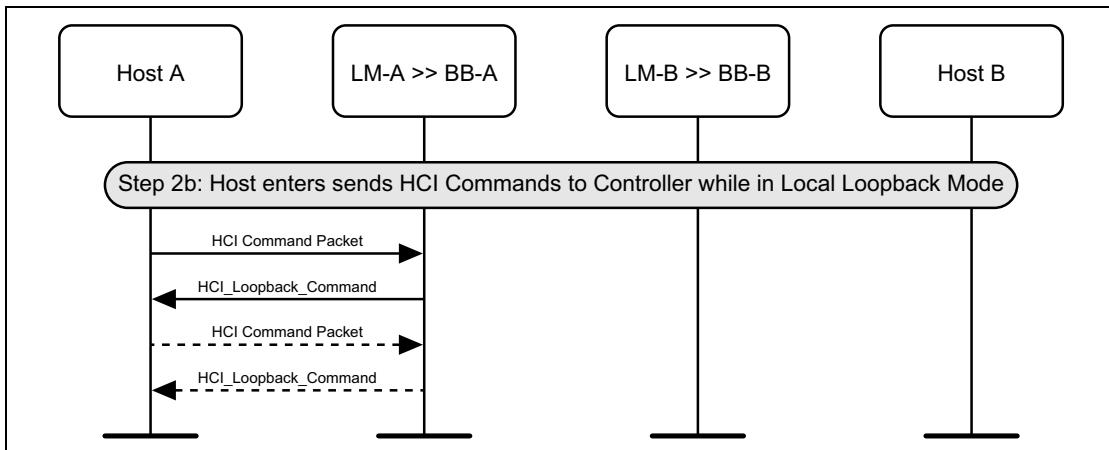


**Step 2a:** The host sending HCI Data Packet will receive the exact same data back in HCI Data Packets from the Controller. (See [Figure 8.2.](#))



*Figure 8.2: Looping back data in local loopback mode.*

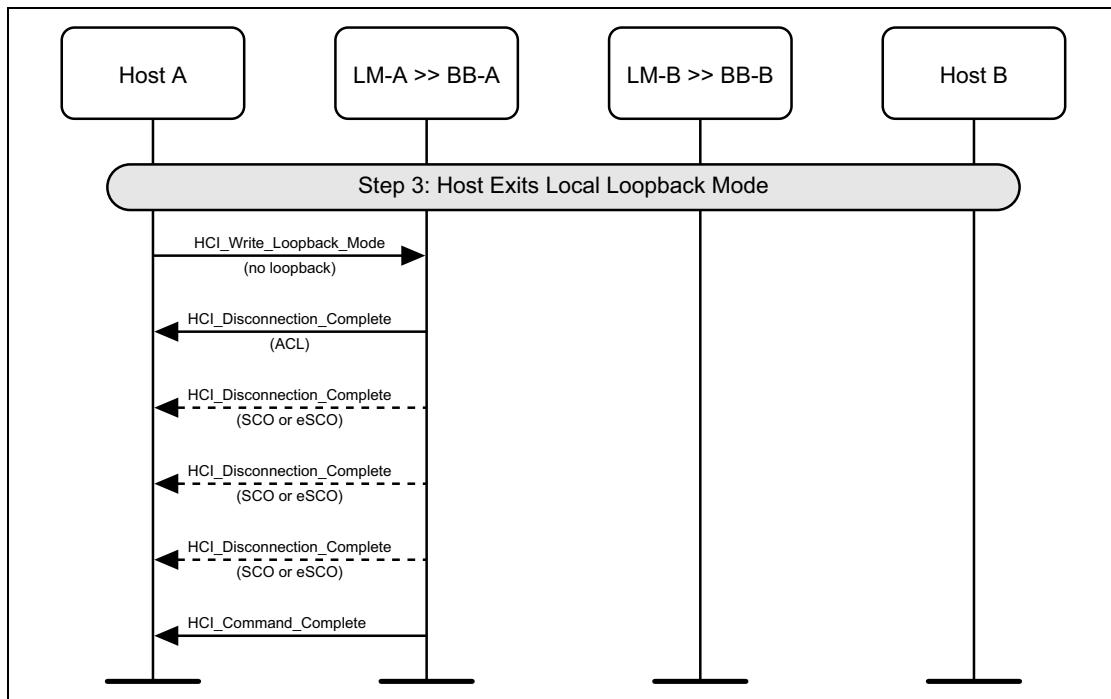
**Step 2b:** The host sending most HCI Command Packets to the Controller will receive an HCI\_Loopback\_Command event with the contents of the HCI Command Packet in the payload. (See [Figure 8.3.](#))



*Figure 8.3: Looping back commands in local loopback mode.*

*Message Sequence Charts*

**Step 3:** The host exits local loopback mode. Multiple disconnection complete events are generated before the command complete event.  
(See [Figure 8.4.](#).)

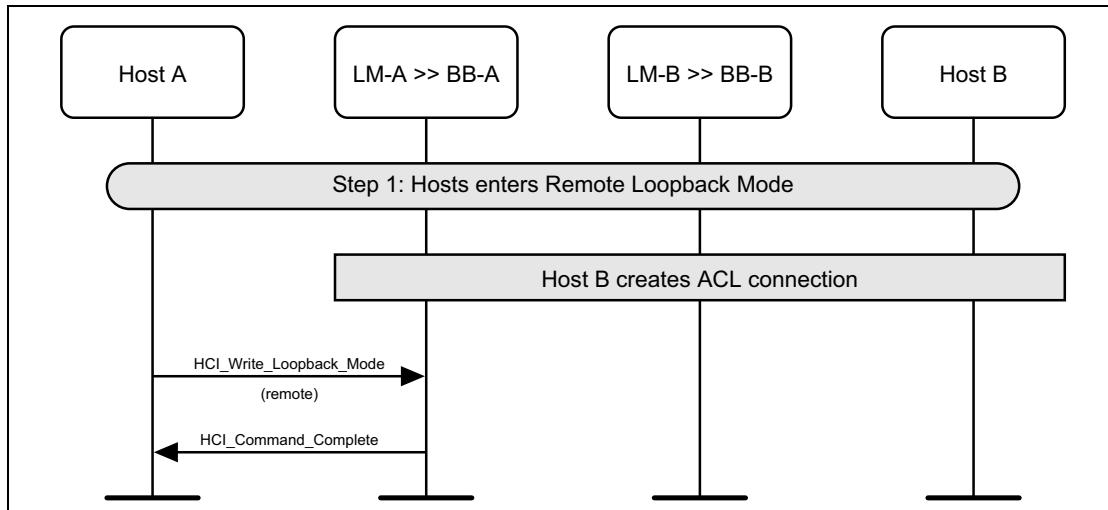


*Figure 8.4: Exiting local loopback mode.*

## 8.2 REMOTE LOOPBACK MODE

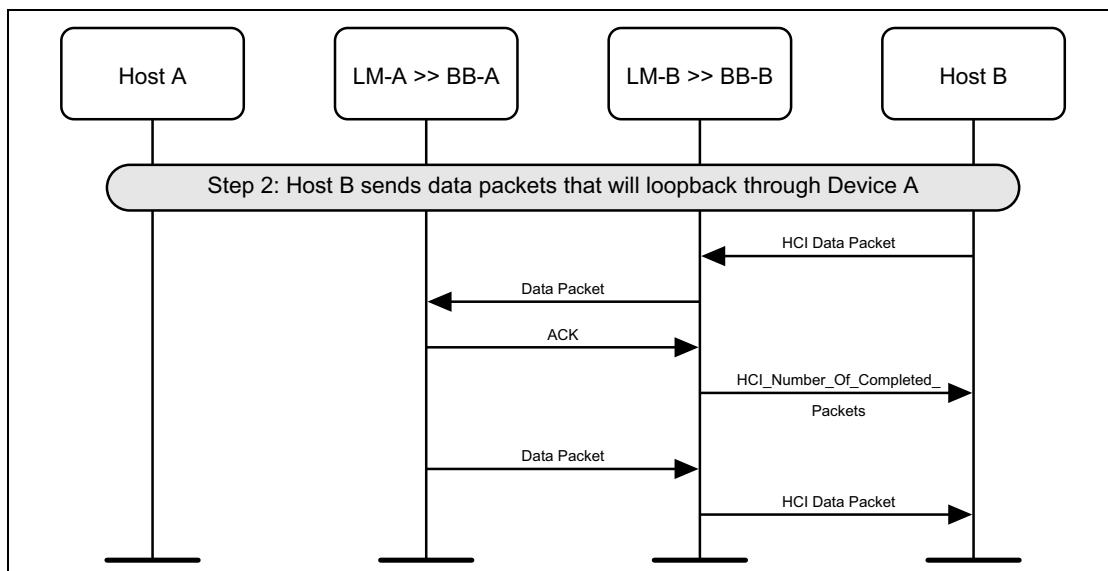
The remote loopback mode is used to loopback data to a remote device over the air.

**Step 1:** The remote host first sets up a connection to the local device. The local device then enables remote loopback. (See [Figure 8.5](#).)



*Figure 8.5: Entering remote loopback mode.*

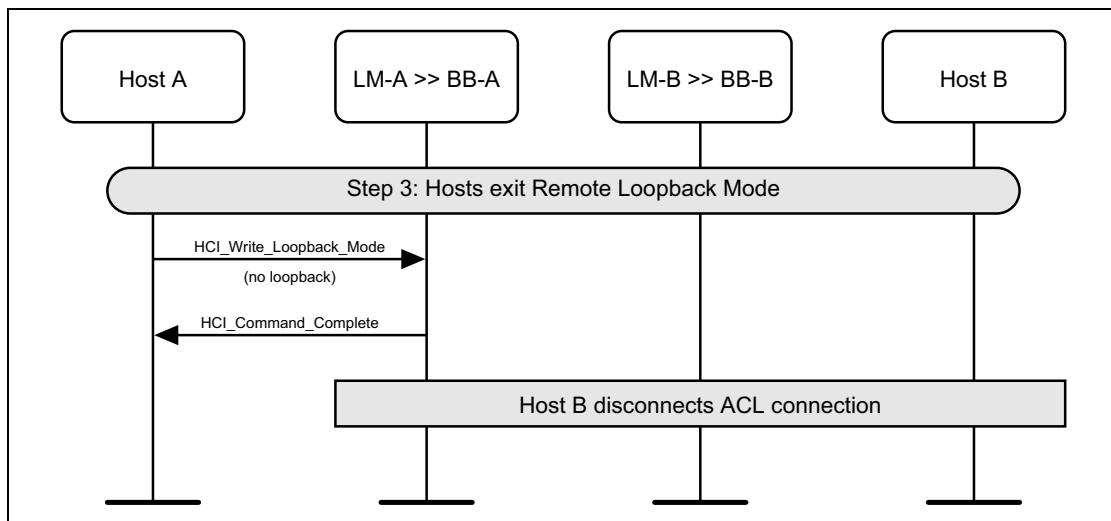
**Step 2:** Any data received from the remote host will be looped back in the Controller of the local device. (See [Figure 8.6](#).)



*Figure 8.6: Looping back data in remote loopback mode.*

*Message Sequence Charts*

**Step 3:** The local host exits remote loopback mode. Any connections can then be disconnected by the remote device. (See [Figure 8.7.](#))



*Figure 8.7: Exiting remote loopback mode.*

## 9 CONNECTIONLESS SLAVE BROADCAST SERVICES

Figure 9.1 illustrates the Truncated Page procedure.

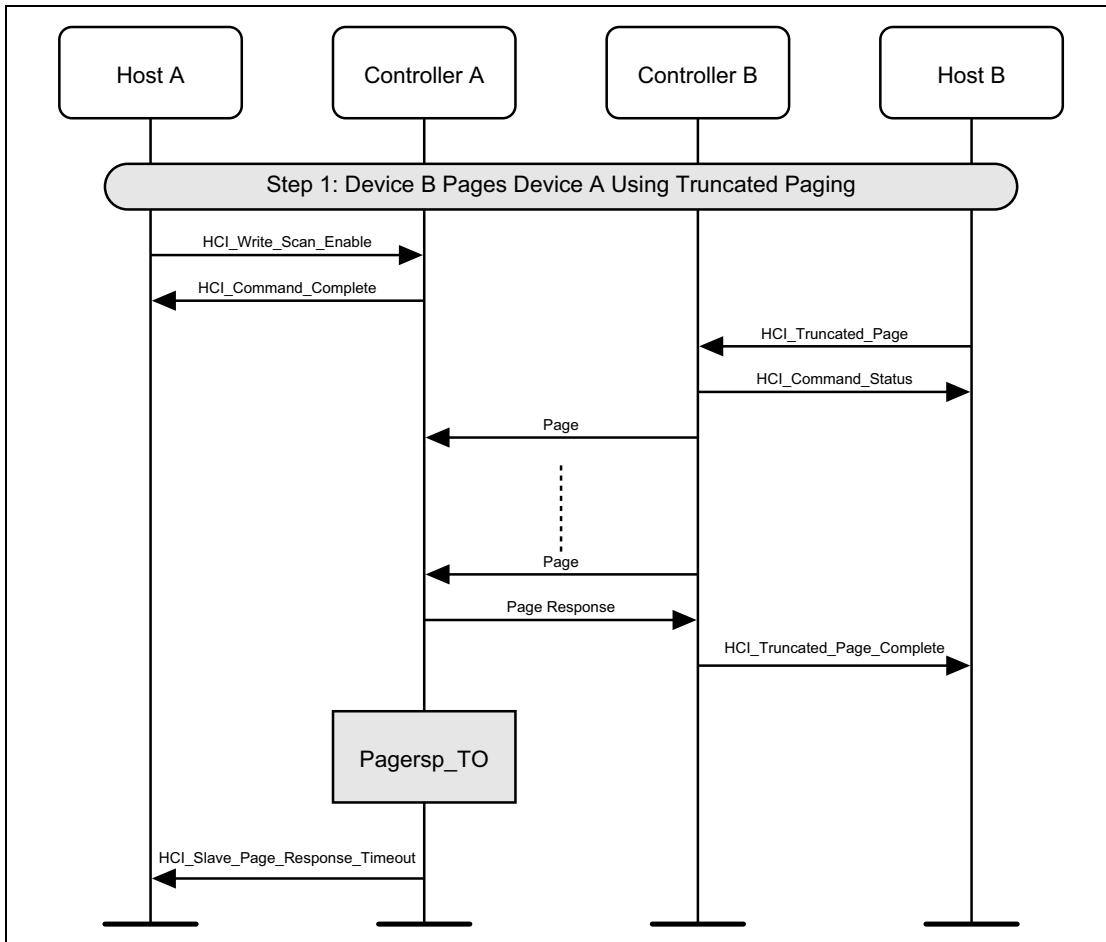


Figure 9.1: Truncated paging.

*Message Sequence Charts*

Figure 9.2 illustrates how Device A starts transmitting Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets to Device B.

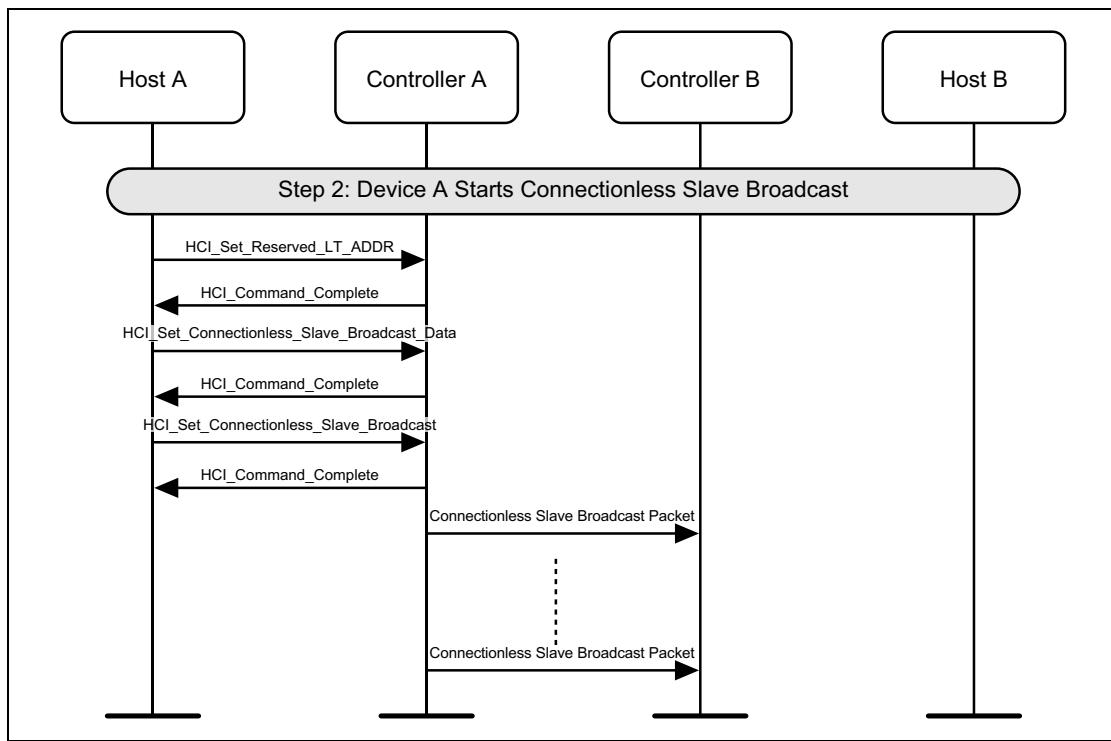
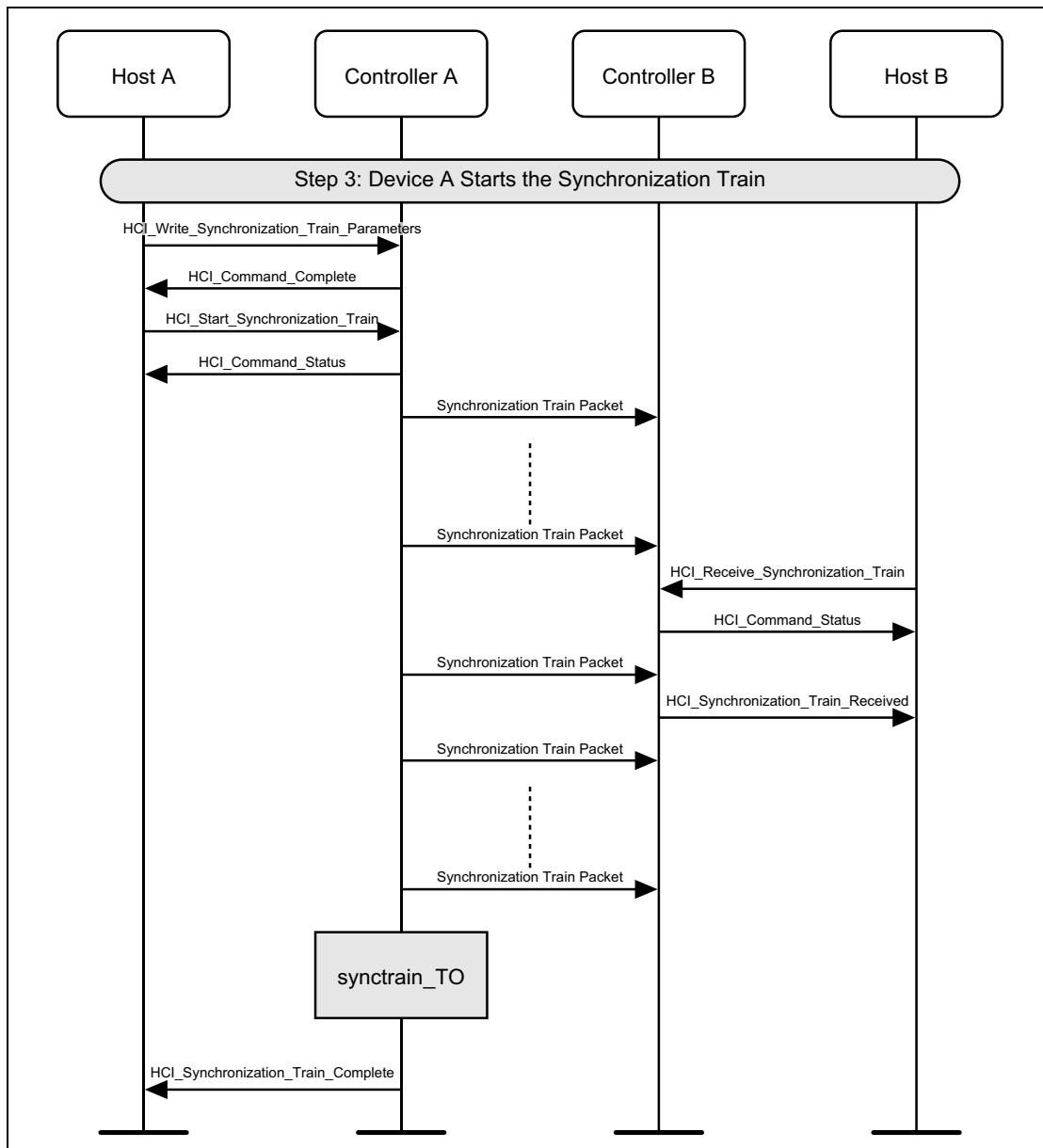


Figure 9.2: Connectionless slave broadcast transmitter start.

[Figure 9.3](#) shows the Synchronization Train feature. Device A is the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Transmitter. Device B is the Connectionless Slave Broadcast Receiver.



*Figure 9.3: Synchronization train.*

## Message Sequence Charts



Figure 9.4 illustrates how Device B starts receiving Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets from Device A.

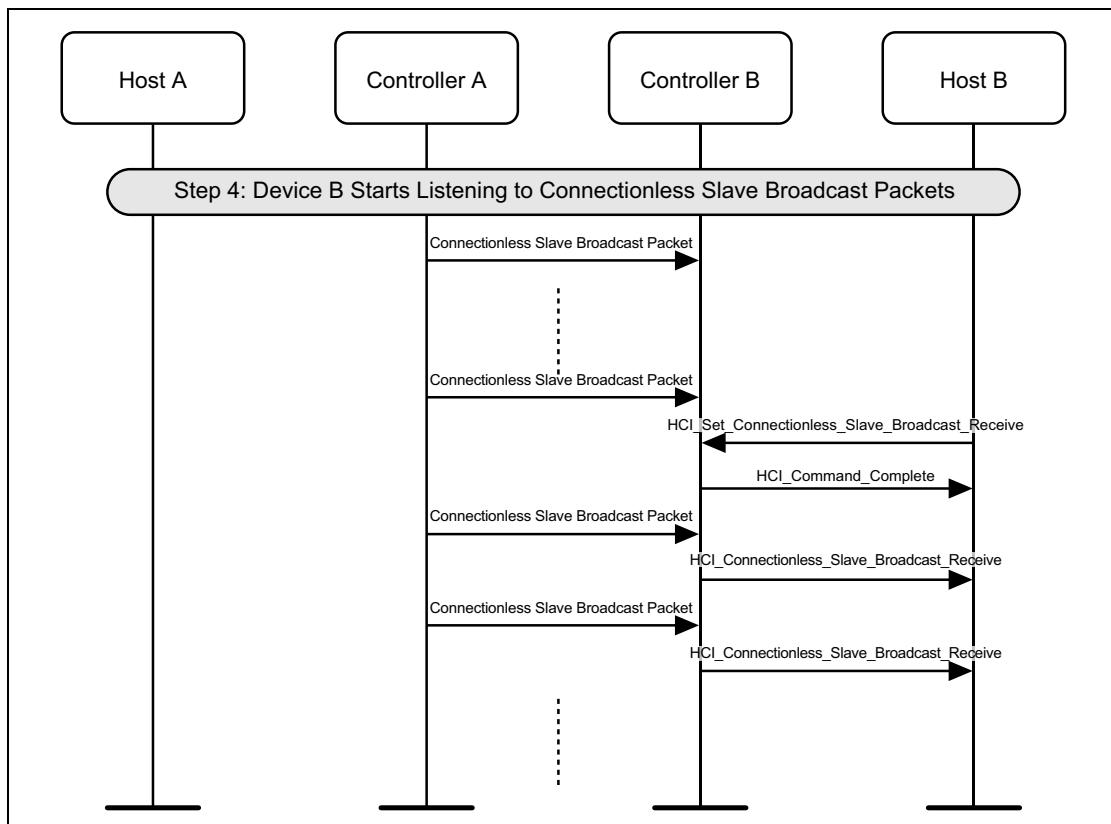


Figure 9.4: Connectionless slave broadcast receiver start.

## 10 LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1:	Example MSC.	1038
Figure 2.1:	Remote name request.	1039
Figure 2.2:	Remote name request if no current baseband connection.	1040
Figure 2.3:	Remote name request with baseband connection.	1040
Figure 2.4:	Host A starts inquiry procedure.	1041
Figure 2.5:	LM-A performs inquiry and reports result.	1041
Figure 2.6:	Host A cancels inquiry.	1042
Figure 2.7:	LM-A terminates current inquiry.	1042
Figure 2.8:	Host A starts periodic inquiry.	1043
Figure 2.9:	LM-A periodically performs an inquiry and reports result.	1043
Figure 2.10:	LM-A terminates current inquiry.	1044
Figure 2.11:	Host A decides to exit periodic inquiry.	1044
Figure 3.1:	Overview diagram for connection setup.	1045
Figure 3.2:	Host A requests connection with device B.	1046
Figure 3.3:	LM-A and LM-B exchange features.	1046
Figure 3.4:	LM-A requests host connection.	1047
Figure 3.5:	Device B rejects connection request.	1047
Figure 3.6:	Device B accepts connection request.	1048
Figure 3.7:	Device B accepts connection requests as master.	1048
Figure 3.8:	LM-A starts adaptive frequency hopping.	1049
Figure 3.9:	Authentication initiated.	1049
Figure 3.10:	Pairing during connection setup.	1050
Figure 3.11:	Authentication during connection setup.	1051
Figure 3.12:	Starting encryption during connection setup.	1052
Figure 3.13:	LM-A and LM-B finishes connection setup.	1052
Figure 3.14:	Host A decides to disconnect.	1053
Figure 4.1:	Authentication requested (Legacy Authentication).	1054
Figure 4.2:	Authentication requested (Secure Authentication).	1055
Figure 4.3:	Simple pairing, flow diagram.	1056
Figure 4.4:	Optional OOB information collection (P-192 only).	1057
Figure 4.5:	Optional OOB information collection (P-192 and P-256).	1057
Figure 4.6:	Enable simple pairing.	1058
Figure 4.7:	Enable Secure Connections host support.	1058
Figure 4.8:	Set Authenticated_Payload_Timeout.	1059
Figure 4.9:	L2CAP connection request for a secure service.	1060
Figure 4.10:	Optional OOB information transfer.	1060
Figure 4.11:	Start simple pairing.	1061
Figure 4.12:	IO capability exchange.	1062
Figure 4.13:	Public key exchange.	1063
Figure 4.14:	Numeric comparison authentication.	1064

Figure 4.15: Numeric comparison authentication (failure on initiating side). ....	1065
Figure 4.16: Numeric comparison failure on responding side. ....	1066
Figure 4.17: Passkey entry authentication. ....	1067
Figure 4.18: Passkey entry failure on responding side. ....	1068
Figure 4.19: Passkey entry failure on initiating side. ....	1069
Figure 4.20: OOB authentication (P-192). ....	1070
Figure 4.21: OOB authentication (P-256). ....	1071
Figure 4.22: OOB authentication failure on initiating side. ....	1072
Figure 4.23: DHKey checks. ....	1073
Figure 4.24: Calculate link key. ....	1074
Figure 4.25: Start encryption. ....	1075
Figure 4.26: L2CAP connection response. ....	1075
Figure 4.27: Successful Ping. ....	1076
Figure 4.28: Unsuccessful Ping. ....	1077
Figure 4.29: Link supervision timeout event. ....	1078
Figure 4.30: Encryption requested. ....	1079
Figure 4.31: Encryption off requested. ....	1080
Figure 4.32: Change connection link key. ....	1081
Figure 4.33: Change connection link key with encryption pause resume. ....	1082
Figure 4.34: Change to master link key. ....	1083
Figure 4.35: Change to semi permanent link key. ....	1084
Figure 4.36: Read remote supported features. ....	1085
Figure 4.37: Read remote extended features. ....	1086
Figure 4.38: Read clock offset. ....	1087
Figure 4.39: Role switch on an encrypted link using encryption pause and resume. ....	1088
Figure 4.40: Refreshing encryption keys (E0). ....	1089
Figure 4.41: Refreshing encryption keys (AES-CCM). ....	1090
Figure 4.42: Read remote version information. ....	1091
Figure 4.43: QoS flow specification. ....	1092
Figure 4.44: Master requests role switch. ....	1093
Figure 4.45: Slave requests role switch. ....	1093
Figure 4.46: Role switch is performed. ....	1094
Figure 4.47: Overview diagram for physical link creation and disconnection. ....	1095
Figure 4.48: Get remote AMP data. ....	1096
Figure 4.49: Host A tells its controller to create the physical link. ....	1097
Figure 4.50: Host A tells Host B to accept an incoming physical link. ....	1098
Figure 4.51: A and B establish AMP physical link security. ....	1099
Figure 4.52: Host A disconnects the physical link ....	1099
Figure 4.53: Controller reports link loss to its Host. ....	1100
Figure 4.54: Guaranteed logical link creation. ....	1101

*Message Sequence Charts*

Figure 4.55:	Host A disconnects the logical link.	1102
Figure 4.56:	Host A modifies Flow_Spec on an existing logical link.	1102
Figure 4.57:	Overview diagram for AMP test mode.	1103
Figure 4.58:	Discover remote AMPs and their PHY capabilities.	1104
Figure 4.59:	Activate test mode and run a transmitter test.	1105
Figure 4.60:	Configure and run a receiver test with receiver reports on an AMP.	1106
Figure 5.1:	Master requests synchronous EV3, EV4 or EV5 connection.	1107
Figure 5.2:	Slave requests synchronous EV3, EV4 or EV5 connection.	1108
Figure 5.3:	Master requests synchronous connection using SCO.	1109
Figure 5.4:	Master requests synchronous connection with legacy slave.	1110
Figure 5.5:	Any device that supports only SCO connections requests a synchronous connection with a device.	1111
Figure 5.6:	Master renegotiates eSCO connection.	1112
Figure 5.7:	Slave renegotiates eSCO connection.	1113
Figure 5.8:	Synchronous disconnection of eSCO connection.	1114
Figure 5.9:	Synchronous disconnection of SCO connection.	1114
Figure 5.10:	Master requests synchronous connection. (EV3, EV4, EV5, 2-EV3, 2-EV5, 3-EV3, or 3-EV5)	1115
Figure 5.11:	Slave requests synchronous connection. (EV3, EV4, EV5, 2-EV3, 2-EV5, 3-EV3, or 3-EV5)	1116
Figure 5.12:	Master requests synchronous connection. (HV1, HV2, HV3, EV3, EV4, EV5, 2EV3, 2EV5, 3EV3 or 3EV5)	1117
Figure 5.13:	Slave requests synchronous connection. (HV1, HV2, or HV3).	1118
Figure 5.14:	Master renegotiates synchronous connection parameter change.	1119
Figure 5.15:	Slave renegotiates synchronous connection parameter change.	1120
Figure 6.1:	Sniff mode request.	1121
Figure 6.2:	Exit sniff mode request.	1122
Figure 6.3:	Hold request.	1122
Figure 6.4:	Master forces hold mode.	1123
Figure 6.5:	Slave forces hold mode.	1124
Figure 6.6:	Hold mode completes.	1124
Figure 6.7:	Park state request from master.	1125
Figure 6.8:	Park state request from slave.	1126
Figure 6.9:	Master unparks slave for supervision.	1126
Figure 6.10:	Master exits park state with slave.	1127
Figure 6.11:	Slave exits park state with master.	1128
Figure 7.1:	Host to Controller flow control.	1129
Figure 7.2:	Controller to Host flow control.	1130

---

*Message Sequence Charts*

Figure 8.1:	Entering local loopback mode. ....	1131
Figure 8.2:	Looping back data in local loopback mode. ....	1132
Figure 8.3:	Looping back commands in local loopback mode. ....	1132
Figure 8.4:	Exiting local loopback mode. ....	1133
Figure 8.5:	Entering remote loopback mode. ....	1134
Figure 8.6:	Looping back data in remote loopback mode. ....	1134
Figure 8.7:	Exiting remote loopback mode. ....	1135
Figure 9.1:	Truncated paging. ....	1136
Figure 9.2:	Connectionless slave broadcast transmitter start. ....	1137
Figure 9.3:	Synchronization train. ....	1138
Figure 9.4:	Connectionless slave broadcast receiver start. ....	1139



## SAMPLE DATA

*This appendix contains sample data for various parts of the Bluetooth baseband specification. All sample data are provided for reference purpose only; they are intended as a complement to the definitions provided elsewhere in the specification. They can be used to check the behavior of an implementation and avoid misunderstandings. Fulfilling these sample data is a necessary but not sufficient condition for an implementation to be fully Bluetooth compliant.*

---

*Sample Data*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Encryption Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1149</b>
1.1	E0 Encryption Sample Data .....	1149
1.1.1	Generating Kc' from Kc .....	1149
1.1.2	First Set of Sample Data .....	1152
1.1.3	Second Set of Sample Data .....	1160
1.1.4	Third Set of Samples.....	1168
1.1.5	Fourth Set of Samples.....	1176
1.2	AES-CCM ENCRYPTION SAMPLE DATA .....	1184
1.2.1	Sample Data 1 (DM1, M --> S).....	1184
1.2.2	Sample Data 2 (DM1, M --> S).....	1185
1.2.3	Sample Data 3 (DM1, S --> M).....	1186
1.2.4	Sample Data 4 (DM1, M --> S).....	1186
1.2.5	Sample Data 5 (DM1, S --> M).....	1187
1.2.6	Sample Data 6 (DH1, M --> S).....	1188
1.2.7	Sample Data 7 (DH1, S --> M) .....	1189
1.2.8	Sample Data 8 (DH1, M --> S) .....	1190
1.2.9	Sample Data 9 (DH1, S --> M) .....	1191
1.2.10	Sample Data 10 (2-DH3, M --> S).....	1192
1.2.11	Sample Data 11 (2-DH3, S --> M) .....	1195
1.2.12	Sample Data 12 (3-DH5, M --> S).....	1198
1.2.13	Sample Data 13 (3-DH5, S --> M).....	1205
1.2.14	Sample Data 14 (EV3) .....	1212
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequency Hopping Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1213</b>
2.1	First set .....	1214
2.2	Second set .....	1220
2.3	Third set .....	1226
<b>3</b>	<b>Access Code Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1232</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>HEC and Packet Header Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1235</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>CRC Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1236</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Complete Sample Packets.....</b>	<b>1237</b>
6.1	Example of DH1 Packet.....	1237
6.2	Example of DM1 Packet.....	1238

<b>7</b>	<b>Simple Pairing Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1239</b>
7.1	Elliptic Curve Sample Data .....	1239
7.1.1	P-192 Sample Data.....	1239
7.1.2	P-256 Sample Data.....	1241
7.2	Hash Functions Sample Data .....	1242
7.2.1	f1().....	1242
7.2.2	g().....	1244
7.2.3	f2().....	1244
7.2.4	f3().....	1245
7.2.5	h2().....	1252
7.2.6	7.2.6 h4().....	1253
7.2.7	7.2.7 h5().....	1253
7.2.8	7.2.8 h3().....	1253
<b>8</b>	<b>Whitening Sequence Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1254</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>FEC Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1257</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Encryption Key Sample Data .....</b>	<b>1258</b>
10.1	Four Tests of E1.....	1258
10.2	Four Tests of E21 .....	1263
10.3	Three Tests of E22.....	1265
10.4	Tests of E22 With Pin Augmenting.....	1267
10.5	Four Tests of E3.....	1277
<b>11</b>	<b>Connectionless Slave Broadcast Sample Data.....</b>	<b>1282</b>

# 1 ENCRYPTION SAMPLE DATA

## 1.1 E0 ENCRYPTION SAMPLE DATA

This section contains four sets of sample data for the encryption process.

With respect to the functional description of the encryption engine in the Bluetooth baseband specification, the contents of registers and resulting concurrent values are listed as well. This by no means excludes different implementations (as far as they produce the same encryption stream) but is intended to describe the functional behavior.

In case of misunderstandings or inconsistencies, these sample data form the normative reference.

### 1.1.1 Generating $Kc'$ from $Kc$

where  $Kc'(x) = g2(x)(Kc(x) \bmod g1(x))$ .

Note: All polynomials are in hexadecimal notation.

'L' is the effective key length in bytes.

The notation 'p: [m]' implies that  $\deg(p(x)) = m$ .

		MSB	LSB
L = 1			
g1:	[8]	00000000 00000000 00000000 0000011d	
g2:	[119]	00e275a0 abd218d4 cf928b9b bf6cb08f	
Kc:		a2b230a4 93f281bb 61a85b82 a9d4a30e	
Kc mod g1:	[7]	00000000 00000000 00000000 0000009f	
g2(Kc mod g1):	[126]	7aa16f39 59836ba3 22049a7b 87f1d8a5	
<hr/>			
L = 2			
g1:	[16]	00000000 00000000 00000000 0001003f	
g2:	[112]	0001e3f6 3d7659b3 7f18c258 cff6efef	
Kc:		64e7df78 bb7ccaa4 61433123 5b3222ad	
Kc mod g1:	[12]	00000000 00000000 00000000 00001ff0	
g2(Kc mod g1):	[124]	142057bb 0bceac4c 58bd142e 1e710a50	
<hr/>			
L = 3			
g1:	[24]	00000000 00000000 00000000 010000db	
g2:	[104]	000001be f66c6c3a b1030a5a 1919808b	
Kc:		575e5156 ba685dc6 112124ac edb2c179	
Kc mod g1:	[23]	00000000 00000000 00000000 008ddbc8	
g2(Kc mod g1):	[127]	d56d0adb 8216cb39 7fe3c591 1ff95618	
<hr/>			
L = 4			
g1:	[32]	00000000 00000000 00000001 000000af	
g2:	[96]	00000001 6ab89969 de17467f d3736ad9	
Kc:		8917b4fc 403b6db2 1596b86d 1cb8adab	

*Sample Data*

```
Kc mod g1:      [31]      00000000 00000000 00000000 aa1e78aa
g2(Kc mod g1): [127]      91910128 b0e2f5ed a132a03e af3d8cda
-----
L = 5
g1:      [40]      00000000 00000000 00000100 00000039
g2:      [88]      00000000 01630632 91da50ec 55715247
Kc:      785c915b dd25b9c6 0102ab00 b6cd2a68
Kc mod g1: [38]      00000000 00000000 0000007f 13d44436
g2(Kc mod g1): [126]      6fb5651c cb80c8d7 ea1ee56d f1ec5d02
-----
L = 6
g1:      [48]      00000000 00000000 00010000 00000291
g2:      [77]      00000000 00002c93 52aa6cc0 54468311
Kc:      5e77d19f 55ccd7d5 798f9a32 3b83e5d8
Kc mod g1: [47]      00000000 00000000 000082eb 4af213ed
g2(Kc mod g1): [124]      16096bcb afcf8def 1d226a1b 4d3f9a3d
```

*Sample Data*

```

L = 7
g1: [56] 00000000 00000000 01000000 00000095
g2: [71] 00000000 000000b3 f7fffce2 79f3a073
Kc: 05454e03 8ddcfbe3 ed024b2d 92b7f54c
Kc mod g1: [55] 00000000 00000000 0095b8a4 8eb816da
g2(Kc mod g1): [126] 50f9c0d4 e3178da9 4a09fe0d 34f67b0e
-----
L = 8
g1: [64] 00000000 00000001 00000000 0000001b
g2: [63] 00000000 00000000 a1ab815b c7ec8025
Kc: 7ce149fc f4b38ad7 2a5d8a41 eb15ba31
Kc mod g1: [63] 00000000 00000000 8660806c 1865deec
g2(Kc mod g1): [126] 532c36d4 5d0954e0 922989b6 826f78dc
-----
L = 9
g1: [72] 00000000 00000100 00000000 00000609
g2: [49] 00000000 00000000 0002c980 11d8b04d
Kc: 5efff7ca 84fc2782 9c051726 3df6f36e
Kc mod g1: [71] 00000000 00000083 58ccb7d0 b95d3c71
g2(Kc mod g1): [120] 016313f6 0d3771cf 7f8e4bb9 4aa6827d
-----
L = 10
g1: [80] 00000000 00010000 00000000 00000215
g2: [42] 00000000 00000000 0000058e 24f9a4bb
Kc: 7b13846e 88beb4de 34e7160a fd44dc65
Kc mod g1: [79] 00000000 0000b4de 34171767 f36981c3
g2(Kc mod g1): [121] 023bc1ec 34a0029e f798dcfb 618ba58d
-----
L = 11
g1: [88] 00000000 01000000 00000000 0000013b
g2: [35] 00000000 00000000 0000000c a76024d7
Kc: bda6de6c 6e7d757e 8dfe2d49 9a181193
Kc mod g1: [86] 00000000 007d757e 8dfe88aa 2fce371
g2(Kc mod g1): [121] 022e08a9 3aa51d8d 2f93fa78 85cc1f87
-----
L = 12
g1: [96] 00000001 00000000 00000000 000000dd
g2: [28] 00000000 00000000 00000000 1c9c26b9
Kc: e6483b1c 2cdb1040 9a658f97 c4efd90d
Kc mod g1: [93] 00000000 2cdb1040 9a658fd7 5b562e41
g2(Kc mod g1): [121] 030d752b 216fe29b b880275c d7e6f6f9
-----
L = 13
g1: [104] 00000100 00000000 00000000 0000049d
g2: [21] 00000000 00000000 00000000 0026d9e3
Kc: d79d281d a2266847 6b223c46 dc0ab9ee
Kc mod g1: [100] 0000001d a2266847 6b223c45 e1fc5fa6
g2(Kc mod g1): [121] 03f11138 9cebf919 00b93808 4ac158aa
-----
```

*Sample Data*

```

L = 14
g1:          [112]      00010000 00000000 00000000 0000014f
g2:          [14]       00000000 00000000 00000000 00004377
Kc:          cad9a65b 9fcalc1d a2320fcf 7c4ae48e
Kc mod g1:   [111]      0000a65b 9fcalc1d a2320fcf 7cb6a909
g2(Kc mod g1): [125]    284840fd f1305f3c 529f5703 76adf7cf
-----
L = 15
g1:          [120]      01000000 00000000 00000000 000000e7
g2:          [7]        00000000 00000000 00000000 00000089
Kc:          21f0cc31 049b7163 d375e9e1 06029809
Kc mod g1:   [119]      00f0cc31 049b7163 d375e9e1 0602840e
g2(Kc mod g1): [126]    7f10b53b 6df84b94 f22e566a 3754a37e
-----
L = 16
g1:          [128]      00000001 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
g2:          [0]        00000000 00000000 00000000 00000001
Kc:          35ec8fc3 d50ccd32 5f2fd907 bde206de
Kc mod g1:   [125]      35ec8fc3 d50ccd32 5f2fd907 bde206de
g2(Kc mod g1): [125]    35ec8fc3 d50ccd32 5f2fd907 bde206de
-----
```

### 1.1.2 First Set of Sample Data

Initial values for the key, pan address and clock

```

K'c1[0] = 00 K'c1[1] = 00 K'c1[2] = 00 K'c1[3] = 00
K'c1[4] = 00 K'c1[5] = 00 K'c1[6] = 00 K'c1[7] = 00
K'c1[8] = 00 K'c1[9] = 00 K'c1[10] = 00 K'c1[11] = 00
K'c1[12] = 00 K'c1[13] = 00 K'c1[14] = 00 K'c1[15] = 00
-----
```

```

Addr1[0] = 00 Addr1[1] = 00 Addr1[2] = 00
Addr1[3] = 00 Addr1[4] = 00 Addr1[5] = 00
-----
```

```

CL1[0] = 00 CL1[1] = 00 CL1[2] = 00 CL1[3] = 00
-----
```

```
=====
```

Fill LFSRs with initial data

```
=====
```

t	clk#	LFSR1	LFSR2	LFSR3	LFSR4	X1	X2	X3	X4	Z	C[t+1]	C[t]	C[t-1]
0	0	0000000*	00000000*	000000000*	0000000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
1	1	0000000*	00000001*	000000000*	0000000001*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
2	2	0000000*	00000002*	000000000*	0000000003*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
3	3	0000000*	00000004*	000000000*	0000000007*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
4	4	0000000*	00000008*	000000000*	000000000E*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
5	5	0000000*	00000010*	000000000*	0000000001C*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
6	6	0000000*	00000020*	000000000*	0000000038*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00

*Sample Data*

7	7	0000000*	00000040*	000000000*	0000000070*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
8	8	0000000*	00000080*	000000000*	00000000E0*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
9	9	0000000*	00000100*	000000000*	00000001C0*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
10	10	0000000*	00000200*	000000000*	0000000380*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
11	11	0000000*	00000400*	000000000*	0000000700*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
12	12	0000000*	00000800*	000000000*	0000000E00*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
13	13	0000000*	0001000*	000000000*	0000001C00*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
14	14	0000000*	0002000*	000000000*	0000003800*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
15	15	0000000*	0004000*	000000000*	000007000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
16	16	0000000*	0008000*	000000000*	00000E000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
17	17	0000000*	00010000*	000000000*	000001C000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
18	18	0000000*	00020000*	000000000*	0000038000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
19	19	0000000*	00040000*	000000000*	0000070000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
20	20	0000000*	00080000*	000000000*	00000E0000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
21	21	0000000*	00100000*	000000000*	00001C0000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
22	22	0000000*	00200000*	000000000*	0000380000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
23	23	0000000*	00400000*	000000000*	0000700000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
24	24	0000000*	00800000*	000000000*	0000E00000*	0	1	0	0	1	00	00
25	25	0000000*	01000000*	000000000*	0001C00000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
26	26	0000000	02000000*	000000000*	0003800000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
27	27	0000000	04000000*	000000000*	0007000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
28	28	0000000	08000000*	000000000*	000E000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
29	29	0000000	10000000*	000000000*	001C000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
30	30	0000000	20000000*	000000000*	0038000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
31	31	0000000	40000000*	000000000*	0070000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
32	32	0000000	00000001	000000000*	00E0000000*	0	0	0	1	1	00	00
33	33	0000000	00000002	000000000*	01C0000000*	0	0	0	1	1	00	00
34	34	0000000	00000004	000000000	0380000000*	0	0	0	1	1	00	00
35	35	0000000	00000008	000000000	0700000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
36	36	0000000	00000010	000000000	0B00000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
37	37	0000000	00000020	000000000	1C00000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
38	38	0000000	00000040	000000000	3800000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
39	39	0000000	00000080	000000000	7000000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00

## Start clocking Summation Combiner

40	1	0000000	00000100	000000000	6000000001	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
41	2	0000000	00000200	000000000	4000000003	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
42	3	0000000	00000400	000000000	0000000007	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
43	4	0000000	00000800	000000000	000000000E	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
44	5	0000000	00001001	000000000	000000000D	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
45	6	0000000	00002002	000000000	0000000003B	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
46	7	0000000	00004004	000000000	0000000077	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
47	8	0000000	00008008	000000000	00000000EE	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
48	9	0000000	00010011	000000000	00000001DD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
49	10	0000000	00020022	000000000	00000003BB	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
50	11	0000000	00040044	000000000	0000000777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
51	12	0000000	00080088	000000000	0000000EEE	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
52	13	0000000	00100110	000000000	00000001DDD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
53	14	0000000	00200220	000000000	0000003BBB	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
54	15	0000000	00400440	000000000	0000007777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
55	16	0000000	00800880	000000000	000000EEEE	0	1	0	0	1	00	00
56	17	0000000	01001100	000000000	000001DDDD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
57	18	0000000	02002200	000000000	000003BBBB	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
58	19	0000000	04004400	000000000	0000077777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
59	20	0000000	08008800	000000000	00000EEEEEE	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
60	21	0000000	10011000	000000000	00001DDDDDD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00

*Sample Data*

61	22	0000000	20022000	000000000	00003BBBBB	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
62	23	0000000	40044000	000000000	0000777777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
63	24	0000000	00088001	000000000	0000EEEEEE	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
64	25	0000000	00110003	000000000	0001DDDDDD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
65	26	0000000	00220006	000000000	0003BBBBBB	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
66	27	0000000	0044000C	000000000	0007777777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
67	28	0000000	00880018	000000000	000EEEEEEE	0	1	0	0	1	00	00	00
68	29	0000000	01100031	000000000	001DDDDDDC	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
69	30	0000000	02200062	000000000	003BBBBBB8	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
70	31	0000000	044000C4	000000000	0077777770	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
71	32	0000000	08800188	000000000	00EEEEEEE0	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
72	33	0000000	11000311	000000000	01DDDDDDC1	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
73	34	0000000	22000622	000000000	03BBBBBB83	0	0	0	1	1	11	00	01
74	35	0000000	44000C44	000000000	0777777707	0	0	0	0	1	10	11	00
75	36	0000000	08001888	000000000	0EEE0EEE0E	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
76	37	0000000	10003111	000000000	1DDDDDDC1D	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
77	38	0000000	20006222	000000000	3BBBBBB83B	0	0	0	1	0	11	01	01
78	39	0000000	4000C444	000000000	7777777077	0	0	0	0	1	01	11	01
79	40	0000000	00018888	000000000	6EEE0EE0EF	0	0	0	1	0	10	01	11
80	41	0000000	00031110	000000000	5DDDDDC1DE	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
81	42	0000000	00062220	000000000	3BBBBBB83BC	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
82	43	0000000	000C4440	000000000	7777770779	0	0	0	0	1	01	01	00
83	44	0000000	00188880	000000000	6EEE0EE0EF2	0	0	0	1	0	11	01	01
84	45	0000000	00311100	000000000	5DDDDC1DE5	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
85	46	0000000	00622200	000000000	3BBBBBB83BCB	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
86	47	0000000	00C44400	000000000	7777707797	0	1	0	0	0	01	01	10
87	48	0000000	01888801	000000000	6EEE0EF2F	0	1	0	1	1	11	01	01
88	49	0000000	03111003	000000000	5DDDC1DE5E	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
89	50	0000000	06222006	000000000	3BBB83BCBC	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
90	51	0000000	0C44400C	000000000	7777077979	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
91	52	0000000	18888018	000000000	6EEE0EF2F2	0	1	0	1	0	10	00	01
92	53	0000000	31110030	000000000	5DDC1DE5E5	0	0	0	1	1	11	10	00
93	54	0000000	62220060	000000000	3BB83BCBCB	0	0	0	1	0	00	11	10
94	55	0000000	444400C1	000000000	7770779797	0	0	0	0	0	10	00	11
95	56	0000000	08880183	000000000	6EE0EF2F2F	0	1	0	1	0	00	10	00
96	57	0000000	11100307	000000000	5DC1DE5E5F	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
97	58	0000000	2220060E	000000000	3B83BCBCBF	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
98	59	0000000	44400C1C	000000000	770779797E	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
99	60	0000000	08801838	000000000	6E0EF2F2FC	0	1	0	0	0	01	11	00
100	61	0000000	11003070	000000000	5C1DE5E5F8	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
101	62	0000000	220060E0	000000000	383BCBCBF0	0	0	0	0	1	01	11	01
102	63	0000000	4400C1C0	000000000	70779797E0	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
103	64	0000000	08018380	000000000	60EF2F2FC1	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
104	65	0000000	10030701	000000000	41DE5E5F82	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
105	66	0000000	20060E02	000000000	03BCBCBF04	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
106	67	0000000	400C1C05	000000000	0779797E09	0	0	0	0	1	10	01	01
107	68	0000000	0018380A	000000000	0EF2F2FC12	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
108	69	0000000	00307015	000000000	1DE5E5F825	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
109	70	0000000	0060E02A	000000000	3BCBCBF04B	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
110	71	0000000	00C1C055	000000000	779797E097	0	1	0	1	0	10	00	01
111	72	0000000	018380AA	000000000	6F2F2FC12F	0	1	0	0	1	11	10	00
112	73	0000000	03070154	000000000	5E5E5F825E	0	0	0	0	1	11	11	10
113	74	0000000	060E02A8	000000000	3CBCBF04BC	0	0	0	1	0	11	11	11
114	75	0000000	00C1C0550	000000000	79797E0979	0	0	0	0	1	00	11	11
115	76	0000000	18380AA0	000000000	72F2FC12F2	0	0	0	1	1	10	00	11
116	77	0000000	30701541	000000000	65E5F825E5	0	0	0	1	1	11	10	00
117	78	0000000	60E02A82	000000000	4BCBF04BCB	0	1	0	1	1	00	11	10

*Sample Data*

118	79	0000000	41C05505	000000000	1797E09796	0	1	0	1	0	11	00	11
119	80	0000000	0380AA0A	000000000	2F2FC12F2C	0	1	0	0	0	01	11	00
120	81	0000000	07015415	000000000	5E5F825E59	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
121	82	0000000	0E02A82A	000000000	3CBF04BCB2	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
122	83	0000000	1C055054	000000000	797E097964	0	0	0	0	0	01	10	11
123	84	0000000	380AA0A8	000000000	72FC12F2C9	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
124	85	0000000	70154151	000000000	65F825E593	0	0	0	1	0	11	01	01
125	86	0000000	602A82A3	000000000	4BF04BCB26	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
126	87	0000000	40550546	000000000	17E097964C	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
127	88	0000000	00AA0A8D	000000000	2FC12F2C99	0	1	0	1	1	01	01	10
128	89	0000000	0154151A	000000000	5F825E5932	0	0	0	1	0	11	01	01
129	90	0000000	02A82A34	000000000	3F04BCB264	0	1	0	0	0	10	11	01
130	91	0000000	05505468	000000000	7E097964C9	0	0	0	0	0	01	10	11
131	92	0000000	0AA0A8D0	000000000	7C12F2C992	0	1	0	0	0	01	01	10
132	93	0000000	154151A1	000000000	7825E59324	0	0	0	0	1	10	01	01
133	94	0000000	2A82A342	000000000	704BCB2648	0	1	0	0	1	00	10	01
134	95	0000000	55054684	000000000	6097964C91	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
135	96	0000000	2A0A8D09	000000000	412F2C9923	0	0	0	0	1	01	01	00
136	97	0000000	54151A12	000000000	025E593246	0	0	0	0	1	10	01	01
137	98	0000000	282A3424	000000000	04BCB2648D	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
138	99	0000000	50546848	000000000	097964C91A	0	0	0	0	0	01	00	10
139	100	0000000	20A8D090	000000000	12F2C99235	0	1	0	1	1	00	01	00
140	101	0000000	4151A120	000000000	25E593246A	0	0	0	1	1	11	00	01
141	102	0000000	02A34240	000000000	4BCB2648D5	0	1	0	1	1	01	11	00
142	103	0000000	05468481	000000000	17964C91AB	0	0	0	1	0	10	01	11
143	104	0000000	0A8D0903	000000000	2F2C992357	0	1	0	0	1	00	10	01
144	105	0000000	151A1206	000000000	5E593246AE	0	0	0	0	0	01	00	10
145	106	0000000	2A34240C	000000000	3CB2648D5C	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
146	107	0000000	54684818	000000000	7964C91AB8	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
147	108	0000000	28D09030	000000000	72C9923571	0	1	0	1	1	01	11	00
148	109	0000000	51A12060	000000000	6593246AE2	0	1	0	1	1	10	01	11
149	110	0000000	234240C0	000000000	4B2648D5C5	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
150	111	0000000	46848180	000000000	164C91AB8A	0	1	0	0	1	01	00	10
151	112	0000000	0D090301	000000000	2C99235714	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
152	113	0000000	1A120602	000000000	593246AE28	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
153	114	0000000	34240C04	000000000	32648D5C51	0	0	0	0	1	10	11	00
154	115	0000000	68481809	000000000	64C91AB8A2	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
155	116	0000000	50903012	000000000	4992357144	0	1	0	1	1	01	01	10
156	117	0000000	21206024	000000000	13246AE288	0	0	0	0	1	10	01	01
157	118	0000000	4240C048	000000000	2648D5C511	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
158	119	0000000	04818090	000000000	4C91AB8A23	0	1	0	1	0	00	00	10
159	120	0000000	09030120	000000000	1923571446	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
160	121	0000000	12060240	000000000	3246AE288D	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
161	122	0000000	240C0480	000000000	648D5C511B	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
162	123	0000000	48180900	000000000	491AB8A237	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
163	124	0000000	10301200	000000000	123571446F	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
164	125	0000000	20602400	000000000	246AE288DF	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
165	126	0000000	40C04800	000000000	48D5C511BE	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
166	127	0000000	01809001	000000000	11AB8A237D	0	1	0	1	1	00	01	00
167	128	0000000	03012002	000000000	23571446FA	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
168	129	0000000	06024004	000000000	46AE288DF5	0	0	0	1	0	01	11	00
169	130	0000000	0C048008	000000000	0D5C511BEA	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
170	131	0000000	18090011	000000000	1AB8A237D5	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
171	132	0000000	30120022	000000000	3571446FAA	0	0	0	0	0	01	10	11
172	133	0000000	60240044	000000000	6AE288DF55	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
173	134	0000000	40480089	000000000	55C511BEAA	0	0	0	1	0	11	01	01
174	135	0000000	00900113	000000000	2B8A237D54	0	1	0	1	1	10	11	01

*Sample Data*

175	136	0000000	01200227	000000000	571446FAA8	0	0	0	0	0	01	10	11
176	137	0000000	0240044E	000000000	2E288DF550	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
177	138	0000000	0480089C	000000000	5C511BEAA0	0	1	0	0	1	11	00	01
178	139	0000000	09001138	000000000	38A237D540	0	0	0	1	0	01	11	00
179	140	0000000	12002270	000000000	71446FAA81	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
180	141	0000000	240044E0	000000000	6288DF5503	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
181	142	0000000	480089C0	000000000	4511BEAA06	0	0	0	0	0	01	10	11
182	143	0000000	10011381	000000000	0A237D540D	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
183	144	0000000	20022702	000000000	1446FAA81A	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
184	145	0000000	40044E04	000000000	288DF55035	0	0	0	1	0	01	11	00
185	146	0000000	00089C08	000000000	511BEAA06A	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
186	147	0000000	00113810	000000000	2237D540D5	0	0	0	0	1	01	11	01
187	148	0000000	00227021	000000000	446FAA81AA	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
188	149	0000000	0044E042	000000000	08DF550355	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
189	150	0000000	0089C085	000000000	11BEAA06AA	0	1	0	1	0	10	10	11
190	151	0000000	0113810A	000000000	237D540D54	0	0	0	0	0	10	10	10
191	152	0000000	02270215	000000000	46FAA81AA9	0	0	0	1	1	10	10	10
192	153	0000000	044E042A	000000000	0DF5503553	0	0	0	1	1	10	10	10
193	154	0000000	089C0854	000000000	1BEAA06AA7	0	1	0	1	0	01	10	10
194	155	0000000	113810A8	000000000	37D540D54E	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
195	156	0000000	22702150	000000000	6FAA81AA9D	0	0	0	1	0	11	01	01
196	157	0000000	44E042A0	000000000	5F5503553A	0	1	0	0	0	10	11	01
197	158	0000000	09C08540	000000000	3EAA06AA75	0	1	0	1	0	10	10	11
198	159	0000000	13810A80	000000000	7D540D54EA	0	1	0	0	1	10	10	10
199	160	0000000	27021500	000000000	7AA81AA9D5	0	0	0	1	1	10	10	10
200	161	0000000	4E042A00	000000000	75503553AB	0	0	0	0	0	10	10	10
201	162	0000000	1C085400	000000000	6AA06AA756	0	0	0	1	1	10	10	10
202	163	0000000	3810A800	000000000	5540D54EAC	0	0	0	0	0	10	10	10
203	164	0000000	70215000	000000000	2A81AA9D58	0	0	0	1	1	10	10	10
204	165	0000000	6042A001	000000000	5503553AB0	0	0	0	0	0	10	10	10
205	166	0000000	40854002	000000000	2A06AA7561	0	1	0	0	1	10	10	10
206	167	0000000	010A8004	000000000	540D54EAC3	0	0	0	0	0	10	10	10
207	168	0000000	02150009	000000000	281AA9D586	0	0	0	0	0	10	10	10
208	169	0000000	042A0012	000000000	503553AB0C	0	0	0	0	0	10	10	10
209	170	0000000	08540024	000000000	206AA75618	0	0	0	0	0	10	10	10
210	171	0000000	10A80048	000000000	40D54EAC30	0	1	0	1	0	01	10	10
211	172	0000000	21500091	000000000	01AA9D5861	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
212	173	0000000	42A00122	000000000	03553AB0C3	0	1	0	0	0	11	01	01
213	174	0000000	05400244	000000000	06AA756186	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
214	175	0000000	0A800488	000000000	0D54EAC30D	0	1	0	0	1	01	10	11
215	176	0000000	15000911	000000000	1AA9D5861A	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
216	177	0000000	2A001223	000000000	3553AB0C35	0	0	0	0	1	10	01	01
217	178	0000000	54002446	000000000	6AA756186A	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
218	179	0000000	2800488D	000000000	554EAC30D5	0	0	0	0	0	01	00	10
219	180	0000000	5000911B	000000000	2A9D5861AA	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
220	181	0000000	20012236	000000000	553AB0C355	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
221	182	0000000	4002446C	000000000	2A756186AA	0	0	0	0	1	10	11	00
222	183	0000000	000488D9	000000000	54EAC30D54	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
223	184	0000000	000911B2	000000000	29D5861AA8	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
224	185	0000000	00122364	000000000	53AB0C3550	0	0	0	1	0	11	01	01
225	186	0000000	002446C8	000000000	2756186AA0	0	0	0	0	1	01	11	01
226	187	0000000	00488D90	000000000	4EAC30D540	0	0	0	1	0	10	01	11
227	188	0000000	00911B20	000000000	1D5861AA81	0	1	0	0	1	00	10	01
228	189	0000000	01223640	000000000	3AB0C35502	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
229	190	0000000	02446C80	000000000	756186AA05	0	0	0	0	1	01	01	00
230	191	0000000	0488D901	000000000	6AC30D540B	0	1	0	1	1	11	01	01
231	192	0000000	0911B203	000000000	55861AA817	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01

*Sample Data*

232	193	0000000	12236407	000000000	2B0C35502F	0	0	0	0	0	01	10	11
233	194	0000000	2446C80E	000000000	56186AA05F	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
234	195	0000000	488D901C	000000000	2C30D540BF	0	1	0	0	1	11	00	01
235	196	0000000	111B2039	000000000	5861AA817E	0	0	0	0	1	10	11	00
236	197	0000000	22364072	000000000	30C35502FD	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
237	198	0000000	446C80E4	000000000	6186AA05FB	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
238	199	0000000	08D901C8	000000000	430D540BF6	0	1	0	0	0	11	01	01
239	200	0000000	11B20391	000000000	061AA817EC	0	1	0	0	0	10	11	01

```

Z[0] = 3D
Z[1] = C1
Z[2] = F0
Z[3] = BB
Z[4] = 58
Z[5] = 1E
Z[6] = 42
Z[7] = 42
Z[8] = 4B
Z[9] = 8E
Z[10] = C1
Z[11] = 2A
Z[12] = 40
Z[13] = 63
Z[14] = 7A
Z[15] = 1E

```

=====

Reload this pattern into the LFSRs

Hold content of Summation Combiner regs and calculate new C[t+1] and Z values

=====

```

LFSR1 <= 04B583D
LFSR2 <= 208E1EC1
LFSR3 <= 063C142F0
LFSR4 <= 0F7A2A42BB
C[t+1] <= 10

```

=====

=====

Generating 125 key symbols (encryption/decryption sequence)

=====

240	1	04B583D	208E1EC1	063C142F0	0F7A2A42BB	0	1	0	0	0	10	11	01
241	2	096B07A	411C3D82	0C78285E1	1EF4548577	1	0	1	1	1	10	10	11
242	3	12D60F4	02387B04	18F050BC3	3DE8A90AEF	0	0	1	1	0	01	10	10
243	4	05AC1E9	0470F609	11E0A1786	7BD15215DF	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
244	5	0B583D2	08E1EC13	03C142F0C	77A2A42BBF	1	1	0	1	0	00	01	01
245	6	16B07A5	11C3D827	078285E18	6F4548577E	0	1	0	0	1	11	00	01
246	7	0D60F4B	2387B04F	0F050BC30	5E8A90AEFD	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
247	8	1AC1E97	470F609E	1E0A17860	3D15215DFA	1	0	1	0	0	11	00	11
248	9	1583D2E	0E1EC13D	1C142F0C0	7A2A42BBF4	0	0	1	0	0	01	11	00
249	10	0B07A5D	1C3D827B	18285E181	74548577E9	1	0	1	0	1	10	01	11
250	11	160F4BB	387B04F7	1050BC302	68A90AEFD2	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
251	12	0C1E976	70F609EE	00A178605	515215DFA5	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
252	13	183D2ED	61EC13DD	0142F0C0B	22A42BBF4B	1	1	0	1	1	01	00	00
253	14	107A5DA	43D827BA	0285E1817	4548577E97	0	1	0	0	0	00	01	00
254	15	00F4BB4	07B04F74	050BC302F	0A90AEFD2E	0	1	0	1	0	10	00	01
255	16	01E9769	0F609EE8	0A178605E	15215DFA5C	0	0	1	0	1	11	10	00
256	17	03D2ED3	1EC13DD0	142F0C0BD	2A42BBF4B9	0	1	0	0	0	00	11	10
257	18	07A5DA7	3D827BA0	085E1817B	548577E972	0	1	1	1	1	11	00	11

*Sample Data*

258	19	0F4BB4F	7B04F740	10BC302F6	290AEFD2E5	1	0	0	0	0	01	11	00
259	20	1E9769F	7609EE80	0178605ED	5215DFA5CA	1	0	0	0	0	10	01	11
260	21	1D2ED3F	6C13DD01	02F0C0BDA	242BBF4B94	1	0	0	0	1	00	10	01
261	22	1A5DA7E	5827BA03	05E1817B4	48577E9729	1	0	0	0	1	01	00	10
262	23	14BB4FC	304F7407	0BC302F69	10AEFD2E53	0	0	1	1	1	00	01	00
263	24	09769F9	609EE80E	178605ED2	215DFA5CA7	1	1	0	0	0	10	00	01
264	25	12ED3F2	413DD01C	0FOC0BDA4	42BBF4B94F	0	0	1	1	0	00	10	00
265	26	05DA7E5	027BA038	1E1817B49	0577E9729F	0	0	1	0	1	01	00	10
266	27	0BB4FCA	04F74071	1C302F693	0AEFD2E53F	1	1	1	1	1	11	01	00
267	28	1769F95	09EE80E3	18605ED27	15DFA5CA7F	0	1	1	1	0	11	11	01
268	29	0ED3F2B	13DD01C6	10C0BDA4F	2BBF4B94FE	1	1	0	1	0	10	11	11
269	30	1DA7E56	27BA038D	01817B49F	577E9729FD	1	1	0	0	0	10	10	11
270	31	1B4FCAD	4F74071B	0302F693E	2EF0D2E53FB	1	0	0	1	0	01	10	10
271	32	169F95B	1EE80E37	0605ED27D	5DFA5CA7F7	0	1	0	1	1	01	01	10
272	33	0D3F2B7	3DD01C6E	0C0BDA4FB	3BF4B94FEF	1	1	1	1	1	00	01	01
273	34	1A7E56F	7BA038DC	1817B49F6	77E9729FDE	1	1	1	1	0	01	00	01
274	35	14FCADF	774071B9	102F693ED	6FD2E53FB	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
275	36	09F95BE	6E80E373	005ED27DB	5FA5CA7F7B	1	1	0	1	1	10	00	01
276	37	13F2B7C	5D01C6E7	00BDA4FB6	3F4B94FEF7	0	0	0	0	0	11	10	00
277	38	07E56F9	3A038DCE	017B49F6C	7E9729FDEE	0	0	0	1	0	00	11	10
278	39	0FCADF2	74071B9C	02F693ED8	7D2E53FBDD	1	0	0	0	1	10	00	11
279	40	1F95BE5	680E3738	05ED27DB0	7A5CA7F7BA	1	0	0	0	1	11	10	00
280	41	1F2B7CA	501C6E71	0BDA4FB60	74B94FEF74	1	0	1	1	0	01	11	10
281	42	1E56F94	2038DCE2	17B49F6C0	69729FDEE8	1	0	0	0	0	10	01	11
282	43	1CADF29	4071B9C4	0F693ED80	52E53FBDD1	1	0	1	1	1	11	10	01
283	44	195BE53	00E37389	1ED27DB01	25CA7F7BA3	1	1	1	1	1	01	11	10
284	45	12B7CA6	01C6E713	1DA4FB602	4B94FEF747	0	1	1	1	0	01	01	11
285	46	056F94C	038DCE26	1B49F6C04	1729FDEE8E	0	1	1	0	1	11	01	01
286	47	0ADF299	071B9C4D	1693ED808	2E53FBDD1C	1	0	0	0	0	10	11	01
287	48	15BE532	0E37389A	0D27DB011	5CA7F7BA38	0	0	1	1	0	10	10	11
288	49	0B7CA64	1C6E7135	1A4FB6022	394FEF7471	1	0	1	0	0	01	10	10
289	50	16F94C9	38DCE26A	149F6C044	729FDEE8E2	0	1	0	1	1	01	01	10
290	51	0DF2993	71B9C4D4	093ED8089	653FBDD1C4	1	1	1	0	0	00	01	01
291	52	1BE5327	637389A9	127DB0112	4A7F7BA388	1	0	0	0	1	11	00	01
292	53	17CA64E	46E71353	04FB60224	14FEF74710	0	1	0	1	1	01	11	00
293	54	0F94C9C	0DCE26A6	09F6C0448	29FDEE8E21	1	1	1	1	1	01	01	11
294	55	1F29939	1B9C4D4D	13ED80890	53FBDD1C42	1	1	0	1	0	00	01	01
295	56	1E53272	37389A9A	07DB01121	27F7BA3884	1	0	0	1	0	10	00	01
296	57	1CA64E5	6E713534	0FB602242	4FEF747108	1	0	1	1	1	00	10	00
297	58	194C9CB	5CE26A69	1F6C04485	1FDEE8E210	1	1	1	1	0	11	00	10
298	59	1299397	39C4D4D3	1ED80890A	3FBDD1C420	0	1	1	1	0	00	11	00
299	60	053272F	7389A9A6	1DB011214	7F7BA38840	0	1	1	0	0	11	00	11
300	61	0A64E5E	6713534C	1B6022428	7EF7471081	1	0	1	1	0	00	11	00
301	62	14C9CBD	4E26A699	16C044850	7DDEE8E2102	0	0	0	1	1	10	00	11
302	63	099397A	1C4D4D32	0D80890A0	7BDD1C4205	1	0	1	1	1	00	10	00
303	64	13272F4	389A9A65	1B0112141	77BA38840B	0	1	1	1	1	00	00	10
304	65	064E5E8	713534CB	160224283	6F74710817	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
305	66	0C9CBD1	626A6997	0C0448507	5EE8E2102E	1	0	1	1	1	01	00	00
306	67	19397A3	44D4D32E	180890A0E	3DD1C4205C	1	1	1	1	1	11	01	00
307	68	1272F46	09A9A65D	10112141D	7BA38840B8	0	1	0	1	1	10	11	01
308	69	04E5E8C	13534CBA	00224283A	7747108171	0	0	0	0	0	01	10	11
309	70	09CBD19	26A69975	004485075	6E8E2102E3	1	1	0	1	0	10	01	10
310	71	1397A32	4D4D32EB	00890A0EA	5D1C4205C7	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
311	72	072F465	1A9A65D7	0112141D5	3A38840B8F	0	1	0	0	1	01	00	10
312	73	0E5E8CA	3534CBAF	0224283AA	747108171F	1	0	0	0	0	00	01	00
313	74	1CBD194	6A69975E	044850755	68E2102E3E	1	0	0	1	0	10	00	01
314	75	197A329	54D32EBC	0890A0EAB	51C4205C7D	1	1	1	1	0	01	10	00

*Sample Data*

315	76	12F4653	29A65D79	112141D56	238840B8FA	0	1	0	1	1	01	01	10
316	77	05E8CA6	534CBAF2	024283AAD	47108171F4	0	0	0	0	1	10	01	01
317	78	0BD194D	269975E5	04850755B	0E2102E3E9	1	1	0	0	0	11	10	01
318	79	17A329A	4D32EBCB	090A0EAB6	1C4205C7D2	0	0	1	0	0	00	11	10
319	80	0F46535	1A65D797	12141D56D	38840B8FA5	1	0	0	1	0	11	00	11
320	81	1E8CA6A	34CBAF2F	04283AADA	7108171F4B	1	1	0	0	1	01	11	00
321	82	1D194D5	69975E5F	0850755B4	62102E3E97	1	1	1	0	0	01	01	11
322	83	1A329AA	532EBCBF	10A0EAB68	44205C7D2F	1	0	0	0	0	11	01	01
323	84	1465355	265D797F	0141D56D1	0840B8FA5E	0	0	0	0	1	01	11	01
324	85	08CA6AB	4CBAF2FF	0283AADA2	108171F4BC	1	1	0	1	0	01	01	11
325	86	1194D56	1975E5FF	050755B45	2102E3E979	0	0	0	0	1	10	01	01
326	87	0329AAD	32EBCBFF	0A0EAB68A	4205C7D2F3	0	1	1	0	0	11	10	01
327	88	065355A	65D797FF	141D56D14	040B8FA5E7	0	1	0	0	0	00	11	10
328	89	0CA6AB4	4BAF2FFF	083AADA28	08171F4BCF	1	1	1	0	1	11	00	11
329	90	194D569	175E5FFF	10755B450	102E3E979E	1	0	0	0	0	01	11	00
330	91	129AAD3	2EBCBFFF	00EAB68A1	205C7D2F3C	0	1	0	0	0	10	01	11
331	92	05355A6	5D797FFF	01D56D142	40B8FA5E78	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
332	93	0A6AB4D	3AF2FFFF	03AADA285	0171F4BCF1	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
333	94	14D569B	75E5FFFF	0755B450A	02E3E979E2	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
334	95	09AAD37	6BCBFFFA	0EAB68A15	05C7D2F3C4	1	1	1	1	1	11	01	00
335	96	1355A6E	5797FFF4	1D56D142A	0B8FA5E788	0	1	1	1	0	11	11	01
336	97	06AB4DC	2F2FFE8	1AADA2854	171F4BCF11	0	0	1	0	0	11	11	11
337	98	0D569B8	5E5FFFFD0	155B450A9	2E3E979E23	1	0	0	0	0	11	11	11
338	99	1AAD370	3CBFFFA1	0AB68A153	5C7D2F3C46	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11
339	100	155A6E0	797FFF43	156D142A7	38FA5E788D	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
340	101	0AB4DC0	72FFE87	0ADA2854E	71F4BCF11B	1	1	1	1	1	10	01	10
341	102	1569B81	65FFF0E	15B450A9D	63E979E236	0	1	0	1	0	11	10	01
342	103	0AD3703	4BFFFA1C	0B68A153B	47D2F3C46C	1	1	1	1	1	01	11	10
343	104	15A6E07	17FFF438	16D142A76	0FA5E788D8	0	1	0	1	1	10	01	11
344	105	0B4DC0F	2FFE870	0DA2854EC	1F4BCF11B0	1	1	1	0	1	11	10	01
345	106	169B81F	5FFF0E1	1B450A9D8	3E979E2360	0	1	1	1	0	01	11	10
346	107	0D3703F	3FFFA1C3	168A153B0	7D2F3C46C1	1	1	0	0	1	10	01	11
347	108	1A6E07E	7FFF4386	0D142A761	7A5E788D83	1	1	1	0	1	11	10	01
348	109	14DC0FD	7FFE870C	1A2854EC2	74BCF11B07	0	1	1	1	0	01	11	10
349	110	09B81FB	7FFD0E19	1450A9D84	6979E2360E	1	1	0	0	1	10	01	11
350	111	13703F6	7FFA1C33	08A153B09	52F3C46C1C	0	1	1	1	1	11	10	01
351	112	06E07EC	7FF43867	1142A7612	25E788D838	0	1	0	1	1	00	11	10
352	113	0DC0FD8	7FE870CF	02854EC25	4BCF11B071	1	1	0	1	1	11	00	11
353	114	1B81FB1	7FD0E19E	050A9D84B	179E2360E3	1	1	0	1	0	00	11	00
354	115	1703F62	7FA1C33D	0A153B096	2F3C46C1C7	0	1	1	0	0	11	00	11
355	116	0E07EC4	7F43867B	142A7612C	5E788D838E	1	0	0	0	0	01	11	00
356	117	1C0FD88	7E870CF6	0854EC259	3CF11B071C	1	1	1	1	1	01	01	11
357	118	181FB11	7D0E19ED	10A9D84B3	79E2360E38	1	0	0	1	1	11	01	01
358	119	103F622	7A1C33DA	0153B0967	73C46C1C71	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
359	120	007EC45	743867B5	02A7612CE	6788D838E3	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
360	121	00FD88B	6870CF6B	054EC259C	4F11B071C6	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
361	122	01FB117	50E19ED7	0A9D84B38	1E2360E38C	0	1	1	0	0	10	00	01
362	123	03F622F	21C33DAE	153B09671	3C46C1C718	0	1	0	0	1	11	10	00
363	124	07EC45F	43867B5C	0A7612CE2	788D838E30	0	1	1	1	0	01	11	10
364	125	0FD88BF	070CF6B9	14EC259C4	711B071C61	1	0	0	0	0	10	01	11

*Sample Data***1.1.3 Second Set of Sample Data**

Initial values for the key, BD\_ADDR and clock

```
K'c2[0] = 00 K'c2[1] = 00 K'c2[2] = 00 K'c2[3] = 00
K'c2[4] = 00 K'c2[5] = 00 K'c2[6] = 00 K'c2[7] = 00
K'c2[8] = 00 K'c2[9] = 00 K'c2[10] = 00 K'c2[11] = 00
K'c2[12] = 00 K'c2[13] = 00 K'c2[14] = 00 K'c2[15] = 00
```

```
Addr2[0] = 00 Addr2[1] = 00 Addr2[2] = 00
Addr2[3] = 00 Addr2[4] = 00 Addr2[5] = 00
```

```
CL2[0] = 00 CL2[1] = 00 CL2[2] = 00 CL2[3] = 03
```

=====  
Fill LFSRs with initial data  
=====

t	clk#	LFSR1	LFSR2	LFSR3	LFSR4	X1	X2	X3	X4	Z	C[t+1]	C[t]	C[t-1]
0	0	0000000*	00000000*	000000000*	0000000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
1	1	0000001*	00000001*	000000001*	0000000001*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
2	2	0000002*	00000002*	000000002*	0000000003*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
3	3	0000004*	00000004*	000000004*	0000000007*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
4	4	0000008*	00000008*	000000008*	000000000E*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
5	5	0000010*	00000010*	0000000010*	0000000001C*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
6	6	0000020*	00000020*	0000000020*	0000000038*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
7	7	0000040*	00000040*	0000000040*	0000000070*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
8	8	0000080*	00000080*	0000000080*	00000000E0*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
9	9	0000100*	00000100*	000000100*	000000001C0*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
10	10	0000200*	00000200*	000000200*	00000000380*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
11	11	0000400*	00000400*	000000400*	00000000700*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
12	12	0000800*	00000800*	000000800*	00000000E00*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
13	13	0001000*	00001000*	000001000*	0000001C00*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
14	14	0002000*	00002000*	000002000*	0000003800*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
15	15	0004000*	00004000*	000004000*	0000007000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
16	16	0008000*	00008000*	000008000*	000000E000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
17	17	0010000*	00010000*	000010000*	000001C000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
18	18	0020000*	00020000*	000020000*	0000038000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
19	19	0040000*	00040000*	000040000*	0000070000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
20	20	0080000*	00080000*	000080000*	00000E0000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
21	21	0100000*	00100000*	000100000*	00001C0000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
22	22	0200000*	00200000*	000200000*	0000380000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
23	23	0400000*	00400000*	000400000*	0000700000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
24	24	0800000*	00800000*	000800000*	0000E00000*	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
25	25	1000000*	01000000*	001000000*	0001C00000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
26	26	0000001	02000000*	002000000*	0003800000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
27	27	0000002	04000000*	004000000*	0007000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
28	28	0000004	08000000*	008000000*	000E000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
29	29	0000008	10000000*	010000000*	001C000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
30	30	0000010	20000000*	020000000*	0038000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
31	31	0000020	40000000*	040000000*	0070000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
32	32	0000040	00000001	080000000*	00E0000000*	0	0	1	1	0	01	00	00
33	33	0000080	00000002	100000000*	01C0000000*	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
34	34	0000101	00000004	000000001	0380000000*	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00

*Sample Data*

35	35	0000202	00000008	00000002	0700000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
36	36	0000404	00000010	00000004	0E00000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
37	37	0000808	00000020	00000008	1C00000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
38	38	0001011	00000040	00000011	3800000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
39	39	0002022	00000080	00000022	7000000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00

===== Start clocking Summation Combiner =====

40	1	0004044	00000100	00000044	6000000001	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
41	2	0008088	00000200	00000088	4000000003	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
42	3	0010111	00000400	000000111	0000000007	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
43	4	0020222	00000800	000000222	000000000E	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
44	5	0040444	0001001	000000444	000000001D	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
45	6	0080888	00002002	000000888	000000003B	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
46	7	0101111	00004004	000001111	0000000077	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
47	8	0202222	00008008	000002222	00000000EE	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
48	9	0404444	00010011	000004444	000000001DD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
49	10	0808888	00020022	000008888	00000003BB	1	0	0	0	1	00	00
50	11	1011110	00040044	000011111	0000000777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
51	12	0022221	00080088	000022222	0000000EEE	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
52	13	0044442	00100110	000044444	0000001DDD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
53	14	0088884	00200220	000088888	000003BBBB	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
54	15	0111109	00400440	000111111	0000007777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
55	16	02222212	00800880	000222222	000000EEEE	0	1	0	0	1	00	00
56	17	04444424	01001100	000444444	000001DDDD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
57	18	0888848	02002200	000888888	000003BBBB	1	0	0	0	1	00	00
58	19	1111090	04004400	001111110	0000077777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
59	20	0222120	08008800	002222220	00000EEEEEE	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
60	21	0444240	10011000	004444440	00001DDDDD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
61	22	0888480	20022000	008888880	00003BBBBB	1	0	0	0	1	00	00
62	23	1110900	40044000	011111100	0000077777	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
63	24	0221200	00088001	022222200	00000EEEEEE	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
64	25	0442400	00110003	044444400	0001DDDDDD	0	0	0	0	0	00	00
65	26	0884800	00220006	088888800	0003BBBBBB	1	0	1	0	0	01	00
66	27	1109000	0044000C	111111000	0007777777	0	0	0	0	1	01	00
67	28	0212001	00880018	022222001	00000EEEEEE	0	1	0	0	0	11	01
68	29	0424002	01100031	044444002	001DDDDDDC	0	0	0	0	1	01	11
69	30	0848004	02200062	088888004	003BBBBBB8	1	0	1	0	1	10	01
70	31	1090008	044000C4	111110008	0077777770	0	0	0	0	0	00	10
71	32	0120010	08800188	022220010	0000000000	0	1	0	1	0	00	10
72	33	0240020	11000311	044440020	01DDDDDC1	0	0	0	1	1	00	00
73	34	0480040	22000622	088880040	03BBBBBB83	0	0	1	1	0	01	00
74	35	0900081	44000C44	111100080	0777777707	1	0	0	0	0	00	01
75	36	1200103	08001888	022200101	000000000E	0	0	0	1	1	11	00
76	37	0400207	10003111	044400202	1DDDDDC1D	0	0	0	1	0	01	11
77	38	080040E	20006222	088800404	3BBBBBB83B	1	0	1	1	0	01	01
78	39	100081C	4000C444	111000808	7777777077	0	0	0	0	1	10	01
79	40	0001038	00018888	022001010	6EEEEEE0EF	0	0	0	1	1	00	10
80	41	0002070	00031110	044002020	5DDDDDC1DE	0	0	0	1	1	01	00
81	42	00040E0	00062220	088004040	3BBBBBB83BC	0	0	1	1	1	00	01
82	43	00081C1	000C4440	110008081	7777770779	0	0	0	0	0	11	00
83	44	0010383	00188880	020010103	6EEEEEE0EF2	0	0	0	1	0	01	11
84	45	0020707	00311100	040020206	5DDDDDC1DE5	0	0	0	1	0	10	01
85	46	0040E0E	00622200	08004040C	3BBBBB83BCB	0	0	1	1	0	11	10
86	47	0081C1D	00C44400	100080819	7777707797	0	1	0	0	0	00	11
87	48	010383A	01888801	000101032	6EEEEEE0EF2F	0	1	0	1	0	11	00
88	49	0207075	03111003	000202064	5DDDC1DE5E	0	0	0	1	0	01	11

*Sample Data*

89	50	040E0EA	06222006	0004040C8	3BBB83BCBC	0	0	0	1	0	10	01	11
90	51	081C1D5	0C44400C	000808191	7770779797	1	0	0	0	1	00	10	01
91	52	10383AB	18888018	001010323	6EEE0EF2F2	0	1	0	1	0	00	00	10
92	53	0070756	31110030	002020646	5DDC1DE5E5	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
93	54	00E0EAC	62220060	004040C8C	3BB83BCBCB	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
94	55	01C1D59	444400C1	008081919	7770779797	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
95	56	0383AB2	08880183	010103232	6EE0EF2F2F	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
96	57	0707565	11100307	020206464	5DC1DE5E5F	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
97	58	0E0EACA	2220060E	04040C8C8	3B83BCBCBF	1	0	0	1	0	10	00	01
98	59	1C1D594	44400C1C	080819191	770779797E	1	0	1	0	0	00	10	00
99	60	183AB28	08801838	101032323	6E0EF2F2FC	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
100	61	1075650	11003070	002064647	5C1DE5E5F8	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
101	62	00EACA1	220060E0	0040C8C8E	383BCBCBF0	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
102	63	01D5943	4400C1C0	00819191D	70779797E0	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
103	64	03AB286	08018380	01032323A	60EF2F2FC1	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
104	65	075650C	10030701	020646475	41DE5E5F82	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
105	66	0EACA18	20060E02	040C8C8EA	03BCBCBF04	1	0	0	1	0	01	00	00
106	67	1D59430	400C1C05	0819191D4	0779797E09	1	0	1	0	1	00	01	00
107	68	1AB2861	0018380A	1032323A9	0EF2F2FC12	1	0	0	1	0	10	00	01
108	69	15650C3	00307015	006464752	1DE5E5F825	0	0	0	1	1	11	10	00
109	70	0ACA186	0060E02A	00C8C8EA4	3BCBCBF04B	1	0	0	1	1	00	11	10
110	71	159430C	00C1C055	019191D48	779797E097	0	1	0	1	0	11	00	11
111	72	0B28618	018380AA	032323A90	6F2F2FC12F	1	1	0	0	1	01	11	00
112	73	1650C30	03070154	064647520	5E5E5F825E	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
113	74	0CA1860	060E02A8	0C8C8EA40	3CBCBF04BC	1	0	1	1	0	11	11	01
114	75	19430C0	0C1C0550	19191D480	79797E0979	1	0	1	0	1	11	11	11
115	76	1286180	18380AA0	12323A900	72F2FC12F2	0	0	0	1	0	11	11	11
116	77	050C301	30701541	046475201	65E5F825E5	0	0	0	1	0	11	11	11
117	78	0A18602	60E02A82	08C8EA402	4BCBF04BCB	1	1	1	1	1	10	11	11
118	79	1430C04	41C05505	1191D4804	1797E09796	0	1	0	1	0	10	10	11
119	80	0861808	0380AA0A	0323A9008	2F2FC12F2C	1	1	0	0	0	01	10	10
120	81	10C3011	07015415	064752011	5E5F825E59	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
121	82	0186022	0E02A82A	0C8EA4022	3CBF04BCB2	0	0	1	1	0	10	00	01
122	83	030C045	1C055054	191D48044	797E097964	0	0	1	0	1	11	10	00
123	84	061808A	380AA0A8	123A90088	72FC12F2C9	0	0	0	1	0	00	11	10
124	85	0C30115	70154151	047520111	65F825E593	1	0	0	1	0	11	00	11
125	86	186022A	602A82A3	08EA40222	4BF04BCB26	1	0	1	1	0	00	11	00
126	87	10C0455	40550546	11D480444	17E097964C	0	0	0	1	1	10	00	11
127	88	01808AA	00AA0A8D	03A900888	2FC12F2C99	0	1	0	1	0	00	10	00
128	89	0301155	0154151A	075201111	5F825E5932	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
129	90	06022AA	02A82A34	0EA402222	3F04BCB264	0	1	1	0	1	00	01	00
130	91	0C04555	05505468	1D4804445	7E097964C9	1	0	1	0	0	10	00	01
131	92	1808AAA	0AA0A8D0	1A900888A	7C12F2C992	1	1	1	0	1	00	10	00
132	93	1011555	154151A1	152011115	7825E59324	0	0	0	0	0	01	00	10
133	94	0022AAB	2A82A342	0A402222B	704BCB2648	0	1	1	0	1	00	01	00
134	95	0045556	55054684	148044457	6097964C91	0	0	0	1	1	11	00	01
135	96	008AAC	2A0A8D09	0900888AE	412F2C9923	0	0	1	0	0	01	11	00
136	97	0115559	54151A12	12011115D	025E593246	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
137	98	022AAB2	282A3424	0402222BA	04BCB2648D	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
138	99	0455564	50546848	080444575	097964C91A	0	0	1	0	1	01	10	11
139	100	08AAC	20A8D090	100888AEA	12F2C99235	1	1	0	1	0	10	01	10
140	101	1155591	4151A120	0011115D5	25E593246A	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
141	102	02AAB22	02A34240	002222BAA	4BCB2648D5	0	1	0	1	0	00	00	10
142	103	0555644	05468481	004445755	17964C91AB	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
143	104	0AACAC8	0A8D0903	00888AEAA	2F2C992357	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
144	105	1555911	151A1206	011115D55	5E593246AE	0	0	0	0	1	01	01	00
145	106	0AAB222	2A34240C	02222BAAA	3CB2648D5C	1	0	0	1	1	11	01	01

*Sample Data*

146	107	1556445	54684818	044457555	7964C91AB8	0	0	0	0	1	01	11	01
147	108	0AAC88B	28D09030	0888AEAAA	72C9923571	1	1	1	1	1	01	01	11
148	109	1559117	51A12060	11115D555	6593246AE2	0	1	0	1	1	11	01	01
149	110	0AB222F	234240C0	0222BAAB	4B2648D5C5	1	0	0	0	0	10	11	01
150	111	156445F	46848180	044575557	164C91AB8A	0	1	0	0	1	01	10	11
151	112	0AC88BF	0D090301	088AEAAAE	2C99235714	1	0	1	1	0	10	01	10
152	113	159117F	1A120602	1115D555D	593246AE28	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
153	114	0B222FE	34240C04	022BAABA	32648D5C51	1	0	0	0	1	01	00	10
154	115	16445FD	68481809	045755574	64C91AB8A2	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
155	116	0C88BFA	50903012	08AEAAAE8	4992357144	1	1	1	1	0	01	00	01
156	117	19117F5	21206024	115D555D1	13246AE288	1	0	0	0	0	00	01	00
157	118	1222FEA	4240C048	02BAAABA2	2648D5C511	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
158	119	0445FD5	04818090	057555744	4C91AB8A23	0	1	0	1	1	01	11	00
159	120	088BFAA	09030120	0AEAAAE88	1923571446	1	0	1	0	1	10	01	11
160	121	1117F55	12060240	15D555D11	3246AE288D	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
161	122	022FEAA	240C0480	0BAABABA22	648D5C511B	0	0	1	1	0	00	00	10
162	123	045FD54	48180900	175557444	491AB8A237	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
163	124	08BFAA9	10301200	0EAAAE889	123571446F	1	0	1	0	0	01	00	00
164	125	117F553	20602400	1D555D113	246AE288DF	0	0	1	0	0	00	01	00
165	126	02FEAA7	40C04800	1AAAABA227	48D5C511BE	0	1	1	1	1	10	00	01
166	127	05FD54F	01809001	15557444F	11AB8A237D	0	1	0	1	0	00	10	00
167	128	0BFAA9F	03012002	0AAAEE889E	23571446FA	1	0	1	0	0	00	00	10
168	129	17F553F	06024004	1555D113D	46AE288DF5	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
169	130	0FEAA7E	0C048008	0AABA227A	0D5C511BEA	1	0	1	0	0	01	00	00
170	131	1FD54FC	18090011	1557444F5	1AB8A237D5	1	0	0	1	1	00	01	00
171	132	1FAA9F9	30120022	0AAE889EB	3571446FAA	1	0	1	0	0	10	00	01
172	133	1F553F2	60240044	155D113D7	6AE288DF55	1	0	0	1	0	00	10	00
173	134	1EAA7E4	40480089	0ABA227AE	55C511BEAA	1	0	1	1	1	00	00	10
174	135	1D54FC9	00900113	157444F5D	2B8A237D54	1	1	0	1	1	01	00	00
175	136	1AA9F93	01200227	0AE889EBA	571446FAA8	1	0	1	0	1	00	01	00
176	137	1553F26	0240044E	15D113D75	2E288DF550	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
177	138	0AA7E4C	0480089C	0BA227AEA	5C511BEAA0	1	1	1	0	0	00	11	00
178	139	154FC98	09001138	17444F5D4	38A237D540	0	0	0	1	1	10	00	11
179	140	0A9F931	12002270	0E889EBA9	71446FAA81	1	0	1	0	0	00	10	00
180	141	153F262	240044E0	1D113D753	6288DF5503	0	0	1	1	0	00	00	10
181	142	0A7E4C5	480089C0	1A227AEA7	4511BEAA06	1	0	1	0	0	01	00	00
182	143	14FC98B	10011381	1444F5D4F	0A237D540D	0	0	0	0	1	01	01	00
183	144	09F9316	20022702	0889EBA9E	1446FAA81A	1	0	1	0	1	11	01	01
184	145	13F262D	40044E04	1113D753D	288DF55035	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
185	146	07E4C5A	00089C08	0227AEA7A	511BEAA06A	0	0	0	0	0	01	10	11
186	147	0FC98B4	00113810	044F5D4F5	2237D540D5	1	0	0	0	0	01	01	10
187	148	1F93169	00227021	089EBA9EB	446FAA81AA	1	0	1	0	1	11	01	01
188	149	1F262D2	0044E042	113D753D7	08DF550355	1	0	0	1	1	10	11	01
189	150	1E4C5A4	0089C085	027AEA7AE	11BEAA06AA	1	1	0	1	1	10	10	11
190	151	1C98B48	0113810A	04F5D4F5C	237D540D54	1	0	0	0	1	10	10	10
191	152	1931691	02270215	09EBA9EB8	46FAA81AA9	1	0	1	1	1	01	10	10
192	153	1262D22	044E042A	13D753D71	0DF5503553	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
193	154	04C5A44	089C0854	07AEA7AE2	1BEAA06AA7	0	1	0	1	1	11	01	01
194	155	098B488	113810A8	0F5D4F5C4	37D540D54E	1	0	1	1	0	11	11	01
195	156	1316910	22702150	1EBA9EB89	6FAA81AA9D	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
196	157	062D220	44E042A0	1D753D712	5F5503553A	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
197	158	0C5A440	09C08540	1AEA7AE25	3EAA06AA75	1	1	1	1	1	10	11	11
198	159	18B4880	13810A80	15D4F5C4B	7D540D54EA	1	1	0	0	0	10	10	11
199	160	1169100	27021500	0BA9EB897	7AA81AA9D5	0	0	1	1	0	01	10	10
200	161	02D2201	4E042A00	1753D712E	75503553AB	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
201	162	05A4403	1C085400	0EA7AE25C	6AA06AA756	0	0	1	1	0	10	00	01
202	163	0B48807	3810A800	1D4F5C4B8	5540D54EAC	1	0	1	0	0	00	10	00

*Sample Data*

203	164	169100F	70215000	1A9EB8971	2A81AA9D58	0	0	1	1	0	00	00	10
204	165	0D2201E	6042A001	153D712E3	5503553AB0	1	0	0	0	1	00	00	00
205	166	1A4403C	40854002	0A7AE25C6	2A06AA7561	1	1	1	0	1	01	00	00
206	167	1488079	010A8004	14F5C4B8D	540D54EAC3	0	0	0	0	1	01	01	00
207	168	09100F2	02150009	09EB8971B	281AA9D586	1	0	1	0	1	11	01	01
208	169	12201E5	042A0012	13D712E37	503553AB0C	0	0	0	0	1	01	11	01
209	170	04403CA	08540024	07AE25C6E	206AA75618	0	0	0	0	1	11	01	11
210	171	0880795	10A80048	0F5C4B8DD	40D54EAC30	1	1	1	1	1	11	11	01
211	172	1100F2A	21500091	1EB8971BA	01AA9D5861	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
212	173	0201E54	42A00122	1D712E374	03553AB0C3	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
213	174	0403CA9	05400244	1AE25C6E9	06AA756186	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
214	175	0807952	0A800488	15C4B8DD3	0D54EAC30D	1	1	0	0	1	11	11	11
215	176	100F2A5	15000911	0B8971BA6	1AA9D5861A	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
216	177	001E54A	2A001223	1712E374C	3553AB0C35	0	0	0	0	1	00	11	11
217	178	003CA94	54002446	0E25C6E98	6AA756186A	0	0	1	1	0	11	00	11
218	179	0079528	2800488D	1C4B8DD31	554EAC30D5	0	0	1	0	0	01	11	00
219	180	00F2A50	5000911B	18971BA62	2A9D5861AA	0	0	1	1	1	10	01	11
220	181	01E54A0	20012236	112E374C4	553AB0C355	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
221	182	03CA940	4002446C	025C6E988	2A756186AA	0	0	0	0	0	01	00	10
222	183	0795280	000488D9	04B8DD310	54EAC30D54	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
223	184	0F2A500	000911B2	0971BA620	29D5861AA8	1	0	1	1	1	10	00	01
224	185	1E54A00	00122364	12E374C40	53AB0C3550	1	0	0	1	0	00	10	00
225	186	1CA9400	002446C8	05C6E9880	2756186AA0	1	0	0	0	1	01	00	10
226	187	1952800	00488D90	0B8DD3101	4EAC30D540	1	0	1	1	0	11	01	00
227	188	12A5000	00911B20	171BA6202	1D5861AA81	0	1	0	0	0	10	11	01
228	189	054A000	01223640	0E374C404	3AB0C35502	0	0	1	1	0	10	10	11
229	190	0A94000	02446C80	1C6E98808	756186AA05	1	0	1	0	0	01	10	10
230	191	1528001	0488D901	18DD31011	6AC30D540B	0	1	1	1	0	10	01	10
231	192	0A50003	0911B203	11BA62023	55861AA817	1	0	0	1	0	11	10	01
232	193	14A0006	12236407	0374C4047	2B0C35502F	0	0	0	0	1	11	11	10
233	194	094000C	2446C80E	06E98808E	56186AA05F	1	0	0	0	0	11	11	11
234	195	1280018	488D901C	0DD31011D	2C30D540BF	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
235	196	0500030	111B2039	1BA62023A	5861AA817E	0	0	1	0	0	11	11	11
236	197	0A00060	22364072	174C40475	30C35502FD	1	0	0	1	1	11	11	11
237	198	14000C0	446C80E4	0E98808EA	6186AA05FB	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
238	199	0800180	08D901C8	1D31011D5	430D540BF6	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11
239	200	1000301	11B20391	1A62023AB	061AA817EC	0	1	1	0	0	10	10	11

Z[0] = 25  
Z[1] = 45  
Z[2] = 6B  
Z[3] = 55  
Z[4] = 5F  
Z[5] = C2  
Z[6] = 20  
Z[7] = E5  
Z[8] = C4  
Z[9] = F8  
Z[10] = 3A  
Z[11] = F1  
Z[12] = FF  
Z[13] = 89  
Z[14] = 02  
Z[15] = 35

=====

Reload this pattern into the LFSRs

*Sample Data*

```

Hold content of Summation Combiner regs and calculate new C[t+1] and Z values
=====
LFSR1  <= 1C45F25
LFSR2  <= 7FF8C245
LFSR3  <= 1893A206B
LFSR4  <= 1A02F1E555
C[t+1] <= 10

=====
Generating 125 key symbols (encryption/decryption sequence)
=====
240   1   1C45F25  7FF8C245  1893A206B  1A02F1E555    1   1   1   0   1   10   10   11
241   2   188BE4A   7FF1848B   1127440D7   3405E3CAAB   1   1   0   0   0   01   10   10
242   3   1117C95   7FE30917   024E881AF   680BC79557   0   1   0   0   0   01   01   10
243   4   022F92B   7FC6122F   049D1035E   50178F2AAF   0   1   0   0   0   11   01   01
244   5   045F257   7F8C245E   093A206BD   202F1E555E   0   1   1   0   1   10   11   01
245   6   08BE4AE   7F1848BC   127440D7A   405E3CAABC   1   0   0   0   1   01   10   11
246   7   117C95C   7E309178   04E881AF4   00BC795579   0   0   0   1   0   01   01   10
247   8   02F92B8   7C6122F0   09D1035E8   0178F2AAF2   0   0   1   0   0   11   01   01
248   9   05F2570   78C245E1   13A206BD0   02F1E555E5   0   1   0   1   1   10   11   01
249  10   0BE4AE1   71848BC2   07440D7A0   05E3CAABC A  1   1   0   1   1   10   10   11
250  11   17C95C3   63091784   0E881AF40   0BC7955795   0   0   1   1   0   01   10   10
251  12   0F92B87   46122F09   1D1035E80   178F2AAF2B   1   0   1   1   0   10   01   10
252  13   1F2570F   0C245E12   1A206BD01   2F1E555E56   1   0   1   0   0   11   10   01
253  14   1E4AE1F   1848BC25   1440D7A03   5E3CAABCAC  1   0   0   0   0   00   11   10
254  15   1C95C3E   3091784A   0881AF407   3C79557958   1   1   1   0   1   11   00   11
255  16   192B87D   6122F094   11035E80F   78F2AAF2B1   1   0   0   1   1   01   11   00
256  17   12570FA   4245E128   0206BD01E   71E555E562   0   0   0   1   0   10   01   11
257  18   04AE1F4   048BC250   040D7A03D   63CAABCAC5  0   1   0   1   0   11   10   01
258  19   095C3E8   091784A0   081AF407A   479557958A   1   0   1   1   0   01   11   10
259  20   12B87D1   122F0941   1035E80F4   0F2AAF2B14   0   0   0   0   1   11   01   11
260  21   0570FA3   245E1283   006BD01E9   1E555E5628   0   0   0   0   1   01   11   01
261  22   0AE1F46   48BC2506   00D7A03D2   3CAABCAC50  1   1   0   1   0   01   01   11
262  23   15C3E8C   11784A0C   01AF407A5   79557958A0   0   0   0   0   1   10   01   01
263  24   0B87D18   22F09419   035E80F4A   72AAF2B140  1   1   0   1   1   11   10   01
264  25   170FA30   45E12832   06BD01E94   6555E56280  0   1   0   0   0   00   11   10
265  26   0E1F460   0BC25065   00D7A03D28   4AABCAC501  1   1   1   1   0   00   00   11
266  27   1C3E8C0   1784A0CB   1AF407A50   1557958A03  1   1   1   0   1   01   00   00
267  28   187D181   2F094196   15E80F4A0   2AAF2B1406  1   0   0   1   1   00   01   00
268  29   10FA302   5E12832C   0BD01E941   555E56280C  0   0   1   0   1   11   00   01
269  30   01F4604   3C250658   17A03D283   2ABCAC5019  0   0   0   1   0   01   11   00
270  31   03E8C09   784A0CB0   0F407A506   557958A033  0   0   1   0   0   10   01   11
271  32   07D1812   70941960   1E80F4A0C   2AF2B14066  0   1   1   1   1   11   10   01
272  33   0FA3024   612832C1   1D01E9419   55E56280CD  1   0   1   1   0   01   11   10
273  34   1F46049   42506583   1A03D2832   2BCAC5019A  1   0   1   1   0   01   01   11
274  35   1E8C093   04A0CB07   1407A5065   57958A0335  1   1   0   1   0   00   01   01
275  36   1D18127   0941960F   080F4A0CB   2F2B14066B  1   0   1   0   0   10   00   01
276  37   1A3024F   12832C1F   101E94196   5E56280CD7  1   1   0   0   0   00   10   00
277  38   146049F   2506583E   003D2832C   3CAC5019AE  0   0   0   1   1   01   00   10
278  39   08C093E   4A0CB07D   007A50658   7958A0335D  1   0   0   0   0   00   01   00
279  40   118127C   141960FA   00F4A0CB0   72B14066BA  0   0   0   1   1   11   00   01
280  41   03024F8   2832C1F4   01E941961   656280CD74  0   0   0   0   1   10   11   00
281  42   06049F1   506583E9   03D2832C2   4AC5019AE9  0   0   0   1   1   01   10   11
282  43   0C093E2   20CB07D2   07A506585   158A0335D3  1   1   0   1   0   10   01   10
283  44   18127C5   41960FA5   0F4A0CB0B   2B14066BA7  1   1   1   0   1   11   10   01
284  45   1024F8A   032C1F4B   1E9419616   56280CD74F  0   0   1   0   0   00   11   10
285  46   0049F15   06583E97   1D2832C2C   2C5019AE9F  0   0   1   0   1   10   00   11

```

*Sample Data*

286	47	0093E2B	0CB07D2F	1A5065859	58A0335D3E	0	1	1	1	1	00	10	00
287	48	0127C56	1960FA5E	14A0CB0B2	314066BA7D	0	0	0	0	0	01	00	10
288	49	024F8AD	32C1F4BC	094196164	6280CD74FB	0	1	1	1	0	11	01	00
289	50	049F15A	6583E978	12832C2C8	45019AE9F6	0	1	0	0	0	10	11	01
290	51	093E2B5	4B07D2F0	050658591	0A0335D3ED	1	0	0	0	1	01	10	11
291	52	127C56B	160FA5E0	0A0CB0B22	14066BA7DA	0	0	1	0	0	01	01	10
292	53	04F8AD7	2C1F4BC1	141961645	280CD74FB5	0	0	0	0	1	10	01	01
293	54	09F15AF	583E9783	0832C2C8A	5019AE9F6A	1	0	1	0	0	11	10	01
294	55	13E2B5E	307D2F06	106585915	20335D3ED5	0	0	0	0	1	11	11	10
295	56	07C56BD	60FA5E0D	00CB0B22B	4066BA7DAA	0	1	0	0	0	11	11	11
296	57	0F8AD7A	41F4BC1B	019616457	00CD74FB54	1	1	0	1	0	10	11	11
297	58	1F15AF4	03E97836	032C2C8AF	019AE9F6A9	1	1	0	1	1	10	10	11
298	59	1E2B5E9	07D2F06C	06585915E	0335D3ED52	1	1	0	0	0	01	10	10
299	60	1C56BD2	0FA5E0D8	0CB0B22BC	066BA7DAA4	1	1	1	0	0	10	01	10
300	61	18AD7A5	1F4BC1B0	196164578	0CD74FB549	1	0	1	1	1	11	10	01
301	62	115AF4B	3E978361	12C2C8AF0	19AE9F6A92	0	1	0	1	1	00	11	10
302	63	02B5E96	7D2F06C2	0585915E0	335D3ED524	0	0	0	0	0	10	00	11
303	64	056BD2D	7A5E0D85	0B0B22BC1	66BA7DAA49	0	0	1	1	0	00	10	00
304	65	0AD7A5B	74BC1B0A	161645783	4D74FB5493	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
305	66	15AF4B6	69783615	0C2C8AF07	1AE9F6A926	0	0	1	1	0	01	00	00
306	67	0B5E96D	52F06C2B	185915E0F	35D3ED524C	1	1	1	1	1	11	01	00
307	68	16BD2DB	25E0D857	10B22BC1F	6BA7DAA499	0	1	0	1	1	10	11	01
308	69	0D7A5B7	4BC1B0AF	01645783F	574FB54933	1	1	0	0	0	10	10	11
309	70	1AF4B6F	1783615F	02C8AF07F	2E9F6A9266	1	1	0	1	1	01	10	10
310	71	15E96DF	2F06C2BF	05915E0FF	5D3ED524CC	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
311	72	0BD2DBF	5E0D857F	0B22BC1FE	3A7DAA4998	1	0	1	0	0	10	00	01
312	73	17A5B7F	3C1B0AFE	1645783FD	74FB549331	0	0	0	1	1	11	10	00
313	74	0F4B6FF	783615FD	0C8AF07FA	69F6A92662	1	0	1	1	0	01	11	10
314	75	1E96DFF	706C2BFB	1915E0FF5	53ED524CC4	1	0	1	1	0	01	01	11
315	76	1D2DBFE	60D857F6	122BC1FEB	27DAA49988	1	1	0	1	0	00	01	01
316	77	1A5B7FD	41B0AFEC	045783FD7	4FB5493310	1	1	0	1	1	10	00	01
317	78	14B6FFA	03615FD8	08AF07FAE	1F6A926620	0	0	1	0	1	11	10	00
318	79	096DFF4	06C2BFB1	115E0FF5D	3ED524CC40	1	1	0	1	0	01	11	10
319	80	12DBFE8	0D857F63	02BC1FEBB	7DAA499881	0	1	0	1	1	10	01	11
320	81	05B7FD0	1B0AFEC6	05783FD77	7B54933103	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
321	82	0B6FFA1	3615FD8C	0AF07FAEF	76A9266206	1	0	1	1	1	00	00	10
322	83	16DFF42	6C2BFB18	15E0FF5DE	6D524CC40C	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
323	84	0DBFE85	5857F631	0BC1FEBBD	5AA4998819	1	0	1	1	1	01	00	00
324	85	1B7FD0B	30AFEC62	1783FD77A	3549331033	1	1	0	0	1	00	01	00
325	86	16FFA16	615FD8C5	0F07FAEF5	6A92662067	0	0	1	1	0	10	00	01
326	87	0DFF42D	42BFB18B	1E0FF5DEA	5524CC40CE	1	1	1	0	1	00	10	00
327	88	1BFE85B	057F6317	1C1FEBBD5	2A4998819C	1	0	1	0	0	00	00	10
328	89	17FD0B7	0AFEC62E	183FD77AA	5493310339	0	1	1	1	1	01	00	00
329	90	0FFA16F	15FD8C5C	107FAEF55	2926620672	1	1	0	0	1	00	01	00
330	91	1FF42DF	2BFB18B9	00FF5DEAA	524CC40CE5	1	1	0	0	0	10	00	01
331	92	1FE85BF	57F63172	01FEBBD55	24998819CA	1	1	0	1	1	00	10	00
332	93	1FD0B7F	2FEC62E4	03FD77AAA	4933103394	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
333	94	1FA16FF	5FD8C5C9	07FAEF555	1266206728	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
334	95	1F42DFF	3FB18B93	0FF5DEAAA	24CC40CE51	1	1	1	1	1	11	01	00
335	96	1E85BFF	7F631727	1FEBBD554	4998819CA3	1	0	1	1	0	11	11	01
336	97	1D0B7FE	7EC62E4F	1FD77AAA9	1331033947	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11
337	98	1A16FFC	7D8C5C9F	1FAEF5553	266206728E	1	1	1	0	1	10	10	11
338	99	142DFF9	7B18B93F	1F5DEAAA7	4CC40CE51D	0	0	1	1	0	01	10	10
339	100	085BFFF	7631727F	1EBBD554E	198819CA3B	1	0	1	1	0	10	01	10
340	101	10B7FE6	6C62E4FF	1D77AAA9C	3310339477	0	0	1	0	1	00	10	01
341	102	016FFCC	58C5C9FE	1AEF55538	66206728EE	0	1	1	0	0	00	00	10
342	103	02DFF98	318B93FC	15DEAAA70	4C40CE51DC	0	1	0	0	1	00	00	00

*Sample Data*

343	104	05BFF31	631727F8	0BBD554E1	18819CA3B9	0 0 1 1	0 01	00 00
344	105	0B7FE62	462E4FF1	177AAA9C2	3103394772	1 0 0 0	0 00	01 00
345	106	16FFCC5	0C5C9FE2	0EF555384	6206728EE4	0 0 1 0	1 11	00 01
346	107	0DFF98A	18B93FC4	1DEAAA709	440CE51DC9	1 1 1 0	0 00	11 00
347	108	1BFF315	31727F88	1BD554E12	0819CA3B93	1 0 1 0	0 11	00 11
348	109	17FE62A	62E4FF11	17AAA9C24	1033947726	0 1 0 0	0 01	11 00
349	110	0FFCC54	45C9FE22	0F5553849	206728EE4C	1 1 1 0	0 01	01 11
350	111	1FF98A8	0B93FC44	1EAAA7093	40CE51DC99	1 1 1 1	1 00	01 01
351	112	1FF3150	1727F889	1D554E127	019CA3B933	1 0 1 1	1 10	00 01
352	113	1FE62A0	2E4FF112	1AAA9C24F	0339477267	1 0 1 0	0 00	10 00
353	114	1FCC541	5C9FE225	15553849E	06728EE4CF	1 1 0 0	0 00	00 10
354	115	1F98A82	393FC44B	0AAA7093C	0CE51DC99F	1 0 1 1	1 01	00 00
355	116	1F31504	727F8897	1554E1279	19CA3B933E	1 0 0 1	1 00	01 00
356	117	1B62A09	64FF112F	0AA9C24F2	339477267D	1 1 1 1	0 01	00 01
357	118	1CC5412	49FE225E	1553849E4	6728EE4CFB	1 1 0 0	1 00	01 00
358	119	198A824	13FC44BC	0AA7093C9	4E51DC99F7	1 1 1 0	1 10	00 01
359	120	1315049	27F88979	154E12792	1CA3B933EE	0 1 0 1	0 00	10 00
360	121	062A093	4FF112F3	0A9C24F24	39477267DC	0 1 1 0	0 00	00 10
361	122	0C54127	1FE225E6	153849E48	728EE4CFB8	1 1 0 1	1 01	00 00
362	123	18A824E	3FC44BCD	0A7093C91	651DC99F71	1 1 1 0	0 11	01 00
363	124	115049C	7F88979A	14E127922	4A3B933EE2	0 1 0 0	0 10	11 01
364	125	02A0938	7F112F35	09C24F244	1477267DC5	0 0 1 0	1 01	10 11

*Sample Data*

### 1.1.4 Third Set of Samples

Initial values for the key, pan address and clock

```
K'c3[0] = FF K'c3[1] = FF K'c3[2] = FF K'c3[3] = FF
K'c3[4] = FF K'c3[5] = FF K'c3[6] = FF K'c3[7] = FF
K'c3[8] = FF K'c3[9] = FF K'c3[10] = FF K'c3[11] = FF
K'c3[12] = FF K'c3[13] = FF K'c3[14] = FF K'c3[15] = FF
```

```
Addr3[0] = FF Addr3[1] = FF Addr3[2] = FF
Addr3[3] = FF Addr3[4] = FF Addr3[5] = FF
```

```
CL3[0] = FF CL3[1] = FF CL3[2] = FF CL3[3] = 03
```

=====  
Fill LFSRs with initial data  
=====

t	clk#	LFSR1	LFSR2	LFSR3	LFSR4	X1	X2	X3	X4	Z	C[t+1]	C[t]	C[t-1]
0	0	0000000*	00000000*	000000000*	0000000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
1	1	0000001*	00000001*	000000001*	0000000001*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
2	2	0000003*	00000002*	000000003*	0000000003*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
3	3	0000007*	00000004*	000000007*	0000000007*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
4	4	000000F*	00000009*	00000000F*	000000000F*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
5	5	000001F*	00000013*	00000001F*	0000000001F*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
6	6	000003F*	00000027*	00000003F*	0000000003F*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
7	7	000007F*	0000004F*	00000007F*	0000000007F*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
8	8	00000FF*	0000009F*	0000000FF*	00000000FF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
9	9	00001FF*	0000013F*	0000001FF*	000000001FF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
10	10	00003FF*	0000027F*	0000003FF*	000000003FF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
11	11	00007FF*	000004FF*	0000007FF*	000000007FF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
12	12	0000FFF*	000009FF*	000000FFF*	00000000FFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
13	13	0001FFF*	000013FF*	000001FFF*	00000001FFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
14	14	0003FFF*	000027FF*	000003FFF*	00000003FFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
15	15	0007FFF*	00004FFF*	000007FFF*	00000007FFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
16	16	000FFFF*	00009FFF*	00000FFFF*	0000000FFFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
17	17	001FFFF*	00013FFF*	00001FFFF*	0000001FFFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
18	18	003FFFFFF*	00027FFFFFF*	00003FFFFFF*	000003FFFFFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
19	19	007FFFFFF*	0004FFFFFF*	00007FFFFFF*	0000007FFFFFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
20	20	00FFFFFF*	0009FFFFFF*	00000FFFFFF*	0000000FFFFFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
21	21	01FFFFFF*	0013FFFFFF*	0001FFFFFF*	00001FFFFFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
22	22	03FFFFFF*	0027FFFFFF*	0003FFFFFF*	00003FFFFFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
23	23	07FFFFFF*	004FFFFFF*	0007FFFFFF*	00007FFFFFF*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
24	24	0FFFFFF*	009FFFFFF*	0009FFFFFF*	000009FFFFFF*	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
25	25	1FFFFFF*	013FFFFFF*	001FFFFFF*	0001FFFFFF*	1	0	0	0	1	00	00	00
26	26	1FFFFFF*	027FFFFFF*	003FFFFFF*	0003FFFFFF*	1	0	0	0	1	00	00	00
27	27	1FFFFFF*	04FFFFFF*	007FFFFFF*	0007FFFFFF*	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
28	28	1FFFFFF*	09FFFFFF*	00FFF0FFFFFF*	0000FFF0FFFFFF*	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
29	29	1FFFFFF*	13FFFFFF*	01FFFFFF*	001FFFFFF*	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
30	30	1FFFFFF*	27FFFFFF*	03FFFFFF*	003FFFFFF*	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
31	31	1FFFFFF*	4FFFFFF*	07FFFFFF*	007FFFFFF*	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
32	32	1FFFFFF*	1FFFFFF*	0FFF0FFFFFF*	00FFF0FFFFFF*	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
33	33	1FFFFFF*	3FFFFFF*	1FFFFFF*	01FFFFFF*	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
34	34	1FFFFFF*	7FFFFFF*	1FFFFFF*	03FFFFFF*	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00

*Sample Data*

35	35	1FFFFFFF	7FFFFFFF9	1FFFFFFFFF	07FFFFFFF*	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
36	36	1FFFFFFF	7FFFFFFF3	1FFFFFFFFF	0FFFFFFF*	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
37	37	1FFFFFFF	7FFFFFFE7	1FFFFFFFFF	1FFFFFFF*	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
38	38	1FFFFFFF	7FFFFFFCF	1FFFFFFFFF	3FFFFFFF*	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
39	39	1FFFFFFF	7FFFFFF9F	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFF*	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
<hr/>													
Start clocking Summation Combiner													
40	1	1FFFFFFF	7FFFFF3F	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	01	10	00
41	2	1FFFFFFF	7FFFFE7F	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	1	10	01	10
42	3	1FFFFFFF	7FFFFCFF	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	10	10	01
43	4	1FFFFFFF	7FFF9FFF	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	00	10	10
44	5	1FFFFFFF	7FFF3FFF	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	11	00	10
45	6	1FFFFFFF	7FFE7FE	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
46	7	1FFFFFFF	7FFFCFFC	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	00	00	11
47	8	1FFFFFFF	7FFF9FFF9	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
48	9	1FFFFFFF	7FFF3FFF3	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	01	10	00
49	10	1FFFFFFF	7FFE7FE6	1FFFFFFFFF	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	1	10	01	10
50	11	1FFFFFFE	7FFCFFCC	1FFFFFFFE	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	10	10	01
51	12	1FFFFFFC	7FF9FFF99	1FFFFFFFC	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	00	10	10
52	13	1FFFFFF8	7FF3FFF33	1FFFFFF8	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	11	00	10
53	14	1FFFFFF0	7FE7FE67	1FFFFFF0	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
54	15	1FFFFFFE0	7FCFFCCF	1FFFFFFE1	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	00	00	11
55	16	1FFFFFFC0	7F9FF99F	1FFFFFFFC3	7FFFFFFFFF	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
56	17	1FFFFF80	7F3FFF33E	1FFFFFF87	7FFFFFFFFF	1	0	1	1	1	00	10	00
57	18	1FFFFF00	7E7FE67C	1FFFFFF0F	7FFFFFFFC	1	0	1	1	1	00	00	10
58	19	1FFFE01	7CFFCCF8	1FFFFFFE1E	7FFFFFFFFF8	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
59	20	1FFFC03	79FF99F0	1FFFFFFC3C	7FFFFFFFFF0	1	1	1	1	0	01	10	00
60	21	1FFF807	73FF33E0	1FFFFFF878	7FFFFFFFE1	1	1	1	1	1	10	01	10
61	22	1FFF00F	67FE67C0	1FFFFFF0F0	7FFFFFFFC3	1	1	1	1	0	10	10	01
62	23	1FFE01E	4FFCCF80	1FFFFFFE1E	7FFFFFFF87	1	1	1	1	0	00	10	10
63	24	1FFC03C	1FF99F00	1FFFC3C3C	7FFFFFFFOF	1	1	1	1	0	11	00	10
64	25	1FF8078	3FF33E01	1FFF87878	7FFFFFFFE1E	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
65	26	1FF00F0	7FE67C02	1FFF0F0F0	7FFFFFFFC3C	1	1	1	1	0	00	00	11
66	27	1FE01E1	7FCCF805	1FFE1E1E1	7FFFFFFF878	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
67	28	1FC03C3	7F99F00A	1FFFC3C3C	7FFFFFFFOF0	1	1	1	1	0	01	10	00
68	29	1F80787	7F33E015	1FFF87878	7FFFFFFE1E1	1	0	1	1	0	10	01	10
69	30	1F00F0F	7E67C02A	1FFF0F0F0	7FFFFFFFC3C3	1	0	1	1	1	11	10	01
70	31	1E01E1E	7CCF8054	1FFE1E1E1	7FFFFFF8787	1	1	1	1	1	01	11	10
71	32	1C03C3C	799F00A9	1FFC3C3C3C	7FFFFFFFOF0	1	1	1	1	1	01	01	11
72	33	1807878	733E0152	1FF878787	7FFFFFFE1E1E	1	0	1	1	0	00	01	01
73	34	100F0F0	667C02A5	1FF0F0F0F	7FFFC3C3C	0	0	1	1	0	10	00	01
74	35	001E1E0	4CF8054B	1FE1E1E1F	7FFF87878	0	1	1	1	1	00	10	00
75	36	003C3C1	19F00A96	1FC3C3C3F	7FFF0F0F0F	0	1	1	1	1	00	00	10
76	37	0078783	33E0152C	1F878787F	7FFF1E1E1	0	1	1	1	1	01	00	00
77	38	00F0F07	67C02A59	1F0F0F0FFF	7FFFC3C3C3	0	1	1	1	0	11	01	00
78	39	01E1E0E	4F8054B3	1E1E1E1FF	7FFF878787	0	1	1	1	0	11	11	01
79	40	03C3C1C	1F00A966	1C3C3C3FF	7FFF0F0F0F	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
80	41	0787838	3E0152CC	1878787FF	7FFE1E1E1E	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
81	42	0F0F070	7C02A598	10F0F0FFF	7FFC3C3C3C	1	0	0	1	1	11	11	11
82	43	1E1E0E0	78054B30	01E1E1FFF	7FF8787878	1	0	0	1	1	11	11	11
83	44	1C3C1C0	700A9660	03C3C3FFE	7FF0F0F0F0	1	0	0	1	1	11	11	11
84	45	1878380	60152CC0	078787FFC	7FE1E1E1E0	1	0	0	1	1	11	11	11
85	46	10F0700	402A5980	0F0F0FFF8	7FC3C3C3C0	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
86	47	01E0E00	0054B300	1E1E1FFF0	7F87878780	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
87	48	03C1C00	00A96601	1C3C3FFE0	7F0F0F0F00	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
88	49	0783800	0152CC03	18787FFC0	7E1E1E1E01	0	0	1	0	0	11	11	11

*Sample Data*

89	50	0F07000	02A59806	10F0FFF80	7C3C3C3C03	1	1	0	0	1	11	11	11
90	51	1E0E000	054B300D	01E1FFF00	7878787807	1	0	0	0	0	11	11	11
91	52	1C1C001	0A96601A	03C3FFE01	70F0F0F00F	1	1	0	1	0	10	11	11
92	53	1838003	152CC035	0787FFC03	61E1E1E01E	1	0	0	1	0	10	10	11
93	54	1070007	2A59806B	0F0FFF807	43C3C3C03C	0	0	1	1	0	01	10	10
94	55	00E000F	54B300D7	1E1FFF00F	0787878078	0	1	1	1	0	10	01	10
95	56	01C001F	296601AB	1C3FFE01F	0F0F0F00F1	0	0	1	0	1	00	10	01
96	57	038003F	52CC035C	187FFC03F	1E1E1E01E2	0	1	1	0	0	00	00	10
97	58	070007F	259806B8	10FFF807F	3C3C3C03C4	0	1	0	0	1	00	00	00
98	59	0E000FE	4B300D71	01FFF00FE	7878780788	1	0	0	0	1	00	00	00
99	60	1C001FD	16601AE2	03FFE01FD	70F0F00F10	1	0	0	1	0	01	00	00
100	61	18003FA	2CC035C5	07FFC03FB	61E1E01E21	1	1	0	1	0	11	01	00
101	62	10007F4	59806B8B	0FFF807F7	43C3C03C43	0	1	1	1	0	11	11	01
102	63	0000FE8	3300D717	1FFF00FEE	0787807887	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
103	64	0001FD0	6601AE2F	1FFE01FDC	0F0F00F10E	0	0	1	0	0	11	11	11
104	65	0003FA0	4C035C5F	1FFC03FB8	1E1E01E21D	0	0	1	0	0	11	11	11
105	66	0007F40	1806B8BE	1FF807F70	3C3C03C43B	0	0	1	0	0	11	11	11
106	67	000FE81	300D717C	1FF00FEE1	7878078877	0	0	1	0	0	11	11	11
107	68	001FD02	601AE2F8	1FE01FDC2	70F00F10EF	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
108	69	003FA05	4035C5F0	1FC03FB84	61E01E21DE	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
109	70	007F40B	006B8BE0	1F807F708	43C03C43BC	0	0	1	1	1	11	11	11
110	71	00FE816	00D717C0	1F00FEE11	0780788778	0	1	1	1	0	10	11	11
111	72	01FD02C	01AE2F81	1E01FDC23	0F00F10EF1	0	1	1	0	0	10	10	11
112	73	03FA059	035C5F02	1C03FB847	1E01E21DE3	0	0	1	0	1	10	10	10
113	74	07F40B3	06B8BE05	1807F708F	3C03C43BC7	0	1	1	0	0	01	10	10
114	75	0FE8166	0D717C0B	100FEE11E	780788778F	1	0	0	0	0	01	01	10
115	76	1FD02CD	1AE2F817	001FDC23D	700F10EF1F	1	1	0	0	1	11	01	01
116	77	1FA059B	35C5F02F	003FB847A	601E21DE3F	1	1	0	0	1	10	11	01
117	78	1F40B37	6B8BE05E	007F708F4	403C43BC7F	1	1	0	0	0	10	10	11
118	79	1E8166E	5717C0BD	00FEE11E9	00788778FF	1	0	0	0	1	10	10	10
119	80	1D02CDC	2E2F817A	01FDC23D3	00F10EF1FE	1	0	0	1	0	01	10	10
120	81	1A059B9	5C5F02F5	03FB847A6	01E21DE3FD	1	0	0	1	1	01	01	10
121	82	140B373	38BE05EB	07F708F4C	03C43BC7FB	0	1	0	1	1	11	01	01
122	83	08166E7	717C0BD7	0FEE11E98	0788778FF7	1	0	1	1	0	11	11	01
123	84	102CDCF	62F817AE	1FDC23D31	0F10EF1FEF	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
124	85	0059B9F	45F02F5C	1FB847A63	1E21DE3FDE	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
125	86	00B373E	0BE05EB9	1F708F4C7	3C43BC7FBC	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
126	87	0166E7D	17C0BD72	1EE11E98F	788778FF78	0	1	1	1	0	10	11	11
127	88	02CDCFB	2F817AE5	1DC23D31F	710EF1FEF1	0	1	1	0	0	10	10	11
128	89	059B9F7	5F02F5CA	1B847A63F	621DE3FDE2	0	0	1	0	1	10	10	10
129	90	0B373EF	3E05EB94	1708F4C7F	443BC7FBC4	1	0	0	0	1	10	10	10
130	91	166E7DF	7C0BD728	0E11E98FF	08778FF788	0	0	1	0	1	10	10	10
131	92	0CDCFB	7817AE50	1C23D31FF	10EF1FEF10	1	0	1	1	1	01	10	10
132	93	19B9F7D	702F5CA1	1847A63FE	21DE3FDE21	1	0	1	1	0	10	01	10
133	94	1373EFB	605EB942	108F4C7FC	43BC7FBC43	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
134	95	06E7DF7	40BD7285	011E98FF8	0778FF7886	0	1	0	0	1	01	00	10
135	96	0DCFBF	017AE50A	023D31FF0	0EF1FEF10D	1	0	0	1	1	00	01	00
136	97	1B9F7DF	02F5CA15	047A63FE1	1DE3FDE21A	1	1	0	1	1	10	00	01
137	98	173EFBF	05EB942B	08F4C7FC3	3BC7FBC434	0	1	1	1	1	00	10	00
138	99	0E7DF7F	0BD72856	11E98FF87	778FF78869	1	1	0	1	1	00	00	10
139	100	1CFBEFF	17AE50AC	03D31FF0F	6F1FEF10D3	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
140	101	19F7DFE	2F5CA159	07A63FE1E	5E3FDE21A7	1	0	0	0	0	00	01	00
141	102	13EFBFC	5EB942B3	0F4C7FC3C	3C7FBC434F	0	1	1	0	0	10	00	01
142	103	07DF7F8	3D728566	1E98FF878	78FF78869F	0	0	1	1	0	00	10	00
143	104	0FBEFF0	7AE50ACD	1D31FF0F0	71FEF10D3E	1	1	1	1	0	11	00	10
144	105	1F7DFE1	75CA159B	1A63FE1E1	63FDE21A7D	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
145	106	1EFBFC3	6B942B36	14C7FC3C3	47FBC434FB	1	1	0	1	1	11	00	11

*Sample Data*

146	107	1DF7F86	5728566D	098FF8786	0FF78869F7	1	0	1	1	0	00	11	00
147	108	1BEFF0C	2E50ACDB	131FF0F0C	1FEF10D3EF	1	0	0	1	0	11	00	11
148	109	17DFE19	5CA159B6	063FE1E19	3FDE21A7DF	0	1	0	1	1	01	11	00
149	110	0FBFC33	3942B36D	0C7FC3C32	7FBC434FBF	1	0	1	1	0	01	01	11
150	111	1F7F866	728566DB	18FF87865	7F78869F7E	1	1	1	0	0	00	01	01
151	112	1EFF0CC	650ACDB6	11FF0F0CB	7EF10D3EFCC	1	0	0	1	0	10	00	01
152	113	1DFE199	4A159B6D	03FE1E196	7DE21A7DF9	1	0	0	1	0	00	10	00
153	114	1BFC333	142B36DB	07FC3C32C	7BC434FBF3	1	0	0	1	0	00	00	10
154	115	17F8666	28566DB6	0FF878659	778869F7E6	0	0	1	1	0	01	00	00
155	116	0FF0CCC	50ACDB6D	1FF0F0CB3	6F10D3EFCC	1	1	1	0	0	11	01	00
156	117	1FE1999	2159B6DA	1FE1E1966	5E21A7DF99	1	0	1	0	1	10	11	01
157	118	1FC3332	42B36DB5	1FC3C32CC	3C434FBF33	1	1	1	0	1	10	10	11
158	119	1F86664	0566DB6B	1F8786599	78869F7E67	1	0	1	1	1	01	10	10
159	120	1F0CCC8	0ACDB6D6	1F0F0CB33	710D3EFCC	1	1	1	0	0	10	01	10
160	121	1E19991	159B6DAC	1E1E19666	621A7DF99D	1	1	1	0	1	11	10	01
161	122	1C33323	2B36DB58	1C3C32CCC	4434FBF33B	1	0	1	0	1	00	11	10
162	123	1866647	566DB6B0	187865999	0869F7E676	1	0	1	0	0	11	00	11
163	124	10CCC8F	2CDB6D60	10F0CB333	10D3EFCC	0	1	0	1	1	01	11	00
164	125	019991E	59B6DAC0	01E196666	21A7DF99D9	0	1	0	1	1	10	01	11
165	126	033323C	336DB580	03C32CCCD	434FBF33B3	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
166	127	0666478	66DB6B01	07865999A	069F7E6766	0	1	0	1	0	00	00	10
167	128	0CCC8F0	4DB6D603	0F0CB3334	0D3EFCC	1	1	1	0	1	01	00	00
168	129	19991E1	1B6DAC07	1E1966669	1A7DF99D9B	1	0	1	0	1	00	01	00
169	130	13323C3	36DB580E	1C32CCCD3	34FBF33B37	0	1	1	1	1	10	00	01
170	131	0664786	6DB6B01C	1865999A7	69F7E6766F	0	1	1	1	1	00	10	00
171	132	0CC8F0D	5B6D6039	10CB3334F	53EFCC	1	0	0	1	0	00	00	10
172	133	1991E1A	36DAC073	01966669E	27DF99D9BF	1	1	0	1	1	01	00	00
173	134	1323C35	6DB580E6	032CCCD3C	4FBF33B37E	0	1	0	1	1	00	01	00
174	135	064786A	5B6B01CD	065999A78	1F7E6766FC	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
175	136	0C8F0D5	36D6039B	0CB3334F0	3EFCC	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
176	137	191E1AA	6DAC0737	1966669E1	7DF99D9BF3	1	1	1	1	0	00	00	11
177	138	123C354	5B580E6E	12CCCD3C3	7BF33B37E7	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
178	139	04786A9	36B01CDC	05999A787	77E6766FCE	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
179	140	08F0D53	6D6039B8	0B3334F0E	6FCCECDF9C	1	0	1	1	0	11	01	00
180	141	11E1AA6	5AC07370	166669E1D	5F99D9BF38	0	1	0	1	1	10	11	01
181	142	03C354C	3580E6E0	0CCC3C3A	3F33B37E70	0	1	1	0	0	10	10	11
182	143	0786A99	6B01CDC0	1999A7875	7E6766FCE1	0	0	1	0	1	10	10	10
183	144	0F0D533	56039B81	13334F0EB	7CCECDF9C2	1	0	0	1	0	01	10	10
184	145	1E1AA66	2C073703	06669E1D6	799D9BF385	1	0	0	1	1	01	01	10
185	146	1C354CC	580E6E06	0CCD3C3AC	733B37E70B	1	0	1	0	1	11	01	01
186	147	186A998	301CDC0C	199A78759	66766FCE17	1	0	1	0	1	10	11	01
187	148	10D5331	6039B818	1334F0EB2	4CECDF9C2F	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
188	149	01AA662	40737031	0669E1D65	19D9BF385E	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
189	150	0354CC5	00E6E063	0CD3C3ACB	33B37E70BD	0	1	1	1	0	00	01	01
190	151	06A998A	01CDC0C6	19A787596	6766FCE17B	0	1	1	0	0	10	00	01
191	152	0D53315	039B818C	134F0EB2C	4ECDF9C2F6	1	1	0	1	1	00	10	00
192	153	1AA662A	07370318	069E1D659	1D9BF385ED	1	0	0	1	0	00	00	10
193	154	154CC54	0E6E0630	0D3C3ACB3	3B37E70BDB	0	0	1	0	1	00	00	00
194	155	0A998A8	1CDC0C60	1A7875967	766FCE17B6	1	1	1	0	1	01	00	00
195	156	1533151	39B818C0	14F0EB2CE	6CDF9C2F6C	0	1	0	1	1	00	01	00
196	157	0A662A3	73703180	09E1D659D	59BF385ED8	1	0	1	1	1	10	00	01
197	158	14CC547	66E06301	13C3ACB3A	337E70BDB0	0	1	0	0	1	11	10	00
198	159	0998A8E	4DC0C602	078759675	66FCE17B61	1	1	0	1	0	01	11	10
199	160	133151D	1B818C05	0F0EB2CEB	4DF9C2F6C2	0	1	1	1	0	01	01	11
200	161	0662A3B	3703180B	1E1D659D6	1BF385ED85	0	0	1	1	1	11	01	01
201	162	0CC5477	6E063017	1C3ACB3AC	37E70BDB0B	1	0	1	1	0	11	11	01
202	163	198A8EF	5C0C602F	187596759	6FCE17B617	1	0	1	1	0	10	11	11

*Sample Data*

203	164	13151DE	3818C05F	10EB2CEB2	5F9C2F6C2F	0	0	0	1	1	01	10	11
204	165	062A3BC	703180BF	01D659D65	3F385ED85E	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
205	166	0C54779	6063017E	03ACB3ACB	7E70BDB0BD	1	0	0	0	1	11	00	01
206	167	18A8EF2	40C602FD	075967597	7CE17B617B	1	1	0	1	0	00	11	00
207	168	1151DE4	018C05FA	0EB2CEB2F	79C2F6C2F7	0	1	1	1	1	11	00	11
208	169	02A3BC9	03180BF5	1D659D65E	7385ED85EE	0	0	1	1	1	01	11	00
209	170	0547793	063017EB	1ACB3ACBC	670BDB0BDC	0	0	1	0	0	10	01	11
210	171	0A8EF27	0C602FD6	159675978	4E17B617B9	1	0	0	0	1	00	10	01
211	172	151DE4E	18C05FAD	0B2CEB2F1	1C2F6C2F73	0	1	1	0	0	00	00	10
212	173	0A3BC9C	3180BF5A	1659D65E3	385ED85EE6	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
213	174	1477938	63017EB5	0CB3ACBC6	70BDB0BDCC	0	0	1	1	1	00	01	00
214	175	08EF270	4602FD6A	19675978D	617B617B99	1	0	1	0	0	10	00	01
215	176	11DE4E1	0C05FAD5	12CEB2F1A	42F6C2F733	0	0	0	1	1	11	10	00
216	177	03BC9C3	180BF5AA	059D65E34	05ED85EE67	0	0	0	1	0	00	11	10
217	178	0779387	3017EB55	0B3ACBC68	0BDB0BDCCF	0	0	1	1	0	11	00	11
218	179	0EF270F	602FD6AA	1675978D0	17B617B99F	1	0	0	1	1	01	11	00
219	180	1DE4E1F	405FAD54	0CEB2F1A1	2F6C2F733F	1	0	1	0	1	10	01	11
220	181	1BC9C3F	00BF5AA9	19D65E342	5ED85EE67F	1	1	1	1	0	10	10	01
221	182	179387F	017EB552	13ACBC684	3DB0BDCCFE	0	0	0	1	1	10	10	10
222	183	0F270FF	02FD6AA5	075978D09	7B617B99FC	1	1	0	0	0	01	10	10
223	184	1E4E1FF	05FAD54A	0EB2F1A12	76C2F733F9	1	1	1	1	1	10	01	10
224	185	1C9C3FE	0BF5AA94	1D65E3425	6D85EE67F2	1	1	1	1	0	10	10	01
225	186	19387FD	17EB5529	1ACBC684B	5B0BDCCFE4	1	1	1	0	1	01	10	10
226	187	1270FFA	2FD6AA53	15978D096	3617B99FC9	0	1	0	0	0	01	01	10
227	188	04E1FFF	5FAD54A7	0B2F1A12C	6C2F733F93	0	1	1	0	1	11	01	01
228	189	09C3FEB	3F5AA94E	165E34258	585EE67F27	1	0	0	0	0	10	11	01
229	190	1387FD7	7EB5529C	0CBC684B1	30BDCCFE4F	0	1	1	1	1	10	10	11
230	191	070FFAE	7D6AA538	1978D0962	617B99FC9E	0	0	1	0	1	10	10	10
231	192	0E1FF5C	7AD54A70	12F1A12C4	42F733F93D	1	1	0	1	1	01	10	10
232	193	1C3FEB9	75AA94E1	05E342588	05EE67F27A	1	1	0	1	0	10	01	10
233	194	187FD73	6B5529C3	0BC684B10	0BDCCFE4F4	1	0	1	1	1	11	10	01
234	195	10FFFAE	56AA5386	178D09621	17B99FC9E8	0	1	0	1	1	00	11	10
235	196	01FF5CC	2D54A70C	0F1A12C43	2F733F93D0	0	0	1	0	1	10	00	11
236	197	03FEB98	5AA94E19	1E3425887	5EE67F27A1	0	1	1	1	1	00	10	00
237	198	07FD731	35529C33	1C684B10F	3DCCFE4F42	0	0	1	1	0	00	00	10
238	199	0FFAE63	6AA53866	18D09621F	7B99FC9E84	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
239	200	1FF5CC6	554A70CD	11A12C43F	7733F93D09	1	0	0	0	1	11	10	00

Z[0] = 59  
Z[1] = 3B  
Z[2] = EF  
Z[3] = 07  
Z[4] = 13  
Z[5] = 70  
Z[6] = 9B  
Z[7] = B7  
Z[8] = 52  
Z[9] = 8F  
Z[10] = 3E  
Z[11] = B9  
Z[12] = A5  
Z[13] = AC  
Z[14] = EA  
Z[15] = 9E

*Sample Data*

```
=====
Reload this pattern into the LFSRs
Hold content of Summation Combiner regs and calculate new C[t+1] and Z values
=====

LFSR1 <= 1521359
LFSR2 <= 528F703B
LFSR3 <= 0AC3E9BEF
LFSR4 <= 4FEAB9B707
C[t+1] <= 00

=====
Generating 125 key symbols (encryption/decryption sequence)
=====

240   1   1521359  528F703B  0AC3E9BEF  4FEAB9B707    0   1   1   1   1   00   10   00
241   2   0A426B3  251EE076  1587D37DE  1FD5736E0F    1   0   0   1   0   00   00   10
242   3   1484D67  4A3DC0ED  0B0FA6FBD  3FAAE6DC1E    0   0   1   1   0   01   00   00
243   4   0909ACF  147B81DA  161F4DF7A  7F55CDB83D    1   0   0   0   0   00   01   00
244   5   121359E  28F703B5  0C3E9BEF5  7EAB9B707B    0   1   1   1   1   10   00   01
245   6   0426B3C  51EE076B  187D37DEB  7D5736E0F6    0   1   1   0   0   00   10   00
246   7   084D679  23DC0ED6  10FA6FBD7  7AAE6DC1EC    1   1   0   1   1   00   00   10
247   8   109ACF2  47B81DAC  01F4DF7AF  755CDB83D8    0   1   0   0   1   00   00   00
248   9   01359E4  0F703B59  03E9BEF5E  6AB9B707B1    0   0   0   1   1   00   00   00
249  10   026B3C8  1EE076B3  07D37DEBD  55736E0F63    0   1   0   0   1   00   00   00
250  11   04D6791  3DC0ED67  0FA6FBD7A  2AE6DC1EC7    0   1   1   1   1   01   00   00
251  12   09ACF22  7B81DACF  1F4DF7AF4  55CDB83D8F    1   1   1   1   1   11   01   00
252  13   1359E44  7703B59E  1E9BEF5E8  2B9B707B1F    0   0   1   1   1   10   11   01
253  14   06B3C88  6E076B3C  1D37DEBDO  5736E0F63F    0   0   1   0   1   01   10   11
254  15   0D67911  5C0ED678  1A6FBD7A1  2E6DC1EC7E    1   0   1   0   1   01   01   10
255  16   1ACF223  381DACP0  14DF7AF42  5CDB83D8FD    1   0   0   1   1   11   01   01
256  17   159E446  703B59E0  09BEF5E85  39B707B1FA    0   0   1   1   1   10   11   01
257  18   0B3C88C  6076B3C0  137DEBD0A  736E0F63F4    1   0   0   0   1   01   10   11
258  19   1679118  40ED6780  06FB7A15  66DC1EC7E8    0   1   0   1   1   01   01   10
259  20   0CF2231  01DACP00  0DF7AF42A  4DB83D8FD1    1   1   1   1   1   00   01   01
260  21   19E4463  03B59E01  1BEF5E854  1B707B1FA3    1   1   1   0   1   10   00   01
261  22   13C88C6  076B3C03  17DEBD0A9  36E0F63F47   0   0   0   1   1   11   10   00
262  23   079118C  0ED67807  0FB7A152  6DC1EC7E8E    0   1   1   1   0   01   11   10
263  24   0F22318  1DACP00E  1F7AF42A4  5B83D8FD1D    1   1   1   1   1   01   01   11
264  25   1E44630  3B59E01C  1EF5E8548  3707B1FA3B    1   0   1   0   1   11   01   01
265  26   1C88C61  76B3C039  1DEBD0A91  6E0F63F477   1   1   1   0   0   11   11   01
266  27   19118C3  6D678073  1BD7A1523  5C1EC7E8EF    1   0   1   0   1   11   11   11
267  28   1223187  5ACF00E6  17AF42A46  383D8FD1DE    0   1   0   0   0   11   11   11
268  29   044630E  359E01CC  0F5E8548D  707B1FA3BD    0   1   1   0   1   11   11   11
269  30   088C61C  6B3C0399  1EBD0A91A  60F63F477B   1   0   1   1   0   10   11   11
270  31   1118C39  56780733  1D7A15234  41EC7E8EF6    0   0   1   1   0   10   10   11
271  32   0231872  2CF00E67  1AF42A468  03D8FD1DEC    0   1   1   1   1   01   10   10
272  33   04630E5  59E01CCE  15E8548D1  07B1FA3BD8    0   1   0   1   1   01   01   10
273  34   08C61CB  33C0399D  0BD0A91A3  0F63F477B1    1   1   1   0   0   00   01   01
274  35   118C396  6780733A  17A152347  1EC7E8EF63    0   1   0   1   0   10   00   01
275  36   031872D  4F00E674  0F42A468E  3D8FD1DEC7   0   0   1   1   0   00   10   00
276  37   0630E5A  1E01CCE8  1E8548D1D  7B1FA3BD8E    0   0   1   0   1   01   00   10
277  38   0C61CB5  3C0399D0  1D0A91A3B  763F477B1C    1   0   1   0   1   00   01   00
278  39   18C396A  780733A0  1A1523477  6C7E8EF639   1   0   1   0   0   10   00   01
279  40   11872D5  700E6741  142A468EF  58FD1DEC72   0   0   0   1   1   11   10   00
280  41   030E5AB  601CCE83  08548D1DF  31FA3BD8E5    0   0   1   1   1   00   11   10
281  42   061CB57  40399D07  10A91A3BF  63F477B1CB    0   0   0   1   1   10   00   11
282  43   0C396AF  00733A0F  01523477E  47E8EF6396   1   0   0   1   0   00   10   00
283  44   1872D5F  00E6741F  02A468EFD  0FD1DEC72C   1   1   0   1   1   00   00   10
```

*Sample Data*

284	45	10E5ABE	01CCE83F	0548D1DFA	1FA3BD8E58	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
285	46	01CB57C	0399D07F	0A91A3BF4	3F477B1CB0	0	1	1	0	1	00	01	00
286	47	0396AF9	0733A0FE	1523477E9	7E8EF63961	0	0	0	1	1	11	00	01
287	48	072D5F3	0E6741FD	0A468EFD2	7D1DEC72C3	0	0	1	0	0	01	11	00
288	49	0E5ABE7	1CCE83FA	148D1DFA4	7A3BD8E587	1	1	0	0	1	10	01	11
289	50	1CB57CE	399D07F4	091A3BF49	7477B1CB0F	1	1	1	0	1	11	10	01
290	51	196AF9D	733A0FE9	123477E92	68EF63961E	1	0	0	1	1	00	11	10
291	52	12D5F3B	66741FD2	0468EFD25	51DEC72C3C	0	0	0	1	1	10	00	11
292	53	05ABE77	4CE83FA4	08D1DFA4B	23BD8E5879	0	1	1	1	1	00	10	00
293	54	0B57CEE	19D07F49	11A3BF496	477B1CB0F2	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
294	55	16AF9DC	33A0FE92	03477E92C	0EF63961E4	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
295	56	0D5F3B8	6741FD25	068EFD259	1DEC72C3C9	1	0	0	1	1	00	01	00
296	57	1ABE771	4E83FA4B	0D1DFA4B3	3BD8E58793	1	1	1	1	0	01	00	01
297	58	157CEE2	1D07F496	1A3BF4967	77B1CB0F26	0	0	1	1	1	00	01	00
298	59	0AF9DC5	3A0FE92D	1477E92CE	6F63961E4D	1	0	0	0	1	11	00	01
299	60	15F3B8B	741FD25A	08EFD259C	5EC72C3C9B	0	0	1	1	1	01	11	00
300	61	0BE7716	683FA4B4	11DFA4B39	3D8E587937	1	0	0	1	1	10	01	11
301	62	17CEE2D	507F4968	03BF49672	7B1CB0F26E	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
302	63	0F9DC5B	20FE92D0	077E92CE4	763961E4DC	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
303	64	1F3B8B6	41FD25A0	0EFD259C9	6C72C3C9B9	1	1	1	0	1	01	00	00
304	65	1E7716D	03FA4B40	1DFA4B393	58E5879373	1	1	1	1	1	11	01	00
305	66	1CEE2DB	07F49680	1BF496727	31CB0F26E6	1	1	1	1	1	11	11	01
306	67	19DC5B7	0FE92D00	17E92CE4E	63961E4DCD	1	1	0	1	0	10	11	11
307	68	13B8B6F	1FD25A00	0FD259C9C	472C3C9B9A	0	1	1	0	0	10	10	11
308	69	07716DF	3FA4B400	1FA4B3938	0E58793735	0	1	1	0	0	01	10	10
309	70	0EE2DBF	7F496800	1F4967271	1CB0F26E6A	1	0	1	1	0	10	01	10
310	71	1DC5B7F	7E92D000	1E92CE4E2	3961E4DCD4	1	1	1	0	1	11	10	01
311	72	1B8B6FF	7D25A001	1D259C9C4	72C3C9B9A9	1	0	1	1	0	01	11	10
312	73	1716DFF	7A4B4002	1A4B39389	6587937352	0	0	1	1	1	10	01	11
313	74	0E2DBFF	74968005	149672713	4B0F26E6A5	1	1	0	0	0	11	10	01
314	75	1C5B7FE	692D000B	092CE4E26	161E4DCD4B	1	0	1	0	1	00	11	10
315	76	18B6FFC	525A0017	1259C9C4D	2C3C9B9A96	1	0	0	0	1	10	00	11
316	77	116DFF8	24B4002F	04B39389B	587937352C	0	1	0	0	1	11	10	00
317	78	02DBFF1	4968005F	096727136	30F26E6A58	0	0	1	1	1	00	11	10
318	79	05B7FE3	12D000BF	12CE4E26C	61E4DCD4B1	0	1	0	1	0	11	00	11
319	80	0B6FFC7	25A0017F	059C9C4D8	43C9B9A963	1	1	0	1	0	00	11	00
320	81	16DFF8E	4B4002FF	0B39389B1	07937352C6	0	0	1	1	0	11	00	11
321	82	0DBFF1C	168005FF	167271363	0F26E6A58C	1	1	0	0	1	01	11	00
322	83	1B7FE38	2D000BFF	0CE4E26C7	1E4DCD4B18	1	0	1	0	1	10	01	11
323	84	16FFC70	5A0017FF	19C9C4D8F	3C9B9A9631	0	0	1	1	0	11	10	01
324	85	0DFF8E1	34002FFF	139389B1E	7937352C62	1	0	0	0	0	00	11	10
325	86	1BFF1C3	68005FFF	07271363D	726E6A58C4	1	0	0	0	1	10	00	11
326	87	17FE387	5000BFFE	0E4E26C7B	64DCD4B188	0	0	1	1	0	00	10	00
327	88	0FFC70F	20017FFD	1C9C4D8F6	49B9A96311	1	0	1	1	1	00	00	10
328	89	1FF8E1F	4002FFF	19389B1ED	137352C623	1	0	1	0	0	01	00	00
329	90	1FF1C3F	0005FFF7	1271363DB	26E6A58C46	1	0	0	1	1	00	01	00
330	91	1FE387F	000BFFEE	04E26C7B6	4DCD4B188C	1	0	0	1	0	10	00	01
331	92	1FC70FF	0017FFDC	09C4D8F6D	1B9A963118	1	0	1	1	1	00	10	00
332	93	1F8E1FF	002FFFF8	1389B1EDA	37352C6231	1	0	0	0	1	01	00	10
333	94	1F1C3FF	005FFF70	071363DB4	6E6A58C462	1	0	0	0	0	00	01	00
334	95	1E387FE	00BFFEE0	0E26C7B68	5CD4B188C5	1	1	1	1	0	01	00	01
335	96	1C70FFC	017FFDC1	1C4D8F6D1	39A963118A	1	0	1	1	0	11	01	00
336	97	18E1FF9	02FFFFB82	189B1EDA2	7352C62315	1	1	1	0	0	11	11	01
337	98	11C3FF2	05FFF705	11363DB45	66A58C462B	0	1	0	1	1	11	11	11
338	99	0387FE4	0BFFEE0A	026C7B68B	4D4B188C56	0	1	0	0	0	11	11	11
339	100	070FFC9	17FFDC15	04D8F6D16	1A963118AD	0	1	0	1	1	11	11	11
340	101	0E1FF92	2FFFFB82B	09B1EDA2C	352C62315A	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11

*Sample Data*

341	102	1C3FF24	5FFF7057	1363DB458	6A58C462B4	1	1	0	0	0	10	10	11
342	103	187FE48	3FFEE0AE	06C7B68B0	54B188C569	1	1	0	1	1	01	10	10
343	104	10FFC90	7FFDC15C	0D8F6D161	2963118AD2	0	1	1	0	1	01	01	10
344	105	01FF920	7FFB82B9	1B1EDA2C2	52C62315A5	0	1	1	1	0	00	01	01
345	106	03FF240	7FF70573	163DB4584	258C462B4B	0	1	0	1	0	10	00	01
346	107	07FE481	7FEE0AE6	0C7B68B08	4B188C5696	0	1	1	0	0	00	10	00
347	108	0FFC902	7FDC15CD	18F6D1610	163118AD2D	1	1	1	0	1	00	00	10
348	109	1FF9204	7FB82B9A	11EDA2C20	2C62315A5B	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
349	110	1FF2408	7F705735	03DB45841	58C462B4B6	1	0	0	1	1	00	01	00
350	111	1FE4810	7EE0AE6B	07B68B082	3188C5696C	1	1	0	1	1	10	00	01
351	112	1FC9021	7DC15CD6	0F6D16105	63118AD2D8	1	1	1	0	1	00	10	00
352	113	1F92042	7B82B9AD	1EDA2C20B	462315A5B0	1	1	1	0	1	00	00	10
353	114	1F24084	7705735A	1DB458416	0C462B4B61	1	0	1	0	0	01	00	00
354	115	1E48108	6E0AE6B5	1B68B082C	188C5696C3	1	0	1	1	0	11	01	00
355	116	1C90211	5C15CD6A	16D161059	3118AD2D86	1	0	0	0	0	10	11	01
356	117	1920422	382B9AD5	0DA2C20B3	62315A5B0D	1	0	1	0	0	10	10	11
357	118	1240845	705735AA	1B4584167	4462B4B61A	0	0	1	0	1	10	10	10
358	119	048108A	60AE6B55	168B082CF	08C5696C34	0	1	0	1	0	01	10	10
359	120	0902114	415CD6AB	0D161059E	118AD2D869	1	0	1	1	0	10	01	10
360	121	1204228	02B9AD56	1A2C20B3D	2315A5B0D2	0	1	1	0	0	11	10	01
361	122	0408451	05735AAD	14584167B	462B4B61A4	0	0	0	0	1	11	11	10
362	123	08108A2	0AE6B55B	08B082CF7	0C5696C348	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11
363	124	1021144	15CD6AB6	1161059EF	18AD2D8690	0	1	0	1	0	10	10	11
364	125	0042289	2B9AD56C	02C20B3DE	315A5B0D20	0	1	0	0	1	10	10	10

*Sample Data***1.1.5 Fourth Set of Samples**

Initial values for the key, pan address and clock

```
K'c4[0] = 21   K'c4[1] = 87   K'c4[2] = F0   K'c4[3] = 4A
K'c4[4] = BA   K'c4[5] = 90   K'c4[6] = 31   K'c4[7] = D0
K'c4[8] = 78   K'c4[9] = 0D   K'c4[10] = 4C  K'c4[11] = 53
K'c4[12] = E0   K'c4[13] = 15   K'c4[14] = 3A  K'c4[15] = 63
```

```
Addr4[0] = 2C   Addr4[1] = 7F   Addr4[2] = 94
Addr4[3] = 56   Addr4[4] = 0F   Addr4[5] = 1B
```

```
CL4[0] = 5F   CL4[1] = 1A   CL4[2] = 00   CL4[3] = 02
```

---

===== Fill LFSRs with initial data =====

---

t	clk#	LFSR1	LFSR2	LFSR3	LFSR4	X1	X2	X3	X4	Z	C[t+1]	C[t]	C[t-1]
0	0	0000000*	00000000*	000000000*	0000000000*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
1	1	0000000*	00000001*	000000001*	0000000001*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
2	2	0000001*	00000002*	000000002*	0000000003*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
3	3	0000002*	00000004*	000000004*	0000000007*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
4	4	0000004*	00000009*	000000008*	000000000F*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
5	5	0000008*	00000013*	000000010*	0000000001E*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
6	6	0000010*	00000027*	000000021*	000000003D*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
7	7	0000021*	0000004F*	000000043*	000000007A*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
8	8	0000042*	0000009F*	000000087*	00000000F4*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
9	9	0000084*	0000013F*	00000010F*	000000001E9*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
10	10	0000108*	0000027F*	00000021F*	000000003D2*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
11	11	0000211*	000004FE*	00000043E*	000000007A5*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
12	12	0000422*	000009FC*	00000087C*	00000000F4A*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
13	13	0000845*	000013F8*	0000010F8*	00000001E94*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
14	14	000108B*	000027F0*	0000021F1*	00000003D29*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
15	15	0002117*	00004FE1*	0000043E3*	00000007A52*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
16	16	000422E*	00009FC2*	0000087C6*	00000000F4A4*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
17	17	000845D*	00013F84*	000010F8C*	00000001E948*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
18	18	00108BA*	00027F08*	000021F18*	000003D290*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
19	19	0021174*	0004FE10*	000043E30*	0000007A520*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
20	20	00422E8*	0009FC21*	000087C61*	00000000F4A41*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
21	21	00845D1*	0013F842*	00010F8C3*	000001E9482*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
22	22	0108BA3*	0027F084*	00021F186*	00003D2905*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
23	23	0211747*	004FE109*	00043E30C*	00007A520B*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
24	24	0422E8F*	009FC213*	00087C619*	00000000F4A417*	0	1	0	0	1	00	00	00
25	25	0845D1E*	013F8426*	0010F8C32*	0001E9482F*	1	0	0	0	1	00	00	00
26	26	108BA3D	027F084D*	0021F1864*	0003D2905E*	0	0	0	0	0	00	00	00
27	27	011747B	04FE109B*	0043E30C9*	0007A520BC*	0	1	0	0	1	00	00	00
28	28	022E8F6	09FC2136*	0087C6192*	0000F4A4179*	0	1	0	0	1	00	00	00
29	29	045D1EC	13F8426C*	010F8C325*	001E9482F2*	0	1	0	0	1	00	00	00
30	30	08BA3D9	27F084D8*	021F1864B*	003D2905E5*	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
31	31	11747B3	4FE109B0*	043E30C97*	007A520BCA*	0	1	0	0	1	00	00	00
32	32	02E8F67	1FC21360	087C6192E*	00F4A41795*	0	1	1	1	1	01	00	00
33	33	05D1ECF	3F8426C1	10F8C325C*	01E9482F2B*	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
34	34	0BA3D9F	7F084D82	01F1864B8	03D2905E56*	1	0	0	1	0	01	00	00

*Sample Data*

35	35	1747B3E	7E109B04	03E30C970	07A520BCAC*	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
36	36	0E8F67C	7C213608	07C6192E1	0F4A417958*	1	0	0	0	1	00	00	00
37	37	1D1ECF8	78426C11	0F8C325C3	1E9482F2B1*	1	0	1	1	1	01	00	00
38	38	1A3D9F0	7084D822	1F1864B86	3D2905E563*	1	1	1	0	1	01	00	00
39	39	147B3E1	6109B044	1E30C970C	7A520BCAC6*	0	0	1	0	1	00	00	00

---



---



---

Start clocking Summation Combiner

---



---



---

40	1	08F67C2	42136088	1C6192E18	74A417958D	1	0	1	1	1	01	00	00
41	2	11ECF84	0426C111	18C325C30	69482F2B1B	0	0	1	0	0	00	01	00
42	3	03D9F08	084D8222	11864B861	52905E5637	0	0	0	1	1	11	00	01
43	4	07B3E10	109B0444	030C970C3	2520BCAC6E	0	1	0	0	0	01	11	00
44	5	0F67C21	21360889	06192E186	4A417958DC	1	0	0	0	0	10	01	11
45	6	1ECF843	426C1112	0C325C30C	1482F2B1B8	1	0	1	1	1	11	10	01
46	7	1D9F086	04D82225	1864B8619	2905E56370	1	1	1	0	0	01	11	10
47	8	1B3E10D	09B0444B	10C970C32	520BCAC6E1	1	1	0	0	1	10	01	11
48	9	167C21B	13608897	0192E1865	2417958DC3	0	0	0	0	0	00	10	01
49	10	0CF8436	26C1112F	0325C30CB	482F2B1B87	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
50	11	19F086D	4D82225E	064B86197	105E56370F	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
51	12	13E10DB	1B0444BC	0C970C32F	20BCAC6E1F	0	0	1	1	1	00	01	00
52	13	07C21B7	36088979	192E1865E	417958DC3F	0	0	1	0	1	11	00	01
53	14	0F8436E	6C1112F2	125C30CBD	02F2B1B87F	1	0	0	1	1	01	11	00
54	15	1F086DD	582225E4	04B86197B	05E56370FF	1	0	0	1	1	10	01	11
55	16	1E10DBA	30444BC9	0970C32F7	0BCAC6E1FF	1	0	1	1	1	11	10	01
56	17	1C21B75	60889793	12E1865EE	17958DC3FF	1	1	0	1	0	01	11	10
57	18	18436EA	41112F27	05C30CBDD	2F2B1B87FF	1	0	0	0	0	10	01	11
58	19	1086DD4	02225E4E	0B86197BA	5E56370FFF	0	0	1	0	1	00	10	01
59	20	010DBA8	0444BC9D	170C32F74	3CAC6E1FFF	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
60	21	021B750	0889793A	0E1865EE8	7958DC3FFF	0	1	1	0	1	00	01	00
61	22	0436EA0	1112F274	1C30CBDD0	72B1B87FFE	0	0	1	1	0	10	00	01
62	23	086DD40	2225E4E9	186197BA1	656370FFFC	1	0	1	0	0	00	10	00
63	24	10DBA81	444BC9D3	10C32F743	4AC6E1FFF8	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
64	25	01B7502	089793A7	01865EE86	158DC3FFF1	0	1	0	1	1	00	01	00
65	26	036EA05	112F274E	030CBDD0D	2B1B87FFE3	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
66	27	06DD40B	225E4E9C	06197BA1A	56370FFFC6	0	0	0	0	1	10	11	00
67	28	0DBA817	44BC9D39	0C32F7434	2C6E1FFF8D	1	1	1	0	1	10	10	11
68	29	1B7502E	09793A72	1865EE868	58DC3FFF1B	1	0	1	1	1	01	10	10
69	30	16EA05D	12F274E5	10CBDD0D0	31B87FFE36	0	1	0	1	1	01	01	10
70	31	0DD40BA	25E4E9CB	0197BA1A1	6370FFFC6D	1	1	0	0	1	11	01	01
71	32	1BA8174	4BC9D397	032F74343	46E1FFF8DA	1	1	0	1	0	11	11	01
72	33	17502E8	1793A72F	065EE8687	0DC3FFF1B4	0	1	0	1	1	11	11	11
73	34	0EA05D0	2F274E5E	0CBD0D0F	1B87FFE369	1	0	1	1	0	10	11	11
74	35	1D40BA0	5E4E9CBD	197BA1A1F	370FFFC6D2	1	0	1	0	0	10	10	11
75	36	1A81741	3C9D397B	12F74343F	6E1FFF8DA5	1	1	0	0	0	01	10	10
76	37	1502E82	793A72F6	05EE8687F	5C3FFF1B4B	0	0	0	0	1	00	01	10
77	38	0A05D05	7274E5ED	0BDD0D0FF	387FFE3696	1	0	1	0	0	10	00	01
78	39	140BA0B	64E9CBDA	17BA1A1FF	70FFFC6D2C	0	1	0	1	0	00	10	00
79	40	0817416	49D397B4	0F74343FE	61FFF8DA59	1	1	1	1	0	11	00	10
80	41	102E82C	13A72F69	1EE8687FD	43FFF1B4B3	0	1	1	1	0	00	11	00
81	42	005D058	274E5ED2	1DD0D0FFA	07FFE36966	0	0	1	1	0	11	00	11
82	43	00BA0B0	4E9CBDA5	1BA1A1FF5	0FFFC6D2CD	0	1	1	1	0	00	11	00
83	44	0174160	1D397B4A	174343FEA	1FFF8DA59B	0	0	0	1	1	10	00	11
84	45	02E82C0	3A72F695	0E8687FD4	3FFF1B4B37	0	0	1	1	0	00	10	00
85	46	05D0580	74E5ED2B	1D0D0FFA9	7FFE36966E	0	1	1	1	1	00	00	10
86	47	0BA0B00	69CBDA56	1A1A1FF53	7FFC6D2CDC	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
87	48	1741600	5397B4AC	14343FEA6	7FF8DA59B8	0	1	0	1	0	00	10	00
88	49	0E82C01	272F6959	08687FD4D	7FF1B4B370	1	0	1	1	1	00	00	10

*Sample Data*

89	50	1D05802	4E5ED2B3	10D0FFA9A	7FE36966E0	1	0	0	1	0	01	00	00
90	51	1A0B004	1CBDA566	01A1FF535	7FC6D2CDC0	1	1	0	1	0	11	01	00
91	52	1416009	397B4ACC	0343FEA6B	7F8DA59B80	0	0	0	1	0	10	11	01
92	53	082C013	72F69599	0687FD4D7	7F1B4B3701	1	1	0	0	0	10	10	11
93	54	1058026	65ED2B33	0D0FFA9AF	7E36966E03	0	1	1	0	0	01	10	10
94	55	00B004D	4BDA5667	1A1FF535E	7C6D2CDC06	0	1	1	0	1	01	01	10
95	56	016009B	17B4ACCE	143FEA6BD	78DA59B80D	0	1	0	1	1	11	01	01
96	57	02C0137	2F69599D	087FD4D7B	71B4B3701A	0	0	1	1	1	10	11	01
97	58	058026F	5ED2B33B	10FFA9AF6	636966E034	0	1	0	0	1	01	10	11
98	59	0B004DF	3DA56677	01FF535ED	46D2CDC068	1	1	0	1	0	10	01	10
99	60	16009BF	7B4ACCEF	03FEA6BDB	0DA59B80D0	0	0	0	1	1	00	10	01
100	61	0C0137F	769599DF	07FD4D7B7	1B4B3701A1	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
101	62	18026FE	6D2B33BE	0FFA9AF6E	36966E0342	1	0	1	1	1	01	00	00
102	63	1004DFC	5A56677D	1FF535EDD	6D2CDC0684	0	0	1	0	0	00	01	00
103	64	0009BF9	34ACCEF9	1FEA6BDBB	5A59B80D09	0	1	1	0	0	10	00	01
104	65	00137F2	69599DF7	1FD4D7B76	34B3701A12	0	0	1	1	0	00	10	00
105	66	0026FE5	52B33BEF	1FA9AF6EC	6966E03424	0	1	1	0	0	00	00	10
106	67	004DFCA	256677DF	1F535EDD8	52CDC06848	0	0	1	1	0	01	00	00
107	68	009BF94	4ACCEFBE	1EA6BDBB0	259B80D091	0	1	1	1	0	11	01	00
108	69	0137F29	1599DF7C	1D4D7B760	4B3701A123	0	1	1	0	1	10	11	01
109	70	026FE53	2B33BEF9	1A9AF6EC0	166E034246	0	0	1	0	1	01	10	11
110	71	04DFCA7	56677DF2	1535EDD81	2CDC06848D	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
111	72	09BF94F	2CCEFBE4	0A6BDBB03	59B80D091B	1	1	1	1	1	00	01	01
112	73	137F29E	599DF7C9	14D7B7607	33701A1236	0	1	0	0	1	11	00	01
113	74	06FE53C	333BEF93	09AF6EC0E	66E034246C	0	0	1	1	1	01	11	00
114	75	0DFCA79	6677DF26	135EDD81D	4DC06848D8	1	0	0	1	1	10	01	11
115	76	1BF94F2	4CEFBE4D	06BDBB03B	1B80D091B1	1	1	0	1	1	11	10	01
116	77	17F29E5	19DF7C9A	0D7B76077	3701A12363	0	1	1	0	1	00	11	10
117	78	0FE53CA	33BEF934	1AF6EC0EF	6E034246C6	1	1	1	0	1	11	00	11
118	79	1FCA794	677DF269	15EDD81DF	5C06848D8C	1	0	0	0	0	01	11	00
119	80	1F94F29	4EFBE4D2	0BDBB03BE	380D091B19	1	1	1	0	0	01	01	11
120	81	1F29E53	1DF7C9A5	17B76077D	701A123633	1	1	0	0	1	11	01	01
121	82	1E53CA6	3BEF934B	0F6EC0EFB	6034246C66	1	1	1	0	0	11	11	01
122	83	1CA794D	77DF2696	1EDD81DF6	406848D8CD	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11
123	84	194F29B	6FBE4D2C	1DBB03BED	00D091B19B	1	1	1	1	0	11	10	11
124	85	129E536	5F7C9A59	1B76077DA	01A1236337	0	0	1	1	1	00	11	10
125	86	053CA6C	3EF934B3	16EC0EFB4	034246C66E	0	1	0	0	1	10	00	11
126	87	0A794D9	7DF26967	0DD81DF69	06848D8CDD	1	1	1	1	0	01	10	00
127	88	14F29B3	7BE4D2CF	1BB03BED3	0D091B19BB	0	1	1	0	1	01	01	10
128	89	09E5366	77C9A59F	176077DA6	1A12363377	1	1	0	0	1	11	01	01
129	90	13CA6CD	6F934B3F	0EC0EFB4D	34246C66EF	0	1	1	0	1	10	11	01
130	91	0794D9B	5F26967F	1D81DF69A	6848D8CDDF	0	0	1	0	1	01	10	11
131	92	0F29B37	3E4D2CFE	1B03BED35	5091B19BBE	1	0	1	1	0	10	01	10
132	93	1E5366F	7C9A59FD	16077DA6B	212363377C	1	1	0	0	0	11	10	01
133	94	1CA6CDF	7934B3FB	0C0EFB4D6	4246C66EF9	1	0	1	0	1	00	11	10
134	95	194D9BE	726967F6	181DF69AD	048D8CDDF2	1	0	1	1	1	11	00	11
135	96	129B37D	64D2CFED	103BED35B	091B19BBE5	0	1	0	0	0	01	11	00
136	97	05366FA	49A59FDA	0077DA6B7	12363377CA	0	1	0	0	0	10	01	11
137	98	0A6CDF5	134B3FB4	00EFB4D6E	246C66EF95	1	0	0	0	1	00	10	01
138	99	14D9BEA	26967F69	01DF69ADD	48D8CDDF2B	0	1	0	1	0	00	00	10
139	100	09B37D4	4D2CFED2	03BED35BB	11B19BBE56	1	0	0	1	0	01	00	00
140	101	1366FA8	1A59FDA5	077DA6B77	2363377CAC	0	0	0	0	1	01	01	00
141	102	06CDF51	34B3FB4A	0EFB4D6EF	46C66EF959	0	1	1	1	0	00	01	01
142	103	0D9BEA2	6967F695	1DF69ADD	0D8CDDF2B2	1	0	1	1	1	10	00	01
143	104	1B37D45	52CFED2A	1BED35BBF	1B19BBE564	1	1	1	0	1	00	10	00
144	105	166FA8A	259FDA54	17DA6B77E	363377CAC8	0	1	0	0	1	01	00	10
145	106	0CDF515	4B3FB4A9	0FB4D6EFC	6C66EF9591	1	0	1	0	1	00	01	00

*Sample Data*

146	107	19BEA2B	167F6952	1F69ADD8	58CDDF2B22	1	0	1	1	1	10	00	01
147	108	137D457	2CFED2A5	1ED35BBF1	319BBE5645	0	1	1	1	1	00	10	00
148	109	06FA8AF	59FDA54A	1DA6B77E2	63377CAC8B	0	1	1	0	0	00	00	10
149	110	0DF515F	33FB4A95	1B4D6EFC4	466EF95916	1	1	1	0	1	01	00	00
150	111	1BEA2BF	67F6952A	169ADD88	0CDDF2B22C	1	1	0	1	0	11	01	00
151	112	17D457F	4FED2A55	0D35BBF10	19BBE56459	0	1	1	1	0	11	11	01
152	113	0FA8AFE	1FDA54AB	1A6B77E20	3377CAC8B3	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11
153	114	1F515FD	3FB4A957	14D6EFC40	66EF959166	1	1	0	1	1	10	10	11
154	115	1EA2BFA	7F6952AF	09ADD880	4DDF2B22CC	1	0	1	1	1	01	10	10
155	116	1D457F4	7ED2A55F	135BBF100	1BBE564598	1	1	0	1	0	10	01	10
156	117	1A8AFE8	7DA54ABF	06B77E200	377CAC8B31	1	1	0	0	0	11	10	01
157	118	1515FD0	7B4A957F	0D6EFC401	6EF9591663	0	0	1	1	1	00	11	10
158	119	0A2BFA1	76952AFE	1ADD8803	5DF2B22CC7	1	1	1	1	0	00	00	11
159	120	1457F42	6D2A55FD	15BBF1007	3BE564598E	0	0	0	1	1	00	00	00
160	121	08AFE84	5A54ABFB	0B77E200F	77CAC8B31C	1	0	1	1	1	01	00	00
161	122	115FD09	34A957F7	16EFC401F	6F95916639	0	1	0	1	1	00	01	00
162	123	02BFA12	6952AFEF	0DDF8803E	5F2B22CC73	0	0	1	0	1	11	00	01
163	124	057F424	52A55FDF	1BBF1007D	3E564598E7	0	1	1	0	1	01	11	00
164	125	0AFE848	254ABFBF	177E200FA	7CAC8B31CF	1	0	0	1	1	10	01	11
165	126	15FD090	4A957F7E	0EFC401F5	795916639E	0	1	1	0	0	11	10	01
166	127	0BFA121	152AFEF	1DF8803EA	72B22CC73C	1	0	1	1	0	01	11	10
167	128	17F4243	2A55FDFA	1BF1007D4	6564598E78	0	0	1	0	0	10	01	11
168	129	0FE8486	54ABFBF4	17E200FA8	4AC8B31CF0	1	1	0	1	1	11	10	01
169	130	1FD090C	2957F7E8	0FC401F51	15916639E1	1	0	1	1	0	01	11	10
170	131	1FA1219	52AFEF	1F8803EA3	2B22CC73C2	1	1	1	0	0	01	01	11
171	132	1F42432	255FDFA2	1F1007D47	564598E785	1	0	1	0	1	11	01	01
172	133	1E84865	4ABFBF44	1E200FA8F	2C8B31CF0B	1	1	1	1	1	11	11	01
173	134	1D090CB	157F7E88	1C401F51E	5916639E17	1	0	1	0	1	11	11	11
174	135	1A12196	2AFEF	18803EA3C	322CC73C2E	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11
175	136	142432C	55FDFA23	11007D479	64598E785C	0	1	0	0	1	01	10	11
176	137	0848659	2BFBF446	0200FA8F2	48B31CF0B9	1	1	0	1	0	10	01	10
177	138	1090CB2	57F7E88C	0401F51E4	116639E173	0	1	0	0	1	00	10	01
178	139	0121964	2FEFD118	0803EA3C8	22CC73C2E6	0	1	1	1	1	00	00	10
179	140	02432C9	5FDFA230	1007D4791	4598E785CD	0	1	0	1	0	01	00	00
180	141	0486593	3FBF4461	000FA8F23	0B31CF0B9B	0	1	0	0	0	00	01	00
181	142	090CB26	7F7E88C3	001F51E47	16639E1736	1	0	0	0	1	11	00	01
182	143	121964D	7EFD1187	003EA3C8F	2CC73C2E6C	0	1	0	1	1	01	11	00
183	144	0432C9B	7DFA230E	007D4791E	598E785CD8	0	1	0	1	1	10	01	11
184	145	0865936	7BF4461C	00FA8F23C	331CF0B9B0	1	1	0	0	0	11	10	01
185	146	10CB26D	77E88C38	01F51E479	6639E17361	0	1	0	0	0	00	11	10
186	147	01964DA	6FD11870	03EA3C8F2	4C73C2E6C2	0	1	0	0	1	10	00	11
187	148	032C9B4	5FA230E1	07D4791E4	18E785CD84	0	1	0	1	0	00	10	00
188	149	0659368	3F4461C2	0FA8F23C9	31CF0B9B09	0	0	1	1	0	00	00	10
189	150	0CB26D0	7E88C384	1F51E4793	639E173612	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
190	151	1964DA0	7D118709	1EA3C8F27	473C2E6C24	1	0	1	0	0	00	10	00
191	152	12C9B41	7A230E12	1D4791E4E	0E785CD848	0	0	1	0	1	01	00	10
192	153	0593683	74461C24	1A8F23C9C	1CF0B9B091	0	0	1	1	1	00	01	00
193	154	0B26D06	688C3848	151E47938	39E1736123	1	1	0	1	1	10	00	01
194	155	164DA0D	51187091	0A3C8F271	73C2E6C247	0	0	1	1	0	00	10	00
195	156	0C9B41A	2230E123	14791E4E3	6785CD848F	1	0	0	1	0	00	00	10
196	157	1936835	4461C247	08F23C9C6	4F0B9B091E	1	0	1	0	0	01	00	00
197	158	126D06A	08C3848E	11E47938D	1E1736123C	0	1	0	0	0	00	01	00
198	159	04DA0D5	1187091C	03C8F271B	3C2E6C2478	0	1	0	0	1	11	00	01
199	160	09B41AA	230E1238	0791E4E37	785CD848F1	1	0	0	0	0	01	11	00
200	161	1368354	461C2470	0F23C9C6F	70B9B091E3	0	0	1	1	1	10	01	11
201	162	06D06A9	0C3848E1	1E47938DF	61736123C6	0	0	1	0	1	00	10	01
202	163	0DA0D52	187091C3	1C8F271BE	42E6C2478D	1	0	1	1	1	00	00	10

*Sample Data*

203	164	1B41AA4	30E12387	191E4E37C	05CD848F1A	1	1	1	1	0	10	00	00
204	165	1683549	61C2470F	123C9C6F9	0B9B091E34	0	1	0	1	0	00	10	00
205	166	0D06A92	43848E1E	047938DF3	1736123C68	1	1	0	0	0	00	00	10
206	167	1A0D524	07091C3C	08F271BE7	2E6C2478D1	1	0	1	0	0	01	00	00
207	168	141AA49	0E123879	11E4E37CF	5CD848F1A2	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
208	169	0835492	1C2470F3	03C9C6F9F	39B091E345	1	0	0	1	0	10	00	01
209	170	106A925	3848E1E6	07938DF3F	736123C68B	0	0	0	0	0	11	10	00
210	171	00D524A	7091C3CD	0F271BE7E	66C2478D16	0	1	1	1	0	01	11	10
211	172	01AA495	6123879B	1E4E37CFD	4D848F1A2D	0	0	1	1	1	10	01	11
212	173	035492A	42470F36	1C9C6F9FB	1B091E345B	0	0	1	0	1	00	10	01
213	174	06A9255	048E1E6C	1938DF3F6	36123C68B7	0	1	1	0	0	00	00	10
214	175	0D524AB	091C3CD8	1271BE7EC	6C2478D16E	1	0	0	0	1	00	00	00
215	176	1AA4957	123879B1	04E37CFD8	5848F1A2DD	1	0	0	0	1	00	00	00
216	177	15492AF	2470F363	09C6F9FB0	3091E345BA	0	0	1	1	0	01	00	00
217	178	0A9255E	48E1E6C7	138DF3F61	6123C68B75	1	1	0	0	1	00	01	00
218	179	1524ABD	11C3CD8F	071BE7EC3	42478D16EB	0	1	0	0	1	11	00	01
219	180	0A4957B	23879B1F	0E37CFD87	048F1A2DD6	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
220	181	1492AF6	470F363F	1C6F9FB0E	091E345BAD	0	0	1	0	1	10	00	11
221	182	09255EC	0E1E6C7F	18DF3F61D	123C68B75B	1	0	1	0	0	00	10	00
222	183	124ABD9	1C3CD8FF	11BE7EC3A	2478D16EB6	0	0	0	0	0	01	00	10
223	184	04957B3	3879B1FE	037CFD874	48F1A2DD6D	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
224	185	092AF66	70F363FD	06F9FB0E9	11E345BADB	1	1	0	1	1	10	00	01
225	186	1255ECD	61E6C7FA	0DF3F61D3	23C68B75B7	0	1	1	1	1	00	10	00
226	187	04ABD9B	43CD8FF5	1BE7EC3A7	478D16EB6E	0	1	1	1	1	00	00	10
227	188	0957B37	079B1FEA	17CFD874E	0F1A2DD6DD	1	1	0	0	0	01	00	00
228	189	12AF66F	0F363FD4	0F9FB0E9C	1E345BADBB	0	0	1	0	0	00	01	00
229	190	055ECDE	1E6C7FA9	1F3F61D39	3C68B75B76	0	0	1	0	1	11	00	01
230	191	0ABD9BC	3CD8FF53	1E7EC3A73	78D16EB6EC	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
231	192	157B379	79B1FEA7	1CFD874E6	71A2DD6DD9	0	1	1	1	1	11	00	11
232	193	0AF66F3	7363FD4E	19FB0E9CD	6345BADBB2	1	0	1	0	1	01	11	00
233	194	15ECDE6	66C7FA9D	13F61D39A	468B75B765	0	1	0	1	1	10	01	11
234	195	0BD9BCC	4D8FF53A	07EC3A735	0D16EB6ECA	1	1	0	0	0	11	10	01
235	196	17B3799	1B1FEA75	0FD874E6A	1A2DD6DD94	0	0	1	0	0	00	11	10
236	197	0F66F33	363FD4EA	1FB0E9CD5	345BADBB28	1	0	1	0	0	11	00	11
237	198	1ECDE67	6C7FA9D5	1F61D39AA	68B75B7650	1	0	1	1	0	00	11	00
238	199	1D9BCCF	58FF53AB	1EC3A7354	516EB6ECA0	1	1	1	0	1	11	00	11
239	200	1B3799E	31FEA756	1D874E6A8	22DD6DD940	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00

```

Z[0] = 3F
Z[1] = B1
Z[2] = 67
Z[3] = D2
Z[4] = 2F
Z[5] = A6
Z[6] = 1F
Z[7] = B9
Z[8] = E6
Z[9] = 84
Z[10] = 43
Z[11] = 07
Z[12] = D8
Z[13] = 1E
Z[14] = E7
Z[15] = C3

```

*Sample Data*

```
=====
      Reload this pattern into the LFSRs
      Hold content of Summation Combiner regs and calculate new C[t+1] and Z values
=====

LFSR1  <= 0E62F3F
LFSR2  <= 6C84A6B1
LFSR3  <= 11E431F67
LFSR4  <= 61E707B9D2
C[t+1] <= 00

=====
Generating 125 key symbols (encryption/decryption sequence)
=====

240   1    0E62F3F  6C84A6B1  11E431F67  61E707B9D2    1   1   0   1    0   00   11   00
241   2    1CC5E7F  59094D63  03C863ECE  43CE0F73A5    1   0   0   1    0   11   00   11
242   3    198BCFF  32129AC6  0790C7D9D  079C1EE74A    1   0   0   1    1   01   11   00
243   4    13179FE  6425358C  0F218FB3A  0F383DCE94    0   0   1   0    0   10   01   11
244   5    062F3FD  484A6B19  1E431F675  1E707B9D28    0   0   1   0    1   00   10   01
245   6    0C5E7FB  1094D632  1C863ECEB  3CE0F73A50    1   1   1   1    0   11   00   10
246   7    18BCFFF  2129AC64  190C7D9D7  79C1EE74A1    1   0   1   1    0   00   11   00
247   8    1179FEE  425358C8  1218FB3AE  7383DCE942    0   0   0   1    1   10   00   11
248   9    02F3FDD  04A6B190  0431F675D  6707B9D285    0   1   0   0    1   11   10   00
249  10    05E7FBB  094D6320  0863ECEBB  4E0F73A50B    0   0   1   0    0   00   11   10
250  11    0BCFFF7  129AC640  10C7D9D77  1C1EE74A16    1   1   0   0    0   11   00   11
251  12    179FEEE  25358C80  018FB3AEE  383DCE942C    0   0   0   0    1   10   11   00
252  13    0F3FDDC  4A6B1900  031F675DD  707B9D2859    1   0   0   0    1   01   10   11
253  14    1E7FB8B  14D63200  063ECEBBA  60F73A50B3    1   1   0   1    0   10   01   10
254  15    1CFF771  29AC6401  0C7D9D774  41EE74A167    1   1   1   1    0   10   10   01
255  16    19FEEE2  5358C803  18FB3AEE9  03DCE942CE    1   0   1   1    1   01   10   10
256  17    13FDDC4  26B19007  11F675DD2  07B9D2859C    0   1   0   1    1   01   01   10
257  18    07FB88F  4D63200E  03ECEBBA4  0F73A50B38    0   0   0   0    1   10   01   01
258  19    0FF7711  1AC6401D  07D9D7748  1EE74A1670    1   1   0   1    1   11   10   01
259  20    1FEEE23  358C803B  0FB3AEE91  3DCE942CE1    1   1   1   1    1   01   11   10
260  21    1FDDC47  6B190076  1F675DD23  7B9D2859C2    1   0   1   1    0   01   01   11
261  22    1FB88F  563200ED  1ECEBBA47  773A50B385    1   0   1   0    1   11   01   01
262  23    1F7711E  2C6401DB  1D9D7748F  6E74A1670A    1   0   1   0    1   10   11   01
263  24    1EEE23D  58C803B6  1B3AEE91E  5CE942CE15    1   1   1   1    0   11   10   11
264  25    1DDC47A  3190076C  1675DD23D  39D2859C2B    1   1   0   1    0   01   11   10
265  26    1BB88F4  63200ED9  0CEBBA47A  73A50B3856    1   0   1   1    0   01   01   11
266  27    17711E8  46401DB2  19D7748F5  674A1670AD    0   0   1   0    0   11   01   01
267  28    0EE23D0  0C803B64  13AEE91EA  4E942CE15B    1   1   0   1    0   11   11   01
268  29    1DC47A0  190076C8  075DD23D4  1D2859C2B7    1   0   0   0    0   11   11   11
269  30    1B88F41  3200ED90  0EBBA47A9  3A50B3856E    1   0   1   0    1   11   11   11
270  31    1711E83  6401DB20  1D7748F53  74A1670ADC    0   0   1   1    1   11   11   11
271  32    0E23D07  4803B641  1AEE91EA7  6942CE15B8    1   0   1   0    1   11   11   11
272  33    1C47A0F  10076C82  15DD23D4F  52859C2B71    1   0   0   1    1   11   11   11
273  34    188F41E  200ED905  0BBA47A9E  250B3856E3    1   0   1   0    1   11   11   11
274  35    111E83C  401DB20A  17748F53D  4A1670ADC7    0   0   0   0    1   00   11   11
275  36    023D078  003B6414  0EE91EA7A  142CE15B8E    0   0   1   0    1   10   00   11
276  37    047A0F0  0076C828  1DD23D4F5  2859C2B71C    0   0   1   0    1   11   10   00
277  38    08F41E1  00ED9050  1BA47A9EA  50B3856E39    1   1   1   1    1   01   11   10
278  39    11E83C2  01DB20A0  1748F53D5  21670ADC72    0   1   0   0    0   10   01   11
279  40    03D0785  03B64141  0E91EA7AA  42CE15B8E4    0   1   1   1    1   11   10   01
280  41    07A0F0A  076C8283  1D23D4F54  059C2B71C8    0   0   1   1    1   00   11   10
281  42    0F41E14  0ED90507  1A47A9EA9  0B3856E390    1   1   1   0    1   11   00   11
282  43    1E83C29  1DB20A0F  148F53D52  1670ADC720    1   1   0   0    1   01   11   00
283  44    1D07853  3B64141E  091EA7AA5  2CE15B8E40    1   0   1   1    0   01   01   11
```

*Sample Data*

284	45	1A0F0A6	76C8283C	123D4F54B	59C2B71C81	1	1	0	1	0	00	01	01
285	46	141E14C	6D905079	047A9EA97	33856E3902	0	1	0	1	0	10	00	01
286	47	083C299	5B20A0F2	08F53D52F	670ADC7204	1	0	1	0	0	00	10	00
287	48	1078533	364141E4	11EA7AA5E	4E15B8E408	0	0	0	0	0	01	00	10
288	49	00F0A67	6C8283C8	03D4F54BC	1C2B71C811	0	1	0	0	0	00	01	00
289	50	01E14CE	59050791	07A9EA978	3856E39022	0	0	0	0	0	11	00	01
290	51	03C299C	320A0F23	0F53D52F1	70ADC72045	0	0	1	1	1	01	11	00
291	52	0785339	64141E47	1EA7AA5E2	615B8E408A	0	0	1	0	0	10	01	11
292	53	0F0A673	48283C8E	1D4F54BC4	42B71C8115	1	0	1	1	1	11	10	01
293	54	1E14CE6	1050791C	1A9EA9788	056E39022B	1	0	1	0	1	00	11	10
294	55	1C299CD	20A0F239	153D52F10	0ADC720456	1	1	0	1	1	11	00	11
295	56	185339B	4141E472	0A7AA5E20	15B8E408AC	1	0	1	1	0	00	11	00
296	57	10A6736	0283C8E4	14F54BC41	2B71C81158	0	1	0	0	1	10	00	11
297	58	014CE6C	050791C9	09EA97882	56E39022B0	0	0	1	1	0	00	10	00
298	59	0299CD9	0A0F2393	13D52F104	2DC7204561	0	0	0	1	1	01	00	10
299	60	05339B3	141E4726	07AA5E208	5B8E408AC3	0	0	0	1	0	00	01	00
300	61	0A67366	283C8E4C	0F54BC411	371C811587	1	0	1	0	0	10	00	01
301	62	14CE6CC	50791C98	1EA978822	6E39022B0F	0	0	1	0	1	11	10	00
302	63	099CD99	20F23930	1D52F1045	5C7204561E	1	1	1	0	0	01	11	10
303	64	1339B33	41E47260	1AA5E208B	38E408AC3D	0	1	1	1	0	01	01	11
304	65	0673666	03C8E4C0	154BC4117	71C811587A	0	1	0	1	1	11	01	01
305	66	0CE6CCC	0791C980	0A978822E	639022B0F5	1	1	1	1	1	11	11	01
306	67	19CD999	0F239301	152F1045C	47204561EB	1	0	0	0	0	11	11	11
307	68	139B332	1E472603	0A5E208B9	0E408AC3D6	0	0	1	0	0	11	11	11
308	69	0736664	3C8E4C06	14BC41172	1C811587AD	0	1	0	1	1	11	11	11
309	70	0E6CCC8	791C980C	0978822E5	39022B0F5A	1	0	1	0	1	11	11	11
310	71	1CD9990	72393019	12F1045CB	7204561EB4	1	0	0	0	0	11	11	11
311	72	19B3320	64726033	05E208B97	6408AC3D69	1	0	0	0	0	11	11	11
312	73	1366640	48E4C067	0BC41172F	4811587AD3	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
313	74	06CCC81	11C980CF	178822E5E	1022B0F5A6	0	1	0	0	0	11	11	11
314	75	0D99903	2393019E	0F1045CBC	204561EB4C	1	1	1	0	0	10	11	11
315	76	1B33206	4726033D	1E208B979	408AC3D699	1	0	1	1	1	10	10	11
316	77	166640D	0E4C067B	1C41172F2	011587AD33	0	0	1	0	1	10	10	10
317	78	0CCC81B	1C980CF6	18822E5E5	022B0F5A66	1	1	1	0	1	01	10	10
318	79	1999036	393019EC	11045CB	04561EB4CD	1	0	0	0	0	01	01	10
319	80	133206C	726033D9	0208B9794	08AC3D699B	0	0	0	1	0	11	01	01
320	81	06640D9	64C067B3	041172F29	11587AD337	0	1	0	0	0	10	11	01
321	82	0CC81B3	4980CF66	0822E5E53	22B0F5A66F	1	1	1	1	0	11	10	11
322	83	1990366	13019ECC	1045CB	4561EB4CDF	1	0	0	0	0	00	11	10
323	84	13206CC	26033D98	008B9794D	0AC3D699BE	0	0	0	1	1	10	00	11
324	85	0640D98	4C067B31	01172F29B	1587AD337C	0	0	0	1	1	11	10	00
325	86	0C81B30	180CF662	022E5E537	2B0F5A66F9	1	0	0	0	0	00	11	10
326	87	1903660	3019ECC5	045CB	561EB4CDF3	1	0	0	0	1	10	00	11
327	88	1206CC1	6033D98A	08B9794DE	2C3D699BE6	0	0	1	0	1	11	10	00
328	89	040D983	4067B315	1172F29BD	587AD337CC	0	0	0	0	1	11	11	10
329	90	081B306	00CF662A	02E5E537A	30F5A66F98	1	1	0	1	0	10	11	11
330	91	103660C	019ECC55	05CB	61EB4CDF31	0	1	0	1	0	10	10	11
331	92	006CC19	033D98AB	0B9794DE8	43D699BE62	0	0	1	1	0	01	10	10
332	93	00D9833	067B3156	172F29BD0	07AD337CC5	0	0	0	1	0	01	01	10
333	94	01B3066	0CF662AC	0E5E537A0	0F5A66F98B	0	1	1	0	1	11	01	01
334	95	03660CD	19ECC559	1CB	61EB4CDF317	0	1	1	1	0	11	11	01
335	96	06CC19B	33D98AB2	19794DE83	3D699BE62F	0	1	1	0	1	11	11	11
336	97	0D98336	67B31565	12F29BD06	7AD337CC5F	1	1	0	1	0	10	11	11
337	98	1B3066D	4F662ACA	05E537A0C	75A66F98BF	1	0	0	1	0	10	10	11
338	99	1660CDB	1ECC5594	0BCA6F418	6B4CDF317E	0	1	1	0	0	01	10	10
339	100	0CC19B7	3D98AB29	1794DE831	5699BE62FC	1	1	0	1	0	10	01	10
340	101	198336F	7B315653	0F29BD062	2D337CC5F9	1	0	1	0	0	11	10	01

*Sample Data*

341	102	13066DE	7662ACA7	1E537A0C5	5A66F98BF2	0	0	1	0	0	00	11	10
342	103	060CDBC	6CC5594F	1CA6F418B	34CDF317E4	0	1	1	1	1	11	00	11
343	104	0C19B78	598AB29F	194DE8317	699BE62FC9	1	1	1	1	1	00	11	00
344	105	18336F1	3315653F	129BD062E	5337CC5F92	1	0	0	0	1	10	00	11
345	106	1066DE2	662ACA7E	0537A0C5C	266F98BF25	0	0	0	0	0	11	10	00
346	107	00CDBC5	4C5594FD	0A6F418B9	4CDF317E4B	0	0	1	1	1	00	11	10
347	108	019B78B	18AB29FA	14DE83172	19BE62FC96	0	1	0	1	0	11	00	11
348	109	0336F16	315653F4	09BD062E5	337CC5F92C	0	0	1	0	0	01	11	00
349	110	066DE2D	62ACA7E8	137A0C5CA	66F98BF258	0	1	0	1	1	10	01	11
350	111	0CDCBC5B	45594FD1	06F418B95	4DF317E4B1	1	0	0	1	0	11	10	01
351	112	19B78B6	0AB29FA2	0DE83172B	1BE62FC962	1	1	1	1	1	01	11	10
352	113	136F16C	15653F45	1BD062E57	37CC5F92C5	0	0	1	1	1	10	01	11
353	114	06DE2D9	2ACA7E8B	17A0C5CAE	6F98BF258B	0	1	0	1	0	11	10	01
354	115	0DBC5B2	5594FD16	0F418B95D	5F317E4B16	1	1	1	0	0	01	11	10
355	116	1B78B64	2B29FA2C	1E83172BB	3E62FC962C	1	0	1	0	1	10	01	11
356	117	16F16C8	5653F458	1D062E577	7CC5F92C58	0	0	1	1	0	11	10	01
357	118	0DE2D91	2CA7E8B0	1A0C5CAEF	798BF258B1	1	1	1	1	1	01	11	10
358	119	1BC5B23	594FD161	1418B95DF	7317E4B163	1	0	0	0	0	10	01	11
359	120	178B647	329FA2C2	083172BBF	662FC962C7	0	1	1	0	0	11	10	01
360	121	0F16C8E	653F4584	1062E577F	4C5F92C58E	1	0	0	0	0	00	11	10
361	122	1E2D91C	4A7E8B09	00C5CAEFE	18BF258B1C	1	0	0	1	0	11	00	11
362	123	1C5B238	14FD1613	018B95DFC	317E4B1639	1	1	0	0	1	01	11	00
363	124	18B6471	29FA2C27	03172BBF9	62FC962C72	1	1	0	1	0	01	01	11
364	125	116C8E2	53F4584E	062E577F3	45F92C58E4	0	1	0	1	1	11	01	01

*Sample Data*

## 1.2 AES-CCM ENCRYPTION SAMPLE DATA

All values below are hexadecimal and follow notation of AES-CCM:  
MSbyte to LSbyte & msbit to lsbit.

```
(0 byte DM1, M --> S)
(8 byte DM1, M --> S)
(8 byte DM1, S --> M)
(17 byte DM1, M --> S)
(17 byte DM1, S --> M)
(20 byte DH1, M --> S)
(20 byte DH1, S --> M)
(27 byte DH1, M --> S)
(27 byte DH1, S --> M)
(367 byte 2-DH3, M --> S)
(367 byte 2-DH3, S --> M)
(1021 byte 3-DH5, M --> S)
(1021 byte 3-DH5, S --> M)
```

### 1.2.1 Sample Data 1 (DM1, M --> S)

Payload byte length: 00  
K: 89678967 89678967 45234523 45234523  
Payload counter: 0000bc614e  
Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
Direction: 0  
Initialization vector: 66778899 aabbccdd  
LT\_ADDR: 1  
Packet Type: 3  
LLID: 2  
Payload:

B0: 494e61bc 0000ddcc bbaa9988 77660000  
B1: 00190200 00000000 00000000 00000000

Y0: bb01f0c5 16dfd7b5 0d0ccb8 eaebb347  
Y1: a9adf6e6 7876cf95 118a09d5 ac3f216e

T: a9adf6e6

CTR0: 014e61bc 0000ddcc bbaa9988 77660000

S0: b90f2b23 f63717d3 38e0559d 1e7e785e

MIC: 10a2ddc5

Encrypted payload:

*Sample Data***1.2.2 Sample Data 2 (DM1, M --> S)**

Payload byte length: 08  
K: 89678967 89678967 45234523 45234523  
Payload counter: 0000bc614e  
Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
Direction: 0  
Initialization vector: 66778899 aabbccdd  
LT\_ADDR: 1  
Packet Type: 3  
LLID: 2  
Payload: 68696a6b 6c6d6e6f

B0: 494e61bc 0000ddcc bbaa9988 77660008  
B1: 00190200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
B2: 68696a6b 6c6d6e6f 00000000 00000000

Y0: 95ddc3d4 2c9a70f1 61a28ee2 c08271ab  
Y1: 418635ff 54615443 8aceca41 fe274779  
Y2: 08d78b32 9d78ed33 b285fc42 e178d781

T: 08d78b32

CTR0: 014e61bc 0000ddcc bbaa9988 77660000  
CTR1: 014e61bc 0000ddcc bbaa9988 77660001

S0: b90f2b23 f63717d3 38e0559d 1e7e785e  
S1: d8c7e3e1 02050abb 025d0895 17cbe5fb

MIC: b1d8a011

Encrypted payload: b0ae898a 6e6864d4

*Sample Data*

### 1.2.3 Sample Data 3 (DM1, S --> M)

Payload byte length: 08  
 K: 89678967 89678967 45234523 45234523  
 Payload counter: 0000bc614e  
 Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
 Direction: 1  
 Initialization vector: 66778899 aabbccdd  
 LT\_ADDR: 1  
 Packet Type: 3  
 LLID: 2  
 Payload: 68696a6b 6c6d6e6f  
  
 B0: 494e61bc 0020ddcc bbaa9988 77660008  
 B1: 00190200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
 B2: 68696a6b 6c6d6e6f 00000000 00000000  
  
 Y0: 31081122 b1cca37a 5f04d238 897b9bc8  
 Y1: 02ee3065 95c5d55a d0a030a3 3bee507b  
 Y2: 7382a2ba aa874418 14eafbef 41f57180  
  
 T: 7382a2ba  
  
 CTR0: 014e61bc 0020ddcc bbaa9988 77660000  
 CTR1: 014e61bc 0020ddcc bbaa9988 77660001  
  
 S0: 2a4d408d 2035b058 cc2fbf3b 8de15c73  
 S1: 9c89f68f b31bf4b5 7fbc7e83 123bd8a8  
  
 MIC: 59cf237  
 Encrypted payload: f4e09ce4 df769ada

### 1.2.4 Sample Data 4 (DM1, M --> S)

Payload byte length: 11  
 K: ce2ad11b a11456bd bd9d8b1f 848322fc  
 Payload counter: 00bdb3be95  
 Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
 Direction: 0  
 Initialization vector: 82b8b727 5bf92769  
 LT\_ADDR: 1  
 Packet Type: 3  
 LLID: 2  
 Payload: 86126da5 dbb39164 9ba1cac4 60917233  
     05  
  
 B0: 4995beb3 bd006927 f95b27b7 b8820011  
 B1: 00190200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
 B2: 86126da5 dbb39164 9ba1cac4 60917233  
 B3: 05000000 00000000 00000000 00000000  
  
 Y0: ab182b6f e8bca0a9 7cc306e0 eab19e84  
 Y1: c198f821 49061035 977a5aae 60c51726  
 Y2: 45dd4181 40facb43 0f73f71b 49ea36ae  
 Y3: 7b112114 38d06bc2 98cb22db c5218041

*Sample Data*

T: 7b112114

CTR0: 0195beb3 bd006927 f95b27b7 b8820000  
 CTR1: 0195beb3 bd006927 f95b27b7 b8820001  
 CTR2: 0195beb3 bd006927 f95b27b7 b8820002

S0: bd3d1368 1478c30c 62b734ac e8e00c6e  
 S1: bfaa326d 8d84d8f6 e4518d12 20babe4f  
 S2: fc4a6327 776a3136 604a1ab8 20836505

MIC: c62c327c  
 Encrypted payload: 39b85fc8 56374992 7ff047d6 402bcc7c  
 f9

### 1.2.5 Sample Data 5 (DM1, S --> M)

Payload byte length: 11  
 K: ce2ad11b a11456bd bd9d8b1f 848322fc  
 Payload counter: 00bdb3be95  
 Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
 Direction: 1  
 Initialization vector: 82b8b727 5bf92769  
 LT\_ADDR: 1  
 Packet Type: 3  
 LLID: 2  
 Payload: 86126da5 dbb39164 9ba1cac4 60917233  
 05

B0: 4995beb3 bd206927 f95b27b7 b8820011  
 B1: 00190200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
 B2: 86126da5 dbb39164 9ba1cac4 60917233  
 B3: 05000000 00000000 00000000 00000000  
 Y0: 2c317af0 b12026df 8400f84e aa8e53e7  
 Y1: 1ec2c0c5 74e2cad3 3e143b2b 9d63095d  
 Y2: e7f08f4b d7c24c04 651434d8 a84f8ae9  
 Y3: d6f08416 0d556004 6c9b850b 1b579614

T: d6f08416

CTR0: 0195beb3 bd206927 f95b27b7 b8820000  
 CTR1: 0195beb3 bd206927 f95b27b7 b8820001  
 CTR2: 0195beb3 bd206927 f95b27b7 b8820002

S0: d8bc791d b48ea182 ef438e70 ee0f50e1  
 S1: c5e90ff5 6e1e06b3 4d6b699c 9fb72e3d  
 S2: b68f4956 19bea370 0a1f118e a5dd6aff

MIC: 0e4cf0b  
 Encrypted payload: 43fb6250 b5ad97d7 d6caa358 ff265c0e  
 b3

---

*Sample Data*

## 1.2.6 Sample Data 6 (DH1, M --> S)

Payl oad byte length: 14  
K: 7b04934f d9d25294 ef1a014d a094f0b5  
Payl oad counter: 006267f78b  
Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
Direction: 0  
Initialization vector: 74ca58e8 b136986f  
LT\_ADDR: 1  
Packet Type: 4  
LLID: 2  
Payl oad: 9bb3a2bd dd043b3a 904cc247 0a1d545f  
b2095e3d

B0: 498bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740014  
B1: 00210200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
B2: 9bb3a2bd dd043b3a 904cc247 0a1d545f  
B3: b2095e3d 00000000 00000000 00000000

Y0: ae691727 39e614a3 e0be3227 ac9af99  
Y1: 47b13424 8ff2f5f7 eaea4fdd 0fab9d92  
Y2: 36154960 3c1fc026 4509902e de57dfc3  
Y3: 1d45d8f7 950a39c3 9779bb7c d1b3fe17

T: 1d45d8f7

CTR0: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740000  
CTR1: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740001  
CTR2: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740002

S0: 254593c4 cd12c6a7 d9dec572 95524b75  
S1: af492e65 ca391b26 e8ce9653 498ed0de  
S2: 869271ed ac79c1bc 3cf0f959 c2711f3b

MIC: 38004b33  
Encrypted payl oad: 34fa8cd8 173d201c 78825414 43938481  
349b2fd0

*Sample Data***1.2.7 Sample Data 7 (DH1, S --> M)**

Payl oad byte Length: 14  
K: 7b04934f d9d25294 ef1a014d a094f0b5  
Payl oad counter: 006267f78b  
Zero-l ength ACL-U Continuation: 0  
Di rect ion: 1  
I ni tial i zation vector: 74ca58e8 b136986f  
LT\_ADDR: 1  
Packet Type: 4  
LLI D: 2  
Payl oad: 9bb3a2bd dd043b3a 904cc247 0a1d545f  
b2095e3d

B0: 498bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740014  
B1: 00210200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
B2: 9bb3a2bd dd043b3a 904cc247 0a1d545f  
B3: b2095e3d 00000000 00000000 00000000

Y0: 55410490 6f3a5827 e5a04a60 7cf19ad5  
Y1: 000cc95c c0d099ca b15b244b d3440c24  
Y2: bd1d9815 96438c28 eebfd508 6cf80d34  
Y3: 8c227888 d0725a21 ffba99b2 38043d5e

T: 8c227888

CTR0: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740000  
CTR1: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740001  
CTR2: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740002

S0: 1404487a 919e16c8 b3245d80 2b364231  
S1: 82082cbc 57038db7 4823be9a 34e0a8d7  
S2: 1b5f7526 d26fe763 7669dfee 63743d3a

MI C: 982630f2

Encrypted payl oad: 19bb8e01 8a07b68d d86f7cdd 3efdfc88  
a9562b1b

---

*Sample Data*

### 1.2.8 Sample Data 8 (DH1, M --> S)

Payl oad byte l engh t: 1b  
K: 7b04934f d9d25294 ef1a014d a094f0b5  
Payl oad counter: 006267f78b  
Zero-l engh t ACL-U Continuation: 0  
Di recti on: 0  
I ni tial i zati on vector: 74ca58e8 b136986f  
LT\_ADDR: 1  
Packet Type: 4  
LLID: 2  
Payl oad: 8f11d05e e0e749b5 eeda42f9 2b184502  
95388ce5 872916b4 bf7260

B0: 498bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74001b  
B1: 00210200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
B2: 8f11d05e e0e749b5 eeda42f9 2b184502  
B3: 95388ce5 872916b4 bf726000 00000000

Y0: 28015834 f3117a84 904800f7 ebd4b0d4  
Y1: 15c4a61e b7ae954e 2c9d1b19 3ba2a9e5  
Y2: 832c185d 1efffc0ee 94d3a26e 23aca8e6  
Y3: dcef7067 fc38a84e 893670a6 fb9e069b

T: dcef7067

CTR0: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740000  
CTR1: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740001  
CTR2: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740002

S0: 254593c4 cd12c6a7 d9dec572 95524b75  
S1: af492e65 ca391b26 e8ce9653 498ed0de  
S2: 869271ed ac79c1bc 3cf0f959 c2711f3b

MIC: f9aae3a3  
Encrypted payl oad: 2058fe3b 2ade5293 0614d4aa 629695dc  
13aa fd08 2b50d708 838299

*Sample Data***1.2.9 Sample Data 9 (DH1, S --> M)**

Payload byte length: 1b  
K: 7b04934f d9d25294 ef1a014d a094f0b5  
Payload counter: 006267f78b  
Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
Direction: 1  
Initialization vector: 74ca58e8 b136986f  
LT\_ADDR: 1  
Packet Type: 4  
LLID: 2  
Payload: 8f11d05e e0e749b5 eeda42f9 2b184502  
95388ce5 872916b4 bf7260  
  
B0: 498bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74001b  
B1: 00210200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
B2: 8f11d05e e0e749b5 eeda42f9 2b184502  
B3: 95388ce5 872916b4 bf726000 00000000  
  
Y0: feb39b06 54b486da bf1cec46 b5c5ec2a  
Y1: eeda0fc3 4057d94e 3572448d 67b640f4  
Y2: 48461729 ec1c7060 3b0f88ce becef21a  
Y3: b1ff4755 658c2aa2 862952a5 1ca041a1  
  
T: b1ff4755  
  
CTR0: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740000  
CTR1: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740001  
CTR2: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740002  
  
S0: 1404487a 919e16c8 b3245d80 2b364231  
S1: 82082cbc 57038db7 4823be9a 34e0a8d7  
S2: 1b5f7526 d26fe763 7669dfee 63743d3a  
  
MIC: a5fb0f2f  
Encrypted payload: 0d19fce2 b7e4c402 a6f9fc63 1ff8edd5  
8e67f9c3 5546f1d7 c91bbf

*Sample Data*

### 1.2.10 Sample Data 10 (2-DH3, M --> S)

Payload byte length: 16f  
 K: 7b04934f d9d25294 ef1a014d a094f0b5  
 Payload counter: 006267f78b  
 Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
 Direction: 0  
 Initialization vector: 74ca58e8 b136986f  
 LT\_ADDR: 1  
 Packet Type: a  
 LLIID: 2  
 Payload:  
 969b0972 549738ea 89120710 55797f19  
 631dd8e7 219308a0 836e8d6b a55ec08f  
 42604406 543c2f96 60c261c3 1c3d8826  
 73aab82e bd5a8278 93625aa8 b9a4c5b3  
 bc310174 e4d6436e 2e44aa08 1d64e751  
 b5501222 dcc34270 6aefd398 1e10b2e2  
 56e20d95 1e4e68cc 3fdd4b5c 8e93809a  
 ff008232 3b6a864e b8556219 e94fbdd2  
 500550e9 939e6108 43a375ab a75d1f6d  
 a0304656 b45f488c 0ba40259 4e1ee6a1  
 c59301e8 f1507906 40dc0c24 330120c0  
 ac7f6707 e7f00d4a ea6c0577 a31abbb6  
 4f9b6bab 47bfa387 c89bbbe1 6d8cbd49  
 4a9c452f 9d46ab05 dcf0f434 f4c27bce  
 2e0e177d 1aba438d 64a8cd72 ca0c170c  
 9fa6e227 992fe354 98c94581 f1d869ee  
 b07fffcf2 c19b35c8 5e22939e b54c772c  
 2c4c0963 f51a653d 777879f2 d1ab67fc  
 ba300c9e fa3ba62e 9f70e4b9 1a996f81  
 7a9dff0b 56fd15c2 e9858db3 9b33e8c2  
 254df11b 64b9ac36 409f2406 5c9e478a  
 fc3b8161 b32d1b56 9236e631 23ed2a53  
 89d4c4e0 8a799f0a 370e7310 734c9f

B0: 498bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74016f  
 B1: 00510200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
 B2: 969b0972 549738ea 89120710 55797f19  
 B3: 631dd8e7 219308a0 836e8d6b a55ec08f  
 B4: 42604406 543c2f96 60c261c3 1c3d8826  
 B5: 73aab82e bd5a8278 93625aa8 b9a4c5b3  
 B6: bc310174 e4d6436e 2e44aa08 1d64e751  
 B7: b5501222 dcc34270 6aefd398 1e10b2e2  
 B8: 56e20d95 1e4e68cc 3fdd4b5c 8e93809a  
 B9: ff008232 3b6a864e b8556219 e94fbdd2  
 B10: 500550e9 939e6108 43a375ab a75d1f6d  
 B11: a0304656 b45f488c 0ba40259 4e1ee6a1  
 B12: c59301e8 f1507906 40dc0c24 330120c0  
 B13: ac7f6707 e7f00d4a ea6c0577 a31abbb6  
 B14: 4f9b6bab 47bfa387 c89bbbe1 6d8cbd49  
 B15: 4a9c452f 9d46ab05 dcf0f434 f4c27bce  
 B16: 2e0e177d 1aba438d 64a8cd72 ca0c170c  
 B17: 9fa6e227 992fe354 98c94581 f1d869ee  
 B18: b07fffcf2 c19b35c8 5e22939e b54c772c  
 B19: 2c4c0963 f51a653d 777879f2 d1ab67fc  
 B20: ba300c9e fa3ba62e 9f70e4b9 1a996f81

*Sample Data*

B21: 7a9dff0b 56fd15c2 e9858db3 9b33e8c2  
 B22: 254df11b 64b9ac36 409f2406 5c9e478a  
 B23: fc3b8161 b32d1b56 9236e631 23ed2a53  
 B24: 89d4c4e0 8a799f0a 370e7310 734c9f00

Y0: 29d89cd3 f2a1cf11 de30fb32 7e036fd8  
 Y1: 969453f9 b7ed6ed5 0bb166ac ad84b447  
 Y2: 29c1dbe6 569d3bcd 517acede fdf9b2a3  
 Y3: 87ae6d80 ceb1d9ae e7e009f3 0564b2b4  
 Y4: f7b4d9bf a1fa7bba 484cba56 f72c649c  
 Y5: 7cff7307 318bed9a 94c81c3f 7fa87554  
 Y6: ccf442c7 832413c6 1387b50f 1d6af991  
 Y7: fda7fb71 83c5a785 a798814c d0a4f4ef  
 Y8: ca85d795 514e510a e715b603 ad7fd821  
 Y9: 65527777 4efa23ca d5124e05 0597d5ff  
 Y10: b17f66c4 8a523b41 950f09c0 fc3a2a15  
 Y11: 886ec25e ed7cd1af 44de48bf fde11c40  
 Y12: cd685d0d 10a34a2f 2fa75fee c8a36979  
 Y13: d7486efa 056ebad9 0f6fe2ac f9871d36  
 Y14: c28103ad 2fe40cb6 42337daa fee66a03  
 Y15: c4a313af aad33282 8db4432c 73550d1c  
 Y16: e29b7baa b3c83223 72fc11d5 b15c01bb  
 Y17: 22737a00 4e7f26b9 c9f368e1 a90843ae  
 Y18: 11f9a9f7 997119fb ebad9814 230e9f11  
 Y19: 026c4112 d016c255 9595bdc9 a8b14e95  
 Y20: dfe4c01a b101dfca 4bd2ca7e 4342d595  
 Y21: 5a128313 b4180f77 80a029cc 23a0c1fc  
 Y22: b4df1ace 2e0a3a2a 968d45e4 7a11a3cf  
 Y23: d2fb23c5 4849439d 80e8fed4 7ee0e5cb  
 Y24: da1c4547 7eab6f64 b771cf1e 8ca278ad

T: da1c4547

CTR0: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740000  
 CTR1: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740001  
 CTR2: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740002  
 CTR3: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740003  
 CTR4: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740004  
 CTR5: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740005  
 CTR6: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740006  
 CTR7: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740007  
 CTR8: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740008  
 CTR9: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740009  
 CTR10: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000a  
 CTR11: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000b  
 CTR12: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000c  
 CTR13: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000d  
 CTR14: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000e  
 CTR15: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000f  
 CTR16: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740010  
 CTR17: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740011  
 CTR18: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740012  
 CTR19: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740013  
 CTR20: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740014  
 CTR21: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740015  
 CTR22: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740016  
 CTR23: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740017

---

*Sample Data*

S0: 254593c4 cd12c6a7 d9dec572 95524b75  
S1: af492e65 ca391b26 e8ce9653 498ed0de  
S2: 869271ed ac79c1bc 3cf0f959 c2711f3b  
S3: 31554cb7 aa9b1dfb 24ba8b26 eab59ad8  
S4: 7cb39415 9dce80e6 0ac0e5e0 9667747e  
S5: 9727b319 ccbcc251 d539fd08 497942c8  
S6: bd972408 212a147c 3eb66687 1488e2d9  
S7: aef3e149 6b4e615b 309a7f93 53ca2981  
S8: 6b276914 1d957bec 4c87e76d ee681e76  
S9: a2df383f eece9b0d 4553f2e8 6f8b6035  
S10: 11dac6bc c4177830 c7038ee1 e6cb0579  
S11: 30bfd1cf 7fa95155 7c0757bf f14840a0  
S12: 2315682b 1f4cb1f6 10fd4365 4d9b6155  
S13: 7f4aa2fd 211bbc18 9ff3dc7 c8102220  
S14: a072aa38 70e32a62 f7214fb1 97dbfbfd  
S15: f7c2b622 96a1f9e1 d3e7837f 293f6e86  
S16: e63dc9fd 830944d5 b9fa2257 b0e19402  
S17: eceef697 e76f671f 5e7e8c6e ae43f63b  
S18: a9bccd3a 4ae6b498 40a6ead6 cd6200a8  
S19: 2b624b6b f923eb0f 110ff341 4b1ab902  
S20: a47db290 f068ca62 c9236eec ddb431f4  
S21: a4ad3dc5 7e324250 1938950e 7b3827fd  
S22: 364c32d8 35f63c05 5c8f32dd e560cc8f  
S23: f2fd81dc cd12d0cc 2e4f7834 43a74630

MI C: ff59d683

Encrypted payload: 39d22717 9eae23cc 61dc9143 1cf7afc7  
e58fa90a 8deac91c bf9e7432 672fdfb4  
733508b1 fea7326d 4478ea5 f68812fe  
0f192c3b 2094029e 99a2bf48 2fc3b1cd  
2b16b26d 286a813f fb7d5700 541da599  
08c7362a fde9560c 5459b51f 0a98503b  
f811ecdc 75000997 0f4734cf dd59a91b  
9427eb26 26ffffda2 f4d28574 0727a3a4  
f2da68d6 7d50fa05 06f08743 c8d67f58  
b1ea80ea 704830bc cca78cb8 a8d5e3d8  
f52cd027 8ef92853 3cdb5b9b c2496060  
8f6a0f2c f8bcdbc fa914612 ee81dae3  
30d1c956 66a41f9f 57686736 a59c9f69  
eaeeeef17 eda58167 2bd1bb85 63198033  
d9cca15f 8c1bba6c b74f4e0d e333798a  
799b2bda 1a26a781 213367d6 4139fdec  
5c910a65 26f452d7 005c1ff0 1b0f8117  
85f0c459 bffcd1a5 37de9324 1cc96754  
915247f5 03184d21 8e7f17f8 5183d683  
dee04d9b a695dfa0 20a6e35f 4687d936  
81e0ccde 1a8bee66 59a7b108 27a66077  
ca77b3b9 86db2753 ceb9d4ec c68de6dc  
7b29453c 476b4fc6 19410b24 30ebd9

*Sample Data***1.2.11 Sample Data 11 (2-DH3, S --> M)**

Payload byte length: 16f  
 K: 7b04934f d9d25294 ef1a014d a094f0b5  
 Payload counter: 006267f78b  
 Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0  
 Direction: 1  
 Initialization vector: 74ca58e8 b136986f  
 LT\_ADDR: 1  
 Packet Type: a  
 LLI D: 2  
 Payload:  
 969b0972 549738ea 89120710 55797f19  
 631dd8e7 219308a0 836e8d6b a55ec08f  
 42604406 543c2f96 60c261c3 1c3d8826  
 73aab82e bd5a8278 93625aa8 b9a4c5b3  
 bc310174 e4d6436e 2e44aa08 1d64e751  
 b5501222 dcc34270 6aefd398 1e10b2e2  
 56e20d95 1e4e68cc 3fdd4b5c 8e93809a  
 ff008232 3b6a864e b8556219 e94fbdd2  
 500550e9 939e6108 43a375ab a75d1f6d  
 a0304656 b45f488c 0ba40259 4e1ee6a1  
 c59301e8 f1507906 40dc0c24 330120c0  
 ac7f6707 e7f00d4a ea6c0577 a31abbb6  
 4f9b6bab 47bfa387 c89bbbe1 6d8cbd49  
 4a9c452f 9d46ab05 dcf0f434 f4c27bce  
 2e0e177d 1aba438d 64a8cd72 ca0c170c  
 9fa6e227 992fe354 98c94581 f1d869ee  
 b07fffcf2 c19b35c8 5e22939e b54c772c  
 2c4c0963 f51a653d 777879f2 d1ab67fc  
 ba300c9e fa3ba62e 9f70e4b9 1a996f81  
 7a9dff0b 56fd15c2 e9858db3 9b33e8c2  
 254df11b 64b9ac36 409f2406 5c9e478a  
 fc3b8161 b32d1b56 9236e631 23ed2a53  
 89d4c4e0 8a799f0a 370e7310 734c9f  
  
 B0: 498bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74016f  
 B1: 00510200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
 B2: 969b0972 549738ea 89120710 55797f19  
 B3: 631dd8e7 219308a0 836e8d6b a55ec08f  
 B4: 42604406 543c2f96 60c261c3 1c3d8826  
 B5: 73aab82e bd5a8278 93625aa8 b9a4c5b3  
 B6: bc310174 e4d6436e 2e44aa08 1d64e751  
 B7: b5501222 dcc34270 6aefd398 1e10b2e2  
 B8: 56e20d95 1e4e68cc 3fdd4b5c 8e93809a  
 B9: ff008232 3b6a864e b8556219 e94fbdd2  
 B10: 500550e9 939e6108 43a375ab a75d1f6d  
 B11: a0304656 b45f488c 0ba40259 4e1ee6a1  
 B12: c59301e8 f1507906 40dc0c24 330120c0  
 B13: ac7f6707 e7f00d4a ea6c0577 a31abbb6  
 B14: 4f9b6bab 47bfa387 c89bbbe1 6d8cbd49  
 B15: 4a9c452f 9d46ab05 dcf0f434 f4c27bce  
 B16: 2e0e177d 1aba438d 64a8cd72 ca0c170c  
 B17: 9fa6e227 992fe354 98c94581 f1d869ee  
 B18: b07fffcf2 c19b35c8 5e22939e b54c772c  
 B19: 2c4c0963 f51a653d 777879f2 d1ab67fc  
 B20: ba300c9e fa3ba62e 9f70e4b9 1a996f81

*Sample Data*

B21: 7a9dff0b 56fd15c2 e9858db3 9b33e8c2  
 B22: 254df11b 64b9ac36 409f2406 5c9e478a  
 B23: fc3b8161 b32d1b56 9236e631 23ed2a53  
 B24: 89d4c4e0 8a799f0a 370e7310 734c9f00

Y0: 34969012 2648722b fb7771dd b1b38b1b  
 Y1: 8c511978 793004c6 975e5f19 93c19d99  
 Y2: 482014e5 39ddb8d4 0833c079 5bab45ef  
 Y3: b994181f a79795ce a6968237 28ad1659  
 Y4: 7b8fea33 1c4c8c50 d8ae584b bfc65033  
 Y5: e185c7b7 dd9831f5 2e0d2140 95368c09  
 Y6: d598bb23 fb4d4e82 a8b74b2b c95b5b71  
 Y7: 6c5c7fc1 8cc70897 3bb594a8 39541943  
 Y8: c7f822e8 7546115f 80d57035 7960abb8  
 Y9: a430ddc8 58f529f1 97bebcb7 e9160550  
 Y10: c9bf7627 33253b87 1490fb7d 353a3175  
 Y11: 1d93c403 de2c3b76 62e6ea6e cbf757c0  
 Y12: 0d607c00 af5502d9 2d56d483 745f6855  
 Y13: e27bdc66 de323cff a3a1620d 1637310e  
 Y14: 840d6d95 6785fead 710de246 e944bf2e  
 Y15: 806b9eb6 6517c4f8 1d55f260 e08f455b  
 Y16: 36883866 2f7275ab 6ba45111 2431882d  
 Y17: e5b4f1f6 cbbcc363 33ef1b05 94b5385e  
 Y18: e8d47695 67be9d89 04445e73 8a45e019  
 Y19: 77639b94 f0f9907c db541ef0 c8d45e4b  
 Y20: a2bd914a 281e1d5f 0c9b8de4 3fc6565  
 Y21: 6c1072e6 5581e658 7d7a0561 e8a85ddf  
 Y22: 8256c105 5c932ba8 bb71936b c727d10f  
 Y23: 2f4cc66a d568be7e 500a7448 6c2278ad  
 Y24: 2ca06cb0 0009e3c3 9e123a8a 2c2869dc

T: 2ca06cb0

CTR0: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740000  
 CTR1: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740001  
 CTR2: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740002  
 CTR3: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740003  
 CTR4: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740004  
 CTR5: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740005  
 CTR6: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740006  
 CTR7: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740007  
 CTR8: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740008  
 CTR9: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740009  
 CTR10: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000a  
 CTR11: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000b  
 CTR12: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000c  
 CTR13: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000d  
 CTR14: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000e  
 CTR15: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000f  
 CTR16: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740010  
 CTR17: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740011  
 CTR18: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740012  
 CTR19: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740013  
 CTR20: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740014  
 CTR21: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740015  
 CTR22: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740016  
 CTR23: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740017

*Sample Data*

S0: 1404487a 919e16c8 b3245d80 2b364231  
S1: 82082cbc 57038db7 4823be9a 34e0a8d7  
S2: 1b5f7526 d26fe763 7669dfee 63743d3a  
S3: a3673258 5020c6cd d72bf517 accb632d  
S4: 8a60ebb6 59c59ac1 a45a1ffd f54f7cd7  
S5: 036f35c7 130c8a30 25e9da14 706df5bc  
S6: e328cbb0 09c91d56 f010b40e e0fc5c3f  
S7: 626d3d67 b53eb139 e155c9a2 df407b17  
S8: d94e430b 829c7caf 289d2898 3c68aa5a  
S9: d6343452 d92cb1ac b3fde90b e2f0789f  
S10: 8ab8413c 0df18adf ae07a74f 82b3c91f  
S11: 61bfa52 125b8fc4 eaac30f7 5a543821  
S12: 68899f8f 2892931d 88b08926 7fa3cfc9  
S13: 86b668c5 4ef24455 22a45f42 61aea816  
S14: f57b4941 8332f0b3 7749ea30 53a711ee  
S15: 593562a8 45c75a7c 70030f08 6fedd965  
S16: f85e742f a743f353 6a22b384 be1dabdc  
S17: ed7e317b 635deed3 e8b619f2 9bc65eb0  
S18: 2035622d 94718ad6 c1631fa2 755883f4  
S19: 40f50638 ad826c4a 3ca4fb88 467445ae  
S20: e27eb632 0c2aee5c 9210b1c7 736fb897  
S21: 711a9be3 c7054fa5 82ec70b6 028489e7  
S22: 7b543081 c52e2cba 26400e6b 46642d0d  
S23: d9564733 01fa7fae 7cfac2a7 239639e2

MI C: 38a424ca

Encrypted payload: 149325ce 0394b55d c131b98a 6199d7ce  
7842adc1 f3fcefc3 f5075285 c62afdb5  
e107765e 041ce95b b7e994d4 b0f6eb0b  
f9ca5398 e49f18b9 37384555 4cebb964  
bf5e34b3 f7dac95e 0bad701c 6d0912ed  
5678d992 d50a5f26 9aff6796 feeceedd  
348f30f2 ab70d9f5 de8882fe 51d3fb8d  
264ec139 b9f6fae1 90c84a81 d5271788  
863164bb 4ab2d0a4 f05e9ca0 45ad67f2  
2a88076a b9aec253 a5a3a516 ccad2fbe  
a42cadba e30bf6c2 aa703cd3 695518e1  
c4f6f888 cf629e57 62dc8c51 dc9747f  
c92d036e 094de7d2 ea3fe4a3 0c22155f  
bfe70c6e 1e745bb6 abb91e04 a7656a20  
773b75d5 5f7d19f1 14abc27a a5e1ce69  
67f89608 3e6c1007 f2ebf605 4fc5c232  
5d01cd89 a2c6db1b b6948a6c 2e8a299c  
0c796b4e 616befeb b61b6650 a4f3e408  
fac50aa6 57b9ca64 a3d41f31 5ced2a2f  
98e34939 5ad7fb9e 7b953c74 e85c5055  
54576af8 a3bce393 c27354b0 5e1ace6d  
876fb1e0 760337ec b476e85a 6589075e  
508283d3 8b83e0a4 4bf4b1b7 50daa6

---

*Sample Data*

### 1.2.12 Sample Data 12 (3-DH5, M --> S)

Payl oad byte l engh t: 3fd  
K: 7b04934f d9d25294 ef1a014d a094f0b5  
Payl oad counter: 006267f78b  
Zero-l engh t ACL-U Continuation: 0  
Di recti on: 0  
I ni tial i zati on vector: 74ca58e8 b136986f  
LT\_ADDR: 1  
Packet Type: f  
LLID: 2  
Payl oad: 6d42614c 50694940 209c8bd5 5be57733  
3ec1066a 76cb602e a58ced25 f98ceb94  
58bc3db4 e7c46bb9 e23f9220 68bfca00  
c1da8f08 1c10e526 0ea37fab 3d91be9f  
3a4e68e9 006cca11 fdc76c59 1e20769d  
e1e34385 af105dab 4d44eda7 eacd1974  
5414d5a9 568d67af c05aedd9 6726a130  
7ebe31fd 81881237 c953d2a5 42c57c3b  
019691ef 911953fb 39264712 c61e3e5e  
21286421 85891af5 bf8ca291 59c30596  
11bbe5cd 8f88a7bb b8af34a 4211eed5  
850ca781 cc9cf5b9 06d5fcfd 79d35981  
39a1a239 2965b0d5 c6c03a9f e22433ba  
08e7aac7 7d207392 b3486ead dd5c81c6  
5454d575 edd91892 0a2f0fe9 f6d5c037  
fec1272e f22c9aa0 d02b3412 81f60847  
887cd303 a82937cf ded4be2d 139342ce  
bd09041a f5eaa675 4307eb2d 20a60f7b  
1b944afe e3ae1a6f 476021c7 d30d300e  
44f9eaa2 42e8cb7a 6d74d5b5 0f2d6c1b  
d436f44f 1ddf8579 70821a65 117e1200  
e0270f00 7cbe6bb2 020ec332 bc464299  
20131eb1 e8864206 3b4a8324 522cfe0a  
a5209fd7 3f11a1e0 da00c945 835b6b5f  
ec9eaea9 9d177dc0 cbd2efe8 21b388c3  
78b2e137 c84f37a4 5599ffc0 a9106204  
5ed1439f 7e67ea1d 6ab024f7 247e85df  
bf15d19c b0f488d2 cb06bed9 644ec34c  
2e69f752 4af38319 81c7556e 359bfaf5  
22a00878 4ce3e7e2 362698ea 6c00001d  
fdf0936d 2cf7a318 ed4f0447 ad506cdd  
c2fcf8b7 328bb527 063859b5 f60819d3  
eebdd291 0a12c6af 1c670a30 38fd9e2c  
4a6a3ad7 a51982bd 8d4fabf5 a8c16517  
831661b0 09405052 9fba337b 2b3544cf  
6811a761 093afd66 8b154a21 a5941b88  
a482c5ce f04b18c1 c2e67d7d f90c3a4d  
d4ee12fe 4b734174 d3ee8b0c 1ade74eb  
237710da 4694764b 7cce26c4 7a2570bf  
30bb18c7 6571ab05 26892de7 b5d62840  
7f300971 14d6014b 2ca566b3 d6ad1ef5  
96e552e6 defc287e 6a5a5c16 be31d26a  
392e1570 a9f9e0b3 32d223e5 b15407f3  
41cc55f8 3296f3f5 175ebece 580a3f24  
49494406 fa75e051 c829441b ce7cba98

*Sample Data*

cb7ea85d 8031787d 9495b971 c6925f64  
 2726ef05 932d3f1a 14a9bd1a d88a9b31  
 6f54d80e 9fe31dcf c94c1f6a 92cc2c82  
 60bd9296 e075b884 2976b667 041800df  
 520e7a28 e5b9314a 0bb93966 1aba4643  
 829544e2 d69f255c ce5bfa89 9a4704f3  
 be803081 fbc36f5c 65fb13c8 69fc770a  
 07cbc8ff 50b8dbe3 b171e9f9 ebc8cf22  
 49127607 32973806 95979b3c d75a3f8f  
 f933a408 d4945f63 96755d6e 493b554b  
 58e78f5b a21d31b3 bbdccdf62 83e94233  
 15a3bea8 3a6ff73f f02809da 3c6d8208  
 acfd6f05 b62bb5a5 91f1e4d5 4b84d357  
 2f00672a 3e3c434c 1736072b 45f6370c  
 bb46706b 56a57e86 3ed2217a 816e5c09  
 1e2895f7 89b57c5e c0a67011 d5f2f69d  
 6dac3941 3bc897dc cb42d3bc ffda31e0  
 e961f3fb e4f40041 69e86cc0 530e891c  
 7665902a 1ce0804c 921780ae e2

B0: 498bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca7403fd  
 B1: 00790200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
 B2: 6d42614c 50694940 209c8bd5 5be57733  
 B3: 3ec1066a 76cb602e a58ced25 f98ceb94  
 B4: 58bc3db4 e7c46bb9 e23f9220 68bfca00  
 B5: c1da8f08 1c10e526 0ea37fab 3d91be9f  
 B6: 3a4e68e9 006cca11 fdc76c59 1e20769d  
 B7: e1e34385 af105dab 4d44eda7 eacd1974  
 B8: 5414d5a9 568d67af c05aedd9 6726a130  
 B9: 7ebe31fd 81881237 c953d2a5 42c57c3b  
 B10: 019691ef 911953fb 39264712 c61e3e5e  
 B11: 21286421 85891af5 bf8ca291 59c30596  
 B12: 11bbe5cd 8f88a7bb b8af34a 4211eed5  
 B13: 850ca781 cc9cf5b9 06d5fcfd 79d35981  
 B14: 39a1a239 2965b0d5 c6c03a9f e22433ba  
 B15: 08e7aac7 7d207392 b3486ead dd5c81c6  
 B16: 5454d575 edd91892 0a2f0fe9 f6d5c037  
 B17: fec1272e f22c9aa0 d02b3412 81f60847  
 B18: 887cd303 a82937cf ded4be2d 139342ce  
 B19: bd09041a f5eaa675 4307eb2d 20a60f7b  
 B20: 1b944afe e3ae1a6f 476021c7 d30d300e  
 B21: 44f9eaa2 42e8cb7a 6d74d5b5 0f2d6c1b  
 B22: d436f44f 1ddf8579 70821a65 117e1200  
 B23: e0270f00 7cbe6bb2 020ec332 bc464299  
 B24: 20131eb1 e8864206 3b4a8324 522cfe0a  
 B25: a5209fd7 3f11a1e0 da00c945 835b6b5f  
 B26: ec9eaea9 9d177dc0 cbd2efe8 21b388c3  
 B27: 78b2e137 c84f37a4 5599ffc0 a9106204  
 B28: 5ed1439f 7e67ea1d 6ab024f7 247e85df  
 B29: bf15d19c b0f488d2 cb06bed9 644ec34c  
 B30: 2e69f752 4af38319 81c7556e 359bfaf5  
 B31: 22a00878 4ce3e7e2 362698ea 6c00001d  
 B32: fdf0936d 2cf7a318 ed4f0447 ad506cdd  
 B33: c2fcf8b7 328bb527 063859b5 f60819d3  
 B34: eebdd291 0a12c6af 1c670a30 38fd9e2c  
 B35: 4a6a3ad7 a51982bd 8d4fabf5 a8c16517  
 B36: 831661b0 09405052 9fba337b 2b3544cf

*Sample Data*

B37: 6811a761 093afd66 8b154a21 a5941b88  
 B38: a482c5ce f04b18c1 c2e67d7d f90c3a4d  
 B39: d4ee12fe 4b734174 d3ee8b0c 1ade74eb  
 B40: 237710da 4694764b 7cce26c4 7a2570bf  
 B41: 30bb18c7 6571ab05 26892de7 b5d62840  
 B42: 7f300971 14d6014b 2ca566b3 d6ad1ef5  
 B43: 96e552e6 defc287e 6a5a5c16 be31d26a  
 B44: 392e1570 a9f9e0b3 32d223e5 b15407f3  
 B45: 41cc55f8 3296f3f5 175ebece 580a3f24  
 B46: 49494406 fa75e051 c829441b ce7cba98  
 B47: cb7ea85d 8031787d 9495b971 c6925f64  
 B48: 2726ef05 932d3f1a 14a9bd1a d88a9b31  
 B49: 6f54d80e 9fe31dcf c94c1f6a 92cc2c82  
 B50: 60bd9296 e075b884 2976b667 041800df  
 B51: 520e7a28 e5b9314a 0bb93966 1aba4643  
 B52: 829544e2 d69f255c ce5bfa89 9a4704f3  
 B53: be803081 fbc36f5c 65fb13c8 69fc770a  
 B54: 07cbc8ff 50b8dbe3 b171e9f9 ebc8cf22  
 B55: 49127607 32973806 95979b3c d75a3f8f  
 B56: f933a408 d4945f63 96755d6e 493b554b  
 B57: 58e78f5b a21d31b3 bbcdff62 83e94233  
 B58: 15a3bea8 3a6ff73f f02809da 3c6d8208  
 B59: acfd6f05 b62bb5a5 91f1e4d5 4b84d357  
 B60: 2f00672a 3e3c434c 1736072b 45f6370c  
 B61: bb46706b 56a57e86 3ed2217a 816e5c09  
 B62: 1e2895f7 89b57c5e c0a67011 d5f2f69d  
 B63: 6dac3941 3bc897dc cb42d3bc ffda31e0  
 B64: e961f3fb e4f40041 69e86cc0 530e891c  
 B65: 7665902a 1ce0804c 921780ae e2000000

Y0: ebe10d25 4ab27e31 1ea87d16 867d7904  
 Y1: 99b84ef8 a25d519e 700f76f1 85a74583  
 Y2: 23fd3478 f96bdd9 dd2e7ded 25f2515e  
 Y3: 5659d15b 1b569b1f 298f4430 7459cbe0  
 Y4: d0e6d2f8 939e7c9d 3774cf46 642295ce  
 Y5: 7e6662bc 99ec7ecc d985ddd4 d2365187  
 Y6: 421bb569 a5f4d07a 5157fed4 db03f630  
 Y7: 9fa62969 f43263b1 ac3e269f 15b844ff  
 Y8: a36e0d50 b75b2feb 45d8c9ee 052f33e4  
 Y9: 6245ece7 0ad0e314 2ce6ad6b f406b745  
 Y10: 41ff1de6 e1b3ccce eb6cfb07 fd150751  
 Y11: 43cae883 dd43266d 2f717cd4 b7c777ba  
 Y12: 92e3f4b7 bc4b8613 38c0043b 6885fbfb  
 Y13: b1595644 ec0a8e4e 803994e6 f3d284c5  
 Y14: e9f7ec01 c4f11349 a5f0a3aa efe88c98  
 Y15: 8c48cadc 7483c350 c11b6cb4 b8f32b25  
 Y16: b76f72f5 d54da8e0 b70bcaaee 0727f4ed  
 Y17: b700d8e8 585256f8 38530196 ef3a4a6e  
 Y18: e0a0f7f0 8f252298 48f8e404 ff4d9f93  
 Y19: aea86952 8f028974 d890f4e5 52e6da13  
 Y20: 36566635 1c0a0078 9ee4499b d30ac682  
 Y21: 886e6fcb 9e9fe3e8 dbfa13ae 7d1e44a7  
 Y22: 43c5285e de2846da 266a4720 cbd3713e  
 Y23: 52c47b3e d9a6666e 566eaba7 9275a90f  
 Y24: ac04ee00 56922a78 5f48347a 3a2360f7  
 Y25: 33b5496f 546e71f0 80272f6a d189898a  
 Y26: 5519cbaf ff8fe542 4934f09a 39584456

*Sample Data*

Y27: 913a3746 5e6ad4c1 7fce844c f72dc1d8  
 Y28: 46cef034 a103a8f4 ac13040c 6c466b4b  
 Y29: 6cbffa5e 2dff5b95 87ba863b 26eab593  
 Y30: f3dbf258 03f21f71 4d03c4a2 7be84598  
 Y31: b3c7f849 ab6e9612 e9ece9d5 57c4c813  
 Y32: 39043423 c60f8fd8 2c108055 6f387c76  
 Y33: f9dd8872 1fa6f4f4 e5345613 fd5495fd  
 Y34: cf3d7135 63d2ccfd 41507bd0 fe759830  
 Y35: 8215cff7 93ae5d92 446fb102 632b4fb8  
 Y36: 8b02ecb6 fcc063f6 fb41e34a 19afdb3a  
 Y37: 982e82d3 171d9fb0 ab5b8fbf 17dc00d2  
 Y38: 2dc18652 f4818748 e3c5fe0e 36b47716  
 Y39: e6eaef36 46e56552 8ed8c309 ea46ba7f  
 Y40: 40842220 827424b0 b2f7d5cf b201b5e4  
 Y41: 5153e29d bc85bafb 36dea69c ec1f1a43  
 Y42: 08614ff3 44d96b3a f5b9e763 5600b69c  
 Y43: 2550a964 b17af58b 1843199b 1394de57  
 Y44: 11cda830 619505fa 49d971c9 c8051abb  
 Y45: d73824df 17b8cccc2 b52ba9ea ff6f6097  
 Y46: 100d3219 3486065d 9e7e7ebd 235c34c1  
 Y47: 440e8fbf e2af1797 2fa75056 2e1941d4  
 Y48: 91eb5850 4d92d2b8 a64b0e8e 34cf38ef  
 Y49: 715b4924 0a081cee 2509e363 c746ba6b  
 Y50: 1cc42047 e5fa2dfb 1c0901f0 a01676c5  
 Y51: 2634d6db 62d0d5b7 328c5278 6d44b7b1  
 Y52: 79a0548c 8589f663 323c1604 6af753a8  
 Y53: e0ba54a0 412e68c1 13c5daf1 8a6e275a  
 Y54: a1a5e608 3359873b cfb66476 052fcbb9  
 Y55: ce70f15c f2971ebe 7c2d1e3c a288f591  
 Y56: d9a64946 58968fda 4756668d a5b82b89  
 Y57: 0c2d5786 6ae786a6 03c6db95 6d26186a  
 Y58: 00732c24 192905a4 3edaeb0d cc3d4a95  
 Y59: ae9a2e1c 042112df 4578395b cba685b1  
 Y60: 50fdc48d 0af8812c b3e64e85 3316b083  
 Y61: d2c14e67 888a7401 85bd5b91 37d6977a  
 Y62: 4b882e82 ca8338bb 2278c4d3 8d07f474  
 Y63: 4bf051e5 19bc961e 38c52cae 50e61d87  
 Y64: 657025a1 064ec7d6 e1d16bc0 049931bf  
 Y65: 6de9dbe8 c5a2ed24 66701ea3 4caee13e

T: 6de9dbe8

CTR0: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740000  
 CTR1: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740001  
 CTR2: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740002  
 CTR3: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740003  
 CTR4: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740004  
 CTR5: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740005  
 CTR6: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740006  
 CTR7: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740007  
 CTR8: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740008  
 CTR9: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740009  
 CTR10: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000a  
 CTR11: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000b  
 CTR12: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000c  
 CTR13: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000d  
 CTR14: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000e

*Sample Data*

CTR15: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74000f  
CTR16: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740010  
CTR17: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740011  
CTR18: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740012  
CTR19: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740013  
CTR20: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740014  
CTR21: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740015  
CTR22: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740016  
CTR23: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740017  
CTR24: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740018  
CTR25: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740019  
CTR26: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74001a  
  
CTR27: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74001b  
CTR28: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74001c  
CTR29: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74001d  
CTR30: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74001e  
CTR31: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74001f  
CTR32: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740020  
CTR33: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740021  
CTR34: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740022  
CTR35: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740023  
CTR36: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740024  
CTR37: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740025  
CTR38: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740026  
CTR39: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740027  
CTR40: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740028  
CTR41: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740029  
CTR42: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74002a  
CTR43: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74002b  
CTR44: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74002c  
CTR45: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74002d  
CTR46: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74002e  
CTR47: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74002f  
CTR48: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740030  
CTR49: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740031  
CTR50: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740032  
CTR51: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740033  
CTR52: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740034  
CTR53: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740035  
CTR54: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740036  
CTR55: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740037  
CTR56: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740038  
CTR57: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740039  
CTR58: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74003a  
CTR59: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74003b  
CTR60: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74003c  
CTR61: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74003d  
CTR62: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74003e  
CTR63: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca74003f  
CTR64: 018bf767 62006f98 36b1e858 ca740040  
  
S0: 254593c4 cd12c6a7 d9dec572 95524b75  
S1: af492e65 ca391b26 e8ce9653 498ed0de  
S2: 869271ed ac79c1bc 3cf0f959 c2711f3b  
S3: 31554cb7 aa9b1dfb 24ba8b26 eab59ad8  
S4: 7cb39415 9dce80e6 0ac0e5e0 9667747e

*Sample Data*

S5: 9727b319 ccbcc251 d539fd08 497942c8  
S6: bd972408 212a147c 3eb66687 1488e2d9  
S7: aef3e149 6b4e615b 309a7f93 53ca2981  
S8: 6b276914 1d957bec 4c87e76d ee681e76  
S9: a2df383f ecece9b0d 4553f2e8 6f8b6035  
S10: 11dac6bc c4177830 c7038ee1 e6cb0579  
S11: 30bfd1cf 7fa95155 7c0757bf f14840a0  
S12: 2315682b 1f4cb1f6 10fd4365 4d9b6155  
S13: 7f4aa2fd 211bbc18 9ff3dc07 c8102220  
S14: a072aa38 70e32a62 f7214fb1 97dbfbfd  
S15: f7c2b622 96a1f9e1 d3e7837f 293f6e86  
S16: e63dc9fd 830944d5 b9fa2257 b0e19402  
S17: eceef697 e76f671f 5e7e8c6e ae43f63b  
S18: a9bcccd3a 4ae6b498 40a6ead6 cd6200a8  
S19: 2b624b6b f923eb0f 110ff341 4b1ab902  
S20: a47db290 f068ca62 c9236eec ddb431f4  
S21: a4ad3dc5 7e324250 1938950e 7b3827fd  
S22: 364c32d8 35f63c05 5c8f32dd e560cc8f  
S23: f2fd81dc cd12d0cc 2e4f7834 43a74630  
S24: 7875bf58 8a162375 b25069d6 b82f4f36  
S25: a66bb2d0 43870301 47dbe7f1 92f04b34  
S26: 52b87f3e 796b208e 5a0f57c1 6de88c53  
S27: 312e84cd 8f627142 ffa9b6cd 56ce3c59  
S28: 6695a4dd 1e85cb05 c2070e7c fa16dd90  
S29: 10df7734 8a106a97 3b37c508 e54fc157  
S30: 54abd840 17756b69 0b7e187b ef5c8ea5  
S31: 0bf5f442 c3fecabd 64b313ca 9787f134  
S32: aaed31c5 98d1b73a ceaf242d 37b08fd4  
S33: 37946570 fcf94220 77cf63da 4781771b  
S34: ab5dd397 a7c0d893 7b17c1d2 eb9bc233  
S35: 7367b29c 0ecc6a76 1a3c5602 40ca2ca2  
S36: 6b593c6d f7485995 f36f1169 089c0be9  
S37: ffca503f cfb8848c 73e37041 508128a3  
S38: 444e1461 b95ef61a 90c93236 5aaa9fa8  
S39: 4099c123 717f86df 23e16eaf 7ed015df  
S40: 730217d1 28fa1af8 720864ad 99430469  
S41: 43e6b844 95068645 5aca15ed 1bc668a6  
S42: 9ee17b6a 65f56326 42e4b829 b5348945  
S43: acf20ec7 151b75f0 dd4023ba d099b71c  
S44: 41880777 e033c519 79eee51e 14a9246d  
S45: 02bb2b01 4981e028 ddb66c67 a7077a1b  
S46: db90a526 db75c631 d31af69d ef7b9082  
S47: fddfd45 35a30553 78f655cb eae4d1d3  
S48: 3472e976 3205e39b e8295a5d 9be10244  
S49:fbe961bd 23f25c70 c87cac28 157b55d1  
S50: 20a9174a 8da17e48 167086fd 5201ccbb  
S51: 390a62b8 90a669c1 b89476ac a46ee788  
S52: e354ab7f bd3afd7d 02361116 91afb21  
S53: cbe14419 ab1a4841 3155aaab e1d41a64  
S54: cf8fd9f8 8d63ce6a c4c81f7b 852a081f  
S55: c6abaae1 44875175 f239963a 194565d1  
S56: 8f420880 95982bda d1317139 e9ca663b  
S57: 5c7e5c2e 9a457be9 325620ed e0465cf7  
S58: f9eb32f4 e1804702 eaff74d1 dea8a295  
S59: eb66a965 5551f198 b13495a8 2200509c  
S60: a0ee623d 5562b3a6 2cea2c8d f60eb0d8  
S61: e7562630 9f7d5b7b 4da8effc e4a1e015

---

*Sample Data*

S62: fa1a5da9 7cdfed2b efd7b409 e065c33e  
S63: 238ac0b6 f00d1b5b 77b091cc f4a4fffc4  
S64: 533e37d7 b179b943 53511492 e4f58248

MI C: 48ac482c

Encrypted payload: c20b4f29 9a505266 c8521d86 126ba7ed  
b8537787 dab2a192 997c147c 3bfd4af  
69e97103 4d5f7642 c6851906 820a50d8  
bd691b1d 81de65c0 04639a4b abf6cae1  
ad69dbf0 ccd00840 28fe9151 57593455  
5c74678d 8e3a49d7 73f28b20 fe45fbad  
fae734e0 3dc306f4 f0c0924a 34ec88b1  
159958e9 9c1d69db 85d435c8 acad624d  
a349a9d0 7fd7c8f6 7c75b5fa a9955e6b  
30f2a29d 419e62c5 788f2c70 bf0800ef  
21043402 f021f6ee c4a884f5 b359ae75  
a619cfaa d3d0444f 1628bf88 344838d4  
46eb00c4 087e0cccd 5933e648 2a34119a  
a89500ff 0dc359f0 4469211c 4a877a3b  
a3966357 7b78e173 d9c88c96 dfeaeb1  
18fceed3 7125de75 69d11645 31179c45  
64922594 4f4650d0 80aa3243 bdd0b4f5  
14b5c920 bf0c12ed 03a101fb edc40fd3  
30f60195 1a8df160 566fd286 9817890c  
e0845832 b2800118 a457bb59 d2995def  
709bc98a 63edc729 69ba8f6b 6a4635fd  
d66b3dd8 494857b7 5e81f1ef 59268e16  
d2ee9f6d 259492ca 1505fb10 118bb83a  
dd55208f b5078295 6850a093 3b742469  
4af51c79 de907ec1 8c090819 b343c3f7  
2a0a9e09 b124172a 0f96a801 c4f8ee57  
6ffffc752 f1059b5f 9519923a 72b0b986  
d9807541 ae7143d7 0901b0a5 9e581edc  
3eb68066 c0e3e98e baf09066 d0d43ba2  
760bd038 5b968c8b 3d588091 835c8eb8  
f605672f ef0969a5 89fc178d 3ad79de9  
6811c972 aa5a021d c8977d98 c1b89607  
d929b7e1 f6eb848f 6ba869ea 7f7ce937  
e137e940 02d95a2e f6586a27 435aa724  
f071d32c 078c3a24 85866579 6bfff686d  
03489b0c fe72a4f3 787a5b48 ad081061  
5b4895f1 3ff39c4d b1050d3c a98d12ee  
90a0069f f22db76e 4327b93a 4074eb43  
63eed1f9 37ebf094 5f2f486b 04f56560  
43b90f16 4d8bb1fd 5481494a 2c952c29  
3cd6b135 81d0870e 766f735e cd6b7653  
0804298c bb094b58 28bee43f 0b055b2f  
95dc1bb7 bce29543 ef92005f 61cdb0ef  
0044528f d2a536ec 6eb05bd0 4ca31b49  
4bf26f07 b3f40079 159f287c 697bc083  
10ee0d7b 5b44be4c 478f4fec 29e9cfe6  
daf93540 a68e3a49 6c5fe8d1 326e4ae2  
5b263178 ade6fe54 21654537 092d2ec6  
9b54f32b c387e4f4 e10a1a4f 1163550e  
72a76d62 68184f02 1dc9bf9b 48bb8af8  
bb9f265a 46394c9d 76cf8c25 3e29e37b  
5dd49bfe 46f99221 67cd02de f853c82b

*Sample Data*

```

cc2a8ce6 fba293a2 80244352 0a1cd546
869dafff bff4f66c 515f8447 52703790
3f980ee9 90130e16 644ccb54 507e309a
d7a587db 37851a69 6afcae5b 6a232408
49dde286 a02a8cd6 c27e2937 dc2bdeff
55165df1 57abf2a7 7b0e9004 952c71c2
c466ce4f 6b6db2d4 a6029283 67f66790
1ba81256 03c7cd20 12380df7 7760ecd1
f97eb3c7 16c82725 8d0e9fed 31531688
97b664e8 47177af7 249567b5 1fbff2de
caeb334d 14f91b1a 1e58fd0c a7aa76d8
255ba7fd ad99390f c146943c 06

```

### 1.2.13 Sample Data 13 (3-DH5, S --> M)

```

Payload byte length: 3fd
K: 7b04934f d9d25294 ef1a014d a094f0b5
Payload counter: 006267f78b
Zero-length ACL-U Continuation: 0
Direction: 1
Initialization vector: 74ca58e8 b136986f
LT_ADDR: 1
Packet Type: f
LLID: 2
Payload: 6d42614c 50694940 209c8bd5 5be57733
3ec1066a 76cb602e a58ced25 f98ceb94
58bc3db4 e7c46bb9 e23f9220 68bfca00
c1da8f08 1c10e526 0ea37fab 3d91be9f
3a4e68e9 006cca11 fdc76c59 1e20769d
e1e34385 af105dab 4d44eda7 eacd1974
5414d5a9 568d67af c05aedd9 6726a130
7ebe31fd 81881237 c953d2a5 42c57c3b
019691ef 911953fb 39264712 c61e3e5e
21286421 85891af5 bf8ca291 59c30596
11bbe5cd 8f88a7bb b8af34a 4211eed5
850ca781 cc9cf5b9 06d5fcfd 79d35981
39a1a239 2965b0d5 c6c03a9f e22433ba
08e7aac7 7d207392 b3486ead dd5c81c6
5454d575 edd91892 0a2f0fe9 f6d5c037
fec1272e f22c9aa0 d02b3412 81f60847
887cd303 a82937cf ded4be2d 139342ce
bd09041a f5eaa675 4307eb2d 20a60f7b
1b944afe e3ae1a6f 476021c7 d30d300e
44f9eaa2 42e8cb7a 6d74d5b5 0f2d6c1b
d436f44f 1ddf8579 70821a65 117e1200
e0270f00 7cbe6bb2 020ec332 bc464299
20131eb1 e8864206 3b4a8324 522cfe0a
a5209fd7 3f11a1e0 da00c945 835b6b5f
ec9eaea9 9d177dc0 cbd2efe8 21b388c3
78b2e137 c84f37a4 5599ffc0 a9106204
5ed1439f 7e67ea1d 6ab024f7 247e85df
bf15d19c b0f488d2 cb06bed9 644ec34c
2e69f752 4af38319 81c7556e 359bfaf5
22a00878 4ce3e7e2 362698ea 6c00001d
fdf0936d 2cf7a318 ed4f0447 ad506cdd

```

*Sample Data*

c2fcf8b7 328bb527 063859b5 f60819d3  
 eebdd291 0a12c6af 1c670a30 38fd9e2c  
 4a6a3ad7 a51982bd 8d4fabf5 a8c16517  
 831661b0 09405052 9fba337b 2b3544cf  
 6811a761 093afd66 8b154a21 a5941b88  
 a482c5ce f04b18c1 c2e67d7d f90c3a4d  
 d4ee12fe 4b734174 d3ee8b0c 1ade74eb  
 237710da 4694764b 7cce26c4 7a2570bf  
 30bb18c7 6571ab05 26892de7 b5d62840  
 7f300971 14d6014b 2ca566b3 d6ad1ef5  
 96e552e6 defc287e 6a5a5c16 be31d26a  
 392e1570 a9f9e0b3 32d223e5 b15407f3  
 41cc55f8 3296f3f5 175ebece 580a3f24  
 49494406 fa75e051 c829441b ce7cba98  
 cb7ea85d 8031787d 9495b971 c6925f64  
 2726ef05 932d3f1a 14a9bd1a d88a9b31  
 6f54d80e 9fe31dcf c94c1f6a 92cc2c82  
 60bd9296 e075b884 2976b667 041800df  
 520e7a28 e5b9314a 0bb93966 1aba4643  
 829544e2 d69f255c ce5bfa89 9a4704f3  
 be803081 fbc36f5c 65fb13c8 69fc770a  
 07cbc8ff 50b8dbe3 b171e9f9 ebc8cf22  
 49127607 32973806 95979b3c d75a3f8f  
 f933a408 d4945f63 96755d6e 493b554b  
 58e78f5b a21d31b3 bbcdff62 83e94233  
 15a3bea8 3a6ff73f f02809da 3c6d8208  
 acfd6f05 b62bb5a5 91f1e4d5 4b84d357  
 2f00672a 3e3c434c 1736072b 45f6370c  
 bb46706b 56a57e86 3ed2217a 816e5c09  
 1e2895f7 89b57c5e c0a67011 d5f2f69d  
 6dac3941 3bc897dc cb42d3bc ffda31e0  
 e961f3fb e4f40041 69e86cc0 530e891c  
 7665902a 1ce0804c 921780ae e2

B0: 498bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca7403fd  
 B1: 00790200 00000000 00000000 00000000  
 B2: 6d42614c 50694940 209c8bd5 5be57733  
 B3: 3ec1066a 76cb602e a58ced25 f98ceb94  
 B4: 58bc3db4 e7c46bb9 e23f9220 68bfca00  
 B5: c1da8f08 1c10e526 0ea37fab 3d91be9f  
 B6: 3a4e68e9 006cca11 fdc76c59 1e20769d  
 B7: e1e34385 af105dab 4d44eda7 eacd1974  
 B8: 5414d5a9 568d67af c05aedd9 6726a130  
 B9: 7ebe31fd 81881237 c953d2a5 42c57c3b  
 B10: 019691ef 911953fb 39264712 c61e3e5e  
 B11: 21286421 85891af5 bf8ca291 59c30596  
 B12: 11bbe5cd 8f88a7bb b8af3d4a 4211eed5  
 B13: 850ca781 cc9cf5b9 06d5fcfd 79d35981  
 B14: 39a1a239 2965b0d5 c6c03a9f e22433ba  
 B15: 08e7aac7 7d207392 b3486ead dd5c81c6  
 B16: 5454d575 edd91892 0a2f0fe9 f6d5c037  
 B17: fec1272e f22c9aa0 d02b3412 81f60847  
 B18: 887cd303 a82937cf ded4be2d 139342ce  
 B19: bd09041a f5eaa675 4307eb2d 20a60f7b  
 B20: 1b944afe e3ae1a6f 476021c7 d30d300e  
 B21: 44f9eaa2 42e8cb7a 6d74d5b5 0f2d6c1b  
 B22: d436f44f 1ddf8579 70821a65 117e1200

*Sample Data*

B23: e0270f00 7cbe6bb2 020ec332 bc464299  
 B24: 20131eb1 e8864206 3b4a8324 522cfe0a  
 B25: a5209fd7 3f11a1e0 da00c945 835b6b5f  
 B26: ec9eaea9 9d177dc0 cbd2efef8 21b388c3  
 B27: 78b2e137 c84f37a4 5599fffc0 a9106204  
 B28: 5ed1439f 7e67ea1d 6ab024f7 247e85df  
 B29: bf15d19c b0f488d2 cb06bed9 644ec34c  
 B30: 2e69f752 4af38319 81c7556e 359bfaf5  
 B31: 22a00878 4ce3e7e2 362698ea 6c00001d  
 B32: fdf0936d 2cf7a318 ed4f0447 ad506cdd  
 B33: c2fcf8b7 328bb527 063859b5 f60819d3  
 B34: eebdd291 0a12c6af 1c670a30 38fd9e2c  
 B35: 4a6a3ad7 a51982bd 8d4fabf5 a8c16517  
 B36: 831661b0 09405052 9fba337b 2b3544cf  
 B37: 6811a761 093afd66 8b154a21 a5941b88  
 B38: a482c5ce f04b18c1 c2e67d7d f90c3a4d  
 B39: d4ee12fe 4b734174 d3ee8b0c 1ade74eb  
 B40: 237710da 4694764b 7cce26c4 7a2570bf  
 B41: 30bb18c7 6571ab05 26892de7 b5d62840  
 B42: 7f300971 14d6014b 2ca566b3 d6ad1ef5  
 B43: 96e552e6 defc287e 6a5a5c16 be31d26a  
 B44: 392e1570 a9f9e0b3 32d223e5 b15407f3  
 B45: 41cc55f8 3296f3f5 175ebece 580a3f24  
 B46: 49494406 fa75e051 c829441b ce7cba98  
 B47: cb7ea85d 8031787d 9495b971 c6925f64  
 B48: 2726ef05 932d3f1a 14a9bd1a d88a9b31  
 B49: 6f54d80e 9fe31dcf c94c1f6a 92cc2c82  
 B50: 60bd9296 e075b884 2976b667 041800df  
 B51: 520e7a28 e5b9314a 0bb93966 1aba4643  
 B52: 829544e2 d69f255c ce5bfa89 9a4704f3  
 B53: be803081 fbc36f5c 65fb13c8 69fc770a  
 B54: 07cbc8ff 50b8dbe3 b171e9f9 ebc8cf22  
 B55: 49127607 32973806 95979b3c d75a3f8f  
 B56: f933a408 d4945f63 96755d6e 493b554b  
 B57: 58e78f5b a21d31b3 bbcdff62 83e94233  
 B58: 15a3bea8 3a6ff73f f02809da 3c6d8208  
 B59: acfd6f05 b62bb5a5 91f1e4d5 4b84d357  
 B60: 2f00672a 3e3c434c 1736072b 45f6370c  
 B61: bb46706b 56a57e86 3ed2217a 816e5c09  
 B62: 1e2895f7 89b57c5e c0a67011 d5f2f69d  
 B63: 6dac3941 3bc897dc cb42d3bc ffda31e0  
 B64: e961f3fb e4f40041 69e86cc0 530e891c  
 B65: 7665902a 1ce0804c 921780ae e2000000

Y0: b7b63a11 d2ff710c 5d821353 120fe064  
 Y1: 31635446 16989968 dbd392df 77ab44b2  
 Y2: fe667b06 7ef88846 a74b5119 476c5ca9  
 Y3: 03db41e6 902e40ff fa6d86e6 92a2c630  
 Y4: 0a1c2366 e55a2cd0 701fe43d 34becee0  
 Y5: 8e8c6fd4 dfb9071b 3feb7938 defa835e  
 Y6: 61b2fe53 6f876519 43698e8d f7ca327e  
 Y7: 3705a0c3 39989f81 377afb1b d9f01569  
 Y8: d96211f1 959c7a64 3ee0a727 b4ad2ae2  
 Y9: 7cdc85ed d204d4ce 33665710 bcd4f7f1  
 Y10: 9a6d0fed cfde263e 62eddf28 fab38c98  
 Y11: 98915f60 f70cc4df 74ac9931 1a4f2990  
 Y12: 4a88113a 754243af c00324ef 117678f7

*Sample Data*

Y13: a0f620c0 b3a903fa 648210ef 63eef46f  
Y14: f526db99 20291004 225a762f 129e58ff  
Y15: 8ee96b03 494a8b18 1e1194b7 babb8a27  
Y16: 59b69b74 0455f2ac 65f9c651 34ceae70  
Y17: 9c0a2ee9 64e57ffb 57bcd10d f3c8a567  
Y18: ee339202 c09ff61a 72fc2a2f 183b370e  
Y19: 57b1bac2 63769a7b db0eac84 6b49aca4  
Y20: 20e3786a e9526a50 cdc9dcc5 c579a3bf  
Y21: 6bc61121 214dd538 aa3cc0a3 9abab72a  
Y22: 5a42d758 fb854450 55199e78 ba42ca62  
Y23: fc9cf1f6 58691ce8 01ca2501 25223403  
Y24: cfa5ab4f 90431bc8 f832f148 db633e8e  
Y25: 7254ae54 60a7dcbd 3470df60 7af3c1ca  
Y26: 436205c4 763e68ab 390907e2 da236e8d  
Y27: 6738b5db e1b8b739 d5ecc0d 47ab511c  
Y28: 65a1dd1e f661d376 1c917ea7 f171dc7e  
Y29: 55a82897 a7d19703 87e783cd 52ddecd8  
Y30: 7e0ae507 5c9b8dc1 e4981e02 377472b5  
Y31: 035d4dd3 493a84b5 0c2bd3ae 2f9f728b  
Y32: 34441d1c cd9400d9 164c74b3 5021a97e  
Y33: 4c5c3051 0c1d8571 782993c0 3a7a9e13  
Y34: 63453300 3bc6cc3d 53a36db3 79f2b047  
Y35: e3630826 7ac4040c b087d657 953a4560  
Y36: 967ef5bd bf821572 466bf00f aefd751b  
Y37: 4f19c371 c5da0b9f 4bc55452 05dab223  
Y38: 6fa54807 d40a41ca 3c41bf6a 890d56c9  
Y39: fb2d42e7 013c1e0d 17aa1e01 090fe190  
Y40: f6104499 02efdc76 6cae97b7 f27d8765  
Y41: 5d9ebc6d 22b48c7c 276b9670 636433cb  
Y42: d85fb261 60c02b6d 348e6616 8d79f268  
Y43: c66ab5e0 7fc159dd 07f41e8d 511989d0  
Y44: e18f58b0 c831550b 2aa0f002 51899793  
Y45: c36620e2 7a396916 74cc358f 36d4ae68  
Y46: 6b1cb137 b69d021f 764150fd 5b29744f  
Y47: cc3b7f27 a69a9666 6919d755 6893a18f  
Y48: b1e1c8f8 936c88d1 b2540bf8 e82032d9  
Y49: 045ad0f2 638df0e6 79357e37 0240dd8a  
Y50: 455f563e 5cf94329 a4efbede ac30d09f  
Y51: f6e8f947 ec78897c 96fe5879 a1519ede  
Y52: f2a0a601 d7765bb7 0a41a0b6 fae10c36  
Y53: 86bcc098 bcd1e930 7b008ec5 6c027ccb  
Y54: 8f0f380b c973be6a c88d8a4d 45f86b0c  
Y55: 2b5ca348 5bb4015a e9b907f6 1cc77400  
Y56: a2755ca8 2c52702b ed08736d ef68938a  
Y57: d92292d5 0a0cf7cd 79d95799 6c6dff88  
Y58: 469d1262 83afb58c 9810c732 a4a36a79  
Y59: bb563499 7ca1c960 8357c393 60148fff  
Y60: 83e8dbc7 67e501de 080aac2d 0501b9ec  
Y61: 956f13a2 c14f9476 d268896c f24ed47a  
Y62: 1dfcb90c 4b088e40 830784fe f9dbe7c6  
Y63: e7c8898d 9c033db9 117191d0 57d0d5cb  
Y64: 6a187312 e7bc05cc bd8e8199 e9e7348d  
Y65: 682ec5d4 8fec944f 0e02eeb0 bcf11786

T: 682ec5d4

CTR0: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740000

*Sample Data*

CTR1: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740001  
CTR2: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740002  
CTR3: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740003  
CTR4: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740004  
CTR5: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740005  
CTR6: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740006  
CTR7: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740007  
CTR8: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740008  
CTR9: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740009  
CTR10: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000a  
CTR11: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000b  
CTR12: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000c  
CTR13: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000d  
CTR14: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000e  
CTR15: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74000f  
CTR16: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740010  
CTR17: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740011  
CTR18: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740012  
CTR19: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740013  
CTR20: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740014  
CTR21: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740015  
CTR22: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740016  
CTR23: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740017  
CTR24: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740018  
CTR25: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740019  
CTR26: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74001a  
CTR27: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74001b  
CTR28: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74001c  
CTR29: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74001d  
CTR30: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74001e  
CTR31: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74001f  
CTR32: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740020  
CTR33: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740021  
CTR34: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740022  
CTR35: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740023  
CTR36: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740024  
CTR37: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740025  
CTR38: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740026  
CTR39: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740027  
CTR40: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740028  
CTR41: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740029  
CTR42: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74002a  
CTR43: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74002b  
CTR44: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74002c  
CTR45: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74002d  
CTR46: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74002e  
CTR47: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74002f  
CTR48: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740030  
CTR49: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740031  
CTR50: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740032  
CTR51: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740033  
CTR52: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740034  
CTR53: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740035  
CTR54: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740036  
CTR55: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740037  
CTR56: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740038  
CTR57: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740039

*Sample Data*

CTR58: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74003a  
CTR59: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74003b  
CTR60: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74003c  
CTR61: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74003d  
CTR62: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74003e  
CTR63: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca74003f  
CTR64: 018bf767 62206f98 36b1e858 ca740040

S0: 1404487a 919e16c8 b3245d80 2b364231  
S1: 82082cbc 57038db7 4823be9a 34e0a8d7  
S2: 1b5f7526 d26fe763 7669dfee 63743d3a  
S3: a3673258 5020c6cd d72bf517 accb632d  
S4: 8a60ebb6 59c59ac1 a45a1ffd f54f7cd7  
S5: 036f35c7 130c8a30 25e9da14 706df5bc  
S6: e328cbb0 09c91d56 f010b40e e0fc5c3f  
S7: 626d3d67 b53eb139 e155c9a2 df407b17  
S8: d94e430b 829c7caf 289d2898 3c68aa5a  
S9: d6343452 d92cb1ac b3fde90b e2f0789f  
S10: 8ab8413c 0df18adf ae07a74f 82b3c91f  
S11: 61bfac52 125b8fc4 eaac30f7 5a543821  
S12: 68899f8f 2892931d 88b08926 7fa3cfc9  
S13: 86b668c5 4ef24455 22a45f42 61aea816  
S14: f57b4941 8332f0b3 7749ea30 53a711ee  
S15: 593562a8 45c75a7c 70030f08 6fedd965  
S16: f85e742f a743f353 6a22b384 be1dabdc  
S17: ed7e317b 635deed3 e8b619f2 9bc65eb0  
S18: 2035622d 94718ad6 c1631fa2 755883f4  
S19: 40f50638 ad826c4a 3ca4fb88 467445ae  
S20: e27eb632 0c2aee5c 9210b1c7 736fb897  
S21: 711a9be3 c7054fa5 82ec70b6 028489e7  
S22: 7b543081 c52e2cba 26400e6b 46642d0d  
S23: d9564733 01fa7fae 7cfac2a7 239639e2  
S24: 202ed696 6fbc2ecf f0982979 25bef3ea  
S25: e2148e71 5935e2a5 bd175ee9 a799a549  
S26: 77310821 6671e6dc 3a121369 a557aa4f  
S27: 6d6c2659 06036f0c 1cec57ed 4a36158d  
S28: b216aab3 be06fde0 262ae2ea e81cd2e5  
S29: 0b56812e 52b653f9 0e27362e dd7dcbd4  
S30: df590fb5 d38ea1cd f8eb2d5b 3d474253  
S31: 6493924c 073da4bf d5658181 48b52d76  
S32: e8491efc f7d18b0a 027f656e c6886a7d  
S33: eb26ca54 5d221211 73a037ec e43053e9  
S34: fa2f9edf 4e9d9c1c aa6e786c e743c1c0  
S35: cf833d58 0d508e0e da69560a 66d3c03b  
S36: f5922c3b 4382f00f 9b64ebb1 b2accbb0  
S37: 9a3faaeb 69fdb9e1 3a025f2d 299c177e  
S38: 376d0236 76cfe2b1 1c0e342a afe6418b  
S39: 1d2a5ab1 7dc816ee 6c37e855 07f11bd7  
S40: c33e7e9f 7669ad90 44625f47 1155c411  
S41: bae0615e 9d48b215 0b9e7065 04b09ef7  
S42: 606e0db2 17e5251d ba08c3db f20915fd  
S43: f28282de b65b5dcc 0b88f0d0 20fa4810  
S44: 701e67ab aa5af6c2 1bf15c6f ea339a58  
S45: bd5176ce 91b3298f fe989ff0 c6ff991f  
S46: 9eb857c4 bfec9af6 b1c78acd f3aab69  
S47: 7acf2d7 217154f8 09cd5f4c 9728c6cc  
S48: 66b07ebe 3665809d 7b855491 4bf90528

*Sample Data*

S49: 91a82a7d f3744bd0 7fc8850c 08554c8d  
 S50: 0fa45385 3cca72db eaa031b2 65c9d590  
 S51: 2bf70aa1 dab678d7 f8d8a2b2 88dc22da  
 S52: 1633856d aacda2bb 94f1d66b 0f4ad876  
 S53: b09b906a ff48f724 b9524495 409a0a62  
 S54: 7cda29ed 1e6f903d b7a9f4c5 26c28530  
 S55: f5338a50 74e0c5ed 214c4380 70886009  
 S56: 9cd2fb3c f8e8d55f 93a10ccd f288eead  
 S57: 9f1b72ba 2e506062 9dcc02a2 a3536e0e  
 S58: ea50be8b e9ffe171 c6f64b44 1357e68e  
 S59: 5d3c94b8 ef4051ff 79cd4200 3d9a3208  
 S60: 14267f84 ee8d7e71 df5d46ec 361f1648  
 S61: 7871fd55 dbcbcfc6c 20c2902d 58935861  
 S62: 33b892d6 63807bf4 ddc0cc2b 3e037547  
 S63: 611a7ca9 85d3571a 1b6a0917 40795e7c  
 S64: ef6adb06 6b6cb075 5ac5a39a 08ae7e7b

MI C: 7c2a8dae

Encrypted payload: ef4a4df0 076ac4f7 68bf354f 6f05dfe4  
 259e734c a4a4874d d3e532cb 9af8d6ae  
 fbdb0fec b7e4ad74 35146737 c474a92d  
 4bba64be 45d57fe7 aaf96056 c8dec248  
 39215d2e 13604021 d82eb64d 6e4d8321  
 02cb8835 a6d940fd bd5459a9 0a31454b  
 3679e8ce e3b3d696 210f247b b866da27  
 a7f072f6 03146e98 e1cefa3d 7eadd661  
 d7a2a5bd 4835e257 8adbae19 24ee46c1  
 ab90251d 8878902a 118b05de db70cc89  
 7004499f 9dd3287f 5203e3bd 1845d6f4  
 ed85380e e40e66a4 8e6575cb 06709648  
 bf17caf9 6797f480 e46465dd 838a9bac  
 fd9ce386 fe128321 c401849d 8efb9028  
 0d61b7dd a81e42ee 7a2c00e1 99381952  
 069f5301 556f69f3 ba098796 3feba39b  
 6502e278 cb74d91c 3662a7df 88551c7e  
 9d3c6637 619b2ca3 8264f48f 55fe8c8f  
 5b614cc6 4e2c7625 7bc4da4f 957975a0  
 a6875c90 4ec22526 ff646472 7c42d48c  
 a52c6fac dadacad9 f26e6ad3 13fa9be7  
 9b733f81 b9904708 244ecd59 fa226f94  
 f9455982 e97c3da8 47b04183 71bac7e8  
 850e4941 50ad8f2f 2a98e03c a6e598b5  
 0e8a20d8 c4229f65 76c5b101 862a2d8a  
 0f83e916 ae3ed178 6f8beca9 0c47c84b  
 33bd65c6 78648511 765c731a 6e489052  
 0d037b2f 0ef27532 ed2c5c33 8c5211a9  
 253f767c 1845d0e0 8fe06340 e8e63121  
 fdf907cd 9f6d462f cecdb5b1 5147424e  
 99630121 2bca07a7 382a85c6 e5e541ab  
 2ab5e64b c55a3e2d 04473cdb 308073ae  
 059b18c5 5730d4be 6fc73ddc dcccdcdc5  
 b045a408 eb841ea1 2721d399 4f82a4d7  
 4c955ce8 0410de5c 45d36571 4de684f4  
 9d838b5a 4ab80d69 1071a190 1738d038  
 3ebd6b25 99b6a120 f8e42250 d0902d33  
 e38310c8 3dbca3c5 cfe0bf26 b5383560  
 3e5d4a6b 3b5c60a5 10f9ce91 7dd46b68

*Sample Data*

f3856658 13180695 62eb72a0 a483ec51  
 c5d0682f 899eb35e 273b16d6 d21d8002  
 f68b5f54 c9190d63 d0529fc4 4c38c797  
 cbac97ae 1fa2bd7f 395ad335 91ae4fe3  
 31d23253 98cc0537 0cafe2a1 b239a57c  
 f41832c8 6bc6c9de 36b1dbeb 08832387  
 55c6ff99 3fdde28b 255233bc 3538e20d  
 5de95dd2 b25c6be2 1d64e256 4fa25df4  
 09e4a6b0 a9869d52 b2c94fb9 d93529aa  
 f115b8eb 1301f354 56be336b 0c4d4c52  
 5daa29ad d9734391 e11908d4 7f7393d3  
 a9624e43 0c295d8b 3683583b 129b2629  
 a8b3b5ec 510ecde7 f10ac5a3 66b6af7c  
 b7505895 aff02cc7 0823ad6c ab52c540  
 35c85fea 2cf8a83b 223e6ff9 f198babf  
 0c002e58 a0749a8e b7391eee 39b33542  
 c4357467 5af5e4ec 286cd3af 7161ac9e  
 8ab8cc12 143f975d 6de40b78 9f3eec06  
 46add18e 5fd454d4 5707af91 58d335d9  
 723cf392 d17c12b3 6efb452b 786c0504  
 af600fef b82800f7 e18f6796 b7714a41  
 665968a2 527eb332 e064e03c 8d61aefc  
 5e14ab97 5848ec28 16821f97 c1d944a7  
 887b8f52 6127575b 728265d7 1377d760  
 990f4b2c 778c3039 c8d22334 ea

**1.2.14 Sample Data 14 (EV3)**

Payl oad byte l engh t: 1e  
 K: 972b7dc d be8942b7 d8fdc356 a5590aca  
 CLK[27: 1]: 030b5a8f  
 dayCounter: 061a  
 I n i t i a l i z a t i o n v e c t o r: 70b690bd dfe9630f  
 LT\_ADDR: 1  
 Packet Type: 7  
 Payl oad: 4625f778 578290f9 0ee83576 b3f8a898  
           faff3fe4 5db812b2 e189297a fd89  
 CTR0: 018f5a0b d3700f63 e9dfbd90 b6700000  
 CTR1: 018f5a0b d3700f63 e9dfbd90 b6700001  
 CTR2: 018f5a0b d3700f63 e9dfbd90 b6700002  
 Encrypted payl oad: 76637937 69b2ba4c 41704100 d6c4602a  
           dbae2a87 f77a9fdb a0c56d2c b532

## 2 FREQUENCY HOPPING SAMPLE DATA

---

The section contains three sets of sample data showing the basic and adapted hopping schemes for different combinations of addresses and initial clock values.

*Sample Data***2.1 FIRST SET**

Hop sequence {k} for PAGE SCAN/INQUIRY SCAN SUBSTATE:

CLKN start: 0x00000000

UAP / LAP: 0x00000000

#ticks:

	0000	1000	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000	
0x00000000:	0	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	
0x0008000:	16	18	20	22	24	26	28	30	
0x0010000:	32	34	36	38	40	42	44	46	
0x0018000:	48	50	52	54	56	58	60	62	
0x0020000:	0	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	
0x0028000:	16	18	20	22	24	26	28	30	
0x0030000:	32	34	36	38	40	42	44	46	
0x0038000:	48	50	52	54	56	58	60	62	

Hop sequence {k} for PAGE STATE/INQUIRY SUBSTATE:

CLKE start: 0x00000000

UAP / LAP: 0x00000000

#ticks:

	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0a	0b	0c	0d	0e	0f	
0x00000000:	48	50	09	13	52	54	41	45	56	58	11	15	60	62	43	47	
0x00000010:	00	02	64	68	04	06	17	21	08	10	66	70	12	14	19	23	
0x00000020:	48	50	09	13	52	54	41	45	56	58	11	15	60	62	43	47	
0x00000030:	00	02	64	68	04	06	17	21	08	10	66	70	12	14	19	23	
...																	
0x00010000:	48	18	09	05	20	22	33	37	24	26	03	07	28	30	35	39	
0x00010100:	32	34	72	76	36	38	25	29	40	42	74	78	44	46	27	31	
0x00010200:	48	18	09	05	20	22	33	37	24	26	03	07	28	30	35	39	
0x00010300:	32	34	72	76	36	38	25	29	40	42	74	78	44	46	27	31	
...																	
0x00020000:	16	18	01	05	52	54	41	45	56	58	11	15	60	62	43	47	
0x00020100:	00	02	64	68	04	06	17	21	08	10	66	70	12	14	19	23	
0x00020200:	16	18	01	05	52	54	41	45	56	58	11	15	60	62	43	47	
0x00020300:	00	02	64	68	04	06	17	21	08	10	66	70	12	14	19	23	
...																	
0x00030000:	48	50	09	13	52	22	41	37	24	26	03	07	28	30	35	39	
0x00030100:	32	34	72	76	36	38	25	29	40	42	74	78	44	46	27	31	
0x00030200:	48	50	09	13	52	22	41	37	24	26	03	07	28	30	35	39	
0x00030300:	32	34	72	76	36	38	25	29	40	42	74	78	44	46	27	31	

Hop sequence {k} for SLAVE PAGE RESPONSE SUBSTATE:

CLKN\* = 0x00000010

UAP / LAP: 0x00000000

#ticks:

	00	02	04	06	08	0a	0c	0e	10	12	14	16	18	1a	1c	1e	
0x00000012:	64	02	68	04	17	06	21	08	66	10	70	12	19	14	23	16	
0x00000032:	01	18	05	20	33	22	37	24	03	26	07	28	35	30	39	32	
0x00000052:	72	34	76	36	25	38	29	40	74	42	78	44	27	46	31	48	
0x00000072:	09	50	13	52	41	54	45	56	11	58	15	60	43	62	47	00	

Hop sequence {k} for MASTER PAGE RESPONSE SUBSTATE:

Offset value: 24

CLKE\* = 0x00000012

UAP / LAP: 0x00000000

#ticks:

	00	02	04	06	08	0a	0c	0e	10	12	14	16	18	1a	1c	1e	
0x00000014:	02	68	04	17	06	21	08	66	10	70	12	19	14	23	16	01	
0x00000034:	18	05	20	33	22	37	24	03	26	07	28	35	30	39	32	72	
0x00000054:	34	76	36	25	38	29	40	74	42	78	44	27	46	31	48	09	
0x00000074:	50	13	52	41	54	45	56	11	58	15	60	43	62	47	00	64	

*Sample Data*

Hop sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Basic channel hopping sequence; ie, non-AFH) :										
CLK start:	0x00000010									
UAP/LAP:	0x00000000									
#ticks:	00 02   04 06   08 0a   0c 0e   10 12   14 16   18 1a   1c 1e									
	-----									
0x00000010:	08 66	10 70	12 19	14 23	16 01	18 05	20 33	22 37		
0x00000030:	24 03	26 07	28 35	30 39	32 72	34 76	36 25	38 29		
0x00000050:	40 74	42 78	44 27	46 31	48 09	50 13	52 41	54 45		
0x00000070:	56 11	58 15	60 43	62 47	32 17	36 19	34 49	38 51		
0x00000090:	40 21	44 23	42 53	46 55	48 33	52 35	50 65	54 67		
0x000000b0:	56 37	60 39	58 69	62 71	64 25	68 27	66 57	70 59		
0x000000d0:	72 29	76 31	74 61	78 63	01 41	05 43	03 73	07 75		
0x000000f0:	09 45	13 47	11 77	15 00	64 49	66 53	68 02	70 06		
0x00000110:	01 51	03 55	05 04	07 08	72 57	74 61	76 10	78 14		
0x00000130:	09 59	11 63	13 12	15 16	17 65	19 69	21 18	23 22		
0x00000150:	33 67	35 71	37 20	39 24	25 73	27 77	29 26	31 30		
0x00000170:	41 75	43 00	45 28	47 32	17 02	21 04	19 34	23 36		
0x00000190:	33 06	37 08	35 38	39 40	25 10	29 12	27 42	31 44		
0x000001b0:	41 14	45 16	43 46	47 48	49 18	53 20	51 50	55 52		
0x000001d0:	65 22	69 24	67 54	71 56	57 26	61 28	59 58	63 60		
0x000001f0:	73 30	77 32	75 62	00 64	49 34	51 42	57 66	59 74		
0x00000210:	53 36	55 44	61 68	63 76	65 50	67 58	73 03	75 11		
0x00000230:	69 52	71 60	77 05	00 13	02 38	04 46	10 70	12 78		
0x00000250:	06 40	08 48	14 72	16 01	18 54	20 62	26 07	28 15		
0x00000270:	22 56	24 64	30 09	32 17	02 66	06 74	10 19	14 27		
0x00000290:	04 70	08 78	12 23	16 31	18 03	22 11	26 35	30 43		
0x000002b0:	20 07	24 15	28 39	32 47	34 68	38 76	42 21	46 29		
0x000002d0:	36 72	40 01	44 25	48 33	50 05	54 13	58 37	62 45		
0x000002f0:	52 09	56 17	60 41	64 49	34 19	36 35	50 51	52 67		
0x00000310:	38 21	40 37	54 53	56 69	42 27	44 43	58 59	60 75		
0x00000330:	46 29	48 45	62 61	64 77	66 23	68 39	03 55	05 71		
0x00000350:	70 25	72 41	07 57	09 73	74 31	76 47	11 63	13 00		
0x00000370:	78 33	01 49	15 65	17 02	66 51	70 67	03 04	07 20		
0x00000390:	68 55	72 71	05 08	09 24	74 59	78 75	11 12	15 28		
0x000003b0:	76 63	01 00	13 16	17 32	19 53	23 69	35 06	39 22		
0x000003d0:	21 57	25 73	37 10	41 26	27 61	31 77	43 14	47 30		
0x000003f0:	29 65	33 02	45 18	49 34	19 04	21 08	23 20	25 24		

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with all channel used; ie, AFH(79)):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x00000000

Used Channels: 0x7fffffff

#ticks:	00 02   04 06   08 0a   0c 0e   10 12   14 16   18 1a   1c 1e
0x00000010	08 08   10 10   12 12   14 14   16 16   18 18   20 20   22 22
0x00000030	24 24   26 26   28 28   30 30   32 32   34 34   36 36   38 38
0x00000050	40 40   42 42   44 44   46 46   48 48   50 50   52 52   54 54
0x00000070	56 56   58 58   60 60   62 62   32 32   36 36   34 34   38 38
0x00000090	40 40   44 44   42 42   46 46   48 48   52 52   50 50   54 54
0x000000b0	56 56   60 60   58 58   62 62   64 64   68 68   66 66   70 70
0x000000d0	72 72   76 76   74 74   78 78   01 01   05 05   03 03   07 07
0x000000f0	09 09   13 13   11 11   15 15   64 64   66 66   68 68   70 70
0x00000110	01 01   03 03   05 05   07 07   72 72   74 74   76 76   78 78
0x00000130	09 09   11 11   13 13   15 15   17 17   19 19   21 21   23 23
0x00000150	33 33   35 35   37 37   39 39   25 25   27 27   29 29   31 31
0x00000170	41 41   43 43   45 45   47 47   17 17   21 21   19 19   23 23
0x00000190	33 33   37 37   35 35   39 39   25 25   29 29   27 27   31 31
0x000001b0	41 41   45 45   43 43   47 47   49 49   53 53   51 51   55 55
0x000001d0	65 65   69 69   67 67   71 71   57 57   61 61   59 59   63 63
0x000001f0	73 73   77 77   75 75   00 00   49 49   51 51   57 57   59 59
0x00000210	53 53   55 55   61 61   63 63   65 65   67 67   73 73   75 75
0x00000230	69 69   71 71   77 77   00 00   02 02   04 04   10 10   12 12
0x00000250	06 06   08 08   14 14   16 16   18 18   20 20   26 26   28 28
0x00000270	22 22   24 24   30 30   32 32   02 02   06 06   10 10   14 14
0x00000290	04 04   08 08   12 12   16 16   18 18   22 22   26 26   30 30
0x000002b0	20 20   24 24   28 28   32 32   34 34   38 38   42 42   46 46
0x000002d0	36 36   40 40   44 44   48 48   50 50   54 54   58 58   62 62
0x000002f0	52 52   56 56   60 60   64 64   34 34   36 36   50 50   52 52
0x00000310	38 38   40 40   54 54   56 56   42 42   44 44   58 58   60 60
0x00000330	46 46   48 48   62 62   64 64   66 66   68 68   03 03   05 05
0x00000350	70 70   72 72   07 07   09 09   74 74   76 76   11 11   13 13
0x00000370	78 78   01 01   15 15   17 17   66 66   70 70   03 03   07 07
0x00000390	68 68   72 72   05 05   09 09   74 74   78 78   11 11   15 15
0x000003b0	76 76   01 01   13 13   17 17   19 19   23 23   35 35   39 39
0x000003d0	21 21   25 25   37 37   41 41   27 27   31 31   43 43   47 47
0x000003f0	29 29   33 33   45 45   49 49   19 19   21 21   23 23   25 25

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with channels 0 to 21 unused):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x00000000

Used Channels: 0x7fffffff000000

#ticks:	00 02   04 06   08 0a   0c 0e   10 12   14 16   18 1a   1c 1e
0x00000010	30 30   32 32   34 34   36 36   38 38   40 40   42 42   22 22
0x00000030	24 24   26 26   28 28   30 30   32 32   34 34   36 36   38 38
0x00000050	40 40   42 42   44 44   46 46   48 48   50 50   52 52   54 54
0x00000070	56 56   58 58   60 60   62 62   32 32   36 36   34 34   38 38
0x00000090	40 40   44 44   42 42   46 46   48 48   52 52   50 50   54 54
0x00000b0	56 56   60 60   58 58   62 62   64 64   68 68   66 66   70 70
0x00000d0	72 72   76 76   74 74   78 78   45 45   49 49   47 47   51 51
0x00000f0	53 53   57 57   55 55   59 59   64 64   66 66   68 68   70 70
0x0000110	45 45   47 47   49 49   51 51   72 72   74 74   76 76   78 78
0x0000130	53 53   55 55   57 57   59 59   61 61   63 63   65 65   23 23
0x0000150	33 33   35 35   37 37   39 39   25 25   27 27   29 29   31 31
0x0000170	41 41   43 43   45 45   47 47   61 61   65 65   63 63   23 23
0x0000190	33 33   37 37   35 35   39 39   25 25   29 29   27 27   31 31
0x00001b0	41 41   45 45   43 43   47 47   49 49   53 53   51 51   55 55
0x00001d0	65 65   69 69   67 67   71 71   57 57   61 61   59 59   63 63
0x00001f0	73 73   77 77   75 75   66 66   49 49   51 51   57 57   59 59
0x0000210	53 53   55 55   61 61   63 63   65 65   67 67   73 73   75 75
0x0000230	69 69   71 71   77 77   66 66   68 68   70 70   76 76   78 78
0x0000250	72 72   74 74   23 23   25 25   27 27   29 29   26 26   28 28
0x0000270	22 22   24 24   30 30   32 32   68 68   72 72   76 76   23 23
0x0000290	70 70   74 74   78 78   25 25   27 27   22 22   26 26   30 30
0x00002b0	29 29   24 24   28 28   32 32   34 34   38 38   42 42   46 46
0x00002d0	36 36   40 40   44 44   48 48   50 50   54 54   58 58   62 62
0x00002f0	52 52   56 56   60 60   64 64   34 34   36 36   50 50   52 52
0x0000310	38 38   40 40   54 54   56 56   42 42   44 44   58 58   60 60
0x0000330	46 46   48 48   62 62   64 64   66 66   68 68   34 34   36 36
0x0000350	70 70   72 72   38 38   40 40   74 74   76 76   42 42   44 44
0x0000370	78 78   32 32   46 46   48 48   66 66   70 70   34 34   38 38
0x0000390	68 68   72 72   36 36   40 40   74 74   78 78   42 42   46 46
0x00003b0	76 76   32 32   44 44   48 48   50 50   23 23   35 35   39 39
0x00003d0	52 52   25 25   37 37   41 41   27 27   31 31   43 43   47 47
0x00003f0	29 29   33 33   45 45   49 49   50 50   52 52   23 23   25 25

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with even channels used):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x00000000

Used Channels: 0x55555555555555555555

#ticks:	00 02   04 06   08 0a   0c 0e   10 12   14 16   18 1a   1c 1e
0x00000010	08 08   10 10   12 12   14 14   16 16   18 18   20 20   22 22
0x00000030	24 24   26 26   28 28   30 30   32 32   34 34   36 36   38 38
0x00000050	40 40   42 42   44 44   46 46   48 48   50 50   52 52   54 54
0x00000070	56 56   58 58   60 60   62 62   32 32   36 36   34 34   38 38
0x00000090	40 40   44 44   42 42   46 46   48 48   52 52   50 50   54 54
0x000000b0	56 56   60 60   58 58   62 62   64 64   68 68   66 66   70 70
0x000000d0	72 72   76 76   74 74   78 78   00 00   04 04   02 02   06 06
0x00000f0	08 08   12 12   10 10   14 14   64 64   66 66   68 68   70 70
0x0000110	00 00   02 02   04 04   06 06   72 72   74 74   76 76   78 78
0x0000130	08 08   10 10   12 12   14 14   16 16   18 18   20 20   22 22
0x0000150	32 32   34 34   36 36   38 38   24 24   26 26   28 28   30 30
0x0000170	40 40   42 42   44 44   46 46   16 16   20 20   18 18   22 22
0x0000190	32 32   36 36   34 34   38 38   24 24   28 28   26 26   30 30
0x00001b0	40 40   44 44   42 42   46 46   48 48   52 52   50 50   54 54
0x00001d0	64 64   68 68   66 66   70 70   56 56   60 60   58 58   62 62
0x00001f0	72 72   76 76   74 74   00 00   48 48   50 50   56 56   58 58
0x0000210	52 52   54 54   60 60   62 62   64 64   66 66   72 72   74 74
0x0000230	68 68   70 70   76 76   00 00   02 02   04 04   10 10   12 12
0x0000250	06 06   08 08   14 14   16 16   18 18   20 20   26 26   28 28
0x0000270	22 22   24 24   30 30   32 32   02 02   06 06   10 10   14 14
0x0000290	04 04   08 08   12 12   16 16   18 18   22 22   26 26   30 30
0x00002b0	20 20   24 24   28 28   32 32   34 34   38 38   42 42   46 46
0x00002d0	36 36   40 40   44 44   48 48   50 50   54 54   58 58   62 62
0x00002f0	52 52   56 56   60 60   64 64   34 34   36 36   50 50   52 52
0x0000310	38 38   40 40   54 54   56 56   42 42   44 44   58 58   60 60
0x0000330	46 46   48 48   62 62   64 64   66 66   68 68   00 00   02 02
0x0000350	70 70   72 72   04 04   06 06   74 74   76 76   08 08   10 10
0x0000370	78 78   78 78   12 12   14 14   66 66   70 70   00 00   04 04
0x0000390	68 68   72 72   02 02   06 06   74 74   78 78   08 08   12 12
0x00003b0	76 76   78 78   10 10   14 14   16 16   20 20   32 32   36 36
0x00003d0	18 18   22 22   34 34   38 38   24 24   28 28   40 40   44 44
0x00003f0	26 26   30 30   42 42   46 46   16 16   18 18   20 20   22 22

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with odd channels used):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x00000000

Used Channels: 0x2aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a		1c	1e	
-----																								
0x00000010	09	09		11	11		13	13		15	15		17	17		19	19		21	21		23	23	
0x00000030	25	25		27	27		29	29		31	31		33	33		35	35		37	37		39	39	
0x00000050	41	41		43	43		45	45		47	47		49	49		51	51		53	53		55	55	
0x00000070	57	57		59	59		61	61		63	63		33	33		37	37		35	35		39	39	
0x00000090	41	41		45	45		43	43		47	47		49	49		53	53		51	51		55	55	
0x00000b0	57	57		61	61		59	59		63	63		65	65		69	69		67	67		71	71	
0x00000d0	73	73		77	77		75	75		01	01		01	01		05	05		03	03		07	07	
0x00000f0	09	09		13	13		11	11		15	15		65	65		67	67		69	69		71	71	
0x0000110	01	01		03	03		05	05		07	07		73	73		75	75		77	77		01	01	
0x0000130	09	09		11	11		13	13		15	15		17	17		19	19		21	21		23	23	
0x0000150	33	33		35	35		37	37		39	39		25	25		27	27		29	29		31	31	
0x0000170	41	41		43	43		45	45		47	47		17	17		21	21		19	19		23	23	
0x0000190	33	33		37	37		35	35		39	39		25	25		29	29		27	27		31	31	
0x00001b0	41	41		45	45		43	43		47	47		49	49		53	53		51	51		55	55	
0x00001d0	65	65		69	69		67	67		71	71		57	57		61	61		59	59		63	63	
0x00001f0	73	73		77	77		75	75		03	03		49	49		51	51		57	57		59	59	
0x0000210	53	53		55	55		61	61		63	63		65	65		67	67		73	73		75	75	
0x0000230	69	69		71	71		77	77		03	03		05	05		07	07		13	13		15	15	
0x0000250	09	09		11	11		17	17		19	19		21	21		23	23		29	29		31	31	
0x0000270	25	25		27	27		33	33		35	35		05	05		09	09		13	13		17	17	
0x0000290	07	07		11	11		15	15		19	19		21	21		25	25		29	29		33	33	
0x00002b0	23	23		27	27		31	31		35	35		37	37		41	41		45	45		49	49	
0x00002d0	39	39		43	43		47	47		51	51		53	53		57	57		61	61		65	65	
0x00002f0	55	55		59	59		63	63		67	67		37	37		39	39		53	53		55	55	
0x0000310	41	41		43	43		57	57		59	59		45	45		47	47		61	61		63	63	
0x0000330	49	49		51	51		65	65		67	67		69	69		71	71		03	03		05	05	
0x0000350	73	73		75	75		07	07		09	09		77	77		01	01		11	11		13	13	
0x0000370	03	03		01	01		15	15		17	17		69	69		73	73		03	03		07	07	
0x0000390	71	71		75	75		05	05		09	09		77	77		03	03		11	11		15	15	
0x00003b0	01	01		01	01		13	13		17	17		19	19		23	23		35	35		39	39	
0x00003d0	21	21		25	25		37	37		41	41		27	27		31	31		43	43		47	47	
0x00003f0	29	29		33	33		45	45		49	49		19	19		21	21		23	23		25	25	

---

### *Sample Data*



## 2.2 SECOND SET

Hop sequence  $\{k\}$  for PAGE SCAN/INQUIRY SCAN SUBSTATE:

CLKN start: 0x0000000

ULAP: 0x2a96ef25

#ticks:	0000	1000	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000
0x00000000:	49	13	17	51	55	19	23	53
0x00080000:	57	21	25	27	31	74	78	29
0x00100000:	33	76	1	35	39	3	7	37
0x00180000:	41	5	9	43	47	11	15	45
0x00200000:	49	13	17	51	55	19	23	53
0x00280000:	57	21	25	27	31	74	78	29
0x00300000:	33	76	1	35	39	3	7	37
0x00380000:	41	5	9	43	47	11	15	45

Hop sequence {k} for PAGE STATE/INQUIRY SUBSTATE:

CLKE start: 0x0000000

ULAP: 0x2a96ef25

#ticks:	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0a	0b	0c	0d	0e	0f
<hr/>																
0x00000000:	41	05	10	04	09	43	06	16	47	11	18	12	15	45	14	32
0x00000010:	49	13	34	28	17	51	30	24	55	19	26	20	23	53	22	40
0x00000020:	41	05	10	04	09	43	06	16	47	11	18	12	15	45	14	32
0x00000030:	49	13	34	28	17	51	30	24	55	19	26	20	23	53	22	40
...																
0x00010000:	41	21	10	36	25	27	38	63	31	74	65	59	78	29	61	00
0x00010100:	33	76	02	75	01	35	77	71	39	03	73	67	07	37	69	08
0x00010200:	41	21	10	36	25	27	38	63	31	74	65	59	78	29	61	00
0x00010300:	33	76	02	75	01	35	77	71	39	03	73	67	07	37	69	08
...																
0x00020000:	57	21	42	36	09	43	06	16	47	11	18	12	15	45	14	32
0x00020100:	49	13	34	28	17	51	30	24	55	19	26	20	23	53	22	40
0x00020200:	57	21	42	36	09	43	06	16	47	11	18	12	15	45	14	32
0x00020300:	49	13	34	28	17	51	30	24	55	19	26	20	23	53	22	40
...																
0x00030000:	41	05	10	04	09	27	06	63	31	74	65	59	78	29	61	00
0x00030100:	33	76	02	75	01	35	77	71	39	03	73	67	07	37	69	08
0x00030200:	41	05	10	04	09	27	06	63	31	74	65	59	78	29	61	00
0x00030300:	33	76	02	75	01	35	77	71	39	03	73	67	07	37	69	08

Hop sequence  $\{k\}$  for SLAVE PAGE RESPONSE SUBSTATE:

stop sequence ( $\tau$ ) for SLEAV  
C1, KN\* = 0x00000010

CERN = 0x0000010  
UTAP: 0x2a96ef25

CLEAR:	0x2a98e123													
#ticks:	00	02	04	06	08	0a	0c	0e	10	12	14	16	18	1a
0x00000012:	34	13	28	17	30	51	24	55	26	19	20	23	22	53
0x00000032:	42	21	36	25	38	27	63	31	65	74	59	78	61	29
0x00000052:	02	76	75	01	77	35	71	39	73	03	67	07	69	37
0x00000072:	10	05	04	09	06	43	16	47	18	11	12	15	14	45

Hop sequence {k} for MASTER PAGE RESPONSE SUBSTATE:

Offset value: 2

CLKE\* = 0x0000012

**ULAP:** 0x2a96ef25

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a
0x00000014:	13	28		17	30		51	24		55	26		19	20		23	22		53	40
0x00000034:	21	36		25	38		27	63		31	65		74	59		78	61		29	00
0x00000054:	76	75		01	77		35	71		39	73		03	67		07	69		37	08
0x00000074:	05	04		09	06		43	16		47	18		11	12		15	14		45	32

*Sample Data*

Hop sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Basic channel hopping sequence; ie, non-AFH):											
CLK start:	0x00000010										
ULAP:	0x2a96ef25										
#ticks:	00 02   04 06   08 0a   0c 0e   10 12   14 16   18 1a   1c 1e										
	-----										
0x00000010:	55	26	19	20	23	22	53	40	57	42	
0x00000030:	31	65	74	59	78	61	29	00	33	02	
0x00000050:	39	73	03	67	07	69	37	08	41	10	
0x00000070:	47	18	11	12	15	14	45	32	02	66	
0x00000090:	06	58	51	52	53	56	08	70	10	74	
0x000000b0:	61	18	27	12	29	16	63	30	65	34	
0x000000d0:	69	26	35	20	37	24	71	38	73	42	
0x000000f0:	77	50	43	44	45	48	00	62	26	11	
0x00000110:	40	19	04	13	08	15	38	25	42	27	
0x00000130:	16	50	59	44	63	46	14	56	18	58	
0x00000150:	32	66	75	60	00	62	30	72	34	74	
0x00000170:	24	03	67	76	71	78	22	09	58	43	
0x00000190:	70	51	36	45	38	49	72	55	74	59	
0x000001b0:	46	03	12	76	14	01	48	07	50	11	
0x000001d0:	62	19	28	13	30	17	64	23	66	27	
0x000001f0:	54	35	20	29	22	33	56	39	19	04	
0x00000210:	11	10	54	69	58	06	23	75	27	12	
0x00000230:	01	49	44	29	48	45	13	35	17	51	
0x00000250:	09	57	52	37	56	53	21	43	25	59	
0x00000270:	03	02	46	61	50	77	15	67	51	36	
0x00000290:	43	40	09	22	11	38	57	28	59	44	
0x000002b0:	31	00	76	61	78	77	45	67	47	04	
0x000002d0:	39	08	05	69	07	06	53	75	55	12	
0x000002f0:	35	32	01	14	03	30	49	20	75	60	
0x00000310:	04	74	47	62	51	70	08	68	12	76	
0x00000330:	65	26	29	14	33	22	69	20	73	28	
0x00000350:	02	42	45	30	49	38	06	36	10	44	
0x00000370:	67	58	31	46	35	54	71	52	28	13	
0x00000390:	36	25	02	15	04	23	42	21	44	29	
0x000003b0:	16	56	61	46	63	54	22	52	24	60	
0x000003d0:	32	72	77	62	00	70	38	68	40	76	
0x000003f0:	20	09	65	78	67	07	26	05	44	29	
									32	23	
									36	25	
										70	43

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with all channel used; ie, AFH(79)):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x2a96ef25

Used Channels: 0x7fffffff

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a		1c	1e	
-----																								
0x00000010	55	55		19	19		23	23		53	53		57	57		21	21		25	25		27	27	
0x00000030	31	31		74	74		78	78		29	29		33	33		76	76		01	01		35	35	
0x00000050	39	39		03	03		07	07		37	37		41	41		05	05		09	09		43	43	
0x00000070	47	47		11	11		15	15		45	45		02	02		47	47		49	49		04	04	
0x00000090	06	06		51	51		53	53		08	08		10	10		55	55		57	57		59	59	
0x00000b0	61	61		27	27		29	29		63	63		65	65		31	31		33	33		67	67	
0x00000d0	69	69		35	35		37	37		71	71		73	73		39	39		41	41		75	75	
0x00000f0	77	77		43	43		45	45		00	00		26	26		69	69		73	73		36	36	
0x0000110	40	40		04	04		08	08		38	38		42	42		06	06		10	10		12	12	
0x0000130	16	16		59	59		63	63		14	14		18	18		61	61		65	65		28	28	
0x0000150	32	32		75	75		00	00		30	30		34	34		77	77		02	02		20	20	
0x0000170	24	24		67	67		71	71		22	22		58	58		24	24		26	26		68	68	
0x0000190	70	70		36	36		38	38		72	72		74	74		40	40		42	42		44	44	
0x00001b0	46	46		12	12		14	14		48	48		50	50		16	16		18	18		60	60	
0x00001d0	62	62		28	28		30	30		64	64		66	66		32	32		34	34		52	52	
0x00001f0	54	54		20	20		22	22		56	56		19	19		62	62		66	66		07	07	
0x0000210	11	11		54	54		58	58		23	23		27	27		70	70		74	74		76	76	
0x0000230	01	01		44	44		48	48		13	13		17	17		60	60		64	64		05	05	
0x0000250	09	09		52	52		56	56		21	21		25	25		68	68		72	72		78	78	
0x0000270	03	03		46	46		50	50		15	15		51	51		17	17		19	19		41	41	
0x0000290	43	43		09	09		11	11		57	57		59	59		25	25		27	27		29	29	
0x00002b0	31	31		76	76		78	78		45	45		47	47		13	13		15	15		37	37	
0x00002d0	39	39		05	05		07	07		53	53		55	55		21	21		23	23		33	33	
0x00002f0	35	35		01	01		03	03		49	49		75	75		39	39		43	43		00	00	
0x0000310	04	04		47	47		51	51		08	08		12	12		55	55		59	59		61	61	
0x0000330	65	65		29	29		33	33		69	69		73	73		37	37		41	41		77	77	
0x0000350	02	02		45	45		49	49		06	06		10	10		53	53		57	57		63	63	
0x0000370	67	67		31	31		35	35		71	71		28	28		73	73		75	75		34	34	
0x0000390	36	36		02	02		04	04		42	42		44	44		10	10		12	12		14	14	
0x00003b0	16	16		61	61		63	63		22	22		24	24		69	69		71	71		30	30	
0x00003d0	32	32		77	77		00	00		38	38		40	40		06	06		08	08		18	18	
0x00003f0	20	20		65	65		67	67		26	26		44	44		32	32		36	36		70	70	

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with channels 0 to 21 unused):

CLK start: 0x0000010

ULAP: 0x2a96ef25

Used Channels: 0x7fffffff0000

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a		1c	1e	
-----																								
0x0000010	55	55		50	50		23	23		53	53		57	57		52	52		25	25		27	27	
0x0000030	31	31		74	74		78	78		29	29		33	33		76	76		32	32		35	35	
0x0000050	39	39		34	34		38	38		37	37		41	41		36	36		40	40		43	43	
0x0000070	47	47		42	42		46	46		45	45		55	55		47	47		49	49		57	57	
0x0000090	59	59		51	51		53	53		61	61		63	63		55	55		57	57		59	59	
0x00000b0	61	61		27	27		29	29		63	63		65	65		31	31		33	33		67	67	
0x00000d0	69	69		35	35		37	37		71	71		73	73		39	39		41	41		75	75	
0x00000f0	77	77		43	43		45	45		53	53		26	26		69	69		73	73		36	36	
0x0000110	40	40		57	57		61	61		38	38		42	42		59	59		63	63		65	65	
0x0000130	69	69		59	59		63	63		67	67		71	71		61	61		65	65		28	28	
0x0000150	32	32		75	75		53	53		30	30		34	34		77	77		55	55		73	73	
0x0000170	24	24		67	67		71	71		22	22		58	58		24	24		26	26		68	68	
0x0000190	70	70		36	36		38	38		72	72		74	74		40	40		42	42		44	44	
0x00001b0	46	46		65	65		67	67		48	48		50	50		69	69		71	71		60	60	
0x00001d0	62	62		28	28		30	30		64	64		66	66		32	32		34	34		52	52	
0x00001f0	54	54		73	73		22	22		56	56		37	37		62	62		66	66		25	25	
0x0000210	29	29		54	54		58	58		23	23		27	27		70	70		74	74		76	76	
0x0000230	76	76		44	44		48	48		31	31		35	35		60	60		64	64		23	23	
0x0000250	27	27		52	52		56	56		39	39		25	25		68	68		72	72		78	78	
0x0000270	78	78		46	46		50	50		33	33		51	51		35	35		37	37		41	41	
0x0000290	43	43		27	27		29	29		57	57		59	59		25	25		27	27		29	29	
0x00002b0	31	31		76	76		78	78		45	45		47	47		31	31		33	33		37	37	
0x00002d0	39	39		23	23		25	25		53	53		55	55		39	39		23	23		33	33	
0x00002f0	35	35		76	76		78	78		49	49		75	75		39	39		43	43		40	40	
0x0000310	44	44		47	47		51	51		48	48		52	52		55	55		59	59		61	61	
0x0000330	65	65		29	29		33	33		69	69		73	73		37	37		41	41		77	77	
0x0000350	42	42		45	45		49	49		46	46		50	50		53	53		57	57		63	63	
0x0000370	67	67		31	31		35	35		71	71		28	28		73	73		75	75		34	34	
0x0000390	36	36		42	42		44	44		42	42		44	44		50	50		52	52		54	54	
0x00003b0	56	56		61	61		63	63		22	22		24	24		69	69		71	71		30	30	
0x00003d0	32	32		77	77		40	40		38	38		40	40		46	46		48	48		58	58	
0x00003f0	60	60		65	65		67	67		26	26		44	44		32	32		36	36		70	70	

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with even channels used):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x2a96ef25

Used Channels: 0x555555555555555555555555

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a		1c	1e	
-----																								
0x00000010	52	52		16	16		20	20		50	50		54	54		18	18		22	22		24	24	
0x00000030	28	28		74	74		78	78		26	26		30	30		76	76		78	78		32	32	
0x00000050	36	36		00	00		04	04		34	34		38	38		02	02		06	06		40	40	
0x00000070	44	44		08	08		12	12		42	42		02	02		44	44		46	46		04	04	
0x00000090	06	06		48	48		50	50		08	08		10	10		52	52		54	54		56	56	
0x00000b0	58	58		24	24		26	26		60	60		62	62		28	28		30	30		64	64	
0x00000d0	66	66		32	32		34	34		68	68		70	70		36	36		38	38		72	72	
0x00000f0	74	74		40	40		42	42		00	00		26	26		66	66		70	70		36	36	
0x0000110	40	40		04	04		08	08		38	38		42	42		06	06		10	10		12	12	
0x0000130	16	16		56	56		60	60		14	14		18	18		58	58		62	62		28	28	
0x0000150	32	32		72	72		00	00		30	30		34	34		74	74		02	02		20	20	
0x0000170	24	24		64	64		68	68		22	22		58	58		24	24		26	26		68	68	
0x0000190	70	70		36	36		38	38		72	72		74	74		40	40		42	42		44	44	
0x00001b0	46	46		12	12		14	14		48	48		50	50		16	16		18	18		60	60	
0x00001d0	62	62		28	28		30	30		64	64		66	66		32	32		34	34		52	52	
0x00001f0	54	54		20	20		22	22		56	56		14	14		62	62		66	66		02	02	
0x0000210	06	06		54	54		58	58		18	18		22	22		70	70		74	74		76	76	
0x0000230	76	76		44	44		48	48		08	08		12	12		60	60		64	64		00	00	
0x0000250	04	04		52	52		56	56		16	16		20	20		68	68		72	72		78	78	
0x0000270	78	78		46	46		50	50		10	10		46	46		12	12		14	14		36	36	
0x0000290	38	38		04	04		06	06		52	52		54	54		20	20		22	22		24	24	
0x00002b0	26	26		76	76		78	78		40	40		42	42		08	08		10	10		32	32	
0x00002d0	34	34		00	00		02	02		48	48		50	50		16	16		18	18		28	28	
0x00002f0	30	30		76	76		78	78		44	44		70	70		34	34		38	38		00	00	
0x0000310	04	04		42	42		46	46		08	08		12	12		50	50		54	54		56	56	
0x0000330	60	60		24	24		28	28		64	64		68	68		32	32		36	36		72	72	
0x0000350	02	02		40	40		44	44		06	06		10	10		48	48		52	52		58	58	
0x0000370	62	62		26	26		30	30		66	66		28	28		68	68		70	70		34	34	
0x0000390	36	36		02	02		04	04		42	42		44	44		10	10		12	12		14	14	
0x00003b0	16	16		56	56		58	58		22	22		24	24		64	64		66	66		30	30	
0x00003d0	32	32		72	72		00	00		38	38		40	40		06	06		08	08		18	18	
0x00003f0	20	20		60	60		62	62		26	26		44	44		32	32		36	36		70	70	

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with odd channels used):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x2a96ef25

Used Channels: 0x2aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a		1c	1e	
-----																								
0x00000010	55	55		19	19		23	23		53	53		57	57		21	21		25	25		27	27	
0x00000030	31	31		77	77		03	03		29	29		33	33		01	01		01	01		35	35	
0x00000050	39	39		03	03		07	07		37	37		41	41		05	05		09	09		43	43	
0x00000070	47	47		11	11		15	15		45	45		07	07		47	47		49	49		09	09	
0x00000090	11	11		51	51		53	53		13	13		15	15		55	55		57	57		59	59	
0x00000b0	61	61		27	27		29	29		63	63		65	65		31	31		33	33		67	67	
0x00000d0	69	69		35	35		37	37		71	71		73	73		39	39		41	41		75	75	
0x00000f0	77	77		43	43		45	45		05	05		31	31		69	69		73	73		41	41	
0x0000110	45	45		09	09		13	13		43	43		47	47		11	11		15	15		17	17	
0x0000130	21	21		59	59		63	63		19	19		23	23		61	61		65	65		33	33	
0x0000150	37	37		75	75		05	05		35	35		39	39		77	77		07	07		25	25	
0x0000170	29	29		67	67		71	71		27	27		63	63		29	29		31	31		73	73	
0x0000190	75	75		41	41		43	43		77	77		01	01		45	45		47	47		49	49	
0x00001b0	51	51		17	17		19	19		53	53		55	55		21	21		23	23		65	65	
0x00001d0	67	67		33	33		35	35		69	69		71	71		37	37		39	39		57	57	
0x00001f0	59	59		25	25		27	27		61	61		19	19		67	67		71	71		07	07	
0x0000210	11	11		59	59		63	63		23	23		27	27		75	75		01	01		03	03	
0x0000230	01	01		49	49		53	53		13	13		17	17		65	65		69	69		05	05	
0x0000250	09	09		57	57		61	61		21	21		25	25		73	73		77	77		05	05	
0x0000270	03	03		51	51		55	55		15	15		51	51		17	17		19	19		41	41	
0x0000290	43	43		09	09		11	11		57	57		59	59		25	25		27	27		29	29	
0x00002b0	31	31		03	03		05	05		45	45		47	47		13	13		15	15		37	37	
0x00002d0	39	39		05	05		07	07		53	53		55	55		21	21		23	23		33	33	
0x00002f0	35	35		01	01		03	03		49	49		75	75		39	39		43	43		07	07	
0x0000310	11	11		47	47		51	51		15	15		19	19		55	55		59	59		61	61	
0x0000330	65	65		29	29		33	33		69	69		73	73		37	37		41	41		77	77	
0x0000350	09	09		45	45		49	49		13	13		17	17		53	53		57	57		63	63	
0x0000370	67	67		31	31		35	35		71	71		35	35		73	73		75	75		41	41	
0x0000390	43	43		09	09		11	11		49	49		51	51		17	17		19	19		21	21	
0x00003b0	23	23		61	61		63	63		29	29		31	31		69	69		71	71		37	37	
0x00003d0	39	39		77	77		07	07		45	45		47	47		13	13		15	15		25	25	
0x00003f0	27	27		65	65		67	67		33	33		51	51		39	39		43	43		77	77	

*Sample Data***2.3 THIRD SET**

Hop sequence {k} for PAGE SCAN/INQUIRY SCAN SUBSTATE:

CLKN start:	0x00000000							
ULAP:	0x6587cba9							
#ticks:	0000   1000   2000   3000   4000   5000   6000   7000							
<hr/>								
0x00000000:	16	65	67	18	20	53	55	6
0x00080000:	8	57	59	10	12	69	71	22
0x00100000:	24	73	75	26	28	45	47	77
0x00180000:	0	49	51	2	4	61	63	14
0x00200000:	16	65	67	18	20	53	55	6
0x00280000:	8	57	59	10	12	69	71	22
0x00300000:	24	73	75	26	28	45	47	77
0x00380000:	0	49	51	2	4	61	63	14

Hop sequence {k} for PAGE STATE/INQUIRY SUBSTATE:

CLKE start:	0x00000000							
ULAP:	0x6587cba9							
#ticks:	00 01 02 03   04 05 06 07   08 09 0a 0b   0c 0d 0e 0f							
<hr/>								
0x00000000:	00 49 36 38	51 02 42 40	04 61 44 46	63 14 50 48				
0x0000010:	16 65 52 54	67 18 58 56	20 53 60 62	55 06 66 64				
0x0000020:	00 49 36 38	51 02 42 40	04 61 44 46	63 14 50 48				
0x0000030:	16 65 52 54	67 18 58 56	20 53 60 62	55 06 66 64				
...								
0x0001000:	00 57 36 70	59 10 74 72	12 69 76 78	71 22 03 01				
0x0001010:	24 73 05 07	75 26 11 09	28 45 13 30	47 77 34 32				
0x0001020:	00 57 36 70	59 10 74 72	12 69 76 78	71 22 03 01				
0x0001030:	24 73 05 07	75 26 11 09	28 45 13 30	47 77 34 32				
...								
0x0002000:	08 57 68 70	51 02 42 40	04 61 44 46	63 14 50 48				
0x0002010:	16 65 52 54	67 18 58 56	20 53 60 62	55 06 66 64				
0x0002020:	08 57 68 70	51 02 42 40	04 61 44 46	63 14 50 48				
0x0002030:	16 65 52 54	67 18 58 56	20 53 60 62	55 06 66 64				
...								
0x0003000:	00 49 36 38	51 10 42 72	12 69 76 78	71 22 03 01				
0x0003010:	24 73 05 07	75 26 11 09	28 45 13 30	47 77 34 32				
0x0003020:	00 49 36 38	51 10 42 72	12 69 76 78	71 22 03 01				
0x0003030:	24 73 05 07	75 26 11 09	28 45 13 30	47 77 34 32				

Hop sequence {k} for SLAVE PAGE RESPONSE SUBSTATE:

CLKN* =	0x0000010							
ULAP:	0x6587cba9							
#ticks:	00   02 04   06 08   0a 0c   0e 10   12 14   16 18   1a 1c   1e							
<hr/>								
0x0000012:	52	65 54	67 58	18 56	20 60	53 62	55 66	06 64
0x0000032:	68	57 70	59 74	10 72	12 76	69 78	71 03	22 01
0x0000052:	05	73 07	75 11	26 09	28 13	45 30	47 34	77 32
0x0000072:	36	49 38	51 42	02 40	04 44	61 46	63 50	14 48
								16 52

Hop sequence {k} for MASTER PAGE RESPONSE SUBSTATE:

Offset value:	24							
CLKE* =	0x0000012							
ULAP:	0x6587cba9							
#ticks:	00 02   04 06   08 0a   0c 0e   10 12   14 16   18 1a   1c 1e							
<hr/>								
0x0000014:	65 54	67 58	18 56	20 60	53 62	55 66	06 64	08 68
0x0000034:	57 70	59 74	10 72	12 76	69 78	71 03	22 01	24 05
0x0000054:	73 07	75 11	26 09	28 13	45 30	47 34	77 32	00 36
0x0000074:	49 38	51 42	02 40	04 44	61 46	63 50	14 48	16 52

*Sample Data*

Hop sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Basic channel hopping sequence; ie, non-AFH):												
CLK start:	0x00000010											
ULAP:	0x6587cba9											
#ticks:	#ticks:											
	00	02	04	06	08	0a	0c	0e	10	12	14	16
0x00000010:	20	60	53	62	55	66	06	64	08	68	57	70
0x00000030:	12	76	69	78	71	03	22	01	24	05	73	07
0x00000050:	28	13	45	30	47	34	77	32	00	36	49	38
0x00000070:	04	44	61	46	63	50	14	48	50	05	16	07
0x00000090:	52	13	06	15	10	17	38	19	42	21	08	23
0x000000b0:	44	29	22	31	26	33	54	35	58	37	24	39
0x000000d0:	60	45	77	62	02	64	30	66	34	68	00	70
0x000000f0:	36	76	14	78	18	01	46	03	72	29	42	39
0x00000110:	76	45	46	47	48	51	78	49	01	53	50	63
0x00000130:	05	69	54	55	56	59	07	57	09	61	58	71
0x00000150:	13	77	30	15	32	19	62	17	64	21	34	31
0x00000170:	68	37	38	23	40	27	70	25	27	61	72	71
0x00000190:	29	77	78	00	03	02	31	04	35	06	01	16
0x00001b0:	37	22	07	08	11	10	39	12	43	14	09	24
0x00001d0:	45	30	62	47	66	49	15	51	19	53	64	63
0x00001f0:	21	69	70	55	74	57	23	59	53	22	35	12
0x0000210:	69	30	23	32	25	48	55	34	57	50	39	40
0x0000230:	73	58	27	36	29	52	59	38	61	54	43	44
0x0000250:	77	62	15	00	17	16	47	02	49	18	31	08
0x0000270:	65	26	19	04	21	20	51	06	06	54	65	42
0x0000290:	22	62	55	64	59	01	08	68	12	05	71	72
0x00002b0:	28	13	57	66	61	03	10	70	14	07	73	74
0x00002d0:	30	15	47	32	51	48	00	36	04	52	63	40
0x00002f0:	20	60	49	34	53	50	02	38	38	78	12	05
0x0000310:	46	15	16	17	18	25	48	19	50	27	24	33
0x0000330:	58	43	20	21	22	29	52	23	54	31	28	37
0x0000350:	62	47	00	64	02	72	32	66	34	74	08	01
0x0000370:	42	11	04	68	06	76	36	70	70	31	42	35
0x0000390:	78	47	48	49	52	57	01	53	05	61	56	65
0x00003b0:	13	77	50	51	54	59	03	55	07	63	58	67
0x00003d0:	15	00	32	17	36	25	64	21	68	29	40	33
0x00003f0:	76	45	34	19	38	27	66	23	11	71	05	18
											07	22
											13	20

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with all channel used; ie, AFH(79)):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x6587cba9

Used Channels: 0x7fffffff

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a		1c	1e	
-----																								
0x00000010	20	20		53	53		55	55		06	06		08	08		57	57		59	59		10	10	
0x00000030	12	12		69	69		71	71		22	22		24	24		73	73		75	75		26	26	
0x00000050	28	28		45	45		47	47		77	77		00	00		49	49		51	51		02	02	
0x00000070	04	04		61	61		63	63		14	14		50	50		16	16		20	20		48	48	
0x00000090	52	52		06	06		10	10		38	38		42	42		08	08		12	12		40	40	
0x00000b0	44	44		22	22		26	26		54	54		58	58		24	24		28	28		56	56	
0x00000d0	60	60		77	77		02	02		30	30		34	34		00	00		04	04		32	32	
0x00000f0	36	36		14	14		18	18		46	46		72	72		42	42		44	44		74	74	
0x0000110	76	76		46	46		48	48		78	78		01	01		50	50		52	52		03	03	
0x0000130	05	05		54	54		56	56		07	07		09	09		58	58		60	60		11	11	
0x0000150	13	13		30	30		32	32		62	62		64	64		34	34		36	36		66	66	
0x0000170	68	68		38	38		40	40		70	70		27	27		72	72		76	76		25	25	
0x0000190	29	29		78	78		03	03		31	31		35	35		01	01		05	05		33	33	
0x00001b0	37	37		07	07		11	11		39	39		43	43		09	09		13	13		41	41	
0x00001d0	45	45		62	62		66	66		15	15		19	19		64	64		68	68		17	17	
0x00001f0	21	21		70	70		74	74		23	23		53	53		35	35		37	37		67	67	
0x0000210	69	69		23	23		25	25		55	55		57	57		39	39		41	41		71	71	
0x0000230	73	73		27	27		29	29		59	59		61	61		43	43		45	45		75	75	
0x0000250	77	77		15	15		17	17		47	47		49	49		31	31		33	33		63	63	
0x0000270	65	65		19	19		21	21		51	51		06	06		65	65		69	69		18	18	
0x0000290	22	22		55	55		59	59		08	08		12	12		71	71		75	75		24	24	
0x00002b0	28	28		57	57		61	61		10	10		14	14		73	73		77	77		26	26	
0x00002d0	30	30		47	47		51	51		00	00		04	04		63	63		67	67		16	16	
0x00002f0	20	20		49	49		53	53		02	02		38	38		12	12		14	14		44	44	
0x0000310	46	46		16	16		18	18		48	48		50	50		24	24		26	26		56	56	
0x0000330	58	58		20	20		22	22		52	52		54	54		28	28		30	30		60	60	
0x0000350	62	62		00	00		02	02		32	32		34	34		08	08		10	10		40	40	
0x0000370	42	42		04	04		06	06		36	36		70	70		42	42		46	46		74	74	
0x0000390	78	78		48	48		52	52		01	01		05	05		56	56		60	60		09	09	
0x00003b0	13	13		50	50		54	54		03	03		07	07		58	58		62	62		11	11	
0x00003d0	15	15		32	32		36	36		64	64		68	68		40	40		44	44		72	72	
0x00003f0	76	76		34	34		38	38		66	66		11	11		05	05		07	07		13	13	

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with channels 0 to 21 unused):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x6587cba9

Used Channels: 0x7fffffffffffffc00000

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a		1c	1e	
-----																								
0x00000010	29	29		53	53		55	55		72	72		74	74		57	57		59	59		76	76	
0x00000030	78	78		69	69		71	71		22	22		24	24		73	73		75	75		26	26	
0x00000050	28	28		45	45		47	47		77	77		66	66		49	49		51	51		68	68	
0x00000070	70	70		61	61		63	63		23	23		50	50		25	25		29	29		48	48	
0x00000090	52	52		72	72		76	76		38	38		42	42		74	74		78	78		40	40	
0x00000b0	44	44		22	22		26	26		54	54		58	58		24	24		28	28		56	56	
0x00000d0	60	60		77	77		68	68		30	30		34	34		66	66		70	70		32	32	
0x00000f0	36	36		23	23		27	27		46	46		72	72		42	42		44	44		74	74	
0x0000110	76	76		46	46		48	48		78	78		32	32		50	50		52	52		34	34	
0x0000130	36	36		54	54		56	56		38	38		40	40		58	58		60	60		42	42	
0x0000150	44	44		30	30		32	32		62	62		64	64		34	34		36	36		66	66	
0x0000170	68	68		38	38		40	40		70	70		27	27		72	72		76	76		25	25	
0x0000190	29	29		78	78		34	34		31	31		35	35		32	32		36	36		33	33	
0x00001b0	37	37		38	38		42	42		39	39		43	43		40	40		44	44		41	41	
0x00001d0	45	45		62	62		66	66		46	46		50	50		64	64		68	68		48	48	
0x00001f0	52	52		70	70		74	74		23	23		53	53		35	35		37	37		67	67	
0x0000210	69	69		23	23		25	25		55	55		57	57		39	39		41	41		71	71	
0x0000230	73	73		27	27		29	29		59	59		61	61		43	43		45	45		75	75	
0x0000250	77	77		46	46		48	48		47	47		49	49		31	31		33	33		63	63	
0x0000270	65	65		50	50		52	52		51	51		59	59		65	65		69	69		71	71	
0x0000290	22	22		55	55		59	59		61	61		65	65		71	71		75	75		24	24	
0x00002b0	28	28		57	57		61	61		63	63		67	67		73	73		77	77		26	26	
0x00002d0	30	30		47	47		51	51		53	53		57	57		63	63		67	67		69	69	
0x00002f0	73	73		49	49		53	53		55	55		38	38		65	65		67	67		44	44	
0x0000310	46	46		69	69		71	71		48	48		50	50		24	24		26	26		56	56	
0x0000330	58	58		73	73		22	22		52	52		54	54		28	28		30	30		60	60	
0x0000350	62	62		53	53		55	55		32	32		34	34		61	61		63	63		40	40	
0x0000370	42	42		57	57		59	59		36	36		70	70		42	42		46	46		74	74	
0x0000390	78	78		48	48		52	52		76	76		23	23		56	56		60	60		27	27	
0x00003b0	31	31		50	50		54	54		78	78		25	25		58	58		62	62		29	29	
0x00003d0	33	33		32	32		36	36		64	64		68	68		40	40		44	44		72	72	
0x00003f0	76	76		34	34		38	38		66	66		29	29		23	23		25	25		31	31	

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with even channels used):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x6587cba9

Used Channels: 0x555555555555555555555555

#ticks:	00 02   04 06   08 0a   0c 0e   10 12   14 16   18 1a   1c 1e
0x00000010	20 20   52 52   54 54   06 06   08 08   56 56   58 58   10 10
0x00000030	12 12   68 68   70 70   22 22   24 24   72 72   74 74   26 26
0x00000050	28 28   44 44   46 46   76 76   00 00   48 48   50 50   02 02
0x00000070	04 04   60 60   62 62   14 14   50 50   16 16   20 20   48 48
0x00000090	52 52   06 06   10 10   38 38   42 42   08 08   12 12   40 40
0x000000b0	44 44   22 22   26 26   54 54   58 58   24 24   28 28   56 56
0x000000d0	60 60   76 76   02 02   30 30   34 34   00 00   04 04   32 32
0x000000f0	36 36   14 14   18 18   46 46   72 72   42 42   44 44   74 74
0x00000110	76 76   46 46   48 48   78 78   78 78   50 50   52 52   00 00
0x00000130	02 02   54 54   56 56   04 04   06 06   58 58   60 60   08 08
0x00000150	10 10   30 30   32 32   62 62   64 64   34 34   36 36   66 66
0x00000170	68 68   38 38   40 40   70 70   24 24   72 72   76 76   22 22
0x00000190	26 26   78 78   00 00   28 28   32 32   78 78   02 02   30 30
0x000001b0	34 34   04 04   08 08   36 36   40 40   06 06   10 10   38 38
0x000001d0	42 42   62 62   66 66   12 12   16 16   64 64   68 68   14 14
0x000001f0	18 18   70 70   74 74   20 20   50 50   32 32   34 34   64 64
0x00000210	66 66   20 20   22 22   52 52   54 54   36 36   38 38   68 68
0x00000230	70 70   24 24   26 26   56 56   58 58   40 40   42 42   72 72
0x00000250	74 74   12 12   14 14   44 44   46 46   28 28   30 30   60 60
0x00000270	62 62   16 16   18 18   48 48   06 06   62 62   66 66   18 18
0x00000290	22 22   52 52   56 56   08 08   12 12   68 68   72 72   24 24
0x000002b0	28 28   54 54   58 58   10 10   14 14   70 70   74 74   26 26
0x000002d0	30 30   44 44   48 48   00 00   04 04   60 60   64 64   16 16
0x000002f0	20 20   46 46   50 50   02 02   38 38   12 12   14 14   44 44
0x00000310	46 46   16 16   18 18   48 48   50 50   24 24   26 26   56 56
0x00000330	58 58   20 20   22 22   52 52   54 54   28 28   30 30   60 60
0x00000350	62 62   00 00   02 02   32 32   34 34   08 08   10 10   40 40
0x00000370	42 42   04 04   06 06   36 36   70 70   42 42   46 46   74 74
0x00000390	78 78   48 48   52 52   76 76   00 00   56 56   60 60   04 04
0x000003b0	08 08   50 50   54 54   78 78   02 02   58 58   62 62   06 06
0x000003d0	10 10   32 32   36 36   64 64   68 68   40 40   44 44   72 72
0x000003f0	76 76   34 34   38 38   66 66   06 06   00 00   02 02   08 08

*Sample Data*

Hop Sequence {k} for CONNECTION STATE (Adapted channel hopping sequence with odd channels used):

CLK start: 0x00000010

ULAP: 0x6587cba9

Used Channels: 0x2aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa

#ticks:	00	02		04	06		08	0a		0c	0e		10	12		14	16		18	1a		1c	1e	
-----																								
0x00000010	23	23		53	53		55	55		09	09		11	11		57	57		59	59		13	13	
0x00000030	15	15		69	69		71	71		25	25		27	27		73	73		75	75		29	29	
0x00000050	31	31		45	45		47	47		77	77		03	03		49	49		51	51		05	05	
0x00000070	07	07		61	61		63	63		17	17		53	53		19	19		23	23		51	51	
0x00000090	55	55		09	09		13	13		41	41		45	45		11	11		15	15		43	43	
0x00000b0	47	47		25	25		29	29		57	57		61	61		27	27		31	31		59	59	
0x00000d0	63	63		77	77		05	05		33	33		37	37		03	03		07	07		35	35	
0x00000f0	39	39		17	17		21	21		49	49		75	75		45	45		47	47		77	77	
0x0000110	01	01		49	49		51	51		03	03		01	01		53	53		55	55		03	03	
0x0000130	05	05		57	57		59	59		07	07		09	09		61	61		63	63		11	11	
0x0000150	13	13		33	33		35	35		65	65		67	67		37	37		39	39		69	69	
0x0000170	71	71		41	41		43	43		73	73		27	27		75	75		01	01		25	25	
0x0000190	29	29		03	03		03	03		31	31		35	35		01	01		05	05		33	33	
0x00001b0	37	37		07	07		11	11		39	39		43	43		09	09		13	13		41	41	
0x00001d0	45	45		65	65		69	69		15	15		19	19		67	67		71	71		17	17	
0x00001f0	21	21		73	73		77	77		23	23		53	53		35	35		37	37		67	67	
0x0000210	69	69		23	23		25	25		55	55		57	57		39	39		41	41		71	71	
0x0000230	73	73		27	27		29	29		59	59		61	61		43	43		45	45		75	75	
0x0000250	77	77		15	15		17	17		47	47		49	49		31	31		33	33		63	63	
0x0000270	65	65		19	19		21	21		51	51		11	11		65	65		69	69		23	23	
0x0000290	27	27		55	55		59	59		13	13		17	17		71	71		75	75		29	29	
0x00002b0	33	33		57	57		61	61		15	15		19	19		73	73		77	77		31	31	
0x00002d0	35	35		47	47		51	51		05	05		09	09		63	63		67	67		21	21	
0x00002f0	25	25		49	49		53	53		07	07		43	43		17	17		19	19		49	49	
0x0000310	51	51		21	21		23	23		53	53		55	55		29	29		31	31		61	61	
0x0000330	63	63		25	25		27	27		57	57		59	59		33	33		35	35		65	65	
0x0000350	67	67		05	05		07	07		37	37		39	39		13	13		15	15		45	45	
0x0000370	47	47		09	09		11	11		41	41		75	75		47	47		51	51		01	01	
0x0000390	05	05		53	53		57	57		01	01		05	05		61	61		65	65		09	09	
0x00003b0	13	13		55	55		59	59		03	03		07	07		63	63		67	67		11	11	
0x00003d0	15	15		37	37		41	41		69	69		73	73		45	45		49	49		77	77	
0x00003f0	03	03		39	39		43	43		71	71		11	11		05	05		07	07		13	13	

*Sample Data*

## 3 ACCESS CODE SAMPLE DATA

Different access codes (GIAC, DIACs, others...)

LAP with LSB as rightmost bit.

Bit transmit order on air					
----->					
LAP:	Preamble:	Sync word:		Trailer:	
000000	5	7e7041e3 4000000d	5		
ffffff	a	e758b522 7fffffff2	a		
9e8b33	5	475c58cc 73345e72	a		
9e8b34	5	28ed3c34 cb345e72	a		
9e8b36	5	62337b64 1b345e72	a		
9e8b39	a	c05747b9 e7345e72	a		
9e8b3d	5	7084eab0 2f345e72	a		
9e8b42	5	64c86d2b 90b45e72	a		
9e8b48	a	e3c3725e 04b45e72	a		
9e8b4f	a	8c7216a6 bcb45e72	a		
9e8b57	a	b2f16c30 fab45e72	a		
9e8b60	5	57bd3b22 c1b45e72	a		
9e8b6a	a	d0b62457 55b45e72	a		
9e8b75	a	81843a39 abb45e72	a		
9e8b81	5	0ca96681 e0745e72	a		
9e8b8e	a	aecd5a5c 1c745e72	a		
9e8b9c	5	17453fbf ce745e72	a		
9e8bab	a	f20968ad f5745e72	a		
9e8bbb	5	015f4a1e f7745e72	a		
9e8bcc	a	d8c695a0 0cf45e72	a		
9e8bde	5	614ef043 def45e72	a		
9e8bf1	a	ba81ddc7 a3f45e72	a		
9e8c05	5	64a7dc4f 680c5e72	a		
9e8c1a	5	3595c221 960c5e72	a		
9e8c30	a	cb35cc0d 830c5e72	a		
9e8c47	5	12ac13b3 788c5e72	a		
9e8c5f	5	2c2f6925 3e8c5e72	a		
9e8c78	5	3a351c84 078c5e72	a		
9e8c92	5	7396d0f3 124c5e72	a		
9e8cad	5	5b0fdfc4 6d4c5e72	a		
9e8cc9	a	aea2eb38 e4cc5e72	a		
9e8ce6	5	756dc6bc 99cc5e72	a		
9e8d04	5	214cf934 882c5e72	a		
9e8d23	5	37568c95 b12c5e72	a		
9e8d43	5	72281560 f0ac5e72	a		
9e8d64	5	643260c1 c9ac5e72	a		
9e8d86	a	e044f493 986c5e72	a		
9e8da9	5	3b8bd917 e56c5e72	a		
9e8dc0	a	ce26edeb 6cec5e72	a		
9e8df2	a	e6bfe2dc 13ec5e72	a		
9e8e18	a	82dcde3d c61c5e72	a		
9e8e3f	a	94c6ab9c ff1c5e72	a		

*Sample Data*

9e8e67		a		969059a6 799c5e72		a	
9e8e90		a		c4dfccef 425c5e72		a	
9e8eba		5		3a7fc2c3 575c5e72		a	
9e8ee5		5		57985401 69dc5e72		a	
9e8f11		5		0ae2a363 623c5e72		a	
9e8f3e		a		d12d8ee7 1f3c5e72		a	
9e8f6c		5		547063a8 0dbc5e72		a	
9e8f9b		5		063ff6e1 367c5e72		a	
9e8fcf		a		c9bc5cfe f4fc5e72		a	
9e8ffc		5		2cf00bec cffc5e72		a	
9e902e		a		8ec5052f 5d025e72		a	
9e9061		5		1074b15e 61825e72		a	
9e9095		a		9d59ede6 2a425e72		a	
9e90ca		a		f0be7b24 14c25e72		a	
9e9100		5		10e10dd0 c0225e72		a	
9e9137		a		f5ad5ac2 fb225e72		a	
9e916f		a		f7fba8f8 7da25e72		a	
9e91a8		5		2f490e5b c5625e72		a	
9e91e2		a		94979982 91e25e72		a	
9e921d		5		26cda478 2e125e72		a	
9e9259		a		aacb81dd 26925e72		a	
9e9296		a		bfac7f5b da525e72		a	
9e92d4		a		c9a7b0a7 cad25e72		a	
9e9313		a		c142bdde 32325e72		a	
616cec		5		586a491f 0dcda18d		5	
616ceb		5		37db2de7 b5cda18d		5	
616ce9		5		7d056ab7 65cda18d		5	
616ce6		a		df61566a 99cda18d		5	
616ce2		5		6fb2fb63 51cda18d		5	
616cdd		5		472bf454 2ecda18d		5	
616cd7		a		c020eb21 bacda18d		5	
616cd0		a		af918fd9 02cda18d		5	
616cc8		a		9112f54f 44cda18d		5	
616cbf		5		488b2af1 bf4da18d		5	
616cb5		a		cf803584 2b4da18d		5	
616caa		a		9eb22bea d54da18d		5	
616c9e		a		a49cb509 9e4da18d		5	
616c91		5		06f889d4 624da18d		5	
616c83		a		bf70ec37 b04da18d		5	
616c74		a		ed3f797e 8b8da18d		5	
616c64		5		1e695bcd 898da18d		5	
616c53		a		fb250cdf b28da18d		5	
616c41		5		42ad693c 608da18d		5	
616c2e		a		a5b7cc14 dd0da18d		5	
616c1a		a		9f9952f7 960da18d		5	
616c05		a		ceab4c99 680da18d		5	
616bef		a		d403ddde fdf5a18d		5	
616bd8		5		314f8acc c6f5a18d		5	
616bc0		5		0fccf05a 80f5a18d		5	
616ba7		5		25030d57 7975a18d		5	
616b8d		a		dba3037b 6c75a18d		5	
616b72		5		4439ce17 13b5a18d		5	

*Sample Data*

616b56		a		8d417247 5ab5a18d		5	
616b39		5		6a5bd76f e735a18d		5	
616b1b		5		592e8166 b635a18d		5	
616afc		5		28609d46 cfd5a18d		5	
616adc		5		51cb8c1f 4ed5a18d		5	
616abb		5		7b047112 b755a18d		5	
616a99		5		4871271b e655a18d		5	
616a76		5		24bdc8c4 9b95a18d		5	
616a52		a		edc57494 d295a18d		5	
616a2d		a		f989f30f 6d15a18d		5	
616a07		5		0729fd23 7815a18d		5	
6169e0		a		8bf0ba4f 81e5a18d		5	
6169b8		a		89a64875 0765a18d		5	
61698f		5		6cealf67 3c65a18d		5	
616965		5		2549d310 29a5a18d		5	
61693a		5		48ae45d2 1725a18d		5	
61690e		5		7280db31 5c25a18d		5	
6168e1		a		ce1b9f34 61c5a18d		5	
6168b3		5		4b46727b 7345a18d		5	
616884		a		ae0a2569 4845a18d		5	
616854		a		ea5fc581 4a85a18d		5	
616823		5		33c61a3f b105a18d		5	
6167f1		a		c49fb8c5 63f9a18d		5	
6167be		5		5a2e0cb4 5f79a18d		5	
61678a		5		60009257 1479a18d		5	
616755		a		86314e62 eab9a18d		5	
61671f		5		3defd9bb be39a18d		5	
6166e8		a		bff7e728 c5d9a18d		5	
6166b0		a		bda11512 4359a18d		5	
616677		5		6513b3b1 fb99a18d		5	
61663d		a		decd2468 af19a18d		5	
616602		a		f6542b5f d019a18d		5	
6165c6		a		dc44b49b d8e9a18d		5	
616589		5		42f500ea e469a18d		5	
61654b		a		bf2885e1 34a9a18d		5	
61650c		a		ec4c69b5 4c29a18d		5	

*Sample Data*

## 4 HEC AND PACKET HEADER SAMPLE DATA

This section contains examples of HECS computed for sample UAP and packet header contents (Data). The resulting 54 bit packet headers are shown in the rightmost column. Note that the UAP, Data and HEC values are in hexadecimal notation, while the header is in octal notation. The header is transmitted from left to right over the air.

UAP	Data	HEC	Header (octal)
-----			
00	123	e1	770007 007070 000777
47	123	06	770007 007007 700000
00	124	32	007007 007007 007700
47	124	d5	007007 007070 707077
00	125	5a	707007 007007 077070
47	125	bd	707007 007070 777707
00	126	e2	077007 007007 000777
47	126	05	077007 007070 700000
00	127	8a	777007 007007 070007
47	127	6d	777007 007070 770770
00	11b	9e	770770 007007 777007
47	11b	79	770770 007070 077770
00	11c	4d	007770 007070 770070
47	11c	aa	007770 007007 070707
00	11d	25	707770 007070 700700
47	11d	c2	707770 007007 000077
00	11e	9d	077770 007070 777007
47	11e	7a	077770 007007 077770
00	11f	f5	777770 007070 707777
47	11f	12	777770 007007 007000

---

*Sample Data*

## 5 CRC SAMPLE DATA

---

This section shows the CRC computed for a sample 10 byte payload and a UAP of 0x47.

Data:

-----

```
data[0] = 0x4e  
data[1] = 0x01  
data[2] = 0x02  
data[3] = 0x03  
data[4] = 0x04  
data[5] = 0x05  
data[6] = 0x06  
data[7] = 0x07  
data[8] = 0x08  
data[9] = 0x09
```

UAP = 0x47

==> CRC = 6d d2

Codeword (hexadecimal notation) :

-----

4e 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 6d d2

NB: Over the air each byte in the codeword  
is sent with the LSB first.

## 6 COMPLETE SAMPLE PACKETS

### 6.1 EXAMPLE OF DH1 PACKET

Packet header: (MSB...LSB)

-----  
LT\_ADDR = 011  
TYPE = 0100 (DH1)  
FLOW = 0  
ARQN = 1  
SEQN = 0

Payload: (MSB...LSB)

-----  
payload length: 5 bytes  
logical channel = 10 (UA/I, Start L2CAP message)  
flow = 1  
data byte 1 = 00000001  
data byte 2 = 00000010  
data byte 3 = 00000011  
data byte 4 = 00000100  
data byte 5 = 00000101

HEC and CRC initialization: (MSB...LSB)

-----  
uap = 01000111

NO WHITENING USED

AIR DATA (LSB...MSB)

Packet header (incl HEC) :

-----  
111111000  
000000111000  
000111000  
000111110000000000000000

Payload (incl payload header and CRC) :

-----  
01110100  
10000000  
01000000  
11000000  
00100000  
10100000  
1110110000110110

*Sample Data*

## 6.2 EXAMPLE OF DM1 PACKET

Packet header: (MSB...LSB)

```
-----  
LT_ADDR = 011  
TYPE = 0011 (DM1)  
FLOW = 0  
ARQN = 1  
SEQN = 0
```

Payload: (MSB...LSB)

```
-----  
payload length: 5 bytes  
logical channel = 10 (UA/I, Start L2CAP message)  
flow = 1  
data byte 1 = 00000001  
data byte 2 = 00000010  
data byte 3 = 00000011  
data byte 4 = 00000100  
data byte 5 = 00000101
```

HEC and CRC initialization: (MSB...LSB)

```
-----  
uap = 01000111
```

NO WHITENING USED

AIR DATA (LSB...MSB)

Packet header (incl HEC) :

```
-----  
111111000  
111111000000  
000111000  
11100000011111111111000
```

Payload (incl payload header, FEC23, CRC and 6 padded zeros) :

```
-----  
0111010010 11001  
0000000100 01011  
0000110000 11110  
0000100000 00111  
1010000011 01100  
1011000011 00010  
0110000000 10001
```

## 7 SIMPLE PAIRING SAMPLE DATA

---

This section provides sample data for the Simple Pairing cryptographic functions ( $f_1$ ,  $f_2$ ,  $f_3$ ,  $g$  and the ECDH calculations).

### 7.1 ELLIPTIC CURVE SAMPLE DATA

In each data set, the bytes are ordered from least significant on the right to most significant on the left.

#### 7.1.1 P-192 Sample Data

##### 7.1.1.1 P-192 Data Set 1

```
Private A: 07915f86918ddc27005df1d6cf0c142b625ed2eff4a518ff
Private B: 1e636ca790b50f68f15d8dbe86244e309211d635de00e16d
Public A(x) : 15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
Public A(y) : b09d42b81bc5bd009f79e4b59dbbaa857fca856fb9f7ea25
DHKey: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdcceee46
```

##### 7.1.1.2 P-192 Data Set 2

```
Private A: 52ec1ca6e0ec973c29065c3ca10be80057243002f09bb43e
Private B: 57231203533e9efe18cc622fd0e34c6a29c6e0fa3ab3bc53
Public A(x) : 45571f027e0d690795d61560804da5de789a48f94ab4b07e
Public A(y) : 0220016e8a6bce74b45ffec1e664aaa0273b7cbd907a8e2b
DHKey: a20a34b5497332aa7a76ab135cc0c168333be309d463c0c0
```

##### 7.1.1.3 P-192 Data Set 3

```
Private A: 00a0df08eaf51e6e7be519d67c6749ea3f4517cdd2e9e821
Private B: 2bf5e0d1699d50ca5025e8e2d9b13244b4d322a328be1821
Public A(x) : 2ed35b430fa45f9d329186d754eeeb0495f0f653127f613d
Public A(y) : 27e08db74e424395052ddae7e3d5a8fecb52a8039b735b73
DHKey: 3b3986ba70790762f282a12a6d3bcae7a2ca01e25b87724e
```

##### 7.1.1.4 P-192 Data Set 4

```
Private A: 030a4af66e1a4d590a83e0284fca5cdf83292b84f4c71168
Private B: 12448b5c69ecd10c0471060f2bf86345c5e83c03d16bae2c
Public A(x) : f24a6899218fa912e7e4a8ba9357cb8182958f9fa42c968c
Public A(y) : 7c0b8a9ebe6ea92e968c3a65f9f1a9716fe826ad88c97032
DHKey: 4a78f83fba757c35f94abea43e92effdd2bc700723c61939
```

*Sample Data*

### 7.1.1.5 P-192 Data Set 5

Private A: 604df406c649cb460be16244589a40895c0db7367dc11a2f  
 Private B: 526c2327303cd505b9cf0c012471902bb9e842ce32b0addc  
 Public A(x): cbe3c629aceb41b73d475a79fbfe8c08cdc80ceec00ee7c9  
 Public A(y): f9f70f7ae42abda4f33af56f7f6aa383354e453fa1a2bd18  
 DHKey: 64d4fe35567e6ea0ca31f947e1533a635436d4870ce88c45

### 7.1.1.6 P-192 Data Set 6

Private A: 1a2c582a09852979eb2cee18fb0befb9a55a6d06f6a8fad3  
 Private B: 243778916920d68df535955bc1a3cccd5811133a8205ae41  
 Public A(x): eca2d8d30bbef3ba8b7d591fdb98064a6c7b870cdcebe67c  
 Public A(y): 2e4163a44f3ae26e70dae86f1bf786e1a5db5562a8ed9fee  
 DHKey: 6433b36a7e9341940e78a63e31b3cf023282f7f1e3bf83bd

### 7.1.1.7 P-192 Data Set 7

Private A: 0f494dd08b493edb07228058a9f30797ff147a5a2adef9b3  
 Private B: 2da4cd46d9e06e81b1542503f2da89372e927877becec1be  
 Public A(x): 9f56a8aa27346d66652a546abacc7d69c17fd66e0853989f  
 Public A(y): d7234c1464882250df7bbe67e0fa22aae475dc58af0c4210  
 DHKey: c67beda9baf3c96a30616bf87a7d0ae704bc969e5cad354b

### 7.1.1.8 P-192 Data Set 8

Private A: 7381d2bc6ddecb65126564cb1af6ca1985d19fb57f0fff16  
 Private B: 18e276beff75adc3d520badb3806822e1c820f1064447848  
 Public A(x): 61c7f3c6f9e09f41423dce889de1973d346f2505a5a3b19b  
 Public A(y): 919972ff4cd6aed8a4821e3adc358b41f7be07ede20137df  
 DHKey: 6931496eef2fcfb03e0b1eef515dd4e1b0115b8b241b0b84

### 7.1.1.9 P-192 Data Set 9

Private A: 41c7b484ddc37ef6b7952c379f87593789dac6e4f3d8d8e6  
 Private B: 33e4eaa77f78216e0e99a9b200f81d2ca20dc74ad62d9b78  
 Public A(x): 9f09c773adb8e7b66b5d986cd15b143341a66d824113c15f  
 Public A(y): d2000a91738217ab8070a76c5f96c03de317dfab774f4837  
 DHKey: a518f3826bb5fa3d5bc37da4217296d5b6af51e5445c6625

### 7.1.1.10 P-192 Data Set 10

Private A: 703cf5ee9c075f7726d0bb36d131c664f5534a6e6305d631  
 Private B: 757291c620a0e7e9dd13ce09ceb729c0ce1980e64d569b5f  
 Public A(x): fa2b96d382cf894aeeb0bd985f3891e655a6315cd5060d03  
 Public A(y): f7e8206d05c7255300cc56c88448158c497f2df596add7a2  
 DHKey: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fcc18ff078f56d9c68c

---

*Sample Data*

## 7.1.2 P-256 Sample Data

### 7.1.2.1 P-256 Data Set 1

```
Private A: 3f49f6d4 a3c55f38 74c9b3e3 d2103f50 4aff607b eb40b799 5899b8a6 cd3c1abd
Private B: 55188b3d 32f6bb9a 900afcfc eed4e72a 59cb9ac2 f19d7cfb 6b4fdd49 f47fc5fd
Public A(x): 20b003d2 f297be2c 5e2c83a7 e9f9a5b9 eff49111 acf4fddb cc030148 0e359de6
Public A(y): dc809c49 652aeb6d 63329abf 5a52155c 766345c2 8fed3024 741c8ed0 1589d28b
Public B(x): 1e1f0f01 1faf1d96 09592284 f19e4c00 47b58af9 8615a69f 559077b2 2faaa190
Public B(y): 4c55f33e 429dad37 7356703a 9ab85160 472d1130 e28e3676 5f89aff9 15b1214a
DHKey:      ec0234a3 57c8ad05 341010a6 0a397d9b 99796b13 b4f866f1 868d34f3 73bfa698
```

### 7.1.2.2 P-256 Data Set 2

```
Private A: 06a51669 3c9aa31a 6084545d 0c5db641 b48572b9 7203ddff b7ac73f7 d0457663
Private B: 529aa067 0d72cd64 97502ed4 73502b03 7e8803b5 c60829a5 a3caa219 505530ba
Public A(x): 2c31a47b 5779809e f44cb5ea af5c3e43 d5f8faad 4a8794cb 987e9b03 745c78dd
Public A(y): 91951218 3898dfbe cd52e240 8e43871f d0211091 17bd3ed4 eaf84377 43715d4f
Public B(x): f465e43f f23d3f1b 9dc7dfc0 4da87581 84dbc966 204796ec cf0d6cf5 e16500cc
Public B(y): 0201d048 bcbbd899 eeffc424 164e33c2 01c2b010 ca6b4d43 a8a155ca d8ecb279
DHKey:      ab85843a 2f6d883f 62e5684b 38e30733 5fe6e194 5ecd1960 4105c6f2 3221eb69
```

## 7.2 HASH FUNCTIONS SAMPLE DATA

In each data set, the bytes are ordered from least significant on the right to most significant on the left.

### 7.2.1 f1()

#### 7.2.1.1 f1() with P-192 Inputs

Set 1a

```
U: 15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
V: 356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z: 00
output: 1bdc955a9d542ffc9f9e670cdf665010
```

Set 1b

```
U: 15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
V: 356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z: 80
output: 611325ebcb6e5269b868113306095fa6
```

Set 1c

```
U: 15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
V: 356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z: 81
output: b68df39fd8a406b06a6c517d3666cf91
```

Set 2a (swapped U and V inputs compared with set 1)

```
U: 356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
V: 15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z: 00
output: f4e1ec4b88f305e81477627b1643a927
```

Set 2b (swapped U and V inputs compared with set 1)

```
U: 356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
V: 15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z: 80
output: ac6aa7cfa96ae99dd3a74225adb068ae
```

*Sample Data*

```

Set 2c (swapped U and V inputs compared with set 1)
U:      356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
V:      15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
X:      d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z:      81
output: 5ad4721258aa1fa06082edad980d0cc5

Set 3a (U and V set to same value as U in set 1)
U:      15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
V:      15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
X:      d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z:      00
output: 49125fc1e8cdc615826c15e5d23ede41

Set 3b (U and V set to same value as V in set 1)
U:      356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
V:      356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
X:      d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z:      80
output: 159f204c520565175c2b9c523acad2eb

Set 3c (U and V set to same value as V in set 1)
U:      356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
V:      356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
X:      d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z:      81
output: 9a162ff9a8235e5b12539ba0ff9179da

```

### 7.2.1.2 f1() with P-256 Inputs

```

Set 1a
U: 20b003d2f297be2c5e2c83a7e9f9a5b9eff49111acf4fdbcc0301480e359de6
V: 55188b3d32f6bb9a900afcbeed4e72a59cb9ac2f19d7cfb6b4fdd49f47fc5fd
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z: 00
output: D301CE92CC7B9E3F51D2924B8B33FACA

Set 1b
U: 20b003d2f297be2c5e2c83a7e9f9a5b9eff49111acf4fdbcc0301480e359de6
V: 55188b3d32f6bb9a900afcbeed4e72a59cb9ac2f19d7cfb6b4fdd49f47fc5fd
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Z: 80
output: 7E431112C10DE8A3984C8AC8149FF6EC

```

## 7.2.2 g()

### 7.2.2.1 g() with P-192 Inputs

```
Set 1
U: 15207009984421a6586f9fc3fe7e4329d2809ea51125f8ed
V: 356b31938421fbbf2fb331c89fd588a69367e9a833f56812
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Y: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
output: 52146a1e
output (decimal): 1377069598
6 digits (decimal): 069598
```

### 7.2.2.2 g() with P-256 Inputs

```
Set 1
U: 20b003d2f297be2c5e2c83a7e9f9a5b9eff49111acf4fddbcc0301480e359de6
V: 55188b3d32f6bb9a900afcbeed4e72a59cb9ac2f19d7cfb6b4fdd49f47fc5fd
X: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
Y: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
output: 000240E0
output (decimal): 147680
6 digits (decimal): 147680
```

## 7.2.3 f2()

### 7.2.3.1 f2() with P-192 Inputs

```
Set 1
W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
keyID: 62746c6b
A1: 56123737bfce
A2: a713702dcfc1
output: c234c1198f3b520186ab92a2f874934e
```

### 7.2.3.2 f2() with P-256 Inputs

```
Set 1
W: ec0234a357c8ad05341010a60a397d9b99796b13b4f866f1868d34f373bfa698
N1: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
keyID: 62746c6b
A1: 56123737bfce
A2: a713702dcfc1
output: 47300bb95c7404129450674b1741104d
```

## 7.2.4 f3()

### 7.2.4.1 f3() with P-192 Inputs

Set 1

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afabc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000000
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 5e6a346b8add7ee80e7ec0c2461b1509

```

Set 2

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afabc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000001
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 7840e5445a13e3ce6e48a2decbe51482

```

Set 3

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afabc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000002
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: da9afb5c6c9dbe0af4722b532520c4b3

```

Set 4

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afabc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000003
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 2c0f220c50075285852e01bcee4b5f90

```

*Sample Data*

Set 5

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000100
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 0a096af0fa61dce0933987febe95fc7d

```

Set 6

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000101
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 49b8d74007888e770e1a49d6810069b9

```

Set 7

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000102
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 309cd0327dec2514894a0c88b101a436

```

Set 8

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000103
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 4512274ba875b156c2187e2061b90434

```

Set 9 (same as set 1 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
N2:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000000
A1:     a713702dcfc1
A2:     56123737bfce
output: 8d56dc59e70855f563b5e85e42d5964e

```

*Sample Data*

Set 10 (same as set 2 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
IOcap: 000001  
A1: a713702dcfc1  
A2: 56123737bfce  
output: c92fdacbf0ce931e9c4087a9dfb7bc0b

Set 11 (same as set 3 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
IOcap: 000002  
A1: a713702dcfc1  
A2: 56123737bfce  
output: 52ac910200dc34285bbbbf2144883c498

Set 12 (same as set 4 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
IOcap: 000003  
A1: a713702dcfc1  
A2: 56123737bfce  
output: c419d677e0d426e6bb36de5fa54c5041

Set 13 (same as set 5 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
IOcap: 000100  
A1: a713702dcfc1  
A2: 56123737bfce  
output: fb0e1f9f7c623c1bf2675fcff1551137

*Sample Data*

Set 14 (same as set 6 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
N2:     d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000101
A1:     a713702dcfc1
A2:     56123737bfce
output: 16c7be68184f1170fbdb2bef5a9c515d

```

Set 15 (same as set 7 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
N2:     d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000102
A1:     a713702dcfc1
A2:     56123737bfce
output: 24849f33d3ac05fef9034c18d9adb310

```

Set 16 (same as set 8 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
N2:     d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  000103
A1:     a713702dcfc1
A2:     56123737bfce
output: e0f484bb0b071483285903e85094046b

```

Set 17

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  010000
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 4bf22677415ed90aceb21873c71c1884

```

Set 18

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  010001
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: 0d4b97992eb570efb369cfe45e1681b5

```

*Sample Data*

Set 19

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
N1: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
N2: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
IOcap: 010002  
A1: 56123737bfce  
A2: a713702dcfc1  
output: 0f0906bbfa75e95c471e97c4211b2741

Set 20

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
N1: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
N2: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
IOcap: 010003  
A1: 56123737bfce  
A2: a713702dcfc1  
output: 88f1f60ce1ff4bf8aa08a170dd061d4e

Set 21

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
N1: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
N2: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
IOcap: 010100  
A1: 56123737bfce  
A2: a713702dcfc1  
output: 940f88f25317c358d9bd2f146778e36b

Set 22

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
N1: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
N2: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
IOcap: 010101  
A1: 56123737bfce  
A2: a713702dcfc1  
output: 591396355ac4dc72be05a15e718ec945

*Sample Data*

Set 23

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  010102
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: a3dc055f656abb1d6e11d3f37340189a

```

Set 24

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  010103
A1:     56123737bfce
A2:     a713702dcfc1
output: fd5412a22ba5dd893852608f8ab0c934

```

Set 25 (same as set 1 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
N2:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  010000
A1:     a713702dcfc1
A2:     56123737bfce
output: 2a742039c5fd6c6faafce17b619ac56f

```

Set 26 (same as set 2 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
N2:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  010001
A1:     a713702dcfc1
A2:     56123737bfce
output: a60d89efb52db7905179a6c63b8f212a

```

Set 27 (same as set 3 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

```

W:      fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46
N1:     a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
N2:     d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
R:      12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap:  010002
A1:     a713702dcfc1
A2:     56123737bfce
output: cb02f803d755fd936f0a832f4ee9fd4a

```

*Sample Data*

Set 28 (same as set 4 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
 N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
 N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
 R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
 IOcap: 010003  
 A1: a713702dcfc1  
 A2: 56123737bfce  
 output: 00786c04a24561485aaaf22808871b874

Set 29 (same as set 5 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
 N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
 N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
 R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
 IOcap: 010100  
 A1: a713702dcfc1  
 A2: 56123737bfce  
 output: 2a58ef2d99281d472a88027423f8215f

Set 30 (same as set 6 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
 N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
 N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
 R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
 IOcap: 010101  
 A1: a713702dcfc1  
 A2: 56123737bfce  
 output: ff7ab3752a144232f2cbbcbf979f5517

Set 31 (same as set 7 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
 N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
 N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
 R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
 IOcap: 010102  
 A1: a713702dcfc1  
 A2: 56123737bfce  
 output: 9d7fccef23625b1cc684fbf3f8b0e182

Set 32 (same as set 8 with N1 and N2 swapped and A1 and A2 swapped)

W: fb3ba2012c7e62466e486e229290175b4afebc13fdccee46  
 N1: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf  
 N2: d5cb8454d177733effffb2ec712baeab  
 R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8  
 IOcap: 010103  
 A1: a713702dcfc1  
 A2: 56123737bfce  
 output: 864f87e26dece4dfdde30ade1e463d4f

*Sample Data***7.2.4.2 f3() with P-256 Inputs**

Set 1

```

W: ec0234a357c8ad05341010a60a397d9b99796b13b4f866f1868d34f373bfa698
N1: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
N2: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
R: 12a3343bb453bb5408da42d20c2d0fc8
IOcap: 000000
A1: 56123737bfce
A2: a713702dcfc1
output: 5634c83c9996a86b53473fe25979ec90

```

**7.2.5 h2()**

Each element in this section except for 'L' is a multi-octet integer arranged with the least significant octet on the right and the most significant octet on the left.

Set 1 (Generic AMP initial creation)

```

W: c234c1198f3b520186ab92a2f874934ec234c1198f3b520186ab92a2f874934e
keyID: 67616d70 ('gamp')
L: 32
output: 7E010832407F59D51CB473FB0D3355899C077DD052D0F5F03F0FA4B964097A04

```

Set 2 (802.11)

```

W: 7E010832407F59D51CB473FB0D3355899C077DD052D0F5F03F0FA4B964097A04
keyID: 38303262 ('802b')
L: 32
output: D660DC08E542F1DCC32CDC2000B548F06BC1D7EB0F227DD809B50D9F1945C68E

```

Set 3 (Generic AMP refresh after 802.11)

```

W: 7E010832407F59D51CB473FB0D3355899C077DD052D0F5F03F0FA4B964097A04
keyID: 67616d70 ('gamp')
L: 32
output: AA8247E5DBAFC80F908C1C2ECA2F73E86D41DF754355994B220D5817040991B2

```

Set 4 (ECMA-368)

```

W: AA8247E5DBAFC80F908C1C2ECA2F73E86D41DF754355994B220D5817040991B2
keyID: 65636d61 ('ecma')
L: 16
output: 89286411644B33DC378A93A1B1506AFF

```

Set 5 (Generic AMP refresh after ECMA-368)

```

W: AA8247E5DBAFC80F908C1C2ECA2F73E86D41DF754355994B220D5817040991B2
keyID: 67616d70 ('gamp')
L: 32
output: 925CAE4683A2CCF105ED141F5370AB501448E83D2E43F38573120360B100F27D

```

*Sample Data***7.2.6 7.2.6 h4()**

```

Set 1a
keyID: 6274646b
A1: 56123737bfce
A2: a713702dcfc1
input: 6274646b56123737bfcea713702dcfc1
W: c234c1198f3b520186ab92a2f874934e
output: b089c4e39d7c192c3aba3c2109d24c0d0c039e700adf3a263008e65a8b00fb1fa
Device Authentication Key: b089c4e39d7c192c3aba3c2109d24c0d

```

**7.2.7 7.2.7 h5()**

```

Set 1a
R1: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeab
R2: a6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
input: d5cb8454d177733efffffb2ec712baeaba6e8e7cc25a75f6e216583f7ff3dc4cf
W: b089c4e39d7c192c3aba3c2109d24c0d
output: 746af87e1eeb1137c683b97d9d421f911f3ddf100403871b362958c458976d65
SRESmaster: 746af87e
SRESslave: 1eeb1137
ACO: c683b97d9d421f91

```

**7.2.8 7.2.8 h3()**

```

Set 1a
keyID: 6274616b
A1: 56123737bfce
A2: a713702dcfc1
ACO: c683b97d9d421f91
input: 6274616b56123737bfcea713702dcfc1c683b97d9d421f91
W: c234c1198f3b520186ab92a2f874934e
output: 677b377f74a5d501121c46492d4cb489e27fe151026ab47f271a47399c8969ff
AES Encryption key: 677b377f74a5d501121c46492d4cb489

```

## 8 WHITENING SEQUENCE SAMPLE DATA

This section shows the output of the whitening sequence generator.

Whitening Sequence (=D7)	Whitening LFSR D7.....D0
--------------------------	--------------------------

---

1	1111111
1	1101111
1	1001111
0	0001111
0	0011110
0	0111100
1	1111000
1	1100001
1	1010011
0	0110111
1	1101110
1	1001101
0	0001011
0	0010110
0	0101100
1	1011000
0	0100001
1	1000010
0	0010101
0	0101010
1	1010100
0	0111001
1	1110010
1	1110101
1	1111011
1	1100111
1	1011111
0	0101111
1	1011110
0	0101101
1	1011010
0	0100101
1	1001010
0	0000101
0	0001010
0	0010100
0	0101000
1	1010000
0	0110001
1	1100010
1	1010101
0	0111011
1	1110110

*Sample Data*

1 1111101  
1 1101011  
1 1000111  
0 0011111  
0 0111110  
1 1111100  
1 1101001  
1 1000011  
0 0010111  
0 0101110  
1 1011100  
0 0101001  
1 1010010  
0 0110101  
1 1101010  
1 1000101  
0 0011011  
0 0110110  
1 1101100  
1 1001001  
0 0000011  
0 0000110  
0 0001100  
0 0011000  
0 0110000  
1 1100000  
1 1010001  
0 0110011  
1 1100110  
1 1011101  
0 0101011  
1 1010110  
0 0111101  
1 1111010  
1 1100101  
1 1011011  
0 0100111  
1 1001110  
0 0001101  
0 0011010  
0 0110100  
1 1101000  
1 1000001  
0 0010011  
0 0100110  
1 1001100  
0 0001001  
0 0010010  
0 0100100  
1 1001000  
0 0000001  
0 0000010

*Sample Data*

0	0000100
0	0001000
0	0010000
0	0100000
1	1000000
0	0010001
0	0100010
1	1000100
0	0011001
0	0110010
1	1100100
1	1011001
0	0100011
1	1000110
0	0011101
0	0111010
1	1110100
1	1111001
1	1100011
1	1010111
0	0111111
1	1111110
1	1101101
1	1001011
0	0000111
0	0001110
0	0011100
0	0111000
1	1110000
1	1110001
1	1110011
1	1110111
1	1111111

## 9 FEC SAMPLE DATA

---

```
=====
Rate 2/3 FEC -- (15,10) Shortened Hamming Code
=====
```

Data is in hexadecimal notation, the codewords are in binary notation. The codeword bits are sent from left to right over the air interface. The space in the codeword indicates the start of parity bits.

Data:                    Codeword:

0x001	1000000000 11010
0x002	0100000000 01101
0x004	0010000000 11100
0x008	0001000000 01110
0x010	0000100000 00111
0x020	0000010000 11001
0x040	0000001000 10110
0x080	0000000100 01011
0x100	0000000010 11111
0x200	0000000001 10101

## 10 ENCRYPTION KEY SAMPLE DATA

Explanation:

For the [Section 10.1](#) through [Section 10.5](#), the hexadecimal sample data is written with the least significant byte at the leftmost position and the most significant byte at the rightmost position. Within each byte, the *least significant bit* (LSB) is at the rightmost position and the *most significant bit* (MSB) is at the leftmost position. Thus, a line reading:

aco: 48afcdd4bd40fef76693b113

means aco[0]=0x48, ac[1]=0xaf, ..., aco[11]=0x13. The LSB of aco[11] is '1' and the MSB of aco[11] is '0'.

Key [ i]: denotes the ith sub-key in Ar or A'r;  
 round r: denotes the input to the rth round;  
 added ->: denotes the input to round 3 in  
                   A'r after adding original input (of round 1).

### 10.1 FOUR TESTS OF E1

```

rand      : 00000000000000000000000000000000
address  : 000000000000
key       : 00000000000000000000000000000000
round 1 : 00000000000000000000000000000000
Key [ 1] : 00000000000000000000000000000000
Key [ 2] : 4697b1baa3b7100ac537b3c95a28ac64
round 2 : 78d19f9307d2476a523ec7a8a026042a
Key [ 3] : ecabaac66795580df89af66e66dc053d
Key [ 4] : 8ac3d8896ae9364943bfecd4969b68a0
round 3 : 600265247668dda0e81c07bbb30ed503
Key [ 5] : 5d57921fd5715ccb22c1be7bbc996394
Key [ 6] : 2a61b8343219fdfb1740e6511d41448f
round 4 : d7552ef7cc9dbde568d80c2215bc4277
Key [ 7] : dd0480dee731d67f01a2f739da6f23ca
Key [ 8] : 3ad01cd1303e12a1cd0fe0a8af82592c
round 5 : fb06bef32b52ab8f2a4f2b6ef7f6d0cd
Key [ 9] : 7dad2efc287ce75061302904f2e7233
Key [10] : c08dcfa981e2c4272f6c7a9f52e11538
round 6 : b46b711ebbf3cf69e847a75f0ab884bdd
Key [11] : fc2042c708e409555e8c147660ffdfd7
Key [12] : fa0b21001af9a6b9e89e624cd99150d2
round 7 : c585f308ff19404294f06b292e978994
Key [13] : 18b40784ea5ba4c80ecb48694b4e9c35
Key [14] : 454d54e5253c0c4a8b3fcc7db6baef4
round 8 : 2665fadbf13acf952bf74b4ab12264b9f
Key [15] : 2df37c6d9db52674f29353b0f011ed83
Key [16] : b60316733b1e8e70bd861b477e2456f1
Key [17] : 884697b1baa3b7100ac537b3c95a28ac

```

*Sample Data*

```

round 1:158ffe43352085e8a5ec7a88e1ff2ba8
Key [ 1]:e9e5dfc1b3a79583e9e5dfc1b3a79583
Key [ 2]:7595bf57e0632c59f435c16697d4c864
round 2:0b5cc75febcd7827ca29ec0901b6b5b
Key [ 3]:e31b96afcc75d286ef0ae257cbbc05b7
Key [ 4]:0d2a27b471bc0108c6263aff9d9b3b6b
round 3:e4278526c8429211f7f2f0016220aef4
added ->:f1b68365fd6217f952de6a89831fd95c
Key [ 5]:98d1eb5773cf59d75d3b17b3bc37c191
Key [ 6]:fd2b79282408ddd4ea0aa7511133336f
round 4:d0304ad18337f86040145d27aa5c8153
Key [ 7]:331227756638a41d57b0f7e071ee2a98
Key [ 8]:aa0dd8cc68b406533d0f1d64aabacf20
round 5:84db909d213bb0172b8b6aaf71bf1472
Key [ 9]:669291b0752e63f806fce76f10e119c8
Key [10]:ef8bdd46be8ee0277e9b78adef1ec154
round 6:f835f52921e903dfa762f1df5abd7f95
Key [11]:f3902eb06dc409cf78384624964bf51
Key [12]:7d72702b21f97984a721c99b0498239d
round 7:ae6c0b4bb09f25c6a5d9788a31b605d1
Key [13]:532e60bceaf902c52a06c2c283ecfa32
Key [14]:181715e5192efb2a64129668cf5d9dd4
round 8:744a6235b86cc0b853cc9f74f6b65311
Key [15]:83017c1434342d4290e961578790f451
Key [16]:2603532f365604646ff65803795ccce5
Key [17]:882f7c907b565ea58dae1c928a0dcf41
sres :056c0fe6
aco :48afcdd4bd40fef76693b113
-----
rand :bc3f30689647c8d7c5a03ca80a91ec eb
address :7ca89b233c2d
key :159dd9f43fc3d328efba0cd8a861fa57
round 1:bc3f30689647c8d7c5a03ca80a91ec eb
Key [ 1]:159dd9f43fc3d328efba0cd8a861fa57
Key [ 2]:326558b3c15551899a97790e65ff669e
round 2:3e950edf197615638cc19c09f8fedc9b
Key [ 3]:62e879b65b9f53bbfb020c624b1d682
Key [ 4]:73415f30bac8ab61f410adc9442992db
round 3:6a7640791cb536678936c5ecd4ae5a73
Key [ 5]:5093cfa1d31c1c48acd76df030ea3c31
Key [ 6]:0b4acc2b8f1f694fc7bd91f4a70f3009
round 4:fca2c022a577e2ffb2aa007589693ec7
Key [ 7]:2ca43fc817947804ecff148d50d6f6c6
Key [ 8]:3fc7d73524b533e00b7f7825bea2040a4
round 5:e97f8ea4ed1a6f4a36ffc179dc6bb563
Key [ 9]:6c67bec76ae8c8cc4d289f69436d3506
Key [10]:95ed95ee8cb97e61d75848464bffb379
round 6:38b07261d7340d028749de1773a415c7
Key [11]:ff566c1fc6b9da9ac502514550f3e9d2
Key [12]:ab5ce3f5c887d0f49b87e0d380e12f47
round 7:58241f1aed7c1c3e047d724331a0b774
Key [13]:a2cab6f95eac7d655dbe84a6cd4c47f5

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [14] : f5caff88af0af8c42a20b5bbd2c8b460
round 8:3d1aaeff53c0910de63b9788b13c490f
Key [15] : 185099c1131cf97001e2f36fda415025
Key [16] : a0ebb82676bc75e8378b189eff3f6b1d
Key [17] : cf5b348aaee27ae332b4f1bfa10289a6
round 1:2e4b417b9a2a9cf7d8417d9a6a556eb
Key [ 1] : fe78b835f26468ab069fd3991b086fda
Key [ 2] : 095c5a51c6fa6d3ac1d57fa19aa382bd
round 2:b8bca81d6bb45af9d92beadd9300f5ed
Key [ 3] : 1af866df817fd9f4ec00bc704192cffc
Key [ 4] : f4a8a059c1f575f076f5fbb24bf16590
round 3:351aa16dec2c3a4787080249ed323eae
added ->:1b65e2167656d6bafa8c19904bd79445
Key [ 5] : 8c9d18d9356a9954d341b4286e88ea1f
Key [ 6] : 5c958d370102c9881bf753e69c7da029
round 4:2ce8fef47dda6a5bee74372e33e478a2
Key [ 7] : 7eb2985c3697429fbe0da334bb51f795
Key [ 8] : af900f4b63a1138e2874bfb7c628b7b8
round 5:572787f563e1643c1c862b7555637fb4
Key [ 9] : 834c8588dd8f3d4f31117a488420d69b
Key [10] : bc2b9b81c15d9a80262f3f48e9045895
round 6:16b4968c5d02853c3a43aa4cdb5f26ac
Key [11] : f08608c9e39ad3147cba61327919c958
Key [12] : 2d4131decf4fa3a959084714a9e85c11
round 7:10e4120c7cccef9dd4ba4e6da8571b01
Key [13] : c934fd319c4a2b5361fa8eef05ae9572
Key [14] : 4904c17aa47868e40471007cde3a97c0
round 8:f9081772498fed41b6ffd72b71fcf6c6
Key [15] : ea5e28687e97fa3f833401c86e6053ef
Key [16] : 1168f58252c4ecfccafbdb3af857b9f2
Key [17] : b3440f69ef951b78b5cbd6866275301b
sres   : 8d5205c5
aco    : 3ed75df4abd9af638d144e94
-----
rand   : 0891cae063f5da1809577ff94ccdcfb
address : c62f19f6ce98
key    : 45298d06e46bac21421ddfbed94c032b
round 1:0891cae063f5da1809577ff94ccdcfb
Key [ 1] : 45298d06e46bac21421ddfbed94c032b
Key [ 2] : 8f03e1e1fe1c191cad35a897bc400597
round 2:1c6ca013480a685c1b28e0317f7167e1
Key [ 3] : 4f2ce3a092dde854ef496c8126a69e8e
Key [ 4] : 968cae2ac6d7008c07283daec67f2f2
round 3:06b4915f5fcc1fc551a52048f0af8a26
Key [ 5] : ab0d5c31f94259a6bf85ee2d22edf56c
Key [ 6] : dfb74855c0085ce73dc17b84bfd50a92
round 4:077a92b040acc86e6e0a877db197a167
Key [ 7] : 8f888952662b3db00d4e904e7ea53b5d
Key [ 8] : 5e18bfcc07799b0132db88cd6042f599
round 5:7204881fb300914825fdc863e8ceadf3
Key [ 9] : bfca91ad9bd3d1a06c582b1d5512ddd
Key [10] : a88bc477e3fa1d5a59b5e6cf793c7a41

```

*Sample Data*

```
round   6:27031131d86cea2d747deb4f756143aa
Key [11]:f3cfb8dac8aea2a6a8ef95af3a2a2767
Key [12]:77beb90670c5300b03aa2b2232d3d40c
round   7:fc8c13d49149b1ce8d86f96e44a00065
Key [13]:b578373650af36a06e19fe335d726d32
Key [14]:6bcee918c7d0d24dfdf42237fcf99d53
round   8:04ef5f5a7ddf846cda0a07782fc23866
Key [15]:399f158241eb3e079f45d7b96490e7ea
Key [16]:1bcfbe98ecde2add52aa63ea79fb917a
Key [17]:ee8bc03ec08722bc2b075492873374af
round   1:d989d7a40cde7032d17b52f8117b69d5
Key [ 1]:2ecc6cc797cc41a2ab02007f6af396ae
Key [ 2]:acfafef7609c12567d537ae1cf9dc2198
round   2:8e76eb9a29b2ad5eea790db97aeee37c1
Key [ 3]:079c8ff9b73d428df879906a0b87a6c8
Key [ 4]:19f2710baf403a494193d201f3a8c439
round   3:346bb7c35b2539676375aafe3af69089
added ->:edf48e675703a955b2f0fc062b71f95c
Key [ 5]:d623a6498f915cb2c8002765247b2f5a
Key [ 6]:900109093319bc30108b3d9434a77a72
round   4:fafb6c1f3ebbd2477be2da49dd923f69
Key [ 7]:e28e2ee6e72e7f4e5b5c11f10d204228
Key [ 8]:8e455cd11f8b9073a2dfa5413c7a4bc5
round   5:7c72230df588060a3cf920f9b0a08f06
Key [ 9]:28afb26e2c7a64238c41cef16c53e74
Key [10]:d08dcaf2096395ba0d2ddd0e471f4d
round   6:55991df991db26ff00073a12baa3031d
Key [11]:fcffdcc3ad8faae091a7055b934f87c1
Key [12]:f8df082d77060252c02d91e55bd6a7d6
round   7:70ec682ff864375f63701fa4f6be5377
Key [13]:bef3706e523d708e8a44147d7508bc35
Key [14]:3e98ab283ca2422d56a56cf8b06cae3
round   8:172f12ec933da85504b4ea5c90f8f0ea
Key [15]:87ad9625d06645d22598dd5ef811ea2c
Key [16]:8bd3db0cc8168009e5da90877e13a36f
Key [17]:0e74631d813a8351ac7039b348c41b42
sres    :00507e5f
aco     :2a5f19fbf60907e69f39ca9f
-----
rand    :0ecd61782b4128480c05dc45542b1b8c
address :f428f0e624b3
key     :35949a914225fabad91995d226de1d92
round   1:0ecd61782b4128480c05dc45542b1b8c
Key [ 1]:35949a914225fabad91995d226de1d92
Key [ 2]:ea6b3dcccc8ee5d88de349fa5010404f
round   2:8935e2e263fbc4b9302cabdfc06bce3e
Key [ 3]:920f3a0f2543ce535d4e7f25ad80648a
Key [ 4]:ad47227edf9c6874e80ba80ebb95d2c9
round   3:b4c8b878675f184a0c72f3dab51f8f05
Key [ 5]:81a941ca7202b5e884ae8fa493ecac3d
Key [ 6]:bcde1520bee3660e86ce2f0fb78b9157
round   4:77ced9f2fc42bdd5c6312b87fc2377c5
```

*Sample Data*

```
Key [ 7 ] :c8eee7423d7c6efa75ecec0d2cd969d3
Key [ 8 ] :910b3f838a02ed441fbe863a02b4a1d0
round 5 :fe28e8056f3004d60bb207e628b39cf2
Key [ 9 ] :56c647c1e865eb078348962ae070972d
Key [10] :883965da77ca5812d8104e2b640aec0d
round 6 :1f2ba92259d9e88101518f145a33840f
Key [11] :61d4cb7e4f8868a283327806a9bd8d4d
Key [12] :9f57de3a3ff310e21dc1e696ce060304
round 7 :cc9b5d0218d29037e88475152ebbeb2f
Key [13] :7aa1d8adc1aeed7127ef9a18f6eb2d8e
Key [14] :b4db9da3bf865912acd14904c7f7785d
round 8 :b04d352bedc02682e4a7f59d7cda1dba
Key [15] :a13d7141ef1f6c7d867e3d175467381b
Key [16] :08b2bc058e50d6141cdd566a307e1acc
Key [17] :057b2b4b4be5dc0ac49e50489b8006c9
round 1 :5cfacc773bae995cd7f1b81e7c9ec7df
Key [ 1 ] :1e717950f5828f3930fe4a9395858815
Key [ 2 ] :d1623369b733d98bbc894f75866c544c
round 2 :d571ffa21d9daa797b1a0a3c962fc64c
Key [ 3 ] :4abf27664ae364cc8a7e5bcf88214cc4
Key [ 4 ] :2aaedda8dc4933dd6aeaf6e5c0d5a482
round 3 :e17c8e498a00f125bf654c938c23f36d
added -> :bd765a3eb1ae8a796856048df0c1bab2
Key [ 5 ] :bc7f8ab2d86000f47b1946cc8d7a7a2b
Key [ 6 ] :6b28544cb13ec6c5d98470df2cf900b7
round 4 :a9727c26f2f06bd9920e83c8605dc76
Key [ 7 ] :1be840d9107f2c9523f66bb19f5464a1
Key [ 8 ] :61d6fb1aa2f0c2b26fb2a3d6de8c177c
round 5 :aeff751f146eab7e4626b2e2c9e2fb39
Key [ 9 ] :adabfc82570c568a233173099f23f4c2
Key [10] :b7df6b55ad266c0f1ff7452101f59101
round 6 :cf412b95f454d5185e67ca671892e5bd
Key [11] :8e04a7282a2950dcbaea28f300e22de3
Key [12] :21362c114433e29bda3e4d51f803b0cf
round 7 :16165722fe4e07ef88f8056b17d89567
Key [13] :710c8fd5bb3ccb5f132a7061de518bd9
Key [14] :0791de7334f4c87285809343f3ead3bd
round 8 :28854cd6ad4a3c572b15490d4b81bc3f
Key [15] :4f47f0e5629a674bfcd13770eb3a3bd9
Key [16] :58a6d9a16a284cc0aead2126c79608a1
Key [17] :a564082a0a98399f43f535fd5cefad34
sres   :80e5629c
aco    :a6fe4dcde3924611d3cc6ba1
```

=====

## 10.2 FOUR TESTS OF E21

```

rand      :00000000000000000000000000000000
address   :000000000000
round    1:00000000000000000000000000000000
Key [ 1]:00000000000000000000000000000006
Key [ 2]:4697b1baa3b7100ac537b3c95a28dc94
round    2:98611307ab76bbde9a86af1ce8cad412
Key [ 3]:ecabaac66795580df89af66e665d863d
Key [ 4]:8ac3d8896ae9364943bfefbd4a2a768a0
round    3:820999ad2e6618f4b578974beeedf9e7
added ->:820999ad2e6618f4b578974beeedf9e7
Key [ 5]:5d57921fd5715ccb22c1bedb1c996394
Key [ 6]:2a61b8343219fdfb1740e9541d41448f
round    4:acd6edec87581ac22dbdc64ea4ced3a2
Key [ 7]:dd0480dee731d67f01ba0f39da6f23ca
Key [ 8]:3ad01cd1303e12a18dcfe0a8af82592c
round    5:1c7798732f09fbfe25795a4a2fbc93c2
Key [ 9]:7dadbd2efc287ce7b0c1302904f2e7233
Key [10]:c08dcfa981e2f4572f6c7a9f52e11538
round    6:c05b88b56aa70e9c40c79bb81cd911bd
Key [11]:fc2042c708658a555e8c147660ffd7
Key [12]:fa0b21002605a6b9e89e624cd99150d2
round    7:abacc71b481c84c798d1bdf3d62f7e20
Key [13]:18b407e44a5ba4c80ecb48694b4e9c35
Key [14]:454d57e8253c0c4a8b3fcc7db6baef4
round    8:e8204e1183ae85cf19edb2c86215b700
Key [15]:2d0b946d9db52674f29353b0f011ed83
Key [16]:76c316733b1e8e70bd861b477e2456f1
Key [17]:8e4697b1baa3b7100ac537b3c95a28ac
Ka      :d14ca028545ec262cee700e39b5c39ee
-----
rand      :2dd9a550343191304013b2d7e1189d09
address   :cac4364303b6
round    1:cac4364303b6cac4364303b6cac43643
Key [ 1]:2dd9a550343191304013b2d7e1189d0f
Key [ 2]:14c4335b2c43910c5dcc71d81a14242b
round    2:e169f788aad45a9011f11db5270b1277
Key [ 3]:55bfb712cba168d1a48f6e74cd9f4388
Key [ 4]:2a2b3aacca695caeef2821b0fb48cc253
round    3:540f9c76652e92c44987c617035037bf
added ->:9ed3d23566e45c007fcac9alc9146dfc
Key [ 5]:a06aab22d9a287384042976b4b6b00ee
Key [ 6]:c229d054bb72e8eb230e6dcdb32d16b7
round    4:83659a41675f7171ea57909dc5a79ab4
Key [ 7]:23c4812ab1905ddf77dedaed4105649a
Key [ 8]:40d87e272a7a1554ae2e85e3638cdf52
round    5:0b9382d0ed4f2fccdbb69d0db7b130a4
Key [ 9]:bdc064c6a39f6b84fe40db359f62a3c4
Key [10]:58228db841ce3cee983aa721f36aa1b9
round    6:c6ebda0f8f489792f09c189568226c1f
Key [11]:a815bacd6fa747a0d4f52883ac63ebe7

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [12] :a9ce513b38ea006c333ecaaefcf1d0f8
round 7:75a8aba07e69c9065bcd831c40115116
Key [13] :3635e074792d4122130e5b824e52cd60
Key [14] :511bdb61bb28de72a5d794bffbf407df
round 8:57a6e279dcb764cf7dd6a749dd60c735
Key [15] :a32f5f21044b6744b6d913b13cdb4c0a
Key [16] :9722bbaeef281496ef8c23a9d41e92f4
Key [17] :807370560ad7e8a13a054a65a03b4049
Ka     :e62f8bac609139b3999aedbc9d228042
-----
rand   :dab3cfffe9d5739d1b7bf4a667ae5ee24
address :02f8fd4cd661
round 1:02f8fd4cd66102f8fd4cd66102f8fd4c
Key [1] :dab3cfffe9d5739d1b7bf4a667ae5ee22
Key [2] :e315a8a65d809ec7c289e69c899fbdcc
round 2:ef85ff081b8709405e19f3e275cec7dc
Key [3] :df6a119bb50945fc8a3394e7216448f3
Key [4] :87fe86fb0d58b5dd0fb3b6b1dab51d07
round 3:aa25c21bf577d92dd97381e3e9edcc54
added ->:a81dbf5723d8dbd524bf5782ebc5c918
Key [5] :36cc253c506c0021c91fac9d8c469e90
Key [6] :d5fda00f113e303809b7f7d78a1a2b0e
round 4:9e69ce9b53caec3990894d2baed41e0d
Key [7] :c14b5edc10cabf16bc2a2ba4a8ae1e40
Key [8] :74c6131afc8dce7e11b03b1ea8610c16
round 5:a5460fa8cedca48a14fd02209e01f02e
Key [9] :346cfcc553c6cbc9713edb55f4dc96c
Key [10] :bddf027cb059d58f0509f8963e9bdec6
round 6:92b33f11eadcacc5a43dd05f13d334dd
Key [11] :8eb9e040c36c4c0b4a7fd3dd354d53c4
Key [12] :c6ffecdd5e135b20879b9dfa4b34bf51
round 7:fb0541aa5e5df1a61c51aef606eb5a41
Key [13] :bf12f5a6ba08dfc4fda4bdfc68c997d9
Key [14] :37c4656b9215f3c959ea688fb64ad327
round 8:f0bbd2b94ae374346730581fc77a9c98
Key [15] :e87bb0d86bf421ea4f779a8eee3a866c
Key [16] :faa471e934fd415ae4c0113ec7f0a5ad
Key [17] :95204a80b8400e49db7cf6fd2fd40d9a
Ka     :b0376d0a9b338c2e133c32b69cb816b3
-----
rand   :13ecad08ad63c37f8a54dc56e82f4dc1
address :9846c5ead4d9
round 1:9846c5ead4d99846c5ead4d99846c5ea
Key [1] :13ecad08ad63c37f8a54dc56e82f4dc7
Key [2] :ad04f127bed50b5e671d6510d392eaed
round 2:97374e18cdd0a6f7a5aa49d1ac875c84
Key [3] :57ad159e5774fa222f2f3039b9cd5101
Key [4] :9a1e9e1068fede02ef90496e25fd8e79
round 3:9dd3260373edd9d5f4e774826b88fd2d
added ->:0519ebe9a7c6719331d1485bf3cec2c7
Key [5] :378dce167db62920b0b392f7cfca316e
Key [6] :db4277795c87286faee6c9e9a6b71a93

```

*Sample Data*

```

round  4:40ec6563450299ac4e120d88672504d6
Key [ 7]:ec01aa2f5a8a793b36c1bb858d254380
Key [ 8]:2921a66cfa5bf74ac535424564830e98
round  5:57287bbb041bd6a56c2bd931ed410cd4
Key [ 9]:07018e45aab61b3c3726ee3d57dbd5f6
Key [10]:627381f0fa4c02b0c7d3e7dfbffc3333
round  6:66affa66a8dc3d36e36bf6c3f1c6a276e
Key [11]:33b57c925bd5551999f716e138efbe79
Key [12]:a6dc7f9aa95bcc9243aebd12608f657a
round  7:450e65184fd8c72c578d5cdec286743
Key [13]:a6a6db00fd8c72a28ea57ea542f6e102
Key [14]:dcf3377daeb2e24e61f0ad6620951c1f
round  8:e5eb180b519a4e673f21b7c4f4573f3d
Key [15]:621240b9506b462a7fa250da41844626
Key [16]:ae297810f01f43dc35756cd119ee73d6
Key [17]:b959835ec2501ad3894f8b8f1f4257f9
Ka     :5b61e83ad04d23e9d1c698851fa30447
=====

```

## 10.3 THREE TESTS OF E22

(for K\_master and overlay generation)

```

rand    :001de169248850245a5f7cc7f0d6d633
PIN     :d5a51083a04a1971f18649ea8b79311a
round   1:001de169248850245a5f7cc7f0d6d623
Key [ 1]:d5a51083a04a1971f18649ea8b79311a
Key [ 2]:7317cdbff57f9b99f9810a2525b17cc7
round   2:5f05c143347b59acae3cb002db23830f
Key [ 3]:f08bd258adf1d4ae4a54d8ccb26220b2
Key [ 4]:91046cbb4ccc43db18d6dd36ca7313eb
round   3:c8f3e3300541a25b6ac5a80c3105f3c4
added ->:c810c45921c9f27f302424cbc1dbc9e7
Key [ 5]:67fb2336f4d9f069da58d11c82f6bd95
Key [ 6]:4fed702c75bd72c0d3d8f38707134c50
round   4:bd5e0c3a97fa55b91a3bbbf306ebb978
Key [ 7]:41c947f80cdc0464c50aa89070af314c
Key [ 8]:680eecfa8daf41c7109c9a5cb1f26d75
round   5:21c1a762c3cc33e75ce8976a73983087
Key [ 9]:6e33fdbd94d00ff8f72e8a7a0d2cebc4c
Key [10]:f4d726054c6b948add99fab5733ddc3
round   6:56d0df484345582f6b574a449ba155eb
Key [11]:4eda2425546a24cac790f49ef2453b53
Key [12]:cf2213624ed1510408a5a3e00b7333df
round   7:120cf9963fe9ff22993f7fdf9600d9b8
Key [13]:d04b1a25b0b8fec946d5ecfa626d04c9
Key [14]:01e5611b0f0e140bdb64585fd3ae5269
round   8:a6337400ad8cb47fefb91332f5cb2713
Key [15]:f15b2dc433f534f61bf718770a3698b1
Key [16]:f990d0273d8ea2b9e0b45917a781c720
Key [17]:f41b3cc13d4301297bb6bdfcb3e5a1dd
Ka     :539e4f2732e5ae2de1e0401f0813bd0d

```

*Sample Data*

```
-----
rand      : 67ed56bfcf99825f0c6b349369da30ab
PIN       : 7885b515e84b1f082cc499976f1725ce
round    1: 67ed56bfcf99825f0c6b349369da30bb
Key [ 1] : 7885b515e84b1f082cc499976f1725ce
Key [ 2] : 72445901fdaf506beb036f4412512248
round    2: 6b160b66a1f6c26c1f3432f463ef5aa1
Key [ 3] : 59f0e4982e97633e5e7fd133af8f2c5b
Key [ 4] : b4946ec77a41bf7c729d191e33d458ab
round    3: 3f22046c964c3e5ca2a26ec9a76a9f67
added ->: 580f5ad359e5c003ae0da25ace44cfdc
Key [ 5] : eb0b839f97bdf534183210678520bbef
Key [ 6] : cff0bc4a94e5c8b2a2d24d9f59031e19
round    4: 87aa61fc0ff88e744c195249b9a33632
Key [ 7] : 592430f14d8f93db95dd691af045776d
Key [ 8] : 3b55b404222bf445a6a2ef5865247695
round    5: 83dcf592a854226c4dc94e1ecf1bc75
Key [ 9] : a9714b86319ef343a28b87456416bd52
Key [10] : e6598b24390b3a0bf2982747993b0d78
round    6: dee0d13a52e96bcf7c72045a21609fc6
Key [11] : 62051d8c51973073bff959b032c6e1e2
Key [12] : 29e94f4ab73296c453c833e217a1a85b
round    7: 08488005761e6c7c4dbb203ae453fe3a
Key [13] : 0e255970b3e2fc235f59fc5acb10e8ce
Key [14] : d0dfbb3361fee6d4ffe45babf1cd7abf
round    8: od81e89bddde7a7065316c47574feb8f
Key [15] : c12eee4eb38b7a171f0f736003774b40
Key [16] : 8f962523f1c0abd9a087a0dfb11643d3
Key [17] : 24be1c66cf8b022f12f1fb4c60c93fd1
Ka       : 04435771e03a9daceb8bb1a493ee9bd8
-----
rand      : 40a94509238664f244ff8e3d13b119d3
PIN       : 1ce44839badde30396d03c4c36f23006
round    1: 40a94509238664f244ff8e3d13b119c3
Key [ 1] : 1ce44839badde30396d03c4c36f23006
Key [ 2] : 6dd97a8f91d628be4b18157af1a9dcba
round    2: 0eac5288057d9947a24eabc1744c4582
Key [ 3] : fef9583d5f55fd4107ad832a725db744
Key [ 4] : fc3893507016d7c1db2bd034a230a069
round    3: 60b424f1082b0cc3bd61be7b4c0155f0
added ->: 205d69f82bb17031f9604c465fb26e33
Key [ 5] : 0834d04f3e7e1f7f85f0c1db685ab118
Key [ 6] : 1852397f9a3723169058e9b62bb3682b
round    4: 2c6b65a49d66af6566675afdd6fa7d7d
Key [ 7] : 6c10da21d762ae4ac1ba22a96d9007b4
Key [ 8] : 9aa23658b90470a78d686344b8a9b0e7
round    5: a2c537899665113a42f1ac24773bdc31
Key [ 9] : 137dee3bf879fe7bd02fe6d888e84f16
Key [10] : 466e315a1863f47d0f93bc6827cf3450
round    6: e26982980d79b21ed3e20f8c3e71ba96
Key [11] : 0b33cf831465bb5c979e6224d7f79f7c
Key [12] : 92770660268ede827810d707a0977d73
```

*Sample Data*

```

round  7:e7b063c4e2e3110b89b7e1631c762dd5
Key [13]:7be30ae4961cf24ca17625a77bb7a9f8
Key [14]:be65574a33ae30e6e82dbd2826d3cc1a
round  8:7a963e37b2c2e76b489cfce40a2cf00e5
Key [15]:ed0ba7dd30d60a5e69225f0a33011e5b
Key [16]:765c990f4445e52b39e6ed6105ad1c4f
Key [17]:52627bf9f35d94f30d5b07ef15901adc
Ka     :9cde4b60f9b5861ed9df80858bac6f7f
=====
```

## 10.4 TESTS OF E22 WITH PIN AUGMENTING

for PIN lengths 1,...,16 bytes

```

rand    :24b101fd56117d42c0545a4247357048
PIN length =16 octets
PIN      :fd397c7f5c1f937cdf82d8816cc377e2
round   1:24b101fd56117d42c0545a4247357058
Key [ 1]:fd397c7f5c1f937cdf82d8816cc377e2
Key [ 2]:0f7aac9c9b53f308d9fdbf2c78e3c30e
round   2:838edfe1226266953ccba8379d873107
Key [ 3]:0b8ac18d4bb44fad2efa115e43945abc
Key [ 4]:887b16b062a83bfa469772c25b456312
round   3:8cd0c9283120aba89a7f9d635dd4fe3f
added   ->:a881cad5673128ea5ad3f7211a096e67
Key [ 5]:2248cbe6d299e9d3e8fd35a91178f65b
Key [ 6]:b92af6237385bd31f8fb57fb1bdd824e
round   4:2648d9c618a622b10ef80c4dbaf68b99
Key [ 7]:2bf5ffe84a37878ede2d4c30be60203b
Key [ 8]:c9cb6cec60cb8a8f29b99fcf3e71e40f
round   5:b5a7d9e96f68b14ccebf361de3914d0f
Key [ 9]:5c2f8a702e4a45575b103b0cce8a91c6
Key [10]:d453db0c9f9ddbd11e355d9a34d9b11b
round   6:632a091e7eefe1336857ddafdf1ff3265
Key [11]:32805db7e59c5ed4acabf38d27e3fce
Key [12]:fde3a8eedfa3a12be09c1a8a00890fd7
round   7:048531e9fd3efa95910540150f8b137b
Key [13]:def07eb23f3a378f059039a2124bc4c2
Key [14]:2608c58f23d84a09b9ce95e5caac1ab4
round   8:461814ec7439d412d0732f0a6f799a6a
Key [15]:0a7ed16481a623e56ee1442ffa74f334
Key [16]:12add59aca0d19532f1516979954e369
Key [17]:dd43d02d39ffd6a386a4b98b4ac6eb23
Ka     :a5f2adf328e4e6a2b42f19c8b74ba884
-----
rand    :321964061ac49a436f9fb9824ac63f8b
PIN length =15 octets
PIN      :ad955d58b6b8857820ac1262d617a6
address :0314c0642543
round   1:321964061ac49a436f9fb9824ac63f9b
```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [ 1 ] :ad955d58b6b8857820ac1262d617a603
Key [ 2 ] :f281736f68e3d30b2ac7c67f125dc416
round 2:7c4a4ece1398681f4baf309328b7770
Key [ 3 ] :43c157f4c8b360387c32ab330f9c9aa8
Key [ 4 ] :3a3049945a298f6d076c19219c47c3cb
round 3:9672b00738bdfaf9bd92a855bc6f3afb
added ->:a48b1401228194bad23161d7f6357960
Key [ 5 ] :c8e2eaa6d73b7de18f3228ab2173bc69
Key [ 6 ] :8623f44488222e66a293677cf30bf2bb
round 4:9b30247aad3bf133712d034b46d21c68
Key [ 7 ] :f3e500902fba31db9bae50ef30e484a4
Key [ 8 ] :49d4b1137c18f4752dd9955a5a8d2f43
round 5:4492c25fda08083a768b4b5588966b23
Key [ 9 ] :9d59c451989e74785cc097eda7e42ab8
Key [10] :251de25f3917cd99c18646107a641fb
round 6:21ae346635714d2623041f269978c0ee
Key [11] :80b8f78cb1a49ec0c3e32a238e60ffdf
Key [12] :beb84f4d20a501e4a24ecfbde481902b
round 7:9b56a3d0f8932f20c6a77a229514fb00
Key [13] :852571b44f35fd9d9336d3c1d2506656
Key [14] :d0a0d510fb06ba76e69b8ee3ebc1b725
round 8:6cd8492b2fd31a86978bcd644eb08a8
Key [15] :c7ffd523f32a874ed4a93430a25976de
Key [16] :16cdcb25e62964876d951fdcc07030d3
Key [17] :def32c0e12596f9582e5e3c52b303f52
Ka :c0ec1a5694e2b48d54297911e6c98b8f
-----
rand :d4ae20c80094547d7051931b5cc2a8d6
PIN length =14 octets
PIN :e1232e2c5f3b833b3309088a87b6
address :fabecc58e609
round 1:d4ae20c80094547d7051931b5cc2a8c6
Key [ 1 ] :e1232e2c5f3b833b3309088a87b6fabe
Key [ 2 ] :5f0812b47cd3e9a30d7707050ffffa1f2
round 2:1f45f16be89794bef33e4547c9c0916a
Key [ 3 ] :77b681944763244ffa3cd71b248b79b5
Key [ 4 ] :e2814e90e04f485958ce58c9133e2be6
round 3:b10d2f4ac941035263cee3552d774d2f
added ->:65bb4f82c9d5572f131f764e7139f5e9
Key [ 5 ] :520acad20801dc639a2c6d66d9b79576
Key [ 6 ] :c72255cdb61d42be72bd45390dd25ba5
round 4:ead4dc34207b6ea721c62166e155aaad
Key [ 7 ] :ebf04c02075bf459ec9c3ec06627d347
Key [ 8 ] :a1363dd2812ee800a4491c0c74074493
round 5:f507944f3018e20586d81d7f326aae9d
Key [ 9 ] :b0b6ba79493dc833d7f425be7b8dad6
Key [10] :08cd23e536b9b53e85eb004cba3111
round 6:fff450f4302a2b3571e8405e148346da
Key [11] :fec22374c6937dc26171f4d2edfada3
Key [12] :0f1a8ef5979c69ff44f620c2e007b6e4
round 7:de558779589897f3402a90ee78c3f921
Key [13] :901fb66f0779d6aad0c0fbaf812cb5

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [14]:a0cab3cd15cd23603adc8d4474efb239
round 8:b2df0aa0c9f07fbbaa02f510a29cf540
Key [15]:18edc3f4296dd6f1dea13f7c143117a1
Key [16]:8d3d52d700a379d72ded81687f7546c7
Key [17]:5927badfe602f29345f840bb53e1dea6
Ka     :d7b39be13e3692c65b4a9e17a9c55e17
-----
rand   :272b73a2e40db52a6a61c6520549794a
PIN length =13 octets
PIN    :549f2694f353f5145772d8ae1e
address :20487681eb9f
round 1:272b73a2e40db52a6a61c6520549795a
Key [ 1]:549f2694f353f5145772d8ae1e204876
Key [ 2]:42c855593d66b0c458fd28b95b6a5fbf
round 2:d7276dc8073f7677c31f855bde9501e2
Key [ 3]:75d0a69ae49a2da92e457d767879df52
Key [ 4]:b3aa7e7492971afaa0fb2b64827110df
round 3:71aae503831133d19bc452da4d0e409b
added ->:56d558a1671ee8fbf12518884857b9c1
Key [ 5]:9c8cf1604a98e9a503c342e272de5cf6
Key [ 6]:d35bc2df6b85540a27642106471057d9
round 4:f41a709c89ea80481aa3d2b9b2a9f8ca
Key [ 7]:b454dda74aeb4eff227ba48a58077599
Key [ 8]:bcba6aec050116aa9b7c6a9b7314d796
round 5:20fdda20f4a26b1bd38eb7f355a7be87
Key [ 9]:d41f8a9de0a716eb7167a1b6e321c528
Key [10]:5353449982247782d168ab43f17bc4d8
round 6:a70e316997eedd49a5a9ef9ba5e913b5
Key [11]:32cbc9cf1a81e36a45153972347ce4ac
Key [12]:5747619006cf4ef834c749f2c4b9feb6
round 7:e66f2317a825f589f76b47b6aa6e73fb
Key [13]:f9b68beba0a09d2a570a7dc88cc3c3c2
Key [14]:55718f9a4f0b1f9484e8c6b186a41a4b
round 8:5f68f940440a9798e074776019804ada
Key [15]:4ecc29be1b4d78433f6aa30db974a7fb
Key [16]:8470a066ffb00cda7b08059599f919f5
Key [17]:f39a36d74e960a051e1ca98b777848f4
Ka     :9ac64309a37c25c3b4a584fc002a1618
-----
rand   :7edb65f01a2f45a2bc9b24fb3390667e
PIN length =12 octets
PIN    :2e5a42797958557b23447ca8
address :04f0d2737f02
round 1:7edb65f01a2f45a2bc9b24fb3390666e
Key [ 1]:2e5a42797958557b23447ca804f0d273
Key [ 2]:18a97c856561eb23e71af8e9e1be4799
round 2:3436e12db8ffdc1265cb5a86da2fed0b
Key [ 3]:7c0908dbc73201e17c4f7aalab8aec8
Key [ 4]:7cb58833602fbe4194c7cc797ce8c454
round 3:caed6af4226f67e4ad1914620803ef2a
added ->:b4c8cf04389eac4611b438993b935544
Key [ 5]:f4dce7d607b5234562d0ebb2267b08b8

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [ 6] : 560b75c5545751fd8fa99fa4346e654b
round 4 : ee67c87d6f74bb75db98f68bff0192c1
Key [ 7] : 32f10cef8d3e6424c6f91f1437808af
Key [ 8] : a934a46045be30fb3be3a5f3f7b18837
round 5 : 792398dcbeb8d10bdb07ae3c819e943c
Key [ 9] : a0f12e97c677a0e8ac415cd2c8a7ca88
Key [10] : e27014c908785f5ca03e8c6a1da3bf13
round 6 : e778b6e0c3e8e7edf90861c7916d97a8
Key [11] : 1b4a4303bcc0b2e0f41c72d47654bd9f
Key [12] : 4b1302a50046026d6c9054fc8387965a
round 7 : 1fafddc7efa5f04c1dec1869d3f2d9bb
Key [13] : 58c334bb543d49eca562cdbe0280e0fc
Key [14] : bdb60d383c692d06476b76646c8dec48
round 8 : 3d7c326d074bd6aa222ea050f04a3c7f
Key [15] : 78c0162506be0b5953e8403c01028f93
Key [16] : 24d7dbbe834dbd7b67f57fcf0d39d60f
Key [17] : 2e74f1f3331c0f6585e87b2f715e187e
Ka     : d3af4c81e3f482f062999dee7882a73b
-----
rand   : 26a92358294dce97b1d79ec32a67e81a
PIN length =11 octets
PIN     : 05fbad03f52fa9324f7732
address : b9ac071f9d70
round 1 : 26a92358294dce97b1d79ec32a67e80a
Key [ 1] : 05fbad03f52fa9324f7732b9ac071f9d
Key [ 2] : 2504c9691c04a18480c8802e922098c0
round 2 : 0be20e3d76888e57b6bf77f97a8714fb
Key [ 3] : 576b2791d1212bea8408212f2d43e77e
Key [ 4] : 90ae36dcce8724adb618f912d1b27297
round 3 : 1969667060764453257d906b7e58bd5b
added -> : 3f12892849c312c494542ea854bfa551
Key [ 5] : bc492c42c9e87f56ec31af5474e9226e
Key [ 6] : c135d1dbed32d9519acf84169f3e1a10
round 4 : ac404205118fe771e54aa6f392da1153
Key [ 7] : 83ccbdbba1f17889b7d18254dc9252fa1
Key [ 8] : 80b90a1767d3f2848080802764e21711
round 5 : 41795e89ae9a0cf776ffce76f47fd7a
Key [ 9] : cc24e4a86e8eed129118fd3d5223a1dc
Key [10] : 7b1e9c0eb9dab083574be7b7015a62c9
round 6 : 29ca9e2f87ca00370ef1633505bfba4b
Key [11] : 888e6d88cf4beb965cf7d4f32b696baa
Key [12] : 6d642f3e5510b0b043a44daa2cf5eec0
round 7 : 81fc891c3c6fd99acc00028a387e2366
Key [13] : e224f85da2ab63a23e2a3a036e421358
Key [14] : c8dc22aaa739e2cb85d6a0c08226c7d0
round 8 : e30b537e7a000e3d2424a9c0f04c4042
Key [15] : a969aa818c6b324bae391bedcdd9d335
Key [16] : 6974b6f2f07e4c55f2cc0435c45bebd1
Key [17] : 134b925ebd98e6b93c14aee582062fc
Ka     : be87b44d079d45a08a71d15208c5cb50
-----
rand   : 0edef05327eab5262430f21fc91ce682

```

*Sample Data*

```

PIN length =10 octets
PIN      :8210e47390f3f48c32b3
address  :7a3cdfe377d1
round   1:0edef05327eab5262430f21fc91ce692
Key [ 1]:8210e47390f3f48c32b37a3cdfe377d1
Key [ 2]:c6be4c3e425e749b620a94c779e33a7e
round   2:07ca3c7a7a6bcbc31d79a856d9cffc0e
Key [ 3]:2587cec2a4b8e4f996a9ed664350d5dd
Key [ 4]:70e4bf72834d9d3dbb7eb2c239216dc0
round   3:792ad2ac4e4559d1463714d2f161b6f4
added ->:7708c2ff692f0ef7626706cd387d9c66
Key [ 5]:6696e1e7f8ac037e1fff3598f0c164e2
Key [ 6]:23dbfe4d0b561bea08fbcef25e49b648
round   4:7d8c71a9d7fdbcb851bdf074550b100
Key [ 7]:b03648acd021550edee904431a02f00c
Key [ 8]:cb169220b7398e8f077730aa4bf06baa
round   5:b6fcaa45064ffd557e4b7b30cfbb83e0
Key [ 9]:af602c2ba16a454649951274c2be6527
Key [10]:5d60b0a7a09d524143eca13ad680bc9c
round   6:b3416d391a0c26c558843debd0601e9e
Key [11]:9a2f39bfe558d9f562c5f09a5c3c0263
Key [12]:72cae8eebd7fabd9b1848333c2aab439
round   7:abe4b498d9c36ea97b8fd27d7f813913
Key [13]:15f27ea11e83a51645d487b81371d7dc
Key [14]:36083c8666447e03d33846edf444eb12
round   8:8032104338a945ba044d102eabda3b22
Key [15]:0a3a8977dd48f3b6c1668578befadd02
Key [16]:f06b6675d78ca0ee5b1761bdcab516d
Key [17]:cbc8a7952d33aa0496f7ea2d05390b23
Ka      :bf0706d76ec3b11cce724b311bf71ff5
-----
rand    :86290e2892f278ff6c3fb917b020576a
PIN length = 9 octets
PIN      :3dcdffcf086802107
address  :791a6a2c5cc3
round   1:86290e2892f278ff6c3fb917b0205765
Key [ 1]:3dcdffcf086802107791a6a2c5cc33d
Key [ 2]:b4962f40d7bb19429007062a3c469521
round   2:1ec59ffd3065f19991872a7863b0ef02
Key [ 3]:eb9ede6787dd196b7e340185562bf28c
Key [ 4]:2964e58aacf7287d1717a35b100ae23b
round   3:f817406f1423fc2fe33e25152679eaaaf
added ->:7e404e47861574d08f7dde02969941ca
Key [ 5]:6abf9a314508fd61e486fa4e376c3f93
Key [ 6]:6da148b7ee2632114521842cbb274376
round   4:e9c2a8fac22b8c7cf0c619e2b3f890ed
Key [ 7]:df889cc34fda86f01096d52d116e620d
Key [ 8]:5eb04b147dc39d1974058761ae7b73fc
round   5:444a8aac0efee1c02f8d38f8274b7b28
Key [ 9]:8426cc59eee391b2bd50cf8f1efef8b3
Key [10]:8b5d220a6300ade418da791dd8151941
round   6:9185f983db150b1bccable5c12eb63a1

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [11]:82ba4ddef833f6a4d18b07aa011f2798
Key [12]:ce63d98794682054e73d0359dad35ec4
round 7:5edeb2668f5916dfd036c09e87902886
Key [13]:da794357652e80c70ad8b0715dbe33d6
Key [14]:732ef2c0c3220b31f3820c375e27bb29
round 8:88a5291b4acbba009a85b7dd6a834b3b
Key [15]:3ce75a61d4b465b70c95d7cccd5799633
Key [16]:5df9bd2c3a17a840cdaafb76c171db7c
Key [17]:3f8364b089733d902bccb0cd3386846f
Ka :cdb0cc68f6f6fb70b46652de3ef3ffb
-----
rand :3ab52a65bb3b24a08eb6cd284b4b9d4b
PIN length = 8 octets
PIN :d0fb9b6838d464d8
address :25a868db91ab
round 1:3ab52a65bb3b24a08eb6cd284b4b9d45
Key [1]:d0fb9b6838d464d825a868db91abd0fb
Key [2]:2573f47b49dad6330a7a9155b7ae8ba1
round 2:ad2ffdff408fcfab44941016a9199251
Key [3]:d2c5b8fb80cba13712905a589adaee71
Key [4]:5a3381511b338719fae242758dea0997
round 3:2ddc17e570d7931a2b1d13f6ace928a5
added ->:17914180cb12b7baa5d3e0dee734c5e0
Key [5]:e0a4d8ac27fbe2783b7bcb3a36a6224d
Key [6]:949324c6864deac3eca8e324853e11c3
round 4:62c1db5cf31590d331ec40ad692e8df5
Key [7]:6e67148088a01c2d4491957cc9ddc4aa
Key [8]:557431deab7087bb4c03fa27228f60c6
round 5:9c8933bc361f4bde4d1bda2b5f8bb235
Key [9]:a2551aca53329e70ade3fd2bb7664697
Key [10]:05d0ad35de68a364b54b56e2138738fe
round 6:9156db34136aa06655bf28a05be0596a
Key [11]:1616a6b13ce2f2895c722e8495181520
Key [12]:b12e78a1114847b01f6ed2f5a1429a23
round 7:84dcc292ed836c1c2d523f2a899a2ad5
Key [13]:316e144364686381944e95af8a026bb
Key [14]:1ab551b88d39d97ea7a9fe136dbfe2e1
round 8:87bdcac878d777877f4eccf042cfee5e
Key [15]:70e21ab08c23c7544524b64492b25cc9
Key [16]:35f730f2ae2b950a49a1bf5c8b9f8866
Key [17]:2f16924c22db8b74e2eadf1ba4ebd37c
Ka :983218718ca9aa97892e312d86dd9516
-----
rand :a6dc447ff08d4b366ff96e6cf207e179
PIN length = 7 octets
PIN :9c57e10b4766cc
address :54ebd9328cb6
round 1:a6dc447ff08d4b366ff96e6cf207e174
Key [1]:9c57e10b4766cc54ebd9328cb69c57e1
Key [2]:00a609f4d61db26993c8177e3ee2bba8
round 2:1ed26b96a306d7014f4e5c9ee523b73d
Key [3]:646d7b5f9aa528384bda3953b542764

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [ 4 ] : a051a42212c0e9ad5c2c248259aca14e
round 3 : a53f526db18e3d7d53edbfc9711041ed
added -> : 031b9612411b884b3ce62da583172299
Key [ 5 ] : d1bd5e64930e7f838d8a33994462d8b2
Key [ 6 ] : 5dc7e2291e32435665ebd6956bec3414
round 4 : 9438be308ec83f35c560e2796f4e0559
Key [ 7 ] : 10552f45af63b0f15e2919ab37f64fe7
Key [ 8 ] : c44d5717c114a58b09207392ebe341f8
round 5 : b79a7b14386066d339f799c40479cb3d
Key [ 9 ] : 6886e47b782325568eaf59715a75d8ff
Key [ 10 ] : 8e1e335e659cd36b132689f78c147bda
round 6 : ef232462228aa166438d10c34e17424b
Key [ 11 ] : 8843e feedd5c2b7c3304d647f932f4d1
Key [ 12 ] : 13785aaedd0adf67abb4f01872392785
round 7 : 02d133fe40d15f1073673b36bba35abd
Key [ 13 ] : 837d7ca2722419e6be3fae35900c3958
Key [ 14 ] : 93f8442973e7fccf2e7232d1d057c73a
round 8 : 275506a3d08c84e94cc58ed60054505e
Key [ 15 ] : 8a7a9edffa3c52918bc6a45f57d91f5d
Key [ 16 ] : f214a95d777f763c56109882c4b52c84
Key [ 17 ] : 10e2ee92c5ealddc5eb010e55510c403
Ka      : 9cd6650ead86323e87cafblff516d1e0
-----
rand    : 3348470a7ea6cc6eb81b40472133262c
PIN length = 6 octets
PIN      : fcad169d7295
address : 430d572f8842
round 1 : 3348470a7ea6cc6eb81b404721332620
Key [ 1 ] : fcad169d7295430d572f8842fcad169d
Key [ 2 ] : b3479d4d4fd178c43e7bc5b0c7d8983c
round 2 : af976da9225066d563e10ab955e6fc32
Key [ 3 ] : 7112462b37d82dd81a2a35d9eb43cb7c
Key [ 4 ] : c5a7030f8497945ac7b84600d1d161fb
round 3 : d08f826ebd55a0bd7591c19a89ed9bde
added -> : e3d7c964c3fb6cd3cdac01dda820c1fe
Key [ 5 ] : 84b0c6ef4a63e4dff19b1f546d683df5
Key [ 6 ] : f4023edfc95d1e79ed4bb4de9b174f5d
round 4 : 6cd952785630dfc7cf81eea625e42c5c
Key [ 7 ] : ea38dd9a093ac9355918632c90c79993
Key [ 8 ] : dbba01e278ddc76380727f5d7135a7de
round 5 : 93573b2971515495978264b88f330f7f
Key [ 9 ] : d4dc3a31be34e412210fafafa6eca00776
Key [ 10 ] : 39d1e190ee92b0ff16d92a8be58d2fa0
round 6 : b3f01d5e7fe1ce6da7b46d8c389baf47
Key [ 11 ] : 1eb081328d4bcf94c9117b12c5cf22ac
Key [ 12 ] : 7e047c2c552f9f1414d946775fabfe30
round 7 : 0b833bff6106d5bae033b4ce5af5a924
Key [ 13 ] : e78e685d9b2a7e29e7f2a19d1bc38ebd
Key [ 14 ] : 1b582272a3121718c4096d2d8602f215
round 8 : 23de0bbdc70850a7803f4f10c63b2c0f
Key [ 15 ] : 8569e860530d9c3d48a0870dac33f676
Key [ 16 ] : 6966b528fdd1dc222527052c8f6cf5a6

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [17] :a34244c757154c53171c663b0b56d5c2
Ka      :98f1543ab4d87bd5ef5296fb5e3d3a21
-----
rand    :0f5bb150b4371ae4e5785293d22b7b0c
PIN length = 5 octets
PIN     :b10d068bca
address :b44775199f29
round   1:0f5bb150b4371ae4e5785293d22b7b07
Key [ 1]:b10d068bcab44775199f29b10d068bca
Key [ 2]:aec70d1048f1bbd2c18040318a8402ad
round   2:342d2b79d7fb7cd110379742b9842c79
Key [ 3]:6d8d5cf338f29ef4420639ef488e4fa9
Key [ 4]:a1584117541b759ba6d9f7eb2bedcbba
round   3:9407e8e3e810603921bf81cfda62770a
added ->:9b6299b35c477addc437d35c088df20d
Key [ 5]:09a20676666aaeed6f22176274eb433f4
Key [ 6]:840472c001add5811a054be5f5c74754
round   4:9a3ba953225a7862c0a842ed3d0b2679
Key [ 7]:fad9e45c8bf70a972fcdb9bff0e8751f5
Key [ 8]:e8f30ff666df2d12263416496ff3b2c2
round   5:2c573b6480852e875df34b28a5c44509
Key [ 9]:964cdba0cf8d593f2fc40f96daf8267a
Key [10]:bcd65c11b13e1a70bcd4aab8864fe3
round   6:21b0cc49e880c5811d24dee0194e6e9e
Key [11]:468c8548ea9653c1a10df6288dd03c1d
Key [12]:5d252d17af4b09d3f4b5f7b5677b8211
round   7:e6d6bdc63e1d37d9883543ba86392fd
Key [13]:e814bf307c767428c67793dda2df95c7
Key [14]:4812b979fdc20f0ff0996f61673a42cc
round   8:e3dde7ce6bd7d8a34599aa04d6a760ab
Key [15]:5b1e2033d1cd549fc4b028146eb5b3b7
Key [16]:0f284c14fb8fe706a5343e3aa35af7b1
Key [17]:b1f7a4b7456d6b577fded6dc7a672e37
Ka      :c55070b72bc982adb972ed05d1a74ddb
-----
rand    :148662a4baa73cfadb55489159e476e1
PIN length = 4 octets
PIN     :fb20f177
address :a683bd0b1896
round   1:148662a4baa73cfadb55489159e476eb
Key [ 1]:fb20f177a683bd0b1896fb20f177a683
Key [ 2]:47266cefba468ca7916b458155dc825
round   2:3a942eb6271c3f4e433838a5d3fcdb27
Key [ 3]:688853a6d6575eb2f6a2724b0fbc133b
Key [ 4]:7810df048019634083a2d9219d0b5fe0
round   3:9c835b98a063701c0887943596780769
added ->:8809bd3c1a0aace6d3dcda4cf5c7d82
Key [ 5]:c78f6dcf56da1bbd413828b33f5865b3
Key [ 6]:eb3f3d407d160df3d293a76d1a513c4a
round   4:7e68c4bafa020a4a59b5a1968105bab5
Key [ 7]:d330e038d6b19d5c9bb0d7285a360064
Key [ 8]:9bd3ee50347c00753d165faced702d9c

```

*Sample Data*

```

round  5:227bad0cf0838bdb15b3b3872c24f592
Key [ 9]:9543ad0fb3fe74f83e0e2281c6d4f5f0
Key [10]:746cd0383c17e0e80e6d095a87fd0290
round  6:e026e98c71121a0cb739ef6f59e14d26
Key [11]:fa28bea4b1c417536608f11f406ea1dd
Key [12]:3aeee0f4d21699df9cb8caf5354a780ff
round  7:cd6a6d8137d55140046f8991da1fa40a
Key [13]:372b71bc6d1aa6e785358044fbcf05f4
Key [14]:00a01501224c0405de00aa2ce7b6ab04
round  8:52cd7257fe8d0c782c259bcb6c9f5942
Key [15]:c7015c5c1d7c030e00897f104a006d4a
Key [16]:260a9577790c62e074e71e19fd2894df
Key [17]:c041b7a231493acd15ddcdace94b9f52
Ka     :7ec864df2f1637c7e81f2319ae8f4671
-----
rand   :193a1b84376c88882c8d3b4ee93ba8d5
PIN length = 3 octets
PIN     :a123b9
address :4459a44610f6
round  1:193a1b84376c88882c8d3b4ee93ba8dc
Key [ 1]:a123b94459a44610f6a123b94459a446
Key [ 2]:5f64d384c8e990c1d25080eb244dde9b
round  2:3badbd58f100831d781ddd3ccedefd3f
Key [ 3]:5abc00eff8991575c00807c48f6dbea5
Key [ 4]:127521158ad6798fb6479d1d2268abe6
round  3:0b53075a49c6bf2df2421c655fdedf68
added ->:128d22de7e3247a5decf572bb61987b4
Key [ 5]:f2a1f620448b8e56665608df2ab3952f
Key [ 6]:7c84c0af02aad91dc39209c4edd220b1
round  4:793f4484fb592e7a78756fd4662f990d
Key [ 7]:f6445b647317e7e493bb92bf6655342f
Key [ 8]:3cae503567c63d3595eb140ce60a84c0
round  5:9e46a8df925916a342f299a8306220a0
Key [ 9]:734ed5a806e072bbecb4254993871679
Key [10]:cda69ccb4b07f65e3c8547c11c0647b8
round  6:6bf9cd82c9e1be13fc58eae0b936c75a
Key [11]:c48e531d3175c2bd26fa25cc8990e394
Key [12]:6d93d349a6c6e9ff5b26149565b13d15
round  7:e96a9871471240f198811d4b8311e9a6
Key [13]:5c4951e85875d663526092cd4cbdb667
Key [14]:f19f7758f5cde86c3791efaf563b3fd0
round  8:e94ca67d3721d5fb08ec069191801a46
Key [15]:bf0c17f3299b37d984ac938b769dd394
Key [16]:7edf4ad772a6b9048588f97be25bde1c
Key [17]:6ee7ba6afefc5b561abbd8d6829e8150
Ka     :ac0daabf17732f632e34ef193658bf5d
-----
rand   :1453db4d057654e8eb62d7d62ec3608c
PIN length = 2 octets
PIN     :3eaf
address :411fbbb51d1e
round  1:1453db4d057654e8eb62d7d62ec36084

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [ 1 ] :3eaf411fb5b51d1e3eaf411fb5b51d1e
Key [ 2 ] :c3a1a997509f00fb4241aba607109c64
round 2 :0b78276c1ebc65707d38c9c5fa1372bd
Key [ 3 ] :3c729833ae1ce7f84861e4dbad6305cc
Key [ 4 ] :c83a43c3a66595cb8136560ed29be4ff
round 3 :23f3f0f6441563d4c202cee0e5cb2335
added ->:3746cbbb418bb73c2964a536cb8e83b1
Key [ 5 ] :18b26300b86b70acdd1c8f5cbc7c5da8
Key [ 6 ] :04efc75309b98cd8f1cef5513c18e41e
round 4 :c61afa90d3c14bdf588320e857afdc00
Key [ 7 ] :517c789cecadc455751af73198749fb8
Key [ 8 ] :fd9711f913b5c844900fa79dd765d0e2
round 5 :a8a0e02ceb556af8bfa321789801183a
Key [ 9 ] :bb5cf30e7d3ceb930651b1d16ee92750
Key [ 10 ] :3d97c7862ecab42720e984972f8efd28
round 6 :0b58e922438d224db34b68fca9a5ea12
Key [ 11 ] :4ce730344f6b09e449dcdb64cd466666
Key [ 12 ] :38828c3a56f922186adcd9b713cdcc31
round 7 :b90664c4ac29a8b4bb26debec9ffc5f2
Key [ 13 ] :d30fd865ea3e9edcff86a33a2c319649
Key [ 14 ] :1fdb63e54413acd968195ab6fa424e83
round 8 :6934de3067817cefd811abc5736c163b
Key [ 15 ] :a16b7c655bbaa262c807cba8ae166971
Key [ 16 ] :7903dd68630105266049e23ca607cda7
Key [ 17 ] :888446f2d95e6c2d2803e6f4e815ddc9
Ka :1674f9dc2063cc2b83d3ef8ba692ebef
-----
rand :1313f7115a9db842fcfd4b10088b48d
PIN length = 1 octets
PIN :6d
address :008aa9be62d5
round 1 :1313f7115a9db842fcfd4b10088b48a
Key [ 1 ] :6d008aa9be62d56d008aa9be62d56d00
Key [ 2 ] :46ebfeafb6657b0a1984a8dc0893accf
round 2 :839b23b83b5701ab095baf162ec0ac7
Key [ 3 ] :8e15595edcf058af62498ee3c1dc6098
Key [ 4 ] :dd409c3444e94b9cc08396ae967542a0
round 3 :c0a2010cc44f2139427f093f4f97ae68
added ->:d3b5f81d9eecd97bbe6cc8e4f1f62e2
Key [ 5 ] :487deff5d519f6a6481e947b926f633c
Key [ 6 ] :5b4b6e3477ed5c2c01f6e607d3418963
round 4 :1a5517a0efad3575931d8ea3bee8bd07
Key [ 7 ] :34b980088d2b5fd6b6a2aceeda99c9c4
Key [ 8 ] :e7d06d06078acc4ecdbc8da800b73078
round 5 :d3ce1fdf716d72c1075ff37a8a2093f
Key [ 9 ] :7d375bad245c3b757380021af8ecd408
Key [ 10 ] :14dac4bc2f4dc4929a6cceec47f4c3a3
round 6 :47e90cb55be6e8dd0f583623c2f2257b
Key [ 11 ] :66cfda3c63e464b05e2e7e25f8743ad7
Key [ 12 ] :77cfccda1ad380b9fdf1df10846b50e7
round 7 :f866ae6624f7abd4a4f5bd24b04b6d43
Key [ 13 ] :3e11dd84c031a470a8b66ec6214e44cf

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [14]:2f03549bdb3c511eea70b65ddbb08253
round 8:02e8e17cf8be4837c9c40706b613dfa8
Key [15]:e2f331229ddfcc6e7bea08b01ab7e70c
Key [16]:b6b0c3738c5365bc77331b98b3fba2ab
Key [17]:f5b3973b636119e577c5c15c87bcfd19
Ka     :38ec0258134ec3f08461ae5c328968a1
=====

```

## 10.5 FOUR TESTS OF E3

```

rand    :0000000000000000000000000000000000000000
aco     :48afcdd4bd40fef76693b113
key     :0000000000000000000000000000000000000000
round   1:0000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Key [ 1]:0000000000000000000000000000000000000000
Key [ 2]:4697b1baa3b7100ac537b3c95a28ac64
round   2:78d19f9307d2476a523ec7a8a026042a
Key [ 3]:ecabaac66795580df89af66e66dc053d
Key [ 4]:8ac3d8896ae9364943bfefbd4969b68a0
round   3:600265247668dda0e81c07bbb30ed503
Key [ 5]:5d57921fd5715cbb22c1be7bbc996394
Key [ 6]:2a61b8343219fdfb1740e6511d41448f
round   4:d7552ef7cc9dbde568d80c2215bc4277
Key [ 7]:dd0480dee731d67f01a2f739da6f23ca
Key [ 8]:3ad01cd1303e12a1cd0fe0a8af82592c
round   5:fb06bef32b52ab8f2a4f2b6ef7f6d0cd
Key [ 9]:7dad2efc287ce75061302904f2e7233
Key [10]:c08dcfa981e2c4272f6c7a9f52e11538
round   6:b46b711ebbb3cf69e847a75f0ab884bdd
Key [11]:fc2042c708e409555e8c147660ffd7
Key [12]:fa0b21001af9a6b9e89e624cd99150d2
round   7:c585f308ff19404294f06b292e978994
Key [13]:18b40784ea5ba4c80ecb48694b4e9c35
Key [14]:454d54e5253c0c4a8b3fcc7db6baef4
round   8:2665fad813acf952bf74b4ab12264b9f
Key [15]:2df37c6d9db52674f29353b0f011ed83
Key [16]:b60316733b1e8e70bd861b477e2456f1
Key [17]:884697b1baa3b7100ac537b3c95a28ac
round   1:5d3ecb17f26083df0b7f2b9b29aef87c
Key [ 1]:e9e5dfc1b3a79583e9e5dfc1b3a79583
Key [ 2]:7595bf57e0632c59f435c16697d4c864
round   2:de6fe85c5827233fe22514a16f321bd8
Key [ 3]:e31b96afcc75d286ef0ae257cbcb05b7
Key [ 4]:0d2a27b471bc0108c6263aff9d9b3b6b
round   3:7cd335b50d09d139ea6702623af85edb
added ->:211100a2ff6954e6e1e62df913a656a7
Key [ 5]:98d1eb5773cf59d75d3b17b3bc37c191
Key [ 6]:fd2b79282408ddd4ea0aa7511133336f
round   4:991dccb3201b5b1c4ceff65a3711e1e9
Key [ 7]:331227756638a41d57b0f7e071ee2a98

```

*Sample Data*

```
Key [ 8 ] : aa0dd8cc68b406533d0f1d64aabacf20
round 5 : 18768c7964818805fe4c6ecae8a38599
Key [ 9 ] : 669291b0752e63f806fce76f10e119c8
Key [10] : ef8bdd46be8ee0277e9b78adef1ec154
round 6 : 82f9aa127a72632af43d1a17e7bd3a09
Key [11] : f3902eb06dc409cf78384624964bf51
Key [12] : 7d72702b21f97984a721c99b0498239d
round 7 : 1543d7870bf2d6d6efab3cbf62dca97d
Key [13] : 532e60bceaf902c52a06c2c283ecfa32
Key [14] : 181715e5192efb2a64129668cf5d9dd4
round 8 : eee3e8744a5f8896de95831ed837ffd5
Key [15] : 83017c1434342d4290e961578790f451
Key [16] : 2603532f365604646ff65803795ccce5
Key [17] : 882f7c907b565ea58dae1c928a0dcf41
kc : cc802aecc7312285912e90af6a1e1154
-----
rand : 950e604e655ea3800fe3eb4a28918087
aco : 68f4f472b5586ac5850f5f74
key : 34e86915d20c485090a6977931f96df5
round 1 : 950e604e655ea3800fe3eb4a28918087
Key [ 1 ] : 34e86915d20c485090a6977931f96df5
Key [ 2 ] : 8de2595003f9928efaf37e5229935bdb
round 2 : d46f5a04c967f55840f83d1cdb5f9afc
Key [ 3 ] : 46f05ec979a97cb6ddf842ecc159c04a
Key [ 4 ] : b468f0190a0a83783521deae8178d071
round 3 : e16edede9cb6297f32e1203e442ac73a
Key [ 5 ] : 8a171624dedbd552356094daaadc12a
Key [ 6 ] : 3085e07c85e4b99313f6e0c837b5f819
round 4 : 805144e55e1ece96683d23366fc7d24b
Key [ 7 ] : fe45c27845169a66b679b2097d147715
Key [ 8 ] : 44e2f0c35f64514e8bec66c5dc24b3ad
round 5 : edbaf77af070bd22e9304398471042f1
Key [ 9 ] : 0d534968f3803b6af447eaf964007e7b
Key [10] : f5499a32504d739ed0b3c547e84157ba
round 6 : 0dab1a4c846aef0b65b1498812a73b50
Key [11] : e17e8e456361c46298e6592a6311f3fb
Key [12] : ec6d14da05d60e8abac807646931711f
round 7 : 1e7793cac7f55a8ab48bd33bc9c649e0
Key [13] : 2b53dde3d89e325e5ff808ed505706ae
Key [14] : 41034e5c3fb0c0d4f445f0cf23be79b0
round 8 : 3723768baa78b6a23ade095d995404da
Key [15] : e2ca373d405a7abf22b494f28a6fd247
Key [16] : 74e09c9068c0e8f1c6902d1b70537c30
Key [17] : 767a7f1acf75c3585a55dd4a428b2119
round 1 : 39809afb773efd1b7510cd4cb7c49f34
Key [ 1 ] : 1d0d48d485abddd3798b483a82a0f878
Key [ 2 ] : aed957e600a5aed5217984dd5fef6fd8
round 2 : 6436ddbabe92655c87a7d0c12ae5e5f6
Key [ 3 ] : fee00bb0de89b6ef0a289696a4faa884
Key [ 4 ] : 33ce2f4411db4dd9b7c42cc586b8a2ba
round 3 : cec690f7e0aa5f063062301e049a5cc5
added -> : f7462a0c97e85c1d4572fd52b35efbf1
```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [ 5 ]:b5116f5c6c29e05e4acb4d02a46a3318
Key [ 6 ]:ff4fa1f0f73d1a3c67bc2298abc768f9
round 4:dcdf942e9f0163fc24a4718844b417d
Key [ 7 ]:5453650c0819e001e48331ad0e9076e0
Key [ 8 ]:b4ff8dda778e26c0dce08349b81c09a1
round 5:265a16b2f766afae396e7a98c189fd9a9
Key [ 9 ]:f638fa294427c6ed94300fd823b31d10
Key [10]:1ccfa0bd86a9879b17d4bc457e3e03d6
round 6:628576b5291d53d1eb8611c8624e863e
Key [11]:0eaaee2ef4602ac9ca19e49d74a76d335
Key [12]:6e1062f10a16e0d378476da3943842e9
round 7:d7b9c2e9b2d5ea5c27019324cae882b3
Key [13]:40be960bd22c744c5b23024688e554b9
Key [14]:95c9902cb3c230b44d14ba909730d211
round 8:97fb6065498385e47eb3df6e2ca439dd
Key [15]:10d4b6e1d1d6798aa00aa2951e32d58d
Key [16]:c5d4b91444b83ee578004ab8876ba605
Key [17]:1663a4f98e2862eddd3ec2fb03dcc8a4
kc :c1beafea6e747e304cf0bd7734b0a9e2
-----
rand :6a8ebcf5e6e471505be68d5eb8a3200c
aco :658d791a9554b77c0b2f7b9f
key :35cf77b333c294671d426fa79993a133
round 1:6a8ebcf5e6e471505be68d5eb8a3200c
Key [ 1 ]:35cf77b333c294671d426fa79993a133
Key [ 2 ]:c4524e53b95b4bf2d7b2f095f63545fd
round 2:ade94ec585db0d27e17474b58192c87a
Key [ 3 ]:c99776768c6e9f9dd3835c52cea8d18a
Key [ 4 ]:f1295db23823ba2792f21217fc01d23f
round 3:da8dc1a10241ef9e6e069267cd2c6825
Key [ 5 ]:9083db95a6955235bbfad8aeefec5f0b
Key [ 6 ]:8bab6bc253d0d0c7e0107feab728ff68
round 4:e6665ca0772ceecbc21222ff7be074f8
Key [ 7 ]:2fa1f4e7a4cf3cc876ec30d194cf196
Key [ 8 ]:267364be247184d5337586a19df8bf84
round 5:a857a9326c9ae908f53fee511c5f4242
Key [ 9 ]:9aef21965b1a6fa83948d107026134c7
Key [10]:d2080c751def5dc0d8ea353cebf7b973
round 6:6678748alb5f21ac05cf1b117a7c342f
Key [11]:d709a8ab70b0d5a2516900421024b81e
Key [12]:493e4843805f1058d605c8d1025f8a56
round 7:766c66fe9c460bb2ae39ec01e435f725
Key [13]:b1ed21b71daea03f49fe74b2c11fc02b
Key [14]:0e1ded7ebf23c72324a0165a698c65c7
round 8:396e0ff7b2b9b7a3b35c9810882c7596
Key [15]:b3bf4841dc92f440fde5f024f9ce8be9
Key [16]:1c69bc6c2994f4c84f72be8f6b188963
Key [17]:bb7b66286dd679a471e2792270f3bb4d
round 1:45654f2f26549675287200f07cb10ec9
Key [ 1 ]:1e2a5672e66529e4f427b0682a3a34b6
Key [ 2 ]:974944f1ce0037b1feb61a2bc961a2
round 2:990cd869c534e76ed4f4af7b3bfbc6c8

```

*Sample Data*

```

Key [ 3 ] : 8147631fb1ce95d624b480fc7389f6c4
Key [ 4 ] : 6e90a2db33d284aa13135f3c032aa4f4
round 3 : ceb662f875aa6b94e8192b5989abf975
added -> : 8b1bb1d753fe01e1c08b2ba9f55c07bc
Key [ 5 ] : cbad246d24e36741c46401e6387a05f9
Key [ 6 ] : dcf52aaec5713110345a41342c566fc8
round 4 : d4e000be5de78c0f56ff218f3c1df61b
Key [ 7 ] : 8197537aa9d27e67d17c16b182c8ec65
Key [ 8 ] : d66e00e73d835927a307a3ed79d035d8
round 5 : 9a4603bdef954cfaade2052604bed4e4
Key [ 9 ] : 71d46257ecc1022bcd312ce6c114d75c
Key [10] : f91212fa528379651fdbd2c32890c5e5f
round 6 : 09a0fd197ab81eb933eece2fe0132dbb
Key [11] : 283acc551591fadce821b02fb9491814
Key [12] : ca5f95688788e20d94822f162b5a3920
round 7 : 494f455a2e7a5db861ece816d4e363e4
Key [13] : ba574aef663c462d35399efb999d0e40
Key [14] : 6267afc834513783fef1601955fe0628
round 8 : 37a819f91c8380fb7880e640e99ca947
Key [15] : fdcd9be5450eef0f8737e6838cd38e2b
Key [16] : 8cfbd9b8056c6a1ce222b92b94319b38
Key [17] : 4f64c1072c891c39eeb95e63318462e0
kc      : a3032b4df1cceba8adc1a04427224299
-----
rand    : 5ecd6d75db322c75b6afbd799cb18668
aco     : 63f701c7013238bbf88714ee
key     : b9f90c53206792b1826838b435b87d4d
round 1 : 5ecd6d75db322c75b6afbd799cb18668
Key [ 1 ] : b9f90c53206792b1826838b435b87d4d
Key [ 2 ] : 15f74bbbde4b9d1e08f858721f131669
round 2 : 72abb85fc80c15ec2b00d72873ef9ad4
Key [ 3 ] : ef7fb29f0b01f82706c7439cc52f2dab
Key [ 4 ] : 3003a6aecdee06b9ac295cce30dcdb93
round 3 : 2f10bab93a0f73742183c68f712dfa24
Key [ 5 ] : 5fcdbb3afdf7df06754c954fc6340254
Key [ 6 ] : ddaa90756635579573fe8ca1f93d4a38
round 4 : 183b145312fd99d5ad08e7ca4a52f04e
Key [ 7 ] : 27ca8a7fc703aa61f6d7791fc19f704a
Key [ 8 ] : 702029d8c6e42950762317e730ec5d18
round 5 : cbad52d3a026b2e38b9ae6fefffec32
Key [ 9 ] : ff15eaa3f73f4bc2a6ccfb9ca24ed9c5
Key [10] : 034e745246cd2e2cfc3bda39531ca9c5
round 6 : ce5f159d0a1acaacd9fb4643272033a7
Key [11] : 0a4d8ff5673731c3dc8fe87e39a34b77
Key [12] : 637592fab43a19ac0044a21afef455a2
round 7 : 8a49424a10c0bea5aba52dbbfcbcce8
Key [13] : 6b3fde58f4f6438843cdbe92667622b8
Key [14] : a10bfa35013812f39bf2157f1c9fca4e
round 8 : f5e12da0e93e26a5850251697ec0b917
Key [15] : 2228fe5384e573f48fdd19ba91f1bf57
Key [16] : 5f174db2bc88925c0fbc6b5485bafc08
Key [17] : 28ff90bd0dc31ea2bb479feb7d8fe029

```

*Sample Data*

```
round  1:0c75eed2b54c1cfb9ff522daef94ed4d
Key  [ 1]:a21ceb92d3c027326b4de775865fe8d0
Key  [ 2]:26f64558a9f0a1652f765efd546f3208
round  2:48d537ac209a6aa07b70000016c602e8
Key  [ 3]:e64f9ef630213260f1f79745a0102ae5
Key  [ 4]:af6a59d7cebfd0182dcca9a537c4add8
round  3:8b6d517ac893743a401b3fb7911b64e1
added ->:87e23fa87ddf90c1df10616d7eaf51ac
Key  [ 5]:9a6304428b45da128ab64c8805c32452
Key  [ 6]:8af4d1e9d80cb73ec6b44e9b6e4f39d8
round  4:9f0512260a2f7a5067efc35bf1706831
Key  [ 7]:79cc2d138606f0fca4e549c34a1e6d19
Key  [ 8]:803dc5cdde0efdb7a1342b2cd4d344
round  5:0cf7856edfafac51f29e86365de6f57
Key  [ 9]:e8fa996448e6b6459ab51e7be101325a
Key [10]:2acc7add7b294acb444cd933f0e74ec9
round  6:2f1fa34bf352dc77c0983a01e8b7d622
Key [11]:f57de39e42182efd6586b86a90c86bb1
Key [12]:e418dfd1bb22ebf1bfc309cd27f5266c
round  7:ee4f7a53849bf73a747065d35f3752b1
Key [13]:80a9959133856586370854db6e0470b3
Key [14]:f4c1bc2f764a0193749f5fc09011a1ae
round  8:8fec6f7249760ebf69e370e9a4b80a92
Key [15]:d036cef70d6470c3f52f1b5d25b0c29d
Key [16]:d0956af6b8700888a1cc88f07ad226dc
Key [17]:1ce8b39c4c7677373c30849a3ee08794
kc      :ea520cfcc546b00eb7c3a6cea3ecb39ed
```

=====

*Sample Data*

## 11 CONNECTIONLESS SLAVE BROADCAST SAMPLE DATA

This section contains an example of the DM3 packet used for the synchronization train (see [\[Vol. 2, Part B\] Section 8.11.2 on page 207](#)).

Packet header: (MSB...LSB)

```
-----  
LT_ADDR = 0  
TYPE = 1010 (DM3)  
FLOW = 0  
ARQN = 0  
SEQN = 0
```

Payl oad:

```
-----  
logical channel = 10 (binary) (L2CAP start or no fragmentation)  
payload length = 28 bytes  
flow = 0  
current CLK = 0x2345678  
next connectionless slave broadcast instant = 0x23457a0  
AFH channel map = all channels used except 16 and 42 to 47  
master BD_ADDR = NAP 0xACDE, UAP 0x48, LAP 0x610316  
connectionless slave broadcast interval = 564 slots  
connectionless slave broadcast LT_ADDR = 1  
service data = 0x69
```

### AIR DATA

Packet header (including HEC, in transmitted bit order):

```
-----  
000000000  
000111000111  
000  
000  
000  
1111111100000000000000111
```

Payl oad

The data forming the payload consists of the following 32 octets (given in hexadecimal) in the order transmitted:

```
e2 00  
78 56 34 02  
d0 2b 1a 01  
ff ff fe ff ff 03 ff ff ff 7f  
16 03 61 48 de ac  
34 02  
01  
69  
f2 85
```

---

*Sample Data*

The bit sequence transmitted (including FEC) will therefore begin:

0100011100 01001  
0000000001 10101  
1110011010 11011

and end:

0100111110 10001  
1000010000 00011

---

*Sample Data*

## SECURITY SPECIFICATION

***This document describes the specification of the security system which may be used at the link layer. The Encryption, Authentication and Key Generation schemes are specified. The requirements for the supporting process of random number generation are also specified.***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Security Overview .....</b>	<b>1289</b>
1.1	Pausing Encryption and Role Switch .....	1290
1.2	Change Connection Link Keys .....	1291
1.3	Periodically Refreshing Encryption Keys .....	1291
<b>2</b>	<b>Random Number Generation .....</b>	<b>1292</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Key Management.....</b>	<b>1293</b>
3.1	Key Types .....	1293
3.2	Key Generation and Initialization .....	1295
3.2.1	Generation of initialization key, .....	1296
3.2.2	Authentication.....	1296
3.2.3	Generation of a unit key .....	1297
3.2.4	Generation of a combination key.....	1297
3.2.5	Generating the encryption key .....	1298
3.2.6	Point-to-multipoint configuration.....	1299
3.2.7	Modifying the link keys .....	1300
3.2.8	Generating a master key .....	1300
<b>4</b>	<b>Encryption (E0).....</b>	<b>1302</b>
4.1	Encryption Key Size Negotiation .....	1303
4.2	Encryption of Broadcast Messages.....	1303
4.3	Encryption Concept.....	1304
4.4	Encryption Algorithm.....	1305
4.4.1	The operation of the cipher .....	1307
4.5	LFSR Initialization .....	1308
4.6	Key Stream Sequence .....	1311
<b>5</b>	<b>Authentication .....</b>	<b>1312</b>
5.1	Repeated Attempts .....	1315
<b>6</b>	<b>The Authentication And Key-Generating Functions.....</b>	<b>1316</b>
6.1	The Authentication Function E1 .....	1316
6.2	The Functions Ar and A'r.....	1318
6.2.1	The round computations.....	1318
6.2.2	The substitution boxes "e" and "l" .....	1318
6.2.3	Key scheduling .....	1319
6.3	E2-Key Generation Function for Authentication.....	1320
6.4	E3-Key Generation Function for Encryption.....	1322

<b>7</b>	<b>Secure Simple Pairing .....</b>	<b>1323</b>
7.1	Phase 1: Public Key Exchange.....	1325
7.2	Phase 2: Authentication Stage 1.....	1325
7.2.1	Authentication Stage 1: Numeric Comparison Protocol .....	1326
7.2.2	Authentication Stage 1: Out of Band Protocol.....	1327
7.2.3	Authentication Stage 1: Passkey Entry Protocol.....	1329
7.3	Phase 3: Authentication Stage 2.....	1331
7.4	Phase 4: Link Key Calculation .....	1332
7.5	Phase 5: LMP Authentication and Encryption .....	1332
7.6	Elliptic Curve Definition.....	1332
7.7	Cryptographic Function Definitions .....	1334
7.7.1	The Simple Pairing Commitment Function f1.....	1334
7.7.2	The Simple Pairing Numeric Verification Function g ..	1335
7.7.3	The Simple Pairing Key Derivation Function f2.....	1336
7.7.4	The Simple Pairing Check Function f3.....	1337
7.7.5	The Simple Pairing AMP Key Derivation Function h2 .....	1338
7.7.6	The AES Encryption Key Generation Function h3....	1340
7.7.7	The Device Authentication Key Generation Function h4 .....	1341
7.7.8	The Device Authentication Confirmation Function h5 .....	1342
<b>8</b>	<b>AMP Security .....</b>	<b>1343</b>
8.1	Creation of the Initial Generic AMP Link Key.....	1343
8.2	Creation of Dedicated AMP Link Keys.....	1343
8.3	Debug Considerations .....	1345
<b>9</b>	<b>AES-CCM Encryption for BR/EDR .....</b>	<b>1346</b>
9.1	Nonce Formats .....	1346
9.2	Counter Mode Blocks .....	1348
9.3	Encryption Blocks .....	1350
9.4	Encryption Key Size Reduction .....	1350
9.5	Repeated MIC Failures.....	1350
<b>10</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>1351</b>

## 1 SECURITY OVERVIEW

---

Bluetooth wireless technology provides peer-to-peer communications over short distances. In order to provide usage protection and information confidentiality, the system provides security measures both at the application layer and the link layer. These measures are designed to be appropriate for a peer environment.

This means that in each device, the authentication and encryption routines are implemented in the same way.

The security mechanisms used in BR/EDR have evolved over the course of multiple Core Specifications in three phases: legacy, Secure Simple Pairing, and Secure Connections. The encryption, authentication and key generation algorithms associated with each is shown in [Table 1.1](#).

Security Mechanism	Legacy	Secure Simple Pairing	Secure Connections
Encryption	E0	E0	AES-CCM
Authentication	SAFER+	SAFER+	HMAC-SHA256
Key Generation	SAFER+	P-192 ECDH HMAC-SHA-256	P-256 ECDH HMAC-SHA-256

*Table 1.1: Security algorithms*

The legacy encryption, authentication and key generation algorithms are described in [Section 3 to 6](#). The algorithms used for Secure Simple Pairing and Secure Connections are described in [Section 7 to 9](#).

Four different entities are used for maintaining security at the link layer: a Bluetooth device address, two secret keys, and a pseudo-random number that shall be regenerated for each new transaction. The four entities and their sizes are summarized in [Table 1.2](#).

Entity	Size
BD_ADDR	48 bits
Private user key, authentication	128 bits
Private user key, encryption configurable length (byte-wise)	8-128 bits
RAND	128 bits

*Table 1.2: Entities used in authentication and encryption procedures.*

The Bluetooth device address (BD\_ADDR) is the 48-bit address. The BD\_ADDR can be obtained via user interactions, or, automatically, via an inquiry routine by a device.

The secret keys are derived during initialization and are never disclosed. The encryption key is derived from the authentication key during the authentication process. For the authentication algorithm, the size of the key used is always 128 bits. For the encryption algorithm, the key size may vary between 1 and 16 octets (8 - 128 bits). The size of the encryption key is configurable for two reasons. The first has to do with the many different requirements imposed on cryptographic algorithms in different countries – both with respect to export regulations and official attitudes towards privacy in general. The second reason is to facilitate a future upgrade path for the security without the need of a costly redesign of the algorithms and encryption hardware; increasing the effective key size is the simplest way to combat increased computing power at the opponent side.

The encryption key is entirely different from the authentication key. Each time encryption is activated, a new encryption key shall be generated. Thus, the lifetime of the encryption key does not necessarily correspond to the lifetime of the authentication key.

It is anticipated that the authentication key will be more static in its nature than the encryption key – once established, the particular application running on the device decides when, or if, to change it. To underline the fundamental importance of the authentication key to a specific link, it is often referred to as the link key.

The RAND is a pseudo-random number which can be derived from a random or pseudo-random process in the device. This is not a static parameter and will change frequently.

In the remainder of this chapter, the terms user and application are used interchangeably to designate the entity that is at either side.

## 1.1 PAUSING ENCRYPTION AND ROLE SWITCH

To perform a role switch on a connection encryption must be disabled or paused as the encryption is based off the master's clock and Bluetooth address information. Unfortunately, if the role switch is required, and encryption is turned off, the device on the other end of the link will not be aware of the reason for disabling encryption, and can therefore take two possible actions: send clear text data, or disconnect. Neither of these possible actions is desirable.

When performing a role switch on an encrypted link, the role switch shall be performed as a single operation where possible. If this is not possible because the other device does not support the encryption pause feature, then when a device wishes to have an encrypted link, and encryption is disabled, then the device should not send any user data, and should not disconnect. If both devices support the encryption pause feature, then this procedure shall be used.

## 1.2 CHANGE CONNECTION LINK KEYS

It is possible to perform a change of connection link keys while a link is encrypted, but it is not possible to use the new link keys until encryption has been stopped and then restarted. As with role switches, disabling encryption and then re-enabling it again can cause user data to be sent in the clear or a disconnection to occur. The use of encryption pausing prevents this problem from occurring. On devices that do not support the encryption pause feature, when a device wishes to have an encrypted link, and encryption is disabled, then the device should not send any data, and should not disconnect. If both devices support the encryption pause feature, then this procedure shall be used.

## 1.3 PERIODICALLY REFRESHING ENCRYPTION KEYS

If both devices support the encryption pause feature, then the encryption keys shall be refreshed by the Link Manager at least once every  $2^{28}$  Bluetooth Clocks (about 23.3 hours) when E0 encryption is used and before the Payload-Counter or dayCounter roll over (at least  $2^{38}$  Bluetooth Clocks or at least 2.72 years) when AES-CCM encryption is used if it is not refreshed by the Host or the remote Link Manager. To refresh an encryption key, the Host may use the Change Connection Link Key procedure or request an encryption key refresh. If the encryption key has not been refreshed before going stale, a device may disconnect the link.

## 2 RANDOM NUMBER GENERATION

---

Each device has a pseudo-random number generator. Pseudo-random numbers are used for many purposes within the security functions – for instance, for the challenge-response scheme, for generating authentication and encryption keys, nonces used in Simple Pairing, for Passkeys used in authentication. A device shall use a pseudo random number generator compliant with [FIPS PUB 140-2] (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips140-2/fips1402annexc.pdf>).

An example of a possible random generator is provided in [FIPS PUB 186-2] Appendix 3.1 (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/archives/fips186-2/fips186-2-change1.pdf>), which can be used by replacing SHA-1 function with the SHA-256 function.

The device shall use a seed with at least the minimum entropy required by the pseudo random number generator.

The random number generator shall be tested against the [FIPS SP800-22] (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-22-rev1/SP800-22rev1.pdf>). This encompasses the verification of the following statistical tests performed on the output of the PRNG as specified by the [FIPS SP800-22]:

1. The Frequency (Monobit) Test
2. Frequency Test within a Block
3. The Runs Test
4. Test for the Longest-Run-of-Ones in a Block
5. The Binary Matrix Rank Test
6. The Discrete Fourier Transform (Spectral) Test
7. The Non-overlapping Template Matching Test
8. The Overlapping Template Matching Test
9. Maurer's "Universal Statistical" Test
10. The Linear Complexity Test
11. The Serial Test
12. The Approximate Entropy Test
13. The Cumulative Sums (Cusums) Test
14. The Random Excursions Test
15. The Random Excursions Variant Test

These tests are part of standard statistical mathematical packages. Some test suites, like the Diehard test suite can be used to verify the compliance. Alternatively, other tools, such as the DieHarder ([http://www.phy.duke.edu/~rgb/General/rand\\_rate.php](http://www.phy.duke.edu/~rgb/General/rand_rate.php)) or the available NIST tools ([http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/ST/toolkit/random\\_number.html](http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/ST/toolkit/random_number.html)) and the corresponding recommendations (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-22-rev1/SP800-22rev1.pdf>) may also be used.

## 3 KEY MANAGEMENT

---

It is important that the encryption key size within a specific device cannot be set by the user – this should be a factory preset entity. In order to prevent the user from over-riding the permitted key size, the Bluetooth baseband processing shall not accept an encryption key given from higher software layers. Whenever a new encryption key is required, it shall be created as defined in [Section 6.4 on page 1322](#).

Changing a link key shall also be done through the defined baseband procedures. Depending on what kind of link key it is, different approaches are required. The details are found in [Section 3.2.7 on page 1300](#).

### 3.1 KEY TYPES

The link key is a 128-bit random number which is shared between two or more parties and is the base for all security transactions between these parties. The link key itself is used in the authentication routine. Moreover, the link key is used as one of the parameters when the encryption key is derived.

In the following, a session is defined as the time interval for which the device is a member of a particular piconet. Thus, the session terminates when the device disconnects from the piconet.

The link keys are either semi-permanent or temporary. A semi-permanent link key may be stored in non-volatile memory and may be used after the current session is terminated. Consequently, once a semi-permanent link key is defined, it may be used in the authentication of several subsequent connections between the devices sharing it. The designation semi-permanent is justified by the possibility of changing it. How to do this is described in [Section 3.2.7 on page 1300](#).

The lifetime of a temporary link key is limited by the lifetime of the current session – it shall not be reused in a later session. Typically, in a point-to-multipoint configuration where the same information is to be distributed securely to several recipients, a common encryption key is useful. To achieve this, a special link key (denoted master key) may temporarily replace the current link keys. The details of this procedure are found in [Section 3.2.6 on page 1299](#).

In the following, the current link key is the link key in use at the current moment. It can be semi-permanent or temporary. Thus, the current link key is used for all authentications and all generation of encryption keys in the on-going connection (session).

In order to accommodate different types of applications, four types of link keys have been defined:

- the combination key  $K_{AB}$
- the unit key  $K_A$
- the temporary key  $K_{\text{master}}$
- the initialization key  $K_{\text{init}}$

Note: the use of unit keys is deprecated since it is implicitly insecure.

In addition to these keys there is an encryption key, denoted  $K_c$ . This key is derived from the current link key. Whenever encryption is activated by an LM command, the encryption key shall be changed automatically. The purpose of separating the authentication key and encryption key is to facilitate the use of a shorter encryption key without weakening the strength of the authentication procedure. There are no governmental restrictions on the strength of authentication algorithms. However, in some countries, such restrictions exist on the strength of encryption algorithms.

The combination key  $K_{AB}$  and the unit key  $K_A$  are functionally indistinguishable; the difference is in the way they are generated. The unit key  $K_A$  is generated in, and therefore dependent on, a single device A. The unit key shall be generated once at installation of the device; thereafter, it is very rarely changed. The combination key is derived from information in both devices A and B, and is therefore always dependent on two devices. The combination key is derived for each new combination of two devices.

It depends on the application or the device whether a unit key or a combination key is used. Devices which have little memory to store keys, or are installed in equipment that will be accessible to a large group of users, should use their own unit key. In that case, they only have to store a single key. Applications that require a higher security level should use the combination keys. These applications will require more memory since a combination key for each link to a different device has to be stored.

The master key,  $K_{\text{master}}$ , shall only be used during the current session. It shall only replace the original link key temporarily. For example, this may be utilized when a master wants to reach more than two devices simultaneously using the same encryption key, see [Section 3.2.6 on page 1299](#).

The initialization key,  $K_{\text{init}}$ , shall be used as the link key during the initialization process when no combination or unit keys have been defined and exchanged yet or when a link key has been lost. The initialization key protects the transfer of initialization parameters. The key is derived from a random number, an L-octet PIN code, and a BD\_ADDR. This key shall only be used during initialization.

The PIN may be a fixed number provided with the device (for example when there is no user interface as in a PSTN plug). Alternatively, the PIN can be selected by the user, and then entered in both devices that are to be matched. The latter procedure should be used when both devices have a user interface, for example a phone and a laptop. Entering a PIN in both devices is more secure than using a fixed PIN in one of the devices, and should be used whenever possible. Even if a fixed PIN is used, it shall be possible to change the PIN; this is in order to prevent re-initialization by users who once obtained the PIN. If no PIN is available, a default value of zero may be used. The length of this default PIN is one byte, PIN (default) = 0x00. This default PIN may be provided by the host.

For many applications the PIN code will be a relatively short string of numbers. Typically, it may consist of only four decimal digits. Even though this gives sufficient security in many cases, there exist countless other, more sensitive, situations where this is not reliable enough. Therefore, the PIN code may be chosen to be any length from 1 to 16 octets. For the longer lengths, the devices exchanging PIN codes may not use mechanical (i.e. human) interaction, but rather may use software at the application layer. For example, this can be a Diffie-Hellman key agreement, where the exchanged key is passed on to the  $K_{init}$  generation process in both devices, just as in the case of a shorter PIN code.

### 3.2 KEY GENERATION AND INITIALIZATION

The link keys must be generated and distributed among the devices in order to be used in the authentication procedure. Since the link keys shall be secret, they shall not be obtainable through an inquiry routine in the same way as the Bluetooth device addresses. The exchange of the keys takes place during an initialization phase which shall be carried out separately for each two devices that are using authentication and encryption. The initialization procedures consist of the following five parts:

- generation of an initialization key
- generation of link key
- link key exchange
- authentication
- generation of encryption key in each device (optional)

After the initialization procedure, the devices can proceed to communicate, or the link can be disconnected. If encryption is implemented, the  $E_0$  algorithm shall be used with the proper encryption key derived from the current link key. For any new connection established between devices A and B, they should use the common link key for authentication, instead of once more deriving  $K_{init}$  from the PIN. A new encryption key derived from that particular link key shall be created next time encryption is activated.

If no link key is available, the LM shall automatically start an initialization procedure.

### 3.2.1 Generation of initialization key, $K_{init}$

A link key is used temporarily during initialization, the initialization key  $K_{init}$ . This key shall be derived by the  $E_{22}$  algorithm from a BD\_ADDR, a PIN code, the length of the PIN (in octets), and a random number IN\_RAND. The principle is depicted in [Figure 6.4 on page 1322](#). The 128-bit output from  $E_{22}$  shall be used for key exchange during the generation of a link key. When the devices have performed the link key exchange, the initialization key shall be discarded.

When the initialization key is generated, the PIN is augmented with the BD\_ADDR. If one device has a fixed PIN the BD\_ADDR of the other device shall be used. If both devices have a variable PIN the BD\_ADDR of the device that received IN\_RAND shall be used. If both devices have a fixed PIN they cannot be paired. Since the maximum length of the PIN used in the algorithm cannot exceed 16 octets, it is possible that not all octets of BD\_ADDR will be used. This procedure ensures that  $K_{init}$  depends on the identity of the device with a variable PIN. A fraudulent device may try to test a large number of PINs by claiming another BD\_ADDR each time. It is the application's responsibility to take countermeasures against this threat. If the device address is kept fixed, the waiting interval before the next try may be increased exponentially (see [Section 5.1 on page 1315](#)).

The details of the  $E_{22}$  algorithm can be found in [Section 6.3 on page 1320](#).

### 3.2.2 Authentication

The legacy authentication procedure shall be carried out as described in [Section 5 on page 1312](#). During each legacy authentication, a new AU\_RAND\_A shall be issued.

For legacy authentication, mutual authentication is achieved by first performing the authentication procedure in one direction and then immediately performing the authentication procedure in the opposite direction.

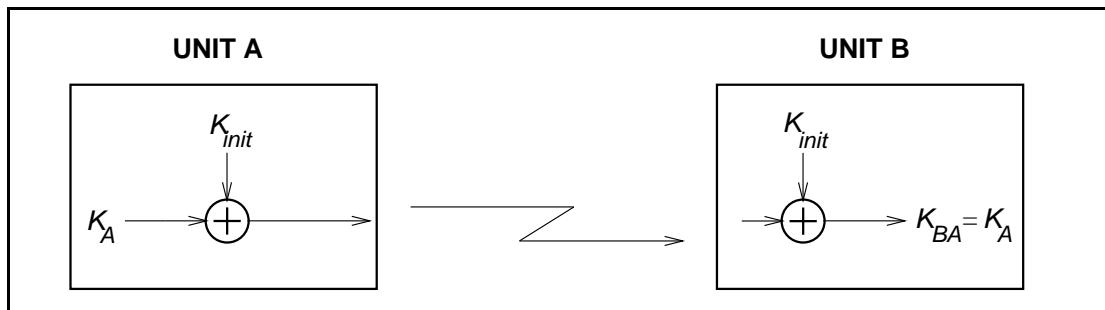
The secure authentication procedure is always a mutual authentication. Secure authentication shall be carried out as described in [Section 7.7.8](#). During each secure authentication, new AU\_RAND\_M and AU\_RAND\_S shall be used.

As a side effect of a successful authentication procedure an auxiliary parameter, the Authenticated Ciphering Offset (ACO), will be computed. The ACO shall be used for ciphering key generation as described in [Section 3.2.5 on page 1298](#).

The claimant/verifier status is determined by the LM.

### 3.2.3 Generation of a unit key

A unit key  $K_A$  shall be generated when the device is in operation for the first time; i.e. not during each initialization. The unit key shall be generated by the  $E_{2I}$  algorithm as described in [Section 6.3 on page 1320](#). Once created, the unit key should be stored in non-volatile memory and very rarely changed. If after initialization the unit key is changed, any previously initialized devices will possess a wrong link key. At initialization, the application must determine which of the two parties will provide the unit key as the link key. Typically, this will be the device with restricted memory capabilities, since this device only has to remember its own unit key. The unit key shall be transferred to the other party and then stored as the link key for that particular party. So, for example in [Figure 3.1 on page 1297](#), the unit key of device A,  $K_A$ , is being used as the link key for the connection A-B; device A sends the unit key  $K_A$  to device B; device B will store  $K_A$  as the link key  $K_{BA}$ . For another initialization, for example with device C, device A will reuse its unit key  $K_A$ , whereas device C stores it as  $K_{CA}$ .



*Figure 3.1: Generation of unit key. When the unit key has been exchanged, the initialization key is discarded in both devices.*

### 3.2.4 Generation of a combination key

To use a combination key, it is first generated during the initialization procedure. The combination key is the combination of two numbers generated in device A and B, respectively. First, each device shall generate a random number,  $LK\_RAND_A$  and  $LK\_RAND_B$ . Then, utilizing  $E_{2I}$  with the random number and their own  $BD\_ADDRs$ , the two random numbers

$$LK\_K_A = E_{2I}(LK\_RAND_A, BD\_ADDR_A) \quad (\text{EQ } 1)$$

and

$$LK\_K_B = E_{2I}(LK\_RAND_B, BD\_ADDR_B), \quad (\text{EQ } 2)$$

shall be created in device A and device B, respectively. These numbers constitute the devices' contribution to the combination key that is to be created. Then, the two random numbers  $LK\_RAND_A$  and  $LK\_RAND_B$  shall be exchanged securely by XORing with the current link key,  $K$ . Thus, device A shall send

$K \oplus LK\_RAND_A$  to device B, while device B shall send  $K \oplus LK\_RAND_B$  to device A. If this is done during the initialization phase the link key  $K = K_{init}$ .

When the random numbers  $LK\_RAND_A$  and  $LK\_RAND_B$  have been mutually exchanged, each device shall recalculate the other device's contribution to the combination key. This is possible since each device knows the Bluetooth device address of the other device. Thus, device A shall calculate (EQ 2) on page 1297 and device B shall calculate (EQ 1) on page 1297. After this, both devices shall combine the two numbers to generate the 128-bit link key. The combining operation is a simple bitwise modulo-2 addition (i.e. XOR). The result shall be stored in device A as the link key  $K_{AB}$  and in device B as the link key  $K_{BA}$ . When both devices have derived the new combination key, a mutual authentication procedure shall be initiated to confirm the success of the transaction. The old link key shall be discarded after a successful exchange of a new combination key. The message flow between master and slave and the principle for creating the combination key is depicted in Figure 3.2 on page 1298.

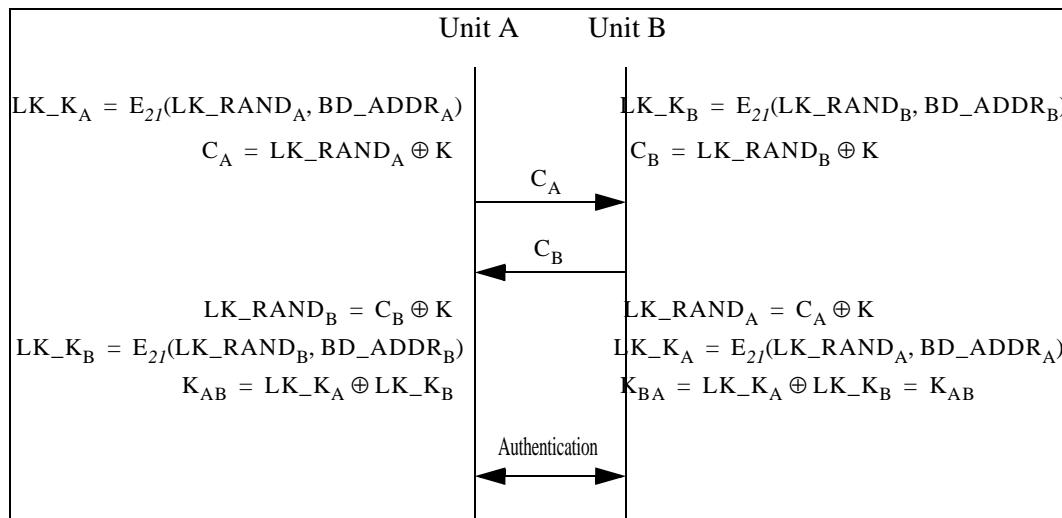


Figure 3.2: Generating a combination key. The old link key ( $K$ ) is discarded after the exchange of a new combination key has succeeded

### 3.2.5 Generating the encryption key

The encryption key,  $K_C$ , is derived by algorithm  $E_3$  from the current link key, a 96-bit Ciphering OFFset number (COF), and a 128-bit random number. The COF is determined in one of two ways. If the current link key is a master key, then COF shall be derived from the master BD\_ADDR. Otherwise the value of COF shall be set to the value of ACO as computed during the authentication procedure. Therefore:<sup>1</sup>

1.  $x \cup y$  denotes the concatenation of  $x$  and  $y$ .

$$\text{COF} = \begin{cases} \text{BD\_ADDR} \cup \text{BD\_ADDR}, & \text{if link key is a master key} \\ \text{ACO}, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ 3})$$

There is an explicit call of  $E_3$  when the LM activates encryption. Consequently, the encryption key is automatically changed each time the device enters encryption mode. The details of the key generating function  $E_3$  can be found in [Section 6.4 on page 1322](#).

### 3.2.6 Point-to-multipoint configuration

It is possible for the master to use separate encryption keys for each slave in a point-to-multipoint configuration with ciphering activated. Then, if the application requires more than one slave to listen to the same payload, each slave must be addressed individually. This can cause unwanted capacity loss for the piconet. Moreover, a slave might not be capable of switching between two or more encryption keys in real time (e.g., after looking at the LT\_ADDR in the header). Thus, the master cannot use different encryption keys for broadcast messages and individually addressed traffic. Therefore, the master may tell several slave devices to use a common link key (and, hence, indirectly also to use a common encryption key) and may then broadcast the information encrypted. For many applications, this key is only of temporary interest. In the following discussion, this key is denoted by  $K_{\text{master}}$ .

The transfer of necessary parameters shall be protected by the routine described in [Section 3.2.8 on page 1300](#). After the confirmation of successful reception in each slave, the master shall issue a command to the slaves to replace their respective current link key by the new (temporary) master key. Before encryption can be activated, the master shall also generate and distribute a common EN\_RAND to all participating slaves. Using this random number and the newly derived master key, each slave shall generate a new encryption key.

Note that the master must negotiate the encryption key length to use individually with each slave that will use the master key. If the master has already negotiated with some of these slaves, it has knowledge of the sizes that can be accepted. There may be situations where the permitted key lengths of some devices are incompatible. In that case, the master must exclude the limiting device from the group.

When all slaves have received the necessary data, the master can communicate information on the piconet securely using the encryption key derived from the new temporary link key. Each slave in possession of the master key can eavesdrop on all encrypted traffic, not only the traffic intended for itself. The master may tell all participants to fall back to their old link keys simultaneously.

### 3.2.7 Modifying the link keys

A link key based on a unit key can be changed. The unit key is created once during first use. Typically, the link key should be changed rather than the unit key, as several devices may share the same unit key as link key (e.g. a printer whose unit key is distributed to all users using the printer's unit key as link key). Changing the unit key will require re-initialization of all devices connecting. Changing the unit key can be justified in some circumstances, e.g. to deny access to all previously allowed devices.

If the key change concerns combination keys, then the procedure is straightforward. The change procedure is identical to the procedure described in [Figure 3.2 on page 1298](#), using the current value of the combination key as link key. This procedure can be carried out at any time after the authentication and encryption start. Since the combination key corresponds to a single link, it can be modified each time this link is established. This will improve the security of the system since then old keys lose their validity after each session.

Starting up an entirely new initialization procedure is also possible. In that case, user interaction is necessary since a PIN will be required in the authentication and encryption procedures.

### 3.2.8 Generating a master key

The key-change routines described so far are semi-permanent. To create the master link key, which can replace the current link key during a session (see [Section 3.2.6 on page 1299](#)), other means are needed. First, the master shall create a new link key from two 128-bit random numbers, RAND1 and RAND2. This shall be done by

$$K_{\text{master}} = E_{22}(\text{RAND1}, \text{RAND2}, 16). \quad (\text{EQ 4})$$

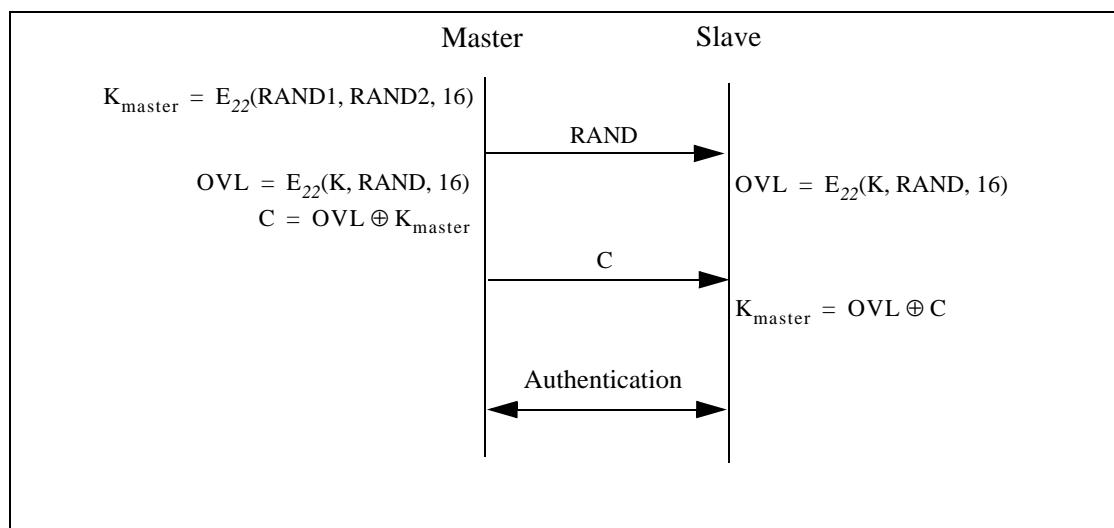
This key is a 128-bit random number. The reason for using the output of  $E_{22}$  and not directly choosing a random number as the key, is to avoid possible problems with degraded randomness due to a poor implementation of the random number generator within the device.

Then, a third random number, RAND, shall be transmitted to the slave. Using  $E_{22}$  with the current link key and RAND as inputs, both the master and the slave shall compute a 128-bit overlay. The master shall send the bitwise XOR of the overlay and the new link key to the slave. The slave, who knows the overlay, shall recalculate  $K_{\text{master}}$ . To confirm the success of this transaction, the devices shall perform a mutual authentication procedure using the new link key. This procedure shall then be repeated for each slave that receives the new link key. The ACO values from the authentications shall not replace the current ACO, as this ACO is needed to (re)compute a ciphering key when the master falls back to the previous (non-temporary) link key.

The master activates encryption by an LM command. Before activating encryption, the master shall ensure that all slaves receive the same random number, EN\_RAND, since the encryption key is derived through the means of  $E_3$  individually in all participating devices. Each slave shall compute a new encryption key as follows:

$$K_C = E_3(K_{\text{master}}, EN\_RAND, COF) \quad (\text{EQ } 5)$$

where the value of COF shall be derived from the master's BD\_ADDR as specified by equation [\(EQ 3\) on page 1299](#). The details of the encryption key generating function are described in [Section 6.4 on page 1322](#). The message flow between the master and the slave when generating the master key is depicted in [Figure 3.3](#). Note that in this case the ACO produced during the authentication is not used when computing the ciphering key.



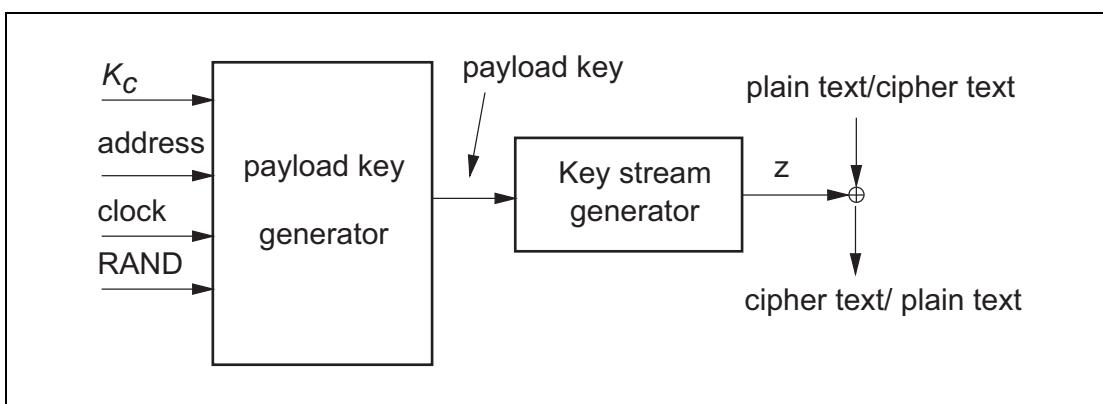
*Figure 3.3: Master link key distribution and computation of the corresponding encryption key.*

## 4 ENCRYPTION (E0)

User information can be protected by encryption of the packet payload; the access code and the packet header shall never be encrypted. The encryption of the payload shall be carried out with a stream cipher called  $E_0$  that shall be re-synchronized for every payload. The overall principle is shown in [Figure 4.1 on page 1302](#).

The stream cipher system  $E_0$  shall consist of three parts:

- the first part performs initialization (generation of the payload key). The payload key generator shall combine the input bits in an appropriate order and shall shift them into the four LFSRs used in the key stream generator.
- the second part generates the key stream bits and shall use a method derived from the summation stream cipher generator attributable to Massey and Rueppel. The second part is the main part of the cipher system, as it will also be used for initialization.
- the third part performs encryption and decryption.



*Figure 4.1: Stream ciphering for Bluetooth with  $E_0$ .*

## 4.1 ENCRYPTION KEY SIZE NEGOTIATION

Each device implementing the baseband specification shall have a parameter defining the maximal allowed key length,  $L_{\max}$ ,  $1 \leq L_{\max} \leq 16$  (number of octets in the key). For each application using encryption, a number  $L_{\min}$  shall be defined indicating the smallest acceptable key size for that particular application. Before generating the encryption key, the devices involved shall negotiate to decide the key size to use.

The master shall send a suggested value,  $L_{\text{sug}}^{(M)}$ , to the slave. Initially, the suggested value shall be set to  $L_{\max}^{(M)}$ . If  $L_{\min}^{(S)} \leq L_{\text{sug}}^{(M)}$ , and, the slave supports the suggested length, the slave shall acknowledge and this value shall be the length of the encryption key for this link. However, if both conditions are not fulfilled, the slave shall send a new proposal,  $L_{\text{sug}}^{(S)} < L_{\text{sug}}^{(M)}$ , to the master. This value shall be the largest among all supported lengths less than the previous master suggestion. Then, the master shall perform the corresponding test on the slave suggestion. This procedure shall be repeated until a key length agreement is reached, or, one device aborts the negotiation. An abort may be caused by lack of support for  $L_{\text{sug}}$  and all smaller key lengths, or if  $L_{\text{sug}} < L_{\min}$  in one of the devices. In case of an abort link encryption cannot be employed.

The possibility of a failure in setting up a secure link is an unavoidable consequence of letting the application decide whether to accept or reject a suggested key size. However, this is a necessary precaution. Otherwise a fraudulent device could enforce a weak protection on a link by claiming a small maximum key size.

## 4.2 ENCRYPTION OF BROADCAST MESSAGES

There may be three settings for the baseband regarding encryption:

1. No encryption.  
This is the default setting. No messages are encrypted
2. Point-to-point only encryption.  
Broadcast messages are not encrypted. This may be enabled either during the connection establishment procedure or after the connection has been established.
3. Point-to-point and broadcast encryption.  
All messages are encrypted. This may be enabled after the connection has been established only. This setting should not be enabled unless all affected links share the same master link key as well as the same EN\_RAND value, both used in generating the encryption key.

## 4.3 ENCRYPTION CONCEPT

Broadcast traffic	Individually addressed traffic
No encryption	No encryption
No encryption	Encryption, $K_{\text{master}}$
Encryption, $K_{\text{master}}$	Encryption, $K_{\text{master}}$

Table 4.1: Possible encryption modes for a slave in possession of a master key.

For the encryption routine, a stream cipher algorithm is used in which ciphering bits are bit-wise modulo-2 added to the data stream to be sent over the air interface. The payload is ciphered after the CRC bits are appended, but, prior to the FEC encoding.

Each packet payload shall be ciphered separately. The cipher algorithm  $E_0$  uses the master Bluetooth device address (BD\_ADDR), 26 bits of the master real-time clock ( $\text{CLK}_{26-1}$ ) and the encryption key  $K_C$  as input, see [Figure 4.2 on page 1305](#) (where it is assumed that device A is the master).

The encryption key  $K_C$  is derived from the current link key, COF, and a random number,  $\text{EN\_RAND}_A$  (see [Section 6.4 on page 1322](#)). The random number shall be issued by the master before entering encryption mode. Note that  $\text{EN\_RAND}_A$  is publicly known since it is transmitted as plain text over the air.

Within the  $E_0$  algorithm, the encryption key  $K_C$  is modified into another key denoted  $K'_C$ . The maximum effective size of this key shall be factory preset and may be set to any multiple of eight between one and sixteen (8-128 bits). The procedure for deriving the key is described in [Section 4.5 on page 1308](#).

The real-time clock is incremented for each slot. The  $E_0$  algorithm shall be re-initialized at the start of each new packet (i.e. for Master-to-Slave as well as for Slave-to-Master transmission). By using  $\text{CLK}_{26-1}$  at least one bit is changed between two transmissions. Thus, a new keystream is generated after each re-initialization. For packets covering more than a single slot, the Bluetooth clock as found in the first slot shall be used for the entire packet.

The encryption algorithm  $E_0$  generates a binary keystream,  $K_{\text{cipher}}$ , which shall be modulo-2 added to the data to be encrypted. The cipher is symmetric; decryption shall be performed in exactly the same way using the same key as used for encryption.

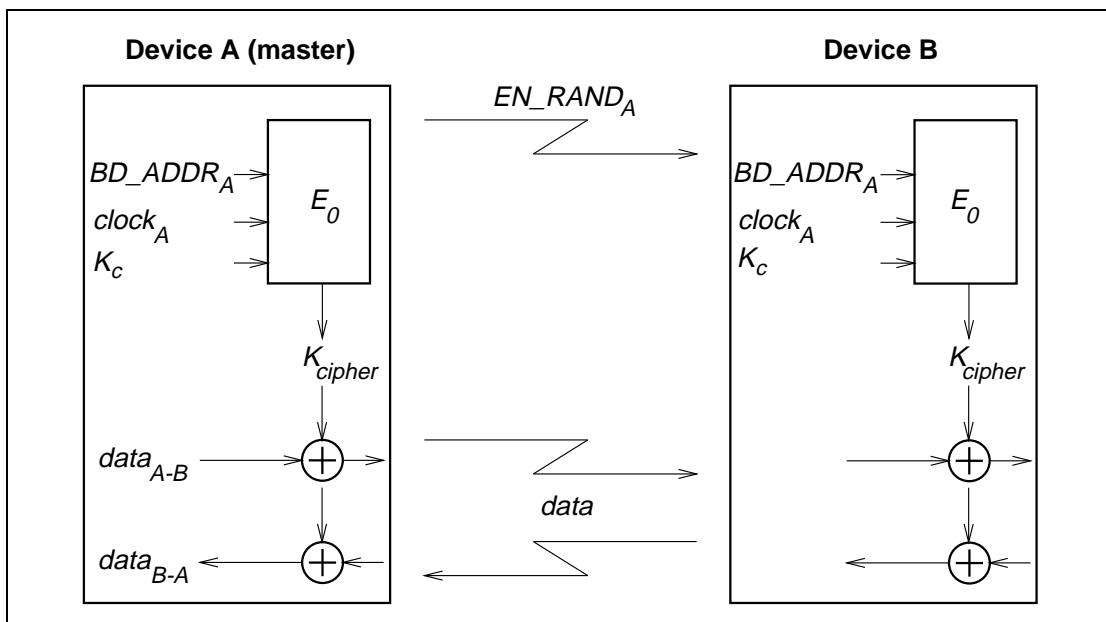


Figure 4.2: Functional description of the encryption procedure

#### 4.4 ENCRYPTION ALGORITHM

The system uses linear feedback shift registers (LFSRs) whose output is combined by a simple finite state machine (called the summation combiner) with 16 states. The output of this state machine is the key stream sequence, or, during initialization phase, the randomized initial start value. The algorithm uses an encryption key  $K_C$ , a 48-bit Bluetooth address, the master clock bits  $CLK_{26-1}$ , and a 128-bit RAND value. [Figure 4.3 on page 1306](#) shows the setup.

There are four LFSRs ( $LFSR_1, \dots, LFSR_4$ ) of lengths  $L_1 = 25$ ,  $L_2 = 31$ ,  $L_3 = 33$ , and,  $L_4 = 39$ , with feedback polynomials as specified in [Table 4.2 on page 1306](#). The total length of the registers is 128. These polynomials are all primitive. The Hamming weight of all the feedback polynomials is chosen to be five – a reasonable trade-off between reducing the number of required XOR gates in the hardware implementation and obtaining good statistical properties of the generated sequences.

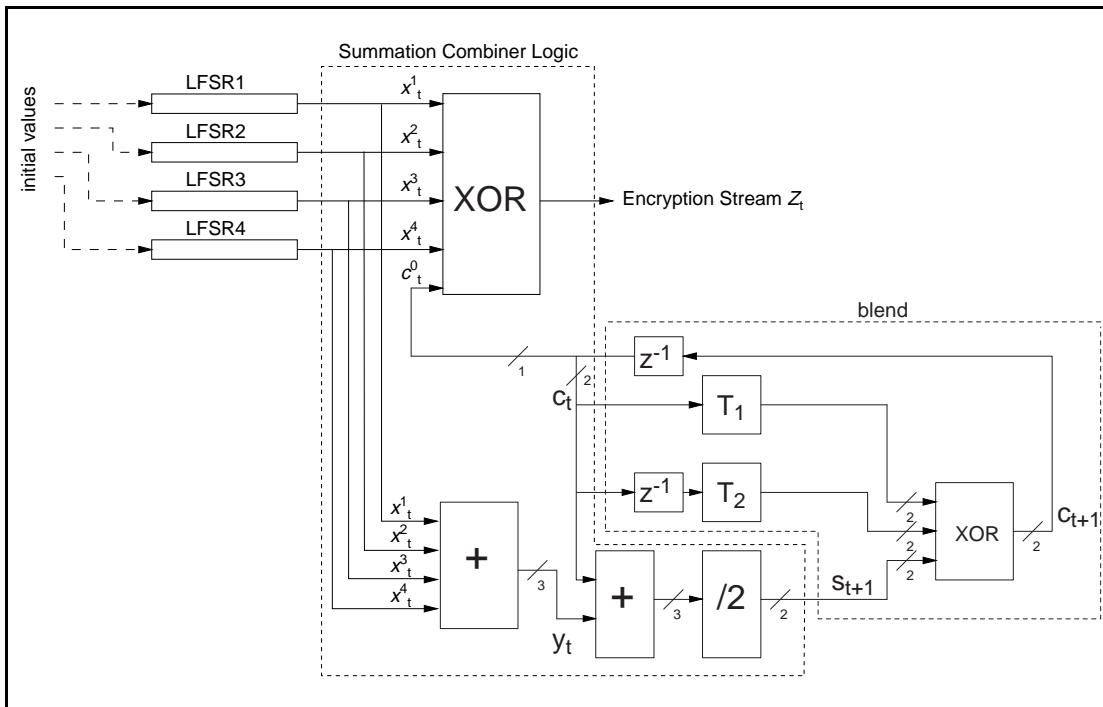


Figure 4.3: Concept of the encryption engine.

i	L <sub>i</sub>	feedback f <sub>i</sub> (t)	weight
1	25	t <sup>25</sup> + t <sup>20</sup> + t <sup>12</sup> + t <sup>8</sup> + I	5
2	31	t <sup>31</sup> + t <sup>24</sup> + t <sup>16</sup> + t <sup>12</sup> + I	5
3	33	t <sup>33</sup> + t <sup>28</sup> + t <sup>24</sup> + t <sup>4</sup> + I	5
4	39	t <sup>39</sup> + t <sup>36</sup> + t <sup>28</sup> + t <sup>4</sup> + I	5

Table 4.2: The four primitive feedback polynomials.

Let  $x_t^i$  denote the  $t^{\text{th}}$  symbol of LFSR<sub>i</sub>. The value  $y_t$  is derived from the four-tuple  $x_t^1, \dots, x_t^4$  using the following equation:

$$y_t = \sum_{i=1}^4 x_t^i, \quad (\text{EQ } 6)$$

where the sum is over the integers. Thus  $y_t$  can take the values 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4. The output of the summation generator is obtained by the following equations:

$$z_t = x_t^1 \oplus x_t^2 \oplus x_t^3 \oplus x_t^4 \oplus c_t^0 \in \{0, 1\}, \quad (\text{EQ } 7)$$

$$s_{t+1} = (s_{t+1}^I, s_{t+1}^0) = \left\lfloor \frac{y_t + c_t}{2} \right\rfloor \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\}, \quad (\text{EQ } 8)$$

$$c_{t+1} = (c_{t+1}^I, c_{t+1}^0) = s_{t+1} \oplus T_1[c_t] \oplus T_2[c_{t-1}], \quad (\text{EQ } 9)$$

where  $T_1[\cdot]$  and  $T_2[\cdot]$  are two different linear bijections over GF(4). Suppose GF(4) is generated by the irreducible polynomial  $x^2 + x + 1$ , and let  $\alpha$  be a zero of this polynomial in GF(4). The mappings  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are now defined as:

$$T_1: \text{GF}(4) \rightarrow \text{GF}(4)$$

$$x \mapsto x$$

$$T_2: \text{GF}(4) \rightarrow \text{GF}(4)$$

$$x \mapsto (\alpha + I)x.$$

The elements of GF(4) can be written as binary vectors. This is summarized in [Table 4.3](#).

x	$T_1[x]$	$T_2[x]$
00	00	00
01	01	11
10	10	01
11	11	10

*Table 4.3: The mappings  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ .*

Since the mappings are linear, they can be implemented using XOR gates; i.e.

$$T_1: \quad (x_I, x_0) \mapsto (x_I, x_0),$$

$$T_2: \quad (x_I, x_0) \mapsto (x_0, x_I \oplus x_0).$$

#### 4.4.1 The operation of the cipher

[Figure 4.4 on page 1308](#) gives an overview of the operation in time. The encryption algorithm shall run through the initialization phase before the start of transmission or reception of a new packet. Thus, for multislots packets the cipher is initialized using the clock value of the first slot in the multislots sequence.

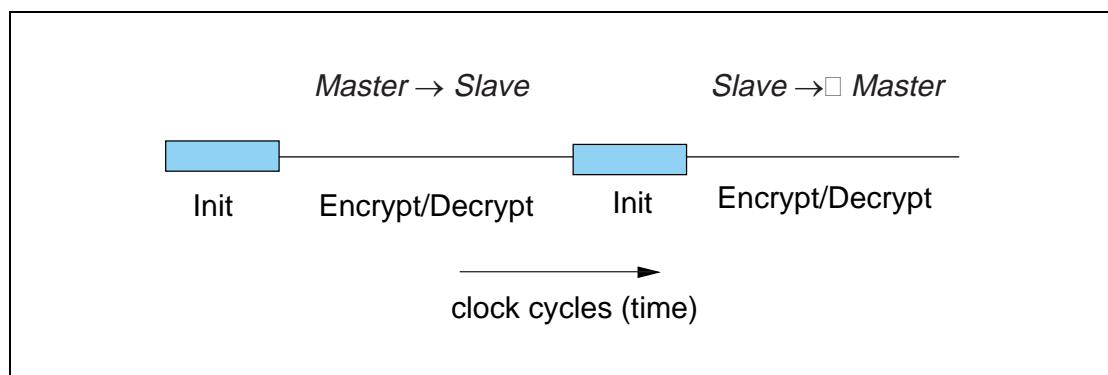


Figure 4.4: Overview of the operation of the encryption engine. Between each start of a packet (TX or RX), the LFSRs are re-initialized.

## 4.5 LFSR INITIALIZATION

The key stream generator is loaded with an initial value for the four LFSRs (in total 128 bits) and the 4 bits that specify the values of  $c_0$  and  $c_{-1}$ . The 132 bit initial value is derived from four inputs by using the key stream generator. The input parameters are the key  $K_C$ , a 128-bit random number RAND, a 48-bit Bluetooth device address, and the 26 master clock bits  $CLK_{26-1}$ .

The effective length of the encryption key may vary between 8 and 128 bits. Note that the actual key length as obtained from  $E_3$  is 128 bits. Then, within  $E_0$ , the key length may be reduced by a modulo operation between  $K_C$  and a polynomial of desired degree. After reduction, the result is encoded with a block code in order to distribute the starting states more uniformly. The operation shall be as defined in [\(EQ 10\) on page 1309](#).

When the encryption key has been created the LFSRs are loaded with their initial values. Then, 200 stream cipher bits are created by operating the generator. Of these bits, the last 128 are fed back into the key stream generator as an initial value of the four LFSRs. The values of  $c_t$  and  $c_{t-1}$  are kept. From this point on, when clocked the generator produces the encryption (decryption) sequence which is bitwise XORed to the transmitted (received) payload data.

In the following, octet  $i$  of a binary sequence  $X$  is  $X[i]$ . Bit 0 of  $X$  is the LSB. Then, the LSB of  $X[i]$  corresponds to bit  $8i$  of the sequence  $X$ , the MSB of  $X[i]$  is bit  $8i + 7$  of  $X$ . For instance, bit 24 of the Bluetooth device address is the LSB of  $BD\_ADDR[3]$ .

The details of the initialization shall be as follows:

1. Create the encryption key to use from the 128-bit secret key  $K_C$  and the 128-bit publicly known EN\_RAND. Let  $L$ ,  $1 \leq L \leq 16$ , be the

effective key length in number of octets. The resulting encryption key is  $K'_C$ :

$$K'_C(x) = g_2^{(L)}(x)(K_C(x) \bmod g_1^{(L)}(x)), \quad (\text{EQ 10})$$

where  $\deg(g_1^{(L)}(x)) = 8L$  and  $\deg(g_2^{(L)}(x)) \leq 128 - 8L$ . The polynomials are defined in [Table 4.4](#).

2. Shift the 3 inputs  $K'_C$ , the Bluetooth device address, the clock, and the six-bit constant 111001 into the LFSRs. In total, 208 bits are shifted in:
  - a) Open all switches shown in [Figure 4.5 on page 1310](#);
  - b) Arrange inputs bits as shown in [Figure 4.5](#); Set the content of all shift register elements to zero. Set  $t = 0$ .
  - c) Start shifting bits into the LFSRs. The rightmost bit at each level of [Figure 4.5](#) is the first bit to enter the corresponding LFSR.
  - d) When the first input bit at level  $i$  reaches the rightmost position of  $LFSR_i$ , close the switch of this LFSR.
  - e) At  $t = 39$  (when the switch of  $LFSR_4$  is closed), reset both blend registers  $c_{39} = c_{39-1} = 0$ ; Up to this point, the content of  $c_t$  and  $c_{t-1}$  has been of no concern. However, their content will now be used in computing the output sequence.
  - f) From now on output symbols are generated. The remaining input bits are continuously shifted into their corresponding shift registers. When the last bit has been shifted in, the shift register is clocked with input = 0;

Note: When finished,  $LFSR_1$  has effectively clocked 30 times with feedback closed,  $LFSR_2$  has clocked 24 times,  $LFSR_3$  has clocked 22 times, and  $LFSR_4$  has effectively clocked 16 times with feedback closed.

3. To mix initial data, continue to clock until 200 symbols have been produced with all switches closed ( $t = 239$ );
4. Keep blend registers  $c_t$  and  $c_{t-1}$ , make a parallel load of the last 128 generated bits into the LFSRs according to [Figure 4.6](#) at  $t = 240$ ;

After the parallel load in item 4, the blend register contents shall be updated for each subsequent clock.

$L$	$\deg$	$g_1^{(L)}$	$\deg$	$g_2^{(L)}$
1	[8]	00000000 00000000 00000000 0000011d	[119]	00e275a0 abd218d4 cf928b9b bf6cb08f
2	[16]	00000000 00000000 00000000 0001003f	[112]	0001e3f6 3d7659b3 7f18c258 cff6efef
3	[24]	00000000 00000000 00000000 010000db	[104]	000001be f66c6c3a b1030a5a 1919808b
4	[32]	00000000 00000000 00000001 000000af	[96]	00000001 6ab89969 de17467f d3736ad9

*Table 4.4: Polynomials used when creating  $K'_C$ .<sup>1</sup>*

L	<b>deg</b>	$g_1^{(L)}$	<b>deg</b>	$g_2^{(L)}$
5	[40]	00000000 00000000 00001000 00000039	[88]	00000000 01630632 91da50ec 55715247
6	[48]	00000000 00000000 00010000 00000291	[77]	00000000 00002c93 52aa6cc0 54468311
7	[56]	00000000 00000000 01000000 00000095	[71]	00000000 000000b3 f7fffcce2 79f3a073
8	[64]	00000000 00000001 00000000 0000001b	[63]	00000000 00000000 a1ab815b c7ec8025
9	[72]	00000000 00000100 00000000 00000609	[49]	00000000 00000000 0002c980 11d8b04d
10	[80]	00000000 00010000 00000000 00000215	[42]	00000000 00000000 0000058e 24f9a4bb
11	[88]	00000000 01000000 00000000 0000013b	[35]	00000000 00000000 0000000c a76024d7
12	[96]	00000001 00000000 00000000 000000dd	[28]	00000000 00000000 00000000 1c9c26b9
13	[104]	00000100 00000000 00000000 0000049d	[21]	00000000 00000000 00000000 0026d9e3
14	[112]	00010000 00000000 00000000 0000014f	[14]	00000000 00000000 00000000 00004377
15	[120]	01000000 00000000 00000000 000000e7	[7]	00000000 00000000 00000000 00000089
16	[128]	1 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000	[0]	00000000 00000000 00000000 00000001

Table 4.4: Polynomials used when creating  $K'_{c^*}$ .<sup>1</sup>

1. All polynomials are in hexadecimal notation. The LSB is in the rightmost position.

In Figure 4.5, all bits are shifted into the LFSRs, starting with the least significant bit (LSB). For instance, from the third octet of the address, BD\_ADDR[2], first BD\_ADDR<sub>16</sub> is entered, followed by BD\_ADDR<sub>17</sub>, etc. Furthermore, CL<sub>0</sub> corresponds to CLK<sub>1</sub>, ..., CL<sub>25</sub> corresponds to CLK<sub>26</sub>.

Note that the output symbols  $x_t^i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, 4$  are taken from the positions 24, 24, 32, and 32 for LFSR<sub>1</sub>, LFSR<sub>2</sub>, LFSR<sub>3</sub>, and LFSR<sub>4</sub>, respectively (counting the leftmost position as number 1).

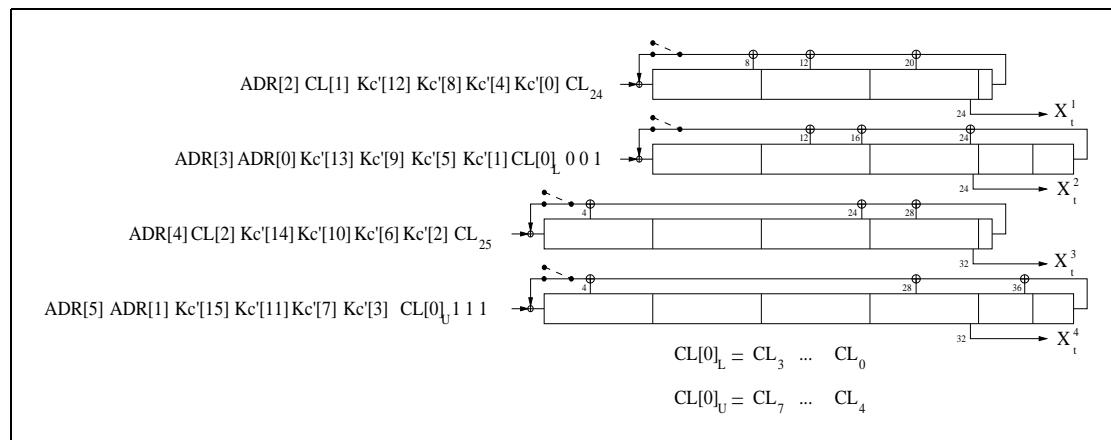
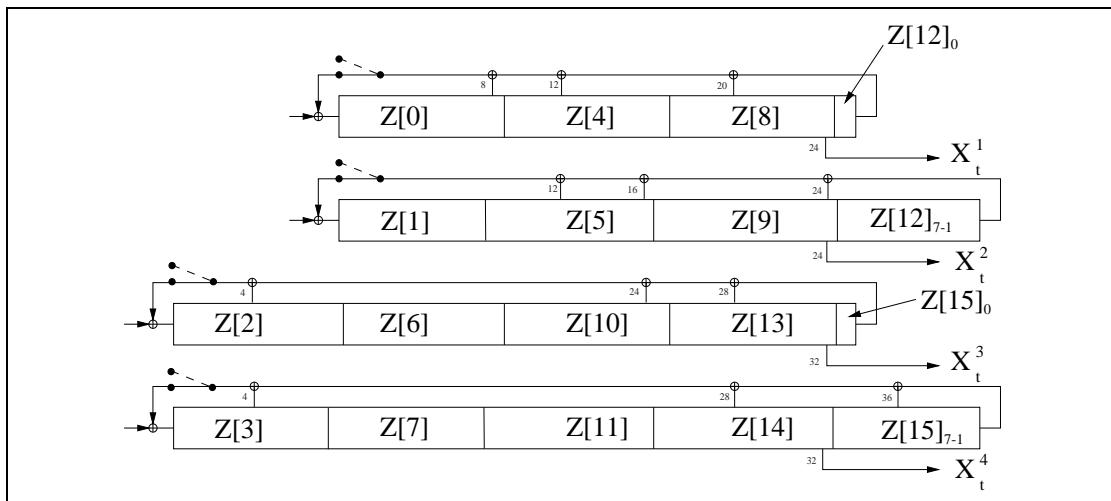


Figure 4.5: Arranging the input to the LFSRs.

In [Figure 4.6](#), the 128 binary output symbols  $Z_0, \dots, Z_{127}$  are arranged in octets denoted  $Z[0], \dots, Z[15]$ . The LSB of  $Z[0]$  corresponds to the first of these symbols, the MSB of  $Z[15]$  is the last output from the generator. These bits shall be loaded into the LFSRs according to the figure. It is a parallel load and no update of the blend registers is done. The first output symbol is generated at the same time. The octets shall be written into the registers with the LSB in the leftmost position (i.e. the opposite of before). For example,  $Z_{24}$  is loaded into position 1 of LFSR<sub>4</sub>.



*Figure 4.6: Distribution of the 128 last generated output symbols within the LFSRs.*

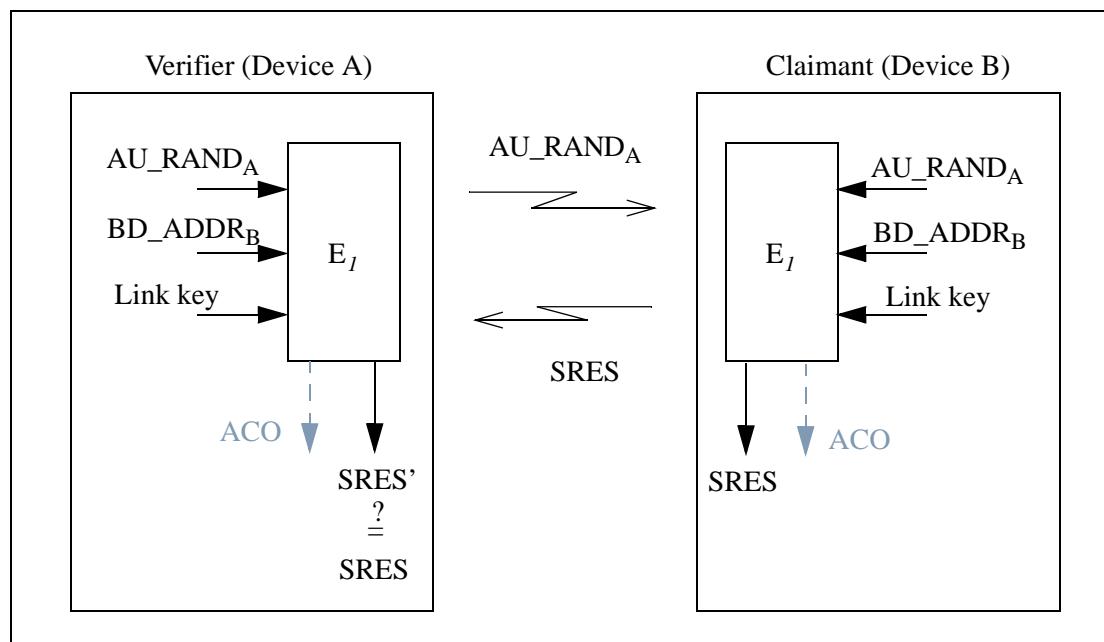
## 4.6 KEY STREAM SEQUENCE

When the initialization is finished, the output from the summation combiner is used for encryption/decryption. The first bit to use shall be the one produced at the parallel load, i.e. at  $t = 240$ . The circuit shall be run for the entire length of the current payload. Then, before the reverse direction is started, the entire initialization process shall be repeated with updated values on the input parameters.

Sample data of the encryption output sequence can be found in [\[Part G\] Section 1.1 on page 1149](#). A necessary, but not sufficient, condition for all Bluetooth compliant implementations of encryption is to produce these encryption streams for identical initialization values.

## 5 AUTHENTICATION

Legacy authentication uses a challenge-response scheme in which a claimant's knowledge of a secret key is checked through a 2-move protocol using symmetric secret keys. The latter implies that a correct claimant/verifier pair share the same secret key, for example K. In the challenge-response scheme the verifier challenges the claimant to authenticate a random input (the challenge), denoted by AU\_RAND<sub>A</sub>, with an authentication code, denoted by E<sub>I</sub>, and return the result SRES to the verifier, see [Figure 5.1 on page 1312](#). This figure also shows that the input to E<sub>I</sub> consists of the tuple AU\_RAND<sub>A</sub> and the Bluetooth device address (BD\_ADDR) of the claimant. The use of this address prevents a simple reflection attack<sup>1</sup>. The secret K shared by devices A and B is the current link key.



*Figure 5.1: Challenge-response for the Bluetooth.*

The challenge-response scheme for symmetric keys in legacy authentication is depicted in [Figure 5.2 on page 1313](#).

1. The reflection attack actually forms no threat because all service requests are dealt with on a FIFO basis. When preemption is introduced, this attack is potentially dangerous.

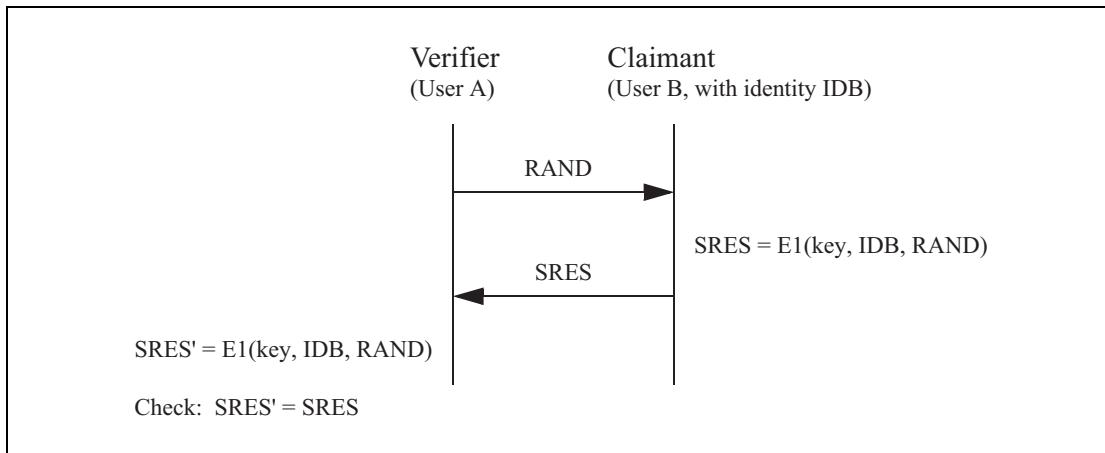


Figure 5.2: Challenge-response for symmetric key systems.

In legacy authentication, the verifier is not required to be the master. The application indicates which device has to be authenticated. Some applications only require a one-way authentication. However, some peer-to-peer communications, should use a mutual authentication in which each device is subsequently the challenger (verifier) in two authentication procedures. The LM shall process authentication preferences from the application to determine in which direction(s) the authentication(s) takes place. For mutual authentication with the devices of [Figure 5.1 on page 1312](#), after device A has successfully authenticated device B, device B could authenticate device A by sending an  $\text{AU\_RAND}_B$  (different from the  $\text{AU\_RAND}_A$  that device A issued) to device A, and deriving the SRES and  $\text{SRES}'$  from the new  $\text{AU\_RAND}_B$ , the address of device A, and the link key  $K_{AB}$ .

If a legacy authentication is successful the value of ACO as produced by  $E_1$  shall be retained.

Secure Authentication uses a challenge-response scheme in which both devices act as a verifier and claimant in the same sequence where the knowledge of a secret key is checked through a 4-move protocol using symmetric secret keys. The latter implies that a correct claimant/verifier pair share the same secret key, for example  $K$ . In the challenge-response scheme the master challenges the slave to authenticate a random input (the challenge), denoted by  $\text{AU\_RAND}_m$ , with an authentication code, denoted by  $h_4$  and  $h_5$ , and return the resulting SRESs to the verifier, see [Figure 5.3](#). Similarly, the slave challenges the master to authenticate a random input (the challenge), denoted  $\text{AU\_RAND}_s$ , with an authentication code, denoted by  $h_4$  and  $h_5$ , and return the resulting SRES $_m$  to the verifier. This figure also shows that the inputs to  $h_4$  and  $h_5$  consist of a secret, a string "btdk", the Bluetooth device address of the master ( $\text{BD\_ADDR}_m$ ), and the Bluetooth device address of the slave ( $\text{BD\_ADDR}_s$ ). The use of these addresses prevents a simple reflection attack. The secret  $K$  shared by the master and slave is the current link key.

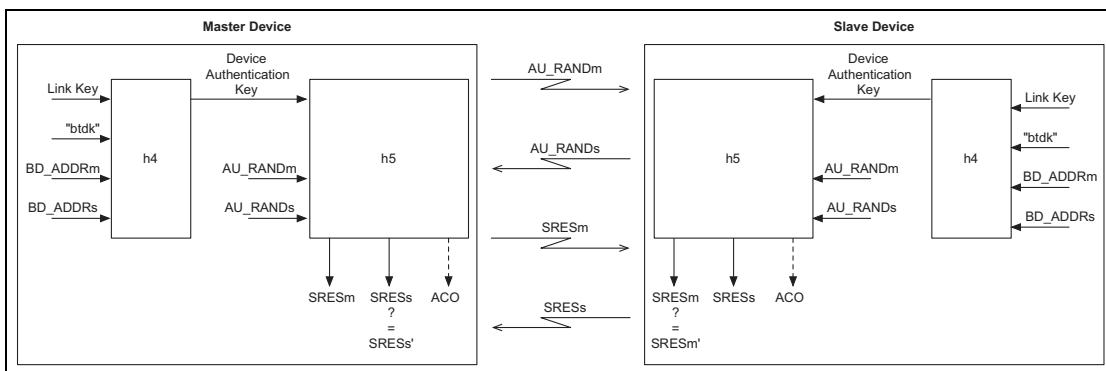


Figure 5.3: Challenge and response for secure authentication.

The challenge-response scheme for symmetric keys in secure authentication is depicted in [Figure 5.4](#).

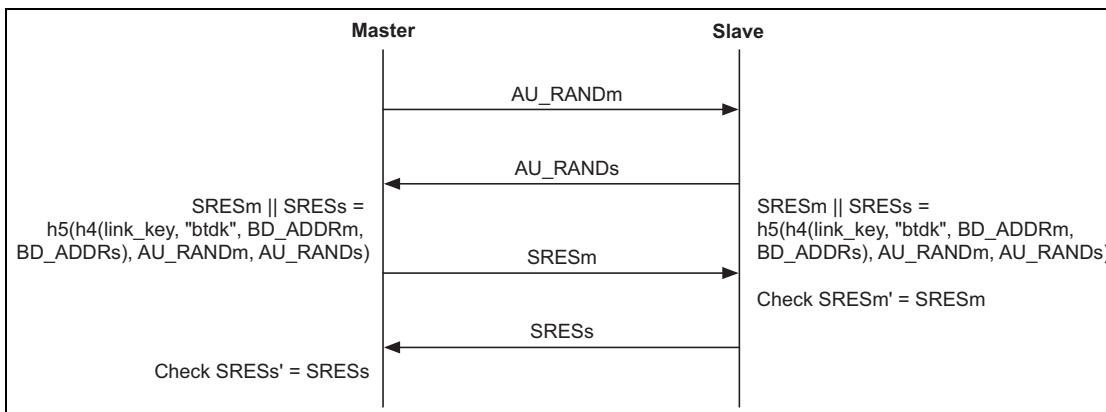


Figure 5.4: Challenge-response for secure authentication.

In secure authentication, both the master and slave are the verifier and claimant. The application indicates which device has to be authenticated, but secure authentication is always a mutual authentication.

If a secure authentication is successful the value of ACO as produced by h5 shall be retained.

## 5.1 REPEATED ATTEMPTS

When the authentication attempt fails, a waiting interval shall pass before the verifier will initiate a new authentication attempt to the same claimant, or before it will respond to an authentication attempt initiated by a device claiming the same identity as the failed device. For each subsequent authentication failure, the waiting interval shall be increased exponentially. That is, after each failure, the waiting interval before a new attempt can be made, could be for example, twice as long as the waiting interval prior to the previous attempt<sup>1</sup>. The waiting interval shall be limited to a maximum.

The maximum waiting interval depends on the implementation. The waiting time shall exponentially decrease to a minimum when no new failed attempts are made during a certain time period. This procedure prevents an intruder from repeating the authentication procedure with a large number of different keys.

To protect a device's private key, a device should implement a method to prevent an attacker from retrieving useful information about the device's private key using invalid public keys. For this purpose, a device can use one of the following methods:

- Change its private key after three failed attempts from any BD\_ADDR and after 10 successful pairings from any BD\_ADDR; or after a combination of these such that 3 successful pairings count as one failed pairing; or
- Verify that the received public keys from any BD\_ADDR are on the correct curve; or
- Implement elliptic curve point addition and doubling using formulas that are valid only on the correct curve.

---

1. Another appropriate value larger than 1 may be used.

## 6 THE AUTHENTICATION AND KEY-GENERATING FUNCTIONS

This section describes the algorithms used for authentication and key generation.

### 6.1 THE AUTHENTICATION FUNCTION $E_1$

The authentication function  $E_1$  is a computationally secure authentication code.  $E_1$  uses the encryption function SAFER+. The algorithm is an enhanced version of an existing 64-bit block cipher SAFER-SK128, and it is freely available. In the following discussion, the block cipher will be denoted as the function  $A_r$  which maps using a 128-bit key, a 128-bit input to a 128-bit output, i.e.

$$A_r: \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{0, 1\}^{128} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}^{128} \quad (\text{EQ } 11)$$

$$(k \times x) \mapsto t.$$

The details of  $A_r$  are given in the next section. The function  $E_1$  is constructed using  $A_r$  as follows

$$E_1: \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{0, 1\}^{48} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}^{32} \times \{0, 1\}^{96} \quad (\text{EQ } 12)$$

$$(K, RAND, address) \mapsto (SRES, ACO),$$

where  $SRES = \text{Hash}(K, RAND, address, 6)[0, \dots, 3]$ , where  $\text{Hash}$  is a keyed hash function defined as<sup>1</sup>,

$$\text{Hash}: \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{0, 1\}^{8 \times L} \times \{6, 12\} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}^{128} \quad (\text{EQ } 13)$$

$$(K, I_1, I_2, L) \mapsto A'_r([\tilde{K}], [E(I_2, L) +_{16} (A_r(K, I_1) \uparrow_{16} I_1)]),$$

and where

$$E: \{0, 1\}^{8 \times L} \times \{6, 12\} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}^{8 \times 16} \quad (\text{EQ } 14)$$

$$(X[0, \dots, L-1], L) \mapsto (X[i \bmod L] \text{ for } i = 0 \dots 15),$$

is an expansion of the  $L$  octet word  $X$  into a 128-bit word. The function  $A_r$  is evaluated twice for each evaluation of  $E_1$ . The key  $\tilde{K}$  for the second use of  $A_r$  (actually  $A'_r$ ) is offset from  $K$  as follows<sup>2</sup>

- 
1. The operator  $+_{16}$  denotes bytewise addition mod 256 of the 16 octets, and the operator  $\oplus_{16}$  denotes bytewise XORing of the 16 octets.
  2. The constants are the largest primes below 257 for which 10 is a primitive root.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \tilde{K}[0] &= (K[0] + 233) \bmod 256, & \tilde{K}[1] &= K[1] \oplus 229, \\
 \tilde{K}[2] &= (K[2] + 223) \bmod 256, & \tilde{K}[3] &= K[3] \oplus 193, \\
 \tilde{K}[4] &= (K[4] + 179) \bmod 256, & \tilde{K}[5] &= K[5] \oplus 167, \\
 \tilde{K}[6] &= (K[6] + 149) \bmod 256, & \tilde{K}[7] &= K[7] \oplus 131, \\
 \tilde{K}[8] &= K[8] \oplus 233, & \tilde{K}[9] &= (K[9] + 229) \bmod 256, \\
 \tilde{K}[10] &= K[10] \oplus 223, & \tilde{K}[11] &= (K[11] + 193) \bmod 256, \\
 \tilde{K}[12] &= K[12] \oplus 179, & \tilde{K}[13] &= (K[13] + 167) \bmod 256, \\
 \tilde{K}[14] &= K[14] \oplus 149, & \tilde{K}[15] &= (K[15] + 131) \bmod 256.
 \end{aligned} \tag{EQ 15}$$

A data flowchart of the computation of  $E_1$  is shown in [Figure 6.1 on page 1317](#).  $E_1$  is also used to deliver the parameter ACO (Authenticated Ciphering Offset) that is used in the generation of the ciphering key by  $E_3$ , see equations [\(EQ 3\) on page 1299](#) and [\(EQ 23\) on page 1322](#). The value of ACO is formed by the octets 4 through 15 of the output of the hash function defined in [\(EQ 13\) on page 1316](#):

$$\text{ACO} = \text{Hash}(K, \text{RAND}, \text{address}, 6)[4, \dots, 15]. \tag{EQ 16}$$

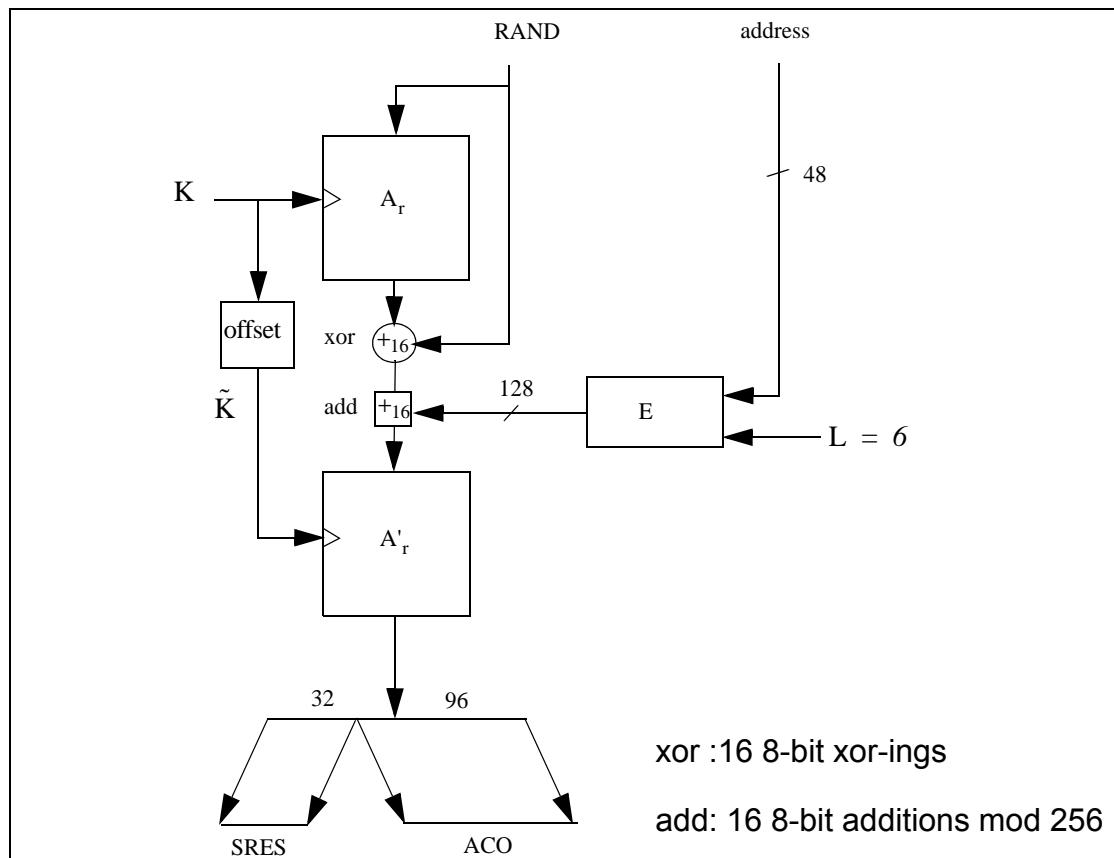


Figure 6.1: Flow of data for the computation of  $E_1$ .

## 6.2 THE FUNCTIONS $A_r$ AND $A'_r$

The function  $A_r$  is identical to SAFER+. It consists of a set of 8 layers, (each layer is called a round) and a parallel mechanism for generating the sub keys  $K_p[j]$ ,  $p = 1, 2, \dots, 17$ , which are the round keys to be used in each round. The function will produce a 128-bit result from a 128-bit random input string and a 128-bit key. Besides the function  $A_r$ , a slightly modified version referred to as  $A'_r$  is used in which the input of round 1 is added to the input of round 3. This is done to make the modified version non-invertible and prevents the use of  $A'_r$  (especially in  $E_{2x}$ ) as an encryption function. See [Figure 6.2 on page 1319](#) for details.

### 6.2.1 The round computations

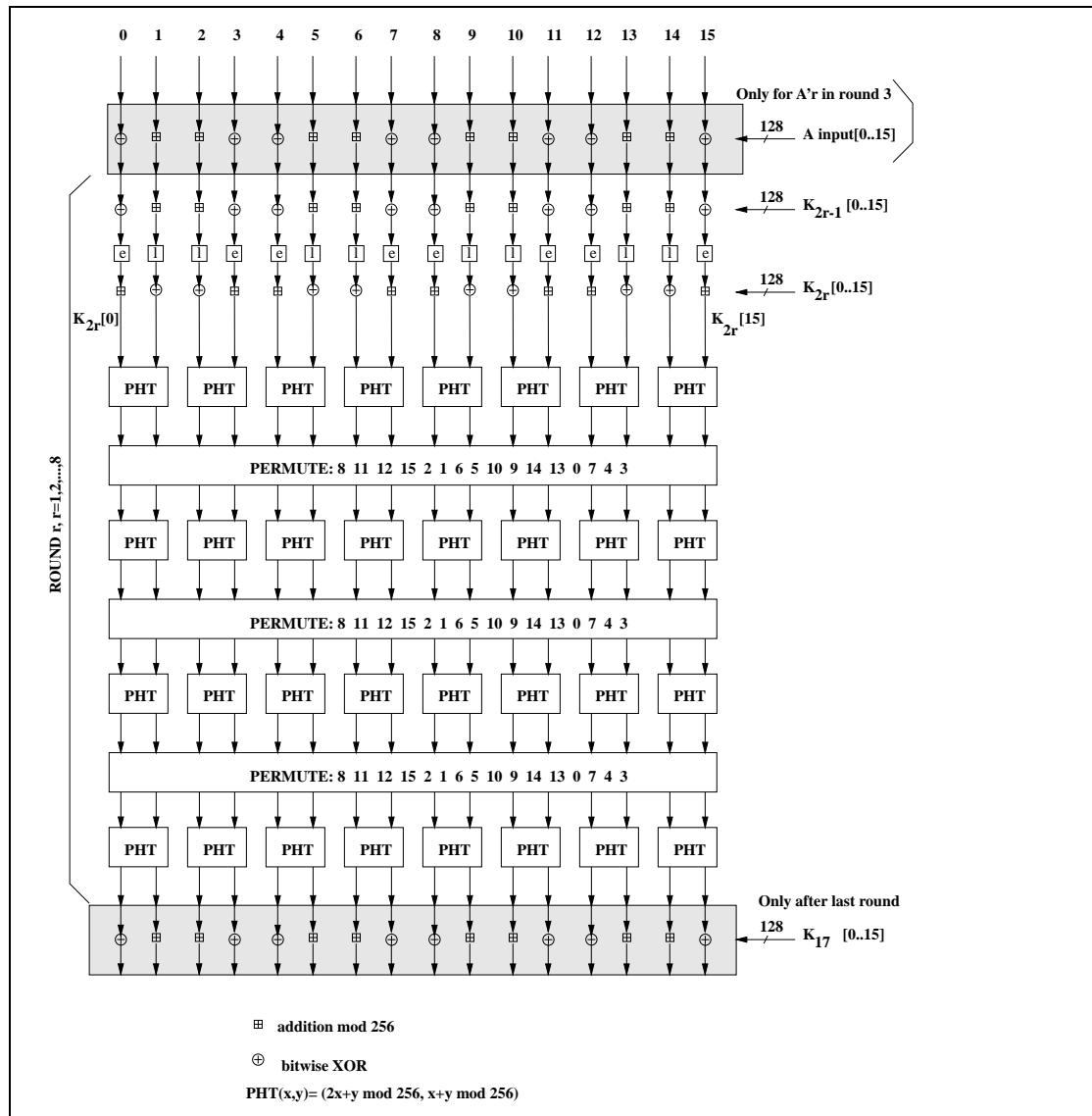
The computations in each round are a composition of encryption with a round key, substitution, encryption with the next round key, and, finally, a Pseudo Hadamard Transform (PHT). The computations in a round shall be as shown in [Figure 6.2 on page 1319](#). The sub keys for round  $r$ ,  $r = 1, 2, \dots, 8$  are denoted  $K_{2r-1}[j]$ ,  $K_{2r}[j]$ ,  $j = 0, 1, \dots, 15$ . After the last round  $K_{17}[j]$  is applied identically to all previous odd numbered keys.

### 6.2.2 The substitution boxes “e” and “l”

In [Figure 6.2 on page 1319](#) two boxes are shown, marked “e” and “l”. These boxes implement the same substitutions as are used in SAFER+; i.e. they implement

$$\begin{aligned} e, l &: \{0, \dots, 255\} \rightarrow \{0, \dots, 255\}, \\ e &: i \mapsto (45^i \pmod{257}) \pmod{256}, \\ l &: i \mapsto j \text{ s.t. } i = e(j). \end{aligned}$$

Their role, as in the SAFER+ algorithm, is to introduce non-linearity.

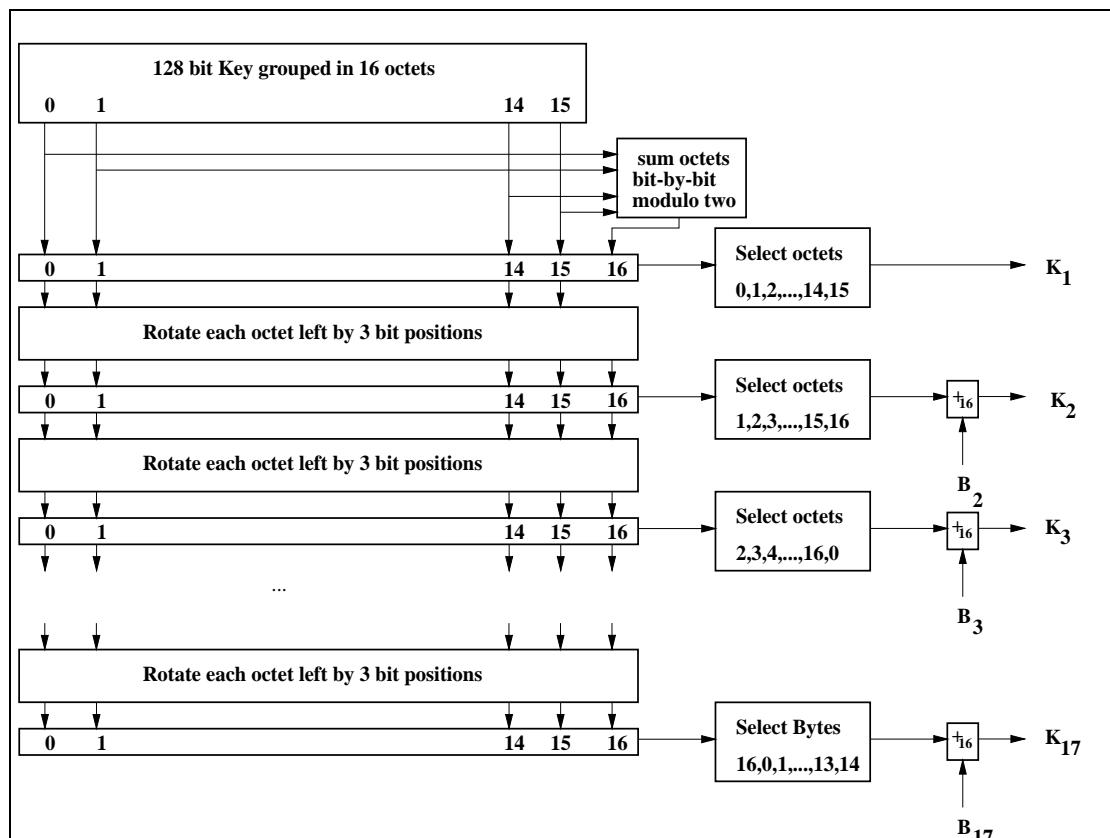
Figure 6.2: One round in  $A_r$  and  $A'_r$ 

In [Section 6.2](#), the permutation boxes show how input byte indices are mapped onto output byte indices. Thus, position 8 is mapped on position 0 (leftmost), position 11 is mapped on position 1, etc.

### 6.2.3 Key scheduling

In each round, 2 batches of 16 octet-wide keys are needed. These round keys are derived as specified by the key scheduling in SAFER+. [Figure 6.3 on page 1320](#) gives an overview of how the round keys  $K_p[j]$  are determined. The bias vectors  $B_2, B_3, \dots, B_{17}$  shall be computed according to following equation:

$$B_p[i] = ((45^{(45^{17p+i+1} \bmod 257)} \bmod 257) \bmod 256), \text{ for } i = 0, \dots, 15. \quad (\text{EQ 17})$$

Figure 6.3: Key scheduling in  $A_r$ .

### 6.3 E<sub>2</sub>-KEY GENERATION FUNCTION FOR AUTHENTICATION

The key used for authentication shall be derived through the procedure that is shown in [Figure 6.4 on page 1322](#). The figure shows two modes of operation for the algorithm. In the first mode,  $E_{21}$  produces a 128-bit kink key,  $K$ , using a 128-bit RAND value and a 48-bit address. This mode shall be utilized when creating unit keys and combination keys. In the second mode,  $E_{22}$  produces a 128-bit link key,  $K$ , using a 128-bit RAND value and an  $L$  octet user PIN. The second mode shall be used to create the initialization key, and also when a master key is to be generated.

When the initialization key is generated, the PIN is augmented with the BD\_ADDR, see [Section 3.2.1 on page 1296](#) for which address to use. The augmentation shall always start with the least significant octet of the address immediately following the most significant octet of the PIN. Since the maximum length of the PIN used in the algorithm cannot exceed 16 octets, it is possible that not all octets of BD\_ADDR will be used.

This key generating algorithm again exploits the cryptographic function  $E_2$ . for mode 1 (denoted  $E_{21}$ ) is computed according to following equations:

$$E_{21}: \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{0, 1\}^{48} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}^{128} \quad (\text{EQ } 18)$$

$$(\text{RAND}, \text{address}) \mapsto A'_r(X, Y)$$

where (for mode 1)

$$\begin{cases} X = \text{RAND}[0\dots 14] \cup (\text{RAND}[15] \oplus 6) \\ Y = \bigcup_{i=0}^{15} \text{address}[i \pmod 6] \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 19)$$

Let  $L$  be the number of octets in the user PIN. The augmenting is defined by

$$\text{PIN}' = \begin{cases} \text{PIN}[0\dots L-1] \cup \text{BD_ADDR}[0\dots \min\{5, 15-L\}], & L < 16, \\ \text{PIN}[0\dots L-1], & L = 16, \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 20)$$

Then, in mode 2,  $E_2$  (denoted  $E_{22}$ ) is

$$E_{22}: \{0, 1\}^{8L'} \times \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{1, 2, \dots, 16\} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}^{128} \quad (\text{EQ } 21)$$

$$(\text{PIN}', \text{RAND}, L') \mapsto A'_r(X, Y)$$

where

$$\begin{cases} X = \bigcup_{i=0}^{15} \text{PIN}'[i \pmod {L'}], \\ Y = \text{RAND}[0\dots 14] \cup (\text{RAND}[15] \oplus L'), \end{cases} \quad (\text{EQ } 22)$$

and  $L' = \min\{16, L+6\}$  is the number of octets in  $\text{PIN}'$ .

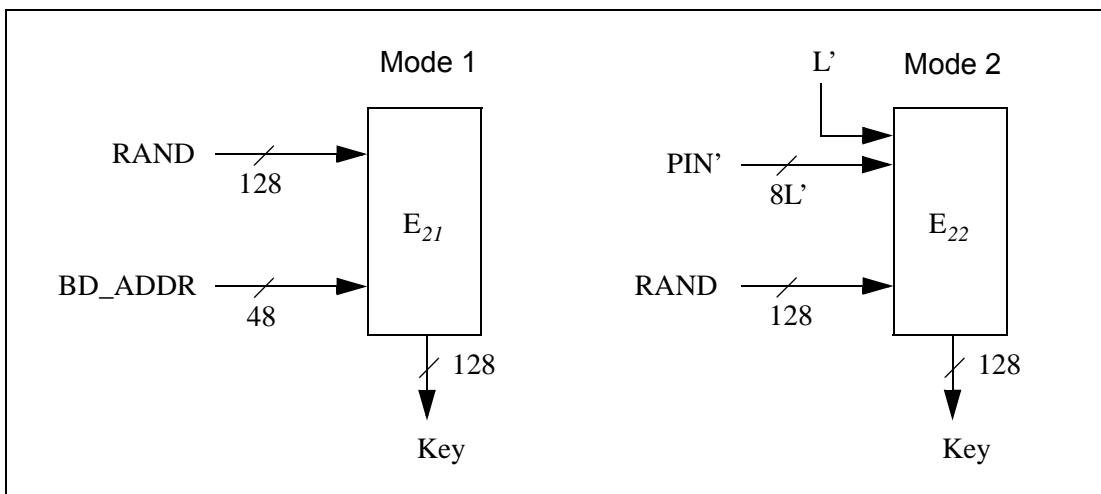


Figure 6.4: Key generating algorithm  $E_2$  and its two modes. Mode 1 is used for unit and combination keys, while mode 2 is used for  $K_{init}$  and  $K_{master}$ .

## 6.4 $E_3$ -KEY GENERATION FUNCTION FOR ENCRYPTION

The ciphering key  $K_C$  used by  $E_0$  shall be generated by  $E_3$ . The function  $E_3$  is constructed using  $A'_r$  as follows

$$E_3: \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{0, 1\}^{128} \times \{0, 1\}^{96} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}^{128} \quad (\text{EQ 23})$$

$$(K, RAND, COF) \mapsto \text{Hash}(K, RAND, COF, 12)$$

where Hash is the hash function as defined by [\(EQ 13\) on page 1316](#). The key length produced is 128 bits. However, before use within  $E_0$ , the encryption key  $K_C$  is shortened to the correct encryption key length, as described in [Section 4.5 on page 1308](#). A block scheme of  $E_3$  is depicted in [Figure 6.5](#).

The value of COF is determined as specified by equation [\(EQ 3\) on page 1299](#).

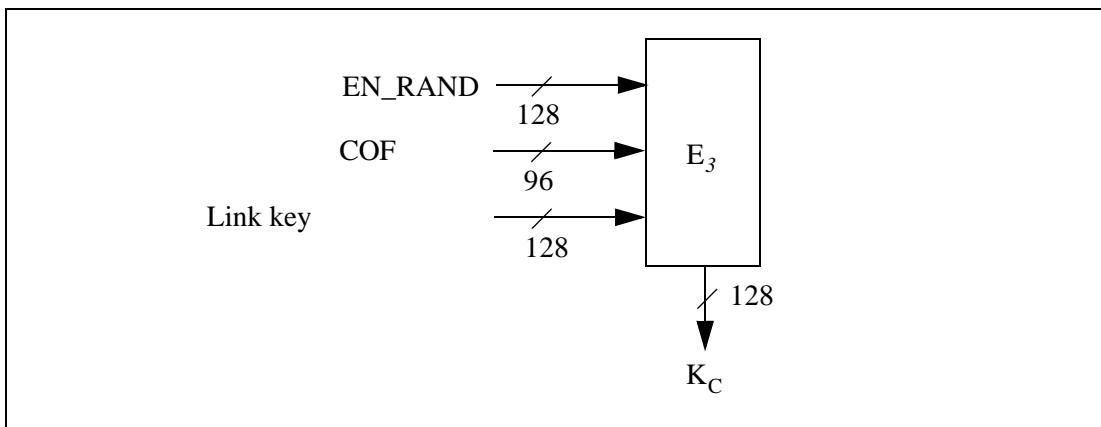


Figure 6.5: Generation of the encryption key

## 7 SECURE SIMPLE PAIRING

The Secure Simple Pairing security functions and procedures are described in this section. In addition, a cryptographic analysis of each procedure is provided.

There are five phases of Secure Simple Pairing:

- Phase 1: Public key exchange
- Phase 2: Authentication Stage 1
- Phase 3: Authentication Stage 2
- Phase 4: Link key calculation
- Phase 5: LMP Authentication and Encryption

Phases 1, 3, 4 and 5 are the same for all protocols whereas phase 2 (Authentication Stage 1) is different depending on the protocol used. Distributed through these five phases are 13 steps.

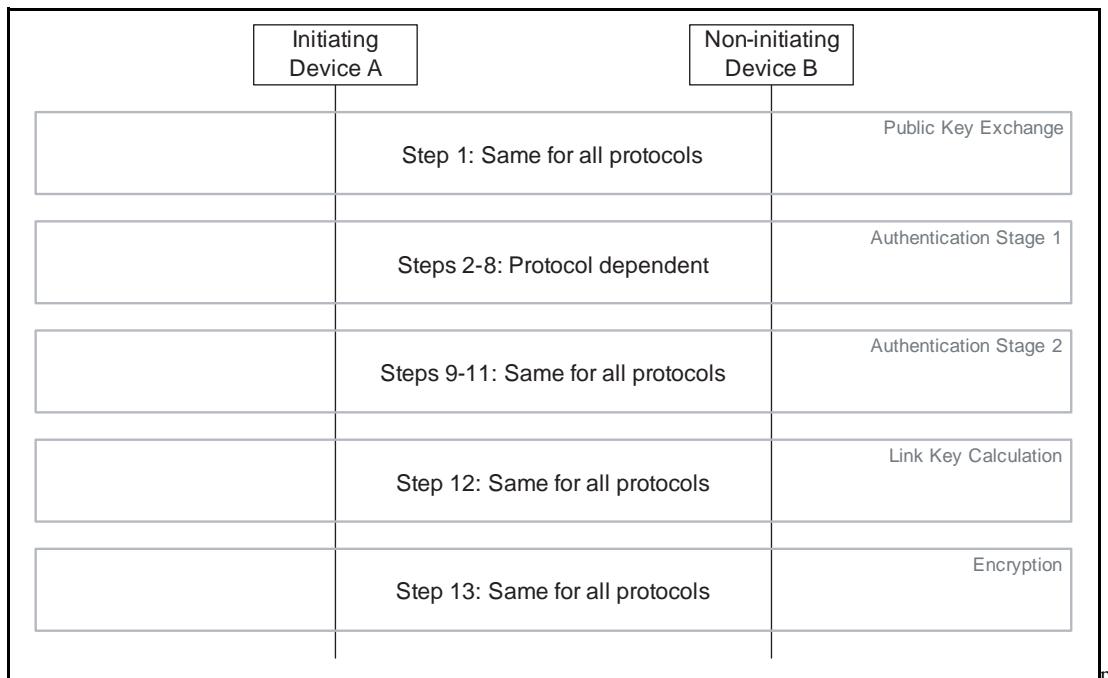


Figure 7.1: Simple Pairing Security Phases

The terminology used in the security sections is defined in [Table 7.1](#):

Term	Definition
Cx	Commitment value from device X
Cxi	i <sup>th</sup> commitment value from device X. Only used in the passkey entry protocol

Table 7.1: Terminology

Term	Definition
DHKey	Diffie Hellman key
Ex	Check value from device X
f1( )	Used to generate the 128-bit commitment values Ca and Cb
f2( )	Used to compute the link key and possible other keys from the DHKey and random nonces
f3( )	Used to compute check values Ea and Eb in Authentication Stage 2
g( )	Used to compute numeric check values
h2( )	Used to compute Generic AMP and Dedicated AMP keys
IOcapA	IO capabilities of device A
IOcapB	IO capabilities of device B
LK	Link Key
Nx	Nonce (unique random value) from device X
Nxi	i <sup>th</sup> nonce (unique random value) from device X. Only used in the passkey entry protocol
PKx	Public Key of device X
rx	Random value generated by device X
rxi	Bit i of the random value rx. Only used in the passkey entry protocol
SKx	Secret (Private) Key of device X
Vx	Confirmation value on device X. Only used in the numeric compare protocol.
X	BD_ADDR of device X

Table 7.1: Terminology

## 7.1 PHASE 1: PUBLIC KEY EXCHANGE

Initially, each device generates its own Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman (ECDH) public-private key pair (step 1). This key pair needs to be generated only once per device and may be computed in advance of pairing. A device may, at any time, choose to discard its public-private key pair and generate a new one, although there is not a requirement to do so.

Pairing is initiated by the initiating device sending its public key to the receiving device (step 1a). The responding device replies with its own public key (step 1b). These public keys are not regarded as secret although they may identify the devices. Note that steps 1a and 1b are the same in all three protocols.

When both device's Controllers and Hosts support Secure Connections, the P-256 elliptic curve is used. When at least one device's Controller or Host doesn't support Secure Connections, the P-192 elliptic curve is used.

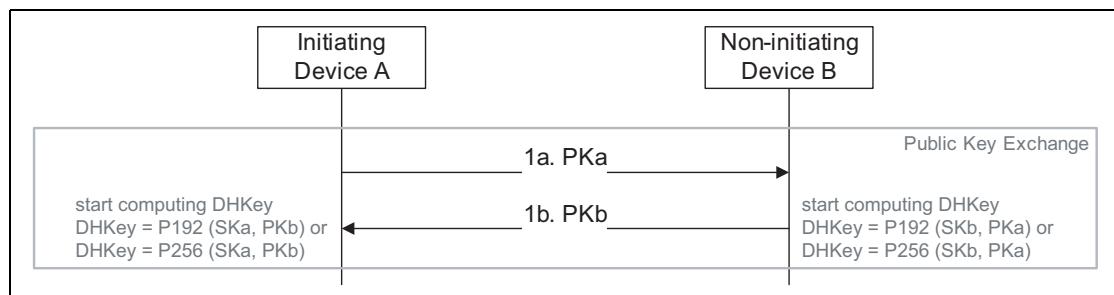


Figure 7.2: Public Key Exchange Details

## 7.2 PHASE 2: AUTHENTICATION STAGE 1

Authentication Stage 1 has three different protocols: Numeric Comparison, Out-of-Band, and Passkey Entry. Note that there is not a separate protocol for the Just Works association model. This association model shares the Numeric Comparison protocol.

The protocol is chosen based on the IO capabilities of the two devices.

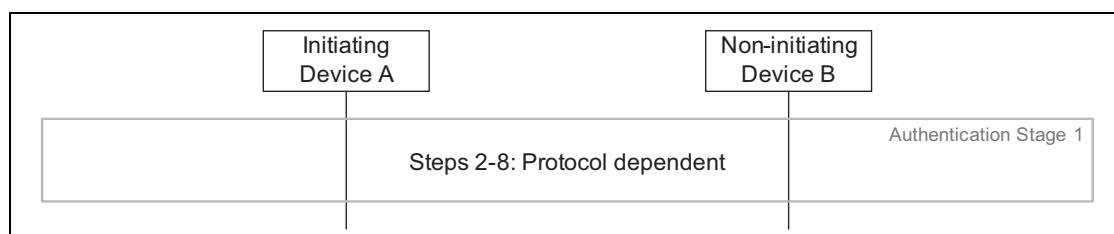


Figure 7.3: Authentication Stage 1 (High Level)

The three protocols are described in the following sections.

### 7.2.1 Authentication Stage 1: Numeric Comparison Protocol

The Numeric Comparison protocol provides limited protection against active "man-in-the-middle" (MITM) attacks as an active man-in-the-middle will succeed with a probability of 0.000001 on each iteration of the protocol. Provided that there is no MITM at the time the pairing is performed, the shared Link Key that is generated is computationally secure from even a passive eavesdropper that may have been present during the pairing.

The sequence diagram of Authentication Stage 1 for the Numeric Comparison protocol from the cryptographic point of view is shown below:

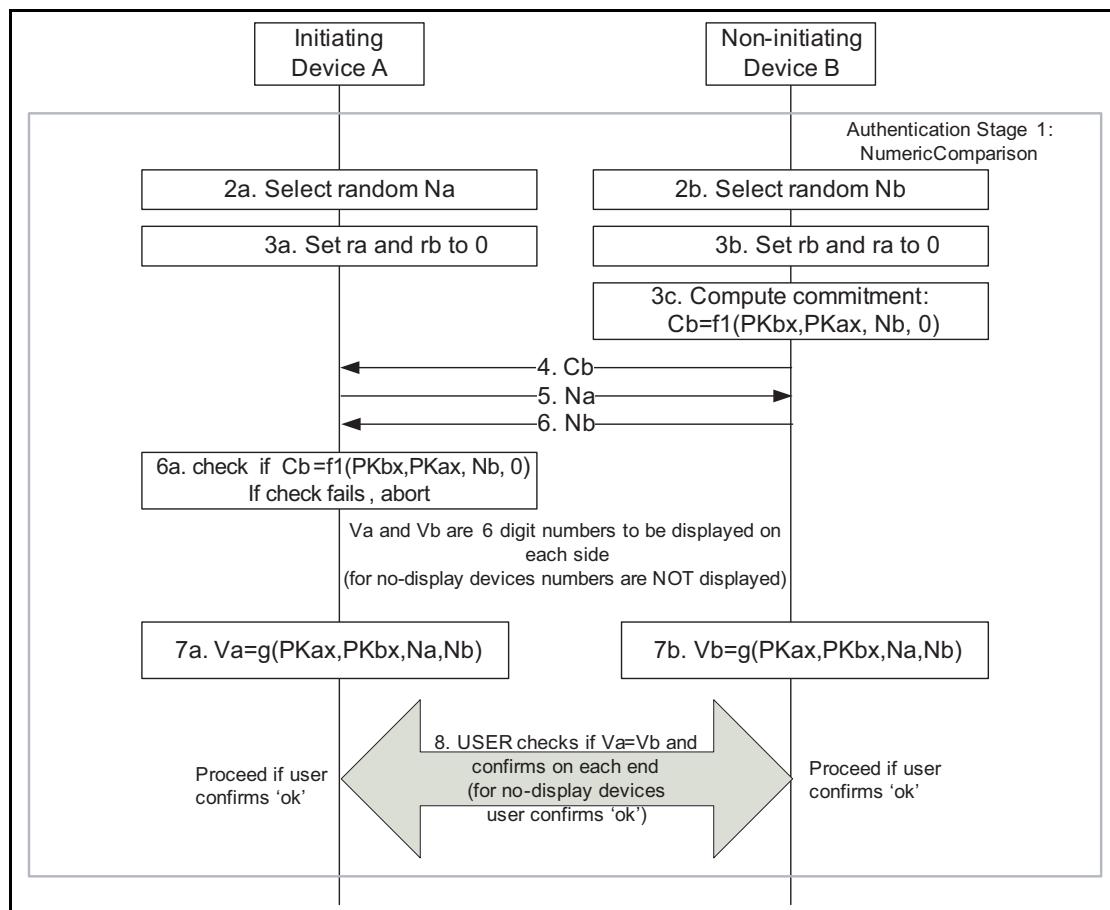


Figure 7.4: Authentication Stage 1: Numeric Comparison Protocol Details

After the public keys have been exchanged, each device selects a pseudo-random 128-bit nonce (step 2). This value is used to prevent replay attacks and must be freshly generated with each instantiation of the pairing protocol. This value should be generated directly from a physical source of randomness or with a good pseudo-random generator seeded with a random value from a physical source.

Following this the responding device then computes a commitment to the two public keys that have been exchanged and its own nonce value (step 3c). This commitment is computed as a one-way function of these values and is trans-

mitted to the initiating device (step 4). The commitment prevents an attacker from changing these values at a later time.

The initiating and responding devices then exchange their respective nonce values (steps 5 and 6) and the initiating device confirms the commitment (step 6a). A failure at this point indicates the presence of an attacker or other transmission error and causes the protocol to abort. The protocol may be repeated with or without the generation of new public-private key pairs, but new nonces must be generated if the protocol is repeated.

Assuming that the commitment check succeeds, the two devices each compute 6-digit confirmation values that are displayed to the user on their respective devices (steps 7a, 7b, and 8). The user is expected to check that these 6-digit values match and to confirm if there is a match. If there is no match, the protocol aborts and, as before, new nonces must be generated if the protocol is to be repeated.

An active MITM must inject its own key material into this process to have any effect other than denial-of-service. A simple MITM attack will result in the two 6-digit display values being different with probability 0.999999. A more sophisticated attack may attempt to engineer the display values to match, but this is thwarted by the commitment sequence. If the attacker first exchanges nonces with the responding device, it must commit to the nonce that it will use with the initiating device before it sees the nonce from the initiating device. If the attacker first exchanges nonces with the initiating device, it must send a nonce to the responding device before seeing the nonce from the responding device. In each case, the attacker must commit to at least the second of its nonces before knowing the second nonce from the legitimate devices. It therefore cannot choose its own nonces in such a way as to cause the display values to match.

### 7.2.2 Authentication Stage 1: Out of Band Protocol

The Out-of-Band protocol is used when authentication information has been received by at least one of the devices and indicated in the OOB Authentication Data Present parameter in the LMP IO capability exchange sequence. The mode in which the discovery of the peer device is first done in-band and then followed by the transmission of authentication parameters through OOB interface is not supported. The sequence diagram for Authentication Stage 1 for Out of Band from the cryptographic point of view is shown below:

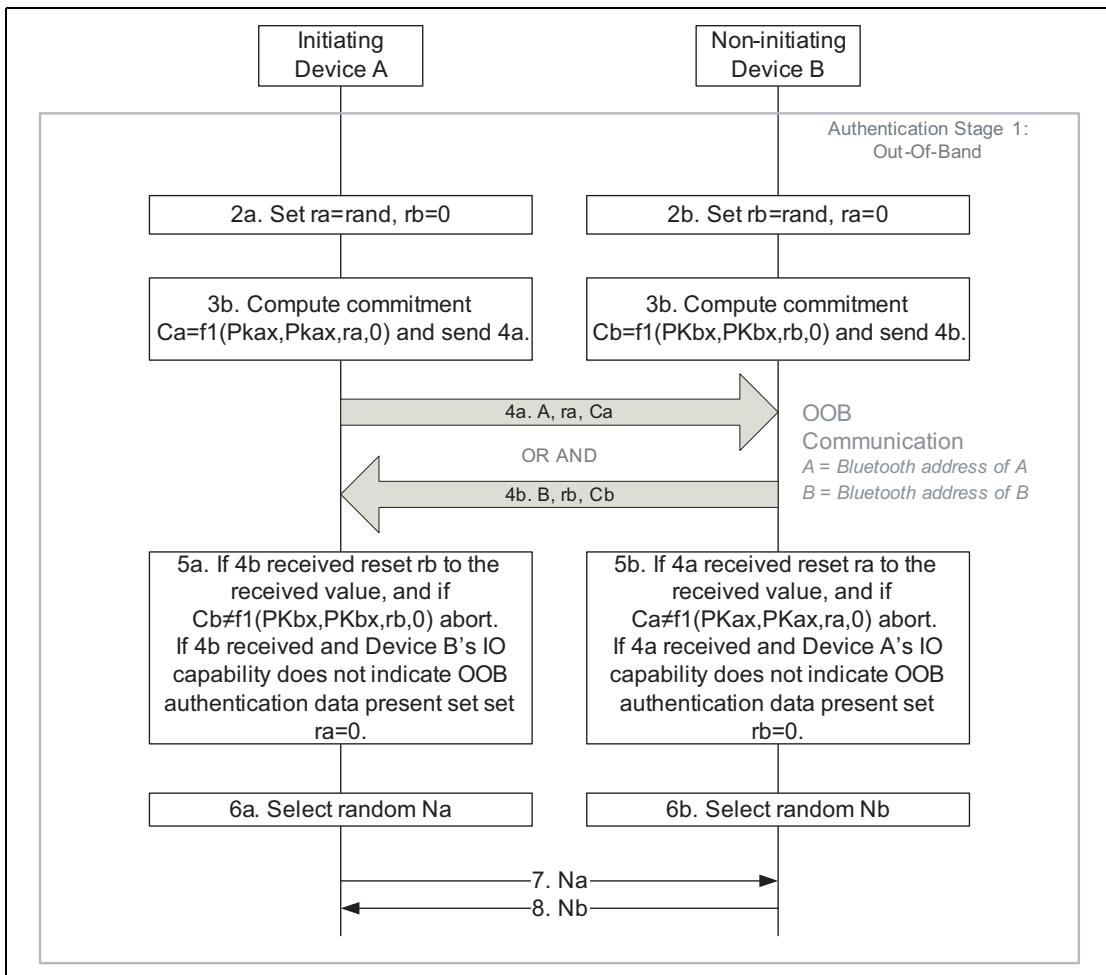


Figure 7.5: Authentication Stage 1: Out of Band Details

**Principle of operation:** If both devices can transmit and/or receive data over an out-of-band channel, then mutual authentication will be based on the commitments of the public keys (Ca and Cb) exchanged OOB in Authentication stage 1. If OOB communication is possible only in one direction (e.g., one device can only be read as e.g. is the case of a device equipped with a passive NFC tag), then authentication of the device receiving the OOB communication will be based on that device knowing a random number r sent via OOB. In this case, r must be secret: r can be created afresh every time, or access to the device sending r must be restricted. If r is not sent by a device, it is assumed to be 0 by the device receiving the OOB information in step 4a or 4b.

If the OOB communication cannot be tampered with (i.e. immune to a MITM attack), this association method is also not susceptible to MITM attack. Also, in the Out of Band protocol the size of authentication parameters (Ca, Cb and ra, rb) need not be restricted by what the user can comfortably read or type. For that reason the Out of Band protocol can be more secure than using the Numeric Comparison or Passkey Entry protocols. However, both devices need to have matching OOB interfaces.

**Roles of A and B:** The OOB Authentication Stage 1 protocol is symmetric with respect to the roles of A and B. It does not require that device A always will initiate pairing and it automatically resolves asymmetry in the OOB communication, e.g. in the case when one of the devices has an NFC tag and can only transmit OOB.

**Order of steps:** The public key exchange must happen before the verification step 5. In the diagram the in-band public key exchange between the devices (step 1) is done before the OOB communication (step 4). But when the pairing is initiated by an OOB interface, public key exchange will happen after the OOB communication (step 1 will be between steps 4 and 5).

Values of  $ra$  and  $rb$ : Since the direction of the peer's OOB interface cannot be verified before the OOB communication takes place, a device should always generate and if possible transmit through its OOB interface a random number  $r$  to the peer. Each device applies the following rules locally to set the values of its own  $r$  and the value of the peer's  $r$ :

1. Initially,  $r$  of the device is set to a random number and  $r$  of the peer is set to 0 (step 2).
2. If a device has received OOB, it sets the peer's  $r$  value to what was sent by the peer (Step 5).
3. If the remote device's OOB Authentication Data parameter sent in the LMP IO capabilities exchange sequence is set to No OOB Data Received, it sets its own  $r$  value to 0 (Step 5)

These rules ensure that when entering Authentication Stage 2, both A and B have the same values for  $ra$  and  $rb$  if OOB communication took place.

### 7.2.3 Authentication Stage 1: Passkey Entry Protocol

The Passkey Entry protocol is used when LMP IO capability exchange sequence indicates that Passkey Entry shall be used.

The sequence diagram for Authentication Stage 1 for Passkey Entry from the cryptographic point of view is shown in [Figure 7.6](#).

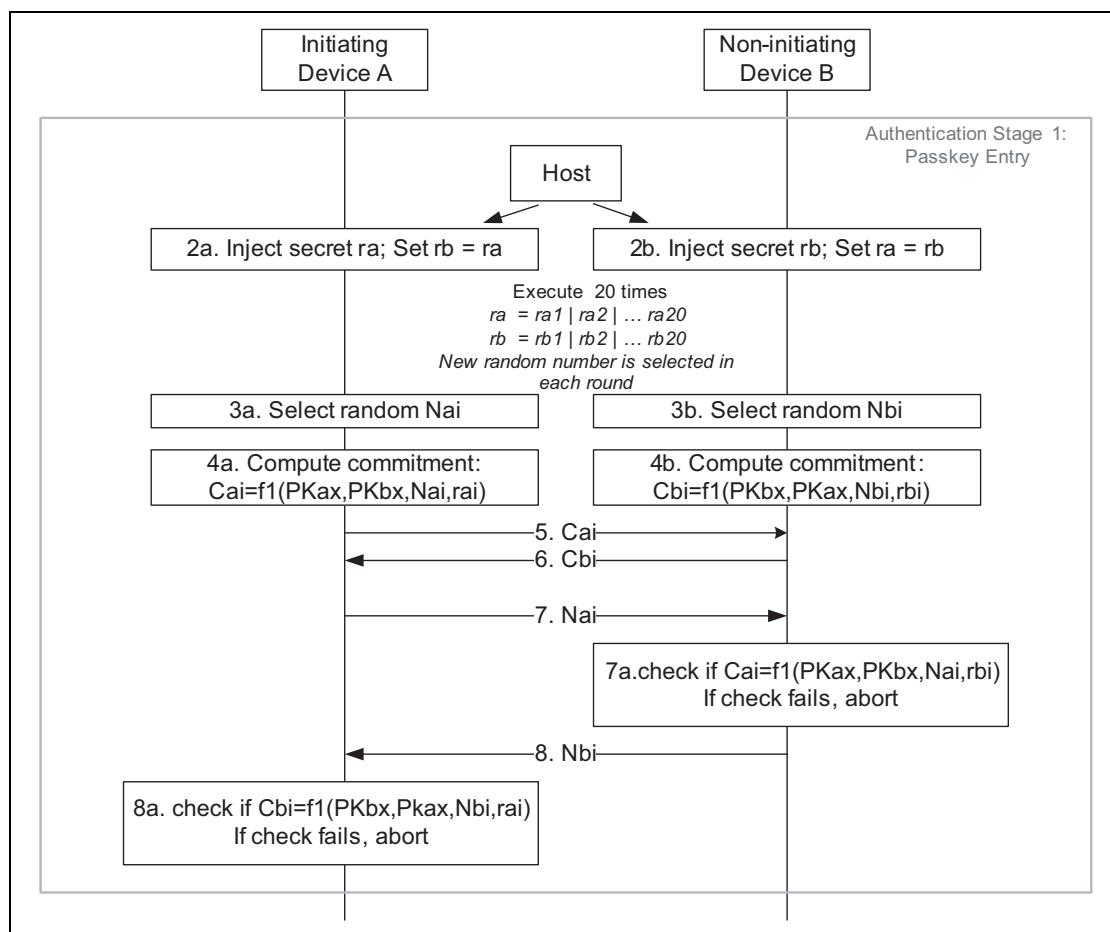


Figure 7.6: Authentication Stage 1: Passkey Entry Details

The user inputs an identical Passkey into both devices. Alternately, the Passkey may be generated and displayed on one device, and the user then inputs it into the other (step 2). This short shared key will be the basis of the mutual authentication of the devices. Steps 3 through 8 are repeated k times for a k-bit Passkey --e.g., k=20 for a 6-digit Passkey (999999=0xF423F).

In Steps 3-8, each side commits to each bit of the Passkey, using a long nonce (128 bits), and sending the hash of the nonce, the bit of the Passkey, and both public keys to the other party. The parties then take turns revealing their commitments until the entire Passkey has been mutually disclosed. The first party to reveal a commitment for a given bit of the Passkey effectively reveals that bit of the Passkey in the process, but the other party then has to reveal the corresponding commitment to show the same bit value for that bit of the Passkey, or else the first party will then abort the protocol, after which no more bits of the Passkey are revealed.

This "gradual disclosure" prevents leakage of more than 1 bit of un-guessed Passkey information in the case of a MITM attack. A MITM attacker with only partial knowledge of the Passkey will only receive one incorrectly-guessed bit of the Passkey before the protocol fails. Hence, a MITM attacker who engages

first one side, then the other will only gain an advantage of at most two bits over a simple brute-force guesser which succeeds with probability 0.000001.

The long nonce is included in the commitment hash to make it difficult to brute-force even after the protocol has failed. The public Diffie-Hellman values are included to tie the Passkey protocol to the original ECDH key exchange, to prevent a MITM from substituting the attacker's public key on both sides of the ECDH exchange in standard MITM fashion.

At the end of this stage, Na is set to  $Na_{20}$  and Nb is set to  $Nb_{20}$  for use in Authentication Stage 2.

### 7.3 PHASE 3: AUTHENTICATION STAGE 2

The second stage of authentication then confirms that both devices have successfully completed the exchange. This stage is identical in all three protocols.

Each device computes a new confirmation value that includes the previously exchanged values and the newly derived shared key (step 9). The initiating device then transmits its confirmation value which is checked by the responding device (step 10). If this check fails, it indicates that the initiating device has not confirmed the pairing, and the protocol must be aborted. The responding device then transmits its confirmation value which is checked by the initiating device (step 11). A failure indicates that the responding device has not confirmed the pairing and the protocol should abort.

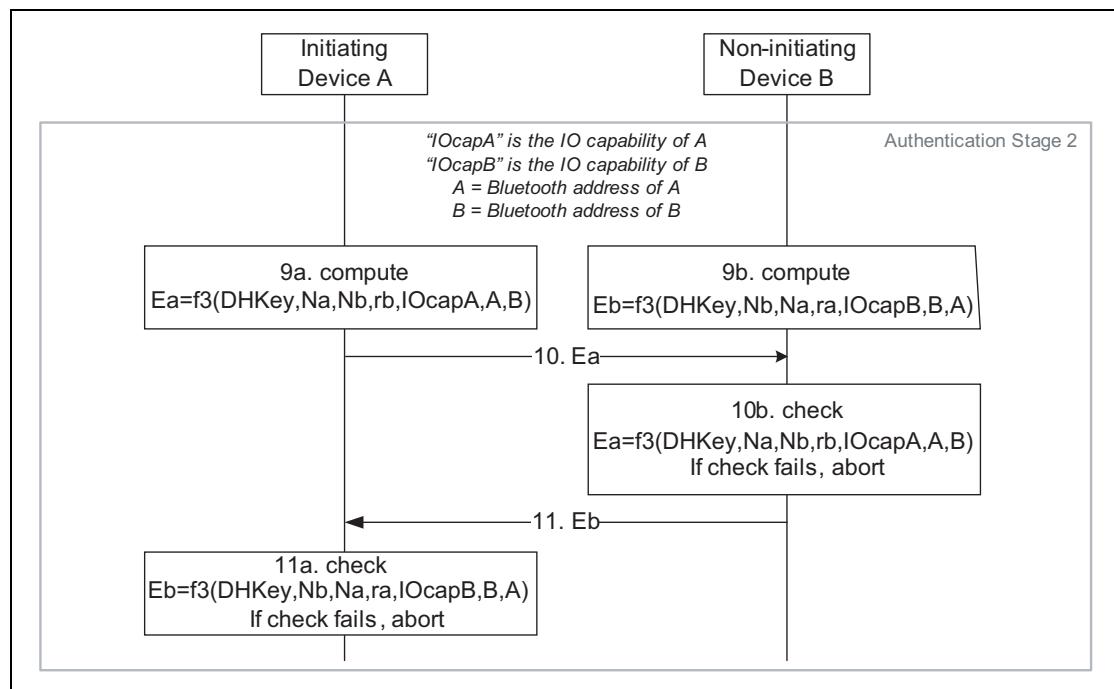


Figure 7.7: Authentication Stage 2

## 7.4 PHASE 4: LINK KEY CALCULATION

Once both sides have confirmed the pairing, a link key is computed from the derived shared key and the publicly exchanged data (step 12). The nonces ensure the freshness of the key even if long-term ECDH values are used by both sides. This link key is used to maintain the pairing.

When computing the link key both parties shall input the parameters in the same order to ensure that both devices compute the same key: device A's parameters are those of the piconet master and device B's parameters are those of the piconet slave.

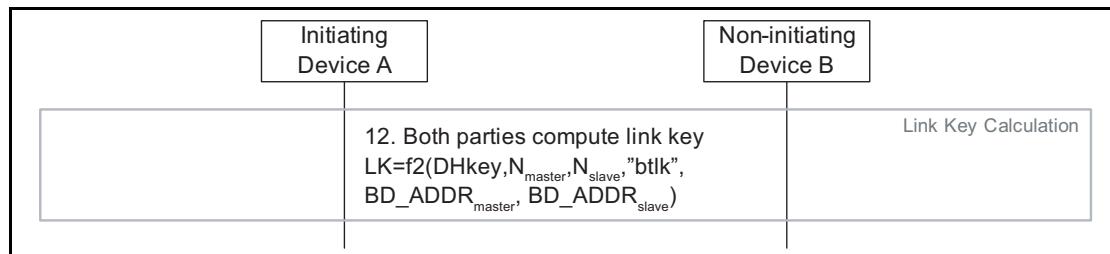


Figure 7.8: Link Key Calculation

## 7.5 PHASE 5: LMP AUTHENTICATION AND ENCRYPTION

The final phase in Simple Pairing is generating the encryption keys. This is the same as the final steps in legacy pairing.

## 7.6 ELLIPTIC CURVE DEFINITION

Simple Pairing supports two elliptic curves: P-192 and P-256.

Simple Pairing uses the FIPS P-192 and P-256 curves defined in FIPS 186-3<sup>1</sup>. Elliptic curves are specified by p, a, b and are of the form:

$$E: y^2 = x^3 + ax + b \pmod{p}$$

For each value of b a unique curve can be developed. In NIST P-192 and P-256:

$$a = \text{mod}(-3, p)$$

b is defined and its method of generation can be verified by using SHA-1 (with a given seed s and using  $b^2c = -27 \pmod{p}$ )

1. [http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips186-3/fips\\_186-3.pdf](http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips186-3/fips_186-3.pdf)

The following parameters are given:

- The prime modulus p, order r, base point x-coordinate Gx, base point y-coordinate Gy.
- The integers p and r are given in decimal form; bit strings and field elements are given in hex.

**For P-192:**

```
p = 6277101735386680763835789423207666416083908700390324961279
r = 6277101735386680763835789423176059013767194773182842284081
b = 64210519 e59c80e7 0fa7e9ab 72243049 feb8deec c146b9b1
Gx = 188da80e b03090f6 7cbf20eb 43a18800 f4ff0afd 82ff1012
Gy = 07192b95 ffc8da78 631011ed 6b24cdd5 73f977a1 1e794811
```

The function P192 is defined as follows. Given an integer u,  $0 < u < r$ , and a point V on the curve E, the value P192(u,V) is computed as the x-coordinate of the  $u^{\text{th}}$  multiple uV of the point V.

The private keys shall be between 1 and  $r/2$ , where r is the Order of the Abelian Group on the elliptic curve (e.g. between 1 and  $2^{192}/2$ ).

**For P-256:**

```
p = 11579208921035624876269744694940757353008614341529031419553363130
     8867097853951
r = 11579208921035624876269744694940757352999695522413576034242225906
     1068512044369
b = 5ac635d8 aa3a93e7 b3ebbd55 769886bc 651d06b0 cc53b0f6 3bce3c3e
     27d2604b
Gx = 6b17d1f2 e12c4247 f8bce6e5 63a440f2 77037d81 2deb33a0 f4a13945
     d898c296
Gy = 4fe342e2 fe1a7f9b 8ee7eb4a 7c0f9e16 2bce3357 6b315ece cbb64068
     37bf51f5
```

The function P-256 is defined as follows. Given an integer u,  $0 < u < r$ , and a point V on the curve E, the value P-256(u,V) is computed as the x-coordinate of the  $u^{\text{th}}$  multiple uV of the point V.

The private keys shall be between 1 and  $r/2$ , where r is the Order of the Abelian Group on the elliptic curve (e.g. between 1 and  $2^{256}/2$ ).

## 7.7 CRYPTOGRAPHIC FUNCTION DEFINITIONS

In addition to computing the Elliptic Curve Diffie Hellman key, the Numeric Comparison, Out-of-Band and Passkey Entry protocols require four cryptographic functions. These functions are known as  $f1$ ,  $g$ ,  $f2$  and  $f3$ .

$f1$  is used to generate the 128-bit commitment values  $Ca$  and  $Cb$

$g$  is used to compute the 6-digit numeric check values

$f2$  is used to compute the link key and possible other keys from the DHKey and random nonces

$f3$  is used to compute check values  $Ea$  and  $Eb$  in Authentication Stage 2.

The basic building block for these functions is based on as it already exists in the key derivation function E3 (which is the same as E1 but with a larger input).

Inside the  $f1$ ,  $g$ ,  $f2$ , and  $f3$  cryptographic functions, when a multi-octet integer input parameter is used as input to the SHA-256 and HMAC-SHA-256 functions, the most significant octet of the integer parameter shall be the first octet of the stream and the least significant octet of the integer parameter shall be the last octet of the stream. The output of the  $f1$ ,  $g$ ,  $f2$  and  $f3$  cryptographic functions is a multi-octet integer where the first octet out of SHA-256 and HMAC-SHA-256 shall be the MSB and the last octet shall be the LSB of that parameter.

Inside the  $h2$  cryptographic function, when a multi-octet integer input parameter is used as input to the SHA-256 and HMAC-SHA-256 functions, the most significant octet of the integer parameter shall be the last octet of the stream and the least significant octet of the integer parameter shall be the first octet of the stream. The output of the  $h2$  cryptographic function is a multi-octet integer where the first octet out of SHA-256 and HMAC-SHA-256 shall be the LSB and the last octet shall be the MSB of that parameter.

### 7.7.1 The Simple Pairing Commitment Function $f1$

The commitments are computed with function  $f1$ . The definition of the Simple Pairing commitment function makes use of the MAC function HMAC based on  $SHA-256_X$ , which is denoted as  $HMAC-SHA-256_X$  with 128-bit key  $X$ .

The inputs to the Simple Pairing function  $f1$  are:

Input	Bits with P-192	Bits with P-256
U	192	256
V	192	256
X	128	128
Z	8	8

Z is zero (i.e. 8 bits of zeros) for Numeric Comparison and OOB protocol. In the Passkey protocol the most significant bit of Z is set equal to one and the least significant bit is made up from one bit of the passkey e.g. if passkey is '1' then Z = 0x81 and if the passkey is '0' then Z = 0x80.

The output of the Simple Pairing f1 function is:

$$f1(U, V, X, Z) = \text{HMAC-SHA-256}_X(U \parallel V \parallel Z) / 2^{128}$$

The inputs to *f1* are different depending on the different protocols.

Numeric Comparison	Out-Of-Band	Passkey Entry
$Ca = f1(PKax, PKbx, Na, 0)$	$Ca = f1(PKax, PKax, Ra, 0)$	$Cai = f1(PKax, PKbx, Nai, rai)$
$Cb = f1(PKbx, PKax, Nb, 0)$	$Cb = f1(PKbx, PKbx, Rb, 0)$	$Cbi = f1(PKbx, PKax, Nbi, rbi)$

Table 7.2: Inputs to *f1* for the different protocols

where PKax denotes the x-coordinate of the public key PKa of A. Similarly, PKbx denotes the x-coordinate of the public key PKb of B. Nai is the nonce value of  $i^{\text{th}}$  round. For each round Nai value is a new 128 bit number. Similarly, rai is one bit value of the passkey expanded to 8 bits (either 0x80 or 0x81).

### 7.7.2 The Simple Pairing Numeric Verification Function g

The Simple Pairing *g* function is defined as follows:

The inputs to the Simple Pairing function *g* are:

Input	Bits with P-192	Bits with P-256
U	192	256
V	192	256
X	128	128
Y	128	128

The output of the Simple Pairing *g* function is:

$$g(U, V, X, Y) = \text{SHA-256}(U \parallel V \parallel X \parallel Y) \bmod 2^{32}$$

The numeric verification value is taken as six least significant digits of the 32-bit integer  $g(PKax, PKbx, Na, Nb)$  where PKax denotes the x-coordinate of the public key PKa of A and PKbx denotes the x-coordinate of the public key PKb of B.

Output of SHA-256 is truncated to 32 bits by taking the least significant 32 bits of the output of SHA-256. This value is converted to decimal numeric value. The checksum used for numeric comparison is the least significant six digits.

$$\text{Compare Value} = g(U, V, X, Y) \bmod 10^6$$

For example, if output = 0x 01 2e b7 2a then decimal value = 19838762 and the checksum used for numeric comparison is 838762.

### 7.7.3 The Simple Pairing Key Derivation Function f2

The definition of the Simple Pairing key derivation function makes use of the MAC function HMAC based on SHA-256, which is denoted as HMAC-SHA-256<sub>W</sub> with 192-bit or 256-bit key W.

The inputs to the Simple Pairing function f2 are:

Input	Bits with P-192	Bits with P-256
W	192	256
N <sub>1</sub>	128	128
N <sub>2</sub>	128	128
keyID	32	32
A <sub>1</sub>	48	48
A <sub>2</sub>	48	48

The string "btlk" is mapped into keyID using extended ASCII<sup>1</sup> as follows:

```

keyID[0] = 0110 1011 (lsb)
keyID[1] = 0110 1100
keyID[2] = 0111 0100
keyID[3] = 0110 0010

```

KeyID = 0x62746c6b

The output of the Simple Pairing f2 function is:

$$f2(W, N_1, N_2, KeyID, A_1, A_2) = \text{HMAC-SHA-256}_W(N_1 || N_2 || \text{KeyID} || A_1 || A_2) / 2^{128}$$

The output of f2 is taken as the 128 most significant (leftmost) bits of the output of HMAC-SHA-256.

The link key is then calculated as:

$$LK = f2(DHKey, N_{\text{master}}, N_{\text{slave}}, "btlk", BD\_ADDR_{\text{master}}, BD\_ADDR_{\text{slave}})$$

1. ISO/IEC 8859-1 (see [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org))

### 7.7.4 The Simple Pairing Check Function f3

The definition of the Simple Pairing f3 check function makes use of the MAC function HMAC based on SHA-256, which is denoted as  $\text{HMAC-SHA-256}_W$  with 192-bit or 256-bit key W.

The inputs to the Simple Pairing function f3 are:

Input	Bits with P-192	Bits with P-256
W	192	256
N <sub>1</sub>	128	128
N <sub>2</sub>	128	128
IOcap	24	24
A <sub>1</sub>	48	48
A <sub>2</sub>	48	48

IOcap is three octets with the most significant octet as the Authentication Requirements parameter, the middle octet as the LMP Out-of-Band Authentication Data parameter, and the least significant octet as the LMP IO capability parameter.

The output of the Simple Pairing f3 function is:

$$f3(W, N_1, N_2, R, IOcap, A_1, A_2) = \text{HMAC-SHA-256}_W(N_1 \parallel N_2 \parallel R \parallel IOcap \parallel A_1 \parallel A_2) / 2^{128}$$

The output of f3 is taken as the 128 most significant (leftmost) bits of the output of HMAC-SHA-256. The check values are computed with function f3. The inputs to f3 are different depending on the different protocols:

Numeric Comparison	Out-Of-Band	Passkey Entry
Ea = f3(DHKey, Na, Nb, 0, IOcapA, A, B)	Ea = f3(DHKey, Na, Nb, rb, IOcapA, A, B)	Ea = f3(DHKey, Na20, Nb20, rb, IOcapA, A, B)
Eb = f3(DHKey, Nb, Na, 0, IOcapB, B, A)	Eb = f3(DHKey, Nb, Na, ra, IOcapB, B, A)	Eb = f3(DHKey, Nb20, Na20, ra, IOcapB, B, A)

Table 7.3: Inputs to f3 for the different protocols

DHKey denotes the shared secret Diffie-Hellman Key computed as P192(SKa, PKb) by A and as P192(SKb, PKa) by B. Adata denotes the capability data of A and Bdata denotes the capability data of B. In Passkey Entry, the data ra and rb are 6-digit passkey values which are expressed as a 128-bit integer. For instance, if the 6-digit value of ra is 131313

then R = 0x 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 02 00 f1.

The input A is the BD\_ADDR of device A and the input B is the BD\_ADDR of device B.

### 7.7.5 The Simple Pairing AMP Key Derivation Function h2

The definition of the Simple Pairing dedicated AMP key derivation function makes use of the MAC function HMAC based on SHA-256, which is denoted as  $\text{HMAC-SHA-256}_W$  with 256-bit key W.

The inputs to the Simple Pairing function h2 are as follows:

W is 256 bits

keyID is 32 bits

L is 8 bits

The output of the Simple Pairing h2 function is as follows:

$$h2(W, \text{keyID}, L) = \text{HMAC-SHA-256}_W(\text{keyID}) / 2^{256-(L*8)}$$

For each Dedicated AMP, a fixed value of the key identifier KeyID is specified. A master key  $MK_{\text{AMP}}$  of length  $L_{\text{AMP}}$ ,  $0 \leq L_{\text{AMP}} \leq 32$ , is computed as

$$MK_{\text{AMP}} = h2(GAMP\_LK, \text{keyID}_{\text{AMP}}, L_{\text{AMP}}).$$

#### 7.7.5.1 Initial GAMP\_LK Creation

The Generic AMP Link Key (GAMP\_LK) shall be created every time the link key (LK) is changed or created using the f2 function (see [Section 7.7.3](#)). Whenever the GAMP\_LK is created, all dedicated AMP link keys associated with the remote BD\_ADDR shall be discarded.

A fixed value of the key identifier KeyID is specified ('gamp'). The string 'gamp' is mapped into keyID using extended ASCII<sup>1</sup> as follows:

```

keyID[0] = 0111 0000 (lsb)
keyID[1] = 0110 1101
keyID[2] = 0110 0001
keyID[3] = 0110 0111
keyID = 0x67616d70

```

The initial GAMP\_LK shall be created in the Host using the h2 function.

$$GAMP\_LK = h2(W, 'gamp', 32)$$

Where  $W = LK \parallel LK$

#### 7.7.5.2 Dedicated AMP Link Key Generation

Each AMP uses a defined keyID and keyLength. Both values are defined in the [Assigned numbers page](#).

---

1. ISO\_8859-1

A dedicated AMP link key is computed as

$$\text{Dedicated\_AMP\_Link\_Key} = h2(\text{GAMP\_LK}, \text{keyID}, \text{keyLength})$$

#### 7.7.5.3 GAMP\_LK Regeneration

Each time the GAMP\_LK is used to generate a valid dedicated AMP link key it shall be regenerated by computing

$$\text{New\_GAMP\_LK} = h2(\text{GAMP\_LK}, \text{'gamp'}, 32)$$

and then setting

$$\text{GAMP\_LK} = \text{New\_GAMP\_LK}$$

#### 7.7.5.4 Debug AMP Link Key Generation

When the BR/EDR link key is a debug link key, the dedicated AMP link keys are set equal to the keyLength least significant octets of the Generic AMP link key. When debug link keys are used, the Generic AMP link key shall not be regenerated.

### 7.7.6 The AES Encryption Key Generation Function h3

AES encryption keys are created using the AES encryption key generation function  $h3$ . The definition of the AES encryption key generation function makes use of the MAC function HMAC based on SHA-256, which is denoted as  $\text{HMAC-SHA-256}_T$  with 128-bit key  $T$ .

The inputs to function  $h3$  are:

Input	Bits with P-256
$T$	128
keyID	32
$A_1$	48
$A_2$	48
ACO	64

$A_1$  is the BD\_ADDR of the master.  $A_2$  is the BD\_ADDR of the slave. ACO is the 64 bit ACO output from  $h5$ .  $T$  is the 128 bit Bluetooth Link Key derived from  $f2$ .

The string “btak” (Bluetooth AES Key) is mapped into keyID using extended ASCII as follows:

```

keyID[0] = 0110 1011 (lsb)
keyID[1] = 0110 0001
keyID[2] = 0111 0100
keyID[3] = 0110 0010
KeyID = 0x6274616b

```

The output of function  $h3$  is:

$$h3(W, \text{keyID}, A_1, A_2, \text{ACO}) = \\ \text{HMAC-SHA-256}_T(\text{KeyID} \parallel A_1 \parallel A_2 \parallel \text{ACO}) / 2^{128}$$

The output of  $h3$  is taken as the 128 most significant (leftmost) bits of the output of  $\text{HMAC-SHA-256}$ .

### 7.7.7 The Device Authentication Key Generation Function h4

With Secure Connections, a device authentication key is created using function *h4*. The definition of the device authentication key generation function makes use of the MAC function HMAC based on SHA-256, which is denoted as  $\text{HMAC-SHA-256}_T$  with 128-bit key  $T$ .

The inputs to function *h4* are:

Input	Bits with P-256
$T$	128
keyID	32
$A_1$	48
$A_2$	48

$A_1$  is the BD\_ADDR of the master.  $A_2$  is the BD\_ADDR of the slave.  $T$  is the 128 bit Bluetooth Link Key derived from f2.

The string “btdk” (Bluetooth Device Key) is mapped into keyID using extended ASCII as follows:

```

keyID[0] = 0110 1011 (lsb)
keyID[1] = 0110 0100
keyID[2] = 0111 0100
keyID[3] = 0110 0010
KeyID = 0x6274646b

```

The output of function *h4* is:

$$h4(W, \text{KeyID}, A_1, A_2) = \text{HMAC-SHA-256}_T(\text{KeyID} \parallel A_1 \parallel A_2) / 2^{128}$$

The output of *h4* is taken as the 128 most significant (leftmost) bits of the output of HMAC-SHA-256.

### 7.7.8 The Device Authentication Confirmation Function h5

With Secure Connections, device authentication confirmation values are created using function  $h5$ . The definition of the device authentication confirmation function makes use of the MAC function HMAC based on SHA-256, which is denoted as HMAC-SHA-256<sub>S</sub> with 128-bit key S.

The inputs to function  $h5$  are:

Input	Bits with P-256
S	128
R <sub>1</sub>	128
R <sub>2</sub>	128

R<sub>1</sub> is the 128 bit random number (AU\_RAND\_M) from the master during the Link Manager device authentication sequence. R<sub>2</sub> is the 128 bit random number from the slave (AU\_RAND\_S) during the Link Manager device authentication sequence. S is the 128-bit Bluetooth Device Authentication Key derived from h4.

The output of function  $h5$  is:

$$h5(W, R_1, R_2) = \text{HMAC-SHA-256}_S(R_1 \parallel R_2) / 2^{128}$$

The output of  $h5$  is taken as the 128 most significant (leftmost) bits of the output of HMAC-SHA-256. The first 32 bits (leftmost) become the SRESmaster. The next 32 bits become the SRESslave. The final 64 bits become the Authentication Ciphering Offset (ACO), which is used in h3 and as the IV for Encryption Start for the encryption nonce.

## 8 AMP SECURITY

### 8.1 CREATION OF THE INITIAL GENERIC AMP LINK KEY

AMP security starts any time the BR/EDR link key is created or changed. This may be as the result of the f2 function during Phase 4 of the Secure Simple Pairing process (see [Section 7.7.3](#)) or due to a change connection link key procedure. The initial Generic AMP link key, GAMP\_LK, is created with the h2 function using the BR/EDR Link Key concatenated together with itself to form a 256-bit value and with the KeyID 'gamp' (see [Section 7.7.5.1](#)). The Generic AMP Link Key (GAMP\_LK) is stored in the security database alongside the BR/EDR Link Key once pairing has completed.

Whenever the Generic AMP Link Key is created, all Dedicated AMP Link Keys associated with the remote device shall be discarded and any active AMP Physical Links to the remote device shall be disconnected. Note that when a Host initiates a Change Connection Link Key procedure, all active AMP physical links between the two devices will be disconnected.

Since AMP security does not affect the BR/EDR Link Key, backwards compatibility is maintained for devices that support the Generic AMP feature with devices that do not. The Generic AMP Link Key is generated as part of Secure Simple Pairing regardless of whether the devices both support the Generic AMP feature or any AMP in common.

### 8.2 CREATION OF DEDICATED AMP LINK KEYS

When an AMP is used for the first time, a dedicated AMP key is created by the AMP Manager for that AMP type using the new Secure Simple Pairing function h2 and a KeyID for the AMP type. The length of the Dedicated AMP Link Key depends on the AMP Type. If the Dedicated AMP Link Key already exists due to a previous connection the AMP link key is not created and the stored key is reused.

The Dedicated AMP Link Key is sent down to the PAL in the *HCI Create Physical Link* and *HCI Accept Physical Link* commands (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part E, Section 7.1.37](#) and [\[Vol. 2\], Part E, Section 7.1.38](#)). Each PAL is responsible for establishing security from the Dedicated AMP Link Key. Note that a Dedicated AMP Link Key may be used for multiple sessions over the same AMP.

Each time a dedicated AMP key is created and the AMP Create Physical Link sequence completes successfully (see [\[Vol. 3\], Part E, Section 2.3.3](#)), the Generic AMP Link Key is updated. This is performed using the h2 function with KeyID 'gamp.' If the AMP Create Physical Link sequence does not complete successfully, the dedicated AMP link key shall be discarded and the Generic AMP Link Key shall not be updated.

[Figure 8.1](#) shows an overview of the AMP key generation in the Host.

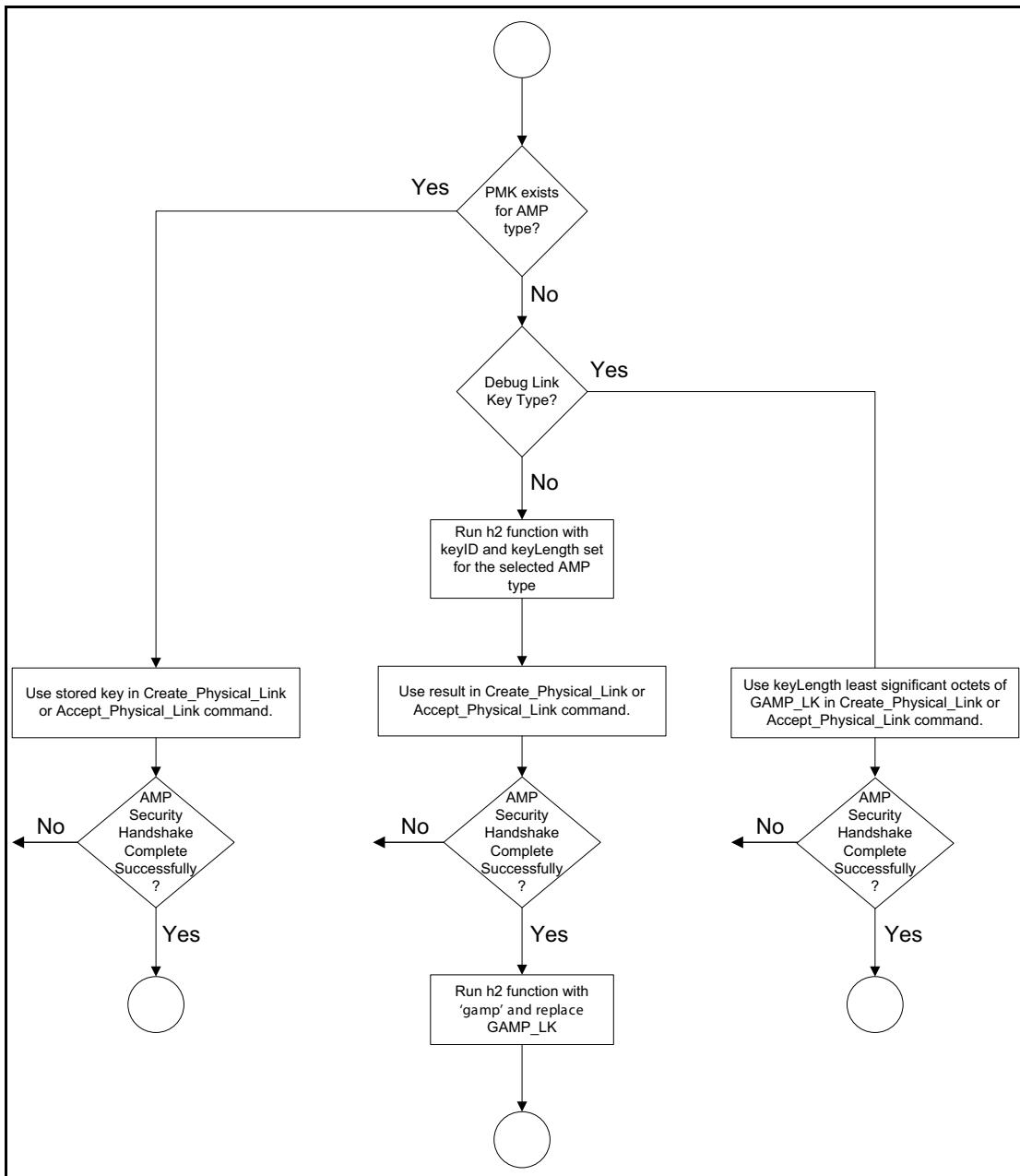


Figure 8.1: AMP key generation in Host

Creation of the dedicated AMP keys and updates to the Generic AMP Link Key are the responsibility of the AMP Manager (see [\[Vol. 3\], Part E, Section 2.3.3](#)).

## 8.3 DEBUG CONSIDERATIONS

Since the AMP architecture requires encryption to be enabled on each AMP, in order to support sniffers for debug as well as to enable testing over the air, provisions need to be made in the AMP architecture to support debug combination keys. In this document, this is supported in two ways:

- Passing the link key type along with the link key (and length) in the HCI\_Create\_Physical\_Link and HCI\_Accept\_Physical\_Link commands and
- Requiring that the GAMP\_LK is used as the dedicated AMP key when the key type is set to "debug combination key."

## 9 AES-CCM ENCRYPTION FOR BR/EDR

The Baseband provides security using Counter with Cipher Block Chaining-Message Authentication Code (CCM) as defined in IETF RFC 3610 (<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3610.txt>). The description of the algorithm can also be found in the NIST Special Publication 800-38C (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/PubsSPs.html>).

Using the notation in [4], CCM has two size parameters, M and L. The Baseband defines these to be:

M = 4; indicating that the MIC length is 4 octets (32 bits)

Size of M represents a trade-off between message expansion and the probability that an attacker can undetectably modify a message.

L = 2; indicating that the Length field is 2 octets (16 bits)

Size of L requires a trade-off between the maximum message size and the size of the Nonce.

### 9.1 NONCE FORMATS

All of the parameters in the nonce are unique per logical transport. The nonce will be 13 octets and will have two formats. The first format is called the payload counter format and is used for ACL packets on the primary LT\_ADDR. The second format is called the clock format and is used for eSCO packets.

The reason for two formats has to do with two factors: potential security attacks and synchronization. Since ACL packets on the primary LT\_ADDR carry protocol, they are susceptible to attacks that eSCO packets (only data) are not.

The descriptions of the two nonce formats are provided in [Table 9.1](#).

Octet	Field	Octets	Payload Counter Format Description	Clock Format Description
0	Nonce0	1	PayloadCounter[7:0]	CLK[8:1]
1	Nonce1	1	PayloadCounter[15:8]	CLK[16:9]
2	Nonce2	1	PayloadCounter[23:16]	CLK[24:17]
3	Nonce3	1	PayloadCounter[31:24]	Bit 2 – Bit 0: CLK[27:25] Bit 7 – Bit 3: dayCounter[4:0]

*Table 9.1: Nonce Formats.*

Octet	Field	Octets	Payload Counter Format Description	Clock Format Description
4	Nonce4	1	Bits 3 - 0: PayloadCounter[35:32] Bit 4: zero-length ACL-U continuation packet (1=zero-length ACL-U continuation packet, 0=otherwise) Bit 5: direction (0=master to slave, 1=slave to master) Bits 7-6: nonceType = 00b (ACL)	Bit 5 – Bit 0: dayCounter[10:5] Bits 7-6: nonceType = 01b (eSCO)
5	Nonce5	1	Octet0 (LSO) of IV	
6	Nonce6	1	Octet1 of IV	
7	Nonce7	1	Octet2 of IV	
8	Nonce8	1	Octet3 of IV	
9	Nonce9	1	Octet4 of IV	
10	Nonce10	1	Octet5 of IV	
11	Nonce11	1	Octet6 of IV	
12	Nonce12	1	Octet7 (MSO) of IV	

Table 9.1: Nonce Formats.

In the payload counter format, the PayloadCounter starts at zero for the first encrypted packet in each direction after encryption is started or resumed and increments every time an encrypted payload including zero-length payloads is accepted by the remote device. Bit 4 of Octet 4 shall be set to ‘1’ for a zero length ACL-U continuation packet (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part B, Section 7.6.2.2](#)), otherwise it shall be set to ‘0’.

In the clock format, the master clock (CLK) used for the nonce shall be the value in the first slot of the packet. After a new ACL connection has been established or a role switch has been successfully performed and when eSCO is successfully established for the first time then the dayCounter value shall be initialized to:

- 1 if CLK27 in the first clock format nonce is 0, and initialization procedure 2 (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part B, Section 8.6.3](#)) is used
- 0 otherwise.

After the dayCounter has been initialized, it shall increment every time the master clock (CLK) rolls over to 0x00000000 (approximately every 23.3 hours).

Note: When Security Mode 4 is in use, eSCO will not be established before encryption is started.

The IV is an 8 octet field. For encryption start, all octets of the IV are from the ACO output of the last execution of h5 prior to the start of encryption.

Note: multiple device authentications may occur prior to starting encryption but only the ACO of the last device authentication is used. After an encryption resume, all 8 octets of the IV are from the EN\_RAND sent by the device initiating the encryption pause (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part C, Section 4.2.5.5](#)). An encryption pause and resume will be required prior to the PayloadCounter or dayCounter rolling over in order to keep the nonce fresh for an encryption key.

Octet	IV for Encryption Start	IV After Resume Encryption
0	ACO[0]	EN_RAND[0]
1	ACO[1]	EN_RAND[1]
2	ACO[2]	EN_RAND[2]
3	ACO[3]	EN_RAND[3]
4	ACO[4]	EN_RAND[4]
5	ACO[5]	EN_RAND[5]
6	ACO[6]	EN_RAND[6]
7	ACO[7]	EN_RAND[7]

Table 9.2: IV Construction.

## 9.2 COUNTER MODE BLOCKS

For calculating the MIC, the payload is broken into two or more counter mode blocks. The CCM specification refers to these blocks at blocks B0 – Bn. B0 applies to the nonce, B1 applies to the associated data {that is packet header and payload header} and additional B blocks are generated as needed for authentication of the payload.

Offset (octets)	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
0	Flags	1	0x49	As per the CCM specification
1	Nonce	13	variable	The nonce as described in <a href="#">Section 9.1</a> . Nonce0 shall have offset 1. Nonce12 shall have offset 13.

Table 9.3: B0 Counter Mode Block Format.

Offset (octets)	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
14	Length[MSO]	1	variable	The most significant octet of the length of the payload
15	Length[LSO]	1	variable	The least significant octet of the length of the payload

Table 9.3: B0 Counter Mode Block Format.

Offset	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
0	Packet_Header [MSO]	1	Variable	The most significant octet of the packet header: Bit 0: '0' (ARQN masked) Bit 1: '0' (SEQN masked) Bit 7 – Bit 2: '000000' '000000'
1	Packet_Header [LSO]	1	Variable	The least significant octet of the packet header: Bit 2 – Bit 0: LT_ADDR Bit 6 – Bit 3: TYPE Bit 7: '0' (FLOW masked)
2	Payload_Header	1	Variable	The payload header: Bit 1 – Bit 0: LLID Bit 2: '0' (FLOW masked) Bit 7 – Bit 3: '00000' '00000'
3	Padding	13	0x00, 0x00	These octets are only used to pad the block. They are not part of the packet and never transmitted.

Table 9.4: B1 Counter Mode Block Format.

## 9.3 ENCRYPTION BLOCKS

The CCM algorithm uses the Ax blocks to generate a keystream that is used to encrypt the MIC and payload. Block A0 is always used to encrypt and decrypt the MIC, when present. Block A1 is always used to encrypt and decrypt the first 16 octets of the Payload. Subsequent blocks are always used to encrypt and decrypt the rest of the Payload as needed.

Offset (octets)	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
0	Flags	1	0x01	As per the CCM specification
1	Nonce	13	variable	The nonce as described in <a href="#">Section 9.1</a> . Nonce0 shall have offset 1. Nonce12 shall have offset 13.
14	i[MSO]	1	variable	The most significant octet of the counter i
15	i[LSO]	1	variable	The least significant octet of the counter i

Table 9.5: Encryption Mode Block Format.

## 9.4 ENCRYPTION KEY SIZE REDUCTION

When the devices have negotiated a key size shorter than the maximum length, the key will be shortened by replacing LSOs of the key with 0x00.

## 9.5 REPEATED MIC FAILURES

Anytime the MIC check fails and the CRC passes on a given packet, it is considered an authentication failure. No more than three authentication failures shall be permitted during the lifetime of an encryption key with a given IV. The third authentication failure shall initiate an encryption key refresh (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part C, Section 4.2.5.8](#)). If a fourth authentication failure occurs prior to the encryption key refresh procedure completing, the link shall be disconnected with reason code *Connection Rejected Due to Security Reasons* (0x0E). Note: The MIC is not checked when the CRC is invalid.

## 10 LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 3.1:	Generation of unit key. When the unit key has been exchanged, the initialization key is discarded in both devices. ....	1297
Figure 3.2:	Generating a combination key. The old link key (K) is discarded after the exchange of a new combination key has succeeded .....	1298
Figure 3.3:	Master link key distribution and computation of the corresponding encryption key. ....	1301
Figure 4.1:	Stream ciphering for Bluetooth with E0. ....	1302
Figure 4.2:	Functional description of the encryption procedure ....	1305
Figure 4.3:	Concept of the encryption engine. ....	1306
Figure 4.4:	Overview of the operation of the encryption engine. Between each start of a packet (TX or RX), the LFSRs are re-initialized. ....	1308
Figure 4.5:	Arranging the input to the LFSRs. ....	1310
Figure 4.6:	Distribution of the 128 last generated output symbols within the LFSRs. ....	1311
Figure 5.1:	Challenge-response for the Bluetooth. ....	1312
Figure 5.2:	Challenge-response for symmetric key systems. ....	1313
Figure 5.3:	Challenge and response for secure authentication. ....	1314
Figure 5.4:	Challenge-response for secure authentication. ....	1314
Figure 6.1:	Flow of data for the computation of E1. ....	1317
Figure 6.2:	One round in Ar and A'r. ....	1319
Figure 6.3:	Key scheduling in Ar. ....	1320
Figure 6.4:	Key generating algorithmE2 and its two modes. Mode 1 is used for unit and combination keys, while mode 2 is used for Kinit and K master. ....	1322
Figure 6.5:	Generation of the encryption key ....	1322
Figure 7.1:	Simple Pairing Security Phases ....	1323
Figure 7.2:	Public Key Exchange Details ....	1325
Figure 7.3:	Authentication Stage 1 (High Level) ....	1325
Figure 7.4:	Authentication Stage 1: Numeric Comparison Protocol Details ....	1326
Figure 7.5:	Authentication Stage 1: Out of Band Details ....	1328
Figure 7.6:	Authentication Stage 1: Passkey Entry Details ....	1330
Figure 7.7:	Authentication Stage 2 ....	1331
Figure 7.8:	Link Key Calculation ....	1332
Figure 8.1:	AMP key generation in Host ....	1344







# Specification of the **Bluetooth®** System



Specification Volume 3

## Core System Package [Host volume]

Covered Core Package version: 4.1

Publication date: 03 December 2013



**Bluetooth®**





## Revision History

The Revision History is shown in the “[Appendix](#)” on page 61 [Vol. 0].

## Contributors

The persons who contributed to this specification are listed in the “[Appendix](#)” on page 61 [Vol. 0].

## Web Site

This specification can also be found on the official Bluetooth web site:  
<http://www.bluetooth.com>

## Disclaimer and Copyright Notice

The copyright in these specifications is owned by the Promoter Members of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. (“Bluetooth SIG”). Use of these specifications and any related intellectual property (collectively, the “Specification”), is governed by the Promoters Membership Agreement among the Promoter Members and Bluetooth SIG (the “Promoters Agreement”), certain membership agreements between Bluetooth SIG and its Adopter and Associate Members (the “Membership Agreements”) and the Bluetooth Specification Early Adopters Agreements (“1.2 Early Adopters Agreements”) among Early Adopter members of the unincorporated Bluetooth special interest group and the Promoter Members (the “Early Adopters Agreement”). Certain rights and obligations of the Promoter Members under the Early Adopters Agreements have been assigned to Bluetooth SIG by the Promoter Members.

Use of the Specification by anyone who is not a member of Bluetooth SIG or a party to an Early Adopters Agreement (each such person or party, a “Member”), is prohibited. The legal rights and obligations of each Member are governed by their applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights are granted herein.

Any use of the Specification not in compliance with the terms of the applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement is prohibited and any such prohibited use may result in termination of the applicable Membership Agreement or Early Adopters Agreement and other liability permitted by the applicable agreement or by applicable law to Bluetooth SIG or any of its members for patent, copyright and/or trademark infringement.



THE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR REASONABLE SKILL OR CARE, OR ANY WARRANTY ARISING OUT OF ANY COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, TRADE PRACTICE, PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

Each Member hereby acknowledges that products equipped with the Bluetooth® technology ("Bluetooth® Products") may be subject to various regulatory controls under the laws and regulations of various governments worldwide. Such laws and regulatory controls may govern, among other things, the combination, operation, use, implementation and distribution of Bluetooth® Products. Examples of such laws and regulatory controls include, but are not limited to, airline regulatory controls, telecommunications regulations, technology transfer controls and health and safety regulations. Each Member is solely responsible for the compliance by their Bluetooth® Products with any such laws and regulations and for obtaining any and all required authorizations, permits, or licenses for their Bluetooth® Products related to such regulations within the applicable jurisdictions. Each Member acknowledges that nothing in the Specification provides any information or assistance in connection with securing such compliance, authorizations or licenses. **NOTHING IN THE SPECIFICATION CREATES ANY WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING SUCH LAWS OR REGULATIONS.**

ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR FOR NONCOMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, RELATING TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION IS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. BY USE OF THE SPECIFICATION, EACH MEMBER EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY CLAIM AGAINST BLUETOOTH SIG AND ITS PROMOTER MEMBERS RELATED TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION.

Bluetooth SIG reserves the right to adopt any changes or alterations to the Specification as it deems necessary or appropriate.

Copyright © 1999 - 2013

Ericsson AB,

Lenovo, (Singapore) Pte. Ltd

Intel Corporation,

Microsoft Corporation,

Motorola Mobility, LLC,

Nokia Corporation,

Toshiba Corporation

\*Third-party brands and names are the property of their respective owners.



## CONTENTS

### Part A

### LOGICAL LINK CONTROL AND ADAPTATION PROTOCOL SPECIFICATION

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>31</b>
1.1	L2CAP Features .....	31
1.2	Assumptions .....	34
1.3	Scope .....	35
1.4	Terminology.....	35
<b>2</b>	<b>General Operation.....</b>	<b>39</b>
2.1	Channel Identifiers .....	39
2.2	Operation Between Devices.....	42
2.3	Operation Between Layers.....	43
2.4	Modes of Operation .....	44
2.5	Mapping Channels to Logical Links .....	46
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Packet Format.....</b>	<b>47</b>
3.1	Connection-oriented Channels in Basic L2CAP Mode.....	47
3.2	Connectionless Data Channel in Basic L2CAP Mode.....	48
3.3	Connection-oriented Channel in Retransmission/Flow Control/ Streaming Modes .....	49
3.3.1	L2CAP header fields .....	50
3.3.2	Control field (2 or 4 octets) .....	51
3.3.3	L2CAP SDU Length Field (2 octets).....	53
3.3.4	Information Payload Field.....	54
3.3.5	Frame Check Sequence (2 octets).....	54
3.3.6	Invalid Frame Detection .....	55
3.3.7	Invalid Frame Detection Algorithm .....	55
3.4	Connection-Oriented Channels in LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode .....	57
3.4.1	L2CAP Header Fields.....	57
3.4.2	L2CAP SDU Length Field (2 octets).....	57
3.4.3	Information Payload Field.....	57
<b>4</b>	<b>Signaling Packet Formats .....</b>	<b>59</b>
4.1	Command Reject (code 0x01) .....	62
4.2	Connection Request (code 0x02).....	63
4.3	Connection Response (code 0x03).....	64
4.4	Configuration Request (code 0x04) .....	66
4.5	Configuration Response (code 0x05).....	68
4.6	Disconnection Request (code 0x06) .....	70



4.7	Disconnection Response (code 0x07) .....	71
4.8	Echo Request (code 0x08) .....	71
4.9	Echo Response (code 0x09) .....	72
4.10	Information Request (code 0x0A) .....	72
4.11	Information Response (code 0x0B) .....	73
4.12	Extended Feature Mask.....	75
4.13	Fixed Channels Supported .....	76
4.14	Create Channel Request (code 0x0C).....	77
4.15	Create Channel Response (code 0x0D).....	78
4.16	Move Channel Request (code 0x0E).....	79
4.17	Move Channel Response (code 0x0F) .....	80
4.18	Move Channel Confirmation (code 0x10) .....	81
4.19	Move Channel Confirmation Response (code 0x11) .....	82
4.20	Connection Parameter Update Request (code 0x12).....	82
4.21	Connection Parameter Update Response (code 0x13) .....	84
4.22	LE Credit Based Connection Request (Code 0x14) .....	85
4.23	LE Credit Based Connection Response (Code 0x15) .....	86
4.24	LE Flow Control Credit (Code 0x16).....	88
<b>5</b>	<b>Configuration Parameter Options .....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.1	Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) .....	89
5.2	Flush Timeout Option.....	91
5.3	Quality of Service (QoS) Option .....	92
5.4	Retransmission and Flow Control Option .....	96
5.5	Frame Check Sequence (FCS) Option .....	101
5.6	Extended Flow Specification Option .....	102
5.7	Extended Window Size Option .....	107
<b>6</b>	<b>State Machine .....</b>	<b>109</b>
6.1	General rules for the state machine:.....	109
6.1.1	CLOSED state .....	111
6.1.2	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP state .....	112
6.1.3	WAIT_CONNECT state .....	113
6.1.4	CONFIG state .....	113
6.1.5	OPEN state .....	119
6.1.6	WAIT_DISCONNECT state .....	120
6.1.7	WAIT_CREATE_RSP state .....	121
6.1.8	WAIT_CREATE state .....	121
6.1.9	WAIT_MOVE_RSP state .....	122
6.1.10	WAIT_MOVE state.....	123
6.1.11	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM state .....	123
6.1.12	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP state .....	124



6.2	Timers events.....	125
6.2.1	RTX .....	125
6.2.2	ERTX.....	126
<b>7</b>	<b>General Procedures .....</b>	<b>130</b>
7.1	Configuration Process.....	130
7.1.1	Request Path.....	131
7.1.2	Response Path.....	132
7.1.3	Lockstep Configuration Process.....	132
7.1.4	Standard Configuration Process.....	135
7.2	Fragmentation and Recombination .....	137
7.2.1	Fragmentation of L2CAP PDUs .....	137
7.2.2	Recombination of L2CAP PDUs.....	138
7.3	Encapsulation of SDUs .....	139
7.3.1	Segmentation of L2CAP SDUs .....	139
7.3.2	Reassembly of L2CAP SDUs.....	140
7.3.3	Segmentation and fragmentation .....	140
7.4	Delivery of Erroneous L2CAP SDUs.....	141
7.5	Operation with Flushing On ACL-U Logical Links .....	141
7.6	Connectionless Data Channel.....	142
7.7	Operation Collision Resolution.....	144
7.8	Aggregating Best Effort Extended Flow Specifications .....	144
7.9	Prioritizing Data over HCI.....	145
7.10	Supporting Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR and BR/ EDR/LE Controllers.....	146
<b>8</b>	<b>Procedures for Flow Control and Retransmission .....</b>	<b>148</b>
8.1	Information Retrieval.....	148
8.2	Function of PDU Types for Flow Control and Retransmission.....	148
8.2.1	Information frame (I-frame) .....	148
8.2.2	Supervisory Frame (S-frame).....	148
8.3	Variables and Sequence Numbers.....	149
8.3.1	Sending peer .....	150
8.3.2	Receiving peer .....	151
8.4	Retransmission Mode .....	153
8.4.1	Transmitting frames.....	153
8.4.2	Receiving I-frames .....	155
8.4.3	I-frames pulled by the SDU reassembly function .....	156
8.4.4	Sending and receiving acknowledgements .....	156
8.4.5	Receiving REJ frames.....	157
8.4.6	Waiting acknowledgements.....	158



8.4.7	Exception conditions .....	158
8.5	Flow Control Mode.....	160
8.5.1	Transmitting I-frames .....	160
8.5.2	Receiving I-frames .....	161
8.5.3	I-frames pulled by the SDU reassembly function .....	161
8.5.4	Sending and receiving acknowledgements.....	161
8.5.5	Waiting acknowledgements .....	162
8.5.6	Exception conditions .....	163
8.6	Enhanced Retransmission Mode .....	164
8.6.1	Function Of PDU Types .....	164
8.6.2	Rules For Timers.....	166
8.6.3	General Rules for the State Machine .....	169
8.6.4	State Diagram .....	170
8.6.5	States Tables.....	170
8.7	Streaming Mode.....	194
8.7.1	Transmitting I-frames .....	194
8.7.2	Receiving I-frames .....	194
8.7.3	Exception Conditions .....	195
<b>9</b>	<b>Procedure for AMP Channel Creation and Handling.....</b>	<b>196</b>
9.1	Create Channel.....	196
9.2	Move Channel.....	199
9.2.1	Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Enhanced Retransmission Mode .....	200
9.2.2	Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Streaming Mode (Initiator is Data Source) .....	203
9.2.3	Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Streaming Mode (Initiator is Data Sink).....	204
9.3	Disconnect Channel.....	207
<b>10</b>	<b>Procedures for Credit Based Flow Control .....</b>	<b>208</b>
10.1	LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode .....	208
<b>11</b>	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>211</b>

**Part B****SERVICE DISCOVERY PROTOCOL (SDP) SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>221</b>
1.1	General Description .....	221
1.2	Motivation.....	221
1.3	Requirements.....	221
1.4	Non-requirements and Deferred Requirements .....	222
1.5	Conventions .....	222
1.5.1	Bit And Byte Ordering Conventions.....	222
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>223</b>
2.1	SDP Client-Server Architecture.....	223
2.2	Service Record.....	224
2.3	Service Attribute.....	226
2.3.1	Attribute ID .....	226
2.3.2	Attribute Value .....	227
2.4	Service Class .....	227
2.4.1	A Printer Service Class Example .....	228
2.5	Searching for Services .....	228
2.5.1	UUID.....	228
2.5.2	Service Search Patterns.....	229
2.6	Browsing for Services .....	229
2.6.1	Example Service Browsing Hierarchy .....	230
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Representation.....</b>	<b>232</b>
3.1	Data Element .....	232
3.2	Data Element Type Descriptor .....	232
3.3	Data Element Size Descriptor.....	233
3.4	Data Element Examples.....	234
<b>4</b>	<b>Protocol Description .....</b>	<b>235</b>
4.1	Transfer Byte Order .....	235
4.2	Protocol Data Unit Format.....	235
4.3	Partial Responses and Continuation State.....	237
4.4	Error Handling .....	237
4.4.1	SDP_ErrorResponse PDU .....	238
4.5	ServiceSearch Transaction .....	239
4.5.1	SDP_ServiceSearchRequest PDU.....	239
4.5.2	SDP_ServiceSearchResponse PDU.....	240
4.6	ServiceAttribute Transaction .....	242
4.6.1	SDP_ServiceAttributeRequest PDU.....	242
4.6.2	SDP_ServiceAttributeResponse PDU.....	244
4.7	ServiceSearchAttribute Transaction.....	245



4.7.1	SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest PDU .....	245
4.7.2	SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse PDU .....	247
<b>5</b>	<b>Service Attribute Definitions.....</b>	<b>249</b>
5.1	Universal Attribute Definitions.....	249
5.1.1	ServiceRecordHandle Attribute.....	249
5.1.2	ServiceClassIDList Attribute.....	250
5.1.3	ServiceRecordState Attribute .....	250
5.1.4	ServiceID Attribute .....	250
5.1.5	ProtocolDescriptorList Attribute.....	251
5.1.6	AdditionalProtocolDescriptorList Attribute.....	252
5.1.7	BrowseGroupList Attribute .....	253
5.1.8	LanguageBaseAttributeIDList Attribute .....	253
5.1.9	ServiceInfoTimeToLive Attribute .....	254
5.1.10	ServiceAvailability Attribute .....	255
5.1.11	BluetoothProfileDescriptorList Attribute .....	255
5.1.12	DocumentationURL Attribute .....	256
5.1.13	ClientExecutableURL Attribute.....	256
5.1.14	IconURL Attribute.....	257
5.1.15	ServiceName Attribute .....	257
5.1.16	ServiceDescription Attribute .....	258
5.1.17	ProviderName Attribute .....	258
5.1.18	Reserved Universal Attribute IDs .....	258
5.2	ServiceDiscoveryServer Service Class Attribute Definitions ...	259
5.2.1	ServiceRecordHandle Attribute.....	259
5.2.2	ServiceClassIDList Attribute.....	259
5.2.3	VersionNumberList Attribute .....	259
5.2.4	ServiceDatabaseState Attribute .....	260
5.2.5	Reserved Attribute IDs .....	260
5.3	BrowseGroupDescriptor Service Class Attribute Definitions ...	261
5.3.1	ServiceClassIDList Attribute.....	261
5.3.2	GroupID Attribute .....	261
5.3.3	Reserved Attribute IDs .....	261
<b>6</b>	<b>Security .....</b>	<b>262</b>

**Part C****GENERIC ACCESS PROFILE**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>288</b>
1.1	Scope .....	288
1.2	Symbols and Conventions .....	289
1.2.1	Requirement Status Symbols .....	289
1.2.2	Signaling diagram conventions .....	290
1.2.3	Notation for Timers and Counters .....	290
<b>2</b>	<b>Profile Overview .....</b>	<b>291</b>
2.1	Profile Stack .....	291
2.2	Profile Roles .....	291
2.2.1	Roles when Operating over BR/EDR Physical Transport .....	291
2.2.2	Roles when Operating over an LE Physical Transport .....	292
2.3	User Requirements and Scenarios .....	295
2.4	Profile Fundamentals .....	295
2.5	Conformance .....	295
<b>3</b>	<b>User Interface Aspects .....</b>	<b>296</b>
3.1	The User Interface Level .....	296
3.2	Representation of Bluetooth Parameters .....	296
3.2.1	Bluetooth Device Address (BD_ADDR) .....	296
3.2.2	Bluetooth Device Name (the user-friendly name) .....	297
3.2.3	Bluetooth Passkey (Bluetooth PIN) .....	297
3.2.4	Class of Device .....	299
3.2.5	Appearance Characteristic .....	300
3.3	Pairing .....	300
<b>4</b>	<b>Modes – BR/EDR Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>301</b>
4.1	Discoverability Modes .....	301
4.1.1	Non-discoverable Mode .....	302
4.1.2	Limited Discoverable Mode .....	302
4.1.3	General Discoverable Mode .....	304
4.2	Connectability Modes .....	305
4.2.1	Non-connectable Mode .....	305
4.2.2	Connectable Mode .....	305
4.3	Bondable Modes .....	307
4.3.1	Non-bondable Mode .....	307
4.3.2	Bondable Mode .....	307
4.4	Synchronizability Modes .....	308
4.4.1	Non-synchronizable Mode .....	308



4.4.2	Synchronizable Mode.....	308
<b>5</b>	<b>Security Aspects – BR/EDR Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>309</b>
5.1	Authentication .....	309
5.1.1	Purpose.....	309
5.1.2	Term on UI level .....	309
5.1.3	Procedure .....	310
5.1.4	Conditions .....	310
5.2	Security Modes .....	311
5.2.1	Legacy Security Modes.....	312
5.2.2	Security Mode 4 (service level enforced security).....	313
<b>6</b>	<b>Idle Mode Procedures – BR/EDR Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>328</b>
6.1	General Inquiry .....	328
6.1.1	Purpose.....	328
6.1.2	Term on UI level .....	328
6.1.3	Description .....	329
6.1.4	Conditions .....	329
6.2	Limited Inquiry .....	329
6.2.1	Purpose.....	329
6.2.2	Term on UI level .....	330
6.2.3	Description .....	330
6.2.4	Conditions .....	330
6.3	Name Discovery .....	331
6.3.1	Purpose.....	331
6.3.2	Term on UI level .....	331
6.3.3	Description .....	331
6.3.4	Conditions .....	332
6.4	Device Discovery .....	332
6.4.1	Purpose.....	332
6.4.2	Term on UI Level.....	332
6.4.3	Description .....	333
6.4.4	Conditions .....	333
6.5	Bonding.....	334
6.5.1	Purpose.....	334
6.5.2	Term on UI level .....	334
6.5.3	Description .....	334
6.5.4	Conditions .....	336



<b>7</b>	<b>Establishment Procedures – BR/EDR Physical Transport .....</b>	<b>337</b>
7.1	Link Establishment .....	337
7.1.1	Purpose .....	337
7.1.2	Term on UI Level .....	337
7.1.3	Description .....	338
7.1.4	Conditions .....	339
7.2	Channel Establishment .....	340
7.2.1	Purpose .....	340
7.2.2	Term on UI level .....	340
7.2.3	Description .....	340
7.2.4	Conditions .....	341
7.3	Connection Establishment .....	342
7.3.1	Purpose .....	342
7.3.2	Term on UI level .....	342
7.3.3	Description .....	342
7.3.4	Conditions .....	343
7.4	Establishment of Additional Connection.....	343
7.5	Synchronization Establishment.....	344
7.5.1	Purpose .....	344
7.5.2	Term on UI Level .....	344
7.5.3	Description .....	344
7.5.4	Conditions .....	344
<b>8</b>	<b>Extended Inquiry Response Data Format .....</b>	<b>345</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Operational Modes and Procedures – LE Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>347</b>
9.1	Broadcast Mode and Observation Procedure .....	347
9.1.1	Broadcast Mode .....	347
9.1.2	Observation Procedure .....	348
9.2	Discovery Modes and Procedures .....	348
9.2.1	Requirements .....	349
9.2.2	Non-Discoverable Mode .....	349
9.2.3	Limited Discoverable Mode .....	350
9.2.4	General Discoverable Mode .....	351
9.2.5	Limited Discovery Procedure .....	353
9.2.6	General Discovery Procedure .....	354
9.2.7	Name Discovery Procedure .....	355
9.3	Connection Modes and Procedures.....	356
9.3.1	Requirements .....	356
9.3.2	Non-Connectable Mode .....	357



9.3.3	Directed Connectable Mode.....	357
9.3.4	Undirected Connectable Mode.....	358
9.3.5	Auto Connection Establishment Procedure .....	358
9.3.6	General Connection Establishment Procedure .....	359
9.3.7	Selective Connection Establishment Procedure .....	361
9.3.8	Direct Connection Establishment Procedure .....	363
9.3.9	Connection Parameter Update Procedure .....	364
9.3.10	Terminate Connection Procedure.....	365
9.3.11	Connection Establishment Timing Parameters .....	365
9.3.12	Connection Interval Timing Parameters .....	366
9.4	Bonding Modes and Procedures .....	367
9.4.1	Requirements.....	367
9.4.2	Non-Bondable Mode .....	367
9.4.3	Bondable Mode .....	368
9.4.4	Bonding Procedure .....	369
<b>10</b>	<b>Security Aspects – LE Physical Transport .....</b>	<b>370</b>
10.1	Requirements.....	370
10.2	LE Security Modes.....	370
10.2.1	LE Security Mode 1.....	371
10.2.2	LE Security Mode 2.....	371
10.2.3	Mixed Security Modes Requirements .....	371
10.3	Authentication Procedure .....	372
10.3.1	Responding to a Service Request.....	372
10.3.2	Initiating a Service Request .....	376
10.4	Data Signing .....	379
10.4.1	Connection Data Signing Procedure.....	379
10.4.2	Authenticate Signed Data Procedure.....	379
10.5	Authorization Procedure .....	381
10.6	Encryption Procedure .....	381
10.7	Privacy Feature.....	381
10.7.1	Privacy Feature in a Peripheral.....	382
10.7.2	Privacy Feature in a Central.....	382
10.7.3	Privacy Feature in a Broadcaster.....	383
10.7.4	Privacy Feature in an Observer .....	383
10.8	Random Device Address .....	383
10.8.1	Static Address .....	384
10.8.2	Private address .....	385



<b>11</b>	<b>Advertising and Scan Response Data Format .....</b>	<b>387</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>GAP Service and Characteristics for GATT Server.....</b>	<b>388</b>
12.1	Device Name Characteristic.....	389
12.2	Appearance Characteristic.....	389
12.3	Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters Characteristic...	390
<b>13</b>	<b>BR/EDR/LE Operation .....</b>	<b>392</b>
13.1	Modes, Procedures and Security Aspects .....	392
13.1.1	Discoverable Mode Requirements .....	393
13.2	Bonding for BR/EDR/LE Device Type .....	393
13.3	Relationship between Physical Transports .....	393
<b>14</b>	<b>BR/EDR/LE Security Aspects.....</b>	<b>394</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>Bluetooth Device Requirements .....</b>	<b>395</b>
15.1	Bluetooth Device Address.....	395
15.1.1	Bluetooth Device Address Types .....	395
15.2	GATT Profile Requirements .....	395
15.3	SDP Requirements .....	396
15.4	SDP Service Record Requirement.....	396
<b>16</b>	<b>Definitions.....</b>	<b>397</b>
16.1	General Definitions.....	397
16.2	Connection-related Definitions .....	397
16.3	Device-related Definitions .....	398
16.4	Procedure-related Definitions.....	399
16.5	Security-related Definitions .....	399
<b>17</b>	<b>Appendix A (Normative): Timers and Constants.....</b>	<b>401</b>
<b>18</b>	<b>Appendix B (Informative): Information Flows of Related Procedures .....</b>	<b>405</b>
18.1	LMP – Authentication .....	405
18.2	LMP – Pairing .....	406
18.3	Service Discovery .....	407
18.4	Generating a Resolvable Private Address .....	407
18.5	Resolving a Resolvable Private Address .....	407
<b>19</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>408</b>



## Part D TEST SUPPORT

<b>1</b>	<b>Test Methodology.....</b>	<b>417</b>
1.1	BR/EDR Test Scenarios.....	417
1.1.1	Test Setup .....	417
1.1.2	Transmitter Test .....	418
1.1.3	LoopBack Test .....	422
1.1.4	Pause Test .....	426
1.2	AMP Test Scenarios .....	427
1.2.1	Methodology Overview.....	427
1.2.2	Control and Configuration .....	429
1.2.3	AMP Test Manager.....	429
1.2.4	Test Commands/Events Format.....	430
1.2.5	AMP Test Manager Commands/Events .....	432
1.3	References .....	435
<b>2</b>	<b>Test Control Interface (TCI).....</b>	<b>436</b>
2.1	Introduction .....	436
2.1.1	Terms Used.....	436
2.1.2	Usage of the Interface.....	436
2.2	TCI Configurations .....	437
2.2.1	Bluetooth RF Requirements.....	437
2.2.2	Bluetooth Protocol Requirements .....	438
2.2.3	Bluetooth Profile Requirements .....	439
2.3	TCI Configuration and Usage .....	440
2.3.1	Transport Layers .....	440
2.3.2	Baseband and Link Manager Qualification .....	441
2.3.3	HCI Qualification .....	443

**Part E****AMP MANAGER PROTOCOL SPECIFICATION**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>449</b>
1.1	General Description .....	449
<b>2</b>	<b>General Operation.....</b>	<b>450</b>
2.1	Basic Capabilities.....	450
2.2	AMP Manager Channel Over L2CAP.....	451
2.3	Using the AMP Manager Protocol.....	452
2.3.1	Discovering a Remote AMP Manager.....	452
2.3.2	Discovering Available Controllers on a Remote Device .....	452
2.3.3	Creation of AMP Physical Links .....	453
2.4	Controller IDs .....	454
2.5	Controller Types .....	454
<b>3</b>	<b>Protocol Description .....</b>	<b>455</b>
3.1	Packet Formats .....	455
3.2	AMP Command Reject (Code 0x01).....	457
3.3	AMP Discover Request (Code 0x02) .....	458
3.4	AMP Discover Response (Code 0x03) .....	459
3.5	AMP Change Notify (Code 0x04).....	462
3.6	AMP Change Response (Code 0x05).....	463
3.7	AMP Get Info Request (Code 0x06) .....	463
3.8	AMP Get Info Response (Code 0x07).....	464
3.9	AMP Get AMP Assoc Request (Code 0x08).....	466
3.10	AMP Get AMP Assoc Response (Code 0x09) .....	466
3.11	AMP Create Physical Link Request (Code 0x0A).....	467
3.12	AMP Create Physical Link Response (Code 0x0B) .....	468
3.13	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request (Code 0x0C).....	471
3.14	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response (Code 0x0D) .....	471
3.15	Create Physical Link Collision Resolution.....	473
3.16	Response Timeout.....	473
3.17	Unexpected BR/EDR Physical Link Disconnect.....	473

**Part F  
ATTRIBUTE PROTOCOL (ATT)**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>481</b>
1.1	Scope.....	481
1.2	Conformance .....	481
<b>2</b>	<b>Protocol Overview .....</b>	<b>482</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Protocol Requirements.....</b>	<b>483</b>
3.1	Introduction .....	483
3.2	Basic Concepts .....	483
3.2.1	Attribute Type .....	483
3.2.2	Attribute Handle .....	484
3.2.3	Attribute Handle Grouping.....	485
3.2.4	Attribute Value.....	485
3.2.5	Attribute Permissions .....	485
3.2.6	Control-Point Attributes .....	487
3.2.7	Protocol Methods .....	487
3.2.8	Exchanging MTU Size.....	487
3.2.9	Long Attribute Values .....	487
3.2.10	Atomic Operations.....	488
3.3	Attribute PDU .....	488
3.3.1	Attribute PDU Format.....	489
3.3.2	Sequential Protocol .....	490
3.3.3	Transaction .....	491
3.4	Attribute Protocol PDUs .....	492
3.4.1	Error Handling .....	492
3.4.2	MTU Exchange .....	494
3.4.3	Find Information .....	496
3.4.4	Reading Attributes .....	500
3.4.5	Writing Attributes.....	510
3.4.6	Queued Writes .....	514
3.4.7	Server Initiated .....	518
3.4.8	Attribute Opcode Summary.....	520
3.4.9	Attribute PDU Response Summary.....	522
<b>4</b>	<b>Security Considerations.....</b>	<b>525</b>

**Part G****GENERIC ATTRIBUTE PROFILE (GATT)**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>533</b>
1.1	Scope .....	533
1.2	Profile Dependency .....	533
1.3	Conformance .....	533
1.4	Bluetooth Specification Release Compatibility .....	534
1.5	Conventions .....	534
<b>2</b>	<b>Profile Overview .....</b>	<b>535</b>
2.1	Protocol Stack .....	535
2.2	Configurations and Roles .....	535
2.3	User Requirements and Scenarios .....	536
2.4	Profile Fundamentals .....	536
2.5	Attribute Protocol .....	537
2.5.1	Overview .....	537
2.5.2	Attribute Caching .....	538
2.5.3	Attribute Grouping .....	539
2.5.4	UUIDs .....	540
2.6	GATT Profile Hierarchy .....	541
2.6.1	Overview .....	541
2.6.2	Service .....	542
2.6.3	Included Services .....	542
2.6.4	Characteristic .....	543
2.7	Configured Broadcast .....	543
<b>3</b>	<b>Service Interoperability Requirements .....</b>	<b>544</b>
3.1	Service Definition .....	544
3.2	Include Definition .....	545
3.3	Characteristic Definition .....	545
3.3.1	Characteristic Declaration .....	546
3.3.2	Characteristic Value Declaration .....	548
3.3.3	Characteristic Descriptor Declarations .....	548
3.4	Summary of GATT Profile Attribute Types .....	557
<b>4</b>	<b>GATT Feature Requirements .....</b>	<b>558</b>
4.1	Overview .....	558
4.2	Feature Support and Procedure Mapping .....	558
4.3	Server Configuration .....	560
4.3.1	Exchange MTU .....	560
4.4	Primary Service Discovery .....	561
4.4.1	Discover All Primary Services .....	561
4.4.2	Discover Primary Service by Service UUID .....	562



4.5	Relationship Discovery .....	564
4.5.1	Find Included Services.....	564
4.6	Characteristic Discovery .....	565
4.6.1	Discover All Characteristics of a Service .....	565
4.6.2	Discover Characteristics by UUID .....	567
4.7	Characteristic Descriptor Discovery.....	568
4.7.1	Discover All Characteristic Descriptors .....	568
4.8	Characteristic Value Read .....	570
4.8.1	Read Characteristic Value.....	570
4.8.2	Read Using Characteristic UUID.....	570
4.8.3	Read Long Characteristic Values.....	571
4.8.4	Read Multiple Characteristic Values .....	572
4.9	Characteristic Value Write.....	573
4.9.1	Write Without Response .....	573
4.9.2	Signed Write Without Response .....	574
4.9.3	Write Characteristic Value .....	574
4.9.4	Write Long Characteristic Values .....	575
4.9.5	Reliable Writes .....	576
4.10	Characteristic Value Notification .....	578
4.10.1	Notifications .....	578
4.11	Characteristic Value Indications.....	579
4.11.1	Indications .....	579
4.12	Characteristic Descriptors.....	580
4.12.1	Read Characteristic Descriptors .....	580
4.12.2	Read Long Characteristic Descriptors .....	580
4.12.3	Write Characteristic Descriptors.....	581
4.12.4	Write Long Characteristic Descriptors.....	582
4.13	GATT Procedure Mapping to ATT Protocol Opcodes .....	583
4.14	Procedure Timeouts.....	585
5	<b>L2CAP Interoperability Requirements .....</b>	<b>586</b>
5.1	BR/EDR L2CAP Interoperability Requirements .....	586
5.1.1	ATT_MTU .....	586
5.1.2	BR/EDR Channel Requirements .....	586
5.1.3	BR/EDR Channel Establishment Collisions .....	587
5.2	LE L2CAP Interoperability Requirements .....	587
5.2.1	ATT_MTU .....	587
5.2.2	LE Channel Requirements .....	588
6	<b>GAP Interoperability Requirements .....</b>	<b>589</b>
6.1	BR/EDR GAP Interoperability Requirements .....	589



6.1.1	Connection Establishment.....	589
6.2	LE GAP Interoperability Requirements .....	589
6.2.1	Connection Establishment.....	589
6.2.2	Profile Roles .....	589
6.3	Disconnected Events .....	590
6.3.1	Notifications and Indications While Disconnected.....	590
<b>7</b>	<b>Defined Generic Attribute Profile Service.....</b>	<b>591</b>
7.1	Service Changed .....	591
<b>8</b>	<b>Security Considerations .....</b>	<b>593</b>
8.1	Authentication Requirements .....	593
8.2	Authorization Requirements .....	594
<b>9</b>	<b>SDP Interoperability Requirements .....</b>	<b>595</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>596</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Appendix: Example Attribute Server Attributes.....</b>	<b>597</b>

## Part H

### SECURITY MANAGER SPECIFICATION

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>607</b>
1.1	Scope .....	607
1.2	Conventions .....	607
1.2.1	Bit and Byte Ordering Conventions .....	607
<b>2</b>	<b>Security Manager .....</b>	<b>608</b>
2.1	Introduction .....	608
2.2	Cryptographic Toolbox .....	609
2.2.1	Security function <i>e</i> .....	609
2.2.2	Random Address Hash function <i>ah</i> .....	610
2.2.3	Confirm value generation function <i>c1</i> .....	610
2.2.4	Key generation function <i>s1</i> .....	612
2.3	Pairing Methods .....	613
2.3.1	Security Properties .....	613
2.3.2	IO Capabilities .....	615
2.3.3	OOB Authentication Data .....	616
2.3.4	Encryption Key Size .....	616
2.3.5	Pairing Algorithms .....	616
2.3.6	Repeated Attempts.....	622
2.4	Security in Bluetooth low energy .....	622
2.4.1	Definition of Keys and Values .....	622
2.4.2	Generation of Keys.....	623



2.4.3	Distribution of Keys .....	624
2.4.4	Encrypted Session Setup.....	625
2.4.5	Signing Algorithm.....	626
2.4.6	Slave Security Request .....	628
<b>3</b>	<b>Security Manager Protocol .....</b>	<b>630</b>
3.1	Introduction .....	630
3.2	Security Manager Channel over L2CAP .....	630
3.3	Command Format.....	630
3.4	SMP Timeout .....	631
3.5	Pairing Methods.....	632
3.5.1	Pairing Request .....	632
3.5.2	Pairing Response.....	634
3.5.3	Pairing Confirm .....	635
3.5.4	Pairing Random .....	636
3.5.5	Pairing Failed .....	637
3.6	Security in Bluetooth low energy .....	639
3.6.1	Key Distribution.....	639
3.6.2	Encryption Information .....	641
3.6.3	Master Identification .....	641
3.6.4	Identity Information .....	642
3.6.5	Identity Address Information .....	643
3.6.6	Signing Information .....	643
3.6.7	Security Request.....	644
<b>4</b>	<b>References.....</b>	<b>645</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Appendices.....</b>	<b>648</b>
5.1	Appendix A – EDIV and Rand Generation.....	648
5.1.1	EDIV Masking .....	648
5.2	Appendix B – Key Management .....	650
5.2.1	Database Lookup .....	650
5.2.2	Key Hierarchy.....	650
5.3	Message Sequence Charts.....	654
5.3.1	Phase 1: Pairing Feature Exchange .....	654
5.3.2	Phase 2: Authenticating and Encrypting .....	656
5.3.3	Phase 3: Transport Specific Key Distribution .....	659
5.3.4	Security Re-established using Previously Distributed LTK.....	659
5.3.5	Failure Conditions .....	660

## Core System Package [Host volume]

Part A

# LOGICAL LINK CONTROL AND ADAPTATION PROTOCOL SPECIFICATION

*The Bluetooth logical link control and adaptation protocol (L2CAP) supports higher level protocol multiplexing, packet segmentation and reassembly, and the conveying of quality of service information. The protocol state machine, packet format, and composition are described in this document.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>31</b>
1.1	L2CAP Features .....	31
1.2	Assumptions .....	34
1.3	Scope .....	35
1.4	Terminology .....	35
<b>2</b>	<b>General Operation.....</b>	<b>39</b>
2.1	Channel Identifiers .....	39
2.2	Operation Between Devices.....	42
2.3	Operation Between Layers.....	43
2.4	Modes of Operation .....	44
2.5	Mapping Channels to Logical Links .....	46
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Packet Format.....</b>	<b>47</b>
3.1	Connection-oriented Channels in Basic L2CAP Mode.....	47
3.2	Connectionless Data Channel in Basic L2CAP Mode.....	48
3.3	Connection-oriented Channel in Retransmission/Flow Control/ Streaming Modes .....	49
3.3.1	L2CAP header fields .....	50
3.3.2	Control field (2 or 4 octets) .....	51
3.3.3	L2CAP SDU Length Field (2 octets).....	53
3.3.4	Information Payload Field.....	54
3.3.5	Frame Check Sequence (2 octets).....	54
3.3.6	Invalid Frame Detection .....	55
3.3.7	Invalid Frame Detection Algorithm .....	55
3.4	Connection-Oriented Channels in LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode .....	57
3.4.1	L2CAP Header Fields.....	57
3.4.2	L2CAP SDU Length Field (2 octets).....	57
3.4.3	Information Payload Field.....	57
<b>4</b>	<b>Signaling Packet Formats .....</b>	<b>59</b>
4.1	Command Reject (code 0x01) .....	62
4.2	Connection Request (code 0x02).....	63
4.3	Connection Response (code 0x03).....	64
4.4	Configuration Request (code 0x04) .....	66
4.5	Configuration Response (code 0x05).....	68
4.6	Disconnection Request (code 0x06) .....	70
4.7	Disconnection Response (code 0x07) .....	71
4.8	Echo Request (code 0x08).....	71
4.9	Echo Response (code 0x09).....	72

4.10	Information Request (code 0x0A) .....	72
4.11	Information Response (code 0x0B) .....	73
4.12	Extended Feature Mask.....	75
4.13	Fixed Channels Supported .....	76
4.14	Create Channel Request (code 0x0C).....	77
4.15	Create Channel Response (code 0x0D).....	78
4.16	Move Channel Request (code 0x0E).....	79
4.17	Move Channel Response (code 0x0F) .....	80
4.18	Move Channel Confirmation (code 0x10) .....	81
4.19	Move Channel Confirmation Response (code 0x11) .....	82
4.20	Connection Parameter Update Request (code 0x12).....	82
4.21	Connection Parameter Update Response (code 0x13) .....	84
4.22	LE Credit Based Connection Request (Code 0x14) .....	85
4.23	LE Credit Based Connection Response (Code 0x15) .....	86
4.24	LE Flow Control Credit (Code 0x16).....	88
<b>5</b>	<b>Configuration Parameter Options .....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.1	Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) .....	89
5.2	Flush Timeout Option.....	91
5.3	Quality of Service (QoS) Option .....	92
5.4	Retransmission and Flow Control Option .....	96
5.5	Frame Check Sequence (FCS) Option .....	101
5.6	Extended Flow Specification Option .....	102
5.7	Extended Window Size Option .....	107
<b>6</b>	<b>State Machine .....</b>	<b>109</b>
6.1	General rules for the state machine:.....	109
6.1.1	CLOSED state .....	111
6.1.2	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP state .....	112
6.1.3	WAIT_CONNECT state .....	113
6.1.4	CONFIG state .....	113
6.1.5	OPEN state .....	119
6.1.6	WAIT_DISCONNECT state .....	120
6.1.7	WAIT_CREATE_RSP state .....	121
6.1.8	WAIT_CREATE state .....	121
6.1.9	WAIT_MOVE_RSP state .....	122
6.1.10	WAIT_MOVE state.....	123
6.1.11	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM state .....	123
6.1.12	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP state .....	124
6.2	Timers events .....	125
6.2.1	RTX .....	125
6.2.2	ERTX.....	126

<b>7</b>	<b>General Procedures .....</b>	<b>130</b>
7.1	Configuration Process.....	130
7.1.1	Request Path.....	131
7.1.2	Response Path.....	132
7.1.3	Lockstep Configuration Process.....	132
7.1.4	Standard Configuration Process.....	135
7.2	Fragmentation and Recombination.....	137
7.2.1	Fragmentation of L2CAP PDUs .....	137
7.2.2	Recombination of L2CAP PDUs.....	138
7.3	Encapsulation of SDUs .....	139
7.3.1	Segmentation of L2CAP SDUs .....	139
7.3.2	Reassembly of L2CAP SDUs.....	140
7.3.3	Segmentation and fragmentation .....	140
7.4	Delivery of Erroneous L2CAP SDUs.....	141
7.5	Operation with Flushing On ACL-U Logical Links .....	141
7.6	Connectionless Data Channel.....	142
7.7	Operation Collision Resolution.....	144
7.8	Aggregating Best Effort Extended Flow Specifications .....	144
7.9	Prioritizing Data over HCI.....	145
7.10	Supporting Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE Controllers.....	146
<b>8</b>	<b>Procedures for Flow Control and Retransmission .....</b>	<b>148</b>
8.1	Information Retrieval.....	148
8.2	Function of PDU Types for Flow Control and Retransmission.148	148
8.2.1	Information frame (I-frame) .....	148
8.2.2	Supervisory Frame (S-frame).....	148
8.2.2.1	Receiver Ready (RR).....	148
8.2.2.2	Reject (REJ) .....	149
8.3	Variables and Sequence Numbers.....	149
8.3.1	Sending peer .....	150
8.3.1.1	Send sequence number TxSeq .....	150
8.3.1.2	Send state variable NextTXSeq.....	150
8.3.1.3	Acknowledge state variable ExpectedAckSeq .....	150
8.3.2	Receiving peer .....	151
8.3.2.1	Receive sequence number ReqSeq .....	151
8.3.2.2	Receive state variable, ExpectedTxSeq .....	152
8.3.2.3	Buffer state variable BufferSeq .....	152

8.4	Retransmission Mode .....	153
8.4.1	Transmitting frames .....	153
8.4.1.1	Last received R was set to zero .....	153
8.4.1.2	Last received R was set to one .....	155
8.4.2	Receiving I-frames .....	155
8.4.3	I-frames pulled by the SDU reassembly function .....	156
8.4.4	Sending and receiving acknowledgements .....	156
8.4.4.1	Sending acknowledgements .....	156
8.4.4.2	Receiving acknowledgements .....	156
8.4.5	Receiving REJ frames .....	157
8.4.6	Waiting acknowledgements .....	158
8.4.7	Exception conditions .....	158
8.4.7.1	TxSeq Sequence error .....	158
8.4.7.2	ReqSeq Sequence error .....	159
8.4.7.3	Timer recovery error .....	159
8.4.7.4	Invalid frame .....	159
8.5	Flow Control Mode .....	160
8.5.1	Transmitting I-frames .....	160
8.5.2	Receiving I-frames .....	161
8.5.3	I-frames pulled by the SDU reassembly function .....	161
8.5.4	Sending and receiving acknowledgements .....	161
8.5.4.1	Sending acknowledgements .....	161
8.5.4.2	Receiving acknowledgements .....	162
8.5.5	Waiting acknowledgements .....	162
8.5.6	Exception conditions .....	163
8.5.6.1	TxSeq Sequence error .....	163
8.5.6.2	ReqSeq Sequence error .....	163
8.5.6.3	Invalid frame .....	164
8.6	Enhanced Retransmission Mode .....	164
8.6.1	Function Of PDU Types .....	164
8.6.1.1	Receiver Ready (RR) .....	164
8.6.1.2	Reject (REJ) .....	164
8.6.1.3	Receiver Not Ready (RNR) .....	165
8.6.1.4	Selective Reject (SREJ) .....	165
8.6.1.5	Functions of the Poll (P) and Final (F) bits ..	165
8.6.2	Rules For Timers .....	166
8.6.2.1	Timer Rules for ACL-U Logical Links .....	166
8.6.2.2	Timer Rules for AMP Controllers .....	167
8.6.2.3	Timer Values used After a Move Operation ..	168
8.6.3	General Rules for the State Machine .....	169
8.6.4	State Diagram .....	170
8.6.5	States Tables .....	170

8.6.5.1	State Machines .....	170
8.6.5.2	States .....	171
8.6.5.3	Variables and Timers .....	171
8.6.5.4	Events .....	174
8.6.5.5	Conditions .....	175
8.6.5.6	Actions .....	177
8.6.5.7	XMIT State Table.....	182
8.6.5.8	WAIT_F State Table .....	183
8.6.5.9	RECV State Table .....	183
8.6.5.10	REJ_SENT State Table .....	187
8.6.5.11	SREJ_SENT State Table .....	190
8.7	Streaming Mode .....	194
8.7.1	Transmitting I-frames .....	194
8.7.2	Receiving I-frames .....	194
8.7.3	Exception Conditions.....	195
8.7.3.1	TxSeq Sequence error.....	195
<b>9</b>	<b>Procedure for AMP Channel Creation and Handling .....</b>	<b>196</b>
9.1	Create Channel.....	196
9.2	Move Channel .....	199
9.2.1	Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Enhanced Retransmission Mode.....	200
9.2.1.1	Enhanced Retransmission Mode Procedures During a Move Operation.....	202
9.2.2	Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Streaming Mode (Initiator is Data Source).....	203
9.2.3	Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Streaming Mode (Initiator is Data Sink) .....	204
9.3	Disconnect Channel .....	207
<b>10</b>	<b>Procedures for Credit Based Flow Control.....</b>	<b>208</b>
10.1	LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode .....	208
<b>11</b>	<b>List of Figures.....</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>211</b>
	<b>Appendix A: Configuration MSCs .....</b>	<b>213</b>



## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

This section of the Bluetooth Specification defines the Logical Link Control and Adaptation Layer Protocol, referred to as L2CAP. L2CAP provides connection-oriented and connectionless data services to upper layer protocols with protocol multiplexing capability and segmentation and reassembly operation.

L2CAP permits higher level protocols and applications to transmit and receive upper layer data packets (L2CAP Service Data Units, SDU) up to 64 kilobytes in length. L2CAP also permits per-channel flow control and retransmission.

The L2CAP layer provides logical channels, named L2CAP channels, which are multiplexed over one or more logical links.

### 1.1 L2CAP FEATURES

The functional requirements for L2CAP include protocol/channel multiplexing, segmentation and reassembly (SAR), per-channel flow control, and error control. L2CAP sits above a lower layer composed of one of the following:

1. BR/EDR Controller and zero or more AMP Controllers or
2. BR/EDR/LE Controller (supporting BR/EDR and LE) and zero or more AMP Controllers, or
3. LE Controller (supporting LE only)

L2CAP interfaces with upper layer protocols.

[Figure 1.1 on page 32](#) breaks down L2CAP into its architectural components. The Channel Manager provides the control plane functionality and is responsible for all internal signaling, L2CAP peer-to-peer signaling and signaling with higher and lower layers. It performs the state machine functionality described in [Section 6 on page 109](#) and uses message formats described in [Section 4 on page 59](#), and [Section 5 on page 89](#). The Retransmission and Flow Control block provides per-channel flow control and error recovery using packet retransmission. The Resource Manager is responsible for providing a frame relay service to the Channel Manager, the Retransmission and Flow Control block and those application data streams that do not require Retransmission and Flow Control services. It is responsible for coordinating the transmission and reception of packets related to multiple L2CAP channels over the facilities offered at the lower layer interface.

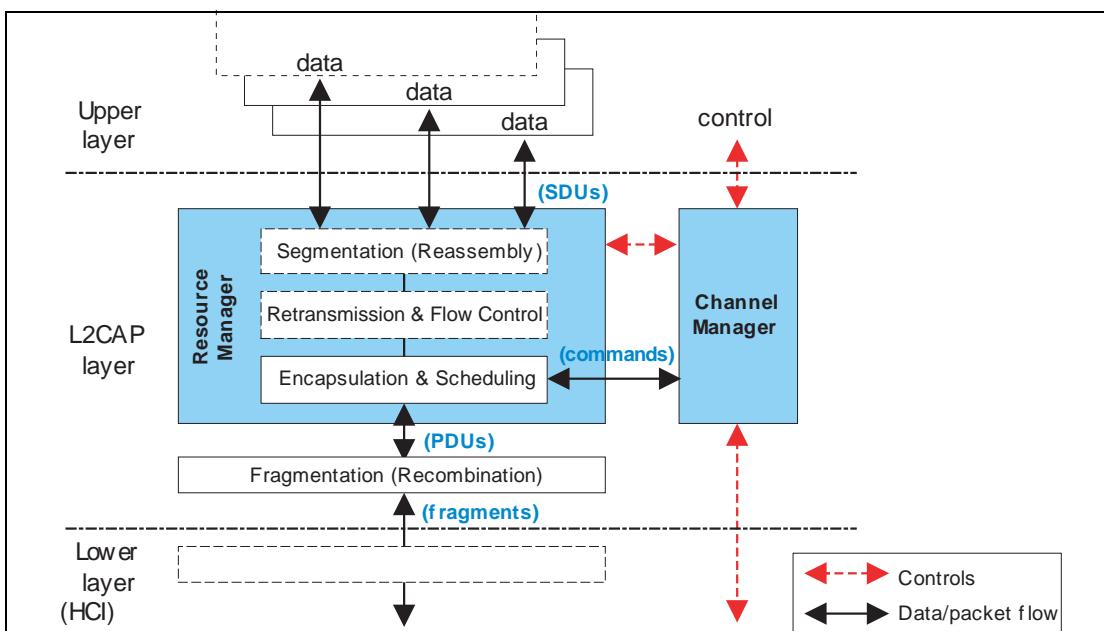


Figure 1.1: L2CAP architectural blocks

- *Protocol/channel multiplexing*

L2CAP supports multiplexing over individual Controllers and across multiple controllers. An L2CAP channel shall operate over one Controller at a time.

During channel setup, protocol multiplexing capability is used to route the connection to the correct upper layer protocol.

For data transfer, logical channel multiplexing is needed to distinguish between multiple upper layer entities. There may be more than one upper layer entity using the same protocol.

- *Segmentation and reassembly*

With the frame relay service offered by the Resource Manager, the length of transport frames is controlled by the individual applications running over L2CAP. Many multiplexed applications are better served if L2CAP has control over the PDU length. This provides the following benefits:

- Segmentation will allow the interleaving of application data units in order to satisfy latency requirements.
- Memory and buffer management is easier when L2CAP controls the packet size.
- Error correction by retransmission can be made more efficient.
- The amount of data that is destroyed when an L2CAP PDU is corrupted or lost can be made smaller than the application's data unit.
- The application is decoupled from the segmentation required to map the application packets into the lower layer packets.

- *Flow control per L2CAP channel*

Controllers provide error and flow control for data going over the air and HCI flow control exists for data going over an HCI transport. When several data streams run over the same Controller using separate L2CAP channels, each channel requires individual flow control. A window based flow control scheme is provided.

- *Error control and retransmissions*

When L2CAP channels are moved from one Controller to another data can be lost. Also, some applications require a residual error rate much smaller than some Controllers can deliver. L2CAP provides error checks and retransmissions of L2CAP PDUs. The error checking in L2CAP protects against errors due to Controllers falsely accepting packets that contain errors but pass Controller-based integrity checks. L2CAP error checking and retransmission also protect against loss of packets due to flushing by the Controller. The error control works in conjunction with flow control in the sense that the flow control mechanism will throttle retransmissions as well as first transmissions.

- *Support for Streaming*

Streaming applications such as audio set up an L2CAP channel with an agreed-upon data rate and do not want flow control mechanisms, including those in the Controller, to alter the flow of data. A flush timeout is used to keep data flowing on the transmit side. Streaming mode is used to stop HCI and Controller based flow control from being applied on the receiving side.

- *Fragmentation and Recombination*

Some Controllers may have limited transmission capabilities and may require fragment sizes different from those created by L2CAP segmentation. Therefore layers below L2CAP may further fragment and recombine L2CAP PDUs to create fragments which fit each layer's capabilities. During transmission of an L2CAP PDU, many different levels of fragmentation and recombination may occur in both peer devices.

The HCI driver or controller may fragment L2CAP PDUs to honor packet size constraints of a host controller interface transport scheme. This results in HCI data packet payloads carrying start and continuation fragments of the L2CAP PDU. Similarly the Controller may fragment L2CAP PDUs to map them into Controller packets. This may result in Controller packet payloads carrying start and continuation fragments of the L2CAP PDU.

Each layer of the protocol stack may pass on different sized fragments of L2CAP PDUs, and the size of fragments created by a layer may be different in each peer device. However the PDU is fragmented within the stack, the receiving L2CAP entity still recombines the fragments to obtain the original L2CAP PDU.

- *Quality of Service*

The L2CAP connection establishment process allows the exchange of information regarding the quality of service (QoS) expected between two Bluetooth devices. Each L2CAP implementation monitors the resources used by the protocol and ensures that QoS contracts are honored.

For a BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE Controller, L2CAP may support both isochronous (Guaranteed) and asynchronous (Best Effort) data flows over the same ACL logical link by marking packets as automatically-flushable or non-automatically-flushable by setting the appropriate value for the `Packet_Boundary_Flag` in the HCI ACL Data Packet (see [\[vol.2, part E\] Section 5.4.2 on page 481](#)). Automatically-flushable L2CAP packets are flushed according to the automatic flush timeout set for the ACL logical link on which the L2CAP channels are mapped (see [\[vol.2, part E\] Section 6.19 on page 495](#)). Non-automatically-flushable L2CAP packets are not affected by the automatic flush timeout and will not be flushed. All L2CAP packets can be flushed by using the HCI Flush command (see [\[vol.2, part E\] Section 7.3.4 on page 660](#)).

For AMP Controllers, L2CAP places all asynchronous data flows going to the same remote device over a single logical link (aggregation). L2CAP places each isochronous data flow over its own logical link.

## 1.2 ASSUMPTIONS

The protocol is designed based on the following assumptions:

1. Controllers provide orderly delivery of data packets, although there might be individual packet corruption and duplicates. For devices with a BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE Controller, no more than one ACL-U logical link exists between any two devices. For devices with a given AMP Controller, more than one AMP-U logical link may exist between any two devices. For devices with a BR/EDR/LE or LE Controller, no more than one LE-U logical link exists between any two devices.
2. Controllers always provide the impression of full-duplex communication channels. This does not imply that all L2CAP communications are bi-directional. Unidirectional traffic does not require duplex channels.
3. The L2CAP layer provides a channel with a degree of reliability based on the mechanisms available in Controllers and with additional packet segmentation, error detection, and retransmission that can be enabled in the enhanced L2CAP layer. Some Controllers perform data integrity checks and resend data until it has been successfully acknowledged or a timeout occurs. Other Controllers will resend data up to a certain number of times whereupon the data is flushed. Because acknowledgments may be lost, timeouts may occur even after the data has been successfully sent. Note that the use of baseband broadcast packets in a BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE Controller is unreliable and that all broadcasts start the first segment of an L2CAP packet with the same sequence bit.

4. Controllers provide error and flow control for data going over the air and HCI flow control exists for data going over an HCI transport but some applications will want better error control than some controllers provide. Also, moving channels between Controllers requires L2CAP flow and error control. The Flow and Error Control block provides four modes. Enhanced Retransmission mode and Retransmission Mode offer segmentation, flow control and L2CAP PDU retransmissions. Flow control mode offers just the segmentation and flow control functions. Streaming mode offers segmentation and receiver side packet flushing.

### 1.3 SCOPE

The following features are outside the scope of L2CAP's responsibilities:

- L2CAP does not transport synchronous data designated for SCO or eSCO logical transports.
- L2CAP does not support a reliable broadcast channel. See [Section 3.2 on page 48](#).

### 1.4 TERMINOLOGY

The following formal definitions apply:

Term	Description
Upper layer	The system layer above the L2CAP layer, which exchanges data with L2CAP in the form of SDUs. The upper layer may be represented by an application or higher protocol entity known as the Service Level Protocol. The interface of the L2CAP layer with the upper layer is not specified.
Lower layer	The system layer below the L2CAP layer, which exchanges data with the L2CAP layer in the form of PDUs, or fragments of PDUs. The lower layer is mainly represented within the Controller, however a Host Controller Interface (HCI) may be involved, such that an HCI host driver could also be seen as the lower layer. Except for the HCI functional specification (in case HCI is involved) the interface between L2CAP and the lower layer is not specified.
L2CAP channel	The logical connection between two endpoints in peer devices, characterized by their Channel Identifiers (CID), which is multiplexed over one Controller based logical link.
SDU, or L2CAP SDU	Service Data Unit: a packet of data that L2CAP exchanges with the upper layer and transports transparently over an L2CAP channel using the procedures specified here. The term SDU is associated with data originating from upper layer entities only, i.e. does not include any protocol information generated by L2CAP procedures.

Table 1.1: Terminology

Term	Description
Segment, or SDU segment	<p>A part of an SDU, as resulting from the Segmentation procedure. An SDU may be split into one or more segments.</p> <p>Note: this term is relevant only to Enhanced Retransmission mode, Streaming mode, Retransmission Mode and Flow Control Mode, not to the Basic L2CAP Mode.</p>
Segmentation	<p>A procedure used in the L2CAP Retransmission and Flow Control Modes, resulting in an SDU being split into one or more smaller units, called Segments, as appropriate for the transport over an L2CAP channel.</p> <p>Note: this term is relevant only to the Enhanced Retransmission mode, Streaming mode, Retransmission Mode and Flow Control Mode, not to the Basic L2CAP Mode.</p>
Reassembly	<p>The reverse procedure corresponding to Segmentation, resulting in an SDU being re-established from the segments received over an L2CAP channel, for use by the upper layer. Note that the interface between the L2CAP and the upper layer is not specified; therefore, reassembly may actually occur within an upper layer entity although it is conceptually part of the L2CAP layer.</p> <p>Note: this term is relevant only to Enhanced Retransmission mode, Streaming mode, Retransmission Mode and Flow Control Mode, not to the Basic L2CAP Mode.</p>
PDU, or L2CAP PDU	<p>Protocol Data Unit a packet of data containing L2CAP protocol information fields, control information, and/or upper layer information data. A PDU is always started by a Basic L2CAP header. Types of PDUs are: B-frames, I-frames, S-frames, C-frames and G-frames.</p>
Basic L2CAP header	<p>Minimum L2CAP protocol information that is present in the beginning of each PDU: a length field and a field containing the Channel Identifier (CID).</p>
Basic information frame (B-frame)	<p>A B-frame is a PDU used in the Basic L2CAP mode for L2CAP data packets. It contains a complete SDU as its payload, encapsulated by a Basic L2CAP header.</p>
Information frame (I-frame)	<p>An I-frame is a PDU used in Enhanced Retransmission Mode, Streaming mode, Retransmission mode, and Flow Control Mode. It contains an SDU segment and additional protocol information, encapsulated by a Basic L2CAP header</p>
Supervisory frame (S-frame)	<p>An S-frame is a PDU used in Enhanced Retransmission Mode, Retransmission Mode, and Flow Control Mode. It contains protocol information only, encapsulated by a Basic L2CAP header, and no SDU data.</p>
Control frame (C-frame)	<p>A C-frame is a PDU that contains L2CAP signaling messages exchanged between the peer L2CAP entities. C-frames are exclusively used on the L2CAP signaling channel.</p>

Table 1.1: Terminology

Term	Description
Group frame (G-frame)	A G-frame is a PDU exclusively used on the Connectionless L2CAP channel. It is encapsulated by a Basic L2CAP header and contains the PSM followed by the completed SDU. G-frames may be used to broadcast data to multiple slaves (either to all slaves via Piconet Broadcast or to only active slaves via Active Broadcast) or to send unicast data to a single remote device.
LE Information frame (LE-frame)	An LE-frame is a PDU used in LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode. It contains an SDU segment and additional protocol information, encapsulated by a Basic L2CAP header.
Fragment	<p>A part of a PDU, as resulting from a fragmentation operation. Fragments are used only in the delivery of data to and from the lower layer. They are not used for peer-to-peer transportation. A fragment may be a Start or Continuation Fragment with respect to the L2CAP PDU. A fragment does not contain any protocol information beyond the PDU; the distinction of start and continuation fragments is transported by lower layer protocol provisions.</p> <p>Note: Start Fragments always begin with the Basic L2CAP header of a PDU.</p>
Fragmentation	<p>A procedure used to split L2CAP PDUs to smaller parts, named fragments, appropriate for delivery to the lower layer transport. Although described within the L2CAP layer, fragmentation may actually occur in an HCI host driver, and/or in a Controller, to accommodate the L2CAP PDU transport to HCI data packet or Controller packet sizes.</p> <p>Fragmentation of PDUs may be applied in all L2CAP modes.</p> <p>Note: in version 1.1, Fragmentation and Recombination was referred to as "Segmentation and Reassembly".</p>
Recombination	The reverse procedure corresponding to fragmentation, resulting in an L2CAP PDU re-established from fragments. In the receive path, full or partial recombination operations may occur in the Controller and/or the Host, and the location of recombination does not necessarily correspond to where fragmentation occurs on the transmit side.
Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)	The maximum size of payload data, in octets, that the upper layer entity is capable of accepting, i.e. the MTU corresponds to the maximum SDU size.
Maximum PDU payload Size (MPS)	<p>The maximum size of payload data in octets that the L2CAP layer entity is capable of accepting, i.e. the MPS corresponds to the maximum PDU payload size.</p> <p>Note: in the absence of segmentation, or in the Basic L2CAP Mode, the Maximum Transmission Unit is the equivalent to the Maximum PDU payload Size and shall be made equal in the configuration parameters.</p>
Signaling MTU (MTU <sub>sig</sub> )	The maximum size of command information that the L2CAP layer entity is capable of accepting. The MTU <sub>sig</sub> , refers to the signaling channel only and corresponds to the maximum size of a C-frame, excluding the Basic L2CAP header. The MTU <sub>sig</sub> value of a peer is discovered when a C-frame that is too large is rejected by the peer.

Table 1.1: Terminology

Term	Description
Connectionless MTU (MTU <sub>cnl</sub> )	The maximum size of the connection packet information that the L2CAP layer entity is capable of accepting. The MTU <sub>cnl</sub> refers to the connectionless channel only and corresponds to the maximum G-frame, excluding the Basic L2CAP header and the PSM which immediately follows it. The MTU <sub>cnl</sub> of a peer can be discovered by sending an Information Request.
MaxTransmit	<p>In Enhanced Retransmission mode and Retransmission mode, MaxTransmit controls the number of transmissions of a PDU that L2CAP is allowed to try before assuming that the PDU (and the link) is lost. The minimum value is 1 (only 1 transmission permitted). In Enhanced Retransmission mode a value 0 means infinite transmissions.</p> <p>Note: Setting MaxTransmit to 1 prohibits PDU retransmissions. Failure of a single PDU will cause the link to drop. By comparison, in Flow Control mode, failure of a single PDU will not necessarily cause the link to drop.</p>

Table 1.1: Terminology

## 2 GENERAL OPERATION

L2CAP is based around the concept of '*channels*'. Each one of the endpoints of an L2CAP channel is referred to by a *channel identifier (CID)*.

### 2.1 CHANNEL IDENTIFIERS

A channel identifier (CID) is the local name representing a logical channel endpoint on the device. The scope of CIDs is related to the logical link as shown in [Figure 2.1](#). The null identifier (0x0000) shall never be used as a destination endpoint. Identifiers from 0x0001 to 0x003F are reserved for specific L2CAP functions. These channels are referred to as Fixed Channels. At a minimum, the L2CAP Signaling channel (Fixed Channel 0x0001) or the L2CAP LE Signaling channel (Fixed Channel 0x0005) shall be supported. If Fixed Channel 0x0005 is supported, then Fixed Channels 0x0004 and 0x0006 shall be supported (see [Table 2.1](#)). Other fixed channels may be supported. The Information Request / Response mechanism (described in [Section 4.10](#) and [Section 4.11](#)) shall be used to determine which fixed channels a remote device supports over the ACL-U logical link.

The characteristics of each fixed channel are defined on a per channel basis. Fixed channel characteristics include configuration parameters (e.g., reliability, MTU size, QoS), security, and the ability to change parameters using the L2CAP configuration mechanism. [Table 2.1](#) lists the defined fixed channels, provides a reference to where the associated channel characteristics are defined and specifies the logical link over which the channel may operate. Fixed channels are available as soon as the ACL-U or LE-U logical link is set up. All initialization that is normally performed when a channel is created shall be performed for each of the supported fixed channels when the ACL-U or LE-U logical link is set up. Fixed channels shall only run over ACL-U or LE-U logical links and shall not be moved.

Implementations are free to manage the remaining CIDs in a manner best suited for that particular implementation, with the provision that two simultaneously active L2CAP channels shall not share the same CID. A different CID name space exists for each ACL-U and LE-U logical link. The AMP-U logical link shares the CID name space with its associated ACL-U logical link. [Table 2.1](#) and [Table 2.2](#) summarizes the definition and partitioning of the CID name space for each logical link.

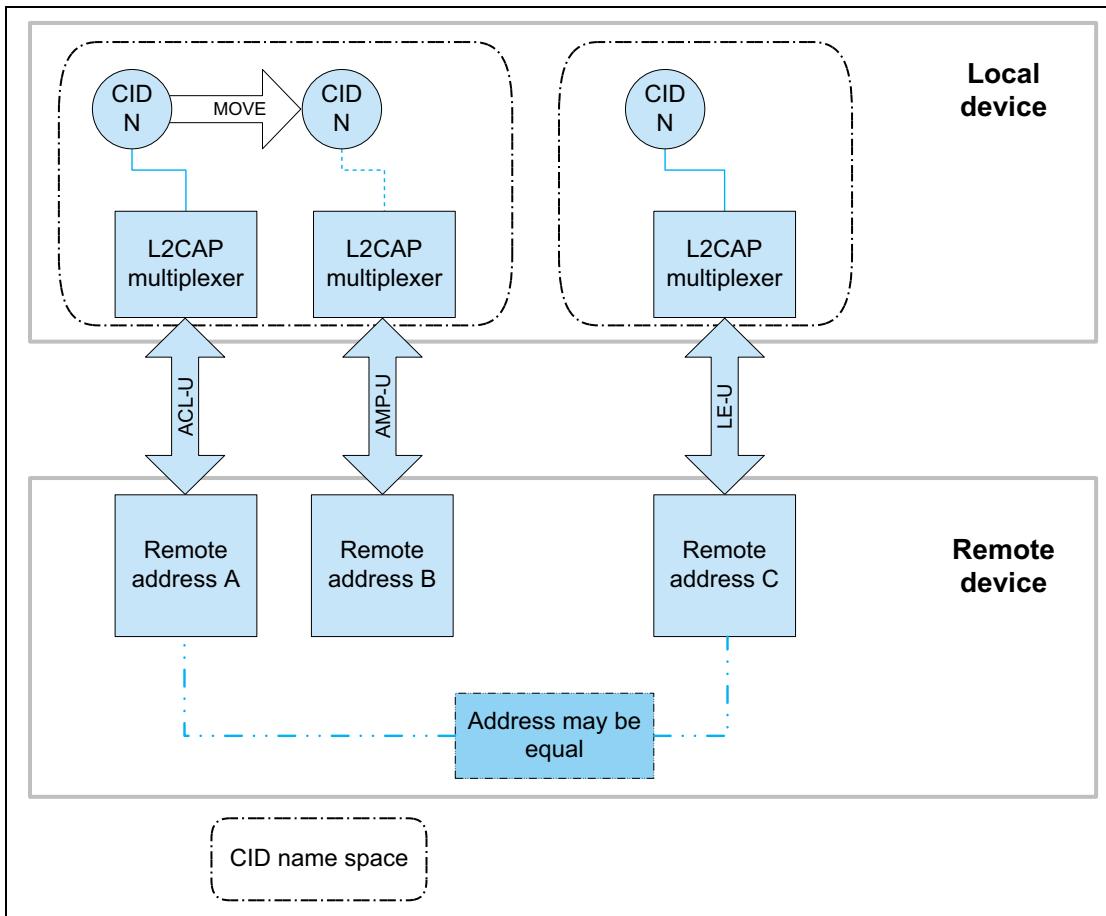


Figure 2.1: Dynamically allocated CID assignments

Assignment of dynamically allocated CIDs is relative to a particular logical link and a device can assign CIDs independently from other devices. Thus, even if the same CID value has been assigned to (remote) channel endpoints by several remote devices connected to a single local device, the local device can still uniquely associate each remote CID with a different device. Further, even if the same CID value has been assigned to (remote) channel endpoints by the same remote device, these can be distinguished because they will be bound to a different logical link.

The CID name space for the ACL-U and AMP-U logical links are as follows:

CID	Description	Channel Characteristics	Logical Link Supported
0x0000	Null identifier	Not allowed	
0x0001	L2CAP Signaling channel	See <a href="#">Section 4 on page 59</a>	ACL-U
0x0002	Connectionless channel	See <a href="#">Section 7.6 on page 142</a>	ACL-U

Table 2.1: CID name space

CID	Description	Channel Characteristics	Logical Link Supported
0x0003	AMP Manager Protocol	See <a href="#">[Part E] Section 2.2 on page 451.</a>	ACL-U
0x0004-0x003E	Reserved	Not applicable	
0x003F	AMP Test Manager	See <a href="#">Part D, Section 1.2.3</a>	ACL-U
0x0040-0xFFFF	Dynamically allocated	Communicated using L2CAP configuration mechanism (see <a href="#">Section 7.1 on page 130</a> )	ACL-U, AMP-U

Table 2.1: CID name space

The CID name space for the LE-U logical link is as follows:

CID	Description	Channel Characteristics	Logical Link Supported
0X0000	Null identifier	Not Allowed	
0x0001-0x0003	Reserved	Not applicable	
0x0004	Attribute Protocol	See <a href="#">[Vol. 3], Part F</a>	LE-U
0x0005	Low Energy L2CAP Signaling channel	See <a href="#">Section 4 on page 59</a>	LE-U
0x0006	Security Manager Protocol	See <a href="#">[Vol. 3], Part H</a>	LE-U
0x0007-0x001F	Reserved	Not applicable	
0x0020-0x003E	Assigned Numbers		LE-U
0x003F	Reserved	Not applicable	
0x0040-0x007F	Dynamically allocated	Communicated using the L2CAP LE credit based create connection mechanism (see <a href="#">Section 4.22 on page 85</a> )	LE-U
0x0080-0xFFFF	Reserved	Not applicable	

Table 2.2: CID name space on LE-U logical link

## 2.2 OPERATION BETWEEN DEVICES

[Figure 2.2 on page 42](#) illustrates the use of CIDs in a communication between corresponding peer L2CAP entities in separate devices. The connection-oriented data channels represent a connection between two devices, where a CID, combined with the logical link, identifies each endpoint of the channel. When used for broadcast transmissions, the connectionless channel restricts data flow to a single direction. The connectionless channel may be used to transmit data to all slaves in a piconet (utilizing Piconet Broadcast which includes both active and parked slaves) or to all active slaves (using Active Broadcast which includes only active slaves). When used for unicast transmissions the connectionless channel may be used in either direction between a master and a slave.

There are also a number of CIDs reserved for special purposes. The L2CAP signalling channels are examples of reserved channels. Fixed channel 0x0001 is used to create and establish connection-oriented data channels and to negotiate changes in the characteristics of connection-oriented channels and to discover characteristics of the connectionless channel operating over the ACL-U logical link.

The L2CAP signaling channel and all supported fixed channels are available immediately when the ACL-U logical link is established between two devices. Another CID (0x0002) is reserved for all incoming and outgoing connectionless data traffic, whether broadcast or unicast. Connectionless data traffic may flow immediately once the ACL-U logical link is established between two devices and once the transmitting device has determined that the remote device supports connectionless traffic.

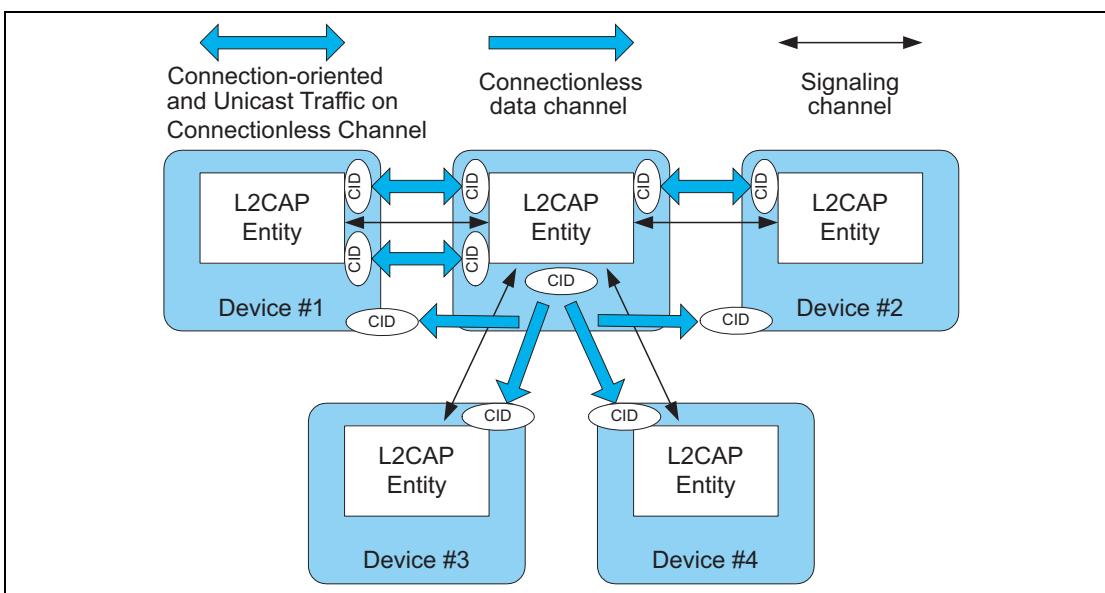


Figure 2.2: Channels between devices

**Table 2.3** describes the various channel types and their source and destination identifiers. A dynamically allocated CID is allocated to identify, along with the logical link, the local endpoint and shall be in the range 0x0040 to 0xFFFF. [Section 6 on page 109](#) describes the state machine associated with each connection-oriented channel with a dynamically allocated CID. [Section 3.1 on page 47](#) and [Section 3.3 on page 49](#) describe the packet format associated with connection-oriented channels. [Section 3.2 on page 48](#) describes the packet format associated with the connectionless channel.

Channel Type	Local CID (sending)	Remote CID (receiving)
Connection-oriented	Dynamically allocated and fixed	Dynamically allocated and fixed
Connectionless data	0x0002 (fixed)	0x0002 (fixed)
L2CAP Signaling	0x0001 and 0x0005 (fixed)	0x0001 and 0x0005 (fixed)

Table 2.3: Types of Channel Identifiers

## 2.3 OPERATION BETWEEN LAYERS

L2CAP implementations should follow the general architecture described below. L2CAP implementations transfer data between upper layer protocols and the lower layer protocol. This document lists a number of services that should be exported by any L2CAP implementation. Each implementation shall also support a set of signaling commands for use between L2CAP implementations. L2CAP implementations should also be prepared to accept certain types of events from lower layers and generate events to upper layers. How these events are passed between layers is implementation specific.

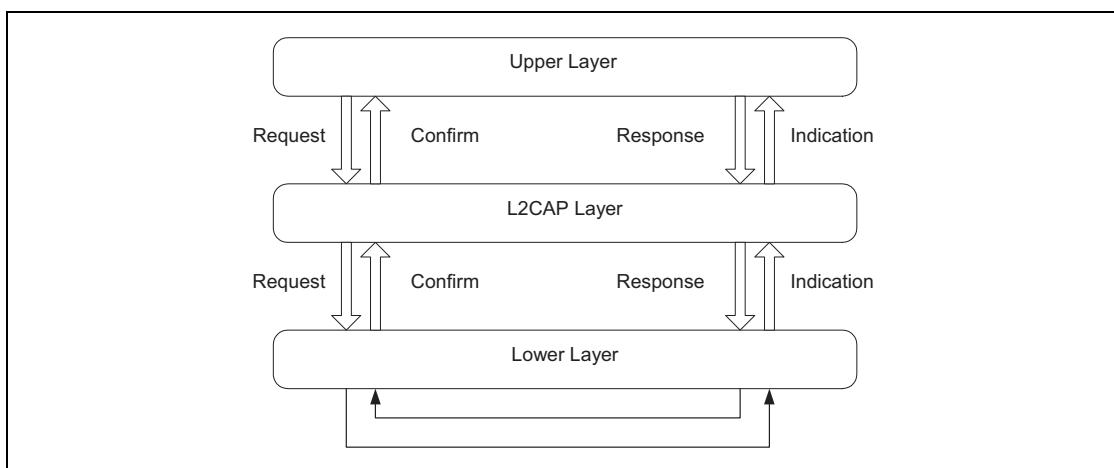


Figure 2.3: L2CAP transaction model

## 2.4 MODES OF OPERATION

L2CAP channels may operate in one of five different modes as selected for each L2CAP channel.

The modes are:

- Basic L2CAP Mode (equivalent to L2CAP specification in Bluetooth v1.1)<sup>1</sup>
- Flow Control Mode
- Retransmission Mode
- Enhanced Retransmission Mode
- Streaming Mode
- LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode

The modes are enabled using the configuration procedure described in [Section 7.1](#). The Basic L2CAP Mode shall be the default mode, which is used when no other mode is agreed. Enhanced Retransmission mode shall be used for all reliable channels created over AMP-U logical links and for ACL-U logical links operating as described in [Section 7.10](#). Enhanced Retransmission mode should be enabled for reliable channels created over ACL-U logical links not operating as described in [Section 7.10](#). Streaming mode shall be used for streaming applications created over AMP-U logical links and ACL-U logical links operating as described in [Section 7.10](#). Streaming mode should be enabled for streaming applications created over ACL-U logical links not operating as described in [Section 7.10](#). Either Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode should be enabled when supported by both L2CAP entities. Flow Control Mode and Retransmission mode shall only be enabled when communicating with L2CAP entities that do not support either Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode.

In Flow Control mode, Retransmission mode, and Enhanced Retransmission mode, PDUs exchanged with a peer entity are numbered and acknowledged. The sequence numbers in the PDUs are used to control buffering, and a TxWindow size is used to limit the required buffer space and/or provide a method for flow control.

In Flow Control Mode no retransmissions take place, but missing PDUs are detected and can be reported as lost.

In Retransmission Mode a timer is used to ensure that all PDUs are delivered to the peer, by retransmitting PDUs as needed. A go-back-n repeat mechanism is used to simplify the protocol and limit the buffering requirements.

Enhanced Retransmission mode is similar to Retransmission mode. It adds the ability to set a POLL bit to solicit a response from a remote L2CAP entity, adds

---

1. Specification of the Bluetooth System v1.1 (Feb 22nd 2001): volume 1, part D.

the SREJ S-frame to improve the efficiency of error recovery and adds an RNR S-frame to replace the R-bit for reporting a local busy condition.

Streaming mode is for real-time isochronous traffic. PDUs are numbered but are not acknowledged. A finite flush timeout is set on the sending side to flush packets that are not sent in a timely manner. On the receiving side if the receive buffers are full when a new PDU is received then a previously received PDU is overwritten by the newly received PDU. Missing PDUs can be detected and reported as lost. TxWindow size is not used in Streaming mode.

**Note:** Although L2CAP Basic mode may be used for L2CAP channels operating over ACL-U logical links, only L2CAP channels which have been configured to use Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode may be moved to operate over an AMP-U logical link. (see [Section 4.16](#)).

LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode is used for LE L2CAP connection oriented channels for flow control using a credit based scheme for L2CAP data (i.e. not signaling packets). This is the only mode that shall be used for LE L2CAP connection oriented channels.

L2CAP channels used for multiplexing layers such as RFCOMM can serve a variety of higher layer protocols. In cases where the local device and remote device have mutual support for an AMP and complementary support for profiles on a multiplexing layer which requires reliability (e.g. RFCOMM), the multiplexing layer should be configured to use Enhanced Retransmission mode to ensure that profiles utilizing the multiplexer are not prevented from being moved to the AMP-U logical link. Similarly, in cases where the local device and remote device have mutual support for an AMP and complementary support for profiles on a multiplexing layer which does not require reliability, the multiplexing layer should be configured to use Streaming mode to ensure that profiles utilizing the multiplexer are not prevented from being moved to the AMP-U logical link.

Care should be taken in selecting the parameters used for Enhanced Retransmission mode and Streaming mode when they are used beneath legacy profile implementations to ensure that performance is not negatively impacted relative to the performance achieved when using the same profile with Basic mode on an ACL-U logical link. When there can never be a mutually supported AMP, nor complementary support for a profile which would benefit from AMP, it may be preferable to configure Basic mode to minimize the risk of negative performance impacts.

## 2.5 MAPPING CHANNELS TO LOGICAL LINKS

L2CAP maps channels to Controller logical links, which in turn run over Controller physical links. All logical links going between a local Controller and remote Controller run over a single physical link. There is one ACL-U logical link per BR/EDR physical link and one LE-U logical link per LE physical link, while there may be multiple AMP-U logical links per AMP physical link.

All Best Effort and Guaranteed channels going over a BR/EDR physical link between two devices shall be mapped to a single ACL-U logical link. All Best Effort channels going over an AMP physical link between two Controllers shall be mapped to a single AMP-U logical link while each Guaranteed channel going between two Controllers shall be mapped to its own AMP-U logical link with one AMP-U logical link per Guaranteed channel. All channels going over an LE physical link between two devices shall be treated as best effort and mapped to a single LE-U logical link.

When a Guaranteed channel is created or moved to a Controller, a corresponding Guaranteed logical link shall be created to carry the channel traffic. Creation of a Guaranteed logical link involves admission control. Admission control is verifying that the guarantee can be achieved without compromising existing guarantees. For an AMP Controller, L2CAP shall tell the controller to create a Guaranteed logical link and admission control shall be performed by the Controller. For a BR/EDR Controller, admission control (creation of a Guaranteed logical link) shall be performed by the L2CAP layer.

### 3 DATA PACKET FORMAT

L2CAP is packet-based but follows a communication model based on *channels*. A channel represents a data flow between L2CAP entities in remote devices. Channels may be connection-oriented or connectionless. Fixed channels other than the L2CAP connectionless channel (CID 0x0002) and the two L2CAP signaling channels (CIDs 0x0001 and 0x0005) are considered connection-oriented. All channels with dynamically assigned CIDs are connection-oriented. All L2CAP layer packet fields shall use Little Endian byte order with the exception of the information payload field. The endian-ness of higher layer protocols encapsulated within L2CAP information payload is protocol-specific.

#### 3.1 CONNECTION-ORIENTED CHANNELS IN BASIC L2CAP MODE

[Figure 3.1 on page 47](#) illustrates the format of the L2CAP PDU used on connection-oriented channels. In basic L2CAP mode, the L2CAP PDU on a connection-oriented channel is also referred to as a "B-frame".

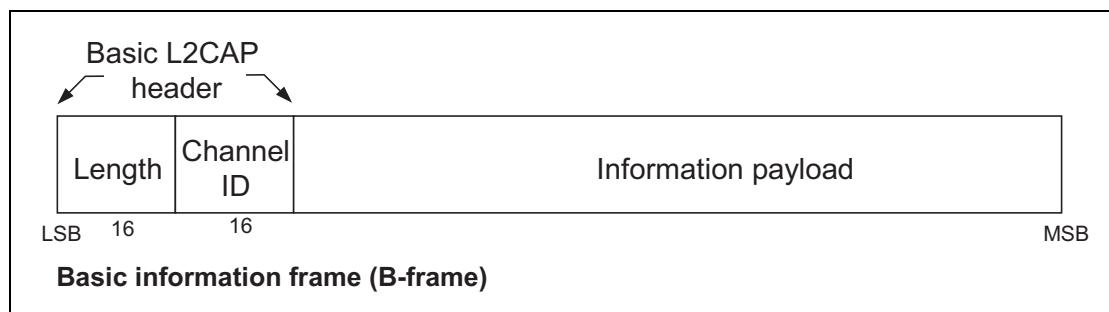


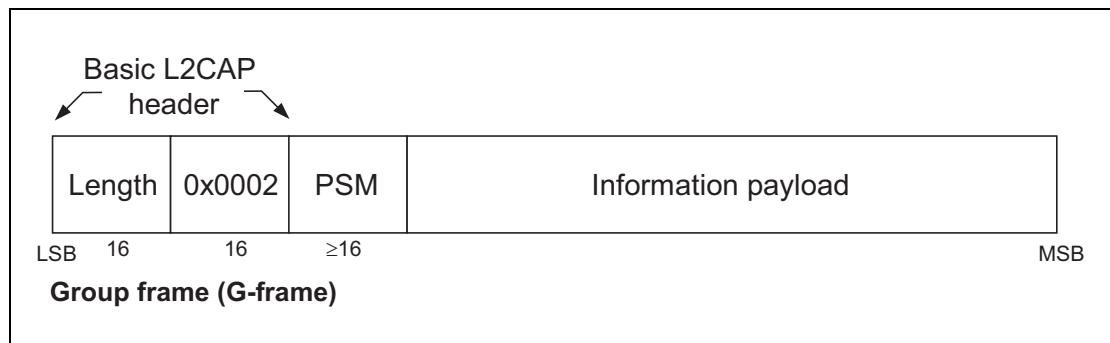
Figure 3.1: L2CAP PDU format in Basic L2CAP mode on connection-oriented channels (field sizes in bits)

The fields shown are:

- *Length*: 2 octets (16 bits)  
Length indicates the size of the information payload in octets, excluding the length of the L2CAP header. The length of an information payload can be up to 65535 octets. The Length field is used for recombination and serves as a simple integrity check of the recombined L2CAP packet on the receiving end.
- *Channel ID*: 2 octets  
The channel ID (CID) identifies the destination channel endpoint of the packet.
- *Information payload*: 0 to 65535 octets  
This contains the payload received from the upper layer protocol (outgoing packet), or delivered to the upper layer protocol (incoming packet). The MTU for channels with dynamically allocated CIDs is determined during channel configuration (see [Section 5.1 on page 89](#)). The minimum supported MTU values for the signaling PDUs are shown in [Table 4.1 on page 59](#).

### 3.2 CONNECTIONLESS DATA CHANNEL IN BASIC L2CAP MODE

[Figure 3.2](#) illustrates the L2CAP PDU format within a connectionless data channel. Here, the L2CAP PDU is also referred to as a "G-frame".



*Figure 3.2: L2CAP PDU format on the Connectionless channel*

The fields shown are:

- *Length: 2 octets*  
Length indicates the size of information payload plus the PSM field in octets.
- *Channel ID: 2 octets*  
Channel ID (0x0002) reserved for connectionless traffic.
- *Protocol/Service Multiplexer (PSM): 2 octets (minimum)*  
For information on the PSM field see [Section 4.2 on page 63](#).
- *Information payload: 0 to 65533 octets*

This parameter contains the payload information to be distributed to all slaves in the piconet for broadcast connectionless traffic, or to a specific remote device for data sent via the L2CAP connectionless channel. Implementations shall support a connectionless MTU ( $MTU_{cnl}$ ) of 48 octets on the connectionless channel. Devices may also explicitly change to a larger or smaller connectionless MTU ( $MTU_{cnl}$ ).

Note: the maximum size of the Information payload field decreases accordingly if the PSM field is extended beyond the two octet minimum.

### 3.3 CONNECTION-ORIENTED CHANNEL IN RETRANSMISSION/FLOW CONTROL/STREAMING MODES

To support flow control, retransmissions, and streaming, L2CAP PDU types with protocol elements in addition to the Basic L2CAP header are defined. The information frames (I-frames) are used for information transfer between L2CAP entities. The supervisory frames (S-frames) are used to acknowledge I-frames and request retransmission of I-frames.

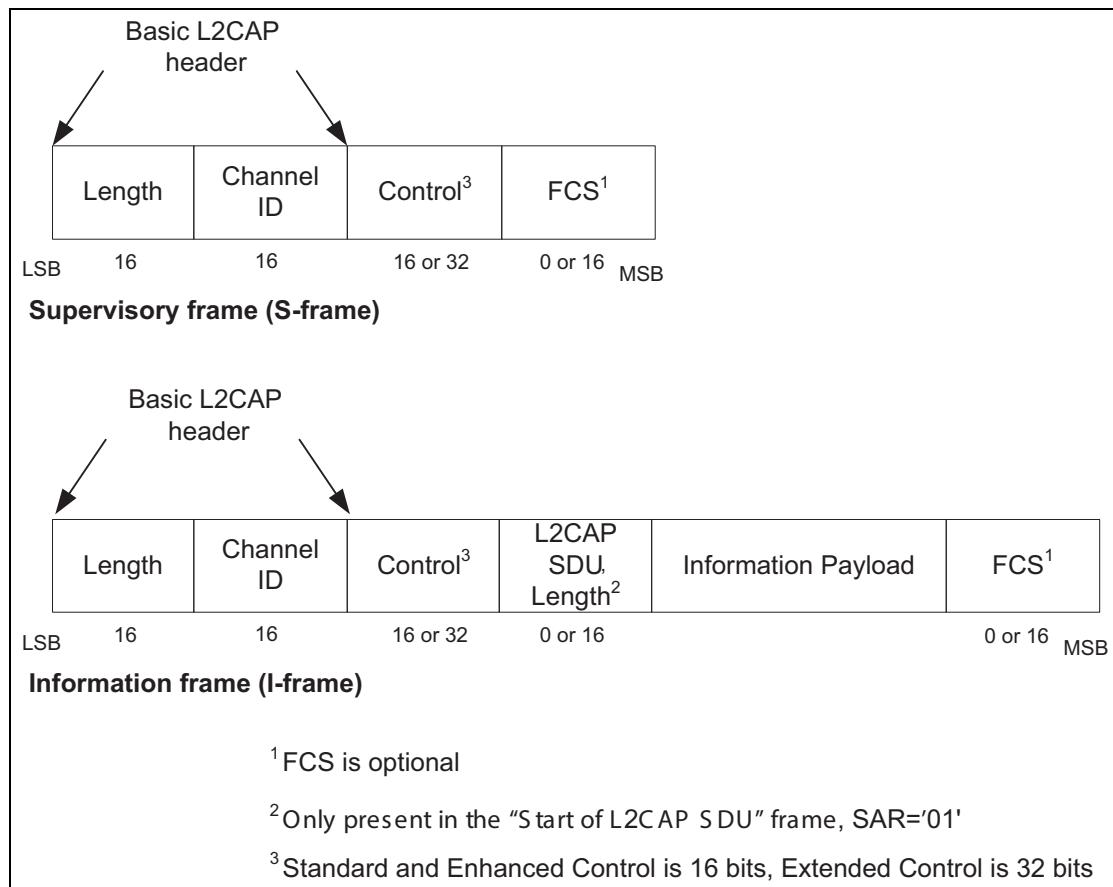


Figure 3.3: L2CAP PDU formats in Flow Control and Retransmission Modes

### 3.3.1 L2CAP header fields

- *Length: 2 octets*

The first two octets in the L2CAP PDU contain the length of the entire L2CAP PDU in octets, excluding the Length and CID field.

For I-frames and S-frames, the Length field therefore includes the octet lengths of the Control, L2CAP SDU Length (when present), Information octets and frame check sequence (FCS) (when present) fields.

The maximum number of Information octets in one I-frame is based on which fields are present and the type of the Control Field. The maximum number of Information octets in an I-frame with a Standard Control field is as follows:

L2CAP SDU Length present and FCS present	65529 octets
L2CAP SDU Length present and FCS not present	65531 octets
L2CAP SDU Length not present and FCS present	65531 octets
L2CAP SDU Length not present and FCS not present	65533 octets

The maximum number of Information octets in an I-frame with an Extended Control field is as follows:

L2CAP SDU Length present and FCS present	65527 octets
L2CAP SDU Length present and FCS not present	65529 octets
L2CAP SDU Length not present and FCS present	65529 octets
L2CAP SDU Length not present and FCS not present	65531 octets

- *Channel ID: 2 octets*

This field contains the Channel Identification (CID).

### 3.3.2 Control field (2 or 4 octets)

The Control Field identifies the type of frame. There are three different Control Field formats: the Standard Control Field, the Enhanced Control Field, and the Extended Control Field. The Standard Control Field shall be used for Retransmission mode and Flow Control mode. The Enhanced Control Field shall be used for Enhanced Retransmission mode and Streaming mode. The Extended Control Field may be used for Enhanced Retransmission mode and Streaming mode. The Control Field will contain sequence numbers where applicable. Its coding is shown in [Table 3.1 on page 51](#), [Table 3.2 on page 52](#), and [Table 3.3 on page 52](#). There are two different frame types, Information frame types and Supervisory frame types. Information and Supervisory frames types are distinguished by the least significant bit in the Control Field, as shown in [Table 3.1](#), [Table 3.2 on page 52](#), and [Table 3.3 on page 52](#).

- *Information frame format (I-frame)*

The I-frames are used to transfer information between L2CAP entities. Each I-frame has a TxSeq(Send sequence number), ReqSeq(Receive sequence number) which may or may not acknowledge additional I-frames received by the data link layer entity. Each I-frame with a Standard Control field has a retransmission bit (R bit) that affects whether I-frames are retransmitted.

Each I-frame with an Enhanced Control Field or an Extended Control Field has an F-bit that is used in Poll/Final bit functions.

The SAR field in the I-frame is used for segmentation and reassembly control. The L2CAP SDU Length field specifies the length of an SDU, including the aggregate length across all segments if segmented.

- *Supervisory frame format (S-frame)*

S-frames are used to acknowledge I-frames and request retransmission of I-frames. Each S-frame has an ReqSeq sequence number which may acknowledge additional I-frames received by the data link layer entity. Each S-frame with a Standard Control Field has a retransmission bit (R bit) that affects whether I-frames are retransmitted. Each S-frame with an Enhanced Control field or an Extended Control Field has a Poll bit (P-bit) and a Final bit (F-bit) and does not have an R-bit.

Defined types of S-frames are RR (Receiver Ready), REJ (Reject), RNR (Receiver Not Ready) and SREJ (Selective Reject).

Frame type	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
I	SAR		ReqSeq						R	TxSeq						0
S	X	X	ReqSeq						R	X	X	X	S	0	1	

X denotes reserved bits, which shall be set to 0.

*Table 3.1: Standard Control Field formats*

*Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification*

Frame type	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
I	SAR	ReqSeq						F	TxSeq						0	
S	X	X	ReqSeq						F	X	X	P	S	0	1	

X denotes reserved bits, which shall be set to 0.

Table 3.2: Enhanced Control Field formats

Frame type	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
I	ReqSeq						TxSeq						F	0		
	TxSeq						SAR									
S	ReqSeq						X X X X X P						F	1		
													S			

X denotes reserved bits, which shall be set to 0.

Table 3.3: Extended Control Field formats

- *Send Sequence Number - TxSeq (6 bits or 14 bits)*  
The send sequence number is used to number each I-frame, to enable sequencing and retransmission.
- *Receive Sequence Number - ReqSeq (6 bits or 14 bits)*  
The receive sequence number is used by the receiver side to acknowledge I-frames, and in the REJ and SREJ frames to request the retransmission of an I-frame with a specific send sequence number.
- *Retransmission Disable Bit - R (1 bit)*  
The Retransmission Disable bit is used to implement Flow Control. The receiver sets the bit when its internal receive buffer is full, this happens when one or more I-frames have been received but the SDU reassembly function has not yet pulled all the frames received. When the sender receives a frame with the Retransmission Disable bit set it shall disable the RetransmissionTimer, this causes the sender to stop retransmitting I-frames.

R=0: Normal operation. Sender uses the RetransmissionTimer to control retransmission of I-frames. Sender does not use the MonitorTimer.

R=1: Receiver side requests sender to postpone retransmission of I-frames. Sender monitors signaling with the MonitorTimer. Sender does not use the RetransmissionTimer.

The functions of ReqSeq and R are independent.

- *Segmentation and Reassembly - SAR (2 bits)*

The SAR bits define whether an L2CAP SDU is segmented. For segmented SDUs, the SAR bits also define which part of an SDU is in this I-frame, thus allowing one L2CAP SDU to span several I-frames.

An I-frame with SAR="Start of L2CAP SDU" also contains a length indicator, specifying the number of information octets in the total L2CAP SDU. The encoding of the SAR bits is shown in [Table 3.4](#).

00	Unsegmented L2CAP SDU
01	Start of L2CAP SDU
10	End of L2CAP SDU
11	Continuation of L2CAP SDU

*Table 3.4: SAR control element format*

- *Supervisory function - S (2 bits)*

The S-bits mark the type of S-frame. There are four types defined: RR (Receiver Ready), REJ (Reject), RNR (Receiver Not Ready) and SREJ (Selective Reject). The encoding is shown in [Table 3.5](#).

00	RR - Receiver Ready
01	REJ - Reject
10	RNR - Receiver Not Ready
11	SREJ - Select Reject

*Table 3.5: S control element format: type of S-frame*

- *Poll - P (1 bit)*

The P-bit is set to 1 to solicit a response from the receiver. The receiver shall respond immediately with a frame with the F-bit set to 1.

- *Final - F (1 bit)*

The F-bit is set to 1 in response to an S-frame with the P bit set to 1.

### 3.3.3 L2CAP SDU Length Field (2 octets)

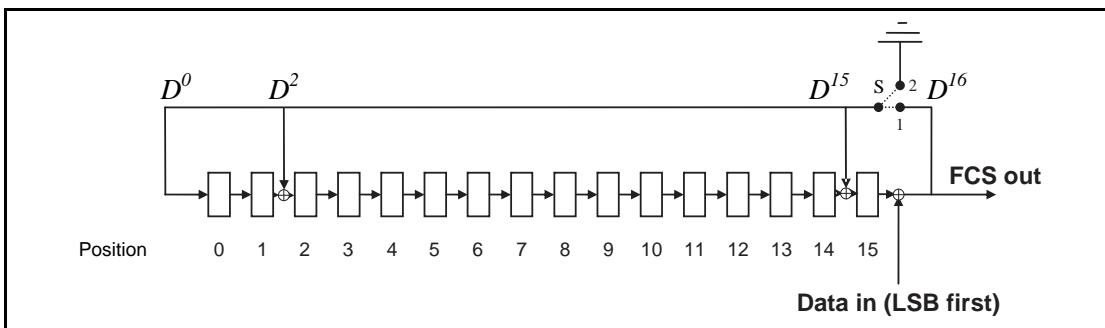
When a SDU spans more than one I-frame, the first I-frame in the sequence shall be identified by SAR=01="Start of L2CAP SDU". The L2CAP SDU Length field shall specify the total number of octets in the SDU. The L2CAP SDU Length field shall be present in I-frames with SAR=01 (Start of L2CAP SDU), and shall not be used in any other I-frames. When the SDU is unsegmented (SAR=00), L2CAP SDU Length field is not needed and shall not be present.

### 3.3.4 Information Payload Field

The information payload field consists of an integral number of octets. The maximum number of octets in this field is the same as the negotiated value of the MPS configuration parameter. The maximum number of octets in this field is also limited by the range of the Basic L2CAP header length field. This ranges from 65533 octets for I-frames with a Standard or Enhanced Control Field, no SDU length field, and no FCS field to 65527 octets for I-frames with an Enhanced Control Field, an SDU length field, and FCS field. Thus, even if an MPS of 65533 has been negotiated, the range of the Basic L2CAP header length field will restrict the number of octets in this field. For example, when an Enhanced Control Field, an SDU length field, and FCS field are present the number of octets in this field is restricted to 65529.

### 3.3.5 Frame Check Sequence (2 octets)

The Frame Check Sequence (FCS) is 2 octets. The FCS is constructed using the generator polynomial  $g(D) = D^{16} + D^{15} + D^2 + 1$  (see [Figure 3.4](#)). The 16 bit LFSR is initially loaded with the value 0x0000, as depicted in [Figure 3.5](#). The switch S is set in position 1 while data is shifted in, LSB first for each octet. After the last bit has entered the LFSR, the switch is set in position 2, and the register contents are transmitted from right to left (i.e. starting with position 15, then position 14, etc.). The FCS covers the Basic L2CAP header, Control, L2CAP-SDU length and Information payload fields, if present, as shown in [Figure 3.3](#) on page 49.



*Figure 3.4: The LFSR circuit generating the FCS*

Position	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
LFSR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

*Figure 3.5: Initial state of the FCS generating circuit*

Examples of FCS calculation,  $g(D) = D^{16} + D^{15} + D^2 + 1$ :

**1. I Frame**

Length = 14

Control = 0x0002 (SAR=0, ReqSeq=0, R=0, TxSeq=1)

Information Payload = 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 (10 octets, hexadecimal notation)

==> FCS = 0x6138

==> Data to Send = 0E 00 40 00 02 00 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 38 61 (hexadecimal notation)

**2. RR Frame**

Length = 4

Control = 0x0101 (ReqSeq=1, R=0, S=0)

==> FCS = 0x14D4

==> Data to Send = 04 00 40 00 01 01 D4 14 (hexadecimal notation)

**3.3.6 Invalid Frame Detection**

For Retransmission mode and Flow Control mode, a received PDU shall be regarded as invalid, if one of the following conditions occurs:

1. Contains an unknown CID.
2. Contains an FCS error.
3. Contains a length greater than the maximum PDU payload size (MPS).
4. I-frame that has fewer than 8 octets.
5. I-frame with SAR=01 (Start of L2CAP SDU) that has fewer than 10 octets.
6. I-frame with SAR bits that do not correspond to a normal sequence of either unsegmented or start, continuation, end for the given CID.
7. S-frame where the length field is not equal to 4.

These error conditions may be used for error reporting.

**3.3.7 Invalid Frame Detection Algorithm**

For Enhanced Retransmission mode and Streaming mode the following algorithm shall be used for received PDUs. It may be used for Retransmission mode and Flow Control mode:

1. Check the CID. If the PDU contains an unknown CID then it shall be ignored.
2. Check the FCS. If the PDU contains an FCS error then it shall be ignored. If the channel is configured to use "No FCS" then the PDU is considered to have a good FCS (no FCS error).

3. Check the following conditions. If one of the conditions occurs the channel shall be closed or in the case of fixed channels the ACL shall be disconnected.
  - a) PDU contains a length greater than the maximum PDU payload size (MPS)
  - b) I-frame that has fewer than the required number of octets. If the channel is configured to use a Standard or Enhanced Control Field then the required number of octets is 6 if "No FCS" is configured; otherwise, it is 8. If the channel is configured to use the Extended Control Field then the required number of octets is 8 if "No FCS" is configured; otherwise, it is 10.
  - c) S-frame where the length field is invalid. If the channel is configured to use a Standard or Enhanced Control Field then the length field shall be 2 if "No FCS" is configured; otherwise, the length field shall be 4. If the channel is configured to use the Extended Control Field then the length field shall be 4 if "No FCS" is configured; otherwise, the length field shall be 6.
4. Check the SAR bits. The SAR check is performed after the frame has been successfully received in the correct sequence. The PDU is invalid if one of the following conditions occurs:
  - a) I-frame with SAR=01 (Start of L2CAP SDU) that has fewer than the required number of octets. If the channel is configured to use a Standard or Enhanced Control field then the required number of octets is 8 if "No FCS" is configured; otherwise, the required number of octets is 10. If the channel is configured to use an Extended Control field then the required number of octets is 10 if "No FCS" is configured; otherwise, the required number of octets is 12.
  - b) I-frame with SAR bits that do not correspond to a normal sequence of either unsegmented or start, continuation, end for the given CID.
  - c) I-frame with SAR= 01 (Start of L2CAP SDU) where the value in the L2CAP SDU length field exceeds the configured MTU.
5. If the I-frame has been received in the correct sequence and is invalid as described in 4 then the channel shall be closed or in the case of fixed channels the ACL shall be disconnected. For Streaming mode and Flow Control mode if one or more I-frames are missing from a sequence of I-frames using SAR bits of start, continuation and end then received I-frames in the sequence may be ignored. For Flow Control mode and Streaming mode I-frames received out of sequence with SAR bits of unsegmented may be accepted.

If the algorithm is used for Retransmission mode or Flow control mode then it shall be used instead of Invalid Frame detection described in [Section 3.3.6](#).

These error conditions may be used for error reporting.

### 3.4 CONNECTION-ORIENTED CHANNELS IN LE CREDIT BASED FLOW CONTROL MODE

To support LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode, L2CAP PDU type with protocol elements in addition to the Basic L2CAP header are defined. In LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode, the L2CAP PDU on a connection-oriented channel is an LE information frame (LE-frame).

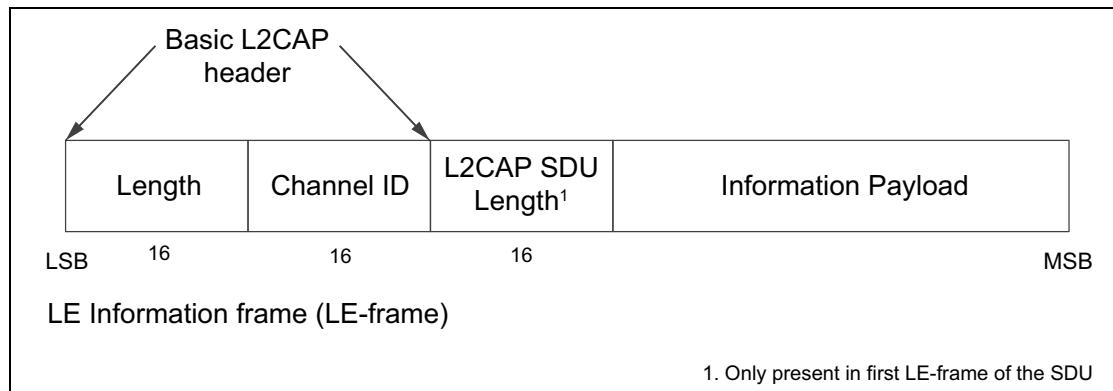


Figure 3.6: L2CAP PDU format in LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode

#### 3.4.1 L2CAP Header Fields

- *Length: 2 octets*

The first two octets in the L2CAP PDU contain the length of the entire L2CAP PDU in octets, excluding the Length and CID fields.

For LE-frames, the Length field includes the octet lengths of the L2CAP SDU Length when present and Information Payload fields.

- *Channel ID: 2 octets*

The channel ID (CID) identifies the destination channel endpoint of the packet.

#### 3.4.2 L2CAP SDU Length Field (2 octets)

The first LE-frame of the SDU shall contain the L2CAP SDU Length field that shall specify the total number of octets in the SDU. All subsequent LE-frames that are part of the same SDU shall not contain the L2CAP SDU Length field.

#### 3.4.3 Information Payload Field

The information payload field consists of an integral number of octets. The maximum number of octets in this field is the same as the peer's MPS. The maximum number of octets in this field is also limited by the range of the Basic L2CAP header length field, of 65533 octets.

The number of octets contained in the first LE-frame information payload of the SDU is equal to the L2CAP header length field minus 2 octets. All subsequent

LE-frames of the same SDU contain the number of octets in the information payload equal to the L2CAP header length field.

If the SDU length field value exceeds the receiver's MTU, the receiver shall disconnect the channel. If the payload length of any LE-frame exceeds the receiver's MPS, the receiver shall disconnect the channel. If the sum of the payload lengths for the LE-frames exceeds the specified SDU length, the receiver shall disconnect the channel.

## 4 SIGNALING PACKET FORMATS

This section describes the signaling commands passed between two L2CAP entities on peer devices. All signaling commands are sent over a signaling channel. The signaling channel for managing channels over ACL-U logical links shall use CID 0x0001 and the signaling channel for managing channels over LE-U logical links shall use CID 0x0005. Signaling channels are available as soon as the lower layer logical transport is set up and L2CAP traffic is enabled. [Figure 4.1 on page 59](#) illustrates the general format of L2CAP PDUs containing signaling commands (C-frames). Multiple commands may be sent in a single C-frame over Fixed Channel CID 0x0001 while only one command per C-frame shall be sent over Fixed Channel CID 0x0005. Commands take the form of Requests and Responses. All L2CAP implementations shall support the reception of C-frames with a payload length that does not exceed the signaling MTU. The minimum supported payload length for the C-frame ( $MTU_{sig}$ ) is defined in [Table 4.1 on page 59](#). L2CAP implementations should not use C-frames that exceed the  $MTU_{sig}$  of the peer device. If a device receives a C-frame that exceeds its  $MTU_{sig}$  then it shall send a Command Reject containing the supported  $MTU_{sig}$ . Implementations shall be able to handle the reception of multiple commands in an L2CAP packet sent over Fixed Channel CID 0x0001.

Logical Link	Minimum Supported Payload Length for the C-frame ( $MTU_{sig}$ )
ACL-U not supporting Extended Flow Specification	48 octets
ACL-U supporting the Extended Flow Specification feature	672 octets
LE-U	23 octets

Table 4.1: Minimum Signaling MTU

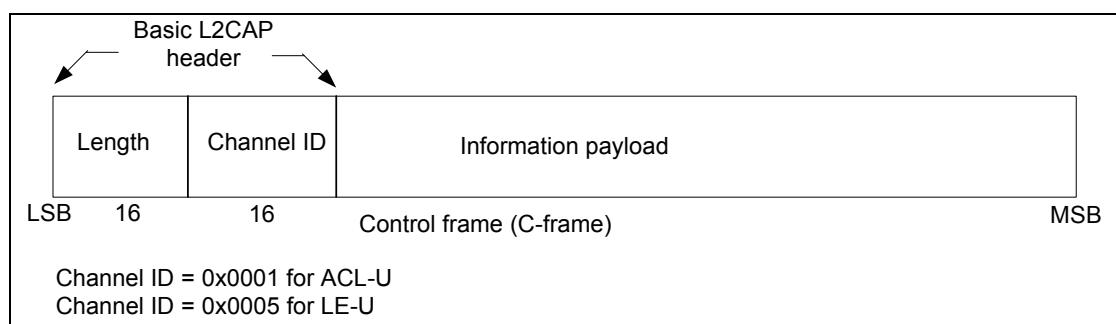


Figure 4.1: L2CAP PDU format on a signaling channel

[Figure 4.2](#) displays the general format of all signaling commands.

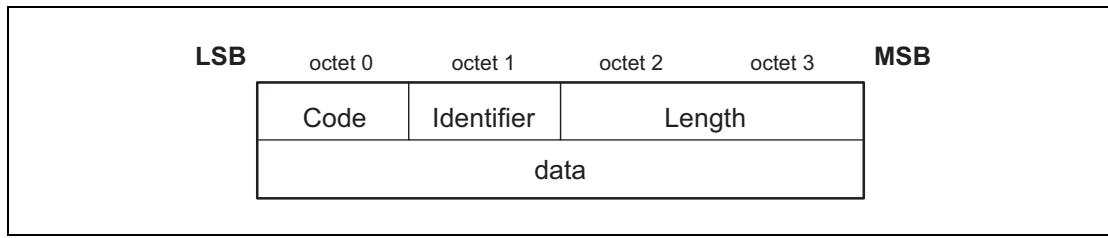


Figure 4.2: Command format

The fields shown are:

- **Code (1 octet)**

The Code field is one octet long and identifies the type of command. When a packet is received with a Code field that is unknown or disallowed on the signaling channel it is received on, a Command Reject packet (defined in [Section 4.1 on page 62](#)) is sent in response.

[Table 4.2 on page 60](#) lists the codes defined by this document. All codes are specified with the most significant bit in the left-most position.

Code	Description	CIDs on which Code is Allowed
0x00	Reserved	Any
0x01	Command reject	0x0001 and 0x0005
0x02	Connection request	0x0001
0x03	Connection response	0x0001
0x04	Configure request	0x0001
0x05	Configure response	0x0001
0x06	Disconnection request	0x0001 and 0x0005
0x07	Disconnection response	0x0001 and 0x0005
0x08	Echo request	0x0001
0x09	Echo response	0x0001
0x0A	Information request	0x0001
0x0B	Information response	0x0001
0x0C	Create Channel request	0x0001
0x0D	Create Channel response	0x0001
0x0E	Move Channel request	0x0001
0x0F	Move Channel response	0x0001
0x10	Move Channel Confirmation	0x0001
0x11	Move Channel Confirmation response	0x0001

Table 4.2: Signaling Command Codes

Code	Description	CIDs on which Code is Allowed
0x12	Connection Parameter Update request	0x0005
0x13	Connection Parameter Update response	0x0005
0x14	LE Credit Based Connection request	0x0005
0x15	LE Credit Based Connection response	0x0005
0x16	LE Flow Control Credit	0x0005
0x17 - 0xFF	Reserved	Any

Table 4.2: Signaling Command Codes (Continued)

- *Identifier (1 octet)*

The Identifier field is one octet long and matches responses with requests. The requesting device sets this field and the responding device uses the same value in its response. Within each signalling channel a different Identifier shall be used for each successive command. Following the original transmission of an Identifier in a command, the Identifier may be recycled if all other Identifiers have subsequently been used.

RTX and ERTX timers are used to determine when the remote end point is not responding to signaling requests. On the expiration of a RTX or ERTX timer, the same identifier shall be used if a duplicate Request is re-sent as stated in [Section 6.1.7 on page 121](#).

A device receiving a duplicate request on a particular signalling channel should reply with a duplicate response on the same signalling channel. A command response with an invalid identifier is silently discarded. Signaling identifier 0x00 is an illegal identifier and shall never be used in any command.

- *Length (2 octets)*

The Length field is two octets long and indicates the size in octets of the data field of the command only, i.e., it does not cover the Code, Identifier, and Length fields.

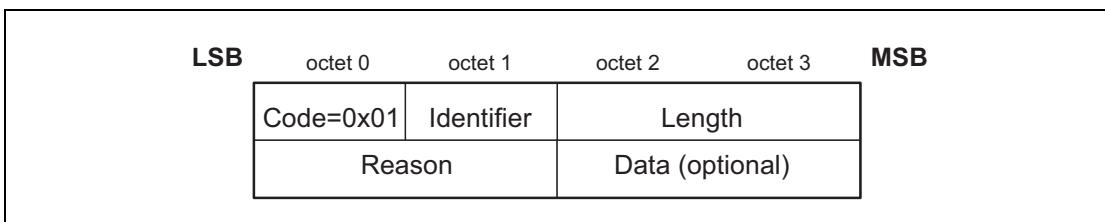
- *Data (0 or more octets)*

The Data field is variable in length. The Code field determines the format of the Data field. The length field determines the length of the data field.

## 4.1 COMMAND REJECT (CODE 0x01)

A Command Reject packet shall be sent in response to a command packet with an unknown command code or when sending the corresponding response is inappropriate. [Figure 4.3 on page 62](#) displays the format of the packet. The identifier shall match the identifier of the command packet being rejected. Implementations shall always send these packets in response to unidentified signaling packets. Command Reject packets should not be sent in response to an identified Response packet.

When multiple commands are included in an L2CAP packet and the packet exceeds the signaling MTU ( $MTU_{sig}$ ) of the receiver, a single Command Reject packet shall be sent in response. The identifier shall match the first Request command in the L2CAP packet. If only Responses are recognized, the packet shall be silently discarded.



*Figure 4.3: Command Reject Packet*

[Figure 4.3](#) shows the format of the Command Reject packet. The data fields are:

- *Reason (2 octets)*

The Reason field describes why the Request packet was rejected, and is set to one of the Reason codes in [Table 4.3](#).

Reason value	Description
0x0000	Command not understood
0x0001	Signaling MTU exceeded
0x0002	Invalid CID in request
Other	Reserved

*Table 4.3: Reason Code Descriptions*

- *Data (0 or more octets)*

The length and content of the Data field depends on the Reason code. If the Reason code is 0x0000, “Command not understood”, no Data field is used. If the Reason code is 0x0001, “Signaling MTU Exceeded”, the 2-octet Data field represents the maximum signaling MTU the sender of this packet can accept.

If a command refers to an invalid channel then the Reason code 0x0002 will be returned. Typically a channel is invalid because it does not exist. The data

field shall be 4 octets containing the local (first) and remote (second) channel endpoints (relative to the sender of the Command Reject) of the disputed channel. The remote endpoint is the source CID from the rejected command. The local endpoint is the destination CID from the rejected command. If the rejected command contains only one of the channel endpoints, the other one shall be replaced by the null CID 0x0000.

Reason value	Data Length	Data value
0x0000	0 octets	N/A
0x0001	2 octets	Actual MTU <sub>sig</sub>
0x0002	4 octets	Requested CID

Table 4.4: Reason Data values

## 4.2 CONNECTION REQUEST (CODE 0x02)

Connection request packets are sent to create an L2CAP channel between two devices. The L2CAP channel shall be established before configuration begins. [Figure 4.4](#) illustrates a Connection Request packet.

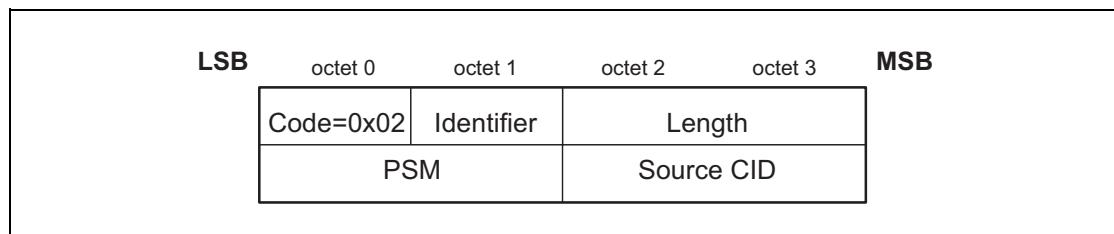


Figure 4.4: Connection Request Packet

The data fields are:

- *Protocol/Service Multiplexer - PSM (2 octets (minimum))*

The PSM field is at least two octets in length. The structure of the PSM field is based on the ISO 3309 extension mechanism for address fields. All PSM values shall be ODD, that is, the least significant bit of the least significant octet must be '1'. Also, all PSM values shall have the least significant bit of the most significant octet equal to '0'. This allows the PSM field to be extended beyond 16 bits. PSM values are separated into two ranges. Valid values in the first range are assigned by the Bluetooth SIG and indicate protocols. The second range of values are dynamically allocated and used in conjunction with the Service Discovery Protocol (SDP). The dynamically assigned values may be used to support multiple implementations of a particular protocol.

PSM values are defined in the [Assigned Numbers](#) document.

Range	Type	Server Usage	Client Usage
0x0001-0x0EFF (Note <sup>1</sup> )	Fixed, SIG assigned	PSM is fixed for all implementations.	PS may be obtained via SDP or may be assumed for a fixed service. Protocol used is indicated by the PSM as defined in the Assigned Numbers page.
>0x1000	Dynamic	PSM may be fixed for a given implementation or may be assigned at the time the service is registered in SDP.	PSM shall be obtained via SDP upon every reconnection. PSM for one direction will typically be different from the other direction.

1. PSMs shall be odd and the least significant bit of the most significant byte shall be zero, hence the following ranges do not contain valid PSMs: 0x0100-0x01FF, 0x0300-0x03FF, 0x0500-0x05FF, 0x0700-0x07FF, 0x0900-0x09FF, 0x0B00-0x0BFF, 0x0D00-0x0DFF, 0xF00-0xFFFF. All even values are also not valid as PSMs.

- **Source CID - SCID (2 octets)**

The source CID is two octets in length and represents a channel endpoint on the device sending the request. Once the channel has been configured, data packets flowing to the sender of the request shall be sent to this CID. Thus, the Source CID represents the channel endpoint on the device sending the request and receiving the response.

### 4.3 CONNECTION RESPONSE (CODE 0x03)

When a device receives a Connection Request packet, it shall send a Connection Response packet. The format of the connection response packet is shown in [Figure 4.5](#).

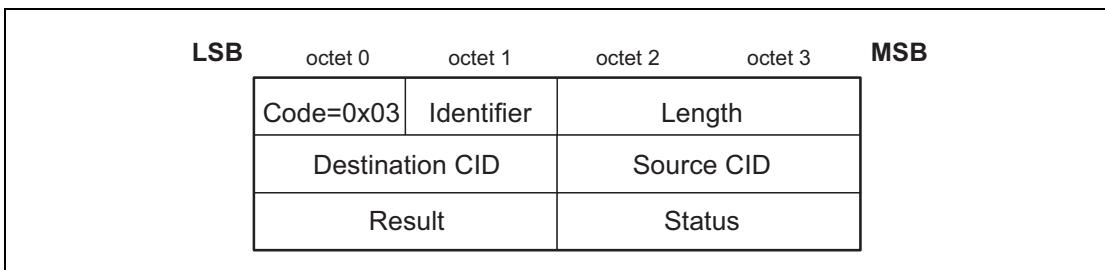


Figure 4.5: Connection Response Packet

The data fields are:

- **Destination Channel Identifier - DCID (2 octets)**

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device sending this Response packet. Thus, the Destination CID represents the channel endpoint on the device receiving the request and sending the response.

- *Source Channel Identifier - SCID (2 octets)*

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device receiving this Response packet. This is copied from the SCID field of the connection request packet.

- *Result (2 octets)*

The result field indicates the outcome of the connection request. The result value of 0x0000 indicates success while a non-zero value indicates the connection request failed or is pending. A logical channel is established on the receipt of a successful result. [Table 4.5 on page 65](#) defines values for this field. The DCID and SCID fields shall be ignored when the result field indicates the connection was refused.

Value	Description
0x0000	Connection successful.
0x0001	Connection pending
0x0002	Connection refused – PSM not supported.
0x0003	Connection refused – security block.
0x0004	Connection refused – no resources available.
Other	Reserved.

*Table 4.5: Result values*

- *Status (2 octets)*

Only defined for Result = Pending. Indicates the status of the connection. The status is set to one of the values shown in [Table 4.6 on page 65](#).

Value	Description
0x0000	No further information available
0x0001	Authentication pending
0x0002	Authorization pending
Other	Reserved

*Table 4.6: Status values*

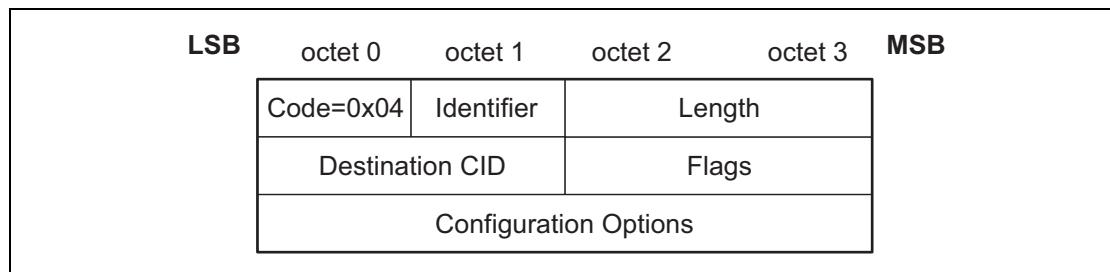
## 4.4 CONFIGURATION REQUEST (CODE 0x04)

Configuration Request packets are sent to establish an initial logical link transmission contract between two L2CAP entities and also to re-negotiate this contract whenever appropriate. The contract consists of a set of configuration parameter options defined in [Section 5 on page 89](#). All parameter options have default values and can have previously agreed values which are values that were accepted in a previous configuration process or in a previous step in the current configuration process. The only parameters that should be included in the Configuration Request packet are those that require different values than the default or previously agreed values.

If no parameters need to be negotiated or specified then no options shall be inserted and the continuation flag (C) shall be set to zero. Any missing configuration parameters are assumed to have their most recently explicitly or implicitly accepted values. Even if all default values are acceptable, a Configuration Request packet with no options shall be sent. Implicitly accepted values are default values for the configuration parameters that have not been explicitly negotiated for the specific channel under configuration.

See [Section 7.1 on page 130](#) for details of the configuration procedure.

[Figure 4.6](#) defines the format of the Configuration Request packet.



*Figure 4.6: Configuration Request Packet*

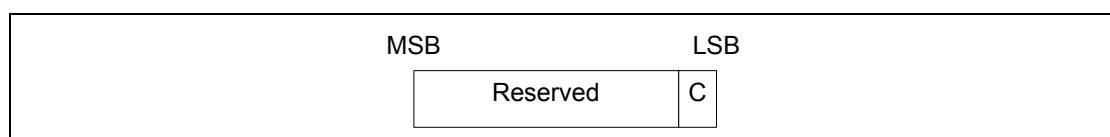
The data fields are:

- *Destination CID - DCID (2 octets)*

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device receiving this Request packet.

- *Flags (2 octets)*

[Figure 4.7](#) shows the two-octet Flags field. Note the most significant bit is shown on the left.



*Figure 4.7: Configuration Request Flags field format*

Only one flag is defined, the Continuation flag (C).

When both L2CAP entities support the Extended Flow Specification option, the Continuation flag shall not be used and shall be set to zero in all Configuration Request and Response packets.

When all configuration options cannot fit into a Configuration Request with length that does not exceed the receiver's MTU<sub>sig</sub>, the options shall be passed in multiple configuration command packets. If all options fit into the receiver's MTU<sub>sig</sub>, then they shall be sent in a single configuration request with the continuation flag set to zero. Each Configuration Request shall contain an integral number of options - partially formed options shall not be sent in a packet. Each Request shall be tagged with a different Identifier and shall be matched with a Response with the same Identifier.

When used in the Configuration Request, the continuation flag indicates the responder should expect to receive multiple request packets. The responder shall reply to each Configuration Request packet. The responder may reply to each Configuration Request with a Configuration Response containing the same option(s) present in the Request (except for those error conditions more appropriate for a Command Reject), or the responder may reply with a "Success" Configuration Response packet containing no options, delaying those options until the full Request has been received. The Configuration Request packet with the continuation flag cleared shall be treated as the Configuration Request event in the channel state machine.

When used in the Configuration Response, the continuation flag shall be set to one if the flag is set to one in the Request. If the continuation flag is set to one in the Response when the matching Request has the flag set to zero, it indicates the responder has additional options to send to the requestor. In this situation, the requestor shall send null-option Configuration Requests (with continuation flag set to zero) to the responder until the responder replies with a Configuration Response where the continuation flag is set to zero. The Configuration Response packet with the continuation flag set to zero shall be treated as the Configuration Response event in the channel state machine.

The result of the configuration transaction is the union of all the result values. All the result values must succeed for the configuration transaction to succeed.

Other flags are reserved and shall be set to zero. L2CAP implementations shall ignore these bits.

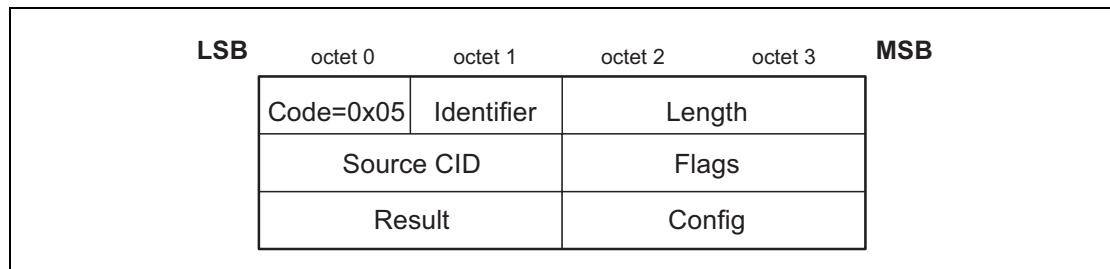
- *Configuration Options*

A list of the parameters and their values to be negotiated shall be provided in the Configuration Options field. These are defined in [Section 5 on page 89](#). A Configuration Request may contain no options (referred to as an empty or null configuration request) and can be used to request a response. For an empty configuration request the length field is set to 0x0004.

## 4.5 CONFIGURATION RESPONSE (CODE 0x05)

Configuration Response packets shall be sent in reply to Configuration Request packets except when the error condition is covered by a Command Reject response. Each configuration parameter value (if any is present) in a Configuration Response reflects an 'adjustment' to a configuration parameter value that has been sent (or, in case of default values, implied) in the corresponding Configuration Request. For example, if a configuration request relates to traffic flowing from device A to device B, the sender of the configuration response may adjust this value for the same traffic flowing from device A to device B, but the response cannot adjust the value in the reverse direction.

The options sent in the Response depend on the value in the Result field. [Figure 4.8 on page 68](#) defines the format of the Configuration Response packet. See also [Section 7.1 on page 130](#) for details of the configuration process.



*Figure 4.8: Configuration Response Packet*

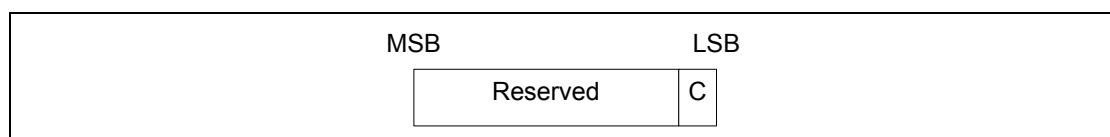
The data fields are:

- *Source CID - SCID (2 octets)*

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device receiving this Response packet. The device receiving the Response shall check that the Identifier field matches the same field in the corresponding configuration request command and the SCID matches its local CID paired with the original DCID.

- *Flags (2 octets)*

[Figure 4.9](#) displays the two-octet Flags field. Note the most significant bit is shown on the left.



*Figure 4.9: Configuration Response Flags field format*

Only one flag is defined, the Continuation flag (C).

When both L2CAP entities support the Extended Flow Specification option, the Continuation flag shall not be used and shall be set to zero in all Configuration Request and Response packets.

More configuration responses will follow when C is set to one. This flag indicates that the parameters included in the response are a partial subset of parameters being sent by the device sending the Response packet.

The other flag bits are reserved and shall be set to zero. L2CAP implementations shall ignore these bits.

- *Result (2 octets)*

The Result field indicates whether or not the Request was acceptable. See [Table 4.7 on page 69](#) for possible result codes.

Result	Description
0x0000	Success
0x0001	Failure – unacceptable parameters
0x0002	Failure – rejected (no reason provided)
0x0003	Failure – unknown options
0x0004	Pending
0x0005	Failure - flow spec rejected
Other	Reserved

*Table 4.7: Configuration Response Result codes*

- *Configuration Options*

This field contains the list of parameters being configured. These are defined in [Section 5 on page 89](#). On a successful result (Result=0x0000) and pending result (Result=0x0004), these parameters contain the return values for any wild card parameter values (see [Section 5.3 on page 92](#)) and “adjustments” to non-negotiated configuration parameter values contained in the request. A response with the result code of 0x0000 (Success) is also referred to as a positive response.

On an unacceptable parameters failure (Result=0x0001) the rejected parameters shall be sent in the response with the values that would have been accepted if sent in the original request. Any missing configuration parameters in the Configuration Request are assumed to have their default value or previously agreed value and they too shall be included in the Configuration Response if they need to be changed. A response with the result code of 0x0001 is also referred to as a negative response.

On an unknown option failure (Result=0x0003), the option(s) that contain an option type field that is not understood by the recipient of the Request shall be included in the Response unless they are hints. Hints are those options in the Request that are skipped if not understood (see [Section 5 on page 89](#)). Hints shall not be included in the Response and shall not be the sole cause for rejecting the Request.

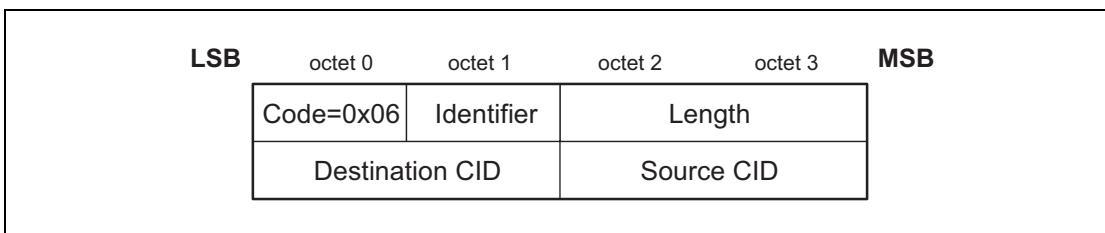
On a flow spec rejected failure (Result=0x0005), an Extended Flow Spec option may be included to reflect the QoS level that would be acceptable (see [Section 7.1.3 on page 132](#)).

The decision on the amount of time (or messages) spent arbitrating the channel parameters before terminating the negotiation is implementation specific.

## 4.6 DISCONNECTION REQUEST (CODE 0x06)

Terminating an L2CAP channel requires that a disconnection request be sent and acknowledged by a disconnection response. [Figure 4.10 on page 70](#) shows a disconnection request. The receiver shall ensure that both source and destination CIDs match before initiating a channel disconnection.

Once a Disconnection Request is issued, all incoming data in transit on this L2CAP channel shall be discarded and any new additional outgoing data shall be discarded. Once a disconnection request for a channel has been received, all data queued to be sent out on that channel shall be discarded.



*Figure 4.10: Disconnection Request Packet*

The data fields are:

- **Destination CID - DCID (2 octets)**

This field specifies the endpoint of the channel to be disconnected on the device receiving this request.

- **Source CID - SCID (2 octets)**

This field specifies the endpoint of the channel to be disconnected on the device sending this request.

The SCID and DCID are relative to the sender of this request and shall match those of the channel to be disconnected. If the DCID is not recognized by the receiver of this message, a CommandReject message with 'invalid CID' result code shall be sent in response. If the receiver finds a DCID match but the SCID fails to find the same match, the request should be silently discarded.

## 4.7 DISCONNECTION RESPONSE (CODE 0x07)

Disconnection responses shall be sent in response to each valid disconnection request.

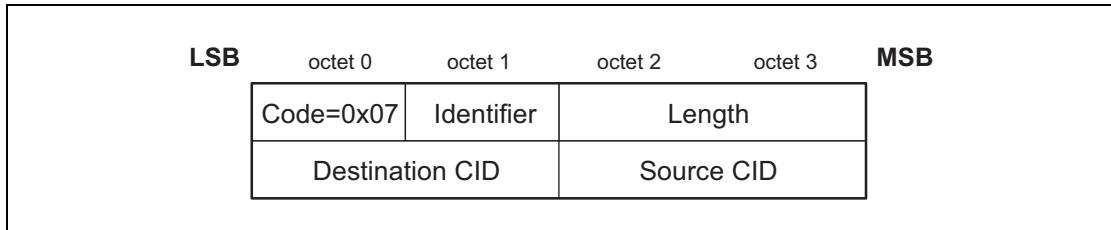


Figure 4.11: Disconnection Response Packet

The data fields are:

- *Destination CID - DCID (2 octets)*  
This field identifies the channel endpoint on the device sending the response.
- *Source CID - SCID (2 octets)*  
This field identifies the channel endpoint on the device receiving the response.  
The DCID and the SCID (which are relative to the sender of the request), and the Identifier fields shall match those of the corresponding disconnection request command. If the CIDs do not match, the response should be silently discarded at the receiver.

## 4.8 ECHO REQUEST (CODE 0x08)

Echo requests are used to request a response from a remote L2CAP entity. These requests may be used for testing the link or for passing vendor specific information using the optional data field. L2CAP entities shall respond to a valid Echo Request packet with an Echo Response packet. The Data field is optional and implementation specific. L2CAP entities should ignore the contents of this field if present.

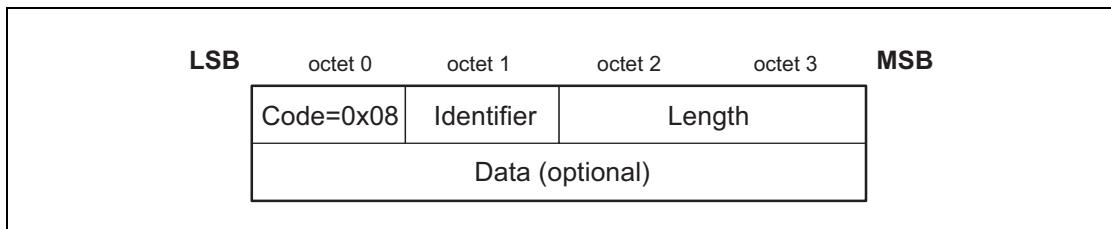


Figure 4.12: Echo Request Packet

## 4.9 ECHO RESPONSE (CODE 0x09)

An Echo response shall be sent upon receiving a valid Echo Request. The identifier in the response shall match the identifier sent in the Request. The optional and implementation specific data field may contain the contents of the data field in the Request, different data, or no data at all.

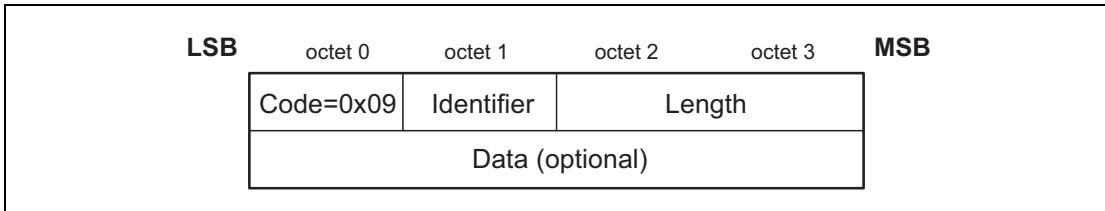


Figure 4.13: Echo Response Packet

## 4.10 INFORMATION REQUEST (CODE 0x0A)

Information requests are used to request implementation specific information from a remote L2CAP entity. L2CAP implementations shall respond to a valid Information Request with an Information Response. It is optional to send Information Requests.

An L2CAP implementation shall only use optional features or attribute ranges for which the remote L2CAP entity has indicated support through an Information Response. Until an Information Response which indicates support for optional features or ranges has been received only mandatory features and ranges shall be used.

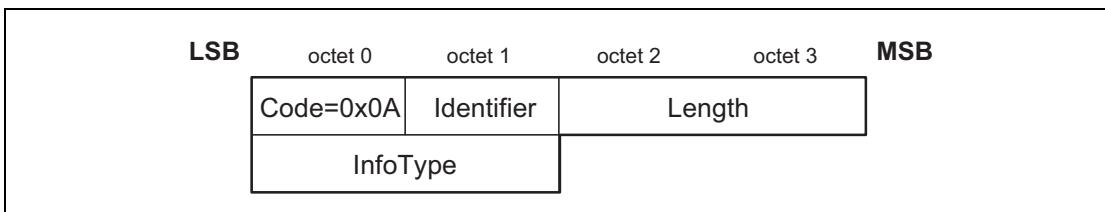


Figure 4.14: Information Request Packet

The data field is:

- *InfoType* (2 octets)

The InfoType defines the type of implementation specific information being requested. See [Section 4.11 on page 73](#) for details on the type of information requested.

Value	Description
0x0001	Connectionless MTU
0x0002	Extended features supported

Table 4.8: InfoType definitions

Value	Description
0x0003	Fixed Channels supported
Other	Reserved

Table 4.8: InfoType definitions

L2CAP entities shall not send an Information Request packet with InfoType 0x0003 over Fixed Channel CID 0x0001 until first verifying that the Fixed Channels bit is set in the Extended feature mask of the remote device. Support for fixed channels is mandatory for devices with BR/EDR/LE or LE Controllers. Information Request and Information Response shall not be used over Fixed Channel CID 0x0005.

## 4.11 INFORMATION RESPONSE (CODE 0x0B)

An information response shall be sent upon receiving a valid Information Request. The identifier in the response shall match the identifier sent in the Request. The data field shall contain the value associated with the InfoType field sent in the Request, or shall be empty if the InfoType is not supported.

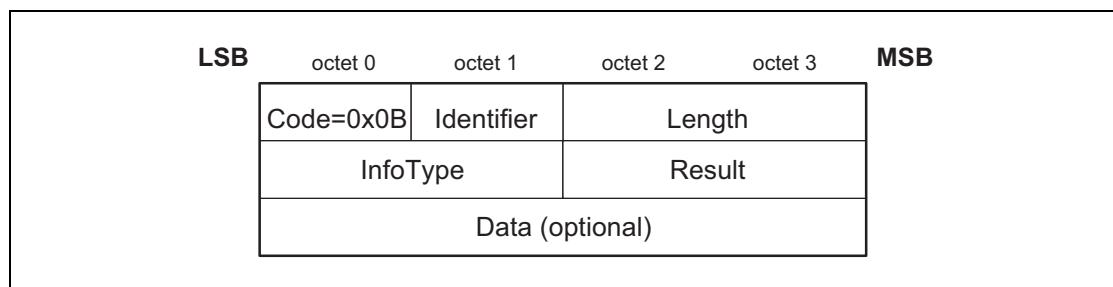


Figure 4.15: Information Response Packet

The data fields are:

- *InfoType* (2 octets)

The InfoType defines the type of implementation specific information that was requested. This value shall be copied from the InfoType field in the Information Request.

- *Result* (2 octets)

The Result contains information about the success of the request. If result is "Success," the data field contains the information as specified in [Table 4.10 on page 74](#). If result is "Not supported," no data shall be returned.

Value	Description
0x0000	Success
0x0001	Not supported

Table 4.9: Information Response Result values

Value	Description
Other	Reserved

Table 4.9: Information Response Result values

- **Data (0 or more octets)**

The contents of the Data field depends on the InfoType.

For InfoType = 0x0001 the data field contains the remote entity's 2-octet acceptable connectionless MTU. The default value is defined in [Section 3.2 on page 48](#).

For InfoType = 0x0002, the data field contains the 4 octet L2CAP extended feature mask. The feature mask refers to the extended features that the L2CAP entity sending the Information Response supports. The feature bits contained in the L2CAP feature mask are specified in [Section 4.12 on page 75](#).

For InfoType = 0x0003, the data field contains an 8 octet bit map that indicates which Fixed L2CAP Channels (i.e., the L2CAP channels that use a CID from 0x0000 to 0x003F) are supported. A list of available fixed channels is provided in [Table 2.1 in Section 2.1](#). A detailed description of this InfoType data field is given in [Section 4.13 on page 76](#).

Note: L2CAP entities of versions prior to version 1.2, receiving an Information Request with InfoType = 0x0002 for an L2CAP feature discovery, return an Information Response with result code "Not supported." L2CAP entities at version 1.2 to 2.1 + EDR that have an all zero extended features mask may return an Information Response with result code "Not supported."

InfoType	Data	Data Length (octets)
0x0001	Connectionless MTU	2
0x0002	Extended feature mask	4
0x0003	Fixed Channels Supported	8

Table 4.10: Information Response Data fields

## 4.12 EXTENDED FEATURE MASK

The features are represented as a bit mask in the Information Response data field (see [Section 4.11 on page 73](#)). For each feature a single bit is specified which shall be set to 1 if the feature is supported and set to 0 otherwise. All unknown, reserved, or unassigned feature bits shall be set to 0.

The feature mask shown in [Table 4.11 on page 75](#) consists of 4 octets (numbered octet 0 ... 3), with bit numbers 0 ... 7 each. Within the Information Response packet data field, bit 0 of octet 0 is aligned leftmost, bit 7 of octet 3 is aligned rightmost.

Note: the L2CAP feature mask was introduced in Bluetooth v1.2 and contains features introduced after Bluetooth v1.1.

No.	Supported feature	Octet	Bit
0	Flow control mode	0	0
1	Retransmission mode	0	1
2	Bi-directional QoS <sup>1</sup>	0	2
3	Enhanced Retransmission Mode	0	3
4	Streaming Mode	0	4
5	FCS Option	0	5
6	Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR	0	6
7	Fixed Channels	0	7
8	Extended Window Size	1	0
9	Unicast Connectionless Data Reception	1	1
31	Reserved for feature mask extension	3	7

*Table 4.11: Extended feature mask*

1. Peer side supports upper layer control of the Link Manager's Bi-directional QoS, see [Section 5.3 on page 92](#) for more details.

## 4.13 FIXED CHANNELS SUPPORTED

Each Fixed Channel is represented by a single bit in an 8 octet bit mask. The bit associated with a channel shall be set to 1 if the L2CAP entity supports signaling on that channel. The L2CAP signaling channel is mandatory and therefore the bit associated with that channel shall be set to 1. [Table 4.12](#) shows the format of the bit mask.

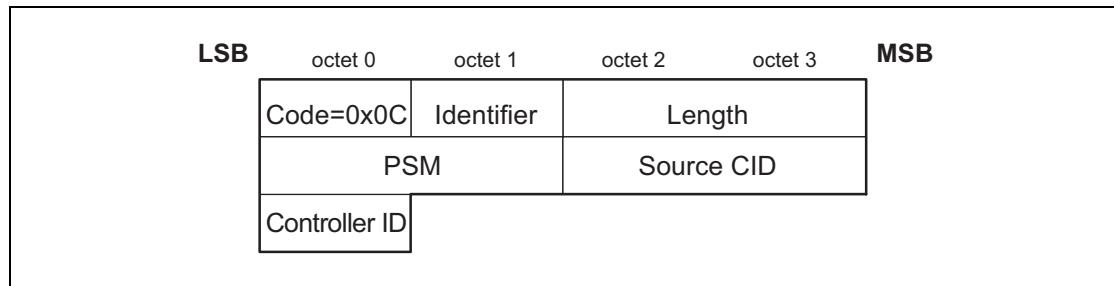
CID	Fixed Channel	Value	Octet	Bit
0x0000	Null identifier	Shall be set to 0	0	0
0x0001	L2CAP Signaling channel	Shall be set to 1	0	1
0x0002	Connectionless reception	0 – if not supported 1 – if supported	0	2
0x0003	AMP Manager Protocol Channel	0 – if not supported 1 – if supported	0	3
0x0004 - 0x003E	Reserved	Shall be set to 0 and ignored upon receipt.	0 1-6 7	4-7 0-7 0-6
0x003F	AMP Test Manager	0 – if not supported 1 – if supported	7	7

*Table 4.12: Fixed Channels Supported bit mask*

An L2CAP entity shall not transmit on any fixed channel (with the exception of the L2CAP signaling channel) until it has received a Fixed Channels Supported InfoType from the peer L2CAP entity indicating support for the channel, or has received a valid signaling packet from the remote device on the Fixed channel. All packets received on a non-supported fixed channel shall be ignored.

## 4.14 CREATE CHANNEL REQUEST (CODE 0x0C)

The Create Channel request packet, shown in [Figure 4.16](#), is sent to create an L2CAP channel between two devices over the Controller identified by the Controller ID.



*Figure 4.16: Create Channel Request Packet*

The data fields are:

- *Protocol/Service Multiplexer –PSM (2 octets (minimum))*

The PSM field is at least two octets in length. The structure of the PSM field is based on the ISO 3309 extension mechanism for address fields. All PSM values shall be *odd*, that is, the least significant bit of the least significant octet must be '1'. Also, all PSM values shall have the least significant bit of the most significant octet equal to '0'. This allows the PSM field to be extended beyond 16 bits. PSM values are separated into two ranges. Values in the first range are assigned by the Bluetooth SIG and indicate protocols. The second range of values are dynamically allocated and used in conjunction with the Service Discovery Protocol (SDP). The dynamically assigned values may be used to support multiple implementations of a particular protocol. PSM values are defined in the [Assigned Numbers](#) document.

- *Source CID –SCID (2 octets)*

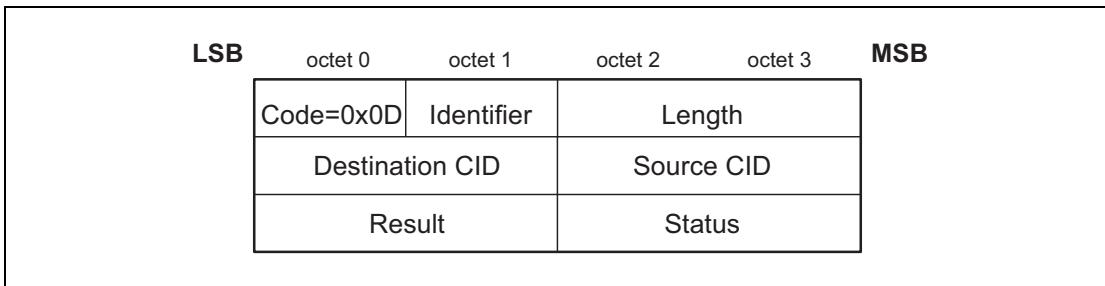
The source CID is two octets in length and represents a channel endpoint on the device sending the request. Once the channel has been configured, data packets flowing to the sender of the request shall be sent to this CID. Thus, the Source CID represents the channel endpoint on the device sending the request and receiving the response.

- *Controller Identifier –Controller ID (1 octet)*

The Controller ID is one octet in length and represents the Controller physical link over which the channel shall be created. The Controller ID is the identifier of the Controller on the remote device obtained via an AMP Manager Discover Available AMPs request. See [Part E, AMP Manager Protocol Specification on page 445](#) The Controller physical link shall already exist.

## 4.15 CREATE CHANNEL RESPONSE (CODE 0x0D)

When a device receives a Create Channel Request Packet, it shall send a Create Channel Response packet. The format of the Create Channel Response packet is shown in [Figure 4.17](#).



*Figure 4.17: Create Channel Response Packet*

The data fields are:

- *Destination Channel Identifier–DCID (2 octets)*

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device sending this Response packet. Thus, the Destination CID represents the channel endpoint on the device receiving the request and sending the response.

- *Source Channel Identifier–SCID (2 octets)*

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device receiving this Response packet. This is copied from the SCID field of the Create Channel Request packet.

- *Result (2 octets)*

The result field indicates the outcome of the Create Channel Request. The result value of 0x0000 indicates success while a non-zero value indicates the Create Channel Request failed or is pending. A logical channel is established on the receipt of a successful result. [Table 4.13](#) defines values for this field. The DCID and SCID fields shall be ignored when the result field indicates the connection was refused.

Result	Description
0x0000	Connection successful
0x0001	Connection pending
0x0002	Connection refused - PSM not supported
0x0003	Connection refused - security block
0x0004	Connection refused - no resources available
0x0005	Connection refused - Controller ID not supported
Other	Reserved

*Table 4.13: Result values*

- *Status (2 octets)*

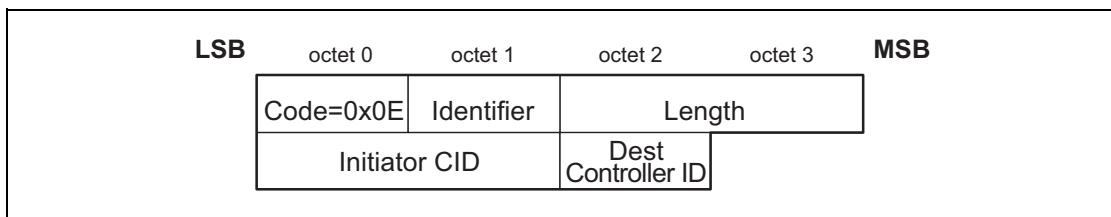
Only defined for Result = Pending. Indicates the status of the connection. The status is set to one of the values shown in [Table 4.14](#).

Value	Description
0x0000	No further information available
0x0001	Authentication pending
0x0002	Authorization pending
Other	Reserved

*Table 4.14: Status values*

## 4.16 MOVE CHANNEL REQUEST (CODE 0x0E)

Move Channel request packets are sent to move an existing L2CAP channel from a physical link on one Controller to a physical link on another Controller. The CIDs for the L2CAP channel are not changed by a Move operation. [Figure 4.18](#) illustrates a Move Channel request packet. Channels shall only be moved if configured to use Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode. Fixed channels (see [Section 2.1](#)) shall not be moved.



*Figure 4.18: Move Channel Request Packet*

The data fields are:

- *Initiator Channel Identifier - ICID (2 octets)*

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device sending this Request packet.

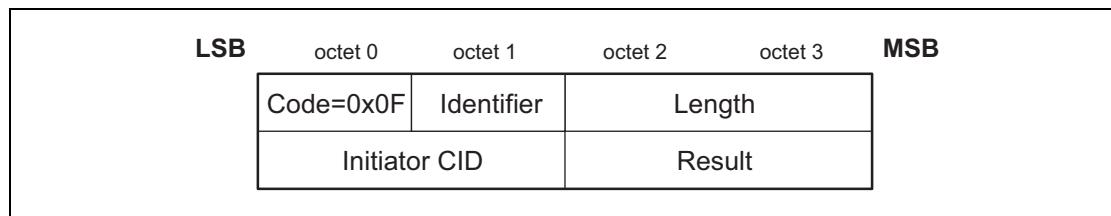
- *Destination Controller Identifier - Dest Controller ID (1 octet)*

The Dest Controller ID is one octet in length and represents the Controller physical link to which the channel shall be moved. The Controller ID is the identifier of the Controller on the remote device obtained via an AMP Manager Discover Available AMPs request. See [Part E, AMP Manager Protocol Specification on page 445](#). The Controller physical link shall already exist.

## 4.17 MOVE CHANNEL RESPONSE (CODE 0x0F)

When a device receives a Move Channel request packet it shall send a Move Channel response packet. If the device has sent its own Move Channel request then a collision has occurred. One of the requests shall be rejected while the other shall proceed. The Move Channel request that shall be rejected is based on the algorithm in [Section 7.7](#)

The format of Move Channel response packet is shown in [Figure 4.19](#).



*Figure 4.19: Move Channel Response Packet*

The data fields are:

- *Initiator Channel Identifier – ICID (2 octets)*

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device that sent the Move Channel Request (device receiving this Response packet). This is the same value as was sent in the Move Channel Request packet.

- *Result (2 octets)*

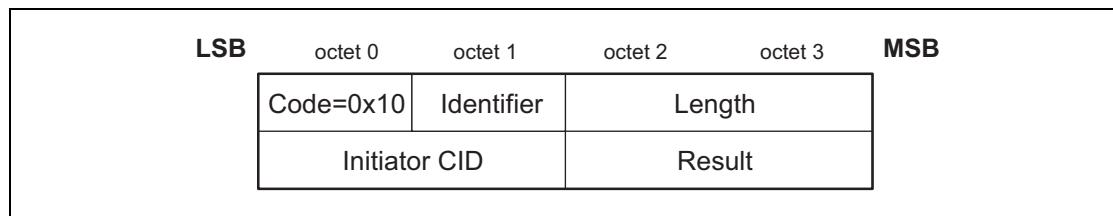
The result field indicates the outcome of the move request. The result value of 0x0000 indicates success while a non-zero value indicates the move request failed. A logical channel is moved on the receipt of a successful result. [Table 4.15](#) defines values for this field. The ICID field shall be ignored when the result field indicates the move was refused.

Result	Description
0x0000	Move Success
0x0001	Move Pending
0x0002	Move refused - Controller ID not supported
0x0003	Move refused - new Controller ID is same as old Controller ID
0x0004	Move refused - Configuration not supported
0x0005	Move refused - Move Channel collision
0x0006	Move refused - Channel not allowed to be moved
Other	Reserved

*Table 4.15: Result values*

## 4.18 MOVE CHANNEL CONFIRMATION (CODE 0x10)

When the initiator of a Move Channel request receives a Move Channel response with a result code other than "pending" from the responder, it shall send a Move Channel confirmation packet, that will conclude the Move Channel procedure, informing the responder that all the QoS parameters were successfully (or not) negotiated. The format of Move Channel confirmation packet is shown in [Figure 4.20](#).



*Figure 4.20: Move Channel Confirmation Packet*

The data fields are:

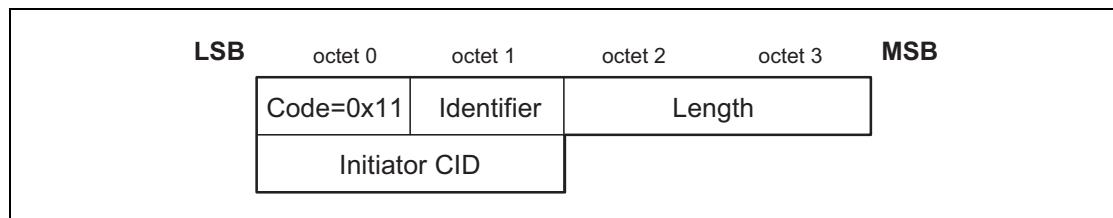
- *Initiator Channel Identifier – ICID (2 octets)*  
This field contains the channel endpoint on the device sending the Move Channel Confirmation packet. This is the same value as was sent in the original Move Channel Request packet.
- *Result (2 octets)*  
The result field indicates the outcome of the move confirmation. The result value of 0x0000 indicates success while a non-zero value indicates the move failed.

Result	Description
0x0000	Move success - both sides succeed
0x0001	Move failure - one or both sides refuse
Other	Reserved

*Table 4.16: Result values*

## 4.19 MOVE CHANNEL CONFIRMATION RESPONSE (CODE 0x11)

When a device receives a Move Channel Confirmation packet it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation response packet. The purpose of the Move Channel Confirmation Response is so that Move Channel Confirmation is consistent with the command/response style. The format of Move Channel Confirmation response packet is shown in [Figure 4.21](#).



*Figure 4.21: Move Channel Confirmation Response Packet*

The data field is:

- *Initiator Channel Identifier – ICID (2 octets)*

This field contains the channel endpoint on the device that sent the Move Channel Confirmation packet.

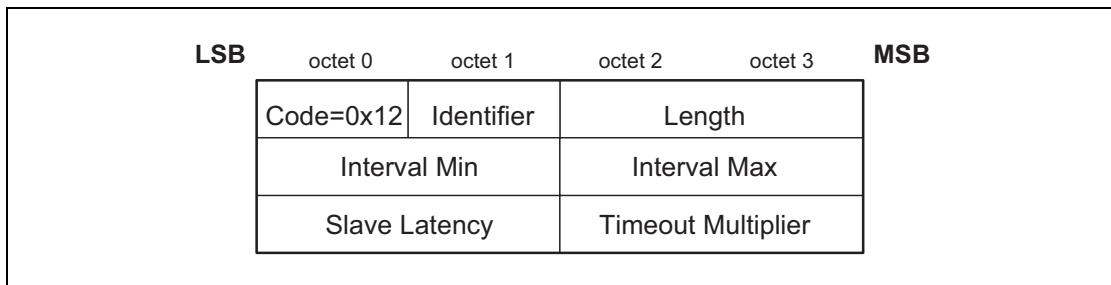
## 4.20 CONNECTION PARAMETER UPDATE REQUEST (CODE 0x12)

This command shall only be sent from the LE slave device to the LE master device and only if one or more of the LE slave Controller, the LE master Controller, the LE slave Host and the LE master Host do not support the Connection Parameters Request Link Layer Control Procedure ([\[Vol. 6\] Part B, Section 5.1.7](#)). If an LE slave Host receives a Connection Parameter Update Request packet it shall respond with a Command Reject packet with reason 0x0000 (Command not understood).

The Connection Parameter Update Request allows the LE slave Host to request a set of new connection parameters. When the LE master Host receives a Connection Parameter Update Request packet, depending on the parameters of other connections, the LE master Host may accept the requested parameters and deliver the requested parameters to its Controller or reject the request. In devices supporting HCI, the LE master Host delivers the requested parameters to its Controller using the HCI\_LE\_Connection\_Update command (see [\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.8.18](#)). If the LE master Host accepts the requested parameters it shall send the Connection Parameter Update Response packet with result 0x0000 (Parameters accepted) otherwise it shall set the result to 0x0001 (request rejected).

The LE slave Host will receive an indication from the LE slave Controller when the connection parameters have been updated. In devices supporting HCI, this

notification will be in the form of an LE Connection Update Complete event (see [\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.7.65.1](#)). If the LE master Controller rejects the updated connection parameters no indication from the LE slave Controller will be sent to the LE slave Host.



*Figure 4.22: Connection Parameters Update Request Packet*

The data fields are:

- *Interval Min (2 octets)*

Defines minimum value for the connection event interval in the following manner:

$\text{connIntervalMin} = \text{Interval Min} * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ . Interval Min range: 6 to 3200 frames where 1 frame is 1.25 ms and equivalent to 2 BR/EDR slots. Values outside the range are reserved. Interval Min shall be less than or equal to Interval Max.

- *Interval Max (2 octets)*

Defines maximum value for the connection event interval in the following manner:

$\text{connIntervalMax} = \text{Interval Max} * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ . Interval Max range: 6 to 3200 frames. Values outside the range are reserved. Interval Max shall be equal to or greater than the Interval Min.

- *Slave Latency (2 octets)*

Defines the slave latency parameter (as number of LL connection events) in the following manner:

$\text{connSlaveLatency} = \text{Slave Latency}$ . The Slave Latency field shall have a value in the range of 0 to  $((\text{connSupervisionTimeout} / \text{connIntervalMax}) - 1)$ . The Slave Latency field shall be less than 500.

- *Timeout Multiplier (2 octets)*

Defines connection timeout parameter in the following manner:

$\text{connSupervisionTimeout} = \text{Timeout Multiplier} * 10 \text{ ms}$

The Timeout Multiplier field shall have a value in the range of 10 to 3200.

## 4.21 CONNECTION PARAMETER UPDATE RESPONSE (CODE 0x13)

This response shall only be sent from the LE master device to the LE slave device.

The Connection Parameter Update Response packet shall be sent by the master Host when it receives a Connection Parameter Update Request packet. If the LE master Host accepts the request it shall send the connection parameter update to its Controller.

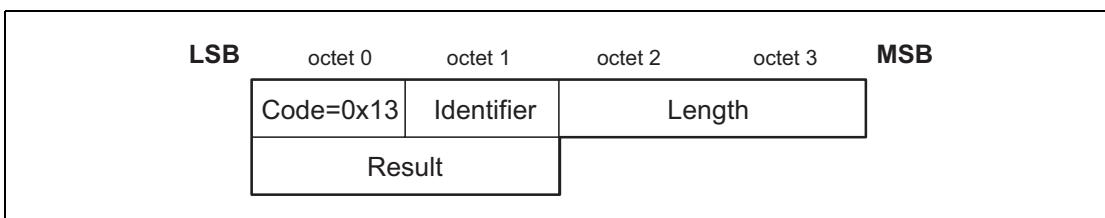


Figure 4.23: Connection Parameters Update Response Packet

The data field is:

- *Result (2 octets)*

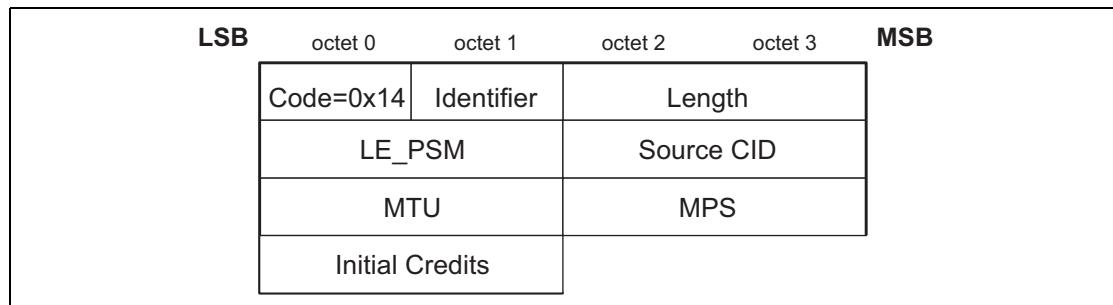
The result field indicates the response to the Connection Parameter Update Request. The result value of 0x0000 indicates that the LE master Host has accepted the connection parameters while 0x0001 indicates that the LE master Host has rejected the connection parameters.

Result	Description
0x0000	Connection Parameters accepted
0x0001	Connection Parameters rejected
Other	Reserved

Table 4.17: Result values

## 4.22 LE CREDIT BASED CONNECTION REQUEST (CODE 0x14)

LE Credit Based Connection Request packets are sent to create and configure an L2CAP channel between two devices. [Figure 4.24](#) illustrates a Connection Request packet.



*Figure 4.24: LE Credit Based Connection Request Packet*

The data fields are:

- *LE Protocol/Service Multiplexer – LE\_PSM (2 octets)*

The LE\_PSM field is two octets in length. LE\_PSM values are separated into two ranges. Values in the first range are assigned by the Bluetooth SIG and indicate protocols. Values in the second range are dynamically allocated and used in conjunction with services defined in the GATT server. The dynamically assigned values may be used to support multiple implementations of a particular protocol.

LE\_PSM values are defined in the table below.

Range	Type	Server Usage	Client Usage
0x0001-0x007F	Fixed, SIG assigned	LE_PSM is fixed for all implementations	LE_PSM may be assumed for fixed service. Protocol used is indicated by the LE_PSM as defined in the Assigned Numbers page.
0x0080-0x00FF	Dynamic	LE_PSM may be fixed for a given implementation or may be assigned at the time the service is registered in GATT	LE_PSM shall be obtained from the service in GATT upon every reconnection. LE_PSM for one direction will typically be different from the other direction.
0x0100-0xFFFF	Reserved	Not applicable	Not applicable

*Table 4.18: LE Credit Based Connection Request LE\_PSM ranges*

- *Source CID – SCID (2 octets)*

The source CID is two octets in length and represents a channel endpoint on the device sending the request. Once the channel has been created, data packets flowing to the sender of the request shall be sent to this CID. Thus,

the Source CID represents the channel endpoint on the device sending the request and receiving the response.

- *Maximum Transmission Unit – MTU (2 octets)*

The MTU field specifies the maximum SDU size (in octets) that the L2CAP layer entity sending the LE Credit Based Connection Request can receive on this channel. L2CAP implementations shall support a minimum MTU size of 23 octets.

- *Maximum PDU Size – MPS (2 octets)*

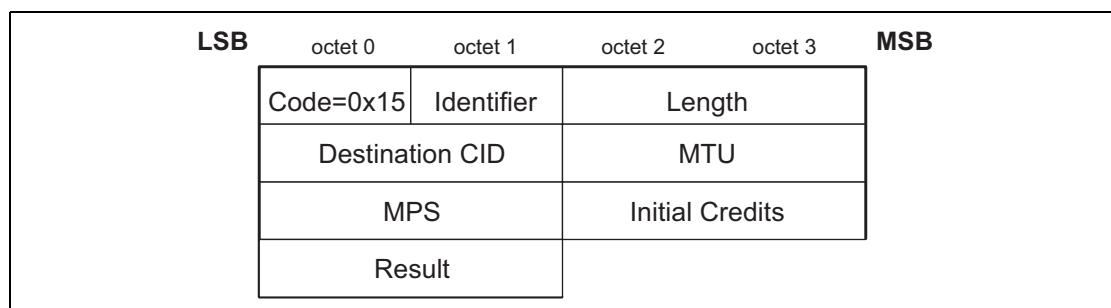
The MPS field specifies the maximum payload size (in octets) that the L2CAP layer entity sending the LE Credit Based Connection Request is capable of receiving on this channel. L2CAP implementations shall support a minimum MPS of 23 octets and may support an MPS up to 65533 octets.

- *Initial Credits – (2 octets)*

The initial credit value indicates the number of LE-frames that the peer device can send to the L2CAP layer entity sending the LE Credit Based Connection Request. The initial credit value shall be in the range of 0 to 65535.

## 4.23 LE CREDIT BASED CONNECTION RESPONSE (CODE 0x15)

When a device receives a LE Credit Based Connection Request packet, it shall send a LE Credit Based Connection Response packet. The format of the connection response packet is shown in [Figure 4.25](#).



*Figure 4.25: LE Credit Based Connection Response Packet*

The data fields are:

- *Destination CID – DCID (2 octets)*

The destination CID is two octets in length and represents a channel endpoint on the device sending the response. Once the channel has been created, data packets flowing to the sender of the response shall be sent to this CID. Thus, the destination CID represents the channel endpoint on the device receiving the request and sending the response.

- *Maximum Transmission Unit – MTU (2 octets)*

The MTU field specifies the maximum SDU size (in octets) that the L2CAP layer entity sending the LE Credit Based Connection Response can receive on this channel. L2CAP implementations shall support a minimum MTU size of 23 octets.

- *Maximum PDU Size – MPS (2 octets)*

The MPS field specifies the maximum payload size (in octets) that the L2CAP layer entity sending the LE Credit Based Connection Response is capable of receiving on this channel. L2CAP implementations shall support a minimum MPS of 23 octets and may support an MPS up to 65533 octets.

- *Initial Credits – (2 octets)*

The initial credit value indicates the number of LE-frames that the peer device can send to the L2CAP layer entity sending the LE Credit Based Connection Response. The initial credit value shall be in the range of 0 to 65535.

- *Result – (2 octets)*

The result field indicates the outcome of the connection request. A result value of 0x0000 indicates success while a non-zero value indicates the connection request was refused. A logical channel is established on the receipt of a successful result. [Table 4.19](#) defines values for this field. The DCID, MTU, MPS and Initial Credits fields shall be ignored when the result field indicates the connection was refused.

Value	Description
0x0000	Connection successful
0x0001	Reserved
0x0002	Connection refused – LE_PSM not supported
0x0003	Reserved
0x0004	Connection refused – no resources available
0x0005	Connection refused – insufficient authentication
0x0006	Connection refused – insufficient authorization
0x0007	Connection refused – insufficient encryption key size
0x0008	Connection Refused – insufficient encryption
0x0009-0xFFFF	Reserved

*Table 4.19: Result values for LE Credit Based Connection Response*

## 4.24 LE FLOW CONTROL CREDIT (CODE 0X16)

A device shall send a LE Flow Control Credit packet when it is capable of receive additional LE-frames (for example after it has processed one or more LE-frames).

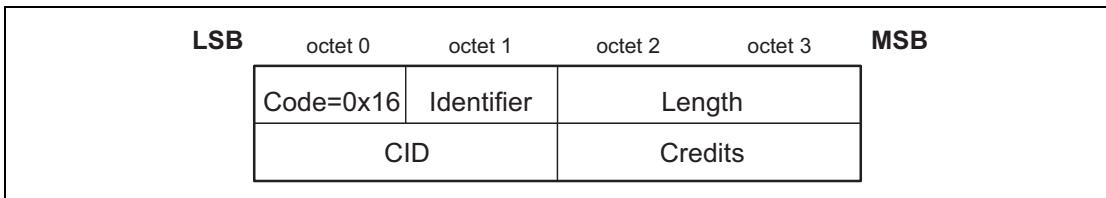


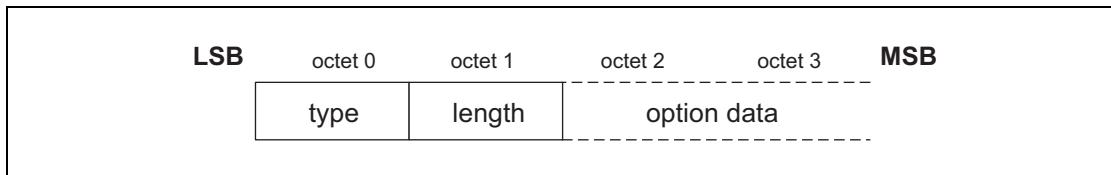
Figure 4.26: LE Flow Control Credit Packet

The data fields are:

- ***CID – (2 octets)***  
The CID is two octets in length and represents the source channel endpoint of the device sending the LE Flow Control Credit packet. For example, a received LE Flow Control Credit packet with a given CID (0x0042) would provide credits for the receiving device's destination CID (0x0042).
- ***Credits – (2 octets)***  
The credit value field represents number of credits the receiving device can increment, corresponding to the number of LE-frames that can be sent to the peer device sending the LE Flow Control Credit packet. The credit value field shall be a number between 1 and 65535.

## 5 CONFIGURATION PARAMETER OPTIONS

Options are a mechanism to extend the configuration parameters. Options shall be transmitted as information elements containing an option type, an option length, and one or more option data fields. [Figure 5.1](#) illustrates the format of an option.



*Figure 5.1: Configuration option format*

The configuration option fields are:

- *Type (1 octet)*

The option type field defines the parameters being configured. The most significant bit of the type determines the action taken if the option is not recognized.

0 - option must be recognized; if the option is not recognized then refuse the configuration request

1 - option is a hint; if the option is not recognized then skip the option and continue processing

- *Length (1 octet)*

The length field defines the number of octets in the option data. Thus an option type without option data has a length of 0.

- *Option data*

The contents of this field are dependent on the option type.

### 5.1 MAXIMUM TRANSMISSION UNIT (MTU)

This option specifies the maximum SDU size the sender of this option is capable of accepting for a channel. The type is 0x01, and the payload length is 2 octets, carrying the two-octet MTU size value as the only information element (see [Figure 5.2 on page 90](#)). Unlike the B-Frame length field, the I-frame length field may be greater than the configured MTU because it includes the octet lengths of the Control, L2CAP SDU Length (when present), and frame check sequence fields as well as the Information octets.

MTU is not a negotiated value, it is an informational parameter that each device can specify independently. It indicates to the remote device that the local device can receive, in this channel, an MTU larger than the minimum required. All L2CAP implementations shall support a minimum MTU of 48 octets over the ACL-U logical link and 23 octets over the LE-U logical link; however, some protocols

and profiles explicitly require support for a larger MTU. The minimum MTU for a channel is the larger of the L2CAP minimum 48 octet MTU and any MTU explicitly required by the protocols and profiles using that channel. (Note: the MTU is only affected by the profile directly using the channel. For example, if a service discovery transaction is initiated by a non service discovery profile, that profile does not affect the MTU of the L2CAP channel used for service discovery).

The following rules shall be used when responding to a configuration request specifying the MTU for a channel:

- A request specifying any MTU greater than or equal to the minimum MTU for the channel shall be accepted.
- A request specifying an MTU smaller than the minimum MTU for the channel may be rejected.

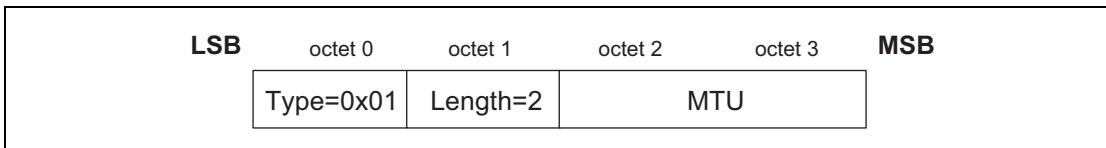
The signaling described in [Section 4.5 on page 68](#) may be used to reject an MTU smaller than the minimum MTU for a channel. The "failure-unacceptable parameters" result sent to reject the MTU shall include the proposed value of MTU that the remote device intends to transmit. It is implementation specific whether the local device continues the configuration process or disconnects the channel.

If the remote device sends a positive configuration response it should include the actual MTU to be used on this channel for traffic flowing into the local device. Following the above rules, the actual MTU cannot be less than 48 bytes. This is the minimum of the MTU in the configuration request and the outgoing MTU capability of the device sending the configuration response. The new agreed value (the default value in a future re-configuration) is the value specified in the response.

Note: For backwards compatibility reception of the MTU option in a negative Configuration Response where the MTU option is not in error should be interpreted in the same way as it is in a positive Configuration Response (e.g. the case where another configuration option value is unacceptable but the negative Configuration Response contains the MTU option in addition to the unacceptable option).

The MTU to be used on this channel for the traffic flowing in the opposite direction will be established when the remote device sends its own Configuration Request as explained in [Section 4.4 on page 66](#).

If the configured mode is Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode then MTU shall not be reconfigured to a smaller size.



*Figure 5.2: MTU Option Format*

The option data field is:

- *Maximum Transmission Unit - MTU (2 octets)*

The MTU field is the maximum SDU size, in octets, that the originator of the Request can accept for this channel. The MTU is asymmetric and the sender of the Request shall specify the MTU it can receive on this channel if it differs from the default value. L2CAP implementations shall support a minimum MTU size of 48 octets. The default value is 672 octets<sup>2</sup>.

## 5.2 FLUSH TIMEOUT OPTION

This option is used to inform the recipient of the Flush Timeout the sender is going to use. This option shall not be used if the Extended Flow Specification is used. The Flush Timeout is defined in the BR/EDR Baseband specification [vol.2, part B] Section 7.6.3 on page 156. The type is 0x02 and the payload size is 2 octets. The Flush Timeout option is negotiable.

If the remote device returns a negative response to this option and the local device cannot honor the proposed value, then it shall either continue the configuration process by sending a new request with the original value, or disconnect the channel. The flush timeout applies to all channels on the same ACL logical transport but may be overridden on a packet by packet basis by marking individual L2CAP packets as non-automatically-flushable via the Packet\_Boundary\_Flag in the HCI ACL Data Packet (see Section 1.1 on page 31).

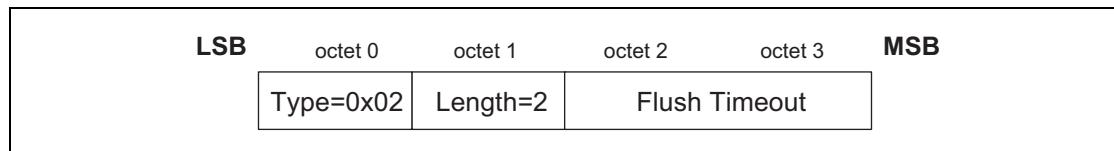


Figure 5.3: Flush Timeout option format

The option data field is:

- *Flush Timeout*

This value is the Flush Timeout in milliseconds. This is an asymmetric value and the sender of the Request shall specify its flush timeout value if it differs from the default value of 0xFFFF.

Possible values are:

0x0001 - no retransmissions at the baseband level should be performed since the minimum polling interval is 1.25 ms.

0x0002 to 0xFFFF - Flush Timeout used by the baseband.

---

2. The default MTU was selected based on the payload carried by two baseband DH5 packets ( $2 \times 341 = 682$  octets) minus the baseband ACL headers ( $2 \times 2 = 4$  octets) and a 6-octet L2CAP header. Note that the L2CAP header length is 4 octets (see Section 3.3.1) but for historical reasons an L2CAP header length of 6 bytes is used.

0xFFFF - an infinite amount of retransmissions. This is also referred to as a 'reliable channel'. In this case, the baseband shall continue retransmissions until physical link loss is declared by link manager timeouts.

### 5.3 QUALITY OF SERVICE (QOS) OPTION

This option specifies a flow specification similar to RFC 1363<sup>3</sup>. Although the RFC flow specification addresses only the transmit characteristics, the Bluetooth QoS interface can handle the two directions (Tx and Rx) in the negotiation as described below.

If no QoS configuration parameter is negotiated the link shall assume the default parameters. The QoS option is type 0x03. This option shall not be used if the Extended Flow Specification option is used. The QoS option is negotiable.

In a configuration request, this option describes the outgoing traffic flow from the device sending the request. In a positive Configuration Response, this option describes the incoming traffic flow agreement to the device sending the response. In a negative Configuration Response, this option describes the preferred incoming traffic flow to the device sending the response.

L2CAP implementations are only required to support 'Best Effort' service, support for any other service type is optional. Best Effort does not require any guarantees. If no QoS option is placed in the request, Best Effort shall be assumed. If any QoS guarantees are required then a QoS configuration request shall be sent.

The remote device's Configuration Response contains information that depends on the value of the result field (see [Section 4.5 on page 68](#)). If the request was for Guaranteed Service, the response shall include specific values for any wild card parameters (see Token Rate and Token Bucket Size descriptions) contained in the request. If the result is "Failure – unacceptable parameters", the response shall include a list of outgoing flow specification parameters and parameter values that would make a new Connection Request from the local device acceptable by the remote device. Both explicitly referenced in a Configuration Request or implied configuration parameters can be included in a Configuration Response. Recall that any missing configuration parameters from a Configuration Request are assumed to have their most recently accepted values.

If a configuration request contains any QoS option parameters set to "do not care" then the configuration response shall set the same parameters to "do not care". This rule applies for both Best Effort and Guaranteed Service.

---

3. Internet Engineering Task Force, "A Proposed Flow Specification", RFC 1363, September 1992.

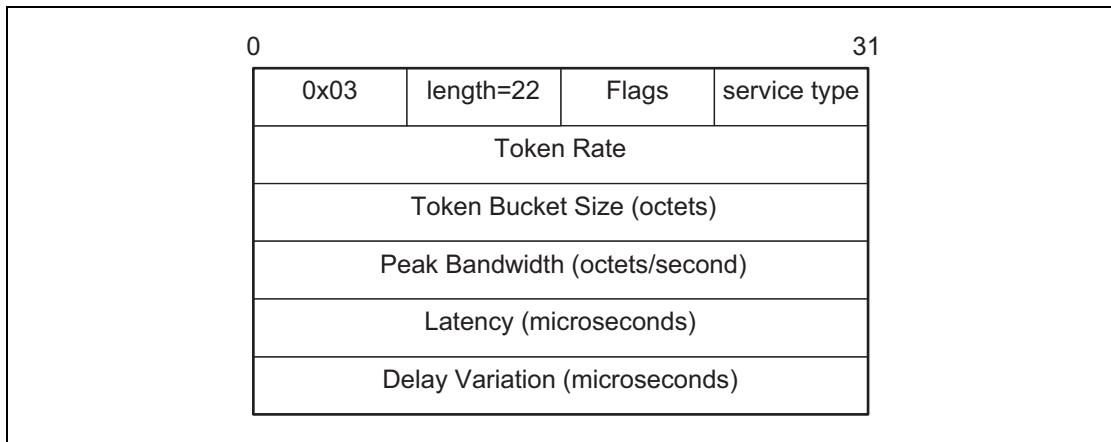


Figure 5.4: Quality of Service (QoS) option format containing Flow Specification

The option data fields are:

- *Flags (1 octet)*

Reserved for future use and shall be set to 0 and ignored by the receiver.

- *Service Type (1 octet)*

This field indicates the level of service required. [Table 5.1 on page 93](#) defines the different services available. The default value is 'Best effort'.

If 'Best effort' is selected, the remaining parameters should be treated as optional by the remote device. The remote device may choose to ignore the fields, try to satisfy the parameters but provide no response (QoS option omitted in the Response message), or respond with the settings it will try to meet.

If 'No traffic' is selected, the remainder of the fields shall be ignored because there is no data being sent across the channel in the outgoing direction.

Value	Description
0x00	No traffic
0x01	Best effort (Default)
0x02	Guaranteed
Other	Reserved

Table 5.1: Service type definitions

- *Token Rate (4 octets)*

The value of this field represents the average data rate with which the application transmits data. The application may send data at this rate continuously. On a short time scale the application may send data in excess of the average data rate, dependent on the specified Token Bucket Size and Peak Bandwidth (see below). The Token Bucket Size and Peak Bandwidth allow the application to transmit data in a 'bursty' fashion.

The Token Rate signalled between two L2CAP peers is the data transmitted by the application and shall exclude the L2CAP protocol overhead. The Token Rate signalled over the interface between L2CAP and the Link Manager shall include the L2CAP protocol overhead. Furthermore the Token Rate value signalled over this interface may also include the aggregation of multiple L2CAP channels onto the same ACL logical transport.

The Token Rate is the rate with which traffic credits are provided. Credits can be accumulated up to the Token Bucket Size. Traffic credits are consumed when data is transmitted by the application. When traffic is transmitted, and there are insufficient credits available, the traffic is non-conformant. The Quality of Service guarantees are only provided for conformant traffic. For non-conformant traffic there may not be sufficient resources such as bandwidth and buffer space. Furthermore non-conformant traffic may violate the QoS guarantees of other traffic flows.

The Token Rate is specified in octets per second. The value 0x00000000 indicates no token rate is specified. This is the default value and means "do not care". When the Guaranteed service is selected, the default value shall not be used. The value 0xFFFFFFFF is a wild card matching the maximum token rate available. The meaning of this value depends on the service type. For best effort, the value is a hint that the application wants as much bandwidth as possible. For Guaranteed service the value represents the maximum bandwidth available at the time of the request.

- *Token Bucket Size (4 octets)*

The Token Bucket Size specifies a limit on the 'burstiness' with which the application may transmit data. The application may offer a burst of data equal to the Token Bucket Size instantaneously, limited by the Peak Bandwidth (see below). The Token Bucket Size is specified in octets.

The Token Bucket Size signalled between two L2CAP peers is the data transmitted by the application and shall exclude the L2CAP protocol overhead. The Token Bucket Size signalled over the interface between L2CAP and Link Manager shall include the L2CAP protocol overhead. Furthermore the Token Bucket Size value over this interface may include the aggregation of multiple L2CAP channels onto the same ACL logical transport.

The value of 0x00000000 means that no token bucket is needed; this is the default value. When the Guaranteed service is selected, the default value shall not be used. The value 0xFFFFFFFF is a wild card matching the maximum token bucket available. The meaning of this value depends on the service type. For best effort, the value indicates the application wants a bucket as big as possible. For Guaranteed service the value represents the maximum L2CAP SDU size.

The Token Bucket Size is a property of the traffic carried over the L2CAP channel. The Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) is a property of an L2CAP implementation. For the Guaranteed service the Token Bucket Size shall be smaller or equal to the MTU.

- *Peak Bandwidth (4 octets)*

The value of this field, expressed in octets per second, limits how fast packets from applications may be sent back-to-back. Some systems can take advantage of this information, resulting in more efficient resource allocation.

The Peak Bandwidth signalled between two L2CAP peers specifies the data transmitted by the application and shall exclude the L2CAP protocol overhead. The Peak Bandwidth signalled over the interface between L2CAP and Link Manager shall include the L2CAP protocol overhead. Furthermore the Peak Bandwidth value over this interface may include the aggregation of multiple L2CAP channels onto the same ACL logical transport.

The value of 0x00000000 means "don't care." This states that the device has no preference on incoming maximum bandwidth, and is the default value. When the Guaranteed service is selected, the default value shall not be used.

- *Access Latency (4 octets)*

The value of this field is the maximum acceptable delay of an L2CAP packet to the air-interface. The precise interpretation of this number depends on over which interface this flow parameter is signalled. When signalled between two L2CAP peers, the Access Latency is the maximum acceptable delay between the instant when the L2CAP SDU is received from the upper layer and the start of the L2CAP SDU transmission over the air. When signalled over the interface between L2CAP and the Link Manager, it is the maximum delay between the instant the first fragment of an L2CAP PDU is stored in the Host Controller buffer and the initial transmission of the L2CAP packet on the air.

Thus the Access Latency value may be different when signalled between L2CAP and the Link Manager to account for any queuing delay at the L2CAP transmit side. Furthermore the Access Latency value may include the aggregation of multiple L2CAP channels onto the same ACL logical transport.

The Access Latency is expressed in microseconds. The value 0xFFFFFFFF means "do not care" and is the default value. When the Guaranteed service is selected, the default value shall not be used.

- *Delay Variation (4 octets)*

The value of this field is the difference, in microseconds, between the maximum and minimum possible delay of an L2CAP SDU between two L2CAP peers. The Delay Variation is a purely informational parameter. The value 0xFFFFFFFF means "do not care" and is the default value.

## 5.4 RETRANSMISSION AND FLOW CONTROL OPTION

This option specifies whether retransmission and flow control is used. If the feature is used both incoming and outgoing parameters are specified by this option. The Retransmission and Flow Control option contains both negotiable parameters and non-negotiable parameters. The mode parameter controls both incoming and outgoing data flow (i.e. both directions have to agree) and is negotiable. The other parameters control incoming data flow and are non-negotiable.

0	31
0x04	Length=9 Mode TxWindow size
Max Transmit	Retransmission time-out Monitor time-out (least significant byte)
Monitor time-out (most significant byte)	Maximum PDU size (MPS)

Figure 5.5: Retransmission and Flow Control option format

The option data fields are:

- **Mode (1 octet)**

The field contains the requested mode of the link. Possible values are shown in [Table 5.2 on page 96](#).

Value	Description
0x00	L2CAP Basic Mode
0x01	Retransmission mode
0x02	Flow control mode
0x03	Enhanced Retransmission mode
0x04	Streaming mode
Other values	Reserved for future use

Table 5.2: Mode definitions

The Basic L2CAP mode is the default. If Basic L2CAP mode is requested then all other parameters shall be ignored.

Enhanced Retransmission mode should be enabled if a reliable channel has been requested. Enhanced Retransmission mode shall only be sent to an L2CAP entity that has previously advertised support for the mode in its Extended Feature Mask (see [section 4.12](#)).

Streaming mode should be enabled if a finite L2CAP Flush Time-Out is set on an L2CAP connection. Streaming mode shall only be sent to a device that has previously advertised support for the mode in the Extended Feature Mask (see [section 4.12](#)).

Flow Control mode and Retransmission mode shall only be used for backwards compatibility with L2CAP entities that do not support Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode.

- ***TxWindow size (1 octet)***

This field specifies the size of the transmission window for Flow Control mode, Retransmission mode, and Enhanced Retransmission mode. The range is 1 to 32 for Flow Control mode and Retransmission mode. The range is 1 to 63 for Enhanced Retransmission mode.

In Retransmission mode and Flow Control mode this parameter should be negotiated to reflect the buffer sizes allocated for the connection on both sides. In general, the Tx Window size should be made as large as possible to maximize channel utilization. Tx Window size also controls the delay on flow control action. The transmitting device can send as many PDUs fit within the window.

In Enhanced Retransmission mode this value indicates the maximum number of I-frames that the sender of the option can receive without acknowledging some of the received frames. It is not negotiated. It is an informational parameter that each L2CAP entity can specify separately. In general, the TxWindow size should be made as large as possible to maximize channel utilization. The transmitting L2CAP entity can send as many PDUs as will fit within the receiving L2CAP entity's TxWindow. TxWindow size values in a Configuration Response indicate the maximum number of packets the sender can send before it requires an acknowledgement. In other words it represents the number of unacknowledged packets the send can hold. The value sent in a Configuration Response shall be less than or equal to the TxWindow size sent in the Configuration Request. The receiver of this option in the Configuration Response may use this value as part of its acknowledgement algorithm.

In Streaming mode this value is not used and shall be set to 0 and ignored by the receiving device.

- ***MaxTransmit (1 octet)***

This field controls the number of transmissions of a single I-frame that L2CAP is allowed to try in Retransmission mode and Enhanced Retransmission mode. The minimum value is 1 (one transmission is permitted).

MaxTransmit controls the number of retransmissions that L2CAP is allowed to try in Retransmission mode and Enhanced Retransmission mode before accepting that a packet and the channel is lost. When a packet is lost after being transmitted MaxTransmit times the channel shall be disconnected by sending a Disconnect request (see [Section 4.6](#)). In Enhanced Retransmission mode MaxTransmit controls the number of retransmissions for I-frames and S-frames with P-bit set to 1. The sender of the option in a Configuration Request specifies the value that shall be used by the receiver of the option. MaxTransmit values in a Configuration Response shall be ignored. Lower values might be appropriate for services requiring low latency. Higher values will be suitable for a link requiring robust operation. A value of 1 means that no retransmissions will be made but also means that the channel will be disconnected as soon as a packet is

lost. MaxTransmit shall not be set to zero in Retransmission mode. In Enhanced Retransmission mode a value of zero for MaxTransmit means infinite retransmissions.

In Streaming mode this value is not used and shall be set to 0 and ignored by the receiving L2CAP entity.

- *Retransmission time-out (2 octets)*

This is the value in milliseconds of the retransmission time-out (this value is used to initialize the RetransmissionTimer).

The purpose of this timer in retransmission mode is to activate a retransmission in some exceptional cases. In such cases, any delay requirements on the channel may be broken, so the value of the timer should be set high enough to avoid unnecessary retransmissions due to delayed acknowledgements. Suitable values could be 100's of milliseconds and up.

The purpose of this timer in flow control mode is to supervise I-frame transmissions. If an acknowledgement for an I-frame is not received within the time specified by the RetransmissionTimer value, either because the I-frame has been lost or the acknowledgement has been lost, the timeout will cause the transmitting side to continue transmissions. Suitable values are implementation dependent.

The purpose of this timer in Enhanced Retransmission mode is to detect lost I-frames and initiate appropriate error recovery. The value used for the Retransmission time-out is specified in [Section 8.6.2](#). The value sent in a Configuration Request is also specified in [Section 8.6.2](#). A value for the Retransmission time-out shall be sent in a positive Configuration Response and indicates the value that will be used by the sender of the Configuration Response.

In Streaming mode this value is not used and shall be set to 0 and ignored by the receiving L2CAP entity.

- *Monitor time-out (2 octets)*

In Retransmission mode this is the value in milliseconds of the interval at which S-frames should be transmitted on the return channel when no frames are received on the forward channel. (this value is used to initialize the MonitorTimer, see below).

This timer ensures that lost acknowledgements are retransmitted. Its main use is to recover Retransmission Disable Bit changes in lost frames when no data is being sent. The timer shall be started immediately upon transitioning to the open state. It shall remain active as long as the connection is in the open state and the retransmission timer is not active. Upon expiration of the Monitor timer an S-frame shall be sent and the timer shall be restarted. If the monitor timer is already active when an S-frame is sent, the timer shall be restarted. An idle connection will have periodic monitor traffic sent in both directions. The value for this time-out should also be set to 100's of milliseconds or higher.

In Enhanced Retransmission mode the Monitor time-out is used to detect lost S-frames with P-bit set to 1. If the time-out occurs before a response

with the F-bit set to 1 is received the S-frame is resent. The value used for the Monitor time-out is specified in [Section 8.6.3](#). The value sent in a Configuration Request is also specified in [Section 8.6.2](#). A value for the Monitor time-out shall be sent in a positive Configuration Response and indicates the value that will be used by the sender of the Configuration Response.

In Streaming mode this value is not used and shall be set to 0 and ignored by the receiving device.

- *Maximum PDU payload Size - MPS (2 octets)*

The maximum size of payload data in octets that the L2CAP layer entity sending the option in a Configuration Request is capable of accepting, i.e. the MPS corresponds to the maximum PDU payload size. Values used for MPS should take into account all possible Controllers to which the channel might be moved given that the MPS value cannot be renegotiated once the channel is created. Each device specifies the value separately. An MPS value sent in a positive Configuration Response is the actual MPS the receiver of the Configuration Request will use on this channel for traffic flowing into the local device. An MPS value sent in a positive Configuration Response shall be equal to or smaller than the value sent in the Configuration Request.

When using Retransmission mode and Flow Control mode the settings are configured separately for the two directions of an L2CAP connection. For example, in operating with an L2CAP entity implementing an earlier version of the core specification, an L2CAP connection can be configured as Flow Control mode in one direction and Retransmission mode in the other direction. If Basic L2CAP mode is configured in one direction and Retransmission mode or Flow control mode is configured in the other direction on the same L2CAP channel then the channel shall not be used.

Note: This asymmetric configuration only occurs during configuration.

When using Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode, both directions of the L2CAP connection shall be configured to the same mode. A precedence algorithm shall be used by both devices so a mode conflict can be resolved in a quick and deterministic manner.

There are two operating states:

- A device has a desired mode but is willing to use another mode (known as "state 1"), and
- A device requires a specific mode (known as "state 2"). This includes cases where channels are created over AMP-U logical links or ACL-U logical links operating as described in [Section 7.10](#).

In state 1, Basic L2CAP mode has the highest precedence and shall take precedence over Enhanced Retransmission mode and Streaming mode.

Enhanced Retransmission mode has the second highest precedence and shall take precedence over all other modes except Basic L2CAP mode. Streaming

mode shall have the next level of precedence after Enhanced Retransmission mode.

In state 2, a layer above L2CAP requires Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode. In this case, the required mode takes precedence over all other modes.

A device does not know in which state the remote device is operating so the state 1 precedence algorithm assumes that the remote device may be a state 2 device. If the mode proposed by the remote device has a higher precedence (according to the state 1 precedence) then the algorithm will operate such that creation of a channel using the remote device's mode has higher priority than disconnecting the channel.

The algorithm for state 1 devices is divided into two parts. Part one covers the case where the remote device proposes a mode with a higher precedence than the state 1 local device. Part two covers the case where the remote device proposes a mode with a lower precedence than the state 1 local device. Part one of the algorithm is as follows:

- When the remote device receives the Configuration Request from the local device it will either reject the local device's Configuration Request by sending a negative Configuration Response or disconnect the channel. The negative Configuration Response will contain the remote device's desired mode.
- Upon receipt of the negative Configuration Response the local device shall either send a second Configuration Request proposing the mode contained in the remote device's negative Configuration Response or disconnect the channel.
- When the local device receives the Configuration Request from the remote device it shall send a positive Configuration Response or disconnect the channel.
- If the mode in the remote Device's negative Configuration Response does not match the mode in the remote device's Configuration Request then the local device shall disconnect the channel.

Part two of the algorithm is as follows:

- When the local device receives the Configuration Request from the remote device it shall reject the Configuration Request by sending a negative Configuration Response proposing its desired mode. The local device's desired mode shall be the same mode it sent in its Configuration Request. Upon receiving the negative Configuration Response the remote device will either send a second Configuration Request or disconnect the channel.
- If the local device receives a second Configuration Request from the remote device that does not contain the desired mode then the local device shall disconnect the channel.
- If the local device receives a negative Configuration Response then it shall disconnect the channel.

An example of the algorithm for state 1 devices is as follows:

- The remote device proposes Basic L2CAP mode in a Configuration Request and the local device proposes Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode. The remote device rejects the local device's Configuration Request by sending a negative Configuration Response proposing Basic mode. The local device will send a second Configuration Request proposing Basic L2CAP mode or disconnect the channel. If the local device sends a second Configuration Request that does not propose Basic L2CAP mode then the remote device will disconnect the channel. If the local device rejects the remote device's Configuration Request then the remote device will disconnect the channel.

The algorithm for state 2 devices is as follows:

- If the local device proposes a mode in a Configuration Request and the remote device proposes a different mode or rejects the local device's Configuration Request then the local device shall disconnect the channel.

For Enhanced Retransmission mode and Streaming mode the Retransmission time-out and Monitor Time-out parameters of the Retransmission and Flow Control option parameters may be changed but all other parameters shall not be changed in a subsequent reconfiguration after the channel has reached the OPEN state.

## 5.5 FRAME CHECK SEQUENCE (FCS) OPTION

This option is used to specify the type of Frame Check Sequence (FCS) that will be included on S/I-frames that are sent. It is non-negotiable. The FCS option shall only be used when the mode is being, or is already configured to Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode. Note: The FCS option can be reconfigured only when the mode is Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode. Implementations may reconfigure the FCS when L2CAP channels are moved between Controllers. The Frame Check Sequence option is type 0x05. "No FCS" shall only be used if both L2CAP entities send the FCS Option with value 0x00 (No FCS) in a configuration request. If one L2CAP entity sends the FCS Option with "No FCS" in a configuration request and the other L2CAP sends the FCS Option with a value other than "No FCS" then the default shall be used. If one or both L2CAP entities do not send the FCS option in a configuration request then the default shall be used.

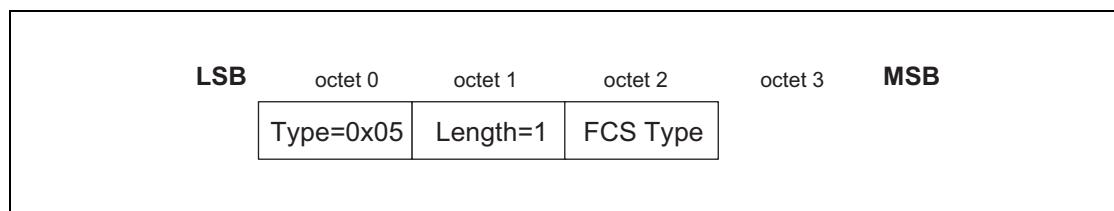


Figure 5.6: FCS option format

The FCS types are shown in [Table 5.3](#)

Value	Description
0x00	No FCS
0x01	16-bit FCS defined in section 3.3.5 (default)
0x02 - 0xFF	Reserved

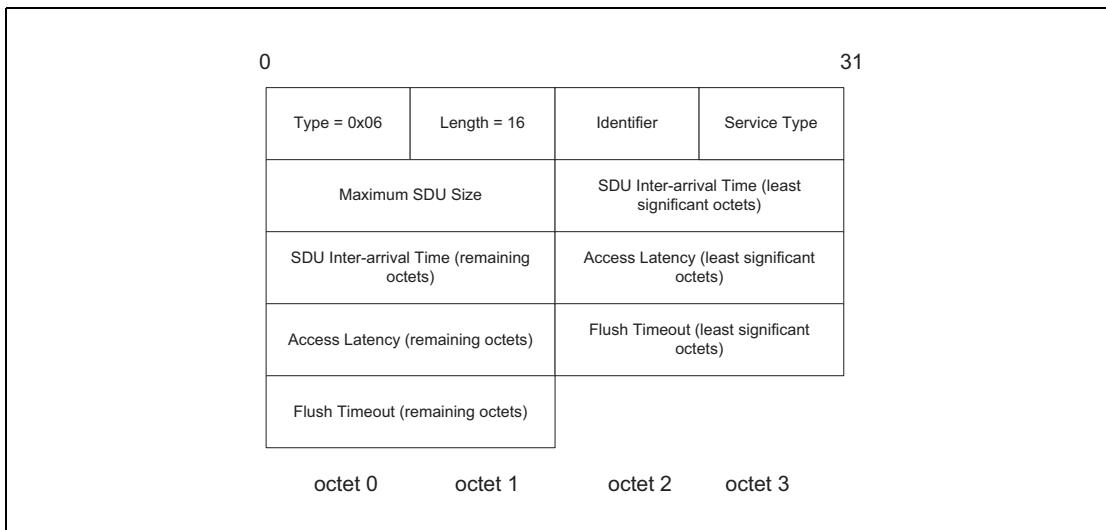
*Table 5.3: FCS types*

Value of 0x00 is set when the sender wishes to omit the FCS from S/I-frames.

## 5.6 EXTENDED FLOW SPECIFICATION OPTION

This option specifies a flow specification for requesting a desired Quality of Service (QoS) on a channel. It is non-negotiable. The Extended Flow Specification shall be supported on all channels created over AMP-U logical links. Optionally, Extended Flow Specification may be supported on channels created over ACL-U logical links (see [Section 7.10](#)). If both devices show support for Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR in the Extended Feature mask (see [Table 4.11](#)) then all channels created between the two devices shall use an Extended Flow Specification. The Quality of Service option and Flush Timeout option shall not be used if the Extended Flow Specification is used.

The parameters in the Extended Flow Specification option specify the traffic stream in the outgoing direction (transmitted traffic). Extended Flow Specification option is type 0x06.



*Figure 5.7: Extended Flow Specification option format*

If no Extended Flow Specification is provided by the upper layer, an Extended Flow Specification with following default values shall be used:

Identifier	0x01
Service Type	Best Effort
Maximum SDU size	0xFFFF
SDU Inter-arrival Time	0xFFFFFFFF
Access Latency	0xFFFFFFFF
Flush Timeout	0xFFFFFFFF

For a Best Effort channel no latency, air-time or bandwidth guarantees shall be assumed.

The parameters of the Extended Flow Specification are shown in [Table 5.4](#):

QoS parameter	Parameter Size in Octets	Unit
Identifier	1	na
Service Type	1	na
Maximum SDU Size	2	octets
SDU Inter-arrival Time	4	microseconds
Access Latency	4	microseconds
Flush Timeout	4	microseconds

*Table 5.4: Traffic parameters for L2CAP QoS configuration*

- *Identifier (1 octet)*

This field provides a unique identifier for the flow specification. This identifier is used by some Controllers in the process of setting up the QoS request. Each active flow specification sent by a device to configure an L2CAP channel shall have a unique Identifier. An Identifier can be reused when the L2CAP channel associated with the flow spec is disconnected. The Identifier shall be unique within the scope of a physical link. Extended Flow Specifications for channels on different physical links may have the same Identifier. The Identifier for an Extended Flow Specification with Service Type Best Effort shall be 0x01.

Note: Since the Identifier for an Extended Flow Specification with Service Type Best Effort is fixed to 0x01 it is possible to generate a Best Effort Extended Flow Specification for the remote device without performing the Lockstep Configuration process. (The Lockstep Configuration process is described in [Section 7.1.3](#)). This allows a Best Effort channel created over the ACL-U logical link without using the Lockstep configuration procedure to be moved to an AMP-U logical link. It is not possible to move a Guaranteed channel created over the ACL-U logical link to an AMP-U logical link unless the Lockstep configuration procedure is used during channel creation. This

is because the Identifier for the remote device's Extended Flow Specification with Service Type Guaranteed is not known.

- **Service Type (1 octet)**

This field indicates the level of service required. The default value is 'Best effort'. If 'Best effort' is selected then Access Latency and Flush Timeout shall both be set to 0xFFFFFFFF. Maximum SDU size and SDU Inter-arrival Time are used to indicate the maximum data rate that the application can deliver to L2CAP for transmission. This is useful for high speed Controllers so they do not reserve more bandwidth than the application can deliver. The remote device should respond with lower settings indicating the maximum rate at which it can receive data (for example, maximum rate data it can write to a mass storage device, etc.). Values of 0xFFFF for Maximum SDU size and 0xFFFFFFFF for SDU Inter-arrival time are used when the actual values are not known. If Maximum SDU size is set to 0xFFFF then SDU Inter-arrival time shall be set to 0xFFFFFFFF, if SDU Inter-arrival time is set to 0xFFFFFFFF then Maximum SDU size shall be set to 0xFFFF. This tells the Controller to allocate as much bandwidth as possible.

If "Guaranteed" is selected the QoS parameters can be used to identify different types of Guaranteed traffic.

- **Guaranteed bandwidth** traffic is traffic with a minimum data rate but no particular latency requested. Latency will be related to the link supervision timeout. For this type of traffic Access Latency is set to 0xFFFFFFFF.
- **Guaranteed Latency** traffic is traffic with only latency requirements. For this type of traffic SDU Inter-arrival time is set to 0xFFFFFFFF. HID interrupt channel and AVRCP are examples of this type of traffic.
- **Both Guaranteed Latency and Bandwidth** traffic has both a latency and bandwidth requirement. An example is Audio/Video streaming.

If 'No Traffic' is selected the remainder of the fields shall be ignored because there is no data being sent across the channel in the outgoing direction.

Value	Description
0x00	No Traffic
0x01	Best effort (Default)
0x02	Guaranteed
Other	Reserved

Table 5.5: Traffic parameters for L2CAP QoS configuration

A channel shall not be configured as "Best Effort" in one direction and "Guaranteed" in the other direction. If a channel is configured in this way it shall be disconnected. A channel may be configured as "No Traffic" in one direction and "Best Effort" in the other direction. The "No Traffic" refers to the application traffic not the Enhanced Retransmission mode supervisory traffic. A channel con-

figured in this way is considered to have a service type of Best Effort. A channel may be configured as “No Traffic” in one direction and “Guaranteed” in the other direction. A channel configure in this way is considered to have a service type of Guaranteed.

Once configured the service type of a channel shall not be changed during reconfiguration.

- *Maximum SDU Size (2 octets)*

The Maximum SDU Size parameter specifies the maximum size of the SDUs transmitted by the application. If the Service Type is “Guaranteed” then traffic submitted to L2CAP with a larger size is considered non-conformant. QoS guarantees are only provided for conformant traffic.

- *SDU Inter-arrival time (4 octets)*

The SDU Inter-arrival time parameter specifies the time between consecutive SDUs generated by the application. For streaming traffic, SDU Inter-arrival time should be set to the average time between SDUs. For variable rate traffic and best effort traffic, SDU Inter-arrival time should be set to the minimum time between SDUs. If the Service Type is “Guaranteed” then traffic submitted to L2CAP with a smaller interval, is considered non-conformant. QoS guarantees are only provided for conformant traffic.

- *Access Latency (4 octets)*

The Access Latency parameter specifies the maximum delay between consecutive transmission opportunities on the air-interface for the connection. Note that access latency is based on the time base of the Controller, which may not be synchronous to the time base being used by the host or the application.

For streaming traffic (for example, A2DP), the Access Latency should be set to indicate the time budgeted for transmission of the data over the air, and would normally be roughly equal to the Flush Timeout minus the duration of streaming data which can be stored in the receive side application buffers.

For non-streaming, bursty traffic (i.e. HID and AVRCP), the Access Latency parameter value sent in the L2CAP Configuration Request should be set to the desired latency, minus any HCI transport delays and any other stack delays that may be expected on the device and on target host systems. The remote device receiving the L2CAP Configuration Request may send an Access Latency parameter value in the L2CAP Configuration Response which is equal to or lower than the value it received. The remote device may send a lower value to account for other traffic it may be carrying, or overhead activities it may be carrying out.

If HCI is used then the host should take into account the latency of the HCI transport when determining the value for the Access Latency. For example if the application requires an Access Latency of 20ms and the HCI transport has a latency of 5 ms then the value for Access Latency should be 15ms.

- *Flush Timeout (4 Octets)*

The Flush Timeout defines a maximum period after which all segments of the SDU are flushed from L2CAP and the Controller. A Flush Timeout value of 0xFFFFFFFF indicates that data will not be discarded by the transmitting side, even if the link becomes congested. Note that in this case data is treated as reliable, and is never flushed. The device receiving the L2CAP Configuration Request with Flush Timeout set to 0xFFFFFFFF should not modify this parameter. The Flush Timeout for a “Best Effort” channel shall be set to 0xFFFFFFFF.

However, if the Traffic Type is “Guaranteed” and the transmit side buffer is limited, then the Flush Timeout parameter given in the L2CAP Configuration Request may be set to a value corresponding to the duration of streaming data which the transmit buffer can hold before it must begin discarding data. The side receiving the L2CAP Configuration Request may then set the Flush Timeout parameter in the L2CAP Configuration Response to a lower value if the receive side buffer is smaller than the transmit side buffer. Note that the total available buffer space is typically a combination of application buffers, any buffers maintained by the L2CAP implementation, and HCI buffers provided by the Controller.

The Flush Timeout should normally be set to a value which is larger than the Access Latency, and which also accounts for buffers maintained by the application on the receive side such as de-jitter buffers used in audio and video streaming applications. In general, the Flush Timeout value should be selected to ensure that the Flush Timeout expires when the application buffers are about to be exhausted.

Flush Timeout may be set to 0x00000000 to indicate that no retransmissions are to occur. Data may be flushed immediately after transmission in this case. This behavior is useful in applications such as gaming where the tolerable latency is on the order of a few milliseconds, and hence the information contained in a packet will become stale very rapidly. In such applications, it is preferable to send “fresher” data if the last SDU submitted for transmission was not transmitted as a result of interference.

## 5.7 EXTENDED WINDOW SIZE OPTION

This option is used to negotiate the maximum extended window size. The Extended Window Size option is type 0x07 and is non-negotiable.

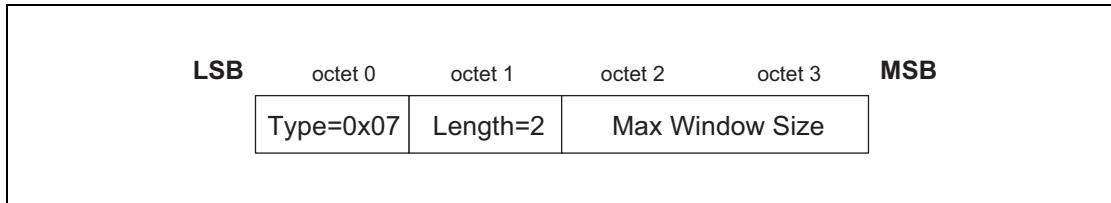


Figure 5.8: Extended Window Size option format

The allowable values for the Maximum Extended Window Size are:

Value	Description
0x0000	Invalid value for Enhanced Retransmission mode Valid for Streaming mode
0x0001 - 0x3FFF	Valid maximum window size (frames) for Enhanced Retransmission mode. Invalid for Streaming mode
0x4000 - 0xFFFF	Reserved

Figure 5.9: Extended Window Size values

This option shall only be sent if the peer L2CAP entity has indicated support for the Extended Window size feature in the Extended Features Mask (see [Section 4.11](#)).

This option shall be ignored if the channel is configured to use Basic L2CAP Mode (see [Section 5.4](#)).

For Enhanced Retransmission mode, this option has the same directional semantics as the Retransmission and Flow Control option (see [Section 5.4](#)). The sender of a Configuration Request command containing this option is suggesting the maximum window size (possibly based on its own internal L2CAP receive buffer resources) that the peer L2CAP entity should use when sending data.

For Streaming mode, this option is used to enable use of the Extended Control Field and if sent, shall have a value of 0.

If this option is successfully configured then the Maximum Window Size negotiated using the Retransmission and Flow Control option (see [Section 5.4](#)) shall be ignored.

If this option is successfully configured in either direction then both L2CAP entities shall use the Extended Control Fields in all S/I-frames (see [Section 3.3.2](#)).

If the option is only configured in one direction then the maximum window size for the opposite direction shall be taken from the maximum window size value in the existing Retransmission and Flow Control option. In this configuration both L2CAP entities shall use the extended control fields in all S/I-frames.

## 6 STATE MACHINE

*This section is informative. The state machine may not represent all possible scenarios.*

### 6.1 GENERAL RULES FOR THE STATE MACHINE:

- It is implementation specific, and outside the scope of this specification, how the transmissions are triggered.
- “Ignore” means that the signal can be silently discarded.

The following states have been defined to clarify the protocol; the actual number of states and naming in a given implementation is outside the scope of this specification:

- CLOSED – channel not connected.
- WAIT\_CONNECT – a connection request has been received, but only a connection response with indication “pending” can be sent.
- WAIT\_CONNECT\_RSP – a connection request has been sent, pending a positive connect response.
- CONFIG – the different options are being negotiated for both sides; this state comprises a number of substates, see [Section 6.1.3 on page 113](#)
- OPEN – user data transfer state.
- WAIT\_DISCONNECT – a disconnect request has been sent, pending a disconnect response.
- WAIT\_CREATE – a channel creation request has been received, but only a response with indication “pending” can be sent. This state is similar to WAIT\_CONNECT.
- WAIT\_CREATE\_RSP – a channel creation request has been sent, pending a channel creation response. This state is similar to WAIT\_CONNECT\_RSP.
- WAIT\_MOVE – a request to move the current channel to another Controller has been received, but only a response with indication “pending” can be sent.
- WAIT\_MOVE\_RSP – a request to move a channel to another Controller has been sent, pending a move response
- WAIT\_MOVE\_CONFIRM – a response to the move channel request has been sent, waiting for a confirmation of the move operation by the initiator side
- WAIT\_CONFIRM\_RSP – a move channel confirm has been sent, waiting for a move channel confirm response.

In the following state tables and descriptions, the L2CAP\_Data message corresponds to one of the PDU formats used on connection-oriented data channels as described in section 3, including PDUs containing B-frames, I-frames, S-frames.

Some state transitions and actions are triggered only by internal events effecting one of the L2CAP entity implementations, not by preceding L2CAP signaling messages. It is implementation-specific and out of the scope of this specification, how these internal events are realized; just for the clarity of specifying the state machine, the following abstract internal events are used in the state event tables, as far as needed:

- *OpenChannel\_Req* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to set up a new connection-oriented channel.
- *OpenChannel\_Rsp* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to finally accept or refuse a pending connection request.
- *ConfigureChannel\_Req* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to initiate an outgoing configuration request.
- *CloseChannel\_Req* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to close a channel.
- *SendData\_Req* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to transmit an SDU.
- *ReconfigureChannel\_Req* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to reconfigure the parameters of a connection-oriented channel.
- *OpenChannelCntrl\_Req* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to set up a new connection over a Controller identified by a Controller ID.
- *OpenChannelCntrl\_Rsp* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to internally accept or refuse a pending connection over a Controller identified by a Controller ID.
- *MoveChannel\_Req* – a local L2CAP entity is requested to move the current channel to another Controller.
- *ControllerLogicalLinkInd* – a Controller indicates the acceptance or rejection of a logical link request with an Extended Flow Specification.

There is a single state machine for each L2CAP connection-oriented channel that is active. A state machine is created for each new L2CAP\_ConnectReq received. The state machine always starts in the CLOSED state.

To simplify the state event tables, the RTX and ERTX timers, as well as the handling of request retransmissions are described in [Section 6.1.7 on page 121](#) and not included in the state tables.

L2CAP messages not bound to a specific data channel and thus not impacting a channel state (e.g. L2CAP\_InformationReq, L2CAP\_EchoReq) are not covered in this section.

The following states and transitions are illustrated in [Figure 6.1 on page 127](#).

### 6.1.1 CLOSED state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
OpenChannel_req	-	Send L2CAP_ConnectReq	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_ConnectReq	Normal, connection is possible	Send L2CAP_ConnectRsp (success)	CONFIG (substate WAIT_CONFIG)
L2CAP_ConnectReq	Need to indicate pending	Send L2CAP_ConnectRsp (pending)	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_ConnectReq	No resource, not approved, etc.	Send L2CAP_ConnectRsp (refused)	CLOSED
L2CAP_ConnectRsp	-	Ignore	CLOSED
L2CAP_ConfigReq	-	Send L2CAP_CommandReject (with reason Invalid CID)	CLOSED
L2CAP_ConfigRsp	-	Ignore	CLOSED
L2CAP_DisconnectReq	-	Send L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	CLOSED
L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	-	Ignore	CLOSED
L2CAP_Data	-	Ignore	CLOSED
OpenChannelCntrl_Req		Send L2CAP_CreateChanReq	WAIT_CREATE_RSP
L2CAP_CreateChanReq	Normal, connection is possible	Send L2CAP_CreateChanRsp (success)	CONFIG
L2CAP_CreateChanReq	Need to indicate pending	Send L2CAP_CreateChanRsp (pending)	WAIT_CREATE
L2CAP_CreateChanReq	No resource, not approved	Send L2CAP_CreateChanRsp (refused)	CLOSED
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp		Ignore	CLOSED
L2CAP_MoveChanReq		Ignore	CLOSED
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp		Ignore	CLOSED
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm		Ignore	CLOSED
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp		Ignore	CLOSED

Table 6.1: CLOSED state event table

**Notes.** The L2CAP\_ConnectReq message is not mentioned in any of the other states apart from the CLOSED state, as it triggers the establishment of a new channel, thus the branch into a new instance of the state machine.

### 6.1.2 WAIT\_CONNECT\_RSP state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
L2CAP_ConnectRsp	Success indicated in result	Send L2CAP_ConfigReq	CONFIG (substate WAIT_CONFIG)
L2CAP_ConnectRsp	Result pending	-	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_ConnectRsp	Remote side refuses connection	-	CLOSED
L2CAP_ConfigReq	-	Send L2CAP_CommandReject (with reason Invalid CID)	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_ConfigRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_Data	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_CreateChanReq		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanReq		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP

Table 6.2: WAIT\_CONNECT\_RSP state event table

**Notes.** An L2CAP\_DisconnectReq message is not included here, since the Source and Destination CIDs are not available yet to relate it correctly to the state machine of a specific channel.

### 6.1.3 WAIT\_CONNECT state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
<i>OpenChannel_Rsp</i>	Pending connection request is finally acceptable	Send L2CAP_Connect_Rsp (success)	CONFIG (substate WAIT_CONFIG)
<i>OpenChannel_Rsp</i>	Pending connection request is finally refused	Send L2CAP_Connect_Rsp (refused)	CLOSED
L2CAP_ConnectRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_ConfigRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_Data	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_CreateChanReq		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_MoveChanReq		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp		Ignore	WAIT_CONNECT

Table 6.3: WAIT\_CONNECT state event table

**Notes.** An L2CAP\_DisconnectReq or L2CAP\_ConfigReq message is not included here, since the Source and Destination CIDs are not available yet to relate it correctly to the state machine of a specific channel.

### 6.1.4 CONFIG state

Two configuration processes exist as described in [Section 7.1 on page 130](#). The configuration processes are the Standard process and the Lockstep process.

In the Standard and Lockstep configuration processes both L2CAP entities initiate a configuration request during the configuration process. This means that each device adopts an initiator role for the outgoing configuration request, and an acceptor role for the incoming configuration request. Configurations in both directions may occur sequentially, but can also occur in parallel.

In the Lockstep configuration process both L2CAP entities send Configuration Request packets and receive Configuration Response packets with a pending result code before submitting the flow specifications to their local controllers. A final Configuration Response packet is sent by each L2CAP entity indicating the response from its local controller.

The following substates are distinguished within the CONFIG state:

- WAIT\_CONFIG – a device has sent or received a connection response, but has neither initiated a configuration request yet, nor received a configuration request with acceptable parameters.
- WAIT\_SEND\_CONFIG – for the initiator path, a configuration request has not yet been initiated, while for the response path, a request with acceptable options has been received.
- WAIT\_CONFIG\_REQ\_RSP – for the initiator path, a request has been sent but a positive response has not yet been received, and for the acceptor path, a request with acceptable options has not yet been received.
- WAIT\_CONFIG\_RSP – the acceptor path is complete after having responded to acceptable options, but for the initiator path, a positive response on the recent request has not yet been received.
- WAIT\_CONFIG\_REQ – the initiator path is complete after having received a positive response, but for the acceptor path, a request with acceptable options has not yet been received.
- WAIT\_IND\_FINAL\_RSP – for both the initiator and acceptor, the Extended Flow Specification has been sent to the local controller but neither a response from controller nor the final configuration response has yet been received.
- WAIT\_FINAL\_RSP – the device received an indication from the Controller accepting the Extended Flow Specification and has sent a positive response. It is waiting for the remote device to send a configuration response.
- WAIT\_CONTROL\_IND – the device has received a positive response and is waiting for its Controller to accept or reject the Extended Flow Specification.

According to [Section 6.1.1 on page 111](#) and [Section 6.1.2 on page 112](#), the CONFIG state is entered via WAIT\_CONFIG substate from either the CLOSED state, the WAIT\_CONNECT state, or the WAIT\_CONNECT\_RSP state. The CONFIG state is left for the OPEN state if both the initiator and acceptor paths complete successfully.

For better overview, separate tables are given: [Table 6.4](#) shows the success transitions; therein, transitions on one of the minimum paths (no previous non-success transitions) are shaded. [Table 6.5 on page 117](#) shows the non-success transitions within the configuration process, and [Table 6.6 on page 117](#) shows further transition cause by events not belonging to the configuration process itself. The following configuration states and transitions are illustrated in [Figure 6.2 on page 128](#).

Previous state	Event	Condition	Action	Next State
WAIT_CONFIG	ConfigureChannel_Req	Standard process	Send L2CAP_ConfigReq	WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP
WAIT_CONFIG	ConfigureChannel_Req	Lockstep process	Send L2CAP_Config Req (Ext Flow Spec plus other options)	WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP
WAIT_CONFIG	L2CAP_ConfigReq	Options acceptable Standard process	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (success)	WAIT_SEND_CONFIG
WAIT_CONFIG	L2CAP_ConfigReq	Options acceptable Lockstep process	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (pending)	WAIT_SEND_CONFIG
WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigReq	Options acceptable	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (success)	WAIT_CONFIG_RSP
WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side accepts options	(continue waiting for configuration request)	WAIT_CONFIG_REQ
WAIT_CONFIG_REQ	L2CAP_ConfigReq	Options acceptable Standard process	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (success)	OPEN
WAIT_CONFIG_REQ	L2CAP_ConfigReq	Options acceptable Lockstep process	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (pending)	WAIT_IND_FINAL_RSP
WAIT_SEND_CONFIG	ConfigureChannel_Req	-	Send L2CAP_ConfigReq	WAIT_CONFIG_RSP
WAIT_CONFIG_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side accepts options Standard process	-	OPEN

Table 6.4: CONFIG state event table

*Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification*

Previous state	Event	Condition	Action	Next State
WAIT_CONFIG_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side accepts option Lockstep proc		WAIT_IND_FINAL_RSP
WAIT_IND_FINAL_RSP	ControllerLogical LinkInd	Reject	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (fail)	WAIT_CONFIG
WAIT_IND_FINAL_RSP	ControllerLogical LinkInd	Accept	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (success)	WAIT_FINAL_RSP
WAIT_IND_FINAL_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side fail		WAIT_CONFIG
WAIT_IND_FINAL_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side success		WAIT_CONTROL_IND
WAIT_FINAL_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side fail		WAIT_CONFIG
WAIT_FINAL_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side success		OPEN
WAIT_CONTROL_IND	ControllerLogical LinkInd	Reject	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (fail)	WAIT_CONFIG
WAIT_CONTROL_IND	ControllerLogical LinkInd	Accept	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (success)	OPEN

Table 6.4: CONFIG state event table (Continued)

Previous state	Event	Condition	Action	Next State
WAIT_CONFIG	L2CAP_ConfigReq	Options not acceptable	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (fail)	WAIT_CONFIG
WAIT_CONFIG	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONFIG
WAIT_SEND_CONFIG	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_SEND_CONFIG
WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigReq	Options not acceptable	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (fail)	WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP
WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side rejects options	Send L2CAP_ConfigReq (new options)	WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP
WAIT_CONFIG_REQ	L2CAP_ConfigReq	Options not acceptable	Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (fail)	WAIT_CONFIG_REQ
WAIT_CONFIG_REQ	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONFIG_REQ
WAIT_CONFIG_RSP	L2CAP_ConfigRsp	Remote side rejects options	Send L2CAP_ConfigReq (new options)	WAIT_CONFIG_RSP

Table 6.5: CONFIG state/substates event table: non-success transitions within configuration process

Previous state	Event	Condition	Action	Next State
CONFIG (any substate)	CloseChannel_Req	Any internal reason to stop	Send L2CAP_DisconnectReq	WAIT_DISCONNECT
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_DisconnectReq	-	Send L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	CLOSED
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	-	Ignore	CONFIG (remain in substate)
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_Data	-	Process the PDU	CONFIG (remain in substate)

Table 6.6: CONFIG state/substates event table: events not related to configuration process

Previous state	Event	Condition	Action	Next State
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_ CreateChanReq		Ignore	CONFIG (remain in sub- state)
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_ CreateChanRsp		Ignore	CONFIG (remain in sub- state)
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_ MoveChanReq		Ignore	CONFIG (remain in sub- state)
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_ MoveChanRsp		Ignore	CONFIG (remain in sub- state)
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_ MoveChanConfirm		Ignore	CONFIG (remain in sub- state)
CONFIG (any substate)	L2CAP_ MoveChanCon- firmRsp		Ignore	CONFIG (remain in sub- state)

Table 6.6: CONFIG state/substates event table: events not related to configuration process

**Notes:**

- Receiving data PDUs (L2CAP\_Data) in CONFIG state should be relevant only in case of a transition to a reconfiguration procedure (from OPEN state). Discarding the received data is allowed only in Retransmission Mode and Enhanced Retransmission Mode. Discarding an S-frame is allowed but not recommended. If a S-frame is discarded, the monitor timer will cause a new S-frame to be sent after a time out.
- Indicating a failure in a configuration response does not necessarily imply a failure of the overall configuration procedure; instead, based on the information received in the negative response, a modified configuration request may be triggered.

### 6.1.5 OPEN state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
SendData_req	-	Send L2CAP_Data packet according to configured mode	OPEN
ReconfigureChannel_Req	-	Complete outgoing SDU Send L2CAP_ConfigReq	CONFIG (substate WAIT_CONFIG_REQ_RSP)
CloseChannel_Req	-	Send L2CAP_DisconnectReq	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_ConnectRsp	-	Ignore	OPEN
L2CAP_ConfigReq	Incoming config options acceptable	Complete outgoing SDU Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (ok)	CONFIG (substate WAIT_SEND_CONFIG)
L2CAP_ConfigReq	Incoming config options not acceptable	Complete outgoing SDU Send L2CAP_ConfigRsp (fail)	OPEN
L2CAP_DisconnectReq	-	Send L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	CLOSED
L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	-	Ignore	OPEN
L2CAP_Data	-	Process the PDU	OPEN
MoveChannel_Req		Send L2CAP_MoveChanReq	WAIT_MOVE_RSP
L2CAP_CreateChanReq		Ignore	OPEN
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp		Ignore	OPEN
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	Logical Link create/modify is not needed	Send L2CAP_MoveChanRsp (success)	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	Need to indicate pending (logical link create/modify is needed)	Send L2CAP_MoveChanRsp (pending)	WAIT_MOVE
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	No resource, not approved	Send L2CAP_MoveChanRsp (refused)	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp		Ignore	OPEN

Table 6.7: OPEN state event table

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm		Ignore	OPEN
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp		Ignore	OPEN

Table 6.7: OPEN state event table

Note: The outgoing SDU shall be completed from the view of the remote entity. Therefore all PDUs forming the SDU shall have been reliably transmitted by the local entity and acknowledged by the remote entity, before entering the configuration state.

### 6.1.6 WAIT\_DISCONNECT state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
L2CAP_ConnectRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_ConfigReq	-	Send L2CAP_CommandReject with reason Invalid CID	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_ConfigRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_DisconnectReq	-	Send L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	CLOSED
L2CAP_DisconnectRsp	-	-	CLOSED
L2CAP_Data	-	Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_CreateChanReq		Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp		Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_MoveChanReq		Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp		Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm		Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp		Ignore	WAIT_DISCONNECT

Table 6.8: WAIT\_DISCONNECT state event table

### 6.1.7 WAIT\_CREATE\_RSP state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
L2CAP_CreateChanReq		Ignore	WAIT_CREATE_RSP
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp	Success indicated in result	Send L2CAP_ConfigReq	CONFIG (substate WAIT_CONFIG)
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp	Result pending		WAIT_CREATE_RSP
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp	Remote side refuses connection		CLOSED
L2CAP_MoveChanReq		Ignore	WAIT_CREATE_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp		Ignore	WAIT_CREATE_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm		Ignore	WAIT_CREATE_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp		Ignore	WAIT_CREATE_RSP

Table 6.9: WAIT\_CREATE\_RSP state event table

### 6.1.8 WAIT\_CREATE state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
OpenChannelCntrl_Req	-	Ignore	WAIT_CREATE
OpenChannelCntrl_Rsp	Pending connection request is finally acceptable	Send L2CAP_CreateChanRsp (success)	CONFIG
OpenChannelCntrl_Rsp	Pending connection request is finally refused	Send L2CAP_CreateChanRsp (refused)	CLOSED
L2CAP_CreateChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_CREATE
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CREATE
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_CREATE
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CREATE
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm	-	Ignore	WAIT_CREATE
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CREATE

Table 6.10: WAIT\_CREATE state event table

### 6.1.9 WAIT\_MOVE\_RSP state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	Prioritization algorithm (remain initiator)	Send L2CAP_MoveChanRsp (collision)	WAIT_MOVE_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	Prioritization algorithm (become responder) and logical link create/modify is needed)	Send L2CAP_MoveChanRsp (pending)	WAIT_MOVE
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	Prioritization algorithm (become responder) and logical link create/modify is not needed)	Send L2CAP_MoveChanRsp (success)	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_RSP
L2CAP_CreateChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp	Result pending	-	WAIT_MOVE_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp	Remote side refuses move and/or local side refuses move (create/modify logical link fails)	Send L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm (failure)	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp	Both remote side and local side accepts move (create/modify logical link succeeds)	Send L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm (success)	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_RSP

Table 6.11: WAIT\_MOVE\_RSP state event table

### 6.1.10 WAIT\_MOVE state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
ControllerLogicalLinkInd	Create/modify logical link completed successfully	Send L2CAP_MoveChanRsp (success)	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
ControllerLogicalLinkInd	Create/modify logical link completed with failure	Send L2CAP_MoveChanRsp (refused)	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
L2CAP_CreateChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE

Table 6.12: WAIT\_MOVE state event table

### 6.1.11 WAIT\_MOVE\_CONFIRM state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
L2CAP_CreateChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm	Result of move is success	Send L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp	OPEN (on new Controller)
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm	Result of move is failure	Send L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp	OPEN (on old Controller)
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM

Table 6.13: WAIT\_MOVE\_CONFIRM state event table

### 6.1.12 WAIT\_CONFIRM\_RSP state

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
L2CAP_CreateChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP
L2CAP_CreateChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanReq	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanRsp	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirm	-	Ignore	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp	Move succeeded		OPEN (on new Controller)
L2CAP_MoveChanConfirmRsp	Move failed		OPEN (on old Controller)

Table 6.14: WAIT\_CONFIRM\_RSP state event table

## 6.2 TIMERS EVENTS

### 6.2.1 RTX

The Response Timeout eXpired (RTX) timer is used to terminate the channel when the remote endpoint is unresponsive to signaling requests. This timer is started when a signaling request (see [Section 7 on page 130](#)) is sent to the remote device. This timer is disabled when the response is received. If the initial timer expires, a duplicate Request message may be sent or the channel identified in the request may be disconnected. If a duplicate Request message is sent, the RTX timeout value shall be reset to a new value at least double the previous value. When retransmitting the Request message, the context of the same state shall be assumed as with the original transmission. If a Request message is received that is identified as a duplicate (retransmission), it shall be processed in the context of the same state which applied when the original Request message was received.

Implementations have the responsibility to decide on the maximum number of Request retransmissions performed at the L2CAP level before terminating the channel identified by the Requests. The exception is fixed channel CIDs since they can never be terminated. The LE Peripheral may disconnect the link on the expiry of the RTX timer. The decision should be based on the flush timeout of the signaling link. The longer the flush timeout, the more retransmissions may be performed at the physical layer and the reliability of the channel improves, requiring fewer retransmissions at the L2CAP level.

For example, if the flush timeout is infinite, no retransmissions should be performed at the L2CAP level. When terminating the channel, it is not necessary to send a L2CAP\_DisconnectReq and enter WAIT\_DISCONNECT state. Channels can be transitioned directly to the CLOSED state.

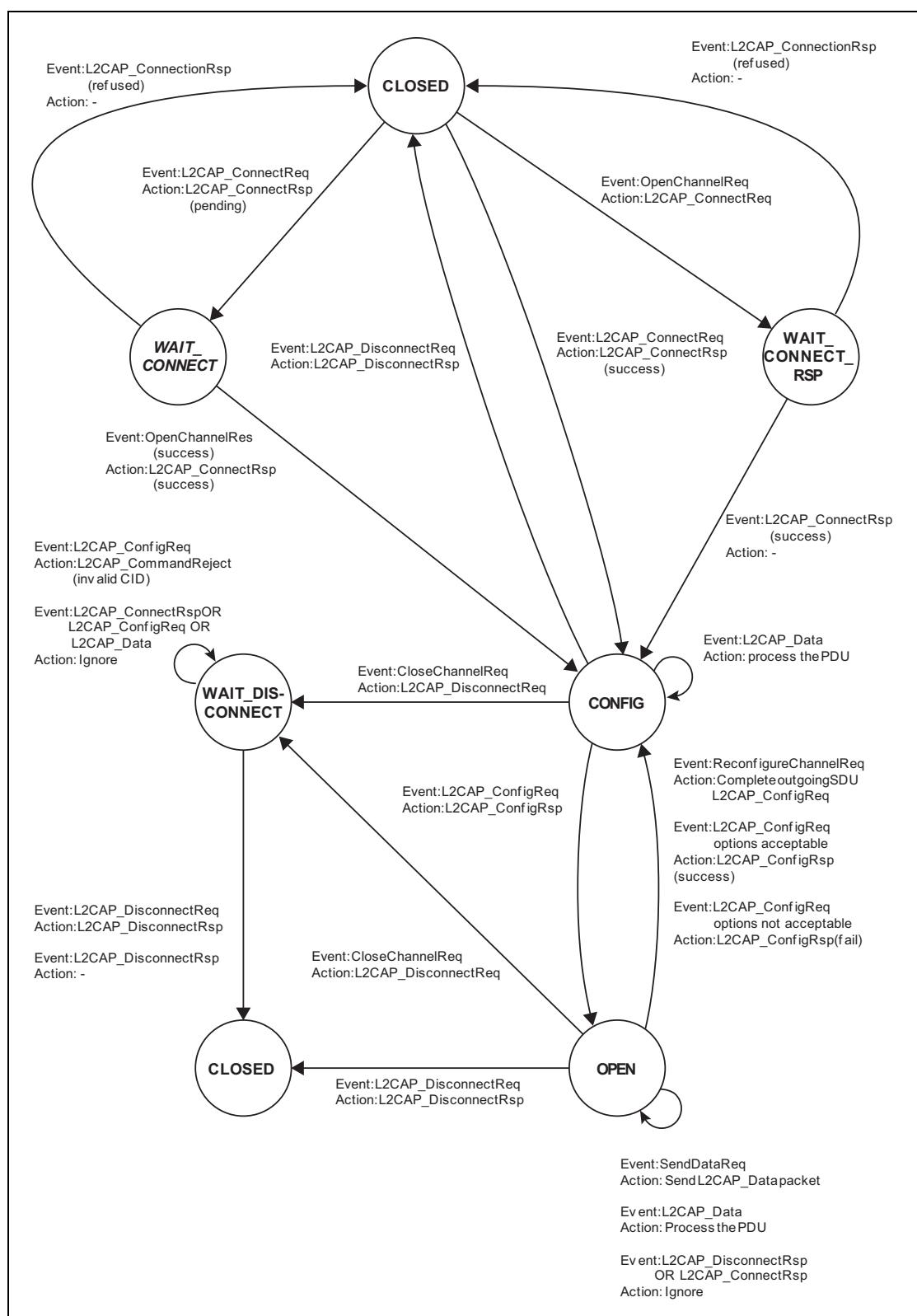
The value of this timer is implementation-dependent but the minimum initial value is 1 second and the maximum initial value is 60 seconds. One RTX timer shall exist for each outstanding signaling request, including each Echo Request. The timer disappears on the final expiration, when the response is received, or the physical link is lost. The maximum elapsed time between the initial start of this timer and the initiation of channel termination (if no response is received) is 60 seconds.

### 6.2.2 ERTX

The Extended Response Timeout eXpired (ERTX) timer is used in place of the RTX timer when it is suspected the remote endpoint is performing additional processing of a request signal. This timer is started when the remote endpoint responds that a request is pending, e.g., when an L2CAP\_ConnectRsp event with a “connect pending” result (0x0001) is received. This timer is disabled when the formal response is received or the physical link is lost. If the initial timer expires, a duplicate Request may be sent or the channel may be disconnected.

If a duplicate Request is sent, the particular ERTX timer disappears, replaced by a new RTX timer and the whole timing procedure restarts as described previously for the RTX timer.

The value of this timer is implementation-dependent but the minimum initial value is 60 seconds and the maximum initial value is 300 seconds. Similar to RTX, there MUST be at least one ERTX timer for each outstanding request that received a Pending response. There should be at most one (RTX or ERTX) associated with each outstanding request. The maximum elapsed time between the initial start of this timer and the initiation of channel termination (if no response is received) is 300 seconds. When terminating the channel, it is not necessary to send a L2CAP\_DisconnectReq and enter WAIT\_DISCONNECT state. Channels should be transitioned directly to the CLOSED state.



*Figure 6.1: States and transitions*

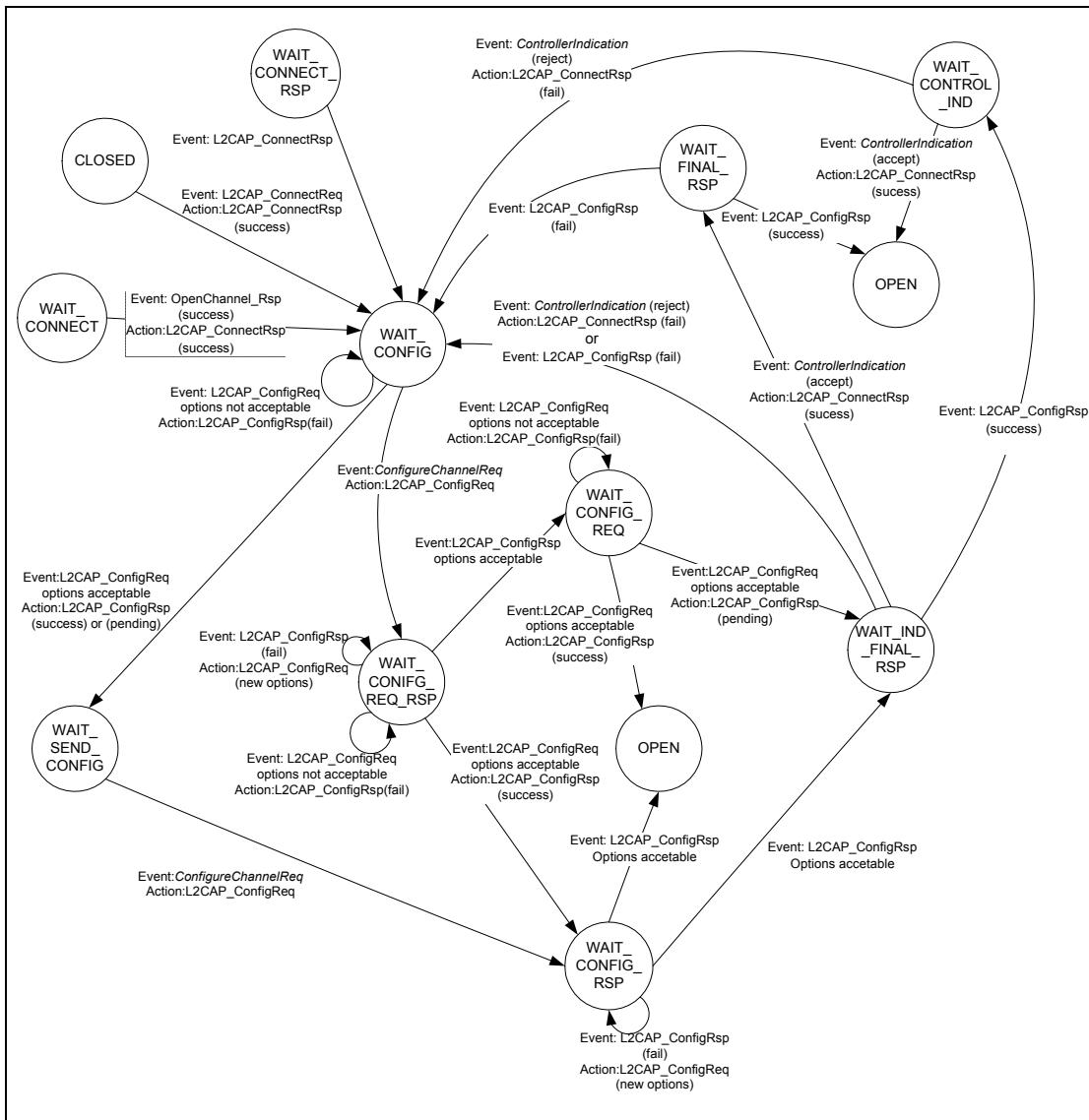


Figure 6.2: Configuration states and transitions

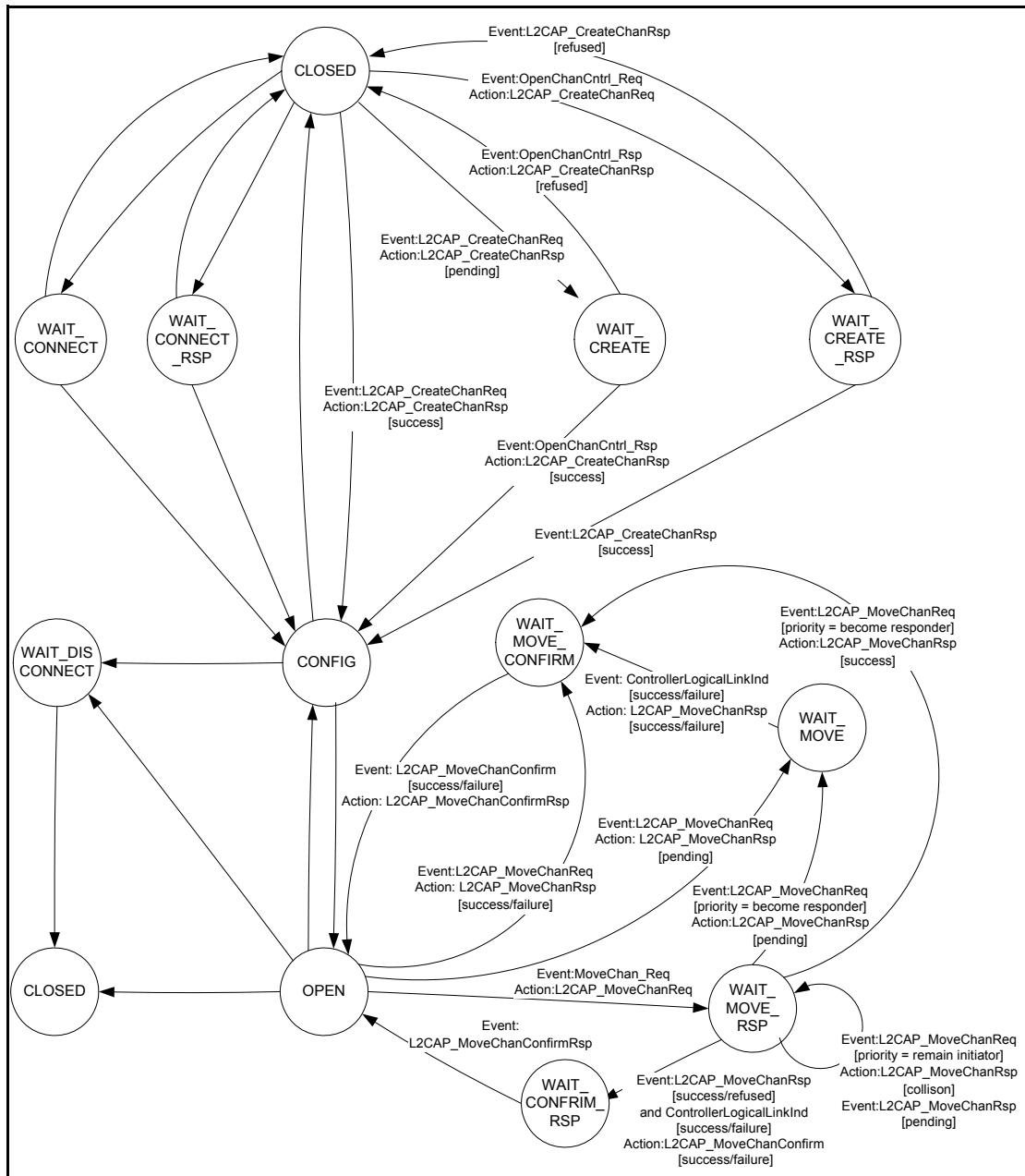


Figure 6.3: States and transitions—AMP enabled operation

Figure 6.3 is based on [Figure 6.1 on page 127](#). Only the new transitions show event/action labels. Transitions without labels are the same as in [Figure 6.1](#).

## 7 GENERAL PROCEDURES

---

This section describes the general operation of L2CAP, including the configuration process, the handling and the processing of user data for transportation over the air interface. This section also describes the operation of L2CAP features including the delivery of erroneous packets, the flushing of expired data and operation in connectionless mode, operation collision resolution, aggregation of best effort flow specifications, and prioritizing data over HCI.

Procedures for the flow control and retransmission modes are described in [Section 8 on page 148](#).

### 7.1 CONFIGURATION PROCESS

Configuration consists of two processes, the Standard process and the Lockstep process. The Lockstep process shall be used if both L2CAP entities support the Extended Flow Specification option otherwise the Standard process shall be used.

For both processes, configuring the channel parameters shall be done independently for both directions. Both configurations may be done in parallel.

Each configuration parameter is one-directional. The configuration parameters describe the non default parameters the device sending a Configuration Request will accept. The configuration request cannot request a change in the parameters the device receiving the request will accept.

If a device needs to establish the value of a configuration parameter the remote device will accept, then it must wait for a configuration request containing that configuration parameter to be sent from the remote device.

The Lockstep process is used when the channel parameters include an Extended Flow Specification option. The Lockstep process can be divided into two phases. In the first phase, each L2CAP entity shall receive an Extended Flow Specification option along with all non-default parameters from its peer L2CAP entity and then present the pair of Extended Flow specifications (local and remote) to its local Controller. In the second phase, each L2CAP entity shall report the result from its local Controller to the peer L2CAP entity. The Lockstep process is described in [Section 7.1.3](#). The Standard process is described in [Section 7.1.4](#).

Both the Lockstep and Standard processes can be abstracted into the initial Request configuration path and a Response configuration path, followed by the reverse direction phase. Reconfiguration follows a similar two-phase process by requiring configuration in both directions.

During a reconfiguration session, all data traffic on the channel should be suspended pending the outcome of the configuration. If an L2CAP entity receives

a Configuration Request while it is waiting for a response it shall not block sending the Configuration Response, otherwise the configuration process may deadlock.

### 7.1.1 Request Path

The Request Path can configure the following:

- requester's incoming MTU
- requester's outgoing flush timeout
- requester's outgoing QoS
- requester's incoming and outgoing flow and error control information
- requester's incoming and outgoing Frame Check Sequence option
- requester's outgoing QoS using Extended Flow Specification option
- requester's incoming Extended Window size option plus incoming and outgoing frame format.

[Table 7.1 on page 131](#) defines the configuration options that may be placed in a Configuration Request.

Parameter	Description
MTU	Incoming MTU information
FlushTO	Outgoing flush timeout <sup>1</sup>
QoS	Outgoing QoS information <sup>1</sup>
RFCMode	Incoming and outgoing Retransmission and Flow Control Mode
FCS	Incoming and outgoing Frame Check Sequence
ExtFlowSpec	Outgoing QoS information <sup>1</sup>
ExtWindow	Incoming Extended Window size plus incoming and outgoing frame format

*Table 7.1: Parameters allowed in Request*

1. FlushTO, QoS and ExtFlowSpec are considered QoS information. ExtFlowSpec is used instead of FlushTO and QoS when both devices support ExtFlowSpec.

The state machine for the configuration process is described in [Section 6 on page 109](#).

### 7.1.2 Response Path

The Response Path can configure the following:

- responder's outgoing MTU, that is the remote side's incoming MTU
- remote side's flush timeout
- responder's incoming QoS Flow Specification (remote side's outgoing QoS Flow Specification)
- responder's incoming and outgoing Flow and Error Control information
- responder's incoming QoS Extended Flow Specification (remote side's outgoing QoS Flow Specification)
- responder's outgoing Extended Window size.

For the Standard process, if a request-oriented parameter is not present in the Request message (reverts to last agreed value), the remote side may negotiate for a non-default value by including the proposed value in a negative Response message. [Table 7.2](#) defines the configuration options that may be placed in a Configuration Response.

Parameter	Description
MTU	Outgoing MTU information
FlushTO	Incoming flush timeout <sup>1</sup>
QoS	Incoming QoS information <sup>1</sup>
RFCMode	Incoming and outgoing Retransmission and Flow Control Mode
ExtFlowSpec	Incoming QoS information <sup>1</sup>
ExtWindow	Outgoing Extended Window size

*Table 7.2: Parameters allowed in Response*

1. FlushTO, QoS and ExtFlowSpec are considered QoS information. ExtFlowSpec is used instead of FlushTO and QoS when both devices support ExtFlowSpec

### 7.1.3 Lockstep Configuration Process

Configuration Request packets are sent to establish or change the channel parameters including the QoS contract between two L2CAP entities. An Extended Flow Specification option along with any non-default parameters shall be sent in a Configuration Request following the sending or receipt of a Connect Response which accepts an L2CAP Connect Request for the channel being configured. Unlike the Standard process, negotiation involving the sending of multiple Configuration Request packets shall not be performed. In other words, only one Configuration Request packet shall be sent by each L2CAP entity during the Lockstep configuration process. The Lockstep process shall only be

used during channel reconfiguration when an Extended Flow Specification option is present in the Configuration Request packet used for reconfiguration.

The Extended Flow Specification shall be sent for all channels created on AMP-U logical links and shall only be sent for channels created on the ACL-U logical link if both the local and remote L2CAP entities have indicated support for the Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR in their Extended Features masks. The Extended Features mask shall be obtained via the L2CAP Information Request/Response signaling mechanism (InfoType = 0x0002) prior to the issuance of the L2CAP Configuration Request. If a Configuration Request is sent containing the Extended Flow Specification option then the Quality of Service option and Flush Timeout option shall not be included.

Configuration Response packets shall be sent in reply to Configuration Request packets except when the error condition is covered by a Command Reject response. Although the L2CAP Configuration signaling mechanism allows for the use of wildcards, wildcard values are not supported in the Extended Flow Specification since each parameter represents a property of the traffic in one direction only, and no negotiation is intended to be performed at the L2CAP Configuration level.

The recipient of a Configuration Request shall perform all necessary checks with the Controller to validate that the requested QoS can be granted. In the case of a BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE Controller the L2CAP layer performs the Controller checks. If HCI is used then the L2CAP entity should check that the requested QoS can be achieved over the HCI transport. In order to perform these checks, the recipient needs to have the QoS parameters for both directions. In order for each side to determine when to perform relevant Controller checks, each side will reply with a result “Pending” (0x0004). If no parameters are sent in the Configuration Response packet with result “Pending” then the parameters sent in the Configuration Request have been accepted without change. This Lockstep procedure results in both L2CAP entities performing the following:

- Receiving a Configuration Request containing the Extended Flow Specification option along with all non-default parameters
- Sending a Configuration Response with any modifications to the Extended Flow Specification option and allowed modifications to non-default parameters (result “Pending”)
- Sending a Configuration Request containing the Extended Flow Specification option along with all non-default parameters
- Receiving a Configuration Response containing any modifications to the Extended Flow Specification option and allowed modifications to non-default parameters (result “Pending”).

The ERTX timer is used when a Configuration Response is received with result “Pending” (see [Section 6.2.2](#)).

If a Configuration Response with result “success” is received before a Configuration Response with result “pending” is received the recipient shall disconnect the channel. This is a violation of the Lockstep configuration process.

If a device sends an Extended Flow Specification option in a Configuration Request with service type “Best Effort” and receives a Configuration Request with service type “Guaranteed,” the channel shall be disconnected. If a device sends an Extended Flow Specification in a Configuration Request with type “Guaranteed” and receives a Configuration Request with service type “Best Effort,” the channel shall be disconnected.

If the service type is “Best Effort” then values for certain parameters may be sent in a Configuration Response with result “Pending” to indicate the maximum bandwidth the sender of the Configuration Response is capable to receive. The values sent in a Configuration Response with result “Pending” and service type Best Effort shall be in accordance with [Table 7.3](#).

Parameter	Changes permitted by responder
Maximum SDU Size	May decrease only
SDU Inter-arrival Time	May increase only
Access Latency	None
Flush Timeout	None

*Table 7.3: Permitted parameter in L2CAP Configuration Response for Service Type “Best Effort”*

After the Configuration Response is received with result “Pending,” L2CAP may issue the necessary checks with the Controller.

If the Controller cannot support the Extended Flow Specifications with service type “Guaranteed,” then the recipient of the Configuration Request shall send a Configuration Response indicating a result code of “Failure - flow spec rejected” (0x0005). If the Controller indicates that it can support the Extended Flow Specifications, then the recipient of the Configuration Request shall send a Configuration Response with result code of “Success” (0x0000) with no parameters.

If the Result of the Configuration Response is Failure (0x0005) for service type “Guaranteed” then an Extended Flow Specification option may be sent in the Configuration Response. The Extended Flow Specification parameters sent in the Configuration Response may be changed to reflect a QoS level that would be acceptable, but shall only be changed in accordance with [Table 7.4](#).

Parameter	Changes permitted by responder
Maximum SDU Size	None

*Table 7.4: Permitted parameter changes in L2CAP Configuration Response for Service Type “Guaranteed”*

Parameter	Changes permitted by responder
SDU Inter-arrival Time	None
Access Latency	May decrease only
Flush Timeout	May decrease only (unless set to 0xFFFFFFFF, in which case no change is permitted)

Table 7.4: Permitted parameter changes in L2CAP Configuration Response for Service Type “Guaranteed” (Continued)

If an L2CAP Configuration Response is received containing the Extended Flow Specification option with the same values sent earlier, the upper layer shall be notified of the error.

#### 7.1.4 Standard Configuration Process

For the Standard process the following general procedure shall be used for each direction:

1. Local device informs the remote device of the parameters that the local device will accept using a Configuration Request.
2. Remote device responds, agreeing or disagreeing with these values, including the default ones, using a Configuration Response.
3. The local and remote devices repeat steps (1) and (2) until agreement on all parameters is reached.

The decision on the amount of time (or messages) spent configuring the channel parameters before terminating the configuration is left to the implementation, but it shall not last more than 120 seconds.

There are two types of configuration parameters: negotiable and non-negotiable.

Negotiable parameters are those that a remote side receiving a Configuration Request can disagree with by sending a Configuration Response with the Unacceptable Parameters (0x0001) result code, proposing new values that can be accepted. Non-negotiable parameters are only informational and the recipient of a Configuration Request cannot disagree with them but can provide adjustments to the values in a positive Configuration Response. [Section 5](#) identifies each parameter as negotiable or non-negotiable. Note: MTU is non-negotiable but can be rejected if a value lower than the mandated minimum is proposed (See [Section 5.1](#)).

The following rules shall be used for parameter negotiation in the Request Path:

1. An L2CAP entity shall send at least one Configuration Request packet as part of initial configuration or reconfiguration. If all default or previously agreed values are acceptable, a Configuration Request packet with no options shall be sent.

2. When an L2CAP entity receives a positive Configuration Response from the remote device it shall consider all configuration parameters explicitly contained in the Configuration Request along with the default and previously agreed values not explicitly contained in the Configuration Request as accepted by the remote device.
3. When an L2CAP entity receives a negative Configuration Response and sends a new Configuration Request it shall include all the options it sent in the previous Configuration Request with the same values except the negotiable options that were explicitly rejected in the negative Configuration Response which will have new values. Note: the resending of all the options provides backwards compatibility with remote implementations that don't assume rule 4 when responding.
4. Negotiable options not included in a negative Configuration Response are considered accepted by the remote device. Note: for backwards compatibility if non-negotiable options are included in a negative Configuration Response, they should be processed as if the response was positive.

The following rules shall be used for parameter negotiation in the Response Path:

1. A positive Configuration Response accepts the values of all configuration parameters explicitly contained in the received Configuration Request and the default and previously agreed values not explicitly provided.
2. An L2CAP Entity shall send a negative Configuration Response to reject negotiable parameter values that are unacceptable, be it values explicitly provided in the received Configuration Request or previously agreed or default values. The rejected parameters sent in a negative Configuration Response shall have values that are acceptable to the L2CAP entity sending the negative Configuration Response.
3. All negotiable options being rejected shall be rejected in the same negative Configuration Response.
4. The only options allowed in a negative Configuration Response are the negotiable options being rejected. No wildcards or adjustments to non-negotiable options shall be in a negative Configuration Response.
5. Negotiable options not included in the negative Configuration Response are considered accepted.

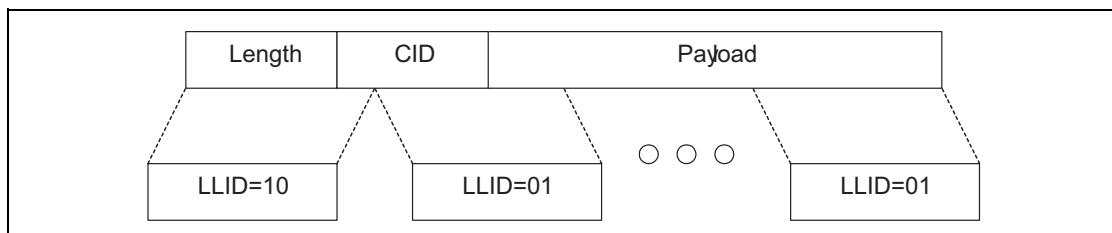
## 7.2 FRAGMENTATION AND RECOMBINATION

Fragmentation is the breaking down of PDUs into smaller pieces for delivery from L2CAP to the lower layer. Recombination is the process of reassembling a PDU from fragments delivered up from the lower layer. Fragmentation and Recombination may be applied to any L2CAP PDUs.

### 7.2.1 Fragmentation of L2CAP PDUs

An L2CAP implementation may fragment any L2CAP PDU for delivery to the lower layers. If L2CAP runs directly over the Controller without HCI, then an implementation may fragment the PDU into multiple Controller packets for transmission over the air. If L2CAP runs above the HCI, then an implementation may send HCI transport sized fragments to the Controller. All L2CAP fragments associated with an L2CAP PDU shall be processed for transmission by the Controller before any other L2CAP PDU for the same logical transport shall be processed.

For example, in the BR/EDR controller the two LLID bits defined in the first octet of baseband payload (also called the frame header) are used to signal the start and continuation of L2CAP PDUs. LLID shall be ‘10’ for the first segment in an L2CAP PDU and ‘01’ for a continuation segment. An illustration of fragmentation for a BR/EDR controller is shown in [Figure 7.1 on page 137](#). An example of how fragmentation might be used in a device with HCI is shown in [Figure 7.2 on page 138](#).



*Figure 7.1: L2CAP fragmentation in a BR/EDR Controller*

Note: The BR/EDR link controller is able to impose a different fragmentation on the PDU by using “start” and “continuation” indications as fragments are translated into baseband packets. Thus, both L2CAP and the BR/EDR link controller use the same mechanism to control the size of fragments.

## 7.2.2 Recombination of L2CAP PDUs

Controllers will attempt to deliver packets in sequence and without errors. Recombination of fragments may occur in the Controller but ultimately it is the responsibility of L2CAP to reassemble PDUs and SDUs and to check the length field of the SDUs. As the Controller receives packet fragments, it either signals the L2CAP layer on the arrival of each fragment, or accumulates a number of fragments (before the receive buffer fills up or a timer expires) before passing packets to the L2CAP layer.

An L2CAP implementation shall use the length field in the header of L2CAP PDUs, see [Section 3 on page 47](#), as a consistency check and shall discard any L2CAP PDUs that fail to match the length field. If channel reliability is not needed, packets with invalid lengths may be silently discarded. For reliable channels using Basic mode, an L2CAP implementation shall indicate to the upper layer that the channel has become unreliable. Reliable channels are defined by having an infinite flush timeout value as specified in [Section 5.2 on page 91](#). For higher data integrity L2CAP should be operated in the Enhanced Retransmission Mode.

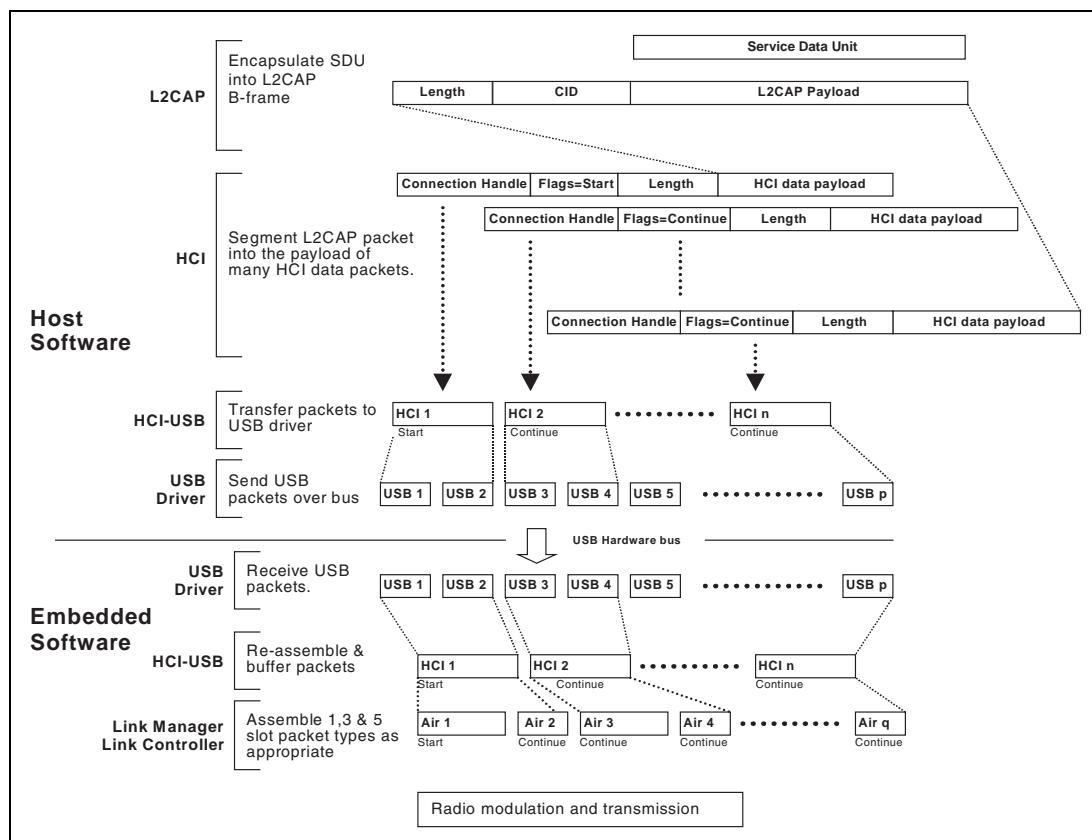


Figure 7.2: Example of fragmentation processes in a device with a BR/EDR Controller and USB HCI transport

## 7.3 ENCAPSULATION OF SDUs

All SDUs are encapsulated into one or more L2CAP PDUs.

In Basic L2CAP mode, an SDU shall be encapsulated with a minimum of L2CAP protocol elements, resulting in a type of L2CAP PDU called a Basic Information Frame (B-frame).

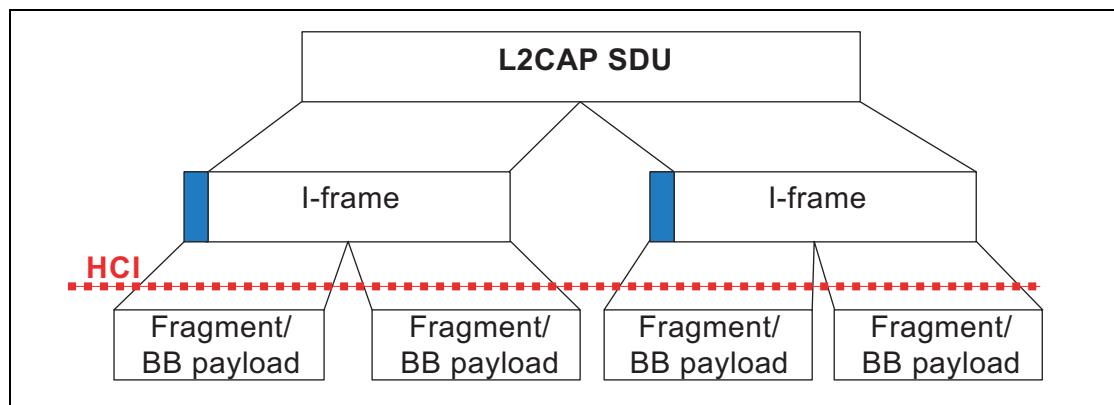
Segmentation and Reassembly operations are only used in Enhanced Retransmission mode, Streaming mode, Retransmission mode, and Flow Control mode. SDUs may be segmented into a number of smaller packets called SDU segments. Each segment shall be encapsulated with L2CAP protocol elements resulting in an L2CAP PDU called an Information Frame (I-frame).

The maximum size of an SDU segment shall be given by the Maximum PDU Payload Size (MPS). The MPS parameter may be exported using an implementation specific interface to the upper layer.

Note that this specification does not have a normative service interface with the upper layer, nor does it assume any specific buffer management scheme of a host implementation. Consequently, a reassembly buffer may be part of the upper layer entity. It is assumed that SDU boundaries shall be preserved between peer upper layer entities.

### 7.3.1 Segmentation of L2CAP SDUs

In Flow Control, Streaming, or Retransmission modes, incoming SDUs may be broken down into segments, which shall then be individually encapsulated with L2CAP protocol elements (header and checksum fields) to form I-frames. I-frames are subject to flow control and may be subject to retransmission procedures. The header carries a 2 bit SAR field that is used to identify whether the I-frame is a 'start', 'end' or 'continuation' packet or whether it carries a complete, unsegmented SDU. [Figure 7.3 on page 139](#) illustrates segmentation and fragmentation.



*Figure 7.3: Segmentation and fragmentation of an SDU in a BR/EDR Controller*

### 7.3.2 Reassembly of L2CAP SDUs

The receiving side uses the SAR field of incoming 'I-frames' for the reassembly process. The L2CAP SDU length field, present in the "start of SDU" I-frame, is an extra integrity check, and together with the sequence numbers may be used to indicate lost L2CAP SDUs to the application. [Figure 7.3 on page 139](#) illustrates segmentation and fragmentation.

### 7.3.3 Segmentation and fragmentation

[Figure 7.4 on page 140](#) illustrates the use of segmentation and fragmentation operations to transmit a single SDU. Note that while SDUs and L2CAP PDUs are transported in peer-to-peer fashion, the fragment size used by the Fragmentation and Recombination routines is implementation specific and may not be the same in the sender and the receiver. The over-the-air sequence of packet fragments as created by the sender is common to both devices.

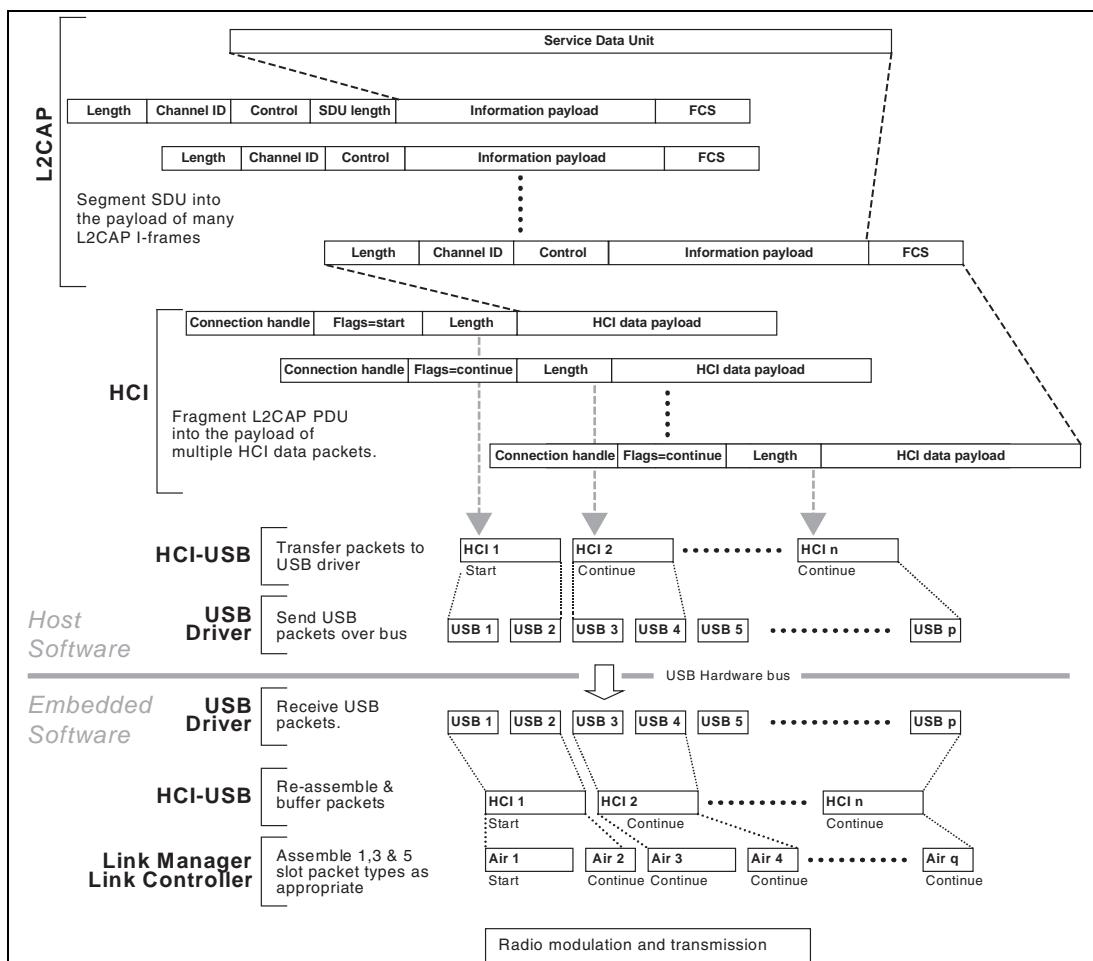


Figure 7.4: Example of segmentation and fragment processes in a device with a BR/EDR Controller and USB HCI Transport<sup>4</sup>

4. For simplicity, the stripping of any additional HCI and USB specific information fields prior to the creation of the baseband packets (Air\_1, Air\_2, etc.) is not shown in the figure.

## 7.4 DELIVERY OF ERRONEOUS L2CAP SDUS

Some applications may require corrupted or incomplete L2CAP SDUs to be delivered to the upper layer. If delivery of erroneous L2CAP SDUs is enabled, the receiving side will pass information to the upper layer on which parts of the L2CAP SDU (i.e., which L2CAP frames) have been lost, failed the error check, or passed the error check. If delivery of erroneous L2CAP SDUs is disabled, the receiver shall discard any L2CAP SDU segment with any missing frames or any frames failing the error checks. L2CAP SDUs whose length field does not match the actual frame length shall also be discarded.

## 7.5 OPERATION WITH FLUSHING ON ACL-U LOGICAL LINKS

In the L2CAP configuration using either the Flush Timeout option or the Extended Flow Specification option, the Flush timeout may be set separately per L2CAP channel, but in the BR/EDR baseband, the flush mechanisms operate per ACL logical transport.

When there is more than one L2CAP channel mapped to the same ACL logical transport, the automatic flush time-out does not discriminate between L2CAP channels. The automatic flush time-out also applies to unicast data sent via the L2CAP connectionless channel. The exception is packets marked as non-automatically-flushable via the Packet\_Boundary\_Flag in the HCI ACL Data Packet (see [Section 1.1 on page 31](#)). The automatic flush time-out flushes a specific automatically-flushable L2CAP PDU. The HCI Flush command flushes all outstanding L2CAP PDUs for the ACL logical transport including L2CAP PDUs marked as non-automatically-flushable. Therefore, care has to be taken when using the Automatic Flush Time-out and the HCI Flush command. The HCI Enhanced Flush command should be used instead.

All packets associated with a reliable connection shall be marked as non-automatically-flushable (if it is mapped to an ACL logical transport with a finite automatic flush time-out) or L2CAP Enhanced Retransmission mode or Retransmission mode shall be used. In Enhanced Retransmission mode or Retransmission mode, loss of flushed L2CAP PDUs on the channel is detected by the L2CAP ARQ mechanism and they are retransmitted. Note that L2CAP Enhanced Retransmission mode or Retransmission mode might be used for other purposes such as the need for a residual error rate that is much smaller than the baseband can deliver. In this situation L2CAP Enhanced Retransmission mode or Retransmission mode and the Non-Flushable Packet Boundary Flag feature can be used at the same time.

If it is desired to send unicast data via the L2CAP connectionless channel which is not subject to automatic flushing, then the data should be marked as non-automatically flushable if it is mapped to an ACL logical transport with a finite automatic flush time-out. Unicast data sent via the L2CAP connectionless channel may be marked flushable.

There is only one automatic flush time-out setting per ACL logical transport. Therefore, all time bounded L2CAP channels on an ACL logical transport with an automatic flush time-out setting should configure the same flush time-out value at the L2CAP level. The flush time-out setting for the ACL logical transport also applies to unicast data sent via the L2CAP connectionless channel which are marked flushable.

If Automatic Flush Time-out is used, then it should be taken into account that it only flushes one L2CAP PDU. If one PDU has timed out and needs flushing, then other automatically-flushable packets on the same logical transport are also likely to need flushing. Therefore, flushing can be handled by the HCI Enhanced Flush command so that all outstanding automatically-flushable L2CAP PDUs are flushed.

When both reliable and isochronous data is to be sent over the same ACL logical transport, an infinite Automatic Flush Time-out can be used. In this case the isochronous data is flushed using the HCI Enhanced Flush command with Packet\_Type set to “Automatically-Flushable Only,” thus preserving the reliable data.

## 7.6 CONNECTIONLESS DATA CHANNEL

In addition to connection-oriented channels, L2CAP also provides a connectionless channel. Data sent on the connectionless channel shall only be sent over the BR/EDR radio. The connectionless channel allows broadcast transmissions from the master device to all members of the piconet or unicast transmissions from either a master or slave to a single remote device. Data sent through the connectionless channel is sent in a best-effort manner. The connectionless channel provided by L2CAP has no quality of service.

While L2CAP itself does not provide retransmission for data sent via the connectionless channel, the baseband does provide an ARQ scheme for unicast data (see [\[vol.2, part B\] Section 7.6 on page 150](#)). If a higher degree of reliability is desired for unicast data sent via the connectionless L2CAP channel than is provided by the baseband ARQ scheme then an ARQ scheme should be implemented at a higher layer.

No acknowledgement is provided by the baseband for broadcast transmissions and hence broadcast transmissions sent via the connectionless L2CAP channel are unreliable and hence might or might not reach each member of the piconet.

The receiving L2CAP entity may silently discard data received via the connectionless L2CAP channel if the data packet is addressed to a PSM and no application is registered to receive data on that PSM.

Note that L2CAP does not provide flow control for either connection-oriented L2CAP channels operating in Basic mode or for traffic on the connectionless L2CAP channel. Hence if data received by L2CAP is not accepted by the target

applications in a timely manner, congestion can occur in a receiving L2CAP implementation. For connection-oriented channels, the receiving L2CAP entity may elect to close a channel if the target application for that channel does not accept the data in a timely manner. Since this option is not available for unicast data received via the connectionless L2CAP channel, the receiving L2CAP entity may instead elect to de-register the application receiving the data or to disconnect the underlying physical link. An application shall be notified if it is de-registered. If the underlying physical link is disconnected then all applications utilizing that physical link shall be notified.

Unicast data shall only be sent via the connectionless L2CAP channel to a remote device if the remote device indicates support for Unicast Connectionless Data Reception in the L2CAP Extended Features Mask.<sup>5</sup>

Unicast data sent via the L2CAP connectionless channel are subject to automatic flushing and hence the packet boundary flags should be set appropriately if the controller supports the Packet Boundary Flag feature. See [Section 7.5](#) for further details. Since the receiving L2CAP entity has no mechanism to enable it to know whether received packets were originally marked as flushable or non-flushable on the transmitting device, the receiving L2CAP entity should treat all unicast packets received via the connectionless L2CAP packet as non-flushable.

If encryption is required for a given profile, then the profile or application shall ensure that authentication is performed and encryption is enabled prior to sending any unicast data on the connectionless L2CAP channel by utilizing Security Mode 4 as defined in GAP ([\[Vol. 3\] Part C, Section 5.2.2](#)). There is no mechanism provided in this specification to prevent reception of unencrypted data on the connectionless L2CAP channel. An application which requires received data to be encrypted should ignore any unencrypted data it may receive over the connectionless channel.

Broadcast transmissions to the connectionless channel are sent with the broadcast LT\_ADDR and hence may be received by any of the slaves in the piconet. If it is desirable to restrict the reception of the transmitted data to only a subset of the slaves in the piconet, then higher level encryption may be used to support private communication.

The master will not receive transmissions broadcast on the connectionless channel. Therefore, higher layer protocols must loopback any broadcast data traffic being sent to the master device if required.

The connectionless data channel shall not be used with Enhanced Retransmission mode, Retransmission Mode or Flow Control Mode.

---

5. Note that the Unicast Connectionless Data Reception bit in the L2CAP Extended Features Mask does not in any way indicate support or lack of support for reception of broadcast data on the connectionless L2CAP channel even though both broadcast data and unicast data are sent and received using the same CID (0x0002). For historical reasons, there is no bit to indicate support for sending or receiving of broadcast data on the connectionless L2CAP channel.

## 7.7 OPERATION COLLISION RESOLUTION

When two devices request the same operation by sending a request packet with the same code, a collision can occur. Some operations require collision resolution. The description of each operation in [Section 4](#) will indicate if collision resolution is required. Both devices must know which request will be rejected. The following algorithm shall be used by both devices to determine which request to reject.

1. Set i=0 (representing the least significant octet of the BD\_ADDR).
2. Compare the octet[i] of the BD\_ADDR of both devices. If the octets are not equal go to step 4.
3. Increment i by 1. Go to step 2.
4. The device with the larger BD\_ADDR octet shall reject the request from the other device.

## 7.8 AGGREGATING BEST EFFORT EXTENDED FLOW SPECIFICATIONS

There shall only be one pair of Extended Flow Specifications per logical link and only one “Best Effort” logical link per physical link. Thus, all Best Effort L2CAP channels running over the same physical link are aggregated into one logical link and the Best Effort Flow Specifications describing the traffic for each channel running over an AMP-U logical link shall be aggregated to a single pair of Extended Flow Specifications (one for each direction). The purpose of a Best Effort Flow Specification is to specify the maximum data rate of the data that can be delivered to the Controller from the host and/or taken from the Controller by the host in order to help the Controller to not over allocate bandwidth on the physical link. Since L2CAP performs admission control for BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE Controllers it is not necessary to aggregate Best Effort channels for BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE Controllers.

The two Extended Flow Specification parameters that are affected by Best Effort are Maximum SDU size and SDU Inter-arrival Time. A data rate is determined by dividing the Maximum SDU size by the SDU Inter-arrival time giving a value in bytes per second. The important value is the data rate and not the Maximum SDU size or SDU Inter-arrival time.

Best Effort aggregation shall occur when performing any of the three operations:

- Configuring a new Best Effort channel
- Disconnecting a Best Effort channel
- Moving a Best Effort a channel

During L2CAP channel configuration, the Extended Flow Specifications are exchanged and each L2CAP entity is allowed to modify the other's flow specifi-

cation (lower the values). If a Best Effort logical link already exists (meaning there is at least one other Best Effort channel) then the new flow specifications shall be aggregated with the existing Best Effort aggregate before sending it to the Controller. When a Best Effort channel is moved or disconnected a new aggregate shall be created. If the new aggregate is different from the previous aggregate it shall be given to the Controller. The following guidelines are provided for aggregating Best Effort Flow specification parameters. Keep in mind that the data rate is the important value so the description shows how to aggregate data rates.

1. The value 0xFFFF is used for Maximum SDU Size and the value 0xFFFFFFFF is used for SDU Inter-arrival time to indicate that the actual values are unknown and maximum bandwidth is assumed. Therefore, if these values exist in an Extended Flow Specification then the aggregate becomes 0xFFFF and 0xFFFFFFFF for Maximum SDU Size and SDU Inter-arrival time respectively.
2. In general it is assumed that data rates provided by the local applications can be added together. For example if one application indicates a data rate of 100 bytes/sec and a second application indicates a data rate of 100 bytes/sec then the aggregate data rate from the two applications is 200 bytes/sec. This is assumed for both directions.
3. The adjustments (sent in a Configuration Response) made by the remote device to an outgoing flow specification are assumed to be made on behalf of the application. These adjustments reduce the data rate of the outgoing flow specification. The reduced data rates can be added to data rates from other applications.
4. The final data rates shall be converted back into Maximum SDU Size and SDU Inter-arrival time to be passed to the Controller. Controllers may have a maximum PDU size or a “preferred” PDU size. When possible the “preferred” size should be used for the Maximum SDU size and the SDU Inter-arrival time should be set to a value that achieves the desired data rate. If the data rate cannot be achieved by using the “preferred” PDU size then an integer multiple of the preferred PDU size should be used.

## 7.9 PRIORITIZING DATA OVER HCI

In order for guaranteed channels to meet their guarantees, L2CAP should prioritize traffic over the HCI transport in devices that support HCI. Packets for Guaranteed channels should receive higher priority than packets for Best Effort channels.

## 7.10 SUPPORTING EXTENDED FLOW SPECIFICATION FOR BR/EDR AND BR/EDR/LE CONTROLLERS

If both the local L2CAP entity and the remote L2CAP entity indicate support for Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR in the Extended Feature Mask then all channels created between the two devices shall send an Extended Flow Specification option and shall use the Lockstep configuration procedure. In addition all channels shall use Enhanced Retransmission mode or Streaming mode. If one or both L2CAP entities do not indicate support for Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR in the Extended Feature Mask then the Lockstep configuration procedure shall not be used and the Extended Flow Specification option shall not be sent for channels created over the ACL-U logical link between the two devices.

The L2CAP entity shall perform admission control for Guaranteed channels during the Lockstep configuration procedure (see [Section 7.1.3](#)). Admission control is performed to determine if the requested Guaranteed QoS can be achieved by the BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE Controller over an ACL-U logical link without compromising existing Guaranteed channels running on the Controller. If HCI is used then the L2CAP entity shall also verify that the QoS can be achieved over the HCI transport.

In performing admission control the L2CAP layer shall reject a Guaranteed QoS request that causes at least one of the following rules to be violated.

1. The total guaranteed data rate in both directions shall not exceed two times the highest Symmetric Max of an ACL-U logical link over the BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE Controller (see [\[vol.2, part B\] Section 6.7 on page 141](#)). For example for a Basic Rate Controller the highest Symmetric Max Rate is 433.9kb/s (DH5) from [Table 6.9, “ACL packets,” on page 141 in vol. 2 Part B](#). Two times that value is 867.8kb/s.
2. The total guaranteed data rate in any one direction shall not exceed the highest Asymmetric Max Rate of an ACL-U logical link (see [\[Vol. 2\] Part B, Section 6.7](#)). For example the highest Asymmetric Max Rate for Basic Rate is 723.2kb/s (DH5 packet) from [Table 6.9, “ACL packets,” on page 141 in vol. 2 Part B](#).

The data rate of a Guaranteed channel is calculated by dividing the Maximum SDU size in an Extended Flow Specification by the SDU Inter-arrival time. Total guaranteed data rate in both directions is calculated by taking the sum of the data rates in both directions for all existing Guaranteed channels plus the data rate in both directions of the requested Guaranteed channel (i.e. data rates from the both outgoing and incoming Extended Flow Specifications). Total guaranteed data rate for one direction is calculated by taking the sum of the data rates in one direction for all existing Guaranteed channels plus the data rate in the same direction of the requested Guaranteed channel.

An L2CAP entity should use additional information for admission control that may result in a Guaranteed QoS request being rejected even if none of the rules are violated. This allows the L2CAP entity to account for things such as CQDDR, SCO/eSCO channels, LMP traffic, page scanning, etc.

In order to meet the access latency and/or data rate required by a Guaranteed channel, the L2CAP entity should:

- a) Prioritize traffic over the HCI transport in devices that support HCI.
- b) Give conformant packets for Guaranteed channels higher priority than packets for Best Effort channels. Packets for Best Effort channels should have higher priority than non-conformant packets for Guaranteed channels. (See [Section 5.6](#) for a discussion of non-conformant and conformant traffic).
- c) Utilize the SAR feature to restrict the PDU sizes of Best Effort SDUs so that they do not prevent the Controller from sending the SDUs of the Guaranteed channel within the time periods required by its Extended Flow Specification.

When a channel is reconfigured the Lockstep configuration process is only used when an Extended Flow Specification option is present in the Configuration Request packet as described in [Section 7.1.3](#).

## 8 PROCEDURES FOR FLOW CONTROL AND RETRANSMISSION

When Enhanced Retransmission mode, Streaming mode, Flow Control mode, or Retransmission mode is used, the procedures defined in this chapter shall be used, including the numbering of information frames, the handling of SDU segmentation and reassembly, and the detection and notification of frames with errors. Retransmission mode and Enhanced Retransmission mode also allow the sender to resend frames with errors on request from the receiver.

### 8.1 INFORMATION RETRIEVAL

Before attempting to configure Enhanced Retransmission mode, Streaming mode, Flow Control mode, or Retransmission mode on a channel, support for the suggested mode shall be verified by performing an information retrieval for the “Extended features supported” information type (0x0002). If the information retrieval is not successful or the “Extended features mask” bit is not set for the wanted mode, the mode shall not be suggested in a configuration request.

### 8.2 FUNCTION OF PDU TYPES FOR FLOW CONTROL AND RETRANSMISSION

Two frame formats are defined for Enhanced Retransmission mode, Streaming Mode, Flow Control Mode, and Retransmission mode (see [Section 3.3 on page 49](#)). The I-frame is used to transport user information instead of the B-frame. The S-frame is used for supervision.

#### 8.2.1 Information frame (I-frame)

I-frames are sequentially numbered frames containing information fields. I-frames also include some of the functionality of RR frames (see below).

#### 8.2.2 Supervisory Frame (S-frame)

The S-frame is used to control the transmission of I-frames. For Retransmission mode and Flow Control mode, the S-frame has two formats: Receiver Ready (RR) and Reject (REJ). A description of how S-frames are used in Enhanced Retransmission mode is given in [Section 8.6.1](#). S-frames are not used in Streaming mode. The following description of S-frames only applies to Retransmission mode and Flow Control mode.

##### 8.2.2.1 Receiver Ready (RR)

The receiver ready (RR) S-frame is used to:

1. Acknowledge I-frames numbered up to and including ReqSeq - 1.
2. Enable or disable retransmission of I-frames by updating the receiver with the current status of the Retransmission Disable Bit.

The RR frame has no information field.

### 8.2.2.2 Reject (REJ)

The reject (REJ) S-frame is used to request retransmission of all I-frames starting with the I-frame with TxSeq equal to ReqSeq specified in the REJ. The value of ReqSeq in the REJ frame acknowledges I-frames numbered up to and including ReqSeq - 1. I-frames that have not been transmitted, shall be transmitted following the retransmitted I-frames.

When a REJ is transmitted, it triggers a REJ Exception condition. A second REJ frame shall not be transmitted until the REJ Exception condition is cleared. The receipt of an I-frame with a TxSeq equal to the ReqSeq of the REJ frame clears the REJ Exception. The REJ Exception condition only applies to traffic in one direction. Note: this means that only valid I-frames can be rejected.

## 8.3 VARIABLES AND SEQUENCE NUMBERS

The sending peer uses the following variables and Sequence numbers:

- TxSeq – the send Sequence number used to sequentially number each new I-frame transmitted.
- NextTxSeq – the Sequence number to be used in the next new I-frame transmitted.
- ExpectedAckSeq – the Sequence number of the next I-frame expected to be acknowledged by the receiving peer.

The receiving peer uses the following variables and Sequence numbers:

- ReqSeq – The Sequence number sent in an acknowledgement frame to request transmission of I-frame with TxSeq = ReqSeq and acknowledge receipt of I-frames up to and including (ReqSeq-1).
- ExpectedTxSeq – the value of TxSeq expected in the next I-frame.
- BufferSeq – When segmented I-frames are buffered this is used to delay acknowledgement of received I-frame so that new I-frame transmissions do not cause buffer overflow.

All variables have the range 0 to 63. Arithmetic operations on state variables (NextTXSeq, ExpectedTxSeq, ExpectedAckSeq, BufferSeq) and sequence numbers (TxSeq, ReqSeq) contained in this document shall be taken modulo 64.

To perform Modulo 64 operation on negative numbers multiples of 64 shall be added to the negative number until the result becomes non-negative.

### 8.3.1 Sending peer

#### 8.3.1.1 Send sequence number TxSeq

I-frames contain TxSeq, the send sequence number of the I-frame. When an I-frame is first transmitted, TxSeq is set to the value of the send state variable NextTXSeq. TxSeq is not changed if the I-frame is retransmitted.

#### 8.3.1.2 Send state variable NextTXSeq

The CID sent in the information frame is the destination CID and identifies the remote endpoint of the channel. A send state variable NextTxSeq shall be maintained for each remote endpoint. NextTxSeq is the sequence number of the next in-sequence I-frame to be transmitted to that remote endpoint. When the link is created NextTXSeq shall be initialized to 0.

The value of NextTxSeq shall be incremented by 1 after each in-sequence I-frame transmission, and shall not exceed ExpectedAckSeq by more than the maximum number of outstanding I-frames (TxWindow). The value of TxWindow shall be in the range 1 to 32 for Retransmission mode and Flow Control mode. The value of TxWindow shall be in the range of 1 to 63 for Enhanced Retransmission mode.

#### 8.3.1.3 Acknowledge state variable ExpectedAckSeq

The CID sent in the information frame is the destination CID and identifies the remote endpoint of the channel. An acknowledge state variable ExpectedAckSeq shall be maintained for each remote endpoint. ExpectedAckSeq is the sequence number of the next in-sequence I-frame that the remote receiving peer is expected to acknowledge. (ExpectedAckSeq – 1 equals the TxSeq of the last acknowledged I-frame). When the link is created ExpectedAckSeq shall be initialized to 0.

Note that if the next acknowledgement acknowledges a single I-frame then its ReqSeq will be expectedAckSeq + 1.

If a valid ReqSeq is received from the peer then ExpectedAckSeq is set to ReqSeq. A valid ReqSeq value is one that is in the range  $\text{ExpectedAckSeq} \leq \text{ReqSeq} \leq \text{NextTxSeq}$ .

Note: The comparison with NextTXSeq must be  $\leq$  in order to handle the situations where there are no outstanding I-frames.

These inequalities shall be interpreted in the following way: ReqSeq is valid, if and only if  $(\text{ReqSeq}-\text{ExpectedAckSeq}) \bmod 64 \leq (\text{NextTXSeq}-\text{ExpectedAckSeq}) \bmod 64$ . Furthermore, from the description of NextTXSeq, it can be seen that  $(\text{NextTXSeq}-\text{ExpectedAckSeq}) \bmod 64 \leq \text{TxWindow}$ .

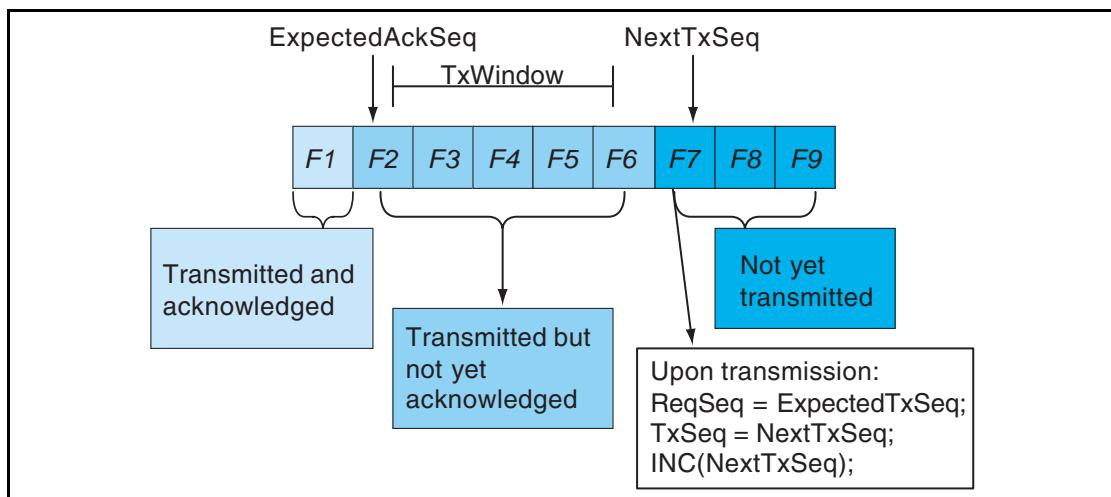


Figure 8.1: Example of the transmitter side

Figure 8.1 on page 151 shows  $\text{TxWindow}=5$ , and three frames awaiting transmission. The frame with number  $F_7$  may be transmitted when the frame with  $F_2$  is acknowledged. When the frame with  $F_7$  is transmitted,  $\text{TxSeq}$  is set to the value of  $\text{NextTXSeq}$ . After  $\text{TxSeq}$  has been set,  $\text{NextTxSeq}$  is incremented.

The sending peer expects to receive legal  $\text{ReqSeq}$  values, these are in the range  $\text{ExpectedAckSeq}$  up to and including  $\text{NextTxSeq}$ . Upon receipt of a  $\text{ReqSeq}$  value equal to the current  $\text{NextTxSeq}$  all outstanding I-frames have been acknowledged by the receiver.

### 8.3.2 Receiving peer

#### 8.3.2.1 Receive sequence number $\text{ReqSeq}$

All I-frames and S-frames contain  $\text{ReqSeq}$ , the send Sequence number ( $\text{TxSeq}$ ) that the receiving peer requests in the next I-frame.

When an I-frame or an S-frame is transmitted, the value of  $\text{ReqSeq}$  shall be set to the current value of the receive state variable  $\text{ExpectedTxSeq}$  or the buffer state variable  $\text{BufferSeq}$ . The value of  $\text{ReqSeq}$  shall indicate that the data link layer entity transmitting the  $\text{ReqSeq}$  has correctly received all I-frames numbered up to and including  $\text{ReqSeq} - 1$ .

Note: The option to set  $\text{ReqSeq}$  to  $\text{BufferSeq}$  instead of  $\text{ExpectedTxSeq}$  allows the receiver to impose flow control for buffer management or other purposes. In this situation, if  $\text{BufferSeq} \neq \text{ExpectedTxSeq}$ , the receiver should also set the retransmission disable bit to 1 to prevent unnecessary retransmissions.

### 8.3.2.2 Receive state variable, ExpectedTxSeq

Each channel shall have a receive state variable (ExpectedTxSeq). The receive state variable is the sequence number (TxSeq) of the next in-sequence I-frame expected.

The value of the receive state variable shall be the last in-sequence, valid I-frame received.

### 8.3.2.3 Buffer state variable BufferSeq

Each channel may have an associated BufferSeq. BufferSeq is used to delay acknowledgement of frames until they have been pulled by the upper layers, thus preventing buffer overflow. BufferSeq and ExpectedTxSeq are equal when there is no extra segmentation performed and frames are pushed to the upper layer immediately on reception. When buffer space is scarce, for example when frames reside in the buffer for a period, the receiver may choose to set ReqSeq to BufferSeq instead of ExpectedTxSeq, incrementing BufferSeq as buffer space is released. The windowing mechanism will ensure that transmission is halted when ExpectedTxSeq - BufferSeq is equal to TxWindow.

Note: Owing to the variable size of I-frames, updates of BufferSeq may be based on changes in available buffer space instead of delivery of I-frame contents.

I-frames shall have sequence numbers in the range  $\text{ExpectedTxSeq} \leq \text{TxSeq} < (\text{BufferSeq} + \text{TxWindow})$ .

On receipt of an I-frame with TxSeq equal to ExpectedTxSeq, ExpectedTxSeq shall be incremented by 1 regardless of how many I-frames with TxSeq greater than ExpectedTxSeq were previously received.

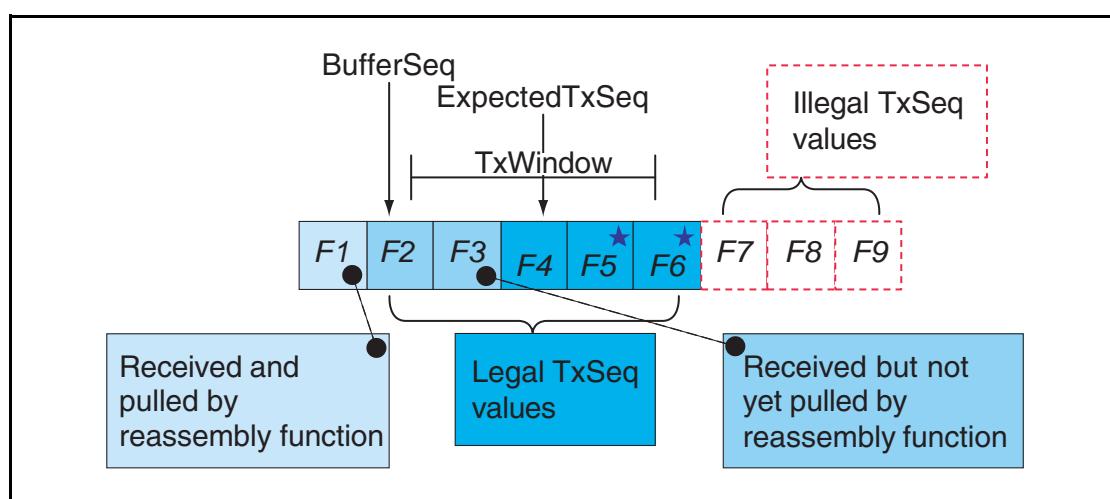


Figure 8.2: Example of the receiver side

[Figure 8.2 on page 152](#) shows  $TxWindow=5$ .  $F_1$  is successfully received and pulled by the upper layer.  $BufferSeq$  shows that  $F_2$  is the next I-frame to be pulled, and  $ExpectedTxSeq$  points to the next I-frame expected from the peer. An I-frame with  $TxSeq$  equal to 5 has been received thus triggering an SREJ or REJ exception. The star indicates I-frames received but discarded owing to the SREJ or REJ exception. They will be resent as part of the error recovery procedure.

In [Figure 8.2](#) there are several I-frames in a buffer awaiting the SDU reassembly function to pull them and the  $TxWindow$  is full. The receiver would usually disable retransmission in Retransmission mode or Flow Control mode by setting the Retransmission Disable Bit to 1 and send an RR back to the sending side. This tells the transmitting peer that there is no point in performing retransmissions. Both sides will send S-frames to make sure the peer entity knows the current value of the Retransmission Disable Bit.

## 8.4 RETRANSMISSION MODE

### 8.4.1 Transmitting frames

A new I-frame shall only be transmitted when the  $TxWindow$  is not full. No I-frames shall be transmitted if the last  $RetransmissionDisableBit$  (R) received is set to one.

A previously transmitted I-frame may be retransmitted as a result of an error recovery procedure, even if the  $TxWindow$  is full. When an I-frame is retransmitted it shall always be sent with the same  $TxSeq$  value used in its initial transmission.

The state of the  $RetransmissionDisableBit$  (R) is stored and used along with the state of the  $RetransmissionTimer$  to decide the actions when transmitting I-frames. The  $RetransmissionTimer$  is running whenever I-frames have been sent but not acknowledged.

#### 8.4.1.1 Last received R was set to zero

If the last R received was set to zero, then I-frames may be transmitted. If there are any I-frames which have been sent and not acknowledged then they shall be retransmitted when the  $RetransmissionTimer$  elapses. If the retransmission timer has not elapsed then a retransmission shall not be sent and only new I-frames may be sent.

- a) If unacknowledged I-frames have been sent and the  $RetransmissionTimer$  has elapsed then an unacknowledged I-

frame shall be retransmitted. The RetransmissionTimer shall be restarted.

- b) If unacknowledged I-frames have been sent, the Retransmission timer has not elapsed then a new I-frame shall be sent if one is waiting and no timer action shall be taken.
- c) If no unacknowledged I-frames have been sent, and a new I-frame is waiting, then the new I-frame shall be sent, the RetransmissionTimer shall be started and if the Monitor Timer is running, it shall be stopped.
- d) If no unacknowledged I-frames have been sent and no new I-frames are waiting to be transmitted, and the RetransmissionTimer is running, then the retransmission timer shall be stopped and the monitor timer shall be started.

The table below summarizes actions when the RetransmissionTimer is in use and R=0.

Unacknowledged I-frames sent = Retransmission Timer is running	Retransmission Timer has elapsed	New I-frames are waiting	Transmit Action	Timer Action
True	True	True or False	Retransmit unacknowledged I-frame	Restart Retransmission Timer
True	False	True	Transmit new I-frame	No timer action
True	False	False	No transmit action	No Timer action
False	False	True	Transmit new I-frame	Restart Retransmission Timer
False	False	False	No Transmit action	If MonitorTimer is not running then restart MonitorTimer

Table 8.1: Summary of actions when the RetransmissionTimer is in use and R=0

If the RetransmissionTimer is not in use, no unacknowledged I-frames have been sent and no new I-frames are waiting to be transmitted

- a) If the MonitorTimer is running and has not elapsed then no transmit action shall be taken and no timer action shall be taken.
- b) If the MonitorTimer has elapsed then an S-frame shall be sent and the MonitorTimer shall be restarted.

If any I-frames become available for transmission then the MonitorTimer shall be stopped, the RetransmissionTimer shall be started and the rules for when the RetransmissionTimer is in use shall be applied.

When an I-frame is sent ReqSeq shall be set to ExpectedTxSeq, TxSeq shall be set to NextTxSeq and NextTxSeq shall be incremented by one.

#### 8.4.1.2 Last received R was set to one

If the last R received was set to one, then I-frames shall not be transmitted. The only frames which may be sent are S-frames. An S-frame shall be sent according to the rules below:

- a) If the MonitorTimer is running and has not elapsed then no transmit action shall be taken and no timer action shall be taken.
- b) If the MonitorTimer has elapsed then an S-frame shall be sent and the MonitorTimer shall be restarted.

#### 8.4.2 Receiving I-frames

Upon receipt of a valid I-frame with TxSeq equal to ExpectedTxSeq, the frame shall be accepted for the SDU reassembly function. ExpectedTxSeq is used by the reassembly function.

The first valid I-frame received after an REJ was sent, with a TxSeq of the received I-frame equal to ReqSeq of the REJ, shall clear the REJ Exception condition.

The ReqSeq shall be processed according to [Section 8.4.6 on page 158](#).

If a valid I-frame with  $\text{TxSeq} \neq \text{ExpectedTxSeq}$  is received then an exception condition shall be triggered which is handled according to [Section 8.4.7 on page 158](#).

### **8.4.3 I-frames pulled by the SDU reassembly function**

When the L2CAP layer has removed one or more I-frames from the buffer, BufferSeq may be incremented in accordance with the amount of buffer space released. If BufferSeq is incremented, an acknowledgement shall be sent to the peer entity.

Note: Since the primary purpose of BufferSeq is to prevent buffer overflow, an implementation may choose to set BufferSeq in accordance with how many new incoming I-frames could be stored rather than how many have been removed.

The acknowledgement may either be an RR or an I-frame. The acknowledgement shall be sent to the peer L2CAP entity with ReqSeq equal to BufferSeq. When there are no I-frames buffered for pulling ExpectedTxSeq is equal to BufferSeq.

If the MonitorTimer is active then it shall be restarted to indicate that a signal has been sent to the peer L2CAP entity.

### **8.4.4 Sending and receiving acknowledgements**

Either the MonitorTimer or the RetransmissionTimer shall be active while in Retransmission Mode. Both timers shall not be active concurrently.

#### 8.4.4.1 Sending acknowledgements

Whenever an L2CAP entity transmits an I-frame or an S-frame, ReqSeq shall be set to ExpectedTxSeq or BufferSeq.

#### 8.4.4.2 Receiving acknowledgements

On receipt of a valid S-frame or I-frame, the ReqSeq contained in the frame shall acknowledge previously transmitted I-frames. ReqSeq acknowledges I-frames with a TxSeq up to and including ReqSeq – 1.

The following rules shall be applied:

1. If the RetransmissionDisableBit changed value from 0 to 1 (stop retransmissions) then the receiving entity shall
  - a) If the RetransmissionTimer is running then stop it and start the MonitorTimer.
  - b) Store the state of the RetransmissionDisableBit received.

2. If the RetransmissionDisableBit changed value from 1 to 0 (start retransmissions) then the receiving entity shall
  - a) Store the state of the RetransmissionDisableBit received.
  - b) If there are any I-frames that have been sent but not acknowledged, then stop the MonitorTimer and start the RetransmissionTimer.
  - c) Any buffered I-frames shall be transmitted according to [Section 8.4.1 on page 153](#).
3. If any unacknowledged I-frames were acknowledged by the ReqSeq contained in the frame, and the RetransmissionDisableBit equals 1 (retransmissions stopped), then the receiving entity shall
  - a) Follow the rules in [Section 8.4.1 on page 153](#).
4. If any unacknowledged I-frames were acknowledged by the ReqSeq contained in the frame and the RetransmissionDisableBit equals 0 (retransmissions started) then the receiving entity shall
  - a) If the RetransmissionTimer is running, then stop it.
  - b) If any unacknowledged I-frames have been sent then the RetransmissionTimer shall be restarted.
  - c) Follow the rules in [Section 8.4.1 on page 153](#).
  - d) If the RetransmissionTimer is not running and the MonitorTimer is not running, then start the MonitorTimer.

On receipt of a valid S-frame or I-frame the ReqSeq contained in the frame shall acknowledge previously transmitted I-frames. ExpectedAckSeq shall be set to ReqSeq to indicate that the I-frames with TxSeq up to and including (ReqSeq - 1) have been acknowledged.

#### **8.4.5 Receiving REJ frames**

Upon receipt of a valid REJ frame, where ReqSeq identifies an I-frame not yet acknowledged, the ReqSeq acknowledges I-frames with TxSeq up to and including ReqSeq - 1. Therefore the REJ acknowledges all I-frames before the I-frame it is rejecting.

ExpectedAckSeq shall be set equal to ReqSeq to mark I-frames up to and including ReqSeq - 1 as received.

NextTXSeq shall be set to ReqSeq to cause transmissions of I-frames to resume from the point where TxSeq equals ReqSeq.

If ReqSeq equals ExpectedAckSeq then the REJ frame shall be ignored.

### 8.4.6 Waiting acknowledgements

A counter, TransmitCounter, counts the number of times an L2CAP PDU has been transmitted. This shall be set to 1 after the first transmission. If the RetransmissionTimer expires the following actions shall be taken:

1. If the TransmitCounter is less than MaxTransmit then:
  - a) Increment the TransmitCounter
  - b) Retransmit the last unacknowledged I-frame, according to [Section 8.4.1 on page 153](#).
2. If the TransmitCounter is equal to MaxTransmit this channel to the peer entity shall be assumed lost. The channel shall move to the CLOSED state and appropriate action shall be taken to report this to the upper layers.

### 8.4.7 Exception conditions

Exception conditions may occur as the result of physical layer errors or L2CAP procedural errors. The error recovery procedures which are available following the detection of an exception condition at the L2CAP layer in Retransmission Mode are defined in this section.

#### 8.4.7.1 TxSeq Sequence error

A TxSeq sequence error exception condition occurs in the receiver when a valid I-frame is received which contains a TxSeq value which is not equal to the expected value, thus TxSeq is not equal to ExpectedTxSeq.

The TxSeq sequence error may be due to three different causes:

- *Duplicated I-frame*

The duplicated I-frame is identified by a TxSeq in the range BufferSeq to ExpectedTxSeq – 1 ( $\text{BufferSeq} \leq \text{TxSeq} < \text{ExpectedTxSeq}$ ). The ReqSeq and RetransmissionDisableBit shall be processed according to [Section 8.4.4 on page 156](#). The Information field shall be discarded since it has already been received.

- *Out-of-sequence I-frame*

The out-of-sequence I-frame is identified by a TxSeq within the legal range. The ReqSeq and RetransmissionDisableBit shall be processed according to [Section 8.4.4 on page 156](#).

A REJ exception is triggered, and an REJ frame with ReqSeq equal to ExpectedTxSeq shall be sent to initiate recovery. The received I-frame shall be discarded.

- *Invalid TxSeq*

An invalid TxSeq value is a value that does not meet either of the above conditions. An I-frame with an invalid TxSeq is likely to have errors in the control field and shall be silently discarded.

#### 8.4.7.2 ReqSeq Sequence error

An ReqSeq sequence error exception condition occurs in the transmitter when a valid S-frame or I-frame is received which contains an invalid ReqSeq value. An invalid ReqSeq is one that is not in the range  $\text{ExpectedAckSeq} \leq \text{ReqSeq} \leq \text{NextTxSeq}$ .

The L2CAP entity shall close the channel as a consequence of an ReqSeq Sequence error.

#### 8.4.7.3 Timer recovery error

If an L2CAP entity fails to receive an acknowledgement for the last I-frame sent, then it will not detect an out-of-sequence exception condition and therefore will not transmit an REJ frame.

The L2CAP entity that transmitted an unacknowledged I-frame shall, on the expiry of the RetransmissionTimer, take appropriate recovery action as defined in [Section 8.4.6 on page 158](#).

#### 8.4.7.4 Invalid frame

Any frame received which is invalid (as defined in [Section 3.3.6 on page 55](#)) shall be discarded, and no action shall be taken as a result of that frame.

## 8.5 FLOW CONTROL MODE

When a link is configured to work in flow control mode, the flow control operation is similar to the procedures in retransmission mode, but all operations dealing with CRC errors in received packets are not used. Therefore

- REJ frames shall not be used in Flow Control Mode.
- The RetransmissionDisableBit shall always be set to zero in the transmitter, and shall be ignored in the receiver.

The behavior of flow control mode is specified in this section.

Assuming that the TxWindow size is equal to the buffer space available in the receiver (counted in number of I-frames), in flow control mode the number of unacknowledged frames in the transmitter window is always less than or equal to the number of frames for which space is available in the receiver. Note that a missing frame still occupies a place in the window.

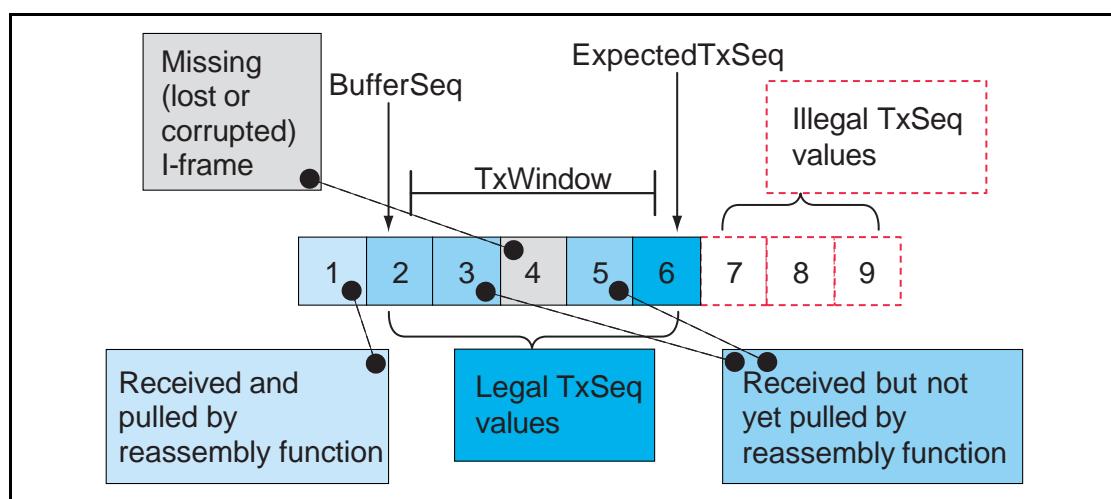


Figure 8.3: Overview of the receiver side when operating in flow control mode

### 8.5.1 Transmitting I-frames

A new I-frame shall only be transmitted when the TxWindow is not full.

Upon transmission of the I-frame the following actions shall be performed:

- If no unacknowledged I-frames have been sent then the MonitorTimer shall be stopped and the RetransmissionTimer shall be started.
- If any I-frames have been sent and not acknowledged then the RetransmissionTimer remains active and no timer operation is performed.

The control field parameter ReqSeq shall be set to ExpectedTxSeq, TxSeq shall be set to NextTXSeq and NextTXSeq shall be incremented by one.

### 8.5.2 Receiving I-frames

Upon receipt of a valid I-frame with TxSeq equal to ExpectedTxSeq, the frame shall be made available to the reassembly function. ExpectedTxSeq shall be incremented by one. An acknowledgement shall not be sent until the SDU reassembly function has pulled the I-frame.

Upon receipt of a valid I-frame with an out-of-sequence TxSeq (see [Section 8.5.6 on page 163](#)) all frames with a sequence number less than TxSeq shall be assumed lost and marked as missing. The missing I-frames are in the range from ExpectedTxSeq (the frame that the device was expecting to receive) up to TxSeq-1, (the frame that the device actually received). ExpectedTxSeq shall be set to TxSeq +1. The received I-frame shall be made available for pulling by the reassembly function. The acknowledgement shall not occur until the SDU reassembly function has pulled the I-frame. The ReqSeq shall be processed according to [Section 8.5.4 on page 161](#).

### 8.5.3 I-frames pulled by the SDU reassembly function

When the L2CAP layer has removed one or more I-frames from the buffer, BufferSeq may be incremented in accordance with the amount of buffer space released. If BufferSeq is incremented, an acknowledgement shall be sent to the peer entity. If the MonitorTimer is active then it shall be restarted to indicate that a signal has been sent to the peer L2CAP entity.

Note: Since the primary purpose of BufferSeq is to prevent buffer overflow, an implementation may choose to set BufferSeq in accordance with how many new incoming I-frames could be stored rather than how many have been removed.

The acknowledgement may be an RR or an I-frame. The acknowledgement shall be sent to the peer L2CAP entity with ReqSeq equal to BufferSeq. When there is no I-frame buffered for pulling, ExpectedTxSeq is equal to BufferSeq.

### 8.5.4 Sending and receiving acknowledgements

One of the timers MonitorTimer or RetransmissionTimer shall always be active while in Flow Control mode. Both timers shall never be active concurrently.

#### 8.5.4.1 Sending acknowledgements

Whenever a data link layer entity transmits an I-frame or a S-frame, ReqSeq shall be set to ExpectedTxSeq or BufferSeq.

#### 8.5.4.2 Receiving acknowledgements

On receipt of a valid S-frame or I-frame the ReqSeq contained in the frame shall be used to acknowledge previously transmitted I-frames. ReqSeq acknowledges I-frames with a TxSeq up to and including ReqSeq – 1.

1. If any outstanding I-frames were acknowledged then
  - a) Stop the RetransmissionTimer
  - b) If there are still unacknowledged I-frames then restart the RetransmissionTimer, otherwise start the MonitorTimer.
  - c) Transmit any I-frames awaiting transmission according to [Section 8.5.1 on page 160](#).

ExpectedAckSeq shall be set to ReqSeq to indicate that the I-frames with TxSeq up to and including ExpectedAckSeq have been acknowledged.

#### **8.5.5 Waiting acknowledgements**

If the RetransmissionTimer expires the following actions shall be taken:  
The I-frame supervised by the RetransmissionTimer shall be considered lost, and ExpectedAckSeq shall be incremented by one.

1. If I-frames are waiting to be sent
  - a) the RetransmissionTimer is restarted.
  - b) I-frames awaiting transmission are transmitted according to [Section 8.5.1 on page 160](#).
2. If there are no I-frames waiting to be sent
  - a) If there are still unacknowledged I-frames the RetransmissionTimer is restarted, otherwise the MonitorTimer is started.

## 8.5.6 Exception conditions

Exception conditions may occur as the result of physical layer errors or L2CAP procedural errors. The error recovery procedures which are available following the detection of an exception condition at the L2CAP layer in flow control only mode are defined in this section.

### 8.5.6.1 TxSeq Sequence error

A TxSeq sequence error exception condition occurs in the receiver when a valid I-frame is received which contains a TxSeq value which is not equal to the expected value, thus TxSeq is not equal to ExpectedTxSeq.

The TxSeq sequence error may be due to three different causes:

- *Duplicated I-frame*

The duplicated I-frame is identified by a TxSeq in the range BufferSeq to ExpectedTxSeq – 1. The ReqSeq shall be processed according to [Section 8.5.4 on page 161](#). The Information field shall be discarded since it has already been received.

- *Out-of-sequence I-frame*

The out-of-sequence I-frame is identified by a TxSeq within the legal range ExpectedTxSeq < TxSeq < (BufferSeq + TxWindow). The ReqSeq shall be processed according to [Section 8.5.4 on page 161](#).

The missing I-frame(s) are considered lost and ExpectedTXSeq is set equal to TxSeq+1 as specified in [Section 8.5.2 on page 161](#). The missing I-frame(s) are reported as lost to the SDU reassembly function.

- *Invalid TxSeq*

An invalid TxSeq value is a value that does not meet either of the above conditions and TxSeq is not equal to ExpectedTxSeq. An I-frame with an invalid TxSeq is likely to have errors in the control field and shall be silently discarded.

### 8.5.6.2 ReqSeq Sequence error

An ReqSeq sequence error exception condition occurs in the transmitter when a valid S-frame or I-frame is received which contains an invalid ReqSeq value. An invalid ReqSeq is one that is not in the range  $\text{ExpectedAckSeq} \leq \text{ReqSeq} \leq \text{NextTXSeq}$ .

The L2CAP entity shall close the channel as a consequence of an ReqSeq Sequence error.

An L2CAP entity that fails to receive an acknowledgement for an I-frame shall, on the expiry of the RetransmissionTimer, take appropriate recovery action as defined in [Section 8.5.5 on page 162](#).

### 8.5.6.3 Invalid frame

Any frame received that is invalid (as defined in [Section 3.3.6 on page 55](#)) shall be discarded, and no action shall be taken as a result of that frame, unless the receiving L2CAP entity is configured to deliver erroneous frames to the layer above L2CAP. In that case, the data contained in invalid frames may also be added to the receive buffer and made available for pulling from the SDU reassembly function.

## 8.6 ENHANCED RETRANSMISSION MODE

Enhanced Retransmission mode operates as an HDLC balanced data link operational mode. Either L2CAP entity may send frames at any time without receiving explicit permission from the other L2CAP entity. A transmission may contain single or multiple frames and shall be used for I-frame transfer and/or to indicate status change.

### 8.6.1 Function Of PDU Types

Enhanced Retransmission mode uses I-frames to transfer upper layer information and S-frames for supervision. There are four S-frames defined: Receiver Ready (RR), Reject (REJ), Receiver Not Ready (RNR), and Selective Reject (SREJ). All frames formats in Enhanced Retransmission mode shall use the Enhanced Control Field.

#### 8.6.1.1 Receiver Ready (RR)

The RR frame shall be used by an L2CAP entity to

1. Indicate that it is ready to receive I-frames
2. Acknowledge previously received I-frames numbered up to ReqSeq - 1 inclusive.

An RR with P-bit set to 1 (P=1) is used to indicate the clearance of any busy condition that was initiated by an earlier transmission of an RNR frame by the same L2CAP entity.

#### 8.6.1.2 Reject (REJ)

The REJ frame shall be used by an L2CAP entity to request retransmission of I-frames starting with the frame numbered ReqSeq. I-frames numbered ReqSeq - 1 and below shall be considered acknowledged. Additional I-frames awaiting initial transmission may be transmitted following the retransmitted I-frame(s) up to the TxWindow size of the receiver.

At most only one REJ exception from a given L2CAP entity to another L2CAP entity shall be established at any given time. A REJ frame shall not be transmit-

ted until an earlier REJ exception condition or all earlier SREJ exception conditions have been cleared. The REJ exception condition shall be cleared upon the receipt of an I-frame with TxSeq equal to the ReqSeq of the REJ frame.

Two L2CAP entities may be in REJ exception conditions with each other at the same time.

#### 8.6.1.3 Receiver Not Ready (RNR)

The RNR frame shall be used by an L2CAP entity to indicate a busy condition (i.e. temporary inability to receive I-frames). I-frames numbered up to ReqSeq - 1 inclusive shall be considered acknowledged. The I-frame numbered ReqSeq and any subsequent I-frames sent shall not be considered acknowledged. The acceptance status of these I-frames shall be indicated in subsequent transfers.

#### 8.6.1.4 Selective Reject (SREJ)

The SREJ frame shall be used by an L2CAP entity to request retransmission of one I-frame. The ReqSeq shall indicate the TxSeq of the earliest I-frame to be retransmitted (not yet reported by a SREJ). If the P-bit is set to 1 then I-frames numbered up to ReqSeq - 1 inclusive shall be considered acknowledged. If the P-bit is set to 0 then the ReqSeq field in the SREJ shall not indicate acknowledgement of I-frames.

Each SREJ exception condition shall be cleared upon receipt of an I-frame with TxSeq equal to the ReqSeq sent in the SREJ frame.

An L2CAP entity may transmit one or more SREJ frames with the P=0 before one or more earlier SREJ exception conditions initiated with SREJ(P=0) have been cleared. An L2CAP entity shall not transmit more than one SREJ with P=1 before all earlier SREJ exception conditions have been cleared. A SREJ frame shall not be transmitted if an earlier REJ exception condition has not been cleared. Likewise a REJ frame shall not be transmitted if one or more SREJ exception conditions have not been cleared. Only one I-frame shall be retransmitted in response to receiving a SREJ frame with P=0. Additional I-frames awaiting initial transmission may be transmitted following the retransmission of the specific I-frame requested by SREJ with P=1.

#### 8.6.1.5 Functions of the Poll (P) and Final (F) bits.

P-bit set to 1 shall be used to solicit a response frame with the F-bit set to 1 from the remote L2CAP entity at the earliest respond opportunity. At most only one frame with a P=1 shall be outstanding in a given direction at a given time. Before an L2CAP entity issues another frame with P=1, it shall have received a response frame from the remote L2CAP entity with F=1. If no valid frame is

received with F=1 within Monitor time-out period, the frame with P=1 may be retransmitted.

The Final bit shall be used to indicate the frame as a response to a soliciting poll (S-frame with P=1). The frame with F=1 shall not be retransmitted. The Monitor-timeout is not used to monitor lost frames with F=1. Additional frames with F=0 may be transmitted following the frame with F=1.

S-frames shall not be transmitted with both the F-bit and the P-bit set to 1 at the same time.

### **8.6.2 Rules For Timers**

Timers are started upon transmission of a packet. Timers should be started when the corresponding packet leaves the controller (transmitted or flushed). If the timer is not started when the packet leaves the controller then it shall be started when the packet is delivered to the controller. The specific rules for BR/EDR Controllers, BR/EDR/LE Controllers, and AMP Controllers are described in the following sections.

#### 8.6.2.1 Timer Rules for ACL-U Logical Links

If a flush timeout does not exist on the ACL-U logical link for the channel using Enhanced Retransmission mode then the value for the Retransmission time-out shall be at least two seconds and the value for the Monitor time-out shall be at least twelve seconds. If a flush timeout exists on the link for Enhanced Retransmission mode then the value for the Retransmission time-out shall be the larger of:

- the value of the flush timeout multiplied by three
- one second

If a flush timeout exists on the link for Retransmission mode and both sides of the link are configured to the same flush timeout value then the monitor time-out shall be set to a value at least as large as the Retransmission time-out otherwise the value of the Monitor time-out shall be the larger of:

- the value of the flush timeout multiplied by six
- twelve seconds

If an L2CAP entity knows that a specific packet has been flushed instead of transmitted then it may execute proper error recovery procedures immediately.

When configuring a channel over an ACL-U logical link the values sent in a Configuration Request packet for Retransmission timeout and Monitor timeout shall be 0.

**Note:** If the link has a flush timeout and the Non-Flushable Packet Boundary Flag feature is used to mark the Enhanced Retransmission mode packets as

non-flushable then the link does not have a flush timeout with regards to Enhanced Retransmission mode.

### 8.6.2.2 Timer Rules for AMP Controllers

AMP Controllers can be classified by their behavior as follows:

1. Attempt to send a packet until LSTO disconnects the physical link.
2. Attempt to send a packet until a Controller based retry counter is exceeded whereupon the packet is flushed.

Class 1 AMP controllers are reliable. They will not lose packets though packets can be lost during a move operation. Class 2 AMP controllers are not reliable and can lose packets. The Best Effort Flush Timeout field in the AMP Info (see [\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.5.8](#)) can be used to determine the behavior of the controller (i.e. class 1 or class 2). If the Best Effort Flush Timeout field in the AMP info is 0xFFFFFFFF then the class is 1 otherwise the class is 2. The Best Effort Flush Timeout field indicates the flush timeout that may be set on the Best Effort logical link.

For class 1 AMP controllers the Retransmission and Monitor timers are not really needed. Packets should not be lost. Packets lost during the move operation will be detected by L2CAP and retransmitted as part of the move operation. Therefore, the Retransmission timeout and Monitor timeout shall be at least the value of the Link supervision timeout set on the link or can be turned off altogether. The values sent in a Configuration Request packet for Retransmission timeout and Monitor timeout shall be 0.

When configuring a channel the AMP-U logical link of a over a class 2 AMP Controller non-0 values for Retransmission timeout and Monitor timeout shall be sent in a Configuration Request packet. The non-0 values specify the “processing” time of received packets. Processing time includes the time it takes for a received packet to be passed from the device's Controller to the L2CAP layer plus the time to be processed by the L2CAP layer and a response submitted back to the Controller. The local device's processing time is used by the remote device in calculating the Retransmission timeout and Monitor timeout it will use. The timeout values that will actually be used by a device shall be sent in a Configuration Response packet.

As with BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE Controllers, the method used for setting timer values for class 2 AMP Controllers depends on when timers are started. Timers are either started when the packet leaves the Controller or when the packet is delivered to the Controller.

The timeout values used for Class 2 AMP Controllers where timers are started when the packet leaves the controller shall be at least the values received in the Configuration Request packet from the remote device (remote device's “processing” time).

For Class 2 AMP Controller where timers are started when the packet is delivered to the Controller the following rules shall be used:

1. The local L2CAP Entity shall set a flush timeout on the Best Effort logical link equal to the value provided by the local Controller in the Best Effort Flush Timeout field of AMP info structure.
2. The value of the Retransmission timeout and Monitor Timeout shall be the value of the flush timeout multiplied by three plus the corresponding processing time received in the Configuration Request packet from the remote device.

If an L2CAP entity knows that a specific packet has been flushed instead of transmitted then it may execute proper error recovery procedures immediately.

#### 8.6.2.3 Timer Values used After a Move Operation

When a channel is moved from one Controller to another Controller the timeout values used after the move operation are based on the capabilities of the new Controller. The timeout values shall be set according to the following table:

Controller	Timeout Values
BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE	Retransmission timeout – at least 2 seconds Monitor timeout – at least 12 seconds
Class 1 AMP Controller	Retransmission timeout – at least LSTO (or turned off) Monitor timeout – at least LSTO (or turned off)
Class 2 AMP Controller where timers are started when packets leave the controller	Retransmission timeout – at least 500ms Monitor timeout – at least 500ms Note: 500ms is the default value for the “processing” time of received packets.
Class 2 AMP Controller where timers are started when packets are delivered to the controller	Retransmission timeout – at least (local controller “Best Effort” Flush Timeout * 3) + 500ms Monitor timeout – at least (local controller “Best Effort” Flush Timeout * 3) + 500ms Note: 500ms is the default value for the “processing” time of received packets

Table 8.2: AMP Controller timeout values

When moving to a Class 2 AMP Controller, the Retransmission Timeout and Monitor timeout should be reconfigured after the move operation to get the actual value for the “processing” time of received packets.

### 8.6.3 General Rules for the State Machine

Enhanced Retransmission mode is specified using a pair of state machines, a Transmitter state machine and a Receiver state machine. The following rules apply to the state machine pair.

1. The state machine pair is informative but described using normative text in order to clearly specify the behavior of the protocol. Designers and implementers may choose any design / implementation technique they wish, but it shall behave in a manner identical to the external behavior of the specified state machines.
2. There is a single state machine pair for each active L2CAP channel configured to use Enhanced Retransmission mode.
3. Variables are used to limit the number of states by maintaining the state of particular conditions. The variables are defined in [section 8.6.5.2](#).
4. For some combinations of Event and Condition, the state tables provide alternative groups of actions. These alternatives are separated by horizontal lines in the Actions and Next State columns. The alternatives are mutually exclusive; selection of an alternate is done based upon (i) local status, (ii) a layer management action, or (iii) an implementation decision. There is no relationship between the order of the alternatives between events, nor is it implied that the same alternative must be selected every time the event occurs.
5. The state tables use timers. Any Start Timer action restarts the specified timer from its initial value, even if the timer is already running. When the timer reaches 0 the appropriate timer expired event is set and the timer stops. The Stop Timer action stops a timer if it is running.
6. Events not recognized in a particular state are assumed to remain pending until any masking flag is modified or a transition is made to a state where they can be recognized.
7. Some state transitions and actions are triggered by internal events (e.g. requests from the upper layer). It is implementation specific how these internal events are realized. They are used for clarity in specifying the state machine. All events including Internal events are described in [Section 8.6.5.3 on page 171](#).
8. The state machines specify the exact frames to be sent by transmitters but are relaxed on what receivers are allowed to accept as valid. For example there are cases where the transmitter is required to send a frame with P=1. The correct response is a frame with F=1 but in some cases the receiver is allowed to accept a frame with F=0 in addition to F=1.

### 8.6.4 State Diagram

The state diagram shows the states and the main transitions. Not all events are shown on the state diagram.

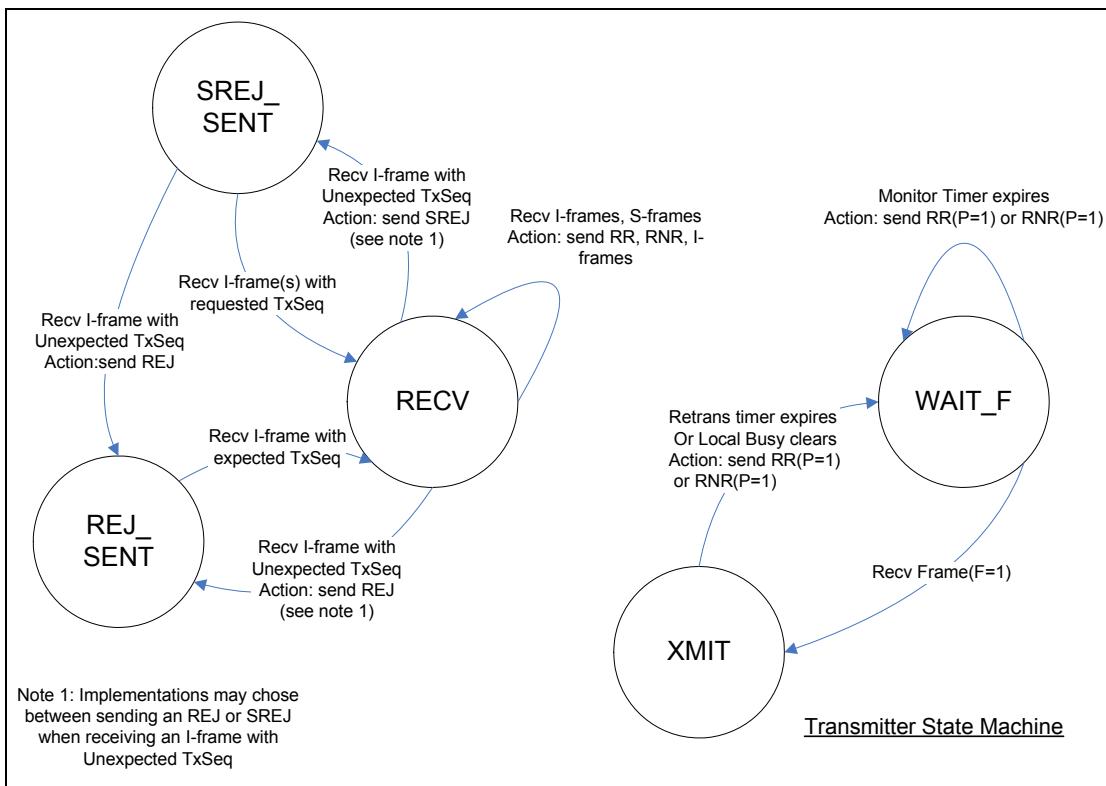


Figure 8.4: Receiver state machine

### 8.6.5 States Tables

#### 8.6.5.1 State Machines

Enhanced Retransmission mode is described as a pair of state machine. The Receiver state machine handles all received frames while the Transmitter State machine handles all asynchronous events including requests from the upper layer and the expiration of timers.

The Receiver state machine “calls” the Transmitter state machine using the PassToTx action. This shows up in the Transmitter state machine as an event. When the Transmitter state machine is called it runs to completion before returning to the Receiver state machine. Running to completion means that all actions are executed and the Transmitter state is changed to the new state.

The Receiver and Transmitter state machine share variables and timers.

### 8.6.5.2 States

The following states have been defined to specify the protocol; the actual number of states and naming in a given implementation is outside the scope of this specification:

**RECV**—This is the main state of the Receiver state machine.

**REJ\_SENT**—The L2CAP entity has sent a REJ frame to cause the remote L2CAP entity to resend I-frame(s). The L2CAP entity is waiting for the I-frame with a TxSeq that matches the ReqSeq sent in the REJ. Whether to send a REJ versus a SREJ is implementation dependent.

**SREJ\_SENT**—The L2CAP entity has sent one or more SREJ frames to cause the remote L2CAP entity to resend missing I-frame(s). The local L2CAP entity is waiting for all requested I-frames to be received. If additional missing I-frames are detected while in SREJ\_SENT then additional SREJ frames or a REJ frame can be sent to request those I-frames. Whether to send a SREJ versus a REJ is implementation dependent.

**XMIT**—This is the main state of the Transmitter state machine.

**WAIT\_F**—Local busy has been cleared or the Retransmission timer has expired and an S-frame with P=1 has been sent. The local L2CAP entity is waiting for a frame with F=1. I-frames cannot be sent while in the WAIT\_F state to prevent the situation where retransmission of I-frames could result in the channel being disconnected.

### 8.6.5.3 Variables and Timers

Variables are used to limit the number of states and help clarify the state chart tables. Variables can be set to values, evaluated in conditions and compared in conditional statements. They are also used in the action descriptions. Below is a list of the operators, connectives and statements that can be used with variables.

Operator, connective or statement	Description
<b>:=</b>	Assignment operator. Used to set a variable to a value
<b>=</b>	Relational operator "equal"
<b>&gt;</b>	Relational operator "greater than"
<b>&lt;</b>	Relational operator "less than"
<b>≥</b>	Relational operator "greater than or equal"
<b>≤</b>	Relational operator "less than or equal"

Table 8.3: Operators, connectives and statements used with variables

Operator, connective or statement	Description
+	Arithmetic operator "plus"
mod	Modulo operator - returns the remainder of division of one number by another.
and	logical connective "and." It returns TRUE if both operands are TRUE otherwise it returns FALSE.
or	logical connective "or." It returns TRUE if either of its operands are TRUE otherwise it returns FALSE.
<b>if (expression) then</b> statement	Conditional Statement. If expression is TRUE then the statement is executed otherwise the statement is not executed. The statement is composed of one or more actions. All the actions in the statement are indented under the <b>if ... then</b> clause.
<b>if (expression) then</b> statement1 <b>else</b> statement2	Conditional Statement. If expression is TRUE then statement1 is executed otherwise statement2 is executed. A statement is composed of one or more actions. All the actions in the statement1 are indented under the <b>if ... then</b> clause and all the actions of statement2 are indented under the <b>else</b> clause.

Table 8.3: Operators, connectives and statements used with variables (Continued)

Enhanced Retransmission mode uses the following variables and sequence numbers described in [Section 8.3](#):

- TxSeq
- NextTxSeq
- ExpectedAckSeq
- ReqSeq
- ExpectedTxSeq
- BufferSeq

In addition to the variables above the following variables and timers are used:

**RemoteBusy**—when set to TRUE RemoteBusy indicates that the local L2CAP entity has received an RNR from the remote L2CAP entity and considers the remote L2CAP entity as busy. When the remote device is busy it will likely discard I-frames sent to it. The RemoteBusy flag is set to FALSE when the local L2CAP Entity receives an RR, REJ or SREJ. When set to FALSE the local L2CAP entity considers the remote L2CAP entity able to accept I-frames. When the channel is created RemoteBusy shall be set to FALSE.

**LocalBusy**—when set to TRUE, LocalBusy indicates the local L2CAP entity is busy and will discard received I-frames. When set to FALSE the local L2CAP entity is not busy and is able to receive I-frames. When the channel is created LocalBusy shall be set to FALSE.

**UnackedFrames**—holds the number of unacknowledged I-frames. When the channel is created UnackedFrames shall be set to 0.

**UnackedList**—holds the unacknowledged I-frames so they can be retransmitted if necessary. I-frames in the list are accessed via their TxSeq number. For example UnackedList[5] accesses the I-frame with TxSeq 5.

**PendingFrames**—holds the number of pending I-frames. I-frames passed to L2CAP from the upper layer may not be able to be sent immediately because the remote L2CAP entity's TxWindow is full, is in a busy condition or the local L2CAP is in the incorrect state. When I-frames cannot be sent they are stored in a queue until conditions allow them to be sent. When the channel is created PendingFrames shall be set to 0.

**SrejList**—is a list of TxSeq values for I-frames that are missing and need to be retransmitted using SREJ. A SREJ has already been sent for each TxSeq on the list. When SrejList is empty it equals 0 (i.e. SrejList = 0). If SrejList is not empty it is greater than 0 (i.e. SrejList > 0).

**RetryCount**—holds the number of times an S-frame operation is retried. If an operation is tried MaxTransmit times without success the channel shall be closed.

**RetryIframes[]**—holds a retry counter for each I-frame that is sent within the receiving device's TxWindow. Each time an I-frame is retransmitted the corresponding counter within RetryIframes is incremented. When an attempt to retransmit the I-frame is made and the counter is equal to MaxTransmit then the channel shall be closed.

**RNRsent**—when set to TRUE it means that the local L2CAP entity has sent an RNR frame. It is used to determine if the L2CAP entity needs to send an RR to the remote L2CAP entity to clear the busy condition. When the channel is created RNRsent shall be set to FALSE.

**RejActioned**—is used to prohibit a frame with F=1 from causing I-frames already retransmitted in response to a REJ from being retransmitted again. RejActioned is set to TRUE if a received REJ is actioned when a frame sent with P=1 is unanswered. When the channel is created RejActioned shall be set to FALSE.

**SrejActioned**—is used in conjunction with SrejSaveReqSeq to prohibit a frame with F=1 from causing an I-frame already retransmitted in response to a SREJ from being retransmitted again. SrejActioned is set to TRUE if a received SREJ is actioned when a frame sent with P=1 is unanswered. When the channel is created SrejActioned shall be set to FALSE.

**SrejSaveReqSeq**—is used to save the ReqSeq of a SREJ frame that causes SrejActioned to be set to TRUE.

**SendRej**—when set to TRUE it indicates that the local L2CAP entity has determined that a REJ should be sent in the SREJ\_SENT state while processing received I-frames. The sending of new SREJ frames is stopped. When the channel is created SendRej shall be set to FALSE.

**BufferSeqSrej**—is used while in the SREJ\_SENT state to keep track of the value to which BufferSeq will be set upon exit of the SREJ\_SENT state.

**FramesSent**—is used to keep track of the number I-frames sent by the Send-Data and Retransmit-I-frames actions.

**MaxTxWin**—contains the maximum window size plus 1. It is used in TxWindow modulo operations as the divisor and in state table conditions. This value shall be set to 16384 (0x4000) if the Extended Window Size option is used; otherwise it shall be set to 64.

**RetransTimer**—The Retransmission Timer is used to detect lost I-frames. When the channel is created the RetransTimer shall be off.

**MonitorTimer**—The Monitor Timer is used to detect lost S-frames. When the channel is created the MonitorTimer shall be off.

#### 8.6.5.4 Events

**Data-Request**—The upper layer has requested that an SDU be sent. The SDU may need to be broken into multiple I-frames by L2CAP based on the MPS of the remote device and/or the maximum PDU allowed by the HCI or QoS requirements of the system.

**Local-Busy-Detected**—A local busy condition occurs when the local L2CAP entity is temporarily unable to receive, or unable to continue to receive, I-frames due to internal constraints. For example, the upper layer has not pulled received I-frames and the local L2CAP entity needs to send an acknowledgement to the remote L2CAP entity. The method for handling the detection of local busy is implementation specific. An implementation may wait to send an RNR to see if the busy condition will clear before the remote L2CAP entity's Retransmission timer expires. If the busy condition clears then frames can be acknowledged with an RR or I-frame. If the busy condition does not clear before the remote L2CAP entity's Retransmission timer expires then an RNR shall be sent in response to the RR or RNR poll sent by the remote L2CAP entity. Optionally an implementation may send an RNR as soon as the local busy condition is detected.

**Local-Busy-Clear**—The local busy condition clears when L2CAP has buffer space to receive more I-frames (i.e. SDU Reassembly function and/or upper layer has pulled I-frames) and if necessary the upper layer has cleared the busy condition.

**Recv ReqSeqAndFbit**—This is an event generated by the Receiver state machine. It contains the ReqSeq and F-bit value of a received frame. The value of the F-bit can be checked in a condition.

**Recv Fbit**—This is an event generated by the Receiver state machine. It contains the F-bit value of a received frame. The value of the F-bit can be checked in a condition.

**RetransTimer-Expires**—The Retransmission Timer has counted down to 0 and stopped.

**MonitorTimer-Expires**—The Monitor Timer has counted down to 0 and stopped.

**Recv I-frame**—Receive an I-frame with any value for the F-bit.

**Recv RR, REJ, RNR, SREJ (P=x) or (F=x)**—Receive a specific S-frame (RR, REJ, etc.) with a specific value for the P and/or F bit. The F-bit and the P-bit shall not both be set to 1 in a transmitted S-frame so received S-frames with both P and F set to 1 should be ignored. If the P and/or F bit value is not specified in the event then either value is accepted.

**Recv RRorRNR**—Receive an RR or RNR with any value for the P-bit and F-bit.

**Recv REJorSREJ**—Receive an REJ or SREJ with any value for the P-bit and F-bit.

**Recv frame**—This is catch-all for all frames that are not explicitly declared as events in the state table.

#### 8.6.5.5 Conditions

**RemoteBusy = TRUE or FALSE**—TRUE indicates the remote L2CAP entity is in a busy condition and FALSE indicates the remote L2CAP entity is not busy.

**LocalBusy = TRUE or FALSE**—TRUE indicates the local L2CAP entity is in a busy condition and FALSE indicates the local L2CAP entity is not busy.

**RemWindow-Not-Full**—The number of unacknowledged I-frames sent by L2CAP has not yet reached the TxWindow size of the remote L2CAP entity.

**RemWindow-Full**—The number of unacknowledged I-frames sent by the L2CAP entity has reached the TxWindow size of the remote L2CAP entity. No more I-frames shall be sent until one or more I-frames have been acknowledged.

**RNRsent = TRUE or FALSE**—TRUE indicates an RNR has been sent while a local busy condition exists. It is set to FALSE when the local busy condition clears.

**F = 0 or 1**—the F-bit of a received frame is checked. The F-bit of the received frame is available as part of the Recv ReqSeqAndFbit and Recv Fbit events.

**RetryIframes[i] < or ≥ MaxTransmit**—Compare the appropriate counter in RetryIframes after processing the ReqSeq in the receive frame to determine if it has reached MaxTransmit or not.

**RetryCount < or ≥ MaxTransmit**—Compare RetryCount to determine if it has reached MaxTransmit or not.

**With-Expected-TxSeq**—The TxSeq of a received I-frame is equal to ExpectedTxSeq.

**With-Valid-ReqSeq**—The ReqSeq of the received frame is in the range ExpectedAckSeq ≤ ReqSeq < NextTxSeq.

**With-Valid-ReqSeq-Retrans**—The ReqSeq of the received frame is in the range ExpectedAckSeq ≤ ReqSeq < NextTxSeq.

**With-Valid-F-bit**—The F-bit of a received frame is valid if it is 0 or if it is 1 and a frame sent with P=1 by the local L2CAP entity is unanswered (i.e. the local L2CAP entity send a frame with P=1 and has not yet received a frame with F=1 until receiving this one). If the Transmitter state machine is in the WAIT\_F state then a frame sent with P=1 is unanswered.

**With-unexpected-TxSeq**—The TxSeq of the received I-frame is within the TxWindow of the L2CAP entity receiving the I-frame but has a TxSeq “greater” than ExpectedTxSeq where “greater” means later in sequence than ExpectedTxSeq.

**With-duplicate-TxSeq**—The TxSeq of the received I-frame is within the TxWindow of the L2CAP entity receiving the I-frame but has a TxSeq “less” than ExpectedTxSeq where “less” means earlier in the sequence than ExpectedTxSeq. In other words this is a frame that has already been received.

**With-Invalid-TxSeq**—The TxSeq of the received I-frame is not within the TxWindow of the L2CAP entity receiving the frame.

**With-Invalid-ReqSeq**—The ReqSeq of the received frame is not in the range ExpectedAckSeq ≤ ReqSeq < NextTxSeq.

**With-Invalid-ReqSeq-Retrans**—The ReqSeq of the received frame is not in the range ExpectedAckSeq ≤ ReqSeq < NextTxSeq.

**Not-With-Expected-TxSeq**—The TxSeq of the received I-frame is within the TxWindow of the L2CAP entity receiving the frame but is not equal to ExpectedTxSeq. It is either unexpected or a duplicate.

**With-Expected-TxSeq-Srej**—The TxSeq of the received I-frame is equal to the TxSeq at the head of SrejList.

**SendRej = TRUE or FALSE**—**TRUE** indicates that a REJ will be sent after all frames requested using SREJ have been received.

**SreqList = or > 1**—Determine if the number of items in SreqList is equal to or greater than 1.

**With-Unexpected-TxSeq-Sreq**—The TxSeq of the received I-frame is equal to one of the values stored in SreqList but is not the TxSeq at the head. This indicates that one or more I-frames requested using SREJ are missing either because the SREJ was lost or the requested I-frame(s) were lost. Either way the SREJ frames must be resent to retrieve the missing I-frames.

**With-duplicate-TxSeq-Sreq**—The TxSeq of the received I-frame is equal to a TxSeq of one of the saved I-frames indicating it is a duplicate.

#### 8.6.5.6 Actions

**Send-Data**—This action is executed as a result of a Data-Request event. The number of I-frames sent without being acknowledged shall not exceed the TxWindow size of the receiving L2CAP entity (UnackedFrames is less than or equal to the remote L2CAP entity's TxWindow). Any I-frames that cannot be sent because they would exceed the TxWindow size are queued for later transmission. For each I-frame the following actions shall be carried out:

```

Send I-frame with TxSeq set to NextTxSeq and ReqSeq set to BufferSeq.
UnackedList[NextTxSeq] := I-frame
UnackedFrames := UnackedFrames + 1
FramesSent := FramesSent + 1
RetryIframes[NextTxSeq] := 1
NextTxSeq := (NextTxSeq + 1) mod MaxTxWin
Start-RetransTimer

```

**Pend-Data**—This action is executed as a result of a Data-Request when it is not possible to send I-frames because the window is full, the remote L2CAP entity is in a busy condition or the local L2CAP entity is not in a state where I-frames can be sent (e.g. WAIT\_F). The I-frame(s) are queued for later transmission.

**Process-ReqSeq**—the ReqSeq contained in the received frame shall acknowledge previously transmitted I-frames. ExpectedAckSeq shall be set to ReqSeq to indicate that the I-frames with TxSeq up to and including (ReqSeq-1) have been acknowledged. The acknowledged I-frames shall be removed from UnackedList, the retry counters for each acknowledged frame shall be set to 0 and the number of acknowledged frames shall be subtracted from UnackedFrames so that UnackedFrames shall contain the number of the remaining unacknowledged I-frames. Pending I-frames are now available to be

transmitted by the Send-Ack action. If UnackedFrames equals 0 then Stop-RetransTimer.

**Send RR, RNR (P=x) or (F=x)**—Send the specified S-frame with the specified value for the P-bit or F-bit. If a value for the P-bit or F-bit is not specified the value shall be 0. For example Send RR(P=1) means send an RR with the P-bit set to 1 and the F-bit set to 0. The ReqSeq field shall be set to BufferSeq. If an RNR is sent, RNRsent shall be set to TRUE.

**Send REJ (P =x) or (F=x)**—Send a REJ with the specified value for the P-bit or F-bit. The ReqSeq field shall be set to ExpectedTxSeq. If a value for the P-bit or F-bit is not specified the value shall be 0. Note that this will acknowledge previously received I-frames up to ExpectedTxSeq—1 and may allow the remote L2CAP entity to transmit new I-frames. If the local L2CAP entity is not in a position to acknowledge the previously received I-frames it may use SREJ(P=0) or RNR. It may also wait to send the REJ until it is able to acknowledge the I-frames.

**Send RRorRNR (P=x) or (F=1)**—Send an RR or RNR with the specified value for the P-bit or F-bit based on the value of LocalBusy. If a value for the P-bit or F-bit is not specified the value shall be 0. An RNR shall be sent if LocalBusy equals TRUE. If LocalBusy equals FALSE then an RR shall be sent.

**Send IorRRorRNR(F=1)**—Send I-frames, an RR or an RNR with the F-bit set to 1. The following algorithm shall be used:

```

FramesSent := 0
    if LocalBusy = TRUE then
        Send RNR (F=1)
    if RemoteBusy = TRUE and UnackedFrames > 0 then
        Start-RetransTimer
        Send-Pending-I-frames (see note)
    if LocalBusy = FALSE and FramesSent = 0 then
        Send RR (F=1)

```

Note: The SendIorRRorRNR(F=1) sends frames by invoking other actions. During the execution of SendIorRRorRNR multiple actions may be invoked. The first action invoked shall send the first or only frame with the F-bit set to 1. All other frames sent shall have the F-bit set to 0.

**Send SREJ**—Send one or more SREJ frames with P=0. For each missing I-frame starting with ExpectedTxSeq up to but not including the TxSeq of the received I-frame, an SREJ frame is sent with ReqSeq set to the TxSeq of the missing frame. The TxSeq is inserted into the tail of SrejList. For example if ExpectedTxSeq is 3 and the received I-frame has a TxSeq of 5 there are two missing I-frames. An SREJ with ReqSeq 3 is sent followed by an SREJ with ReqSeq 4. TxSeq 3 is inserted first into SrejList followed by TxSeq 4. After all

SREJ frames have been sent ExpectedTxSeq shall be set to the TxSeq of the received I-frame + 1 mod MaxTxWin.

**Send SREJ(SrejList)**—Send one or more SREJ frames with P=0. An I-frame was received that matches one of the TxSeq values in the SrejList but does not match the head of SrejList. This means I-frames requested via SREJ are still missing. For each TxSeq value starting with the head of SrejList and going backwards (i.e., from the head towards the tail) through the SrejList up to but not including the TxSeq of the received frame, an SREJ frame is sent with ReqSeq set to the TxSeq from SrejList. The TxSeq is removed from SrejList and reinserted into the tail of SrejList. Finally, remove the TxSeq of the received frame from the head of the list.

**Send SREJ(SrejList-tail)(F=1)**—Send a SREJ frame with F=1 and ReqSeq equal to the TxSeq at the tail of SrejList.

**Start-RetransTimer**—If the Monitor timer is not running then start the Retransmission Timer from its initial value (see Retransmission time-out in [Section 5.4](#)). If the Retransmission timer is already running it is restarted from its initial value. If the Monitor timer is running then the Retransmission timer is not started.

**Start-MonitorTimer**—Start the Monitor Timer from its initial value (see Monitor time-out in [Section 5.4 on page 96](#)). If the timer is already running it is restarted from its initial value.

**PassToTx**—Pass the ReqSeq and F-bit value of a received frame to the Transmitter state machine. This will show up as a Recv ReqSeqAndFbit event in the Transmitter state machine.

**PassToTxFbit**—Pass the F-bit value of a received frame to the Transmitter state machine. This will show up as a Recv Fbit event in the Transmitter state machine.

**Data-Indication**—A received I-frame is passed to the SDU reassembly function. For the purpose of the state machine this operation is completed immediately so the Send\_Ack action should be executed as one of the next actions. In some cases the SDU reassembly function cannot accept the I-frame so the I-frame will be stored within the L2CAP Entity consuming a portion of its TxWindow. When the I-frame is pulled by the SDU reassembly function the Send\_Ack action should be executed. Before the Send\_Ack action is executed BufferSeq is advanced as follows:

$$\text{BufferSeq} := (\text{BufferSeq} + 1) \bmod \text{MaxTxWin}$$

**Increment-ExpectedTxSeq**—ExpectedTxSeq is incremented as follows:  

$$\text{ExpectedTxSeq} := (\text{ExpectedTxSeq} + 1) \bmod \text{MaxTxWin}$$

**Stop-RetransTimer**—the Retransmission timer is stopped.

**Stop-MonitorTimer**—the Monitor timer is stopped.

**Send-Ack (F=x)**—an acknowledgement with the specified value for the F-bit may be sent. Note that this action may occur in an action block with other actions that also send frames. If a frame has already been sent then it is not necessary to send additional frames. If the value for the F-bit is not specified it shall be set to 0. If the value specified is P then the F-bit shall be set equal to the value of the P-bit of the received frame being acknowledged. If more than one frame is sent in the acknowledgment only the first frame shall have an F-bit set to 1. An acknowledgement is an RR, RNR, or pending I-frame(s) (I-frames that have not been transmitted yet). If pending I-frames are available and are allowed to be sent then as many as allowed should be sent as an acknowledgement. Sending an RR or RNR as an acknowledgement for each received I-frame is not required. An implementation may wait to send an RR or RNR until a specific number of I-frames have been received, after a certain period of time has elapsed or some other algorithm. To keep data flowing it is recommended that an acknowledgement be sent before the TxWindow is full. It should also be noted that the maximum size of a remote L2CAP entity's unacknowledged I-frame list may be smaller than the local L2CAP entity's TxWindow. Therefore the local L2CAP entity should not expect the remote L2CAP entity to send enough frames to fill its TxWindow and should acknowledge I-frames accordingly. The following algorithm shall be used when sending an acknowledgement.

```

if LocalBusy == TRUE then
    Send_RNR (F=x)
else if (RemoteBusy == FALSE) and Pending I-frames Exist and RemWindow-Not-Full
    Send-Pending-I-frames (F=x)
else
    Send_RR (F=x)

```

**InitSrej**—Initialize the variables used for processing SREJ as follows:

```

Clear SrejList—(remove all values)
SendRej := FALSE
BufferSeqSrej := BufferSeq

```

**SaveIframeSrej**—Save the received I-frame. Missing I-frame(s) will be retransmitted in response to SREJ frames. Implementations may want to save the I-frame in its proper sequence order by leaving room for the missing I-frames.

**StoreOrIgnore**—If the local L2CAP entity has room to store the received I-frame then it may store it otherwise it shall discard it. If the received I-frame is stored, ExpectedTxSeq is advanced as follows:

```
ExpectedTxSeq := (ExpectedTxSeq + 1) mod MaxTxWin
```

**PbitOutstanding**—If the Transmitter state machine of the local L2CAP entity is in the WAIT\_F state then return TRUE otherwise return FALSE.

**Retransmit-I-frames**—All the unacknowledged I-frames starting with the I-frame with TxSeq equal to the ReqSeq field of the received S-frame (REJ or RR) is retransmitted. If the P-bit of the received S-frame is 1 then the F-bit of the first I-frame sent shall be 1. If the P-bit of the received S-frame is 0 then the F-bit of the first I-frame sent shall be 0. The F-bit of all other unacknowledged I-frames sent shall be 0. The retry counter in RetryIframes[] for each retransmitted I-frame is incremented by 1. If a retry counter in RetryIframes[] is equal to MaxTransmit then the channel shall be closed. FramesSent shall be incremented by 1 for each frame sent. If the RetransTimer is not already running then perform the Start-RetransTimer action.

**Retransmit-Requested-I-frame**—The unacknowledged I-frame with TxSeq equal to the ReqSeq field of the received S-frame (SREJ) is retransmitted. If the P-bit of the received S-frame is 1 then the F-bit of the retransmitted I-frame shall be 1. If the P-bit of the received S-frame is 0 then the F-bit of the retransmitted I-frame shall be 0. The retry counter in RetryIframes[] corresponding to the retransmitted I-frame is incremented by 1. If the RetransTimer is not already running then perform the Start-RetransTimer action.

**Send-Pending-I-frames (F=x)**—send all pending I-frames that can be sent without exceeding the receiver's TxWindow using the Send-Data action. If a value for the F-bit is specified then the F-bit of the first I-frame sent shall be set to the specified value and the F-bit of all other I-frames sent shall be set to 0. If no value for the F-bit is specified then all I-frames sent shall have the F-bit set to 0. Pending I-frames are I-frames that have been given to the L2CAP entity by the upper layer but have not yet been transmitted. If one or more I-frames are sent and the RetransTimer is not already running then perform the Start-RetransTimer action.

**Close Channel**—Close the L2CAP channel as described in [Section 4.6](#).

**Ignore**—the event may be silently discarded.

**PopSrejList**—Remove and discard the TxSeq from the head of SrejList.

**Data-IndicationSrej**—If the received I-frame fills a gap in a sequence of saved I-frames then all the saved I-frames in the sequence are passed to the SDU reassembly function. For the purpose of the state machine this operation is completed immediately. For example if the TxSeq of saved I-frames before receiving an I-frame is 2, 3, 5, 6, 9 and the received I-frame has a TxSeq of 4 then it fills the gap between 3 and 5 so the sequence 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 can be passed to the SDU reassembly function. When the I-frames are actually removed from the L2CAP entity receive buffers either by being processed immediately or when pulled by the SDU reassembly function, BufferSeqSrej is advanced as follows:

BufferSeqSrej := (BufferSeqSrej + 1) mod MaxTxWin

### 8.6.5.7 XMIT State Table

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Data-Request	RemoteBusy = FALSE <b>and</b> RemWindow-Not-Full	Send-Data	XMIT
Data-Request	RemoteBusy = TRUE <b>or</b> RemWindow-Full	Pend-Data	XMIT
Local-Busy-Detected		LocalBusy := TRUE	XMIT
		LocalBusy := TRUE Send RNR	XMIT
Local-Busy-Clear	RNRsent = TRUE	LocalBusy := TRUE RNRsent = FALSE Send RR(P=1) RetryCount := 1 Stop-RetransTimer Start-MonitorTimer	WAIT_F
Local-Busy-Clear	RNRsent = FALSE	LocalBusy:= FALSE RNRsent = FALSE	XMIT
Recv ReqSeqAndFbit		Process-ReqSeq	XMIT
Recv Fbit			XMIT
RetransTimer-Expires		Send RRorRNR(P=1) RetryCount := 1 Start-MonitorTimer	WAIT_F

Table 8.4: XMIT state table

### 8.6.5.8 WAIT\_F State Table

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Data-Request		Pend-Data	WAIT_F
Recv ReqSeqAndFbit	F = 1	Process-ReqSeq Stop-MonitorTimer <b>If</b> UnackedFrames > 0 <b>then</b> Start-RetransTimer	XMIT
Recv ReqSeqAndFbit	F = 0	Process-ReqSeq	WAIT_F
Recv Fbit	F = 1	Stop-MonitorTimer <b>If</b> UnackedFrames > 0 <b>then</b> Start-RetransTimer	XMIT
Recv Fbit	F = 0		WAIT_F
MonitorTimer-Expires	RetryCount < Max-Transmit	RetryCount := Retry-Count+1 Send RR or RNR(P=1) Start-MonitorTimer	WAIT_F
MonitorTimer-Expires	RetryCount ≥ Max-Transmit	Close Channel	

Table 8.5: WAIT\_F State Table

### 8.6.5.9 RECV State Table

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv I-frame (F=0)	<b>With-Expected-TxSeq and With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit and LocalBusy = FALSE</b>	Increment-ExpectedTxSeq PassToTx Data-Indication Send-Ack(F=0)	RECV
Recv I-frame (F=1)	<b>With-Expected-TxSeq and With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit and LocalBusy = FALSE</b>	Increment-ExpectedTxSeq PassToTx Data-Indication <b>If</b> RejActioned = FALSE <b>then</b> Retransmit-I-frames Send-Pending-I-frames <b>else</b> RejActioned := FALSE Send-Ack(F=0)	RECV

Table 8.6: RECV\_State table

## Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification



Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv I-frame	With-duplicate-TxSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit <b>and</b> LocalBusy = FALSE	PassToTx	RECV
Recv I-frame	With-unexpected-TxSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit <b>and</b> LocalBusy = FALSE	PassToTx SendREJ	REJ_SENT
		PassToTx InitSrej SaveIframeSrej SendSREJ	SREJ_SENT
Recv I-frame	With-Expected-TxSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit <b>and</b> LocalBusy = TRUE	PassToTx StoreOrIgnore	RECV
Recv I-frame	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> Not-With_Expect- ed_TxSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit <b>and</b> LocalBusy = TRUE	PassToTx	RECV
Recv RNR (P=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := TRUE PassToTx Stop-RetransTimer	RECV
Recv RNR (P=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := TRUE PassToTx Stop-RetransTimer Send RRorRNR (F=1)	RECV
Recv RR(P=0)(F=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	PassToTx <b>If</b> RemoteBusy = TRUE <b>and</b> UnackedFrames > 0 <b>then</b> Start-RetransTimer RemoteBusy := FALSE <i>Send-Pending-I-frames</i>	RECV
Recv RR(F=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx <b>If</b> RejActioned = FALSE <b>then</b> Retransmit-I-frames <b>else</b> RejActioned := FALSE <i>Send-Pending-I-frames</i>	RECV

Table 8.6: RECV\_State table (Continued)

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv RR(P=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	PassToTx Send IorRRorRNR(F=1) RemoteBusy := FALSE	RECV
Recv REJ (F=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < Max- Transmit <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx Retransmit-l-frames Send-Pending-l-frames <b>If</b> PbitOutstanding <b>then</b> RejActioned := TRUE	RECV
Recv REJ (F=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < Max- Transmit <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx <b>If</b> RejActioned = FALSE <b>then</b>  Retransmit-l-frames <b>else</b>  RejActioned := FALSE Send-Pending-l-frames ]	RECV
Recv SREJ (P=0) (F=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < Max- Transmit <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTxFbit Retransmit-Requested-l- frame <b>If</b> PbitOutstanding <b>then</b> SrejActioned := TRUE SrejSaveReqSeq = ReqSeq	RECV
Recv SREJ (P=0) (F=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < Max- Transmit <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTxFbit <b>If</b> SrejActioned := TRUE <b>and</b> SrejSaveReqSeq = ReqSeq <b>then</b> SrejActioned := FALSE <b>else</b> Retransmit-Requested-l- frame	RECV
Recv SREJ(P=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < Max- Transmit <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx Retransmit-Requested-l- frame Send-Pending-l-frames <b>If</b> PbitOutstanding <b>then</b> SrejActioned = TRUE SrejSaveReqSeq := ReqSeq	RECV

Table 8.6: RECV\_State table (Continued)

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv REJ	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b>  Retryframes[i] $\geq$ Max- Transmit	Close Channel	
RECV SREJ	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b>  Retryframes[i] $\geq$ Max- Transmit	Close Channel	
Recv I-frame	(With-Invalid-TxSeq <b>and</b> TxWindow $>$ (MaxTxWin/2) <b>or</b> With-Invalid-ReqSeq	Close Channel	
Recv I-frame	With-Invalid-TxSeq <b>and</b> TxWindow $\leq$ (MaxTx- Win/2)	Close Channel Ignore	RECV
Recv RR or RNR	With-Invalid-ReqSeq	Close Channel	
Recv REJ or SREJ	With-Invalid-ReqSeq- Retrans	Close Channel	
Recv frame		Ignore	RECV

Table 8.6: RECV\_State table (Continued)

### 8.6.5.10 REJ\_SENT State Table

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv I-frame (F=0)	<b>With-Expected-TxSeq and With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	$\text{Increment-ExpectedTxSeq}$ $\text{PassToTx}$ $\text{Data-Indication}$ $\text{Send-Ack (F=0)}$	RECV
Recv I-frame (F=1)	<b>With-Expected-TxSeq and With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	$\text{Increment-ExpectedTxSeq}$ $\text{PassToTx}$ $\text{Data-Indication}$ <b>If RejActioned = FALSE then</b> $\quad \text{Retransmit I-frames}$ $\quad \text{Send-Pending-I-frames}$ <b>else</b> $\quad \text{RejActioned := FALSE}$ $\quad \text{Send-Ack (F=0)}$	RECV
Recv I-frame	<b>With-Unexpected-TxSeq and With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	$\text{PassToTx}$	REJ_SENT
Recv RR (F=1)	<b>With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	$\text{RemoteBusy := FALSE}$ $\text{PassToTx}$ <b>If RejActioned = FALSE then</b> $\quad \text{Retransmit-I-frames}$ <b>else</b> $\quad \text{RejActioned := FALSE}$ $\quad \text{Send-Pending-I-frames}$	REJ_SENT
Recv RR (P=0)(F=0)	<b>With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	$\text{PassToTx}$ <b>If RemoteBusy = TRUE and</b> $\text{UnackedFrames} > 0$ <b>then</b> $\quad \text{Start-RetransTimer}$ $\text{RemoteBusy := FALSE}$ $\text{Send-Ack (F=0)}$	REJ_SENT
Recv RR (P=1)	<b>With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	$\text{PassToTx}$ <b>If RemoteBusy = TRUE and</b> $\text{UnackedFrames} > 0$ <b>then</b> $\quad \text{Start-RetransTimer}$ $\text{RemoteBusy := FALSE}$ $\text{Send RR (F=1)}$	REJ_SENT
Recv RNR (P=1)	<b>With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	$\text{RemoteBusy := TRUE}$ $\text{PassToTx}$ $\text{Send RR (F=1)}$	REJ_SENT

Table 8.7: REJ\_SENT State table

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv RNR ( $P=0$ )	<i>With-Valid-ReqSeq and With-Valid-F-bit</i>	RemoteBusy := TRUE PassToTx Send RR ( $F=0$ )	REJ_SENT
Recv REJ ( $F=0$ )	<i>With-Valid-ReqSeq - Retrans and Retryframes[i] &lt; Max-Transmit and With-Valid-F-bit</i>	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx Retransmit-I-frames Send-Pending-I-frames <b>If PbitOutstanding then</b> RejActioned := TRUE	REJ_SENT
Recv REJ ( $F=1$ )	<i>With-Valid-ReqSeq - Retrans and Retryframes[i] &lt; Max-Transmit and With-Valid-F-bit</i>	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx <b>If RejActioned = FALSE then</b> Retransmit-I-frames <b>else</b> RejActioned := FALSE Send-Pending-I-frames	REJ_SENT
Recv SREJ ( $P=0$ ) ( $F=0$ )	<i>With-Valid-ReqSeq-Retrans and Retryframes[i] &lt; Max-Transmit and With-Valid-F-bit</i>	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTxFbit Retransmit-Requested-I-frame <b>If PbitOutstanding then</b> SrejActioned := TRUE SrejSaveReqSeq := ReqSeq	REJ_SENT
Recv SREJ ( $P=0$ ) ( $F=1$ )	<i>With-Valid-ReqSeq-Retrans and Retryframes[i] &lt; Max-Transmit and With-Valid-F-bit</i>	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTxFbit <b>If SrejActioned = TRUE and SrejSaveReqSeq = ReqSeq then</b> SrejActioned := FALSE <b>else</b> Retransmit-Requested-I-frame	REJ_SENT

Table 8.7: REJ\_SENT State table (Continued)

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv SREJ (P=1)	<b>With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans and</b>  RetryIframes[i] < Max- Transmit  <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	RemoteBusy := FALSE  PassToTx  <i>Retransmit-Requested-I-frames</i>  <i>Send-Pending-I-frames</i>  <b>If PbitOutstanding then</b> SrejActioned := TRUE SrejSaveReqSeq := ReqSeq	REJ_SENT
Recv REJ	<b>With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans and</b>  RetryIframes[i] ≥ Max- Transmit	<i>Close Channel</i>	
Recv SREJ (P=0)	<b>With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans and</b>  RetryIframes[i] ≥ Max- Transmit	<i>Close Channel</i>	
RECV SREJ (P=1)	<b>With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans and</b>  RetryIframes[i] ≥ Max- Transmit	<i>Close Channel</i>	
Recv I-frame	<b>(With-Invalid-TxSeq and TxWindow &gt; (MaxTx- Win/2) or With-Invalid-ReqSeq</b>	<i>Close Channel</i>	
Recv RR or RNR	<b>With-Invalid-ReqSeq</b>	<i>Close Channel</i>	
Recv REJ or SREJ	<b>With-Invalid-ReqSeq- Retrans</b>	<i>Close Channel</i>	
Recv I-frame	<b>With-Invalid-TxSeq and TxWindow ≤ (MaxTx- Win/2)</b>	<i>Close Channel</i>  <i>Ignore</i>	REJ_SENT
Recv frame		<i>Ignore</i>	REJ_SENT

Table 8.7: REJ\_SENT State table (Continued)

### 8.6.5.11 SREJ\_SENT State Table

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv I-frame	With-Expected-TxSeq -Srej <b>and With-Valid-ReqSeq</b> <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b> <b>and SendRej = FALSE</b> <b>and SrejList = 1</b>	SavelframeSrej PopSrejList PassToTx Data-IndicatioSrej BufferSeq := BufferSeqSrej Send-Ack (F=0)	RECV
Recv I-frame	With-Expected-TxSeq-Srej <b>and With-Valid-ReqSeq</b> <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b> <b>and SendRej = TRUE</b> <b>and SrejList = 1</b>	SavelframeSrej PopSrejList PassToTx Data-IndicationSrej BufferSeq := BufferSeqSrej Send REJ	REJ_SENT
Recv I-frame	With-Expected-TxSeq-Srej <b>and With-Valid-ReqSeq</b> <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b> <b>and SrejList &gt; 1</b>	SavelframeSrej PopSrejList PassToTx Data-IndicationSrej	SREJ_SENT
Recv I-frame	With-Expected-TxSeq <b>and With-Valid-ReqSeq</b> <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	SavelframeSrej Increment-ExpectedTxSeq PassToTx	SREJ_SENT
Recv I-frame	With-Unexpected-TxSeq <b>and With-Valid-ReqSeq</b> <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b> <b>and SendRej = FALSE</b>	SavelframeSrej PassToTx Send SREJ PassToTx SendRej := TRUE	SREJ_SENT
Recv I-frame	With-Unexpected-TxSeq <b>and With-Valid-ReqSeq</b> <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b> <b>and SendRej = TRUE</b>	PassToTx	SREJ_SENT
Recv I-frame	With-Unexpected-TxSeq-Srej <b>and With-Valid-ReqSeq</b> <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	SavelframeSrej PassToTx Send SREJ(SrejList)	SREJ_SENT
Recv I-frame	With-duplicate-TxSeq-Srej <b>and With-Valid-ReqSeq</b> <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	PassToTx	SREJ_SENT

Table 8.8: SREJ\_SENT State Table

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv RR(F=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx <b>If</b> RejActioned = FALSE <b>then</b> Retransmit-I-frames <b>else</b> RejActioned := FALSE <i>Send-Pending-I-frames</i>	SREJ_SENT
Recv RR(P=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	PassToTx <b>If</b> RemoteBusy = TRUE <b>and</b> UnackedFrames > 0 <b>then</b> Start-RetransTimer RemoteBusy := FALSE Send SREJ(SrejList-tail)(F=1)	SREJ_SENT
Recv RR(P=0)(F=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	PassToTx <b>If</b> RemoteBusy = TRUE <b>and</b> UnackedFrames > 0 <b>then</b> Start-RetransTimer RemoteBusy := FALSE Send-Ack(F=0)	SREJ_SENT
Recv RNR(P=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := TRUE PassToTx Send SREJ(SrejList-tail)(F=1)	SREJ_SENT
Recv RNR(P=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeq <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := TRUE PassToTx Send RR(F=0)	SREJ_SENT
Recv REJ (F=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> RetryIframes[i] < Max- Transmit <b>and</b> With-Valid-F-bit	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx Retransmit-I-frames Send-Pending-I-frames <b>If</b> PbitOutstanding <b>then</b> RejActioned := TRUE	SREJ_SENT

Table 8.8: SREJ\_SENT State Table (Continued)

## Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification



Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv REJ (F=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < Max- Transmit <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx <b>If</b> RejActioned = FALSE <b>then</b> Retransmit-I-frames <b>else</b> RejActioned := FALSE Send-Pending-I-frames	SREJ_SENT
Recv SREJ(P=0) (F=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < MaxTransmit <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTxFbit Retransmit-Requested-I- frame <b>If</b> PbitOutstanding <b>then</b> SrejActioned := TRUE SrejSaveReqSeq = ReqSeq	SREJ_SENT
Recv SREJ(P=0) (F=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < MaxTransmit <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTxFbit <b>If</b> SrejActioned = TRUE <b>and</b> SrejSaveReqSeq = ReqSeq <b>then</b> SrejActioned := FALSE <b>else</b> Retransmit-Requested-I- frame	SREJ_SENT
Recv SREJ(P=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] < MaxTransmit <b>and With-Valid-F-bit</b>	RemoteBusy := FALSE PassToTx Retransmit-Requested-I- frame Send-Pending-I-frames <b>If</b> PbitOutstanding <b>then</b> SrejActioned := TRUE SrejSaveReqSeq = ReqSeq	SREJ_SENT
Recv REJ	With-Valid-ReqSeq- Retrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] ≥ MaxTransmit	Close Channel	
Recv SREJ(P=0)	With-Valid-ReqSeqRe- trans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] ≥ Max- Transmit	Close Channel	

Table 8.8: SREJ\_SENT State Table (Continued)

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Recv SREJ(P=1)	With-Valid-ReqSeqRetrans <b>and</b> Retryframes[i] ≥ MaxTransmit	Close Channel	
Recv I-frame	(With-Invalid-TxSeq <b>and</b> TxWindow > (MaxTxWin/2) or With-Invalid-ReqSeq	Close Channel	
Recv RR or RNR	With-Invalid-ReqSeq	Close Channel	
Recv REJ or SREJ	With-Invalid-ReqSeq-Retrans	Close Channel	
Recv I-frame	With-Invalid-TxSeq <b>and</b> TxWindow ≤ (MaxTxWin/2)	Close Channel	
	-	Ignore	SREJ_SENT
Recv frame	-	Ignore	SREJ_SENT

Table 8.8: SREJ\_SENT State Table (Continued)

## 8.7 STREAMING MODE

When a link is configured to work in Streaming Mode, the frame format for outgoing data is the same as for Enhanced Retransmission mode but frames are not acknowledged. Therefore

- RR, REJ, RNR and SREJ frames shall not be used in Streaming Mode.
- The F-bit shall always be set to zero in the transmitter, and shall be ignored in the receiver.
- the MonitorTimer and RetransmissionTimer shall not be used in Streaming mode.

A channel configured to work in Streaming mode shall be configured with a finite value for the Flush Timeout on the transmitter.

### 8.7.1 Transmitting I-frames

When transmitting a new I-frame the control field parameter ReqSeq shall be set to 0, TxSeq shall be set to NextTXSeq and NextTXSeq shall be incremented by one.

### 8.7.2 Receiving I-frames

Upon receipt of a valid I-frame with TxSeq equal to ExpectedTxSeq, the frame shall be made available to the reassembly function. ExpectedTxSeq shall be incremented by one.

Upon receipt of a valid I-frame with an out-of-sequence TxSeq (see [Section 8.7.3.1 on page 195](#)) all frames with a sequence number less than TxSeq shall be assumed lost and marked as missing. The missing I-frames are in the range from ExpectedTxSeq (the frame that the device was expecting to receive) up to and including TxSeq - 1. ExpectedTxSeq shall be set to TxSeq +1. The received I-frame shall be made available for pulling by the reassembly function. The ReqSeq shall be ignored.

**Note:** It is possible for a complete window size of I-frames to be missing and thus, no missing I-frames are detected. For example, when a window size of 63 is used this situation occurs when 63 I-frames in a row are missing. If the ability to not detect missing I-frames will cause problems for an application, it is recommended that the Extended Window Size option be used.

If there is no buffer space for the received I-frame an existing I-frame (i.e. the oldest) shall be discarded (flushed) freeing up buffer space for the new I-frame. The discarded I-frame shall be marked as missing.

### 8.7.3 Exception Conditions

Exception conditions may occur as the result of physical layer errors or L2CAP procedural errors. The error recovery procedures which are available following the detection of an exception condition at the L2CAP layer in Streaming mode are defined in this section.

#### 8.7.3.1 TxSeq Sequence error

A TxSeq sequence error exception condition occurs in the receiver when a valid I-frame is received which contains a TxSeq value which is not equal to the expected value, thus TxSeq is not equal to ExpectedTxSeq.

The out-of-sequence I-frame is identified by a TxSeq that is greater than ExpectedTxSeq ( $\text{TxSeq} > \text{ExpectedTXSeq}$ ). The ReqSeq shall be ignored. The missing I-frame(s) are considered lost and ExpectedTXSeq is set equal to  $\text{TxSeq}+1$  as specified in [Section 8.7.2 on page 194](#). The missing I-frame(s) are reported as lost to the SDU reassembly function.

## 9 PROCEDURE FOR AMP CHANNEL CREATION AND HANDLING

When an AMP is used, the procedures defined in this chapter shall be used. Enhanced Retransmission mode is used on all reliable channels to ensure a reliable move channel operation and to ensure that user traffic with an infinite flush timeout is reliable even for AMPs that do not support infinite flush timeout. Streaming mode is used on all channels configured with a finite flush timeout.

### 9.1 CREATE CHANNEL

Create Channel Request is used to create a new L2CAP channel over a Controller. The channel will have the quality of service specified by a pair of Extended Flow Specifications exchanged during channel configuration. Channels shall only be created over the BR/EDR controller if both L2CAP entities support Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR. After configuration each device will have an outgoing (transmit traffic) flow specification and an incoming (received traffic) flow specification. Note: Where Extended Flow Specification for BR/EDR is not supported by one or both L2CAP entities, an L2CAP channel can be established with Connection Request.

All Best Effort channels created over the same AMP Physical link are aggregated over a single AMP Logical link, so if a Best Effort channel is requested over an AMP Physical link where a Best Effort logical link already exists then the Best Effort Extended Flow Specifications are aggregated into one pair of flow specifications and the flow specification of the AMP Logical link is modified using the HCI Flow Spec Modify command (in devices that support HCI). [Section 7.8](#) describes how Best Effort Flow specifications are aggregated. A logical link is created for each Guaranteed channel and one for the first Best Effort channel of the AMP.

All channels created over the same BR/EDR physical link are aggregated over a single logical link. Aggregation of Best Effort Extended Flow Specifications is not necessary for channels created over ACL-U logical links so the term “modify the logical link” in the algorithm descriptions results in “no action” when the logical link is ACL-U. The L2CAP layer should perform admission control for Guaranteed channels created on ACL-U logical links (see [Section 7.10](#) for a description of L2CAP admission control). The term “create a logical link” in the algorithm description refers to L2CAP performing admission control when the logical link is ACL-U.

### **Basic Algorithm:**

1. Extended Flow specifications and other configuration parameters shall be exchanged via the Lockstep Configuration procedure.
2. If the service type of the Extended Flow Specifications are Best Effort (including the case where one is Best Effort and the other is “No Traffic”) then the Best Effort Algorithm shall be used otherwise the Guaranteed Algorithm shall be used. (See [Section 5.6](#) for rules on setting the service type of Extended Flow Specifications).

### **Best Effort Algorithm:**

1. If one or more Best Effort channels already exist for the Controller then Goto step 3
2. Tell the Controller to create a logical link passing the Extended Flow Specifications. Goto step 5
3. Aggregate the Extended Flow Specifications with all the other Best Effort Extended Flow specifications running on the same physical link as described in [Section 7.8](#).
4. Tell the controller to modify the logical link passing the aggregated Extended Flow Specifications.
5. If the Controller accepts the create/modify request and returns success then complete the L2CAP Configuration with result = success otherwise complete the L2CAP configuration with result = “Failure - flow spec rejected”

### **Guaranteed Algorithm**

1. Tell the Controller to create a logical link passing the Extended Flow Specifications.
2. If the Controller accepts the create request and returns success, complete the L2CAP Configuration with result = success; otherwise, complete the L2CAP configuration with result = “Failure - flow spec rejected.”

If the Controller is a BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE Controller and the Extended Flow Specification type is Guaranteed then L2CAP should perform admission control by determining if the requested QoS can be achieved by the Controller without compromising existing Guaranteed channels running on the Controller.

An example of the creation of the first Best Effort channel or a guaranteed channel is shown in [Figure 9.1](#). An example of creation of a subsequent Best Effort channel is shown in [Figure 9.2](#).

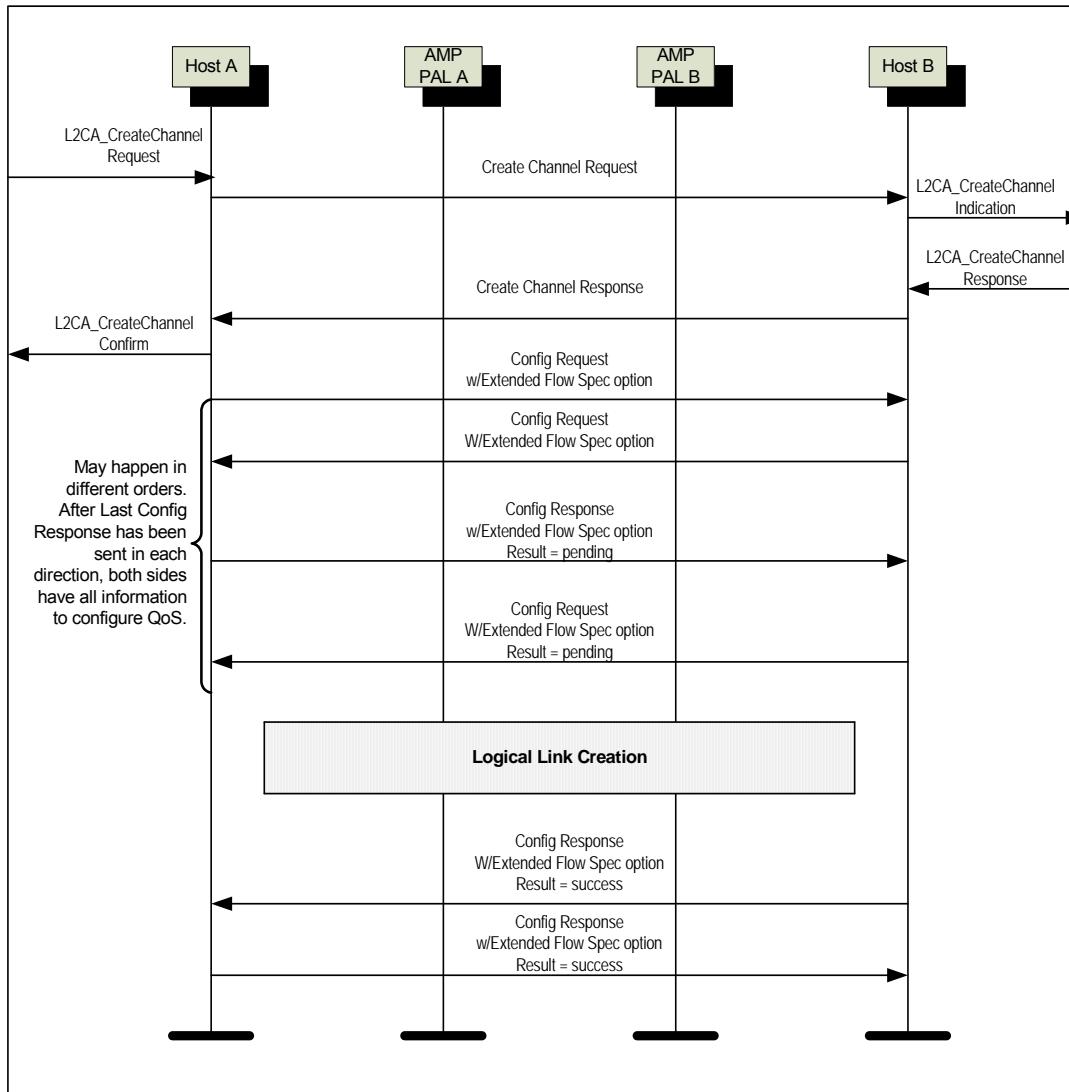


Figure 9.1: Creation of First Best Effort L2CAP channel or a Guaranteed L2CAP Channel

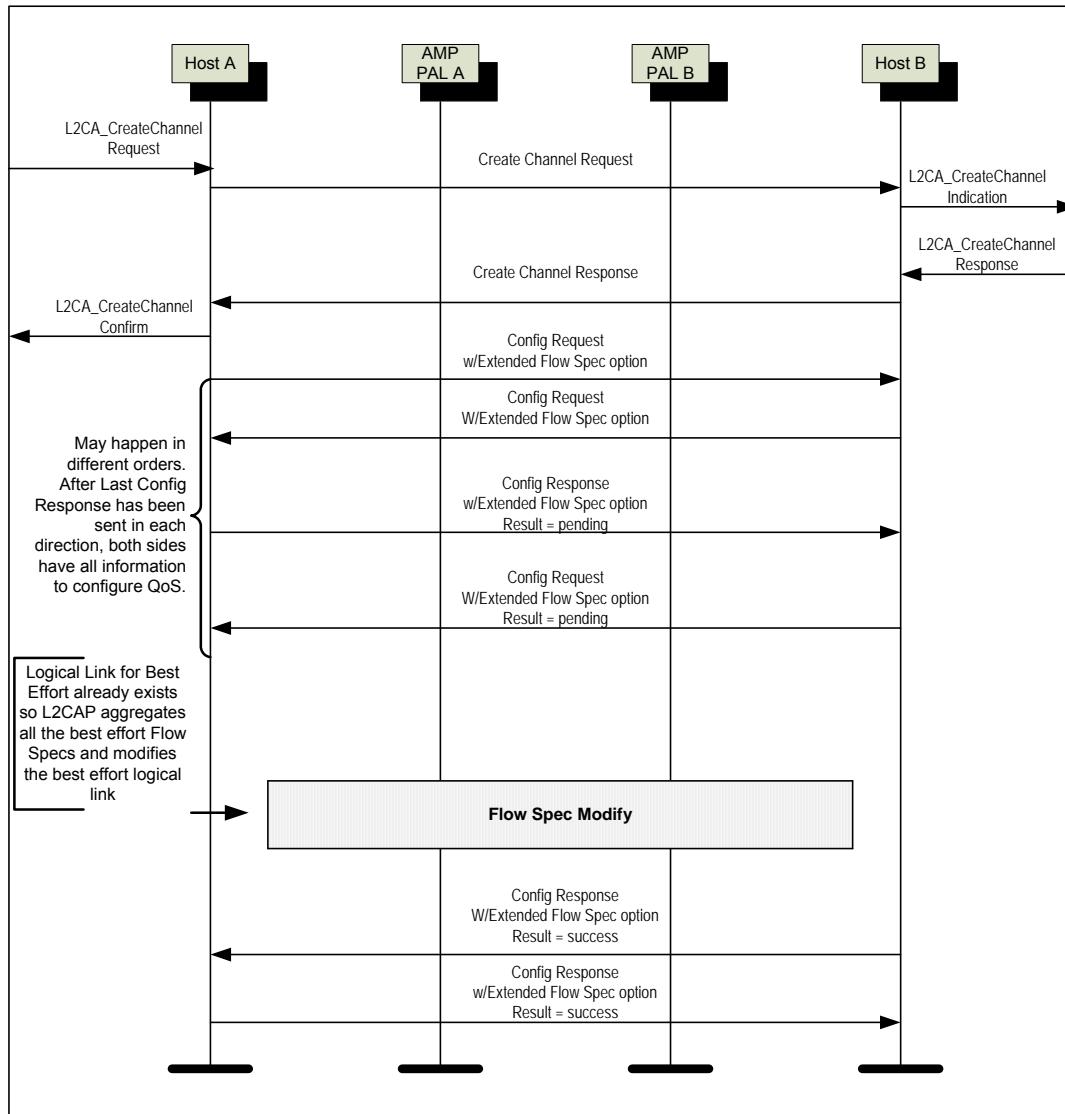


Figure 9.2: Creation of Subsequent Best Effort L2CAP Channel

## 9.2 MOVE CHANNEL

Move Channel is used to move an L2CAP channel from one Controller to another. Moving a channel retains the existing channel configuration (MTU, QOS, etc.) and the CID. If reconfiguration is necessary then it may be done after a successful move channel operation. If a channel configured as Best Effort is moved, the Extended Flow Specification aggregate shall be recalculated (see [Section 7.8](#) for the aggregation algorithm) for both the old and new Controllers in cases where an aggregate already exists or where a channel is moved to a Controller with an existing Best Effort channel. If the Extended Flow Specification aggregate are modified for a Controller then a logical link modify operation shall be performed for that Controller.

The two procedures for moving channels are based on the mode configured for the channel. One procedure is used for channels configured with Enhanced

Retransmission mode. Another procedure is used for channels configured with Streaming mode. The procedures are described in the following sections.

Note that the terms such as “logical link create” and “logical link modify” are used in the Move procedures. For AMP Controllers these terms refer to logical link operations (e.g. QoS admission control) performed by the Controller. For BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE Controllers these terms refer to QoS admission control performed by L2CAP on behalf of the Controller.

### **9.2.1 Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Enhanced Retransmission Mode**

1. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device receives the L2CA\_Move\_Channel.request from the upper layer (application) it shall stop sending I-frames and S-frames. It shall continue to listen on the old Controller and follow the procedures in [Section 9.2.1.1](#). The L2CAP layer on the initiating device shall send the Move Channel Request packet over the L2CAP signaling channel to the remote (responding) device.
2. When the L2CAP layer on the responding device receives the Move Channel Request packet it shall stop sending I-frames and S-frames. It shall still listen on the old Controller and follow the procedures in [Section 9.2.1.1](#). It shall send a Move Channel Response packet to the other side. If a logical link must be created or modified (or admission control is required) the Move Channel Response packet shall contain a result code of “pending.” If a logical link does not need to be created or modified and the move operation is allowed then the Move Channel Response packet shall contain a result code of “success.” Otherwise, it shall contain the appropriate “refused” result code. If the response code sent in the Move Channel Response packet is “pending” then the L2CAP layer on the responding device shall attempt to create or modify a logical link on the new Controller for the channel. When the logical link create/modify operation is complete, the L2CAP layer on the responding device shall send a Move Channel Response packet to the other side with the result code indicating the success/failure of the logical link create/modify.
3. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device receives the Move Channel Response packet it shall check the result code. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is “refused” it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation packet with result code “failure” to the other side. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is “pending” or “success” the L2CAP layer shall stop listening on the old Controller and attempt to create/modify a logical link on the new Controller for the channel. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is “pending” then it shall use the ERTX timer while waiting for a Move Channel Response packet with a “non-pending” result code from the responding device. When the logical link create/modify operation is complete and the L2CAP layer on the initiating

device has received a Move Channel Response packet from the responding device with a “non-pending” result code, it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation packet to conclude the Move Channel procedure. The result code in the Move Channel Confirmation packet indicates the success/failure of its own logical channel create/modify operation and the result code in the Move Channel Response packet from the responding device. If both are success then the result code sent in the Move Channel Confirmation packet shall be “success” otherwise it shall be “failure.”

4. When the L2CAP layer on the responding device receives the Move Channel Confirmation packet it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation Response and send an L2CA\_Move\_Channel\_Confirm.indication to the upper layer with the result code contained in the Move Channel Confirmation packet. If the result code of the Move Channel Confirmation is success the L2CAP layer on the responding device shall listen on the new Controller if the result code is failure then it shall listen on the old Controller.
5. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device receives the Move Channel Confirmation response packet it shall send an L2CAP\_Move\_Channel.confirm to the upper layer with the result code passed in the Move Channel Confirmation packet. If the result code sent in the Move Channel Confirmation packet is success then the L2CAP layer on the initiating device shall send an RR(P=1) on the new Controller and shall start listening on the new Controller. Before sending the RR(P=1) the L2CAP layer on the initiating device may initiate reconfiguration by sending a Configuration Request packet. If the result sent is failure then the L2CAP layer on the initiating device shall send an RR(P=1) on the old Controller and start listening on the old Controller.
6. When the L2CAP layer on the responding device receives the RR(P=1) packet it shall send an I-frame(F=1) with a TxSeq matching the ReqSeq in the RR(P=1) or an RR(F=1) if there are no I-frames to send. If the I-frame is a retransmission and the PDU size used for the new Controller is smaller than the PDU size used for the old Controller, the responding device shall segment the retransmitted I-frame to make it fit in the new PDU size. If the L2CAP layer on the responding device receives a Configuration Request packet before the RR(P=1) it shall perform reconfiguration. When the reconfiguration is complete it shall wait for the RR(P=1). If the L2CAP layer on the responding device desires to perform reconfiguration but receives the RR(P=1) it may send a Configuration Request packet instead of the RR(F=1) or I-frame(F=1) to initiate reconfiguration. After the reconfiguration is complete it shall send the RR(F=1) or I-frame(F=1).

7. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device receives the I-frame(F=1) or RR(F=1) from the responding device, the move is complete. If it receives a Configuration Request packet before receiving the RR(F=1) or I-frame(F=1) it shall perform reconfiguration. When reconfiguration is complete it shall wait for the RR(F=1) or I-frame(F=1).

#### 9.2.1.1 Enhanced Retransmission Mode Procedures During a Move Operation

1. Stop sending I-frames and S-frames and cancel all timers. Set the transmitter to the XMIT state and clear all retry counters.
2. Clear or reset any SREJ\_SENT and REJ\_SENT state specific variables including flushing any received out-of-sequence I-frames saved as part of being in the SREJ\_SENT state. Set the receiver to the RECV state.
3. Process received I-frames in the RECV state including processing the ReqSeq and passing completed SDUs to the upper layer. Only process the ReqSeq of received S-frames. Do not change state.
4. Ignore all out-of-sequence I-frames keeping note of the TxSeq of the last in-sequence I-frame received.
5. If the initiating device is in a local busy condition then it should wait to send the Move Channel Confirmation packet until the local busy condition has cleared. If the responding device is in a local busy condition then it should send a Move Channel Response packet with result “pending” upon receiving the Move Channel Request packet and wait until the local busy condition is cleared before sending a Move Channel Response packet with a “non-pending” result.
6. The ReqSeq of the RR(P=1) sent by the initiating device shall be set to the TxSeq of the next I-frame after the last in-sequence I-frame received (noted in step 4). The ReqSeq of the RR(F=1) or I-frame(F=1) sent by the responding device shall be set to the TxSeq of the next frame after the last in-sequence I-frame received (noted in step 4).
7. The new Controller or HCI transport may require smaller PDU size than the old Controller. If this is the case then the L2CAP layer shall segment all retransmitted I-frames to fit the new PDU size.
8. After sending the RR(P=1) the initiating device should start the Monitor Timer and go to the WAIT\_F state.
9. Timers shall be stopped during channel reconfiguration and restarted when reconfiguration is complete.

### 9.2.2 Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Streaming Mode (Initiator is Data Source)

1. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device (data source) receives the L2CA\_Move\_Channel.request it shall stop sending L2CAP PDUs. The L2CAP layer on the initiating device shall send a Move Channel Request packet over the L2CAP signaling channel to the remote (responding) device.
2. When the L2CAP layer on the responding device receives the Move Channel Request packet it shall still listen on the old Controller for receive frames (timing could be such that packets from the initiating device are still in transit). It shall pass completely received SDUs up to the upper layer. It shall send a Move Channel Response packet to the other side. If a logical link must be created (or admission control is required) the Move Channel Response packet shall contain a result code of "pending." If a logical link does not need to be created and the move operation is allowed then the Move Channel Response packet shall contain a result code of "success." Otherwise it shall contain the appropriate "refused" result code. If the response code sent in the Move Channel Response packet is "pending" then the L2CAP layer on the responding device shall attempt to create a logical link on the new Controller for the channel. When the logical link create operation is complete, the L2CAP layer on the responding device shall send a Move Channel Response packet to the other side with the result code indicating the success/failure of the logical link create operation. It shall continue to listen on the old Controller.
3. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device receives the Move Channel Response packet it shall check the result code. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is "refused" it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation packet with result code "failure" to the other side. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is "pending" or "success" the L2CAP layer shall attempt to create a logical link on the new Controller for the channel. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is "pending" then it shall use the ERTX timer while waiting for a Move Channel Response packet with a "non-pending" result code from the responding device. When the logical link create operation is complete and it has received a Move Channel Response packet from the responding device with a "non-pending" result code it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation packet and wait for a Move Channel Confirmation response packet. The result code in the Move Channel Confirmation indicates the success/failure of its own logical link create operation and the result code in the Move Channel Response packet from the responding device. If both are success then the result code sent in the Move Channel Confirmation shall be success otherwise it shall be failure.

4. When the L2CAP layer on the responding device receives the Move Channel Confirmation packet it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation response packet and send an L2CA\_Move\_Channel\_Confirm.indication to the upper layer with the result code passed in the Move Channel Confirmation packet. If the result code of the Move Channel Confirmation is success it shall listen on the new Controller. If the result code is failure it shall listen on the old Controller.
5. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device receives the Move Channel Confirmation response packet it shall send an L2CAP\_Move\_Channel.confirm to the upper layer with the result code passed in the Move Channel Confirmation packet. If the result sent in the Move Channel Confirmation is success then the initiating device shall send I-frames for the channel on the new Controller otherwise it shall send I-frames for the channel on the old Controller.

### **9.2.3 Move Channel Protocol Procedure with Streaming Mode (Initiator is Data Sink)**

1. When the L2CAP layer on initiating device (data sink) receives the L2CAP\_Move\_Channel.request it shall send a Move Channel Request packet over the L2CAP signaling channel to the remote (responding) device. It shall continue listening on the old Controller.
2. When the L2CAP layer on the responding device receives the Move Channel Request packet it shall stop sending L2CAP PDUs and send a Move Channel Response packet to the other side. If a logical link must be created (or admission control is required) the Move Channel Response packet shall contain a result code of “pending.” If a logical link does not need to be created and the move operation is allowed then the Move Channel Response packet shall contain a result code of “success.” Otherwise it shall contain the appropriate “refused” result code. If the result code sent in the Move Channel Response packet is “pending” then the L2CAP layer on the responding device shall attempt to create a logical link on the new Controller for the channel. When the logical link create operation is complete, the L2CAP layer on the responding device shall send a Move Channel Response packet to the other side with the result code indicating the success/failure of the logical link create.
3. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device receives the Move Channel Response packet it shall check the result code. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is “refused” it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation packet with result code “failure” to the other side. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is “pending” or “success” the L2CAP layer shall attempt to create a logical link on the new Controller for the channel. If the result code in the Move Channel Response packet is “pending” then it shall use the ERTX timer while waiting for a Move Channel Response packet with

a “non-pending” result code from the responding device. When the logical link create operation is complete and it has received a Move Channel Response packet from the responding device with a “non-pending” result code it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation packet and wait for a Move Channel Confirmation response packet. The result code in the Move Channel Confirmation indicates the success/failure of its own logical link create operation and the result code in the Move Channel Response packet from the responding device. If both are success then the result code sent in the Move Channel Confirmation shall be success otherwise it shall be failure. If the result sent is success then the initiating device shall listen on the new Controller otherwise it shall listen on the old Controller.

4. When the L2CAP layer on the responding device receives the Move Channel Confirmation packet it shall send a Move Channel Confirmation response packet and send an L2CA\_Move\_Channel\_Confirm.indication to the upper layer. If the result code in the Move Channel Confirmation packet is success it shall send I-frames for the channel on the new Controller. If the result code is failure it shall send I-frames on for the channel the old Controller.
5. When the L2CAP layer on the initiating device receives the Move Channel Confirmation response packet it shall send an L2CA\_Move\_Channel.confirm to the upper layer with the result code passed in the Move Channel Confirmation packet.

[Figure 9.3](#) and [Figure 9.4](#) show examples of the move operation with Enhanced Retransmission mode active.

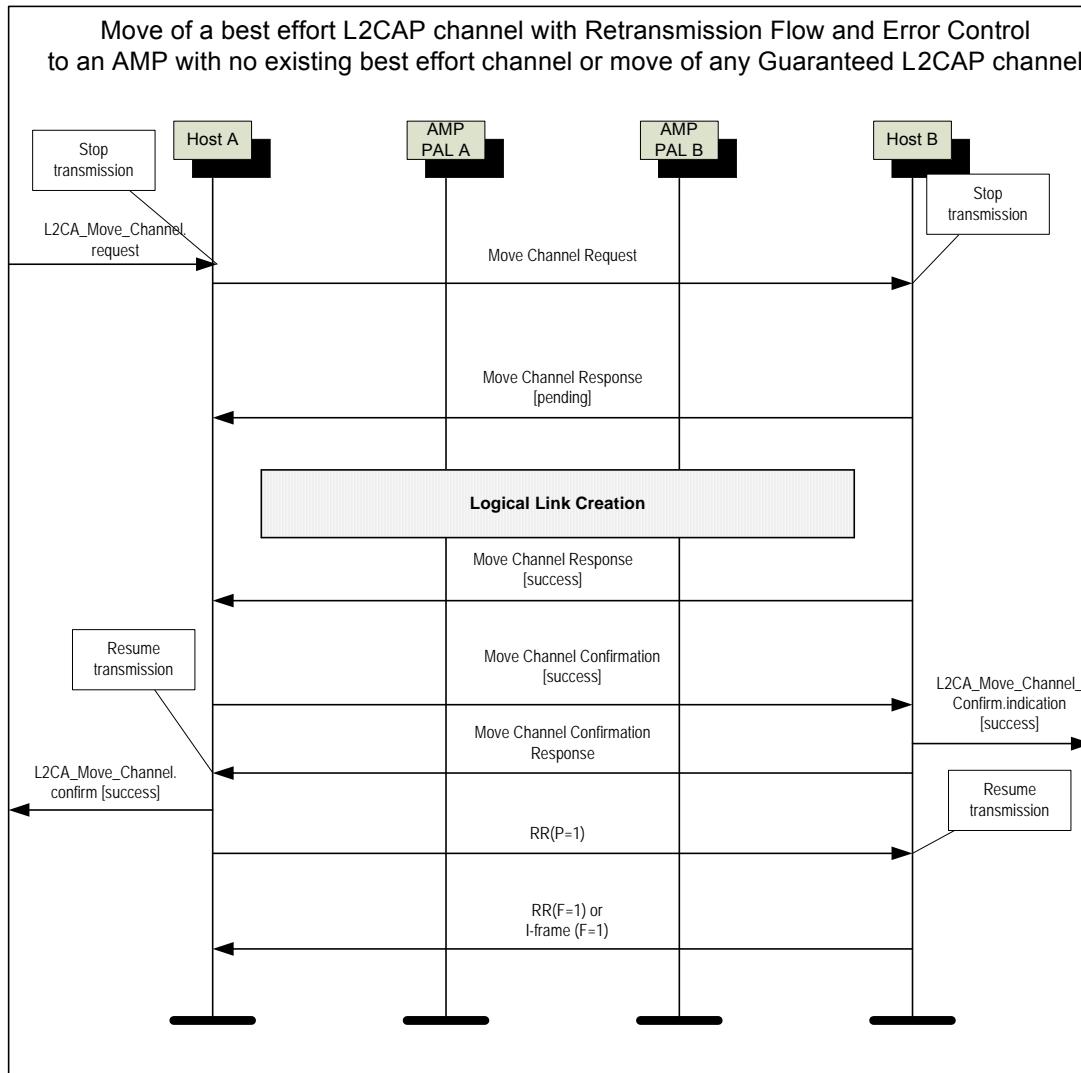


Figure 9.3: Move of a Best Effort L2CAP channel Enhanced Retransmission mode enabled to an AMP with no existing best effort logical link or move of any Guaranteed L2CAP channel

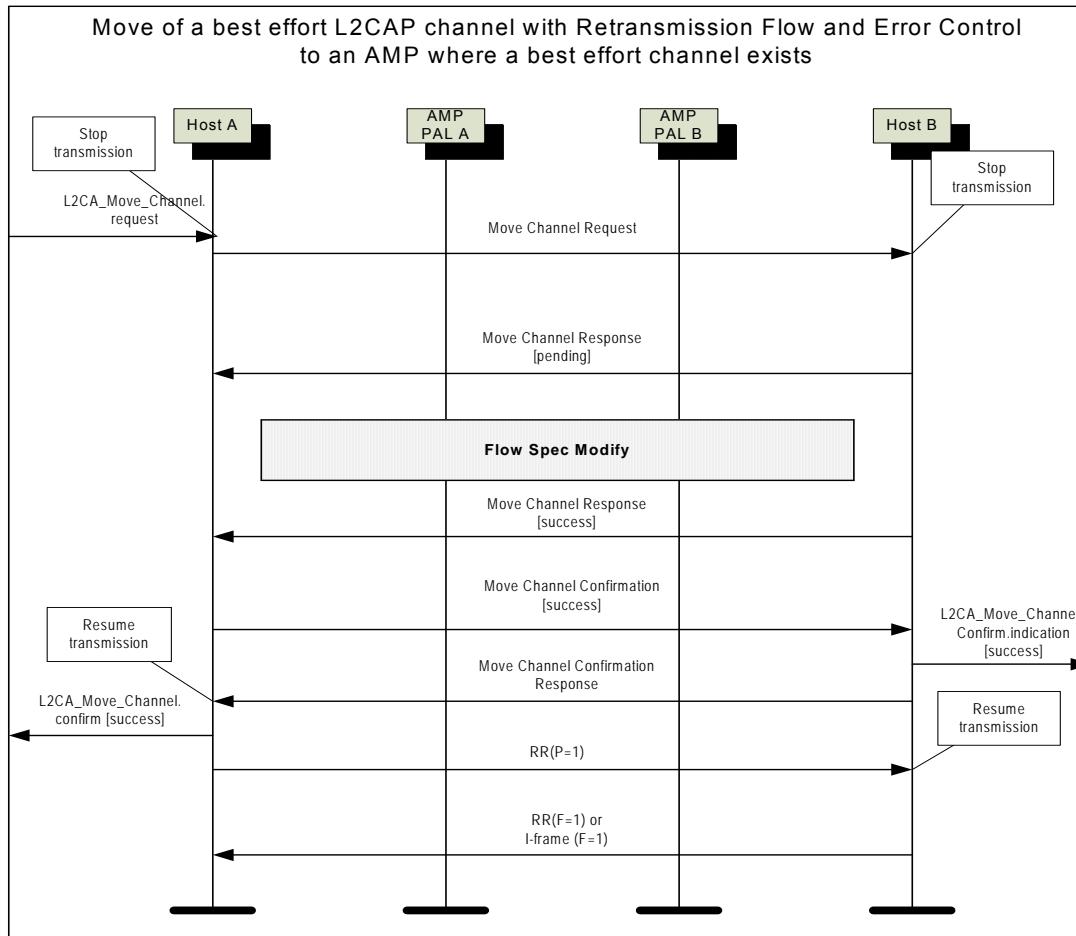


Figure 9.4: Move of a Best Effort L2CAP channel with Enhanced Retransmission mode enabled to an AMP where a best effort logical link exists

### 9.3 DISCONNECT CHANNEL

If a channel configured as Best Effort is disconnected the Extended Flow Specification aggregate shall be recalculated (see [Section 7.8](#) for the aggregation algorithm) unless it is the last or only channel. If this is not the last or only Best Effort channel for the logical link then a logical link modify operation shall be performed otherwise the logical link should be disconnected. The ACL-U logical link between two devices should not be disconnected until all the L2CAP channels running over all logical links between the two devices have been disconnected.

## 10 PROCEDURES FOR CREDIT BASED FLOW CONTROL

### 10.1 LE CREDIT BASED FLOW CONTROL MODE

LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode is used for LE L2CAP connection oriented channels with flow control using a credit based scheme for L2CAP data (i.e. not signaling packets).

The number of credits (LE-frames) that can be received by a device on an L2CAP channel is determined during connection establishment. LE-frames shall only be sent on an L2CAP channel if the device has a credit count greater than zero for that L2CAP channel. For each LE-frame sent the device decreases the credit count for that L2CAP channel by one. The peer device may return credits for an L2CAP channel at any time by sending an LE Flow Control Credit packet. When a credit packet is received by a device it shall increment the credit count for that L2CAP channel by the value of the Credits field in this packet. The number of credits returned for an L2CAP channel may exceed the initial credits provided in the LE Credit Based Connection Request or Response packet. The device sending the LE Flow Control Credit packet shall ensure that the number of credits returned for an L2CAP channel does not cause the credit count to exceed 65535. The device receiving the credit packet shall disconnect the L2CAP channel if the credit count exceeds 65535. The device shall also disconnect the L2CAP channel if it receives an LE-frame on an L2CAP channel from the peer device that has a credit count of zero. If a device receives an LE Flow Control Credit packet with credit value set to zero, the packet shall be ignored. A device shall not send credit values of zero in LE Flow Control Credit packets.

If a connection request is received and there is insufficient authentication between the two devices, the connection shall be rejected with a result value of "Connection refused - insufficient authentication". If a connection request is received and there is insufficient authorization between the two devices, the connection shall be rejected with a result value of "Connection refused - insufficient authorization". If a connection request is received and the encryption key size is too short, the connection shall be rejected with a result value of "Connection refused – insufficient encryption key size".

Note: When encryption is not enabled, the result value "Connection refused – insufficient authentication" does not indicate that MITM protection is required.

## 11 LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1:	L2CAP architectural blocks .....	32
Figure 2.1:	Dynamically allocated CID assignments .....	40
Figure 2.2:	Channels between devices .....	42
Figure 2.3:	L2CAP transaction model .....	43
Figure 3.1:	L2CAP PDU format in Basic L2CAP mode on connection-oriented channels (field sizes in bits) .....	47
Figure 3.2:	L2CAP PDU format on the Connectionless channel .....	48
Figure 3.3:	L2CAP PDU formats in Flow Control and Retransmission Modes .....	49
Figure 3.4:	The LFSR circuit generating the FCS .....	54
Figure 3.5:	Initial state of the FCS generating circuit .....	54
Figure 3.6:	L2CAP PDU format in LE Credit Based Flow Control Mode .....	57
Figure 4.1:	L2CAP PDU format on a signaling channel .....	59
Figure 4.2:	Command format .....	60
Figure 4.3:	Command Reject Packet .....	62
Figure 4.4:	Connection Request Packet .....	63
Figure 4.5:	Connection Response Packet .....	64
Figure 4.6:	Configuration Request Packet .....	66
Figure 4.7:	Configuration Request Flags field format .....	66
Figure 4.8:	Configuration Response Packet .....	68
Figure 4.9:	Configuration Response Flags field format .....	68
Figure 4.10:	Disconnection Request Packet .....	70
Figure 4.11:	Disconnection Response Packet .....	71
Figure 4.12:	Echo Request Packet .....	71
Figure 4.13:	Echo Response Packet .....	72
Figure 4.14:	Information Request Packet .....	72
Figure 4.15:	Information Response Packet .....	73
Figure 4.16:	Create Channel Request Packet .....	77
Figure 4.17:	Create Channel Response Packet .....	78
Figure 4.18:	Move Channel Request Packet .....	79
Figure 4.19:	Move Channel Response Packet .....	80
Figure 4.20:	Move Channel Confirmation Packet .....	81
Figure 4.21:	Move Channel Confirmation Response Packet .....	82
Figure 4.22:	Connection Parameters Update Request Packet .....	83
Figure 4.23:	Connection Parameters Update Response Packet .....	84
Figure 4.24:	LE Credit Based Connection Request Packet .....	85
Figure 4.25:	LE Credit Based Connection Response Packet .....	86
Figure 4.26:	LE Flow Control Credit Packet .....	88
Figure 5.1:	Configuration option format .....	89
Figure 5.2:	MTU Option Format .....	90
Figure 5.3:	Flush Timeout option format .....	91

Figure 5.4:	Quality of Service (QoS) option format containing Flow Specification .....	93
Figure 5.5:	Retransmission and Flow Control option format .....	96
Figure 5.6:	FCS option format .....	101
Figure 5.7:	Extended Flow Specification option format .....	102
Figure 5.8:	Extended Window Size option format .....	107
Figure 5.9:	Extended Window Size values .....	107
Figure 6.1:	States and transitions .....	127
Figure 6.2:	Configuration states and transitions .....	128
Figure 6.3:	States and transitions—AMP enabled operation .....	129
Figure 7.1:	L2CAP fragmentation in a BR/EDR Controller .....	137
Figure 7.2:	Example of fragmentation processes in a device with a BR/EDR Controller and USB HCI transport .....	138
Figure 7.3:	Segmentation and fragmentation of an SDU in a BR/EDR Controller .....	139
Figure 7.4:	Example of segmentation and fragment processes in a device with a BR/EDR Controller and USB HCI Transport .....	140
Figure 8.1:	Example of the transmitter side .....	151
Figure 8.2:	Example of the receiver side .....	152
Figure 8.3:	Overview of the receiver side when operating in flow control mode .....	160
Figure 8.4:	Receiver state machine .....	170
Figure 9.1:	Creation of First Best Effort L2CAP channel or a Guaranteed L2CAP Channel .....	198
Figure 9.2:	Creation of Subsequent Best Effort L2CAP Channel .....	199
Figure 9.3:	Move of a Best Effort L2CAP channel Enhanced Retransmission mode enabled to an AMP with no existing best effort logical link or move of any Guaranteed L2CAP channel .....	206
Figure 9.4:	Move of a Best Effort L2CAP channel with Enhanced Retransmission mode enabled to an AMP where a best effort logical link exists .....	207

## 12 LIST OF TABLES

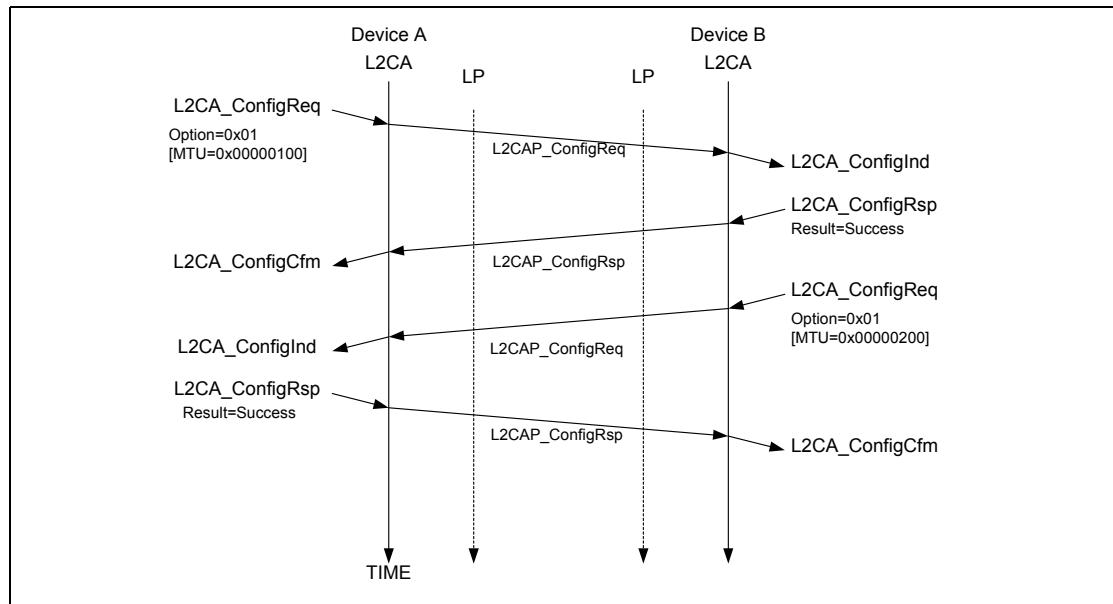
Table 1.1:	Terminology.....	35
Table 2.1:	CID name space .....	40
Table 2.2:	CID name space on LE-U logical link.....	41
Table 2.3:	Types of Channel Identifiers.....	43
Table 3.1:	Standard Control Field formats .....	51
Table 3.3:	Extended Control Field formats.....	52
Table 3.2:	Enhanced Control Field formats.....	52
Table 3.4:	SAR control element format.....	53
Table 3.5:	S control element format: type of S-frame .....	53
Table 4.1:	Minimum Signaling MTU .....	59
Table 4.2:	Signaling Command Codes .....	60
Table 4.3:	Reason Code Descriptions .....	62
Table 4.4:	Reason Data values.....	63
Table 4.5:	Result values .....	65
Table 4.6:	Status values.....	65
Table 4.7:	Configuration Response Result codes.....	69
Table 4.8:	InfoType definitions .....	72
Table 4.9:	Information Response Result values .....	73
Table 4.10:	Information Response Data fields .....	74
Table 4.11:	Extended feature mask .....	75
Table 4.12:	Fixed Channels Supported bit mask .....	76
Table 4.13:	Result values .....	78
Table 4.14:	Status values.....	79
Table 4.15:	Result values .....	80
Table 4.16:	Result values .....	81
Table 4.17:	Result values .....	84
Table 4.18:	LE Credit Based Connection Request LE_PSM ranges .....	85
Table 4.19:	Result values for LE Credit Based Connection Response.....	87
Table 5.1:	Service type definitions .....	93
Table 5.2:	Mode definitions .....	96
Table 5.3:	FCS types .....	102
Table 5.4:	Traffic parameters for L2CAP QoS configuration.....	103
Table 5.5:	Traffic parameters for L2CAP QoS configuration.....	104
Table 6.1:	CLOSED state event table .....	111
Table 6.2:	WAIT_CONNECT_RSP state event table.....	112
Table 6.3:	WAIT_CONNECT state event table .....	113
Table 6.4:	CONFIG state event table .....	115
Table 6.5:	CONFIG state/substates event table: non-success transitions within configuration process.....	117
Table 6.6:	CONFIG state/substates event table: events not related to configuration process .....	117

Table 6.7:	OPEN state event table .....	119
Table 6.8:	WAIT_DISCONNECT state event table .....	120
Table 6.9:	WAIT_CREATE_RSP state event table .....	121
Table 6.10:	WAIT_CREATE state event table .....	121
Table 6.11:	WAIT_MOVE_RSP state event table .....	122
Table 6.12:	WAIT_MOVE state event table .....	123
Table 6.13:	WAIT_MOVE_CONFIRM state event table .....	123
Table 6.14:	WAIT_CONFIRM_RSP state event table.....	124
Table 7.1:	Parameters allowed in Request.....	131
Table 7.2:	Parameters allowed in Response .....	132
Table 7.3:	Permitted parameter in L2CAP Configuration Response for Service Type “Best Effort” .....	134
Table 7.4:	Permitted parameter changes in L2CAP Configuration Response for Service Type “Guaranteed” .....	134
Table 8.1:	Summary of actions when the RetransmissionTimer is in use and R=0 .....	154
Table 8.2:	AMP Controller timeout values .....	168
Table 8.3:	Operators, connectives and statements used with variables...	171
Table 8.4:	XMIT state table.....	182
Table 8.5:	WAIT_F State Table .....	183
Table 8.6:	RECV_State table .....	183
Table 8.7:	REJ_SENT State table.....	187
Table 8.8:	SREJ_SENT State Table .....	190

## APPENDIX A: CONFIGURATION MSCS

The examples in this appendix describe a sample of the multiple possible configuration scenarios that might occur.

[Figure I](#) illustrates the basic configuration process. In this example, the devices exchange MTU information. All other values are assumed to be default.



*Figure I: Basic MTU exchange*

[Figure II on page 214](#) illustrates how two devices interoperate even though one device supports more options than the other does. Device A is an upgraded version. It uses a hypothetically defined option type 0x20 for link-level security. Device B rejects the command using the Configuration Response packet with result ‘unknown parameter’ informing Device A that option 0x20 is not understood. Device A then resends the request omitting option 0x20. Device B notices that it does not need to such a large MTU and accepts the request but includes in the response the MTU option informing Device A that Device B will not send an L2CAP packet with a payload larger than 0x80 octets over this channel. On receipt of the response, Device A could reduce the buffer allocated to hold incoming traffic.

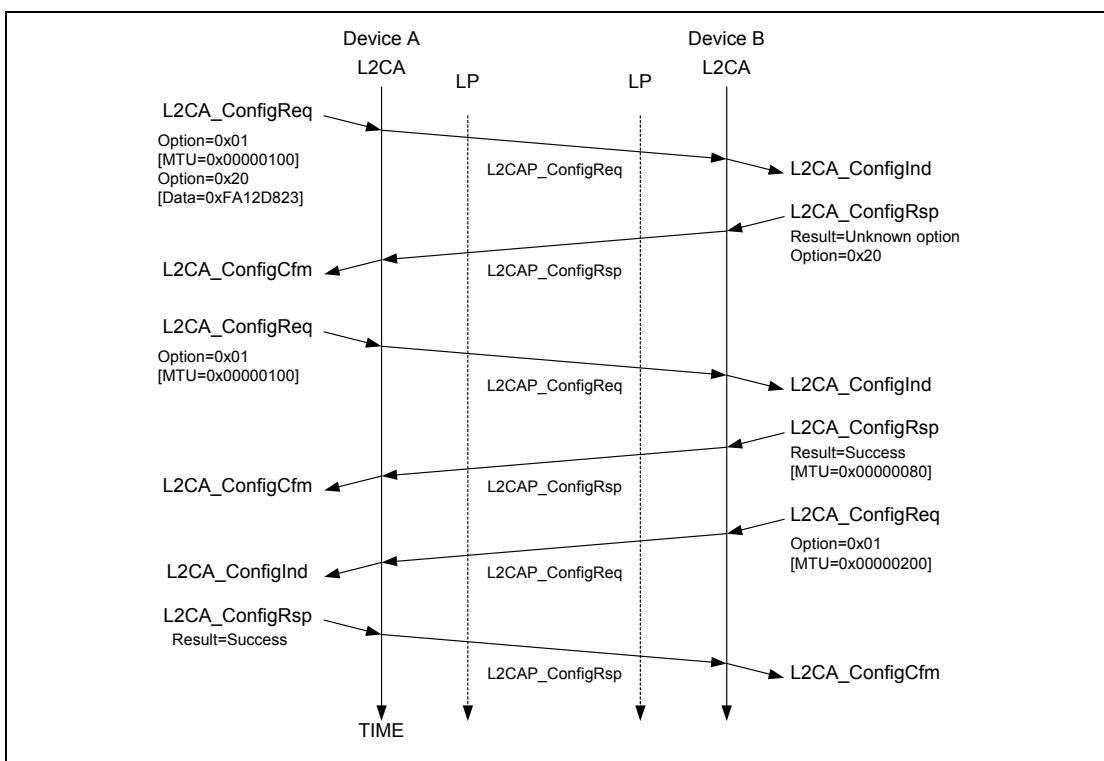


Figure II: Dealing with Unknown Options

[Figure III on page 215](#) illustrates an unsuccessful configuration request. There are two problems described by this example. The first problem is that the configuration request is placed in an L2CAP packet that cannot be accepted by the remote device, due to its size. The remote device informs the sender of this problem using the Command Reject message. Device A then resends the configuration options using two smaller L2CAP\_ConfigReq messages.

The second problem is an attempt to configure a channel with an invalid CID. For example device B may not have an open connection on that CID (0x01234567 in this example case).

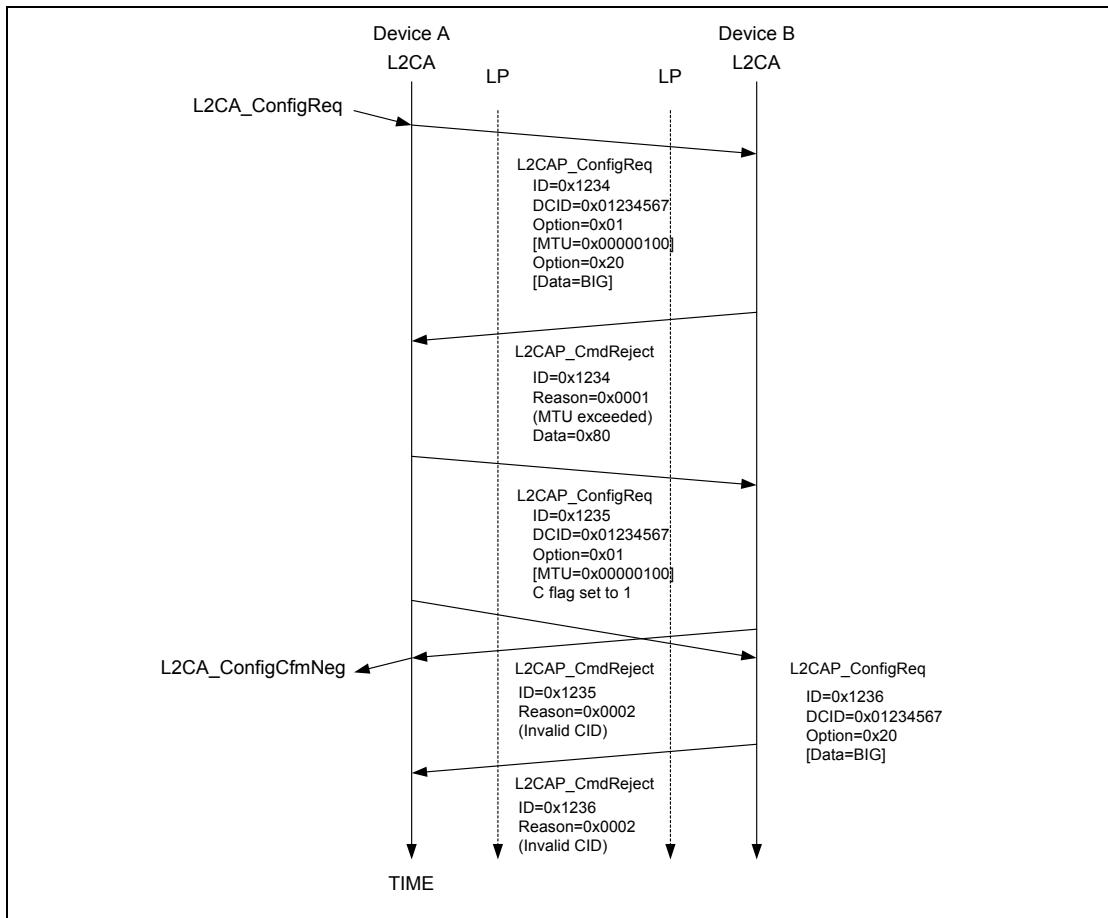


Figure III: Unsuccessful Configuration Request



Core System Package [Host volume]

Part B

# SERVICE DISCOVERY PROTOCOL (SDP) SPECIFICATION

*This specification defines a protocol  
for locating services provided by or  
available through a Bluetooth device.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>221</b>
1.1	General Description .....	221
1.2	Motivation.....	221
1.3	Requirements.....	221
1.4	Non-requirements and Deferred Requirements .....	222
1.5	Conventions .....	222
1.5.1	Bit And Byte Ordering Conventions.....	222
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>223</b>
2.1	SDP Client-Server Architecture.....	223
2.2	Service Record.....	224
2.3	Service Attribute.....	226
2.3.1	Attribute ID .....	226
2.3.2	Attribute Value .....	227
2.4	Service Class .....	227
2.4.1	A Printer Service Class Example .....	228
2.5	Searching for Services .....	228
2.5.1	UUID.....	228
2.5.2	Service Search Patterns.....	229
2.6	Browsing for Services .....	229
2.6.1	Example Service Browsing Hierarchy .....	230
<b>3</b>	<b>Data Representation.....</b>	<b>232</b>
3.1	Data Element .....	232
3.2	Data Element Type Descriptor .....	232
3.3	Data Element Size Descriptor .....	233
3.4	Data Element Examples.....	234
<b>4</b>	<b>Protocol Description .....</b>	<b>235</b>
4.1	Transfer Byte Order .....	235
4.2	Protocol Data Unit Format.....	235
4.3	Partial Responses and Continuation State.....	237
4.4	Error Handling .....	237
4.4.1	SDP_ErrorResponse PDU .....	238
4.5	ServiceSearch Transaction .....	239
4.5.1	SDP_ServiceSearchRequest PDU.....	239
4.5.2	SDP_ServiceSearchResponse PDU.....	240
4.6	ServiceAttribute Transaction .....	242
4.6.1	SDP_ServiceAttributeRequest PDU.....	242
4.6.2	SDP_ServiceAttributeResponse PDU.....	244
4.7	ServiceSearchAttribute Transaction.....	245



4.7.1	SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest PDU .....	245
4.7.2	SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse PDU .....	247
<b>5</b>	<b>Service Attribute Definitions.....</b>	<b>249</b>
5.1	Universal Attribute Definitions.....	249
5.1.1	ServiceRecordHandle Attribute.....	249
5.1.2	ServiceClassIDList Attribute.....	250
5.1.3	ServiceRecordState Attribute .....	250
5.1.4	ServiceID Attribute .....	250
5.1.5	ProtocolDescriptorList Attribute.....	251
5.1.6	AdditionalProtocolDescriptorList Attribute.....	252
5.1.7	BrowseGroupList Attribute .....	253
5.1.8	LanguageBaseAttributeIDList Attribute .....	253
5.1.9	ServiceInfoTimeToLive Attribute .....	254
5.1.10	ServiceAvailability Attribute .....	255
5.1.11	BluetoothProfileDescriptorList Attribute .....	255
5.1.12	DocumentationURL Attribute .....	256
5.1.13	ClientExecutableURL Attribute.....	256
5.1.14	IconURL Attribute.....	257
5.1.15	ServiceName Attribute .....	257
5.1.16	ServiceDescription Attribute .....	258
5.1.17	ProviderName Attribute .....	258
5.1.18	Reserved Universal Attribute IDs .....	258
5.2	ServiceDiscoveryServer Service Class Attribute Definitions ...	259
5.2.1	ServiceRecordHandle Attribute.....	259
5.2.2	ServiceClassIDList Attribute.....	259
5.2.3	VersionNumberList Attribute .....	259
5.2.4	ServiceDatabaseState Attribute .....	260
5.2.5	Reserved Attribute IDs .....	260
5.3	BrowseGroupDescriptor Service Class Attribute Definitions ...	261
5.3.1	ServiceClassIDList Attribute.....	261
5.3.2	GroupID Attribute .....	261
5.3.3	Reserved Attribute IDs .....	261
<b>6</b>	<b>Security .....</b>	<b>262</b>
<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>263</b>	
<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>263</b>	
<b>Appendix A – Background Information .....</b>	<b>264</b>	
<b>Appendix B – Example SDP Transactions .....</b>	<b>265</b>	

## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

### 1.1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The service discovery protocol (SDP) provides a means for applications to discover which services are available and to determine the characteristics of those available services.

### 1.2 MOTIVATION

Service Discovery in the Bluetooth environment, where the set of services that are available changes dynamically based on the RF proximity of devices in motion, is qualitatively different from service discovery in traditional network-based environments. The service discovery protocol defined in this specification is intended to address the unique characteristics of the Bluetooth environment. See [section , “Appendix A – Background Information,” on page 264](#), for further information on this topic.

### 1.3 REQUIREMENTS

The following capabilities have been identified as requirements for version 1.0 of the Service Discovery Protocol.

1. SDP shall provide the ability for clients to search for needed services based on specific attributes of those services.
2. SDP shall permit services to be discovered based on the class of service.
3. SDP shall enable browsing of services without a priori knowledge of the specific characteristics of those services.
4. SDP shall provide the means for the discovery of new services that become available when devices enter RF proximity with a client device as well as when a new service is made available on a device that is in RF proximity with the client device.
5. SDP shall provide a mechanism for determining when a service becomes unavailable when devices leave RF proximity with a client device as well as when a service is made unavailable on a device that is in RF proximity with the client device.
6. SDP shall provide for services, classes of services, and attributes of services to be uniquely identified.
7. SDP shall allow a client on one device to discover a service on another device without consulting a third device.
8. SDP should be suitable for use on devices of limited complexity.
9. SDP shall provide a mechanism to incrementally discover information about the services provided by a device. This is intended to minimize the

quantity of data that must be exchanged in order to determine that a particular service is not needed by a client.

10. SDP should support the caching of service discovery information by intermediary agents to improve the speed or efficiency of the discovery process.
11. SDP should be transport independent.
12. SDP shall function while using L2CAP as its transport protocol.
13. SDP shall permit the discovery and use of services that provide access to other service discovery protocols.
14. SDP shall support the creation and definition of new services without requiring registration with a central authority.

## 1.4 NON-REQUIREMENTS AND DEFERRED REQUIREMENTS

The Bluetooth SIG recognizes that the following capabilities are related to service discovery. These items are not addressed in SDP version 1.0. However, some may be addressed in future revisions of the specification.

1. SDP 1.0 does not provide access to services. It only provides access to information about services.
2. SDP 1.0 does not provide brokering of services.
3. SDP 1.0 does not provide for negotiation of service parameters.
4. SDP 1.0 does not provide for billing of service use.
5. SDP 1.0 does not provide the means for a client to control or change the operation of a service.
6. SDP 1.0 does not provide an event notification when services, or information about services, become unavailable.
7. SDP 1.0 does not provide an event notification when attributes of services are modified.
8. This specification does not define an application programming interface for SDP.
9. SDP 1.0 does not provide support for service agent functions such as service aggregation or service registration.

## 1.5 CONVENTIONS

### 1.5.1 Bit And Byte Ordering Conventions

When multiple bit fields are contained in a single byte and represented in a drawing in this specification, the more significant (high-order) bits are shown toward the left and less significant (low-order) bits toward the right.

Multiple-byte fields are drawn with the more significant bytes toward the left and the less significant bytes toward the right. Multiple-byte fields are transferred in network byte order. See [Section 4.1 on page 235](#).

## 2 OVERVIEW

### 2.1 SDP CLIENT-SERVER ARCHITECTURE

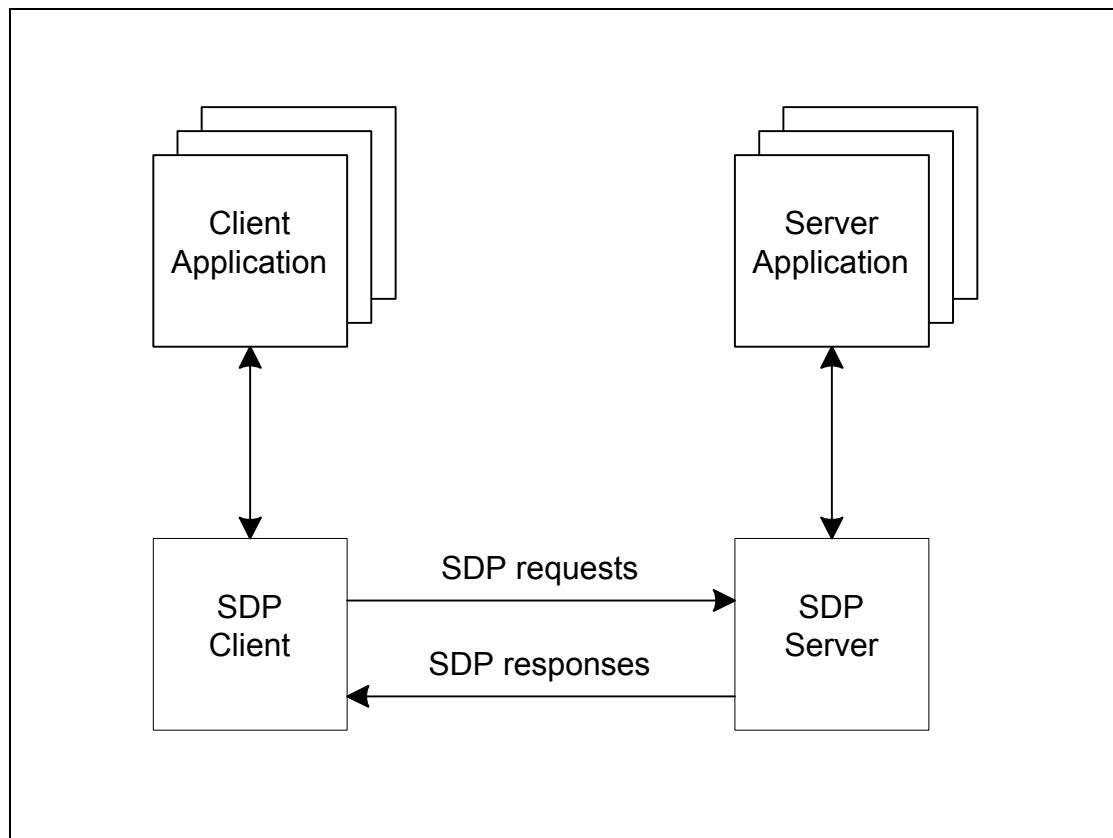


Figure 2.1: SDP Client-Server Interaction

The service discovery mechanism provides the means for client applications to discover the existence of services provided by server applications as well as the attributes of those services. The attributes of a service include the type or class of service offered and the mechanism or protocol information needed to utilize the service.

As far as the Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) is concerned, the configuration shown in Figure 2.1 can be simplified to that shown in Figure 2.2.

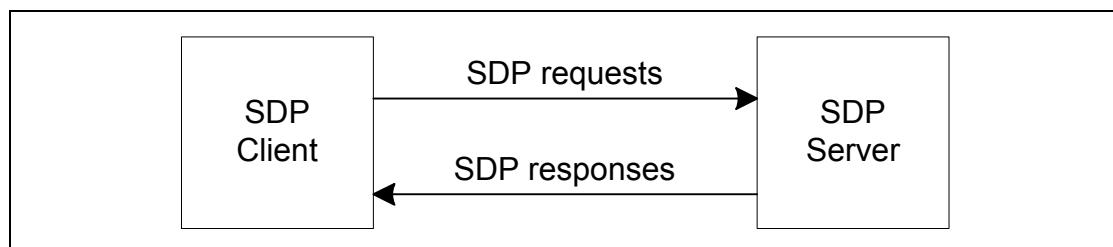


Figure 2.2: Simplified SDP Client-Server Interaction

SDP involves communication between an SDP server and an SDP client. The server maintains a list of service records that describe the characteristics of services associated with the server. Each service record contains information about a single service. A client can retrieve information from a service record maintained by the SDP server by issuing an SDP request.

If the client, or an application associated with the client, decides to use a service, it opens a separate connection to the service provider in order to utilize the service. SDP provides a mechanism for discovering services and their attributes (including associated service access protocols), but it does not provide a mechanism for utilizing those services (such as delivering the service access protocols).

If multiple applications on a device provide services, an SDP server can act on behalf of those service providers to handle requests for information about the services that they provide. Similarly, multiple client applications can utilize an SDP client to query servers on behalf of the client applications.

The set of SDP servers that are available to an SDP client will change dynamically based on the RF proximity of the servers to the client. When a server becomes available, a potential client must be notified by a means other than SDP so that the client can use SDP to query the server about its services. Similarly, when a server leaves proximity or becomes unavailable for any reason, there is no explicit notification via the service discovery protocol. However, the client can use SDP to poll the server and may infer that the server is not available if it no longer responds to requests.

Additional information regarding application interaction with SDP shall be contained in the Bluetooth Service Discovery Profile document.

## 2.2 SERVICE RECORD

A service is any entity that can provide information, perform an action, or control a resource on behalf of another entity. A service may be implemented as software, hardware, or a combination of hardware and software.

All of the information about a service that is maintained by an SDP server is contained within a single service record. The service record shall only be a list of service attributes.

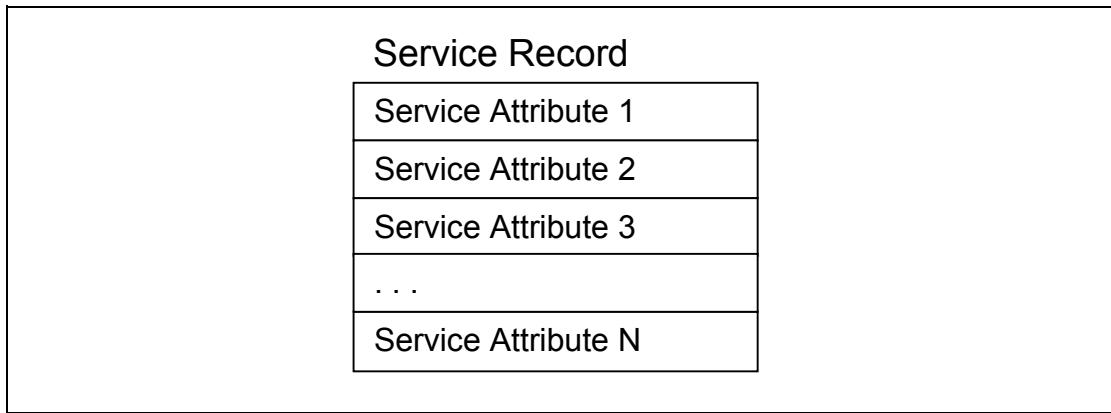


Figure 2.3: Service Record

A service record handle is a 32-bit number that shall uniquely identify each service record within an SDP server. It is important to note that, in general, each handle is unique only within each SDP server. If SDP server S1 and SDP server S2 both contain identical service records (representing the same service), the service record handles used to reference these identical service records are completely independent. The handle used to reference the service on S1 will be meaningless if presented to S2.

The service discovery protocol does not provide a mechanism for notifying clients when service records are added to or removed from an SDP server. While an L2CAP (Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol) connection is established to a server, a service record handle acquired from the server shall remain valid unless the service record it represents is removed. If a service is removed from the server, further requests to the server (during the L2CAP connection in which the service record handle was acquired) using the service's (now stale) record handle shall result in an error response indicating an invalid service record handle. An SDP server shall ensure that no service record handle values are re-used while an L2CAP connection remains established. Service record handles shall remain valid across successive L2CAP connections while the ServiceDatabaseState attribute value remains unchanged. Further, service record handles should remain valid until such time that the corresponding service is permanently removed or changes in an incompatible way. See the ServiceRecordState and ServiceDatabaseState attributes in [Section 5 on page 249](#).

A device may have a service record with a service record handle of 0x00000000 representing the SDP server itself. This service record contains attributes for the SDP server and the protocol it supports. For example, one of its attributes is the list of SDP protocol versions supported by the server.

## 2.3 SERVICE ATTRIBUTE

Each service attribute describes a single characteristic of a service. Some examples of service attributes are:

ServiceClassIDList	Identifies the type of service represented by a service record. In other words, the list of classes of which the service is an instance
ServiceID	Uniquely identifies a specific instance of a service
ProtocolDescriptorList	Specifies the protocol stack(s) that may be used to utilize a service
ProviderName	The textual name of the individual or organization that provides a service
IconURL	Specifies a URL that refers to an icon image that may be used to represent a service
ServiceName	A text string containing a human-readable name for the service
ServiceDescription	A text string describing the service

See [Section 5.1 on page 249](#), for attribute definitions that are common to all service records. Service providers can also define their own service attributes.

A service attribute consists of two components: an attribute ID and an attribute value.

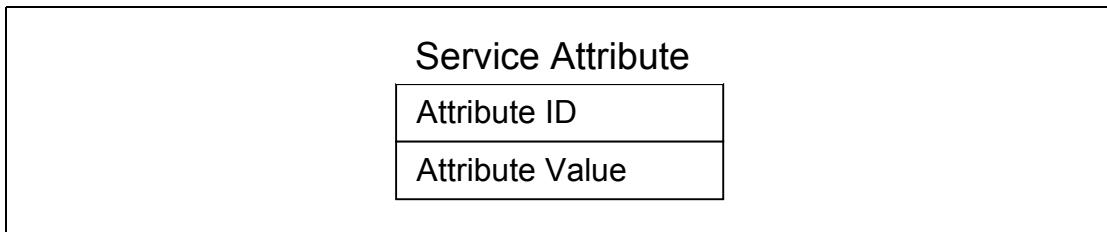


Figure 2.4: Service Attribute

### 2.3.1 Attribute ID

An attribute ID is a 16-bit unsigned integer that distinguishes each service attribute from other service attributes within a service record. The attribute ID also identifies the semantics of the associated attribute value.

A service class definition specifies each of the attribute IDs for a service class and assigns a meaning to the attribute value associated with each attribute ID. Each attribute ID is defined to be unique only within each service class.

All services belonging to a given service class assign the same meaning to each particular attribute ID. See [Section 2.4 on page 227](#).

In the Service Discovery Protocol, an attribute ID is represented as a data element. See [Section 3 on page 232](#).

### 2.3.2 Attribute Value

The attribute value is a variable length field whose meaning is determined by the attribute ID associated with it and by the service class of the service record in which the attribute is contained. In the Service Discovery Protocol, an attribute value is represented as a data element. (See [Section 3 on page 232](#).) Generally, any type of data element is permitted as an attribute value, subject to the constraints specified in the service class definition that assigns an attribute ID to the attribute and assigns a meaning to the attribute value. See [Section 5 on page 249](#), for attribute value examples.

## 2.4 SERVICE CLASS

Each service is an instance of a service class. The service class definition provides the definitions of all attributes contained in service records that represent instances of that class. Each attribute definition specifies the numeric value of the attribute ID, the intended use of the attribute value, and the format of the attribute value. A service record contains attributes that are specific to a service class as well as universal attributes that are common to all services.

Each service class is also assigned a unique identifier. This service class identifier is contained in the attribute value for the ServiceClassIDList attribute, and is represented as a UUID (see [Section 2.5.1 on page 228](#)). Since the format and meanings of many attributes in a service record are dependent on the service class of the service record, the ServiceClassIDList attribute is very important. Its value shall be examined or verified before any class-specific attributes are used. Since all of the attributes in a service record must conform to all of the service's classes, the service class identifiers contained in the ServiceClassIDList attribute are related. Typically, each service class is a subclass of another class whose identifier is contained in the list. A service subclass definition differs from its superclass in that the subclass contains additional attribute definitions that are specific to the subclass.

When a new service class is defined that is a subclass of an existing service class, the new service class retains all of the attributes defined in its superclass. Additional attributes may be defined that are specific to the new service class. In other words, the mechanism for adding new attributes to some of the instances of an existing service class is to create a new service class that is a subclass of the existing service class.

If a Service Class UUID is exposed in the SDP database of a product, then the product containing the SDP record shall comply with the specification which defines the service corresponding to the UUID.

### 2.4.1 A Printer Service Class Example

A color postscript printer with duplex capability might conform to 4 Service-Class definitions and have a ServiceClassIDList with UUIDs (See [Section 2.5.1 on page 228.](#)) representing the following ServiceClasses:

DuplexColorPostscriptPrinterServiceClassID,  
ColorPostscriptPrinterServiceClassID,  
PostscriptPrinterServiceClassID,  
PrinterServiceClassID

*Note that this example is only illustrative. This may not be a practical printer class hierarchy.*

## 2.5 SEARCHING FOR SERVICES

The Service Search transaction allows a client to retrieve the service record handles for particular service records based on the values of attributes contained within those service records. Once an SDP client has a service record handle, it can request the values of specific attributes.

The capability search for service records based on the values of arbitrary attributes is not provided. Rather, the capability is provided to search only for attributes whose values are Universally Unique Identifiers<sup>1</sup> (UUIDs). Important attributes of services that can be used to search for a service are represented as UUIDs.

### 2.5.1 UUID

A UUID is a universally unique identifier that is guaranteed to be unique across all space and all time. UUIDs can be independently created in a distributed fashion. No central registry of assigned UUIDs is required. A UUID is a 128-bit value.

To reduce the burden of storing and transferring 128-bit UUID values, a range of UUID values has been pre-allocated for assignment to often-used, registered purposes. The first UUID in this pre-allocated range is known as the Bluetooth Base UUID and has the value 00000000-0000-1000-8000-00805F9B34FB, from the Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#) document. UUID values in the pre-allocated range have aliases that are represented as 16-bit or 32-bit values. These aliases are often called 16-bit and 32-bit UUIDs, but it is important to note that each actually represents a 128-bit UUID value.

The full 128-bit value of a 16-bit or 32-bit UUID may be computed by a simple arithmetic operation.

---

1. The format of UUIDs is specified in ITU-T Rec. X.667, alternatively known as ISO/IEC 9834-8:2005.

$128\_bit\_value = 16\_bit\_value * 2^{96} + \text{Bluetooth\_Base\_UUID}$

$128\_bit\_value = 32\_bit\_value * 2^{96} + \text{Bluetooth\_Base\_UUID}$

A 16-bit UUID may be converted to 32-bit UUID format by zero-extending the 16-bit value to 32-bits. An equivalent method is to add the 16-bit UUID value to a zero-valued 32-bit UUID.

Note that two 16-bit UUIDs may be compared directly, as may two 32-bit UUIDs or two 128-bit UUIDs. If two UUIDs of differing sizes are to be compared, the shorter UUID must be converted to the longer UUID format before comparison.

### 2.5.2 Service Search Patterns

A service search pattern is a list of UUIDs used to locate matching service records. A service search pattern matches a service record if each and every UUID in the service search pattern is contained within any of the service record's attribute values. The UUIDs need not be contained within any specific attributes or in any particular order within the service record. The service search pattern matches if the UUIDs it contains constitute a subset of the UUIDs in the service record's attribute values. The only time a service search pattern does not match a service record is if the service search pattern contains at least one UUID that is not contained within the service record's attribute values. Note also that a valid service search pattern must contain at least one UUID.

## 2.6 BROWSING FOR SERVICES

Normally, a client searches for services based on some desired characteristic(s) (represented by a UUID) of the services. However, there are times when it is desirable to discover which types of services are described by an SDP server's service records without any a priori information about the services. This process of looking for any offered services is termed browsing. In SDP, the mechanism for browsing for services is based on an attribute shared by all service classes. This attribute is called the *BrowseGroupList* attribute. The value of this attribute contains a list of UUIDs. Each UUID represents a browse group with which a service may be associated for the purpose of browsing.

When a client desires to browse an SDP server's services, it creates a service search pattern containing the UUID that represents the root browse group. All services that may be browsed at the top level are made members of the root browse group by having the root browse group's UUID as a value within the *BrowseGroupList* attribute.

Normally, if an SDP server has relatively few services, all of its services will be placed in the root browse group. However, the services offered by an SDP server may be organized in a browse group hierarchy, by defining additional

browse groups below the root browse group. Each of these additional browse groups is described by a service record with a service class of `BrowseGroupDescriptor`.

A browse group descriptor service record defines a new browse group by means of its `Group ID` attribute. In order for a service contained in one of these newly defined browse groups to be browseable, the browse group descriptor service record that defines the new browse group must in turn be browseable. The hierarchy of browseable services that is provided by the use of browse group descriptor service records allows the services contained in an SDP server to be incrementally browsed and is particularly useful when the SDP server contains many service records.

### 2.6.1 Example Service Browsing Hierarchy

Here is a fictitious service browsing hierarchy that illuminates the manner in which browse group descriptors are used. Browse group descriptor service records are identified with (G); other service records with (S).

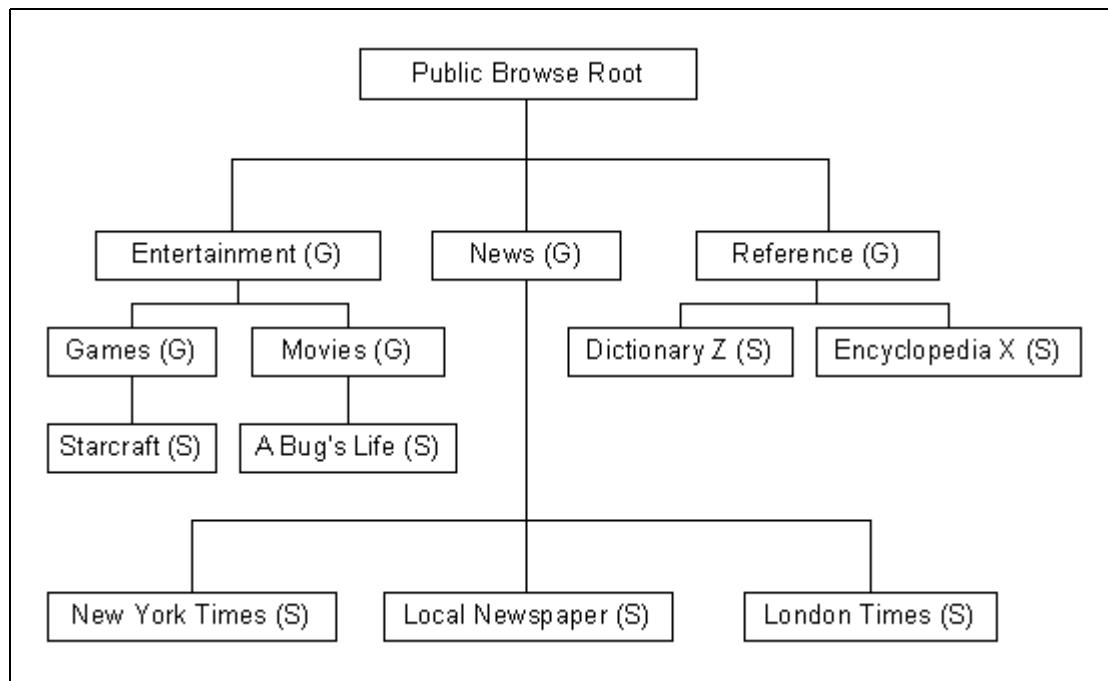


Figure 2.5: Service Browsing Hierarchy

This table shows the services records and service attributes necessary to implement the browse hierarchy.

<b>Service Name</b>	<b>Service Class</b>	<b>Attribute Name</b>	<b>Attribute Value</b>
Entertainment	BrowseGroupDescriptor	BrowseGroupList	PublicBrowseRoot
		GroupID	EntertainmentID
News	BrowseGroupDescriptor	BrowseGroupList	PublicBrowseRoot
		GroupID	NewsID
Reference	BrowseGroupDescriptor	BrowseGroupList	PublicBrowseRoot
		GroupID	ReferenceID
Games	BrowseGroupDescriptor	BrowseGroupList	EntertainmentID
		GroupID	GamesID
Movies	BrowseGroupDescriptor	BrowseGroupList	EntertainmentID
		GroupID	MoviesID
Starcraft	Video Game Class ID	BrowseGroupList	GamesID
A Bug's Life	Movie Class ID	BrowseGroupList	MovieID
Dictionary Z	Dictionary Class ID	BrowseGroupList	ReferenceID
Encyclopedia X	Encyclopedia Class ID	BrowseGroupList	ReferenceID
New York Times	Newspaper ID	BrowseGroupList	NewspaperID
London Times	Newspaper ID	BrowseGroupList	NewspaperID
Local Newspaper	Newspaper ID	BrowseGroupList	NewspaperID

Table 2.1: Service Browsing Hierarchy

## 3 DATA REPRESENTATION

Attribute values can contain information of various types with arbitrary complexity; thus enabling an attribute list to be generally useful across a wide variety of service classes and environments.

SDP defines a simple mechanism to describe the data contained within an attribute ID, attribute ID range, and attribute value. The primitive construct used is the data element.

### 3.1 DATA ELEMENT

A data element is a typed data representation. It consists of two fields: a header field and a data field. The header field, in turn, is composed of two parts: a type descriptor and a size descriptor. The data is a sequence of bytes whose length is specified in the size descriptor (described in [Section 3.3 on page 233](#)) and whose meaning is (partially) specified by the type descriptor.

### 3.2 DATA ELEMENT TYPE DESCRIPTOR

A data element type is represented as a 5-bit type descriptor. The type descriptor is contained in the most significant (high-order) 5 bits of the first byte of the data element header. The following types have been defined.

Type Descriptor Value	Valid Size Descriptor Values	Type Description
0	0	Nil, the null type
1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4	Unsigned Integer
2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4	Signed twos-complement integer
3	1, 2, 4	UUID, a universally unique identifier
4	5, 6, 7	Text string
5	0	Boolean <sup>1</sup>
6	5, 6, 7	Data element sequence, a data element whose data field is a sequence of data elements
7	5, 6, 7	Data element alternative, data element whose data field is a sequence of data elements from which one data element is to be selected.
8	5, 6, 7	URL, a uniform resource locator
9-31		Reserved

Table 3.1: Data Element

1. False is represented by the value 0, and true is represented by the value 1. However, to maximize interoperability, any non-zero value received must be accepted as representing true.

### 3.3 DATA ELEMENT SIZE DESCRIPTOR

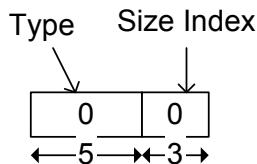
The data element size descriptor is represented as a 3-bit size index followed by 0, 8, 16, or 32 bits. The size index is contained in the least significant (low-order) 3 bits of the first byte of the data element header. The size index is encoded as follows.

Size Index	Additional bits	Data Size
0	0	1 byte. Exception: if the data element type is nil, the data size is 0 bytes.
1	0	2 bytes
2	0	4 bytes
3	0	8 bytes
4	0	16 bytes
5	8	The data size is contained in the additional 8 bits, which are interpreted as an unsigned integer.
6	16	The data size is contained in the additional 16 bits, which are interpreted as an unsigned integer.
7	32	The data size is contained in the additional 32 bits, which are interpreted as an unsigned integer.

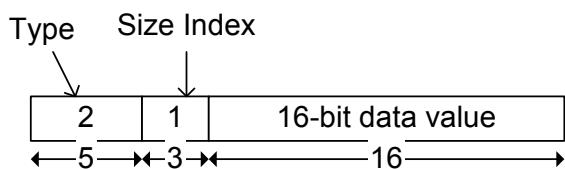
Table 3.2: Data Element Size

### 3.4 DATA ELEMENT EXAMPLES

Nil is represented as:



A 16-bit signed integer is represented as:



The 3 character ASCII string "Hat" is represented as:

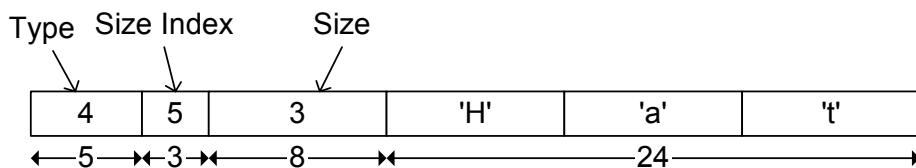


Figure 3.1: Data Element

## 4 PROTOCOL DESCRIPTION

SDP is a simple protocol with minimal requirements on the underlying transport. It can function over a reliable packet transport (or even unreliable, if the client implements timeouts and repeats requests as necessary).

SDP uses a request/response model where each transaction consists of one request protocol data unit (PDU) and one response PDU. In the case where SDP is used with the Bluetooth L2CAP transport protocol, no more than one SDP request PDU per connection to a given SDP server may be outstanding at a given instant. In other words, a client does not issue a further request to a server prior to receiving a response to the current request before issuing another request on the same L2CAP connection. Limiting SDP to sending one unacknowledged request PDU provides a simple form of flow control.

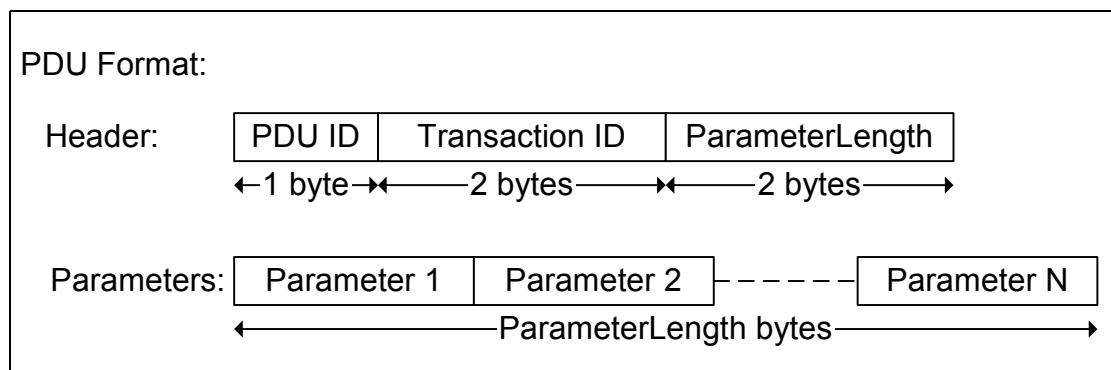
The protocol examples found in [Appendix B – Example SDP Transactions](#), could be helpful in understanding the protocol transactions.

### 4.1 TRANSFER BYTE ORDER

The service discovery protocol shall transfer multiple-byte fields in standard network byte order (Big Endian), with more significant (high-order) bytes being transferred before less-significant (low-order) bytes.

### 4.2 PROTOCOL DATA UNIT FORMAT

Every SDP PDU consists of a PDU header followed by PDU-specific parameters. The header contains three fields: a PDU ID, a Transaction ID, and a ParameterLength. Each of these header fields is described here. Parameters may include a continuation state parameter, described below; PDU-specific parameters for each PDU type are described later in separate PDU descriptions.



*Figure 4.1: Protocol Data Unit Format*

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification**PDU ID:**Size: 1 Byte*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N	The PDU ID field identifies the type of PDU. I.e. its meaning and the specific parameters.
0x00	Reserved
0x01	SDP_ErrorResponse
0x02	SDP_ServiceSearchRequest
0x03	SDP_ServiceSearchResponse
0x04	SDP_ServiceAttributeRequest
0x05	SDP_ServiceAttributeResponse
0x06	SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest
0x07	SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse
0x07-0xFF	Reserved

*TransactionID:**Size: 2 Bytes*

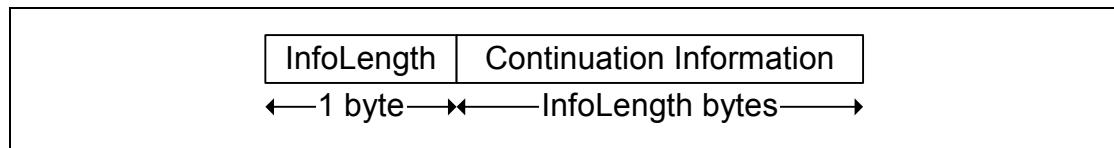
<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N	The TransactionID field uniquely identifies request PDUs and is used to match response PDUs to request PDUs. The SDP client can choose any value for a request's TransactionID provided that it is different from all outstanding requests. The TransactionID value in response PDUs is required to be the same as the request that is being responded to. Range: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF

*ParameterLength:**Size: 2 Bytes*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N	The ParameterLength field specifies the length (in bytes) of all parameters contained in the PDU. Range: 0x0000 – 0xFFFF

## 4.3 PARTIAL RESPONSES AND CONTINUATION STATE

Some SDP requests may require responses that are larger than can fit in a single response PDU. In this case, the SDP server shall generate a partial response along with a continuation state parameter. The continuation state parameter can be supplied by the client in a subsequent request to retrieve the next portion of the complete response. The continuation state parameter is a variable length field whose first byte contains the number of additional bytes of continuation information in the field. The format of the continuation information is not standardized among SDP servers. Each continuation state parameter is meaningful only to the SDP server that generated it.



*Figure 4.2: Continuation State Format*

After a client receives a partial response and the accompanying continuation state parameter, it can re-issue the original request (with a new transaction ID) and include the continuation state in the new request indicating to the server that the remainder of the original response is desired. The maximum allowable value of the InfoLength field is 16 (0x10).

Note that, unless otherwise stated in a PDU response specification, an SDP server can split a response at any arbitrary boundary when it generates a partial response. The SDP server may select the boundary based on the contents of the reply, but is not required to do so. Therefore, length fields give the lengths as measured in the complete assembled record, not the length of the fields in the partial segment. When a service record is segmented into partial responses all attribute list values are relative to the complete record, not relevant to the partial record.

## 4.4 ERROR HANDLING

Each transaction consists of a request and a response PDU. Generally, each type of request PDU has a corresponding type of response PDU. However, if the server determines that a request is improperly formatted or for any reason the server cannot respond with the appropriate PDU type, it shall respond with an SDP\_ErrorResponse PDU.

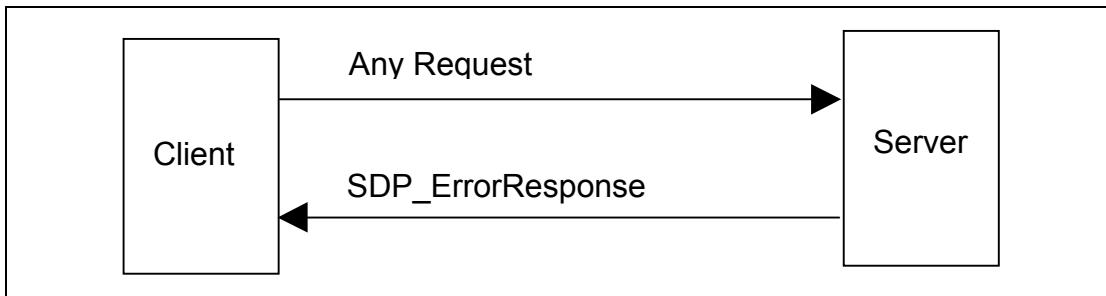


Figure 4.3: Error Handling

#### 4.4.1 SDP\_ErrorResponse PDU

PDU Type	PDU ID	Parameters
SDP_ErrorResponse	0x01	ErrorCode

##### Description:

The SDP server generates this PDU type in response to an improperly formatted request PDU or when the SDP server, for whatever reason, cannot generate an appropriate response PDU.

##### PDU Parameters:

*ErrorCode*: Size: 2 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
N	The ErrorCode identifies the reason that an SDP_ErrorResponse PDU was generated.
0x0000	Reserved
0x0001	Invalid/unsupported SDP version
0x0002	Invalid Service Record Handle
0x0003	Invalid request syntax
0x0004	Invalid PDU Size
0x0005	Invalid Continuation State
0x0006	Insufficient Resources to satisfy Request
0x0007-0xFFFF	Reserved

Note: Invalid PDU size should be used, for example, if an incoming request PDU's length is inconsistent with the specification of that request PDU or the length parameter of an incoming request PDU is inconsistent with that request PDU's actual contents.

## 4.5 SERVICESEARCH TRANSACTION

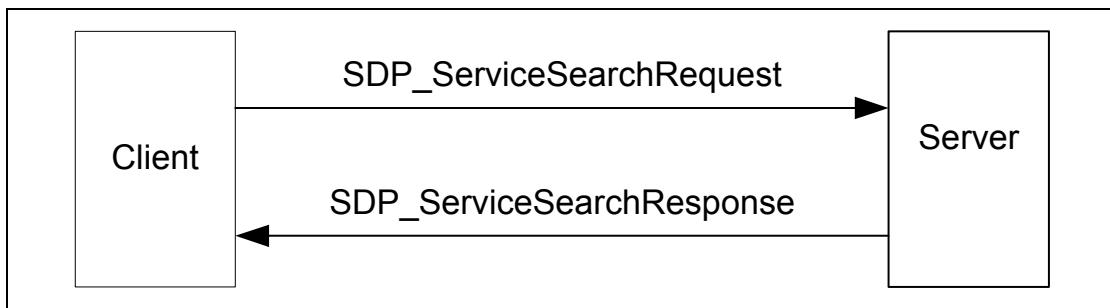


Figure 4.4: ServiceSearch Transaction

### 4.5.1 SDP\_ServiceSearchRequest PDU

PDU Type	PDU ID	Parameters
SDP_ServiceSearchRequest	0x02	ServiceSearchPattern, MaximumServiceRecordCount, ContinuationState

#### Description:

The SDP client generates an SDP\_ServiceSearchRequest to locate service records that match the service search pattern given as the first parameter of the PDU. Upon receipt of this request, the SDP server shall examine its service record data base and return an SDP\_ServiceSearchResponse containing the service record handles of service records within its service record database that match the given service search pattern, or an appropriate error response.

Note that no mechanism is provided to request information for all service records. However, see [Section 2.6 on page 229](#) for a description of a mechanism that permits browsing for non-specific services without a priori knowledge of the services.

#### PDU Parameters:

##### ServiceSearchPattern:

Size: Varies

Value	Parameter Description
Data Element Sequence	The ServiceSearchPattern is a data element sequence where each element in the sequence is a UUID. The sequence shall contain at least one UUID. The maximum number of UUIDs in the sequence is 12 <sup>1</sup> . The list of UUIDs constitutes a service search pattern.

1. The value of 12 has been selected as a compromise between the scope of a service search and the size of a search request PDU. It is not expected that more than 12 UUIDs will be useful in a service search pattern.

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification**MaximumServiceRecordCount:**Size: 2 Bytes*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N	MaximumServiceRecordCount is a 16-bit count specifying the maximum number of service record handles to be returned in the response(s) to this request. The SDP server shall not return more handles than this value specifies. If more than N service records match the request, the SDP server determines which matching service record handles to return in the response(s). Range: 0x0001-0xFFFF

*ContinuationState:**Size: 1 to 17 Bytes*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
Continuation State	ContinuationState consists of an 8-bit count, N, of the number of bytes of continuation state information, followed by the N bytes of continuation state information that were returned in a previous response from the server. N is required to be less than or equal to 16. If no continuation state is to be provided in the request, N is set to 0.

**4.5.2 SDP\_ServiceSearchResponse PDU**

<b>PDU Type</b>	<b>PDU ID</b>	<b>Parameters</b>
SDP_ServiceSearchResponse	0x03	TotalServiceRecordCount, CurrentServiceRecordCount, ServiceRecordHandleList, ContinuationState

**Description:**

The SDP server generates an SDP\_ServiceSearchResponse upon receipt of a valid SDP\_ServiceSearchRequest. The response contains a list of service record handles for service records that match the service search pattern given in the request. If a partial response is generated, it shall contain an integral number of complete service record handles; a service record handle value shall not be split across multiple PDUs.

**PDU Parameters:***TotalServiceRecordCount:*

Size: 2 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
N	<p>The TotalServiceRecordCount is an integer containing the number of service records that match the requested service search pattern. If no service records match the requested service search pattern, this parameter is set to 0. N should never be larger than the MaximumServiceRecordCount value specified in the SDP_ServiceSearchRequest. When multiple partial responses are used, each partial response contains the same value for TotalServiceRecordCount.</p> <p>Range: 0x0000-0xFFFF</p>

*CurrentServiceRecordCount:*

Size: 2 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
N	<p>The CurrentServiceRecordCount is an integer indicating the number of service record handles that are contained in the next parameter. If no service records match the requested service search pattern, this parameter is set to 0. N should never be larger than the TotalServiceRecordCount value specified in the current response.</p> <p>Range: 0x0000-0xFFFF</p>

*ServiceRecordHandleList:*

Size: (CurrentServiceRecordCount\*4) Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
List of 32-bit handles	<p>The ServiceRecordHandleList contains a list of service record handles. The number of handles in the list is given in the CurrentServiceRecordCount parameter. Each of the handles in the list refers to a service record that matches the requested service search pattern. Note that this list of service record handles does not have the format of a data element. It contains no header fields, only the 32-bit service record handles.</p>

*ContinuationState:*

Size: 1 to 17 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
Continuation State	<p>ContinuationState consists of an 8-bit count, N, of the number of bytes of continuation state information, followed by the N bytes of continuation information. If the current response is complete, this parameter consists of a single byte with the value 0. If a partial response is contained in the PDU, the ContinuationState parameter may be supplied in a subsequent request to retrieve the remainder of the response.</p>

## 4.6 SERVICEATTRIBUTE TRANSACTION

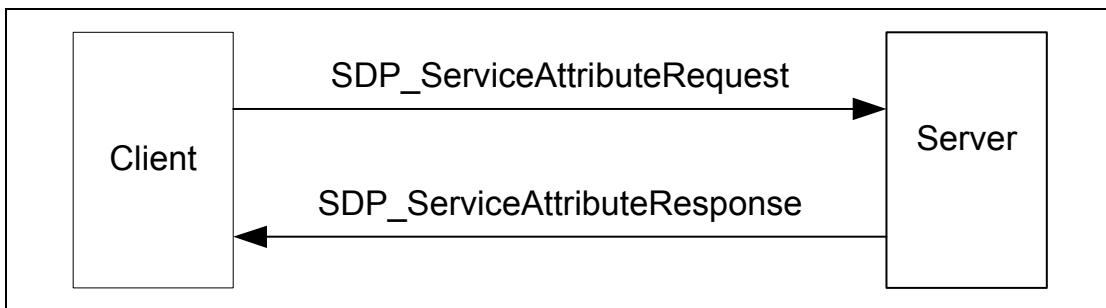


Figure 4.5: ServiceAttribute Transaction

### 4.6.1 SDP\_ServiceAttributeRequest PDU

PDU Type	PDU ID	Parameters
SDP_ServiceAttributeRequest	0x04	ServiceRecordHandle, MaximumAttributeByteCount, AttributeIDList, ContinuationState

#### Description:

The SDP client generates an SDP\_ServiceAttributeRequest to retrieve specified attribute values from a specific service record. The service record handle of the desired service record and a list of desired attribute IDs to be retrieved from that service record are supplied as parameters.

#### Command Parameters:

*ServiceRecordHandle:* Size: 4 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
32-bit handle	The ServiceRecordHandle parameter specifies the service record from which attribute values are to be retrieved. The handle is obtained via a previous SDP_ServiceSearch transaction.

**MaximumAttributeByteCount:****Size: 2 Bytes**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N	<p>MaximumAttributeByteCount specifies the maximum number of bytes of attribute data to be returned in the response to this request. The SDP server shall not return more than N bytes of attribute data in the response PDU. If the requested attributes require more than N bytes, the SDP server determines how to segment the list. In this case the client may request each successive segment by issuing a request containing the continuation state that was returned in the previous response PDU. Note that in the case where multiple response PDUs are needed to return the attribute data, MaximumAttributeByteCount specifies the maximum size of the portion of the attribute data contained in each response PDU.</p> <p>Range: 0x0007-0xFFFF</p>

**AttributeIDList:****Size: Varies**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
Data Element Sequence	<p>The AttributeIDList is a data element sequence where each element in the list is either an attribute ID or a range of attribute IDs. Each attribute ID is encoded as a 16-bit unsigned integer data element. Each attribute ID range is encoded as a 32-bit unsigned integer data element, where the high order 16 bits are interpreted as the beginning attribute ID of the range and the low order 16 bits are interpreted as the ending attribute ID of the range. The attribute IDs contained in the AttributeIDList shall be listed in ascending order without duplication of any attribute ID values. Note that all attributes can be requested by specifying a range of 0x0000-0xFFFF.</p>

**ContinuationState:****Size: 1 to 17 Bytes**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
Continuation State	<p>ContinuationState consists of an 8-bit count, N, of the number of bytes of continuation state information, followed by the N bytes of continuation state information that were returned in a previous response from the server. N shall be less than or equal to 16. If no continuation state is to be provided in the request, N shall be set to 0.</p>

#### 4.6.2 SDP\_ServiceAttributeResponse PDU

PDU Type	PDU ID	Parameters
SDP_ServiceAttributeResponse	0x05	AttributeListByteCount, AttributeList, ContinuationState

**Description:**

The SDP server generates an SDP\_ServiceAttributeResponse upon receipt of a valid SDP\_ServiceAttributeRequest. The response contains a list of attributes (both attribute ID and attribute value) from the requested service record.

**PDU Parameters:**

*AttributeListByteCount:*

*Size: 2 Bytes*

Value	Parameter Description
N	The AttributeListByteCount contains a count of the number of bytes in the AttributeList parameter. N shall never be larger than the MaximumAttributeByteCount value specified in the SDP_ServiceAttributeRequest.  Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF

*AttributeList:*

*Size: AttributeListByteCount*

Value	Parameter Description
Data Element Sequence	The AttributeList is a data element sequence containing attribute IDs and attribute values. The first element in the sequence contains the attribute ID of the first attribute to be returned. The second element in the sequence contains the corresponding attribute value. Successive pairs of elements in the list contain additional attribute ID and value pairs. Only attributes that have non-null values within the service record and whose attribute IDs were specified in the SDP_ServiceAttributeRequest are contained in the AttributeList. Neither an attribute ID nor an attribute value is placed in the AttributeList for attributes in the service record that have no value. The attributes are listed in ascending order of attribute ID value.

*ContinuationState:*

*Size: 1 to 17 Bytes*

Value	Parameter Description
Continuation State	ContinuationState consists of an 8-bit count, N, of the number of bytes of continuation state information, followed by the N bytes of continuation information. If the current response is complete, this parameter consists of a single byte with the value 0. If a partial response is given, the ContinuationState parameter may be supplied in a subsequent request to retrieve the remainder of the response.

If a partial response is generated, the response may be arbitrarily segmented into multiple PDUs (subject to the constraint imposed by the allowed range of values for the AttributeListByteCount parameter). Attributes in partial responses are not required to be integral.

## 4.7 SERVICESEARCHATTRIBUTE TRANSACTION

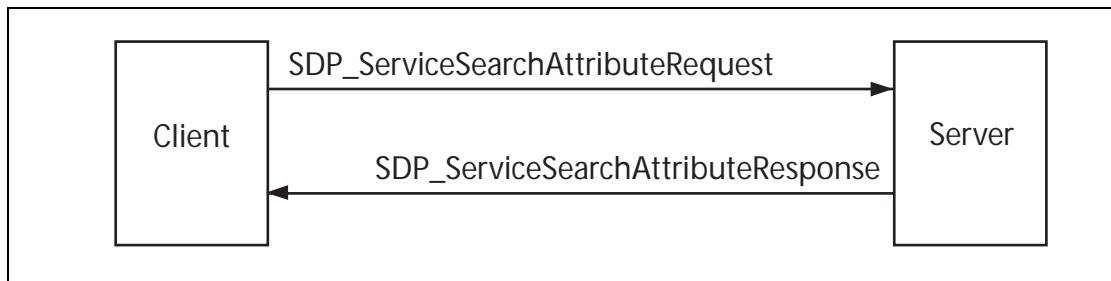


Figure 4.6: ServiceSearchAttribute Transaction

### 4.7.1 SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest PDU

PDU Type	PDU ID	Parameters
SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest	0x06	ServiceSearchPattern, MaximumAttributeByteCount, AttributeIDList, ContinuationState

#### Description:

The SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest transaction combines the capabilities of the SDP\_ServiceSearchRequest and the SDP\_ServiceAttributeRequest into a single request. As parameters, it contains both a service search pattern and a list of attributes to be retrieved from service records that match the service search pattern. The SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest and its response are more complex and can require more bytes than separate SDP\_ServiceSearch and SDP\_ServiceAttribute transactions. However, using SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest can reduce the total number of SDP transactions, particularly when retrieving multiple service records.

Note that the service record handle for each service record is contained in the ServiceRecordHandle attribute of that service and may be requested along with other attributes.

**PDU Parameters:***ServiceSearchPattern:*

Size: Varies

Value	Parameter Description
Data Element Sequence	The ServiceSearchPattern is a data element sequence where each element in the sequence is a UUID. The sequence must contain at least one UUID. The maximum number of UUIDs in the sequence is 12 <sup>1</sup> . The list of UUIDs constitutes a service search pattern.

1. The value of 12 has been selected as a compromise between the scope of a service search and the size of a search request PDU. It is not expected that more than 12 UUIDs will be useful in a service search pattern.

*MaximumAttributeByteCount:*

Size: 2 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
N	MaximumAttributeByteCount specifies the maximum number of bytes of attribute data to be returned in the response to this request. The SDP server shall not return more than N bytes of attribute data in the response PDU. If the requested attributes require more than N bytes, the SDP server determines how to segment the list. In this case the client may request each successive segment by issuing a request containing the continuation state that was returned in the previous response PDU. Note that in the case where multiple response PDUs are needed to return the attribute data, MaximumAttributeByteCount specifies the maximum size of the portion of the attribute data contained in each response PDU. Range: 0x0007-0xFFFF

*AttributeIDList:*

Size: Varies

Value	Parameter Description
Data Element Sequence	The AttributeIDList is a data element sequence where each element in the list is either an attribute ID or a range of attribute IDs. Each attribute ID is encoded as a 16-bit unsigned integer data element. Each attribute ID range is encoded as a 32-bit unsigned integer data element, where the high order 16 bits are interpreted as the beginning attribute ID of the range and the low order 16 bits are interpreted as the ending attribute ID of the range. The attribute IDs contained in the AttributeIDList shall be listed in ascending order without duplication of any attribute ID values. Note that all attributes may be requested by specifying a range of 0x0000-0xFFFF.

*ContinuationState:*

Size: 1 to 17 Bytes

Value	Parameter Description
Continuation State	ContinuationState consists of an 8-bit count, N, of the number of bytes of continuation state information, followed by the N bytes of continuation state information that were returned in a previous response from the server. N shall be less than or equal to 16. If no continuation state is to be provided in the request, N shall set to 0.

#### 4.7.2 SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse PDU

PDU Type	PDU ID	Parameters
SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse	0x07	AttributeListsByteCount, AttributeLists, ContinuationState

##### Description:

The SDP server generates an SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse upon receipt of a valid SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest. The response contains a list of attributes (both attribute ID and attribute value) from the service records that match the requested service search pattern.

##### PDU Parameters:

###### *AttributeListsByteCount:*

*Size: 2 Bytes*

Value	Parameter Description
N	<p>The AttributeListsByteCount contains a count of the number of bytes in the AttributeLists parameter. N shall never be larger than the MaximumAttributeByteCount value specified in the SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest.</p> <p>Range: 0x0002-0xFFFF</p>

###### *AttributeLists:*

*Size: Varies*

Value	Parameter Description
Data Element Sequence	<p>The AttributeLists is a data element sequence where each element in turn is a data element sequence representing an attribute list. Each attribute list contains attribute IDs and attribute values from one service record. The first element in each attribute list contains the attribute ID of the first attribute to be returned for that service record. The second element in each attribute list contains the corresponding attribute value. Successive pairs of elements in each attribute list contain additional attribute ID and value pairs. Only attributes that have non-null values within the service record and whose attribute IDs were specified in the SDP_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest are contained in the AttributeLists. Neither an attribute ID nor attribute value is placed in AttributeLists for attributes in the service record that have no value. Within each attribute list, the attributes are listed in ascending order of attribute ID value.</p>

*ContinuationState:**Size: 1 to 17 Bytes*

Value	Parameter Description
Continuation State	ContinuationState consists of an 8-bit count, N, of the number of bytes of continuation state information, followed by the N bytes of continuation information. If the current response is complete, this parameter consists of a single byte with the value 0. If a partial response is given, the ContinuationState parameter may be supplied in a subsequent request to retrieve the remainder of the response.

If a partial response is generated, the response may be arbitrarily segmented into multiple PDUs (subject to the constraint imposed by the allowed range of values for the AttributeListByteCount parameter). Attributes in partial responses are not required to be integral.

## 5 SERVICE ATTRIBUTE DEFINITIONS

---

The service classes and attributes contained in this document are necessarily a partial list of the service classes and attributes supported by SDP. Only service classes that directly support the SDP server are included in this document. Additional service classes will be defined in other documents and possibly in future revisions of this document. Also, it is expected that additional attributes will be discovered that are applicable to a broad set of services; these may be added to the list of Universal attributes in future revisions of this document.

### 5.1 UNIVERSAL ATTRIBUTE DEFINITIONS

Universal attributes are those service attributes whose definitions are common to all service records. Note that this does not mean that every service record contains values for all of these service attributes. However, if a service record has a service attribute with an attribute ID allocated to a universal attribute, the attribute value shall conform to the universal attribute's definition.

Only two attributes are required to exist in every service record instance. They are the ServiceRecordHandle (attribute ID 0x0000) and the ServiceClassIDList (attribute ID 0x0001). All other service attributes are optional within a service record.

#### 5.1.1 ServiceRecordHandle Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ServiceRecordHandle	0x0000	32-bit unsigned integer

#### Description:

A service record handle is a 32-bit number that uniquely identifies each service record within an SDP server. It is important to note that, in general, each handle is unique only within each SDP server. If SDP server S1 and SDP server S2 both contain identical service records (representing the same service), the service record handles used to reference these identical service records are completely independent. The handle used to reference the service on S1 will, in general, be meaningless if presented to S2. Service record handle values 0x00000001-0x0000FFFF are reserved.

### 5.1.2 ServiceClassIDList Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ServiceClassIDList	0x0001	Data Element Sequence

**Description:**

The ServiceClassIDList attribute consists of a data element sequence in which each data element is a UUID representing the service classes that a given service record conforms to. The UUIDs should be listed in order from the most specific class to the most general class unless otherwise specified by the profile specifications defining the service classes. When profiles are enhanced, any new UUIDs should be added at the end of the ServiceClassIDList (after any existing UUIDs) to minimize interoperability issues with legacy implementations. The ServiceClassIDList shall contain at least one service class UUID.

### 5.1.3 ServiceRecordState Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ServiceRecordState	0x0002	32-bit unsigned integer

**Description:**

The ServiceRecordState is a 32-bit integer that is used to facilitate caching of Service Attributes. If this attribute is contained in a service record, its value shall be changed when any other attribute value is added to, deleted from or changed within the service record. This permits a client to check the value of this single attribute. If its value has not changed since it was last checked, the client knows that no other attribute values within the service record have changed.

### 5.1.4 ServiceID Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ServiceID	0x0003	UUID

**Description:**

The ServiceID is a UUID that universally and uniquely identifies the service instance described by the service record. This service attribute is particularly useful if the same service is described by service records in more than one SDP server.

### 5.1.5 ProtocolDescriptorList Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ProtocolDescriptorList	0x0004	Data Element Sequence or Data Element Alternative

#### Description:

The ProtocolDescriptorList attribute describes one or more protocol stacks that can be used to gain access to the service described by the service record.

If the ProtocolDescriptorList describes a single stack, it takes the form of a data element sequence in which each element of the sequence is a protocol descriptor. Each protocol descriptor is, in turn, a data element sequence whose first element is a UUID identifying the protocol and whose successive elements are protocol-specific parameters. Potential protocol-specific parameters are a protocol version number and a connection-port number. The protocol descriptors are listed in order from the lowest layer protocol to the highest layer protocol used to gain access to the service.

If it is possible for more than one kind of protocol stack to be used to gain access to the service, the ProtocolDescriptorList takes the form of a data element alternative where each member is a data element sequence as described in the previous paragraph.

#### Protocol Descriptors

A protocol descriptor identifies a communications protocol and provides protocol-specific parameters. A protocol descriptor is represented as a data element sequence. The first data element in the sequence shall be the UUID that identifies the protocol. Additional data elements optionally provide protocol-specific information, such as the L2CAP protocol/service multiplexer (PSM) and the RFCOMM server channel number (CN) shown below.

#### ProtocolDescriptorList Examples

These examples are intended to be illustrative. The parameter formats for each protocol are not defined within this specification.

In the first two examples, it is assumed that a single RFCOMM instance exists on top of the L2CAP layer. In this case, the L2CAP protocol specific information (PSM) points to the single instance of RFCOMM. In the last example, two different and independent RFCOMM instances are available on top of the L2CAP layer. In this case, the L2CAP protocol specific information (PSM) points to a distinct identifier that distinguishes each of the RFCOMM instances. See the L2CAP specification ([\[Vol. 3\] Part A, Section 4.2](#)) for the range of allowed PSM values.

*IrDA-like printer*

(( L2CAP, PSM=RFCOMM ), ( RFCOMM, CN=1 ), ( PostscriptStream ) )

*IP Network Printing*

(( L2CAP, PSM=RFCOMM ), ( RFCOMM, CN=2 ), ( PPP ), ( IP ), ( TCP ),  
 ( IPP ) )

Synchronization Protocol Descriptor Example

(( L2CAP, PSM=0x1001 ), ( RFCOMM, CN=1 ), ( Obex ), ( vCal ) )

(( L2CAP, PSM=0x1003 ), ( RFCOMM, CN=1 ), ( Obex ),  
 ( otherSynchronisationApplication ) )

### 5.1.6 AdditionalProtocolDescriptorList Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
AdditionalProtocolDescriptorList	0x000D	Data Element Sequence

#### Description:

The AdditionalProtocolDescriptorLists attribute contains a sequence of ProtocolDescriptorList-elements. Each element having the same format as the ProtocolDescriptorList described in section 5.1.5. The ordering of the elements is significant and should be specified and fixed in Profiles that make use of this attribute.

The AdditionalProtocolDescriptorLists attribute supports services that require more channels in addition to the service described in [Section 5.1.5](#). If the AdditionalProtocolDescriptorLists attribute is included in a service record, the ProtocolDescriptorList attribute must be included.

#### AdditionalProtocolDescriptorList Examples

The following is just an illustrative example and is not meant to refer a real specified service or protocols.

Attribute	Attribute Value type	Attribute Value
ProtocolDescriptorList		
ProtocolDescriptor #0DataElementSequence		
ProtocolID	UUID	L2CAP
Param: PSM	PSM	FooDataProtocol
ProtocolDescriptor #1DataElementSequence		
ProtocolID	UUID	FooDataProtocol

## AdditionalProtocolDescriptorLists

```

ProtocolDescriptorList #0 DataElementSequence
  ProtocolDescriptor #0 DataElementSequence
    ProtocolID      UUID      L2CAP
    Param: PSM      PSM       FooControlProtocol
  ProtocolDescriptor #1DataElementSequence
    ProtocolID      UUID      FooControlProtocol

```

**5.1.7 BrowseGroupList Attribute**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
BrowseGroupList	0x0005	Data Element Sequence

**Description:**

The BrowseGroupList attribute consists of a data element sequence in which each element is a UUID that represents a browse group to which the service record belongs. The top-level browse group ID, called PublicBrowseRoot and representing the root of the browsing hierarchy, has the value 00001002-0000-1000-8000-00805F9B34FB (UUID16: 0x1002) from the Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#) document.

**5.1.8 LanguageBaseAttributeIDList Attribute**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
LanguageBaseAttributeIDList	0x0006	Data Element Sequence

**Description:**

In order to support human-readable attributes for multiple natural languages in a single service record, a base attribute ID is assigned for each of the natural languages used in a service record. The human-readable universal attributes are then defined with an attribute ID offset from each of these base values, rather than with an absolute attribute ID.

The LanguageBaseAttributeIDList attribute is a list in which each member contains a language identifier, a character encoding identifier, and a base attribute ID for each of the natural languages used in the service record. The LanguageBaseAttributeIDList attribute consists of a data element sequence in which each element is a 16-bit unsigned integer. The elements are grouped as triplets (threes).

The first element of each triplet contains an identifier representing the natural language. The language is encoded according to ISO 639:1988 (E/F): “Code for the representation of names of languages”.

The second element of each triplet contains an identifier that specifies a character encoding used for the language. Values for character encoding can be found in IANA's database<sup>1</sup>, and have the values that are referred to as MIBE-num values. The recommended character encoding is UTF-8.

The third element of each triplet contains an attribute ID that serves as the base attribute ID for the natural language in the service record. Different service records within a server may use different base attribute ID values for the same language.

To facilitate the retrieval of human-readable universal attributes in a principal language, the base attribute ID value for the primary language supported by a service record shall be 0x0100. Also, if a LanguageBaseAttributeIDList attribute is contained in a service record, the base attribute ID value contained in its first element shall be 0x0100. If one or more human readable attributes are contained in a service record, the LanguageBaseAttributeIDList attribute should be included in that service record.

### **5.1.9 ServiceInfoTimeToLive Attribute**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ServiceInfoTimeToLive	0x0007	32-bit unsigned integer

#### **Description:**

The ServiceTimeToLive attribute is a 32-bit integer that contains the number of seconds for which the information in a service record is expected to remain valid and unchanged. This time interval is measured from the time that the attribute value is retrieved from the SDP server. This value does not imply a guarantee that the service record will remain available or unchanged. It is simply a hint that a client can use to determine a suitable polling interval to re-validate the service record contents.

---

1. See <http://www.isi.edu/in-notes/iana/assignments/character-sets>

### 5.1.10 ServiceAvailability Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ServiceAvailability	0x0008	8-bit unsigned integer

#### Description:

The ServiceAvailability attribute is an 8-bit unsigned integer that represents the relative ability of the service to accept additional clients. A value of 0xFF indicates that the service is not currently in use and is thus fully available, while a value of 0x00 means that the service is not accepting new clients. For services that support multiple simultaneous clients, intermediate values indicate the relative availability of the service on a linear scale.

For example, a service that can accept up to 3 clients should provide ServiceAvailability values of 0xFF, 0xAA, 0x55, and 0x00 when 0, 1, 2, and 3 clients, respectively, are utilizing the service. The value 0xAA is approximately  $(2/3) * 0xFF$  and represents 2/3 availability, while the value 0x55 is approximately  $(1/3)*0xFF$  and represents 1/3 availability. Note that the availability value is be approximated as

$$(1 - (\text{current\_number\_of\_clients} / \text{maximum\_number\_of\_clients})) * 0xFF$$

When the maximum number of clients is large, this formula must be modified to ensure that ServiceAvailability values of 0x00 and 0xFF are reserved for their defined meanings of unavailability and full availability, respectively.

Note that the maximum number of clients a service can support may vary according to the resources utilized by the service's current clients.

A non-zero value for ServiceAvailability does not guarantee that the service will be available for use. It should be treated as a hint or an approximation of availability status.

### 5.1.11 BluetoothProfileDescriptorList Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
BluetoothProfileDescriptorList	0x0009	Data Element Sequence

#### Description:

The BluetoothProfileDescriptorList attribute consists of a data element sequence in which each element is a profile descriptor that contains information about a Bluetooth profile to which the service represented by this service record conforms. Each profile descriptor is a data element sequence whose first element is the UUID assigned to the profile and whose second element is a 16-bit profile version number.

Each version of a profile is assigned a 16-bit unsigned integer profile version number, which consists of two 8-bit fields. The higher-order 8 bits contain the

major version number field and the lower-order 8 bits contain the minor version number field. The initial version of each profile has a major version of 1 and a minor version of 0. When upward compatible changes are made to the profile, the minor version number will be incremented. If incompatible changes are made to the profile, the major version number will be incremented.

### 5.1.12 DocumentationURL Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
DocumentationURL	0x000A	URL

#### Description:

This attribute is a URL which points to documentation on the service described by a service record.

### 5.1.13 ClientExecutableURL Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ClientExecutableURL	0x000B	URL

#### Description:

This attribute contains a URL that refers to the location of an application that can be used to utilize the service described by the service record. Since different operating environments require different executable formats, a mechanism has been defined to allow this single attribute to be used to locate an executable that is appropriate for the client device's operating environment. In the attribute value URL, the first byte with the value 0x2A (ASCII character '\*\*') is to be replaced by the client application with a string representing the desired operating environment before the URL is to be used.

The list of standardized strings representing operating environments is contained in the Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#) document.

For example, assume that the value of the ClientExecutableURL attribute is [http://my.fake/public/\\*/client.exe](http://my.fake/public/*/client.exe). On a device capable of executing SH3 WindowsCE files, this URL would be changed to <http://my.fake/public/sh3-microsoft-wince/client.exe>. On a device capable of executing Windows 98 binaries, this URL would be changed to <http://my.fake/public/i86-microsoft-win98/client.exe>.

### 5.1.14 IconURL Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
IconURL	0x000C	URL

#### Description:

This attribute contains a URL that refers to the location of an icon that can be used to represent the service described by the service record. Since different hardware devices require different icon formats, a mechanism has been defined to allow this single attribute to be used to locate an icon that is appropriate for the client device. In the attribute value URL, the first byte with the value 0x2A (ASCII character '\*') is to be replaced by the client application with a string representing the desired icon format before the URL is to be used.

The list of standardized strings representing icon formats is contained in the Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#) document.

For example, assume that the value of the IconURL attribute is `http://my.fake/public/icons/*`. On a device that prefers 24 x 24 icons with 256 colors, this URL would be changed to `http://my.fake/public/icons/24x24x8.png`. On a device that prefers 10 x 10 monochrome icons, this URL would be changed to `http://my.fake/public/icons/10x10x1.png`.

### 5.1.15 ServiceName Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID Offset	Attribute Value Type
ServiceName	0x0000	String

#### Description:

The ServiceName attribute is a string containing the name of the service represented by a service record. It should be brief and suitable for display with an icon representing the service. The offset 0x0000 is added to the attribute ID base (contained in the LanguageBaseAttributeIDList attribute) in order to compute the attribute ID for this attribute.

### 5.1.16 ServiceDescription Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID Offset	Attribute Value Type
ServiceDescription	0x0001	String

**Description:**

This attribute is a string containing a brief description of the service. It should be less than 200 characters in length. The offset 0x0001 is added to the attribute ID base (contained in the LanguageBaseAttributeIDList attribute) in order to compute the attribute ID for this attribute.

### 5.1.17 ProviderName Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID Offset	Attribute Value Type
ProviderName	0x0002	String

**Description:**

This attribute is a string containing the name of the person or organization providing the service. The offset 0x0002 is added to the attribute ID base (contained in the LanguageBaseAttributeIDList attribute) in order to compute the attribute ID for this attribute.

### 5.1.18 Reserved Universal Attribute IDs

Attribute IDs in the range of 0x000E – 0x01FF are reserved for use by SDP, if allocated the assigned numbers document will be updated.

## 5.2 SERVICEDISSCOVERYSERVER SERVICE CLASS ATTRIBUTE DEFINITIONS

This service class describes service record that contains attributes of the service discovery server itself. The attributes listed in this section are only valid if the ServiceClassIDList attribute contains the ServiceDiscoveryServerServiceClassID. All of the universal attributes may be included in service records of the ServiceDiscoveryServer class.

### 5.2.1 ServiceRecordHandle Attribute

Described in the universal attribute definition for ServiceRecordHandle.

#### Value

A 32-bit integer with the value 0x00000000.

### 5.2.2 ServiceClassIDList Attribute

Described in the universal attribute definition for ServiceClassIDList.

#### Value

A UUID representing the ServiceDiscoveryServerServiceClassID.

### 5.2.3 VersionNumberList Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
VersionNumberList	0x0200	Data Element Sequence

#### Description:

The VersionNumberList is a data element sequence in which each element of the sequence is a version number supported by the SDP server.

A version number is a 16-bit unsigned integer consisting of two fields. The higher-order 8 bits contain the major version number field and the low-order 8 bits contain the minor version number field. The initial version of SDP has a major version of 1 and a minor version of 0. When upward compatible changes are made to the protocol, the minor version number will be incremented. If incompatible changes are made to SDP, the major version number will be incremented. This guarantees that if a client and a server support a common major version number, they can communicate if each uses only features of the specification with a minor version number that is supported by both client and server.

### 5.2.4 ServiceDatabaseState Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
ServiceDatabaseState	0x0201	32-bit unsigned integer

#### Description:

The ServiceDatabaseState is a 32-bit integer that is used to facilitate caching of service records. If this attribute exists, its value shall be changed when any of the other service records are added to or deleted from the server's database. If this value has not changed since the last time a client queried its value, the client knows that a) none of the other service records maintained by the SDP server have been added or deleted; and b) any service record handles acquired from the server are still valid. A client shall query this attribute's value when a connection to the server is established, prior to using any service record handles acquired during a previous connection.

Note that the ServiceDatabaseState attribute does not change when existing service records are modified, including the addition, removal, or modification of service attributes. A service record's ServiceRecordState attribute indicates when that service record is modified.

### 5.2.5 Reserved Attribute IDs

Attribute IDs in the range of 0x0202-0x02FF are reserved.

## 5.3 BROWSEGROUPDESCRIPTOR SERVICE CLASS ATTRIBUTE DEFINITIONS

This service class describes the ServiceRecord provided for each BrowseGroupDescriptor service offered on a Bluetooth device. The attributes listed in this section are only valid if the ServiceClassIDList attribute contains the BrowseGroupDescriptorServiceClassID. Note that all of the universal attributes may be included in service records of the BrowseGroupDescriptor class.

### 5.3.1 ServiceClassIDList Attribute

Described in the universal attribute definition for ServiceClassIDList.

#### Value

A UUID representing the BrowseGroupDescriptorServiceClassID.

### 5.3.2 GroupID Attribute

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Value Type
GroupID	0x0200	UUID

#### Description:

This attribute contains a UUID that can be used to locate services that are members of the browse group that this service record describes.

### 5.3.3 Reserved Attribute IDs

Attribute IDs in the range of 0x0201-0x02FF are reserved.

## 6 SECURITY

---

In Security Mode 4, SDP should use no security but may use security (an authenticated or unauthenticated link key with encryption). See [\[Part C\] Section 5.2.2 on page 313](#)).

## LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 2.1:	SDP Client-Server Interaction .....	223
Figure 2.2:	Simplified SDP Client-Server Interaction .....	223
Figure 2.3:	Service Record .....	225
Figure 2.4:	Service Attribute .....	226
Figure 2.5:	Service Browsing Hierarchy .....	230
Figure 3.1:	Data Element .....	234
Figure 4.1:	Protocol Data Unit Format .....	235
Figure 4.2:	Continuation State Format .....	237
Figure 4.3:	Error Handling .....	238
Figure 4.4:	ServiceSearch Transaction .....	239
Figure 4.5:	ServiceAttribute Transaction .....	242
Figure 4.6:	ServiceSearchAttribute Transaction .....	245

## LIST OF TABLES

---

Table 2.1:	Service Browsing Hierarchy .....	231
Table 3.1:	Data Element .....	232
Table 3.2:	Data Element Size .....	233

## APPENDIX A – BACKGROUND INFORMATION

---

### A.1. Service Discovery

As computing continues to move to a network-centric model, finding and making use of services that may be available in the network becomes increasingly important. Services can include common ones such as printing, paging, FAXing, and so on, as well as various kinds of information access such as teleconferencing, network bridges and access points, eCommerce facilities, and so on — most any kind of service that a server or service provider might offer. In addition to the need for a standard way of discovering available services, there are other considerations: getting access to the services (finding and obtaining the protocols, access methods, “drivers” and other code necessary to utilize the service), controlling access to the services, advertising the services, choosing among competing services, billing for services, and so on. This problem is widely recognized; many companies, standards bodies and consortia are addressing it at various levels in various ways. Service Location Protocol (SLP), Jini™, and Salutation™, to name just a few, all address some aspect of service discovery.

### A.2. Bluetooth Service Discovery

Bluetooth Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) addresses service discovery specifically for the Bluetooth environment. It is optimized for the highly dynamic nature of Bluetooth communications. SDP focuses primarily on discovering services available from or through Bluetooth devices. SDP does not define methods for accessing services; once services are discovered with SDP, they can be accessed in various ways, depending upon the service. This might include the use of other service discovery and access mechanisms such as those mentioned above; SDP provides a means for other protocols to be used along with SDP in those environments where this can be beneficial. While SDP can coexist with other service discovery protocols, it does not require them. In Bluetooth environments, services can be discovered using SDP and can be accessed using other protocols defined by Bluetooth.

## APPENDIX B – EXAMPLE SDP TRANSACTIONS

---

The following are simple examples of typical SDP transactions. These are meant to be illustrative of SDP flows. The examples do not consider:

- Caching (in a caching system, the SDP client would make use of the ServiceRecordState and ServiceDatabaseState attributes);
- Service availability (if this is of interest, the SDP client should use the ServiceAvailability and/or ServiceTimeToLive attributes);
- SDP versions (the VersionNumberList attribute could be used to determine compatible SDP versions);
- SDP Error Responses (an SDP error response is possible for any SDP request that is in error); and
- Communication connection (the examples assume that an L2CAP connection is established).

The examples are meant to be illustrative of the protocol. The format used is `ObjectName [ObjectSizeInBytes] {SubObjectDefinitions}`, but this is not meant to illustrate an interface. The `ObjectSizeInBytes` is the size of the object in decimal. The `SubObjectDefinitions` (inside of {} characters) are components of the immediately enclosing object. Hexadecimal values shown as lower-case letters, such as for transaction IDs and service handles, are variables (the particular value is not important for the illustration, but each such symbol always represents the same value). Comments are included in this manner: /\* comment text \*/.

Numeric values preceded by “0x” are hexadecimal, while those preceded by “0b” are binary. All other numeric values are decimal.

### B.1. SDP Example 1 – ServiceSearchRequest

The first example is that of an SDP client searching for a generic printing service. The client does not specify a particular type of printing service. In the example, the SDP server has two available printing services. The transaction illustrates:

1. SDP client to SDP server: SDP\_ServiceSearchRequest, specifying the PrinterServiceClassID (represented as a DataElement with a 32-bit UUID value of ppp...ppp) as the only element of the ServiceSearchPattern. The PrinterServiceClassID is assumed to be a 32-bit UUID and the data element type for it is illustrated. The TransactionID is illustrated as tttt.
2. SDP server to SDP client: SDP\_ServiceSearchResponse, returning handles to two printing services, represented as qqqqqqqq for the first printing service and rrrrrrrr for the second printing service. The Transaction ID is the same value as supplied by the SDP client in the corresponding request (tttt).

```

/* Sent from SDP Client to SDP server */
SDP_ServiceSearchRequest[15] {
    PDUID[1] {
        0x02
    }
    TransactionID[2] {
        0xtttt
    }
    ParameterLength[2] {
        0x000A
    }
    ServiceSearchPattern[7] {
        DataElementSequence[7] {
            0b00110 0b101 0x05
            UUID[5] {
                /* PrinterServiceClassID */
                0b00011 0b010 0xpppppppp
            }
        }
    }
    MaximumServiceRecordCount[2] {
        0x0003
    }
    ContinuationState[1] {
        /* no continuation state */
        0x00
    }
}
}

/* Sent from SDP server to SDP client */
SDP_ServiceSearchResponse[18] {
    PDUID[1] {
        0x03
    }
    TransactionID[2] {
        0xtttt
    }
    ParameterLength[2] {
        0x000D
    }
    TotalServiceRecordCount[2] {
        0x0002
    }
    CurrentServiceRecordCount[2] {
        0x0002
    }
    ServiceRecordHandleList[8] {
        /* print service 1 handle */
        0xqqqqqqqqq
        /* print service 2 handle */
        0xrrrrrrrr
    }
    ContinuationState[1] {
        /* no continuation state */
    }
}

```

```

        0x00
    }
}

```

## B.2. SDP Example 2 – ServiceAttributeTransaction

The second example continues the first example. In Example 1, the SDP client obtained handles to two printing services. In Example 2, the client uses one of those service handles to obtain the ProtocolDescriptorList attribute for that printing service. The transaction illustrates:

1. SDP client to SDP server: SDP\_ServiceAttributeRequest, presenting the previously obtained service handle (the one denoted as qqqqqqqqqq) and specifying the ProtocolDescriptorList attribute ID (AttributeID 0x0004) as the only attribute requested (other attributes could be retrieved in the same transaction if desired). The TransactionID is illustrated as uuuu to distinguish it from the TransactionID of Example 1.
2. SDP server to SDP client: SDP\_ServiceAttributeResponse, returning the ProtocolDescriptorList for the specified printing service. This protocol stack is assumed to be ( (L2CAP), (RFCOMM, 2), (PostscriptStream) ). The ProtocolDescriptorList is a data element sequence in which each element is, in turn, a data element sequence whose first element is a UUID representing the protocol, and whose subsequent elements are protocol-specific parameters. In this example, one such parameter is included for the RFCOMM protocol, an 8-bit value indicating RFCOMM server channel 2. The Transaction ID is the same value as supplied by the SDP client in the corresponding request (uuuu). The Attributes returned are illustrated as a data element sequence where the protocol descriptors are 32-bit UUIDs and the RFCOMM server channel is a data element with an 8-bit value of 2.

```

/* Sent from SDP Client to SDP server */
SDP_ServiceAttributeRequest[17] {
    PDUID[1] {
        0x04
    }
    TransactionID[2] {
        0xuuuu
    }
    ParameterLength[2] {
        0x000C
    }
    ServiceRecordHandle[4] {
        0xqqqqqqqqq
    }
    MaximumAttributeByteCount[2] {
        0x0080
    }
    AttributeIDList[5] {
        DataElementSequence[5] {

```

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification*

```

0b00110 0b101 0x03
AttributeID[3] {
    0b00001 0b001 0x0004
}
}
ContinuationState[1] {
/* no continuation state */
0x00
}
}

/* Sent from SDP server to SDP client */
SDP_ServiceAttributeResponse[38] {
    PDUID[1] {
        0x05
    }
    TransactionID[2] {
        0xuuuu
    }
    ParameterLength[2] {
        0x0021
    }
    AttributeListByteCount[2] {
        0x001E
    }
    AttributeList[30] {
        DataElementSequence[30] {
            0b00110 0b101 0x1C
            Attribute[28] {
                AttributeID[3] {
                    0b00001 0b001 0x0004
                }
               AttributeValue[25] {
                    /* ProtocolDescriptorList */
                    DataElementSequence[25] {
                        0b00110 0b101 0x17
                        /* L2CAP protocol descriptor */
                        DataElementSequence[7] {
                            0b00110 0b101 0x05
                            UUID[5] {
                                /* L2CAP Protocol UUID */
                                0b00011 0b010 <32-bit L2CAP UUID>
                            }
                        }
                        /* RFCOMM protocol descriptor */
                        DataElementSequence[9] {
                            0b00110 0b101 0x07
                            UUID[5] {
                                /* RFCOMM Protocol UUID */
                                0b00011 0b010 <32-bit RFCOMM UUID>
                            }
                            /* parameter for server 2 */
                            Uint8[2] {
                                0b00001 0b000 0x02
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```



```
/* PostscriptStream protocol descriptor */
DataElementSequence[7] {
    0b00110 0b101 0x05
    UUID[5] {
        /* PostscriptStream Protocol UUID */
        0b00011 0b010 <32-bit PostscriptStream UUID>
    }
}
ContinuationState[1] {
    /* no continuation state */
    0x00
}
```

### **B.3. SDP Example 3 – ServiceSearchAttributeTransaction**

The third example is a form of service browsing, although it is not generic browsing in that it does not make use of SDP browse groups. Instead, an SDP client is searching for available Synchronization services that can be presented to the user for selection. The SDP client does not specify a particular type of synchronization service. In the example, the SDP server has three available synchronization services: an address book synchronization service and a calendar synchronization service (both from the same provider), and a second calendar synchronization service from a different provider. The SDP client is retrieving the same attributes for each of these services; namely, the data formats supported for the synchronization service (vCard, vCal, iCal, etc.) and those attributes that are relevant for presenting information to the user about the services. Also assume that the maximum size of a response is 400 bytes. Since the result is larger than this, the SDP client will repeat the request supplying a continuation state parameter to retrieve the remainder of the response. The transaction illustrates:

1. SDP client to SDP server: SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest, specifying the generic SynchronisationServiceClassID (represented as a data element whose 32-bit UUID value is sss...sss) as the only element of the ServiceSearchPattern. The SynchronisationServiceClassID is assumed to be a 32-bit UUID. The requested attributes are the ServiceRecordHandle (Attribute ID 0x0000), ServiceClassIDList (AttributeID 0x0001), IconURL (AttributeID 0x000C), ServiceName (AttributeID 0x0100), ServiceDescription (AttributeID 0x0101), and ProviderName (AttributeID 0x0102) attributes; as well as the service-specific SupportedDataStores (AttributeID 0x0301). Since the first two attribute IDs (0x0000 and 0x0001) and three other attribute IDs(0x0100, 0x0101, and 0x0102 are consecutive, they are specified as attribute ranges. The TransactionID is illustrated as vvvv to distinguish it from the TransactionIDs of the other Examples.

Note that values in the service record's primary language are requested for the text attributes (ServiceName, ServiceDescription and ProviderName) so that absolute attribute IDs may be used, rather than adding offsets to a base obtained from the LanguageBaseAttributeIDList attribute.

2. SDP server to SDP client: SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse, returning the specified attributes for each of the three synchronization services. In the example, each ServiceClassIDList is assumed to contain a single element, the generic SynchronisationServiceClassID (a 32-bit UUID represented as sss...sss). Each of the other attributes contain illustrative data in the example (the strings have illustrative text; the icon URLs are illustrative, for each of the respective three synchronization services; and the SupportedDataStore attribute is represented as an unsigned 8-bit integer where 0x01 = vCard2.1, 0x02 = vCard3.0, 0x03 = vCal1.0 and 0x04 = iCal). Note that one of the service records (the third for which data is returned) has no ServiceDescription attribute. The attributes are returned as a data element sequence, where each element is in turn a data element sequence representing a list of attributes. Within each attribute list, the ServiceClassIDList is a data element sequence while the remaining attributes are single data elements. The Transaction ID is the same value as supplied by the SDP client in the corresponding request (0xvvvv). Since the entire result cannot be returned in a single response, a non-null continuation state is returned in this first response.
3. Note that the total length of the initial data element sequence (487 in the example) is indicated in the first response, even though only a portion of this data element sequence (368 bytes in the example, as indicated in the AttributeLists byte count) is returned in the first response. The remainder of this data element sequence is returned in the second response (without an additional data element header).
4. SDP client to SDP server: SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest, with the same parameters as in step 1, except that the continuation state received from the server in step 2 is included as a request parameter. The TransactionID is changed to 0xwww to distinguish it from previous request.
5. SDP server to SDP client: SDP\_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse, with the remainder of the result computed in step 2 above. Since all of the remaining result fits in this second response, a null continuation state is included.

```
/* Part 1 -- Sent from SDP Client to SDP server */
SdpSDP_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest[33] {
    PDUID[1] {
        0x06
    }
    TransactionID[2] {
        0xvvvv
    }
    ParameterLength[2] {
        0x001C
    }
    ServiceSearchPattern[7] {
        DataElementSequence[7] {

```

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification*

```

0b00110 0b101 0x05
UUID[5] {
    /* SynchronisationServiceClassID */
    0b00011 0b010 0xssssssss
}
}
MaximumAttributeByteCount[2] {
    0x0190
}
AttributeIDList[18] {
    DataElementSequence[18] {
        0b00110 0b101 0x10
        AttributeIDRange[5] {
            0b00001 0b010 0x00000001
        }
        AttributeID[3] {
            0b00001 0b001 0x000C
        }
        AttributeIDRange[5] {
            0b00001 0b010 0x01000102
        }
        AttributeID[3] {
            0b00001 0b001 0x0301
        }
    }
    ContinuationState[1] {
        /* no continuation state */
        0x00
    }
}

/* Part 2 -- Sent from SDP server to SDP client */
SdpSDP_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse[384] {
    PDUID[1] {
        0x07
    }
    TransactionID[2] {
        0xvvvv
    }
    ParameterLength[2] {
        0x017B
    }
    AttributeListByteCount[2] {
        0x0170
    }
    AttributeLists[368] {
        DataElementSequence[487] {
            0b00110 0b110 0x01E4
            DataElementSequence[178] {
                0b00110 0b101 0xB0
                Attribute[8] {
                    AttributeID[3] {
                        0b00001 0b001 0x0000
                    }
                    AttributeValue[5] {
                        /* service record handle */
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification*

```

        0b00001 0b010 0xhhhhhhh
    }
}
Attribute[10] {
    AttributeID[3] {
        0b00001 0b001 0x0001
    }
}
AttributeValue[7] {
    DataElementSequence[7] {
        0b00110 0b101 0x05
        UUID[5] {
            /* SynchronisationServiceClassID */
            0b00011 0b010 0xsssssss
        }
    }
}
Attribute[35] {
    AttributeID[3] {
        0b00001 0b001 0x000C
    }
}
AttributeValue[32] {
    /* IconURL; '*' replaced by client application */
    0b01000 0b101 0x1E
    "http://Synchronisation/icons/*"
}
}
Attribute[22] {
    AttributeID[3] {
        0b00001 0b001 0x0100
    }
}
AttributeValue[19] {
    /* service name */
    0b00100 0b101 0x11
    "Address Book Sync"
}
}
Attribute[59] {
    AttributeID[3] {
        0b00001 0b001 0x0101
    }
}
AttributeValue[56] {
    /* service description */
    0b00100 0b101 0x36
    "Synchronisation Service for"
    " vCard Address Book Entries"
}
}
Attribute[37] {
    AttributeID[3] {
        0b00001 0b001 0x0102
    }
}
AttributeValue[34] {
    /* service provider */
    0b00100 0b101 0x20
    "Synchronisation Specialists Inc."
}
}

```

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification*

```

        }
        Attribute[5] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x0301
            }
            AttributeValue[2] {
                /* Supported Data Store 'phonebook' */
                0b00001 0b000 0x01
            }
        }
    }
    DataElementSequence[175] {
        0b00110 0b101 0xAD
        Attribute[8] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x0000
            }
            AttributeValue[5] {
                /* service record handle */
                0b00001 0b010 0xaaaaaaaaaa
            }
        }
        Attribute[10] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x0001
            }
            AttributeValue[7] {
                DataElementSequence[7] {
                    0b00110 0b101 0x05
                    UUID[5] {
                        /* SynchronisationServiceClassID */
                        0b00011 0b010 0xssssssss
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        Attribute[35] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x000C
            }
            AttributeValue[32] {
                /* IconURL; '*' replaced by client application */
                0b01000 0b101 0x1E
                "http://Synchronisation/icons/*"
            }
        }
        Attribute[21] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x0100
            }
            AttributeValue[18] {
                /* service name */
                0b00100 0b101 0x10
                "Appointment Sync"
            }
        }
    }
    Attribute[57] {

```

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification*

```

        AttributeID[3] {
            0b00001 0b001 0x0101
        }
        AttributeValue[54] {
            /* service description */
            0b00100 0b101 0x34
            "Synchronisation Service for"
            " vCal Appointment Entries"
        }
    }
    Attribute[37] {
        AttributeID[3] {
            0b00001 0b001 0x0102
        }
        AttributeValue[34] {
            /* service provider */
            0b00100 0b101 0x20
            "Synchronisation Specialists Inc."
        }
    }
    Attribute[5] {
        AttributeID[3] {
            0b00001 0b001 0x0301
        }
        AttributeValue[2] {
            /* Supported Data Store 'calendar' */
            0b00001 0b000 0x03
        }
    }
}
/* } Data element sequence of attribute lists */
/* is not completed in this PDU. */
}
ContinuationState[9] {
    /* 8 bytes of continuation state */
    0x08 0xzzzzzzzzzzzzzzz
}
}

/* Part 3 -- Sent from SDP Client to SDP server */
SdpSDP_ServiceSearchAttributeRequest[41] {
    PDUID[1] {
        0x06
    }
    TransactionID[2] {
        0xwwww
    }
    ParameterLength[2] {
        0x0024
    }
    ServiceSearchPattern[7] {
        DataElementSequence[7] {
            0b00110 0b101 0x05
            UUID[5] {
                /* SynchronisationServiceClassID */
                0b00011 0b010 0xsssssss
            }
        }
    }
}

```

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification*

```

        }
    }
MaximumAttributeByteCount[2] {
    0x0180
}
AttributeIDList[18] {
    DataElementSequence[18] {
        0b00110 0b101 0x10
        AttributeIDRange[5] {
            0b00001 0b010 0x00000001
        }
        AttributeID[3] {
            0b00001 0b001 0x000C
        }
        AttributeIDRange[5] {
            0b00001 0b010 0x01000102
        }
        AttributeID[3] {
            0b00001 0b001 0x0301
        }
    }
}
ContinuationState[9] {
    /* same 8 bytes of continuation state */
    /* received in part 2 */
    0x08 0xzzzzzzzzzzzzzzz
}
}

```

Part 4 -- Sent from SDP server to SDP client

```

SdpSDP_ServiceSearchAttributeResponse[115] {
    PDUID[1] {
        0x07
    }
    TransactionID[2] {
        0xwwww
    }
    ParameterLength[2] {
        0x006E
    }
    AttributeListByteCount[2] {
        0x006B
    }
    AttributeLists[107] {
        /* Continuing the data element sequence of */
        /* attribute lists begun in Part 2. */
        DataElementSequence[107] {
            0b00110 0b101 0x69
            Attribute[8] {
                AttributeID[3] {
                    0b00001 0b001 0x0000
                }
                AttributeValue[5] {
                    /* service record handle */
                    0b00001 0b010 0xffffffff
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```

*Service Discovery Protocol (SDP) Specification*

```

        }
        Attribute[10] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x0001
            }
            AttributeValue[7] {
                DataElementSequence[7] {
                    0b00110 0b101 0x05
                    UUID[5] {
                        /* SynchronisationServiceClassID */
                        0b00011 0b010 0xssssssss
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        Attribute[35] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x000C
            }
            AttributeValue[32] {
                /* IconURL; '*' replaced by client application */
                0b01000 0b101 0x1E
                "http://DevManufacturer/icons/*"
            }
        }
        Attribute[18] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x0100
            }
            AttributeValue[15] {
                /* service name */
                0b00100 0b101 0x0D
                "Calendar Sync"
            }
        }
        Attribute[29] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x0102
            }
            AttributeValue[26] {
                /* service provider */
                0b00100 0b101 0x18
                "Device Manufacturer Inc."
            }
        }
        Attribute[5] {
            AttributeID[3] {
                0b00001 0b001 0x0301
            }
            AttributeValue[2] {
                /* Supported Data Store 'calendar' */
                0b00001 0b000 0x03
            }
        }
    }
/* This completes the data element sequence */
/* of attribute lists begun in Part 2.

```

## Core System Package [Host volume]

### Part C

# GENERIC ACCESS PROFILE

***This profile defines the generic procedures related to discovery of Bluetooth devices (idle mode procedures) and link management aspects of connecting to Bluetooth devices (connecting mode procedures). It also defines procedures related to use of different security levels. In addition, this profile includes common format requirements for parameters accessible on the user interface level.***



## CONTENTS

<b>Foreword .....</b>	<b>287</b>
<b>1      Introduction .....</b>	<b>288</b>
1.1    Scope.....	288
1.2    Symbols and Conventions .....	289
1.2.1   Requirement Status Symbols .....	289
1.2.2   Signaling diagram conventions .....	290
1.2.3   Notation for Timers and Counters .....	290
<b>2      Profile Overview .....</b>	<b>291</b>
2.1    Profile Stack .....	291
2.2    Profile Roles .....	291
2.2.1   Roles when Operating over BR/EDR Physical Transport .....	291
2.2.2   Roles when Operating over an LE Physical Transport	292
2.2.2.1   Broadcaster Role .....	292
2.2.2.2   Observer Role .....	292
2.2.2.3   Peripheral Role .....	293
2.2.2.4   Central Role .....	293
2.2.2.5   Concurrent Operation in Multiple GAP Roles .....	293
2.3    User Requirements and Scenarios .....	295
2.4    Profile Fundamentals .....	295
2.5    Conformance .....	295
<b>3      User Interface Aspects .....</b>	<b>296</b>
3.1    The User Interface Level.....	296
3.2    Representation of Bluetooth Parameters .....	296
3.2.1   Bluetooth Device Address (BD_ADDR) .....	296
3.2.1.1   Definition .....	296
3.2.1.2   Term on user interface level.....	296
3.2.1.3   Representation.....	296
3.2.2   Bluetooth Device Name (the user-friendly name) .....	297
3.2.2.1   Definition .....	297
3.2.2.2   Term on user interface level.....	297
3.2.2.3   Representation.....	297
3.2.3   Bluetooth Passkey (Bluetooth PIN) .....	297
3.2.3.1   Definition .....	297
3.2.3.2   Terms at user interface level .....	298
3.2.3.3   Representation.....	298
3.2.4   Class of Device .....	299
3.2.4.1   Definition .....	299
3.2.4.2   Term on user interface level.....	299

3.2.4.3	Representation .....	299
3.2.4.4	Usage .....	300
3.2.5	Appearance Characteristic.....	300
3.2.5.1	Definition.....	300
3.2.5.2	Usage at user interface level .....	300
3.2.5.3	Representation .....	300
3.3	Pairing.....	300
<b>4</b>	<b>Modes – BR/EDR Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>301</b>
4.1	Discoverability Modes .....	301
4.1.1	Non-discoverable Mode .....	302
4.1.1.1	Definition.....	302
4.1.1.2	Term on UI-level .....	302
4.1.2	Limited Discoverable Mode.....	302
4.1.2.1	Definition.....	302
4.1.2.2	Conditions.....	303
4.1.2.3	Term on UI-level .....	303
4.1.3	General Discoverable Mode.....	304
4.1.3.1	Definition.....	304
4.1.3.2	Conditions.....	304
4.1.3.3	Term on UI-level .....	304
4.2	Connectability Modes.....	305
4.2.1	Non-connectable Mode .....	305
4.2.1.1	Definition.....	305
4.2.1.2	Term on UI-level .....	305
4.2.2	Connectable Mode .....	305
4.2.2.1	Definition.....	305
4.2.2.2	Term on UI-level .....	306
4.3	Bondable Modes .....	307
4.3.1	Non-bondable Mode .....	307
4.3.1.1	Definition.....	307
4.3.1.2	Term on UI-level .....	307
4.3.2	Bondable Mode .....	307
4.3.2.1	Definition.....	307
4.3.2.2	Term on UI-level .....	307
4.4	Synchronizability Modes .....	308
4.4.1	Non-synchronizable Mode .....	308
4.4.1.1	Definition.....	308
4.4.1.2	Term on UI-level .....	308
4.4.2	Synchronizable Mode.....	308
4.4.2.1	Definition.....	308

<b>5 Security Aspects – BR/EDR Physical Transport .....</b>	<b>309</b>
5.1 Authentication .....	309
5.1.1 Purpose .....	309
5.1.2 Term on UI level .....	309
5.1.3 Procedure.....	310
5.1.4 Conditions .....	310
5.2 Security Modes .....	311
5.2.1 Legacy Security Modes .....	312
5.2.1.1 Security mode 1 (non-secure).....	312
5.2.1.2 Security mode 2 (service level enforced security) .....	312
5.2.1.3 Security mode 3 (link level enforced security) .....	312
5.2.2 Security Mode 4 (service level enforced security).....	313
5.2.2.1 Security for Access to Remote Service (Initiating Side).....	314
5.2.2.2 Security for Access to Local Service by Remote Device (Responding Side) .....	317
5.2.2.3 Simple Pairing after Authentication Failure...320	320
5.2.2.4 IO Capabilities.....	320
5.2.2.5 Mapping of Input / Output Capabilities to IO Capability .....	321
5.2.2.6 IO and OOB Capability Mapping to Authentication Stage 1 Method .....	322
5.2.2.7 Out of Band (OOB) .....	323
5.2.2.8 Security Database.....	324
<b>6 Idle Mode Procedures – BR/EDR Physical Transport.....</b>	<b>328</b>
6.1 General Inquiry .....	328
6.1.1 Purpose .....	328
6.1.2 Term on UI level .....	328
6.1.3 Description .....	329
6.1.4 Conditions .....	329
6.2 Limited Inquiry.....	329
6.2.1 Purpose .....	329
6.2.2 Term on UI level .....	330
6.2.3 Description .....	330
6.2.4 Conditions .....	330
6.3 Name Discovery.....	331
6.3.1 Purpose .....	331
6.3.2 Term on UI level .....	331
6.3.3 Description .....	331
6.3.3.1 Name request .....	331

6.3.3.2	Name discovery .....	331
6.3.4	Conditions .....	332
6.4	Device Discovery .....	332
6.4.1	Purpose .....	332
6.4.2	Term on UI Level .....	332
6.4.3	Description .....	333
6.4.4	Conditions .....	333
6.5	Bonding .....	334
6.5.1	Purpose .....	334
6.5.2	Term on UI level .....	334
6.5.3	Description .....	334
6.5.3.1	General Bonding .....	334
6.5.3.2	Dedicated Bonding .....	335
6.5.4	Conditions .....	336
<b>7</b>	<b>Establishment Procedures – BR/EDR Physical Transport .....</b>	<b>337</b>
7.1	Link Establishment .....	337
7.1.1	Purpose .....	337
7.1.2	Term on UI Level .....	337
7.1.3	Description .....	338
7.1.3.1	B in security mode 1, 2, or 4 .....	338
7.1.3.2	B in security mode 3 .....	339
7.1.4	Conditions .....	339
7.2	Channel Establishment .....	340
7.2.1	Purpose .....	340
7.2.2	Term on UI level .....	340
7.2.3	Description .....	340
7.2.3.1	B in security mode 2 or 4 .....	341
7.2.3.2	B in security mode 1 or 3 .....	341
7.2.4	Conditions .....	341
7.3	Connection Establishment .....	342
7.3.1	Purpose .....	342
7.3.2	Term on UI level .....	342
7.3.3	Description .....	342
7.3.3.1	B in security mode 2 or 4 .....	342
7.3.3.2	B in security mode 1 or 3 .....	343
7.3.4	Conditions .....	343
7.4	Establishment of Additional Connection .....	343
7.5	Synchronization Establishment .....	344
7.5.1	Purpose .....	344
7.5.2	Term on UI Level .....	344

7.5.3	Description .....	344
7.5.4	Conditions .....	344
<b>8</b>	<b>Extended Inquiry Response Data Format .....</b>	<b>345</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Operational Modes and Procedures – LE Physical Transport .....</b>	<b>347</b>
9.1	Broadcast Mode and Observation Procedure .....	347
9.1.1	Broadcast Mode .....	347
9.1.1.1	Definition .....	347
9.1.1.2	Conditions .....	348
9.1.2	Observation Procedure .....	348
9.1.2.1	Definition .....	348
9.1.2.2	Conditions .....	348
9.2	Discovery Modes and Procedures .....	348
9.2.1	Requirements .....	349
9.2.2	Non-Discoverable Mode .....	349
9.2.2.1	Description .....	349
9.2.2.2	Conditions .....	349
9.2.3	Limited Discoverable Mode .....	350
9.2.3.1	Description .....	350
9.2.3.2	Conditions .....	350
9.2.4	General Discoverable Mode .....	351
9.2.4.1	Description .....	351
9.2.4.2	Conditions .....	351
9.2.5	Limited Discovery Procedure .....	353
9.2.5.1	Description .....	353
9.2.5.2	Conditions .....	353
9.2.6	General Discovery Procedure .....	354
9.2.6.1	Description .....	354
9.2.6.2	Conditions .....	355
9.2.7	Name Discovery Procedure .....	355
9.2.7.1	Description .....	355
9.2.7.2	Conditions .....	355
9.3	Connection Modes and Procedures .....	356
9.3.1	Requirements .....	356
9.3.2	Non-Connectable Mode .....	357
9.3.2.1	Description .....	357
9.3.2.2	Conditions .....	357
9.3.3	Directed Connectable Mode .....	357
9.3.3.1	Description .....	357
9.3.3.2	Conditions .....	357
9.3.4	Undirected Connectable Mode .....	358
9.3.4.1	Description .....	358
9.3.4.2	Conditions .....	358

9.3.5	Auto Connection Establishment Procedure .....	358
9.3.5.1	Description.....	358
9.3.5.2	Conditions.....	358
9.3.6	General Connection Establishment Procedure .....	359
9.3.6.1	Description.....	359
9.3.6.2	Conditions.....	360
9.3.7	Selective Connection Establishment Procedure .....	361
9.3.7.1	Description.....	361
9.3.7.2	Conditions.....	361
9.3.8	Direct Connection Establishment Procedure .....	363
9.3.8.1	Description.....	363
9.3.8.2	Conditions.....	363
9.3.9	Connection Parameter Update Procedure .....	364
9.3.9.1	Description.....	364
9.3.9.2	Conditions.....	364
9.3.10	Terminate Connection Procedure.....	365
9.3.10.1	Description.....	365
9.3.10.2	Conditions.....	365
9.3.11	Connection Establishment Timing Parameters .....	365
9.3.11.1	Description.....	365
9.3.11.2	Conditions.....	365
9.3.12	Connection Interval Timing Parameters .....	366
9.3.12.1	Description.....	366
9.3.12.2	Conditions.....	366
9.4	Bonding Modes and Procedures .....	367
9.4.1	Requirements.....	367
9.4.2	Non-Bondable Mode .....	367
9.4.2.1	Description.....	367
9.4.2.2	Conditions.....	368
9.4.3	Bondable Mode .....	368
9.4.3.1	Description.....	368
9.4.3.2	Conditions.....	368
9.4.4	Bonding Procedure .....	369
9.4.4.1	Description.....	369
9.4.4.2	Conditions.....	369
10	<b>Security Aspects – LE Physical Transport .....</b>	<b>370</b>
10.1	Requirements.....	370
10.2	LE Security Modes.....	370
10.2.1	LE Security Mode 1.....	371
10.2.2	LE Security Mode 2.....	371
10.2.3	Mixed Security Modes Requirements .....	371

10.3	Authentication Procedure.....	372
10.3.1	Responding to a Service Request.....	372
10.3.1.1	Handling of GATT Indications and Notifications .....	376
10.3.2	Initiating a Service Request.....	376
10.4	Data Signing.....	379
10.4.1	Connection Data Signing Procedure .....	379
10.4.2	Authenticate Signed Data Procedure .....	379
10.5	Authorization Procedure.....	381
10.6	Encryption Procedure.....	381
10.7	Privacy Feature .....	381
10.7.1	Privacy Feature in a Peripheral .....	382
10.7.2	Privacy Feature in a Central.....	382
10.7.3	Privacy Feature in a Broadcaster .....	383
10.7.4	Privacy Feature in an Observer.....	383
10.8	Random Device Address .....	383
10.8.1	Static Address .....	384
10.8.2	Private address .....	385
10.8.2.1	Non-Resolvable Private Address Generation Procedure .....	385
10.8.2.2	Resolvable Private Address Generation Procedure .....	385
10.8.2.3	Resolvable Private Address Resolution Procedure .....	386
11	<b>Advertising and Scan Response Data Format .....</b>	<b>387</b>
12	<b>GAP Service and Characteristics for GATT Server.....</b>	<b>388</b>
12.1	Device Name Characteristic.....	389
12.2	Appearance Characteristic.....	389
12.3	Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters Characteristic ...	390
13	<b>BR/EDR/LE Operation .....</b>	<b>392</b>
13.1	Modes, Procedures and Security Aspects .....	392
13.1.1	Discoverable Mode Requirements .....	393
13.2	Bonding for BR/EDR/LE Device Type .....	393
13.3	Relationship between Physical Transports .....	393
14	<b>BR/EDR/LE Security Aspects.....</b>	<b>394</b>



<b>15</b>	<b>Bluetooth Device Requirements .....</b>	<b>395</b>
15.1	Bluetooth Device Address .....	395
15.1.1	Bluetooth Device Address Types .....	395
15.1.1.1	Public Bluetooth Address .....	395
15.1.1.2	Random Bluetooth Address .....	395
15.2	GATT Profile Requirements .....	395
15.3	SDP Requirements .....	396
15.4	SDP Service Record Requirement .....	396
<b>16</b>	<b>Definitions .....</b>	<b>397</b>
16.1	General Definitions .....	397
16.2	Connection-related Definitions .....	397
16.3	Device-related Definitions .....	398
16.4	Procedure-related Definitions .....	399
16.5	Security-related Definitions .....	399
<b>17</b>	<b>Appendix A (Normative): Timers and Constants .....</b>	<b>401</b>
<b>18</b>	<b>Appendix B (Informative): Information Flows of Related Procedures .....</b>	<b>405</b>
18.1	LMP – Authentication .....	405
18.2	LMP – Pairing .....	406
18.3	Service Discovery .....	407
18.4	Generating a Resolvable Private Address .....	407
18.5	Resolving a Resolvable Private Address .....	407
<b>19</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>408</b>
	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>409</b>
	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>411</b>

## FOREWORD

---

Interoperability between devices from different manufacturers is provided for a specific service and use case, if the devices conform to a Bluetooth SIG-defined profile specification. A profile defines a selection of messages and procedures (generally termed *capabilities*) from the Bluetooth SIG specifications and gives a description of the air interface for specified service(s) and use case(s).

All defined features are process-mandatory. This means that, if a feature is used, it is used in a specified manner. Whether the provision of a feature is mandatory or optional is stated separately for both sides of the Bluetooth air interface.

# 1 INTRODUCTION

---

## 1.1 SCOPE

The purpose of the Generic Access Profile is:

To introduce definitions, recommendations and common requirements related to modes and access procedures that are to be used by transport and application profiles.

To describe how devices are to behave in standby and connecting states in order to guarantee that links and channels always can be established between Bluetooth devices, and that multi-profile operation is possible. Special focus is put on discovery, link establishment and security procedures.

To state requirements on user interface aspects, mainly coding schemes and names of procedures and parameters, that are needed to guarantee a satisfactory user experience.

This profile defines three device types based on the supported Core Configurations as defined in [Vol. 0], Part B Section 3.1. The device types are shown in [Table 1.1](#):

Device Type	Description
BR/EDR	Devices that support the “Basic Rate” Core Configuration (see [Vol. 0], Part B Section 4.1)
LE only	Devices that support the “Low Energy” Core Configuration (see [Vol. 0], Part B Section 4.4)
BR/EDR/LE	Devices that support the “Basic Rate and Low Energy Combined” Core Configuration (see [Vol. 0], Part B Section 4.5)

*Table 1.1: Device Types*

The terms physical transport, physical link and physical channel as defined in [Vol. 1], Part A Section 3 are used in this specification.

The requirements for device types are shown in [Table 1.2](#).

Device Types	Sections	Support
BR/EDR	1-8, 12, 15-18	C1
LE-only	1-3, 9-12, 15-18	C1
BR/EDR/LE	1-18	C1
C1: Mandatory to support only one device type		

*Table 1.2: Requirements for device types*

## 1.2 SYMBOLS AND CONVENTIONS

### 1.2.1 Requirement Status Symbols

In this document (especially in the profile requirements tables), the following symbols are used:

'M' for mandatory to support (used for capabilities that shall be used in the profile);

'O' for optional to support (used for capabilities that can be used in the profile);

'C' for conditional support (used for capabilities that shall be used in case a certain other capability is supported);

'E' for excluded within profile role (used for capabilities that may be supported by the unit but shall never be used in the profile role);

'N/A' for not applicable (in the given context it is impossible to use this capability).

Some excluded capabilities are capabilities that, according to the relevant Bluetooth specification, are mandatory. These are features that may degrade operation of devices following this profile. Therefore, these features shall never be activated while a unit is operating as a unit within this profile.

In this specification, the word *shall* is used for mandatory requirements, the word *should* is used to express recommendations and the word *may* is used for options.

### 1.2.2 Signaling diagram conventions

The following arrows are used in diagrams describing procedures:

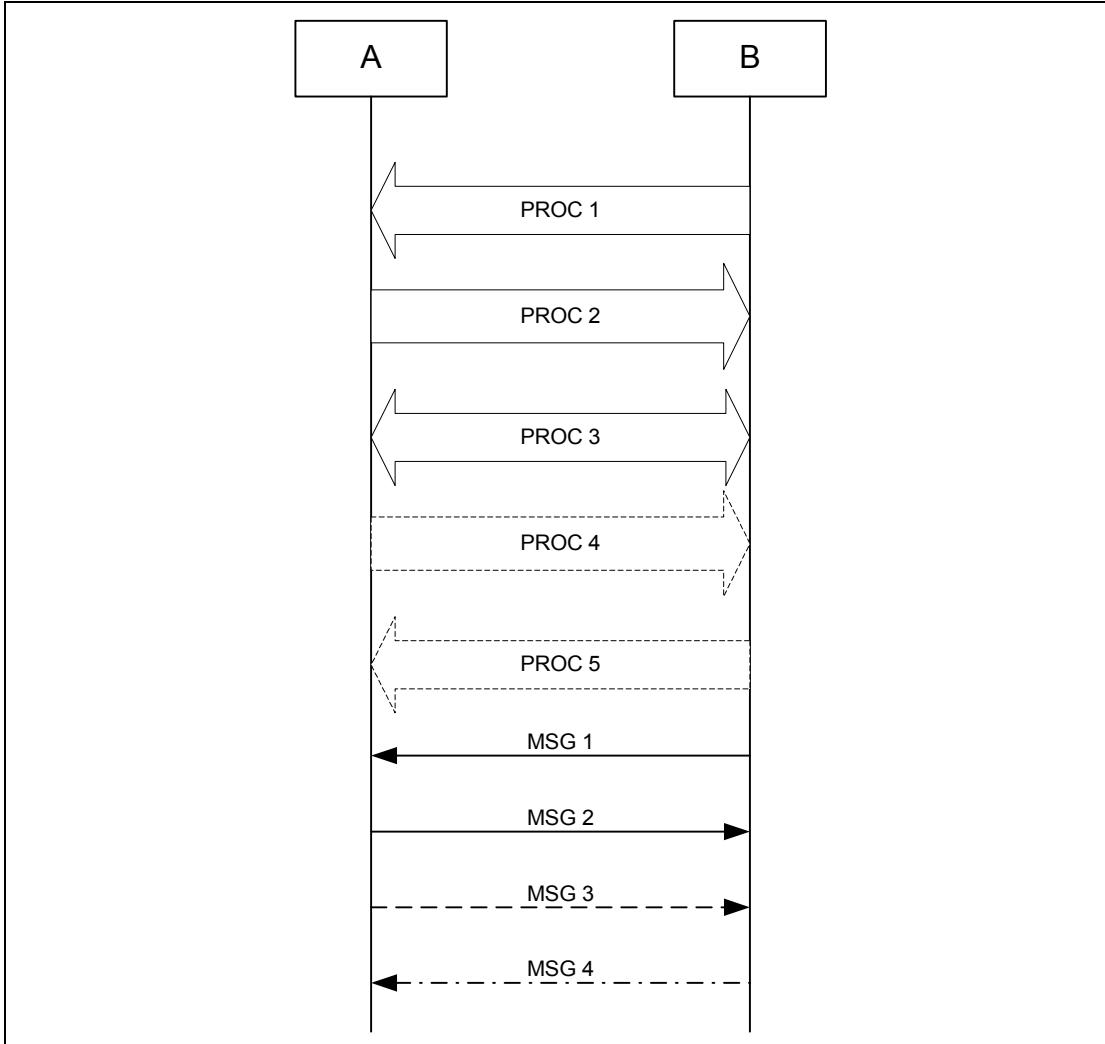


Figure 1.1: Arrows used in signaling diagrams

In [Figure 1.1](#), the following cases are shown: PROC1 is a sub-procedure initiated by B. PROC2 is a sub-procedure initiated by A. PROC3 is a sub-procedure where the initiating side is undefined (may be both A or B). Dashed arrows denote optional steps. PROC4 indicates an optional sub-procedure initiated by A, and PROC5 indicates an optional sub-procedure initiated by B.

MSG1 is a message sent from B to A. MSG2 is a message sent from A to B. MSG3 indicates an optional message from A to B, and MSG4 indicates a conditional message from B to A.

### 1.2.3 Notation for Timers and Counters

Timers are introduced specific to this profile. To distinguish them from timers used in the Bluetooth protocol specifications and other profiles, these timers are named in the following format: ' $T_{GAP}(nnn)$ '.

## 2 PROFILE OVERVIEW

### 2.1 PROFILE STACK

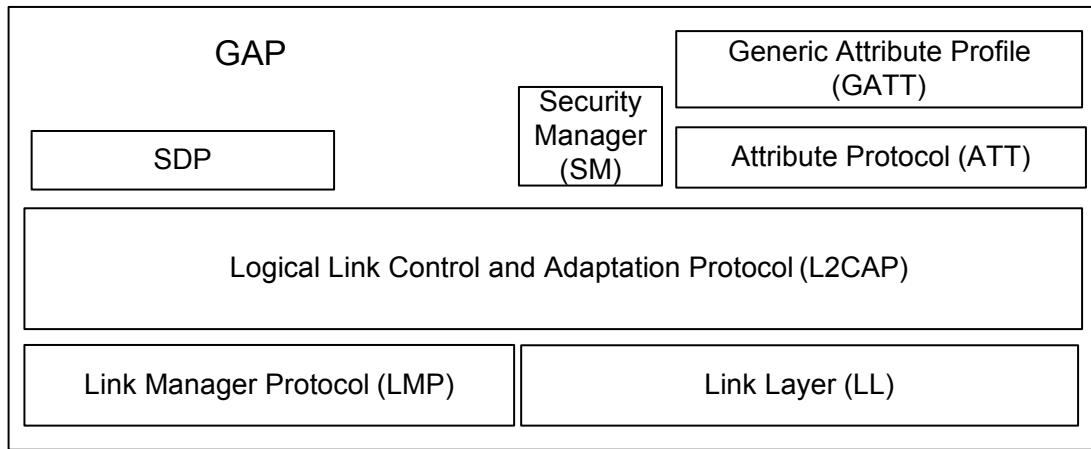


Figure 2.1: Relationship of GAP with lower layers of the Bluetooth architecture

The purpose of this profile is to describe:

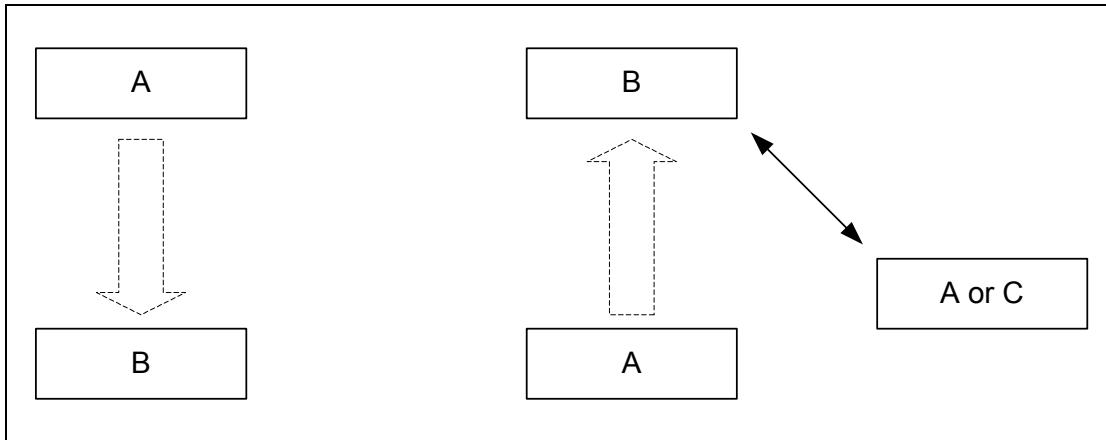
- Profile roles
- Discoverability modes and procedures
- Connection modes and procedures
- Security modes and procedures

### 2.2 PROFILE ROLES

#### 2.2.1 Roles when Operating over BR/EDR Physical Transport

In GAP, for describing the Bluetooth communication that occurs between two devices in the BR/EDR GAP role, the generic notation of the A-party (the *paging device* in case of link establishment, or *initiator* in case of another procedure on an established link) and the B-party (*paged device* or *acceptor*) is used. The A-party is the one that, for a given procedure, initiates device discovery, initiates the establishment of a physical link or initiates a transaction on an existing link.

This profile handles the procedures between two devices related to discovery and connecting (link and connection establishment) for the case where none of the two devices has any link established as well as the case where (at least) one device has a link established (possibly to a third device) before starting the described procedure.



*Figure 2.2: This profile covers procedures initiated by one device (A) towards another device (B) that may or may not have an existing Bluetooth link active*

The initiator and the acceptor generally operate the generic procedures according to this profile or another profile referring to this profile. If the acceptor operates according to several profiles simultaneously, this profile describes generic mechanisms for how to handle this.

## 2.2.2 Roles when Operating over an LE Physical Transport

There are four GAP roles defined for devices operating over an LE physical transport:

- Broadcaster
- Observer
- Peripheral
- Central

### 2.2.2.1 Broadcaster Role

A device operating in the Broadcaster role is a device that sends advertising events as described in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 4.4.2](#). A device operating in the Broadcaster role is referred to as a Broadcaster and shall have a transmitter and may have a receiver.

### 2.2.2.2 Observer Role

A device operating in the Observer role is a device that receives advertising events as described in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 4.4.3](#). A device operating in the Observer role is referred to as an Observer and shall have a receiver and may have a transmitter.

### 2.2.2.3 Peripheral Role

Any device that accepts the establishment of an LE physical link using any of the connection establishment procedures as defined in [Section 9](#) is referred to as being in the Peripheral role. A device operating in the Peripheral role will be in the Slave role in the Link Layer Connection State as described in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 4.5](#). A device operating in the Peripheral role is referred to as a Peripheral. A Peripheral shall have both a transmitter and a receiver.

### 2.2.2.4 Central Role

A device that supports the Central role initiates the establishment of a physical connection. A device operating in the Central role will be in the Master role in the Link Layer Connection State as described in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 4.5](#). A device operating in the Central role is referred to as a Central. A Central shall have both a transmitter and a receiver.

### 2.2.2.5 Concurrent Operation in Multiple GAP Roles

A device may operate in multiple GAP roles concurrently if supported by the Controller. The Host should read the supported Link Layer States and State combinations from the Controller before any procedures or modes are used.

Only supported and allowed Link Layer States and State combinations may be used as described in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 1.1.1](#). The Physical Layer and Link Layer functionalities of each GAP role are shown in [Table 2.1](#).

		GAP Roles When Operating Over an LE Physical Transport			
		Broadcaster	Observer	Peripheral	Central
<b>Physical Layer functionality:</b>					
• Transmitter Characteristics		M	O	M	M
• Receiver Characteristics		O	M	M	M
<b>Link Layer functionality:</b>					
<i>States:</i>					
• Standby State		M	M	M	M
• Advertising State		M	E	M	E
• Scanning State		E	M	E	M
• Initiating State		E	E	E	M
• Connection State	Slave Role	E	E	M	E
	Master Role	E	E	E	M

	GAP Roles When Operating Over an LE Physical Transport			
	Broadcaster	Observer	Peripheral	Central
<i>Advertising event types:</i>				
• Connectable undirected event	E	E	M	E
• Connectable directed event	E	E	O	E
• Non-connectable undirected event	M	E	O	E
• Scannable undirected event	O	E	O	E
<i>Scanning type:</i>				
• Passive scanning	E	M	E	O
• Active scanning	E	O	E	C1
<i>Link Layer control procedures:</i>				
• Connection Update procedure	E	E	M	M
• Channel Map Update procedure	E	E	M	M
• Encryption procedure	E	E	O	O
• Master-initiated Feature Exchange procedure	E	E	M	M
• Slave-initiated Feature Exchange procedure	E	E	C2	C2
• Connection Parameters Request procedure	E	E	O	O
• Version Exchange procedure	E	E	M	M
• Termination procedure	E	E	M	M
C1: If passive scanning is supported then active scanning is optional, otherwise active scanning is mandatory. C2: Mandatory if Connection Parameters Request procedure is supported, otherwise optional				

Table 2.1: Physical Layer and Link Layer functionality for GAP roles when operating over an LE physical transport

## 2.3 USER REQUIREMENTS AND SCENARIOS

The Bluetooth user should, where expected, be able to connect a Bluetooth device to any other Bluetooth device. Even if the two connected devices don't share any common application, it should be possible for the user to find this out using basic Bluetooth capabilities. When the two devices do share the same application but are from different manufacturers, the ability to connect them should not be blocked just because manufacturers choose to call basic Bluetooth capabilities by different names on the user interface level or implement basic procedures to be executed in different orders.

## 2.4 PROFILE FUNDAMENTALS

This profile states the requirements on names, values and coding schemes used for names of parameters and procedures experienced on the user interface level.

This profile defines modes of operation that are not service- or profile-specific, but that are generic and can be used by profiles referring to this profile, and by devices implementing multiple profiles.

This profile defines the general procedures that can be used for discovering identities, names and basic capabilities of other Bluetooth devices that are in a mode where they can be discovered. Only procedures where no channel or connection establishment is used are specified.

This profile defines the general procedure for how to create bonds (i.e., dedicated exchange of link keys) between Bluetooth devices.

This profile describes the general procedures that can be used for establishing connections to other Bluetooth devices that are in a mode that allows them to accept connections and service requests.

## 2.5 CONFORMANCE

Bluetooth devices shall conform to this profile to ensure basic interoperability.

Bluetooth devices that conform to another Bluetooth profile may use adaptations of the generic procedures as specified by that other profile. They shall, however, be compatible with devices compliant to this profile at least on the level of the supported generic procedures.

All capabilities indicated as mandatory for this profile shall be supported in the specified manner (process-mandatory). This also applies for all optional and conditional capabilities for which support is indicated. All mandatory capabilities, and optional and conditional capabilities for which support is indicated, are subject to verification as part of the Bluetooth certification program.

## 3 USER INTERFACE ASPECTS

### 3.1 THE USER INTERFACE LEVEL

In the context of this specification, the user interface level refers to places (such as displays, dialog boxes, manuals, packaging, advertising, etc.) where users of Bluetooth devices encounter names, values and numerical representation of Bluetooth terminology and parameters.

This profile specifies the generic terms that should be used on the user interface level.

### 3.2 REPRESENTATION OF BLUETOOTH PARAMETERS

#### 3.2.1 Bluetooth Device Address (BD\_ADDR)

##### 3.2.1.1 Definition

A BD\_ADDR is the address used by a Bluetooth device as defined in [Section 15.1](#). It is received from a remote device during the device discovery procedure.

##### 3.2.1.2 Term on user interface level

When the Bluetooth address is referred to on UI level, the term 'Bluetooth Device Address' should be used.

##### 3.2.1.3 Representation

On BB level the BD\_ADDR is represented as 48 bits (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part B Section 1.2](#)). On the Link Layer the public and random device address are represented as 48-bit addresses.

On the UI level the Bluetooth address shall be represented as 12 hexadecimal characters, possibly divided into sub-parts separated by ':'.  
(E.g., '000C3E3A4B69' or '00:0C:3E:3A:4B:69'.) At UI level, any number shall have the MSB -> LSB (from left to right) 'natural' ordering (e.g., the number '16' shall be shown as '0x10').

### 3.2.2 Bluetooth Device Name (the user-friendly name)

#### 3.2.2.1 Definition

The Bluetooth device name is the user-friendly name that a Bluetooth device exposes to remote devices. For a device supporting the BR/EDR device type, the name is a character string returned in the LMP\_name\_res in response to an LMP\_name\_req. For a device supporting the LE-only device type, the name is a character string held in the Device Name characteristic as defined in [Section 12.1](#).

##### 3.2.2.1.1 Bluetooth Device Name in a Device with BR/EDR/LE Device Type

A BR/EDR/LE device type shall have a single Bluetooth device name which shall be identical irrespective of the physical channel used to perform the name discovery procedure.

For the BR/EDR physical channel the name is received in the LMP\_name\_res. For the LE physical channel the name can be read from the Device Name characteristic as defined in [Section 12.1](#).

Note: The Device Name Characteristic of the local device can be read by a remote device using ATT over BR/EDR if the local device supports ATT over BR/EDR.

#### 3.2.2.2 Term on user interface level

When the Bluetooth device name is referred to on UI level, the term ‘Bluetooth Device Name’ should be used.

#### 3.2.2.3 Representation

The Bluetooth device name can be up to 248 bytes (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part C Section 4.3.5](#)). It shall be encoded according to UTF-8 (i.e., name entered on the UI level may be down to 82 characters outside the Unicode range 0x00-0x7F are used).

A device cannot expect that a general remote device is able to handle more than the first 40 characters of the Bluetooth device name. If a remote device has limited display capabilities, it may use only the first 20 characters.

### 3.2.3 Bluetooth Passkey (Bluetooth PIN)

#### 3.2.3.1 Definition

The Bluetooth passkey may be used to authenticate two Bluetooth devices with each other during the creation of a mutual link key via the pairing procedure. The passkey may be used in the pairing procedures to generate the initial link key.

The PIN may be entered on the UI level but may also be stored in the device; e.g., in the case of a device without sufficient MMI for entering and displaying digits.

### 3.2.3.2 Terms at user interface level

When the Bluetooth PIN is referred to on UI level, the term ‘Bluetooth Passkey’ should be used.

### 3.2.3.3 Representation

There are a number of different representations of the Bluetooth passkey. At a high level there are two distinct representations: one used with the Secure Simple Pairing and Security Manager, and another used with legacy pairing (where it is generally referred to as the Bluetooth PIN).

For Secure Simple Pairing and Security Manager, the Bluetooth passkey is a 6-digit numerical value. It is represented as integer value in the range 0x00000000 – 0x000F423F (000000 to 999999). The numeric value may be used as the input to the Authentication Stage 1 for Secure Simple Pairing Passkey Entry (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part H Section 7.2.3](#)), or as the TK value in the Security Manager for the process defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.3.5](#).

For legacy pairing (see [Section 18.2 on page 406](#)), the Bluetooth PIN has different representations on different levels. PINBB is used on baseband level, and PINUI is used on user interface level. PINBB is the PIN used by [1] for calculating the initialization key during the Pairing Procedure.

PINUI is the character representation of the PIN that is entered on the UI level. The transformation from PINUI to PINBB shall be according to UTF-8. PINBB may be 128 bits (16 bytes).

PIN codes may be up to 16 characters. In order to take advantage of the full level of security all PINs should be 16 characters long. Variable PINs should be composed of alphanumeric characters chosen from within the Unicode range 0x00-0x7F. If the PIN contains any decimal digits these shall be encoded using the Unicode Basic Latin characters (e.g., code points 0x30 to 0x39) (Note 1).

For compatibility with devices with numeric keypads, fixed PINs shall be composed of only decimal digits, and variable PINs should be composed of only decimal digits.

If a device supports entry of characters outside the Unicode range 0x00-0x7F, other Unicode code points may be used (Note 2), except the Halfwidth and Fullwidth Forms from within the Unicode range FF00 - FFEF shall not be used (Note 3).

**Examples:**

User-entered code	Corresponding PIN <sub>BB</sub> [0..length-1] (value as a sequence of octets in hexadecimal notation)
'0196554200906493'	length = 16, value = 0x30 0x31 0x39 0x36 0x35 0x35 0x34 0x32 0x30 0x30 0x39 0x30 0x36 0x34 0x39 0x33
'Børnelitteratur'	length = 16, value = 0x42 0xC3 0xB8 0x72 0x6e 0x65 0x6c 0x69 0x74 0x74 0x65 0x72 0x61 0x74 0x75 0x72

Note 1: This is to prevent interoperability problems since there are decimal digits at other code points (e.g., the Fullwidth digits at code points 0xff10 to 0xff19).

Note 2: Unicode characters outside the Basic Latin range (0x00 - 0x7F) encode to multiple bytes; therefore, when characters outside the Basic Latin range are used the maximum number of characters in the PINUI will be less than 16. The second example illustrates a case where a 16 character string encodes to 15 bytes because the character ø is outside the Basic Latin range and encodes to two bytes (0xC3 0xB8).

Note 3: This is to prevent interoperability problems since the Halfwidth and Fullwidth forms contain alternative variants of ASCII, Katakana, Hangul, punctuation and symbols. All of the characters in the Halfwidth and Fullwidth forms have other more commonly used Unicode code points.

### 3.2.4 Class of Device

#### 3.2.4.1 Definition

Class of device is a parameter received during the device discovery procedure on the BR/EDR physical transport, indicating the type of device. The Class of Device parameter is only used on BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE devices using the BR/EDR physical transport.

#### 3.2.4.2 Term on user interface level

The information within the Class of Device parameter should be referred to as 'Bluetooth Device Class' (i.e., the major and minor device class fields) and 'Bluetooth Service Type' (i.e., the service class field). The terms for the defined Bluetooth Device Types and Bluetooth Service Types are defined in [7].

When using a mix of information found in the Bluetooth Device Class and the Bluetooth Service Type, the term 'Bluetooth Device Type' should be used.

#### 3.2.4.3 Representation

The Class of device is a bit field and is defined in [7]. The UI-level representation of the information in the Class of Device is implementation specific.

### 3.2.4.4 Usage

Some devices provide more than one service and a given service may be provided by different device types. Therefore, the device type does not have a one-to-one relationship with services supported. The major and minor device class field should not be used to determine whether a device supports any specific service(s). It may be used as an indication of devices that are most likely to support desired services before service discovery requests are made, and it may be used to guide the user when selecting among several devices that support the same service.

## **3.2.5 Appearance Characteristic**

### 3.2.5.1 Definition

The Appearance characteristic contains a UUID that can be mapped to an icon or string that describes the physical representation of the device during the device discovery procedure (See [Section 12.2](#)). It is a characteristic of the GAP service located on the device's GATT server.

### 3.2.5.2 Usage at user interface level

The Appearance characteristic UUID should be mapped to an icon or string or something similar that conveys to the user a visual description of the device. This allows the user to determine which device is being discovered purely by visual appearance. If a string is displayed, this string should be translated into the language selected by the user for the device.

### 3.2.5.3 Representation

The Appearance characteristic is a UUID assigned by the Bluetooth SIG and defined in [\[Core Specification Supplement\], Part A, Section 1.12](#). The UI-level representation of the Appearance characteristic value is implementation specific.

## **3.3 PAIRING**

Pairing over a BR/EDR physical link is defined on LMP level (LMP pairing, see [18.2](#)). Pairing over an LE physical link is defined by the Security Manager specification ([\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.3](#)). Either the user initiates the bonding procedure and enters the passkey with the explicit purpose of creating a bond (and maybe also a secure relationship) between two Bluetooth devices, or the user is requested to enter the passkey during the establishment procedure since the devices did not share a common link key beforehand. In the first case, the user is said to perform “bonding (with entering of passkey)” and in the second case the user is said to “authenticate using the passkey.”

## 4 MODES – BR/EDR PHYSICAL TRANSPORT

Procedure	Ref.	Support
Discoverability modes:	<a href="#">4.1</a>	
Non-discoverable mode		C1
Discoverable mode		O
Limited discoverable mode		C3
General discoverable mode		C4
Connectability modes:	<a href="#">4.2</a>	
Non-connectable mode		O
Connectable mode		M
Bondable modes:	<a href="#">4.3</a>	
Non-bondable mode		O
Bondable mode		C2
Synchronizability modes:	<a href="#">4.4</a>	
Non-synchronizable mode		M
Synchronizable mode		O
C1: If limited discoverable mode is supported, non-discoverable mode is mandatory, otherwise optional.		
C2: If the bonding procedure is supported, support for bondable mode is mandatory, otherwise optional.		
C3: If Discoverable mode is supported, support for Limited Discoverable mode is mandatory, otherwise optional.		
C4: If Discoverable mode is supported, support for General Discoverable mode is mandatory, otherwise optional		

Table 4.1: Conformance requirements related to modes defined in this section

### 4.1 DISCOVERABILITY MODES

With respect to inquiry, a Bluetooth device shall be either in non-discoverable mode or in a discoverable mode. (The device shall be in one, and only one, discoverability mode at a time.) The two discoverable modes defined here are called limited discoverable mode and general discoverable mode. Inquiry is defined in [\[Vol. 2\], Part B Section 8.4](#).

When a Bluetooth device is in non-discoverable mode it does not respond to inquiry.



A Bluetooth device is said to be made discoverable, or set into a discoverable mode, when it is in limited discoverable mode or in general discoverable mode. Even when a Bluetooth device is made discoverable, it may be unable to respond to inquiry due to other baseband activity (for example, reserved synchronous slots should have priority over response packets, so that synchronous links may prevent a response from being returned). A Bluetooth device that does not respond to inquiry is called a silent device.

After being made discoverable, the Bluetooth device shall be discoverable for at least  $T_{GAP}(103)$ .

The speed of discovery is dependent on the configuration of the inquiry scan interval and inquiry scan type of the Bluetooth device. The Host is able to configure these parameters based on trade-offs between power consumption, bandwidth and the desired speed of discovery.

#### **4.1.1 Non-discoverable Mode**

##### 4.1.1.1 Definition

When a Bluetooth device is in non-discoverable mode, it shall never enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state.

##### 4.1.1.2 Term on UI-level

Bluetooth device is ‘non-discoverable’ or in ‘non-discoverable mode’.

#### **4.1.2 Limited Discoverable Mode**

##### 4.1.2.1 Definition

The limited discoverable mode should be used by devices that need to be discoverable only for a limited period of time, during temporary conditions, or for a specific event. The purpose is to respond to a device that makes a limited inquiry (inquiry using the LIAC).

A Bluetooth device should not be in limited discoverable mode for more than  $T_{GAP}(104)$ . The scanning for the limited inquiry access code can be done either in parallel or in sequence with the scanning of the general inquiry access code. When in limited discoverable mode, one of the following options shall be used.

- *Parallel scanning*

When a Bluetooth device is in limited discoverable mode and when discovery speed is more important than power consumption or bandwidth, it is recommended that the Bluetooth device enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least every  $T_{GAP}(105)$  and that Interlaced Inquiry scan is used.

If, however, power consumption or bandwidth is important, but not critical, it is recommended that the Bluetooth device enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least every  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and Interlaced Inquiry scan is used.

When power consumption or bandwidth is critical it is recommended that the Bluetooth device enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least every  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and Non-interlaced Inquiry scan is used.

In all cases the Bluetooth device shall enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least once in  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and scan for the GIAC and the LIAC for at least  $T_{GAP}(101)$ .

When either a SCO or eSCO link is in operation, it is recommended to use interlaced scan to significantly decrease the discoverability time.

- *Sequential scanning*

When a Bluetooth device is in limited discoverable mode, it shall enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least once in  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and scan for the GIAC for at least  $T_{GAP}(101)$  and enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state more often than once in  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and scan for the LIAC for at least  $T_{GAP}(101)$ .

If an inquiry message is received when in limited discoverable mode, the entry into the INQUIRY\_RESPONSE state takes precedence over the next entries into INQUIRY\_SCAN state until the inquiry response is completed.

#### 4.1.2.2 Conditions

When a device is in limited discoverable mode it shall set bit no 13 in the Major Service Class part of the Class of Device/Service field [7].

#### 4.1.2.3 Term on UI-level

Bluetooth device is ‘discoverable’ or in ‘discoverable mode’.

### 4.1.3 General Discoverable Mode

#### 4.1.3.1 Definition

The general discoverable mode shall be used by devices that need to be discoverable continuously or for no specific condition. The purpose is to respond to a device that makes a general inquiry (inquiry using the GIAC).

#### 4.1.3.2 Conditions

When a Bluetooth device is in general discoverable mode and when discovery speed is more important than power consumption or bandwidth, it is recommended that the Bluetooth device enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least every  $T_{GAP}(105)$  and that Interlaced Inquiry scan is used.

If, however, power consumption or bandwidth is important, but not critical, it is recommended that the Bluetooth device enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least every  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and Interlaced Inquiry scan is used.

When power consumption or bandwidth is critical it is recommended that the Bluetooth device enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least every  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and Non-interlaced Inquiry scan is used.

In all cases the Bluetooth device shall enter the INQUIRY\_SCAN state at least once in  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and scan for the GIAC for at least  $T_{GAP}(101)$ .

When either a SCO or eSCO link is in operation, it is recommended to use interlaced scan to significantly decrease the discoverability time.

A device in general discoverable mode shall not respond to a LIAC inquiry.

#### 4.1.3.3 Term on UI-level

Bluetooth device is ‘discoverable’ or in ‘discoverable mode’.

## 4.2 CONNECTABILITY MODES

With respect to paging, a Bluetooth device shall be either in non-connectable mode or connectable mode. Paging is defined in [\[Vol. 2\], Part B Section 8.3](#).

When a Bluetooth device is in non-connectable mode it does not respond to paging. When a Bluetooth device is in connectable mode it responds to paging.

The speed of connections is dependent on the configuration of the page scan interval and page scan type of the Bluetooth device. The Host is able to configure these parameters based on trade-offs between power consumption, bandwidth and the desired speed of connection.

### 4.2.1 Non-connectable Mode

#### 4.2.1.1 Definition

When a Bluetooth device is in non-connectable mode it shall never enter the PAGE\_SCAN state.

#### 4.2.1.2 Term on UI-level

Bluetooth device is ‘non-connectable’ or in ‘non-connectable mode’.

### 4.2.2 Connectable Mode

#### 4.2.2.1 Definition

When a Bluetooth device is in connectable mode it shall periodically enter the PAGE\_SCAN state. The device makes page scan using the Bluetooth device address, BD\_ADDR. Connection speed is a trade-off between power consumption / available bandwidth and speed. The Bluetooth Host is able to make these trade-offs using the Page Scan interval, Page Scan window, and Interlaced Scan parameters.

R0 page scanning should be used when connection speeds are critically important and when the paging device has a very good estimate of the Bluetooth clock. Under these conditions it is possible for paging to complete within two times the page scan window. Because the page scan interval is equal to the page scan window it is not possible for any other traffic to go over the Bluetooth link when using R0 page scanning. In R0 page scanning it is not possible to use interlaced scan. R0 page scanning is the highest power consumption mode of operation.

When connection times are critical but the other device either does not have an estimate of the Bluetooth clock or when the estimate is possibly out of date, it is better to use R1 page scanning with a very short page scan interval,  $T_{GAP}(106)$ , and Interlaced scan. This configuration is also useful to achieve nearly the same connection speeds as R0 page scanning but using less power

and leaving bandwidth available for other connections. Under these circumstances it is possible for paging to complete within  $T_{GAP}(106)$ . In this case the Bluetooth device shall page scan for at least  $T_{GAP}(101)$ .

When connection times are important but not critical enough to sacrifice significant bandwidth and/or power consumption it is recommended to use either  $T_{GAP}(107)$  or  $T_{GAP}(108)$  for the scanning interval. Using Interlaced scan will reduce the connection time by half but may use twice the power consumption. Under these circumstances it is possible for paging to complete within one or two times the page scanning interval depending on whether Interlaced Scan is used. In this case the Bluetooth device shall page scan for at least  $T_{GAP}(101)$ .

In all cases the Bluetooth device shall enter the PAGE\_SCAN state at least once in  $T_{GAP}(102)$  and scan for at least  $T_{GAP}(101)$ .

The page scan interval, page scan window size, and scan type for the six scenarios are described in [Table 4.2](#):

Scenario	Page Scan Interval	Page Scan Window	Scan Type
R0 (1.28s)	$T_{GAP}(107)$	$T_{GAP}(107)$	Normal scan
Fast R1 (100ms)	$T_{GAP}(106)$	$T_{GAP}(101)$	Interlaced scan
Medium R1 (1.28s)	$T_{GAP}(107)$	$T_{GAP}(101)$	Interlaced scan
Slow R1 (1.28s)	$T_{GAP}(107)$	$T_{GAP}(101)$	Normal scan
Fast R2 (2.56s)	$T_{GAP}(108)$	$T_{GAP}(101)$	Interlaced scan
Slow R2 (2.56s)	$T_{GAP}(108)$	$T_{GAP}(101)$	Normal scan

*Table 4.2: Page scan parameters for connection speed scenarios*

When either a SCO or eSCO link is in operation, it is recommended to use interlaced scan to significantly decrease the connection time.

#### 4.2.2.2 Term on UI-level

Bluetooth device is ‘connectable’ or in ‘connectable mode’.

## 4.3 BONDABLE MODES

With respect to bonding, a Bluetooth device shall be either in non-bondable mode or in bondable mode. In bondable mode the Bluetooth device accepts bonding initiated by the remote device, and in non-bondable mode it does not.

### 4.3.1 Non-bondable Mode

#### 4.3.1.1 Definition

When a Bluetooth device is in non-bondable mode it shall not accept a pairing request that results in bonding. Devices in non-bondable mode may accept connections that do not request or require bonding.

A device in non-bondable mode shall respond to a received LMP\_in\_rand with LMP\_not\_accepted with the reason *pairing not allowed*. An HCI-compliant host stack shall respond to an HCI\_PIN\_Code\_Request event with the HCI\_PIN\_Code\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command.

When both devices support Secure Simple Pairing and are in non-bondable mode, the local host shall respond to an IO capability request with the Authentication\_Requirements parameter requesting dedicated bonding or general bonding with a negative response. An HCI-compliant host stack shall respond to an HCI\_IO\_Capabilities\_Request event with an HCI\_IO\_Capabilities\_Request\_Negative\_Reply command.

#### 4.3.1.2 Term on UI-level

Bluetooth device is ‘non-bondable’ or in ‘non-bondable mode’ or “does not accept bonding”.

### 4.3.2 Bondable Mode

#### 4.3.2.1 Definition

When a Bluetooth device is in bondable mode, and Secure Simple Pairing is not supported by either the local or remote device, the local device shall respond to a received LMP\_in\_rand with LMP\_accepted (or with LMP\_in\_rand if it has a fixed PIN). An HCI-compliant host stack shall respond to an HCI\_PIN\_Code\_Request event with the HCI\_PIN\_Code\_Request\_Reply command.

When both devices support Secure Simple Pairing, the local host shall respond to a user confirmation request with a positive response. An HCI-compliant host stack shall respond to an HCI\_User\_Confirmation\_Request event with an HCI\_User\_Confirmation\_Request\_Reply command or an HCI\_User\_Passkey\_Request event with an HCI\_User\_Passkey\_Request\_Reply command.

#### 4.3.2.2 Term on UI-level

Bluetooth device is ‘bondable’ or in ‘bondable mode’ or “accepts bonding”.

## 4.4 SYNCHRONIZABILITY MODES

A Bluetooth device shall be either in non-synchronizable mode or synchronizable mode. The synchronization train procedure is defined in [\[Vol. 2, Part B\] Section 2.7.2 on page 99](#).

When a Bluetooth device is in synchronizable mode, it transmits timing and frequency information for its active Connectionless Slave Broadcast packets. When a Bluetooth device is non-synchronizable, timing and frequency information is not transmitted.

The host is able to configure the Synchronization Train interval based on trade-offs between bandwidth, potential interference to other devices, power consumption, and the desired time for a slave to receive a synchronization train packet.

### 4.4.1 Non-synchronizable Mode

#### 4.4.1.1 Definition

When a Bluetooth device is in non-synchronizable mode it shall never enter the **synchronization train** substate.

#### 4.4.1.2 Term on UI-level

Bluetooth device is ‘non-synchronizable’ or in ‘non-synchronizable mode’.

### 4.4.2 Synchronizable Mode

#### 4.4.2.1 Definition

When a Bluetooth device is in synchronizable mode, it shall enter the **synchronization train** substate using a synchronization train interval of  $T_{GAP}(\text{Sync\_Train\_Interval})$ .

After being made synchronizable, the Bluetooth device shall be synchronizable for at least  $T_{GAP}(\text{Sync\_Train\_Duration})$ .

## 5 SECURITY ASPECTS – BR/EDR PHYSICAL TRANSPORT

	Procedure	Ref.	Support
1	Authentication	5.1	M
2	Security modes	5.2	
	Security mode 1		E
	Security mode 2		O.1
	Security mode 3		E
	Security mode 4		M

O.1: Security Mode 2 may only be used for backwards compatibility when the remote device does not support Secure Simple Pairing.

*Table 5.1: Conformance requirements related to the generic authentication procedure and the security modes defined in this section*

### 5.1 AUTHENTICATION

#### 5.1.1 Purpose

The generic authentication procedure describes how the LMP-authentication and LMP-pairing procedures are used when authentication is initiated by one Bluetooth device towards another, depending on if a link key exists or not and if pairing is allowed or not.

#### 5.1.2 Term on UI level

‘Bluetooth authentication’.

### 5.1.3 Procedure

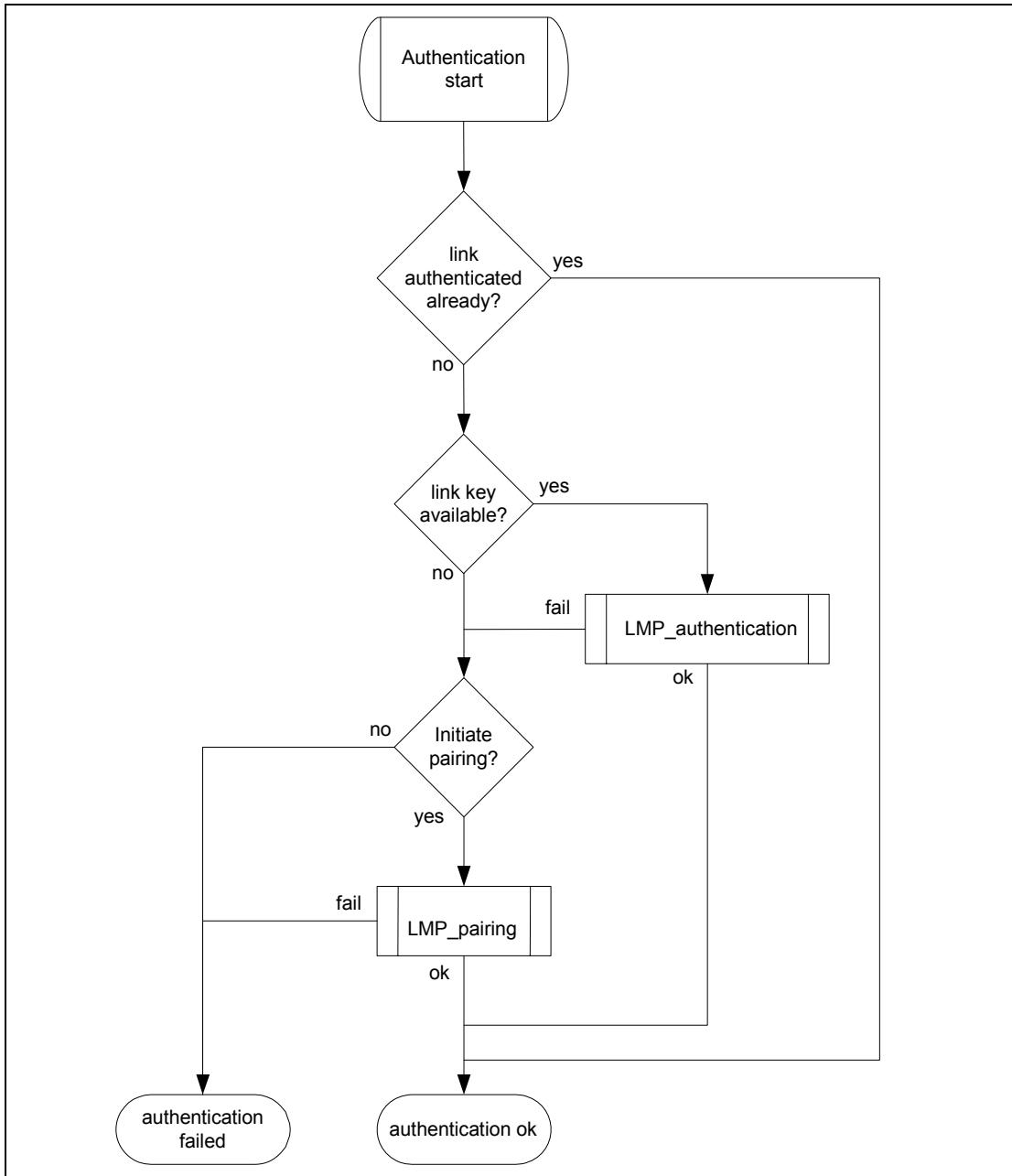


Figure 5.1: Definition of the generic authentication procedure

### 5.1.4 Conditions

The local device shall initiate authentication after link establishment. The remote device may initiate security during or after link establishment.

## 5.2 SECURITY MODES

The following flow chart provides an overview of the channel establishment procedures.

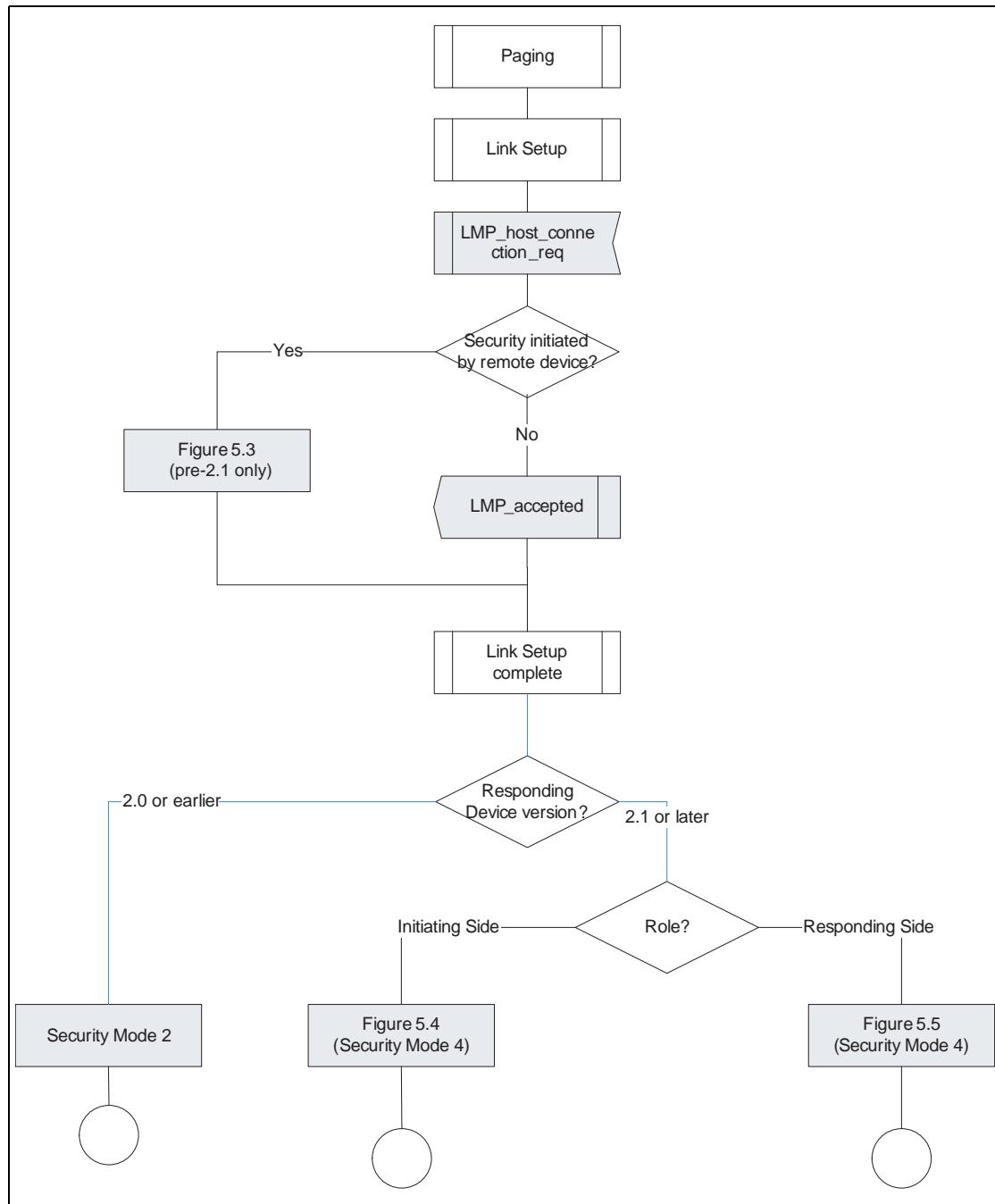


Figure 5.2: Channel establishment with security

A device may support two security modes simultaneously: security mode 2 for backwards compatibility with remote devices that do not support Secure Simple Pairing and security mode 4 for devices that support Secure Simple Pairing.

## 5.2.1 Legacy Security Modes

Legacy security modes apply to those devices with a Controller or a Host that does not support SSP.

### 5.2.1.1 Security mode 1 (non-secure)

When a remote Bluetooth device is in security mode 1 it will never initiate any security procedure (i.e., it will never send LMP\_au\_rand, LMP\_in\_rand or LMP\_encryption\_mode\_req).

### 5.2.1.2 Security mode 2 (service level enforced security)

When a remote Bluetooth device is in security mode 2 it will not initiate any security procedure before a channel establishment request (L2CAP\_ConnectReq) has been received or a channel establishment procedure has been initiated by itself. (The behavior of a device in security mode 2 is further described in [6].) Whether a security procedure is initiated or not depends on the security requirements of the requested channel or service.

A Bluetooth device in security mode 2 should classify the security requirements of its services using at least the following attributes:

- Authorization required
- Authentication required
- Encryption required

*Note: Security mode 1 can be considered (at least from a remote device point of view) as a special case of security mode 2 where no service has registered any security requirements.*

### 5.2.1.3 Security mode 3 (link level enforced security)

When a remote Bluetooth device is in security mode 3 it will initiate security procedures before it sends LMP\_setup\_complete.

A Bluetooth device in security mode 3 may reject the host connection request (respond with LMP\_not\_accepted to the LMP\_host\_connection\_req) based on settings in the host (e.g., only communication with pre-paired devices allowed).

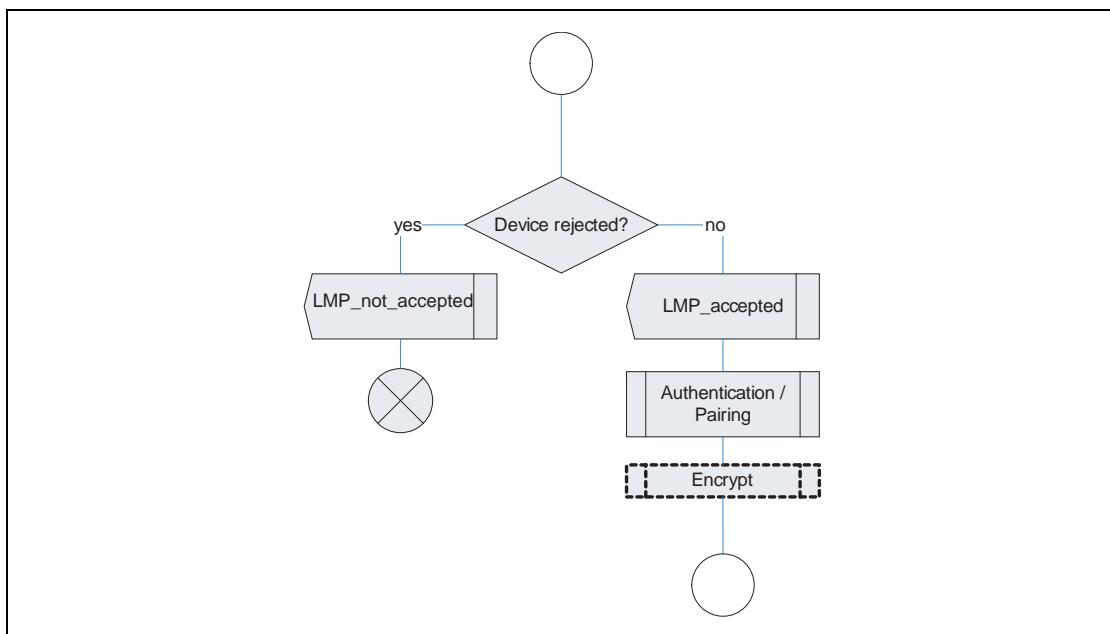


Figure 5.3: Security mode 3 with a legacy remote device

### 5.2.2 Security Mode 4 (service level enforced security)

A Bluetooth device in security mode 4 shall classify the security requirements of its services using at least the following attributes (in order of decreasing security):

- Authenticated link key required
- Unauthenticated link key required
- Security optional – SDP only. Limited to specific services (see [Section 5.2.2.8](#)).

An authenticated link key is a link key where either the numeric comparison, out-of-band, or paskey entry simple pairing association models were used. An authenticated link key has protection against man-in-the-middle (MITM) attacks. To ensure that an authenticated link key is created during the Simple Pairing procedure, the Authentication\_Requirements parameter should be set to one of the MITM Protection Required options. An *unauthenticated link key* is a link key where the just works Secure Simple Pairing association model was used. An unauthenticated link key does not have protection against MITM attacks.

When both devices support Secure Simple Pairing, GAP shall require at least an unauthenticated link key and enabling encryption for all connections except those allowed to have security level 0 (see [Section 5.2.2.8](#)). A profile or protocol may define services that require more security (e.g., an authenticated link key) or no security (although unencrypted connections are only allowed when connecting to a service allowed to have security level 0). To allow an unauthenticated link key to be created during the Simple Pairing procedure, the Authen-

tication\_Requirements parameter may be set to one of the MITM Protection Not Required options.

When the device is in Bondable Mode, it shall enable Secure Simple Pairing mode prior to entering Connectable Mode or establishing a link.

A Bluetooth device in security mode 4 shall respond to authentication requests during link establishment when the remote device is in security mode 3 for backwards compatibility reasons.

A Bluetooth device in security mode 4 enforces its security requirements before it attempts to access services offered by a remote device and before it grants access to services it offers to remote devices. Service access may occur via L2CAP channels or via channels established by protocols above L2CAP such as RFCOMM.

For services transmitting unicast data over the connectionless L2CAP channel, the transmitting device shall enforce its security requirements prior to sending data. There is no mechanism for a device receiving data via the L2CAP connectionless channel to prevent unencrypted data from being received. Hence, [Section 5.2.2.1](#) addresses unicast connectionless data transmission together with devices initiating connection-oriented channels while [Section 5.2.2.2](#) covers only devices responding to requests for connection-oriented channel establishment but does not cover unicast connectionless data reception.

The BR/EDR physical transport may be in a Secure Connections Only mode. When in Secure Connections Only mode, all services (except those allowed to have Security Mode 4, Level 0) available on the BR/EDR physical transport require Security Mode 4, Level 4. The device shall reject both new outgoing and incoming service level connections when the physical transport does not support Secure Connections and the service requires Security Mode 4, Level 4.

A device operating with a physical transport operating in Secure Connections Only mode may disconnect the ACL connection using error code 0x05 (Authentication Failure) when the physical transport that does not support Secure Connections, tries to access a service that requires Security Mode 4, Level 4.

Note: a device may operate several physical transports simultaneously - in this case not all physical transports are required to enable Security Connections Only Mode simultaneously.

#### 5.2.2.1 Security for Access to Remote Service (Initiating Side)

When the responding device does not support Secure Simple Pairing, it may disconnect the link while the initiating device is requesting the PIN to be entered by the user. This may occur due to the lack of an L2CAP channel being present for longer than an implementation-specific amount of time (e.g., a few seconds). When this occurs, the initiating device shall allow the user to complete entering the PIN and shall then re-page the remote device and restart the pairing procedure (see [\[Vol. 2, Part C\] Section 4.2.2 on page 278](#)) using the PIN entered.

#### 5.2.2.1.1 Pairing Required for Access to Remote Service

When a Bluetooth device in security mode 4 initiates access to a remote service via a connection-oriented L2CAP channel and a sufficient link-key is not available, the local device shall perform pairing procedures and enable encryption before sending a channel establishment request (L2CAP\_ConnectReq or a higher-layer channel establishment request such as that of RFCOMM).

When a Bluetooth device in security mode 4 transmits data to a remote service via the unicast connectionless L2CAP channel and a sufficient link-key is not available, the local device shall perform pairing procedures and enable encryption before transmitting unicast data on the connectionless L2CAP channel.

See [Section 5.2.2.8 on page 324](#) for details on determining whether or not a link key is sufficient.

If pairing does not succeed, the local device shall not send a channel establishment request. The local device may re-try pairing up to three (3) times. If pairing fails three consecutive times, the local device shall disconnect the ACL link with error code 0x05 - Authentication Failure.

If the link key generated is not at least as good as the expected or required type, the local device shall fail the establishment and may disconnect the ACL link with error code 0x05 - Authentication Failure.

#### 5.2.2.1.2 Authentication Required for Access to Remote Service

When a Bluetooth device in security mode 4 initiates access to a remote service via a connection-oriented L2CAP channel and a sufficient link key is available for the remote device, it shall authenticate the remote device and enable encryption before sending a channel establishment request (L2CAP\_ConnectReq or higher a layer-channel establishment request such as that of RFCOMM).

When a Bluetooth device in security mode 4 transmits unicast data to a remote service via the connectionless L2CAP channel and security is required for the application and a sufficient link-key is available then the local device shall authenticate the remote device and enable encryption before transmitting unicast data on the L2CAP connectionless channel.

See [Section 5.2.2.8 on page 324](#) for details on determining whether or not a link key is sufficient.

If authentication is required by the service but does not succeed, or if a sufficient link-key is not available, then the local device shall not enable encryption and shall not send a channel establishment request and shall not send any unicast data via the L2CAP connectionless channel for that application. The host may then notify the user and offer to perform pairing.

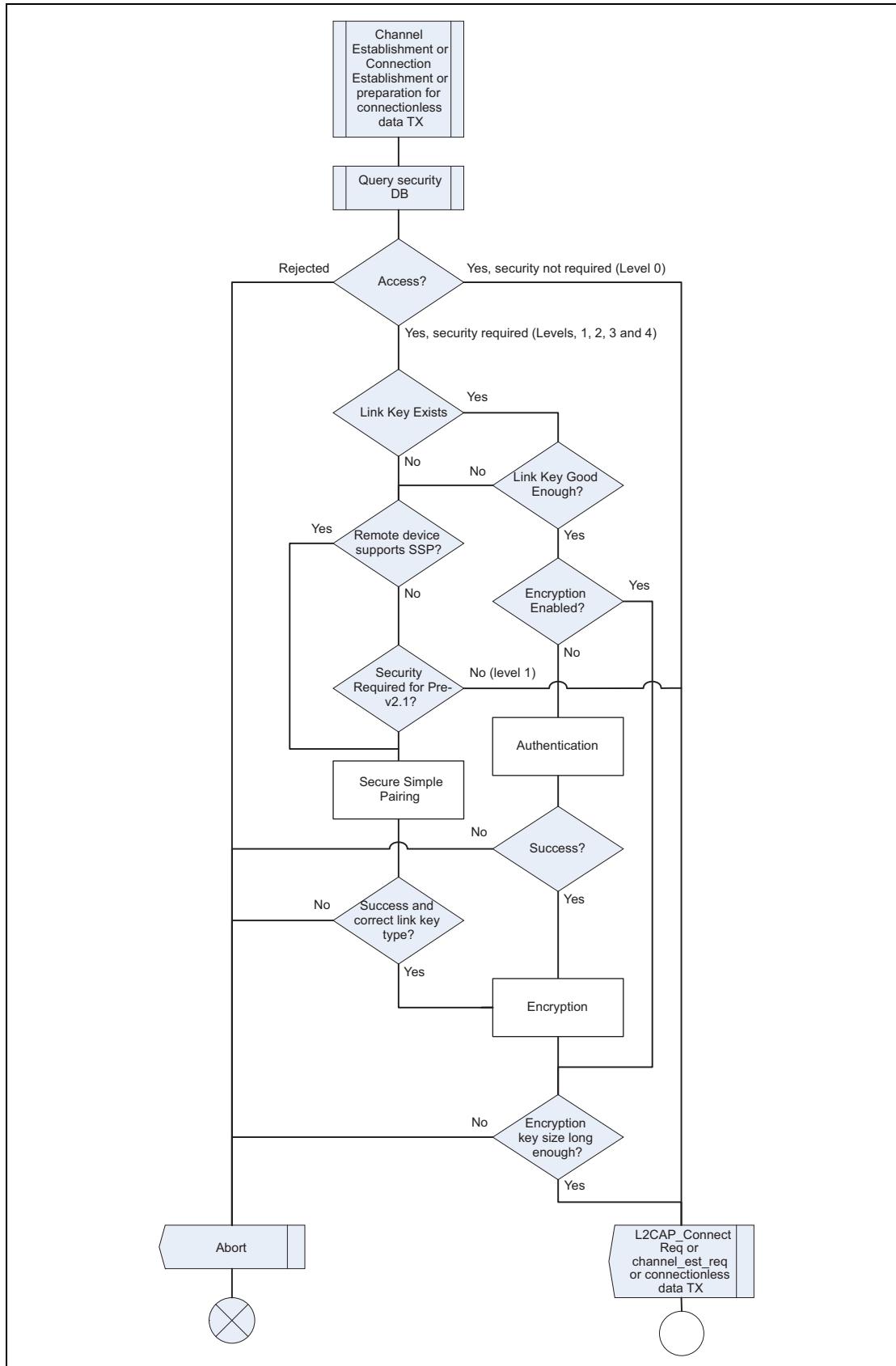


Figure 5.4: Channel establishment using security mode 4 for initiating side

### 5.2.2.2 Security for Access to Local Service by Remote Device (Responding Side)

When a remote device attempts to access a service offered by a Bluetooth device that is in security mode 4 and a sufficient link key exists and authentication has not been performed the local device shall authenticate the remote device and enable encryption after the channel establishment request is received but before a channel establishment confirmation (L2CAP\_ConnectRsp with result code of 0x0000 or a higher-level channel establishment confirmation such as that of RFCOMM) is sent.

When L2CAP is the channel establishment protocol being used for the requested service, an L2CAP\_ConnectRsp signaling packet shall be sent by the responding device containing the result code 0x0001 (connection pending) following receipt of an L2CAP\_ConnectReq and prior to initiating security procedures which can result in prompting the local user for input (e.g., pairing using a PIN or Secure Simple Pairing using either the Passkey entry or Numerical Comparison association models). This will stop the L2CAP RTX timer on the remote device (which may be as short as 1 second) and will invoke the ERTX timer on the remote device, which is a minimum duration of 60 seconds.

See [\[Vol. 3, Part A\] Section 6.1.7 on page 121](#), for additional information on L2CAP RTX and ERTX timers. See also [\[Vol. 3, Part A\] Section 4.3 on page 64](#) for additional information on the L2CAP\_ConnectRsp signalling packet, and the defined result codes.

Higher layer channel establishment protocols should be designed to restrict timeouts to be 30 seconds or longer to allow for user input, or provide mechanisms to dynamically extend timeouts when user input may be required.

If authentication or pairing fails when a remote device is attempting to access a local service, the local device shall send a negative response to the channel establishment request (L2CAP\_ConnectReq or channel\_est\_req) indicating a security issue if possible. If the channel establishment protocol is L2CAP, then the result code 0x0003 (connection refused - security block) shall be sent in the L2CAP\_ConnectRsp signal.

If the remote device has indicated support for Secure Simple Pairing, a channel establishment request is received for a service other than SDP, and encryption has not yet been enabled, then the local device shall disconnect the ACL link with error code 0x05 - Authentication Failure.

#### 5.2.2.2.1 Pairing Required for Access to Local Service by Remote Device

When a remote device attempts to access a service offered by a Bluetooth device that is in security mode 4 and pairing is required due to the link key being absent or insufficient, the local device shall perform pairing procedures and enable encryption after the channel establishment request is received and before a channel establishment confirmation (L2CAP\_ConnectRsp with result code of 0x0000 or a higher-level channel establishment response such as that of RFCOMM) is sent.

See [Section 5.2.2.6](#) for details on determining whether or not a link key is sufficient.

If pairing does not succeed, then the local device shall not send a channel establishment confirmation. The local device may retry pairing up to three (3) times. If pairing fails three consecutive times, then the local device shall disconnect the ACL link with error code 0x05 - Authentication Failure.

If the link-key generated is not at least as good as the expected or required type, then the local device shall fail the channel establishment and may disconnect the ACL link with error code 0x05 - Authentication Failure.

#### 5.2.2.2.2 Authentication Required for Access to Local Service by Remote Device

See [Section 5.2.2.6](#) for details on determining whether or not a link key is sufficient.

If authentication does not succeed, then the local device shall not send a channel establishment confirmation. The host may at this point notify the user and offer to perform pairing.

A Bluetooth device in security mode 4 shall respond to authentication and pairing requests during link establishment when the remote device is in security mode 3 for backwards compatibility reasons. However, authentication of the remote device shall be performed after the receipt of the channel establishment request is received, and before the channel establishment response is sent.

## Generic Access Profile

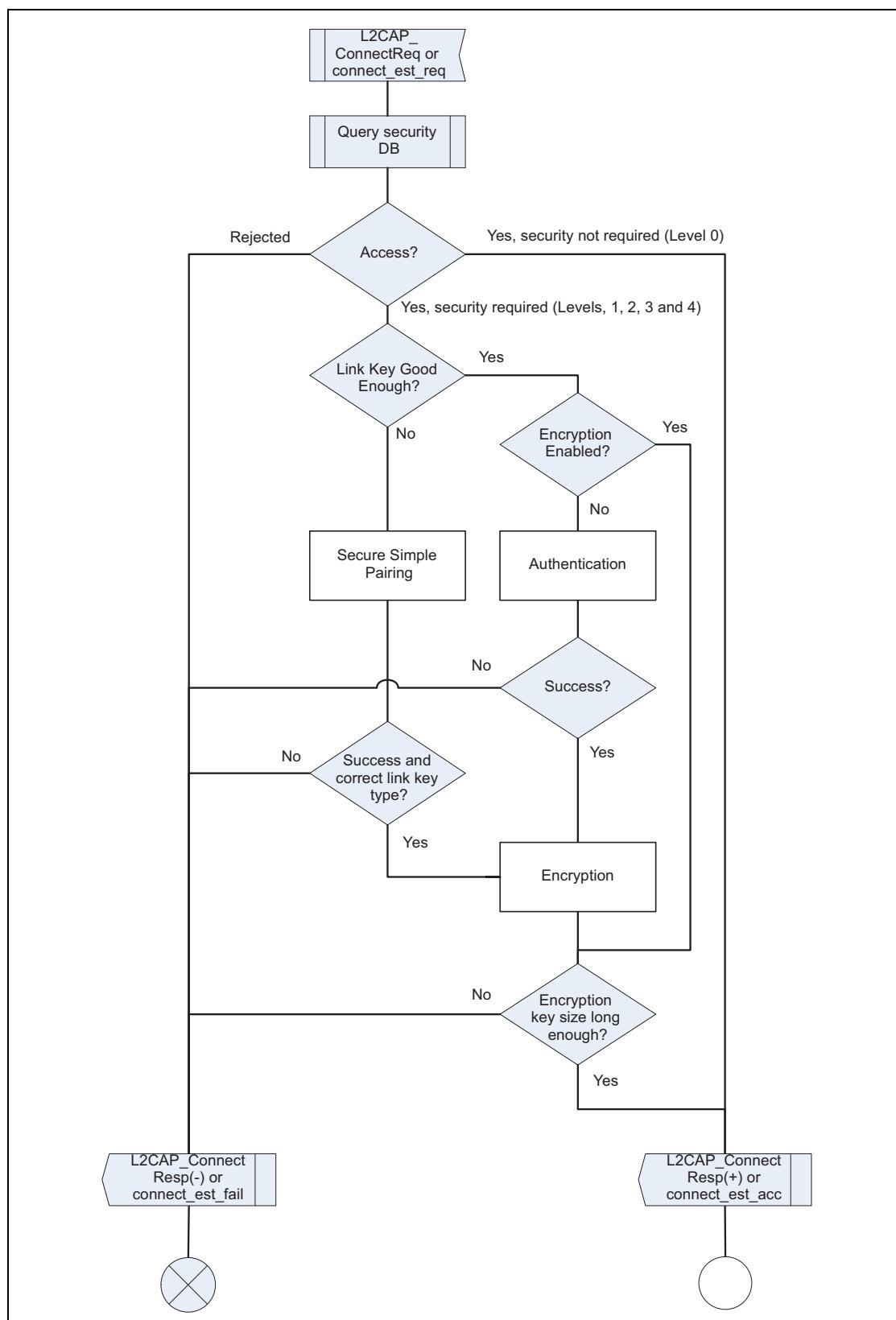


Figure 5.5: Channel establishment using security mode 4 for the responding side

### 5.2.2.3 Simple Pairing after Authentication Failure

When both devices support Secure Simple Pairing all non-SDP connections are encrypted regardless of whether security was required or whether the devices are bonded or not. The initial connection between the two devices will result in a link key through Secure Simple Pairing. Depending on whether or not bonding was performed and the security policy of the initiating device, the link key may or may not be stored. When the link key is stored, subsequent connections to the same device will use authentication but this may fail if the remote device has deleted the link key. [Table 5.1](#) defines what shall be done depending on the type of the link key and whether bonding was performed or not.

Link Key Type	Devices Bonded?	Action to take when Authentication Fails
Combination	No	Depends on security policy of the device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Option 1: Automatically initiate pairing</li> <li>• Option 2: Notify user and ask if pairing is ok</li> </ul> Option 2 is recommended.
Combination	Yes	Notify user of security failure
Unauthenticated	No	Depends on security policy of the device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Option 1: Automatically initiate secure simple pairing</li> <li>• Option 2: Notify user and ask if secure simple pairing is ok.</li> </ul> Option 1 is recommended.
Unauthenticated	Yes	Notify user of security failure
Authenticated	No	Depends on security policy of the device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Option 1: Automatically initiate secure simple pairing</li> <li>• Option 2: Notify user and ask if secure simple pairing is ok</li> </ul> Option 2 is recommended.
Authenticated	Yes	Notify user of security failure

*Table 5.1: Simple Pairing after Authentication Failure*

Note that non-bonded authenticated or unauthenticated link keys may be considered disposable by either device and may be deleted at any time.

### 5.2.2.4 IO Capabilities

Once a connection is established, if the Host determines that security is necessary and both devices support Secure Simple Pairing, the devices perform an IO capability exchange. The purpose of the IO capability exchange is to determine the authentication algorithm used in the Authentication Stage 1 phase of Simple Pairing.

The input and output capabilities are described in [Table 5.2](#):

Capability	Description
No input	Device does not have the ability to indicate 'yes' or 'no'
Yes / No	Device has at least two buttons that are mapped easily to 'yes' and 'no' or the device has a mechanism whereby the user can indicate either 'yes' or 'no' (see note below).
Keyboard	Device has a numeric keyboard that can input the numbers '0' through '9' and a confirmation. Device also has two buttons that can be easily mapped to 'yes' and 'no' or the device has a mechanism whereby the user can indicate either 'yes' or 'no' (see <b>Note</b> below).

*Table 5.2: User Input Capabilities*

**Note:** 'yes' could be indicated by pressing a button within a certain time limit otherwise 'no' would be assumed.

Capability	Description
No output	Device does not have the ability to display or communicate a 6 digit decimal number
Numeric output	Device has the ability to display or communicate a 6 digit decimal number

*Table 5.3: User Output Capabilities*

#### 5.2.2.5 Mapping of Input / Output Capabilities to IO Capability

The individual input and output capabilities are mapped to a single IO capability which is later used to determine which authentication algorithm will be used.

Local Output Capacity		No Output	Numeric Output
Local Input Capacity			
No input		NoInputNoOutput	DisplayOnly
Yes / No		NoInputNoOutput	DisplayYesNo
Keyboard		KeyboardOnly	DisplayYesNo

*Table 5.4: IO Capability mapping*

When a device has OOB authentication information from the remote device, it will indicate it in the LMP\_IO\_Capability\_Req PDU. When either device has OOB information, the OOB authentication method will be used.

The Host may allow the Link Manager to ignore the IO capabilities and use the Numeric Comparison protocol with automatic accept by setting the Authentication\_Requirements parameter to one of the MITM Protection *Not Required* options.

#### 5.2.2.6 IO and OOB Capability Mapping to Authentication Stage 1 Method

Determining which association model to use in Authentication Stage 1 is performed in three steps. First, the devices look at the OOB Authentication Data Present parameter received in the remote IO capabilities. If either device has received OOB authentication data then the OOB association model is used. The event of receiving the OOB information is indicated by a device to its peer in the IO Capability Exchange step of simple pairing.

Device A Device B	Has not received remote OOB authentication data	Has received remote OOB authentication table
Has not received remote OOB authentication data	Use the IO capability mapping table	Use OOB association with ra = 0 rb from OOB
Has received remote OOB authentication data	Use OOB association with ra from OOB rb = 0	Use OOB association with ra from OOB rb from OOB

Table 5.5: IO and OOB capability mapping

Second, if neither device has received OOB authentication data and if both devices have set the Authentication\_Requirements parameter to one of the MITM Protection *Not Required* options, authentication stage 1 shall function as if both devices set their IO capabilities to DisplayOnly (e.g., Numeric comparison with automatic confirmation on both devices).

Finally, if neither device has received OOB authentication data and if one or both devices have set the Authentication\_Requirements parameter to one of the *MITM Protection Required* options, the IO and OOB capabilities are mapped to the authentication stage 1 method as defined in the following table. A Host that has set the Authentication\_Requirements parameter to one of the *MITM Protection Required* options shall verify that the resulting Link Key is an Authenticated Combination Key (see [\[Vol. 2\], Part E Section 7.7.24](#)). The table also lists whether the combination key results in an authenticated or unauthenticated link key.

<b>Initiator A B Responder</b>	<b>Display Only</b>	<b>DisplayYesNo</b>	<b>KeyboardOnly</b>	<b>NoInputNoOutput</b>
<b>DisplayOnly</b>	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on both devices.	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on device B only.	Passkey Entry: Responder Display, Initiator Input.	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on both devices.
	Unauthenticated	Unauthenticated	Authenticated	Unauthenticated
<b>DisplayYesNo</b>	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on device A only.	Numeric Comparison: Both Display, Both Confirm.	Passkey Entry: Responder Display, Initiator Input.	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on device A only.
	Unauthenticated	Authenticated	Authenticated	Unauthenticated
<b>Keyboard Only</b>	Passkey Entry: Initiator Display, Responder Input.	Passkey Entry: Initiator Display, Responder Input.	Passkey Entry: Initiator and Responder Input.	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on both devices.
	Authenticated	Authenticated	Authenticated	Unauthenticated
<b>NoInputNoOutput</b>	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on both devices.	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on device B only.	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on both devices.	Numeric Comparison with automatic confirmation on both devices.
	Unauthenticated	Unauthenticated	Unauthenticated	Unauthenticated

Table 5.6: IO Capability Mapping to Authentication Stage 1

Note: The "DisplayOnly" IO capability only provides unidirectional authentication.

#### 5.2.2.7 Out of Band (OOB)

An out of band mechanism may also be used to communicate discovery information as well as other information related to the pairing process.

The contents of the OOB data block are:

Mandatory contents:

- Length (2 bytes)

## Generic Access Profile



- BD\_ADDR (6 bytes)

Optional contents:

- Class of Device (3 bytes)
- Simple Pairing Hash C (16 bytes)
- Simple Pairing Randomizer R (16 bytes)
- Local name (variable length)
- Other information

The length field includes all bytes in the OOB data block including the length field itself. The BD\_ADDR will be a fixed field in the beginning of the OOB data block. Following the BD\_ADDR will be zero or more EIR tag fields containing optional contents. The EIR tag format will be used for the optional contents.

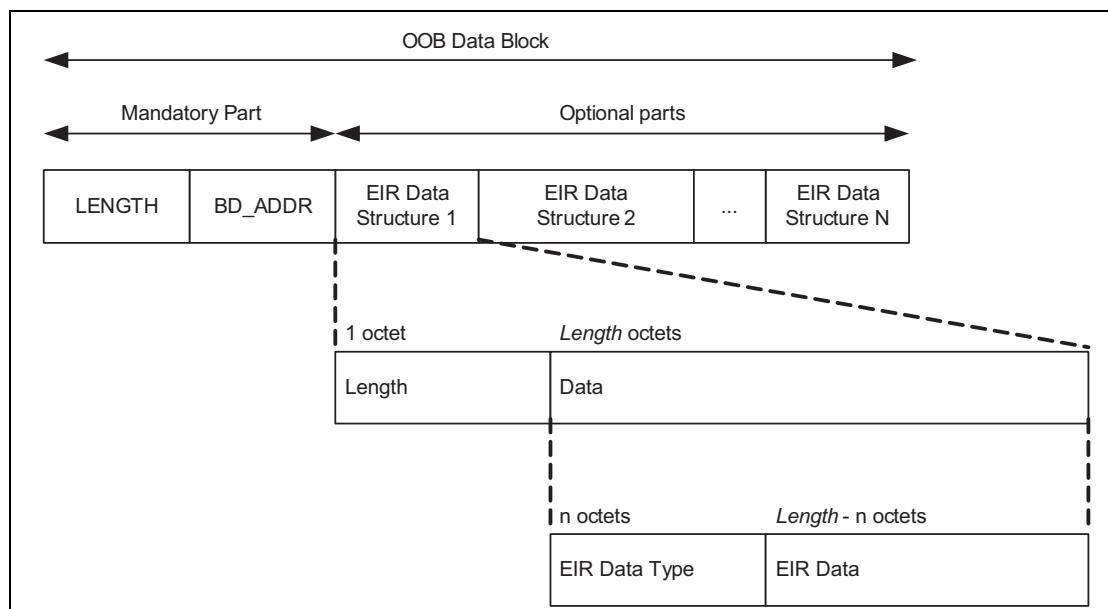


Figure 5.6: OOB Data Block Format

If Simple Pairing fails when one or both devices have OOB Authentication Data present, both devices shall discard the OOB Authentication Data and the device that originally initiated authentication shall re-initiate authentication. Note that although the user may get involved in authentication as defined by the IO capabilities of the two devices, falling back to the in-band authentication method will prevent deadlock conditions when one or both devices has stale OOB Authentication Data.

#### 5.2.2.8 Security Database

A Bluetooth device in security mode 4 shall classify the security requirements of its services using at least the following levels attributes (in order of decreasing security) for use when pairing with remote devices supporting Secure Simple Pairing:

- Level 4, for services with the following attributes or devices in Secure Connections Only Mode:
    - MITM protection required
    - 128-bit equivalent strength for link and encryption keys required using FIPS approved algorithms (E0 not allowed, SAFER+ not allowed, and P-192 not allowed)
    - User interaction acceptable
  - Level 3, for services with the following attributes:
    - MITM protection required
    - Encryption required
    - User interaction acceptable
  - Level 2, for services with the following attributes:
    - MITM protection not required
    - Encryption required
  - Level 1, for services with the following attributes:
    - MITM protection not required
    - Minimal user interaction desired
  - Level 0: Service requires the following:
    - MITM protection not required
    - No encryption required
    - No user interaction required
- Security Mode 4 Level 0 shall only be used for:
- a) L2CAP fixed signaling channels with CIDs 0x0001, 0x0003, and 0x003F
  - b) SDP
  - c) broadcast data sent on the connectionless L2CAP channel (CID 0x0002)
  - d) services with the combinations of Service Class UUIDs and L2CAP traffic types listed in [\[Core Specification Supplement\]](#), Part C.

The security level required for each service offered should be stored in a security database that is accessed to determine the type of link key that is required for access to the respective service. The security level required for service data transmitted on an L2CAP connection-oriented channel may differ from the security level required for service data transmitted on another L2CAP connection-oriented channel or on the connectionless L2CAP channel. [Table 5.7 on page 326](#) shows the type of link key required for each security level for both

## Generic Access Profile



remote devices that support Secure Simple Pairing (v2.1 + EDR remote devices) and for those that do not (pre-v2.1 + EDR remote devices).

Security Level Required for Service	Link Key type required for remote devices	Link Key type required for pre-v2.1 remote devices	Comments
Level 4 • MITM protection required • Encryption required • User interaction acceptable	Authenticated (P-256 based Secure Simple Pairing and Secure Authentication)	NA	Highest Security Only possible when both devices support Secure Connections
Level 3 • MITM protection required • Encryption required • User interaction acceptable	Authenticated	Combination (16 digit PIN recommended)	High Security
Level 2 • MITM protection not necessary • Encryption desired	Unauthenticated	Combination	Medium Security
Level 1 • MITM protection not necessary • Encryption not necessary <sup>1</sup> • Minimal user interaction desired	Unauthenticated	None	Low Security
Level 0 • MITM protection not necessary • Encryption not necessary • No user interaction desired	None	None	Permitted only for SDP and service data sent via either L2CAP fixed signaling channels or the L2CAP connectionless channel to PSMs that correspond to service class UUIDs which are allowed to utilize Level 0.

Table 5.7: Security Level mapping to link key requirements

1. Though encryption is not necessary for the service for Level 1, this specification mandates the use of encryption when the remote device is v2.1+EDR for all services other than SDP.

An *authenticated* link key is a link key where either the numeric comparison, out-of-band, or passkey entry simple pairing association models were used. An authenticated link key has protection against MITM attacks. To ensure that an authenticated link key is created during the Simple Pairing procedure, the

Authentication\_Requirements parameter should be set to one of the *MITM Protection Required* options.

An *unauthenticated* link key is a link key where the “Just Works” simple pairing association model was used (see [\[Vol. 1, Part A\] Section 5.2.4 on page 92](#)). An unauthenticated link key does not have protection against MITM attacks. To allow an unauthenticated link key to be created during the Simple Pairing procedure, the Authentication\_Requirements parameter may be set to one of the *MITM Protection Not Required* options.

When both devices support Secure Simple Pairing and at least one device does not support Secure Connections, the strength of the link key is 96 effective bits. When both devices support Secure Connections, the strength of the link key is 128 effective bits. Secure Connections does not change the protection against MITM attacks.

A combination link key is a link key where the v2.0 pairing mechanism was used to generate the link-key (see [\[Vol. 2, Part C\] Section 4.2.2.4 on page 280](#)).

When both devices support Secure Simple Pairing, GAP shall require at least an unauthenticated link key and enable encryption for service traffic sent or received via connection-oriented L2CAP channels. A profile or protocol may define services that require more security (for example, an authenticated link key) or no security in the case of SDP or service traffic sent via the L2CAP connectionless channel for services that do not require security.

When the device is in Bondable Mode, it shall enable Secure Simple Pairing mode prior to entering Connectable Mode or establishing a link.

A Bluetooth device in security mode 4 shall respond to authentication and pairing requests during link establishment when the remote device is in security mode 3 for backwards compatibility reasons. See [Section 5.2.1.3](#) for more information.

The remote Controller's and remote Host's support for Secure Simple Pairing shall be determined by the Link Manager Secure Simple Pairing (Host Support) feature bit.

A previously generated link key is considered “sufficient” if the link key type is of the type required for the service, or of a higher strength. Authenticated link keys are considered higher strength than Unauthenticated or Combination keys. Unauthenticated link keys are considered higher strength than Combination keys.

## 6 IDLE MODE PROCEDURES – BR/EDR PHYSICAL TRANSPORT

The inquiry and discovery procedures described here are applicable only to the device that initiates them (A). The requirements on the behavior of B is according to the modes specified in 4 and to [2].

	Procedure	Ref.	Support
1	General inquiry	<a href="#">6.1</a>	C1
2	Limited inquiry	<a href="#">6.2</a>	C1
3	Name discovery	<a href="#">6.3</a>	O
4	Device discovery	<a href="#">6.4</a>	O
5	Bonding	<a href="#">6.5</a>	O

C1: If initiation of bonding is supported, support for simple inquiry procedure is mandatory, otherwise optional.  
 (Note: support for LMP-pairing is mandatory [2].)

### 6.1 GENERAL INQUIRY

#### 6.1.1 Purpose

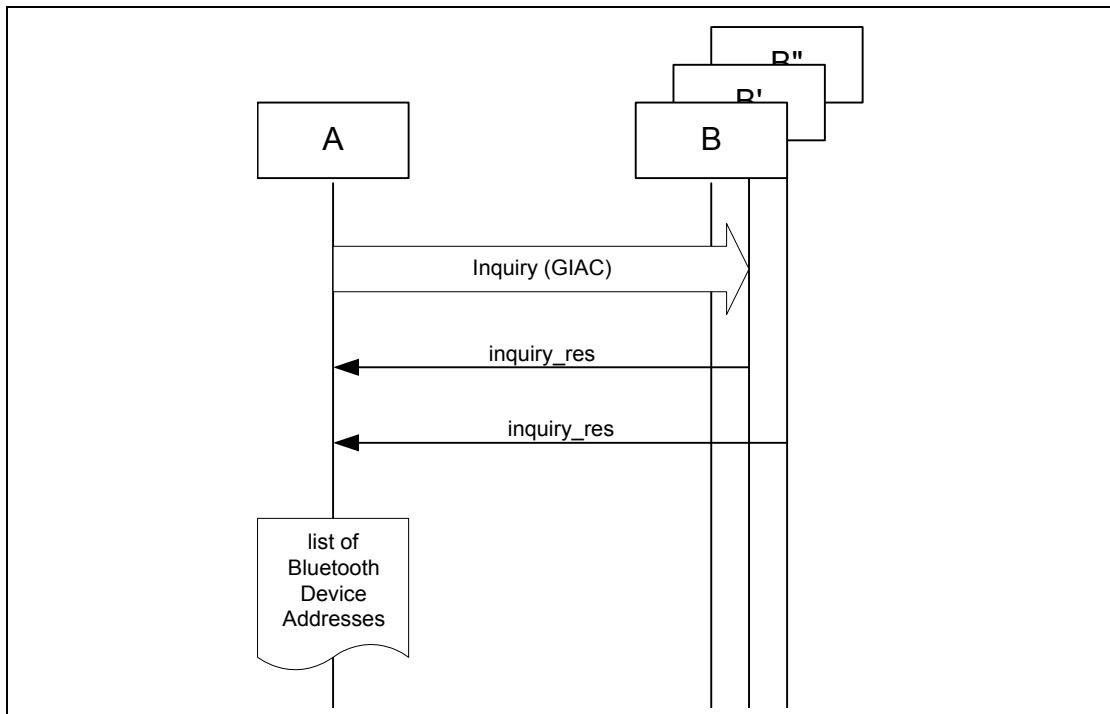
The purpose of the general inquiry procedure is to provide the initiator with the Bluetooth device address, clock, Class of Device, page scan mode, and extended inquiry response information of general discoverable devices (i.e., devices that are in range with regard to the initiator and are set to scan for inquiry messages with the General Inquiry Access Code). Also devices in limited discoverable mode will be discovered using general inquiry.

The general inquiry should be used by devices that need to discover devices that are made discoverable continuously or for no specific condition.

#### 6.1.2 Term on UI level

‘Bluetooth Device Inquiry’.

### 6.1.3 Description



*Figure 6.1: General inquiry, where B is a device in non-discoverable mode, B' is a device in limited discoverable mode and B'' is a device in general discoverable mode. (Note that all discoverable devices are discovered using general inquiry, independent of which discoverable mode they are in.)*

### 6.1.4 Conditions

When general inquiry is initiated by a Bluetooth device, the INQUIRY state shall last  $T_{GAP}(100)$  or longer, unless the inquirer collects enough responses and determines to abort the INQUIRY state earlier. The Bluetooth device shall perform inquiry using the GIAC.

In order for Device A to receive inquiry responses, the remote devices in range have to be made discoverable (limited or general).

## 6.2 LIMITED INQUIRY

### 6.2.1 Purpose

The purpose of the limited inquiry procedure is to provide the initiator with the Bluetooth device address, clock, Class of Device, page scan mode, and extended inquiry response information of limited discoverable devices. The latter devices are devices that are in range with regard to the initiator, and may be set to scan for inquiry messages with the Limited Inquiry Access Code, in addition to scanning for inquiry messages with the General Inquiry Access Code.

The limited inquiry should be used by devices that need to discover devices that are made discoverable only for a limited period of time, during temporary conditions or for a specific event. Since it is not guaranteed that the discoverable device scans for the LIAC, the initiating device may choose any inquiry procedure (general or limited). Even if the remote device that is to be discovered is expected to be made limited discoverable (e.g., when a dedicated bonding is to be performed), the limited inquiry should be done in sequence with a general inquiry in such a way that both inquiries are completed within the time the remote device is limited discoverable; i.e., at least  $T_{GAP}(103)$ .

### 6.2.2 Term on UI level

'Bluetooth Device Inquiry'.

### 6.2.3 Description

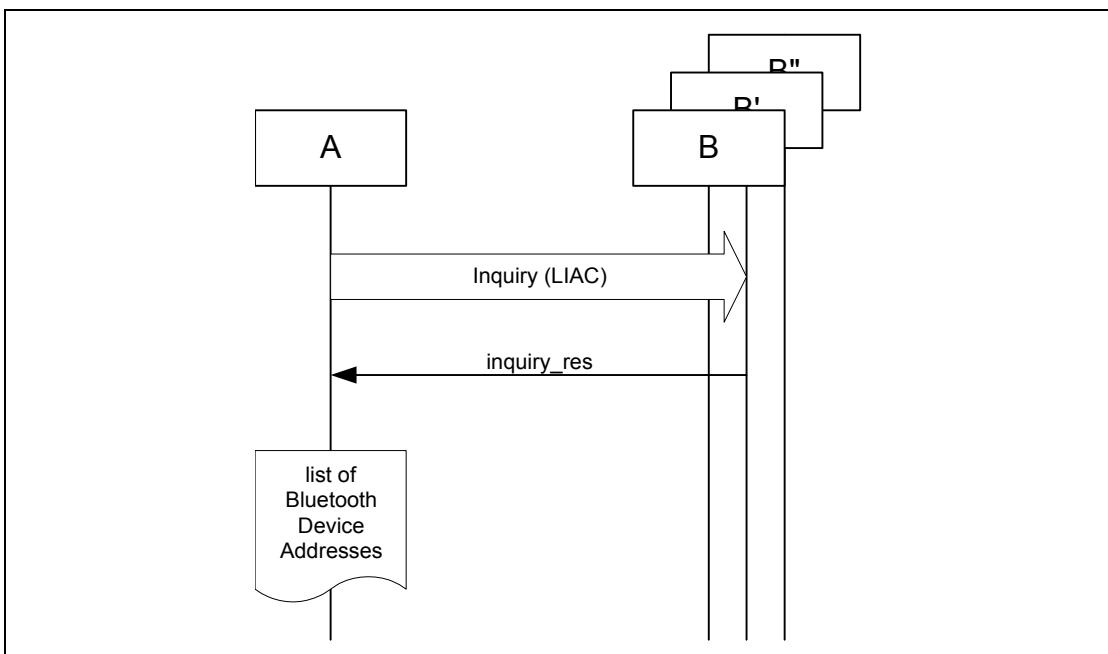


Figure 6.2: Limited inquiry where B is a device in non-discoverable mode, B' is a device in limited discoverable mode and B'' is a device in general discoverable mode. (Note that only limited discoverable devices can be discovered using limited inquiry.)

### 6.2.4 Conditions

When limited inquiry is initiated by a Bluetooth device, the INQUIRY state shall last  $T_{GAP}(100)$  or longer, unless the inquirer collects enough responses and determines to abort the INQUIRY state earlier. The Bluetooth device shall perform inquiry using the LIAC.

In order for Device A to receive inquiry responses, the remote devices in range has to be made limited discoverable.

## 6.3 NAME DISCOVERY

### 6.3.1 Purpose

The purpose of name discovery is to provide the initiator with the Bluetooth Device Name of connectable devices (i.e., devices in range that will respond to paging).

### 6.3.2 Term on UI level

'Bluetooth Device Name Discovery'.

### 6.3.3 Description

#### 6.3.3.1 Name request

Name request is the procedure for retrieving the Bluetooth Device Name from a connectable Bluetooth device. It is not necessary to perform the full link establishment procedure (see 7.1) in order to just to get the name of another device.

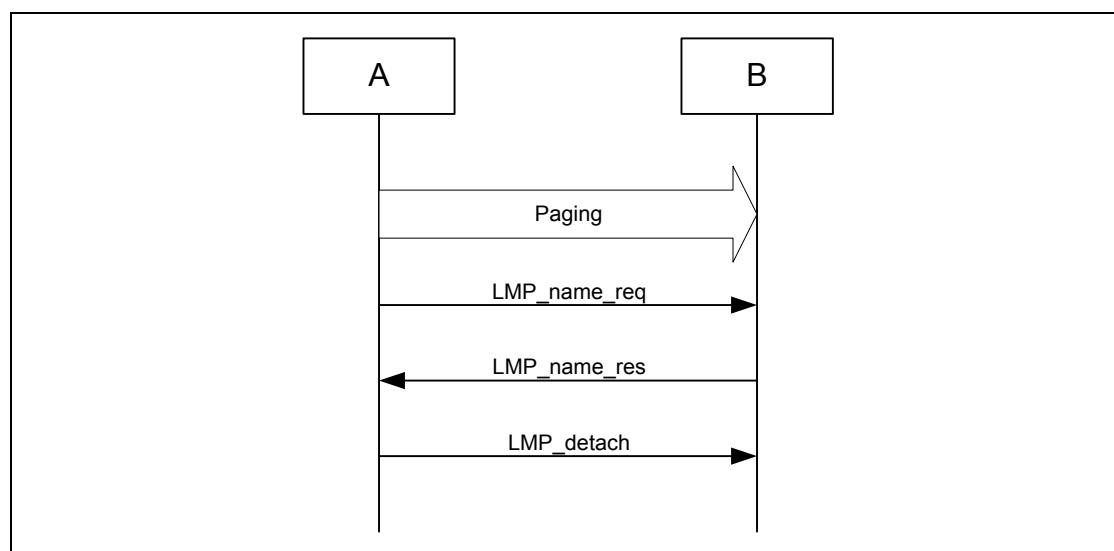


Figure 6.3: Name request procedure

#### 6.3.3.2 Name discovery

Name discovery is the procedure for retrieving the Bluetooth Device Name from connectable Bluetooth devices by performing name request towards known devices (i.e., Bluetooth devices for which the Bluetooth Device Addresses are available).

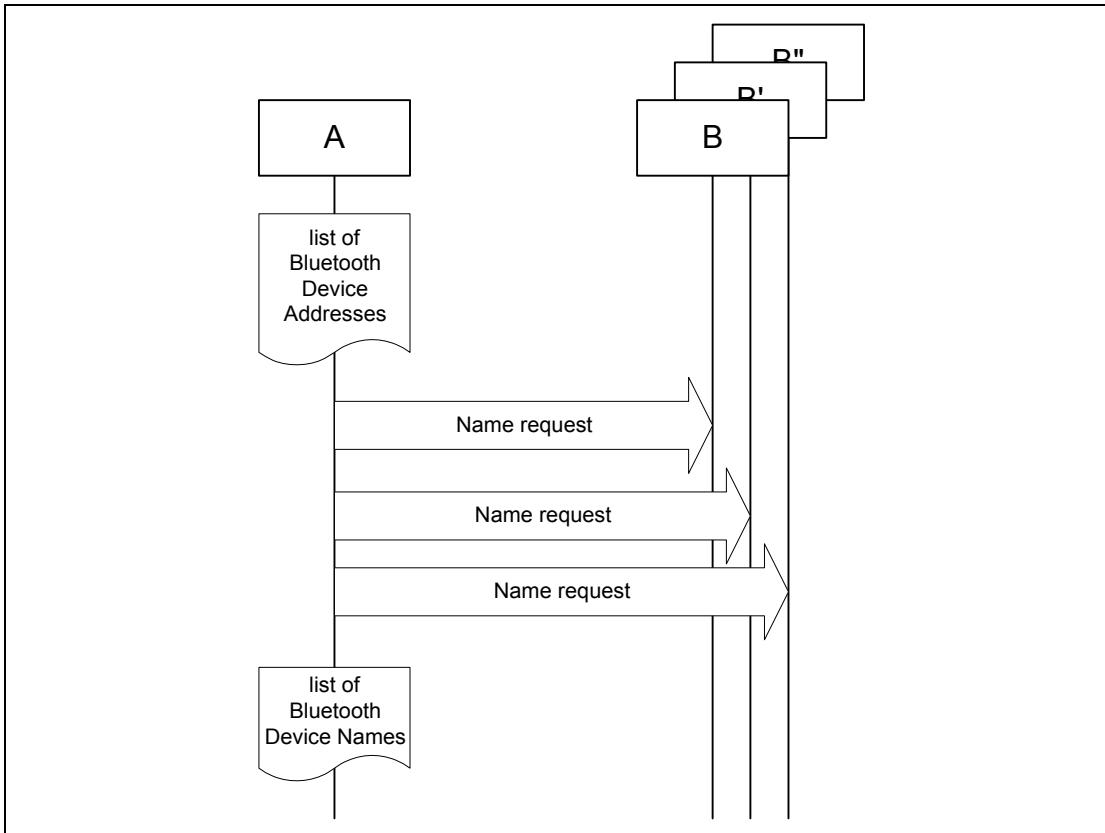


Figure 6.4: Name discovery procedure

### 6.3.4 Conditions

In the name request procedure, the initiator will use the Device Access Code of the remote device as retrieved immediately beforehand – normally through an inquiry procedure.

## 6.4 DEVICE DISCOVERY

This section only applies to a device of the BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE device type.

### 6.4.1 Purpose

The purpose of device discovery is to provide the initiator with the Bluetooth Device Address, clock, Class of Device, used page scan mode, Bluetooth Device Name, and extended inquiry response information of discoverable devices.

### 6.4.2 Term on UI Level

'Bluetooth Device Discovery'.

### 6.4.3 Description

During the device discovery procedure, first an inquiry (either general or limited) is performed, and then name discovery is done towards some or all of the devices that responded to the inquiry. If the initiator of the device discovery receives a complete local name or a shortened local name that is considered long enough, via an extended inquiry response from a remote device, the initiator should not do a separate name discovery for that device.

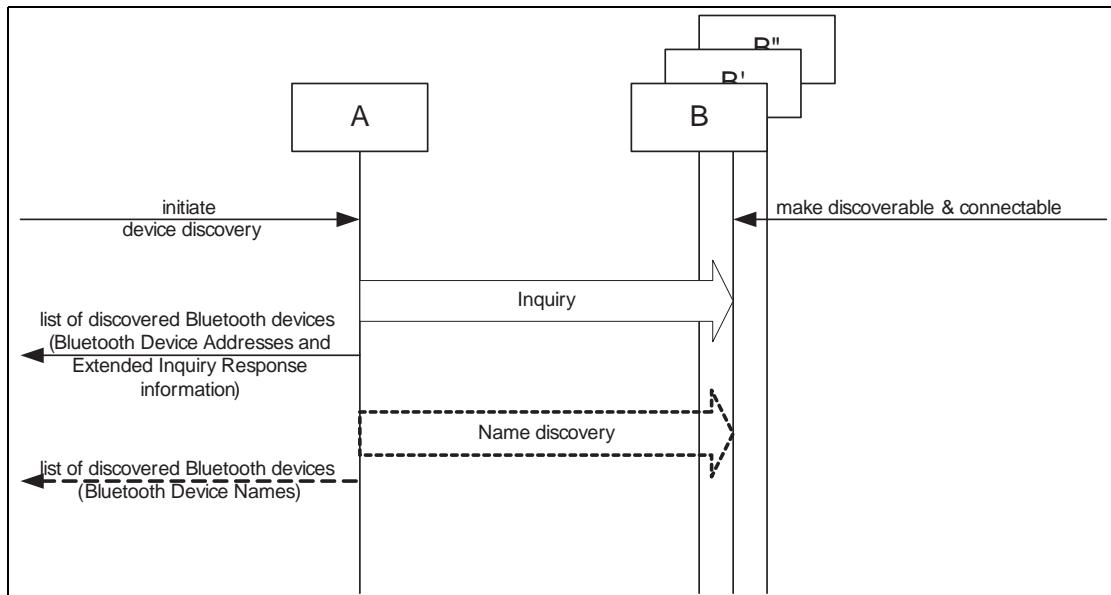


Figure 6.5: Device discovery procedure

### 6.4.4 Conditions

Conditions for both inquiry (general or limited) and name discovery must be fulfilled (i.e., devices discovered during device discovery must be both discoverable and connectable).

## 6.5 BONDING

### 6.5.1 Purpose

The purpose of bonding is to create a relation between two Bluetooth devices based on a common link key (a bond). The link key is created and exchanged (pairing) during the bonding procedure and is expected to be stored by both Bluetooth devices, to be used for future authentication. In addition to pairing, the bonding procedure can involve higher-layer initialization procedures.

### 6.5.2 Term on UI level

'Bluetooth Bonding'.

### 6.5.3 Description

Two forms of bonding are described in the following sections: General Bonding and Dedicated Bonding.

#### 6.5.3.1 General Bonding

General Bonding refers to the process of performing bonding during connection setup or channel establishment procedures as a precursor to accessing a service.

When the devices that are performing General Bonding both support Secure Simple Pairing, the Authentication\_Requirements parameter should be set to MITM Protection Not Required – General Bonding unless the security policy of an available local service requires MITM Protection in which case the Authentication\_Requirements parameter shall be set to MITM Protection Required – General Bonding. 'No bonding' is used when the device is performing a Secure Simple Pairing procedure, but does not intend to retain the link key after the physical link is disconnected.

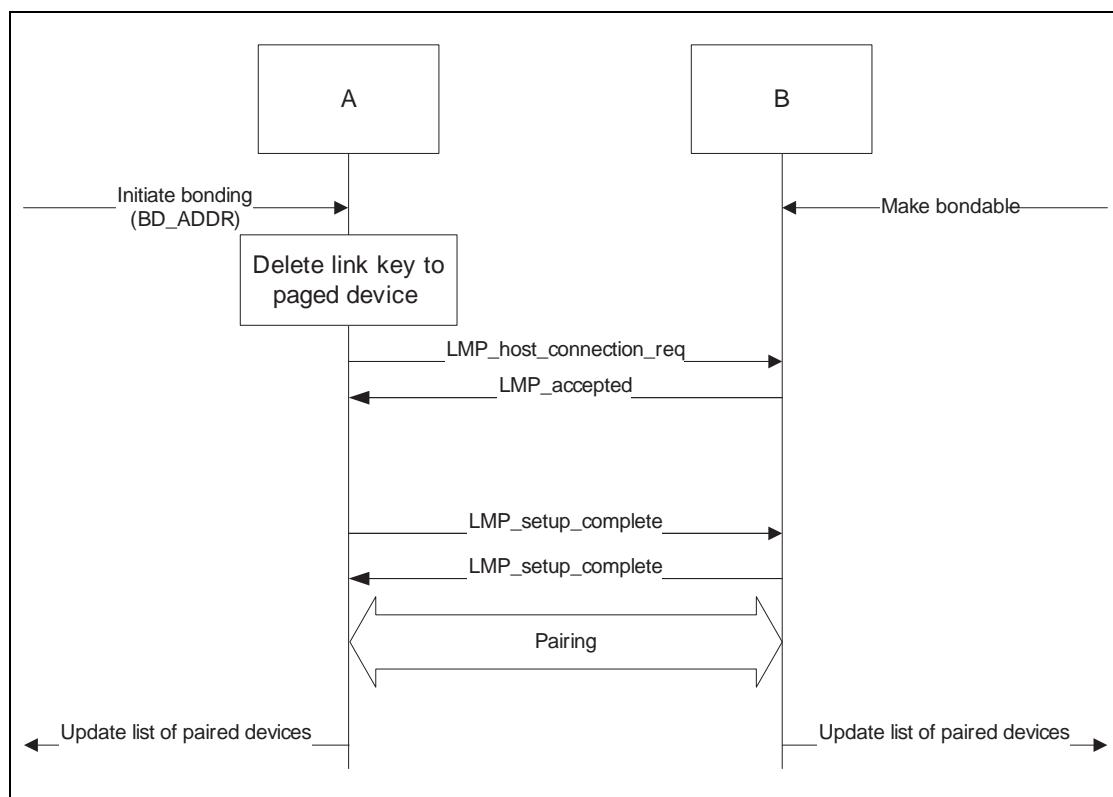


Figure 6.6: General description of general bonding as being the link establishment procedure executed under specific conditions on both devices, followed by authentication and an optional higher layer initialization process.

#### 6.5.3.2 Dedicated Bonding

Dedicated Bonding refers to a procedure wherein one device connects to another only for the purpose of pairing without accessing a particular service. The main difference with dedicated bonding, as compared to a pairing done during link or channel establishment, is that for bonding it is the paging device (A) that must initiate the authentication.

When the devices that are performing Dedicated Bonding both support Secure Simple Pairing, the Authentication\_Requirements parameter should be set to *MITM Protection Not Required – Dedicated Bonding* unless the security policy of an available local service requires MITM Protection in which case the Authentication Required parameter shall be set to *MITM Protection Required – Dedicated Bonding*. 'No bonding' is used when the device is performing a Secure Simple Pairing procedure, but does not intend to retain the link key after the physical link is disconnected.

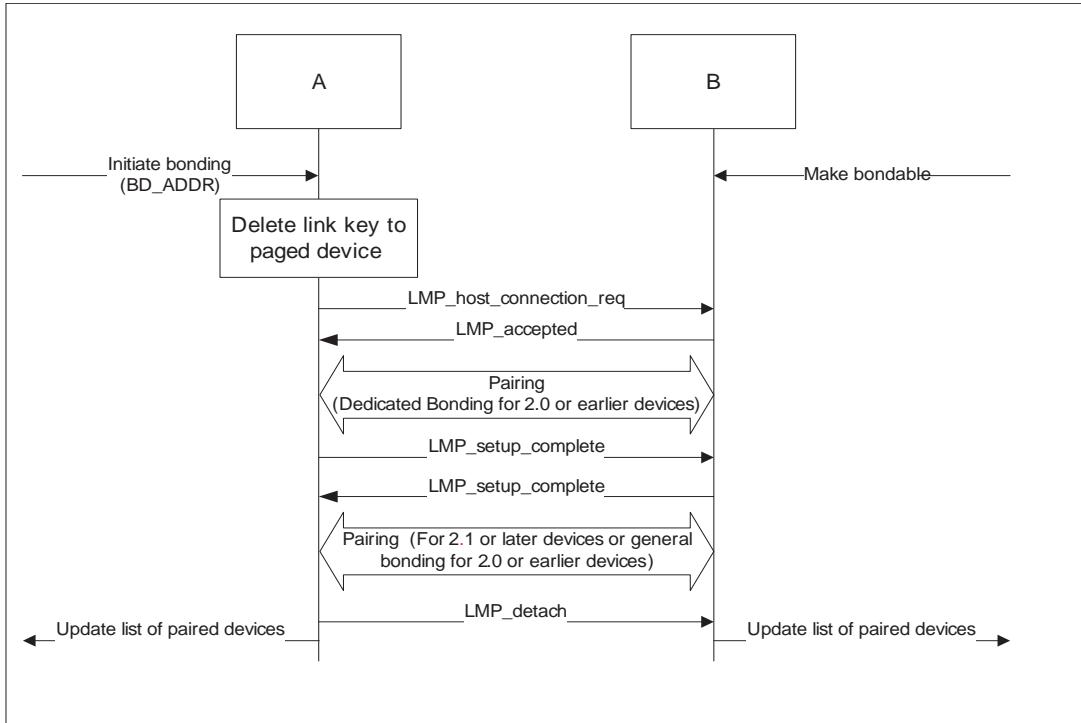


Figure 6.7: Dedicated Bonding as performed when the purpose of the procedure is only to create and exchange a link key between two Bluetooth devices

#### 6.5.4 Conditions

Before bonding can be initiated, the initiating device (A) must know the Device Access Code of the device to pair with. This is normally done by first performing device discovery. A Bluetooth Device that can initiate bonding (A) should use limited inquiry, and a Bluetooth Device that accepts bonding (B) should support the limited discoverable mode.

Bonding is in principle the same as link establishment with the conditions:

- The paged device (B) shall be set into bondable mode. The paging device (A) is assumed to allow pairing since it has initiated the bonding procedure.
- The paging device (the initiator of the bonding procedure, A) shall initiate authentication.
- Before initiating the authentication part of the bonding procedure, the paging device should delete any link key corresponding to a previous bonding with the paged device.

## 7 ESTABLISHMENT PROCEDURES – BR/EDR PHYSICAL TRANSPORT

	Procedure	Ref.	Support in A	Support in B
1	Link establishment	<a href="#">7.1</a>	M	M
2	Channel establishment	<a href="#">7.2</a>	O	M
3	Connection establishment	<a href="#">7.3</a>	O	O
4	Synchronization establishment	<a href="#">7.5</a>	O	O

Table 7.1: Establishment procedures

The establishment procedures defined here do not include any discovery part. Before establishment procedures are initiated, the information provided during device discovery (in the FHS packet or the extended inquiry response packet of the inquiry response or in the response to a name request or in the synchronization train packet) must be available in the initiating device.

This information is:

- The Bluetooth Device Address (BD\_ADDR) from which the Device Access Code is generated
- The system clock of the remote device
- The page scan mode used by the remote device for Link establishment.

Additional information provided during device discovery that may be useful for making the decision to initiate an establishment procedure is:

- The Class of device
- The Device name
- The supported Service Classes.

### 7.1 LINK ESTABLISHMENT

#### 7.1.1 Purpose

The purpose of the link establishment procedure is to establish a physical link (of ACL type) between two Bluetooth devices using procedures from [\[1\]](#) and [\[2\]](#).

#### 7.1.2 Term on UI Level

'Bluetooth link establishment'

### 7.1.3 Description

In this sub-section, the paging device (A) is in security mode 3. During link establishment, the paging device cannot distinguish if the paged device (B) is in security mode 1, 2 or 4.

#### 7.1.3.1 B in security mode 1, 2, or 4

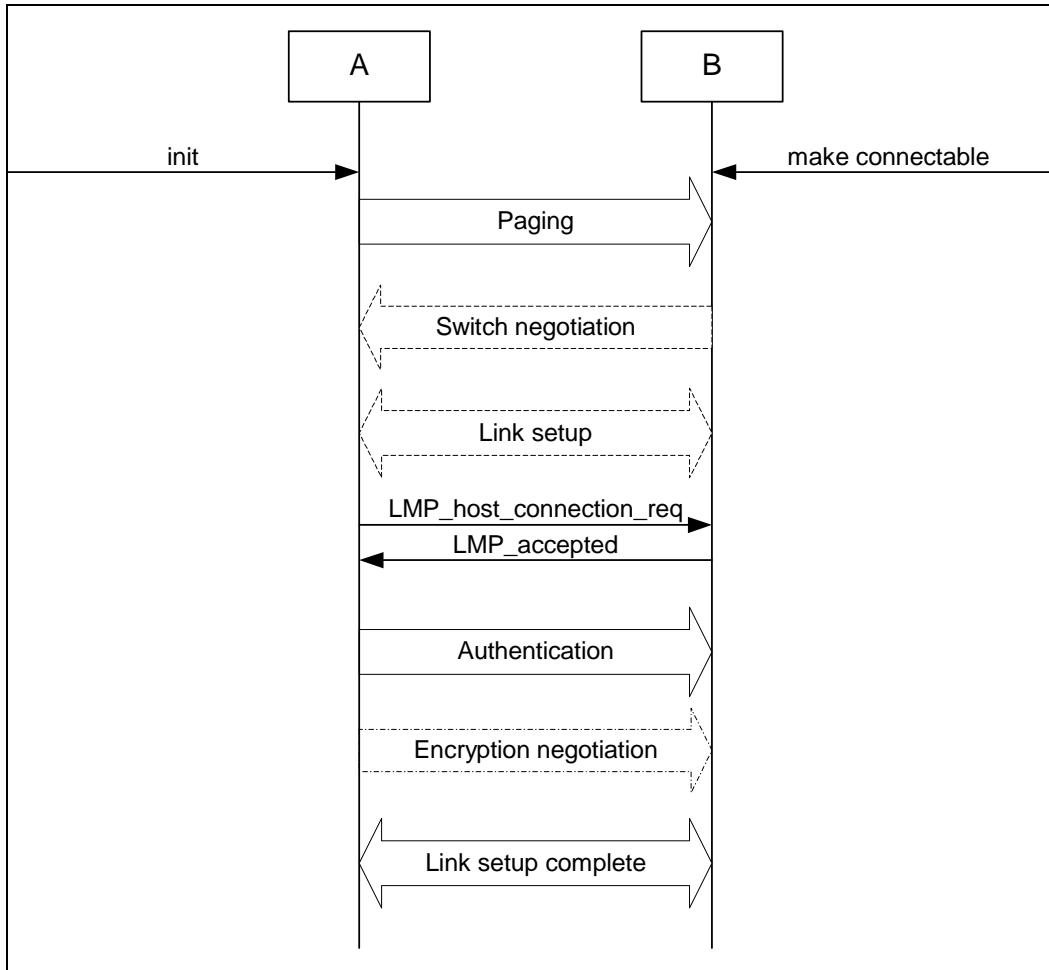


Figure 7.1: Link establishment procedure when the paging device (A) is in security mode 3 and the paged device (B) is in security mode 1, 2, or 4

### 7.1.3.2 B in security mode 3

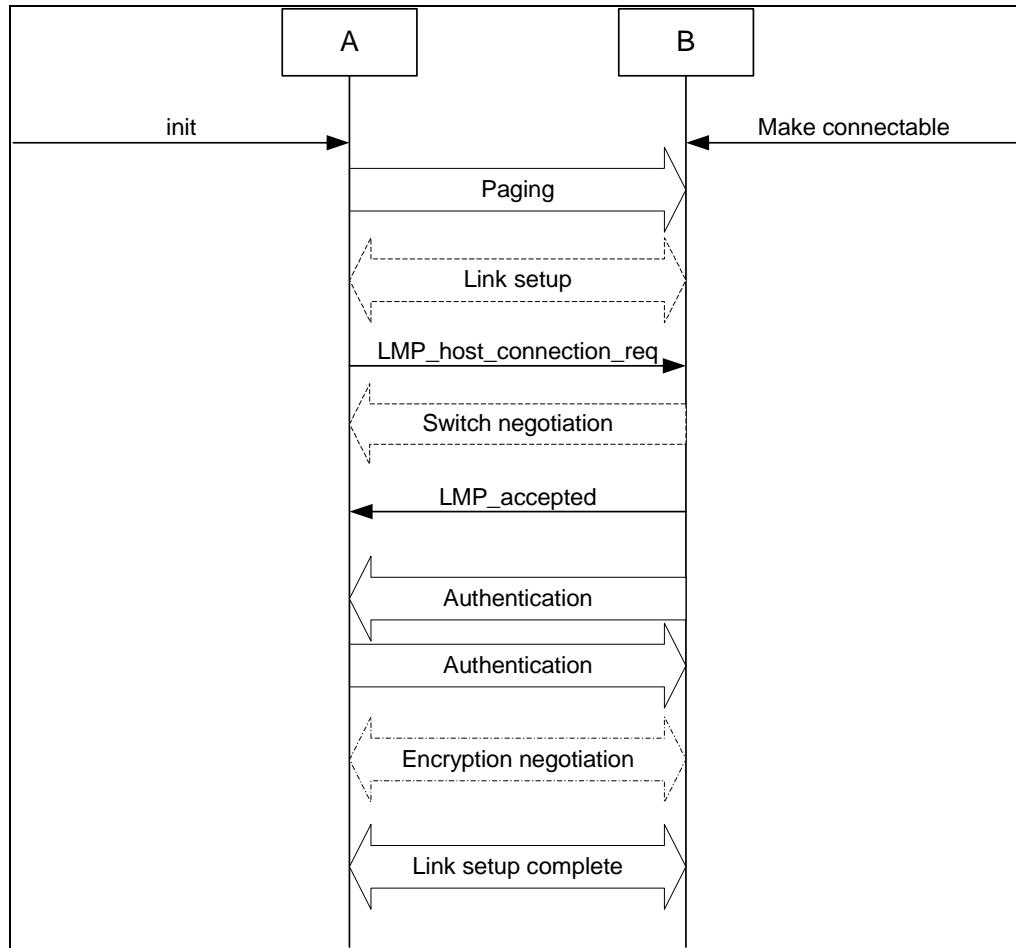


Figure 7.2: Link establishment procedure when both the paging device (A) and the paged device (B) are in security mode 3

### 7.1.4 Conditions

The paging procedure shall be according to [Vol. 2], Part B Section 8.3 and the paging device should use the Device Access Code and page mode received through a previous inquiry. When paging is completed, a physical link between the two Bluetooth devices is established.

If role switching is needed (normally it is the paged device that has an interest in changing the master/slave roles) it should be done as early as possible after the physical link is established. If the paging device does not accept the switch, the paged device has to consider whether to keep the physical link or not.

Both devices may perform link setup (using LMP procedures that require no interaction with the host on the remote side). Optional LMP features can be used after having confirmed (using LMP\_feature\_req) that the other device supports the feature.

When the paging device needs to go beyond the link setup phase, it issues a request to be connected to the host of the remote device. If the paged device is in security mode 3, this is the trigger for initiating authentication.

The paging device shall send LMP\_host\_connection\_req during link establishment (i.e., before channel establishment) and may initiate authentication only after having sent LMP\_host\_connection\_req.

After an authentication has been performed, any of the devices can initiate encryption.

Further link configuration may take place after the LMP\_host\_connection\_req. When both devices are satisfied, they send LMP\_setup\_complete.

Link establishment is completed when both devices have sent LMP\_setup\_-complete.

## 7.2 CHANNEL ESTABLISHMENT

### 7.2.1 Purpose

The purpose of the channel establishment procedure is to establish a Bluetooth channel (L2CAP channel) between two Bluetooth devices using [1].

### 7.2.2 Term on UI level

'Bluetooth channel establishment'.

### 7.2.3 Description

In this sub-section, the initiator (A) is in security mode 3. During channel establishment, the initiator cannot distinguish if the acceptor (B) is in security mode 1 or 3.

### 7.2.3.1 B in security mode 2 or 4

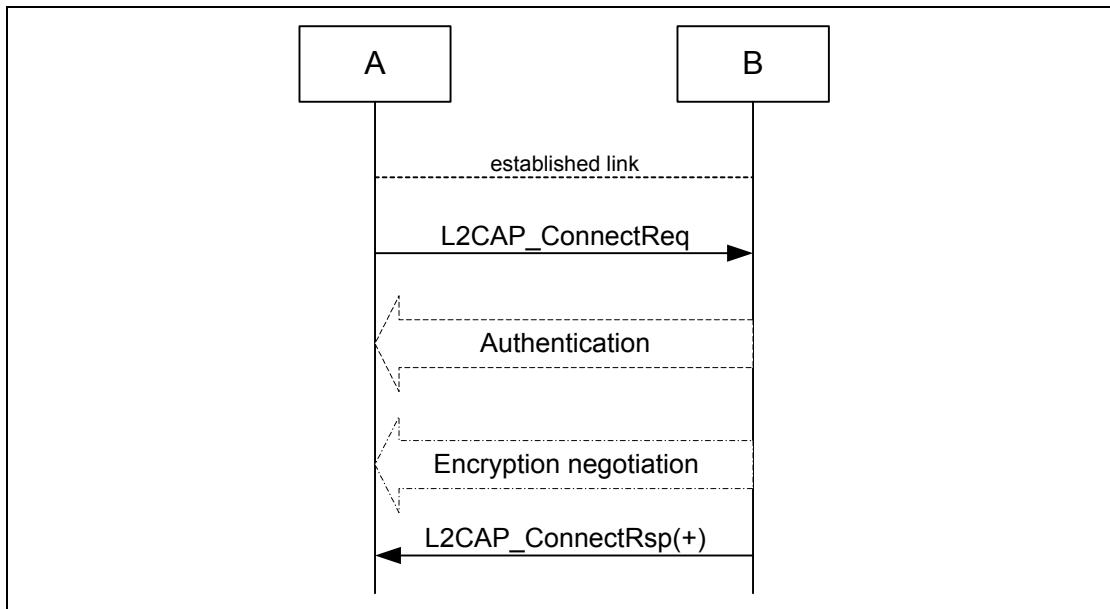


Figure 7.3: Channel establishment procedure when the initiator (A) is in security mode 3 and the acceptor (B) is in security mode 2 or 4

### 7.2.3.2 B in security mode 1 or 3

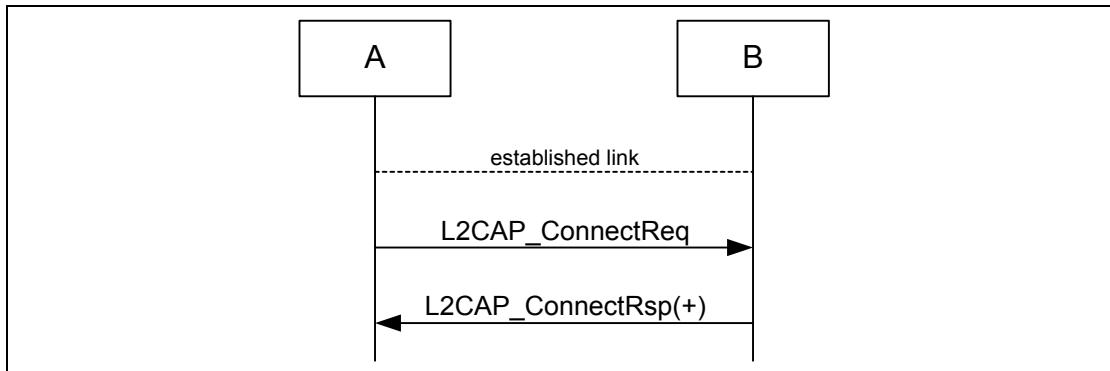


Figure 7.4: Channel establishment procedure when the initiator (A) is in security mode 3 and the acceptor (B) is in security mode 1 or 3

## 7.2.4 Conditions

Channel establishment starts after link establishment is completed when the initiator sends a channel establishment request (L2CAP\_ConnectReq).

Depending on security mode, security procedures may take place after the channel establishment has been initiated.

Channel establishment is completed when the acceptor responds to the channel establishment request (with a positive L2CAP\_ConnectRsp).

## 7.3 CONNECTION ESTABLISHMENT

### 7.3.1 Purpose

The purpose of the connection establishment procedure is to establish a connection between applications on two Bluetooth devices.

### 7.3.2 Term on UI level

'Bluetooth connection establishment'

### 7.3.3 Description

In this sub-section, the initiator (A) is in security mode 3. During connection establishment, the initiator cannot distinguish if the acceptor (B) is in security mode 1 or 3.

#### 7.3.3.1 B in security mode 2 or 4

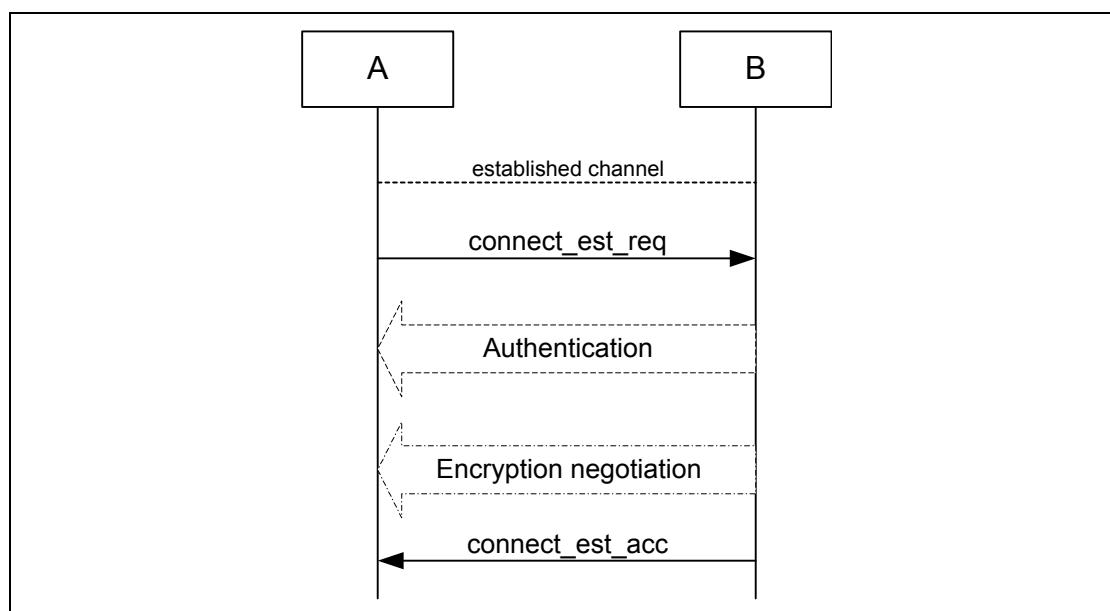


Figure 7.5: Connection establishment procedure when the initiator (A) is in security mode 3 and the acceptor (B) is in security mode 2 or 4

### 7.3.3.2 B in security mode 1 or 3

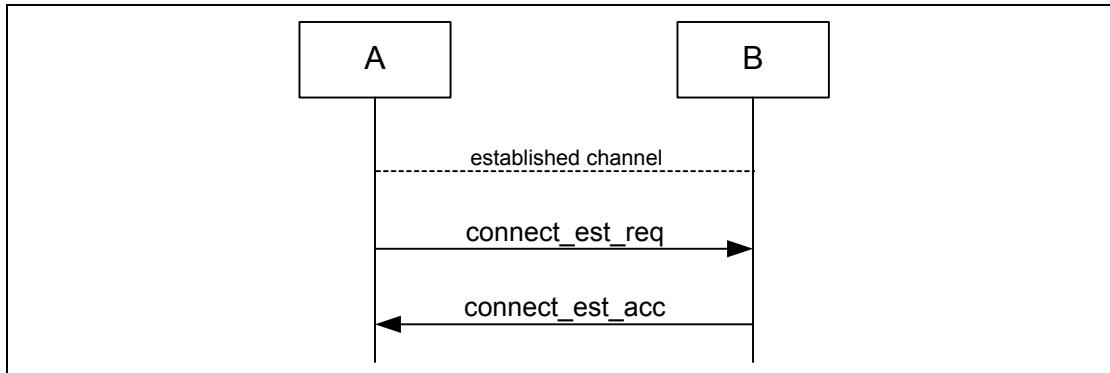


Figure 7.6: Connection establishment procedure when the initiator (A) is in security mode 3 and the acceptor (B) is in security mode 1 or 3

### 7.3.4 Conditions

Connection establishment starts after channel establishment is completed, when the initiator sends a connection establishment request ('connect\_est\_req' is application protocol-dependent). This request may be a TCS SETUP message [4] in the case of a Bluetooth telephony application [Cordless Telephony Profile](#), or initialization of RFCOMM and establishment of DLC [3] in the case of a serial port-based application [Serial Port Profile](#) (although neither TCS or RFCOMM use the term 'connection' for this).

Connection establishment is completed when the acceptor accepts the connection establishment request ('connect\_est\_acc' is application protocol dependent).

## 7.4 ESTABLISHMENT OF ADDITIONAL CONNECTION

When a Bluetooth device has established one connection with another Bluetooth device, it may be available for establishment of:

- A second connection on the same channel, and/or
- A second channel on the same logical link, and/or
- A second physical link.

If the new establishment procedure is to be towards the same device, the security part of the establishment depends on the security modes used. If the new establishment procedure is to be towards a new remote device, the device should behave according to active modes independent of the fact that it already has another physical link established (unless allowed co-incident radio and baseband events have to be handled).

## 7.5 SYNCHRONIZATION ESTABLISHMENT

### 7.5.1 Purpose

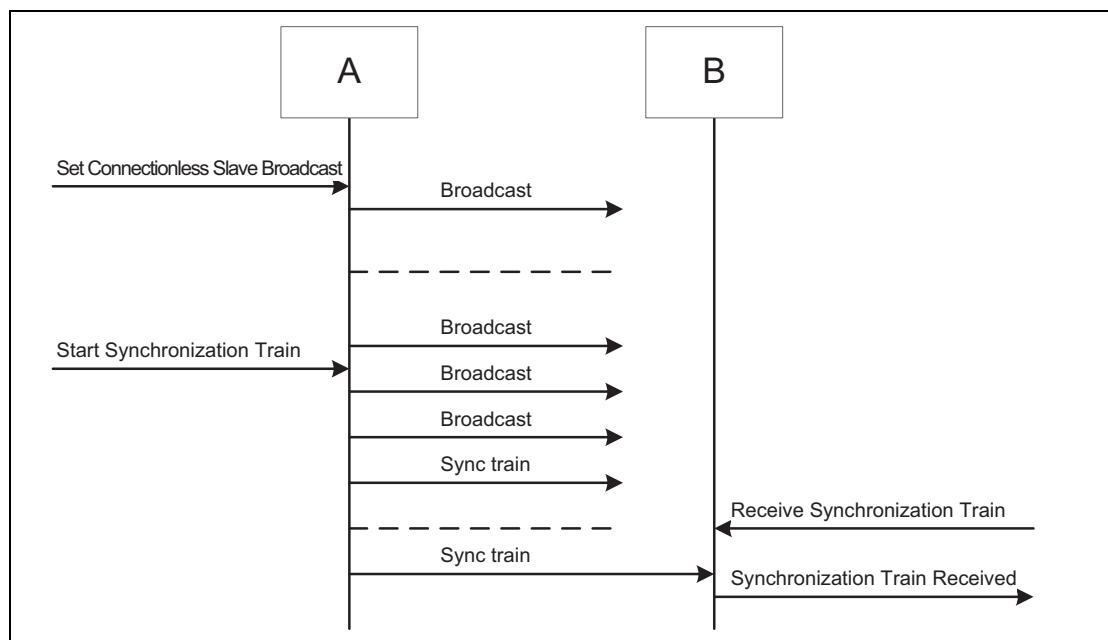
The purpose of the Synchronization Establishment procedure is for a device to receive synchronization train packets using the procedures in [\[Vol. 2\], Part B Section 2.7.3](#)

### 7.5.2 Term on UI Level

'Bluetooth synchronization establishment'

### 7.5.3 Description

In [Figure 7.7](#) the receiving device (B) is attempting to receive synchronization train packets from device (A).



*Figure 7.7: Synchronization establishment procedure*

### 7.5.4 Conditions

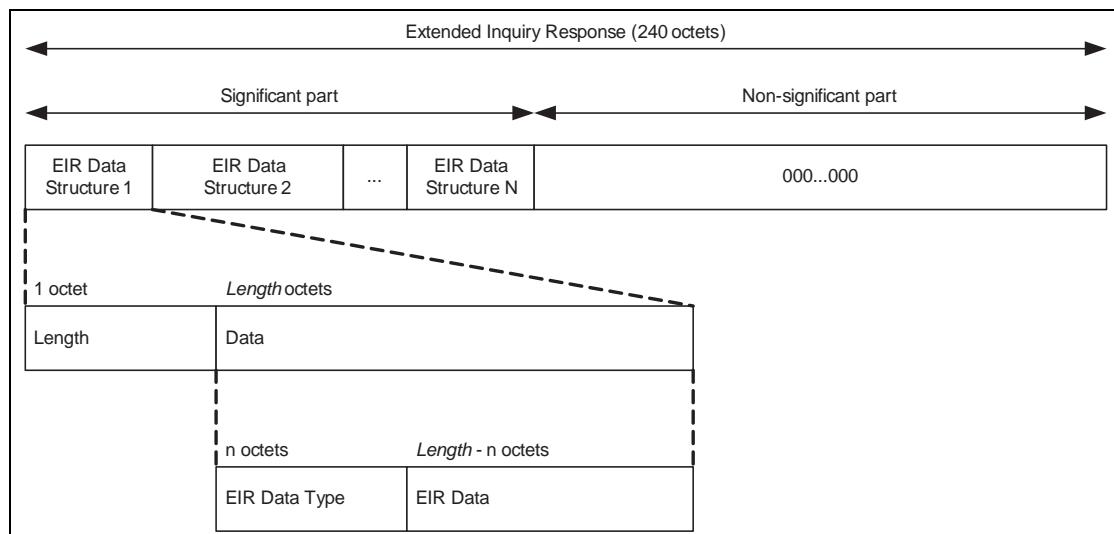
After receiving a synchronization train packet, the receiving device can listen to and receive profile data sent via Connectionless Slave Broadcast by device A.

Note that devices A and B may go through a separate Link Establishment procedure any time they desire to establish an ACL logical transport between each other. They may also use Connectionless Slave Broadcast procedures with an ACL logical transport already established.

The receiving device shall enter the **synchronization scan** substate using a scan interval of  $T_{GAP}(\text{Sync\_Scan\_Interval})$  and a scan window of  $T_{GAP}(\text{Sync\_Scan\_Window})$ .

## 8 EXTENDED INQUIRY RESPONSE DATA FORMAT

The extended inquiry response data format is shown in [Figure 8.1](#). The data is 240 octets and consists of a significant part and a non-significant part. The significant part contains a sequence of data structures. Each data structure shall have a length field of one octet, which contains the Length value, and a data field of Length octets. The first n octets of the data field contain the extended inquiry response (EIR) data type. The content of the remaining Length - n octets in the data field depends on the value of the EIR data type and is called the EIR data. The non-significant part extends the extended inquiry response to 240 octets and shall contain all-zero octets.



*Figure 8.1: Extended Inquiry Response data format*

The extended inquiry response data formats and meanings are defined in [\[Core Specification Supplement\]](#), Part A. The extended inquiry response data type values are defined in the [Assigned Numbers](#) document.

If the length field is set to zero, then the data field has zero octets. This shall only occur to allow an early termination of the tagged data.

To reduce interference, the host should try to minimize the amount of EIR data such that the baseband can use a 1-slot or 3-slot EIR packet. This is advantageous because it reduces interference and maximizes the probability that the EIR packet will be received. If applications on a host provide more than 240 bytes of extended inquiry response data, it is up to the host to limit it to 240 octets.

The EIR data shall be sent during the inquiry response state. EIR data can contain device name, Tx power level, service class UUIDs, as well as manufacturer's data, as defined in [\[Core Specification Supplement\]](#), Part A. In selecting the packet type to be used, FEC (DM1 or DM3) should be considered to maximize the range.

The Host shall include the device name in the EIR data according to the following rules:

1. If the device does not have a device name (i.e., 0 octet) and
  - a) If there is no other data to be sent in the EIR packet, the Host shall send a name tag with zero length and the type field set to indicate that this is the complete name (i.e., total of 2 octets with length = 1).
  - b) If there is other important data to be sent in the EIR packet and a zero octet name tag will not fit, the Host may avoid sending the name tag.
2. If the device has a device name (greater than 0 octet) and
  - a) If it is too long be included in the EIR packet (given the choice of packet type and any other data that is being sent), the Host may send a shortened version of the name (even 0 octet) and shall mark the name as 'shortened' to inform the receiver that a remote name request is required obtain the full name if the name is needed.
  - b) If there are no other data to be sent in the EIR packet (given the choice of packet type selected), the Host shall maximize the length of the device name to be sent, this may be complete or shortened name (e.g., if DM1 packet is chosen and device name characters equates to greater than 15 octets, then host sends first few characters that equates to 15 octets or less with shortened flag).

Note: It is not necessary to understand each and every EIR data type. If the Host does not understand a given EIR data type value it should just skip over Length octets and look for the next EIR data structure.

## 9 OPERATIONAL MODES AND PROCEDURES – LE PHYSICAL TRANSPORT

Several different modes and procedures may be performed simultaneously over an LE physical transport. The following modes and procedures are defined for use over an LE physical transport:

- Broadcast mode and observation procedure
- Discovery modes and procedures
- Connection modes and procedures
- Bonding modes and procedures

Each of the above modes and procedures are independent from each other but are closely related since a combination of the modes and procedures are necessary for most devices to communicate with each other. Both the modes and procedures may be entered or executed respectively as a result of direct user action or autonomously by a device.

The Host shall configure the Controller with its local Link Layer feature information as defined in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 4.6](#) before performing any of the above modes and procedures.

### 9.1 BROADCAST MODE AND OBSERVATION PROCEDURE

The broadcast mode and observation procedure allow two devices to communicate in a unidirectional connectionless manner using the advertising events. The requirements for a device operating in a specific GAP role to support the broadcast mode and observation procedure are defined in [Table 9.1](#).

Broadcast Mode and Observation procedure	Ref.	Broadcaster	Observer
Broadcast mode	<a href="#">9.1.1</a>	M	E
Observation procedure	<a href="#">9.1.2</a>	E	M

*Table 9.1: Broadcast mode and Observation procedure Requirements*

#### 9.1.1 Broadcast Mode

##### 9.1.1.1 Definition

The broadcast mode provides a method for a device to send connectionless data in advertising events.

### 9.1.1.2 Conditions

A device in the broadcast mode shall send data in either non-connectable undirected or scannable undirected advertising events.

The advertising data shall be formatted using the Advertising Data (AD) type format as defined in [[Core Specification Supplement]], Part A, Section 1.3. A device in the broadcast mode shall not set the 'LE General Discoverable Mode' flag or the 'LE Limited Discoverable Mode' flag in the Flags AD Type as defined in [Core Specification Supplement], Part A, Section 1.3.

Note: All data sent by a device in the broadcast mode is considered unreliable since there is no acknowledgement from any device that may have received the data.

## **9.1.2 Observation Procedure**

### 9.1.2.1 Definition

The observation procedure provides a method for a device to receive connectionless data from a device that is sending advertising events.

### 9.1.2.2 Conditions

A device performing the observation procedure may use passive scanning or active scanning to receive advertising events.

A device performing the observation procedure may use active scanning to also receive scan response data sent by any device in the broadcast mode that advertises using scannable undirected advertising events. When a device performing the observation procedure receives a resolvable private address in the advertising event, the device may resolve the private address by using the resolvable private address resolution procedure as defined in [Section 10.8.2.3](#).

Note: In use cases where a device in the broadcast mode sends dynamic data, the receiving device should disable duplicate filtering capability in the Controller so that the Host receives all advertising packets received by the Controller.

## **9.2 DISCOVERY MODES AND PROCEDURES**

All devices shall be in either non-discoverable mode or one of the discoverable modes. A device in the discoverable mode shall be in either the general discoverable mode or the limited discoverable mode. A device in the non-discoverable mode is not discoverable. Devices operating in either the general discoverable mode or the limited discoverable mode can be found by the discovering device. A device that is discovering other devices performs either the limited discovery procedure as defined in [Section 9.2.5](#) or the general discovery procedure as defined in [Section 9.2.6](#).

## 9.2.1 Requirements

Discovery modes and procedures	Ref.	Peripheral	Central
Non-Discoverable mode	<a href="#">9.2.2</a>	M	E
Limited Discoverable mode	<a href="#">9.2.3</a>	O	E
General Discoverable mode	<a href="#">9.2.4</a>	C1	E
Limited Discovery procedure	<a href="#">9.2.5</a>	E	O
General Discovery procedure	<a href="#">9.2.6</a>	E	M
Name Discovery procedure	<a href="#">9.2.7</a>	O	O
C1: if limited discoverable mode is not supported then general discoverable mode is mandatory, else optional.			

Table 9.2: Device discovery requirements

## 9.2.2 Non-Discoverable Mode

### 9.2.2.1 Description

A device configured in non-discoverable mode will not be discovered by any device that is performing either the general discovery procedure or the limited discovery procedure.

### 9.2.2.2 Conditions

A device in the non-discoverable mode that sends advertising events shall not set the ‘LE General Discoverable Mode’ flag or ‘LE Limited Discoverable Mode’ flag in the Flags AD type (see [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.3). A Peripheral device in the non-connectable mode may send non-connectable undirected advertising events or scannable undirected advertising events or may not send advertising packets.

If the Peripheral device in the non-discoverable mode sends non-connectable advertising events or scannable undirected advertising events then it is recommended that the Host configures the Controller as follows:

- The Host should set the advertising filter policy to either ‘process scan and connection requests only from devices in the White List’ or ‘process scan and connection requests from all devices’.
- The Host should set the advertising intervals as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).

## 9.2.3 Limited Discoverable Mode

### 9.2.3.1 Description

Devices configured in the limited discoverable mode are discoverable for a limited period of time by other devices performing the limited or general device discovery procedure. The limited discoverable mode is typically used when a user performs a specific action to make the device discoverable for a limited period of time.

### 9.2.3.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Peripheral role the device may support the limited discoverable mode. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer or Central role the device shall not support the limited discoverable mode.

A device in the limited discoverable mode sends either non-connectable advertising events, scannable undirected advertising events or connectable undirected advertising events.

While in the limited discoverable mode the device shall send advertising event types with the advertising data including the Flags AD type as defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.3 with all the following flags set as described:

- The LE Limited Discoverable Mode flag set to one.
- The LE General Discoverable Mode flag set to zero.
- For a device of the LE-only device type with all the following flags set as described:
  - a) The 'BR/EDR Not Supported' flag to set one.
  - b) The 'Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller)' flag set to zero.
  - c) The 'Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host)' flag set to zero.

The advertising data should also include the following AD types to enable a faster connectivity experience:

- TX Power Level AD type defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.5.
- Local Name AD type defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.2.
- Service UUIDs AD type defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.1.
- Slave Connection Interval Range AD type as defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.9.

Devices shall remain in the limited discoverable mode no longer than  $T_{GAP}(\text{lim\_adv\_timeout})$ .

While a device is in limited discoverable mode the Host configures the Controller as follows:

- The Host shall set the advertising filter policy to ‘process scan and connection requests from all devices’.
- The Host should set the advertising intervals as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).

The device shall remain in limited discoverable mode until a connection is established or the Host terminates the mode.

If a device is in the limited discoverable mode and in the undirected connectable mode the advertising interval values should be set as defined in [Section 9.3.4](#)

A device in the limited discoverable mode shall not set both the LE Limited Discoverable Flag and the LE General Discoverable Flag to one.

Note: Data that change frequently should be placed in the advertising data and static data should be placed in the scan response data.

Note: The choice of advertising interval is a trade-off between power consumption and device discovery time.

## 9.2.4 General Discoverable Mode

### 9.2.4.1 Description

Devices configured in general discoverable mode are intended to be discoverable by devices performing the general discovery procedure. The general discoverable mode is typically used when the device is intending to be discoverable for a long period of time.

### 9.2.4.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Peripheral role the device may support the general discoverable mode. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer or Central role the device shall not support the general discoverable mode.

A device in the general discoverable mode sends either non-connectable advertising events, scannable undirected advertising events, or connectable undirected advertising events.

While in general discoverable mode the device shall send advertising events with the advertising data including the Flags AD data type as defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.3 with all the following flags set as described:

- The LE Limited Discoverable Mode flag set to zero.
- The LE General Discoverable Mode flag set to one.
- For a device of the LE-only device type with all the following flags set as described:
  - a) The ‘BR/EDR Not Supported’ flag set to one.
  - b) The ‘Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller)’ flag set to zero.
  - c) The ‘Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host)’ flag set to zero.

The advertising data should also include the following AD types to enable a faster connectivity experience:

- TX Power Level AD type as defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.5.
- Local Name AD type as defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.2.
- Service UUIDs AD type as defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.1.
- Slave Connection Interval Range AD type as defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.9.

While a device is in general discoverable mode the Host configures the Controller as follows:

- The Host shall set the advertising filter policy to ‘process scan and connection requests from all devices’.
- The Host should set the advertising intervals as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).

The device shall remain in general discoverable mode until a connection is established or the Host terminates the mode.

If a device is in the general discoverable mode and in the directed connectable mode or the non-connectable mode, the advertising interval values should be set as defined in [Section 9.3.3](#).

A device in the general discoverable mode shall not set both the LE Limited Discoverable Flag and the LE General Discoverable Flag to one.

Note: Data that change frequently should be placed in the advertising data and static data should be placed in the scan response data.

Note: The choice of advertising interval is a trade-off between power consumption and device discovery time.

## 9.2.5 Limited Discovery Procedure

### 9.2.5.1 Description

A device performing the limited discovery procedure receives the device address, advertising data and scan response data from devices in the limited discoverable mode only.

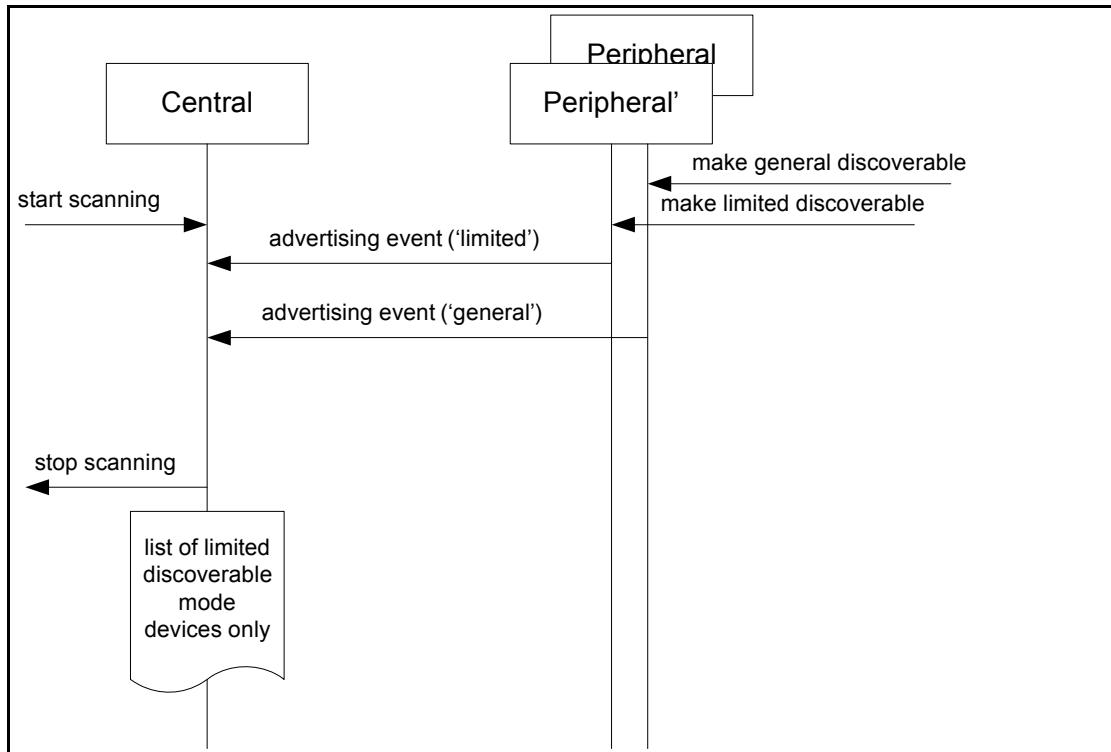


Figure 9.1: A Central performing limited discovery procedure discovering Peripherals in the limited discoverable mode

### 9.2.5.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Central role the device may support the limited discovery procedure. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer or Peripheral role the device shall not support the limited discovery procedure.

When a Host performs the limited discovery procedure, the Host configures the Controller as follows:

1. The Host shall set the scanner filter policy to ‘process all advertising packets’.
2. The Host should set the scan interval and scan window as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).
3. The Host should configure the Controller to use active scanning.

The Host shall begin scanning for advertising packets and should continue for a minimum of  $T_{GAP}(\text{lim\_disc\_scan\_min})$ , unless the host ends the limited discovery procedure.

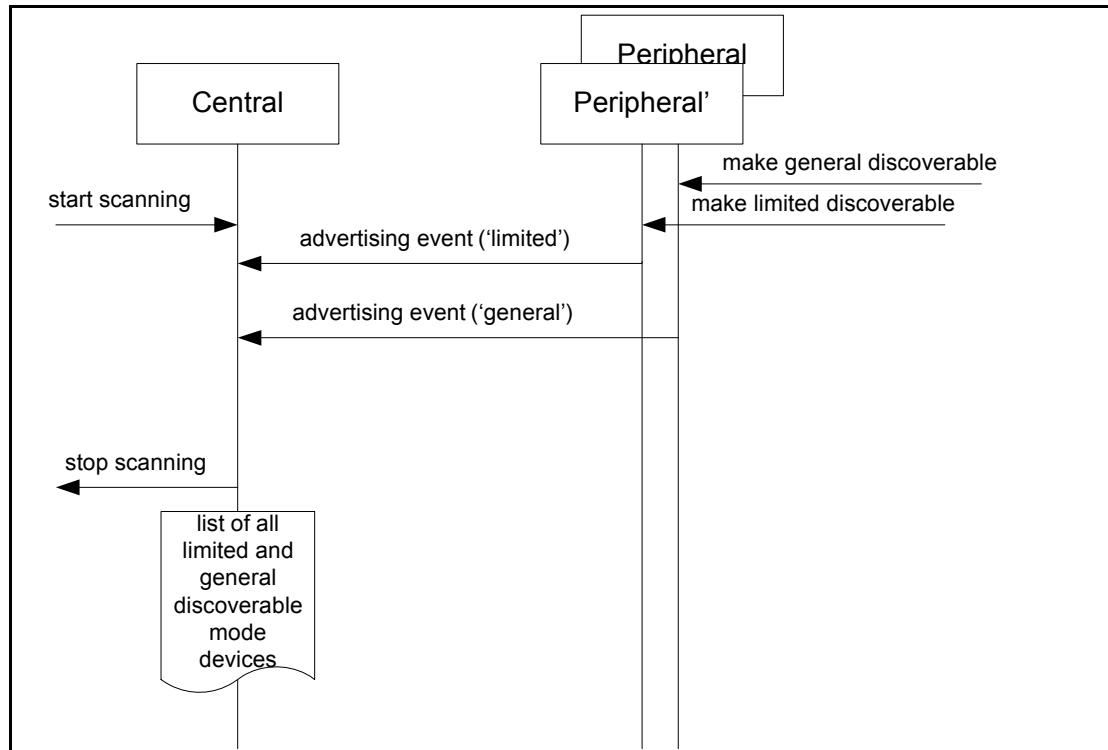
The Host shall check for the Flags AD type in the advertising data. If the Flags AD type is present and the LE Limited Discoverable Flag is set to one then the Host shall consider the device as a discovered device, otherwise the advertising data shall be ignored. The Flag AD type is defined in [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.3. The advertising data of the discovered device may contain data with other AD types, e.g. Service UUIDs AD type, TX Power Level AD type, Local Name AD type, Slave Connection Interval Range AD type. The Host may use the data in performing any of the connection establishment procedures.

The host shall ignore the 'Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller)' and 'Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host)' bits in the Flags AD type.

## 9.2.6 General Discovery Procedure

### 9.2.6.1 Description

A device performing the general discovery procedure receives the device address, advertising data and scan response data from devices in the limited discoverable mode or the general discoverable mode.



*Figure 9.2: A Central performing general discovery procedure discovering Peripherals in the limited discoverable mode and general discoverable mode*

### 9.2.6.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Central role the device shall support the general discovery procedure. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer or Peripheral role the device shall not support the general discovery procedure.

When a Host performs the general discovery procedure, the Host configures the Controller as follows:

1. The Host shall set the scanner filter policy to 'process all advertising packets'.
2. The Host should set the scan interval and scan window as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).
3. The Host should configure the Controller to use active scanning.

The Host shall begin scanning for advertising packets and should continue for a minimum of  $T_{GAP}(\text{gen\_disc\_scan\_min})$ . The procedure may be terminated early by the Host.

The Host shall check for the Flags AD type in the advertising data. If the Flags AD type (see [[Core Specification Supplement](#)], Part A, Section 1.3) is present and either the LE General Discoverable Mode flag is set to one or the LE Limited Discoverable Mode flag is set to one then the Host shall consider the device as a discovered device, otherwise the advertising data shall be ignored. The advertising data of the discovered device may contain data with other AD types, e.g. Service UUIDs AD type, TX Power Level AD type, Local Name AD type, Slave Connection Interval Range AD type. The Host may use the data in performing any of the connection establishment procedures as defined in [Section 9.3](#).

The host shall ignore the 'Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller)' and 'Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host)' bits in the Flags AD type.

### **9.2.7 Name Discovery Procedure**

#### 9.2.7.1 Description

The name discovery procedure is used to obtain the Bluetooth Device Name of a remote connectable device.

#### 9.2.7.2 Conditions

If the complete device name is not acquired while performing either the limited discovery procedure or the general discovery procedure, then the name discovery procedure may be performed.

The name discovery procedure shall be performed as follows:

1. The Host shall establish a connection using one of the connection establishment procedures as defined in [Section 9.3](#).

2. The Host shall read the device name characteristic using the GATT procedure Read Using Characteristic UUID [\[Vol. 3\], Part G Section 4.8.2](#)
3. The connection may be terminated after the GATT procedure has completed.

## 9.3 CONNECTION MODES AND PROCEDURES

The connection modes and procedures allow a device to establish a connection to another device.

When devices are connected, the parameters of the connection can be updated with the Connection Parameter Update procedure. The connected device may terminate the connection using the Terminate Connection procedure. The requirements for a device to support the connection modes and procedures are defined in [Table 9.3](#).

### 9.3.1 Requirements

Connection Modes and Procedures	Ref.	Peripheral	Central	Broadcaster	Observer
Non-connectable mode	<a href="#">9.3.2</a>	M	E	M	M
Directed connectable mode	<a href="#">9.3.3</a>	O	E	E	E
Undirected connectable mode	<a href="#">9.3.4</a>	M	E	E	E
Auto connection establishment procedure	<a href="#">9.3.5</a>	E	O	E	E
General connection establishment procedure	<a href="#">9.3.6</a>	E	C1	E	E
Selective connection establishment procedure	<a href="#">9.3.7</a>	E	O	E	E
Direct connection establishment procedure	<a href="#">9.3.8</a>	E	M	E	E
Connection parameter update procedure	<a href="#">9.3.9</a>	O	M	E	E
Terminate connection procedure	<a href="#">9.3.10</a>	M	M	E	E

C1: Mandatory if privacy feature is supported, else optional

*Table 9.3: Connection modes and procedures requirements*

### 9.3.2 Non-Connectable Mode

#### 9.3.2.1 Description

A device in the non-connectable mode shall not allow a connection to be established.

#### 9.3.2.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Peripheral role the device shall support the non-connectable mode. A device in the Broadcaster or Observer role cannot establish a connection, therefore the device is considered to support the non-connectable mode.

A Peripheral device in the non-connectable mode may send non-connectable undirected advertising events or scannable undirected advertising events. In this case it is recommended that the Host configures the Controller as follows:

- The Host should set the advertising filter policy to either ‘process scan and connection requests only from devices in the White List’ or ‘process scan and connection requests from all devices’.
- The Host should set the advertising intervals as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).

### 9.3.3 Directed Connectable Mode

#### 9.3.3.1 Description

A device in the directed connectable mode shall accept a connection request from a known peer device performing the auto connection establishment procedure or the general connection establishment procedure.

#### 9.3.3.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Peripheral role the device may support the directed connectable mode. This mode shall only be used if the device has a known peer device address. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer, or the Central role the device shall not support the direct connectable mode.

The Host shall configure the Controller to send directed connectable advertising events.

### 9.3.4 Undirected Connectable Mode

#### 9.3.4.1 Description

A device in the undirected connectable mode shall accept a connection request from a device performing the auto connection establishment procedure or the general connection establishment procedure.

#### 9.3.4.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Peripheral role the device shall support the undirected connectable mode. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer, or the Central role the device shall not support the undirected connectable mode.

The Host should configure the Controller as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#). The Host shall configure the Controller to send undirected connectable advertising events.

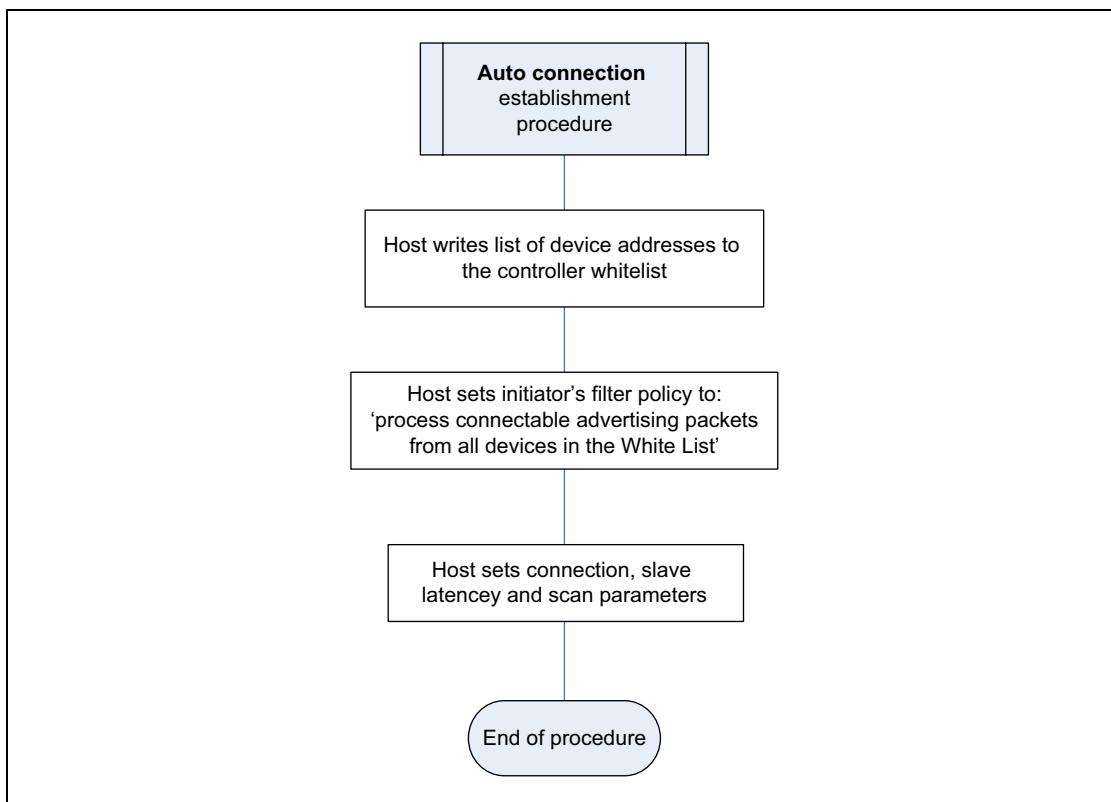
### 9.3.5 Auto Connection Establishment Procedure

#### 9.3.5.1 Description

The auto connection establishment procedure allows the Host to configure the Controller to autonomously establish a connection with one or more devices in the directed connectable mode or the undirected connectable mode. White Lists in the Controller are used to store device addresses. This procedure uses the initiator White List in the Controller. The Controller autonomously establishes a connection with a device with the device address that matches the address stored in the White List.

#### 9.3.5.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Central role the device may support the auto connection establishment procedure. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer, or Peripheral role the device shall not support the auto connection establishment procedure.



*Figure 9.3: Flow chart for a device performing the auto connection establishment procedure*

When a Host performs the auto connection establishment procedure, the Host configures the Controller as follows:

1. The Host shall write the list of device addresses that are to be auto connected to into the White List.
2. The Host shall set the initiator filter policy to 'process connectable advertising packets from all devices in the White List'.
3. The Host should set the scan interval and scan window as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).
4. The Host should set connection parameters as defined in [Section 9.3.12](#).

This procedure is terminated when a connection is established or when the Host terminates the procedure.

### 9.3.6 General Connection Establishment Procedure

#### 9.3.6.1 Description

The general connection establishment procedure allows the Host to establish a connection with a set of known peer devices in the directed connectable mode or the undirected connectable mode.

### 9.3.6.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Central role the device may support the general connection establishment procedure. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer, or Peripheral role the device shall not support the general connection establishment procedure.

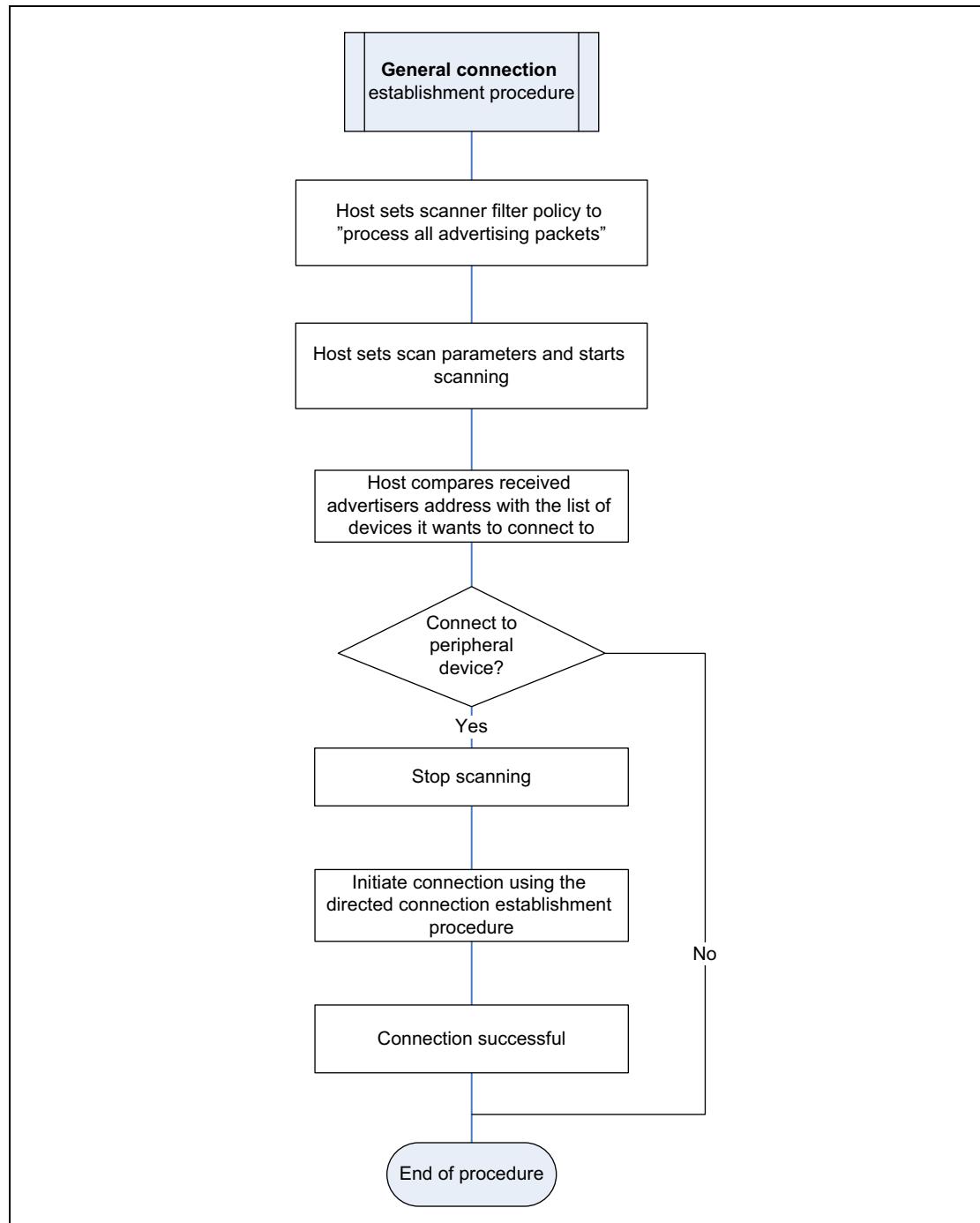


Figure 9.4: Flow chart for a device performing the general connection establishment procedure

When a Host performs the general connection establishment procedure, the Host configures the Controller as follows:

1. The Host shall set the scanner filter policy to ‘process all advertising packets’.
2. The Host should set the scan interval as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).
3. The Host should set the scan window as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).
4. The Host shall start scanning.
5. The Host should set connection parameters as defined in [Section 9.3.12](#).

When the Host discovers a device to which the Host may attempt to connect, the Host shall stop the scanning, and initiate a connection using the direct connection establishment procedure.

This procedure is terminated when a connection is established or when the Host terminates the procedure.

### 9.3.7 Selective Connection Establishment Procedure

#### 9.3.7.1 Description

The selective connection establishment procedure allows the Host to establish a connection with the Host selected connection configuration parameters with a set of devices in the White List.

#### 9.3.7.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Central role the device may support the selective connection establishment procedure. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer, or the Peripheral role the device shall not support the selective connection establishment procedure. [Figure 9.5](#) shows the flow chart for a device performing the selective connection establishment procedure.

When a Host performs the selective connection establishment procedure, the Host configures the Controller as follows:

1. The Host shall write the list of device addresses that are to be selectively connected to into the White List.
2. The Host shall set the scanner filter policy to ‘process advertising packets only from devices in the White List’.
3. The Host should set the scan interval as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).
4. The Host should set the scan window as defined in [Section 9.3.11](#).
5. The Host shall start active scanning or passive scanning.

When the Host discovers one of the peer devices it is connecting to, the Host shall stop scanning, and initiate a connection using the direct connection establishment procedure with the connection configuration parameters for that peer device.

This procedure is terminated when a connection is established or when the Host terminates the procedure.

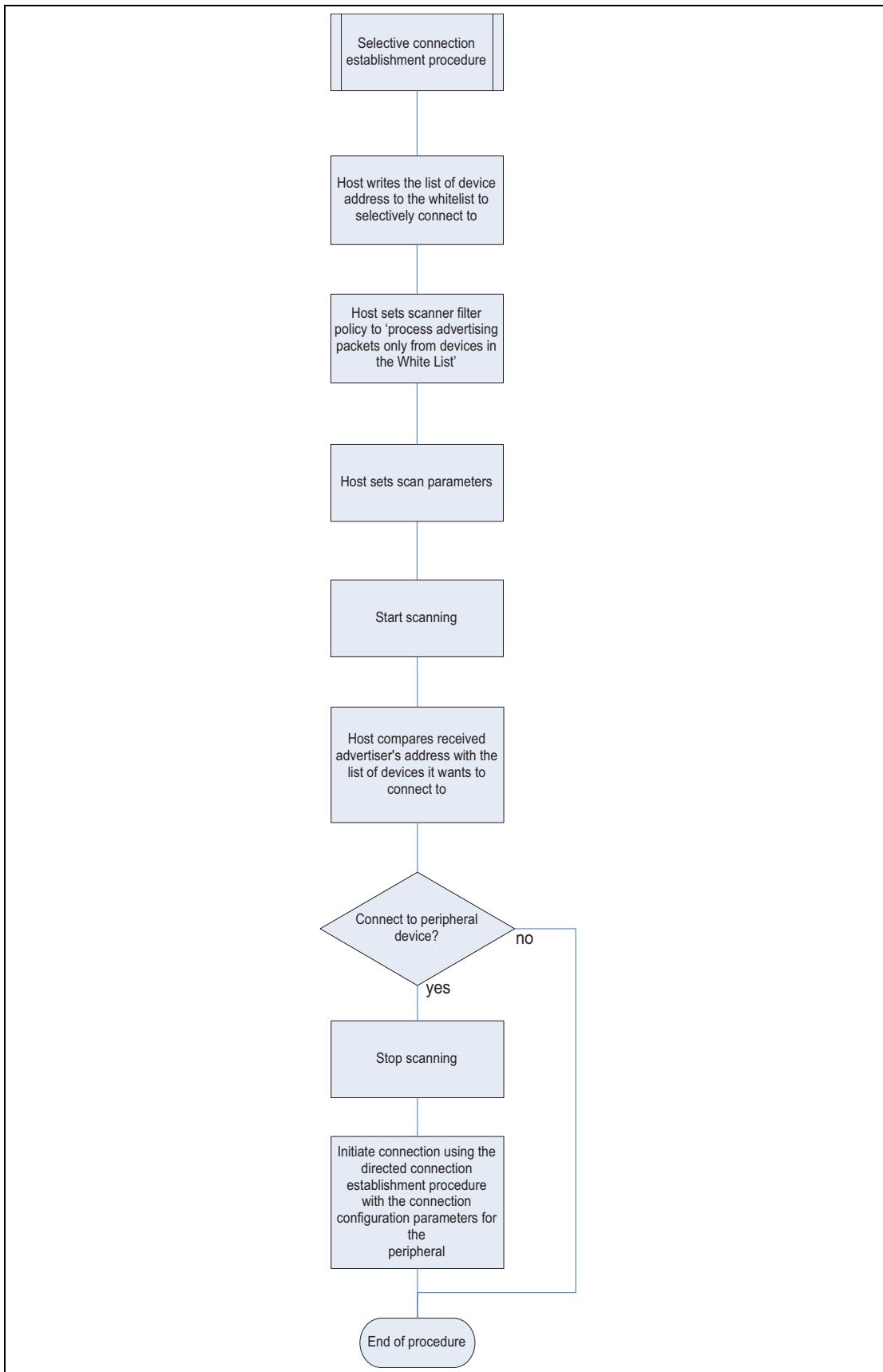


Figure 9.5: Flow chart for a device performing the selective connection establishment procedure

### 9.3.8 Direct Connection Establishment Procedure

#### 9.3.8.1 Description

The direct connection establishment procedure allows the Host to establish a connection with the Host selected connection configuration parameters with a single peer device.

#### 9.3.8.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Central role the device shall support the direct connection establishment procedure. While a device is in the Broadcaster, Observer, or the Peripheral role the device shall not support the direct connection establishment procedure.

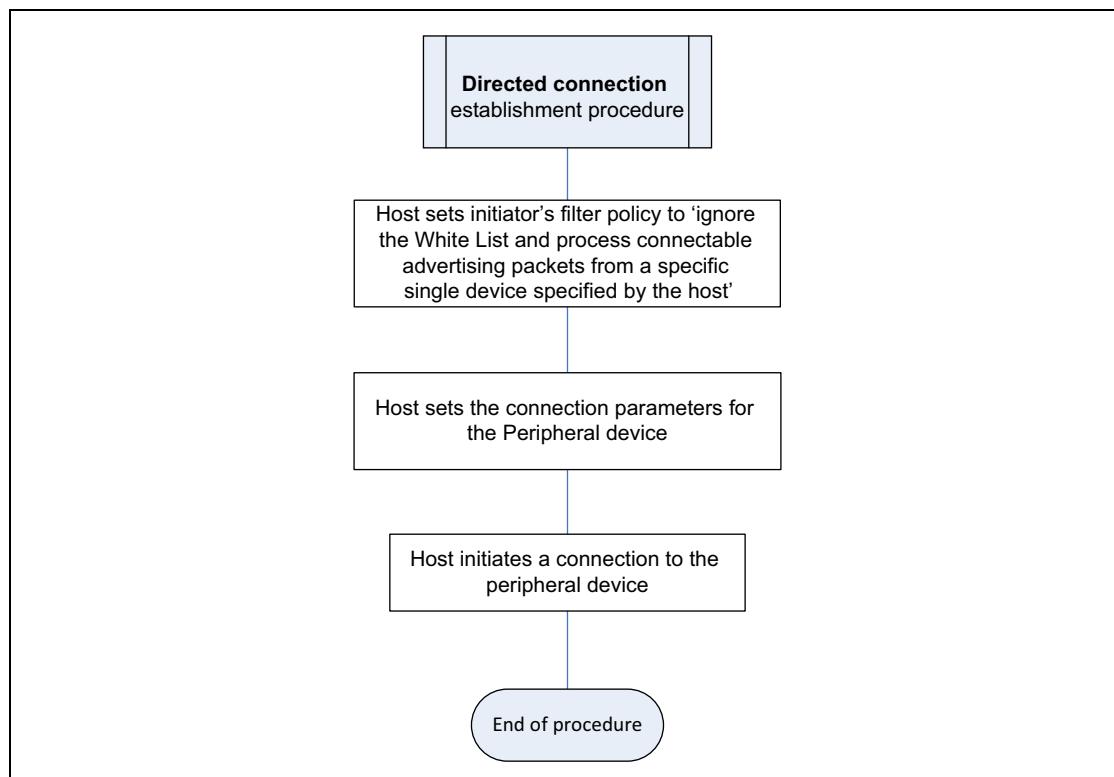


Figure 9.6: Flow chart for a device performing the directed connection establishment procedure

When a Host performs the direct connection establishment procedure, the Host configures the Controller as follows:

1. The Host shall set the initiator filter policy to 'ignore the White List and process connectable advertising packets from a specific single device specified by the Host'.
2. The Host shall set the peer address to the device address of the specific single device.
3. The Host should set connection parameters as defined in [Section 9.3.12](#).

The Host shall initiate a connection.

This procedure is terminated when a connection is established or when the Host terminates the procedure.

### 9.3.9 Connection Parameter Update Procedure

#### 9.3.9.1 *Description*

The connection parameter update procedure allows a Peripheral or Central to update the Link Layer connection parameters of an established connection.

#### 9.3.9.2 *Conditions*

While a device is in the Central role the device shall support the connection parameter update procedure. While a device is in the Peripheral role the device may support the connection parameter update procedure. While a device is in the Broadcaster or the Observer role the device shall not support the connection parameter update procedure.

A Central initiating the connection parameter update procedure shall use the Link Layer Connection Update procedure defined in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 5.1.1](#) with the required connection parameters if either the Central or the Peripheral does not support the Connection Parameters Request Link Layer Control procedure.

If both the Central and Peripheral support the Connection Parameters Request Link Layer control procedure, then the Central or Peripheral initiating the connection parameter update procedure shall use the Connection Parameters Request Link Layer Control procedure defined in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 5.1.7](#) with the required connection parameters.

If either the Central or the Peripheral does not support the Connection Parameters Request Link Layer Control procedure, then the Peripheral initiating the connection parameter update procedure shall use the L2CAP Connection Parameter Update Request command defined in [\[Vol. 1\], Part A Section 4.2](#) with the required connection parameters. The Peripheral shall not send an L2CAP Connection Parameter Update Request command within  $T_{GAP}(\text{conn\_param\_timeout})$  of an L2CAP Connection Parameter Update Response being received. When the Central accepts the Peripheral initiated Connection Parameter Update, the Central should initiate the Link Layer Connection Update procedure defined in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 5.1.1](#) with the required connection parameters within  $T_{GAP}(\text{conn\_param\_timeout})$ .

If the requested or updated connection parameters are unacceptable to the Central or Peripheral then it may disconnect the connection with the error code 0x3B (Unacceptable Connection Parameters). Devices should be tolerant of connection parameters given to them by the remote device.

### 9.3.10 Terminate Connection Procedure

#### 9.3.10.1 Description

The terminate connection procedure allows a Host to terminate the connection with a peer device.

#### 9.3.10.2 Conditions

Centrals and Peripherals shall support the terminate connection procedure. Broadcasters and Observers shall not support the terminate connection procedure.

The Host initiating the terminate connection procedure shall use the Link Layer Termination Procedure defined in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 5.1.6](#).

### 9.3.11 Connection Establishment Timing Parameters

#### 9.3.11.1 Description

The connection establishment timing parameters are used during initial connection establishment between a Central and a Peripheral device.

A Central device should use one of the GAP connection establishment procedures to initiate a connection to a Peripheral device in a connectable mode. The procedures and modes that may use these timing parameters are defined in [Section 9.3.4](#) through [Section 9.3.8](#).

#### 9.3.11.2 Conditions

A Central device starting a GAP connection establishment procedure should use the recommended scan interval  $T_{GAP}(\text{scan\_fast\_interval})$  and scan window  $T_{GAP}(\text{scan\_fast\_window})$  for  $T_{GAP}(\text{scan\_fast\_period})$ .

A Central device that is background scanning should use the recommended scan interval  $T_{GAP}(\text{scan\_slow\_interval1})$  and scan window  $T_{GAP}(\text{scan\_slow\_window1})$ . Alternatively the central may use  $T_{GAP}(\text{scan\_slow\_interval2})$  and scan window  $T_{GAP}(\text{scan\_slow\_window2})$ .

A Peripheral device entering any of the following GAP Modes should use the recommended advertising interval  $T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_fast\_interval1})$  for  $T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_fast\_period})$ :

- Undirected Connectable Mode
- Limited Discoverable Mode and sending connectable undirected advertising events
- General Discoverable Mode and sending connectable undirected advertising events

- Directed Connectable Mode and sending low duty cycle directed advertising events

A Peripheral device when entering any of the following GAP Modes and sending either non-connectable advertising events or scannable undirected advertising events should use the recommended advertising interval  $T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_fast\_interval2})$  for  $T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_fast\_period})$ :

- Non-Discoverable Mode
- Non-Connectable Mode
- Limited Discoverable Mode
- General Discoverable Mode

A Peripheral device that is background advertising in any GAP Mode other than GAP Directed Connectable Mode with high duty cycle directed advertising events should use the recommended advertising interval  $T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_slow\_interval})$ .

### 9.3.12 Connection Interval Timing Parameters

#### 9.3.12.1 Description

The connection interval timing parameters are used within a connection. Initial connection interval is used to ensure procedures such as bonding, encryption setup and service discovery are completed quickly. The connection interval should be changed to the Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters after initiating procedures are complete.

#### 9.3.12.2 Conditions

The Central device should either read the Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic (see [Section 12.3](#)) or retrieve the parameters from advertising data (see [Section 12.3](#)).

The connection interval should be set to  $T_{GAP}(\text{initial\_conn\_interval})$  and slave latency should be set to zero. These parameters should be used until the Central device has no further pending actions to perform or until the Peripheral device performs a Connection Parameter Update procedure (see [Section 9.3.9](#)).

After the Central device has no further pending actions to perform and the Peripheral device has not initiated any other actions within  $T_{GAP}(\text{conn\_pause\_central})$ , then the Central device should invoke the Connection Parameter Update procedure (see [Section 9.3.9](#)) and change the connection intervals as defined in the Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters.

If the Central device does not have the Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters, then the Central device may choose the connection parameters to be used.

After the Peripheral device has no further pending actions to perform and the Central device has not initiated any other actions within  $T_{GAP}(\text{conn\_pause\_central})$ , then the Peripheral device may perform a Connection Parameter Update procedure (see [Section 9.3.9](#)). The Peripheral device should not perform a Connection Parameter Update procedure within  $T_{GAP}(\text{conn\_pause\_peripheral})$  after establishing a connection.

At any time a key refresh or encryption setup procedure is required and the current connection interval is greater than  $T_{GAP}(\text{initial\_conn\_interval})$ , the key refresh or encryption setup procedure should be preceded with a Connection Parameter Update procedure (see [Section 9.3.9](#)). The connection interval should be set to  $T_{GAP}(\text{initial\_conn\_interval})$  and slave latency should be set to zero. This fast connection interval should be maintained until the key refresh or encryption setup procedure is complete. It should then switch to the Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters.

## 9.4 BONDING MODES AND PROCEDURES

Bonding allows two connected devices to exchange and store security and identity information to create a trusted relationship. The security and identity information as defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.4.1](#) is also known as the bonding information. When the devices store the bonding information, it is known as the phrases ‘devices have bonded’ or ‘a bond is created’.

There are two modes for bonding, non-bondable mode and bondable mode. Bonding may only occur between two devices in bondable mode. The requirements for a device to support the bonding modes and procedure are defined in [Table 9.4](#).

### 9.4.1 Requirements

Bonding	Ref.	Peripheral	Central
Non-Bondable mode	<a href="#">9.4.2</a>	M	M
Bondable mode	<a href="#">9.4.3</a>	O	O
Bonding procedure	<a href="#">9.4.4</a>	O	O

*Table 9.4: Bonding Compliance Requirements*

### 9.4.2 Non-Bondable Mode

#### 9.4.2.1 Description

A device in the non-bondable mode does not allow a bond to be created with a peer device.

#### 9.4.2.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Peripheral or the Central role the device shall support the non-bondable mode. If a device does not support pairing as defined in the Security Manager section then it is considered to be in non-bondable mode.

If Security Manager pairing is supported, the Host shall set the Bonding\_Flags to ‘No Bonding’ as defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 3.5.1](#) and bonding information shall not be exchanged or stored.

### **9.4.3 Bondable Mode**

#### 9.4.3.1 Description

A device in the bondable mode allows a bond to be created with a peer device in the bondable mode.

#### 9.4.3.2 Conditions

The Host shall set the Bonding\_Flags to ‘General Bonding’ during the pairing procedure.

## 9.4.4 Bonding Procedure

### 9.4.4.1 Description

The bonding procedure may be performed when a non-bonded device tries to access a service that requires bonding. The bonding procedure may be performed for the purpose of creating a bond between two devices.

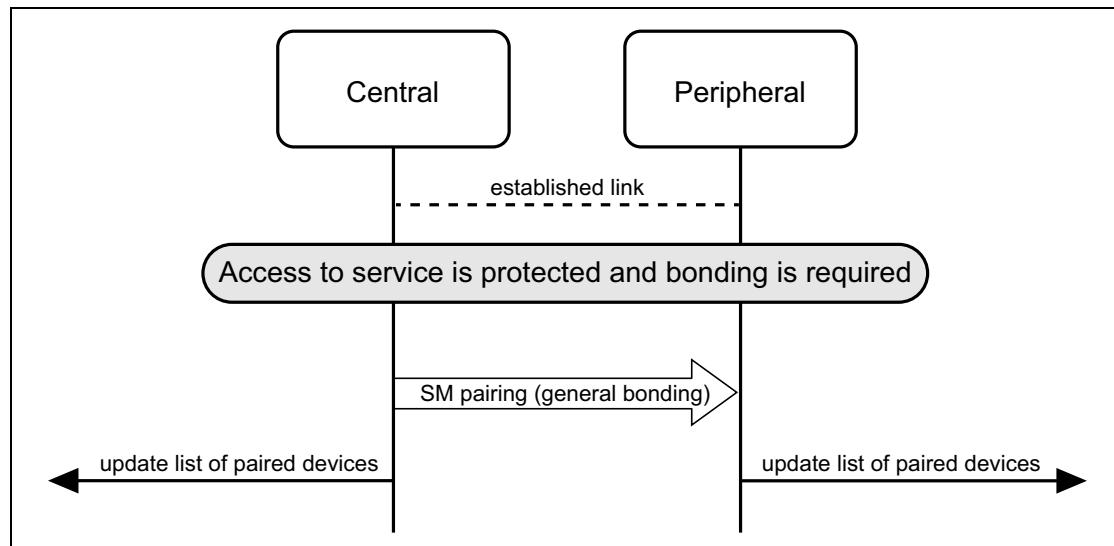


Figure 9.7: The Bonding procedure

### 9.4.4.2 Conditions

While a device is in the Peripheral or the Central role the device may support the Bonding procedure. While a device is in the Broadcaster or the Observer role the device shall not support the bonding procedure.

The Host of the Central initiates the pairing process as defined in [Vol. 3], Part C Section 2.1 with the Bonding\_Flags set to Bonding as defined in [Vol. 3], Part H Section 3.5.1. If the peer device is in the bondable mode, the devices shall exchange and store the bonding information in the security database.

If a device supports the generation of resolvable private addresses as defined in Section 10.8.2.2, the Host should send its IRK to the peer device and request the IRK of the peer device during the pairing procedure. The Host can abort the pairing procedure if the authentication requirements are not sufficient to distribute the IRK.

## 10 SECURITY ASPECTS – LE PHYSICAL TRANSPORT

This section defines the modes and procedures that relate to the security of a connection. The following modes and procedures are defined:

- LE security mode 1
- LE security mode 2
- Authentication procedure
- Authorization procedure
- Connection data signing procedure
- Authenticate signed data procedure

Requirements for a device to support the LE security modes and procedures is shown in [Table 10.1](#).

### 10.1 REQUIREMENTS

Security Modes and Procedures	Ref.	Broadcaster	Observer	Peripheral	Central
LE Security mode 1	<a href="#">10.2.1</a>	E	E	O	O
LE Security mode 2	<a href="#">10.2.2</a>	E	E	O	O
Authentication procedure	<a href="#">10.3</a>	E	E	O	O
Authorization procedure	<a href="#">10.5</a>	E	E	O	O
Connection data signing procedure	<a href="#">10.4.1</a>	E	E	O	O
Authenticate signed data procedure	<a href="#">10.4.2</a>	E	E	O	O

*Table 10.1: Requirements related to security modes and procedures*

### 10.2 LE SECURITY MODES

The security requirements of a device, a service or a service request are expressed in terms of a security mode and security level. Each service or service request may have its own security requirement. The device may also have a security requirement. A physical connection between two devices shall operate in only one security mode.

There are two LE security modes, LE security mode 1 and LE security mode 2.

### 10.2.1 LE Security Mode 1

LE security mode 1 has three security levels:

1. No security (No authentication and no encryption)
2. Unauthenticated pairing with encryption
3. Authenticated pairing with encryption

A connection operating in LE security mode 1 level 2 shall also satisfy the security requirements for LE security mode 1 level 1.

A connection operating in LE security mode 1 level 3 shall also satisfy the security requirements for LE security mode 1 level 2 or LE security mode 1 level 1.

A connection operating in LE security mode 1 level 3 shall also satisfy the security requirements for LE security mode 2.

### 10.2.2 LE Security Mode 2

LE security mode 2 has two security levels:

1. Unauthenticated pairing with data signing
2. Authenticated pairing with data signing

LE security mode 2 shall only be used for connection based data signing.

Data signing as defined in [Section 10.4](#) shall not be used when a connection is operating in LE security mode 1 level 2 or LE security mode 1 level 3.

### 10.2.3 Mixed Security Modes Requirements

If there are requirements for both LE security mode 1 and LE security mode 2 level 2 for a given physical link then LE security mode 1 level 3 shall be used.

If there are requirements for both LE security mode 1 level 3 and LE security mode 2 for a given physical link then LE security mode 1 level 3 shall be used.

If there are requirements for both LE security mode 1 level 2 and LE security mode 2 level 1 for a given physical link then LE security mode 1 level 2 shall be used.

## 10.3 AUTHENTICATION PROCEDURE

The authentication procedure describes how the required security is established when a device initiates a service request to a remote device and when a device receives a service request from a remote device. The authentication procedure covers LE security mode 1. The authentication procedure shall only be initiated after a connection has been established.

LE security mode 2 pertains to the use of data signing and is covered in [Section 10.4](#).

Authentication in LE security mode 1 is achieved by enabling encryption as defined in [Section 10.6](#). The security of the encryption is impacted by the type of pairing performed. There are two types of pairing: authenticated pairing or unauthenticated pairing. Authenticated pairing involves performing the pairing procedure defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.1](#) with the authentication set to ‘MITM protection’. Unauthenticated pairing involves performing the pairing procedure with authentication set to ‘No MITM protection’.

Note: In this section, the terms “authenticated pairing” and “unauthenticated pairing” refer to the security method used to perform pairing and are not related to the authentication of previously bonded devices during a reconnection.

[Section 10.3.1](#) specifies the authentication procedure when a device responds to a service request. [Section 10.3.2](#) specifies the authentication procedure when a device initiates a service request.

### 10.3.1 Responding to a Service Request

In this section the local device is the device responding to a service request made by a remote device. In the L2CAP protocol the local device responds with a connection response to a remote device making a connection request. In GATT, the local device is the GATT server and the remote device is the GATT client.

When a local device receives a service request from a remote device, it shall respond with an error code if the service request is denied. The error code is dependent on whether the current connection is encrypted or not and on the type of pairing that was performed to create the LTK to be used.

When a local device receives a service request from a remote device it shall behave according to the following rules:

- The local device’s security database specifies the security settings required to accept a service request. If no encryption and no data signing are required, the service request shall be accepted. If encryption is required the local device must send an error code as defined in [Table 10.2](#). If no encryption is required, but data signing is required, then the local device behavior is as defined in [Section 10.4](#).

*Generic Access Profile*

- If an LTK is not available, the service request shall be rejected with the error code “Insufficient Authentication”.

Note: When the link is not encrypted, the error code “Insufficient Authentication” does not indicate that MITM protection is required.

- If an LTK is available and encryption is required (LE security mode 1) but encryption is not enabled, the service request shall be rejected with the error code “Insufficient Encryption”. If the encryption is enabled with insufficient key size then the service request shall be rejected with the error code “Insufficient Encryption Key Size.”
- If an authenticated pairing is required but only an unauthenticated pairing has occurred and the link is currently encrypted, the service request shall be rejected with the error code “Insufficient Authentication.”

Note: When unauthenticated pairing has occurred and the link is currently encrypted, the error code “Insufficient Authentication” indicates that MITM protection is required.

The local device will respond with the minimum security level required for access to its services. If the local device has no security requirement it should default to the minimum security level that the local device is capable of as defined in pairing phase 1, (see [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.1](#)).

A local device shall not require an authenticated pairing (MITM) if the local device does not support the required IO capabilities or OOB data<sup>1</sup>.

The local device responds to a service request from a remote device are summarized in [Table 10.2](#).

Link Encryption State	Local Device's Access Requirement for Service	Local Device Pairing Status		
		No LTK	Unauthenticated LTK	Authenticated LTK
Unencrypted	<b>None</b>	Request succeeds	Request succeeds	Request succeeds
	<b>Encryption, No MITM Protection</b>	Error Response = Insufficient Authentication	Error Response = Insufficient Encryption	Error Response = Insufficient Encryption
	<b>Encryption, MITM Protection</b>	Error Response = Insufficient Authentication	Error Response = Insufficient Encryption	Error Response = Insufficient Encryption

*Table 10.2: Local device responds to a service request*

1. Note that if an OOB mechanism is used, the level of MITM protection is dependent upon the properties of the OOB communications channel. See [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.3.5.1](#) for more information

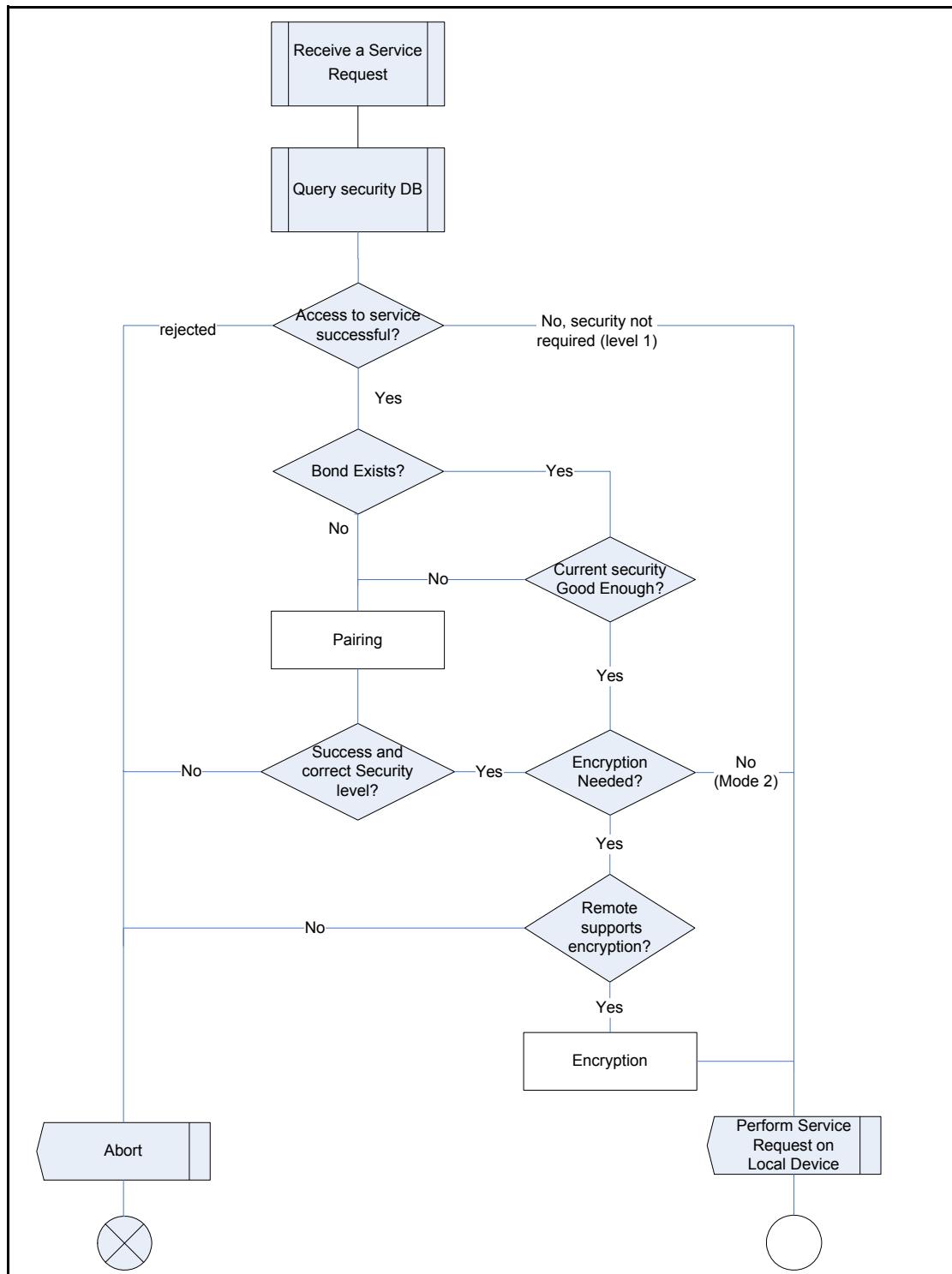
## Generic Access Profile



Link Encryption State	Local Device's Access Requirement for Service	Local Device Pairing Status		
		No LTK	Unauthenticated LTK	Authenticated LTK
Encrypted	<b>None</b>	N/A	Request succeeds	Request succeeds
	<b>Encryption, No MITM Protection</b>	(Not possible to be encrypted without LTK)	Request succeeds	Request succeeds
	<b>Encryption, MITM Protection</b>		Error Response = Insufficient Authen- tication	Request succeeds

Table 10.2: Local device responds to a service request

[Figure 10.1](#) shows how a server handles a service request.



[Figure 10.1: Flow chart for a local device handling a service request from a remote device](#)

### 10.3.1.1 Handling of GATT Indications and Notifications

A client “requests” a server to send indications and notifications by appropriately configuring the server via a Client Characteristic Configuration Descriptor. Since the configuration is persistent across a disconnection and reconnection, security requirements must be checked upon a reconnection before sending indications or notifications. When a server reconnects to a client to send an indication or notification for which security is required, the server shall initiate or request encryption with the client prior to sending an indication or notification. If the client does not have an LTK indicating that the client has lost the bond, enabling encryption will fail.

### **10.3.2 Initiating a Service Request**

In this section the local device is the device initiating a service request to a remote device. In the L2CAP protocol the local device sends the connection request and the remote device sends the connection response. In GATT, the local device is the GATT client and the remote device is the GATT server.

When a local device initiates a service request to a remote device it shall behave according to the following rules:

- The local device’s security database specifies the security required to initiate a service request. If no encryption is required by the local device then the service request may proceed without encryption or pairing.
- If an LTK is not available but encryption is required, the pairing procedure shall be initiated with the local device’s required authentication settings. If the pairing procedure fails then the service request shall be aborted.

Note: When encryption is not enabled, the error code “Insufficient Authentication” does not indicate to the local device that MITM protection is required.

Note: If the local device is a Peripheral then it may send a Slave Initiated Security Request as defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.4.6](#).

- If pairing has occurred but the encryption key size is insufficient the pairing procedure shall be executed with the required encryption key size. If the pairing procedure fails then the service request shall be aborted.
- If an LTK is available and encryption is required (LE security mode 1) then encryption shall be enabled before the service request proceeds as defined in [Section 10.6](#). Once encryption is enabled the service request shall proceed. If encryption fails either the bond no longer exists on the remote device, or the wrong device has been connected. The local device must, after user interaction to confirm the remote device, re-bond, perform service discovery and re-configure the remote device. If the local device had previously determined that the remote device did not have the «Service Changed» characteristic then service discovery may be skipped.
- If an authenticated pairing is required but only an unauthenticated pairing has occurred and the link is currently encrypted, the pairing procedure should be executed with the required authentication settings. If the pairing

procedure fails, or an authenticated pairing cannot be performed with the IO capabilities of the local device and remote device, then the service request shall be aborted.

When a bond has been created between two devices, any reconnection should result in the local device enabling or requesting encryption with the remote device before initiating any service request.

If a local device does not enable encryption before initiating a service request and relies on the error codes to determine the security requirements, the local device shall not request pairing with MITM protection in response to receiving an “Insufficient Authentication” error code from the remote device while the link is unencrypted. The local device shall only set the MITM protection required flag if the local device itself requires MITM protection.

- If encryption is not enabled at the time of the service request, the error code “Insufficient Authentication” is received, and the local device currently has an LTK, then the encryption procedure should be started (see [Section 10.6](#)). If this fails (likely indicating that the remote device has lost the bond and no longer has the LTK) or the local device does not have the correct LTK, then the pairing procedure should be started. IO capabilities are exchanged in pairing phase 1, (see [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.1](#)) and the security level shall be determined by the device’s IO capabilities and MITM requirements.
- If encryption is not enabled at the time of the service request, the error code “Insufficient Encryption” is received, and the local device currently has an LTK, then the encryption procedure shall be started (see [Section 10.6](#)). If starting encryption fails (likely indicating that the remote device has lost the bond and no longer has the LTK) or the local device does not have the correct LTK, then the pairing procedure should be started.

Figure 10.2 shows how a client issues a service request.

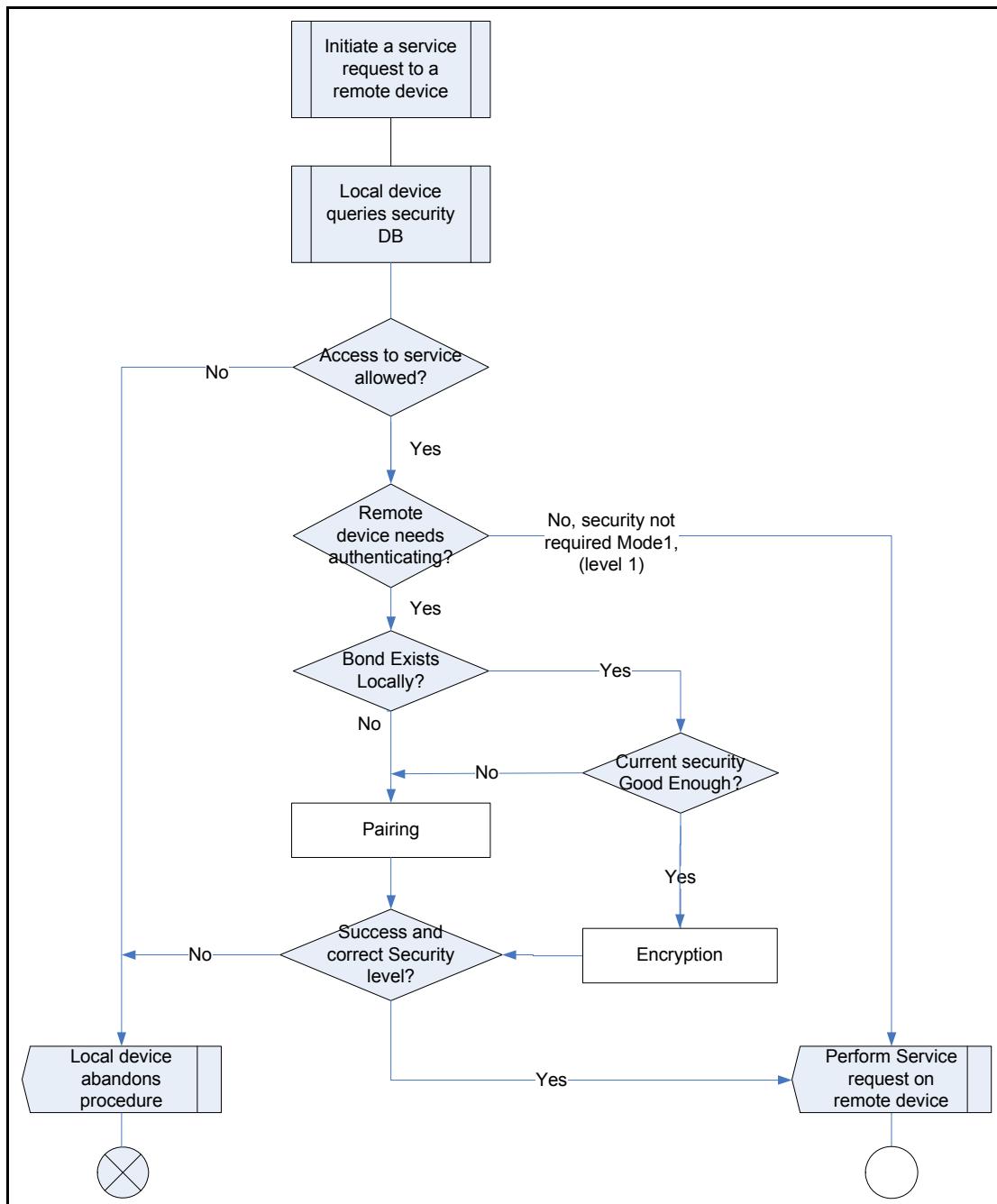


Figure 10.2: Flow chart for a local device issuing a service request to a remote device

## 10.4 DATA SIGNING

The data signing is used for transferring authenticated data between two devices in an unencrypted connection. The data signing method is used by services that require fast connection set up and fast data transfer.

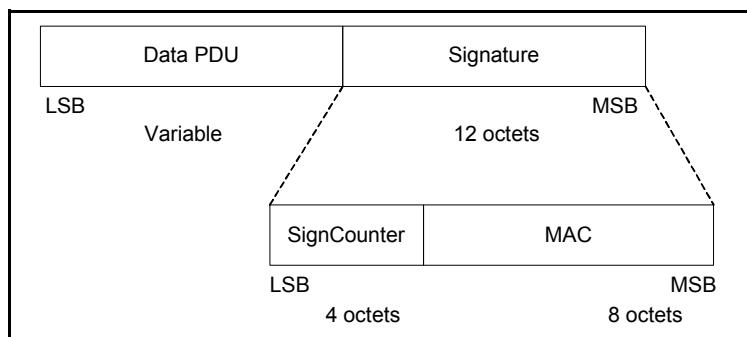
If a service request specifies LE security mode 2, the connection data signing procedure shall be used.

### 10.4.1 Connection Data Signing Procedure

A device shall generate a new Connection Signature Resolving Key CSRK for each peer device to which it sends signed data in a connection. CSRK is defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.4.2.2](#).

The data shall be formatted using the Signing Algorithm as defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.4.5](#) where  $m$  is the Data PDU to be signed,  $k$  is the CSRK and the SignCounter is the counter value. A Signature is composed of the counter value and the Message Authentication Code (MAC) generated by the Signing Algorithm. The counter value shall be incremented by one for each new Data PDU sent.

The format of signed data is shown in [Figure 10.3](#).



*Figure 10.3: Generic format of signed data*

### 10.4.2 Authenticate Signed Data Procedure

If encryption is not required and CSRK is available (LE security mode 2) then the data signing procedure shall be used when making a service request involving a write operation.

Note: The existence of the bond on the server can be determined by successfully enabling encryption with the server using the encryption procedure defined in Section 10.6. A higher layer profile may allow a client to not perform the authentication procedure. Alternatively, a higher layer protocol may signal the client that the signature check has failed due to a lost bond, and the client may then take action to notify the user or attempt to pair again to reestablish the bond.

A device receiving signed data shall authenticate it by performing the Signing Algorithm. The signed data shall be authenticated by performing the Signing Algorithm where  $m$  is the Data PDU to be authenticated,  $k$  is the stored CSRK and the SignCounter is the received counter value. If the MAC computed by the Signing Algorithm does not match the received MAC, the verification fails and the Host shall ignore the received Data PDU.

Note that since the server does not respond to a Signed Write Command, the higher layer application may not be notified of the ignored request. Hence, it is recommended that the server disconnect the link in case the client is a malicious device attempting to mount a security attack.

If the server has no stored CSRK upon receiving a signed write command, it shall ignore the received Data PDU. Note that since the server does not respond to a Signed Write Command, the higher layer application may not be notified of the ignored request. Although the disconnection may be an adequate indication to the user that the devices need to be paired, it is recommended that implementers consider providing a more informative indication to the user that the devices need to be paired to establish a CSRK.

If the server receives a request from a client for a write operation that requires a response (i.e. other than a Signed Write Command or Write Command), and encryption is not enabled, then the server shall respond with the error code “Insufficient Authentication”.

If the link is encrypted and the server receives a request from a client for which the server requires data signing but does not require encryption, then the server shall complete the request if it is otherwise valid as the encrypted state of the link is considered to satisfy the signing requirement.

As required by [Section 10.2.2](#), for a given link, signed data is not used at the same time as encryption. Therefore, if the client wishes to test that the server is still bonded, and thus enables encryption, further data transfer must occur without signing, assuming the server does not disconnect the link as recommended above.

If a higher layer determines the bond no longer exists on the server, the client must, after user interaction to confirm the remote device, re-bond, perform service discovery and re-configure the server. If the client had previously determined that the server did not have the «Service Changed» characteristic then service discovery may be skipped.

The receiving device shall protect against a replay attack by comparing the received SignCounter with previously received SignCounter from the same peer device. If the SignCounter was previously used then the receiving device shall ignore the Data PDU.

## 10.5 AUTHORIZATION PROCEDURE

A service may require authorization before allowing access. Authorization is a confirmation by the user to continue with the procedure. Authentication does not necessarily provide authorization. Authorization may be granted by user confirmation after successful authentication.

## 10.6 ENCRYPTION PROCEDURE

A Central may encrypt a connection using the Encryption Session Setup as defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.4.4](#) to provide integrity and confidentiality.

A Peripheral may encrypt a connection using the Slave Initiated Security Request as defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 2.4.6](#) to provide integrity and confidentiality.

## 10.7 PRIVACY FEATURE

The privacy feature provides a level of privacy which makes it more difficult for an attacker to track a device over a period of time. The requirements for a device to support the privacy feature are defined in [Table 10.3](#).

Privacy Requirements	Ref.	Broadcaster	Observer	Peripheral	Central
Privacy feature	<a href="#">10.7</a>	O	O	O	O
Non-resolvable private address generation procedure	<a href="#">10.8.2.1</a>	C2	C4	O	O
Resolvable private address generation procedure	<a href="#">10.8.2.2</a>	C3	C5	C1	C1
Resolvable private address resolution procedure	<a href="#">10.8.2.3</a>	E	O	C1	C1
Bondable Mode	<a href="#">9.4.3</a>	E	E	C1	C1
Bonding procedure	<a href="#">9.4.4</a>	E	E	C1	C1
C1: Mandatory if privacy feature is supported, else optional C2: Mandatory if privacy feature is supported and resolvable private address generation procedure is not supported, else optional C3: Mandatory if privacy feature is supported and non-resolvable private address generation procedure is not supported, else optional C4: Mandatory if privacy feature and active scanning are supported and resolvable private address generation procedure is not supported, else optional C5: Mandatory if privacy feature and active scanning are supported and non-resolvable private address generation procedure is not supported, else optional					

*Table 10.3: Requirements related to privacy feature*

### 10.7.1 Privacy Feature in a Peripheral

A privacy-enabled Peripheral should use the undirected connectable mode as defined in [Section 9.3.4](#), to create a connection. The Peripheral shall use a resolvable private address as the advertiser's device address.

A Peripheral shall use non-resolvable or resolvable private addresses when in non-connectable mode as defined in [Section 9.3.2](#).

The Host shall generate a resolvable private address using the 'resolvable private address generation procedure' as defined in [Section 10.8.2.2](#) or non-resolvable private address procedure as defined in [Section 10.8.2.1](#). The Host shall set a timer equal to  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$ . The Host shall generate a new resolvable private address or non-resolvable private address when the timer  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$  expires.

Note:  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$  timer may not be run if a Peripheral is not advertising.

If a privacy-enabled Peripheral, that has a stored bond, receives a resolvable private address, the Host shall resolve the resolvable private address by performing the 'resolvable private address resolution procedure' as defined in [Section 10.8.2.3](#). If the resolution is successful, the Host considers the remote device as a bonded device. If the resolution procedure fails, then the Host shall disconnect with the error code "Authentication failure", or perform the pairing procedure, or perform the authentication procedure as defined in [Section 10.3](#).

The device should not send the device name in the advertising data.

### 10.7.2 Privacy Feature in a Central

A privacy-enabled Central should use the general connection establishment procedure defined in [Section 9.3.6](#) to create a connection. The Central shall use a resolvable private address as the initiator's device address.

During active scanning, a privacy enabled Central shall use a non-resolvable or resolvable private address.

The Host shall generate a resolvable private address using the 'resolvable private address generation procedure' as defined in [Section 10.8.2.2](#) or non-resolvable private address procedure as defined in [Section 10.8.2.1](#). The Host shall set a timer equal to  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$ . The Host shall generate a new resolvable private address or non-resolvable private address when the timer  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$  expires.

Note:  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$  timer may not be run if a Central is not scanning or connected.

If a privacy-enabled Central, that has a stored bond, receives a resolvable private address, the Host shall resolve the resolvable private address by perform-

ing the "resolvable private address resolution procedure" as defined in [Section 10.8.2.3](#). If the resolution is successful, the Host considers the remote device as a bonded device; otherwise, the Host ignores the remote device.

### 10.7.3 Privacy Feature in a Broadcaster

A privacy-enabled Broadcaster shall use the Broadcast mode defined in [Section 9.1.1](#). The Broadcaster shall use either a resolvable private address or non-resolvable private address.

The Host shall generate a resolvable private address using the 'resolvable private address generation procedure' as defined in [Section 10.8.2.2](#) or non-resolvable private address procedure as defined in [Section 10.8.2.1](#). The Host shall set a timer to  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$ . The Host shall generate a new resolvable private address or non-resolvable private address when the timer  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$  expires.

Note:  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$  timer may not be run if a Broadcaster is not advertising.

The device should not send the device name in the advertising data.

### 10.7.4 Privacy Feature in an Observer

A privacy-enabled Observer shall use the observation procedure defined in [Section 9.1.2](#). During active scanning, a privacy enabled Observer shall use either a resolvable private address or non-resolvable private address.

The Host shall generate a resolvable private address using the 'resolvable private address generation procedure' as defined in [Section 10.8.2.2](#) or non-resolvable private address procedure as defined in [Section 10.8.2.1](#). The Host shall set a timer equal to  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$ . The Host shall generate a new resolvable private address or non-resolvable private address when the timer  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$  expires.

Note:  $T_{GAP}(\text{private\_addr\_int})$  timer may not be run if an Observer is not scanning.

## 10.8 RANDOM DEVICE ADDRESS

For the purposes of this profile, the random device address may be of either of the following two sub-types:

- Static address
- Private address.

The term random device address refers to both static and private address types.

The transmission of a random device address is optional. A device shall accept the reception of a random device address from a remote device.

The private address may be of either of the following two sub-types:

- Non-resolvable private address
- Resolvable private address

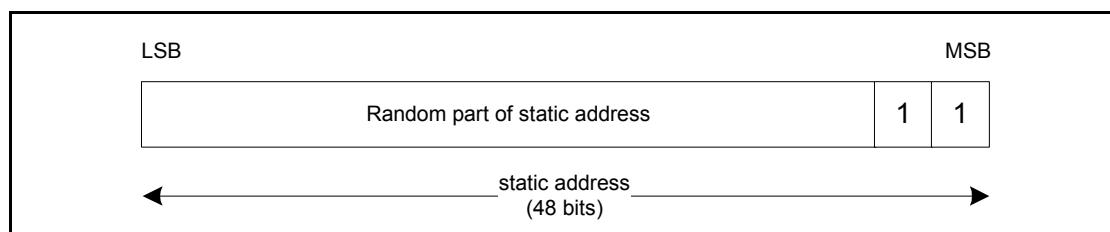
A bonded device shall process a resolvable private address as defined in [Section 10.8.2.3](#) or by establishing a connection and then performing the authentication procedure as defined in [Section 10.3](#). A device that uses resolvable private address shall always request to distribute its IRK value as defined in [\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 3.6.4](#) if both sides are bondable, unless keys have been pre-distributed. If the request to distribute the IRK fails then the peer device may authenticate re-connections using the authentication procedure as defined in [Section 10.3](#) or terminate the current connection.

### 10.8.1 Static Address

A static address is a 48-bit randomly generated address and shall meet the following requirements:

- The two most significant bits of the static address shall be equal to '1'
- All bits of the random part of the static address shall not be equal to '1'
- All bits of the random part of the static address shall not be equal to '0'

The format of a static address is shown in [Figure 10.4](#).



*Figure 10.4: Format of static address*

A device may choose to initialize its static address to a new value after each power cycle. A device shall not change its static address value once initialized until the device is power cycled.

Note: If the static address of a device is changed then the address stored in peer devices will not be valid and the ability to reconnect using the old address will be lost.

## 10.8.2 Private address

The private address may be of either of the following two sub-types:

- Non-resolvable private address
- Resolvable private address

### 10.8.2.1 Non-Resolvable Private Address Generation Procedure

To generate a non-resolvable address or a reconnection address, the Host shall generate a 48-bit address with the following requirements:

- The two most significant bits of the address shall be equal to '0'
- All bits of the random part of the address shall not be equal to '0'
- All bits of the random part of the address shall not be equal to '1'
- The address shall not be equal to the static address
- The address shall not be equal to the public address

The format of a non-resolvable private address is shown in [Table 10.5](#).

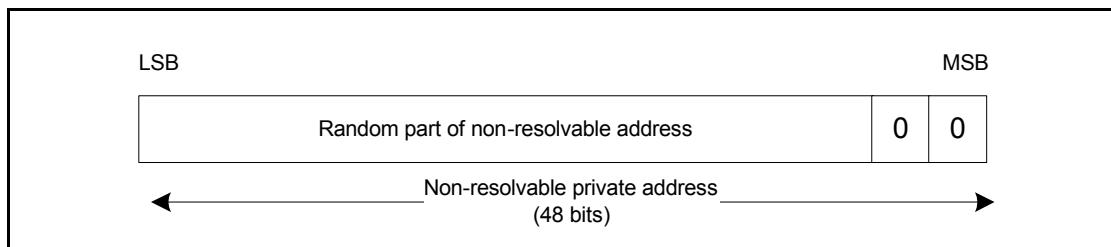


Figure 10.5: Format of non-resolvable private address

### 10.8.2.2 Resolvable Private Address Generation Procedure

To generate a resolvable private address the Host must have its Identity Resolving Key (IRK). The resolvable private address shall be generated with the IRK and a randomly generated 24-bit random number. The random number is known as *prand* and shall meet the following requirements:

- The two most significant bits of *prand* shall be equal to '0' and '1' as shown in [Figure 10.6](#)
- All bits of the random field of *prand* shall not be equal to '0'
- All bits of the random field of *prand* shall not be equal to '1'

The format of the resolvable private address is shown in [Figure 10.6](#).

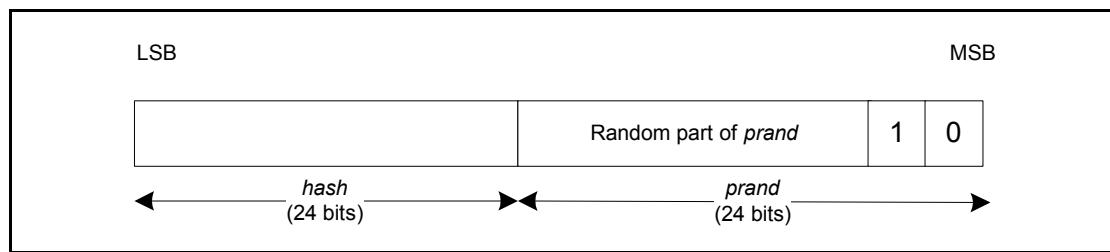


Figure 10.6: Format of resolvable private address

The *hash* is generated using the random address function *ah* defined in [Vol. 3], Part H Section 2.2.2 with the input parameter *k* set to the device's IRK and the input parameter *r* set to *prand*.

$$\text{hash} = \text{ah}(\text{IRK}, \text{prand})$$

The *prand* and *hash* are concatenated to generate the random address (*randomAddress*) in the following manner:

$$\text{randomAddress} = \text{hash} \parallel \text{prand}$$

The least significant octet of *hash* becomes the least significant octet of *randomAddress* and the most significant octet of *prand* becomes the most significant octet of *randomAddress*.

#### 10.8.2.3 Resolvable Private Address Resolution Procedure

The Host can resolve a resolvable private address for all peer devices where the Host has the peer device's IRK using this procedure. If a resolvable private address is resolved, the Host can associate this address with the peer device.

The resolvable private address (*rpAddress*) is divided into a 24-bit random part (*prand*) and a 24-bit hash part (*hash*). The least significant octet of the *rpAddress* becomes the least significant octet of *hash* and the most significant octet of *rpAddress* becomes the most significant octet of *prand*.

A *localHash* value is then generated using the random address hash function *ah* defined in [Vol. 3], Part H Section 2.2.2 with the input parameter *k* set to IRK of the known device and the input parameter *r* set to the *prand* value extracted from the *rpAddress*.

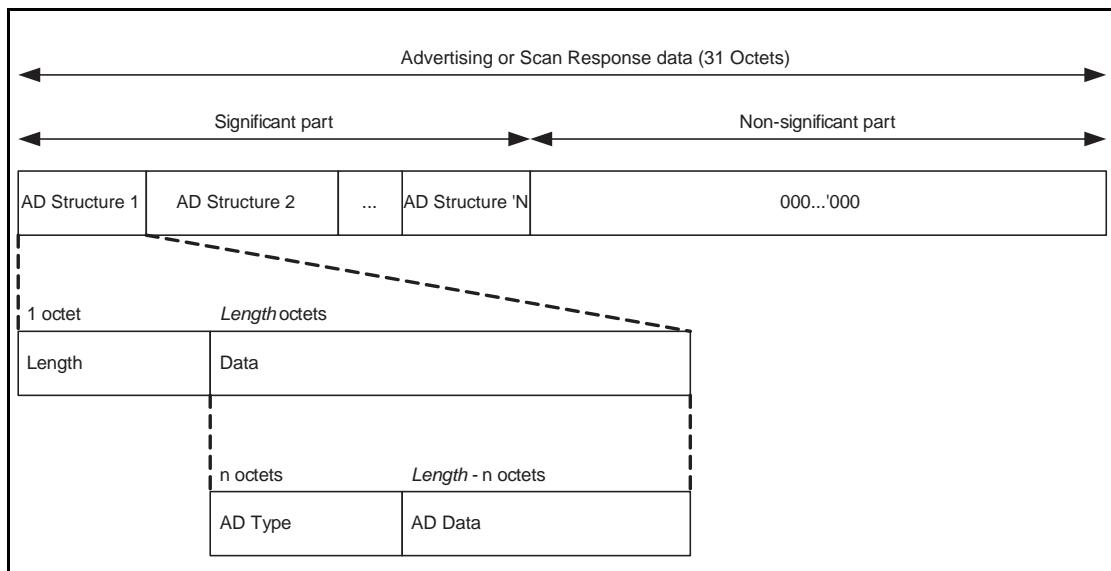
$$\text{localHash} = \text{ah}(\text{IRK}, \text{prand})$$

The *localHash* value is then compared with the *hash* value extracted from *rpAddress*. If the *localHash* value matches the extracted *hash* value then the identity of the peer device has been resolved.

If a Host has more than one stored IRK, the Host repeats the above procedure for each stored IRK to determine if the received resolvable private address is associated with a stored IRK, until either address resolution is successful for one of the IRKs or all have been tried.

## 11 ADVERTISING AND SCAN RESPONSE DATA FORMAT

The format of Advertising data and Scan Response data is shown in [Figure 11.1](#). The data consists of a significant part and a non-significant part. The significant part contains a sequence of AD structures. Each AD structure shall have a Length field of one octet, which contains the Length value, and a Data field of Length octets. The first octet of the Data field contains the AD type field. The content of the remaining Length - 1 octet in the Data field depends on the value of the AD type field and is called the AD data. The non-significant part extends the Advertising and Scan Response data to 31 octets and shall contain all-zero octets.



*Figure 11.1: Advertising and Scan Response data format*

If the Length field is set to zero, then the Data field has zero octets. This shall only occur to allow an early termination of the Advertising or Scan Response data.

Only the significant part of the Advertising or Scan Response data needs to be sent over the air.

The Advertising and Scan Response data is sent in advertising events. The Advertising Data is placed in the AdvData field of ADV\_IND, ADV\_NONCONN\_IND, and ADV\_SCAN\_IND packets. The Scan Response data is sent in the ScanRspData field of SCAN\_RSP packets.

The AD type data formats and meanings are defined in [\[Core Specification Supplement\]](#), Part A. The AD type identifier values are defined in the [Assigned Numbers](#) document.

## 12 GAP SERVICE AND CHARACTERISTICS FOR GATT SERVER

The GATT server shall contain the GAP service for devices supporting the Central and Peripheral GAP roles and BR/EDR GAP role for BR/EDR/LE type devices. The GATT Server may contain the GAP service for BR/EDR type devices supporting the BR/EDR GAP role. A device shall have only one instance of the GAP service in the GATT server. The GAP service is a GATT based service with the service UUID as «GAP Service» defined in the Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#) document.

	BR/EDR GAP Role	LE Broadcaster	LE Observer	LE Peripheral	LE Central
GAP Service	C1	E	E	M	M
C1: Mandatory for BR/EDR/LE type devices, else optional					

Table 12.1: GAP Service Requirements

The characteristics requirements for the GAP service in each of the GAP roles are shown in [Table 12.2](#).

Characteristics	Ref.	BR/EDR GAP Role	LE Broadcaster	LE Observer	LE Peripheral	LE Central
Device Name	<a href="#">12.1</a>	C1	E	E	M	M
Appearance	<a href="#">12.2</a>	C1	E	E	M	M
Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters	<a href="#">12.3</a>	O	E	E	O	E
C1: Mandatory for BR/EDR/LE type devices, else optional						

Table 12.2: Requirements related to GAP Service characteristics

A device that supports multiple GAP roles contains all the characteristics to meet the requirements for the supported roles. The device must continue to expose the characteristics when the device is operating in the role in which the characteristics are not valid.

## 12.1 DEVICE NAME CHARACTERISTIC

The Device Name characteristic shall contain the name of the device as an UTF-8 string as defined in [Section 3.2.2](#). The Device Name characteristic value shall be readable without authentication or authorization. The Device Name characteristic value may be writable. If writable, authentication and authorization may be defined by a higher layer specification or be implementation specific.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xMMMM	0x2A00 – UUID for «Device Name»	Device Name	Readable without authentication or authorization. Optionally writable, authentication and authorization may be defined by a higher layer specification or be implementation specific.

*Table 12.3: Device Name characteristic*

The Device Name characteristic value shall be 0 to 248 octets in length. A device shall have only one instance of the Device Name characteristic.

## 12.2 APPEARANCE CHARACTERISTIC

The Appearance characteristic defines the representation of the external appearance of the device. This enables the discovering device to represent the device to the user using an icon, or a string, or similar. The Appearance characteristic value shall be readable without authentication or authorization. The Appearance characteristic value may be writable. If writable, authentication and authorization may be defined by a higher layer specification or be implementation specific.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xMMMM	0x2A01 – UUID for «Appearance»	Appearance	Readable without authentication or authorization. Optionally writable, authentication and authorization may be defined by a higher layer specification or be implementation specific.

*Table 12.4: Appearance characteristic*

The Appearance characteristic value shall be the enumerated value as defined by Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#) document. The Appearance characteristic value shall be 2 octets in length. A device shall have only one instance of the Appearance characteristic.

## 12.3 PERIPHERAL PREFERRED CONNECTION PARAMETERS CHARACTERISTIC

The Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters (PPCP) characteristic contains the preferred connection parameters of the Peripheral.

The Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic value shall be readable. Authentication and authorization may be defined by a higher layer specification or be implementation specific.

The Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic value shall not be writable.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xMmmm	0x2A04 – UUID for «Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters»	Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameter	Readable, authentication and authorization may be defined by a higher layer specification or be implementation specific Not writable

Table 12.5: Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic

The Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic value shall be 8 octets in length. A device shall have only one instance of the Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic.

The preferred connection parameters structured data is defined as follows:

Name	Size (Octet)	Description
Minimum connection interval	2	Defines minimum value for the connection interval in the following manner: $connInterval_{min} = Conn\_Interval\_Min * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ Conn_Interval_Min range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Value of 0xFFFF indicates no specific minimum. Values outside the range are reserved. (excluding 0xFFFF)
Maximum connection interval	2	Defines maximum value for the connection interval in the following manner: $connInterval_{max} = Conn\_Interval\_Max * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ Conn_Interval_Max range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Shall be equal to or greater than the Conn_Interval_Min. Value of 0xFFFF indicates no specific maximum. Values outside the range are reserved. (excluding 0xFFFF)

Table 12.6: Format of the preferred connection parameters structured data

Name	Size (Octet)	Description
Slave latency	2	<p>Defines the slave latency for the connection in number of connection events.</p> <p>Slave latency range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3</p> <p>Values outside the range are reserved.</p>
Connection Supervision timeout multiplier	2	<p>Defines the connection supervisor timeout multiplier as a multiple of 10ms.</p> <p>Range: 0xFFFF indicates no specific value requested.</p> <p>Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80</p> <p>Time = N * 10 msec</p> <p>Time Range: 100 msec to 32 seconds</p> <p>Values outside the range are reserved. (excluding 0xFFFF)</p>

Table 12.6: Format of the preferred connection parameters structured data

## 13 BR/EDR/LE OPERATION

This section describes the requirements for devices that support the BR/EDR/LE device type. The device may support any LE GAP roles allowed by the Controller over the LE physical channel.

Feature	Ref.	Broadcaster	Observer	Peripheral	Central
BR/EDR/LE modes and procedures	<a href="#">13.1</a> and <a href="#">13.2</a>	O	O	O	O

*Table 13.1: Requirements for the modes of a BR/EDR/LE device type*

A BR/EDR/LE device type that supports the Broadcaster role shall meet the requirements for the Broadcaster role as defined in [Section 9](#).

A BR/EDR/LE device type that supports the Observer role shall meet the requirements for the Observer role as defined in [Section 9](#).

A BR/EDR/LE device type that supports the Peripheral role shall meet the requirements for the Peripheral role as defined in [Section 9](#).

A BR/EDR/LE device type that supports the Central role shall meet the requirements for the Central role as defined in [Section 9](#).

### 13.1 MODES, PROCEDURES AND SECURITY ASPECTS

All modes, procedures and security aspects shall follow the requirements as specified for the physical transport over which they operate. Sections [4](#), [5](#), [6](#) and [7](#) specify the requirements for the modes, procedures and security aspects for operations performed over the BR/EDR physical transport. Sections [9](#) and [10](#) specify the requirements for the modes, procedures and security aspects performed over the LE physical transport. It is optional to support both physical transports simultaneously to the same remote device.

### 13.1.1 Discoverable Mode Requirements

A device shall expose the capabilities of both physical transports for both Limited and General Discoverable Mode using the advertisement Flag AD Type as follows:

- a) The 'BR/EDR Not Supported' bit in the Flags AD type shall be set to '0' as defined in [\[Core Specification Supplement\]](#), Part A, Section 1.3.
- b) The 'Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Controller)' and 'Simultaneous LE and BR/EDR to Same Device Capable (Host)' bits in the Flags AD type shall be set to '0'.

The 'LE Supported (Controller)' and 'LE Supported (Host)' bits in the LMP features shall be set as defined in [\[Vol. 2\], Part C Section 3.2](#).

## 13.2 BONDING FOR BR/EDR/LE DEVICE TYPE

The requirements for a device supporting BR/EDR/LE device type are shown in [Table 13.2](#).

Bonding Requirement	Ref.	Peripheral	Central
Bonding	<a href="#">6.5 / 9.4.4</a>	M	M

*Table 13.2: Requirements for the bonding of a BR/EDR/LE device type*

If the remote device supports the BR/EDR physical transport, the bonding procedures for the BR/EDR physical transport as defined in [Section 6.5](#) shall be used.

If the remote device supports the LE physical transport, the bonding procedures for the LE physical transport as defined in [Section 9.4.4](#) shall be used.

## 13.3 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PHYSICAL TRANSPORTS

To determine if both the BR/EDR physical transport and the LE physical transport are established to the same peer device, the device shall use either the public address used on the LE advertising channel or the public address from the BD\_ADDR field contained in the SMP Identity Address Information packet ([\[Vol. 3\], Part H Section 3.6.5](#)) if it has been received.

## 14 BR/EDR/LE SECURITY ASPECTS

The requirements for a device supporting BR/EDR/LE device type are shown in [Table 14.1](#).

Security aspects	Ref.	Peripheral	Central
Security aspects	<a href="#">14</a>	M	M

*Table 14.1: Requirements for the security aspects of a BR/EDR/LE device type*

If the remote device supports the BR/EDR physical transport the security procedures for the BR/EDR physical transport as defined in [Section 5](#) shall be used.

If the remote device supports the LE physical transport the security procedures for the LE physical transport as defined in [Section 10](#) shall be used.

## 15 BLUETOOTH DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

### 15.1 BLUETOOTH DEVICE ADDRESS

All Bluetooth devices shall have a Bluetooth Device Address (BD\_ADDR) that uniquely identifies the device to another Bluetooth device. The specific Bluetooth Device Address requirements depend on the type of Bluetooth device.

#### 15.1.1 Bluetooth Device Address Types

##### 15.1.1.1 Public Bluetooth Address

A Bluetooth public address used as the BD\_ADDR for the BR/EDR physical channel is defined in [\[Vol. 2\], Part B Section 1.2](#). A Bluetooth public address used as the BD\_ADDR for the LE physical channel is defined in [\[Vol. 6\], Part B Section 1.3](#).

##### 15.1.1.2 Random Bluetooth Address

A random device address used as the BD\_ADDR on the LE physical channel is defined in [Section 10.8](#).

### 15.2 GATT PROFILE REQUIREMENTS

A BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE device that supports the GATT profile on the BR/EDR physical transport shall implement the GATT server. A BR/EDR/LE or LE-only device that supports the LE Central and/or Peripheral roles shall implement the GATT server.

	BR/EDR GAP Role	LE Broadcaster	LE Observer	LE Peripheral	LE Central
GATT Client	O	E	E	O	O
GATT Server	C1	E	E	M	M
C1: Mandatory if the GATT profile is supported on the BR/EDR physical transport; otherwise excluded					

*Table 15.1: Requirements based on GAP Roles Supported*

## 15.3 SDP REQUIREMENTS

BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE devices shall implement either an SDP server or an SDP client. A BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE device that supports a GATT server shall implement an SDP server. BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE devices may implement both an SDP server and an SDP client. There shall be no more than one active SDP server per device. SDP client and server are excluded for the LE-only device type.

	BR/EDR and BR/EDR/LE Device Type	LE-Only Device Type
SDP Client	C1	E
SDP Server	C1 or C2	E
C1: Mandatory to support at least one; Optional to support both		
C2: Mandatory to support if GATT server is supported		

Table 15.2: Requirements based on GAP Roles Supported

## 15.4 SDP SERVICE RECORD REQUIREMENT

A BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE device that supports a GATT server accessible over the BR/EDR physical transport shall publish the SDP record shown below in [Table 15.3](#). The GAP Start Handle shall be set to the attribute handle of the «Generic Attribute Profile» service declaration. The GAP End Handle shall be set to the attribute handle of the last attribute within the «Generic Attribute Profile» service definition group.

Item	Definition	Type	Value	Status
Service Class ID List				M
Service Class #0		UUID	«Generic Attribute Profile»	M
ProtocolDescriptorList				M
Protocol #0		UUID	«L2CAP»	M
Parameter #0 for Protocol #0	PSM	Unit16	PSM = ATT	M
Protocol #1		UUID	«ATT»	M
Parameter #0 for Protocol #1	GAP Start Handle	Uint16		M
Parameter #1 for Protocol #1	GAP End Handle	Uint16		M
BrowseGroupList			PublicBrowseRoot	M

Table 15.3: SDP Record for the Generic Access Profile

If a BR/EDR or BR/EDR/LE device supports a GATT-based service on the BR/EDR transport, the service shall exist in the SDP server and the GATT server.

## 16 DEFINITIONS

---

In the following, terms written with capital letters refer to states.

### 16.1 GENERAL DEFINITIONS

**Mode**. A set of directives that defines how a device will respond to certain events.

**Idle**. As seen from a remote device, a Bluetooth device is idle, or is in idle mode, when there is no link established between them.

**Bond**. A relation between two Bluetooth devices defined by creating, exchanging and storing a common link key. The bond is created through the bonding or LMP-pairing procedures.

### 16.2 CONNECTION-RELATED DEFINITIONS

**Physical channel**. A synchronized Bluetooth baseband-compliant RF hopping sequence.

**Piconet**. A set of Bluetooth devices sharing the same physical channel defined by the master parameters (clock and BD\_ADDR).

**Physical link**. A Baseband-level connection<sup>1</sup> between two devices established using paging. A physical link comprises a sequence of transmission slots on a physical channel alternating between master and slave transmission slots.

**ACL link**. An asynchronous (packet-switched) connection<sup>1</sup> between two devices created on LMP level. Traffic on an ACL link uses ACL packets to be transmitted.

**SCO link**. A synchronous (circuit-switched) connection<sup>1</sup> for reserved bandwidth communications; e.g. voice between two devices, created on the LMP level by reserving slots periodically on a physical channel. Traffic on an SCO link uses SCO packets to be transmitted. SCO links can be established only after an ACL link has first been established.

**Link**. Shorthand for an ACL link.

**PAGE**. A baseband state where a device transmits page trains, and processes any eventual responses to the page trains.

**PAGE\_SCAN**. A baseband state where a device listens for page trains.

---

1. The term 'connection' used here is not identical to the definition below. It is used in the absence of a more concise term.

**Page** . The transmission by a device of page trains containing the Device Access Code of the device to which the physical link is requested.

**Page scan** . The listening by a device for page trains containing its own Device Access Code.

**Channel** . A logical connection on L2CAP level between two devices serving a single application or higher layer protocol.

**Connection** . A connection between two peer applications or higher layer protocols mapped onto a channel.

**Connecting** . A phase in the communication between devices when a connection between them is being established. (Connecting phase follows after the link establishment phase is completed.)

**Connect (to service)** . The establishment of a connection to a service. If not already done, this includes establishment of a physical link, link and channel as well.

### 16.3 DEVICE-RELATED DEFINITIONS

**Discoverable device** . A Bluetooth device in range that will respond to an inquiry (normally in addition to responding to page).

**Silent device** . A Bluetooth device appears as silent to a remote device if it does not respond to inquiries made by the remote device. A device may be silent due to being non-discoverable or due to baseband congestion while being discoverable.

**Connectable device** . A Bluetooth device in range that will respond to a page.

**Trusted device** . A paired device that is explicitly marked as trusted.

**Paired device** . A Bluetooth device with which a link key has been exchanged (either before connection establishment was requested or during connecting phase).

**Pre-paired device** . A Bluetooth device with which a link key was exchanged, and the link key is stored, before link establishment.

**Un-paired device** . A Bluetooth device for which there was no exchanged link key available before connection establishment was requested.

**Known device** . A Bluetooth device for which at least the BD\_ADDR is stored.

**Un-known device** . A Bluetooth device for which no information (BD\_ADDR, link key or other) is stored.

**Authenticated device** . A Bluetooth device whose identity has been verified during the lifetime of the current link, based on the authentication procedure.

## 16.4 PROCEDURE-RELATED DEFINITIONS

**Paging**. A procedure for establishing a physical link of ACL type on baseband level, consisting of a page action of the initiator and a page scan action of the responding device.

**Link establishment** . A procedure for establishing a link on LMP level. A link is established when both devices have agreed that LMP setup is completed.

**Channel establishment** . A procedure for establishing a channel on L2CAP level.

**Connection establishment** . A procedure for creating a connection mapped onto a channel.

**Creation of a trusted relationship** . A procedure where the remote device is marked as a trusted device. This includes storing a common link key for future authentication and pairing (if the link key is not available).

**Creation of a secure connection**. A procedure of establishing a connection, including authentication and encryption.

**Device discovery** . A procedure for retrieving the Bluetooth device address, clock, class-of-device field and used page scan mode from discoverable devices.

**Name discovery** . A procedure for retrieving the user-friendly name (the Bluetooth device name) of a connectable device.

**Service discovery** . Procedures for querying and browsing for services offered by or through another Bluetooth device.

## 16.5 SECURITY-RELATED DEFINITIONS

**Authentication** . A generic procedure based on LMP-authentication if a link key exists or on LMP-pairing if no link key exists.

**LMP-authentication** . An LMP level procedure for verifying the identity of a remote device. The procedure is based on a challenge-response mechanism using a random number, a secret key and the BD\_ADDR of the non-initiating device. The secret key used can be a previously exchanged link key.

**Authorization** . A procedure where a user of a Bluetooth device grants a specific (remote) Bluetooth device access to a specific service. Authorization implies that the identity of the remote device can be verified through authentication.

**Authorize** . The act of granting a specific Bluetooth device access to a specific service. It may be based upon user confirmation, or given the existence of a trusted relationship.

**LMP-pairing** . A procedure that authenticates two devices, based on a PIN, and subsequently creates a common link key that can be used as a basis for a trusted relationship or a (single) secure connection. The procedure consists of the steps: creation of an initialization key (based on a random number and a PIN), creation and exchange of a common link key and LMP-authentication based on the common link key.

**Bonding** . A dedicated procedure for performing the first authentication, where a common link key is created and stored for future use.

**Trusting** . The marking of a paired device as trusted. Trust marking can be done by the user, or automatically by the device (e.g. when in bondable mode) after a successful pairing.

## 17 APPENDIX A (NORMATIVE): TIMERS AND CONSTANTS

The following timers are required by this profile.

Timer name	Value	Description	Requirement or Recommendation
T <sub>GAP(100)</sub>	10.24 s	Time span that a Bluetooth device performs device discovery.	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP(101)</sub>	10.625 ms	A discoverable Bluetooth device enters INQUIRY_SCAN for at least TGAP(101) every TGAP(102).	Required value
T <sub>GAP(102)</sub>	2.56 s	Maximum time between repeated INQUIRY_SCAN enterings.	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP(103)</sub>	30.72 s	Minimum time span that a device is in discoverable mode.	Required value
T <sub>GAP(104)</sub>	1 min.	Maximum time span that a device is in limited discoverable mode.	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP(105)</sub>	100ms	Maximum time between INQUIRY_SCAN enterings	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP(106)</sub>	100ms	Maximum time between PAGE_SCAN enterings	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP(107)</sub>	1.28s	Maximum time between PAGE_SCAN enterings (R1 page scan)	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP(108)</sub>	2.56s	Maximum time between PAGE_SCAN enterings (R2 page scan)	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP(lim_adv_timeout)</sub>	180 s	Maximum time to remain advertising when in the limited discoverable mode	Required value
T <sub>GAP(gen_disc_scan_min)</sub>	10.24 s	Minimum time to perform scanning when performing the general discovery procedure	Recommended value

Table 17.1: Defined GAP timers (Sheet 1 of 4)

## Generic Access Profile



Timer name	Value	Description	Requirement or Recommendation
T <sub>GAP</sub> (lim_disc_scan_min)	10.24 s	Minimum time to perform scanning when performing the limited discovery procedure	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (lim_disc_scan_int)	11.25 ms	Scan interval used in the limited discovery procedure	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (conn_param_timeout)	30 s	Connection parameter update notification timer when performing the connection parameter update procedure	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (scan_fast_period)	30.72 s	Minimum time to perform scanning when user initiated	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (scan_fast_interval)	30 ms to 60 ms	Scan interval in any discovery or connection establishment procedure when user initiated	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (scan_fast_window)	30 ms	Scan window in any discovery or connection establishment procedure when user initiated	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (scan_slow_interval1)	1.28 s	Scan interval in any discovery or connection establishment procedure when background scanning	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (scan_slow_window1)	11.25 ms	Scan window in any discovery or connection establishment procedure when background scanning	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (scan_slow_interval2)	2.56 s	Scan interval in any discovery or connection establishment procedure when background scanning	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (scan_slow_window2)	22.5 ms	Scan window in any discovery or connection establishment procedure when background scanning	Recommended value

Table 17.1: Defined GAP timers (Sheet 2 of 4)

## Generic Access Profile



Timer name	Value	Description	Requirement or Recommendation
$T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_fast\_period})$	30 s	Minimum time to perform advertising when user initiated	Recommended value
$T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_fast\_interval1})$	30 ms to 60 ms	Minimum to maximum advertising interval in the following GAP Modes when user initiated: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Undirected Connectable Mode</li> <li>2. Limited Discoverable Mode and sending connectable undirected advertising events</li> <li>3. General Discoverable Mode and sending connectable undirected advertising events</li> <li>4. Directed Connectable Mode and sending low duty cycle directed advertising events</li> </ol>	Recommended value
$T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_fast\_interval2})$	100 ms to 150 ms	Minimum to maximum advertising interval in the following GAP Modes when user initiated and sending either non-connectable advertising events or scannable undirected advertising events: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Non-Discoverable Mode</li> <li>2. Non-Connectable Mode</li> <li>3. Limited Discoverable Mode</li> <li>4. General Discoverable Mode</li> </ol>	Recommended value
$T_{GAP}(\text{adv\_slow\_interval})$	1 s to 1.2 s	Minimum to maximum advertisement interval in any discoverable or connectable mode when background advertising	Recommended value
$T_{GAP}(\text{initial\_conn\_interval})$	30 ms to 50 ms	Minimum to maximum connection interval upon any connection establishment	Recommended value
$T_{GAP}(\text{conn\_pause\_central})$	1 s	Central idle timer	Recommended value

Table 17.1: Defined GAP timers (Sheet 3 of 4)

## Generic Access Profile



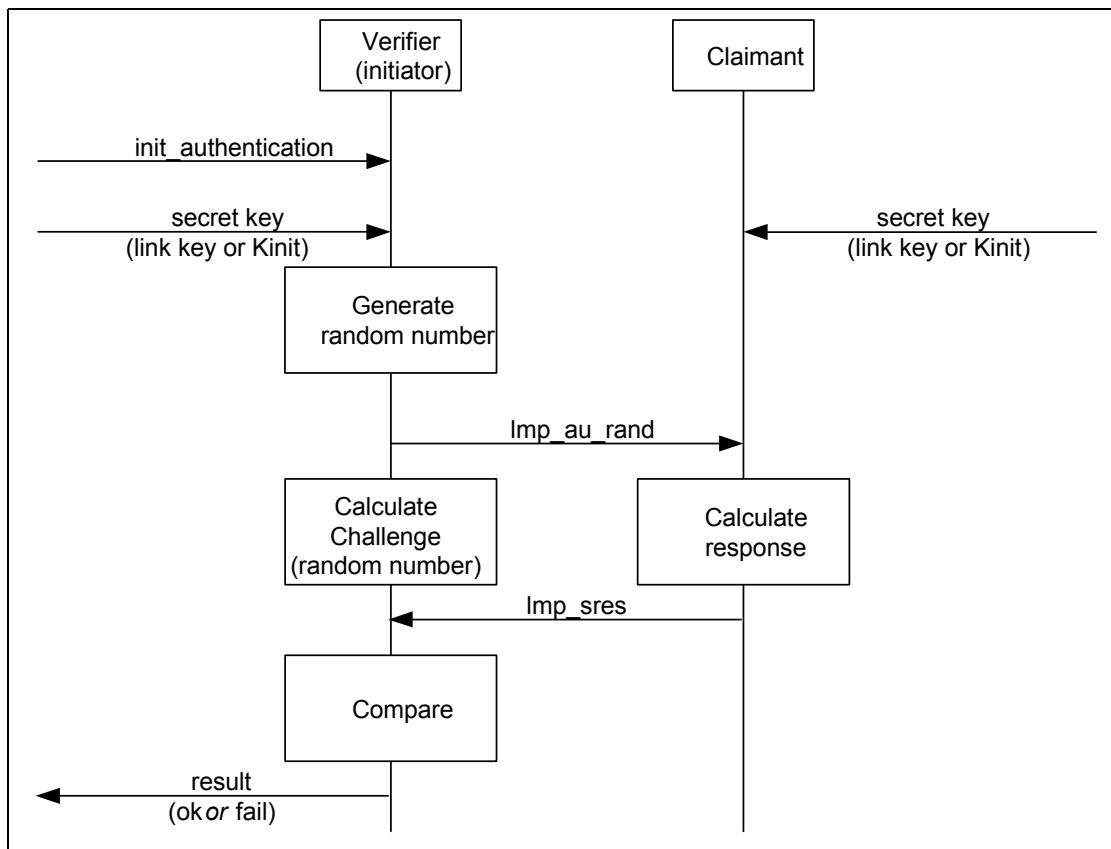
Timer name	Value	Description	Requirement or Recommendation
T <sub>GAP</sub> (conn_pause_peripheral)	5 s	Minimum time upon connection establishment before the peripheral starts a connection update procedure	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (private_addr_int)	15 mins	Minimum time interval between private address change	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (conn_param_timeout)	30 s	Timer used in connection parameter update procedure	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (Sync_Train_Interval)	80 ms	Interval between Synchronization Train events	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (Sync_Train_Duration)	30.72 s	Duration of synchronizability mode	Required value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (Sync_Scan_Interval)	320 ms	Interval between the start of adjacent synchronization scan windows	Recommended value
T <sub>GAP</sub> (Sync_Scan_Window)	91.25 ms	Duration of Synchronization scan window	Recommended value

Table 17.1: Defined GAP timers (Sheet 4 of 4)

## 18 APPENDIX B (INFORMATIVE): INFORMATION FLOWS OF RELATED PROCEDURES

### 18.1 LMP – AUTHENTICATION

The specification of authentication on link level is found in [\[2\]](#).

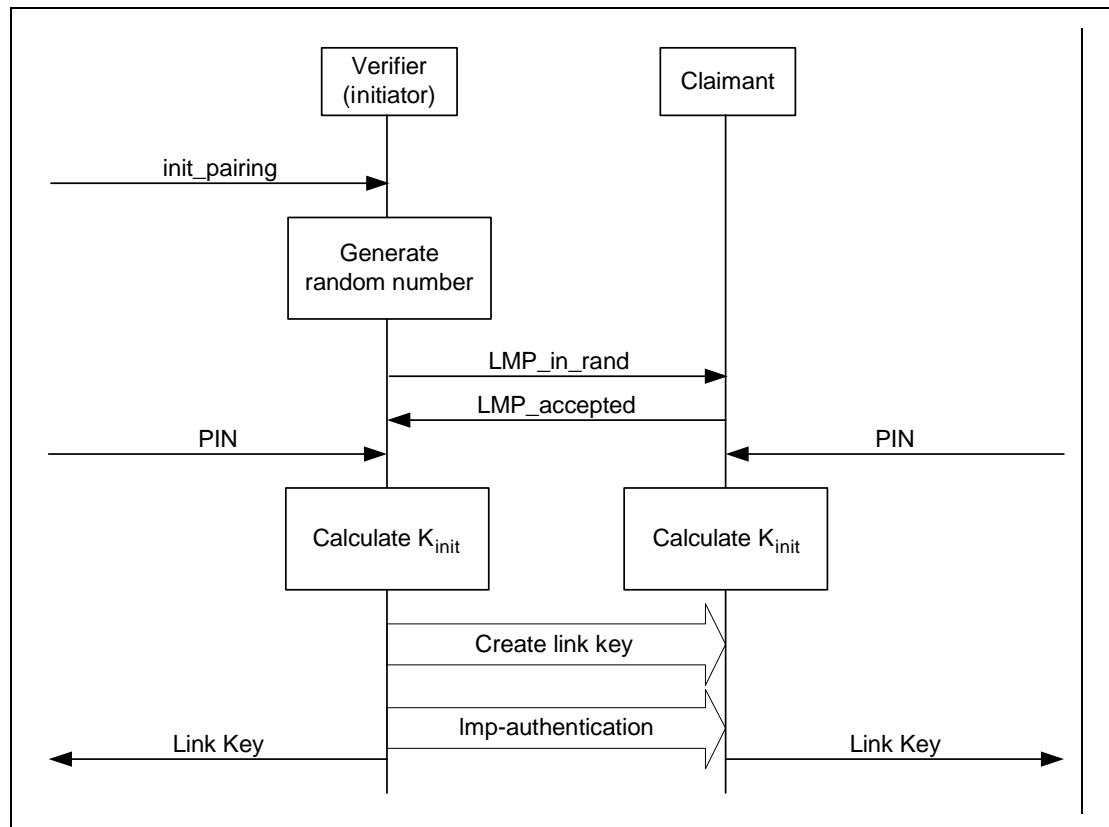


*Figure 18.1: LMP-authentication as defined by [\[2\]](#)*

The secret key used here is an already exchanged link key.

## 18.2 LMP – PAIRING

The specification of pairing on link level is found in [\[2\]](#).



*Figure 18.2: LMP-pairing as defined in [\[2\]](#)*

The PIN used here is PINBB.

The create link key procedure is described in [\[Vol. 2, Part C\] Section 4.2.2.4 on page 280](#) and [\[Vol. 2, Part H\] Section 3.2 on page 1295](#). In case the link key is based on a combination key, a mutual authentication takes place and shall be performed irrespective of current security mode.

## 18.3 SERVICE DISCOVERY

The Service Discovery Protocol [5] specifies what PDUs are used over-the-air to inquire about services and service attributes. The procedures for discovery of supported services and capabilities using the Service Discovery Protocol are described in [higher layer specifications](#). This is just an example.

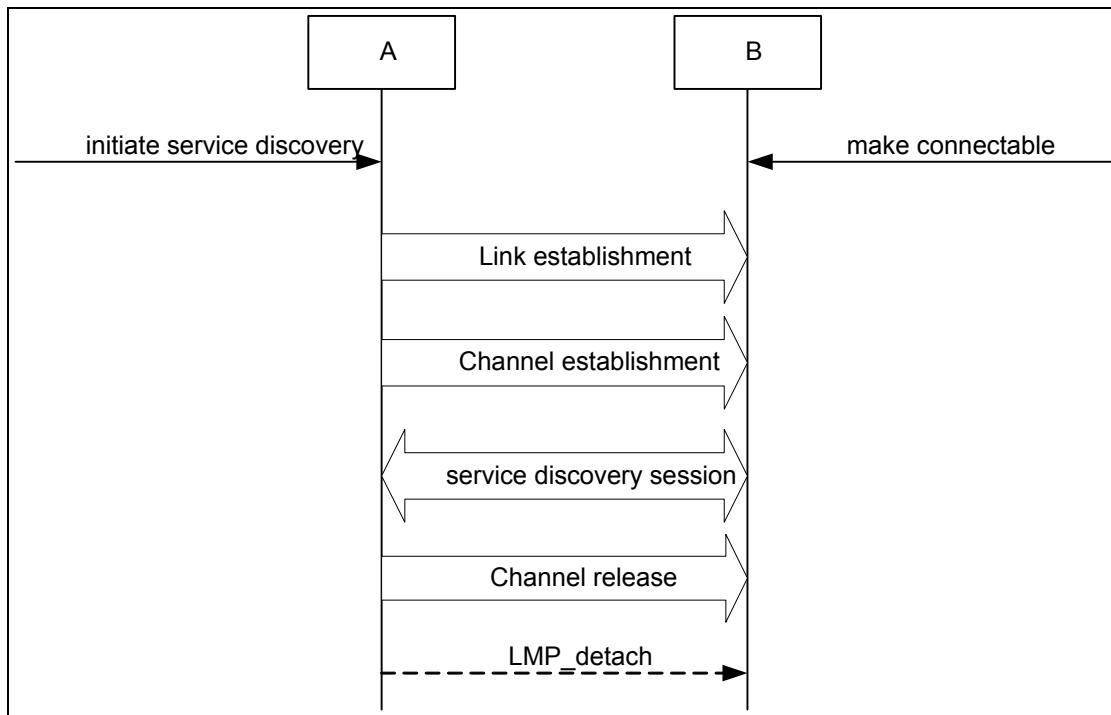


Figure 18.3: Service discovery procedure

## 18.4 GENERATING A RESOLVABLE PRIVATE ADDRESS

Generating a resolvable private address is described in [Section 10.8.2.2](#).

## 18.5 RESOLVING A RESOLVABLE PRIVATE ADDRESS

Resolving a resolvable private address is described in [Section 10.8.2.3](#).

## 19 REFERENCES

---

- [1] Baseband Specification
- [2] Link Manager Protocol
- [3] RFCOMM
- [4] Telephony Control Specification
- [5] Service Discovery Protocol
- [6] Security Architecture (white paper)
- [7] Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#)

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1:	Arrows used in signaling diagrams .....	290
Figure 2.1:	Relationship of GAP with lower layers of the Bluetooth architecture .....	291
Figure 2.2:	This profile covers procedures initiated by one device (A) towards another device (B) that may or may not have an existing Bluetooth link active .....	292
Figure 5.1:	Definition of the generic authentication procedure .....	310
Figure 5.2:	Channel establishment with security .....	311
Figure 5.3:	Security mode 3 with a legacy remote device .....	313
Figure 5.4:	Channel establishment using security mode 4 for initiating side .....	316
Figure 5.5:	Channel establishment using security mode 4 for the responding side .....	319
Figure 5.6:	OOB Data Block Format .....	324
Figure 6.1:	General inquiry, where B is a device in non-discoverable mode, B' is a device in limited discoverable mode and B'' is a device in general discoverable mode. (Note that all discoverable devices are discovered using general inquiry, independent of which discoverable mode they are in.) .....	329
Figure 6.2:	Limited inquiry where B is a device in non-discoverable mode, B' is a device in limited discoverable mode and B'' is a device in general discoverable mode. (Note that only limited discoverable devices can be discovered using limited inquiry.) .....	330
Figure 6.3:	Name request procedure .....	331
Figure 6.4:	Name discovery procedure .....	332
Figure 6.5:	Device discovery procedure .....	333
Figure 6.6:	General description of general bonding as being the link establishment procedure executed under specific conditions on both devices, followed by authentication and an optional higher layer initialization process. ....	335
Figure 6.7:	Dedicated Bonding as performed when the purpose of the procedure is only to create and exchange a link key between two Bluetooth devices .....	336
Figure 7.1:	Link establishment procedure when the paging device (A) is in security mode 3 and the paged device (B) is in security mode 1, 2, or 4 .....	338
Figure 7.2:	Link establishment procedure when both the paging device (A) and the paged device (B) are in security mode 3 .....	339
Figure 7.3:	Channel establishment procedure when the initiator (A) is in security mode 3 and the acceptor (B) is in security mode 2 or 4 .....	341

Figure 7.4:	Channel establishment procedure when the initiator (A) is in security mode 3 and the acceptor (B) is in security mode 1 or 3 .....	341
Figure 7.5:	Connection establishment procedure when the initiator (A) is in security mode 3 and the acceptor (B) is in security mode 2 or 4 .....	342
Figure 7.6:	Connection establishment procedure when the initiator (A) is in security mode 3 and the acceptor (B) is in security mode 1 or 3 .....	343
Figure 7.7:	Synchronization establishment procedure .....	344
Figure 8.1:	Extended Inquiry Response data format .....	345
Figure 9.1:	A Central performing limited discovery procedure discovering Peripherals in the limited discoverable mode .....	353
Figure 9.2:	A Central performing general discovery procedure discovering Peripherals in the limited discoverable mode and general discoverable mode .....	354
Figure 9.3:	Flow chart for a device performing the auto connection establishment procedure .....	359
Figure 9.4:	Flow chart for a device performing the general connection establishment procedure .....	360
Figure 9.5:	Flow chart for a device performing the selective connection establishment procedure .....	362
Figure 9.6:	Flow chart for a device performing the directed connection establishment procedure .....	363
Figure 9.7:	The Bonding procedure .....	369
Figure 10.1:	Flow chart for a local device handling a service request from a remote device .....	375
Figure 10.2:	Flow chart for a local device issuing a service request to a remote device .....	378
Figure 10.3:	Generic format of signed data .....	379
Figure 10.4:	Format of static address .....	384
Figure 10.5:	Format of non-resolvable private address .....	385
Figure 10.6:	Format of resolvable private address .....	386
Figure 11.1:	Advertising and Scan Response data format .....	387
Figure 18.1:	LMP-authentication as defined by [2] .....	405
Figure 18.2:	LMP-pairing as defined in [2] .....	406
Figure 18.3:	Service discovery procedure .....	407

## LIST OF TABLES

---

Table 1.1:	Device Types .....	288
Table 1.2:	Requirements for device types.....	288
Table 2.1:	Physical Layer and Link Layer functionality for GAP roles when operating over an LE physical transport.....	294
Table 4.1:	Conformance requirements related to modes defined in this section.....	301
Table 4.2:	Page scan parameters for connection speed scenarios .....	306
Table 5.1:	Conformance requirements related to the generic authentication procedure and the security modes defined in this section .....	309
Table 5.1:	Simple Pairing after Authentication Failure .....	320
Table 5.2:	User Input Capabilities .....	321
Table 5.3:	User Output Capabilities .....	321
Table 5.4:	IO Capability mapping.....	321
Table 5.5:	IO and OOB capability mapping.....	322
Table 5.6:	IO Capability Mapping to Authentication Stage 1 .....	323
Table 5.7:	Security Level mapping to link key requirements.....	326
Table 7.1:	Establishment procedures.....	337
Table 9.1:	Broadcast mode and Observation procedure Requirements ...	347
Table 9.2:	Device discovery requirements .....	349
Table 9.3:	Connection modes and procedures requirements .....	356
Table 9.4:	Bonding Compliance Requirements.....	367
Table 10.1:	Requirements related to security modes and procedures.....	370
Table 10.2:	Local device responds to a service request.....	373
Table 10.3:	Requirements related to privacy feature .....	381
Table 12.1:	GAP Service Requirements .....	388
Table 12.2:	Requirements related to GAP Service characteristics .....	388
Table 12.3:	Device Name characteristic .....	389
Table 12.4:	Appearance characteristic.....	389
Table 12.5:	Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic....	390
Table 12.6:	Format of the preferred connection parameters structured data .....	390
Table 13.1:	Requirements for the modes of a BR/EDR/LE device type.....	392
Table 13.2:	Requirements for the bonding of a BR/EDR/LE device type....	393
Table 14.1:	Requirements for the security aspects of a BR/EDR/LE device type .....	394
Table 15.1:	Requirements based on GAP Roles Supported.....	395
Table 15.2:	Requirements based on GAP Roles Supported.....	396
Table 15.3:	SDP Record for the Generic Access Profile.....	396
Table 17.1:	Defined GAP timers .....	401



Core System Package [Host volume]

Part D

## **TEST SUPPORT**



## CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>Test Methodology .....</b>	<b>417</b>
1.1	BR/EDR Test Scenarios .....	417
1.1.1	Test Setup .....	417
1.1.2	Transmitter Test.....	418
1.1.2.1	Packet Format .....	419
1.1.2.2	Pseudorandom Sequence .....	420
1.1.2.3	Control of Transmit Parameters.....	421
1.1.2.4	Power Control .....	421
1.1.2.5	Switch Between Different Frequency Settings .....	421
1.1.2.6	Adaptive Frequency Hopping .....	422
1.1.3	LoopBack Test.....	422
1.1.4	Pause Test.....	426
1.2	AMP Test Scenarios.....	427
1.2.1	Methodology Overview.....	427
1.2.1.1	Initiation Example Description.....	428
1.2.2	Control and Configuration .....	429
1.2.3	AMP Test Manager.....	429
1.2.4	Test Commands/Events Format .....	430
1.2.5	AMP Test Manager Commands/Events .....	432
1.2.5.1	AMP Command Rejected Event .....	432
1.2.5.2	AMP Discover Request.....	433
1.2.5.3	AMP Discover Response Event.....	433
1.2.5.4	AMP Read PHY Capability Bit Map Command .....	434
1.2.5.5	AMP Read PHY Capability Bit Map Response Event.....	435
1.3	References.....	435
<b>2</b>	<b>Test Control Interface (TCI) .....</b>	<b>436</b>
2.1	Introduction .....	436
2.1.1	Terms Used .....	436
2.1.2	Usage of the Interface .....	436
2.2	TCI Configurations .....	437
2.2.1	Bluetooth RF Requirements .....	437
2.2.1.1	Required interfaces.....	437
2.2.2	Bluetooth Protocol Requirements.....	438
2.2.2.1	Required interfaces.....	438
2.2.3	Bluetooth Profile Requirements.....	439
2.2.3.1	Required interfaces.....	439

---

*Test Support*

2.3	TCI Configuration and Usage .....	440
2.3.1	Transport Layers .....	440
2.3.1.1	Physical bearer.....	440
2.3.1.2	Software bearer .....	440
2.3.2	Baseband and Link Manager Qualification .....	441
2.3.3	HCI Qualification .....	443

## 1 TEST METHODOLOGY

This section describes the test modes for hardware and low-level functionality tests of Bluetooth devices.

The BR/EDR test mode supports testing of the Bluetooth transmitter and receiver including transmitter tests (packets with constant bit patterns) and loopback tests. It is intended mainly for certification/compliance testing of the radio and baseband layer, and may also be used for regulatory approval or in-production and after-sales testing.

For AMP, this section describes the AMP test mode for hardware and low-level functionality tests of Bluetooth AMP devices. The AMP test mode provides the ability to control an AMP device using HCI Commands for both MAC conformance testing and PHY transmitter and receiver tests utilising the BR/EDR connection. The AMP test mode is intended mainly for certification/compliance testing of the MAC and PHY and may also be used for regulatory approval or in production and after sales testing.

### 1.1 BR/EDR TEST SCENARIOS

A device in BR/EDR test mode shall not support normal operation. For security reasons the BR/EDR test mode is designed such that it offers no benefit to the user. Therefore, no data output or acceptance on a HW or SW interface shall be allowed.

#### 1.1.1 Test Setup

The setup consists of a device under test (DUT) and a tester. Optionally, additional measurement equipment may be used.

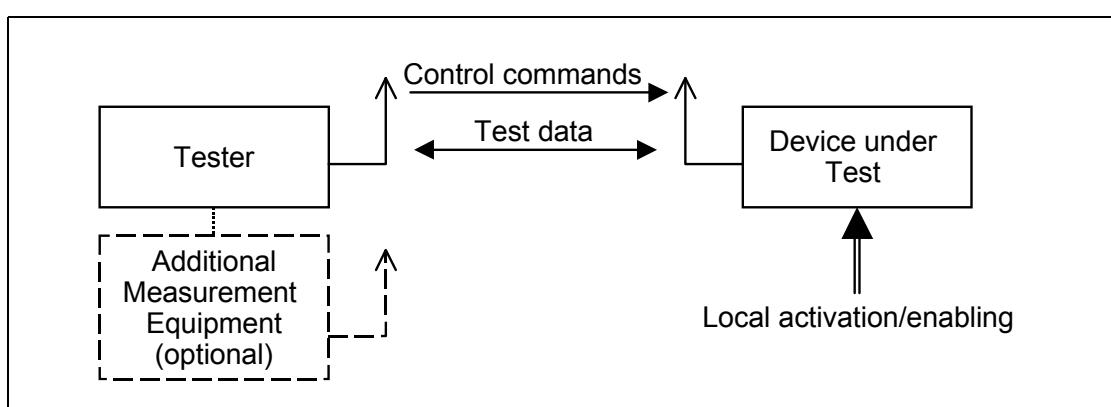


Figure 1.1: Setup for Test Mode

Tester and DUT form a piconet where the tester acts as master and has full control over the test procedure. The DUT acts as slave.

The control is done via the air interface using LMP commands (see [\[Vol. 2, Part C\] Section 4.7.3 on page 345](#)). Hardware interfaces to the DUT may exist, but are not subject to standardization.

The test mode is a special state of the Bluetooth model. For security and type approval reasons, a Bluetooth device in test mode shall not support normal operation. When the DUT leaves the test mode it enters the standby state. After power-off the Bluetooth device shall return to the standby state.

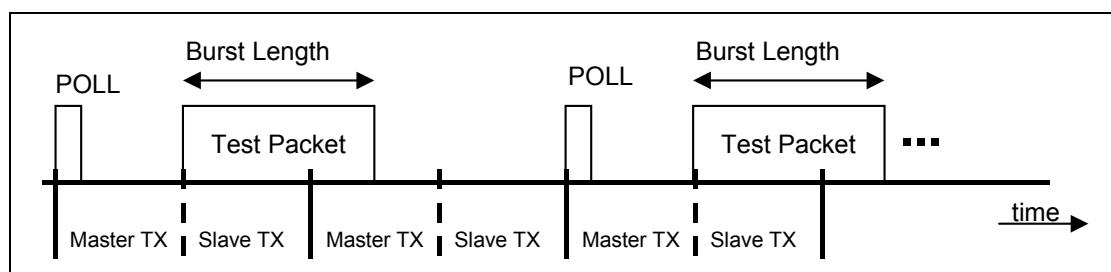
### 1.1.2 Transmitter Test

The Bluetooth device transmits a constant bit pattern. This pattern is transmitted periodically with packets aligned to the slave TX timing of the piconet formed by tester and DUT. The same test packet is repeated for each transmission.

The transmitter test is started when the master sends the first POLL packet. In non-hopping mode the agreed frequency is used for this POLL packet.

The tester (master) transmits control or POLL packets in the master-to-slave transmission slots. The DUT (slave) shall transmit packets in the following slave-to-master transmission slot. The tester's polling interval is fixed and defined by the LMP\_test\_control PDU. The device under test may transmit its burst according to the normal timing even if no packet from the tester was received. In this case, the ARQN bit is shall be set to NAK.

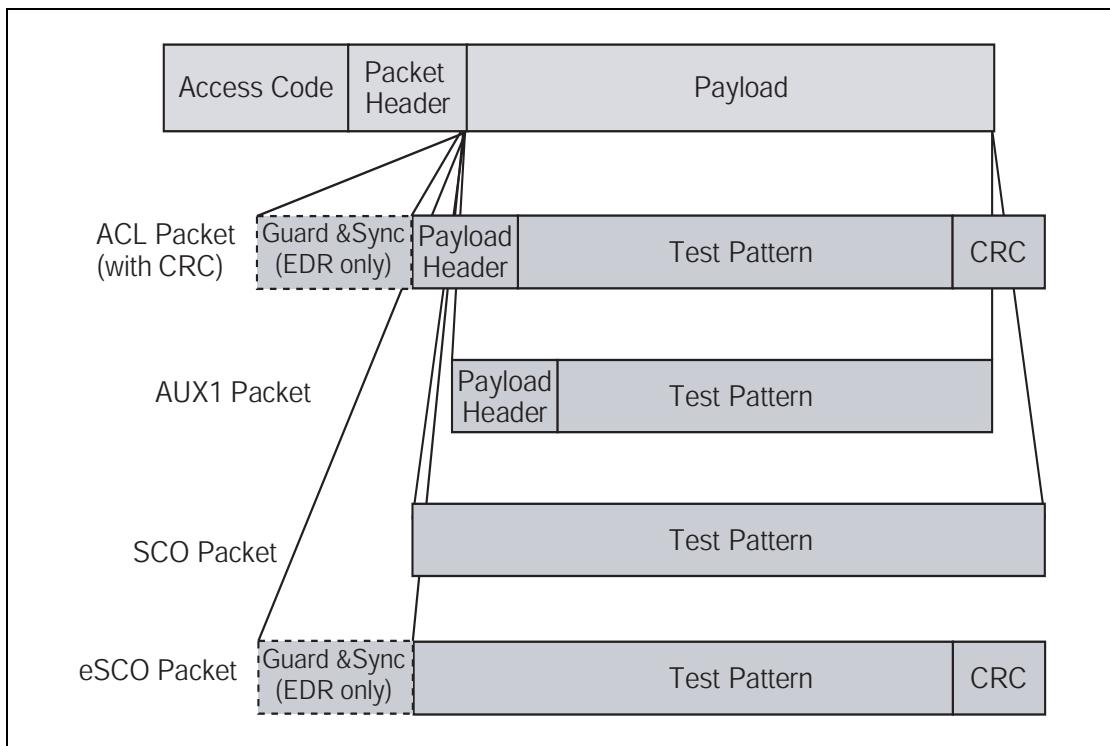
The burst length may exceed the length of a one slot packet. In this case the tester may take the next free master TX slot for polling. The timing is illustrated in [Figure 1.2](#).



*Figure 1.2: Timing for Transmitter Test*

### 1.1.2.1 Packet Format

The test packet is a normal Bluetooth packet, see [Figure 1.3](#). For the payload itself see below.



*Figure 1.3: General Format of TX Packet*

During configuration the tester defines:

- the packet type to be used
- payload length

For the payload length, the restrictions from the baseband specification shall apply (see [“Baseband Specification” on page 59\[vol. 2\]](#)). In case of ACL, SCO and eSCO packets the payload structure defined in the baseband specification is preserved as well, see [Figure 1.3 on page 419](#).

For the transmitter test mode, only packets without FEC should be used; i.e. HV3, EV3, EV5, DH1, DH3, DH5, 2-EV3, 2-EV5, 3-EV3, 3-EV5, 2-DH1, 2-DH3, 2-DH5, 3-DH1, 3-DH3, 3-DH5 and AUX1 packets.

In transmitter test mode, the packets exchanged between the tester and the DUT shall not be scrambled with the whitening sequence. Whitening shall be turned off when the DUT has accepted to enter the transmitter test mode, and shall be turned on when the DUT has accepted to exit the transmitter test mode, see [Figure 1.4 on page 420](#). Implementations shall ensure that retransmissions of the LMP\_accepted messages use the same whitening status as used in the original LMP\_accepted.

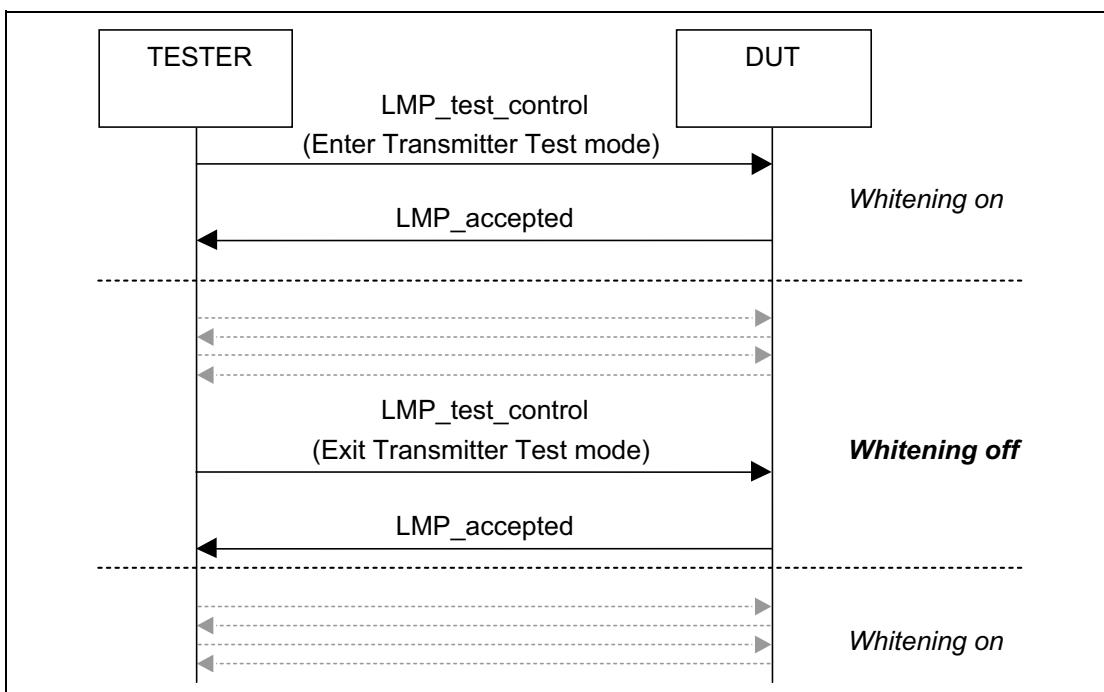


Figure 1.4: Use of whitening in Transmitter mode

### 1.1.2.2 Pseudorandom Sequence

The same pseudorandom sequence of bits shall be used for each transmission (i.e. the packet is repeated). A PRBS-9 Sequence is used, see [2] and [3].

The properties of this sequence are as follows (see [3]). The sequence may be generated in a nine-stage shift register whose 5th and 9th stage outputs are added in a modulo-two addition stage (see Figure 1.5), and the result is fed back to the input of the first stage. The sequence begins with the first ONE of 9 consecutive ONES; i.e. the shift register is initialized with nine ones.

- Number of shift register stages: 9
- Length of pseudo-random sequence:  $2^9 - 1 = 511$  bits
- Longest sequence of zeros: 8 (non-inverted signal)

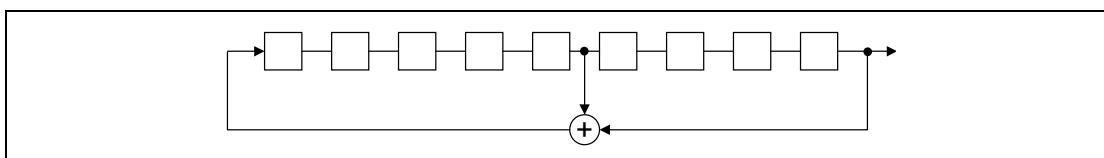


Figure 1.5: Linear Feedback Shift Register for Generation of the PRBS sequence

### 1.1.2.3 Control of Transmit Parameters

The following parameters can be set to configure the transmitter test:

1. Bit pattern:
  - Constant zero
  - Constant one
  - Alternating 1010...<sup>1</sup>
  - Alternating 1111 0000 1111 0000...<sup>4</sup>
  - Pseudorandom bit pattern
  - Transmission off
2. Frequency selection:
  - Single frequency
  - Normal hopping
3. TX frequency
  - $k \Rightarrow f := (2402 + k)$  MHz
4. Default poll period in TDD frames ( $n * 1.25$  ms)
5. Packet Type
6. Length of Test Sequence (user data of packet definition in “[Baseband Specification](#)” on page 59[vol. 2])

### 1.1.2.4 Power Control

When the legacy power control mechanism is tested the DUT shall start transmitting at the maximum power and shall reduce/increase its power by one step on every LMP\_incr\_power\_req or LMP\_decr\_power\_req PDU received. When the enhanced power control mechanism is tested a DUT shall start transmitting at the maximum power and shall reduce/increase its power by one step or go to the maximum power level when a LMP\_power\_control\_req PDU is received.

### 1.1.2.5 Switch Between Different Frequency Settings

A change in the frequency selection becomes effective when the LMP procedure is completed:

When the tester receives the LMP\_accepted it shall then transmit POLL packets containing the ACK for at least 8 slots (4 transmissions). When these transmissions have been completed the tester shall change to the new frequency hop and whitening settings.

---

1. It is recommended that the sequence starts with a one; but, as this is irrelevant for measurements, it is also allowed to start with a zero.

After sending LMP\_accepted the DUT shall wait for the LC level ACK for the LMP\_accepted. When this is received it shall change to the new frequency hop and whitening settings.

There will be an implementation defined delay after sending the LMP\_accepted before the TX or loopback test starts. Testers shall be able to cope with this.

*Note: Loss of the LMP\_accepted PDU will eventually lead to a loss of frequency synchronization that cannot be recovered. Similar problems occur in normal operation, when the hopping pattern changes.*

#### 1.1.2.6 Adaptive Frequency Hopping

Adaptive Frequency Hopping (AFH) shall only be used when the Hopping Mode is set to 79 channels (e.g. Hopping Mode = 1) in the LMP\_test\_control PDU. If AFH is used, the normal LMP commands and procedures shall be used. When AFH is enabled prior to entering test mode it shall continue to be used with the same parameters if Hopping Mode = 1 until the AFH parameters are changed by the LMP\_set\_AFH PDU.

The channel classification reporting state shall be retained upon entering or exiting Test Mode. The DUT shall change the channel classification reporting state in Test Mode based on control messages from the tester (LMP\_channel\_classification\_req) and from the Host (HCI Write\_AFH\_Channel\_Classification\_Mode).

### 1.1.3 LoopBack Test

In loopback, the device under test receives normal baseband packets containing payload Accepted from the tester. The received packets shall be decoded in the DUT, and the payload shall be sent back using the same packet type. The return packet shall be sent back in either the slave-to-master transmission slot directly following the transmission of the tester, or it is delayed and sent back in the slave-to-master transmission slot after the next transmission of the tester (see [Figure 1.7 to Figure 1.9 on page 425](#)).

There is no signaling to determine or control the mode. The device behavior shall be fixed or adjusted by other means, and shall not change randomly.

The tester can select, whether whitening is on or off. This setting holds for both uplink and downlink. For switching the whitening status, the same rules as in [Section 1.1.2 on page 418 \(Figure 1.4\)](#) shall apply.

The following rules apply (for illustration see [Figure 1.6 on page 424](#)):

- If the synch word was not detected, the DUT shall not reply.
- If the header error check (HEC) fails, the DUT shall either reply with a NULL packet with the ARQN bit set to NAK or send nothing.

- If the packet contains an LMP message relating to the control of the test mode this command shall be executed and the packet shall not be returned, though ACK or NAK shall be returned as per the usual procedure. Other LMP commands are ignored and no packet is returned.
- The payload FEC is decoded and the payload shall be encoded again for transmission. This allows testing of the FEC handling. If the pure bit error rate shall be determined the tester chooses a packet type without FEC.
- The CRC shall be evaluated. In the case of a failure, ARQN=NAK shall be returned. The payload shall be returned as received.  
A new CRC for the return packet shall be calculated for the returned payload regardless of whether the CRC was valid or not.
- If the CRC fails for a packet with a CRC and a payload header, the number of bytes as indicated in the (possibly erroneous) payload header shall be looped back.

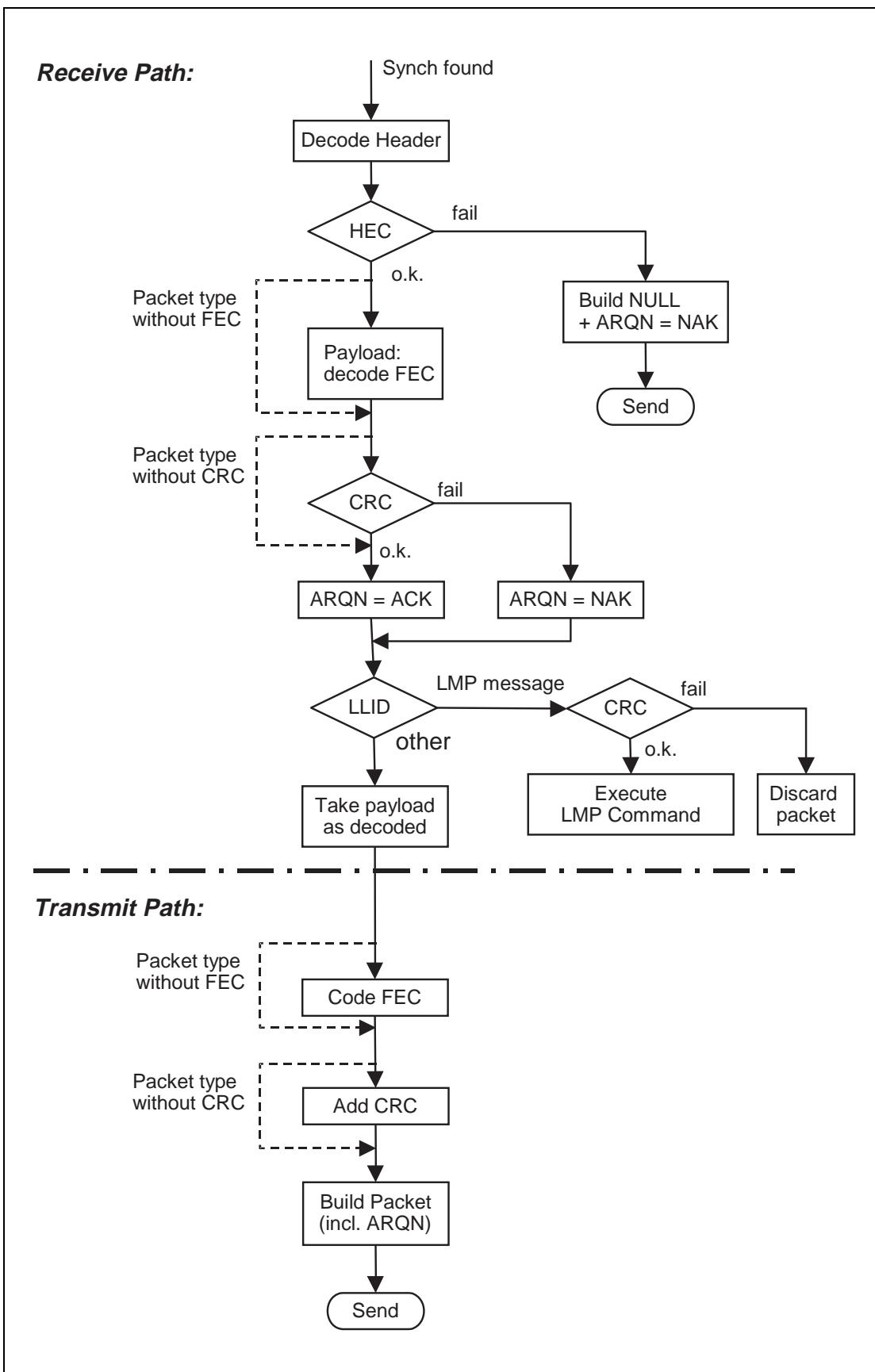
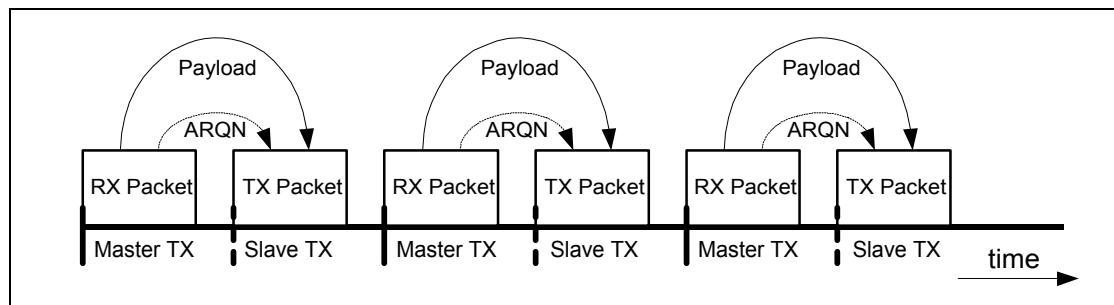
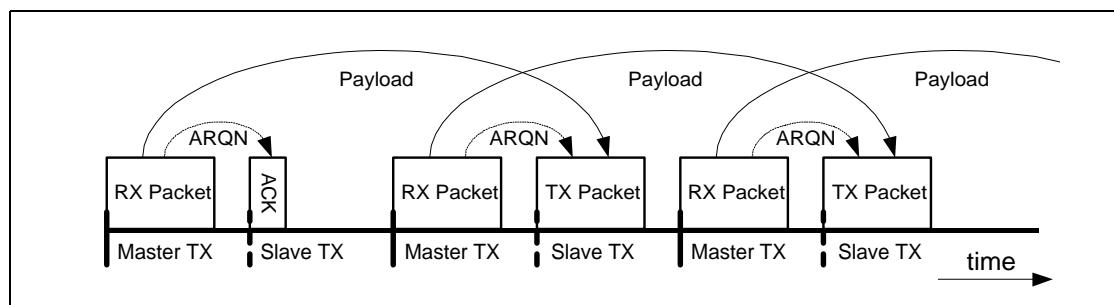


Figure 1.6: DUT Packet Handling in Loop Back Test

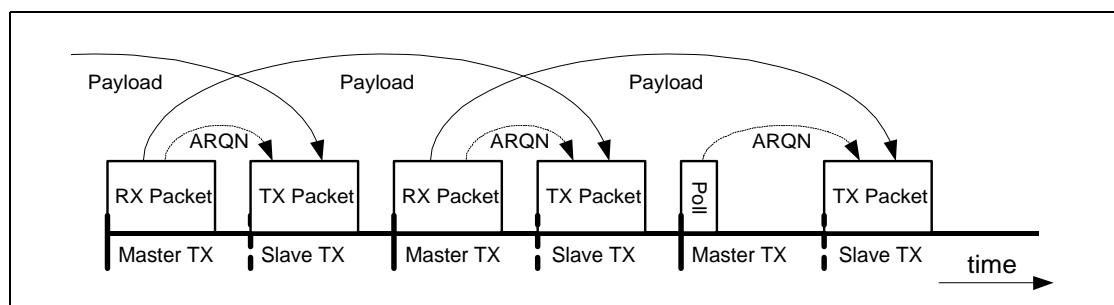
The timing for normal and delayed loopback is illustrated in [Figure 1.7](#) to [Figure 1.9](#):



*Figure 1.7: Payload & ARQN handling in normal loopback.*



*Figure 1.8: Payload & ARQN handling in delayed loopback - start.*



*Figure 1.9: Payload & ARQN handling in delayed loopback - end.*

The whitening is performed in the same way as it is used in normal active mode.

The following parameters can be set to configure the loop back test:

1. Packet Class<sup>1</sup>
  - ACL Packets
  - SCO Packets
  - eSCO Packets
  - ACL Packets without whitening

1. This is included because, in the future, the packet type numbering may not remain unambiguous.

- SCO Packets without whitening
- eSCO Packets without whitening
- 2. Frequency Selection
  - Single frequency (independent for RX and TX)
  - Normal hopping
- 3. Power level: (To be used according radio specification requirements)
  - power control or fixed TX power

The switch of the frequency setting is done exactly as for the transmitter test (see [Section 1.1.2.5 on page 421](#)).

#### 1.1.4 Pause Test

Pause test is used by testers to put the device under test into Pause Test mode from either the loopback or transmitter test modes.

When an LMP\_test\_control PDU that specifies Pause Test is received the DUT shall stop the current test and enter Pause Test mode. In the case of a transmitter test this means that no more packets shall be transmitted. While in Pause Test mode the DUT shall respond normally to POLL packets (i.e. responds with a NULL packet). The DUT shall also respond normally to all the LMP packets that are allowed in test mode.

When the test scenario is set to Pause Test all the other fields in the LMP\_test\_control PDU shall be ignored. There shall be no change in hopping scheme or whitening as a result of a request to pause test.

## 1.2 AMP TEST SCENARIOS

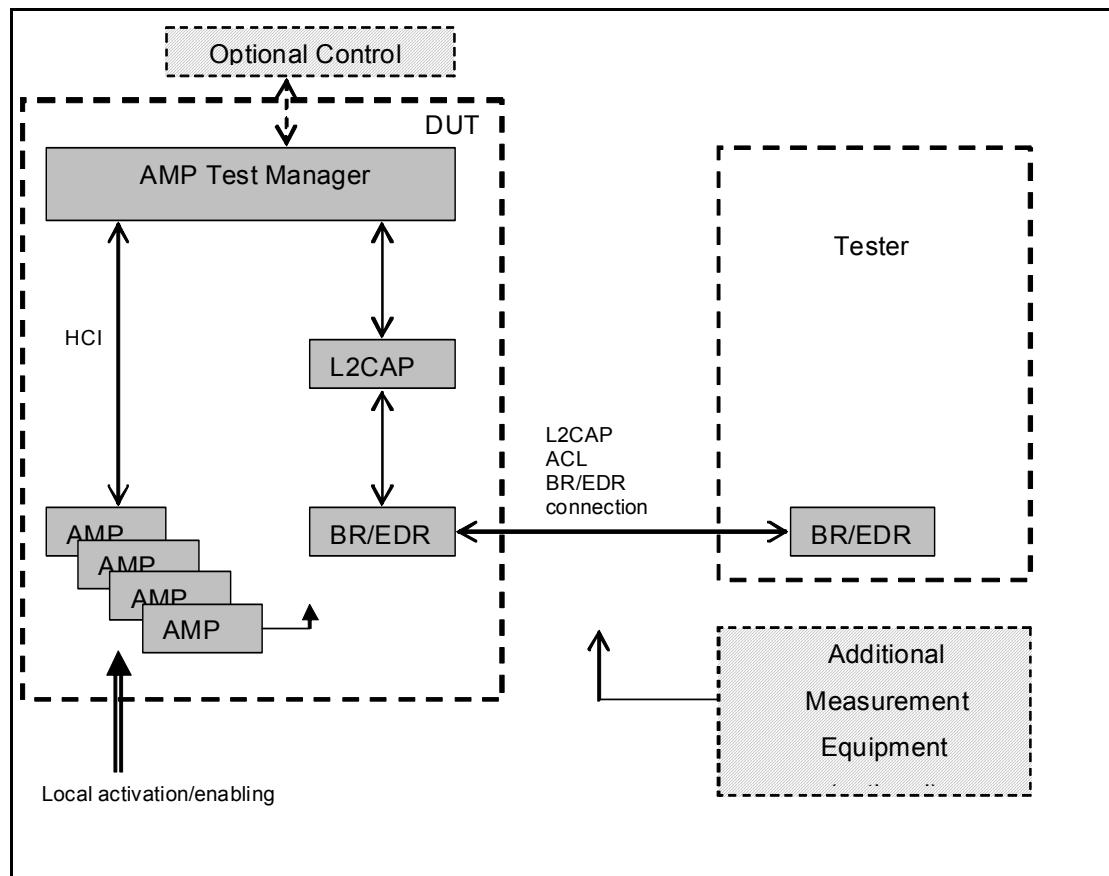


Figure 1.10: Test Architecture

### 1.2.1 Methodology Overview

To perform PHY tests on an AMP, the DUT shall first have AMP Test Mode enabled locally as required for a BR/EDR Controller using the HCI `Enable_Device_Under_Test_Mode` command. When this command is received by the AMP controller it shall enable the AMP to accept HCI Test Commands and when received by the BR/EDR controller it shall enable the AMP Test Manager to pass HCI commands and events between the tester and the AMP device utilizing the BR/EDR connection. A DUT AMP shall reject all AMP related HCI Test Commands, except `HCI_Enable_Device_Under_Test_Mode`, until the `HCI_Enable_Device_Under_Test_Mode` command has been issued by the local Host. Although AMP Test Mode is enabled the AMP shall not enter AMP Test Mode until the `HCI_AMP_Test_Command` is received.

Note: Enabling test mode with `HCI_Enable_Device_Under_Test_Mode` command allows the AMP to enter test mode when an `HCI_AMP_Test_Command` is received.

The local control of an AMP in AMP Test Mode shall be by the AMP Test Manager as shown in [Figure 1.10](#). The AMP Test Manager will receive AMP Test Manager commands and HCI test commands via ACL data packets as shown

in [Figure 1.10](#), using an L2CAP connectionless fixed test channel (channel 0x003F) from a Bluetooth test device. This does not exclude driving the AMP Test Manager directly from an implementation vendor specific interface as shown from the "Optional Control" in [Figure 1.10](#).

The AMP Test Manager commands allow the tester to discover the number and type of AMPs supported and to read their PHY capability support via the AMP Test Manager.

The tester can use HCI commands and HCI Test Commands to control all of the AMPs to perform qualification, IOP testing as well as entering AMP Test Mode to perform AMP PHY tests. The HCI events and responses shall be routed back to the tester via the fixed test channel (0x003F).

If an HCI command is sent to an invalid Controller ID (a controller not reported in the Discovery Response) the AMP Command Rejected Event shall be returned with an Invalid Controller Id as the reason.

An AMP shall be taken out of AMP Test Mode by the HCI\_Reset command. This will reset only the AMP receiving the HCI\_Reset.

The AMP Test Manager shall not be enabled to support HCI commands over the fixed test channel (0x003F) unless AMP Test Mode has been enabled locally with the HCI\_Enable\_Device\_Under\_Test\_Mode command.

The "Optional Control" interface shown in [Figure 1.10](#) is a vendor specific interface that allows local control of the AMP Test Manager when a BR/EDR link may not be available.

#### 1.2.1.1 Initiation Example Description

The AMP Test Manager is enabled to receive AMP test commands and HCI commands over the fixed test channel once it has been locally enabled. Using the fixed test channel, the tester shall use the AMP test commands and events to identify the number and type of AMPs available.

When the AMP Test Manager has been enabled and the AMPs identified the Tester shall use the AMP Test Manager to

- Transfer HCI commands and Events to and from the AMPs for qualification and IOP testing.
- Put the AMPs into test mode using HCI AMP test commands and events for AMP PHY testing.

### 1.2.2 Control and Configuration

Control and configuration of AMP tests shall be performed using two groups of commands/events over the ACL BR/EDR connection on the fixed test channel. The two groups are the AMP Test Manager commands/events which are to the AMP Test Manager and the HCI AMP test commands/events which are routed via the AMP Test Manager between the AMP indicated as part of the message structure and the tester.

AMP Test Manager commands and events	AMP Command Rejected Event
	AMP Discover Request Command
	AMP Discover Response Event
	AMP Read PHY Capability Bit Map Request
	AMP Read PHY Capability Bit Map Response Event
HCI AMP test commands and events	Read Loopback Mode Command
	Write Loopback Mode Command
	Enable AMP Receiver Reports Command
	AMP Test End Command
	AMP Test Command
	AMP Start Test Event
	AMP Test End Event
	AMP Receiver Report Event

### 1.2.3 AMP Test Manager

The AMP Test Manager provides the interface to the AMPs available so that qualification, IOP and PHY testing can be performed using the BR/EDR connection. The AMP Test Manager provides the following services:

1. Identification of the number and type of AMPs available
2. Enumeration of the available AMPs so that they can be communicated to individually
3. Routing of the HCI commands and events between the AMPs and the tester over the ACL BR/EDR connection on the fixed test channel, or the vendor specific interface (that is, a local interface to the AMP Test Manager other than the BR/EDR radio).

### 1.2.4 Test Commands/Events Format

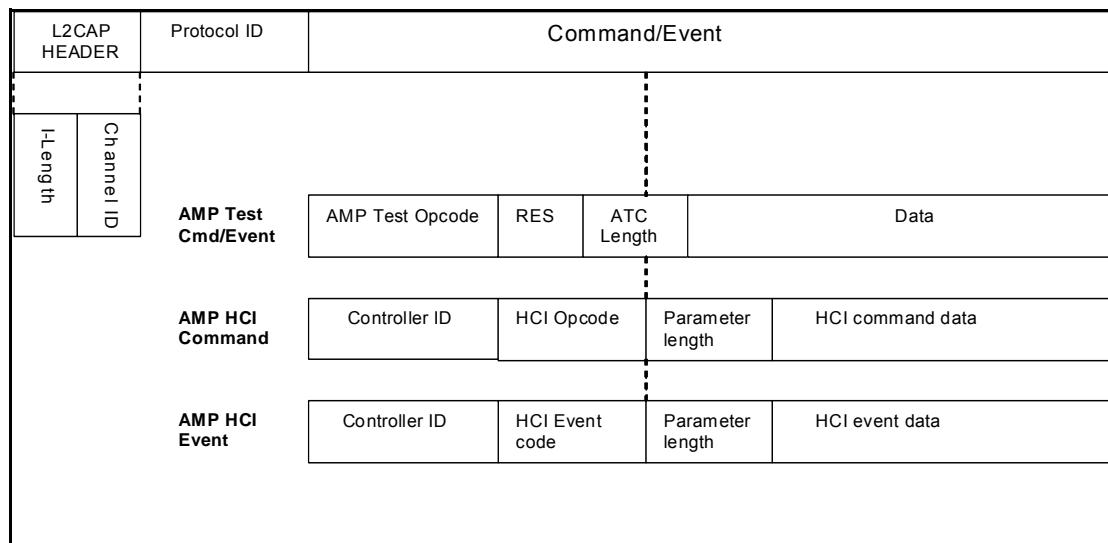


Figure 1.11: L2CAP test command/event formats

The fields shown are:

#### L2CAP header (4 octets)

This is the Basic L2CAP header with the Channel ID always set to test channel (0x003F). (See section [\[Vol. 3\], Part A Section 3.1](#))

- *Length (2 octets)*  
Length of the Information payload which includes the Protocol ID and the Command/Event
- *Channel ID ( 2 octets)*  
Fixed value of (0x003F)

#### Protocol ID (1 octet)

This identifies the protocol in the command/event data. The IDs used are an extension of the UART transport packet types.

Protocol ID	Command/event type
0x01	HCI Command
0x02	Reserved
0x03	Reserved
0x04	HCI Event
0x05	AMP Test Command
0x06	AMP Test Event

Table 1.1: L2CAP valid test protocol IDs

**Controller ID (1 octet)**

Each Controller in a device is assigned a one-octet unique identifier by the local AMP Test Manager. This field determines the destination of the HCI Command or the source of the HCI Event. The Controller ID values shall be in the range of 1 to 255. Controller ID 0 has been reserved for the primary BR/EDR controller.

Note: "Controller" is a generic term which covers both the primary BR/EDR controller and any AMPs

**ATO (AMP Test Opcode) (1 octet)**

This is the AMP Test Manager commands or event code as described in [Section 1.2.5](#).

**RES (1 octet)**

Reserved = 0

**AMP Test Command (ATC) Length (2 octets)**

This is the number of octets in the data portion of this message

**AMP HCI Commands and Events**

The format of these packets follow the standard HCI format described in [\[Vol. 2\], Part E](#), after the Controller ID.

**Examples**

	<b>Protocol ID</b>	<b>Command/Event</b>			
AMP Test command	0x05	AMP Test Opcode	0x00	Length	AMP Test Command
AMP Test Event	0x06	AMP Test Opcode	0x00	Length	AMP Test Event
AMP HCI Command	0x01	Controller ID	HCI Command		
AMP HCI Event	0x04	Controller ID	HCI Event		

## 1.2.5 AMP Test Manager Commands/Events

The AMP Test Manager commands are sent to the AMP Test Manager from the tester and the events are from the AMP Test Manager to the tester.

The data fields are:

- *AMP Test Opcode (1 octet)*  
Identifies the type of AMP Test Manager command/event.
- *RES (1 octet)*  
Reserved and shall be set to 0.
- *Amp Test Command (ATC) length (2 octets)*  
Length of the data field of the command/event. This length does not include the AMP Test Opcode, reserved octet or the ATC length.

AMP Test Opcode	Description
0x00	Reserved
0x01	AMP Command Rejected Event
0x02	AMP Discover Request
0x03	AMP Discover Response Event
0x04	AMP Read PHY Capability Bit Map Command
0x05	AMP Read PHY Capability Bit Map Response Event
0x06 - 0xFF	Reserved

Table 1.2: AMP Test Opcodes

### 1.2.5.1 AMP Command Rejected Event

This event shall be sent by the DUT to the tester when a command cannot be accepted. The parameter returned indicates the reason.

Opcode = 0x01	Reserved = 0	ATC length = 2	Reason
---------------	--------------	----------------	--------

The data fields are:

- *AMP Test Opcode (1 octet)*  
0x01
- *RES (1 octet)*  
Reserved and shall be set to 0
- *ATC length (2 octets)*  
Always set to 0x0002

- *Reason (2 octets)*

See [Table 1.3](#).

Reason Value	Description
0x0000	Command not recognized
0x0001	Invalid Controller ID
0x0002	Invalid Protocol ID
0x0003 to 0xFFFF	Reserved

*Table 1.3: AMP Command reasons for rejection*

#### 1.2.5.2 AMP Discover Request

The tester shall send this command to the AMP Test Manager to obtain the available Controllers and their types.

Opcode = 0x02	Reserved = 0	ATC length = 0
---------------	--------------	----------------

The data fields are:

- *AMP Test Opcode (1 octet)*  
Shall be set to 0x02
- *RES (1 octet)*  
Reserved and shall be set to 0x00
- *ATC length (2 octet)*  
Shall be set to 0x0000

Events generated

On receipt of the AMP\_Discover\_Request command the AMP Test Manager shall return the AMP\_Discover\_Response event.

#### 1.2.5.3 AMP Discover Response Event

When the AMP Test Manager receives an AMP\_Discover\_Request command it shall reply to the tester with an AMP\_Discover\_Response event indicating for each controller the Controller ID and Controller Type. The first Controller ID and Type pair in the response shall be 0 for the BR/EDR primary controller followed by the available additional Controllers ID and Type pairs.

Opcode = 0x03	Reserved = 0	ATC length	Controller list
---------------	--------------	------------	-----------------

### Controller list

Controller ID=0	Controller Type=0	Additional Controller ID and Type pairs
-----------------	-------------------	---

- *AMP Test Opcode (1 octet)*  
Shall be set to 0x03
- *RES (1 octet)*  
Reserved and shall be set to 0x00.
- *ATC length (2 octets)*  
ATClength = (Controller ID length + Controller Type length) \* number of Controllers
- *Controller Types (1 octet)*  
Each type of Controller is assigned a unique one-octet value. These values are defined in [Assigned Numbers](#). A device may have multiple AMPs of the same type.

Note: The AMP Discovery Response shall include the primary BR/EDR Controller as the first Controller ID and Controller Type pair.

#### 1.2.5.4 AMP Read PHY Capability Bit Map Command

To perform AMP PHY tests the tester needs to know the supported PHY capabilities of the DUT. This information shall be provided in the PHY Capability Bit Map. This command shall be sent from the tester to the DUT to request the PHY Capability Bit Map from an AMP with the passed Controller ID.

Opcode = 0x04	Reserved = 0	ATC length = 1	Controller ID
---------------	--------------	----------------	---------------

The data fields are:

- *AMP Test Opcode (1 octet)*  
Always set to 0x04
- *RES (1 octet)*  
Reserved and shall be set to 0
- *ATC length (2 octets)*  
Always set to 0x0001
- *Controller ID (1 octet)*  
The Controller from which the PHY Capability Bit Map is being requested.  
This is an invalid request from a BR/EDR Controller and will be rejected with the reason of Invalid Controller ID.

### 1.2.5.5 AMP Read PHY Capability Bit Map Response Event

When the AMP\_Read\_PHY\_Capability\_Bit\_Map Command is received by an AMP Test Manager it shall reply with the capability bit map for the AMP indicated if the Controller ID is valid.

- *AMP Test Opcode (1 octet)*  
Always set to 0x05
- *RES (1 octet)*  
Reserved and shall be set to 0
- *ATC length (2 octets)*  
The length of the PHY Capabilities Bit Map returned depending on the AMP type.
- *Status (1 octet)*  
See the following table.

Reason Value	Description
0x00	Success
0x01	Invalid Controller ID
0x02 to 0xFF	Reserved

Note: If the status is not Success the remaining parameters shall be zero.

- *Controller ID (1 octet)*  
This is the Controller ID from which the PHY Capability Bit Map has been sent.
- *PHY Capabilities Bit Map*  
See [\[Volume 5\]](#) for the PHY Capabilities Bit Map.

Opcode = 0x05	Reserved = 0	ATC length	Status	Controller ID	PHY Capabilities Bit Map
---------------	--------------	------------	--------	---------------	--------------------------

## 1.3 REFERENCES

- [1] Bluetooth Link Manager Protocol.
- [2] CCITT Recommendation O.153 (1992), Basic parameters for the measurement of error performance at bit rates below the primary rate.
- [3] ITU-T Recommendation O.150 (1996), General requirements for instrumentation for performance measurements on digital transmission equipment.
- [4] Bluetooth Baseband Specification.

## 2 TEST CONTROL INTERFACE (TCI)

This section describes the Bluetooth Test Control Interface (TCI). The TCI provides a uniform method of accessing the upper interface of the implementation being tested. This facilitates the use of a standardized interface on test equipment used for formal Qualification of implementations.

### 2.1 INTRODUCTION

#### 2.1.1 Terms Used

Conformance testing	Testing according to the applicable procedures given in the Bluetooth Protocol Test Specifications and the Bluetooth Profile Conformance Test Specification when tested against a test system.
HCI	Host Controller Interface
IUT	Implementation Under Test: An implementation of one or more Bluetooth protocols and profiles which is to be studied by testing. This term is used when describing the test concept for products and components equipped with Bluetooth wireless technology as defined in the PRD.
PRD	Bluetooth Qualification Program Reference Document: This document is maintained by the Bluetooth Qualification Review Board and is the reference to specify the functions, organization and processes inside the Bluetooth Qualification program.
TCI	Test Control Interface: The interface and protocol used by the test equipment to send and receive messages to and from the upper interface of the IUT.

#### 2.1.2 Usage of the Interface

For all products and components equipped with Bluetooth wireless technology, conformance testing is used to verify the implemented functionality in the lower layers. Conformance testing of the lowest layers requires an upper tester to test the implementation sufficiently well.

In order to avoid that the tester will have to adapt to each and every product and component equipped with Bluetooth wireless technology, the use of the standardized TCI is mandated. This concept puts some burden upon the manufacturer of the IUT in terms of supplying an adapter providing the necessary conversion from/to the IUT's specific interface to the TCI. The adapter can consist of hardware, firmware and software. After qualification testing has been performed the TCI may be removed from the product or component equipped with Bluetooth wireless technology. It is the manufacturer's option to remove it

from the qualified product or component equipped with Bluetooth wireless technology.

The TCI is used when qualifying the implemented functionality of the:

- Baseband layer, BB
- Link Manager layer, LM

If support of the Host Controller Interface is claimed by the manufacturer the TCI is used to qualify it.

## 2.2 TCI CONFIGURATIONS

This section describes the test configurations used when verifying the different Bluetooth requirements. Each layer in the Bluetooth stack is qualified using the procedures described in the layer specific test specification.

### 2.2.1 Bluetooth RF Requirements

For qualification of the Bluetooth Radio Frequency requirements the defined Test Mode is used, see [Section 1 on page 417](#).

Similar to TCI, the specific test mode functionality may be removed from the product or component after qualification, at the discretion of the manufacturer.

#### 2.2.1.1 Required interfaces

For RF qualification only the air interface is required, see [Figure 2.1](#). Depending on the physical design of the IUT it might be necessary to temporarily attach an RF connector for executing the RF tests. As stated in [Section 1 on page 417](#), the Test Mode shall be locally enabled on the IUT for security reasons. The implementation of this local enabling is not subject to standardization.

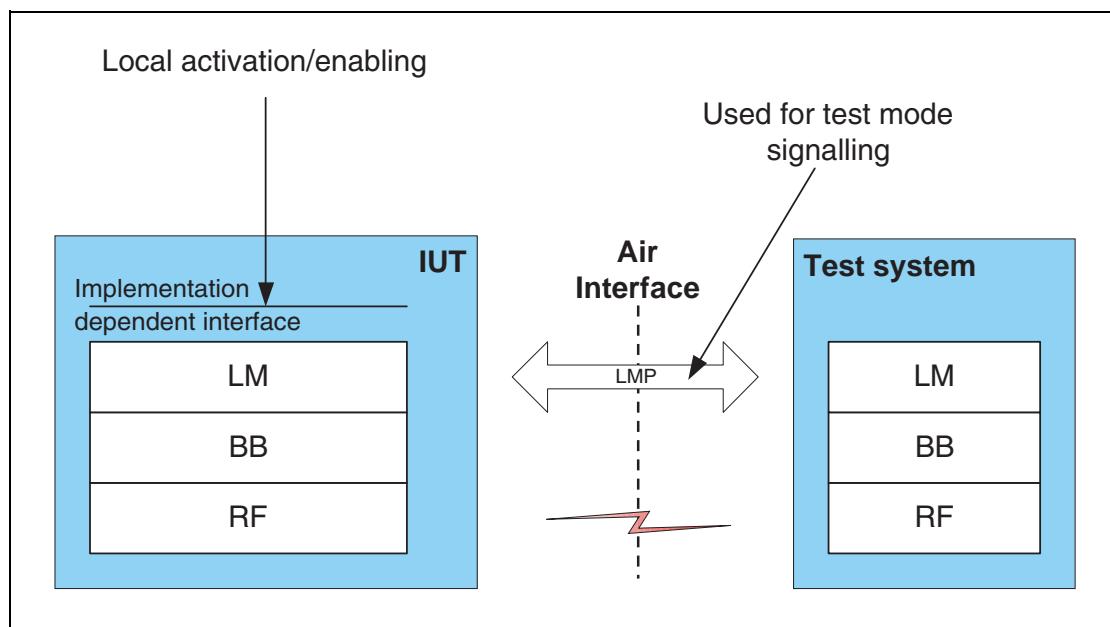


Figure 2.1: General test set-up for RF qualification

## 2.2.2 Bluetooth Protocol Requirements

Depending on which of the Bluetooth layers BB, LM or HCI are implemented in the product subject to qualification, the amount of testing needed to verify the Bluetooth protocol requirements differs. Also, the TCI used during the qualification is slightly different. The commands and events necessary for qualification are detailed in the test specifications and only those commands indicated in the test cases to be executed need be implemented.

For other protocols in the Bluetooth stack the TCI is not used. An implementation specific user interface is used to interact with the IUT's upper interface.

### 2.2.2.1 Required interfaces

For BB, LM and HCI qualification both the air interface of the IUT and the TCI are required. For other protocols both the air interface and the user interface are used as described in the test specification.

## 2.2.3 Bluetooth Profile Requirements

For each Bluetooth profile for which conformance is claimed, profile qualification testing is performed to verify the Bluetooth profile requirements. With higher layer protocols the TCI is not used during testing. A user interface specific to the implementation is used to interact with the IUT's upper interface.

### 2.2.3.1 Required interfaces

For this type of qualification both the air interface and the user interface of the IUT are used as described in the test specification.

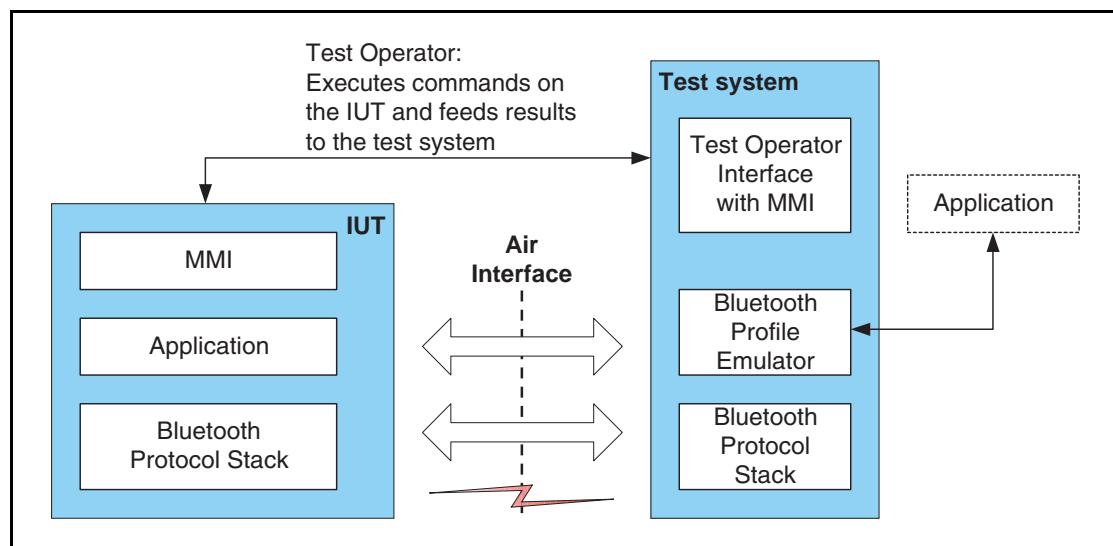


Figure 2.2: General test set-up for profile qualification

## 2.3 TCI CONFIGURATION AND USAGE

This interface is semantically and syntactically identical to the HCI interface described in “[Host Controller Interface Functional Specification](#)” on [page 397\[vol. 2\]](#). The complete HCI interface is not required in the TCI, but the subset of HCI commands and events necessary for verifying the functionality of the IUT. The exact set of commands and events is specified in the test specifications for the layers subject to testing.

It is worth emphasizing again the TCI is an adapter, logically attached to the upper interface of the IUT. As such the TCI adapts the standardized signaling described here to the implementation specific interface of the IUT.

### 2.3.1 Transport Layers

The method used to convey commands and events between the tester and the IUT’s upper interface can be either physical bearer or “software bearer”.

#### 2.3.1.1 Physical bearer

It is recommended to use one of the transport layers specified for the HCI in [\[Volume 4\] Host Controller Interface \[Transport Layer\]](#). However, other physical bearers are not excluded and may be provided on test equipment. The use of a physical bearer is required for test cases active in category A. Please see the PRD for the definitions of test case categories. Please see the current active Test Case Reference List for the categorization of specific test cases.

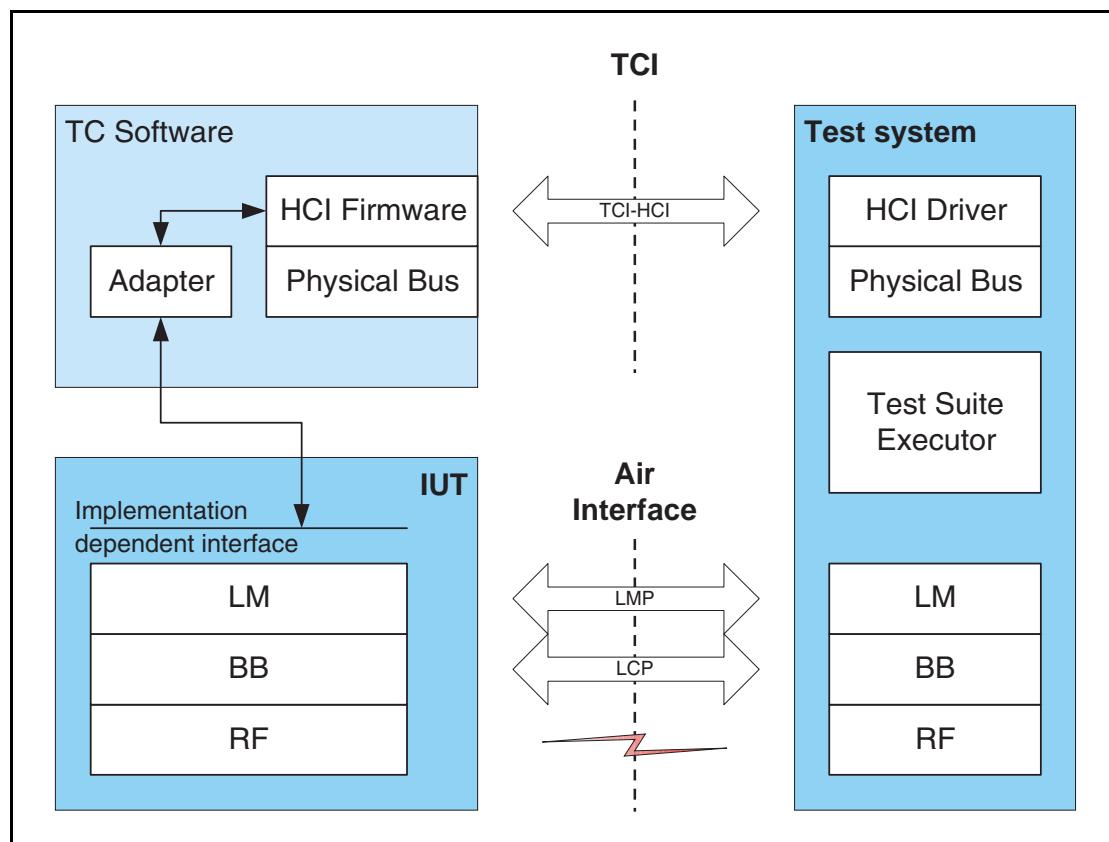
#### 2.3.1.2 Software bearer

There is no physical connection between the tester and the IUT’s upper interface. In this case, the manufacturer of the IUT shall supply test software and hardware that can be operated by a test operator. The operator will receive instructions from the tester and will execute them on the IUT. The “software bearer” shall support the same functionality as if using the TCI with a physical bearer. Use of the “software bearer” shall be agreed upon between the manufacturer of the IUT and the test facility that performs the qualification tests. The test facilities can themselves specify requirements placed on such a “software bearer”. Furthermore, the use of a “software bearer” is restricted to test cases active in one of the three lower categories B, C and D.

### 2.3.2 Baseband and Link Manager Qualification

For the qualification of the link control part of the Baseband layer and for the Link Manager layer, the TCI is used as the interface between the test system and the upper interface of the IUT. The test system accesses the upper interface of the IUT by sending HCI commands and receiving HCI events from the IUT as described in the HCI specification. The required functionality on the TCI depends on the IUT's implemented functionality of the BB and LM layers, and therefore which test cases are executed.

A schematic example in [Figure 2.3](#) shows the test configuration for BB and LM qualification of Bluetooth products which do not support HCI, and use a physical bearer for the TCI. In this example the Test Control (TC) Software represents what the manufacturer has to supply with the IUT when using an external test facility for qualification. The function of the TC Software is to adapt the implementation dependent interface to the TCI.



*Figure 2.3: BB and LM qualification with TCI physical bearer*

[Figure 2.4](#) shows a schematic example of the test configuration for the same Bluetooth product using a “software bearer” for the TCI. Here the function of the Test Control Software is to represent the application that can be controlled by the test operator.

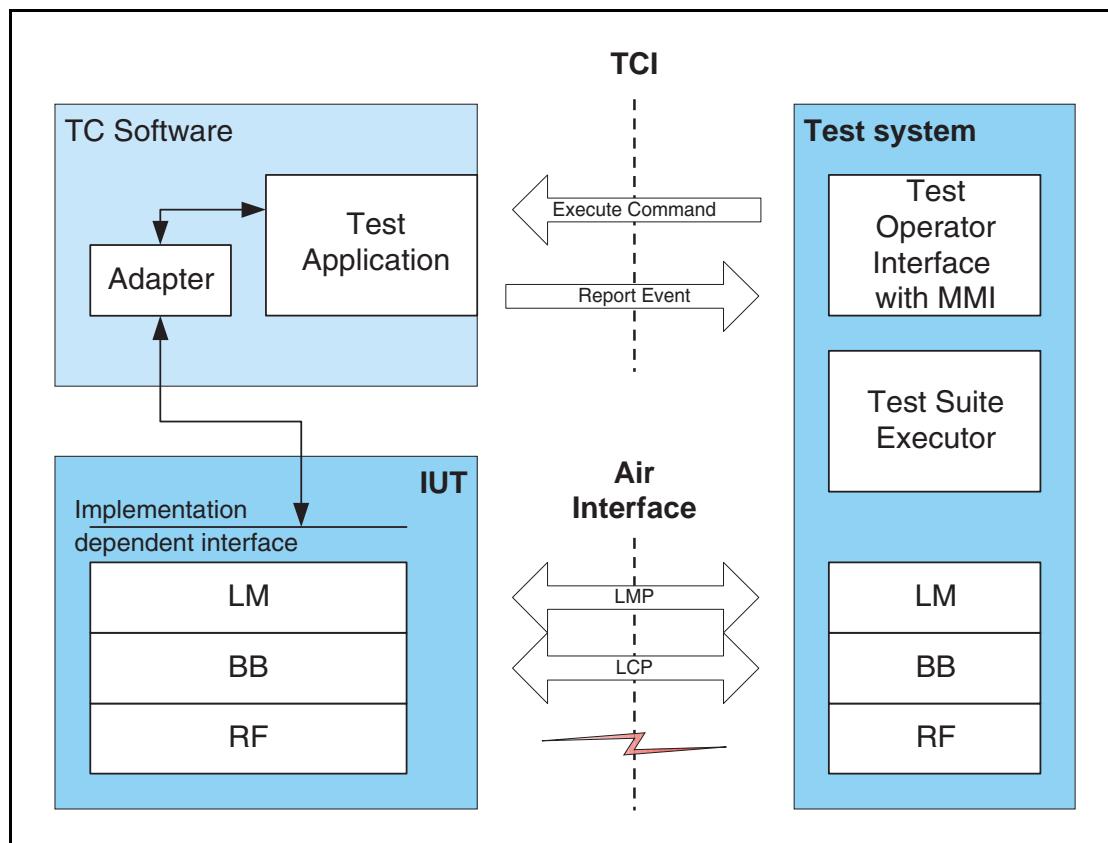
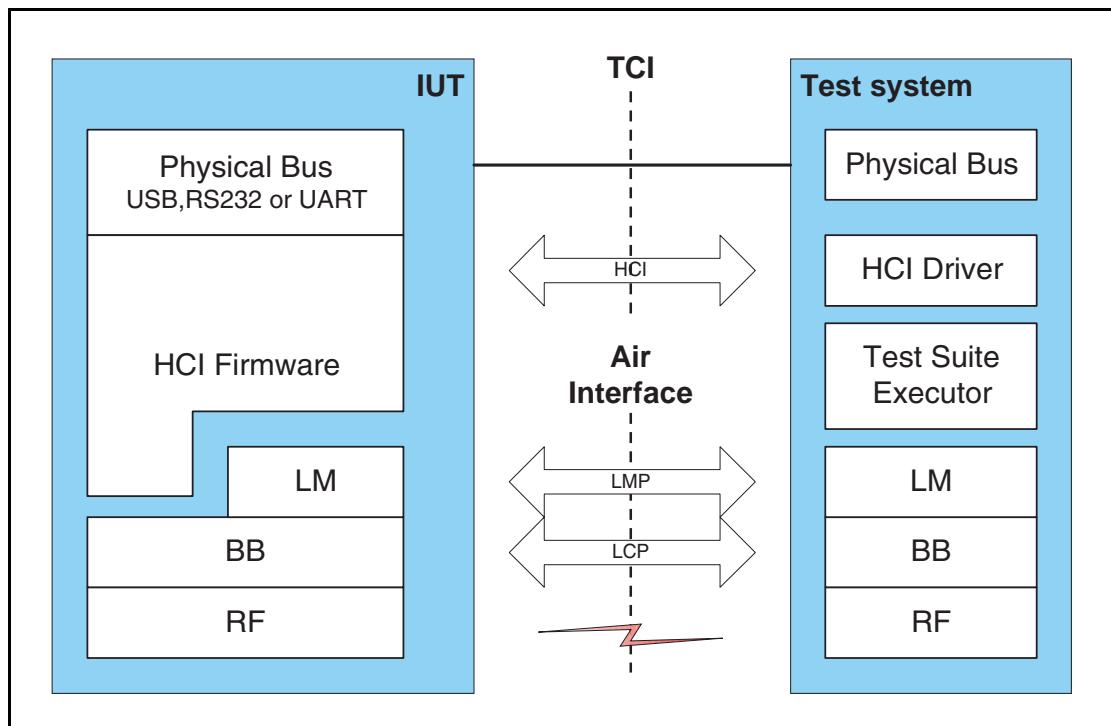


Figure 2.4: BB and LM qualification with “software bearer”

### 2.3.3 HCI Qualification

The TCI may also be used for HCI signaling verification and qualification. The HCI signaling is only verified if support of the HCI functionality is claimed by the manufacturer.

A schematic example in [Figure 2.5](#) shows the test configuration for HCI qualification of Bluetooth products. As can be seen in the figure the implemented HCI is used as the interface to the tester.



*Figure 2.5: General test set-up for HCI qualification*

---

*Test Support*



Core System Package [Host volume]

Part E

# AMP MANAGER PROTOCOL SPECIFICATION

***This document specifies the changes to the Core specification required to incorporate the AMP Manager Protocol (A2MP) for the Alternate MAC/PHY feature.***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>449</b>
1.1	General Description .....	449
<b>2</b>	<b>General Operation.....</b>	<b>450</b>
2.1	Basic Capabilities.....	450
2.2	AMP Manager Channel Over L2CAP.....	451
2.3	Using the AMP Manager Protocol.....	452
2.3.1	Discovering a Remote AMP Manager .....	452
2.3.2	Discovering Available Controllers on a Remote Device ....	452
2.3.3	Creation of AMP Physical Links .....	453
2.4	Controller IDs .....	454
2.5	Controller Types .....	454
<b>3</b>	<b>Protocol Description .....</b>	<b>455</b>
3.1	Packet Formats .....	455
3.2	AMP Command Reject (Code 0x01).....	457
3.3	AMP Discover Request (Code 0x02) .....	458
3.4	AMP Discover Response (Code 0x03) .....	459
3.5	AMP Change Notify (Code 0x04).....	462
3.6	AMP Change Response (Code 0x05).....	463
3.7	AMP Get Info Request (Code 0x06) .....	463
3.8	AMP Get Info Response (Code 0x07).....	464
3.9	AMP Get AMP Assoc Request (Code 0x08).....	466
3.10	AMP Get AMP Assoc Response (Code 0x09) .....	466
3.11	AMP Create Physical Link Request (Code 0x0A) .....	467
3.12	AMP Create Physical Link Response (Code 0x0B) .....	468
3.13	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request (Code 0x0C) .....	471
3.14	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response (Code 0x0D) .....	471
3.15	Create Physical Link Collision Resolution.....	473
3.16	Response Timeout .....	473
3.17	Unexpected BR/EDR Physical Link Disconnect.....	473
	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>474</b>
	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>475</b>



# 1 INTRODUCTION

---

## 1.1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The AMP Manager Protocol (A2MP) provides a means for one device to solicit information regarding AMP capabilities from another device. Each device contains an abstract entity called an AMP Manager which uses the AMP Manager Protocol to communicate with a peer AMP Manager on another device.

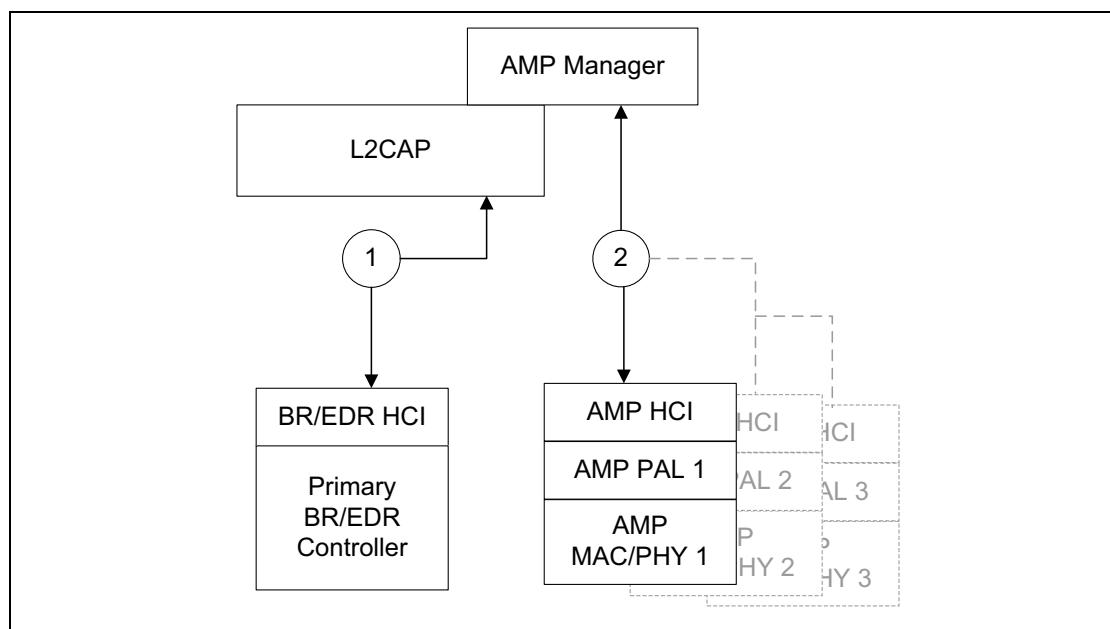
## 2 GENERAL OPERATION

### 2.1 BASIC CAPABILITIES

The AMP Manager entity has the following responsibilities and capabilities:

1. Ability to discover remote AMP Managers
2. Ability to discover available Controllers
3. Ability to query remote AMP Controller information
4. Ability to manage AMP physical links
5. Responsible for the creation of dedicated AMP keys

The AMP Manager communicates with the local AMP PAL and communicates with remote AMP Managers using the AMP Manager Protocol over a fixed L2CAP channel. The AMP Manager entity exists within the Bluetooth stack as depicted in [Figure 2.1](#).



*Figure 2.1: Overview of the Lower Software Layers*

[Figure 2.1](#) shows the two basic communication paths for the AMP Manager. The AMP Manager uses path 1 via L2CAP and the Primary BR/EDR Controller to first discover remote AMP Managers. The AMP Manager can query for the possibility of available remote AMPs and their capabilities as well as other information. The AMP Managers communicate over the AMP Manager Protocol Channel (A2MP Channel). See [Section 2.2](#) for more information on the A2MP Channel.

After discovering the AMPs supported by the remote device, the AMP Manager uses communication path 2 to manage the physical links between its local AMP(s) and AMPs on remote devices. Note that there can be more than one local AMP and there also may be more than one AMP located on the remote device.

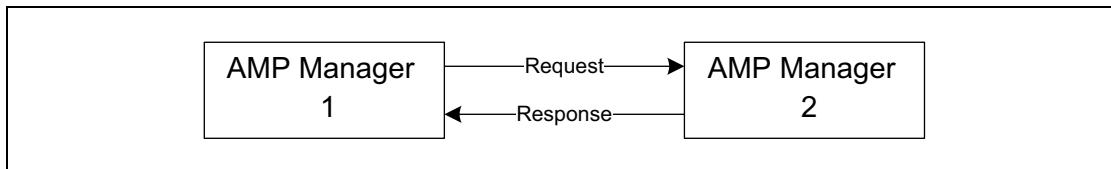


Figure 2.2: AMP Manager Peers

The AMP Manager Protocol is a request / response protocol between two AMP Managers. Requests and responses go in both directions. Either peer can request the same category of information from its corresponding peer.

## 2.2 AMP MANAGER CHANNEL OVER L2CAP

Peer AMP Managers communicate over the A2MP Channel which is an L2CAP fixed channel. The configuration parameters for the AMP Manager channel shall be as shown below. The MTU value shall be any valid value greater than or equal to 670 bytes.

Parameter	Value
MTU	$\geq 670$
Flush Timeout	0xFFFF (Infinite)
QoS	Best Effort
Mode	Enhanced Retransmission Mode
FCS Option	16-bit FCS

Table 2.1: AMP Manager Channel configuration parameters

The parameters for the Enhanced Retransmission Mode used on the fixed channel shall be as shown below. The Retransmission Time-out, Monitor Time-out and MPS shall be any valid value that is greater than or equal to the values stated in the following tables.

Parameter	Value
TxWindow size	1
Max Transmit	0xff
Retransmission time-out	$\geq 2$ seconds
Monitor time-out	$\geq 12$ seconds

Table 2.2: AMP Manager Channel Enhanced Retransmission Mode parameters

Parameter	Value
Maximum PDU size (MPS)	$\geq 670$
16-bit FCS	Enabled

Table 2.2: AMP Manager Channel Enhanced Retransmission Mode parameters

The minimum value for both MTU and MPS is 670 bytes. A larger MTU and MPS size can be communicated using the AMP Discover request (see section 3.3) and AMP Discover response (see [Section 3.4](#)) packets. The MTU parameter and the Enhanced Retransmission mode MPS parameter are numerically equal to allow an AMP manager to send any A2MP packet using a single L2CAP PDU. A device may segment any A2MP packet into multiple L2CAP PDUs.

## 2.3 USING THE AMP MANAGER PROTOCOL

The following text describes how the AMP Manager Protocol is used to establish an AMP physical link between two devices.

### 2.3.1 Discovering a Remote AMP Manager

Once an ACL connection is established over the Primary BR/EDR Controller, the local AMP Manager shall examine the L2CAP extended features bits of the remote device to determine if L2CAP fixed channels are supported (see [\[Part A\], Logical Link Control and Adaptation Protocol Specification, Section 4.12 on page 75](#)). If so, a query for the existence of its peer (AMP Manager) may be made by issuing an Information Request for all available fixed channels.

### 2.3.2 Discovering Available Controllers on a Remote Device

The next step is to discover the existence and capabilities of the AMP Controllers of the peer. An AMP Discover Request packet can be issued over the AMP Manager Protocol channel for this purpose.

In an AMP Discover Response packet, the peer AMP Manager will return information about its local AMP capabilities in the form of a Controller List. A Controller List is a sequence of Controller ID/Controller Type/Controller Status triples identifying the Controllers that are available for communication.

The Controller List contains a basic top level description of the available peer Controllers and their status. The AMP Manager parses this list for physical radio compatibility. If more information is required about a remote AMP Controller, the local AMP Manager can subsequently issue an AMP Get Info Request packet using the Controller ID retrieved via the AMP Discover exchange. An AMP Get Info Response packet is returned from the peer with AMP Controller Info for the specified AMP Controller. The AMP Controller Info contains information about the AMP Controller that can be used by the host to determine whether or not to create a physical link to the AMP Controller.

### 2.3.3 Creation of AMP Physical Links

Once it has been determined that a Bluetooth connection over an AMP is desired, the AMP Manager retrieves the remote AMP Controller's AMP\_Assoc structure by issuing an AMP Get AMP Assoc Request packet. It then passes the AMP\_Assoc structure received from the remote device to its local AMP PAL and signals it to begin the physical discovery and connection process. In devices that support HCI this is done via the HCI\_Create\_Physical\_Link command followed by the HCI\_Write\_Remote\_AMP\_ASSOC command.

Note that the AMP Manager only holds the contents of the AMP\_Assoc structure for use in AMP Manager operations. The AMP Manager does not directly attempt to interpret the contents of the AMP\_Assoc structure.

The AMP manager is responsible for generating the Physical Link Handle used in the HCI\_Create\_Physical\_Link and HCI\_Accept\_Physical\_Link commands. See section [\[Vol 2 Part E\] Section 5.3.2 on page 478](#) for details. When the AMP PAL is ready it will generate an HCI\_Channel\_Selected event which is a signal to read the local AMP\_Assoc structure using the HCI\_Read\_Local\_AMP\_ASSOC command.

The AMP Manager shall not create or accept a physical link over an AMP if mutual authentication was not performed or encryption was not enabled over BR/EDR.

When the AMP Manager does not have a dedicated AMP key for the selected Controller type between the two devices and the BR/EDR link key type is not "Debug", the AMP Manager shall call the Secure Simple Pairing h2 function (see [\[Vol 2 Part H\] Section 7.7.5.2 on page 1338](#)) to generate a dedicated AMP key. This dedicated AMP key shall be used during subsequent connections.

If the Bluetooth device supports more than one AMP type, the AMP Manager shall call the h2 function a second time to regenerate Key\_GAMP as defined in [\[Vol 2 Part H\] Section 7.7.5.3 on page 1339](#) before generating a Dedicated AMP link key for a different AMP type.

When the BR/EDR link key type is set to "Debug", the AMP Manager shall use Key\_GAMP directly as the key for the AMP regardless of the AMP Type. The key length, key type and the link key itself are passed to the AMP Controller in the HCI\_Create\_Physical\_Link command.

After receiving the HCI\_Channel\_Selected event and reading the local AMP\_Assoc structure the AMP Manager then issues an AMP Create Physical Link Request packet to send the local AMP\_Assoc structure to the peer device in order to engage the peer device in the AMP physical link creation.

If the peer accepts the request it issues an HCI\_Accept\_Physical\_Link command to its local AMP and passes the AMP\_Assoc structure received in the AMP Create Physical Link Request packet to its local AMP Controller. The peer

responds with an AMP Create Physical Link Response packet to either accept or reject the request to create a physical link.

Both hosts will receive an HCI\_Physical\_Link\_Complete event indicating the completion of the physical link creation.

On success, the procedure for creation of a logical connection can then commence.

## 2.4 CONTROLLER IDS

Each Controller in a device is assigned a one-octet unique identifier by the local AMP Manager. From the perspective of a remote device, Controller IDs are only valid during the life time of the AMP Manager Protocol channel. The Controller IDs on a remote device become invalid when the A2MP Channel is disconnected. If a local Controller becomes unavailable during the life time of the A2MP channel, the Controller ID may be reclaimed after receiving the AMP Change Response to the AMP Change Notify packets sent to all affected remote AMP Managers. It can then be assigned to any new AMP that is added. The value 0 is reserved for the Primary BR/EDR Controller. Other Controllers in the device shall be assigned values from 1 to 255.

If an AMP Controller becomes unavailable and later becomes available again during the life time of the A2MP Channel, remote AMP Managers shall not assume that the AMP Controller will be assigned the Controller ID that it was previously assigned.

## 2.5 CONTROLLER TYPES

Each type of Controller is assigned a unique one-octet value. These values are defined in [Assigned Numbers](#). A device may have multiple AMPs of the same type.

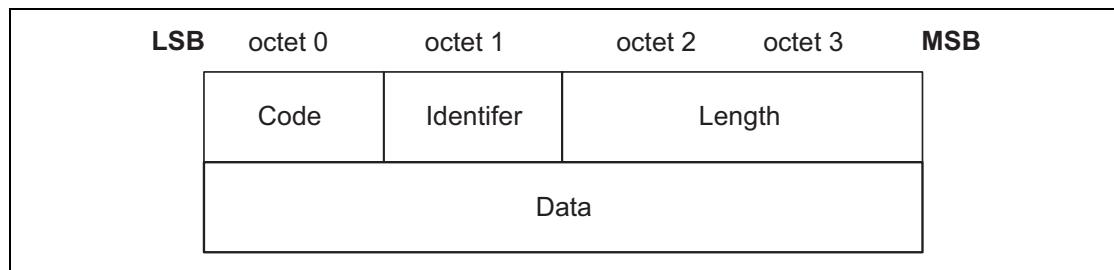
## 3 PROTOCOL DESCRIPTION

The AMP Manager Protocol defines the procedures and format of the packets used to exchange information between two peer AMP Managers.

### 3.1 PACKET FORMATS

This section describes the packets used in the AMP Manager Protocol. Unless otherwise stated an implementation shall include all specified fields in a packet.

[Figure 3.1](#) displays the general format of all AMP Manager Protocol packets.



*Figure 3.1: AMP Manager Protocol Packet Format*

The fields shown are:

- *Code (1 octet)*

The code identifies the type of packet. When an AMP manager receives a packet with an unknown Code field it shall send a Command Reject packet in response. [Table 3.1](#) lists the codes defined by this document. All codes are specified with the most significant bit in the left most position.

Code	Description
0x00	Reserved
0x01	AMP Command Reject
0x02	AMP Discover request
0x03	AMP Discover response
0x04	AMP Change notify
0x05	AMP Change response
0x06	AMP Get Info request
0x07	AMP Get Info response
0x08	AMP Get AMP Assoc request

*Table 3.1: Codes*

Code	Description
0x09	AMP Get AMP Assoc response
0x0A	AMP Create Physical Link request
0x0B	AMP Create Physical Link response
0x0C	AMP Disconnect Physical Link request
0x0D	AMP Disconnect Physical Link response
0x0E - 0xFF	Reserved

Table 3.1: Codes

- *Identifier (1 octet)*

The Identifier field matches responses with requests. The requesting device sets this field and the responding devices uses the same value in the response. For each A2MP channel an AMP manger shall use different identifiers for each request sent (this includes the AMP Change Notify command). Following the original transmission of an identifier in a request, the identifier may be recycled if all other identifiers have subsequently been used.

A response packet with an invalid identifier is discarded. Identifier 0x00 is an illegal identifier and shall never be used in any packet. [Table 3.2](#) shows the valid values for the Identifier field,

Value	Description
0x00	Invalid
0x01 - 0xFF	Valid

Table 3.2: Identifier

- *Length (2 octets)*

The Length field indicates the size in octets of the data field of the packet only, i.e. it does not cover the Code, Identifier and Length fields.

- *Data (0 or more octets)*

The Data field is variable in length. The Code field determines the format of the Data field. The Length field determines the length of the Data field.

### 3.2 AMP COMMAND REJECT (CODE 0X01)

An AMP Manager shall send an AMP Command Reject packet in response to a request packet with an unknown code or when sending the corresponding response is inappropriate. The identifier shall match the identifier of the request packet being rejected. AMP Command Reject packets shall not be sent in response to an unknown response packet.

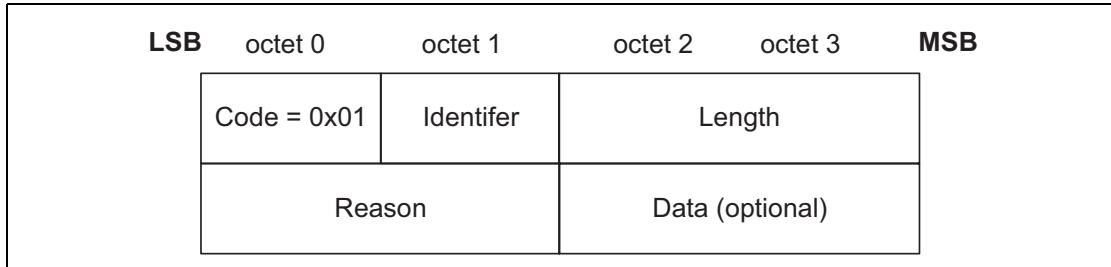


Figure 3.2: AMP Command Reject Packet

The data fields are

- *Reason (2 octets)*

The Reason field describes why the request packet was rejected, and is set to one of the following Reason codes.

Reason value	Description
0x0000	Command not recognized
Other	Reserved

Table 3.3: AMP Command Reject reasons

- *Data (0 or more octets)*

The length and content of the Data field depends on the Reason code. If the reason code is 0x0000 "Command not recognized" no Data field is used.

### 3.3 AMP DISCOVER REQUEST (CODE 0X02)

An AMP Manager sends an AMP Discover Request packet to a peer AMP Manager to obtain the list of the available Controllers supported by the peer device.

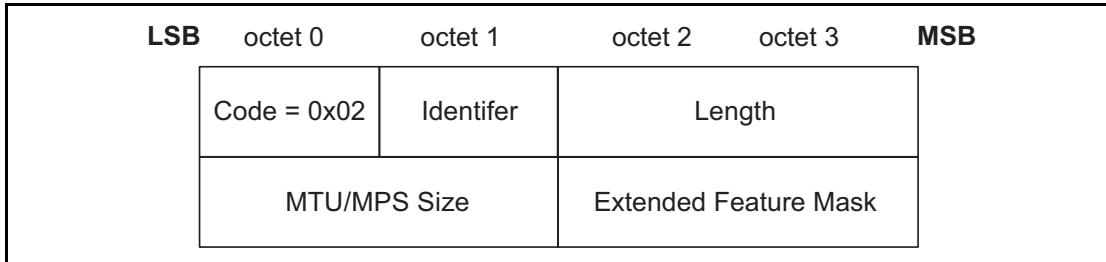


Figure 3.3: AMP Discover Request Packet

The data fields are

- *MTU/MPS size (2 octets)*

The MTU/MPS Size field in the AMP Discover Request packet indicates the MTU/MPS that the sender of the request can receive on the AMP Manager Protocol Channel. The minimum value is 670 (see [Section 2.2](#)). An AMP manager shall send the same value for the AMP Manager Protocol Channel MTU/MPS in both AMP Discover Request and AMP Discover Response packets.

- *Extended Feature Mask (2 octets)*

The extended features supported by the AMP Manager are represented by a bit mask. Each feature is represented by a single bit which shall be set to 1 if the feature is supported and set to 0 otherwise. All reserved feature bits shall be set to 0 by the sender.

The feature mask is defined in [Table 3.4](#).

Supported Feature	Octet	Bit
Reserved	0	0-7
Reserved	1	0-6
Extension Bit	1	7

Table 3.4: A2MP Extended Feature Mask

Bit 7 of Octet 1 of this field is used to extend the A2MP Extended Feature Mask. If the Extension Bit is set then the Extended Feature Mask field is extended by two octets. Each two octet extension includes an Extension Bit that allows a further two octets to be added to the field. [Figure 3.4](#) shows how the Extension Bit (E) can be used to extend the A2MP Extended Feature Mask.

LSB	octet 0	octet 1	MSB
	Extended Feature Mask (Octet 0)	Extended Feature Mask (Octet 1)	E=1
	Extended Feature Mask (Octet 2)	Extended Feature Mask (Octet 3)	E=1
	Extended Feature Mask (Octet 4)	Extended Feature Mask (Octet 5)	E=0

Figure 3.4: Example A2MP Extended Feature Mask

### 3.4 AMP DISCOVER RESPONSE (CODE 0X03)

When an AMP Manager receives an AMP Discover Request packet it shall reply with an AMP Discover Response packet indicating the IDs, types and status of the controllers that are currently available on the local device. If there is a change in the number or status of supported controllers after sending an AMP Discover Response packet and before the A2MP Channel is disconnected, the AMP Manager shall send an AMP Change Notify packet to the peer AMP Manager.

LSB	octet 0	octet 1	octet 2	octet 3	MSB
	Code = 0x03	Identifier		Length	
		MTU/MPS Size	Extended Feature Mask		
Controller List					

Figure 3.5: AMP Discover Response Packet

The data fields are

- *MTU/MPS size (2 octets)*

The MTU/MPS Size field in the AMP Discover Response packet indicates the MTU/MPS that the sender of the response can receive on the AMP Manager Protocol Channel. The minimum value is 670 (see [Section 2.2](#) ). An AMP Manager shall send the same value for the AMP Manager Protocol Channel MTU/MPS supported in both AMP Discover Request and AMP Discover Response packets.

- *Extended Feature Mask (2 octets)*

The extended features supported by the AMP Manager are represented by a bit mask. Each feature is represented by a single bit which shall be set to 1

if the feature is supported and set to 0 otherwise. All unknown, reserved, or unassigned feature bits shall be set to 0.

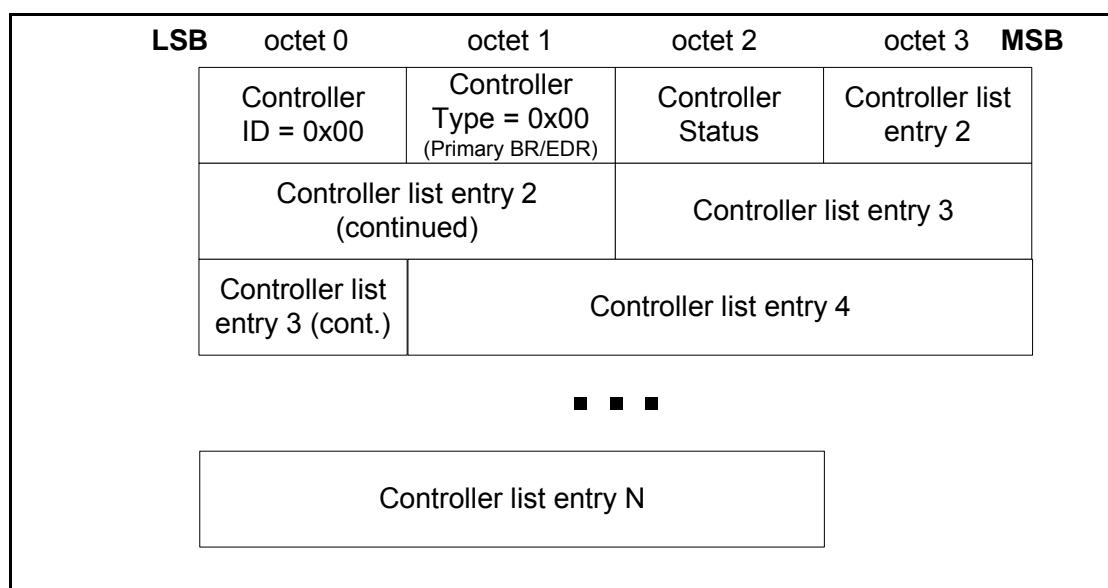
The feature mask is defined in [Table 3.4](#) and [Figure 3.4](#).

- *Controller List (3 or more octets)*

Controller List is variable in length. It consists of 1 or more entries. Each entry is comprised of a Controller ID, a Controller Type and a Controller status.

An entry for Controller ID 0x00 (Primary BR/EDR controller) shall always be sent and shall be the first entry in the Controller List. The Controller Type for this entry shall be set to 0x00 (Primary BR/EDR controller). The Controller status for this entry shall be set to 0x01 (The AMP Controller can only be used by Bluetooth technology). If the Primary BR/EDR Controller's Link Manager does not support Secure Simple Pairing, it shall be the only Controller in the Controller List.

[Figure 3.6](#) displays the format of the Controller list.



*Figure 3.6: Controller list format*

- *Controller ID (1 octet)*

The Controller ID uniquely identifies a Controller (see [Section 2.4](#) for more information about Controller IDs).

- *Controller Type (1 octet)*

The Controller Type specifies the type of the Controller. The Controller type values are defined in [Assigned Numbers](#).

- *Controller Status (1 octet)*

The Controller Status field indicates the current status of the AMP. The status information can be used by the receiving device to help decide if it should use the AMP. If multiple AMPs are available the status can also be used by an implementation to determine which would be the optimal AMP to

use. None of the AMP status values indicate that a Physical Link shall not be created to the AMP. If an implementation wishes to ensure it does not receive Create Physical Link Requests for a given AMP then it should remove the associated entry from the Controller list it sends.

**Table 3.5** contains the different values of the Controller Status field.

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	<p>The Controller radio is available but is currently physically powered down. This value should be used if the AMP Controller is present and can be powered up by the AMP Manager. A Controller List entry shall not exist for an AMP that is not present or cannot be powered up by the AMP manager.</p> <p>This value indicates that there may be a cost of time and power to use this AMP Controller (i.e., the time taken and power required to power up the AMP Controller). These costs are AMP type and AMP implementation dependent.</p>
0x01	<p>This value indicates that the AMP Controller is only used by the Bluetooth technology and will not be shared with other non-Bluetooth technologies.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much bandwidth is currently free on the AMP Controller.</p>
0x02	<p>The AMP Controller has no capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that all of the AMP Controller's bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing a non Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>A device may create a Physical Link to an AMP Controller that has this status.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x03	<p>The AMP Controller has low capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that the majority of the AMP Controller's bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing a non Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>An AMP Controller with capacity in the approximate range of <math>0 &lt; \text{capacity} &lt; 30\%</math> should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently being used.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x04	<p>The AMP Controller has medium capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>An AMP Controller with capacity in the approximate range of <math>30\% &lt; \text{capacity} &lt; 70\%</math> should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently being used.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>

*Table 3.5: Controller Status*

Value	Parameter Description
0x05	<p>The AMP Controller has high capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that the majority of the AMP Controller's bandwidth is currently allocated to servicing the Bluetooth technology.</p> <p>An AMP Controller with capacity in the approximate range of <math>70\% &lt; \text{capacity} &lt; 100\%</math> should indicate this value.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently being used.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
0x06	<p>The AMP Controller has full capacity available for Bluetooth operation.</p> <p>This value indicates that while currently the AMP is only being used by Bluetooth the device allows a different technology to share the radio.</p> <p>This value shall be used as the default Controller Status value for devices that are not capable of determining the available capacity for Bluetooth operation for an AMP Controller.</p> <p>This value does not indicate how much of the capacity available for Bluetooth operation is currently being used.</p> <p>This value shall only be used if the AMP Controller is powered up.</p>
Other	Reserved

Table 3.5: Controller Status

The available capacity ranges given for values 0x03, 0x04, and 0x05 are only approximate and permit an implementation to not send an AMP Change Notify packet if the current availability is moving frequently from one range to another (e.g., if the current availability is moving between 68% (corresponding to Controller status 0x04) and 72% (corresponding to Controller status 0x05) frequently an implementation is not mandated to send an AMP Change Notify packet every time the value crosses the approximate 70% threshold between the two Controller Status values).

### 3.5 AMP CHANGE NOTIFY (CODE 0X04)

The AMP Change Notify packet indicates to the peer device that something has changed in the list of supported Controllers. An AMP Change Notify packet shall only be sent to a remote AMP Manager if it has previously requested a Controller List via an AMP Discover Request. Examples of when an AMP Change Notify packet is sent is when a new Controller becomes available or one or several Controllers advertised in the previous AMP Discover Response or AMP Change Notify packet become unavailable or if the status of a previously advertised Controller changes. The AMP Change Notify carries the new list of the available Controllers. Based on the changes from the previous Change Notify or Discovery Response, the AMP Manager can identify added or deleted controllers or controllers that have changed status.

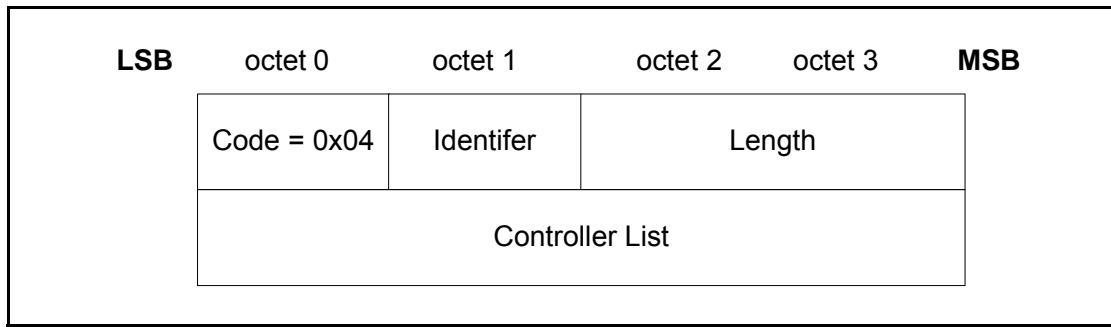


Figure 3.7: AMP Change Notify Packet

- *Controller List (3 or more octets)*

Controller List is variable in length. It consists of 1 or more entries. Each entry is comprised of a Controller ID, a Controller Type and a Controller status (see [Section 3.4](#) for a description of Controller List).

### 3.6 AMP CHANGE RESPONSE (CODE 0X05)

The AMP Change Response packet shall be sent to acknowledge receipt of the AMP Change Notify packet.

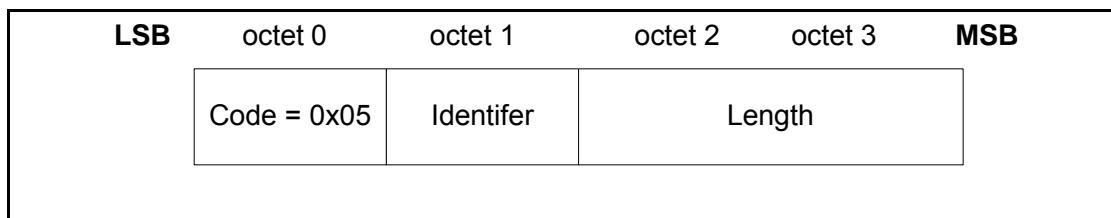


Figure 3.8: AMP Change Response Packet

### 3.7 AMP GET INFO REQUEST (CODE 0X06)

To determine if a physical link should be established to a particular AMP Controller, an AMP Manager may need to obtain further information for a remote AMP Controller. For each Controller ID reported in the AMP Discover Response or AMP Change Notify packet the AMP Manager can query this information by issuing an AMP Get Info Request packet. The exception is Controller ID 0. Information for the Primary BR/EDR radio shall not be obtained with an AMP Get Info Request packet.

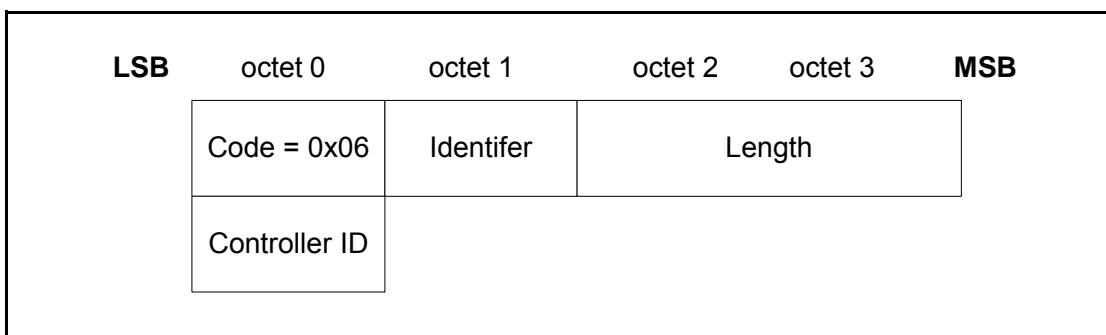


Figure 3.9: AMP Get Info Request Packet

The data fields are

- *Controller ID (1 octet)*

Controller ID is one of the IDs reported in the latest AMP Discover Response, or AMP Change Notify packet received from the peer AMP Manager.

### 3.8 AMP GET INFO RESPONSE (CODE 0X07)

When an AMP Manager receives an AMP Get Info Request packet it shall reply with the AMP Get Info Response packet. This packet carries Controller Information including bandwidth and latency capabilities. The receiver of the AMP Get Info Response packet can assume that the value of all fields shall remain constant while the remote AMP remains active.

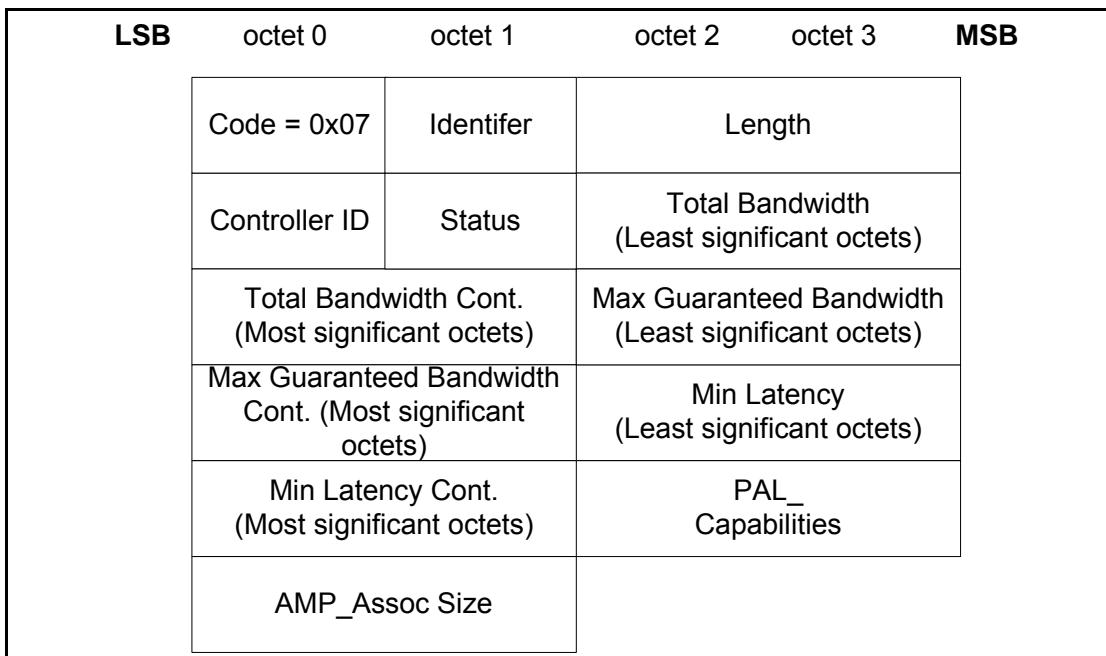


Figure 3.10: AMP Get Info Response Packet

- *Controller ID (1 octet)*

Controller ID is the identifier requested in the AMP Get Info Request.

- *Status (1 octet)*

The Status field indicates the status of the request

Status Code	Description
0x00	Success
0x01	Invalid Controller ID
Other	Reserved

Table 3.6: AMP Get Info Response Status values

An AMP Get Info Response with status of Invalid Controller ID shall be sent by an AMP manager that has received an AMP Get Info Request containing either:

- a) A Controller ID that has not been allocated by the AMP manager
- b) A Controller ID of 0

If the Status field is set to Invalid Controller ID all subsequent fields in the AMP Get Info Response shall be ignored by the receiver.

- *Total Bandwidth (4 octets)*

The Total Bandwidth field indicates the total data rate in kbits per second (1000 bps) that can be achieved by the Controller for applications. This value shall account for any bandwidth limitations of the Host and the HCI transport if present. The Host is responsible for determining these bandwidth limitations.

- *Max Guaranteed Bandwidth (4 octets)*

The Maximum Guaranteed Bandwidth field indicates the maximum data rate in kbits per second that the AMP can guarantee for a logical channel. Any request made by an application above this level will be rejected. This value shall account for any bandwidth limitations of the Host and the HCI transport if present. The Host is responsible for determining these bandwidth limitations.

- *Min Latency (4 octets)*

The Min Latency field indicates the minimum latency in microseconds that the AMP can guarantee for a logical channel. This value shall account for any latency limitations of the Host and the HCI transport if present. The Host is responsible for determining these latency limitations.

- *PAL\_Capabilities (2 octets)*

The PAL\_Capabilities field contains the PAL capabilities returned via HCI Read Local AMP Info Command (see [\[Vol 2 Part E\] Section 7.5.8 on page 821](#) for more information).

- *AMP\_Assoc Structure Size (2 octets)*

The maximum size in octets of the requested AMP's AMP\_Assoc structure. The value of the AMP\_Assoc Structure Size for a given AMP is determined by the controller. If an HCI is being used this value can be retrieved by the Host sending the HCI\_Read\_Local\_AMP\_Info command to the Controller.

### 3.9 AMP GET AMP ASSOC REQUEST (CODE 0X08)

To establish a physical link to a particular Controller, an AMP Manager needs to obtain the AMP\_Assoc structure for the remote Controller. The remote AMP is identified by its Controller ID as reported in the AMP Discover Response or AMP Change Notify packet. AMP Get AMP Assoc Request packet shall not be used to obtain an AMP\_Assoc structure for the Primary BR/EDR Controller.

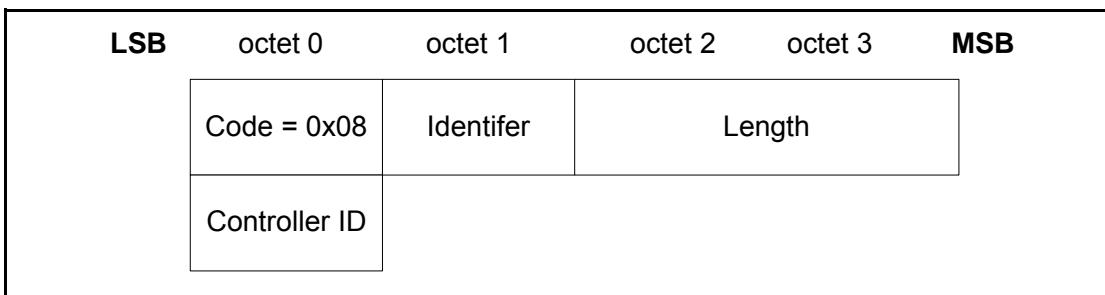


Figure 3.11: AMP Get AMP Assoc Request Packet

The data fields are:

- *Controller ID (1 octet)*

Controller ID is one of the IDs reported in the latest AMP Discover Response or AMP Change Notify packet received from the peer AMP Manager.

### 3.10 AMP GET AMP ASSOC RESPONSE (CODE 0X09)

When an AMP Manager receives an AMP Get AMP Assoc Request packet it shall reply with the AMP Get AMP Assoc Response packet. This packet carries the AMP\_Assoc structure. The AMP\_Assoc structure is used in creating the physical AMP link. The exact length and format of the AMP\_Assoc structure shall be defined in each AMP PAL specification.

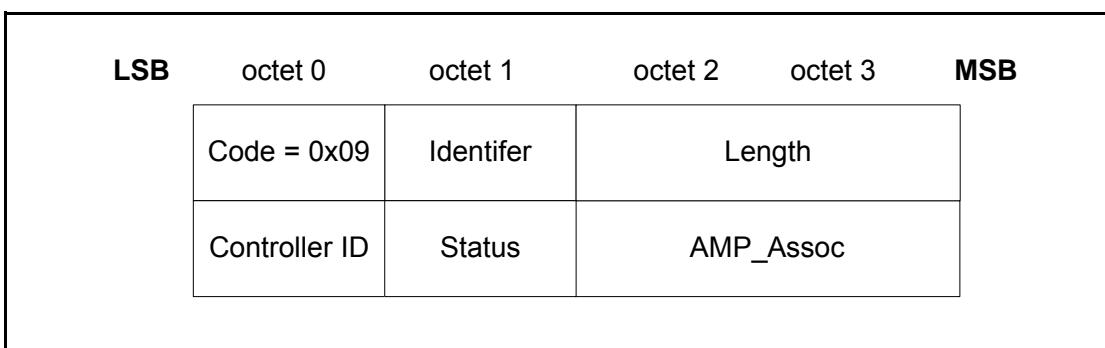


Figure 3.12: AMP Get AMP Assoc Response Packet

The data fields are

- *Controller ID (1 octet)*

Controller ID is the identifier requested in the AMP Get AMP Assoc Request packet.

- *Status (1 octet)*

The Status field indicates the status of the request.

Status Code	Description
0x00	Success
0x01	Invalid Controller ID
Other	Reserved

Table 3.7: AMP Get AMP Response Status values

An AMP Get AMP Assoc Response packet with status of Invalid Controller ID shall be sent by an AMP manager that has received an AMP Get AMP Assoc Request packet containing either

- a) A Controller ID that has not been allocated by the AMP manager
- b) A Controller ID of 0

If the Status field is set to Invalid Controller ID (0x01) then the AMP\_Assoc structure shall not be included in the Get AMPAssoc Response packet.

- *AMP\_Assoc structure (from 0 to (A2MP MTU - 6) octets)*

AMP\_Assoc structure is variable in length. The Controller Type of the Controller ID referenced in the AMP Get AMP Assoc Request packet determines the format and the length of the AMP\_Assoc structure. The length of the AMP\_Assoc structure can be determined by subtracting two from the Length field.

The length of the AMP\_Assoc structure shall not exceed any previously communicated AMP\_Assoc length (the AMP\_Assoc length is included in the AMP Get Info Response packet. See [Section 3.8](#)).

### 3.11 AMP CREATE PHYSICAL LINK REQUEST (CODE 0X0A)

Establishing an AMP physical link requires signaling between the AMP Managers in order to turn the AMP Controller on, if it is not already turned on, and to provide information to set the required state of the AMP Controller, setup addressing, security, etc. When an AMP Manager receives an AMP Create Physical Link request packet it shall initiate its part of the AMP physical link creation and send the AMP Create Physical Link Response packet. AMP Create Physical Link request shall not be used to establish a physical link to the Primary BR/EDR Controller.

For some AMP Controllers it may be required to send additional information to the peer AMP Manager. This information is packaged in a variable size

AMP\_Assoc structure. The exact length and format of the AMP\_Assoc structure shall be defined in each AMP PAL specification.

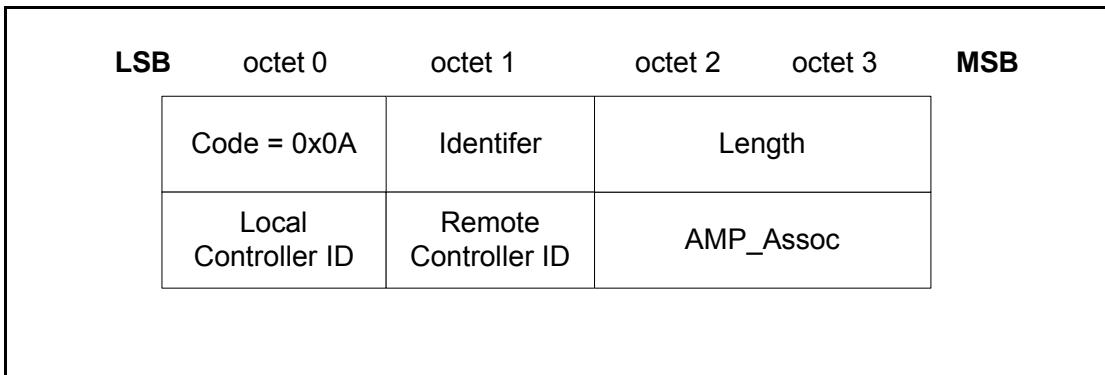


Figure 3.13: AMP Create Physical Link Request Packet

- *Local Controller ID (1 octet)*

Local Controller ID is the ID of the Controller to be used on the device sending the AMP Create Physical Request packet.

- *Remote Controller ID (1 octet)*

The ID of the AMP Controller to use on the device that receives the AMP Create Physical Link Request packet. The sender of the AMP Create Physical Link Request packet obtains the Remote Controller ID from the latest Discover Response, or the Change Notify packet received from the peer AMP Manager.

- *AMP\_Assoc structure (from 0 to (A2MP MTU - 6) octets)*

AMP\_Assoc structure is variable in length. See section 3.10 for a description of AMP\_Assoc structure.

### 3.12 AMP CREATE PHYSICAL LINK RESPONSE (CODE 0X0B)

For each AMP Create Physical Link Request the AMP Manager shall reply with an AMP Create Physical Link Response packet. If the device has sent its own AMP Create Physical Link Request to create a physical link with the same AMP Controller a collision has occurred and one of the requests shall be rejected while the other request shall proceed. The algorithm described in [Section 3.15](#) shall be used to determine which request to reject.

When the AMP Manager receives an AMP Create Physical Link Request packet it shall try to perform the requested actions and send a response identifying the status of the operation.

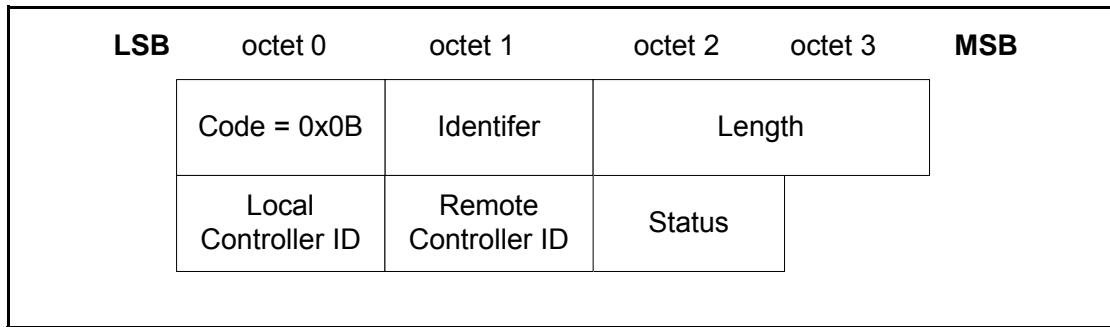


Figure 3.14: AMP Create Physical Link Response Packet

The data fields are

- *Local Controller ID (1 octet)*

This field contains the Controller ID local to the sender of the AMP Create Physical Link Response packet. The ID value is the same as the Remote Controller ID that was in the associated AMP Create Physical Link Request packet.

- *Responder Controller ID (1 octet)*

This field contains the Controller ID used by the receiver of the AMP Create Physical Link Response packet. The ID value is the same as the Local Controller ID that was in the associated AMP Create Physical Link Request packet.

- *Status (1 octet)*

The Status field indicates the result of the request.

Status Code	Description
0x00	Success - Link creation is started
0x01	Invalid Controller ID
0x02	Failed - Unable to start link creation
0x03	Failed - Collision Occurred
0x04	Failed - AMP Disconnected Physical Link Request packet received
0x05	Failed - Physical Link Already Exists
0x06	Failed - Security violation
Other	Reserved

Table 3.8: AMP Create Physical Link Response Status values

An AMP Create Physical Link Response with status of Invalid Controller ID shall be sent by an AMP manager that has received an AMP Create Physical Link Request containing either

- a) A Controller ID that has not been allocated by the AMP manager
- b) A Controller ID of 0

An AMP Create Physical Link Response with status of Failed - Security Violation shall be sent by an AMP manager that has received an AMP Create Physical Link Request without mutual authentication being performed over the BR/EDR Controller and without encryption being enabled on the BR/EDR Controller.

### 3.13 AMP DISCONNECT PHYSICAL LINK REQUEST (CODE 0X0C)

AMP Disconnect Physical Link request is an optional request that can be used by either initiator or responder to either abort the creation of an AMP physical link or disconnect an existing Physical Link.

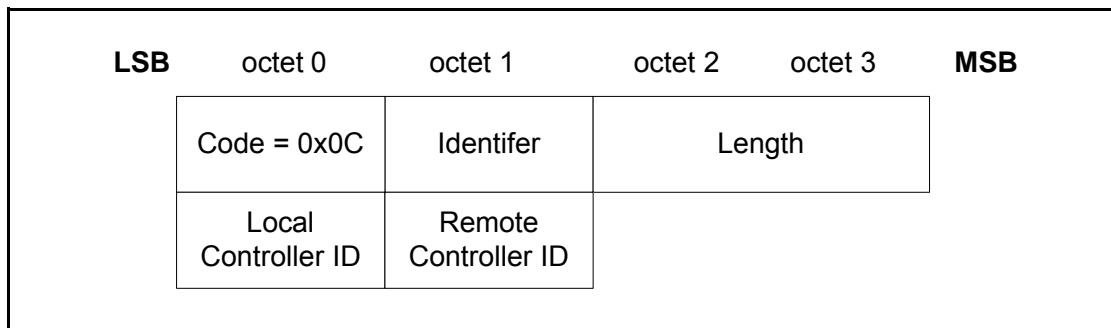


Figure 3.15: AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request Packet

The data fields are:

- *Local Controller ID (1 octet)*  
Local Controller ID is the ID of the Controller on the device sending the AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request packet.
- *Remote Controller ID (1 octet)*  
The ID of the AMP Controller on the device that receives the AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request packet.

### 3.14 AMP DISCONNECT PHYSICAL LINK RESPONSE (CODE 0X0D)

If an AMP Manager receives an AMP Disconnect Physical Link request packet while creation of a physical link is outstanding, it shall abort the operation. In devices that support HCI the Host may send an HCI\_Disconnect\_Physical\_Link command to cause the controller to abort the creation of a Physical Link.

If an AMP Disconnect Physical Link request packet is received from a device that has an AMP Create Physical Link request packet outstanding, the receiver shall send both an AMP Create Physical Link Response packet with a status of 'Failed - AMP Disconnected Physical Link Request packet received' and an AMP Disconnect Physical Link response packet with a status of 'Success'.

If an AMP manager receives an AMP Disconnect Physical Link request packet when creation of a physical link is not outstanding and a Physical Link does not exist for the given local and remote AMP IDs it shall send an AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response with a status of 'Failed - No Physical Link exists and no Physical Link creation is in progress'.

The status of 'Invalid Controller ID' shall only be used if the receiver of the AMP Disconnect Request packet does not have an AMP with an ID that matches the Remote Controller ID in the received AMP Disconnect Request packet.

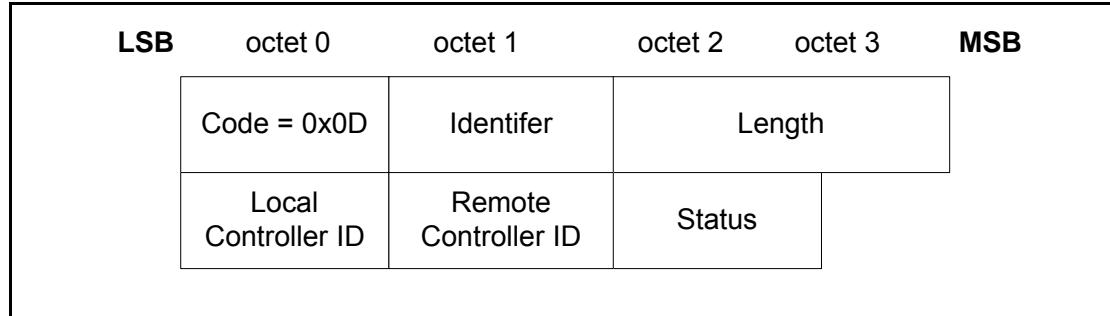


Figure 3.16: AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response Packet

The data fields are:

- *Local Controller ID (1 octet)*

This field contains the Controller ID local to the sender of the AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response packet. The ID value is the same as the Remote Controller ID that was in the associated AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request packet.

- *Remote Controller ID (1 octet)*

This field contains the Controller ID used by the receiver of the AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response packet. The ID value is the same as the Local Controller ID that was in the associated AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request packet.

- *Status (1 octet)*

The Status field indicates the result of the request.

Status Code	Description
0x00	Success
0x01	Invalid Controller ID
0x02	Failed - No Physical Link exists and no Physical Link creation is in progress
Other	Reserved

Table 3.9: AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response Status values

### 3.15 CREATE PHYSICAL LINK COLLISION RESOLUTION

If two devices simultaneously attempt to create a physical link a collision will occur. In this situation one of the requests shall be canceled while the other request shall proceed. Both devices must know which request will be rejected. The following algorithm shall be used by both devices to determine which request to reject.

1. Set i=0 (representing the least significant octet of the BD\_ADDR).
2. Compare the least significant octet, octet[i] of the BD\_ADDR, of both devices. If the octets are not equal go to step 4.
3. Increment i by 1. Go to step 2.
4. The device with the larger BD\_ADDR octet shall send an AMP Create Physical Link Response with the Status field set to "Failed - Collision Occurred."

### 3.16 RESPONSE TIMEOUT

The Response Timeout is used to monitor the response to request packets. The exact timeout value is implementation dependent and may be chosen within the range of 15 - 60 seconds. The recommended value is 20 seconds. If a response to a request packet is not received within the Response Timeout then the ACL link shall be disconnected.

### 3.17 UNEXPECTED BR/EDR PHYSICAL LINK DISCONNECT

It is possible that the BR/EDR link between two devices might unexpectedly disconnect (Link Supervision Timeout) while AMP links between the same two devices remain active. This situation is problematic since the BR/EDR link is used for L2CAP and AMP Manager signaling between the two devices.

When the BR/EDR link with a remote device unexpectedly disconnects due to Link Supervision Timeout the AMP manager shall disconnect all AMP physical links to the same remote device.

## LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 2.1:	Overview of the Lower Software Layers .....	450
Figure 2.2:	AMP Manager Peers .....	451
Figure 3.1:	AMP Manager Protocol Packet Format .....	455
Figure 3.2:	AMP Command Reject Packet .....	457
Figure 3.3:	AMP Discover Request Packet .....	458
Figure 3.4:	Example A2MP Extended Feature Mask .....	459
Figure 3.5:	AMP Discover Response Packet .....	459
Figure 3.6:	Controller list format .....	460
Figure 3.7:	AMP Change Notify Packet .....	463
Figure 3.8:	AMP Change Response Packet .....	463
Figure 3.9:	AMP Get Info Request Packet .....	464
Figure 3.10:	AMP Get Info Response Packet .....	464
Figure 3.11:	AMP Get AMP Assoc Request Packet .....	466
Figure 3.12:	AMP Get AMP Assoc Response Packet .....	466
Figure 3.13:	AMP Create Physical Link Request Packet .....	468
Figure 3.14:	AMP Create Physical Link Response Packet .....	469
Figure 3.15:	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Request Packet .....	471
Figure 3.16:	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response Packet .....	472

## LIST OF TABLES

---

Table 2.1:	AMP Manager Channel configuration parameters .....	451
Table 2.2:	AMP Manager Channel Enhanced Retransmission Mode parameters .....	451
Table 3.1:	Codes.....	455
Table 3.2:	Identifier .....	456
Table 3.3:	AMP Command Reject reasons.....	457
Table 3.4:	A2MP Extended Feature Mask .....	458
Table 3.5:	Controller Status.....	461
Table 3.6:	AMP Get Info Response Status values .....	465
Table 3.7:	AMP Get AMP Response Status values .....	467
Table 3.8:	AMP Create Physical Link Response Status values .....	469
Table 3.9:	AMP Disconnect Physical Link Response Status values .....	472



# Core System Package [Host volume]

Part F

## ATTRIBUTE PROTOCOL (ATT)

***This specification defines the Attribute Protocol; a protocol for discovering, reading, and writing attributes on a peer device***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>481</b>
1.1	Scope .....	481
1.2	Conformance .....	481
<b>2</b>	<b>Protocol Overview.....</b>	<b>482</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Protocol Requirements.....</b>	<b>483</b>
3.1	Introduction .....	483
3.2	Basic Concepts .....	483
3.2.1	Attribute Type .....	483
3.2.2	Attribute Handle.....	484
3.2.3	Attribute Handle Grouping.....	485
3.2.4	Attribute Value .....	485
3.2.5	Attribute Permissions .....	485
3.2.6	Control-Point Attributes .....	487
3.2.7	Protocol Methods .....	487
3.2.8	Exchanging MTU Size.....	487
3.2.9	Long Attribute Values .....	487
3.2.10	Atomic Operations.....	488
3.3	Attribute PDU .....	488
3.3.1	Attribute PDU Format.....	489
3.3.2	Sequential Protocol .....	490
3.3.3	Transaction.....	491
3.4	Attribute Protocol PDUs .....	492
3.4.1	Error Handling .....	492
3.4.1.1	Error Response.....	492
3.4.2	MTU Exchange.....	494
3.4.2.1	Exchange MTU Request.....	494
3.4.2.2	Exchange MTU Response.....	494
3.4.3	Find Information .....	496
3.4.3.1	Find Information Request .....	496
3.4.3.2	Find Information Response.....	496
3.4.3.3	Find By Type Value Request.....	498
3.4.3.4	Find By Type Value Response .....	499

3.4.4	Reading Attributes .....	500
3.4.4.1	Read By Type Request.....	500
3.4.4.2	Read By Type Response.....	502
3.4.4.3	Read Request.....	502
3.4.4.4	Read Response.....	503
3.4.4.5	Read Blob Request .....	504
3.4.4.6	Read Blob Response.....	505
3.4.4.7	Read Multiple Request .....	506
3.4.4.8	Read Multiple Response .....	507
3.4.4.9	Read by Group Type Request .....	507
3.4.4.10	Read by Group Type Response .....	509
3.4.5	Writing Attributes.....	510
3.4.5.1	Write Request.....	510
3.4.5.2	Write Response .....	511
3.4.5.3	Write Command.....	512
3.4.5.4	Signed Write Command.....	513
3.4.6	Queued Writes .....	514
3.4.6.1	Prepare Write Request .....	514
3.4.6.2	Prepare Write Response .....	516
3.4.6.3	Execute Write Request .....	516
3.4.6.4	Execute Write Response .....	517
3.4.7	Server Initiated .....	518
3.4.7.1	Handle Value Notification.....	518
3.4.7.2	Handle Value Indication.....	518
3.4.7.3	Handle Value Confirmation .....	519
3.4.8	Attribute Opcode Summary.....	520
3.4.9	Attribute PDU Response Summary.....	522
4	<b>Security Considerations.....</b>	<b>525</b>

## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

### 1.1 SCOPE

The attribute protocol allows a device referred to as the server to expose a set of attributes and their associated values to a peer device referred to as the client. These attributes exposed by the server can be discovered, read, and written by a client, and can be indicated and notified by the server.

### 1.2 CONFORMANCE

If conformance to this protocol is claimed, all capabilities indicated as mandatory for this protocol shall be supported in the specified manner (process-mandatory). This also applies to all optional and conditional capabilities for which support is indicated. All mandatory capabilities, and optional and conditional capabilities for which support is indicated, are subject to verification as part of the Bluetooth qualification program.

## 2 PROTOCOL OVERVIEW

---

The attribute protocol defines two roles; a server role and a client role. It allows a server to expose a set of attributes to a client that are accessible using the attribute protocol.

An attribute is a discrete value that has the following three properties associated with it:

- a) attribute type, defined by a UUID
- b) attribute handle
- c) a set of permissions that are defined by each higher layer specification that utilizes the attribute; these permissions cannot be accessed using the Attribute Protocol.

The attribute type specifies what the attribute represents. Bluetooth SIG defined attribute types are defined in the Bluetooth SIG assigned numbers page, and used by an associated higher layer specification. Non-Bluetooth SIG attribute types may also be defined.

The attribute handle uniquely identifies an attribute on a server, allowing a client to reference the attribute in read or write requests; see [Section 3.4.4](#), [Section 3.4.5](#), and [Section 3.4.6](#). It allows a client to uniquely identify the attribute being notified or indicated, see [Section 3.4.7](#). Clients are able to discover the handles of the server's attributes; see [Section 3.4.3](#). Permissions may be applied to an attribute to prevent applications from obtaining or altering an attribute's value. An attribute may be defined by a higher layer specification to be readable or writable or both, and may have additional security requirements. For more information, see [Section 3.2.5](#).

A client may send attribute protocol requests to a server, and the server shall respond to all requests that it receives. A device can implement both client and server roles, and both roles can function concurrently in the same device and between the same devices. There shall be only one instance of a server on each Bluetooth device; this implies that the attribute handles shall be identical for all supported bearers. For a given client, the server shall have one set of attributes. The server can support multiple clients. Note: multiple services may be exposed on a single server by allocating separate ranges of handles for each service. The discovery of these handle ranges is defined by a higher layer specification.

The attribute protocol has notification and indication capabilities that provide an efficient way of sending attribute values to a client without the need for them to be read; see [Section 3.3](#).

## 3 PROTOCOL REQUIREMENTS

---

### 3.1 INTRODUCTION

Each attribute has an attribute type that identifies, by means of a UUID (Universally Unique Identifier), what the attribute represents so that a client can understand the attributes exposed by a server. Each attribute has an attribute handle that is used for accessing the attribute on a server, as well as an attribute value.

An attribute value is accessed using its attribute handle. The attribute handles are discovered by a client using attribute protocol PDUs (Protocol Data Unit). Attributes that have the same attribute type may exist more than once in a server. Attributes also have a set of permissions that controls whether they can be read or written, or whether the attribute value shall be sent over an encrypted link. Security aspects of the attribute protocol are defined in [Section 4](#).

### 3.2 BASIC CONCEPTS

#### 3.2.1 Attribute Type

A universally unique identifier (UUID) is used to identify every attribute type. A UUID is considered unique over all space and time. A UUID can be independently created by anybody and distributed or published as required. There is no central registry for UUIDs, as they are based off a unique identifier that is not duplicated. The attribute protocol allows devices to identify attribute types using UUIDs regardless of the local handle used to identify them in a read or write request.

A UUID is a 128-bit value<sup>1</sup>. To improve efficiency, common or frequently used UUIDs may be shortened to 16 bits or 32 bits. The Bluetooth Base UUID is a value that all 16-bit and 32-bit Attribute UUIDs use as a common base. The Bluetooth\_Base\_UUID is:

00000000-0000-1000-8000-00805F9B34FB

To convert a 16-bit or 32-bit Attribute UUID into a full 128-bit UUID the following arithmetic operation can be performed

$$\text{128-bit UUID} = \text{16-bit Attribute UUID} * 2^{96} + \text{Bluetooth_Base_UUID}$$

$$\text{128-bit UUID} = \text{32-bit Attribute UUID} * 2^{96} + \text{Bluetooth_Base_UUID}$$

---

1. The format of a UUID is specified in ITU-T Rec. X.667, alternatively known as ISO/IEC 9834-8:2005.

Or, to put it more simply, the 16-bit Attribute UUID replaces the x's in the following:

0000xxxx-0000-1000-8000-00805F9B34FB

For example, the 16-bit Attribute UUID of 0x1234 is equivalent to the 128-bit UUID of

00001234-0000-1000-8000-00805F9B34FB

In addition, the 32-bit Attribute UUID replaces the x's in the following:

xxxxxxxx-0000-1000-8000-00805F9B34FB

For example, the 32-bit UUID 0x12345678 is equivalent to the 128-bit UUID of

12345678-0000-1000-8000-00805F9B34FB

A 16-bit Attribute UUID can be directly compared with another 16-bit Attribute UUID without conversion to a 128-bit UUID first. A 32-bit Attribute UUID can be directly compared with another 32-bit Attribute UUID without conversion to a 128-bit UUID first. However, whenever comparing a 16-bit Attribute UUID or 32-bit Attribute UUID with a 128-bit UUID, the comparison shall be implemented such that the result is the same as if the 16-bit or 32-bit Attribute UUID was converted to a 128-bit UUID first.

Applications should not convert a 128-bit UUID to a 16-bit UUID or a 32-bit UUID for comparison as there is no guarantee that the 128-bit UUID is based on the Bluetooth Base UUID; it could be a vendor defined 128-bit UUID. Regardless of the implementation, applications shall behave as if all comparisons of UUIDs were performed with 128-bit UUDs.

16-bit and 32-bit UUIDs are assigned by the Bluetooth SIG and published in the Bluetooth Assigned Numbers page.

Note: The 16-bit and 32-bit Attribute UUIDs use the same namespace as SDP 16-bit and 32-bit UUIDs.

All 32-bit Attribute UUIDs shall be converted to 128-bit UUIDs when the Attribute UUID is contained in an ATT PDU.

### 3.2.2 Attribute Handle

An attribute handle is a 16-bit value that is assigned by each server to its own attributes to allow a client to reference those attributes. An attribute handle shall not be reused while an ATT Bearer exists between a client and its server.

Attribute handles on any given server shall have unique, non-zero values. Attributes are ordered by attribute handle.

An attribute handle of value 0x0000 is reserved, and shall not be used. An attribute handle of value 0xFFFF is known as the maximum attribute handle.

Note: Attributes can be added or removed while an ATT Bearer is active, however, an attribute that has been removed cannot be replaced by another attribute with the same handle while an ATT Bearer is active.

### 3.2.3 Attribute Handle Grouping

Grouping is defined by a specific attribute placed at the beginning of a range of other attributes that are grouped with that attribute, as defined by a higher layer specification. Clients can request the first and last handles associated with a group of attributes.

### 3.2.4 Attribute Value

An attribute value is an octet array that may be either fixed or variable length. For example, it can be a one octet value, or a four octet integer, or a variable length string. An attribute may contain a value that is too large to transmit in a single PDU and can be sent using multiple PDUs. The values that are transmitted are opaque to the attribute protocol. The encoding of these octet arrays is defined by the attribute type.

When transmitting attribute values in a request, a response, a notification or an indication, the attribute value length is not sent in any field of the PDU. The length of a variable length field in the PDU is implicitly given by the length of the packet that carries this PDU. This implies that:

- a) only one attribute value can be placed in a single request, response, notification or indication unless the attribute values have lengths known by both the server and client, as defined by the attribute type.
- b) This attribute value will always be the only variable length field of a request, response, notification or indication.
- c) The bearer protocol (e.g. L2CAP) preserves datagram boundaries.

Note: Some responses include multiple attribute values, for example when client requests multiple attribute reads. For the client to determine the attribute value boundaries, the attribute values must have a fixed size defined by the attribute type.

### 3.2.5 Attribute Permissions

An attribute has a set of permission values associated with it. The permissions associated with an attribute specifies that it may be read and/or written. The permissions associated with the attribute specifies the security level required for read and/or write access, as well as notification and/or indication. The permissions of a given attribute are defined by a higher layer specification, and are not discoverable using the attribute protocol.

*Attribute Protocol (ATT)*

If access to a secure attribute requires an authenticated link, and the client is not already authenticated with the server with sufficient security, then an error response shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authentication». When a client receives this error code it may try to authenticate the link, and if the authentication is successful, it can then access the secure attribute.

If access to a secure attribute requires an encrypted link, and the link is not encrypted, then an error response shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption». When a client receives this error code it may try to encrypt the link and if the encryption is successful, it can then access the secure attribute.

If access to a secure attribute requires an encrypted link, and the link is encrypted but with an encryption key size that is too short for the level of security required, then an error response shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption Key Size». When a client receives this error code it may try to encrypt the link with a larger key size, and if the encryption is successful, it can then access the secure attribute.

Attribute permissions are a combination of access permissions, encryption permissions, authentication permissions and authorization permissions.

The following access permissions are possible:

- Readable
- Writeable
- Readable and writable

The following encryption permissions are possible:

- Encryption required
- No encryption required

The following authentication permissions are possible:

- Authentication Required
- No Authentication Required

The following authorization permissions are possible:

- Authorization Required
- No Authorization Required

Access permissions are used by a server to determine if a client can read and/or write an attribute value.

Authentication permissions are used by a server to determine if an authenticated physical link is required when a client attempts to access an attribute. Authentication permissions are also used by a server to determine if an

authenticated physical link is required before sending a notification or indication to a client.

Authorization permissions determine if a client needs to be authorized before accessing an attribute value.

### 3.2.6 Control-Point Attributes

Attributes that cannot be read, but can only be written, notified or indicated are called control-point attributes. These control-point attributes can be used by higher layers to enable device specific procedures, for example the writing of a command or the indication when a given procedure on a device has completed.

### 3.2.7 Protocol Methods

The attribute protocol uses methods defined in [Section 3.4](#) to find, read, write, notify, and indicate attributes. A method is categorized as either a request, a response, a command, a notification, an indication or a confirmation method; see [Section 3.3](#). Some attribute protocol PDUs can also include an Authentication Signature, to allow authentication of the originator of this PDU without requiring encryption. The method and signed bit are known as the opcode.

### 3.2.8 Exchanging MTU Size

ATT\_MTU is defined as the maximum size of any packet sent between a client and a server. A higher layer specification defines the default ATT\_MTU value.

The client and server may optionally exchange the maximum size of a packet that can be received using the Exchange MTU Request and Response PDUs. Both devices then use the minimum of these exchanged values for all further communication (see [Section 3.4.2](#)).

A device that is acting as a server and client at the same time shall use the same value for Client Rx MTU and Server Rx MTU.

The ATT\_MTU value is a per ATT Bearer value. Note: A device with multiple ATT Bearers may have a different ATT\_MTU value for each ATT Bearer.

### 3.2.9 Long Attribute Values

The longest attribute that can be sent in a single packet is (ATT\_MTU-1) octets in size. At a minimum, the Attribute Opcode is included in an Attribute PDU.

An attribute value may be defined to be larger than (ATT\_MTU-1) octets in size. These attributes are called long attributes.

To read the entire value of an attributes larger than (ATT\_MTU-1) octets, the read blob request is used. It is possible to read the first (ATT\_MTU-1) octets of a long attribute value using the read request.

To write the entire value of an attribute larger than (ATT\_MTU-3) octets, the prepare write request and execute write request is used. It is possible to write the first (ATT\_MTU-3) octets of a long attribute value using the write request.

It is not possible to determine if an attribute value is longer than (ATT\_MTU-3) octets using this protocol. A higher layer specification will state that a given attribute can have a maximum length larger than (ATT\_MTU-3) octets.

The maximum length of an attribute value shall be 512 octets.

Note: The protection of an attribute value changing when reading the value using multiple attribute protocol PDUs is the responsibility of the higher layer.

### 3.2.10 Atomic Operations

The server shall treat each request or command as an atomic operation that cannot be affected by another client sending a request or command at the same time. If a physical link is disconnected for any reason (user action or loss of the radio link), the value of any modified attribute is the responsibility of the higher layer specification.

Long attributes cannot be read or written in a single atomic operation.

## 3.3 ATTRIBUTE PDU

Attribute PDUs are one of six method types:

- Requests—PDUs sent to a server by a client, and invoke responses.
- Responses—PDUs sent to a client in response to a request to a server.
- Commands—PDUs sent to a server by a client.
- Notifications—Unsolicited PDUs sent to a client by a server.
- Indications—Unsolicited PDUs sent to a client by a server, and invoke confirmations.
- Confirmations—PDUs sent to an attribute server to confirm receipt of an indication by a client.

A server shall be able to receive and properly respond to the following requests:

- *Find Information Request*
- *Read Request*

Support for all other PDU types in a server can be specified in a higher layer specification, see [Section 3.4.8](#).

*Attribute Protocol (ATT)*

If a client sends a request, then the client shall support all possible responses PDUs for that request.

If a server receives a request that it does not support, then the server shall respond with the *Error Response* with the Error Code «Request Not Supported», with the Attribute Handle In Error set to 0x0000.

If a server receives a command that it does not support, indicated by the Command Flag of the PDU set to one, then the server shall ignore the Command.

If the server receives an invalid request – for example, the PDU is the wrong length – then the server shall respond with the *Error Response* with the Error Code «Invalid PDU», with the Attribute Handle In Error set to 0x0000.

If a server does not have sufficient resources to process a request, then the server shall respond with the *Error Response* with the Error Code «Insufficient Resources», with the Attribute Handle In Error set to 0x0000.

If a server cannot process a request because an error was encountered during the processing of this request, then the server shall respond with the *Error Response* with the Error Code «Unlikely Error», with the Attribute Handle In Error set to 0x0000.

### 3.3.1 Attribute PDU Format

Attribute PDUs has the following format:

Name	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	The attribute PDU operation code bit7: Authentication Signature Flag bit6: Command Flag bit5-0: Method
Attribute Parameters	0 to (ATT_MTU - X)	The attribute PDU parameters X = 1 if Authentication Signature Flag of the Attribute Opcode is 0 X = 13 if Authentication Signature Flag of the Attribute Opcode is 1
Authentication Signature	0 or 12	Optional authentication signature for the Attribute Opcode and Attribute Parameters

Table 3.1: Format of Attribute PDU

Multi-octet fields within the attribute protocol shall be sent least significant octet first (little endian) with the exception of the Attribute Value field. The endian-ness of the Attribute Value field is defined by a higher layer specification.

The Attribute Opcode is composed of three fields, the Authentication Signature Flag, the Command Flag, and the Method. The Method is a 6-bit value that determines the format and meaning of the Attribute Parameters.

If the Authentication Signature Flag of the Attribute Opcode is set to one, the Authentication Signature value shall be appended to the end of the attribute PDU, and X is 13. If the Authentication Signature Flag of the Attribute Opcode is set to zero, the Authentication Signature value shall not be appended, and X is 1.

The Authentication Signature field is calculated as defined in Security Manager (see [\[Vol. 3\] Part H, Section 2.4.5](#)). This value provides an Authentication Signature for the variable length message (m) consisting of the following values in this order: Attribute Opcode, Attribute Parameters.

An Attribute PDU that includes an Authentication Signature should not be sent on an encrypted link. Note: an encrypted link already includes authentication data on every packet and therefore adding more authentication data is not required.

If the Command Flag of the Attribute Opcode is set to one, the PDU shall be considered to be a Command.

Only the Write Command may include an Authentication Signature.

### 3.3.2 Sequential Protocol

Many attribute protocol PDUs use a sequential request-response protocol.

Once a client sends a request to a server, that client shall send no other request to the same server until a response PDU has been received.

Indications sent from a server also use a sequential indication-confirmation protocol. No other indications shall be sent to the same client from this server until a confirmation PDU has been received. The client, however, is free to send commands and requests prior to sending a confirmation.

For notifications, which do not have a response PDU, there is no flow control and a notification can be sent at any time.

Commands that do not require a response do not have any flow control. Note: a server can be flooded with commands, and a higher layer specification can define how to prevent this from occurring.

Commands and notifications that are received but cannot be processed, due to buffer overflows or other reasons, shall be discarded. Therefore, those PDUs must be considered to be unreliable.

Note: Flow control for each client and a server is independent.

Note: It is possible for a server to receive a request, send one or more notifications, and then the response to the original request. The flow control of requests is not affected by the transmission of the notifications.

Note: It is possible for a server to receive a request and then a command before responding to the original request. The flow control of requests is not affected by the transmission of commands.

Note: It is possible for a notification from a server to be sent after an indication has been sent but the confirmation has not been received. The flow control of indications is not affected by the transmission of notifications.

Note: It is possible for a client to receive an indication from a server and then send a request or command to that server before sending the confirmation of the original indication.

### 3.3.3 Transaction

An attribute protocol request and response or indication-confirmation pair is considered a single transaction. A transaction shall always be performed on one ATT Bearer, and shall not be split over multiple ATT Bearers.

On the client, a transaction shall start when the request is sent by the client. A transaction shall complete when the response is received by the client.

On a server, a transaction shall start when a request is received by the server. A transaction shall complete when the response is sent by the server.

On a server, a transaction shall start when an indication is sent by the server. A transaction shall complete when the confirmation is received by the server.

On a client, a transaction shall start when an indication is received by the client. A transaction shall complete when the confirmation is sent by the client.

A transaction not completed within 30 seconds shall time out. Such a transaction shall be considered to have failed and the local higher layers shall be informed of this failure. No more attribute protocol requests, commands, indications or notifications shall be sent to the target device on this ATT Bearer.

Note: To send another attribute protocol PDU, a new ATT Bearer must be established between these devices. The existing ATT Bearer may need to be disconnected or the bearer terminated before the new ATT Bearer is established.

If the ATT Bearer is disconnected during a transaction, then the transaction shall be considered to be closed, and any values that were being modified on the server will be in an undetermined state, and any queue that was prepared by the client using this ATT Bearer shall be cleared.

Note: Each Prepare Write Request is a separate request and is therefore a separate transaction.

Note: Each Read Blob Request is a separate request and is therefore a separate transaction.

## 3.4 ATTRIBUTE PROTOCOL PDUS

### 3.4.1 Error Handling

#### 3.4.1.1 Error Response

The *Error Response* is used to state that a given request cannot be performed, and to provide the reason.

Note: The Write Command does not generate an Error Response.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x01 = Error Response
Request Opcode In Error	1	The request that generated this error response
Attribute Handle In Error	2	The attribute handle that generated this error response
Error Code	1	The reason why the request has generated an error response

Table 3.2: Format of Error Response

The Request Opcode In Error parameter shall be set to the Attribute Opcode of the request that generated this error.

The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the attribute handle in the original request that generated this error. If there was no attribute handle in the original request or if the request is not supported, then the value 0x0000 shall be used for this field.

The Error Code parameter shall be set to one of the following values:

Name	Error Code	Description
Invalid Handle	0x01	The attribute handle given was not valid on this server.
Read Not Permitted	0x02	The attribute cannot be read.
Write Not Permitted	0x03	The attribute cannot be written.
Invalid PDU	0x04	The attribute PDU was invalid.
Insufficient Authentication	0x05	The attribute requires authentication before it can be read or written.
Request Not Supported	0x06	Attribute server does not support the request received from the client.

Table 3.3: Error Codes

*Attribute Protocol (ATT)*

Name	Error Code	Description
Invalid Offset	0x07	Offset specified was past the end of the attribute.
Insufficient Authorization	0x08	The attribute requires authorization before it can be read or written.
Prepare Queue Full	0x09	Too many prepare writes have been queued.
Attribute Not Found	0x0A	No attribute found within the given attribute handle range.
Attribute Not Long	0x0B	The attribute cannot be read or written using the Read Blob Request.
Insufficient Encryption Key Size	0x0C	The Encryption Key Size used for encrypting this link is insufficient.
Invalid Attribute Value Length	0x0D	The attribute value length is invalid for the operation.
Unlikely Error	0x0E	The attribute request that was requested has encountered an error that was unlikely, and therefore could not be completed as requested.
Insufficient Encryption	0x0F	The attribute requires encryption before it can be read or written.
Unsupported Group Type	0x10	The attribute type is not a supported grouping attribute as defined by a higher layer specification.
Insufficient Resources	0x11	Insufficient Resources to complete the request.
Reserved	0x012 – 0x7F	Reserved for future use.
Application Error	0x80-0x9F	Application error code defined by a higher layer specification.
Reserved	0xA0 – 0xDF	Reserved for future use
Common Profile and Service Error Codes	0xE0 – 0xFF	Common profile and service error codes defined in [ <a href="#">Core Specification Supplement</a> ], Part B.

Table 3.3: Error Codes

If an error code is received in the *Error Response* that is not understood by the client, for example an error code that was reserved for future use that is now being used in a future version of this specification, then the *Error Response* shall still be considered to state that the given request cannot be performed for an unknown reason.

### 3.4.2 MTU Exchange

#### 3.4.2.1 Exchange MTU Request

The *Exchange MTU Request* is used by the client to inform the server of the client's maximum receive MTU size and request the server to respond with its maximum receive MTU size.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x02 = Exchange MTU Request
Client Rx MTU	2	Client receive MTU size

Table 3.4: Format of Exchange MTU Request

The Client Rx MTU shall be greater than or equal to the default ATT\_MTU.

This request shall only be sent once during a connection by the client. The Client Rx MTU parameter shall be set to the maximum size of the attribute protocol PDU that the client can receive.

#### 3.4.2.2 Exchange MTU Response

The *Exchange MTU Response* is sent in reply to a received *Exchange MTU Request*.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x03 = Exchange MTU Response
Server Rx MTU	2	Attribute server receive MTU size

Table 3.5: Format of Exchange MTU Response

The Server Rx MTU shall be greater than or equal to the default ATT\_MTU.

The Server Rx MTU parameter shall be set to the maximum size of the attribute protocol PDU that the server can receive.

The server and client shall set ATT\_MTU to the minimum of the Client Rx MTU and the Server Rx MTU. The size is the same to ensure that a client can correctly detect the final packet of a long attribute read.

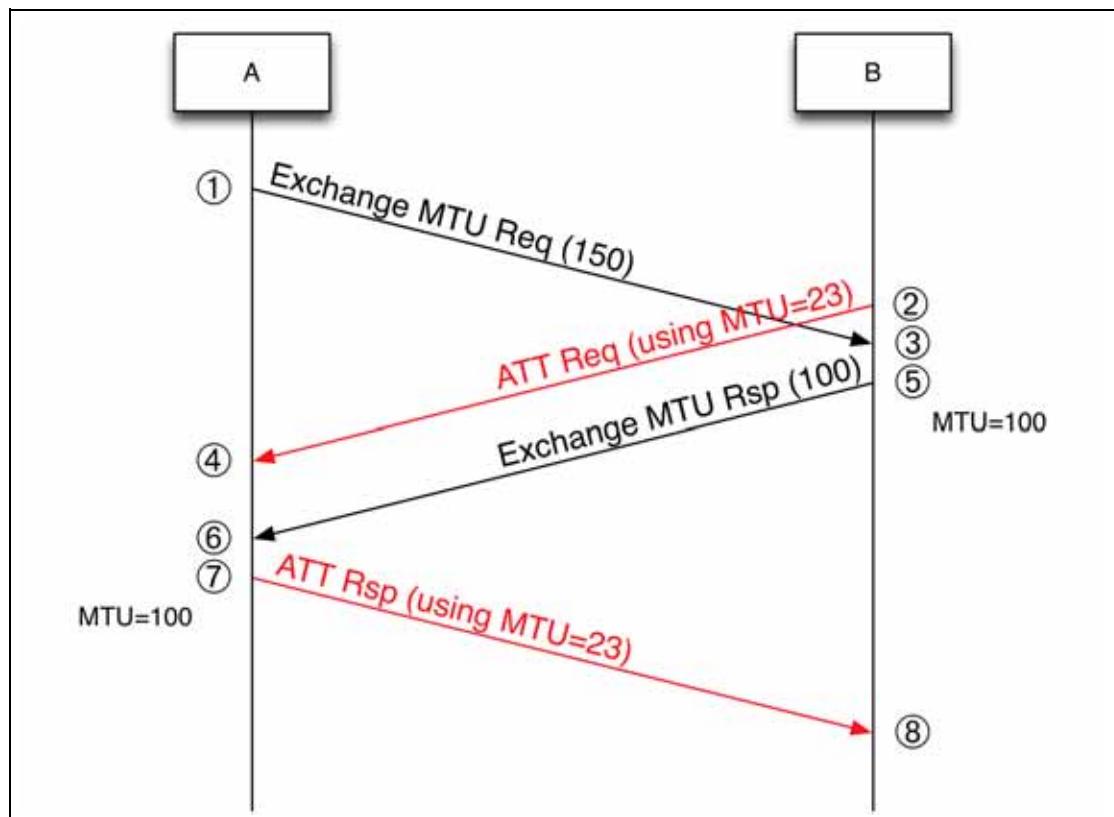
This ATT\_MTU value shall be applied in the server after this response has been sent and before any other attribute protocol PDU is sent.

This ATT\_MTU value shall be applied in the client after this response has been received and before any other attribute protocol PDU is sent.

If either Client Rx MTU or Service Rx MTU are incorrectly less than the default ATT\_MTU, then the ATT\_MTU shall not be changed and the ATT\_MTU shall be the default ATT\_MTU.

If a device is both a client and a server, the following rules shall apply:

1. A device's *Exchange MTU Request* shall contain the same MTU as the device's *Exchange MTU Response* (i.e. the MTU shall be symmetric).
2. If MTU is exchanged in one direction, that is sufficient for both directions.
3. It is permitted, (but not necessary - see 2.) to exchange MTU in both directions, but the MTUs shall be the same in each direction (see 1.)
4. If an Attribute Protocol Request is received after the MTU Exchange Request is sent and before the MTU Exchange Response is received, the associated Attribute Protocol Response shall use the default MTU. [Figure 3.1](#) shows an example that is covered by this rule. In this case device A and device B both use the default MTU for the Attribute Protocol Response.
5. Once the MTU Exchange Request has been sent, the initiating device shall not send an Attribute Protocol Indication or Notification until after the MTU Exchange Response has been received. Note: This stops the risk of a cross-over condition where the MTU size is unknown for the Indication or Notification.



*Figure 3.1: MTU request and response exchange*

### 3.4.3 Find Information

#### 3.4.3.1 Find Information Request

The *Find Information Request* is used to obtain the mapping of attribute handles with their associated types. This allows a client to discover the list of attributes and their types on a server.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x04 = Find Information Request
Starting Handle	2	First requested handle number
Ending Handle	2	Last requested handle number

Table 3.6: Format of Find Information Request

Only attributes with attribute handles between and including the Starting Handle parameter and the Ending Handle parameter will be returned. To read all attributes, the Starting Handle parameter shall be set to 0x0001, and the Ending Handle parameter shall be set to 0xFFFF. The Starting Handle parameter shall be less than or equal to the Ending Handle parameter.

If one or more attributes will be returned, a *Find Information Response* PDU shall be sent.

If a server receives a *Find Information Request* with the Starting Handle parameter greater than the Ending Handle parameter or the Starting Handle parameter is 0x0000, an *Error Response* shall be sent with the «Invalid Handle» error code; the Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the Starting Handle parameter.

If no attributes will be returned, an *Error Response* shall be sent with the «Attribute Not Found» error code; the Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the Starting Handle parameter.

The server shall not respond to the *Find Information Request* with an *Error Response* with the «Insufficient Authentication», «Insufficient Authorization», «Insufficient Encryption Key Size» or «Application Error» error code.

#### 3.4.3.2 Find Information Response

The *Find Information Response* is sent in reply to a received *Find Information Request* and contains information about this server.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x05 = Find Information Response

Table 3.7: Format of Find Information Response

*Attribute Protocol (ATT)*

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Format	1	The format of the information data.
Information Data	4 to (ATT_MTU-2)	The information data whose format is determined by the Format field

*Table 3.7: Format of Find Information Response*

The *Find Information Response* shall have complete handle-UUID pairs. Such pairs shall not be split across response packets; this also implies that a handle-UUID pair shall fit into a single response packet. The handle-UUID pairs shall be returned in ascending order of attribute handles.

The Format parameter can contain one of two possible values.

Name	Format	Description
Handle(s) and 16-bit Bluetooth UUID(s)	0x01	A list of 1 or more handles with their 16-bit Bluetooth UUIDs
Handle(s) and 128-bit UUID(s)	0x02	A list of 1 or more handles with their 128-bit UUIDs

*Table 3.8: Format field values*

The information data field is comprised of a list of data defined in the tables below depending on the value chosen for the format.

Handle	16-bit Bluetooth UUID
2 octets	2 octets

*Table 3.9: Format 0x01 - handle and 16-bit Bluetooth UUIDs*

Handle	128-bit UUID
2 octets	16 octets

*Table 3.10: Format 0x02 - handle and 128-bit UUIDs*

Note: If sequential attributes have differing UUID sizes, it may happen that a *Find Information Response* is not filled with the maximum possible amount of (handle, UUID) pairs. This is because it is not possible to include attributes with differing UUID sizes into a single response packet. In that case, the following attribute would have to be read using another *Find Information Request* with its starting handle updated.

### 3.4.3.3 Find By Type Value Request

The *Find By Type Value Request* is used to obtain the handles of attributes that have a 16-bit UUID attribute type and attribute value. This allows the range of handles associated with a given attribute to be discovered when the attribute type determines the grouping of a set of attributes. Note: Generic Attribute Profile defines grouping of attributes by attribute type.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x06 = Find By Type Value Request
Starting Handle	2	First requested handle number
Ending Handle	2	Last requested handle number
Attribute Type	2	2 octet UUID to find
Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-7)	Attribute value to find

Table 3.11: Format of Find By Type Value Request

Only attributes with attribute handles between and including the Starting Handle parameter and the Ending Handle parameter that match the requested attribute type and the attribute value that have sufficient permissions to allow reading will be returned. To read all attributes, the Starting Handle parameter shall be set to 0x0001, and the Ending Handle parameter shall be set to 0xFFFF.

If one or more handles will be returned, a *Find By Type Value Response* PDU shall be sent.

Note: Attribute values will be compared in terms of length and binary representation.

Note: It is not possible to use this request on an attribute that has a value longer than (ATT\_MTU-7).

If a server receives a *Find By Type Value Request* with the Starting Handle parameter greater than the Ending Handle parameter or the Starting Handle parameter is 0x0000, an *Error Response* shall be sent with the «Invalid Handle» error code. The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the Starting Handle parameter.

If no attributes will be returned, an *Error Response* shall be sent by the server with the error code «Attribute Not Found». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the starting handle.

The server shall not respond to the *Find By Type Value Request* with an *Error Response* with the «Insufficient Authentication», «Insufficient Authorization», «Insufficient Encryption Key Size», «Insufficient Encryption» or «Application Error» error code.

### 3.4.3.4 Find By Type Value Response

The *Find By Type Value Response* is sent in reply to a received *Find By Type Value Request* and contains information about this server.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x07 = Find By Type Value Response
Handles Information List	4 to (ATT_MTU-1)	A list of 1 or more Handle Informations.

Table 3.12: Format of *Find By Type Value Response*

The Handles Information List field is a list of one or more Handle Informations. The Handles Information field is an attribute handle range as defined in [Table 3.13](#).

Found Attribute Handle	Group End Handle
2 octets	2 octets

Table 3.13: Format of the Handles Information

The *Find By Type Value Response* shall contain one or more complete Handles Information. Such Handles Information shall not be split across response packets. The Handles Information List is ordered sequentially based on the found attribute handles.

For each handle that matches the attribute type and attribute value in the *Find By Type Value Request* a Handles Information shall be returned. The Found Attribute Handle shall be set to the handle of the attribute that has the exact attribute type and attribute value from the *Find By Type Value Request*. If the attribute type in the *Find By Type Value Request* is a grouping attribute as defined by a higher layer specification, the Group End Handle shall be defined by that higher layer specification. If the attribute type in the *Find By Type Value Request* is not a grouping attribute as defined by a higher layer specification, the Group End Handle shall be equal to the Found Attribute Handle.

Note: The Group End Handle may be greater than the Ending Handle in the *Find By Type Value Request*.

If a server receives a *Find By Type Value Request*, the server shall respond with the *Find By Type Value Response* containing as many handles for attributes that match the requested attribute type and attribute value that exist in the server that will fit into the maximum PDU size of (ATT\_MTU-1).

### 3.4.4 Reading Attributes

#### 3.4.4.1 Read By Type Request

The *Read By Type Request* is used to obtain the values of attributes where the attribute type is known but the handle is not known.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x08 = Read By Type Request
Starting Handle	2	First requested handle number
Ending Handle	2	Last requested handle number
Attribute Type	2 or 16	2 or 16 octet UUID

Table 3.14: Format of Read By Type Request

Only the attributes with attribute handles between and including the Starting Handle and the Ending Handle with the attribute type that is the same as the Attribute Type given will be returned. To search through all attributes, the starting handle shall be set to 0x0001 and the ending handle shall be set to 0xFFFF.

Note: All attribute types are effectively compared as 128-bit UUIDs, even if a 16-bit UUID is provided in this request or defined for an attribute. See [Section 3.2.1](#).

The starting handle shall be less than or equal to the ending handle. If a server receives a *Read By Type Request* with the Starting Handle parameter greater than the Ending Handle parameter or the Starting Handle parameter is 0x0000, an *Error Response* shall be sent with the «Invalid Handle» error code; The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the Starting Handle parameter.

If no attribute with the given type exists within the handle range, then no attribute handle and value will be returned, and an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Attribute Not Found». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the starting handle.

The attributes returned shall be the attributes with the lowest handles within the handle range. These are known as the requested attributes.

If the attributes with the requested type within the handle range have attribute values that have the same length, then these attributes can all be read in a single request.

The attribute server shall include as many attributes as possible in the response in order to minimize the number of PDUs required to read attributes of the same type.

Note: If the attributes with the requested type within the handle range have attribute values with different lengths, then multiple *Read By Type Requests* must be made.

When multiple attributes match, then the rules below shall be applied to each in turn.

- Only attributes that can be read shall be returned in a *Read By Type Response*.
- If an attribute in the set of requested attributes would cause an *Error Response* then this attribute cannot be included in a *Read By Type Response* and the attributes before this attribute shall be returned.
- If the first attribute in the set of requested attributes would cause an *Error Response* then no other attributes in the requested attributes can be considered.

The server shall respond with a *Read By Type Response* if the requested attributes have sufficient permissions to allow reading.

If the client has insufficient authorization to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authorization». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

If the client has insufficient security to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authentication». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

If the client has an insufficient encryption key size to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption Key Size». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

If the client has not enabled encryption, and encryption is required to read the requested attribute, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

If the requested attribute's value cannot be read due to permissions then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Read Not Permitted». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

Note: if there are multiple attributes with the requested type within the handle range, and the client would like to get the next attribute with the requested type, it would have to issue another *Read By Type Request* with its starting handle updated. The client can be sure there are no more such attributes remaining once it gets an *Error Response* with the error code «Attribute Not Found».

### 3.4.4.2 Read By Type Response

The *Read By Type Response* is sent in reply to a received *Read By Type Request* and contains the handles and values of the attributes that have been read.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x09 = Read By Type Response
Length	1	The size of each attribute handle-value pair
Attribute Data List	2 to (ATT_MTU - 2)	A list of Attribute Data

Table 3.15: Format of Read By Type Response

The *Read By Type Response* shall contain complete handle-value pairs. Such pairs shall not be split across response packets. The handle-value pairs shall be returned sequentially based on the attribute handle.

The Length parameter shall be set to the size of one attribute handle-value pair.

The maximum length of an attribute handle-value pair is 255 octets, bounded by the Length parameter that is one octet. Therefore, the maximum length of an attribute value returned in this response is  $(\text{Length} - 2) = 253$  octets.

The attribute handle-value pairs shall be set to the value of the attributes identified by the attribute type within the handle range within the request. If the attribute value is longer than  $(\text{ATT\_MTU} - 4)$  or 253 octets, whichever is smaller, then the first  $(\text{ATT\_MTU} - 4)$  or 253 octets shall be included in this response.

Note: the *Read Blob Request* would be used to read the remaining octets of a long attribute value.

The Attribute Data field is comprised of a list of attribute handle and value pairs as defined in [Table 3.16](#).

Attribute Handle	Attribute Value
2 octets	$(\text{Length} - 2)$ octets

Table 3.16: Format of the Attribute Data

### 3.4.4.3 Read Request

The *Read Request* is used to request the server to read the value of an attribute and return its value in a *Read Response*.

The attribute handle parameter shall be set to a valid handle.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x0A = Read Request
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute to be read

Table 3.17: Format of Read Request

The server shall respond with a *Read Response* if the handle is valid and the attribute has sufficient permissions to allow reading.

If the client has insufficient authorization to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authorization».

If the client has insufficient security to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authentication».

If the client has an insufficient encryption key size to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption Key Size».

If the client has not enabled encryption, and encryption is required to read the requested attribute, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption».

If the handle is invalid, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Invalid Handle».

If the attribute value cannot be read due to permissions then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Read Not Permitted».

#### 3.4.4.4 Read Response

The read response is sent in reply to a received *Read Request* and contains the value of the attribute that has been read.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x0B = Read Response
Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-1)	The value of the attribute with the handle given

Table 3.18: Format of Read Response

The attribute value shall be set to the value of the attribute identified by the attribute handle in the request. If the attribute value is longer than (ATT\_MTU-1) then the first (ATT\_MTU-1) octets shall be included in this response.

Note: the *Read Blob Request* would be used to read the remaining octets of a long attribute value.

### 3.4.4.5 Read Blob Request

The *Read Blob Request* is used to request the server to read part of the value of an attribute at a given offset and return a specific part of the value in a *Read Blob Response*.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x0C = Read Blob Request
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute to be read
Value Offset	2	The offset of the first octet to be read

Table 3.19: Format of Read Blob Request

The attribute handle parameter shall be set to a valid handle.

The value offset parameter is based from zero; the first value octet has an offset of zero, the second octet has a value offset of one, etc.

The server shall respond with a *Read Blob Response* if the handle is valid and the attribute and value offset is not greater than the length of the attribute value and has sufficient permissions to allow reading.

If the client has insufficient authorization to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authorization».

If the client has insufficient security to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authentication».

If the client has an insufficient encryption key size to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption Key Size».

If the client has not enabled encryption, and encryption is required to read the requested attribute, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption».

If the handle is invalid, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Invalid Handle».

If the attribute value cannot be read due to permissions then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Read Not Permitted».

If the value offset of the *Read Blob Request* is greater than the length of the attribute value, an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Invalid Offset».

### *Error Response*

If the attribute value has a fixed length that is less than or equal to (ATT\_MTU - 3) octets in length, then an *Error Response* can be sent with the error code «Attribute Not Long».

If the value offset of the *Read Blob Request* is equal to the length of the attribute value, then the length of the part attribute value in the response shall be zero.

Note: if the attribute is longer than (ATT\_MTU-1) octets, the *Read Blob Request* is the only way to read the additional octets of a long attribute. The first (ATT\_MTU-1) octets may be read using a *Read Request*, an *Handle Value Notification* or an *Handle Value Indication*.

Note: Long attributes may or may not have their length specified by a higher layer specification. If the long attribute has a variable length, the only way to get to the end of it is to read it part by part until the value in the *Read Blob Response* has a length shorter than (ATT\_MTU-1) or an *Error Response* with the error code «Invalid Offset».

Note: the value of a Long Attribute may change between one *Read Blob Request* and the next *Read Blob Request*. A higher layer specification should be aware of this and define appropriate behavior.

#### 3.4.4.6 Read Blob Response

The *Read Blob Response* is sent in reply to a received *Read Blob Request* and contains part of the value of the attribute that has been read.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x0D = Read Blob Response
Part Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-1)	Part of the value of the attribute with the handle given

Table 3.20: Format of Read Blob Response

The part attribute value shall be set to part of the value of the attribute identified by the attribute handle and the value offset in the request. If the value offset is equal to the length of the attribute value, then the length of the part attribute value shall be zero. If the attribute value is longer than (Value Offset + ATT\_MTU-1) then (ATT\_MTU-1) octets from Value Offset shall be included in this response.

### 3.4.4.7 Read Multiple Request

The *Read Multiple Request* is used to request the server to read two or more values of a set of attributes and return their values in a *Read Multiple Response*. Only values that have a known fixed size can be read, with the exception of the last value that can have a variable length. The knowledge of whether attributes have a known fixed size is defined in a higher layer specification.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x0E = Read Multiple Request
Set Of Handles	4 to (ATT_MTU-1)	A set of two or more attribute handles.

Table 3.21: Format of Read Multiple Request

The attribute handles in the Set Of Handles parameter shall be valid handles.

The server shall respond with a *Read Multiple Response* if all the handles are valid and all attributes have sufficient permissions to allow reading.

Note: The attribute values for the attributes in the Set Of Handles parameters do not have to all be the same size.

Note: The attribute handles in the Set Of Handles parameter do not have to be in attribute handle order; they are in the order that the values are required in the response.

If the client has insufficient authorization to read any of the attributes then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authorization».

If the client has insufficient security to read any of the attributes then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authentication».

If the client has an insufficient encryption key size to read any of the attributes then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption Key Size».

If the client has not enabled encryption, and encryption is required to read the requested attribute, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption».

If any of the handles are invalid, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Invalid Handle».

If any of the attribute values cannot be read due to permissions then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Read Not Permitted».

If an *Error Response* is sent, the Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the first attribute causing the error.

### 3.4.4.8 Read Multiple Response

The read response is sent in reply to a received *Read Multiple Request* and contains the values of the attributes that have been read.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x0F = Read Multiple Response
Set Of Values	0 to (ATT_MTU-1)	A set of two or more values

Table 3.22: Format of Read Multiple Response

The Set Of Values parameter shall be a concatenation of attribute values for each of the attribute handles in the request in the order that they were requested. If the Set Of Values parameter is longer than (ATT\_MTU-1) then only the first (ATT\_MTU-1) octets shall be included in this response.

Note: a client should not use this request for attributes when the Set Of Values parameter could be (ATT\_MTU-1) as it will not be possible to determine if the last attribute value is complete, or if it overflowed.

### 3.4.4.9 Read by Group Type Request

The *Read By Group Type Request* is used to obtain the values of attributes where the attribute type is known, the type of a grouping attribute as defined by a higher layer specification, but the handle is not known.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x10 = Read By Group Type Request
Starting Handle	2	First requested handle number
Ending Handle	2	Last requested handle number
Attribute Group Type	2 or 16	2 or 16 octet UUID

Table 3.23: Format of Read By Group Type Request

Only the attributes with attribute handles between and including the Starting Handle and the Ending Handle with the attribute type that is the same as the Attribute Group Type given will be returned. To search through all attributes, the starting handle shall be set to 0x0001 and the ending handle shall be set to 0xFFFF.

Note: All attribute types are effectively compared as 128-bit UUIDs, even if a 16-bit UUID is provided in this request or defined for an attribute. See [Section 3.2.1](#).

The starting handle shall be less than or equal to the ending handle. If a server receives a *Read By Group Type Request* with the Starting Handle parameter greater than the Ending Handle parameter or the Starting Handle parameter is

0x0000, an *Error Response* shall be sent with the «Invalid Handle» error code; The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the Starting Handle parameter.

If the Attribute Group Type is not a supported grouping attribute as defined by a higher layer specification then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Unsupported Group Type». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the Starting Handle.

If no attribute with the given type exists within the handle range, then no attribute handle and value will be returned, and an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Attribute Not Found». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the starting handle.

The attributes returned shall be the attributes with the lowest handles within the handle range. These are known as the requested attributes.

If the attributes with the requested type within the handle range have attribute values that have the same length, then these attributes can all be read in a single request.

The attribute server shall include as many attributes as possible in the response in order to minimize the number of PDUs required to read attributes of the same type.

Note: If the attributes with the requested type within the handle range have attribute values with different lengths, then multiple *Read By Group Type Requests* must be made.

When multiple attributes match, then the rules below shall be applied to each in turn.

- Only attributes that can be read shall be returned in a *Read By Group Type Response*.
- If an attribute in the set of requested attributes would cause an *Error Response* then this attribute cannot be included in a *Read By Group Type Response* and the attributes before this attribute shall be returned.
- If the first attribute in the set of requested attributes would cause an *Error Response* then no other attributes in the requested attributes can be considered.

The server shall respond with a *Read By Group Type Response* if the requested attributes have sufficient permissions to allow reading.

If the client has insufficient authorization to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authorization». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

If the client has insufficient security to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authentication». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

If the client has an insufficient encryption key size to read the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption Key Size». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

If the client has not enabled encryption, and encryption is required to read the requested attribute, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

If the requested attribute's value cannot be read due to permissions then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Read Not Permitted». The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the handle of the attribute causing the error.

Note: if there are multiple attributes with the requested type within the handle range, and the client would like to get the next attribute with the requested type, it would have to issue another *Read By Group Type Request* with its starting handle updated. The client can be sure there are no more such attributes remaining once it gets an *Error Response* with the error code «Attribute Not Found».

#### 3.4.4.10 Read by Group Type Response

The *Read By Group Type Response* is sent in reply to a received *Read By Group Type Request* and contains the handles and values of the attributes that have been read.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x11 = Read By Group Type Response
Length	1	The size of each Attribute Data
Attribute Data List	2 to (ATT_MTU - 2)	A list of Attribute Data

Table 3.24: Format of Read By Group Type Response

The *Read By Group Type Response* shall contain complete Attribute Data. An Attribute Data shall not be split across response packets. The Attribute Data List is ordered sequentially based on the attribute handles

The Length parameter shall be set to the size of the one Attribute Data.

The maximum length of an Attribute Data is 255 octets, bounded by the Length parameter that is one octet. Therefore, the maximum length of an attribute value returned in this response is (Length – 4) = 251 octets.

*Attribute Protocol (ATT)*

The Attribute Data List shall be set to the value of the attributes identified by the attribute type within the handle range within the request. If the attribute value is longer than (ATT\_MTU - 6) or 251 octets, whichever is smaller, then the first (ATT\_MTU - 6) or 251 octets shall be included in this response.

Note: the *Read Blob Request* would be used to read the remaining octets of a long attribute value.

The Attribute Data List is comprised of a list of Attribute Data as defined in [Table 3.25](#).

Attribute Handle	End Group Handle	Attribute Value
2 octets	2 octets	(Length - 4) octets

*Table 3.25: Format of the Attribute Data*

### 3.4.5 Writing Attributes

#### 3.4.5.1 Write Request

The *Write Request* is used to request the server to write the value of an attribute and acknowledge that this has been achieved in a *Write Response*.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x12 = Write Request
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute to be written
Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-3)	The value to be written to the attribute

*Table 3.26: Format of Write Request*

The Attribute Handle shall be set to a valid handle.

The Attribute Value shall be set to the new value of the attribute.

If the attribute value has a variable length, then the attribute value shall be truncated or lengthened to match the length of the Attribute Value parameter.

Note: If an attribute value has a variable length and if the Attribute Value parameter is of zero length, the attribute value will be fully truncated.

If the attribute value has a fixed length and the Attribute Value parameter length is less than or equal to the length of the attribute value, the octets of the attribute value parameter length shall be written; all other octets in this attribute value shall be unchanged.

The server shall respond with a *Write Response* if the handle is valid, the attribute has sufficient permissions to allow writing, and the attribute value has a valid size and format, and it is successful in writing the attribute.

If the attribute value has a variable length and the Attribute Value parameter length exceeds the maximum valid length of the attribute value then the server shall respond with an *Error Response* with the error code «Invalid Attribute Value Length».

If the attribute value has a fixed length and the requested attribute value parameter length is greater than the length of the attribute value then the server shall respond with an *Error Response* with the error code «Invalid Attribute Value Length».

If the client has insufficient authorization to write the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authorization».

If the client has insufficient security to write the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authentication».

If the client has an insufficient encryption key size to write the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption Key Size».

If the client has not enabled encryption, and encryption is required to write the requested attribute, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption».

If the handle is invalid, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Invalid Handle».

If the attribute value cannot be written due to permissions then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Write Not Permitted».

If the attribute value cannot be written due to an application error then an *Error Response* shall be sent with an error code defined by a higher layer specification.

### 3.4.5.2 Write Response

The *Write Response* is sent in reply to a valid *Write Request* and acknowledges that the attribute has been successfully written.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x13 = Write Response

Table 3.27: Format of Write Response

The *Write Response* shall be sent after the attribute value is written.

### 3.4.5.3 Write Command

The *Write Command* is used to request the server to write the value of an attribute, typically into a control-point attribute.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x52 = Write Command
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute to be set
Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-3)	The value of be written to the attribute

Table 3.28: Format of Write Command

The attribute handle parameter shall be set to a valid handle.

The attribute value parameter shall be set to the new value of the attribute.

If the attribute value has a variable length, then the attribute value shall be truncated or lengthened to match the length of the attribute value parameter.

Note: If an attribute value has a variable length and if the attribute value parameter is of zero length, the attribute value will be fully truncated.

If the attribute value has a fixed length and the attribute value parameter length is less than or equal to the length of the attribute value, the octets up to the attribute value parameter length shall be written; all other octets in this attribute value shall be unchanged.

If the attribute value has a variable length and the attribute value parameter length exceeds the maximum valid length of the attribute value then the server shall ignore the command.

If the attribute value has a fixed length and the requested attribute value parameter length is greater than the length of the attribute value then the server shall ignore the command.

No *Error Response* or *Write Response* shall be sent in response to this command. If the server cannot write this attribute for any reason the command shall be ignored.

### 3.4.5.4 Signed Write Command

The *Signed Write Command* is used to request the server to write the value of an attribute with an authentication signature, typically into a control-point attribute.

Parameter	Size (Octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0xD2 = Signed Write Command
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute to be set
Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU - 15)	The value to be written to the attribute
Authentication Signature	12	Authentication signature for the Attribute Upload, Attribute Handle and Attribute Value Parameters

Table 3.29: Format of Signed Write Command

The attribute handle parameter shall be set to a valid handle.

The attribute value parameter shall be set to the new value of the attribute.

The attribute signature shall be calculated as defined in [Section 3.3.1](#).

If the attribute value has a variable length, then the attribute value shall be truncated or lengthened to match the length of the attribute value parameter.

Note: If an attribute value has a variable length and if the attribute value parameter is of zero length, the attribute value will be fully truncated.

If the attribute value has a fixed length and the attribute value parameter length is less than or equal to the length of the attribute value, the octets up to the attribute value parameter length shall be written; all other octets in this attribute value shall be unchanged.

If the attribute value has a variable length and the attribute value parameter length exceeds the maximum valid length of the attribute value then the server shall ignore the command.

If the attribute value has a fixed length and the requested attribute value parameter length is greater than the length of the attribute value then the server shall ignore the command.

If the authentication signature verification fails, then the server shall ignore the command.

No *Error Response* or *Write Response* shall be sent in response to this command. If the server cannot write this attribute for any reason the command shall be ignored.

### 3.4.6 Queued Writes

The purpose of queued writes is to queue up writes of values of multiple attributes in a first-in first-out queue and then execute the write on all of them in a single atomic operation.

#### 3.4.6.1 Prepare Write Request

The *Prepare Write Request* is used to request the server to prepare to write the value of an attribute. The server will respond to this request with a *Prepare Write Response*, so that the client can verify that the value was received correctly.

A client may send more than one *Prepare Write Request* to a server, which will queue and send a response for each handle value pair.

A server may limit the number of prepare write requests that it can accept. A higher layer specification should define this limit.

After a *Prepare Write Request* has been issued, and the response received, any other attribute command or request can be issued from the same client to the same server.

Each client's queued values are separate; the execution of one queue shall not affect the preparation or execution of any other client's queued values.

Any actions on attributes that exist in the prepare queue shall proceed as if the prepare queue did not exist, and the prepare queue shall be unaffected by these actions. A subsequent execute write will write the values in the prepare queue even if the value of the attribute has changed since the prepare writes were started.

The attribute protocol makes no determination on the validity of the Part Attribute Value or the Value Offset. A higher layer specification determines the meaning of the data.

Each *Prepare Write Request* will be queued even if the attribute handle is the same as a previous *Prepare Write Request*. These will then be executed in the order received, causing multiple writes for this attribute to occur.

If the link is lost while a number of prepared write requests have been queued, the queue will be cleared and no writes will be executed.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x16 = Prepare Write Request
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute to be written

Table 3.30: Format of Prepare Write Request

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Value Offset	2	The offset of the first octet to be written
Part Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-5)	The value of the attribute to be written

Table 3.30: Format of Prepare Write Request

The Attribute Handle parameter shall be set to a valid handle.

The Value Offset parameter shall be set to the offset of the first octet where the Part Attribute Value parameter is to be written within the attribute value. The Value Offset parameter is based from zero; the first octet has an offset of zero, the second octet has an offset of one, etc.

The server shall respond with a *Prepare Write Response* if the handle is valid, the attribute has sufficient permissions to allow writing at this time, and the prepare queue has sufficient space.

Note: The Attribute Value validation is done when an Execute Write Request is received. Hence, any Invalid Offset or Invalid Attribute Value Length errors are generated when an Execute Write Request is received.

If the client has insufficient authorization to write the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authorization».

If the client has insufficient security to write the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Authentication».

If the client has an insufficient encryption key size to write the requested attribute then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption Key Size».

If the client has not enabled encryption, and encryption is required to write the requested attribute, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Insufficient Encryption».

If the server does not have sufficient space to queue this request then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Prepare Queue Full».

If the handle is invalid, then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Invalid Handle».

If the attribute value cannot be written then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Write Not Permitted».

The server shall not change the value of the attribute until an *Execute Write Request* is received.

If a *Prepare Write Request* was invalid, and therefore an *Error Response* has been issued, then this prepared write will be considered to have not been received. All existing prepared writes in the prepare queue shall not be affected by this invalid request.

### 3.4.6.2 Prepare Write Response

The *Prepare Write Response* is sent in response to a received *Prepare Write Request* and acknowledges that the value has been successfully received and placed in the prepare write queue.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x17 = Prepare Write Response
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute to be written
Value Offset	2	The offset of the first octet to be written
Part Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-5)	The value of the attribute to be written

Table 3.31: Format of Prepare Write Response

The attribute handle shall be set to the same value as in the corresponding *Prepare Write Request*.

The value offset and part attribute value shall be set to the same values as in the corresponding *Prepare Write Request*.

### 3.4.6.3 Execute Write Request

The *Execute Write Request* is used to request the server to write or cancel the write of all the prepared values currently held in the prepare queue from this client. This request shall be handled by the server as an atomic operation.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x18 = Execute Write Request
Flags	1	0x00 – Cancel all prepared writes 0x01 – Immediately write all pending prepared values

Table 3.32: Format of Execute Write Request

When the flags parameter is set to 0x01, values that were queued by the previous prepare write requests shall be written in the order they were received in the corresponding *Prepare Write Request*. The queue shall then be cleared, and an *Execute Write Response* shall be sent.

When the flags parameter is set to 0x00 all pending prepare write values shall be discarded for this client. The queue shall then be cleared, and an *Execute Write Response* shall be sent.

If the prepared Attribute Value exceeds the maximum valid length of the attribute value then all pending prepare write values shall be discarded for this client, the queue shall then be cleared, and an *Error Response* shall be sent with the error code «Invalid Attribute Value Length».

If the prepare Value Offset is greater than the current length of the attribute value then all pending prepare write values shall be discarded for this client, the queue shall be cleared and then an *Error Response* shall be sent with the «Invalid Offset».

If the prepare write requests cannot be written, due to an application error, the queue shall be cleared and then an *Error Response* shall be sent with a higher layer specification defined error code. The Attribute Handle In Error parameter shall be set to the attribute handle of the attribute from the prepare queue that caused this application error. The state of the attributes that were to be written from the prepare queue is not defined in this case.

#### 3.4.6.4 Execute Write Response

The *Execute Write Response* is sent in response to a received *Execute Write Request*.

Parameter	Size	Description
Attribute Upload	1	0x19 - Execute Write Response

Table 3.33: Format of Execute Write Response

The *Execute Write Response* shall be sent after the attributes are written. In case an action is taken in response to the write, an indication may be used once the action is complete.

### 3.4.7 Server Initiated

#### 3.4.7.1 Handle Value Notification

A server can send a notification of an attribute's value at any time.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x1B = Handle Value Notification
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute
Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-3)	The current value of the attribute

Table 3.34: Format of Handle Value Notification

The attribute handle shall be set to a valid handle.

The attribute value shall be set to the current value of attribute identified by the attribute handle.

If the attribute value is longer than (ATT\_MTU-3) octets, then only the first (ATT\_MTU-3) octets of this attributes value can be sent in a notification.

Note: for a client to get a long attribute, it would have to use the *Read Blob Request* following the receipt of this notification.

If the attribute handle or the attribute value is invalid, then this notification shall be ignored upon reception.

#### 3.4.7.2 Handle Value Indication

A server can send an indication of an attribute's value.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x1D = Handle Value Indication
Attribute Handle	2	The handle of the attribute
Attribute Value	0 to (ATT_MTU-3)	The current value of the attribute

Table 3.35: Format of Handle Value Indication

The attribute handle shall be set to a valid handle.

The attribute value shall be set to the current value of attribute identified by the attribute handle.

If the attribute value is longer than (ATT\_MTU-3) octets, then only the first (ATT\_MTU - 3) octets of this attributes value can be sent in an indication.

Note: For a client to get a long attribute, it would have to use the *Read Blob Request* following the receipt of this indication.

The client shall send a *Handle Value Confirmation* in response to a *Handle Value Indication*. No further indications to this client shall occur until the confirmation has been received by the server.

If the attribute handle or the attribute value is invalid, the client shall send a handle value confirmation in response and shall discard the handle and value from the received indication.

#### 3.4.7.3 Handle Value Confirmation

The *Handle Value Confirmation* is sent in response to a received *Handle Value Indication* and confirms that the client has received an indication of the given attribute.

Parameter	Size (octets)	Description
Attribute Opcode	1	0x1E = Handle Value Confirmation

Table 3.36: Format of Handle Value Confirmation

### 3.4.8 Attribute Opcode Summary

Table 3.37 gives a summary of the attribute protocol PDUs.

Attribute PDU Name	Attribute Opcode	Parameters
Error Response	0x01	Request Opcode in Error, Attribute Handle In Error, Error Code
Exchange MTU Request	0x02	Client Rx MTU
Exchange MTU Response	0x03	Server Rx MTU
Find Information Request	0x04	Starting Handle, Ending Handle, UUID
Find Information Response	0x05	Format, Information Data
Find By Type Value Request	0x06	Starting Handle, Ending Handle, Attribute Type, Attribute Value
Find By Type Value Response	0x07	Handles Information List
Read By Type Request	0x08	Starting Handle, Ending Handle, UUID
Read By Type Response	0x09	Length, Attribute Data List
Read Request	0x0A	Attribute Handle
Read Response	0x0B	Attribute Value
Read Blob Request	0x0C	Attribute Handle, Value Offset
Read Blob Response	0x0D	Part Attribute Value
Read Multiple Request	0x0E	Handle Set
Read Multiple Response	0x0F	Value Set
Read by Group Type Request	0x10	Start Handle, Ending Handle, UUID
Read by Group Type Response	0x11	Length, Attribute Data List
Write Request	0x12	Attribute Handle, Attribute Value
Write Response	0x13	-

Table 3.37: Attribute Protocol Summary

*Attribute Protocol (ATT)*

Attribute PDU Name	Attribute Opcode	Parameters
<b>Write Command</b>	0x52	Attribute Handle, Attribute Value
<b>Prepare Write Request</b>	0x16	Attribute Handle, Value Offset, Part Attribute Value
<b>Prepare Write Response</b>	0x17	Attribute Handle, Value Offset, Part Attribute Value
<b>Execute Write Request</b>	0x18	Flags
<b>Execute Write Response</b>	0x19	-
<b>Handle Value Notification</b>	0x1B	Attribute Handle, Attribute Value
<b>Handle Value Indication</b>	0x1D	Attribute Handle, Attribute Value
<b>Handle Value Confirmation</b>	0x1E	
<b>Signed Write Command</b>	0xD2	Attribute Handle, Attribute Value, Authentication Signature

Table 3.37: Attribute Protocol Summary

### 3.4.9 Attribute PDU Response Summary

**Table 3.38** gives a summary of the Attribute PDU Method responses that are allowed. Each method indicates the method that should be sent as a successful response, and whether an Error Response can be sent in response instead. If an Error Response can be sent, then the table also indicates the Error Codes that are valid within this Error Response for the given method.

Attribute PDU Method	Successful Response	Error Response Allowed	Error Response Error Codes
<b>Exchange MTU Request</b>	Exchange MTU Response	Yes	Request Not Supported
<b>Find Information Request</b>	Find Information Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Attribute Not Found
<b>Find By Type Value Request</b>	Find By Type Value Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Request Not Supported, Attribute Not Found
<b>Read By Type Request</b>	Read By Type Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Request Not Supported, Attribute Not Found, Insufficient Authorization, Insufficient Authentication, Insufficient Encryption, Insufficient Encryption Key Size, Read Not Permitted, Application Error
<b>Read Request</b>	Read Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Insufficient Authorization, Insufficient Authentication, Insufficient Encryption, Insufficient Encryption Key Size, Read Not Permitted, Application Error

Table 3.38: Attribute Request and Response Summary

*Attribute Protocol (ATT)*

Attribute PDU Method	Successful Response	Error Response Allowed	Error Response Error Codes
<b>Read Blob Request</b>	Read Blob Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Request Not Supported, Insufficient Authorization, Insufficient Authentication, Insufficient Encryption, Insufficient Encryption Key Size, Read Not Permitted, Invalid Offset, Attribute Not Long, Application Error
<b>Read Multiple Request</b>	Read Multiple Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Request Not Supported, Insufficient Authorization, Insufficient Authentication, Insufficient Encryption, Insufficient Encryption Key Size, Read Not Permitted, Application Error
<b>Read by Group Type Request</b>	Read by Group Type Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Request Not Supported, Attribute Not Found, Insufficient Authorization, Insufficient Authentication, Insufficient Encryption, Insufficient Encryption Key Size Read Not Permitted, Unsupported Group Type, Application Error
<b>Write Request</b>	Write Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Request Not Supported, Insufficient Authorization, Insufficient Authentication, Insufficient Encryption, Insufficient Encryption Key Size, Write Not Permitted, Invalid Attribute Value Length, Application Error

Table 3.38: Attribute Request and Response Summary

*Attribute Protocol (ATT)*

Attribute PDU Method	Successful Response	Error Response Allowed	Error Response Error Codes
<b>Write Command</b>	N/A	No	
<b>Signed Write Command</b>	N/A	No	
<b>Prepare Write Request</b>	Prepare Write Response	Yes	Invalid Handle, Request Not Supported, Insufficient Authorization, Insufficient Authentication, Write Not Permitted, Prepare Queue Full, Insufficient Encryption, Insufficient Encryption Key Size, Application Error
<b>Execute Write Request</b>	Execute Write Response	Yes	Application Error, Invalid Offset, Invalid Attribute Value Length
<b>Handle Value Notification</b>	N/A	No	
<b>Handle Value Indication</b>	Handle Value Confirmation	No	

Table 3.38: Attribute Request and Response Summary

## 4 SECURITY CONSIDERATIONS

The attribute protocol can be used to access information that may require both authorization and an authenticated and encrypted physical link before an attribute can be read or written.

If such a request is issued when the client has not been authorized to access this information, the server shall send an *Error Response* with the error code set to «Insufficient Authorization». The authorization requirements for access to a given attribute are not defined in this specification. Each device implementation will determine how authorization occurs. Authorization procedures are defined in GAP, and may be further refined in a higher layer specification.

If such a request is issued when the physical link is unauthenticated, the server shall send an *Error Response* with the error code set to «Insufficient Authentication». A client wanting to read or write this attribute can then request that the physical link be authenticated, and once this has been completed, send the request again.

The attribute protocol can be used to notify or indicate the value of an attribute that may require an authenticated and encrypted physical link before an attribute notification or indication is performed. A server wanting to notify or indicate this attribute can then request that the physical link be authenticated, and once this has been completed, send the notification or indication.

The list of attributes that a device supports is not considered private or confidential information, and therefore the *Find Information Request* shall always be permitted. This implies that an «Insufficient Authorization» or «Insufficient Authentication» error code shall not be used in an *Error Response* for a *Find Information Request*.

For example, an attribute value may be allowed to be read by any device, but only written by an authenticated device. An implementation should take this into account, and not assume that just because it can read an attribute's value, it will also be able to write the value. Similarly, just because an attribute value can be written, does not mean that an attribute value can also be read. Each individual attribute could have different security requirements.

When a client accesses an attribute, the order of checks that are performed on the server will have security implications. A server shall check authentication and authorization requirements before any other check is performed.

Note: For example, if the authentication and authorization requirement checks are not performed first then the size of an attribute could be determined by performing repeated read blob requests on an attribute that a client does not have access to, because either an «Invalid Offset» error code or «Insufficient Authentication» error codes would be returned.



# Core System Package [Host volume]

Part G

## GENERIC ATTRIBUTE PROFILE (GATT)

***This specification defines the Generic Attribute Profile that describes a service framework using the Attribute Protocol for discovering services, and for reading and writing characteristic values on a peer device.***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>533</b>
1.1	Scope .....	533
1.2	Profile Dependency .....	533
1.3	Conformance .....	533
1.4	Bluetooth Specification Release Compatibility .....	534
1.5	Conventions .....	534
<b>2</b>	<b>Profile Overview .....</b>	<b>535</b>
2.1	Protocol Stack .....	535
2.2	Configurations and Roles .....	535
2.3	User Requirements and Scenarios .....	536
2.4	Profile Fundamentals .....	536
2.5	Attribute Protocol .....	537
2.5.1	Overview .....	537
2.5.2	Attribute Caching .....	538
2.5.3	Attribute Grouping .....	539
2.5.4	UUIDs .....	540
2.6	GATT Profile Hierarchy .....	541
2.6.1	Overview .....	541
2.6.2	Service .....	542
2.6.3	Included Services .....	542
2.6.4	Characteristic .....	543
2.7	Configured Broadcast .....	543
<b>3</b>	<b>Service Interoperability Requirements .....</b>	<b>544</b>
3.1	Service Definition .....	544
3.2	Include Definition .....	545
3.3	Characteristic Definition .....	545
3.3.1	Characteristic Declaration .....	546
3.3.1.1	Characteristic Properties .....	547
3.3.1.2	Characteristic Value Attribute Handle .....	547
3.3.1.3	Characteristic UUID .....	547
3.3.2	Characteristic Value Declaration .....	548
3.3.3	Characteristic Descriptor Declarations .....	548
3.3.3.1	Characteristic Extended Properties .....	549
3.3.3.2	Characteristic User Description .....	550
3.3.3.3	Client Characteristic Configuration .....	550
3.3.3.4	Server Characteristic Configuration .....	552
3.3.3.5	Characteristic Presentation Format .....	553
3.3.3.6	Characteristic Aggregate Format .....	556
3.4	Summary of GATT Profile Attribute Types .....	557

<b>4 GATT Feature Requirements.....</b>	<b>558</b>
4.1 Overview .....	558
4.2 Feature Support and Procedure Mapping .....	558
4.3 Server Configuration .....	560
4.3.1 Exchange MTU .....	560
4.4 Primary Service Discovery.....	561
4.4.1 Discover All Primary Services .....	561
4.4.2 Discover Primary Service by Service UUID .....	562
4.5 Relationship Discovery .....	564
4.5.1 Find Included Services.....	564
4.6 Characteristic Discovery .....	565
4.6.1 Discover All Characteristics of a Service .....	565
4.6.2 Discover Characteristics by UUID .....	567
4.7 Characteristic Descriptor Discovery.....	568
4.7.1 Discover All Characteristic Descriptors .....	568
4.8 Characteristic Value Read .....	570
4.8.1 Read Characteristic Value.....	570
4.8.2 Read Using Characteristic UUID.....	570
4.8.3 Read Long Characteristic Values.....	571
4.8.4 Read Multiple Characteristic Values .....	572
4.9 Characteristic Value Write.....	573
4.9.1 Write Without Response .....	573
4.9.2 Signed Write Without Response .....	574
4.9.3 Write Characteristic Value .....	574
4.9.4 Write Long Characteristic Values .....	575
4.9.5 Reliable Writes .....	576
4.10 Characteristic Value Notification .....	578
4.10.1 Notifications .....	578
4.11 Characteristic Value Indications .....	579
4.11.1 Indications.....	579
4.12 Characteristic Descriptors.....	580
4.12.1 Read Characteristic Descriptors .....	580
4.12.2 Read Long Characteristic Descriptors .....	580
4.12.3 Write Characteristic Descriptors.....	581
4.12.4 Write Long Characteristic Descriptors.....	582
4.13 GATT Procedure Mapping to ATT Protocol Opcodes .....	583
4.14 Procedure Timeouts.....	585

<b>5</b>	<b>L2CAP Interoperability Requirements.....</b>	<b>586</b>
5.1	BR/EDR L2CAP Interoperability Requirements .....	586
5.1.1	ATT_MTU .....	586
5.1.2	BR/EDR Channel Requirements .....	586
5.1.3	BR/EDR Channel Establishment Collisions .....	587
5.2	LE L2CAP Interoperability Requirements .....	587
5.2.1	ATT_MTU .....	587
5.2.2	LE Channel Requirements .....	588
<b>6</b>	<b>GAP Interoperability Requirements.....</b>	<b>589</b>
6.1	BR/EDR GAP Interoperability Requirements .....	589
6.1.1	Connection Establishment.....	589
6.2	LE GAP Interoperability Requirements .....	589
6.2.1	Connection Establishment.....	589
6.2.2	Profile Roles .....	589
6.3	Disconnected Events .....	590
6.3.1	Notifications and Indications While Disconnected.....	590
<b>7</b>	<b>Defined Generic Attribute Profile Service.....</b>	<b>591</b>
7.1	Service Changed .....	591
<b>8</b>	<b>Security Considerations.....</b>	<b>593</b>
8.1	Authentication Requirements .....	593
8.2	Authorization Requirements .....	594
<b>9</b>	<b>SDP Interoperability Requirements .....</b>	<b>595</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>596</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Appendix: Example Attribute Server Attributes.....</b>	<b>597</b>



# 1 INTRODUCTION

## 1.1 SCOPE

The Generic Attribute Profile (GATT) defines a service framework using the Attribute Protocol. This framework defines procedures and formats of services and their characteristics. The procedures defined include discovering, reading, writing, notifying and indicating characteristics, as well as configuring the broadcast of characteristics.

## 1.2 PROFILE DEPENDENCY

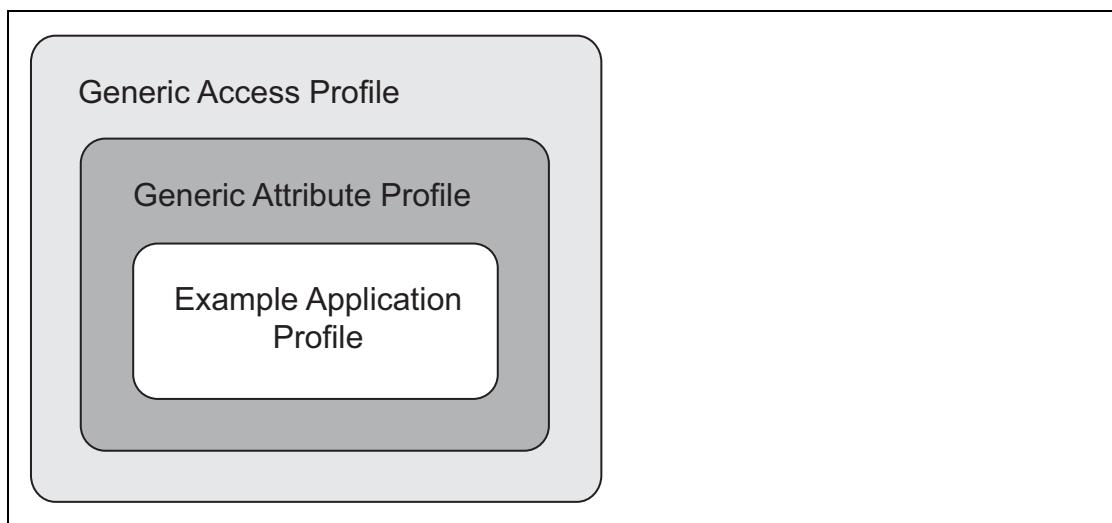


Figure 1.1: Profile dependencies

Figure 1.1 depicts the structure and the dependencies of the profiles. A profile is dependent upon another profile if it re-uses parts of that profile by implicitly or explicitly referencing it.

## 1.3 CONFORMANCE

If conformance to this profile is claimed, all capabilities indicated as mandatory for this profile shall be supported in the specified manner (process-mandatory). This also applies for all optional and conditional capabilities for which support is indicated. All mandatory capabilities, and optional and conditional capabilities for which support is indicated, are subject to verification as part of the Bluetooth qualification program.

## 1.4 BLUETOOTH SPECIFICATION RELEASE COMPATIBILITY

This specification can be used with Bluetooth Core Specification Version 1.2 or later when using the profile on the BR/EDR physical link and Bluetooth Core Specification Version 4.0 or later when using the profile on the LE physical link.

## 1.5 CONVENTIONS

In this specification the use of literal terms such as procedure, PDUs, opcodes or function names appear in italics. Specific names of fields in structures, packets, etc. also appear in italics. The use of « » (e.g. «Primary Service») indicate a Bluetooth SIG-defined UUID.

## 2 PROFILE OVERVIEW

The GATT profile is designed to be used by an application or another profile, so that a client can communicate with a server. The server contains a number of attributes, and the GATT Profile defines how to use the Attribute Protocol to discover, read, write and obtain indications of these attributes, as well as configuring broadcast of attributes.

### 2.1 PROTOCOL STACK

Figure 2.1 shows the peer protocols used by this profile.

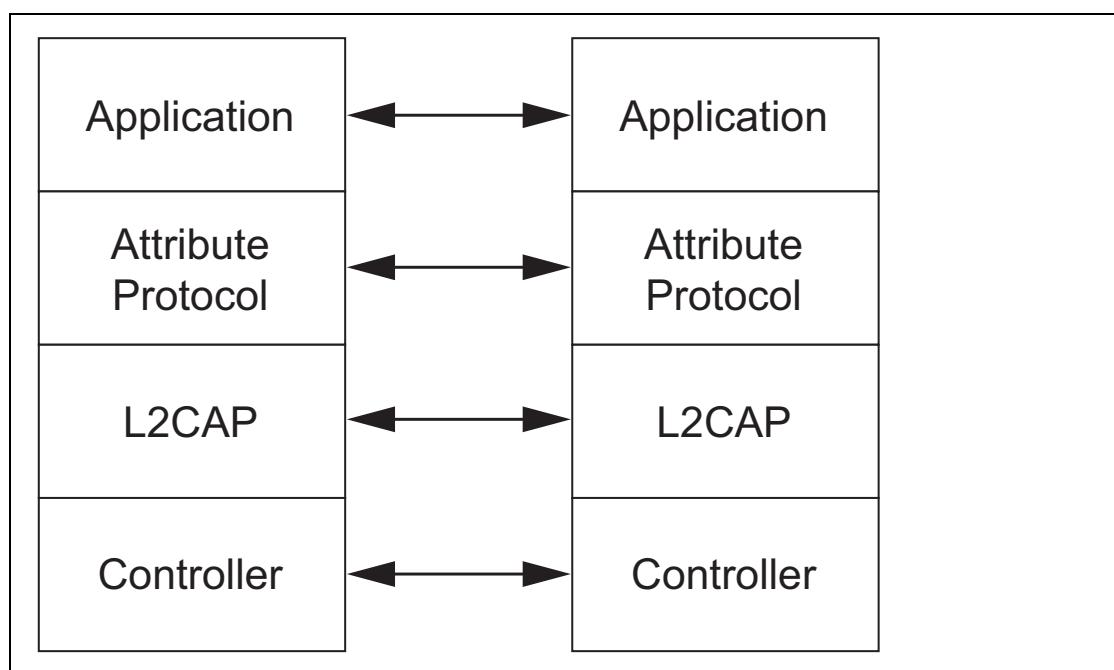


Figure 2.1: Protocol model

### 2.2 CONFIGURATIONS AND ROLES

The following roles are defined for devices that implement this profile:

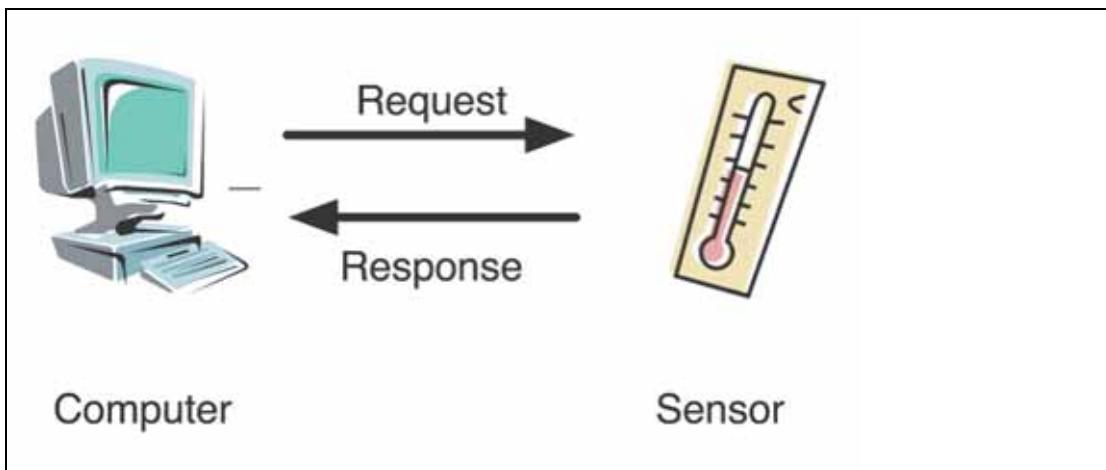
**Client**—This is the device that initiates commands and requests towards the server and can receive responses, indications and notifications sent by the server.

**Server**—This is the device that accepts incoming commands and requests from the client and sends responses, indications and notifications to a client.

Note: The roles are not fixed to the device. The roles are determined when a device initiates a defined procedure, and they are released when the procedure ends.

A device can act in both roles at the same time.

An example of configurations illustrating the roles for this profile is depicted in [Figure 2.2](#).



*Figure 2.2: Examples of configuration*

In [Figure 2.2](#), the computer is the temperature service client and the sensor is the temperature service server. The computer initiates procedures to configure the sensor or to read the sensor values. In this example the sensor provides information about the characteristics the sensor device exposes as part of the temperature service and may permit some characteristics to be written. Also, the sensor responds to read requests with the appropriate values.

## 2.3 USER REQUIREMENTS AND SCENARIOS

The following scenarios are covered by this profile:

- Exchanging configuration
- Discovery of services and characteristics on a device
- Reading a characteristic value
- Writing a characteristic value
- Notification of a characteristic value
- Indication of a characteristic value

## 2.4 PROFILE FUNDAMENTALS

This profile can be used over any physical link, using the Attribute Protocol L2CAP channel, known as the ATT Bearer. Here is a brief summary of lower layer requirements communication between the client and the server.

- An ATT Bearer is established using “Channel Establishment” as defined in [Section 6](#).

- The profile roles are not tied to the controller master/slave roles.
- On an LE Physical link, use of security features such as authorization, authentication and encryption are optional. On a BR/EDR physical link encryption is mandatory.
- Multi-octet fields within the GATT Profile shall be sent least significant octet first (little endian).

## 2.5 ATTRIBUTE PROTOCOL

The GATT Profile requires the implementation of the [Attribute Protocol \(ATT\)](#) and the required Attribute opcodes indicated in [Section 4.2](#).

### 2.5.1 Overview

The GATT Profile uses the Attribute Protocol to transport data in the form of commands, requests, responses, indications, notifications and confirmations between devices. This data is contained in Attribute Protocol PDUs.

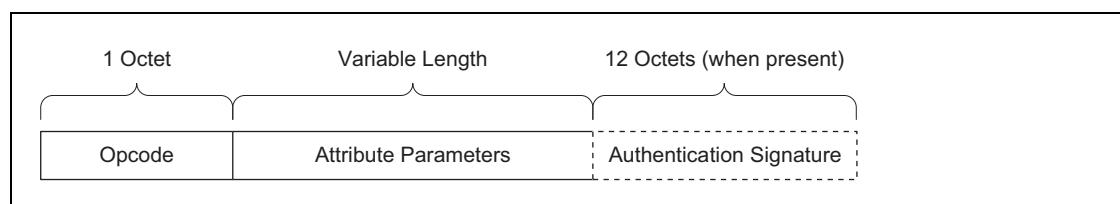


Figure 2.3: Attribute Protocol PDU

The *Opcodes* contains the specific command, request, response, indication, notification or confirmation opcode and a flag for authentication. The *Attribute Parameters* contain data for the specific command or request or the data returned in a response, indication or notification. The *Authentication Signature* is optional and is described in [\[Vol. 3\] Part F, Section 3.3.1](#).

Attribute Protocol commands and requests act on values stored in Attributes on the server device. An Attribute is composed of four parts: *Attribute Handle*, *Attribute Type*, *Attribute Value*, and *Attribute Permissions*. [Figure 2.4](#) shows a logical representation of an Attribute. The actual representation for a given implementation is specific to that implementation.

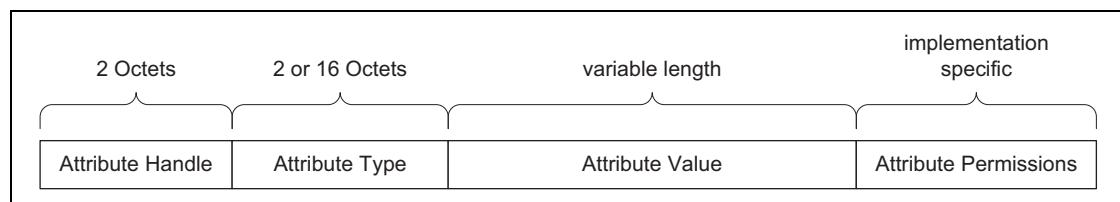


Figure 2.4: Logical Attribute Representation

The *Attribute Handle* is an index corresponding to a specific Attribute. The *Attribute Type* is a UUID that describes the *Attribute Value*. The *Attribute Value* is the data described by the *Attribute Type* and indexed by the *Attribute Handle*. The Attributes are ordered by increasing *Attribute Handle* values. *Attribute Handle* values may begin at any value between 0x0001 and 0xFFFF. Although the *Attribute Handle* values are in increasing order, following *Attribute Handle* values may differ by more than one. That is to say there may be gaps between successive *Attribute Handles*.

*Attribute Permissions* is part of the Attribute that cannot be read from or written to using the Attribute Protocol. It is used by the server to determine whether read or write access is permitted for a given attribute. *Attribute Permissions* are established by the GATT profile, a higher layer profile or are implementation specific if not specified.

## 2.5.2 Attribute Caching

Attribute caching is an optimization that allows the client to discover the Attribute information such as *Attribute Handles* used by the server once and use the same Attribute information across reconnections without rediscovery. Without caching the Attribute information, the client shall rediscover the *Attribute* information at each reconnection. With caching, time is saved and a significant amount of packets exchanged between the client and server is not required. The Attribute information that shall be cached by a client is the *Attribute Handles* of all server attributes and the GATT service characteristics values.

*Attribute Handles* used by the server should not change over time. This means that once an *Attribute Handle* is discovered by a client the *Attribute Handle* for that Attribute should not be changed.

Some circumstances may cause servers to change the *Attribute Handles* used for services, perhaps due to a factory reset or a firmware upgrade procedure being performed. The following is only required on the server if the services on the server can be added, modified or removed. If GATT based services on the server cannot be changed during the usable lifetime of the device, the *Service Changed* characteristic shall not exist on the server and the client does not need to ever perform service discovery after the initial service discovery for that server.

To support caching when a server supports changes in GATT based services, an indication is sent by the server to clients when a service is added, removed, or modified on the server. A GATT based service is considered modified if the binding of the *Attribute Handles* to the associated Attributes grouped within a service definition are changed. Any change to the GATT service definition characteristic values other than the *Service Changed* characteristic value itself shall also be considered a modification.

For clients that have a trusted relationship (i.e. bond) with the server, the attribute cache is valid across connections. For clients with a trusted relationship

and not in a connection when a service change occurs, the server shall send an indication when the client reconnects to the server. For clients that do not have a trusted relationship with the server, the attribute cache is valid only during the connection. Clients without a trusted relationship shall receive an indication when the service change occurs only during the current connection.

Note: Clients without a trusted relationship must perform service discovery on each connection if the server supports the *Service Changed* characteristic.

The server shall send a *Handle Value Indication* containing the range of affected *Attribute Handles* that shall be considered invalid in the client's attribute cache. The start *Attribute Handle* shall be the start *Attribute Handle* of the service definition containing the change and the end *Attribute Handle* shall be the last *Attribute Handle* of the service definition containing the change. The value in the indication is composed of two 16-bit *Attribute Handles* concatenated to indicate the affected *Attribute Handle* range.

Note: A server may set the affected *Attribute Handle* range to 0x0001 to 0xFFFF to indicate to the client to rediscover the entire set of *Attribute Handles* on the server.

The client, upon receiving a Handle Value Indication containing the range of affected Attribute Handles, shall consider the attribute cache invalid over the affected Attribute Handle range. Any outstanding request transaction shall be considered invalid if the Attribute Handle is contained within the affected Attribute Handle range. The client must perform service discovery before the client uses any service that has an attribute within the affected Attribute Handle range.

Once the server has received the Handle Value Confirmation, the server can consider the client to be aware of the updated Attribute Handles.

The client shall consider the affected *Attribute Handle* range to be invalid in its attribute cache and perform the discovery procedures to restore the attribute cache. The server shall store service changed information for all bonded devices.

### 2.5.3 Attribute Grouping

Generic attribute profile defines grouping of attributes for three attribute types: «Primary Service», «Secondary Service» and «Characteristic». A group begins with a declaration, and ends as defined in [Section 3.1](#) for services and [Section 3.3](#) for characteristics. Not all of the grouping attributes can be used in the ATT Read By Group Type Request. The «Primary Service» and «Secondary Service» grouping types may be used in the Read By Group Type Request. The «Characteristic» grouping type shall not be used in the ATT Read By Group Type Request.

## 2.5.4 UUIDs

All 16-bit UUIDs shall be contained in exactly 2 octets. All 128-bit UUIDs shall be contained in exactly 16 octets.

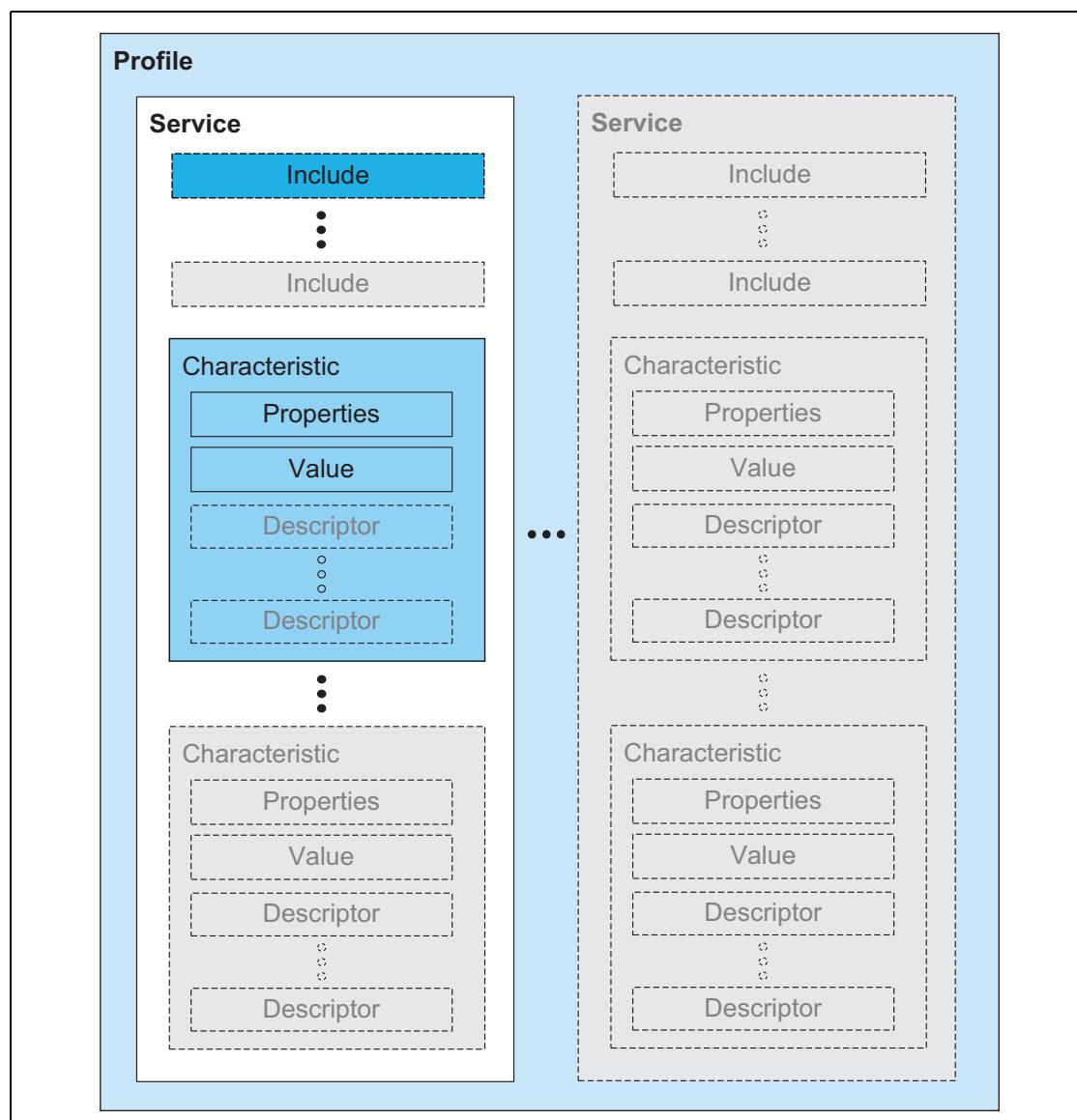
All 32-bit UUIDs shall be converted to 128-bit UUIDs when the UUID is contained in an ATT PDU. See [\[Vol. 3\] Part F, Section 3.2.1](#) for the method of conversion.

## 2.6 GATT PROFILE HIERARCHY

## 2.6.1 Overview

The GATT Profile specifies the structure in which profile data is exchanged. This structure defines basic elements such as services and characteristics, used in a profile. All of the elements are contained by Attributes. Attributes used in the Attribute Protocol are containers that carry this profile data.

The top level of the hierarchy is a profile. A profile is composed of one or more services necessary to fulfill a use case. A service is composed of characteristics or references to other services. Each characteristic contains a value and may contain optional information about the value. The service and characteristic and the components of the characteristic (i.e. value and descriptors) contain the profile data and are all stored in Attributes on the server.



*Figure 2.5: GATT Profile hierarchy*

## 2.6.2 Service

A service is a collection of data and associated behaviors to accomplish a particular function or feature. In GATT, a service is defined by its service definition. A service definition may contain referenced services, mandatory characteristics and optional characteristics.

To maintain backward compatibility with earlier clients, later versions of a service definition can only add new referenced services or optional characteristics. Later versions of a service definition are forbidden from changing behaviors from previous versions of the service definition.

There are two types of services: primary service and secondary service. A primary service is a service that exposes the primary usable functionality of this device. A primary service can be included by another service. Primary services can be discovered using Primary Service Discovery procedures. A secondary service is a service that is only intended to be referenced from a primary service or another secondary service or other higher layer specification. A secondary service is only relevant in the context of the entity that references it.

The determination of whether a service is either a primary or secondary service can be mandated by a higher layer specification.

Services may be used in one or more higher layer specifications to fulfill a particular use case.

The service definition is described in [Section 3.1](#).

## 2.6.3 Included Services

An included service is a method to reference another service definition existing on the server into the service being defined. To include another service, an include definition is used at the beginning of the service definition. When a service definition uses an include definition to reference the included service, the entire included service definition becomes part of the new service definition. This includes all the included services and characteristics of the included service. The included service still exists as an independent service. A service that is included by another service shall not be changed by the act of inclusion or by the including service. There are no limits to the number of include definitions or the depth of nested includes in a service definition.

The include definition is described in [Section 3.2](#).

## 2.6.4 Characteristic

A characteristic is a value used in a service along with properties and configuration information about how the value is accessed and information about how the value is displayed or represented. In GATT, a characteristic is defined by its characteristic definition. A characteristic definition contains a characteristic declaration, characteristic properties, and a value and may contain descriptors that describe the value or permit configuration of the server with respect to the characteristic.

The characteristic definition is described in [Section 3.3](#).

## 2.7 CONFIGURED BROADCAST

For LE physical links, Configured Broadcast is a method for a client to indicate to a server which *Characteristic Value* shall be broadcast in the advertising data when the server is executing the broadcast mode procedure. For BR/EDR physical links, Configured Broadcast is not supported.

To configure a *Characteristic Value* to be broadcast by the server when in broadcast mode, the client sets the broadcast configuration bit described in [Section 3.3.3.3](#). The frequency of the broadcast is part of the service or characteristic behavior definition.

## 3 SERVICE INTEROPERABILITY REQUIREMENTS

### 3.1 SERVICE DEFINITION

A service definition shall contain a service declaration and may contain include definitions and characteristic definitions. The service definition ends before the next service declaration or after the maximum *Attribute Handle* is reached. Service definitions appear on the server in an order based on *Attribute Handle*.

All include definitions and characteristic definitions contained within the service definition are considered to be part of the service. All include definitions shall immediately follow the service declaration and precede any characteristic definitions. A service definition may have zero or more include definitions. All characteristic definitions shall be immediately following the last include definition or in the event of no include definitions, immediately following the service declaration. A service definition may have zero or more characteristic definitions. There is no upper limit for include or characteristic definitions.

A service declaration is an Attribute with the *Attribute Type* set to the UUID for «Primary Service» or «Secondary Service». The *Attribute Value* shall be the 16-bit Bluetooth UUID or 128-bit UUID for the service, known as the service UUID. A client shall support the use of both 16-bit and 128-bit UUIDs. A client may ignore any service definition with an unknown service UUID. An unknown service UUID is a UUID for an unsupported service. The *Attribute Permissions* shall be read-only and shall not require authentication or authorization.

When multiple services exist, services definitions with service declarations using 16-bit Bluetooth UUID should be grouped together (i.e. listed sequentially) and services definitions with service declarations using 128-bit UUID should be grouped together.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permission
0xNNNN	0x2800 – UUID for «Primary Service» OR 0x2801 for «Secondary Service»	16-bit Bluetooth UUID or 128-bit UUID for Service	Read Only, No Authentication, No Authorization

Table 3.1: Service Declaration

A device or higher level specification may have multiple service definitions and may have multiple service definitions with the same service UUID.

All Attributes on a Server shall either contain a service declaration or exist within a service definition.

Service definitions contained in a server may appear in any order; a client shall not assume the order of service definitions on a server.

## 3.2 INCLUDE DEFINITION

An include definition shall contain only one include declaration.

The include declaration is an Attribute with the *Attribute Type* set to the UUID for «Include». The *Attribute Value* shall be set to the included service *Attribute Handle*, the End Group Handle, and the service *UUID*. The Service UUID shall only be present when the UUID is a 16-bit Bluetooth UUID. The *Attribute Permissions* shall be read only and not require authentication or authorization.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value			Attribute Permission
0xNNNN	0x2802 – UUID for «Include»	Included Service Attribute Handle	End Group Handle	Service UUID	Read Only, No Authentication, No Authorization

Table 3.2: Include Declaration

A server shall not contain a service definition with an include definition to another service that references the original service. This applies to each of the services the included definition references. This is referred to as a circular reference.

If the client detects a circular reference or detects nested include declarations to a greater level than it expects, it should terminate the ATT Bearer.

## 3.3 CHARACTERISTIC DEFINITION

A characteristic definition shall contain a characteristic declaration, a Characteristic Value declaration and may contain characteristic descriptor declarations. A characteristic definition ends at the start or the next characteristic declaration or service declaration or after the maximum *Attribute Handle*. Characteristic definitions appear on the server within a service definition in an order based on *Attribute Handle*.

Each declaration above is contained in a separate Attribute. The two required declarations are the characteristic declaration and the Characteristic Value declaration. The Characteristic Value declaration shall exist immediately following the characteristic declaration. Any optional characteristic descriptor declarations are placed after the Characteristic Value declaration. The order of the optional characteristic descriptor declarations is not significant.

A characteristic definition may be defined to concatenate several Characteristic Values into a single aggregated Characteristic Value. This may be used to optimize read and writes of multiple Characteristic Values through the reading and writing of a single aggregated Characteristic Value. This type of characteristic definition is the same as a normal characteristic definition. The characteristic declaration shall use a characteristic UUID that is unique to the aggregated

characteristic definition. The aggregated characteristic definition may also contain a characteristic aggregate format descriptor that describes the display format of the aggregated Characteristic Value.

### 3.3.1 Characteristic Declaration

A characteristic declaration is an Attribute with the Attribute Type set to the UUID for «Characteristic» and *Attribute Value* set to the Characteristic Properties, Characteristic Value *Attribute Handle* and Characteristic UUID. The Attribute Permissions shall be readable and not require authentication or authorization.

The characteristic declaration *Attribute Value* shall not change while the server has a trusted relationship with any client.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Types	Attribute Value			Attribute Permissions
0xNNNN	0x2803–UUID for «Characteristic»	Characteristic Properties	Characteristic Value Attribute Handle	Characteristic UUID	Read Only, No Authentication, No Authorization

Table 3.3: Characteristic declaration

The *Attribute Value* of a characteristic declaration is read only.

Attribute Value	Size	Description
Characteristic Properties	1 octets	Bit field of characteristic properties
Characteristic Value Handle	2 octets	Handle of the Attribute containing the value of this characteristic
Characteristic UUID	2 or 16 octets	16-bit Bluetooth UUID or 128-bit UUID for Characteristic Value

Table 3.4: Attribute Value Field in characteristic declaration

A service may have multiple characteristic definitions with the same Characteristic UUID.

Within a service definition, some characteristics may be mandatory and those characteristics shall be located after the include declarations and before any optional characteristics within the service definition. A client shall not assume any order of those characteristics that are mandatory or any order of those characteristics that are optional within a service definition. Whenever possible and within the requirements stated earlier, characteristics definitions with characteristic declarations using 16-bit Bluetooth UUIDs should be group together (i.e. listed sequentially) and characteristics definitions with characteristic declarations using 128-bit UUIDs should be grouped together.

### 3.3.1.1 Characteristic Properties

The Characteristic Properties bit field determines how the Characteristic Value can be used, or how the characteristic descriptors (see Section 3.3.3) can be accessed. If the bits defined in Table 3.5 are set, the action described is permitted. Multiple Characteristic Properties can be set.

These bits shall be set according to the procedures this characteristic supports, without regard to security requirements.

Properties	Value	Description
Broadcast	0x01	If set, permits broadcasts of the Characteristic Value using Server Characteristic Configuration Descriptor. If set, the Server Characteristic Configuration Descriptor shall exist.
Read	0x02	If set, permits reads of the Characteristic Value using procedures defined in <a href="#">Section 4.8</a>
Write Without Response	0x04	If set, permit writes of the Characteristic Value without response using procedures defined in <a href="#">Section 4.9.1</a> .
Write	0x08	If set, permits writes of the Characteristic Value with response using procedures defined in <a href="#">Section 4.9.3</a> or <a href="#">Section 4.9.4</a> .
Notify	0x10	If set, permits notifications of a Characteristic Value without acknowledgement using the procedure defined in <a href="#">Section 4.10</a> . If set, the Client Characteristic Configuration Descriptor shall exist.
Indicate	0x20	If set, permits indications of a Characteristic Value with acknowledgement using the procedure defined in <a href="#">Section 4.11</a> . If set, the Client Characteristic Configuration Descriptor shall exist.
Authenticated Signed Writes	0x40	If set, permits signed writes to the Characteristic Value using the procedure defined in <a href="#">Section 4.9.2</a> .
Extended Properties	0x80	If set, additional characteristic properties are defined in the Characteristic Extended Properties Descriptor defined in <a href="#">Section 3.3.3.1</a> . If set, the Characteristic Extended Properties Descriptor shall exist.

Table 3.5: Characteristic Properties bit field

### 3.3.1.2 Characteristic Value Attribute Handle

The Characteristic Value Attribute Handle field is the *Attribute Handle* of the Attribute that contains the *Characteristic Value*.

### 3.3.1.3 Characteristic UUID

The *Characteristic UUID* field is a 16-bit Bluetooth UUID or 128-bit UUID that describes the type of *Characteristic Value*. A client shall support the use of both 16-bit and 128-bit *Characteristic UUIDs*. A client may ignore any characteristic definition with an unknown *Characteristic UUID*. An unknown characteristic UUID is a UUID for an unsupported characteristic.

### 3.3.2 Characteristic Value Declaration

The *Characteristic Value* declaration contains the value of the characteristic. It is the first Attribute after the characteristic declaration. All characteristic definitions shall have a *Characteristic Value* declaration.

A Characteristic Value declaration is an Attribute with the Attribute Type set to the 16-bit Bluetooth or 128-bit UUID for the Characteristic Value used in the characteristic declaration. The *Attribute Value* is set to the *Characteristic Value*. The *Attribute Permissions* are specified by the service or may be implementation specific if not specified otherwise.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xNNNN	0xuuuu – 16-bit Bluetooth UUID or 128-bit UUID for Characteristic UUID	Characteristic Value	Higher layer profile or implementation specific

Table 3.6: Characteristic Value declaration

### 3.3.3 Characteristic Descriptor Declarations

Characteristic descriptors are used to contain related information about the *Characteristic Value*. The GATT profile defines a standard set of characteristic descriptors that can be used by higher layer profiles. Higher layer profiles may define additional characteristic descriptors that are profile specific. Each characteristic descriptor is identified by the characteristic descriptor UUID. A client shall support the use of both 16-bit and 128-bit characteristic descriptor UUIDs. A client may ignore any characteristic descriptor declaration with an unknown characteristic descriptor UUID. An unknown characteristic descriptor UUID is a UUID for an unsupported characteristic descriptor.

Characteristic descriptors if present within a characteristic definition shall follow the *Characteristic Value* declaration. The characteristic descriptor declaration may appear in any order within the characteristic definition. The client shall not assume the order in which a characteristic descriptor declaration appears in a characteristic definition following the *Characteristic Value* declaration.

Characteristic descriptor declaration permissions are defined by a higher layer profile or are implementation specific. A client shall not assume all characteristic descriptor declarations are readable.

### 3.3.3.1 Characteristic Extended Properties

The *Characteristic Extended Properties* declaration is a descriptor that defines additional *Characteristic Properties*. If the *Extended Properties* bit of the *Characteristic Properties* is set then this characteristic descriptor shall exist. The characteristic descriptor may occur in any position within the characteristic definition after the Characteristic Value. Only one *Characteristic Extended Properties* declaration shall exist in a characteristic definition.

The characteristic descriptor is contained in an Attribute and the *Attribute Type* shall be set to the UUID for «Characteristic Extended Properties» and the *Attribute Value* shall be the *Characteristic Extended Properties Bit Field*. The *Attribute Permissions* shall be readable without authentication and authorization being required.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xNNNN	0x2900 – UUID for «Characteristic Extended Properties»	Characteristic Extended Properties Bit Field	Read Only, No Authentication, No Authorization

Table 3.7: *Characteristic Extended Properties declaration*

The *Characteristic Extended Properties* bit field describes additional properties on how the Characteristic Value can be used, or how the characteristic descriptors (see [Section 3.3.3.3](#)) can be accessed. If the bits defined in Table 3.8 are set, the action described is permitted. *Multiple Characteristic Properties* can be set.

Properties	Value	Description
Reliable Write	0x0001	If set, permits reliable writes of the Characteristic Value using the procedure defined in <a href="#">Section 4.9.5</a>
Writable Auxiliaries	0x0002	If set, permits writes to the characteristic descriptor defined in <a href="#">Section 3.3.3.2</a>
Reserved for Future Use	0xFFFFC	Reserved for Future Use

Table 3.8: *Characteristic Extended Properties bit field*

### 3.3.3.2 Characteristic User Description

The *Characteristic User Description* declaration is an optional characteristic descriptor that defines a UTF-8 string of variable size that is a user textual description of the *Characteristic Value*. If the *Writable Auxiliary* bit of the *Characteristic Properties* is set then this characteristic descriptor can be written. The characteristic descriptor may occur in any position within the characteristic definition after the *Characteristic Value*. Only one *Characteristic User Description* declaration shall exist in a characteristic definition.

The characteristic descriptor is contained in an Attribute and the *Attribute Type* shall be set to the UUID for «Characteristic User Description» and the *Attribute Value* shall be set to the characteristic user description UTF-8 string. The *Attribute Permissions* are specified by the profile or may be implementation specific if not specified otherwise.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xNNNN	0x2901 – UUID for «Characteristic User Description»	Characteristic User Description UTF-8 String	Higher layer profile or implementation specific

Table 3.9: *Characteristic User Description* declaration

### 3.3.3.3 Client Characteristic Configuration

The *Client Characteristic Configuration* declaration is an optional characteristic descriptor that defines how the characteristic may be configured by a specific client. The Client Characteristic Configuration descriptor value shall be persistent across connections for bonded devices. The Client Characteristic Configuration descriptor value shall be set to the default value at each connection with non-bonded devices. The characteristic descriptor value is a bit field. When a bit is set, that action shall be enabled, otherwise it will not be used. The *Client Characteristic Configuration* descriptor may occur in any position within the characteristic definition after the *Characteristic Value*. Only one *Client Characteristic Configuration* declaration shall exist in a characteristic definition.

A client may write this configuration descriptor to control the configuration of this characteristic on the server for the client. Each client has its own instantiation of the *Client Characteristic Configuration*. Reads of the *Client Characteristic Configuration* only shows the configuration for that client and writes only affect the configuration of that client. Authentication and authorization may be required by the server to write the configuration descriptor. The *Client Characteristic Configuration* declaration shall be readable and writable.

*Generic Attribute Profile (GATT)*

The characteristic descriptor is contained in an Attribute. The *Attribute Type* shall be set to the UUID for «Client Characteristic Configuration». The *Attribute Value* shall be set to the characteristic descriptor value. The *Attribute Permissions* are specified by the profile or may be implementation specific if not specified otherwise.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xNNNN	02902 – UUID for «Client Characteristic Configuration»	Characteristic Configuration Bits	Readable with no authentication or authorization. Writable with authentication and authorization defined by a higher layer specification or is implementation specific.

Table 3.10: Client Characteristic Configuration declaration

The following Client Characteristic Configuration bits are defined:

Configuration	Value	Description
Notification	0x0001	The Characteristic Value shall be notified. This value can only be set if the characteristic's property has the notify bit set.
Indication	0x0002	The Characteristic Value shall be indicated. This value can only be set if the characteristic's property has the indicate bit set.
Reserved for Future Use	0xFFFF4	Reserved for future use.

Table 3.11: Client Characteristic Configuration bit field definition

The default value for the *Client Characteristic Configuration* descriptor value shall be 0x0000.

In the case where multiple ATT bearers from the same device are supported by the GATT server, each ATT bearer shall be considered to have a separate GATT client instance. Therefore each GATT client shall have a separate Client Characteristic Configuration.

### 3.3.3.4 Server Characteristic Configuration

The *Server Characteristic Configuration* declaration is an optional characteristic descriptor that defines how the characteristic may be configured for the server. The characteristic descriptor value is a bit field. When a bit is set, that action shall be enabled, otherwise it will not be used. The *Server Characteristic Configuration* descriptor may occur in any position within the characteristic definition after the *Characteristic Value*. Only one *Server Characteristic Configuration* declaration shall exist in a characteristic definition. The *Server Characteristic Configuration* declaration shall be readable and writable.

A client may write this configuration descriptor to control the configuration of this characteristic on the server for all clients. There is a single instantiation of the *Server Characteristic Configuration* for all clients. Reads of the *Server Characteristic Configuration* shows the configuration all clients and writes affect the configuration for all clients. Authentication and authorization may be required by the server to write the configuration descriptor.

The characteristic descriptor is contained in an Attribute. The *Attribute Type* shall be set to the UUID for «Server Characteristic Configuration». The *Attribute Value* shall be set to the characteristic descriptor value. The *Attribute Permissions* are specified by the profile or may be implementation specific if not specified otherwise.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xNNNN	0x2903 – UUID for «Server Characteristic Configuration»	Characteristic Configuration Bits	Readable with no authentication or authorization. Writable with authentication and authorization defined by a higher layer specification or is implementation specific.

Table 3.12: Server Characteristic Configuration declaration

The following *Server Characteristic Configuration* bits are defined:

Configuration	Value	Description
Broadcast	0x0001	The Characteristic Value shall be broadcast when the server is in the broadcast procedure if advertising data resources are available. This value can only be set if the characteristic's property has the broadcast bit set.
Reserved for Future Use	0xFFFF2	Reserved for future use.

Table 3.13: Server Characteristic Configuration bit field definition

### 3.3.3.5 Characteristic Presentation Format

The *Characteristic Presentation Format* declaration is an optional characteristic descriptor that defines the format of the *Characteristic Value*. The characteristic descriptor may occur in any position within the characteristic definition after the *Characteristic Value*. If more than one *Characteristic Presentation Format* declarations exist, in a characteristic definition, then a *Characteristic Aggregate Format* declaration shall exist as part of the characteristic definition.

The characteristic format value is composed of five parts: format, exponent, unit, name space, and description.

The characteristic descriptor is contained in an Attribute. The *Attribute Type* shall be set to the UUID for «Characteristic Format». The *Attribute Value* shall be set to the characteristic descriptor value. The *Attribute Permissions* shall be read only and not require authentication or authorization.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value					Attribute Permissions
0xNNNN	0x2904 – UUID for «Characteristic Format»	Format	Exponent	Unit	Name Space	Description	Read only No Authentication, NO authorization

Table 3.14: Characteristic Format declaration

The definition of the Characteristic Presentation Format descriptor Attribute Value field is the following.

Field Name	Value Size	Description
Format	1 octet	Format of the value of this characteristic.
Exponent	1 octet	Exponent field to determine how the value of this characteristic is further formatted.
Unit	2 octets	The unit of this characteristic as defined in [1]
Name Space	1 octet	The name space of the description as defined in [1]
Description	2 octets	The description of this characteristic as defined in a higher layer profile.

Table 3.15: Characteristic Format Value definition

#### 3.3.3.5.1 Bit Ordering

The bit ordering used for the Characteristic Format descriptor shall be little-endian.

### 3.3.3.5.2 Format

The format field determines how a single value contained in the *Characteristic Value* is formatted. If a format is not a whole number of octets, then the data shall be contained within the least significant bits of the value, and all other bits shall be set to zero on transmission and ignored upon receipt. If the *Characteristic Value* is less than an octet, it occupies an entire octet.

The following format values are defined:

Format	Short Name	Description	Exponent Value
0x00	rfu	Reserved for Future Use	No
0x01	boolean	unsigned 1-bit; 0 = false, 1 = true	No
0x02	2bit	unsigned 2-bit integer	No
0x03	nibble	unsigned 4-bit integer	No
0x04	uint8	unsigned 8-bit integer	Yes
0x05	uint12	unsigned 12-bit integer	Yes
0x06	uint16	unsigned 16-bit integer	Yes
0x07	uint24	unsigned 24-bit integer	Yes
0x08	uint32	unsigned 32-bit integer	Yes
0x09	uint48	unsigned 48-bit integer	Yes
0x0A	uint64	unsigned 64-bit integer	Yes
0x0B	uint128	unsigned 128-bit integer	Yes
0x0C	sint8	signed 8-bit integer	Yes
0x0D	sint12	signed 12-bit integer	Yes
0x0E	sint16	signed 16-bit integer	Yes
0x0F	sint24	signed 24-bit integer	Yes
0x10	sint32	signed 32-bit integer	Yes
0x11	sint48	signed 48-bit integer	Yes
0x12	sint64	signed 64-bit integer	Yes
0x13	sint128	signed 128-bit integer	Yes
0x14	float32	IEEE-754 32-bit floating point	No
0x15	float64	IEEE-754 64-bit floating point	No
0x16	SFLOAT	IEEE-11073 16-bit SFLOAT	No
0x17	FLOAT	IEEE-11073 32-bit FLOAT	No
0x18	duint16	IEEE-20601 format	No

Table 3.16: Characteristic Format types

Format	Short Name	Description	Exponent Value
0x19	utf8s	UTF-8 string	No
0x1A	utf16s	UTF-16 string	No
0x1B	struct	Opaque structure	No
0x1C – 0xFF	rfu	Reserved for Future Use	No

Table 3.16: Characteristic Format types

When encoding an IPv4 address, the uint32 Format type shall be used.

When encoding an IPv6 address, the uint128 Format type shall be used.

When encoding a Bluetooth BD\_ADDR, the uint48 Format type shall be used.

A uint16 is two uint16 values concatenated together.

### 3.3.3.5.3 Exponent

The exponent field is used with integer data types to determine how the value is further formatted. The exponent field is only used on integer format types as indicated in the format field in Table 3.16. The exponent field is a signed integer.

$$\text{actual value} = \text{Characteristic Value} * 10^{\text{Exponent}}$$

As can be seen in the above equation, the actual value is a combination of the Characteristic Value and the value 10 to the power Exponent. This is sometimes known as a fixed point number.

For example, if the Exponent is 2 and the Characteristic Value is 23, the actual value would be 2300.

For example, if the Exponent is -3 and the Characteristic Value is 3892, the actual value would be 3.892.

### 3.3.3.5.4 Unit

The Unit is a UUID as defined in the Assigned Numbers document [1].

### 3.3.3.5.5 Name Space

The Name Space field is used to identify the organization as defined in the Assigned Numbers document [1], that is responsible for defining the enumerations for the description field.

### 3.3.3.5.6 Description

The *Description* is an enumerated value as defined in the Assigned Numbers document [1] from the organization identified by the Name Space field.

### 3.3.3.6 Characteristic Aggregate Format

The *Characteristic Aggregate Format* declaration is an optional characteristic descriptor that defines the format of an aggregated *Characteristic Value*.

The characteristic descriptor may occur in any position within the characteristic definition after the *Characteristic Value*. Only one *Characteristic Aggregate Format* declaration shall exist in a characteristic definition.

The *Characteristic Aggregate Format* value is composed of a list of Attribute Handles of *Characteristic Presentation Format* declarations, where each *Attribute Handle* points to a *Characteristic Presentation Format* declaration.

The *Attribute Permissions* shall be read only and not require authentication or authorization.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value	Attribute Permissions
0xNNNN	0x2905 – UUID for «Characteristic Aggregate Format»	List of <i>Attribute Handles</i> for the <i>Characteristic Presentation Format</i> Declarations	Read only No authentication No authorization

Table 3.17: *Characteristic Aggregate Format declaration*

The *List of Attribute Handles* is the concatenation of multiple 16-bit *Attribute Handle* values into a single *Attribute Value*. The list shall contain at least two *Attribute Handle for Characteristic Presentation Format declarations*. The *Characteristic Value* shall be decomposed by each of the *Characteristic Presentation Format* declarations pointed to by the *Attribute Handles*. The order of the *Attribute Handles* in the list is significant.

If more than one *Characteristic Presentation Format* declarations exist in a characteristic definition, there shall also be one *Characteristic Aggregate Format* declaration. The *Characteristic Aggregate Format* declaration shall include each *Characteristic Presentation Format* declaration in the characteristic definition in the list of *Attribute Handles*. *Characteristic Presentation Format* declarations from other characteristic definitions may also be used.

A *Characteristic Aggregate Format* declaration may exist without a *Characteristic Presentation Format* declaration existing in the characteristic definition. The *Characteristic Aggregate Format* declaration may use *Characteristic Presentation Format* declarations from other characteristic definitions.

### 3.4 SUMMARY OF GATT PROFILE ATTRIBUTE TYPES

The following table summarizes the Attribute Types defined by the GATT Profile.

Attribute Type	UUID	Description
«Primary Service»	0x2800	Primary Service Declaration
«Secondary Service»	0x2801	Secondary Service Declaration
«Include»	0x2802	Include Declaration
«Characteristic»	0x2803	Characteristic Declaration
«Characteristic Extended Properties»	0x2900	Characteristic Extended Properties
«Characteristic User Description»	0x2901	Characteristic User Description Descriptor
«Client Characteristic Configuration»	0x2902	Client Characteristic Configuration Descriptor
«Server Characteristic Configuration»	0x2903	Server Characteristic Configuration Descriptor
«Characteristic Format»	0x2904	Characteristic Format Descriptor
«Characteristic Aggregate Format»	0x2905	Characteristic Aggregate Format Descriptor

Table 3.18: Summary of GATT Profile Attribute types

## 4 GATT FEATURE REQUIREMENTS

### 4.1 OVERVIEW

There are 11 features defined in the GATT Profile:

1. Server Configuration
2. Primary Service Discovery
3. Relationship Discovery
4. Characteristic Discovery
5. Characteristic Descriptor Discovery
6. Reading a Characteristic Value
7. Writing a Characteristic Value
8. Notification of a Characteristic Value
9. Indication of a Characteristic Value
10. Reading a Characteristic Descriptor
11. Writing a Characteristic Descriptor

Each of the features is mapped to procedures and sub-procedures. These procedures and sub-procedures describe how the Attribute Protocol is used to accomplish the corresponding feature.

### 4.2 FEATURE SUPPORT AND PROCEDURE MAPPING

The table below maps each feature to the procedures used for that feature, and indicates whether the procedure is optional or mandatory for that feature. The procedures are described in the referenced section.

Item No.	Feature	Sub-Procedure	Ref.	Support in Client	Support in Server
1	Server Configuration	Exchange MTU	4.3.1	O	O
2	Primary Service Discovery	Discover All Primary Services	4.4.1	O	M
		Discover Primary Services By Service UUID	4.4.2	O	M
3	Relationship Discovery	Find Included Services	4.5.1	O	M
4	Characteristic Discovery	Discover All Characteristic of a Service	4.6.1	O	M
		Discover Characteristic by UUID	4.6.2	O	M

Table 4.1: GATT feature mapping to procedures

## Generic Attribute Profile (GATT)



Item No.	Feature	Sub-Procedure	Ref.	Support in Client	Support in Server
5	Characteristic Descriptor Discovery	Discover All Characteristic Descriptors	<a href="#">4.7.1</a>	O	M
6	Characteristic Value Read	Read Characteristic Value	<a href="#">4.8.1</a>	O	M
		Read Using Characteristic UUID	<a href="#">4.8.1</a>	O	M
		Read Long Characteristic Values	<a href="#">4.8.2</a>	O	O
		Read Multiple Characteristic Values	<a href="#">4.8.3</a>	O	O
7	Characteristic Value Write	Write Without Response	<a href="#">4.9.1</a>	O	C.1
		Signed Write Without Response	<a href="#">4.9.2</a>	O	O
		Write Characteristic Value	<a href="#">4.9.3</a>	O	C.2
		Write Long Characteristic Values	<a href="#">4.9.4</a>	O	O
		Characteristic Value Reliable Writes	<a href="#">4.9.5</a>	O	O
8	Characteristic Value Notification	Notifications	<a href="#">4.10.1</a>	O	O
9	Characteristic Value Indication	Indications	<a href="#">4.11.1</a>	M	C3
10	Characteristic Descriptor Value Read	Read Characteristic Descriptors	<a href="#">4.12.1</a>	O	O
		Read Long Characteristic Descriptors	<a href="#">4.12.2</a>	O	O
11	Characteristic Descriptor Value Write	Write Characteristic Descriptors	<a href="#">4.12.3</a>	O	O
		Write Long Characteristic Descriptors	<a href="#">4.12.4</a>	O	O
<p>C1: Write Without Response is mandatory if Signed Write Without Response is supported otherwise optional</p> <p>C2: Write Characteristic Value is mandatory if Write Long Characteristic Values is supported otherwise optional</p> <p>C3: If <i>Service Changed Characteristic</i> is present, this feature is mandatory, otherwise optional.</p>					

Table 4.1: GATT feature mapping to procedures

## 4.3 SERVER CONFIGURATION

This procedure is used by the client to configure the Attribute Protocol. This procedure has only one sub-procedure used to set the MTU sizes.

### 4.3.1 Exchange MTU

This sub-procedure is used by the client to set the ATT\_MTU to the maximum possible value that can be supported by both devices when the client supports a value greater than the default ATT\_MTU for the Attribute Protocol. This sub-procedure shall only be initiated once during a connection.

This sub-procedure shall not be used on a BR/EDR physical link since the MTU size is negotiated using L2CAP channel configuration procedures.

The Attribute Protocol *Exchange MTU Request* is used by this sub-procedure. The Client Rx MTU parameter shall be set to the maximum MTU that this client can receive.

Two possible responses can be sent from the server for the *Exchange MTU Request*: *Exchange MTU Response* and *Error Response*.

*Error Response* is returned if an error occurred on the server.

The server shall respond to this message with an *Exchange MTU Response* with the Server Rx MTU parameter set to the maximum MTU that this server can receive.

If the *Error Response* is sent by the server with the *Error Code* set to *Request Not Supported*, the *Attribute Opcode* is not supported and the default MTU shall be used.

Once the messages have been exchanged, the ATT\_MTU shall be set to the minimum of the Client Rx MTU and Server Rx MTU values.

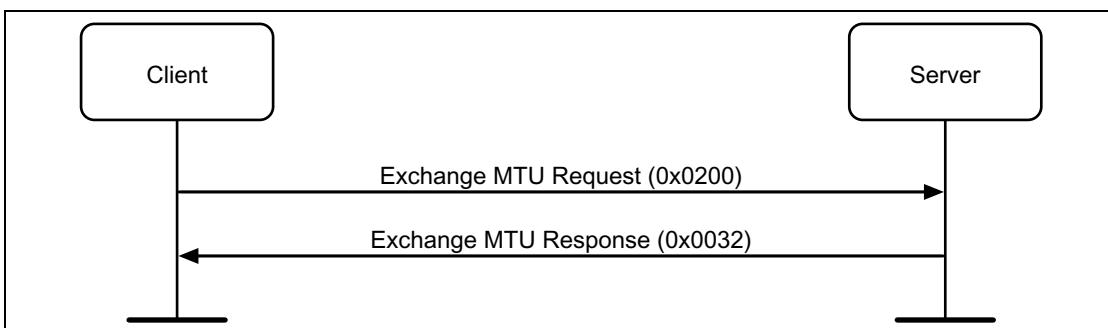


Figure 4.1: Exchange MTU

For example, in Figure 4.1, based on the exchanged ATT\_MTU value in the ATT\_MTU would be 0x0032.

## 4.4 PRIMARY SERVICE DISCOVERY

This procedure is used by a client to discover primary services on a server. Once the primary services are discovered, additional information about the primary services can be accessed using other procedures, including characteristic discovery and relationship discovery to find other related primary and secondary services.

There are two sub-procedures that can be used for primary service discovery: Discover All Primary Services and Discover Primary Services by Service UUID.

### 4.4.1 Discover All Primary Services

This sub-procedure is used by a client to discover all the primary services on a server.

The Attribute Protocol *Read By Group Type Request* shall be used with the Attribute Type parameter set to the UUID for «Primary Service». The *Starting Handle* shall be set to 0x0001 and the *Ending Handle* shall be set to 0xFFFF.

Two possible responses can be sent from the server for the *Read By Group Type Request*: *Read By Group Type Response* and *Error Response*.

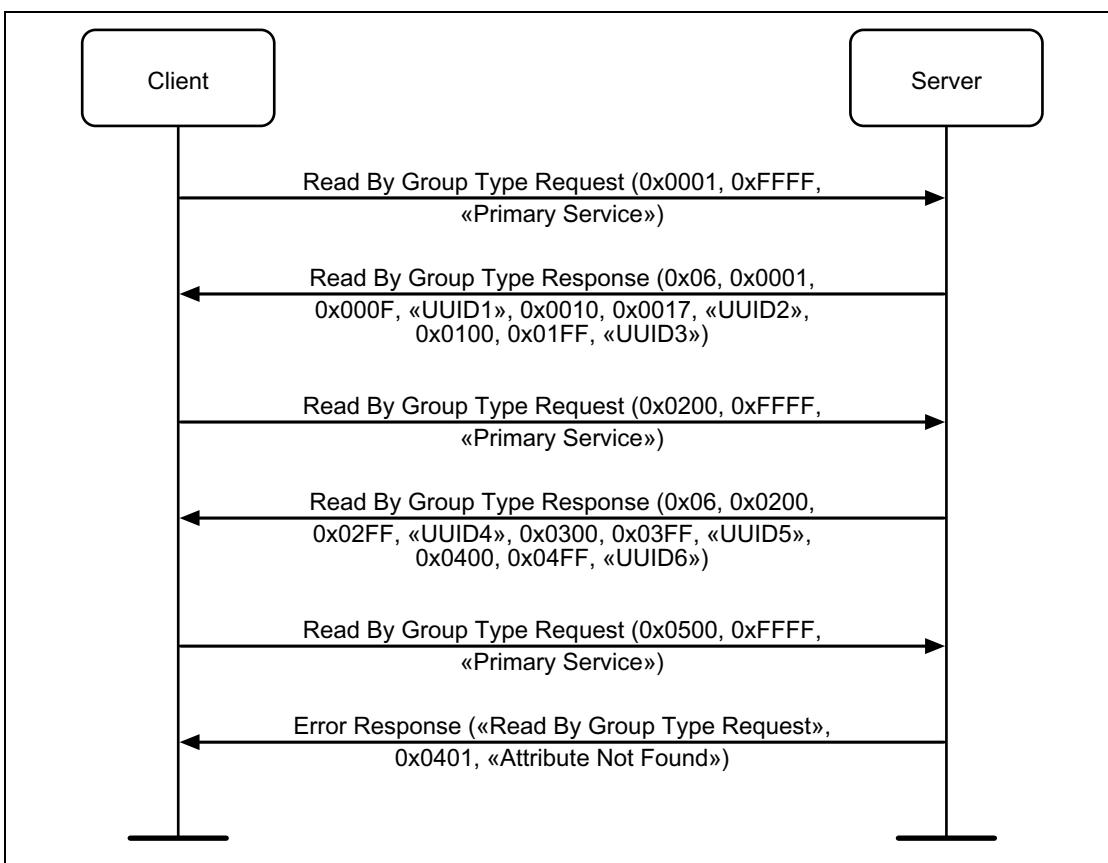
*Error Response* is returned if an error occurred on the server.

*Read By Group Type Response* returns a list of *Attribute Handle*, *End Group Handle*, and *Attribute Value* tuples corresponding to the services supported by the server. Each *Attribute Value* contained in the response is the Service UUID of a service supported by the server. The *Attribute Handle* is the handle for the service declaration. The *End Group Handle* is the handle of the last attribute within the service definition. The *End Group Handle* of the last service in a device can be 0xFFFF. The *Read By Group Type Request* shall be called again with the *Starting Handle* set to one greater than the last *End Group Handle* in the *Read By Group Type Response*.

This sub-procedure is complete when the *Error Response* is received and the *Error Code* is set to «Attribute Not Found» or when the *End Group Handle* in the *Read by Type Group Response* is 0xFFFF.

It is permitted to end the sub-procedure early if a desired primary service is found prior to discovering all the primary services on the server.

Note: The service declaration described in [Section 3.1](#) specifies that the service declaration is readable and requires no authentication or authorization, therefore insufficient authentication or read not permitted errors shall not occur.



*Figure 4.2: Discover All Primary Services example*

#### 4.4.2 Discover Primary Service by Service UUID

This sub-procedure is used by a client to discover a specific primary service on a server when only the Service UUID is known. The specific primary service may exist multiple times on a server. The primary service being discovered is identified by the service UUID.

The Attribute Protocol *Find By Type Value Request* shall be used with the Attribute Type parameter set to the UUID for «Primary Service» and the *Attribute Value* set to the 16-bit Bluetooth UUID or 128-bit UUID for the specific primary service. The *Starting Handle* shall be set to 0x0001 and the *Ending Handle* shall be set to 0xFFFF.

Two possible responses can be sent from the server for the *Find By Type Value Request*: *Find By Type Value Response* and *Error Response*.

*Error Response* is returned if an error occurred on the server.

*Find By Type Value Response* returns a list of *Attribute Handle* ranges. The *Attribute Handle* range is the starting handle and the ending handle of the service definition. The *End Group Handle* of the last service in a device can be 0xFFFF. If the *Attribute Handle* range for the Service UUID being searched is returned and the End Found Handle is not 0xFFFF, the *Find By Type Value*

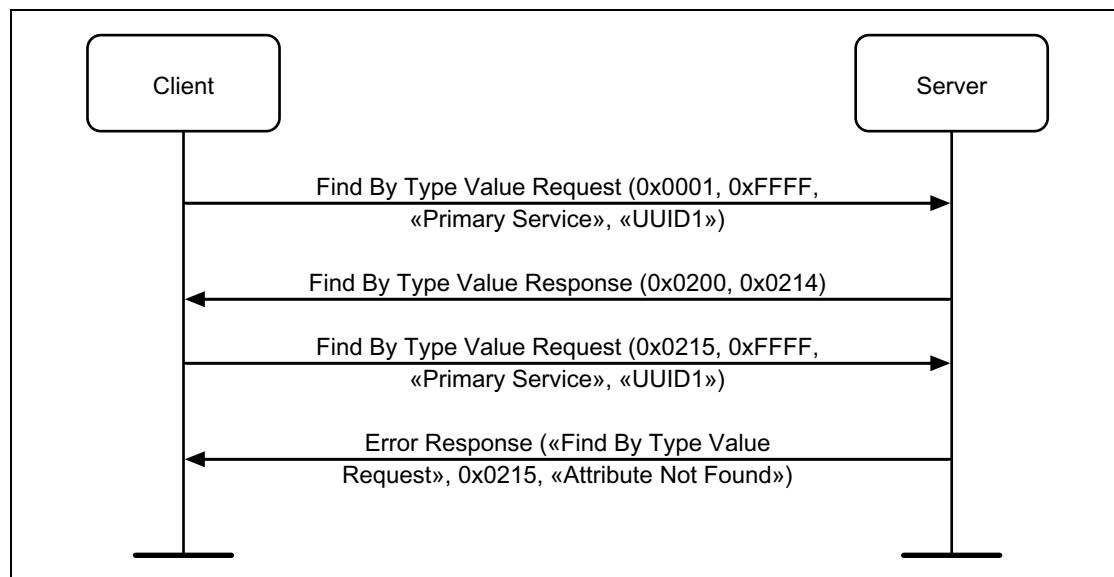


*Request* may be called again with the *Starting Handle* set to one greater than the last *Attribute Handle* range in the Find By Type Value Response.

This sub-procedure is complete when the *Error Response* is received and the *Error Code* is set to «Attribute Not Found» or when the *End Group Handle* in the *Read by Type Group Response* is 0xFFFF.

It is permitted to end the sub-procedure early if a desired primary service is found prior to discovering all the primary services of the specified service UUID supported on the server.

Note: The service declaration described in [Section 3.1](#) specifies that the service declaration is readable and requires no authentication or authorization, therefore insufficient authentication or read not permitted errors shall not occur.



*Figure 4.3: Discover Primary Service by Service UUID example*

## 4.5 RELATIONSHIP DISCOVERY

This procedure is used by a client to discover service relationships to other services.

There is one sub-procedure that can be used for relationship discovery: Find Included Services.

### 4.5.1 Find Included Services

This sub-procedure is used by a client to find include service declarations within a service definition on a server. The service specified is identified by the service handle range.

The Attribute Protocol Read *By Type Request* shall be used with the *Attribute Type* parameter set to the UUID for «Include». The *Starting Handle* shall be set to starting handle of the specified service and the *Ending Handle* shall be set to the ending handle of the specified service. It is permitted to end the sub-procedure early if a desired included service is found prior to discovering all the included services of the specified service supported on the server.

Two possible responses can be sent from the server for the *Read By Type Request*: *Read By Type Response* and *Error Response*.

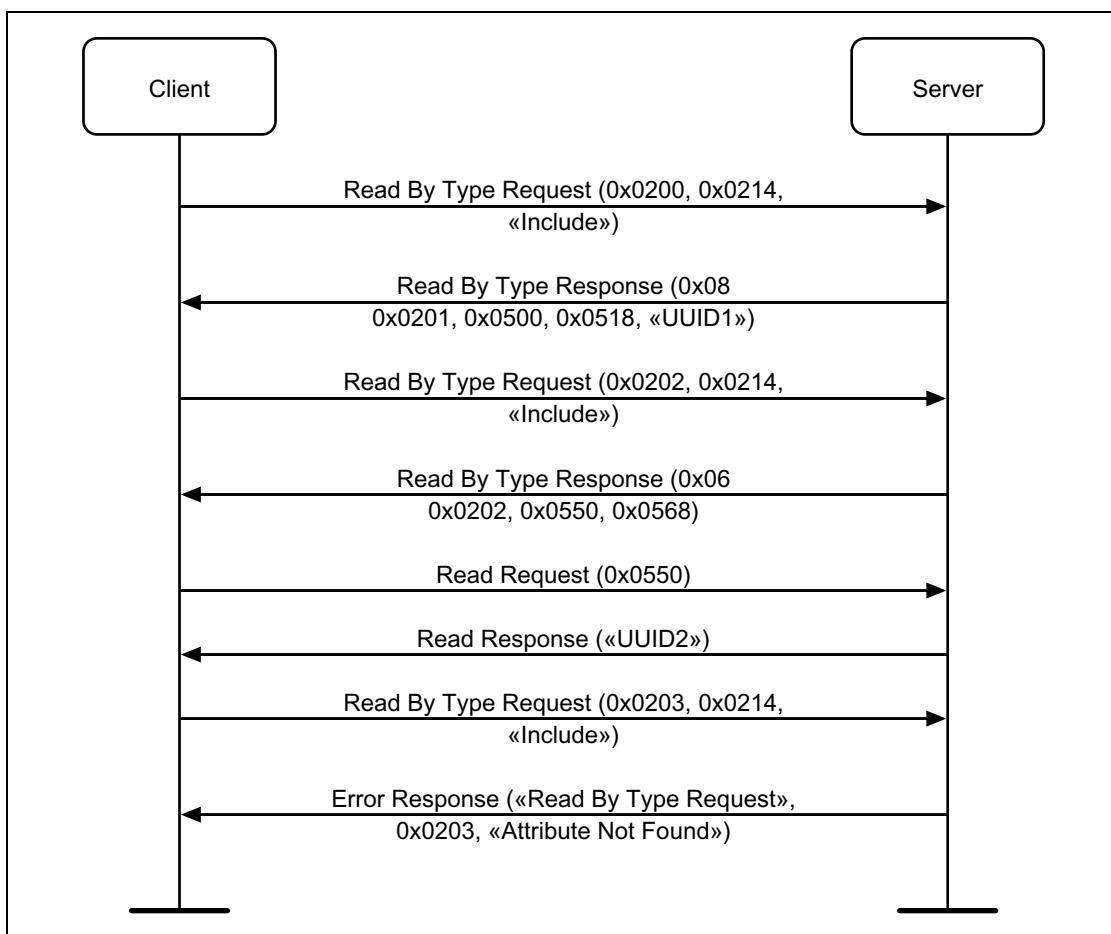
*Error Response* is returned if an error occurred on the server.

*Read By Type Response* returns a set of *Attribute Handle* and *Attribute Value* pairs corresponding to the included services in the service definition. Each *Attribute Value* contained in the response is composed of the *Attribute Handle* of the included service declaration and the *End Group Handle*. If the service UUID is a 16-bit Bluetooth UUID it is also returned in the response. The *Read By Type Request* shall be called again with the *Starting Handle* set to one greater than the last *Attribute Handle* in the *Read By Type Response*.

The sub-procedure is complete when either the *Error Response* is received with the *Error Code* set to *Attribute Not Found* or the *Read By Type Response* has an *Attribute Handle* of the included service declaration that is equal to the *Ending Handle* of the request.

To get the included service UUID when the included service uses a 128-bit UUID, the *Read Request* is used. The *Attribute Handle* for the *Read Request* is the *Attribute Handle* of the included service.

Note: The include declaration described in [Section 3.2](#) specifies that the include declaration is readable and requires no authentication or authorization, therefore insufficient authentication or read not permitted errors shall not occur.



*Figure 4.4: Find Included Services example*

## 4.6 CHARACTERISTIC DISCOVERY

This procedure is used by a client to discover service characteristics on a server. Once the characteristics are discovered additional information about the characteristics can be discovered or accessed using other procedures.

There are two sub-procedures that can be used for characteristic discovery:  
Discover All Characteristics of a Service and Discover Characteristics by  
UUID.

#### **4.6.1 Discover All Characteristics of a Service**

This sub-procedure is used by a client to find all the characteristic declarations within a service definition on a server when only the service handle range is known. The service specified is identified by the service handle range.

The Attribute Protocol *Read By Type Request* shall be used with the *Attribute Type* parameter set to the UUID for «Characteristic». The *Starting Handle* shall be set to starting handle of the specified service and the *Ending Handle* shall be set to the ending handle of the specified service.

Two possible responses can be sent from the server for the *Read By Type Request*: *Read By Type Response* and *Error Response*.

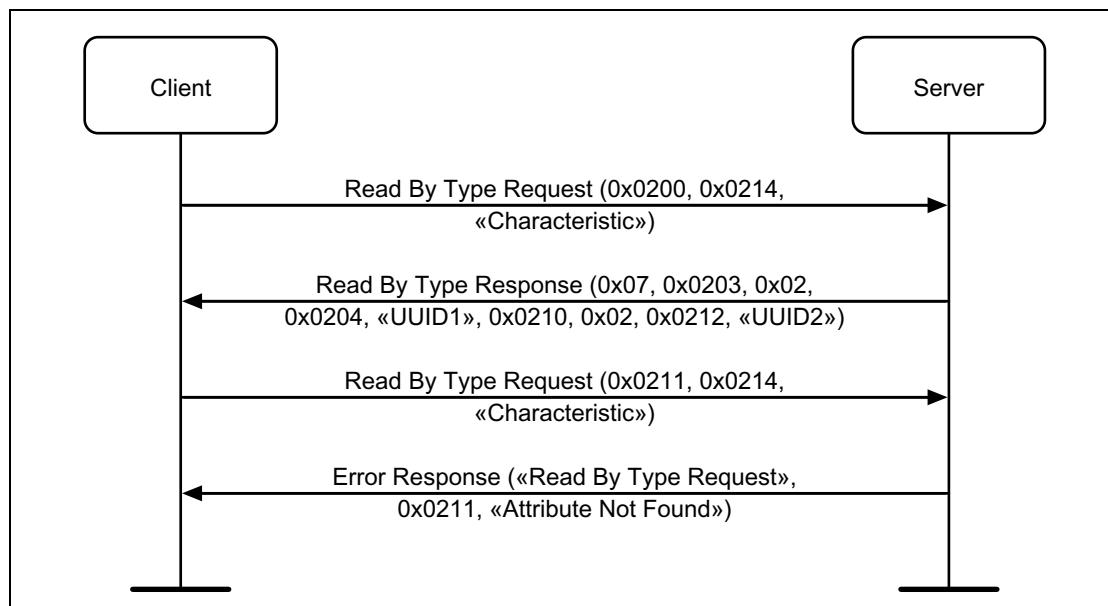
*Error Response* is returned if an error occurred on the server.

*Read By Type Response* returns a list of *Attribute Handle* and *Attribute Value* pairs corresponding to the characteristics in the service definition. The *Attribute Handle* is the handle for the characteristic declaration. The *Attribute Value* is the Characteristic Properties, Characteristic Value Handle and Characteristic UUID. The Read By Type Request shall be called again with the *Starting Handle* set to one greater than the last *Attribute Handle* in the *Read By Type Response*.

The sub-procedure is complete when the *Error Response* is received and the *Error Code* is set to *Attribute Not Found* or the *Read By Type Response* has an *Attribute Handle* that is equal to the *Ending Handle* of the request.

It is permitted to end the sub-procedure early if a desired characteristic is found prior to discovering all the characteristics of the specified service supported on the server.

Note: The characteristic declaration described in [Section 3.3](#) specifies that the characteristic declaration is readable and requires no authentication or authorization, therefore insufficient authentication or read not permitted errors should not occur.



*Figure 4.5: Discover All Characteristics of a Service example*

#### 4.6.2 Discover Characteristics by UUID

This sub-procedure is used by a client to discover service characteristics on a server when only the service handle ranges are known and the characteristic UUID is known. The specific service may exist multiple times on a server. The characteristic being discovered is identified by the characteristic UUID.

The Attribute Protocol *Read By Type Request* is used to perform the beginning of the sub-procedure. The *Attribute Type* is set to the UUID for «Characteristic» and the *Starting Handle* and *Ending Handle* parameters shall be set to the service handle range.

Two possible responses can be sent from the server for the *Read By Type Request*: *Read By Type Response* and *Error Response*.

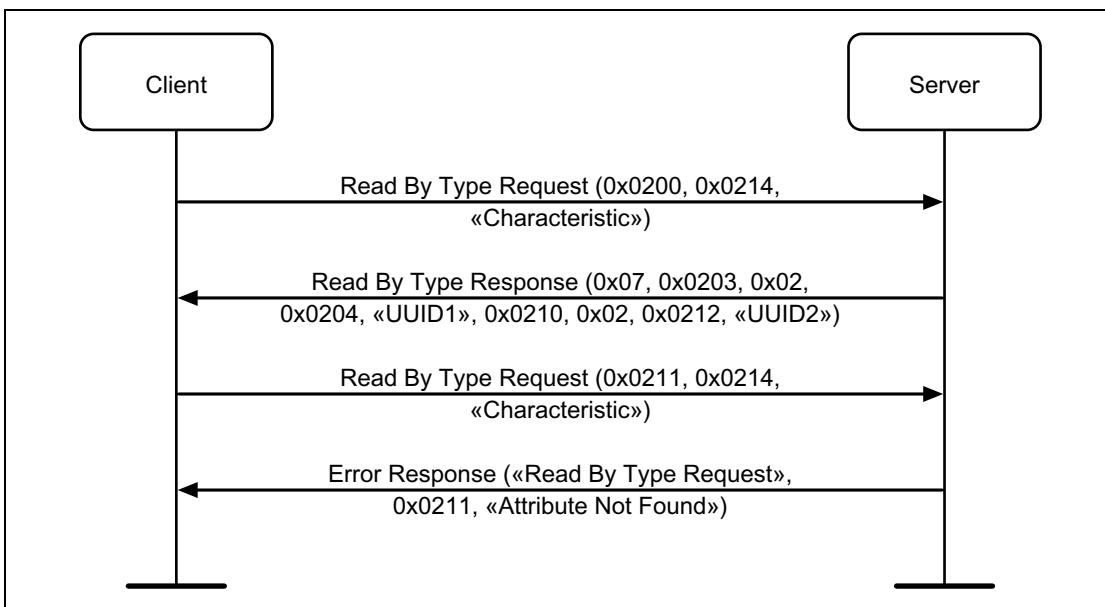
*Error Response* is returned if an error occurred on the server.

*Read By Type Response* returns a list of *Attribute Handle* and *Attribute Value* pairs corresponding to the characteristics contained in the handle range provided. Each *Attribute Value* in the list is the *Attribute Value* for the characteristic declaration. The *Attribute Value* contains the characteristic properties, Characteristic Value Handle and characteristic UUID. The *Attribute Value* for each *Attribute Handle* and *Attribute Value* pairs are checked for a matching characteristic UUID. Once found, the sub-procedure continues until the end of the service handle range is exhausted. The *Read By Type Request* is called again with the *Starting Handle* set to one greater than the last *Attribute Handle* in the *Read By Type Response*.

If the *Error Response* is sent by the server with the *Error Code* set to *Attribute Not Found*, the characteristic does not exist on the server within the handle range provided.

It is permitted to end the sub-procedure early if a desired characteristic is found prior to discovering all the characteristics for the specified service supported on the server.

Note: The characteristic declaration described in [Section 3.3](#) specifies that the characteristic declaration is readable and requires no authentication or authorization, therefore insufficient authentication or read not permitted errors shall not occur.



*Figure 4.6: Discover Characteristics by UUID example*

#### 4.7 CHARACTERISTIC DESCRIPTOR DISCOVERY

This procedure is used by a client to discover characteristic descriptors of a characteristic. Once the characteristic descriptors are discovered additional information about the characteristic descriptors can be accessed using other procedures.

There is one sub-procedure that can be used for characteristic descriptor discovery: Discover All Characteristic Descriptors.

#### **4.7.1 Discover All Characteristic Descriptors**

This sub-procedure is used by a client to find all the characteristic descriptor's Attribute Handles and Attribute Types within a characteristic definition when only the characteristic handle range is known. The characteristic specified is identified by the characteristic handle range.

The Attribute Protocol *Find Information Request* shall be used with the Starting Handle set to the handle of the specified characteristic value + 1 and the *Ending Handle* set to the ending handle of the specified characteristic.

Two possible responses can be sent from the server for the *Find Information Request*: *Find Information Response* and *Error Response*.

Error Response is returned if an error occurred on the server.

*Find Information Response* returns a list of *Attribute Handle* and *Attribute Value* pairs corresponding to the characteristic descriptors in the characteristic definition. The *Attribute Handle* is the handle for the characteristic descriptor declaration. The *Attribute Value* is the Characteristic Descriptor UUID. The *Find*

*Information Request* shall be called again with the *Starting Handle* set to one greater than the last *Attribute Handle* in the Find Information Response.

The sub-procedure is complete when the *Error Response* is received and the *Error Code* is set to *Attribute Not Found* or the *Find Information Response* has an *Attribute Handle* that is equal to the *Ending Handle* of the request.

It is permitted to end the sub-procedure early if a desired Characteristic Descriptor is found prior to discovering all the characteristic descriptors of the specified characteristic.

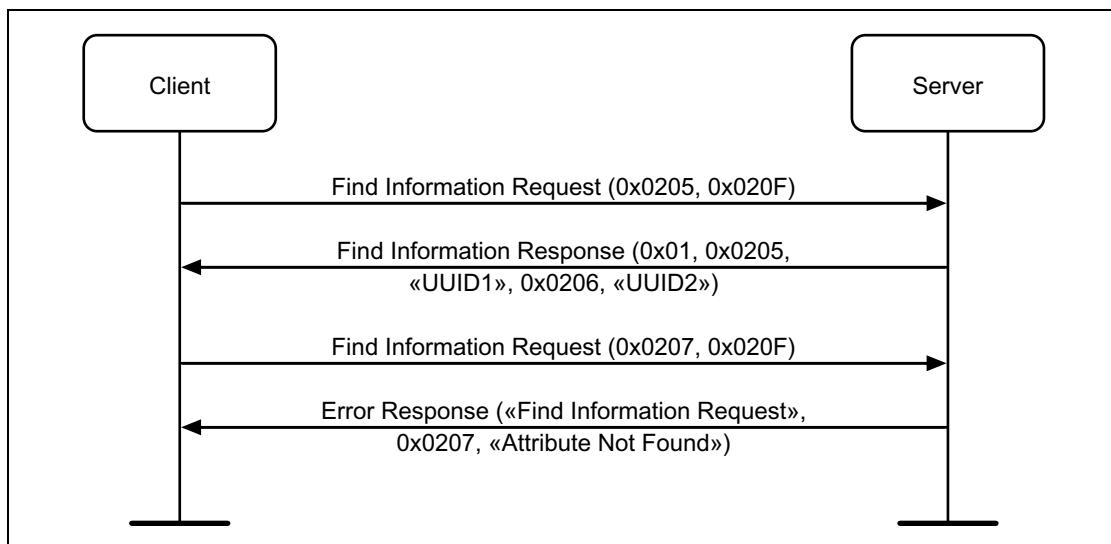


Figure 4.7: Discover All Characteristic Descriptors example

## 4.8 CHARACTERISTIC VALUE READ

This procedure is used to read a *Characteristic Value* from a server. There are four sub-procedures that can be used to read a *Characteristic Value*: Read Characteristic Value, Read Using Characteristic UUID, Read Long Characteristic Values, and Read Multiple Characteristic Values.

### 4.8.1 Read Characteristic Value

This sub-procedure is used to read a *Characteristic Value* from a server when the client knows the *Characteristic Value Handle*. The Attribute Protocol *Read Request* is used with the *Attribute Handle* parameter set to the *Characteristic Value Handle*. The Read Response returns the *Characteristic Value* in the *Attribute Value* parameter.

The *Read Response* only contains a *Characteristic Value* that is less than or equal to ( $\text{ATT\_MTU} - 1$ ) octets in length. If the *Characteristic Value* is greater than ( $\text{ATT\_MTU} - 1$ ) octets in length, the Read Long Characteristic Value procedure may be used if the rest of the *Characteristic Value* is required.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Read Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a read operation is not permitted on the *Characteristic Value*. The *Error Code* parameter is set as specified in the Attribute Protocol.

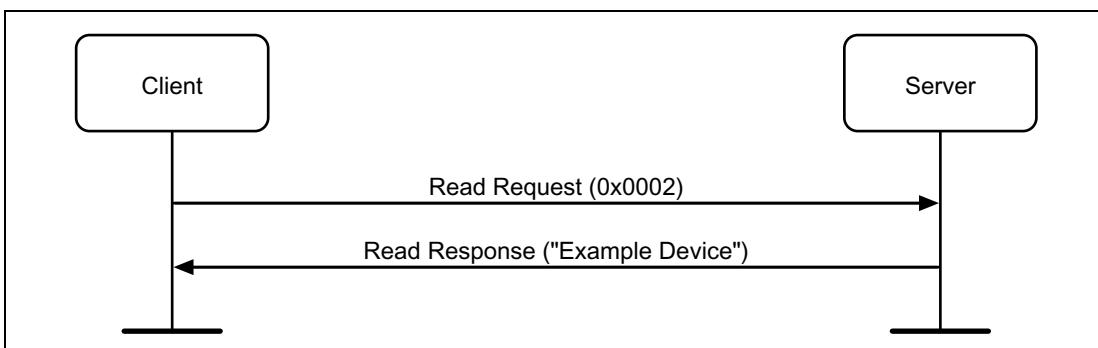


Figure 4.8: Read Characteristic Value example

### 4.8.2 Read Using Characteristic UUID

This sub-procedure is used to read a *Characteristic Value* from a server when the client only knows the characteristic UUID and does not know the handle of the characteristic.

The Attribute Protocol *Read By Type Request* is used to perform the sub-procedure. The Attribute Type is set to the known characteristic UUID and the Starting Handle and Ending Handle parameters shall be set to the range over which this read is to be performed. This is typically the handle range for the service in which the characteristic belongs.

Two possible responses can be sent from the server for the *Read By Type Request*: *Read By Type Response* and *Error Response*.

*Error Response* is returned if an error occurred on the server.

*Read By Type Response* returns a list of *Attribute Handle* and *Attribute Value* pairs corresponding to the characteristics contained in the handle range provided.

If the *Error Response* is sent by the server with the *Error Code* set to *Attribute Not Found*, the characteristic does not exist on the server within the handle range provided.

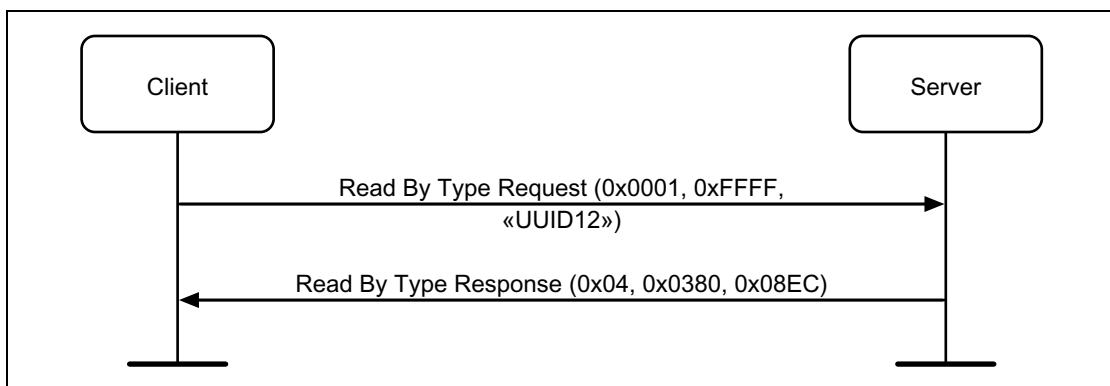


Figure 4.9: Read Using Characteristic UUID example

#### 4.8.3 Read Long Characteristic Values

This sub-procedure is used to read a *Characteristic Value* from a server when the client knows the *Characteristic Value Handle* and the length of the *Characteristic Value* is longer than can be sent in a single *Read Response* Attribute Protocol message.

The Attribute Protocol *Read Blob Request* is used to perform this sub-procedure. The *Attribute Handle* shall be set to the *Characteristic Value Handle* of the *Characteristic Value* to be read. The *Value Offset* parameter shall be the offset within the *Characteristic Value* to be read. To read the complete *Characteristic Value* the offset should be set to 0x00 for the first *Read Blob Request*. The offset for subsequent *Read Blob Requests* is the next octet that has yet to be read. The *Read Blob Request* is repeated until the *Read Blob Response*'s *Part Attribute Value* parameter is shorter than  $(\text{ATT\_MTU} - 1)$ .

For each *Read Blob Request* a *Read Blob Response* is received with a portion of the *Characteristic Value* contained in the *Part Attribute Value* parameter.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Read Blob Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a read operation is not permitted on the *Characteristic Value*. The *Error Code* parameter is set as specified in the

Attribute Protocol. If the *Characteristic Value* is not longer than (ATT\_MTU – 1) an *Error Response* with the *Error Code* set to Attribute Not Long shall be received on the first *Read Blob Request*.

Note: The *Read Blob Request* may be used to read the remainder of an *Attribute* where the first part was read using a simple *Read Request*.

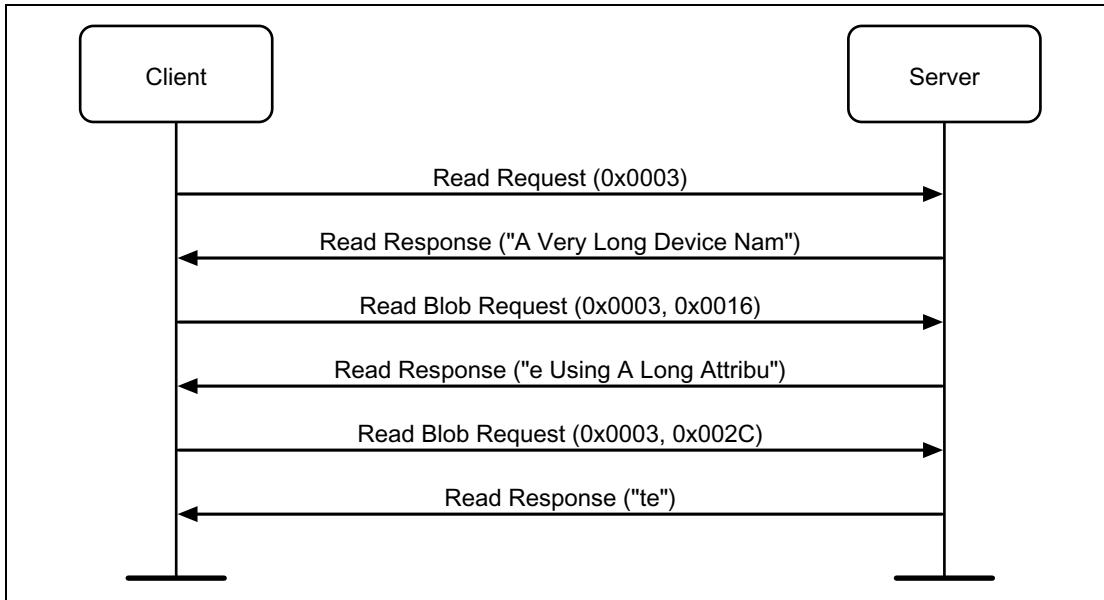


Figure 4.10: Read Long Characteristic Values example

#### 4.8.4 Read Multiple Characteristic Values

This sub-procedure is used to read multiple *Characteristic Values* from a server when the client knows the *Characteristic Value Handles*. The Attribute Protocol *Read Multiple Requests* is used with the *Set Of Handles* parameter set to the *Characteristic Value Handles*. The *Read Multiple Response* returns the *Characteristic Values* in the *Set Of Values* parameter.

The *Read Multiple Response* only contains a set of *Characteristic Values* that is less than or equal to (ATT\_MTU – 1) octets in length. If the *Set Of Values* is greater than (ATT\_MTU – 1) octets in length, only the first (ATT\_MTU – 1) octets are included in the response.

Note: A client should not request multiple *Characteristic Values* when the response's *Set Of Values* parameter is equal to (ATT\_MTU – 1) octets in length since it is not possible to determine if the last *Characteristic Value* was read or additional *Characteristic Values* exist but were truncated.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Read Multiple Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a read operation is not permitted on any of the *Characteristic Values*. The *Error Code* parameter is set as specified in the Attribute Protocol.

Refer to the Attribute Protocol specification for the format of the *Set Of Handles* and *Set Of Values* parameter.

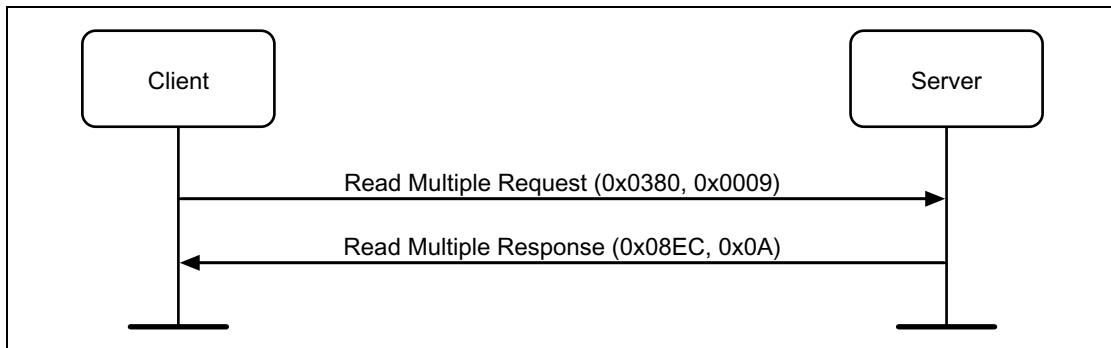


Figure 4.11: Read Multiple Characteristic Values example

## 4.9 CHARACTERISTIC VALUE WRITE

This procedure is used to write a *Characteristic Value* to a server.

There are five sub-procedures that can be used to write a *Characteristic Value*: Write Without Response, Signed Write Without Response, Write Characteristic Value, Write Long Characteristic Values and Reliable Writes.

### 4.9.1 Write Without Response

This sub-procedure is used to write a *Characteristic Value* to a server when the client knows the *Characteristic Value Handle* and the client does not need an acknowledgement that the write was successfully performed. This sub-procedure only writes the first (ATT\_MTU – 3) octets of a *Characteristic Value*. This sub-procedure cannot be used to write a long characteristic; instead the *Write Long Characteristic Values* sub-procedure should be used.

The Attribute Protocol *Write Command* is used for this sub-procedure. The *Attribute Handle* parameter shall be set to the *Characteristic Value Handle*. The *Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the new *Characteristic Value*.

If the *Characteristic Value* write request is the wrong size, or has an invalid value as defined by the profile, then the write shall not succeed and no error shall be generated by the server.

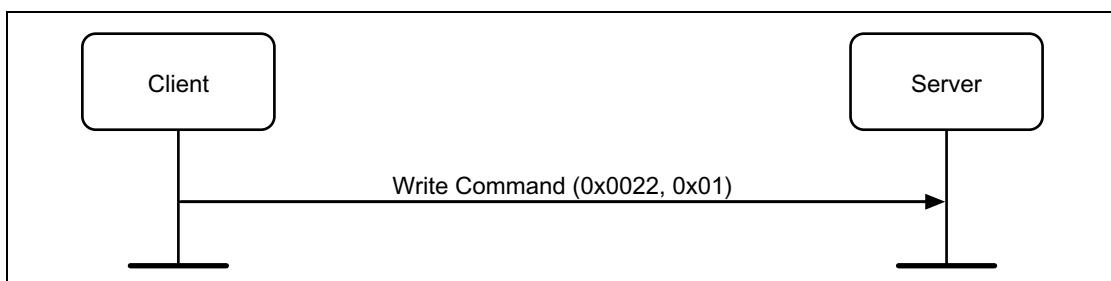


Figure 4.12: Write Without Response example

#### 4.9.2 Signed Write Without Response

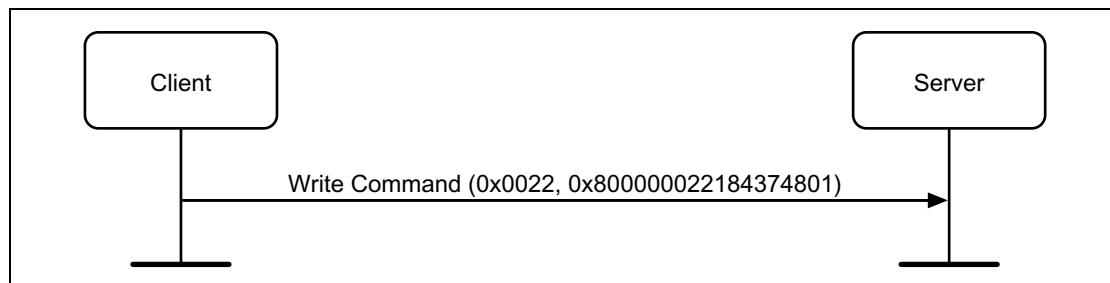
This sub-procedure is used to write a *Characteristic Value* to a server when the client knows the *Characteristic Value Handle* and the ATT Bearer is not encrypted. This sub-procedure shall only be used if the *Characteristic Properties* authenticated bit is enabled and the client and server device share a bond as defined in [\[Vol. 3\] Part C, Generic Access Profile](#).

This sub-procedure only writes the first (ATT\_MTU – 15) octets of an *Attribute Value*. This sub-procedure cannot be used to write a long Attribute.

The Attribute Protocol *Signed Write Command* is used for this sub-procedure. The *Attribute Handle* parameter shall be set to the *Characteristic Value Handle*. The *Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the new *Characteristic Value* authenticated by signing the value, as defined in the Security Manager [\[Vol. 3\] Part H, Section 2.4.5](#).

If the authenticated *Characteristic Value* that is written is the wrong size, has an invalid value as defined by the profile, or the signed value does not authenticate the client, then the write shall not succeed and no error shall be generated by the server.

Note: On BR/EDR, the ATT Bearer is always encrypted, due to the use of Security Mode 4, therefore this sub-procedure shall not be used.



*Figure 4.13: Signed Write Without Response example*

#### 4.9.3 Write Characteristic Value

This sub-procedure is used to write a *Characteristic Value* to a server when the client knows the *Characteristic Value Handle*. This sub-procedure only writes the first (ATT\_MTU – 3) octets of a *Characteristic Value*. This sub-procedure cannot be used to write a long Attribute; instead the *Write Long Characteristic Values* sub-procedure should be used.

The Attribute Protocol *Write Request* is used to for this sub-procedure. The *Attribute Handle* parameter shall be set to the *Characteristic Value Handle*. The *Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the new characteristic.

A *Write Response* shall be sent by the server if the write of the *Characteristic Value* succeeded.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Write Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a write operation is not permitted on the *Characteristic Value*. The *Error Code* parameter is set as specified in the Attribute Protocol. If the *Characteristic Value* that is written is the wrong size, or has an invalid value as defined by the profile, then the value shall not be written and an *Error Response* shall be sent with the *Error Code* set to *Application Error* by the server.

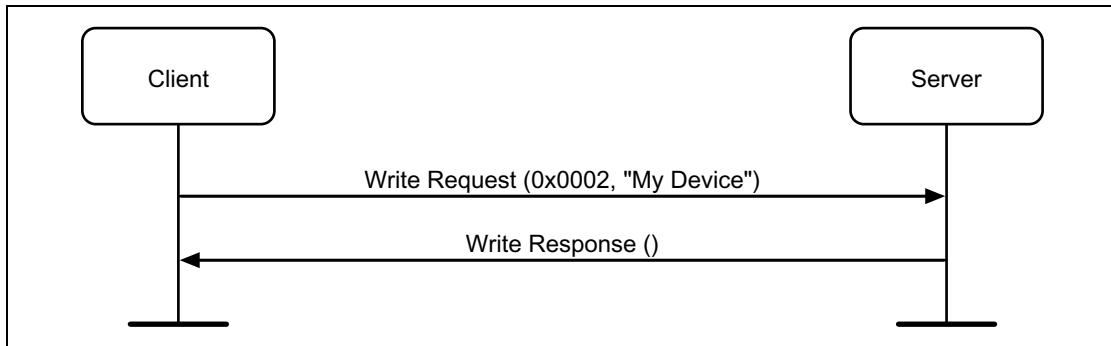


Figure 4.14: Write Characteristic Value example

#### 4.9.4 Write Long Characteristic Values

This sub-procedure is used to write a *Characteristic Value* to a server when the client knows the *Characteristic Value Handle* but the length of the *Characteristic Value* is longer than can be sent in a single *Write Request* Attribute Protocol message.

The Attribute Protocol *Prepare Write Request* and *Execute Write Request* are used to perform this sub-procedure. The *Attribute Handle* parameter shall be set to the *Characteristic Value Handle* of the *Characteristic Value* to be written. The *Part Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the part of the *Attribute Value* that is being written. The *Value Offset* parameter shall be the offset within the *Characteristic Value* to be written. To write the complete *Characteristic Value* the offset should be set to 0x0000 for the first *Prepare Write Request*. The offset for subsequent *Prepare Write Requests* is the next octet that has yet to be written. The *Prepare Write Request* is repeated until the complete *Characteristic Value* has been transferred, after which an *Executive Write Request* is used to write the complete value.

Note: The values in the *Prepare Write Response* do not need to be verified in this sub-procedure.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Prepare Write Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a write operation is not permitted on the *Characteristic Value*. The *Error Code* parameter is set as specified in the Attribute Protocol. If the *Attribute Value* that is written is the wrong size, or has an invalid value as defined by the profile, then the write shall not succeed.

and an *Error Response* shall be sent with the *Error Code* set to *Application Error* by the server.

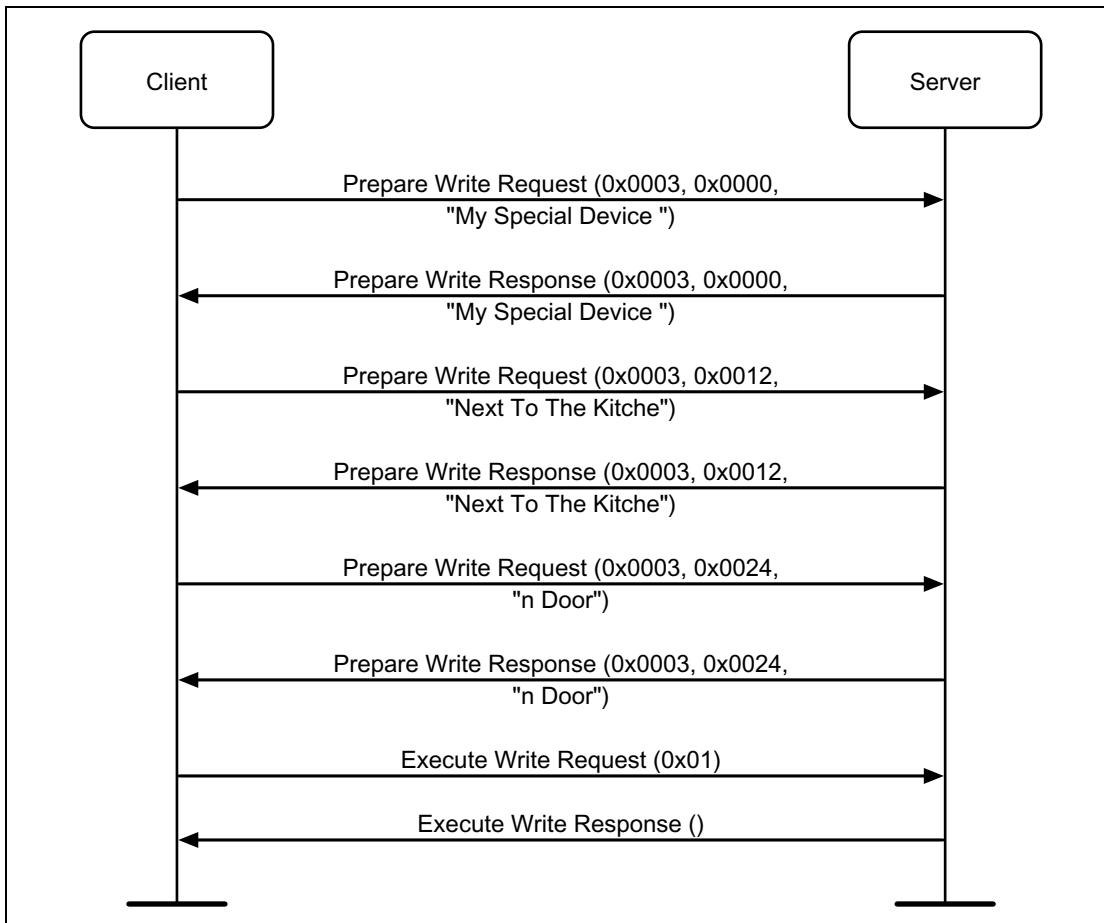


Figure 4.15: Write Long Characteristic Values example

#### 4.9.5 Reliable Writes

This sub-procedure is used to write a *Characteristic Value* to a server when the client knows the *Characteristic Value Handle*, and assurance is required that the correct *Characteristic Value* is going to be written by transferring the *Characteristic Value* to be written in both directions before the write is performed. This sub-procedure can also be used when multiple values must be written, in order, in a single operation.

The sub-procedure has two phases; the first phase prepares the *Characteristic Values* to be written. To do this, the client transfers the *Characteristic Values* to the server. The server checks the validity of the *Characteristic Values*. The client also checks each *Characteristic Value* to verify it was correctly received by the server using the server responses. Once this is complete, the second phase performs the execution of all of the prepared *Characteristic Value* writes on the server from this client.

In the first phase, the Attribute Protocol *Prepare Write Request* is used. The *Attribute Handle* shall be set to the *Characteristic Value Handle* that is to be prepared to write. The *Value Offset* and *Part Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the new *Characteristic Value*.

There are two possible responses; *Prepare Write Response* or *Error Response*.

If the number of prepared write requests exceeds the number of prepared writes supported, then an *Error Response* with the *Error Code* set to *Prepare Queue Full* shall be sent by the server.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Prepare Write Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a write operation is not permitted on the *Characteristic Value*. The *Error Code* parameter is set as specified in the Attribute Protocol.

If a *Characteristic Value* is prepared two or more times during this sub-procedure, then all prepared values are written to the same *Characteristic Value* in the order that they were prepared.

If a *Prepare Write Response* is returned, then the *Value Offset* and *Part Attribute Value* parameter in the response shall be checked with the *Value Offset* and *Part Attribute Value* parameter that was sent in the *Prepare Write Request*; if they are different, then the value has been corrupted during transmission, and the sub-procedure shall be aborted by sending an *Execute Write Request* with the *Flags* parameter set to 0x00 to cancel all prepared writes. The complete sub-procedure may be restarted.

*Multiple Prepare Write Requests* can be sent by a client, each of which will be queued by the server.

In the second phase, the Attribute Protocol *Execute Write Request* is used. The Attribute *Flags* parameter shall be set to 0x01 to immediately write all pending prepared values in the order that they were prepared. The server shall write the prepared writes once it receives this request and shall only send the *Execute Write Response* once all the prepared values have been successfully written. If the *Characteristic Value* that is written is the wrong size, or has an invalid value as defined by the profile, then the write shall not succeed, and an *Error Response* with the *Error Code* set to *Application Error* shall be sent by the server. The state of the *Characteristic Values* that were prepared is undefined.

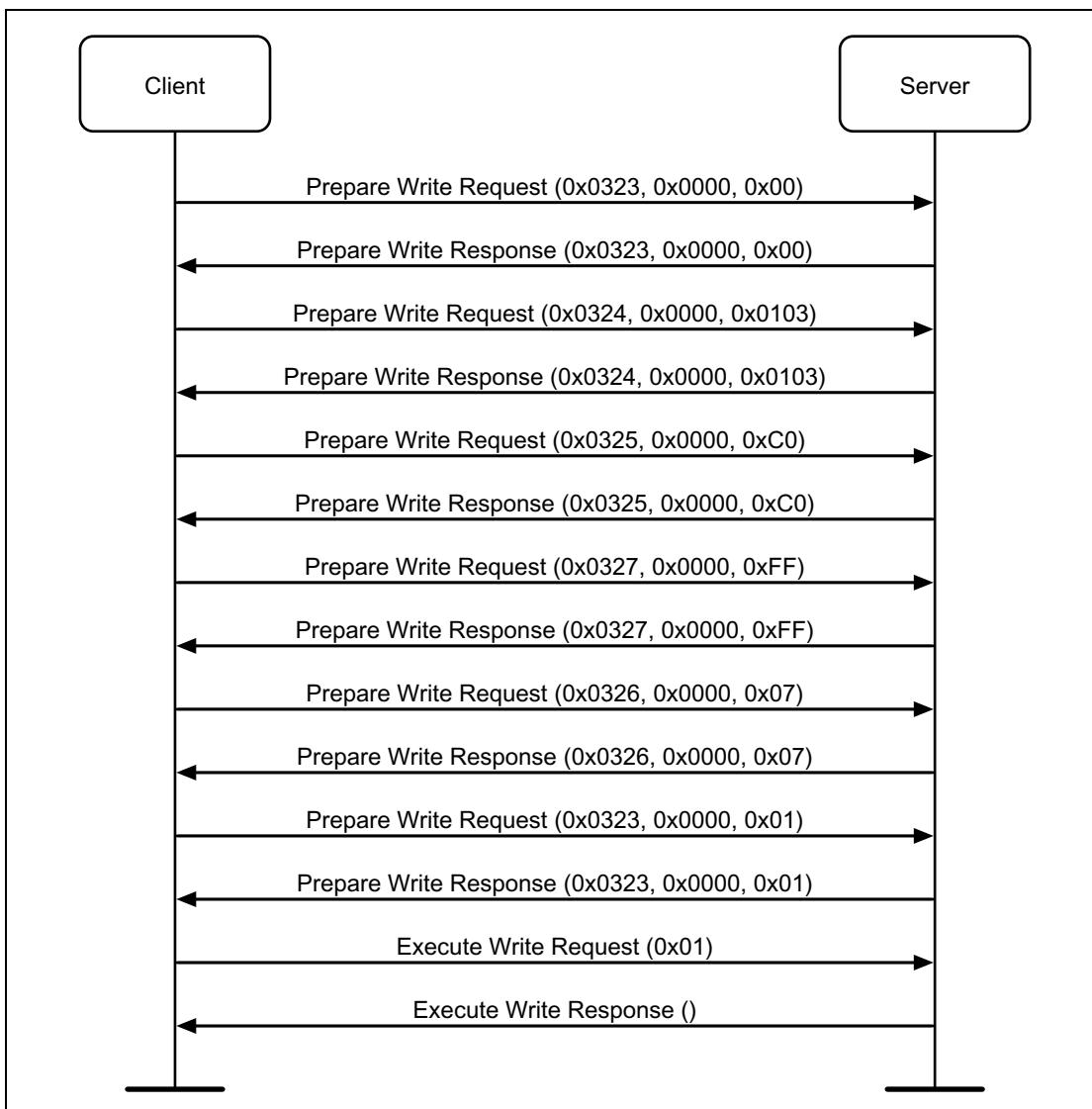


Figure 4.16: Reliable Writes example

## 4.10 CHARACTERISTIC VALUE NOTIFICATION

This procedure is used to notify a client of the value of a *Characteristic Value* from a server. There is one sub-procedure that can be used to notify a value: Notifications. Notifications can be configured using the Client Characteristic Configuration descriptor (See [Section 3.3.3.3](#)).

A profile defines when to use Notifications.

### 4.10.1 Notifications

This sub-procedure is used when a server is configured to notify a *Characteristic Value* to a client without expecting any Attribute Protocol layer acknowledgement that the notification was successfully received.

The Attribute Protocol *Handle Value Notification* is used to perform this sub-procedure. The Attribute Handle parameter shall be set to the *Characteristic Value Handle* being notified, and the *Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the *Characteristic Value*.

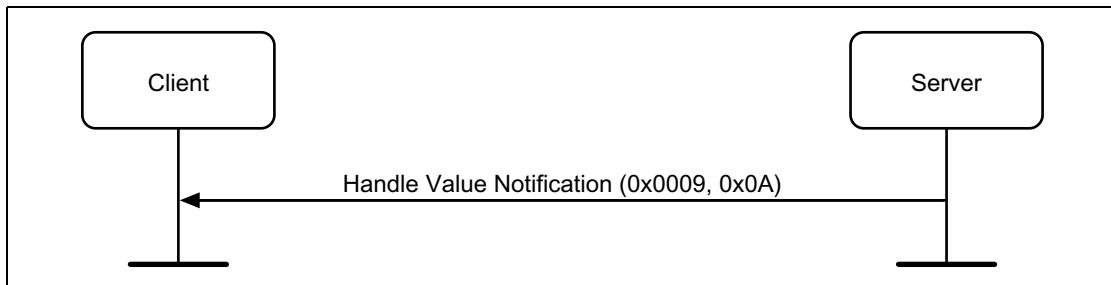


Figure 4.17: Notifications example

## 4.11 CHARACTERISTIC VALUE INDICATIONS

This procedure is used to indicate the *Characteristic Value* from a server to a client. There is one sub-procedure that can be used to indicate a value: Indications. Indications can be configured using the Client Characteristic Configuration descriptor (See [Section 3.3.3.3](#)).

A profile defines when to use Indications.

### 4.11.1 Indications

This sub-procedure is used when a server is configured to indicate a *Characteristic Value* to a client and expects an Attribute Protocol layer acknowledgement that the indication was successfully received.

The Attribute Protocol *Handle Value Indication* is used to perform this sub-procedure. The *Attribute Handle* parameter shall be set to the *Characteristic Value Handle* being indicated, and the *Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the characteristic. Once the *Handle Value Indication* is received by the client, the client shall respond with a *Handle Value Confirmation*.

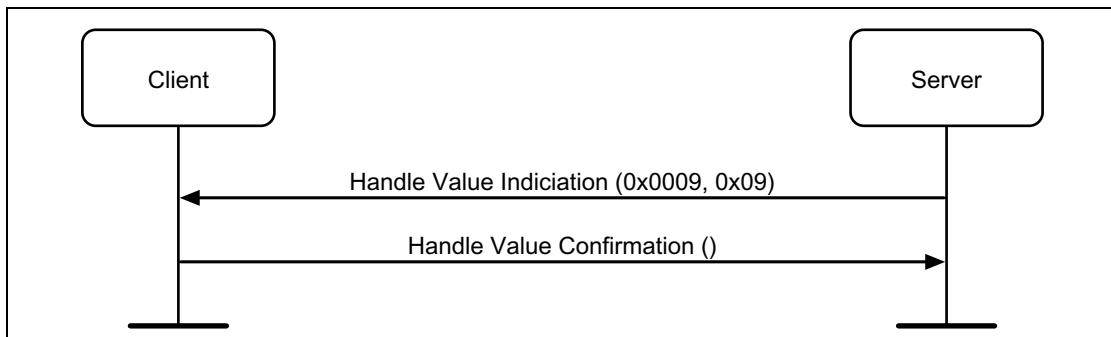


Figure 4.18: Indications example

## 4.12 CHARACTERISTIC DESCRIPTORS

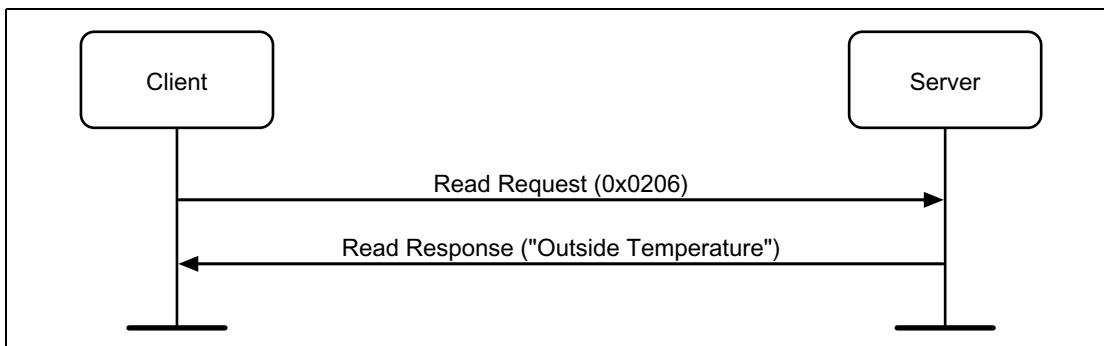
This procedure is used to read and write characteristic descriptors on a server. There are two sub-procedures that can be used to read and write characteristic descriptors: Read Characteristic Descriptors and Write Characteristic Descriptors.

#### **4.12.1 Read Characteristic Descriptors**

This sub-procedure is used to read a characteristic descriptor from a server when the client knows the characteristic descriptor declaration's Attribute handle.

The Attribute Protocol *Read Request* is used for this sub-procedure. The *Read Request* is used with the *Attribute Handle* parameter set to the characteristic descriptor handle. The *Read Response* returns the characteristic descriptor value in the *Attribute Value* parameter.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Read Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a read operation is not permitted on the *Characteristic Value*. The *Error Code* parameter is set accordingly.



*Figure 4.19: Read Characteristic Descriptors example*

#### **4.12.2 Read Long Characteristic Descriptors**

This sub-procedure is used to read a characteristic descriptor from a server when the client knows the characteristic descriptor declaration's Attribute handle and the length of the characteristic descriptor declaration is longer than can be sent in a single Read Response Attribute Protocol message.

The Attribute Protocol Read Blob Request is used to perform this sub-procedure. The Attribute Handle parameter shall be set to the characteristic descriptor handle. The Value Offset parameter shall be the offset within the characteristic descriptor to be read. To read the complete characteristic descriptor the offset should be set to 0x00 for the first Read Blob Request. The offset for subsequent Read Blob Requests is the next octet that has yet to be read. The Read Blob Request is repeated until the Read Blob Response's Part

Attribute Value parameter is zero or an Error Response is sent by the server with the Error Code set to Invalid Offset.

For each Read Blob Request a Read Blob Response is received with a portion of the characteristic descriptor value contained in the Part Attribute Value parameter.

An Error Response shall be sent by the server in response to the Read Blob Request if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a read operation is not permitted on the characteristic descriptor. The Error Code parameter is set accordingly.

Note: The Read Blob Request may be used to read the remainder of an characteristic descriptor value where the first part was read using a simple Read Request.

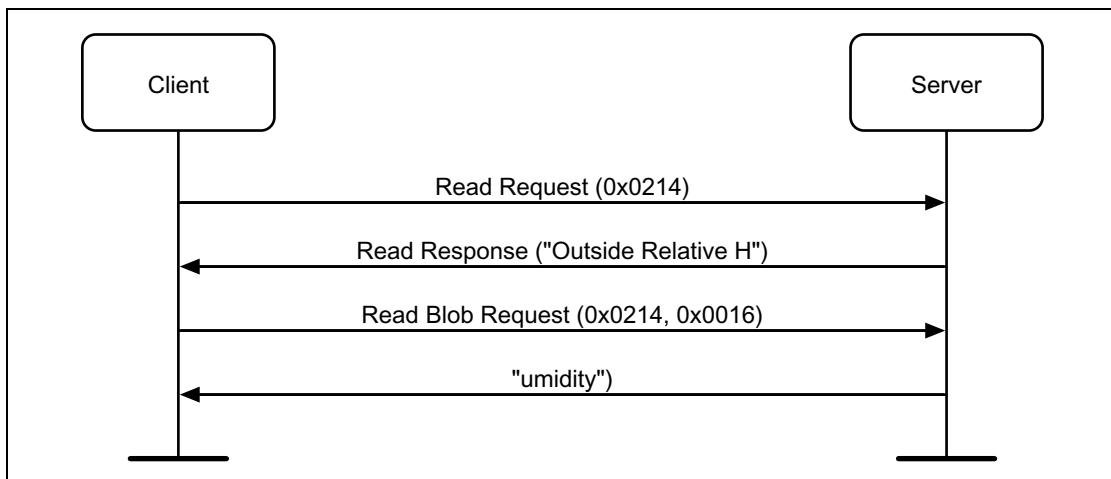


Figure 4.20: Read Long Characteristic Descriptors example

#### 4.12.3 Write Characteristic Descriptors

This sub-procedure is used to write a characteristic descriptor value to a server when the client knows the characteristic descriptor handle.

The Attribute Protocol *Write Request* is used for this sub-procedure. The *Attribute Handle* parameter shall be set to the characteristic descriptor handle. The *Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the new characteristic descriptor value.

A *Write Response* shall be sent by the server if the write of the characteristic descriptor value succeeded.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Write Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a write operation is not permitted on the *Characteristic Value*. The *Error Code* parameter shall be set as specified in the Attribute Protocol. If the characteristic descriptor value that is written

is the wrong size, or has an invalid value as defined by the profile, or the operation is not permitted at this time then the value shall not be written and an *Error Response* shall be sent with the *Error Code* set to *Application Error* by the server.

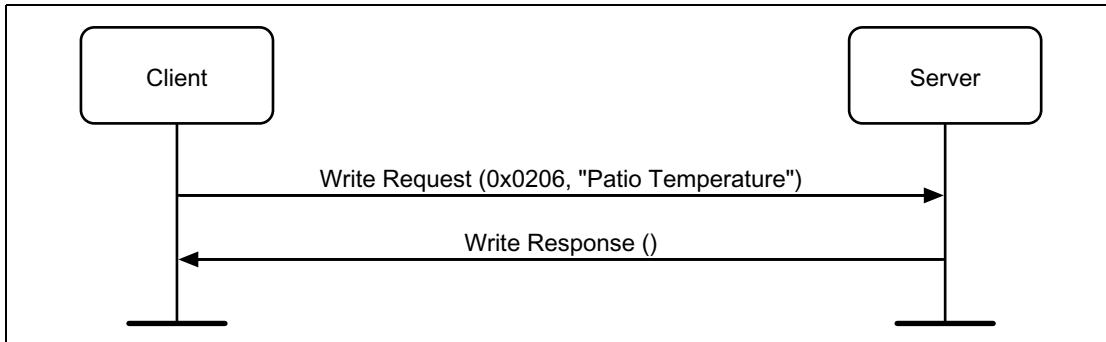


Figure 4.21: Write Characteristic Descriptors example

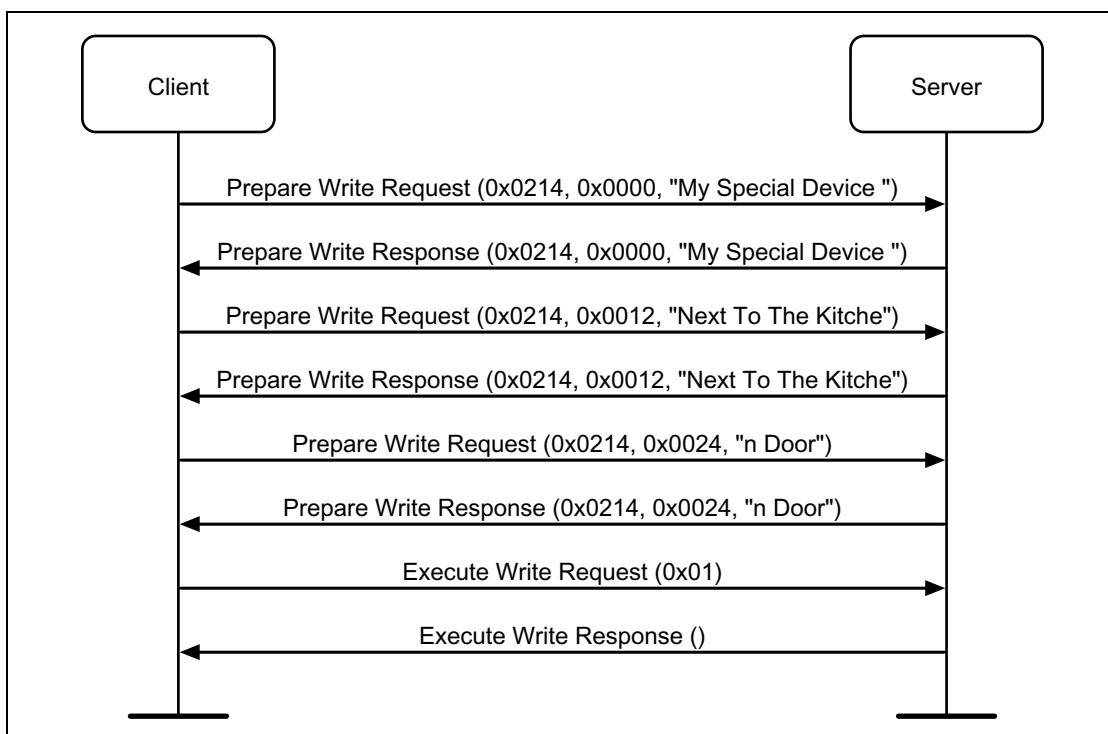
#### 4.12.4 Write Long Characteristic Descriptors

This sub-procedure is used to write a characteristic descriptor value to a server when the client knows the characteristic descriptor handle but the length of the characteristic descriptor value is longer than can be sent in a single Write Request Attribute Protocol message.

The Attribute Protocol *Prepare Write Request* and *Execute Write Request* are used to perform this sub-procedure. The *Attribute Handle* parameter shall be set to the *Characteristic Descriptor Handle* of the *Characteristic Value* to be written. The *Part Attribute Value* parameter shall be set to the part of the *Attribute Value* that is being written. The *Value Offset* parameter shall be the offset within the *Characteristic Value* to be written. To write the complete *Characteristic Value* the offset should be set to 0x0000 for the first *Prepare Write Request*. The offset for subsequent *Prepare Write Requests* is the next octet that has yet to be written. The *Prepare Write Request* is repeated until the complete *Characteristic Value* has been transferred, after which an *Executive Write Request* is used to write the complete value.

Note: The values in the *Prepare Write Response* do not need to be verified in this sub-procedure.

An *Error Response* shall be sent by the server in response to the *Prepare Write Request* or *Executive Write Request* if insufficient authentication, insufficient authorization, insufficient encryption key size is used by the client, or if a write operation is not permitted on the *Characteristic Value*. The *Error Code* parameter is set as specified in the Attribute Protocol. If the *Attribute Value* that is written is the wrong size, or has an invalid value as defined by the profile, then the write shall not succeed and an *Error Response* shall be sent with the *Error Code* set to *Application Error* by the server.



*Figure 4.22: Write Long Characteristic Descriptors example*

## 4.13 GATT PROCEDURE MAPPING TO ATT PROTOCOL OPCODES

The following table describes the mapping of the ATT protocol opcodes to the GATT procedures and sub-procedures. Only those portions of the ATT protocol requests, responses, notifications or indications necessary to implement the mandatory or supported optional sub-procedures is required.

Feature	Sub-Procedure	ATT Protocol Opcodes
Server Configuration	Exchange MTU	Exchange MTU Request Exchange MTU Response Error Response
Primary Service Discovery	Discover All Primary Services	Read By Group Type Request Read By Group Type Response Error Response
	Discover Primary Services By Service UUID	Find By Type Value Request Find By Type Value Response Error Response
Relationship Discovery	Find Included Services	Read By Type Request Read By Type Response Error Response

*Table 4.2: GATT Procedure mapping to ATT protocol opcodes*

Feature	Sub-Procedure	ATT Protocol Opcodes
<b>Characteristic Discovery</b>	Discover All Characteristic of a Service	Read By Type Request Read By Type Response Error Response
	Discover Characteristic by UUID	Read By Type Request Read By Type Response Error Response
<b>Characteristic Descriptor Discovery</b>	Discover All Characteristic Descriptors	Find Information Request Find Information Response Error Response
<b>Characteristic Value Read</b>	Read Characteristic Value	Read Request Read Response Error Response
	Read Using Characteristic UUID	Read By Type Request Read By Type Response Error Response
	Read Long Characteristic Values	Read Blob Request Read Blob Response Error Response
	Read Multiple Characteristic Values	Read Multiple Request Read Multiple Response Error Response
<b>Characteristic Value Write</b>	Write Without Response	Write Command
	Signed Write Without Response	Write Command
	Write Characteristic Value	Write Request Write Response Error Response
	Write Long Characteristic Values	Prepare Write Request Prepare Write Response Execute Write Request Execute Write Response Error Response
	Characteristic Value Reliable Writes	Prepare Write Request Prepare Write Response Execute Write Request Execute Write Response Error Response

Table 4.2: GATT Procedure mapping to ATT protocol opcodes

Feature	Sub-Procedure	ATT Protocol Opcodes
Characteristic Value Notification	Notifications	Handle Value Notification
Characteristic Value Indication	Indications	Handle Value Indication Handle Value Confirmation
Characteristic Descriptor Value Read	Read Characteristic Descriptors	Read Request Read Response Error Response
	Read Long Characteristic Descriptors	Read Blob Request Read Blob Response Error Response
Characteristic Descriptor Value Write	Write Characteristic Descriptors	Write Request Write Response Error Response
	Write Long Characteristic Descriptors	Prepare Write Request Prepare Write Response Prepare Write Request Prepare Write Response Error Response

Table 4.2: GATT Procedure mapping to ATT protocol opcodes

## 4.14 PROCEDURE TIMEOUTS

GATT procedures are protected from failure with an Attribute Protocol transaction timeout.

If the Attribute Protocol transaction times out, the procedure shall be considered to have failed, and the local higher layer shall be notified. No further GATT procedures shall be performed. A new GATT procedure shall only be performed when a new ATT Bearer has been established.

## 5 L2CAP INTEROPERABILITY REQUIREMENTS

The following default values shall be used by an implementation of this profile. The default values used may be different depending on the physical channel that the Attribute Protocol is being sent over.

### 5.1 BR/EDR L2CAP INTEROPERABILITY REQUIREMENTS

Over BR/EDR, L2CAP connection oriented channels are used to transmit Attribute Protocol PDUs. These channels use the channel establishment procedure from L2CAP using the fixed PSM (see [1]) including the configuration procedure to determine the ATT\_MTU. Therefore, the ATT Bearer (or the logical link as referred to in the Attribute Protocol) is, in this case, an established L2CAP connection-oriented channel.

#### 5.1.1 ATT\_MTU

At the end of the L2CAP configuration phase, upon transition to the OPEN state, the ATT\_MTU for this ATT Bearer shall be set to the minimum of the negotiated Maximum Transmission Unit configuration options.

Note: the minimum ATT\_MTU for BR/EDR is 48 octets, as defined by L2CAP in [Vol. 3] Part A, Section 5.1.

#### 5.1.2 BR/EDR Channel Requirements

All Attribute Protocol messages sent by GATT over an L2CAP channel are sent using a dynamic channel ID derived by connecting using a fixed PSM. The use of a fixed PSM allows rapid reconnection of the L2CAP channel for Attribute Protocol as a preliminary SDP query is not required.

All packets sent on this L2CAP channel shall be Attribute PDUs.

PDUs shall be reliably sent.

The flow specification for the Attribute Protocol shall be best effort.

If operating in Basic L2CAP mode, the information payload of the L2CAP B-frame shall be a single Attribute PDU.

The channel shall be encrypted. The Key\_Type shall be either an Unauthenticated Combination Key or an Authenticated Combination Key.

### 5.1.3 BR/EDR Channel Establishment Collisions

The L2CAP connection can be initiated by the client or by the server.

Only one BR/EDR L2CAP connection shall be established between a client and a server. If the L2CAP connection already exists, the client or server shall not initiate the connection request.

If both devices open an L2CAP connection simultaneously both channels shall be closed and each device shall wait a random time (not more than 1 second and not less than 100 ms) and then try to open the L2CAP connection again. If it is known which device is the master, that device can re-try at once.

## 5.2 LE L2CAP INTEROPERABILITY REQUIREMENTS

Over LE, the ATT Bearer (or logical link as referred to in the Attribute Protocol) is the Attribute L2CAP fixed channel.

Note: To remove the ATT Bearer, the physical channel has to be disconnected.

### 5.2.1 ATT\_MTU

Both a GATT client and server implementations shall support an ATT\_MTU not less than the default value.

Default Value	Value for LE
ATT_MTU	23

Table 5.1: LE L2CAP ATT\_MTU

## 5.2.2 LE Channel Requirements

All Attribute Protocol messages sent by GATT over an L2CAP logical link are sent using a fixed channel ID. This enables very fast transmission of the Attribute Protocol messages once a host connection setup is complete. The use of a fixed channel ID also enables the default channel properties to be defined.

L2CAP fixed CID 0x0004 shall be used for the Attribute Protocol. All packets sent on this fixed channel shall be Attribute Protocol PDUs.

The flow specification for the Attribute Protocol shall be best effort.

PDUs shall be reliably sent, and not flushed.

The retransmission and flow control mode for this channel shall be Basic L2CAP mode

The payload of the L2CAP B-frame shall be a single Attribute PDU.

Parameter	Value
MTU	23
Flush Timeout	0xFFFF (Infinite)
QoS	Best Effort
Mode	Basic Mode

Table 5.2: Attribute Protocol Fixed channel configuration parameters

## 6 GAP INTEROPERABILITY REQUIREMENTS

---

### 6.1 BR/EDR GAP INTEROPERABILITY REQUIREMENTS

#### 6.1.1 Connection Establishment

To establish an ATT Bearer, the Channel Establishment procedure (as defined in [Generic Access Profile, Section 7.2](#)) shall be used.

Either device may terminate a link at any time.

No idle mode procedures or modes are defined by this profile.

### 6.2 LE GAP INTEROPERABILITY REQUIREMENTS

#### 6.2.1 Connection Establishment

To establish a link, the Connection Establishment procedure (as defined in [Generic Access Profile, Section 9.3.5](#) through [Section 9.3.8](#)) shall be used.

Either device may terminate a link at any time.

No idle mode procedures or modes are defined by this profile.

#### 6.2.2 Profile Roles

This profile can be used in the following profile roles (as defined in [Generic Access Profile](#)):

- Central
- Peripheral

## 6.3 DISCONNECTED EVENTS

### 6.3.1 Notifications and Indications While Disconnected

If a client has configured the server to send a notification or indication to the client, it shall be configured to allow re-establishment of the connection when it is disconnected.

If the client is disconnected, but intends to become a Central in the connection it shall perform a GAP connection establishment procedure. If the client is disconnected, but intends to become a Peripheral in the connection it shall go into a GAP connectable mode.

A server shall re-establish a connection with a client when an event or trigger operation causes a notification or indication to a client.

If the server is disconnected, but intends to become a Peripheral in the connection it shall go into a GAP connectable mode. If the server is disconnected, but intends to become a Central in the connection it shall perform a GAP connection establishment procedure.

If the server cannot re-establish a connection, then the notification or indication for this event shall be discarded and no further connection re-establishment shall occur, until another event occurs.

## 7 DEFINED GENERIC ATTRIBUTE PROFILE SERVICE

All characteristics defined within this section shall be contained in a primary service with the service UUID set to «GATT Service» as defined in [Section 3.1](#). Only one instance of the GATT service shall be exposed on a GATT server.

[Table 7.1](#) lists characteristics that may be present in the server and the characteristics that may be supported by the client.

Item No.	Characteristic	Ref.	Support in Client	Support in Server
1	Service Changed	<a href="#">7.1</a>	M	C1

*Table 7.1: GATT Profile service characteristic support*

C1: Mandatory if service definitions on the server can be added, changed or removed; otherwise optional

The assigned UUIDs for these characteristics are defined in [\[1\]](#).

### 7.1 SERVICE CHANGED

The «Service Changed» characteristic is a control-point attribute (as defined in [11](#)) that shall be used to indicate to connected devices that services have changed (i.e., added, removed or modified). The characteristic shall be used to indicate to clients that have a trusted relationship (i.e. bond) with the server when GATT based services have changed when they re-connect to the server. See [Section 2.5.2](#).

This *Characteristic Value* shall be configured to be indicated, using the Client Characteristic Configuration descriptor by a client. Indications caused by changes to the Service Changed Characteristic Value shall be considered lost if the client has not enabled indications in the Client Configuration Characteristic Descriptor.

Attribute Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value			Attribute Permission
0xNNNN	0x2803 – UUID for «Characteristic»	Characteristic Properties = 0x20	0xMMMM = Handle of Characteristic Value	0x2A05 – UUID for «Service Changed»	No Authentication, No Authorization

*Table 7.2: Service Changed Characteristic declaration*

The *Service Changed Characteristic Value* is two 16-bit *Attribute Handles* concatenated together indicating the beginning and ending *Attribute Handles* affected by an addition, removal, or modification to a GATT-based service on the server. If a change has been made to any of the GATT service definition

*Generic Attribute Profile (GATT)*

characteristic values other than the *Service Changed* characteristic value, the range shall also include the beginning and ending *Attribute Handle* for the GATT service definition.

<b>Attribute Handle</b>	<b>Attribute Type</b>	<b>Attribute Value</b>		<b>Attribute Permission</b>
0xM-MMM	0x2A05 – UUID for «Service Changed»	Oxuuuu – Start of Affected Attribute Handle Range	Oxuuuu – End of Affected Attribute Handle Range	No Authentication, No Authorization, Not Readable, Not Writable

Table 7.3: *Service Changed Characteristic Value declaration*

There is only one instance of the *Service Changed* characteristic within the GATT service definition. A *Service Changed* characteristic value shall exist for each client with a trusted relationship.

If the list of GATT based services and the service definitions cannot change for the lifetime of the device then this characteristic shall not exist, otherwise this characteristic shall exist.

If the *Service Changed* characteristic exists on the server, the *Characteristic Value Indication* support on the server is mandatory.

The client shall support *Characteristic Value Indication* of the *Service Changed* characteristic.

The *Service Changed* characteristic *Attribute Handle* on the server shall not change if the server has a trusted relationship with any client.

## 8 SECURITY CONSIDERATIONS

### 8.1 AUTHENTICATION REQUIREMENTS

Authentication in the GATT Profile is applied to each characteristic independently. Authentication requirements are specified in this profile, related higher layer specifications or are implementation specific if not specified otherwise.

The GATT Profile procedures are used to access information that may require the client to be authenticated and have an encrypted connection before a characteristic can be read or written.

Over LE, if such a request is issued when the physical link is unauthenticated or unencrypted, the server shall send an *Error Response*. The client wanting to read or write this characteristic can then request that the physical link be authenticated using the GAP authentication procedure, and once this has been completed, send the request again.

Over BR/EDR, if such a request is issued when the physical link is unauthenticated or unencrypted, the server can either send an Error Response or perform the GAP authentication procedure and then upon completion of that procedure send the appropriate response. If the client receives this Error Response it can then request that the physical link be authenticated using the GAP authentication procedure, and once this has been completed send the request again.

The list of services and characteristics that a device supports is not considered private or confidential information, and therefore the Service and Characteristic Discovery procedures shall always be permitted. This implies that an *Insufficient Authentication* status code shall not be used in an *Error Response* for a *Find Information Request*.

Note: A characteristic may be allowed to be read by any device, but only written by an authenticated device. An implementation should take this into account, and not assume that if it can read a *Characteristic Value*, it will also be able to write the *Characteristic Value*. Similarly, if a characteristic can be written, it does not mean the characteristic can also be read. Each individual characteristic could have different security properties.

Once sufficient authentication of the client has been established to allow access to one characteristic within a service definition, a server may also allow access to other characteristics within the service definition depending on the higher level or implementation specific requirements.

A server may allow access to most characteristics within a service definition once sufficient authentication has been performed, but restrict access to other characteristics within the same service definition. This may result due to some



characteristics requiring stronger authentication requirements than currently enabled.

Once a server has authenticated a client for access to characteristics in one service definition, it may automatically allow access to characteristics in other service definitions.

## 8.2 AUTHORIZATION REQUIREMENTS

Authorization in the GATT Profile is applied to each characteristic independently. Authorization requirements may be specified in this profile, related higher layer specifications or are implementation specific if not specified otherwise.

The GATT Profile can be used to access information that may require authorization before a characteristic can be read or written.

If such a request is issued to a characteristic contained in a service definition that is not authorized, the responder shall send an *Error Response* with the status code set to *Insufficient Authorization*.

Once a server has authorized a client for access to characteristics in one group or service definition, it may automatically allow access to characteristics in other service definitions.

## 9 SDP INTEROPERABILITY REQUIREMENTS

A device that supports GATT over BR/EDR shall publish the following SDP record. The GATT Start Handle shall be set to the attribute handle of the «Generic Attribute Profile» service declaration. The GATT End Handle shall be set to the attribute handle of the last attribute within the «Generic Attribute Profile» service definition group.

Item	Definition	Type	Value	Status
Service Class ID List				M
Service Class #0		UUID	GATT Service	M
Protocol Descriptor List				M
Protocol #0		UUID	L2CAP	M
Parameter #0 for Protocol #0	PSM	Uint16	PSM = ATT	M
Protocol #1		UUID	ATT	M
Parameter #0 for Protocol #1	GATT Start Handle	Uint16		M
Parameter #1 for Protocol #1	GATT End Handle	Uint16		M
BrowseGroupList			PublicBrowseRoot	M

Table 9.1: SDP Record for the Generic Attribute Profile

## 10 REFERENCES

---

- [1] Assigned Numbers Specification:  
<https://www.bluetooth.org/Technical/AssignedNumbers/home.htm>

## 11 APPENDIX: EXAMPLE ATTRIBUTE SERVER ATTRIBUTES

The following table shows an example Server and the Attributes contained on the server.

Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value
0x0001	«Primary Service»	«GAP Service»
0x0004	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0006, «Device Name»}
0x0006	«Device Name»	“Example Device”
0x0010	«Primary Service»	«GATT Service»
0x0011	«Characteristic»	{0x26, 0x0012, «Service Changed»}
0x0012	«Service Changed»	0x0000, 0x0000
0x0100	«Primary Service»	«Battery State Service»
0x0106	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0110, «Battery State»}
0x0110	«Battery State»	0x04
0x0200	«Primary Service»	«Thermometer Humidity Service»
0x0201	«Include»	{0x0500, 0x0504, «Manufacturer Service»}
0x0202	«Include»	{0x0550, 0x0568}
0x0203	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0203, «Temperature»}
0x0204	«Temperature»	0x028A
0x0205	«Characteristic Format»	{0x0E, 0xFE, «Celsius», 0x01, «Outside»}
0x0206	«Characteristic User Description»	“Outside Temperature”
0x0210	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0212, «Relative Humidity»}
0x0212	«Relative Humidity»	0x27
0x0213	«Characteristic Format»	{0x04, 0x00, «Percent», «Bluetooth SIG», «Outside»}
0x0214	«Characteristic User Description»	“Outside Relative Humidity”
0x0280	«Primary Service»	«Weight Service»
0x0281	«Include»	{0x0505, 0x0509, «Manufacturer Service»}
0x0282	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0283, «Weight Kg»}
0x0283	«Weight Kg»	0x00005582
0x0284	«Characteristic Format»	{0x08, 0xFD, «Kilogram», «Bluetooth SIG», «Hanging»}

Table 11.1: Example Attribute Server Attributes

## Generic Attribute Profile (GATT)



Handle	Attribute Type	Attribute Value
0x0285	«Characteristic User Description»	“Rucksack Weight”
0x0300	«Primary Service»	«Position Service»
0x0301	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0302, «Latitude Longitude»}
0x0302	«Latitude Longitude»	0x28BEAFA40B320FCE
0x0304	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0305, «Latitude Longitude Elevation»}
0x0305	«Latitude Longitude Elevation»	0x28BEAFA40B320FCE0176
0x0400	«Primary Service»	«Alert Service»
0x0401	«Characteristic»	{0x0E, 0x0402, «Alert Enumeration»}
0x0402	«Alert Enumeration»	0x00
0x0500	«Secondary Service»	«Manufacturer Service»
0x0501	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0502, «Manufacturer Name»}
0x0502	«Manufacturer Name»	“ACME Temperature Sensor”
0x0503	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0504, «Serial Number»}
0x0504	«Serial Number»	“237495-3282-A”
0x0505	«Secondary Service»	«Manufacturer Service»
0x0506	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0507, «Manufacturer Name»}
0x0550	«Secondary Service»	«Vendor Specific Service»
0x0560	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0568, «Vendor Specific Type»}
0x0568	«Vendor Specific Type»	0x56656E646F72
0x0507	«Manufacturer Name»	“ACME Weighing Scales”
0x0508	«Characteristic»	{0x02, 0x0509, «Serial Number»}
0x0509	«Serial Number»	“11267-2327A00239”

Table 11.1: Example Attribute Server Attributes

As can be seen, the attribute server indicates support for nine services: GAP Service, GATT Service, Battery State Service, Thermometer Humidity Service, Weight Service, Position Service, Alert Service, and two Manufacturer Services.

The server contains the following information about each of the services:

- The characteristic containing the name of the device is “Example Device”.
- The characteristic indicating the server supports all the attribute opcodes, and supports two prepared write values.
- The characteristic containing the battery state with a value of 0x04, meaning it is discharging.

---

*Generic Attribute Profile (GATT)*

- The characteristic containing the outside temperature with a value of 6.5 °C.
- The characteristic containing the outside relative humidity with a value of 39%.
- The characteristic containing the weight hanging off the device with a value of 21.89 kg.
- The characteristic containing the position of this device with the value of 68.3585444 degrees north, 18.7830222 degrees east, with an elevation of 374 meters.
- The characteristic containing the temperature sensor manufacturer with the value of ACME Temperature Sensor.
- The characteristic containing the serial number for the temperature sensor with a value of 237495-3282-A.
- The characteristic containing the weighing sensor manufacturer with a value of ACME Weight Scales.
- The characteristic containing the serial number for the weighing sensor with a value of 11267-2327A00239.

The device is therefore on the side of the Abisko Turiststation, Norrbottens Län, Sweden, with a battery in good state, measuring a relatively warm day, with low humidity, and a heavy rucksack.



## Core System Package [Host volume]

Part H

# SECURITY MANAGER SPECIFICATION

***The Security Manager (SM) defines the protocol and behavior to manage pairing, authentication and encryption between LE devices.***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>607</b>
1.1	Scope .....	607
1.2	Conventions .....	607
1.2.1	Bit and Byte Ordering Conventions .....	607
<b>2</b>	<b>Security Manager .....</b>	<b>608</b>
2.1	Introduction .....	608
2.2	Cryptographic Toolbox .....	609
2.2.1	Security function e .....	609
2.2.2	Random Address Hash function ah .....	610
2.2.3	Confirm value generation function c1 .....	610
2.2.4	Key generation function s1 .....	612
2.3	Pairing Methods .....	613
2.3.1	Security Properties .....	613
2.3.2	IO Capabilities .....	615
2.3.3	OOB Authentication Data .....	616
2.3.4	Encryption Key Size .....	616
2.3.5	Pairing Algorithms .....	616
2.3.5.1	Selecting STK Generation Method .....	617
2.3.5.2	Just Works .....	619
2.3.5.3	Passkey Entry .....	619
2.3.5.4	Out of Band .....	620
2.3.5.5	Confirmation, STK generation, and Encryption .....	620
2.3.6	Repeated Attempts .....	622
2.4	Security in Bluetooth low energy .....	622
2.4.1	Definition of Keys and Values .....	622
2.4.2	Generation of Keys .....	623
2.4.2.1	Generation of IRK .....	623
2.4.2.2	Generation of CSRK .....	623
2.4.2.3	Generation of LTK, EDIV and Rand .....	624
2.4.3	Distribution of Keys .....	624
2.4.4	Encrypted Session Setup .....	625
2.4.4.1	Encryption Setup using STK .....	625
2.4.4.2	Encryption Setup using LTK .....	625
2.4.5	Signing Algorithm .....	626
2.4.6	Slave Security Request .....	628

<b>3 Security Manager Protocol .....</b>	<b>630</b>
3.1 Introduction .....	630
3.2 Security Manager Channel over L2CAP .....	630
3.3 Command Format.....	630
3.4 SMP Timeout .....	631
3.5 Pairing Methods.....	632
3.5.1 Pairing Request .....	632
3.5.2 Pairing Response.....	634
3.5.3 Pairing Confirm .....	635
3.5.4 Pairing Random .....	636
3.5.5 Pairing Failed .....	637
3.6 Security in Bluetooth low energy .....	639
3.6.1 Key Distribution .....	639
3.6.2 Encryption Information .....	641
3.6.3 Master Identification .....	641
3.6.4 Identity Information .....	642
3.6.5 Identity Address Information .....	643
3.6.6 Signing Information .....	643
3.6.7 Security Request.....	644
<b>4 References.....</b>	<b>645</b>
<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>646</b>
<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>647</b>

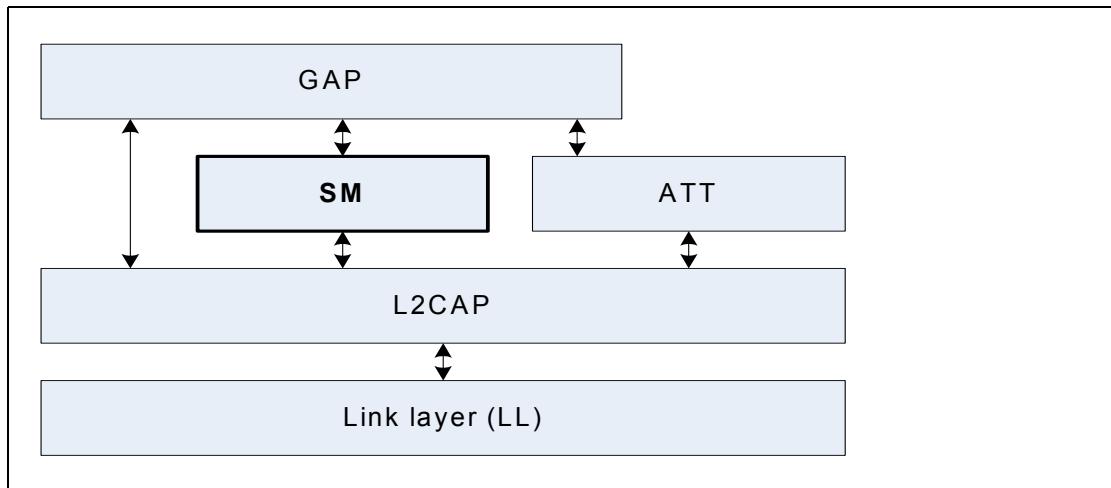
<b>5 Appendices .....</b>	<b>648</b>
<b>5.1 Appendix A – EDIV and Rand Generation .....</b>	<b>648</b>
<b>5.1.1 EDIV Masking.....</b>	<b>648</b>
<b>5.1.1.1 DIV Mask generation function dm.....</b>	<b>648</b>
<b>5.1.1.2 EDIV Generation.....</b>	<b>649</b>
<b>5.1.1.3 DIV Recovery.....</b>	<b>649</b>
<b>5.2 Appendix B – Key Management.....</b>	<b>650</b>
<b>5.2.1 Database Lookup .....</b>	<b>650</b>
<b>5.2.2 Key Hierarchy.....</b>	<b>650</b>
<b>5.2.2.1 Diversifying function d1.....</b>	<b>651</b>
<b>5.2.2.2 Generating Keys from ER.....</b>	<b>652</b>
<b>5.2.2.3 Generating Keys from IR .....</b>	<b>653</b>
<b>5.3 Message Sequence Charts.....</b>	<b>654</b>
<b>5.3.1 Phase 1: Pairing Feature Exchange.....</b>	<b>654</b>
<b>5.3.1.1 Slave Security Request – Master Requests                 Pairing.....</b>	<b>655</b>
<b>5.3.2 Phase 2: Authenticating and Encrypting .....</b>	<b>656</b>
<b>5.3.2.1 Phase 2: Short Term Key Generation – Just                 Works .....</b>	<b>656</b>
<b>5.3.2.2 Phase 2: Short Term Key Generation – Passkey                 Entry .....</b>	<b>657</b>
<b>5.3.2.3 Phase 2: Short Term Key Generation – Out of                 Band .....</b>	<b>658</b>
<b>5.3.3 Phase 3: Transport Specific Key Distribution .....</b>	<b>659</b>
<b>5.3.4 Security Re-established using Previously Distributed                 LTK .....</b>	<b>659</b>
<b>5.3.4.1 Master Initiated Security - Master Initiated Link                 Layer Encryption .....</b>	<b>659</b>
<b>5.3.4.2 Slave Security Request - Master Initiated Link                 Layer Encryption .....</b>	<b>660</b>
<b>5.3.5 Failure Conditions .....</b>	<b>660</b>
<b>5.3.5.1 Pairing Not Supported by Slave.....</b>	<b>660</b>
<b>5.3.5.2 Master Rejects Pairing Because of Key Size.....</b>	<b>661</b>
<b>5.3.5.3 Slave Rejects Pairing Because of Key Size..</b>	<b>661</b>
<b>5.3.5.4 Passkey Entry Failure on Master .....</b>	<b>662</b>
<b>5.3.5.5 Passkey Entry Failure on Slave .....</b>	<b>663</b>
<b>5.3.5.6 Slave Rejects Master's Confirm Value .....</b>	<b>664</b>
<b>5.3.5.7 Master Rejects Slaves Confirm Value .....</b>	<b>665</b>



# 1 INTRODUCTION

## 1.1 SCOPE

The Security Manager defines methods of pairing and key distribution, a protocol for those methods and a security toolbox to be used by those methods and other parts of an LE device.



*Figure 1.1: Relationship of the Security Manager to the rest of the LE Bluetooth architecture*

The document describes master and slave roles in terms of protocol and requirements; these have the same meaning and are mapped to the LE device roles described in [\[Vol 1\] Part A, Section 1.2](#) or BR/EDR device roles (see [\[Vol 1\] Part A, Section 1.1](#)).

## 1.2 CONVENTIONS

### 1.2.1 Bit and Byte Ordering Conventions

When multiple bit fields are contained in a single octet and represented in a drawing in this specification, the least significant (low-order) bits are shown toward the left and most significant (high-order) bits toward the right.

Multiple-octet fields are drawn with the least significant octets toward the left and the most significant octets toward the right. Multiple-octet fields shall be transmitted with the least significant octet first.

Multiple-octet values written in hexadecimal notation have the most significant octet towards the left and the least significant octet towards the right, for example if ‘12’ is the most significant octet and ‘34’ is the least significant octet it would be written as 0x1234.

## 2 SECURITY MANAGER

## 2.1 INTRODUCTION

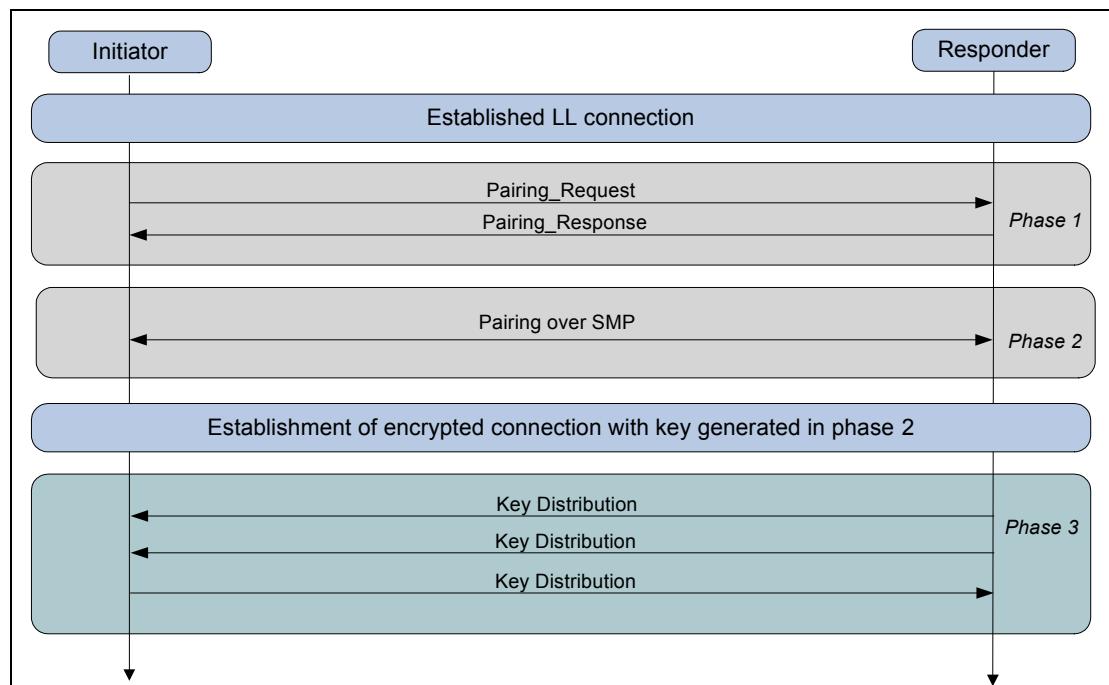
The Security Manager (SM) uses a key distribution approach to perform identity and encryption functionalities in radio communication. This means that each device generates and controls the keys it distributes and no other device affects the generation of these keys. The strength of a key is as strong as the algorithms implemented inside the distributing device.

The security architecture is designed such that memory and processing requirements for a responding device are lower than the memory and processing requirement for an initiating device.

Pairing is performed to establish keys which can then be used to encrypt a link. A transport specific key distribution is then performed to share the keys which can be used to encrypt a link in future reconnections, verify signed data and random address resolution.

Pairing is a three-phase process. The first two phases are always used and may be followed by an optional transport specific key distribution phase (see Figure 2.1):

- Phase 1: Pairing Feature Exchange
  - Phase 2: Short Term Key (STK) Generation
  - Phase 3: Transport Specific Key Distribution



*Figure 2.1: LE Pairing Phases*

The devices shall first exchange IO capabilities in the Pairing Feature Exchange to determine which of the following methods shall be used in Phase 2:

- Just Works
- Passkey Entry
- Out Of Band (OOB)

Optionally, Phase 3 may then be performed to distribute transport specific keys, for example the Long Term Key (LTK) and Encrypted Diversifier (EDIV) values. Phase 1 and Phase 3 are identical regardless of the method used in Phase 2.

Phase 3 shall only be performed on a link which is encrypted using the STK generated in Phase 2. Phase 1 and Phase 2 may be performed on a link which is either encrypted or not encrypted.

## 2.2 CRYPTOGRAPHIC TOOLBOX

In order to support random addressing, pairing and other operations SM provides a toolbox of cryptographic functions. The following cryptographic functions are defined:

- *ah* is used to create a 24-bit hash used in random address creation and resolution.
- *c1* is used to generate confirm values used during the pairing process.
- *s1* is used to generate the STK during the pairing process.

The building block for all the above cryptographic functions is the security function *e*.

### 2.2.1 Security function *e*

Security function *e* generates 128-bit *encryptedData* from a 128-bit key and 128-bit *plaintextData* using the AES-128-bit block cypher as defined in [1]:

$$\text{encryptedData} = \text{e}(\text{key}, \text{plaintextData})$$

The most significant octet of *key* corresponds to *key[0]*, the most significant octet of *plaintextData* corresponds to *in[0]* and the most significant octet of *encryptedData* corresponds to *out[0]* using the notation specified in [1].

Note: The security function *e* can be implemented in a Host or be implemented using the HCI\_LE\_Encrypt command (see [Vol 2] Part E, Section 7.8.22).

## 2.2.2 Random Address Hash function *ah*

The random address hash function *ah* is used to generate a hash value that is used in resolvable private addresses, see [Part C, Section 10.8.2](#).

The following are inputs to the random address hash function *ah*:

*k* is 128 bits

*r* is 24 bits

padding is 104 bits

*r* is concatenated with padding to generate *r'* which is used as the 128-bit input parameter *plaintextData* to security function *e*:

$$r' = \text{padding} \parallel r$$

The least significant octet of *r* becomes the least significant octet of *r'* and the most significant octet of *padding* becomes the most significant octet of *r'*.

For example, if the 24-bit value *r* is 0x423456 then *r'* is 0x000000000000000000000000423456.

The output of the random address function *ah* is:

$$ah(k, r) = e(k, r') \bmod 2^{24}$$

The output of the security function *e* is then truncated to 24 bits by taking the least significant 24 bits of the output of *e* as the result of *ah*.

## 2.2.3 Confirm value generation function *c1*

During the pairing process confirm values are exchanged. This confirm value generation function *c1* is used to generate the confirm values.

The following are inputs to the confirm value generation function *c1*:

*k* is 128 bits

*r* is 128 bits

*pres* is 56 bits

*preq* is 56 bits

*iat* is 1 bit

*ia* is 48 bits

*rat* is 1 bit

*ra* is 48 bits

padding is 32 bits or 0

*iat* is concatenated with 7-bits of 0 to create *iat'* which is 8 bits in length. *iat* is the least significant bit of *iat'*.

*rat* is concatenated 7-bits of 0 to create *rat'* which is 8 bits in length. *rat* is the least significant bit of *rat'*.

*pres*, *preq*, *rat'* and *iat'* are concatenated to generate *p1* which is XORed with *r* and used as 128-bit input parameter *plaintextData* to security function *e*:

$$p1 = pres \parallel preq \parallel rat' \parallel iat'$$

The octet of *iat'* becomes the least significant octet of *p1* and the most significant octet of *pres* becomes the most significant octet of *p1*.

For example, if the 8-bit *iat'* is 0x01, the 8-bit *rat'* is 0x00, the 56-bit *preq* is 0x07071000000101 and the 56 bit *pres* is 0x05000800000302 then *p1* is 0x0500080000030207071000001010001.

*ra* is concatenated with *ia* and *padding* to generate *p2* which is XORed with the result of the security function *e* using *p1* as the input parameter *plaintextData* and is then used as the 128-bit input parameter *plaintextData* to security function *e*:

$$p2 = padding \parallel ia \parallel ra$$

The least significant octet of *ra* becomes the least significant octet of *p2* and the most significant octet of *padding* becomes the most significant octet of *p2*.

For example, if 48-bit *ia* is 0xA1A2A3A4A5A6 and the 48-bit *ra* is 0xB1B2B3B4B5B6 then *p2* is 0x00000000A1A2A3A4A5A6B1B2B3B4B5B6.

The output of the confirm value generation function *c1* is:

$$c1(k, r, preq, pres, iat, rat, ia, ra) = e(k, e(k, r \text{ XOR } p1) \text{ XOR } p2)$$

The 128-bit output of the security function *e* is used as the result of confirm value generation function *c1*.

For example, if the 128-bit *k* is 0x00000000000000000000000000000000, the 128-bit value *r* is 0x5783D52156AD6F0E6388274EC6702EE0, the 128-bit value *p1* is 0x0500080000030207071000001010001 and the 128-bit value *p2* is 0x00000000A1A2A3A4A5A6B1B2B3B4B5B6 then the 128-bit output from the *c1* function is 0x1e1e3fef878988ead2a74dc5bef13b86.

## 2.2.4 Key generation function $s1$

The key generation function  $s1$  is used to generate the STK during the pairing process.

The following are inputs to the key generation function  $s1$ :

$k$  is 128 bits

$r1$  is 128 bits

$r2$  is 128 bits

The most significant 64-bits of  $r1$  are discarded to generate  $r1'$  and the most significant 64-bits of  $r2$  are discarded to generate  $r2'$ .

For example if the 128-bit value  $r1$  is

0x000F0E0D0C0B0A091122334455667788 then  $r1'$  is 0x1122334455667788.

If the 128-bit value  $r2$  is 0x010203040506070899AABBCCDDEEFF00 then  $r2'$  is 0x99AABBCCDDEEFF00.

$r1'$  is concatenated with  $r2'$  to generate  $r'$  which is used as the 128-bit input parameter *plaintextData* to security function  $e$ :

$$r' = r1' \parallel r2'$$

The least significant octet of  $r2'$  becomes the least significant octet of  $r'$  and the most significant octet of  $r1'$  becomes the most significant octet of  $r'$ .

For example, if the 64-bit value  $r1'$  is 0x1122334455667788 and  $r2'$  is

0x99AABBCCDDEEFF00 then  $r'$  is

0x112233445566778899AABBCCDDEEFF00.

The output of the key generation function  $s1$  is:

$$s1(k, r1, r2) = e(k, r')$$

The 128-bit output of the security function  $e$  is used as the result of key generation function  $s1$ .

For example if the 128-bit value  $k$  is

0x00000000000000000000000000000000

and the 128-bit value  $r'$  is

0x112233445566778899AABBCCDDEEFF00

then the output from the key generation function  $s1$  is

0x9a1fe1f0e8b0f49b5b4216ae796da062.

## 2.3 PAIRING METHODS

When pairing is started, the Pairing Feature Exchange shall be initiated by the initiating device. If the responding device does not support pairing or pairing cannot be performed then the responding device shall respond using the Pairing Failed message with the error code “Pairing Not Supported” otherwise it responds with a Pairing Response message.

The Pairing Feature Exchange is used to exchange IO capabilities, OOB authentication data availability, authentication requirements, key size requirements and which transport specific keys to distribute. The IO capabilities, OOB authentication data availability and authentication requirements are used to determine the STK Generation method used in Phase 2.

All the pairing methods use and generate 2 keys:

1. Temporary Key (TK): a 128-bit temporary key used in the pairing process which is used to generate STK (see [Section 2.3.5.5](#)).
2. Short Term Key (STK): a 128-bit temporary key used to encrypt a connection following pairing.

Authentication requirements are set by GAP, (see [\[Part C\], Generic Access Profile, Section 10.3](#)). The authentication requirements include the type of bonding and man-in-the-middle protection (MITM) requirements.

The initiating device indicates to the responding device which transport specific keys it would like to send to the responding device and which keys it would like the responding device to send to the initiator. The responding device replies with the keys that the initiating device shall send and the keys that the responding device shall send. The keys that can be distributed are defined in [Section 2.4.3](#). If the device receives a command with invalid parameters, it shall respond with Pairing Failed command with the error code “Invalid Parameters.”

### 2.3.1 Security Properties

Security properties provided by SM are classified into one of the following categories:

- Authenticated MITM protection
- Unauthenticated no MITM protection
- No security requirements

Authenticated man-in-the-middle (MITM) protection is obtained by using the passkey entry pairing method or may be obtained using the out of band pairing method. To ensure that Authenticated MITM Protection is generated, the selected Authentication Requirements option must have MITM protection specified.

Unauthenticated no MITM Protection does not have protection against MITM attacks.

None of the pairing methods provide protection against a passive eavesdropper during the pairing process as predictable or easily established values for TK are used. If the pairing information is distributed without an eavesdropper being present then all the pairing methods provide confidentiality.

Note: A future version of this specification will include elliptic curve cryptography and Diffie-Hellman public key exchanges that will provide passive eavesdropper protection.

An initiating device shall maintain a record of the Security Properties for the distributed keys in a security database.

A responding device may maintain a record of the distributed key sizes and Security Properties for the distributed keys in a security database. Depending upon the key generation method and negotiated key size a responding device may have to reduce the key length (see [Section 2.3.4](#)) so that the initiator and responder are using identical keys.

Security properties of the STK generated in phase 2 under which the keys are distributed shall be stored in the security database.

### 2.3.2 IO Capabilities

Input and output capabilities of a device are combined to generate its IO capabilities. The input capabilities are described in [Table 2.1](#). The output capabilities are described in [Table 2.2](#).

Capability	Description
No input	Device does not have the ability to indicate 'yes' or 'no'
Yes / No	Device has at least two buttons that can be easily mapped to 'yes' and 'no' or the device has a mechanism whereby the user can indicate either 'yes' or 'no' (see note below).
Keyboard	Device has a numeric keyboard that can input the numbers '0' through '9' and a confirmation. Device also has at least two buttons that can be easily mapped to 'yes' and 'no' or the device has a mechanism whereby the user can indicate either 'yes' or 'no' (see note below).

*Table 2.1: User Input Capabilities*

Note: 'yes' could be indicated by pressing a button within a certain time limit otherwise 'no' would be assumed.

Capability	Description
No output	Device does not have the ability to display or communicate a 6 digit decimal number
Numeric output	Device has the ability to display or communicate a 6 digit decimal number

*Table 2.2: User Output Capabilities*

The individual input and output capabilities are mapped to a single IO capability for that device which is used in the pairing feature exchange. The mapping is described in [Table 2.3](#).

		Local output capacity	
		No output	Numeric output
Local input capacity	No input	NoInputNoOutput	DisplayOnly
	Yes/No	NoInputNoOutput <sup>1</sup>	DisplayYesNo
	Keyboard	KeyboardOnly	KeyboardDisplay

*Table 2.3: I/O Capabilities Mapping*

1. None of the pairing algorithms can use Yes/No input and no output, therefore NoInputNoOutput is used as the resulting IO capability.

### 2.3.3 OOB Authentication Data

An out of band mechanism may be used to communicate information which is used during the pairing process. The information shall be a sequence of Advertising Data structures (see [\[Vol 3\] Part C, Section 11](#)).

If both of the devices have out of band authentication data, then this shall be used to authenticate the devices. The OOB data flag shall be set if a device has out of band authentication data.

### 2.3.4 Encryption Key Size

Each device shall have maximum and minimum encryption key length parameters which defines the maximum and minimum size of the encryption key allowed in octets. The maximum and minimum encryption key length parameters shall be between 7 octets (56 bits) and 16 octets (128 bits), in 1 octet (8 bit) steps. This is defined by a profile or device application.

The smaller value of the initiating and responding devices maximum encryption key length parameters shall be used as the encryption key size.

Both the initiating and responding devices shall check that the resultant encryption key size is not smaller than the minimum key size parameter for that device and if it is, the device shall send the Pairing Failed command with error code “Encryption Key Size”.

The encryption key size may be stored so it can be checked by any service that has minimum encryption key length requirements.

If a key has an encryption key size that is less than 16 octets (128 bits), it shall be created by masking the appropriate MSBs of the generated key to provide a resulting key that has the agreed encryption key size. The masking shall be done after generation and before being distributed (in the case of LTK), used or stored.

For example, if a 128-bit encryption key is

0x123456789ABCDEF0123456789ABCDEF0

and it is reduced to 7 octets (56 bits), then the resulting key is

0x00000000000000003456789ABCDEF0.

### 2.3.5 Pairing Algorithms

The information exchanged in Phase 1 is used to select which STK generation method is used in Phase 2.

The pairing is performed by each device generating a Temporary Key (*TK*). The method to generate *TK* depends upon the pairing method chosen using the algorithm described in [Section 2.3.5.1](#). If Just Works is used then *TK* shall

be generated as defined in [Section 2.3.5.2](#). If Passkey Entry is used then  $TK$  shall be generated as defined in [Section 2.3.5.3](#). If Out Of Band is used then  $TK$  shall be generated as defined in [Section 2.3.5.4](#).

The  $TK$  value shall be used in the authentication mechanism defined in [Section 2.3.5.5](#) to generate the STK and encrypt the link.

### 2.3.5.1 Selecting STK Generation Method

If both devices have out of band authentication data, then the Authentication Requirements Flags shall be ignored when selecting the pairing method and the Out of Band pairing method shall be used. If both devices have not set the MITM option in the Authentication Requirements Flags, then the IO capabilities shall be ignored and the Just Works association model shall be used.

		Initiator			
		OOB Set	OOB Not Set	MITM Set	MITM Not Set
Responder	OOB Set	Use OOB	Check MITM		
	OOB Not Set	Check MITM	Check MITM		
	MITM Set			Use IO Capabilities	Use IO Capabilities
	MITM Not Set			Use IO Capabilities	Use Just Works

Table 2.4: Rules for using Out-of-Band and MITM flags

Otherwise the IO capabilities of the devices shall be used to determine the pairing method as defined in [Table 2.5](#).

		Initiator				
Responder	DisplayOnly	Display YesNo	Keyboard Only	NoInputNo Output	Keyboard Display	
DisplayOnly	Just Works Unauthenticated	Just Works Unauthenticated	Passkey Entry: responder displays, ini- tiator inputs  Authenti- cated	Just Works Unauthenti- cated	Passkey Entry: responder displays, ini- tiator inputs  Authenti- cated	

Table 2.5: Mapping of IO Capabilities to STK Generation Method

		Initiator			
Responder	DisplayOnly	Display YesNo	Keyboard Only	NoInputNo Output	Keyboard Display
Display YesNo	Just Works Unauthenticated	Just Works Unauthenticated	Passkey Entry: responder displays, ini- tiator inputs Authenti- cated	Just Works Unauthenticated	Passkey Entry: responder displays, ini- tiator inputs Authenti- cated
Keyboard Only	Passkey Entry: initia- tor displays, responder inputs Authenti- cated	Passkey Entry: initia- tor displays, responder inputs Authenti- cated	Passkey Entry: initia- tor and responder inputs Authenti- cated	Just Works Unauthenti- cated	Passkey Entry: initia- tor displays, responder inputs Authenti- cated
NoInput- NoOutput	Just Works Unauthenti- cated	Just Works Unauthenti- cated	Just Works Unauthenti- cated	Just Works Unauthenti- cated	Just Works Unauthenti- cated
Keyboard- Display	Passkey Entry: initia- tor displays, responder inputs Authenti- cated	Passkey Entry: initia- tor displays, responder inputs Authenti- cated	Passkey Entry: responder displays, ini- tiator inputs Authenti- cated	Just Works Unauthenti- cated	Passkey Entry: initia- tor displays, responder inputs Authenti- cated

Table 2.5: Mapping of IO Capabilities to STK Generation Method

The generated key will either be an Authenticated MITM Protection or Unauthenticated no MITM Protection key. If the out of band authentication method is used the key is assumed to be Authenticated MITM Protection; however, the exact strength depends upon the method used to transfer the out of band information. The mapping of IO capabilities to an authenticated or unauthenticated key is described in [Table 2.5](#).

If the initiating device has Out of Band data and the responding device does not have Out of Band data then the responding device may send the Pairing Failed command with the error code “OOB Not Available” instead of the Pairing Response command.

If the STK generation method does not result in an STK that provides sufficient security properties then the device shall send the Pairing Failed command with the error code “Authentication Requirements”.

### 2.3.5.2 Just Works

The Just Works STK generation method provides no protection against eavesdroppers or man in the middle attacks during the pairing process. If the attack is not present during the pairing process then confidentiality can be established by using encryption on a future connection.

Both devices set the TK value used in the authentication mechanism defined in [Section 2.3.5.5](#) to zero.

### 2.3.5.3 Passkey Entry

The Passkey Entry STK generation method uses 6 numeric digits passed out of band by the user between the devices. A 6 digit numeric randomly generated passkey achieves approximately 20 bits of entropy.

If the IO capabilities of a device are DisplayOnly or if [Table 2.5](#) defines that the device displays the passkey, then that device shall display a randomly generated passkey value between 000,000 and 999,999. The display shall ensure that all 6 digits are displayed – including zeros. The other device shall allow the user to input a value between 000,000 and 999,999.

If entry of Passkey in UI fails to occur or is canceled then the device shall send Pairing Failed command with reason code “Passkey Entry Failed”.

For example, if the user entered passkey is ‘019655’ then TK shall be 0x00000000000000000000000000000004CC7.

The passkey Entry method provides protection against active “man-in-the-middle” (MITM) attacks as an active man-in-the-middle will succeed with a probability of 0.000001 on each invocation of the method.

The Passkey Entry STK generation method provides very limited protection against eavesdroppers during the pairing process because of the limited range of possible TK values which STK is dependent upon. If the attacker is not present during the pairing process then confidentiality and authentication can be established by using encryption on a future connection.

The TK value shall then be used in the authentication mechanism defined in [Section 2.3.5.5](#).

### 2.3.5.4 Out of Band

An out of band mechanism may be used to communicate information to help with device discovery, for example device address, and the 128-bit *TK* value used in the pairing process. The *TK* value shall be a 128-bit random number using the requirements for random generation defined in [\[Vol 2\] Part H, Section 2](#).

If the OOB communication is resistant to MITM attacks, then this association method is also resistant to MITM attacks. Also, in the Out of Band method, the size of authentication parameter (*TK*) need not be restricted by what the user can comfortably read or type. For that reason, the Out of Band method can be more secure than using the Passkey Entry or Just Works methods. However, both devices need to have matching OOB interfaces.

MITM protection is only provided if an active man-in-the-middle chance of a successful attack has a probability of 0.000001 or less in succeeding.

### 2.3.5.5 Confirmation, STK generation, and Encryption

The initiating device generates a 128-bit random number (*Mrand*).

The initiating device calculates the 128-bit confirm value (*Mconfirm*) using the confirm value generation function *c1* (see [Section 2.2.3](#)) with the input parameter *k* set to *TK*, the input parameter *r* set to *Mrand*, the input parameter *preq* set to Pairing Request command, the input parameter *pres* set to the Pairing Response command, the input parameter *iat* set to the initiating device address type, *ia* set to the initiating device address, *rat* set to the responding device address type and *ra* set to the responding device address:

$$\begin{aligned} Mconfirm = & c1(TK, Mrand, \\ & \text{Pairing Request command, Pairing Response command,} \\ & \text{initiating device address type, initiating device address,} \\ & \text{responding device address type, responding device address}) \end{aligned}$$

Initiating and responding device addresses used for confirmation generation shall be device addresses used during connection setup, see [\[Part C\], Generic Access Profile, Section 9.3](#)

The responding device generates a 128-bit random number (*Srand*).

The responding device calculates the 128-bit confirm value (*Sconfirm*) using the confirm value generation function *c1* (see [Section 2.2.3](#)) with the input parameter *k* set to *TK*, the input parameter *r* set to *Srand*, the input parameter *preq* set to Pairing Request command, the input parameter *pres* set to the Pairing Response command, the input parameter *iat* set to the initiating device address type, *ia* set to the initiating device address, *rat* set to the responding device address type and *ra* set to the responding device address:

$$\begin{aligned} Sconfirm = & c1(TK, Srand, \\ & \text{Pairing Request command, Pairing Response command,} \end{aligned}$$

initiating device address type, initiating device address,  
responding device address type, responding device address)

The initiating device transmits *Mconfirm* to the responding device. When the responding device receives *Mconfirm* it transmits *Sconfirm* to the initiating device. When the initiating device receives *Sconfirm* it transmits *Mrand* to the responding device.

The responding device verifies the *Mconfirm* value by repeating the calculation the initiating device performed, using the *Mrand* value received.

If the responding device's calculated *Mconfirm* value does not match the received *Mconfirm* value from the initiating device then the pairing process shall be aborted and the responding device shall send the Pairing Failed command with reason code "Confirm Value Failed".

If the responding device's calculated *Mconfirm* value matches the received *Mconfirm* value from the initiating device the responding device transmits *Srand* to the initiating device.

The initiating device verifies the received *Sconfirm* value by repeating the calculation the responding device performed, using the *Srand* value received.

If the initiating devices calculated *Sconfirm* value does not match the received *Sconfirm* value from the responding device then the pairing process shall be aborted and the initiating device shall send the Pairing Failed command with the reason code "Confirm Value Failed".

If the initiating device's calculated *Sconfirm* value matches the received *Sconfirm* value from the responding device the initiating device then calculates STK and tells the Controller to enable encryption.

STK is generated using the key generation function *s1* defined in [Section 2.2.4](#) with the input parameter *k* set to *TK*, the input parameter *r1* set to *Srand*, and the input parameter *r2* set to *Mrand*:

$$\text{STK} = \text{s1}(\text{TK}, \text{Srand}, \text{Mrand})$$

If the encryption key size is less than 128 bits then the STK shall be masked to the correct key size as described in [Section 2.3.4](#).

The initiator shall use the generated STK to either enable encryption on the link or if encryption has already been enabled, perform the encryption pause procedure (see [Section 2.4.4.1](#)).

### 2.3.6 Repeated Attempts

When a pairing procedure fails a waiting interval shall pass before the verifier will initiate a new Pairing Request command or Security Request command to the same claimant, or before it will respond to a Pairing Request command or Security Request command initiated by a device claiming the same identity as the failed device. For each subsequent failure, the waiting interval shall be increased exponentially. That is, after each failure, the waiting interval before a new attempt can be made, could be for example, twice as long as the waiting interval prior to the previous attempt<sup>1</sup>. The waiting interval should be limited to a maximum.

The maximum waiting interval depends on the implementation. The waiting time shall exponentially decrease to a minimum when no new failed attempts are made during a certain time period. This procedure prevents an intruder from repeating the pairing procedure with a large number of different keys.

## 2.4 SECURITY IN BLUETOOTH LOW ENERGY

Security shall be initiated by the Security Manager in the device in the master role. The device in the slave role shall be the responding device. The slave device may request the master device to initiate pairing or other security procedures, see [Section 2.4.6](#).

The slave in the key distribution phase gives keys to the master so a reconnection can be encrypted, its random addresses can be resolved, or the master device can verify signed data from the slave.

The master may also provide keys to the slave device so a reconnection can be encrypted if the roles are reversed, the master's random addresses can be resolved, or the slave can verify signed data from the master.

### 2.4.1 Definition of Keys and Values

LE security uses the following keys and values for encryption, signing, and random addressing:

1. Identity Resolving Key (IRK) is a 128-bit key used to generate and resolve random addresses.
2. Connection Signature Resolving Key (CSRK) is a 128-bit key used to sign data and verify signatures on the receiving device.
3. Long Term Key (LTK) is a 128-bit key used to generate the contributory session key for an encrypted connection. Link Layer encryption is described in [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.1.3](#).

---

1. Another appropriate integer value larger than 1 may be used.

4. Encrypted Diversifier (EDIV) is a 16-bit stored value used to identify the LTK. A new EDIV is generated each time a unique LTK is distributed.
5. Random Number (Rand) is a 64-bit stored value used to identify the LTK. A new Rand is generated each time a unique LTK is distributed.

## 2.4.2 Generation of Keys

The keys used in SM are distributed rather than contributed to by both devices.

Any method of generation of LTK, CSRK, or IRK that results in the keys having 128 bits of entropy can be used, as the generation method is not visible outside the slave device (see [Section 5.2](#)). The keys shall not be generated only from information that is distributed to the master device or only from information that is visible outside of the slave device.

### 2.4.2.1 Generation of IRK

The Identity Resolving Key (IRK) is used for resolvable private address construction (see [\[Part C\], Generic Access Profile, Section 10.8.2](#)). A master that has received IRK from a slave can resolve that slave's random device addresses. A slave that has received IRK from a master can resolve that master's random device addresses. The privacy concept only protects against devices that are not part of the set to which the IRK has been given.

IRK can be assigned, or randomly generated by the device during manufacturing, or some other method could be used. If IRK is randomly generated then the requirements for random generation defined in [\[Vol 2\] Part H, Section 2](#) shall be used.

The encryption key size does not apply to IRK; therefore, its size does not need to be reduced before distribution.

### 2.4.2.2 Generation of CSRK

The Connection Signature Resolving Key (CSRK) is used to sign data in a connection. A device that has received CSRK can verify signatures generated by the distributing device. The signature only protects against devices that are not part of the set to which CSRK has been given.

CSRK can be assigned or randomly generated by the device during manufacturing, or some other method could be used. If CSRK is randomly generated then the requirements for random generation defined in [\[Vol 2\] Part H, Section 2](#) shall be used.

The encryption key size does not apply to CSRK, therefore its size does not need to be reduced before distribution.

#### 2.4.2.3 Generation of LTK, EDIV and Rand

Devices which support encryption in the Link Layer Connection State in the Slave Role shall be capable of generating LTK, EDIV, and Rand.

The EDIV and Rand are used by the slave device to establish a previously shared LTK in order to start an encrypted connection with a previously paired master device.

The generated LTK size must not exceed the negotiated encryption key size and its size may need to be reduced (see [Section 2.3.4](#)).

New values of LTK, EDIV, and Rand shall be generated each time they are distributed.

The slave device may store the mapping between EDIV, Rand and LTK in a security database so the correct LTK value is used when the master device requests encryption. Depending upon the LTK generation method additional information may be stored, for example the size of the distributed LTK.

The master device may also distribute EDIV, Rand, and LTK to the slave device which can be used to encrypt a reconnection if the device roles are reversed in a future connection.

#### **2.4.3 Distribution of Keys**

The slave may distribute to the master the following keys:

- LTK, EDIV, and Rand
- IRK
- CSRK

The master device may distribute to the slave the following keys:

- LTK, EDIV, and Rand
- IRK
- CSRK

The security properties of the distributed keys shall be set to the security properties of the STK that was used to distribute them. For example if STK has Unauthenticated no MITM Protection security properties then the distributed keys shall have Unauthenticated no MITM Protection security properties.

The link shall be encrypted or re-encrypted using STK generated in Phase 2 (see [Section 2.4.4.1](#)) before any keys are distributed.

Note: The distributed EDIV and Rand values are transmitted in clear text by the master device to the slave device during encrypted session setup.

The BD\_ADDR that is received in the Identity Address Information command shall only be considered valid once a reconnection has occurred using the BD\_ADDR and LTK distributed during that pairing. Once this is successful the BD\_ADDR and the distributed keys shall be associated with that device in the security database.

A device may request encrypted session setup to use the LTK, EDIV, and Rand values distributed by the slave device when the key distribution phase has completed; however, this does not provide any additional security benefit. If an attacker has established the distributed LTK value then performing encrypted session setup to use the distributed values does not provide any protection against that attacker.

#### **2.4.4 Encrypted Session Setup**

During the encryption session setup the master device sends a 16-bit Encrypted Diversifier value, *EDIV*, and a 64-bit Random Number, *Rand*, distributed by the slave device during pairing, to the slave device. The master's Host provides the Link Layer with the Long Term Key to use when setting up the encrypted session. The slave's Host receives the *EDIV* and *Rand* values and provides a Long Term Key to the slaves Link Layer to use when setting up the encrypted link.

##### 2.4.4.1 Encryption Setup using STK

To distribute LTK and other keys in pairing Phase 3 an encrypted session needs to be established (see [Section 2.3.5.5](#)).

The encrypted session is setup using STK generated in Phase 2 (see [Section 2.3.5.5](#)) as the Long Term Key provided to the Link Layer, (see [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.1.3.1](#)) *EDIV*, and *Rand* values shall be set to zero.

If the link is already encrypted then the encryption pause procedure is performed using STK generated in Phase 2 as the Long Term Key provided to the Link Layer (see [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.1.3.2](#)). *EDIV* and *Rand* values shall be set to zero.

##### 2.4.4.2 Encryption Setup using LTK

The master device must have the security information (*LTK*, *EDIV*, and *Rand*) distributed by the slave device to setup an encrypted session.

The master initiates the encrypted session using *LTK* distributed by the slave device as the Long Term Key, and the *EDIV* and *Rand* values distributed by the slave device; see [\[Vol 6\] Part B, Section 5.1.3.1](#).

If the link is already encrypted the encryption pause procedure is performed using *LTK* distributed by the slave device as the Long Term Key, and the *EDIV*

and Rand values distributed by the slave device; see [Vol 6] Part B, Section 5.1.3.2.

The *EDIV* and *Rand* values are used to establish *LTK* which is used as the Long Term Key on the slave device. If LTK cannot be established from EDIV and Rand values then the slave shall reject the request to encrypt the link and may optionally disconnect the link.

When the security information is stored, subsequent encryption setups may fail if the remote device has deleted the security information. Table 2.6 defines what shall be done depending on the type of the security properties and whether or not bonding was performed when subsequent encryption setup fails.

Security Properties	Devices Bonded	Action to take when enabling encryption fails
Unauthenticated, no MITM protection	No	Depends on security policy of the device: • Option 1: Automatically initiate pairing • Option 2: Notify user and ask if pairing is ok. Option 1 is recommended.
Unauthenticated, no MITM protection	Yes	Notify user of security failure
Authenticated MITM protection	No	Depends on security policy of the device: • Option 1: Automatically initiate pairing • Option 2: Notify user and ask if pairing is ok. Option 2 is recommended.
Authenticated MITM protection	Yes	Notify user of security failure

Table 2.6: Action after encryption setup failure

#### 2.4.5 Signing Algorithm

An LE device can send signed data without having to establish an encrypted session with a peer device. Data shall be signed using CSRK. A device performing signature verification must have received CSRK from the signing device. The sending device will use its CSRK to sign the transmitted data.

The following are inputs to the signing algorithm:

*m* is variable length

*k* is 128 bits

*SignCounter* is 32 bits

Signing shall be performed using the algorithm defined in the NIST Special Publication 800-38B (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/PubsSPs.html>) using

AES-128 as the block cipher. NIST SP 800-38B defines the message authentication code (MAC) generation function:

$$\text{MAC} = \text{CMAC}(K, M, T\text{len})$$

The bit length of the MAC ( $T\text{len}$ ) shall be 64 bits. The key used for signature generation ( $k$ ) shall be set to CSRK.

The message to be signed ( $M$ ) by the CMAC function is the concatenation of the variable length message to be signed ( $m$ ) and 4 octet string representing the 32-bit counter value ( $\text{SignCounter}$ ) least significant octet first.

$$M = m \parallel \text{SignCounter}$$

For example, if data to be signed is the 7 octet sequence '3456789ABCDEF1' and  $\text{SignCounter}$  is set to 67653874 (0x040850F2) then  $M$  is the octet sequence '3456789ABCDEF1F2500804'. Examples of CMAC generation using AES-128 as the block cipher are included in NIST Special Publication 800-38B Appendix.

The  $\text{SignCounter}$  shall be initialized to zero when CSRK is generated and incremented for every message that is signed with a given CSRK.

Note: If a device generates 100,000 signed events a day, a 32-bit counter will wrap after approximately 117 years.

The 64-bit result of the CMAC function is used as the result of the signing algorithm.

To verify a signature a device computes the MAC of a received message and  $\text{SignCounter}$  and compares it with the received MAC. If the MAC does not match then the signature verification has failed. If the MACs match then the signature verification has succeeded.

The device performing verification should store the last verified  $\text{SignCounter}$  in the security database and compare it with a received  $\text{SignCounter}$  to prevent replay attacks. If the received  $\text{SignCounter}$  is greater than the stored value then the message has not been seen by the local device before and the security database can be updated.

## 2.4.6 Slave Security Request

The slave device may request security by transmitting a Security Request command to the master. When a master device receives a Security Request command it may encrypt the link, initiate the pairing procedure, or reject the request.

The slave shall not send the Security Request command if the pairing procedure is in progress, or if the encryption procedure is in progress.

The Security Request command includes the required security properties. A security property of MITM protection required shall only be set if the slave's IO capabilities would allow the Passkey Entry association model to be used or out of band authentication data is available.

The master shall ignore the slave's Security Request if the master has sent a Pairing Request without receiving a Pairing Response from the slave or if the master has initiated encryption mode setup.

If pairing or encryption mode is not supported or cannot be initiated at the time when the slave's Security Request Command is received, then the master shall respond with a Pairing Failed Command with the reason set to "Pairing Not Supported."

After receiving a Security Request, the master shall first check whether it has the required security information to enable encryption; see [Section 2.4.4.2](#). If this information is missing or does not meet the security properties requested by the slave, then the master shall initiate the pairing procedure. If the pairing procedure is successful, the master's security database is updated with the keys and security properties are distributed during the pairing procedure.

If the master has the required security information to enable encryption and it meets the security properties request by the slave, it shall perform encryption setup using LTK, see [Section 2.4.4.2](#).

[Figure 2.2](#) shows a summary of the actions and decisions that a master shall take when receiving a Security Request.

The slave shall check that any Pairing Request command received from the master after sending a Security Request command contains Authentication Requirements that meet the requested security properties.

If the slave requests a security property that is not Just Works and receives an encryption procedure request after sending a Security Request command then it shall check that any existing Security Information is of sufficient security properties.

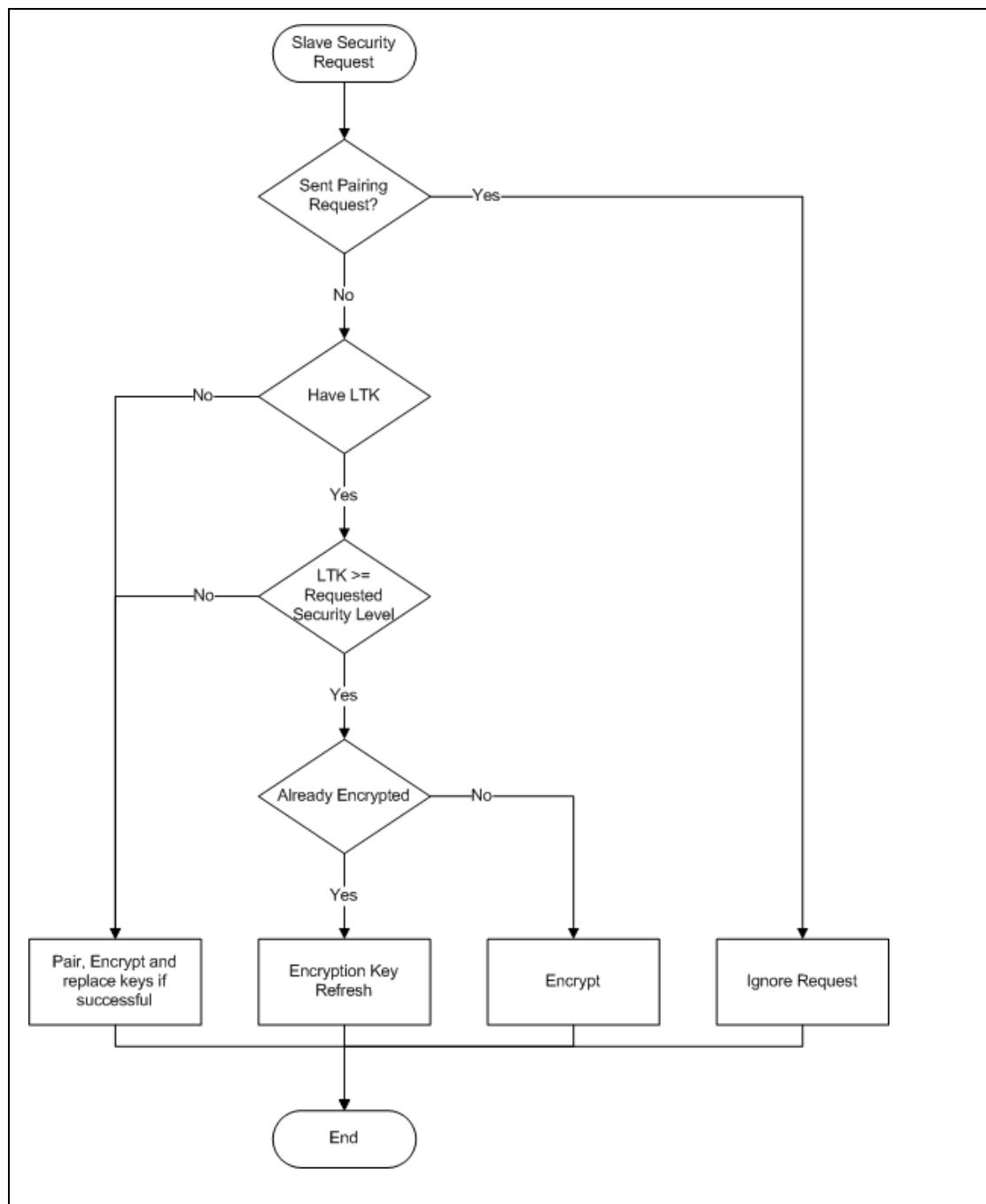
*Security Manager Specification*

Figure 2.2: Master actions after receiving Security Request

## 3 SECURITY MANAGER PROTOCOL

### 3.1 INTRODUCTION

The Security Manager Protocol (SMP) is used for pairing and transport specific key distribution.

### 3.2 SECURITY MANAGER CHANNEL OVER L2CAP

All SMP commands are sent over the Security Manager Channel which is an L2CAP fixed channel (see [\[Vol 3\] Part A, Section 2.1](#)). The configuration parameters for the Security Manager Channel shall be as shown below in [Table 3.1](#).

Parameter	Value
MTU	23
Flush Timeout	0xFFFF (Infinite)
QoS	Best Effort
Mode	Basic Mode

Table 3.1: Security Manager Channel Configuration Parameters

### 3.3 COMMAND FORMAT

The general format for all SMP commands is shown in [Figure 3.1](#).

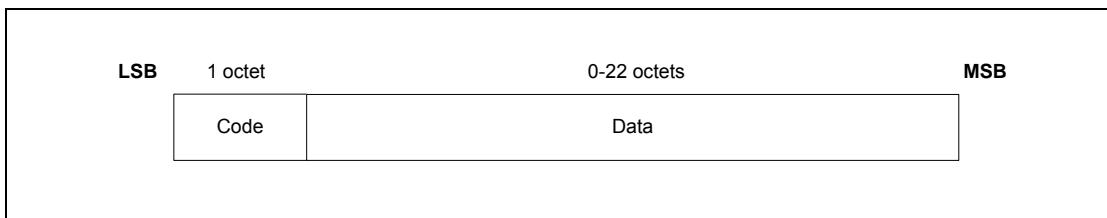


Figure 3.1: SMP Command Format

The following are the fields shown:

- **Code (1 octet)**

The Code field is one octet long and identifies the type of command. [Table 3.2](#) lists the codes defined by this document. If a packet is received with a reserved Code it shall be ignored.

Code	Description
0x00	Reserved

Table 3.2: SMP Command Codes

Code	Description
0x01	Pairing Request
0x02	Pairing Response
0x03	Pairing Confirm
0x04	Pairing Random
0x05	Pairing Failed
0x06	Encryption Information
0x07	Master Identification
0x08	Identity Information
0x09	Identity Address Information
0x0A	Signing Information
0x0B	Security Request
0x0C – 0xFF	Reserved

Table 3.2: SMP Command Codes

- *Data (0 or more octets)*

The Data field is variable in length. The Code field determines the format of the Data field.

If a device does not support pairing then it shall respond with a Pairing Failed command with the reason set to “Pairing Not Supported” (see [Section 3.5.5](#)) when any command is received. If pairing is supported then all commands shall be supported.

### 3.4 SMP TIMEOUT

To protect the Security Manager protocol from stalling, a Security Manager Timer is used. Upon transmission of the Pairing Request command or reception of the Pairing Request command, the Security Manager Timer shall be reset and started.

The Security Manager Timer shall be reset when an L2CAP SMP command is queued for transmission.

When SMP completes, the Security Manager Timer shall be stopped.

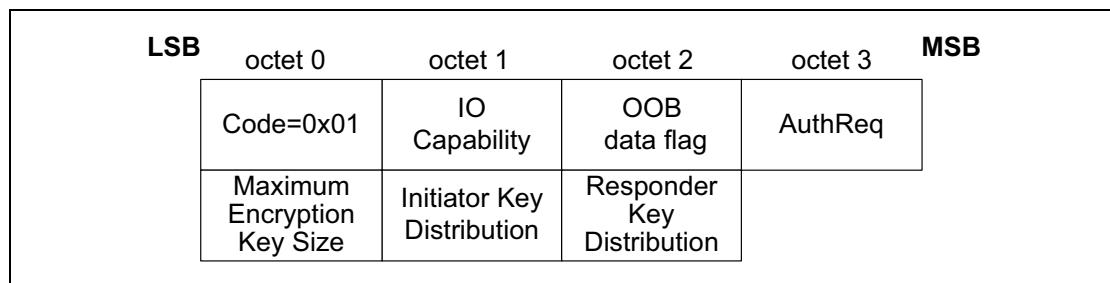
If the Security Manager Timer reaches 30 seconds, the procedure shall be considered to have failed, and the local higher layer shall be notified. No further SMP commands shall be sent over the L2CAP Security Manager Channel. A new SM procedure shall only be performed when a new physical link has been established.

## 3.5 PAIRING METHODS

The SMP commands defined in this section are used to perform Pairing Feature Exchange and STK Generation (see [Section 2.1](#)).

### 3.5.1 Pairing Request

The initiator starts the Pairing Feature Exchange by sending a Pairing Request command to the responding device. The Pairing Request command is defined in [Figure 3.2](#).



*Figure 3.2: Pairing Request Packet*

The following data fields are used:

- *IO Capability (1 octet)*

[Table 3.3](#) defines the values which are used when exchanging IO capabilities (see [Section 2.3.2](#)).

Value	Description
0x00	DisplayOnly
0x01	DisplayYesNo
0x02	KeyboardOnly
0x03	NoInputNoOutput
0x04	KeyboardDisplay
0x05-0xFF	Reserved

*Table 3.3: IO Capability Values*

- *OOB data flag (1 octet)*

[Table 3.4](#) defines the values which are used when indicating whether OOB authentication data is available (see [Section 2.3.3](#)).

Value	Description
0x00	OOB Authentication data not present

*Table 3.4: OOB Data Present Values*

Value	Description
0x01	OOB Authentication data from remote device present
0x02-0xFF	Reserved

Table 3.4: OOB Data Present Values

- *AuthReq (1 octet)*

The AuthReq field is a bit field that indicates the requested security properties (see [Section 2.3.1](#)) for STK and GAP bonding information (see [Part C, Section 9.4](#)).

[Figure 3.3](#) defines the authentication requirements bit field.

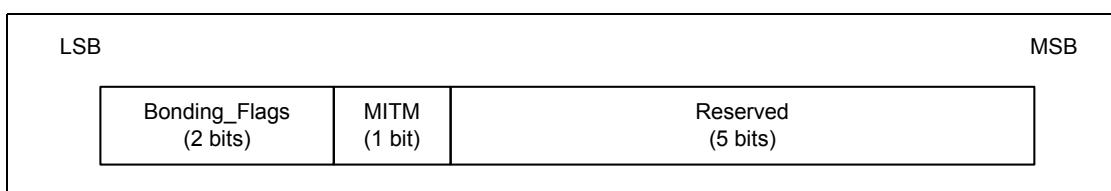


Figure 3.3: Authentication Requirements Flags

The Bonding\_Flags field is a 2-bit field that indicates the type of bonding being requested by the initiating device as defined in [Table 3.5](#).

Bonding_Flags $b_1 b_0$	Bonding Type
00	No Bonding
01	Bonding
10	Reserved
11	Reserved

Table 3.5: Bonding Flags

The MITM field is a 1-bit flag that is set to one if the device is requesting MITM protection, otherwise it shall be set to 0. A device sets the MITM flag to one to request an Authenticated security property for STK.

The reserved 5-bit field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

- *Maximum Encryption Key Size (1 octet)*

This value defines the maximum encryption key size in octets that the device can support. The maximum key size shall be in the range 7 to 16 octets.

- *Initiator Key Distribution (1 octet)*

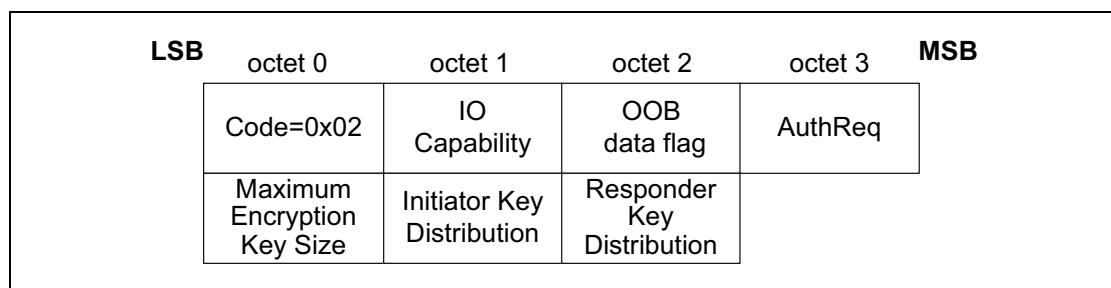
The Initiator Key Distribution field indicates which keys the initiator is requesting to distribute or use during the Transport Specific Key Distribution phase (see [Section 2.4.3](#)). The Initiator Key Distribution field format and usage is defined in [Section 3.6.1](#).

- *Responder Key Distribution (1 octet)*

The Responder Key Distribution field indicates which keys the initiator is requesting the responder to distribute or use during the Transport Specific Key Distribution phase (see [Section 2.4.3](#)). The Responder Key Distribution field format and usage is defined in [Section 3.6.1](#).

### 3.5.2 Pairing Response

This command is used by the responding device to complete the Pairing Feature Exchange after it has received a Pairing Request command from the initiating device, if the responding device allows pairing. The Pairing Response command is defined in [Figure 3.4](#).



*Figure 3.4: Pairing Response Packet*

The following data fields are used:

- *IO Capability (1 octet)*

[Table 3.3](#) defines the values which are used when exchanging IO capabilities (see [Section 2.3.2](#)).

- *OOB data flag (1 octet)*

[Table 3.4](#) defines the values which are used when indicating whether OOB authentication data is available (see [Section 2.3.3](#)).

- *AuthReq (1 octet)*

The AuthReq field is a bit field that indicates the requested security properties (see [Section 2.3.1](#)) for STK and GAP bonding information (see [Part C, Section 9.4](#)).

[Figure 3.3](#) defines the authentication requirements bit field.

The Bonding\_Flags field is a 2-bit field that indicates the type of bonding being requested by the responding device as defined in [Table 3.5](#).

The MITM field is a 1-bit flag that is set to one if the device is requesting MITM protection, otherwise it shall be set to 0. A device sets the MITM flag to one to request an Authenticated security property for STK.

The reserved 5-bit field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

- *Maximum Encryption Key Size (1 octet)*

This value defines the maximum encryption key size in octets that the device can support. The maximum key size shall be in the range 7 to 16 octets.

- *Initiator Key Distribution (1 octet)*

The Initiator Key Distribution field defines which keys the initiator shall distribute and use during the Transport Specific Key Distribution phase (see [Section 2.4.3](#)). The Initiator Key Distribution field format and usage are defined in [Section 3.6.1](#).

- *Responder Key Distribution (1 octet)*

The Responder Key Distribution field defines which keys the responder shall distribute and use during the Transport Specific Key Distribution phase (see [Section 2.4.3](#)). The Responder Key Distribution field format and usage are defined in [Section 3.6.1](#).

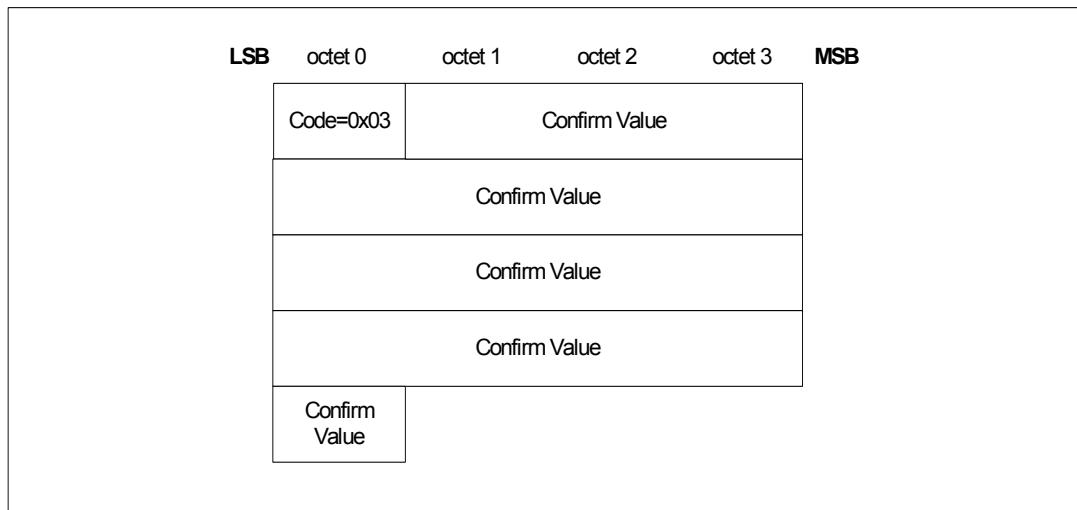
### 3.5.3 Pairing Confirm

This is used following a successful Pairing Feature Exchange to start STK Generation. The Pairing Confirm command is defined in [Figure 3.5](#).

This command is used by both devices to send the confirm value to the peer device, see [Section 2.3.5.5](#).

The initiating device starts STK Generation by sending the Pairing Confirm command to the responding device. If the initiating device wants to abort pairing it can transmit a Pairing Failed command instead.

The responding device sends the Pairing Confirm command after it has received a Pairing Confirm command from the initiating device.



*Figure 3.5: Pairing Confirm Packet*

The following data field is used:

- *Confirm value (16 octets)*

The initiating device sends  $M_{confirm}$  and the responding device sends  $S_{confirm}$  as defined in [Section 2.3.5.5](#).

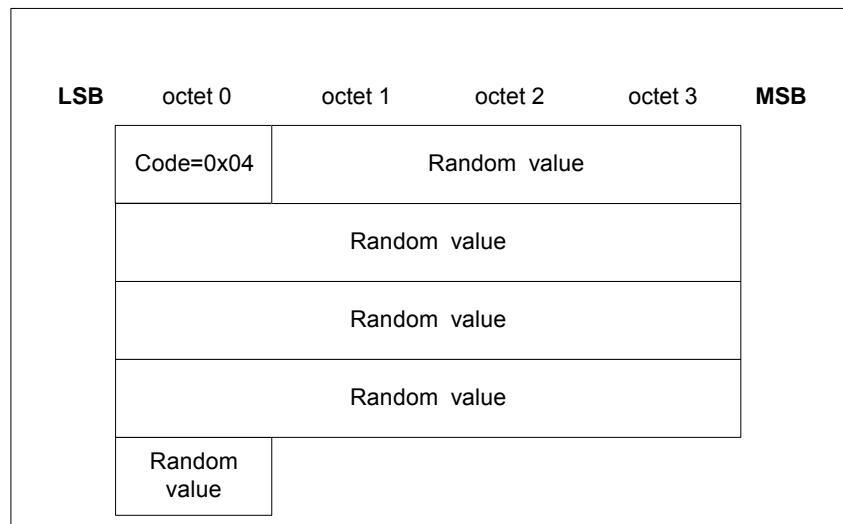
### 3.5.4 Pairing Random

This command is used by the initiating and responding device to send the random number used to calculate the Confirm value sent in the Pairing Confirm command. The Pairing Random command is defined in [Figure 3.6](#).

The initiating device sends a Pairing Random command after it has received a Pairing Confirm command from the responding device.

The responding device shall send a Pairing Random command after it has received a Pairing Random command from the initiating device if the Confirm value calculated on the responding device matches the Confirm value received from the initiating device. If the calculated Confirm value does not match then the responding device shall respond with the Pairing Failed command.

The initiating device shall encrypt the link using the generated STK if the Confirm value calculated on the initiating device matches the Confirm value received from the responding device. The successful encryption or re-encryption of the link is the signal to the responding device that STK Generation has completed successfully. If the calculated Confirm value does not match then the initiating device shall respond with the Pairing Failed command.



*Figure 3.6: Pairing Random Packet*

The following are the data fields:

- *Random value (16 octets)*

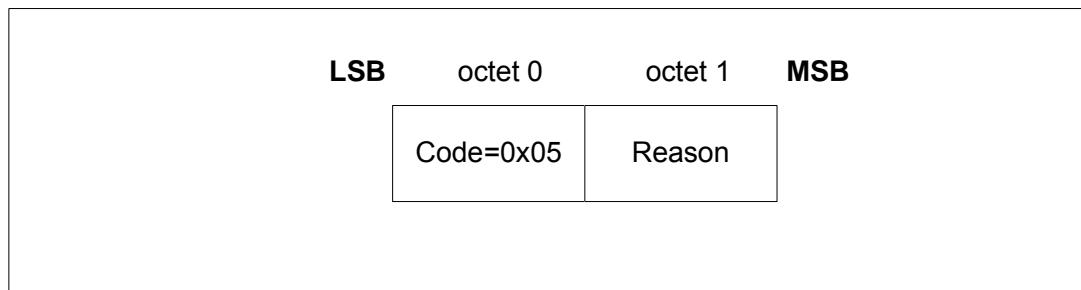
The initiating device sends *Mrand* and the responding device sends *Srand* as defined in [Section 2.3.5.5](#).

### 3.5.5 Pairing Failed

This is used when there has been a failure during pairing and reports that the pairing procedure has been stopped and no further communication for the current pairing procedure is to occur. The Pairing Failed command is defined in [Figure 3.7](#).

Any subsequent pairing procedure shall restart from the Pairing Feature Exchange phase.

This command may be sent at any time during the pairing process by either device in response to a message from the remote device.



*Figure 3.7: Pairing Failed Packet*

The following data field is used:

- *Reason (1 octets)*

The Reason field indicates why the pairing failed. The reason codes are defined in [Table 3.6](#)

Value	Name	Description
0x00	Reserved	Reserved for future use
0x01	Passkey Entry Failed	The user input of passkey failed, for example, the user cancelled the operation
0x02	OOB Not Available	The OOB data is not available
0x03	Authentication Requirements	The pairing procedure cannot be performed as authentication requirements cannot be met due to IO capabilities of one or both devices
0x04	Confirm Value Failed	The confirm value does not match the calculated compare value
0x05	Pairing Not Supported	Pairing is not supported by the device
0x06	Encryption Key Size	The resultant encryption key size is insufficient for the security requirements of this device

*Table 3.6: Pairing Failed Reason Codes*

*Security Manager Specification*

Value	Name	Description
0x07	Command Not Supported	The SMP command received is not supported on this device
0x08	Unspecified Reason	Pairing failed due to an unspecified reason
0x09	Repeated Attempts	Pairing or authentication procedure is disallowed because too little time has elapsed since last pairing request or security request
0x0A	Invalid Parameters	The Invalid Parameters error code indicates that the command length is invalid or that a parameter is outside of the specified range.
0x0B - 0xFF	Reserved	Reserved for future use

Table 3.6: Pairing Failed Reason Codes

## 3.6 SECURITY IN BLUETOOTH LOW ENERGY

### 3.6.1 Key Distribution

Bluetooth low energy devices can distribute keys from the slave to the master and from the master to the slave device. The following keys may be distributed from the slave to the master:

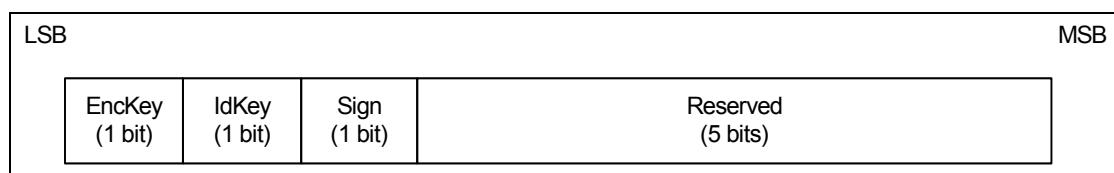
- LTK using Encryption Information command
- EDIV and Rand using Master Identification command
- IRK using Identity Information command
- Public device or static random address using Identity Address Information command
- CSRK using Signing Information command

The master may distribute to the slave the following key:

- LTK using Encryption Information command
- EDIV and Rand using Master Identification command
- IRK using Identity Information command
- Public device or static random address using Identity Address Information command
- CSRK using Signing Information command

The keys which are to be distributed in the Transport Specific Key Distribution phase are indicated in the Key Distribution field of the Pairing Request and Pairing Response commands see [Section 3.5.1](#) and [Section 3.5.2](#).

The format of the Initiator Key Distribution field and Responder Key Distribution field in the Pairing Request and Pairing Response commands for LE is defined in [Figure 3.8](#).



*Figure 3.8: LE Key Distribution Format*

The Key Distribution field has the following flags:

- EncKey is a 1-bit field that is set to one to indicate that the device shall distribute LTK using the Encryption Information command followed by EDIV and Rand using the Master Identification command.

- IdKey is a 1-bit field that is set to one to indicate that the device shall distribute IRK using the Identity Information command followed by its public device or static random address using Identity Address Information.
- Sign is a 1-bit field that is set to one to indicate that the device shall distribute CSRK using the Signing Information command.
- Reserved is a 5-bit field that shall be set to zero and ignored on reception.

The Initiator Key Distribution field in the Pairing Request command is used by the master to request which keys are distributed by the initiator to the responder. The Responder Key Distribution field in the Pairing Request command is used by the master to request which keys are distributed by the responder to the initiator. The Initiator Key Distribution field in the Pairing Response command from the slave defines the keys that shall be distributed by the initiator to the responder. The Responder Key Distribution field in the Pairing Response command from the slave defines the keys that shall be distributed by the responder to the initiator. The slave shall not set to one any flag in the Initiator Key Distribution or Responder Key Distribution field of the Pairing Response command that the master has set to zero in the Initiator Key Distribution and Responder Key Distribution fields of the Pairing Request command.

The keys shall be distributed in the following order:

1. LTK by the slave
2. EDIV and Rand by the slave
3. IRK by the slave
4. BD ADDR by the slave
5. CSRK by the slave
6. LTK by the master
7. EDIV and Rand by the master
8. IRK by the master
9. BD\_ADDR by the master
10. CSRK by the master

If a key is not being distributed then the command to distribute that key shall not be sent.

Note: If a key is not distributed, then the capabilities that use this key will not be available. For example, if a LTK is not distributed from the slave to the master, then the master cannot encrypt a future link with that slave, therefore pairing would have to be performed again.

Note: The initiator should determine the keys needed based on the capabilities that are required by higher layer specifications. For example, if the initiator determines that encryption is required in a future link with that slave, then the

initiator must request that slave's LTK is distributed by setting the EncKey bit to one in the Responder Key Distribution field of the Pairing Request command.

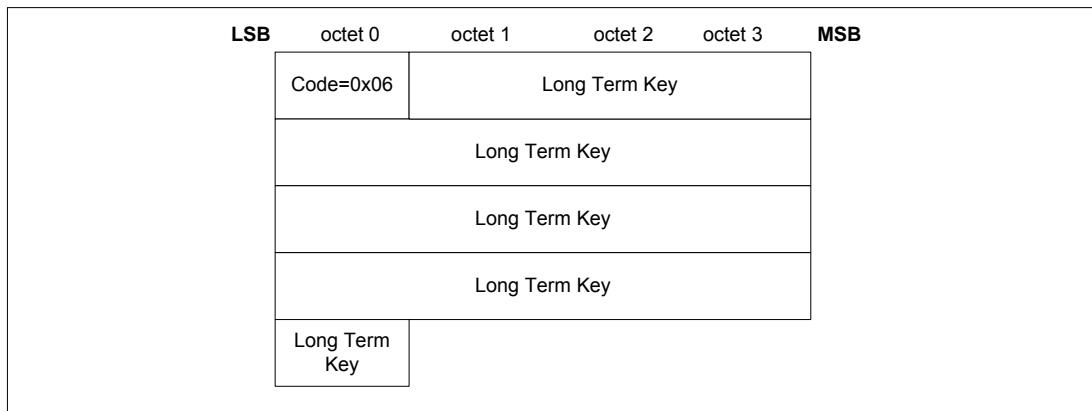
If EncKey, IdKey, and Sign are set to zero in the Initiator Key Distribution and Responder Key Distribution fields, then no keys shall be distributed and the link will be encrypted using the generated STK.

Key distribution is complete in the device sending the final key when it receives the baseband acknowledgement for that key and is complete in the receiving device when it receives the final key being distributed.

### 3.6.2 Encryption Information

Encryption Information is used in the Transport Specific Key Distribution to distribute LTK that is used when encrypting future connections. The Encryption Information command is defined in [Figure 3.9](#).

The Encryption Information command shall only be sent when the link has been encrypted or re-encrypted using the generated STK.



*Figure 3.9: Encryption Information Packet*

The following is the data field:

- *Long Term Key (16 octets)*  
The generated LTK value being distributed, see [Section 2.4.2.3](#).

### 3.6.3 Master Identification

Master Identification is used in the Transport Specific Key Distribution phase to distribute EDIV and Rand which are used when encrypting future connections. The Master Identification command is defined in [Figure 3.10](#).

The Master Identification command shall only be sent when the link has been encrypted or re-encrypted using the generated STK.

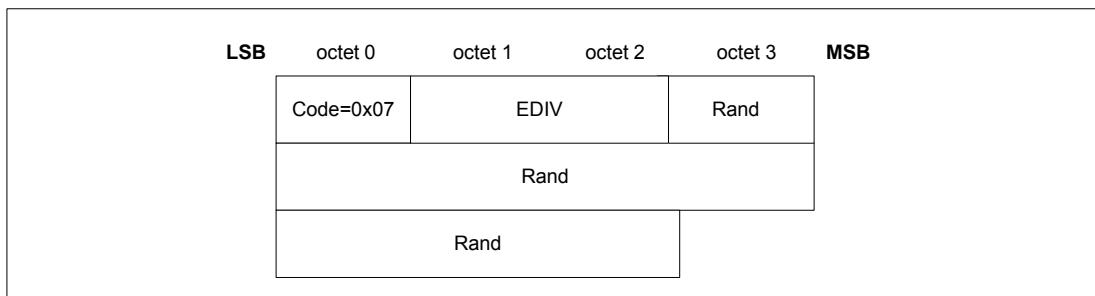


Figure 3.10: Master Identification Packet

The following data fields are used:

- **EDIV (2 octets)**  
The EDIV value being distributed (see [Section 2.4.2.3](#)).
- **Rand (8 octets)**  
64-bit Rand value being distributed (see [Section 2.4.2.3](#)).

### 3.6.4 Identity Information

Identity Information is used in the Transport Specific Key Distribution phase to distribute the IRK. The Identity Information command is defined in [Figure 3.11](#).

The Identity Information command shall only be sent when the link has been encrypted or re-encrypted using the generated STK.

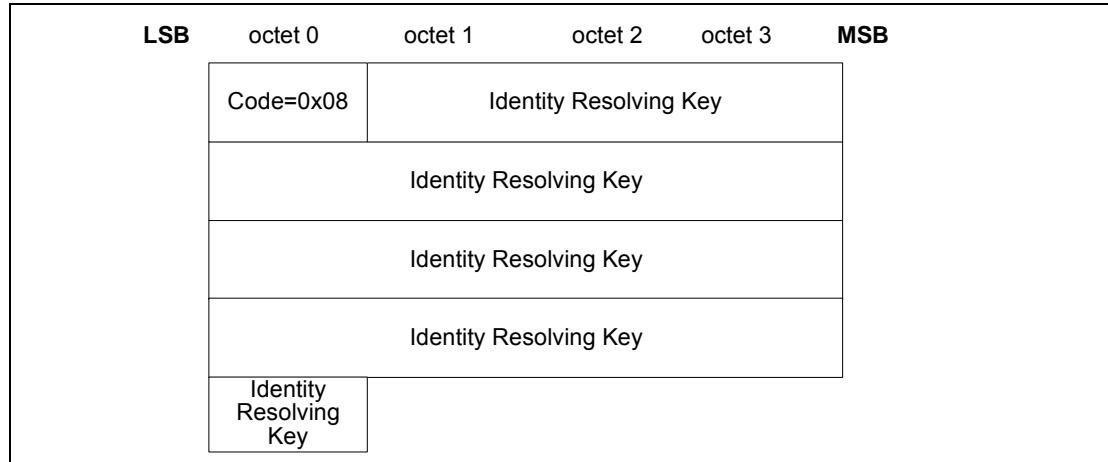


Figure 3.11: Identity Information Packet

The following are the data fields:

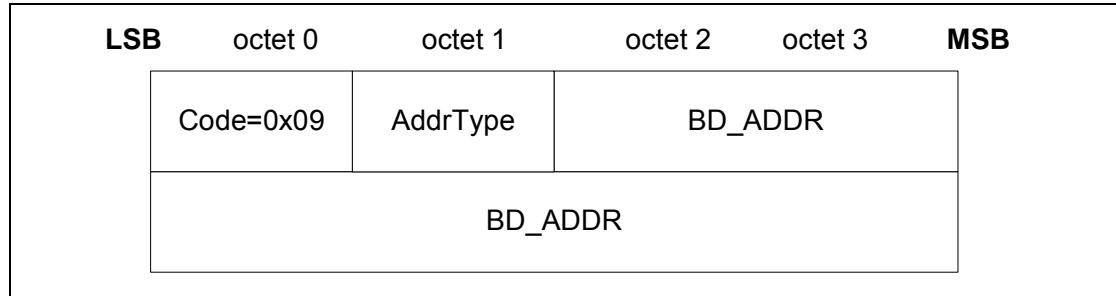
- **Identity Resolving Key (16 octets)**  
128-bit IRK value being distributed (see [Section 2.4.2.1](#)).

Note: An all zero Identity Resolving Key data field indicates that a device does not have a valid resolvable private address.

### 3.6.5 Identity Address Information

Identity Address Information is used in the Transport Specific Key Distribution phase to distribute its public device address or static random address. The Identity Address Information command is defined in [Figure 3.12](#).

The Identity Address Information command shall only be sent when the link has been encrypted or re-encrypted using the generated STK.



*Figure 3.12: Identity Address Information Packet*

The data fields are:

- *AddrType (1 octet)*  
If BD\_ADDR is a public device address or set to all zeros, then AddrType shall be set to 0x00. If BD\_ADDR is a static random device address then AddrType shall be set to 0x01.
- *BD\_ADDR (6 octets)*  
If the distributing device has a public device address or a static random address it shall set this field to its public device address or static random address otherwise it shall set this field to all zeros.

### 3.6.6 Signing Information

Signing Information is used in the Transport Specific Key Distribution to distribute the CSRK which a device uses to sign data. The Signing Information command is defined in [Figure 3.13](#).

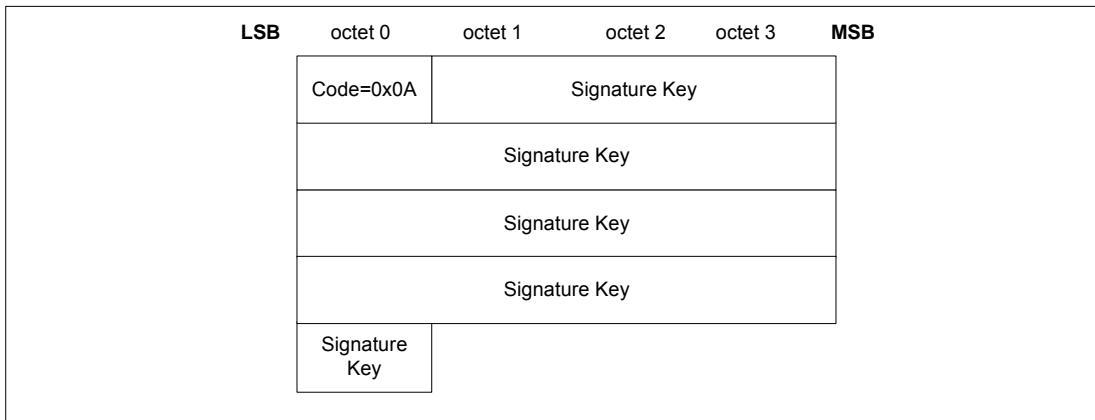


Figure 3.13: Signing Information Packet

The following data field is used:

- *Signature Key (16 octets)*  
128-bit CSRK that is being distributed; see [Section 2.4.2.2](#).

### 3.6.7 Security Request

The Security Request command is used by the slave to request that the master initiates security with the requested security properties, see [Section 2.4.6](#). The Security Request command is defined in [Figure 3.14](#).

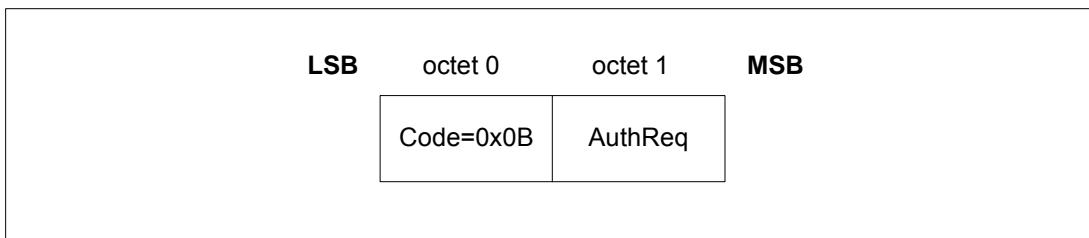


Figure 3.14: Security Request Packet

The following data field is used:

- *AuthReq (1 octet)*  
The AuthReq field is a bit field that indicates the requested security properties (see [Section 2.3.1](#)) for STK and GAP bonding information (see [Part C, Section 9.4](#)).

[Figure 3.3](#) defines the authentication requirements bit field.

The Bonding\_Flags field is a 2-bit field that indicates the type of bonding being requested by the responding device as defined in [Table 3.5](#).

The MITM field is a 1-bit flag that is set to one if the device is requesting MITM protection, otherwise it shall be set to 0.

The reserved 5-bit field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

## 4 REFERENCES

---

- [1] NIST Publication FIPS-197 (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips197/fips-197.pdf>)

## LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 1.1:	Relationship of the Security Manager to the rest of the LE Bluetooth architecture .....	607
Figure 2.1:	LE Pairing Phases .....	608
Figure 2.2:	Master actions after receiving Security Request .....	629
Figure 3.1:	SMP Command Format .....	630
Figure 3.2:	Pairing Request Packet .....	632
Figure 3.3:	Authentication Requirements Flags .....	633
Figure 3.4:	Pairing Response Packet .....	634
Figure 3.5:	Pairing Confirm Packet .....	635
Figure 3.6:	Pairing Random Packet .....	636
Figure 3.7:	Pairing Failed Packet .....	637
Figure 3.8:	LE Key Distribution Format .....	639
Figure 3.9:	Encryption Information Packet .....	641
Figure 3.10:	Master Identification Packet .....	642
Figure 3.11:	Identity Information Packet .....	642
Figure 3.12:	Identity Address Information Packet .....	643
Figure 3.13:	Signing Information Packet .....	644
Figure 3.14:	Security Request Packet .....	644
Figure 5.1:	Example Key Hierarchy .....	650
Figure 5.2:	Pairing Process Overview .....	654
Figure 5.3:	Pairing initiated by master .....	654
Figure 5.4:	Slave security request, master initiated pairing .....	655
Figure 5.5:	Just Works Pairing Method .....	656
Figure 5.6:	Passkey Entry Pairing Method .....	657
Figure 5.7:	OOB Pairing Method .....	658
Figure 5.8:	Transport Specific Key Distribution .....	659
Figure 5.9:	Slave security request, master initiates Link Layer encryption .....	660
Figure 5.10:	Slave rejects pairing attempt .....	660
Figure 5.11:	Master rejects pairing because of key size .....	661
Figure 5.12:	Slave rejects pairing because of key size .....	661
Figure 5.13:	Passkey Entry failure on master .....	662
Figure 5.14:	Passkey Entry failure on slave .....	663
Figure 5.15:	Different Passkeys entered .....	664
Figure 5.16:	Master rejects Sconfirm value from slave .....	665

## LIST OF TABLES

---

Table 2.1:	User Input Capabilities .....	615
Table 2.2:	User Output Capabilities .....	615
Table 2.3:	I/O Capabilities Mapping .....	615
Table 2.4:	Rules for using Out-of-Band and MITM flags .....	617
Table 2.5:	Mapping of IO Capabilities to STK Generation Method .....	617
Table 2.6:	Action after encryption setup failure .....	626
Table 3.1:	Security Manager Channel Configuration Parameters .....	630
Table 3.2:	SMP Command Codes .....	630
Table 3.3:	IO Capability Values .....	632
Table 3.4:	OOB Data Present Values .....	632
Table 3.5:	Bonding Flags .....	633
Table 3.6:	Pairing Failed Reason Codes .....	637

## 5 APPENDICES

---

### 5.1 APPENDIX A – EDIV AND RAND GENERATION

EDIV and Rand are used by the responding device to identify an initiator and recover LTK. This section provides an example of how the distributed EDIV value is a masked version of the real value (DIV) which is used to recover LTK. Other methods can be used that provide equal or higher levels of confidentiality for DIV.

#### 5.1.1 EDIV Masking

The masking process uses a Diversifier Hiding Key (DHK) which is a 128-bit key that is never distributed.

DHK can be assigned, randomly generated by the device during manufacturing, part of a key hierarchy (see [Section 5.2.2.3](#)) or some other method could be used, that results in DHK having 128 bits of entropy. If DHK is randomly generated then the requirements for random generation defined in [\[Vol 2\] Part H, Section 2](#) shall be used.

If DHK is changed then DIV values cannot be recovered from previously distributed EDIV values.

[Section 5.1.1.1](#) defines a cryptographic function that is used by the responding device when generating EDIV and recovering DIV.

[Section 5.1.1.2](#) describes how a responding device generates an EDIV value to be distributed to an initiating device and [Section 5.1.1.3](#) describes how the responding device recovers DIV from a distributed EDIV value.

#### 5.1.1.1 DIV Mask generation function dm

DIV is masked before distribution and unmasked during the encryption session setup using the output of the DIV mask generation function *dm*.

The following are inputs to the DIV mask generation function *dm*:

k is 128 bits

r is 64 bits

padding is 64 bits

*r* is concatenated with padding to generate *r'* which is used as the 128-bit input parameter *plaintextData* to security function *e*:

$$r' = \text{padding} \parallel r$$

The least significant octet of  $r$  becomes the least significant octet of  $r'$  and the most significant octet of *padding* becomes the most significant octet of  $r'$ .

For example, if the 64-bit value  $r$  is 0x123456789ABCDEF0 then  $r'$  is 0x0000000000000000123456789ABCDEF0.

The output of the DIV mask generation function  $dm$  is

$$dm(k, r) = e(k, r') \bmod 2^{16}$$

The output of the security function  $e$  is then truncated to 16 bits by taking the least significant 16 bits of the output of  $e$  as the result of  $dm$ .

#### 5.1.1.2 EDIV Generation

The responding device generates a 64-bit random value, *Rand*. The *Rand* value is used to generate 16-bit *Y* using the DIV mask generation function  $dm$  with the input parameter  $k$  set to DHK and the input parameter  $r$  set to *Rand*.

$$Y = dm(DHK, Rand)$$

The responding device then masks the DIV value to be distributed by bitwise XORing it with *Y* to generate EDIV.

$$EDIV = Y \text{ xor } DIV$$

EDIV and Rand are distributed to an initiating device during the transport specific key distribution phase using the Master Identification command.

#### 5.1.1.3 DIV Recovery

When the responding device receives a request to encrypt a session it calculates *Y* using the DIV mask generation function  $dm$  with the input parameter  $k$  set to DHK and the input parameter  $r$  set to *Rand*. The *Y* value is bitwise XORed with *EDIV* from the initiator to recover DIV.

$$DIV = Y \text{ xor } EDIV$$

The recovered DIV value can then be used to recover LTK which is used to enable encryption on the link.

## 5.2 APPENDIX B – KEY MANAGEMENT

The security provided by different methods can vary and care should be taken to ensure that a chosen method is suitable for a device's requirements.

[Section 5.2.1](#) uses a database for managing the keys. [Section 5.2.2](#) uses a key hierarchy to manage the keys.

### 5.2.1 Database Lookup

The LTK which is distributed is a 128-bit random number which is stored in a database, using EDIV as an index. There is no direct relationship between LTK and EDIV.

The requirements for random generation defined in [\[Vol 2\] Part H, Section 2](#) shall be used when generating LTK. This method provides an LTK with 128 bits of entropy.

CSRK, IRK, and other keys shall also be stored in the database. There is no relationship between the keys stored in the database or distributed LTKs, EDIVs, or Rands.

If the example EDIV and Rand generation method described in [Section 5.1.1](#) is used then the database shall be used to store DHK. DIV should be used as the index to recover LTK.

### 5.2.2 Key Hierarchy

A key hierarchy can be used to generate the keys.

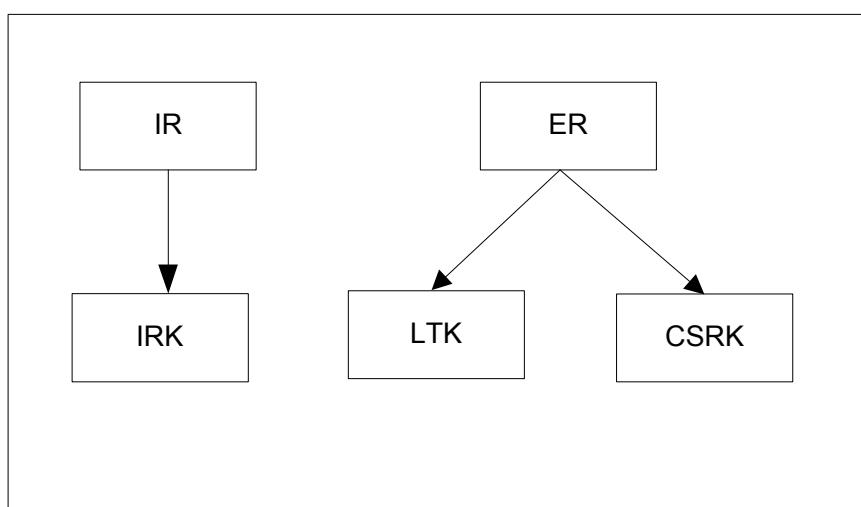


Figure 5.1: Example Key Hierarchy

[Figure 5.1](#) is an example key hierarchy where LTK and CSRK are generated from a common ER key, and IRK is generated from a common IR key.

1. ER is a 128-bit key generated for each LE device that supports encrypted connections. It is used to generate LTK using EDIV; see [Section 5.2.2.2](#).
2. IR is a 128-bit key generated for each LE device that supports encrypted connections, uses random addresses or signing data. IR is used to generate IRK and CSRK, see [Section 5.2.2.3](#). It can also be used to generate DHK; see [Section 5.1](#).

New LTK, EDIV, Rand, and CSRK values shall be generated each time they are distributed. If ER is changed then any previously distributed LTK or CSRK keys will no longer be valid.

The distributed IRK shall be the same for all devices it is distributed to. If IR is changed then any previously distributed IRK keys will no longer be valid.

The distributing device only needs to store IR and ER. LTK, IRK, and CSRK can be regenerated when they are required. This reduces the storage requirements on the distributing device.

[Section 5.2.2.1](#) defines an example of the key diversifying function which can be used to generate LTK, IRK, CSRK, and other keys. Other implementations of this function can be used depending upon the exact security requirements of the device.

The NIST Special Publication 800-108 (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/PubsSPs.html>) defines key derivation functions which could be used instead of the example diversifying function *d1*.

### 5.2.2.1 Diversifying function d1

Diversified keys are generated with function *d1*. The diversifying function *d1* makes use of the security function *e*.

The following are inputs to diversifying function *d1*:

- k is 128 bits
- d is 16 bits
- r is 16 bits
- padding is 96 bits

*d* is concatenated with *r* and *padding* to generate *d'*, which is used as the 128-bit input parameter *plaintextData* to security function *e*:

$$d' = \text{padding} \parallel r \parallel d$$

The least significant octet of  $d$  becomes the least significant octet of  $d'$  and the most significant octet of *padding* becomes the most significant octet of  $d'$ .

For example, if the 16-bit value  $d$  is 0x1234 and the 16-bit value  $r$  is 0xabcd, then  $d'$  is 0x00000000000000000000abcd1234.

The output diversifying function  $d1$  is:

$$d1(k, d, r) = e(k, d')$$

The 128-bit output of the security function  $e$  is used as the result of diversifying function  $d1$ .

### 5.2.2.2 Generating Keys from ER

ER is used to generate LTK and CSRK. ER can be assigned, randomly generated by the device during manufacturing or some other method could be used, that results in ER having 128 bits of entropy. If ER is randomly generated then the requirements for random generation defined in [\[Vol 2\] Part H, Section 2](#) shall be used.

The EDIV and Rand generation method described in [Section 5.1](#) shall be used. LTK is the result of the diversifying function  $d1$  with the ER as the input parameter  $k$ , the DIV as the input parameter  $d$ , and the value '0' as the input parameter  $r$ ; see [Section 5.2.2.1](#).

$$\text{LTK} = d1(\text{ER}, \text{DIV}, 0)$$

LTK can be recovered from ER and DIV by repeating the calculation when LTK is required.

CSRK is the result of the diversifying function  $d1$  with the ER as the input parameter  $k$ , the DIV as the input parameter  $d$ , and the value '1' as the input parameter  $r$ ; see [Section 5.2.2.1](#).

$$\text{CSRK} = d1(\text{ER}, \text{DIV}, 1)$$

CSRK can be recovered from ER and DIV by repeating the calculation when CSRK is required.

This method provides an LTK and CSRK with limited amount of entropy because LTK and CSRK are directly related to EDIV and may not be as secure as other generation methods.

To reduce the probability of the same LTK or CSRK value being generated, the DIV values must be unique for each CSRK, LTK, EDIV, and Rand set that is distributed.

A method for preventing a malicious device from repeatedly pairing and collecting CSRK, LTK and DIV information, which could be used in a known plain text attack in ER, should be implemented.

### 5.2.2.3 Generating Keys from IR

IR can be used to generate IRK and other required keys. IR can be assigned, randomly generated by the device during manufacturing or some other method could be used, that results in IR having 128 bits of entropy. If IR is randomly generated then the requirements for random generation defined in [\[Vol 2\] Part H, Section 2](#) shall be used.

IRK is the result of the diversifying function  $d1$  with IR as the input parameter k and the value '1' as the input parameter d and the value '0' as the input parameter r; see [Section 5.2.2.1](#).

$$\text{IRK} = d1(\text{IR}, 1, 0)$$

If the example EDIV and Rand generation method described in [Section 5.1.1](#) is used then DHK can be the result of diversifying function  $d1$  with IR as the input parameter k and the value '3' as the input parameter d and the value '0' as the input parameter r.

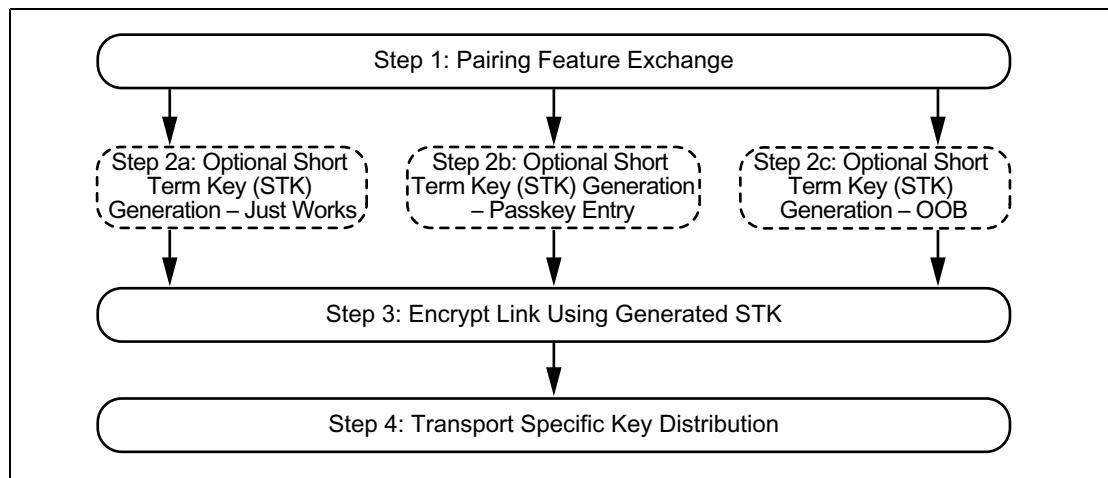
$$\text{DHK} = d1(\text{IR}, 3, 0)$$

Other keys can be generated by using different values for k as the input to the diversifying function  $d1$ . If the value of k is reused for a given IR then the resulting key will be the same.

## 5.3 MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS

This section is informative and illustrates only the most common scenarios; it does not cover all possible alternatives. Furthermore, the message sequence charts do not consider errors over the air interface or host interface.

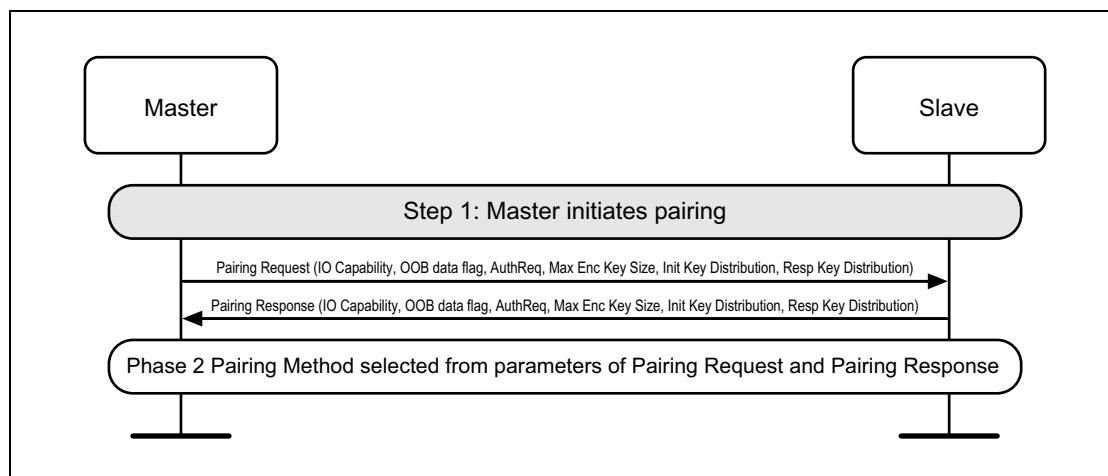
A flow diagram of pairing is shown in [Figure 5.2](#). The process has 4 steps. Step 2 has a number of different options.



*Figure 5.2: Pairing Process Overview*

### 5.3.1 Phase 1: Pairing Feature Exchange

The master initiates the pairing procedure using Pairing Request command as shown in [Figure 5.3](#).



*Figure 5.3: Pairing initiated by master*

### 5.3.1.1 Slave Security Request – Master Requests Pairing

The slave may request the master initiates security procedures. [Figure 5.4](#) shows an example where the slave requests security and the master initiates pairing in response.

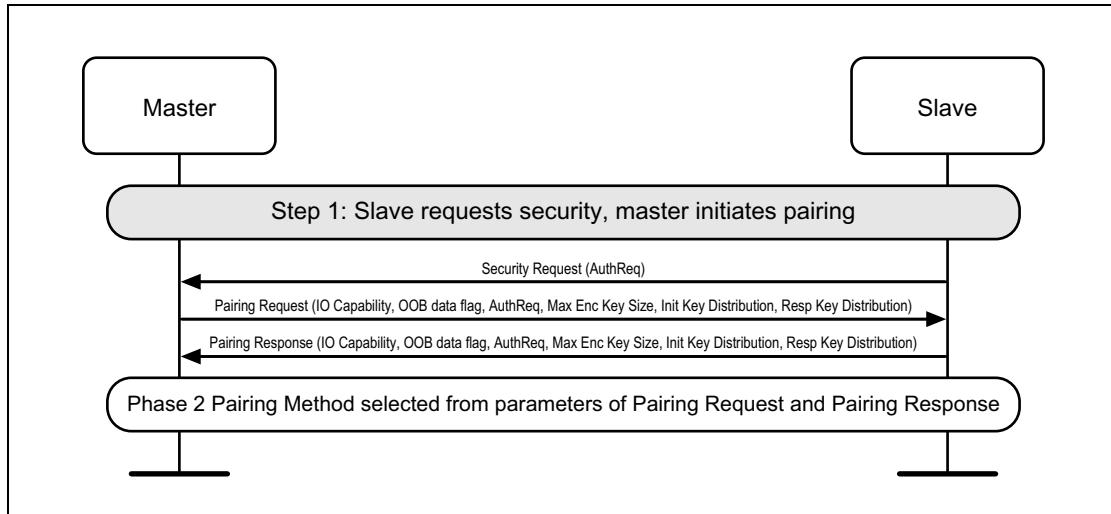


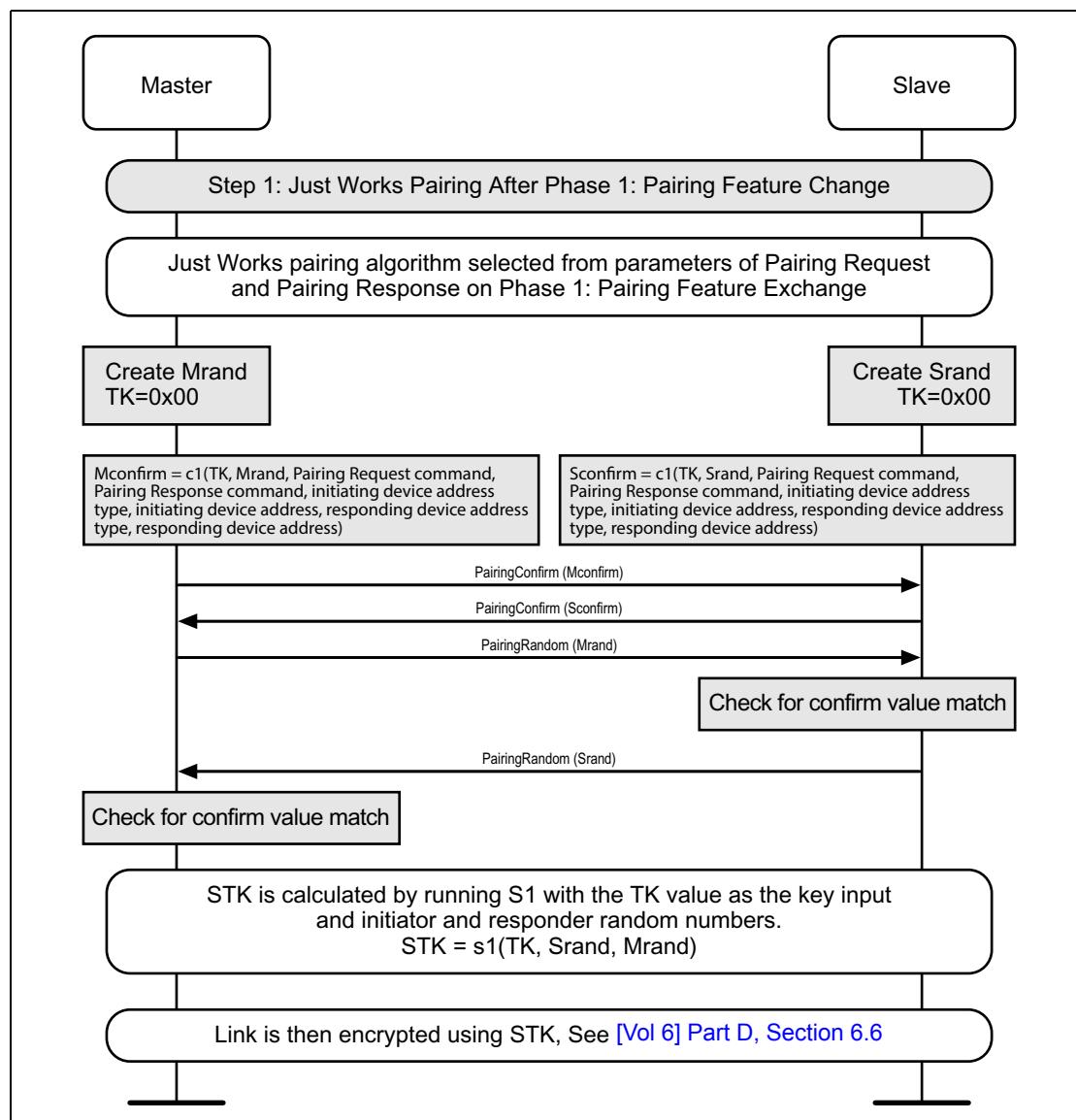
Figure 5.4: Slave security request, master initiated pairing

### 5.3.2 Phase 2: Authenticating and Encrypting

After Pairing Feature Exchange has completed a pairing method is selected one of the possible short term key generation sequences are used. This can be Just Works, Passkey Entry or Out of Band pairing method.

#### 5.3.2.1 Phase 2: Short Term Key Generation – Just Works

After Pairing Feature Exchange has completed a pairing method is selected. [Figure 5.5](#) shows the Just Works pairing method.



*Figure 5.5: Just Works Pairing Method*

### 5.3.2.2 Phase 2: Short Term Key Generation – Passkey Entry

After Pairing Feature Exchange has completed, a pairing method is selected. Figure 5.6 shows the Passkey Entry pairing method.

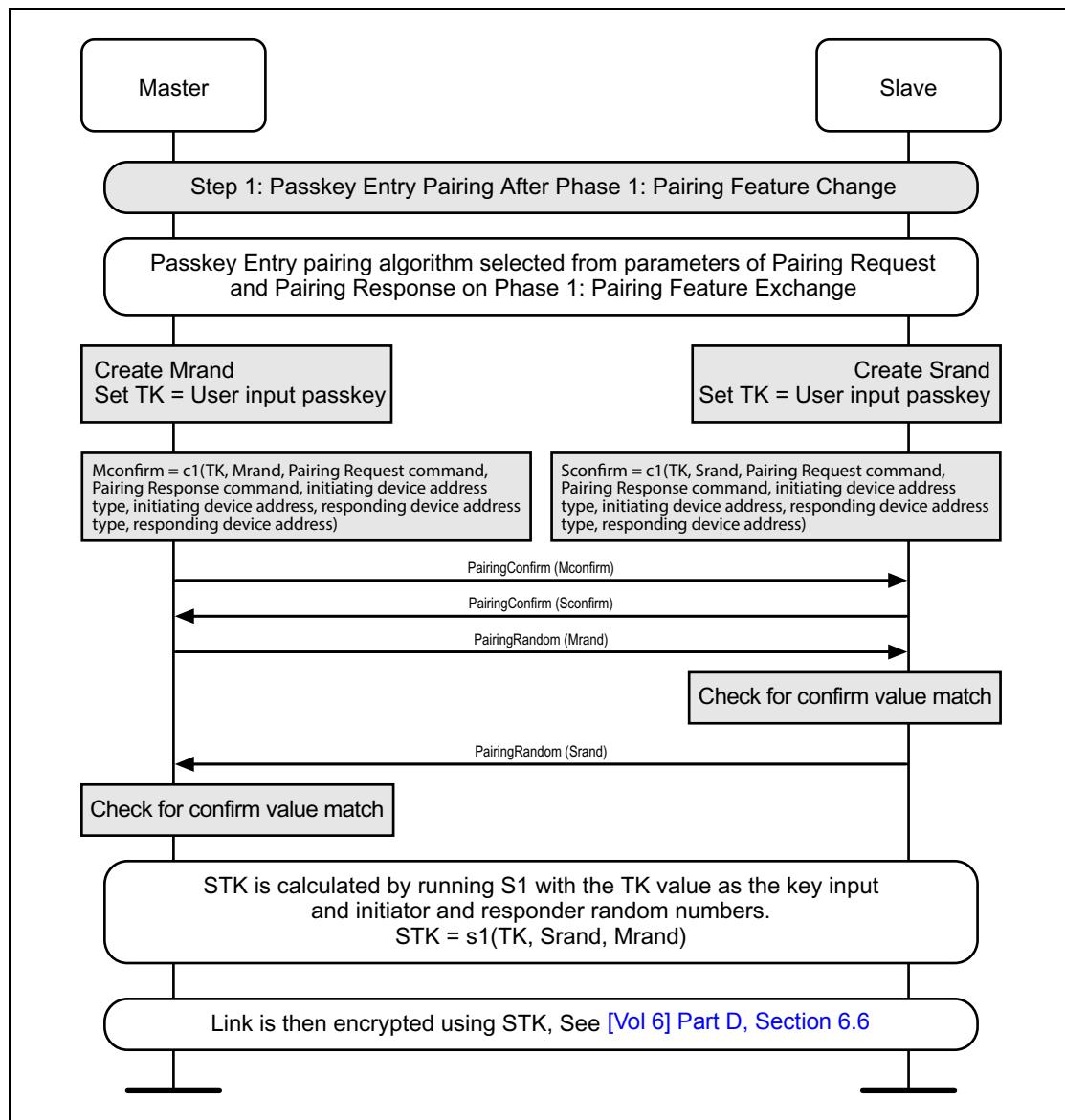


Figure 5.6: Passkey Entry Pairing Method

### 5.3.2.3 Phase 2: Short Term Key Generation – Out of Band

After Pairing Feature Exchange has completed, a pairing method is selected. Figure 5.7 shows the Out of Band pairing method.

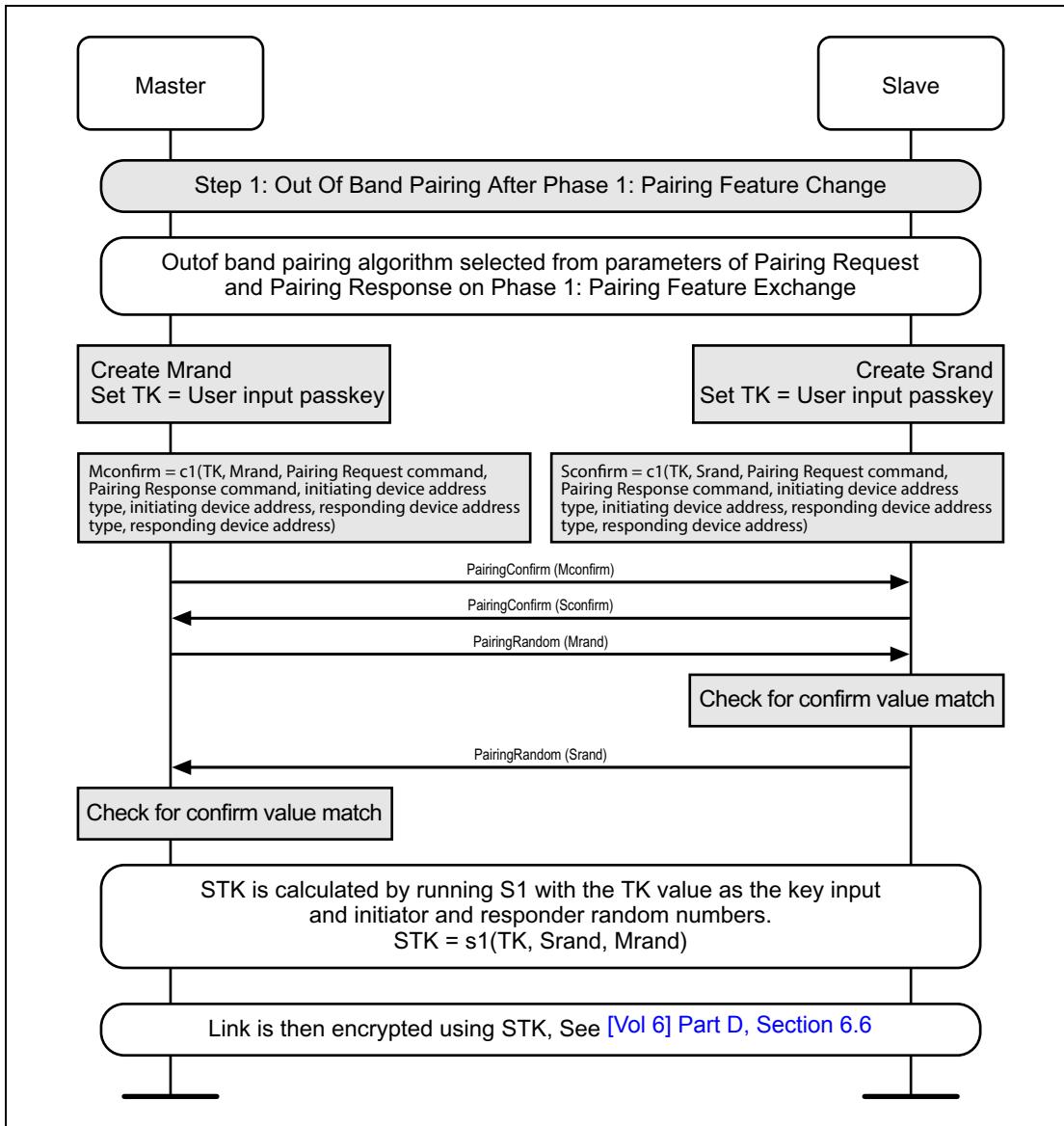
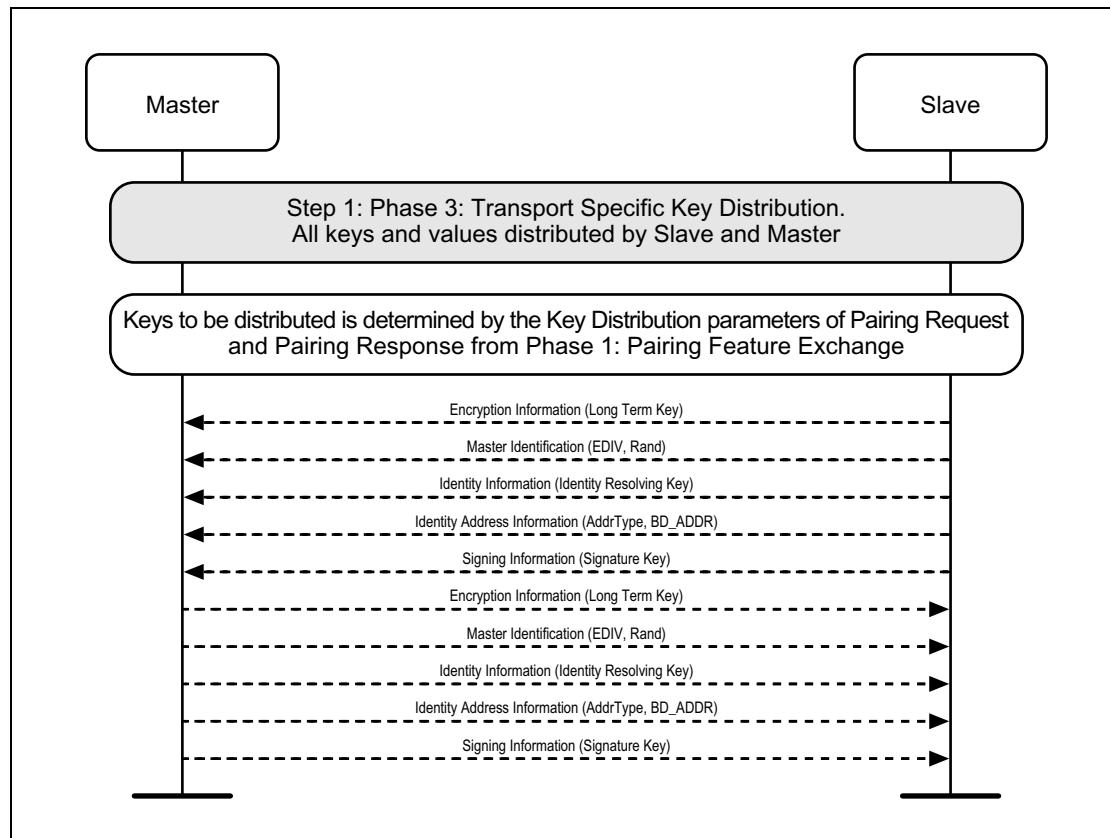


Figure 5.7: OOB Pairing Method

### 5.3.3 Phase 3: Transport Specific Key Distribution

After short term key generation and the link has been encrypted, transport specific keys are distributed. [Figure 5.8](#) shows an example of all keys and values being distributed by Master and Slave.



*Figure 5.8: Transport Specific Key Distribution*

### 5.3.4 Security Re-established using Previously Distributed LTK

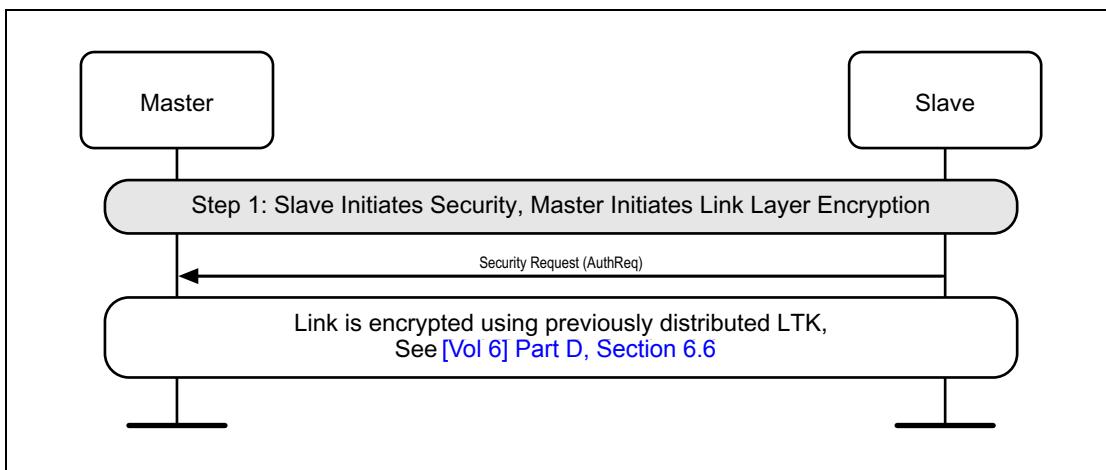
Devices may re-establish security using a previously distributed LTK. The master device always initiates the encryption procedures, and therefore there are two possible sequences: master initiated and slave requested.

#### 5.3.4.1 Master Initiated Security - Master Initiated Link Layer Encryption

The master initiates encryption procedures. There is no SM signaling to enable this; the master initiates Link Layer encryption only. See [\[Vol 6\] Part D, Section 6.6](#).

### 5.3.4.2 Slave Security Request - Master Initiated Link Layer Encryption

The slave may request the master initiates security procedures. [Figure 5.9](#) shows an example where the slave requests security and the master initiates Link Layer encryption.



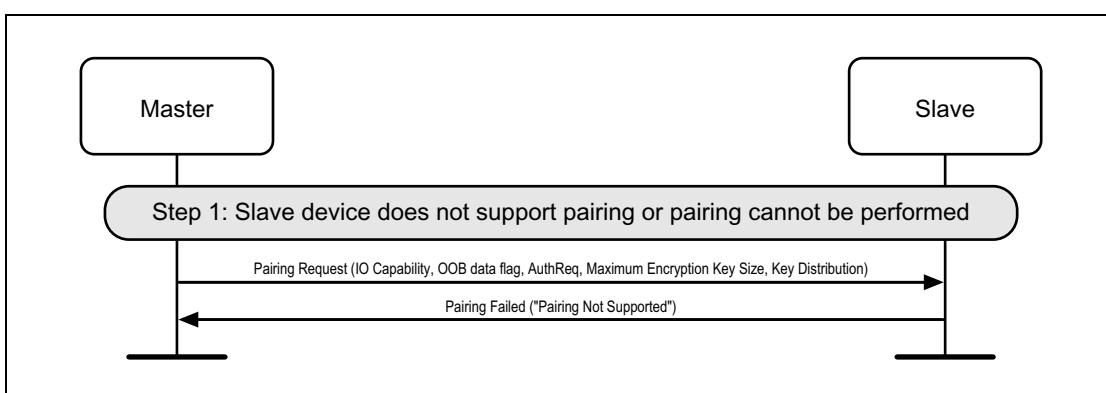
*Figure 5.9: Slave security request, master initiates Link Layer encryption*

### **5.3.5 Failure Conditions**

The following sequences show possible failure conditions and their associated signaling.

#### 5.3.5.1 Pairing Not Supported by Slave

If the slave device does not support pairing or pairing cannot be performed the slave can reject the request from the master. [Figure 5.10](#) shows the slave rejecting a Pairing Request command from the master.



*Figure 5.10: Slave rejects pairing attempt*

### 5.3.5.2 Master Rejects Pairing Because of Key Size

During Pairing Feature Exchange the size of the Encryption Key is negotiated. [Figure 5.11](#) shows an example where the master terminates the pairing procedure because the resulting key size is not acceptable.

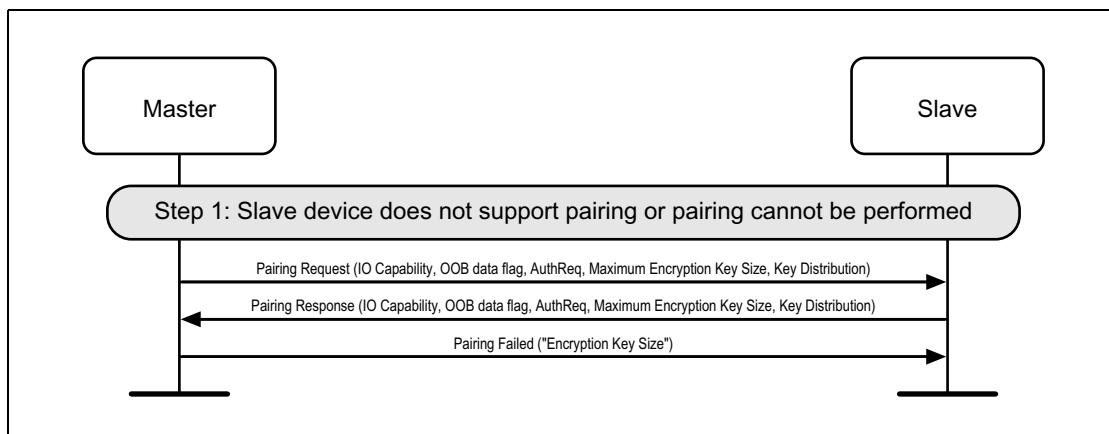


Figure 5.11: Master rejects pairing because of key size

### 5.3.5.3 Slave Rejects Pairing Because of Key Size

During Pairing Feature Exchange the size of the Encryption Key is negotiated. [Figure 5.12](#) shows an example where the slave terminates the pairing procedure because the resulting key size is not acceptable.

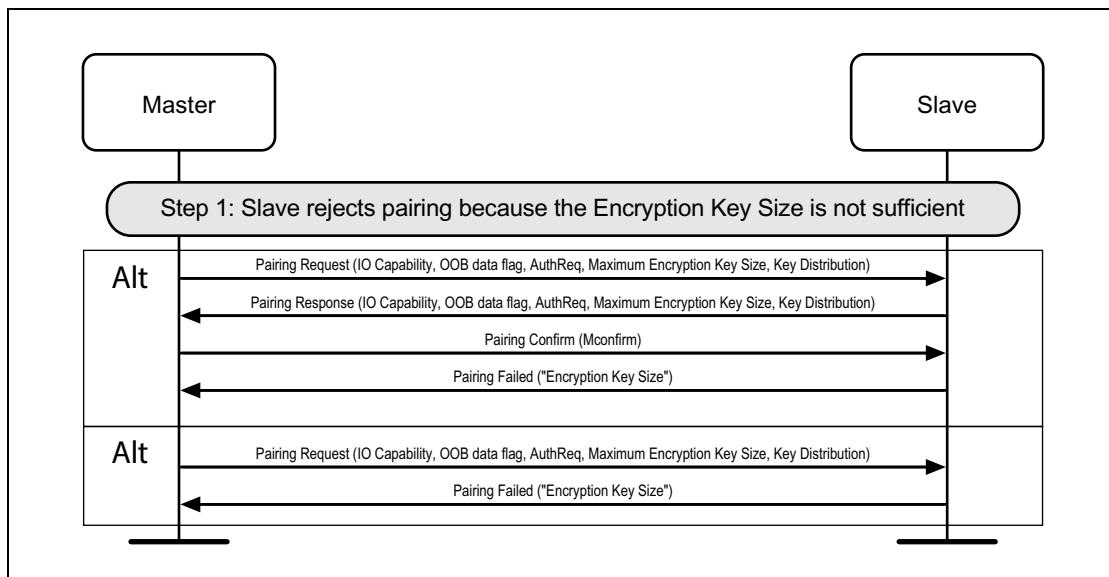


Figure 5.12: Slave rejects pairing because of key size

### 5.3.5.4 Passkey Entry Failure on Master

During Passkey Entry pairing the user enters a passkey on both devices.

**Figure 5.13** shows an example where the passkey entry fails on the master device.

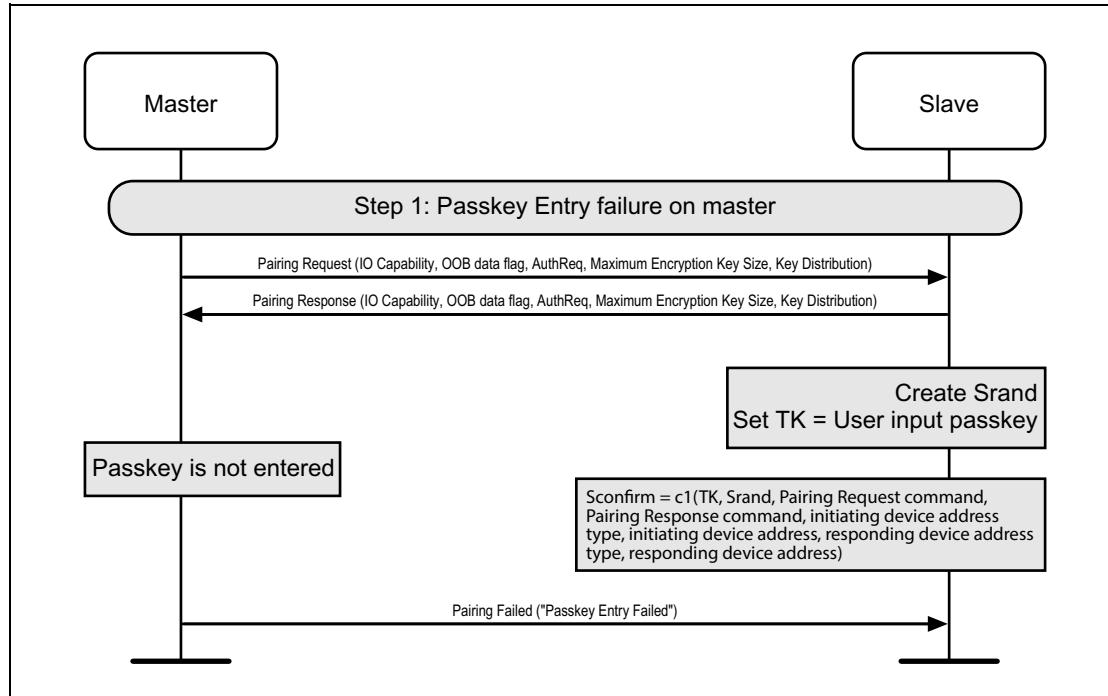


Figure 5.13: Passkey Entry failure on master

### 5.3.5.5 Passkey Entry Failure on Slave

During Passkey Entry pairing the user enters a passkey on both devices. [Figure 5.14](#) shows an example where the passkey entry fails on the slave device.

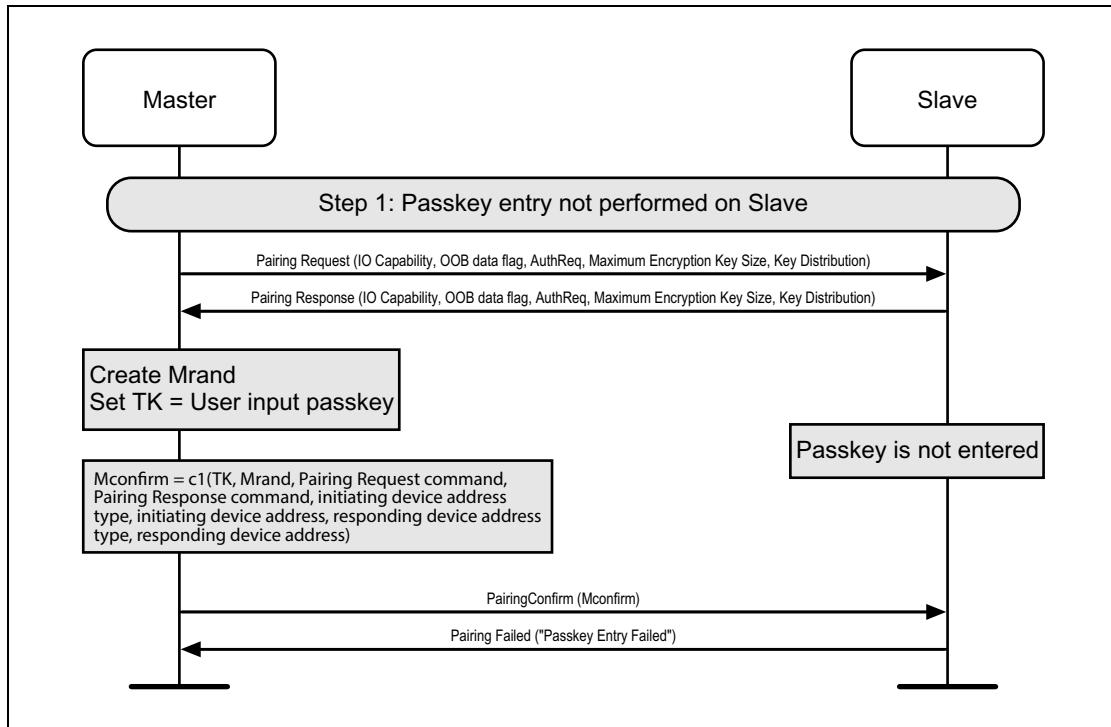


Figure 5.14: Passkey Entry failure on slave

### 5.3.5.6 Slave Rejects Master's Confirm Value

During Passkey Entry pairing the user enters a passkey on both devices. [Figure 5.15](#) shows an example where a different passkey is entered on both devices. This sequence could also occur if any of the inputs to c1 (Passkey, Mrand, Srand, Pairing Request command, Pairing Response command, address types or addresses) are incorrect or altered.

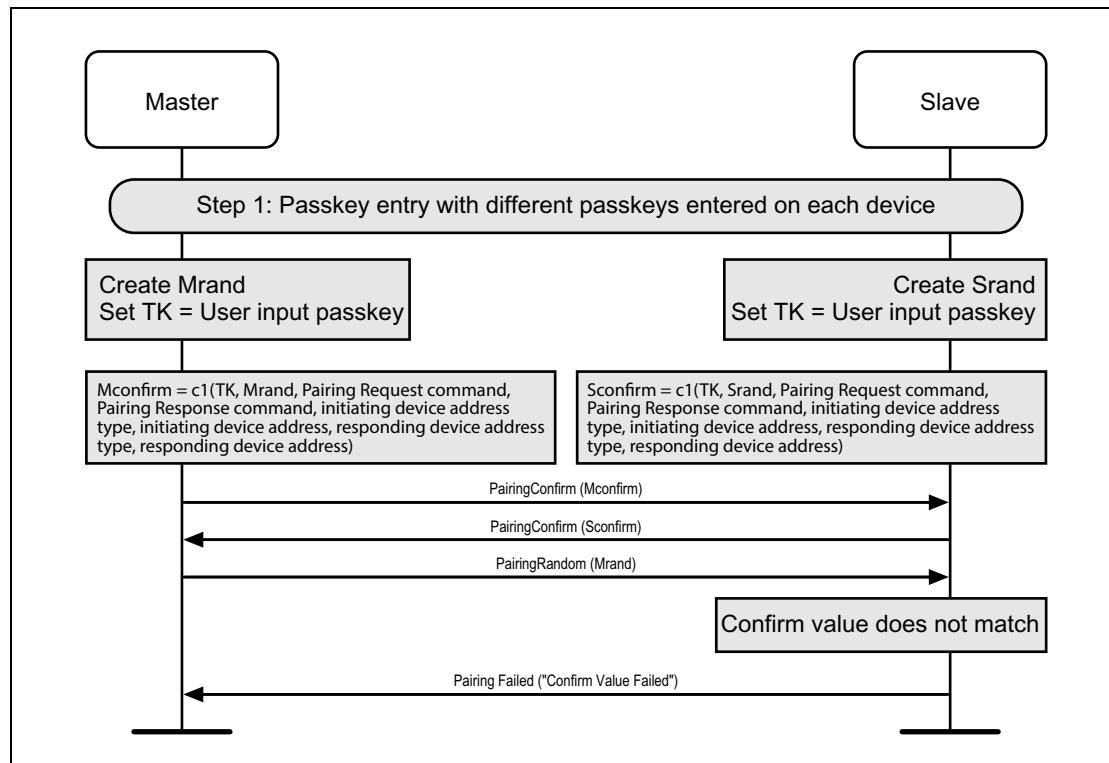


Figure 5.15: Different Passkeys entered

### 5.3.5.7 Master Rejects Slaves Confirm Value

During all the pairing methods the master and slave device send random numbers and confirm values. Figure 5.16 shows an example where the master device rejects pairing because it cannot verify the confirm value from the slave because any of the inputs to c1 (Passkey, Mrand, Srand, Pairing Request command, Pairing Response command, address types or addresses) are incorrect or altered.

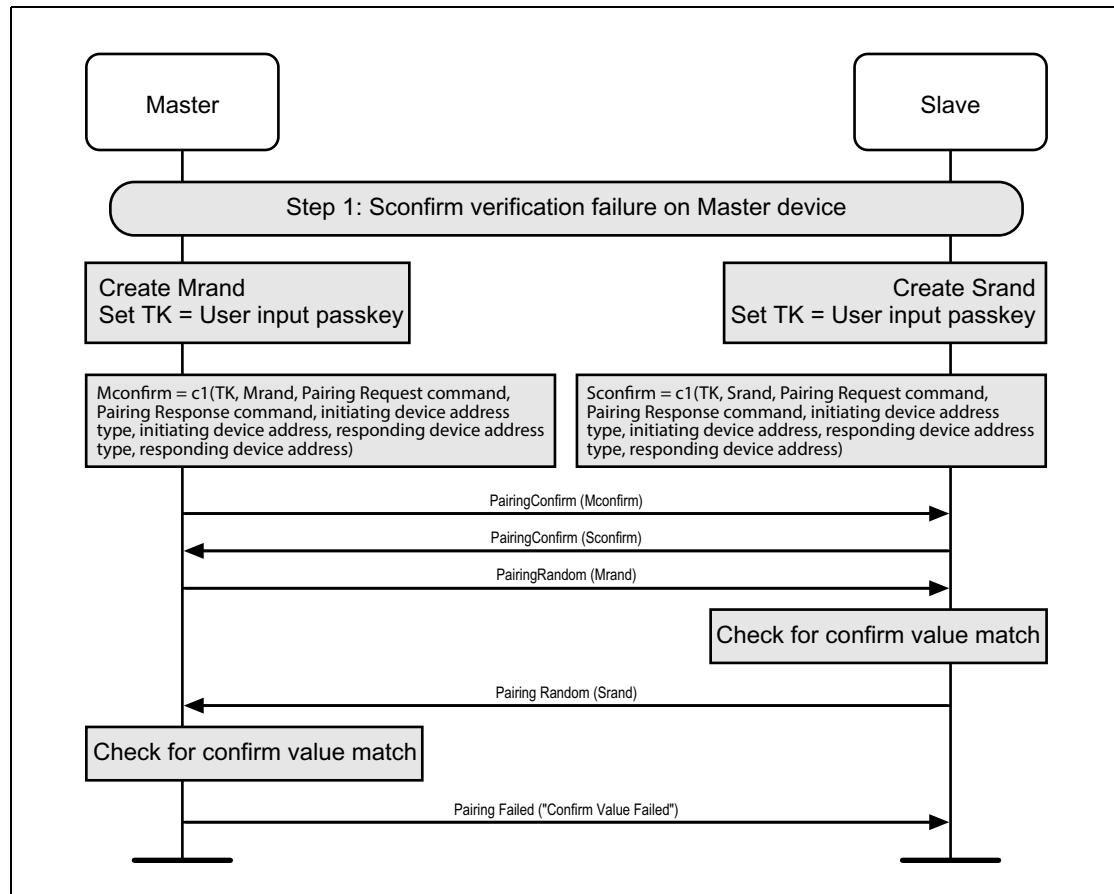


Figure 5.16: Master rejects Sconfirm value from slave







# Specification of the **Bluetooth®** System

Specification Volume 4

## Host Controller Interface [Transport Layer]

Covered Core Package version: 4.1

Publication date: 03 December 2013







## Revision History

The Revision History is shown in the [\[Vol. 0, Part C\] Appendix on page 61\]](#).

## Contributors

The persons who contributed to this specification are listed in the [\[Vol. 0, Part C\] Appendix on page 61\]](#).

## Web Site

This specification can also be found on the official Bluetooth web site:  
<http://www.bluetooth.com>

## Disclaimer and Copyright Notice

The copyright in these specifications is owned by the Promoter Members of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. ("Bluetooth SIG"). Use of these specifications and any related intellectual property (collectively, the "Specification"), is governed by the Promoters Membership Agreement among the Promoter Members and Bluetooth SIG (the "Promoters Agreement"), certain membership agreements between Bluetooth SIG and its Adopter and Associate Members (the "Membership Agreements") and the Bluetooth Specification Early Adopters Agreements ("1.2 Early Adopters Agreements") among Early Adopter members of the unincorporated Bluetooth special interest group and the Promoter Members (the "Early Adopters Agreement"). Certain rights and obligations of the Promoter Members under the Early Adopters Agreements have been assigned to Bluetooth SIG by the Promoter Members.

Use of the Specification by anyone who is not a member of Bluetooth SIG or a party to an Early Adopters Agreement (each such person or party, a "Member"), is prohibited. The legal rights and obligations of each Member are governed by their applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights are granted herein.

Any use of the Specification not in compliance with the terms of the applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement is prohibited and any such prohibited use may result in termination of the applicable Membership Agreement or Early Adopters Agreement and other liability permitted by the applicable agreement or by applicable law to Bluetooth SIG or any of its members for patent, copyright and/or trademark infringement.



THE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR REASONABLE SKILL OR CARE, OR ANY WARRANTY ARISING OUT OF ANY COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, TRADE PRACTICE, PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

Each Member hereby acknowledges that products equipped with the Bluetooth® technology ("Bluetooth® Products") may be subject to various regulatory controls under the laws and regulations of various governments worldwide. Such laws and regulatory controls may govern, among other things, the combination, operation, use, implementation and distribution of Bluetooth® Products. Examples of such laws and regulatory controls include, but are not limited to, airline regulatory controls, telecommunications regulations, technology transfer controls and health and safety regulations. Each Member is solely responsible for the compliance by their Bluetooth® Products with any such laws and regulations and for obtaining any and all required authorizations, permits, or licenses for their Bluetooth® Products related to such regulations within the applicable jurisdictions. Each Member acknowledges that nothing in the Specification provides any information or assistance in connection with securing such compliance, authorizations or licenses. **NOTHING IN THE SPECIFICATION CREATES ANY WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING SUCH LAWS OR REGULATIONS.**

ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR FOR NONCOMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, RELATING TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION IS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. BY USE OF THE SPECIFICATION, EACH MEMBER EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY CLAIM AGAINST BLUETOOTH SIG AND ITS PROMOTER MEMBERS RELATED TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION.

Bluetooth SIG reserves the right to adopt any changes or alterations to the Specification as it deems necessary or appropriate.

Copyright © 1999 - 2013

Ericsson AB,

Lenovo, (Singapore) Pte. Ltd

Intel Corporation,

Microsoft Corporation,

Motorola Mobility, LLC,

Nokia Corporation,

Toshiba Corporation

\*Third-party brands and names are the property of their respective owners.



## CONTENTS

### Part A

#### UART TRANSPORT LAYER

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>1 General .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>2 Protocol.....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>3 RS232 Settings .....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>4 Error Recovery .....</b>	<b>16</b>

### Part B

#### USB TRANSPORT LAYER

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>1 Overview .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>2 USB Endpoint Expectations .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>2.1 Descriptor Overview.....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>2.1.1 Primary Controller Descriptors .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>2.1.2 AMP Controller Descriptors.....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>2.2 Control Endpoint Expectations.....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>2.2.1 Single Function Primary Controller.....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>2.2.2 Primary Controller Function in a Composite Device.....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>2.2.3 AMP Controller .....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>2.3 Bulk Endpoints Expectations.....</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>2.4 Interrupt Endpoint Expectations .....</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>2.5 Isochronous Endpoints Expectations .....</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>3 Class Code.....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>3.1 Bluetooth Codes .....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>3.1.1 Single Function Primary Controller.....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>3.1.2 Single Function AMP Controller .....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>3.1.3 Composite Bluetooth Primary and AMP Controller .....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>3.1.4 Composite Device Including Bluetooth Primary and AMP Controller.....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>4 Device Firmware Upgrade .....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>5 Limitations .....</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>5.1 Power Specific Limitations .....</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>5.2 Other Limitations .....</b>	<b>39</b>



<b>6</b>	<b>Bluetooth Composite Device Implementation.....</b>	<b>40</b>
6.1	Configurations.....	40
6.2	Using USB Interface Association Descriptors for a Primary Controller Function .....	40
6.3	Combined Primary Controller Function and Single AMP Controller Function .....	41
<b>7</b>	<b>References.....</b>	<b>45</b>

**Part C****SECURE DIGITAL (SD)  
TRANSPORT LAYER**

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>49</b>	
<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Goals .....</b>	<b>51</b>
2.1	Hardware Goals .....	51
2.2	Software Goals .....	51
2.3	Configuration Goals .....	52
2.4	Configuration for Multiple Controllers .....	52
<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Interface Documents .....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Communication.....</b>	<b>54</b>
4.1	Overview .....	54
<b>5</b>	<b>Appendix A - Acronyms and Abbreviations .....</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Appendix B - Related Documents .....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Appendix C - Tests .....</b>	<b>57</b>
7.1	Test Suite Structure.....	57



## Part D THREE-WIRE UART TRANSPORT LAYER

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>61</b>
<b>1 General .....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>2 Overview .....</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>3 Slip Layer .....</b>	<b>65</b>
3.1 Encoding a Packet .....	65
3.2 Decoding a Packet .....	65
<b>4 Packet Header .....</b>	<b>67</b>
4.1 Sequence Number .....	67
4.2 Acknowledge Number .....	68
4.3 Data Integrity Check Present .....	68
4.4 Reliable Packet .....	68
4.5 Packet Type .....	68
4.6 Payload Length .....	69
4.7 Packet Header Checksum .....	69
<b>5 Data Integrity Check.....</b>	<b>70</b>
5.1 16 Bit CCITT-CRC.....	70
<b>6 Reliable Packets .....</b>	<b>71</b>
6.1 Header Checksum Error .....	71
6.2 Slip Payload Length Error .....	71
6.3 Data Integrity Check Error.....	71
6.4 Out Of Sequence Packet Error .....	71
6.5 Acknowledgement.....	72
6.6 Resending Packets .....	72
6.7 Example Reliable Packet Flow.....	72
<b>7 Unreliable Packets .....</b>	<b>75</b>
7.1 Unreliable Packet Header .....	75
7.2 Unreliable Packet Error .....	75
<b>8 Link Establishment .....</b>	<b>76</b>
8.1 Uninitialized State.....	77
8.2 Initialized State .....	77
8.3 Active State .....	77
8.4 Sync Message .....	78
8.5 Sync Response Message .....	78
8.6 Config Message .....	78
8.7 Config Response Message .....	79



8.8	Configuration Field.....	79
8.8.1	Configuration Messages .....	80
8.8.2	Sliding Window Size.....	80
8.8.3	Level of Data Integrity Check.....	80
8.8.4	Out of Frame Software Flow Control.....	81
8.8.5	Version Number .....	81
<b>9</b>	<b>Low Power.....</b>	<b>82</b>
9.1	Wakeup Message .....	82
9.2	Woken Message .....	82
9.3	Sleep Message .....	83
<b>10</b>	<b>Out of Frame Control.....</b>	<b>84</b>
10.1	Software Flow Control.....	84
<b>11</b>	<b>Hardware Configuration .....</b>	<b>85</b>
11.1	Wires.....	85
11.1.1	Transmit & Receive.....	85
11.1.2	Ground .....	85
11.2	Hardware Flow.....	85
11.2.1	RTS & CTS .....	85
<b>12</b>	<b>Recommended Parameters.....</b>	<b>86</b>
12.1	Timing Parameters.....	86
12.1.1	Acknowledgement of Packets .....	86
12.1.2	Resending Reliable Packets .....	86
<b>13</b>	<b>References.....</b>	<b>87</b>

# Host Controller Interface [Transport Layer]

## Part A

## UART TRANSPORT LAYER

*This document describes the UART transport layer (between the Host and the Host Controller). HCI command, event, and data packets flow through this layer, but the layer does not decode them.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>General .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Protocol.....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>RS232 Settings .....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Error Recovery .....</b>	<b>16</b>



## 1 GENERAL

The objective of this HCI UART Transport Layer is to make it possible to use the Bluetooth HCI over a serial interface between two UARTs on the same PCB. The HCI UART Transport Layer assumes that the UART communication is free from line errors.

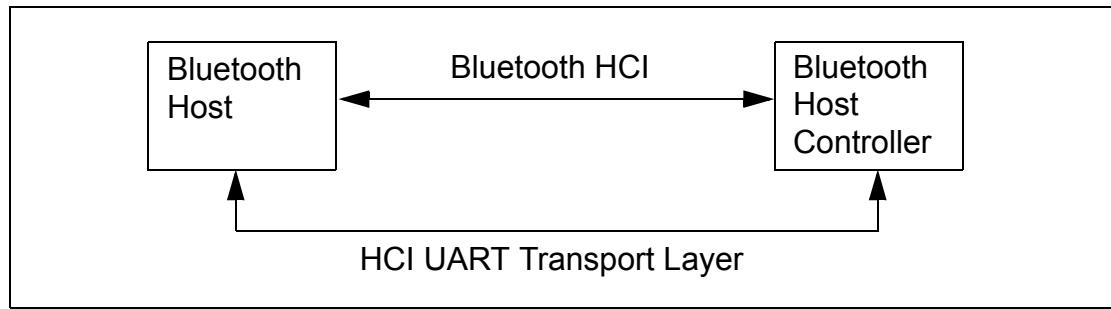


Figure 1.1: HCI UART Transport Layer

## 2 PROTOCOL

---

There are four kinds of HCI packets that can be sent via the UART Transport Layer; i.e. HCI Command Packet, HCI Event Packet, HCI ACL Data Packet and HCI Synchronous Data Packet (see “[Host Controller Interface Functional Specification](#)” in Volume 2, Part E). HCI Command Packets can only be sent to the Bluetooth Host Controller, HCI Event Packets can only be sent from the Bluetooth Host Controller, and HCI ACL/Synchronous Data Packets can be sent both to and from the Bluetooth Host Controller.

HCI does not provide the ability to differentiate the four HCI packet types. Therefore, if the HCI packets are sent via a common physical interface, a HCI packet indicator has to be added according to [Table 2.1](#) below.

HCI packet type	HCI packet indicator
HCI Command Packet	0x01
HCI ACL Data Packet	0x02
HCI Synchronous Data Packet	0x03
HCI Event Packet	0x04

*Table 2.1: HCI packet indicators*

The HCI packet indicator shall be sent immediately before the HCI packet. All four kinds of HCI packets have a length field, which is used to determine how many bytes are expected for the HCI packet. When an entire HCI packet has been received, the next HCI packet indicator is expected for the next HCI packet. Over the UART Transport Layer, only HCI packet indicators followed by HCI packets are allowed.

### 3 RS232 SETTINGS

The HCI UART Transport Layer uses the following settings for RS232:

Baud rate:	manufacturer-specific
Number of data bits:	8
Parity bit:	no parity
Stop bit:	1 stop bit
Flow control:	RTS/CTS
Flow-off response time:	manufacturer specific

Table 3.1:

Flow control with RTS/CTS is used to prevent temporary UART buffer overrun. It should not be used for flow control of HCI, since HCI has its own flow control mechanisms for HCI commands, HCI events and HCI data.

If CTS is 1, then the Host/Host Controller is allowed to send.

If CTS is 0, then the Host/Host Controller is not allowed to send.

The flow-off response time defines the maximum time from setting RTS to 0 until the byte flow actually stops.

The RS232 signals should be connected in a null-modem fashion; i.e. the local TXD should be connected to the remote RXD and the local RTS should be connected to the remote CTS and vice versa.

## 4 ERROR RECOVERY

---

If the Host or the Host Controller lose synchronization in the communication over RS232, then a reset is needed. A loss of synchronization means that an incorrect HCI packet indicator has been detected, or that the length field in an HCI packet is out of range.

If the UART synchronization is lost in the communication from Host to Host Controller, then the Host Controller shall send a Hardware Error Event to tell the Host about the synchronization error. The Host Controller will then expect to receive an HCI\_Reset command from the Host in order to perform a reset. The Host Controller will also use the HCI\_Reset command in the byte stream from Host to Host Controller to re-synchronize.

If the UART synchronization is lost in the communication from Host Controller to Host, then the Host shall send the HCI\_Reset command in order to reset the Host Controller. The Host shall then re-synchronize by looking for the HCI Command Complete event for the HCI\_Reset command in the byte stream from Host Controller to Host.

See "[Host Controller Interface Functional Specification](#)" for HCI commands and HCI events in the Bluetooth Specification v1.2 or later.

Host Controller Interface [Transport Layer]  
Part B

## USB TRANSPORT LAYER

*This document describes the USB transport layer (between a host and the host controller). HCI commands flow through this layer, but the layer does not decode the commands.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>USB Endpoint Expectations .....</b>	<b>25</b>
2.1	Descriptor Overview.....	25
2.1.1	Primary Controller Descriptors .....	25
2.1.2	AMP Controller Descriptors.....	31
2.2	Control Endpoint Expectations .....	32
2.2.1	Single Function Primary Controller.....	32
2.2.2	Primary Controller Function in a Composite Device.....	33
2.2.3	AMP Controller .....	33
2.3	Bulk Endpoints Expectations.....	34
2.4	Interrupt Endpoint Expectations .....	34
2.5	Isochronous Endpoints Expectations .....	34
<b>3</b>	<b>Class Code.....</b>	<b>36</b>
3.1	Bluetooth Codes .....	36
3.1.1	Single Function Primary Controller.....	36
3.1.2	Single Function AMP Controller .....	36
3.1.3	Composite Bluetooth Primary and AMP Controller .....	37
3.1.4	Composite Device Including Bluetooth Primary and AMP Controller.....	37
<b>4</b>	<b>Device Firmware Upgrade .....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Limitations .....</b>	<b>39</b>
5.1	Power Specific Limitations .....	39
5.2	Other Limitations .....	39
<b>6</b>	<b>Bluetooth Composite Device Implementation.....</b>	<b>40</b>
6.1	Configurations .....	40
6.2	Using USB Interface Association Descriptors for a Primary Controller Function.....	40
6.3	Combined Primary Controller Function and Single AMP Controller Function.....	41
<b>7</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>45</b>

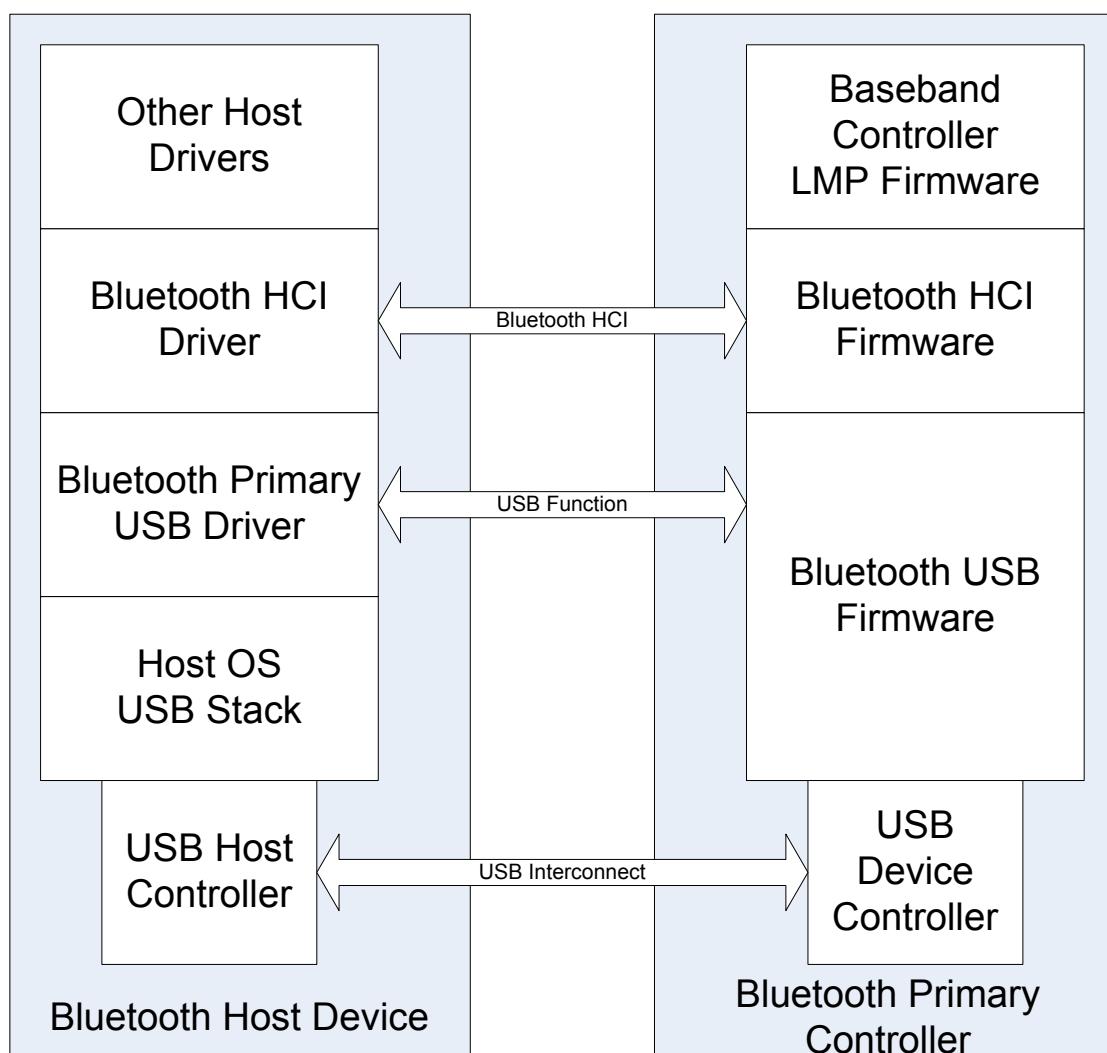


## 1 OVERVIEW

This document discusses the requirements of the Universal Serial Bus (USB) interface for Bluetooth hardware. Readers should be familiar with USB, USB design issues, Advanced Configuration Power Interface (ACPI), the overall Bluetooth architecture, and the basics of the radio interface.

The reader should also be familiar with the Bluetooth Host Controller Interface.

Referring to [Figure 1.1](#) through [Figure 1.3](#), notice that this document discusses the implementation details of the two-way arrow labeled “USB Function.”



*Figure 1.1: Relationship between the Host and Bluetooth Primary Controller*

This document also specifies implementation of two other configurations:

- USB-connected AMP controller (PAL, MAC, PHY)
- USB-connected composite (multifunction) device that combines a Primary Controller and an AMP Controller.

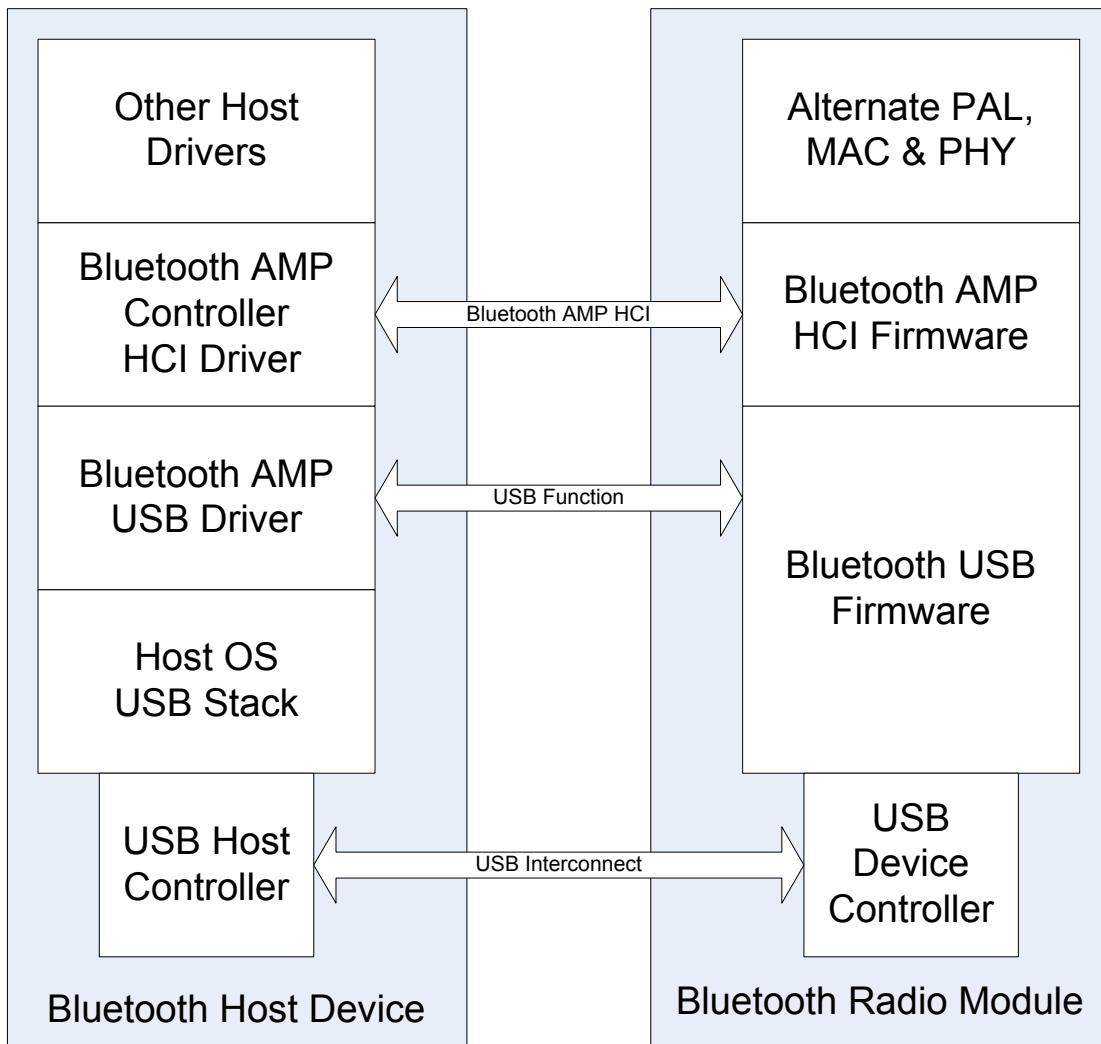


Figure 1.2: Relationship between the Host and an AMP Controller

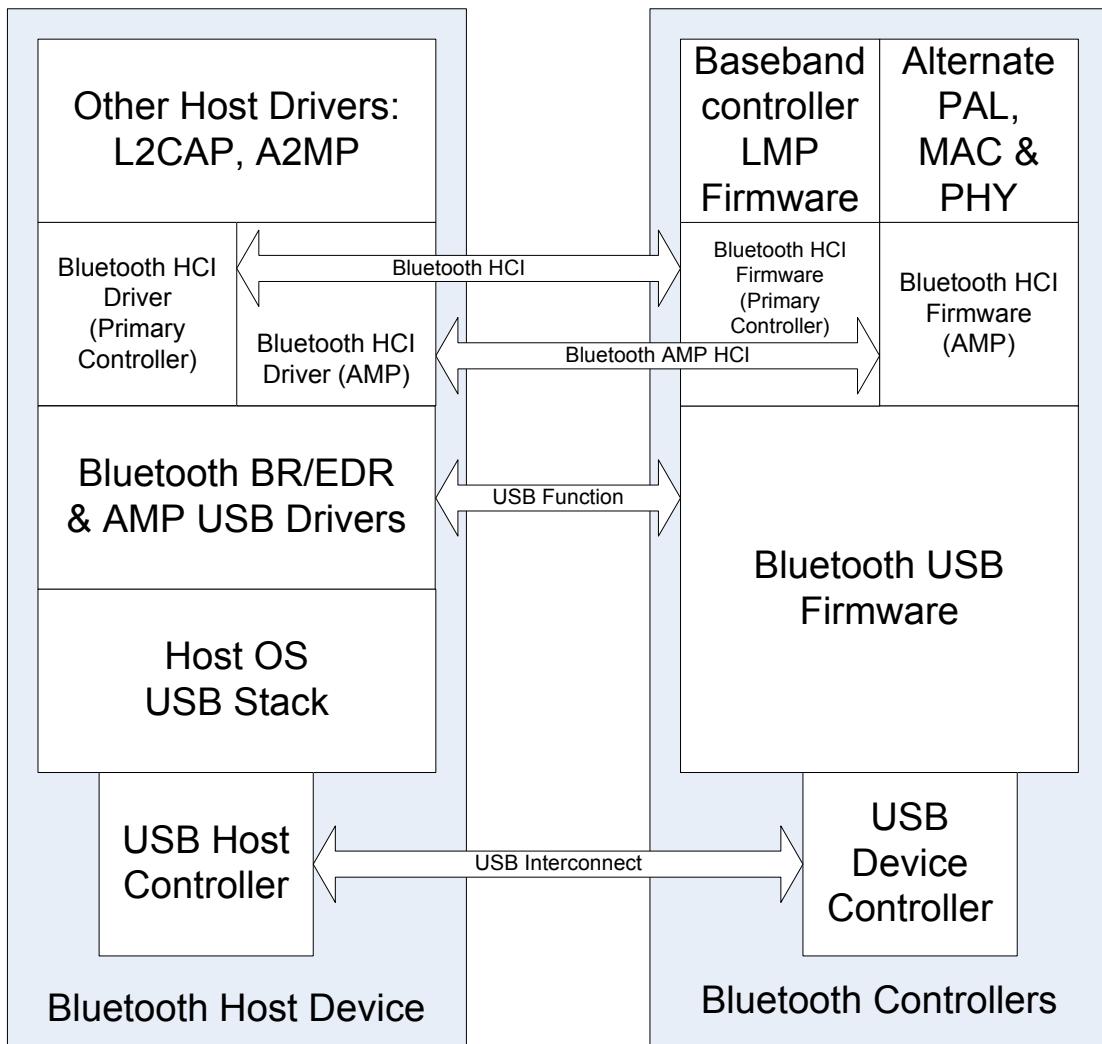
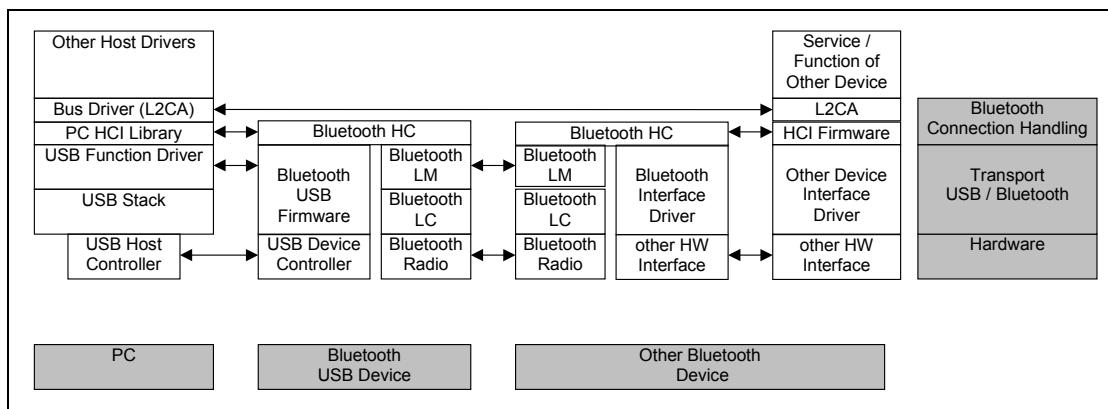


Figure 1.3: Relationship between Host and a Composite BR/EDR and AMP Controller

The USB hardware can be embodied in one of several ways:

1. As a USB dongle (e.g. cabled USB)
2. As a USB module integrated into the product and connected internally via a cable or connector
3. Integrated onto the motherboard of a notebook PC or other device and connected via circuit board traces with standard USB, Inter-Chip USB or High Speed Inter-Chip USB
4. Integrated as a subsystem on a single-chip System-on-Chip (SoC) design connected on-chip as part of a compound device.

Finally, for an overview of the connection that is established between two Bluetooth devices, reference [Figure 1.4](#).

*USB Transport Layer*

## 2 USB ENDPOINT EXPECTATIONS

This section outlines specific USB endpoints that are required in order to function properly with the host. This section assumes a basic familiarity with USB. The endpoint numbers (labeled ‘Suggested Endpoint Address’ below) may be dynamically recognized upon driver initialization – this depends on the implementation.

### 2.1 DESCRIPTOR OVERVIEW

The Universal Serial Bus is intended for high data rates. USB defines several physical layers, ranging from 1.5 Mbps to several Gbps of bus bandwidth. A Bluetooth USB device should provide a USB transport with sufficient bus bandwidth to support the Bluetooth radio transports included in the device.

There are two USB controller types:

- Primary Controller
- AMP Controller

#### 2.1.1 Primary Controller Descriptors

The Primary Controller configuration consists of two interfaces. The first interface has no alternate settings and contains the bulk and interrupt endpoints. The second interface provides scalable isochronous bandwidth. The recommended configuration for the second interface has four alternate settings that provide different bandwidth. The default interface is empty so that the device is capable of scaling down to zero isochronous bandwidth.

An HCI packet consisting of an HCI header and HCI data shall be contained in one USB Transfer. A USB transfer is defined by the USB specification as one or more USB transactions that contain the data from one IO request. For example, an ACL data packet containing 256 bytes (both HCI header and HCI data) would be sent over the bulk endpoint in one IO request. That IO request will require four 64-byte full speed USB Transactions or a single 256-byte High-speed USB Transaction, and forms a Transfer. If the Maximum Packet Size for the endpoint on which the transfer is sent is 64 bytes, then that IO request will require four 64-byte USB transactions.

The endpoints are spread across two interfaces so that when adjusting isochronous bandwidth consumption (via select interface calls), any pending bulk and/or interrupt transactions do not have to be terminated or resubmitted.

[Table 2.1](#) and the following example calculations illustrate recommended endpoint descriptor parameter values and how they are derived. The maximum packet sizes for control endpoints, interrupt endpoints and bulk endpoints may be any value allowed by the relevant USB core specifications. The maximum packet size for isochronous endpoints must be large enough to accommodate

the maximum average traffic; they may be set to accommodate the largest HCI transfer, subject to the capabilities of the controller. In [Table 2.1](#), the service interval is assumed to be 1 millisecond, for USB Full Speed (FS) frames.

#### Examples:

1. For a single 8 kHz audio channel with of 64 kbps CVSD audio the host may break HCI data into one USB transfers for each USB frame (e.g. 1 ms); in that case, the max packet size must be at least  $11 = 3$  octet HCI header + 8 octets of data. To reduce HCI header overhead, a common strategy (see [Table 2.2](#)) is to consolidate 3 ms of data into a 27 octet HCI packet of 24 octets of data + 3 octets of HCI header. These HCI packets can be exchanged as a single USB transfer on 3 ms intervals; this requires a max packet size of  $27/3 = 9$  octets per 1 millisecond USB Full Speed Frame.
2. For two 8 kHz audio channels of 64 kbps CVSD audio the host may double the payload size of each HCI packet, which would be 3 octets HCI header + 48 octets of data = 51 octets. Posting these at 3 ms intervals requires  $51/3 = 17$  octets of maximum packet size.
3. For one 16 kHz audio channel the HCI packets need to be large enough to accommodate single octet (128 kbps) or 2-octet (256 kbps) encoding. On 3 ms intervals, these would have to be  $(48+3)/3 = 17$  octets or  $(96+3)/3 = 33$  octets respectively.
4. For one mSBC<sup>1</sup> compressed wideband audio channel the HCI packets will be 3 octets of HCI header + 60 octets of data. If the Controller can support a maximum packet size of 63 (or 64) octets, an entire mSBC frame may be exchanged in one USB transaction. If the maximum packet size is smaller than 63 octets, additional latency will be introduced. The USB Host Controller will reserve bandwidth that will only be used when the Bluetooth Host or Controller has data to transfer.
5. For combinations of audio channels, if the max packet size can accommodate the largest HCI packets, there is also sufficient bandwidth for the audio channels that have smaller HCI packets. See example 4 above.

---

1. For information about modified Sub Band Codec (mSBC), see Hands-Free Profile [v1.6](#) or later

*USB Transport Layer*

The following table outlines a recommended configuration for a USB Full Speed device.

Interface Number	Alternate Setting	Suggested Endpoint Address	Endpoint Type	Suggested Max Packet Size	USB Polling Interval/HCI Packet Interval
<b>HCI Commands</b>					
N/A	N/A	0x00	Control	8/16/32/64	NA
<b>HCI Events</b>					
0	0	0x81	Interrupt (IN)	16	variable
<b>ACL Data</b>					
0	0	0x82	Bulk (IN)	32/64	variable
0	0	0x02	Bulk (OUT)	32/64	variable
<b>No active voice channels (for USB compliance)</b>					
1	0	0x83	Isoch (IN)	0	NA
1	0	0x03	Isoch (OUT)	0	NA
<b>One 8 kHz voice channel with 8-bit encoding</b>					
1	1	0x83	Isoch (IN)	9	1 ms/3 ms
1	1	0x03	Isoch (OUT)	9	1 ms/3 ms
<b>Two 8 kHz voice channels with 8-bit encoding or one 8 kHz voice channel with 16-bit encoding</b>					
1	2	0x83	Isoch (IN)	17	1 ms/3 ms
1	2	0x03	Isoch (OUT)	17	1 ms/3ms
<b>Three 8 kHz voice channels with 8-bit encoding</b>					
1	3	0x83	Isoch (IN)	25	1 ms/3ms
1	3	0x03	Isoch (OUT)	25	1 ms/3ms
<b>Two 8 kHz voice channels with 16-bit encoding or one 16 kHz voice channel with 16-bit encoding</b>					
1	4	0x83	Isoch (IN)	33	1 ms/3 ms

Table 2.1: *USB Primary firmware interface and endpoint settings*

## USB Transport Layer



Interface Number	Alternate Setting	Suggested Endpoint Address	Endpoint Type	Suggested Max Packet Size	USB Polling Interval/HCI Packet Interval
1	4	0x03	Isoch (OUT)	33	1 ms/3 ms
<b>Three 8 kHz voice channels with 16-bit encoding or one 8 kHz voice channel with 16-bit encoding and one 16 kHz voice channel with 16-bit encoding</b>					
1	5	0x83	Isoch (IN)	49	1 ms/3 ms
1	5	0x03	Isoch (OUT)	49	1 ms/3 ms
<b>One mSBC voice channel</b>					
1	6	0x83	Isoch (IN)	63	1 ms/7.5 ms
1	6	0x03	Isoch (OUT)	63	1 ms/7.5 ms

Table 2.1: USB Primary firmware interface and endpoint settings

The following two examples are used to demonstrate the flow of data given the described endpoints.

Number of voice channels	Duration of voice data	Encoding
One	3 ms per IO Request	8-bit

Time (ms)	USB data (header refers to HCI header) (Receive & Send from the host)	Queued data (read / write)	Time (ms)	Air data	Amount Received/ Sent (ms)
0	Receive 0 bytes Send 9 bytes (3 header, 6 data)	0 / 6	0	Send 0	0 / 0
		10 / 6	0.625	Receive 10	1.25 / 0
1	Receive 0 bytes Send 9 bytes (9 bytes HCI data)	10 / 15	1.25	Send 0	1.25 / 0
		20 / 15	1.875	Receive 10	2.50 / 0
2	Receive 0 bytes Send 9 bytes (9 bytes HCI data)	20 / 24	2.50	Send 0	2.50 / 0
		30 / 24	3.125	Receive 10	3.75 / 0

Table 2.2: Example USB single-channel voice traffic data flow

## USB Transport Layer



Time (ms)	USB data (header refers to HCI header) (Receive & Send from the host)	Queued data (read / write)	Time (ms)	Air data	Amount Received/ Sent (ms)
3	Receive 9 bytes (3 header, 6 data) Send 9 bytes (3 header, 6 data)	24 / 20	3.75	Send 10	3.75 / 1.25
4	Receive 9 bytes (9 bytes data) Send 9 bytes (9 bytes HCI data)	25 / 29	4.375	Receive 10	5.0 / 1.25
5	Receive 9 bytes (9 bytes data) Send 9 bytes (9 bytes HCI data)	16 / 28	5.0	Send 10	5.0 / 2.50
		26 / 28	5.625	Receive 10	6.25 / 2.50
6	Receive 9 bytes (3 header, 6 data) Send 9 bytes (3 header, 6 data)	20 / 24	6.25	Send 10	6.25 / 3.75
		30 / 24	6.875	Receive 10	7.5 / 3.75
7	Receive 9 bytes (9 bytes data) Send 9 bytes (9 bytes HCI data)	21 / 23	7.5	Send 10	7.5 / 5.0
8	Receive 9 bytes (9 bytes data) Send 9 bytes (9 bytes HCI data)	22 / 32	8.125	Receive 10	8.75 / 5.0
		22 / 22	8.75	Send 10	8.75 / 6.25
9	Receive 9 bytes (3 header, 6 data) Send 9 bytes (3 header, 6 data)	26 / 28	9.375	Receive 10	10.0 / 6.25
10	Receive 9 bytes (9 bytes data) Send 9 bytes (9 bytes HCI data)	17 / 27	10	Send 10	10.0 / 7.5
		27 / 27	10.625	Receive 10	11.25 / 7.5
11	Receive 9 bytes (9 bytes data) Send 9 bytes (9 bytes HCI data)	18 / 26	11.25	Send 10	11.25 / 8.75

Table 2.2: Example USB single-channel voice traffic data flow

Convergence is expected because the radio is sending out an average of eight bytes of voice data every one ms and USB is sending eight bytes of voice data every one ms.

Number of voice channels	Duration of voice data	Encoding
Two	3 ms per IO Request	8-bit

## USB Transport Layer



Time (ms)	USB data (header refers to HCI header) (Receive & Send from the host)	Queued data (read / write)	Time (ms)	Air data	Amount Received / Sent (ms)
0	Receive 0 bytes for Channel #1 Send 17 bytes (3 header, 14 data) for Channel #1	C1- 0/14 C2- 0/0	0	Send 0 for C1	C1- 0/0 C2- 0/0
		C1- 20/14 C2- 0/0	0.625	Receive 20 for C1	C1- 2.5/0 C2- 0/0
1	Receive 0 bytes for Channel #1 Send 17 bytes (17 bytes HCI data) for Channel #1	C1- 20/31 C2- 0/0	1.25	Send 0 for C2	C1- 2.5/0 C2- 0/0
		C1- 20/31 C2- 20/0	1.875	Receive 20 for C2	C1- 2.5/0 C2- 2.5/0
2	Receive 0 bytes for Channel #1 Send 17 bytes (17 bytes HCI data) for Channel #1	C1- 20/28 C2- 20/0	2.50	Send 20 for C1	C1- 2.5/2.5 C2- 2.5/0
		C1- 40/28 C2- 0/0	3.125	Receive 20 for C1	C1- 5.0/2.5 C2- 2.5/0
3	Receive 0 bytes for Channel #2 Send 17 bytes (3 header, 14 data) for Channel #2	C1- 40/28 C2- 20/14	3.75	Send 0 for C2	C1- 5.0/2.5 C2- 2.5/0
4	Receive 0 bytes for Channel #2 Send 17 bytes (17 bytes HCI data) for Channel #2	C1- 40/28 C2- 40/31	4.375	Receive 20 for C2	C1- 5.0/2.5 C2- 5.0/0
5	Receive 0 bytes for Channel #2 Send 17 bytes (17 bytes HCI data) for Channel #2	C1- 40/8 C2- 40/48	5.0	Send 20 for C1	C1- 5.0/5.0 C2- 5.0/0
		C1- 60/8 C2- 40/48	5.625	Receive 20 for C1	C1- 7.5/5.0 C2- 5.0/0
6	Receive 17 bytes (3 header, 14 data) for Channel #1 Send 17 bytes (3 header, 14 data) for Channel #1	C1- 46/22 C2- 40/28	6.25	Send 20 for C2	C1- 7.5/5.0 C2- 5.0/2.5

Table 2.3: Example USB dual-channel voice traffic data flow

Time (ms)	USB data (header refers to HCI header) (Receive & Send from the host)	Queued data (read / write)	Time (ms)	Air data	Amount Received / Sent (ms)
		C1- 46/ 22 C2- 60/ 28	6.875	Receive 20 for C2	C1- 7.5/5.0 C2- 7.5/2.5
7	Receive 17 bytes (17 bytes data) for Channel #1  Send 17 bytes (17 bytes HCI data) for Channel #1	C1- 29/ 19 C2- 60/ 28	7.5	Send 20 for C1	C1- 7.5/7.5 C2- 7.5/2.5
8	Receive 17 bytes (17 bytes data) for Channel #1  Send 17 bytes (17 bytes HCI data) for Channel #1	C1- 32/ 36 C2- 60/ 28	8.125	Receive 20 for C1	C1- 10/7.5 C2- 7.5/2.5
		C1- 32/ 36 C2- 60/8	8.75	Send 20 for C2	C1- 10/7.5 C2- 7.5/5.0
9	Receive 17 bytes (3 header, 14 data) for Channel #2  Send 17 bytes (3 header, 14 data) for Channel #2	C1- 32/ 36 C2- 54/ 22	9.375	Receive 20 for C2	C1- 10/7.5 C2- 10/5.0
10	Receive 17 bytes (17 bytes data) for Channel #2  Send 17 bytes (17 bytes HCI data) for Channel #2	C1- 32/ 16 C2- 37/ 39	10	Send 20 for C1	C1- 10/10 C2- 10/5.0
		C1- 52/ 16 C2- 37/ 39	10.625	Receive 20 for C1	C1- 12.5/ 10 C2- 10/5.0
11	Receive 17 bytes (17 bytes data) for Channel #2  Send 17 bytes (17 bytes HCI data) for Channel #2	C1- 52/ 16 C2- 20/ 36	11.25	Send 20 for C2	C1- 12.5/ 10 C2- 10/7.5

Table 2.3: Example USB dual-channel voice traffic data flow

### 2.1.2 AMP Controller Descriptors

The AMP Controller configuration consists of one interface. That interface (interface N - see device descriptors) has no alternate settings and contains the bulk and interrupt endpoints.

An HCI packet, consisting of an HCI header and HCI data, shall be contained in one USB transfer.

Interface Number	Alternate Setting	Suggested Endpoint Address	Endpoint Type	Suggested Max Packet Size
<b>HCI Commands</b>				
N/A	N/A	0x00	Control	64
<b>HCI Events</b>				
N	0	0x81	Interrupt (IN)	512
<b>AMP Data</b>				
N	0	0x82	Bulk (IN)	512
N	0	0x02	Bulk (OUT)	512

Table 2.4: USB AMP firmware interface and endpoint settings

NOTE: Endpoint addresses are reported by the device in the Endpoint Descriptors.

## 2.2 CONTROL ENDPOINT EXPECTATIONS

Endpoint 0 is used to configure and control the USB device. Endpoint 0 will also be used to allow the host to send HCI-specific commands to the host controller. HCI Command packets should be sent with the following parameters:

bmRequestType = 0x20 (Host-to-device class request, device as target)  
 bRequest = 0x00  
 wValue = 0x00  
 wIndex = 0x00

Some host devices on the market set bRequest to 0xE0. Hence, for historical reasons, if the Bluetooth Controller firmware receives a class request over this endpoint, it should treat the packet as an HCI command packet regardless of the value of bRequest, wValue and wIndex.

All HCI Control Packets delivered to Endpoint 0 are addressed in the Setup Data structure (See 9.3 of [2]). This structure contains fields which determine the destination within the device. The bmRequestType can be used to select the Device or the Interface. If Interface is selected, the wIndex parameter must select the Index for the targeted Bluetooth controller.

### 2.2.1 Single Function Primary Controller

For a single function Primary Controller, the Host should address HCI command packets to the Device. HCI command packets should be sent with the following parameters:

Parameter	Value	description
bmRequestType	0x20	Host-to-device class request, device as target
bRequest	0x00	
wValue	0x00	
wlIndex	0x00	

Table 2.5: HCI command packet addressing for single-function Primary controllers

Note: For historical reasons, if the Primary Controller firmware receives a packet over this endpoint, it should treat the packet as an HCI command packet regardless of the value of bRequest, wValue and wlIndex. Some Host devices set bRequest to 0xE0.

## 2.2.2 Primary Controller Function in a Composite Device

For a Primary Controller included in a composite (multi-function) device, the host should address HCI control packets to the Interface of the Primary Controller. HCI command packets should be sent with the following parameters:

Parameter	Value	description
bmRequestType	0x21	Host-to-Interface class request, interface as target
bRequest	0x00	
wValue	0x00	
wlIndex	IF#	This is the actual Interface number within the composite device.

Table 2.6: HCI command packet addressing for composite device Primary Controllers

If the Host system driver addresses USB requests containing HCI command packets to the Device (see [Section 2.2.1](#)) instead of to the Interface, the device implementation shall recognize these HCI command packets and correctly route them to the Primary Controller function, to ensure correct operation of the Primary Controller function and avoid malfunctions in other functions contained in the composite device.

## 2.2.3 AMP Controller

For any AMP Controller, either in a single function device or included in a composite device, the Host shall address HCI control packets to the Interface of the AMP Controller. HCI command packets shall be sent with the following parameters:

Parameter	Value	description
bmRequestType	0x21	Host-to-Interface class request, interface as target
bRequest	0x2B	Arbitrary value chosen to identify requests targeted to an AMP controller function.
wValue	0x00	
wIndex	IF#	This is the actual Interface number within the composite device.

Figure 2.1: HCI command packet addressing for single-function AMP Controller

## 2.3 BULK ENDPOINTS EXPECTATIONS

Data integrity is a critical aspect for ACL data. This, in combination with bandwidth requirements, is the reason for using a bulk endpoint. Multiple 64-byte packets can be shipped per USB Frame (1 millisecond, full speed) or 512-byte packets per USB Microframe (125 microseconds, high-speed), across the bus.

Suggested bulk max packet size is 64 bytes for full-speed, or 512 bytes for high speed.

Bulk has the ability to detect errors and correct them. In order to avoid starvation, a flow control model similar to the shared endpoint model is recommended for the host controller.

## 2.4 INTERRUPT ENDPOINT EXPECTATIONS

An interrupt endpoint is necessary to ensure that events are delivered in a predictable and timely manner. Event packets can be sent across USB with a guaranteed latency.

The interrupt endpoint should have an interval of 1 ms (full speed). For a controller using USB high-speed the interrupt interval may have an interval of 125 microseconds.

The USB software and firmware requires no intimate knowledge of the events passed to the host controller.

## 2.5 ISOCHRONOUS ENDPOINTS EXPECTATIONS

These isochronous endpoints transfer synchronous data to and from the host controller of the radio.

Time is the critical aspect for this type of data. The USB firmware should transfer the contents of the data to the host controllers' synchronous FIFOs. If the FIFOs are full, the data should be overwritten with new data.

These endpoints have a one (1) ms interval, as required by Chapter 9 of the USB Specification, Versions 1.0 and 1.1.

The radio is capable of three (3) 64Kb/s voice channels (and can receive the data coded in different ways – 16-bit linear audio coding is the method that requires the most data). A suggested max packet size for this endpoint would be at least 64 bytes. (It is recommended that max packet sizes be on power of 2 boundaries for optimum throughput.) However, if it is not necessary to support three voice channels with 16-bit coding, 32 bytes could also be considered an acceptable max packet size.

## 3 CLASS CODE

---

A class code will be used that is specific to all USB Bluetooth devices. This will allow the proper driver stack to load, regardless of which vendor built the device.

### 3.1 BLUETOOTH CODES

The values shown in the following tables shall be used in the Device Descriptor for Bluetooth controller devices with USB HCI transport.

Code	Label	Value	Description
Class	bDeviceClass	0xE0	Wireless Controller
Subclass	bDeviceSubClass	0x01	RF Controller
Protocol	bDeviceProtocol	0x01	Bluetooth Primary Controller

Table 3.1: USB Codes for Primary Controllers

Code	Label	Value	Description
Class	bDeviceClass	0xE0	Wireless Controller
Subclass	bDeviceSubClass	0x01	RF Controller
Protocol	bDeviceProtocol	0x04	Bluetooth AMP controller

Table 3.2: USB Codes for AMP Controllers

These values should also be used in the interface descriptors for the interfaces described in [Section 2.1](#) and as described in the following sections.

#### 3.1.1 Single Function Primary Controller

Set the Class, Subclass, and Protocol values for the Device Descriptor and for each Interface Descriptor which applies to the Primary Controller as defined in [Table 3.1](#).

#### 3.1.2 Single Function AMP Controller

Set the Class, Subclass, and Protocol values for the Device Descriptor and for each Interface Descriptor which applies to the AMP Controller as defined in [Table 3.2](#).

### 3.1.3 Composite Bluetooth Primary and AMP Controller

Set the Class, Subclass, and Protocol values for the Device Descriptor as defined in the USB Interface Association Descriptor (IAD) ECN.

Set the Class, Subclass, and Protocol values for each Interface Descriptor which applies to the Primary Controller as defined in [Table 3.1](#).

Code	Label	Value	Description
Class	bDeviceClass	0xEF	Miscellaneous
Subclass	bDeviceSubClass	0x02	Common Class
Protocol	bDeviceProtocol	0x01	Interface Association Descriptor

*Table 3.3: USB Codes for composite devices using IAD*

Set the Class, Subclass, and Protocol values for the each Interface Descriptor which applies to the AMP Controller as defined in [Table 3.2](#).

### 3.1.4 Composite Device Including Bluetooth Primary and AMP Controller

Set the Class, Subclass, and Protocol values for the Device Descriptor to as defined in [Table 3.3](#).

Set the Class, Subclass, and Protocol values for each Interface Descriptor which applies to the Primary Controller as defined in [Table 3.1](#).

Set the Class, Subclass, and Protocol values for the each Interface Descriptor which applies to the AMP Controller as defined in [Table 3.2](#).

## 4 DEVICE FIRMWARE UPGRADE

---

Firmware upgrade capability is not a required feature. But if implemented, the firmware upgrade shall be compliant with the “Universal Serial Bus Device Class Specification for Device Firmware Upgrade” (version 1.0 dated May 13, 1999) available on the USB Forum web site at <http://www.usb.org>.

## 5 LIMITATIONS

### 5.1 POWER SPECIFIC LIMITATIONS

Some USB host controllers in portable devices will not receive power while the system is in a sleep mode. For example, many PCs do not supply power to the USB port in system power states S3 or S4, as defined in ACPI. Hence, USB wake-up can only occur when the system is in S1 or S2. Furthermore, all connections and state information of the USB Bluetooth controller will be lost in the system sleep state if power is lost necessitating re-initialization when the device returns to the active state.

Some USB host controllers further continually snoop memory when a device is attached to see if there is any work that needs to be done. The snoop is typically performed every 1ms for USB full-speed devices. This prevents the processor from dropping into a low power state known as C3. Because the processor is not able to enter the C3 state, significant power consumption may occur. This is a major concern for battery-powered hosts such notebook computers. Some host controllers are capable of scheduling polling of USB devices at short intervals while snooping the host's memory much less frequently. Systems with such host controllers may be able to greatly increase the percentage of time spent in the C3 state even if Bluetooth connections are maintained.

A feature called Link Power Management is also recommended for implementation by Bluetooth devices. It is described in an ECN (Engineering Change Notice) from the USB Implementers' Forum.

### 5.2 OTHER LIMITATIONS

Data corruption may occur across isochronous endpoints. Endpoints one and two may suffer from data corruption.

USB provides 16-CRC on all data transfers. The USB has a bit error rate of  $10^{-13}$ .

*Note that when a dongle is removed from the system, the radio will lose power (assuming this is a bus-powered device). This means that devices will lose connection.*

## 6 BLUETOOTH COMPOSITE DEVICE IMPLEMENTATION

A USB Composite contains multiple independent functions. This section describes how to implement Bluetooth functions within a USB Composite device. This may require the use of Interface Association Descriptors (IAD) to aggregate multiple Interfaces. This also requires the host to address USB requests to the specific Interface (see [\[1\]](#)).

### 6.1 CONFIGURATIONS

There are several ways that Bluetooth Controller functions may be included in a USB composite device:

- Primary Controller and AMP Controller (see [Section 6.3](#))
- Primary Controller in a multi-radio device
- Primary Controller in a device also containing non-radio functions (e.g. memory)
- AMP Controller in a multi-radio device

### 6.2 USING USB INTERFACE ASSOCIATION DESCRIPTORS FOR A PRIMARY CONTROLLER FUNCTION

A Primary Controller ([\[Vol 1\] Part A, Section 2](#)) shall contain at least two interfaces:

- HCI Events and ACL data (3 endpoints)
- HCI SCO data (2 endpoints, multiple alternate settings)

A Primary Controller may also contain

- Device Firmware Upgrade (see [\[2\]](#))

When used in a USB Composite device, a Primary Controller function shall use an IAD descriptor to associate the provided interfaces. The following is an example IAD for a Primary function without Device Firmware Upgrade:

- It would be contained within a Configuration Descriptor set.
- It would be followed by two Interface Descriptors and associated Endpoint Descriptors.

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
0	bLength	1	0x08	Size of this descriptor in octets
1	bDescriptorType	1	0x0B	INTERFACE ASSOCIATION DESCRIPTOR

*Table 6.1: Example Interface Association Descriptor used for a Primary Controller function*

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
2	bFirstInterface	1	number	Interface number of the first interface associated with this device
3	blInterfaceCount	1	0x02	Number of contiguous interfaces associated with the function
4	bFunctionClass	1	0xE0	Wireless Controller
5	bFunctionSubClass	1	0x01	RF Controller
6	bFunctionProtocol	1	0x01	Bluetooth Primary Controller
7	iFunction	1	Index	Pointer to a name string for this function, if any is provided

Table 6.1: Example Interface Association Descriptor used for a Primary Controller function

### 6.3 COMBINED PRIMARY CONTROLLER FUNCTION AND SINGLE AMP CONTROLLER FUNCTION

An AMP Controller (see [Volume 5](#)) shall contain at least one interface:

- HCI Events and ACL Data (3 endpoints)

An AMP Controller may also contain

- Device Firmware Upgrade (see [\[2\]](#))

When used in a USB Composite device, an AMP Controller does not need IAD. If the device contains the Device Firmware Upgrade option as a separate Device function, an IAD is not needed. If the Device Firmware Upgrade option is bundled with the AMP Controller function, then an IAD is needed to bind the two interfaces.

A USB Composite device containing only a Primary Controller and an AMP Controller may include a Configuration Descriptor set with the following structure:

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
				Configuration Descriptor
0	bLength	1	0x09	Configuration Descriptor size
1	bDescriptorType	1	0x02	CONFIGURATION DESCRIPTOR
2	wTotalLength	2		Size of the entire bundle

Table 6.2: Example Configuration Descriptor used for a composite Primary and AMP Controller device

## USB Transport Layer



Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
4	bNumInterfaces	1	0x03	Three Interfaces: IF#1 Primary events & ACL IF#2 Primary SCO or eSCO IF#3 AMP events & ACL
5	bConfigurationValue	1	0x01	
6	iConfiguration	1	Index	Reference to a string describing this.
7	bmAttributes	1		Attributes bitmap
8	MaxPower	1	0xFA	Max power used/2ma, e.g. 500ma  Interface Association Descriptor
0	bLength	1	0x08	Interface Association Descriptor size
1	bDescriptorType	1	0x0B	INTERFACE ASSOCIATION DESCRIPTOR
2	bFirstInterface	1	IF#1	Interface number of the first interface associated with this device
3	bInterfaceCount	1	0x03	Number of contiguous interfaces associated with the function.
4	bFunctionClass	1	0xE0	Wireless Controller
5	bFunctionSubClass	1	0x01	RF Controller
6	bFunctionProtocol	1	0x01	Bluetooth Primary Controller
7	iFunction	1	Index	Pointer to a name string for this function, if any is provided.
				Primary Events & ACL Interface
0	bLength	1	0x09	
1	bDescriptorType	1	0x04	INTERFACE DESCRIPTOR
2	bInterfaceNumber	1	IF#1	This is the first interface in the device.
3	bAlternateSetting	1	0x00	This is the first setting for this interface.
4	bNumEndpoints	1	0x03	INT, Bulk OUT (ACL), Bulk IN (ACL)
5	bFunctionClass	1	0xE0	Wireless Controller

Table 6.2: Example Configuration Descriptor used for a composite Primary and AMP Controller device

## USB Transport Layer



Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
6	bFunctionSubClass	1	0x01	RF Controller
7	bFunctionProtocol	1	0x01	Bluetooth Primary Controller
8	iInterface	1	Index	Pointer to a name string for this interface, if any is provided.
	Omitted			INT ENDPOINT DESCRIPTOR
	Omitted			BULK OUT ENPOINT DESCRIPTOR
	Omitted			BULK IN ENPOINT DESCRIPTOR
				Primary Controller SCO Interface
0	bLength	1	0x09	
1	bDescriptorType	1	0x04	INTERFACE DESCRIPTOR
2	bInterfaceNumber	1	IF#2	This is the second interface in the device.
3	bAlternateSetting	1	0x00	This is the first setting for this interface
4	bNumEndpoints	1	0x02	Isoch OUT (SCO), Isoch IN (SCO)
5	bFunctionClass	1	0xE0	Wireless Controller
6	bFunctionSubClass	1	0x01	RF Controller
7	bFunctionProtocol	1	0x01	Bluetooth Primary Controller
8	iInterface	1	Index	Pointer to a name string for this interface, if any is provided.
	Omitted			ISOCH OUT ENDPOINT DESCRIPTOR
	Omitted			ISOCH IN ENPOINT DESCRIPTOR
				AMP Controller: Events & ACL Interface
0	bLength	1	0x09	
1	bDescriptorType	1	0x04	INTERFACE DESCRIPTOR
2	bInterfaceNumber	1	IF#3	This is the third interface in the device.
3	bAlternateSetting	1	0x00	This is the first setting for this interface.

Table 6.2: Example Configuration Descriptor used for a composite Primary and AMP Controller device

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
4	bNumEndpoints	1	0x03	INT, Bulk OUT (ACL), Bulk IN (ACL)
5	bFunctionClass	1	0xE0	Wireless Controller
6	bFunctionSubClass	1	0x01	RF Controller
7	bFunctionProtocol	1	0x04	Bluetooth AMP Controller
8	iInterface	1	Index	Pointer to a name string for this interface, if any is provided.
	Omitted			INT ENDPOINT DESCRIPTOR
	Omitted			BULK OUT ENPOINT DESCRIPTOR
	Omitted			BULK IN ENPOINT DESCRIPTOR

Table 6.2: Example Configuration Descriptor used for a composite Primary and AMP Controller device

## 7 REFERENCES

---

- [1] USB 2.0, <http://www.usb.org/developers/docs/docs>, including:
  - 1. Interface Association Descriptors ECN
  - 2. Inter-Chip USB Supplement 1.0
  - 3. High Speed Inter-Chip USB Supplement 1.0
  - 4. Link Power Management 1.0
- [2] USB Device Firmware Upgrade 1.1



Host Controller Interface [Transport Layer]  
Part C

## **SECURE DIGITAL (SD) TRANSPORT LAYER**

*This document describes the SD transport layer (between the Host and Controller). HCI command, event and data packets flow through this layer, but the layer does not decode them. The Bluetooth SD Transport layer is defined in a document owned and maintained by the Secure Digital Association. Information regarding that document is described herein.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Goals .....</b>	<b>51</b>
2.1	Hardware Goals .....	51
2.2	Software Goals.....	51
2.3	Configuration Goals .....	52
2.4	Configuration for Multiple Controllers.....	52
<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Interface Documents .....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Communication .....</b>	<b>54</b>
4.1	Overview .....	54
<b>5</b>	<b>Appendix A - Acronyms and Abbreviations .....</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Appendix B - Related Documents.....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Appendix C - Tests .....</b>	<b>57</b>
7.1	Test Suite Structure .....	57

## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

This document discusses the requirements of the Secure Digital (SD) interface for Bluetooth hardware. Readers should be familiar with SD, SD design issues, and the overall Bluetooth architecture. The reader should also be familiar with the Bluetooth Host Controller Interface.

The SD Bluetooth Protocol is documented in the SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth, which is owned and maintained by the Secure Digital Association (SDA). The full specification is available to members of the SDA that have signed all appropriate SD NDA and license requirements. The SDA also makes a Non-NDA version available, the Simplified Version of: SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth. There are no changes to the SDA document to comply with the requirements of the Bluetooth SIG.

## 2 GOALS

---

### 2.1 HARDWARE GOALS

The Bluetooth SD transport interface specification is designed to take advantage of both the SD Physical Transport bus and the packet orientation of the Bluetooth HCI protocol. Thus, all data is transferred in blocks as packets. Since the block size used on the SD bus may be smaller than the HCI packet, a segmentation and recombination protocol is defined.

SDIO [2] provides different data rate options, including different bit path widths and clock rates. Systems using SDIO should choose options that provide sufficient bandwidth to support the needs of the Controller, both for device control (HCI commands and events) and for data (ACL, SCO).

The specification supports SDIO-connected Controller:

- Primary Controller
- AMP Controller
- Multifunction Controller incorporating some combination of Primary and AMP Controllers.

### 2.2 SOFTWARE GOALS

The Bluetooth SD transport interface specification is designed for non-embedded solutions. It is assumed that the host software does not necessarily have a priori knowledge of the SD Bluetooth device.

The interface is not designed for embedded applications where much of the information passed via the interface is known in advance.

The SDA also defines a Bluetooth interface for embedded applications where the Controller contains protocol layers above HCI (RFCOMM, SDP etc.). This specification is called SDIO Card Type-B Specification for Bluetooth. Information about this specification can be obtained from the SDA:

<http://www.sdcard.org>.

## 2.3 CONFIGURATION GOALS

The SDIO Card Specification [2] defines SDIO Standard Function Codes in Table 6-4:

- 0x2 This function supports the SDIO Type-A for Bluetooth standard interface
- 0x3 This function supports the SDIO Type-B for Bluetooth standard interface
- 0x9 This function supports the SDIO Type-A for Bluetooth AMP standard interface

The SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth [3] specifies how to implement a Primary Controller. Table 2.1 defines Service ID codes to route HCI messages (codes 0x01 - 0x04). An AMP Controller shall conform to [3] except for one Service ID code:

SDIO Type-A service ID	Primary Controller	AMP Controller
0x00	reserved	reserved
0x01	HCI Command Packet	HCI Command Packet
0x02	ACL Data	ACL Data: Best Effort and Guaranteed Logical Links
0x03	SCO Data	reserved
0x04	HCI Event Packet	HCI Event Packet
0x05-0xFF	Reserved as per [3]	Reserved as per [3]

Table 2.1: Bluetooth SDIO Controller Service ID codes

## 2.4 CONFIGURATION FOR MULTIPLE CONTROLLERS

An SDIO device may contain one or more Controllers as defined in [3]. These Controller functions shall conform to the requirements of [2] section 6.12.

### 3 PHYSICAL INTERFACE DOCUMENTS

---

This specification references the SD SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth. This SDA document defines the Bluetooth HCI for all SD devices that support an HCI level interface. Any SD Bluetooth device claiming compliance with the SD Bluetooth Transport must support this interface and additionally adhere to its device type specification, which is set by the Secure Digital Association. The SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth document is based on the SDIO Card Specification, which in turn is based on the SD Memory Card Specification: Part 1 Physical Layer Specification. All of these documents are copyrighted by the SDA and are available ONLY to SDA member companies that have signed the appropriate NDA documents with the SDA. As an introduction to the SD Bluetooth Type A specification, the SDA has created 'Simplified' versions of each of these documents. The simplified versions do not contain enough information to fully implement a device, however they do contain enough information to convey the structure and intent of the specifications.

Applicable SDA Documents available to members of the SDA:

**SD Memory Card Specification: Part 1 Physical Layer Specification**

**SDIO Card Specification**

**SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth.**

Applicable Simplified SDA Documents available to non-members and members of the SDA:

**Simplified Version of: SD Memory Card Specification: Part 1 Physical Layer Specification**

**Simplified Version of: SDIO Card Specification:**

**Simplified Version of: SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth**

More information on the Secure Digital Association and the SD specifications can be found at the SDA website at. <http://www.sdcards.org>.

## 4 COMMUNICATION

### 4.1 OVERVIEW

Figure 4.1 below is a diagram of the communication interface between a Bluetooth SD device and the Bluetooth host protocol stack. Modifications to this diagram might be needed for operating systems that do not support a miniport model:

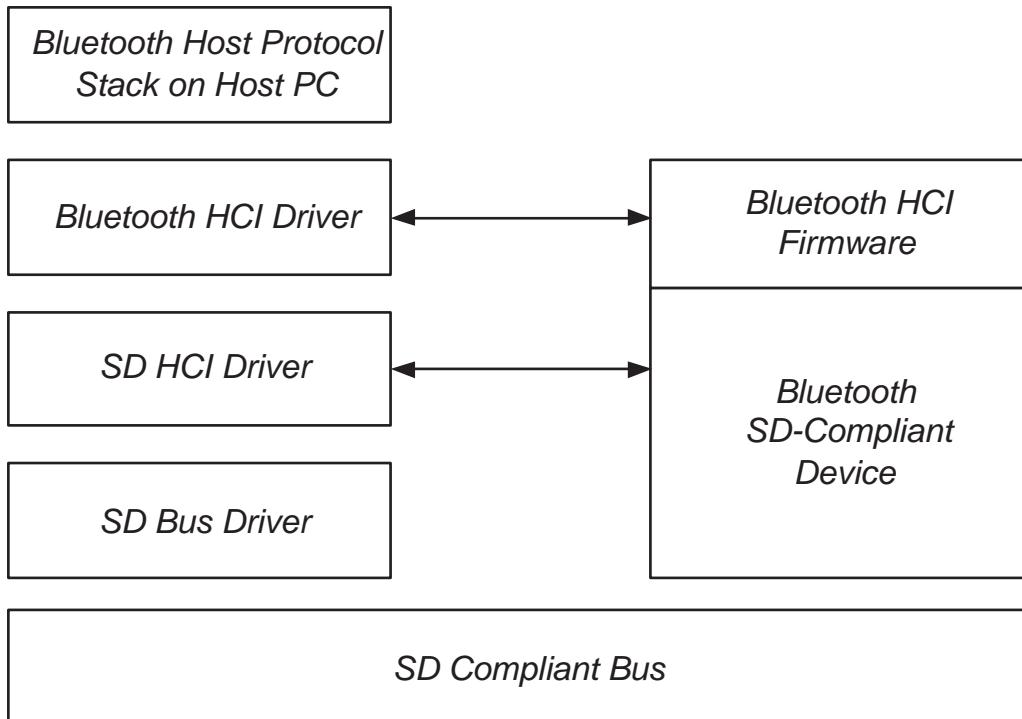


Figure 4.1: SD Communication Diagram

## 5 APPENDIX A - ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

---

Acronym	Description
HCI	Host Controller Interface
NDA	Non-Disclosure Agreement
OS	Operating System
SD	Secure Digital
SDA	Secure Digital Association
SDIO	Secure Digital Input/Output
SDP	Service Discovery Protocol
SIG	Special Interest Group

*Table 5.1: Acronyms and Abbreviations*

## 6 APPENDIX B - RELATED DOCUMENTS

---

**A)** Bluetooth Core Specification v1.2 or later.

**B)** Applicable SDA Documents available to members of the SDA:

- [1] B.1) SD Memory Card Specification: Part 1 Physical Layer Specification
- [2] B.2) SDIO Card Specification
- [3] B.3) SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth
- [4] B.4) SDIO Card Type-B Specification for Bluetooth
- [5] B.5) SDIO Card Physical Test Specification
- [6] B.5) SDIO Host Physical Test Specification
- [7] B.6) SD Bluetooth Type A Test Specification

**These documents are available to members of the SDA in the “Members Only” section of the SDA web site (<https://www.socard.org/members/>). See <http://www.socard.org/developers/join/> for information on joining the SDA..**

**C)** Applicable Simplified SDA Documents available to non-members and members of the SDA:

C.1) Simplified Version of: SD Memory Card Specification:  
Part 1 Physical Layer Specification  
<http://www.socard.org/developers/tech/socard/pls/>

C.2) Simplified Version of: SDIO Card Specification  
[http://www.socard.org/developers/tech/sdio/sdio\\_spec/](http://www.socard.org/developers/tech/sdio/sdio_spec/)

C.3) Simplified Version of: SDIO Card Type-A Specification for Bluetooth  
[http://www.socard.org/developers/tech/sdio/sd\\_bluetooth\\_spec/](http://www.socard.org/developers/tech/sdio/sd_bluetooth_spec/)

## 7 APPENDIX C - TESTS

The SDA has defined formal test procedures for SDIO Type A Bluetooth cards (Controller) and Hosts. It is expected that both Controllers and Hosts will comply with all test requirements set forth by the SDA in accordance with the rules of the SDA. The Bluetooth SIG does not require any formal testing to comply with SIG requirements. The test document names are listed in Appendix B.

### 7.1 TEST SUITE STRUCTURE

There are two types of tests defined for the HCI SD Transport Layer:

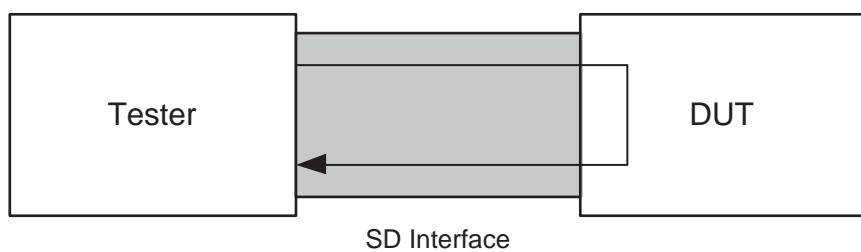
1. Functional Tests
2. Protocol Tests

Tests of both types are defined for both the Host and Controller.

The purpose of the functional tests is to verify that the SD Bluetooth Type A Specification, SDIO Standard and SD Physical Standard have been implemented according to the specifications. These tests and the test environment for these tests are defined in documents provided by the SDA.

The purpose of the protocol tests are to verify that the Bluetooth Controller SD implementation or the Host implementation are according to the SD Bluetooth Type A specification.

The test environment for the protocol tests consists of the tester and the Device Under Test (DUT) as illustrated in [Figure 7.1](#) below.



*Figure 7.1: Protocol Test Environment*

The tester is typically a PC with an SD interface. The DUT is placed into local loopback mode and standard HCI commands are used to drive the tests. The test results are verified in the tester.



## Host Controller Interface [Transport Layer]

Part D

# THREE-WIRE UART TRANSPORT LAYER

*This document describes the Three-Wire UART transport layer (between the Host and Controller). HCI command, event and data packets flow through this layer, but the layer does not decode them.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>General .....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Slip Layer .....</b>	<b>65</b>
3.1	Encoding a Packet .....	65
3.2	Decoding a Packet .....	65
<b>4</b>	<b>Packet Header .....</b>	<b>67</b>
4.1	Sequence Number .....	67
4.2	Acknowledge Number .....	68
4.3	Data Integrity Check Present .....	68
4.4	Reliable Packet .....	68
4.5	Packet Type .....	68
4.6	Payload Length .....	69
4.7	Packet Header Checksum .....	69
<b>5</b>	<b>Data Integrity Check.....</b>	<b>70</b>
5.1	16 Bit CCITT-CRC.....	70
<b>6</b>	<b>Reliable Packets .....</b>	<b>71</b>
6.1	Header Checksum Error .....	71
6.2	Slip Payload Length Error .....	71
6.3	Data Integrity Check Error .....	71
6.4	Out Of Sequence Packet Error .....	71
6.5	Acknowledgement.....	72
6.6	Resending Packets .....	72
6.7	Example Reliable Packet Flow.....	72
<b>7</b>	<b>Unreliable Packets .....</b>	<b>75</b>
7.1	Unreliable Packet Header .....	75
7.2	Unreliable Packet Error .....	75
<b>8</b>	<b>Link Establishment .....</b>	<b>76</b>
8.1	Uninitialized State.....	77
8.2	Initialized State .....	77
8.3	Active State .....	77
8.4	Sync Message .....	78
8.5	Sync Response Message .....	78
8.6	Config Message .....	78
8.7	Config Response Message .....	79
8.8	Configuration Field.....	79
8.8.1	Configuration Messages.....	80
8.8.2	Sliding Window Size.....	80
8.8.3	Level of Data Integrity Check .....	80



8.8.4	Out of Frame Software Flow Control.....	81
8.8.5	Version Number .....	81
<b>9</b>	<b>Low Power .....</b>	<b>82</b>
9.1	Wakeup Message .....	82
9.2	Woken Message .....	82
9.3	Sleep Message .....	83
<b>10</b>	<b>Out of Frame Control.....</b>	<b>84</b>
10.1	Software Flow Control.....	84
<b>11</b>	<b>Hardware Configuration.....</b>	<b>85</b>
11.1	Wires.....	85
11.1.1	Transmit & Receive.....	85
11.1.2	Ground .....	85
11.2	Hardware Flow.....	85
11.2.1	RTS & CTS .....	85
<b>12</b>	<b>Recommended Parameters.....</b>	<b>86</b>
12.1	Timing Parameters.....	86
12.1.1	Acknowledgement of Packets .....	86
12.1.2	Resending Reliable Packets .....	86
<b>13</b>	<b>References.....</b>	<b>87</b>

## 1 GENERAL

---

The HCI Three-Wire UART Transport Layer makes it possible to use the Bluetooth HCI over a serial interface between two UARTs. The HCI Three-Wire UART Transport Layer assumes that the UART communication may have bit errors, overrun errors or burst errors. See also “[UART Transport Layer](#)” on [page 9](#)[vol. 4].

## 2 OVERVIEW

The HCI Three-Wire UART Transport Layer is a connection based protocol that transports HCI commands, events, ACL and Synchronous packets between the Host and the Controller. Packet construction is in done in two steps. First, it adds a packet header onto the front of every HCI Packet which describes the payload. Second, it frames the packets using a SLIP protocol. Finally, it sends this packet over the UART interface.

The SLIP layer converts an unreliable octet stream into an unreliable packet stream. The SLIP layer places start and end octets around the packet. It then changes all occurrences of the frame start or end octet in the packet to an escaped version.

The packet header describes the contents of the packet, and if this packet needs to be reliably transferred, a way of identifying the packet uniquely, allowing for retransmission of erroneous packets.

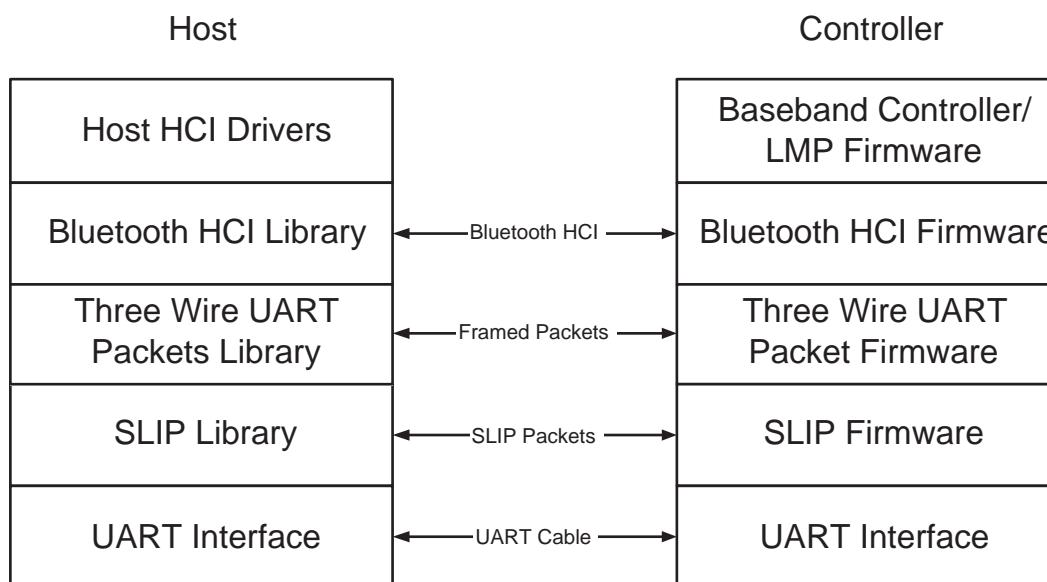


Figure 2.1: The Relationship Between the Host and the Controller

## 3 SLIP LAYER

The SLIP layer places packet framing octets around each packet being transmitted over the Three-Wire UART Transport Layer. This delimits the packets and allows packet boundaries to be detected if the receiver loses synchronization. The SLIP layer is based upon the RFC 1055 Standard [1].

### 3.1 ENCODING A PACKET

The SLIP layer performs octet stuffing on the octets entering the layer so that specific octet codes which may occur in the original data do not occur in the resultant stream.

The SLIP layer places octet 0xC0 at the start and end of every packet it transmits. Any occurrence of 0xC0 in the original packet is changed to the sequence 0xDB 0xDC before being transmitted. Any occurrence of 0xDB in the original packet is changed to the sequence 0xDB 0xDD before being transmitted. These sequences, 0xDB 0xDC and 0xDB 0xDD are SLIP escape sequences. All SLIP escape sequences start with 0xDB. All SLIP escape sequences are listed in Table 3.1.



Figure 3.1: SLIP Packets with 0xC0 at the Start and End of Each Packet

### 3.2 DECODING A PACKET

When decoding a SLIP stream, a device will first be in an unknown state, not knowing if it is at the start of a packet or in the middle of a packet. The device must therefore discard all octets until it finds a 0xC0. If the 0xC0 is followed immediately by a second 0xC0, then the device will discard the first 0xC0 as it was presumably the end of the last packet, and the second 0xC0 was the start of the next packet. The device will then be in the decoding packet state. It can then decode the octets directly changing any SLIP escape sequences back into their unencoded form. When the device decodes the 0xC0 at the end of the packet, it will calculate the length of the SLIP packet, and pass the packet data into the packet decoder. The device will then seek the next packet. If the device does not receive an 0xC0 for the start of the next packet, then all octets up to and including the next 0xC0 will be discarded.

SLIP Escape Sequence	Unencoded form	Notes
0xDB 0xDC	0xC0	
0xDB 0xDD	0xDB	
0xDB 0xDE	0x11	Only valid when OOF Software Flow Control is enabled
0xDB 0xDF	0x13	Only valid when OOF Software Flow Control is enabled

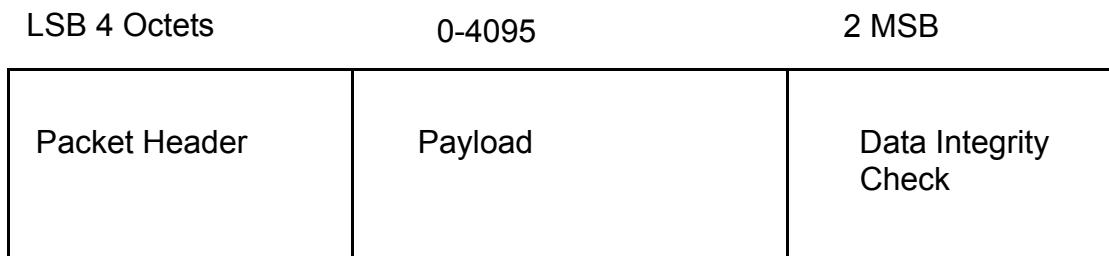
*Table 3.1: SLIP Escape Sequences*

## 4 PACKET HEADER

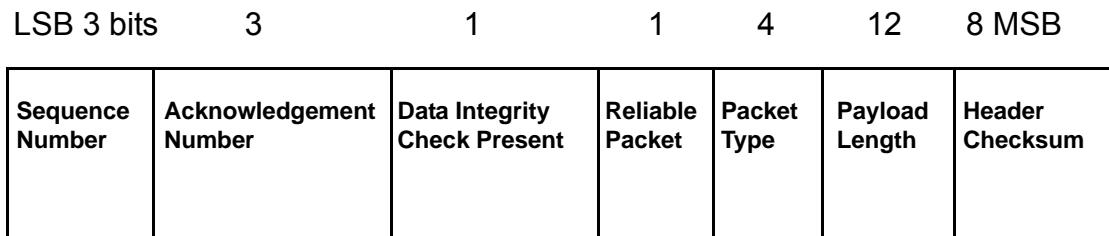
Every packet that is sent over the Three-Wire UART Transport Layer has a packet header. It also has an optional Data Integrity Check at the end of the payload. The Transport Layer does not support packet segmentation and reassembly. Each transport packet will contain at most one higher layer packet.

A packet consists of a Packet Header of 4 octets, a Payload of 0 to 4095 octets, and an optional Data Integrity Check of 2 octets. See [Figure 4.1](#).

The Packet header consists of a Sequence Number of 3 bits, an Acknowledge Number of 3 bits, a Data Integrity Check Present bit, a Reliable Packet bit, a Packet Type of 4 bits, a Payload Length of 12 bits and an 8 bit Header Checksum. See [Figure 4.2](#).



*Figure 4.1: Packet Format*



*Figure 4.2: Packet Header Format*

### 4.1 SEQUENCE NUMBER

For unreliable packets this field will be set to 0 on transmit and ignored on receive.

Each new reliable packet will be assigned a sequence number which will be equal to the sequence number of the previous reliable packet plus one modulo eight. A packet will use the same sequence number each time it is retransmitted.

## 4.2 ACKNOWLEDGE NUMBER

The acknowledge number must be set to the sequence number of the next reliable packet this device expects to receive. See [Section 6.4 on page 71](#).

## 4.3 DATA INTEGRITY CHECK PRESENT

If a 16 bit CCITT-CRC Data Integrity Check is appended to the end of the payload, this bit shall be set to 1.

## 4.4 RELIABLE PACKET

If this bit is set to 1, then this packet is reliable. This means that the sequence number field is valid, and the receiving end must acknowledge its receipt. If this bit is set to 0, then this packet is unreliable.

## 4.5 PACKET TYPE

There are four kinds of HCI packets that can be sent via the Three-Wire UART Transport Layer; these are HCI Command Packet, HCI Event Packet, HCI ACL Data Packet and HCI Synchronous Data Packet (see “Host Controller Interface Functional Specification” in the Bluetooth Core Specification v1.2 or later). HCI Command Packets can be sent only to the Controller, HCI Event Packets can be sent only from the Controller, and HCI ACL/ Synchronous Data Packets can be sent both to and from the Controller.

HCI packet coding does not provide the ability to differentiate the four HCI packet types. Therefore, the Packet Type field is used to distinguish the different packets. The acceptable values for this Packet Type field are given in [Table 4.1](#).

HCI Packet Type	Packet Type
Acknowledgement Packets	0
HCI Command Packet	1
HCI ACL Data Packet	2
HCI Synchronous Data Packet	3
HCI Event Packet	4
Reserve	5-13
Vendor Specific	14
Link Control Packet	15

*Table 4.1: Three-Wire UART Packet Type*

HCI Command Packets, HCI ACL Data Packets and HCI Event Packets are always sent as reliable packets. HCI Synchronous Data Packets are sent as unreliable packets unless HCI Synchronous Flow Control is enabled, in which case they are sent as reliable packets.

In addition to the four HCI packet types, other packet types are defined. One packet type is defined for pure Acknowledgement Packets, and one additional packet type is to support link control. One packet type is made available to vendors for their own use. All other Three-Wire UART Packet Types are reserved for future use.

## 4.6 PAYLOAD LENGTH

The payload length is the number of octets in the payload data. This does not include the length of the packet header, or the length of the optional data integrity check.

## 4.7 PACKET HEADER CHECKSUM

The packet header checksum validates the contents of the packet header against corruption. This is calculated by setting the Packet Header Checksum to a value such that the 2's complement sum modulo 256 of the four octets of the Packet Header including the Packet Header Checksum is 0xFF.

## 5 DATA INTEGRITY CHECK

The Data Integrity Check field is optional. It can be used to ensure that the packet is valid. The Data Integrity Check field is appended onto the end of the packet. Each octet of the Packet Header and Packet Payload is used to compute the Data Integrity Check.

### 5.1 16 BIT CCITT-CRC

The CRC is defined using the CRC-CCITT generator polynomial

$$g(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1$$

(see [Figure 5.1](#))

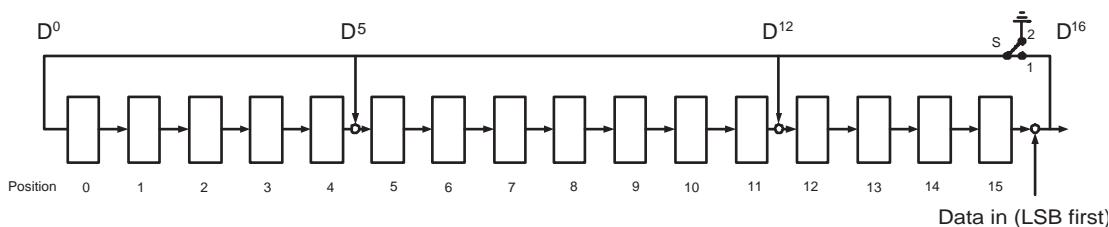
The CRC shift register is filled with 1s before calculating the CRC for each packet. Octets are fed through the CRC generator least significant bit first.

The most significant parity octet is transmitted first (where the CRC shift register is viewed as shifting from the least significant bit towards the most significant bit). Therefore, the transmission order of the parity octets within the CRC shift register is as follows:

$x[8]$  (first),  $x[9], \dots, x[15]$ ,  $x[0], x[1], \dots, x[7]$  (last)

where  $x[15]$  corresponds to the highest power CRC coefficient and  $x[0]$  corresponds to the lowest power coefficient.

The switch S shall be set in position 1 while the data is shifted in. After the last bit has entered the LFSR, the switch shall be set in position 2, and the registers contents shall be read out for transmission.



*Figure 5.1: The LFSR Circuit Generating the CRC*

## 6 RELIABLE PACKETS

---

To allow the reliable transmission of packets through the transport, a method needs to be defined to recover from packet errors. The Host or Controller can detect a number of different errors in the packet.

### 6.1 HEADER CHECKSUM ERROR

The header of the packet is protected by a Packet Header Checksum. If the 2's complement sum modulo 256 of the four octets of the header is not 0xFF, then the packet has an unrecoverable error and all information contained in the packet shall be discarded.

### 6.2 SLIP PAYLOAD LENGTH ERROR

The length of the SLIP packet shall be checked against the Packet Payload Length. If the Data Integrity Check Present bit is set to 1, then the SLIP packet length should be 6 + Packet Payload Length. If the Data Integrity Check Present bit is set to 0, then the SLIP packet length should be 4 + Packet Payload Length. If this check fails, then all information contained in the packet shall be discarded. The SLIP packet length is the length of the data received from the SLIP layer after the SLIP framing, and SLIP escape codes have been processed.

### 6.3 DATA INTEGRITY CHECK ERROR

The packet may have a Data Integrity Check at the end of the payload. This is controlled by the Data Integrity Check Present bit in the header. If this is set to 1, then the Data Integrity Check at the end of the payload is checked. If this is different from the value expected, then the packet shall be discarded. If the link is configured to not use data integrity checks, and a packet is received with the Data Integrity Check Present bit set to 1, then the packet shall be discarded.

### 6.4 OUT OF SEQUENCE PACKET ERROR

Each device keeps track of the sequence number it expects to receive next. This will be one more than the sequence number of the last successfully received reliable packet, modulo eight. If a reliable packet is received which has the expected sequence number, then this packet shall be accepted.

If a reliable packet is received which does not have the expected sequence number, then the packet shall be discarded.

## 6.5 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Whenever a reliable packet is received, an acknowledgement shall be generated.

If a packet is available to be sent, the Acknowledgement Number of that packet shall be updated to the latest expected sequence number.

If a requirement to send an acknowledgement value is pending, but there are no other packets available to be sent, the device can send a pure Acknowledgement Packet. This is an Unreliable Packet, with the Packet Type set to 0, Payload Length set to 0, and the Sequence Number set to 0. The Acknowledge Number must be set correctly.

The maximum number of reliable packets that can be sent without acknowledgement defines the sliding window size of the link. This is configured during link establishment. See Sections 8.6, 8.7 and 8.8.

## 6.6 RESENDING PACKETS

A Reliable Packet shall be resent until it is acknowledged. Devices should refrain from resending packets too quickly to avoid saturating the link with retransmits. See [Section 12.1.2 on page 86](#).

## 6.7 EXAMPLE RELIABLE PACKET FLOW

[Figure 6.1](#) shows the transmission of reliable packets between two devices. Device A sends a packet with a Sequence Number of 6, and an Acknowledgement Number of 3. Device B receives this packet correctly, so needs to generate an acknowledgement. Device B then sends a packet with Sequence Number 3 with its Acknowledgement Number set to the next expected packet Sequence Number from Device A of 7.

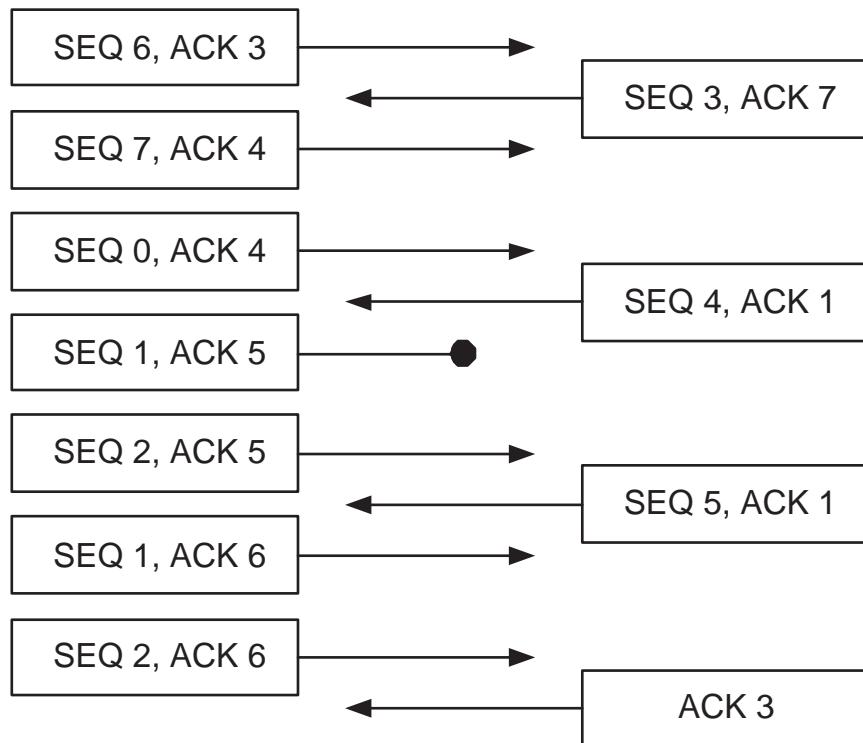


Figure 6.1: Message Diagram Showing Transmission of Reliable Packets

Device A receives a packet with Sequence Number 3 and an Acknowledgement Number of 7. Device A was expecting this sequence number so needs to generate an acknowledgement. The Acknowledgement Number of 7 is one greater than the last Sequence Number that was sent, meaning that this packet was received correctly (see [Section 6.6 on page 72](#)).

Device A sends two packets, Sequence Numbers 7 and 0. Both packets have the Acknowledgement Number of 4, the next sequence number it expects from Device B. Device B receives the first correctly, and increments its next expected sequence number to 0. It then receives the second packet correctly, and increments the next expected sequence number to 1.

Device B sends a packet with Sequence Number 4, and the Acknowledgement Number of 1. This will acknowledge both of the previous two packets sent by Device A.

Device A now sends two more packets, Sequence Numbers 1 and 2. Unfortunately, the first packet is corrupted. Device B receives the first packet, and discovers the error, so discards this packet (see [Section 6.1 on page 71](#), [Section 6.2 on page 71](#) or [Section 6.3 on page 71](#)). It must generate an acknowledgement of this erroneously received reliable packet. Device B then receives the second packet. This is received out of sequence, as it is currently expecting Sequence Number 1, but has received Sequence Number 2 (see 6.4). Again, it must generate an acknowledgement.

Device B sends another packet with Sequence Number 5. It is still expecting a packet with Sequence Number 1 next, so the Acknowledgement Number is set to 1. Device A receives this, and accepts this packet.

Device A has not had either of its last two packets acknowledged, so it must resend them (see 6.6). It does this, but must update the Acknowledgement Number of the original packets that were sent (see [Section 6.5 on page 72](#)). The Sequence Numbers of these packets must stay the same (see [Section 4.1 on page 67](#)).

Device B receives these packets correctly, and schedules the sending of an acknowledgement. Because Device B doesn't have any data packets that need to be sent, it sends a pure Acknowledgement Packet (see [Section 6.5 on page 72](#)).

## 7 UNRELIABLE PACKETS

---

To allow the transmission of unreliable packets through the transport, the following method shall be used.

### 7.1 UNRELIABLE PACKET HEADER

An unreliable packet header always has the Reliable Packet bit set to 0. The sequence number shall be set to 0. The Data Integrity Check Present, Acknowledgement Number, Packet Type, Payload Length and Packet Header Checksum shall all be set the same as a Reliable Packet.

### 7.2 UNRELIABLE PACKET ERROR

If a packet that is marked as unreliable and the packet has an error, then the packet shall be discarded.

## 8 LINK ESTABLISHMENT

Before any packets except Link Control Packets can be sent, the Link Establishment procedure must be performed. This ensures that the sequence numbers are initialized correctly, it also ensures that the two sides are using the same baud rate, allow detection of peer reset, and allows the device to be configured.

Link Establishment is defined by a state machine with three states: Uninitialized, Initialized and Active. When the transport is first started, the link is in the Uninitialized State. There are four messages that are defined: SYNC, SYNC RESPONSE, CONFIG and CONFIG RESPONSE. All four link establishment messages shall be sent with the Data Integrity Present flag set to 0.

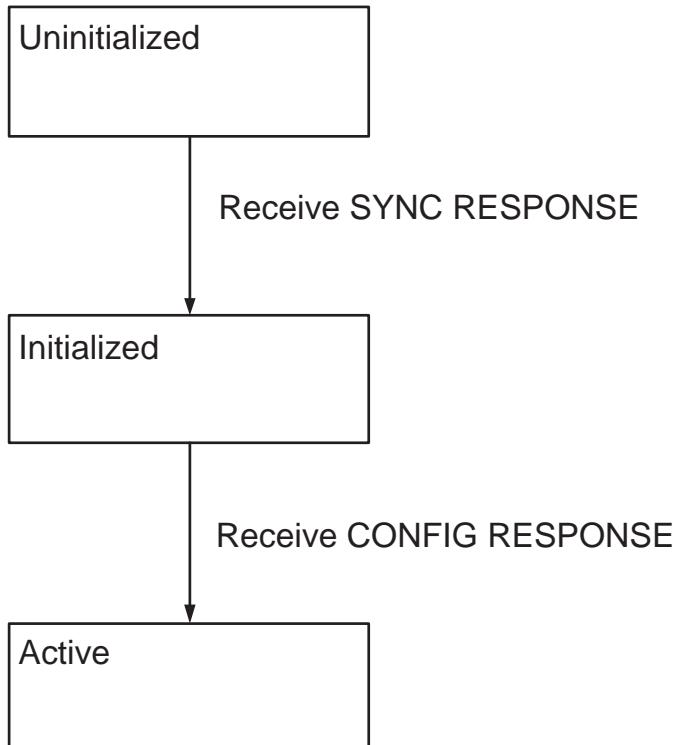


Figure 8.1: Link Establishment State Diagram

## 8.1 UNINITIALIZED STATE

In the Uninitialized State a device periodically<sup>1</sup> sends SYNC messages. If a SYNC message is received, the device shall respond with a SYNC RESPONSE message. If a SYNC RESPONSE message is received, the device shall move to the Initialized State. In the Uninitialized State only SYNC and SYNC RESPONSE messages are valid, all other messages that are received must be discarded. If an invalid packet is received, the device shall respond with a SYNC message. The device shall not send any acknowledgement packets in the Uninitialized State<sup>2</sup>.

In the Uninitialized State the Controller may wait until it receives a SYNC message before sending its first SYNC message. This allows the Host to control when the Controller starts to send data.

The SYNC message can be used for automatic baud rate detection. It is assumed that the Controller shall stay on a single baud rate, while the Host could hunt for the baud rate. Upon receipt of a SYNC RESPONSE message, the Host can assume that the correct baud rate has been detected.

## 8.2 INITIALIZED STATE

In the Initialized State a device periodically sends CONFIG messages. If a SYNC message is received, the device shall respond with a SYNC RESPONSE message. If a CONFIG message is received, the device shall respond with a CONFIG RESPONSE message. If a CONFIG RESPONSE message is received, the device will move to the Active State. All other messages that are received must be ignored.

## 8.3 ACTIVE STATE

In the Active State, a device can transfer higher layer packets through the transport. If a CONFIG message is received, the device shall respond with a CONFIG RESPONSE message. If a CONFIG REONSE message is received, the device shall discard this message.

If a SYNC message is received while in the Active State, it is assumed that the peer device has reset. The local device should therefore perform a full reset of the upper stack, and start Link Establishment again at the Uninitialized State.

Upon entering the Active State, the first packet sent shall have its SEQ and ACK numbers set to zero.

- 
1. During link establishment, various messages are sent periodically. It is suggested to send 4 messages per second.
  2. Any packet that was erroneous would normally be acknowledged, as the recipient does not know if the packet was a reliable packet or not. The recipient cannot do this in the Uninitialized State, as it is possible to receive corrupt data while the Uninitialized state.

## 8.4 SYNC MESSAGE

The SYNC message is an unreliable message sent with the Packet Type of 15 and a Payload Length of 2.

The payload is composed of the octet pattern 0x01 0x7E<sup>1</sup>.

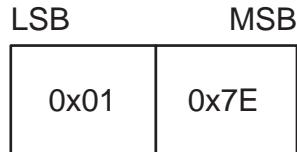


Figure 8.2: Sync Message Format

## 8.5 SYNC RESPONSE MESSAGE

The SYNC RESPONSE message is an unreliable message sent with the Packet Type of 15 and a Payload Length of 2. The payload is composed of the octet pattern 0x02 0x7D.

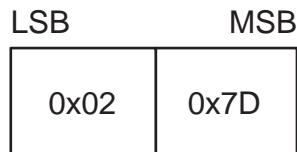


Figure 8.3: Sync Response Message Format

## 8.6 CONFIG MESSAGE

The CONFIG message is an unreliable message sent with the Packet Type of 15 and a Payload Length of 2 plus the size of the Configuration Field. The payload is composed of the octet pattern 0x03 0xFC and the Configuration Field.

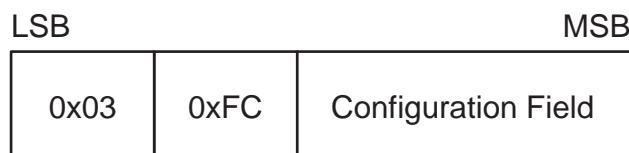


Figure 8.4: Configuration Message Format

---

1. The second octet for all Link Control Packets equals the least significant 7 bits of the first octet, inverted, with the most significant bit set to ensure even parity.

## 8.7 CONFIG RESPONSE MESSAGE

The CONFIG RESPONSE message is an unreliable message sent with the Packet Type of 15 and a Payload Length of 2 plus the size of the Configuration Field. The payload is composed of the octet pattern 0x04 0x7B and the Configuration Field.

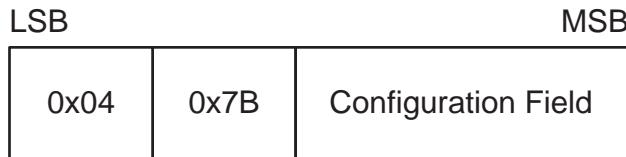


Figure 8.5: Configuration Response Message Format

## 8.8 CONFIGURATION FIELD

The Configuration Field contains the Version Number, Sliding Window Size, the Data Integrity Check Type, and if Out Of Frame (OOF) Software Flow Control is allowed.

The Configuration Field in a CONFIG message sent by the Host determines what the Host can transmit and accept. The Configuration Field in a CONFIG RESPONSE message sent by the Controller determines what the Host and Controller shall transmit and can expect to receive.

The Controller sends CONFIG messages without a Configuration Field. The Host sends CONFIG RESPONSE messages without a Configuration Field.

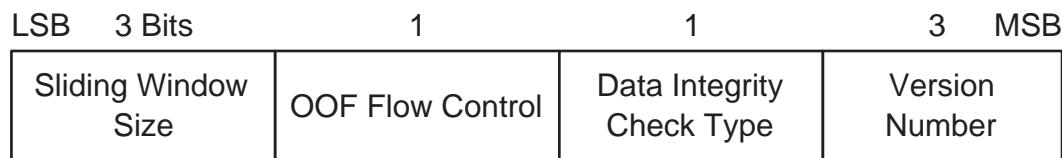


Figure 8.6: Configuration Field Detail

To allow for future extension of the Configuration Field, the size of the message determines the number of significant Configuration Octets in the payload. Future versions of this specification may use extra octets. Any bits that are not included in the message shall be set to 0. Any bits that are not defined are reserved and shall be set to 0.

A device shall not change the values it sends in the Configuration Field during Link Establishment.

### 8.8.1 Configuration Messages

The CONFIG – CONFIG RESPONSE message sequence configures the link in both directions. Until a CONFIG RESPONSE message is received only unreliable Link Establishment messages may be sent. Once CONFIG RESPONSE message has been received all other packet types may be sent, and received messages passed up to the Host.

The CONFIG and CONFIG RESPONSE messages contain a set of options for both devices on the link. The Host sends a CONFIG message with the set of options that the Host would like to use. The Controller responds with a CONFIG RESPONSE message with the set of options that the Host and the Controller will use. This means that the Controller is in full control of the set of options that will be used for all messages sent by both the Host and Controller.

### 8.8.2 Sliding Window Size

This is the maximum number of reliable packets a sender of the CONFIG message can send without requiring an acknowledgement. The value of this field shall be in the range one to seven. The value in the CONFIG RESPONSE message shall be less than or equal to the value in the CONFIG message. For example, the Host may suggest a window size of five in its CONFIG message and the Controller may respond with a value of three in its CONFIG RESPONSE message, but not six or seven. Both devices will then use a maximum sliding window size of three.

### 8.8.3 Level of Data Integrity Check

The CONFIG message contains a bit field describing the types of Data Integrity Checks the sender is prepared to transmit. The peer will select the one it is prepared to use and send its choice in the CONFIG RESPONSE message.

If data integrity checks are not required, then the Data Integrity Check Present bit shall be set to 0 by the Host and Controller.

Level of Data Integrity	Parameter Description for CONFIG Message
0	No Data Integrity Check is supported.
1	16 bit CCITT-CRC may be used.

Figure 8.7: Data Integrity Check Type in the CONFIG Message

Level of Data Integrity	Parameter Description for CONFIG RESPONSE Message
0	No Data Integrity Check must be used.
1	16 bit CCITT-CRC may be used.

Figure 8.8: Data Integrity Check Type in the CONFIG RESPONSE Message

#### 8.8.4 Out of Frame Software Flow Control

By default, the transport uses no flow control except that mandated by the HCI Functional Specification and the flow control achieved by not acknowledging reliable Host messages. If Software Flow Control is to be used, this needs to be negotiated.

The CONFIG message specifies whether the sender of the CONFIG message is prepared to receive Out of Frame Software Flow Control messages. The CONFIG RESPONSE message specifies whether the peer can send Out of Frame Software Flow Control messages. The CONFIG RESPONSE message may have the field set to 1 only if the CONFIG message had it set to 1. (See [Section 10.1 on page 84](#))

#### 8.8.5 Version Number

The Version Number of this protocol shall determine which facilities are available to be used.

The CONFIG message specifies the Version Number supported by the Host. The CONFIG RESPONSE message specifies the Version Number that shall be used by the Host and Controller when sent by the Controller. The value in the CONFIG RESPONSE message shall be less than or equal to the value in the CONFIG message. The Version Numbers are enumerated in [Figure 8.9](#). This specification is version 1.0 (Version Number = 0).

Version Number	Parameter Description for CONFIG and CONFIG RESPONSE Message
0	Version 1.0 of this Protocol
1-7	Reserved for future use

Figure 8.9: Version Number in the CONFIG and CONFIG RESPONSE message

## 9 LOW POWER

After a device is in the Active State, either side of the transport link may wish to enter a low power state. Because recovery from a loss of synchronization is possible, it is allowable to stop listening for incoming packets at any time.

To make the system more responsive after a device has entered a low power state, a system of messages is employed to allow either side to notify the other that they are entering a low power state and to wake a device from that state. These messages are sent as Link Control Packets. It is optional for a device to support the Sleep message. The Wakeup and Woken messages are mandatory.

### 9.1 WAKEUP MESSAGE

The Wakeup message shall be the first message sent whenever the device believes that the other side is asleep. The device shall then repeatedly send the Wakeup message until the Woken message is received. There must be at least a one character gap between the sending of each Wakeup message to allow the UART to resynchronize. The Wakeup message is an unreliable message sent with a Packet Type of 15, and a Payload Length of 2. The payload is composed of the octet pattern 0x05 0xFA. The Wakeup message shall be used after a device has sent a Sleep message. It is mandatory to respond to the Wakeup message.

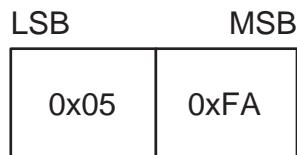


Figure 9.1: Wakeup Message Payload Format

### 9.2 WOKEN MESSAGE

The Woken message shall be sent whenever a Wakeup message is received even if the receiver is currently not asleep. Upon receiving a Woken message, a device can determine that the other device is not in a low power state and can send and receive data. The Woken message is an unreliable message sent with a Packet Type of 15, and a Payload Length of 2. The payload is composed of the octet pattern 0x06 0xF9.

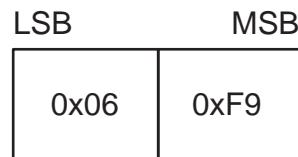


Figure 9.2: Woken Message Payload Format

### 9.3 SLEEP MESSAGE

A Sleep message can be sent at any time after Link Establishment has finished. It notifies the other side that this device is going into a low power state, and that it may also go to sleep. If a device sends a Sleep message it shall use the Wakeup / Woken message sequence before sending any data. If a device receives a Sleep message, then it should use the Wakeup / Woken message sequence before sending any data. The Sleep message is an unreliable message sent with a Packet Type of 15, and a Payload Length of 2. The payload is composed of the octet pattern 0x07 0x78.

The sending of this message is optional. The receiver of this message need not go to sleep, but cooperating devices may be able to schedule sleeping more effectively with this message.

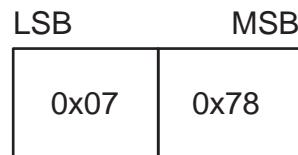


Figure 9.3: Sleep Message Payload Format

## 10 OUT OF FRAME CONTROL

---

It is possible to embed information in the SLIP data stream after a SLIP ESCAPE character that can allow for Software Flow Control. This feature is optional and must be negotiated in the Link Establishment configuration messages.

### 10.1 SOFTWARE FLOW CONTROL

If Software Flow Control is enabled, then the standard XON / XOFF (0x11 and 0x13) characters will control the flow of data over the transport. To allow the XON / XOFF characters to be sent in the payload, they shall be escaped as follows: 0x11 shall be changed to 0xDB 0xDE, 0x13 shall be changed to 0xDB DF. This means that the XON / XOFF characters in the data stream are used only by software flow control.

If Software Flow Control is disabled, then the SLIP escape sequences 0xDB 0xDE and 0xDB 0xDF are undefined. In this case, the original octets of 0x11 and 0x13 shall not be changed. Flow control should always be provided by the tunneled protocols, e.g. HCI Flow Control. Flow control is still available using the standard Sequence Number / Acknowledge Number. This can be done by not acknowledging packets until traffic can resume.

## 11 HARDWARE CONFIGURATION

---

The HCI Three-Wire UART Transport uses the following configurations.

### 11.1 WIRES

There are three wires used by the HCI Three-Wire UART Transport. These are Transmit, Receive, and Ground.

#### 11.1.1 Transmit & Receive

The transmit line from one device shall be connected to the receive line of the other device.

#### 11.1.2 Ground

A common ground reference shall be used.

### 11.2 HARDWARE FLOW

Hardware flow control may be used. The signaling shall be the same as a standard RS232 flow control lines. If used, the signals shall be connected in a null-modem fashion; for example, the local RTS shall be connected to the remote CTS and vice versa.

#### 11.2.1 RTS & CTS

Request to Send indicates to the remote side that the local device is able to accept more data.

Clear to Send indicates if the remote side is able to receive data.

(See ITU.T recommendations V.24 [\[2\]](#) and V.28 [\[3\]](#))

## 12 RECOMMENDED PARAMETERS

### 12.1 TIMING PARAMETERS

Because this transport protocol can be used with a wide variety of baud rates, it is not possible to specify a single timing value. However, it is possible to specify the time based on the baud rate in use. If  $T_{max}$  is defined as the maximum time in seconds it will take to transmit the largest packet over this transport,  $T_{max}$  can be expressed as:

$$T_{max} = \text{maximum size of a packet in bits} / \text{baud rate}$$

The maximum size of a packet in bits is either the number of bits in a 4095 octet packet (32,760) or less if required in an embedded system or as determined by the Host or Controller<sup>1</sup>. Thus, at a baud rate of 921,600 and the maximum packet size of 4095 octets,  $T_{max}$  is:  $(4095 * 10) / 921,600 = 44.434\text{ms}$ .

#### 12.1.1 Acknowledgement of Packets

It is not necessary to acknowledge every packet with a pure acknowledgement packet if there is a data packet that will be sent soon. The recommended maximum time before starting to send an acknowledgement is  $2 * T_{max}$ .

#### 12.1.2 Resending Reliable Packets

A reliable packet must be resent until it is acknowledged. The recommended time between starting to send the same packet is  $3 * T_{max}$ .

---

1. This can be determined using the HCI\_Read\_Buffer\_Size command.

## 13 REFERENCES

---

- [1] IETF RFC 1055: Nonstandard for transmission of IP datagrams over serial lines: SLIP – <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1055.txt>
- [2] ITU Recommendation V.24: List of definitions for interchange circuits between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) – <http://www.itu.int/rec/recommendation.asp>
- [3] ITU Recommendation V.28: Electrical characteristics for unbalanced double-current interchange circuits – <http://www.itu.int/rec/recommendation.asp>







# Specification of the **Bluetooth®** System



Specification Volume 5

**Core System  
Package  
[AMP Controller volume]**

Covered Core Package version: 4.1

Publication date: 03 December 2013







## Revision History

The Revision History is shown in the [\[Vol. 0, Part C\]](#), [Appendix on page 61](#).

## Contributors

The persons who contributed to this specification are listed in [\[Vol. 0, Part C\]](#), [Appendix on page 61](#).

## Web Site

This specification can also be found on the official Bluetooth web site:  
<http://www.bluetooth.com>

## Disclaimer and Copyright Notice

The copyright in these specifications is owned by the Promoter Members of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. ("Bluetooth SIG"). Use of these specifications and any related intellectual property (collectively, the "Specification"), is governed by the Promoters Membership Agreement among the Promoter Members and Bluetooth SIG (the "Promoters Agreement"), certain membership agreements between Bluetooth SIG and its Adopter and Associate Members (the "Membership Agreements") and the Bluetooth Specification Early Adopters Agreements ("1.2 Early Adopters Agreements") among Early Adopter members of the unincorporated Bluetooth special interest group and the Promoter Members (the "Early Adopters Agreement"). Certain rights and obligations of the Promoter Members under the Early Adopters Agreements have been assigned to Bluetooth SIG by the Promoter Members.

Use of the Specification by anyone who is not a member of Bluetooth SIG or a party to an Early Adopters Agreement (each such person or party, a "Member"), is prohibited. The legal rights and obligations of each Member are governed by their applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights are granted herein.

Any use of the Specification not in compliance with the terms of the applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement is prohibited and any such prohibited use may result in termination of the applicable Membership Agreement or Early Adopters Agreement and other liability permitted by the applicable agreement or by applicable law to Bluetooth SIG or any of its members for patent, copyright and/or trademark infringement.



THE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR REASONABLE SKILL OR CARE, OR ANY WARRANTY ARISING OUT OF ANY COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, TRADE PRACTICE, PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

Each Member hereby acknowledges that products equipped with the Bluetooth® technology ("Bluetooth® Products") may be subject to various regulatory controls under the laws and regulations of various governments worldwide. Such laws and regulatory controls may govern, among other things, the combination, operation, use, implementation and distribution of Bluetooth® Products. Examples of such laws and regulatory controls include, but are not limited to, airline regulatory controls, telecommunications regulations, technology transfer controls and health and safety regulations. Each Member is solely responsible for the compliance by their Bluetooth® Products with any such laws and regulations and for obtaining any and all required authorizations, permits, or licenses for their Bluetooth® Products related to such regulations within the applicable jurisdictions. Each Member acknowledges that nothing in the Specification provides any information or assistance in connection with securing such compliance, authorizations or licenses. **NOTHING IN THE SPECIFICATION CREATES ANY WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING SUCH LAWS OR REGULATIONS.**

ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR FOR NONCOMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, RELATING TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION IS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. BY USE OF THE SPECIFICATION, EACH MEMBER EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY CLAIM AGAINST BLUETOOTH SIG AND ITS PROMOTER MEMBERS RELATED TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION.

Bluetooth SIG reserves the right to adopt any changes or alterations to the Specification as it deems necessary or appropriate.

Copyright © 1999 - 2013

Ericsson AB,

Lenovo, (Singapore) Pte. Ltd

Intel Corporation,

Microsoft Corporation,

Motorola Mobility, LLC,

Nokia Corporation,

Toshiba Corporation

\*Third-party brands and names are the property of their respective owners.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Part A

#### 802.11 PROTOCOL ADAPTATION LAYER FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>13</b>
1.1	Organization of the 802.11 PAL .....	13
<b>2</b>	<b>AMP Host Controller Interface .....</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1	Read Local Version Information Command .....	15
2.2	Read Local Amp Info Command .....	15
2.3	Reset Command .....	18
2.4	Read Failed Contact Counter Command .....	18
2.5	Read Link Quality Command .....	18
2.6	Read RSSI Command.....	18
2.7	Short Range Mode Command .....	19
2.8	Write Best Effort Flush Timeout Command.....	19
2.9	Read Best Effort Flush Timeout Command.....	20
2.10	Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event.....	20
2.11	Physical Link Recovery Event.....	20
2.12	Channel Selected Event .....	20
2.13	Short Range Mode Change Complete Event.....	20
2.14	Data Structures .....	21
2.14.1	AMP_ASSOC Structure.....	21
2.14.2	MAC Address .....	22
2.14.3	802.11 PAL Capabilities.....	22
2.14.4	Preferred Channel List .....	23
2.14.5	Connected Channel List .....	24
2.14.6	802.11 PAL Version .....	25
2.14.7	Preferred Channel List v2.....	26
2.15	Connection Accept Timeout Configuration Parameter .....	27
2.16	Enable Device Under Test Mode.....	27
<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Link Manager.....</b>	<b>28</b>
3.1	Physical Link State Machine .....	28
3.1.1	General rules.....	28
3.1.2	State Diagram.....	28
3.1.3	States .....	29
3.1.4	Events .....	30
3.1.5	Conditions .....	30
3.1.6	Actions.....	31
3.1.7	DISCONNECTED State .....	32



3.1.8	STARTING State .....	33
3.1.9	CONNECTING State.....	34
3.1.10	AUTHENTICATING State.....	35
3.1.11	CONNECTED State .....	36
3.1.12	DISCONNECTING State.....	36
3.2	Channel Selection.....	37
3.2.1	Overview .....	37
3.2.2	Regulatory.....	38
3.2.3	Specification of Channel Identifiers .....	38
3.2.4	Channel List Examples .....	41
3.3	802.11 Link Creation .....	44
3.3.1	Starting the AMP Network.....	44
3.3.1.1	HT Operation .....	44
3.3.2	Establishing the 802.11 Link .....	45
3.3.3	Address Fields of Data Frames.....	46
3.3.4	Admission Control .....	46
3.4	Physical Link Maintenance .....	46
3.5	Physical Link Security .....	47
3.5.1	Obtaining Key Material.....	47
3.5.2	Creating a PTK .....	47
3.5.3	Using Encryption .....	48
3.5.4	Refreshing a PTK.....	48
3.5.5	Transporting Security Handshake Messages .....	48
3.6	Physical Link Support for QOS .....	49
3.6.1	QoS Advertisement .....	49
3.6.2	Negotiation .....	49
4	<b>Logical Link Manager .....</b>	<b>50</b>
4.1	Logical Link Creation .....	50
4.1.1	Logical Link Handles.....	50
4.1.2	Null Traffic Logical Links .....	50
4.1.3	Best Effort Logical Links.....	51
4.1.4	Guaranteed Logical Links .....	51
4.2	Logical Link Updates .....	52
4.3	Logical Link Deletion .....	52



<b>5</b>	<b>Data Manager.....</b>	<b>53</b>
5.1	Encapsulation.....	53
5.2	Coexistence and Local Interference.....	54
5.2.1	Interference from Collocated Radios.....	54
5.2.2	Unavailability of Remote Peer .....	54
5.2.3	Activity Reports .....	55
5.3	Explicit Flush.....	57
5.4	Automatic Flush .....	57
5.5	Quality Of Service Violations.....	57
<b>6</b>	<b>Constants.....</b>	<b>58</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Message Sequence Charts.....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Appendix A: Test Support .....</b>	<b>60</b>
8.1	AMP Test Command .....	60
8.1.1	Test Scenarios.....	62
8.1.2	Test Mode Data Frame Format .....	63
8.2	AMP Start Test Event .....	64
8.3	AMP Test End Event .....	65
<b>9</b>	<b>References.....</b>	<b>66</b>
	<b>List of Figures .....</b>	<b>67</b>
	<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>69</b>



Core System Package [AMP Controller volume]

Part A

# 802.11 PROTOCOL ADAPTATION LAYER FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION

*This document specifies the Protocol Adaptation Layer for the IEEE 802.11 conformant Alternate MAC/PHY.*

## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>13</b>
1.1	Organization of the 802.11 PAL .....	13
<b>2</b>	<b>AMP Host Controller Interface.....</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1	Read Local Version Information Command .....	15
2.2	Read Local Amp Info Command.....	15
2.3	Reset Command .....	18
2.4	Read Failed Contact Counter Command.....	18
2.5	Read Link Quality Command .....	18
2.6	Read RSSI Command .....	18
2.7	Short Range Mode Command .....	19
2.8	Write Best Effort Flush Timeout Command.....	19
2.9	Read Best Effort Flush Timeout Command .....	20
2.10	Physical Link Loss Early Warning Event.....	20
2.11	Physical Link Recovery Event .....	20
2.12	Channel Selected Event .....	20
2.13	Short Range Mode Change Complete Event .....	20
2.14	Data Structures .....	21
2.14.1	AMP_ASSOC Structure .....	21
2.14.2	MAC Address.....	22
2.14.3	802.11 PAL Capabilities .....	22
2.14.4	Preferred Channel List .....	23
2.14.5	Connected Channel List.....	24
2.14.6	802.11 PAL Version.....	25
2.14.7	Preferred Channel List v2 .....	26
2.15	Connection Accept Timeout Configuration Parameter.....	27
2.16	Enable Device Under Test Mode .....	27
<b>3</b>	<b>Physical Link Manager .....</b>	<b>28</b>
3.1	Physical Link State Machine .....	28
3.1.1	General rules .....	28
3.1.2	State Diagram .....	28
3.1.3	States .....	29
3.1.4	Events .....	30
3.1.5	Conditions .....	30
3.1.6	Actions .....	31
3.1.7	DISCONNECTED State .....	32
3.1.8	STARTING State .....	33
3.1.9	CONNECTING State .....	34

3.1.10	AUTHENTICATING State .....	35
3.1.11	CONNECTED State .....	36
3.1.12	DISCONNECTING State .....	36
3.2	Channel Selection .....	37
3.2.1	Overview .....	37
3.2.2	Regulatory .....	38
3.2.3	Specification of Channel Identifiers .....	38
3.2.4	Channel List Examples.....	41
3.3	802.11 Link Creation .....	44
3.3.1	Starting the AMP Network .....	44
3.3.1.1	HT Operation .....	44
3.3.2	Establishing the 802.11 Link.....	45
3.3.3	Address Fields of Data Frames.....	46
3.3.4	Admission Control .....	46
3.4	Physical Link Maintenance.....	46
3.5	Physical Link Security .....	47
3.5.1	Obtaining Key Material .....	47
3.5.2	Creating a PTK.....	47
3.5.3	Using Encryption .....	48
3.5.4	Refreshing a PTK.....	48
3.5.5	Transporting Security Handshake Messages.....	48
3.6	Physical Link Support for QOS .....	49
3.6.1	QoS Advertisement .....	49
3.6.2	Negotiation .....	49
4	<b>Logical Link Manager.....</b>	<b>50</b>
4.1	Logical Link Creation.....	50
4.1.1	Logical Link Handles .....	50
4.1.2	Null Traffic Logical Links.....	50
4.1.3	Best Effort Logical Links.....	51
4.1.4	Guaranteed Logical Links.....	51
4.2	Logical Link Updates.....	52
4.3	Logical Link Deletion .....	52

<b>5</b>	<b>Data Manager.....</b>	<b>53</b>
5.1	Encapsulation .....	53
5.2	Coexistence and Local Interference .....	54
5.2.1	Interference from Collocated Radios.....	54
5.2.2	Unavailability of Remote Peer.....	54
5.2.3	Activity Reports .....	55
5.3	Explicit Flush.....	57
5.4	Automatic Flush .....	57
5.5	Quality Of Service Violations .....	57
<b>6</b>	<b>Constants.....</b>	<b>58</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Message Sequence Charts.....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Appendix A: Test Support.....</b>	<b>60</b>
8.1	AMP Test Command .....	60
8.1.1	Test Scenarios .....	62
8.1.2	Test Mode Data Frame Format .....	63
8.2	AMP Start Test Event.....	64
8.3	AMP Test End Event.....	65
<b>9</b>	<b>References.....</b>	<b>66</b>

# 1 INTRODUCTION

This Part of the Bluetooth Core Specification describes the operation of the Protocol Adaptation Layer (PAL) for a controller incorporating an 802.11 device compliant with the 2007 edition of the IEEE 802.11 Standard (see [1]) including support for High Throughput (HT) MAC and PHY extensions. In this Part, specific references in [1] will be given by clause number.

The 802.11 PAL defines the protocol state machines, data encapsulation methods, event triggers, and data structures in support of the use of an 802.11 AMP.

## 1.1 ORGANIZATION OF THE 802.11 PAL

To aid understanding of functional descriptions, Figure 1.1 shows the organization of the 802.11 PAL. This structure is informative.

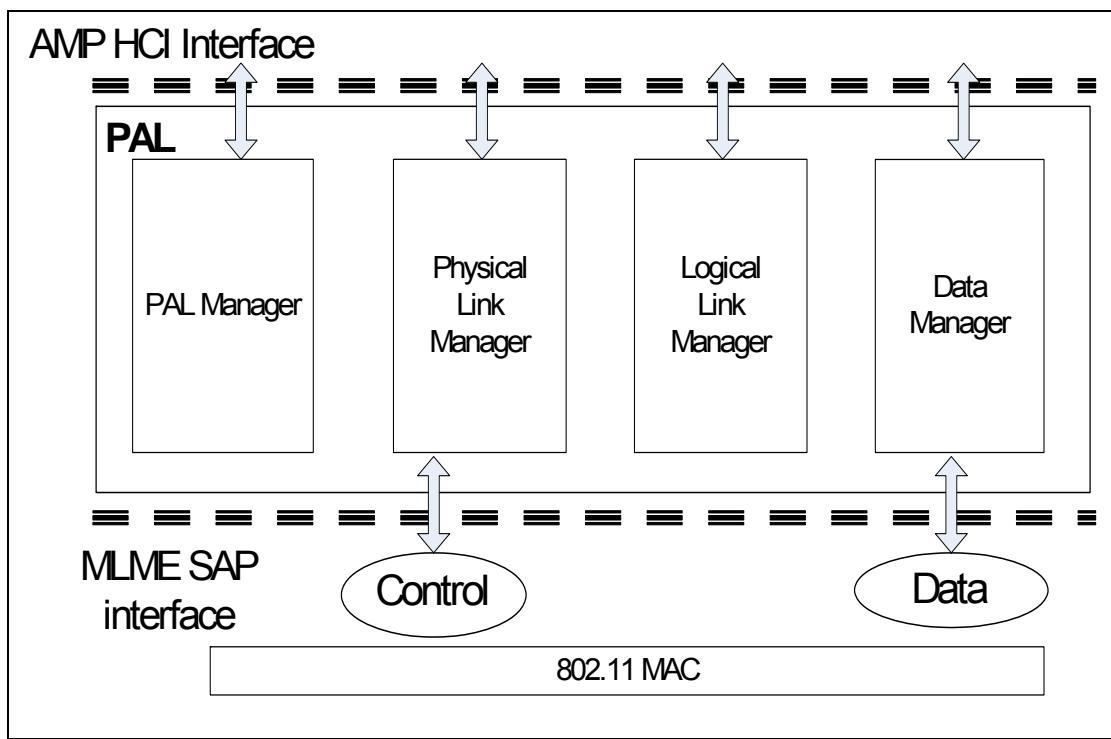


Figure 1.1: Internal structure of the 802.11 PAL

The upper edge of the 802.11 PAL provides a single instance of the logical HCI with AMP functionality. The behavior of the PAL is defined at this interface in terms of logical HCI operations. Implementations may optionally use a physical HCI transport.

For clarity of description, the lower edge of the PAL uses services including those defined in [1] clause 10.3.

The PAL Manager implements operations that are global to the PAL. This includes responding to host requests for AMP info and PAL version as well as performing PAL reset.

The Physical Link Manager implements operations on physical links. Physical link semantics are defined in [Section 3](#). Supported operations include physical link creation and acceptance, and deletion of physical links. Supported operations at the MAC interface include PHY channel selection and security establishment and maintenance.

The Logical Link Manager implements operations on logical links. Logical link semantics are defined in [Section 4](#). Each logical link exists with respect to a single physical link. Supported operations include creation and deletion of logical links and changes to QoS parameters for those logical links. At the MAC interface this includes the mapping of extended flow specifications to user priorities.

The Data Manager performs operations on data packets and is described in [Section 5](#). Each data packet is associated with exactly one extended flow specification and therefore exactly one logical link. Supported operations include transmit, receive and buffer management operations such as flush events. At the MAC interface this includes interactions with the MAC transmit and receive operations and determination of the next packet to send on any particular link.

## 2 AMP HOST CONTROLLER INTERFACE

A number of elements used in HCI commands and events are defined to be AMP-type specific. This section describes the values to be used for the 802.11 PAL.

Octet ordering conventions for parameters and fields in this section shall be as defined in HCI, [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 5.2](#).

### 2.1 READ LOCAL VERSION INFORMATION COMMAND

Two return parameter values from this HCI command are defined to be AMP-type specific. For the 802.11 PAL they shall be as follows.

<i>PAL_Version</i>	<i>Size: 1 Octet</i>
<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0xXX	Version of the current PAL in the Controller. See Bluetooth <a href="#">Assigned Numbers</a> .

<i>PAL_Sub-version:</i>	<i>Size: 2 Octets</i>
<i>PAL_Version</i>	<i>Parameter Description</i>
0XXXX	In an 802.11 PAL this value is vendor specific.

### 2.2 READ LOCAL AMP INFO COMMAND

See [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 7.5.7](#).

There are six return parameters for the Read Local AMP Info command which are 802.11 AMP specific.

**Total\_Bandwidth:**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXX	<p>An upper bound on the total data rate that can be achieved by the AMP for applications. It accounts for the total bandwidth provided by the HCI transport. No sustained combination of transmit and receive operations shall exceed this value. This may be used to help in AMP selection and admission control. Expressed in kbps.</p> <p>For testing purposes, the achievable throughput deliverable to applications by an ERP or OFDM PHY shall be assumed to be no more than 30000 kbps and for the HT PHY shall be assumed to be no more than 50000 kbps.</p>

**Max\_Guaranteed\_Bandwidth:**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXX	<p>An upper bound on the maximum data rate as seen by the application that the AMP can guarantee for a logical channel. Any request made by an application above this level would be rejected. It accounts for any bandwidth limitations of the HCI transport. No sustained combination of transmit and receive operations shall exceed this value. This can be used to help in AMP selection and admission control. Expressed in kbps.</p> <p>The Max_Guaranteed_Bandwidth parameter value returned shall be no greater than the Total_Bandwidth parameter. This value is not a guarantee of bandwidth and should be interpreted as an upper bound on the sum of the bandwidths of all active flow specs.</p>

**Min\_Latency:**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXX	The Min_Latency parameter value is the practical lower bound on the service latency that can be provided by the 802.11 AMP. The lower bound of the service latency is the time from when a frame is issued to the AMP HCI until the MAC starts transmitting the frame with no contention window back off. This shall be equal to the AMP HCI minimum latency + DIFS + CWmin where the DIFS and CWmin are as given in [1] clause 9.2.10.

**Max\_PDU\_Size:**

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
	<p>An upper bound on the size of L2CAP PDU which may be provided for transmission or reception on this AMP. The Host shall not require the AMP to transport L2CAP PDUs larger than this value. Expressed in octets. The Maximum PDU Size parameter described in [Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.4] for any connection over this AMP should not exceed this value.</p> <p>The Max_PDU_Size parameter returned shall be Max80211PALPDUSize.</p>

***Controller\_Type:*****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	802.11 AMP

***PAL\_Capabilities:*****Size: 2 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Bit 0: "Service Type = Guaranteed" is not supported by PAL = 0 "Service Type = Guaranteed" is supported by PAL = 1 Bits 15-1: Reserved (See L2CAP, [Vol 3] Part A, Section 5.6)

Bit 0 of the PAL\_Capabilities parameter shall be set to 1 if the local 802.11 AMP device is capable of using the Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) mechanisms (see [1] clause 9.9.1), otherwise it shall be set to 0.

***AMP\_ASSOC\_Length:*****Size: 2 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	AMP_ASSOC maximum length for this AMP Controller.

The 802.11 PAL shall set this to Max80211AMPASSOCLen.

***Max\_Flush\_Timeout:*****Size: 4 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	Maximum time period, in microseconds, which the AMP device may use to attempt to transmit a frame on a guaranteed logical link. This value is the sum of the durations of all 802.11 transmission attempts for a given frame. It should be chosen with the expectation that the 802.11 MAC may be denied access to the medium for a given transmission attempt. This may be due to interference from collocated radios, or otherwise. If the Controller is configured to retry frames for an unbounded time (there is no flushing at all), then the PAL shall set this value to 0xFFFFFFFF.

***Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout:*****Size: 4 Octets**

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	The typical time period, in microseconds, which the AMP device may use to attempt to transmit a frame on a best effort logical link. This value is the sum of the duration of all 802.11 transmission attempts for a given frame. It should be chosen with the expectation that the 802.11 MAC is usually able to access the medium for each attempt. The value shall not exceed the value given in Max_Flush_Timeout. If the Controller is configured to retry frames for an unbounded time (i.e. there is no flushing at all), then the PAL shall set this value to 0xFFFFFFFF.

## 2.3 RESET COMMAND

See [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 7.3.2.](#)

In addition to setting the HCI parameters to their default values, when the 802.11 PAL receives an AMP HCI\_Reset command it shall delete all existing AMP physical links. Note: Non AMP links should not be deleted.

## 2.4 READ FAILED CONTACT COUNTER COMMAND

When the 802.11 PAL receives an HCI Read\_Failed\_Contact\_Counter command it shall return the number of consecutive incidents in which the remote device didn't respond after the flush timeout had expired, and the L2CAP packet that was currently being transmitted was automatically flushed. The Failed Contact Counter is specific to each logical link.

## 2.5 READ LINK QUALITY COMMAND

See [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 7.5.3.](#)

The meaning of the Link\_Quality parameter in the Read Link Quality command is as shown below.

<i>Link_Quality:</i>	<i>Size: 1 Octet</i>
Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	In an 802.11 AMP this unsigned 8-bit value shall be the Link Quality Indicator value. It shall be 0 if the Link Quality Indicator value is not available. Range: $0x00 \leq N \leq 0xFF$

## 2.6 READ RSSI COMMAND

See [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 7.5.4.](#)

The meaning of the RSSI parameter in the Read RSSI command is as shown below.

<i>RSSI:</i>	<i>Size: 1 Octet</i>
Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	This value is a signed 8-bit value, and is interpreted as an indication of arriving signal strength at the antenna measured in dBm. The value shall be 0x81 (-127 dBm) if the signal strength indication is not available.

## 2.7 SHORT RANGE MODE COMMAND

When the Host determines that the AMP peers may have insufficient separation to obtain full AMP throughput, it may enable Short Range Mode in the PAL. The Short Range Mode command may be used by the Host to indicate to the PAL whether or not to operate in Short Range Mode.

When in Short Range Mode, the PAL shall limit the transmit power in dBm (measured at the antenna) for all 802.11 AMP ERP-OFDM frames transmitted by the device on the given physical link, as necessary to prevent exceeding the maximum input signal level of the peer. If the Host does not enable Short Range Mode or if the Host sets Short Range Mode to disabled, the PAL shall assume it may set the maximum transmit power for the link as it deems appropriate, respecting regulatory limits. If the AMP device is not able to limit its transmit power due to other existing connections then it may use a transmit power greater than ShortRangeModePowerMax in order to preserve those connections.

The meaning of the Short Range Mode parameter of the `HCI_Short_Range_Mode` command is as follows:

*Short Range Mode:*

Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	0x00—Short range mode shall be disabled in the PAL (default) 0x01—Short range mode shall be enabled in the PAL. 0x02...0xFF - Reserved

When the AMP controller receives the `Short_Range_Mode` command, it shall indicate a Command Status event. Later, after the MAC programming is completed, the controller shall generate a `Short_Range_Mode_Change_Completed` event. See [Section 2.13](#).

## 2.8 WRITE BEST EFFORT FLUSH TIMEOUT COMMAND

*Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX	0x00000000–0xFFFFFFF: Best Effort Flush Timeout value in microseconds. 0xFFFFFFFF: No Best Effort Flush Timeout used. (default)

## 2.9 READ BEST EFFORT FLUSH TIMEOUT COMMAND

*Best\_Effort\_Flush\_Timeout:*

Size: 4 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	0x00000000–0xFFFFFFF: Best Effort Flush Timeout value in microseconds. 0xFFFFFFFF: No Best Effort Flush Timeout used (default)

## 2.10 PHYSICAL LINK LOSS EARLY WARNING EVENT

Implementation of this event is not required for 802.11 AMPs.

## 2.11 PHYSICAL LINK RECOVERY EVENT

Implementation of this event is not required for 802.11 AMPs.

## 2.12 CHANNEL SELECTED EVENT

See [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 7.7.52](#).

When an HCI Channel Selected event is indicated by the PAL with successful status, it signifies the local 802.11 MAC has been configured to start operating on the selected channel.

Subsequent to the HCI Channel Selected event, the initiating AMP device shall create an AMP\_ASSOC containing its MAC address TLV, and with only the selected channel in its PCL and/or PCLv2 TLV (see sections [2.14.4](#) and [2.14.7](#)). Other TLVs may optionally be included. The host may obtain this AMP\_ASSOC by issuing one or more HCI\_Read\_Local\_AMP\_ASSOC commands.

## 2.13 SHORT RANGE MODE CHANGE COMPLETE EVENT

See [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 7.7.60](#).

After the PAL is notified of a change of state in Short Range Mode, it shall program the 802.11 device accordingly, unless the exceptions in [Section 2.7](#) are in effect. When it has finished making such changes to the MAC configuration, or if the PAL has changed the state of the Short Range Mode autonomously, the PAL shall indicate this to the Host by indicating the Short Range Mode Change Complete event. The Short\_Range\_State parameter identifies the new configuration to the Host.

## 2.14 DATA STRUCTURES

### 2.14.1 AMP\_ASSOC Structure

The AMP\_ASSOC is an AMP type specific structure and appears in various HCI commands and events. The AMP\_ASSOC structure used by the 802.11 PAL shall be composed of Type-Length-Value (TLV) triplets.

The general format of such a TLV, shown in [Table 2.1](#), shall be a one-octet TypeID field, a two-octet Length field, and a variable length Value field. The length of the Value field in octets shall be exactly equal to the unsigned number represented by the Length field. A TLV with zero in its Length field shall contain no Value field. If an implementation does not have support for a triplet in a received AMP\_ASSOC, it shall ignore the triplet and continue processing any remaining triplets.

The Length field is 2 octets in length and shall be ordered in the AMP\_ASSOC according to [\[Vol. 2\], Part B, Section 6.2 on page 116](#). The Value field shall be interpreted as a stream of octets.

The TypeID of 0xFF shall be reserved for use in debugging.

TypeID	Length	Value
1 octet	2 octets	Variable number of octets

*Table 2.1: TLV format*

The set of defined TypeIDs is given in [Table 2.2](#).

TypeID codepoint	Description	AMP_ASSOC inclusion
0x00	Reserved	NA
0x01	MAC Address	Mandatory
0x02	Preferred Channel List	Mandatory for Responder; Mandatory for Initiator if last HCI Write Remote AMP Assoc command did not include a PCLv2 (TypeID 0x06), else Optional
0x03	Connected Channel List	Optional
0x04	802.11 PAL Capabilities List	Optional
0x05	802.11 PAL version	Mandatory
0x06	Preferred Channel List v2	Optional if PCL (TypeID 0x02) is included in AMP_Assoc. else Mandatory
0x07 - 0xFE	Reserved	NA
0xFF	Reserved for use in debugging	NA

*Table 2.2: Requirements on contents of AMP\_Assoc messages*

## 2.14.2 MAC Address

The PAL shall use the following TLV to report the IEEE MAC address of its local 802.11 MAC. The bit ordering of the address is given in [1] clause 7.1.1.

*MAC\_Address\_TypeID:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x01	MAC Address TypeID

*MAC\_Address\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0006	MAC Address Length

*MAC\_Address\_Specifier:* Size: 6 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFFXXXXXX	MAC Address specifier

## 2.14.3 802.11 PAL Capabilities

The 802.11 PAL Capabilities is a bit field of supported capabilities of the sending device.

*802.11\_PAL\_Capabilities\_TypeID:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x04	802.11 PAL Capabilities TypeID

*802.11\_PAL\_Capabilities\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0x0004	802.11 PAL Capabilities Length

*802.11\_PAL\_Capabilities\_Specifier:* Size: 4 Octets

Bit format	Parameter Description
Bit 0	When set, signifies PAL capable of utilizing received Activity Reports
Bit 1	When set, signifies PAL is capable of utilizing scheduling information received in an Activity Report
Bit 2	When set, signifies 802.11 MAC and PHY is compliant with HT operation as specified in [1].
Bits 3..31	Reserved

The 802.11 PAL Capabilities TLV is optional to include in the AMP\_ASSOC. If an 802.11 PAL Capabilities TLV does not appear in an AMP\_ASSOC, then the receiver shall interpret this as receiving an 802.11 PAL Capabilities TLV with a Value field containing the default value of all zeros.

#### 2.14.4 Preferred Channel List

The Preferred Channel List (PCL) is a set of channels supported and usable by the sending device. The receiver of the PCL shall interpret the contents of the list with the assumption that the list is arranged in order of most preferred channel to least preferred channel. The format of the list is identical to the 802.11 Country information element, excluding the 802.11 information, element identifier, length, and pad fields. See [1] clause 7.3.2.9.

*Preferred\_Channel\_List\_TypeID:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x02	Preferred Channel List TypeID

*Preferred\_Channel\_List\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	Length of Preferred Channel List

*Preferred\_Channel\_List\_Specifier:* Size: Variable

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX..XX	List of preferred 802.11 channels. See <a href="#">Section 3.2.3</a> for details.

The channels are described by table entries in [1], Annex J, tables J-1, J-2, and J-3. For backward compatibility, the Preferred Channel List Specifier shall use table indices in the inclusive range [1-12] to describe US channels, [1-4] to describe EU country channels, and [1-32] to describe Japan channels.

## 2.14.5 Connected Channel List

The Connected Channel List (CCL) specifies the channels which may currently be in use by the sending device. If multiple channels are listed, the ordering gives no implied preference. The format of the list is the same as the PCL, see section [2.14.4](#).

The Connected Channel TLV is optional to include in the AMP\_ASSOC. If it is not included, then the receiver shall assume there are no channels which are currently in use by the sending device.

*Connected\_Channel\_List\_TypeID:* *Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x03	Connected Channel List TypeID

*Connected\_Channel\_List\_Length:* *Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFF	Length of Connected Channel List

*Connected\_Channel\_List\_Specifier:* *Size: Variable*

Value	Parameter Description
0xFFFFFFFF	List of 802.11 channels currently in use by the sending device. See <a href="#">Section 3.2.3</a> for details.

For backward compatibility, the Connected Channel List Specifier shall use table indices in the inclusive range [1-12] to describe US channels, [1-4] to describe EU country channels, and [1-32] to describe Japan channels.

## 2.14.6 802.11 PAL Version

An AMP endpoint may need to discover the version of the remote PAL. The information in the 802.11 PAL Version TLV shall be composed of the PAL\_Version from the HCI\_Read\_Local\_Version\_Information command, the Bluetooth SIG Company Identifier (see Assigned Numbers, [4]) for the provider of the PAL, and the PAL\_Sub-version from the HCI\_Read\_Local\_Version\_Information command. The Company Identifier and PAL Sub-version parameters shall use the octet ordering as given in [\[Vol. 2\], Part B, Section 6.2 on page 116](#).

*802.11\_PAL\_Version\_TypeID:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x05	802.11 PAL Version TypeID

*802.11\_PAL\_Version\_Length:*

*Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0x0005	Length of 802.11 PAL Version specifier

*802.11\_PAL\_Version\_Specifier:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	PAL Version

*802.11\_PAL\_Company\_Identifier:*

*Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	SIG Company identifier of 802.11 PAL vendor

*802.11\_PAL\_Sub\_Version:*

*Size: 2 Octets*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXX	PAL Sub-version specifier

### 2.14.7 Preferred Channel List v2

The Preferred Channel List v2 (PCLv2) TLV specifies the channels supported and usable by the sending device. The format of the list is identical to the 802.11 Country information element syntax, excluding the 802.11 information element identifier, length, country string and pad fields. See [1] clause 7.3.2.9. The receiver of a PCLv2 TLV shall interpret the contents of the list with the assumption that the list is arranged in order of most preferred channel to least preferred channel.

The PCLv2 may include channels with 20 MHz width, 40 MHz width, or both. Channels are expressed as triplets of two types: the operating type contains a table index from [Table 3.7](#) below, and the sub-band type contains a channel range. The PCLv2 shall contain at least one operating triplet. Country strings are not used in the PCLv2, so the operating triplet appears directly following the TLV length field. Sub-band triplets may be used to refine the list of channels expressed by the preceding operating triplet.

If a PCLv2 TLV is not included in the AMP Get AMP Assoc Request message from a responder, then the initiating PAL shall assume the responder may not have the ability to interpret PCLv2 TLVs. In this case the initiator shall include a PCL in the AMP\_Assoc in the AMP Create Physical Link Request, and the PCLv2 TLV is optional. If an implementation supports PCLv2 TLVs and if it receives a PCLv2 from its peer, then it shall ignore any PCL it receives.

*Preferred\_Channel\_Listv2\_TypeID:* Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x06	Preferred Channel List v2 TypeID

*Preferred\_Channel\_Listv2\_Length:* Size: 2 Octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXXXXXX	Length of Preferred Channel Listv2.

*Preferred\_Channel\_Listv2\_Specifier:* Size: Variable

Value	Parameter Description
0XXXXXXXXX	List of preferred channels, including 40 MHz channels if supported. See <a href="#">Section 3.2.3</a> for details.

## 2.15 CONNECTION ACCEPT TIMEOUT CONFIGURATION PARAMETER

See [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 6.7.](#)

The default value of the Connection Accept Timeout used by the 802.11 PAL shall be 5 seconds.

## 2.16 ENABLE DEVICE UNDER TEST MODE

If the device under test supports 40 MHz channels, the `HCI_Enable_Device_Under_Test_Mode` command (see [Vol 2, Part E, section 7.6.3](#)) change the state of the PAL so that it will always utilize 40 MHz channel widths for connections if 40 MHz operation is supported by the AMP peer.

When an `HCI_Read_Local_AMP_Assoc` is issued following this command, the AMP ASSOC which is returned shall include at least one channel which is 40 MHz in width in the PCLv2 (see above). When an `HCI_Write_Remote_AMP_ASSOC` is issued following this command, and if the AMP ASSOC included in that `Write_Remote_AMP_ASSOC` command contains 40 MHz channels, then the selected channel shall be a 40 MHz channel.

When the host issues the `HCI_Enable_Device_Under_Test_Mode` command, the PAL shall advertise or choose 40 MHz channels, depending on its role. When serving as the Initiator, the PAL shall choose one of the 40 MHz channels offered by the Responder. When serving as the Responder, the PAL shall offer at least one 40 MHz channel in its PCLv2.

The described effect of the `HCI_Enable_Device_Under_Test_Mode` is removed when the Host issues an `HCI_Reset` command.

## 3 PHYSICAL LINK MANAGER

A physical link joins an initiating device and a responding device. The initiating device is the device on which the HCI\_Create\_Physical\_Link command was issued. The responding device is the one on which the HCI\_Accept\_Physical\_Link command was issued. Physical link creation collisions are resolved at a higher level, by the AMP Manager.

Support for the 802.11 ERP (see clause 19 of [1]) shall be mandatory for 802.11 AMP devices, but other PHY types may be supported. Channels 1 (2412 MHz) through 11 (2462 MHz) shall be supported for interoperability.

A physical link represents a transport between a single local 802.11 AMP device and a single remote device with a matching 802.11 AMP. The AMP may support multiple physical links (representing different remote devices) at one time. There is a unique binding between the 802.11 MAC addresses of the devices and the physical link.

For a physical link to exist in the CONNECTED state the two devices must have established a PTKSA as described in [1] clause 8.4.1.

### 3.1 PHYSICAL LINK STATE MACHINE

#### 3.1.1 General rules

The behavior of the PAL with respect to physical links is described in terms of a finite state machine. The state machine describes the behavior of the PAL for an individual physical link; extension to multiple physical links is outside the scope of this document. The sequence of external stimulus and behavior at the logical HCI shall be as though this state machine is present in the implementation. Similarly, the sequence of stimulus and behavior at the 802.11 radio interface shall be as though this state machine is present in the implementation.

#### 3.1.2 State Diagram

The possible state events and transitions are summarized in this diagram. The diagram itself is Informative.

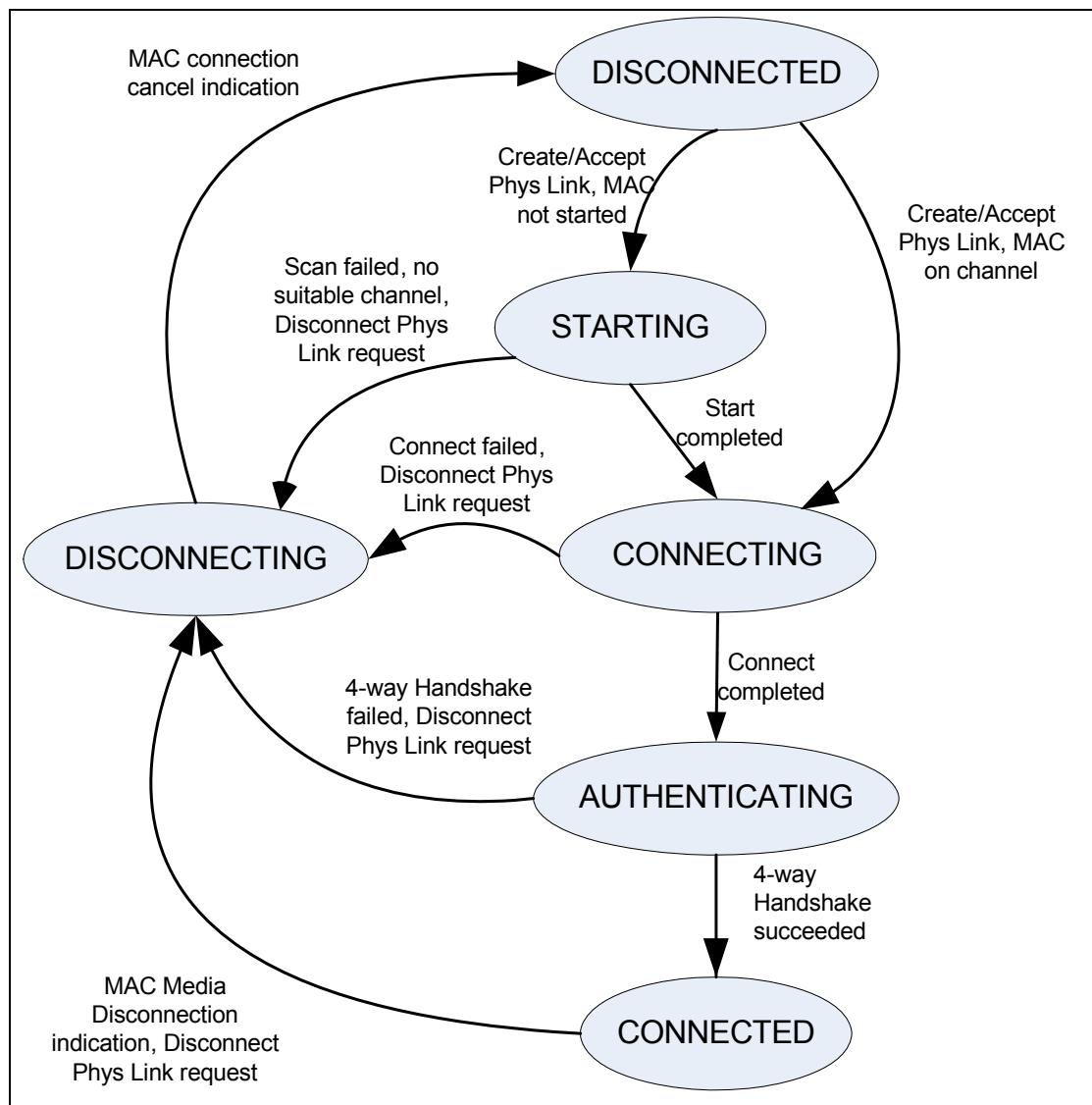


Figure 3.1: Physical Link finite state machine diagram

### 3.1.3 States

The following states have been defined to clarify the protocol. The states apply to an individual physical link. At power-up or reset, no physical links exist and the state is the DISCONNECTED state.

**DISCONNECTED**—The physical link is not active, and this is the initial state.

**STARTING**—Channel has been selected, the MAC is initializing.

**CONNECTING**—The initiating device waits for messages from the peer device; the responding device commences network connection operations.

**AUTHENTICATING**—The devices perform the security association process.

**CONNECTED**—A secure physical link has been established with the remote device.

**DISCONNECTING**—The PAL waits for the MAC to complete disconnection and return to the initial state.

### 3.1.4 Events

The following events may cause transitions in the state diagram.

**Create/Accept Physical Link**—HCI commands from the local host which affect the state of a physical link.

**Connection Accept Timeout**—The timeout for this physical link create/accept has expired.

**MAC Start Completed**—The MAC has started operation on the given channel. This includes beaconing and listening for connections.

**MAC Start Failed**—The MAC has failed to start on the specified channel for any reason.

**MAC Connect Completed**—The MAC has completed the process of connecting to a peer in a specified channel.

**MAC Connect Failed**—The MAC fails to connect on the selected channel for any reason

**MAC Media Disconnection Indication**—MAC has signaled an existing connection is lost to a remote device.

**MAC Connection Cancel Indication**—MAC has completed the request to cancel a prior connection.

**HCI Disconnect Physical Link Request**—The host has given a disconnect request to the PAL.

**4-way Handshake Fails**—The establishment of a secure link for this physical link has failed.

**4-way Handshake Succeeds**—The establishment of a secure link for this physical link has completed successfully.

### 3.1.5 Conditions

The following conditions are potential qualifiers for actions and state transitions to occur.

**MAC not yet started in selected channel**—The MAC is not beaconing in any PHY channel, or is beaconing in a different channel than the one specified.

**MAC already in selected channel**—The MAC is already beaconing in the selected PHY channel.

**No suitable channel**—No suitable channel can be selected, or the selected channel cannot be joined for any reason.

**Device is initiator**—Role of device is physical link initiator due to reception of Physical Link Create command.

**Device is responder**—Role of device is physical link responder due to reception of Physical Link Accept command.

### 3.1.6 Actions

In some cases, a state transition causes one or more of the following actions to occur. The actions for a state transition shall occur in their entirety before any subsequent state transition occurs, as follows.

**Determine selected channel**—Using information from the AMP\_ASSOC of the remote device and preferences from the local device, select a channel

**Set or clear Connection Accept Timeout**—Start or stop the timer for the current physical link.

**Set or clear NeedPhysLinkCompleteEvent, DiscRequested**—Set or clear state variables which control subsequent behavior.

**Set or PhysLinkCompleteStatus**—Sets command status to be indicated to Host.

**Signal MAC to start on channel**—Command the MAC to start the process of connection on the specified channel.

**Issue MAC connection command**—Command the MAC to attempt to connect to the remote device.

**Initiate 4-way handshake**—Command the authenticator to send the first security message.

**Send HCI event**—send the indicated HCI event to the local Host.

**Cancel MAC connect operation**—This physical link no longer needs to be present on this channel. The PAL signals the MAC to delete the connection.

**Signal MAC to disconnect peer**—Command MAC to send disconnection frame to peer.

### 3.1.7 DISCONNECTED State

This is the initial state. No timers shall be active.

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
HCI_Create_-Physical_Link command	MAC not yet in selected channel	Determine selected channel Request MAC to start on channel Set Connection Accept timeout Set NeedPhysLinkCompleteEvent Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to 0x00 (no error)	STARTING
HCI_Create_-Physical_Link command	MAC already in selected channel	Determine selected channel Send HCI Channel Select event Set Connection Accept Timeout Set NeedPhysLinkCompleteEvent Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to 0x00 (no error)	CONNECT-ING
HCI_Create_-Physical_Link command	No suitable channel	Determine selected channel Send HCI Physical Link Complete event with Status set to No Suitable Channel Found (0x39)	DISCON-NECTED
HCI_Accept_-Physical_Link command	MAC not yet in channel	Signal MAC to start on channel Set Connection Accept Timeout Set NeedPhysLinkCompleteEvent Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to 0x00 (no error)	STARTING
HCI_Accept_-Physical_Link command	MAC already in that channel	Set Connection Accept Timeout Issue MAC connection command Set NeedPhysLinkCompleteEvent Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to 0x00 (no error)	CONNECT-ING
HCI_Accept_-Physical_Link command	No suitable channel	Send HCI Physical Link Complete event with Status set to No Suitable Channel Found (0x39)	DISCON-NECTED

Table 3.1: DISCONNECTED State event table

### 3.1.8 STARTING State

This state is used to begin MAC operation, if required.

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Connection Accept Timeout		SetPhysLinkCompleteStatus to Connection Accept Timeout (0x10)	DISCONNECTED
HCI_Disconnect_Physical_Link command		Indicate HCI Disconnection Physical Link Complete event with Status set to Success (0x00) and Reason set to Connection Terminated By Local Host (0x16) Clear Connection Accept Timeout Cancel MAC connect operation Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to Unknown connection identifier (0x02)	DISCONNECTED
MAC Start Completed	Device is link originator	Issue HCI Channel Select event	CONNECTING
MAC Start Completed	Device is link responder	Issue MAC connection command	CONNECTING
MAC Start Failed		Clear Connection Accept Timeout Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to MACConnection Failed(0x3F)	DISCONNECTED

Table 3.2: STARTING State event table

### 3.1.9 CONNECTING State

This state is used to cause the devices to start communication with each other, over the 802.11 media.

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Connection Accept Time-out		Cancel MAC connect operation Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to 0x10 (Connection Accept timeout)	DISCONNECTING
MAC Connect Completed	Device is responder		AUTHENTICATING
MAC Connect Completed	Device is initiator	Initiate four way handshake	AUTHENTICATING
HCI_Disconnect_Physical Link command		Indicate HCI Disconnection Physical Link Complete event with Status set to Success (0x00) and Reason set to Connection Terminated By Local Host (0x16) Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to Unknown connection identifier (0x02) Clear Connection Accept Timeout Cancel MAC connect operation	DISCONNECTING
MAC Connect Failed		Cancel MAC connect operation Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to MAC Connection Failed (0x3F)	DISCONNECTING

Table 3.3: CONNECTING State event table

### 3.1.10 AUTHENTICATING State

The AUTHENTICATING state is entered when the two devices have established an unsecured connection.

While in the AUTHENTICATING state the two devices shall perform the 802.11 RSN 4-way handshake as described in [Section 3.5](#), establish a PTKSA, and insert key material into the MAC.

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
Connection Accept Timeout		Set PhysicalLinkCompleteStatus to 0x10 (MAC Connection Failed)	DISCONNECTING
HCI_Disconnect_Physical Link command		Indicate HCI Disconnection Physical Link Complete event with Status set to Success (0x00) and Reason set to Connection Terminated By Local Host (0x16) Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to Unknown connection identifier (0x02) Clear Connection Accept Timeout Signal MAC to disconnect peer	DISCONNECTING
4-way Handshake Failed		Signal MAC to disconnect peer Set PhysLinkCompleteStatus to 0x05 (Authentication failure) Clear Connection Accept Timeout	DISCONNECTING
4-way Handshake Succeeded		Send HCI Physical Link Complete event with Status set to Success (0x00) Configure MAC with Link Supervision Timeout Clear Connection Accept Timeout Clear NeedPhysLink CompleteEvent	CONNECTED

Table 3.4: AUTHENTICATING State event table

### 3.1.11 CONNECTED State

The CONNECTED state is the operational state for the physical link.

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
HCI_Disconnect_Physical Link command		Indicate HCI Disconnection Physical Link Complete event with Status set to Success (0x00) and Reason set to Connection Terminated By Local Host (0x16) Clear Connection Accept Time-out Signal MAC to disconnect peer	DISCONNECTING
MAC Media Disconnection Indication		Indicate HCI Disconnection Logical Link Complete event for each logical link, with Status set to Success (0x00) and Reason set to Connection Terminated by remote host Cancel MAC connect operation	DISCONNECTING

Table 3.5: CONNECTED State event table

### 3.1.12 DISCONNECTING State

This is a transit state to the DISCONNECTED state and is used to prevent the PAL from preparing to accept or create new connections while a given connection is being deleted by the PAL and the MAC. The PAL shall exit from this state when the MAC is ready to accept new connections.

Event	Condition	Action	Next State
MAC Connection Cancel Indication	PhysLinkCompleteEvent is set	Send HCI Physical Link Complete with status set to PhysLinkCompleteStatus	DISCONNECTED
MAC Connection Cancel Indication	PhysLinkCompleteEvent is clear		DISCONNECTED

Table 3.6: DISCONNECTING State event table

## 3.2 CHANNEL SELECTION

### 3.2.1 Overview

Peer to peer networks in 802.11 can incur long connection latency unless there is out of band coordination. Also, one or both of the AMP devices may already be connected to an external network and may therefore need to remain on a given channel. To solve these problems, the data structures and algorithms specified here may be used to provide a coordination service during the creation of the physical link.

An 802.11 channel should be chosen based on up-to-date dynamic information obtained from both AMP peers. The channel selection process is outside the scope of this document but the selected channel shall meet the following criteria:

- The channel shall be legally permitted for use according to local regulatory agencies. If no locale is known, then a common mode configuration shall be used. See [Section 3.2.2](#).
- The channel shall not use a 40 MHz channel width in the 2.4 GHz ISM band.
- If the channel width is 20 MHz, then the channel shall be included in the PCL TLV and in the PCLv2 TLV, if present, in the AMP\_ASSOC provided by the initiator in connection establishment. If the channel width is 40 MHz, then the channel shall be present in the PCLv2 TLV.
- The channel selection process should avoid forcing either AMP device to move its channel.
- The channel selection process should favor channels with least impact on BR/EDR operation.

The initiating PAL may not be able to select a suitable channel or the responding PAL may reject the selected channel. If the selection process cannot identify a channel, then the physical link establishment shall be aborted.

The selected channel is transmitted to the responding AMP manager as a field in the AMP\_ASSOC parameter in the AMP Create Physical Link message, and given to the responding PAL via the HCI\_Write\_Remote\_AMP\_ASSOC command.

### 3.2.2 Regulatory

Even though IEEE 802.11 devices operate in unlicensed spectral bands, the unlicensed bands and the limits of allowable behavior in each band are specific to a country and enforced by spectrum regulatory bodies. There is a consistent set of rules for operation in the 2.4 GHz ISM band, as described in the following text.

802.11 AMP equipment providers interpret these rules in independent ways and meet the regulations with independent mechanisms so specification of an algorithm to implement regulatory compliance for all situations is beyond the scope of this document.

If an implementation has knowledge of local regulatory constraints then such an implementation may be able to improve certain characteristics of the AMP link, for example by selecting a 5 GHz channel of operation to provide better performance with the collocated BR/EDR radio.

### 3.2.3 Specification of Channel Identifiers

Tables specifying regulatory class identifiers, channel frequencies, widths and descriptors are given for three regulatory domains in [1] normative annex J. When using these tables, to resolve all ambiguity of channel identification in construction of a PCL TLV, the country string as specified in [4] and the regulatory class are needed. To support channel descriptions for countries not included in tables J-1, J-2, or J-3, the country string may be distinct from the locale known by the implementation, if any. The country string is only used to select a specific table from the set of tables listed above and is only used in the PCL TLV.

AMP devices may utilize 40 MHz channel width in the 5 GHz UNII band. As described in [1], 40 MHz channels are specified as two adjacent 20 MHz channels, one with a role of the primary channel and the other with a role of the extension channel. The role and relative positioning of the primary and extension channels are given in [Table 3.6a](#). The operating index is contained within an operating triplet.

Operating index	Channel Starting Frequency (GHz)	Channel Spacing (MHz)	Channel Set	Behavior Limits Set
1 – 80	NA	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
81	2.407	25	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13	
82	NA	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
83	NA	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

*Table 3.6a: Channel set descriptions for PCLv2*

## 802.11 Protocol Adaptation Layer Functional Specification



Operating index	Channel Starting Frequency (GHz)	Channel Spacing (MHz)	Channel Set	Behavior Limits Set
84	NA	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
85-114	NA	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
115	5	20	36, 40, 44, 48	IndoorOnlyBehavior
116	5	40	36, 44	IndoorOnlyBehavior, PrimaryChannelLowerBehavior
117	5	40	40, 48	IndoorOnlyBehavior, PrimaryChannelUpperBehavior
118	5	20	52, 56, 60, 64	
119	5	40	52, 60	PrimaryChannelLowerBehavior
120	5	40	56, 64	PrimaryChannelUpperBehavior
121	5	20	100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136, 140	
122	5	40	100, 108, 116, 124, 132	PrimaryChannelLowerBehavior
123	5	40	104, 112, 120, 128, 136	PrimaryChannelUpperBehavior
124	5	20	149, 153, 157, 161	NomadicBehavior
125	5	20	149, 153, 157, 161, 165, 169	LicenseExemptBehavior
126	5	40	149, 157	PrimaryChannelLowerBehavior
127	5	40	153, 161	PrimaryChannelUpperBehavior
128-191	NA	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
192-253	NA	Vendor Specific	Vendor Specific	Vendor Specific

Table 3.6a: Channel set descriptions for PCLv2

Operating index	Channel Starting Frequency (GHz)	Channel Spacing (MHz)	Channel Set	Behavior Limits Set
254	2.407	25	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11	Operating index for Bluetooth, 20 MHz operation only
255	NA	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

Table 3.6a: Channel set descriptions for PCLv2

Multiple operating triplets may be given in the same PCL, PCLv2, or CCL TLVs. If sub-band triplets are given then they are to be assumed to modify the nearest preceding operating triplet. Sub-band triplets may be specified in any order, but they must not contain overlapping channel sets, as noted in [1] clause 7.3.2.9.

The PCL may be included in messages containing AMP\_ASSOC fields exchanged over the BR/EDR link during construction of the physical link. The PCL shall contain exactly one country string and one or more operating triplets. If the current locale is unknown, then the non-country designator of 'XXX' (see definition of dot11CountryString in [1] normative Annex D) and regulatory class of 254 shall be used. The set of channels preferred when using this designator and regulatory index shall be channels 1 through 11 in the 2.4 GHz ISM band, with channel 1 the most preferred of the set. Supporting examples are given below.

The PCLv2 may be included in messages containing AMP\_ASSOC fields exchanged over the BR/EDR link during construction of the physical link. The PCLv2 does not contain a country string. It shall contain one or more operating triplets and zero or more sub-band triplets. Note: For the channel descriptions given in Table 3.6a, for a given operating index, not every associated channel may be legal to use in a given locale. It is up to each AMP implementation to maintain compliance with local regulatory rules. If the current locale is unknown, then the PCLv2 shall not be included in any AMP\_ASSOC sent over the BR/EDR link.

The PCLv2 is included by the sender to describe both 20 MHz and 40 MHz channels and also contains the same 20 MHz channels as described in the required PCL TLV. However, the channels in the PCLv2 are specified using operating indices as given in Table 3.6a, not the specific regulatory domain identifiers used in the PCL.

The CCL is used to inform the peer of the current channel usage of the sending AMP.

### 3.2.4 Channel List Examples

In the first example PCL, we assume the device does not know its locale and it prefers operation on channel 1 in the 2.4 GHz ISM band, although operation on channels 2 through 11 is acceptable. The absence of a specific sub-band triplet implies all channels 1 through 11 are acceptable.

Field	Value	Comments
Country String	'XXX'	Applies to entire table. Signifies non-country (mobile applications).
Regulatory Extension Identifier	201	
Regulatory Class	254	In context of Country String. Signifies 2.4 GHz ISM band channels 1 through 11 unless modified by specific channel list.
Coverage Class	0	Not used by AMPs.

Table 3.7: Simple preferred channel list

In the next example, assume the PAL again does not know its locale, but it prefers operation only on channels 6, 7 and 11, with 11 the most preferred.

Field	Value	Comments
Country String	'XXX'	Applies to entire table. Signifies non-country (mobile applications)
Regulatory Extension Identifier	201	
Regulatory Class	254	In context of Country String. Signifies 2.4 GHz ISM band channels 1 through 11 unless modified by specific channel list.
Coverage Class	0	Not used by AMPs.
First Channel	11	First sub-band triplet
Number of channels	1	
Maximum transmit power level	20	
First Channel	6	Second sub-band triplet
Number of channels	2	
Maximum transmit power level	20	

Table 3.8: Preferred channel list with non-contiguous channels

In the next example, assume the PAL knows that it is operating in the US and it has determined that all channels in the 2.4 GHz ISM band and 2 channels of 20 MHz width, 36 and 40, in the 5 GHz U-NII 1 band should be communicated to the other peer. It is also assumed that the PAL has determined that channels in the 2.4 GHz band are preferred to the 5 GHz channels. The PAL would use the following PCL.

Field	Value	Comments
Country String	'US'	Applies to entire table.
Regulatory Extension Identifier	201	First operating triplet.
Regulatory Class	12	In context of Country String, specifies channels 1 through 11, inclusive, in 2.4 GHZ ISM band. Absence of specific channel list signifies all channels in this (FCC) regulatory class are available to the AMP.
Coverage Class	0	Not used by AMPS.
Regulatory Extension Identifier	201	Second operating triplet.
Regulatory Class	1	In context of Country String, specifies 20 MHz channel spacing. Presence of subsequent channel list signifies not all channels in the regulatory class are available to the AMP.
Coverage Class	0	Not used by AMPS.
First channel	36	First sub-band triplet.
Number of channels	2	Channels 36 and 40 are included, with channel 36 more preferred than channel 40.
Maximum transmit power level	20	Units in context of Country String (dBm, mW, etc).

Table 3.9: Mixed band preferred channel list example

In the next example consider the case of a PCL for Canada with 20 MHz channel numbers 36 and 40 and a PCLv2 with 40 MHz channel widths for channel pairs (36, 40) and (44, 48), as well as the 20 MHz channels in the PCL.

Assume for this example that Canada uses the same channel descriptions as the US for the channels referenced. A country string of 'US' is used in the PCL in order to indicate we are drawing the channel descriptions from Table J-1 in [1]. The channel descriptor in the PCLv2 for the former channel pair shows that 36 is the primary channel, while the descriptor for the latter pair shows that 48 is the primary channel. The operating indices will be from the set {115, 116}. Note: 2.4 GHz channels are not included at all in this example, implying that only 5 GHz band channels will be used if any connection is made.

The PCL TLV and PCLv2 TLV are shown in the tables 3.9a and 3.9b below. In the PCLv2 TLV the 40 MHz pairs are shown first and the 20 MHz channels follow.

Field	Value	Comments
Country String	'US'	Applies to entire PCL
Regulatory Extension Identifier	201	First operating triplet
Regulatory Class	1	Specifies channels 36 - 48 inclusive, 20 MHz width. Will be further restricted by sub-band triplet
Coverage Class	0	Not used by AMPs
First channel	36	First sub-band triplet
Number of channels	2	Denotes channels 36, 40
Transmit power	20	

Table 3.9a: Example preferred channel list TLV for Canada

Field	Value	Comments
Operating Extension Identifier	201	First operating triplet
Operating index	116	Specifies channels 36 and 44, inclusive, are to be considered primary channels with extension channels at the higher adjacent frequencies, i.e. channels 40 and 48 are extension channels.
Coverage Class	0	Not used by AMPs
First Channel	36	First sub-band triplet. Specifies 36 is primary and 40 is upper extension.
Number of Channels	1	There is one 40 MHz channel specified.
Transmit power	20	
Operating Extension Identifier	201	Operating triplet for the 20 MHz channels
Operating index	115	Specifies channels 36 – 48 inclusive, 20 MHz width.
Coverage Class	0	Not used by AMPs
First channel	36	Sub-band triplet
Number of channels	2	Denotes channels 36, 40
Transmit power	20	

Table 3.9b: PCLv2 example

## 3.3 802.11 LINK CREATION

### 3.3.1 Starting the AMP Network

After the initiator has selected a channel of operation, the initiating PAL shall instruct the MAC to commence network operation, including beaconing. The 802.11 AMP devices shall use probe responses and/or beacons (respecting regulatory restrictions) to advertise MAC capabilities.

AMP devices shall use beacons to enable effective coexistence with neighboring 802.11 networks. For example, non-AMP devices can discover the existence of AMP networks and such devices can also determine the EDCA characteristics of the network. In regulatory domains where DFS operation is required, an AMP device may need to passively observe the channel to check for radar, as described in [1] clause 11.9, before it may start to beacon. For AMP operation, the maximum beacon period shall be Max80211BeaconPeriod.

The SSID information element for AMP devices shall be of the form 'AMP-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx' (with no null termination and no quotes) where the "x" characters are replaced by the lowercase hexadecimal characters of the MAC address of the local 802.11 device. This is referred to here as the AMP SSID. For example, if the MAC address of a device is 00:01:02:0A:0B:0C, then the AMP SSID would be 'AMP-00-01-02-0a-0b-0c'.

AMP beacons shall be indicated as ESS-style beacons in the capability information field as described in [1] clause 7.3.1.4 and shall include the AMP SSID. Beacons shall be sent with standard beacon channel access semantics as given in [1] clause 11.1.2.1. The contents of the Address2 and Address3 fields for beacons and probe responses shall be the MAC address of the transmitting AMP node. Probe requests sent to AMP peers shall use the MAC address of the intended recipient as the content of the Address1 and Address3 fields. In [1] clause 7.2.3.1 contains the details of the format of 802.11 beacon frames and [1] clause 7.2.3.9 contains the details of the format of 802.11 probe response frames, including a list of the required information elements is specified.

#### 3.3.1.1 HT Operation

The AMP peers shall maintain the HT protection field in the HT operation information element in their beacons according to [1]. When communicating with the initiator, the responder shall use the protection mechanism dictated by the initiator's beacon.

The HT features of Greenfield, Reduced Inter-Frame Space (RIFS), dual Clear to Send (CTS) protection and Phased Coexistence Operation (PCO) shall not be used in AMP links. The respective fields in the 802.11 HT operation information element shall be set to zero in transmitted MMPDUs and ignored in received MMPDUs.

When using a DFS channel, the AMP responder shall monitor the field which indicates Overlapping BSS (OBSS) non-HT stations are present in the HT operation element of the AMP initiator's beacon and adhere to the requirements in [1]. The AMP initiator shall be responsible for setting this field.

### 3.3.2 Establishing the 802.11 Link

AMP devices may choose to obtain the timebase of their peer through the timestamp field in 802.11 beacons and probe responses. The respective Target Beacon Transmission Time (TBTT) of the peers may be independent and occur at different times with respect to one another. The beacon period of the devices may be different from one another.

AMPs shall use RSN security. RSN security requires the use of 802.11 open authentication as specified in [1] clause 8.2.2.2. The AMP responder shall send the first frame of the 802.11 authentication transaction sequence with transaction ID of 1. Address fields Address1 and Address3 shall contain the initiator's address. The AMP initiator shall respond with an 802.11 authentication frame with transaction ID of 2. Address fields Address2 and Address3 shall contain the initiator's address.

AMPs shall use 802.11 (re)association frames to select features advertised by their peer. The AMP responder shall send an (re)association request frame. Address fields Address1 and Address3 shall contain the initiator's address.

The AMP initiator shall reply with an (re)association response frame. Address fields Address2 and Address3 shall contain the initiator's address. The frame body contents of both the (re)association request and response are given in [1] clause 7.2.3.4 and [1] clause 7.2.3.5, respectively.

After successful 802.11 (re)association, unencrypted security frames may be transmitted on the physical link.

### 3.3.3 Address Fields of Data Frames

The 802.11 AMP shall support the use of four address field frame format for all data frames after (re)association.

To use data frames with four address fields the AMP shall set the ToDS and FromDS bits in the FrameControl field equal to one. The addresses used for such frames shall be arranged as shown in [Table 3.10](#). Because there is no frame forwarding by AMPs, the RA is the same as the DA and the TA is the same as the SA.

Field	Value
Address1	Receiver Address (RA)
Address2	Transmitter Address (TA)
Address3	Receiver Address (RA)
Address4	Transmitter Address (TA)

*Table 3.10: Four address frame address fields*

### 3.3.4 Admission Control

AMP devices should respond to probe requests with a probe response.

If Address2 of an 802.11 association request does not match the MAC address from the AMP Assoc received during construction of the current physical link or if the SSID in the association request does not match the AMP SSID of the receiving AMP device, then the receiving AMP device shall not transmit an 802.11 association response with a status code of 0 (success).

## 3.4 PHYSICAL LINK MAINTENANCE

After a physical link is created, an AMP device shall monitor the state of the link and provide an indication of link failure to the Host if no frames are received from the AMP physical link peer for a period of Link Supervision Timeout (LSTO). Correctly decrypted data frames received from the peer shall be evidence of an existing physical link, but this is not true for 802.11 ACK and CTS control frames.

If the PAL has not received a correctly decrypted data frame for a period less than LSTO, then it shall solicit a response from its peer in an attempt to receive the response before the expiration of LSTO. For this purpose, link supervision request/response protocol identifiers are given in [Table 5.2](#) and may be used to construct link supervision data frames. When a PAL receives a data frame with a protocol identifier of Link Supervision Request, it shall reply by transmitting a data frame with a protocol identifier of Link Supervision Reply.

## 3.5 PHYSICAL LINK SECURITY

### 3.5.1 Obtaining Key Material

The Host provides key material for use with a physical link as the Dedicated\_AMP\_Link\_Key parameter of the HCI\_Create\_Physical\_Link or HCI\_Accept\_Physical\_Link command. See [\[Vol 2\] Part E, Section 5.2](#) for octet ordering of multi-octet HCI parameter values. The Dedicated\_AMP\_Link\_Key parameter shall be interpreted by the PAL as a 256 bit integer and used directly as a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) by the two devices to create a PTK. Further key material is derived from the PTK.

### 3.5.2 Creating a PTK

The 802.11 4-way handshake is used to create a PTK from the PMK. See [\[1\]](#) clause 8.5.3.

Entities known as authenticator and supplicant are used to exchange security information in the 802.11 security architecture. Since the responding AMP device receives the 802.11 (re)association response frame, it shall serve the role of supplicant; the initiating AMP device shall serve the role of authenticator. The authenticator sends the first and third messages of the 4-way handshake and the supplicant sends the second and fourth messages. Only a single instance of the 4-way handshake is run by the 802.11 AMP to establish its secure connection.

If a 4-way handshake fails then the PAL physical link state machine shall transition to the DISCONNECTING state as described in [Section 3.1.10](#).

The supported security configurations of the peers are given in the RSN information element in beacons or probe responses exchanged by the AMP devices. The PAL shall enforce the following restrictions:

- UseGroup (00:0F:AC:00), WEP-40 (00:0F:AC:01), TKIP (00:0F:AC:02), and WEP-104 (00:0F:AC:05) shall not be allowed as valid pairwise cipher suites.
- The group cipher shall be CCMP (00:0F:AC:04)
- The only valid AKMP shall be PSK (00:0F:AC:02) or a vendor-specific AKMP.
- The NoPairwise bit (B1) of the RSN Capabilities field shall be set to zero.
- The Management Frame Protection Required (MFPR) bit (B6) of the RSN Capabilities field shall be set to zero. Note: This does not prevent the use of Management Frame Protection.

The supplicant shall ensure a proper intersection of capabilities exists subject to the constraints above. It may also choose a set according to its policy requirements and may terminate a connection attempt if no policy match is

found. Either the supplicant or the authenticator may terminate a connection after AMP Create Physical Link Response is sent by indicating an HCI Physical Link Complete event with an unsuccessful status code.

The AMP key received from the host may be marked with a Link\_Type of debug. If it is, then the local PAL may choose to use the key, or it may choose to refuse to establish the link, according to its own policy. The management of this debug key policy is outside the scope of this document.

The PAL shall use the AMP key as a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) according to the 802.11 key hierarchy described in [1] clause 8.5.1.2 and shall exchange nonces (as part of a 4-way handshake) to add liveness in the derivation of a Pairwise Transient Key (PTK). The PTK shall be derived specifically for a session started by the HCI\_Create\_Physical\_Link\_Request command and shall be deleted when the session is terminated by the HCI\_Disconnect\_Physical\_Link command. The construction of the AAD used with CCMP shall include Address4 in the manner illustrated in [1] clause 8.3.3.3.2, Figure 8-17.

### 3.5.3 Using Encryption

Encryption keys are derived from the PTK and are inserted into the 802.11 MAC after the 4-way handshake has successfully completed. All data frames after this point are encrypted and this state persists until the physical link is deleted.

### 3.5.4 Refreshing a PTK

The PTKSA, if any, shall be discarded when the physical link to which it applies enters the DISCONNECTED state. At this point the Host may reestablish the connection which will cause the creation of a new PTKSA.

The PTKSA shall be discarded in the event its receive sequence counter becomes exhausted. Since this is a 48 bit counter, this is an unlikely event.

To establish a new PTK, the physical link shall be torn down and re-established.

### 3.5.5 Transporting Security Handshake Messages

Security handshake messages shall be sent after the physical link is created, but before any logical link is created between the two devices.

The SNAP header composed of the OUI of the Bluetooth SIG and the protocol identifier given in Table 5.2 shall be used to distinguish AMP 4-way handshake messages from external security traffic.

## 3.6 PHYSICAL LINK SUPPORT FOR QOS

### 3.6.1 QoS Advertisement

If an AMP device supports 802.11 EDCA and is configured to use it, then it should indicate this to the host by setting the Guaranteed\_Service\_Type\_Supported field of the PAL\_Capabilities parameter included in the HCI\_Read\_Local\_AMP\_Info command.

If QoS is offered by an AMP device, it shall advertise EDCA in beacon and probe response frames by including the EDCA Parameter Set information element, as given in [1] clause 7.3.2.29. Note: The EDCA Parameter Set information element is also included in (re)association response frames. For AMP devices, the use of the EDCA parameter set shall be as follows. The QoS Info field shall be zero. The ACI, AIFSN, and TXOPlimit values of the AC parameter record shall be as given in [1] Table 7-37. The ECWmin and ECWmax values are specific to the 802.11 PHY type and are documented in their appropriate clauses in [1]. The Admission Control Mandatory (ACM) bit should be zero.

The QoS Capability information element is described in [1] clause 7.3.2.35. The QoS Info field (see [1] clause 7.3.1.17) is contained in the QoS Capability information element as well as the first field of the EDCA Parameter Set information element. AMP devices shall not include the QoS Capability information element in beacons or probe responses.

The interpretation of the content of the QoS Info field is different depending on if the enclosing frame is a beacon or probe response, or if it is a (re)association request.

802.11 Information element	Frame(s) contained in
QoS Capability information element	Association Request, Reassociation Request
EDCA Parameter Set information element	Beacon, Probe Response, Association Response, Reassociation Response

Table 3.11: EDCA advertisement and negotiation

The EDCA AC parameters shall not change unless the physical link is torn down and re-established. Therefore the EDCA Parameter Set Update Count subfield of the QoS Info field in beacons and probe responses shall be zero.

### 3.6.2 Negotiation

To request the use of EDCA on the physical link an AMP device shall include a QoS Capability element in its (re)association request. If the AMP peer rejects the EDCA negotiation then the (re)association response frame shall have no EDCA Parameter Set element included. If the (re)association response frame has a status code of successful and the EDCA Parameter Set element is included, then the link shall be considered to support EDCA.

## 4 LOGICAL LINK MANAGER

---

A logical link provides a (possibly) bidirectional path for in-order delivery of L2CAP PDUs, with a specified set of traffic characteristics. Each logical link exists with respect to a specific physical link in the CONNECTED state.

A logical link is characterized by a pair of Extended Flow specification parameter sets, as described in [1]. An Extended Flow specification parameter set is referred to simply as a flow spec here.

Each logical link is classified as either Best Effort or Guaranteed. The logical link is known as Best Effort if either of its flow specs indicates Best Effort in its Service Type field. Otherwise, it is known as Guaranteed.

Support for Guaranteed links is optional; the PAL may reject any guaranteed flow spec. If 802.11 QoS (see [Section 3.6.1](#)) is not supported by both endpoints, then there is no traffic prioritization in the MAC.

### 4.1 LOGICAL LINK CREATION

Creation of a logical link is initiated by the HCI\_Create\_Logical\_Link or HCI\_Accept\_Logical\_Link command. If the physical link is not in state CONNECTED, the PAL shall send the HCI Logical Link complete event with status set to Command Disallowed (0x0C). The Controller shall indicate successful completion of the logical link creation using the HCI Logical Link Complete event, with Status set to Success (0x00).

#### 4.1.1 Logical Link Handles

When a Logical Link is created or accepted the PAL shall create a Logical Link handle, or logical handle. The logical handle is included in HCI ACL data packets received from the HCI in the Handle field; the PAL may use the logical handle to help it select the egress physical link. If the Host delivers an HCI ACL data packet to the AMP Controller with an invalid Handle field, then the AMP shall discard the ACL data packet and the PAL may indicate a Number of Completed Blocks or Number of Completed Packets event (depending on the configuration of the Flow Control setting) using the Host-supplied logical handle.

When the PAL receives data frames from the MAC, it may use the source address to determine the physical link. It shall place the physical link handle corresponding to that link into the Handle field of the HCI ACL data packet before the packet is indicated to HCI. Note: the PAL is not required to determine a logical handle for frames it receives from the MAC.

#### 4.1.2 Null Traffic Logical Links

Data frames may be discarded if attempted on a No Traffic flow.

### 4.1.3 Best Effort Logical Links

There is a single logical link used to transport all Best Effort traffic.

If EDCA was successfully negotiated during the physical link creation, the PAL shall map all egress frames marked with the Best Effort logical handle to a UP of either BEUserPrio0 or BEUserPrio1, inclusive. Otherwise, if EDCA is not used, no mapping is required and the UP shall be set to zero by the PAL.

### 4.1.4 Guaranteed Logical Links

Flow specs requesting guaranteed service may be accepted by the PAL if the physical link was negotiated with 802.11 QoS.

EDCA shall be used by the 802.11 AMP devices if supported and available for use by both devices. The PAL shall provide a priority field associated with each egress 802.11 frame. The priority field is interpreted by the MAC as a User Priority (UP) and is mapped to access category as specified in [1] clause 9.1.3.1.

If the 802.11 link was negotiated with QoS, then on receiving an HCI\_Create\_Logical\_Link or HCI\_Accept\_Logical\_Link command specifying a Guaranteed transmit flowspec the PAL shall use a UP with a value between MinGUserPrio and MaxGUserPrio, inclusive. The determination of precisely which UP to use is outside of the scope of this specification. A flow spec expresses maximum bandwidth as the product of inter-SDU arrival time and maximum SDU size. The PAL may use the specified maximum bandwidth or latency requirements from the flow spec to establish mappings of logical handles to UPs.

If a request for a guaranteed link cannot be mapped to a UP in the range specified above, it may be rejected.

The PAL shall reject all requests to establish a guaranteed logical link with a flow spec expressing a maximum bandwidth which is greater than the Total\_Bandwidth parameter of the Read Local AMP Info command minus the sum of the requested maximum bandwidths of all existing guaranteed logical links.

The transmitter shall store the logical channel to UP mapping for application to future frame transmissions. The receiver shall create an HCI ACL data header and insert the physical link handle into the Handle field of the packet before indication to the Host.

## 4.2 LOGICAL LINK UPDATES

The Host may indicate a change of traffic requirements on a logical link by using the HCI\_Flow\_Spec\_Modify command. An HCI\_Flow\_Spec\_Modify command will not change the Service Type of the flow specs for a logical link.

When the PAL receives an HCI\_Flow\_Spec\_Modify command, it should validate that the new flow spec requirements can be met with the available resources. If not, then the PAL should reject the command.

## 4.3 LOGICAL LINK DELETION

The PAL shall rely on upper layers to flush any frames before a logical link is deleted. See explicit flush in [Section 5.3](#). The PAL may choose to re-use the same logical link identifier for new logical links even on the same physical link.

The PAL should recover any allocated QoS resources when the logical link is deleted. In particular, when deallocating resources for a flow spec which expressed a maximum bandwidth, the PAL should subtract that parameter from the total allocated bandwidth.

## 5 DATA MANAGER

---

### 5.1 ENCAPSULATION

The PAL shall advertise a maximum PDU length of Max80211PALPDUSize octets and each L2CAP PDU is transmitted by the MAC as a single MSDU. The MSDU boundary determines the L2CAP PDU boundary for the receiver.

Before transmission, the PAL shall remove the HCI header, add LLC and SNAP headers and insert an 802.11 MAC header. The LLC/SNAP frame format used by the 802.11 AMP is shown in [Table 5.1](#).

	<b>DSAP</b>	<b>SSAP</b>	<b>Control</b>	<b>OUI</b>	<b>Protocol</b>	<b>Frame Body</b>
Value	0xAA	0xAA	0x03	00:19:58	XX:XX	
Octets	1	1	1	3	2	0-1492

*Table 5.1: 802.11 AMP LLC/SNAP encapsulation*

The protocol identifiers shall be as shown in [Table 5.2](#):

<b>Value</b>	<b>Protocol Description</b>	<b>Logical Link</b>
0x0000	Reserved	N/A
0x0001	L2CAP ACL data	AMP-U
0x0002	Activity Report	AMP-C
0x0003	Security frames	AMP-C
0x0004	Link supervision request	AMP-C
0x0005	Link supervision reply	AMP-C
0x0006-0xFFFF	Reserved	N/A

*Table 5.2: Protocol Identifiers*

All 802.11 data frames on the AMP link shall be sent with ToDS and FromDS bits in the Frame Control field both set to one. For a description of the Frame Control field, see [\[1\]](#) clause 7.1.3.1. If QoS was negotiated on the physical link between the peers then the QoS Control field shall be included in the MAC header, otherwise it shall not be included.

The receiving device can determine the physical link identity from the TA of the received frame. The receiving PAL shall decapsulate the frame from 802.11 and into the HCI ACL data encapsulation.

## 5.2 COEXISTENCE AND LOCAL INTERFERENCE

### 5.2.1 Interference from Collocated Radios

The BR/EDR radio, LE PHY and the ERP of 802.11 AMP operate in the 2.4GHz ISM band and mechanisms are required to help mitigate potential interference. The BR/EDR and LE radio subsystems on an 802.11 AMP capable device should employ AFH to attempt to avoid interference of overlapping transmissions on the medium.

Protocols specified in [1] are designed to mitigate interface from non-collocated radios.

On systems where the devices are collocated such that radio isolation is insufficient to mitigate interference, the use of the shared medium should be time-division multiplexed to ensure only one of the interfering radios will gain access to the medium. In the case of the BR/EDR radio and the 802.11 radio operating in the 2.4GHz band, the PAL should ensure that local high priority BR/EDR traffic such as SCO, eSCO and ACL packets carrying A2DP information have higher priority over potentially interfering local 802.11 AMP packets. The PAL may ensure this prioritization through many ways including employing the methods described in [3] but the exact methods are outside the scope of this document.

Interference can also arise between the 802.11 AMP radio and collocated licensed band radios (LBRs) operating in adjacent bands to the ISM spectrum. Due to 802.11 AMP transmissions, the collocated LBR may not be able to receive transmissions from its peer LBR. Again the use of the medium should be time-division multiplexed to ensure only one of the radios will gain access to the medium at one time. In the case of the 802.11 AMP radio and an LBR, the PAL should ensure that the local LBR packets have higher priority over potentially interfering local 802.11 AMP packets. Although the exact methods are outside the scope of this document, similar collocated radio interference mitigation mechanisms as described above may be used.

### 5.2.2 Unavailability of Remote Peer

Distributed AMP devices may experience 802.11 performance degradation due to simultaneous BR/EDR activity occurring at one of the AMP peers. Local interference mitigation schemes (see [Section 5.2.1](#)) employing time-divided access to the medium will result in the 802.11 radio being periodically unavailable to its peer. The PAL attempting to transmit to a periodically unavailable AMP device may employ techniques to allow its transmissions to consume minimal airtime and power while still achieving acceptable performance for its own transmissions and those of neighboring networks.

When a physical link is created, the PAL shall configure the 802.11 MAC to use RTS/CTS signaling by default. This behavior may be modified by using Activity Reporting as given in [Section 5.2.3](#).

### 5.2.3 Activity Reports

AMP Activity Reports provide an optional mechanism for the 802.11 PAL to inform its 802.11 AMP peer of events which may result in the 802.11 device being unavailable to receive 802.11 traffic. Activity Reports may also be used to inform a peer of the absence of local interference thereby allowing the remote peer to disable its RTS/CTS signaling.

Examples of simultaneous traffic include, but are not limited to:

1. BR/EDR SCO/eSCO streams
2. 802.11 traffic required to maintain an external 802.11 connection
3. Traffic from other collocated radios such as LBRs in the 2.3 or 2.5 GHz band (including WiMax, LTE, and UMB)

When Activity Reports are used, it is the PAL which is aware of its unavailability which may generate the interference information. The PAL can determine the information to include in the Activity Report through methods including, for example, the PTA model described in [\[3\]](#). In many systems with collocated radios there are PTA signals between the BR/EDR and 802.11 controllers which may be used to generate this information.

The information shall be transferred between the communicating 802.11 PALs using a PAL Activity Report PDU encapsulated in an 802.11 data frame. The frame body of the Activity Report PDU following the LLC/SNAP header is shown in [Table 5.3](#). It has a variable length.

*Activity Report* Size: Variable

Value	Octets	Description
ScheduleKnown	1	Bit 0: 1 if the sender knows the schedule of interference 0 if the sender does not know the schedule of interference
NumReports	1	The number of traffic reports in this PDU
StartTime	4	The absolute time of the start of possible unavailability of the peer, expressed as the least significant 32 bits of the 802.11 TSF of the transmitter of the PDU.
Duration	4	Duration of the active phase of the traffic in microseconds.
Periodicity	4	Periodicity of traffic in microseconds. May be zero to indicate aperiodic traffic.

*Table 5.3: Activity Report*

Processing of received Activity Reports is optional and support for it is advertised in the 802.11 PAL Capabilities field.

The ScheduleKnown field shall indicate to the receiver of the Activity Report whether or not the sender is aware of the schedule of subsequent data traffic.

- If the ScheduleKnown is set to zero, this shall signify the sender is aware of the presence of traffic but not its schedule, and the receiving PAL shall configure the MAC with RTS/CTS signaling for all traffic on the physical link to the sender.
- If the ScheduleKnown is set to one, the sender shall describe the schedule of interference in the subsequent fields; the receiver of the report may either schedule all 802.11 AMP traffic around this schedule, configure the MAC with RTS/CTS signaling, or both.

If a PAL knows there is no interference from collocated radios before or during establishment of a physical link, an Activity Report conveying this state should be sent at the earliest possible opportunity after the physical link is established.

The StartTime, Duration and Periodicity form an Activity Report triplet. The difference between the StartTime and the current TSF of the peer shall be interpreted as a signed 32 bit value. A negative value shall denote a time in the past. The NumReports value indicates the number of Activity Report triplets which follow. The Duration shall specify the amount of time (in microseconds) the PAL is in the mode specified. If the ScheduleKnown field is zero, there shall be no Activity Report triplets and the NumReports field shall be zero. If the Periodicity is non-zero, it shall be a value greater than the Duration.

An Activity Report may be created to describe a burst of interfering traffic by setting ScheduleKnown to one, NumReports to one, StartTime to the time the burst is predicted to start, Duration to the duration of the burst, and Periodicity to zero.

The PAL may inform its peer that interference is no longer present by sending an Activity Report with a ScheduleKnown field set to one, and a NumReports field set to zero. Upon reception of such an Activity Report frame, a receiving PAL may configure the MAC without RTS/CTS signaling.

The PAL may transmit an Activity Report frame periodically in order to correct clock drift between its TSF and the schedule of unavailability caused by the collocated radio. The most recent Activity Report shall supersede all others received.

### 5.3 EXPLICIT FLUSH

Explicit flush may be initiated at the HCI on any logical link by using the HCI\_Enhanced\_Flush command. Explicit flush discards all data frames for transmit on the indicated logical link.

### 5.4 AUTOMATIC FLUSH

If guaranteed logical links are supported, then automatic flush timeouts shall be supported by the 802.11 PAL.

### 5.5 QUALITY OF SERVICE VIOLATIONS

The PAL may generate a HCI QoS Violation event when it is determined that the parameters of the flow spec are not being met. This may occur for instance when a data packet has been queued for transmission on a Guaranteed logical link for longer than the Access Latency in the flow spec for transmitted traffic on that link. It can also occur when a data packet fails to receive an acknowledgement before the specified flush timeout.

## 6 CONSTANTS

---

Name	Value	Units	Description
Max80211PALPDUSize	1492	Octets	Maximum PDU size
Max80211AMPASSOCLen	672	Octets	Maximum length of AMP_AS-SOC for this AMP
MinGUserPrio	4	N/A	Minimum value of user priority for guaranteed link
MaxGUserPrio	7	N/A	Maximum value of user priority for guaranteed link
BEUserPrio0	0	N/A	Best effort User Priority
BEUserPrio1	3	N/A	Best effort User Priority
Max80211BeaconPeriod	2000	milliseconds	Maximum value of AMP dot11BeaconPeriod MIB variable
ShortRangeModePower-Max	4	dBm	Maximum transmit power for ERP-OFDM frames when in Short Range Mode

Table 6.1: 802.11 PAL Constants

## 7 MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS

The MSCs necessary to show the creation and deletion of physical and logical links can be found in [Vol 2] Part F, Section 4.16, as the sequencing of steps is determined by the logical HCI. However, an overview MSC for AMP physical link creation is given in Figure 7.1.

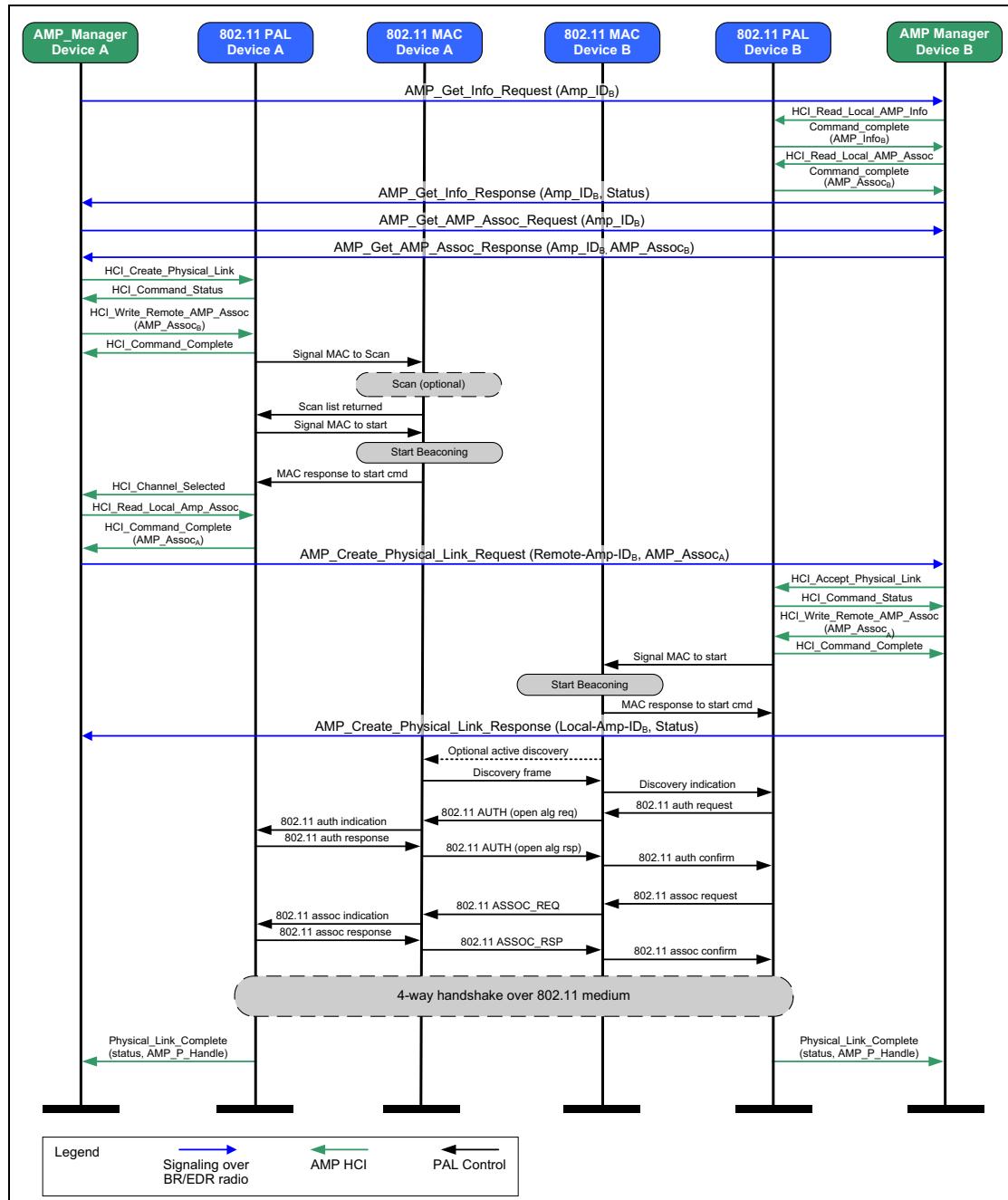


Figure 7.1: Overview MSC for physical link create/accept

## 8 APPENDIX A: TEST SUPPORT

This section provides the details of the AMP test commands and events described in [\[Vol 2\] Part E](#).

### 8.1 AMP TEST COMMAND

Command	OCF	Command Parameters	Return Parameters
HCI_AMP_Test	0x0009	Test Parameters	Status

#### Description:

This command is used to configure and start a test. This command shall be only valid in AMP Test Mode.

When a test scenario has completed or on receiving a HCI\_AMP\_Test\_End command the AMP shall send a HCI AMP Test End event and the AMP returns to an idle state with the RX and TX off.

#### Test Parameters:

Size: 18 octets

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	Test Scenario 0x01 - Transmit single frames with following parameters 0x02 - Receive frames with following parameters 0x03 – 0xFF Reserved
0xXX	Preamble 0x00 – ERP-OFDM preamble 0x01 - Short Preamble 0x02 - Long preamble 0x03 – 0xFF Reserved
0xXX	Payload 0x00 – All Zeros payload 0x01 – All ones payload 0x02 - PRBS9. The PRBS9 sequence is reinitialized for every frame. Each PRBS9 payload is the same. 0x03 - PRBS15. The PRBS15 sequence is reinitialized for every frame. Each PRBS15 payload is the same. 0x04 – 0xFF Reserved

## 802.11 Protocol Adaptation Layer Functional Specification



0xXXXXXX	Country	<p>Channel Descriptor</p> <p>For AMP type 802.11, the channel is completely described by a four-tuple of {Country, Operating Extension Identifier, Regulatory class, Channel number}. The Country identifier is an ISO/IEC-3166 three-octet field and the Extension Identifier is equal to 201.</p> <p>If the locale is unknown to the EUT, then it shall only allow channel numbers as given in Ref [2] Clause 18.4.6.2. Valid values are from 1 to 11. All other values are reserved</p>	
0xC9	Operating Extension Identifier		
0xXX	Operating Class		
0xXX	Channel Number		
0xXX	<p>Modulation</p> <p>0x00 ERP-DSSS 0x01 ERP-CCK 0x02 ERP-OFDM 0x03 ERP-PBCC 0x04 DSSS-OFDM 0x05 OFDM All other values are reserved</p>		
0xXX	<p>Rate (Mb/s)</p> <p>Transmission data rate of PSDU.</p> <p>See Ref [2] Clause 19.8.2 PHY MIB dot11SupportedDataRatesTxValues</p> <p>The allowed data rates are dependent on the modulation selected. Ref [2] Table 19.1 Clause 19.2 and Clause 17.2.3.3.</p> <p>All other values reserved</p>		
0xXXXX	<p>Payload length</p> <p>1 to 1500. All other values reserved.</p>		
0xXX	<p>Transmit Power Control (TPC)</p> <p>Valid values are 1 to 8 as defined in the Ref [2] implementation dependent.</p> <p>All other values reserved.</p>		
0xXX	<p>Duty Cycle</p> <p>10 to 99% (default 50%)</p> <p>All other values reserved.</p>		
0xXXXX	<p>Frame count</p> <p>1 to 65525 - Number of frames to be transmitted. When the defined frame count has been transmitted the system returns to the idle state and the AMP Test End event is returned to the tester.</p> <p>On receiving the Test End command the AMP returns to idle state.</p>		
0xXX	<p>Scramble state</p> <p>0x00 – OFF 0x01 – ON</p> <p>All other values reserved.</p>		

**Return Parameters:****Status:****Size: 1 Octet**

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	AMP Test command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Test command failed. See “Error Codes” on page 379 in Vol. 2.

**Event(s) Generated (unless masked away):**

When the AMP receives the HCI\_AMP\_Test command, the AMP shall send the Command Status event to the AMP Test Manager which shall be routed to the tester.

The HCI AMP Start Test event shall be generated when the HCI\_AMP\_Test command has completed and the first data is ready to be sent or received.

The HCI Command Complete event shall not be sent by the AMP to indicate that this command has been completed. Instead the HCI AMP Start Test event shall indicate that this command has been completed.

When in a transmitter test scenario and the frames/bursts count have been transmitted the HCI AMP Test End event shall be sent.

### 8.1.1 Test Scenarios

All AMP Test Mode frames shall be AMP Test Mode data frames.

#### Single Frame Transmission

When the test scenario is set to transmit single frames the format shall be as defined by the parameters in the rest of the test configuration parameters. The interval between frames shall be as defined by the transmission interval time.

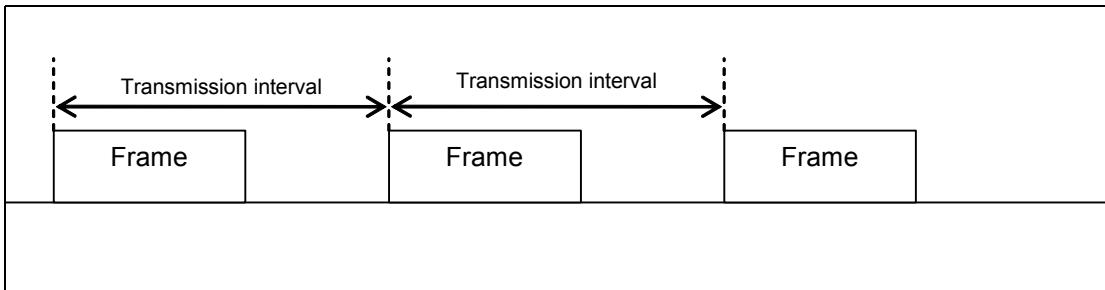


Figure 8.1: Single Frame test transmission

The transmissions shall continue until the frame count is reached or a HCI\_AMP\_Test\_End command is received; when a HCI AMP Test End event shall be sent to the tester via the AMP Test Manager.

The requirements of the frames are described in the AMP Test Mode data frame format section.

## Receive Frames

When the test scenario is set to receive frames the AMP shall receive the frames defined in the other test scenario parameters and, when AMP receiver reports are configured, return receiver reports as defined to the tester via the AMP Test Manager.

### 8.1.2 Test Mode Data Frame Format

The frames transmitted in AMP Test Mode are not super frames. All frames shall be Data frames. The format of the frame agrees with the PHY frames in [2] section 19 with non connection AMP Test Mode fixed fields.

#### Source and Destination Address

When performing the AMP PHY non connection tests these fields are fixed according to the direction of the message. The AMP shall use a fixed address AMP\_TEST\_ADDRESS and shall expect to receive frames with an AMP\_TESTER\_ADDRESS.

Parameter	Address
AMP_TEST_ADDRESS	0x5555 (01010101010101 binary)
AMP_TESTER_ADDRESS	0xAAAA (10101010101010 binary)

These are fixed addresses for testing purposes only.

The AMP shall transmit frames in the transmit test scenarios with the SrcAddr set to the AMP\_TEST\_ADDRESS and the DestAddr set to the AMP\_TESTER\_ADDRESS.

The AMP shall receive test frames in the receiver test scenarios with the SrcAddr set to AMP\_TESTER\_ADDRESS and the DestAddr set to the AMP\_TEST\_ADDRESS.

## 8.2 AMP START TEST EVENT

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
HCI_AMP_Start_Test	0x49	Status Test Scenario

### Description:

The HCI AMP Start Test event shall be generated when the HCI\_AMP\_Test command has completed and the first data is ready to be sent or received.

### Event Parameters:

**Status:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	Test command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Test command failed. See “ <a href="#">Error Codes</a> ” on page 379 in Vol. 2.

**Test Scenario:** Size: 1 Octet

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	0x01 - Transmit single 0x02 – Receive frames 0x00 and 0x03 – 0xFF Reserved

### 8.3 AMP TEST END EVENT

Event	Event Code	Event Parameters
HCI_AMP_Test_End	0x4A	Status Test Scenario

**Description:**

The HCI AMP Test End event shall be generated to indicate that the AMP has transmitted or received the number of frames/bursts configured.

If the Receiver reports are enabled an HCI AMP Receiver Report event shall be generated.

**Event Parameters:**

*Status:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0x00	AMP Test command succeeded
0x01-0xFF	Test command failed. See “ <a href="#">Error Codes</a> ” on page 379 in Vol. 2.

*Test Scenario:*

*Size: 1 Octet*

Value	Parameter Description
0xXX	0x01 - Transmit single 0x02 – Receive frames 0x03 – 0xFF Reserved Test Scenario for which the test end event has been generated

## 9 REFERENCES

- [1] IEEE 802.11-2007 Standard and the following amendments: Amendment 1 (Radio Resource Measurement), Amendment 2 (Fast BSS Transition), Amendment 3 (3650 MHz - 3700 MHz Operation in US), Amendment 4 (Protected Management Frames), and Amendment 5 (Enhancements for Higher Throughput)
- [2] ISO/IEC 3166-2
- [3] IEEE 802.15.2 Recommended Practice: Coexistence of WPAN with other wireless devices operating in unlicensed frequency bands
- [4] Bluetooth SIG Company Identifiers <https://www.bluetooth.org/Technical/AssignedNumbers/identifiers.htm>



## LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 1.1:	Internal structure of the 802.11 PAL .....	13
Figure 3.1:	Physical Link finite state machine diagram .....	29
Figure 7.1:	Overview MSC for physical link create/accept .....	59
Figure 8.1:	Single Frame test transmission .....	62





## LIST OF TABLES

Table 2.1:	TLV format.....	21
Table 2.2:	Requirements on contents of AMP_Assoc messages .....	21
Table 3.1:	DISCONNECTED State event table.....	32
Table 3.2:	STARTING State event table.....	33
Table 3.3:	CONNECTING State event table .....	34
Table 3.4:	AUTHENTICATING State event table .....	35
Table 3.5:	CONNECTED State event table.....	36
Table 3.6:	DISCONNECTING State event table .....	36
Table 3.7:	Simple preferred channel list.....	41
Table 3.8:	Preferred channel list with non-contiguous channels.....	41
Table 3.9:	Mixed band preferred channel list example .....	42
Table 3.10:	Four address frame address fields.....	46
Table 3.11:	EDCA advertisement and negotiation .....	49
Table 5.1:	802.11 AMP LLC/SNAP encapsulation .....	53
Table 5.2:	Protocol Identifiers .....	53
Table 5.3:	Activity Report.....	55
Table 6.1:	802.11 PAL Constants.....	58







# Specification of the **Bluetooth®** System



Specification Volume 6

**Core System  
Package [Low Energy  
Controller volume]**

Covered Core Package version: 4.1

Publication date: 03 December 2013



**Bluetooth®**





## Revision History

The Revision History is shown in the [\[Vol 0\] Part C, Section on page 61](#).

## Contributors

The persons who contributed to this specification are listed in the [\[Vol 0\] Part C, Section on page 61](#).

## Web Site

This specification can also be found on the official Bluetooth web site:  
<http://www.bluetooth.com>

## Disclaimer and Copyright Notice

The copyright in these specifications is owned by the Promoter Members of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. ("Bluetooth SIG"). Use of these specifications and any related intellectual property (collectively, the "Specification"), is governed by the Promoters Membership Agreement among the Promoter Members and Bluetooth SIG (the "Promoters Agreement"), certain membership agreements between Bluetooth SIG and its Adopter and Associate Members (the "Membership Agreements") and the Bluetooth Specification Early Adopters Agreements ("1.2 Early Adopters Agreements") among Early Adopter members of the unincorporated Bluetooth special interest group and the Promoter Members (the "Early Adopters Agreement"). Certain rights and obligations of the Promoter Members under the Early Adopters Agreements have been assigned to Bluetooth SIG by the Promoter Members.

Use of the Specification by anyone who is not a member of Bluetooth SIG or a party to an Early Adopters Agreement (each such person or party, a "Member"), is prohibited. The legal rights and obligations of each Member are governed by their applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights are granted herein.

Any use of the Specification not in compliance with the terms of the applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement is prohibited and any such prohibited use may result in termination of the applicable Membership Agreement or Early Adopters Agreement and other liability permitted by the applicable agreement or by applicable law to Bluetooth SIG or any of its members for patent, copyright and/or trademark infringement.



THE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR REASONABLE SKILL OR CARE, OR ANY WARRANTY ARISING OUT OF ANY COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, TRADE PRACTICE, PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

Each Member hereby acknowledges that products equipped with the Bluetooth® technology ("Bluetooth® Products") may be subject to various regulatory controls under the laws and regulations of various governments worldwide. Such laws and regulatory controls may govern, among other things, the combination, operation, use, implementation and distribution of Bluetooth® Products. Examples of such laws and regulatory controls include, but are not limited to, airline regulatory controls, telecommunications regulations, technology transfer controls and health and safety regulations. Each Member is solely responsible for the compliance by their Bluetooth® Products with any such laws and regulations and for obtaining any and all required authorizations, permits, or licenses for their Bluetooth® Products related to such regulations within the applicable jurisdictions. Each Member acknowledges that nothing in the Specification provides any information or assistance in connection with securing such compliance, authorizations or licenses. **NOTHING IN THE SPECIFICATION CREATES ANY WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING SUCH LAWS OR REGULATIONS.**

ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR FOR NONCOMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, RELATING TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION IS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. BY USE OF THE SPECIFICATION, EACH MEMBER EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY CLAIM AGAINST BLUETOOTH SIG AND ITS PROMOTER MEMBERS RELATED TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION.

Bluetooth SIG reserves the right to adopt any changes or alterations to the Specification as it deems necessary or appropriate.

Copyright © 1999 - 2013

Ericsson AB,

Lenovo, (Singapore) Pte. Ltd

Intel Corporation,

Microsoft Corporation,

Motorola Mobility, LLC,

Nokia Corporation,

Toshiba Corporation

\*Third-party brands and names are the property of their respective owners.



## CONTENTS

### Part A

#### PHYSICAL LAYER SPECIFICATION

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>1 Scope .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>2 Frequency Bands and Channel Arrangement .....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>3 Transmitter Characteristics.....</b>	<b>17</b>
3.1 Modulation Characteristics.....	17
3.2 Spurious Emissions.....	18
3.2.1 Modulation Spectrum.....	18
3.2.2 In-band Spurious Emission.....	18
3.2.3 Out-of-band Spurious Emission.....	19
3.3 Radio Frequency Tolerance .....	19
<b>4 Receiver Characteristics .....</b>	<b>20</b>
4.1 Actual Sensitivity Level .....	20
4.2 Interference Performance .....	21
4.3 Out-of-Band Blocking .....	22
4.4 Intermodulation Characteristics.....	22
4.5 Maximum Usable Level.....	23
4.6 Reference Signal Definition.....	23
<b>5 Appendix A .....</b>	<b>24</b>
5.1 Normal Operating Conditions (NOC) .....	24
5.1.1 Normal Temperature and Air Humidity .....	24
5.1.2 Nominal Supply Voltage .....	24
5.2 Extreme Operating Conditions (EOC).....	24
5.2.1 Extreme Temperature And Air Humidity .....	24
5.2.2 Extreme Supply Voltage .....	24
<b>6 Appendix B - Operating Conditions .....</b>	<b>25</b>

### Part B

#### LINK LAYER SPECIFICATION

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>1 General Description .....</b>	<b>32</b>
1.1 Link Layer States.....	32
1.1.1 State and Role Combination Restrictions.....	33
1.2 Bit Ordering .....	34
1.3 Device Address .....	34



1.4	Physical Channel .....	35
1.4.1	Advertising and Data Channel Indices .....	36
<b>2</b>	<b>Air Interface Packets.....</b>	<b>37</b>
2.1	Packet Format .....	37
2.1.1	Preamble.....	37
2.1.2	Access Address .....	37
2.1.3	PDU .....	38
2.1.4	CRC .....	38
2.2	Reserved for Future Use (RFU).....	38
2.3	Advertising Channel PDU .....	38
2.3.1	Advertising PDUs .....	40
2.3.1.1	ADV_IND .....	40
2.3.1.2	ADV_DIRECT_IND .....	40
2.3.1.3	ADV_NONCONN_IND .....	41
2.3.1.4	ADV_SCAN_IND .....	41
2.3.2	Scanning PDUs.....	42
2.3.2.1	SCAN_REQ .....	42
2.3.2.2	SCAN_RSP .....	42
2.3.3	Initiating PDUs .....	43
2.3.3.1	CONNECT_REQ .....	43
2.4	Data Channel PDU .....	45
2.4.1	LL Data PDU .....	46
2.4.2	LL Control PDU .....	46
2.4.2.1	LL_CONNECTION_UPDATE_REQ .....	48
2.4.2.2	LL_CHANNEL_MAP_REQ .....	48
2.4.2.3	LL_TERMINATE_IND .....	49
2.4.2.4	LL_ENC_REQ .....	49
2.4.2.5	LL_ENC_RSP .....	49
2.4.2.6	LL_START_ENC_REQ .....	50
2.4.2.7	LL_START_ENC_RSP .....	50
2.4.2.8	LL_UNKNOWN_RSP .....	50
2.4.2.9	LL_FEATURE_REQ .....	50
2.4.2.10	LL_FEATURE_RSP .....	51
2.4.2.11	LL_PAUSE_ENC_REQ .....	51
2.4.2.12	LL_PAUSE_ENC_RSP .....	51
2.4.2.13	LL_VERSION_IND .....	51
2.4.2.14	LL_REJECT_IND .....	52
2.4.2.15	LL_SLAVE_FEATURE_REQ .....	52
2.4.2.16	LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_REQ .....	52
2.4.2.17	LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_RSP.....	53
2.4.2.18	LL_REJECT_IND_EXT .....	55
2.4.2.19	LL_PING_REQ .....	55
2.4.2.20	LL_PING_RSP .....	55



<b>3</b>	<b>Bit Stream Processing .....</b>	<b>56</b>
3.1	Error Checking .....	56
3.1.1	CRC Generation .....	56
3.2	Data Whitening .....	57
<b>4</b>	<b>Air Interface Protocol.....</b>	<b>58</b>
4.1	Inter Frame Space .....	58
4.2	Timing Requirements .....	58
4.2.1	Active Clock Accuracy .....	58
4.2.2	Sleep Clock Accuracy .....	58
4.3	Link Layer Device Filtering .....	58
4.3.1	White List .....	59
4.3.2	Advertising Filter Policy .....	59
4.3.3	Scanner Filter Policy .....	60
4.3.4	Initiator Filter Policy .....	60
4.4	Non-Connected States .....	60
4.4.1	Standby State .....	60
4.4.2	Advertising State .....	60
4.4.2.1	Advertising Channel Selection .....	62
4.4.2.2	Advertising Interval .....	62
4.4.2.3	Connectable Undirected Event Type .....	62
4.4.2.4	Connectable Directed Event Type .....	64
4.4.2.5	Scannable Undirected Event Type .....	67
4.4.2.6	Non-connectable Undirected Event Type .....	68
4.4.3	Scanning State .....	69
4.4.3.1	Passive Scanning .....	70
4.4.3.2	Active Scanning .....	70
4.4.4	Initiating State .....	71
4.5	Connection State .....	71
4.5.1	Connection Events .....	72
4.5.2	Supervision Timeout .....	73
4.5.3	Connection Event Transmit Window .....	73
4.5.4	Connection Setup – Master Role .....	74
4.5.5	Connection Setup – Slave Role .....	75
4.5.6	Closing Connection Events .....	76
4.5.7	Window Widening .....	77
4.5.8	Data Channel Index Selection .....	78
4.5.8.1	Channel Classification .....	78
4.5.8.2	Channel Selection .....	78
4.5.9	Acknowledgement and Flow Control .....	79
4.5.9.1	Flow Control .....	81
4.6	Feature Support .....	81



4.6.1	LE Encryption.....	81
4.6.2	Connection Parameters Request Procedure .....	82
4.6.3	Extended Reject Indication .....	82
4.6.4	Slave-initiated Features Exchange .....	82
4.6.5	LE Ping .....	82
<b>5</b>	<b>Link Layer Control .....</b>	<b>83</b>
5.1	Link Layer Control Procedures .....	83
5.1.1	Connection Update Procedure.....	83
5.1.2	Channel Map Update Procedure.....	85
5.1.3	Encryption Procedure.....	87
5.1.3.1	Encryption Start Procedure.....	87
5.1.3.2	Encryption Pause Procedure.....	89
5.1.4	Feature Exchange Procedure .....	90
5.1.4.1	Master-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure ...	91
5.1.4.2	Slave-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure .	91
5.1.5	Version Exchange .....	92
5.1.6	Termination Procedure .....	93
5.1.7	Connection Parameters Request Procedure .....	93
5.1.7.1	Issuing an LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_REQ PDU .....	93
5.1.7.2	Responding to LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_REQ and LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_RSP PDUs.....	94
5.1.7.3	Examples.....	96
5.1.8	LE Ping Procedure .....	102
5.2	Procedure Response Timeout .....	102
5.3	Procedure Collisions .....	103
5.4	LE Authenticated Payload Timeout.....	103

## Part C SAMPLE DATA

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>106</b>	
<b>1</b>	<b>Encryption sample data.....</b>	<b>107</b>
1.1	Encrypt Command .....	109
1.2	Derivation of the MIC and Encrypted Data .....	109



## Part D MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>1      Introduction .....</b>	<b>116</b>
1.1    Notation .....	116
1.2    Control Flow .....	117
1.3    Example MSC .....	117
<b>2      Standby State.....</b>	<b>118</b>
2.1    Initial Setup .....	118
2.2    Random Device Address .....	119
2.3    White Lists.....	119
<b>3      Advertising State.....</b>	<b>120</b>
3.1    Undirected Advertising .....	120
3.2    Directed Advertising .....	121
<b>4      Scanning State .....</b>	<b>123</b>
4.1    Passive Scanning .....	123
4.2    Active Scanning .....	124
<b>5      Initiating State.....</b>	<b>125</b>
5.1    Initiating a Connection .....	125
5.2    Canceling an Initiation.....	126
<b>6      Connection State.....</b>	<b>127</b>
6.1    Sending Data .....	127
6.2    Connection Update .....	128
6.3    Channel Map Update .....	128
6.4    Features Exchange .....	129
6.5    Version Exchange .....	130
6.6    Start Encryption.....	131
6.7    Start Encryption without Long Term Key .....	132
6.8    Start Encryption with Event Masked.....	133
6.9    Start Encryption Without Slave Supporting Encryption .....	134
6.10    Restart Encryption.....	135
6.11    Disconnect .....	136
6.12    Connection Parameters Request.....	137
6.13    LE Ping .....	141

**Part E****LOW ENERGY LINK LAYER SECURITY**

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>146</b>
<b>1      Encryption and Authentication Overview.....</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>2      CCM.....</b>	<b>148</b>
2.1    CCM Nonce .....	148
2.2    Counter Mode Blocks .....	149
2.3    Encryption Blocks .....	150

**Part F****DIRECT TEST MODE**

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>153</b>
<b>1      Introduction .....</b>	<b>154</b>
<b>2      Low Energy Test Scenarios .....</b>	<b>155</b>
2.1    Test Sequences .....	155
2.2    Message Sequence Charts.....	156
<b>3      UART Test Interface .....</b>	<b>157</b>
3.1    UART Interface Characteristics .....	157
3.2    UART Functional Description.....	157
3.3    Commands and Events.....	158
3.3.1    Command and Event Behavior .....	158
3.3.2    Commands.....	158
3.4    Events .....	159
3.4.1    LE_Test_Status_Event.....	160
3.4.2    LE_Packet_Report_Event.....	160
3.5    Timing – Command and Event .....	161
<b>4      LE Test Packet Definition .....</b>	<b>162</b>
4.1    LE test packets format .....	162
4.1.1    Whitening .....	162
4.1.2    Preamble and Synchronization Word.....	162
4.1.3    CRC .....	162
4.1.4    LE Test Packet PDU.....	163
4.1.5    LE Test Packet Payload Description .....	164
4.1.6    LE Test Packet Interval .....	165
<b>List of Figures (all parts) .....</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>List of Tables (all parts) .....</b>	<b>171</b>

Core System Package [Low Energy Controller volume]

Part A

## PHYSICAL LAYER SPECIFICATION

*This part of the specification describes the Bluetooth low energy physical layer.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Scope .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequency Bands and Channel Arrangement .....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Transmitter Characteristics.....</b>	<b>17</b>
3.1	Modulation Characteristics.....	17
3.2	Spurious Emissions.....	18
3.2.1	Modulation Spectrum.....	18
3.2.2	In-band Spurious Emission.....	18
3.2.3	Out-of-band Spurious Emission.....	19
3.3	Radio Frequency Tolerance .....	19
<b>4</b>	<b>Receiver Characteristics .....</b>	<b>20</b>
4.1	Actual Sensitivity Level .....	20
4.2	Interference Performance .....	21
4.3	Out-of-Band Blocking .....	22
4.4	Intermodulation Characteristics.....	22
4.5	Maximum Usable Level.....	23
4.6	Reference Signal Definition.....	23
<b>5</b>	<b>Appendix A .....</b>	<b>24</b>
5.1	Normal Operating Conditions (NOC) .....	24
5.1.1	Normal Temperature and Air Humidity .....	24
5.1.2	Nominal Supply Voltage .....	24
5.2	Extreme Operating Conditions (EOC).....	24
5.2.1	Extreme Temperature And Air Humidity .....	24
5.2.2	Extreme Supply Voltage .....	24
<b>6</b>	<b>Appendix B - Operating Conditions .....</b>	<b>25</b>

## 1 SCOPE

---

Bluetooth Low Energy (LE) devices operate in the unlicensed 2.4 GHz ISM (Industrial Scientific Medical) band. A frequency hopping transceiver is used to combat interference and fading.<sup>1</sup>

An LE radio shall have a transmitter or a receiver, or both.

The LE radio shall fulfill the stated requirements for the operating conditions declared by the equipment manufacturer (see [Section 5.1](#) and [Section 5.2](#)).

The radio parameters shall be measured according to the methods described in the LE RF PHY Test Specification.

This specification is based on the established regulations for Europe, Japan, North America, Taiwan, South Korea and China. The standard documents listed below are only for information, and are subject to change or revision at any time.

The Bluetooth SIG maintains an online database of regulations that apply to Bluetooth technology in the 2.4 GHz ISM band, posted at <https://www.bluetooth.org/regulatory/newindex.cfm>.

### **Europe:**

Approval Standards: European Telecommunications Standards Institute, ETSI  
Documents: EN 300 328, EN 301 489, ETS 300-826

### **Japan:**

Approval Standards: Japanese Radio Law, JRL  
Documents: Japanese Radio Law: Article 4.3, Article 28, Article 29, Article 38

Radio Equipment Regulations: Article 5, Article 6, Article 7, Article 14,  
Article 24, Article 9.4, Article 49.20.1.C.2, Article 49.20.1.E.3

Radio Law Enforcement Regulations: Article 6.2, Article 6.4.4.1, Article 7

### **North America:**

Approval Standards: Federal Communications Commission, FCC, USA  
Documents: CFR47, Part 15: Sections 15.205, 15.209 and 15.247

Approval Standards: Industry Canada, IC, Canada  
Documents: RSS-210 and RSS139

---

1. Note that the transceiver defined in this Part does not meet the requirements for ‘frequency hopping’ in some governmental regulations. See the Bluetooth Low Energy Regulatory Aspects White Paper for more information.

**Taiwan:**

Approval Standards: National Communications Commission, NCC  
Documents: Low Power 0002 (LP0002); Low-power Radio-frequency Devices Technical Regulations

**South Korea:**

Approval Standards: Korea Communications Commission, KCC  
Documents: Rules on Radio Equipment 2008-116

**China:**

Approval Standards: Ministry of Industry and Information Technology, MIIT  
Documents: MIIT regulation [2002]353

## 2 FREQUENCY BANDS AND CHANNEL ARRANGEMENT

The LE system operates in the 2.4 GHz ISM band at 2400-2483.5 MHz. The LE system uses 40 RF channels. These RF channels have center frequencies  $2402 + k * 2$  MHz, where  $k = 0, \dots, 39$ .

Regulatory Range	RF Channels
2.400-2.4835 GHz	$f=2402+k*2$ MHz, $k=0, \dots, 39$

Table 2.1: Operating frequency bands

## 3 TRANSMITTER CHARACTERISTICS

The requirements stated in this section are given as power levels at the antenna connector of the LE device. If the device does not have a connector, a reference antenna with 0 dBi gain is assumed.

Due to the difficulty in making accurate radiated power measurements, systems with an integral antenna should provide a temporary antenna connector during LE RF qualification testing.

For a transmitter, the output power level at the maximum power setting shall be within the limits defined in [Table 3.1](#).

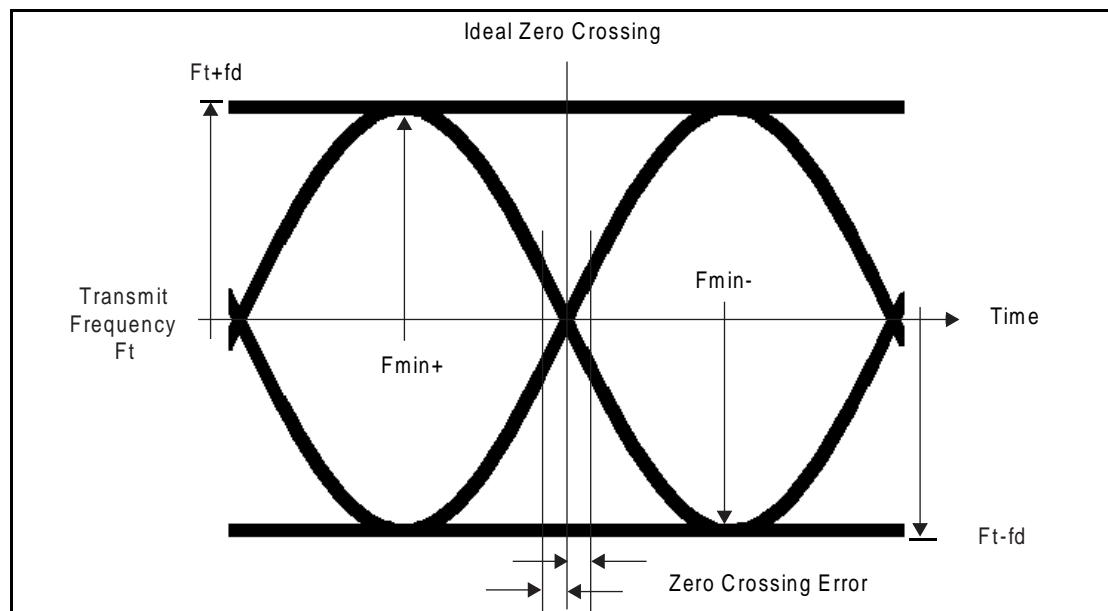
Minimum Output Power	Maximum Output Power
0.01 mW (-20 dBm)	10 mW (+10 dBm)

*Table 3.1: Transmission power*

The output power control of a device may be changed locally, for example to optimize the power consumption or reduce interference to other equipment.

### 3.1 MODULATION CHARACTERISTICS

The modulation is Gaussian Frequency Shift Keying (GFSK) with a bandwidth-bit period product  $BT=0.5$ . The modulation index shall be between 0.45 and 0.55. A binary one shall be represented by a positive frequency deviation, and a binary zero shall be represented by a negative frequency deviation.



*Figure 3.1: GFSK parameters definition*

For each transmission the minimum frequency deviation,

$$F_{\min} = \min \{ |F_{\min+}|, F_{\min-} \}$$

which corresponds to a 1010 sequence, shall be no smaller than  $\pm 80\%$  of the frequency deviation with respect to the transmit frequency, which corresponds to a 00001111 sequence.

In addition, the minimum frequency deviation shall never be less than 185 kHz. The data transmitted has a symbol rate of 1 mega-symbols per second. The symbol timing accuracy shall be better than  $\pm 50$  ppm.

The zero crossing error is the time difference between the ideal symbol period and the measured crossing time. This shall be less than  $\pm 1/8$  of a symbol period.

## 3.2 SPURIOUS EMISSIONS

### 3.2.1 Modulation Spectrum

For products intended to comply with FCC part 15.247 rules, the minimum 6 dB bandwidth of the transmitter spectrum shall be at least 500 kHz using a resolution bandwidth of 100 kHz.

### 3.2.2 In-band Spurious Emission

An adjacent channel power is specified for channels at least 2 MHz from the carrier. This adjacent channel power is defined as the sum of the measured power in a 1 MHz bandwidth.

The spectrum measurement shall be performed with a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth and an average detector. The device shall transmit on an RF Channel with the center frequency M and the adjacent channel power shall be measured on a 1 MHz RF frequency N. The transmitter shall transmit a pseudo random data pattern in the payload throughout the test.

Frequency offset	Spurious Power
2 MHz ( $ M-N  = 2$ )	-20 dBm
3 MHz or greater ( $ M-N  \geq 3$ )	-30 dBm

Table 3.2: Transmit Spectrum mask

Exceptions are allowed in up to three bands of 1 MHz width, centered on a frequency which is an integer multiple of 1 MHz. These exceptions shall have an absolute value of -20 dBm or less.

### 3.2.3 Out-of-band Spurious Emission

The equipment manufacturer is responsible for the ISM out-of-band spurious emissions requirements in the intended countries of sale.

## 3.3 RADIO FREQUENCY TOLERANCE

The deviation of the center frequency during the packet shall not exceed  $\pm 150$  kHz, including both the initial frequency offset and drift. The frequency drift during any packet shall be less than 50 kHz. The drift rate shall be less than 400 Hz/ $\mu$ s.

The limits on the transmitter center frequency drift within a packet is shown in [Table 3.3](#).

Parameter	Frequency Drift
Maximum drift	$\pm 50$ kHz
Maximum drift rate <sup>1</sup>	400 Hz/ $\mu$ s

*Table 3.3: Maximum allowable frequency drifts in a packet*

1. The maximum drift rate is allowed anywhere in a packet.

## 4 RECEIVER CHARACTERISTICS

---

The reference sensitivity level referred to in this chapter is -70 dBm. The packet error rate corresponding to the defined bit error ratio (BER) shall be used in all receiver characteristic measurements.

### 4.1 ACTUAL SENSITIVITY LEVEL

The actual sensitivity level is defined as the receiver input level for which a BER of 0.1% is achieved.

The actual sensitivity level of the receiver shall be less than or equal to -70 dBm with any transmitter compliant to the transmitter specification specified in [Section 3](#) together with any combination of the following allowed parameter variations:

- Initial frequency offset
- Frequency drift
- Symbol rate
- Frequency deviation

## 4.2 INTERFERENCE PERFORMANCE

The interference performance shall be measured with a wanted signal 3 dB over the reference sensitivity level. If the frequency of an interfering signal is outside of the band 2400-2483.5 MHz, the out-of-band blocking specification (see [Section 4.3](#)) shall apply. The measurement resolution shall be 1 MHz. Both the desired and the interfering signal shall be reference signals as specified in [Section 4.6](#). The BER shall be  $\leq 0.1\%$  for all the signal-to-interference ratios listed in [Table 4.1](#):

Frequency of Interference	Ratio
Co-Channel interference, $C/I_{co-channel}$	21 dB
Adjacent (1 MHz) interference <sup>1</sup> , $C/I_{1 \text{ MHz}}$	15 dB
Adjacent (2 MHz) interference <sup>1</sup> , $C/I_{2 \text{ MHz}}$	-17 dB
Adjacent ( $\geq 3$ MHz) interference <sup>1</sup> , $C/I_{\geq 3 \text{ MHz}}$	-27 dB
Image frequency Interference <sup>1 2 3</sup> , $C/I_{\text{Image}}$	-9 dB
Adjacent (1 MHz) interference to in-band image frequency <sup>1</sup> , $C/I_{\text{Image} \pm 1 \text{ MHz}}$	-15 dB

*Table 4.1: Interference performance*

1. If two adjacent frequency specifications from [Table 4.1](#) are applicable to the same frequency, the more relaxed specification applies.
2. In-band image frequency
3. If the image frequency  $\neq n*1$  MHz, then the image reference frequency is defined as the closest  $n*1$  MHz frequency for integer  $n$ .

Any frequencies where the requirements are not met are called spurious response RF channels. Five spurious response RF channels are allowed with a distance of  $\geq 2$  MHz from the wanted signal excluding the image frequency and the image frequency  $\pm 1$  MHz. On these spurious response RF channels, a relaxed interference requirement  $C/I = -17$  dB shall be met.

## 4.3 OUT-OF-BAND BLOCKING

The out-of-band blocking applies to interfering signals outside the band 2400-2483.5 MHz. The out-of-band suppression (or rejection) shall be measured with a wanted signal 3 dB over the reference sensitivity level. The interfering signal shall be a continuous wave signal. The desired signal shall be a reference signal as specified in [Section 4.6](#), with a center frequency of 2426 MHz. The BER shall be  $\leq 0.1\%$ . The out-of-band blocking shall fulfill the following requirements:

Interfering Signal Frequency	Interfering Signal Power Level	Measurement resolution
30 MHz – 2000 MHz	-30 dBm	10 MHz
2003 – 2399 MHz	-35 dBm	3 MHz
2484 – 2997 MHz	-35 dBm	3 MHz
3000 MHz – 12.75 GHz	-30 dBm	25 MHz

*Table 4.2: Out-of-band suppression (or rejection) requirements*

Up to 10 exceptions are permitted, which are dependent upon the given RF channel and are centered at a frequency which is an integer multiple of 1 MHz:

- For at least 7 of these spurious response frequencies, a reduced interference level of at least -50 dBm is allowed in order to achieve the required BER  $\leq 0.1\%$ .
- For a maximum of 3 of the spurious response frequencies, the interference level may be lower.

## 4.4 INTERMODULATION CHARACTERISTICS

The actual sensitivity performance, BER  $\leq 0.1\%$ , shall be met under the following conditions:

- The wanted signal shall be at a frequency  $f_0$  with a power level 6 dB over the reference sensitivity level. The wanted signal shall be a reference signal as specified in [Section 4.6](#).
- A static sine wave signal shall be at a frequency  $f_1$  with a power level of -50 dBm.
- An interfering signal shall be at a frequency  $f_2$  with a power level of -50 dBm. The interfering signal shall be a reference signal as specified in [Section 4.6](#).

Frequencies  $f_0$ ,  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  shall be chosen such that  $f_0 = 2*f_1 - f_2$  and  $|f_2-f_1| = n * 1 \text{ MHz}$ , where  $n$  can be 3, 4, or 5. The system shall fulfill at least one of the three alternatives ( $n=3, 4, \text{ or } 5$ ).

## 4.5 MAXIMUM USABLE LEVEL

The maximum usable input level the receiver can operate at shall be greater than -10 dBm, and the BER shall be less than or equal to 0.1% at -10 dBm input power. The input signal shall be a reference signal as specified in [Section 4.6](#).

## 4.6 REFERENCE SIGNAL DEFINITION

A reference signal is defined as:

Modulation = GFSK

Modulation index =  $0.5 \pm 1\%$

BT =  $0.5 \pm 1\%$

Bit Rate = 1 Mbps  $\pm 1$  ppm

Modulating Data for wanted signal = PRBS9

Modulating Data for interfering signal = PRBS15

Frequency accuracy better than  $\pm 1$  ppm

## 5 APPENDIX A

---

### 5.1 NORMAL OPERATING CONDITIONS (NOC)

#### 5.1.1 Normal Temperature and Air Humidity

The normal operating temperature shall be declared by the product manufacturer. The nominal test temperature shall be within  $\pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$  of the normal operating temperature. The nominal operating temperature  $\pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$  shall not exceed the extreme limits stated in [Section 5.2.1](#).

Operating air humidity range shall be declared by the product manufacturer. The air humidity level for the nominal test condition tests shall be within the declared NOC range.

#### 5.1.2 Nominal Supply Voltage

The nominal test voltage for the equipment under normal test conditions shall be the nominal supply voltage as declared by the product manufacturer.

## 5.2 EXTREME OPERATING CONDITIONS (EOC)

#### 5.2.1 Extreme Temperature And Air Humidity

The extreme temperature limits are defined as the minimum and maximum temperatures of the operating temperature range declared by the product manufacturer.

For the extreme test condition, the air humidity shall be at a level within the operating air humidity range declared by the product manufacturer (see [Section 5.1.1](#)).

#### 5.2.2 Extreme Supply Voltage

The extreme supply voltages are dependent on the characteristics of the product's power supply.

If the product is designed to be operated as a part of another system or a portion of a product, the extreme voltage limits for this product or system shall be used.

The applicable upper and lower extreme supply voltages shall be declared by the product manufacturer.

## 6 APPENDIX B - OPERATING CONDITIONS

The LE radio parameters shall be compliant in the following conditions.

Parameter	Temperature	Power supply
Output power	EOC	EOC
In-band emissions	EOC	EOC
Modulation characteristics	NOC	NOC
Carrier frequency offset and drift	EOC	EOC
Receiver sensitivity	EOC	EOC
C/I and selectivity performance	NOC	NOC
Blocking performance	NOC	NOC
Intermodulation performance	NOC	NOC
Maximum input signal level	NOC	NOC

EOC = Extreme Operating Conditions

NOC = Normal Operating Conditions

Note: Validation of the LE receiver parameters is performed using the Direct Test Mode (see [\[Vol. 6\], Part F](#)).



Core System Package [Low Energy Controller volume]

Part B

## LINK LAYER SPECIFICATION

*This part of the specification describes  
the Bluetooth low energy Link Layer.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>General Description .....</b>	<b>32</b>
1.1	Link Layer States.....	32
1.1.1	State and Role Combination Restrictions.....	33
1.2	Bit Ordering .....	34
1.3	Device Address .....	34
1.4	Physical Channel .....	35
1.4.1	Advertising and Data Channel Indices .....	36
<b>2</b>	<b>Air Interface Packets.....</b>	<b>37</b>
2.1	Packet Format.....	37
2.1.1	Preamble .....	37
2.1.2	Access Address.....	37
2.1.3	PDU .....	38
2.1.4	CRC.....	38
2.2	Reserved for Future Use (RFU).....	38
2.3	Advertising Channel PDU .....	38
2.3.1	Advertising PDUs .....	40
2.3.1.1	ADV_IND .....	40
2.3.1.2	ADV_DIRECT_IND .....	40
2.3.1.3	ADV_NONCONN_IND .....	41
2.3.1.4	ADV_SCAN_IND .....	41
2.3.2	Scanning PDUs .....	42
2.3.2.1	SCAN_REQ .....	42
2.3.2.2	SCAN_RSP .....	42
2.3.3	Initiating PDUs.....	43
2.3.3.1	CONNECT_REQ .....	43
2.4	Data Channel PDU .....	45
2.4.1	LL Data PDU .....	46
2.4.2	LL Control PDU .....	46
2.4.2.1	LL_CONNECTION_UPDATE_REQ .....	48
2.4.2.2	LL_CHANNEL_MAP_REQ .....	48
2.4.2.3	LL_TERMINATE_IND .....	49
2.4.2.4	LL_ENC_REQ .....	49
2.4.2.5	LL_ENC_RSP .....	49
2.4.2.6	LL_START_ENC_REQ .....	50
2.4.2.7	LL_START_ENC_RSP .....	50
2.4.2.8	LL_UNKNOWN_RSP .....	50
2.4.2.9	LL_FEATURE_REQ.....	50
2.4.2.10	LL_FEATURE_RSP .....	51
2.4.2.11	LL_PAUSE_ENC_REQ.....	51
2.4.2.12	LL_PAUSE_ENC_RSP .....	51

2.4.2.13	LL_VERSION_IND .....	51
2.4.2.14	LL_REJECT_IND .....	52
2.4.2.15	LL_SLAVE_FEATURE_REQ .....	52
2.4.2.16	LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_REQ .....	52
2.4.2.17	LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_RSP .....	53
2.4.2.18	LL_REJECT_IND_EXT .....	55
2.4.2.19	LL_PING_REQ .....	55
2.4.2.20	LL_PING_RSP .....	55
<b>3</b>	<b>Bit Stream Processing.....</b>	<b>56</b>
3.1	Error Checking .....	56
3.1.1	CRC Generation.....	56
3.2	Data Whitening .....	57
<b>4</b>	<b>Air Interface Protocol .....</b>	<b>58</b>
4.1	Inter Frame Space .....	58
4.2	Timing Requirements .....	58
4.2.1	Active Clock Accuracy.....	58
4.2.2	Sleep Clock Accuracy .....	58
4.3	Link Layer Device Filtering .....	58
4.3.1	White List .....	59
4.3.2	Advertising Filter Policy .....	59
4.3.3	Scanner Filter Policy .....	60
4.3.4	Initiator Filter Policy .....	60
4.4	Non-Connected States.....	60
4.4.1	Standby State .....	60
4.4.2	Advertising State .....	60
4.4.2.1	Advertising Channel Selection.....	62
4.4.2.2	Advertising Interval .....	62
4.4.2.3	Connectable Undirected Event Type .....	62
4.4.2.4	Connectable Directed Event Type .....	64
4.4.2.5	Scannable Undirected Event Type .....	67
4.4.2.6	Non-connectable Undirected Event Type .....	68
4.4.3	Scanning State .....	69
4.4.3.1	Passive Scanning .....	70
4.4.3.2	Active Scanning .....	70
4.4.4	Initiating State.....	71
4.5	Connection State .....	71
4.5.1	Connection Events .....	72
4.5.2	Supervision Timeout .....	73
4.5.3	Connection Event Transmit Window .....	73
4.5.4	Connection Setup – Master Role .....	74
4.5.5	Connection Setup – Slave Role .....	75

4.5.6	Closing Connection Events .....	76
4.5.7	Window Widening.....	77
4.5.8	Data Channel Index Selection.....	78
4.5.8.1	Channel Classification .....	78
4.5.8.2	Channel Selection.....	78
4.5.9	Acknowledgement and Flow Control.....	79
4.5.9.1	Flow Control.....	81
4.6	Feature Support .....	81
4.6.1	LE Encryption .....	81
4.6.2	Connection Parameters Request Procedure.....	82
4.6.3	Extended Reject Indication.....	82
4.6.4	Slave-initiated Features Exchange.....	82
4.6.5	LE Ping .....	82
<b>5</b>	<b>Link Layer Control .....</b>	<b>83</b>
5.1	Link Layer Control Procedures.....	83
5.1.1	Connection Update Procedure .....	83
5.1.2	Channel Map Update Procedure .....	85
5.1.3	Encryption Procedure.....	87
5.1.3.1	Encryption Start Procedure .....	87
5.1.3.2	Encryption Pause Procedure .....	89
5.1.4	Feature Exchange Procedure .....	90
5.1.4.1	Master-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure .....	91
5.1.4.2	Slave-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure .....	91
5.1.5	Version Exchange .....	92
5.1.6	Termination Procedure .....	93
5.1.7	Connection Parameters Request Procedure.....	93
5.1.7.1	Issuing an LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_REQ PDU .....	93
5.1.7.2	Responding to LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_REQ and LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_RSP PDUs .....	94
5.1.7.3	Examples .....	96
5.1.8	LE Ping Procedure .....	102
5.2	Procedure Response Timeout .....	102
5.3	Procedure Collisions .....	103
5.4	LE Authenticated Payload Timeout.....	103

## 1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

---

### 1.1 LINK LAYER STATES

The operation of the Link Layer can be described in terms of a state machine with the following five states:

- Standby State
- Advertising State
- Scanning State
- Initiating State
- Connection State

The Link Layer state machine allows only one state to be active at a time. The Link Layer shall have at least one Link Layer state machine that supports one of Advertising State or Scanning State. The Link Layer may have multiple instances of the Link Layer state machine. Certain combinations of states and roles within multiple state machines in the Link Layer are prohibited (see [Section 1.1.1](#)).

The Link Layer in the Standby State does not transmit or receive any packets. The Standby State can be entered from any other state.

The Link Layer in the Advertising State will be transmitting advertising channel packets and possibly listening to and responding to responses triggered by these advertising channel packets. A device in the Advertising State is known as an advertiser. The Advertising State can be entered from the Standby State.

The Link Layer in the Scanning State will be listening for advertising channel packets from devices that are advertising. A device in the Scanning State is known as a scanner. The Scanning State can be entered from the Standby State.

The Link Layer in the Initiating State will be listening for advertising channel packets from a specific device(s) and responding to these packets to initiate a connection with another device. A device in the Initiating State is known as an initiator. The Initiating State can be entered from the Standby State.

The Connection State can be entered either from the Initiating State or the Advertising State. A device in the Connection State is known as being in a connection.

Within the Connection State, two roles are defined:

- Master Role
- Slave Role

When entered from the Initiating State, the Connection State shall be in the Master Role. When entered from the Advertising State, the Connection State shall be in the Slave Role.

The Link Layer in the Master Role will communicate with a device in the Slave Role and defines the timings of transmissions.

The Link Layer in the Slave Role will communicate with a single device in the Master Role.

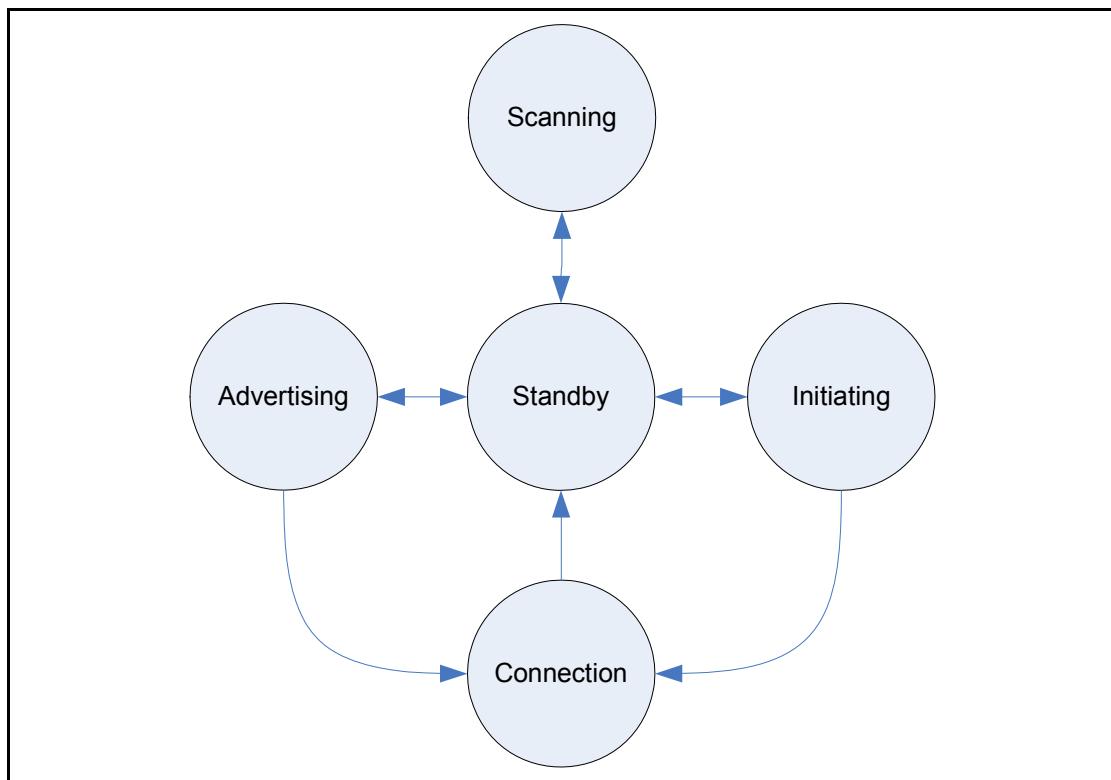


Figure 1.1: State diagram of the Link Layer state machine

### 1.1.1 State and Role Combination Restrictions

The Link Layer may optionally support multiple state machines. If it does support multiple state machines, then:

- The Link Layer in the Connection State may operate in the Master Role and Slave Role at the same time.
- The Link Layer in the Connection State operating in the Slave Role may have multiple connections.
- The Link Layer in the Connection State operating in the Master Role may have multiple connections.
- All other combinations of states and roles may also be supported.

A Link Layer implementation is not required to support all the possible state combinations that are allowed by this specification.

## 1.2 BIT ORDERING

The bit ordering when defining fields within the packet or Protocol Data Unit (PDU) in the Link Layer specification follows the Little Endian format. The following rules apply:

- The Least Significant Bit (LSB) corresponds to  $b_0$
- The LSB is the first bit sent over the air
- In illustrations, the LSB is shown on the left side

Furthermore, data fields defined in the Link Layer, such as the PDU header fields, shall be transmitted with the LSB first. For instance, a 3-bit parameter  $X=3$  is sent as:

$$b_0 b_1 b_2 = 110$$

Over the air, 1 is sent first, 1 is sent next, and 0 is sent last. This is shown as 110 in the specification.

Binary field values specified in this specification that follow the format 10101010b (e.g., pre-amble in [Section 2.1.1](#) or advertising channel Access Address in [Section 2.1.2](#)) are written with the MSB to the left.

Multi-octet fields, with the exception of the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and the Message Integrity Check (MIC), shall be transmitted with the least significant octet first. Each octet within multi-octet fields, with the exception of the CRC (see [Section 3.1.1](#)), shall be transmitted in LSB first order. For example, the 48-bit addresses in the advertising channel PDUs shall be transmitted with the least significant octet first, followed by the remainder of the five octets in increasing order.

Multi-octet field values specified in this specification (e.g. the CRC initial value in [Section 2.3.3.1](#)) are written with the most significant octet to the left; for example in 0x112233445566, the octet 0x11 is the most significant octet.

## 1.3 DEVICE ADDRESS

Devices are identified using a device address. Device addresses may be either a public device address or a random device address. A public device address and a random device address are both 48 bits in length. See [\[Vol. 3\] Part C, Section 10.8](#).

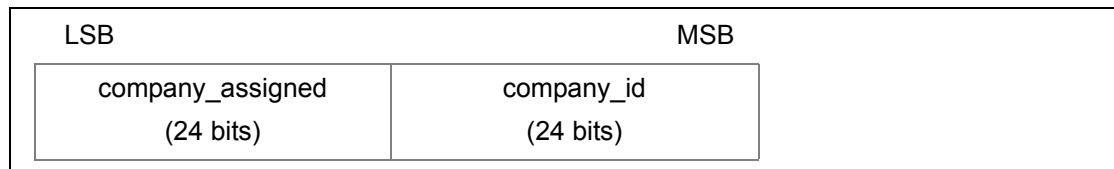
A device shall use at least one type of device address and may contain both.

The public device address shall be created in accordance with section 9.2 ("48-bit universal LAN MAC addresses") of the IEEE 802-2001 standard (<http://standards.ieee.org/getieee802/download/802-2001.pdf>) and using a valid Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) obtained from the IEEE Registration Authority

(see <http://standards.ieee.org/regauth/oui/forms/> and sections 9 and 9.1 of the IEEE 802-2001 specification).

The public device address is divided into the following two fields:

- company\_assigned field is contained in the 24 least significant bits
- company\_id field is contained in the 24 most significant bits



*Figure 1.2: Format of public device address*

## 1.4 PHYSICAL CHANNEL

As specified in [Part A, Section 2](#), 40 RF Channels are defined in the 2.4GHz ISM band. These RF Channels are allocated into two LE physical channels: advertising and data. The advertising physical channel uses three RF channels for discovering devices, initiating a connection and broadcasting data. The data physical channel uses up to 37 (see [Section 4.5.8](#)) RF channels for communication between connected devices. Each of these RF Channels is allocated a unique channel index (see [Section 1.4.1](#)).

Two devices that wish to communicate use a shared physical channel. To achieve this, their transceivers must be tuned to the same RF Channel at the same time.

Given that the number of RF Channels is limited, and that many Bluetooth devices may be operating independently within the same spatial and temporal area, there is a strong likelihood of two independent Bluetooth devices having their transceivers tuned to the same RF Channel, resulting in a physical channel collision. To mitigate the unwanted effects of this collision, each transmission on a physical channel starts with an Access Address that is used as a correlation code by devices tuned to the physical channel. This Access Address is a property of the physical channel. The Access Address is present at the start of every transmitted packet.

The Link Layer uses one physical channel at a given time.

Whenever the Link Layer is synchronized to the timing, frequency and Access Address of a physical channel it is said to be 'connected' to this channel (whether or not it is actively involved in communications over the channel).

### 1.4.1 Advertising and Data Channel Indices

**Table 1.1** shows the mapping from RF Channel to Data Channel Index and Advertising Channel Index. It also shows the allocation of channel type to each RF Channel.

RF Channel	RF Center Frequency	Channel Type	Data Channel Index	Advertising Channel Index
0	2402 MHz	Advertising channel		37
1	2404 MHz	Data channel	0	
2	2406 MHz	Data channel	1	
...	...	Data channels	...	
11	2424 MHz	Data channel	10	
12	2426 MHz	Advertising channel		38
13	2428 MHz	Data channel	11	
14	2430 MHz	Data channel	12	
...	...	Data channels	...	
38	2478 MHz	Data channel	36	
39	2480 MHz	Advertising channel		39

*Table 1.1: Mapping of RF Channel to Data Channel Index and Advertising Channel Index*

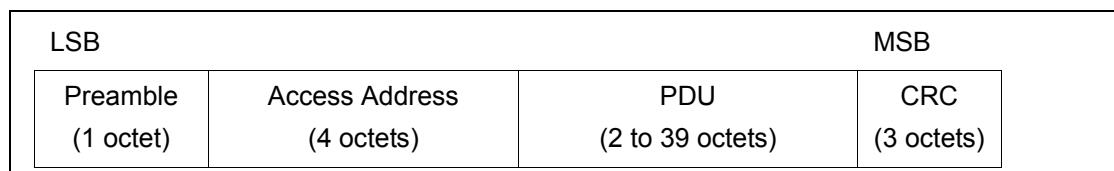
## 2 AIR INTERFACE PACKETS

LE devices shall use the packets as defined in the following sections.

### 2.1 PACKET FORMAT

The Link Layer has only one packet format used for both advertising channel packets and data channel packets.

The packet format is shown in [Figure 2.1](#). Each packet consists of four fields: the preamble, the Access Address, the PDU, and the CRC.



*Figure 2.1: Link Layer packet format*

The preamble is 1 octet and the Access Address is 4 octets. The PDU range is from 2 to a maximum of 39 octets. The CRC is 3 octets.

The Preamble is transmitted first, followed by the Access Address, followed by the PDU followed by the CRC.

The shortest packet is 80 bits in length. The longest packet is 376 bits in length.

#### 2.1.1 Preamble

All Link Layer packets have an eight bit preamble. The preamble is used in the receiver to perform frequency synchronization, symbol timing estimation, and Automatic Gain Control (AGC) training.

Advertising channel packets shall have 10101010b as the preamble.

The data channel packet preamble is either 10101010b or 01010101b, depending on the LSB of the Access Address. If the LSB of the Access Address is 1, the preamble shall be 01010101b, otherwise the preamble shall be 10101010b.

#### 2.1.2 Access Address

The Access Address for all advertising channel packets shall be 100011010001001101111011010110b (0x8E89BED6).

The Access Address in data channel packets shall be different for each Link Layer connection between any two devices with certain restrictions as defined below. The Access Address shall be a random 32-bit value, generated by the

device in the Initiating State and sent in a connection request as defined in [Section 2.3.3.1](#). The initiator shall ensure that the Access Address meets the following requirements:

- It shall have no more than six consecutive zeros or ones.
- It shall not be the advertising channel packets' Access Address.
- It shall not be a sequence that differs from the advertising channel packets' Access Address by only one bit.
- It shall not have all four octets equal.
- It shall have no more than 24 transitions.
- It shall have a minimum of two transitions in the most significant six bits.

### 2.1.3 PDU

The preamble and Access Address are followed by a PDU.

When a packet is transmitted in an advertising physical channel, the PDU shall be the Advertising Channel PDU as defined in [Section 2.3](#). When a packet is transmitted in a data physical channel, the PDU shall be the Data Channel PDU as defined in [Section 2.4](#).

### 2.1.4 CRC

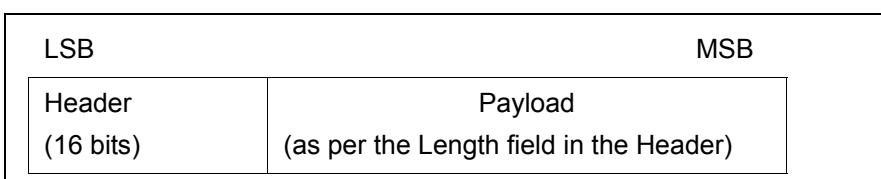
At the end of every Link Layer packet there is a 24-bit CRC. It shall be calculated over the PDU. The CRC polynomial is defined in [Section 3.1.1](#).

## 2.2 RESERVED FOR FUTURE USE (RFU)

Any field marked as RFU is reserved for future use. It shall be set to zero on transmission and ignored upon receipt.

## 2.3 ADVERTISING CHANNEL PDU

The advertising channel PDU has a 16-bit header and a variable size payload. Its format is as shown in [Figure 2.2](#). The 16 bit Header field of the advertising channel PDU is as shown in [Figure 2.3](#).



*Figure 2.2: Advertising channel PDU*

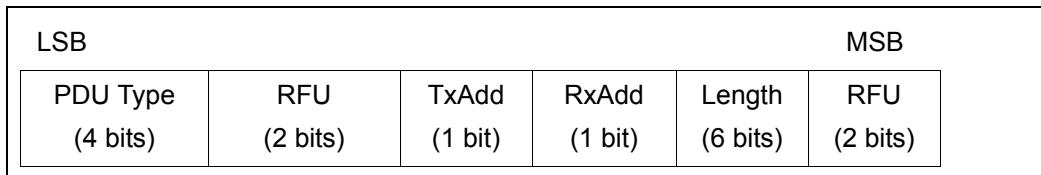


Figure 2.3: Advertising channel PDU Header

The PDU Type field of the advertising channel PDU that is contained in the header indicates the PDU type as defined in [Table 2.1](#).

The TxAdd and RxAdd fields of the advertising channel PDU that are contained in the header contain information specific to the PDU type defined for each advertising channel PDU separately. If the TxAdd or RxAdd fields are not defined as used in a given PDU then they shall be considered Reserved for Future Use.

The Length field of the advertising channel PDU header indicates the payload field length in octets. The valid range of the Length field shall be 6 to 37 octets.

The Payload fields in the advertising channel PDUs are specific to the PDU Type and are defined in [Section 2.3.1](#) through [Section 2.3.3](#). The PDU Types marked as Reserved shall not be sent and shall be ignored upon receipt.

Within advertising channel PDUs, Advertising Data from the Host may be included in the Payload in some PDU Types. The format of this data is defined in [\[Vol. 3\] Part C, Section 17](#).

PDU Type $b_3b_2b_1b_0$	Packet Name
0000	ADV_IND
0001	ADV_DIRECT_IND
0010	ADV_NONCONN_IND
0011	SCAN_REQ
0100	SCAN_RSP
0101	CONNECT_REQ
0110	ADV_SCAN_IND
0111-1111	Reserved

Table 2.1: Advertising channel PDU Header's PDU Type field encoding

### 2.3.1 Advertising PDUs

The following advertising channel PDU Types are called advertising PDUs and are used in the specified events:

- ADV\_IND: connectable undirected advertising event
- ADV\_DIRECT\_IND: connectable directed advertising event
- ADV\_NONCONN\_IND: non-connectable undirected advertising event
- ADV\_SCAN\_IND: scannable undirected advertising event

These PDUs are sent by the Link Layer in the Advertising State and received by a Link Layer in the Scanning State or Initiating State.

#### 2.3.1.1 ADV\_IND

The ADV\_IND PDU has the Payload as shown in [Figure 2.4](#). The PDU shall be used in connectable undirected advertising events. The TxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the advertiser's address in the AdvA field is public (TxAdd = 0) or random (TxAdd = 1).

Payload	
AdvA (6 octets)	AdvData (0-31 octets)

*Figure 2.4: ADV\_IND PDU Payload*

The Payload field consists of AdvA and AdvData fields. The AdvA field shall contain the advertiser's public or random device address as indicated by TxAdd. The AdvData field may contain Advertising Data from the advertiser's Host.

#### 2.3.1.2 ADV\_DIRECT\_IND

The ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDU has the Payload as shown in [Figure 2.5](#). The PDU shall be used in connectable directed advertising events. The TxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the advertiser's address in the AdvA field is public (TxAdd = 0) or random (TxAdd = 1). The RxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the initiator's address in the InitA field is public (RxAdd = 0) or random (RxAdd = 1).

Payload	
AdvA (6 octets)	InitA (6 octets)

*Figure 2.5: ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDU Payload*

The Payload field consists of AdvA and InitA fields. The AdvA field shall contain the advertiser's public or random device address as indicated by TxAdd. The

InitA field is the address of the device to which this PDU is addressed. The InitA field shall contain the initiator's public or random device address as indicated by RxAdd.

Note: This packet does not contain any Host data.

### 2.3.1.3 ADV\_NONCONN\_IND

The ADV\_NONCONN\_IND PDU has the Payload as shown in [Figure 2.6](#). The PDU shall be used in non-connectable undirected advertising events. The TxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the advertiser's address in the AdvA field is public (TxAdd = 0) or random (TxAdd = 1).

Payload	
AdvA (6 octets)	AdvData (0-31 octets)

*Figure 2.6: ADV\_NONCONN\_IND PDU Payload*

The Payload field consists of AdvA and AdvData fields. The AdvA field shall contain the advertiser's public or random device address as indicated by TxAdd. The AdvData field may contain Advertising Data from the advertiser's Host.

### 2.3.1.4 ADV\_SCAN\_IND<sup>1</sup>

The ADV\_SCAN\_IND PDU has the Payload as shown in [Figure 2.7](#). The PDU shall be used in scannable undirected advertising events. The TxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the advertiser's address in the AdvA field is public (TxAdd = 0) or random (TxAdd = 1).

Payload	
AdvA (6 octets)	AdvData (0-31 octets)

*Figure 2.7: ADV\_SCAN\_IND PDU Payload*

The Payload field consists of AdvA and AdvData fields. The AdvA field shall contain the advertiser's public or random device address as indicated by TxAdd. The AdvData field may contain Advertising Data from the advertiser's Host.

---

1. ADV\_DISCOVER\_IND was renamed to ADV\_SCAN\_IND

### 2.3.2 Scanning PDUs

The following advertising channel PDU Types are called scanning PDUs. They are used in the following states:

- SCAN\_REQ: sent by the Link Layer in the Scanning State, received by a Link Layer in the Advertising State
- SCAN\_RSP: sent by the Link Layer in the Advertising State, received by a Link Layer in the Scanning State

#### 2.3.2.1 SCAN\_REQ

The SCAN\_REQ PDU has the Payload as shown in [Figure 2.8](#). The TxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the scanner's address in the ScanA field is public (TxAdd = 0) or random (TxAdd = 1). The RxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the advertiser's address in the AdvA field is public (RxAdd = 0) or random (RxAdd = 1).

Payload	
ScanA (6 octets)	AdvA (6 octets)

Figure 2.8: SCAN\_REQ PDU Payload

The Payload field consists of ScanA and AdvA fields. The ScanA field shall contain the scanner's public or random device address as indicated by TxAdd. The AdvA field is the address of the device to which this PDU is addressed. The AdvA field shall contain the advertiser's public or random device address as indicated by RxAdd.

Note: This packet does not contain any Host Data.

#### 2.3.2.2 SCAN\_RSP

The SCAN\_RSP PDU has a format as shown in [Figure 2.9](#). The TxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the advertiser's address in the AdvA field is public (TxAdd = 0) or random (TxAdd = 1). The Length field indicates the size of the payload (AdvA and ScanRspData) in octets.

Payload	
AdvA (6 octets)	ScanRspData (0-31 octets)

Figure 2.9: SCAN\_RSP PDU payload

The Payload field consists of AdvA and ScanRspData fields. The AdvA field shall contain the advertiser's public or random device address as indicated by TxAdd. The ScanRspData field may contain any data from the advertiser's Host.

### 2.3.3 Initiating PDUs

The following advertising channel PDU Type is called the initiating PDU:

- CONNECT\_REQ

This PDU is sent by the Link Layer in the Initiating State and received by the Link Layer in the Advertising State.

#### 2.3.3.1 CONNECT\_REQ

The CONNECT\_REQ PDU has the Payload as shown in [Figure 2.10](#). TxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the initiator's device address in the InitA field is public (TxAdd = 0) or random (TxAdd = 1). The RxAdd in the Flags field indicates whether the advertiser's device address in the AdvA field is public (RxAdd = 0) or random (RxAdd = 1).

Payload		
InitA (6 octets)	AdvA (6 octets)	LLData (22 octets)

*Figure 2.10: CONNECT\_REQ PDU payload*

The format of the LLData field is shown in [Figure 2.11](#).

LLData									
AA (4 octets)	CRCInit (3 octets)	WinSize (1 octet)	WinOffset (2 octets)	Interval (2 octets)	Latency (2 octets)	Timeout (2 octets)	ChM (5 octets)	Hop (5 bits)	SCA (3 bits)

*Figure 2.11: LLData field structure in CONNECT\_REQ PDU's payload*

The Payload field consists of InitA, AdvA and LLData fields. The InitA field shall contain the Initiator's public or random device address as indicated by TxAdd. The AdvA field shall contain the advertiser's public or random device address as indicated by RxAdd.

The LLData consists of 10 fields:

- The AA field shall contain the Link Layer connection's Access Address determined by the Link Layer following the rules specified in [Section 2.1.2](#).
- The CRCInit field shall contain the initialization value for the CRC calculation for the Link Layer connection, as defined in [Section 3.1.1](#). It shall be a random value, generated by the Link Layer.
- The WinSize field shall be set to indicate the *transmitWindowSize* value, as defined in [Section 4.5.3](#) in the following manner: *transmitWindowSize* = WinSize \* 1.25 ms.

- The WinOffset field shall be set to indicate the *transmitWindowOffset* value, as defined in [Section 4.5.3](#) in the following manner:  $transmitWindowOffset = WinOffset * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ .
- The Interval field shall be set to indicate the *connInterval* as defined in [Section 4.5.1](#) in the following manner:  $connInterval = \text{Interval} * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ .
- The Latency field shall be set to indicate the *connSlaveLatency* value, as defined in [Section 4.5.1](#) in the following manner:  $connSlaveLatency = \text{Latency}$ .
- The Timeout field shall be set to indicate the *connSupervisionTimeout* value, as defined in [Section 4.5.2](#), in the following manner:  $connSupervisionTimeout = \text{Timeout} * 10 \text{ ms}$ .
- The ChM field shall contain the channel map indicating *Used* and *Unused* data channels. Every channel is represented with a bit positioned as per the data channel index as defined in [Section 1.4.1](#). The LSB represents data channel index 0 and the bit in position 36 represents data channel index 36. A bit value of '0' indicates that the channel is *Unused*. A bit value of '1' indicates that the channel is *Used*. The bits in positions 37, 38 and 39 are Reserved for Future Use. Note: When mapping from RF Channels to data channel index, care should be taken to remember that there is a gap where the second advertising channel is placed.
- The Hop field shall be set to indicate the *hopIncrement* used in the data channel selection algorithm as defined in [Section 4.5.8.2](#). It shall have a random value in the range of 5 to 16.
- The SCA field shall be set to indicate the *masterSCA* used to determine the worst case Master's sleep clock accuracy as defined in [Section 4.2.2](#). The value of the SCA field shall be set as defined in [Table 2.2](#).

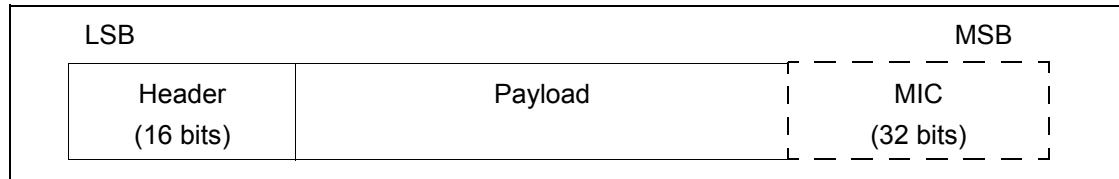
SCA	<i>masterSCA</i>
0	251 ppm to 500 ppm
1	151 ppm to 250 ppm
2	101 ppm to 150 ppm
3	76 ppm to 100 ppm
4	51 ppm to 75 ppm
5	31 ppm to 50 ppm
6	21 ppm to 30 ppm
7	0 ppm to 20 ppm

Table 2.2: SCA field encoding

## 2.4 DATA CHANNEL PDU

The Data Channel PDU has a 16 bit header, a variable size payload, and may include a Message Integrity Check (MIC) field.

The Data Channel PDU is as shown in [Figure 2.12](#).



*Figure 2.12: Data Channel PDU*

The Header field of the Data Channel PDU is as shown in [Figure 2.13](#).

Header						
LLID (2 bits)	NESN (1 bit)	SN (1 bit)	MD (1 bit)	RFU (3 bits)	Length (5 bits)	RFU (3 bits)

*Figure 2.13: Data channel PDU header*

The 16 bit Header field consists of 5 fields that are specified in [Table 2.3](#).

The MIC field shall not be included in an un-encrypted Link Layer connection, or in an encrypted Link Layer connection with a data channel PDU with a zero length Payload.

The MIC field shall be included in an encrypted Link Layer connection, with a data channel PDU with a non-zero length Payload and shall be calculated as specified in [\[Vol. 6\] Part E, Section 1](#).

The payload format depends on the LLID field of the Header. If the LLID field is 01b or 10b, the Data Channel PDU Payload field contains an LL Data PDU as defined in [Section 2.4.1](#). If the LLID field is 11b then the Data Channel PDU Payload field contains an LL Control PDU as defined in [Section 2.4.2](#). An LLID field of 00b is reserved.

The NESN bit of the Header is defined in [Section 4.5.9](#).

The SN bit of the Header is defined in [Section 4.5.9](#).

The MD bit of the Header is defined in [Section 4.5.6](#).

The Length field of the Header indicates the length of the Payload and MIC if included. The length field has the range of 0 to 31 octets. The Payload field shall be less than or equal to 27 octets in length. The MIC is 4 octets in length.

Field name	Description
<b>LLID</b>	The LLID indicates whether the packet is an LL Data PDU or an LL Control PDU. 00b = Reserved 01b = LL Data PDU: Continuation fragment of an L2CAP message, or an Empty PDU. 10b = LL Data PDU: Start of an L2CAP message or a complete L2CAP message with no fragmentation. 11b = LL Control PDU
<b>NESN</b>	Next Expected Sequence Number
<b>SN</b>	Sequence Number
<b>MD</b>	More Data
<b>Length</b>	The Length field indicates the size, in octets, of the Payload and MIC, if included.

Table 2.3: Data channel PDU Header field

#### 2.4.1 LL Data PDU

An LL Data PDU is a data channel PDU that is used to send L2CAP data. The LLID field in the Header shall be set to either 01b or 10b.

An LL Data PDU with the LLID field in the Header set to 01b, and the Length field set to 00000b, is known as an Empty PDU. The master's Link Layer may send an Empty PDU to the slave to allow the slave to respond with any Data Channel PDU, including an Empty PDU.

An LL Data PDU with the LLID field in the Header set to 10b shall not have the Length field set to 00000b.

#### 2.4.2 LL Control PDU

An LL Control PDU is a Data Channel PDU that is used to control the Link Layer connection.

The LL Control PDU Payload is as shown in [Figure 2.14](#).

Payload	
Opcode (1 octet)	CtrData (0 – 26 octets)

Figure 2.14: LL control PDU payload

An LL Control PDU shall not have the Length field set to 00000b. All LL Control PDUs have a fixed length, depending on the Opcode.

The Payload field consists of Opcode and CtrData fields.

The Opcode field identifies different types of LL Control PDU, as defined in [Table 2.4](#).

The CtrData field in the LL Control PDU is specified by the Opcode field and is defined in [Section 2.4.2.1](#) through [Section 2.4.2.14](#).

Opcode	Control PDU Name
0x00	LL_CONNECTION_UPDATE_REQ
0x01	LL_CHANNEL_MAP_REQ
0x02	LL_TERMINATE_IND
0x03	LL_ENC_REQ
0x04	LL_ENC_RSP
0x05	LL_START_ENC_REQ
0x06	LL_START_ENC_RSP
0x07	LL_UNKNOWN_RSP
0x08	LL_FEATURE_REQ
0x09	LL_FEATURE_RSP
0x0A	LL_PAUSE_ENC_REQ
0x0B	LL_PAUSE_ENC_RSP
0x0C	LL_VERSION_IND
0x0D	LL_REJECT_IND
0x0E	LL_SLAVE_FEATURE_REQ
0x0F	LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_REQ
0x10	LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_RSP
0x11	LL_REJECT_IND_EXT
0x12	LL_PING_REQ
0x13	LL_PING_RSP
0x14-0xFF	Reserved for Future Use

*Table 2.4: LL Control PDU Opcodes*

If an LL Control PDU is received that is not used or not supported, the Link Layer shall respond with an LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP PDU. The UnknownType field of the LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP PDU shall be set to the value of the not used or not supported Opcode.

If an LL Control PDU is received with an invalid Opcode, i.e. the Opcode field is set to a value that is Reserved for Future Use, or with invalid CtrData fields, the Link Layer shall respond with an LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP PDU. The Unknown-Type field of the LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP PDU shall be set to the value of the invalid Opcode.

#### 2.4.2.1 LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ

The format of the CtrData field is as shown in [Figure 2.15](#).

CtrData					
WinSize (1 octet)	WinOffset (2 octets)	Interval (2 octets)	Latency (2 octets)	Timeout (2 octets)	Instant (2 octets)

*Figure 2.15: CtrData field of the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU*

The LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ CtrData consists of six fields:

- The WinSize field shall be set to indicate the *transmitWindowSize* value, as defined in [Section 4.5.3](#) in the following manner:  $transmitWindowSize = WinSize * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ .
- The WinOffset field shall be set to indicate the *transmitWindowOffset* value, as defined in [Section 4.5.3](#), in the following manner:  $transmitWindowOffset = WinOffset * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ .
- The Interval field shall be set to indicate the *connInterval* value, as defined in [Section 4.4.4](#), in the following manner:  $connInterval = Interval * 1.25 \text{ ms}$ .
- The Latency field shall be set to indicate the *connSlaveLatency* value, as defined by [Section 4.5.1](#), in the following manner:  $connSlaveLatency = Latency$ .
- The Timeout field shall be set to indicate the *connSupervisionTimeout* value, as defined by [Section 4.5.2](#), in the following manner:  $connSupervisionTimeout = Timeout * 10 \text{ ms}$ .
- The Instant field shall be set to indicate the *connInstant* value, as defined by [Section 5.1.1](#). The Instant Field shall have a value in the range of 0 to 65535.

#### 2.4.2.2 LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ

The format of the CtrData field is shown in [Figure 2.16](#).

CtrData	
ChM (5 octets)	Instant (2 octets)

*Figure 2.16: CtrData field of the LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ PDU*

The LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ CtrData consists of two fields:

- The ChM field shall contain the channel map indicating *Used* and *Unused* data channels. Every channel is represented with a bit positioned as per the data channel index defined by [Section 4.5.8](#). The format of this field is identical to the ChM field in the CONNECT\_REQ PDU (see [Section 2.3.3.1](#)).
- The Instant field shall be set to indicate the *connInstant* value, as defined by [Section 5.1.2](#). The Instant field shall have a value in the range of 0 to 65535.

#### 2.4.2.3 LL\_TERMINATE\_IND

The format of the CtrData field is shown in [Figure 2.17](#).

CtrData
Error Code (1 octet)

*Figure 2.17: CtrData field of the LL\_TERMINATE\_IND PDU*

The LL\_TERMINATE\_IND CtrData consists of one field:

- The Error Code field shall be set to inform the remote device why the connection is about to be terminated. See [\[Vol 2\] Part D](#) for details.

#### 2.4.2.4 LL\_ENC\_REQ

The format of the CtrData field is shown in [Figure 2.18](#).

CtrData			
Rand (8 octets)	EDIV (2 octets)	SKDm (8 octets)	IVm (4 octets)

*Figure 2.18: CtrData field of the LL\_ENC\_REQ PDU*

The LL\_ENC\_REQ CtrData consists of four fields:

- The Rand field contains a random number that is provided by the Host and used with EDIV (see [\[Vol. 3\] Part H, Section 2.4.4](#)).
- The EDIV field contains the encrypted diversifier.
- The SKDm field contains the master's portion of the session key diversifier.
- The IVm field contains the master's portion of the initialization vector.

#### 2.4.2.5 LL\_ENC\_RSP

The format of the CtrData field is shown in [Figure 2.19](#).

The LL\_ENC\_RSP CtrData consists of two fields.

- The SKDs field shall contain the slave's portion of the session key diversifier.

CtrData	
SKDs (8 octets)	IVs (4 octets)

Figure 2.19: CtrData field of the LL\_ENC\_RSP PDU

- The IVs field shall contain the slave's portion of the initialization vector.

#### 2.4.2.6 LL\_START\_ENC\_REQ

The LL\_START\_ENC\_REQ PDU does not have a CtrData field.

#### 2.4.2.7 LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP

The LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP PDU does not have a CtrData field.

#### 2.4.2.8 LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP

The format of the CtrData field is shown in Figure 2.20.

CtrData	
UnknownType (1 octet)	

Figure 2.20: CtrData field of the LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP PDU

The LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP CtrData consists of one field:

- UnknownType shall contain the Opcode field value of the received LL Control PDU.

#### 2.4.2.9 LL\_FEATURE\_REQ

The format of the CtrData field is shown in Figure 2.21.

CtrData	
FeatureSet (8 octets)	

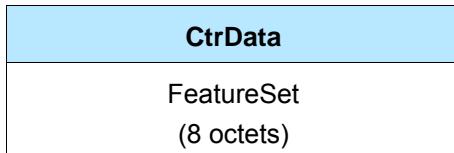
Figure 2.21: CtrData field of the LL\_FEATURE\_REQ PDU

The LL\_FEATURE\_REQ CtrData consists of one field:

- FeatureSet shall contain the set of supported features of the master's Link Layer.

#### 2.4.2.10 LL FEATURE\_RSP

The format of the CtrData field is shown in [Figure 2.22](#).



*Figure 2.22: CtrData field of the LL\_FEATURE\_RSP PDU*

The LL\_FEATURE\_RSP CtrData consists of one field:

- FeatureSet shall contain the set of used features of the Link Layer of the master or slave.

#### 2.4.2.11 LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_REQ

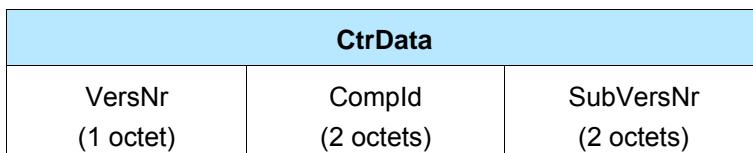
The LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_REQ packet does not have a CtrData field.

#### 2.4.2.12 LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_RSP

The LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_RSP packet does not have a CtrData field.

#### 2.4.2.13 LL VERSION\_IND

The format of the CtrData field is shown in [Figure 2.23](#).



*Figure 2.23: CtrData field of the LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU*

The LL\_VERSION\_IND CtrData consists of three fields:

- VersNr field shall contain the version of the Bluetooth Controller specification (see Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#)).
- Compld field shall contain the company identifier of the manufacturer of the Bluetooth Controller (see Bluetooth [Assigned Numbers](#)).
- SubVersNr field shall contain a unique value for each implementation or revision of an implementation of the Bluetooth Controller.

#### 2.4.2.14 LL\_REJECT\_IND

The format of the CtrData field is shown in Figure 2.24.

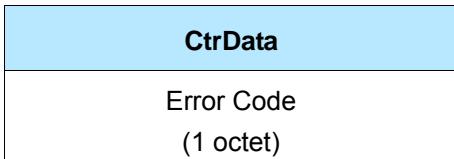


Figure 2.24: CtrData field of the LL\_REJECT\_IND

Error Code shall contain the reason a request was rejected; see [Vol 2] Part D.

#### 2.4.2.15 LL\_SLAVE\_FEATURE\_REQ

The format of the CtrData field is shown in Figure 2.25.

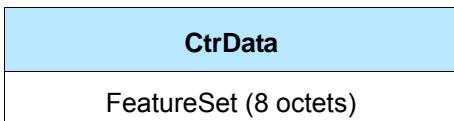


Figure 2.25: CtrData field of the LL\_SLAVE\_FEATURE\_REQ PDU

The LL\_SLAVE\_FEATURE\_REQ CtrData consists of one field:

- FeatureSet shall contain the set of supported features of the slave's Link Layer.

#### 2.4.2.16 LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ

The format of the CtrData field is shown in Figure 2.26.

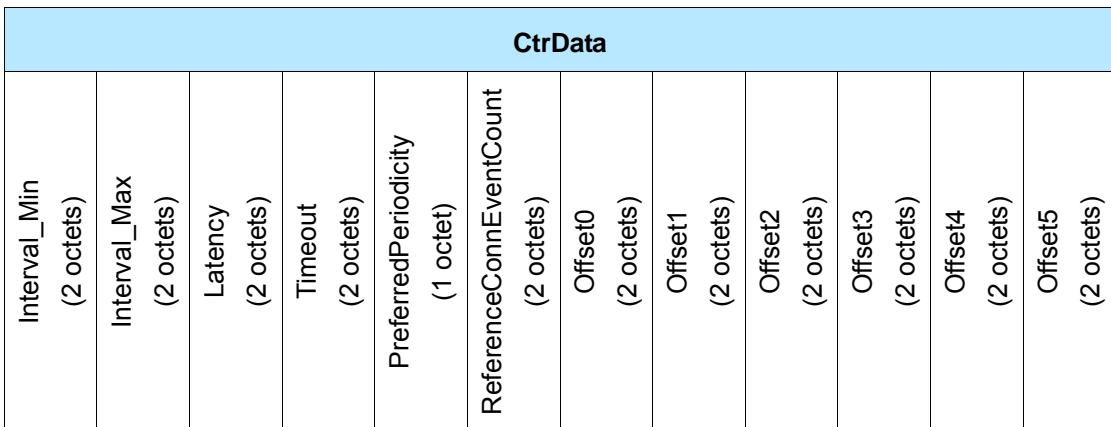


Figure 2.26: CtrData field of the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU

The LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ CtrData consists of 12 fields:

- The Interval\_Min field shall be set to indicate the minimum value of *connInterval*, as defined in [Section 4.5.1](#), in the following manner:  

$$\text{connInterval} = \text{Interval\_Min} * 1.25 \text{ ms.}$$

- The Interval\_Max field shall be set to indicate the maximum value of *connInterval*, as defined in [Section 4.5.1](#), in the following manner:  

$$\text{connInterval} = \text{Interval\_Max} * 1.25 \text{ ms}$$
- The Latency field shall be set to indicate the *connSlaveLatency* value, as defined by [Section 4.5.1](#), in the following manner:  $\text{connSlaveLatency} = \text{Latency}$ . Latency is in units of number of connection events.
- The Timeout field shall be set to indicate the *connSupervisionTimeout* value, as defined by [Section 4.5.2](#), in the following manner:  

$$\text{connSupervisionTimeout} = \text{Timeout} * 10 \text{ ms}$$
- The PreferredPeriodicity field shall be set to indicate a value the *connInterval* is preferred to be a multiple of. PreferredPeriodicity is in units of 1.25 ms. E.g. if the PreferredPeriodicity is set to 100, it implies that *connInterval* is preferred to be any multiple of 125 ms. A value of zero means not valid. The PreferredPeriodicity shall be less than Interval\_Max.
- The ReferenceConnEventCount field shall be set to indicate the value of the *connEventCounter* relative to which all the valid Offset0 to Offset5 fields have been calculated. The ReferenceConnEventCount field shall have a value in the range of 0 to 65535. Note: the ReferenceConnEventCount field is independent of the Instant field in the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU.
- The Offset0, Offset1, Offset2, Offset3, Offset4 and Offset5 fields, shall be set to indicate the possible values of the position of the anchor points of the LE connection with the updated connection parameters relative to the ReferenceConnEventCount. Offset0 to Offset5 fields are in units of 1.25 ms and are in decreasing order of preference, that is, Offset0 is the most preferred value followed by Offset1 and so on. Offset0 to Offset5 shall be less than Interval\_Max. A value of 0xFFFF means not valid. Valid Offset0 to Offset5 fields shall contain unique values. Valid fields shall always be before invalid fields.

#### 2.4.2.17 LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP

The format of the CtrData field is shown in [Figure 2.27](#).

CtrData											
Interval_Min (2 octets)	Interval_Max (2 octets)	Latency (2 octets)	Timeout (2 octets)	PreferredPeriodicity (1 octet)	ReferenceConnEventCount (2 octets)	Offset0 (2 octets)	Offset1 (2 octets)	Offset2 (2 octets)	Offset3 (2 octets)	Offset4 (2 octets)	Offset5 (2 octets)

Figure 2.27: CtrData field of the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU

The LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP CtrData consists of 12 fields:

- The Interval\_Min field shall be set to indicate the minimum value of *connInterval*, as defined in [Section 4.5.1](#), in the following manner:  

$$\text{connInterval} = \text{Interval\_Min} * 1.25 \text{ ms.}$$
- The Interval\_Max field shall be set to indicate the maximum value of *connInterval*, as defined in [Section 4.5.1](#), in the following manner:  

$$\text{connInterval} = \text{Interval\_Max} * 1.25 \text{ ms.}$$
- The Latency field shall be set to indicate the *connSlaveLatency* value, as defined by [Section 4.5.1](#), in the following manner:  $\text{connSlaveLatency} = \text{Latency}$ . Latency is in units of number of connection events.
- The Timeout field shall be set to indicate the *connSupervisionTimeout* value, as defined by [Section 4.5.2](#), in the following manner:  

$$\text{connSupervisionTimeout} = \text{Timeout} * 10 \text{ ms.}$$
- The PreferredPeriodicity field shall be set to indicate a value the *connInterval* is preferred to be a multiple of. PreferredPeriodicity is in units of 1.25 ms. E.g. if the PreferredPeriodicity is set to 100, it implies that *connInterval* is preferred to be any multiple of 125 ms. A value of zero means not valid. The PreferredPeriodicity shall be less than Interval\_Max.
- The ReferenceConnEventCount field shall be set to indicate the value of the connEventCounter relative to which all the valid Offset0 to Offset5 fields have been calculated. The ReferenceConnEventCount field shall have a value in the range of 0 to 65535. Note: the ReferenceConnEventCount field is independent of the Instant field in the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU.
- The Offset0, Offset1, Offset2, Offset3, Offset4 and Offset5 fields, shall be set to indicate the possible values of the position of the anchor points of the LE connection with the updated connection parameters relative to the ReferenceConnEventCount. Offset0 to Offset5 fields are in units of 1.25 ms and in decreasing order of preference, that is, Offset0 is the most preferred value followed by Offset1 and so on. Offset0 to Offset5 shall be less than Interval\_Max. A value of 0xFFFF means not valid. Valid Offset0 to Offset5 fields shall contain unique values. Valid fields shall always be before invalid fields.

#### 2.4.2.18 LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT

The format of the CtrData field is shown in [Figure 2.28](#).

CtrData	
RejectOpcode (1 octet)	Error Code (1 octet)

*Figure 2.28: CtrData field of the LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU*

The LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT CtrData consists of two fields:

- RejectOpcode shall contain the Opcode field value of the LL Control PDU being rejected.
- Error Code shall contain the reason the LL Control PDU was being rejected. See [\[Vol 2\] Part D](#) for a list of error codes and descriptions.

This PDU shall be issued only when the remote Link Layer supports the Extended Reject Indication Link Layer feature ([Section 4.6](#)). Otherwise, the LL\_REJECT\_IND PDU ([Section 2.4.2.14](#)) shall be issued instead.

#### 2.4.2.19 LL\_PING\_REQ

The LL\_PING\_REQ PDU does not have a CtrData field.

#### 2.4.2.20 LL\_PING\_RSP

The LL\_PING\_RSP PDU does not have a CtrData field.

## 3 BIT STREAM PROCESSING

Bluetooth devices shall use the bitstream processing schemes as defined in the following sections.

[Figure 3.1](#) shows the processes that may have to be carried out on the PDU.

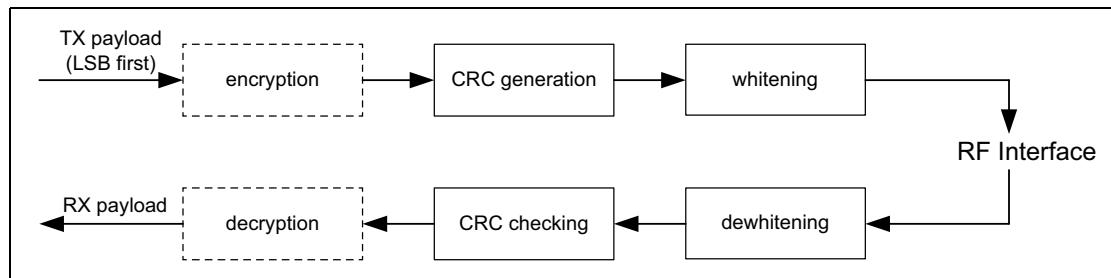


Figure 3.1: Payload bit processes

### 3.1 ERROR CHECKING

At packet reception, the Access Address shall be checked first. If the Access Address is incorrect, the packet shall be rejected, otherwise the packet shall be considered received. If the CRC is incorrect, the packet shall be rejected, otherwise the packet shall be considered valid. A packet shall only be processed if the packet is considered valid. A packet with an incorrect CRC may cause a connection event to continue, as specified in [Section 4.5.1](#).

#### 3.1.1 CRC Generation

The CRC shall be calculated on the PDU field in all Link Layer packets. If the PDU is encrypted, then the CRC shall be calculated after encryption of the PDU has been performed.

The CRC polynomial is a 24-bit CRC and all bits in the PDU shall be processed in transmitted order starting from the least significant bit. The polynomial has the form of  $x^{24} + x^{10} + x^9 + x^6 + x^4 + x^3 + x + 1$ . For every Data Channel PDU, the shift register shall be preset with the CRC initialization value set for the Link Layer connection and communicated in the CONNECT\_REQ PDU. For every Advertising Channel PDU the shift register shall be preset with 0x5555555.

Position 0 shall be set as the least significant bit and position 23 shall be set as the most significant bit of the initialization value. The CRC is transmitted most significant bit first, i.e. from position 23 to position 0 (see [Section 1.2](#)).

[Figure 3.2](#) shows an example linear feedback shift register (LFSR) to generate the CRC.

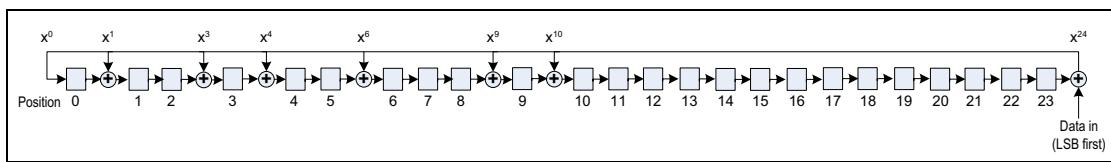


Figure 3.2: The LFSR circuit generating the CRC

### 3.2 DATA WHITENING

Data whitening is used to avoid long sequences of zeros or ones, e.g. 0000000b or 1111111b, in the data bit stream. Whitening shall be applied on the PDU and CRC fields of all Link Layer PDUs and is performed after the CRC in the transmitter. De-whitening is performed before the CRC in the receiver (see [Figure 3.1](#)).

The whitener and de-whitener are defined the same way, using a 7-bit linear feedback shift register with the polynomial  $x^7 + x^4 + 1$ . Before whitening or de-whitening, the shift register is initialized with a sequence that is derived from the channel index (data channel index or advertising channel index) in which the packet is transmitted in the following manner:

- Position 0 is set to one.
- Positions 1 to 6 are set to the channel index of the channel used when transmitting or receiving, from the most significant bit in position 1 to the least significant bit in position 6.

For example, if the channel index = 23 (0x17), the positions would be set as follows:

Position 0 = 1

Position 1 = 0

Position 2 = 1

Position 3 = 0

Position 4 = 1

Position 5 = 1

Position 6 = 1

[Figure 3.3](#) shows an example linear feedback shift register (LFSR) to generate data whitening.

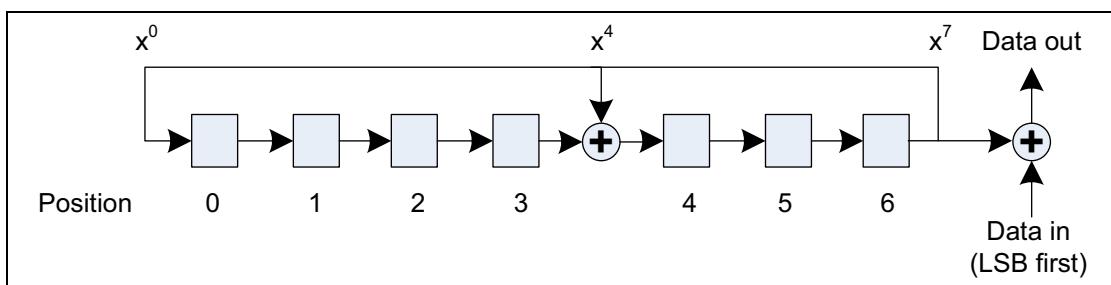


Figure 3.3: The LFSR circuit to generate data whitening

## 4 AIR INTERFACE PROTOCOL

---

The air interface protocol consists of the multiple access scheme, device discovery and link layer connection methods.

### 4.1 INTER FRAME SPACE

The time interval between two consecutive packets on the same channel index is called the Inter Frame Space. It is defined as the time from the end of the last bit of the previous packet to the start of the first bit of the subsequent packet. The Inter Frame Space is designated “T<sub>\_IFS</sub>” and shall be 150 µs.

### 4.2 TIMING REQUIREMENTS

The Link Layer shall use one of two possible clock accuracies. During a connection event or advertising event the Link Layer shall use the active clock accuracy; otherwise it shall use the sleep clock accuracy.

#### 4.2.1 Active Clock Accuracy

The average timing of packet transmission during a connection event is determined using the active clock accuracy, with a drift less than or equal to ±50 ppm. All instantaneous timings shall not deviate more than 2 µs from the average timing.

Note: This means that the start of a packet shall be transmitted 150±2 µs after the end of the previous packet.

#### 4.2.2 Sleep Clock Accuracy

The timing of advertising events (see [Section 4.4.2.2](#)) and connection events (see [Section 4.5.7](#)) is determined using the sleep clock accuracy, with a drift less than or equal to ±500 ppm.

The instantaneous timing of the anchor point (see [Section 4.5.7](#)) shall not deviate more than 16 µs from the average timing.

Note: This means that a 1 sec connection interval with a total ±1000ppm sleep clock accuracy will give a window widening either side of the anchor point of 1ms plus 16us, assuming that the slave controller was using its sleep clock for almost the complete connection interval.

### 4.3 LINK LAYER DEVICE FILTERING

The Link Layer may perform device filtering based on the device address of the peer device. Link Layer Device Filtering is used by the Link Layer to minimize the number of devices to which it responds.

A Link Layer shall support Link Layer Device Filtering unless it only supports non-connectable advertising.

The filter policies for the Advertising State, Scanning State and Initiating State are independent of each other. When the Link Layer is in the Advertising State, the advertising filter policy shall be used. When the Link Layer is in the Scanning State, the scanning filter policy shall be used. When the Link Layer is in the Initiating State, the initiator filter policy shall be used. If the Link Layer does not support the Advertising State, Scanning State, or Initiating State, the corresponding filter policy is not required to be supported.

#### 4.3.1 White List

The set of devices that the Link Layer uses for device filtering is called the White List.

A White List contains a set of White List Records used for Link Layer Device Filtering. A White List Record contains both the device address and the device address type (public or random). All Link Layers supporting Link Layer Device Filtering shall support a White List capable of storing at least one White List Record.

On reset, the White List shall be empty.

The White List is configured by the Host and is used by the Link Layer to filter advertisers, scanners or initiators. This allows the Host to configure the Link Layer to act on a request without awakening the Host.

All the device filter policies shall use the same White List.

#### 4.3.2 Advertising Filter Policy

The advertising filter policy determines how the advertiser's Link Layer processes scan and/or connection requests.

When the Link Layer is using connectable directed advertising the advertising filter policy shall be ignored, otherwise the Link Layer shall use one of the following advertising filter policy modes which are configured by the Host:

- The Link Layer shall process scan and connection requests only from devices in the White List.
- The Link Layer shall process scan and connection requests from all devices (i.e. the White List is not in use). This is the default on reset.
- The Link Layer shall process scan requests from all devices and shall only process connection requests from devices that are in the White List.
- The Link Layer shall process connection requests from all devices and shall only process scan requests from devices that are in the White List.

Only one advertising filter policy mode shall be supported at a time.

### 4.3.3 Scanner Filter Policy

The scanner filter policy determines how the scanner's Link Layer processes advertising packets. The Link Layer shall use one of the following scanner filter policy modes which are configured by the Host:

- The Link Layer shall process advertising packets only from devices in the White List.
- The Link Layer shall process all advertising packets (i.e., the White List is not used). This is the default on reset.

In addition to the scanner filter policy, a connectable directed advertising packet not containing the scanner's device address shall be ignored.

Only one scanner filter policy mode shall be supported at a time.

### 4.3.4 Initiator Filter Policy

The initiator filter policy determines how an initiator's Link Layer processes advertising packets. The Link Layer shall use one of the following initiator filter policy modes which are configured by the Host:

- The Link Layer shall process connectable advertising packets from all devices in the White List.
- The Link Layer shall ignore the White List and process connectable advertising packets from a specific single device specified by the Host.

If the Link Layer receives a connectable directed advertising packet from an advertiser that is not contained in the White List or the single address specified by the Host, the connectable directed advertising packet shall be ignored.

Only one initiator filter policy mode shall be supported at a time.

## 4.4 NON-CONNECTED STATES

### 4.4.1 Standby State

The Standby State is the default state in the Link Layer. The Link Layer shall not send or receive packets in the Standby State. The Link Layer may leave the Standby State to enter the Advertising State, Scanning State or Initiator State.

### 4.4.2 Advertising State

The Link Layer shall enter the Advertising State when directed by the Host. When placed in the Advertising State, the Link Layer shall send advertising PDUs (see [Section 2.3.1](#)) in advertising events.

Each advertising event is composed of one or more advertising PDUs sent on used advertising channel indices. The advertising event shall be closed after

one advertising PDU has been sent on each of the used advertising channel indices (see [Section 4.4.2.1](#)) or the advertiser may close an advertising event earlier to accommodate other functionality.

The time between two consecutive advertising events is defined in [Section 4.4.2.2](#).

An advertising event can be one of the following types:

- a connectable undirected event
- a connectable directed event
- a non-connectable undirected event
- a scannable undirected event

For each advertising event type, a corresponding Advertising Channel PDU is used.

The first PDU of each advertising event shall be transmitted in the used advertising channel with the lowest advertising channel index.

The advertising event type determines the allowable response PDUs. The table below specifies the allowable responses for each advertising event.

Advertising Event Type	PDU used in this advertising event type	Allowable response PDUs for advertising event	
		SCAN_REQ	CONNECT_REQ
Connectable Undirected Event	ADV_IND	YES	YES
Connectable Directed Event	ADV_DIRECT_IND	NO	YES*
Non-connectable Undirected Event	ADV_NONCONN_IND	NO	NO
Scannable Undirected Event	ADV_SCAN_IND	YES	NO

*Table 4.1: Advertising event types, PDUs used and allowable response PDUs*

\* Only the correctly addressed initiator may respond.

If the advertiser receives a PDU for the advertising event that is not explicitly allowed it shall be ignored. If no PDU is received or the received PDU was ignored, the advertiser shall either send an advertising PDU on the next used advertising channel index or close the advertising event.

#### 4.4.2.1 Advertising Channel Selection

Advertising events use three predefined advertising channels. Advertising channel indices are either used or unused.

The Link Layer shall use the advertising channel indices as specified by the Host, and the used advertising channel indices shall take effect when the Advertising State is entered.

#### 4.4.2.2 Advertising Interval

For all undirected advertising events or connectable directed advertising events used in a low duty cycle mode, the time between the start of two consecutive advertising events ( $T_{advEvent}$ ) is computed as follows for each advertising event:

$$T_{advEvent} = advInterval + advDelay$$

The  $advInterval$  shall be an integer multiple of 0.625 ms in the range of 20 ms to 10.24 s. If the advertising event type is either a scannable undirected event type or a non-connectable undirected event type, the  $advInterval$  shall not be less than 100 ms. If the advertising event type is a connectable undirected event type or connectable directed event type used in a low duty cycle mode, the  $advInterval$  can be 20 ms or greater.

The  $advDelay$  is a pseudo-random value with a range of 0 ms to 10 ms generated by the Link Layer for each advertising event.

As illustrated in [Figure 4.1](#), the advertising events are perturbed in time using the  $advDelay$ .

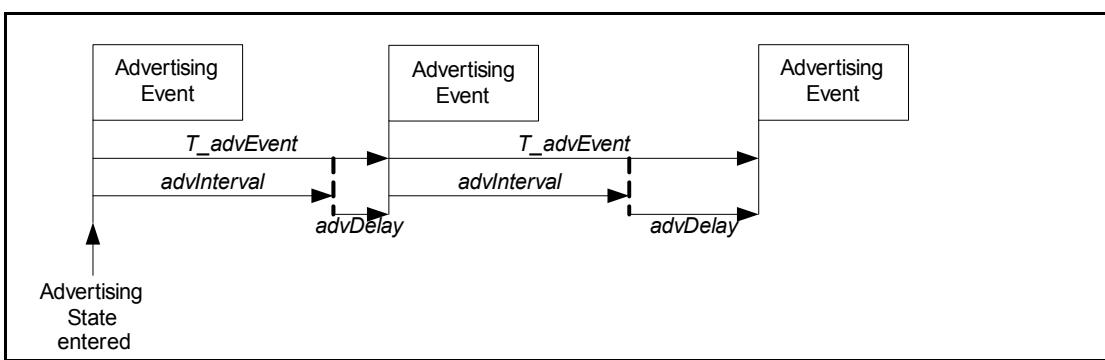


Figure 4.1: Advertising events perturbed in time using  $advDelay$

#### 4.4.2.3 Connectable Undirected Event Type

When the connectable undirected advertising event type is used, advertising indications (ADV\_IND PDU) are sent by the Link Layer.

The connectable undirected advertising event type allows a scanner or initiator to respond with either a scan request or connect request. A scanner may send

a scan request (SCAN\_REQ PDU) to request additional information about the advertiser. An initiator may send a connect request (CONNECT\_REQ PDU) to request the Link Layer to enter the Connection State.

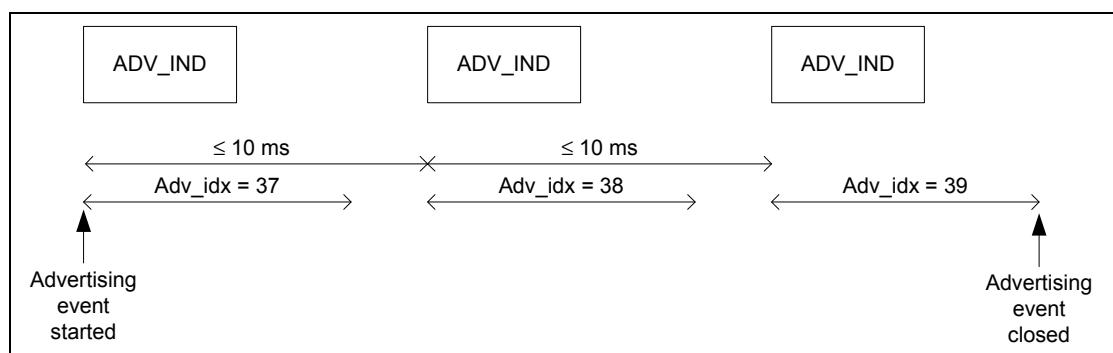
The Link Layer shall listen on the same advertising channel index for requests from scanners or initiators.

If the advertiser receives a SCAN\_REQ PDU that contains its device address from a scanner allowed by the advertising filter policy, it shall reply with a SCAN\_RSP PDU on the same advertising channel index. After the SCAN\_RSP PDU is sent, or if the advertising filter policy prohibited processing the SCAN\_REQ PDU, the advertiser shall either move to the next used advertising channel index to send another ADV\_IND PDU, or close the advertising event.

If the advertiser receives a CONNECT\_REQ PDU that contains its device address, from an initiator allowed by the advertising filter policy, the Link Layer shall exit the Advertising State and transition to the Connection State in the Slave Role as defined in [Section 4.5.5](#). If the advertising filter policy prohibited processing the received CONNECT\_REQ PDU, the advertiser shall either move to the next used advertising channel index to send another ADV\_IND PDU, or close the advertising event.

The time between the beginning of two consecutive ADV\_IND PDUs within an advertising event shall be less than or equal to 10 ms. The advertising event shall be closed within the advertising interval.

An illustration of an advertising event using all the advertising channel indices and in which no SCAN\_REQ or CONNECT\_REQ PDUs are received is shown in [Figure 4.2](#).



*Figure 4.2: Connectable undirected advertising event with only advertising PDUs*

Two illustrations of advertising events using all the advertising channel indices during which a SCAN\_REQ PDU is received and a SCAN\_RSP PDU is sent are shown in [Figure 4.3](#) and in [Figure 4.4](#).

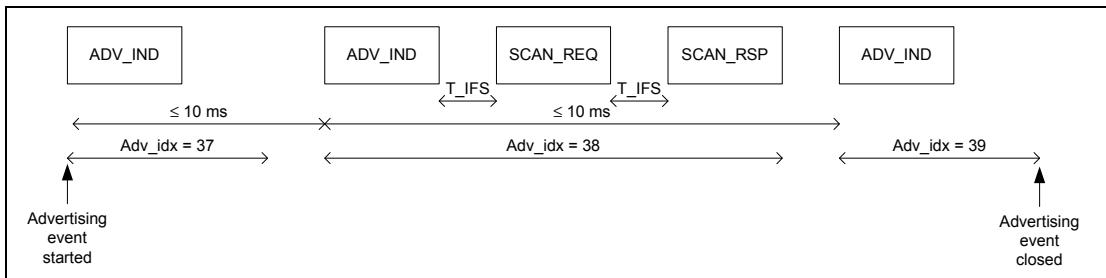


Figure 4.3: Connectable undirected advertising event with *SCAN\_REQ* and *SCAN\_RSP* PDUs in the middle of an advertising event

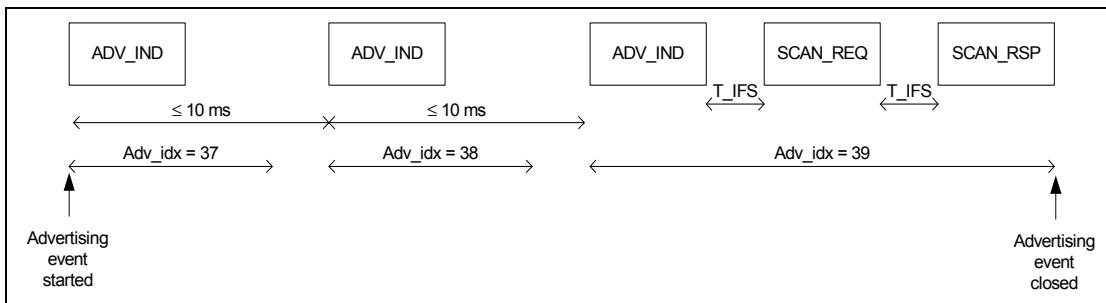


Figure 4.4: Connectable undirected advertising event with *SCAN\_REQ* and *SCAN\_RSP* packets at the end of an advertising event

[Figure 4.5](#) illustrates an advertising event during which a *CONNECT\_REQ* PDU is received on the second advertising channel index.

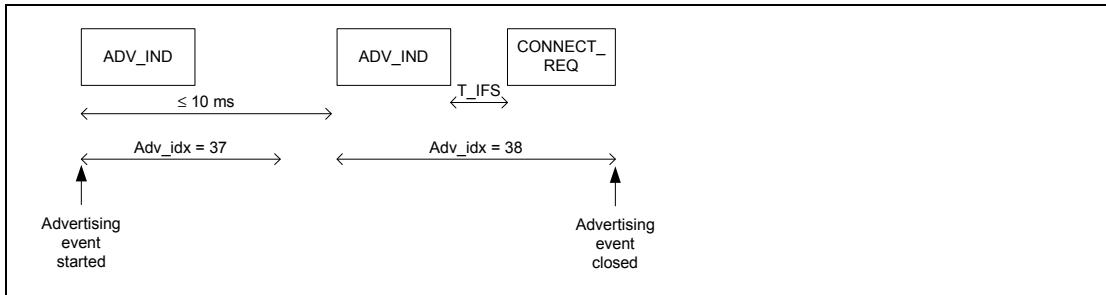


Figure 4.5: Connectable undirected advertising event during which a *CONNECT\_REQ* PDU is received

#### 4.4.2.4 Connectable Directed Event Type

When the connectable directed advertising event type is used, directed advertising indications (ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDUs) are sent by the Link Layer.

The connectable directed advertising event type allows an initiator to respond with a connect request. An initiator may send a connect request (CONNECT\_REQ PDU) to request the Link Layer to enter the Connection State.

The ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDU contains both the initiator's device address and the advertiser's device address. Only the addressed initiator may initiate a Link Layer connection with the advertiser by sending a CONNECT\_REQ PDU to the advertiser.

After every ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDU sent by the advertiser, the advertiser shall listen for CONNECT\_REQ PDUs on the same advertising channel index. Any SCAN\_REQ PDUs received shall be ignored.

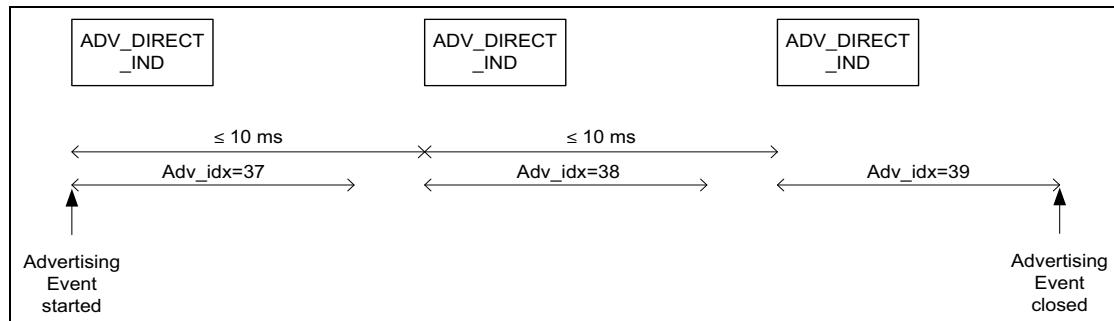
If the advertiser receives a CONNECT\_REQ PDU that contains its device address and the initiator device address is contained in the ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDU, the Link Layer shall exit the Advertising State and transition to the Connection State in the Slave Role as defined in [Section 4.5.5](#). Otherwise, the advertiser shall either move to the next used advertising channel index to send another ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDU, or close the advertising event.

Connectable directed advertising may be either used in a low duty cycle or high duty cycle mode. Connectable low duty cycle directed advertising is designed for cases where reconnection with a specific device is required, but time is not of the essence or it is not known if the central device is in range or not. High duty cycle directed advertising is designed for cases in which fast Link Layer connection setup is essential (for example, a reconnection). Note that high duty cycle directed advertising is a power and bandwidth intensive advertising scheme that should only be used when fast connection setup is required.

#### 4.4.2.4.1 Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising

In low duty cycle directed advertising mode, the time between the start of two consecutive ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDUs within an advertising event shall be less than or equal to 10 ms. The advertising event shall be closed within the advertising interval.

An illustration of an advertising event using all advertising channel indices and in which no CONNECT\_REQ PDUs are received is shown in [Figure 4.6](#).



*Figure 4.6: Low duty cycle connectable directed advertising event with only advertising PDUs*

[Figure 4.7](#) illustrates an advertising event during which a CONNECT\_REQ PDU is received on the second advertising channel index.

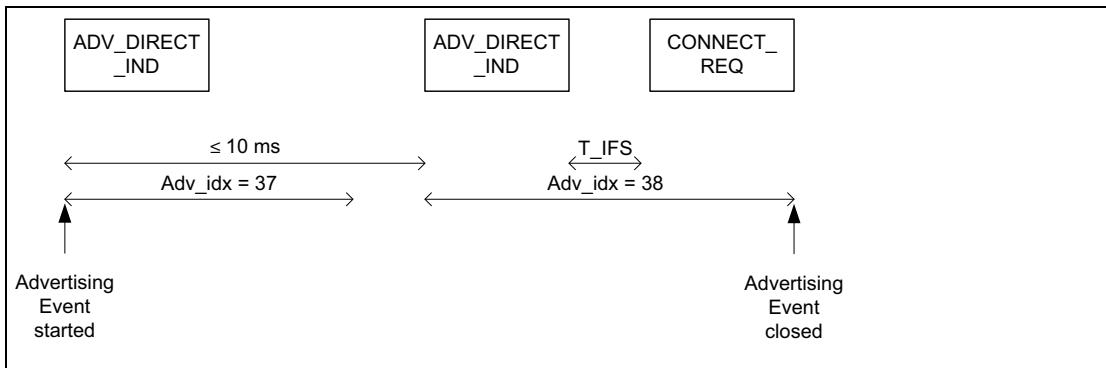


Figure 4.7: Low duty cycle connectable directed advertising event during which a CONNECT\_REQ PDU is received

#### 4.4.2.4.2 High Duty Cycle Directed Advertising

In high duty cycle directed advertising mode, the time between the start of two consecutive ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDUs sent within an advertising event shall be less than or equal to 3.75 ms.

The Link Layer shall exit the Advertising State no later than 1.28 s after the Advertising State was entered.

A sequence of five ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDUs in two advertising events without CONNECT\_REQ PDUs is shown in Figure 4.8 for the case in which all the advertising channels are used.

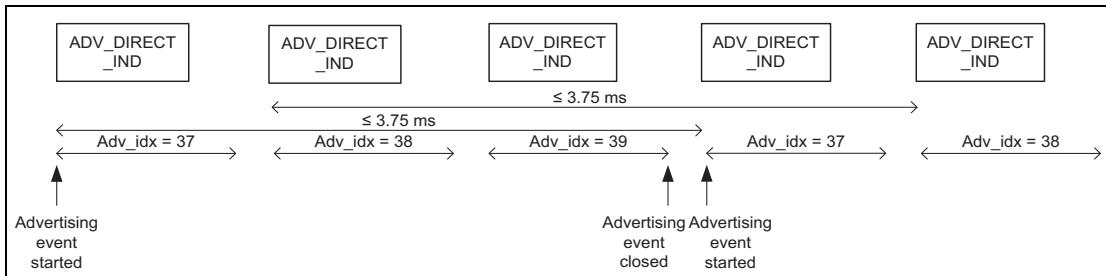


Figure 4.8: High duty cycle connectable directed advertising event with only advertising PDUs

#### 4.4.2.5 Scannable Undirected Event Type<sup>1</sup>

When the scannable undirected advertising event type is used, scannable advertising indications (ADV\_SCAN\_IND PDUs) packets are sent by the Link Layer.

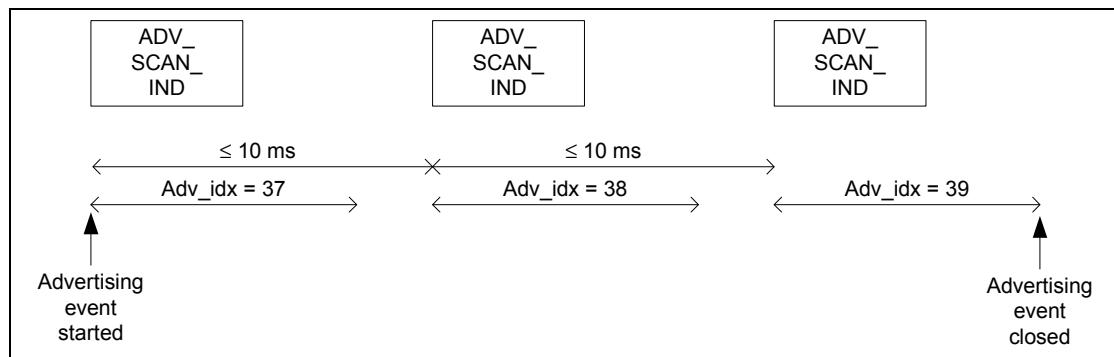
The scannable undirected event type allows a scanner to respond with a scan request (SCAN\_REQ PDU) to request additional information about the advertiser.

The Link Layer shall listen on the same advertising channel index for requests from scanners.

If the advertiser receives a SCAN\_REQ PDU that contains its device address from a scanner allowed by the advertising filter policy it shall reply with a SCAN\_RSP PDU on the same advertising channel index. After the SCAN\_RSP PDU is sent or if the advertising filter policy prohibited processing the SCAN\_REQ PDU the advertiser shall either move to the next used advertising channel index to send another ADV\_SCAN\_IND PDU, or close the advertising event.

The time between the beginning of two consecutive ADV\_SCAN\_IND PDUs within an advertising event shall be less than or equal to 10 ms. The advertising event shall be closed within the advertising interval.

The structure of an advertising event in which no SCAN\_REQ PDU was received is shown in [Figure 4.9](#) for the case in which all the advertising channels are used.



*Figure 4.9: Scannable undirected advertising event with only advertising PDUs*

Two example advertising events during which a SCAN\_REQ PDU is received and a SCAN\_RSP PDU is sent are shown in [Figure 4.10](#) and in [Figure 4.11](#) for the case in which all the advertising channels are used.

1. Discoverable Undirected Event Type was renamed to Scannable Undirected Event Type

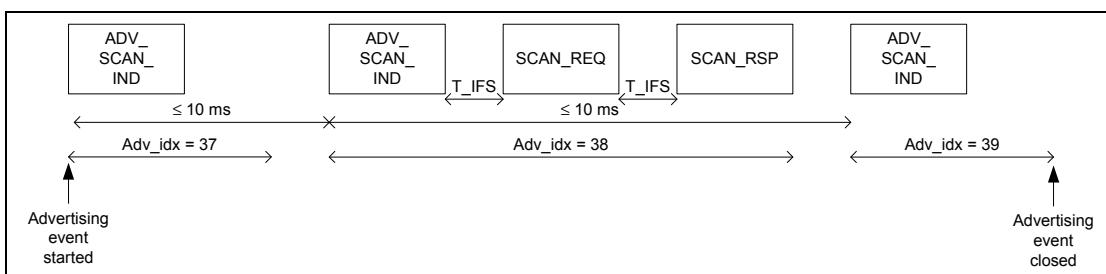


Figure 4.10: Scannable undirected advertising event with **SCAN\_REQ** and **SCAN\_RSP** PDUs in the middle of an advertising event

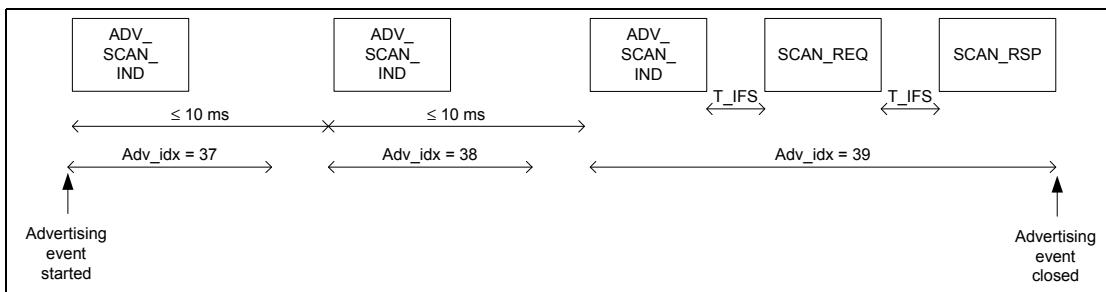


Figure 4.11: Scannable undirected advertising event with **SCAN\_REQ** and **SCAN\_RSP** PDUs at the end of an advertising event

#### 4.4.2.6 Non-connectable Undirected Event Type

When the non-connectable undirected event type is used, non-connectable advertising indications (**ADV\_NONCONN\_IND** PDU) packets are sent by the Link Layer.

The non-connectable undirected event type allows a scanner to receive information contained in the **ADV\_NONCONN\_IND** PDU from the advertiser.

The advertiser shall either move to the next used advertising channel index or close the advertising event after each **ADV\_NONCONN\_IND** PDU that is sent. The Link Layer does not listen, and therefore cannot receive any requests from scanners or initiators.

The time between the beginning of two consecutive **ADV\_NONCONN\_IND** PDUs within an advertising event shall be less than or equal to 10 ms. The advertising event shall be closed within the advertising interval.

An illustration of a non-connectable advertising event is shown in [Figure 4.12](#) for the case in which all the advertising channels are used.

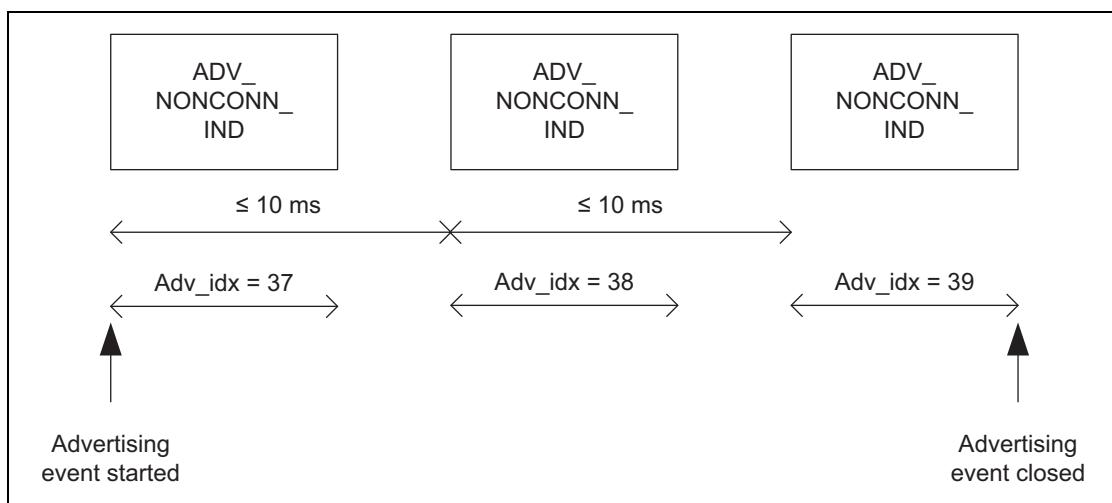


Figure 4.12: Non-connectable undirected advertising event

#### 4.4.3 Scanning State

The Link Layer shall enter the Scanning State when directed by the Host. When scanning, the Link Layer shall listen on the advertising channel indices. There are two types of scanning, determined by the Host: passive and active.

There are no strict timing or advertising channel index selection rules for scanning.

During scanning, the Link Layer listens on an advertising channel index for the duration of the scan window, *scanWindow*. The scan interval, *scanInterval*, is defined as the interval between the start of two consecutive scan windows.

The Link Layer should listen for the complete *scanWindow* every *scanInterval* as directed by the Host unless there is a scheduling conflict. In each scan window, the Link Layer should scan on a different advertising channel index. The Link Layer shall use all the advertising channel indices.

The *scanWindow* and *scanInterval* parameters shall be less than or equal to 10.24 s. The *scanWindow* shall be less than or equal to the *scanInterval*. If the *scanWindow* and the *scanInterval* parameters are set to the same value by the Host, the Link Layer should scan continuously.

The scanner filter policy shall apply when receiving an advertising PDU when scanning.

For each non-duplicate **ADV\_DIRECT\_IND** PDU received that contains this Link Layer's device address from an advertiser the Link Layer shall send an advertising report to the Host. For each non-duplicate **ADV\_IND**, **ADV\_SCAN\_IND**, **ADV\_NONCONN\_IND**, or **SCAN\_RSP** PDU from an advertiser, the Link Layer shall send an advertising report to the Host. The advertising report shall contain at least the advertiser's device address and advertising data or scan response data if present. Duplicate advertising reports

are not required to be sent to the Host. A duplicate advertising report is an advertising report for the same device address while the Link Layer stays in the Scanning State. The advertising data may change; advertising data or scan response data is not considered significant when determining duplicate advertising reports.

#### 4.4.3.1 Passive Scanning

When in passive scanning, the Link Layer will only receive packets; it shall not send any packets.

#### 4.4.3.2 Active Scanning

In active scanning, the Link Layer shall listen for advertising PDUs and depending on the advertising PDU type it may request an advertiser to send additional information.

The Link Layer shall not send a SCAN\_REQ PDU to an advertiser from which an ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDU or ADV\_NONCONN\_IND PDU is received.

The Link Layer shall send at least one SCAN\_REQ PDU after entering the Scanning State to all advertisers that are allowed by the scanner filter policy from which ADV\_IND or ADV\_SCAN\_IND PDUs are received. The Link Layer should interleave SCAN\_REQ PDUs to multiple advertisers. The Link Layer shall continue to send SCAN\_REQ PDUs to an advertiser that is allowed by the advertiser filter policy until it has received at least one SCAN\_RSP PDU from that advertiser.

The scanner shall run a backoff procedure to minimize collisions of SCAN\_REQ PDUs from multiple scanners.

The backoff procedure uses two parameters, *backoffCount* and *upperLimit* to restrict the number of SCAN\_REQ PDUs sent when collisions occur on SCAN\_RSP PDUs.

Upon entering the Scanning State, the *upperLimit* shall be set to one and the *backoffCount* shall be set to one.

On every received ADV\_IND PDU or ADV\_SCAN\_IND PDU that is allowed by the scanner filter policy and a SCAN\_REQ PDU is to be sent the *backoffCount* shall be decremented by one until it reaches the value of zero. The SCAN\_REQ PDU shall only be sent when *backoffCount* becomes zero.

After sending a SCAN\_REQ PDU the Link Layer shall listen for a SCAN\_RSP PDU from that advertiser. If the SCAN\_RSP PDU was not received from that advertiser, it is considered a failure otherwise it is considered a success. On every two consecutive failures, the *upperLimit* shall be doubled until it reaches the value of 256. On every two consecutive successes, the *upperLimit* shall be halved until it reaches the value of one. After success or failure of receiving the

SCAN\_RSP PDU, the Link Layer shall set *backoffCount* to a new pseudo-random integer between one and *upperLimit*.

Two illustrations of advertising events using all the advertising channel indices during which a SCAN\_REQ PDU is received and a SCAN\_RSP PDU is sent are shown in [Figure 4.3](#) and in [Figure 4.4](#).

#### 4.4.4 Initiating State

The Link Layer shall enter the Initiating State when directed by the Host. When initiating, the Link Layer shall listen on the advertising channel indices.

There are no strict timing or advertising channel index selection rules for initiators.

During initiating, the Link Layer listens on an advertising channel index for the duration of the scan window, *scanWindow*. The scan interval, *scanInterval*, is defined as the interval between the start of two consecutive scan windows.

The Link Layer should listen for the complete *scanWindow* every *scanInterval* as directed by the Host unless there is a scheduling conflict. In each scan window, the Link Layer should listen on a different advertising channel index. The Link Layer shall use all the advertising channel indices.

The *scanWindow* and *scanInterval* parameters shall be less than or equal to 10.24 s. The *scanWindow* shall be less than or equal to the *scanInterval*. If the *scanWindow* and the *scanInterval* parameters are set to the same value by the Host, the Link Layer should listen continuously.

If an ADV\_IND PDU is received that is allowed by the initiator filter policy, the initiator shall send a CONNECT\_REQ PDU to the advertiser. If an ADV\_DIRECT\_IND PDU with this Link Layer's device address is received that is allowed by the initiator filter policy, the initiator shall send a CONNECT\_REQ PDU to the advertiser; otherwise it shall be ignored.

After sending the CONNECT\_REQ PDU, the Link Layer shall exit the Initiating State, and shall transition to the Connection State in the Master Role as defined in [Section 4.5.4](#).

### 4.5 CONNECTION STATE

The Link Layer enters the Connection State when an initiator sends a CONNECT\_REQ PDU to an advertiser or an advertiser receives a CONNECT\_REQ PDU from an initiator.

After entering the Connection State, the connection is considered to be created. The connection is not considered to be established at this point. A connection is only considered to be established once a data channel packet has been received from the peer device. The only difference between a connection

that is created and a connection that is established is the Link Layer connection supervision timeout value that is used (see [Section 4.5.2](#)).

When two devices are in a connection, the two devices act in different roles. A Link Layer in the Master Role is called a master. A Link Layer in the Slave Role is called a slave. The master controls the timing of a connection event. A connection event is a point of synchronization between the master and the slave.

#### 4.5.1 Connection Events

The Link Layer in the Connection State shall only transmit Data Channel PDUs (see [Section 2.4](#)) in connection events. The master and slave shall determine the data channel index for each connection event as defined in [Section 4.5.8](#). The same data channel index shall be used for all packets in the connection event. Each connection event contains at least one packet sent by the master.

During a connection event, the master and slave alternate sending and receiving packets. The connection event is considered open while both devices continue to send packets. The slave shall always send a packet if it receives a packet from the master regardless of a valid CRC match, except after multiple consecutive invalid CRC matches as specified in [Section 4.5.6](#). The master may send a packet if it receives a packet from the slave regardless of a valid CRC match. The Length field of the Header is assumed to be correct even if the CRC match was invalid. If the master does not receive a packet from the slave, the master shall close the connection event.

The connection event can be closed by either device, as defined in [Section 4.5.6](#).

The timing of connection events is determined by two parameters: connection event interval (*connInterval*), and slave latency (*connSlaveLatency*).

The start of a connection event is called an anchor point. At the anchor point, a master shall start to transmit a Data Channel PDU to the slave. The start of connection events are spaced regularly with an interval of *connInterval* and shall not overlap. The master shall ensure that a connection event closes at least T\_IFS before the anchor point of the next connection event. The slave listens for the packet sent by its master at the anchor point.

The *connInterval* shall be a multiple of 1.25 ms in the range of 7.5 ms to 4.0 s. The *connInterval* is set by the Initiator's Link Layer in the CONNECT\_REQ PDU from the range given by the Host.

Slave latency allows a slave to use a reduced number of connection events. The *connSlaveLatency* parameter defines the number of consecutive connection events that the slave device is not required to listen for the master. The value of *connSlaveLatency* should not cause a Supervision Timeout (see [Section 4.5.2](#)). *connSlaveLatency* shall be an integer in the range of 0 to ((*connSupervisionTimeout* / *connInterval*) - 1). The *connSlaveLatency* parameter shall

also be less than 500. When *connSlaveLatency* is set to zero the slave device shall listen at every anchor point. If the slave does not receive a packet from the master after applying slave latency, it should listen at each anchor point and not apply slave latency until it receives a packet from the master.

Both the master and the slave shall have a 16-bit connection event counter (*connEventCounter*) for each Link Layer connection. It shall be set to zero on the first connection event sent by the master of the connection. It shall be incremented by one for each new connection event sent by the master; the *connEventCounter* shall wrap from 0xFFFF to 0x0000. This counter is used to synchronize Link Layer control procedures.

The slave shall increment *connEventCounter* for all connection events, even if it may not be listening to the master due to slave latency in those events.

#### **4.5.2 Supervision Timeout**

A connection can break down due to various reasons such as a device moving out of range, encountering severe interference or a power failure condition. Since this may happen without any prior warning, it is important for both the master and the slave to monitor the status of the connection.

To be able to detect link loss, both the master and the slave shall use a Link Layer connection supervision timer,  $T_{LLconnSupervision}$ . Upon reception of a valid packet, the timer shall be reset.

If the Link Layer connection supervision timer reaches  $6 * connInterval$  before the connection is established (see [Section 4.5](#)), the connection shall be considered lost. This enables fast termination of connections that fail to establish.

Connection supervision timeout (*connSupervisionTimeout*) is a parameter that defines the maximum time between two received Data Packet PDUs before the connection is considered lost. The *connSupervisionTimeout* shall be a multiple of 10 ms in the range of 100 ms to 32.0 s and it shall be larger than  $(1 + connSlaveLatency) * connInterval * 2$ .

If at any time in Connection State after the connection has been established and the timer reaches the *connSupervisionTimeout* value, the connection shall be considered lost.

If the connection is considered lost, the Link Layer shall not send any further packets. The Link Layer exits the Connection State and shall transition to the Standby State. The Host shall be notified of the loss of connection.

#### **4.5.3 Connection Event Transmit Window**

To allow the master to efficiently schedule connection events for multiple connections or other activities it may be involved in, the master has the flexibility to schedule the first connection event anchor point at a time of its choosing. The

CONNECT\_REQ PDU includes parameters to determine when the master can send its first packet in the Connection State to set the anchor point and when the slave must listen.

The CONNECT\_REQ PDU includes three parameters used to determine the transmit window. The transmit window starts at *transmitWindowOffset* + 1.25 ms after the end of the CONNECT\_REQ PDU, and the *transmitWindowSize* parameter shall define the size of the transmit window. The *connInterval* is used in the calculation of the maximum offset and size of the transmit window. The *transmitWindowOffset* and *transmitWindowSize* parameters are determined by the Link Layer.

The *transmitWindowOffset* shall be a multiple of 1.25 ms in the range of 0 ms to *connInterval*. The *transmitWindowSize* shall be a multiple of 1.25 ms in the range of 1.25 ms to the lesser of 10 ms and (*connInterval* - 1.25 ms).

Therefore the start of the first packet will be no earlier than 1.25 ms + *transmitWindowOffset* and no later than 1.25 ms + *transmitWindowOffset* + *transmitWindowSize* after the end of the CONNECT\_REQ PDU transmitted in the advertising channel.

#### 4.5.4 Connection Setup – Master Role

After the initiator sends the CONNECT\_REQ PDU the Link Layer is in the Connection State in the Master Role. The master shall reset the Link Layer connection supervision timer  $T_{LLconnSupervision}$ . The Link Layer shall notify the Host that the connection has been created. The first connection event shall use the data channel index as specified in [Section 1.4.1](#).

The master shall start to send the first packet within the transmit window as defined in [Section 4.5.3](#). It is permitted that the master's first packet can extend beyond the transmit window.

The first packet sent in the Connection State by the master determines the anchor point for the first connection event, and therefore the timings of all future connection events in this connection.

The second connection event anchor point shall be *connInterval* after the first connection event anchor point. All the normal connection event transmission rules specified in [Section 4.5.1](#) shall apply.

Two examples of the LL connection setup procedure timing from master's perspective are shown in [Figure 4.13](#) and in [Figure 4.14](#).

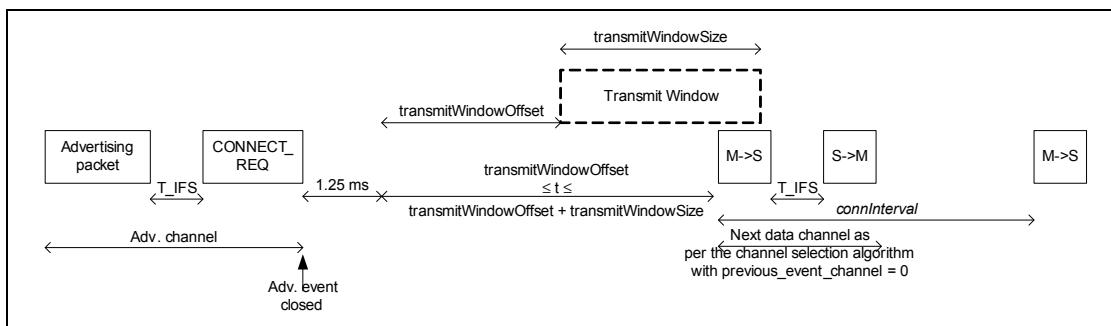


Figure 4.13: Master's view on LL connection setup with a non-zero transmitWindowOffset

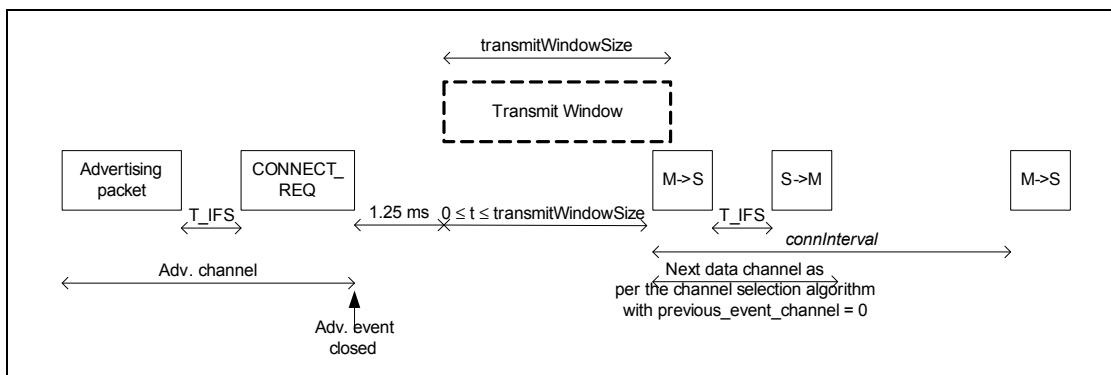


Figure 4.14: Master's view on LL connection setup with transmitWindowOffset set to zero

#### 4.5.5 Connection Setup – Slave Role

After the advertiser receives a CONNECT\_REQ PDU the Link Layer is in the Connection State in the Slave Role. The slave shall reset the Link Layer connection supervision timer  $T_{LLconnSupervision}$ . The Link Layer shall notify the Host that the connection has been created. The first connection event shall use the data channel index as specified in [Section 1.4.1](#).

The slave shall start to listen for the first packet within the transmit window as defined in [Section 4.5.3](#). It is permitted that the master's first packet can extend beyond the transmit window, and therefore the slave must take this into account.

The first packet received, regardless of a valid CRC match (i.e., only the access code matches), in the Connection State by the slave determines the anchor point for the first connection event, and therefore the timings of all future connection events in this connection.

If a packet is not received in a transmit window, the slave shall attempt to receive a packet in a subsequent transmit window. A subsequent transmit window shall start  $connInterval$  after the start of the previous transmit window, with the same  $transmitWindowSize$ . The data channel index shall be the next data channel index as specified in [Section 1.4.1](#). The  $connEventCount$  shall also be incremented by one.

An example of the procedure from the slave's perspective is shown in [Figure 4.15](#) in which the slave fails to receive any part of the first packet (i.e., connEventCount = 0) from the master and acquires anchor point timing from the second packet (i.e., connEventCount = 1).

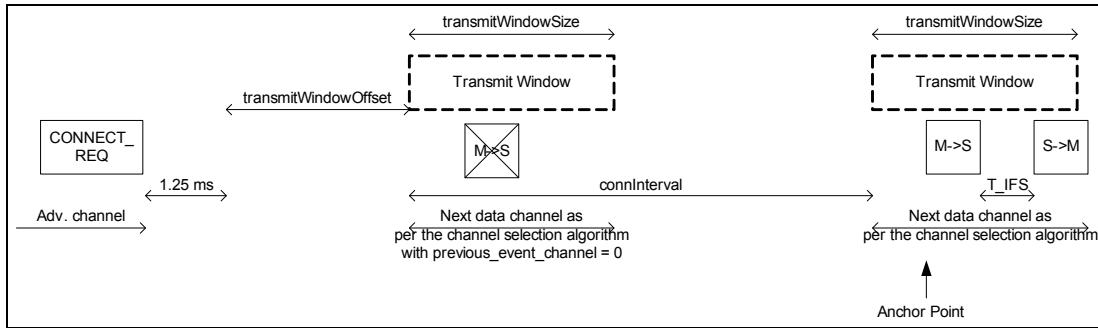


Figure 4.15: Slave closing LL connection setup in the second LL connection event

The slave shall be active in every connection event until the NESN is set to one in a master's packet at which point the slave can use slave latency as defined in [Section 4.5.1](#).

#### 4.5.6 Closing Connection Events

The MD bit of the Header of the Data Channel PDU is used to indicate that the device has more data to send. If neither device has set the MD bit in their packets, the packet from the slave closes the connection event. If either or both of the devices have set the MD bit, the master may continue the connection event by sending another packet, and the slave should listen after sending its packet. If a packet is not received from the slave by the master, the master will close the connection event. If a packet is not received from the master by the slave, the slave will close the connection event.

Two consecutive packets received with an invalid CRC match within a connection event shall close the event.

MD bit usage is summarized in [Table 4.2](#).

		Master	
		MD = 0	MD = 1
Slave	MD = 0	Master shall not send another packet, closing the connection event. Slave does not need to listen after sending its packet.	Master may continue the connection event. Slave should listen after sending its packet.
	MD = 1	Master may continue the connection event. Slave should listen after sending its packet.	Master may continue the connection event. Slave should listen after sending its packet.

Table 4.2: MD bit usage for closing connection events

#### 4.5.7 Window Widening

Because of sleep clock accuracies (see [Section 4.2.2](#)), there is uncertainty in the slave of the exact timing of the master's anchor point. Therefore the slave is required to re-synchronize to the master's anchor point at each connection event where it listens for the master. If the slave receives a packet from the master regardless of a CRC match, the slave shall update its anchor point.

The slave calculates the time when the master will send the first packet of a connection event (*slaveExpectedAnchorPoint*) taking clock jittering, and in the case of connection setup or a connection parameter update the transmit window, into account. The slave shall also use the masters sleep clock accuracy (*masterSCA*) from the CONNECT\_REQ PDU, together with its own sleep clock accuracy (*slaveSCA*) and the anchor point of the last connection event where it received a packet from the master (*timeSinceLastAnchor*) to calculate the time it needs to receive.

The increase in listening time is called the window widening. Assuming the clock inaccuracies are purely given in parts per million (ppm), it is calculated as follows:

$$\text{windowWidening} = ((\text{masterSCA} + \text{slaveSCA}) / 1000000) * \text{timeSinceLastAnchor}$$

During connection setup or during a connection parameter update, the slave should listen for *windowWidening* before the start of the transmit window and until *windowWidening* after the end of the transmitWindow for the master's anchor point.

At each subsequent connection event, the slave should listen for *windowWidening* before the start of the *slaveExpectedAnchorPoint* and until

*windowWidening* after *slaveExpectedAnchorPoint* for the master's anchor point.

The *windowWidening* shall be smaller than  $((connInterval/2) - T\_IFS \text{ us})$ . If the *windowWidening* reaches  $((connInterval/2) - T\_IFS \text{ us})$  in magnitude, the connection should be considered lost.

## 4.5.8 Data Channel Index Selection

### 4.5.8.1 *Channel Classification*

The master's Link Layer shall classify data channels into *used channels* (used for the connection) and *unused channels* (not used for the connection). This is called the channel map. The minimum number of used channels shall be 2.

The Host may provide channel classification information to the Link Layer. The Link Layer may use the information provided by the Host. The slave shall receive the channel map from the master in the CONNECT\_REQ PDU. If the master changes the channel map it shall notify the slave as specified in [Section 5.1.2](#).

### 4.5.8.2 *Channel Selection*

The channel selection algorithm consists of two stages: calculation of the unmapped channel index followed by mapping this index to a data channel index from the set of *used channels*.

The *unmappedChannel* and *lastUnmappedChannel* are the unmapped channel indices of two consecutive connection events. The *unmappedChannel* is the unmapped channel index for the current connection event. The *lastUnmappedChannel* is the unmapped channel index of the previous connection event. The *lastUnmappedChannel* shall be '0' for the first connection event of a connection.

At the start of a connection event, *unmappedChannel* shall be calculated using the following basic algorithm:

$$\text{unmappedChannel} = (\text{lastUnmappedChannel} + \text{hopIncrement}) \bmod 37$$

When a connection event closes, the *lastUnmappedChannel* shall be set to the value of the *unmappedChannel*.

If the *unmappedChannel* is a *used channel* according to the channel map, the channel selection algorithm shall use the *unmappedChannel* as the data channel index for the connection event.

If the *unmappedChannel* is an *unused channel* according to the channel map, the *unmappedChannel* shall be re-mapped to one of the used channels in the channel map using the following algorithm:

*remappingIndex = unmappedChannel mod numUsedChannels*

where *numUsedChannels* is the number of used channels in the channel map.

A remapping table is built that contains all the *used channels* in ascending order, indexed from zero. The *remappingIndex* is then used to select the data channel index for the connection event from the remapping table.

The complete procedure is as shown in [Figure 4.16](#).

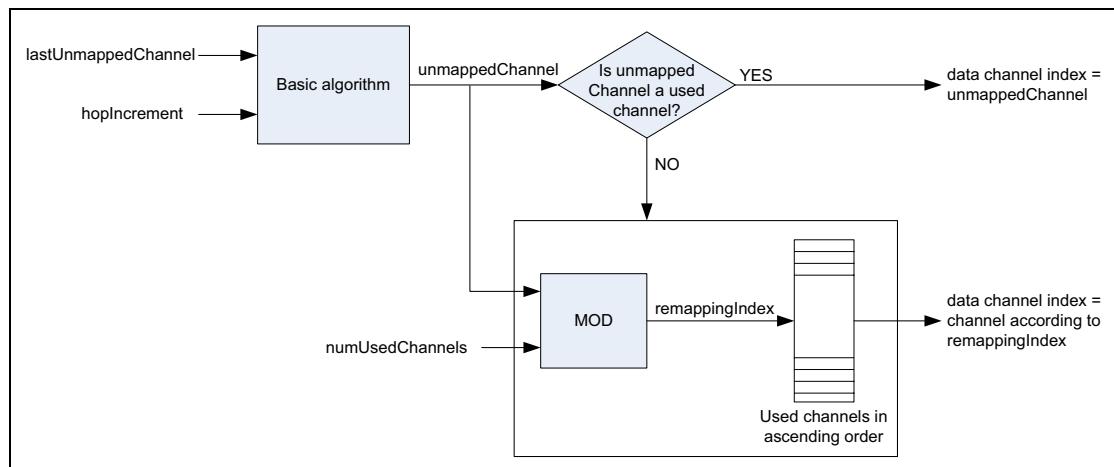


Figure 4.16: Block diagram of data channel selection algorithm

#### 4.5.9 Acknowledgement and Flow Control

The Link Layer acknowledgement and flow control scheme shall be used in all Link Layer connections.

For each connection the Link Layer has two parameters, *transmitSeqNum* and *nextExpectedSeqNum*, each one bit in size. The *transmitSeqNum* parameter is used to identify packets sent by the Link Layer. The *nextExpectedSeqNum* parameter is used by the peer to either acknowledge the last Data Channel PDU sent, or to request resending of the last Data Channel PDU sent.

The *transmitSeqNum* and *nextExpectedSeqNum* parameters shall be set to zero upon entering the Connection State.

A new Data Channel PDU is a Data Channel PDU sent for the first time by the Link Layer. A last Data Channel PDU is a Data Channel PDU that is resent by the Link Layer. When resending a Data Channel PDU, the LLID field, the SN field and the payload of the sent Data Channel PDU shall be equal to those of the last Data Channel PDU sent by the Link Layer.

For each new Data Channel PDU that is sent, the SN bit of the Header shall be set to *transmitSeqNum*. If a Data Channel PDU is resent, then the SN bit shall not be changed.

Upon reception of a Data Channel PDU, the SN bit shall be compared to *nextExpectedSeqNum*. If the bits are different, then this is a resent Data Channel PDU, and *nextExpectedSeqNum* shall not be changed. If the bits are the same, then this is a new Data Channel PDU, and *nextExpectedSeqNum* may be incremented by one (see [Section 4.5.9.1](#)).

When a Data Channel PDU is sent, the NESN bit of the Header shall be set to *nextExpectedSeqNum*.

Upon receiving a Data Channel PDU, if the NESN bit of that Data Channel PDU is the same as *transmitSeqNum*, then the last sent Data Channel PDU has not been acknowledged and shall be resent. If the NESN bit of the Data Channel PDU is different from *transmitSeqNum*, then the last sent Data Channel PDU has been acknowledged, *transmitSeqNum* shall be incremented by one, and a new Data Channel PDU may be sent.

The above process is illustrated in [Figure 4.17](#).

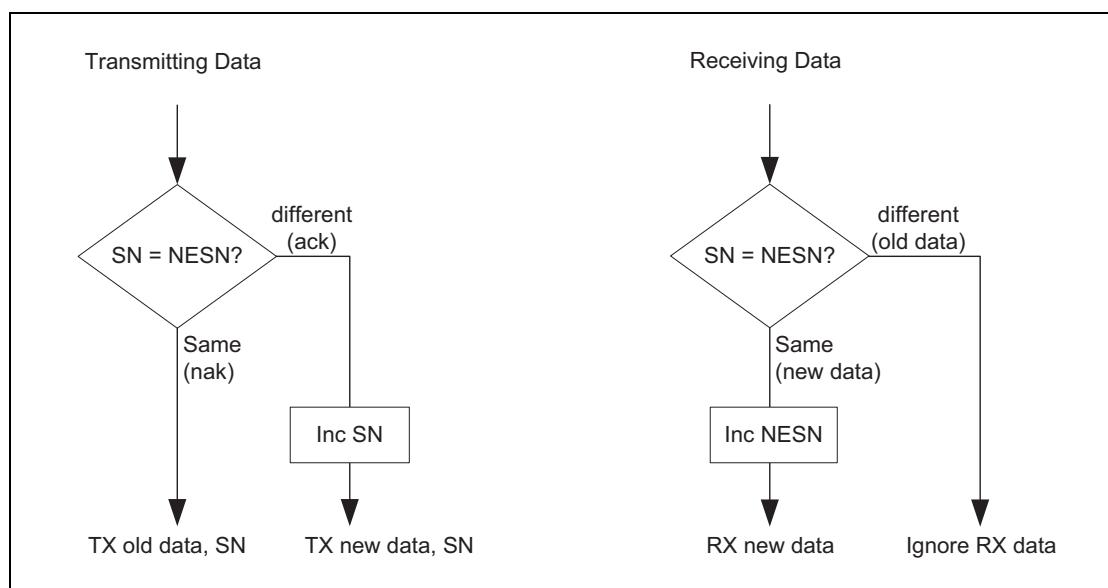


Figure 4.17: Transmit and Receive SN and NESN flow diagram

If a Data Channel PDU is received with an invalid CRC match, *nextExpectedSeqNum* shall not be changed; this means that the Data Channel PDU will not be acknowledged, causing the peer to resend the Data Channel PDU. Since the received Data Channel PDU has been rejected, the *nextExpectedSeqNum* from the peer device cannot be trusted, and therefore the last sent Data Channel PDU from this device was not acknowledged and must be retransmitted.

SN, NESN and MD bits shall be used from every received Data Channel PDU which has passed the CRC check. The Data Channel PDU payload shall be ignored on every received Data Channel PDU that has the same SN value as the previously received Data Channel PDU.

#### 4.5.9.1 Flow Control

A Link Layer may not update nextExpectedSeqNum for reasons, including, but not limited to, lack of receive buffer space. This will cause the peer to resend the Data Channel PDU at a later time, thus enabling flow control.

## 4.6 FEATURE SUPPORT

When this information is sent from a Controller to a Host, a bit set to '0' indicates that the Link Layer Feature is not supported in this Controller; a bit set to '1' indicates that the Link Layer Feature is supported in this Controller.

When this information is sent from a Controller to a peer Controller, a bit set to '0' indicates that the Link Layer Feature shall not be used by the Controllers; a bit set to '1' indicates that the Link Layer Feature may be used by the Controllers.

The bit positions for each Link Layer Feature shall be as shown in [Table 4.3](#). This table also shows if these bits are valid for the intended destination. If a bit is shown as not valid, using 'N', then this bit shall be ignored upon receipt.

Bit position	Link Layer Feature	Valid from Controller to Host	Valid from Host to Controller	Valid from Controller to Controller
0	LE Encryption	Y	Y	Y
1	Connection Parameters Request Procedure	Y	Y	Y
2	Extended Reject Indication	Y	Y	Y
3	Slave-initiated Features Exchange	Y	Y	Y
4	LE Ping	Y	Y	N
5 – 63	RFU			

*Table 4.3: FeatureSet field's bit mapping to Controller features*

### 4.6.1 LE Encryption

A controller that supports LE Encryption shall support the following sections within this document:

- LL\_ENC\_REQ ([Section 2.4.2.4](#))
- LL\_ENC\_RSP ([Section 2.4.2.5](#))
- LL\_START\_ENC\_REQ ([Section 2.4.2.6](#))
- LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP ([Section 2.4.2.7](#))
- LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_REQ ([Section 2.4.2.11](#))
- LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_RSP ([Section 2.4.2.12](#))
- Encryption Start Procedure ([Section 5.1.3.1](#))
- Encryption Pause Procedure ([Section 5.1.3.2](#))

#### 4.6.2 Connection Parameters Request Procedure

A Controller that supports Connection Parameters Request Procedure shall support the following sections within this document:

- LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT ([Section 2.4.2.18](#))
- LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ ([Section 2.4.2.16](#))
- LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP ([Section 2.4.2.17](#))
- Connection Parameters Request Procedure ([Section 5.1.7](#))

#### 4.6.3 Extended Reject Indication

A Controller that supports Extended Reject Indication shall support the following sections within this document:

- LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT ([Section 2.4.2.18](#))

#### 4.6.4 Slave-initiated Features Exchange

A Controller that supports Slave-initiated Features Exchange shall support the following sections within this document:

- LL\_SLAVE\_FEATURE\_REQ ([Section 2.4.2.15](#))
- LL\_FEATURE\_RSP ([Section 2.4.2.10](#))

#### 4.6.5 LE Ping

A controller that supports LE Ping shall support the following sections of this document.

- LL\_PING\_REQ ([Section 2.4.2.19](#))
- LL\_PING\_RSP ([Section 2.4.2.20](#))
- LE Ping Procedure ([Section 5.1.8](#))
- LE Authenticated Payload Timeout ([Section 5.4](#))

## 5 LINK LAYER CONTROL

---

The Link Layer Control Protocol (LLCP) is used to control and negotiate aspects of the operation of a connection between two Link Layers. This includes procedures for control of the connection, starting and pausing encryption and other link procedures.

Procedures have specific timeout rules as defined in [Section 5.2](#). The Termination Procedure may be initiated at any time, even if any other Link Layer Control Procedure is currently active. For all other Link Layer Control Procedures, only one Link Layer Control Procedure shall be initiated in the Link Layer at a time per connection per device. A new Link Layer Control Procedure can be initiated only after a previous Link Layer Control Procedure has completed.

The prioritization of LL Control PDUs and LL Data PDUs is implementation specific. For example, a Host cannot assume that pending data will be sent when a termination of the link is requested without waiting for those data PDUs to be completed and indicated to the Host.

### 5.1 LINK LAYER CONTROL PROCEDURES

#### 5.1.1 Connection Update Procedure

The Link Layer parameters for a connection (*connInterval*, *connSlaveLatency* and *connSupervisionTimeout*) may be updated after entering the Connection State. The master may initiate the update of the connection parameters by sending an LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU. The slave shall not send this PDU. The slave may request a change to the connection parameters using the L2CAP LE signaling channel if either the master or the slave or both do not support the Connection Parameters Request procedure ([Section 5.1.7](#)). The slave may request a change to the connection parameters using the Connection Parameters Request Procedure if both the master and slave support the Connection Parameters Request procedure.

In order to request a change to the connection parameters, the master shall use the Connection Parameters Request Procedure if both the master and slave support that procedure. If the slave rejects the Connection Parameters Request Procedure, then the master may update the connection parameters using the Connection Update Procedure.

The Link Layer of the master shall determine the *connInterval* from the interval range given by the Host (*connInterval<sub>min</sub>* and *connInterval<sub>max</sub>*). The Link Layer shall indicate to the Host the selected interval value.

The Instant field of the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU shall be used to indicate the *connEventCount* when the updated parameters shall be applied; this is known as the instant. The master should allow a minimum of 6 connection events that the slave will be listening for before the instant occurs.

The connection interval used before the instant is known as  $connInterval_{OLD}$ . The connection interval contained in the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU and used at the instant and after, is known as  $connInterval_{NEW}$ .

The connection slave latency used before the instant is known as  $connSlaveLatency_{OLD}$ . The connection slave latency contained in the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU and used at the instant and after, is known as  $connSlaveLatency_{NEW}$ .

The connection supervision timeout used before the instant is known as  $connSupervisionTimeout_{OLD}$ . The connection supervision timeout contained in the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU and used at the instant and after, is known as  $connSupervisionTimeout_{NEW}$ . The connection supervision timer shall be reset at the instant.

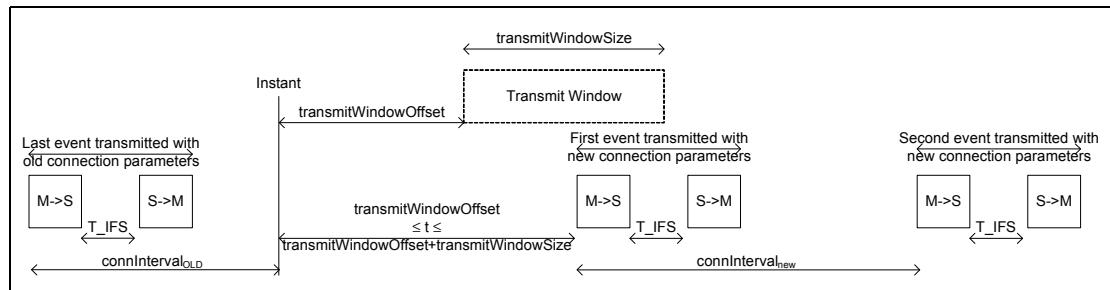


Figure 5.1: Connection event timing in the case of connection parameter update

For example, the interval between the preceding connection event before the instant and the instant will be  $connInterval_{OLD}$ . The interval between the connection event after the instant and the following connection event will be  $connInterval_{NEW}$ .

When a slave receives an LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU where  $(\text{Instant} - \text{connEventCount}) \bmod 65536 < 32767$  and Instant is not equal to connEventCount, the slave shall listen to all the connection events until it has confirmation that the master has received its acknowledgement of the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU or connEventCount equals Instant. The slave shall also listen to the connection event where connEventCount equals Instant and the connection event before it.

When a slave receives an LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU where  $(\text{Instant} - \text{connEventCount}) \bmod 65536 \geq 32767$  (because the instant is in the past), the Link Layer of the slave shall consider the connection to be lost, the Link Layer shall exit the Connection State, and shall transition to the Standby State and shall notify the Host.

Note: The comparison of the  $\text{connEventCount}$  and the received Instant field is performed using modulo 65536 math (only values from 0 to 65535 are allowed), to handle the situation when the  $\text{connEventCount}$  field has wrapped.

The master may adjust the anchor point when deciding the timing of the first packet transmitted with new connection parameters. A transmit window is used, as defined in [Section 4.5.3](#). The transmit window starts at  $connInterval_{OLD} + transmitWindowOffset$  after the anchor point of the connection event before the instant. The  $transmitWindowOffset$  shall be a multiple of 1.25 ms in the range of 0 ms to  $connInterval_{NEW}$ . The  $transmitWindowSize$  shall be a multiple of 1.25 ms in the range of 1.25 ms to the lesser of 10 ms and ( $connInterval_{NEW} - 1.25$  ms).

The master shall start to send the first packet within the transmit window as defined in [Section 4.5.3](#). It is permitted that the master's first packet can extend beyond the transmit window.

The first packet sent after the instant by the master determines the new anchor point for the connection events, and therefore the timings of all future connection events in this connection.

The instant occurs after  $connInterval_{OLD}$  and before  $transmitWindowOffset$ . All the normal connection event transmission rules specified in [Section 1.4.1](#), shall apply.

At the start of the transmit window, the Link Layer shall reset  $T_{LLconnSupervision}$ .

If the Link Layer of the master transmits an LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU autonomously, for example without being requested to by the Host, the Latency and Timeout parameters shall not be changed and shall remain the same as in the last LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ or CONNECT\_REQ PDU, any of the other parameters ( $transmitWindowSize$ ,  $transmitWindowOffset$ ,  $connInterval$ , Instant) may be changed within the restrictions given above. Note: Autonomous updates can be used to change the anchor points to allow the master to change the scheduling of the connection due to other activities.

The Link Layer shall notify its Host if any of the three connection parameters have changed. If no connection parameters are changed, the Host would not be notified; this is called an anchor point move.

The procedure is complete when the instant has passed, and the new connection event parameters have been applied.

### 5.1.2 Channel Map Update Procedure

The Link Layer parameter for channel map (*channelMap*) may be updated after entering the Connection State. The master can update the channel map by sending an LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ PDU. The slave shall not send this PDU. The master Controller can update the channel map without being requested to by the Host.

The Instant field of the LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ PDU shall be used to indicate the *connEventCount* when the *channelMap<sub>NEW</sub>* shall be applied; this is known as the instant. The master should allow a minimum of 6 connection events that the slave will be listening for before the instant occurs.

The channel map used before the instant is known as *channelMap<sub>OLD</sub>*. The channel map contained in the LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ PDU and used at the instant and after, is known as *channelMap<sub>NEW</sub>*.

When a slave receives an LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ PDU where (Instant – *connEventCount*) modulo 65536 is less than 32767 and Instant is not equal to *connEventCount*, the slave shall listen to all the connection events until it has confirmation that the master has received its acknowledgement of the LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ PDU or *connEventCount* equals Instant.

When a slave receives an LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ where (Instant – *connEventCount*) modulo 65536 is greater than or equal to 32767 (because the instant is in the past), the Link Layer of the slave shall consider the connection to be lost and shall notify the Host.

Note: The comparison of the *connEventCount* and the received Instant field is performed using modulo 65536 math (only values from 0 to 65535 are allowed), to cope with the cases when the *connEventCount* field has wrapped.

When *connEventCount* is equal to the Instant field, the *channelMap<sub>NEW</sub>* shall be the current *channelMap*. The *lastUnmappedChannel* shall not be reset. If the *unmappedChannel* is an unused channel, then the *channelMap<sub>NEW</sub>* will be used when remapping. The only parameter that changes is the *channelMap*.

For example:

At connection set-up:

- initial *channelMap<sub>OLD</sub>*: 0xFFFFFFFF (i.e., all channels enabled)
- initial *hopIncrement*: 10 (decimal)

An LL\_CHANNEL\_MAP\_REQ PDU with the following parameters is then issued:

- Instant: 100 (decimal). Assume that no connection event count wrap-around occurred since the start of the connection.
- *channelMap<sub>NEW</sub>*: 0x1FFFFFF7FF (i.e. all channels enabled except channel 11)

Channels used:

- *connEventCount* 99 --> data channel index 1 (*channelMap<sub>OLD</sub>*)
- *connEventCount* 100 --> data channel index 12 (remapped from 11) (*channelMap<sub>NEW</sub>*)

- *connEventCount* 101 --> data channel index 21 (*channelMap<sub>NEW</sub>*)

The procedure is complete when the instant has passed, and the new channel map has been applied.

### 5.1.3 Encryption Procedure

The Link Layer, upon request from the Host, can enable the encryption of packets after entering the Connection State.

If the connection is not encrypted, the Link Layer shall only use the encryption start procedure.

If the connection is encrypted, the Link Layer shall first use the encryption pause procedure followed by the encryption start procedure.

#### 5.1.3.1 Encryption Start Procedure

To enable encryption, two parameters must be exchanged, IV and SKD. Both are composed of two parts, a master part and a slave part, and exchanged in LL\_ENC\_REQ and LL\_ENC\_RSP PDUs. After these are exchanged, and the Host has notified the Link Layer of the Long Term Key to be used on this connection, encryption can be started using a three way handshake, using LL\_START\_ENC\_REQ and LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP PDUs.

To start encryption, the Link Layer of the master shall generate the master's part of the initialization vector (IVm) and the master's part of the session key diversifier (SKDm). IVm shall be a 32 bit random number generated by the Link Layer of the master. SKDm shall be a 64 bit random number generated by the Link Layer of the master. Both IVm and SKDm shall be generated using the requirements for random number generation defined in [\[Vol. 2\] Part H, Section 2](#).

The Link Layer of the master shall finalize the sending of the current Data Channel PDU and may finalize the sending of additional Data Channel PDUs queued in the Controller. After these Data Channel PDUs are acknowledged, the Link Layer of the master shall only send Empty PDUs or LL\_ENC\_REQ, LL\_START\_ENC\_REQ, LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP, LL\_TERMINATE\_IND, LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDUs.

The Link Layer of the master shall then send an LL\_ENC\_REQ PDU; the Rand and EDIV fields are provided by the Host.

If encryption is not supported by the Link Layer of the slave, the Link Layer of the slave shall send an LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU with the error code set to "Unsupported Remote Feature / Unsupported LMP Feature" (0x1A). The Link Layer of the master receiving the LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU shall notify the Host. The Link Layer of the master can now send LL Data Packets and LL Control Packets; these packets will not be encrypted. This procedure is complete in the master when the master

receives the LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU from the slave. The procedure is complete in the slave when the acknowledgement for the LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU is received from the master.

Otherwise, when the Link Layer of the slave receives an LL\_ENC\_REQ PDU it shall generate the slave's part of the initialization vector (IVs) and the slave's part of the session key diversifier (SKDs). IVs shall be a 32 bit random number generated by the Link Layer of the slave. SKDs shall be a 64 bit random number generated by the Link Layer of the slave. Both IVs and SKDs shall be generated using the requirements for random number generation defined in [\[Vol. 2\] Part H, Section 2](#).

The Link Layer of the slave shall finalize the sending of the current Data Channel PDU and may finalize the sending of additional Data Channel PDUs queued in the Controller. After these Data Channel PDUs are acknowledged, the Link Layer of the slave is only allowed to send Empty PDUs or LL\_ENC\_RSP, LL\_START\_ENC\_REQ, LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP, LL\_TERMINATE\_IND, LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDUs.

The Link Layer of the slave shall then send an LL\_ENC\_RSP PDU. The Link Layer of the slave shall then notify the Host with the Rand and EDIV fields.

Each Link Layer shall combine the initialization vector parts and session key diversifier parts in the following manner:

$$\text{SKD} = \text{SKDm} \parallel \text{SKDs}$$

$$\text{IV} = \text{IVm} \parallel \text{IVs}$$

The SKDm is concatenated with the SKDs. The least significant octet of SKDm becomes the least significant octet of SKD. The most significant octet of SKDs becomes the most significant octet of SKD.

The IVm is concatenated with the IVs. The least significant octet of IVm becomes the least significant octet of IV. The most significant octet of IVs becomes the most significant octet of IV.

The Long Term Key is provided by the Host to the Link Layer in the master and slave, and one of the following three actions shall occur:

- If this procedure is being performed after a Pause Encryption Procedure, and the Host does not provide a Long Term Key, the slave shall perform the Termination Procedure with the error code "PIN or key Missing."
- If the Host does not provide a Long Term Key, either because the event to the Host was masked out or if the Host indicates that a key is not available, the slave shall either send an LL\_REJECT\_IND with the error code set to "PIN or key Missing" or an LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU with the RejectOpcode set to "LL\_ENC\_REQ" and the error code set to "PIN or key Missing." Upon receiving an LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU, the Link Layer shall notify the Host. The Link Layer can now send LL Data PDUs and LL Control PDUs; these packets will not be encrypted. This

procedure is complete in the master when the master receives the LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU from the slave. The procedure is completed in the slave when the acknowledgement has been received for the LL\_REJECT\_IND or LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU from the master.

- If the Host does provide a Long Term Key, the Link Layer of the slave shall calculate *sessionKey* using the encryption engine with LTK as the key, and SKD as the plain text input. The *sessionKey* parameter shall be set to the output of the encryption engine.

The *sessionKey* shall be used as the key for the encryption engine for all encrypted packets.

After *sessionKey* has been calculated, the Link Layer of the slave shall send an LL\_START\_ENC\_REQ PDU. This packet shall be sent unencrypted, and the Link Layer shall be set up to receive an encrypted packet in response.

When the Link Layer of the master receives an LL\_START\_ENC\_REQ PDU it shall send an LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP PDU. This PDU shall be sent encrypted and set up to receive encrypted.

When the Link Layer of the slave receives an LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP PDU it shall transmit an LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP PDU. This packet shall be sent encrypted.

When the Link Layer of the master receives the LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP PDU, the connection is encrypted. The Link Layer can now send LL Data PDUs and LL Control PDUs; these PDUs will be encrypted.

The Link Layers shall notify the Hosts that the connection is encrypted.

The procedure is complete in the master when the master receives the LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP PDU from the slave. The procedure is complete in the slave when the slave receives the LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP PDU from the master.

If at any time during the encryption start procedure, the Link Layer of the master or the slave receives an unexpected Data Channel PDU from the peer Link Layer, it shall immediately exit the Connection State, and shall transition to the Standby State. The Host shall be notified that the link has been disconnected with error code "Connection Terminated Due to MIC Failure" (0x3D).

#### 5.1.3.2 Encryption Pause Procedure

To enable a new encryption key to be used without disconnecting the link, encryption must be disabled and then enabled again. During the pause, data PDUs shall not be sent unencrypted to protect the data.

The Link Layer of the master shall finalize the sending of the current Data Channel PDU and may finalize the sending of additional Data Channel PDUs

queued in the Controller. After these Data Channel PDUs are acknowledged, the Link Layer of the master shall only send Empty PDUs or LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_REQ or LL\_TERMINATE\_IND PDUs.

The Link Layer of the master shall then send an LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_REQ PDU.

When the Link Layer of the slave receives an LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_REQ PDU it shall finalize the sending of the current Data Channel PDU and may finalize the sending of additional Data Channel PDUs queued in the Controller. After these Data Channel PDUs are acknowledged, the Link Layer of the slave is only allowed to send Empty PDUs or LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_RSP or LL\_TERMINATE\_IND PDUs.

The Link Layer of the slave shall then send an LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_RSP PDU. This packet shall be sent encrypted, and Link Layer shall be set up to receive unencrypted.

When the Link Layer of the master receives an LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_RSP PDU it shall set up to send and receive unencrypted. It shall then send an LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_RSP PDU to the slave unencrypted.

When the Link Layer of the slave receives an LL\_PAUSE\_ENC\_RSP PDU it shall set up to also send unencrypted.

The encryption start procedure shall now be used to re-enable encryption using a new session key.

If at any time during the encryption pause procedure, the Link Layer of the master or the slave receives an unexpected Data Channel PDU from the peer Link layer, it shall immediately exit the Connection State, and shall transition to the Standby State. The Host shall be notified that the link has been disconnected with error code "Connection Terminated Due to MIC Failure" (0x3D).

#### **5.1.4 Feature Exchange Procedure**

The Link Layer parameter for the current supported feature set (featureSet) may be exchanged after entering the Connection State. Both the master and slave can initiate this procedure.

The featureSet information may be cached. A Link Layer should not request this information on every connection if the information has been cached for this device. Cached information for a device may not be authoritative, and therefore an implementation must be able to accept the LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP PDU if use of a feature is attempted that is not currently supported or used by the peer.

The featureSet<sub>M</sub> parameter is the feature capabilities of the Link Layer of the master.

The  $\text{featureSet}_S$  parameter is the feature capabilities of the Link Layer of the Slave.

The  $\text{featureSet}_{\text{USED}}$  is the logical AND of  $\text{featureSet}_M$  and  $\text{featureSet}_S$ .

#### 5.1.4.1 Master-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure

The master initiates this procedure with an LL FEATURE REQ PDU, and the slave responds with an LL FEATURE RSP PDU.

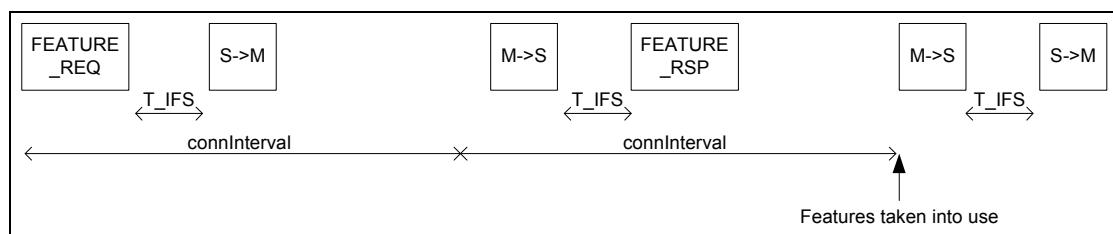
When the Link Layer of the master sends an LL FEATURE REQ PDU, the FeatureSet field shall be set to  $\text{featureSet}_M$ .

The Link Layer of the master sends an LL FEATURE REQ PDU. This can be sent on request from the Host or autonomously.

When the Link Layer of the slave receives an LL FEATURE REQ PDU it shall send an LL FEATURE RSP PDU. The Link Layer of the slave shall only use procedures that are indicated in  $\text{featureSet}_{\text{USED}}$ .

When the Link Layer of the master receives an LL FEATURE RSP PDU it shall only use procedures that are indicated in  $\text{featureSet}_{\text{USED}}$ .

An example of master-initiated feature exchange is shown in [Figure 5.2](#).



*Figure 5.2: Master-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure*

The procedure is complete in the master when the master receives the LL FEATURE RSP PDU from the slave.

#### 5.1.4.2 Slave-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure

The slave initiates this procedure with an LL SLAVE FEATURE REQ PDU, and the master responds with an LL FEATURE RSP PDU.

When the Link Layer of the slave sends an LL SLAVE FEATURE REQ PDU, the FeatureSet field shall be set to  $\text{featureSet}_S$ .

When the Link Layer of the master sends an LL FEATURE RSP PDU, the FeatureSet field shall be set to  $\text{featureSet}_{\text{USED}}$ .

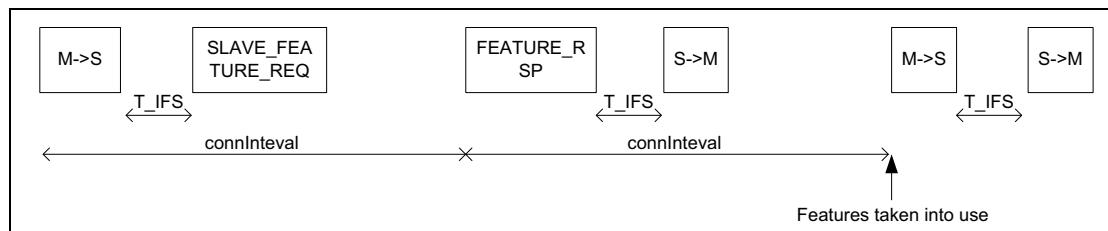
The Link Layer of the slave sends an LL\_SLAVE\_FEATURE\_REQ PDU. This can be sent on request from the Host or autonomously.

When the Link Layer of the master receives an LL\_SLAVE\_FEATURE\_REQ PDU, it shall send an LL\_FEATURE\_RSP PDU. The Link Layer of the master shall only use procedures that are indicated in featureSet<sub>USED</sub>.

When the Link Layer of the slave receives an LL\_FEATURE\_RSP PDU, it shall only use procedures that are indicated in featureSet<sub>USED</sub>.

If the Link Layer of the slave sends the LL\_SLAVE\_FEATURE\_REQ PDU to a master that does not understand that PDU, then the slave should expect an LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP PDU in response. If the LL\_SLAVE\_FEATURE\_REQ PDU was issued as a result of a Host initiated read remote used features procedure (see [\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.8.21](#)), then the Host shall be notified that the read remote used features procedure has completed with error code 0x1A "(Unsupported Remote Feature / Unsupported LMP Feature)".

[Figure 5.3](#) shows an example of slave initiated feature exchange.



[Figure 5.3: Slave-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure](#)

### 5.1.5 Version Exchange

The Link Layer parameters for version information (*companyID*, *subVerNum*, *linkLayerVer*, as defined in [Section 2.4.2.13](#)) may be exchanged after entering the Connection State. Either the Link Layer of the master or slave can initiate this procedure by sending an LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU. This procedure should be used when requested by the Host. This procedure may be initiated autonomously by the Link Layer.

The Link Layer shall only queue for transmission a maximum of one LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU during a connection.

If the Link Layer receives an LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU and has not already sent an LL\_VERSION\_IND then the Link Layer shall send an LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU to the peer device.

If the Link Layer receives an LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU and has already sent an LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU then the Link Layer shall not send another LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU to the peer device.

The procedure has completed when an LL\_VERSION\_IND PDU has been received from the peer device.

### 5.1.6 Termination Procedure

This procedure is used for voluntary termination of a connection while in the Connection State. Voluntary termination occurs when the Host requests the Link Layer to terminate the connection. Either the Link Layer of the master or slave can initiate this procedure by sending an LL\_TERMINATE\_IND PDU. The termination procedure is not used in the event of the loss of the connection, for example after link supervision timeout or after a procedure timeout.

The Link Layer shall start a timer,  $T_{terminate}$ , when the LL\_TERMINATE\_IND PDU has been queued for transmission. The initiating Link Layer shall send LL\_TERMINATE\_IND PDUs until an acknowledgement is received or until the timer,  $T_{terminate}$ , expires. The initial value for  $T_{terminate}$  shall be set to value of the *connSupervisionTimeout*.

When the Link Layer receives an LL\_TERMINATE\_IND PDU it shall send the acknowledgement, exit the Connection State and shall transition to the Standby State.

The procedure has completed when the acknowledgement has been received.

### 5.1.7 Connection Parameters Request Procedure

The master or slave may initiate a Connection Parameters Request procedure to request the remote device to have the Link Layer parameters for the connection (*connInterval*, *connSlaveLatency* and *connSupervisionTimeout*) updated any time after entering the Connection State.

#### 5.1.7.1 Issuing an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU

The Connection Parameters Request procedure is initiated by issuing an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU. The procedure can be initiated as a result of a Host initiated connection update procedure (see [\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.8.18](#)) or autonomously by the Link Layer (that is, without being requested by the Host).

If the Link Layer of the master or slave sends the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU to a device that does not understand that PDU, then the device should expect an LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP PDU in response. If the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU was issued by the Link Layer of the slave as a result of a Host initiated connection update procedure, then the Host shall be notified that the connection update procedure has completed with error code 0x1A “(Unsupported Remote Feature / Unsupported LMP Feature)”.

If the Link Layer initiates this procedure as a result of a Host initiated connection update procedure, then the Link Layer:

- Should set the Interval\_Min, Interval\_Max, Timeout, and Latency fields to the values received from the Host. Note: the Link Layer may modify the values of these fields, for example, because the values received from the Host would prevent the Link Layer from meeting commitments in another piconet.
- May indicate the preferred periodicity by setting the PreferredPeriodicity field to a value other than zero, as described in [Section 2.4.2.16](#).
- May set the Offset0 to Offset5 fields to a value other than 0xFFFF as described in [Section 2.4.2.16](#). If one or more of the Offset0 to Offset5 fields have been set, then:
  - The ReferenceConnEventCount field shall be set to indicate that at least one of the Offset0 to Offset5 fields is valid. If the ReferenceConnEventCount field is set, then it shall always be set to the connEventCounter of a connection event that is less than 32767 connection events in the future from the first transmission of the PDU. Note: retransmissions of the PDU can result in the ReferenceConnEventCount to be up to 32767 events in the past when the PDU is successfully received by the remote device.[E5380] See [Section 5.1.7.3.2](#) for examples on how to set the ReferenceConnEventCount field.
  - The PreferredPeriodicity field shall be set to a value other than zero unless Interval\_Min is equal to Interval\_Max.

If the Link Layer initiates this procedure autonomously, then the Latency field shall be set to the current value of connSlaveLatency and the Timeout field (in milliseconds) shall be set to the current value of connSupervisionTimeout. Any of the other fields (Interval\_Min, Interval\_Max, PreferredPeriodicity, ReferenceConnEventCount and Offset0 to Offset5) may be changed within the restrictions given above.

The Link Layer shall ensure that the parameters in the [LL\\_CONNECTION\\_PARAM\\_REQ](#) shall not cause supervision timeout; that is, Timeout (in milliseconds) to be less than  $2 * \text{Interval\_Max} * (\text{Latency} + 1)$ .

#### [5.1.7.2 Responding to LL\\_CONNECTION\\_PARAM\\_REQ and LL\\_CONNECTION\\_PARAM\\_RSP PDUs](#)

Upon receiving an [LL\\_CONNECTION\\_PARAM\\_REQ](#) PDU:

- The slave shall respond with either an [LL\\_CONNECTION\\_PARAM\\_RSP](#) PDU or an [LL\\_REJECT\\_IND\\_EXT](#) PDU.
- The master shall respond with either an [LL\\_CONNECTION\\_UPDATE\\_REQ](#) PDU or an [LL\\_REJECT\\_IND\\_EXT](#) PDU.

Upon receiving an [LL\\_CONNECTION\\_PARAM\\_RSP](#) PDU, the master shall respond with either an [LL\\_CONNECTION\\_UPDATE\\_REQ](#) PDU or an [LL\\_REJECT\\_IND\\_EXT](#) PDU.

The master shall not send the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU. The slave shall send an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU only in response to an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU.

If the received LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU contains parameters that are not acceptable to the Link Layer, then the Link Layer of the device shall respond to the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU with one of the following:

- An LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU (if the Link Layer is the slave of the connection) or an LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU (if the Link Layer is the master of the connection) containing alternative parameters.
- An LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU with Error Code 0x20 (Unsupported LL Parameter Value).

If the received LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU contains any fields that are out of valid range, then the Link Layer shall reject the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU by issuing an LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU with Error Code 0x1E (Invalid LL Parameters).

If an LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU is sent during the Connection Parameters Request procedure, then the procedure is complete on a device when it receives the LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU, and is complete on the device that issued the LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU when it receives the acknowledgement for the LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU.

If the received LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU requests only a change in the anchor points of the LE connection, then the Link Layer shall not indicate this request to its Host.

If the received LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU requests a change to one or more of *connInterval*, *connSlaveLatency*, and *connSupervisionTimeout* and if the values selected by the Link Layer are, respectively, within the range of the *connInterval*, the value of *connSlaveLatency* and the value of *connSupervisionTimeout* provided by the local Host, then the Link Layer may not indicate this request to its Host and proceed as if the Host has accepted the remote device's request. Otherwise, if the event to the Host is not masked, then the Link Layer shall first indicate this request to its Host.

If the local Host has not provided the range of *connInterval*, the value of *connSlaveLatency* and the value of *connSupervisionTimeout* to the Link Layer of the slave, then the Link Layer of the slave may indicate the received request to its Host if the event to the Host is not masked.

If the request is being indicated to the Host and the event to the Host is masked, then the Link Layer shall issue an LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU with Error Code 0x1A (Unsupported Remote Feature / Unsupported LMP Feature). Note: the device could have issued the LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU temporarily. The initiating device may retry.

Note: if the request is not being indicated to the Host, then the event mask is ignored.

If the Host is indicated of the request, it shall either accept or reject this request. If the Host rejects this request, then the device shall issue an LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU with Error Code provided by the Host. The Host shall only use the Error Code 0x3B (Unacceptable Connection Parameters) in order to reject the request.

If the Host accepts this request or if the request was not indicated to the Host, then:

- The slave shall respond to an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU with an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU. The rules for filling in various fields of the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU are the same as those for filling in various fields of the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU, as described in [Section 5.1.7.1](#). The rules for handling a received LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU on the Link Layer of the master are identical to the rules for handling a received LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU that are described earlier in this section.
- The master shall respond to an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU or an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU with an LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU. The master should try to choose a value of Interval that is a multiple of PreferredPeriodicity if the slave has set the PreferredPeriodicity field of the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ or LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU. The master should try to pick the values of WinOffset and WinSize such that the timing of the new connection events matches one of the Offset0 to Offset5 fields of the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU or the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU sent by the slave. The Instant field of the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU is set as described in [Section 5.1.1](#).

Once the master issues the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU, the connection parameters get updated as described in [Section 5.1.1](#).

The procedure is complete when the instant has passed and the new connection event parameters have been applied.

### 5.1.7.3 Examples

#### 5.1.7.3.1 Slave initiated anchor point move

The following example shows the Link Layer of the slave requesting a change in the anchor points of the LE connection by 3.75ms.

The Link Layer of the slave issues an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU with the following parameters:

- Interval\_Min: *connInterval*
- Interval\_Max: *connInterval*
- Latency: *connSlaveLatency*
- Timeout: *connSupervisionTimeout*
- PreferredPeriodicity: 0
- ReferenceConnEventCount: <any value that is less than 32767 connection events in the future>
- Offset0: 0x0003
- Offset1: 0xFFFF
- Offset2: 0xFFFF
- Offset3: 0xFFFF
- Offset4: 0xFFFF
- Offset5: 0xFFFF

If the Link Layer of the master accepts the slave's request, then it could respond with an LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU that contains any one of the following set of parameters. In all the sets, Interval is set to *connInterval*, Latency is set to *connSlaveLatency*, Timeout is set to *connSupervisionTimeout* and Instant is set to any value that is less than 32767 connection events in the future.

- Option 1: the first packet sent after the instant by the master is inside the Transmit Window and 3.75ms from the beginning of the Transmit Window.
  - $3 \leq \text{WinSize} \leq 8$
  - WinOffset: 0
- Option 2: the first packet sent after the instant by the master is inside the Transmit Window and 2.5ms from the beginning of the Transmit Window.
  - $2 \leq \text{WinSize} \leq 8$
  - WinOffset: 1
- Option 3: the first packet sent after the instant by the master is inside the Transmit Window and 1.25ms from the beginning of the Transmit Window.
  - $1 \leq \text{WinSize} \leq 8$
  - WinOffset: 2
- Option 4: the first packet sent after the instant by the master is inside the Transmit Window and 0ms from the beginning of the Transmit Window.
  - $1 \leq \text{WinSize} \leq 8$
  - WinOffset: 3

### 5.1.7.3.2 ReferenceConnEventCount

[Figure 5.4](#) and [Figure 5.5](#) show examples of how the ReferenceConnEventCount and the Offset0 to Offset5 fields of the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ and the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_RSP PDU can be utilized to indicate the possible position of the anchor points of the connection with the new connection parameters relative to the anchor points of the connection with the old connection parameters. This figure only shows Offset0 (and not Offset1 to Offset5) for simplicity. The figure also shows the Instant where the updated connection parameters are applied. Note that the actual Instant occurs  $\text{connInterval}_{\text{OLD}}$  after the last connection event transmitted with the old connection parameters whereas the Instant field in the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU is set to the *connEventCounter* of the connection event transmitted with the old connection parameters.

The ReferenceConnEventCount is set to the *connEventCounter* of the connection event on the old connection parameters such that the start of the very next connection event on the new connection parameters is Offset0 (in milliseconds) away from the start of the ReferenceConnEventCount connection event.

[Figure 5.4](#) shows the case where the Instant is before the ReferenceConnEventCount. [Figure 5.5](#) shows the case where the Instant is after the ReferenceConnEventCount. Imaginary connection events transmitted with the old connection parameters have been shown beyond the Instant and imaginary connection events transmitted with the new connection parameters have been shown before the Instant.

In [Figure 5.4](#) and [Figure 5.5](#), the time interval,  $\Delta t$ , between the Instant and the start of the first connection event transmitted with the new connection parameters can be calculated using the following equations:

If (*ReferenceConnEventCount* > *Instant*)

$$\Delta t = ( (\text{ReferenceConnEventCount} - \text{Instant}) * \text{connInterval}_{\text{OLD}} + \text{offset0} ) \% \text{connInterval}_{\text{NEW}}$$

else

$$\Delta t = \text{connInterval}_{\text{NEW}} - ( (\text{Instant} - \text{ReferenceConnEventCount}) * \text{connInterval}_{\text{OLD}} - \text{offset0} ) \% \text{connInterval}_{\text{NEW}}$$

Note: The case where the ReferenceConnEventCount and Instant are on different sides of the eventCount wraparound point is not shown in the equations above.

Based on the calculated  $\Delta t$ , the WinOffset and WinSize fields in the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU could be set accordingly. See [Section 5.1.7.3.3](#) for an example.

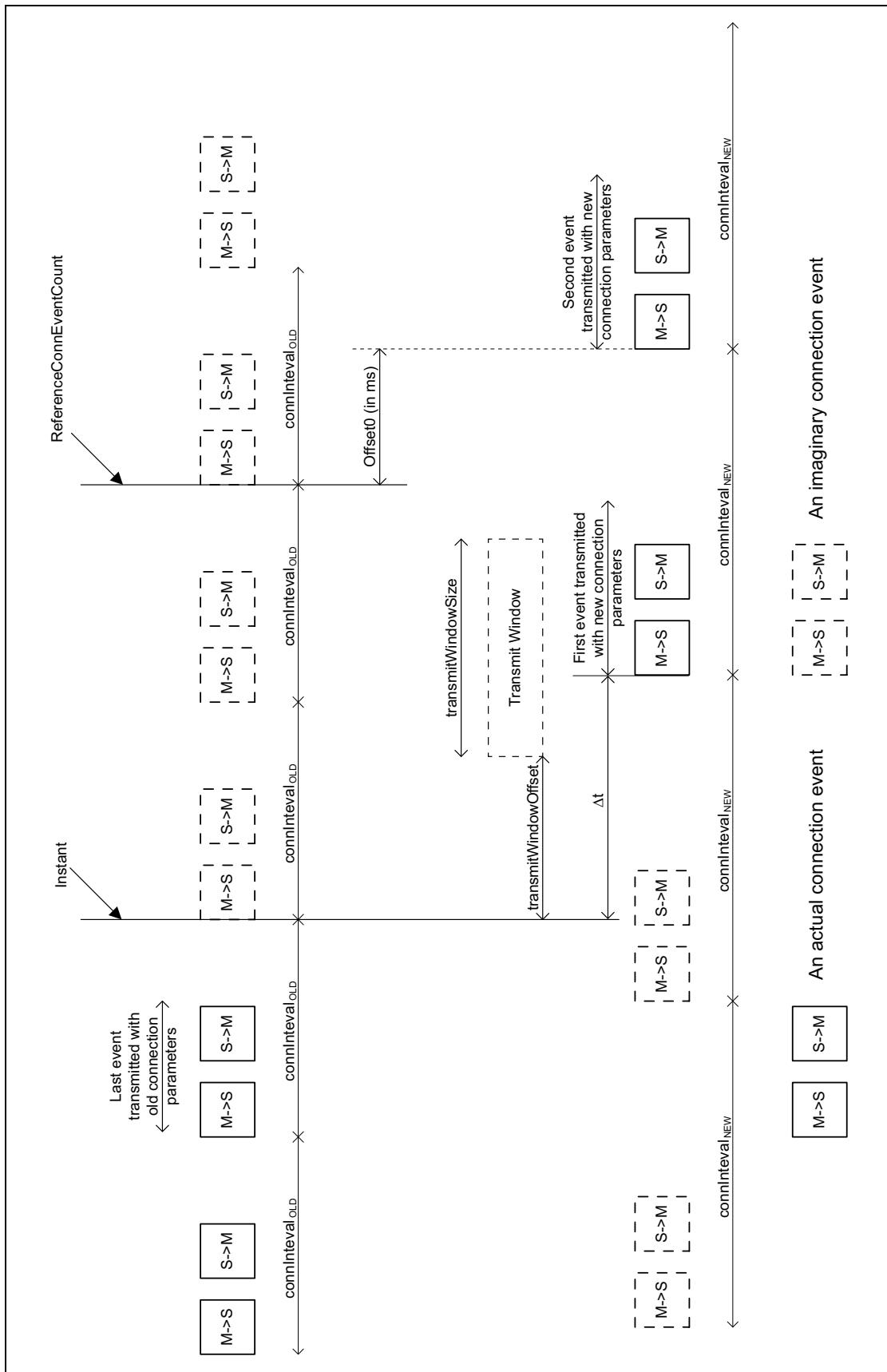


Figure 5.4: Utilizing the ReferenceConnEventCount and Offset0 fields to indicate position of the new anchor points – Instant is before the ReferenceConnEventCount

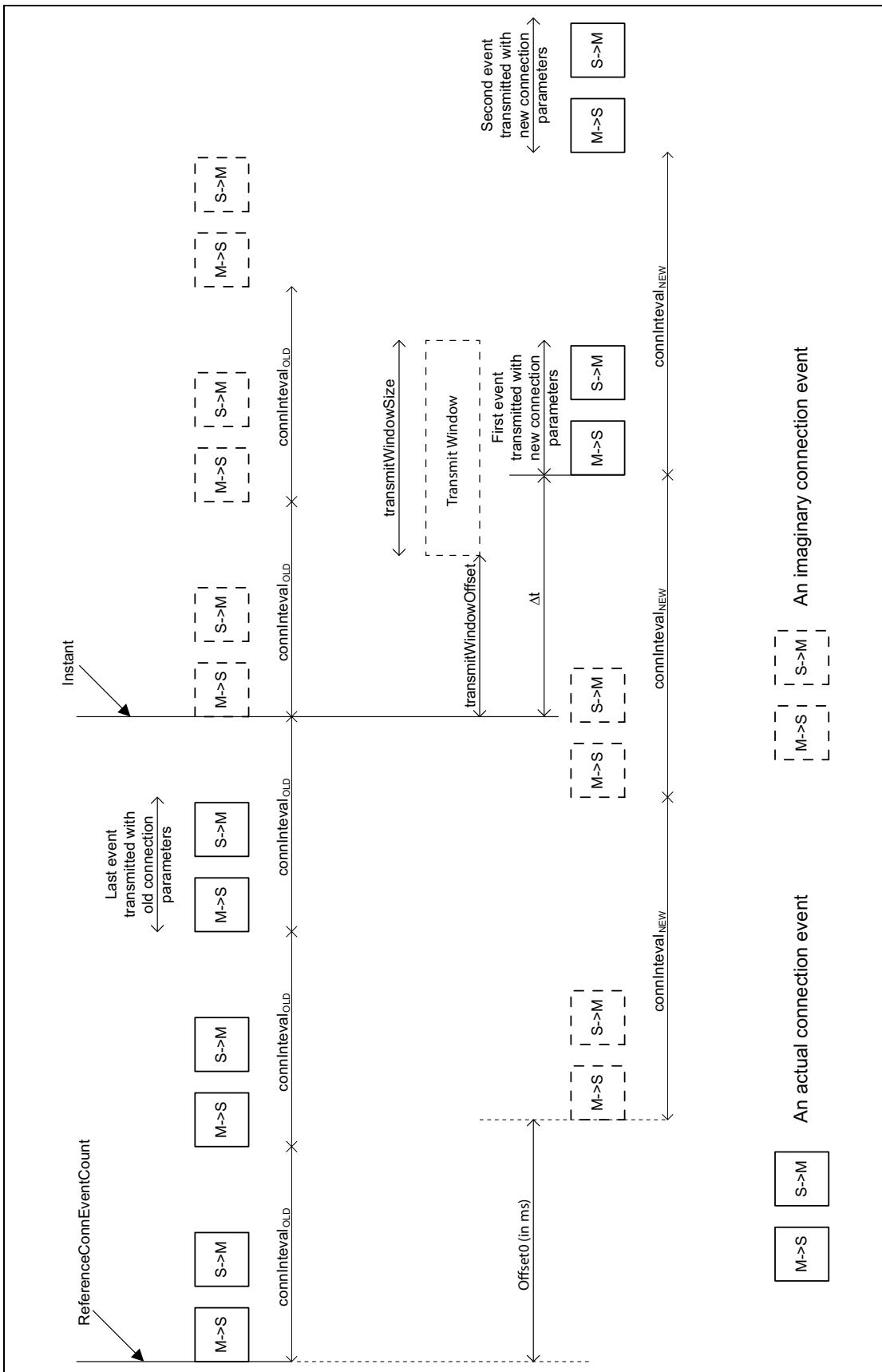


Figure 5.5: Utilizing the **ReferenceConnEventCount** and **Offset0** fields to indicate position of the new anchor points – Instant is after the **ReferenceConnEventCount**

### 5.1.7.3.3 Slave initiated interval and anchor point move

The following example shows the Link Layer of the slave requesting a change in both the connection interval (by indicating a PreferredPeriodicity such that PreferredPeriodicity and  $connInterval_{OLD}$  are not integral multiples of one another) and a change in anchor points of the LE connection by 3.75ms with respect to the ReferenceConnEventCount.

In this example,  $connInterval_{OLD}$  is 0x0C (15 ms). The Link Layer of the slave issues an LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU with the following parameters:

- Interval\_Min: 0x16
- Interval\_Max: 0x20
- Latency: connSlaveLatency
- Timeout: connSupervisionTimeout
- PreferredPeriodicity: 0x0A
- ReferenceConnEventCount: 0x1F00
- Offset0: 0x0003
- Offset1: 0xFFFF
- Offset2: 0xFFFF
- Offset3: 0xFFFF
- Offset4: 0xFFFF
- Offset5: 0xFFFF

If the Link Layer of the master accepts the slave's request, then it could respond with an LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU that contains any one of the following set of parameters. In all the sets, the new connection interval  $connInterval_{NEW}$  is set to 0x1E (37.5 ms), Latency is set to  $connSlaveLatency$ , Timeout is set to  $connSupervisionTimeout$  and Instant is set to 0x1F06.

$\Delta t$ , as described in [Section 5.1.7.3.2](#) is calculated as 21 (26.25 ms).

The WinSize and WinOffset fields in the LL\_CONNECTION\_UPDATE\_REQ PDU can contain any of the following example set of parameters:

- Option 1: the first packet sent after the instant by the master is inside the Transmit Window and 3.75 ms from the beginning of the Transmit Window.
  - $3 \leq \text{WinSize} \leq 8$
  - WinOffset: 18
- Option 2: the first packet sent after the instant by the master is inside the Transmit Window and 2.5 ms from the beginning of the Transmit Window.
  - $2 \leq \text{WinSize} \leq 8$
  - WinOffset: 19

- Option 3: the first packet sent after the instant by the master is inside the Transmit Window and 1.25ms from the beginning of the Transmit Window.
  - $1 \leq \text{WinSize} \leq 8$
  - WinOffset: 20
- Option 4: the first packet sent after the instant by the master is inside the Transmit Window and 0ms from the beginning of the Transmit Window.
  - $1 \leq \text{WinSize} \leq 8$
  - WinOffset: 21

### 5.1.8 LE Ping Procedure

The LE Ping procedure when supported can be used at the Link Layer to verify presence of the remote Link Layer. The procedure can also be used to verify message integrity on the LE ACL logical transport by forcing the remote device to send an LE ACL packet that contains a valid MIC.

The initiating Link Layer sends an LL\_PING\_REQ PDU. The responding Link Layer responds with the LL\_PING\_RSP PDU. The initiating Link Layer may be a master or slave.

The Link Layer supporting this feature shall send an LL\_PING\_REQ PDU when the remote device has not sent a packet containing a payload protected by a MIC within the authenticated payload timeout set by the Host ([\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.3.94](#)).

The procedure is completed when either an LL\_PING\_RSP is received or, in the case the remote device does not support the LE Ping feature, an LL\_UNKNOWN\_RSP is received with the Unknown type set to LL\_PING\_REQ.

## 5.2 PROCEDURE RESPONSE TIMEOUT

This section specifies procedure timeout rules that shall be applied to all the Link Layer control procedures specified in [Section 5.1](#), except for the Connection Update and Channel Map Update procedures for which there are no timeout rules.

To be able to detect a non-responsive Link Layer Control Procedure, both the master and the slave shall use a procedure response timeout timer,  $T_{PRT}$ . Upon the initiation of a procedure, the procedure response timeout timer shall be reset and started.

Each LL Control PDU that is queued for transmission resets the procedure response timeout timer.

When the procedure completes, the procedure response timeout timer shall be stopped.

If the procedure response timeout timer reaches 40 seconds, the connection is considered lost. The Link Layer exits the Connection State and shall transition to the Standby State. The Host shall be notified of the loss of connection.

### 5.3 PROCEDURE COLLISIONS

Since LL Control PDUs are not interpreted in real time, collisions can occur where both the Link Layer of the master and the Link Layer of the slave either initiate the same procedure out of a limited set of LL Control Procedures or initiate procedures that update Link Layer parameters at a given *connEventCount*. In this situation, the following rules shall be followed:

- If the slave initiates the Connection Parameters Request Procedure ([Section 5.1.7](#)) at the same time the master is in the process of initiating or has already initiated a Connection Parameters Request Procedure or a Connection Update Procedure ([Section 5.1.1](#)), then the master shall reject the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU received from the slave by issuing an LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU with Error Code 0x23 (LMP Error Transaction Collision) and proceed with the master initiated procedure. The slave shall proceed to handle the master initiated procedure and consider the slave initiated procedure as complete.
- If the slave initiates the Connection Parameters Request Procedure ([Section 5.1.7](#)) at the same time the master is in the process of initiating or has already initiated a Channel Map Update Procedure, then the master shall reject the LL\_CONNECTION\_PARAM\_REQ PDU received from the slave by issuing an LL\_REJECT\_IND\_EXT PDU with Error Code 0x2A (Different Transaction Collision) and proceed with the master initiated procedure. The slave shall proceed to handle the master initiated procedure and consider the slave initiated procedure as complete.

### 5.4 LE AUTHENTICATED PAYLOAD TIMEOUT

LE Authenticated Payload Timeout (authenticatedPayloadTO) is a parameter that defines the maximum amount of time in milliseconds allowed between receiving packets containing a valid MIC. The Host can change the value of authenticatedPayloadTO using the HCI\_Write\_Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout Command ([\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.3.94](#)). The default value for authenticatedPayloadTO is 30 seconds.

When the connection is encrypted, a device supporting LE Ping feature shall start the LE Authenticated Payload timer  $T_{LE\_Authenticated\_Payload}$  to monitor the time since the last reception of a packet containing a valid MIC from the remote device. Each device shall reset the timer  $T_{LE\_Authenticated\_Payload}$  upon reception of a packet with a valid MIC.

If at any time in the CONNECTION state the timer  $T_{LE\_Authenticated\_Payload}$  reaches the authenticatedPayloadTO value, the Host shall be notified using the

HCI Authenticated Payload Timeout Expired event ([\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.7.75](#)). The  $T_{LE\_Authenticated\_Payload}$  Timer restarts after it is expired.

The timer  $T_{LE\_Authenticated\_Payload}$  shall continue to run during encryption pause procedure.

Whenever the Host sets the authenticatedPayloadTO while the timer  $T_{LE\_Authenticated\_Payload}$  is running, the timer shall be reset.

## SAMPLE DATA

*This part of the specification contains sample data for Bluetooth low energy. All sample data are provided for reference purpose only. They can be used to check the behavior of an implementation and avoid misunderstandings.*

## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Encryption sample data.....</b>	<b>107</b>
1.1	Encrypt Command .....	109
1.2	Derivation of the MIC and Encrypted Data .....	109

## 1 ENCRYPTION SAMPLE DATA

---

This section contains sample data for the Low Energy encryption process.

The following scenario describes the start of encryption, followed by the transfer of an encrypted data channel data packet in each direction. It describes:

- how the derived values are calculated (fixed values are given in red)
- which HCI command and events are exchanged (given in italic)
- which LL messages are exchanged over the air (given in green).

Note: CRCs are not shown because they depend on a random CRC init value. Scrambling is disabled.

The following parameters are set to the fixed values below:

```
LTK = 0x4C68384139F574D836BCF34E9DFB01BF (MSO to LSO)
EDIV = 0x2474 (MSO to LSO)
```

```
RAND = 0xABCDDEF1234567890 (MSO to LSO)
SKDm = 0xACBDCEDE0F10213 (MSO to LSO)
SKDs = 0x0213243546576879 (MSO to LSO)
IVm = 0xBADCAB24 (MSO to LSO)
IVs = 0xDEAFBABE (MSO to LSO)
```

```
HCI_LE_Start_Encryption (length 0x1C) - master HCI command
    Pars (LSO to MSO)      00 08 90 78 56 34 12 ef cd ab 74 24 bf 01 fb 9d 4e f3 bc 36
    d8 74 f5 39 41 38 68 4c
        Handle (2-octet value MSO to LSO) 0x8000
        Random (8-octet value MSO to LSO) 0xabcdef1234567890
        Encrypted Diversifier (2-octet value MSO to LSO) 0x2474
        Long Term Key (16-octet value MSO to LSO) 0x4c68384139f574d836bcf34e9dfb01bf
```

```
SKDm (LSO to MSO)      :0x13:0x02:0xF1:0xE0:0xDF:0xCE:0xBD:0xAC:
IVm (LSO to MSO)       :0x24:0xAB:0xDC:0xBA
```

```
LL_ENC_REQ 03 17 03 90 78 56 34 12 ef cd ab 74 24 13 02 f1 e0 df ce bd ac 24
ab dc ba
    Length 0x17
    Control Type 0x03
    Rand 90 78 56 34 12 ef cd ab
    EDIV 74 24
    SKDm 13 02 f1 e0 df ce bd ac
    IVm 24 ab dc ba
```

```
SKDs (LSO to MSO)      :0x79:0x68:0x57:0x46:0x35:0x24:0x13:0x02:
IVs (LSO to MSO)       :0xBE:0xBA:0xAF:0xDE
```

*Sample Data*

```

LL_ENC_RSP 0b 0d 04 79 68 57 46 35 24 13 02 be ba af de
Length 0x0D
Control Type 0x04
SKDs 79 68 57 46 35 24 13 02
IVs be ba af de

IV = IVm || IVs
IV (LSO to MSO) :0x24:0xAB:0xDC:0xBA:0xBE:0xBA:0xAF:0xDE

HCl_Long_Term_Key_Requested(length 0x0D) - slave event
Pars (LSO to MSO) 05 01 08 90 78 56 34 12 ef cd ab 74 24
LE_Event_Code 0x05
Handle (2-octet value MSO to LSO) 0x0801
Random (8-octet value MSO to LSO) 0xabcdef1234567890
Encrypted Diversifier (2-octet value MSO to LSO) 0x2474

HCl_LE_Long_Term_Key_Request_Reply (length 0x12) - slave command
Pars (LSO to MSO) 01 08 bf 01 fb 9d 4e f3 bc 36 d8 74 f5 39 41 38 68 4c
Handle (2-octet value MSO to LSO) 0x0801
Key (16-octet value MSO to LSO) 0x4C68384139F574D836BCF34E9DFB01BF

SKD = SKDm || SKDs
SKD (LSO to MSO)
:0x13:0x02:0xF1:0xE0:0xDF:0xCE:0xBD:0xAC:0x79:0x68:0x57:0x46:0x35:0x24:0x13:0x02:

SK = Encrypt(LTK, SKD)
SK (LSO to MSO)
:0x66:0xC6:0xC2:0x27:0x8E:0x3B:0x8E:0x05:0x3E:0x7E:0xA3:0x26:0x52:0x1B:0xAD:0x99:

LL_START_ENC_REQ 07 01 05
Length 0x01
Control Type 0x05

LL_START_ENC_RSP1 0f 05 9f cd a7 f4 48
Length 0x05
Control Type Encrypted:0x9F Clear:0x06
MIC (32-bit value MSO to LSO) 0xCDA7F448 (note that MICs are sent MSO first on
the air)

LL_START_ENC_RSP2 07 05 a3 4c 13 a4 15
Length 0x05
Control Type Encrypted:0xA3 Clear:0x06
MIC (32-bit value MSO to LSO) 0x4C13A415

HCl_ACL_Data_Packet Master host to controller
00 08 1b 00 17 00 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 6a 6b 6c 6d 6e 6f 70 71 31 32 33 34 35 36
37 38 39 30
Handle (12-bit value MSO to LSO) 0x8000
Data Total Length (16-bit value MSO to LSO) 0x001B (27 dec)
Data (LSO to MSO) 17 00 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 6a 6b 6c 6d 6e 6f 70 71 31 32 33
34 35 36 37 38 39 30

LL_DATA1 0e 1f 7a 70 d6 64 15 22 6d f2 6b 17 83 9a 06 04 05 59 6b d6 56 4f 79 6b 5b
9c e6 ff 32 f7 5a 6d 33
Length 0x1F (i.e. 27 + 4 = 31 dec)
Data (LSO to MSO)

```

---

## *Sample Data*



```
    Clear      17 00 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 6a 6b 6c 6d 6e 6f 70 71 31 32 33 34 35 36  
37 38 39 30  
    Encrypted  7a 70 d6 64 15 22 6d f2 6b 17 83 9a 06 04 05 59 6b d6 56 4f 79 6b 5b  
9c e6 ff 32  
    MIC (32-bit value MSO to LSO)  0xF75A6D33
```

```
HCI_ACL_Data_Packet Slave host to controller
  01 08 1b 00 17 00 37 36 35 34 33 32 31 30 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 4a 4b 4c 4d
4e 4f 50 51
    Handle (12-bit value MSO to LSO) 0x8001
    Data Total Length (16-bit value MSO to LSO) 0x001B (27 dec)
    Data (LSO to MSO) 17 00 37 36 35 34 33 32 31 30 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 4a
4b 4c 4d 4e 4f 50 51
```

```

LL_DATA2 06 1f f3 88 81 e7 bd 94 c9 c3 69 b9 a6 68 46 dd 47 86 aa 8c 39 ce 54 0d 0d
ae 3a dc df 89 b9 60 88
Length 0x1F (i.e. 27 + 4 = 31 dec)
Data (LSO to MSO)
    Clear      17 00 37 36 35 34 33 32 31 30 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 4a 4b 4c 4d
4e 4f 50 51
    Encrypted f3 88 81 e7 bd 94 c9 c3 69 b9 a6 68 46 dd 47 86 aa 8c 39 ce 54 0d 0d
ae 3a dc df
    MIC (32-bit value MSO to LSO)      0x89B96088

```

## 1.1 ENCRYPT COMMAND

```
HCI_LE_Encrypt (length 0x20) - command
    Pars (LSO to MSO) bf 01 fb 9d 4e f3 bc 36 d8 74 f5 39 41 38 68 4c 13 02 f1 e0 df
    ce bd ac 79 68 57 46 35 24 13 02
    Key (16-octet value MSO to LSO): 0x4C68384139F574D836BCF34E9DFB01BF
    Plaintext_Data (16-octet value MSO to LSO): 0x0213243546576879acbdcedfe0f10213

HCI_Command_Complete (length 0x14) - event
    Pars (LSO to MSO) 02 17 20 00 66 c6 c2 27 8e 3b 8e 05 3e 7e a3 26 52 1b ad 99
    Num_HCI_Commands_Packets: 0x02
    Command_Opcode (2-octet value MSO to LSO): 0x2017
    Status: 0x00
    Encrypted Data (16-octet value MSO to LSO): 0x99ad1b5226a37e3e058e3b8e27c2c666
```

## 1.2 DERIVATION OF THE MIC AND ENCRYPTED DATA

All B/X/A/S values below follow notation of AES-CCM: MSbyte to LSbyte & msbit to lsbit.

IV = DEAFBABEBADCAB24  
SK = 99AD1B5226A37E3E058E3B8E27C2C666

1. START ENC RSP1 (packet 0, M --> S)

---

### *Sample Data*



```
X1 = 712eaaaae60603521d245e50786eefe4  
X2 = debc43782a022675fca0aa6f0854f1ab  
X3 = 6399913fede5fa111bdb993bbfb9be06  
=> MIC = 6399913f
```

A0 = 0100000008024ABDCBABEBAAFFDE0000  
A1 = 0100000008024ABDCBABEBAAFFDE0001

```
S0 = ae3e6577f64a8f25408c9c10d53acf8e  
S1 = 99190d88f4aa1b60b97ecfe6f5fee777
```

So, encrypted packet payload = 9F  
encrypted MIC = CDA7F448

Which results in the following packet:

```
LL_START_ENC_RSP1 - 0f 05 9f cd a7 f4 48
Length: 05
Control Type:
    Clear:      06
    Encrypted: 9f
MIC: CD A7 F4 48
```

2.START ENC RSP2 (packet 0, S --> M)

```
B0 = 49000000000024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0001  
B1 = 00010300000000000000000000000000000000  
B2 = 06000000000000000000000000000000000000
```

```
X1 = ddc86e3094f0c29cf341ef4c2c1e0088  
X2 = fe960f5c93fba45a53959842ea8a0c0a  
X3 = db403db3a32f39156faf6a6b472e1010  
=> MIC = db403db3
```

A0 = 0100000000024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0000  
A1 = 0100000000024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0001

```
S0 = 975399a66acdc39124886930d7bca95f  
S1 = a5add4127b2f43788ddc9cd86b0b89d2
```

So, encrypted packet payload = A3  
encrypted MIC = 4c13a415

Which results in the following packet:

LL\_START\_ENC\_RSP2 07 05 a3 4c 13 a4 15  
Length: 05  
Control Type:

---

## *Sample Data*



Clear: 06  
Encrypted: A3  
MIC: 4c 13 a4 15

### 3. Data packet1 (packet 1, M --> S)

```
B0 = 49010000008024ABDCBABEBAAFDE001B  
B1 = 000102000000000000000000000000000000  
B2 = 1700636465666768696A6B6C6D6E6F70  
B3 = 7131323334353637383930000000000000
```

```
X1 = 7c688612996de101f3eacb68b443969c  
X2 = e3f1ef5c30161c0a9ec07274a0757fc8  
X3 = e7e346f5b7c8a6072890a60dcf4ec20a  
X4 = 3db113320b182f9fed635db14cac2df0  
=> MIC = 3db11332
```

```
A0 = 0101000008024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0000  
A1 = 0101000008024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0001  
A2 = 0101000008024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0002
```

```
S0 = caeb7e017296dd2fa9a2ce789179501a  
S1 = 6d70b50070440a9a027de8f66b6a6a29  
S2 = 1ae7647c4d5e6dabdec602404c302341
```

So, encrypted packet payload =

7A70D66415226DF26B17839A060405596BD6564F796B5B9CE6FF32  
    encrypted MIC = F75A6D33

which results in the following packet:

```
LL_DATA1 0E 1F 7A 70 D6 64 15 22 6D F2 6B 17 83 9A 06 04 05 59 6B D6  
56 4F 79 6B 5B 9C E6 FF 32 F7 5A 6D 33  
Length: 1F  
Data:  
Clear:      17 00 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 6a 6b 6c 6d 6e 6f 70 71 31  
32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 30  
Encrypted: 7A 70 D6 64 15 22 6D F2 6B 17 83 9A 06 04 05 59 6B D6  
56 4F 79 6B 5B 9C E6 FF 32  
MIC: F7 5A 6D 33
```

4. Data packet2 (packet 1, S --> M)

*Sample Data*

```
B3 = 4748494A4B4C4D4E4F50510000000000
X1 = 714234d50d6f1da5663be3e78460ad87
X2 = 96df1d97959e6176ac215c7baf90c674
X3 = 6cc52c3dcecdcc2fa81eb347887960673
X4 = a776a26be617366496c391e36f6374a1 => MIC = a776a26b
```

```
A0 = 01010000000024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0000
A1 = 01010000000024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0001
A2 = 01010000000024ABDCBABEBAAFDE0002
```

```
S0 = 2ecfc2e31e01875653c0f306fc7bfb96
S1 = e488b6d188a0faf15889e72a059902c0
S2 = edc470841f4140e0758c8e8f708399bd
```

So, encrypted packet payload =

```
F38881E7BD94C9C369B9A66846DD4786AA8C39CE540D0DAE3ADCDF
encrypted MIC = 89B96088
```

Which results in the following packet:

```
LL_DATA2 06 1F F3 88 81 E7 BD 94 C9 C3 69 B9 A6 68 46 DD 47 86 AA 8C
39 CE 54 0D 0D AE 3A DC DF 89 B9 60 88
Length: 1F
```

```
Data:
Clear: 17 00 37 36 35 34 33 32 31 30 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48
49 4a 4b 4c 4d 4e 4f 50 51
Encrypted: F3 88 81 E7 BD 94 C9 C3 69 B9 A6 68 46 DD 47 86 AA 8C
39 CE 54 0D 0D AE 3A DC DF
```

MIC: 89 B9 60 88

Core System Package [Low Energy Controller volume]

Part D

## MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS

*Examples of message sequence charts showing the interactions of the Host Controller Interface with the Link Layer.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>116</b>
1.1	Notation.....	116
1.2	Control Flow .....	117
1.3	Example MSC .....	117
<b>2</b>	<b>Standby State.....</b>	<b>118</b>
2.1	Initial Setup .....	118
2.2	Random Device Address .....	119
2.3	White Lists.....	119
<b>3</b>	<b>Advertising State.....</b>	<b>120</b>
3.1	Undirected Advertising .....	120
3.2	Directed Advertising .....	121
<b>4</b>	<b>Scanning State .....</b>	<b>123</b>
4.1	Passive Scanning .....	123
4.2	Active Scanning .....	124
<b>5</b>	<b>Initiating State.....</b>	<b>125</b>
5.1	Initiating a Connection .....	125
5.2	Canceling an Initiation.....	126
<b>6</b>	<b>Connection State.....</b>	<b>127</b>
6.1	Sending Data .....	127
6.2	Connection Update .....	128
6.3	Channel Map Update .....	128
6.4	Features Exchange.....	129
6.5	Version Exchange .....	130
6.6	Start Encryption.....	131
6.7	Start Encryption without Long Term Key .....	132
6.8	Start Encryption with Event Masked.....	133
6.9	Start Encryption Without Slave Supporting Encryption .....	134
6.10	Restart Encryption.....	135
6.11	Disconnect .....	136
6.12	Connection Parameters Request.....	137
6.13	LE Ping .....	141

# 1 INTRODUCTION

---

This section shows typical interactions between Host Controller Interface (HCI) Commands and Events and the Link Layer (LL). It focuses on the message sequence charts (MSCs) for the procedures specified in “Bluetooth Host Controller Interface Functional Specification” with regard to Link Layer Control Procedures from “Link Layer”. This section illustrates only the most useful scenarios; it does not cover all possible alternatives. Furthermore, the message sequence charts do not consider errors over the air interface or host interface. In all message sequence charts it is assumed that all events are not masked, so the Host Controller will not filter out any events.

The sequence of messages in these message sequence charts is for illustrative purposes. The messages may be sent in a different order where allowed by the Link Layer or HCI sections. If any of these charts differ with text in the Link Layer or HCI sections, the text in those sections shall be considered normative. This section is informative.

## 1.1 NOTATION

The notation used in the message sequence charts (MSCs) consists of ovals, elongated hexagons, boxes, lines, and arrows. The vertical lines terminated on the top by a shadow box and at the bottom by solid oval indicate a protocol entity that resides in a device. MSCs describe interactions between these entities and states those entities may be in.

The following symbols represent interactions and states:

Oval	Defines the context for the message sequence chart
Hexagon	Indicates a condition needed to start the transactions below this hexagon. The location and width of the Hexagon indicates which entity or entities make this decision.
Box	Replaces a group of transactions. May indicate a user action, or a procedure in the baseband.
Dashed Box	Optional group of transactions.
Solid Arrow	Represents a message, signal or transaction. Can be used to show Link Layer and HCI traffic. Some baseband packet traffic is also shown. These are prefixed by BB followed by either the type of packet, or an indication that there is an ACK signal in a packet.
Dashed Arrow	Represents a optional message, signal or transaction. Can be used to show Link Layer and HCI traffic.

## 1.2 CONTROL FLOW

Some message sequences are split into several charts. These charts are marked in sequence with different step numbers with multiple paths through with optional letters after the step numbers. Numbers indicate normal or required ordering. The letters represent alternative paths. For example, Step 4 is after Step 3, and Step 5a could be executed instead of Step 5b.

## 1.3 EXAMPLE MSC

The protocol entities represented in the example shown in [Figure 1.1](#) illustrate the interactions of two devices named A and B. Note that each device includes a Host and a LL entity in this example. Other MSCs in this section may show the interactions of more than two devices.

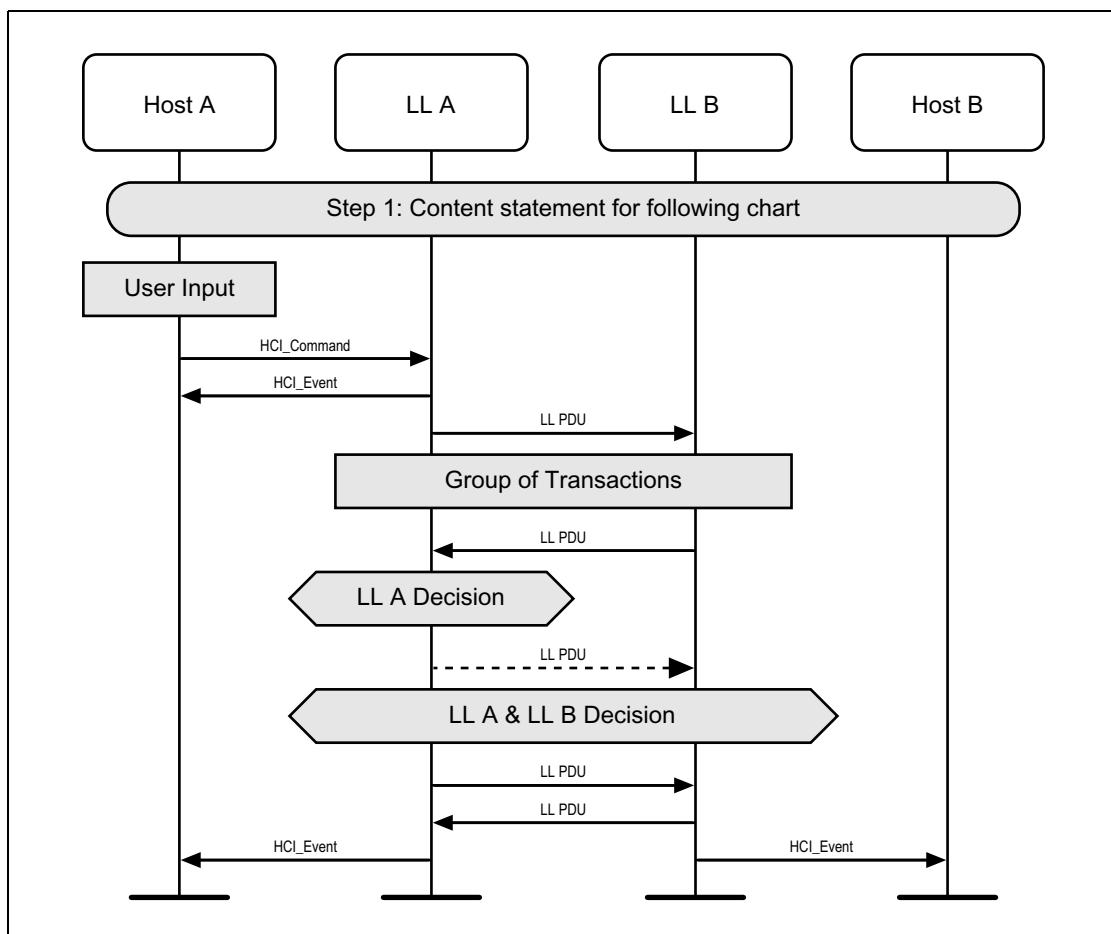


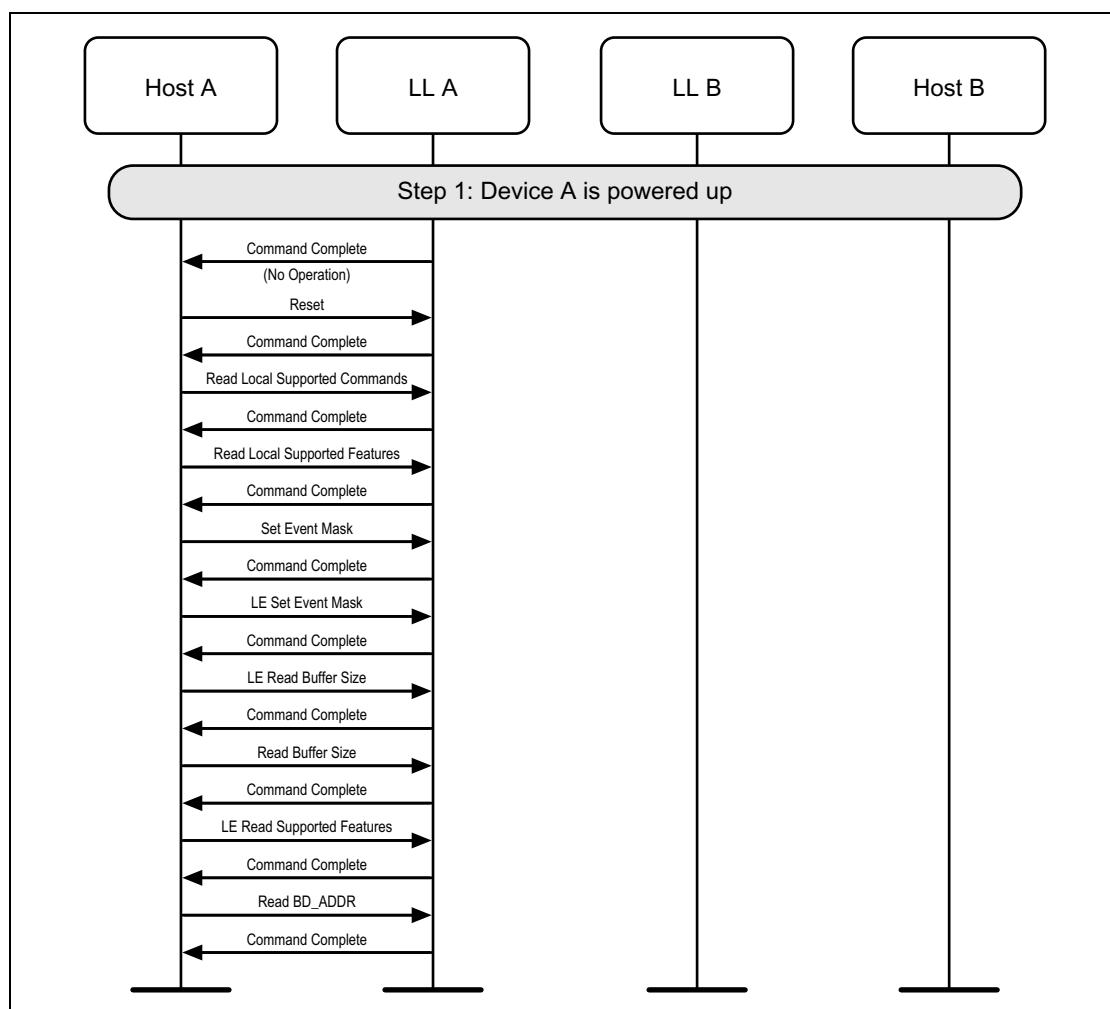
Figure 1.1: Example MSC

## 2 STANDBY STATE

### 2.1 INITIAL SETUP

To perform initial setup of a LE Controller, the following sequence of actions may be required.

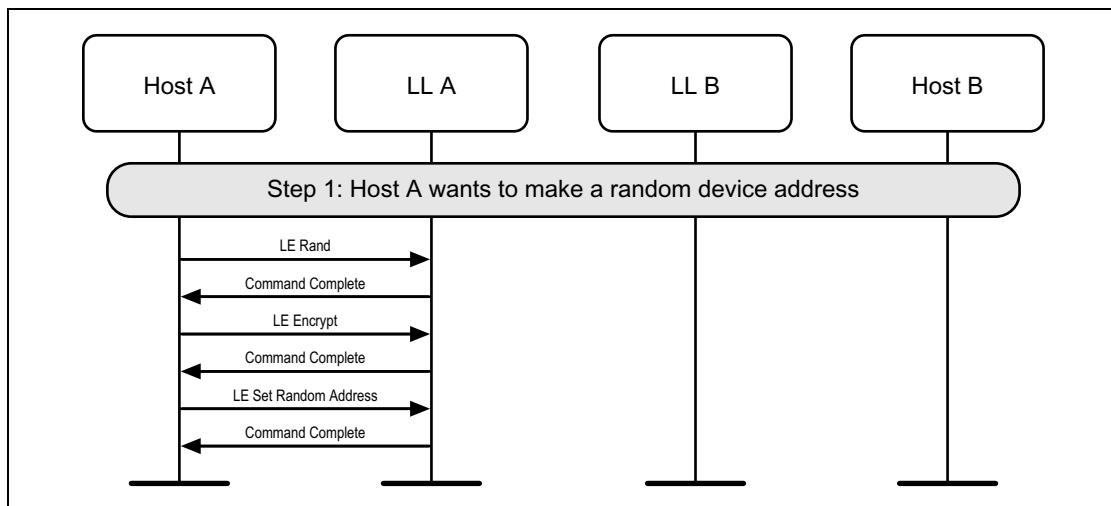
First, the host would wait for the Controller to indicate the number of HCI Command Packets the Host is currently allowed to send using a Command Complete event on a No Operation command opcode. Then it would reset the Controller to a known state. Then it needs to read the local supported features to check that low energy is supported on this Controller. It would then set the event mask and LE event mask to enable the events that it wants the Controller to generate to the Host. Next, it will check the buffers that are available for data flow, using the Read Buffer Size and LE Read Buffer Size commands. Then it would read the locally supported LE features and select the features that it wishes to use. Finally, it will read the public device address if the Controller has one (see [Figure 2.1](#)).



*Figure 2.1: Initial Setup*

## 2.2 RANDOM DEVICE ADDRESS

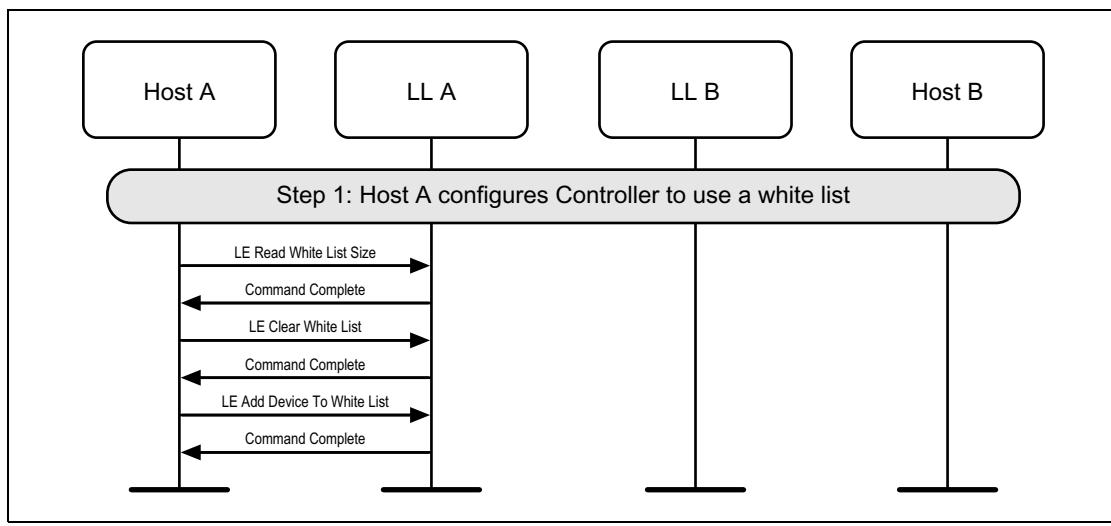
A device may use a random device address, but this address has to be configured before being used during advertising, scanning or initiating (see [Figure 2.2](#)).



*Figure 2.2: Random Device Address*

## 2.3 WHITE LISTS

Before advertising, scanning or initiating can use white lists, the white list may be cleared and devices added in as required (see [Figure 2.3](#)).

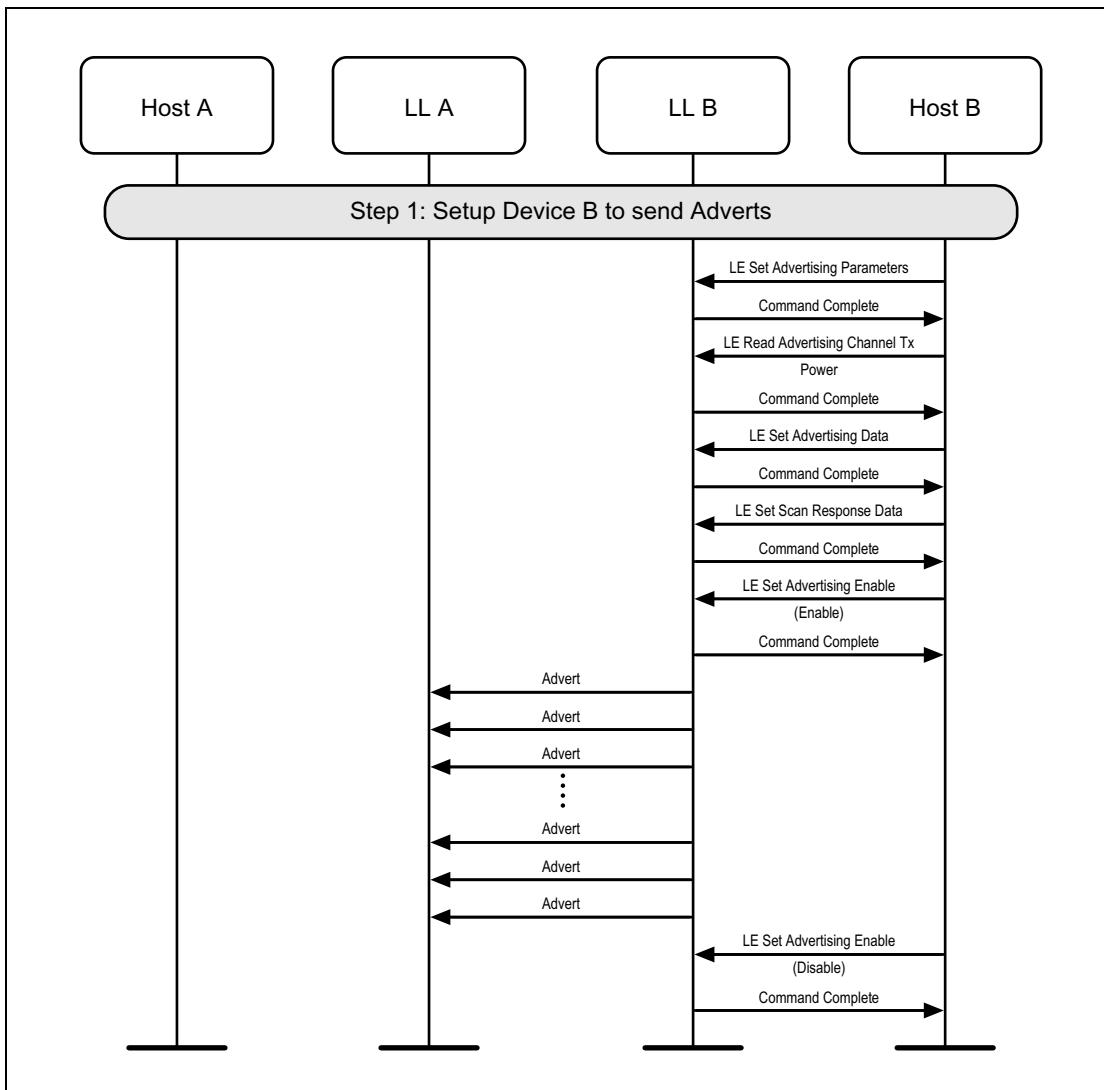


*Figure 2.3: White Lists*

## 3 ADVERTISING STATE

### 3.1 UNDIRECTED ADVERTISING

A device may enter the Advertising State by enabling advertising. It should also configure the advertising parameters before doing this (see [Figure 3.1](#)).



*Figure 3.1: Undirected Advertising*

### 3.2 DIRECTED ADVERTISING

A device may use directed advertising to allow an initiator to connect to it. High duty cycle directed advertising is time limited in the Controller and therefore this may fail before a connection is created. This example only shows the failure case (see [Figure 3.2](#)).

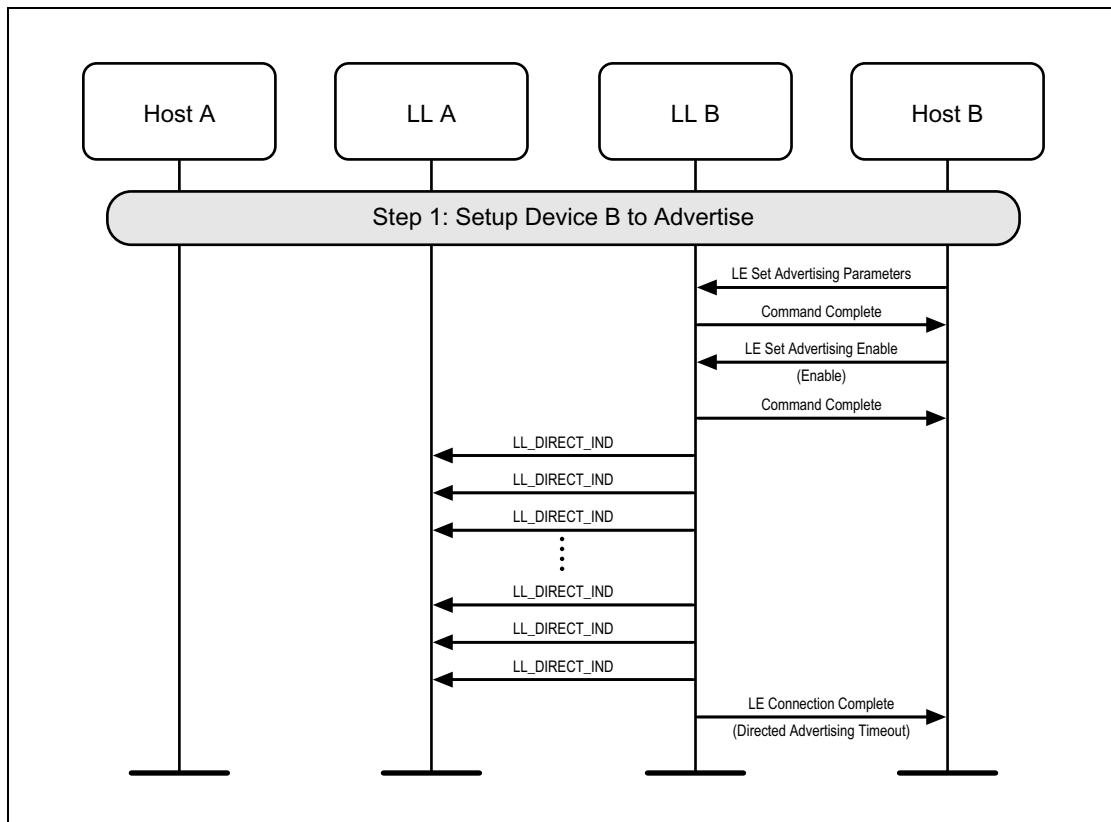


Figure 3.2: High Duty Cycle Directed Advertising showing failure case

## Message Sequence Charts



Low duty cycle directed advertising must similarly be enabled in order to enter the Advertising State. A device should also configure the advertising parameters before doing this (see [Figure 3.3](#)).

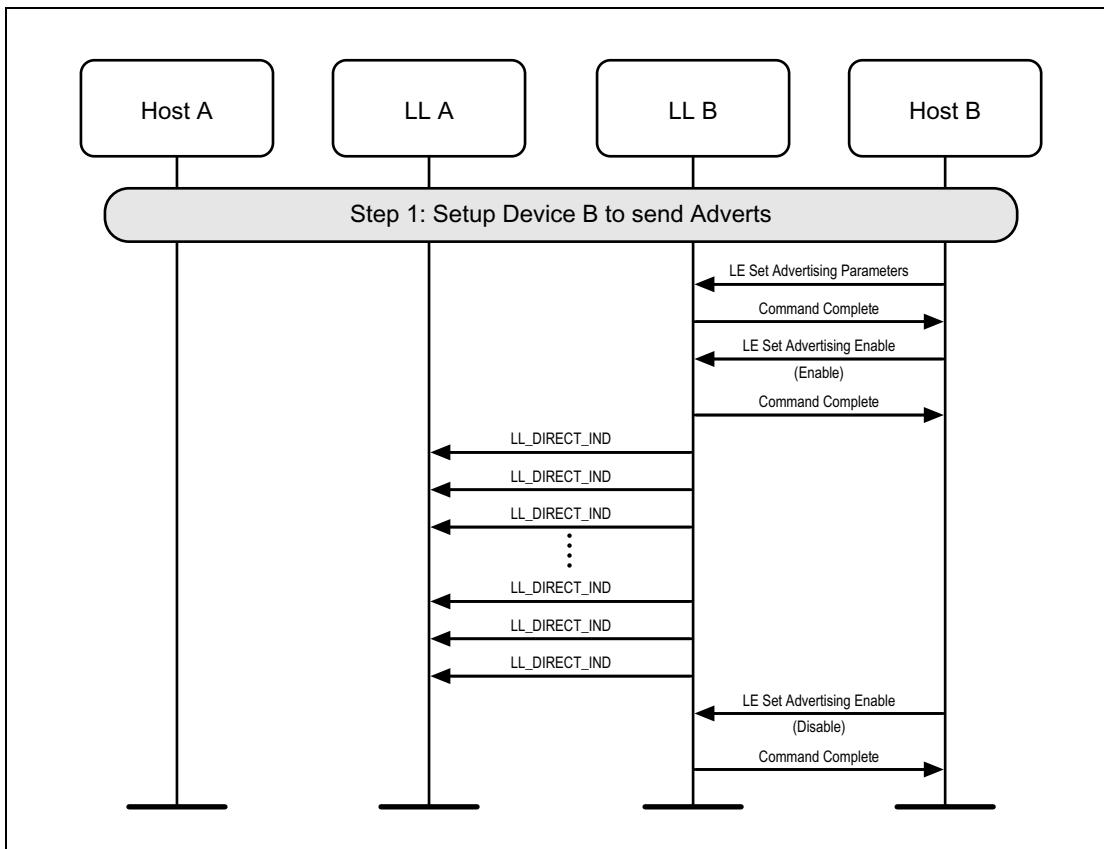


Figure 3.3: Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising

## 4 SCANNING STATE

### 4.1 PASSIVE SCANNING

A device can use passive scanning to find advertising devices in the area. This would receive advertising packets from peer devices and report these to the Host (see [Figure 4.1](#)).

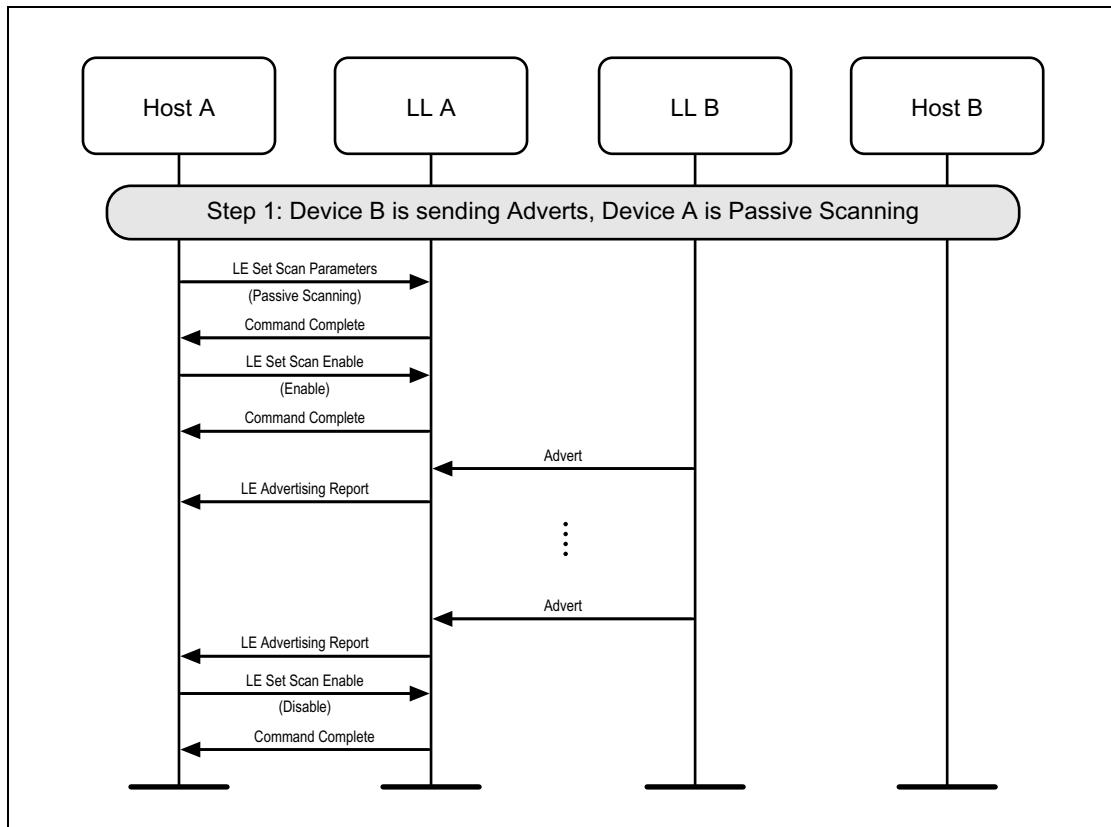
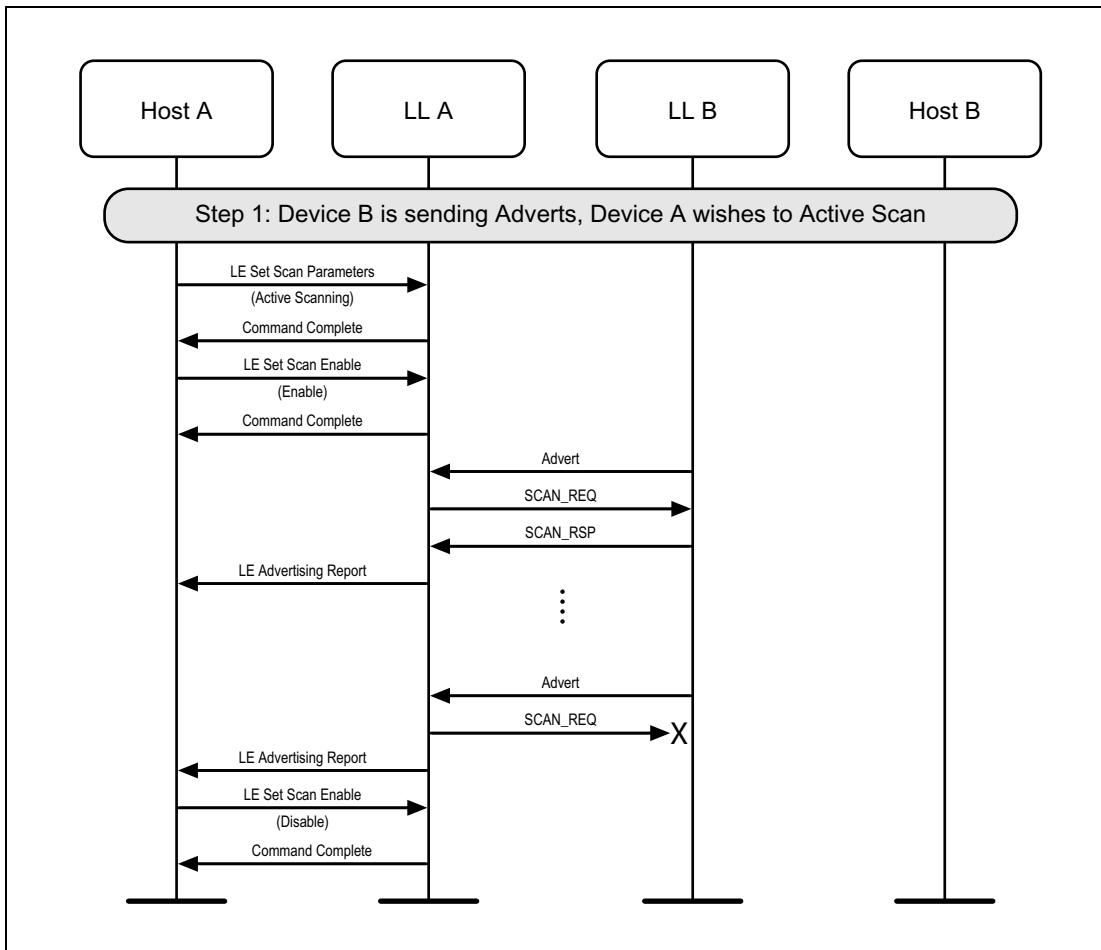


Figure 4.1: Passive Scanning

## 4.2 ACTIVE SCANNING

A device may use active scanning to obtain more information about devices that may be useful to populate a user interface. Active scanning involves more link layer advertising messages (see [Figure 4.2](#)).



*Figure 4.2: Active Scanning*

## 5 INITIATING STATE

### 5.1 INITIATING A CONNECTION

A device can initiate a connection to an advertiser. This example shows a successful initiation, resulting in both devices able to send application data (see [Figure 5.1](#)).

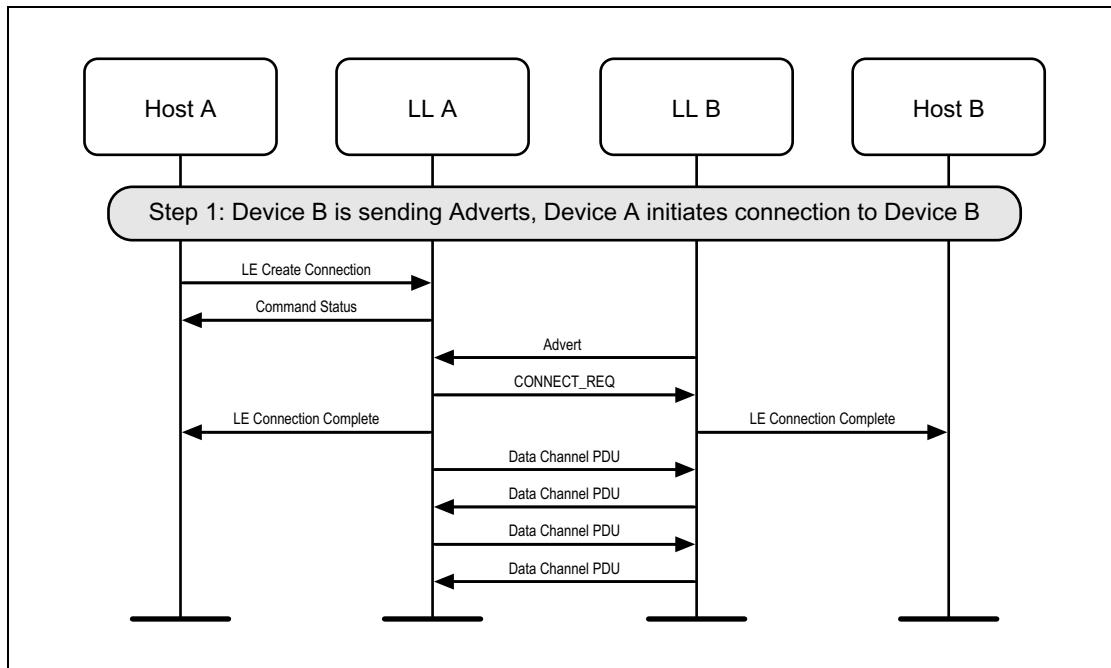


Figure 5.1: Initiating a Connection

## 5.2 CANCELING AN INITIATION

A device can cancel a pending connection creation. This example shows an unsuccessful initiation, followed by a cancellation of the initiation (see [Figure 5.2](#)).

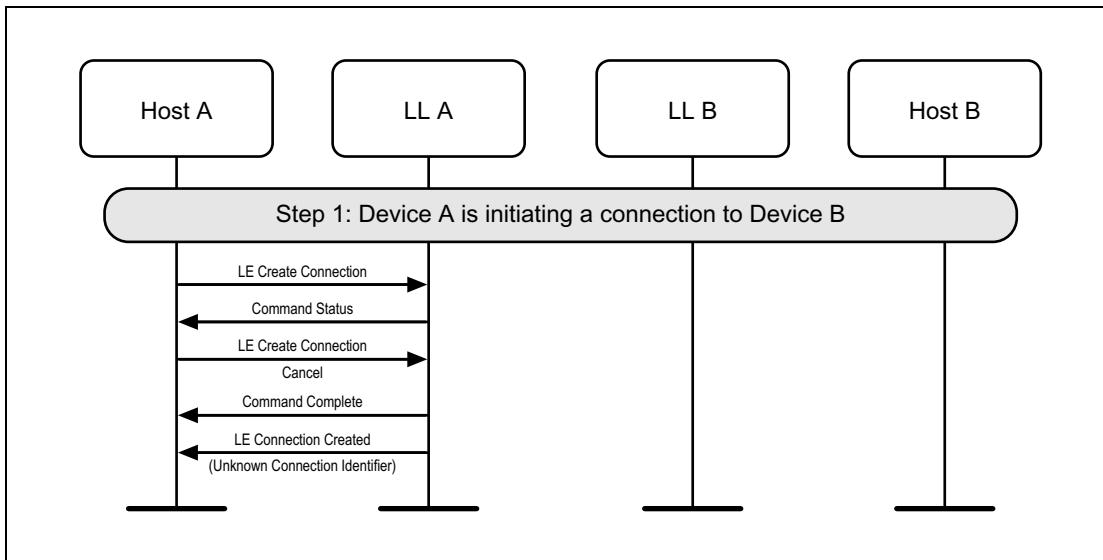


Figure 5.2: Canceling an Initiation

## 6 CONNECTION STATE

### 6.1 SENDING DATA

Once two devices are in a connection, either device can send data. This example shows both devices sending data, for example when the Attribute Protocol does a read request and a read response is returned (see [Figure 6.1](#)).

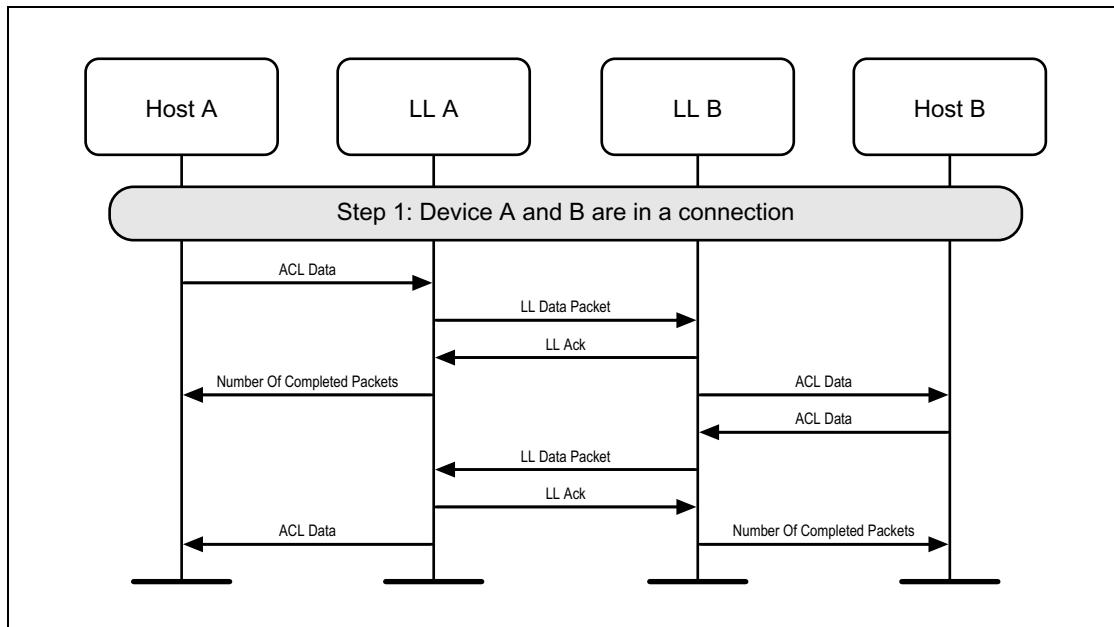
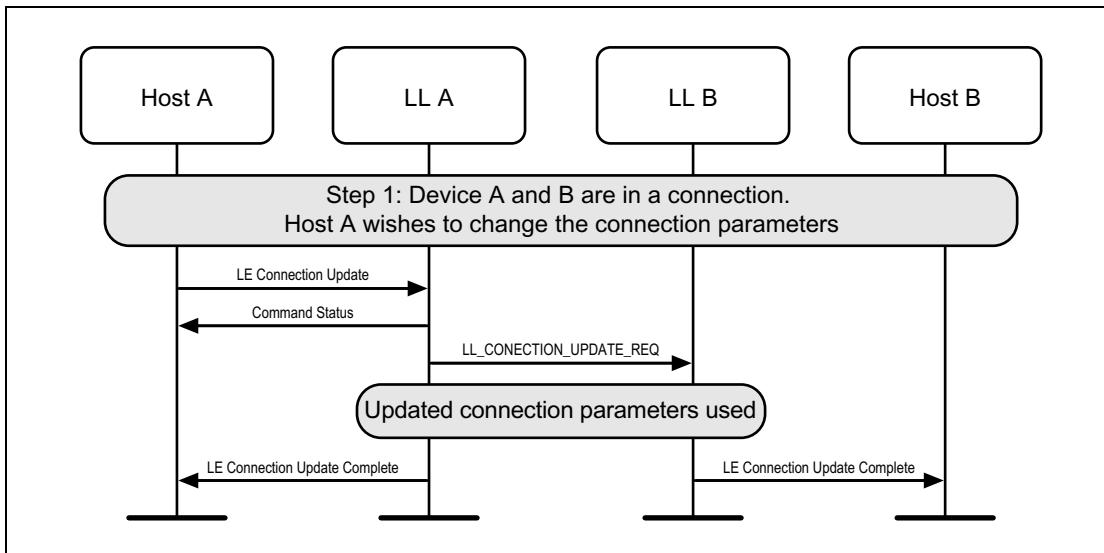


Figure 6.1: Sending Data

## 6.2 CONNECTION UPDATE

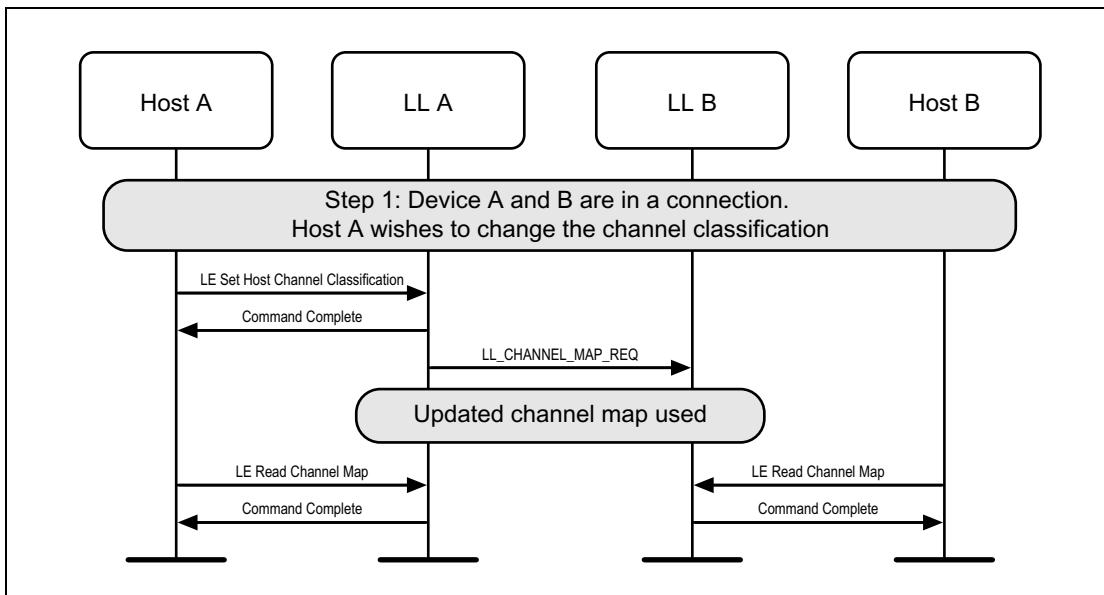
The master of the connection may request a connection update using a Link Layer Control Procedure (see [Figure 6.2](#)).



*Figure 6.2: Connection Update*

## 6.3 CHANNEL MAP UPDATE

The Controller of the master may receive some channel classification data from the Host and then perform the Channel Update Link Layer Control Procedure (see [Figure 6.3](#)).



*Figure 6.3: Channel Map Update*

## 6.4 FEATURES EXCHANGE

Both the master and slave devices can discover the set of features available on the remote device. To achieve this, the Feature Exchange Link Layer Control Procedure is used (see [Figure 6.4](#) and [Figure 6.5](#)).

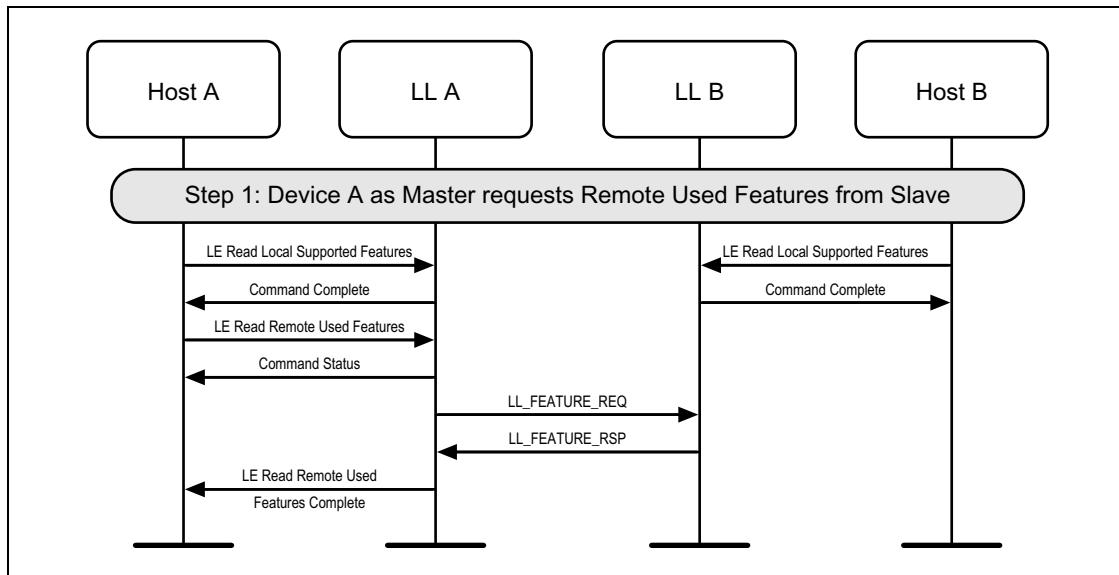


Figure 6.4: Master-initiated Features Exchange

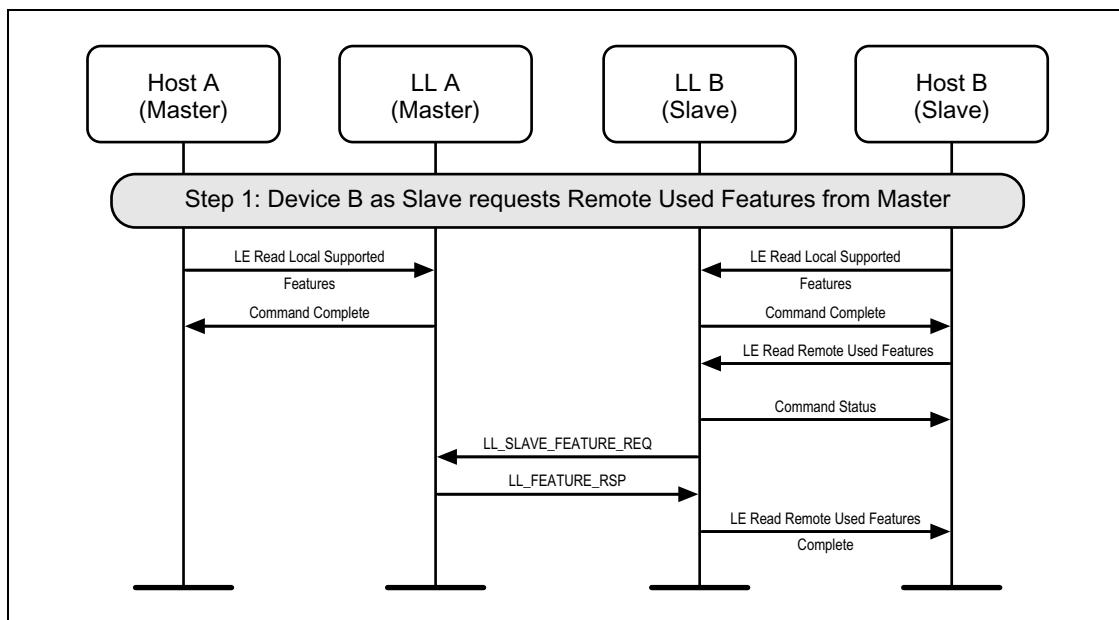


Figure 6.5: Slave-initiated Features Exchange

## 6.5 VERSION EXCHANGE

Either device may perform a version exchange (see [Figure 6.6](#) and [Figure 6.7](#)).

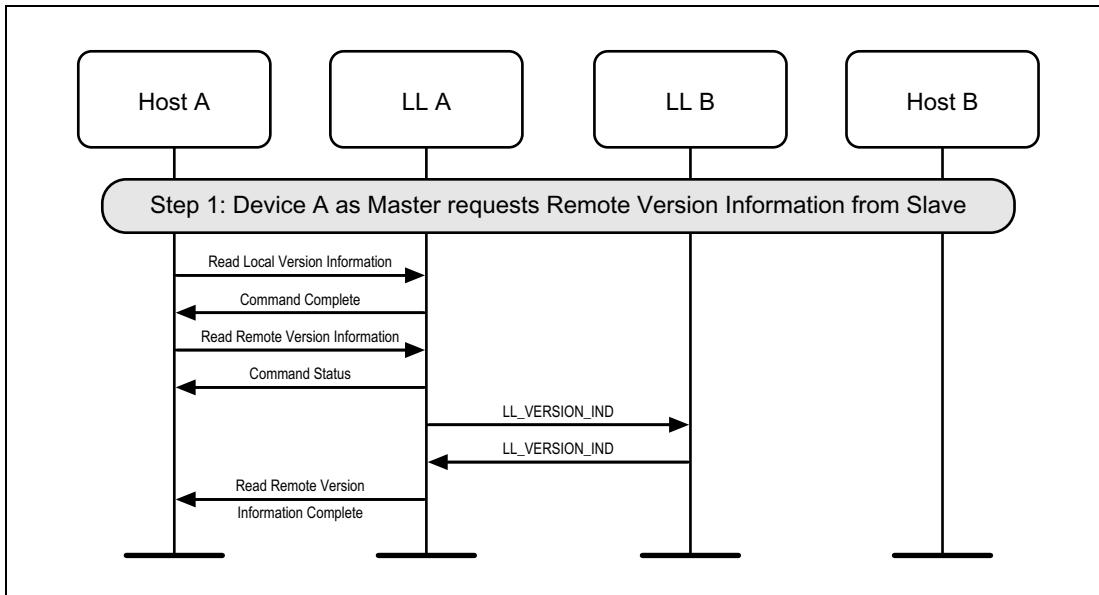


Figure 6.6: Version Exchange from Master

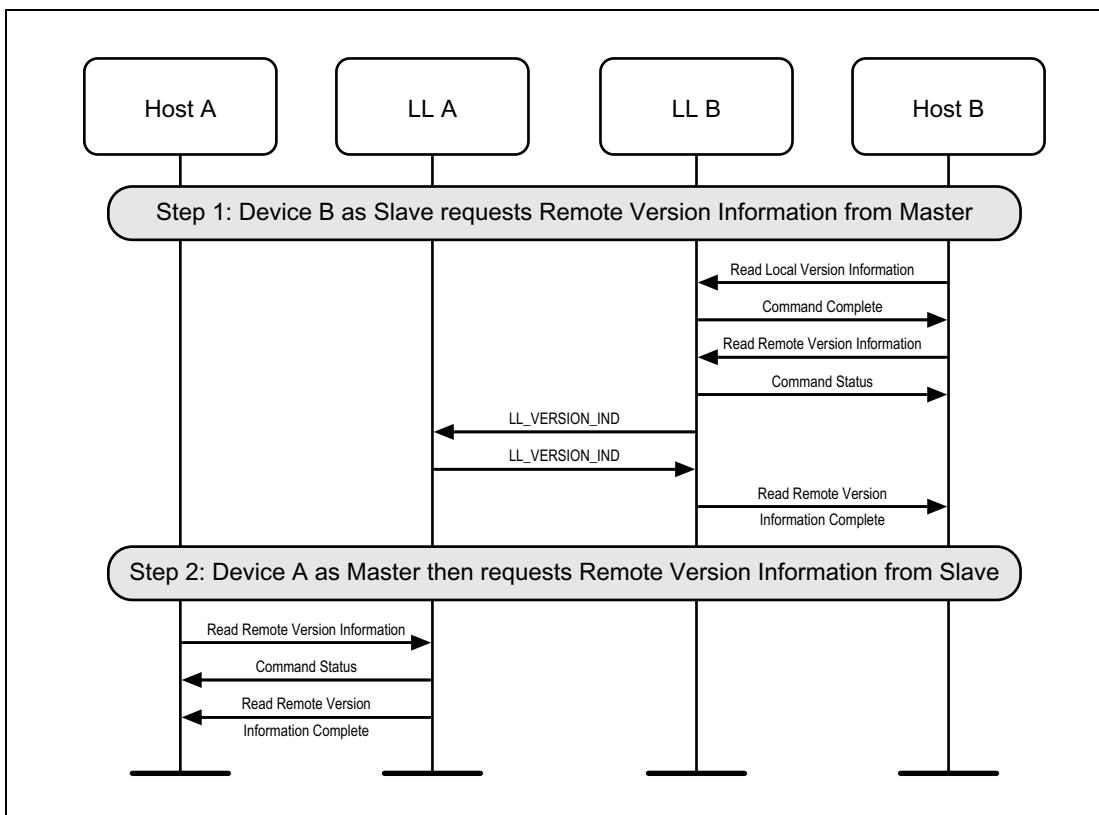


Figure 6.7: Version Exchange from Slave

## 6.6 START ENCRYPTION

If encryption has not been started on a connection, it may be started by the master (see [Figure 6.8](#)).

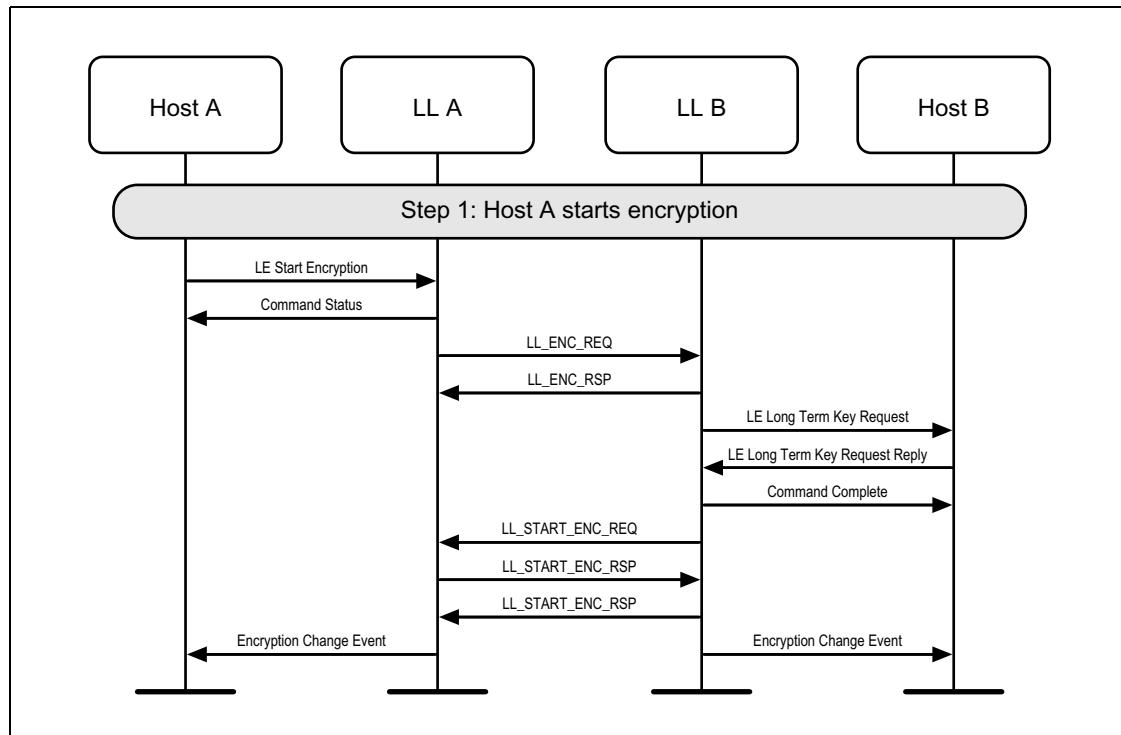
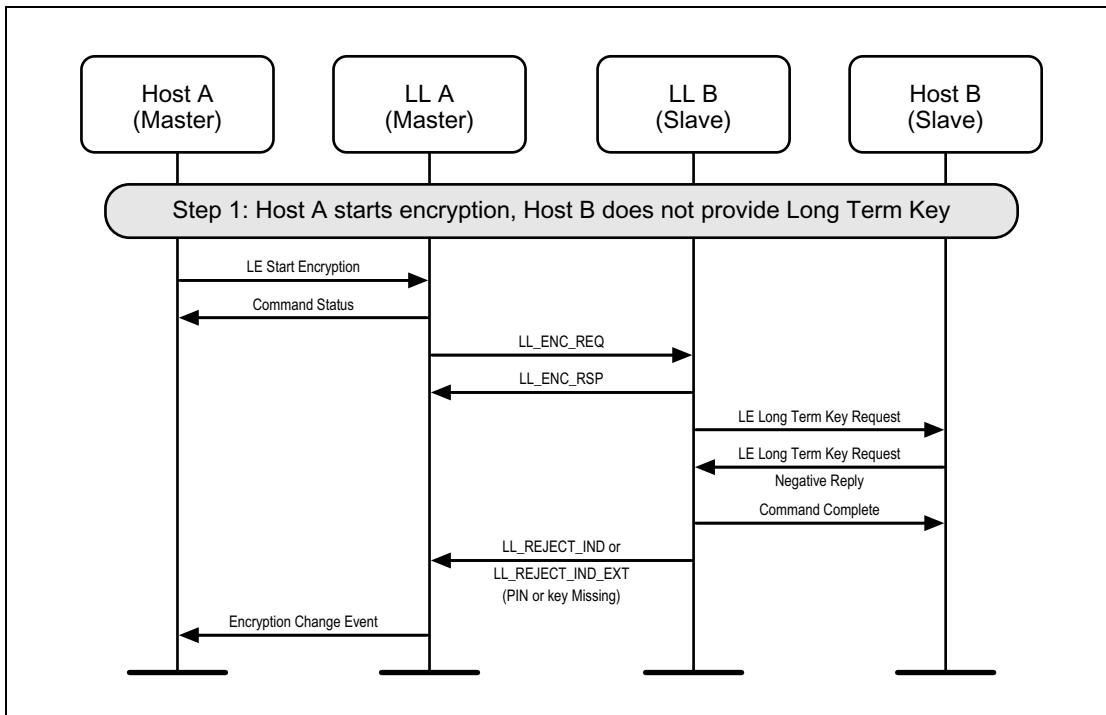


Figure 6.8: Start Encryption

## 6.7 START ENCRYPTION WITHOUT LONG TERM KEY

If encryption has not been started on a connection, it may be started by the master. [Figure 6.9](#) shows the failure case of the slave not having the long term key for the master.



*Figure 6.9: Start encryption without long-term key*

## 6.8 START ENCRYPTION WITH EVENT MASKED

If encryption has not been started on a connection, it may be started by the master. [Figure 6.10](#) shows the failure case when the slave has masked out the LE Long Term Key Request event.

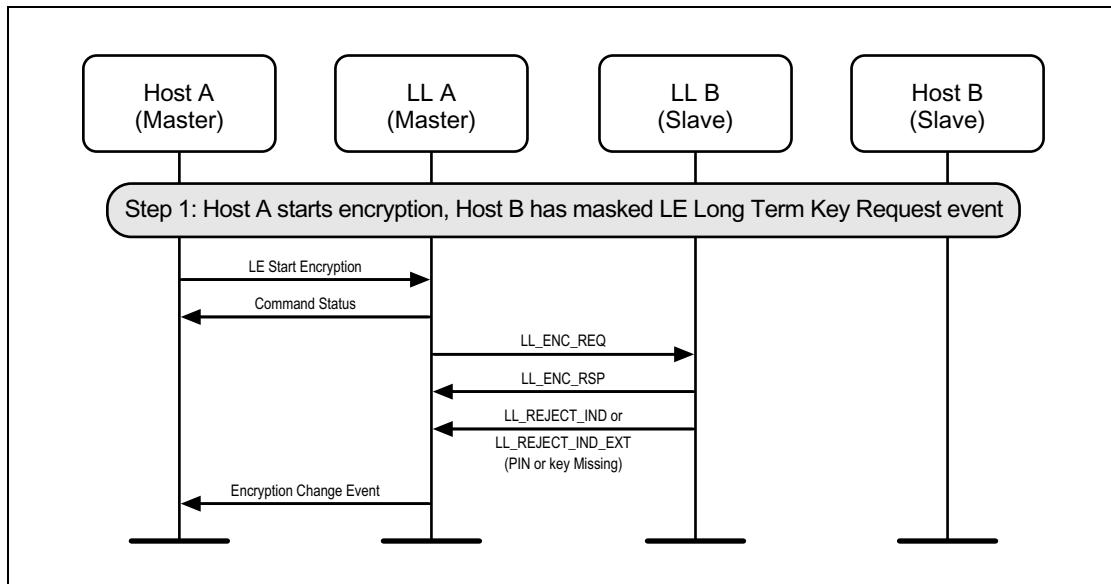


Figure 6.10: Start encryption with slave masking out event

## 6.9 START ENCRYPTION WITHOUT SLAVE SUPPORTING ENCRYPTION

If Encryption has not been started on a connection, it may be started by the master. [Figure 6.11](#) shows the failure case of the slave that does not support the encryption feature.

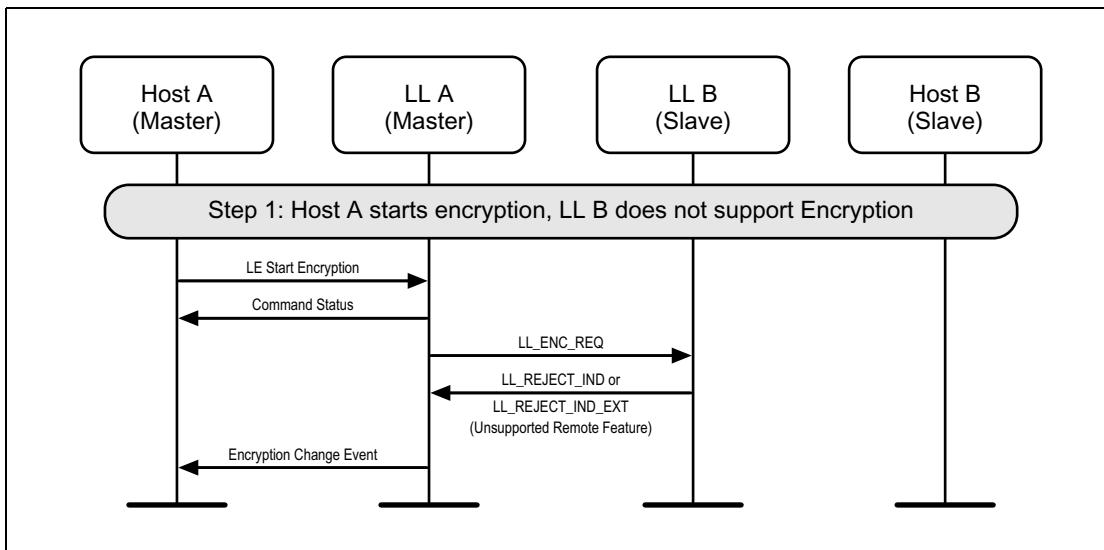
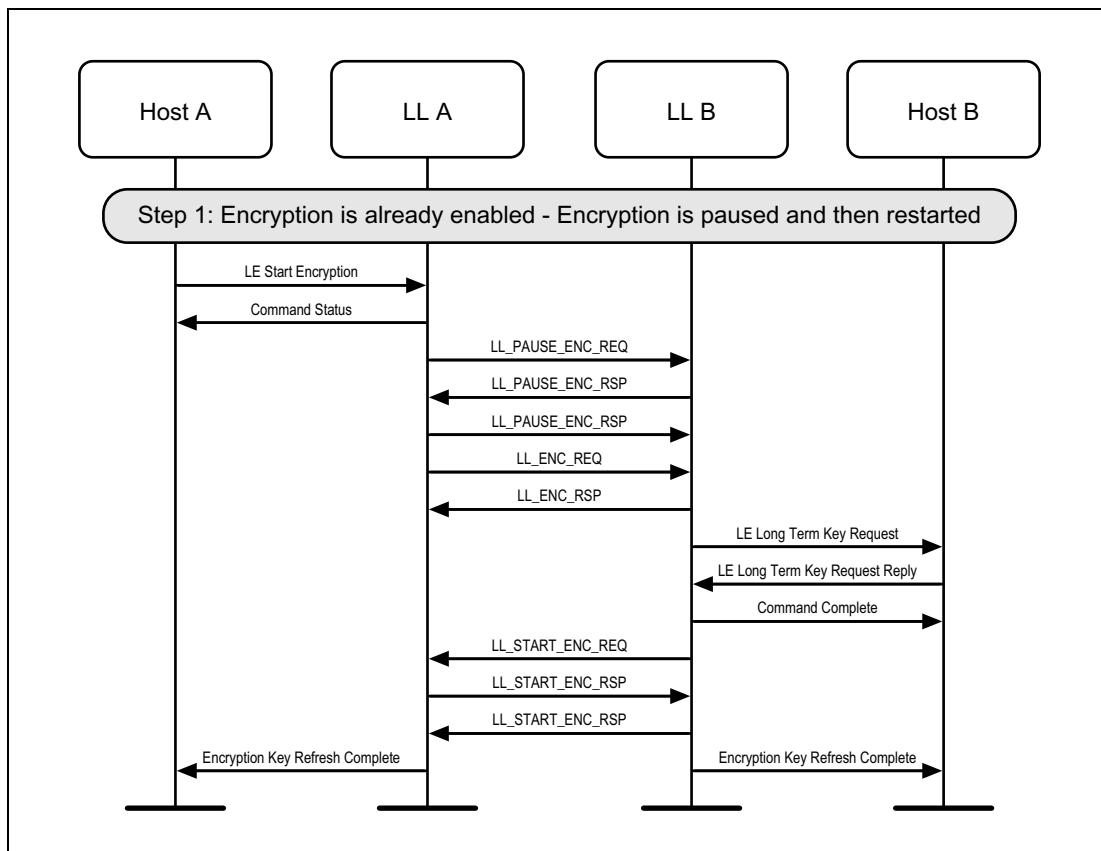


Figure 6.11: Start Encryption failure when slave does not support encryption

## 6.10 RESTART ENCRYPTION

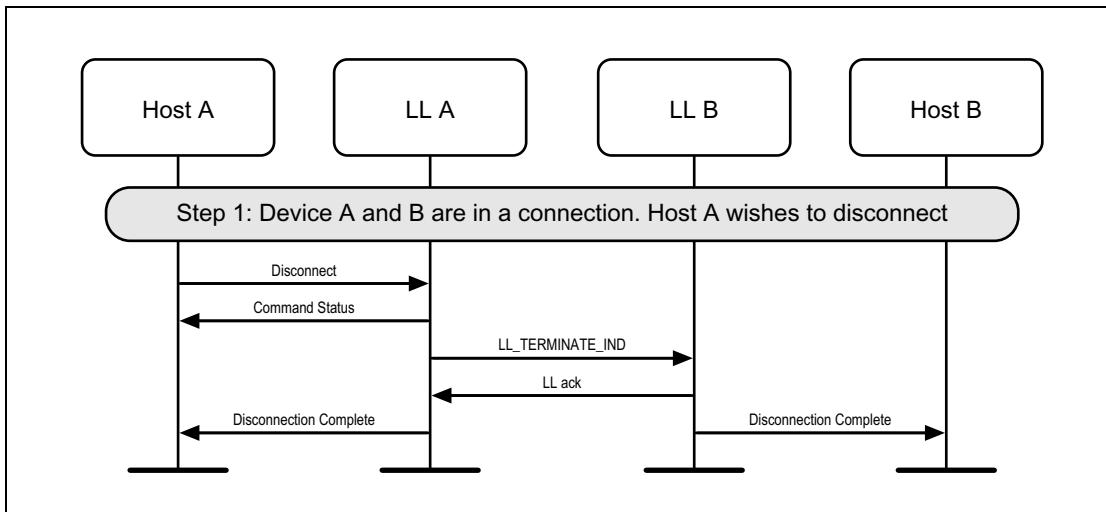
If encryption has already been started on a connection, it may be restarted by the master. This may be required to use a stronger encryption as negotiated by the Security Manager Protocol (see [Figure 6.12](#)).



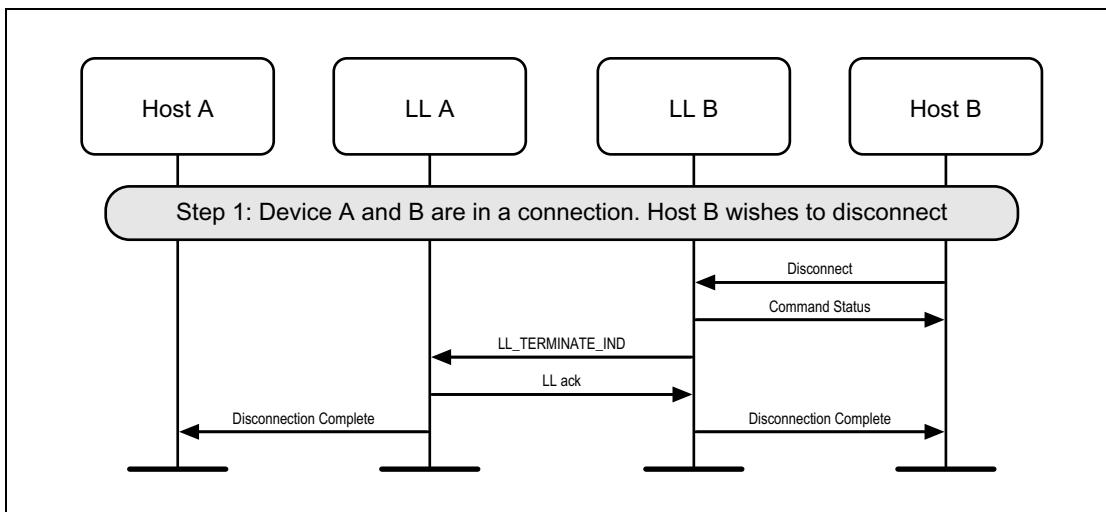
*Figure 6.12: Restart Encryption*

## 6.11 DISCONNECT

Once a connection has no need to be kept active, the Host can disconnect it. This can be done by either device (see [Figure 6.13](#) and [Figure 6.14](#)).



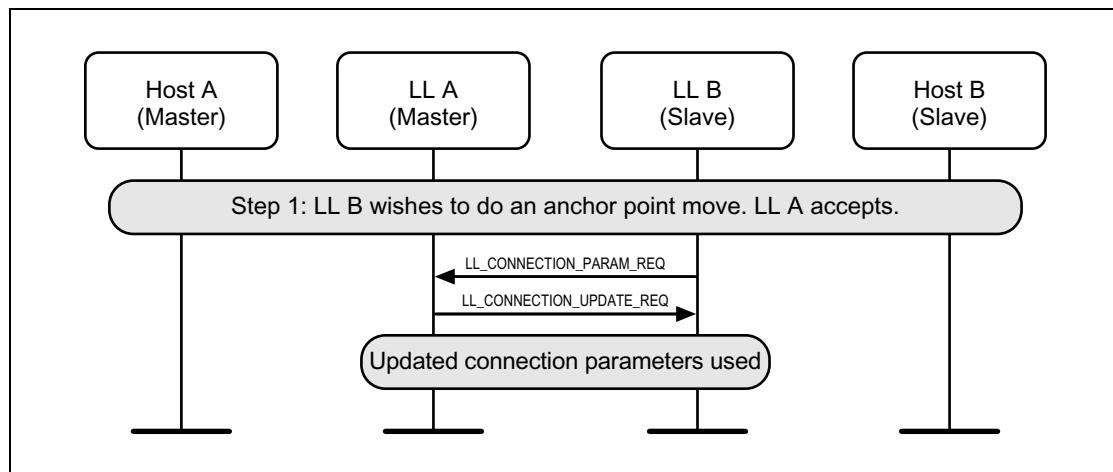
*Figure 6.13: Disconnect from Master*



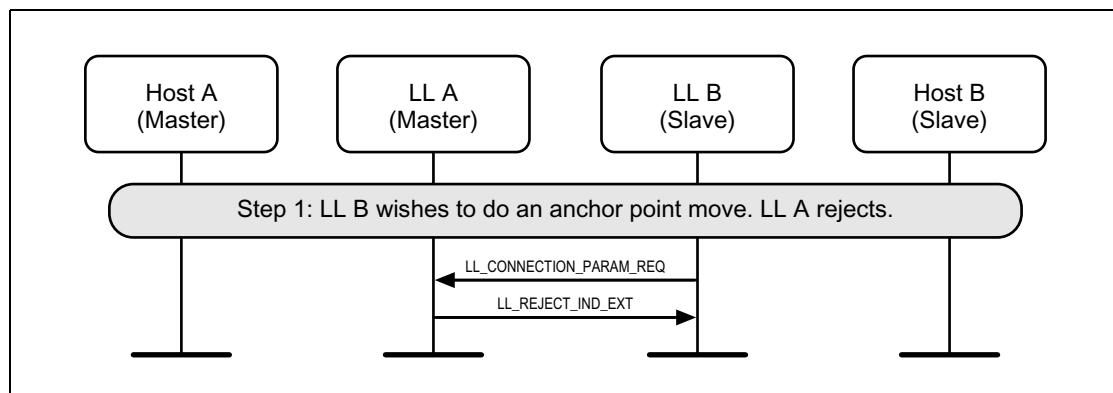
*Figure 6.14: Disconnect from Slave*

## 6.12 CONNECTION PARAMETERS REQUEST

The master or the slave of the connection may request change in connection parameters using a Link Layer Control Procedure (see [Figure 6.15](#) to [Figure 6.22](#)).



*Figure 6.15: Slave-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – slave requests a change in anchor points, master accepts*



*Figure 6.16: Slave-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – slave requests a change in anchor points, master rejects*

## Message Sequence Charts

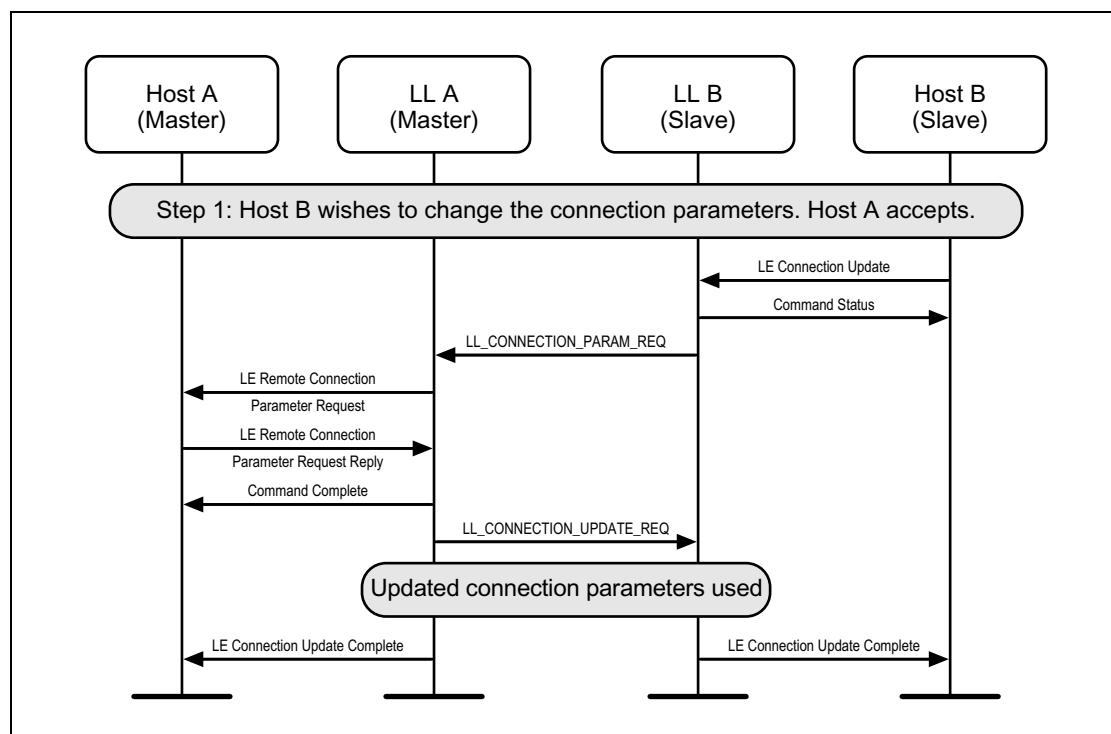


Figure 6.17: Slave-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – slave requests change in LE connection parameters, master's Host accepts

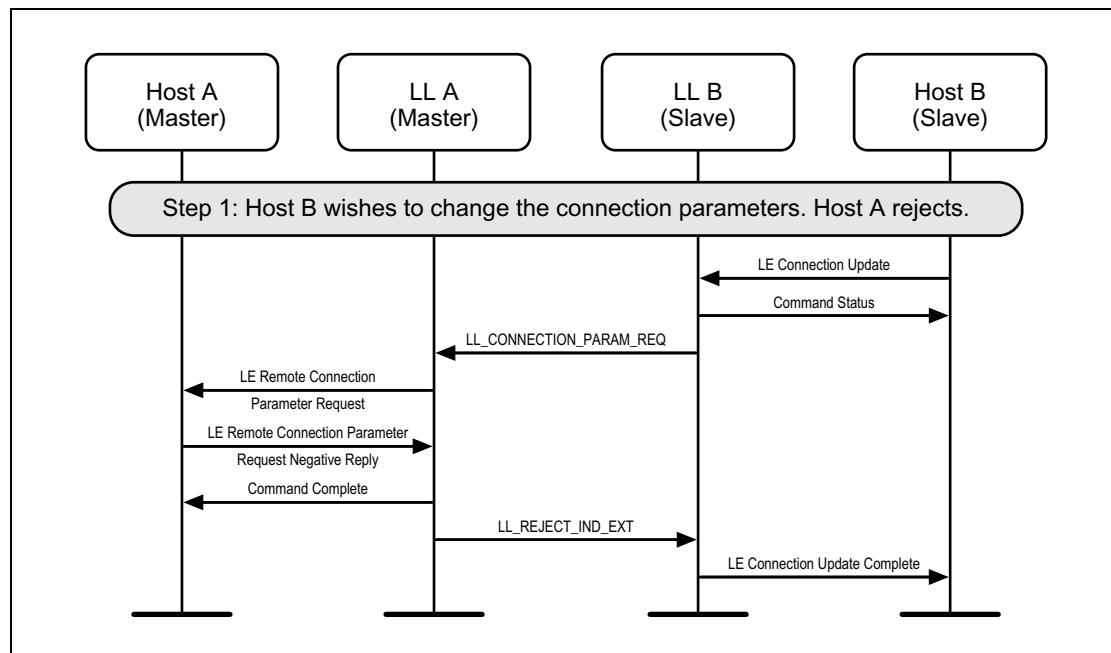


Figure 6.18: Slave-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – slave requests change in LE connection parameters, master's Host rejects

## Message Sequence Charts

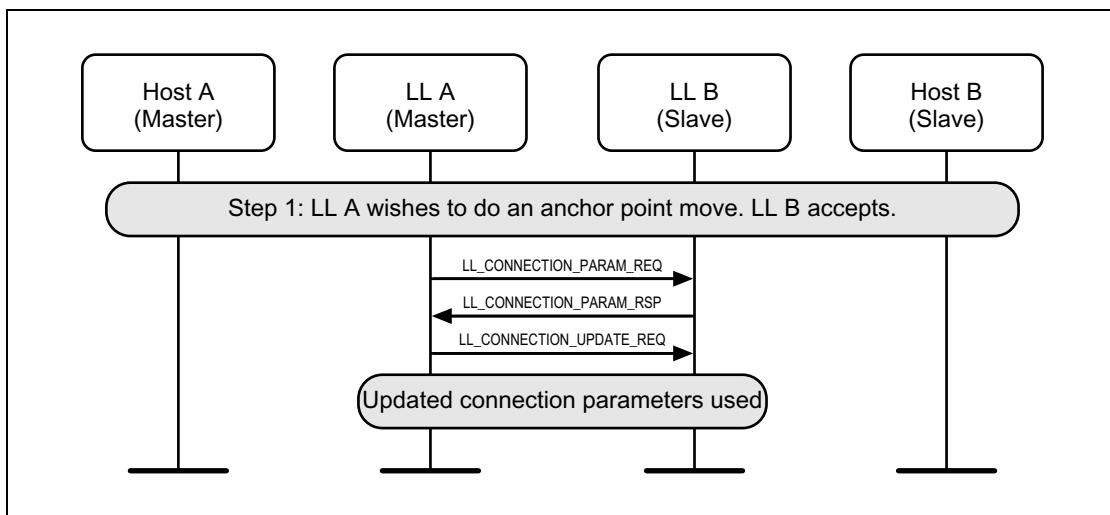


Figure 6.19: Master-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure –master requests a change in anchor points, slave accepts

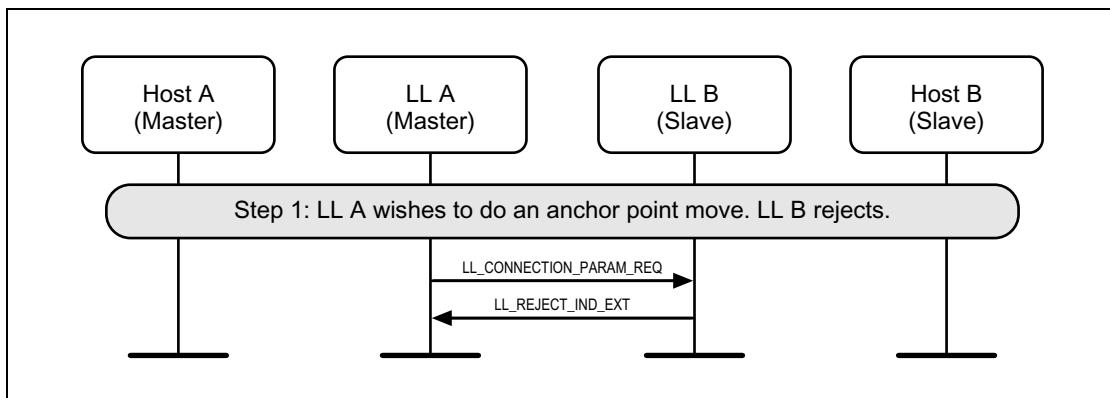


Figure 6.20: Master-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure –master requests a change in anchor points, slave rejects

## Message Sequence Charts

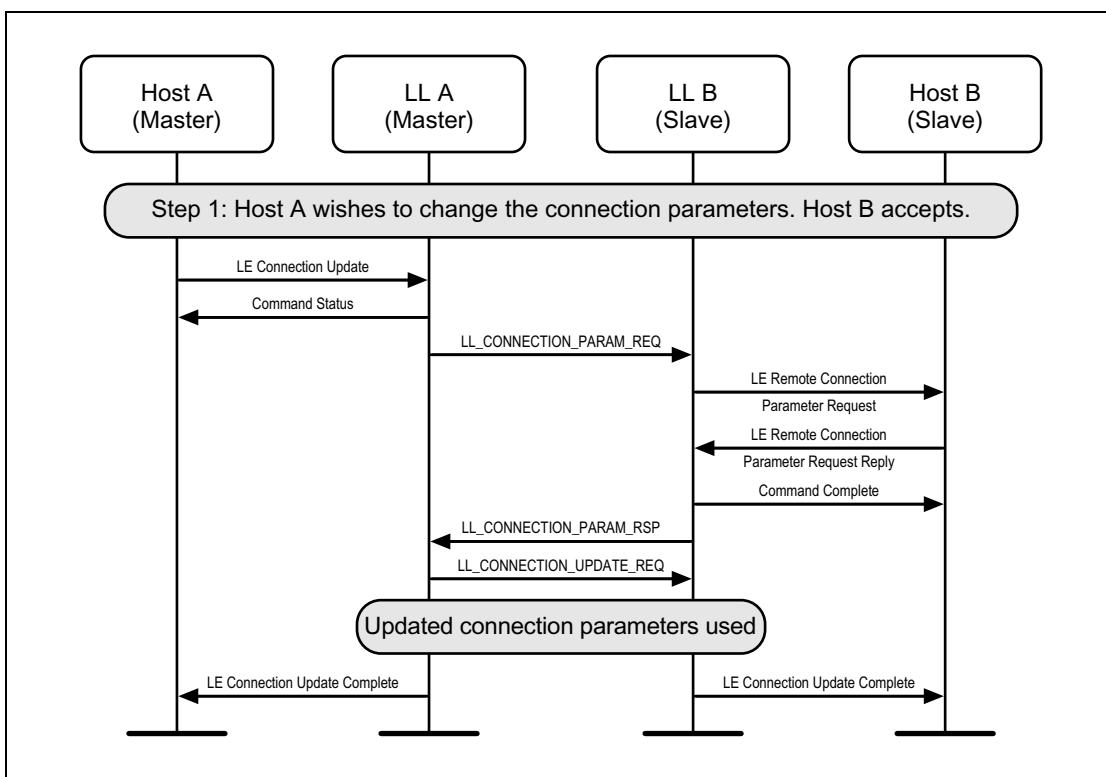


Figure 6.21: Master-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – master requests change in LE connection parameters, slave's Host accepts

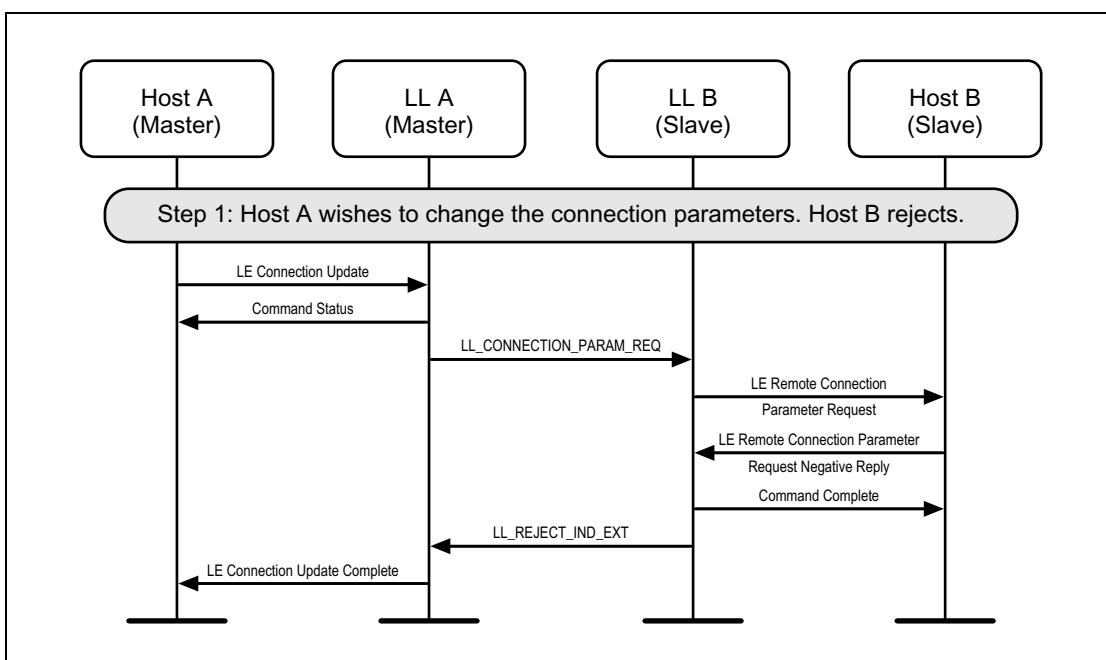


Figure 6.22: Master-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – master requests change in LE connection parameters, slave's Host rejects

## 6.13 LE PING

A Host may use the HCI\_Write\_Authenticated\_Payload\_Timeout command to change the maximum interval between packets containing a valid MIC that the link layer will enforce when encryption is used.

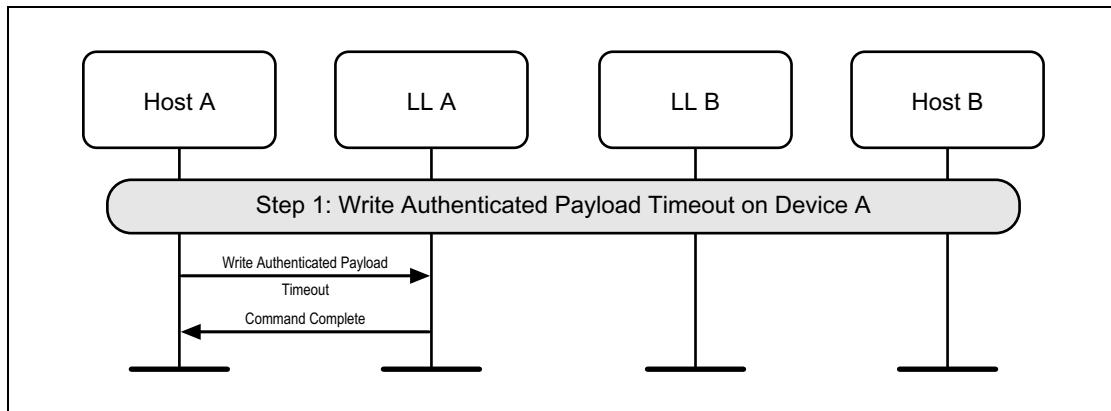


Figure 6.23: Set LE Authenticated Payload Timeout

Either Link Layer can authenticate the remote device using the LE Ping Procedure even if the remote device does not support the LE Ping feature. This procedure can also be used for soliciting a packet from the remote device containing a valid MIC. LL A may be a master or a slave.

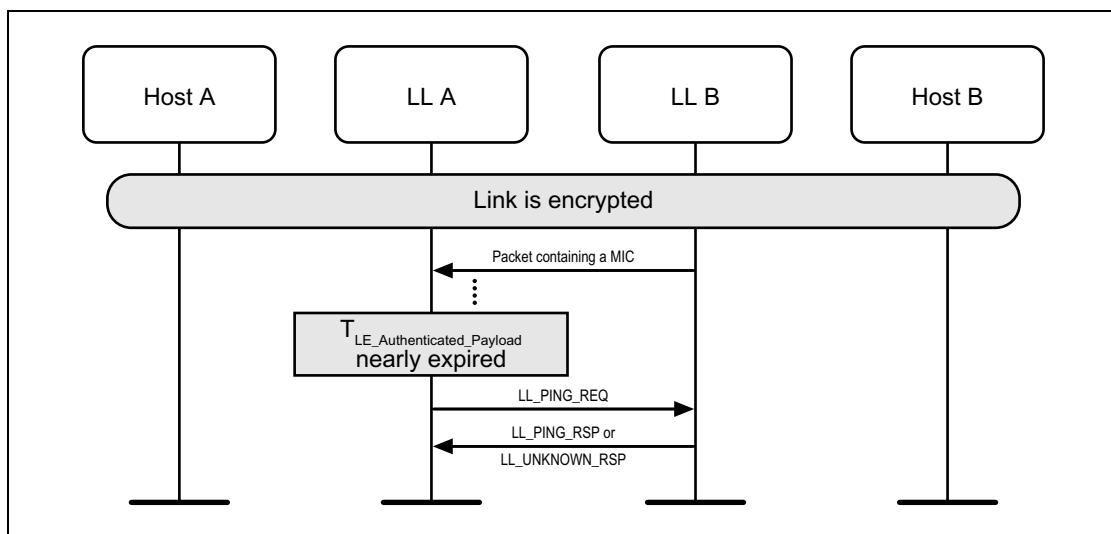


Figure 6.24: Successful LE Ping

## Message Sequence Charts



When a packet with a valid MIC has not been received within the LE Authenticated Payload Timeout, the Host is notified that the timer has expired.

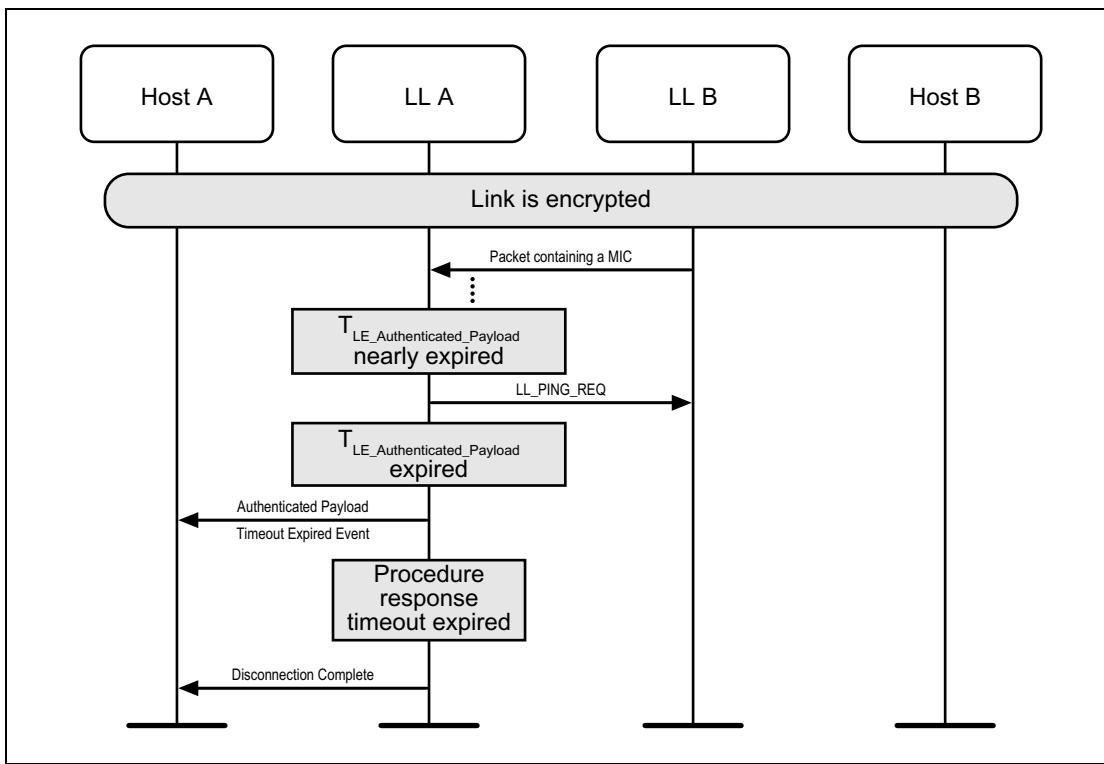


Figure 6.25: Unsuccessful LE Ping

The  $T_{LE\_Authenticated\_Payload}$  Timer gets reset when the Host sets the Authenticated Payload Timeout.

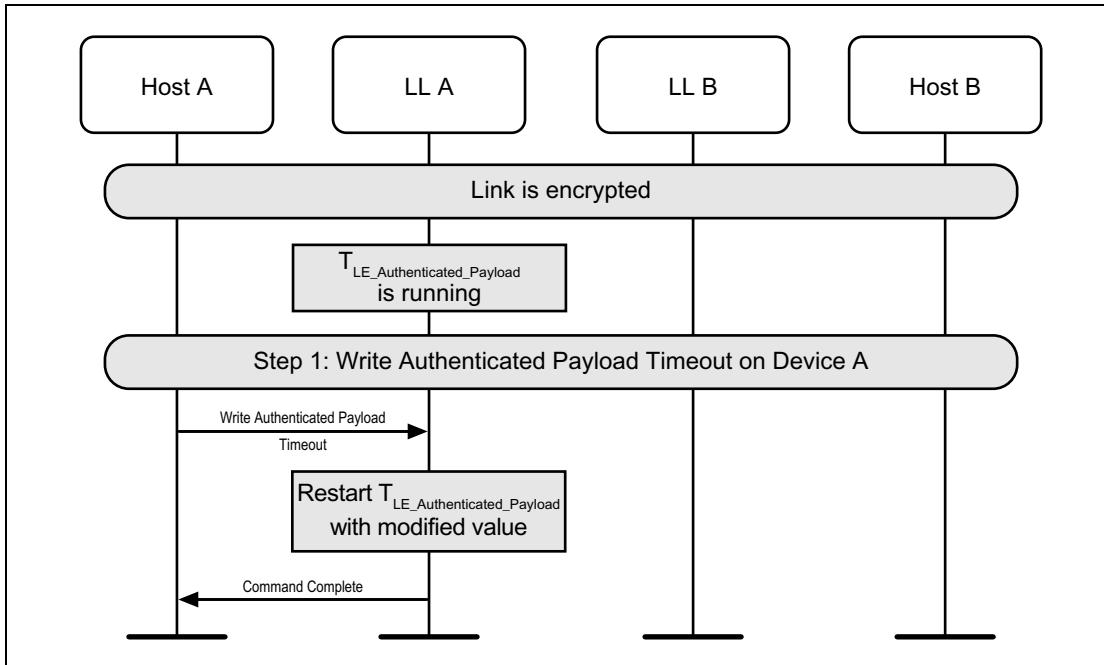


Figure 6.26:  $T_{LE\_Authenticated\_Payload}$  Timer reset





Core System Package [Low Energy Controller volume]

Part E

## LOW ENERGY LINK LAYER SECURITY

*This part of the specification describes  
the Link Layer security for Bluetooth  
low energy.*

## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Encryption and Authentication Overview.....</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>CCM.....</b>	<b>148</b>
2.1	CCM Nonce .....	148
2.2	Counter Mode Blocks .....	149
2.3	Encryption Blocks .....	150

## 1 ENCRYPTION AND AUTHENTICATION OVERVIEW

The Link Layer provides encryption and authentication using Counter with Cipher Block Chaining-Message Authentication Code (CCM) Mode, which shall be implemented consistent with the algorithm as defined in IETF RFC 3610 (<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3610.txt>) in conjunction with the AES-128 block cipher as defined in NIST Publication FIPS-197 (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/fips/fips197/fips-197.pdf>). A description of the CCM algorithm can also be found in the NIST Special Publication 800-38C (<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/PubsSPs.html>).

This specification uses the same notation and terminology as the IETF RFC except for the Message Authentication Code (MAC) that in this specification is called the Message Integrity Check (MIC) to avoid confusion with the term Media Access Controller.

CCM has two size parameters, M and L. The Link Layer defines these to be:

- M = 4; indicating that the MIC (authentication field) is 4 octets
- L = 2; indicating that the Length field is 2 octets

CCM requires a new temporal key whenever encryption is started. CCM also requires a unique nonce value for each Data Channel PDU protected by a given temporal key. The CCM nonce shall be 13 octets.

The Link Layer connection may be either encrypted and authenticated or unencrypted and unauthenticated. In an encrypted and authenticated connection, all the Data Channel PDUs with a non-zero length Payload shall be encrypted and authenticated. Authentication is performed by appending a MIC field to the Payload. The MIC shall be calculated over the Data Channel PDU's Payload field and the first octet of the header ([Part B, Section 2.4](#)) with the NESN, SN and MD bits masked to zero.

Encryption shall be applied to the Data Channel PDU's Payload field and MIC.

Each new Data Channel PDU with a non-zero length Payload shall be decrypted and authenticated before being sent to the Host or processed by the Link Layer. Authentication is unrelated to Link Layer acknowledgement scheme; authentication does not have to be performed before the packet is acknowledged by the Link Layer.

In the unlikely event of an authentication failure being detected, the connection shall be considered lost. The Link Layer shall not send or receive any further packets on that connection. The Link Layer shall exit the Connection State and transition to the Standby State. The Host shall be notified of the loss of connection due to an authentication failure. The peer Link Layer will detect this loss of connection through the supervision timeout procedure.

## 2 CCM

This section provides the details for using the CCM algorithm. As specified, the CCM algorithm requires the payload and some additional parameters to be formatted into the CCM nonce, counter-mode blocks and encryption blocks. The CCM nonce provides uniqueness to each packet. The counter-mode blocks are used to calculate the MIC. The encryption blocks provide the keystream that is used to encrypt the payload and the MIC of the Data Channel PDU.

Sample data of the blocks (see [Section 2.2](#) and [Section 2.3](#)) can be found in [\[Vol 6\] Part C, Section](#) and [Section 1.2](#).

### 2.1 CCM NONCE

The CCM nonce is constructed from a 39-bit *packetCounter*, 1-bit *directionBit* and an 8-octet IV (initialization vector). The format of the 13-octet nonce shall be as shown in [Table 2.1](#).

Octet	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
0	Nonce0	1	variable	Octet0 (LSO) of <i>packetCounter</i>
1	Nonce1	1	variable	Octet1 of <i>packetCounter</i>
2	Nonce2	1	variable	Octet2 of <i>packetCounter</i>
3	Nonce3	1	variable	Octet3 of <i>packetCounter</i>
4	Nonce4	1	variable	Bit 6 – Bit 0: Octet4 (7 most significant bits of <i>packetCounter</i> , with Bit 6 being the most significant bit) Bit7: <i>directionBit</i>
5	Nonce5	1	variable	Octet0 (LSO) of IV
6	Nonce6	1	variable	Octet1 of IV
7	Nonce7	1	variable	Octet2 of IV
8	Nonce8	1	variable	Octet3 of IV
9	Nonce9	1	variable	Octet4 of IV
10	Nonce10	1	variable	Octet5 of IV
11	Nonce11	1	variable	Octet6 of IV
12	Nonce12	1	variable	Octet7 (MSO) of IV

*Table 2.1: CCM nonce format*

The Link Layer shall maintain one *packetCounter* per Role for each connection.

For each connection, the *packetCounter* shall be set to zero for the first encrypted Data Channel PDU sent during the encryption start procedure. The

*packetCounter* shall then be incremented by one for each new Data Channel PDU that is encrypted. The *packetCounter* shall not be incremented for retransmissions.

The *directionBit* shall be set to ‘1’ for Data Channel PDUs sent by the master and set to ‘0’ for Data Channel PDUs sent by the slave.

The IV is common for both Roles of a connection. Whenever encryption is started or restarted, a new 8-octet IV shall be used for each pair of communicating devices. The IV is determined as specified in [Part B, Section 5.1.3.1](#).

## 2.2 COUNTER MODE BLOCKS

For calculating the MIC, the multiple counter mode blocks are generated according to the CCM specification. These are referred to as blocks  $B_0 - B_n$ . [Table 2.2](#) defines the format of block  $B_0$ . [Table 2.3](#) defines the format of block  $B_1$  that is devoted to the authentication of the additional authenticated data. Additional B blocks are generated as needed for authentication of the payload.

Offset (octets)	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
0	Flags	1	0x49	As per the CCM specification
1	Nonce	13	variable	The nonce as described in <a href="#">Table 2.1</a> . Nonce0 shall have offset 1. Nonce12 shall have offset 13.
14	Length[MSO]	1	0x00	The most significant octet of the length of the payload
15	Length[LSO]	1	variable	The least significant octet of the length of the payload

*Table 2.2: Block  $B_0$  format*

Offset	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
0	AAD_Length[MSO]	1	0x00	The most significant octet of the length of the additional authenticated data
1	AAD_Length[LSO]	1	0x01	The least significant octet of the length of the additional authenticated data
2	AAD	1	variable	The data channel PDU header’s first octet with NESN, SN and MD bits masked to 0

*Table 2.3: Block  $B_1$  format*

Offset	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
3	Padding	13	0x00, 0x00	These octets are only used to pad the block. They are not part of the packet and never transmitted.

Table 2.3: Block  $B_1$  format

## 2.3 ENCRYPTION BLOCKS

The CCM algorithm uses the  $A_x$  blocks to generate keystream that is used to encrypt the MIC and the Data Channel PDU payload. Block  $A_0$  is always used to encrypt and decrypt the MIC. Block  $A_1$  is always used to encrypt and decrypt the first 16 octets of the Payload. Block  $A_2$  is always used to encrypt and decrypt the rest of the Payload as needed.

Offset (octets)	Field	Size (octets)	Value	Description
0	Flags	1	0x01	As per the CCM specification
1	Nonce	13	variable	The nonce as described above Nonce0 shall have offset 1. Nonce12 shall have offset 13.
14	i[MSO]	1	variable	The most significant octet of the counter i
15	i[LSO]	1	variable	The least significant octet of the counter i

Table 2.4: Block  $A_x$  format

## DIRECT TEST MODE

***This part of the specification describes the Direct Test Mode for RF PHY testing of Bluetooth low energy devices.***

---

*Direct Test Mode*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>154</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Low Energy Test Scenarios.....</b>	<b>155</b>
2.1	Test Sequences .....	155
2.2	Message Sequence Charts.....	156
<b>3</b>	<b>UART Test Interface .....</b>	<b>157</b>
3.1	UART Interface Characteristics.....	157
3.2	UART Functional Description.....	157
3.3	Commands and Events.....	158
3.3.1	Command and Event Behavior .....	158
3.3.2	Commands .....	158
3.4	Events .....	159
3.4.1	LE_Test_Status_Event .....	160
3.4.2	LE_Packet_Report_Event.....	160
3.5	Timing – Command and Event.....	161
<b>4</b>	<b>LE Test Packet Definition .....</b>	<b>162</b>
4.1	LE test packets format .....	162
4.1.1	Whitening .....	162
4.1.2	Preamble and Synchronization Word.....	162
4.1.3	CRC.....	162
4.1.4	LE Test Packet PDU .....	163
4.1.5	LE Test Packet Payload Description .....	164
4.1.6	LE Test Packet Interval.....	165

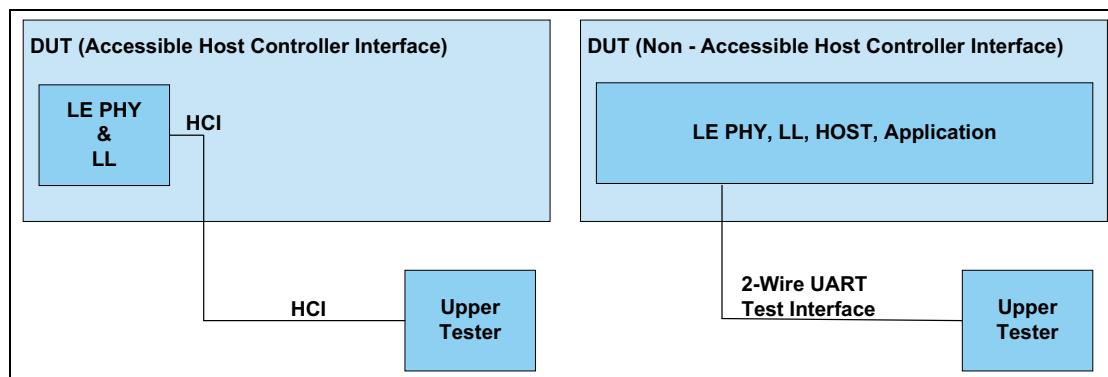
## 1 INTRODUCTION

Direct Test Mode is used to control the Device Under Test (DUT) and provides a report back to the Tester.

Direct Test Mode shall be set up using one of two alternate methods:

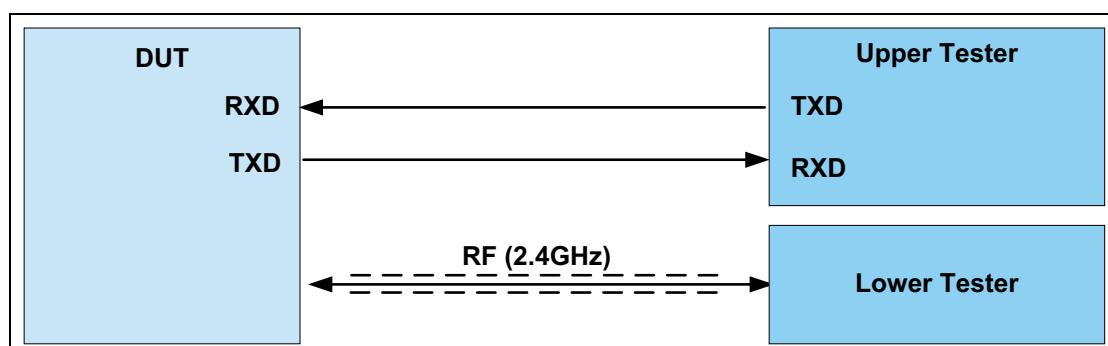
1. over HCI (as defined in [Section 2](#)) or
2. through a 2-wire UART interface (as defined in [Section 3](#))

Each DUT shall implement one of the two Direct Test Mode methods in order to test the Low Energy PHY layer. [Figure 1.1](#) illustrates the alternatives for Direct Test Mode setup.



*Figure 1.1: Setup alternatives for LE Direct Test Mode: Designs with accessible HCI (left) and designs without accessible HCI (right)*

[Figure 1.2](#) illustrates the Bluetooth LE Direct Test Mode setup principle using a 2-wire UART interface.



*Figure 1.2: RF PHY test setup for Direct Test Mode (UART control)*

## 2 LOW ENERGY TEST SCENARIOS

### 2.1 TEST SEQUENCES

These sequences are used as routines and used to control an LE DUT with an accessible HCI or a 2-wire UART interface for RF testing.

The following mapping shall be performed from the RF testing commands to HCI commands and events or 2-wire UART commands and events:

RF Test Command / Event	HCI Command / Event	2-wire UART Command / Event
LE_TRANSMITTER_TEST	LE Transmitter Testcommand	LE Transmitter Test
LE_RECEIVER_TEST	LE Receiver Test command	LE Receiver Test
LE_TEST_END	LE Test End command	LE Test End
LE_STATUS	Command Complete event	LE Test Status
LE_PACKET_REPORT	Command Complete event	LE Packet Report

Table 2.1: Mapping table of HCI / 2-wire Commands/Events

The HCI commands and events used in Direct Test Mode are defined in [\[Vol. 2\] Part E, Section 7.8.](#)

## 2.2 MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHARTS

### Transmitter Test

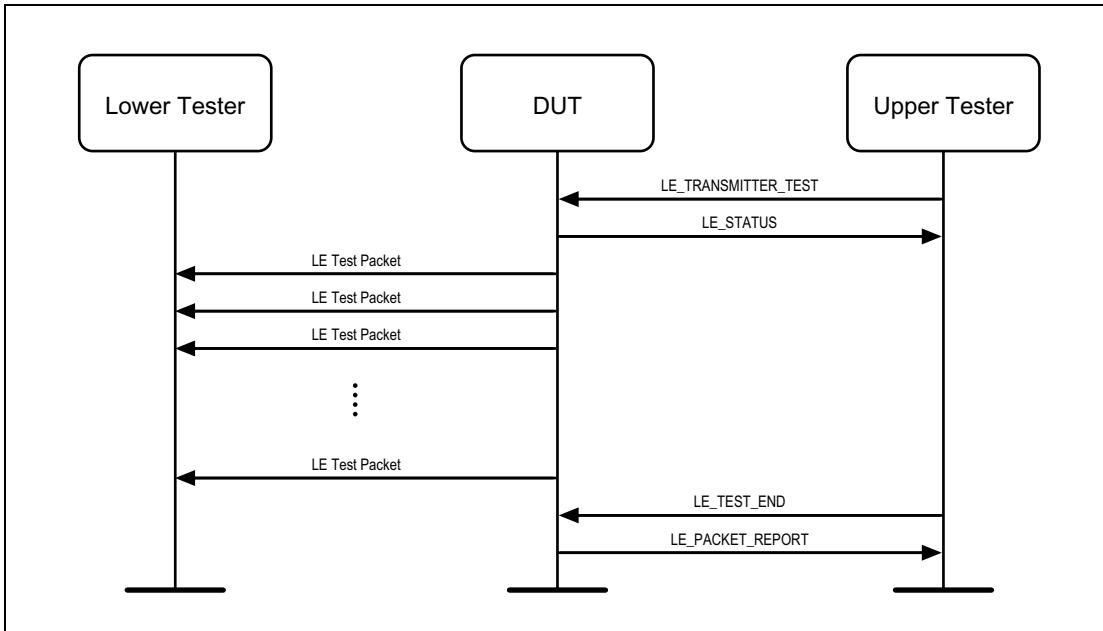


Figure 2.1: Transmitter Test MSC

### Receiver Test

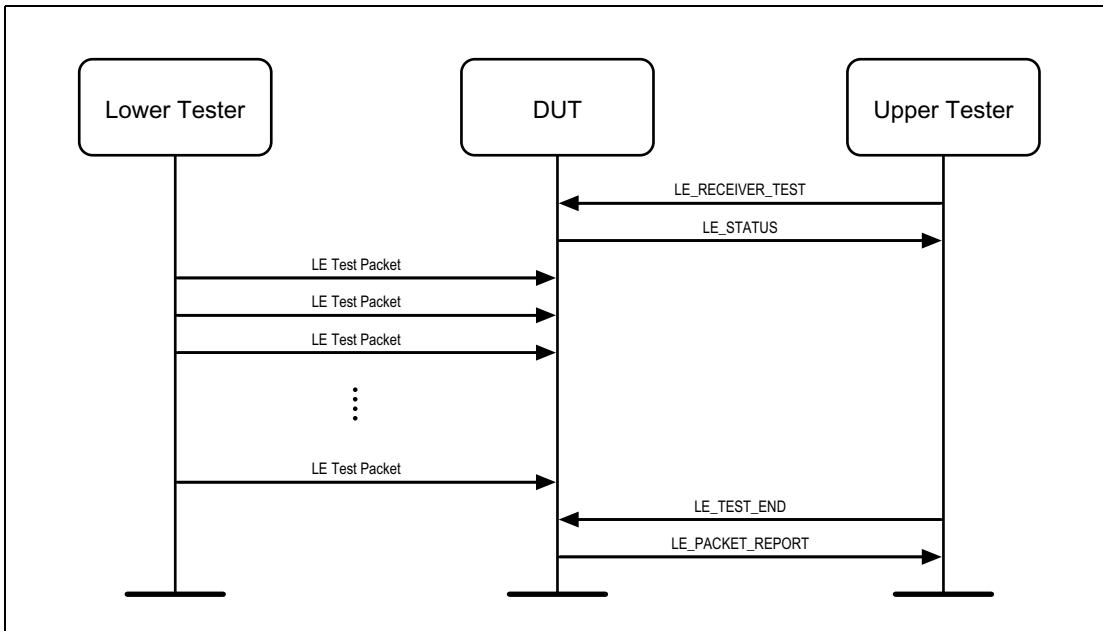


Figure 2.2: Receiver Test MSC

## 3 UART TEST INTERFACE

---

### 3.1 UART INTERFACE CHARACTERISTICS

The UART interface characteristics shall be set to use the following parameters:

- Baud rate: One of the following shall be supported by the DUT:  
1200, 2400, 9600, 14400, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200
- Number of data bits: 8
- No parity
- 1 stop bit
- No flow control (RTS or CTS)

### 3.2 UART FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The Upper Tester shall always initiate any a test scenario using the UART interface. The DUT shall respond to the commands from the Upper Tester.

The Upper Tester sends test commands to the DUT. The DUT shall respond with a status event or the packet reporting event.

The Upper Tester shall not transmit further commands before it receives a response from the DUT. If the Upper Tester does not receive a response from the DUT within the time  $t_{TIMEOUT}$ , the Upper Tester shall transmit a reset command to the DUT and display an appropriate error message.

On reception of a reset command, the DUT shall reset all parameters to their default state.

#### Definitions

- All Commands and Events consist of 16 bits (2 octets).
- The most significant bit is bit number 15.
- The least significant bit is bit number 0.
- The most significant octet is from bit 15 to 8.
- The least significant octet is from bit 7 to 0.
- Commands and Events are sent most significant octet (MSO) first, followed by the least significant octet (LSO).

## 3.3 COMMANDS AND EVENTS

### 3.3.1 Command and Event Behavior

[Table 3.1](#) outlines the set of commands which can be received by the DUT and the corresponding response events that can be transmitted by the DUT.

Command (DUT RXD)	Event (DUT TXD)
LE_Reset	LE_Test_Status SUCCESS LE_Test_Status FAIL
LE_Receiver_Test	LE_Test_Status SUCCESS LE_Test_Status FAIL
LE_Transmitter_Test	LE_Test_Status SUCCESS LE_Test_Status FAIL
LE_Test_End	LE_Packet_Report LE_Test_Status FAIL

Table 3.1: 2-Wire command and event behavior

### 3.3.2 Commands

Command packet format is as shown in [Figure 3.1](#).

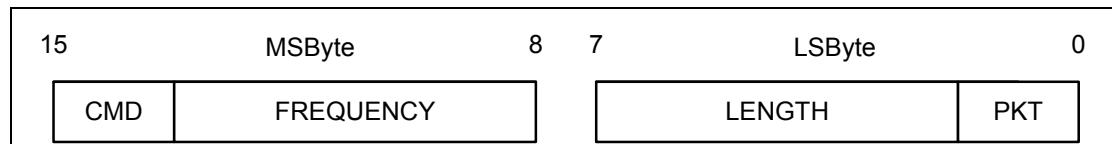


Figure 3.1: Command message format

CMD (command):

Size: 2 Bits

Value $b_1b_0$	Parameter Description
00	Reset
01	Receiver Test
10	Transmitter Test
11	Test End

*Direct Test Mode**Frequency:**Size: 6 Bits*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N	When N = 0x00 – 0x27: N = (F-2402)/2 Frequency Range 2402 MHz to 2480 MHz Where N = 0x28 – 0x3F: Reserved

*Length:**Size: 6 Bits*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
N	When N = 0x00 – 0x25: Length in octets of payload data in each packet When N = 0x26 – 0x3F: Reserved

*PKT (Packet Type):**Size: 2 Bits*

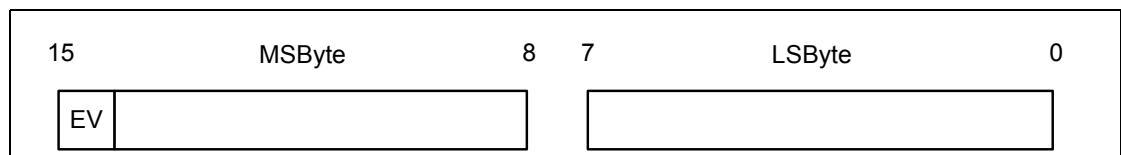
<b>Value <math>b_1 b_0</math></b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
00	PRBS9 Packet Payload
01	11110000 Packet Payload
10	10101010 Packet Payload
11	Vendor specific

### 3.4 EVENTS

There are two types of events sent by the DUT:

1. LE\_Test\_Status\_Event
2. LE\_Test\_Packet\_Report\_Event

Event packet format is as shown in [Figure 3.2](#). This packet format is used for both Command Status Events and Packet Report Events.



*Figure 3.2: Event packet format*

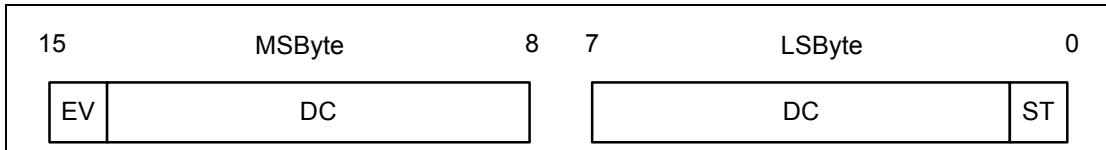
*EV (Event):**Size: 1 Bit*

<b>Value</b>	<b>Parameter Description</b>
0	LE_Test_Status_Event
1	LE_Packet_Report_Event

*Direct Test Mode*

### 3.4.1 LE\_Test\_Status\_Event

The LE\_Test\_Status\_Event packet format is as shown in [Figure 3.3](#).



*Figure 3.3: LE Test Status event*

*ST (status):*

*Size: 1 Bit*

Value	Parameter Description
0	Success
1	Error

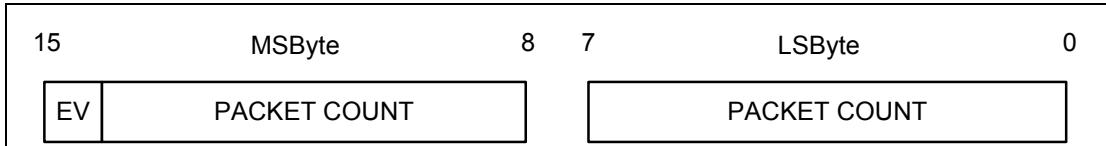
*DC (don't care):*

*Size: 14 Bits*

Value	Parameter Description
xxxxxxxxxxxx	Value ignored

### 3.4.2 LE\_Packet\_Report\_Event

The LE\_Packet\_Report\_Event packet format is as shown in [Figure 3.4](#). The *Packet Count* parameter indicates the number of received LE Test Packets. The *Packet Count* in the Packet Report ending a transmitter test shall be 0.



*Figure 3.4: LE Packet Report event*

*PACKET COUNT:*

*Size: 15 Bits*

Value	Parameter Description
N	N is the number of packets received Range = 0 to 32767.

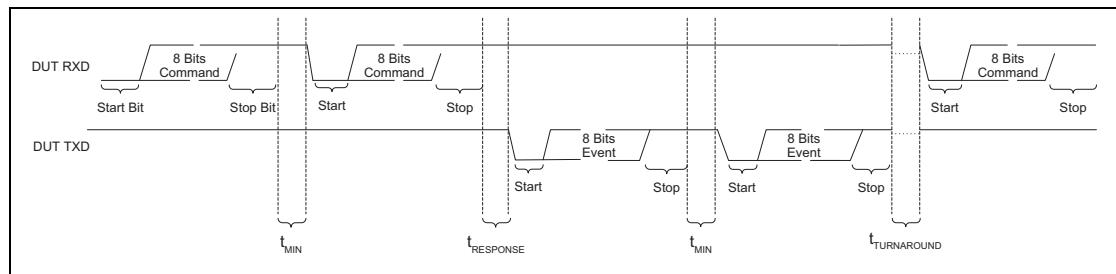
Note: The DUT is not responsible for any overflow conditions of the packet counter. That responsibility belongs with the RF PHY Tester or other auxiliary equipment.

### 3.5 TIMING – COMMAND AND EVENT

The timing requirements are as shown in [Table 3.2](#).

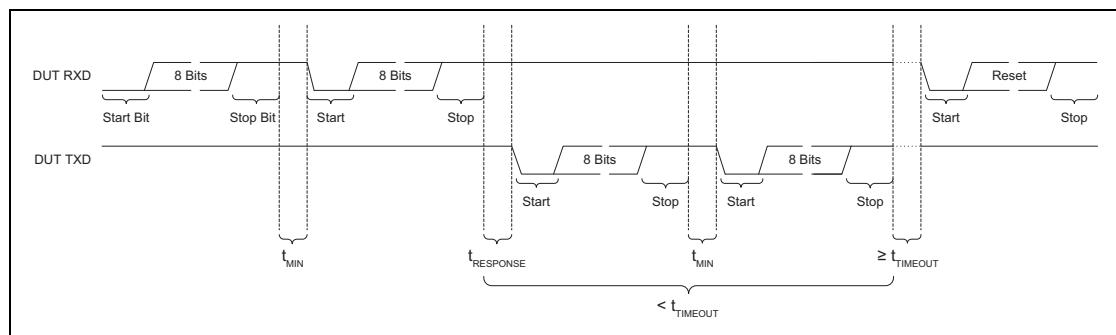
Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Max.	Unit
$b_{ERR}$	Baud rate accuracy		$\pm 5$	%
$t_{MIN}$	The time between the first and second octet of the command (end of stop bit to start of start bit)	0	5	ms
$t_{RESPONSE}$	The time from a DUT receiving a command (end of stop bit) until the DUT responds (start of start bit)	0	50	ms
$t_{TURNAROUND}$	The time from when the tester receives a response (end of stop bit) until the tester sends another command (start of start bit)	5	-	ms
$t_{TIMEOUT}$	The time from when a tester sends a command (end of stop bit) until the tester times out (not having received end of the stop bit in the response)	51	100	ms

*Table 3.2: Parameter requirements table for 2-wire UART interface*



*Figure 3.5: Command and event timing on 2-wire UART interface*

The commands and events shall be transmitted with two 8-bit octets with a maximum time between the 2 transmissions. A timeout is required for no response or an invalid response from the DUT.



*Figure 3.6: Command and event timing on 2-wire UART interface showing timeout*

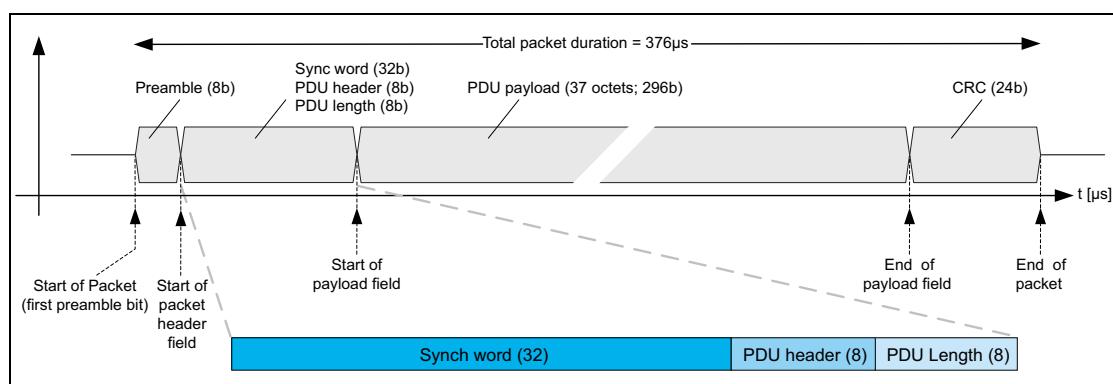
## 4 LE TEST PACKET DEFINITION

### 4.1 LE TEST PACKETS FORMAT

The LE Test packet format shall be as shown in [Figure 4.1](#). LE test packets are required for LE RF PHY conformance testing using Direct Test Mode.

The LE test packet consists of the following fields; preamble (8 bit), synchronization word (32 bit), PDU header (8 bit), PDU length (8 bit), payload (296 bit) and CRC (24 bit), totaling 376 bits. LE test packets do not incorporate a PDU address field.

Depending on the test, the packet payload content may vary.



*Figure 4.1: LE Test packet format*

#### 4.1.1 Whitening

LE test packets shall not use whitening.

#### 4.1.2 Preamble and Synchronization Word

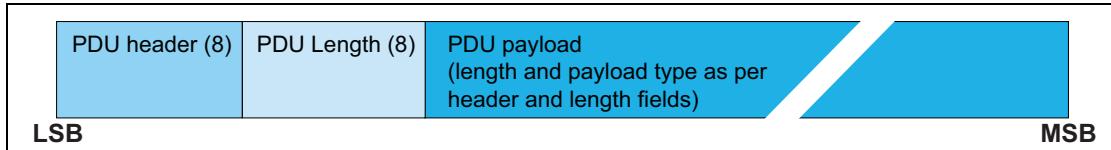
LE test packets shall have '10010100100000100110111010001110' (in transmission order) as the synchronization word. The preamble for all LE test packets is thus '10101010' (in transmission order).

#### 4.1.3 CRC

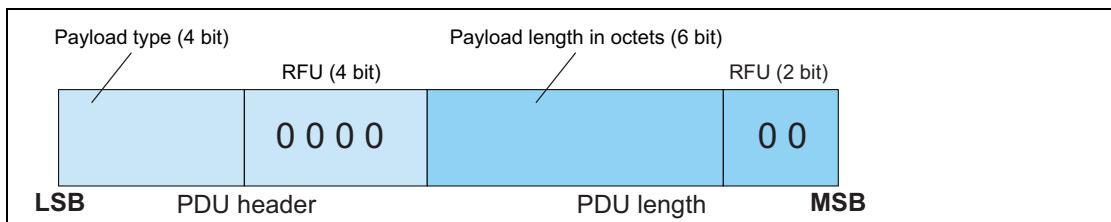
The CRC shift register shall be preset with 0x555555 for every LE test packet.

#### 4.1.4 LE Test Packet PDU

The LE test packet PDU consists of an 8-bit header, an 8-bit length field and a variable size payload. Its structure is as shown in [Figure 4.2](#).



*Figure 4.2: LE Test packet PDU structure*



*Figure 4.3: LE Test packet header and length field structure*

The first four bits of the PDU header field indicate the payload content type as defined in [Table 4.1](#). The length field expresses the payload field length in octets. The RFU bits shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

Payload type $b_3b_2b_1b_0$	Payload description
'0000'	PRBS9 sequence '1111111100000111101...' (in transmission order) as described in <a href="#">Section 4.1.5</a>
'0001'	Repeated '11110000' (in transmission order) sequence as described in <a href="#">Section 4.1.5</a>
'0010'	Repeated '10101010' (in transmission order) sequence as described in <a href="#">Section 4.1.5</a>
'0011'	PRBS15 sequence
'0100'	Repeated '11111111' (in transmission order) sequence
'0101'	Repeated '00000000' (in transmission order) sequence
'0110'	Repeated '00001111' (in transmission order) sequence
'0111'	Repeated '01010101' (in transmission order) sequence

*Table 4.1: LE test packet PDU header's Type field encoding*

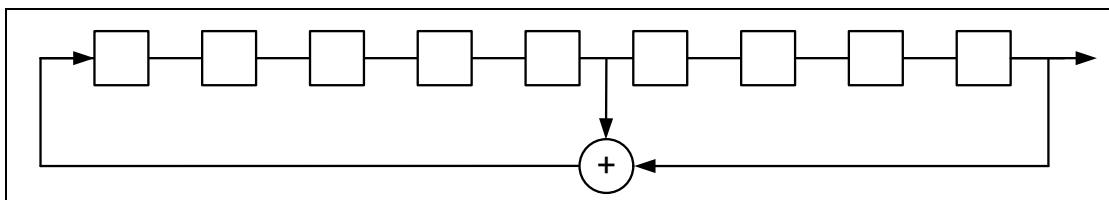
**Example:** For LE test packets with 0x0F payload contents ('11110000' in transmission order) and with the defined LE test packet payload length of 37 octets (296 bits), the LE test packet header and length type field will be '1000000010100100' in transmission order.

#### 4.1.5 LE Test Packet Payload Description

The LE test packet payload content alternatives required for the Bluetooth low energy RF PHY conformance tests are:

##### **PRBS9:**

A 9-bit pseudorandom binary sequence used for wanted signal payload content. The PRBS9 sequence repeats itself after the  $(2^9 - 1 = 511)$  bit. The PRBS9 sequence may be generated in a nine stage shift register whose 5<sup>th</sup> and 9<sup>th</sup> stage outputs are added in a modulo-two addition stage (see [Figure 4.4](#)), and the result is fed back to the input of the first stage. The sequence begins with the first ONE of 9 consecutive ONEs; i.e. the shift register is initialized with nine ONEs.



*Figure 4.4: Linear feedback shift register for generation of PRBS9 sequence*

##### **PRBS15:**

A 15-bit pseudorandom binary sequence used for the interfering signal. The PRBS15 sequence repeats itself after the  $(2^{15} - 1)$  bit. The PRBS15 polynomial may be arbitrarily chosen where this is not explicitly specified in the text. The interfering signal is to be continuously modulated with PRBS15 data (i.e. no packet structures or pauses in the signal).

##### **10101010:**

Repeated sequence of alternating 1's and 0's, starting at the first payload bit and ending at the start of the first bit in the CRC field. This pattern is used to verify the frequency deviation and the Gaussian filtering properties of the transmitter modulator.

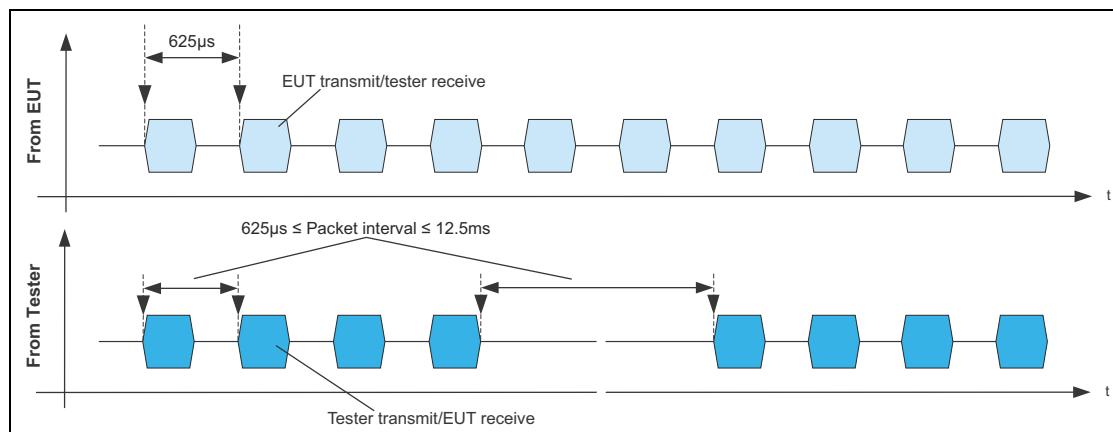
##### **11110000:**

Repeated sequence of alternating 0's and 1's in groups of four (i.e. 1111000011110000...), starting at the first payload bit and ending at the start of the first bit in the CRC field. This pattern is used to verify the frequency deviation and the Gaussian filtering properties of the transmitter modulator.

#### 4.1.6 LE Test Packet Interval

While in LE direct TX mode, LE test packets shall be transmitted from the EUT with a packet interval of 625 $\mu$ s, see [Figure 4.5](#) for reference.

While in LE direct RX mode, the nominal packet interval of the LE test packets transmitted from the tester is 625 $\mu$ s (i.e. the time from the start of a LE test packet to the start of the next LE test packet). The tester packet interval may be extended up to 12.5ms upon change of the dirty transmitter parameter settings and during verification of the EUT PER reporting functionality.



*Figure 4.5: LE Test packet interval in LE Direct Test Mode*

---

*Direct Test Mode*



## LIST OF FIGURES (all parts)

### Part A

Figure 3.1:	GFSK parameters definition .....	17
-------------	----------------------------------	----

### Part B

Figure 1.1:	State diagram of the Link Layer state machine .....	33
Figure 1.2:	Format of public device address .....	35
Figure 2.1:	Link Layer packet format .....	37
Figure 2.2:	Advertising channel PDU .....	38
Figure 2.3:	Advertising channel PDU Header .....	39
Figure 2.4:	ADV_IND PDU Payload .....	40
Figure 2.5:	ADV_DIRECT_IND PDU Payload .....	40
Figure 2.6:	ADV_NONCONN_IND PDU Payload .....	41
Figure 2.7:	ADV_SCAN_IND PDU Payload .....	41
Figure 2.8:	SCAN_REQ PDU Payload .....	42
Figure 2.9:	SCAN_RSP PDU payload .....	42
Figure 2.10:	CONNECT_REQ PDU payload .....	43
Figure 2.11:	LLData field structure in CONNECT_REQ PDU's payload .....	43
Figure 2.12:	Data Channel PDU .....	45
Figure 2.13:	Data channel PDU header .....	45
Figure 2.14:	LL control PDU payload .....	46
Figure 2.15:	CtrData field of the LL_CONNECTION_UPDATE_REQ PDU .....	48
Figure 2.16:	CtrData field of the LL_CHANNEL_MAP_REQ PDU .....	48
Figure 2.17:	CtrData field of the LL_TERMINATE_IND PDU .....	49
Figure 2.18:	CtrData field of the LL_ENC_REQ PDU .....	49
Figure 2.20:	CtrData field of the LL_UNKNOWN_RSP PDU .....	50
Figure 2.21:	CtrData field of the LL_FEATURE_REQ PDU .....	50
Figure 2.19:	CtrData field of the LL_ENC_RSP PDU .....	50
Figure 2.22:	CtrData field of the LL_FEATURE_RSP PDU .....	51
Figure 2.23:	CtrData field of the LL_VERSION_IND PDU .....	51
Figure 2.24:	CtrData field of the LL_REJECT_IND .....	52
Figure 2.25:	CtrData field of the LL_SLAVE_FEATURE_REQ PDU .....	52
Figure 2.26:	CtrData field of the LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_REQ PDU .....	52
Figure 2.27:	CtrData field of the LL_CONNECTION_PARAM_RSP PDU .....	53
Figure 2.28:	CtrData field of the LL_REJECT_IND_EXT PDU .....	55
Figure 3.1:	Payload bit processes .....	56
Figure 3.2:	The LFSR circuit generating the CRC .....	57
Figure 3.3:	The LFSR circuit to generate data whitening .....	57
Figure 4.1:	Advertising events perturbed in time using advDelay .....	62
Figure 4.2:	Connectable undirected advertising event with only advertising PDUs .....	63



Figure 4.3:	Connectable undirected advertising event with SCAN_REQ and SCAN_RSP PDUs in the middle of an advertising event .....	64
Figure 4.4:	Connectable undirected advertising event with SCAN_REQ and SCAN_RSP packets at the end of an advertising event .....	64
Figure 4.5:	Connectable undirected advertising event during which a CONNECT_REQ PDU is received .....	64
Figure 4.6:	Low duty cycle connectable directed advertising event with only advertising PDUs .....	65
Figure 4.7:	Low duty cycle connectable directed advertising event during which a CONNECT_REQ PDU is received .....	66
Figure 4.8:	High duty cycle connectable directed advertising event with only advertising PDUs .....	66
Figure 4.9:	Scannable undirected advertising event with only advertising PDUs .....	67
Figure 4.10:	Scannable undirected advertising event with SCAN_REQ and SCAN_RSP PDUs in the middle of an advertising event .....	68
Figure 4.11:	Scannable undirected advertising event with SCAN_REQ and SCAN_RSP PDUs at the end of an advertising event .....	68
Figure 4.12:	Non-connectable undirected advertising event .....	69
Figure 4.13:	Master's view on LL connection setup with a non-zero transmitWindowOffset .....	75
Figure 4.14:	Master's view on LL connection setup with transmitWindowOffset set to zero .....	75
Figure 4.15:	Slave closing LL connection setup in the second LL connection event .....	76
Figure 4.16:	Block diagram of data channel selection algorithm .....	79
Figure 4.17:	Transmit and Receive SN and NESN flow diagram .....	80
Figure 5.1:	Connection event timing in the case of connection parameter update .....	84
Figure 5.2:	Master-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure .....	91
Figure 5.3:	Slave-initiated Feature Exchange Procedure .....	92
Figure 5.4:	Utilizing the ReferencConnEventCount and Offset0 fields to indicate position of the new anchor points – Instant is before the ReferenceConnEventCount .....	99
Figure 5.5:	Utilizing the ReferencConnEventCount and Offset0 fields to indicate position of the new anchor points – Instant is after the ReferenceConnEventCount .....	100

## Part D

Figure 1.1:	Example MSC .....	117
Figure 2.1:	Initial Setup .....	118
Figure 2.2:	Random Device Address .....	119
Figure 2.3:	White Lists .....	119
Figure 3.1:	Undirected Advertising .....	120
Figure 3.2:	High Duty Cycle Directed Advertising showing failure case ...	121



Figure 3.3:	Low Duty Cycle Directed Advertising .....	122
Figure 4.1:	Passive Scanning .....	123
Figure 4.2:	Active Scanning .....	124
Figure 5.1:	Initiating a Connection .....	125
Figure 5.2:	Canceling an Initiation .....	126
Figure 6.1:	Sending Data .....	127
Figure 6.2:	Connection Update .....	128
Figure 6.3:	Channel Map Update .....	128
Figure 6.4:	Master-initiated Features Exchange .....	129
Figure 6.5:	Slave-initiated Features Exchange .....	129
Figure 6.6:	Version Exchange from Master .....	130
Figure 6.7:	Version Exchange from Slave .....	130
Figure 6.8:	Start Encryption .....	131
Figure 6.9:	Start encryption without long-term key .....	132
Figure 6.10:	Start encryption with slave masking out event .....	133
Figure 6.11:	Start Encryption failure when slave does not support encryption .....	134
Figure 6.12:	Restart Encryption .....	135
Figure 6.13:	Disconnect from Master .....	136
Figure 6.14:	Disconnect from Slave .....	136
Figure 6.15:	Slave-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – slave requests a change in anchor points, master accepts .....	137
Figure 6.16:	Slave-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – slave requests a change in anchor points, master rejects .....	137
Figure 6.17:	Slave-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – slave requests change in LE connection parameters, master's Host accepts .....	138
Figure 6.18:	Slave-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – slave requests change in LE connection parameters, master's Host rejects .....	138
Figure 6.19:	Master-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – master requests a change in anchor points, slave accepts .....	139
Figure 6.20:	Master-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – master requests a change in anchor points, slave rejects .....	139
Figure 6.21:	Master-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – master requests change in LE connection parameters, slave's Host accepts .....	140
Figure 6.22:	Master-initiated Connection Parameters Request procedure – master requests change in LE connection parameters, slave's Host rejects .....	140
Figure 6.23:	Set LE Authenticated Payload Timeout .....	141
Figure 6.24:	Successful LE Ping .....	141
Figure 6.25:	Unsuccessful LE Ping .....	142
Figure 6.26:	T <sub>LE_Authenticated_Payload_Timer</sub> reset .....	142



## Part F

Figure 1.1:	Setup alternatives for LE Direct Test Mode: Designs with accessible HCI (left) and designs without accessible HCI (right) .....	154
Figure 1.2:	RF PHY test setup for Direct Test Mode (UART control) .....	154
Figure 2.1:	Transmitter Test MSC .....	156
Figure 2.2:	Receiver Test MSC .....	156
Figure 3.1:	Command message format .....	158
Figure 3.2:	Event packet format .....	159
Figure 3.3:	LE Test Status event .....	160
Figure 3.4:	LE Packet Report event .....	160
Figure 3.5:	Command and event timing on 2-wire UART interface .....	161
Figure 3.6:	Command and event timing on 2-wire UART interface showing timeout .....	161
Figure 4.1:	LE Test packet format .....	162
Figure 4.2:	LE Test packet PDU structure .....	163
Figure 4.3:	LE Test packet header and length field structure .....	163
Figure 4.4:	Linear feedback shift register for generation of PRBS9 sequence .....	164
Figure 4.5:	LE Test packet interval in LE Direct Test Mode .....	165



## LIST OF TABLES (all parts)

### Part A

Table 2.1:	Operating frequency bands.....	16
Table 3.1:	Transmission power .....	17
Table 3.2:	Transmit Spectrum mask .....	18
Table 3.3:	Maximum allowable frequency drifts in a packet.....	19
Table 4.1:	Interference performance.....	21
Table 4.2:	Out-of-band suppression (or rejection) requirements. ....	22

### Part B

Table 1.1:	Mapping of RF Channel to Data Channel Index and Advertising Channel Index.....	36
Table 2.1:	Advertising channel PDU Header's PDU Type field encoding ...	39
Table 2.2:	SCA field encoding .....	44
Table 2.3:	Data channel PDU Header field .....	46
Table 2.4:	LL Control PDU Opcodes.....	47
Table 4.1:	Advertising event types, PDUs used and allowable response PDUs.....	61
Table 4.2:	MD bit usage for closing connection events.....	77
Table 4.3:	FeatureSet field's bit mapping to Controller features .....	81

### Part E

Table 2.1:	CCM nonce format.....	148
Table 2.2:	Block B0 format.....	149
Table 2.3:	Block B1 format.....	149
Table 2.4:	Block Ax format.....	150

### Part F

Table 2.1:	Mapping table of HCI / 2-wire Commands/Events .....	155
Table 3.1:	2-Wire command and event behavior .....	158
Table 3.2:	Parameter requirements table for 2-wire UART interface .....	161
Table 4.1:	LE test packet PDU header's Type field encoding .....	163







# Specification of the **Bluetooth®** System



Specification Volume 7

**Core System  
Package [Wireless  
Coexistence volume]**

Covered Core Package version: 4.1

Publication date: 03 December 2013



**Bluetooth®**





## Revision History

The Revision History is shown in the [\[Vol 0\] Part C, Section on page 61](#).

## Contributors

The persons who contributed to this specification are listed in the [\[Vol 0\] Part C, Section on page 61](#).

## Web Site

This specification can also be found on the official Bluetooth web site:  
<http://www.bluetooth.com>

## Disclaimer and Copyright Notice

The copyright in these specifications is owned by the Promoter Members of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. ("Bluetooth SIG"). Use of these specifications and any related intellectual property (collectively, the "Specification"), is governed by the Promoters Membership Agreement among the Promoter Members and Bluetooth SIG (the "Promoters Agreement"), certain membership agreements between Bluetooth SIG and its Adopter and Associate Members (the "Membership Agreements") and the Bluetooth Specification Early Adopters Agreements ("1.2 Early Adopters Agreements") among Early Adopter members of the unincorporated Bluetooth special interest group and the Promoter Members (the "Early Adopters Agreement"). Certain rights and obligations of the Promoter Members under the Early Adopters Agreements have been assigned to Bluetooth SIG by the Promoter Members.

Use of the Specification by anyone who is not a member of Bluetooth SIG or a party to an Early Adopters Agreement (each such person or party, a "Member"), is prohibited. The legal rights and obligations of each Member are governed by their applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights are granted herein.

Any use of the Specification not in compliance with the terms of the applicable Membership Agreement, Early Adopters Agreement or Promoters Agreement is prohibited and any such prohibited use may result in termination of the applicable Membership Agreement or Early Adopters Agreement and other liability permitted by the applicable agreement or by applicable law to Bluetooth SIG or any of its members for patent, copyright and/or trademark infringement.



THE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR REASONABLE SKILL OR CARE, OR ANY WARRANTY ARISING OUT OF ANY COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, TRADE PRACTICE, PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE.

Each Member hereby acknowledges that products equipped with the Bluetooth® technology ("Bluetooth® Products") may be subject to various regulatory controls under the laws and regulations of various governments worldwide. Such laws and regulatory controls may govern, among other things, the combination, operation, use, implementation and distribution of Bluetooth® Products. Examples of such laws and regulatory controls include, but are not limited to, airline regulatory controls, telecommunications regulations, technology transfer controls and health and safety regulations. Each Member is solely responsible for the compliance by their Bluetooth® Products with any such laws and regulations and for obtaining any and all required authorizations, permits, or licenses for their Bluetooth® Products related to such regulations within the applicable jurisdictions. Each Member acknowledges that nothing in the Specification provides any information or assistance in connection with securing such compliance, authorizations or licenses. **NOTHING IN THE SPECIFICATION CREATES ANY WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING SUCH LAWS OR REGULATIONS.**

ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OR FOR NONCOMPLIANCE WITH LAWS, RELATING TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION IS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. BY USE OF THE SPECIFICATION, EACH MEMBER EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY CLAIM AGAINST BLUETOOTH SIG AND ITS PROMOTER MEMBERS RELATED TO USE OF THE SPECIFICATION.

Bluetooth SIG reserves the right to adopt any changes or alterations to the Specification as it deems necessary or appropriate.

Copyright © 1999 - 2013

Ericsson AB,

Lenovo, (Singapore) Pte. Ltd

Intel Corporation,

Microsoft Corporation,

Motorola Mobility, LLC,

Nokia Corporation,

Toshiba Corporation

\*Third-party brands and names are the property of their respective owners.



## TABLE OF CONTENT

---

### Part A

#### **MWS COEXISTENCE LOGICAL SIGNALING SPECIFICATION**

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1      Introduction .....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>2      Logical Interface.....</b>	<b>11</b>
2.1    Coexistence Signals.....	11
2.1.1    FRAME_SYNC.....	11
2.1.2    MWS_RX.....	12
2.1.3    BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI .....	12
2.1.4    BLUETOOTH_TX_ON .....	12
2.1.5    MWS_PATTERN .....	13
2.1.6    MWS_TX .....	13
2.1.7    802_TX_ON .....	13
2.1.8    802_RX_PRI .....	13
2.1.9    MWS_INACTIVITY_DURATION .....	14
2.1.10    MWS_SCAN_FREQUENCY .....	14
2.2    Tolerances for Offsets and Jitter .....	14

### Part B

#### **WIRELESS COEXISTENCE INTERFACE 1 (WCI-1) TRANSPORT SPECIFICATION**

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>1      Introduction .....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>2      Physical Layer .....</b>	<b>21</b>
2.1    Physical Signal Specifications (Informative) .....	22
<b>3      Transport Layer .....</b>	<b>24</b>
3.1    Message Types .....	24
3.1.1    Real-time Signal Message (Type 0) .....	25
3.1.2    Transport Control Message (Type 1).....	26
3.1.3    Transparent Data Message (Type 2).....	26
3.1.4    MWS Inactivity Duration Message (Type 3) .....	27
3.1.5    MWS Scan Frequency Message (Type 4).....	27

**Part C****WIRELESS COEXISTENCE INTERFACE 2 (WCI-2) TRANSPORT  
SPECIFICATION**

<b>Contents .....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>1      Introduction .....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>2      Physical Layer.....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>3      Transport Layer .....</b>	<b>34</b>
3.1    Message Types.....	34
3.1.1   Real-time Signal Message (Type 0).....	35
3.1.2   Transport Control Message (Type 1) .....	36
3.1.3   Transparent Data Message (Type 2).....	36
3.1.4   MWS Inactivity Duration Message (Type 3).....	37
3.1.5   MWS Scan Frequency Message (Type 4) .....	37
<b>List of Figures (all parts) .....</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>List of Tables (all parts) .....</b>	<b>41</b>

Core System Package [Wireless Coexistence volume]

Part A

## MWS COEXISTENCE LOGICAL SIGNALING SPECIFICATION

*This part specifies the Mobile Wireless Standards (MWS) coexistence logical interface between the host controller and an MWS device.*



## CONTENTS

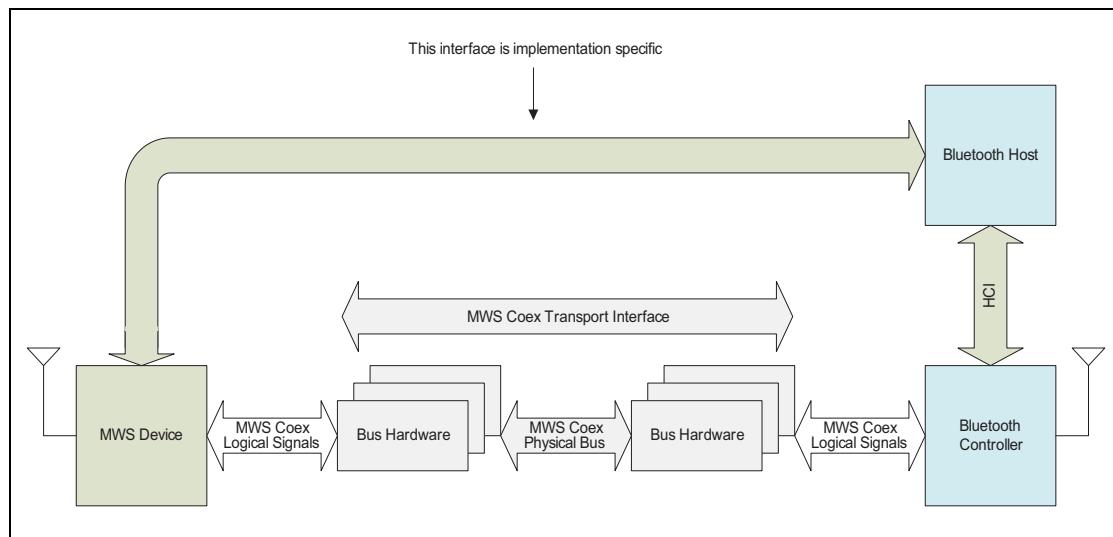
---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Logical Interface.....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>2.1</b>	<b>Coexistence Signals.....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>2.1.1</b>	<b>FRAME_SYNC.....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>2.1.2</b>	<b>MWS_RX.....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>2.1.3</b>	<b>BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>2.1.4</b>	<b>BLUETOOTH_TX_ON .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>2.1.5</b>	<b>MWS_PATTERN .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>2.1.6</b>	<b>MWS_TX .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>2.1.7</b>	<b>802_TX_ON .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>2.1.8</b>	<b>802_RX_PRI .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>2.1.9</b>	<b>MWS_INACTIVITY_DURATION .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>2.1.10</b>	<b>MWS_SCAN_FREQUENCY .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>2.2</b>	<b>Tolerances for Offsets and Jitter .....</b>	<b>14</b>

## 1 INTRODUCTION

This part of the Bluetooth Core Specification describes the MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling. A Bluetooth Controller may incorporate a real-time transport interface to transport the logical signals defined in this section between the Bluetooth Controller and an MWS device.

[Figure 1.1](#) depicts the signaling and messaging architecture.



*Figure 1.1: Coexistence signaling/messaging architecture*

MWS Coexistence logical signaling is designed to enable a standard interface to allow an MWS device and a Bluetooth Controller to exchange information and support cooperative coexistence.

MWS Coexistence logical signaling defines a set of signals between the collocated Bluetooth Controller and MWS device. Those signals carry time critical, real-time information such as the start point of an MWS frame. The coexistence logical signaling architecture also includes a transparent data messaging mechanism to enable passing of information between the MWS device and Bluetooth Controller when such information cannot tolerate the long latency (tens of milliseconds) of the signaling path via the Bluetooth Host.

## 2 LOGICAL INTERFACE

---

### 2.1 COEXISTENCE SIGNALS

**Table 2.1** defines the logical signals. These logical signals assist in time alignment, protecting the MWS device and the Bluetooth Controller from mutual interference, thus maximizing the usability of the Bluetooth radio.

Name	Direction	Description
FRAME_SYNC	MWS → Bluetooth	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.1</a>
MWS_RX	MWS → Bluetooth	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.2</a>
BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI	Bluetooth → MWS	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.3</a>
BLUETOOTH_TX_ON	Bluetooth → MWS	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.4</a>
MWS_PATTERN	MWS → Bluetooth	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.5</a>
MWS_TX	MWS → Bluetooth	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.6</a>
802_RX_PRI	Bluetooth → MWS	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.7</a>
802_TX_ON	Bluetooth → MWS	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.8</a>
MWS_INACTIVITY_DURATION	MWS → Bluetooth	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.9</a>
MWS_SCAN_FREQUENCY	MWS → Bluetooth	See <a href="#">Section 2.1.10</a>

Table 2.1: *Coexistence signals*

The first 8 of these (FRAME\_SYNC, MWS\_RX, BLUETOOTH\_RX\_PRI, BLUETOOTH\_TX\_ON, MWS\_PATTERN, MWS\_TX, 802\_RX\_PRI, and 802\_TX\_ON) are also referred to as the "real-time coexistence signals".

Many of the signals have associated parameters, which are configured by the Bluetooth Host using HCI commands. There is no requirement for signals that are used internally to be connected to an external interface, although testing requires external control of the FRAME\_SYNC signal. For example, a combo-device that integrates a Bluetooth Controller and an MWS radio together does not need to bring out the coexistence signals.

[Section 2.2](#) provides recommended values for the defined offset and jitter parameters.

#### 2.1.1 FRAME\_SYNC

The FRAME\_SYNC signal is sent by the MWS device to indicate the time of the beginning of MWS frames according to the MWS network timing. It provides the anchor point for the Bluetooth Controller to properly align Bluetooth transmission and reception activity with the MWS network frame structure. The time when FRAME\_SYNC is sent over the transport, adjusted for Ext\_Frame\_Sync Assert\_Offset, indicates the start time of the first

Period\_Duration parameter in the HCI\_Set\_External\_Frame\_Configuration command.

The MWS device will inform the Bluetooth Controller about changes to the layout and timing of the MWS frame by issuing new HCI\_Set\_External\_Frame\_Configuration commands.

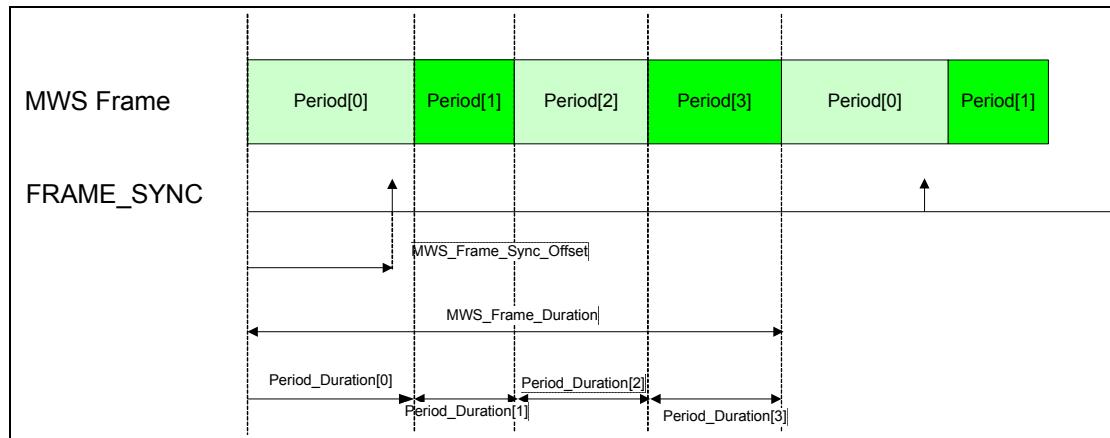


Figure 2.1: Illustration of FRAME\_SYNC

### 2.1.2 MWS\_RX

The MWS\_RX signal is sent by the MWS device to indicate that an MWS reception is occurring and to request that the Bluetooth Controller cease ongoing transmission and not start a new transmission. The Bluetooth Controller can occasionally disregard the MWS\_RX signal for critical transmissions.

The MWS\_RX signal should be de-asserted at the time an MWS device stops actively receiving. If there are multiple distinct periods of reception within an MWS downlink duration, the signal may stay asserted until the last period has finished receiving.

### 2.1.3 BLUETOOTH\_RX\_PRI

The BLUETOOTH\_RX\_PRI signal is used by the Bluetooth Controller to request that the MWS device cease its transmission and/or refrain from starting a transmission because the Bluetooth Controller is expecting a high priority reception.

The signal should be used minimally by the Bluetooth system so as not to adversely affect the MWS system. There is no guarantee that the MWS device will honor the signal and not transmit or abort an ongoing transmission.

### 2.1.4 BLUETOOTH\_TX\_ON

The BLUETOOTH\_TX\_ON signal is sent by the Bluetooth Controller to indicate that it is actively transmitting.

### 2.1.5 MWS\_PATTERN

The MWS\_PATTERN signal is sent by the MWS device to inform the Bluetooth Controller which MWS\_PATTERN is in use.

MWS\_PATTERN changes take effect at the start of the next MWS Frame as defined by the FRAME\_SYNC signal plus the MWS\_Frame\_Sync\_Offset.

Up to three different MWS\_PATTERNS can be selected: 0, 1, and 2. The MWS device may indicate that the MWS\_PATTERN has not changed by setting it to 3. The definition of the patterns is communicated to the Bluetooth Controller using the HCI\_Set\_MWS\_PATTERN\_Configuration command.

The MWS\_PATTERN will be retransmitted by the MWS device every pattern interval.

### 2.1.6 MWS\_TX

The MWS\_TX signal is sent by the MWS device to indicate its transmission state.

The signal should be asserted at the beginning of an MWS transmission and de-asserted at the end of a transmission. If there are multiple transmission periods during an uplink frame, the signal may stay asserted until the end of the last transmission period.

### 2.1.7 802\_TX\_ON

Bluetooth technology and 802.11 may be collocated and share an interface to coordinate access to the 2.4 GHz ISM band.

The 802\_TX\_ON is used by the 802.11 device to indicate the state of the 802.11 transmission.

Interference generated by 802.11 to the MWS device will not necessarily be distinguishable from interference created by Bluetooth transmissions.

This signal allows the MWS device to distinguish the interference generated by 802.11 transmissions from the interference generated by the Bluetooth transmissions. The MWS device can use that information to optimize its channel access.

### 2.1.8 802\_RX\_PRI

This signal requests that the MWS device stop or refrain from any transmission because the WLAN device collocated with the Bluetooth Controller is expecting a high priority reception.

The signal should be used minimally by the 802.11 system so as not to adversely affect the MWS system. There is no guarantee that the MWS device will honor the signal and not transmit or abort an ongoing transmission.

### **2.1.9 MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION**

The MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION signal provides the time duration until the MWS device is active again. Subsequent MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION signals override previously sent time durations.

MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION may be set to zero (i.e. cancel), infinite, or a positive finite duration. The transport layer defines the value for infinite duration and the set of finite durations available.

### **2.1.10 MWS\_SCAN\_FREQUENCY**

The MWS\_SCAN\_FREQUENCY signal provides an index to a table of RF frequencies during MWS scan operation.

The MWS device signals MWS\_SCAN\_FREQUENCY if it starts an inter-frequency scan.

Setting MWS\_SCAN\_FREQUENCY to a non-zero value indicates the start of the MWS scan period. Setting MWS\_SCAN\_FREQUENCY to zero indicates the end of the scan period.

The Bluetooth Controller should avoid any transmissions that can interfere with the scan while a scan is active. The Bluetooth Controller can occasionally disregard the signal for critical transmissions.

## **2.2 TOLERANCES FOR OFFSETS AND JITTER**

This section lists the recommended tolerances for the signal assertion and de-assertion offsets and jitter for those signals. Note: The transmitting side should use a value within the range and the receiving side should accept any value within the range and may accept other values.

An offset is a static advance notification or delay between the real physical event and the time when the corresponding signal is issued.

Jitter is variation in the timing of each signal from ideal timing.

Signals that are turned on and off around a period of time have specified values for both assertion and de-assertion offsets and jitter. Signals that represent a single event at a single instant in time have only assertion offset and jitter timing specified.

All jitter values are given as an unsigned value representing the maximum allowable jitter in positive and negative directions. De-assertion and MWS\_Frame\_Sync Assert\_Offset may be negative (i.e., signal is asserted before the event) or positive (i.e., signal is asserted after the event). All other assertion signals should be negative (i.e., signal is issued before the event).

## MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling Specification

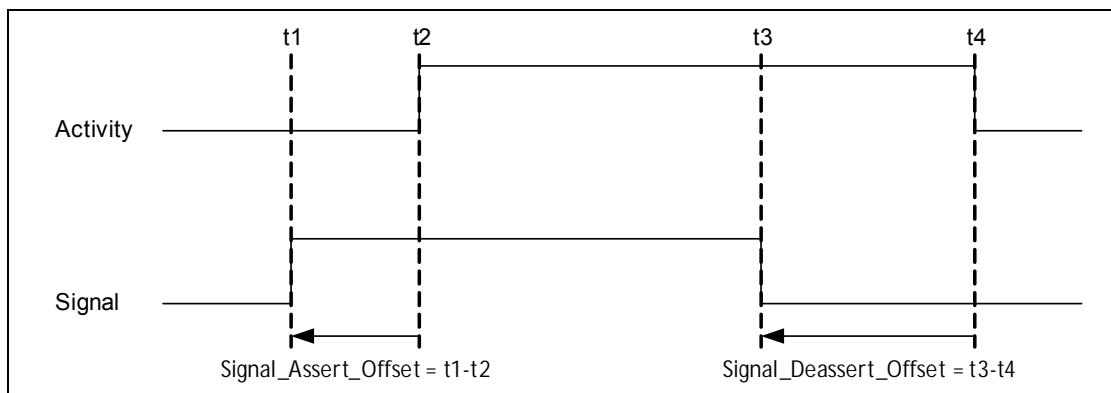


Figure 2.2: Signal with negative Assert Offset and negative De-assert Offset

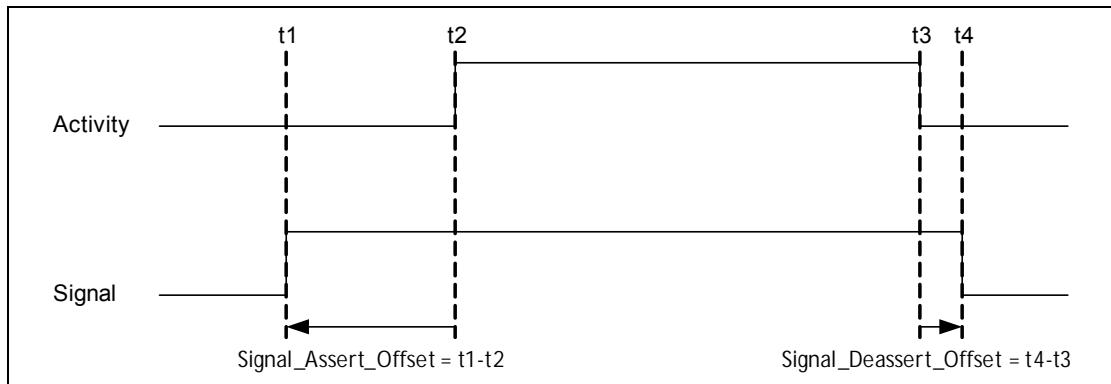


Figure 2.3: Signal with negative Assert Offset and positive De-assert Offset

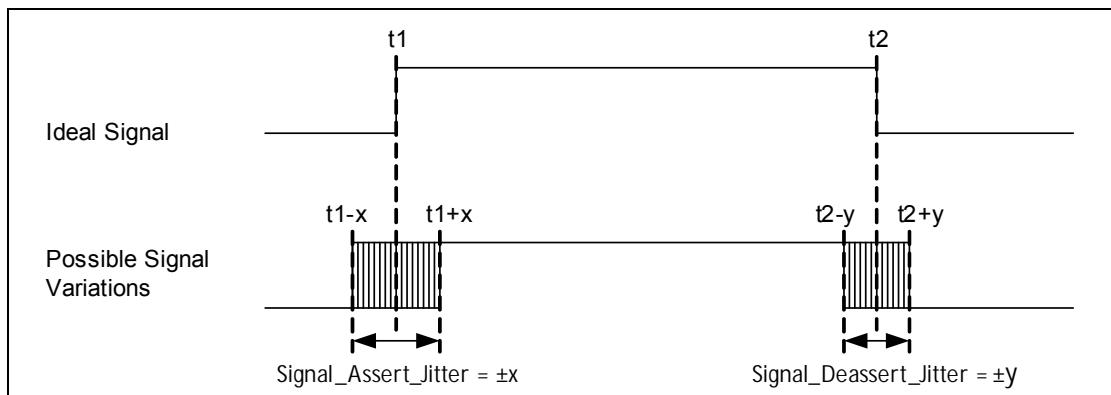


Figure 2.4: Signal assertion and de-assertion jitter

Parameter	Earliest	Latest
MWS_Frame_Sync Assert_Offset	-Ext_Frame_Duration	+Ext_Frame_Duration
MWS_Frame_Sync Assert_Jitter	N/A	±3 usec
MWS_Rx Assert_Offset	-2 ms	-20 usec

Table 2.2: Tolerances for offsets and jitter

*MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling Specification*

Parameter	Earliest	Latest
MWS_Rx Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
MWS_Rx_Deassert_Offset	-2 ms	0
MWS_Rx_Deassert_Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
MWS_Tx Assert_Offset	-2 ms	0
MWS_Tx Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
MWS_Tx_Deassert_Offset	-2 ms	0
MWS_Tx_Deassert_Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
MWS_Pattern Assert_Offset	0	+Ext_Frame_Duration
MWS_Pattern Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
MWS_Inactivity_Duration Assert_Offset	0	+Ext_Frame_Duration
MWS_Inactivity_Duration Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
MWS_Scan_Frequency Assert_Offset	-2 ms	-20 usec
MWS_Scan_Frequency Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
Bluetooth_Rx_Priority Assert_Offset	-1 ms	0
Bluetooth_Rx_Priority Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
Bluetooth_Rx_Priority Deassert_Offset	-1 ms	0
Bluetooth_Rx_Priority Deassert_Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
802_Rx_Priority Assert_Offset	-1 ms	0
802_Rx_Priority Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
802_Rx_Priority Deassert_Offset	-1 ms	0
802_Rx_Priority Deassert_Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
Bluetooth_Tx_On Assert_Offset	-100 usec	0
Bluetooth_Tx_On Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
Bluetooth_Tx_On Deassert_Offset	0	100 usec
Bluetooth_Tx_On Deassert_Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
802_Tx_On Assert_Offset	-100 usec	0
802_Tx_On Assert Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
802_Tx_On Deassert_Offset	0	100 usec
802_Tx_On Deassert_Jitter	N/A	$\pm 5$ usec
MWS_Priority Assert Offset Request	-1 ms	-200 usec

Table 2.2: Tolerances for offsets and jitter

Core System Package [Wireless Coexistence volume]

Part B

# **WIRELESS COEXISTENCE INTERFACE 1 (WCI-1) TRANSPORT SPECIFICATION**

***This part specifies the MWS Wireless Coexistence Interface 1 (WCI-1) Transport Interface between the Bluetooth Controller and an MWS device.***



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Physical Layer .....</b>	<b>21</b>
2.1	Physical Signal Specifications (Informative) .....	22
<b>3</b>	<b>Transport Layer .....</b>	<b>24</b>
3.1	Message Types .....	24
3.1.1	Real-time Signal Message (Type 0) .....	25
3.1.2	Transport Control Message (Type 1) .....	26
3.1.3	Transparent Data Message (Type 2) .....	26
3.1.4	MWS Inactivity Duration Message (Type 3) .....	27
3.1.5	MWS Scan Frequency Message (Type 4) .....	27

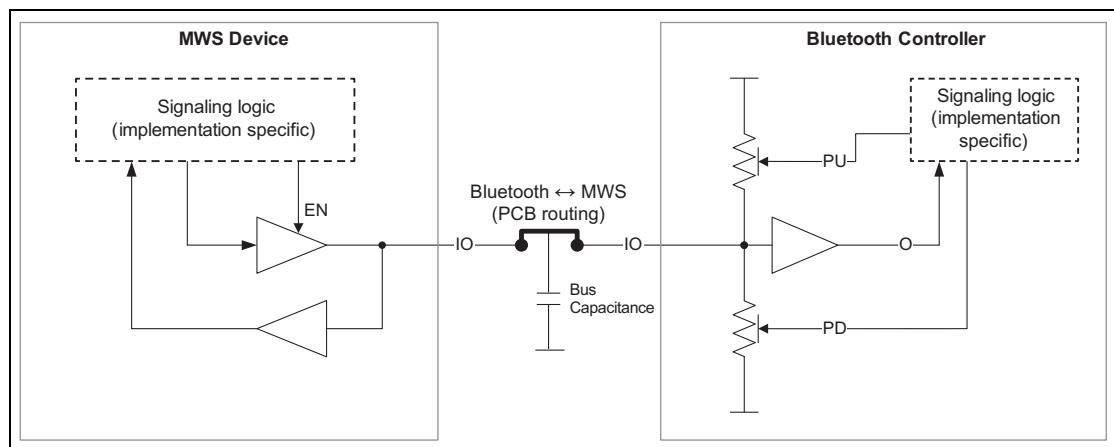
## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

This part of the Bluetooth Core Specification describes the MWS Wireless Coexistence Interface 1 (WCI-1) Transport for a Bluetooth Controller. It provides a half-duplex UART carrying logical signals framed as UART characters. Only the TXD and RXD UART signals are used.

## 2 PHYSICAL LAYER

The WCI-1 physical layer multiplexes the UART TXD and RXD onto a single wire, using drive strengths to resolve contention. The MWS device uses direct drive to transmit its signals, while the Bluetooth Controller uses a pull up / pull down drive to transmit its signals. The configuration is illustrated in [Figure 2.1](#).

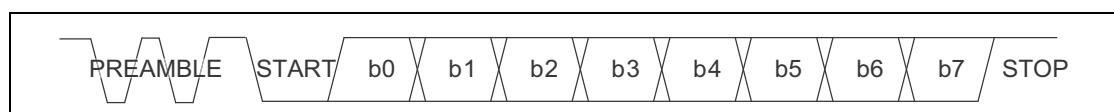


*Figure 2.1: WCI-1 physical interface*

A high voltage on the wire shall be interpreted as a logical ‘1’ and a low voltage shall be interpreted as a logical ‘0’. The actual voltage levels are vendor specific.

The MWS device output buffer shall be in the high impedance state when it is not transmitting. The Bluetooth Controller shall be in the pulled-up state when it is not transmitting.

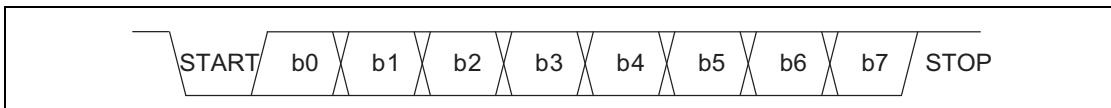
The MWS device may transmit at any time, using the waveform illustrated in [Figure 2.2](#).



*Figure 2.2: UART waveform for MWS-to-Bluetooth signals*

Every MWS-to-Bluetooth message shall be preceded by a preamble, which consists of 5 bits 01011 (the left-most bit is transmitted first). The preamble is sent at a baud rate that is at least twice the baud rate of Bluetooth-to-MWS signals. The nominal drive strength for the preamble should be targeted at no more than  $250\Omega$  equivalent output resistance. The Bluetooth Controller shall be able to detect the preamble and go into the reception mode to receive the message that follows. If the Bluetooth Controller detects a preamble while it is transmitting, it shall stop the transmission and go into the reception mode. After completion of the reception, it may retransmit the message that was interrupted.

When the Bluetooth Controller is not in the reception mode, it may transmit a message using the pull up / pull down mechanism. The nominal pull strength should be targeted at  $4\text{ k}\Omega \pm 1\text{ k}\Omega$  equivalent resistance for both pull up and pull down. The Bluetooth-to-MWS waveform is illustrated in [Figure 2.3](#).



*Figure 2.3: UART waveform for Bluetooth-to-MWS signals*

## 2.1 PHYSICAL SIGNAL SPECIFICATIONS (INFORMATIVE)

The tables below provide more complete specifications for the physical signals. They are provided as a reference to device makers:

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Condition</b>	<b>Value</b>	
			<b>Min</b>	<b>Max</b>
V <sub>IL</sub>	Low level input voltage	V <sub>DD</sub> =1.8~2.5V <sup>1</sup>	-0.5V	0.2V <sub>DD</sub>
V <sub>IH</sub>	High level input voltage	V <sub>DD</sub> =1.8~2.5V <sup>1</sup>	0.8 V <sub>DD</sub>	V <sub>DD</sub> +0.5V
V <sub>OL</sub>	Low level output voltage (with extra pull high R <sub>B</sub> )	V <sub>DD</sub> =1.8~2.5V <sup>1</sup> R <sub>B</sub> =2.5kΩ	0	0.1V <sub>DD</sub>
V <sub>OH</sub>	High level output voltage (with extra pull low R <sub>B</sub> )	V <sub>DD</sub> =1.8~2.5V <sup>1</sup> R <sub>B</sub> =2.5kΩ	0.9V <sub>DD</sub>	V <sub>DD</sub>
C <sub>IO</sub>	Capacitance for I/O		--	5pF
C <sub>B</sub>	Capacitive load for bus		--	10pF
R <sub>ON</sub>	Turn on impedance			250Ω
T <sub>R</sub>	Rise time (10% to 90% swing time, with extra pull low R <sub>B</sub> and capacitive load C <sub>L</sub> = C <sub>B</sub> + other IO)	R <sub>B</sub> =2.5kΩ C <sub>L</sub> =15pF	--	50 ns
T <sub>F</sub>	Fall time (90% to 10% swing time, with extra pull high R <sub>B</sub> and capacitive load C <sub>L</sub> = C <sub>B</sub> + other IO)	R <sub>B</sub> =2.5kΩ C <sub>L</sub> =15pF	--	50 ns
F	Frequency		(1-1%)*4MHz <sup>2</sup>	(1+1%)*4MHz <sup>2</sup>
CLK <sub>j</sub>	Clock jitter			1%

*Table 2.1: WCI-1 UART physical signal specification for the MWS device*

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Condition</b>	<b>Value</b>	
			<b>Min</b>	<b>Max</b>
V <sub>IL</sub>	Low level input voltage	V <sub>DD</sub> = 1.8~2.5V <sup>1</sup>	-0.5V	0.2V <sub>DD</sub>
V <sub>IH</sub>	High level input voltage	V <sub>DD</sub> = 1.8~2.5V <sup>1</sup>	0.8V <sub>DD</sub>	V <sub>DD</sub> +0.5V
V <sub>OL</sub>	Low level output voltage	V <sub>DD</sub> = 1.8~2.5V <sup>1</sup>	0	0.1V <sub>DD</sub>
V <sub>OL</sub>	High level output voltage	V <sub>DD</sub> = 1.8~2.5V <sup>1</sup>	0.9V <sub>DD</sub>	V <sub>DD</sub>
C <sub>IO</sub>	Capacitance for I/O		--	5 pF
C <sub>B</sub>	Capacitive load for bus		--	10 pF
R <sub>P</sub>	Pull up/pull down resistance		3kΩ	5kΩ
T <sub>R</sub>	Rise time (10% to 90% swing time, with capacitive load C <sub>L</sub> = C <sub>B</sub> + other IO)	C <sub>L</sub> =15pF	--	220 ns
T <sub>F</sub>	Fall time (90% to 10% swing time, with capacitive load C <sub>L</sub> = C <sub>B</sub> + other IO)	C <sub>L</sub> =15pF	--	220 ns
F	Frequency		(1-1%)*1MHz <sup>2</sup>	(1+1%)*1MHz <sup>2</sup>
CLKj	Clock jitter			1%

Table 2.2: WCI-1 UART physical signal specification for the Bluetooth Controller

## Notes:

1. The voltage levels are vendor specific. The tables in this section do not cover all possible ranges of voltage for all devices, nor is it required that a single device be able to operate in the full range indicated here.
2. The frequencies are vendor specific.

## 3 TRANSPORT LAYER

---

The transport layer defines the mapping of the logical coexistence signals (see [\[Vol 7\] Part A](#)) onto the physical transport channel.

The 8-bit UART character is divided into two portions with three bits for the message type indicator and five bits for the message body. The bit with index 0 is the LSB and shall be transmitted first.

All bits marked RFU shall be set to zero on transmission and ignored on receipt.

b0	b1	b2	b3	b4	b5	b6	b7
Type[0]	Type[1]	Type[2]	MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]

*Table 3.1: Transport layer format*

### 3.1 MESSAGE TYPES

This section describes the message formats for the logical coexistence signals. The message types are listed in [Table 3.2](#).

Message Type Indicator	Direction	Message Type
0	MWS ↔ Bluetooth	Real-time Signal message
1	MWS ↔ Bluetooth	Transport Control message
2	MWS ↔ Bluetooth	Transparent Data message
3	MWS → Bluetooth	MWS Inactivity Duration message
	Bluetooth → MWS	RFU
4	MWS → Bluetooth	MWS Scan Frequency message
	Bluetooth → MWS	RFU
5	MWS → Bluetooth	RFU
	Bluetooth → MWS	RFU
6		Vendor specific
7		Vendor specific

*Table 3.2: Message types*

The logical coexistence signals are listed in [Table 3.3](#).

Signal Name	Description
FRAME_SYNC	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.1
MWS_RX	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.2
BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.3
BLUETOOTH_TX_ON	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.4
MWS_PATTERN	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.5
MWS_TX	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.6
802_TX_ON	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.7
802_RX_PRI	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.8
MWS_INACTIVITY_DURATION	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.9
MWS_SCAN_FREQUENCY	See [Vol 7 Part A], Section 2.1.10

Table 3.3: Coexistence signals

### 3.1.1 Real-time Signal Message (Type 0)

The Real-time Signal message is used to transport the real-time coexistence signals (see [Vol 7] Part A) over the WCI-1 transport interface.

The Real-time Signal message conveys all the real-time coexistence signals in one message. The time reference point for the Real-time Signal message is the end of MSG[4] (i.e. the transition to the STOP bit).

Two Real-time Signal messages are defined, one from the Bluetooth Controller to the MWS device and another from the MWS device to the Bluetooth Controller.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
FRAME_SYNC	MWS_RX	MWS_TX	MWS_PATTERN[0]	MWS_PATTERN[1]

Table 3.4: Real-time Signal message from MWS device to Bluetooth Controller

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI	BLUETOOTH_TX_ON	802_RX_PRI	802_TX_ON	RFU

Table 3.5: Real-time Signal message from Bluetooth Controller to MWS device

### 3.1.2 Transport Control Message (Type 1)

The Transport Control message can request state information from the MWS device's coexistence interface.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
RESEND_REAL_TIME	RFU	RFU	RFU	RFU

Table 3.6: Transport Control message

Signal Name	Description
RESEND_REAL_TIME	This bit is set if a device wants to get a status update of the real-time coexistence signals. The signal is usually used after wake-up from sleep of the transport interface.  If the receiving device's transport interface is awake it shall send a Real-time message with the current status of the real-time coexistence signals within 4 UART character periods. If the signal is not received within 4 UART character periods the device is considered asleep.

Table 3.7: Transport control signals

### 3.1.3 Transparent Data Message (Type 2)

The Transparent Data message can be used to exchange non-time critical signals between the MWS device and the Bluetooth Controller. The interface does not guarantee the delivery of a message. Protocol and content of the message are vendor specific.

The least significant nibble of each octet shall be transmitted first.

A least significant nibble shall be discarded if the next nibble is a least significant nibble. A most significant nibble shall only be accepted if the preceding nibble was a least significant nibble.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
NIBBLE_POSITION	DATA[0] / DATA[4]	DATA[1] / DATA[5]	DATA[2] / DATA[6]	DATA[3] / DATA[7]

Table 3.8: Transparent Data message

Signal Name	Description
NIBBLE_POSITION	0 – Least Significant Nibble 1 – Most Significant Nibble
DATA[n]; n = 0..7	Data bits of the message octet

Table 3.9: Transparent data bits

### 3.1.4 MWS Inactivity Duration Message (Type 3)

The MWS Inactivity Duration message is used to send the MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION signal from the MWS device to the Bluetooth Controller.

The message is sent at the beginning of an MWS inactivity period.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
DURATION[0]	DURATION[1]	DURATION[2]	DURATION[3]	DURATION[4]

Table 3.10: MWS Inactivity Duration message

The MWS Inactivity Duration is encoded in 5 bits. DURATION is unsigned.

When DURATION = 0, MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION is canceled.

When DURATION = 31, MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION is infinite.

Otherwise, MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION is given by the formula:

$$\text{MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION} = \text{DURATION} * 5 \text{ ms}$$

### 3.1.5 MWS Scan Frequency Message (Type 4)

The MWS Scan Frequency message is used to send the MWS\_SCAN\_FREQUENCY signal from the MWS device to the Bluetooth Controller.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
FREQ[0]	FREQ[1]	FREQ[2]	FREQ[3]	FREQ[4]

Table 3.11: MWS Scan Frequency message

The MWS Scan Frequency index is encoded in 5 bits. FREQ is unsigned.



Core System Package [Wireless Coexistence volume]

Part C

# **WIRELESS COEXISTENCE INTERFACE 2 (WCI-2) TRANSPORT SPECIFICATION**

*This part specifies the MWS Wireless Coexistence Interface 2 (WCI-2) Transport Interface between the Bluetooth Controller and an MWS device.*



## CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Physical Layer .....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Transport Layer .....</b>	<b>34</b>
3.1	Message Types .....	34
3.1.1	Real-time Signal Message (Type 0) .....	35
3.1.2	Transport Control Message (Type 1).....	36
3.1.3	Transparent Data Message (Type 2).....	36
3.1.4	MWS Inactivity Duration Message (Type 3) .....	37
3.1.5	MWS Scan Frequency Message (Type 4).....	37

## 1 INTRODUCTION

---

This part of the Bluetooth Core Specification describes the MWS Wireless Coexistence Interface 2 (WCI-2) Transport Interface for a Bluetooth Controller.

## 2 PHYSICAL LAYER

The WCI-2 Transport is based on a standard full duplex UART carrying logical signals framed as UART characters. Only the TXD and RXD UART signals are used. The interface supports multiple logical channels.

The messaging is based on a standard UART format.

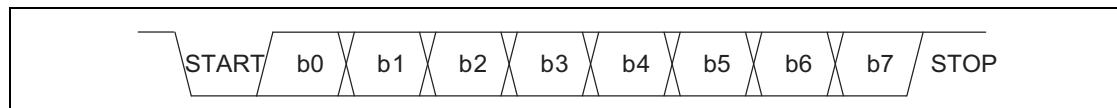


Figure 2.1: UART waveform

The UART signals shall be connected in a null-modem fashion; i.e. the local TXD shall be connected to the remote RXD and vice versa.

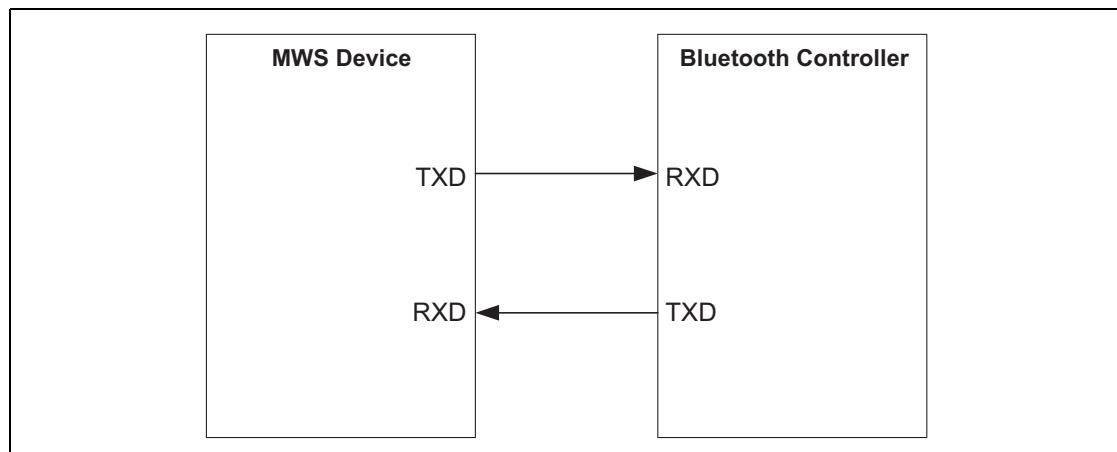


Figure 2.2: WCI-2 physical interface

## 3 TRANSPORT LAYER

---

The transport layer defines the mapping of the logical signals (see [\[Vol 7\] Part A](#)) onto the physical transport channel.

The 8 bit UART character is divided into two portions with three bits for the message type indicator and five bits for the message body. The bit with index 0 is the LSB and shall be transmitted first.

All bits marked RFU shall be set to zero on transmission and ignored on receipt.

b0	b1	b2	b3	b4	b5	b6	b7
Type[0]	Type[1]	Type[2]	MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]

*Table 3.1: Transport layer format*

### 3.1 MESSAGE TYPES

This section describes the message formats for the logical coexistence signals. The message types are listed in [Table 3.2](#).

Message Type Indicator	Direction	Message Type
0	MWS ↔ Bluetooth	Real-time Signal message
1	MWS ↔ Bluetooth	Transport Control message
2	MWS ↔ Bluetooth	Transparent Data message
3	MWS → Bluetooth	MWS Inactivity Duration message
	Bluetooth → MWS	RFU
4	MWS → Bluetooth	MWS Scan Frequency message
	Bluetooth → MWS	RFU
5	MWS → Bluetooth	RFU
	Bluetooth → MWS	RFU
6		Vendor specific
7		Vendor specific

*Table 3.2: Message types*

The logical coexistence signals are listed in [Table 3.3](#).

Logical Signal Name	Description
FRAME_SYNC	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.1
MWS_RX	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.2
BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.3
BLUETOOTH_TX_ON	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.4
MWS_PATTERN	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.5
MWS_TX	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.6
802_TX_ON	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.7
802_RX_PRI	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.8
MWS_INACTIVITY_DURATION	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.9
MWS_SCAN_FREQUENCY	See <a href="#">[Vol 7 Part A]</a> , Section 2.1.10

Table 3.3: Coexistence signals

### 3.1.1 Real-time Signal Message (Type 0)

The Real-time Signal message is used to transport the real-time coexistence signals (see [\[Vol 7\] Part A](#)) over the WCI-2 transport.

The Real-time Signal message conveys all the real-time coexistence signals in one message. The time reference point for the Real-time Signal message is the end of MSG[4] (i.e. the transition to the Stop bit).

Two Real-time Signal messages are defined, one from the Bluetooth Controller to the MWS device and another from the MWS device to the Bluetooth Controller.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
FRAME_SYNC	MWS_RX	MWS_TX	MWS_PATTERN[0]	MWS_PATTERN[1]

Table 3.4: Real-time Signal message from MWS device to Bluetooth Controller

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
BLUETOOTH_RX_PRI	BLUETOOTH_TX_ON	802_RX_PRI	802_TX_ON	RFU

Table 3.5: Real-time Signal message from Bluetooth Controller to MWS device

### 3.1.2 Transport Control Message (Type 1)

The Transport Control message can request state information from the MWS device's coexistence interface.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
RESEND_REAL_TIME	RFU	RFU	RFU	RFU

Table 3.6: Transport Control message

Signal Name	Description
RESEND_REAL_TIME	This bit is set if a device wants to get a status update of the real-time coexistence signals. The signal is usually used after wake-up from sleep of the transport interface.  If the receiving device's transport interface is awake it shall send a Real-time message with the current status of the real-time coexistence signals within 4 UART character periods. If the signal is not received within 4 UART character periods the device is considered asleep.

Table 3.7: Transport control signals

### 3.1.3 Transparent Data Message (Type 2)

The Transparent Data message can be used to exchange non-time critical messages between the MWS device and the Bluetooth Controller. The interface does not guarantee the delivery of a message. Protocol and content of the message are vendor specific.

The least significant nibble of each octet shall be transmitted first.

A least significant nibble shall be discarded if the next nibble is a least significant nibble. A most significant nibble shall only be accepted if the preceding nibble was a least significant nibble.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
NIBBLE_POSITION	DATA[0]/ DATA[4]	DATA[1]/ DATA[5]	DATA[2]/ DATA[6]	DATA[3]/ DATA[7]

Table 3.8: Transparent Data message

Signal Name	Description
NIBBLE_POSITION	0 – Least Significant Nibble 1 – Most Significant Nibble
DATA[n]; n=0 .. 7	Data bits of the message octet

Table 3.9: Transparent data bits

### 3.1.4 MWS Inactivity Duration Message (Type 3)

The MWS Inactivity Duration message is used to send the MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION signal from the MWS device to the Bluetooth Controller.

The message is sent at the beginning of the MWS inactivity period.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
DURATION[0]	DURATION[1]	DURATION[2]	DURATION[3]	DURATION[4]

Table 3.10: MWS Inactivity Duration message

The MWS Inactivity Duration is encoded in 5 bits. DURATION is unsigned.

When DURATION = 0, MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION is cancelled.

When DURATION = 31, MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION is infinite.

Otherwise, MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION is given by the formula:

$$\text{MWS\_INACTIVITY\_DURATION} = \text{DURATION} * 5 \text{ ms}$$

### 3.1.5 MWS Scan Frequency Message (Type 4)

The MWS Scan Frequency message is used to send the MWS\_SCAN\_FREQUENCY signal from the MWS device to the Bluetooth Controller.

MSG[0]	MSG[1]	MSG[2]	MSG[3]	MSG[4]
FREQ[0]	FREQ[1]	FREQ[2]	FREQ[3]	FREQ[4]

Table 3.11: MWS Scan Frequency message

The MWS Scan Frequency index is encoded in 5 bits. FREQ is unsigned.





## LIST OF FIGURES (all parts)

### MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling Specification

Figure 1.1:	Coexistence signaling/messaging architecture .....	10
Figure 2.1:	Illustration of FRAME_SYNC .....	12
Figure 2.2:	Signal with negative Assert Offset and negative De-assert Offset .....	15
Figure 2.3:	Signal with negative Assert Offset and positive De-assert Offset .....	15
Figure 2.4:	Signal assertion and de-assertion jitter .....	15

### Wireless Coexistence Interface 1 (WCI-1) Transport Specification

Figure 2.1:	WCI-1 physical interface .....	21
Figure 2.2:	UART waveform for MWS-to-Bluetooth signals .....	21
Figure 2.3:	UART waveform for Bluetooth-to-MWS signals .....	22

### Wireless Coexistence Interface 2 (WCI-2) Transport Specification

Figure 2.1:	UART waveform .....	33
Figure 2.2:	WCI-2 physical interface .....	33





## LIST OF TABLES (all parts)

### MWS Coexistence Logical Signaling Specification

Table 2.1:	Coexistence signals .....	11
Table 2.2:	Tolerances for offsets and jitter .....	15

### Wireless Coexistence Interface 1 (WCI-1) Transport Specification

Table 2.1:	WCI-1 UART physical signal specification for the MWS device.	22
Table 2.2:	WCI-1 UART physical signal specification for the Bluetooth Controller .....	23
Table 3.1:	Transport layer format.....	24
Table 3.2:	Message types .....	24
Table 3.4:	Real-time Signal message from MWS device to Bluetooth Controller .....	25
Table 3.5:	Real-time Signal message from Bluetooth Controller to MWS device.....	25
Table 3.3:	Coexistence signals .....	25
Table 3.6:	Transport Control message.....	26
Table 3.7:	Transport control signals.....	26
Table 3.8:	Transparent Data message.....	26
Table 3.9:	Transparent data bits .....	26
Table 3.10:	MWS Inactivity Duration message .....	27
Table 3.11:	MWS Scan Frequency message.....	27

### Wireless Coexistence Interface 2 (WCI-2) Transport Specification

Table 3.1:	Transport layer format.....	34
Table 3.2:	Message types .....	34
Table 3.4:	Real-time Signal message from MWS device to Bluetooth Controller .....	35
Table 3.5:	Real-time Signal message from Bluetooth Controller to MWS device.....	35
Table 3.3:	Coexistence signals .....	35
Table 3.6:	Transport Control message.....	36
Table 3.7:	Transport control signals.....	36
Table 3.8:	Transparent Data message.....	36
Table 3.9:	Transparent data bits .....	36
Table 3.10:	MWS Inactivity Duration message .....	37
Table 3.11:	MWS Scan Frequency message.....	37





